Project Gutenberg's The Grammar of English Grammars, by Goold Brown

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with

almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or

re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included

with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.net

Title: The Grammar of English Grammars

Author: Goold Brown

Release Date: March 17, 2004 [EBook #11615]

Language: English

\*\*\* START OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS \*\*\*

Produced by Karl Hagen and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team

Transcriber's Notes: Despite the severity with which the author of this

work treats those who depart from his standard of correctness, the source

text does contain a small number of typographical errors. Missing

punctuation has been supplied silently, but all other errors have been left

uncorrected. To let the reader distinguish such problems from any

inadvertent transcription errors that remain, I have inserted notes to flag

items that appear errors by Brown's own standard. Spellings that are simply

different from current practice, e.g., 'Shakspeare' are not noted. Special

characters: vowels with macrons are rendered with an equals sign (=) before

the vowel. Vowels with breve marks are rendered with tildes (~) before the

vowels.--KTH.

THE

GRAMMAR

OF

ENGLISH GRAMMARS,

WITH

AN INTRODUCTION

HISTORICAL AND CRITICAL;

THE WHOLE

METHODICALLY ARRANGED AND AMPLY ILLUSTRATED;

WITH

FORMS OF CORRECTING AND OF PARSING, IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION, EXAMPLES

FOR PARSING, QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION, EXERCISES FOR WRITING, OBSERVATIONS

FOR THE ADVANCED STUDENT, DECISIONS AND PROOFS FOR THE SETTLEMENT OF

DISPUTED POINTS, OCCASIONAL STRICTURES AND DEFENCES, AN EXHIBITION OF THE

SEVERAL METHODS OF ANALYSIS,

AND

A KEY TO THE ORAL EXERCISES:

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

FOUR APPENDIXES,

PERTAINING SEPARATELY TO THE FOUR PARTS OF GRAMMAR.

BY GOOLD BROWN,

AUTHOR OF THE INSTITUTES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR, THE FIRST LINES OF ENGLISH

GRAMMAR, ETC.

"So let great authors have their due, that Time, who is the author of

authors, be not deprived of his due, which is, farther and farther to

discover truth."--LORD BACON.

SIXTH EDITION--REVISED AND IMPROVED.

ENLARGED BY THE ADDITION OF A COPIOUS INDEX OF MATTERS.

BY SAMUEL U. BERRIAN, A. M.

PREFACE

The present performance is, so far as the end could be reached, the

fulfillment of a design, formed about twenty-seven years ago, of one day

presenting to the world, if I might, something like a complete grammar of

the English language;--not a mere work of criticism, nor yet a work too

tame, indecisive, and uncritical; for, in books of either of these sorts,

our libraries already abound;--not a mere philosophical investigation of

what is general or universal in grammar, nor yet a minute detail of what

forms only a part of our own philology; for either of these plans falls

very far short of such a purpose;--not a mere grammatical compend,

abstract, or compilation, sorting with other works already before the

public; for, in the production of school grammars, the author had early

performed his part; and, of small treatises on this subject, we have long

had a superabundance rather than a lack.

After about fifteen years devoted chiefly to grammatical studies and

exercises, during most of which time I had been alternately instructing

youth in four different languages, thinking it practicable to effect some

improvement upon the manuals which explain our own, I prepared and

published, for the use of schools, a duodecimo volume of about three

hundred pages; which, upon the presumption that its principles were

conformable to the best usage, and well established thereby, I entitled,

"The Institutes of English Grammar." Of this work, which, it is believed,

has been gradually gaining in reputation and demand ever since its first

publication, there is no occasion to say more here, than that it was the

result of diligent study, and that it is, essentially, the nucleus, or the

groundwork, of the present volume.

With much additional labour, the principles contained in the Institutes of

English Grammar, have here been not only reaffirmed and rewritten, but

occasionally improved in expression, or amplified in their details. New

topics, new definitions, new rules, have also been added; and all parts of

the subject have been illustrated by a multiplicity of new examples and

exercises, which it has required a long time to amass and arrange. To the

main doctrines, also, are here subjoined many new observations and

criticisms, which are the results of no inconsiderable reading and

reflection.

Regarding it as my business and calling, to work out the above-mentioned

purpose as circumstances might permit, I have laid no claim to genius, none

to infallibility; but I have endeavoured to be accurate, and aspired to be

useful; and it is a part of my plan, that the reader of this volume shall

never, through my fault, be left in doubt as to the origin of any thing it

contains. It is but the duty of an author, to give every needful facility

for a fair estimate of his work; and, whatever authority there may be for

anonymous copying in works on grammar, the precedent is always bad.

The success of other labours, answerable to moderate wishes, has enabled me

to pursue this task under favourable circumstances, and with an unselfish,

independent aim. Not with vainglorious pride, but with reverent gratitude

to God, I acknowledge this advantage, giving thanks for the signal mercy

which has upborne me to the long-continued effort. Had the case been

otherwise,--had the labours of the school-room been still demanded for my

support,--the present large volume would never have appeared. I had desired

some leisure for the completing of this design, and to it I scrupled not to

sacrifice the profits of my main employment, as soon as it could be done

without hazard of adding another chapter to "the Calamities of Authors."

The nature and design of this treatise are perhaps sufficiently developed

in connexion with the various topics which are successively treated of in

the Introduction. That method of teaching, which I conceive to be the best,

is also there described. And, in the Grammar itself, there will be found

occasional directions concerning the manner of its use. I have hoped to

facilitate the study of the English language, not by abridging our

grammatical code, or by rejecting the common phraseolgy [sic--KTH] of its

doctrines, but by extending the former, improving the latter, and

establishing both;--but still more, by furnishing new illustrations of the

subject, and arranging its vast number of particulars in such order that

every item may be readily found.

An other important purpose, which, in the preparation of this work, has

been borne constantly in mind, and judged worthy of very particular

attention, was the attempt to settle, so far as the most patient

investigation and the fullest exhibition of proofs could do it, the

multitudinous and vexatious disputes which have hitherto divided the

sentiments of teachers, and made the study of English grammar so

uninviting, unsatisfactory, and unprofitable, to the student whose taste

demands a reasonable degree of certainty.

"Whenever labour implies the exertion of thought, it does good, at least to

the strong: when the saving of labour is a saving of thought, it enfeebles.

The mind, like the body, is strengthened by hard exercise: but, to give

this exercise all its salutary effect, it should be of a reasonable kind;

it should lead us to the perception of regularity, of order, of principle,

of a law. When, after all the trouble we have taken, we merely find

anomalies and confusion, we are disgusted with what is so uncongenial: and,

as our higher faculties have not been called into action, they are not

unlikely to be outgrown by the lower, and overborne as it were by the

underwood of our minds. Hence, no doubt, one of the reasons why our

language has been so much neglected, and why such scandalous ignorance

prevails concerning its nature and history, is its unattractive,

disheartening irregularity: none but Satan is fond of plunging into

chaos."--\_Philological Museum\_, (Cambridge, Eng., 1832,) Vol. i, p. 666.

If there be any remedy for the neglect and ignorance here spoken of, it

must be found in the more effectual teaching of English grammar. But the

principles of grammar can never have any beneficial influence over any

person's manner of speaking or writing, till by some process they are made

so perfectly familiar, that he can apply them with all the readiness of a

native power; that is, till he can apply them not only to what has been

said or written, but to whatever he is about to utter. They must present

themselves to the mind as by intuition, and with the quickness of thought;

so as to regulate his language before it proceeds from the lips or the pen.

If they come only by tardy recollection, or are called to mind but as

contingent afterthoughts, they are altogether too late; and serve merely to

mortify the speaker or writer, by reminding him of some deficiency or

inaccuracy which there may then be no chance to amend.

But how shall, or can, this readiness be acquired? I answer, By a careful

attention to such \_exercises\_ as are fitted to bring the learner's

knowledge into practice. The student will therefore find, that I have given

him something to \_do\_, as well as something to \_learn\_. But, by the

formules and directions in this work, he is very carefully shown how to

proceed; and, if he be a tolerable reader, it will be his own fault, if he

does not, by such aid, become a tolerable grammarian. The chief of these

exercises are the \_parsing\_ of what is right, and the \_correcting\_ of what

is wrong; both, perhaps, equally important; and I have intended to make

them equally easy. To any real proficient in grammar, nothing can be more

free from embarrassment, than the performance of these exercises, in all

ordinary cases. For grammar, rightly learned, institutes in the mind a

certain knowledge, or process of thought, concerning the sorts, properties,

and relations, of all the words which can be presented in any intelligible

sentence; and, with the initiated, a perception of the construction will

always instantly follow or accompany a discovery of the sense: and

instantly, too, should there be a perception of the error, if any of the

words are misspelled, misjoined, misapplied,--or are, in any way,

unfaithful to the sense intended.

Thus it is the great end of grammar, to secure the power of apt expression,

by causing the principles on which language is constructed, if not to be

constantly present to the mind, at least to pass through it more rapidly

than either pen or voice can utter words. And where this power resides,

there cannot but be a proportionate degree of critical skill, or of ability

to judge of the language of others. Present what you will, grammar directs

the mind immediately to a consideration of the sense; and, if properly

taught, always creates a discriminating taste which is not less offended by

specious absurdities, than by the common blunders of clownishness. Every

one who has any pretensions to this art, knows that, to \_parse\_ a sentence,

is but to resolve it according to one's understanding of its import; and it

is equally clear, that the power to \_correct\_ an erroneous passage, usually

demands or implies a knowledge of the author's thought.

But, if parsing and correcting are of so great practical importance as our

first mention of them suggests, it may be well to be more explicit here

concerning them. The pupil who cannot perform these exercises both

accurately and fluently, is not truly prepared to perform them at all, and

has no right to expect from any body a patient hearing. A slow and

faltering rehearsal of words clearly prescribed, yet neither fairly

remembered nor understandingly applied, is as foreign from parsing or

correcting, as it is from elegance of diction. Divide and conquer, is the

rule here, as in many other cases. Begin with what is simple; practise it

till it becomes familiar; and then proceed. No child ever learned to speak

by any other process. Hard things become easy by use; and skill is gained

by little and little. Of the whole method of parsing, it should be

understood, that it is to be a critical exercise in utterance, as well as

an evidence of previous study,--an exhibition of the learner's attainments

in the practice, as well as in the theory, of grammar; and that, in any

tolerable performance of this exercise, there must be an exact adherence to

the truth of facts, as they occur in the example, and to the forms of

expression, which are prescribed as models, in the book. For parsing is, in

no degree, a work of invention; but wholly an exercise, an exertion of

skill. It is, indeed, an exercise for all the powers of the mind, except

the inventive faculty. Perception, judgement, reasoning, memory, and

method, are indispensable to the performance. Nothing is to be guessed at,

or devised, or uttered at random. If the learner can but rehearse the

necessary definitions and rules, and perform the simplest exercise of

judgement in their application, he cannot but perceive what he \_must say\_

in order to speak the truth in parsing. His principal difficulty is in

determining the parts of speech. To lessen this, the trial should commence

with easy sentences, also with few of the definitions, and with definitions

that have been perfectly learned. This difficulty being surmounted, let him

follow the forms prescribed for the several praxes of this work, and he

shall not err. The directions and examples given at the head of each

exercise, will show him exactly the number, the order, and the proper

phraseology, of the particulars to be stated; so that he may go through the

explanation with every advantage which a book can afford. There is no hope

of him whom these aids will not save from "plunging into chaos."

"Of all the works of man, language is the most enduring, and partakes the

most of eternity. And, as our own language, so far as thought can project

itself into the future, seems likely to be coeval with the world, and to

spread vastly beyond even its present immeasurable limits, there cannot

easily be a nobler object of ambition than to purify and better

it."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 665.

It was some ambition of the kind here meant, awakened by a discovery of the

scandalous errors and defects which abound in all our common English

grammars, that prompted me to undertake the present work. Now, by the

bettering of a language, I understand little else than the extensive

teaching of its just forms, according to analogy and the general custom of

the most accurate writers. This teaching, however, may well embrace also,

or be combined with, an exposition of the various forms of false grammar by

which inaccurate writers have corrupted, if not the language itself, at

least their own style in it.

With respect to our present English, I know not whether any other

improvement of it ought to be attempted, than the avoiding and correcting

of those improprieties and unwarrantable anomalies by which carelessness,

ignorance, and affectation, are ever tending to debase it, and the careful

teaching of its true grammar, according to its real importance in

education. What further amendment is feasible, or is worthy to engage

attention, I will not pretend to say; nor do I claim to have been competent

to so much as was manifestly desirable within these limits. But what I

lacked in ability, I have endeavored to supply by diligence; and what I

could conveniently strengthen by better authority than my own, I have not

failed to support with all that was due, of names, guillemets, and

references.

Like every other grammarian, I stake my reputation as an author, upon "a

certain set of opinions," and a certain manner of exhibiting them,

appealing to the good sense of my readers for the correctness of both. All

contrary doctrines are unavoidably censured by him who attempts to sustain

his own; but, to grammatical censures, no more importance ought to be

attached than what belongs to grammar itself. He who cares not to be

accurate in the use of language, is inconsistent with himself, if he be

offended at verbal criticism; and he who is displeased at finding his

opinions rejected, is equally so, if he cannot prove them to be well

founded. It is only in cases susceptible of a rule, that any writer can be

judged deficient. I can censure no man for differing from me, till I can

show him a principle which he ought to follow. According to Lord Kames, the

standard of taste, both in arts and in manners, is "the common sense of

mankind," a principle founded in the universal conviction of a common

nature in our species. (See \_Elements of Criticism\_, Chap, xxv, Vol. ii, p.

364.) If this is so, the doctrine applies to grammar as fully as to any

thing about which criticism may concern itself.

But, to the discerning student or teacher, I owe an apology for the

abundant condescension with which I have noticed in this volume the works

of unskillful grammarians. For men of sense have no natural inclination to

dwell upon palpable offences against taste and scholarship; nor can they be

easily persuaded to approve the course of an author who makes it his

business to criticise petty productions. And is it not a fact, that

grammatical authorship has sunk so low, that no man who is capable of

perceiving its multitudinous errors, dares now stoop to notice the most

flagrant of its abuses, or the most successful of its abuses? And, of the

quackery which is now so prevalent, what can be a more natural effect, than

a very general contempt for the study of grammar? My apology to the reader

therefore is, that, as the honour of our language demands correctness in

all the manuals prepared for schools, a just exposition of any that are

lacking in this point, is a service due to the study of English grammar, if

not to the authors in question.

The exposition, however, that I have made of the errors and defects of

other writers, is only an incident, or underpart, of the scheme of this

treatise. Nor have I anywhere exhibited blunders as one that takes delight

in their discovery. My main design has been, to prepare a work which, by

its own completeness and excellence, should deserve the title here chosen.

But, a comprehensive code of false grammar being confessedly the most

effectual means of teaching what is true, I have thought fit to supply this

portion of my book, not from anonymous or uncertain sources, but from the

actual text of other authors, and chiefly from the works of professed

grammarians.

"In what regards the laws of grammatical purity," says Dr. Campbell, "the

violation is much more conspicuous than the observance."--See \_Philosophy

of Rhetoric\_, p. 190. It therefore falls in with my main purpose, to

present to the public, in the following ample work, a condensed mass of

special criticism, such as is not elsewhere to be found in any language.

And, if the littleness of the particulars to which the learner's attention

is called, be reckoned an objection, the author last quoted has furnished

for me, as well as for himself, a good apology. "The elements which enter

into the composition of the hugest bodies, are subtile and inconsiderable.

The rudiments of every art and science exhibit at first, to the learner,

the appearance of littleness and insignificancy. And it is by attending to

such reflections, as to a superficial observer would appear minute and

hypercritical, that language must be improved, and eloquence

perfected."--\_Ib.\_, p. 244.

GOOLD BROWN.

LYNN, MASS., 1851.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PRELIMINARY MATTERS.

Preface to the Grammar of English Grammars

This Table of Contents

Catalogue of English Grammars and Grammarians

INTRODUCTION.

Chapter I. Of the Science of Grammar

Chapter II. Of Grammatical Authorship

Chapter III. Of Grammatical Success and Fame

Chapter IV. Of the Origin of Language

Chapter V. Of the Power of Language

Chapter VI. Of the Origin and History of the English Language

Chapter VII. Changes and Specimens of the English Language

Chapter VIII. Of the Grammatical Study of the English Language

Chapter IX. Of the Best Method of Teaching Grammar

Chapter X. Of Grammatical Definitions

Chapter XI. Brief Notices of the Schemes of certain Grammars

THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

Introductory Definitions

General Division of the Subject

PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Chapter I. Of Letters

I. Names of the Letters

II. Classes of the Letters

III. Powers of the Letters

IV. Forms of the Letters

Rules for the use of Capitals

Errors concerning Capitals

Promiscuous Errors of Capitals

Chapter II. Of Syllables

Diphthongs and Triphthongs

Rules for Syllabication

Observations on Syllabication

Errors concerning Syllables

Chapter III. Of Words

Rules for the Figure of Words

Observations on Figure of Words

On the Identity of Words

Errors concerning Figure

Promiscuous Errors in Figure

Chapter IV. Of Spelling

Rules for Spelling

Observations on Spelling

Errors in Spelling

Promiscuous Errors in Spelling

Chapter V. Questions on Orthography

Chapter VI Exercises for Writing

PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

Introductory Definitions

Chapter I. Of the Parts of Speech

Observations on Parts of Speech

Examples for Parsing, Praxis I

Chapter II. Of the Articles

Observations on the Articles

Examples for Parsing, Praxis II

Errors concerning Articles

Chapter III. Of Nouns

Classes of Nouns

Modifications of Nouns

Persons

Numbers

Genders

Cases

The Declension of Nouns

Examples for Parsing, Praxis III

Errors concerning Nouns

Chapter IV. Of Adjectives

Classes of Adjectives

Modifications of Adjectives

Regular Comparison

Comparison by Adverbs

Irregular Comparison

Examples for Parsing, Praxis IV

Errors concerning Adjectives

Chapter V. Of Pronouns

Classes of the Pronouns

Modifications of the Pronouns

The Declension of Pronouns

Examples for Parsing, Praxis V

Errors concerning Pronouns

Chapter VI. Of Verbs

Classes of Verbs

Modifications of Verbs

Moods

Tenses

Persons and Numbers

The Conjugation of Verbs

I. Simple Form, Active or Neuter

First Example, the verb \_LOVE\_

Second Example, the verb \_SEE\_

Third Example, the verb \_BE\_

II. Compound or Progressive Form

Fourth Example, to \_BE READING\_

Observations on Compound Forms

III. Form of Passive Verbs

Fifth Example, to \_BE LOVED\_

IV. Form of Negation

V. Form of Question

VI. Form of Question with Negation

Irregular Verbs, with Obs. and List

Redundant Verbs, with Obs. and List

Defective Verbs, with Obs. and List

Examples for Parsing, Praxis VI

Errors concerning Verbs

Chapter VII. Of Participles

Classes of Participles

Examples for Parsing, Praxis VII

Errors concerning Participles

Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs

Classes of Adverbs

Modifications of Adverbs

Examples for Parsing, Praxis VIII

Errors concerning Adverbs

Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions

Classes of Conjunctions

List of the Conjunctions

Examples for Parsing, Praxis IX

Errors concerning Conjunctions

Chapter X. Of Prepositions

List of the Prepositions

Examples for Parsing, Praxis X

Errors concerning Prepositions

Chapter XI. Of Interjections

List of the Interjections

Examples for Parsing, Praxis XI

Errors concerning Interjections

Chapter XII. Questions on Etymology

Chapter XIII. Exercises for Writing

PART III. SYNTAX.

Introductory Definitions

Chapter I. Of Sentences

The Rules of Syntax

General or Critical Obs. on Syntax

The Analyzing of Sentences

The several Methods of Analysis

Observations on Methods of Analysis

Examples for Parsing, Praxis XII

Chapter II. Of the Articles

Rule I. Syntax of Articles

Observations on Rule I

Notes to Rule I; 17 of them

False Syntax under Notes to Rule I

Chapter III. Of Cases, or Nouns

Rule II. Of Nominatives

Observations on Rule II

False Syntax under Rule II

Rule III. Of Apposition

Observations on Rule III

False Syntax under Rule III

Rule IV. Of Possessives

Observations on Rule IV

Notes to Rule IV; 5 of them

False Syntax under Notes to Rule IV

Rule V. Of Objectives after Verbs

Observations on Rule V

Notes to Rule V; 8 of them

False Syntax under Rule V

Rule VI. Of Same Cases

Observations on Rule VI

Notes to Rule VI; 2 of them

False Syntax under Rule VI

Rule VII. Of Objectives after Prepositions

Observations on Rule VII

Note to Rule VII; 1 only

False Syntax under Rule VII

Rule VIII. Of Nominatives Absolute

Observations on Rule VIII

False Syntax under Rule VIII

Chapter IV. Of Adjectives

Rule IX. Of Adjectives

Observations on Rule IX

Notes to Rule IX; 16 of them

False Syntax under Rule IX

Chapter V. Of Pronouns

Rule X. Pronoun and Antecedent

Observations on Rule X

Notes to Rule X; 16 of them

False Syntax under Rule X

Rule XI. Pronoun and Collective Noun

Observations on Rule XI

Notes to Rule XI; 2 of them

False Syntax under Rule XI

Rule XII. Pronoun after AND

Observations on Rule XII

False Syntax under Rule XII

Rule XIII. Pronoun after OR or NOR

Observations on Rule XIII

False Syntax under Rule XIII

Chapter VI. Of Verbs

Rule XIV. Verb and Nominative

Observations on Rule XIV

Notes to Rule XIV; 10 of them

False Syntax under Rule XIV

Rule XV. Verb and Collective Noun

Observations on Rule XV

Note to Rule XV; 1 only

False Syntax under Rule XV

Rule XVI. The Verb after AND

Observations on Rule XVI

Notes to Rule XVI; 7 of them

False Syntax under Rule XVI

Rule XVII. The Verb with OR or NOR

Observations on Rule XVII

Notes to Rule XVII; 15 of them

False Syntax under Rule XVII

Rule XVIII. Of Infinitives with TO

Observations on Rule XVIII

False Syntax under Rule XVIII

Rule XIX. Of Infinitives without TO

Observations on Rule XIX

False Syntax under Rule XIX

Chapter VII. Of Participles

Rule XX. Syntax of Participles

Observations on Rule XX

Notes to Rule XX; 13 of them

False Syntax under Rule XX

Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs

Rule XXI. Relation of Adverbs

Observations on Rule XXI

Notes to Rule XXI; 10 of them

False Syntax under Rule XXI

Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions

Rule XXII. Use of Conjunctions

Observations on Rule XXII

Notes to Rule XXII; 8 of them

False Syntax under Rule XXII

Chapter X. Of Prepositions

Rule XXIII. Use of Prepositions

Observations on Rule XXIII

Notes to Rule XXIII; 5 of them

False Syntax under Rule XXIII

Chapter XI. Of Interjections

Rule XXIV. For Interjections

Observations on Rule XXIV

False Syntax Promiscuous

Examples for Parsing, Praxis XIII

Chapter XII. General Review

False Syntax for a General Review

Chapter XIII. General Rule of Syntax

Critical Notes to the General Rule

General Observations on the Syntax

False Syntax under the General Rule

False Syntax under the Critical Notes

Promiscuous Examples of False Syntax

Chapter XIV. Questions on Syntax

Chapter XV. Exercises for Writing

PART IV. PROSODY.

Introductory Definitions and Observations

Chapter I. Punctuation

Obs. on Pauses, Points, Names, &c.

Section I. The Comma; its 17 Rules

Errors concerning the Comma

Section II. The Semicolon; its 3 Rules

Errors concerning the Semicolon

Mixed Examples of Error

Section III. The Colon; its 3 Rules

Errors concerning the Colon

Mixed Examples of Error

Section IV. The Period; its 8 Rules

Observations on the Period

Errors concerning the Period

Mixed Examples of Error

Section V. The Dash; its 3 Rules

Observations on the Dash

Errors concerning the Dash

Mixed Examples of Error

Section VI. The Eroteme; its 3 Rules

Observations on the Eroteme

Errors concerning the Eroteme

Mixed Examples of Error

Section VII. The Ecphoneme; its 3 Rules

Errors concerning the Ecphoneme

Mixed Examples of Error

Section VIII. The Curves; and their 2 Rules

Errors concerning the Curves

Mixed Examples of Error

Section IX. The Other Marks

Mixed Examples of Error

Bad English Badly Pointed

Chapter II. Of Utterance

Section I. Of Articulation

Article I. Of the Definition

Article II. Of Good Articulation

Section II. Of Pronunciation

Article I. Powers of Letters

Article II. Of Quantity

Article III. Of Accent

Section III. Of Elocution

Article I. Of Emphasis

Article II. Of Pauses

Article III. Of Inflections

Article IV. Of Tones

Chapter III. Of Figures

Section I. Figures of Orthography

Section II. Figures of Etymology

Section III. Figures of Syntax

Section IV. Figures of Rhetoric

Section V. Examples for Parsing, Praxis XIV

Chapter IV. Of Versification

Section I. Of Verse

Definitions and Principles

Observations on Verse

Section II. Of Accent and Quantity

Section III. Of Poetic Feet

Critical Observations on Theories

Section IV. Of the Kinds of Verse

Order I. Iambic Verse; its 8 Measures

Order II. Trochaic Verse; its Nature

Observations on Trochaic Metre

Trochaics shown in their 8 Measures

Order III. Anapestic Verse; its 4 Measures

Observations on the Short Anapestics

Order IV. Dactylic Verse; its 8 Measures

Observations on Dactylics

Order V. Composite Verse

Observations on Composites

Section V. Improprieties for Correction

Chapter V. Questions on Prosody

Chapter VI. Exercises for Writing

KEY TO THE ORAL EXERCISES.

THE KEY.--PART I.--ORTHOGRAPHY.

Chapter I. Of Letters; Capitals

Corrections under each of the 16 Rules

Promiscuous corrections of Capitals

Chapter II. Of Syllables

Corrections of False Syllabication

Chapter III. Of the Figure of Words

Corrections under each of the 6 Rules

Promiscuous corrections of Figure

Chapter IV. Of Spelling

Corrections under each of the 15 Rules

Promiscuous corrections of Spelling

THE KEY.--PART II--ETYMOLOGY.

Chapter I. Of the Parts of Speech

Remark concerning False Etymology

Chapter II. Of Articles; 5 Lessons

Chapter III. Of Nouns; 3 Lessons

Chapter IV. Of Adjectives; 3 Lessons

Chapter V. Of Pronouns; 3 Lessons

Chapter VI. Of Verbs; 3 Lessons

Chapter VII. Of Participles; 3 Lessons

Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs; 1 Lesson

Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions; 1 Lesson

Chapter X. Of Prepositions; 1 Lesson

Chapter XI. Of Interjections; 1 Lesson

THE KEY.--PART III.--SYNTAX.

Chapter I. Of Sentences; Remark

Chapter II. Of Articles. Corrections under the 17 Notes to Rule 1

Chapter III. Of Cases, or Nouns

Cor. under Rule II; of Nominatives

Cor. under Rule III; of Apposition

Cor. under Rule IV; of Possessives

Cor. under Rule V; of Objectives

Cor. under Rule VI; of Same Cases

Cor. under Rule VII; of Objectives

Cor. under Rule VIII; of Nom. Absolute

Chapter IV. Of Adjectives. Corrections under the 16 Notes to Rule IX

Chapter V. Of Pronouns. Corrections under Rule X and its 16 Notes

Corrections under Rule XI; of Pronouns

Cor. under Rule XII; of Pronouns

Cor. under Rule XIII; of Pronouns

Chapter VI. Of Verbs. Corrections under Rule XIV and its 10 Notes

Cor. under Rule XV and its Note

Cor. under Rule XVI and its 7 Notes

Cor. under Rule XVII and its 15 Notes

Cor. under Rule XVIII; of Infinitives

Cor. under Rule XIX; of Infinitives

Chapter VII. Of Participles. Corrections under the 13 Notes to Rule XX

Chapter VIII. Of Adverbs. Corrections under the 10 Notes to Rule XXI

Chapter IX. Of Conjunctions. Corrections under the 8 Notes to Rule XXII

Chapter X. Of Prepositions. Corrections under the 5 Notes to Rule XXIII

Chapter XI. Promiscuous Exercises. Corrections of the 8 Lessons

Chapter XII. General Review. Corrections under all the preceding Rules

and Notes; 18 Lessons

Chapter XIII. General Rule. Corrections under the General Rule; 16

Lessons

Corrections under the Critical Notes

Promiscuous Corrections of False Syntax; 5 Lessons, under Various Rules

THE KEY.--PART IV.--PROSODY.

Chapter I. Punctuation

Section I. The Comma; Corrections under its 17 Rules

Section II. The Semicolon; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section III. The Colon; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section IV. The Period; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section V. The Dash; Corrections under its 8 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section VI. The Eroteme; Corrections under its 3 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section VII. The Ecphoneme; Corrections under its 3 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section VIII. The Curves; Corrections under their 2 Rules

Mixed Examples Corrected

Section IX. All Points; Corrections

Good English Rightly Pointed

Chapter II. Utterance; no Corrections

Chapter III. Figures; no Corrections

Chapter IV. Versification. False Prosody, or Errors of Metre, Corrected

THE FOUR APPENDIXES.

Appendix I. (To Orthography.) Of the Sounds of the Letters

Appendix II. (To Etymology.) Of the Derivation of Words

Appendix III. (To Syntax.) Of the Qualities of Style

Appendix IV. (To Prosody.) Of Poetic Diction; its Peculiarities

INDEX OF MATTERS.

A DIGESTED CATALOGUE OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS AND GRAMMARIANS,

WITH SOME COLLATERAL WORKS AND AUTHORITIES, ESPECIALLY SUCH AS ARE CITED IN

THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

ADAM, ALEXANDER, LL. D.; "Latin and English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 302:

Edinburgh, 1772; Boston, 1803.

ADAMS, JOHN QUINCY, LL. D.; "Lectures on Rhetoric and Oratory;" 2 vols.,

8vo: Cambridge, N. E., 1810.

ADAMS, Rev. CHARLES, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 172: 1st Edition,

Boston, 1838. ADAMS, DANIEL, M. B.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 103: 3d

Edition, Montpelier, Vt., 1814.

ADAMS, E.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 143. Leicester, Mass., 1st Ed., 1806;

5th Ed., 1821.

AICKIN, JOSEPH; English Grammar, 8vo: London, 1693.

AINSWORTH, ROBERT; Latin and English Dictionary, 4to: 1st Ed., 1736;

revised Ed., Lond., 1823.

AINSWORTH, LUTHER; "A Practical System of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 144:

1st Ed., Providence, R. I., 1837.

ALDEN, ABNER, A. M.; "Grammar Made Easy;" 12mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Boston,

1811.

ALDEN, Rev. TIMOTHY, Jun.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 36: 1st Ed., Boston,

1811.

ALDRICH, W.; "Lectures on English Grammar and Rhetoric, for Common Schools,

Academies," &c.; 18mo, pp. 68: 11th Ed., Boston, 1847.

ALEXANDER, CALEB, A. M.; (1.) "Grammatical Elements," published before

1794. (2.) "A Grammatical Institute of the Latin Language;" 12mo, pp. 132:

Worcester, Mass., 1794. (3.) "A Grammatical System of the English

Language;" 12mo, pp. 96; written at Mendon, Mass., 1795: 10th Ed., Keene,

N. H., 1814. Also, (4.) "An Introduction to Latin," 1795; and, (5.) "An

Introduction to the Speaking and Writing of English."

ALEXANDER, SAMUEL; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 216: 4th Edition, London,

1832.

ALGER, ISRAEL, Jun., A. M.; "Abridgement of Murray's E. Gram.," &c.; 18mo,

pp. 126: Boston, 1824 and 1842.

ALLEN, Rev. WILLIAM, M. A.; "Grammar of the English Language," &c.; 18mo:

London. Also, "The Elements of English Grammar." &c.; 12mo, pp. 457:

London, 1813; 2d Ed.,

ALLEN and CORNWELL; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 162: 3d Edition, London,

1841.

ALLEN, D. CAVERNO; "Grammatic Guide, or Common School Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

94: Syracuse, N. Y., 1847.

ANDREW, JAMES, LL. D.; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 129: London, 1817.

ANDREWS & STODDARD; "A Grammar of the Latin Language;" 12mo, pp. 328:

Boston, 1836; 11th Ed., 1845.

ANGELL, OLIVER, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 90: 1st Edition,

Providence, R. I., 1830.

ANGUS, WILLIAM, M. A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 255: 2d Edition, Glasgow,

Scotland, 1807.

ANON.; "The British Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 281: London, 1760, or near that

date. Boston, Mass., 1784.

ANON.; "A Comprehensive Grammar," &c.; 18mo, pp. 174: 3d Ed., Philadelphia,

T. Dobson, 1789.

ANON.; "The Comic Grammar," &c,: London, 1840.

ANON.; "The Decoy," an English Grammar with Cuts; 12mo, pp. 33: New York,

S. Wood & Sons, 1820.

ANON.: E. Gram., "By T. C.;" 18mo, pp. 104: London, 1843.

ANON.; Grammar and Rhetoric; 12mo, pp. 221: London, 1776.

ANON.; "The English Tutor;" 8vo: London, 1747.

ANON.; English Grammar, 12mo: London, Boosey, 1795.

ANON.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 161: London, 1838.

ANON.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 85: London, 1838.

ANON.; An English Grammar, with Engravings; 18mo, pp. 16: London, 1820.

ANON.; English Grammar, pp. 84: 1st Ed., Huddersfield, 1817.

ANON.: "The Essentials of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 3d Edition,

London, 1821.

ANON.; "A Plain and Comprehensive Grammar," in "The Complete

Letter-Writer;" 12mo, pp. 31;--pages of the whole book, 215: London, 1811.

ANON.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 131: Albany, N. Y., 1819.

ANON.; (A. H. Maltby & Co. pub.;) Murray's Abridgement, "with Additions;"

18mo, pp. 120: Newhaven, Ct., 1822.

ANON.; (James Loring, pub.;) Murray's Abridgement, "with Alterations and

Improvements; by a Teacher of Youth;" (Lawson Lyon;) 18mo, pp. 72: 14th

Ed., Boston, 1821.

ANON.; "The Infant School Grammar;" (said to have been written by Mrs.

Bethune;) 18mo, pp. 182: New York, 1830. Jonathan Seymour, proprietor.

ANON.; Pestalozzian Grammar; 12mo, pp. 60: Boston, 1830.

ANON.; Interrogative Grammar; 12mo, pp. 70: Boston, 1832.

ANON.; Grammar with Cuts; 18mo, pp. 108: Boston, 1830. ANON.; "The

Juvenile English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 89: Boston, 1829. B. Perkins & Co.,

publishers and proprietors.

ANON.; "The Little Grammarian;" 18mo, pp. 108: 2d Edition, Boston, 1829.

ANON.; An Inductive Grammar; 12mo, pp. 185: Windsor, Vt., 1829.

ANON.; "A Concise Grammar of the English Language, attempted in Verse;"

18mo, pp. 63: 1st Edition, New York, 1825. ANON.; "Edward's First Lessons

in Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Boston, T. H. Webb & Co., 1843.

ANON.; "The First Lessons in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 90: 1st Edition,

Boston, 1842.

ANON.; "A New Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 124: New York,

1831; 2d Ed., Boston, 1834.

ANON.; "Enclytica, or the Principles of Universal Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 133:

London, J. Booth, 1814.

ANON.; "The General Principles of Grammar, edited by a few Well-Wishers to

Knowledge;" 18mo, pp. 76: Philadelphia, Lea & Blanchard, 1847.

ANON.; "English School Grammar;" small 12mo, pp. 32: London, 1850. A meagre

sketch, published by "the Society for promoting Christian Knowledge."

ANON.; "An English Grammar, together with a First Lesson in Reading;" 18mo,

pp. 16: James Burns, London; 2d Ed., 1844. Not worth a pin.

ARISTOTLE; his Poetics;--the Greek text, with Goulston's Latin Version, and

Winstanley's Notes;--8vo, pp. 320: Oxford, England, 1780.

ARNOLD, T. K., M. A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 76: 2d Edition, London,

1841.

ASH, JOHN, LL. D.; "Grammatical Institutes;" 18mo, pp. 142: London, first

published about 1763; New York, "A New Edition, Revised and Corrected,"

1799.

BACON, CALEB, Teacher; "Murray's English Grammar Put into Questions and

Answers;" 18mo, pp. 108: New York, 1st Edition, 1818; 5th Edition, 1823,

1827, and 1830.

BADGLEY, JONATHAN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 200: 1st Edition, Utica, N.

Y., 1845. Suppressed for plagiarism from G. Brown.

BALCH, WILLIAM S.; (1.) "Lectures on Language;" 12mo, pp. 252: Providence,

1838. (2.) "A Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp, 140: 1st Edition,

Boston, 1839.

BALDWIN, EDWARD; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 148: London, 1810; 2d Ed.,

1824.

BARBER, Dr. JONATHAN; "A Grammar of Elocution;" 12mo; Newhaven, 1830.

BARNARD, FREDERICK A. P., A. M.; "Analytic Grammar; with Symbolic

Illustration;" 12mo, pp. 264: New York, 1836. This is a curious work, and

remarkably well-written.

BARNES, DANIEL H., of N. Y.; "The Red Book," or Bearcroft's "Practical

Orthography," Revised and Enlarged; 12mo, pp. 347: New York, 1828.

BARNES, WILLIAM, B. D.; (1.) English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 120: London, 1842.

(2.) "A Philological Grammar, grounded upon English, and formed from a

Comparison of more than Sixty Languages;" 8vo, pp. 312: London, 1854.

BARRETT, JOHN; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 18mo, pp. 214: 2d Ed.,

Boston, 1819.

BARRETT, SOLOMON, Jun.; (1.) "The Principles of Language;" 12mo, pp. 120:

Albany, 1837. (2.) "The Principles of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 96;

"Tenth Edition, Revised:" Utica, 1845. (3.) "The Principles of Grammar;"

12mo, pp. 407: "Revised Edition;" Cambridge, 1854.

BARRIE, ALEXANDER; English Grammar; 24to, pp. 54: Edinburgh, 9th Ed., 1800.

BARTLETT, MONTGOMERY R.; "The Common School Manual;" called in the Third or

Philadelphia Edition, "The \_National\_ School Manual;"--"in Four Parts," or

Separate Volumes, 12mo: I, pp. 108; II, 302; III, 379; IV, promised "to

consist of 450 or 500 pages." First three parts, "Second Edition," New

York, 1830. A miserable jumble, in the successive pages of which, Grammar

is mixed up with Spelling-columns, Reading-lessons, Arithmetic, Geometry,

and the other supposed daily tasks of a school-boy!

BAILEY, N., Schoolmaster; "English and Latin Exercises;" 12mo, pp. 183:

London. 18th Ed., 1798.

BAILEY, Rev. R. W., A. M.; "English Grammar," or "Manual of the English

Language;" 12mo, pp. 240: 2d Ed., Philadelphia, 1854.

BAYLEY, ANSELM, LL. D.; English Grammar, 8vo: London, 1772.

BEALE, SOLON; English Grammar, 18mo, pp. 27: Bangor, Maine, 1833.

BEALL, ALEXANDER; English Grammar, 12mo: 1st Ed., Cincinnati, Ohio, 1841.

BEATTIE, JAMES, LL. D.; "Theory of Language:" London, 1783; Philadelphia,

1809. "Elements of Moral Science;" 12mo, pp. 572; Baltimore, 1813. See, in

Part 1, the sections which treat of "The Faculty of Speech," and the

"Essentials of Language;" and, in Part IV, those which treat of "Rhetorick,

Figures, Sentences, Style, and Poetry."

BECK, WILLIAM; "Outline of English Grammar;" very small, pp. 34: 3d Ed.,

London, 1829.

BEECHER, CATHARINE E.; English Grammar, 12mo, pp. 74. 1st Ed., Hartford,

Ct., 1829.

BELL, JOHN; English Grammar, 12mo, pp. 446: (2 vols.:) 1st Ed., Glasgow,

1769.

BELLAMY, ELIZABETH; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1802.

BENEDICT,--------; English Grammar, 12mo, pp. 192: 1st Ed., Nicholasville,

Ky., 1832.

BETTESWORTH, JOHN; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1778.

BICKNELL, ALEXANDER, Esq.; "The Grammatical Wreath; or, a Complete System

of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 804: London, 1790.

BINGHAM, CALEB, A. M.; "The Young Lady's Accidence;" 18mo, pp. 60: Boston,

1804; 20th Ed., 1815.

BLAIR, HUGH, D. D., F. B. S.; "Lectures on Rhetoric and Belles-Lettres;"

8vo, pp. 500: London, 1783; New York, 1819.

BLAIR, JOHN, D. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 145: 1st Ed., Philadelphia,

1831.

BLAIR, DAVID, Rev.; "A Practical Grammar of the English Language;" 18mo,

pp. 167: 7th Ed., London, 1815.

BLAISDALE, SILAS; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 88: 1st Ed., Boston, 1831.

BLISS, LEONARD Jun.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 73: 1st Ed., Louisville,

Ky., 1839.

BOBBITT, A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 136: 1st Ed., London, 1833.

BOLLES, WILLIAM; (1.) "A Spelling-Book;" 12mo, pp. 180: Ster. Ed., N.

London, 1831. (2.) "An Explanatory and Phonographic Pronouncing Dictionary

of the English Language;" royal octavo, pp. 944; Ster. Ed., New London,

1845.

BOOTH, DAVID; Introd. to Analytical Dict.; 8vo, pp. 168: London, 1814.

Analytical Dictionary of the English Language: London, 1835. E. Grammar,

12mo: London, 1837.

BRACE, JOAB; "The Principles of English Grammar;" (vile theft from Lennie;)

18mo, pp. 144: 1st Edition, Philadelphia, 1839.

BRADLEY, JOSHUA, A. M.; "Youth's Literary Guide;" 12mo, pp. 192: 1st Ed.,

Windsor, Vt., 1815.

BRADLEY, Rev. C.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 148: York, Eng., 1810; 3d Ed.,

1813.

BRIDIL, EDMUND, LL. D.; E. Gram., 4to: London, 1799.

BRIGHTLAND, JOHN, \_Pub.\_; "A Grammar of the English Tongue;" 12mo, pp. 800:

7th Ed., London, 1748.

BRITTAIN, Rev. LEWIS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 156: 2d Edition, London,

1790.

BROMLEY, WALTER; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 104: 1st Ed., Halifax, N. S.,

1822.

BROWN, GOOLD; (1.) "The Institutes of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 220-312:

New York, 1st Ed., 1823; stereotyped in 1832, and again in 1846. (2.) "The

First Lines of English Grammar;" early copies 18mo, late copies 12mo, pp.

108: New York, 1st Ed., 1823; stereotyped in 1827, and in 1844. (3.) "A Key

to the Exercises for Writing, contained in the Institutes of English

Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 51: New York, 1825. (4.) "A Catechism of English

Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 72: New York, 1827. (5.) "A Compendious English

Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 22: (in Part I of the Treasury of Knowledge:) New York,

1831. (6.) "The Grammar of English Grammars;" 8vo, pp. 1028; first printed

in Boston in 1850 and 1851.

BROWN, JAMES; (1.) An Explanation of E. Grammar as taught by an Expensive

Machine; 8vo, pp. 40: 1st Ed., Boston, 1815. (2.) "The American Grammar;" a

Pamphlet; 12mo, pp. 48: Salem, N. Y., 1821. (3.) "An American Grammar;"

18mo, pp. 162: New York, 1821. (4.) "An Appeal from the British System of

English Grammar to Common Sense;" 12mo, pp. 336: Philadelphia, 1837. (5.)

"The American System of English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 216: Philad., 1838. (6.)

"An Exegesis of English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 147: Philad., 1840. (7.) "The

First Part of the American System of English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 195:

Boston, 1841. (8.) "An English Syntascope," a "Chart," and other

fantastical works.

BROWN, J. H., A. M.; (with Gengemhre;) "Elements of English Grammar, on a

Progressive System;" 12mo, pp. 213: Philad., 1855.

BROWN, RICHARD; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1692.

BUCHANAN, JAMES; "A Regular English Syntax;" 12mo, pp. 196: 5th American

Ed., Philad., 1792.

BUCKE, CHARLES; "A Classical Grammar of the E. Language;" 18mo, pp. 152:

London, 1829.

BULLEN, Rev. H. ST. JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 140: 1st Edition,

London, 1797.

BULLIONS, Rev. PETER, D. D.; (1.) "Elements of the Greek Language;" (now

called, "The Principles of Greek Grammar;") mostly a version of Dr. Moor's

"Elementa Linguæ Græcæ:" 1st Ed., 1831. (2.) "The Principles of English

Grammar;" (mostly copied from Lennie;) 12mo, pp. 187; 2d Ed., New York,

1837; 5th Ed., Revised, pp. 216, 1843, (3.) "The Principles of Latin

Grammar;" (professedly, "upon the foundation of Adam's Latin Grammar;")

12mo, pp. 312: Albany, 1841: 12th Ed., New York, 1846. (4.) "Practical

Lessons in English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 132: New York, 1844. (5.) "An

Analytical and Practical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 240:

1st Ed., New York, 1849.

BULLOKAR, WILLIAM; (1.) "Booke at Large for the Amendment of Orthographie

for English Speech." (2.) "A Bref Grammar for English:" London, 1586.

BURHANS, HEZEKIAH; "The Critical Pronouncing Spelling-Book;" 12mo, pp. 204:

1st Ed., Philad., 1823.

BURLES, EDWARD; E. Gram., 12mo: Lond., 1652.

BURN, JOHN; "A Practical Grammar of the E. Lang.;" 12mo, pp. 275: Glasgow,

1766; 10th Ed., 1810.

BURR, JONATHAN, A. M.; "A Compendium of Eng. Gram.;" 18mo, pp. 72: Boston,

1797,--1804,--1818.

BUTLER, CHARLES; E. Gram., 4to: Oxford, Eng., 1633.

BUTLER, NOBLE, A. M.; (1.) "A Practical Grammar of the E. Lang.;" 12mo, pp.

216: 1st Ed., Louisville, Ky., 1845. (2.) "Introductory Lessons in E.

Grammar," 1845.

CAMPBELL, GEORGE, D. D., F. R. S.; "The Philosophy of Rhetoric;" 8vo, pp.

445: London, 1776: Philad., 1818.

CARDELL, WM. S.; (1.) An "Analytical Spelling-Book;" (with Part of the

"Story of Jack Halyard;") 12mo, pp. 192: (published at first under the

fictitious name of "John Franklin Jones:") New York, 1823; 2d Ed., 1824.

(2.) An "Essay on Language;" 12mo, pp. 203: New York, 1825. (3.) "Elements

of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 141: New York, 1826; 3d Ed., Hartford, 1827.

(4.) "Philosophic Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 236:

Philadelphia, 1827.

CAREY, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 220: 1st Ed., London, 1809.

CARTER, JOHN; E. Gram., 8vo: Leeds, 1773.

CHANDLER, JOSEPH R.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 180:

Philad., 1821. Rev. Ed., pp. 208, stereotyped, 1847.

CHAPIN, JOEL; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 252: 1st Edition, Springfield,

Mass., 1842.

CHAUVIER, J. H., M. A.; "A Treatise on Punctuation;" translated from the

French, by J. B. Huntington; large 18mo, pp. 112: London, 1849.

CHESSMAN, DANIEL, A. M.; Murray Abridged; 18mo, pp. 24: 3d Ed., Hullowell,

Me., 1821.

CHILD, PROF. F. J.; "Revised Edition" of Dr. Latham's "Elementary English

Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 236: Cambridge, N. E., 1852.

CHURCHILL, T. O.; "A New Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 454:

1st Ed., London, 1823.

CLAPHAM, Rev. SAMUEL; E. Grammar: London, 1810.

CLARK, HENRY; E. Grammar; 4to: London, 1656.

CLARK, SCHUYLER; "The American Linguist, or Natural Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

240: Providence, 1830.

CLARK, S. W., A. M.; "A Practical Grammar," with "a System of Diagrams;"

12mo, pp. 218; 2d Ed., New York, 1848.

CLARK, WILLIAM; E. Gram.; 18mo: London, 1810.

CLARKE, R.; "Poetical Grammar of the English Language, and an Epitome of

Rhetoric;" 12mo, pp. 172; price, 2s. 6d.: London, 1855.

COAR, THOMAS; "A Grammar of the English Tongue;" 12mo, pp. 276: 1st Ed.,

London, 1796.

COBB, ENOS; "Elements of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed.,

Boston, 1820.

COBB, LYMAN, A. M.; (1.) A Spelling-Book according to J. Walker; "Revised

Ed.:" Ithaca, N. Y., 1825. (2.) "Abridgment of Walker's Crit. Pron. Dict.:"

Hartford, Ct., 1829. (3.) "Juvenile Reader, Nos. 1, 2, 3, and Sequel:" New

York, 1831. (4.) "The North American Reader;" 12mo, pp. 498: New York,

1835. (5.) "New Spelling-Book, in Six Parts;" 12mo, pp. 168: N. Y., 1843.

(6.) An "Expositor," a "Miniature Lexicon," books of "Arithmetic, &c., &c."

COBBETT, WILLIAM; "A Grammar of the E. Language;" 12mo, New York and Lond.,

1818; 18mo, N. Y., 1832.

COBBIN, Rev. INGRAM, M. A.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: 20th Edition,

London, 1844.

COCHRAN, PETER, A. B.: English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 71: 1st Ed., Boston,

1802.

COLET, Dr. John, Dean of St. Paul's; the "English Introduction" to Lily's

Grammar; dedicated to Lily in 1510. See \_Gram. of E. Gram., Introd.\_, Chap.

XI, ¶¶ 3, 4, and 5.

COMLY, JOHN; "English Grammar Made Easy;" 18mo, pp. 192: 6th Ed., Philad.,

1815; 15th Ed., 1826.

COMSTOCK, ANDREW, M. D.; "A System of Elocution;" 12mo, pp. 364:

Philadelphia, 1844. "A Treatise on Phonology;" 12mo, 1846: &c.

CONNEL, ROBERT; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 162: Glasgow, 1831; 2d Ed.,

1834.

CONNON, C. W., M. A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 168: Edinburgh, 1845.

COOPER, Rev. JOAB GOLDSMITH, A. M.; (1.) "An Abridgment of Murray's English

Grammar;" (largely stolen from G. Brown;) 12mo, pp. 200: Philadelphia,

1828. (2.) "A Plain and Practical English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 210: Philad.,

1831.

COOTE, C., LL. D.; on the English Language; 8vo, pp. 281: 1st Edition,

London, 1788.

CORBET, JAMES; English Grammar; 24to, pp. 153: 1st Edition, Glasgow, 1743.

CORBET, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo: Shrewsbury, England, 1784.

CORNELL, WILLIAM M.; English Grammar; 4to, pp. 12: 1st Edition, Boston,

1840.

COVELL, L. T.; "A Digest of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 219: 3d Ed., New

York, 1853. Much indebted to S. S. Greene, H. Mandeville, and G. Brown.

CRANE, GEORGE; "The Principles of Language;" 12mo, pp. 264: 1st Ed.,

London, 1843.

CROCKER, ABRAHAM; English Grammar, 12mo: Lond., 1772.

CROMBIE, ALEXANDER, LL. D., F. R. S.; "A Treatise on the Etymology and

Syntax of the English Language;" 8vo, pp. 425: London, 2d Ed., 1809; 4th

Ed., 1836.

CUTLER, ANDREW, A. M.; "English Grammar and Parser;" 12mo, pp. 168: 1st

Ed., Plainfield, Ct., 1841.

DALE, W. A. T.; a small "English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 72: 1st Ed., Albany,

N. Y., 1820.

DALTON, JOHN; "Elements of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 122: London, 1st

Ed., 1801.

DAVENPORT, BISHOP; "English Grammar Simplified;" 18mo, pp. 139: 1st Ed.,

Wilmington, Del., 1830.

DAVIDSON, DAVID; a Syntactical Treatise, or Grammar; 12mo: London, 1823.

DAVIS, Rev. JOHN, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 188: 1st Ed., Belfast,

Ireland, 1832.

DAVIS, PARDON; (1.) An Epitome of E. Gram.; 12mo, pp. 56: 1st Ed., Philad.,

1818. (2.) "Modern Practical E. Gram.;" 12mo, pp. 175: 1st Ed., Philad.,

1845.

DAY, PARSONS E.; "District School Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 120: 2d Ed., Ithaca,

N. Y., 1844.

DAY, WILLIAM; "Punctuation Reduced to a System;" 18mo, pp. 147: 3d Ed.,

London, 1847.

DEARBORN, BENJAMIN; "Columbian Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 140: 1st Ed., Boston,

1795.

DEL MAR, E.; Treatise on English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 115: 1st Ed., London,

1842.

D'ORSEY, ALEXANDER J. D.; (1.) A Duodecimo Grammar, in Two Parts; Part I,

pp. 153; Part II, pp. 142: 1st Ed., Edinburgh, 1842. (2.) An Introduction

to E. Gram.; 18mo, pp. 104: Edin., 1845.

DE SACY, A. J. SYLVESTRE, Baron; "Principles of General Grammar;"

translated from the French, by D. Fosdick, Jun.; 12mo, pp. 156: 1st

American, from the 5th French Edition; Andover and New York, 1834.

"DESPAUTER, JOHN, a Flemish grammarian, whose books were, at one time, in

great repute; he died in 1520."--\_Univ. Biog. Dict.\_ Despauter's Latin

Grammar, in Three Parts,--Etymology, Syntax, and Versification,--comprises

858 octavo pages. Dr. Adam says, in the "Preface to the Fourth Edition" of

his Grammar, "The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar was printed

at Cologne, anno 1522; his \_Syntax\_ had been published anno 1509." G.

Brown's copy is a "complete edition," printed partly in 1517, and partly in

1518.

DEVIS, ELLEN; E. Gram.; 18mo, pp. 130: London and Dublin; 1st Ed., 1777;

17th Ed., 1825. [Fist] Devis's Grammar, spoken of in D. Blair's Preface, as

being too "comprehensive and minute," is doubtless an other and much

larger work.

DILWORTH, THOMAS; "A New Guide to the English Tongue;" 12mo, pp. 148:

London; 1st Ed., 1740: 26th Ed., 1764; 40th Ed., (used by G. B.,) undated.

DOHERTY, HUGH; a Treatise on English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 240; 1st Ed.,

London, 1841.

DRUMMOND, JOHN; English Grammar; 8vo: London, 1767. DYCHE, THOMAS; English

Grammar; 8vo, pp. 10: London, 1st Ed., 1710; 12th Ed., 1765.

EARL, MARY; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 36: 1st Ed., Boston, 1816.

EDWARDS, Mrs. M. C.; English Grammar; 8vo: Brentford. England, 1796.

EGELSHEM, WELLS; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1781.

ELMORE, D. W., A. M.; "English Grammar, or Natural Analysis;" 18mo, pp. 18:

1st Ed., Troy, N. Y., 1830. A mere trifle.

ELPHINSTON, JAMES; on the English Language; 12mo, pp. 298: 1st Ed., London,

1796.

EMERSON, BENJAMIN D.; "National Spelling-Book;" 12mo, pp. 168: Boston,

1828.

EMERY, J., A. B.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 39: 1st Ed., Wellsborough,

Pa., 1829.

EMMONS, S. B.; "The Grammatical Instructer;" 12mo, pp. 160: 1st Ed.,

Boston, 1832. Worthless.

ENSELL, G.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" in English and Dutch; 8vo,

pp. 612: Rotterdam, 1797.

EVEREST, Rev. CORNELIUS B.; "An English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 270: 1st Ed.,

Norwich, Ct., 1835. Suppressed for plagiarism from G. Brown.

EVERETT, ERASTUS, A. M.; "A System of English Versification;" 12mo, pp.

198: 1st Ed., New York, 1848.

FARNUM, CALEB, Jun., A. M.; "Practical Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 124: 1st

Edition, (suppressed for petty larcenies from G. Brown,) Providence, R. I.,

1842; 2d Edition, (altered to evade the charge of plagiarism,) Boston,

1843.

FARBO, DANIEL; "The Royal British Grammar and Vocabulary;" 12mo, pp. 344:

1st Ed., London. 1754.

FELCH, W.; "A Comprehensive Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 122: 1st Edition, Boston,

1837. This author can see others' faults better than his own.

FELTON, OLIVER C.; "A Concise Manual of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 145:

Salem, Mass., 1843.

FENNING, DANIEL; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 224: 1st Ed., London, 1771.

FENWICK, JOHN; an English Grammar, 12mo.: London, 1811.

FISHER, A.; "A Practical New Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 176: London: 1st Ed.,

1753; 28th Ed., 1795; "A New Ed., Enlarged, Improved, and Corrected," (used

by G. B.,) 1800.

FISK, ALLEN; (1.) Epitome of E. Gram.; 18mo, pp. 124: Hallowell, Me., 1821;

2d Ed., 1828. (2.) "Adam's Latin Grammar Simplified;" 8vo, pp. 190: New

York, 1822; 2d Ed., 1824. (3.) "Murray's English Grammar Simplified;" 8vo,

pp. 178: 1st Ed., Troy, N. Y., 1822.

FLEMING, Rev. CALEB; an English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1765.

FLETCHER, LEVI; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 83: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1834.

FLETCHER, Rev. W.; English Gram.; 18mo, pp. 175: London; 1st Ed., 1828; 2d

Ed., 1833.

FLINT, ABEL, A. M., and D. D.; "Murray's English Grammar Abridged;" 12mo,

pp. 204: Hartford, Ct.; 1st Ed., 1807; 6th Ed., pp. 214, 1826.

FLINT, JOHN; "First Lessons in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 107: 1st Ed.,

New York, 1834.

FLOWER, M. and W. B.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 170: 1st Ed., London,

1844.

FOLKER, JOSEPH; "An Introduction to E. Gram.;" 12mo, pp. 34: Savannah, Ga.,

1821.

FORMEY, M., M. D., S. E., &c., &c.; "Elementary Principles of the

Belles-Lettres;"--"Translated from the French, by the late Mr. Sloper

Forman;" 12mo, pp. 224: Glasgow, 1767.

FOWLE, WILLIAM BENTLEY; (1.) "The True English Grammar," (Part I;) 18mo,

pp. 180: Boston, 1827. (2.) "The True English Grammar, Part II;" 18mo, pp.

97: Boston, 1829. (3.) "The Common School Grammar, Part I;" 12mo, pp. 46:

Boston, 1842. (4.) "The Common School Grammar, Part II;" 12mo, pp. 108:

Boston, 1842.

FOWLER, WILLIAM C.; "English Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 675: 1st Ed., New York,

1850.

FRAZEE, Rev. BRADFORD; "An Improved Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 192: Philad., 1844;

Ster. Ed., 1845.

FRENCH, D'ARCY A.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 168: Baltimore, 1st Ed.,

1831.

FROST, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "Elements of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 1st

Ed., Boston, 1829. (2.) "A Practical English Grammar;" (with 89 cuts;)

12mo, pp. 204: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1842.

FULLER, ALLEN; "Grammatical Exercises, being a plain and concise Method of

teaching English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Plymouth, Mass., 1822. A

book of no value.

GARTLEY, G.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 225: 1st Edition, London, 1830.

GAY, ANTHELME; "A French Prosodical Grammar;" for English or American

Students; 12mo, pp. 215: New York, 1795.

GENGEMBRE, P. W.; "Brown and Gengembre's English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 213:

Philad., 1855. (See J. H. Brown.)

GIBBS, Prof. J. W., of Yale C.; on Dialects, Sounds, and Derivations. See

about 126 pages, credited to this gentleman, in Prof. Fowler's large

Grammar, of 1850.

GILBERT, ELI; a "Catechetical Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 124: 1st Ed., 1834; 2d

Ed., New York, 1835.

GILCHRIST, JAMES; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 269: 1st Ed., London, 1815.

GILES, JAMES; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 152: London, 1804; 2d Ed., 1810.

GILES, Rev. T. A., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, London, 2d Ed., 1838.

GILL, ALEXANDER; English Grammar, treated in Latin; 4to: London, 1621.

GILLEADE, G.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 206: London; 1st Ed., 1816.

GIRAULT Du VIVIER, Ch. P.; (1.) "La Grammaire des Grammaires;" two thick

volumes, 8vo: Paris; 2d Ed., 1814. (2.) "Traité des Participes;" 8vo, pp.

84: 2d Ed., Paris, 1816.

GOLDSBURY, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "The Common School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 94: 1st

Ed., Boston, 1842. (2.) "Sequel to the Common School Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

110: 1st Ed., Boston, 1842.

GOODENOW, SMITH B.; "A Systematic Text-Book of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

144: 1st Edition, Portland, 1839; 2d Edition, Boston, 1843.

GOUGH, JOHN and JAMES; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 212: 2d Ed., Dublin,

1760.

GOULD, BENJAMIN A.; "Adam's Lat. Gram., with Improvements;" 12mo, pp. 300:

Boston, 1829.

GRAHAM, G. F.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 134: 1st Ed., London, 1843.

GRANT, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "Institutes of Latin Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 453:

London, 1808. (2.) A Comprehensive English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 410: 1st Ed.,

London, 1813.

GRANVILLE, GEO.; English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1827.

GRAY, JAMES, D. D.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 144: 1st Ed., Baltimore,

1818.

GREEN, MATTHIAS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 148: 1st Ed., London, 1837.

GREEN, RICHARD W.; "Inductive Exercises in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108:

1st Ed., New York, 1829; 5th Ed., Phila., 1834.

GEEENE, ROSCOE G.; (1.) E. Gram.; 12mo, pp. 132: Hallowell, Me.; 1st Ed.,

1828; Ster. Ed., 1835. (2.) "A Practical Grammar for the English Language;"

(with Diagrams of Moods;) 12mo: Portland, 1829. (3.) "A Grammatical

Text-Book, being an Abstract of a Practical Gram., &c.;" 12mo, pp. 69:

Boston, 1833.

GREENE, SAMUEL S.; (1.) "Analysis of Sentences;" 12mo, pp. 258: 1st Ed.,

Philadelphia, 1848. (2.) "First Lessons in Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 171: 1st

Ed., Philad., 1848.

GREENLEAF, JEREMIAH; "Grammar Simplified;" 4to, pp. 48: New York; 3d Ed.,

1821; 20th Ed., 1837.

GREENWOOD, JAMES; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 315: London, 1711; 2d Ed.,

1722.

GEENVILLE, A. S.; "Introduction to English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 63: 1st Ed.,

Boston, 1822.

GRISCOM, JOHN, LL. D.; "Questions in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 42: 1st

Ed., New York, 1821.

GURNEY, DAVID. A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: Boston, 1801; 2d Ed.,

1808.

GUY, JOSEPH, Jun.; "English School Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 143: 4th Ed., London

1816.

HALL, Rev. S. R.; "The Grammatical Assistant;" 12mo, pp. 131: 1st Ed.,

Springfield, Mass., 1832.

HALL, WILLIAM; "Encyclopedia of English Grammar;" (by report;) Ohio, 1850.

HALLOCK, EDWARD J., A. M.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp.

251: 1st Ed., New York, 1842. A very inaccurate book, with sundry small

plagiarisms from G. Brown.

HAMLIN, LORENZO F.; "English Grammar in Lectures;" 12mo, pp. 108: New York,

1831; Ster. Ed., 1832.

HAMMOND, SAMUEL; English Grammar; 8vo: Lond., 1744.

HARRIS, JAMES, Esq.; "Hermes; or a Philosophical Inquiry concerning

Universal Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 468; London, 1751: 6th Ed., 1806.

HARRISON, Mr.; "Rudiments of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 108: 9th American

Ed., Philad., 1812.

HARRISON, Rev. MATTHEW, A. M.; "The Rise, Progress, and Present Structure

of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 393: Preface dated Basingstoke, Eng.,

1848; 1st American Ed., Philad., 1850.

HART, JOHN S., A. M.; "English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 192; 1st Ed.,

Philadelphia, 1845.

HARVEY, J.; English Grammar: London, 1841.

HAZEN, EDWARD, A. M.; "A Practical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo,

pp. 240: New York, 1842.

HAZLITT, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 205: London, 1810.

HENDRICK, J. L., A. M.; "A Grammatical Manual;" 18mo, pp. 105: 1st Ed.,

Syracuse, N. Y., 1844.

HEWES, JOHN, A. M.; English Grammar; 4to: London, 1624.

HEWETT, D.; English Grammar; folio, pp. 16: 1st Edition, New York, 1838.

HIGGINSON, Rev. T. E.; E. Gram.; 12mo; Dublin, 1803.

HILEY, RICHARD; "A Treatise on English Grammar," &c.; 12mo, pp. 269: 3d

Ed., London, 1840. Hiley's Grammar Abridged; 18mo, pp. 196: London, 1843:

4th Ed., 1851.

HILL, J. H.; "On the Subjunctive Mood;" 8vo, pp. 63: 1st Ed., London, 1834.

HODGSON, Rev. ISAAC; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 184: 1st Ed., London, 1770.

HOME, HENRY, Lord Kames; "Elements of Criticism;" 2 volumes 8vo, pp. 836:

(3d American, from the 8th London Ed.:) New York, 1819. Also, "The Art of

Thinking;" 12mo, pp. 284: (from the last London Ed.:) New York, 1818.

HORNSEY, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 144; York, England, 1798: 6th

Ed., 1816.

HORT, W. JILLARD; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 219: 1st Ed., London, 1822.

HOUGHTON, JOHN; English Grammar; 8vo: London, 1766.

HOUSTON, SAMUEL, A. B.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 48: 1st Ed.,

Harrisburgh, Pa., 1818.

HOWE, S. L.; English Grammar; 18mo; 1st Ed., Lancaster, Ohio, 1838.

HOWELL, JAMES; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1662.

HULL, JOSEPH HERVEY; "E. Gram., by Lectures;" 12mo, pp. 72: 4th Ed.,

Boston, 1828.

HUMPHREY, ASA; (1.) "The English Prosody;" 12mo, pp. 175: 1st Ed., Boston,

1847. (2.) "The Rules of Punctuation;" with "Rules for the Use of

Capitals;" 18mo, pp. 71: 1st Ed., Boston, 1847.

HURD, S. T.; E. Gram.: 2d Ed., Boston, 1827.

HUTHERSAL, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo: England, 1814.

INGERSOLL, CHARLES M.; "Conversations on English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 296:

New York, 1821.

JAMIESON, ALEXANDER; "A Grammar of Rhetoric and Polite Literature;" 12mo,

pp. 345: "The first American, from the last London Edition;" Newhaven,

1820.

JAUDON, DANIEL; "The Union Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 216: Philadelphia; 1st Ed.,

1812; 4th, 1828.

JENKINS, AZARIAH; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 256; 1st Ed., Rochester, N.

Y., 1835.

JOEL, THOMAS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 78: 1st Ed., London, 1775.

JOHNSON, RICHARD; "Grammatical Commentaries;" (chiefly on Lily;) 8vo, pp.

436: London, 1706.

JOHNSON, SAMUEL, LL. D.; "A Dictionary of the English Language;" in two

thick volumes, 4to: 1st American, from the 11th London Edition;

Philadelphia, 1818. To this work, are prefixed Johnson's "History of the

English Language," pp. 29; and his "Grammar of the English Tongue," pp. 14.

JONES, JOSHUA; E. Gram.; 18mo: Phila., 1841.

JONSON, BEN;--see, in his Works, "The English Grammar, made by Ben Jonson,

for the Benefit of all Strangers, out of his Observation of the English

Language, now spoken and in use:" London, 1634: 8vo, pp. 94; Lond., 1816.

JUDSON, ADONIRAM, Jun., A. B.; E. Grammar; 12mo, pp. 56: 1st Ed., Boston,

1808.

KENNION, CHARLOTTE; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 157: 1st Ed., London, 1842.

KILSON, ROGER; English Grammar; 12mo: England, 1807.

KING, WALTER W.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 76: 1st Ed., London, 1841.

KIRKHAM, SAMUEL; "English Grammar in familiar Lectures;" 12mo, pp.

141--228: 2d Ed., Harrisburgh, Pa., 1825; 12th Ed., New York, 1829.

KNOWLES, JOHN; "The Principles of English Grammar;" 12mo: 3d Ed., London,

1794.

KNOWLTON, JOSEPH; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 84: Salem, Mass., 1818; 2d

Ed., 1832.

LATHAM, ROBERT GORDON, A. M., M. D., F. R. S. (1.) "The English Language;"

8vo, pp. 418: 1st Ed., London, 1841. (2.) "English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 214:

1st Ed., London, 1843. (3.) "A Hand-Book of the English Language;" large

12mo, pp. 898: New York, 1852.

LEAVITT, DUDLEY; English Grammar; 24to, pp. 60: 1st Ed., Concord, N. H.,

1826.

LENNIE, WILLIAM; "The Principles of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 142: 5th

Ed., Edinburgh, 1819; 13th Ed., 1831.

LEWIS, ALONZO; "Lessons in English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 50: 1st Ed., Boston,

1822.

LEWIS, JOHN; (1.) English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 48: 1st Ed., New York, 1828.

(2.) "Tables of Comparative Etymology; or, The Student's Manual of

Languages;" 4to, pp. 108: Philad., 1828.

LEWIS, WILLIAM GREATHEAD; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 204: 1st Ed., London,

1821.

LILY, WILLIAM; "Brevissima Institutio, seu Ratio Grammatices cognoscendæ;"

large 18mo, pp. 140: London, 1793.

LINDSAY, Rev. JOHN, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 88: 1st Ed., London.

1842.

LOCKE, JOHN, M. D.; small English Grammar; 18mo: 1st Ed., Cincinnati, Ohio,

1827.

LOUGHTON, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 194: 3d Ed., London, 1739.

LOVECHILD, Mrs.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: 40th Ed., London, 1842.

LOWTH, ROBERT, D. D.; "A Short Introduction to English Grammar;" 18mo, pp.

132: London, 1763;--Philadelphia, 1799;--Cambridge, Mass., 1838.

LYNDE, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 10: 1st Ed., Woodstock, Vt., 1821.

MACK, EVERED J.; "The Self-Instructor, and Practical English Grammar;"

12mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Springfield, Mass., 1835. An egregious plagiarism

from G. Brown.

MACGOWAN, Rev. JAMES; "English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 248: London, 1825.

MACKINTOSH, DUNCAN; "An Essay on English Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 239: Boston,

1797.

MACKILQUHEM, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 12mo: Glasgow, 1799.

MAITTAIRE, MICHAEL; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 272: London, 1712.

MANDEVILLE, HENRY, D. D.; (1.) "Elements of Reading and Oratory;" large

12mo: Utica, N. Y., 1845. (2.) "A Course of Reading for Schools;" 12mo, pp.

377: Improved Ed.; New York, 1851.

MARCET, Mrs.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 331: 7th Ed., London, 1843.

MARTIN, BENJ.; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1754.

MATHESON, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 138: 2d Ed., London, 1821.

MAUNDER, SAMUEL; Grammar prefixed to Dict.; 12mo, pp. 20: 1st Ed., London,

1830.

MAVOR, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 70: 1st Ed., London, 1820.

M'CREADY, F.; 12mo Grammar: Philad., 1820.

M'CULLOCH, J. M., D. D.; "A Manual of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 188: 7th

Ed., Edinburgh, 1841.

M'ELLIGOTT, JAMES N.; "Manual, Analytical and Synthetical, of Orthography

and Definition;" 8vo, pp. 223: 1st Ed., New York, 1846. Also, "The Young

Analyzer:" 12mo, pp. 54: New York, 1846.

MEILAN, MARK A.; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1803.

MENDENHALL, WILLIAM; "The Classification of Words;" 12mo, pp. 36: Philad.,

1814.

MENNYE, J.: "English Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 124: 1st Ed., New York, 1785.

MERCEY, BLANCHE; English Grammar; 12mo, 2 vols., pp. 248: 1st Ed., London,

1799.

MERCHANT, AARON M.; Murray's Small Grammar, Enlarged; 18mo, pp. 216: N. Y.,

1824. This "Enlarged Abridgement" became "The American School Grammar" in

1828.

MILLER, ALEXANDER; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 119: 1st Ed., New York, 1795.

MILLER, The Misses; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 63: 1st Ed., London, 1830.

MILLER, FERDINAND H.; "The Ready Grammarian;" square 12mo, pp. 24: Ithaca,

New York, 1843.

MILLER, TOBIAS HAM; Murray's Abridgement, with Questions; 12mo, pp. 76:

Portsmouth, N. H., 1823.

MILLIGAN, Rev. GEORGE; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: Edin., 1831; 2d Ed.,

1839.

MOORE, THOMAS; "Orthography and Pronunciation;" 12mo, pp. 176: London,

1810.

MORGAN, JONATHAN, Jun., A. B.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 405: 1st Ed.,

Hallowell, Me., 1814.

MORLEY, CHARLES, A. B.; "School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 86: (with Cuts:) 1st

Ed., Hartford, Ct., 1836.

MOREY, AMOS C.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 106: Albany, N. Y., 1829.

MULKEY, WILLIAM; "An Abridgment of Walker's Rules on the Sounds of the

Letters;" 18mo, pp. 124: Boston. 1834. Fudge!

MULLIGAN, JOHN, A. M.; (1.) "Exposition of the Grammatical Structure of the

English Language;" small 8vo, pp. 574: New York, 1852. (2.) Same Abridged

for Schools; 12mo, pp. 301: N. Y., 1854.

MURRAY, ALEXANDER, D. D.; "The History of European Languages;" in two

vols., 8vo.; pp. 800.

MURRAY, ALEXANDER, Schoolmaster; "Easy English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 194: 3d

Ed., London, 1793.

MURRAY, LINDLEY; (1.) "English Grammar, Adapted to the Different Classes of

Learners;" 12mo, pp. 284: York, Eng., 1795; 2d Ed., 1796; 23d Ed., 1816.

(2.) "Abridgment of Murray's English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 105: "From the

30th English Ed.," New York, 1817. (3.) "An English Grammar;" in two

volumes, octavo; pp. 684: 4th American from the last English Ed.; New York,

1819. (4.) A Spelling-Book; 18mo, pp. 180: New York, 1819.

MYLINS, WM. F.; Gram., 12mo: England, 1809.

MYLNE, Rev. A., D. D.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 180: 11th Ed., Edinburgh,

1832.

NESBIT, A.; "An Introd. to English Parsing;" 18mo, pp. 213: 2d Ed., York,

England, 1823.

NEWBURY, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 152: 5th Ed., London, 1787.

NIGHTINGALE, Rev. J.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 96: 1st Ed., London, 1822.

NIXON, H.; (1.) "The English Parser;" 12mo, pp. 164: 1st Ed., London, 1826.

(2.) "New and Comprehensive English Grammar;" 12mo: 1st Ed., London, 1833.

NUTTING, RUFUS, A. M.; "A Practical Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 144: 3d Ed.,

Montpelier, Vt., 1826.

ODELL, J., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 205: 1st Ed., London, 1806.

OLIVER, EDWARD, D. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 178: 1st Ed., London,

1807.

OLIVER, SAMUEL; English Grammar; 8vo, pp. 377: 1st Ed., London, 1825.

PALMER, MARY; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 48: New York, 1803.

PARKER, RICHARD GREEN; (1.) "Exercises in Composition;" 12mo, pp. 106: 3d

Ed., Boston, 1833. (2.) "Aids to English Composition;" 12mo, pp. 418: 1st

Ed., Boston, 1844.

PARKER and FOX; "Progressive Exercises in English Grammar;" in three

separate parts, 12mo:--Part I, pp. 96; Boston, 1834: Part II, pp. 60;

Boston, 1835: Part III, pp. 122; Boston, 1840.

PARKHURST, JOHN L.; (1.) "A Systematic Introduction to English Grammar;"

18mo, pp. 104: Concord, N. H., 1820; 2d Ed., 1824. (2.) "English Grammar

for Beginners;" 18mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Andover, Mass., 1838.

PARSONS, SAMUEL H.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 107: 1st Ed., Philadelphia,

1836.

PEIRCE, JOHN; "The New American Spelling-Book," with "A Plain and Easy

Introduction to English Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 200: 6th Ed., Philadelphia,

1804. This Grammar is mostly copied from Harrison's.

PEIRCE, OLIVER B.; "The Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo, pp. 384:

1st Ed., New York, 1839. Also, Abridgement of the same; 18mo, pp. 144:

Boston, 1840.

PENGELLEY, EDWARD; English Gram.; 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., London, 1840.

PERLEY, DANIEL, M. D.; "A Grammar of the English Language;" 18mo, pp. 79:

1st Ed., Andover, Mass., 1834.

PERRY, WILLIAM; Grammar in Dict.; 12mo: Edinburgh, 1801.

PICKBOURN, JAMES; "Dissertation on the English Verb:" London, 1789.

PICKET, ALBERT; "Analytical School Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 252: New York, 1823;

2d Ed., 1824.

PINNEO, T. S., M. A., M. D.; (1.) "A Primary Grammar, for Beginners:"

Cincinnati. (2.) "Analytical Grammar of the E. Language:" 12mo, pp. 216:

Cincinnati, 1850; New York, 1853. (3.) "Pinneo's English Teacher; in which

is taught the Structure of Sentences by Analysis and Synthesis;" 12mo, pp.

240: Cincinnati, 1854.

PINNOCK, W.; (1.) A Catechism of E. Gram.; 18mo, pp. 70: 18th Ed., London,

1825. (2.) A Comprehensive Grammar; 12mo, pp. 318: 1st Ed., London, 1829.

POND, ENOCH, D. D.; "Murray's System of Eng. Grammar, Improved;" 12mo, pp.

228: 5th Ed., Worcester, Mass., 1835. Also, under the same title, a petty

Grammar with Cuts; 18mo, pp. 71: New Ed., Worcester, 1835.

POWERS, DANIEL, A. M.; E. Grammar; 12mo, pp. 188: 1st Ed., West Brookfleld,

Mass., 1845.

PRIESTLEY, JOSEPH, LL. D.; "The Rudiments of E. Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 202: 3d

Ed., London, 1772.

PUE, HUGH A.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 149: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1841.

PULLEN, P. H.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 321: London, 1820; 2d Ed., 1822.

PUTNAM, J. M.; "English Grammar;" (Murray's, Modified;) 18mo, pp. 162:

Concord, N. H., 1825; Ster., 1831.

PUTNAM, SAMUEL; "Putnam's Murray;" 18mo, pp. 108: Improved Ster. Ed.;

Dover, N. H., 1828.

PUTSEY, Rev. W.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 211: London, 1821; 2d Ed.,

1829.

QUACKENBOS, GEO. PAYN; (1.) "First Lessons in Composition." (2.) "Advanced

Course of Composition and Rhetoric;" 12mo, pp. 455: New York, 1854.

RAND, ASA; "Teacher's Manual," &c.; 18mo, pp. 90: 1st Ed., Boston, 1832.

REED, CALEB, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 30: 1st Ed., Boston, 1821.

REID, A.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 46: 2d Ed., London, 1839.

REID, JOHN, M. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 68: 1st Ed., Glasgow, 1830.

RICORD, F. W., A. M.; "The Youth's Grammar; or, Easy Lessons in Etymology;"

12mo, pp. 118: 1st Ed., N. Y., 1855.

RIGAN, JOHN; Grammar, 12mo: Dublin, 1823.

ROBBINS, MANASSEH; "Rudimental Lessons in Etym. and Synt.;" 12mo, pp. 70:

Prov., R. I., 1826.

ROBINSON, JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 95: 1st Ed., Maysville, 1830.

ROOME, Rev. T.; Gram.; 12mo: England, 1813.

ROSS, ROBERT; an American Grammar; 12mo, pp. 199: 7th Ed., Hartford, Ct.,

1782.

ROTHWELL, J.; English Grammar; 12mo: 2d Ed., London, 1797.

ROZZELL, WM.; English Grammar in Verse; 8vo: London, 1795.

RUSH, JAMES, M. D.; "Philosophy of the Human Voice;" 8vo: Philadelphia,

1833.

RUSSELL, Rev. J., D. D.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 168: London, 1835; 10th

Ed., 1842.

RUSSELL, WILLIAM; (1.) "A Grammar of Composition;" 12mo, pp. 150: Newhaven,

1823. (2.) "Lessons in Enunciation:" Boston, 1841. (3.) "Orthophony; or the

Cultivation of the Voice;" 12mo, pp. 300: improved Ed., Boston, 1847.

RUSSELL, WILLIAM E.: "An Abridgment of Murray's Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 142:

Hartford, 1819.

RYLAND, JOHN; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 164: 1st Ed., Northampton, Eng.,

1767.

SABINE, H., A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 120: 1st Ed., London, 1702.

SANBOBN, DYER H.; "An Analytical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo,

pp. 299: 1st Ed., Concord, N. H., 1836.

SANDERS, CHARLES W. and J. C.; "The Young Grammarian;" 12mo, pp. 120:

Rochester, N. Y., 1847.

SARGENT, EPES; "The Standard Speaker; a Treatise on Oratory and Elocution;"

small 8vo, pp. 558: Philadelphia, 1852.

SCOTT, WILLIAM; Grammar, 12mo: Edinb., 1797. Dictionary, with Grammar

prefixed; square, pp. 492: Cork, 1810.

SEARLE, Rev. THOMAS; Grammar in Verse; 18mo, pp. 114: 1st Ed., London,

1822.

SHATFORD, W.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 104: 1st Ed., London, 1834.

SHAW, Rev. JOHN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 259: 4th Ed., London, 1793.

SHERIDAN, THOMAS, A. M.; (1.) "Lectures on Elocution;" 12mo, pp. 185:

London, 1762; Troy, N. Y., 1803. (2.) "Lectures on the Art of Reading."

(3.) "A Rhetorical Grammar;" square 12mo, pp. 73: 3d Ed., Philadelphia,

1789. (4.) "Elements of English;" 12mo, pp. 69: Dublin, 1789. (5.) "A

Complete Dictionary of the English Language;" 1st Ed., 1780.

SHERMAN, JOHN; American Grammar; 12mo, pp. 323: 1st Ed., Trenton Falls, N.

Y., 1836.

SIMMONITE, W. J.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 228: 1st Ed., London, 1841.

SKILLERN, R. S., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 184: 2d Ed., Gloucester,

England, 1808. SMART, B. H.; (1.) "A Practical Grammar of English

Pronunciation;" 8vo: London, 1810. (2.) "The Accidence of English Grammar;"

12mo, pp. 52: London, 1841. (3.) "The Accidence and Principles of English

Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 280: London, 1841.

SMETHAM, THOMAS; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 168: 1st Ed., London, 1774.

SMITH, ELI; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 108: 1st Ed., Philadelphia, 1812.

SMITH, JOHN; Grammar, 8vo: Norwich, Eng., 1816.

SMITH, PETER, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 176: 1st Ed., Edinburgh,

1826.

SMITH, Rev. THOMAS; (1.) Alderson's "Orthographical Exercises," Copied;

18mo, pp. 108: 15th Ed., London, 1819. (2.) "Smith's Edition of L. Murray's

Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 128: London, 1832. Very petty authorship. SMITH,

ROSWELL C.; (1.) "English Grammar on the Inductive System;" 12mo, pp. 205:

Boston, 1830; 2d Ed., 1881. (2.) "English Grammar on the Productive

System;" 12mo, pp. 192: 2d Ed., New York, 1832. A sham.

SNYDER, W.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 164: 1st Ed., Winchester, Va., 1834.

SPALDING, CHARLES; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 36: 1st Ed., Onondaga, N. Y.,

1825.

SPEAR, MATTHEW P.; "The Teacher's Manual of English Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

116: 1st Ed., Boston, 1845.

SPENCER, GEORGE, A. M.; "An English Grammar on Synthetical Principles;"

12mo, pp. 178: New York, 1851.

STANIFORD, DANIEL, A. M.; "A Short but Comprehensive Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

96: Boston, 1807; 2d Ed., 1815.

STEARNS, GEORGE; English Grammar; 4to, pp. 17: 1st Ed., Boston, 1843.

STOCKWOOD, JOHN; Gram., 4to: London, 1590.

STORY, JOSHUA; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 180: 1st Ed., Newcastle, Eng.,

1778; 3d, 1783.

ST. QUENTIN, D., M. A.; "The Rudiments of General Gram.;" 12mo, pp. 163:

Lond., 1812.

SUTCLIFFE, JOSEPH, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 262; London, 1815; 2d

Ed., 1821.

SWETT, J., A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 192: Claremont, N. H., 1843;

2d Ed., 1844.

TICKEN, WILLIAM; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 147: 1st Ed., London, 1806.

TICKNOR, ELISHA, A. M.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 72: 3d Ed., Boston,

1794.

TOBITT, R.; "Grammatical Institutes;" (in Verse;) 12mo, pp. 72: 1st Ed.,

London, 1825.

TODD, LEWIS C.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 126: Fredonia, N. Y., 1826; 2d

Ed., 1827.

TOOKE, JOHN HORNE, A. M.; "Epea Pteroenta; or, the Diversions of Purley;" 2

vols., 8vo; pp. 924: 1st American, from the 2d London Ed.; Philadelphia,

1806.

TOWER, DAVID B., A. M.; "Gradual Lessons in Grammar;" small 12mo, pp. 180:

Boston, 1847.

TRENCH, RICHARD CHENEVIX, B. D; "On the Study of Words;" 12mo, pp. 236:

London, 1st Ed., 1851; 2d Ed., 1852: reprinted, New York, 1852.

TRINDER, WILLIAM M.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 116: 1st Ed., London, 1781.

TUCKER, BENJAMIN; "A Short Introd. to E. Gram.;" 18mo, pp. 36: 4th Ed.,

Phila., 1812.

TURNER, DANIEL, A. M.; English Grammar; 8vo: London, 1739.

TURNER, Rev. BRANDON, A. M.; Grammar from G. Brown's Inst.; 12mo, pp. 238:

Lond., 1841.

TWITCHELL, MARK; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 106: 1st Ed., Portland. Me.,

1825.

USSHER, G. NEVILLE; English Grammar: 12mo, pp. 132: London, 1787; 3d Amer.

Ed., Exeter, N. H., 1804.

WALDO, JOHN; "Rudiments," 12mo; Philad., 1813: "Abridg't," 18mo, pp. 124;

Philadelphia, 1814.

WALKER, JOHN; (1.) E. Gram., 12mo, pp. 118: London, 1806. (2.) "Elements of

Elocution;" 8vo, pp. 379: Boston, 1810. (3.) Rhyming Dict., 12mo; (4.)

Pronouncing Dict., 8vo; and other valuable works.

WALKER, WILLIAM, B. D.; (1.) "A Treatise of English Particles;" 12mo, pp.

488: London, 1653; 10th Ed., 1691. (2.) "The Art of Teaching Grammar;"

large 18mo, pp. 226: 8th Ed., London, 1717.

WALLIS, JOHN, D. D.; E. Gram. in Latin; 8vo, pp. 281:. Lond., 1653; 6th

Ed., 1765.

WARD, H.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 151: Whitehaven, England, 1777.

WARD, JOHN, LL. D.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 238: London, 1768.

WARD, WILLIAM, A. M.; "A Practical Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 192: York, England,

1765.

WARE, JONATHAN, Esq.; "A New Introduction to English Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

48: Windsor, Vt., 1814.

WASE, CHRISTOPHER, M. A.; "An Essay of a Practical Gram.," 12mo, pp. 79:

Lond., 1660.

WATT, THOMAS, A. M.; "Gram. Made Easy;" 18mo, pp. 92: Edinburgh, 1708.; 5th

Ed., 1742.

WEBBER, SAMUEL, A. M., M. D.; "An Introd. to E. Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 116:

Cambridge, Mass., 1832.

WEBSTER, NOAH, LL. D.; (1.) "A Plain and Comprehensive Grammar;" 12mo, pp.

131: 8th Ed., Hartford, Ct., 1800. (2.) "A Philosophical and Practical

Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 250: Newhaven, Ct., 1807. (3.) "Rudiments of English

Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 87: New York, 1811. (4.) "An Improved Grammar of the E.

L.;" 12mo, pp. 180: Newhaven, 1831. (5.) "An American Dictionary of the E.

L.," 4to; and an Abridgement, 8vo.

WELCH, A. S.; "Analysis of the English Sentence;" 12mo, pp. 264: New York,

1854. Of no value.

WELD, ALLEN H., A. M.; (1.) "English Grammar Illustrated;" 12mo, pp. 228:

Portland, Me., 1846; 2d Ed., 1847: "Abridged Edition," Boston, 1849.

"Improved Edition," much altered: Portland, 1852. (2.) "Parsing Book,

containing Rules of Syntax," &c.; 18mo, pp. 112: Portland, 1847.

WELLS, WILLIAM H., M. A.; "Wells's School Grammar;" 12mo, pp. 220: 1st Ed.,

Andover, 1846; "113th Thousand," 1850.

WHITE, MR. JAMES; "The English Verb;" 8vo, pp. 302: 1st Ed., London, 1761.

WHITING, JOSEPH, A. M.; English Grammar; 12mo: Detroit, 1845.

WHITWORTH, T.; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 216: 1st Ed., London, 1819.

WICKES, EDWARD WALTER; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 106: 2d Ed., London,

1841.

WILBER & LIVINGSTON; "The Grammatical Alphabet;" (with a Chart;) 18mo, pp.

36: 2d Ed., Albany, 1815.

WILBUR, JOSIAH; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 132: Bellows Falls, N. H., 1815;

2d Ed., 1822.

WILCOX, A. F.; "A Catechetical and Practical Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 110: 1st

Ed., Newhaven, Ct., 1828.

WILLARD, SAMUEL: English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 54: 1st Ed., Greenfield, Mass.,

1816.

WILLIAMS, MRS. HONORIA; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 226: London, 1823; 3d

Ed., 1826.

WILSON, CHARLES, D. D.; "Elements of Hebrew Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 398: 3d Ed.,

London, 1802.

WILSON, GEORGE; English Grammar; 18mo; London, 1777.

WILSON, JAMES P., D. D.: "An Essay on Grammar;" 8vo, pp. 281: Philadelphia,

1817.

WILSON, JOHN; "A Treatise on English Punctuation;" 12mo, pp. 204: Boston,

1850.

WILSON, Rev. J.; English Grammar; 18mo, pp. 184: 3d Ed., Congleton,

England, 1803.

WINNING, Rev. W. B., M. A.; "A Manual of Comparative Philology;" 8vo, pp.

291: London, 1838.

WISEMAN, CHARLES; an English Grammar, 12mo: London, 1765.

WOOD, HELEN; English Grammar; 12mo, pp. 207: London, 1st Ed., 1827; 6th

Ed., 1841.

WOOD, Rev. JAMES, D. D; English Grammar; 12mo: London, 1778.

WOODWORTH, A.; "Grammar Demonstrated;" 12mo, pp. 72: 1st Ed., Auburn, N.

Y., 1823.

WORCESTER, JOSEPH, E.; "Universal and Critical Dictionary of the English

Language;" 1st Ed., Boston, 1846.

WORCESTER, SAMUEL; "A First Book of English Grammar;" 18mo, pp. 86; Boston,

1831.

WRIGHT, ALBERT D.; "Analytical Orthography;" 18mo, pp. 112: 2d Ed.,

Cazenovia, N. Y., 1842.

WRIGHT, JOSEPH W.; "A Philosophical Grammar of the English Language;" 12mo,

pp. 252: New York and London, 1838.

[Asterism] The \_Names\_, or \_Heads\_, in the foregoing alphabetical

Catalogue, are 452; the \_Works\_ mentioned are 548; the \_Grammars\_ are 463;

the \_other Books\_ are 85.

END OF THE CATALOGUE.

INTRODUCTION

HISTORICAL AND CRITICAL

CHAPTER I.

OF THE SCIENCE OF GRAMMAR.

"Hæc de Grammatica quam brevissime potui: non ut omnia dicerem sectatus,

(quod infinitum erat,) sed ut maxima necessaria."--QUINTILIAN. \_De Inst.

Orat.\_, Lib. i, Cap. x.

1. Language, in the proper sense of the term, is peculiar to man; so that,

without a miraculous assumption of human powers, none but human beings can

make words the vehicle of thought. An imitation of some of the articulate

sounds employed in speech, may be exhibited by parrots, and sometimes by

domesticated ravens, and we know that almost all brute animals have their

peculiar natural voices, by which they indicate their feelings, whether

pleasing or painful. But \_language\_ is an attribute of reason, and differs

essentially not only from all brute voices, but even from all the

chattering, jabbering, and babbling of our own species, in which there is

not an intelligible meaning, with division of thought, and distinction of

words.

2. Speech results from the joint exercise of the best and noblest faculties

of human nature, from our rational understanding and our social affection;

and is, in the proper use of it, the peculiar ornament and distinction of

man, whether we compare him with other orders in the creation, or view him

as an individual preëminent among his fellows. Hence that science which

makes known the nature and structure of speech, and immediately concerns

the correct and elegant use of language, while it surpasses all the

conceptions of the stupid or unlearned, and presents nothing that can seem

desirable to the sensual and grovelling, has an intrinsic dignity which

highly commends it to all persons of sense and taste, and makes it most a

favourite with the most gifted minds. That science is Grammar. And though

there be some geniuses who affect to despise the trammels of grammar rules,

to whom it must be conceded that many things which have been unskillfully

taught as such, deserve to be despised; yet it is true, as Dr. Adam

remarks, that, "The study of Grammar has been considered an object of great

importance by the wisest men in all ages."--\_Preface to Latin and English

Gram.\_, p. iii.

3. Grammar bears to language several different relations, and acquires from

each a nature leading to a different definition. \_First\_, It is to

language, as knowledge is to the thing known; and as doctrine, to the

truths it inculcates. In these relations, grammar is a science. It is the

first of what have been called the seven sciences, or liberal branches of

knowledge; namely, grammar, logic, rhetoric, arithmetic, geometry,

astronomy, and music. \_Secondly\_, It is as skill, to the thing to be done;

and as power, to the instruments it employs. In these relations, grammar is

an art; and as such, has long been defined, "\_ars rectè scribendi, rectèque

loquendi\_" the art of writing and speaking correctly. \_Thirdly\_, It is as

navigation, to the ocean, which nautic skill alone enables men to traverse.

In this relation, theory and practice combine, and grammar becomes, like

navigation, a practical science. \_Fourthly\_, It is as a chart, to a coast

which we would visit. In this relation, our grammar is a text-book, which

we take as a guide, or use as a help to our own observation. \_Fifthly\_, It

is as a single voyage, to the open sea, the highway of nations. Such is our

meaning, when we speak of the grammar of a particular text or passage.

4. Again: Grammar is to language a sort of self-examination. It turns the

faculty of speech or writing upon itself for its own elucidation; and makes

the tongue or the pen explain the uses and abuses to which both are liable,

as well as the nature and excellency of that power, of which, these are the

two grand instruments. From this account, some may begin to think that in

treating of grammar we are dealing with something too various and

changeable for the understanding to grasp; a dodging Proteus of the

imagination, who is ever ready to assume some new shape, and elude the

vigilance of the inquirer. But let the reader or student do his part; and,

if he please, follow us with attention. We will endeavour, with welded

links, to bind this Proteus, in such a manner that he shall neither escape

from our hold, nor fail to give to the consulter an intelligible and

satisfactory response. Be not discouraged, generous youth. Hark to that

sweet far-reaching note:

"Sed, quanto ille magis formas se vertet in omnes,

Tanto, nate, magis contende tenacia vincla."

VIRGIL. Geor. IV, 411.

"But thou, the more he varies forms, beware

To strain his fetters with a stricter care."

DRYDEN'S VIRGIL.

5. If for a moment we consider the good and the evil that are done in the

world through the medium of speech, we shall with one voice acknowledge,

that not only the faculty itself, but also the manner in which it is used,

is of incalculable importance to the welfare of man. But this reflection

does not directly enhance our respect for grammar, because it is not to

language as the vehicle of moral or of immoral sentiment, of good or of

evil to mankind, that the attention of the grammarian is particularly

directed. A consideration of the subject in these relations, pertains

rather to the moral philosopher. Nor are the arts of logic and rhetoric now

considered to be properly within the grammarian's province. Modern science

assigns to these their separate places, and restricts grammar, which at one

period embraced all learning, to the knowledge of language, as respects its

fitness to be the vehicle of any particular thought or sentiment which the

speaker or writer may wish to convey by it. Accordingly grammar is commonly

defined, by writers upon the subject, in the special sense of an art--"the

\_art\_ of speaking or writing a language with propriety or

correctness."--\_Webster's Dict.\_

6. Lily says, "Grammatica est rectè scribendi atque loquendi ars;" that is,

"Grammar is the art of writing and speaking correctly." Despauter, too, in

his definition, which is quoted in a preceding paragraph, not improperly

placed writing first, as being that with which grammar is primarily

concerned. For it ought to be remembered, that over any fugitive colloquial

dialect, which has never been fixed by visible signs, grammar has no

control; and that the speaking which the art or science of grammar teaches,

is exclusively that which has reference to a knowledge of letters. It is

the certain tendency of writing, to improve speech. And in proportion as

books are multiplied, and the knowledge of written language is diffused,

local dialects, which are beneath the dignity of grammar, will always be

found to grow fewer, and their differences less. There are, in the various

parts of the world, many languages to which the art of grammar has never

yet been applied; and to which, therefore, the definition or true idea of

grammar, however general, does not properly extend. And even where it has

been applied, and is now honoured as a popular branch of study, there is

yet great room for improvement: barbarisms and solecisms have not been

rebuked away as they deserve to be.

7. Melancthon says, "Grammatica est certa loquendi ac scribendi ratio,

Latinis Latinè." Vossius, "Ars benè loquendi eóque et scribendi, atque id

Latinis Latinè." Dr. Prat, "\_Grammatica est rectè loquendi atque scribendi

ars.\_" Ruddiman also, in his Institutes of Latin Grammar, reversed the

terms \_writing\_ and \_speaking\_, and defined grammar, "\_ars recè loquendi

scribendique\_;" and, either from mere imitation, or from the general

observation that speech precedes writing, this arrangement of the words has

been followed by most modern grammarians. Dr. Lowth embraces both terms in

a more general one, and says, "Grammar is the art of \_rightly expressing\_

our thoughts by words." It is, however, the province of grammar, to guide

us not merely in the expression of our own thoughts, but also in our

apprehension of the thoughts, and our interpretation of the words, of

others. Hence, Perizonius, in commenting upon Sanctius's imperfect

definition, "\_Grammatica est ars rectè loquendi\_," not improperly asks,

"\_et quidni intelligendi et explicandi\_?" "and why not also of

understanding and explaining?" Hence, too, the art of \_reading\_ is

virtually a part of grammar; for it is but the art of understanding and

speaking correctly that which we have before us on paper. And Nugent has

accordingly given us the following definition: "Grammar is the art of

reading, speaking, and writing a language by rules."--\_Introduction to

Dict.\_, p. xii.[1]

8. The word \_rectè\_, rightly, truly, correctly, which occurs in most of the

foregoing Latin definitions, is censured by the learned Richard Johnson, in

his Grammatical Commentaries, on account of the vagueness of its meaning.

He says, it is not only ambiguous by reason of its different uses in the

Latin classics, but destitute of any signification proper to grammar. But

even if this be true as regards its earlier application, it may well be

questioned, whether by frequency of use it has not acquired a signification

which makes it proper at the present time. The English word \_correctly\_

seems to be less liable to such an objection; and either this brief term,

or some other of like import, (as, "with correctness"--"with propriety,")

is still usually employed to tell what grammar is. But can a boy learn by

such means what it is, \_to speak and write grammatically\_? In one sense, he

can; and in an other, he cannot. He may derive, from any of these terms,

some idea of grammar as distinguished from other arts; but no simple

definition of this, or of any other art, can communicate to him that learns

it, the skill of an artist.

9. R. Johnson speaks at large of \_the relation\_ of words to each other in

sentences, as constituting in his view the most essential part of grammar;

and as being a point very much overlooked, or very badly explained, by

grammarians in general. His censure is just. And it seems to be as

applicable to nearly all the grammars now in use, as to those which he

criticised a hundred and thirty years ago. But perhaps he gives to the

relation of words, (which is merely their dependence on other words

according to the sense,) an earlier introduction and a more prominent

place, than it ought to have in a general system of grammar. To the right

use of language, he makes four things to be necessary. In citing these, I

vary the language, but not the substance or the order of his positions.

\_First\_, That we should speak and write words according to the

significations which belong to them: the teaching of which now pertains to

lexicography, and not to grammar, except incidentally. "\_Secondly\_, That we

should observe \_the relations\_ that words have one to another in sentences,

and represent those relations by such variations, and particles, as are

usual with authors in that language." \_Thirdly\_, That we should acquire a

knowledge of the proper sounds of the letters, and pay a due regard to

accent in pronunciation. \_Fourthly\_, That we should learn to write words

with their proper letters, spelling them as literary men generally do.

10. From these positions, (though he sets aside the first, as pertaining to

lexicography, and not now to grammar, as it formerly did,) the learned

critic deduces first his four parts of the subject, and then his definition

of grammar. "Hence," says he, "there arise Four Parts of Grammar;

\_Analogy\_, which treats of the several parts of speech, their definitions,

accidents, and formations; \_Syntax\_, which treats of the use of those

things in construction, according to their relations; \_Orthography\_, which

treats of spelling; and \_Prosody\_, which treats of accenting in

pronunciation. So, then, the true definition of Grammar is this: Grammar is

the art of \_expressing the relations\_ of things in construction, with due

accent in speaking, and orthography in writing, according to the custom of

those whose language we learn." Again he adds: "The word \_relation\_ has

other senses, taken by itself; but yet the \_relation of words one to

another in a sentence\_, has no other signification than what I intend by

it, namely, of cause, effect, means, end, manner, instrument, object,

adjunct, and the like; which are names given by logicians to those

relations under which the mind comprehends things, and therefore the most

proper words to explain them to others. And if such things are too hard for

children, then grammar is too hard; for there neither is, nor can be, any

grammar without them. And a little experience will satisfy any man, that

the young will as easily apprehend them, as \_gender, number, declension\_,

and other grammar-terms." See \_R. Johnson's Grammatical Commentaries\_, p.

4.

11. It is true, that the \_relation of words\_--by which I mean that

connexion between them, which the train of thought forms and suggests--or

that dependence which one word has on an other according to the sense--lies

at the foundation of all syntax. No rule or principle of construction can

ever have any applicability beyond the limits, or contrary to the order, of

this relation. To see what it is in any given case, is but to understand

the meaning of the phrase or sentence. And it is plain, that no word ever

necessarily agrees with an other, with which it is not thus connected in

the mind of him who uses it. No word ever governs an other, to which the

sense does not direct it. No word is ever required to stand immediately

before or after an other, to which it has not some relation according to

the meaning of the passage. Here then are the relation, agreement,

government, and arrangement, of words in sentences; and these make up the

whole of syntax--but not the whole of grammar. To this one part of grammar,

therefore, the relation of words is central and fundamental; and in the

other parts also, there are some things to which the consideration of it is

incidental; but there are many more, like spelling, pronunciation,

derivation, and whatsoever belongs merely to letters, syllables, and the

forms of words, with which it has, in fact, no connexion. The relation of

words, therefore, should be clearly and fully explained in its proper

place, under the head of syntax; but the general idea of grammar will not

be brought nearer to truth, by making it to be "the art of \_expressing the

relations\_ of things in construction," &c., according to the foregoing

definition.

12. The term \_grammar\_ is derived from the Greek word [Greek: gramma], a

letter. The art or science to which this term is applied, had its origin,

not in cursory speech, but in the practice of writing; and speech, which is

first in the order of nature, is last with reference to grammar. The matter

or common subject of grammar, is language in general; which, being of two

kinds, \_spoken\_ and \_written\_, consists of certain combinations either of

sounds or of visible signs, employed for the expression of thought. Letters

and sounds, though often heedlessly confounded in the definitions given of

vowels, consonants, &c., are, in their own nature, very different things.

They address themselves to different senses; the former, to the sight; the

latter, to the hearing. Yet, by a peculiar relation arbitrarily established

between them, and in consequence of an almost endless variety in the

combinations of either, they coincide in a most admirable manner, to effect

the great object for which language was bestowed or invented; namely, to

furnish a sure medium for the communication of thought, and the

preservation of knowledge.

13. All languages, however different, have many things in common. There are

points of a philosophical character, which result alike from the analysis

of any language, and are founded on the very nature of human thought, and

that of the sounds or other signs which are used to express it. When such

principles alone are taken as the subject of inquiry, and are treated, as

they sometimes have been, without regard to any of the idioms of particular

languages, they constitute what is called General, Philosophical, or

Universal Grammar. But to teach, with Lindley Murray and some others, that

"Grammar may be considered as \_consisting of two species\_, Universal and

Particular," and that the latter merely "applies those general principles

to a particular language," is to adopt a twofold absurdity at the

outset.[2] For every cultivated language has its particular grammar, in

which whatsoever is universal, is necessarily included; but of which,

universal or general principles form only a part, and that comparatively

small. We find therefore in grammar no "two species" of the same genus; nor

is the science or art, as commonly defined and understood, susceptible of

division into any proper and distinct sorts, except with reference to

different languages--as when we speak of Greek, Latin, French, or English

grammar.

14. There is, however, as I have suggested, a certain science or philosophy

of language, which has been denominated Universal Grammar; being made up of

those points only, in which many or all of the different languages

preserved in books, are found to coincide. All speculative minds are fond

of generalization; and, in the vastness of the views which may thus be

taken of grammar, such may find an entertainment which they never felt in

merely learning to speak and write grammatically. But the pleasure of such

contemplations is not the earliest or the most important fruit of the

study. The first thing is, to know and understand the grammatical

construction of our own language. Many may profit by this acquisition, who

extend not their inquiries to the analogies or the idioms of other tongues.

It is true, that every item of grammatical doctrine is the more worthy to

be known and regarded, in proportion as it approaches to universality. But

the principles of all practical grammar, whether universal or particular,

common or peculiar, must first be learned in their application to some one

language, before they can be distinguished into such classes; and it is

manifest, both from reason and from experience, that the youth of any

nation not destitute of a good book for the purpose, may best acquire a

knowledge of those principles, from the grammatical study of their native

tongue.

15. Universal or Philosophical Grammar is a large field for speculation and

inquiry, and embraces many things which, though true enough in themselves,

are unfit to be incorporated with any system of practical grammar, however

comprehensive its plan. Many authors have erred here. With what is merely

theoretical, such a system should have little to do. Philosophy, dealing in

generalities, resolves speech not only as a whole into its constituent

parts and separable elements, as anatomy shows the use and adaptation of

the parts and joints of the human body; but also as a composite into its

matter and form, as one may contemplate that same body in its entireness,

yet as consisting of materials, some solid and some fluid, and these

curiously modelled to a particular figure. Grammar, properly so called,

requires only the former of these analyses; and in conducting the same, it

descends to the thousand minute particulars which are necessary to be known

in practice. Nor are such things to be despised as trivial and low:

ignorance of what is common and elementary, is but the more disgraceful for

being ignorance of mere rudiments. "Wherefore," says Quintilian, "they are

little to be respected, who represent this art as mean and barren; in

which, unless you faithfully lay the foundation for the future orator,

whatever superstructure you raise will tumble into ruins. It is an art,

necessary to the young, pleasant to the old, the sweet companion of the

retired, and one which in reference to every kind of study has in itself

more of utility than of show. Let no one therefore despise as

inconsiderable the elements of grammar. Not because it is a great thing, to

distinguish consonants from vowels, and afterwards divide them into

semivowels and mutes; but because, to those who enter the interior parts of

this temple of science, there will appear in many things a great subtilty,

which is fit not only to sharpen the wits of youth, but also to exercise

the loftiest erudition and science."--\_De Institutione Oratoria\_, Lib. i,

Cap. iv.

16. Again, of the arts which spring from the composition of language. Here

the art of logic, aiming solely at conviction, addresses the understanding

with cool deductions of unvarnished truth; rhetoric, designing to move, in

some particular direction, both the judgement and the sympathies of men,

applies itself to the affections in order to persuade; and poetry, various

in its character and tendency, solicits the imagination, with a view to

delight, and in general also to instruct. But grammar, though intimately

connected with all these, and essential to them in practice, is still too

distinct from each to be identified with any of them. In regard to dignity

and interest, these higher studies seem to have greatly the advantage over

particular grammar; but who is willing to be an ungrammatical poet, orator,

or logician? For him I do not write. But I would persuade my readers, that

an acquaintance with that grammar which respects the genius of their

vernacular tongue, is of primary importance to all who would cultivate a

literary taste, and is a necessary introduction to the study of other

languages. And it may here be observed, for the encouragement of the

student, that as grammar is essentially the same thing in all languages, he

who has well mastered that of his own, has overcome more than half the

difficulty of learning another; and he whose knowledge of words is the most

extensive, has the fewest obstacles to encounter in proceeding further.

17. It was the "original design" of grammar, says Dr. Adam, to facilitate

"the acquisition of languages;" and, of all practical treatises on the

subject, this is still the main purpose. In those books which are to

prepare the learner to translate from one tongue into another, seldom is

any thing else attempted. In those also which profess to explain the right

use of vernacular speech, must the same purpose be ever paramount, and the

"original design" be kept in view. But the grammarian may teach many things

incidentally. One cannot learn a language, without learning at the same

time a great many opinions, facts, and principles, of some kind or other,

which are necessarily embodied in it. For all language proceeds from, and

is addressed to, the understanding; and he that perceives not the meaning

of what he reads, makes no acquisition even of the language itself. To the

science of grammar, the \_nature of the ideas\_ conveyed by casual examples,

is not very essential: to the learner, it is highly important. The best

thoughts in the best diction should furnish the models for youthful study

and imitation; because such language is not only the most worthy to be

remembered, but the most easy to be understood. A distinction is also to be

made between use and abuse. In nonsense, absurdity, or falsehood, there can

never be any grammatical authority; because, however language may be

abused, the usage which gives law to speech, is still that usage which is

founded upon the \_common sense\_ of mankind.

18. Grammar appeals to reason, as well as to authority, but to what extent

it should do so, has been matter of dispute. "The knowledge of useful

arts," says Sanctius, "is not an invention of human ingenuity, but an

emanation from the Deity, descending from above for the use of man, as

Minerva sprung from the brain of Jupiter. Wherefore, unless thou give

thyself wholly to laborious research into the nature of things, and

diligently examine the \_causes and reasons\_ of the art thou teachest,

believe me, thou shalt but see with other men's eyes, and hear with other

men's ears. But the minds of many are preoccupied with a certain perverse

opinion, or rather ignorant conceit, that in grammar, or the art of

speaking, there are no causes, and that reason is scarcely to be appealed

to for any thing;--than which idle notion, I know of nothing more

foolish;--nothing can be thought of which is more offensive. Shall man,

endowed with reason, do, say, or contrive any thing, without design, and

without understanding? Hear the philosophers; who positively declare that

nothing comes to pass without a cause. Hear Plato himself; who affirms that

names and words subsist by nature, and contends that language is derived

from nature, and not from art."

19. "I know," says he, "that the Aristotelians think otherwise; but no one

will doubt that names are the signs, and as it were the instruments, of

things. But the instrument of any art is so adapted to that art, that for

any other purpose it must seem unfit; thus with an auger we bore, and with

a saw we cut wood; but we split stones with wedges, and wedges are driven

with heavy mauls. We cannot therefore but believe that those who first gave

names to things, did it with design; and this, I imagine, Aristotle himself

understood when he said, \_ad placitum nomina significare.\_ For those who

contend that names were made by chance, are no less audacious than if they

would endeavour to persuade us, that the whole order of the universe was

framed together fortuitously."

20. "You will see," continues he, "that in the first language, whatever it

was, the names of things were taken from Nature herself; but, though I

cannot affirm this to have been the case in other tongues, yet I can easily

persuade myself that in every tongue a reason can be rendered for the

application of every name; and that this reason, though it is in many cases

obscure, is nevertheless worthy of investigation. Many things which were

not known to the earlier philosophers, were brought to light by Plato;

after the death of Plato, many were discovered by Aristotle; and Aristotle

was ignorant of many which are now everywhere known. For truth lies hid,

but nothing is more precious than truth. But you will say, 'How can there

be any certain origin to names, when one and the same thing is called by

different names, in the several parts of the world?' I answer, of the same

thing there may be different causes, of which some people may regard one,

and others, an other. \* \* \* There is therefore no doubt, that of all

things, even of words, a reason is to be rendered: and if we know not what

that reason is, when we are asked; we ought rather to confess that we do

not know, than to affirm that none can be given. I know that Scaliger

thinks otherwise; but this is the true account of the matter."

21. "These several observations," he remarks further, "I have unwillingly

brought together against those stubborn critics who, while they explode

reason from grammar, insist so much on the testimonies of the learned. But

have they never read Quintilian, who says, (Lib. i, Cap. 6,) that,

'Language is established by reason, antiquity, authority, and custom?' He

therefore does not exclude reason, but makes it the principal thing. Nay,

in a manner, Laurentius, and other grammatists, even of their fooleries,

are forward to offer \_reasons\_, such as they are. Moreover, use does not

take place without reason; otherwise, it ought to be called abuse, and not

use. But from use authority derives all its force; for when it recedes from

use, authority becomes nothing: whence Cicero reproves Coelius and Marcus

Antonius for speaking according to their own fancy, and not according to

use. But, 'Nothing can be lasting,' says Curtius, (Lib. iv,) 'which is not

based upon reason.' It remains, therefore, that of all things the reason be

first assigned; and then, if it can be done, we may bring forward

testimonies; that the thing, having every advantage, may be made the more

clear."--\_Sanctii Minerva\_, Lib. i, Cap. 2.

22. Julius Cæsar Scaliger, from whose opinion Sanctius dissents above,

seems to limit the science of grammar to bounds considerably too narrow,

though he found within them room for the exercise of much ingenuity and

learning. He says, "Grammatica est scientia loquendi ex usu; neque enim

constituit regulas scientibus usus modum, sed ex eorum statis

frequentibusque usurpatiombus colligit communem rationem loquendi, quam

discentibus traderet."--\_De Causis L. Latinæ\_, Lib. iv, Cap. 76. "Grammar

is the science of speaking according to use; for it does not establish

rules for those who know the manner of use, but from the settled and

frequent usages of these, gathers the common fashion of speaking, which it

should deliver to learners." This limited view seems not only to exclude

from the science the use of the pen, but to exempt the learned from any

obligation to respect the rules prescribed for the initiation of the young.

But I have said, and with abundant authority, that the acquisition of a

good style of writing is the main purpose of the study; and, surely, the

proficients and adepts in the art can desire for themselves no such

exemption. Men of genius, indeed, sometimes affect to despise the pettiness

of all grammatical instructions; but this can be nothing else than

affectation, since the usage of the learned is confessedly the basis of all

such instructions, and several of the loftiest of their own rank appear on

the list of grammarians.

23. Quintilian, whose authority is appealed to above, belonged to that age

in which the exegesis of histories, poems, and other writings, was

considered an essential part of grammar. He therefore, as well as Diomedes,

and other ancient writers, divided the grammarian's duties into two parts;

the one including what is now called grammar, and the other the

explanation of authors, and the stigmatizing of the unworthy. Of the

opinion referred to by Sanctius, it seems proper to make here an ampler

citation. It shall be attempted in English, though the paragraph is not an

easy one to translate. I understand the author to say, "Speakers, too, have

their rules to observe; and writers, theirs. Language is established by

reason, antiquity, authority, and custom. Of reason the chief ground is

analogy, but sometimes etymology. Ancient things have a certain majesty,

and, as I might say, religion, to commend them. Authority is wont to be

sought from orators and historians; the necessity of metre mostly excuses

the poets. When the judgement of the chief masters of eloquence passes for

reason, even error seems right to those who follow great leaders. But, of

the art of speaking, custom is the surest mistress; for speech is evidently

to be used as money, which has upon it a public stamp. Yet all these things

require a penetrating judgement, especially analogy; the force of which is,

that one may refer what is doubtful, to something similar that is clearly

established, and thus prove uncertain things by those which are

sure."--QUINT, \_de Inst. Orat.\_, Lib. i, Cap. 6, p. 48.

24. The science of grammar, whatever we may suppose to be its just limits,

does not appear to have been better cultivated in proportion as its scope

was narrowed. Nor has its application to our tongue, in particular, ever

been made in such a manner, as to do \_great\_ honour to the learning or the

talents of him that attempted it. What is new to a nation, may be old to

the world. The development of the intellectual powers of youth by

instruction in the classics, as well as the improvement of their taste by

the exhibition of what is elegant in literature, is continually engaging

the attention of new masters, some of whom may seem to effect great

improvements; but we must remember that the concern itself is of no recent

origin. Plato and Aristotle, who were great masters both of grammar and of

philosophy, taught these things ably at Athens, in the fourth century

\_before\_ Christ. Varro, the grammarian, usually styled the most learned of

the Romans, was \_contemporary\_ with the Saviour and his apostles.

Quintilian lived in the \_first\_ century of our era, and before he wrote his

most celebrated book, taught a school twenty years in Rome, and received

from the state a salary which made him rich. This "consummate guide of

wayward youth," as the poet Martial called him, being neither ignorant of

what had been done by others, nor disposed to think it a light task to

prescribe the right use of his own language, was at first slow to undertake

the work upon which his fame now reposes; and, after it was begun, diligent

to execute it worthily, that it might turn both to his own honour, and to

the real advancement of learning.

25. He says, at the commencement of his book: "After I had obtained a quiet

release from those labours which for twenty years had devolved upon me as

an instructor of youth, certain persons familiarly demanded of me, that I

should compose something concerning the proper manner of speaking; but for

a long time I withstood their solicitations, because I knew there were

already illustrious authors in each language, by whom many things which

might pertain to such a work, had been very diligently written, and left to

posterity. But the reason which I thought would obtain for me an easier

excuse, did but excite more earnest entreaty; because, amidst the various

opinions of earlier writers, some of whom were not even consistent with

themselves, the choice had become difficult; so that my friends seemed to

have a right to enjoin upon me, if not the labour of producing new

instructions, at least that of judging concerning the old. But although I

was persuaded not so much by the hope of supplying what was required, as by

the shame of refusing, yet, as the matter opened itself before me, I

undertook of my own accord a much greater task than had been imposed; that

while I should thus oblige my very good friends by a fuller compliance, I

might not enter a common path and tread only in the footsteps of others.

For most other writers who have treated of the art of speaking, have

proceeded in such a manner as if upon adepts in every other kind of

doctrine they would lay the last touch in eloquence; either despising as

little things the studies which we first learn, or thinking them not to

fall to their share in the division which should be made of the

professions; or, what indeed is next to this, hoping no praise or thanks

for their ingenuity about things which, although necessary, lie far from

ostentation: the tops of buildings make a show, their foundations are

unseen."--\_Quintiliani de Inst. Orat., Prooemium.\_

26. But the reader may ask, "What have all these things to do with English

Grammar?" I answer, they help to show us whence and what it is. Some

acquaintance with the history of grammar as a science, as well as some

knowledge of the structure of other languages than our own, is necessary to

him who professes to write for the advancement of this branch of

learning--and for him also who would be a competent judge of what is thus

professed. Grammar must not forget her origin. Criticism must not resign

the protection of letters. The national literature of a country is in the

keeping, not of the people at large, but of authors and teachers. But a

grammarian presumes to be a judge of authorship, and a teacher of teachers;

and is it to the honour of England or America, that in both countries so

many are countenanced in this assumption of place, who can read no language

but their mother tongue? English Grammar is not properly an indigenous

production, either of this country or of Britain; because it is but a

branch of the general science of philology--a new variety, or species,

sprung up from the old stock long ago transplanted from the soil of Greece

and Rome.

27. It is true, indeed, that neither any ancient system of grammatical

instruction nor any grammar of an other language, however contrived, can be

entirely applicable to the present state of our tongue; for languages must

needs differ greatly one from an other, and even that which is called the

same, may come in time to differ greatly from what it once was. But the

general analogies of speech, which are the central principles of grammar,

are but imperfectly seen by the man of one language. On the other hand, it

is possible to know much of those general principles, and yet be very

deficient in what is peculiar to our own tongue. Real improvement in the

grammar of our language, must result from a view that is neither partial

nor superficial. "Time, sorry artist," as was said of old, "makes all he

handles worse." And Lord Bacon, seeming to have this adage in view,

suggests: "If Time of course alter all things to the worse, and Wisdom and

Counsel shall not alter them to the better, what shall be the

end?"--\_Bacon's Essays\_, p. 64.

28. Hence the need that an able and discreet grammarian should now and then

appear, who with skillful hand can effect those corrections which a change

of fashion or the ignorance of authors may have made necessary; but if he

is properly qualified for his task, he will do all this without a departure

from any of the great principles of Universal Grammar. He will surely be

very far from thinking, with a certain modern author, whom I shall notice

in an other chapter, that, "He is bound to take words and explain them as

he finds them in his day, \_without any regard to their ancient construction

and application\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 28. The whole history of every

word, so far as he can ascertain it, will be the view under which he will

judge of what is right or wrong in the language which he teaches. Etymology

is neither the whole of this view, nor yet to be excluded from it. I concur

not therefore with Dr. Campbell, who, to make out a strong case,

extravagantly says, "It is \_never from an attention to etymology\_, which

would frequently mislead us, but from custom, the only infallible guide in

this matter, that the meanings of words in present use must be

learnt."--\_Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, p. 188. Jamieson too, with an

implicitness little to be commended, takes this passage from Campbell; and,

with no other change than that of "\_learnt\_" to "\_learned\_" publishes it as

a corollary of his own.--\_Grammar of Rhetoric\_, p. 42. It is folly to state

for truth what is so obviously wrong. Etymology and custom are seldom at

odds; and where they are so, the latter can hardly be deemed infallible.

CHAPTER II.

OF GRAMMATICAL AUTHORSHIP.

"Respondeo, dupliciter aliquem dici grammaticum, arte et professione.

Grammatici vera arte paucissimi sunt: et hi magna laude digni sunt, ut

patuit: hos non vituperant summi viri; quia ipse Plinius ejusmodi

grammaticus fuit, et de arte grammatica libelos edidit. Et Grellius veræ

grammaticæ fuit diligentissimus doctor; sic et ipse Datus. Alii sunt

grammatici professione, et ii plerumque sunt inceptissimi; quia scribimus

indocti doctique, et indignissimus quisque hanc sibi artem vindicat:----hos

mastigias multis probris docti summo jure insectantur."--DESPAUTER.

\_Syntaxis\_, fol. 1.

1. It is of primary importance in all discussions and expositions of

doctrines, of any sort, to ascertain well the \_principles\_ upon which our

reasonings are to be founded, and to see that they be such as are immovably

established in the nature of things; for error in first principles is

fundamental, and he who builds upon an uncertain foundation, incurs at

least a \_hazard\_ of seeing his edifice overthrown. The lover of \_truth\_

will be, at all times, diligent to seek it, firm to adhere to it, willing

to submit to it, and ready to promote it; but even the truth may be urged

unseasonably, and important facts are things liable to be misjoined. It is

proper, therefore, for every grammarian gravely to consider, whether and

how far the principles of his philosophy, his politics, his morals, or his

religion, ought to influence, or actually do influence, his theory of

language, and his practical instructions respecting the right use of words.

In practice, grammar is so interwoven with all else that is known,

believed, learned, or spoken of among men, that to determine its own

peculiar principles with due distinctness, seems to be one of the most

difficult points of a grammarian's duty.

2. From misapprehension, narrowness of conception, or improper bias, in

relation to this point, many authors have started wrong; denounced others

with intemperate zeal; departed themselves from sound doctrine; and

produced books which are disgraced not merely by occasional oversights, but

by central and radical errors. Hence, too, have sprung up, in the name of

grammar, many unprofitable discussions, and whimsical systems of teaching,

calculated rather to embarrass than to inform the student. Mere collisions

of opinion, conducted without any acknowledged standard to guide the

judgement, never tend to real improvement. Grammar is unquestionably a

branch of that universal philosophy by which the thoroughly educated mind

is enlightened to see all things aright; for philosophy, in this sense of

the term, is found in everything. Yet, properly speaking, the true

grammarian is not a philosopher, nor can any man strengthen his title to

the former character by claiming the latter; and it is certain, that a most

disheartening proportion of what in our language has been published under

the name of Philosophic Grammar, is equally remote from philosophy, from

grammar, and from common sense.

3. True grammar is founded on the authority of reputable custom; and that

custom, on the use which men make of their reason. The proofs of what is

right are accumulative, and on many points there can be no dispute, because

our proofs from the best usage, are both obvious and innumerable. On the

other hand, the evidence of what is wrong is rather demonstrative; for when

we would expose a particular error, we exhibit it in contrast with the

established principle which it violates. He who formed the erroneous

sentence, has in this case no alternative, but either to acknowledge the

solecism, or to deny the authority of the rule. There are disputable

principles in grammar, as there are moot points in law; but this

circumstance affects no settled usage in either; and every person of sense

and taste will choose to express himself in the way least liable to

censure. All are free indeed from positive constraint on their phraseology;

for we do not speak or write by statutes. But the ground of instruction

assumed in grammar, is similar to that upon which are established the

maxims of \_common law\_, in jurisprudence. The ultimate principle, then, to

which we appeal, as the only true standard of grammatical propriety, is

that species of custom which critics denominate GOOD USE; that is, present,

reputable, general use.

4. Yet a slight acquaintance with the history of grammar will suffice to

show us, that it is much easier to acknowledge this principle, and to

commend it in words, than to ascertain what it is, and abide by it in

practice. Good use is that which is neither ancient nor recent, neither

local nor foreign, neither vulgar nor pedantic; and it will be found that

no few have in some way or other departed from it, even while they were

pretending to record its dictates. But it is not to be concealed, that in

every living language, it is a matter of much inherent difficulty, to reach

the standard of propriety, where usage is various; and to ascertain with

clearness the decisions of custom, when we descend to minute details. Here

is a field in which whatsoever is achieved by the pioneers of literature,

can be appreciated only by thorough scholars; for the progress of

improvement in any art or science, can be known only to those who can

clearly compare its ruder with its more refined stages; and it often

happens that what is effected with much labour, may be presented in a very

small compass.

5. But the knowledge of grammar may \_retrograde\_; for whatever loses the

vital principle of renovation and growth, tends to decay. And if mere

copyists, compilers, abridgers, and modifiers, be encouraged as they now

are, it surely will not advance. Style is liable to be antiquated by time,

corrupted by innovation, debased by ignorance, perverted by conceit,

impaired by negligence, and vitiated by caprice. And nothing but the living

spirit of true authorship, and the application of just criticism, can

counteract the natural tendency of these causes. English grammar is still

in its infancy; and even bears, to the imagination of some, the appearance

of a deformed and ugly dwarf among the liberal arts. Treatises are

multiplied almost innumerably, but still the old errors survive. Names are

rapidly added to our list of authors, while little or nothing is done for

the science. Nay, while new blunders have been committed in every new book,

old ones have been allowed to stand as by prescriptive right;. and

positions that were never true, and sentences that were never good English,

have been published and republished under different names, till in our

language grammar has become the most ungrammatical of all studies!

"Imitators generally copy their originals in an inverse ratio of their

merits; that is, by adding as much to their faults, as they lose of their

merits."--KNIGHT, \_on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 117.

"Who to the life an exact piece would make,

Must not from others' work a copy take."--\_Cowley\_.

6. All science is laid in the nature of things; and he only who seeks it

there, can rightly guide others in the paths of knowledge. He alone can

know whether his predecessors went right or wrong, who is capable of a

judgement independent of theirs. But with what shameful servility have many

false or faulty definitions and rules been copied and copied from one

grammar to another, as if authority had canonized their errors, or none had

eyes to see them! Whatsoever is dignified and fair, is also modest and

reasonable; but modesty does not consist in having no opinion of one's own,

nor reason in following with blind partiality the footsteps of others.

Grammar unsupported by authority, is indeed mere fiction. But what apology

is this, for that authorship which has produced so many grammars without

originality? Shall he who cannot write for himself, improve upon him who

can? Shall he who cannot paint, retouch the canvass of Guido? Shall modest

ingenuity be allowed only to imitators and to thieves? How many a prefatory

argument issues virtually in this! It is not deference to merit, but

impudent pretence, practising on the credulity of ignorance! Commonness

alone exempts it from scrutiny, and the success it has, is but the wages of

its own worthlessness! To read and be informed, is to make a proper use of

books for the advancement of learning; but to assume to be an author by

editing mere commonplaces and stolen criticisms, is equally beneath the

ambition of a scholar and the honesty of a man.

"'T is true, the ancients we may rob with ease;

But who with that mean shift himself can please?"

\_Sheffield, Duke of Buckingham\_.

7. Grammar being a practical art, with the principles of which every

intelligent person is more or less acquainted, it might be expected that a

book written professedly on the subject, should exhibit some evidence of

its author's skill. But it would seem that a multitude of bad or

indifferent writers have judged themselves qualified to teach the art of

speaking and writing well; so that correctness of language and neatness of

style are as rarely to be found in grammars as in other books. Nay, I have

before suggested that in no other science are the principles of good

writing so frequently and so shamefully violated. The code of false grammar

embraced in the following work, will go far to sustain this opinion. There

have been, however, several excellent scholars, who have thought it an

object not unworthy of their talents, to prescribe and elucidate the

principles of English Grammar. But these, with scarcely any exception, have

executed their inadequate designs, not as men engaged in their proper

calling, but as mere literary almoners, descending for a day from their

loftier purposes, to perform a service, needful indeed, and therefore

approved, but very far from supplying all the aid that is requisite to a

thorough knowledge of the subject. Even the most meritorious have left

ample room for improvement, though some have evinced an ability which does

honour to themselves, while it gives cause to regret their lack of an

inducement to greater labour. The mere grammarian can neither aspire to

praise, nor stipulate for a reward; and to those who were best qualified to

write, the subject could offer no adequate motive for diligence.

8. Unlearned men, who neither make, nor can make, any pretensions to a

knowledge of grammar as a study, if they show themselves modest in what

they profess, are by no means to be despised or undervalued for the want of

such knowledge. They are subject to no criticism, till they turn authors

and write for the public. And even then they are to be treated gently, if

they have any thing to communicate, which is worthy to be accepted in a

homely dress. Grammatical inaccuracies are to be kindly excused, in all

those from whom nothing better can be expected; for people are often under

a necessity of appearing as speakers or writers, before they can have

learned to write or speak grammatically. The body is more to be regarded

than raiment; and the substance of an interesting message, may make the

manner of it a little thing. Men of high purposes naturally spurn all that

is comparatively low; or all that may seem nice, overwrought, ostentatious,

or finical. Hence St. Paul, in writing to the Corinthians, suggests that

the design of his preaching might have been defeated, had he affected the

orator, and turned his attention to mere "excellency of speech," or "wisdom

of words." But this view of things presents no more ground for neglecting

grammar, and making coarse and vulgar example our model of speech, than for

neglecting dress, and making baize and rags the fashionable costume. The

same apostle exhorts Timothy to "hold fast the form of sound \_words\_,"

which he himself had taught him. Nor can it be denied that there is an

obligation resting upon all men, to use speech fairly and understandingly.

But let it be remembered, that all those upon whose opinions or practices I

am disposed to animadvert, are either professed grammarians and

philosophers, or authors who, by extraordinary pretensions, have laid

themselves under special obligations to be accurate in the use of language.

"The \_wise in heart\_ shall be called prudent; and \_the sweetness of the

lips\_ increaseth learning."--\_Prov.\_, xvi, 21. "The words of a man's mouth

are as deep waters, and the well-spring of wisdom [is] as a flowing

brook."--\_Ib.\_, xviii, 4. "A fool's mouth is his destruction, and his lips

are the snare of his soul."--\_Ib.\_, xviii, 7.

9. The old maxim recorded by Bacon, "\_Loquendum ut vulgus, sentiendum ut

sapientes\_,"--"We should speak as the vulgar, but think as the wise," is

not to be taken without some limitation. For whoever literally speaks as

the vulgar, shall offend vastly too much with his tongue, to have either

the understanding of the wise or the purity of the good. In all untrained

and vulgar minds, the ambition of speaking well is but a dormant or very

weak principle. Hence the great mass of uneducated people are lamentably

careless of what they utter, both as to the matter and the manner; and no

few seem naturally prone to the constant imitation of low example, and

some, to the practice of every abuse of which language is susceptible.

Hence, as every scholar knows, the least scrupulous of our lexicographers

notice many terms but to censure them as "\_low\_," and omit many more as

being beneath their notice. Vulgarity of language, then, ever has been, and

ever must be, repudiated by grammarians. Yet we have had pretenders to

grammar, who could court the favour of the vulgar, though at the expense of

all the daughters of Mnemosyne.

10. Hence the enormous insult to learning and the learned, conveyed in the

following scornful quotations: "Grammarians, go to your \_tailors\_ and

\_shoemakers\_, and learn from them the \_rational\_ art of constructing your

grammars!"--\_Neef's Method of Education\_, p. 62. "From a labyrinth without

a clew, in which the \_most enlightened scholars\_ of Europe have mazed

themselves and misguided others, the author ventures to turn

aside."--\_Cardell's Gram.\_, 12mo, p. 15. Again: "The \_nations\_ of

\_unlettered men\_ so adapted their language to philosophic truth, that all

physical and intellectual research can find no essential rule to reject or

change."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 91. I have shown that "the nations of unlettered men"

are among that portion of the earth's population, upon whose language the

genius of grammar has never yet condescended to look down! That people who

make no pretensions to learning, can furnish better models or instructions

than "the most enlightened scholars," is an opinion which ought not to be

disturbed by argument.

11. I regret to say, that even Dr. Webster, with all his obligations and

pretensions to literature, has well-nigh taken ground with Neef and

Cardell, as above cited; and has not forborne to throw contempt, even on

grammar as such, and on men of letters indiscriminately, by supposing the

true principles of every language to be best observed and kept by the

illiterate. What marvel then, that all his multifarious grammars of the

English language are despised? Having suggested that the learned must

follow the practice of the populace, because they cannot control it, he

adds: "Men of letters may revolt at this suggestion, but if they will

attend to the history of our language, they will find the fact to be as

here stated. It is commonly supposed that the tendency of this practice of

unlettered men is \_to corrupt the language\_. But the fact is directly the

reverse. I am prepared to prove, were it consistent with the nature of this

work, that nineteen-twentieths of \_all the corruptions\_ of our language,

for five hundred years past, have been introduced by \_authors\_--men who

have made alterations in particular idioms \_which they did not understand\_.

The same remark is applicable to the \_orthography\_ and \_pronunciation\_. The

tendency of unlettered men is to \_uniformity\_--to \_analogy\_; and so strong

is this disposition, that the common people have actually converted some of

our irregular verbs into regular ones. It is to unlettered people that we

owe the disuse of \_holpen, bounden, sitten\_, and the use of the regular

participles, \_swelled, helped, worked\_, in place of the ancient ones. This

popular tendency is not to be contemned and disregarded, as some of the

learned affect to do;[3] for it is governed by \_the natural, primary

principles of all languages\_, to which we owe all their regularity and all

their melody; viz., a love of uniformity in words of a like character, and

a preference of an easy natural pronunciation, and a desire to express the

most ideas with the smallest number of words and syllables. It is a

fortunate thing for language, that these natural principles generally

prevail over arbitrary and artificial rules."--\_Webster's Philosophical

Gram.\_, p. 119; \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 78. So much for \_unlettered

erudition!\_

12. If every thing that has been taught under the name of grammar, is to be

considered as belonging to the science, it will be impossible ever to

determine in what estimation the study of it ought to be held; for all that

has ever been urged either for or against it, may, upon such a principle,

be \_proved\_ by reference to different authorities and irreconcilable

opinions. But all who are studious to know, and content to follow, \_the

fashion\_ established by the concurrent authority of \_the learned\_,[4] may

at least have some standard to refer to; and if a grammarian's rules be

based upon this authority, it must be considered the exclusive privilege

of the unlearned to despise them--as it is of the unbred, to contemn the

rules of civility. But who shall determine whether the doctrines contained

in any given treatise are, or are not, based upon such authority? Who shall

decide whether the contributions which any individual may make to our

grammatical code, are, or are not, consonant with the best usage? For this,

there is no tribunal but the mass of readers, of whom few perhaps are very

competent judges. And here an author's reputation for erudition and

judgement, may be available to him: it is the public voice in his favour.

Yet every man is at liberty to form his own opinion, and to alter it

whenever better knowledge leads him to think differently.

13. But the great misfortune is, that they who need instruction, are not

qualified to choose their instructor; and many who must make this choice

for their children, have no adequate means of ascertaining either the

qualifications of such as offer themselves, or the comparative merits of

the different methods by which they profess to teach. Hence this great

branch of learning, in itself too comprehensive for the genius or the life

of any one man, has ever been open to as various and worthless a set of

quacks and plagiaries as have ever figured in any other. There always have

been some who knew this, and there may be many who know it now; but the

credulity and ignorance which expose so great a majority of mankind to

deception and error, are not likely to be soon obviated. With every

individual who is so fortunate as to receive any of the benefits of

intellectual culture, the whole process of education must begin anew; and,

by all that sober minds can credit, the vision of human perfectibility is

far enough from any national consummation.

14. Whatever any may think of their own ability, or however some might

flout to find their errors censured or their pretensions disallowed;

whatever improvement may actually have been made, or however fondly we may

listen to boasts and felicitations on that topic; it is presumed, that the

general ignorance on the subject of grammar, as above stated, is too

obvious to be denied. What then is the remedy? and to whom must our appeal

be made? Knowledge cannot be imposed by power, nor is there any domination

in the republic of letters. The remedy lies solely in that zeal which can

provoke to a generous emulation in the cause of literature; and the appeal,

which has recourse to the learning of the learned, and to the common sense

of all, must be pressed home to conviction, till every false doctrine stand

refuted, and every weak pretender exposed or neglected. Then shall Science

honour them that honour her; and all her triumphs be told, all her

instructions be delivered, in "sound speech that cannot be condemned."

15. A generous man is not unwilling to be corrected, and a just one cannot

but desire to be set right in all things. Even over noisy gainsayers, a

calm and dignified exhibition of true docrine [sic--KTH], has often more

influence than ever openly appears. I have even seen the author of a faulty

grammar heap upon his corrector more scorn and personal abuse than would

fill a large newspaper, and immediately afterwards, in a new edition of his

book, renounce the errors which had been pointed out to him, stealing the

very language of his amendments from the man whom he had so grossly

vilified! It is true that grammarians have ever disputed, and often with

more acrimony than discretion. Those who, in elementary treatises, have

meddled much with philological controversy, have well illustrated the

couplet of Denham: "The tree of knowledge, blasted by disputes, Produces

sapless leaves in stead of fruits."

16. Thus, then, as I have before suggested, we find among writers on

grammar two numerous classes of authors, who have fallen into opposite

errors, perhaps equally reprehensible; the visionaries, and the copyists.

The former have ventured upon too much originality, the latter have

attempted too little. "The science of philology," says Dr. Alexander

Murray, "is not a frivolous study, fit to be conducted by ignorant pedants

or visionary enthusiasts. It requires more qualifications to succeed in it,

than are usually united in those who pursue it:--a sound penetrating

judgement; habits of calm philosophical induction; an erudition various,

extensive, and accurate; and a mind likewise, that can direct the knowledge

expressed in words, to illustrate the nature of the signs which convey

it."--\_Murray's History of European Languages\_, Vol. ii, p. 333.

17. They who set aside the authority of custom, and judge every thing to be

ungrammatical which appears to them to be unphilosophical, render the whole

ground forever disputable, and weary themselves in beating the air. So

various have been the notions of this sort of critics, that it would be

difficult to mention an opinion not found in some of their books. Amidst

this rage for speculation on a subject purely practical, various attempts

have been made, to overthrow that system of instruction, which long use has

rendered venerable, and long experience proved to be useful. But it is

manifestly much easier to raise even plausible objections against this

system, than to invent an other less objectionable. Such attempts have

generally met the reception they deserved. Their history will give no

encouragement to future innovators.

18. Again: While some have thus wasted their energies in eccentric flights,

vainly supposing that the learning of ages would give place to their

whimsical theories; others, with more success, not better deserved, have

multiplied grammars almost innumerably, by abridging or modifying the books

they had used in childhood. So that they who are at all acquainted with the

origin and character of the various compends thus introduced into our

schools, cannot but desire to see them all displaced by some abler and

better work, more honourable to its author and more useful to the public,

more intelligible to students and more helpful to teachers. Books

professedly published for the advancement of knowledge, are very frequently

to be reckoned, among its greatest impediments; for the interests of

learning are no less injured by whimsical doctrines, than the rights of

authorship by plagiarism. Too many of our grammars, profitable only to

their makers and venders, are like weights attached to the heels of Hermes.

It is discouraging to know the history of this science. But the

multiplicity of treatises already in use, is a reason, not for silence, but

for offering more. For, as Lord Bacon observes, the number of ill-written

books is not to be diminished by ceasing to write, but by writing others

which, like Aaron's serpent, shall swallow up the spurious.[5]

19. I have said that some grammars have too much originality, and others

too little. It may be added, that not a few are chargeable with both these

faults at once. They are original, or at least anonymous, where there

should have been given other authority than that of the compiler's name;

and they are copies, or, at best, poor imitations, where the author should

have shown himself capable of writing in a good style of his own. What then

is the middle ground for the true grammarian? What is the kind, and what

the degree, of originality, which are to be commended in works of this

sort? In the first place, a grammarian must be a writer, an author, a man

who observes and thinks for himself; and not a mere compiler, abridger,

modifier, copyist, or plagiarist. Grammar is not the only subject upon

which we allow no man to innovate in doctrine; why, then, should it be the

only one upon which a man may make it a merit, to work up silently into a

book of his own, the best materials found among the instructions of his

predecessors and rivals? Some definitions and rules, which in the lapse of

time and by frequency of use have become a sort of public property, the

grammarian may perhaps be allowed to use at his pleasure; yet even upon

these a man of any genius will be apt to set some impress peculiar to

himself. But the doctrines of his work ought, in general, to be expressed

in his own language, and illustrated by that of others. With respect to

quotation, he has all the liberty of other writers, and no more; for, if a

grammarian makes "use of his predecessors' labours," why should any one

think with Murray, "it is scarcely necessary to apologize for" this, "or

for \_omitting\_ to \_insert\_ their names?"--\_Introd. to L. Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, p. 7.

20. The author of this volume would here take the liberty briefly to refer

to his own procedure. His knowledge of what is \_technical\_ in grammar, was

of course chiefly derived from the writings of other grammarians; and to

their concurrent opinions and practices, he has always had great respect;

yet, in truth, not a line has he ever copied from any of them with a design

to save the labour of composition. For, not to compile an English grammar

from others already extant, but to compose one more directly from the

sources of the art, was the task which he at first proposed to himself. Nor

is there in all the present volume a single sentence, not regularly quoted,

the authorship of which he supposes may now be ascribed to an other more

properly than to himself. Where either authority or acknowledgement was

requisite, names have been inserted. In the doctrinal parts of the volume,

not only quotations from others, but most examples made for the occasion,

are marked with guillemets, to distinguish them from the main text; while,

to almost every thing which is really taken from any other known writer, a

name or reference is added. For those citations, however, which there was

occasion to repeat in different parts of the work, a single reference has

sometimes been thought sufficient. This remark refers chiefly to the

corrections in the Key, the references being given in the Exercises.

21. Though the theme is not one on which a man may hope to write well with

little reflection, it is true that the parts of this treatise which have

cost the author the most labour, are those which "consist chiefly of

materials selected from the writings of others." These, however, are not

the didactical portions of the book, but the proofs and examples; which,

according to the custom of the ancient grammarians, ought to be taken from

other authors. But so much have the makers of our modern grammars been

allowed to presume upon the respect and acquiescence of their readers, that

the ancient exactness on this point would often appear pedantic. Many

phrases and sentences, either original with the writer, or common to

everybody, will therefore be found among the illustrations of the following

work; for it was not supposed that any reader would demand for every thing

of this kind the authority of some great name. Anonymous examples are

sufficient to elucidate principles, if not to establish them; and

elucidation is often the sole purpose for which an example is needed.

22. It is obvious enough, that no writer on grammar has any right to

propose himself as authority for what he teaches; for every language, being

the common property of all who use it, ought to be carefully guarded

against the caprices of individuals; and especially against that

presumption which might attempt to impose erroneous or arbitrary

definitions and rules. "Since the matter of which we are treating," says

the philologist of Salamanca, "is to be verified, first by reason, and then

by testimony and usage, none ought to wonder if we sometimes deviate from

the track of great men; for, with whatever authority any grammarian may

weigh with me, unless he shall have confirmed his assertions by reason, and

also by examples, he shall win no confidence in respect to grammar. For, as

Seneca says, Epistle 95, 'Grammarians are the \_guardians\_, not the

\_authors\_, of language.'"--\_Sanctii Minerva\_, Lib. ii, Cap. 2. Yet, as what

is intuitively seen to be true or false, is already sufficiently proved or

detected, many points in grammar need nothing more than to be clearly

stated and illustrated; nay, it would seem an injurious reflection on the

understanding of the reader, to accumulate proofs of what cannot but be

evident to all who speak the language.

23. Among men of the same profession, there is an unavoidable rivalry, so

far as they become competitors for the same prize; but in competition there

is nothing dishonourable, while excellence alone obtains distinction, and

no advantage is sought by unfair means. It is evident that we ought to

account him the best grammarian, who has the most completely executed the

worthiest design. But no worthy design can need a false apology; and it is

worse than idle to prevaricate. That is but a spurious modesty, which

prompts a man to disclaim in one way what he assumes in an other--or to

underrate the duties of his office, that he may boast of having "done all

that could reasonably be expected." Whoever professes to have improved the

science of English grammar, must claim to know more of the matter than the

generality of English grammarians; and he who begins with saying, that

"little can be expected" from the office he assumes, must be wrongfully

contradicted, when he is held to have done much. Neither the ordinary power

of speech, nor even the ability to write respectably on common topics,

makes a man a critic among critics, or enables him to judge of literary

merit. And if, by virtue of these qualifications alone, a man will become a

grammarian or a connoisseur, he can hold the rank only by courtesy--a

courtesy which is content to degrade the character, that his inferior

pretensions may be accepted and honoured under the name.

24. By the force of a late popular example, still too widely influential,

grammatical authorship has been reduced, in the view of many, to little or

nothing more than a mere serving-up of materials anonymously borrowed; and,

what is most remarkable, even for an indifferent performance of this low

office, not only unnamed reviewers, but several writers of note, have not

scrupled to bestow the highest praise of grammatical excellence! And thus

the palm of superior skill in grammar, has been borne away by a \_professed

compiler\_; who had so mean an opinion of what his theme required, as to

deny it even the common courtesies of compilation! What marvel is it, that,

under the wing of such authority, many writers have since sprung up, to

improve upon this most happy design; while all who were competent to the

task, have been discouraged from attempting any thing like a complete

grammar of our language? What motive shall excite a man to long-continued

diligence, where such notions prevail as give mastership no hope of

preference, and where the praise of his ingenuity and the reward of his

labour must needs be inconsiderable, till some honoured compiler usurp them

both, and bring his "most useful matter" before the world under better

auspices? If the love of learning supply such a motive, who that has

generously yielded to the impulse, will not now, like Johnson, feel himself

reduced to an "humble drudge"--or, like Perizonius, apologize for the

apparent folly of devoting his time to such a subject as grammar?

25. The first edition of the "Institutes of English Grammar," the doctrinal

parts of which are embraced in the present more copious work, was published

in the year 1823; since which time, (within the space of twelve years,)

about forty new compends, mostly professing to be abstracts of \_Murray\_,

with improvements, have been added to our list of English grammars. The

author has examined as many as thirty of them, and seen advertisements of

perhaps a dozen more. Being various in character, they will of course be

variously estimated; but, so far as he can judge, they are, without

exception, works of little or no real merit, and not likely to be much

patronized or long preserved from oblivion. For which reason, he would have

been inclined entirely to disregard the petty depredations which the

writers of several of them have committed upon his earlier text, were it

not possible, that by such a frittering-away of his work, he himself might

one day seem to some to have copied that from others which was first taken

from him. Trusting to make it manifest to men of learning, that in the

production of the books which bear his name, far more has been done for the

grammar of our language than any single hand had before achieved within the

scope of practical philology, and that with perfect fairness towards other

writers; he cannot but feel a wish that the integrity of his text should be

preserved, whatever else may befall; and that the multitude of scribblers

who judge it so needful to remodel Murray's defective compilation, would

forbear to publish under his name or their own what they find only in the

following pages.

26. The mere rivalry of their authorship is no subject of concern; but it

is enough for any ingenuous man to have toiled for years in solitude to

complete a work of public utility, without entering a warfare for life to

defend and preserve it. Accidental coincidences in books are unfrequent,

and not often such as to excite the suspicion of the most sensitive. But,

though the criteria of plagiarism are neither obscure nor disputable, it is

not easy, in this beaten track of literature, for persons of little reading

to know what is, or is not, original. Dates must be accurately observed;

and a multitude of minute things must be minutely compared. And who will

undertake such a task but he that is personally interested? Of the

thousands who are forced into the paths of learning, few ever care to know,

by what pioneer, or with what labour, their way was cast up for them. And

even of those who are honestly engaged in teaching, not many are adequate

judges of the comparative merits of the great number of books on this

subject. The common notions of mankind conform more easily to fashion than

to truth; and even of some things within their reach, the majority seem

contend to take their opinions upon trust. Hence, it is vain to expect that

that which is intrinsically best, will be everywhere preferred; or that

which is meritoriously elaborate, adequately appreciated. But common sense

might dictate, that learning is not encouraged or respected by those who,

for the making of books, prefer a pair of scissors to the pen.

27. The fortune of a grammar is not always an accurate test of its merits.

The goddess of the plenteous horn stands blindfold yet upon the floating

prow; and, under her capricious favour, any pirate-craft, ill stowed with

plunder, may sometimes speed as well, as barges richly laden from the

golden mines of science. Far more are now afloat, and more are stranded on

dry shelves, than can be here reported. But what this work contains, is

candidly designed to qualify the reader to be himself a judge of what it

\_should\_ contain; and I will hope, so ample a report as this, being thought

sufficient, will also meet his approbation. The favour of one discerning

mind that comprehends my subject, is worth intrinsically more than that of

half the nation: I mean, of course, the half of whom my gentle reader is

not one.

"They praise and they admire they know not what,

And know not whom, but as one leads the other."--\_Milton\_.

CHAPTER III.

OF GRAMMATICAL SUCCESS AND FAME.

"Non is ego sum, cui aut jucundum, aut adeo opus sit, de aliis detrahere,

et hac viâ ad famara contendere. Melioribus artibus laudem parare didici.

Itaque non libenter dico, quod præsens institutum dicere cogit."--Jo.

AUGUSTI ERNESTI \_Præf. ad Græcum Lexicon\_, p. vii.

1. The real history of grammar is little known; and many erroneous

impressions are entertained concerning it: because the story of the systems

most generally received has never been fully told; and that of a multitude

now gone to oblivion was never worth telling. In the distribution of

grammatical fame, which has chiefly been made by the hand of interest, we

have had a strange illustration of the saying: "Unto every one that hath

shall be given, and he shall have abundance; but from him that hath not,

shall be taken away even that which he hath." Some whom fortune has made

popular, have been greatly overrated, if learning and talent are to be

taken into the account; since it is manifest, that with no extraordinary

claims to either, they have taken the very foremost rank among grammarians,

and thrown the learning and talents of others into the shade, or made them

tributary to their own success and popularity.

2. It is an ungrateful task to correct public opinion by showing the

injustice of praise. Fame, though it may have been both unexpected and

undeserved, is apt to be claimed and valued as part and parcel of a man's

good name; and the dissenting critic, though ever-so candid, is liable to

be thought an envious detractor. It would seem in general most prudent to

leave mankind to find out for themselves how far any commendation bestowed

on individuals is inconsistent with truth. But, be it remembered, that

celebrity is not a virtue; nor, on the other hand, is experience the

cheapest of teachers. A good man may not have done all things ably and

well; and it is certainly no small mistake to estimate his character by the

current value of his copy-rights. Criticism may destroy the reputation of a

book, and not be inconsistent with a cordial respect for the private worth

of its author. The reader will not be likely to be displeased with what is

to be stated in this chapter, if he can believe, that no man's merit as a

writer, may well be enhanced by ascribing to him that which he himself, for

the protection of his own honour, has been constrained to disclaim. He

cannot suppose that too much is alleged, if he will admit that a

grammarian's fame should be thought safe enough in his \_own keeping\_. Are

authors apt to undervalue their own performances? Or because proprietors

and publishers may profit by the credit of a book, shall it be thought

illiberal to criticise it? Is the author himself to be disbelieved, that

the extravagant praises bestowed upon him may be justified? "Superlative

commendation," says Dillwyn, "is near akin to \_detraction\_." (See his

\_Reflections\_, p. 22.) Let him, therefore, who will charge detraction upon

me, first understand wherein it consists. I shall criticise, freely, both

the works of the living, and the doctrines of those who, to us, live only

in their works; and if any man dislike this freedom, let him rebuke it,

showing wherein it is wrong or unfair. The amiable author just quoted, says

again: "Praise has so often proved an \_impostor\_, that it would be well,

wherever we meet with it, to treat it as a vagrant."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. I go

not so far as this; but that eulogy which one knows to be false, he cannot

but reckon impertinent.

3. Few writers on grammar have been more noted than WILLIAM LILY and

LINDLEY MURRAY. Others have left better monuments of their learning and

talents, but none perhaps have had greater success and fame. The Latin

grammar which was for a long time most popular in England, has commonly

been ascribed to the one; and what the Imperial Review, in 1805, pronounced

"the best English grammar, beyond all comparison, that has yet appeared,"

was compiled by the other. And doubtless they have both been rightly judged

to excel the generality of those which they were intended to supersede; and

both, in their day, may have been highly serviceable to the cause of

learning. For all excellence is but comparative; and to grant them this

superiority, is neither to prefer them now, nor to justify the praise which

has been bestowed upon their authorship. As the science of grammar can

never be taught without a book, or properly taught by any book which is not

itself grammatical, it is of some importance both to teachers and to

students, to make choice of the best. Knowledge will not advance where

grammars hold rank by prescription. Yet it is possible that many, in

learning to write and speak, may have derived no inconsiderable benefit

from a book that is neither accurate nor complete.

4. With respect to time, these two grammarians were three centuries apart;

during which period, the English language received its most classical

refinement, and the relative estimation of the two studies, Latin and

English grammar, became in a great measure reversed. Lily was an

Englishman, born at Odiham,[6] in Hampshire, in 1466. When he had arrived

at manhood, he went on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem; and while abroad studied

some time at Rome, and also at Paris. On his return he was thought one of

the most accomplished scholars in England. In 1510, Dr. John Colet, dean of

St. Paul's church, in London, appointed him the first high master of St.

Paul's School, then recently founded by this gentleman's munificence. In

this situation, Lily appears to have taught with great credit to himself

till 1522, when he died of the plague, at the age of 56. For the use of

this school, he wrote and published certain parts of the grammar which has

since borne his name. Of the authorship of this work many curious

particulars are stated in the preface by John Ward, which may be seen in

the edition of 1793. Lily had able rivals, as well as learned coadjutors

and friends. By the aid of the latter, he took precedence of the former;

and his publications, though not voluminous, soon gained a general

popularity. So that when an arbitrary king saw fit to silence competition

among the philologists, by becoming himself, as Sir Thomas Elliott says,

"the chiefe authour and setter-forth of an introduction into grammar, for

the childrene of his lovynge subjects," Lily's Grammar was preferred for

the basis of the standard. Hence, after the publishing of it became a

privilege patented by the crown, the book appears to have been honoured

with a royal title, and to have been familiarly called King Henry's

Grammar.

5. Prefixed to this book, there appears a very ancient epistle to the

reader, which while it shows the reasons for this royal interference with

grammar, shows also, what is worthy of remembrance, that guarded and

maintained as it was, even royal interference was here ineffectual to its

purpose. It neither produced uniformity in the methods of teaching, nor,

even for instruction in a dead language, entirely prevented the old manual

from becoming diverse in its different editions. The style also may serve

to illustrate what I have elsewhere said about the duties of a modern

grammarian. "As for the diversitie of grammars, it is well and profitably

taken awaie by the King's Majesties wisdome; who, foreseeing the

inconvenience, and favorably providing the remedie, caused one kind of

grammar by sundry learned men to be diligently drawn, and so to be set out,

only every where to be taught, for the use of learners, and for the hurt in

changing of schoolemaisters." That is, to prevent the injury which

schoolmasters were doing by a whimsical choice, or frequent changing, of

grammars. But, says the letter, "The varietie of teaching is divers yet,

and alwaies will be; for that every schoolemaister liketh that he knoweth,

and seeth not the use of that he knoweth not; and therefore judgeth that

the most sufficient waie, which he seeth to be the readiest meane, and

perfectest kinde, to bring a learner to have a thorough knowledge therein."

The only remedy for such an evil then is, to teach those who are to be

teachers, and to desert all who, for any whim of their own, desert sound

doctrine.

6. But, to return. A law was made in England by Henry the Eighth,

commanding Lily's Grammar only, (or that which has commonly been quoted as

Lily's,) to be everywhere adopted and taught, as the common standard of

grammatical instruction.[7] Being long kept in force by means of a special

inquiry, directed to be made by the bishops at their stated visitations,

this law, for three hundred years, imposed the book on all the established

schools of the realm. Yet it is certain, that about one half of what has

thus gone under the name of Lily, ("because," says one of the patentees,

"he had \_so considerable a hand\_ in the composition,") was written by Dr.

Colet, by Erasmus, or by others who improved the work after Lily's death.

And of the other half, it has been incidentally asserted in history, that

neither the scheme nor the text was original. The Printer's Grammar,

London, 1787, speaking of the art of type-foundery, says: "The Italians in

a short time brought it to \_that\_ perfection, that in the beginning of the

year 1474, they cast a letter not much inferior to the best types of the

present age; as may be seen in a Latin Grammar, written by Omnibonus

Leonicenus, and printed at Padua on the 14th of January, 1474; \_from whom

our grammarian, Lily, has taken the entire scheme of his Grammar, and

transcribed the greatest part thereof, without paying any regard to the

memory of this author\_." The historian then proceeds to speak about types.

See also the same thing in the History of Printing, 8vo, London, 1770. This

is the grammar which bears upon its title page: "\_Quam solam Regia Majestas

in omnibus scholis docendam prcæcipit\_."

7. Murray was an intelligent and very worthy man, to whose various labours

in the compilation of books our schools are under many obligations. But in

original thought and critical skill he fell far below most of "the authors

to whom," he confesses, "the grammatical part of his compilation is

\_principally indebted for its materials\_; namely, Harris, Johnson, Lowth,

Priestley, Beattie, Sheridan, Walker, Coote, Blair, and

Campbell."--\_Introd. to Lindley Murray's Gram.\_, p. 7. It is certain and

evident that he entered upon his task with a very insufficient preparation.

His biography, which was commenced by himself and completed by one of his

most partial friends, informs us, that, "Grammar did not particularly

engage his attention, until a short time previous to the publication of his

first work on that subject;" that, "His Grammar, as it appeared in the

first edition, was completed in rather less than a year;" that, "It was

begun in the spring of 1794, and published in the spring of 1795--though he

had an intervening illness, which, for several weeks, stopped the progress

of the work;" and that, "The Exercises and Key were also composed in about

a year."--\_Life of L. Murray\_, p. 188. From the very first sentence of his

book, it appears that he entertained but a low and most erroneous idea of

the duties of that sort of character in which he was about to come before

the public.[8] He improperly imagined, as many others have done, that

"little can be expected" from a modern grammarian, or (as he chose to

express it) "from a \_new compilation\_, besides a careful selection of the

most useful matter, and some degree of improvement in the mode of adapting

it to the understanding, and the gradual progress of learners."--\_Introd.

to L. Murray's Gram.\_; 8vo, p. 5; 12mo, p. 3. As if, to be master of his

own art--to think and write well himself, were no part of a grammarian's

business! And again, as if the jewels of scholarship, thus carefully

selected, could need a burnish or a foil from other hands than those which

fashioned them!

8. Murray's general idea of the doctrines of grammar was judicious. He

attempted no broad innovation on what had been previously taught; for he

had neither the vanity to suppose he could give currency to novelties, nor

the folly to waste his time in labours utterly nugatory. By turning his own

abilities to their best account, he seems to have done much to promote and

facilitate the study of our language. But his notion of grammatical

authorship, cuts off from it all pretence to literary merit, for the sake

of doing good; and, taken in any other sense than as a forced apology for

his own assumptions, his language on this point is highly injurious towards

the very authors whom he copied. To justify himself, he ungenerously places

them, in common with others, under a degrading necessity which no able

grammarian ever felt, and which every man of genius or learning must

repudiate. If none of our older grammars disprove his assertion, it is time

to have a new one that will; for, to expect the perfection of grammar from

him who cannot treat the subject in a style at once original and pure, is

absurd. He says, "The greater part of an English grammar \_must necessarily

be a compilation \_;" and adds, with reference to his own, "originality

belongs to but a small portion of it. This I have acknowledged; and I trust

\_this acknowledgement\_ will protect me from all attacks, grounded on any

supposed unjust and irregular assumptions." This quotation is from a letter

addressed by Murray to his American publishers, in 1811, after they had

informed him of certain complaints respecting the liberties which he had

taken in his work. See "\_The Friend\_," Vol. iii, p. 34.

9. The acknowledgement on which he thus relies, does not appear to have

been made, till his grammar had gone through several editions. It was,

however, at some period, introduced into his short preface, or

"Introduction," in the following well-meant but singularly sophistical

terms: "In \_a work\_ which professes itself to be a \_compilation\_, and

which, \_from the nature and design of it\_, must consist chiefly of

materials selected from the writings of others, \_it is scarcely necessary

to apologise\_ for the use which the Compiler has made of his predecessors'

labours, or for \_omitting to insert\_ their names. \_From the alterations\_

which have been frequently made in the sentiments and the language, to suit

the connexion, and to adapt them to the particular purposes for which they

are introduced; and, in many instances, \_from the uncertainty to whom\_ the

passages originally belonged, the insertion of names \_could seldom be made

with propriety\_. But if this could have been generally done, a work of this

nature \_would derive no advantage from it\_, equal to the inconvenience of

crowding the pages with a repetition of names and references. It is.

however, proper to acknowledge, in general terms, that the authors to whom

the grammatical part of this compilation is principally indebted for its

materials, are Harris, Johnson, Lowth, Priestley, Beattie, Sheridan,

Walker, and Coote."--\_Introd.; Duodecimo Gram.\_, p. 4; \_Octavo\_, p. 7.

10. The fallacy, or absurdity, of this language sprung from necessity. An

impossible case was to be made out. For compilation, though ever so fair,

is not grammatical authorship. But some of the commenders of Murray have

not only professed themselves satisfied with this general acknowledgement,

but have found in it a candour and a liberality, a modesty and a

diffidence, which, as they allege, ought to protect him from all

animadversion. Are they friends to learning? Let them calmly consider what

I reluctantly offer for its defence and promotion. In one of the

recommendations appended to Murray's grammars, it \_is\_ said, "They have

nearly superseded every thing else of the kind, by concentrating the

remarks of the best authors on the subject." But, in truth, with several

of the best English grammars published previously to his own, Murray

appears to have been totally unacquainted. The chief, if not the only

school grammars which were largely copied by him, were Lowth's and

Priestley's, though others perhaps may have shared the fate of these in

being "superseded" by his. It may be seen by inspection, that in copying

these two authors, the compiler, agreeably to what he says above, omitted

all names and references--even such as they had scrupulously inserted: and,

at the outset, assumed to be himself the sole authority for all his

doctrines and illustrations; satisfying his own mind with making, some

years afterwards, that general apology which we are now criticising. For if

he so mutilated and altered the passages which he adopted, as to make it

improper to add the names of their authors, upon what other authority than

his own do they rest? But if, on the other hand, he generally copied

without alteration; his examples are still anonymous, while his first

reason for leaving them so, is plainly destroyed: because his position is

thus far contradicted by the fact.

11. In his later editions, however, there are two opinions which the

compiler thought proper to support by regular quotations; and, now and

then, in other instances, the name of an author appears. The two positions

thus distinguished, are these: \_First\_, That the noun \_means\_ is

necessarily singular as well as plural, so that one cannot with propriety

use the singular form, \_mean\_, to signify that by which an end is attained;

\_Second\_, That the subjective mood, to which he himself had previously

given all the tenses without inflection, is not different in form from the

indicative, except in the present tense. With regard to the later point, I

have shown, in its proper place, that he taught erroneously, both before

and after he changed his opinion; and concerning the former, the most that

can be proved by quotation, is, that both \_mean\_ and \_means\_ for the

singular number, long have been, and still are, in good use, or sanctioned

by many elegant writers; so that either form may yet be considered

grammatical, though the irregular can claim to be so, only when it is used

in this particular sense. As to his second reason for the suppression of

names, to wit, "the \_uncertainty to whom\_ the passages originally

belonged,"--to make the most of it, it is but partial and relative; and,

surely, no other grammar ever before so multiplied the difficulty in the

eyes of teachers, and so widened the field for commonplace authorship, as

has the compilation in question. The origin of a sentiment or passage may

be uncertain to one man, and perfectly well known to an other. The

embarrassment which a \_compiler\_ may happen to find from this source, is

worthy of little sympathy. For he cannot but know from what work he is

taking any particular sentence or paragraph, and those parts of a

\_grammar\_, which are new to the eye of a great grammarian, may very well be

credited to him who claims to have written the book. I have thus disposed

of his second reason for the omission of names and references, in

compilations of grammar.

12. There remains one more: "A work of this nature \_would derive no

advantage from it\_, equal to the inconvenience of crowding the pages with a

repetition of names and references." With regard to a small work, in which

the matter is to be very closely condensed, this argument has considerable

force. But Murray has in general allowed himself very ample room,

especially in his two octavoes. In these, and for the most part also in his

duodecimoes, all needful references might easily have been added without

increasing the size of his volumes, or injuring their appearance. In nine

cases out of ten, the names would only have been occupied what is now blank

space. It is to be remembered, that these books do not differ much, except

in quantity of paper. His octavo Grammar is but little more than a reprint,

in a larger type, of the duodecimo Grammar, together with his Exercises and

Key. The demand for this expensive publication has been comparatively

small; and it is chiefly to the others, that the author owes his popularity

as a grammarian. As to the advantage which Murray or his work might have

derived from an adherence on his part to the usual custom of compilers,

\_that\_ may be variously estimated. The remarks of the best grammarians or

the sentiments of the best authors, are hardly to be thought the more

worthy of acceptance, for being concentrated in such a manner as to merge

their authenticity in the fame of the copyist. Let me not be understood to

suggest that this good man sought popularity at the expense of others; for

I do not believe that either fame or interest was his motive. But the right

of authors to the credit of their writings, is a delicate point; and,

surely, his example would have been worthier of imitation, had he left no

ground for the foregoing objections, and carefully barred the way to any

such interference.

13. But let the first sentence of this apology be now

considered. It is here suggested, that because this work is a compilation,

even such an acknowledgement as the author makes, is "scarcely necessary."

This is too much to say. Yet one may readily admit, that a compilation,

"from the nature and design of it, must consist chiefly"--nay,

\_wholly\_--"of materials selected from the writings of others." But what

able grammarian would ever willingly throw himself upon the horns of such a

dilemma! The nature and design \_of a book\_, whatever they may be, are

matters for which the author alone is answerable; but the nature and design

\_of grammar\_, are no less repugnant to the strain of this apology, than to

the vast number of errors and defects which were overlooked by Murray in

his work of compilation. It is the express purpose of this practical

science, to enable a man to write well himself. He that cannot do this,

exhibits no excess of modesty when he claims to have "done all that could

reasonably be expected in a work of this nature."--\_L. Murray's Gram.,

Introd.\_, p. 9. He that sees with other men's eyes, is peculiarly liable to

errors and inconsistencies: uniformity is seldom found in patchwork, or

accuracy in secondhand literature. Correctness of language is in the mind,

rather than in the hand or the tongue; and, in order to secure it, some

originality of thought is necessary. A delineation from new surveys is not

the less original because the same region has been sketched before; and how

can he be the ablest of surveyors, who, through lack of skill or industry,

does little more than transcribe the field-notes and copy the projections

of his predecessors?

14. This author's oversights are numerous. There is no part of the volume

more accurate than that which he literally copied from Lowth. To the Short

Introduction alone, he was indebted for more than a hundred and twenty

paragraphs; and even in these there are many things obviously erroneous.

Many of the best practical notes were taken from Priestley; yet it was he,

at whose doctrines were pointed most of those "positions and discussions,"

which alone the author claims as original. To some of these reasonings,

however, his own alterations may have given rise; for, where he "persuades

himself he is not destitute of originality," he is often arguing against

the text of his own earlier editions. Webster's well-known complaints of

Murray's unfairness, had a far better cause than requital; for there was no

generosity in ascribing them to peevishness, though the passages in

question were not worth copying. On perspicuity and accuracy, about sixty

pages were extracted from Blair; and it requires no great critical acumen

to discover, that they are miserably deficient in both. On the law of

language, there are fifteen pages from Campbell; which, with a few

exceptions, are well written. The rules for spelling are the same as

Walker's: the third one, however, is a gross blunder; and the fourth, a,

needless repetition.

15. Were this a place for minute criticism, blemishes almost innumerable

might be pointed out. It might easily be shown that almost every rule laid

down in the book for the observance of the learner, was repeatedly violated

by the hand of the master. Nor is there among all those who have since

abridged or modified the work, an abler grammarian than he who compiled it.

Who will pretend that Flint, Alden, Comly, Jaudon, Russell, Bacon, Lyon,

Miller, Alger, Maltby, Ingersoll, Fisk, Greenleaf, Merchant, Kirkham,

Cooper, R. G. Greene, Woodworth, Smith, or Frost, has exhibited greater

skill? It is curious to observe, how frequently a grammatical blunder

committed by Murray, or some one of his predecessors, has escaped the

notice of all these, as well as of many others who have found it easier to

copy him than to write for themselves. No man professing to have copied and

improved Murray, can rationally be supposed to have greatly excelled him;

for to pretend to have produced an \_improved copy of a compilation\_, is to

claim a sort of authorship, even inferior to his, and utterly unworthy of

any man who is able to prescribe and elucidate the principles of English

grammar.

16. But Murray's grammatical works, being extolled in the reviews, and made

common stock in trade,--being published, both in England and in America, by

booksellers of the most extensive correspondence, and highly commended even

by those who were most interested in the sale of them,--have been eminently

successful with the public; and in the opinion of the world, success is the

strongest proof of merit. Nor has the force of this argument been

overlooked by those who have written in aid of his popularity. It is the

strong point in most of the commendations which have been bestowed upon

Murray as a grammarian. A recent eulogist computes, that, "at least five

millions of copies of his various school-books have been printed;"

particularly commends him for his "candour and liberality towards rival

authors;" avers that, "he went on, examining and correcting his Grammar,

through all its forty editions, till he brought it to a degree of

perfection which will render it as permanent as the English language

itself;" censures (and not without reason) the "presumption" of those

"superficial critics" who have attempted to amend the work, and usurp his

honours; and, regarding the compiler's confession of his indebtedness to

others, but as a mark of "his exemplary diffidence of his own merits,"

adds, (in very bad English,) "Perhaps there never was an author whose

success and fame were more \_unexpected by himself than Lindley

Murray\_."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. iii, p. 33.

17. In a New-York edition of Murray's Grammar, printed in 1812, there was

inserted a "Caution to the Public," by Collins & Co., his American

correspondents and publishers, in which are set forth the unparalleled

success and merit of the work, "as it came \_in purity\_ from the pen of the

author;" with an earnest remonstrance against the several \_revised

editions\_ which had appeared at Boston, Philadelphia, and other places, and

against the unwarrantable liberties taken by American teachers, in altering

the work, under pretence of improving it. In this article it is stated,

"that \_the whole\_ of these mutilated editions \_have been seen\_ and examined

by Lindley Murray himself, and that they, have met with \_his decided

disapprobation\_. Every rational mind," continue these gentlemen, "will

agree with him, that, 'the \_rights of living authors\_, and the \_interests

of science and literature\_, demand the abolition of this \_ungenerous

practice\_.'" (See this also in \_Murray's Key\_, 12mo, N. Y., 1811, p. iii.)

Here, then, we have the feeling and opinion of Murray himself, upon this

tender point of right. Here we see the tables turned, and other men judging

it "scarcely necessary to apologize for the use which \_they have made\_ of

their predecessors' labours."

18. It is really remarkable to find an author and his admirers so much at

variance, as are Murray and his commenders, in relation to his grammatical

authorship; and yet, under what circumstances could men have stronger

desires to avoid apparent contradiction? They, on the one side, claim for

him the highest degree of merit as a grammarian; and continue to applaud

his works as if nothing more could be desired in the study of English

grammar--a branch of learning which some of them are willing emphatically

to call "\_his\_ science." He, on the contrary, to avert the charge of

plagiarism, disclaims almost every thing in which any degree of literary

merit consists; supposes it impossible to write an English grammar the

greater part of which is not a "compilation;" acknowledges that originality

belongs to but a small part of his own; trusts that such a general

acknowledgement will protect him from all censure; suppresses the names of

other writers, and leaves his examples to rest solely on his own authority;

and, "contented with the great respectability of his private character and

station, is satisfied with being \_useful\_ as an author."--\_The Friend\_,

Vol. iii, p. 33. By the high praises bestowed upon his works, his own voice

is overborne: the trumpet of fame has drowned it. His liberal authorship is

profitable in trade, and interest has power to swell and prolong the

strain.

19. The name and character of Lindley Murray are too venerable to allow us

to approach even the errors of his grammars, without some recognition of

the respect due to his personal virtues and benevolent intentions. For the

private virtues of Murray, I entertain as cordial a respect as any other

man. Nothing is argued against these, even if it be proved that causes

independent of true literary merit have given him his great and unexpected

fame as a grammarian. It is not intended by the introduction of these

notices, to impute to him any thing more or less than what his own words

plainly imply; except those inaccuracies and deficiencies which still

disgrace his work as a literary performance, and which of course he did not

discover. He himself knew that he had not brought the book to such

perfection as has been ascribed to it; for, by way of apology for his

frequent alterations, he says, "Works of this nature admit of repeated

improvements; and are, perhaps, never complete." Necessity has urged this

reasoning upon me. I am as far from any invidious feeling, or any sordid

motive, as was Lindley Murray. But it is due to truth, to correct erroneous

impressions; and, in order to obtain from some an impartial examination of

the following pages, it seemed necessary first to convince them, \_that it

is possible\_ to compose a better grammar than Murray's, without being

particularly indebted to him. If this treatise is not such, a great deal of

time has been thrown away upon a useless project; and if it is, the

achievement is no fit subject for either pride or envy. It differs from

his, and from all the pretended amendments of his, as a new map, drawn from

actual and minute surveys, differs from an old one, compiled chiefly from

others still older and confessedly still more imperfect. The region and the

scope are essentially the same; the tracing and the colouring are more

original; and (if the reader can pardon the suggestion) perhaps more

accurate and vivid.

20. He who makes a new grammar, does nothing for the advancement of

learning, unless his performance excel all earlier ones designed for the

same purpose; and nothing for his own honour, unless such excellence result

from the exercise of his own ingenuity and taste. A good style naturally

commends itself to every reader--even to him who cannot tell why it is

worthy of preference. Hence there is reason to believe, that the true

principles of practical grammar, deduced from custom and sanctioned by

time, will never be generally superseded by any thing which individual

caprice may substitute. In the republic of letters, there will always be

some who can distinguish merit; and it is impossible that these should ever

be converted to any whimsical theory of language, which goes to make void

the learning of past ages. There will always be some who can discern the

difference between originality of style, and innovation in

doctrine,--between a due regard to the opinions of others, and an actual

usurpation of their text; and it is incredible that these should ever be

satisfied with any mere compilation of grammar, or with any such authorship

as either confesses or betrays the writer's own incompetence. For it is not

true, that, "an English grammar must necessarily be," in any considerable

degree, if at all, "a compilation;" nay, on such a theme, and in "the

grammatical part" of the work, all compilation beyond a fair use of

authorities regularly quoted, or of materials either voluntarily furnished

or free to all, most unavoidably implies--not conscious "ability,"

generously doing honour to rival merit--nor "exemplary diffidence,"

modestly veiling its own--but inadequate skill and inferior talents,

bribing the public by the spoils of genius, and seeking precedence by such

means as not even the purest desire of doing good can justify.

21. Among the professed copiers of Murray, there is not one to whom the

foregoing remarks do not apply, as forcibly as to him. For no one of them

all has attempted any thing more honourable to himself, or more beneficial

to the public, than what their master had before achieved; nor is there any

one, who, with the same disinterestedness, has guarded his design from the

imputation of a pecuniary motive. It is comical to observe what they say in

their prefaces. Between praise to sustain their choice of a model, and

blame to make room for their pretended amendments, they are often placed in

as awkward a dilemma, as that which was contrived when grammar was

identified with compilation. I should have much to say, were I to show them

all in their true light.[9] Few of them have had such success as to be

worthy of notice here; but the names of many will find frequent place in my

code of false grammar. The one who seems to be now taking the lead in fame

and revenue, filled with glad wonder at his own popularity, is SAMUEL

KIRKHAM. Upon this gentleman's performance, I shall therefore bestow a few

brief observations. If I do not overrate this author's literary importance,

a fair exhibition of the character of his grammar, may be made an

instructive lesson to some of our modern literati. The book is a striking

sample of a numerous species.

22. Kirkham's treatise is entitled, "English Grammar \_in familiar

Lectures\_, accompanied by a \_Compendium\_;" that is, by a folded sheet. Of

this work, of which I have recently seen copies purporting to be of the

"SIXTY-SEVENTH EDITION," and others again of the "HUNDRED AND FIFTH

EDITION," each published at Baltimore in 1835, I can give no earlier

account, than what may be derived from the "SECOND EDITION, enlarged and

much improved," which was published at Harrisburg in 1825. The preface,

which appears to have been written for his \_first\_ edition, is dated,

"Fredericktown, Md., August 22, 1823." In it, there is no recognition of

any obligation to Murray, or to any other grammarian in particular; but

with the modest assumption, that the style of the "best philologists,"

needed to be retouched, the book is presented to the world under the

following pretensions:

"The author of this production has endeavoured to condense \_all the most

important subject-matter of the whole science\_, and present it in so small

a compass that the learner can become familiarly acquainted with it in a

\_short time\_. He makes but small pretensions to originality in theoretical

matter. Most of the principles laid down, have been selected from our \_best

modern philologists\_. If his work is entitled to any degree of \_merit\_, it

is not on account of a judicious selection of principles and rules, but for

the easy mode adopted of communicating \_these\_ to the mind of the

learner."--\_Kirkham's Grammar\_, 1825, p. 10.

23. It will be found on examination, that what this author regarded as

\_"all the most important subject-matter of the whole science" of grammar\_,

included nothing more than the most common elements of the orthography,

etymology, and syntax, of the English tongue--beyond which his scholarship

appears not to have extended. Whatsoever relates to derivation, to the

sounds of the letters, to prosody, (as punctuation, utterance, figures,

versification, and poetic diction,) found no place in his "comprehensive

system of grammar;" nor do his later editions treat any of these things

amply or well. In short, he treats nothing well; for he is a bad writer.

Commencing his career of authorship under circumstances the most

forbidding, yet receiving encouragement from commendations bestowed in

pity, he proceeded, like a man of business, to profit mainly by the chance;

and, without ever acquiring either the feelings or the habits of a scholar,

soon learned by experience that, "It is much better to \_write\_ than [to]

\_starve\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram., Stereotyped\_, p. 89. It is cruel in any man,

to look narrowly into the faults of an author who peddles a school-book for

bread. The starveling wretch whose defence and plea are poverty and

sickness, demands, and must have, in the name of humanity, an immunity from

criticism, if not the patronage of the public. Far be it from me, to notice

any such character, except with kindness and charity. Nor need I be told,

that tenderness is due to the "young;" or that noble results sometimes

follow unhopeful beginnings. These things are understood and duly

appreciated. The gentleman was young once, even as he says; and I, his

equal in years, was then, in authorship, as young--though, it were to be

hoped, not quite so immature. But, as circumstances alter cases, so time

and chance alter circumstances. Under no circumstances, however, can the

artifices of quackery be thought excusable in him who claims to be the very

greatest of modern grammarians. The niche that in the temple of learning

belongs to any individual, can be no other than that which his own labours

have purchased: here, his \_own merit\_ alone must be his pedestal. If this

critical sketch be unimpeachably \_just\_, its publication requires no

further warrant. The correction has been forborne, till the subject of it

has become rich, and popular, and proud; proud enough at least to have

published his utter contempt for me and all my works. Yet not for this do I

judge him worthy of notice here, but merely as an apt example of some men's

grammatical success and fame. The ways and means to these grand results are

what I purpose now to consider.

24. The common supposition, that the world is steadily advancing in

knowledge and improvement, would seem to imply, that the man who could

plausibly boast of being the most successful and most popular grammarian of

the nineteenth century, cannot but be a scholar of such merit as to deserve

some place, if not in the general literary history of his age, at least in

the particular history of the science which he teaches. It will presently

be seen that the author of "English Grammar in Familiar Lectures," boasts

of a degree of success and popularity, which, in this age of the world, has

no parallel. It is not intended on my part, to dispute any of his

assertions on these points; but rather to take it for granted, that in

reputation and revenue he is altogether as preëminent as he pretends to be.

The character of his alleged \_improvements\_, however, I shall inspect with

the eyes of one who means to know the certainty for himself; and, in this

item of literary history, the reader shall see, in some sort, \_what profit\_

there is in grammar. Is the common language of two of the largest and most

enlightened nations on earth so little understood, and its true grammar so

little known or appreciated, that one of the most unscholarly and

incompetent of all pretenders to grammar can have found means to outrival

all the grammarians who have preceded him? Have plagiarism and quackery

become the only means of success in philology? Are there now instances to

which an intelligent critic may point, and say, "This man, or that, though

he can scarcely write a page of good English, has patched up a grammar, by

the help of Murray's text only, and thereby made himself rich?" Is there

such a charm in the name of \_Murray\_, and the word \_improvement\_, that by

these two implements alone, the obscurest of men, or the absurdest of

teachers, may work his passage to fame; and then, perchance, by contrast of

circumstances, grow conceited and arrogant, from the fortune of the

undertaking? Let us see what we can find in Kirkham's Grammar, which will

go to answer these questions.

25. Take first from one page of his "hundred and fifth edition," a few

brief quotations, as a sample of his thoughts and style:

"They, however, who introduce \_usages which depart from the analogy and

philosophy\_ of a language, \_are conspicuous\_ among the number of those who

\_form that language\_, and have power to control it." "PRINCIPLE.--A

principle in grammar is a \_peculiar construction\_ of the language,

sanctioned by good usage." "DEFINITION.--A definition in grammar is a

\_principle\_ of language expressed in a \_definite form\_." "RULE.--A rule

describes \_the peculiar construction\_ or circumstantial relation of words,

\_which\_ custom has established for our observance."--\_Kirkham's Grammar\_,

page 18.

Now, as "a rule describes a peculiar construction," and "a principle is a

peculiar construction," and "a definition is a principle;" how, according

to this grammarian, do a principle, a definition, and a rule, differ each

from the others? From the rote here imposed, it is certainly not easier

for the learner to conceive of all these things \_distinctly\_, than it is to

understand how a departure from philosophy may make a man deservedly

"\_conspicuous\_." It were easy to multiply examples like these, showing the

work to be deficient in clearness, the first requisite of style.

26. The following passages may serve as a specimen of the gentleman's

taste, and grammatical accuracy; in one of which, he supposes the neuter

verb \_is\_ to express an \_action\_, and every \_honest man\_ to be \_long since

dead!\_ So it stands in all his editions. Did his praisers think so too?

"It is correct to say, \_The man eats, he eats\_; but we cannot say, \_The man

dog eats, he dog eats\_. Why not? Because the man \_is here represented\_ as

the possessor, and dog, the property, or thing possessed; and the genius of

our language requires, that when we add \_to the possessor\_, the \_thing\_

which \_he\_ is represented as possessing, \_the possessor\_ shall take a

particular form to show ITS case, or relation to the property."--\_Ib.\_, p.

52.

THE PRESENT TENSE.--"This tense is sometimes applied to represent the

\_actions\_ of persons \_long since dead\_; as, 'Seneca \_reasons\_ and

\_moralizes\_ well; An HONEST MAN IS the noblest work of God.'"--\_Ib.\_, p.

138.

PARTICIPLES.--"The term \_Participle\_ comes from the Latin word

\_participio\_,[10] which signifies to \_partake\_."--"Participles are formed

by adding to the verb the termination \_ing, ed\_, or \_en\_. \_Ing\_ signifies

the same thing as the noun \_being\_. When \_postfixed\_ to the \_noun-state\_ of

the verb, the \_compound word\_ thus formed expresses a continued state of

the \_verbal denotement\_. It implies that what is meant by the verb, is

\_being\_ continued."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "All participles \_are compound\_ in their

meaning and office."--\_Ib.\_, p. 79.

VERBS.--"Verbs express, not only \_the state\_ or \_manner of being\_, but,

likewise, all the different \_actions\_ and \_movements\_ of all creatures and

things, whether animate or inanimate."--\_Ib.\_, p. 62. "It can be easily

shown, that from the noun and verb, all the other parts of speech have

sprung. Nay, more. \_They\_ may even be reduced to \_one\_. \_Verbs do not, in

reality, express actions\_; but they are intrinsically \_the mere\_ NAMES \_of

actions\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 37.

PHILOSOPHICAL GRAMMAR.--"I have thought proper to intersperse through the

pages of this work, under the head of '\_Philosophical Notes\_,' an entire

system of grammatical principles, as deduced from what \_appears[11] to me\_

to be the \_most rational and consistent\_ philosophical investigations."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 36. "Johnson, and Blair, and Lowth, \_would have been laughed at\_,

had they essayed to thrust \_any thing like our\_ modernized philosophical

grammar \_down the throats of their cotemporaries\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143.

Is it not a pity, that "more than one hundred thousand children and youth"

should be daily poring over language and logic like this?

27. For the sake of those who happily remain ignorant of this successful

empiricism, it is desirable that the record and exposition of it be made

brief. There is little danger that it will long survive its author. But the

present subjects of it are sufficiently numerous to deserve some pity. The

following is a sample of the gentleman's method of achieving what he both

justly and exultingly supposes, that Johnson, or Blair, or Lowth, could not

have effected. He scoffs at his own grave instructions, as if they had been

the production of some \_other\_ impostor. Can the fact be credited, that in

the following instances, he speaks of \_what he himself teaches\_?--of what

he seriously pronounces \_"most rational and consistent?"\_--of what is part

and parcel of that philosophy of his, which he declares, "will \_in general

be found to accord\_ with the \_practical theory\_ embraced in the body of his

work?"--See \_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 36.

"Call this '\_philosophical parsing\_, on reasoning principles, according to

the original laws of nature and of thought,' and \_the pill will be

swallowed\_, by pedants and their dupes, with the greatest ease

imaginable."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 144. "For the \_satisfaction\_ of those

teachers who prefer it, and \_for their adoption, too\_, a modernized

philosophical theory of the moods and tenses is here presented. If it is

not quite so convenient and useful as the old one, they need not hesitate

to adopt it. It has the advantage of being \_new\_; and, moreover, it sounds

\_large\_, and will make the \_commonalty stare\_. Let it be distinctly

understood that you teach '[\_Kirkham's\_] \_philosophical grammar\_, founded

on reason and common sense,' and you will pass for a very learned man, and

make all the good housewives wonder at the rapid march of intellect, and

the vast improvements of the age."--\_Ib.\_, p. 141.

28. The \_pretty promises\_ with which these "Familiar Lectures" abound, are

also worthy to be noticed here, as being among the peculiar attractions of

the performance. The following may serve as a specimen:

"If you \_proceed according to my instructions\_, you will be sure to acquire

a practical knowledge of Grammar in \_a short time\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

49. "If you have sufficient \_resolution to do this\_, you will, in a short

time, \_perfectly understand\_ the nature and office of the different parts

of speech, their various properties and relations, and the rules of syntax

that apply to them; \_and, in a few weeks\_, be able to speak and write

accurately."--\_Ib.\_, p. 62. "You will please to turn back and read over

again \_the whole five lectures\_. You must exercise \_a little\_

patience."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "By studying these lectures with attention, you

will acquire \_more grammatical\_ knowledge in three months, than is commonly

obtained in \_two years\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "I will conduct you \_so smoothly

through the moods and tenses\_, and the conjugation of verbs, that, instead

of finding yourself involved in obscurities and deep intricacies, you will

scarcely find \_an obstruction to impede your progress\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 133.

"The supposed Herculean task of learning to conjugate verbs, will be

transformed into \_a few hours of pleasant pastime\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 142. "\_By

examining carefully\_ the conjugation of the verb through this mood, you

will find it \_very easy\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. "By pursuing the following

direction, you can, \_in a very short time\_, learn to conjugate any

verb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. "Although this mode of procedure \_may, at first,

appear to be laborious\_, yet, as it is necessary, I trust you will not

hesitate to adopt it. \_My confidence in your perseverance\_, induces me to

recommend \_any course\_ which I know will tend to facilitate your

progress."--\_Ib.\_, p. 148.

29. The grand boast of this author is, that he \_has succeeded\_ in "pleasing

himself and the public." He trusts to have "gained the latter point," to so

great an extent, and with such security of tenure, that henceforth no man

can safely question \_the merit\_ of his performance. Happy mortal! to whom

that success which is the ground of his pride, is also the glittering ægis

of his sure defence! To this he points with exultation and self-applause,

as if the prosperity of the wicked, or the popularity of an imposture, had

never yet been heard of in this clever world![12] Upon what merit this

success has been founded, my readers may judge, when I shall have finished

this slight review of his work. Probably no other grammar was ever so

industriously spread. Such was the author's perseverance in his measures to

increase the demand for his book, that even the attainment of such accuracy

as he was capable of, was less a subject of concern. For in an article

designed "to ward off some of the arrows of criticism,"--an advertisement

which, from the eleventh to the "one hundred and fifth edition," has been

promising "to the \_publick another and a better\_ edition,"--he plainly

offers this urgent engagement, as "an apology for its defects:"

"The author is apprehensive that his work is \_not yet as\_ accurate and as

much simplified as it \_may be\_. If, however, the disadvantages of lingering

under a broken constitution, and of being able to devote to this subject

\_only a small portion of his time\_, snatched from the \_active pursuits of a

business life\_, (active as far as imperfect health permits him to be,) are

any apology for his defects, he hopes that the candid will set down \_the

apology to his credit\_.--Not that he would beg a truce with the gentlemen

\_criticks\_ and reviewers. Any compromise with them would betray a want of

\_self-confidence\_ and \_moral courage\_, which he would by no means, be

willing to avow."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, (Adv. of 1829,) p. 7.

30. Now, to this painful struggle, this active contention between business

and the vapours, let all \_credit\_ be given, and all \_sympathy\_ be added;

but, as an aid to the studies of healthy children, what better is the book,

for any forbearance or favour that may have been won by this apology? It

is well known, that, till \_phrenology\_ became the common talk, the author's

principal business was, to commend his own method of teaching \_grammar\_,

and to turn this publication to profit. This honourable industry, aided, as

himself suggests, by "not much \_less\_ than one thousand written

recommendations," is said to have wrought for him, in a very few years, a

degree of success and fame, at which both the eulogists of Murray and the

friends of English grammar may hang their heads. As to a "\_compromise\_"

with any critic or reviewer whom he cannot bribe, it is enough to say of

that, it is morally impossible. Nor was it necessary for such an author to

throw the gauntlet, to prove himself not lacking in "\_self-confidence\_." He

can show his "\_moral courage\_," only by daring do right.

31. In 1829, after his book had gone through ten editions, and the demand

for it had become so great as "to call forth twenty thousand copies during

the year," the prudent author, intending to veer his course according to

the \_trade-wind\_, thought it expedient to retract his former

acknowledgement to "our best modern philologists," and to profess himself a

modifier of the Great Compiler's code. Where then holds the anchor of his

praise? Let the reader say, after weighing and comparing his various

pretensions:

"Aware that there is, in the \_publick\_ mind, a strong predilection for the

doctrines contained in Mr. Murray's grammar, he has thought proper, not

merely from motives of policy, but from choice, \_to select his principles

chiefly from that work\_; and, moreover, to adopt, as far as consistent with

his own views, \_the language of that eminent philologist\_. In no instance

has he varied from him, unless he conceived that, in so doing, \_some

practical advantage\_ would be gained. He hopes, \_therefore\_, to escape the

censure so frequently and so justly awarded to those \_unfortunate

innovators\_ who have not scrupled to alter, mutilate, and torture the text

of that able writer, merely to gratify an itching propensity to figure in

the world \_as authors\_, and gain an ephemeral popularity by arrogating to

themselves \_the credit due to another\_." [13]--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, 1829, p.

10.

32. Now these statements are either true or false; and I know not on which

supposition they are most creditable to the writer. Had any Roman

grammatist thus profited by the name of Varro or Quintilian, he would have

been filled with constant dread of somewhere meeting the injured author's

frowning shade! Surely, among the professed admirers of Murray, no other

man, whether innovator or copyist, unfortunate or successful, is at all to

be compared to this gentleman for the audacity with which he has "not

scrupled to alter, mutilate, and torture, the text of that able writer."

Murray simply intended to do good, and good that might descend to

posterity; and this just and generous intention goes far to excuse even his

errors. But Kirkham, speaking of posterity, scruples not to disavow and to

renounce all care for them, or for any thing which a coming age may think

of his character: saying,

"My pretensions reach not so far. To the \_present generation only\_, I

present my claims. Should it lend me a listening ear, and grant me its

suffrages, \_the height of my ambition\_ will be attained."--\_Advertisement,

in his Elocution\_, p. 346.

His whole design is, therefore, upon the very face of it, a paltry scheme

of present income. And, seeing his entered classes of boys and girls must

soon have done with him, he has doubtless acted wisely, and quite in

accordance with his own interest, to have made all possible haste in his

career.

33. Being no rival with him in this race, and having no personal quarrel

with him on any account, I would, for his sake, fain rejoice at his

success, and withhold my criticisms; because he is said to have been

liberal with his gains, and because he has not, like some others, copied me

instead of Murray. But the vindication of a greatly injured and perverted

science, constrains me to say, on this occasion, that pretensions less

consistent with themselves, or less sustained by taste and scholarship,

have seldom, if ever, been promulgated in the name of grammar. I have,

certainly, no intention to say more than is due to the uninformed and

misguided. For some who are ungenerous and prejudiced themselves, will not

be unwilling to think me so; and even this freedom, backed and guarded as

it is by facts and proofs irrefragable, may still be ingeniously ascribed

to an ill motive. To two thirds of the community, one grammar is just as

good as an other; because they neither know, nor wish to know, more than

may be learned from the very worst. An honest expression of sentiment

against abuses of a literary nature, is little the fashion of these times;

and the good people who purchase books upon the recommendations of others,

may be slow to believe there is no merit where so much has been attributed.

But facts may well be credited, in opposition to courteous flattery, when

there are the author's own words and works to vouch for them in the face of

day. Though a thousand of our great men may have helped a copier's weak

copyist to take "some practical advantage" of the world's credulity, it is

safe to aver, in the face of dignity still greater, that testimonials more

fallacious have seldom mocked the cause of learning. They did not read his

book.

34. Notwithstanding the author's change in his professions, the work is now

essentially the same as it was at first; except that its errors and

contradictions have been greatly multiplied, by the addition of new matter

inconsistent with the old. He evidently cares not what doctrines he

teaches, or whose; but, as various theories are noised abroad, seizes upon

different opinions, and mixes them together, that his books may contain

something to suit all parties. "\_A System of Philosophical Grammar\_,"

though but an idle speculation, even in his own account, and doubly absurd

in him, as being flatly contradictory to his main text, has been thought

worthy of insertion. And what his title-page denominates "\_A New System of

Punctuation\_," though mostly in the very words of Murray, was next invented

to supply a deficiency which he at length discovered. To admit these, and

some other additions, the "comprehensive system-of grammar" was gradually

extended from 144 small duodecimo pages, to 228 of the ordinary size. And,

in this compass, it was finally stereotyped in 1829; so that the

ninety-four editions published since, have nothing new for history.

35. But the publication of an other work designed for schools, "\_An Essay

an Elocution\_" shows the progress of the author's mind. Nothing can be more

radically opposite, than are some of the elementary doctrines which this

gentleman is now teaching; nothing, more strangely inconsistent, than are

some of his declarations and professions. For instance: "A consonant is a

letter that cannot be perfectly sounded without the help of a

vowel."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 19. Again: "A consonant is not only capable

of being perfectly sounded without the help of a vowel, but, moreover, of

forming, like a vowel, a separate syllable."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 32.

Take a second example. He makes "ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS" a \_prominent division\_

and \_leading title\_, in treating of the pronouns proper; defines the term

in a manner peculiar to himself; prefers and uses it in all his parsing;

and yet, by the third sentence of the story, the learner is conducted to

this just conclusion: "Hence, such a thing as an \_adjective-pronoun\_ cannot

exist."--\_Grammar\_, p. 105. Once more. Upon his own rules, or such as he

had borrowed, he comments thus, and comments \_truly\_, because he had either

written them badly or made an ill choice: "But some of these rules are

foolish, trifling, and unimportant."--\_Elocution\_, p. 97. Again: "Rules 10

and 11, rest on a sandy foundation. They appear not to be based on the

principles of the language."--\_Grammar\_, p. 59. These are but specimens of

his own frequent testimony against himself! Nor shall he find refuge in the

impudent falsehood, that the things which I quote as his, are not his

own.[14] These contradictory texts, and scores of others which might be

added to them, are as rightfully his own, as any doctrine he has ever yet

inculcated. But, upon the credulity of ignorance, his high-sounding

certificates and unbounded boasting can impose any thing. They overrule all

in favour of cue of the worst grammars extant;--of which he says, "it is

now studied by more than one hundred thousand children and youth; and is

more extensively used than \_all other English grammars\_ published in the

United States."--\_Elocution\_, p. 347. The booksellers say, he receives from

his publishers \_ten cents a copy\_, on this work, and that he reports the

sale of \_sixty thousand copies per annum\_. Such has of late been his public

boast. I have once had the story from his own lips, and of course

congratulated him, though I dislike the book. Six thousand dollars a year,

on this most miserable modification of Lindley Murray's Grammar! Be it

so--or double, if he and the public please. Murray had so little

originality in his work, or so little selfishness in his design, that he

would not take any thing; and his may ultimately prove the better bargain.

36. A man may boast and bless himself as he pleases, his fortune, surely,

can never be worthy of an other's envy, so long as he finds it inadequate

to his own great merits, and unworthy of his own poor gratitude. As a

grammarian, Kirkham claims to be second only to Lindley Murray; and says,

"Since the days of Lowth, no other work on grammar, Murray's only excepted,

has been so favourably received by the \_publick\_ as his own. As a proof of

this, he would mention, that within the last six years it has passed

through \_fifty\_ editions."--\_Preface to Elocution\_, p. 12. And, at the same

time, and in the same preface, he complains, that, "Of all the labours done

under the sun, the labours \_of the pen\_ meet with the poorest

reward."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 5. This too clearly favours the report, that his

books were not written by himself, but by others whom he hired. Possibly,

the anonymous helper may here have penned, not his employer's feeling, but

a line of his own experience. But I choose to ascribe the passage to the

professed author, and to hold him answerable for the inconsistency. Willing

to illustrate by the best and fairest examples these fruitful means of

grammatical fame, I am glad of his present success, which, through this

record, shall become yet more famous. It is the only thing which makes him

worthy of the notice here taken of him. But I cannot sympathize with his

complaint, because he never sought any but "the poorest reward;" and more

than all he sought, he found. In his last "Address to Teachers," he says,

"He may doubtless be permitted emphatically to say with Prospero, '\_Your

breath has filled my sails\_.'"--\_Elocution\_, p. 18. If this boasting has

any truth in it, he ought to be satisfied. But it is written, "He that

loveth silver, shall not be satisfied with silver; nor he that loveth

abundance, with increase." Let him remember this.[15] He now announces

three or four other works as forthcoming shortly. What these will achieve,

the world will see. But I must confine myself to the Grammar.

37. In this volume, scarcely any thing is found where it might be expected.

"The author," as he tells us in his preface, "has not followed the common

'artificial and unnatural arrangement adopted by most of his predecessors;'

\_yet he\_ has endeavoured to pursue a more judicious one, namely, '\_the

order of the understanding\_.'"--\_Grammar\_, p. 12. But if this is the order

of his understanding, he is greatly to be pitied. A book more confused in

its plan, more wanting in method, more imperfect in distinctness of parts,

more deficient in symmetry, or more difficult of reference, shall not

easily be found in stereotype. Let the reader try to follow us here. Bating

twelve pages at the beginning, occupied by the title, recommendations,

advertisement, contents, preface, hints to teachers, and advice to

lecturers; and fifty-four at the end, embracing syntax, orthography,

orthoëpy, provincialisms, prosody, punctuation, versification, rhetoric,

figures of speech, and a Key, all in the sequence here given; the work

consists of fourteen chapters of grammar, absurdly called "Familiar

Lectures." The first treats of sundries, under half a dozen titles, but

chiefly of Orthography; and the last is three pages and a half, of the most

common remarks, on Derivation. In the remaining twelve, the Etymology and

Syntax of the ten parts of speech are commingled; and an attempt is made,

to teach simultaneously all that the author judged important in either.

Hence he gives us, in a strange congeries, rules, remarks, illustrations,

false syntax, systematic parsing, exercises in parsing, two different

orders of notes, three different orders of questions, and a variety of

other titles merely occasional. All these things, being additional to his

main text, are to be connected, in the mind of the learner, with the parts

of speech successively, in some new and inexplicable catenation found only

in the arrangement of the lectures. The author himself could not see

through the chaos. He accordingly made his table of contents a mere meagre

alphabetical index. Having once attempted in vain to explain the order of

his instructions, he actually gave the matter up in despair!

38. In length, these pretended lectures vary, from three or four pages, to

eight-and-thirty. Their subjects run thus: 1. Language, Grammar,

Orthography; 2. Nouns and Verbs; 3. Articles; 4. Adjectives; 5.

Participles; 6. Adverbs; 7. Prepositions; 8. Pronouns; 9. Conjunctions; 10.

Interjections and Nouns; 11. Moods and Tenses; 12. Irregular Verbs; 13.

Auxiliary, Passive, and Defective Verbs; 14. Derivation. Which, now, is

"more judicious," such confusion as this, or the arrangement which has been

common from time immemorial? Who that has any respect for the human

intellect, or whose powers of mind deserve any in return, will avouch this

jumble to be "the order of the understanding?" Are the methods of science

to be accounted mere hinderances to instruction? Has grammar really been

made easy by this confounding of its parts? Or are we lured by the name,

"\_Familiar Lectures\_,"--a term manifestly adopted as a mere decoy, and,

with respect to the work itself, totally inappropriate? If these chapters

have ever been actually delivered as a series of lectures, the reader must

have been employed on some occasions eight or ten times as long as on

others! "People," says Dr. Johnson, "have now-a-days got a strange opinion

that every thing should be taught by \_lectures\_. Now, I cannot see that

lectures can do so much good as a private reading of the books from which

the lectures are taken. I know of nothing that can be best taught by

lectures, except where experiments are to be shown. You may teach chymistry

by lectures--you \_might\_ teach the making of shoes by lectures."

--\_Boswell's Life of Johnson\_.

39. With singular ignorance and untruth, this gentleman claims to have

invented a better method of analysis than had ever been practised before.

Of other grammars, his preface avers, "They have \_all overlooked\_ what the

author considers a very important object; namely, \_a systematick order of

parsing\_."--\_Grammar\_, p. 9. And, in his "Hints to Teachers," presenting

himself as a model, and his book as a paragon, he says: "By pursuing this

system, he can, with less labour, advance a pupil \_farther\_ in the

practical knowledge of this \_abstruse science\_, in \_two months\_, than he

could in \_one year\_, when he taught in the \_old way\_."--\_Grammar\_, p. 12.

What his "\_old way\_" was, does not appear. Doubtless something sufficiently

bad. And as to his new way, I shall hereafter have occasion to show that

\_that\_ is sufficiently bad also. But to this gasconade the simple-minded

have given credit--because the author showed certificates that testified to

his great success, and called him "amiable and modest!" But who can look

into the book, or into the writer's pretensions in regard to his

predecessors, and conceive the merit which has made him--"preëminent by so

much odds?" Was Murray less praiseworthy, less amiable, or less modest? In

illustration of my topic, and for the sake of literary justice, I have

selected that honoured "\_Compiler\_" to show the abuses of praise; let the

history of this his vaunting \_modifier\_ cap the climax of vanity. In

general, his amendments of "that eminent philologist," are not more

skillful than the following touch upon an eminent dramatist; and here, it

is plain, he has mistaken two nouns for adjectives, and converted into bad

English a beautiful passage, the sentiment of which is worthy of an

\_author's\_ recollection:

"The evil \_deed\_ or \_deeds\_ that men do, \_lives\_ after them;

The good \_deed\_ or \_deeds is\_ oft interred with their bones." [16]

\_Kirkham's Grammar\_, p. 75.

40. Lord Bacon observes, "Nothing is thought so easy a request to a great

person as his letter; and yet, if it be not in a good cause, it is so much

out of his reputation." It is to this mischievous facility of

recommendation, this prostituted influence of great names, that the

inconvenient diversity of school-books, and the continued use of bad ones,

are in a great measure to be attributed. It belongs to those who understand

the subjects of which authors profess to treat, to judge fairly and fully

of their works, and then to let the \_reasons\_ of their judgement be known.

For no one will question the fact, that a vast number of the school-books

now in use are either egregious plagiarisms or productions of no

comparative merit. And, what is still more surprising and monstrous,

presidents, governors, senators, and judges; professors, doctors,

clergymen, and lawyers; a host of titled connoisseurs; with incredible

facility lend their names, not only to works of inferior merit, but to the

vilest thefts, and the wildest absurdities, palmed off upon their own and

the public credulity, under pretence of improvement. The man who thus

prefixes his letter of recommendation to an ill-written book, publishes,

out of mere courtesy, a direct impeachment of his own scholarship or

integrity. Yet, how often have we seen the honours of a high office, or

even of a worthy name, prostituted to give a temporary or local currency to

a book which it would disgrace any man of letters to quote! With such

encouragement, nonsense wrestles for the seat of learning, exploded errors

are republished as novelties, original writers are plundered by dunces, and

men that understand nothing well, profess to teach all sciences!

41. All praise of excellence must needs be comparative, because the thing

itself is so. To excel in grammar, is but to know better than others

wherein grammatical excellence consists. Hence there is no fixed point of

perfection beyond which such learning may not be carried. The limit to

improvement is not so much in the nature of the subject, as in the powers

of the mind, and in the inducements to exert them upon a theme so humble

and so uninviting. Dr. Johnson suggests, in his masterly preface, "that a

whole life cannot be spent upon syntax and etymology, and that even a whole

life would not be sufficient." Who then will suppose, in the face of such

facts and confessions as have been exhibited, that either in the faulty

publications of Murray, or among the various modifications of them by other

hands we have any such work as deserves to be made a permanent standard of

instruction in English grammar? With great sacrifices, both of pleasure and

of interest, I have humbly endeavoured to supply this desideratum; and it

remains for other men to determine, and other times to know, what place

shall be given to these my labours, in the general story of this branch of

learning. Intending to develop not only the principles but also the history

of grammar, I could not but speak of its authors. The writer who looks

broadly at the past and the present, to give sound instruction to the

future, must not judge of men by their shadows. If the truth, honestly

told, diminish the stature of some, it does it merely by clearing the sight

of the beholder. Real greatness cannot suffer loss by the dissipating of a

vapour. If reputation has been raised upon the mist of ignorance, who but

the builder shall lament its overthrow? If the works of grammarians are

often ungrammatical, whose fault is this but their own? If \_all\_

grammatical fame is little in itself, how can the abatement of what is

undeserved of it be much? If the errors of some have long been tolerated,

what right of the critic has been lost by nonuser? If the interests of

Science have been sacrificed to Mammon, what rebuke can do injustice to the

craft? Nay, let the broad-axe of the critic hew up to the line, till every

beam in her temple be smooth and straight. For, "certainly, next to

commending good writers, the greatest service to learning is, to expose the

bad, who can only in that way be made of any use to it." [17] And if, among

the makers of grammars, the scribblings of some, and the filchings of

others, are discreditable alike to themselves and to their theme, let the

reader consider, how great must be the intrinsic worth of that study which

still maintains its credit in spite of all these abuses!

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE ORIGIN OF LANGUAGE.

"Tot fallaciis obrutum, tot hallucinationibus demersum, tot adhuc tenebris

circumfusum studium hocce mihi visum est, ut nihil satis tuto in hac

materia præstari posse arbitratus sim, nisi nova quadam arte critica

præmissa."--SCIPIO MAFFEIUS: \_Cassiod. Complexiones\_, p. xxx.

1. The origin of things is, for many reasons, a peculiarly interesting

point in their history. Among those who have thought fit to inquire into

the prime origin of speech, it has been matter of dispute, whether we ought

to consider it a special gift from Heaven, or an acquisition of industry--a

natural endowment, or an artificial invention. Nor is any thing that has

ever yet been said upon it, sufficient to set the question permanently at

rest. That there is in some words, and perhaps in some of every language, a

natural connexion between the sounds uttered and the things signified,

cannot be denied; yet, on the other hand, there is, in the use of words in

general, so much to which nature affords no clew or index, that this whole

process of communicating thought by speech, seems to be artificial. Under

an other head, I have already cited from Sanctius some opinions of the

ancient grammarians and philosophers on this point. With the reasoning of

that zealous instructor, the following sentence from Dr. Blair very

obviously accords: "To suppose words invented, or names given to things, in

a manner purely arbitrary, without any ground or reason, is to suppose an

effect without a cause. There must have always been some motive which led

to the assignation of one name rather than an other."--\_Rhet.\_, Lect. vi,

p. 55.

2. But, in their endeavours to explain the origin and early progress of

language, several learned men, among whom is this celebrated lecturer, have

needlessly perplexed both themselves and their readers, with sundry

questions, assumptions, and reasonings, which are manifestly contrary to

what has been made known to us on the best of all authority. What signifies

it[18] for a man to tell us how nations rude and barbarous invented

interjections first,[19] and then nouns, and then verbs,[20] and finally

the other parts of speech; when he himself confesses that he does not know

whether language "can be considered a human invention at all;" and when he

believed, or ought to have believed, that the speech of the first man,

though probably augmented by those who afterwards used it, was,

essentially, the one language of the earth for more than eighteen

centuries? The task of inventing a language \_de novo\_, could surely have

fallen upon no man but Adam; and he, in the garden of Paradise, had

doubtless some aids and facilities not common to every wild man of the

woods.

3. The learned Doctor was equally puzzled to conceive, "either how society

could form itself, previously to language, or how words could rise into a

language, previously to society formed."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, Lect. vi, p. 54.

This too was but an idle perplexity, though thousands have gravely pored

over it since, as a part of the study of rhetoric; for, if neither could be

previous to the other, they must have sprung up simultaneously. And it is a

sort of slander upon our prime ancestor, to suggest, that, because he was

"\_the first\_," he must have been "\_the rudest\_" of his race; and that,

"consequently, those first rudiments of speech," which alone the

supposition allows to him or to his family, "must have been poor and

narrow."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 54. It is far more reasonable to think, with

a later author, that, "Adam had an insight into natural things far beyond

the acutest philosopher, as may be gathered from his giving of names to all

creatures, according to their different constitutions."--\_Robinson's

Scripture Characters\_, p. 4.

4. But Dr. Blair is not alone in the view which he here takes. The same

thing has bean suggested by other learned men. Thus Dr. James P. Wilson, of

Philadelphia, in an octavo published in 1817, says: "It is difficult to

discern how communities could have existed without language, and equally so

to discover how language could have obtained, in a peopled world, prior to

society."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 1. I know not how so many

professed Christians, and some of them teachers of religion too, with the

Bible in their hands, can reason upon this subject as they do. We find

them, in their speculations, conspiring to represent primeval man, to use

their own words, as a "\_savage\_, whose 'howl at the appearance of danger,

and whose exclamations of joy at the sight of his prey, reiterated, or

varied with the change of objects, were probably the origin of

language.'--\_Booth's Analytical Dictionary\_. In the dawn of society, ages

may have passed away, with little more converse than what these efforts

would produce."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p. 31. Here Gardiner quotes

Booth with approbation, and the latter, like Wilson, may have borrowed his

ideas from Blair. Thus are we taught by a multitude of guessers, grave,

learned, and oracular, that the last of the ten parts of speech was in fact

the first: "\_Interjections\_ are exceedingly interesting in one respect.

They are, there can be little doubt, \_the oldest words\_ in all languages;

and may be considered the elements of speech."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_,

p. 78. On this point, however, Dr. Blair seems not to be quite consistent

with himself: "Those exclamations, therefore, which by grammarians are

called \_interjections\_, uttered in a strong and passionate manner, were,

\_beyond doubt\_, the first elements or beginnings of speech."--\_Rhet.\_,

Lect. vi, p. 55. "The \_names\_ of sensible objects were, \_in all languages\_,

the words most early introduced."--\_Rhet.\_, Lect. xiv, p. 135. "The \_names

of sensible objects\_," says Murray too, "were the words most early

introduced."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 336. Bat what says the Bible?

5. Revelation informs us that our first progenitor was not only endowed

with the faculty of speech, but, as it would appear, actually incited by

the Deity to exert that faculty in giving \_names\_ to the objects by which

he was surrounded. "Out of the ground the Lord God formed every beast of

the field and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam, to see

what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature,

that was the name thereof. And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the

fowls of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was

not found a help meet for him."--\_Gen.\_, ii, 19, 20. This account of the

first naming of the other creatures by man, is apparently a parenthesis in

the story of the creation of woman, with which the second chapter of

Genesis concludes. But, in the preceding chapter, the Deity is represented

not only as calling all things into existence \_by his Word\_; but as

\_speaking to the first human pair\_, with reference to their increase in the

earth, and to their dominion over it, and over all the living creatures

formed to inhabit it. So that the order of the events cannot be clearly

inferred from the order of the narration. The manner of this communication

to man, may also be a subject of doubt. Whether it was, or was not, made by

a voice of words, may be questioned. But, surely, that Being who, in

creating the world and its inhabitants, manifested his own infinite wisdom,

eternal power, and godhead, does not lack words, or any other means of

signification, if he will use them. And, in the inspired record of his work

in the beginning, he is certainly represented, not only as naming all

things imperatively, when he spoke them into being, but as expressly

calling the light \_Day\_, the darkness \_Night\_, the firmament \_Heaven\_, the

dry land \_Earth\_, and the gatherings of the mighty waters \_Seas\_.

6. Dr. Thomas Hartwell Horne, in commending a work by Dr. Ellis, concerning

the origin of human wisdom and understanding, says: "It shows

satisfactorily, that religion \_and language\_ entered the world by divine

revelation, without the aid of which, man had not been a rational or

religious creature."--\_Study of the Scriptures\_, Vol. i, p. 4. "Plato

attributes the primitive words of the \_first language\_ to a divine origin;"

and Dr. Wilson remarks, "The transition from silence to speech, implies an

effort of the understanding too great for man."--\_Essay on Gram.\_, p. 1.

Dr. Beattie says, "Mankind must have spoken in all ages, the young

constantly learning to speak by imitating those who were older; and, if so,

our first parents must have received this art, as well as some others, by

inspiration."--\_Moral Science\_, p. 27. Horne Tooke says, "I imagine that it

is, \_in some measure\_, with the vehicle of our thoughts, as with the

vehicles for our bodies. Necessity produced both."--\_Diversions of Purley\_,

Vol. i, p. 20. Again: "Language, it is true, \_is an art\_, and a glorious

one; whose influence extends over all the others, and in which finally all

science whatever must centre: but an art \_springing from necessity\_, and

originally invented by artless men, who did not sit down like philosophers

to invent it."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 259.

7. Milton imagines Adam's first knowledge of speech, to have sprung from

the hearing of his own voice; and that voice to have been raised,

instinctively, or spontaneously, in an animated inquiry concerning his own

origin--an inquiry in which he addresses to unintelligent objects, and

inferior creatures, such questions as the Deity alone could answer:

"Myself I then perused, and limb by limb

Surveyed, and sometimes went, and sometimes ran

With supple joints, as lively vigor led:

But who I was, or where, or from what cause,

Knew not; \_to speak I tried, and forthwith spake;

My tongue obeyed, and readily could name

Whatever I saw\_. 'Thou Sun,' said I, 'fair light,

And thou enlightened Earth, so fresh and gay,

Ye Hills and Dales, ye Rivers, Woods, and Plains;

And ye that live and move, fair Creatures! tell,

Tell, if ye saw, how came I thus, how here?

Not of myself; by some great Maker then,

In goodness and in power preëminent:

Tell me how I may know him, how adore,

From whom I have that thus I move and live,

And feel that I am happier than I know.'"

\_Paradise Lost\_, Book viii, l. 267.

But, to the imagination of a poet, a freedom is allowed, which belongs not

to philosophy. We have not always the means of knowing how far he

\_literally\_ believes what he states.

8. My own opinion is, that language is partly natural and partly

artificial. And, as the following quotation from the Greek of Ammonius will

serve in some degree to illustrate it, I present the passage in English for

the consideration of those who may prefer ancient to modern speculations:

"In the same manner, therefore, as mere motion is from nature, but dancing

is something positive; and as wood exists in nature, but a door is

something positive; so is the mere utterance of vocal sound founded in

nature, but the signification of ideas by nouns or verbs is something

positive. And hence it is, that, as to the simple power of producing vocal

sound--which is as it were the organ or instrument of the soul's faculties

of knowledge or volition--as to this vocal power, I say, man seems to

possess it from nature, in like manner as irrational animals; but as to the

power of using significantly nouns or verbs, or sentences combining these,

(which are not natural but positive,) this he possesses by way of peculiar

eminence; because he alone of all mortal beings partakes of a soul which

can move itself, and operate to the production of arts. So that, even in

the utterance of sounds, the inventive power of the mind is discerned; as

the various elegant compositions, both in metre, and without metre,

abundantly prove."--\_Ammon. de Interpr.\_, p. 51.[21]

9. Man was made for society; and from the first period of human existence

the race were social. Monkish seclusion is manifestly unnatural; and the

wild independence of the savage, is properly denominated a state of nature,

only in contradistinction to that state in which the arts are cultivated.

But to civilized life, or even to that which is in any degree social,

language is absolutely necessary. There is therefore no danger that the

language of any nation shall fall into disuse, till the people by whom it

is spoken, shall either adopt some other, or become themselves extinct.

When the latter event occurs, as is the case with the ancient Hebrew,

Greek, and Latin, the language, if preserved at all from oblivion, becomes

the more permanent; because the causes which are constantly tending to

improve or deteriorate every living language, have ceased to operate upon

those which are learned only from ancient books. The inflections which now

compose the declensions and conjugations of the dead languages, and which

indeed have ever constituted the peculiar characteristics of those forms of

speech, must remain forever as they are.

10. When a nation changes, its

language, as did our forefathers in Britain, producing by a gradual

amalgamation of materials drawn from various tongues a new one differing

from all, the first stages of its grammar will of course be chaotic and

rude. Uniformity springs from the steady application of rules; and polish

is the work of taste and refinement. We may easily err by following the

example of our early writers with more reverence than judgement; nor is it

possible for us to do justice to the grammarians, whether early or late,

without a knowledge both of the history and of the present state of the

science which they profess to teach. I therefore think it proper rapidly to

glance at many things remote indeed in time, yet nearer to my present

purpose, and abundantly more worthy of the student's consideration, than a

thousand matters which are taught for grammar by the authors of treatises

professedly elementary.

11. As we have already seen, some have supposed that the formation of the

first language must have been very slow and gradual. But of this they offer

no proof, and from the pen of inspiration we seem to have testimony against

it. Did Adam give names to all the creatures about him, and then allow

those names to be immediately forgotten? Did not both he and his family

continually use his original nouns in their social intercourse? and how

could they use them, without other parts of speech to form them into

sentences? Nay, do we not know from the Bible, that on several occasions

our prime ancestor expressed himself like an intelligent man, and used all

the parts of speech which are now considered \_necessary\_? What did he say,

when his fit partner, the fairest and loveliest work of God, was presented

to him? "This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be

called Woman, because she was taken out of Man." And again: Had he not

other words than nouns, when he made answer concerning his transgression:

"I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked;

and I hid myself?" What is it, then, but a groundless assumption, to make

him and his immediate descendants ignorant savages, and to affirm, with Dr.

Blair, that "their speech must have been poor and narrow?" It is not

possible now to ascertain what degree of perfection the oral communication

of the first age exhibited. But, as languages are now known to improve in

proportion to the improvement of society in civilization and intelligence,

and as we cannot reasonably suppose the first inhabitants of the earth to

have been savages, it seems, I think, a plausible conjecture, that the

primeval tongue was at least sufficient for all the ordinary intercourse of

civilized men, living in the simple manner ascribed to our early ancestors

in Scripture; and that, in many instances, human speech subsequently

declined far below its original standard.

12. At any rate, let it be remembered that the first language spoken on

earth, whatever it was, originated in Eden before the fall; that this "one

language," which all men understood until the dispersion, is to be traced,

not to the cries of savage hunters, echoed through the wilds and glades

where Nimrod planted Babel, but to that eastern garden of God's own

planting, wherein grew "every tree that is pleasant to the sight and good

for food;" to that paradise into which the Lord God put the new-created

man, "to dress it and to keep it." It was here that Adam and his partner

learned to speak, while yet they stood blameless and blessed, entire and

wanting nothing; free in the exercise of perfect faculties of body and

mind, capable of acquiring knowledge through observation and experience,

and also favoured with immediate communications with their Maker. Yet Adam,

having nothing which he did not receive, could not originally bring any

real knowledge into the world with him, any more than men do now: this, in

whatever degree attained, must be, and must always have been, either an

acquisition of reason, or a revelation from God. And, according to the

understanding of some, even in the beginning, "That was not first which is

spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is

spiritual."--\_1 Cor., xv, 46\_. That is, the spirit of Christ, the second

Adam, was bestowed on the first Adam, after his creation, as the life and

the light of the immortal soul. For, "In \_Him\_ was life, and the life was

the light of men," a life which our first parents forfeited and lost on the

day of their transgression. "It was undoubtedly in the light of this pure

influence that Adam had such an intuitive discerning of the creation, as

enabled him to give names to all creatures according to their several

natures."--\_Phipps, on Man\_, p. 4. A lapse from all this favour, into

conscious guilt and misery; a knowledge of good withdrawn, and of evil made

too sure; followed the first transgression. Abandoned then in great measure

by superhuman aid, and left to contend with foes without and foes within,

mankind became what history and observation prove them to have been; and

henceforth, by painful experience, and careful research, and cautious

faith, and humble docility, must they gather the fruits of \_knowledge\_; by

a vain desire and false conceit of which, they had forfeited the tree of

life. So runs the story

"Of man's first disobedience, and the fruit

Of that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste

Brought death into the world, and all our wo,

With loss of Eden, till one greater Man

Restore us, and regain the blissful seat."

13. The analogy of words in the different languages now known, has been

thought by many to be sufficiently frequent and clear to suggest the idea

of their common origin. Their differences are indeed great; but perhaps not

greater, than the differences in the several races of men, all of whom, as

revelation teaches, sprung from one common stock. From the same source we

learn, that, till the year of the world 1844, "The whole earth was of one

language, and of one speech."--\_Gen.\_, xi, 1.[22] At that period, the whole

world of mankind consisted only of the descendants of the eight souls who

had been saved in the ark, and so many of the eight as had survived the

flood one hundred and eighty-eight years. Then occurred that remarkable

intervention of the Deity, in which he was pleased to confound their

language; so that they could not understand one an other's speech, and were

consequently scattered abroad upon the face of the earth. This, however, in

the opinion of many learned men, does not prove the immediate formation of

any new languages.

14. But, whether new languages were thus immediately formed or not, the

event, in all probability, laid the foundation for that diversity which

subsequently obtained among the languages of the different nations which

sprung from the dispersion; and hence it may be regarded as the remote

cause of the differences which now exist. But for the immediate origin of

the peculiar characteristical differences which distinguish the various

languages now known, we are not able with much certainty to account. Nor is

there even much plausibility in the speculations of those grammarians who

have attempted to explain the order and manner in which the declensions,

the moods, the tenses, or other leading features of the languages, were

first introduced. They came into use before they could be generally known,

and the partial introduction of them could seldom with propriety be made a

subject of instruction or record, even if there were letters and learning

at hand to do them this honour. And it is better to be content with

ignorance, than to form such conjectures as imply any thing that is absurd

or impossible. For instance: Neilson's Theory of the Moods, published in

the Classical Journal of 1819, though it exhibits ingenuity and learning,

is liable to this strong objection; that it proceeds on the supposition,

that the moods of English verbs, and of several other derivative tongues,

were invented in a certain order by persons, not speaking a language

learned chiefly from their fathers, but uttering a new one as necessity

prompted. But when or where, since the building of Babel, has this ever

happened? That no dates are given, or places mentioned, the reader regrets,

but he cannot marvel.

15. By what successive changes, our words in general, and especially the

minor parts of speech, have become what we now find them, and what is their

original and proper signification according to their derivation, the

etymologist may often show to our entire satisfaction. Every word must have

had its particular origin and history; and he who in such things can

explain with certainty what is not commonly known, may do some service to

science. But even here the utility of his curious inquiries may be

overrated; and whenever, for the sake of some favourite theory, he ventures

into the regions of conjecture, or allows himself to be seduced from the

path of practical instruction, his errors are obstinate, and his guidance

is peculiarly deceptive. Men fond of such speculations, and able to

support them with some show of learning, have done more to unsettle the

science of grammar, and to divert ingenious teachers from the best methods

of instruction, than all other visionaries put together. Etymological

inquiries are important, and I do not mean to censure or discourage them,

merely as such; but the folly of supposing that in our language words must

needs be of the same class, or part of speech, as that to which they may be

traced in an other, deserves to be rebuked. The words \_the\_ and \_an\_ may be

articles in English, though obviously traceable to something else in Saxon;

and a learned man may, in my opinion, be better employed, than in

contending that \_if, though\_, and \_although\_, are not conjunctions, but

verbs!

16. Language is either oral or written; the question of its origin has

consequently two parts. Having suggested what seemed necessary respecting

the origin of \_speech\_, I now proceed to that of \_writing\_. Sheridan says,

"We have in use \_two kinds of language\_, the spoken and the written: the

one, the gift of God; the other, the invention of man."--\_Elocution\_, p.

xiv. If this ascription of the two things to their sources, were as just as

it is clear and emphatical, both parts of our question would seem to be

resolved. But this great rhetorician either forgot his own doctrine, or did

not mean what he here says. For he afterwards makes the former kind of

language as much a work of art, as any one will suppose the latter to have

been. In his sixth lecture, he comments on the gift of speech thus: "But

still we are to observe, that nature did no more than furnish the power and

means; \_she did not give the language\_, as in the case of the passions, but

left it to the industry of men, to find out and agree upon such articulate

sounds, as they should choose to make the symbols of their ideas."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 147. He even goes farther, and supposes certain \_tones of the voice\_ to

be things invented by man: "Accordingly, as she did not furnish the

\_words\_, which were to be the symbols of his ideas; neither did she furnish

the \_tones\_, which were to manifest, and communicate by their own virtue,

the internal exertions and emotions, of such of his nobler faculties, as

chiefly distinguish him from the brute species; but left them also, like

words, to the care and invention of man."--\_Ibidem\_. On this branch of the

subject, enough has already been presented.

17. By most authors, alphabetic writing is not only considered an

artificial invention, but supposed to have been wholly unknown in the early

ages of the world. Its antiquity, however, is great. Of this art, in which

the science of grammar originated, we are not able to trace the

commencement. Different nations have claimed the honour of the invention;

and it is not decided, among the learned, to whom, or to what country, it

belongs. It probably originated in Egypt. For, "The Egyptians," it is said,

"paid divine honours to the Inventor of Letters, whom they called \_Theuth\_:

and Socrates, when he speaks of him, considers him as a god, or a god-like

man."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 32. Charles Bucke has it, "That the first

inventor of letters is supposed to have been \_Memnon\_; who was, in

consequence, fabled to be the son of Aurora, goddess of the

morning."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 5. The ancients in general seem to

have thought Phoenicia the birthplace of Letters:

"Phoenicians first, if ancient fame be true,

The sacred mystery of letters knew;

They first, by sound, in various lines design'd,

Express'd the meaning of the thinking mind;

The power of words by figures rude conveyed,

And useful science everlasting made."

\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. iii, l. 334.

18. Some, however, seem willing to think writing coeval with speech. Thus

Bicknell, from Martin's Physico-Grammatical Essay: "We are told by Moses,

that Adam \_gave names to every living creature\_;[23] but how those names

were written, or what sort of characters he made use of, is not known to

us; nor indeed whether Adam ever made use of a written language at all;

since we find no mention made of any in the sacred history."--\_Bicknell's

Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 5. A certain late writer on English grammar, with

admirable flippancy, cuts this matter short, as follows,--satisfying

himself with pronouncing all speech to be natural, and all writing

artificial: "Of how many primary kinds is language? It is of two kinds;

natural or spoken, and artificial or written."--\_Oliver B. Peirce's Gram.\_,

p. 15. "Natural language is, to a limited extent, (the representation of

the passions,) common to brutes as well as man; but artificial language,

being the work of invention, is peculiar to man."--\_Ib.\_, p. 16.[24]

19. The writings delivered to the Israelites by Moses, are more ancient

than any others now known. In the thirty-first chapter of Exodus, it is

said, that God "gave unto Moses, upon Mount Sinai, two tables of testimony,

tables of stone, \_written with the finger of God\_." And again, in the

thirty-second: "The tables were the work of God, and the writing was \_the

writing of God\_, graven upon the tables." But these divine testimonies,

thus miraculously written, do not appear to have been the first writing;

for Moses had been previously commanded to write an account of the victory

over Amalek, "for a memorial in a book, and rehearse it in the ears of

Joshua."--\_Exod.\_, xvii, 14. This first battle of the Israelites occurred

in Rephidim, a place on the east side of the western gulf of the Red Sea,

at or near Horeb, but before they came to Sinai, upon the top of which, (on

the fiftieth day after their departure from Egypt,) Moses received the ten

commandments of the law.

20. Some authors, however, among whom is Dr. Adam Clarke, suppose that in

this instance the order of the events is not to be inferred from the order

of the record, or that there is room to doubt whether the use of letters

was here intended; and that there consequently remains a strong

probability, that the sacred Decalogue, which God himself delivered to

Moses on Sinai, A. M. 2513, B. C. 1491, was "the first writing \_in

alphabetical characters\_ ever exhibited to the world." See \_Clarke's

Succession of Sacred Literature\_, Vol. i, p. 24. Dr. Scott, in his General

Preface to the Bible, seems likewise to favour the same opinion. "Indeed,"

says he, "there is some probability in the opinion, that the art of writing

was first communicated by revelation, to Moses, in order to perpetuate,

with certainty, those facts, truths, and laws, which he was employed to

deliver to Israel. Learned men find no traces of \_literary\_, or

alphabetical, writing, in the history of the nations, till long after the

days of Moses; unless the book of Job may be regarded as an exception. The

art of expressing almost an infinite variety of sounds, by the interchanges

of a few letters, or marks, seems more like a discovery to man from heaven,

than a human invention; and its beneficial effects, and almost absolute

necessity, for the preservation and communication of true religion, favour

the conjecture."--\_Scott's Preface\_, p. xiv.

21. The time at which Cadmus, the Phoenician, introduced this art into

Greece, cannot be precisely ascertained. There is no reason to believe it

was antecedent to the time of Moses; some chronologists make it between two

and three centuries later. Nor is it very probable, that Cadmus invented

the sixteen letters of which he is said to have made use. His whole story

is so wild a fable, that nothing certain can be inferred from it. Searching

in vain for his stolen sister--his sister Europa, carried off by

Jupiter--he found a wife in the daughter of Venus! Sowing the teeth of a

dragon, which had devoured his companions, he saw them spring up to his aid

a squadron of armed soldiers! In short, after a series of wonderful

achievements and bitter misfortunes, loaded with grief and infirm with age,

he prayed the gods to release him from the burden of such a life; and, in

pity from above, both he and his beloved Hermíonè were changed into

serpents! History, however, has made him generous amends, by ascribing to

him the invention of letters, and accounting him the worthy benefactor to

whom the world owes all the benefits derived from literature. I would not

willingly rob him of this honour. But I must confess, there is no feature

of the story, which I can conceive to give any countenance to his claim;

except that as the great progenitor of the race of authors, his sufferings

correspond well with the calamities of which that unfortunate generation

have always so largely partaken.

22. The benefits of this invention, if it may be considered an invention,

are certainly very great. In oral discourse the graces of elegance are more

lively and attractive, but well-written books are the grand instructors of

mankind, the most enduring monuments of human greatness, and the proudest

achievements of human intellect. "The chief glory of a nation," says Dr.

Johnson, "arises from its authors." Literature is important, because it is

subservient to all objects, even those of the very highest concern.

Religion and morality, liberty and government, fame and happiness, are

alike interested in the cause of letters. It was a saying of Pope Pius the

Second, that, "Common men should esteem learning as silver, noblemen value

it as gold, and princes prize it as jewels." The uses of learning are seen

in every thing that is not itself useless.[25] It cannot be overrated, but

where it is perverted; and whenever that occurs, the remedy is to be sought

by opposing learning to learning, till the truth is manifest, and that

which is reprehensible, is made to appear so.

23. I have said, learning cannot be overrated, but where it is perverted.

But men may differ in their notions of what learning is; and, consequently,

of what is, or is not, a perversion of it. And so far as this point may

have reference to theology, and the things of God, it would seem that the

Spirit of God alone can fully show us its bearings. If the illumination of

the Spirit is necessary to an understanding and a reception of scriptural

truth, is it not by an inference more erudite than reasonable, that some

great men have presumed to limit to a verbal medium the communications of

Him who is everywhere His own witness, and who still gives to His own holy

oracles all their peculiar significance and authority? Some seem to think

the Almighty has never given to men any notion of Himself, except by words.

"Many ideas," says the celebrated Edmund Burke, "have never been at all

presented to the senses of any men \_but by words\_, as God,[26] angels,

devils, heaven, and hell, all of which have however a great influence over

the passions."--\_On the Sublime and [the] Beautiful\_, p. 97. That God can

never reveal facts or truths except by words, is a position with which I am

by no means satisfied. Of the great truths of Christianity, Dr. Wayland, in

his Elements of Moral Science, repeatedly avers, "All these being \_facts\_,

can never be known, except \_by language\_, that is, by revelation."--\_First

Edition\_, p. 132. Again: "All of them being of the \_nature of facts\_, they

could be made known to man \_in no other way than by language\_."--\_Ib.\_, p.

136. But it should be remembered, that these same facts were otherwise made

known to the prophets; (1 Pet., i, 11;) and that which has been done, is

not impossible, whether there is reason to expect it again or not. So of

the Bible, Calvin says, "No man can have the least knowledge of true and

sound doctrine, without having been a disciple of the Scripture."--

\_Institutes\_, B. i, Ch. 6. Had Adam, Abel, Enoch, Noah, and Abraham, then,

no such knowledge? And if such they had, what Scripture taught them? We

ought to value the Scriptures too highly to say of them any thing that is

\_unscriptural\_. I am, however, very far from supposing there is any \_other

doctrine\_ which can be safely substituted for the truths revealed of old,

the truths contained in the Holy Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments:

"Left only in those written records pure,

Though not but by the Spirit understood." [27]--\_Milton\_.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE POWER OF LANGUAGE.

"Quis huic studio literarum, quod profitentur ii, qui grammatici vocantur,

penitus se dedidit, quin omnem illarum artium pæne infinitam \_vim\_ et

\_materiam\_ scientiæ cogitatione comprehenderit?"--CICERO. \_De Oratore\_,

Lib. i, 3.

1. The peculiar \_power\_ of language is another point worthy of particular

consideration. The power of an instrument is virtually the power of him who

wields it; and, as language is used in common, by the wise and the foolish,

the mighty and the impotent, the candid and the crafty, the righteous and

the wicked, it may perhaps seem to the reader a difficult matter, to speak

intelligibly of its \_peculiar power\_. I mean, by this phrase, its fitness

or efficiency to or for the accomplishment of the purposes for which it is

used. As it is the nature of an agent, to be the doer of something, so it

is the nature of an instrument, to be that with which something is

effected. To make signs, is to do something, and, like all other actions,

necessarily implies an agent; so all signs, being things by means of which

other things are represented, are obviously the instruments of such

representation. Words, then, which represent thoughts, are things in

themselves; but, as signs, they are relative to other things, as being the

instruments of their communication or preservation. They are relative also

to him who utters them, as well as to those who may happen to be instructed

or deceived by them. "Was it Mirabeau, Mr. President, or what other master

of the human passions, who has told us that words are things? They are

indeed things, and things of mighty influence, not only in addresses to

the passions and high-wrought feelings of mankind, but in the discussion of

legal and political questions also; because a just conclusion is often

avoided, or a false one reached, by the adroit substitution of one phrase

or one word for an other."--\_Daniel Webster, in Congress\_, 1833.

2. To speak, is a moral action, the quality of which depends upon the

motive, and for which we are strictly accountable. "But I say unto you,

that every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof

in the day of judgement; for by thy words thou shalt be justified, and by

thy words thou shalt be condemned."--\_Matt.\_, xii, 36, 37. To listen, or to

refuse to listen, is a moral action also; and there is meaning in the

injunction, "Take heed what ye hear."--\_Mark\_, iv, 24. But why is it, that

so much of what is spoken or written, is spoken or written in vain? Is

language impotent? It is sometimes employed for purposes with respect to

which it is utterly so; and often they that use it, know not how

insignificant, absurd, or ill-meaning a thing they make of it. What is

said, with whatever inherent force or dignity, has neither power nor value

to him who does not understand it;[28] and, as Professor Duncan observes,

"No word can be to any man the sign of an idea, till that idea comes to

have a real existence in his mind."--\_Logic\_, p. 62. In instruction,

therefore, speech ought not to be regarded as the foundation or the essence

of knowledge, but as the sign of it; for knowledge has its origin in the

power of sensation, or reflection, or consciousness, and not in that of

recording or communicating thought. Dr. Spurzheim was not the first to

suggest, "It is time to abandon the immense error of supposing that words

and precepts are sufficient to call internal feelings and intellectual

faculties into active exercise."--\_Spurzheim's Treatise on Education\_, p.

94.

3. But to this it may be replied, When God wills, the signs of knowledge

are knowledge; and words, when he gives the ability to understand them,

may, in some sense, become--"spirit and life." See \_John\_, vi, 63. Where

competent intellectual faculties exist, the intelligible signs of thought

do move the mind to think; and to think sometimes with deep feelings too,

whether of assent or dissent, of admiration or contempt. So wonderful a

thing is a rational soul, that it is hard to say to what ends the language

in which it speaks, may, or may not, be sufficient. Let experience

determine. We are often unable to excite in others the sentiments which we

would: words succeed or fail, as they are received or resisted. But let a

scornful expression be addressed to a passionate man, will not the words

"call internal feelings" into action? And how do feelings differ from

thoughts?[29] Hear Dr. James Rush: "The human mind is the place of

representation of all the existences of nature which are brought within the

scope of the senses. The representatives are called ideas. These ideas are

the simple passive pictures of things, or [else] they exist with an

activity, capable of so affecting the physical organs as to induce us to

seek the continuance of that which produces them, or to avoid it. This

active or vivid class of ideas comprehends the passions. The functions of

the mind here described, exist then in different forms and degrees, from

the simple idea, to the highest energy of passion: and the terms, thought,

sentiment, emotion, feeling, and passion, are but the verbal signs of these

degrees and forms. Nor does there appear to be any line of classification,

for separating thought from passion: since simple thoughts, without

changing their nature, do, from interest or incitement, often assume the

colour of passion."--\_Philosophy of the Human Voice\_, p. 328.

4. Lord Kames, in the Appendix to his Elements of Criticism, divides \_the

senses\_ into external and internal, defining \_perception\_ to be the act by

which through the former we know outward objects, and \_consciousness\_ the

act by which through the latter we know what is within the mind. An \_idea\_,

according to his definition, (which he says is precise and accurate,) is,

"That \_perception\_ of a real object which \_is raised\_ in the mind by the

power of \_memory\_." But among the real objects from which memory may raise

ideas, he includes the workings of the mind itself, or whatever we remember

of our former passions, emotions, thoughts, or designs. Such a definition,

he imagines, might have saved Locke, Berkley, and their followers, from

much vain speculation; for with the ideal systems of these philosophers, or

with those of Aristotle and Des Cartes, he by no means coincides. This

author says, "As ideas are the chief materials employed in reasoning and

reflecting, it is of consequence that their nature and differences be

understood. It appears now that ideas may be distinguished into three

kinds: first, Ideas derived from original perceptions, properly termed

\_ideas of memory\_; second, Ideas communicated \_by language\_ or other signs;

and third, Ideas \_of imagination\_. These ideas differ from each other in

many respects; but chiefly in respect to their \_proceeding from different

causes\_. The first kind is derived from real existences that have been

objects of our senses; \_language is the cause of the second\_, or any other

sign that has the same power with language; and a man's imagination is to

himself the cause of the third. It is scarce [ly] necessary to add, that an

idea, originally of imagination, being conveyed to others by language or

any other vehicle, becomes in their mind an idea of the second kind; and

again, that an idea of this kind, being afterwards recalled to the mind,

becomes in that circumstance an idea of memory."--\_El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii,

p. 384.

5. Whether, or how far, language is to the mind itself \_the instrument of

thought\_, is a question of great importance in the philosophy of both. Our

literature contains occasional assertions bearing upon this point, but I

know of no full or able discussion of it.[30] Cardell's instructions

proceed upon the supposition, that neither the reason of men, nor even that

of superior intelligences, can ever operate independently of words.

"Speech," says he, "is to the mind what action is to animal bodies. Its

improvement is the improvement of our intellectual nature, and a duty to

God who gave it."--\_Essay on Language\_, p. 3. Again: "An attentive

investigation will show, that there is no way in which the individual mind

can, within itself, to any extent, \_combine its ideas\_, but by the

intervention of words. Every process of the reasoning powers, beyond the

immediate perception of sensible objects, depends on the structure of

speech; and, in a great degree, according to the excellence of this \_chief

instrument of all mental operations\_, will be the means of personal

improvement, of the social transmission of thought, and the elevation of

national character. From this, it may be laid down as a broad principle,

that no individual can make great advances in intellectual improvement,

beyond the bounds of a ready-formed language, as the necessary means of his

progress."--\_Ib.\_, p. 9. These positions might easily be offset by contrary

speculations of minds of equal rank; but I submit them to the reader, with

the single suggestion, that the author is not remarkable for that sobriety

of judgement which gives weight to opinions.

6. We have seen, among the citations in a former chapter, that Sanctius

says, "Names are the signs, and as it were \_the instruments, of things\_."

But what he meant by "\_instrumenta rerum\_" is not very apparent. Dr. Adam

says, "The principles of grammar may be traced from the progress of the

mind in the acquisition of language. Children first express their feelings

by motions and gestures of the body, by cries and tears. \_This is\_[31] the

language of nature, and therefore universal. \_It fitly represents\_[32] the

quickness of sentiment and thought, which are as instantaneous as the

impression of light on the eye. Hence we always express our stronger

feelings by these natural signs. But when we want to make known to others

the particular conceptions of the mind, we must represent them by parts, we

must divide and analyze them. We express \_each part by certain signs\_,[33]

and join these together, according to the order of their relations. Thus

words are \_both the instrument and signs[34] the division\_ of

thought."--\_Preface to Latin Gram.\_

7. The utterance of words, or the making of signs of any sort, requires

time;[35] but it is here suggested by Dr. Adam, that sentiment and thought,

though susceptible of being retained or recalled, naturally flash upon the

mind with immeasurable quickness.[36] If so, they must originate in

something more spiritual than language. The Doctor does not affirm that

words are the instruments of thought, but of \_the division\_ of thought. But

it is manifest, that if they effect this, they are not the only instruments

by means of which the same thing may be done. The deaf and dumb, though

uninstructed and utterly ignorant of language, can think; and can, by rude

signs of their own inventing, manifest a similar division, corresponding to

the individuality of things. And what else can be meant by "\_the division

of thought\_," than our notion of objects, as existing severally, or as

being distinguishable into parts? There can, I think, be no such division

respecting that which is perfectly pure and indivisible in its essence;

and, I would ask, is not simple continuity apt to exclude it from our

conception of every thing which appears with uniform coherence? Dr. Beattie

says, "It appears to me, that, as all things are individuals, all thoughts

must be so too."--\_Moral Science\_, Chap, i, Sec. 1. If, then, our thoughts

are thus divided, and consequently, as this author infers, have not in

themselves any of that generality which belongs to the signification of

common nouns, there is little need of any instrument to divide them

further: the mind rather needs help, as Cardell suggests, "to combine its

ideas." [37]

8. So far as language is a work of art, and not a thing conferred or

imposed upon us by nature, there surely can be in it neither division nor

union that was not first in the intellect for the manifestation of which it

was formed. First, with respect to generalization. "The human mind," says

Harris, "by an energy as spontaneous and familiar to its nature, as the

seeing of colour is familiar to the eye, discerns at once what in many is

one, what in things dissimilar and different is similar and the

same."--\_Hermes\_, p. 362. Secondly, with respect to division. Mechanical

separations are limited: "But the mind surmounts all power of concretion;

and can place in the simplest manner every attribute by itself; convex

without concave; colour without superficies; superficies without body; and

body without its accidents: as distinctly each one, as though they had

never been united. And thus it is, that it penetrates into the recesses of

all things, not only dividing them as wholes, into their more conspicuous

parts, but persisting till it even separate those elementary principles

which, being blended together after a more mysterious manner, are united in

the minutest part as much as in the mightiest whole."--\_Harris's Hermes\_,

p. 307.

9. It is remarkable that this philosopher, who had so sublime conceptions

of the powers of the human mind, and who has displayed such extraordinary

acuteness in his investigations, has represented the formation of words, or

the utterance of language, as equalling in speed the progress of our very

thoughts; while, as we have seen, an other author, of great name, avers,

that thought is "as instantaneous as the impression of light on the eye."

Philosophy here too evidently nods. In showing the advantage of words, as

compared with pictures, Harris says, "If we consider the ease and speed

with which words are formed,-an ease which knows no trouble or fatigue, and

a \_speed which equals the progress of our very thoughts\_,[38]--we may

plainly perceive an answer to the question here proposed, Why, in the

common intercourse of men with men, imitations have been rejected, and

symbols preferred."--\_Hermes\_, p. 336. Let us hear a third man, of equal

note: "Words have been called \_winged\_; and they well deserve that name,

when their abbreviations are compared with the progress which speech could

make without these inventions; but, compared with the rapidity of thought,

they have not \_the smallest claim to that title\_. Philosophers have

calculated the difference of velocity between sound and light; but who will

attempt to calculate the difference between speech and thought!"--\_Horne

Tooke's Epea Pteroenta\_, Vol. i, p. 23.

10. It is certain, that, in the admirable economy of the creation, natures

subordinate are made, in a wonderful manner, subservient to the operations

of the higher; and that, accordingly, our first ideas are such as are

conceived of things external and sensible. Hence all men whose intellect

appeals only to external sense, are prone to a philosophy which reverses

the order of things pertaining to the mind, and tends to materialism, if

not to atheism. "But"--to refer again to Harris--"the intellectual scheme

which never forgets Deity, postpones every thing corporeal to the primary

mental Cause. It is here it looks for the origin of intelligible ideas,

even of those which exist in human capacities. For though sensible objects

may be the destined medium to awaken the dormant energies of man's

understanding, yet are those energies themselves no more contained, in

sense, than the explosion of a cannon, in the spark which gave it fire. In

short, all minds that are, are similar and congenial; and so too are their

ideas, or intelligible forms. Were it otherwise, there could be no

intercourse between man and man, or (what is more important) between man

and God."--\_Hermes\_, p. 393.

11. A doctrine somewhat like this, is found in the Meditations of the

emperor Marcus Aurelius Antoninus, though apparently repugnant to the

polytheism commonly admitted by the Stoics, to whom he belonged: "The

world, take it all together, is but one; there is but one sort of matter to

make it of, one God to govern it, and one law to guide it. For, run through

the whole system of rational beings, and you will find reason and truth but

single and the same. And thus beings of the same kind, and endued with the

same reason, are made happy by the same exercises of it."--Book vii, Sec.

9. Again: "Let your soul receive the Deity as your blood does the air; for

the influences of the one are no less vital, than those of the other. This

correspondence is very practicable: for there is an ambient omnipresent

Spirit, which lies as open and pervious to your mind, as the air you

breathe does to your lungs: but then you must remember to be disposed to

draw it."--Book viii, Sec. 54; \_Collier's Translation\_.

12. Agreeably to these views, except that he makes a distinction between a

natural and a supernatural idea of God, we find Barclay, the early defender

of the Quakers, in an argument with a certain Dutch nobleman,

philosophizing thus: "If the Scripture then be true, there is in men a

supernatural idea of God, which altogether differs from this natural

idea--I say, in all men; because all men are capable of salvation, and

consequently of enjoying this divine vision. Now this capacity consisteth

herein, that they have such a supernatural idea in themselves.[39] For if

there were no such idea in them, it were impossible they should so know

God; for whatsoever is clearly and distinctly known, is known by its proper

idea; neither can it otherwise be clearly and distinctly known. \_For the

ideas of all things are divinely planted in our souls\_; for, as the better

philosophy teacheth, they are not begotten in us by outward objects or

outward causes, but only are by these outward things excited or stirred up.

And this is true, not only in supernatural ideas of God and things divine,

and in natural ideas of the natural principles of human understanding, and

conclusions thence deduced by the strength of human reason; but even in the

ideas of outward objects, which are perceived by the outward senses: as

that noble Christian philosopher Boëthius hath well observed; to which also

the Cartesian philosophy agreeth." I quote only to show the concurrence of

others, with Harris's position. Barclay carries on his argument with much

more of a similar import. See \_Sewell's History\_, folio, p. 620.

13. But the doctrine of ideas existing primarily in God, and being divinely

planted in our souls, did not originate with Boëthius: it may be traced

back a thousand years from his time, through the philosophy of Proclus,

Zeno, Aristotle,[40] Plato, Socrates, Parmenides, and Pythagoras. It is

absurd to suppose any production or effect to be more excellent than its

cause. That which really produces motion, cannot itself be inert; and that

which actually causes the human mind to think and reason, cannot itself be

devoid of intelligence. "For knowledge can alone produce knowledge." [41] A

doctrine apparently at variance with this, has recently been taught, with

great confidence, among the professed discoveries of \_Phrenology\_. How much

truth there may be in this new "\_science\_," as it is called, I am not

prepared to say; but, as sometimes held forth, it seems to me not only to

clash with some of the most important principles of mental philosophy, but

to make the power of thought the result of that which is in itself inert

and unthinking. Assuming that the primitive faculties of the human

understanding have not been known in earlier times, it professes to have

discovered, in the physical organization of the brain, their proper source,

or essential condition, and the true index to their measure, number, and

distribution. In short, the leading phrenologists, by acknowledging no

spiritual substance, virtually deny that ancient doctrine, "It is not in

flesh to think, or bones to reason," [42] and make the mind either a

material substance, or a mere mode without substantial being.

14. "The

doctrine of \_immaterial substances\_," says Dr. Spurzheim, "is not

sufficiently amenable to the test of observation; it is founded on belief,

and only supported by hypothesis."--\_Phrenology\_, Vol. i, p. 20. But it

should be remembered, that our notion of material substance, is just as

much a matter of hypothesis. All accidents, whether they be qualities or

actions, we necessarily suppose to have some support; and this we call

\_substance\_, deriving the term from the Latin, or \_hypostasis\_, if we

choose to borrow from the Greek. But what this substance, or hypostasis,

is, independently of its qualities or actions, we know not. This is clearly

proved by Locke. What do we mean by \_matter\_? and what by \_mind\_? \_Matter\_

is that which is solid, extended, divisible, movable, and occupies space.

\_Mind\_ is that which thinks, and wills, and reasons, and remembers, and

worships. Here are qualities in the one case; operations in the other. Here

are two definitions as totally distinct as any two can be; and he that sees

not in them a difference of \_substance\_, sees it nowhere: to him all

natures are one; and that one, an absurd supposition.

15. In favour of what is urged by the phrenologists, it may perhaps be

admitted, as a natural law, that, "If a picture of a visible object be

formed upon the retina, and the impression be communicated, by the nerves,

to the brain, the \_result\_ will be an act of perception."--\_Wayland's Moral

Science\_, p. 4. But it does not follow, nor did the writer of this sentence

believe, that perception is a mere act or attribute of the organized matter

of the brain. A material object can only occasion in our sensible organs a

corporeal motion, which has not in it the nature of thought or perception;

and upon what principle of causation, shall a man believe, in respect to

vision, that the thing which he sees, is more properly the cause of the

idea conceived of it, than is the light by which he beholds it, or the mind

in which that idea is formed? Lord Kames avers, that, "Colour, which

appears to the eye as spread upon a substance, has no existence but in the

mind of the spectator."--\_Elements of Criticism\_, i, 178. And Cicero placed

the perception, not only of colour, but of taste, of sound, of smell, and

of touch, in the mind, rather than in the senses. "Illud est album, hoc

dulce, canorum illud, hoc bene olens, hoc asperum: animo jam hæc tenemus

comprehensa, non sensibus."--\_Ciceronis Acad.\_ Lib. ii, 7. Dr. Beattie,

however, says: "Colours inhere not in the coloured body, but in the light

that falls upon it; \* \* \* and the word \_colour\_ denotes, an external thing,

and never a sensation of the mind."--\_Moral Science\_, i, 54. Here is some

difference of opinion; but however the thing may be, it does not affect my

argument; which is, that to perceive or think is an act or attribute of our

immaterial substance or nature, and not to be supposed the effect either of

the objects perceived or of our own corporeal organization.

16. Divine wisdom has established the senses as the avenues through which

our minds shall receive notices of the forms and qualities of external

things; but the sublime conception of the ancients, that these forms and

qualities had an abstract preëxistence in the divine mind, is a common

doctrine of many English authors, as Milton, Cowper, Akenside, and others.

For example: "Now if \_Ens primum\_ be the cause of \_entia a primo\_, then he

hath the idea of them in him: for he made them by counsel, and not by

necessity; for then he should have needed them, and they have a parhelion

of that wisdom that is in his Idea."--\_Richardson's Logic\_, p. 16: Lond.

1657.

"Then the Great Spirit, whom his works adore,

Within his own deep essence view'd the forms,

The forms eternal of created things."--AKENSIDE.

\_Pleasures of the Imagination\_, Book i.

"And in the school of sacred wisdom taught,

To read his wonders, in whose thought the world,

Fair as it is, existed ere it was."--COWPER.

\_Task: Winter Morning Walk\_, p. 150.

"Thence to behold this new-created world,

The addition of his empire, how it show'd

In prospect from his throne, how good, how fair,

Answering his great idea."--MILTON.

\_Paradise Lost\_, Book vii, line 554.

"Thought shines from God as shines the morn;

Language from kindling thought is born."

ANON.: \_a Poem in imitation of Coleridge\_.

17. "Original Truth," [43] says Harris, "having the most intimate

connection with the \_Supreme Intelligence\_, may be said (as it were) to

shine with unchangeable splendor, enlightening throughout the universe

every possible subject, by nature susceptible of its benign influence.

Passions and other obstacles may prevent indeed its efficacy, as clouds and

vapours may obscure the sun; but itself neither admits diminution, nor

change, because the darkness respects only particular percipients. Among

\_these\_ therefore we must look for ignorance and error, and for that

\_subordination of intelligence\_ which is their natural consequence. Partial

views, the imperfections of sense; inattention, idleness, the turbulence of

passions; education, local sentiments, opinions, and belief; conspire in

many instances to furnish us with ideas, some too partial, and (what is

worse than all this) with many that are erroneous, and contrary to truth.

These it behoves us to correct as far as possible, by cool suspense and

candid examination. Thus by a connection perhaps little expected, the cause

of \_Letters\_, and that of \_Virtue\_, appear to coincide; it being the

business of both, to examine our ideas, and to amend them by the standard

of nature and of truth."--See \_Hermes\_, p. 406.

18. Although it seems plain from our own consciousness, that the mind is an

active self-moving principle or essence, yet capable of being moved, after

its own manner, by other causes outward as well as inward; and although it

must be obvious to reflection, that all its ideas, perceptions, and

emotions, are, with respect to itself, of a spiritual nature--bearing such

a relation to the spiritual substance in which alone they appear, as bodily

motion is seen to bear to material substances; yet we know, from experience

and observation, that they who are acquainted with words, are apt to think

in words--that is, mentally to associate their internal conceptions with

the verbal signs which they have learned to use. And though I do not

conceive the position to be generally true, that words are to the mind

itself the necessary instruments of thought, yet, in my apprehension, it

cannot well be denied, that in some of its operations and intellectual

reaches, the mind is greatly assisted by its own contrivances with respect

to language. I refer not now to the communication of knowledge; for, of

this, language is admitted to be properly the instrument. But there seem to

be some processes of thought, or calculation, in which the mind, by a

wonderful artifice in the combination of terms, contrives to prevent

embarrassment, and help itself forward in its conceptions, when the objects

before it are in themselves perhaps infinite in number or variety.

19. We have an instance of this in numeration. No idea is more obvious or

simple than that of unity, or one. By the continual addition of this, first

to itself to make two, and then to each higher combination successively, we

form a series of different numbers, which may go on to infinity. In the

consideration of these, the mind would not be able to go tar without the

help of words, and those peculiarly fitted to the purpose. The

understanding would lose itself in the multiplicity, were it not aided by

that curious concatenation of names, which has been contrived for the

several parts of the succession. As far as \_twelve\_ we make use of simple

unrelated terms. Thenceforward we apply derivatives and compounds, formed

from these in their regular order, till we arrive at a \_hundred\_. This one

new word, \_hundred\_, introduced to prevent confusion, has nine hundred and

ninety-nine distinct repetitions in connexion with the preceding terms, and

thus brings us to a \_thousand\_. Here the computation begins anew, runs

through all the former combinations, and then extends forward, till the

word \_thousand\_ has been used nine hundred and ninety-nine thousand times;

and then, for ten hundred thousand, we introduce the new word \_million\_.

With this name we begin again as before, and proceed till we have used it a

million of times, each combination denoting a number clearly distinguished

from every other; and then, in like manner, we begin and proceed, with

\_billions, trillions, quadrillions, quintillions, etc.\_, to any extent we

please.

20. Now can any one suppose that words are not here, in some true sense,

the instruments of thought, or of the intellectual process thus carried on?

Were all these different numbers to be distinguished directly by the mind

itself, and denominated by terms destitute of this artificial connexion, it

may well be doubted whether the greatest genius in the world would ever be

able to do what any child may now effect by this orderly arrangement of

words; that is, to distinguish exactly the several stages of this long

progression, and see at a glance how far it is from the beginning of the

series. "The great art of knowledge," says Duncan, "lies in managing with

skill the capacity of the intellect, and contriving such helps, as, if they

strengthen not its natural powers, may yet expose them to no unnecessary

fatigue. When ideas become very complex, and by the multiplicity of their

parts grow too unwieldy to be dealt with in the lump, we must ease the view

of the mind by taking them to pieces, and setting before it the several

portions separately, one after an other. By this leisurely survey we are

enabled to take in the whole; and if we can draw it into such an orderly

combination as will naturally lead the attention, step by step, in any

succeeding consideration of the same idea, we shall have it ever at

command, and with a single glance of thought be able to run over all its

parts."--\_Duncan's Logic\_, p. 37, Hence we may infer the great importance

of method in grammar; the particulars of which, as Quintilian says, are

infinite.[44]

21. Words are in themselves but audible or visible signs, mere arbitrary

symbols, used, according to common practice and consent, as significant of

our ideas or thoughts.[45] But so well are they fitted to be made at will

the medium of mental conference, that nothing else can be conceived to

equal them for this purpose. Yet it does not follow that they who have the

greatest knowledge and command of words, have all they could desire in this

respect. For language is in its own nature but an imperfect instrument, and

even when tuned with the greatest skill, will often be found inadequate to

convey the impression with which the mind may labour. Cicero, that great

master of eloquence, frequently confessed, or declared, that words failed

him. This, however, may be thought to have been uttered as a mere figure of

speech; and some may say, that the imperfection I speak of, is but an

incident of the common weakness or ignorance of human nature; and that if a

man always knew what to say to an other in order to persuade or confute, to

encourage or terrify him, he would always succeed, and no insufficiency of

this kind would ever be felt or imagined. This also is plausible; but is

the imperfection less, for being sometimes traceable to an ulterior source?

Or is it certain that human languages used by perfect wisdom, would all be

perfectly competent to their common purpose? And if some would be found

less so than others, may there not be an insufficiency in the very nature

of them all?

22. If there is imperfection in any instrument, there is so much the more

need of care and skill in the use of it. Duncan, in concluding his chapter

about words as signs of our ideas, says, "It is apparent, that we are

sufficiently provided with the means' of communicating our thoughts one to

another; and that the mistakes so frequently complained of on this head,

are wholly owing to ourselves, in not sufficiently defining the terms we

use; or perhaps not connecting them with clear and determinate

ideas."--\_Logic\_, p. 69. On the other hand, we find that some of the best

and wisest of men confess the inadequacy of language, while they also

deplore its misuse. But, whatever may be its inherent defects, or its

culpable abuses, it is still to be honoured as almost the only medium for

the communication of thought and the diffusion of knowledge. Bishop Butler

remarks, in his Analogy of Religion, (a most valuable work, though

defective in style,) "So likewise the imperfections attending the only

method by which nature enables and directs us to communicate our thoughts

to each other, are innumerable. Language is, in its very nature,

inadequate, ambiguous, liable to infinite abuse, even from negligence; and

so liable to it from design, that every man can deceive and betray by

it."--Part ii, Chap. 3. Lord Kames, too, seconds this complaint, at least

in part: "Lamentable is the imperfection of language, almost in every

particular that falls not under external sense. I am talking of a matter

exceedingly clear in the perception, and yet I find no small difficulty to

express it clearly in words."--\_Elements of Criticism\_, Vol. i, p. 86. "All

writers," says Sheridan, "seem to be under the influence of one common

delusion, that by the help of words alone, they can communicate all that

passes in their minds."--\_Lectures on Elocution\_, p. xi.

23. Addison also, in apologizing for Milton's frequent use of old words and

foreign idioms, says, "I may further add, that Milton's sentiments and

ideas were so wonderfully sublime, that it would have been impossible for

him to have represented them in their full strength and beauty, without

having recourse to these foreign assistances. \_Our language sunk under

him\_, and was unequal to that greatness of soul which furnished him with

such glorious conceptions."--\_Spectator\_, No. 297. This, however, Dr.

Johnson seems to regard as a mere compliment to genius; for of Milton he

says, "The truth is, that both in prose and verse, he had formed his style

by a perverse and pedantick principle." But the grandeur of his thoughts is

not denied by the critic; nor is his language censured without

qualification. "Whatever be the faults of his diction, he cannot want the

praise of copiousness and variety: he was master of his language in its

full extent; and has selected the melodious words with such diligence, that

from his book alone the Art of English Poetry might be learned."--

\_Johnson's Life of Milton\_: \_Lives\_, p. 92. 24. As words abstractly

considered are empty and vain, being in their nature mere signs, or tokens,

which derive all their value from the ideas and feelings which they

suggest; it is evident that he who would either speak or write well, must

be furnished with something more than a knowledge of sounds and letters.

Words fitly spoken are indeed both precious and beautiful--"like apples of

gold in pictures of silver." But it is not for him whose soul is dark,

whose designs are selfish, whose affections are dead, or whose thoughts are

vain, to say with the son of Amram, "My doctrine shall drop as the rain, my

speech shall distil as the dew; as the small rain upon the tender herb, and

as the showers upon the grass."--\_Deut.\_, xxxii, 2. It is not for him to

exhibit the true excellency of speech, because he cannot feel its power. It

is not for him, whatever be the theme, to convince the judgement with

deductions of reason, to fire the imagination with glowing imagery, or win

with graceful words the willing ear of taste. His wisdom shall be silence,

when men are present; for the soul of manly language, is the soul that

thinks and feels as best becomes a man.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE ORIGIN AND HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

"Non mediocres enim tenebræ in sylva, ubi hæc captanda: neque eon, quo

pervenire volumus semitæ tritæ: neque non in tramitibus quædam objecta, quæ

euntem retinere possent."--VARRO. \_De Lingua Latina\_, Lib. iv, p. 4.

1. In order that we may set a just value upon the literary labours of those

who, in former times, gave particular attention to the culture of the

English language, and that we may the better judge of the credibility of

modern pretensions to further improvements, it seems necessary that we

should know something of the course of events through which its

acknowledged melioration in earlier days took place. For, in this case, the

extent of a man's knowledge is the strength of his argument. As Bacon

quotes Aristotle, "Qui respiciunt ad pauca, de facili pronunciant." He that

takes a narrow view, easily makes up his mind. But what is any opinion

worth, if further knowledge of facts can confute it?

2. Whatsoever is successively varied, or has such a manner of existence as

time can affect, must have had both an origin and a progress; and may have

also its particular \_history\_, if the opportunity for writing it be not

neglected. But such is the levity of mankind, that things of great moment

are often left without memorial, while the hand of Literature is busy to

beguile the world with trifles or with fictions, with fancies or with lies.

The rude and cursory languages of barbarous nations, till the genius of

Grammar arise to their rescue, are among those transitory things which

unsparing time is ever hurrying away, irrecoverably, to oblivion. Tradition

knows not what they were; for of their changes she takes no account.

Philosophy tells us, they are resolved into the variable, fleeting breath

of the successive generations of those by whom they were spoken; whose

kindred fate it was, to pass away unnoticed and nameless, lost in the

elements from which they sprung.

3. Upon the history of the English language, darkness thickens as we tread

back the course of time. The subject of our inquiry becomes, at every step,

more difficult and less worthy. We have now a tract of English literature,

both extensive and luminous; and though many modern writers, and no few

even of our writers on grammar, are comparatively very deficient in style,

it is safe to affirm that the English language in general has never been

written or spoken with more propriety and elegance, than it is at the

present day. Modern English we read with facility; and that which was good

two centuries ago, though considerably antiquated, is still easily

understood. The best way, therefore, to gain a practical knowledge of the

changes which our language has undergone, is, to read some of our older

authors in retrograde order, till the style employed at times more and more

remote, becomes in some degree familiar. Pursued in this manner, the study

will be less difficult, and the labour of the curious inquirer, which may

be suspended or resumed at pleasure, will be better repaid, than if he

proceed in the order of history, and attempt at first the Saxon remains.

4. The value of a language as an object of study, depends chiefly on the

character of the \_books\_ which it contains; and, secondarily, on its

connexion with others more worthy to be thoroughly known. In this instance,

there are several circumstances which are calculated soon to discourage

research. As our language took its rise during the barbarism of the dark

ages, the books through which its early history must be traced, are not

only few and meagre, but, in respect to grammar, unsettled and diverse. It

is not to be expected that inquiries of this kind will ever engage the

attention of any very considerable number of persons. Over the minds of the

reading public, the attractions of novelty hold a much greater influence,

than any thing that is to be discovered in the dusk of antiquity. All old

books contain a greater or less number of obsolete words, and antiquated

modes of expression, which puzzle the reader, and call him too frequently

to his glossary. And even the most common terms, when they appear in their

ancient, unsettled orthography, are often so disguised as not to be readily

recognized.

5. These circumstances (the last of which should be a caution to us against

innovations in spelling) retard the progress of the reader, impose a labour

too great for the ardour of his curiosity, and soon dispose him to rest

satisfied with an ignorance, which, being general, is not likely to expose

him to censure. For these reasons, ancient authors are little read; and the

real antiquary is considered a man of odd habits, who, by a singular

propensity, is led into studies both unfashionable and fruitless--a man who

ought to have been born in the days of old, that he might have spoken the

language he is so curious to know, and have appeared in the costume of an

age better suited to his taste.

6. But \_Learning\_ is ever curious to explore the records of time, as well

as the regions of space; and wherever her institutions flourish, she will

amass her treasures, and spread them before her votaries. Difference of

languages she easily overcomes; but the leaden reign of unlettered

Ignorance defies her scrutiny. Hence, of one period of the world's history,

she ever speaks with horror--that "long night of apostasy," during which,

like a lone Sibyl, she hid her precious relics in solitary cells, and

fleeing from degraded Christendom, sought refuge with the eastern caliphs.

"This awful decline of true religion in the world carried with it almost

every vestige of civil liberty, of classical literature, and of scientific

knowledge; and it will generally be found in experience that they must all

stand or fall together."--\_Hints on Toleration\_, p. 263. In the tenth

century, beyond which we find nothing that bears much resemblance to the

English language as now written, this mental darkness appears to have

gathered to its deepest obscuration; and, at that period, England was sunk

as low in ignorance, superstition, and depravity, as any other part of

Europe.

7. The English language gradually varies as we trace it back, and becomes

at length identified with the Anglo-Saxon; that is, with the dialect spoken

by the Saxons after their settlement in England. These Saxons were a

fierce, warlike, unlettered people from Germany; whom the ancient Britons

had invited to their assistance against the Picts and Scots. Cruel and

ignorant, like their Gothic kindred, who had but lately overrun the Roman

empire, they came, not for the good of others, but to accommodate

themselves. They accordingly seized the country; destroyed or enslaved the

ancient inhabitants; or, more probably, drove the remnant of them into the

mountains of Wales. Of Welsh or ancient British words, Charles Bucke, who

says in his grammar that he took great pains to be accurate in his scale of

derivation, enumerates but one hundred and eleven, as now found in our

language; and Dr. Johnson, who makes them but ninety-five, argues from

their paucity, or almost total absence, that the Saxons could not have

mingled at all with these people, or even have retained them in vassalage.

8. The ancient languages of France and of the British isles are said to

have proceeded from an other language yet more ancient, called the

\_Celtic\_; so that, from one common source, are supposed to have sprung the

present Welsh, the present Irish, and the present Highland Scotch.[46] The

term \_Celtic\_ Dr. Webster defines, as a noun, "The language of the Celts;"

and, as an adjective, "Pertaining to the primitive inhabitants of the south

and west of Europe, or to the early inhabitants of Italy, Gaul, Spain, and

Britain." What \_unity\_, according to this, there was, or could have been,

in the ancient Celtic tongue, does not appear from books, nor is it easy to

be conjectured.[47] Many ancient writers sustain this broad application of

the term \_Celtæ\_ or \_Celts\_; which, according to Strabo's etymology of it,

means horsemen, and seems to have been almost as general as our word

\_Indians\_. But Cæsar informs us that the name was more particularly claimed

by the people who, in his day, lived in France between the Seine and the

Garonne, and who by the Romans were called \_Galli\_, or \_Gauls\_.

9. The \_Celtic\_ tribes are said to have been the descendants of Gomer, the

son of Japhet. The English historians agree that the first inhabitants of

their island owed their origin and their language to the \_Celtæ\_, or Gauls,

who settled on the opposite shore. Julius Cæsar, who invaded Britain about

half a century before the Christian era, found the inhabitants ignorant of

letters, and destitute of any history but oral tradition. To this, however,

they paid great attention, teaching every thing in verse. Some of the

Druids, it is said in Cæsar's Commentaries, spent twenty years in learning

to repeat songs and hymns that were never committed to writing. These

ancient priests, or diviners, are represented as having great power, and as

exercising it in some respects beneficially; but their horrid rites, with

human sacrifices, provoked the Romans to destroy them. Smollett says,

"Tiberius suppressed those human sacrifices in Gaul; and Claudius destroyed

the Druids of that country; but they subsisted in Britain till the reign of

Nero, when Paulus Suetonius reduced the island of Anglesey, which was the

place of their retreat, and overwhelmed them with such unexpected and

sudden destruction, that all their knowledge and tradition, conveyed to

them in the songs of their predecessors, perished at once."--\_Smollett's

Hist. of Eng.\_, 4to, B. i, Ch. i, §7.

10. The Romans considered Britain a province of their empire, for a period

of about five hundred years; but the northern part of the island was never

entirely subdued by them, and not till Anno Domini 78, a hundred and

thirty-three years after their first invasion of the country, had they

completed their conquest of England. Letters and arts, so far at least as

these are necessary to the purposes of war or government, the victors

carried with them; and under their auspices some knowledge of Christianity

was, at a very early period, introduced into Britain. But it seems strange,

that after all that is related of their conquests, settlements, cities,

fortifications, buildings, seminaries, churches, laws, &c., they should at

last have left the Britons in so helpless, degraded, and forlorn a

condition. They \_did not sow among them the seeds\_ of any permanent

improvement.

11. The Roman government, being unable to sustain itself at home, withdrew

its forces finally from Britain in the year 446, leaving the wretched

inhabitants almost as savage as it found them, and in a situation even less

desirable. Deprived of their native resources, their ancient independence

of spirit, as well as of the laws, customs, institutions, and leaders, that

had kept them together under their old dynasties, and now deserted by their

foreign protectors, they were apparently left at the mercy of blind

fortune, the wretched vicissitudes of which there was none to foresee, none

to resist. The glory of the Romans now passed away. The mighty fabric of

their own proud empire crumbled into ruins. Civil liberty gave place to

barbarism; Christian truth, to papal superstition; and the lights of

science were put out by both. The shades of night gathered over all;

settling and condensing, "till almost every point of that wide horizon,

over which the Sun of Righteousness had diffused his cheering rays, was

enveloped in a darkness more awful and more portentous than that which of

old descended upon rebellious Pharaoh and the callous sons of Ham."--\_Hints

on Toleration\_, p. 310.

12. The Saxons entered Britain in the year 449. But what was the form of

their language at that time, cannot now be known. It was a dialect of the

\_Gothic\_ or \_Teutonic\_; which is considered the parent of all the northern

tongues of Europe, except some few of Sclavonian origin. The only remaining

monument of the Gothic language is a copy of the Gospels, translated by

Ulphilas; which is preserved at Upsal, and called, from its embellishments,

\_the Silver Book\_. This old work has been three times printed in England.

We possess not yet in America all the advantages which may be enjoyed by

literary men in the land of our ancestors; but the stores of literature,

both ancient and modern, are somewhat more familiar to us, than is there

supposed; and the art of printing is fast equalizing, to all nations that

cultivate learning, the privilege of drinking at its ancient fountains.

13. It is neither liberal nor just to argue unfavourably of the

intellectual or the moral condition of any remote age or country, merely

from our own ignorance of it. It is true, we can derive from no quarter a

favourable opinion of the state of England after the Saxon invasion, and

during the tumultuous and bloody government of the heptarchy. But I will

not darken the picture through design. If justice were done to the few

names--to Gildas the wise, the memorialist of his country's sufferings and

censor of the nation's depravity, who appears a solitary star in the night

of the sixth century--to the venerable Bede, the greatest theologian, best

scholar, and only historian of the seventh--to Alcuin, the abbot of

Canterbury, the luminary of the eighth--to Alfred the great, the glory of

the ninth, great as a prince, and greater as a scholar, seen in the evening

twilight of an age in which the clergy could not read;--if justice were

done to all such, we might find something, even in these dark and rugged

times, if not to soften the grimness of the portrait, at least to give

greater distinctness of feature.

14. In tracing the history of our language, Dr. Johnson, who does little

more than give examples, cites as his first specimen of ancient English, a

portion of king [sic--KTH] Alfred's paraphrase in imitation of Boëthius.

But this language of Alfred's is not English; but rather, as the learned

doctor himself considered it, an example of the Anglo-Saxon in its highest

state of purity. This dialect was first changed by admixture with words

derived from the Danish and the Norman; and, still being comparatively rude

and meagre, afterwards received large accessions from the Latin, the

French, the Greek, the Dutch--till, by gradual changes, which the

etymologist may exhibit, there was at length produced a language bearing a

sufficient resemblance to the present English, to deserve to be called

English at this day.

15. The formation of our language cannot with

propriety be dated earlier than the thirteenth century. It was then that a

free and voluntary amalgamation of its chief constituent materials took

place; and this was somewhat earlier than we date the revival of learning.

The English of the thirteenth century is scarcely intelligible to the

modern reader. Dr. Johnson calls it "a kind of intermediate diction,

neither Saxon nor English;" and says, that Sir John Gower, who wrote in the

latter part of the fourteenth century, was "the first of our authors who

can be properly said to have written English." Contemporary with Gower, the

father of English poetry, was the still greater poet, his disciple Chaucer;

who embraced many of the tenets of Wickliffe, and imbibed something of the

spirit of the reformation, which was now begun.

16. The literary history of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries is full

of interest; for it is delightful to trace the progress of great and

obvious improvement. The reformation of religion and the revival of

learning were nearly simultaneous. Yet individuals may have acted a

conspicuous part in the latter, who had little to do with the former; for

great learning does not necessarily imply great piety, though, as Dr.

Johnson observes, "the Christian religion always implies or produces a

certain degree of civility and learning."--\_Hist. Eng. Lang. before his 4to

Dict.\_ "The ordinary instructions of the clergy, both philosophical and

religious, gradually fell into contempt, as the Classics superseded the

one, and the Holy Scriptures expelled the other. The first of these changes

was effected by \_the early grammarians\_ of Europe; and it gave considerable

aid to the reformation, though it had no immediate connexion with that

event. The revival of the English Bible, however, completed the work: and

though its appearance was late, and its progress was retarded in every

possible manner, yet its dispersion was at length equally rapid, extensive,

and effectual."--\_Constable's Miscellany\_, Vol. xx, p. 75.

17. Peculiar honour is due to those who lead the way in whatever advances

human happiness. And, surely, our just admiration of the character of the

\_reformers\_ must be not a little enhanced, when we consider what they did

for letters as well as for the church. Learning does not consist in useless

jargon, in a multitude of mere words, or in acute speculations remote from

practice; else the seventeen folios of St. Thomas Aquinas, the angelical

doctor of the thirteenth century, and the profound disputations of his

great rival, Duns Scotus the subtle, for which they were revered in their

own age, had not gained them the contempt of all posterity. From such

learning the lucid reasoning of the reformers delivered the halls of

instruction. The school divinity of the middle ages passed away before the

presence of that which these men learned from the Bible, as did in a later

age the Aristotelian philosophy before that which Bacon drew from nature.

18. Towards the latter part of the fourteenth century, Wickliffe furnished

the first entire translation of the Bible into English. In like manner did

the Germans, a hundred and fifty years after, receive it in their tongue

from the hands of Luther; who says, that at twenty years of age, he himself

had not seen it in any language. Wickliffe's English style is elegant for

the age in which he lived, yet very different from what is elegant now.

This first English translation of the Bible, being made about a hundred

years before the introduction of printing into England, could not have been

very extensively circulated. A large specimen of it may be seen in Dr.

Johnson's History of the English Language. Wickliffe died in 1384. The art

of printing was invented about 1440, and first introduced into England, in

1468; but the first printed edition of the Bible in English, was executed

in Germany. It was completed, October 5th, 1535.

19. "Martin Luther, about the year 1517, first introduced metrical psalmody

into the service of the church, which not only kept alive the enthusiasm of

the reformers, but formed a rallying point for his followers. This practice

spread in all directions; and it was not long ere six thousand persons were

heard singing together at St. Paul's Cross in London. Luther was a poet and

musician; but the same talent existed not in his followers. Thirty years

afterwards, Sternhold versified fifty-one of the Psalms; and in 1562, with

the help of Hopkins, he completed the Psalter. These poetical effusions

were chiefly sung to German melodies, which the good taste of Luther

supplied: but the Puritans, in a subsequent age, nearly destroyed these

germs of melody, assigning as a reason, that music should be so simplified

as to suit all persons, and that all may join."--\_Dr. Gardiner's Music of

Nature\_, p. 283.

20. "The schools and colleges of England in the fifteenth and sixteenth

centuries were not governed by a system of education which would render

their students very eminent either as scholars or as gentlemen: and the

monasteries, which were used as seminaries, even until the reformation,

taught only the corrupt Latin used by the ecclesiastics. The time however

was approaching, when the united efforts of Stanbridge, Linacre, Sir John

Cheke, Dean Colet, Erasmus, William Lily, Roger Ascham, &c., were

successful in reviving the Latin tongue in all its purity; and even in

exciting a taste for Greek in a nation the clergy of which opposed its

introduction with the same vehemence which characterized their enmity to a

reformation in religion. The very learned Erasmus, the first who undertook

the teaching of the Greek language at Oxford, met with few friends to

support him; notwithstanding Oxford was the seat of nearly all the learning

in England."--\_Constable's Miscellany\_, Vol. xx, p. 146.

21. "The priests preached against it, as a very recent invention of the

arch-enemy; and confounding in their misguided zeal, the very foundation of

their faith, with the object of their resentment, they represented the New

Testament itself as 'an impious and dangerous book,' because it was written

in that heretical language. Even after the accession of Henry VIII, when

Erasmus, who had quitted Oxford in disgust, returned under his especial

patronage, with the support of several eminent scholars and powerful

persons, his progress was still impeded, and the language opposed. The

University was divided into parties, called Greeks and Trojans, the latter

being the strongest, from being favoured by the monks; and the Greeks were

driven from the streets, with hisses and other expressions of contempt. It

was not therefore until Henry VIII and Cardinal Wolsey gave it their

positive and powerful protection, that this persecuted language was allowed

to be quietly studied, even in the institutions dedicated to

learning."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147.

22. These curious extracts are adduced to show the \_spirit of the times\_,

and the obstacles then to be surmounted in the cause of learning. This

popular opposition to Greek, did not spring from a patriotic design to

prefer and encourage English literature; for the improvement of this was

still later, and the great promoters of it were all of them classical

scholars. They wrote in English, not because they preferred it, but because

none but those who were bred in colleges, could read any thing else; and,

even to this very day, the grammatical study of the English language is

shamefully neglected in what are called the higher institutions of

learning. In alleging this neglect, I speak comparatively. Every student,

on entering upon the practical business of life, will find it of far more

importance to him, to be skillful in the language of his own country than

to be distinguished for any knowledge which the learned only can

appreciate. "Will the greatest Mastership in Greek and Latin, or [the]

translating [of] these Languages into English, avail for the Purpose of

acquiring an elegant English Style? No--we know just the Reverse from

woeful Experience! And, as Mr. Locke and the Spectator observe, Men who

have threshed hard at Greek and Latin for ten or eleven years together, are

very often deficient in their own Language."--\_Preface to the British

Gram.\_, 8vo, 1784, p. xxi.

23. That the progress of English literature in early times was slow, will

not seem wonderful to those who consider what is affirmed of the progress

of other arts, more immediately connected with the comforts of life. "Down

to the reign of Elizabeth, the greater part of the houses in considerable

towns, had no chimneys: the fire was kindled against the wall, and the

smoke found its way out as well as it could, by the roof, the door, or the

windows. The houses were mostly built of wattling, plastered over with

clay; and the beds were only straw pallets, with a log of wood for a

pillow. In this respect, even the king fared no better than his subjects;

for, in Henry the Eighth's time, we find directions, 'to examine every

night the straw of the king's bed, that no daggers might be concealed

therein.' A writer in 1577, speaking of the progress of luxury, mentions

three things especially, that were 'marvellously altered for the worse in

England;' the multitude of chimneys lately erected, the increase of

lodgings, and the exchange of treen platters into pewter, and wooden spoons

into silver and tin; and he complains bitterly that oak instead of willow

was employed in the building of houses."--REV. ROYAL ROBBINS: \_Outlines of

History\_, p. 377.

24. Shakspeare appeared in the reign of Elizabeth; outlived her thirteen

years; and died in 1616 aged 52. The English language in his hands did not

lack power or compass of expression. His writings are now more extensively

read, than any others of that age; nor has any very considerable part of

his phraseology yet become obsolete. But it ought to be known, that the

printers or editors of the editions which are now read, have taken

extensive liberty in modernizing his orthography, as well as that of other

old authors still popular. How far such liberty is justifiable, it is

difficult to say. Modern readers doubtless find a convenience in it. It is

very desirable that the orthography of our language should be made uniform,

and remain permanent. Great alterations cannot be suddenly introduced; and

there is, in stability, an advantage which will counterbalance that of a

slow approximation to regularity. Analogy may sometimes decide the form of

variable words, but the concurrent usage of the learned must ever be

respected, in this, as in every other part of grammar.

25. Among the earliest of the English grammarians, was Ben Jonson, the

poet; who died in the year 1637, at the age of sixty-three. His grammar,

(which Horne Tooke mistakingly calls "the \_first\_ as well as the \_best\_

English grammar,") is still extant, being published in the several editions

of his works. It is a small treatise, and worthy of attention only as a

matter of curiosity. It is written in prose, and designed chiefly for the

aid of foreigners. Grammar is an unpoetical subject, and therefore not

wisely treated, as it once very generally was, in verse. But every poet

should be familiar with the art, because the formal principles of his own

have always been considered as embraced in it. To its poets, too, every

language must needs be particularly indebted; because their compositions,

being in general more highly finished than works in prose, are supposed to

present the language in its most agreeable form. In the preface to the

Poems of Edmund Waller, published in 1690, the editor ventures to say, "He

was, indeed, the Parent of English Verse, and the first that shewed us our

Tongue had Beauty and Numbers in it. Our Language owes more to Him, than

the French does to Cardinal Richelieu and the whole Academy. \* \* \* \* The

Tongue came into His hands a rough diamond: he polished it first; and to

\_that\_ degree, that all artists since him have admired the workmanship,

without pretending to mend it."--\_British Poets\_, Vol. ii, Lond., 1800:

\_Waller's Poems\_, p. 4.

26. Dr. Johnson, however, in his Lives of the Poets, abates this praise,

that he may transfer the greater part of it to Dryden and Pope. He admits

that, "After about half a century of forced thoughts and rugged metre, some

advances towards nature and harmony had been already made by Waller and

Denham;" but, in distributing the praise of this improvement, he adds, "It

may be doubted whether Waller and Denham could have over-born [\_overborne\_]

the prejudices which had long prevailed, and which even then were sheltered

by the protection of Cowley. The new versification, as it was called, may

be considered as owing its establishment to Dryden; from whose time it is

apparent that English poetry has had no tendency to relapse to its former

savageness."--\_Johnson's Life of Dryden: Lives\_, p. 206. To Pope, as the

translator of Homer, he gives this praise: "His version may be said to have

tuned the English tongue; for since its appearance no writer, however

deficient in other powers, has wanted melody."--\_Life of Pope: Lives\_, p.

567. Such was the opinion of Johnson; but there are other critics who

object to the versification of Pope, that it is "monotonous and cloying."

See, in Leigh Hunt's Feast of the Poets, the following couplet, and a note

upon it:

"But ever since Pope spoil'd the ears of the town

With his cuckoo-song verses half up and half down."

27. The unfortunate Charles I, as well as his father James I, was a lover

and promoter of letters. He was himself a good scholar, and wrote well in

English, for his time: he ascended the throne in 1625, and was beheaded in

1648. Nor was Cromwell himself, with all his religious and military

enthusiasm, wholly insensible to \_literary\_ merit. This century was

distinguished by the writings of Milton, Dryden, Waller, Cowley, Denham,

Locke, and others; and the reign of Charles II, which is embraced in it,

has been considered by some "the Augustan age of English literature." But

that honour, if it may well be bestowed on any, belongs rather to a later

period. The best works produced in the eighteenth century, are so generally

known and so highly esteemed, that it would be lavish of the narrow space

allowed to this introduction, to speak particularly of their merits. Some

grammatical errors may be found in almost all books; but our language was,

in general, written with great purity and propriety by Addison, Swift,

Pope, Johnson, Lowth, Hume, Horne, and many other celebrated authors who

flourished in the last century. Nor was it much before this period, that

the British writers took any great pains to be accurate in the use of their

own language;

"Late, very late, correctness grew our care,

When the tir'd nation breath'd from civil war."--\_Pope\_.

28. English books began to be printed in the early part of the sixteenth

century; and, as soon as a taste for reading was formed, the press threw

open the flood-gates of general knowledge, the streams of which are now

pouring forth, in a copious, increasing, but too often turbid tide, upon

all the civilized nations of the earth. This mighty engine afforded a means

by which superior minds could act more efficiently and more extensively

upon society in general. And thus, by the exertions of genius adorned with

learning, our native tongue has been made the polished vehicle of the most

interesting truths, and of the most important discoveries; and has become a

language copious, strong, refined, and capable of no inconsiderable degree

of harmony. Nay, it is esteemed by some who claim to be competent judges,

to be the strongest, the richest, the most elegant, and the most

susceptible of sublime imagery, of all the languages in the world.

CHAPTER VII.

CHANGES AND SPECIMENS OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

"Quot enim verba, et nonnunquam in deterius, hoc, quo vivimus, sæculo,

partim aliqâ, partim nullâ necessitate cogente, mutata sunt?"--ROB.

AINSWORTH: \_Lat. Dict., 4to\_; Præf., p. xi.

1. In the use of language, every one chooses his words from that common

stock which he has learned, and applies them in practice according to his

own habits and notions. If the style of different writers of the same age

is various, much greater is the variety which appears in the productions of

different ages. Hence the date of a book may often be very plausibly

conjectured from the peculiarities of its style. As to what is best in

itself, or best adapted to the subject in hand, every writer must endeavour

to become his own judge. He who, in any sort of composition, would write

with a master's hand, must first apply himself to books with a scholar's

diligence. He must think it worth his while to inform himself, that he may

be critical. Desiring to give the student all the advantage, entertainment,

and satisfaction, that can be expected from a work of this kind, I shall

subjoin a few brief specimens in illustration of what has been said in the

foregoing chapter. The order of time will be followed \_inversely\_; and, as

Saxon characters are not very easily obtained, or very apt to be read, the

Roman letters will be employed for the few examples to which the others

would be more appropriate. But there are some peculiarities of ancient

usage in English, which, for the information of the young reader, it is

proper in the first place to explain.

2. With respect to the letters, there are \_several changes\_ to be

mentioned. (1.) The pages of old books are often crowded with capitals: it

was at one time the custom to distinguish all nouns, and frequently verbs,

or any other important words, by heading them with a great letter. (2.) The

letter Ess, of the lower case, had till lately two forms, the long and the

short, as [tall-s] and s; the former very nearly resembling the small f,

and the latter, its own capital. The short \_s\_ was used \_at the end of

words\_, and the long \_[tall-s]\_, in other places; but the latter is now

laid aside, in favour of the more distinctive form. (3.) The letters \_I\_

and \_J\_ were formerly considered as one and the same. Hence we find

\_hallelujah\_ for \_halleluiah, Iohn\_ for \_John, iudgement\_ for \_judgement\_,

&c. And in many dictionaries, the words beginning with \_J\_ are still mixed

with those which begin with \_I\_. (4.) The letters \_U\_ and \_V\_ were mixed in

like manner, and for the same reason; the latter being a consonant power

given to the former, and at length distinguished from it by a different

form. Or rather, the figure of the capital seems to have been at last

appropriated to the one, and that of the small letter to the other. But in

old books the forms of these two letters are continually confounded or

transposed. Hence it is, that our \_Double-u\_ is composed of two \_Vees\_;

which, as we see in old books, were sometimes printed separately: as, VV,

for W; or vv, for w.

3. The \_orthography\_ of our language, rude and unsettled as it still is in

many respects, was formerly much more variable and diverse. In books a

hundred years old or more, we often find the most common words spelled

variously by the same writer, and even upon the very same page. With

respect to the forms of words, a few particulars may here be noticed: (1.)

The article \_an\_, from which the \_n\_ was dropped before words beginning

with a consonant sound, is often found in old books where \_a\_ would be more

proper; as, \_an heart, an help, an hill, an one, an use\_. (2.) Till the

seventeenth century, the possessive case was written without the

apostrophe; being formed at different times, in \_es, is, ys, or s\_, like

the plural; and apparently without rule or uniformity in respect to the

doubling of the final consonant: as \_Goddes, Godes, Godis, Godys\_, or

\_Gods\_, for \_God's\_; so \_mannes, mannis, mannys\_ or \_mans\_, for \_man's\_.

Dr. Ash, whose English Grammar was in some repute in the latter part of the

eighteenth century, argued against the use of the apostrophe, alleging that

it was seldom used to distinguish the possessive case till about the

beginning of that century; and he then prophesied that the time would come,

when \_correct writers would lay it aside again\_, as a strange corruption,

an improper "departure from the original formation" of that case of English

nouns. And, among the speculations of these latter days, I have somewhere

seen an attempt to disparage this useful sign, and explode it, as an

unsightly thing \_never well established\_. It does not indeed, like a

syllabic sign, inform the ear or affect the sound; but still it is useful,

because it distinguishes to the eye, not only the \_case\_, but the \_number\_,

of the nouns thus marked. Pronouns, being different in their declension, do

not need it, and should therefore always be written without it.

4. The common usage of those who have spoken English, has always inclined

rather to brevity than to melody; contraction and elision of the ancient

terminations of words, constitute no small part of the change which has

taken place, or of the difference which perhaps always existed between the

solemn and the familiar style. In respect to euphony, however, these

terminations have certainly nothing to boast; nor does the earliest period

of the language appear to be that in which they were the most generally

used without contraction. That degree of smoothness of which the tongue was

anciently susceptible, had certainly no alliance with these additional

syllables. The long sonorous endings which constitute the declensions and

conjugations of the most admired languages, and which seem to chime so well

with the sublimity of the Greek, the majesty of the Latin, the sweetness of

the Italian, the dignity of the Spanish, or the polish of the French,

\_never had\_ any place in English. The inflections given to our words never

embraced any other vowel power than that of the short \_e\_ or \_i\_; and even,

this we are inclined to dispense with, whenever we can; so that most of our

grammatical inflections are, to the ear, nothing but consonants blended

with the final syllables of the words to which they are added. \_Ing\_ for

the first participle, \_er\_ for the comparative degree, and \_est\_ for the

superlative, are indeed added as whole syllables; but the rest, as \_d\_ or

\_ed\_ for preterits and perfect participles, \_s\_ or \_es\_ for the plural

number of nouns, or for the third person singular of verbs, and \_st\_ or

\_est\_ for the second person singular of verbs, nine times in ten, fall into

the sound or syllable with which the primitive word terminates. English

verbs, as they are now commonly used, run through their entire conjugation

without acquiring a single syllable from inflection, except sometimes when

the sound of \_d, s\_, or \_st\_ cannot be added to them.

5. This simplicity, so characteristic of our modern English, as well as of

the Saxon tongue, its proper parent, is attended with advantages that go

far to compensate for all that is consequently lost in euphony, or in the

liberty of transposition. Our formation of the moods and tenses, by means

of a few separate auxiliaries, all monosyllabic, and mostly without

inflection, is not only simple and easy, but beautiful, chaste, and strong.

In my opinion, our grammarians have shown far more affection for the

obsolete or obsolescent terminations \_en, eth, est\_, and \_edst\_, than they

really deserve. Till the beginning of the sixteenth century, \_en\_ was used

to mark the plural number of verbs, as, \_they sayen\_ for \_they say\_; after

which, it appears to have been dropped. Before the beginning of the

seventeenth century, \_s\_ or \_es\_ began to dispute with \_th\_ or \_eth\_ the

right of forming the third person singular of verbs; and, as the Bible and

other grave books used only the latter, a clear distinction obtained,

between the solemn and the familiar style, which distinction is well known

at this day. Thus we have, \_He runs, walks, rides, reaches\_, &c., for the

one; and, \_He runneth, walketh, rideth, reacheth\_, &c., for the other.

About the same time, or perhaps earlier, the use of the second person

singular began to be avoided in polite conversation, by the substitution of

the plural verb and pronoun; and, when used in poetry, it was often

contracted, so as to prevent any syllabic increase. In old books, all verbs

and participles that were intended to be contracted in pronunciation, were

contracted also, in some way, by the writer: as, "\_call'd, carry'd,

sacrific'd;" "fly'st, ascrib'st, cryd'st;" "tost, curst, blest, finisht\_;"

and others innumerable. All these, and such as are like them, we now

pronounce in the same way, but usually write differently; as, \_called,

carried, sacrificed; fliest, ascribest, criettst; tossed, cursed, blessed,

finished\_. Most of these topics will be further noticed in the Grammar.

I. ENGLISH OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.

6. \_Queen Victoria's Answer to an Address.--Example written in 1837\_.

"I thank you for your condolence upon the death of his late Majesty, for

the justice which you render to his character, and to the measures of his

reign, and for your warm congratulations upon my accession to the throne. I

join in your prayers for the prosperity of my reign, the best security for

which is to be found in reverence for our holy religion, and in the

observance of its duties."--VICTORIA, \_to the Friends' Society\_.

7. \_From President Adams's Eulogy on Lafayette.--Written in 1834\_.

"Pronounce him one of the first men of his age, and you have yet not done

him justice. Try him by that test to which he sought in vain to stimulate

the vulgar and selfish spirit of Napoleon; class him among the men who, to

compare and seat themselves, must take in the compass of all ages; turn

back your eyes upon the records of time; summon from the creation of the

world to this day the mighty dead of every age and every clime; and where,

among the race of merely mortal men, shall one be found, who, as the

benefactor of his kind, shall claim to take precedence of Lafayette?"--JOHN

QUINCY ADAMS.

8. \_From President Jackson's Proclamation against Nullification.--1832\_.

"No, we have not erred! The Constitution is still the object of our

reverence, the bond of our Union, our defence in danger, the source of our

prosperity in peace. It shall descend, as we have received it, uncorrupted

by sophistical construction, to our posterity: and the sacrifices of local

interest, of State prejudices, of personal animosities, that were made to

bring it into existence, will again be patriotically offered for its

support."--ANDREW JACKSON.

9. \_From a Note on one of Robert Hall's Sermons.--Written about 1831\_.

"After he had written down the striking apostrophe which occurs at about

page 76 of most of the editions--'Eternal God! on what are thine enemies

intent! what are those enterprises of guilt and horror, that, for the

safety of their performers, require to be enveloped in a darkness which the

eye of Heaven must not \_penetrate\_!'--he asked, 'Did I say \_penetrate\_,

sir, when I preached, it?' 'Yes.' 'Do you think, sir, I may venture to

alter it? for no man who considered the force of the English language,

would use a word of three syllables there, but from absolute necessity.'

'You are doubtless at liberty to alter it, if you think well.' 'Then be so

good, sir, as to take your pencil, and for \_penetrate\_ put \_pierce\_;

\_pierce\_ is the word, sir, and the only word to be used there.'"--OLINTHUS

GREGORY.

10. \_King William's Answer to an Address.--Example written in 1830\_.

"I thank you sincerely for your condolence with me, on account of the loss

which I have sustained, in common with my people, by the death of my

lamented brother, his late Majesty. The assurances which you have conveyed

to me, of loyalty and affectionate attachment to my person, are very

gratifying to my feelings. You may rely upon my favour and protection, and

upon my anxious endeavours to promote morality and true piety among all

classes of my subjects."--WILLIAM IV, \_to the Friends\_.

11. \_Reign of George IV, 1830 back to 1820.--Example written in 1827\_.

"That morning, thou, that slumbered[48] not before,

Nor slept, great Ocean I laid thy waves to rest,

And hushed thy mighty minstrelsy. No breath

Thy deep composure stirred, no fin, no oar;

Like beauty newly dead, so calm, so still,

So lovely, thou, beneath the light that fell

From angel-chariots sentinelled on high,

Reposed, and listened, and saw thy living change,

Thy dead arise. Charybdis listened, and Scylla;

And savage Euxine on the Thracian beach

Lay motionless: and every battle ship

Stood still; and every ship of merchandise,

And all that sailed, of every name, stood still."

ROBERT POLLOK: \_Course of Time\_, Book VII, line 634-647.

II. ENGLISH OF THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

12. \_Reign of George III, 1820 back to 1760.--Example written in 1800\_.

"There is, it will be confessed, a delicate sensibility to character, a

sober desire of reputation, a wish to possess the esteem of the wise and

good, felt by the purest minds, which is at the farthest remove from

arrogance or vanity. The humility of a noble mind scarcely dares approve of

itself, until it has secured the approbation of others. Very different is

that restless desire of distinction, that passion for theatrical display,

which inflames the heart and occupies the whole attention of vain men. \* \*

\* The truly good man is jealous over himself, lest the notoriety of his

best actions, by blending itself with their motive, should diminish their

value; the vain man performs the same actions for the sake of that

notoriety. The good man quietly discharges his duty, and shuns ostentation;

the vain man considers every good deed lost that is not publickly

displayed. The one is intent upon realities, the other upon semblances: the

one aims to \_be\_ virtuous, the other to \_appear\_ so."--ROBERT HALL: \_Sermon

on Modern Infidelity\_.

13. \_From Washington's Farewell Address.--Example written in 1796\_.

"Of all the dispositions and habits which lead to political prosperity,

Religion and Morality are indispensable supports. In vain would that man

claim the tribute of patriotism, who should labour to subvert these great

pillars of human happiness, these firmest props of the duties of men and

citizens. The mere politician, equally with the pious man, ought to respect

and cherish them. A volume could not trace all their connexions with

private and publick felicity. Let it simply be asked, where is the security

for property, for reputation, for life, if the sense of religious

obligation desert the oaths which are the instruments of investigation in

courts of justice? And let us with caution indulge the supposition, that

morality can be maintained without religion. Whatever may be conceded to

the influence of refined education on minds of a peculiar structure; reason

and experience both forbid us to expect that national morality can prevail

in exclusion of religious principle."--GEORGE WASHINGTON.

14. \_From Dr. Johnson's Life of Addison.--Example written about 1780\_.

"That he always wrote as he would think it necessary to write now, cannot

be affirmed; his instructions were such as the character of his readers

made proper. That general knowledge which now circulates in common talk,

was in his time rarely to be found. Men not professing learning, were not

ashamed of ignorance; and in the female world, any acquaintance with books

was distinguished only to be censured. His purpose was to infuse literary

curiosity, by gentle and unsuspected conveyance, into the gay, the idle,

and the wealthy; he therefore presented knowledge in the most alluring

form, not lofty and austere, but accessible and familiar. When he shewed

them their defects, he shewed them likewise that they might easily be

supplied. His attempt succeeded; inquiry was awakened, and comprehension

expanded. An emulation of intellectual elegance was excited, and from this

time to our own, life has been gradually exalted, and conversation purified

and enlarged."--SAMUEL JOHNSON: \_Lives\_, p. 321.

15. \_Reign of George II, 1760 back to 1727.--Example written in 1751\_.

"We Britons in our time have been remarkable borrowers, as our \_multiform\_

Language may sufficiently shew. Our Terms in \_polite Literature\_ prove,

that this came from \_Greece\_; our terms in \_Music\_ and \_Painting\_, that

these came from Italy; our Phrases in \_Cookery\_ and \_War\_, that we learnt

these from the French; and our phrases in \_Navigation\_, that we were taught

by the \_Flemings\_ and \_Low Dutch\_. These many and very different Sources of

our Language may be the cause, why it is so deficient in \_Regularity\_ and

\_Analogy\_. Yet we have this advantage to compensate the defect, that what

we want in \_Elegance\_, we gain in \_Copiousness\_, in which last respect few

Languages will be found superior to our own."--JAMES HARRIS: \_Hermes\_, Book

iii, Ch. v, p. 408.

16. \_Reign of George I, 1727 back to 1714.--Example written about 1718\_.

"There is a certain coldness and indifference in the phrases of our

European languages, when they are compared with the Oriental forms of

speech: and it happens very luckily, that the Hebrew idioms ran into the

English tongue, with a particular grace and beauty. Our language has

received innumerable elegancies and improvements from that infusion of

Hebraisms, which are derived to it out of the poetical passages in holy

writ. They give a force and energy to our expressions, warm and animate our

language, and convey our thoughts in more ardent and intense phrases, than

any that are to be met with in our tongue."--JOSEPH ADDISON: \_Evidences\_,

p. 192.

17. \_Reign of Queen Anne, 1714 to 1702.--Example written in 1708\_.

"Some by old words to Fame have made pretence,

Ancients in phrase, mere moderns in their sense;

Such labour'd nothings, in so strange a style,

Amaze th' unlearn'd, and make the learned smile."

"In words, as fashions, the same rule will hold;

Alike fantastick, if too new or old:

Be not the first by whom the new are try'd,

Nor yet the last to lay the old aside."

ALEXANDER POPE: \_Essay on Criticism\_, l. 324-336.

III. ENGLISH OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

18. \_Reign of William III, 1702 to 1689.--Example published in 1700\_.

"And when we see a Man of \_Milton's\_ Wit \_Chime\_ in with such a \_Herd\_, and

Help on the \_Cry\_ against \_Hirelings\_! We find How Easie it is for \_Folly\_

and \_Knavery\_ to Meet, and that they are Near of Kin, tho they bear

Different Aspects. Therefor since \_Milton\_ has put himself upon a \_Level\_

with the \_Quakers\_ in this, I will let them go together. And take as little

Notice of his \_Buffoonry\_, as of their \_Dulness\_ against \_Tythes\_. Ther is

nothing worth \_Quoting\_ in his \_Lampoon\_ against the \_Hirelings\_. But what

ther is of \_Argument\_ in it, is fully Consider'd in what follows."--CHARLES

LESLIE: \_Divine Right of Tithes, Pref.\_, p. xi.

19. \_Reign of James II, 1689 back to 1685.--Example written in 1685.\_

"His conversation, wit, and parts,

His knowledge in the noblest useful arts,

Were such, dead authors could not give;

But habitudes of those who live;

Who, lighting him, did greater lights receive:

He drain'd from all, and all they knew;

His apprehension quick, his judgment true:

That the most learn'd with shame confess

His knowledge more, his reading only less."

JOHN DRYDEN: \_Ode to the Memory of Charles II; Poems\_, p. 84.

20. \_Reign of Charles II, 1685 to 1660.--Example from a Letter to the Earl

of Sunderland, dated, "Philadelphia, 28th 5th mo. July, 1683."\_

"And I will venture to say, that by the help of God, and such noble

Friends, I will show a Province in seven years, equal to her neighbours of

forty years planting. I have lay'd out the Province into Countys. Six are

begun to be seated; they lye on the great river, and are planted about six

miles back. The town platt is a mile long, and two deep,--has a navigable

river on each side, the least as broad as the Thames at Woolwych, from

three to eight fathom water. There is built about eighty houses, and I have

settled at least three hundred farmes contiguous to it."--WILLIAM PENN.

\_The Friend\_, Vol. vii, p. 179.

21. \_From an Address or Dedication to Charles II.--Written in 1675\_.

"There is no [other] king in the world, who can so experimentally testify

of God's providence and goodness; neither is there any [other], who rules

so many free people, so many true Christians: which thing renders thy

government more honourable, thyself more considerable, than the accession

of many nations filled with slavish and superstitious souls."--ROBERT

BARCLAY: \_Apology\_, p. viii.

22. The following example, from the commencement of \_Paradise Lost\_, first

published in 1667, has been cited by several authors, to show how large a

proportion of our language is of Saxon origin. The thirteen words in

Italics are the only ones in this passage, which seem to have been derived

from any other source.

"Of man's first \_disobedience\_, and the \_fruit\_

Of that forbidden tree, whose \_mortal\_ taste

Brought death into the world, and all our woe,

With loss of \_Eden\_; till one greater Man

\_Restore\_ us, and \_regain\_ the blissful \_seat\_,

Sing, heav'nly \_Muse\_, that on the \_secret\_ top

Of \_Oreb\_, or of \_Sinai\_, didst \_inspire\_

That shepherd, who first taught the chosen seed,

In the beginning, how the Heav'ns and Earth

Rose out of \_Chaos\_."--MILTON: \_Paradise Lost\_, Book I.

23. \_Examples written during Cromwell's Protectorate, 1660 to 1650\_.

"The Queene was pleased to shew me the letter, the seale beinge a Roman

eagle, havinge characters about it almost like the Greeke. This day, in the

afternoone, the vice-chauncellor came to me and stayed about four hours

with me; in which tyme we conversed upon the longe debates."--WHITELOCKE.

\_Bucke's Class. Gram.\_, p. 149.

"I am yet heere, and have the States of Holland ingaged in a more than

ordnary maner, to procure me audience of the States Generall. Whatever

happen, the effects must needes be good."--STRICKLAND: \_Bucke's Classical

Gram.\_, p. 149.

24. \_Reign of Charles I, 1648 to 1625.--Example from Ben Jonson's Grammar,

written about 1634; but the orthography is more modern\_.

"The second and third person singular of the present are made of the first,

by adding \_est\_ and \_eth\_; which last is sometimes shortened into \_s\_. It

seemeth to have been poetical licence which first introduced this

abbreviation of the third person into use; but our best grammarians have

condemned it upon some occasions, though perhaps not to be absolutely

banished the common and familiar style."

"The persons plural keep the termination of the first person singular. In

former times, till about the reign of Henry the eighth, they were wont to

be formed by adding \_en\_; thus, \_loven, sayen, complainen\_. But now

(whatever is the cause) it hath quite grown out of use, and that other so

generally prevailed, that I dare not presume to set this afoot again:

albeit (to tell you my opinion) I am persuaded that the lack hereof well

considered, will be found a great blemish to our tongue. For seeing \_time\_

and \_person\_ be, as it were, the right and left hand of a verb, what can

the maiming bring else, but a lameness to the whole body?"--Book i, Chap.

xvi.

25. \_Reign of James I, 1625 to 1603.--From an Advertisement, dated 1608\_.

"I svppose it altogether needlesse (Christian Reader) by commending M.

\_VVilliam Perkins\_, the Author of this booke, to wooe your holy affection,

which either himselfe in his life time by his Christian conversation hath

woon in you, or sithence his death, the neuer-dying memorie of his

excellent knowledge, his great humilitie, his sound religion, his feruent

zeale, his painefull labours, in the Church of God, doe most iustly

challenge at your hands: onely in one word, I dare be bold to say of him as

in times past \_Nazianzen\_ spake of \_Athanasius\_. His life was a good

definition of a true minister and preacher of the Gospell."--\_The Printer

to the Reader\_.

26. \_Examples written about the end of Elizabeth's reign--1603\_.

"Some say, That euer 'gainst that season comes

Wherein our Saviour's Birth is celebrated,

The Bird of Dawning singeth all night long;

And then, say they, no Spirit dares walk abroad:

The nights are wholsom, then no Planets strike,

No Fairy takes, nor Witch hath pow'r to charm;

So hallow'd and so gracious is the time."

SHAKSPEARE: \_Hamlet\_.

"The sea, with such a storme as his bare head

In hell-blacke night indur'd, would haue buoy'd up

And quench'd the stelled fires.

Yet, poore old heart, he holpe the heuens to raine.

If wolues had at thy gate howl'd that sterne time,

Thou shouldst haue said, Good porter, turne the key."

SHAKSPEARE: \_Lear\_.

IV. ENGLISH OF THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

27. \_Reign of Elizabeth, 1603 back to 1558.--Example written in 1592\_.

"As for the soule, it is no accidentarie qualitie, but a spirituall and

inuisible essence or nature, subsisting by it selfe. Which plainely

appeares in that the soules of men haue beeing and continuance as well

forth of the bodies of men as in the same; and are as wel subiect to

torments as the bodie is. And whereas we can and doe put in practise

sundrie actions of life, sense, motion, vnderstanding, we doe it onely by

the power and vertue of the soule. Hence ariseth the difference betweene

the soules of men, and beasts. The soules of men are substances: but the

soules of other creatures seeme not to be substances; because they haue no

beeing out of the bodies in which they are."--WILLIAM PERKINS: \_Theol.

Works, folio\_, p. 155.

28. \_Examples written about the beginning of Elizabeth's reign.--1558\_.

"Who can perswade, when treason is aboue reason; and mighte ruleth righte;

and it is had for lawfull, whatsoever is lustfull; and commotioners are

better than commissioners; and common woe is named common weale?"--SIR JOHN

CHEKE. "If a yong jentleman will venture him selfe into the companie of

ruffians, it is over great a jeopardie, lest their facions, maners,

thoughts, taulke, and dedes, will verie sone be over like."--ROGER ASCHAM.

29. \_Reign of Mary the Bigot, 1558 to 1553.--Example written about 1555\_.

"And after that Philosophy had spoken these wordes the said companye of the

musys poeticall beynge rebukyd and sad, caste downe their countenaunce to

the grounde, and by blussyng confessed their shamefastnes, and went out of

the dores. But I (that had my syght dull and blynd wyth wepyng, so that I

knew not what woman this was hauyng soo great aucthoritie) was amasyd or

astonyed, and lokyng downeward, towarde the ground, I began pryvyle to look

what thyng she would save ferther."--COLVILLE: \_Version from Boëthius:

Johnson's Hist. of E. L.\_, p. 29.

30. \_Example referred by Dr. Johnson to the year 1553\_.

"Pronunciation is an apte orderinge bothe of the voyce, countenaunce, and

all the whole bodye, accordynge to the worthinea of such woordes and mater

as by speache are declared. The vse hereof is suche for anye one that

liketh to haue prayse for tellynge his tale in open assemblie, that hauing

a good tongue, and a comelye countenaunce, he shal be thought to passe all

other that haue not the like vtteraunce: thoughe they have muche better

learning."--DR. WILSON: \_Johnson's Hist. E. L.\_, p. 45.

31. \_Reign of Edward VI, 1553 to 1547.--Example written about 1550.\_

"Who that will followe the graces manyfolde

Which are in vertue, shall finde auauncement:

Wherefore ye fooles that in your sinne are bolde,

Ensue ye wisdome, and leaue your lewde intent,

Wisdome is the way of men most excellent:

Therefore haue done, and shortly spede your pace,

To quaynt your self and company with grace."

ALEXANDER BARCLAY: \_Johnson's Hist. E. L.\_, p. 44.

32. \_Reign of Henry VIII, 1547 to 1509.--Example dated 1541\_.

"Let hym that is angry euen at the fyrste consyder one of these thinges,

that like as he is a man, so is also the other, with whom he is angry, and

therefore it is as lefull for the other to be angry, as unto hym: and if he

so be, than shall that anger be to hym displeasant, and stere hym more to

be angrye."--SIR THOMAS ELLIOTT: \_Castel of Helthe\_.

33. \_Example of the earliest English Blank Verse; written about 1540\_.

The supposed author died in 1541, aged 38. The piece from which these lines

are taken describes the death of \_Zoroas\_, an Egyptian astronomer, slain in

Alexander's first battle with the Persians.

"The Persians waild such sapience to foregoe;

And very sone the Macedonians wisht

He would have lived; king Alexander selfe

Demde him a man unmete to dye at all;

Who wonne like praise for conquest of his yre,

As for stoute men in field that day subdued,

Who princes taught how to discerne a man,

That in his head so rare a jewel beares;

But over all those same Camenes,[49] those same

Divine Camenes, whose honour he procurde,

As tender parent doth his daughters weale,

Lamented, and for thankes, all that they can,

Do cherish hym deceast, and sett hym free,

From dark oblivion of devouring death."

\_Probably written by SIR THOMAS WYAT.\_

34. \_A Letter written from prison, with a coal.\_ The writer, \_Sir Thomas

More\_, whose works, both in prose and verse, were considered models of pure

and elegant style, had been Chancellor of England, and the familiar

confidant of Henry VIII, by whose order he was beheaded in 1535.

"Myne own good doughter, our Lorde be thanked I am in good helthe of bodye,

and in good quiet of minde: and of worldly thynges I no more desyer then I

haue. I beseche hym make you all mery in the hope of heauen. And such

thynges as I somewhat longed to talke with you all, concerning the worlde

to come, our Lorde put theim into your myndes, as I truste he doth and

better to by hys holy spirite: who blesse you and preserue you all. Written

wyth a cole by your tender louing father, who in hys pore prayers

forgetteth none of you all, nor your babes, nor your nources, nor your good

husbandes, nor your good husbandes shrewde wyues, nor your fathers shrewde

wyfe neither, nor our other frendes. And thus fare ye hartely well for

lacke of paper. THOMAS MORE, knight."--\_Johnson's Hist. E. Lang.\_, p. 42.

35. \_From More's Description of Richard III.--Probably written about 1520.\_

"Richarde the third sonne, of whom we nowe entreate, was in witte and

courage egall with either of them, in bodye and prowesse farre vnder them

bothe, little of stature, ill fetured of limmes, croke backed, his left

shoulder much higher than his right, hard fauoured of visage, and such as

is in states called warlye, in other menne otherwise, he was malicious,

wrathfull, enuious, and from afore his birth euer frowarde. \* \* \* Hee was

close and secrete, a deep dissimuler, lowlye of counteynaunce, arrogant of

heart--dispitious and cruell, not for euill will alway, but after for

ambicion, and either for the suretie and encrease of his estate. Frende and

foo was muche what indifferent, where his aduauntage grew, he spared no

mans deathe, whose life withstoode his purpose. He slew with his owne

handes king Henry the sixt, being prisoner in the Tower."--SIR THOMAS MORE:

\_Johnson's History of the English Language\_, p. 39.

36. \_From his description of Fortune, written about the year 1500.\_

"Fortune is stately, solemne, prowde, and hye:

And rychesse geueth, to haue seruyce therefore.

The nedy begger catcheth an half peny:

Some manne a thousaude pounde, some lesse some more.

But for all that she kepeth euer in store,

From euery manne some parcell of his wyll,

That he may pray therefore and serve her styll.

Some manne hath good, but chyldren hath he none.

Some manne hath both, but he can get none health.

Some hath al thre, but vp to honours trone,

Can he not crepe, by no maner of stelth.

To some she sendeth chyldren, ryches, welthe,

Honour, woorshyp, and reuerence all hys lyfe:

But yet she pyncheth hym with a shrewde wife."

SIR THOMAS MORE.

V. ENGLISH OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

37. \_Example for the reign of Henry VII, who was crowned on Bosworth field,

1485, and who died in 1509.\_

"Wherefor and forasmoche as we haue sent for our derrest wif, and for our

derrest moder, to come unto us, and that we wold have your advis and

counsail also in soche matters as we haue to doo for the subduying of the

rebelles, we praie you, that, yeving your due attendaunce vppon our said

derrest wif and lady moder, ye come with thaym unto us; not failing herof

as ye purpose to doo us plaisir. Yeven undre our signett, at our Castell of

Kenelworth, the xiii daie of Maye."--HENRY VII: \_Letter to the Earl of

Ormond: Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 147.

38. \_Example for the short reign of Richard III,--from 1485 to 1483.\_

"Right reverend fader in God, right trusty and right wel-beloved, we grete

yow wele, and wol and charge you that under oure greate seale, being in

your warde, ye do make in all haist our lettres of proclamation severally

to be directed unto the shirrefs of everie countie within this oure

royaume."--RICHARD III: \_Letter to his Chancellor.\_

39. \_Reign of Edward IV,--from 1483 to 1461.--Example written in 1463.\_

"Forasmoche as we by divers meanes bene credebly enformed and undarstand

for certyne, that owr greate adversary Henry, naminge hym selfe kynge of

England, by the maliceous counseyle and exitacion of Margaret his wife,

namynge hir selfe queane of England, have conspired," &c.--EDWARD IV:

\_Letter of Privy Seal\_.

40. \_Examples for the reign of Henry VI,--from 1461 back to 1422.\_

"When Nembroth [i.e. \_Nimrod\_] by Might, for his own Glorye, made and

incorporate the first Realme, and subduyd it to hymself by Tyrannye, he

would not have it governyd by any other Rule or Lawe, but by his own Will;

by which and for th' accomplishment thereof he made it. And therefor,

though he had thus made a Realme, holy Scripture denyd to cal hym a Kyng,

\_Quia Rex dicitur a Regendo\_; Whych thyng he did not, but oppressyd the

People by Myght."--SIR JOHN FORTESCUE.

41. \_Example from Lydgate, a poetical Monk, who died in 1440.\_

"Our life here short of wit the great dulnes

The heuy soule troubled with trauayle,

And of memorye the glasyng brotelnes,

Drede and vncunning haue made a strong batail

With werines my spirite to assayle,

And with their subtil creping in most queint

Hath made my spirit in makyng for to feint."

JOHN LYDGATE: \_Fall of Princes\_, Book III, Prol.

42. \_Example for the reign of Henry V,--from 1422 back to 1413.\_

"I wolle that the Duc of Orliance be kept stille withyn the Castil of

Pontefret, with owte goyng to Robertis place, or to any other disport, it

is better he lak his disport then we were disceyved. Of all the remanant

dothe as ye thenketh."--\_Letter of\_ HENRY V.

43. \_Example for the reign of Henry IV,--from 1413 back to 1400.\_

"Right heigh and myghty Prynce, my goode and gracious Lorde,--I recommaund

me to you as lowly as I kan or may with all my pouer hert, desiryng to hier

goode and gracious tydynges of your worshipful astate and welfare."--LORD

GREY: \_Letter to the Prince of Wales: Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 145.

VI. ENGLISH OF THE FOURTEENTH CENTURY.

44. \_Reign of Richard II, 1400 back to 1377.--Example written in 1391.\_

"Lytel Lowys my sonne, I perceve well by certaine evidences thyne abylyte

to lerne scyences, touching nombres and proporcions, and also well consydre

I thy besye prayer in especyal to lerne the tretyse of the \_astrolabye\_.

Than for as moche as a philosopher saithe, he wrapeth hym in his frende,

that condiscendeth to the ryghtfull prayers of his frende: therefore I have

given the a sufficient astrolabye for oure orizont, compowned after the

latitude of Oxenforde: vpon the whiche by meditacion of this lytell

tretise, I purpose to teche the a certame nombre of conclusions,

pertainynge to this same instrument."--GEOFFREY CHAUCER: \_Of the

Astrolabe\_.

45. \_Example written about 1385--to be compared with that of 1555, on p.

87\_.

"And thus this companie of muses iblamed casten wrothly the chere dounward

to the yerth, and shewing by rednesse their shame, thei passeden sorowfully

the thresholde. And I of whom the sight plounged in teres was darked, so

that I ne might not know what that woman was, of so Imperial aucthoritie, I

woxe all abashed and stonied, and cast my sight doune to the yerth, and

began still for to abide what she would doen afterward."--CHAUCER: \_Version

from Boëthius: Johnson's Hist. of E. L.\_, p. 29.

46. \_Poetical Example--probably written before 1380\_.

"O Socrates, thou stedfast champion;

She ne might nevir be thy turmentour,

Thou nevir dreddist her oppression,

Ne in her chere foundin thou no favour,

Thou knewe wele the disceipt of her colour,

And that her moste worship is for to lie,

I knowe her eke a false dissimulour,

For finally Fortune I doe defie."--CHAUCER.

47. \_Reign of Edward III, 1377 to 1327.--Example written about 1360\_.

"And eke full ofte a littell skare

Vpon a banke, er men be ware,

Let in the streme, whiche with gret peine,

If any man it shall restreine.

Where lawe failleth, errour groweth;

He is not wise, who that ne troweth."--SIR JOHN GOWER.

48. \_Example from Mandeville, the English traveller--written in 1356\_.

"And this sterre that is toward the Northe, that wee clepen the lode

sterre, ne apperethe not to hem. For whiche cause, men may wel perceyve,

that the lond and the see ben of rownde schapp and forme. For the partie of

the firmament schewethe in o contree, that schewethe not in another

contree. And men may well preven be experience and sotyle compassement of

wytt, that zif a man fond passages be schippes, that wolde go to serchen

the world, men mighte go be schippe all aboute the world, and aboven and

benethen. The whiche thing I prove thus, aftre that I have seyn. \* \* \* Be

the whiche I seye zou certeynly, that men may envirowne alle the erthe of

alle the world, as wel undre as aboven, and turnen azen to his contree,

that hadde companye and schippynge and conduyt: and alle weyes he scholde

fynde men, londes, and yles, als wel as in this contree."--SIR JOHN

MANDEVILLE; \_Johnson's Hist. of E. L.\_, p. 26.

49. \_Example from Rob. Langland's "Vision of Pierce Ploughman," 1350\_.

"In the somer season,

When hot was the Sun,

I shope me into shroubs,

As I a shepe were;

In habit as an harmet,

Vnholy of werkes,

Went wyde in this world

Wonders to heare."

50. \_Description of a Ship--referred to the reign of Edward II: 1327-1307\_.

"Such ne saw they never none,

For it was so gay begone,

Every nayle with gold ygrave,

Of pure gold was his sklave,

Her mast was of ivory,

Of samyte her sayle wytly,

Her robes all of whyte sylk,

As whyte as ever was ony mylke.

The noble ship was without

With clothes of gold spread about

And her loft and her wyndlace

All of gold depaynted was."

ANONYMOUS: \_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 143.

51. \_From an Elegy on Edward I, who reigned till 1307 from 1272\_.

"Thah mi tonge were made of stel,

Ant min herte yzote of bras,

The goodness myht y never telle,

That with kyng Edward was:

Kyng, as thou art cleped conquerour,

In uch battaille thou hadest prys;

God bringe thi soule to the honour,

That ever wes ant ever ys.

Now is Edward of Carnavan

Kyng of Engelond al aplyght;

God lete him never be worse man

Then his fader, ne lasse myht,

To holden his pore men to ryht,

Ant understonde good counsail,

Al Engelond for to wysse and dyht;

Of gode knyhtes darh him nout fail."

ANON.: \_Percy's Reliques\_, Vol. ii, p. 10.

VII. ENGLISH OF THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY.

52. \_Reign of Henry III, 1272 to 1216.--Example from an old ballad entitled

Richard of Almaigne\_; which Percy says was "made by one of the adherents of

Simon de Montfort, earl of Leicester, soon after the battle of Lewes, which

was fought, May 14, 1264."--\_Percy's Reliques\_, Vol. ii.

"Sitteth alle stille, and herkneth to me;

The kyng of Almaigne, bi mi leaute,

Thritti thousent pound askede he

For te make the pees in the countre,

Ant so he dude more.

Richard, thah thou be ever trichard,

Trichten shalt thou never more."

53. In the following examples, I substitute Roman letters for the Saxon. At

this period, we find the characters mixed. The style here is that which

Johnson calls "a kind of intermediate diction, neither Saxon nor English."

Of these historical rhymes, by \_Robert of Gloucester\_, the Doctor gives us

more than two hundred lines; but he dates them no further than to say,

that the author "is placed by the criticks in the thirteenth

century."--\_Hist. of Eng. Lang.\_, p. 24.

"Alfred thys noble man, as in the ger of grace he nom

Eygte hondred and syxty and tuelue the kyndom.

Arst he adde at Rome ybe, and, vor ys grete wysdom,

The pope Leo hym blessede, tho he thuder com,

And the kynges croune of hys lond, that in this lond gut ys:

And he led hym to be kyng, ar he kyng were y wys.

An he was kyng of Engelond, of alle that ther come,

That vorst thus ylad was of the pope of Rome,

An suththe other after hym of the erchebyssopes echon."

"Clere he was god ynou, and gut, as me telleth me,

He was more than ten ger old, ar he couthe ys abece.

Ac ys gode moder ofte smale gyftes hym tok,

Vor to byleue other pie, and loky on ys boke.

So that by por clergye ys rygt lawes he wonde,

That neuere er nere y mad to gouerny ys lond."

ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER: \_Johnson's Hist. of E. L.\_, p. 25.

54. \_Reign of John\_, 1216 \_back to\_ 1199.--\_Subject of Christ's

Crucifixion\_.

"I syke when y singe for sorewe that y se

When y with wypinge bihold upon the tre,

Ant se Jhesu the suete ys hert blod for-lete

For the love of me;

Ys woundes waxen wete, thei wepen, still and mete,

Marie reweth me."

ANON.: \_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 142.

VIII. ENGLISH, OR ANGLO-SAXON, OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY.

55. \_Reign of Richard I, 1199 back to 1189.--Owl and Nightingale\_.

"Ich was in one sumere dale,

In one snive digele pale,

I herde ich hold grete tale,

An hule and one nightingale.

That plait was stif I stare and strong,

Sum wile softe I lud among.

An other again other sval

I let that wole mod ut al.

I either seide of otheres custe,

That alere worste that hi wuste

I hure and I hure of others songe

Hi hold plaidung futhe stronge."

ANON.: \_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 142.

56. \_Reign of Henry II, 1189 back to 1154.--Example dated 1180\_.

"And of alle than folke

The wuneden ther on folde,

Wes thisses landes folke

Leodene hendest itald;

And alswa the wimmen

Wunliche on heowen."

GODRIC: \_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 141.

57. \_Example from the Saxon Chronicle, written about 1160\_.

"Micel hadde Henri king gadered gold & syluer, and na god ne dide me for

his saule thar of. Tha the king Stephne to Engla-land com, tha macod he his

gadering æt Oxene-ford, & thar he nam the biscop Roger of Seres-beri, and

Alexander biscop of Lincoln, & te Canceler Roger hife neues, & dide ælle in

prisun, til hi jafen up here castles. Tha the suikes undergæton that he

milde man was & softe & god, & na justise ne dide; tha diden hi alle

wunder." See \_Johnson's Hist. of the Eng. Language\_, p. 22.

58. \_Reign of Stephen, 1154 to 1135.--Example written about this time\_.

"Fur in see bi west Spaygne.

Is a lond ihone Cokaygne.

There nis lond under heuenriche.

Of wel of godnis hit iliche.

Thoy paradis be miri and briyt.

Cokaygne is of fairer siyt.

What is ther in paradis.

Bot grasse and flure and greneris.

Thoy ther be ioi and gret dute.

Ther nis met bot ænlic frute.

Ther nis halle bure no bench.

Bot watir manis thurst to quench."

ANON.: \_Johnson's Hist. Eng. Lang.\_, p. 23.

59. \_Reign of Henry I, 1135 to 1100.--Part of an Anglo-Saxon Hymn\_.

"Heuene & erthe & all that is,

Biloken is on his honde.

He deth al that his wille is,

On sea and ec on londe.

He is orde albuten orde.

And ende albuten ende.

He one is eure on eche stede,

Wende wer thu wende.

He is buuen us and binethen,

Biuoren and ec bihind.

Se man that Godes wille deth,

He mai hine aihwar uinde.

Eche rune he iherth,

And wot eche dede.

He durh sighth eches ithanc,

Wai hwat sel us to rede.

Se man neure nele don god,

Ne neure god lif leden,

Er deth & dom come to his dure,

He mai him sore adreden.

Hunger & thurst, hete & chele,

Ecthe and all unhelthe,

Durh deth com on this midelard,

And other uniselthe.

Ne mai non herte hit ithenche,

Ne no tunge telle,

Hu muchele pinum and hu uele,

Bieth inne helle.

Louie God mid ure hierte,

And mid all ure mihte,

And ure emcristene swo us self,

Swo us lereth drihte."

ANON.: \_Johnson's Hist. Eng. Lang.\_, p. 21.

IX. ANGLO-SAXON OF THE ELEVENTH CENTURY, COMPARED WITH ENGLISH.

60. \_Saxon,--11th Century\_.[50]

LUCÆ, CAP. I.

"5. On Herodes dagum Iudea cynincges, wæs sum sacred on naman Zacharias, of

Abian tune: and his wif wæs of Aarones dohtrum, and hyre nama waas

Elizabeth.

6. Sothlice hig wæron butu rihtwise beforan Gode, gangende on eallum his

bebodum and rihtwisnessum, butan wrohte.

7. And hig næfdon nan bearn, fortham the Elizabeth wæs unberende; and hy on

hyra dagum butu forth-eodun.

8. Sothlice wæs geworden tha Zacharias hys sacerdhades breac on his

gewrixles endebyrdnesse beforan Gode,

9. Æfter gewunan thæs sacerdhades hlotes, he eode that he his offrunge

sette, tha he on Godes tempel eode.

10. Eall werod thæs folces wæs ute gebiddende on thære offrunge timan.

11. Tha ætywde him Drihtnes engel standende on thæs weofodes swithran

healfe.

12. Tha weard Zacharias gedrefed that geseonde, and him ege onhreas.

13. Tha cwæth se engel him to, Ne ondræd thu the Zacharias; fortham thin

ben is gehyred, and thin wif Elizabeth the sunu centh, and thu nemst hys

naman Johannes."--\_Saxon Gospels\_.

\_English.--14th Century\_.

LUK, CHAP. I.

"5. In the dayes of Eroude kyng of Judee ther was a prest Zacarye by name,

of the sort of Abia: and his wyf was of the doughtris of Aaron, and hir

name was Elizabeth.

6. And bothe weren juste bifore God, goynge in alle the maundementis and

justifyingis of the Lord, withouten playnt.

7. And thei hadden no child, for Elizabeth was bareyn; and bothe weren of

greet age in her dayes.

8. And it befel that whanne Zacarye schould do the office of presthod in

the ordir of his course to fore God,

9. Aftir the custom of the presthood, he wente forth by lot, and entride

into the temple to encensen.

10. And al the multitude of the puple was without forth and preyede in the

our of encensying.

11. And an aungel of the Lord apperide to him, and stood on the right half

of the auter of encense. 12. And Zacarye seyinge was afrayed, and drede fel

upon him.

13. And the aungel sayde to him, Zacarye, drede thou not; for thy preier is

herd, and Elizabeth thi wif schal bere to thee a sone, and his name schal

be clepid Jon."

\_Wickliffe's Bible\_, 1380.

\_English.--17th Century\_.

LUKE, CHAP. I.

"5. There was in the days of Herod the king of Judea, a certain priest

named Zacharias, of the course of Abia: and his wife was of the daughters

of Aaron, and her name was Elisabeth.

6. And they were both righteous before God, walking in all the commandments

and ordinances of the Lord, blameless.

7. And they had no child, because that Elisabeth was barren; and they both

were now well stricken in years.

8. And it came to pass, that while he executed the priest's office before

God in the order of his course,

9. According to the custom of the priest's office, his lot was to burn

incense when he went into the temple of the Lord.

10. And the whole multitude of the people were praying without at the time

of incense.

11. And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord, standing on the right

side of the altar of incense.

12. And when Zacharias saw him, he was troubled, and fear fell upon him.

13. But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias; for thy prayer is

heard, and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shall call

his name John."

\_Common Bible\_, 1610.

See Dr. Johnson's History of the English Language, in his Quarto

Dictionary.

X. ANGLO-SAXON IN THE TIME OF KING ALFRED.

61. Alfred the Great, who was the youngest son of Ethelwolf, king of the

West Saxons, succeeded to the crown on the death of his brother Ethelred,

in the year 871, being then twenty-two years old. He had scarcely time to

attend the funeral of his brother, before he was called to the field to

defend his country against the Danes. After a reign of more than

twenty-eight years, rendered singularly glorious by great achievements

under difficult circumstances, he died universally lamented, on the 28th of

October, A. D. 900. By this prince the university of Oxford was founded,

and provided with able teachers from the continent. His own great

proficiency in learning, and his earnest efforts for its promotion, form a

striking contrast with the ignorance which prevailed before. "In the ninth

century, throughout the whole kingdom of the West Saxons, no man could be

found who was scholar enough to instruct the young king Alfred, then a

child, even in the first elements of reading: so that he was in his twelfth

year before he could name the letters of the alphabet. When that renowned

prince ascended the throne, he made it his study to draw his people out of

the sloth and stupidity in which they lay; and became, as much by his own

example as by the encouragement he gave to learned men, the great restorer

of arts in his dominions."--\_Life of Bacon\_.

62. The language of eulogy must often be taken with some abatement: it does

not usually present things in their due proportions. How far the foregoing

quotation is true, I will not pretend to say; but what is called "the

revival of learning," must not be supposed to have begun at so early a

period as that of Alfred. The following is a brief specimen of the language

in which that great man wrote; but, printed in Saxon characters, it would

appear still less like English.

"On thære tide the Gotan of Siththiu mægthe with Romana rice gewin

upahofon. and mith heora cyningum. Rædgota and Eallerica wæron hatne.

Romane burig abræcon. and eall Italia rice that is betwux tham muntum and

Sicilia tham ealonde in anwald gerehton. and tha ægter tham foresprecenan

cyningum Theodric feng to tham ilcan rice se Theodric wæs Amulinga. he wass

Cristen. theah he on tham Arrianiscan gedwolan durhwunode. He gehet Romanum

his freondscype. swa that hi mostan heora ealdrichta wyrthe beon."--KING

ALFRED: \_Johnson's Hist. of E. L., 4to Dict.\_, p. 17.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE GRAMMATICAL STUDY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

"Grammatica quid est? ars rectè scribendi rectèque loquendi; poetarum

enarrationem continens; omnium Scientiarum fons uberrimus. \* \* \* Nostra

ætas parum perita rerum veterum, nimis brevi gyro grammaticum sepsit; at

apud antiques olim tantum auctoritatis hic ordo habuit, ut censores essent

et judices scriptorum omnium soli grammatici; quos ob id etiam Criticos

vocabant."--DESPAUTER. \_Præf. ad Synt\_, fol. 1.

1. Such is the peculiar power of language, that there is scarcely any

subject so trifling, that it may not thereby be plausibly magnified into

something great; nor are there many things which cannot be ingeniously

disparaged till they shall seem contemptible. Cicero goes further: "Nihil

est tam incredibile quod non dicendo fiat probabile;"--"There is nothing so

incredible that it may not by the power of language be made probable." The

study of grammar has been often overrated, and still oftener injuriously

decried. I shall neither join with those who would lessen in the public

esteem that general system of doctrines, which from time immemorial has

been taught as grammar; nor attempt, either by magnifying its practical

results, or by decking it out with my own imaginings, to invest it with any

artificial or extraneous importance.

2. I shall not follow the footsteps of \_Neef\_, who avers that, "Grammar and

incongruity are identical things," and who, under pretence of reaching the

same end by better means, scornfully rejects as nonsense every thing that

others have taught under that name; because I am convinced, that, of all

methods of teaching, none goes farther than his, to prove the reproachful

assertion true. Nor shall I imitate the declamation of \_Cardell\_; who, at

the commencement of his Essay, recommends the general study of language on

earth, from the consideration that, "The faculty of speech is the medium of

social bliss for superior intelligences in an eternal world;" [51] and who,

when he has exhausted censure in condemning the practical instruction of

others, thus lavishes praise, in both his grammars, upon that formless,

void, and incomprehensible theory of his own: "This application of words,"

says he, "in their endless use, by one plain rule, to all things which

nouns can name, instead of being the fit subject of blind cavil, \_is the

most sublime theme presented to the intellect on earth. It is the practical

intercourse of the soul at once with its God, and with all parts of his

works!\_"--\_Cardell's Gram.\_, 12mo, p. 87; \_Gram.\_, 18mo, p. 49.

3. Here, indeed, a wide prospect opens before us; but he who traces

science, and teaches what is practically useful, must check imagination,

and be content with sober truth.

"For apt the mind or fancy is to rove

Uncheck'd, and of her roving is no end."--MILTON.

Restricted within its proper limits, and viewed in its true light, the

practical science of grammar has an intrinsic dignity and merit sufficient

to throw back upon any man who dares openly assail it, the lasting stigma

of folly and self-conceit. It is true, the judgements of men are fallible,

and many opinions are liable to be reversed by better knowledge: but what

has been long established by the unanimous concurrence of the learned, it

can hardly be the part of a wise instructor now to dispute. The literary

reformer who, with the last named gentleman, imagines "that the persons to

whom the civilized world have looked up to for instruction in language were

all wrong alike in the main points," [52] intends no middle course of

reformation, and must needs be a man either of great merit, or of little

modesty.

4. The English language may now be regarded as the common inheritance of

about fifty millions of people; who are at least as highly distinguished

for virtue, intelligence, and enterprise, as any other equal portion of the

earth's population. All these are more or less interested in the purity,

permanency, and right use of that language; inasmuch as it is to be, not

only the medium of mental intercourse with others for them and their

children, but the vehicle of all they value, in the reversion of ancestral

honour, or in the transmission of their own. It is even impertinent, to

tell a man of any respectability, that the study of this his native

language is an object of great importance and interest: if he does not,

from these most obvious considerations, feel it to be so, the suggestion

will be less likely to convince him, than to give offence, as conveying an

implicit censure.

5. Every person who has any ambition to appear respectable among people of

education, whether in conversation, in correspondence, in public speaking,

or in print, must be aware of the absolute necessity of a competent

knowledge of the language in which he attempts to express his thoughts.

Many a ludicrous anecdote is told, of persons venturing to use words of

which they did not know the proper application; many a ridiculous blunder

has been published to the lasting disgrace of the writer; and so intimately

does every man's reputation for sense depend upon his skill in the use of

language, that it is scarcely possible to acquire the one without the

other. Who can tell how much of his own good or ill success, how much of

the favour or disregard with which he himself has been treated, may have

depended upon that skill or deficiency in grammar, of which, as often as he

has either spoken or written, he must have afforded a certain and constant

evidence.[53]

6. I have before said, that to excel in grammar, is but to know better than

others wherein grammatical excellence consists; and, as this excellence,

whether in the thing itself, or in him that attains to it, is merely

comparative, there seems to be no fixed point of perfection beyond which

such learning may not be carried. In speaking or writing to different

persons, and on different subjects, it is necessary to vary one's style

with great nicety of address; and in nothing does true genius more

conspicuously appear, than in the facility with which it adopts the most

appropriate expressions, leaving the critic no fault to expose, no word to

amend. Such facility of course supposes an intimate knowledge of all words

in common use, and also of the principles on which they are to be combined.

7. With a language which we are daily in the practice of hearing, speaking,

reading, and writing, we may certainly acquire no inconsiderable

acquaintance, without the formal study of its rules. All the true

principles of grammar were presumed to be known to the learned, before they

were written for the aid of learners; nor have they acquired any

independent authority, by being recorded in a book, and denominated

grammar. The teaching of them, however, has tended in no small degree to

settle and establish the construction of the language, to improve the style

of our English writers, and to enable us to ascertain with more clearness

the true standard of grammatical purity. He who learns only by rote, may

speak the words or phrases which he has thus acquired; and he who has the

genius to discern intuitively what is regular and proper, may have further

aid from the analogies which he thus discovers; but he who would add to

such acquisitions the satisfaction of knowing what is right, must make the

principles of language his study.

8. To produce an able and elegant writer, may require something more than a

knowledge of grammar rules; yet it is argument enough in favour of those

rules, that without a knowledge of them no elegant and able writer is

produced. Who that considers the infinite number of phrases which words in

their various combinations may form, and the utter impossibility that they

should ever be recognized individually for the purposes of instruction and

criticism, but must see the absolute necessity of dividing words into

classes, and of showing, by general rules of formation and construction,

the laws to which custom commonly subjects them, or from which she allows

them in particular instances to deviate? Grammar, or the art of writing and

speaking, must continue to be learned by some persons; because it is of

indispensable use to society. And the only question is, whether children

and youth shall acquire it by a regular process of study and method of

instruction, or be left to glean it solely from their own occasional

observation of the manner in which other people speak and write.

9. The practical solution of this question belongs chiefly to parents and

guardians. The opinions of teachers, to whose discretion the decision will

sometimes be left, must have a certain degree of influence upon the public

mind; and the popular notions of the age, in respect to the relative value

of different studies, will doubtless bias many to the adoption or the

rejection of this. A consideration of the point seems to be appropriate

here, and I cannot forbear to commend the study to the favour of my

readers; leaving every one, of course, to choose how much he will be

influenced by my advice, example, or arguments. If past experience and the

history of education be taken for guides, the study of English grammar will

not be neglected; and the method of its inculcation will become an object

of particular inquiry and solicitude. The English language ought to be

learned at school or in colleges, as other languages usually are; by the

study of its grammar, accompanied with regular exercises of parsing,

correcting, pointing, and scanning; and by the perusal of some of its most

accurate writers, accompanied with stated exercises in composition and

elocution. In books of criticism, our language is already more abundant

than any other. Some of the best of these the student should peruse, as

soon as he can understand and relish them. Such a course, pursued with

regularity and diligence, will be found the most direct way of acquiring an

English style at once pure, correct, and elegant.

10. If any intelligent man will represent English grammar otherwise than as

one of the most useful branches of study, he may well be suspected of

having formed his conceptions of the science, not from what it really is in

itself, but from some of those miserable treatises which only caricature

the subject, and of which it is rather an advantage to be ignorant. But who

is so destitute of good sense as to deny, that a graceful and easy

conversation in the private circle, a fluent and agreeable delivery in

public speaking, a ready and natural utterance in reading, a pure and

elegant style in composition, are accomplishments of a very high order? And

yet of all these, the proper study of English grammar is the true

foundation. This would never be denied or doubted, if young people did not

find, under some other name, better models and more efficient instruction,

than what was practised on them for grammar in the school-room. No disciple

of an able grammarian can ever speak ill of grammar, unless he belong to

that class of knaves who vilify what they despair to reach.

11. By taking

proper advantage of the ductility of childhood, intelligent parents and

judicious teachers may exercise over the studies, opinions, and habits of

youth a strong and salutary control; and it will seldom be found in

experience, that those who have been early taught to consider grammatical

learning as worthy and manly, will change their opinion in after life. But

the study of grammar is not so enticing that it may be disparaged in the

hearing of the young, without injury. What would be the natural effect of

the following sentence, which I quote from a late well-written religious

homily? "The pedagogue and his dunce may exercise their wits correctly

enough, in the way of grammatical analysis, on some splendid argument, or

burst of eloquence, or thrilling descant, or poetic rapture, to the strain

and soul of which not a fibre in their nature would yield a

vibration."--\_New-York Observer\_, Vol. ix, p. 73.

12. Would not the bright boy who heard this from the lips of his reverend

minister, be apt the next day to grow weary of the parsing lesson required

by his schoolmaster? And yet what truth is there in the passage? One can no

more judge of the fitness of language, without regard to the meaning

conveyed by it, than of the fitness of a suit of clothes, without knowing

for whom they were intended. The grand clew to the proper application of

all syntactical rules, is \_the sense\_; and as any composition is faulty

which does not rightly deliver the author's meaning, so every solution of a

word or sentence is necessarily erroneous, in which that meaning is not

carefully noticed and literally preserved. To parse rightly and fully, is

nothing else than to understand rightly and explain fully; and whatsoever

is well expressed, it is a shame either to misunderstand or to

misinterpret.

13. This study, when properly conducted and liberally pursued, has an

obvious tendency to dignify the whole character. How can he be a man of

refined literary taste, who cannot speak and write his native language

grammatically? And who will deny that every degree of improvement in

literary taste tends to brighten and embellish the whole intellectual

nature? The several powers of the mind are not so many distinct and

separable agents, which are usually brought into exercise one by one; and

even if they were, there might be found, in a judicious prosecution of this

study, a healthful employment for them all. The \_imagination\_, indeed, has

nothing to do with the elements of grammar; but in the exercise of

composition, young fancy may spread her wings as soon as they are fledged;

and for this exercise the previous course of discipline will have furnished

both language and taste, as well as sentiment.

14. The regular grammatical study of our language is a thing of recent

origin. Fifty or sixty years ago, such an exercise was scarcely attempted

in any of the schools, either in this country or in England.[54] Of this

fact we have abundant evidence both from books, and from the testimony of

our venerable fathers yet living. How often have these presented this as an

apology for their own deficiencies, and endeavoured to excite us to greater

diligence, by contrasting our opportunities with theirs! Is there not

truth, is there not power, in the appeal? And are we not bound to avail

ourselves of the privileges which they have provided, to build upon the

foundations which their wisdom has laid, and to carry forward the work of

improvement? Institutions can do nothing for us, unless the love of

learning preside over and prevail in them. The discipline of our schools

can never approach perfection, till those who conduct, and those who

frequent them, are strongly actuated by that disposition of mind, which

generously aspires to all attainable excellence.

15. To rouse this laudable spirit in the minds of our youth, and to satisfy

its demands whenever it appears, ought to be the leading objects with those

to whom is committed the important business of instruction. A dull teacher,

wasting time in a school-room with a parcel of stupid or indolent boys,

knows nothing of the satisfaction either of doing his own duty, or of

exciting others to the performance of theirs. He settles down in a regular

routine of humdrum exercises, dreading as an inconvenience even such change

as proficiency in his pupils must bring on; and is well content to do

little good for little money, in a profession which he honours with his

services merely to escape starvation. He has, however, one merit: he

pleases his patrons, and is perhaps the only man that can; for they must

needs be of that class to whom moral restraint is tyranny, disobedience to

teachers, as often right as wrong; and who, dreading the expense, even of a

school-book, always judge those things to be cheapest, which cost the least

and last the longest. What such a man, or such a neighbourhood, may think

of English grammar, I shall not stop to ask.

16. To the following opinion from a writer of great merit, I am inclined to

afford room here, because it deserves refutation, and, I am persuaded, is

not so well founded as the generality of the doctrines with which it is

presented to the public. "Since human knowledge is so much more extensive

than the opportunity of individuals for acquiring it, it becomes of the

greatest importance so to economize the opportunity as to make it

subservient to the acquisition of as large and as valuable a portion as we

can. It is not enough to show that a given branch of education is useful:

you must show that it is the most useful that can be selected. Remembering

this, I think it would be expedient to dispense with the formal study of

English grammar,--a proposition which I doubt not many a teacher will hear

with wonder and disapprobation. We learn the grammar in order that we may

learn English; and we learn English whether we study grammars or not.

Especially we \_shall\_ acquire a competent knowledge of our own language, if

other departments of our education were improved."

17. "A boy learns more English grammar by joining in an hour's conversation

with educated people, than in poring for an hour over Murray or Horne

Tooke. If he is accustomed to such society and to the perusal of

well-written books, he will learn English grammar, though he never sees a

word about syntax; and if he is not accustomed to such society and such

reading, the 'grammar books' at a boarding-school will not teach it. Men

learn their own language by habit, and not by rules: and this is just what

we might expect; for the grammar of a language is itself formed from the

prevalent habits of speech and writing. A compiler of grammar first

observes these habits, and then makes his rules: but if a person is himself

familiar with the habits, why study the rules? I say nothing of grammar as

a general science; because, although the philosophy of language be a

valuable branch of human knowledge, it were idle to expect that school-boys

should understand it. The objection is, to the system of attempting to

teach children formally that which they will learn practically without

teaching."--JONATHAN DYMOND: \_Essays on Morality\_, p. 195.

18. This opinion, proceeding from a man who has written upon human affairs

with so much ability and practical good sense, is perhaps entitled to as

much respect as any that has ever been urged against the study in question.

And so far as the objection bears upon those defective methods of

instruction which experience has shown to be inefficient, or of little use,

I am in no wise concerned to remove it. The reader of this treatise will

find their faults not only admitted, but to a great extent purposely

exposed; while an attempt is here made, as well as in my earlier grammars,

to introduce a method which it is hoped will better reach the end proposed.

But it may easily be perceived that this author's proposition to dispense

with the formal study of English grammar is founded upon an untenable

assumption. Whatever may be the advantages of those purer habits of speech,

which the young naturally acquire from conversation with educated people,

it is not true, that, without instruction directed to this end, they will

of themselves become so well educated as to speak and write grammatically.

Their language may indeed be comparatively accurate and genteel, because

it is learned of those who have paid some attention to the study; but, as

they cannot always be preserved from hearing vulgar and improper

phraseology, or from seeing it in books, they cannot otherwise be guarded

from improprieties of diction, than by a knowledge of the rules of grammar.

One might easily back this position by the citation of some scores of

faulty sentences from the pen of this very able writer himself.

19. I imagine there can be no mistake in the opinion, that in exact

proportion as the rules of grammar are unknown or neglected in any country,

will corruptions and improprieties of language be there multiplied. The

"general science" of grammar, or "the philosophy of language," the author

seems to exempt, and in some sort to commend; and at the same time his

proposition of exclusion is applied not merely to the school-grammars, but

\_a fortiori\_ to this science, under the notion that it is unintelligible to

school-boys. But why should any principle of grammar be the less

intelligible on account of the extent of its application? Will a boy

pretend that he cannot understand a rule of English grammar, because he is

told that it holds good in all languages? Ancient etymologies, and other

facts in literary history, must be taken by the young upon the credit of

him who states them; but the doctrines of general grammar are to the

learner the easiest and the most important principles of the science. And I

know of nothing in the true philosophy of language, which, by proper

definitions and examples, may not be made as intelligible to a boy, as are

the principles of most other sciences. The difficulty of instructing youth

in any thing that pertains to language, lies not so much in the fact that

its philosophy is above their comprehension, as in our own ignorance of

certain parts of so vast an inquiry;--in the great multiplicity of verbal

signs; the frequent contrariety of practice; the inadequacy of memory; the

inveteracy of ill habits; and the little interest that is felt when we

speak merely of words.

20. The grammatical study of our language was early and strongly

recommended by Locke,[55] and other writers on education, whose character

gave additional weight to an opinion which they enforced by the clearest

arguments. But either for want of a good grammar, or for lack of teachers

skilled in the subject and sensible of its importance, the general neglect

so long complained of as a grievous imperfection in our methods of

education, has been but recently and partially obviated. "The attainment of

a correct and elegant style," says Dr. Blair, "is an object which demands

application and labour. If any imagine they can catch it merely by the ear,

or acquire it by the slight perusal of some of our good authors, they will

find themselves much disappointed. The many errors, even in point of

grammar, the many offences against purity of language, which are committed

by writers who are far from being contemptible, demonstrate, that a

\_careful study\_ of the language is previously requisite, in all who aim at

writing it properly."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, Lect. ix, p. 91.

21. "To think justly, to write well, to speak agreeably, are the three

great ends of academic instruction. The Universities will excuse me, if I

observe, that both are, in one respect or other, defective in these three

capital points of education. While in Cambridge the general application is

turned altogether on speculative knowledge, with little regard to polite

letters, taste, or style; in Oxford the whole attention is directed towards

classical correctness, without any sound foundation laid in severe

reasoning and philosophy. In Cambridge and in Oxford, the art of speaking

agreeably is so far from being taught, that it is hardly talked or thought

of. \_These defects\_ naturally produce dry unaffecting compositions in the

one; superficial taste and puerile elegance in the other; ungracious or

affected speech in both."--DR. BROWN, 1757: \_Estimate\_, Vol. ii, p. 44.

22. "A grammatical study of our own language makes no part of the ordinary

method of instruction, which we pass through in our childhood; and it is

very seldom we apply ourselves to it afterward. Yet the want of it will not

be effectually supplied by any other advantages whatsoever. Much practice

in the polite world, and a general acquaintance with the best authors, are

good helps; but alone [they] will hardly be sufficient: We have writers,

who have enjoyed these advantages in their full extent, and yet cannot be

recommended as models of an accurate style. Much less then will, what is

commonly called learning, serve the purpose; that is, a critical knowledge

of ancient languages, and much reading of ancient authors: The greatest

critic and most able grammarian of the last age, when he came to apply his

learning and criticism to an English author, was frequently at a loss in

matters of ordinary use and common construction in his own vernacular

idiom."--DR. LOWTH, 1763: \_Pref. to Gram.\_, p. vi.

23. "To the pupils of our public schools the acquisition of their own

language, whenever it is undertaken, is an easy task. For he who is

acquainted with several grammars already, finds no difficulty in adding one

more to the number. And this, no doubt, is one of the reasons why English

engages so small a proportion of their time and attention. It is not

frequently read, and is still less frequently written. Its supposed

facility, however, or some other cause, seems to have drawn upon it such a

degree of neglect as certainly cannot be praised. The students in those

schools are often distinguished by their compositions in the learned

languages, before they can speak or write their own with correctness,

elegance, or fluency. A classical scholar too often has his English style

to form, when he should communicate his acquisitions to the world. In some

instances it is never formed with success; and the defects of his

expression either deter him from appearing before the public at all, or at

least counteract in a great degree the influence of his work, and bring

ridicule upon the author. Surely these evils might easily be prevented or

diminished."--DR. BARROW: \_Essays on Education\_, London, 1804; Philad.,

1825, p. 87.

24. "It is also said that those who know Latin and Greek generally express

themselves with more clearness than those who do not receive a liberal

education. It is indeed natural that those who cultivate their mental

powers, write with more clearness than the uncultivated individual. The

mental cultivation, however, may take place in the mother tongue as well as

in Latin or Greek. Yet the spirit of the ancient languages, further is

declared to be superior to that of the modern. I allow this to be the case;

but I do not find that the English style is improved by learning Greek. It

is known that literal translations are miserably bad, and yet young

scholars are taught to translate, word for word, faithful to their

dictionaries. Hence those who do not make a peculiar study of their own

language, will not improve in it by learning, in this manner, Greek and

Latin. Is it not a pity to hear, what I have been told by the managers of

one of the first institutions of Ireland, that it was easier to find ten

teachers for Latin and Greek, than one for the English language, though

they proposed double the salary to the latter? Who can assure us that the

Greek orators acquired their superiority by their acquaintance with foreign

languages; or, is it not obvious, on the other hand, that they learned

ideas and expressed them in their mother tongue?"--DR. SPURZHEIM: \_Treatise

on Education\_, 1832, p. 107.

25. "Dictionaries were compiled, which comprised all the words, together

with their several definitions, or the sense each one expresses and conveys

to the mind. These words were analyzed and classed according to their

essence, attributes, and functions. Grammar was made a rudiment leading to

the principles of all thoughts, and teaching by simple examples, the

general classification of words and their subdivisions in expressing the

various conceptions of the mind. Grammar is then the key to the perfect

understanding of languages; without which we are left to wander all our

lives in an intricate labyrinth, without being able to trace back again any

part of our way."--\_Chazotte's Essay on the Teaching of Languages\_, p. 45.

Again: "Had it not been for his dictionary and his grammar, which taught

him the essence of all languages, and the natural subdivision of their

component parts, he might have spent a life as long as Methuselah's, in

learning words, without being able to attain to a degree of perfection in

any of the languages."--\_Ib.\_, p. 50. "Indeed, it is not easy to say, to

what degree, and in how many different ways, both memory and judgement may

be improved by an intimate acquaintance with grammar; which is therefore,

with good reason, made the first and fundamental part of literary

education. The greatest orators, the most elegant scholars, and the most

accomplished men of business, that have appeared in the world, of whom I

need only mention Cæsar and Cicero, were not only studious of grammar, but

most learned grammarians."--DR. BEATTIE: \_Moral Science\_, Vol. i, p. 107.

26. Here, as in many other parts of my work, I have chosen to be liberal of

quotations; not to show my reading, or to save the labour of composition,

but to give the reader the satisfaction of some other authority than my

own. In commending the study of English grammar, I do not mean to

discountenance that degree of attention which in this country is paid to

other languages; but merely to use my feeble influence to carry forward a

work of improvement, which, in my opinion, has been wisely begun, but not

sufficiently sustained. In consequence of this improvement, the study of

grammar, which was once prosecuted chiefly through the medium of the dead

languages, and was regarded as the proper business of those only who were

to be instructed in Latin and Greek, is now thought to be an appropriate

exercise for children in elementary schools. And the sentiment is now

generally admitted, that even those who are afterwards to learn other

languages, may best acquire a knowledge of the common principles of speech

from the grammar of their vernacular tongue. This opinion appears to be

confirmed by that experience which is at once the most satisfactory proof

of what is feasible, and the only proper test of what is useful.

27. It must, however, be confessed, that an acquaintance with ancient and

foreign literature is absolutely necessary for him who would become a

thorough philologist or an accomplished scholar; and that the Latin

language, the source of several of the modern tongues of Europe, being

remarkably regular in its inflections and systematic in its construction,

is in itself the most complete exemplar of the structure of speech, and the

best foundation for the study of grammar in general. But, as the general

principles of grammar are common to all languages, and as the only

successful method of learning them, is, to commit to memory the definitions

and rules which embrace them, it is reasonable to suppose that the language

most intelligible to the learner, is the most suitable for the commencement

of his grammatical studies. A competent knowledge of English grammar is

also in itself a valuable attainment, which is within the easy reach of

many young persons whose situation in life debars them from the pursuit of

general literature.

28. The attention which has lately been given to the culture of the English

language, by some who, in the character of critics or lexicographers, have

laboured purposely to improve it, and by many others who, in various

branches of knowledge, have tastefully adorned it with the works of their

genius, has in a great measure redeemed it from that contempt in which it

was formerly held in the halls of learning. But, as I have before

suggested, it does not yet appear to be sufficiently attended to in the

course of what is called a \_liberal education\_. Compared with, other

languages, the English exhibits both excellences and defects; but its

flexibility, or power of accommodation to the tastes of different writers,

is great; and when it is used with that mastership which belongs to

learning and genius, it must be acknowledged there are few, if any, to

which it ought on the whole to be considered inferior. But above all, it is

\_our own\_; and, whatever we may know or think of other tongues, it can

never be either patriotic or wise, for the learned men of the United States

or of England to pride themselves chiefly upon them.

29. Our language is worthy to be assiduously studied by all who reside

where it is spoken, and who have the means and the opportunity to become

critically acquainted with it. To every such student it is vastly more

important to be able to speak and write well in English, than to be

distinguished for proficiency in the learned languages and yet ignorant of

his own. It is certain that many from whom better things might be expected,

are found miserably deficient in this respect. And their neglect of so

desirable an accomplishment is the more remarkable and the more censurable

on account of the facility with which those who are acquainted with the

ancient languages may attain to excellence in their English style.

"Whatever the advantages or defects of the English language be, as it is

our own language, it deserves a high degree of our study and attention. \* \*

\* Whatever knowledge may be acquired by the study of other languages, it

can never be communicated with advantage, unless by such as can write and

speak their own language well."--DR. BLAIR: \_Rhetoric\_, Lect. ix, p. 91.

30. I am not of opinion that it is expedient to press this study to much

extent, if at all, on those whom poverty or incapacity may have destined to

situations in which they will never hear or think of it afterwards. The

course of nature cannot be controlled; and fortune does not permit us to

prescribe the same course of discipline for all. To speak the language

which they have learned without study, and to read and write for the most

common purposes of life, may be education enough for those who can be

raised no higher. But it must be the desire of every benevolent and

intelligent man, to see the advantages of literary, as well as of moral

culture, extended as far as possible among the people. And it is manifest,

that in proportion as the precepts of the divine Redeemer are obeyed by the

nations that profess his name, will all distinctions arising merely from

the inequality of fortune be lessened or done away, and better

opportunities be offered for the children of indigence to adorn themselves

with the treasures of knowledge.

31. We may not be able to effect all that is desirable; but, favoured as

our country is, with great facilities for carrying forward the work of

improvement, in every thing which can contribute to national glory and

prosperity, I would, in conclusion of this topic, submit--that a critical

knowledge of our common language is a subject worthy of the particular

attention of all who have the genius and the opportunity to attain

it;--that on the purity and propriety with which American authors write

this language, the reputation of our national literature greatly

depends;--that in the preservation of it from all changes which ignorance

may admit or affectation invent, we ought to unite as having one common

interest;--that a fixed and settled orthography is of great importance, as

a means of preserving the etymology, history, and identity of words;--that

a grammar freed from errors and defects, and embracing a complete code of

definitions and illustrations, rules and exercises, is of primary

importance to every student and a great aid to teachers;--that as the vices

of speech as well as of manners are contagious, it becomes those who have

the care of youth, to be masters of the language in its purity and

elegance, and to avoid as much as possible every thing that is

reprehensible either in thought or expression.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE BEST METHOD OF TEACHING GRAMMAR.

"Quomodo differunt grammaticus et grammatista? Grammaticus est qui

diligenter, acutè, scienterque possit aut dicere aut scribere, et poetas

enarrare: idem literatus dicitur. Grammatista est qui barbaris literis

obstrepit, cui abusus pro usu est; Græcis Latinam dat etymologiam, et totus

in nugis est: Latinè dicitur literator."--DESPAUTER. \_Synt.\_, fol. 1.

1. It is hardly to be supposed that any person can have a very clear

conviction of the best method of doing a thing, who shall not at first have

acquired a pretty correct and adequate notion of the thing to be done. Arts

must be taught by artists; sciences, by learned men; and, if Grammar is the

science of words, the art of writing and speaking well, the best speakers

and writers will be the best teachers of it, if they choose to direct their

attention to so humble an employment. For, without disparagement of the

many worthy men whom choice or necessity has made schoolmasters, it may be

admitted that the low estimation in which school-keeping is commonly held,

does mostly exclude from it the first order of talents, and the highest

acquirements of scholarship. It is one strong proof of this, that we have

heretofore been content to receive our digests of English grammar, either

from men who had had no practical experience in the labours of a

school-room, or from miserable modifiers and abridgers, destitute alike of

learning and of industry, of judgement and of skill.

2. But, to have a correct and adequate notion of English grammar, and of

the best method of learning or teaching it, is no light attainment. The

critical knowledge of this subject lies in no narrow circle of observation;

nor are there any precise limits to possible improvement. The simple

definition in which the general idea of the art is embraced, "Grammar is

the art of writing and speaking correctly," however useful in order to fix

the learner's conception, can scarcely give him a better knowledge of the

thing itself, than he would have of the art of painting, when he had

learned from Dr. Webster, that it is "the art of representing to the eye,

by means of figures and colors, any object of sight, and sometimes emotions

of the mind." The first would no more enable him to write a sonnet, than

the second, to take his master's likeness. The force of this remark extends

to all the technical divisions, definitions, rules, and arrangements of

grammar; the learner may commit them all to memory, and know but very

little about the art.

3. This fact, too frequently illustrated in

practice, has been made the basis of the strongest argument ever raised

against the study of grammar; and has been particularly urged against the

ordinary technical method of teaching it, as if the whole of that laborious

process were useless. It has led some men, even of the highest talents, to

doubt the expediency of that method, under any circumstances, and either to

discountenance the whole matter, or invent other schemes by which they

hoped to be more successful. The utter futility of the old accidence has

been inferred from it, and urged, even in some well-written books, with all

the plausibility of a fair and legitimate deduction. The hardships of

children, compelled to learn what they did not understand, have been

bewailed in prefaces and reviews; incredible things boasted by literary

jugglers, have been believed by men of sense; and the sympathies of nature,

with accumulated prejudices, have been excited against that method of

teaching grammar, which after all will be found in experience to be at once

the easiest, the shortest, and the best. I mean, essentially, the ancient

positive method, which aims directly at the inculcation of principles.

4. It has been already admitted, that definitions and rules committed to

memory and not reduced to practice, will never enable any one to speak and

write correctly. But it does not follow, that to study grammar by learning

its principles, or to teach it technically by formal lessons, is of no real

utility. Surely not. For the same admission must be made with respect to

the definitions and rules of every practical science in the world; and the

technology of grammar is even more essential to a true knowledge of the

subject, than that of almost any other art. "To proceed upon principles at

first," says Dr. Barrow, "is the most compendious method of attaining every

branch of knowledge; and the truths impressed upon the mind in the years of

childhood, are ever afterwards the most firmly remembered, and the most

readily applied."--\_Essays\_, p. 84. Reading, as I have said, is a part of

grammar; and it is a part which must of course precede what is commonly

called in the schools the study of grammar. Any person who can read, can

learn from a book such simple facts as are within his comprehension; and we

have it on the authority of Dr. Adam, that, "The principles of grammar are

the first abstract truths which a young mind can comprehend."--\_Pref. to

Lat. Gram.\_, p. 4.

5. It is manifest, that, with respect to this branch of knowledge, the

duties of the teacher will vary considerably, according to the age and

attainments of his pupils, or according to each student's ability or

inclination to profit by his printed guide. The business lies partly

between the master and his scholar, and partly between the boy and his

book. Among these it may be partitioned variously, and of course unwisely;

for no general rule can precisely determine for all occasions what may be

expected from each. The deficiencies of any one of the three must either be

supplied by the extraordinary readiness of an other, or the attainment of

the purpose be proportionably imperfect. What one fails to do, must either

be done by an other, or left undone. After much observation, it seems to

me, that the most proper mode of treating this science in schools, is, to

throw the labour of its acquisition almost entirely upon the students; to

require from them very accurate rehearsals as the only condition on which

they shall be listened to; and to refer them to their books for the

information which they need, and in general for the solution of all their

doubts. But then the teacher must see that he does not set them to grope

their way through a wilderness of absurdities. He must know that they have

a book, which not only contains the requisite information, but arranges it

so that every item of it may be readily found. That knowledge may

reasonably be required at their recitations, which culpable negligence

alone could have prevented them from obtaining.

6. Most grammars, and especially those which are designed for the senior

class of students, to whom a well-written book is a sufficient instructor,

contain a large proportion of matter which is merely to be read by the

learner. This is commonly distinguished in type from those more important

doctrines which constitute the frame of the edifice. It is expected that

the latter will receive a greater degree of attention. The only successful

method of teaching grammar, is, to cause the principal definitions and

rules to be committed thoroughly to memory, that they may ever afterwards

be readily applied. Oral instruction may smoothe the way, and facilitate

the labour of the learner; but the notion of communicating a competent

knowledge of grammar without imposing this task, is disproved by universal

experience. Nor will it avail any thing for the student to rehearse

definitions and rules of which he makes no practical application. In

etymology and syntax, he should be alternately exercised in learning small

portions of his book, and then applying them in parsing, till the whole is

rendered familiar. To a good reader, the achievement will be neither great

nor difficult; and the exercise is well calculated to improve the memory

and strengthen all the faculties of the mind.

7. The objection drawn from the alleged inefficiency of this method, lies

solely against the practice of those teachers who disjoin the principles

and the exercises of the art; and who, either through ignorance or

negligence, impose only such tasks as leave the pupil to suppose, that the

committing to memory of definitions and rules, constitutes the whole

business of grammar.[56] Such a method is no less absurd in itself, than

contrary to the practice of the best teachers from the very origin of the

study. The epistle prefixed to King Henry's Grammar almost three centuries

ago, and the very sensible preface to the old British Grammar, an octavo

reprinted at Boston in 1784, give evidence enough that a better method of

teaching has long been known. Nay, in my opinion, the very best method

cannot be essentially different from that which has been longest in use,

and is probably most known. But there is everywhere ample room for

improvement. Perfection was never attained by the most learned of our

ancestors, nor is it found in any of our schemes. English grammar can be

better taught than it is now, or ever has been. Better scholarship would

naturally produce this improvement, and it is easy to suppose a race of

teachers more erudite and more zealous, than either we or they.

8. Where invention and discovery are precluded, there is little room for

novelty. I have not laboured to introduce a system of grammar essentially

new, but to improve the old and free it from abuses. The mode of

instruction here recommended is the result of long and successful

experience. There is nothing in it, which any person of common abilities

will find it difficult to understand or adopt. It is the plain didactic

method of definition and example, rule and praxis; which no man who means

to teach grammar well, will ever desert, with the hope of finding an other

more rational or more easy. This book itself will make any one a

grammarian, who will take the trouble to observe and practise what it

teaches; and even if some instructors should not adopt the readiest means

of making their pupils familiar with its contents, they will not fail to

instruct by it as effectually as they can by any other. A hope is also

indulged, that this work will be particularly useful to many who have

passed the ordinary period allotted to education. Whoever is acquainted

with the grammar of our language, so as to have some tolerable skill in

teaching it, will here find almost every thing that is true in his own

instructions, clearly embraced under its proper head, so as to be easy of

reference. And perhaps there are few, however learned, who, on a perusal of

the volume, would not be furnished with some important rules and facts

which had not before occurred to their own observation.

9. The greatest peculiarity of the method is, that it requires the pupil to

speak or write a great deal, and the teacher very little. But both should

constantly remember that grammar is the art of speaking and writing well;

an art which can no more be acquired without practice, than that of dancing

or swimming. And each should ever be careful to perform his part

handsomely--without drawling, omitting, stopping, hesitating, faltering,

miscalling, reiterating, stuttering, hurrying, slurring, mouthing,

misquoting, mispronouncing, or any of the thousand faults which render

utterance disagreeable and inelegant. It is the learner's diction that is

to be improved; and the system will be found well calculated to effect

that object; because it demands of him, not only to answer questions on

grammar, but also to make a prompt and practical application of what he has

just learned. If the class be tolerable readers, and have learned the art

of attention, it will not be necessary for the teacher to say much; and in

general he ought not to take up the time by so doing. He should, however,

carefully superintend their rehearsals; give the word to the next when any

one errs; and order the exercise in such a manner that either his own

voice, or the example of his best scholars, may gradually correct the ill

habits of the awkward, till all learn to recite with clearness,

understanding well what they say, and making it intelligible to others.

10. Without oral instruction and oral exercises, a correct habit of

speaking our language can never be acquired; but written rules, and

exercises in writing, are perhaps quite as necessary, for the formation of

a good style. All these should therefore be combined in our course of

English grammar. And, in order to accomplish two objects at once, the

written doctrines, or the definitions and rules of grammar, should statedly

be made the subject of a critical exercise in utterance; so that the boy

who is parsing a word, or correcting a sentence, in the hearing of others,

may impressively realize, that he is then and there exhibiting his own

skill or deficiency in oral discourse. Perfect forms of parsing and

correcting should be given him as models, with the understanding that the

text before him is his only guide to their right application. It should be

shown, that in parsing any particular word, or part of speech, there are

just so many things to be said of it, and no more, and that these are to be

said in the best manner: so that whoever tells fewer, omits something

requisite; whoever says more, inserts something irrelevant; and whoever

proceeds otherwise, either blunders in point of fact, or impairs the beauty

of the expression. I rely not upon what are called "\_Parsing Tables\_" but

upon the precise forms of expression which are given in the book for the

parsing of the several sorts of words. Because the questions, or abstract

directions, which constitute the common parsing tables, are less

intelligible to the learner than a practical example; and more time must

needs be consumed on them, in order to impress upon his memory the number

and the sequence of the facts to be stated.

11. If a pupil happen to be naturally timid, there should certainly be no

austerity of manner to embarrass his diffidence; for no one can speak well,

who feels afraid. But a far more common impediment to the true use of

speech, is carelessness. He who speaks before a school, in an exercise of

this kind, should be made to feel that he is bound by every consideration

of respect for himself, or for those who hear him, to proceed with his

explanation or rehearsal, in a ready, clear, and intelligible manner. It

should be strongly impressed upon him, that the grand object of the whole

business, is his own practical improvement; that a habit of speaking

clearly and agreeably, is itself one half of the great art of grammar; that

to be slow and awkward in parsing, is unpardonable negligence, and a

culpable waste of time; that to commit blunders in rehearsing grammar, is

to speak badly about the art of speaking well; that his recitations must be

limited to such things as he perfectly knows; that he must apply himself to

his book, till he can proceed without mistake; finally, that he must watch

and imitate the utterance of those who speak well, ever taking that for the

best manner, in which there are the fewest things that could be

\_mimicked\_.[57]

12. The exercise of parsing should be commenced immediately after the first

lesson of etymology--the lesson in which are contained the definitions of

the ten parts of speech; and should be carried on progressively, till it

embraces all the doctrines which are applicable to it. If it be performed

according to the order prescribed in the following work, it will soon make

the student perfectly familiar with all the primary definitions and rules

of grammar. It asks no aid from a dictionary, if the performer knows the

meaning of the words he is parsing; and very little from the teacher, if

the forms in the grammar have received any tolerable share of attention. It

requires just enough of thought to keep the mind attentive to what the

lips are uttering; while it advances by such easy gradations and constant

repetitions as leave the pupil utterly without excuse, if he does not know

what to say. Being neither wholly extemporaneous nor wholly rehearsed by

rote, it has more dignity than a school-boy's conversation, and more ease

than a formal recitation, or declamation; and is therefore an exercise well

calculated to induce a habit of uniting correctness with fluency in

ordinary speech--a species of elocution as valuable as any other.[58]

13. Thus would I unite the practice with the theory of grammar;

endeavouring to express its principles with all possible perspicuity,

purity, and propriety of diction; retaining, as necessary parts of the

subject, those technicalities which the pupil must needs learn in order to

understand the disquisitions of grammarians in general; adopting every

important feature of that system of doctrines which appears to have been

longest and most generally taught; rejecting the multitudinous errors and

inconsistencies with which unskillful hands have disgraced the science and

perplexed the schools; remodelling every ancient definition and rule which

it is possible to amend, in respect to style, or grammatical correctness;

supplying the numerous and great deficiencies with which the most

comprehensive treatises published by earlier writers, are chargeable;

adapting the code of instruction to the present state of English

literature, without giving countenance to any innovation not sanctioned by

reputable use; labouring at once to extend and to facilitate the study,

without forgetting the proper limits of the science, or debasing its style

by puerilities.

14. These general views, it is hoped, will be found to have been steadily

adhered to throughout the following work. The author has not deviated much

from the principles adopted in the most approved grammars already in use;

nor has he acted the part of a servile copyist. It was not his design to

introduce novelties, but to form a practical digest of established rules.

He has not laboured to subvert the general system of grammar, received from

time immemorial; but to improve upon it, in its present application to our

tongue. That which is excellent, may not be perfect; and amendment may be

desirable, where subversion would be ruinous. Believing that no theory can

better explain the principles of our language, and no contrivance afford

greater facilities to the student, the writer has in general adopted those

doctrines which are already best known; and has contented himself with

attempting little more than to supply the deficiencies of the system, and

to free it from the reproach of being itself ungrammatical. This indeed was

task enough; for, to him, all the performances of his predecessors seemed

meagre and greatly deficient, compared with what he thought needful to be

done. The scope of his labours has been, to define, dispose, and exemplify

those doctrines anew; and, with a scrupulous regard to the best usage, to

offer, on that authority, some further contributions to the stock of

grammatical knowledge.

15. Having devoted many years to studies of this nature, and being

conversant with most of the grammatical treatises already published, the

author conceived that the objects above referred to, might be better

effected than they had been in any work within his knowledge. And he

persuades himself, that, however this work may yet fall short of possible

completeness, the improvements here offered are neither few nor

inconsiderable. He does not mean to conceal in any degree his obligations

to others, or to indulge in censure without discrimination. He has no

disposition to depreciate the labours, or to detract from the merits, of

those who have written ably upon this topic. He has studiously endeavoured

to avail himself of all the light they have thrown upon the subject. With a

view to further improvements in the science, he has also resorted to the

original sources of grammatical knowledge, and has not only critically

considered what he has seen or heard of our vernacular tongue, but has

sought with some diligence the analogies of speech in the structure of

several other languages. If, therefore, the work now furnished be thought

worthy of preference, as exhibiting the best method of teaching grammar; he

trusts it will be because it deviates least from sound doctrine, while, by

fair criticism upon others, it best supplies the means of choosing

judiciously.

16. Of all methods of teaching grammar, that which has come nearest to what

is recommended above, has doubtless been the most successful; and whatever

objections may have been raised against it, it will probably be found on

examination to be the most analogous to nature. It is analytic in respect

to the doctrines of grammar, synthetic in respect to the practice, and

logical in respect to both. It assumes the language as an object which the

learner is capable of conceiving to be one whole; begins with the

classification of all its words, according to certain grand differences

which make the several parts of speech; then proceeds to divide further,

according to specific differences and qualities, till all the classes,

properties, and relations, of the words in any intelligible sentence,

become obvious and determinate: and he to whom these things are known, so

that he can see at a glance what is the construction of each word, and

whether it is right or not, is a good grammarian. The disposition of the

human mind to generalize the objects of thought, and to follow broad

analogies in the use of words, discovers itself early, and seems to be an

inherent principle of our nature. Hence, in the language of children and

illiterate people, many words are regularly inflected even in opposition to

the most common usage.

17. It has unfortunately become fashionable to inveigh against the

necessary labour of learning by heart the essential principles of grammar,

as a useless and intolerable drudgery. And this notion, with the vain hope

of effecting the same purpose in an easier way, is giving countenance to

modes of teaching well calculated to make superficial scholars. When those

principles are properly defined, disposed, and exemplified, the labour of

learning them is far less than has been represented; and the habits of

application induced by such a method of studying grammar, are of the utmost

importance to the learner. Experience shows, that the task may be achieved

during the years of childhood; and that, by an early habit of study, the

memory is so improved, as to render those exercises easy and familiar,

which, at a later period, would be found very difficult and irksome. Upon

this plan, and perhaps upon every other, some words will be learned before

the ideas represented by them are fully comprehended, or the things spoken

of are fully understood. But this seems necessarily to arise from the order

of nature in the development of the mental faculties; and an acquisition

cannot be lightly esteemed, which has signally augmented and improved that

faculty on which the pupil's future progress in knowledge depends.

18. The memory, indeed, should never be cultivated at the expense of the

understanding; as is the case, when the former is tasked with ill-devised

lessons by which the latter is misled and bewildered. But truth, whether

fully comprehended or not, has no perplexing inconsistencies. And it is

manifest that that which does not in some respect surpass the

understanding, can never enlighten it--can never awaken the spirit of

inquiry or satisfy research. How often have men of observation profited by

the remembrance of words which, at the time they heard them, they did not

"\_perfectly understand!\_" We never study any thing of which we imagine our

knowledge to be perfect. To learn, and, to understand, are, with respect to

any science or art, one and the same thing. With respect to difficult or

unintelligible phraseology alone, are they different. He who by study has

once stored his memory with the sound and appropriate language of any

important doctrine, can never, without some folly or conceit akin to

madness, repent of the acquisition. Milton, in his academy, professed to

teach things rather than words; and many others have made plausible

profession of the same thing since. But it does not appear, that even in

the hands of Milton, the attempt was crowned with any remarkable success.

See \_Dr. Barrow's Essays\_, p. 85.

19. The vain pretensions of several

modern simplifiers, contrivers of machines, charts, tables, diagrams,

vincula, pictures, dialogues, familiar lectures, ocular analyses, tabular

compendiums, inductive exercises, productive systems, intellectual methods,

and various new theories, for the purpose of teaching grammar, may serve to

deceive the ignorant, to amuse the visionary, and to excite the admiration

of the credulous; but none of these things has any favourable relation to

that improvement which may justly be boasted as having taken place within

the memory of the present generation. The definitions and rules which

constitute the doctrines of grammar, may be variously expressed, arranged,

illustrated, and applied; and in the expression, arrangement, illustration,

and application of them, there may be room for some amendment; but no

contrivance can ever relieve the pupil from the necessity of committing

them thoroughly to memory. The experience of all antiquity is added to our

own, in confirmation of this; and the judicious teacher, though he will not

shut his eyes to a real improvement, will be cautious of renouncing the

practical lessons of hoary experience, for the futile notions of a vain

projector.

20. Some have been beguiled with the idea, that great proficiency in

grammar was to be made by means of a certain fanciful method of

\_induction.\_ But if the scheme does not communicate to those who are

instructed by it, a better knowledge of grammar than the contrivers

themselves seem to have possessed, it will be found of little use.[59] By

the happy method of Bacon, to lead philosophy into the common walks of

life, into the ordinary business and language of men, is to improve the

condition of humanity; but, in teaching grammar, to desert the plain

didactic method of definition and example, rule and praxis, and pretend to

lead children by philosophic induction into a knowledge of words, is to

throw down the ladder of learning, that boys may imagine themselves to

ascend it, while they are merely stilting over the low level upon which its

fragments are cast.

21. The chief argument of these inductive grammarians is founded on the

principle, that children cannot be instructed by means of any words which

they do not perfectly understand. If this principle were strictly true,

children could never be instructed by words at all. For no child ever fully

understands a word the first time he hears or sees it; and it is rather by

frequent repetition and use, than by any other process, that the meaning of

words is commonly learned. Hence most people make use of many terms which

they cannot very accurately explain, just as they do of many \_things\_, the

real nature of which they do not comprehend. The first perception we have

of any word, or other thing, when presented to the ear or the eye, gives us

some knowledge of it. So, to the signs of thought, as older persons use

them, we soon attach some notion of what is meant; and the difference

between this knowledge, and that which we call an understanding of the word

or thing, is, for the most part, only in degree. Definitions and

explanations are doubtless highly useful, but induction is not definition,

and an understanding of words may be acquired without either; else no man

could ever have made a dictionary. But, granting the principle to be true,

it makes nothing for this puerile method of induction; because the regular

process by definitions and examples is both shorter and easier, as well as

more effectual. In a word, this whole scheme of inductive grammar is

nothing else than a series of \_leading\_ questions and \_manufactured\_

answers; the former being generally as unfair as the latter are silly. It

is a remarkable tissue of ill-laid premises and of forced illogical

sequences.

22. Of a similar character is a certain work, entitled, "English Grammar on

the \_Productive System\_: a method of instruction recently adopted in

Germany and Switzerland." It is a work which certainly will be

"\_productive\_" of no good to any body but the author and his publishers.

The book is as destitute of taste, as of method; of authority, as of

originality. It commences with "the \_inductive\_ process," and after forty

pages of such matter as is described above, becomes a "\_productive\_

system," by means of a misnamed "RECAPITULATION;" which jumbles together

the etymology and the syntax of the language, through seventy-six pages

more. It is then made still more "\_productive\_" by the appropriation of a

like space to a reprint of Murray's Syntax and Exercises, under the

inappropriate title, "GENERAL OBSERVATIONS." To Prosody, including

punctuation and the use of capitals, there are allotted six pages, at the

end; and to Orthography, four lines, in the middle of the volume! (See p.

41.) It is but just, to regard the \_title\_ of this book, as being at once a

libel and a lie; a libel upon the learning and good sense of

Woodbridge;[60] and a practical lie, as conveying a false notion of the

origin of what the volume contains.

23. What there is in Germany or Switzerland, that bears \_any resemblance\_

to this misnamed system of English Grammar, remains to be shown. It would

be prodigal of the reader's time, and inconsistent with the studied brevity

of this work, to expose the fallacy of what is pretended in regard to the

origin of this new method. Suffice it to say, that the anonymous and

questionable account of the "Productive System of Instruction," which the

author has borrowed from a "valuable periodical," to save himself the

trouble of writing a preface, and, as he says, to "\_assist\_ [the reader] in

forming an opinion of the comparative merits of \_the system\_" is not only

destitute of all authority, but is totally irrelevant, except to the

whimsical \_name\_ of his book. If every word of it be true, it is

insufficient to give us even the slightest reason to suppose, that any

thing analogous to his production ever had existence in either of those

countries; and yet it is set forth on purpose to convey the idea that such

a system "\_now predominates\_" in the schools of both. (See \_Pref.\_, p. 5.)

The infidel \_Neef\_, whose new method of education has been tried in our

country, and with its promulgator forgot, was an accredited disciple of

this boasted "productive school;" a zealous coadjutor with Pestalozzi

himself, from whose halls he emanated to "teach the offspring of a free

people"--to teach them the nature of things sensible, and a contempt for

all the wisdom of \_books\_. And what similarity is there between his method

of teaching and that of \_Roswell C. Smith\_, except their pretence to a

common parentage, and that both are worthless?

24. The success of Smith's Inductive and Productive Grammars, and the fame

perhaps of a certain "Grammar in Familiar Lectures," produced in 1836 a

rival work from the hands of a gentleman in New Hampshire, entitled, "An

Analytical Grammar of the English Language, embracing the \_Inductive and

Productive Methods of Teaching\_, with \_Familiar Explanations in the Lecture

Style\_" &c. This is a fair-looking duodecimo volume of three hundred pages,

the character and pretensions of which, if they could be clearly stated,

would throw further light upon the two fallacious schemes of teaching

mentioned above. For the writer says, "This grammar professes \_to combine\_

both the \_Inductive\_ and \_Productive\_ methods of imparting instruction, of

which much has been said within a few years \_past\_"--\_Preface\_, p. iv. And

again: "The inductive and productive methods of instruction contain the

essence of modern improvements."--\_Gram.\_, p. 139. In what these modern

improvements consist, he does not inform us; but, it will be seen, that he

himself claims the \_copyright\_ of \_all\_ the improvements which he allows to

\_English grammar\_ since the appearance of Murray in 1795. More than two

hundred pretenders to such improvements, appear however within the time;

nor is the grammarian of Holdgate the least positive of the claimants. This

new purveyor for the public taste, dislikes the catering of his

predecessor, who poached in the fields of Murray; and, with a tacit censure

upon \_his productions\_, has \_honestly bought\_ the rareties which he has

served up. In this he has the advantage. He is a better writer too than

some who make grammars; though no adept at composition, and a total

stranger to method. To call his work a "\_system\_" is a palpable misnomer;

to tell what it is, an impossibility. It is a grammatical chaos, bearing

such a resemblance to Smith's or Kirkham's as one mass of confusion

naturally bears to an other, yet differing from both in almost every thing

that looks like order in any of the three.

25. The claimant of the combination says, "this new system of English

grammar now offered to the public, embraces \_the principles\_ of a

'Systematic Introduction to English Grammar,' by John L. Parkhurst; and the

\_present author\_ is indebted to Mr. Parkhurst for a knowledge of \_the

manner\_ of applying the principles involved in \_his peculiar method\_ of

teaching grammatical science. He is also under obligations to Mr.

Parkhurst for many useful hints received several years since while under

his instruction.--The \_copy right\_ of Parkhurst's Grammar has been

purchased by the writer of this, who alone is responsible for the present

application of \_its definitions.\_ Parkhurst's Systematic Introduction to

English Grammar has passed through two editions, and is \_the first improved

system\_ of English grammar that has appeared before the public \_since the

first introduction\_ of Lindley Murray's English Grammar."--\_Sanborn's

Gram., Preface\_, p. iii. What, then, is "THE PRODUCTIVE SYSTEM?" and with

whom did it originate? The thousands of gross blunders committed by its

professors, prove at least that it is no system of writing grammatically;

and, whether it originated with Parkhurst or with Pestalozzi, with Sanborn

or with Smith, as it is confessedly a method but "recently adopted," and,

so far as appears, never fairly tested, so is it a method that needs only

to be \_known\_, to be immediately and forever exploded.

26. The best instruction is that which ultimately gives the greatest

facility and skill in practice; and grammar is best taught by that process

which brings its doctrines most directly home to the habits as well as to

the thoughts of the pupil--which the most effectually conquers inattention,

and leaves the deepest impress of shame upon blundering ignorance. In the

language of some men, there is a vividness, an energy, a power of

expression, which penetrates even the soul of dullness, and leaves an

impression both of words unknown and of sentiments unfelt before. Such men

can teach; but he who kindly or indolently accommodates himself to

ignorance, shall never be greatly instrumental in removing it. "The

colloquial barbarisms of boys," says Dr. Barrow, "should never be suffered

to pass without notice and censure. Provincial tones and accents, and all

defects in articulation, should be corrected whenever they are heard; lest

they grow into established habits, unknown, from their familiarity, to him

who is guilty of them, and adopted by others, from the imitation of his

manner, or their respect for his authority."--\_Barrow's Essays on

Education\_, p. 88.

27. In the whole range of school exercises, there is none of greater

importance than that of parsing; and yet perhaps there is none which is, in

general, more defectively conducted. Scarcely less useful, as a means of

instruction, is the practice of correcting false syntax orally, by regular

and logical forms of argument; nor does this appear to have been more ably

directed towards the purposes of discipline. There is so much to be done,

in order to effect what is desirable in the management of these things; and

so little prospect that education will ever be generally raised to a just

appreciation of that study which, more than all others, forms the mind to

habits of correct thinking; that, in reflecting upon the state of the

science at the present time, and upon the means of its improvement, the

author cannot but sympathize, in some degree, with the sadness of the

learned Sanctius; who tells us, that he had "always lamented, and often

with tears, that while other branches of learning were excellently taught,

grammar, which is the foundation of all others, lay so much neglected, and

that for this neglect there seemed to be no adequate remedy."--\_Pref. to

Minerva\_. The grammatical use of language is in sweet alliance with the

moral; and a similar regret seems to have prompted the following

exclamation of the Christian poet:

"Sacred Interpreter of human thought,

How few respect or use thee as they ought!"--COWPER.

28. No directions, either oral or written, can ever enable the heedless and

the unthinking to speak or write well. That must indeed be an admirable

book, which can attract levity to sober reflection, teach thoughtlessness

the true meaning of words, raise vulgarity from its fondness for low

examples, awaken the spirit which attains to excellency of speech, and

cause grammatical exercises to be skillfully managed, where teachers

themselves are so often lamentably deficient in them. Yet something may be

effected by means of better books, if better can be introduced. And what

withstands?--Whatever there is of ignorance or error in relation to the

premises. And is it arrogant to say there is much? Alas! in regard to this,

as well as to many a weightier matter, one may too truly affirm, \_Multa non

sunt sicut multis videntur\_--Many things are not as they seem to many.

Common errors are apt to conceal themselves from the common mind; and the

appeal to reason and just authority is often frustrated, because a wrong

head defies both. But, apart from this, there are difficulties:

multiplicity perplexes choice; inconvenience attends change; improvement

requires effort; conflicting theories demand examination; the principles of

the science are unprofitably disputed; the end is often divorced from the

means; and much that belies the title, has been published under the name.

29. It is certain, that the printed formularies most commonly furnished for

the important exercises of parsing and correcting, are either so awkwardly

written or so negligently followed, as to make grammar, in the mouths of

our juvenile orators, little else than a crude and faltering jargon. Murray

evidently intended that his book of exercises should be constantly used

with his grammar; but he made the examples in the former so dull and

prolix, that few learners, if any, have ever gone through the series

agreeably to his direction. The publishing of them in a separate volume,

has probably given rise to the absurd practice of endeavouring to teach his

grammar without them. The forms of parsing and correcting which this author

furnishes, are also misplaced; and when found by the learner, are of little

use. They are so verbose, awkward, irregular, and deficient, that the pupil

must be either a dull boy or utterly ignorant of grammar, if he cannot

express the facts extemporaneously in better English. They are also very

meagre as a whole, and altogether inadequate to their purpose; many things

that frequently occur in the language, not being at all exemplified in

them, or even explained in the grammar itself. When we consider how

exceedingly important it is, that the business of a school should proceed

without loss of time, and that, in the oral exercises here spoken of, each

pupil should go through his part promptly, clearly, correctly, and fully,

we cannot think it a light objection that these forms, so often to be

repeated, are so badly written. Nor does the objection lie against this

writer only: "\_Ab uno disce omnes\_." But the reader may demand some

illustrations.[61]

30. First--from his etymological parsing: "O Virtue! how amiable thou art!"

Here his form for the word \_Virtue\_ is--"\_Virtue\_ is a \_common substantive,

of\_ the \_neuter\_ gender, \_of the third\_ person, \_in the\_ singular number,

\_and the\_ nominative case."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. 2. It

should have been--"\_Virtue\_ is a common \_noun\_, personified \_proper\_, of

the \_second\_ person, singular number, \_feminine\_ gender, and nominative

case." And then the definitions of all these things should have followed in

regular numerical order. He gives the class of this noun wrong, for virtue

addressed becomes an individual; he gives the gender wrong, and in direct

contradiction to what he says of the word in his section on gender; he

gives the person wrong, as may be seen by the pronoun \_thou\_, which

represents it; he repeats the definite article three times unnecessarily,

and inserts two needless prepositions, making them different where the

relation is precisely the same: and all this, in a sentence of two lines,

to tell the properties of the noun \_Virtue!\_--But further: in etymological

parsing, the definitions explaining the properties of the parts of speech,

ought to be regularly and rapidly rehearsed by the pupil, till all of them

become perfectly familiar; and till he can discern, with the quickness of

thought, what alone will be true for the full description of any word in

any intelligible sentence. All these the author omits; and, on account of

this omission, his whole method of etymological parsing is, miserably

deficient.[62]

31. Secondly--from his syntactical parsing: "\_Vice\_ degrades us." Here his

form for the word \_Vice\_ is--"\_Vice\_ is a common substantive, \_of\_ the

third person, \_in the\_ singular number, \_and the\_ nominative

case."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. 9. Now, when the learner is told

that this is the syntactical parsing of a noun, and the other the

etymological, he will of course conclude, that to advance from the

etymology to the syntax of this part of speech, is merely, \_to omit the

gender\_--this being the only difference between the two forms. But even

this difference had no other origin than the compiler's carelessness in

preparing his octavo book of exercises--the gender being inserted in the

duodecimo. And what then? Is the syntactical parsing of a noun to be

precisely the same as the etymological? Never. But Murray, and all who

admire and follow his work, are content to parse many words by

halves--making, or pretending to make, a necessary distinction, and yet

often omitting, in both parts of the exercise, every thing which

constitutes the difference. He should here have said--"\_Vice\_ is a common

noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative

case: and is the subject of \_degrades\_; according to the rule which says,

'A noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a verb, must be in the

nominative case.' Because the meaning is--\_vice degrades\_." This is the

whole description of the word, with its construction; and to say less, is

to leave the matter unfinished.

32. Thirdly--from his "Mode of verbally correcting erroneous sentences:"

Take his first example: "The man is prudent which speaks little." (How far

silence is prudence, depends upon circumstances: I waive that question.)

The learner is here taught to say, "This sentence is incorrect; because

\_which\_ is a pronoun \_of the neuter gender, and does not agree in gender\_

with its antecedent \_man\_, which is masculine. But a pronoun should agree

with its antecedent in gender, &c. according to the fifth rule of syntax.

\_Which\_ should \_therefore\_ be \_who\_, a relative pronoun, agreeing with its

antecedent \_man\_; and the sentence should stand thus: 'The man is prudent

\_who\_ speaks little.'"--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 18;

\_Exercises\_, 12mo, p. xii. Again: "'After I visited Europe, I returned to

America.' This sentence," says Murray, "\_is not correct\_; because the verb

\_visited\_ is in the imperfect tense, and yet used here to express an

action, not only past, but prior to the time referred to by the verb

\_returned\_, to which it relates. By the thirteenth rule of syntax, when

verbs are used that, in point of time, relate to each other, the order of

time should be observed. The imperfect tense \_visited\_ should therefore

have been \_had visited\_, in the pluperfect tense, representing the action

of \_visiting\_, not only as past, but also as prior to the time of

\_returning\_. \_The sentence corrected would stand thus\_: 'After I \_had

visited\_ Europe, I returned to America.'"--\_Gr.\_, ii, p. 19; \_and Ex.\_

12mo, p. xii. These are the first two examples of Murray's verbal

corrections, and the only ones retained by Alger, in his \_improved,

recopy-righted edition\_ of Murray's Exercises. Yet, in each of them, is the

argumentation palpably false! In the former, truly, \_which\_ should be

\_who\_; but not because \_which\_ is "of the \_neuter gender\_;" but because the

application of that relative to \_persons\_, is now nearly obsolete. Can any

grammarian forget that, in speaking of brute animals, male or female, we

commonly use \_which\_, and never \_who\_? But if \_which\_ must needs be

\_neuter\_, the world is wrong in this.--As for the latter example, it is

right as it stands; and the correction is, in some sort, tautological. The

conjunctive adverb \_after\_ makes one of the actions subsequent to the

other, and gives to the \_visiting\_ all the priority that is signified by

the pluperfect tense. "\_After\_ I \_visited\_ Europe," is equivalent to

"\_When\_ I \_had visited\_ Europe." The whole argument is therefore void.[63]

33. These few brief illustrations, out of thousands that might be adduced

in proof of the faultiness of the common manuals, the author has

reluctantly introduced, to show that even in the most popular books, with

all the pretended improvements of revisers, the grammar of our language has

never been treated with that care and ability which its importance demands.

It is hardly to be supposed that men unused to a teacher's duties, can be

qualified to compose such books as will most facilitate his labours.

Practice is a better pilot than theory. And while, in respect to grammar,

the consciousness of failure is constantly inducing changes from one system

to another, and almost daily giving birth to new expedients as constantly

to end in the same disappointment; perhaps the practical instructions of an

experienced teacher, long and assiduously devoted to the study, may

approve themselves to many, as seasonably supplying the aid and guidance

which they require.

34. From the doctrines of grammar, novelty is rigidly excluded. They

consist of details to which taste can lend no charm, and genius no

embellishment. A writer may express them with neatness and

perspicuity--their importance alone can commend them to notice. Yet, in

drawing his illustrations from the stores of literature, the grammarian may

select some gems of thought, which will fasten on the memory a worthy

sentiment, or relieve the dullness of minute instruction. Such examples

have been taken from various authors, and interspersed through the

following pages. The moral effect of early lessons being a point of the

utmost importance, it is especially incumbent on all those who are

endeavouring to confer the benefits of intellectual culture, to guard

against the admission or the inculcation of any principle which may have an

improper tendency, and be ultimately prejudicial to those whom they

instruct. In preparing this treatise for publication, the author has been

solicitous to avoid every thing that could be offensive to the most

delicate and scrupulous reader; and of the several thousands of quotations

introduced for the illustration or application of the principles of the

science, he trusts that the greater part will be considered valuable on

account of the sentiments they contain.

35. The nature of the subject almost entirely precludes invention. The

author has, however, aimed at that kind and degree of originality which are

to be commended in works of this sort. What these are, according to his

view, he has sufficiently explained in a preceding chapter. And, though he

has taken the liberty of a grammarian, to think for himself and write in a

style of his own, he trusts it will be evident that few have excelled him

in diligence of research, or have followed more implicitly the dictates of

that authority which gives law to language. In criticising the critics and

grammatists of the schools, he has taken them upon their own

ground--showing their errors, for the most part, in contrast with the

common principles which they themselves have taught; and has hoped to

escape censure, in his turn, not by sheltering himself under the name of a

popular master, but by a diligence which should secure to his writings at

least the humble merit of self-consistency. His progress in composing this

work has been slow, and not unattended with labour and difficulty. Amidst

the contrarieties of opinion, that appear in the various treatises already

before the public, and the perplexities inseparable from so complicated a

subject, he has, after deliberate consideration, adopted those views and

explanations which appeared to him the least liable to objection, and the

most compatible with his ultimate object--the production of a work which

should show, both extensively and accurately, what is, and what is not,

good English.

36. The great art of meritorious authorship lies chiefly in the

condensation of much valuable thought into few words. Although the author

has here allowed himself ampler room than before, he has still been no less

careful to store it with such information as he trusted would prevent the

ingenious reader from wishing its compass less. He has compressed into this

volume the most essential parts of a mass of materials in comparison with

which the book is still exceedingly small. The effort to do this, has

greatly multiplied his own labour and long delayed the promised

publication; but in proportion as this object has been reached, the time

and patience of the student must have been saved. Adequate compensation for

this long toil, has never been expected. Whether from this performance any

profit shall accrue to the author or not, is a matter of little

consequence; he has neither written for bread, nor on the credit of its

proceeds built castles in the air. His ambition was, to make an acceptable

book, by which the higher class of students might be thoroughly instructed,

and in which the eyes of the critical would find little to condemn. He is

too well versed in the history of his theme, too well aware of the

precarious fortune of authors, to indulge in any confident anticipations of

extraordinary success: yet he will not deny that his hopes are large, being

conscious of having cherished them with a liberality of feeling which

cannot fear disappointment. In this temper he would invite the reader to a

thorough perusal of these pages.

37. A grammar should speak for itself. In a work of this nature, every word

or tittle which does not recommend the performance to the understanding and

taste of the skillful, is, so far as it goes, a certificate against it. Yet

if some small errors shall have escaped detection, let it be recollected

that it is almost impossible to compose and print, with perfect accuracy, a

work of this size, in which so many little things should be observed,

remembered, and made exactly to correspond. There is no human vigilance

which multiplicity may not sometimes baffle, and minuteness sometimes

elude. To most persons grammar seems a dry and difficult subject; but there

is a disposition of mind, to which what is arduous, is for that very reason

alluring. "Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius," says Cicero; "The more

difficult, the more honourable." The merit of casting up a high-way in a

rugged land, is proportionate not merely to the utility of the achievement,

but to the magnitude of the obstacles to be overcome. The difficulties

encountered in boyhood from the use of a miserable epitome and the deep

impression of a few mortifying blunders made in public, first gave the

author a fondness for grammar; circumstances having since favoured this

turn of his genius, he has voluntarily pursued the study, with an assiduity

which no man will ever imitate for the sake of pecuniary recompense.

CHAPTER X.

OF GRAMMATICAL DEFINITIONS.

"Scientiam autem nusquam esse censebant, nisi in animi motionibus atque

rationibus: quâ de causâ \_definitiones\_ rerum probabant, et has ad omnia,

de quibus disceptabatur, adhibebant."--CICERONIS \_Academica\_, Lib. i, 9.

1. "The first and highest philosophy," says Puffendorf, "is that which

delivers the most accurate and comprehensive \_definitions\_ of things." Had

all the writers on English grammar been adepts in this philosophy, there

would have been much less complaint of the difficulty and uncertainty of

the study. "It is easy," says Murray, "to advance plausible objections

against almost every definition, rule, and arrangement of

grammar."--\_Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 59. But, if this is true, as regards his, or

any other work, the reason, I am persuaded, is far less inherent in the

nature of the subject than many have supposed.[64] Objectionable

definitions and rules are but evidences of the ignorance and incapacity of

him who frames them. And if the science of grammar has been so unskillfully

treated that almost all its positions may be plausibly impugned, it is time

for some attempt at a reformation of the code. The language is before us,

and he who knows most about it, can best prescribe the rules which we ought

to observe in the use of it. But how can we expect children to deduce from

a few particulars an accurate notion of general principles and their

exceptions, where learned doctors have so often faltered? Let the abettors

of grammatical "\_induction\_" answer.

2. Nor let it be supposed a light

matter to prescribe with certainty the principles of grammar. For, what is

requisite to the performance? To know certainly, in the first place, what

is the \_best usage\_. Nor is this all. Sense and memory must be keen, and

tempered to retain their edge and hold, in spite of any difficulties which

the subject may present. To understand things exactly as they are; to

discern the differences by which they may be distinguished, and the

resemblances by which they ought to be classified; to know, through the

proper evidences of truth, that our ideas, or conceptions, are rightly

conformable to the nature, properties, and relations, of the objects of

which we think; to see how that which is complex may be resolved into its

elements, and that which is simple may enter into combination; to observe

how that which is consequent may be traced to its cause, and that which is

regular be taught by rule; to learn from the custom of speech the proper

connexion between words and ideas, so as to give to the former a just

application, to the latter an adequate expression, and to things a just

description; to have that penetration which discerns what terms, ideas, or

things, are definable, and therefore capable of being taught, and what must

be left to the teaching of nature: these are the essential qualifications

for him who would form good definitions; these are the elements of that

accuracy and comprehensiveness of thought, to which allusion has been made,

and which are characteristic of "the first and highest philosophy."

3. Again, with reference to the cultivation of the mind, I would add: To

observe accurately the appearances of things, and the significations of

words; to learn first principles first, and proceed onward in such a manner

that every new truth may help to enlighten and strengthen the

understanding; and thus to comprehend gradually, according to our capacity,

whatsoever may be brought within the scope of human intellect:--to do these

things, I say, is, to ascend by sure steps, so far as we may, from the

simplest elements of science--which, in fact, are our own, original,

undefinable notices of things--towards the very topmost height of human

wisdom and knowledge. The ancient saying, that truth lies hid, or in the

bottom of a well, must not be taken without qualification; for "the first

and highest philosophy" has many principles which even a child may

understand. These several suggestions, the first of which the Baron de

Puffendorf thought not unworthy to introduce his great work on the Law of

Nature and of Nations, the reader, if he please, may bear in mind, as he

peruses the following digest of the laws and usages of speech.

4. "Definitions," says Duncan, in his Elements of Logic, "are intended to

make known the meaning of words standing for \_complex ideas\_;[65] and were

we always careful to form those ideas exactly in our minds, and copy our

definitions from that appearance, much of the confusion and obscurity

complained of in languages might be prevented."--P. 70. Again he says: "The

writings of the mathematicians are a clear proof, how much the advancement

of human knowledge depends upon a right use of definitions."--P. 72.

Mathematical science has been supposed to be, in its own nature, that which

is best calculated to develop and strengthen the reasoning faculty; but, as

speech is emphatically \_the discourse of reason\_, I am persuaded, that had

the grammarians been equally clear and logical in their instructions, their

science would never have been accounted inferior in this respect. Grammar

is perhaps the most comprehensive of all studies; but it is chiefly owing

to the unskillfulness of instructors, and to the errors and defects of the

systems in use, that it is commonly regarded as the most dry and difficult.

5. "Poor Scaliger (who well knew what a definition should be) from his own

melancholy experience exclaimed--'\_Nihil infelicius grammatico

definitore!\_' Nothing is more unhappy than the grammatical

definer."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 238. Nor do our later teachers

appear to have been more fortunate in this matter. A majority of all the

definitions and rules contained in the great multitude of English grammars

which I have examined, are, in some respect or other, erroneous. The nature

of their multitudinous faults, I must in general leave to the discernment

of the reader, except the passages be such as may be suitably selected for

examples of false syntax. Enough, however, will be exhibited, in the course

of this volume, to make the foregoing allegation credible; and of the rest

a more accurate judgement may perhaps be formed, when they shall have been

compared with what this work will present as substitutes. The importance of

giving correct definitions to philological terms, and of stating with

perfect accuracy whatsoever is to be learned as doctrine, has never been

duly appreciated. The grand source of the disheartening difficulties

encountered by boys in the study of grammar, lies in their ignorance of the

meaning of words. This cause of embarrassment is not to be shunned and left

untouched; but, as far as possible, it ought to be removed. In teaching

grammar, or indeed any other science, we cannot avoid the use of many terms

to which young learners may have attached no ideas. Being little inclined

or accustomed to reflection, they often hear, read, or even rehearse from

memory, the plainest language that can be uttered, and yet have no very

distinct apprehension of what it means. What marvel then, that in a study

abounding with terms taken in a peculiar or technical sense, many of which,

in the common manuals, are either left undefined, or are explained but

loosely or erroneously, they should often be greatly puzzled, and sometimes

totally discouraged?

6. \_Simple ideas\_ are derived, not from teaching, but from sensation or

consciousness; but \_complex ideas\_, or the notions which we have of such

things as consist of various parts, or such as stand in any known

relations, are definable. A person can have no better definition of \_heat\_,

or of \_motion\_, than what he will naturally get by \_moving\_ towards a

\_fire\_. Not so of our complex or general ideas, which constitute science.

The proper objects of scientific instruction consist in those genuine

perceptions of pure mind, which form the true meaning of generic names, or

common nouns; and he who is properly qualified to teach, can for the most

part readily tell what should be understood by such words. But are not many

teachers too careless here? For instance: a boy commencing the process of

calculation, is first told, that, "Arithmetic is the art of computing by

numbers," which sentence he partly understands; but should he ask his

teacher, "What is a \_number\_, in arithmetic?" what answer will he get? Were

Goold Brown so asked, he would simply say, "\_A number, in arithmetic, is an

expression that tells how many\_;" for every expression that tells how many,

is a number in arithmetic, and nothing else is. But as no such definition

is contained in \_the books\_,[66] there are ten chances to one, that, simple

as the matter is, the readiest master you shall find, will give an

erroneous answer. Suppose the teacher should say, "That is a question which

I have not thought of; turn to your dictionary." The boy reads from Dr.

Webster: "NUMBER--the designation of a unit in reference to other units, or

in reckoning, counting, enumerating."--"Yes," replies the master, "that is

it; Dr. Webster is unrivalled in giving definitions." Now, has the boy been

instructed, or only puzzled? Can he conceive how the number \_five\_ can be a

\_unit\_? or how the word \_five\_, the figure 5, or the numeral letter V, is

"the designation of a \_unit\_?" He knows that each of these is a number, and

that the oral monosyllable \_five\_ is the same number, in an other form; but

is still as much at a loss for a proper answer to his question, as if he

had never seen either schoolmaster or dictionary. So is it with a vast

number of the simplest things in grammar.

7. Since what we denominate scientific terms, are seldom, if ever, such as

stand for ideas simple and undefinable; and since many of those which

represent general ideas, or classes of objects, may be made to stand for

more or fewer things, according to the author's notion of classification;

it is sufficiently manifest that the only process by which instruction can

effectually reach the understanding of the pupil and remove the

difficulties spoken of, is that of delivering accurate definitions. These

are requisite for the information and direction of the learner; and these

must be thoroughly impressed upon his mind, as the only means by which he

can know exactly how much and what he is to understand by our words. The

power which we possess, of making known all our complex or general ideas of

things by means of definitions, is a faculty wisely contrived in the nature

of language, for the increase and spread of science; and, in the hands of

the skillful, it is of vast avail to these ends. It is "the first and

highest philosophy," instructing mankind, to think clearly and speak

accurately; as well as to know definitely, in the unity and permanence of a

general nature, those things which never could be known or spoken of as the

individuals of an infinite and fleeting multitude.

8. And, without contradiction, the shortest and most successful way of

teaching the young mind to distinguish things according to their proper

differences, and to name or describe them aright, is, to tell in direct

terms what they severally are. Cicero intimates that all instruction

appealing to reason ought to proceed in this manner: "Omnis enim quse à

ratione suscipitur de re aliqua institutio, debet à \_definitione\_

proficisci, ut intelligatur quid sit id, de quo disputetur."--\_Off\_. Lib.

i, p. 4. Literally thus: "For all instruction which from reason is

undertaken concerning any thing, ought to proceed from a \_definition\_, that

it may be understood what the thing is, about which the speaker is

arguing." Little advantage, however, will be derived from any definition,

which is not, as Quintilian would have it, "Lucida et succincta rei

descriptio,"--"a clear and brief description of the thing."

9. Let it here be observed that scientific definitions are of \_things\_, and

not merely of \_words\_; or if equally of words \_and\_ things, they are rather

of nouns than of the other parts of speech. For a definition, in the proper

sense of the term, consists not in a mere change or explanation of the

verbal sign, but in a direct and true answer to the question, What is such

or such a thing? In respect to its extent, it must with equal exactness

include every thing which comes under the name, and exclude every thing

which does not come under the name: then will it perfectly serve the

purpose for which it is intended. To furnish such definitions, (as I have

suggested,) is work for those who are capable of great accuracy both of

thought and expression. Those who would qualify themselves for teaching any

particular branch of knowledge, should make it their first concern to

acquire clear and accurate ideas of all things that ought to be embraced in

their instructions. These ideas are to be gained, either by contemplation

upon the things themselves as they are presented naturally, or by the study

of those books in which they are rationally and clearly explained. Nor will

such study ever be irksome to him whose generous desire after knowledge, is

thus deservedly gratified.

10. But it must be understood, that although scientific definitions are

said to be \_of things\_, they are not copied immediately from the real

essence of the things, but are formed from the conceptions of the author's

mind concerning that essence. Hence, as Duncan justly remarks, "A mistaken

idea never fails to occasion a mistake also in the definition." Hence, too,

the common distinction of the logicians, between definitions of the \_name\_

and definitions of the \_thing\_, seems to have little or no foundation. The

former term they applied to those definitions which describe the objects of

pure intellection, such as triangles, and other geometrical figures; the

latter, to those which define objects actually existing in external nature.

The mathematical definitions, so noted for their certainty and

completeness, have been supposed to have some peculiar preëminence, as

belonging to the former class. But, in fact the idea of a triangle exists

as substantively in the mind, as that of a tree, if not indeed more so; and

if I define these two objects, my description will, in either case, be

equally a definition both of the name and of the thing; but in neither, is

it copied from any thing else than that notion which I have conceived, of

the common properties of all triangles or of all trees.

11. Infinitives, and some other terms not called nouns, may be taken

abstractly or substantively, so as to admit of what may be considered a

regular definition; thus the question, "What is it \_to read?\_" is nearly

the same as, "What is \_reading?\_" "What is it \_to be wise?\_" is little

different from, "What is \_wisdom?\_" and a true answer might be, in either

case, a true definition. Nor are those mere translations or explanations of

words, with which our dictionaries and vocabularies abound, to be dispensed

with in teaching: they prepare the student to read various authors with

facility, and furnish him with a better choice of terms, when he attempts

to write. And in making such choice, let him remember, that as affectation

of \_hard\_ words makes composition ridiculous, so the affectation of \_easy\_

and \_common\_ ones may make it unmanly. But not to digress. With respect to

grammar, we must sometimes content ourselves with such explications of its

customary terms, as cannot claim to be perfect definitions; for the most

common and familiar things are not always those which it is the most easy

to define. When Dr. Johnson was asked, "What is \_poetry\_?" he replied,

"Why, sir, it is easier to tell what it is not. We all know what \_light\_

is: but it is not easy \_to tell what it is\_."--\_Boswell's Life of Johnson\_,

Vol. iii, p. 402. This was thought by the biographer to have been well and

ingeniously said.

12. But whenever we encounter difficulties of this sort, it may be worth

while to seek for their \_cause\_. If we find it, the understanding is no

longer puzzled. Dr. Johnson seemed to his biographer, to show, by this

ready answer, the acuteness of his wit and discernment. But did not the wit

consist in adroitly excusing himself, by an illusory comparison? What

analogy is there between the things which he compares? Of the difficulty of

defining \_poetry\_, and the difficulty of defining \_light\_, the reasons are

as different as are the two things themselves, \_poetry\_ and \_light\_. The

former is something so various and complex that it is hard to distinguish

its essence from its accidents; the latter presents an idea so perfectly

simple and unique that all men conceive of it exactly in the same way,

while none can show wherein it essentially consists. But is it true, that,

"We all know \_what light is\_?" Is it not rather true, that we know nothing

at all about it, but what it is just as easy to tell as to think? We know

it is that reflexible medium which enables us to see; and this is

definition enough for all but the natively blind, to whom no definition

perhaps can ever convey an adequate notion of its use in respect to sight.

13. If a person cannot tell what a thing is, it is commonly considered to

be a fair inference, that he does not know. Will any grammarian say, "I

know well enough what the thing is, but I cannot tell?" Yet, taken upon

this common principle, the authors of our English grammars, (if in framing

their definitions they have not been grossly wanting to themselves in the

exercise of their own art,) may be charged, I think, with great ignorance,

or great indistinctness of apprehension; and that, too, in relation to many

things among the very simplest elements of their science. For example: Is

it not a disgrace to a man of letters, to be unable to tell accurately what

a letter is? Yet to say, with Lowth, Murray, Churchill, and a hundred

others of inferior name, that, "\_A letter\_ is \_the first principle\_ or

\_least part\_ of a word," is to utter what is neither good English nor true

doctrine. The two articles \_a\_ and \_the\_ are here inconsistent with each

other. "\_A\_ letter" is \_one\_ letter, \_any\_ letter; but "\_the first

principle\_ of a word" is, surely, not one or any principle taken

\_indefinitely\_. Equivocal as the phrase is, it must mean either \_some

particular principle\_, or some particular \_first\_ principle, of a word;

and, taken either way, the assertion is false. For it is manifest, that in

\_no sense\_ can we affirm of \_each\_ of the letters of a word, that it is

"\_the first principle\_" of that word. Take, for instance, the word \_man\_.

Is \_m\_ the first principle of this word? You may answer, "Yes; for it is

the first \_letter\_." Is \_a\_ the first principle? "No; it is the \_second\_."

But \_n\_ too is a letter; and is \_n\_ the first principle? "No; it is the

\_last\_!" This grammatical error might have been avoided by saying,

"\_Letters\_ are the first principles, or least parts, of words." But still

the definition would not be true, nor would it answer the question, What is

a letter? The true answer to which is: "A letter is an alphabetic

\_character\_, which commonly represents some elementary sound of human

articulation, or speech."

14. This true definition sufficiently

distinguishes letters from the marks used in punctuation, because the

latter are not alphabetic, and they represent silence, rather than sound;

and also from the Arabic figures used for numbers, because these are no

part of any alphabet, and they represent certain entire words, no one of

which consists only of one letter, or of a single element of articulation.

The same may be said of all the characters used for abbreviation; as, & for

\_and\_, $ for \_dollars\_, or the marks peculiar to mathematicians, to

astronomers, to druggists, &c. None of these are alphabetic, and they

represent significant words, and not single elementary sounds: it would be

great dullness, to assume that a word and an elementary sound are one and

the same thing. But the reader will observe that this definition embraces

\_no idea\_ contained in the faulty one to which I am objecting; neither

indeed could it, without a blunder. So wide from the mark is that notion of

a letter, which the popularity of Dr. Lowth and his copyists has made a

hundred-fold more common than any other![67] According to an other

erroneous definition given by these same gentlemen, "\_Words\_ are articulate

\_sounds\_, used by common consent, as signs of our ideas."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 22; \_Kirkham's\_, 20; \_Ingersoll's\_, 7; \_Alger's\_, 12;

\_Russell's\_, 7; \_Merchant's\_, 9; \_Fisk's\_, 11; \_Greenleaf's\_, 20; and many

others. See \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 6; from which almost all authors have taken

the notion, that words consist of "\_sounds\_" only. But letters are no

principles or parts of \_sounds\_ at all; unless you will either have visible

marks to be sounds, or the sign to be a principle or part of the thing

signified. Nor are they always principles or parts of \_words\_: we sometimes

write what is \_not a word\_; as when, by letters, we denote pronunciation

alone, or imitate brute voices. If words were formed of articulate sounds

only, they could not exist in books, or be in any wise known to the deaf

and dumb. These two primary definitions, then, are both false; and, taken

together, they involve the absurdity of dividing things acknowledged to be

indivisible. In utterance, we cannot divide consonants from their vowels;

on paper, we can. Hence letters are the least parts of written language

only; but the least parts of spoken words are syllables, and not letters.

Every definition of a consonant implies this.

15. They who cannot define a letter or a word, may be expected to err in

explaining other grammatical terms. In my opinion, nothing is well written,

that can possibly be misunderstood; and if any definition be likely to

\_suggest\_ a wrong idea, this alone is enough to condemn it: nor does it

justify the phraseology, to say, that a more reasonable construction can be

put upon it. By Murray and others, the young learner is told, that, "A

\_vowel\_ is an articulate \_sound\_, that can be perfectly \_uttered by

itself\_;" as if a vowel were nothing but a sound, and that a sort of echo,

which can \_utter itself\_; and next, that, "A \_consonant\_ is an articulate

\_sound\_, which cannot be perfectly uttered \_without the help of\_ a vowel."

Now, by their own showing, every letter is either a vowel or a consonant;

hence, according to these definitions, all the letters are articulate

\_sounds\_. And, if so, what is a "silent letter?" It is a \_silent articulate

sound!\_ Again: ask a boy, "What is a \_triphthong?\_" He answers in the words

of Murray, Weld, Pond, Smith, Adams, Kirkham, Merchant, Ingersoll, Bacon,

Alger, Worcester, and others: "A triphthong is the union of three vowels,

\_pronounced in like manner\_: as \_eau\_ in beau, \_iew\_ in view." He

accurately cites an entire paragraph from his grammar, but does he well

conceive how the three vowels in \_beau\_ or \_view\_ are "pronounced \_in like

manner?\_" Again: "A \_syllable\_ is a \_sound\_, either simple or \_compound\_,

pronounced by a single impulse of the voice."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

22. This definition resolves syllables into \_sounds\_; whereas their true

elements are \_letters\_. It also mistakes the participle \_compounded\_ for

the adjective \_compound\_; whereas the latter only is the true reverse of

\_simple\_. A \_compound sound\_ is a sound composed of others which may be

separated; a \_sound compounded\_ is properly that which is made an

ingredient with others, but which may itself be simple.

16. It is observable, that in their attempts to explain these prime

elements of grammar, Murray, and many others who have copied him, overlook

all \_written\_ language; whereas their very science itself took its origin,

name, and nature, from the invention of writing; and has consequently no

bearing upon any dialect which has not been written. Their definitions

absurdly resolve letters, vowels, consonants, syllables, and words, all

into \_sounds\_; as if none of these things had any existence on paper, or

any significance to those who read in silence. Hence, their explanations

of all these elements, as well as of many other things equally essential to

the study, are palpably erroneous. I attribute this to the carelessness

with which men have compiled or made up books of grammar; and that

carelessness to those various circumstances, already described, which have

left diligence in a grammarian no hope of praise or reward. Without

alluding here to my own books, no one being obliged to accuse himself, I

doubt whether we have any school grammar that is much less objectionable in

this respect, than Murray's; and yet I am greatly mistaken, if nine tenths

of all the definitions in Murray's system are not faulty. "It was this sort

of definitions, which made \_Scaliger\_ say, \_'Nihil infelicius definitore

grammatico\_.'"--See \_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 351; also \_Paragraph\_ 5th,

above.

17. Nor can this objection be neutralized by saying, it is a mere matter of

opinion--a mere prejudice originating in rivalry. For, though we have ample

choice of terms, and may frequently assign to particular words a meaning

and an explanation which are in some degree arbitrary; yet whenever we

attempt to define things under the name which custom has positively fixed

upon them, we are no longer left to arbitrary explications; but are bound

to think and to say that only which shall commend itself to the

understanding of others, as being altogether true to nature. When a word is

well understood to denote a particular object or class of objects, the

definition of it ought to be in strict conformity to what is known of the

real being and properties of the thing or things contemplated. A definition

of this kind is a proposition susceptible of proof and illustration; and

therefore whatsoever is erroneously assumed to be the proper meaning of

such a term, may be refuted. But those persons who take every thing upon

trust, and choose both to learn and to teach mechanically, often become so

slavishly habituated to the peculiar phraseology of their text-books, that,

be the absurdity of a particular expression what it may, they can neither

discover nor suspect any inaccuracy in it. It is also very natural even for

minds more independent and acute, to regard with some reverence whatsoever

was gravely impressed upon them in childhood. Hence the necessity that all

school-books should proceed from skillful hands. Instruction should tell

things as they are, and never falter through negligence.

18. I have admitted that definitions are not the only means by which a

general knowledge of the import of language may be acquired; nor are they

the only means by which the acquisition of such knowledge may be aided. To

exhibit or point out \_things\_ and tell their names, constitutes a large

part of that instruction by which the meaning of words is conveyed to the

young mind; and, in many cases, a mere change or apposition of terms may

sufficiently explain our idea. But when we would guard against the

possibility of misapprehension, and show precisely what is meant by a word,

we must fairly define it. There are, however, in every language, many words

which do not admit of a formal definition. The import of all definitive and

connecting particles must be learned from usage, translation, or

derivation; and nature reserves to herself the power of explaining the

objects of our simple original perceptions. "All words standing for complex

ideas are definable; but those by which we denote simple ideas, are not.

For the perceptions of this latter class, having no other entrance into the

mind, than by sensation or reflection, can be acquired only by

experience."--\_Duncan's Logic\_, p. 63. "And thus we see, that as our simple

ideas are the materials and foundation of knowledge, so the names of simple

ideas may be considered as the elementary parts of language, beyond which

we cannot trace the meaning and signification of words. When we come to

them, we suppose the ideas for which they stand to be already known; or, if

they are not, experience alone must be consulted, and not definitions or

explications."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 69.

19. But this is no apology for the defectiveness of any definition which

might be made correct, or for the effectiveness of our English grammars, in

the frequent omission of all explanation, and the more frequent adoption of

some indirect form of expression. It is often much easier to make some

loose observation upon what is meant by a given word or term in science,

than to frame a faultless definition of the thing; because it is easier to

refer to some of the relations, qualities, offices, or attributes of

things, than to discern wherein their essence consists, so as to be able to

tell directly and clearly what they are. The improvement of our grammatical

code in this respect, was one of the principal objects which I thought it

needful to attempt, when I first took up the pen as a grammarian. I cannot

pretend to have seen, of course, every definition and rule which has been

published on this subject; but, if I do not misjudge a service too humble

for boasting, I have myself framed a greater number of new or improved

ones, than all other English grammarians together. And not a few of them

have, since their first publication in 1823, been complimented to a place

in other grammars than my own. This is in good keeping with the authorship

which has been spoken of in an other chapter; but I am constrained to say,

it affords no proof that they were well written. If it did, the definitions

and rules in Murray's grammar must undoubtedly be thought the most correct

that ever have been given: they have been more frequently copied than any

others.

20. But I have ventured to suggest, that nine tenths of this author's

definitions are bad, or at least susceptible of some amendment. If this can

be shown to the satisfaction of the reader, will he hope to find an other

English grammar in which the eye of criticism may not detect errors and

deficiencies with the same ease? My object is, to enforce attention to the

proprieties of speech; and this is the very purpose of all grammar. To

exhibit here all Murray's definitions, with criticisms upon them, would

detain us too long. We must therefore be content to take a part of them as

a sample. And, not to be accused of fixing only upon the worst, we will

take a \_series\_. Let us then consider in their order his definitions of the

nine parts of speech;--for, calling the participle a verb, he reduces the

sorts of words to that number. And though not one of his nine definitions

now stands exactly as it did in his early editions, I think it may be said,

that not one of them is now, if it ever has been, expressed grammatically.

21. FIRST DEFINITION:--"An Article is a word \_prefixed\_ to substantives,

\_to point them out\_, and to show how far their[68] signification

extends."--\_Murray, and others, from, Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 10. This is

obscure. In what manner, or in what respect, does an article point out

substantives? To point them out \_as such\_, or to show which words are

substantives, seems at first view to be the meaning intended; but it is

said soon after, "\_A\_ or \_an\_ is used in a vague sense, to \_point out\_ one

single \_thing\_ of the kind, in other respects \_indeterminate\_; as, 'Give me

\_a\_ book;' 'Bring me \_an\_ apple.'"--\_Lowth\_, p. 11; \_Murray\_, p. 31. And

again: "It is \_of the nature\_ of both the articles to determine or limit

\_the thing\_ spoken of."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 170. Now to point out

\_nouns\_ among the parts of speech, and to point out \_things\_ as individuals

of their class, are very different matters; and which of these is the

purpose for which articles are used, according to Lowth and Murray? Their

definition says the former, their explanations imply the latter; and I am

unable to determine which they really meant. The term \_placed before\_ would

have been better than "\_prefixed\_;" because the latter commonly implies

junction, as well as location. The word "\_indeterminate\_" is not a very

easy one for a boy; and, when he has found out what it means, he may

possibly not know to which of the four preceding nouns it ought to be

referred:--"in a vague \_sense\_, to point out one single \_thing\_ of the

\_kind\_, in other \_respects\_ indeterminate." What is this "vague sense?" and

what is it, that is "indeterminate?"

22. SECOND DEFINITION:--"A Substantive or Noun is the name of any thing

\_that\_ exists, or of \_which\_ we have any notion."--\_Murray, and others\_.

According to his own syntax, this sentence of Murray's is wrong; for he

himself suggests, that when two or more relative clauses refer to the same

antecedent, the same pronoun should be used in each. Of clauses connected

like these, this is true. He should therefore have said, "A Substantive, or

Noun, is the name of any thing \_which\_ exists, or of \_which\_ we have any

notion." His rule, however, though good against a text like this, is

utterly wrong in regard to many others, and not very accurate in taking

\_two\_ for a "\_series\_" thus: "Whatever relative is used, in one of a

\_series\_ of clauses relating to the same antecedent, the same relative

ought, generally to be used in \_them all\_. In the following sentence, \_this

rule is violated\_: 'It is remarkable, that Holland, against \_which\_ the war

was undertaken, and \_that\_, in the very beginning, was reduced to the

brink of destruction, lost nothing.' The clause ought to have been, 'and

\_which\_ in the very beginning.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 155. But both

the rule and the example, badly as they correspond, were borrowed from

Priestley's Grammar, p. 102, where the text stands thus: "Whatever relative

\_be\_ used, in one of a \_series\_ of clauses, relating to the same

antecedent, the same ought to be used in \_them all\_. 'It is remarkable,

that Holland,'" &c.

23. THIRD DEFINITION:--"An Adjective is a word added to a substantive, to

express \_its\_ quality."--\_Lowth, Murray, Bullions, Pond, and others\_. Here

we have the choice of two meanings; but neither of them is according to

truth. It seems doubtful whether "\_its\_ quality" is the \_adjective's\_

quality, or the \_substantive's\_; but in either sense, the phrase is false;

for an adjective is added to a noun, not to express any quality either of

the adjective or of the noun, but to express some quality of the \_thing

signified\_ by the noun. But the definition is too much restricted; for

adjectives may be added to pronouns as well as to nouns, nor do they always

express \_quality\_.

24. FOURTH DEFINITION:--"A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to

\_avoid the too frequent\_ repetition of \_the same word\_."--\_Dr. Ash's

Gram.\_, p. 25; \_Murray's\_, 28 and 50; \_Felton's\_, 18; \_Alger's\_, 13;

\_Bacon's\_, 10; \_and others\_. The latter part of this sentence is needless,

and also contains several errors. 1. The verb \_avoid\_ is certainly very

ill-chosen; because it implies intelligent agency, and not that which is

merely instrumental. 2. The article \_the\_ is misemployed for \_a\_; for,

"\_the\_ too frequent repetition," should mean \_some particular\_ too frequent

repetition--an idea not intended here, and in itself not far from

absurdity. 3. The phrase, "\_the same word\_" may apply to the pronoun itself

as well as to the noun: in saying, "\_I\_ came, \_I\_ saw, \_I\_ conquered,"

there is as frequent a repetition of \_the same word\_, as in saying,

"\_Cæsar\_ came, \_Cæsar\_ saw, \_Cæsar\_ conquered." If, therefore, the latter

part of this definition must be retained, the whole should be written thus:

"A Pronoun is a word used \_in stead\_ of a noun, to \_prevent\_ too frequent

\_a\_ repetition of \_it\_."

25. FIFTH DEFINITION:--"A Verb is a word which signifies \_to be, to do\_, or

\_to suffer\_"--\_Lowth, Murray, and others\_. NOTE:--"A verb may generally be

distinguished by \_its making sense\_ with any of the personal pronouns, or

the word \_to\_ before it."--\_Murray, and others\_. It is confessedly

difficult to give a perfect definition of a \_verb\_; and if, with Murray, we

will have the participles to be verbs, there must be no small difficulty in

forming one that shall be tolerable. Against the foregoing old explanation,

it may be objected, that the phrase \_to suffer\_, being now understood in a

more limited sense than formerly, does not well express the nature or

import of a passive verb. I have said, "A Verb is a word that signifies \_to

be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_." Children cannot readily understand,

how every thing that is in any way \_acted upon\_, may be said \_to suffer\_.

The participle, I think, should be taken as a distinct part of speech, and

have its own definition. The note added by Murray to his definition of a

verb, would prove the participle not to be included in this part of speech,

and thus practically contradict his scheme. It is also objectionable in

respect to construction. The phrase "\_by its making sense\_" is at least

very questionable English; for "\_its making\_" supposes \_making\_ to be a

noun, and "\_making sense\_" supposes it to be an active participle. But

Lowth says, "Let it be either the one or the other, and abide by its own

construction." Nay, the author himself, though he therein contradicts an

other note of his own, virtually condemns the phrase, by his caution to the

learner against treating words in \_ing\_, "as if they were of an \_amphibious

species\_, partly nouns and partly verbs."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 193.

26. SIXTH DEFINITION:--"\_An\_ Adverb is \_a part of speech joined\_ to a verb,

an adjective, \_and sometimes to\_ another adverb, to express some \_quality\_

or \_circumstance\_ respecting \_it\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, pp. 28 and 114. See

\_Dr. Ash's Gram.\_, p. 47. This definition contains many errors; some of

which are gross blunders. 1. The first word, "\_An\_," is erroneously put for

\_The: an\_ adverb is \_one\_ adverb, not the whole class; and, if, "\_An\_

adverb is a part of speech," any and every adverb is a \_part of speech\_;

then, how many parts of speech are there? 2. The word "\_joined\_" is not

well chosen; for, with the exception of \_not\_ in \_cannot\_, the adverb is

very rarely \_joined\_ to the word to which it relates. 3. The want of a

comma before \_joined\_, perverts the construction; for the phrase, "\_speech

joined\_ to a verb," is nonsense; and to suppose \_joined\_ to relate to the

noun \_part\_, is not much better. 4. The word "\_and\_" should be \_or\_;

because no adverb is ever added to three or four different terms at once.

5. The word "\_sometimes\_" should be omitted; because it is needless, and

because it is inconsistent with the only conjunction which will make the

definition true. 6. The preposition "\_to\_" should either be inserted before

"\_an adjective\_," or suppressed before the term which follows; for when

several words occur in the same construction, uniformity of expression is

desirable. 7. For the same reason, (if custom may be thus far conformed to

analogy,) the article "\_an\_" ought, in cases like this, if not always, to

be separated from the word \_other\_; thus, "An adverb is a word added to \_a\_

verb, \_a\_ participle, \_an\_ adjective, or \_an\_ other adverb." Were the eye

not familiar with it, \_another\_ would be thought as irregular as

\_theother\_. 8. The word "\_quality\_" is wrong; for no adverb ever expresses

any \_quality\_, as such; qualities are expressed by \_adjectives\_, and never,

in any direct manner, by adverbs. 9. The "\_circumstances\_" which we express

by adverbs never belong to the \_words\_, as this definition avers that they

do, but always to the \_actions\_ or \_qualities\_ which the words signify. 10.

The pronoun \_it\_, according to Murray's second rule of syntax, ought to be

\_them\_, and so it stands in his own early editions; but if \_and\_ be changed

to \_or\_, as I have said it should be, the pronoun \_it\_ will be right.

27. SEVENTH DEFINITION:--"Prepositions serve to connect words with \_one

another\_, and to show the relation \_between them\_."--\_Lowth, Murray, and

others\_. This is only an observation, not a definition, as it ought to have

been; nor does it at all distinguish the preposition from the conjunction.

It does not reach the thing in question. Besides, it contains an actual

solecism in the expression. The word "\_between\_" implies but \_two\_ things;

and the phrase "\_one another\_" is not applicable where there are but two.

It should be, "to connect words with \_each other\_, and to show the

\_relation between\_ them;"--or else, "to connect words with \_one an other\_,

and to show the \_relations among\_ them." But the latter mode of expression

would not apply to prepositions considered severally, but only to the whole

class.

28. EIGHTH DEFINITION:--"A Conjunction is \_a part of speech\_ that is

\_chiefly\_ used to connect sentences; so as, out of two \_or more\_ sentences,

to make but one: it sometimes connects only words."--\_Murray, and others\_.

Here are more than thirty words, awkwardly and loosely strung together; and

all that is said in them, might be much better expressed in half the

number. For example: "A Conjunction is a word which connects other terms,

and commonly of two sentences makes but one." But verbosity and want of

unity are not the worst faults of this definition. We have three others to

point out. 1. "A conjunction is" not "\_a part of speech\_;" because \_a\_

conjunction is \_one\_ conjunction, and a part of speech is a whole class, or

sort, of words. A similar error was noticed in Murray's definition of an

adverb; and so common has this blunder become, that by a comparison of the

definitions which different authors have given of the parts of speech,

probably it will be found, that, by some hand or other, every one of the

ten has been commenced in this way. 2. The words "\_or more\_" are erroneous,

and ought to be omitted; for no one conjunction can connect more than two

terms, in that consecutive order which the sense requires. Three or more

simple sentences may indeed form a compound sentence; but, as they cannot

be joined in a \_cluster\_, they must have two or more connectives. 3. The

last clause erroneously suggests, that any or every conjunction "\_sometimes

connects only words\_;" but the conjunctions which may connect only words,

are not more than five, whereas those which connect only sentences are four

times as many.

29. NINTH DEFINITION:--"Interjections are words \_thrown in between the

parts of a sentence\_, to express the passions or emotions of the \_speaker\_;

as, 'O Virtue! how amiable thou art!'"--\_Murray, and many others\_. This

definition, which has been copied from grammar to grammar, and committed to

memory millions of times, is obviously erroneous, and directly contradicted

by the example. Interjections, though often enough thrown in between the

parts of a \_discourse\_, are very rarely "thrown in between the parts of a

\_sentence\_." They more frequently occur at the beginning of a sentence than

any where else; and, in such cases, they do not come under this narrow

definition. The author, at the head of his chapter on interjections,

appends to this definition two other examples; both of which contradict it

in like manner: "\_Oh\_! I have alienated my friend."--"\_Alas\_! I fear for

life." Again: Interjections are used occasionally, in \_written\_, as well as

in \_oral\_ discourse; nor are they less indicative of the emotions of the

\_writer\_, than of those "of the \_speaker\_."

30. I have thus exhibited, with all intentional fairness of criticism, the

entire series of these nine primary definitions; and the reader may judge

whether they sustain the praises which have been bestowed on the book,[69]

or confirm the allegations which I have made against it. He will understand

that my design is, here, as well as in the body of this work, to teach

grammar practically, by \_rectifying\_, so far as I may, all sorts of

mistakes either in it or respecting it; to compose a book which, by a

condensed exposition of such errors as are commonly found in other

grammars, will at once show the need we have of a better, and be itself a

fit substitute for the principal treatises which it censures. Grammatical

errors are universally considered to be small game for critics. They must

therefore be very closely grouped together, to be worth their room in this

work. Of the tens of thousands who have learned for grammar a multitude of

ungrammatical definitions and rules, comparatively few will ever know what

I have to say of their acquisitions. But this I cannot help. To the readers

of the present volume it is due, that its averments should be clearly

illustrated by particular examples; and it is reasonable that these should

be taken from the most accredited sources, whether they do honour to their

framers or not. My argument is only made so much the stronger, as the works

which furnish its proofs, are the more esteemed, the more praised, or the

more overrated.

31. Murray tells us, "There is no necessary connexion between words and

ideas."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 139. Though this, as I before observed,

is not altogether true, he doubtless had very good reason to distinguish,

in his teaching, "between \_the sign\_ and \_the thing signified\_." Yet, in

his own definitions and explanations, he frequently \_confounds\_ these very

things which he declares to be so widely different as not even to have a

"necessary connexion." Errors of this kind are very common in all our

English grammars. Two instances occur in the following sentence; which also

contains an error in doctrine, and is moreover obscure, or rather, in its

literal sense, palpably absurd: "To substantives belong gender, number, and

case; and \_they\_ are \_all of\_ the third person \_when spoken of\_, and of the

second person \_when spoken to\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 38; \_Alger's

Murray\_, 16; \_Merchant's\_, 23; \_Bacon's\_, 12; \_Maltby's\_, 12; \_Lyon's\_, 7;

\_Guy's\_, 4; \_Ingersoll's\_, 26; \_S. Putnam's\_, 13; \_T. H. Miller's\_, 17;

\_Rev. T. Smith's\_, 13. Who, but a child taught by language like this, would

ever think of \_speaking to a noun\_? or, that a noun of the second person

\_could not be spoken of\_? or, that a noun cannot be put in the \_first

person\_, so as to agree with \_I\_ or \_we\_? Murray himself once taught, that,

"Pronouns \_must always agree\_ with their antecedents, \_and\_ the nouns for

which they stand, in gender, number, and \_person\_;" and he departed from a

true and important principle of syntax, when he altered his rule to its

present form. But I have said that the sentence above is obscure, or its

meaning absurd. What does the pronoun "\_they\_" represent? "\_Substantives\_,"

according to the author's intent; but "\_gender, number\_, and \_case\_,"

according to the obvious construction of the words. Let us try a parallel:"

To scriveners belong pen, ink, and paper; and \_they\_ are all of primary

importance when there is occasion to use them, and of none at all when they

are not needed." Now, if this sentence is \_obscure\_, the other is not less

so; but, if this is perfectly \_clear\_, so that what is said is obviously

and only what is intended, then it is equally clear, that what is said in

the former, is gross absurdity, and that the words cannot reasonably be

construed into the sense which the writer, and his copyists, designed.

32. All Murray's grammars, not excepting the two volumes octavo, are as

\_incomplete\_ as they are \_inaccurate\_; being deficient in many things which

are of so great importance that they should not be excluded from the very

smallest epitome. For example: On the subject of the \_numbers\_, he

attempted but one definition, and that is a fourfold solecism. Ho speaks of

the \_persons\_, but gives neither definitions nor explanations. In treating

of the \_genders\_, he gives but one formal definition. His section on the

\_cases\_ contains no regular definition. On the \_comparison\_ of adjectives,

and on the \_moods\_ and \_tenses\_ of verbs, he is also satisfied with a very

loose mode of teaching. The work as a whole exhibits more industry than

literary taste, more benevolence of heart than distinctness of

apprehension; and, like all its kindred and progeny, fails to give to the

principles of grammar that degree of clearness of which they are easily

susceptible. The student does not know this, but he feels the effects of

it, in the obscurity of his own views on the subject, and in the conscious

uncertainty with which he applies those principles. In grammar, the terms

\_person, number, gender, case, mood, tense\_, and many others, are used in a

technical and peculiar sense; and, in all scientific works, the sense of

technical terms should be clearly and precisely defined. Nothing can be

gained by substituting other names of modern invention; for these also

would need definitions as much as the old. We want to know the things

themselves, and what they are most appropriately called. We want a book

which will tell us, in proper order, and in the plainest manner, what all

the elements of the science are.

33. What does he know of grammar, who cannot directly and properly answer

such questions as these?--"What are numbers, in grammar? What is the

singular number? What is the plural number? What are persons, in grammar?

What is the first person? What is the second person? What is the third

person? What are genders, in grammar? What is the masculine gender? What is

the feminine gender? What is the neuter gender? What are cases, in grammar?

What is the nominative case? What is the possessive case? What is the

objective case?"--And yet the most complete acquaintance with every

sentence or word of Murray's tedious compilation, may leave the student at

a loss for a proper answer, not only to each of these questions, but also

to many others equally simple and elementary! A boy may learn by heart all

that Murray ever published on the subject of grammar, and still be left to

confound the numbers in grammar with numbers in arithmetic, or the persons

in grammar with persons in civil life! Nay, there are among the professed

\_improvers\_ of this system of grammar, \_men\_ who have actually confounded

these things, which are so totally different in their natures! In "Smith's

New Grammar on the Productive System," a work in which Murray is largely

copied and strangely metamorphosed, there is an abundance of such

confusion. For instance: "What is the meaning of the word \_number\_? Number

means \_a sum that may be counted\_."--\_R. C. Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 7. From

this, by a tissue of half a dozen similar absurdities, called \_inductions\_,

the novice is brought to the conclusion that the numbers are \_two\_--as if

there were in nature but two sums that might be counted! There is no end to

the sickening detail of such blunders. How many grammars tell us, that,

"The first person is the \_person who speaks\_;" that, "The second person is

the \_person spoken to\_;" and that, "the third person is the \_person spoken

of\_!" As if the three persons of a verb, or other part of speech, were so

many \_intelligent beings\_! As if, by exhibiting a word in the three

persons, (as \_go, goest, goes\_,) we put it first \_into the speaker\_, then

\_into the hearer\_, and then \_into somebody else\_! Nothing can be more

abhorrent to grammar, or to sense, than such confusion. The things which

are identified in each of these three definitions, are as unlike as

Socrates and moonshine! The one is a thinking being; the other, a mere form

peculiar to certain words. But Chandler, of Philadelphia, ("the Grammar

King," forsooth!) without mistaking the grammatical persons for rational

souls, has contrived to crowd into his definition of \_person\_ more errors

of conception and of language,--more insult to common sense,--than one

could have believed it possible to put together in such space. And this

ridiculous old twaddle, after six and twenty years, he has deliberately

re-written and lately republished as something "adapted to the schools of

America." It stands thus: "\_Person is a distinction which is made in a noun

between its representation of its object, either as spoken to, or spoken

of\_."--Chandler's E. Grammar; Edition of 1821, p. 16; Ed. 1847, p. 21.

34. Grammarians have often failed in their definitions, because it is

impossible to define certain terms in the way in which the description has

been commonly attempted. He who undertakes what is impossible must

necessarily fail; and fail too, to the discredit of his ingenuity. It is

manifest that whenever a generic name in the singular number is to be

defined, the definition must be founded upon some property or properties

common to all the particular things included under the term. Thus, if I

would define a \_globe\_, a \_wheel\_, or a \_pyramid\_, my description must be

taken, not from what is peculiar to one or an other of these things, but

from those properties only which are common to all globes, all wheels, or

all pyramids. But what property has \_unity\_ in common with \_plurality\_, on

which a definition of \_number\_ may be founded? What common property have

the \_three cases\_, by which we can clearly define \_case\_? What have the

\_three persons\_ in common, which, in a definition of \_person\_, could be

made evident to a child? Thus all the great classes of grammatical

modifications, namely, \_persons, numbers, genders, cases, moods\_, and

\_tenses\_, though they admit of easy, accurate, and obvious definitions in

the plural, can scarcely be defined at all in the singular. I do not say,

that the terms \_person, number, gender, case, mood\_, and \_tense\_, ia their

technical application to grammar, are all of them equally and absolutely

undefinable in the singular; but I say, that no definition, just in sense

and suitable for a child, can ever be framed for any one of them. Among the

thousand varied attempts of grammarians to explain them so, there are a

hundred gross solecisms for every tolerable definition. For this, as I have

shown, there is a very simple reason in the nature of the things.

35. But this reason, as well as many other truths equally important and

equally clear, our common grammarians, have, so far as I know, every man of

them, overlooked. Consequently, even when they were aiming at the right

thing, they frequently fell into gross errors of expression; and, what is

still more surprising, such errors have been entailed upon the very art of

grammar, and the art of authorship itself, by the prevalence of an absurd

notion, that modern writers on this subject can be meritorious authors

without originality. Hence many a school-boy is daily rehearsing from his

grammar-book what he might well be ashamed to have written. For example,

the following definition from Murray's grammar, is found in perhaps a dozen

other compends, all professing to teach the art of speaking and writing

with propriety: "\_Number\_ is the \_consideration of an object\_, as \_one\_ or

\_more\_." [70] Yet this short sentence, as I have before suggested, is a

fourfold solecism. \_First\_, the word "\_number\_" is wrong; because those

modifications of language, which distinguish unity and plurality, cannot be

jointly signified by it. \_Secondly\_, the word "\_consideration\_" is wrong;

because \_number\_ is not \_consideration\_, in any sense which can be put upon

the terms: \_condition, constitution, configuration\_, or any other word

beginning with \_con\_, would have done just as well. \_Thirdly\_, "the

consideration of \_an\_ object as \_one\_," is but idle waste of thought; for,

that one thing is one,--that \_an\_ object is \_one\_ object,--every child

knows by \_intuition\_, and not by "\_consideration\_." \_Lastly\_, to consider

"\_an\_ object as \_more\_" than one, is impossible; unless this admirable

definition lead us into a misconception in so plain a case! So much for the

art of "the grammatical definer."

36. Many other examples, equally faulty and equally common, might, be

quoted and criticised for the further proof and illustration of what I have

alleged. But the reader will perhaps judge the foregoing to be sufficient.

I have wished to be brief, and yet to give my arguments, and the neglected

facts upon which they rest, their proper force upon the mind. Against such

prejudices as may possibly arise from the authorship of rival publications,

or from any interest in the success of one book rather than of an other,

let both my judges and me be on our guard. I have intended to be fair; for

captiousness is not criticism. If the reader perceives in these strictures

any improper bias, he has a sort of discernment which it is my misfortune

to lack. Against the compilers of grammars, I urge no conclusions at which

any man can hesitate, who accedes to my preliminary remarks upon them; and

these may be summed up in the following couplet of the poet Churchill:

"To copy beauties, forfeits all pretence

To fame;--to copy faults, is want of sense."

CHAPTER XI.

BRIEF NOTICES OF THE SCHEMES OF CERTAIN GRAMMARS.

"Sed ut perveniri ad summa nisi ex principiis non potest: ita, procedente

jam opere, minima incipiunt esse quæ prima sunt."--QUINTILIAN. \_De Inst.

Orat.\_, Lib. x, Cap. 1, p. 560.

1. The \_history\_ of grammar, in the proper sense of the term, has

heretofore been made no part of the study. I have imagined that many of its

details might be profitable, not only to teachers, but to that class of

learners for whose use this work is designed. Accordingly, in the preceding

pages, there have been stated numerous facts properly historical, relating

either to particular grammars, or to the changes and progress of this

branch of instruction. These various details it is hoped will be more

entertaining, and perhaps for that reason not less useful, than those

explanations which belong merely to the construction and resolution of

sentences. The attentive reader must have gathered from the foregoing

chapters some idea of what the science owes to many individuals whose names

are connected with it. But it seems proper to devote to this subject a few

pages more, in order to give some further account of the origin and

character of certain books.

2. The manuals by which grammar was first

taught in English, were not properly English Grammars. They were

translations of the Latin Accidence; and were designed to aid British youth

in acquiring a knowledge of the Latin language, rather than accuracy in the

use of their own. The two languages were often combined in one book, for

the purpose of teaching sometimes both together, and sometimes one through

the medium of the other. The study of such works doubtless had a tendency

to modify, and perhaps at that time to improve, the English style of those

who used them. For not only must variety of knowledge have led to

copiousness of expression, but the most cultivated minds would naturally be

most apt to observe what was orderly in the use of speech. A language,

indeed, after its proper form is well fixed by letters, must resist all

introduction of foreign idioms, or become corrupted. Hence it is, that Dr.

Johnson avers, "The great pest of speech is frequency of translation. No

book was ever turned from one language into another, without imparting

something of its native idiom; this is the most mischievous and

comprehensive innovation."--\_Preface to Joh. Dict.\_, 4to, p. 14. Without

expressly controverting this opinion, or offering any justification of mere

metaphrases, or literal translations, we may well assert, that the practice

of comparing different languages, and seeking the most appropriate terms

for a free version of what is ably written, is an exercise admirably

calculated to familiarize and extend grammatical knowledge.

3. Of the class of books here referrred [sic--KTH] to, that which I have

mentioned in an other chapter, as Lily's or King Henry's Grammar, has been

by far the most celebrated and the most influential. Concerning this

treatise, it is stated, that its parts were not put together in the present

form, until eighteen or twenty years after Lily's death. "The time when

this work was completed," says the preface of 1793, "has been differently

related by writers. Thomas Hayne places it in the year 1543, and Anthony

Wood, in 1545. But neither of these accounts can be right; for I have seen

a beautiful copy, printed upon vellum, and illuminated, anno 1542, in

quarto. And it may be doubted whether this was the first edition."--\_John

Ward, Pref.\_, p. vii. In an Introductory Lecture, read before the

University of London in 1828, by Thomas Dale, professor of English

literature, I find the following statement: "In this reign,"--the reign of

Henry VIII,--"the study of grammar was reduced to a system, by the

promulgation of many grammatical treatises; one of which was esteemed of

sufficient importance to be honoured with a royal name. It was called, 'The

Grammar of King Henry the Eighth;' and to this, 'with other works, the

young Shakspeare was probably indebted for some learning and much loyalty.'

But the honour of producing the first English grammar is claimed by William

Bullokar, who published, in the year 1586, 'A Bref Grammar for English,'

being, to use his own words, 'the first Grammar for English that ever waz,

except my Grammar at large.'"

4. Ward's preface to Lily commences thus: "If we look back to the origin of

our common \_Latin Grammar\_, we shall find it was no hasty performance, nor

the work of a single person; but composed at different times by several

eminent and learned men, till the whole was at length finished, and by the

order of \_King Henry\_ VIII.[,] brought into that form in which it has ever

since continued. The \_English introduction\_ was written by the reverend and

learned Dr. \_John Colet\_, Dean of St. \_Paul's\_, for the use of the school

he had lately founded there; and was dedicated by him to \_William Lily\_,

the first high master of that school, in the year 1510; for which reason it

has usually gone by the name of \_Paul's Accidence\_. The substance of it

remains the same, as at first; though it has been much altered in the

manner of expression, and sometimes the order, with other improvements. The

\_English syntax\_ was the work of \_Lily\_, as appears by the title in the

most ancient editions, which runs thus: \_Gulielmi Lilii Angli Rudimenta\_.

But it has been greatly improved since his time, both with, regard to the

method, and an enlargement of double the quantity."

5. Paul's Accidence is

therefore probably the oldest grammar that can now be found in our

language. It is not, however, an English grammar; because, though written

in antique English, and embracing many things which are as true of our

language as of any other, it was particularly designed for the teaching of

\_Latin\_. It begins thus: "In speech be these eight parts following: Noun,

Pronoun, Verb, Participle, declined; Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition,

Interjection, undeclined." This is the old platform of the Latin

grammarians; which differs from that of the Greek grammars, only in having

no Article, and in separating the Interjection from the class of Adverbs.

Some Greek grammarians, however, separate the Adjective from the Noun, and

include the Participle with the Verb: thus, "There are in Greek eight

species of words, called Parts of Speech; viz. Article, Noun, Adjective,

Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction."--\_Anthon's Valpy\_, p.

18. With respect to our language, the plan of the Latin Accidence is

manifestly inaccurate; nor can it be applied, without some variation, to

the Greek. In both, as well as in all other languages that have \_Articles\_,

the best amendment of it, and the nearest adherence to it, is, to make the

Parts of Speech \_ten\_; namely, the Article, the Noun, the Adjective, the

Pronoun, the Verb, the Participle, the Adverb, the Conjunction, the

Preposition, and the Interjection.

6. The best Latin grammarians admit that the Adjective ought not to be

called a Noun; and the best Greek grammarians, that the Interjections ought

not to be included among Adverbs. With respect to Participles, a vast

majority of grammarians in general, make them a distinct species, or part

of speech; but, on this point, the English grammarians are about equally

divided: nearly one half include them with the verbs, and a few call them

adjectives. In grammar, it is wrong to deviate from the old groundwork,

except for the sake of truth and improvement; and, in this case, to vary

the series of parts, by suppressing one and substituting an other, is in

fact a greater innovation, than to make the terms ten, by adding one and

dividing an other. But our men of nine parts of speech innovated yet more:

they added the Article, as did the Greeks; divided the Noun into

Substantive and Adjective; and, without good reason, suppressed the

Participle. And, of latter time, not a few have thrown the whole into

confusion, to show the world "the order of [their] understanding." What was

grammar fifty years ago, some of these have not thought it worth their

while to inquire! And the reader has seen, that, after all this, they can

complacently talk of "the censure so frequently and so justly awarded to

\_unfortunate innovators\_."--KIRKHAM'S \_Gram.\_, p. 10.

7. The old scheme of the Latin grammarians has seldom, if ever, been

\_literally\_ followed in English; because its distribution of the parts of

speech, as declined and undeclined, would not be true with respect to the

English participle. With the omission of this unimportant distinction, it

was, however, scrupulously retained by Dilworth, by the author of the

British Grammar, by William Ward, by Buchanan, and by some others now

little known, who chose to include both the article and the adjective with

the noun, rather than to increase the number of the parts of speech beyond

eight. Dr. Priestley says, "I shall adopt the \_usual distribution\_ of words

into eight classes; viz. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs,

Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.[71] I do this in compliance

with the practice of most Grammarians; and because, \_if any number, in a

thing so arbitrary, must be fixed upon\_, this seems to be as comprehensive

and distinct as any. All the innovation I have made hath been to throw out

the \_Participle\_, and substitute the \_Adjective\_, as more evidently a

distinct part of speech."--\_Rudiments of English Gram.\_, p. 3. All this

comports well enough with Dr. Priestley's haste and carelessness; but it is

not true, that he either adopted, "the usual distribution of words," or

made an other "as comprehensive and distinct as any." His "\_innovation\_,"

too, which has since been countenanced by many other writers, I have

already shown to be greater, than if, by a promotion of the article and the

adjective, he had made the parts of speech ten. Dr. Beattie, who was

Priestley's coeval, and a much better scholar, adopted this number without

hesitation, and called every one of them by what is still its right name:

"In English there are \_ten\_ sorts of words, which are all found in the

following short sentence; 'I now see the good man coming; but, alas! he

walks with difficulty.' \_I\_ and \_he\_ are pronouns; \_now\_ is an adverb;

\_see\_ and \_walks\_ are verbs; \_the\_ is an article; \_good\_, an adjective;

\_man\_ and \_difficulty\_ are nouns, the former substantive, the latter

abstract; \_coming\_ is a participle; \_but\_, a conjunction; \_alas!\_ an

interjection; \_with\_, a preposition. That no other sorts of words are

necessary in language, will appear, when we have seen in what respects

these are necessary."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, Vol. i, p. 30. This

distribution is precisely that which the best \_French\_ grammarians have

\_usually\_ adopted.

8. Dr. Johnson professes to adopt the division, the order, and the terms,

"of the common grammarians, without inquiring whether a fitter distribution

might not be found."--\_Gram. before 4to Dict.\_, p. 1. But, in the Etymology

of his Grammar, he makes no enumeration of the parts of speech, and treats

only of articles, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs; to which if we

add the others, according to the common grammarians, or according to his

own Dictionary, the number will be \_ten\_. And this distribution, which was

adopted by Dr. Ash about 1765, by Murray the schoolmaster about 1790, by

Caleb Alexander in 1795, and approved by Dr. Adam in 1793, has since been

very extensively followed; as may be seen in Dr. Crombie's treatise, in the

Rev. Matt. Harrison's, in Dr. Mandeville's reading-books, and in the

grammars of Harrison, Staniford, Alden, Coar, John Peirce, E. Devis, C.

Adams, D. Adams, Chandler, Comly, Jaudon, Ingersoll, Hull, Fuller,

Greenleaf, Kirkham, Ferd. H. Miller, Merchant, Mack, Nutting, Bucke, Beck,

Barrett, Barnard, Maunder, Webber, Emmons, Hazen, Bingham, Sanders, and

many others. Dr. Lowth's distribution is the same, except that he placed

the adjective after the pronoun, the conjunction after the preposition,

and, like Priestley, called the participle a verb, thus making the parts of

speech \_nine\_. He also has been followed by many; among whom are Bicknell,

Burn, Lennie, Mennye, Lindley Murray, W. Allen, Guy, Churchill, Wilson,

Cobbett, Davis, David Blair, Davenport, Mendenhall, Wilcox, Picket, Pond,

Russell, Bacon, Bullions, Brace, Hart, Lyon, Tob. H. Miller, Alger, A.

Flint, Folker, S. Putnam, Cooper, Frost, Goldsbury, Hamlin, T. Smith, R. C.

Smith, and Woodworth. But a third part of these, and as many more in the

preceding list, are confessedly mere modifiers of Murray's compilation; and

perhaps, in such a case, those have done best who have deviated least from

the track of him whom they professed to follow.[72]

9. Some seem to have supposed, that by reducing the number of the parts of

speech, and of the rules for their construction, the study of grammar would

be rendered more easy and more profitable to the learner. But this, as

would appear from the history of the science, is a mere retrogression

towards the rudeness of its earlier stages. It is hardly worth while to

dispute, whether there shall be nine parts of speech or ten; and perhaps

enough has already been stated, to establish the expediency of assuming the

latter number. Every word in the language must be included in some class,

and nothing is gained by making the classes larger and less numerous. In

all the artificial arrangements of science, distinctions are to be made

according to the differences in things; and the simple question here is,

what differences among words shall be at first regarded. To overlook, in

our primary division, the difference between a verb and a participle, is

merely to reserve for a subdivision, or subsequent explanation, a species

of words which most grammarians have recognized as a distinct sort in their

original classification.

10. It should be observed that the early period of grammatical science was

far remote from the days in which \_English\_ grammar originated. Many things

which we now teach and defend as grammar, were taught and defended two

thousand years ago, by the philosophers of Greece and Rome. Of the parts of

speech, Quintilian, who lived in the first century of our era, gives the

following account: "For the ancients, among whom were Aristotle[73] and

Theodectes, treated only of verbs, nouns, and conjunctions: as the verb is

what we say, and the noun, that of which we say it, they judged the power

of discourse to be in \_verbs\_, and the matter in \_nouns\_, but the connexion

in \_conjunctions\_. Little by little, the philosophers, and especially the

Stoics, increased the number: first, to the conjunctions were added

\_articles\_; afterwards, \_prepositions\_; to nouns, was added the

\_appellation\_; then the \_pronoun\_; afterwards, as belonging to each verb,

the \_participle\_; and, to verbs in common, \_adverbs\_. Our language [i. e.,

the \_Latin\_] does not require articles, wherefore they are scattered among

the other parts of speech; but there is added to the foregoing the

\_interjection\_. But some, on the authority of good authors, make the parts

only eight; as Aristarchus, and, in our day, Palæmon; who have included the

vocable, or appellation, with the noun, as a species of it. But they who

make the noun one and the vocable an other, reckon nine. But there are also

some who divide the vocable from the appellation; making the former to

signify any thing manifest to sight or touch, as \_house, bed\_; and the

latter, any thing to which either or both are wanting, as \_wind, heaven,

god, virtue\_. They have also added the \_asseveration\_ and the

\_attrectation\_, which I do not approve. Whether the vocable or appellation

should be included with the noun or not, as it is a matter of little

consequence, I leave to the decision of others."--See QUINTIL. \_de Inst.

Orat.\_, Lib. i, Cap. 4, §24.

11. Several writers on English grammar,

indulging a strange unsettlement of plan, seem not to have determined in

their own minds, how many parts of speech there are, or ought to be. Among

these are Horne Tooke, Webster, Dalton, Cardell, Green, and Cobb; and

perhaps, from what he says above, we may add the name of Priestley. The

present disputation about the sorts of words, has been chiefly owing to the

writings of Horne Tooke, who explains the minor parts of speech as mere

abbreviations, and rejects, with needless acrimony, the common

classification. But many have mistaken the nature of his instructions, no

less than that of the common grammarians. This author, in his third

chapter, supposes his auditor to say, "But you have not all this while

informed me \_how many parts of speech\_ you mean to lay down." To whom he

replies, "That shall be as you please. Either \_two\_, or \_twenty\_, or

\_more\_." Such looseness comported well enough with his particular purpose;

because he meant to teach the derivation of words, and not to meddle at all

with their construction. But who does not see that it is impossible to lay

down rules for the \_construction\_ of words, without first dividing them

into the classes to which such rules apply? For example: if a man means to

teach, that, "A verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person

and number," must he not first show the learner \_what words are verbs?\_ and

ought he not to see in this rule a reason for not calling the participle a

verb? Let the careless followers of Lowth and Priestley answer. Tooke did

not care to preserve any parts of speech at all. His work is not a system

of grammar; nor can it be made the basis of any regular scheme of

grammatical instruction. He who will not grant that the same words may

possibly be used as different parts of speech, must make his parts of

speech either very few or very many. This author says, "I do not allow that

\_any\_ words change their nature in this manner, so as to belong sometimes

to one part of speech, and sometimes to another, from the different ways of

using them. I never could perceive any such fluctuation in any word

whatever."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 68.

12. From his own positive language, I imagine this ingenious author never

well considered what constitutes the sameness of words, or wherein lies the

difference of the parts of speech; and, without understanding these things,

a grammarian cannot but fall into errors, unless he will follow somebody

that knows them. But Tooke confessedly contradicts, and outfaces "\_all

other Grammarians\_" in the passage just cited. Yet it is plain, that the

whole science of grammar--or at least the whole of etymology and syntax,

which are its two principal parts--is based upon a division of words into

the parts of speech; a division which necessarily refers, in many

instances, the same words to different sections according to the manner in

which they are used. "Certains mots répondent, ainsi au même temps, à

diverses parties d'oraison selon que la grammaire les emploie

diversement."--\_Buffier\_, Art. 150. "Some words, from the different ways in

which they are used, belong sometimes to one part of speech, sometimes to

another."--\_M'Culloch's Gram.\_, p. 37. "And so say all other

Grammarians."--\_Tooke, as above\_.

13. The history of \_Dr. Webster\_, as a grammarian, is singular. He is

remarkable for his changeableness, yet always positive; for his

inconsistency, yet very learned; for his zeal "to correct popular errors,"

yet often himself erroneous; for his fertility in resources, yet sometimes

meagre; for his success as an author, yet never satisfied; for his boldness

of innovation, yet fond of appealing to antiquity. His grammars are the

least judicious, and at present the least popular, of his works. They

consist of four or five different treatises, which for their mutual credit

should never be compared: it is impossible to place any firm reliance upon

the authority of a man who contradicts himself so much. Those who imagine

that the last opinions of so learned a man must needs be right, will do

well to wait, and see what will be his last: they cannot otherwise know to

what his instructions will finally lead: Experience has already taught him

the folly of many of his pretended improvements, and it is probable his

last opinions of English grammar will be most conformable to that just

authority with which he has ever been tampering. I do not say that he has

not exhibited ingenuity as well as learning, or that he is always wrong

when he contradicts a majority of the English grammarians; but I may

venture to say, he was wrong when he undertook to disturb the common scheme

of the parts of speech, as well as when he resolved to spell all words

exactly as they are pronounced.

14. It is not commonly known with how rash a hand this celebrated author

has sometimes touched the most settled usages of our language. In 1790,

which was seven years after the appearance of his first grammar, he

published an octavo volume of more than four hundred pages, consisting of

Essays, moral, historical, political, and literary, which might have done

him credit, had he not spoiled his book by a grammatical whim about the

reformation of orthography. Not perceiving that English literature,

multiplied as it had been within two or three centuries, had acquired a

stability in some degree corresponding to its growth, he foolishly imagined

it was still as susceptible of change and improvement as in the days of its

infancy. Let the reader pardon the length of this digression, if for the

sake of any future schemer who may chance to adopt a similar conceit, I

cite from the preface to this volume a specimen of the author's practice

and reasoning. The ingenious attorney had the good sense quickly to abandon

this project, and content himself with less glaring innovations; else he

had never stood as he now does, in the estimation of the public. But there

is the more need to record the example, because in one of the southern

states the experiment has recently been tried again. A still abler member

of the same profession, has renewed it but lately; and it is said there are

yet remaining some converts to this notion of improvement. I copy

literally, leaving all my readers and his to guess for themselves why he

spelled "\_writers\_" with a \_w\_ and "\_riting\_" without.

15. "During the course of ten or twelv yeers, I hav been laboring to

correct popular errors, and to assist my yung brethren in the road to truth

and virtue; my publications for theze purposes hav been numerous; much time

haz been spent, which I do not regret, and much censure incurred, which my

hart tells me I do not dezerv." \* \* \* "The reeder wil observ that the

\_orthography\_ of the volum iz not uniform. The reezon iz, that many of the

essays hav been published before, in the common orthography, and it would

hav been a laborious task to copy the whole, for the sake of changing the

spelling. In the essays, ritten within the last yeer, a considerable change

of spelling iz introduced by way of experiment. This liberty waz taken by

the writers before the age of queen Elizabeth, and to this we are indeted

for the preference of modern spelling over that of Gower and Chaucer. The

man who admits that the change of \_hoasbonde, mynde, ygone, moneth\_ into

\_husband, mind, gone, month\_, iz an improovment, must acknowlege also the

riting of \_helth, breth, rong, tung, munth\_, to be an improovment. There iz

no alternativ. Every possible reezon that could ever be offered for

altering the spelling of wurds, stil exists in full force; and if a gradual

reform should not be made in our language, it wil proov that we are less

under the influence of reezon than our ancestors."--\_Noah Webster's Essays,

Preface\_, p. xi.

16. But let us return, with our author, to the question of the parts of

speech. I have shown that if we do not mean to adopt some less convenient

scheme, we must count them \_ten\_, and preserve their ancient order as well

as their ancient names.[74] And, after all his vacillation in consequence

of reading Horne Tooke, it would not be strange if Dr. Webster should come

at last to the same conclusion. He was not very far from it in 1828, as may

be shown by his own testimony, which he then took occasion to record. I

will give his own words on the point: "There is great difficulty in

devising a correct classification of the several sorts of words; and

probably no classification that shall be simple and at the same time

philosophically correct, can be invented. There are some words that do not

strictly fall under any description of any class yet devised. Many attempts

have been made and are still making to remedy this evil; but such schemes

as I have seen, do not, in my apprehension, correct the defects of the old

schemes, nor simplify the subject. On the other hand, all that I have seen,

serve only to obscure and embarrass the subject, by substituting new

arrangements and new terms which are as incorrect as the old ones, and less

intelligible. I have attentively viewed these subjects, in all the lights

which my opportunities have afforded, and am convinced that the

distribution of words, most generally received, \_is the best that can be

formed\_, with some slight alterations adapted to the particular

construction of the English language."

17. This passage is taken from the advertisement, or preface, to the

Grammar which accompanies the author's edition of his great quarto

Dictionary. Now the several schemes which bear his own name, were doubtless

all of them among those which he had that he had "\_seen\_;" so that he here

condemns them all collectively, as he had previously condemned some of them

at each reformation. Nor is the last exempted. For although he here plainly

gives his vote for that common scheme which he first condemned, he does not

adopt it without "some slight alterations;" and in contriving these

alterations he is inconsistent with his own professions. He makes the parts

of speech \_eight\_, thus: "1. The name or noun; 2. The pronoun or

substitute; 3. The adjective, attribute, or attributive; 4. The verb; 5.

The adverb; 6. The preposition; 7. The connective or conjunction; 8. The

exclamation or interjection." In his Rudiments of English Grammar,

published in 1811, "to unfold the \_true principles\_ of the language," his

parts of speech were \_seven\_; "viz. 1. Names or nouns; 2. Substitutes or

pronouns; 3. Attributes or adjectives; 4. Verbs, with their participles; 5.

Modifiers or adverbs; 6. Prepositions; 7. Connectives or conjunctions." In

his Philosophical and Practical Grammar, published in 1807, a book which

professes to teach "the \_only legitimate principles\_, and established

usages," of the language, a twofold division of words is adopted; first,

into two general classes, primary and secondary; then into "\_seven species\_

or parts of speech," the first two belonging to the former class, the other

five to the latter; thus: "1. Names or nouns; 2. Verbs; 3. Substitutes; 4.

Attributes; 5. Modifiers; 6. Prepositions; 7. Connectives." In his

"Improved Grammar of the English Language," published in 1831, the same

scheme is retained, but the usual names are preferred.

18. How many different schemes of classification this author invented, I

know not; but he might well have saved himself the trouble of inventing

any; for, so far as appears, none of his last three grammars ever came to a

second edition. In the sixth edition of his "Plain and Comprehensive

Grammar, grounded on the \_true principles\_ and idioms of the language," a

work which his last grammatical preface affirms to have been originally

fashioned "on the model of Lowth's," the parts of speech are reckoned

"\_six\_; nouns, articles, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, and abbreviations or

particles." This work, which he says "was extensively used in the schools

of this country," and continued to be in demand, he voluntarily suppressed;

because, after a profitable experiment of four and twenty years, he found

it so far from being grounded on "true principles," that the whole scheme

then appeared to him incorrigibly bad. And, judging from this sixth

edition, printed in 1800, the only one which I have seen, I cannot but

concur with him in the opinion. More than one half of the volume is a loose

\_Appendix\_ composed chiefly of notes taken from Lowth and Priestley; and

there is a great want of method in what was meant for the body of the work.

I imagine his several editions must have been different grammars with the

same title; for such things are of no uncommon occurrence, and I cannot

otherwise account for the assertion that this book was compiled "on \_the

model of Lowth's\_, and on the same principles as [those on which] Murray

has constructed his."--\_Advertisement in Webster's Quarto Dict., 1st Ed.\_

19. In a treatise on grammar, a bad scheme is necessarily attended with

inconveniences for which no merit in the execution can possibly compensate.

The first thing, therefore, which a skillful teacher will notice in a work

of this kind, is the arrangement. If he find any difficulty in discovering,

at sight, what it is, he will be sure it is bad; for a lucid order is what

he has a right to expect from him who pretends to improve upon all the

English grammarians. Dr. Webster is not the only reader of the EPEA

PTEROENTA, who has been thereby prompted to meddle with the common scheme

of grammar; nor is he the only one who has attempted to simplify the

subject by reducing the parts of speech to \_six\_. John Dalton of

Manchester, in 1801, in a small grammar which he dedicated to Horne Tooke,

made them six, but not the same six. He would have them to be, nouns,

pronouns, verbs, adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions. This writer, like

Brightland, Tooke, Fisher, and some others, insists on it that the articles

are \_adjectives\_. Priestley, too, throwing them out of his classification,

and leaving the learner to go almost through his book in ignorance of their

rank, at length assigns them to the same class, in one of his notes. And so

has Dr. Webster fixed them in his late valuable, but not faultless,

dictionaries. But David Booth, an etymologist perhaps equally learned, in

his "Introduction to an Analytical Dictionary of the English Language,"

declares them to be of the same species as the \_pronouns\_; from which he

thinks it strange that they were ever separated! See \_Booth's Introd.\_, p.

21.

20. Now, what can be more idle, than for teachers to reject the common

classification of words, and puzzle the heads of school-boys with

speculations like these? It is easy to admit all that etymology can show to

be true, and still justify the old arrangement of the elements of grammar.

And if we depart from the common scheme, where shall we stop? Some have

taught that the parts of speech are only \_five\_; as did the latter stoics,

whose classes, according to Priscian and Harris, were these: articles,

nouns appellative, nouns proper, verbs, and conjunctions. Others have made

them \_four\_; as did Aristotle and the elder stoics, and, more recently,

Milnes, Brightland, Harris, Ware, Fisher, and the author of a work on

Universal Grammar, entitled Enclytica. Yet, in naming the four, each of

these contrives to differ from \_all the rest!\_ With Aristotle, they are,

"nouns, verbs, articles, and conjunctions;" with Milnes, "nouns, adnouns,

verbs, and particles;" with Brightland, "names, qualities, affirmations,

and particles;" with Harris, "substantives, attributives, definitives, and

connectives;" with Ware, "the name, the word, the assistant, the

connective;" with Fisher, "names, qualities, verbs, and particles;" with

the author of Enclytica, "names, verbs, modes, and connectives." But why

make the classes so numerous as four? Many of the ancients, Greeks,

Hebrews, and Arabians, according to Quintilian, made them \_three\_; and

these three, according to Vossius, were nouns, verbs, and particles.

"Veteres Arabes, Hebræi, et Græci, tres, non amplius, classes faciebant; l.

Nomen, 2. Verbum, 3. Particula seu Dictio."--\_Voss. de Anal.\_, Lib. i, Cap.

1.

21. Nor is this number, \_three\_, quite destitute of modern supporters;

though most of these come at it in an other way. D. St. Quentin, in his

Rudiments of General Grammar, published in 1812, divides words into the

"three general classes" last mentioned; viz., "1. Nouns, 2. Verbs, 3.

Particles."--P. 5. Booth, who published the second edition of his

etymological work in 1814, examining severally the ten parts of speech, and

finding what he supposed to be the true origin of all the words in some of

the classes, was led to throw one into an other, till he had destroyed

seven of them. Then, resolving that each word ought to be classed according

to the meaning which its etymology fixes upon it, he refers the number of

classes to \_nature\_, thus: "If, then, each [word] has a \_meaning\_, and is

capable of raising an idea in the mind, that idea must have its prototype

in nature. It must either denote an \_exertion\_, and is therefore a \_verb\_;

or a \_quality\_, and is, in that case, an \_adjective\_; or it must express an

\_assemblage\_ of qualities, such as is observed to belong to some individual

object, and is, on this supposition, the \_name\_ of such object, or a

\_noun\_. \* \* \* We have thus given an account of the different divisions of

words, and have found that the whole may be classed under the three heads

of Names, Qualities, and Actions; or Nouns, Adjectives, and

Verbs."--\_Introd. to Analyt. Dict.\_, p. 22.

22. This notion of the parts of speech, as the reader will presently see,

found an advocate also in the author of the popular little story of Jack

Halyard. It appears in his Philosophic Grammar published in Philadelphia in

1827. Whether the writer borrowed it from Booth, or was led into it by the

light of "nature," I am unable to say: he does not appear to have derived

it from the ancients. Now, if either he or the lexicographer has discovered

in "nature" a prototype for this scheme of grammar, the discovery is only

to be proved, and the schemes of all other grammarians, ancient or modern,

must give place to it. For the reader will observe that this triad of parts

is not that which is mentioned by Vossius and Quintilian. But authority may

be found for reducing the number of the parts of speech yet lower. Plato,

according to Harris, and the first inquirers into language, according to

Horne Tooke, made them \_two\_; nouns and verbs, which Crombie, Dalton,

M'Culloch, and some others, say, are the only parts essentially necessary

for the communication of our thoughts. Those who know nothing about

grammar, regard all words as of \_one\_ class. To them, a word is simply a

word; and under what other name it may come, is no concern of theirs.

23. Towards this point, tends every attempt to simplify grammar by

suppressing any of the \_ten\_ parts of speech. Nothing is gained by it; and

it is a departure from the best authority. We see by what steps this kind

of reasoning may descend; and we have an admirable illustration of it in

the several grammatical works of William S. Cardell. I shall mention them

in the order in which they appeared; and the reader may judge whether the

author does not ultimately arrive at the conclusion to which the foregoing

series is conducted. This writer, in his Essay on Language, reckons seven

parts of speech; in his New-York Grammar, six; in his Hartford Grammar,

three principal, with three others subordinate; in his Philadelphia

Grammar, three only--nouns, adjectives, and verbs. Here he alleges, "The

unerring plan of \_nature\_ has established three classes of perceptions, and

consequently three parts of speech."--P. 171. He says this, as if he meant

to abide by it. But, on his twenty-third page, we are told, "Every

adjective is either a noun or a participle." Now, by his own showing, there

are no participles: he makes them all adjectives, in each of his schemes.

It follows, therefore, that all his adjectives, including what others call

participles, are nouns. And this reduces his three parts of speech to two,

in spite of "the unerring plan of \_nature!\_" But even this number is more

than he well believed in; for, on the twenty-first page of the book, he

affirms, that, "All other terms are but derivative forms and new

applications of \_nouns\_." So simple a thing is this method of grammar! But

Neef, in his zeal for reformation, carries the anticlimax fairly off the

brink; and declares, "In the grammar which shall be the work of my pupils,

there shall be found no nouns, no pronouns, no articles, no participles, no

verbs, no prepositions, no conjunctions, no adverbs, no interjections, no

gerunds, not even one single supine. Unmercifully shall they be banished

from it."--\_Neef's Method of Education\_, p. 60.

24. When Cardell's system appeared, several respectable men, convinced by

"his powerful demonstrations," admitted that he had made "many things in

the \_established doctrines\_ of the expounders of language appear

sufficiently ridiculous;" [75] and willingly lent him the influence of

their names, trusting that his admirable scheme of English grammar, in

which their ignorance saw nothing but new truth, would be speedily

"perfected and generally embraced." [76] Being invited by the author to a

discussion of his principles, I opposed them \_in his presence\_, both

privately and publicly; defending against him, not unsuccessfully, those

doctrines which time and custom have sanctioned. And, what is remarkable,

that candid opposition which Cardell himself had treated with respect, and

parried in vain, was afterwards, by some of his converts, impeached of all

unfairness, and even accused of wanting common sense. "No one," says

Niebuhr, "ever overthrew a literary idol, without provoking the anger of

its worshipers."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 489. The certificates

given in commendation of this "set of opinions," though they had no

extensive effect on the public, showed full well that the signers knew

little of the history of grammar; and it is the continual repetition of

such things, that induces me now to dwell upon its history, for the

information of those who are so liable to be deceived by exploded errors

republished as novelties. A eulogist says of Cardell, "He had adopted a set

of opinions, which, to most of his readers, appeared \_entirely new."\_ A

reviewer proved, that all his pretended novelties are to be found in

certain grammars now forgotten, or seldom read. The former replies, Then he

[Cardell,] is right--and the man is no less stupid than abusive, who finds

fault; for here is proof that the former "had highly respectable authority

for almost every thing he has advanced!"--See \_The Friend\_, Vol. ii, pp.

105 and 116, from which all the quotations in this paragraph, except one,

are taken.

25. The reader may now be curious to know what these doctrines

were. They were summed up by the reviewer, thus: "Our author pretends to

have drawn principally from his own resources, in making up his books; and

many may have supposed there is more \_novelty\_ in them than there really

is. For instance: 1. He classes the \_articles\_ with \_adjectives\_; and so

did Brightland, Tooke, Fisher, Dalton, and Webster. 2. He calls the

\_participles, adjectives\_; and so did Brightland and Tooke. 3. He make the

\_pronouns\_, either \_nouns\_ or \_adjectives\_; and so did Adam, Dalton, and

others. 4. He distributes the \_conjunctions\_ among the other parts of

speech; and so did Tooke. 5. He rejects the \_interjections\_; and so did

Valla, Sanctius, and Tooke. 6. He makes the \_possessive case\_ an

\_adjective\_; and so did Brightland. 7. He says our language has \_no cases\_;

and so did Harris. 8. He calls \_case, position\_; and so did James Brown. 9.

He reduces the adjectives to two classes, \_defining\_ and \_describing\_; and

so did Dalton. 10. He declares all \_verbs\_ to be \_active\_; and so did

Harris, (in his Hermes, Book i, Chap. ix,) though he admitted the

\_expediency\_ of the common division, and left to our author the absurdity

of contending about it. Fisher also rejected the class of \_neuter verbs\_,

and called them all \_active\_. 11. He reduces the \_moods\_ to \_three\_, and

the \_tenses\_ to \_three\_; and so did Dalton, in the very same words. Fisher

also made the \_tenses three\_, but said there \_are no moods\_ in English. 12.

He makes the \_imperative mood\_ always \_future\_; and so did Harris, in 1751.

Nor did the doctrine originate with him; for Brightland, a hundred years

ago, [about 1706,] ascribed it to some of his predecessors. 13. He reduces

the whole of our \_syntax\_ to about \_thirty lines\_; and two thirds of these

are useless; for Dr. Johnson expressed it quite as fully in \_ten\_. But

their explanations are both good for nothing; and Wallis, more wisely,

omitted it altogether."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. ii, p. 59.

26. Dr. Webster says, in a marginal note to the preface of his

Philosophical Grammar, "Since the days of \_Wallis\_, who published a Grammar

of the English Language, in Latin, in the reign of Charles II.[,] from

which Johnson and Lowth borrowed most of their rules, \_little improvement\_

has been made in English grammar. Lowth supplied some valuable criticisms,

most of which however respect obsolete phrases; but many of his criticisms

are extremely erroneous, and they have had an ill effect, in perverting the

true idioms of our language. Priestley furnished a number of new and useful

observations on the peculiar phrases of the English language. To which may

be added some good remarks of Blair and Campbell, interspersed with many

errors. Murray, not having mounted to the original sources of information,

and professing only to select and arrange the rules and criticisms of

preceding writers, has furnished little or nothing new. Of the numerous

compilations of inferior character, it may be affirmed, that they have

added nothing to the stock of grammatical knowledge." And the concluding

sentence of this work, as well as of his Improved Grammar, published in

1831, extends the censure as follows: "It is not the English language only

whose history and principles are yet to be illustrated; but the grammars

and dictionaries of \_all other\_ languages, with which I have any

acquaintance, must be revised and corrected, before their elements and true

construction can be fully understood." In an advertisement to the grammar

prefixed to his quarto American Dictionary, the Doctor is yet more severe

upon books of this sort. "I close," says he, "with the single remark, that

from all the observations I have been able to make, I am convinced the

dictionaries and grammars which have been used in our seminaries of

learning for the last forty or fifty years, are \_so incorrect and

imperfect\_ that they have introduced or sanctioned more errors than they

have amended; in other words, had the people of England and of these States

been left to learn the pronunciation and construction of their vernacular

language solely by tradition, and the reading of good authors, the language

would have been spoken and written with more purity than it has been and

now is, by those who have learned to adjust their language by the rules

which dictionaries prescribe."

27. Little and much are but relative terms; yet when we look back to the

period in which English grammar was taught only in Latin, it seems

extravagant to say, that "little improvement has been made" in it since. I

have elsewhere expressed a more qualified sentiment. "That the grammar of

our language has made considerable progress since the days of Swift, who

wrote a petty treatise on the subject, is sufficiently evident; but whoever

considers what remains to be done, cannot but perceive how ridiculous are

many of the boasts and felicitations which we have heard on that topic."

[77] Some further notice will now be taken of that progress, and of the

writers who have been commonly considered the chief promoters of it, but

especially of such as have not been previously mentioned in a like

connexion. Among these may be noticed \_William Walker\_, the preceptor of

Sir Isaac Newton, a teacher and grammarian of extraordinary learning, who

died in 1684. He has left us sundry monuments of his taste and critical

skill: one is his "Treatise of English Particles,"--a work of great labour

and merit, but useless to most people now-a-days, because it explains the

English in Latin; an other, his "Art of Teaching Improv'd,"--which is also

an able treatise, and apparently well adapted to its object, "the Grounding

of a Young Scholar in the Latin Tongue." In the latter, are mentioned other

works of his, on "\_Rhetorick\_, and \_Logick\_" which I have not seen.

28. In 1706, \_Richard Johnson\_ published an octavo volume of more than four

hundred pages, entitled, "Grammatical Commentaries; being an Apparatus to a

New National Grammar: by way of animadversion upon the falsities,

obscurities, redundancies and defects of Lily's System now in use." This is

a work of great acuteness, labour, and learning; and might be of signal use

to any one who should undertake to prepare a new or improved Latin grammar:

of which, in my opinion, we have yet urgent need. The English grammarian

may also peruse it with advantage, if he has a good knowledge of Latin--and

without such knowledge he must be ill prepared for his task. This work is

spoken of and quoted by some of the early English grammarians; but the

hopes of the writer do not appear to have been realized. His book was not

calculated to supply the place of the common one; for the author thought it

impracticable to make a new grammar, suitable for boys, and at the same

time to embrace in it proofs sufficient to remove the prejudices of

teachers in favour of the old. King Henry's edict in support of Lily, was

yet in force, backed by all the partiality which long habit creates; and

Johnson's learning, and labour, and zeal, were admired, and praised, and

soon forgot.

29. Near the beginning of the last century, some of the generous wits of

the reign of Queen Anne, seeing the need there was of greater attention to

their vernacular language, and of a grammar more properly English than any

then in use, produced a book with which the later writers on the same

subjects, would have done well to have made themselves better acquainted.

It is entitled "A Grammar of the English Tongue; with the Arts of Logick,

Rhetorick, Poetry, &c. Illustrated with useful Notes; giving the Grounds

and Reasons of Grammar in General. The Whole making a Compleat System of an

English Education. \_Published by\_ JOHN BRIGHTLAND, for the Use of the

Schools of Great Britain and Ireland." It is ingeniously recommended in a

certificate by Sir Richard Steele, or the Tattler, under the fictitious

name of Isaac Bickerstaff, Esq., and in a poem of forty-three lines, by

Nahum Tate, poet laureate to her Majesty. It is a duodecimo volume of three

hundred pages; a work of no inconsiderable merit and originality; and

written in a style which, though not faultless, has scarcely been surpassed

by any English grammarian since. I quote it as Brightland's:[78] who were

the real authors, does not appear. It seems to be the work of more than

one, and perhaps the writers of the Tattler were the men. My copy is of the

seventh edition, London, printed for Henry Lintot, 1746. It is evidently

the work of very skillful hands; yet is it not in all respects well planned

or well executed. It unwisely reduces the parts of speech to four; gives

them new names; and rejects more of the old system than the schools could

be made willing to give up. Hence it does not appear to have been very

extensively adopted.

30. It is now about a hundred and thirty years, since \_Dr. Swift\_, in a

public remonstrance addressed to the Earl of Oxford, complained of the

imperfect state of our language, and alleged in particular, that "in many

instances it offended against every part of grammar." [79] Fifty years

afterward, \_Dr. Lowth\_ seconded this complaint, and pressed it home upon

the polite and the learned. "Does he mean," says the latter, "that the

English language, as it is spoken by the politest part of the nation, and

as it stands in the writings of the most approved authors, often offends

against every part of grammar? \_Thus far, I am afraid the charge is

true\_."--\_Lowth's Grammar, Preface\_, p. iv. Yet the learned Doctor, to whom

much praise has been justly ascribed for the encouragement which he gave to

this neglected study, attempted nothing more than "A Short Introduction to

English Grammar;" which, he says, "was calculated for the learner \_even of

the lowest class\_:" and those who would enter more deeply into the subject,

he referred to \_Harris\_; whose work is not an English grammar, but "A

Philosophical Inquiry concerning Universal Grammar." Lowth's Grammar was

first published in 1758. At the commencement of his preface, the reverend

author, after acknowledging the enlargement, polish, and refinement, which

the language had received during the preceding two hundred years, ventures

to add, "but, whatever other improvements it may have received, it hath

made \_no advances\_ in grammatical accuracy." I do not quote this assertion

to affirm it literally true, in all its apparent breadth; but there is less

reason to boast of the correctness even now attained, than to believe that

the writers on grammar are not the authors who have in general come nearest

to it in practice. Nor have the ablest authors always produced the best

compends for the literary instruction of youth.

31. The treatises of the learned doctors Harris, Lowth, Johnson, Ash,

Priestley, Horne Tooke, Crombie, Coote, and Webster, owe their celebrity

not so much to their intrinsic fitness for school instruction, as to the

literary reputation of the writers. Of \_Harris's Hermes\_, (which, in

comparison with our common grammars, is indeed a work of much ingenuity and

learning, full of interesting speculations, and written with great elegance

both of style and method,) \_Dr. Lowth\_ says, it is "the most beautiful and

perfect example of analysis, that has been exhibited since the days of

Aristotle."--\_Preface to Gram.\_, p. x. But these two authors, if their

works be taken together, as the latter intended they should be, supply no

sufficient course of English grammar. The instructions of the one are too

limited, and those of the other are not specially directed to the subject.

32. \_Dr. Johnson\_, who was practically one of the greatest grammarians that

ever lived, and who was very nearly coetaneous with both Harris and Lowth,

speaks of the state of English grammar in the following terms: "I found our

speech copious without order, and energetick \_without rules\_: wherever I

turned my view, there was perplexity to be disentangled, and confusion to

be regulated."--\_Preface to Dict.\_, p. 1. Again: "Having therefore \_no

assistance but from general grammar\_, I applied myself to the perusal of

our writers; and noting whatever might be of use to ascertain or illustrate

any word or phrase, accumulated in time the materials of a

dictionary."--\_Ibid.\_ But it is not given to any one man to do every thing;

else, Johnson had done it. His object was, to compile a dictionary, rather

than to compose a grammar, of our language. To lexicography, grammar is

necessary, as a preparation; but, as a purpose, it is merely incidental.

Dr. Priestley speaks of Johnson thus: "I must not conclude this preface,

without making my acknowledgements to Mr. \_Johnson\_, whose admirable

dictionary has been of the greatest use to me in the study of our language.

It is pity he had not formed as just, and as extensive an idea of English

grammar. Perhaps this very useful work may still be reserved for his

distinguished abilities in this way."--\_Priestley's Grammar, Preface\_, p.

xxiii. Dr. Johnson's English Grammar is all comprised in fourteen pages,

and of course it is very deficient. The syntax he seems inclined entirely

to omit, as (he says) Wallis did, and Ben Jonson had better done; but, for

form's sake, he condescends to bestow upon it ten short lines.

33. My point here is, that the best grammarians have left much to be done

by him who may choose to labour for the further improvement of English

grammar; and that a man may well deserve comparative praise, who has not

reached perfection in a science like this. Johnson himself committed many

errors, some of which I shall hereafter expose; yet I cannot conceive that

the following judgement of his works was penned without some bias of

prejudice: "Johnson's merit ought not to be denied to him; but his

dictionary is the most imperfect and faulty, and the least valuable \_of

any\_[80] of his productions; and that share of merit which it possesses,

makes it by so much the more hurtful. I rejoice, however, that though the

least valuable, he found it the most profitable: for I could never read his

preface without shedding a tear. And yet it must be confessed, that his

\_grammar\_ and \_history\_ and \_dictionary\_ of what \_he calls\_ the English

language, are in all respects (except the bulk of the \_latter\_[81]) most

truly contemptible performances; and a reproach to the learning and

industry of a nation which could receive them with the slightest

approbation. Nearly one third of this dictionary is as much the language of

the Hottentots as of the English; and it would be no difficult matter so to

translate any one of the plainest and most popular numbers of the

\_Spectator\_ into the language of this dictionary, that no mere Englishman,

though well read in his own language, would he able to comprehend one

sentence of it. It appears to be a work of labour, and yet is in truth one

of the most idle performances ever offered to the public; compiled by an

author who possessed not one single requisite for the undertaking, and

(being a publication of a set of booksellers) owing its success to that

very circumstance which alone must make it impossible that it should

deserve success."--\_Tooke's Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 182.

34. \_Dr. Ash's\_ "Grammatical Institutes, or Easy Introduction to Dr.

Lowth's English Grammar," is a meagre performance, the ease of which

consists in nothing but its brevity. \_Dr. Priestley\_, who in the preface to

his third edition acknowledges his obligations to Johnson, and also to

Lowth, thought it premature to attempt an English grammar; and contented

himself with publishing a few brief "Rudiments," with a loose appendix

consisting of "Notes and Observations, for the use of those who have made

some proficiency in the language." He says, "With respect to our own

language, there seems to be a kind of claim upon all who make use of it, to

do something for its improvement; and the best thing we can do for this

purpose at present, is, to exhibit its actual structure, and the varieties

with which it is used. When these are once distinctly pointed out, and

generally attended to, the best forms of speech, and those which are most

agreeable to the analogy of the language, will soon recommend themselves,

and come into general use; and when, by this means, the language shall be

written with sufficient uniformity, we may hope to see a complete grammar

of it. At present, \_it is by no means ripe for such a work\_;[82] but we may

approximate to it very fast, if all persons who are qualified to make

remarks upon it, will give a little attention to the subject. In such a

case, a few years might be sufficient to complete it."--\_Priestley's

Grammar, Preface\_, p. xv. In point of time, both Ash and Priestley

expressly claim priority to Lowth, for their first editions; but the former

having allowed his work to be afterwards entitled an Introduction to

Lowth's, and the latter having acknowledged some improvements in his from

the same source, they have both been regarded as later authors.

35. The great work of the learned etymologist \_John Horne Tooke\_, consists

of two octavo volumes, entitled, "EPEA PTEROENTA, or the Diversions of

Purley." This work explains, with admirable sagacity, the origin and

primitive import of many of the most common yet most obscure English words;

and is, for that reason, a valuable performance. But as it contains nothing

respecting the construction of the language, and embraces no proper system

of grammatical doctrines, it is a great error to suppose that the common

principles of practical grammar ought to give place to such instructions,

or even be modelled according to what the author proves to be true in

respect to the origin of particular words. The common grammarians were less

confuted by him, than many of his readers have imagined; and it ought not

to be forgotten that his purpose was as different from theirs, as are their

schemes of Grammar from the plan of his critical "Diversions." In this

connexion may be mentioned an other work of similar size and purpose, but

more comprehensive in design; the "History of European Languages," by that

astonishing linguist the late \_Dr. Alexander Murray\_. This work was left

unfinished by its lamented author; but it will remain a monument of

erudition never surpassed, acquired in spite of wants and difficulties as

great as diligence ever surmounted. Like Tooke's volumes, it is however of

little use to the mere English scholar. It can be read to advantage only by

those who are acquainted with several other languages. The works of

\_Crombie\_ and \_Coote\_ are more properly essays or dissertations, than

elementary systems of grammar.

36. The number of English grammars has now become so very great, that not

even a general idea of the comparative merits or defects of each can here

be given. I have examined with some diligence all that I have had

opportunity to obtain; but have heard of several which I have never yet

seen. Whoever is curious to examine at large what has been published on

this subject, and thus to qualify himself to judge the better of any new

grammar, may easily make a collection of one or two hundred bearing

different names. There are also many works not called grammars, from which

our copyists have taken large portions of their compilations. Thus Murray

confessedly copied from ten authors; five of whom are Beattie, Sheridan,

Walker, Blair, and Campbell. Dr. Beattie, who acquired great celebrity as a

teacher, poet, philosopher, and logician, was well skilled in grammar; but

he treated the subject only in critical disquisitions, and not in any

distinct elementary work adapted to general use. Sheridan and Walker, being

lexicographers, confined themselves chiefly to orthography and

pronunciation. Murray derived sundry principles from the writings of each;

but the English Grammar prepared by the latter, was written, I think,

several years later than Murray's. The learned doctors Blair and Campbell

wrote on rhetoric, and not on the elementary parts of grammar. Of the two,

the latter is by far the more accurate writer. Blair is fluent and easy,

but he furnishes not a little false syntax; Campbell's Philosophy of

Rhetoric is a very valuable treatise. To these, and five or six other

authors whom I have noticed, was Lindley Murray "principally indebted for

his materials." Thus far of the famous contributors to English grammar. The

Lectures on Rhetoric and Oratory, delivered at Harvard University by John

Quincy Adams, and published in two octavo volumes in 1810, are such as do

credit even to that great man; but they descend less to verbal criticism,

and enter less into the peculiar province of the grammarian, than do most

other works of a similar title.

37. Some of the most respectable authors or compilers of more general

systems of English grammar for the use of schools, are the writer of the

British Grammar, Bicknell, Buchanan, William Ward, Alexander Murray the

schoolmaster, Mennye, Fisher, Lindley Murray, Penning, W. Allen, Grant,

David Blair, Lennie, Guy, Churchill. To attempt any thing like a review or

comparative estimate of these, would protract this introduction beyond all

reasonable bounds; and still others would be excluded, which are perhaps

better entitled to notice. Of mere modifiers and abridgers, the number is

so great, and the merit or fame so little, that I will not trespass upon

the reader's patience by any further mention of them or their works.

Whoever takes an accurate and comprehensive view of the history and present

state of this branch of learning, though he may not conclude, with Dr.

Priestley, that it is premature to attempt a complete grammar of the

language, can scarcely forbear to coincide with Dr. Barrow, in the opinion

that among all the treatises heretofore produced no such grammar is found.

"Some superfluities have been expunged, some mistakes have been rectified,

and some obscurities have been cleared; still, however, that all the

grammars used in our different schools, public as well as private, are

disgraced by errors or defects, is a complaint as just as it is frequent

and loud."--\_Barrow's Essays\_, p. 83.

38. Whether, in what I have been enabled to do, there will be found a

remedy for this complaint, must be referred to the decision of others. Upon

the probability of effecting this, I have been willing to stake some

labour; how much, and with what merit, let the candid and discerning, when

they shall have examined for themselves, judge. It is certain that we have

hitherto had, of our language, no complete grammar. The need of such a work

I suppose to be at this time in no small degree felt, especially by those

who conduct our higher institutions of learning; and my ambition has been

to produce one which might deservedly stand along side of the Port-Royal

Latin and Greek Grammars, or of the Grammaire des Grammaires of Girault Du

Vivier. If this work is unworthy to aspire to such rank, let the patrons of

English literature remember that the achievement of my design is still a

desideratum. We surely have no other book which might, in any sense, have

been called "\_the Grammar of English Grammars\_;" none, which, either by

excellence, or on account of the particular direction of its criticism,

might take such a name. I have turned the eyes of Grammar, in an especial

manner, upon the conduct of her own household; and if, from this volume,

the reader acquire a more just idea of \_the grammar\_ which is displayed in

\_English grammars\_, he will discover at least one reason for the title

which has been bestowed upon the work. Such as the book is, I present it to

the public, without pride, without self-seeking, and without anxiety:

knowing that most of my readers will be interested in estimating it

\_justly\_; that no true service, freely rendered to learning, can fail of

its end; and that no achievement merits aught with Him who graciously

supplies all ability. The opinions expressed in it have been formed with

candour, and are offered with submission. If in any thing they are

erroneous, there are those who can detect their faults. In the language of

an ancient master, the earnest and assiduous \_Despauter\_, I invite the

correction of the candid: "Nos quoque, quantumcunque diligentes, cùm a

candidis tùm a lividis carpemur: a candidis interdum justè; quos oro, ut de

erratis omnibus amicè me admoneant--erro nonnunquam quia homo sum."

GOOLD BROWN.

\_New York\_, 1836.

THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

Grammar, as an art, is the power of reading, writing, and speaking

correctly. As an acquisition, it is the essential skill of scholarship. As

a study, it is the practical science which teaches the right use of

language.

\_An English Grammar\_ is a book which professes to explain the nature and

structure of the English language; and to show, on just authority, what is,

and what is not, good English.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR, in itself, is the art of reading, writing, and speaking

the English language correctly. It implies, in the adept, such knowledge as

enables him to avoid improprieties of speech; to correct any errors that

may occur in literary compositions; and to parse, or explain grammatically,

whatsoever is rightly written.

\_To read\_ is to perceive what is written or printed, so as to understand

the words, and be able to utter them with their proper sounds.

\_To write\_ is to express words and thoughts by letters, or characters,

made with a pen or other instrument.

\_To speak\_ is to utter words orally, in order that they may be heard and

understood.

Grammar, like every other liberal art, can be properly taught only by a

regular analysis, or systematic elucidation, of its component parts or

principles; and these parts or principles must be made known chiefly by

means of definitions and examples, rules and exercises.

A \_perfect definition\_ of any thing or class of things is such a

description of it, as distinguishes that entire thing or class from every

thing else, by briefly telling \_what it is\_.

An \_example\_ is a particular instance or model, serving to prove or

illustrate some given proposition or truth.

A \_rule of grammar\_ is some law, more or less general, by which custom

regulates and prescribes the right use of language.

An \_exercise\_ is some technical performance required of the learner in

order to bring his knowledge and skill into practice.

LANGUAGE, in the primitive sense of the term, embraced only vocal

expression, or human speech uttered by the mouth; but after letters were

invented to represent articulate sounds, language became twofold, \_spoken\_

and \_written\_, so that the term, \_language\_, now signifies, \_any series of

sounds or letters formed into words and employed for the expression of

thought.\_

Of the composition of language we have also two kinds, \_prose\_ and \_verse\_;

the latter requiring a certain number and variety of syllables in each

line, but the former being free from any such restraint.

The \_least parts\_ of written language are letters; of spoken language,

syllables; of language significant in each part, words; of language

combining thought, phrases; of language subjoining sense, clauses; of

language coördinating sense, members; of language completing sense,

sentences.

A discourse, or narration, of any length, is but a series of sentences;

which, when written, must be separated by the proper points, that the

meaning and relation of all the words may be quickly and clearly perceived

by the reader, and the whole be uttered as the sense requires.

In extended compositions, a sentence is usually less than a paragraph; a

paragraph, less than a section; a section, less than a chapter; a chapter,

less than a book; a book, less than a volume; and a volume, less than the

entire work.

The common order of \_literary division\_, then, is; of a large work, into

volumes; of volumes, into books; of books, into chapters; of chapters, into

sections; of sections, into paragraphs; of paragraphs, into sentences; of

sentences, into members; of members, into clauses; of clauses, into

phrases; of phrases, into words; of words, into syllables; of syllables,

into letters.

But it rarely happens that any one work requires the use of all these

divisions; and we often assume some natural distinction and order of parts,

naming each as we find it; and also subdivide into articles, verses,

cantoes, stanzas, and other portions, as the nature of the subject

suggests.

Grammar is divided into four parts; namely, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax,

and Prosody.

Orthography treats of letters, syllables, separate words, and spelling.

Etymology treats of the different \_parts of speech\_, with their classes and

modifications.

Syntax treats of the relation, agreement, government, and arrangement of

words in sentences.

Prosody treats of punctuation, utterance, figures, and versification.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In the Introduction to this work, have been taken many views of

the study, or general science, of grammar; many notices of its history,

with sundry criticisms upon its writers or critics; and thus language has

often been presented to the reader's consideration, either as a whole, or

with broader scope than belongs to the teaching of its particular forms. We

come now to the work of \_analyzing\_ our own tongue, and of laying down

those special rules and principles which should guide us in the use of it,

whether in speech or in writing. The author intends to dissent from other

grammarians no more than they are found to dissent from truth and reason;

nor will he expose their errors further than is necessary for the credit of

the science and the information of the learner. A candid critic can have no

satisfaction merely in finding fault with other men's performances. But the

facts are not to be concealed, that many pretenders to grammar have shown

themselves exceedingly superficial in their knowledge, as well as slovenly

in their practice; and that many vain composers of books have proved

themselves \_despisers\_ of this study, by the abundance of their

inaccuracies, and the obviousness of their solecisms.

OBS. 2.--Some grammarians have taught that the word \_language\_ is of much

broader signification, than that which is given to it in the definition

above. I confine it to speech and writing. For the propriety of this

limitation, and against those authors who describe the thing otherwise, I

appeal to the common sense of mankind. One late writer defines it thus:

"LANGUAGE is \_any means\_ by which one \_person\_ communicates his \_ideas\_ to

\_another\_."--\_Sanders's Spelling-Book\_, p. 7. The following is the

explanation of an other slack thinker: "One may, by speaking or by writing,

(and sometimes \_by motions\_,) communicate his thoughts to others. \_The

process\_ by which this is done, is called LANGUAGE.--\_Language\_ is \_the

expression\_ of thought \_and feeling\_."--\_S. W. Clark's Practical Gram.\_, p.

7. Dr. Webster goes much further, and says, "LANGUAGE, in its most

extensive sense, is the instrument or means of communicating ideas \_and

affections\_ of the mind \_and body\_, from one \_animal to another\_. In this

sense, \_brutes possess the power of language\_; for by various inarticulate

sounds, they make known their wants, desires, and sufferings."--

\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 11; \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 5. This latter

definition the author of that vain book, "\_the District School\_," has

adopted in his chapter on Grammar. Sheridan, the celebrated actor and

orthoëpist, though he seems to confine language to the human species, gives

it such an extension as to make words no necessary part of its essence.

"The first thought," says he, "that would occur to every one, who had not

properly considered the point, is, that language is composed of words. And

yet, this is so far from being an adequate idea of language, that the point

in which most men think its very essence to consist, is not even a

necessary property of language. For language, in its full extent, means,

any way or method whatsoever, by which \_all that passes in the mind of one

man\_, may be manifested to another."--\_Sheridan's Lectures on Elocution\_,

p. 129. Again: "I have already \_shown\_, that words are, in their own

nature, \_no essential part of language\_, and are only considered so through

custom."--\_Ib.\_ p. 135.

OBS. 3.--According to S. Kirkham's notion, "LANGUAGE, in its most extensive

sense, implies those signs by which \_men and brutes\_, communicate \_to each

other\_ their thoughts, affections and desires."--\_Kirkham's English Gram.\_,

p. 16. Again: "\_The language of brutes\_ consists in the use of those

inarticulate sounds by which they express \_their thoughts and

affections\_."--\_Ib.\_ To me it seems a shameful abuse of speech, and a vile

descent from the dignity of grammar, to make the voices of "\_brutes\_" any

part of language, as taken in a literal sense. We might with far more

propriety raise our conceptions of it to the spheres above, and construe

literally the metaphors of David, who ascribes to the starry heavens, both

"\_speech\_" and "\_language\_," "\_voice\_" and "\_words\_," daily "\_uttered\_" and

everywhere "\_heard\_." See \_Psalm\_ xix.

OBS. 4.--But, strange as it may seem, Kirkham, commencing his instructions

with the foregoing definition of language, proceeds to divide it, agreeably

to this notion, into two sorts, \_natural\_ and \_artificial\_; and affirms

that the former "is common both to man and brute," and that the language

which is peculiar to man, the language which consists of \_words\_, is

altogether an \_artificial invention\_:[83] thereby contradicting at once a

host of the most celebrated grammarians and philosophers, and that without

appearing to know it. But this is the less strange, since he immediately

forgets his own definition and division of the subject, and as plainly

contradicts himself. Without limiting the term at all, without excluding

his fanciful "\_language of brutes\_," he says, on the next leaf, "\_Language\_

is \_conventional\_, and not only \_invented\_, but, in its progressive

advancement, \_varied for purposes of practical convenience\_. Hence it

assumes \_any and every form\_ which those who make use of it, choose to give

it."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 18. This, though scarcely more rational than

his "\_natural language of men and brutes\_," plainly annihilates that

questionable section of grammatical science, whether brutal or human, by

making all language a thing "\_conventional\_" and "\_invented\_." In short, it

leaves no ground at all for any grammatical science of a positive

character, because it resolves all forms of language into the irresponsible

will of those who utter any words, sounds, or noises.

OBS. 5.--Nor is this gentleman more fortunate in his explanation of what

may really be called language. On one page, he says, "\_Spoken language\_ or

\_speech\_, is made up of articulate sounds uttered by the human

voice."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 17. On the next, "The most important use of

\_that faculty called speech\_, is, to convey our thoughts to

others."--\_Ib.\_, p. 18. Thus the grammarian who, in the same short

paragraph, seems to "defy the ingenuity of man to give his words any other

meaning than that which he himself intends \_them to express\_," (\_Ib.\_, p.

19,) either writes so badly as to make any ordinary false syntax appear

trivial, or actually conceives man to be the inventor of one of his own

\_faculties\_. Nay, docs he not make man the contriver of that "natural

language" which he possesses "in common with the brutes?" a language "\_The

meaning of which\_," he says, "\_all the different animals perfectly

understand\_?"--See his \_Gram.\_, p. 16. And if this notion again be true,

does it not follow, that a horse knows perfectly well what horned cattle

mean by their bellowing, or a flock of geese by their gabbling? I should

not have noticed these things, had not the book which teaches them, been

made popular by \_a thousand\_ imposing attestations to its excellence and

accuracy. For grammar has nothing at all to do with inarticulate voices, or

the imaginary languages of \_brutes\_. It is scope enough for one science to

explain all the languages, dialects, and speeches, that lay claim to

\_reason\_. We need not enlarge the field, by descending

"To beasts, whom[84] God on their creation-day

Created mute to all articulate sound."--\_Milton\_.[85]

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, syllables, separate words, and spelling.

CHAPTER I.--OF LETTERS.

A \_Letter\_ is an alphabetic character, which commonly represents some

elementary sound of the human voice, some element of speech.

An elementary sound of the human voice, or an element of speech, is one of

the simple sounds which compose a spoken language. The sound of a letter is

commonly called its \_power\_: when any letter of a word is not sounded, it

is said to be \_silent\_ or \_mute.\_ The letters in the English alphabet, are

twenty-six; the simple or primary sounds which they represent, are about

thirty-six or thirty-seven.

A knowledge of the letters consists in an acquaintance with these \_four

sorts of things\_; their \_names\_, their \_classes\_, their \_powers\_, and their

\_forms\_.

The letters are written, or printed, or painted, or engraved, or embossed,

in an infinite variety of shapes and sizes; and yet are always \_the same\_,

because their essential properties do not change, and their names, classes,

and powers, are mostly permanent.

The following are some of the different sorts of types, or styles of

letters, with which every reader should be early acquainted:--

1. The Roman: A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k, L l, M

m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z z.

2. The Italic: \_A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k, L l,

M m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z z.\_

3. The Script: [Script: A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K

k, L l, M m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x, Y y, Z

z.]

4. The Old English: [Old English: A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I

i, J j, K k, L l, M m, N n, o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v, W w, X x,

Y y, Z z.]

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A letter \_consists\_ not in the figure only, or in the power only,

but in the figure and power united; as an ambassador consists not in the

man only, or in the commission only, but in the man commissioned. The

figure and the power, therefore, are necessary to constitute the letter;

and a name is as necessary, to call it by, teach it, or tell what it is.

The \_class\_ of a letter is determined by the nature of its power, or sound;

as the ambassador is plenipotentiary or otherwise, according to the extent

of his commission. To all but the deaf and dumb, written language is the

representative of that which is spoken; so that, in the view of people in

general, the powers of the letters are habitually identified with their

sounds, and are conceived to be nothing else. Hence any given sound, or

modification of sound, which all men can produce at pleasure, when

arbitrarily associated with a written sign, or conventional character,

constitutes what is called \_a letter\_. Thus we may produce the sounds of

\_a, e, o\_, then, by a particular compression of the organs of utterance,

modify them all, into \_ba, be, bo\_, or \_fa, fe, fo\_; and we shall see that

\_a, e\_, and \_o\_, are letters of one sort, and \_b\_ and \_f\_ of an other. By

\_elementary\_ or \_articulate\_ sounds,[86] then, we mean not only the simple

tones of the voice itself, but the modifying stops and turns which are

given them in speech, and marked by letters: the real voices constituting

vowels; and their modifications, consonants.

OBS. 2.--A mere mark to which no sound or power is ever given, cannot be a

letter; though it may, like the marks used for punctuation, deserve a name

and a place in grammar. Commas, semicolons, and the like, represent

\_silence\_, rather than sounds, and are therefore not letters. Nor are the

Arabic figures, which represent entire \_words\_, nor again any symbols

standing for \_things\_, (as the astronomic marks for the sun, the moon, the

planets,) to be confounded with letters; because the representative of any

word or number, of any name or thing, differs widely in its power, from the

sign of a simple elementary sound: i. e., from any constituent \_part\_ of a

written word. The first letter of a word or name does indeed sometimes

stand for the whole, and is still a letter; but it is so, as being the

first element of the word, and not as being the representative of the

whole.

OBS. 3.--In their definitions of vowels and consonants, many grammarians

have resolved letters into \_sounds only\_; as, "A Vowel is an articulate

\_sound\_," &c.--"A Consonant is an articulate \_sound\_," &c.--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 7. But this confounding of the visible signs with the things

which they signify, is very far from being a true account of either.

Besides, letters combined are capable of a certain mysterious power which

is independent of all sound, though speech, doubtless, is what they

properly represent. In practice, almost all the letters may occasionally

happen to be \_silent\_; yet are they not, in these cases, necessarily

useless. The deaf and dumb also, to whom none of the letters express or

represent sounds, may be taught to read and write understandingly. They

even learn in some way to distinguish the accented from the unaccented

syllables, and to have some notion of \_quantity\_, or of something else

equivalent to it; for some of them, it is said, can compose verses

according to the rules of prosody. Hence it would appear, that the powers

of the letters are not, of necessity, identified with their sounds; the

things being in some respect distinguishable, though the terms are commonly

taken as synonymous. The fact is, that a word, whether spoken or written,

is of itself \_significant\_, whether its corresponding form be known or not.

Hence, in the one form, it may be perfectly intelligible to the illiterate,

and in the other, to the educated deaf and dumb; while, to the learned who

hear and speak, either form immediately suggests the other, with the

meaning common to both.

OBS. 4.--Our knowledge of letters rises no higher than to the forms used by

the ancient Hebrews and Phoenicians. Moses is supposed to have written in

characters which were nearly the same as those called Samaritan, but his

writings have come to us in an alphabet more beautiful and regular, called

the Chaldee or Chaldaic, which is said to have been made by Ezra the

scribe, when he wrote out a new copy of the law, after the rebuilding of

the temple. Cadmus carried the Phoenician alphabet into Greece, where it

was subsequently altered and enlarged. The small letters were not invented

till about the seventh century of our era. The Latins, or Romans, derived

most of their capitals from the Greeks; but their small letters, if they

had any, were made afterwards among themselves. This alphabet underwent

various changes, and received very great improvements, before it became

that beautiful series of characters which we now use, under the name of

\_Roman letters\_. Indeed these particular forms, which are now justly

preferred by many nations, are said to have been adopted after the

invention of printing. "The Roman letters were first used by Sweynheim and

Pannartz, printers who settled at Rome, in 1467. The earliest work printed

wholly in this character in England, is said to have been Lily's or Paul's

Accidence, printed by Richard Pinson, 1518. The Italic letters were

invented by Aldus Manutius at Rome, towards the close of the fifteenth

century, and were first used in an edition of Virgil, in

1501."--\_Constables Miscellany\_, Vol. xx, p. 147. The Saxon alphabet was

mostly Roman. Not more than one quarter of the letters have other forms.

But the changes, though few, give to a printed page a very different

appearance. Under William the Conqueror, this alphabet was superseded by

the modern Gothic, Old English, or Black letter; which, in its turn,

happily gave place to the present Roman. The Germans still use a type

similar to the Old English, but not so heavy.

OBS. 5.--I have suggested that a true knowledge of the letters implies an

acquaintance with their \_names\_, their \_classes\_, their \_powers\_, and their

\_forms\_. Under these four heads, therefore, I shall briefly present what

seems most worthy of the learner's attention at first, and shall reserve

for the appendix a more particular account of these important elements. The

most common and the most useful things are not those about which we are in

general most inquisitive. Hence many, who think themselves sufficiently

acquainted with the letters, do in fact know but very little about them. If

a person is able to read some easy book, he is apt to suppose he has no

more to learn respecting the letters; or he neglects the minute study of

these elements, because he sees what words they make, and can amuse himself

with stories of things more interesting. But merely to understand common

English, is a very small qualification for him who aspires to scholarship,

and especially for a \_teacher\_. For one may do this, and even be a great

reader, without ever being able to name the letters properly, or to

pronounce such syllables as \_ca, ce, ci, co, cu, cy\_, without getting half

of them wrong. No one can ever teach an art more perfectly than he has

learned it; and if we neglect the \_elements\_ of grammar, our attainments

must needs be proportionately unsettled and superficial.

I. NAMES OF THE LETTERS. The \_names\_ of the letters, as now commonly spoken

and written in English, are \_A, Bee, Cee, Dee, E, Eff, Gee, Aitch, I, Jay,

Kay, Ell, Em, En, O, Pee, Kue, Ar, Ess, Tee, U, Vee, Double-u, Ex, Wy,

Zee\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--With the learning and application of these names, our literary

education begins; with a continual rehearsal of them in spelling, it is for

a long time carried on; nor can we ever dispense with them, but by

substituting others, or by ceasing to mention the things thus named. What

is obviously indispensable, needs no proof of its importance. But I know

not whether it has ever been noticed, that these names, like those of the

days of the week, are worthy of particular distinction, for their own

nature. They are words of a very peculiar kind, being nouns that are at

once \_both proper and common\_. For, in respect to rank, character, and

design, each letter is a thing strictly individual and identical--that is,

it is ever one and the same; yet, in an other respect, it is a

comprehensive sort, embracing individuals both various and numberless. Thus

every B is a \_b\_, make it as you will; and can be nothing else than that

same letter b, though you make it in a thousand different fashions, and

multiply it after each pattern innumerably. Here, then, we see

individuality combined at once with great diversity, and infinite

multiplicity; and it is \_to this combination\_, that letters owe their

wonderful power of transmitting thought. Their \_names\_, therefore, should

always be written with capitals, as proper nouns, at least in the singular

number; and should form the plural regularly, as ordinary appellatives.

Thus: (if we adopt the names now most generally used in English schools:)

\_A, Aes; Bee, Bees; Cee, Cees; Dee, Dees; E, Ees; Eff, Effs; Gee, Gees;

Aitch, Aitches; I, Ies; Jay, Jays; Kay, Kays; Ell, Ells; Em, Ems; En, Ens;

O, Oes; Pee, Pees; Kue, Kues; Ar, Ars; Ess, Esses; Tee, Tees; U, Ues; Vee,

Vees; Double-u, Double-ues; Ex, Exes; Wy, Wies; Zee, Zees.\_

OBS. 2.--The names of the letters, as expressed in the modern languages,

are mostly framed \_with reference\_ to their powers, or sounds. Yet is there

in English no letter of which the name is always identical with its power:

for \_A, E, I, O\_, and \_U\_, are the only letters which can name themselves,

and all these have other sounds than those which their names express. The

simple powers of the other letters are so manifestly insufficient to form

any name, and so palpable is the difference between the nature and the name

of each, that did we not know how education has been trifled with, it would

be hard to believe even Murray, when he says, "They are frequently

confounded by writers on grammar. Observations and reasonings on the

\_name\_, are often applied to explain the \_nature\_ of a consonant; and by

this means the student is led into error and perplexity."--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 8. The confounding of names with the things for which they

stand, implies, unquestionably, great carelessness in the use of speech,

and great indistinctness of apprehension in respect to things; yet so

common is this error, that Murray himself has many times fallen into

it.[87] Let the learner therefore be on his guard, remembering that

grammar, both in its study and in its practice, requires the constant

exercise of a rational discernment. Those letters which name themselves,

take for their names those sounds which they usually represent at the end

of an accented syllable; thus the names, \_A, E, I, O, U\_, are uttered with

the sounds given to the same letters in the first syllables of the other

names, \_Abel, Enoch, Isaac, Obed, Urim\_; or in the first syllables of the

common words, \_paper, penal, pilot, potent, pupil\_. The other letters, most

of which can never be perfectly sounded alone, have names in which their

powers are combined with other sounds more vocal; as, \_Bee, Cee, Dee,--Ell,

Em, En,--Jay, Kay, Kue\_. But in this respect the terms \_Aitch\_ and

\_Double-u\_ are irregular; because they have no obvious reference to the

powers of the letters thus named.

OBS. 3.--Letters, like all other things, must be learned and spoken of \_by

their names\_; nor can they be spoken of otherwise; yet, as the simple

characters are better known and more easily exhibited than their written

names, the former are often substituted for the latter, and are read as the

words for which they are assumed. Hence the orthography of these words has

hitherto been left too much to mere fancy or caprice. Our dictionaries, by

a strange oversight or negligence, do not recognize them as words; and

writers have in general spelled them with very little regard to either

authority or analogy. What they are, or ought to be, has therefore been

treated as a trifling question: and, what is still more surprising, several

authors of spelling-books make no mention at all of them; while others,

here at the very threshold of instruction, teach falsely--giving "\_he\_" for

\_Aitch\_, "\_er\_" for \_Ar\_, "\_oo\_" or "\_uu\_" for \_Double-u\_, "\_ye\_" for \_Wy\_,

and writing almost all the rest improperly. So that many persons who think

themselves well educated, would be greatly puzzled to name on paper these

simple elements of all learning. Nay, there can be found a hundred men who

can readily write the alphabetic names which were in use two or three

thousand years ago in Greece or Palestine, for one who can do the same

thing with propriety, respecting those which we now employ so constantly in

English:[88] and yet the words themselves are as familiar to every

school-boy's lips as are the characters to his eye. This fact may help to

convince us, that \_the grammar\_ of our language has never yet been

sufficiently taught. Among all the particulars which constitute this

subject, there are none which better deserve to be everywhere known, by

proper and determinate names, than these prime elements of all written

language.

OBS. 4.--Should it happen to be asked a hundred lustrums hence, what were

the names of the letters in "the Augustan age of English literature," or in

the days of William the Fourth and Andrew Jackson, I fear the learned of

that day will be as much at a loss for an answer, as would most of our

college tutors now, were they asked, by what series of names the Roman

youth were taught to spell. Might not Quintilian or Varro have obliged

many, by recording these? As it is, we are indebted to Priscian, a

grammarian of the sixth century, for almost all we know about them. But

even the information which may be had, on this point, has been strangely

overlooked by our common Latin grammarians.[89] What, but the greater care

of earlier writers, has made the Greek names better known or more important

than the Latin? In every nation that is not totally illiterate, custom must

have established for the letters a certain set of names, which are \_the

only true ones\_, and which are of course to be preferred to such as are

local or unauthorized. In this, however, as in other things, use may

sometimes vary, and possibly improve; but when its decisions are clear, no

feeble reason should be allowed to disturb them. Every parent, therefore,

who would have his children instructed to read and write the English

language, should see that in the first place they learn to name the letters

as they are commonly named in English. A Scotch gentleman of good education

informs me, that the names of the letters, as he first learned them in a

school in his own country, were these: "A, Ib, Ec, Id, E, Iff, Ig, Ich, I,

Ij, Ik, Ill, Im, In, O, Ip, Kue, Ir, Iss, It, U, Iv, Double-u, Ix, Wy, Iz;"

but that in the same school the English names are now used. It is to be

hoped, that all teachers will in time abandon every such local usage, and

name the letters \_as they ought to be named\_; and that the day will come,

in which the regular English \_orthography\_ of these terms, shall be

steadily preferred, ignorance of it be thought a disgrace, and the makers

of school-books feel no longer at liberty to alter names that are a

thousand times better known than their own.

OBS. 5.--It is not in respect to their \_orthography\_ alone, that these

first words in literature demand inquiry and reflection: the

\_pronunciation\_ of some of them has often been taught erroneously, and,

with respect to three or four of them, some writers have attempted to make

an entire change from the customary forms which I have recorded. Whether

the name of the first letter should be pronounced "\_Aye\_," as it is in

England, "\_Ah\_," as it is in Ireland, or "\_Aw\_," as it is in Scotland, is a

question which Walker has largely discussed, and clearly decided in favour

of the first sound; and this decision accords with the universal practice

of the schools in America. It is remarkable that this able critic, though

he treated minutely of the letters, naming them all in the outset of his

"Principles" subsequently neglected the names of them all, except the first

and the last. Of \_Zee\_, (which has also been called \_Zed, Zad, Izzard,

Uzzard, Izzet\_, and \_Iz\_,)[90] he says, "Its common name is \_izzard\_, which

Dr. Johnson explains into \_s hard\_; if, however, this is the meaning, it is

a gross misnomer; for the \_z\_ is not the hard, but the soft \_s\_;[91] but as

it has a less sharp, and therefore not so audible a sound, it is not

impossible \_but\_ it may mean \_s surd\_. \_Zed\_, borrowed from the French, is

the more fashionable name of this letter; but, in my opinion, \_not to be

admitted, because the names of the letters ought to have no

diversity.\_"--\_Walker's Principles\_, No. 483. It is true, the name of a

letter ought to be one, and in no respect diverse; but where diversity has

already obtained, and become firmly rooted in custom, is it to be obviated

by insisting upon what is old-fashioned, awkward, and inconvenient? Shall

the better usage give place to the worse? Uniformity cannot be so reached.

In this country, both \_Zed\_ and \_Izzard\_, as well as the worse forms \_Zad\_

and \_Uzzard\_, are now fairly superseded by the softer and better term

\_Zee\_; and whoever will spell aloud, with each of these names, a few such

words as \_dizzy, mizzen, gizzard\_, may easily perceive why none of the

former can ever be brought again into use. The other two, \_Iz\_ and \_Izzet\_,

being localisms, and not authorized English, I give up all six; \_Zed\_ to

the French, and the rest to oblivion.

OBS. 6.--By way of apology for noticing the name of the first letter,

Walker observes, "If a diversity of names to vowels did not confound us in

our spelling, or declaring to each other the component letters of a word,

it would be entirely needless to enter into \_so trifling a question\_ as the

mere name of a letter; but when we find ourselves unable to convey signs to

each other on account of this diversity of names, and that words themselves

are endangered by an improper utterance of their component parts, it seems

highly incumbent on us to attempt a uniformity in this point, which,

insignificant as it may seem, is undoubtedly the foundation of a just and

regular pronunciation."--\_Dict., under A\_. If diversity in this matter is

so perplexing, what shall we say to those who are attempting innovations

without assigning reasons, or even pretending authority? and if a knowledge

of these names is the basis of a just pronunciation, what shall we think of

him who will take no pains to ascertain how he ought to speak and write

them? He who pretends to teach the proper fashion of speaking and writing,

cannot deal honestly, if ever he silently prefer a suggested improvement,

to any established and undisturbed usage of the language; for, in grammar,

no individual authority can be a counterpoise to general custom. The best

usage can never be that which is little known, nor can it be well

ascertained and taught by him who knows little. Inquisitive minds are ever

curious to learn the nature, origin, and causes of things; and that

instruction is the most useful, which is best calculated to gratify this

rational curiosity. This is my apology for dwelling so long upon the

present topic.

OBS. 7.--The names originally given to the letters were not mere notations

of sound, intended solely to express or make known the powers of the

several characters then in use; nor ought even the modern names of our

present letters, though formed with special reference to their sounds, to

be considered such. Expressions of mere sound, such as the notations in a

pronouncing dictionary, having no reference to what is meant by the sound,

do not constitute words at all; because they are not those acknowledged

signs to which a meaning has been attached, and are consequently without

that significance which is an essential property of words. But, in every

language, there must be a series of sounds by which the alphabetical

characters are commonly known in speech; and which, as they are the

acknowledged names of these particular objects, must be entitled to a place

among \_the words\_ of the language. It is a great error to judge otherwise;

and a greater to make it a "trifling question" in grammar, whether a given

letter shall be called by one name or by an other. Who shall say that

\_Daleth, Delta\_, and \_Dee\_, are not three \_real words\_, each equally

important in the language to which it properly belongs? Such names have

always been in use wherever literature has been cultivated; and as the

forms and powers of the letters have been changed by the nations, and have

become different in different languages, there has necessarily followed a

change of the names. For, whatever inconvenience scholars may find in the

diversity which has thence arisen, to name these elements in a set of

foreign terms, inconsistent with the genius of the language to be learned,

would surely be attended with a tenfold greater. We derived our letters,

and their names too, from the Romans; but this is no good reason why the

latter should be spelled and pronounced as we suppose they were spelled and

pronounced in Rome.

OBS. 8.--The names of the twenty-two letters in Hebrew, are, without

dispute, proper \_words\_; for they are not only significant of the letters

thus named, but have in general, if not in every instance, some other

meaning in that language. Thus the mysterious ciphers which the English

reader meets with, and wonders over, as he reads the 119th Psalm, may be

resolved, according to some of the Hebrew grammars, as follows:--

[Hebrew: Aleph] Aleph, A, an ox, or a leader; [Hebrew: Beth] Beth, Bee,

house; [Hebrew: Gimel] Gimel, Gee, a camel; [Hebrew: Dalet] Daleth, Dee, a

door; [Hebrew: he] He, E, she, or behold; [Hebrew: vav] Vau, U, a hook, or

a nail; [Hebrew: zajin] Zain, Zee, armour; [Hebrew: het] Cheth, or Heth,

Aitch, a hedge; [Hebrew: tet] Teth, Tee, a serpent, or a scroll; [Hebrew:

jod] Jod, or Yod, I, or Wy, a hand shut; [Hebrew: kaf] Caph, Cee, a

hollow hand, or a cup; [Hebrew: lamed] Lamed, Ell, an ox-goad; [Hebrew:

mem] Mem, Em, a stain, or spot; [Hebrew: nun] Nun, En, a fish, or a snake;

[Hebrew: samekh] Samech, Ess, a basis, or support; [Hebrew: ayin] Ain, or

Oin, O, an eye, or a well; [Hebrew: pe] Pe, Pee, a lip, or mouth; [Hebrew:

tsadi] Tzaddi, or Tsadhe, Tee-zee, (i. e. tz, or ts,) a hunter's pole;

[Hebrew: qof] Koph, Kue, or Kay, an ape; [Hebrew: resh] Resch, or Resh,

Ar, a head; [Hebrew: shin] Schin, or Sin, Ess-aitch, or Ess, a tooth;

[Hebrew: tav] Tau, or Thau, Tee, or Tee-aitch, a cross, or mark.

These English names of the Hebrew letters are written with much less

uniformity than those of the Greek, because there has been more dispute

respecting their powers. This is directly contrary to what one would have

expected; since the Hebrew names are words originally significant of other

things than the letters, and the Greek are not. The original pronunciation

of both languages is admitted to be lost, or involved in so much obscurity

that little can be positively affirmed about it; and yet, where least was

known, grammarians have produced the most diversity; aiming at disputed

sounds in the one case, but generally preferring a correspondence of

letters in the other.

OBS. 9.--The word \_alphabet\_ is derived from the first two names in the

following series. The Greek letters are twenty-four; which are formed,

named, and sounded, thus:--

[Greek: A a], Alpha, a; [Greek: B, b], Beta, b; [Greek: G g], Gamma, g

hard; [Greek: D d], Delta, d; [Greek: E e], Epsilon, e short; [Greek: Z z],

Zeta, z; [Greek: Æ æ], Eta, e long; [Greek: TH Th th], Theta, th; [Greek: I

i], Iota, i; [Greek K k], Kappa, k; [Greek: L l], Lambda, l; [Greek: M m],

Mu, m; [Greek: N n], Nu, n; [Greek: X x], Xi, x; [Greek: O o], Omicron, o

short; [Greek: P p], Pi, p; [Greek: R r] Rho, r; [Greek: S s s], Sigma, s;

[Greek: T t], Tau, t; [Greek: Y y], Upsilon, u; [Greek: PH ph], Phi, ph;

[Greek: CH ch], Chi, ch; [Greek: PS ps], Psi, ps; [Greek: O o], Omega, o

long.

Of these names, our English dictionaries explain the first and the last;

and Webster has defined \_Iota\_, and \_Zeta\_, but without reference to the

meaning of the former in Greek. \_Beta, Delta, Lambda\_, and perhaps some

others, are also found in the etymologies or definitions of Johnson and

Webster, both of whom spell the word \_Lambda\_ and its derivative

\_lambdoidal\_ without the silent \_b\_, which is commonly, if not always,

inserted by the authors of our Greek grammars, and which Worcester, more

properly, retains.

OBS. 10.--The reader will observe that the foregoing names, whether Greek

or Hebrew, are in general much less simple than those which our letters now

bear; and if he has ever attempted to spell aloud in either of those

languages, he cannot but be sensible of the great advantage which was

gained when to each letter there was given a short name, expressive, as

ours mostly are, of its ordinary power. This improvement appears to have

been introduced by the Romans, whose names for the letters were even more

simple than our own. But so negligent in respect to them have been the

Latin grammarians, both ancient and modern, that few even of the learned

can tell what they really were in that language; or how they differed,

either in orthography or sound, from those of the English or the French,

the Hebrew or the Greek. Most of them, however, may yet be ascertained from

Priscian, and some others of note among the ancient philologists; so that

by taking from later authors the names of those letters which were not used

in old times, we can still furnish an entire list, concerning the accuracy

of which there is not much room to dispute. It is probable that in the

ancient pronunciation of Latin, \_a\_ was commonly sounded as in \_father\_;

\_e\_ like the English \_a\_; \_i\_ mostly like \_e\_ long; \_y\_ like \_i\_ short; \_c\_

generally and \_g\_ always hard, as in \_come\_ and \_go\_. But, as the original,

native, or just pronunciation of a language is not necessary to an

understanding of it when written, the existing nations have severally, in a

great measure, accommodated themselves, in their manner of reading this and

other ancient tongues.

OBS. 11.--As the Latin language is now printed, its

letters are twenty-five. Like the French, it has all that belong to the

English alphabet, except the \_Double-u\_. But, till the first Punic war, the

Romans wrote C for G, and doubtless gave it the power as well as the place

of the Gamma or Gimel. It then seems to have slid into K; but they used it

also for S, as we do now. The ancient Saxons, generally pronounced C as K,

but sometimes as Ch. Their G was either guttural, or like our Y. In some of

the early English grammars the name of the latter is written \_Ghee\_. The

letter F, when first invented, was called, from its shape, Digamma, and

afterwards Ef. J, when it was first distinguished from I, was called by the

Hebrew name Jod, and afterwards Je. V, when first distinguished from U, was

called Vau, then Va, then Ve. Y, when the Romans first borrowed it from the

Greeks, was called Ypsilon; and Z, from the same source, was called Zeta;

and, as these two letters were used only in words of Greek origin, I know

not whether they ever received from the Romans any shorter names. In

Schneider's Latin Grammar, the letters are named in the following manner;

except Je and Ve, which are omitted by this author: "A, Be, Ce, De, E, Ef,

Ge, Ha, I, [Je,] Ka, El, Em, En, O, Pe, Cu, Er, Es, Te, U, [Ve,] Ix,

Ypsilon, Zeta." And this I suppose to be the most proper way of writing

their names \_in Latin\_, unless we have sufficient authority for shortening

Ypsilon into Y, sounded as short \_i\_, and for changing Zeta into Ez.

OBS. 12.--In many, if not in all languages, the five vowels, A, E, I, O, U,

name themselves; but they name themselves differently to the ear, according

to the different ways of uttering them in different languages. And as the

name of a consonant necessarily requires one or more vowels, that also may

be affected in the same manner. But in every language there should be a

known way both of writing and of speaking every name in the series; and

that, if there is nothing to hinder, should be made conformable to \_the

genius of the language\_. I do not say that the names above can be regularly

declined in Latin; but in English it is as easy to speak of two Dees as of

two trees, of two Kays as of two days, of two Exes as of two foxes, of two

Effs as of two skiffs; and there ought to be no more difficulty about the

correct way of writing the word in the one case, than in the other. In Dr.

Sam. Prat's Latin Grammar, (an elaborate octavo, all Latin, published in

London, 1722,) nine of the consonants are reckoned mutes; b, c, d, g, p, q,

t, j, and v; and eight, semivowels; f, l, m, n, r, s, x, z. "All the

mutes," says this author, "are named by placing \_e\_ after them; as, be, ce,

de, ge, except \_q\_, which ends in \_u\_." See p. 8. "The semivowels,

beginning with \_e\_, end in themselves; as, ef, \_ach\_, el, em, en, er, es,

\_ex\_, (or, as Priscian will have it, \_ix\_,) \_eds\_." See p. 9. This mostly

accords with the names given in the preceding paragraph; and so far as it

does not, I judge the author to be wrong. The reader will observe that the

Doctor's explanation is neither very exact nor quite complete: K is a mute

which is not enumerated, and the rule would make the name of it \_Ke\_, and

not \_Ka\_;--H is not one of his eight semivowels, nor does the name Ach

accord with his rule or seem like a Latin word;--the name of Z, according

to his principle, would be \_Ez\_ and not "\_Eds\_," although the latter may

better indicate the \_sound\_ which was then given to this letter.

OBS. 13.--If the history of these names exhibits diversity, so does that of

almost all other terms; and yet there is some way of writing every word

with correctness, and correctness tends to permanence. But Time, that

establishes authority, destroys it also, when he fairly sanctions newer

customs. To all names worthy to be known, it is natural to wish a perpetual

uniformity; but if any one thinks the variableness of these to be peculiar,

let him open the English Bible of the fourteenth century, and read a few

verses, observing the names. For instance: "Forsothe whanne \_Eroude\_ was to

bringynge forth hym, in that nigt \_Petir\_ was slepynge bitwixe tweyno

knytis."--\_Dedis\_, (i. e., \_Acts\_,) xii, 6. "\_Crist Ihesu\_ that is to

demynge the quyke and deed."--\_2 Tim.\_, iv, 1. Since this was written for

English, our language has changed much, and at the same time acquired, by

means of the press, some aids to stability. I have recorded above the

\_true\_ names of the letters, as they are now used, with something of their

history; and if there could be in human works any thing unchangeable, I

should wish, (with due deference to all schemers and fault-finders,) that

these names might remain the same forever.

OBS. 14.--If any change is desirable in our present names of the letters,

it is that we may have a shorter and simpler term in stead of \_Double-u\_.

But can we change this well known name? I imagine it would be about as easy

to change \_Alpha, Upsilon, or Omega\_; and perhaps it would be as useful.

Let Dr. Webster, or any defender of his spelling, try it. He never named

the \_English\_ letters rightly; long ago discarded the term \_Double-u\_; and

is not yet tired of his experiment with "\_oo\_;" but thinks still to make

the vowel sound of this letter its name. Yet he writes his new name wrong;

has no authority for it but his own; and is, most certainly, reprehensible

for the \_innovation\_.[92] If W is to be named as a vowel, it ought to \_name

itself\_, as other vowels do, and not to take \_two Oes\_ for its written

name. Who that knows what it is, to name a letter, can think of naming \_w\_

by double \_o\_? That it is possible for an ingenious man to misconceive this

simple affair of naming the letters, may appear not only from the foregoing

instance, but from the following quotation: "Among the thousand

mismanagements of literary instruction, there is at the outset in the

hornbook, \_the pretence to represent elementary sounds\_ by syllables

composed of two or more elements; as, \_Be, Kay, Zed, Double-u\_, and

\_Aitch\_. These words are used in infancy, and through life, as \_simple

elements\_ in the process of synthetic spelling. If the definition of a

\_consonant\_ was made by the master from the practice of the child, it might

suggest pity for the pedagogue, but should not make us forget the realities

of nature."--\_Dr. Push, on the Philosophy of the Human Voice\_, p. 52. This

is a strange allegation to come from such a source. If I bid a boy spell

the word \_why\_, he says, "Double-u, Aitch, Wy, \_hwi\_;" and knows that he

has spelled and pronounced the word correctly. But if he conceives that the

five syllables which form the three words, \_Double-u\_, and \_Aitch\_, and

\_Wy\_, are the three simple sounds which he utters in pronouncing the word

\_why\_, it is not because the hornbook, or the teacher of the hornbook, ever

made any such blunder or "pretence;" but because, like some great

philosophers, he is capable of misconceiving very plain things. Suppose he

should take it into his head to follow Dr. Webster's books, and to say,

"Oo, he, ye, \_hwi\_;" who, but these doctors, would imagine, that such

spelling was supported either by "the realities of nature," or by the

authority of custom? I shall retain both the old "definition of a

consonant," and the usual names of the letters, notwithstanding the

contemptuous pity it may excite in the minds of \_such\_ critics.

II. CLASSES OF THE LETTERS.

The letters are divided into two general classes, \_vowels\_ and

\_consonants\_.

A \_vowel\_ is a letter which forms a perfect sound when uttered alone; as,

\_a, e, o\_.

A \_consonant\_ is a letter which cannot be perfectly uttered till joined to

a vowel; as, \_b, c, d\_.[93]

The vowels are \_a, e, i, o, u\_, and sometimes \_w\_ and \_y.\_ All the other

letters are consonants.

\_W\_ or \_y\_ is called a consonant when it precedes a vowel heard in the same

syllable; as in \_wine, twine, whine; ye, yet, youth\_: in all other cases,

these letters are vowels; as in \_Yssel, Ystadt, yttria; newly, dewy,

eyebrow.\_

CLASSES OF CONSONANTS.

The consonants are divided, with respect to their powers, into \_semivowels\_

and \_mutes.\_

A \_semivowel\_ is a consonant which can be imperfectly sounded without a

vowel, so that at the end of a syllable its sound may be protracted; as,

\_l, n, z\_, in \_al, an, az.\_

A \_mute\_ is a consonant which cannot be sounded at all without a vowel, and

which at the end of a syllable suddenly stops the breath; as, \_k, p, t\_, in

\_ak, ap, at.\_

The semivowels are, \_f, h, j, l, m, n, r, s, v, w, x, y, z\_, and \_c\_ and

\_g\_ soft: but \_w\_ or \_y\_ at the end of a syllable, is a vowel; and the

sound of \_c, f, g, h, j, s\_, or \_x\_, can be protracted only as an

\_aspirate\_, or strong breath.

Four of the semivowels,--\_l, m, n\_, and \_r\_,--are termed \_liquids\_, on

account of the fluency of their sounds; and four others,--\_v, w, y\_, and

\_z\_,--are likewise more vocal than the aspirates.

The mutes are eight;--\_b, d, k, p, q, t\_, and \_c\_ and \_g\_ hard: three of

these,--\_k, q\_, and \_c\_ hard,--sound exactly alike: \_b, d\_, and \_g\_ hard,

stop the voice less suddenly than the rest.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The foregoing division of the letters is of very

great antiquity, and, in respect to its principal features sanctioned by

almost universal authority; yet if we examine it minutely, either with

reference to the various opinions of the learned, or with regard to the

essential differences among the things of which it speaks, it will not

perhaps be found in all respects indisputably certain. It will however be

of use, as a basis for some subsequent rules, and as a means of calling the

attention of the learner to the manner in which he utters the sounds of the

letters. A knowledge of about three dozen different elementary sounds is

implied in the faculty of speech. The power of producing these sounds with

distinctness, and of adapting them to the purposes for which language is

used, constitutes perfection of utterance. Had we a perfect alphabet,

consisting of one symbol, and only one, for each elementary sound; and a

perfect method of spelling, freed from silent letters, and precisely

adjusted to the most correct pronunciation of words; the process of

learning to read would doubtless be greatly facilitated. And yet any

attempt toward such a reformation, any change short of the introduction of

some entirely new mode of writing, would be both unwise and impracticable.

It would involve our laws and literature in utter confusion, because

pronunciation is the least permanent part of language; and if the

orthography of words were conformed entirely to this standard, their origin

and meaning would, in many instances, be soon lost. We must therefore

content ourselves to learn languages as they are, and to make the best use

we can of our present imperfect system of alphabetic characters; and we may

be the better satisfied to do this, because the deficiencies and

redundancies of this alphabet are not yet so well ascertained, as to make

it certain what a perfect one would be.

OBS. 2.--In order to have a right understanding of the letters, it is

necessary to enumerate, as accurately as we can, the elementary \_sounds\_ of

the language; and to attend carefully to the manner in which these sounds

are enunciated, as well as to the characters by which they are represented.

The most unconcerned observer cannot but perceive that there are certain

differences in the sounds, as well as in the shapes, of the letters; and

yet under what heads they ought severally to be classed, or how many of

them will fall under some particular name, it may occasionally puzzle a

philosopher to tell. The student must consider what is proposed or asked,

use his own senses, and judge for himself. With our lower-case alphabet

before him, he can tell by his own eye, which are the long letters, and

which the short ones; so let him learn by his own ear, which are the

vowels, and which, the consonants. The processes are alike simple; and, if

he be neither blind nor deaf, he can do both about equally well. Thus he

may know for a certainty, that \_a\_ is a short letter, and \_b\_ a long one;

the former a vowel, the latter a consonant: and so of others. Yet as he may

doubt whether \_t\_ is a long letter or a short one, so he may be puzzled to

say whether \_w\_ and \_y\_, as heard in \_we\_ and \_ye\_, are vowels or

consonants: but neither of these difficulties should impair his confidence

in any of his other decisions. If he attain by observation and practice a

clear and perfect pronunciation of the letters, he will be able to class

them for himself with as much accuracy as he will find in books.

OBS. 3.--Grammarians have generally agreed that every letter is either a

vowel or a consonant; and also that there are among the latter some

semivowels, some mutes, some aspirates, some liquids, some sharps, some

flats, some labials, some dentals, some nasals, some palatals, and perhaps

yet other species; but in enumerating the letters which belong to these

several classes, they disagree so much as to make it no easy matter to

ascertain what particular classification is best supported by their

authority. I have adopted what I conceive to be the best authorized, and at

the same time the most intelligible. He that dislikes the scheme, may do

better, if he can. But let him with modesty determine what sort of

discoveries may render our ancient authorities questionable. Aristotle,

three hundred and thirty years before Christ, divided the Greek letters

into \_vowels, semivowels\_, and \_mutes\_, and declared that no syllable could

be formed without a vowel. In the opinion of some neoterics, it has been

reserved to our age, to detect the fallacy of this. But I would fain

believe that the Stagirite knew as well what he was saying, as did Dr.

James Rush, when, in 1827, he declared the doctrine of vowels and

consonants to be "a misrepresentation." The latter philosopher resolves the

letters into "\_tonics, subtonics\_, and \_atonics\_;" and avers that

"consonants alone may form syllables." Indeed, I cannot but think the

ancient doctrine better. For, to say that "consonants alone may form

syllables," is as much as to say that consonants are not consonants, but

vowels! To be consistent, the attempters of this reformation should never

speak of vowels or consonants, semivowels or mutes; because they judge the

terms inappropriate, and the classification absurd. They should therefore

adhere strictly to their "tonics, subtonics, and atonics;" which classes,

though apparently the same as vowels, semivowels, and mutes, are better

adapted to their new and peculiar division of these elements. Thus, by

reforming both language and philosophy at once, they may make what they

will of either!

OBS. 4.--Some teach that \_w\_ and \_y\_ are always vowels: conceiving the

former to be equivalent to \_oo\_, and the latter to \_i\_ or \_e\_. Dr. Lowth

says, "\_Y\_ is always a vowel," and "\_W\_ is either a vowel or a diphthong."

Dr. Webster supposes \_w\_ to be always "a vowel, a simple sound;" but admits

that, "At the beginning of words, \_y\_ is called an \_articulation\_ or

\_consonant\_, and \_with some propriety perhaps\_, as it brings the root of

the tongue in close contact with the lower part of the palate, and nearly

in the position to which the close \_g\_ brings it."--\_American Dict.,

Octavo\_. But I follow Wallis, Brightland, Johnson, Walker, Murray,

Worcester, and others, in considering both of them sometimes vowels and

sometimes consonants. They are consonants at the beginning of words in

English, because their sounds take the article \_a\_, and not \_an\_, before

them; as, \_a wall, a yard\_, and not, \_an wall, an yard\_. But \_oo\_ or the

sound of \_e\_, requires \_an\_, and not \_a\_; as, \_an eel, an oozy bog\_.[94] At

the end of a syllable we know they are vowels; but at the beginning, they

are so squeezed in their pronunciation, as to follow a vowel without any

hiatus, or difficulty of utterance; as, "\_O worthy youth! so young, so

wise!\_"

OBS. 5.--Murray's rule, "\_W\_ and \_y\_ are consonants when they begin a word

or syllable, but in every other situation they are vowels," which is found

in Comly's book, \_Kirkham's\_, Merchant's, Ingersoll's, Fisk's. Hart's,

Hiley's, Alger's, Bullions's, Pond's, S. Putnam's, Weld's, and in sundry

other grammars, is favourable to my doctrine, but too badly conceived to be

quoted here as authority. It \_undesignedly\_ makes \_w\_ a consonant in

\_wine\_, and a vowel in \_twine\_; and \_y\_ a consonant when it \_forms\_ a

syllable, as in \_dewy\_: for a letter that \_forms\_ a syllable, "begins" it.

But \_Kirkham\_ has lately learned his letters anew; and, supposing he had

Dr. Rush on his side, has philosophically taken their names for their

sounds. He now calls \_y\_ a "\_diphthong\_." But he is wrong here by his own

showing: he should rather have called it a \_triphthong\_. He says, "By

pronouncing in a very deliberate and perfectly natural manner, the letter

\_y\_, (which is a \_diphthong\_,) the \_unpractised\_ student will perceive,

that the sound produced, is compound; being formed, at its opening, of the

obscure sound of \_oo\_ as heard in \_oo\_-ze, which sound rapidly slides into

that of \_i\_, and then advances to that of \_ee\_ as heard in \_e\_-ve, \_and\_ on

which it gradually passes off into silence."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 75.

Thus the "unpractised student" is taught that \_b-y\_ spells \_bwy\_; or, if

pronounced "very deliberately, \_boo-i-ee\_!" Nay, this grammatist makes \_b\_,

not a labial mute, as Walker, Webster, Cobb, and others, have called it,

but a nasal subtonic, or semivowel. He delights in protracting its

"guttural murmur;" perhaps, in assuming its name for its sound; and, having

proved, that "consonants are capable of forming syllables," finds no

difficulty in mouthing this little monosyllable \_by\_ into \_b-oo-i-ee!\_ In

this way, it is the easiest thing in the world, for such a man to outface

Aristotle, or any other divider of the letters; for he \_makes\_ the sounds

by which he judges. "Boy," says the teacher of Kirkham's Elocution,

"describe the protracted sound of \_y\_."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 110. The

pupil may answer, "That letter, sir, has no longer or more complex sound,

than what is heard in the word \_eye\_, or in the vowel \_i\_; but the book

which I study, describes it otherwise. I know not whether I can make you

understand it, but I will \_tr-oo-i-ee\_." If the word \_try\_, which the

author uses as an example, does not exhibit his "protracted sound of \_y\_,"

there is no word that does: the sound is a mere fiction, originating in

strange ignorance.

OBS. 6.--In the large print above, I have explained the principal classes

of the letters, but not all that are spoken of in books. It is proper to

inform the learner that the \_sharp\_ consonants are \_t\_, and all others

after which our contracted preterits and participles require that \_d\_

should be sounded like \_t\_; as in the words faced, reached, stuffed,

laughed, triumphed, croaked, cracked, houghed, reaped, nipped, piqued,

missed, wished, earthed, betrothed, fixed. The \_flat\_ or \_smooth\_

consonants are \_d\_, and all others with which the proper sound of \_d\_ may

be united; as in the words, daubed, judged, hugged, thronged, sealed,

filled, aimed, crammed, pained, planned, feared, marred, soothed, loved,

dozed, buzzed. The \_labials\_ are those consonants which are articulated

chiefly by the lips; among which, Dr. Webster reckons \_b, f, m, p\_, and

\_v\_. But Dr. Rush says, \_b\_ and \_m\_ are nasals, the latter, "purely nasal."

[95] The \_dentals\_ are those consonants which are referred to the teeth;

the \_nasals\_ are those which are affected by the nose; and the \_palatals\_

are those which compress the palate, as \_k\_ and hard \_g\_. But these

last-named classes are not of much importance; nor have I thought it worth

while to notice \_minutely\_ the opinions of writers respecting the others,

as whether \_h\_ is a semivowel, or a mute, or neither.

OBS. 7.--The Cherokee alphabet, which was invented in 1821, by See-quo-yah,

or George Guess, an ingenious but wholly illiterate Indian, contains

eighty-five letters, or characters. But the sounds of the language are much

fewer than ours; for the characters represent, not simple tones and

articulations, but \_syllabic sounds\_, and this number is said to be

sufficient to denote them all. But the different syllabic sounds in our

language amount to some thousands. I suppose, from the account, that

\_See-quo-yah\_ writes his name, in his own language, with three letters; and

that characters so used, would not require, and probably would not admit,

such a division as that of vowels and consonants. One of the Cherokees, in

a letter to the American Lyceum, states, that a knowledge of this mode of

writing is so easily acquired, that one who understands and speaks the

language, "can learn to read in a day; and, indeed," continues the writer,

"I have known some to acquire the art in a single evening. It is only

necessary to learn the different sounds of the characters, to be enabled to

read at once. In the English language, we must not only first learn the

letters, but to spell, before reading; but in Cherokee, all that is

required, is, to learn the letters; for they have \_syllabic sounds\_, and by

connecting different ones together, a word is formed: in which there is no

art. All who understand the language can do so, and both read and write, so

soon as they can learn to trace with their fingers the forms of the

characters. I suppose that more than one half of the Cherokees can read

their own language, and are thereby enabled to acquire much valuable

information, with which they otherwise would never have been blessed."--\_W.

S. Coodey\_, 1831.

OBS. 8.--From the foregoing account, it would appear that the Cherokee

language is a very peculiar one: its words must either be very few, or the

proportion of polysyllables very great. The characters used in China and

Japan, stand severally for \_words\_; and their number is said to be not less

than seventy thousand; so that the study of a whole life is scarcely

sufficient to make a man thoroughly master of them. Syllabic writing is

represented by Dr. Blair as a great improvement upon the Chinese method,

and yet as being far inferior to that which is properly \_alphabetic\_, like

ours. "The first step, in this new progress," says he, "was the invention

of an alphabet of syllables, which probably preceded the invention of an

alphabet of letters, among some of the ancient nations; and which is said

to be retained to this day, in Ethiopia, and some countries of India. By

fixing upon a particular mark, or character, for every syllable in the

language, the number of characters, necessary to be used in writing, was

reduced within a much smaller compass than the number of words in the

language. Still, however, the number of characters was great; and must have

continued to render both reading and writing very laborious arts. Till, at

last, some happy genius arose, and tracing the sounds made by the human

voice, to their most simple elements, reduced them to a very few \_vowels

and consonants\_; and, by affixing to each of these, the signs which we now

call letters, taught men how, by their combinations, to put in writing all

the different words, or combinations of sound, which they employed in

speech. By being reduced to this simplicity, the art of writing was brought

to its highest state of perfection; and, in this state, we now enjoy it in

all the countries of Europe."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, Lect. VII, p. 68.

OBS. 9.--All certain knowledge of the sounds given to the letters by Moses

and the prophets having been long ago lost, a strange dispute has arisen,

and been carried on for centuries, concerning this question, "Whether the

Hebrew letters are, or are not, \_all consonants\_:" the vowels being

supposed by some to be suppressed and understood; and not written, except

by \_points\_ of comparatively late invention. The discussion of such a

question does not properly belong to English grammar; but, on account of

its curiosity, as well as of its analogy to some of our present disputes, I

mention it. Dr. Charles Wilson says, "After we have sufficiently known the

figures and names of the letters, the next step is, to learn to enunciate

or to pronounce them, so as to produce articulate sounds. On this subject,

which appears at first sight very plain and simple, numberless contentions

and varieties of opinion meet us at the threshold. From the earliest period

of the invention of written characters to represent human language, however

more or less remote that time may be, it seems absolutely certain, that the

distinction of letters into \_vowels and consonants\_ must have obtained. All

the speculations of the Greek grammarians assume this as a first

principle." Again: "I beg leave only to premise this observation, that I

absolutely and unequivocally deny the position, that all the letters of the

Hebrew alphabet are consonants; and, after the most careful and minute

inquiry, give it as my opinion, that of the twenty-two letters of which the

Hebrew alphabet consists, five are vowels and seventeen are consonants. The

five vowels by name are, Aleph, He, Vau, Yod, and Ain."--\_Wilson's Heb.

Gram.\_, pp. 6 and 8.

III. POWERS OF THE LETTERS.

The powers of the letters are properly those elementary sounds which their

figures are used to represent; but letters formed into words, are capable

of communicating thought independently of sound. The simple elementary

sounds of any language are few, commonly not more than \_thirty-six\_;[96]

but they may be variously \_combined\_, so as to form words innumerable.

Different vowel sounds, or vocal elements, are produced by opening the

mouth differently, and placing the tongue in a peculiar manner for each;

but the voice may vary in loudness, pitch, or time, and still utter the

same vowel power.

The \_vowel sounds\_ which form the basis of the English language, and which

ought therefore to be perfectly familiar to every one who speaks it, are

those which are heard at the beginning of the words, \_ate, at, ah, all,

eel, ell, isle, ill, old, on, ooze, use, us\_, and that of \_u\_ in \_bull\_.

In the formation of syllables, some of these fourteen primary sounds may be

joined together, as in \_ay, oil, out, owl\_; and all of them may be preceded

or followed by certain motions and positions of the lips and tongue, which

will severally convert them into other terms in speech. Thus the same

essential sounds may be changed into a new series of words by an \_f\_; as,

\_fate, fat, far, fall, feel, fell, file, fill, fold, fond, fool, fuse,

fuss, full\_. Again, into as many more with a \_p\_; as, \_pate, pat, par,

pall, peel, pell, pile, pill, pole, pond, pool, pule, purl, pull\_. Each of

the vowel sounds may be variously expressed by letters. About half of them

are sometimes words: the rest are seldom, if ever, used alone even to form

syllables. But the reader may easily learn to utter them all, separately,

according to the foregoing series. Let us note them as plainly as possible:

eigh, ~a, ah, awe, =eh, ~e, eye, ~i, oh, ~o, oo, yew, ~u, û. Thus the eight

long sounds, \_eigh, ah, awe, eh, eye, oh, ooh, yew\_, are, or may be, words;

but the six less vocal, called the short vowel sounds, as in \_at, et, it,

ot, ut, put\_, are commonly heard only in connexion with consonants; except

the first, which is perhaps the most frequent sound of the vowel A or

\_a\_--a sound sometimes given to the word \_a\_, perhaps most generally; as in

the phrase, "twice \_~a\_ day."

The simple \_consonant sounds\_ in English are twenty-two: they are marked by

\_b, d, f, g hard, h, k, l, m, n, ng, p, r, s, sh, t, th sharp, th flat, v,

w, y, z\_, and \_zh\_. But \_zh\_ is written only to show the sound of other

letters; as of \_s\_ in \_pleasure\_, or \_z\_ in \_azure\_.

All these sounds are heard distinctly in the following words: \_buy, die,

fie, guy, high, kie, lie, my, nigh, eying, pie, rye, sigh, shy, tie, thigh,

thy, vie, we, ye, zebra, seizure\_. Again: most of them may be repeated in

the same word, if not in the same syllable; as in \_bibber, diddle, fifty,

giggle, high-hung, cackle, lily, mimic, ninny, singing, pippin, mirror,

hissest, flesh-brush, tittle, thinketh, thither, vivid, witwal, union,[97]

dizzies, vision\_.

With us, the consonants J and X represent, not simple, but complex sounds:

hence they are never doubled. J is equivalent to \_dzh\_; and X, either to

\_ks\_ or to \_gz\_. The former ends no English word, and the latter begins

none. To the initial X of foreign words, we always give the simple sound of

Z; as in \_Xerxes, xebec\_.

The consonants C and Q have no sounds peculiar to themselves. Q has always

the power of \_k\_. C is hard, like \_k\_, before \_a, o\_, and \_u\_; and soft,

like \_s\_, before \_e, i\_, and \_y\_: thus the syllables, \_ca, ce, ci, co, cu,

cy\_, are pronounced, \_ka, se, si, ko, ku, sy\_. \_S\_ before \_c\_ preserves the

former sound, but coalesces with the latter; hence the syllables, \_sca,

sce, sci, sco, scu, scy\_, are sounded, \_ska, se, si, sko, sku, sy\_. \_Ce\_

and \_ci\_ have sometimes the sound of \_sh\_; as in \_ocean, social\_. \_Ch\_

commonly represents the compound sound of \_tsh\_; as in \_church\_.

G, as well as C, has different sounds before different vowels. G is always

hard, or guttural, before \_a, o\_, and \_u\_; and generally soft, like \_j\_,

before \_e, i\_, or \_y\_: thus the syllables, \_ga, ge, gi, go, gu, gy\_, are

pronounced \_ga, je, ji, go, gu, jy\_.

The possible combinations and mutations of the twenty-six letters of our

alphabet, are many millions of millions. But those clusters which are

unpronounceable, are useless. Of such as may be easily uttered, there are

more than enough for all the purposes of useful writing, or the recording

of speech.

Thus it is, that from principles so few and simple as about six or seven

and thirty plain elementary sounds, represented by characters still fewer,

we derive such a variety of oral and written signs, as may suffice to

explain or record all the sentiments and transactions of all men in all

ages.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A knowledge of sounds can be acquired, in the first

instance, only by the ear. No description of the manner of their

production, or of the differences which distinguish them, can be at all

intelligible to him who has not already, by the sense of hearing, acquired

a knowledge of both. What I here say of the sounds of the letters, must of

course be addressed to those persons only who are able both to speak and to

read English. Why then attempt instruction by a method which both ignorance

and knowledge on the part of the pupil, must alike render useless? I have

supposed some readers to have such an acquaintance with the powers of the

letters, as is but loose and imperfect; sufficient for the accurate

pronunciation of some words or syllables, but leaving them liable to

mistakes in others; extending perhaps to all the sounds of the language,

but not to a ready analysis or enumeration of them. Such persons may profit

by a written description of the powers of the letters, though no such

description can equal the clear impression of the living voice. Teachers,

too, whose business it is to aid the articulation of the young, and, by a

patient inculcation of elementary principles, to lay the foundation of an

accurate pronunciation, may derive some assistance from any notation of

these principles, which will help their memory, or that of the learner. The

connexion between letters and sounds is altogether \_arbitrary\_; but a few

positions, being assumed and made known, in respect to some characters,

become easy standards for further instruction in respect to others of

similar sound.

OBS. 2.--The importance of being instructed at an early age, to pronounce

with distinctness and facility all the elementary sounds of one's native

language, has been so frequently urged, and is so obvious in itself, that

none but those who have been themselves neglected, will be likely to

disregard the claims of their children in this respect.[98] But surely an

accurate knowledge of the ordinary powers of the letters would be vastly

more common, were there not much hereditary negligence respecting the

manner in which these important rudiments are learned. The utterance of the

illiterate may exhibit wit and native talent, but it is always more or less

barbarous, because it is not aided by a knowledge of orthography. For

pronunciation and orthography, however they may seem, in our language

especially, to be often at variance, are certainly correlative: a true

knowledge of either tends to the preservation of both. Each of the letters

represents some one or more of the elementary sounds, exclusive of the

rest; and each of the elementary sounds, though several of them are

occasionally transferred, has some one or two letters to which it most

properly or most frequently belongs. But borrowed, as our language has

been, from a great variety of sources, to which it is desirable ever to

retain the means of tracing it, there is certainly much apparent lack of

correspondence between its oral and its written form. Still the

discrepancies are few, when compared with the instances of exact

conformity; and, if they are, as I suppose they are, unavoidable, it is as

useless to complain of the trouble they occasion, as it is to think of

forcing a reconciliation. The wranglers in this controversy, can never

agree among themselves, whether orthography shall conform to pronunciation,

or pronunciation to orthography. Nor does any one of them well know how our

language would either sound or look, were he himself appointed sole arbiter

of all variances between our spelling and our speech.

OBS. 3.--"Language," says Dr. Rush, "was long ago analyzed into its

alphabetic elements. Wherever this analysis is known, the art of teaching

language has, with the best success, been conducted upon the rudimental

method." \* \* \* "The art of reading consists in having all the vocal

elements under complete command, that they may be properly applied, for the

vivid and elegant delineation of the sense and sentiment of

discourse."--\_Philosophy of the Voice\_, p. 346. Again, of "the

pronunciation of the alphabetic elements," he says, "The least deviation

\_from the assumed standard\_ converts the listener into the critic; and I am

surely speaking within bounds when I say, that for every miscalled element

in discourse, ten succeeding words are lost to the greater part of an

audience."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 350. These quotations plainly imply both the

practicability and the importance of teaching the pronunciation of our

language analytically by means of its present orthography, and agreeably to

the standard assumed by the grammarians. The first of them affirms that it

has been done, "with the best success," according to some ancient method of

dividing the letters and explaining their sounds. And yet, both before and

afterwards, we find this same author complaining of our alphabet and its

subdivisions, as if sense or philosophy must utterly repudiate both; and of

our orthography, as if a ploughman might teach us to spell better: and, at

the same time, he speaks of softening his censure through modesty. "The

deficiencies, redundancies, and confusion, of the system of alphabetic

characters in this language, prevent the adoption of its subdivisions in

this essay."--\_Ib.\_, p. 52. Of the specific sounds given to the letters, he

says, "The first of these matters is under the rule of every body, and

therefore is very properly to be excluded from the discussions of that

philosophy which desires to be effectual in its instruction. How can we

hope to establish a system of elemental pronunciation in a language, when

great masters in criticism condemn at once every attempt, in so simple and

useful a labour as the correction of its orthography!"--P. 256. Again: "I

\_deprecate noticing\_ the faults of speakers, in the pronunciation of the

alphabetic elements. It is better for criticism to be modest on this point,

till it has the sense or independence to make our alphabet and its uses,

look more like the work of what is called--wise and transcendent humanity:

till the pardonable variety of pronunciation, and the \_true spelling by

the vulgar\_, have satirized into reformation that pen-craft which keeps up

the troubles of orthography for no other purpose, as one can divine, than

to boast of a very questionable merit as a criterion of education."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 383.

OBS. 4.--How far these views are compatible, the reader will judge. And it

is hoped he will excuse the length of the extracts, from a consideration of

the fact, that a great master of the "pen-craft" here ridiculed, a noted

stickler for needless Kays and Ues, now commonly rejected, while he boasts

that his grammar, which he mostly copied from Murray's, is teaching the old

explanation of the alphabetic elements to "more than one hundred thousand

children and youth," is also vending under his own name an abstract of the

new scheme of "\_tonicks, subtonicks\_, and \_atonicks\_;" and, in one breath,

bestowing superlative praise on both, in order, as it would seem, to

monopolize all inconsistency. "Among those who have successfully laboured

in the philological field, \_Mr. Lindley Murray\_ stands forth in bold

relief, as undeniably at the head of the list."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p.

12. "The modern candidate for oratorical fame, stands on very different,

and far more advantageous, ground, than that occupied by the young and

aspiring Athenian; especially since a \_correct analysis of the vocal

organs\_, and a faithful record of their operations, have been given to the

world by \_Dr. James Rush\_, of Philadelphia--a name that will \_outlive\_ the

unquarried marble of our mountains."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 29. "But what is to be

said when presumption pushes itself into the front ranks of elocution, and

thoughtless friends undertake to support it? The fraud must go on, till

presumption quarrels, as often happens, with its own friends, or with

itself, and thus dissolves the spell of its merits."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_,

p. 405.

OBS. 5.--The question respecting the \_number\_ of simple or elementary

sounds in our language, presents a remarkable puzzle: and it is idle, if

not ridiculous, for any man to declaim about the imperfection of our

alphabet and orthography, who does not show himself able to solve it. All

these sounds may easily be written in a plain sentence of three or four

lines upon almost any subject; and every one who can read, is familiar with

them all, and with all the letters. Now it is either easy \_to count\_ them,

or it is difficult. If difficult, wherein does the difficulty lie? and how

shall he who knows not what and how many they are, think himself capable of

reforming our system of their alphabetic signs? If easy, why do so few

pretend to know their number? and of those who do pretend to this

knowledge, why are there so few that agree? A certain verse in the seventh

chapter of Ezra, has been said to contain all the letters. It however

contains no \_j\_; and, with respect to the sounds, it lacks that of \_f\_,

that of \_th sharp\_, and that of \_u\_ in \_bull\_. I will suggest a few

additional words for these; and then both all the letters, and all the

sounds, of the English language, will be found in the example; and most of

them, many times over: "'And I, even I, Artaxerxes, the king, do make a

decree to all the treasurers' who 'are beyond the river, that whatsoever

Ezra the priest, the scribe of the law of the God of heaven, shall require

of you, it be done speedily' and faithfully, according to that which he

shall enjoin." Some letters, and some sounds, are here used much more

frequently than others; but, on an average, we have, in this short passage,

each sound five times, and each letter eight. How often, then, does a man

speak all the elements of his language, who reads well but one hour!

OBS. 6.--Of the number of elementary sounds in our language, different

orthoëpists report differently; because they cannot always agree among

themselves, wherein the identity or the simplicity, the sameness or the

singleness, even of well-known sounds, consists; or because, if each is

allowed to determine these points for himself, no one of them adheres

strictly to his own decision. They may also, each for himself, have some

peculiar way of utterance, which will confound some sounds which other men

distinguish, or distinguish some which other men confound. For, as a man

may write a very bad hand which shall still be legible, so he may utter

many sounds improperly and still be understood. One may, in this way, make

out a scheme of the alphabetic elements, which shall be true of his own

pronunciation, and yet have obvious faults when tried by the best usage of

English speech. It is desirable not to multiply these sounds beyond the

number which a correct and elegant pronunciation of the language obviously

requires. And what that number is, it seems to me not very difficult to

ascertain; at least, I think we may fix it with sufficient accuracy for all

practical purposes. But let it be remembered, that all who have hitherto

attempted the enumeration, have deviated more or less from their own

decisions concerning either the simplicity or the identity of sounds; but,

most commonly, it appears to have been thought expedient to admit some

exceptions concerning both. Thus the long or diphthongal sounds of \_I\_ and

\_U\_, are admitted by some, and excluded by others; the sound of \_j\_, or

soft \_g\_, is reckoned as simple by some, and rejected as compound by

others; so a part, if not all, of what are called the long and the short

vowels, as heard in \_ale\_ and \_ell, arm\_ and \_am, all\_ and \_on, isle\_ or

\_eel\_ and \_ill, tone\_ and \_tun, pule\_ or \_pool\_ and \_pull\_, have been

declared essentially the same by some, and essentially different by others.

Were we to recognize as elementary, no sounds but such as are

unquestionably simple in themselves, and indisputably different in quality

from all others, we should not have more sounds than letters: and this is a

proof that we have characters enough, though the sounds are perhaps badly

distributed among them.

OBS. 7.--I have enumerated \_thirty-six\_ well known sounds, which, in

compliance with general custom, and for convenience in teaching. I choose

to regard as the oral elements of our language. There may be found some

reputable authority for adding four or five more, and other authority as

reputable, for striking from the list seven or eight of those already

mentioned. For the sake of the general principle, which we always regard in

writing, a principle of universal grammar, \_that there can be no

syllable without a vowel\_, I am inclined to teach, with Brightland, Dr.

Johnson, L. Murray, and others, that, in English, as in French, there is

given to the vowel \_e\_ a certain very obscure sound which approaches, but

amounts not to an absolute suppression, though it is commonly so regarded

by the writers of dictionaries. It may be exemplified in the words \_oven,

shovel, able\_;[99] or in the unemphatic article \_the\_ before a consonant,

as in the sentence, "Take the nearest:" we do not hear it as "\_thee

nearest\_," nor as "\_then carest\_," but more obscurely. There is also a

feeble sound of \_i\_ or \_y\_ unaccented, which is equivalent to \_ee\_ uttered

feebly, as in the word \_diversity\_. This is the most common sound of \_i\_

and of \_y\_. The vulgar are apt to let it fall into the more obscure sound

of short \_u\_. As elegance of utterance depends much upon the preservation

of this sound from such obtuseness, perhaps Walker and others have done

well to mark it as \_e\_ in \_me\_; though some suppose it to be peculiar, and

others identify it with the short \_i\_ in \_fit\_. Thirdly, a distinction is

made by some writers, between the vowel sounds heard in \_hate\_ and \_bear\_,

which Sheridan and Walker consider to be the same. The apparent difference

may perhaps result from the following consonant \_r\_, which is apt to affect

the sound of the vowel which precedes it. Such words as \_bear, care, dare,

careful, parent\_, are very liable to be corrupted in pronunciation, by too

broad a sound of the \_a\_; and, as the multiplication of needless

distinctions should be avoided, I do not approve of adding an other sound

to a vowel which has already quite too many. Worcester, however, in his new

Dictionary, and Wells, in his new Grammar, give to the vowel A \_six\_ or

\_seven\_ sounds in lieu of \_four\_; and Dr. Mandeville, in his Course of

Reading, says, "\_A\_ has \_eight\_ sounds."--P. 9.

OBS. 8.--Sheridan made the elements of his oratory \_twenty-eight\_. Jones

followed him implicitly, and adopted the same number.[100] Walker

recognized several more, but I know not whether he has anywhere told us

\_how many there are\_. Lindley Murray enumerates \_thirty-six\_, and the same

thirty-six that are given in the main text above. The eight sounds not

counted by Sheridan are these: 1. The Italian \_a\_, as in \_far, father\_,

which he reckoned but a lengthening of the \_a\_ in \_hat\_; 2. The short \_o\_,

as in \_hot\_, which he supposed to be but a shortening of the \_a\_ in \_hall\_;

3. The diphthongal \_i\_, as in \_isle\_, which he thought but a quicker union

of the sounds of the diphthong \_oi\_, but which, in my opinion, is rather a

very quick union of the sounds \_ah\_ and \_ee\_ into \_ay, I\_;[101] 4. The long

\_u\_, which is acknowledged to be equal to \_yu\_ or \_yew\_, though perhaps a

little different from \_you\_ or \_yoo\_,[102] the sound given it by Walker; 5.

The \_u\_ heard in \_pull\_, which he considered but a shortening of \_oo\_; 6.

The consonant \_w\_, which he conceived to be always a vowel, and equivalent

to \_oo\_; 7. The consonant \_y\_, which he made equal to a short \_ee\_; 8. The

consonant \_h\_, which he declared to be no letter, but a mere breathing, In

all other respects, his scheme of the alphabetic elements agrees with that

which is adopted in this work, and which is now most commonly taught.

OBS. 9.--The effect of \_Quantity\_ in the prolation of the vowels, is a

matter with which every reader ought to be experimentally acquainted.

\_Quantity\_ is simply the \_time\_ of utterance, whether long or short. It is

commonly spoken of with reference to \_syllables\_, because it belongs

severally to all the distinct or numerable impulses of the voice, and to

these only; but, as vowels or diphthongs may be uttered alone, the notion

of quantity is of course as applicable to them, as to any of the more

complex sounds in which consonants are joined with them. All sounds imply

time; because they are the transient effects of certain percussions which

temporarily agitate the air, an element that tends to silence. When mighty

winds have swept over sea and land, and the voice of the \_Ocean\_ is raised,

he speaks to the towering cliffs in the deep tones of a \_long\_ quantity;

the rolling billows, as they meet the shore, pronounce the long-drawn

syllables of his majestic elocution. But see him again in gentler mood;

stand upon the beach and listen to the rippling of his more frequent waves:

he will teach you \_short\_ quantity, as well as long. In common parlance, to

avoid tediousness, to save time, and to adapt language to circumstances, we

usually utter words with great rapidity, and in comparatively short

quantity. But in oratory, and sometimes in ordinary reading, those sounds

which are best fitted to fill and gratify the ear, should be sensibly

protracted, especially in emphatic words; and even the shortest syllable,

must be so lengthened as to be uttered with perfect clearness: otherwise

the performance will be judged defective.

OBS. 10.--Some of the vowels are usually uttered in longer time than

others; but whether the former are naturally long, and the latter naturally

short, may be doubted: the common opinion is, that they are. But one author

at least denies it; and says, "We must explode the pretended natural

epithets \_short\_ and \_long\_ given to our vowels, independent on accent: and

we must observe that our silent \_e\_ final lengthens not its syllable,

unless the preceding vowel be accented."--\_Mackintosh's Essay on E. Gram.\_,

p. 232. The distinction of long and short vowels which has generally

obtained, and the correspondences which some writers have laboured to

establish between them, have always been to me sources of much

embarrassment. It would appear, that in one or two instances, sounds that

differ only in length, or time, are commonly recognized as different

elements; and that grammarians and orthoëpists, perceiving this, have

attempted to carry out the analogy, and to find among what they call the

long vowels a parent sound for each of the short ones. In doing this, they

have either neglected to consult the ear, or have not chosen to abide by

its verdict. I suppose the vowels heard in \_pull\_ and \_pool\_ would be

necessarily identified, if the former were protracted or the latter

shortened; and perhaps there would be a like coalescence of those heard in

\_of\_ and \_all\_, were they tried in the same way, though I am not sure of

it. In protracting the \_e\_ in \_met\_, and the \_i\_ in \_ship\_, ignorance or

carelessness might perhaps, with the help of our orthoëpists, convert the

former word into \_mate\_ and the latter into \_sheep\_; and, as this would

breed confusion in the language, the avoiding of the similarity may perhaps

be a sufficient reason for confining these two sounds of \_e\_ and \_i\_, to

that short quantity in which they cannot be mistaken. But to suppose, as

some do, that the protraction of \_u\_ in \_tun\_ would identify it with the

\_o\_ in \_tone\_, surpasses any notion I have of what stupidity may

misconceive. With one or two exceptions, therefore, it appears to me that

each of the pure vowel sounds is of such a nature, that it may be readily

recognized by its own peculiar quality or tone, though it be made as long

or as short as it is possible for any sound of the human voice to be. It is

manifest that each of the vowel sounds heard in \_ate, at, arm, all, eel,

old, ooze, us\_, may be protracted to the entire extent of a full breath

slowly expended, and still be precisely the same one simple sound;[103]

and, on the contrary, that all but one may be shortened to the very minimum

of vocality, and still be severally known without danger of mistake. The

prolation of a pure vowel places the organs of utterance in that particular

position which the sound of the letter requires, and then \_holds them

unmoved\_ till we have given to it all the length we choose.

OBS. 11.--In treating of the quantity and quality of the vowels, Walker

says, "The first distinction of sound that seems to obtrude itself upon us

when we utter the vowels, is a long and a short sound, according to the

greater or less duration of time taken up in pronouncing them. This

distinction is so obvious as to have been adopted in all languages, and is

that to which we annex \_clearer ideas than to any other\_; and though the

short sounds of some vowels have not in our language been classed with

sufficient accuracy with their parent long ones, yet this has bred but

little confusion, as vowels long and short are always sufficiently

distinguishable."--\_Principles\_, No. 63. Again: "But though the terms long

and short, as applied to vowels, are pretty generally understood, an

accurate ear will easily perceive that these terms do not always mean the

long and short sounds of the respective vowels to which they are applied;

for, if we choose to be directed by the ear, in denominating vowels long or

short, we must certainly give these appellations to those sounds only which

have \_exactly the same radical tone\_, and differ only in the long or short

emission of that tone."--\_Ib.\_, No. 66. He then proceeds to state his

opinion that the vowel sounds heard in the following words are thus

correspondent: \_tame, them; car, carry; wall, want; dawn, gone; theme, him;

tone\_, nearly \_tun; pool, pull\_. As to the long sounds of \_i\_ or \_y\_, and

of \_u\_, these two being diphthongal, he supposes the short sound of each to

be no other than the short sound of its latter element \_ee\_ or \_oo\_. Now to

me most of this is exceedingly unsatisfactory; and I have shown why.

OBS. 12.--If men's notions of the length and shortness of vowels are the

clearest ideas they have in relation to the elements of speech, how comes

it to pass that of all the disputable points in grammar, this is the most

perplexed with contrarieties of opinion? In coming before the world as an

author, no man intends to place himself clearly in the wrong; yet, on the

simple powers of the letters, we have volumes of irreconcilable doctrines.

A great connoisseur in things of this sort, who professes to have been long

"in the habit of listening to sounds of every description, and that with

more than ordinary attention," declares in a recent and expensive work,

that "in every language we find the vowels \_incorrectly classed\_"; and, in

order to give to "the simple elements of English utterance" a better

explanation than others have furnished, he devotes to a new analysis of our

alphabet the ample space of twenty octavo pages, besides having several

chapters on subjects connected with it. And what do his twenty pages amount

to? I will give the substance of them in ten lines, and the reader may

judge. He does not tell us \_how many\_ elementary sounds there are; but,

professing to arrange the vowels, long and short, "in the order in which

they are naturally found," as well as to show of the consonants that the

mutes and liquids form correspondents in regular pairs, he presents a

scheme which I abbreviate as follows. VOWELS: 1. \_A\_, as in \_=all\_ and

\_wh~at\_, or \_o\_, as in \_orifice\_ and \_n~ot\_; 2. \_U--=urn\_ and \_h~ut\_, or

\_l=ove\_ and \_c~ome\_; 3. \_O--v=ote\_ and \_ech~o\_; 4. \_A--=ah\_ and \_h~at\_; 5.

\_A--h=azy\_, no short sound; 6. \_E--=e=el\_ and \_it\_; 7. \_E--m=ercy\_ and

\_m~et\_; 8. \_O--pr=ove\_ and \_ad~o\_; 9. \_OO--t=o=ol\_ and \_f~o~ot\_; 10.

\_W--vo=w\_ and \_la~w\_; 11. \_Y\_--(like the first \_e\_--) \_s=yntax\_ and

\_dut~y\_. DIPHTHONGS: 1. \_I\_--as \_ah-ee\_; 2. \_U\_--as \_ee-oo\_; 3. \_OU\_--as

\_au-oo\_. CONSONANTS: 1. Mutes,--\_c\_ or \_s, f, h, k\_ or \_q, p, t, th sharp,

sh\_; 2. Liquids,--\_l\_, which has no corresponding mute, and \_z, v, r, ng,

m, n, th flat\_ and \_j\_, which severally correspond to the eight mutes in

their order; 3. Subliquids,--\_g hard, b\_, and \_d\_. See "Music of Nature,"

by \_William Gardiner\_, p. 480, and after.

OBS. 13.--Dr. Rush comes to the explanation of the powers of the letters as

the confident first revealer of nature's management and wisdom; and hopes

to have laid the foundation of a system of instruction in reading and

oratory, which, if adopted and perfected, "will beget a similarity of

opinion and practice," and "be found to possess an excellence which must

grow into sure and irreversible favour."--\_Phil. of the Voice\_, p. 404. "We

have been willing," he says, "\_to believe, on faith alone\_, that nature is

wise in the contrivance of speech. Let us now show, by our works of

analysis, how she manages the \_simple elements\_ of the voice, in the

production of their unbounded combinations."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 44. Again: "Every

one, with peculiar self-satisfaction, thinks he reads well, and yet all

read differently: there is, however, \_but one mode\_ of reading

well."--\_Ib.\_, p. 403. That one mode, some say, his philosophy alone

teaches. Of that, others may judge. I shall only notice here what seems to

be his fundamental position, that, on all the vocal elements of language,

nature has stamped duplicity. To establish this extraordinary doctrine, he

first attempts to prove, that "the letter \_a\_, as heard in the word \_day\_,"

combines two distinguishable yet inseparable sounds; that it is a compound

of what he calls, with reference to vowels and syllables in general, "the

radical and the vanishing movement of the voice,"--a single and indivisible

element in which "two sounds are heard continuously successive," the sounds

of \_a\_ and \_e\_ as in \_ale\_ and \_eve\_. He does not know that some

grammarians have contended that \_ay\_ in \_day\_ is a proper diphthong, in

which both the vowels are heard; but, so pronouncing it himself, infers

from the experiment, that there is no simpler sound of the vowel a. If this

inference is not wrong, the word \_shape\_ is to be pronounced \_sha-epe\_;

and, in like manner, a multitude of other words will acquire a new element

not commonly heard in them.

OBS. 14.--But the doctrine stops not here. The philosopher examines, in

some similar way, the other simple vowel sounds, and finds a beginning and

an end, a base and an apex, a radical and a vanishing movement, to them

all; and imagines a sufficient warrant from nature to divide them all "into

two parts," and to convert most of them into diphthongs, as well as to

include all diphthongs with them, as being altogether as simple and

elementary. Thus he begins with confounding all distinction between

diphthongs and simple vowels; except that which he makes for himself when

he admits "the radical and the vanish," the first half of a sound and the

last, to have no difference in quality. This admission is made with respect

to the vowels heard in \_ooze, eel, err, end\_, and \_in\_, which he calls, not

diphthongs, but "monothongs." But in the \_a\_ of \_ale\_, he hears \_=a'-ee\_;

in that of \_an, ~a'-~e\_; (that is, the short \_a\_ followed by something of

the sound of \_e\_ in \_err\_;) in that of \_art, ah'~-e\_; in that of \_all,

awe'-~e\_; in the \_i\_ of \_isle, =i'-ee\_; in the \_o\_ of \_old, =o'-oo\_; in the

proper diphthong \_ou, ou'-oo\_; in the \_oy\_ of \_boy\_, he knows not what.

After his explanation of these mysteries, he says, "The seven radical

sounds with their vanishes, which have been described, include, as far as I

can perceive, all the elementary diphthongs of the English

language."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. But all the sounds of the vowel \_u\_, whether

diphthongal or simple, are excluded from his list, unless he means to

represent one of them by the \_e\_ in \_err\_; and the complex vowel sound

heard in \_voice\_ and \_boy\_, is confessedly omitted on account of a doubt

whether it consists of two sounds or of three! The elements which he

enumerates are thirty-five; but if \_oi\_ is not a triphthong, they are to be

thirty-six. Twelve are called "\_Tonics\_; and are heard in the usual sound

of the separated \_Italics\_, in the following words: \_A\_-ll, \_a\_-rt, \_a\_-n,

\_a\_-le, \_ou\_-r, \_i\_-sle, \_o\_-ld, \_ee\_-l, \_oo\_-ze, \_e\_-rr, \_e\_-nd,

\_i\_-n,"--\_Ib.\_, p. 53. Fourteen are called "\_Subtonics\_; and are marked by

the separated Italics, in the following words: \_B\_-ow, \_d\_-are, \_g\_-ive,

\_v\_-ile, \_z\_-one, \_y\_-e, \_w\_-o, \_th\_-en, a-\_z\_-ure, si-\_ng\_, \_l\_-ove,

\_m\_-ay, \_n\_-ot, \_r\_-oe."--\_Ib.\_, p. 54. Nine are called "\_Atonics\_; they

are heard in the words, U-\_p\_, ou-\_t\_, ar-\_k\_, i-\_f\_, ye-\_s, h\_-e,

\_wh\_-eat, \_th\_-in, pu-\_sh\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. My opinion of this scheme of

the alphabet the reader will have anticipated.

IV. FORMS OF THE LETTERS.

In printed books of the English language, the Roman characters are

generally employed; sometimes, the \_Italic\_; and occasionally, the [Font

change: Old English]: but in handwriting, [Font change: Script letters] are

used, the forms of which are peculiarly adapted to the pen.

Characters of different sorts or sizes should never be \_needlessly mixed\_;

because facility of reading, as well as the beauty of a book, depends much

upon the regularity of its letters.

In the ordinary forms of the Roman letters, every thick stroke that slants,

slants from the left to the right downwards, except the middle stroke in Z;

and every thin stroke that slants, slants from the left to the right

upwards.

Italics are chiefly used to distinguish emphatic or remarkable words: in

the Bible, they show what words were supplied by the translators.

In manuscripts, a single line drawn under a word is meant for Italics; a

double line, for small capitals; a triple line, for full capitals.

In every kind of type or character, the letters have severally \_two forms\_,

by which they are distinguished as \_capitals\_ and \_small letters\_. Small

letters constitute the body of every work; and capitals are used for the

sake of eminence and distinction. The titles of books, and the heads of

their principal divisions, are printed wholly in capitals. Showbills,

painted signs, and short inscriptions, commonly appear best in full

capitals. Some of these are so copied in books; as, "I found an altar

with this inscription, TO THE UNKNOWN GOD."--\_Acts\_, xvii, 23. "And they

set up over his head, his accusation written, THIS IS JESUS, THE KING OF

THE JEWS."--\_Matt.\_, xxvii, 37.

RULES FOR THE USE OF CAPITALS.

RULE I.--OF BOOKS.

When particular books are mentioned by their names, the chief words in

their titles begin with capitals, and the other letters are small; as,

"Pope's Essay on Man"--"the Book of Common Prayer"--"the Scriptures of the

Old and New Testaments." [104]

RULE II.--FIRST WORDS.

The first word of every distinct sentence, or of any clause separately

numbered or paragraphed, should begin with a capital; as, "Rejoice

evermore. Pray without ceasing. In every thing give thanks: for this is the

will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you. Quench not the Spirit. Despise

not prophesyings. Prove all things: hold fast that which is good."--\_1

Thess.\_, v, 16--21.

"14. He has given his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

15. \_For\_ quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

16. \_For\_ protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for murders:

17. \_For\_ cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

18. \_For\_ imposing taxes on us without our consent:" &c.

\_Declaration of American Independence.\_

RULE III.--OF THE DEITY.

All names of the Deity, and sometimes their emphatic substitutes, should

begin with capitals; as, "God, Jehovah, the Almighty, the Supreme Being,

Divine Providence, the Messiah, the Comforter, the Father, the Son, the

Holy Spirit, the Lord of Sabaoth."

"The hope of my spirit turns trembling to Thee."--\_Moore\_.

RULE IV.--PROPER NAMES.

Proper names, of every description, should always begin with capitals; as,

"Saul of Tarsus, Simon Peter, Judas Iscariot, England, London, the Strand,

the Thames, the Pyrenees, the Vatican, the Greeks, the Argo and the

Argonauts."

RULE V.--OF TITLES.

Titles of office or honour, and epithets of distinction, applied to

persons, begin usually with capitals; as, "His Majesty William the Fourth,

Chief Justice Marshall, Sir Matthew Hale, Dr. Johnson, the Rev. Dr.

Chalmers, Lewis the Bold, Charles the Second, James the Less, St.

Bartholomew, Pliny the Younger, Noah Webster, Jun., Esq."

RULE VI.--ONE CAPITAL.

Those compound proper names which by analogy incline to a union of their

parts without a hyphen, should be so written, and have but one capital: as,

"Eastport, Eastville, Westborough, Westfield, Westtown, Whitehall,

Whitechurch, Whitehaven, Whiteplains, Mountmellick, Mountpleasant,

Germantown, Germanflats, Blackrock, Redhook, Kinderhook, Newfoundland,

Statenland, Newcastle, Northcastle, Southbridge, Fairhaven, Dekalb,

Deruyter, Lafayette, Macpherson."

RULE VII.--TWO CAPITALS.

The compounding of a name under one capital should be avoided when the

general analogy of other similar terms suggests a separation under two; as,

"The chief mountains of Ross-shire are Ben Chat, \_Benchasker\_, Ben Golich,

Ben Nore, Ben Foskarg, and Ben Wyvis."--\_Glasgow Geog.\_, Vol. ii, p. 311.

Write \_Ben Chasker\_. So, when the word \_East, West, North\_, or \_South\_, as

part of a name, denotes relative position, or when the word \_New\_

distinguishes a place by contrast, we have generally separate words and two

capitals; as, "East Greenwich, West Greenwich, North Bridgewater, South

Bridgewater, New Jersey, New Hampshire."

RULE VIII.--COMPOUNDS.

When any adjective or common noun is made a distinct part of a compound

proper name, it ought to begin with a capital; as, "The United States, the

Argentine Republic, the Peak of Teneriffe, the Blue Ridge, the Little

Pedee, Long Island, Jersey City, Lower Canada, Green Bay, Gretna Green,

Land's End, the Gold Coast."

RULE IX.--APPOSITION.

When a common and a proper name are associated merely to explain each

other, it is in general sufficient, if the proper name begin with a

capital, and the appellative, with a small letter; as, "The prophet Elisha,

Matthew the publican, the brook Cherith, the river Euphrates, the Ohio

river, Warren county, Flatbush village, New York city."

RULE X.--PERSONIFICATIONS.

The name of an object personified, when it conveys an idea strictly

individual, should begin with a capital; as, "Upon this, \_Fancy\_ began

again to bestir herself."--\_Addison\_. "Come, gentle \_Spring\_, ethereal

mildness, come."--\_Thomson\_.

RULE XI.--DERIVATIVES.

Words derived from proper names, and having direct reference to particular

persons, places, sects, or nations, should begin with capitals; as,

"Platonic, Newtonian, Greek, or Grecian, Romish, or Roman, Italic, or

Italian, German, or Germanic, Swedish, Turkish, Chinese, Genoese, French,

Dutch, Scotch, Welsh:" so, perhaps, "to Platonize, Grecize, Romanize,

Italicize, Latinize, or Frenchify."

RULE XII.--OF I AND O.

The words \_I\_ and \_O\_ should always be capitals; as, "Praise the Lord, O

Jerusalem; praise thy God, O Zion."--\_Psalm\_ cxlvii. "O wretched man that I

am!"--"For that which I do, I allow not: for what I would, that do I not;

but what I hate, that do I."--\_Rom.\_, vii, 24 and 15.

RULE XIII.--OF POETRY.

Every line in poetry, except what is regarded as making but one verse with

the line preceding, should begin with a capital; as,

"Our sons their fathers' failing language see,

And such as Chaucer is, shall Dryden be."--\_Pope\_.

Of the exception, some editions of the Psalms in Metre are full of

examples; as,

"Happy the man whose tender care

relieves the poor distress'd!

When troubles compass him around,

the Lord shall give him rest."

\_Psalms with Com. Prayer, N. Y.\_, 1819, Ps. xli.

RULE XIV.--OF EXAMPLES.

The first word of a full example, of a distinct speech, or of a direct

quotation, should begin with a capital; as, "Remember this maxim: 'Know

thyself.'"--"Virgil says, 'Labour conquers all things.'"--"Jesus answered

them, Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods?"--\_John\_, x, 34.

"Thou knowest the commandments, Do not commit adultery, Do not kill, Do not

steal, Do not bear false witness, Honour thy father and thy

mother."--\_Luke\_, xviii, 20.

RULE XV.--CHIEF WORDS.

Other words of particular importance, and such as denote the principal

subjects treated of, may be distinguished by capitals; and names subscribed

frequently have capitals throughout: as, "In its application to the

Executive, with reference to the Legislative branch of the Government, the

same rule of action should make the President ever anxious to avoid the

exercise of any discretionary authority which can be regulated by

Congress."--ANDREW JACKSON, 1835.

RULE XVI.--NEEDLESS CAPITALS.

Capitals are improper wherever there is not some special rule or reason for

their use: a century ago books were disfigured by their frequency; as,

"Many a Noble \_Genius\_ is lost for want of \_Education\_. Which wou'd then be

Much More Liberal. As it was when the \_Church\_ Enjoy'd her \_Possessions\_.

And \_Learning\_ was, in the \_Dark Ages\_, Preserv'd almost only among the

\_Clergy\_."--CHARLES LESLIE, 1700; \_Divine Right of Tythes\_, p. 228.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The letters of the alphabet, read by their names, are equivalent

to words. They are a sort of universal signs, by which we may mark and

particularize objects of any sort, named or nameless; as, "To say,

therefore, that while A and B are both quadrangular, A is more or less

quadrangular than B, is absurd."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 50. Hence they are

used in the sciences as symbols of an infinite variety of things or ideas,

being construed both substantively and adjectively; as, "In ascending from

the note C to D, the interval is equal to an inch; and from D to E, the

same."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 293. "We have only to imagine the G clef

placed below it."--\_Ib.\_ Any of their forms may be used for such purposes,

but the custom of each science determines our choice. Thus Algebra employs

small Italics; Music, Roman capitals; Geometry, for the most part, the

same; Astronomy, Greek characters; and Grammar, in some part or other,

every sort. Examples: "Then comes \_answer\_ like an ABC book."--\_Beauties of

Shakspeare\_, p. 97. "Then comes \_question\_ like an \_a, b, c\_,

book.--\_Shakspeare\_." See A, B, C, in \_Johnson's quarto Dict.\_

Better:--"like an \_A-Bee-Cee\_ book."

"For A, his magic pen evokes an O,

And turns the tide of Europe on the foe."--\_Young\_.

OBS. 2.--A lavish use of capitals defeats the very purpose for which the

letters were distinguished in rank; and carelessness in respect to the

rules which govern them, may sometimes misrepresent the writer's meaning.

On many occasions, however, their use or disuse is arbitrary, and must be

left to the judgement and taste of authors and printers. Instances of this

kind will, for the most part, concern \_chief words\_, and come under the

fifteenth rule above. In this grammar, the number of rules is increased;

but the foregoing are still perhaps too few to establish an accurate

uniformity. They will however tend to this desirable result; and if doubts

arise in their application, the difficulties will be in particular examples

only, and not in the general principles of the rules. For instance: In 1

Chron., xxix, 10th, some of our Bibles say, "Blessed be thou, LORD God of

Israel our father, for ever and ever." Others say, "Blessed be thou, LORD

God of Israel, our Father, for ever and ever." And others, "Blessed be

thou, LORD God of Israel our Father, for ever and ever." The last is wrong,

either in the capital F, or for lack of a comma after \_Israel\_. The others

differ in meaning; because they construe the word \_father\_, or \_Father\_,

differently. Which is right I know not. The first agrees with the Latin

Vulgate, and the second, with the Greek text of the Septuagint; which two

famous versions here disagree, without ambiguity in either.[105]

OBS. 3.--The innumerable discrepancies in respect to capitals, which, to a

greater or less extent, disgrace the very best editions of our most popular

books, are a sufficient evidence of the want of better directions on this

point. In amending the rules for this purpose, I have not been able

entirely to satisfy myself; and therefore must needs fail to satisfy the

very critical reader. But the public shall have the best instructions I can

give. On Rule 1st, concerning \_Books\_, it may be observed, that when

particular books or writings are mentioned by other terms than their real

titles, the principle of the rule does not apply. Thus, one may call

Paradise Lost, "Milton's \_great poem\_;" or the Diversions of Purley, "the

\_etymological investigations\_ of Horne Tooke." So it is written in the

Bible, "And there was delivered unto him \_the book of the prophet\_

Esaias."--\_Luke\_, iv, 17. Because the name of Esaias, or Isaiah, seems to

be the only proper title of his book.

OBS. 4.--On Rule 2d, concerning \_First Words\_, it may be observed, that the

using of other points than the period, to separate sentences that are

totally distinct in sense, as is sometimes practised in quoting, is no

reason for the omission of capitals at the beginning of such sentences;

but, rather, an obvious reason for their use. Our grammarians frequently

manufacture a parcel of puerile examples, and, with the formality of

apparent quotation, throw them together in the following manner: "He is

above disguise;" "we serve under a good master;" "he rules over a willing

people;" "we should do nothing beneath our character."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 118. These sentences, and all others so related, should, unquestionably,

begin with capitals. Of themselves, they are distinct enough to be

separated by the period and a dash. With examples of one's own making, the

quotation points may be used or not, as the writer pleases; but not on

their insertion or omission, nor even on the quality of the separating

point, depends in all cases the propriety or impropriety of using initial

capitals. For example: "The Future Tense is the form of the verb which

denotes future time; as, John \_will come\_, you shall go, they will learn,

the sun will rise to-morrow, he will return next week."--\_Frazee's Improved

Gram.\_, p. 38; \_Old Edition\_, 35. To say nothing of the punctuation here

used, it is certain that the initial words, \_you, they, the\_, and \_he\_,

should have commenced with capitals.

OBS. 5.--On Rule 3d, concerning \_Names of Deity\_, it may be observed, that

the words \_Lord\_ and \_God\_ take the nature of proper names, only when they

are used in reference to the Eternal Divinity. The former, as a title of

honour to men, is usually written with a capital; but, as a common

appellative, with a small letter. The latter, when used with reference to

any fabulous deity, or when made plural to speak of many, should seldom, if

ever, begin with a capital; for we do not write with a capital any common

name which we do not mean to honour: as, "Though there be that are called

\_gods\_, whether in heaven or in earth--as there be \_gods\_ many, and \_lords\_

many."--\_1 Cor.\_, viii, 5. But a diversity of design or conception in

respect to this kind of distinction, has produced great diversity

concerning capitals, not only in original writings, but also in reprints

and quotations, not excepting even the sacred books. Example: "The Lord is

a great God, and a great King above all \_Gods\_."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 88.

Perhaps the writer here exalts the inferior beings called gods, that he may

honour the one true God the more; but the Bible, in four editions to which

I have turned, gives the word \_gods\_ no capital. See \_Psalms\_, xcv, 3. The

word \_Heaven\_ put for God, begins with a capital; but when taken literally,

it commonly begins with a small letter. Several nouns occasionally

connected with names of the Deity, are written with a very puzzling

diversity: as, "The Lord of \_Sabaoth\_;"--"The Lord God of \_hosts\_;"--"The

God of \_armies\_;"--"The Father of \_goodness\_;"--"The Giver of all

\_good\_;"--"The Lord, the righteous \_Judge\_." All these, and many more like

them, are found sometimes with a capital, and sometimes without. \_Sabaoth\_,

being a foreign word, and used only in this particular connexion, usually

takes a capital; but the equivalent English words do not seem to require

it. For "\_Judge\_," in the last example, I would use a capital; for "\_good\_"

and "\_goodness\_," in the preceding ones, the small letter: the one is an

eminent name, the others are mere attributes. Alger writes, "\_the Son of

Man\_," with two capitals; others, perhaps more properly, "\_the Son of

man\_," with one--wherever that phrase occurs in the New Testament. But, in

some editions, it has no capital at all.

OBS. 6.--On Rule 4th, concerning \_Proper Names\_, it may be observed, that

the application of this principle supposes the learner to be able to

distinguish between proper names and common appellatives. Of the difference

between these two classes of words, almost every child that can speak, must

have formed some idea. I once noticed that a very little boy, who knew no

better than to call a pigeon a turkey because the creature had feathers,

was sufficiently master of this distinction, to call many individuals by

their several names, and to apply the common words, \_man, woman, boy,

girl\_, &c., with that generality which belongs to them. There is,

therefore, some very plain ground for this rule. But not all is plain, and

I will not veil the cause of embarrassment. It is only an act of imposture,

to pretend that grammar \_is easy\_, in stead of making it so. Innumerable

instances occur, in which the following assertion is by no means true: "The

distinction between a common and a proper noun is \_very

obvious\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p 32. Nor do the remarks of this author, or

those of any other that I am acquainted with, remove any part of the

difficulty. We are told by this gentleman, (in language incorrigibly bad,)

that, "\_Nouns\_ which denote the genus, species, or variety of beings or

things, are always common; as, \_tree\_, the genus; \_oak, ash, chestnut,

poplar\_, different species; and \_red oak, white oak, black oak\_,

varieties."--\_Ib.\_, p. 32. Now, as it requires \_but one noun\_ to denote

either a genus or a species, I know not how to conceive of \_those\_ "\_nouns\_

which denote \_the genus\_ of things," except as of other confusion and

nonsense; and, as for the three varieties of oak, there are surely no

"\_nouns\_" here to denote them, unless he will have \_red, white\_, and

\_black\_ to be nouns. But what shall we say of--"the Red sea, the White sea,

the Black sea;" or, with two capitals, "Red Sea, White Sea, Black Sea," and

a thousand other similar terms, which are neither proper names unless they

are written with capitals, nor written with capitals unless they are first

judged to be proper names? The simple phrase, "the united states," has

nothing of the nature of a proper name; but what is the character of the

term, when written with two capitals, "the United States?" If we contend

that it is not then a proper name, we make our country anonymous. And what

shall we say to those grammarians who contend, that "\_Heaven, Hell, Earth,

Sun\_, and \_Moon\_, are proper names;" and that, as such, they should be

written with capitals? See \_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 380.

OBS. 7.--It would seem that most, if not all, proper names had originally

some common signification, and that very many of our ordinary words and

phrases have been converted into proper names, merely by being applied to

particular persons, places, or objects, and receiving the distinction of

capitals. How many of the oceans, seas, lakes, capes, islands, mountains,

states, counties, streets, institutions, buildings, and other things, which

we constantly particularize, have no other proper names than such as are

thus formed, and such as are still perhaps, in many instances, essentially

appellative! The difficulties respecting these will be further noticed

below. A proper noun is the name of some particular individual, group, or

people; as, \_Adam, Boston\_, the \_Hudson\_, the \_Azores\_, the \_Andes\_, the

\_Romans\_, the \_Jews\_, the \_Jesuits\_, the \_Cherokees\_. This is as good a

definition as I can give of a proper noun or name. Thus we commonly

distinguish the names of particular persons, places, nations, tribes, or

sects, with capitals. Yet we name the sun, the moon, the equator, and many

other particular objects, without a capital; for the word the may give a

particular meaning to a common noun, without converting it into a proper

name: but if we say \_Sol\_, for the sun, or \_Luna\_, for the moon, we write

it with a capital. With some apparent inconsistency, we commonly write the

word \_Gentiles\_ with a capital, but \_pagans, heathens\_, and \_negroes\_,

without: thus custom has marked these names with degradation. The names of

the days of the week, and those of the months, however expressed, appear to

me to partake of the nature of proper names, and to require capitals: as,

\_Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday\_; or, as

the Friends denominate them, \_Firstday, Secondday, Thirdday, Fourthday,

Fifthday, Sixthday, Seventhday\_. So, if they will not use \_January,

February\_, &c., they should write as proper names their \_Firstmonth,

Secondmonth\_, &c. The Hebrew names for the months, were also proper nouns:

to wit, Abib, Zif, Sivan, Thamuz, Ab, Elul, Tisri, Marchesvan, Chisleu,

Tebeth, Shebat, Adar; the year, with the ancient Jews, beginning, as ours

once did, in March.

OBS. 8.--On Rule 5th, concerning \_Titles of Honour\_, it may be observed,

that names of office or rank, however high, do not require capitals merely

as such; for, when we use them alone in their ordinary sense, or simply

place them in apposition with proper names, without intending any

particular honour, we begin them with a small letter: as, "the emperor

Augustus;"--"our mighty sovereign, Abbas Carascan;"--"David the

king;"--"Tidal king of nations;"--"Bonner, bishop of London;"--"The sons of

Eliphaz, the first-born you of Esau; duke Teman, duke Omar, duke Zepho,

duke Kenaz, duke Korah, duke Gatam, and duke Amalek."--\_Gen.\_, xxxvi, 15.

So, sometimes, in addresses in which even the greatest respect is intended

to be shown: as, "O \_sir\_, we came indeed down at the first time to buy

food."--\_Gen.\_, xliii, 20. "O my \_lord\_, let thy servant, I pray thee,

speak a word in my \_lord's\_ ears."--\_Gen.\_, xliv, 18. The Bible, which

makes small account of worldly honours, seldom uses capitals under this

rule; but, in some editions, we find "Nehemiah the \_Tirshatha\_," and "Herod

the \_Tetrarch\_," each with a needless capital. Murray, in whose

illustrations the word \_king\_ occurs early one hundred times, seldom

honours his Majesty with a capital; and, what is more, in all this mawkish

mentioning of royalty, nothing is said of it \_that is worth knowing\_.

Examples: "The \_king\_ and the queen had put on their robes."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 154. "The \_king\_, with his life-guard, has just passed through

the village."--\_Ib.\_, 150. "The \_king\_ of Great Britain's

dominions."--\_Ib.\_, 45. "On a sudden appeared the \_king\_."--\_Ib.\_, 146.

"Long live the \_King\_!"--\_Ib.\_, 146. "On which side soever the \_king\_ cast

his eyes."--\_Ib.\_, 156. "It is the \_king\_ of Great Britain's."--\_Ib.\_, 176.

"He desired to be their \_king\_."--\_Ib.\_, 181. "They desired him to be their

\_king\_."--\_Ib.\_, 181. "He caused himself to be proclaimed \_king\_."--\_Ib.\_,

182. These examples, and thousands more as simple and worthless, are among

the pretended quotations by which this excellent man, thought "to promote

the cause of virtue, as well as of learning!"

OBS. 9.--On Rule 6th, concerning \_One Capital for Compounds\_, I would

observe, that perhaps there is nothing more puzzling in grammar, than to

find out, amidst all the diversity of random writing, and wild guess-work

in printing, the true way in which the compound names of places should be

written. For example: What in Greek was "\_ho Areios Pagos\_," the \_Martial

Hill\_, occurs twice in the New Testament: once, in the accusative case,

"\_ton Areion Pagan\_," which is rendered \_Areopagus\_; and once, in the

genitive, "\_tou Areiou Pagou\_," which, in different copies of the English

Bible is made \_Mars' Hill, Mars' hill, Mars'-hill, Marshill, Mars Hill\_,

and perhaps \_Mars hill\_. But if \_Mars\_ must needs be put in the possessive

case, (which I doubt,) they are all wrong: for then it should be \_Mars's

Hill\_; as the name \_Campus Martins\_ is rendered "\_Mars's Field\_," in

Collier's Life of Marcus Antoninus. We often use nouns adjectively; and

\_Areios\_ is an adjective: I would therefore write this name \_Mars Hill\_, as

we write \_Bunker Hill\_. Again: \_Whitehaven\_ and \_Fairhaven\_ are commonly

written with single capitals; but, of six or seven \_towns\_ called

\_Newhaven\_ or \_New Haven\_, some have the name in one word and some in two.

\_Haven\_ means a \_harbour\_, and the words, \_New Haven\_, written separately,

would naturally be understood of a harbour: the close compound is obviously

more suitable for the name of a city or town. In England, compounds of this

kind are more used than in America; and in both countries the tendency of

common usage seems to be, to contract and consolidate such terms. Hence the

British counties are almost all named by compounds ending with the word

\_shire\_; as, Nottinghamshire, Derbyshire, Staffordshire, Leicestershire,

Northamptonshire, Warwickshire, Worcestershire, &c. But the best books we

have, are full of discrepancies and errors in respect to names, whether

foreign or domestic; as, "\_Ulswater\_ is somewhat smaller. The handsomest is

\_Derwentwater\_."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 212. "\_Ulswater\_, a lake of England,"

&c. "\_Derwent-Water\_, a lake in Cumberland," &c.--\_Univ. Gazetteer\_,

"\_Ulleswater\_, lake, Eng. situated partly in Westmoreland,"

&c.--\_Worcester's Gaz.\_ "\_Derwent Water\_, lake, Eng. in

Cumberland."--\_Ibid.\_ These words, I suppose, should be written \_Ullswater\_

and \_Derwentwater\_.

OBS. 10.--An affix, or termination, differs from a distinct word; and is

commonly understood otherwise, though it may consist of the same letters

and have the same sound. Thus, if I were to write \_Stow Bridge\_, it would

be understood of a \_bridge\_; if \_Stowbridge\_, of a \_town\_: or the latter

might even be the name of a \_family\_. So \_Belleisle\_ is the proper name of

a \_strait\_; and \_Belle Isle\_ of several different \_islands\_ in France and

America. Upon this plain distinction, and the manifest inconvenience of any

violation of so clear an analogy of the language, depends the propriety of

most of the corrections which I shall offer under Rule 6th. But if the

inhabitants of any place choose to call their town a creek, a river, a

harbour, or a bridge, and to think it officious in other men to pretend to

know better, they may do as they please. If between them and their

correctors there lie a mutual charge of misnomer, it is for the literary

world to determine who is right. Important names are sometimes acquired by

mere accident. Those which are totally inappropriate, no reasonable design

can have bestowed. Thus a fancied resemblance between the island of

Aquidneck, in Narraganset Bay, and that of Rhodes, in the Ægean Sea, has

at length given to a \_state\_, or \_republic\_, which lies \_chiefly on the

main land\_, the absurd name of \_Rhode Island\_; so that now, to distinguish

Aquidneck itself, geographers resort to the strange phrase, "\_the Island of

Rhode Island\_."--\_Balbi\_. The official title of this little republic, is,

"\_the State of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations\_." But this name is

not only too long for popular use, but it is doubtful in its construction

and meaning. It is capable of being understood in four different ways. 1. A

stranger to the fact, would not learn from this phrase, that the

"Providence Plantations" are included in the "State of Rhode Island," but

would naturally infer the contrary. 2. The phrase, "Rhode Island and

Providence Plantations," may be supposed to mean "Rhode Island

[Plantations] and Providence Plantations." 3. It may be understood to mean

"Rhode Island and Providence [i.e., two] Plantations." 4. It may be taken

for "Rhode Island" [i.e., as an island,] and the "Providence Plantations."

Which, now, of all these did Charles the Second mean, when he gave the

colony this name, with his charter, in 1663? It happened that he meant the

last; but I doubt whether any man in the state, except perhaps some learned

lawyer, can \_parse\_ the phrase, with any certainty of its true construction

and meaning. This old title can never be used, except in law. To write the

popular name "\_Rhodeisland\_," as Dr. Webster has it in his American

Spelling-Book, p. 121, would be some improvement upon it; but to make it

\_Rhodeland\_, or simply \_Rhode\_, would be much more appropriate. As for

\_Rhode Island\_, it ought to mean nothing but the island; and it is, in

fact, \_an abuse of language\_ to apply it otherwise. In one of his parsing

lessons, Sanborn gives us for good English the following tautology: "\_Rhode

Island\_ derived its name from the \_island of Rhode Island\_."--\_Analytical

Gram.\_, p. 37. Think of that sentence!

OBS. 11.--On Rules 7th and 8th, concerning \_Two Capitals for Compounds\_, I

would observe, with a general reference to those \_compound terms\_ which

designate particular places or things, that it is often no easy matter to

determine, either from custom or from analogy, whether such common words as

may happen to be embraced in them, are to be accounted parts of compound

proper names and written with capitals, or to be regarded as appellatives,

requiring small letters according to Rule 9th. Again the question may be,

whether they ought not to be joined to the foregoing word, according to

Rule 6th. Let the numerous examples under these four rules be duly

considered: for usage, in respect to each of them, is diverse; so much so,

that we not unfrequently find it contradictory, in the very same page,

paragraph, or even sentence. Perhaps we may reach some principles of

uniformity and consistency, by observing the several different kinds of

phrases thus used. 1. We often add an adjective to an old proper name to

make a new one, or to serve the purpose of distinction: as, Now York, New

Orleans, New England, New Bedford; North America, South America; Upper

Canada, Lower Canada; Great Pedee, Little Pedee; East Cambridge, West

Cambridge; Troy, West Troy. All names of this class require two capitals:

except a few which are joined together; as \_Northampton\_, which is

sometimes more analogically written \_North Hampton\_. 2. We often use the

possessive case with some common noun after it; as, Behring's Straits,

Baffin's Bay, Cook's Inlet, Van Diemen's Land, Martha's Vineyard, Sacket's

Harbour, Glenn's Falls. Names of this class generally have more than one

capital; and perhaps all of them should be written so, except such as

coalesce; as, Gravesend, Moorestown, the Crowsnest. 3. We sometimes use two

common nouns with \_of\_ between them; as, the Cape of Good Hope, the Isle of

Man, the Isles of Shoals, the Lake of the Woods, the Mountains of the Moon.

Such nouns are usually written with more than one capital. I would

therefore write "the Mount of Olives" in this manner, though it is not

commonly found so in the Bible. 4. We often use an adjective and a common

noun; as, the Yellow sea, the Indian ocean, the White hills, Crooked lake,

the Red river; or, with two capitals, the Yellow Sea, the Indian Ocean, the

White Hills, Crooked Lake, the Red River. In this class of names the

adjective is the distinctive word, and always has a capital; respecting the

other term, usage is divided, but seems rather to favour two capitals. 5.

We frequently put an appellative, or common noun, before or after a proper

name; as, New York city, Washington street, Plymouth county, Greenwich

village. "The Carondelet canal extends from the city of New Orleans to the

bayou St. John, connecting lake Pontchartrain with the Mississippi

river."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_ This is apposition. In phrases of this kind, the

common noun often has a capital, but it seldom absolutely requires it; and

in general a small letter is more correct, except in some few instances in

which the common noun is regarded as a permanent part of the name; as in

\_Washington City, Jersey City\_. The words \_Mount, Cape, Lake\_, and \_Bay\_,

are now generally written with capitals when connected with their proper

names; as, Mount Hope, Cape Cod, Lake Erie, Casco Bay. But they are not

always so written, even in modern books; and in the Bible we read of "mount

Horeb, mount Sinai, mount Zion, mount Olivet," and many others, always with

a single capital.

OBS. 12.--In modern compound names, the hyphen is now less frequently used

than it was a few years ago. They seldom, if ever, need it, unless they are

employed as adjectives; and then there is a manifest propriety in inserting

it. Thus the phrase, "the New London Bridge," can be understood only of a

new bridge in London; and if we intend by it a bridge in New London, we

must say, "the New-London Bridge." So "the New York Directory" is not

properly a directory for New York, but a new directory for York. I have

seen several books with titles which, for this reason, were evidently

erroneous. With respect to the ancient Scripture names, of this class, we

find, in different editions of the Bible, as well as in other books, many

discrepancies. The reader may see a very fair specimen of them, by

comparing together the last two vocabularies of Walker's Key. He will there

meet with an abundance of examples like these: "Uz'zen Shérah,

Uzzen-shérah; Talitha Cúmi, Talithacúmi; Náthan Mélech, Nathan'-melech;

A'bel Mehólath, Abel-mehólah; Házel Elpóni, Hazelepóni; Az'noth Tábor,

Asnoth-tábor; Báal Ham'on, Baal-hámon; Hámon Gog, Ham'ongog; Báal Zébub,

Bäal'zebub; Shéthar Boz'näi, Shether-boz'näi; Meródach Bal'adan,

Merodach-bal'adan." All these glaring inconsistencies, and many more, has

Dr. Webster restereotyped from Walker, in his octavo Dictionary! I see no

more need of the hyphen in such names, than in those of modern times. They

ought, in some instances, to be joined together without it; and, in others,

to be written separately, with double capitals. But special regard should

be had to the ancient text. The phrase, "Talitha, cumi,"--i. e., "Damsel,

arise,"--is found in some Bibles, "Talitha-cumi;" but this form of it is no

more correct than either of those quoted above. See \_Mark\_, v, 41st, in

\_Griesbach's Greek Testament\_, where a comma divides this expression.

OBS. 13.--On Rule 10th, concerning \_Personifications\_, it may be well to

observe, that not every noun which is the name of an object personified,

must begin with a capital, but only such as have a resemblance to \_proper

nouns\_; for the word \_person\_ itself, or \_persons\_, or any other common

noun denoting persons or a person, demands no such distinction. And proper

names of persons are so marked, not with any reference to personality, but

because they are \_proper nouns\_--or names of individuals, and not names of

sorts. Thus, Æsop's viper and file are both personified, where it is

recorded, "'What ails thee, fool?' says the \_file\_ to the \_viper\_;" but the

fable gives to these names no capitals, except in the title of the story.

It may here be added, that, according to their definitions of

personification, our grammarians and the teachers of rhetoric have hitherto

formed no very accurate idea of what constitutes the figure. Lindley Murray

says, "PERSONIFICATION [,] or PROSOPOPOEIA, is that figure by which we

attribute \_life\_ and \_action\_ to \_inanimate\_ objects."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p.

346; \_Duodecimo\_, p. 211. Now this is all wrong, doubly wrong,--wrong in

relation to what personification is, and wrong too in its specification of

the objects which may be personified. For "\_life and action\_" not being

peculiar to \_persons\_, there must be something else than these ascribed, to

form the figure; and, surely, the objects which \_Fancy\_ thinks it right to

personify, are not always "\_inanimate\_." I have elsewhere defined the thing

as follows: "\_Personification\_ is a figure by which, in imagination, we

ascribe intelligence and personality to unintelligent beings or abstract

qualities."--\_Inst.\_, p. 234.

OBS. 14.--On Rule 11th, concerning \_Derivatives\_, I would observe, that not

only the proper adjectives, to which this rule more particularly refers,

but also nouns, and even verbs, derived from such adjectives, are

frequently, if not generally, written with an initial capital. Thus, from

\_Greece\_, we have \_Greek, Greeks, Greekish, Greekling, Grecise, Grecism,

Grecian, Grecians, Grecianize\_. So Murray, copying Blair, speaks of

"\_Latinised English\_;" and, again, of style strictly "\_English\_, without

\_Scotticisms\_ or \_Gallicisms\_."--\_Mur. Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 295; \_Blair's

Lect.\_, pp. 93 and 94. But it is questionable, how far this principle

respecting capitals ought to be carried. The examples in Dr. Johnson's

quarto Dictionary exhibit the words, \_gallicisms, anglicisms, hebrician,

latinize, latinized, judaized\_, and \_christianized\_, without capitals; and

the words \_Latinisms, Grecisms, Hebraisms\_, and \_Frenchified\_, under like

circumstances, with them. Dr. Webster also defines \_Romanize\_, "To

\_Latinize\_; to conform to \_Romish\_ opinions." In the examples of Johnson,

there is a manifest inconsistency. Now, with respect to adjectives from

proper names, and also to the nouns formed immediately from such

adjectives, it is clear that they ought to have capitals: no one will

contend that the words \_American\_ and \_Americans\_ should be written with a

small \_a\_. With respect to \_Americanism, Gallicism\_, and other similar

words, there may be some room to doubt. But I prefer a capital for these.

And, that we may have a uniform rule to go by, I would not stop here, but

would write \_Americanize\_ and \_Americanized\_ with a capital also; for it

appears that custom is in favour of thus distinguishing nearly all verbs

and participles of this kind, so long as they retain an obvious reference

to their particular origin. But when any such word ceases to be understood

as referring directly to the proper name, it may properly be written

without a capital. Thus we write \_jalap\_ from \_Jalapa, hermetical\_ from

\_Hermes, hymeneal\_ from \_Hymen, simony\_, from \_Simon, philippic\_ from

\_Philip\_; the verbs, to \_hector\_, to \_romance\_, to \_japan\_, to \_christen\_,

to \_philippize\_, to \_galvanize\_; and the adverbs \_hermetically\_ and

\_jesuitically\_, all without a capital: and perhaps \_judaize, christianize\_,

and their derivatives, may join this class. Dr. Webster's octavo Dictionary

mentions "the \_prussic\_ acid" and "\_prussian\_ blue," without a capital; and

so does Worcester's.

OBS. 15.--On Rule 12th, concerning \_I\_ and \_O\_, it may be observed, that

although many who occasionally write, are ignorant enough to violate this,

as well as every other rule of grammar, yet no printer ever commits

blunders of this sort. Consequently, the few erroneous examples which will

be exhibited for correction under it, will not be undesigned mistakes.

Among the errors of books, we do not find the printing of the words \_I\_ and

\_O\_ in small characters; but the confounding of \_O\_ with the other

interjection \_oh\_, is not uncommon even among grammarians. The latter has

no concern with this rule, nor is it equivalent to the former, as a sign:

\_O\_ is a note of wishing, earnestness, and vocative address; but \_oh\_ is,

properly, a sign of sorrow, pain, or surprise. In the following example,

therefore, a line from Milton is perverted:--

"\_Oh\_ thou! that with surpassing glory crowned!"

--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 88.

OBS. 16.--On Rule 13th, concerning \_Poetry\_, it may be observed, that the

principle applies only to regular versification, which is the common form,

if not the distinguishing mark, of poetical composition. And, in this, the

practice of beginning every line with a capital is almost universal; but I

have seen some books in which it was whimsically disregarded. Such poetry

as that of Macpherson's Ossian, or such as the common translation of the

Psalms, is subjected neither to this rule, nor to the common laws of verse.

OBS. 17.--On Rule 14th, concerning \_Examples, Speeches\_, and \_Quotations\_,

it may be observed, that the propriety of beginning these with a capital or

otherwise, depends in some measure upon their form. One may suggest certain

words by way of example, (as \_see, saw, seeing, seen\_,) and they will

require no capital; or he may sometimes write one half of a sentence in his

own words, and quote the other with the guillemets and no capital; but

whatsoever is cited as being said with other relations of what is called

\_person\_, requires something to distinguish it from the text into which it

is woven. Thus Cobbett observes, that, "The French, in their Bible, say \_Le

Verbe\_, where we say \_The Word\_."--\_E. Gram.\_, p. 21. Cobbett says \_the

whole\_ of this; but he here refers one short phrase to the French nation,

and an other to the English, not improperly beginning each with a capital,

and further distinguishing them by Italics. Our common Bibles make no use

of the quotation points, but rely solely upon capitals and the common

points, to show where any particular speech begins or ends. In some

instances, the insufficiency of these means is greatly felt,

notwithstanding the extraordinary care of the original writers, in the use

of introductory phrases. Murray says, "When a quotation is brought in

obliquely after a comma, a capital is unnecessary: as, 'Solomon observes,

"that pride goes before destruction."'"--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 284. But, as

the word '\_that\_' belongs not to Solomon, and the next word begins his

assertion, I think we ought to write it, "Solomon observes, that, '\_Pride

goeth\_ before destruction.'" Or, if we do not mean to quote him literally,

we may omit the guillemets, and say, "Solomon observes that pride goes

before destruction."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

[Fist][The improprieties in the following examples are to be corrected

orally by the learner, according to the formules given, or according to

others framed from them with such slight changes as the several quotations

may require. A correct example will occasionally he admitted for the sake

of contrast, or that the learner may see the quoted author's inconsistency.

It will also serve as a block over which stupidity may stumble and wake up.

But a full explanation of what is intended, will be afforded in the Key.]

UNDER RULE I.--OF BOOKS.

"Many a reader of the bible knows not who wrote the acts of the

apostles."--\_G. B.\_

[FORMULE OF CORRECTION.--Not proper, because the words, \_bible, acts\_, and

\_apostles\_, here begin with small letters. But, according to Rule 1st,

"When particular books are mentioned by their names, the chief words in

their titles begin with capitals, and the other letters are small."

Therefore, "Bible" should begin with a capital B; and "Acts" and

"Apostles," each with a large A.]

"The sons of Levi, the chief of the fathers, were written in the book of

the chronicles."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: \_Neh.\_, xii, 23. "Are they not written in

the book of the acts of Solomon?"--SCOTT, ALGER: I \_Kings\_, xi, 41. "Are

they not written in the book of the Chronicles of the kings of

Israel?"--ALGER: \_1 Kings\_, xxii, 39. "Are they not written in the book of

the chronicles of the kings of Judah?"--SCOTT: \_ib.\_, ver. 45. "Which were

written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the

psalms."--SCOTT: \_Luke\_, xxiv, 44. "The narrative of which may be seen in

Josephus's History of the Jewish wars."--\_Scott's Preface\_, p. ix. "This

history of the Jewish war was Josephus's first work, and published about A.

D. 75."--\_Note to Josephus\_. "'I have read,' says Photius, 'the chronology

of Justus of Tiberias.'"--\_Ib., Jos. Life\_. "A philosophical grammar,

written by James Harris, Esquire."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 34. "The reader is

referred to Stroud's sketch of the slave laws."--\_Anti-Slavery Mag.\_, i,

25. "But God has so made the bible that it interprets itself."--\_Ib.\_, i,

78. "In 1562, with the help of Hopkins, he completed the psalter."--\_Music

of Nature\_, p. 283. "Gardiner says this of \_Sternhold\_; of whom the

universal biographical dictionary and the American encyclopedia affirm,

that he died in 1549."--\_Author\_. "The title of a Book, to wit: 'English

Grammar in familiar lectures,'" &c.--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 2. "We had not,

at that time, seen Mr. Kirkham's 'Grammar in familiar Lectures.'"--\_Ib.\_,

p. 3. "When you parse, you may spread the Compendium before you."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 53. "Whenever you parse, you may spread the compendium before

you."--\_Ib.\_, p. 113. "Adelung was the author of a grammatical and critical

dictionary of the German language, and other works."--\_Univ. Biog. Dict.\_

"Alley, William, author of 'the poor man's library,' and a translation of

the Pentateuch, died in 1570."--\_Ib.\_

UNDER RULE II.--OF FIRST WORDS.

"Depart instantly: improve your time: forgive us our sins."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 61.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the words \_improve\_ and \_forgive\_ begin with

small letters. But, according to Rule 2nd, "The first word of every

distinct sentence should begin with a capital." Therefore, "Improve" should

begin with a capital I; and "Forgive," with a capital F.]

EXAMPLES: "Gold is corrupting; the sea is green; a lion is bold."--\_Mur.

Gram.\_, p. 170; \_et al\_. Again: "It may rain; he may go or stay; he would

walk; they should learn."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64; \_et al\_. Again: "Oh! I have

alienated my friend; alas! I fear for life."--\_Ib.\_, p. 128; \_et al\_.

Again: "He went from London to York;" "she is above disguise;" "they are

supported by industry."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28; \_et al\_. "On the foregoing examples,

I have a word to say. they are better than a fair specimen of their kind,

our grammars abound with worse illustrations, their models of English are

generally spurious quotations. few of their proof-texts have any just

parentage, goose-eyes are abundant, but names scarce. who fathers the

foundlings? nobody. then let their merit be nobody's, and their defects his

who could write no better."--\_Author\_. "\_goose-eyes\_!" says a bright boy;

"pray, what are they? does this Mr. Author make new words when he pleases?

\_dead-eyes\_ are in a ship, they are blocks, with holes in them, but what

are goose-eyes in grammar?" ANSWER: "\_goose-eyes\_ are quotation points,

some of the Germans gave them this name, making a jest of their form, the

French call them \_guillemets\_, from the name of their inventor."--\_Author.

"it\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person singular."--\_Comly's

Gram.\_, 12th Ed., p. 126. "\_ourselves\_ is a personal pronoun, of the first

person plural."--\_Ib.\_, 138. "\_thee\_ is a personal pronoun, of the second

person singular."--\_Ib.\_, 126. "\_contentment\_ is a noun common, of the

third person singular."--\_Ib.\_, 128. "\_were\_ is a neuter verb, of the

indicative mood, imperfect tense."--\_Ib.\_, 129.

UNDER RULE III.--OF DEITY.

"O thou dispenser of life! thy mercies are boundless."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_,

p. 449.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_dispenser\_ begins with a small

letter. But, according to Rule 3d, "All names of the Deity, and sometimes

their emphatic substitutes, should begin with capitals." Therefore,

"Dispenser" should here begin with a capital D.]

"Shall not the judge of all the earth do right?"--SCOTT: \_Gen.\_, xviii, 25.

"And the spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 330. "It is the gift of him, who is the great author of good,

and the Father of mercies."--\_Ib.\_, 287. "This is thy god that brought thee

up out of Egypt."--SCOTT, ALGER: \_Neh.\_, ix, 18. "For the lord is our

defence; and the holy one of Israel is our king."--See \_Psalm\_ lxxxix, 18.

"By making him the responsible steward of heaven's bounties."--\_Anti-

Slavery Mag.\_, i, 29. "Which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me

at that day."--SCOTT, FRIENDS: 2 \_Tim.\_, iv, 8. "The cries of them \* \* \*

entered into the ears of the Lord of sabaoth."--SCOTT: \_James\_, v, 4. "In

Horeb, the deity revealed himself to Moses, as the eternal I am, the

self-existent one; and, after the first discouraging interview of his

messengers with Pharaoh, he renewed his promise to them, by the awful name,

jehovah--a name till then unknown, and one which the Jews always held it a

fearful profanation to pronounce."--\_Author\_. "And god spake unto Moses,

and said unto him, I am the lord: and I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac,

and unto Jacob, by the name of god almighty; but by my name jehovah was I

not known to them."--See[106] \_Exod.\_, vi, 2. "Thus saith the lord the king

of Israel, and his redeemer the lord of hosts; I am the first, and I am the

last; and besides me there is no god."--See \_Isa.\_, xliv, 6.

"His impious race their blasphemy renew'd,

And nature's king through nature's optics view'd."--\_Dryden\_, p. 90.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF PROPER NAMES.

"Islamism prescribes fasting during the month ramazan."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_,

p. 17.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_ramazan\_ here begins with a small

letter. But, according to Rule 4th, "Proper names, of every description,

should always begin with capitals." Therefore, "Ramazan" should begin with

a capital R. The word is also misspelled: it should rather be \_Ramadan\_.]

"Near mecca, in arabia, is jebel nor, or the mountain of light, on the top

of which the mussulmans erected a mosque, that they might perform their

devotions where, according to their belief, mohammed received from the

angel gabriel the first chapter of the Koran."--\_Author\_. "In the kaaba at

mecca, there is a celebrated block of volcanic basalt, which the

mohammedans venerate as the gift of gabriel to abraham, but their ancestors

once held it to be an image of remphan, or saturn; so 'the image which fell

down from jupiter,' to share with diana the homage of the ephesians, was

probably nothing more than a meteoric stone."--\_Id.\_ "When the lycaonians,

at lystra, took paul and barnabas to be gods, they called the former

mercury, on account of his eloquence, and the latter jupiter, for the

greater dignity of his appearance."--\_Id.\_ "Of the writings of the

apostolic fathers of the first century, but few have come down to us; yet

we have in those of barnabas, clement of rome, hermas, ignatius, and

polycarp, very certain evidence of the authenticity of the New Testament,

and the New Testament is a voucher for the old."--\_Id.\_

"It is said by tatian, that theagenes of rhegium, in the time of cambyses,

stesimbrotus the thracian, antimachus the colophonian, herodotus of

halicarnassus, dionysius the olynthian, ephorus of cumæ, philochorus the

athenian, metaclides and chamæleon the peripatetics, and zenodotus,

aristophanes, callimachus, erates, eratosthenes, aristarchus, and

apollodorus, the grammarians, all wrote concerning the poetry, the birth,

and the age of homer." See \_Coleridge's Introd.\_, p. 57. "Yet, for aught

that now appears, the life of homer is as fabulous as that of hercules; and

some have even suspected, that, as the son of jupiter and alcmena, has

fathered the deeds of forty other herculeses, so this unfathered son of

critheis, themisto, or whatever dame--this melesigenes, mæonides,

homer--the blind schoolmaster, and poet, of smyrna, chios, colophon,

salamis, rhodes, argos, athens, or whatever place--has, by the help of

lycurgus, solon, pisistratus, and other learned ancients, been made up of

many poets or homers, and set so far aloft and aloof on old parnassus, as

to become a god in the eyes of all greece, a wonder in those of all

Christendom."--\_Author\_.

"Why so sagacious in your guesses?

Your \_effs\_, and \_tees\_, and \_arrs\_, and \_esses\_?"--\_Swift\_.

UNDER RULE V.--OF TITLES.

"The king has conferred on him the title of duke."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

193.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_duke\_ begins with a small letter.

But, according to Rule 5th, "Titles of office or honour, and epithets of

distinction, applied to persons, begin usually with capitals." Therefore,

"Duke" should here begin with a capital D.]

"At the court of queen Elizabeth."--\_Murray's Gram.\_; 8vo, p. 157; 12mo, p.

126; \_Fisk's\_, 115; \_et al\_. "The laws of nature are, truly, what lord

Bacon styles his aphorisms, laws of laws."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 260. "Sixtus

the fourth was, if I mistake not, a great collector of books."--\_Ib.\_, p.

257. "Who at that time made up the court of king Charles the

second."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 314. "In case of his majesty's dying without

issue."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 181. "King Charles the first was beheaded in

1649."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 45. "He can no more impart or (to use lord

Bacon's word,) \_transmit\_ convictions."--\_Kirkham's Eloc.\_, p. 220. "I

reside at lord Stormont's, my old patron and benefactor."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 176. "We staid a month at lord Lyttleton's, the ornament of his

country."--\_Ib.\_, p. 177. "Whose prerogative is it? It is the king of Great

Britain's;" "That is the duke of Bridgewater's canal;" "The bishop of

Llandaff's excellent book;" "The Lord mayor of London's authority."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 176. "Why call ye me lord, lord, and do not the things which I

say?"--See GRIESBACH: \_Luke\_, vi, 46. "And of them he chose twelve, whom

also he named apostles."--SCOTT: \_Luke\_, vi, 13. "And forthwith he came to

Jesus, and said, Hail, master; and kissed him."--See \_the Greek: Matt.\_,

xxvi, 49. "And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from

the dead, they will repent."--\_Luke\_, xvi, 30.

UNDER RULE VI.--OF ONE CAPITAL.

"Fall River, a village in Massachusetts, population 3431."--See \_Univ.

Gaz.\_, p. 416.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the name \_Fall River\_ is here written in two

parts, and with two capitals. But, according to Rule 6th, "Those compound

proper names which by analogy incline to a union of their parts without a

hyphen, should be so written, and have but one capital." Therefore,

\_Fallriver\_, as the name of a \_town\_, should be one word, and retain but

one capital.]

"Dr. Anderson died at West Ham, in Essex, in 1808."--\_Biog. Dict.\_ "Mad

River, [the name of] two towns in Clark and Champaign counties,

Ohio."--\_Williams's Universal Gazetteer\_. "White Creek, town of Washington

county, N. York."--\_Ib.\_ "Salt Creek, the name of four towns in different

parts of Ohio."--\_Ib.\_ "Salt Lick, a town of Fayette county,

Pennsylvania."--\_Ib.\_ "Yellow Creek, a town of Columbiana county,

Ohio."--\_Ib.\_ "White Clay, a hundred of New Castle county,

Delaware."--\_Ib.\_ "Newcastle, town and halfshire of Newcastle county,

Delaware."--\_Ib.\_ "Sing-Sing, a village of West Chester county, New York,

situated in the town of Mount Pleasant."--\_Ib.\_ "West Chester, a county of

New York; also a town in Westchester county."--\_Ib.\_ "West Town, a village

of Orange county, New York."--\_Ib.\_ "White Water, a town of Hamilton

county, Ohio."--\_Ib.\_ "White Water River, a considerable stream that rises

in Indiana, and flowing southeasterly, unites with the Miami, in

Ohio."--\_Ib.\_ "Black Water, a village of Hampshire, in England, and a town

in Ireland."--\_Ib.\_ "Black Water, the name of seven different rivers in

England, Ireland, and the United States."--\_Ib.\_ "Red Hook, a town of

Dutchess county, New York, on the Hudson."--\_Ib.\_ "Kinderhook, a town of

Columbia county, New York, on the Hudson."--\_Ib.\_ "New Fane, a town of

Niagara county, New York."--\_Ib.\_ "Lake Port, a town of Chicot county,

Arkansas."--\_Ib.\_ "Moose Head Lake, the chief source of the Kennebeck, in

Maine."--\_Ib.\_ "Macdonough, a county of Illinois, population (in 1830)

2,959."--\_Ib.\_, p. 408. "Mc Donough, a county of Illinois, with a

courthouse, at Macomb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 185. "Half-Moon, the name of two towns,

in New York and Pennsylvania; also of two bays in the West Indies."--See

\_Worcester's Gaz.\_ "Le Boeuf, a town of Erie county, Pennsylvania, near a

small lake of the same name."--\_Ib.\_ "Charles City, James City, Elizabeth

City, names of counties in Virginia, not cities, nor towns."--See \_Univ.

Gaz.\_ "The superior qualities of the waters of the Frome, here called

Stroud water."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 223.

UNDER RULE VII.--TWO CAPITALS.

"The Forth rises on the north side of Benlomond, and runs

easterly."--\_Glas. Geog\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the name "\_Benlomond\_" is compounded under

one capital, contrary to the general analogy of other similar terms. But,

according to Rule 7th, "The compounding of a name under one capital should

be avoided when the general analogy of other similar terms suggests a

separation under two." Therefore, "Ben Lomond" should be written with two

capitals and no hyphen.]

"The red granite of Ben-nevis is said to be the finest in the

world."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 311. "Ben-more, in Perthshire, is 3,915 feet above the

level of the sea."--\_Ib.\_, 313. "The height of Benclough is 2,420

feet."--\_Ib.\_. "In Sutherland and Caithness, are Ben Ormod, Ben Clibeg, Ben

Grin, Ben Hope, and Ben Lugal."--\_Ib.\_, 311. "Benvracky is 2,756 feet high;

Ben-ledi, 3,009; and Benvoirlich, 3,300."--\_Ib.\_, 313. "The river Dochart

gives the name of Glendochart to the vale through which it runs."--\_Ib.\_,

314. "About ten miles from its source, the Tay diffuses itself into

Lochdochart."--\_Geog. altered\_. LAKES:--"Lochard, Loch-Achray, Loch-Con,

Loch-Doine, Loch-Katrine, Loch-Lomond, Loch-Voil."--\_Scott's Lady of the

Lake\_. GLENS:--"Glenfinlas, Glen Fruin, Glen Luss, Ross-dhu, Leven-glen,

Strath-Endrick, Strath-Gartney, Strath-Ire."--\_Ib.\_ MOUNTAINS:--"Ben-an,

Benharrow, Benledi, Ben-Lomond, Benvoirlich, Ben-venue, and sometimes

Benvenue."--\_Ib.\_ "Fenelon died in 1715, deeply lamented by all the

inhabitants of the Low-countries."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 322. "And

Pharaoh-nechoh made Eliakim, the son of Josiah, king."--SCOTT, FRIENDS: 2

\_Kings\_, xxiii, 34. "Those who seem so merry and well pleased, call her

\_Good Fortune\_; but the others, who weep and wring their hands,

\_Bad-fortune\_."--\_Collier's Tablet of Cebes\_.

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"When Joab returned, and smote Edom in the valley of salt."--SCOTT: \_Ps.\_

lx, \_title\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the words \_valley\_ and \_salt\_ begin with

small letters. But, according to Rule 8th, "When any adjective or common

noun is made a distinct part of a compound proper name, it ought to begin

with a capital." Therefore, "Valley" should here begin with a capital V,

and "Salt" with a capital S.]

"Then Paul stood in the midst of Mars' hill and said," &c.--SCOTT: \_Acts\_,

xvii, 22. "And at night he went out, and abode in the mount that is called

the mount of Olives."--\_Luke\_, xxi, 37. "Abgillus, son of the king of the

Frisii, surnamed Prester John, was in the Holy land with

Charlemagne."--\_Univ. Biog. Dict.\_ "Cape Palmas, in Africa, divides the

Grain coast from the Ivory coast."--\_Dict. of Geog.\_, p. 125. "The North

Esk, flowing from Loch-lee, falls into the sea three miles north of

Montrose."--\_Ib.\_, p. 232. "At Queen's ferry, the channel of the Forth is

contracted by promontories on both coasts."--\_Ib.\_, p. 233. "The Chestnut

ridge is about twenty-five miles west of the Alleghanies, and Laurel ridge,

ten miles further west."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 65. "Washington City, the

metropolis of the United States of America."--\_W.'s Univ. Gaz.\_, p. 380.

"Washington city, in the District of Columbia, population (in 1830)

18,826."--\_Ib.\_, p. 408. "The loftiest peak of the white mountains, in new

Hampshire, is called mount Washington."--\_Author\_. "Mount's bay, in the

west of England, lies between the land's end and lizard point."--\_Id.\_

"Salamis, an island of the Egean Sea, off the southern coast of the ancient

Attica."--\_Dict. of Geog\_. "Rhodes, an island of the Egean sea, the largest

and most easterly of the Cyclades."--\_Ib.\_ "But he overthrew Pharaoh and

his host in the Red sea."--BRUCE'S BIBLE: \_Ps.\_ cxxxvi, 15. "But they

provoked him at the sea, even at the Red sea."--SCOTT: \_Ps.\_ cvi, 7.[107]

UNDER RULE IX.--OF APPOSITION.

"At that time, Herod the Tetrarch heard of the fame of Jesus."--ALGER:

\_Matt.\_, xiv, 1.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word Tetrarch begins with a capital

letter. But, according to Rule 8th, "When a common and a proper name are

associated merely to explain each other, it is in general sufficient, if

the proper name begin with a capital, and the appellative, with a small

letter." Therefore, "tetrarch" should here begin with a small \_t\_.]

"Who has been more detested than Judas the Traitor?"--\_Author\_. "St. Luke,

the Evangelist, was a physician of Antioch, and one of the converts of St.

Paul."--\_Id.\_ "Luther, the Reformer, began his bold career by preaching

against papal indulgences."--\_Id.\_ "The Poet Lydgate was a disciple and

admirer of Chaucer: he died in 1440."--\_Id.\_ "The Grammarian Varro, 'the

most learned of the Romans,' wrote three books when he was eighty years

old."--\_Id.\_ "John Despauter, the great Grammarian of Flanders, whose works

are still valued, died in 1520."--\_Id.\_ "Nero, the Emperor and Tyrant of

Rome, slew himself to avoid a worse death."--\_Id.\_ "Cicero the Orator, 'the

Father of his Country,' was assassinated at the age of 64."--\_Id.\_

"Euripides, the Greek Tragedian, was born in the Island of Salamis, B. C.

476."--\_Id.\_ "I will say unto God my Rock, Why hast thou forgotten

me?"--SCOTT: \_Ps.\_ xlii, 9. "Staten Island, an island of New York, nine

miles below New York City."--\_Univ. Gaz.\_ "When the son of Atreus, King of

Men, and the noble Achilles first separated."--\_Coleridge's Introd.\_, p.

83.

"Hermes, his Patron-God, those gifts bestow'd,

Whose shrine with weaning lambs he wont to load."

--POPE: \_Odys.\_, B. 19.

UNDER RULE X.--OF PERSONIFICATIONS.

"But wisdom is justified of all her children."--SCOTT, ALGER: \_Luke\_, vii,

35.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_wisdom\_ begins with a small

letter. But, according to Rule 10th, "The name of an object personified,

when it conveys an idea strictly individual, should begin with a capital."

Therefore, "Wisdom" should here begin with a capital W.]

"Fortune and the church are generally put in the feminine

gender."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 37. "Go to your natural religion; lay

before her Mahomet, and his disciples."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, p. 157: see

also \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 347. "O death! where is thy sting? O grave! where

is thy victory?"--\_1 Cor.\_, xv, 55; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 348; \_English

Reader\_, 31; \_Merchant's Gram.\_, 212. "Ye cannot serve God and

Mammon."--SCOTT, FRIENDS, ET AL.: \_Matt.\_, vi, 24. "Ye cannot serve God and

mammon."--IIDEM: \_Luke\_, xvi, 13. "This house was built as if suspicion

herself had dictated the plan."--See \_Key\_. "Poetry distinguishes herself

from prose, by yielding to a musical law."--See \_Key\_. "My beauteous

deliverer thus uttered her divine instructions: 'My name is religion. I am

the offspring of truth and love, and the parent of benevolence, hope, and

joy. That monster, from whose power I have freed you, is called

superstition: she is the child of discontent, and her followers are fear

and sorrow.'"--See \_Key\_. "Neither hope nor fear could enter the retreats;

and habit had so absolute a power, that even conscience, if religion had

employed her in their favour, would not have been able to force an

entrance."--See \_Key\_.

"In colleges and halls in ancient days,

There dwelt a sage called discipline."--\_Wayland's M. Sci.\_, p. 368.

UNDER RULE XI.--OF DERIVATIVES.

"In English, I would have gallicisms avoided."--FELTON: \_Johnson's Dict.\_

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_gallicisms\_ here begins with a

small letter. But, according to Rule 11th, "Words derived from proper

names, and having direct reference to particular persons, places, sects, or

nations, should begin with capitals." Therefore, "Gallicisms" should begin

with a capital G.]

"Sallust was born in Italy, 85 years before the christian era."--\_Murray's

Seq.\_, p. 357. "Dr. Doddridge was not only a great man, but one of the most

excellent and useful christians, and christian ministers."--\_Ib.\_, 319.

"They corrupt their style with untutored anglicisms."--MILTON: \_in

Johnson's Dict.\_ "Albert of Stade, author of a chronicle from the creation

to 1286, a benedictine of the 13th century."--\_Universal Biog. Dict.\_

"Graffio, a jesuit of Capua in the 16th century, author of two volumes on

moral subjects."--\_Ib.\_ "They frenchify and italianize words whenever they

can."--See \_Key\_. "He who sells a christian, sells the grace of

God."--\_Anti-Slavery Mag.\_, p. 77. "The first persecution against the

christians, under Nero, began A. D. 64."--\_Gregory's Dict.\_ "P. Rapin, the

jesuit, uniformly decides in favour of the Roman writers."--\_Cobbett's E.

Gram.\_, ¶ 171. "The Roman poet and epicurean philosopher Lucretius has

said," &c.--\_Cohen's Florida\_, p. 107. Spell "calvinistic, atticism,

gothicism, epicurism, jesuitism, sabianism, socinianism, anglican,

anglicism, anglicize, vandalism, gallicism, romanize."--\_Webster's El.

Spelling-Book\_, 130-133. "The large ternate bat."--\_Webster's Dict. w\_.

ROSSET; \_Bolles's Dict., w\_. ROSET.

"Church-ladders are not always mounted best

By learned clerks, and latinists profess'd."--\_Cowper\_.

UNDER RULE XII.--OF I AND O.

"Fall back, fall back; i have not room:--o!

methinks i see a couple whom i should know."--\_Lucian, varied.\_

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_I\_, which occurs three times, and

the word \_O\_, which occurs once, are here printed in letters of the lower

case.[108] But, according to Rule 12th, "The words \_I\_ and \_O\_ should

always be capitals." Therefore, each should be changed to a capital, as

often as it occurs.]

"Nay, i live as i did, i think as i did, i love you as i did; but all these

are to no purpose: the world will not live, think, or love, as i

do."--\_Swift, varied\_. "Whither, o! whither shall i fly? o wretched prince!

o cruel reverse of fortune! o father Micipsa! is this the consequence of

thy generosity?"--\_Sallust, varied\_. "When i was a child, i spake as a

child, i understood as a child, i thought as a child; but when i became a

man, i put away childish things."--\_1 Cor.\_, xiii, 11, \_varied\_. "And i

heard, but i understood not: then said i, o my Lord, what shall be the end

of these things?"--\_Dan.\_, xii, 8, \_varied\_. "Here am i; i think i am very

good, and i am quite sure i am very happy, yet i never wrote a treatise in

my life."--\_Few Days in Athens, varied\_. "Singular, Vocative, \_o master\_;

Plural, Vocative, \_o masters\_."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, p. 30.

"I, i am he; o father! rise, behold

Thy son, with twenty winters now grown old!"--See \_Pope's Odyssey\_.

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF POETRY.

"Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense,

lie in three words--health, peace, and competence;

but health consists with temperance alone,

and peace, O Virtue! peace is all thy own."

\_Pope's Essay on Man, a fine London Edition\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the last three lines of this example begin

with small letters. But, according to Rule 18th, "Every line in poetry,

except what is regarded as making but one verse with the preceding line,

should begin with a capital." Therefore, the words, "Lie," "But," and

"And," at the commencement of these lines, should severally begin with the

capitals L, B, and A.]

"Observe the language well in all you write,

and swerve not from it in your loftiest flight.

The smoothest verse and the exactest sense

displease us, if ill English give offence:

a barbarous phrase no reader can approve;

nor bombast, noise, or affectation love.

In short, without pure language, what you write

can never yield us profit or delight.

Take time for thinking, never work in haste;

and value not yourself for writing fast."

See \_Dryden's Art of Poetry:--British Poets\_, Vol. iii, p. 74.

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF EXAMPLES.

"The word \_rather\_ is very properly used to express a small degree or

excess of a quality: as, 'she is \_rather\_ profuse in her

expenses.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 47.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_she\_ begins with a small letter.

But, according to Rule 14th, "The first word of a full example, of a

distinct speech, or of a direct quotation, should begin with a capital."

Therefore, the word "She" should here begin with a capital S.]

"\_Neither\_ imports \_not either\_; that is, not one nor the other: as,

'neither of my friends was there.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 56. "When we say,

'he is a tall man,' 'this is a fair day,' we make some reference to the

ordinary size of men, and to different weather."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "We more

readily say, 'A million of men,' than 'a thousand of men.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 169.

"So in the instances, 'two and two are four;' 'the fifth and sixth volumes

will complete the set of books.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 124. "The adjective may

frequently either precede or follow it [the verb]: as, 'the man is

\_happy\_;' or, '\_happy\_ is the man:' 'The interview was \_delightful\_;' or,

'\_delightful\_ was the interview.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 168. "If we say, 'he writes a

pen,' 'they ran the river, 'the tower fell the Greeks,' 'Lambeth is

Westminster-abbey,' [we speak absurdly;] and, it is evident, there is a

vacancy which must be filled up by some connecting word: as thus, 'He

writes \_with\_ a pen;' 'they ran \_towards\_ the river;' 'the tower fell

\_upon\_ the Greeks;' 'Lambeth is \_over against\_ Westminster-abbey.'"--\_Ib.\_,

p. 118. "Let me repeat it;--he only is great, who has the habits of

greatness."--\_Murray's Key\_, 241. "I say not unto thee, until seven times;

but, until seventy times seven."--See \_Matt.\_, xviii, 22.

"The Panther smil'd at this; and when, said she,

Were those first councils disallow'd by me?"--\_Dryden\_, p. 95.

UNDER RULE XV.--OF CHIEF WORDS.

"The supreme council of the nation is called the divan."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_,

p. 360.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_divan\_ begins with a small letter.

But, according to Rule 15th, "Other words of particular importance, and

such as denote the principal subjects treated of, may be distinguished by

capitals." Therefore, "Divan" should here begin with a capital D.]

"The British parliament is composed of kings, lords, and

commons."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 184. "A popular orator in the House of

Commons has a sort of patent for coining as many new terms as he

pleases."--See \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 169; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 364. "They may

all be taken together, as one name; as, the \_house of commons\_."--

\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 25. "Intrusted to persons in whom the

parliament could confide."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 202. "For 'The Lords'

house,' it were certainly better to say, 'The house of lords;' and, in

stead of 'The commons' vote,' to say, 'The votes of the commons.'"--See

\_ib.\_, p. 177, 4th \_Amer. Ed.\_; also \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 69. "The house

of lords were so much influenced by these reasons."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

p. 152; \_Priestley's Gram.\_, 188. "Rhetoricians commonly divide them into

two great classes; figures of words, and figures of thought. The former,

figures of words, are commonly called tropes."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 132.

"Perhaps figures of imagination, and figures of passion, might be a more

useful distribution."--\_Ib.\_, p. 133. "Hitherto we have considered

sentences, under the heads of perspicuity, unity, and strength."--\_Ib.\_, p.

120.

"The word is then depos'd, and in this view,

You rule the scripture, not the scripture you."--\_Dryden\_, p. 95.

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF NEEDLESS CAPITALS.

"Be of good cheer: It is I; be not afraid."--ALGER: \_Matt.\_, xiv, 27.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_It\_ begins with a capital \_I\_, for

which there appears to be neither rule nor reason. But, according to Rule

16th, "Capitals are improper wherever there is not some special rule or

reason for their use." Therefore, 'it' should here begin with a small

letter, as Dr. Scott has it.]

"Between passion and lying, there is not a Finger's breadth."--\_Murray's

Key\_, p. 240. "Can our Solicitude alter the course, or unravel the

intricacy, of human events?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 242. "The last edition was

carefully compared with the Original M. S."--\_Ib.\_, p. 239. "And the

governor asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews?"--ALGER:

\_Matt.\_, xxvii, 11. "Let them be turned back for a reward of their shame,

that say, Aha, Aha!"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Ps.\_, lxx, 3. "Let them be desolate

for a reward of their shame, that say unto me, Aha, aha!"--IB.: \_Ps.\_, xl,

15. "What think ye of Christ? whose Son is he? They say unto him, The Son

of David. He saith unto them, How then doth David in Spirit call him

Lord?"--SCOTT: \_Matt.\_, xxii, 42, 43. "Among all Things in the Universe,

direct your Worship to the Greatest; And which is that? 'T is that Being

which Manages and Governs all the Rest."--\_Meditations of M. Aurelius

Antoninus\_, p. 76. "As for Modesty and Good Faith, Truth and Justice, they

have left this wicked World and retired to Heaven: And now what is it that

can keep you here?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 81.

"If Pulse of Terse, a Nation's Temper shows,

In keen Iambics English Metre flows."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 151.

PROMISCUOUS ERRORS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

LESSON I.--MIXED.

"Come, gentle spring, Ethereal mildness, come."--\_Gardiner's Music of

Nature\_, p. 411.

[FORMULES.--1. Not proper, because the word \_spring\_ begins with a small

letter. But, according to Rule 10th, "The name of an object personified,

when it conveys an idea strictly individual, should begin with a capital."

Therefore "Spring" should here begin with a capital S.

2. Not proper again, because the word \_Ethereal\_ begins with a capital E,

for which there appears to be neither rule nor reason. But, according to

Rule 16th. "Capitals are improper whenever there is not some special rule

or reason for their use." Therefore, "ethereal" should here begin with a

small letter.]

As, "He is the Cicero of his age; he is reading the lives of the Twelve

Cæsars."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 36. "In the History of Henry the fourth, by

father Daniel, we are surprized at not finding him the great

man."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 151. "In the history of Henry the fourth, by

Father Daniel, we are \_surprised\_ at not finding him the great

man."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 172; \_Ingersoll's\_, 187; \_Fisk's\_, 99. "Do not

those same poor peasants use the Lever and the Wedge, and many other

instruments?"--\_Murray\_, 288; from \_Harris\_, 293. "Arithmetic is excellent

for the gauging of Liquors; Geometry, for the measuring of Estates;

Astronomy, for the making of Almanacks; and Grammar, perhaps, for the

drawing of Bonds and Conveyances."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 295. "The wars of

Flanders, written in Latin by Famianus Strada, is a book of some

note."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 364. "\_William\_ is a noun.--why? \_was\_ is a

verb.--why? \_a\_ is an article.--why? \_very\_ is an adverb.--why?"

&c.--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 20. "In the beginning was the word, and

that word was with God, and God was that word."--\_Gwilt's Saxon Gram.\_, p.

49. "The greeks are numerous in thessaly, macedonia, romelia, and

albania."--\_Balbi, varied\_. "He is styled by the Turks, Sultan (Mighty) or

Padishah (lord)."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 360. "I will ransom them from the

power of the grave; I will redeem them from death: O death, I will be thy

plagues;[109] O grave, I will be thy destruction."--SCOTT, ALGER, ET AL.:

\_Hosea\_, xiii, 14. "Silver and Gold have I none; but such as I have, give I

unto thee."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 321. "Return, we beseech thee, O God

of Hosts, look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this vine."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 342. "In the Attic Commonwealth, it was the privilege of every citizen

to rail in public."--\_Ib.\_, p. 316. "They assert that, in the phrases,

'give me \_that\_,' '\_this\_ is John's,' and '\_such\_ were \_some\_ of you,' the

words in italics are pronouns: but that, in the following phrases, they are

not pronouns; '\_this\_ book is instructive,' '\_some\_ boys are ingenious,'

'\_my\_ health is declining,' '\_our\_ hearts are deceitful,' &c."--\_Ib.\_, p.

58. "And the coast bends again to the northwest, as far as Far Out

head."--\_Glasgow Geog.\_, Vol. ii, p. 308. Dr. Webster, and other makers of

spelling-books, very improperly write "sunday, monday, tuesday, wednesday,

thursday, friday, saturday," without capitals.--See \_Webster's Elementary

Spelling-Book\_ p. 85. "The commander in chief of the Turkish navy is styled

the capitan-pasha."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 360. "Shall we not much rather be

in subjection unto the father of spirits, and live?"--SCOTT'S BIBLE:

\_Heb.\_, xii, 9. "Shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father

of Spirits, and live?"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Heb.\_, xii, 9. "He was more

anxious to attain the character of a Christian hero."--\_Murray's Sequel\_,

p. 308. "Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, is mount

Zion."--\_Psalms\_, xlviii, 2. "The Lord is my Helper, and I will not fear

what man shall do unto me."--SCOTT: \_Heb.\_, xiii, 6. "Make haste to help

me, O LORD my Salvation."--SCOTT: \_Ps.\_, xxxviii, 22.

"The City, which Thou seest, no other deem

Than great and glorious Rome, Queen of the Earth."

\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 49.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"That range of hills, known under the general name of mount

Jura."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 110. "He rebuked the Red sea also, and it

was dried up."--SCOTT: \_Ps.\_, cvi, 9. "Jesus went unto the mount of

Olives."--\_John\_, viii, 1. "Milton's book, in reply to the \_Defence of the

king\_, by Salmasius, gained him a thousand pounds from the parliament, and

killed his antagonist with vexation."--See \_Murray's Sequel\_, 343.

"Mandeville, sir John, an Englishman, famous for his travels, born about

1300, died in 1372."--\_Biog. Dict.\_ "Ettrick pen, a mountain in

Selkirkshire, Scotland, height 2,200 feet."--\_Glasgow Geog.\_, Vol. ii, p.

312. "The coast bends from Dungsbyhead in a northwest direction to the

promontory of Dunnet head."--\_Ib.\_, p. 307. "Gen. Gaines ordered a

detachment of near 300 men, under the command of Major Twiggs, to surround

and take an Indian Village, called Fowl Town, about fourteen miles from

fort Scott."--\_Cohen's Florida\_, p. 41. "And he took the damsel by the

hand, and said unto her, Talitha Cumi."--ALGER: \_Mark\_, v, 4. "On religious

subjects, a frequent recurrence of scripture-language is attended with

peculiar force."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 318. "Contemplated with gratitude to

their Author, the Giver of all Good."--\_Ib.\_, p. 289. "When he, the Spirit

of Truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171;

\_Fisk\_, 98; \_Ingersoll\_, 186. "See the lecture on verbs, rule XV. note

4."--\_Fisk's E. Gram.\_, p. 117. "At the commencement of lecture II. I

informed you that Etymology treats, 3dly, of derivation."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 171. "This VIII. lecture is a very important one."--\_Ib.\_, p.

113. "Now read the XI. and XII. lectures \_four\_ or \_five\_ times

over."--\_Ib.\_, p. 152. "In 1752, he was advanced to the bench, under the

title of lord Kames."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 331. "One of his maxims was,

'know thyself.'"--\_Lempriere's Dict., n. Chilo.\_ "Good master, what good

thing shall I do, that I may have eternal life?"--See \_Matt.\_, xix, 16.

"His best known works, however, are 'anecdotes of the earl of Chatham,' 2

vols. 4to., 3 vols. 8vo., and 'biographical, literary, and political

anecdotes of several of the most eminent persons of the present age; never

before printed,' 3 vols. 8vo. 1797."--\_Univ. Biog. Dict., n. Almon\_. "O

gentle sleep, Nature's soft nurse, how have I frighted thee?"--\_Merchant's

School Gram.\_, p. 172. "O sleep, O gentle sleep, Nature's soft nurse,"

&c.--SINGER'S SHAK. \_Sec. Part of Hen. IV\_, Act iii. "Sleep, gentle sleep,

Nature's soft nurse," &c.--\_Dodd's Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p. 129.

"And Peace, O, Virtue! Peace is all thy own."--\_Pope's Works\_, p. 379.

"And peace, O virtue! peace is all thy own."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, ii, 16.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"Fenelon united the characters of a nobleman and a Christian pastor. His

book entitled 'An explication of the Maxims of the Saints concerning the

interior life,' gave considerable offence to the guardians of

orthodoxy."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 321. "When natural religion, who before

was only a spectator, is introduced as speaking by the centurion's

voice."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 157. "You cannot deny, that the great mover

and author of nature constantly explaineth himself to the eyes of men, by

the sensible intervention of arbitrary signs, which have no similitude, or

connexion, with the things signified."--\_Berkley's Minute Philosopher\_, p.

169. "The name of this letter is double U, its form, that of a double

V."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 19. "Murray, in his spelling book, wrote

'Charles-Town' with a Hyphen and two Capitals."--See p. 101. "He also wrote

'european' without a capital."--See p. 86. "They profess themselves to be

pharisees, who are to be heard and not imitated."--\_Calvin's Institutes,

Ded.\_, p. 55. "Dr. Webster wrote both 'Newhaven' and 'Newyork' with single

capitals."--See his \_American Spelling-Book\_, p. 111. "Gayhead, the west

point of Martha's Vineyard."--\_Williams's Univ. Gaz.\_ Write "Craborchard,

Eggharbor, Longisland, Perthamboy, Westhampton, Littlecompton, Newpaltz,

Crownpoint, Fellspoint, Sandyhook, Portpenn, Portroyal. Portobello, and

Portorico."--\_Webster's American Spelling-Book\_, 127-140. Write the names

of the months: "january, february, march, april, may, june, july, august,

september, october, november, december."--\_Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book\_,

21-40. Write the following names and words properly: "tuesday, wednesday,

thursday, friday, saturday, saturn;--christ, christian, christmas,

christendom, michaelmas, indian, bacchanals;--Easthampton, omega, johannes,

aonian, levitical, deuteronomy, european."--\_Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book,

sundry places\_.

"Eight Letters in some Syllables we find,

And no more Syllables in Words are joined."

\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 61.

CHAPTER II.--OF SYLLABLES.

A \_Syllable\_ is one or more letters pronounced in one sound; and is either

a word, as, \_a, an, ant\_; or a part of a word, as \_di\_ in \_dial\_.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds, or

separate impulses of the voice; as, \_gram-ma-ri-an\_.

A word of one syllable is called a \_monosyllable\_; a word of two syllables,

a \_dissyllable\_; a word of three syllables, a \_trissyllable\_; and a word of

four or more syllables, a \_polysyllable\_.

Every vowel, except \_w\_, may form a syllable of itself; but the consonants

belong to the vowels or diphthongs; and without a vowel no syllable can be

formed.

DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

A \_diphthong\_ is two vowels joined in one syllable; as, \_ea\_ in \_beat, ou\_

in \_sound\_. In \_oe\_ or \_æ\_, old or foreign, the characters often unite.

A \_proper diphthong\_ is a diphthong in which both the vowels are sounded;

as, \_oi\_ in \_voice, ow\_ in \_vow\_.

An \_improper diphthong\_ is a diphthong in which only one of the vowels is

sounded; as, \_oa\_ in \_loaf, eo\_ in \_people\_.

A \_triphthong\_ is three vowels joined in one syllable; as, \_eau\_ in beau,

\_iew\_ in \_view, oeu\_ in \_manoeuvre\_.

A \_proper triphthong\_ is a triphthong in which all the vowels are sounded;

as, \_uoy\_ in \_buoy\_.

An \_improper triphthong\_ is a triphthong in which only one or two of the

vowels are sounded; as, \_eau\_ in \_beauty, iou\_ in \_anxious\_. The diphthongs

in English are twenty-nine; embracing all but six of the thirty-five

possible combinations of two vowels: \_aa, ae, ai, ao, au, aw, ay,--ea, ee,

ei, eo, eu, ew, ey,--ia, ie\_, (\_ii\_,) \_io\_, (\_iu, iw, iy\_,)--\_oa, oe, oi,

oo, ou, ow, oy,--ua, ue, ui, uo\_, (\_uu, uw\_,) \_uy\_.

Ten of these diphthongs, being variously sounded, may be either proper or

improper; to wit, \_ay,--ie,--oi, ou, ow,--ua, ue, ui, uo, uy\_.

The proper diphthongs appear to be thirteen; \_ay,--ia, ie, io,--oi, ou, ow,

oy,--ua, ue, ui, uo, uy\_: of which combinations, only three, \_ia, io\_, and

\_oy\_, are invariably of this class.

The improper diphthongs are twenty-six; \_aa, ae, ai, ao, au, aw, ay,--ea,

ee, ei, eo, eu, ew, ey,--ie,--oa, oe, oi, oo, ou, ow,--ua, ue, ui, uo, uy\_.

The only proper triphthong in English is \_uoy\_, as in \_buoy, buoyant,

buoyancy\_; unless \_uoi\_ in \_quoit\_ may be considered a parallel instance.

The improper triphthongs are sixteen; \_awe, aye,--eau, eou, ewe, eye,--ieu,

iew, iou,--oeu, owe,--uai, uaw, uay, uea, uee\_.

SYLLABICATION.

In dividing words into syllables, we are to be directed chiefly by the ear;

it may however be proper to observe, as far as practicable, the following

rules.

RULE I.--CONSONANTS.

Consonants should generally be joined to the vowels or diphthongs which

they modify in utterance; as, \_An-ax-ag'-o-ras, ap-os-tol'-i-cal\_.[110]

RULE II.--VOWELS.

Two vowels, coming together, if they make not a diphthong, must be parted

in dividing the syllables; as, \_A-cka'-i-a, A-o'-ni-an, a-e'-ri-al\_.

RULE III.--TERMINATIONS.

Derivative and grammatical terminations should generally be separated from

the radical words to which they have been added; as, \_harm-less, great-ly,

connect-ed\_: thus \_count-er\_ and \_coun-ter\_ are different words.

RULE IV.--PREFIXES.

Prefixes, in general, form separate syllables; as, \_mis-place, out-ride,

up-lift\_: but if their own primitive meaning be disregarded, the case may

be otherwise; thus, \_re-create\_, and \_rec'-reate, re-formation\_, and

\_ref-ormation\_, are words of different import.

RULE V.--COMPOUNDS.

Compounds, when divided, should be divided into the simple words which

compose them; as, \_boat-swain, foot-hold, never-the-less\_.

RULE VI.--LINES FULL.

At the end of a line, a word may be divided, if necessary; but a syllable

must never be broken.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The doctrine of English syllabication is attended with some

difficulties; because its purposes are various, and its principles, often

contradictory. The old rules, borrowed chiefly from grammars of other

languages, and still retained in some of our own, are liable to very strong

objections.[111] By aiming to divide on the vowels, and to force the

consonants, as much as possible, into the beginning of syllables, they

often pervert or misrepresent our pronunciation. Thus Murray, in his

Spelling-Book, has "\_gra-vel, fi-nish, me-lon, bro-ther, bo-dy, wi-dow,

pri-son, a-va-rice, e-ve-ry, o-ran-ges, e-ne-my, me-di-cine, re-pre-sent,

re-so-lu-tion\_," and a multitude of other words, divided upon a principle

by which the young learner can scarcely fail to be led into error

respecting their sounds. This method of division is therefore particularly

reprehensible in such books as are designed to teach the true pronunciation

of words; for which reason, it has been generally abandoned in our modern

spelling-books and dictionaries: the authors of which have severally aimed

at some sort of compromise between etymology and pronunciation; but they

disagree so much, as to the manner of effecting it, that no two of them

will be found alike, and very few, if any, entirely consistent with

themselves.

OBS. 2.--The object of syllabication may be any one of the following four;

1. To enable a child to read unfamiliar words by spelling them; 2. To show

the derivation or composition of words; 3. To exhibit the exact

pronunciation of words; 4. To divide words properly, when it is necessary

to break them at the ends of lines. With respect to the first of these

objects, Walker observes, "When a child has made certain advances in

reading, but is ignorant of the sound of many of the longer words, it may

not be improper to lay down the common general rule to him, that a

consonant between two vowels must go to the latter, and that two consonants

coming together must be divided. \_Farther than this it would be absurd to

go with a child\_."--\_Walker's Principles\_, No. 539. Yet, as a caution be it

recorded, that, in 1833, an itinerant lecturer from the South, who made it

his business to teach what he calls in his title-page, "An \_Abridgment\_ of

Walker's Rules on the Sounds of the Letters,"--an \_Abridgement\_, which, he

says in his preface, "will be found to contain, it is believed, all the

important rules that are established by Walker, and to carry his principles

\_farther\_ than he himself has \_done\_"--befooled the Legislature of

Massachusetts, the School Committee and Common Council of Boston, the

professor of elocution at Harvard University, and many other equally wise

men of the east, into the notion that English pronunciation could be

conveniently taught to children, in "four or five days," by means of some

three or four hundred rules of which the following is a specimen: "RULE

282. When a single consonant is preceded by a vowel under the

preantepenultimate accent, and is followed by a vowel that is succeeded by

a consonant, it belongs to the accented vowel."--\_Mulkey's Abridgement of

Walker's Rules\_, p. 34.

OBS. 3.--A grosser specimen of literary quackery, than is the publication

which I have just quoted, can scarcely be found in the world of letters. It

censures "the principles laid down and illustrated by Walker," as "so

elaborate and so verbose as to be wearisome to the scholar and useless to

the child;" and yet declares them to be, "for the most part, the true rules

of pronunciation, according to the analogy of the language."--\_Mulkey's

Preface\_, p. 3. It professes to be an abridgement and simplification of

those principles, especially adapted to the wants and capacities of

children; and, at the same time, imposes upon the memory of the young

learner twenty-nine rules for syllabication, similar to that which I have

quoted above; whereas Walker himself, with all his verbosity, expressly

declares it "\_absurd\_," to offer more than one or two, and those of the

very simplest character. It is to be observed that the author teaches

nothing but the elements of reading; nothing but the sounds of letters and

syllables; nothing but a few simple fractions of the great science of

grammar: and, for this purpose, he would conduct the learner through the

following particulars, and have him remember them all: 1. \_Fifteen

distinctions\_ respecting the "classification and organic formation of the

letters." 2. \_Sixty-three rules\_ for "the sounds of the vowels, according

to their relative positions." 3. \_Sixty-four explanations\_ of "the

different sounds of the diphthongs." 4. \_Eighty-nine rules\_ for "the sounds

of the consonants, according to position." 5. \_Twenty-three heads\_,

embracing a hundred and fifty-six principles of accent. 6. \_Twenty-nine\_

"\_rules\_ for dividing words into syllables." 7. \_Thirty-three "additional

principles;"\_ which are thrown together promiscuously, because he could not

class them. 8. \_Fifty-two pages\_ of "irregular Words," forming particular

exceptions to the foregoing rules. 9. \_Twenty-eight pages\_ of notes

extracted from Walker's Dictionary, and very prettily called "The Beauties

of Walker." All this is Walker simplified for children!

OBS. 4.--Such is a brief sketch of Mulkey's system of orthoëpy; a work in

which "he claims to have devised what has heretofore been a

\_desideratum\_--a mode by which children in our common schools may be taught

\_the rules\_ for the pronunciation of their mother tongue."--\_Preface\_, p.

4. The faults of the book are so exceedingly numerous, that to point them

out, would be more toil, than to write an accurate volume of twice the

size. And is it possible, that a system like this could find patronage in

the metropolis of New England, in that proud centre of arts and sciences,

and in the proudest halls of learning and of legislation? Examine the

gentleman's credentials, and take your choice between the adoption of his

plan, as a great improvement in the management of syllables, and the

certain conclusion that great men may be greatly duped respecting them.

Unless the public has been imposed upon by a worse fraud than mere literary

quackery, the authorities I have mentioned did extensively patronize the

scheme; and the Common Council of that learned city did order, November

14th, 1833, "That the School Committee be and they are hereby authorized to

employ Mr. William Mulkey to give a course of Lectures on Orthoëpy \_to the

several instructors of the public schools\_, and that the sum of five

hundred dollars is hereby appropriated for that purpose, and that the same

amount be withdrawn from the reserved fund."--See \_Mulkey's Circular\_.

OBS. 5.--Pronunciation is best taught to children by means of a good

spelling-book; a book in which the words are arranged according to their

analogies, and divided according to their proper sounds. Vocabularies,

dictionaries, and glossaries, may also be serviceable to those who are

sufficiently advanced to learn how to use them. With regard to the first of

the abovenamed purposes of syllabication, I am almost ready to dissent even

from the modest opinion of Walker himself; for ignorance can only guess at

the pronunciation of words, till positive instruction comes in to give

assurance; and it may be doubted whether even the simple rule or rules

suggested by Walker would not about as often mislead the young reader as

correct him. With regard to the second purpose, that of showing the

derivation or composition of words, it is plain, that etymology, and not

pronunciation, must here govern the division; and that it should go no

further than to separate the constituent parts of each word; as,

\_ortho-graphy, theo-logy\_. But when we divide for the third purpose, and

intend to show what is the pronunciation of a word, we must, if possible,

divide into such syllabic sounds as will exactly recompose the word, when

put together again; as, \_or-thog-ra-phy, the-ol-o-gy\_. This being the most

common purpose of syllabication, perhaps it would be well to give it a

general preference; and adopt it whenever we can, not only in the composing

of spelling-books and dictionaries, but also in the dividing of words at

the ends of lines.

OBS. 6.--Dr. Lowth says, "The best and easiest rule, for dividing the

syllables in spelling, is, to divide them as they are naturally divided in

a right pronunciation; without regard to the derivation of words, or the

possible combination of consonants at the beginning of a

syllable."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 5. And Walker approves of the principle,

with respect to the third purpose mentioned above: "This," says that

celebrated orthoëpist, "is the method adopted by those who would convey the

whole sound, by giving distinctly every part; and, when this is the object

of syllabication, Dr. Lowth's rule is certainly to be followed."--\_Walker's

Principles\_,--No. 541. But this rule, which no one can apply till he has

found out the pronunciation, will not always be practicable where that is

known, and perhaps not always expedient where it is practicable. For

example: the words \_colonel, venison, transition, propitious\_, cannot be so

divided as to exhibit their pronunciation; and, in such as \_acid, magic,

pacify, legible, liquidate\_, it may not be best to follow the rule, because

there is some reasonable objection to terminating the first syllables of

these words with \_c, g\_, and \_q\_, especially at the end of a line. The rule

for terminations may also interfere with this, called "Lowth's;" as in

\_sizable, rising, dronish\_.

OBS. 7.--For the dividing of words into syllables, I have given six rules,

which are perhaps as many as will be useful. They are to be understood as

general principles; and, as to the exceptions to be made in their

application, or the settling of their conflicting claims to attention,

these may be left to the judgement of each writer. The old principle of

dividing by the eye, and not by the ear, I have rejected; and, with it, all

but one of the five rules which the old grammarians gave for the purpose.

"The divisions of the letters into syllables, should, unquestionably, be

the same in written, as in spoken language; otherwise the learner is

misguided, and seduced by false representations into injurious

errors."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 37. Through the influence of books

in which the words are divided according to their sounds, the pronunciation

of the language is daily becoming more and more uniform; and it may perhaps

be reasonably hoped, that the general adoption of this method of

syllabication, and a proper exposition of the occasional errors of

ignorance, will one day obviate entirely the objection arising from the

instability of the principle. For the old grammarians urged, that the

scholar who had learned their rules should "strictly conform to them; and

that he should industriously avoid \_that random Method of dividing by the

Ear\_, which is subject to mere jumble, as it must be continually

fluctuating according to the various Dialects of different

Countries."--\_British Grammar\_, p. 47.

OBS. 8.--The important exercise of oral spelling is often very absurdly

conducted. In many of our schools, it may be observed that the teacher, in

giving out the words to be spelled, is not always careful to utter them

with what he knows to be their true sounds, but frequently accommodates his

pronunciation to the known or supposed ignorance of the scholar; and the

latter is still more frequently allowed to hurry through the process,

without putting the syllables together as he proceeds; and, sometimes,

without forming or distinguishing the syllables at all. Merely to pronounce

a word and then name its letters, is an exceedingly imperfect mode of

spelling; a mode in which far more is lost in respect to accuracy of

speech, than is gained in respect to time. The syllables should not only be

distinctly formed and pronounced, but pronounced as they are heard in the

whole word; and each should be successively added to the preceding

syllables, till the whole sound is formed by the reunion of all its parts.

For example: \_divisibility\_. The scholar should say, "Dee I, de; Vee I Ess,

viz, de-viz; I, de-viz-e; Bee I Ell, bil, de-viz-e-bil; I, de-viz-e-bil-e;

Tee Wy, te, de-viz-e-bil-e-te." Again: \_chicanery\_. "Cee Aitch I, she; Cee

A, ka, she-ka; En E Ar, nur, she-ka-nur; Wy, she-ka-nur-e." One of the

chief advantages of oral spelling, is its tendency to promote accuracy of

pronunciation; and this end it will reach, in proportion to the care and

skill with which it is conducted. But oral spelling should not be relied on

as the sole means of teaching orthography. It will not be found sufficient.

The method of giving out words for practical spelling on slates or paper,

or of reading something which is to be written again by the learner, is

much to be commended, as a means of exercising those scholars who are so

far advanced as to write legibly. This is called, in the schools,

\_dictation\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS IN SYLLABICATION.

LESSON I.--CONSONANTS.

1. Correct the division of the following words of two syllables: "ci-vil,

co-lour, co-py, da-mask, do-zen, e-ver, fea-ther, ga-ther, hea-ven, hea-vy,

ho-ney, le-mon, li-nen, mea-dow, mo-ney, ne-ver, o-live, o-range, o-ther,

phea-sant, plea-sant, pu-nish, ra-ther, rea-dy, ri-ver, ro-bin, scho-lar,

sho-vel, sto-mach, ti-mid, whe-ther."--\_Murray's Spelling-Book\_, N. Y.,

1819, p. 43-50.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the \_v\_ in \_ci-vil\_, the \_l\_ in \_co-lour\_,

the \_p\_ in \_co-py\_, &c., are written with the following vowel, but spoken

with that which precedes. But, according to Rule 1st, "Consonants should

generally be joined to the vowels or diphthongs which they modify in

utterance." Therefore, these words should be divided thus: \_civ-il,

col-our, cop-y\_, &c.]

2. Correct the division of the following words of three syllables:

"be-ne-fit, ca-bi-net, ca-nis-ter, ca-ta-logue, cha-rac-ter, cha-ri-ty,

co-vet-ous, di-li-gence, di-mi-ty, e-le-phant, e-vi-dent, e-ver-green,

fri-vo-lous, ga-ther-ing, ge-ne-rous, go-vern-ess, go-vern-or, ho-nes-ty,

ka-len-dar, la-ven-der, le-ve-ret, li-be-ral, me-mo-ry, mi-nis-ter,

mo-dest-ly, no-vel-ty, no-bo-dy, pa-ra-dise, po-ver-ty, pre-sent-ly,

pro-vi-dence, pro-per-ly, pri-son-er, ra-ven-ous, sa-tis-fy, se-ve-ral,

se-pa-rate, tra-vel-ler, va-ga-bond;--con-si-der, con-ti-nue, de-li-ver,

dis-co-ver, dis-fi-gure, dis-ho-nest, dis-tri-bute, in-ha-bit, me-cha-nic,

what-e-ver;--re-com-mend, re-fu-gee, re-pri-mand."--\_Murray: ib.\_, p.

67-83.

3. Correct the division of the following words of four syllables:

"ca-ter-pil-lar, cha-ri-ta-ble, di-li-gent-ly, mi-se-ra-ble,

pro-fit-a-ble, to-le-ra-ble;--be-ne-vo-lent, con-si-der-ate, di-mi-nu-tive,

ex-pe-ri-ment, ex-tra-va-gant, in-ha-bi-tant, no-bi-li-ty, par-ti-cu-lar,

pros-pe-ri-ty, ri-di-cu-lous, sin-ce-ri-ty;--de-mon-stra-tion,

e-du-ca-tion, e-mu-la-tion, e-pi-de-mic, ma-le-fac-tor, ma-nu-fac-ture,

me-mo-ran-dum, mo-de-ra-tor, pa-ra-ly-tic, pe-ni-ten-tial, re-sig-na-tion,

sa-tis-fac-tion, se-mi-co-lon."--\_Murray: ib.\_, p. 84-87.

4. Correct the division of the following words of five syllables:

"a-bo-mi-na-ble, a-po-the-ca-ry, con-sid-e-ra-ble, ex-pla-na-to-ry,

pre-pa-ra-to-ry;--a-ca-de-mi-cal, cu-ri-o-si-ty, ge-o-gra-phi-cal,

ma-nu-fac-to-ry, sa-tis-fac-to-ry, me-ri-to-ri-ous;--cha-rac-te-ris-tic,

e-pi-gram-ma-tic, ex-pe-ri-ment-al, po-ly-syl-la-ble, con-sid-e-ra-tion."

--\_Murray: ib.\_, p. 87-89.

5. Correct the division of the following proper names: "He-len, Leo-nard,

Phi-lip, Ro-bert, Ho-race, Tho-mas;--Ca-ro-line, Ca-tha-rine, Da-ni-el,

De-bo-rah, Do-ro-thy, Fre-de-rick, I-sa-bel, Jo-na-than, Ly-di-a,

Ni-cho-las, O-li-ver, Sa-mu-el, Si-me-on, So-lo-mon, Ti-mo-thy,

Va-len-tine;--A-me-ri-ca, Bar-tho-lo-mew, E-li-za-beth, Na-tha-ni-el,

Pe-ne-lo-pe, The-o-phi-lus."--\_Murray: ib.\_, p. 98-101.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

1. Correct the division of the following words, by Rule 1st: "cap-rice,

es-teem, dis-es-teem, ob-lige;--az-ure, mat-ron, pat-ron, phal-anx, sir-en,

trait-or, trench-er, barb-er, burn-ish, garn-ish, tarn-ish, varn-ish,

mark-et, musk-et, pamph-let;--brave-ry, knave-ry, siave-ry, eve-ning,

scene-ry, bribe-ry, nice-ty, chi-cane-ry, ma-chine-ry, im-age-ry;--

as-y-lum, hor-i-zon,--fi-nan-cier, he-ro-ism,--sar-don-yx, scur-ril-ous,--

com-e-di-an, post-e-ri-or."--\_Webster's Spelling-Books\_.

2. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 2d: "oy-er, fol-io,

gen-ial, gen-ius, jun-ior, sa-tiate, vi-tiate;--am-bro-sia, cha-mel-ion,

par-hel-ion, con-ven-ient, in-gen-ious, om-nis-cience, pe-cul-iar,

so-cia-ble, par-tial-i-ty, pe-cun-ia-ry;--an-nun-ciate, e-nun-ciate,

ap-pre-ciate, as-so-ciate, ex-pa-tiate, in-gra-tiate, in-i-tiate,

li-cen-tiate, ne-go-tiate, no-vi-ciate, of-fi-ciate, pro-pi-tiate,

sub-stan-tiate."--\_Webster: Old Spelling-Book\_, 86-91; \_New\_, 121-128.

3. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 3d: "dres-ser,

has-ty, pas-try, sei-zure, rol-ler, jes-ter, wea-ver, vam-per, han-dy,

dros-sy, glos-sy, mo-ver, mo-ving, oo-zy, ful-ler, trus-ty, weigh-ty,

noi-sy, drow-sy, swar-thy."--\_Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book\_. Again:

"eas-tern, full-y, pull-et, rill-et, scan-ty, nee-dy."--\_Webster\_.

4. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 4th:

"aw-ry,"--\_Webster's Old Book\_, 52; "ath-wart,"--\_Ib.\_, 93;

"pros-pect-ive,"--\_Ib.\_, 66; "pa-renth-e-sis,"--\_Ib.\_, 93;

"res-ist-i-bil-ity,"--\_Webster's New Book\_, 93; "hem-is-pher-ic,"--\_Ib.\_,

130; "mo-nos-tich, he-mis-tick," [112]--\_Walker's Dict.\_, 8vo; \_Cobb\_, 33;

"tow-ards,"--\_Cobb\_, 48.

5. Correct the division of the following words by Rule 5th:

"E'n-gland,"--\_Murray's Spelling-Book\_, p. 100; "a-no-ther,"--\_Ib.\_, 71;

"a-noth-er,"--\_Emerson\_, 76; "Be-thes-da, Beth-a-ba-ra,"--\_Webster\_, 141;

\_Cobb\_, 159.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

1. Correct the division of the following words, according to their

derivation: "ben-der, bles-sing, bras-sy, chaf-fy, chan-ter, clas-per,

craf-ty, cur-dy, fen-der, fil-my, fus-ty, glas-sy, graf-ter, gras-sy,

gus-ty, ban-ded, mas-sy, mus-ky, rus-ty, swel-ling, tel-ler, tes-ted,

thrif-ty, ves-ture."--\_Cobb's Standard Spelling-Book\_.

2. Correct the division of the following words, so as to give no wrong

notion of their derivation and meaning: "barb-er, burn-ish, brisk-et,

cank-er, chart-er, cuck-oo, furn-ish, garn-ish, guil-ty, hank-er, lust-y,

port-al, tarn-ish, test-ate, test-y, trait-or, treat-y, varn-ish, vest-al,

di-urn-al, e-tern-al, in-fern-al, in-tern-al, ma-tern-al, noc-turn-al,

pa-tern-al."--\_Webster's Elementary Spelling-Book\_.

3. Correct the division of the following words, so as to convey no wrong

idea of their pronunciation: "ar-mo-ry, ar-te-ry, butch-er-y, cook-e-ry,

eb-o-ny, em-e-ry, ev-e-ry, fel-o-ny, fop-pe-ry, flip-pe-ry, gal-le-ry,

his-to-ry, liv-e-ry. lot-te-ry, mock-e-ry, mys-te-ry, nun-ne-ry, or-re-ry,

pil-lo-ry, quack-e-ry, sor-ce-ry, witch-e-ry."--\_Ib.\_, 41-42.

4. Correct the division of the following words, and give to \_n\_ before \_k\_

the sound of \_ng\_: "ank-le, bask-et, blank-et, buck-le, cack-le, crank-le,

crink-le, east-er, fick-le, freck-le, knuck-le, mark-et, monk-ey,

port-ress, pick-le, poult-ice, punch-eon, qua-drant, qua-drate, squa-dron,

rank-le, shack-le, sprink-le, tink-le, twink-le, wrink-le."--\_Cobb's

Standard Spelling-Book\_.

5. Correct the division of the following words, with a proper regard to

Rules 1st and 3d: "a-scribe, bland-ish, bran-chy, clou-dy, dus-ty, drea-ry,

eve-ning, faul-ty, fil-thy, fros-ty, gau-dy, gloo-my, heal-thy, hear-ken,

hear-ty, hoa-ry, lea-ky, loung-er, mar-shy, migh-ty, mil-ky, naugh-ty,

pas-sing, pit-cher, rea-dy, roc-ky, spee-dy, stea-dy, stor-my, thirs-ty,

thor-ny, trus-ty, ves-try, wes-tern, weal-thy."--\_Emerson's Spelling-Book\_,

17-44.

CHAPTER III.--OF WORDS.

A \_Word\_ is one or more syllables spoken or written as the sign of some

idea, or of some manner of thought. Words are distinguished as \_primitive\_

or \_derivative\_, and as \_simple\_ or \_compound\_. The former division is

called their \_species\_; the latter, their \_figure\_.

A \_primitive\_ word is one that is not formed from any simpler word in the

language; as, \_harm, great, connect\_.

A \_derivative\_ word is one that is formed from some simpler word in the

language; as, \_harmless, greatly, connected, disconnect, unconnected\_.

A \_simple\_ word is one that is not compounded, not composed of other

words; as, \_watch, man, house, tower, never, the, less\_.

A \_compound\_ word is one that is composed of two or more simple words; as,

\_watchman, watchhouse, watchtower, nevertheless\_.

Permanent compounds are consolidated; as, \_bookseller, schoolmaster\_:

others, which may be called temporary compounds, are formed by the hyphen;

as, \_good-natured, negro-merchant\_.

\_RULES FOR THE FIGURE OF WORDS\_.

RULE I.--COMPOUNDS.

Words regularly or analogically united, and commonly known as forming a

compound, should never be needlessly broken apart. Thus, \_steamboat,

railroad, red-hot, well-being, new-coined\_, are preferable to the phrases,

\_steam boat, rail road, red hot, well being, new coined\_; and \_toward us\_

is better than the old phrase, \_to us ward\_.

RULE II.--SIMPLES.

When the simple words would only form a regular phrase, of the same

meaning, the compounding of any of them ought to be avoided. Thus, the

compound \_instead\_ is not to be commended, because the simple phrase, \_in

stead of\_, is exactly like the other phrases, \_in lieu of, in place of, in

room of\_, in which we write no compound.

RULE III.--THE SENSE.

Words otherwise liable to be misunderstood, must be joined together or

written separately, as the sense and construction may happen to require.

Thus, a \_glass house\_ is a house made of glass, but a \_glasshouse\_ is a

house in which glass is made; so a \_negro merchant\_ is a coloured trader,

but a \_negro-merchant\_ is a man who buys and sells negroes.

RULE IV.--ELLIPSES.

When two or more compounds are connected in one sentence, none of them

should be split to make an ellipsis of half a word. Thus, "\_six or

seventeen\_" should not be said for "\_sixteen or seventeen\_;" nor ought we

to say, "\_calf, goat, and sheepskins\_" for "\_calfskins, goatskins, and

sheepskins\_" In the latter instance, however, it might be right to separate

all the words; as in the phrase, "\_soup, coffee\_, and \_tea\_

houses."--\_Liberator\_, x, 40.

RULE V.--THE HYPHEN.

When the parts of a compound do not fully coalesce, as \_to-day, to-night,

to-morrow\_; or when each retains its original accent, so that the compound

has more than one, or one that is movable, as \_first-born, hanger-on,

laughter-loving, garlic-eater, butterfly-shell\_, the hyphen should be

inserted between them.

RULE VI.--NO HYPHEN.

When a compound has but one accented syllable in pronunciation, as

\_watchword, statesman, gentleman\_, and the parts are such as admit of a

complete coalescence, no hyphen should be inserted between them. Churchill,

after much attention to this subject, writes thus: "The practical

instruction of the \_countinghouse\_ imparts a more thorough knowledge of

\_bookkeeping\_, than all the fictitious transactions of a mere \_schoolbook\_,

however carefully constructed to suit particular purposes."--\_New Gram.\_,

p. vii. But \_counting-house\_, having more stress on the last syllable than

on the middle one, is usually written with the hyphen; and \_book-keeping\_

and \_school-book\_, though they may not need it, are oftener so formed than

otherwise.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Words are the least parts of significant language; that is, of

language significant in each part; for, to syllables, taken merely as

syllables, no meaning belongs. But, to a word, signification of some sort

or other, is essential; there can be no word without it; for a sign or

symbol must needs represent or signify something. And as I cannot suppose

words to represent external things, I have said "A \_Word\_ is one or more

syllables spoken or written as the sign of some \_idea\_." But of \_what\_

ideas are the words of our language significant? Are we to say, "Of \_all\_

ideas;" and to recognize as an English word every syllable, or combination

of syllables, to which we know a meaning is attached? No. For this, in the

first place, would confound one language with an other; and destroy a

distinction which must ever be practically recognized, till all men shall

again speak one language. In the next place, it would compel us to embrace

among our words an infinitude of terms that are significant only of \_local\_

ideas, such as men any where or at any time may have had concerning any of

the individuals they have known, whether persons, places, or things. But,

however important they may be in the eyes of men, the names of particular

persons, places, or things, because they convey only particular ideas, do

not properly belong to what we call \_our language\_. Lexicographers do not

collect and define proper names, because they are beyond the limits of

their art, and can be explained only from history. I do not say that proper

names are to be excluded from grammar; but I would show wherein consists

the superiority of general terms over these. For if our common words did

not differ essentially from proper names, we could demonstrate nothing in

science: we could not frame from them any general or affirmative

proposition at all; because all our terms would be particular, and not

general; and because every individual thing in nature must necessarily be

for ever itself only, and not an other.

OBS. 2.--Our common words, then, are the symbols neither of external

particulars, nor merely of the sensible ideas which external particulars

excite in our minds, but mainly of those general or universal ideas which

belong rather to the intellect than to the senses. For intellection differs

from sensation, somewhat as the understanding of a man differs from the

perceptive faculty of a brute; and language, being framed for the

reciprocal commerce of human minds, whose perceptions include both, is made

to consist of signs of ideas both general and particular, yet without

placing them on equal ground. Our general ideas--that is, our ideas

conceived as common to many individuals, existing in any part of time,

past, present, or future--such, for example, as belong to the words \_man,

horse, tree, cedar, wave, motion, strength, resist\_--such ideas, I say,

constitute that most excellent significance which belongs to words

primarily, essentially, and immediately; whereas, our particular ideas,

such as are conceived only of individual objects, which arc infinite in

number and ever fleeting, constitute a significance which belongs to

language only secondarily, accidentally, and mediately. If we express the

latter at all, we do it either by proper names, of which but very few ever

become generally known, or by means of certain changeable limitations which

are added to our general terms; whereby language, as Harris observes,

"without wandering into infinitude, contrives how to denote things

infinite."--\_Hermes\_, p. 345. The particular manner in which this is done,

I shall show hereafter, in Etymology, when I come to treat of articles and

definitives.

OBS. 3.--If we examine the structure of proper names, we shall find that

most of them are compounds, the parts of which have, in very many

instances, some general signification. Now a complete phrase commonly

conveys some particular notion or conception of the mind; but, in this

case, the signification of the general terms is restricted by the other

words which are added to them. Thus \_smith\_ is a more general term than

\_goldsmith\_; and \_goldsmith\_ is more general than a \_goldsmith\_; \_a

goldsmith\_, than \_the goldsmith\_; \_the goldsmith\_, than \_one Goldsmith\_;

\_one Goldsmith\_, than \_Mr. Goldsmith\_; \_Mr. Goldsmith\_, than \_Oliver

Goldsmith\_. Thus we see that the simplest mode of designating particular

persons or objects, is that of giving them \_proper names\_; but proper names

must needs be so written, that they may be known as proper names, and not

be mistaken for common terms. I have before observed, that we have some

names which are both proper and common; and that these should be written

with capitals, and should form the plural regularly. It is surprising that

\_the Friends\_, who are in some respects particularly scrupulous about

language, should so generally have overlooked the necessity there is, of

\_compounding\_ their numerical names of the months and days, and writing

them uniformly with capitals, as proper names. For proper names they

certainly are, in every thing but the form, whenever they are used without

the article, and without those other terms which render their general idea

particular. And the compound form with a capital, is as necessary for

\_Firstday, Secondday, Thirdday\_, &c., as for \_Sunday, Monday, Tuesday\_, &c.

"The first day of the week,"--"The seventh day of the month,"--"The second

month of summer,"--"The second month in the year," &c., are good English

phrases, in which any compounding of the terms, or any additional use of

capitals, would be improper; but, for common use, these phrases are found

too long and too artificial. We must have a less cumbersome mode of

specifying the months of the year and the days of the week. What then?

Shall we merely throw away the terms of particularity, and, without

substituting in their place the form of proper names, apply general terms

to particular thoughts, and insist on it that this is right? And is not

this precisely what is done by those who reject as heathenish the ordinary

names of the months and days, and write "\_first day\_," for \_Sunday\_, in

stead of "the first day of the week;" or "\_second month\_," for \_February\_,

in stead of "the second month in the year;" and so forth? This phraseology

may perhaps be well understood by those to whom it is familiar, but still

it is an abuse of language, because it is inconsistent with the common

acceptation of the terms. Example: "The departure of a ship will take place

\_every sixth day\_ with punctuality."--\_Philadelphia Weekly Messenger\_. The

writer of this did not mean, "\_every Friday\_;" and it is absurd for the

Friends so to understand it, or so to write, when that is what they mean.

OBS. 4.--In the ordinary business of life, it is generally desirable to

express our meaning as briefly as possible; but legal phraseology is always

full to the letter, and often redundant. Hence a merchant will write, "Nov.

24, 1837," or, "11 mo. 24th, 1837;" but a conveyancer will have it, "On the

twenty-fourth day of November, one thousand eight hundred and

thirty-seven;"--or, perhaps, "On the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh

month, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and

thirty-seven." Accordingly we find that, in common daily use, all the names

of the months, except \_March, May, June\_, and \_July\_, are abbreviated;

thus, \_Jan., Feb., Apr., Aug., Sept., Oct., Nov., Dec\_. And sometimes even

the Arabic number of the year is made yet shorter; as '37 for 1837; or

1835-6-7, for 1835, 1836, and 1837. In like manner, in constructing tables

of time, we sometimes denote the days of the week by the simple initials of

their names; as, S. for Sunday, M. for Monday, &c. But, for facility of

abbreviation, the numerical names, whether of the months or of the days,

are perhaps still more convenient. For, if we please, we may put the simple

Arabic figures for them; though it is better to add \_d\_. for \_day\_, and

\_mo.\_ for \_month\_: as, 1 d., 2 d., 3 d., &c.;--1 mo., 2 mo., 3 mo.,

&c.:--or more compactly thus: 1d., 2d., 3d., &c.;--1mo., 2mo., 3mo., &c.

But, take which mode of naming we will, our ordinary expression of these

things should be in neither extreme, but should avoid alike too great

brevity and too great prolixity; and, therefore, it is best to make it a

general rule in our literary compositions, to use the full form of proper

names for the months and days, and to denote the years by Arabic figures

written in full.

OBS. 5.--In considering the nature of words, I was once a little puzzled

with a curious speculation, if I may not term it an important inquiry,

concerning the \_principle of their identity\_. We often speak of "\_the same

words\_," and of "\_different words\_;" but wherein does the sameness or the

difference of words consist? Not in their pronunciation; for the same word

may be differently pronounced; as, \_p=at'ron\_ or \_p=a'tron, m=at'ron\_ or

\_m=a'tron\_. Not in their orthography; for the same word may be differently

spelled; as, \_favour\_ or \_favor, music\_ or \_musick, connexion\_ or

\_connection\_. Not in their form of presentation; for the same word may be

either spoken or written; and speech and writing present what we call \_the

same words\_, in two ways totally different. Not in their meaning; for the

same word may have different meanings, and different words may signify

precisely the same thing. This sameness of words, then, must consist in

something which is to be reconciled with great diversity. Yet every word is

itself, and not an other: and every word must necessarily have some

property peculiar to itself, by which it may be easily distinguished from

every other. Were it not so, language would be unintelligible. But it \_is\_

so; and, therefore, to mistake one word for an other, is universally

thought to betray great ignorance or great negligence, though such mistakes

are by no means of uncommon occurrence. But that the question about the

identity of words is not a very easy one, may appear from the fact, that

the learned often disagree about it in practice; as when one grammarian

will have \_an\_ and \_a\_ to be two words, and an other will affirm them to be

only different forms of one and the same word.

OBS. 6.--Let us see, then, if amidst all this diversity we can find that

principle of sameness, by which a dispute of this kind ought to be settled.

Now, although different words do generally differ in orthography, in

pronunciation, and in meaning, so that an entire sameness implies one

orthography, one pronunciation, and one meaning; yet some diversity is

allowed in each of these respects, so that a sign differing from an other

only in one, is not therefore a different word, or a sign agreeing with an

other only in one, is not therefore the same word. It follows thence, that

the principle of verbal identity, the principle which distinguishes every

word from every other, lies in neither extreme: it lies in a narrower

compass than in all three, and yet not singly in any one, but jointly in

any two. So that signs differing in any two of these characteristics of a

word, are different words; and signs agreeing in any two, are the same

word. Consequently, if to any difference either of spelling or of sound we

add a difference of signification everybody will immediately say, that we

speak or write different words, and not the same: thus \_dear\_, beloved, and

\_deer\_, an animal, are two such words as no one would think to be the same;

and, in like manner, \_use\_, advantage, and \_use\_, to employ, will readily

be called different words. Upon this principle, \_an\_ and \_a\_ are different

words; yet, in conformity to old usage, and because the latter is in fact

but an abridgement of the former, I have always treated them as one and the

same article, though I have nowhere expressly called them the same word.

But, to establish the principle above named, which appears to me the only

one on which any such question can be resolved, or the identity of words be

fixed at all, we must assume that every word has one right pronunciation,

and only one; one just orthography, and only one; and some proper

signification, which, though perhaps not always the same, is always a part

of its essence. For when two words of different meaning are spelled or

pronounced alike, not to maintain the second point of difference, against

the double orthography or the double pronunciation of either, is to

confound their identity at once, and to prove by the rule that two

different words are one and the same, by first absurdly making them so.

OBS. 7.--In no part of grammar is usage more unsettled and variable than in

that which relates to the \_figure of words\_. It is a point of which modern

writers have taken but very little notice. Lily, and other ancient Latin

grammarians, reckoned both species and figure among the grammatical

accidents of nearly all the different parts of speech; and accordingly

noticed them, in their Etymology, as things worthy to be thus made distinct

topics, like numbers, genders, cases, moods, tenses, &c. But the manner of

compounding words in Latin, and also in Greek, is always by consolidation.

No use appears to have been made of the \_hyphen\_, in joining the words of

those languages, though the name of the mark is a Greek compound, meaning

"\_under one\_." The compounding of words is one principal means of

increasing their number; and the arbitrariness with which that is done or

neglected in English, is sufficient of itself to make the number of our

words a matter of great uncertainty. Such terms, however, having the

advantage of explaining themselves in a much greater degree than others,

have little need of definition; and when new things are formed, it is very

natural and proper to give them new names of this sort: as, \_steamboat,

railroad\_. The propriety or impropriety of these additions to the language,

is not to be determined by dictionaries; for that must be settled by usage

before any lexicographer will insert them. And so numerous, after all, are

the discrepancies found in our best dictionaries, that many a word may have

its day and grow obsolete, before a nation can learn from them the right

way of spelling it; and many a fashionable thing may go entirely out of

use, before a man can thus determine how to name it. \_Railroads\_ are of so

recent invention that I find the word in only one dictionary; and that one

is wrong, in giving the word a hyphen, while half our printers are wrong,

in keeping the words separate because \_Johnson\_ did not compound them. But

is it not more important, to know whether we ought to write \_railroad\_, or

\_rail-road\_, or \_rail road\_, which we cannot learn from any of our

dictionaries, than to find out whether we ought to write \_rocklo\_, or

\_roquelo\_, or \_roquelaur\_, or \_roquelaure\_, which, in some form or other,

is found in them all? The duke of Roquelaure is now forgotten, and his

cloak is out of fashion.

OBS. 8.--No regular phrase, as I have taught in the second rule above,

should be needlessly converted into a compound word, either by tacking its

parts together with the hyphen, or by uniting them without a hyphen; for,

in general, a phrase is one thing, and a word is an other: and they ought

to be kept as distinct as possible.[113] But, when a whole phrase takes the

relation of an \_adjective\_, the words must be compounded, and the hyphen

becomes necessary; as, "An inexpressibly apt \_bottle-of-small-beer\_

comparison."--\_Peter Pindar\_. The occasions for the compounding of words,

are in general sufficiently plain, to any one who knows what is intended to

be said; but, as we compound words, sometimes with the hyphen, and

sometimes without, there is no small difficulty in ascertaining when to use

this mark, and when to omit it. "Some settled rule for the use of the

hyphen on these occasions, is much wanted. Modern printers have a strange

predilection for it; using it on almost every possible occasion. Mr. L.

Murray, who has only three lines on the subject, seems inclined to

countenance this practice; which is, no doubt, convenient enough for those

who do not like trouble. His words are: 'A Hyphen, marked thus - is

employed in connecting compounded words: as, Lap-dog, tea-pot,

pre-existence, self-love, to-morrow, mother-in-law.' Of his six examples,

Johnson, our only acknowledged standard, gives the first and third without

any separation between the syllables, \_lapdog, preexistence\_; his second

and fifth as two distinct words each, \_tea pot, to morrow\_; and his sixth

as three words, \_mother in law\_: so that only his fourth has the sanction

of the lexicographer. There certainly can be no more reason for putting a

hyphen after the common prefixes, than before the common affixes, \_ness,

ly\_, and the rest."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 374.

OBS. 9.--Again: "While it would be absurd, to sacrifice the established

practice of all good authors to the ignorance of such readers [as could

possibly mistake for a diphthong the two contiguous vowels in such words as

\_preexistence, cooperate\_, and \_reenter\_]; it would unquestionably be

advantageous, to have some principle to guide us in that labyrinth of

words, in which the hyphen appears to have been admitted or rejected

arbitrarily, or at hap-hazard. Thus, though we find in Johnson,

\_alms-basket, alms-giver\_, with the hyphen; we have \_almsdeed, almshouse,

almsman\_, without: and many similar examples of an unsettled practice might

be adduced, sufficient to fill several pages. In this perplexity, is not

the pronunciation of the words the best guide? In the English language,

every word of more than one syllable is marked by an accent on some

particular syllable. Some very long words indeed admit a secondary accent

on \_another\_ syllable; but still this is much inferior, and leaves one

leading accent prominent: as in \_expos'tulatory\_. Accordingly, when a

compound has but one accented syllable in pronunciation, as \_night'cap,

bed'stead, broad'sword\_, the two words have coalesced completely into one,

and no hyphen should be admitted. On the other hand, when each of the

radical words has an accent, as \_Chris'tian-name', broad'-shoul'dered\_, I

think the hyphen should be used. \_Good'-na'tured\_ is a compound epithet

with two accents, and therefore requires the hyphen: in \_good nature, good

will\_, and similar expressions, \_good\_ is used simply as an adjective, and

of course should remain distinct from the noun. Thus, too, when a noun is

used adjectively, it should remain separate from the noun it modifies; as,

a \_gold ring\_, a \_silver buckle\_. When two numerals are employed to express

a number, without a conjunction between them, it is usual to connect them

by a hyphen; as, \_twenty-five, eighty-four\_: but when the conjunction is

inserted, the hyphen is as improper as it would be between other words

connected by the conjunction. This, however, is a common abuse; and we

often meet with \_five-&-twenty, six-&-thirty\_, and the like."--\_Ib.\_, p.

376. Thus far Churchill: who appears to me, however, too hasty about the

hyphen in compound numerals. For we write \_one hundred, two hundred, three

thousand\_, &c., without either hyphen or conjunction; and as

\_five-and-twenty\_ is equivalent to \_twenty-five\_, and virtually but one

word, the hyphen, if not absolutely necessary to the sense, is certainly

not so very improper as he alleges. "\_Christian name\_" is as often written

without the hyphen as with it, and perhaps as accurately.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS IN THE FIGURE, OR FORM, OF WORDS.

UNDER RULE I.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"Professing to imitate Timon, the man hater."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, p. 161.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the compound term \_manhater\_ is here made

two words. But, according to Rule 1st, "Words regularly or analogically

united, and commonly known as forming a compound, should never be

needlessly broken apart." Therefore, \_manhater\_ should be written as one

word.]

"Men load hay with a pitch fork."--\_Webster's New Spelling-Book\_, p. 40. "A

pear tree grows from the seed of a pear."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. "A tooth brush is

good to brush your teeth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 85. "The mail is opened at the post

office."--\_Ib.\_, p. 151. "The error seems to me two fold."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 230. "To pre-engage means to engage before hand."--\_Webster's

New Spelling-Book\_, p. 82. "It is a mean act to deface the figures on a

mile stone."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "A grange is a farm and farm house."--\_Ib.\_, p.

118. "It is no more right to steal apples or water melons, than

money."--\_Ib.\_, p. 118. "The awl is a tool used by shoemakers, and harness

makers."--\_Ib.\_, p. 150. "Twenty five cents are equal to one quarter of a

dollar."--\_Ib.\_, p. 107. "The blowing up of the Fulton at New York was a

terrible disaster."--\_Ib.\_, p. 54. "The elders also, and the bringers up of

the children, sent to Jehu."--SCOTT: 2 \_Kings\_, x, 5. "Not with eye

service, as men pleasers."--\_Bickersteth, on Prayer\_, p. 64. "A good

natured and equitable construction of cases."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 138. "And

purify your hearts, ye double minded."--\_Gurney's Portable Evidences\_, p.

115. "It is a mean spirited action to steal; i. e. to steal is a mean

spirited action."--\_Grammar of Alex. Murray, the schoolmaster\_, p. 124.

"There is, indeed, one form of orthography which is a kin to the

subjunctive mood of the Latin tongue."--\_Booth's Introd. to Dict.\_, p. 71.

"To bring him into nearer connexion with real and everyday

life."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 459. "The common place, stale

declamation of its revilers would be silenced."--\_Ib.\_, i, 494. "She formed

a very singular and unheard of project."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, p. 160. "He

had many vigilant, though feeble talented, and mean spirited

enemies."--ROBERTS VAUX: \_The Friend\_, Vol. vii, p. 74. "These old

fashioned people would level our psalmody," &c.--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 292.

"This slow shifting scenery in the theatre of harmony."--\_Ib.\_, p. 398. "So

we are assured from Scripture it self."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 300. "The

mind, being disheartened, then betakes its self to trifling."--\_R.

Johnson's Pref. to Gram. Com.\_ "Whose soever sins ye remit, they are

remitted unto them."--\_Beacon\_, p. 115: SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS: \_John\_, xx,

23. "Tarry we our selves how we will."--\_Walker's English Particles\_, p.

161. "Manage your credit so, that you need neither swear your self, nor

want a voucher."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 33. "Whereas song never conveys

any of the above named sentiments."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 424. "I go on

horse back."--\_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 54. "This requires \_purity\_, in opposition

to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 242;

\_Gould's\_, 234. "May the Plough share shine."--\_White's Eng. Verb\_, p. 161.

"Which way ever we consider it."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 83.

"Where e'er the silent (e) a Place obtains,

The Voice foregoing, Length and softness gains."

--\_Brightland's Gr.\_, p. 15.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLES.

"It qualifies any of the four parts of speech abovenamed."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 83.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because \_abovenamed\_ is here unnecessarily made a

compound. But, according to Rule 2d, "When the simple words would only form

a regular phrase, of the same meaning, the compounding of any of them ought

to be avoided." Therefore, \_above\_ and \_named\_ should here have been

written as two words.]

"After awhile they put us out among the rude multitude."--\_Fox's Journal\_.

Vol. i, p. 169. "It would be ashame, if your mind should falter and give

in."--\_Collier's Meditations of Antoninus\_, p. 94. "They stared awhile in

silence one upon another."--\_Rasselas\_, p. 73. "After passion has for

awhile exercised its tyrannical sway."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, ii, 135 and 267.

"Though set within the same general-frame of intonation."--\_Rush, on the

Voice\_, p. 339. "Which do not carry any of the natural vocal-signs of

expression."--\_Ib.\_, p. 329. "The measurable constructive-powers of a few

associable constituents."--\_Ib.\_, p. 343. "Before each accented syllable or

emphatic monosyllabic-word."--\_Ib.\_, p. 364. "One should not think too

favourably of oneself."--See \_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 154. "Know ye not

your ownselves, how that Jesus Christ is in you."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol.

i, p. 355. "I judge not my ownself, for I know nothing of my ownself."--

\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 84. "Though they were in such a rage, I

desired them to tarry awhile."--\_Josephus\_, Vol. v, p. 179. "\_A\_ instead of

\_an\_ is now used before words beginning with \_a\_ long."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 31. "John will have earned his wages the next new-year's

day."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 82. "A new-year's-gift is a present made on the

first day of the year."--See \_Johnson, Walker, Webster, et al.\_ "When he

sat on the throne, distributing new-year's-gifts."--STILLINGFLEET, \_in

Johnson's Dict.\_ "St. Paul admonishes Timothy to refuse old-wives'-

fables."--\_Author\_. "The world, take it altogether, is but one."--

\_Collier's Antoninus\_, B. vii, Sec. 9. "In writings of this stamp we must

accept of sound instead of sense."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 298. "A

male-child, A female-child, Male-descendants, Female-descendants."--

\_Goldsbury's C. S. Gram.\_, p. 13; \_Rev. T. Smith's Gram.\_, p. 15.

"Male-servants, Female-servants. Male-relations, Female-relations."--

\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 15.

"Reserved and cautious, with no partial aim,

My muse e'er sought to blast another's fame."--\_Lloyd\_, p. 162.

UNDER RULE III.--THE SENSE.

"Our discriminations of this matter have been but four footed

instincts."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 291.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the term \_four footed\_ is made two words, as

if the instincts were four and footed. But, according to Rule 3d, "Words

otherwise liable to be misunderstood, must be joined together, or written

separately, as the sense and construction may happen to require."

Therefore, \_four-footed\_, as it here means \_quadruped\_, or \_having four

feet\_, should be one word.]

"He is in the right, (says Clytus,) not to bear free born men at his

table."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. ii, p. 128. "To the short seeing eye of

man, the progress may appear little."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. ix, p. 377.

"Knowledge and virtue are, emphatically, the stepping stone to individual

distinction."--\_Town's Analysis\_, p. 5. "A tin peddler will sell tin

vessels as he travels."--\_Webster's New Spelling-Book\_, p. 44. "The beams

of a wood-house are held up by the posts and joists."--\_Ib.\_, p. 39. "What

you mean by \_future tense adjective\_, I can easily understand."--\_Tooke's

Diversions\_, Vol. ii, p. 450. "The town has been for several days very well

behaved."--\_Spectator\_, No. 532. "A \_rounce\_ is the handle of a printing

press."--\_Webster's' Dict.\_; also \_El. Spelling-Book\_, p. 118. "The

phraseology we call \_thee and thouing\_ is not in so common use with us, as

the \_tutoyant\_ among the French."--\_Walker's Dict., w. Thy.\_ "Hunting, and

other out door sports, are generally pursued."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 227.

"Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden."--SCOTT, ALGER,

FRIENDS: \_Matt.\_, xi, 28. "God so loved the world, that he gave his only

begotten Son to save it."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, p. 71. See SCOTT'S BIBLE:

\_John\_, iii, 16. "Jehovah is a prayer hearing God: Nineveh repented, and

was spared."--\_N. Y. Observer\_, Vol. x, p. 90. "These are well pleasing to

God, in all ranks and relations."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 73.

"Whosoever cometh any thing near unto the tabernacle."--\_Numb.\_, xvii, 13.

"The words coalesce, when they have a long established association."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 169. "Open to me the gates of righteousness: I will go

in to them."--OLD BIBLE: \_Ps.\_, cxviii, 19. "He saw an angel of God coming

into him."--See \_Acts\_, x, 3. "The consequences of any action are to be

considered in a two fold light."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 108. "We

commonly write two fold, three fold, four fold, and so on up to ten fold,

without a hyphen; and, after that, we use one."--\_Author.\_ See \_Matt.\_,

xiii, 8. "When the first mark is going off, he cries \_turn!\_ the glass

holder answers \_done!\_"--\_Bowditch's Nav.\_, p. 128. "It is a kind of

familiar shaking hands with all the vices."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 170.

"She is a good natured woman;" "James is self opinionated;" "He is broken

hearted."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 147. "These three examples apply to the

\_present tense\_ construction only."--\_Ib.\_, p. 65. "So that it was like a

game of hide and go seek."--\_Edward's First Lessons in Grammar\_, p. 90.

"That lowliness is young ambition's ladder,

Whereto the climber upward turns his face."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 97.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF ELLIPSES.

"This building serves yet for a school and a meeting-house."

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the compound word \_schoolhouse\_ is here

divided to avoid a repetition of the last half. But, according to Rule 4th,

"When two or more compounds are connected in one sentence, none of them

should be split to make an ellipsis of half a word." Therefore, "\_school\_"

should be "\_schoolhouse\_;" thus, "This building serves yet for a

\_schoolhouse\_ and a meeting-house."]

"Schoolmasters and mistresses of honest friends [are] to be

encouraged."--\_N. E. Discipline\_, p. xv. "We never assumed to ourselves a

faith or worship-making-power."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 83. "Pot and

pearl ashes are made from common ashes."--\_Webster's New Spelling-Book\_, p.

69. "Both the ten and eight syllable verses are iambics."--\_Blair's Gram.\_,

p. 121. "I say to myself, thou, he says to thy, to his self; &c."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.\_, Vol. ii p. 121. "Or those who have

esteemed themselves skilful, have tried for the mastery in two or four

horse chariots."--\_Zenobia\_, Vol. i, p. 152. "I remember him barefooted and

headed, running through the streets."--\_Castle Rackrent\_, p. 68. "Friends

have the entire control of the school and dwelling-houses."--\_The Friend\_,

Vol. vii, p. 231. "The meeting is held at the first mentioned place in the

first month, at the last in the second, and so on."--\_Ib.\_, p. 167.

"Meetings for worship are held at the same hour on first and fourth

days."--\_Ib.\_, p. 230. "Every part of it, inside and out, is covered with

gold leaf."--\_Ib.\_, p. 404. "The Eastern Quarterly Meeting is held on the

last seventh day in second, fifth, eighth, and eleventh month."--\_Ib.\_, p.

87. "Trenton Preparative Meeting is held on the third fifth day in each

month, at ten o'clock; meetings for worship at the same hour on first and

fifth days."--\_Ib.\_, p. 231. "Ketch, a vessel with two masts, a main and

mizzen-mast."--\_Webster's Dict.\_, "I only mean to suggest a doubt, whether

nature has enlisted herself as a Cis or Trans-Atlantic partisan?"--

\_Jefferson's Notes\_, p. 97. "By large hammers, like those used for paper

and fullingmills, they beat their hemp."--MORTIMER: \_in Johnson's Dict.\_

"Ant-hill, or Hillock, \_n. s.\_ The small protuberances of earth, in which

ants make their nests."--\_Ib.\_ "It became necessary to substitute simple

indicative terms called \_pro-names\_ or \_nouns.\_"--\_Enclytica\_, p. 16.

"Obscur'd, where highest woods, impenetrable

To star or sun-light, spread their umbrage broad."--\_Milton.\_

UNDER RULE V.--THE HYPHEN.

"\_Evilthinking\_; a noun, compounded of the noun \_evil\_ and the imperfect

participle \_thinking\_; singular number;" &c.--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 180.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the word \_evilthinking\_, which has more than

one accented syllable, is here compounded without the hyphen. But,

according to Rule 5th, "When the parts of a compound do not fully coalesce,

or when each retains its original accent, so that the compound has more

than one, or one that is movable, the hyphen should be inserted between

them." Therefore, the hyphen should be used in this word; thus,

\_evil-thinking.\_]

"\_Evilspeaking\_; a noun, compounded of the noun \_evil\_ and the imperfect

participle \_speaking.\_"--\_Ib.\_ "I am a tall, broadshouldered, impudent,

black fellow."--SPECTATOR: \_in Johnson's Dict.\_ "Ingratitude! thou

marblehearted fiend."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "A popular licence is indeed the

manyheaded tyranny."--SIDNEY: \_ib.\_ "He from the manypeopled city

flies."--SANDYS: \_ib.\_ "He manylanguaged nations has surveyed."--POPE:

\_ib.\_ "The horsecucumber is the large green cucumber, and the best for the

table."--MORTIMER: \_ib.\_ "The bird of night did sit, even at noonday, upon

the market-place."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "These make a general gaoldelivery of

souls, not for punishment."--SOUTH: \_ib.\_ "Thy air, thou other goldbound

brow, is like the first."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "His person was deformed to the

highest degree; flatnosed, and blobberlipped."--L'ESTRANGE: \_ib.\_ "He that

defraudeth the labourer of his hire, is a bloodshedder."--ECCLUS., xxxiv,

22: \_ib.\_ "Bloodyminded, \_adj.\_ from \_bloody\_ and \_mind.\_ Cruel; inclined

to blood-shed."--See \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "Bluntwitted lord, ignoble in

demeanour."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "A young fellow with a bobwig and a black silken

bag tied to it."--SPECTATOR: \_ib.\_ "I have seen enough to confute all the

boldfaced atheists of this age."--BRAMHALL: \_ib.\_ "Before milkwhite, now

purple with love's wound."--SHAK: \_ib.\_ "For what else is a redhot iron

than fire? and what else is a burning coal than redhot wood?"--NEWTON:

\_ib.\_ "Pollevil is a large swelling, inflammation, or imposthume in the

horse's poll, or nape of the neck just between the ears."--FARRIER: \_ib.\_

"Quick-witted, brazenfac'd, with fluent tongues,

Patient of labours, and dissembling wrongs."--DRYDEN: \_ib.\_

UNDER RULE VI.--NO HYPHEN.

"From his fond parent's eye a tear-drop fell."--\_Snelling's Gift for

Scribblers\_, p. 43.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the word \_tear-drop\_, which has never any

other than a full accent on the first syllable, is here compounded with the

hyphen. But, according to Rule 6th, "When a compound has but one accented

syllable in pronunciation, and the parts are such as admit of a complete

coalescence, no hyphen should be inserted between them." Therefore,

\_teardrop\_ should be made a close compound.]

"How great, poor jack-daw, would thy sufferings be!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 29. "Placed

like a scare-crow in a field of corn."--\_Ib.\_, p. 39. "Soup for the

alms-house at a cent a quart."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "Up into the watch-tower get,

and see all things despoiled of fallacies."--DONNE: \_Johnson's Dict., w.

Lattice.\_ "In the day-time she sitteth in a watchtower, and flieth most by

night."--BACON: \_ib., w. Watchtower.\_ "In the daytime Fame sitteth in a

watch-tower, and flieth most by night."--ID.: \_ib., w. Daytime.\_ "The moral

is the first business of the poet, as being the ground-work of his

instruction."--DRYDEN: \_ib., w. Moral.\_ "Madam's own hand the mouse-trap

baited."--PRIOR: \_ib., w. Mouse-trap.\_ "By the sinking of the air-shaft the

air hath liberty to circulate."--RAY: \_ib., w. Airshaft.\_ "The multiform

and amazing operations of the air-pump and the loadstone."--WATTS: \_ib., w.

Multiform.\_ "Many of the fire-arms are named from animals."--\_Ib., w.

Musket.\_ "You might have trussed him and all his apparel into an

eel-skin."--SHAK.: \_ib., w. Truss.\_ "They may serve as land-marks to shew

what lies in the direct way of truth."--LOCKE: \_ib., w. Landmark.\_ "A

pack-horse is driven constantly in a narrow lane and dirty road."--\_Id.

ib., w. Lane.\_ "A mill-horse, still bound to go in one circle."--SIDNEY:

\_ib., w. Mill-horse.\_ "Of singing birds they have linnets, goldfinches,

ruddocks, Canary-birds, black-birds, thrushes, and divers others."--CAREW:

\_ib., w. Goldfinch.\_ "Of singing birds, they have linnets, gold-finches,

blackbirds, thrushes, and divers others."--ID.: \_ib., w. Blackbird.\_ "Of

singing birds, they have linnets, gold-finches, ruddocks, canary birds,

blackbirds, thrushes, and divers other."--ID.: \_ib., w. Canary bird.\_

"Cartrage, or Cartridge, a case of paper or parchment filled with

gun-powder."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_, 4to.

"Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night,

The time of night when Troy was set on fire,

The tune when screech-owls cry, and ban-dogs howl."

SHAKSPEARE: \_ib., w. Silent.\_

"The time when screech-owls cry, and bandogs howl."

IDEM.: \_ib., w. Bandog.\_

PROMISCUOUS ERRORS IN THE FIGURE OF WORDS.

LESSON I.--MIXED.

"They that live in glass-houses, should not throw stones."--\_Old Adage.\_

"If a man profess Christianity in any manner or form soever."--\_Watts\_, p.

5. "For Cassius is a weary of the world."--SHAKSPEARE: \_in Kirkham's

Elocution\_, p. 67. "By the coming together of more, the chains were

fastened on."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 223. "Unto the carrying away of

Jerusalem captive in the fifth month."--\_Jer.\_, i, 3. "And the goings forth

of the border shall be to Zedad."--\_Numbers\_, xxxiv, 8. "And the goings out

of it shall be at Hazar-enan."--\_Ib.\_, ver. 9. "For the taking place of

effects, in a certain particular series."--\_Dr. West, on Agency\_, p. 39.

"The letting go of which was the occasion of all that corruption."--\_Dr. J.

Owen.\_ "A falling off at the end always hurts greatly."--\_Blair's Lect.\_,

p. 126. "A falling off at the end is always injurious."--\_Jamieson's

Rhetoric\_, p. 127. "As all holdings forth were courteously supposed to be

trains of reasoning."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.\_, Vol. i, p.

333. "Whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting."--

\_Micah\_, v, 2. "Some times the adjective becomes a substantive."--

\_Bradley's Gram.\_, p. 104. "It is very plain, I consider man as visited a

new."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 331. "Nor do I any where say, as he

falsely insinuates."--\_Ib.\_, p. 331. "Every where, any where, some where,

no where."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 55. "The world hurries off a pace,

and time is like a rapid river."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 58. "But to now

model the paradoxes of ancient skepticism."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol. i, p.

102. "The south east winds from the ocean invariably produce

rain."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 369. "North west winds from the high lands

produce cold clear weather."--\_Ib.\_ "The greatest part of such tables would

be of little use to English men."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 155. "The ground

floor of the east wing of Mulberry street meeting house was filled."--\_The

Friend\_, vii, 232. "Prince Rupert's Drop. This singular production is made

at the glass houses."--\_Red Book\_, p. 131.

"The lights and shades, whose well accorded strife

Gives all the strength and colour of our life."

--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 54; \_Fisk's\_, 65.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"In the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah did Zimri reign seven

days in Tirzah."--\_1 Kings\_, xvi, 15. "In the thirty and first year of Asa

king of Judah, began Omri to reign over Israel."--\_Ib.\_, xvi, 23. "He

cannot so deceive himself as to fancy that he is able to do a rule of three

sum."--\_Foreign Quarterly Review\_. "The best cod are those known under the

name of Isle of Shoals dun fish."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 26. "The soldiers,

with down cast eyes, seemed to beg for mercy."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol.

ii, p. 142. "His head was covered with a coarse worn out piece of

cloth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 124. "Though they had lately received a reinforcement of

a thousand heavy armed Spartans."--\_Ib.\_, p. 38. "But he laid them by

unopened; and, with a smile, said, 'Business to morrow.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 7.

"Chester monthly meeting is held at Moore's town, the third day following

the second second day."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. vii, p. 124. "Eggharbour

monthly meeting is held the first second day."--\_Ib.\_, p. 124. "Little Egg

Harbour Monthly Meeting is held at Tuckerton on the second fifth day in

each month."--\_Ib.\_, p. 231. "At three o'clock, on first day morning the

24th of eleventh month, 1834," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "In less than one-fourth

part of the time usually devoted."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 4. "The pupil

will not have occasion to use it one-tenth part as much."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11.

"The painter dips his paint brush in paint, to paint the

carriage."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. "In an ancient English version of the

New-Testament."--\_Ib.\_, p. 74. "The little boy was bare headed."--\_Red

Book\_, p. 36. "The man, being a little short sighted, did not immediately

know him."--\_Ib.\_, p. 40. "Picture frames are gilt with gold."--\_Ib.\_, p.

44. "The park keeper killed one of the deer."--\_Ib.\_, p. 44. "The fox was

killed near the brick kiln."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. "Here comes Esther, with her

milk pail."--\_Ib.\_, p. 50. "The cabinet maker would not tell us."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 60. "A fine thorn hedge extended along the edge of the hill."--\_Ib.\_, p.

65. "If their private interests should be ever so little affected."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 73. "Unios are fresh water shells, vulgarly called fresh water

clams."--\_Ib.\_, p. 102.

"Did not each poet mourn his luckless doom,

Jostled by pedants out of elbow room."--\_Lloyd\_, p. 163.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"The captive hovers a-while upon the sad remains."--PRIOR: \_in Johnson's

Dict., w. Hover.\_ "Constantia saw that the hand writing agreed with the

contents of the letter."--ADDISON: \_ib., w. Hand\_. "They have put me in a

silk night-gown, and a gaudy fool's cap."--ID.: \_ib., w. Nightgown\_. "Have

you no more manners than to rail at Hocus, that has saved that clod-pated,

numskull'd ninnyhammer of yours from ruin, and all his family?"--ARBUTHNOT:

\_ib., w. Ninnyhammer\_. "A noble, that is, six, shillings and eightpence,

is, and usually hath been paid."--BACON: \_ib., w. Noble\_. "The king of

birds thick feather'd and with full-summed wings, fastened his talons east

and west."--HOWELL: \_ib., w. Full-summed\_. "To morrow. This is an idiom of

the same kind, supposing \_morrow\_ to mean originally \_morning\_: as, \_to

night, to day\_."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_, 4to. "To-day goes away and to-morrow

comes."--\_Id., ib., w. Go\_, No. 70. "Young children, who are try'd in Go

carts, to keep their steps from sliding."--PRIOR: \_ib., w. Go-cart\_.

"Which, followed well, would demonstrate them but goers backward."--SHAK.:

\_ ib., w. Goer\_. "Heaven's golden winged herald late he saw, to a poor

Galilean virgin sent."--CRASHAW: \_ib., w. Golden\_. "My penthouse eye-brows

and my shaggy beard offend your sight."--DRYDEN: \_ib., w. Penthouse\_. "The

hungry lion would fain have been dealing with good horse-flesh."--

L'ESTRANGE: \_ib., w. Nag\_. "A broad brimmed hat ensconced each careful

head."--\_Snelling's Gift\_, p. 63. "With harsh vibrations of his three

stringed lute."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. "They magnify a hundred fold an author's

merit."--\_Ib.\_, p. 14. "I'll nail them fast to some oft opened

door."--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. "Glossed over only with a saint-like show, still thou

art bound to vice."--DRYDEN: in \_Johnson's Dict., w. Gloss\_. "Take of

aqua-fortis two ounces, of quick-silver two drachms."--BACON: \_ib., w.

Charge\_. "This rainbow never appears but when it rains in the

sun-shine."--NEWTON: \_ib., w. Rainbow\_.

"Not but there are, who merit other palms;

Hopkins and Stern hold glad the heart with Psalms."

\_British Poets\_, Lond., 1800, Vol. vi, p. 405.

CHAPTER IV.--OF SPELLING.

\_Spelling\_ is the art of expressing words by their proper letters. This

important art is to be acquired rather by means of the spelling-book or

dictionary, and by observation in reading, than by the study of written

rules; because what is proper or improper, depends chiefly upon usage.

The orthography of our language is attended with much uncertainty and

perplexity: many words are variously spelled by the best scholars, and many

others are not usually written according to the analogy of similar words.

But to be ignorant of the orthography of such words as are spelled with

uniformity, and frequently used, is justly considered disgraceful.

The following rules may prevent some embarrassment, and thus be of service

to those who wish to be accurate.

\_RULES FOR SPELLING.\_

RULE I.--FINAL F, L, OR S.

Monosyllables ending in \_f, l\_, or \_s\_, preceded by a single vowel, double

the final consonant; as \_staff, mill, pass--muff, knell, gloss--off, hiss,

puss\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--The words \_clef, if\_, and \_of\_, are written with single \_f\_;

and \_as, gas, has, was, yes, his, is, this, us, pus\_, and \_thus\_, with

single \_s\_. So \_bul\_, for the flounder; \_nul\_, for \_no\_, in law; \_sol\_, for

\_sou\_ or \_sun\_; and \_sal\_, for \_salt\_, in chemistry, have but the single

\_l\_.

OBS.--Because \_sal, salis\_, in Latin, doubles not the \_l\_, the chemists

write \_salify, salifiable, salification, saliferous, saline, salinous,

saliniform, salifying\_, &c., with single \_l\_, contrary to Rule 3d. But in

\_gas\_ they ought to double the \_s\_; for this is a word of their own

inventing. Neither have they any plea for allowing it to form \_gases\_ and

\_gaseous\_ with the \_s\_ still single; for so they make it violate two

general rules at once. If the singular cannot now be written \_gass\_, the

plural should nevertheless be \_gasses\_, and the adjective should be

\_gasseous\_, according to Rule 3d.

RULE II.--OTHER FINALS.

Words ending in any other consonant than \_f, l\_, or \_s\_, do not double the

final letter; as, \_mob, nod, dog, sum, sun, cup, cur, cut, fix, whiz\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--We double the consonant in \_abb, ebb, add, odd, egg, jagg,

ragg, inn, err, burr, purr, butt, buzz, fuzz, yarr\_, and some proper names.

But we have also \_ab\_ (\_from\_) and \_ad\_ (\_to\_) for prefixes; and \_jag, rag,

in, bur\_, and \_but\_, are other words that conform to the rule.

RULE III.--DOUBLING.

Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, when they end with

a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, or by a vowel after \_qu\_,

double their final consonant before an additional syllable that begins with

a vowel: as, \_rob, robbed, robber; fop, foppish, foppery; squat, squatter,

squatting; thin, thinner, thinnest; swim, swimmer, swimming; commit,

committeth, committing, committed, committer, committees; acquit,

acquittal, acquittance, acquitted, acquitting, acquitteth\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. X final, being equivalent to \_ks\_, is never doubled: thus,

from \_mix\_, we have \_mixed, mixing\_, and \_mixer\_. 2. When the derivative

retains not the accent of the root, the final consonant is not always

doubled: as, \_prefer', pref'erence, pref'erable; refer', ref'erence,

ref'erable\_, or \_refer'rible; infer', in'ference, in'ferable\_, or

\_infer'rible; transfer'\_, a \_trans'fer, trans'ferable\_, or

\_transfer'rible\_. 3. But letters doubled in Latin, are usually doubled in

English, without regard to accent, or to any other principle: as, Britain,

\_Britan'nic, Britannia\_; appeal, \_appel'lant\_; argil, \_argil'laus,

argilla'ceous\_; cavil, \_cav'illous, cavilla'tion\_; excel', \_ex'cellent,

ex'cellence\_; inflame', \_inflam'mable, inflamma'tion\_. See Observations 13

and 14, p. 199.

RULE IV.--NO DOUBLING.

A final consonant, when it is not preceded by a single vowel, or when the

accent is not on the last syllable, should remain single before an

additional syllable: as, \_toil, toiling; oil, oily; visit, visited; differ,

differing; peril, perilous; viol, violist; real, realize, realist; dial,

dialing, dialist; equal, equalize, equality; vitriol, vitriolic,

vitriolate\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. The final \_l\_ of words ending in \_el\_, must be doubled

before an other vowel, lest the power of the \_e\_ be mistaken, and a

syllable be lost: as, \_travel, traveller; duel, duellist; revel, revelling;

gravel, gravelly; marvel, marvellous\_. Yet the word \_parallel\_, having

three Ells already, conforms to the rule in forming its derivatives; as,

\_paralleling, paralleled\_, and \_unparalleled\_. 2. Contrary to the preceding

rule, the preterits, participles, and derivative nouns, of the few verbs

ending in \_al, il\_, or \_ol\_, unaccented,--namely, \_equal, rival, vial,

marshal, victual, cavil, pencil, carol, gambol\_, and \_pistol\_,--are usually

allowed to double the \_l\_, though some dissent from the practice: as,

\_equalled, equalling; rivalled, rivalling; cavilled, cavilling, caviller;

carolled, carolling, caroller\_. 3. When \_ly\_ follows \_l\_, we have two Ells

of course, but in fact no doubling: as, \_real, really; oral, orally; cruel,

cruelly; civil, civilly; cool, coolly; wool, woolly\_. 4. Compounds, though

they often remove the principal accent from the point of duplication,

always retain the double letter: as, \_wit'snapper, kid'napper,[114]

grass'hopper, duck'-legged, spur'galled, hot'spurred, broad'-brimmed,

hare'-lipped, half-witted\_. So, \_compromitted\_ and \_manumitted\_; but

\_benefited\_ is different.

RULE V.--FINAL CK.

Monosyllables and English verbs end not with \_c\_, but take \_ck\_ for double

\_c\_; as, \_rack, wreck, rock, attack\_: but, in general, words derived from

the learned languages need not the \_k\_, and common use discards it; as,

\_Italic, maniac, music, public\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--The words \_arc\_, part of a circle; \_orc\_, the name of a fish;

\_lac\_, a gum or resin; and \_sac\_, or \_soc\_, a privilege, in old English

law, are ended with \_c\_ only. \_Zinc\_ is, perhaps, better spelled \_zink\_;

\_marc, mark\_; \_disc, disk\_; and \_talc, talck\_.

RULE VI.--RETAINING.

Words ending with any double letter, preserve it double before any

additional termination, not beginning with the same letter;[115] as in the

following derivatives: \_wooer, seeing, blissful, oddly, gruffly, equally,

shelly, hilly, stiffness, illness, stillness, shrillness, fellness,

smallness, drollness, freeness, grassless, passless, carelessness,

recklessness, embarrassment, enfeoffment, agreement, agreeable\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. Certain irregular derivatives in \_d\_ or \_t\_, from verbs

ending in \_ee, ll\_, or \_ss\_, (as \_fled\_ from \_flee, sold\_ from \_sell, told\_

from \_tell, dwelt\_ from \_dwell, spelt\_ from \_spell, spilt\_ from \_spill,

shalt\_ from \_shall, wilt\_ from \_will, blest\_ from \_bless, past\_ from

\_pass\_,) are exceptions to the foregoing rule. 2. If the word \_pontiff\_ is

properly spelled with two Effs, its eight derivatives are also exceptions

to this rule; for they are severally spelled with one; as, \_pontific,

pontifical, pontificate\_, &c. 3. The words \_skillful, skillfully, willful,

willfully, chillness, tallness, dullness\_, and \_fullness\_, have generally

been allowed to drop the second \_l\_, though all of them might well be made

to conform to the general rule, agreeably to the orthography of Webster.

RULE VII.--RETAINING.

Words ending with any double letter, preserve it double in all derivatives

formed from them by means of prefixes: as, \_see, foresee\_; \_feoff,

enfeoff\_; \_pass, repass\_; \_press, depress\_; \_miss, amiss\_; \_call, recall\_;

\_stall, forestall\_; \_thrall, inthrall\_; \_spell, misspell\_; \_tell,

foretell\_; \_sell, undersell\_; \_add, superadd\_; \_snuff, besnuff\_; \_swell,

overswell\_.

OBSERVATION.--The words \_enroll, unroll, miscall, befall, befell, bethrall,

reinstall, disinthrall, fulfill\_, and \_twibill\_, are very commonly written

with one \_l\_, and made exceptions to this rule; but those authors are in

the right who retain the double letter.

RULE VIII.--FINAL LL.

Final \_ll\_ is peculiar to monosyllables and their compounds, with the few

derivatives formed from such roots by prefixes; consequently, all other

words that end in \_l\_, must be terminated with a single \_l\_: as, \_cabal,

logical, appal, excel, rebel, refel, dispel, extol, control, mogul, jackal,

rascal, damsel, handsel, tinsel, tendril, tranquil, gambol, consul\_.

OBSERVATION.--The words \_annul, until, distil, extil\_, and \_instil\_, are

also properly spelled with one \_l\_; for the monosyllables \_null, till\_, and

\_still\_ are not really their roots, but rather derivatives, or contractions

of later growth. Webster, however, prefers \_distill, extill\_, and \_instill\_

with \_ll\_; and some have been disposed to add the other two.

RULE IX.--FINAL E.

The final \_e\_ of a primitive word, when this letter is mute or obscure, is

generally omitted before an additional termination beginning with a vowel:

as, \_remove, removal\_; \_rate, ratable\_; \_force, forcible\_; \_true, truism\_;

\_rave, raving\_; \_sue, suing\_; \_eye, eying\_; \_idle, idling\_; \_centre,

centring\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. Words ending in \_ce\_ or \_ge\_, retain the \_e\_ before \_able\_

or \_ous\_, to preserve the soft sounds of \_c\_ and \_g\_: as, \_trace,

traceable\_; \_change, changeable\_; \_outrage, outrageous\_. 2. So, from

\_shoe\_, we write \_shoeing\_, to preserve the sound of the root; from \_hoe,

hoeing\_, by apparent analogy; and, from \_singe, singeing\_; from \_swinge,

swingeing\_; from \_tinge, tingeing\_; that they may not be confounded with

\_singing, swinging\_, and \_tinging\_. 3. To compounds and prefixes, as

\_firearms, forearm, anteact, viceagent\_, the rule does not apply; and final

\_ee\_ remains double, by Rule 6th, as in \_disagreeable, disagreeing\_.

RULE X.--FINAL E.

The final \_e\_ of a primitive word is generally retained before an

additional termination beginning with a consonant: as, \_pale, paleness\_;

\_edge, edgeless\_; \_judge, judgeship\_; \_lodge, lodgement\_; \_change,

changeful\_; \_infringe, infringement\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. When the \_e\_ is preceded by a vowel, it is sometimes

omitted; as in \_duly, truly, awful, argument\_; but much more frequently

retained; as in \_dueness, trueness, blueness, bluely, rueful, dueful,

shoeless, eyeless\_. 2. The word \_wholly\_ is also an exception to the rule,

for nobody writes it \_wholely\_. 3. Some will have \_judgment, abridgment\_,

and \_acknowledgment\_, to be irreclaimable exceptions; but I write them with

the \_e\_, upon the authority of Lowth, Beattie, Ainsworth, Walker, Cobb,

Chalmers, and others: the French "\_jugement\_," \_judgement\_, always retains

the \_e\_.

RULE XI--FINAL Y.

The final \_y\_ of a primitive word, when preceded by a consonant, is

generally changed into \_i\_ before an additional termination: as, \_merry,

merrier, merriest, merrily, merriment\_; \_pity, pitied, pities, pitiest,

pitiless, pitiful, pitiable\_; \_contrary, contrariness, contrarily\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. This rule applies to derivatives, but not to compounds:

thus, we write \_merciful\_, and \_mercy-seat\_; \_penniless\_, and \_pennyworth\_;

\_scurviness\_, and \_scurvy-grass\_; &c. But \_ladyship\_ and \_goodyship\_, being

unlike \_secretariship\_ and \_suretiship\_; \_handicraft\_ and \_handiwork\_,[116]

unlike \_handygripe\_ and \_handystroke\_; \_babyship\_ and \_babyhood\_, unlike

\_stateliness\_ and \_likelihood\_; the distinction between derivatives and

compounds, we see, is too nice a point to have been always accurately

observed. 2. Before \_ing\_ or \_ish\_, the \_y\_ is retained to prevent the

doubling of \_i\_: as, \_pity, pitying\_; \_baby, babyish\_. 3. Words ending in

\_ie\_, dropping the \_e\_ by Rule 9th, change the \_i\_ into \_y\_, for the same

reason: as, \_die, dying\_; \_vie, vying\_; \_lie, lying\_.

RULE XII--FINAL Y.

The final \_y\_ of a primitive word, when preceded by a vowel, should not be

changed into \_i\_ before any additional termination: as, \_day, days\_; \_key,

keys\_; \_guy, guys\_; \_valley, valleys\_; \_coy, coyly\_; \_cloy, cloys, cloyed\_;

\_boy, boyish, boyhood\_; \_annoy, annoyer, annoyance\_; \_joy, joyless,

joyful\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. From \_lay, pay, say\_, and \_stay\_, are formed \_laid, paid,

said\_, and \_staid\_; but the regular words, \_layed, payed, stayed\_, are

sometimes used. 2. \_Raiment\_, contracted from \_arrayment\_, is never written

with the \_y\_. 3. \_Daily\_ is more common than the regular form \_dayly\_; but

\_gayly, gayety\_, and \_gayness\_, are justly superseding \_gaily\_ and

\_gaiety\_.

RULE XIII.--IZE AND ISE.

Words ending in \_ize\_ or \_ise\_ sounded alike, as in \_wise\_ and \_size\_,

generally take the \_z\_ in all such as are essentially formed by means of

the termination; and the \_s\_ in monosyllables, and all such as are

essentially formed by means of prefixes: as, \_gormandise, apologize,

brutalize, canonize, pilgrimize, philosophize, cauterize, anathematize,

sympathize, disorganize\_, with \_z\_;[117] \_rise, arise, disguise, advise,

devise, supervise, circumcise, despise, surmise, surprise, comprise,

compromise, enterprise, presurmise\_, with \_s\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. \_Advertise, catechise, chastise, criticise\_,[118]

\_exercise, exorcise\_, and \_merchandise\_, are most commonly written with \_s\_

and \_size, assize, capsize, analyze, overprize, detonize\_, and \_recognize\_,

with \_z\_. How many of them are real exceptions to the rule, it is difficult

to say. 2. \_Prise\_, a thing taken, and \_prize\_, to esteem; \_apprise\_, to

inform, and \_apprize\_, to \_value\_, or \_appraise\_, are often written either

way, without this distinction of meaning, which some wish to establish. 3.

The want of the foregoing rule has also made many words \_variable\_, which

ought, unquestionably, to conform to the general principle.

RULE XIV.--COMPOUNDS.

Compounds generally retain the orthography of the simple words which

compose them: as, \_wherein, horseman, uphill, shellfish, knee-deep,

kneedgrass, kneading-trough, innkeeper, skylight, plumtree, mandrill\_.

EXCEPTIONS.--1. In permanent compounds, or in any derivatives of which,

they are not the \_roots\_, the words \_full\_ and \_all\_ drop one \_l\_; as,

\_handful, careful, fulfil, always, although, withal\_; in temporary

compounds, they retain both; as, \_full-eyed, chock-full\_,[119] \_all-wise,

save-all\_. 2. So the prefix \_mis\_, (if from \_miss\_, to err,) drops one \_s\_;

but it is wrong to drop them both, as in Johnson's "\_mispell\_" and

"\_mispend\_," for \_misspell\_ and \_misspend\_. 3. In the names of days, the

word \_mass\_ also drops one \_s\_; as, \_Christmas, Candlemas, Lammas\_. 4. The

possessive case often drops the apostrophe; as in \_herdsman, kitesfoot\_. 5.

One letter is dropped, if three of the same kind come together: as,

\_Rosshire, chaffinch\_; or else a hyphen is used: as, \_Ross-shire,

ill-looking, still-life\_. 6. \_Chilblain, welcome\_, and \_welfare\_, drop one

\_l\_. 7. \_Pastime\_ drops an \_s\_. 8. \_Shepherd, wherever\_, and \_whosever\_,

drop an \_e\_; and \_wherefore\_ and \_therefore\_ assume one.

RULE XV.--USAGE.

Any word for the spelling of which we have no rule but usage, is written

wrong if not spelled according to the usage which is most common among the

learned: as, "The brewer grinds his malt before he \_brues\_ his beer."--\_Red

Book\_, p. 38.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The foregoing rules aim at no wild and impracticable reformation

of our orthography; but, if carefully applied, they will do much to obviate

its chief difficulties. Being made variable by the ignorance of some

writers and the caprice of others, our spelling is now, and always has

been, exceedingly irregular and unsettled. Uniformity and consistency can

be attained in no other way, than by the steady application of rules and

principles; and these must be made as few and as general as the case will

admit, that the memory of the learner may not be overmatched by their

number or complexity. Rules founded on the analogy of similar words, and

sanctioned by the usage of careful writers, must be taken as our guides;

because common practice is often found to be capricious, contradictory, and

uncertain. That errors and inconsistencies abound, even in the books which

are proposed to the world as \_standards\_ of English orthography, is a

position which scarcely needs proof. It is true, to a greater or less

extent, of all the spelling-books and dictionaries that I have seen, and

probably of all that have ever been published. And as all authors are

liable to mistakes, which others may copy, general rules should have more

weight than particular examples to the contrary. "The right spelling of a

word may be said to be that which agrees the best with its pronunciation,

its etymology, and with the analogy of the particular class of words to

which it belongs."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 647.

OBS. 2.--I do not deny that great respect is due to the authority of our

lexicographers, or that great improvement was made in the orthography of

our language when Dr. Johnson put his hand to the work. But sometimes one

man's authority may offset an other's; and he that is inconsistent with

himself, destroys his own: for, surely, his example cannot be paramount to

his principles. Much has been idly said, both for and against the adoption

of Johnson's Dictionary, or Webster's, as \_the criterion\_ of what is right

or wrong in spelling; but it would seem that no one man's learning is

sufficiently extensive, or his memory sufficiently accurate, to be solely

relied on to furnish \_a standard\_ by which we may in all cases be governed.

Johnson was generally right; but, like other men, he was sometimes wrong.

He erred sometimes in his \_principles\_, or in their application; as when he

adopted the \_k\_ in such words as \_rhetorick\_, and \_demoniack\_; or when he

inserted the \_u\_ in such words as \_governour, warriour, superiour\_. Neither

of these modes of spelling was ever generally adopted, in any thing like

the number of words to which he applied them; or ever will be; though some

indiscreet compilers are still zealously endeavouring to impose them upon

the public, as the true way of spelling. He also erred sometimes \_by

accident\_, or \_oversight\_; as when he spelled thus: "\_recall\_ and \_miscal,

inthrall\_ and \_bethral, windfall\_ and \_downfal, laystall\_ and \_thumbstal,

waterfall\_ and \_overfal, molehill\_ and \_dunghil, windmill\_ and \_twibil,

uphill\_ and \_downhil\_." This occasional excision of the letter \_l\_ is

reprehensible, because it is contrary to general analogy, and because both

letters are necessary to preserve the sound, and show the derivation of the

compound. Walker censures it as a "ridiculous irregularity," and lays the

blame of it on the "\_printers\_," and yet does not venture to correct it!

See Johnson's Dictionary, first American edition, quarto; Walker's

Pronouncing Dictionary, under the word \_Dunghil\_; and his Rhyming

Dictionary, Introd., p. xv.

OBS. 3.--"Dr. Johnson's Dictionary" has been represented by some as having

"nearly fixed the external form of our language." But Murray, who quotes

this from Dr. Nares, admits, at the same time, that, "The orthography of a

great number of English words, is far from being uniform, even amongst

writers of distinction."--\_Gram.\_, p. 25. And, after commending this work

of Johnson's, as A STANDARD, from which, "it is earnestly to be hoped, that

no author will henceforth, on light grounds, be tempted to innovate," he

adds, "This Dictionary, however, contains some orthographical

inconsistencies which ought to be rectified: such as, \_immovable, moveable;

chastely, chastness; fertileness, fertily; sliness, slyly; fearlessly,

fearlesness; needlessness, needlesly\_."--\_Ib.\_ In respect to the final \_ck\_

and \_our\_, he also \_intentionally departs from\_ THE STANDARD \_which he thus

commends\_; preferring, in that, the authority of \_Walker's Rhyming

Dictionary\_, from which he borrowed his rules for spelling. For, against

the use of \_k\_ at the end of words from the learned languages, and against

the \_u\_ in many words in which Johnson used it, we have the authority, not

only of general usage now, but of many grammarians who were contemporary

with Johnson, and of more than a dozen lexicographers, ancient or modern,

among whom is Walker himself. In this, therefore, Murray's practice is

right, and his commended standard dictionary, wrong.

OBS. 4.--Of words ending in \_or\_ or \_our\_, we have about three hundred and

twenty; of which not more than forty can now with any propriety be written

with the latter termination. Aiming to write according to the best usage of

the present day, I insert the \_u\_ in so many of these words as now seem

most familiar to the eye when so written; but I have no partiality for any

letters that can well be spared; and if this book should ever, by any good

fortune, happen to be reprinted, after \_honour, labour, favour, behaviour\_,

and \_endeavour\_, shall have become as unfashionable as \_authour, errour,

terrour\_, and \_emperour\_, are now, let the proof-reader strike out the

useless letter not only from these words, but from all others which shall

bear an equally antiquated appearance.

OBS. 5.--I have suggested the above-mentioned imperfections in \_Dr.

Johnson's\_ orthography, merely to justify the liberty which I take of

spelling otherwise; and not with any view to give a preference to that of

\_Dr. Webster\_, who is now contending for the honour of having furnished a

more correct \_standard\_. For the latter author, though right in some things

in which the former was wrong, is, on the whole, still more erroneous and

inconsistent. In his various attempts at reformation in our orthography, he

has spelled many hundreds of words in such a variety of ways, that he knows

not at last which of them is right, and which are wrong. But in respect to

\_definitions\_, he has done good service to our literature; nor have his

critics been sufficiently just respecting what they call his "innovations."

See Cobb's Critical Review of the Orthography of Webster. To omit the \_k\_

from such words as \_publick\_, or the \_u\_ from such as \_superiour\_, is

certainly \_no innovation\_; it is but ignorance that censures the general

practice, under that name. The advocates for Johnson and opponents of

Webster, who are now so zealously stickling for the \_k\_ and the \_u\_ in

these cases, ought to know that they are contending for what was obsolete,

or obsolescent, when Dr. Johnson was a boy.

OBS. 6.--I have before observed that some of the grammarians who were

contemporary with Johnson, did not adopt his practice respecting the \_k\_ or

the \_u\_, in \_publick, critick, errour, superiour\_, &c. And indeed I am not

sure there were any who did. Dr. Johnson was born in 1709, and he died in

1784. But Brightland's Grammar, which was written during the reign of Queen

Anne, who died in 1714, in treating of the letter C, says, "If in any Word

the harder Sound precedes (\_e\_), (\_i\_), or (\_y\_), (\_k\_) is either added or

put in its Place; as, \_Skill, Skin, Publick\_: And tho' the additional (\_k\_)

in the foregoing Word be an \_old Way\_ of Spelling, yet it is now very

justly left off, as being a superfluous Letter; for (\_c\_) at the End is

always hard."--Seventh Edition, Lond., 1746, p. 37.

OBS. 7.--The three

grammars of Ash, Priestley, and Lowth, all appeared, in their first

editions, about one time; all, if I mistake not, in the year 1763; and none

of these learned doctors, it would seem, used the mode of spelling now in

question. In Ash, of 1799, we have such orthography as this: "Italics,

public, domestic, our traffic, music, quick; error, superior, warrior,

authors, honour, humour, favour, behaviour." In Priestley, of 1772:

"Iambics, dactyls, dactylic, anapæstic, monosyllabic, electric, public,

critic; author, emperor's, superior; favour, labours, neighbours, laboured,

vigour, endeavour; meagre, hillock, bailiwick, bishoprick, control,

travelling." In Lowth, of 1799: "Comic, critic, characteristic, domestic;

author, \_favor, favored, endeavored, alledging\_, foretells." Now all these

are words in the spelling of which Johnson and Webster contradict each

other; and if they are not all right, surely they would not, on the whole,

be made more nearly right, by being conformed to either of these

authorities exclusively. For THE BEST USAGE is the ultimate rule of

grammar.

OBS. 8.--The old British Grammar, written before the American Revolution,

and even before "\_the learned Mr. Samuel Johnson\_" was doctorated, though

it thus respectfully quotes that great scholar, does not follow him in the

spelling of which I am treating. On the contrary, it abounds with examples

of words ending in \_ic\_ and \_or\_, and not in \_ick\_ and \_our\_, as he wrote

them; and I am confident, that, from that time to this, the former

orthography has continued to be \_more common than his\_. Walker, the

orthoëpist, who died in 1807, yielded the point respecting the \_k\_, and

ended about four hundred and fifty words with \_c\_ in his Rhyming

Dictionary; but he thought it more of an innovation than it really was. In

his Pronouncing Dictionary, he says, "It has been a custom, \_within these

twenty years\_, to omit the \_k\_ at the end of words, when preceded by \_c\_.

This has introduced a \_novelty\_ into the language, which is that of ending

a word with an unusual letter," &c. "This omission of \_k\_ is, however, too

general to be counteracted, even by the authority of Johnson; but it is to

be hoped it will be confined to words from the learned languages."--

\_Walker's Principles of Pronunciation\_, No. 400. The tenth edition of

Burn's Grammar, dated 1810, says, "It has become customary to omit \_k\_

after \_c\_ at the end of dissyllables and trisyllables, &c. as \_music,

arithmetic, logic\_; but the \_k\_ is retained in monosyllables; as, \_back,

deck, rick\_, &c."--P. 25. James Buchanan, of whose English Syntax there had

been five American editions in 1792, added no \_k\_ to such words as

\_didactic, critic, classic\_, of which he made frequent use; and though he

wrote \_honour, labour\_, and the like, with \_u\_, as they are perhaps most

generally written now, he inserted no \_u\_ in \_error, author\_, or any of

those words in which that letter would now be inconsistent with good taste.

OBS. 9.--Bicknell's Grammar, of 1790, treating of the letter \_k\_, says,

"And for the same reason we have \_dropt\_ it at the end of words after \_c\_,

which is there always hard; as in \_publick, logick\_, &c. which are more

elegantly written \_public, logic\_."--Part ii, p. 13. Again: "It has

heretofore joined with \_c\_ at the end of words; as \_publick, logick\_; but,

as before observed, being there quite superfluous, it is now left

out"--\_Ib.\_, p. 16. Horne Tooke's orthography was also agreeable to the

rule which I have given on this subject. So is the usage of David Booth:

"Formerly a \_k\_ was added, as, \_rustick, politick, Arithmetick\_, &c. but

this is now in disuse."--\_Booth's Introd. to Dict.\_, Lond., 1814, p. 80.

OBS. 10.--As the authors of many recent spelling-books--Cobb, Emerson,

Burhans, Bolles, Sears, Marshall, Mott, and others--are now contending for

this "\_superfluous letter\_," in spite of all the authority against it, it

seems proper briefly to notice their argument, lest the student be misled

by it. It is summed up by one of them in the following words: "In regard to

\_k\_ after \_c\_ at the end of words, it may be sufficient to say, that its

omission has never been attempted, except in a \_small portion\_ of the cases

\_where\_ it occurs; and that \_it\_ tends to an erroneous pronunciation of

derivatives, as in \_mimick, mimicking\_, where, if the \_k\_ were omitted,

\_it\_ would read mimicing; and as \_c\_ before \_i\_ is always sounded like \_s,

it\_ must be pronounced \_mimising\_. Now, since \_it\_ is never omitted in

monosyllables, \_where it\_ most frequently occurs, as in \_block, clock\_,

&c., and \_can be in a part only\_ of polysyllables, it is thought better to

preserve it in all cases, by \_which\_ we have one general rule, in place of

several irregularities and exceptions that must follow its partial

omission."--\_Bolles's Spelling-Book\_, p. 2. I need not tell the reader that

these two sentences evince great want of care or skill in the art of

grammar. But it is proper to inform him, that we have in our language

eighty-six monosyllables which end with \_ck\_, and from them about fifty

compounds or derivatives, which of course keep the same termination. To

these may be added a dozen or more which seem to be of doubtful formation,

such as \_huckaback, pickapack, gimcrack, ticktack, picknick, barrack,

knapsack, hollyhock, shamrock, hammock, hillock, hammock, bullock,

roebuck\_. But the verbs on which this argument is founded are only six;

\_attack, ransack, traffick, frolick, mimick\_, and \_physick\_; and these,

unquestionably, must either be spelled with the k, or must assume it in

their derivatives. Now that useful class of words which are generally and

properly written with final \_c\_, are about \_four hundred and fifty\_ in

number, and are all of them either adjectives or nouns of regular

derivation from the learned languages, being words of more than one

syllable, which have come to us from Greek or Latin roots. But what has the

doubling of \_c\_ by \_k\_, in our native monosyllables and their derivatives,

to do with all these words of foreign origin? For the reason of the matter,

we might as well double the \_l\_, as our ancestors did, in \_naturall,

temporall, spirituall\_, &c.

OBS. 11.--The learner should observe that some letters incline much to a

duplication, while gome others are doubled but seldom, and some, never.

Thus, among the vowels, \_ee\_ and \_oo\_ occur frequently; \_aa\_ is used

sometimes; \_ii\_, never--except in certain Latin words, (wherein the vowels

are separately uttered,) such as \_Horatii, Veii, iidem, genii\_. Again, the

doubling of \_u\_ is precluded by the fact that we have a distinct letter

called \_Double-u\_, which was made by joining two Vees, or two Ues, when the

form for \_u\_ was \_v\_. So, among the consonants, \_f, l, and s\_, incline more

to duplication, than any others. These letters are double, not only at the

end of those monosyllables which have but one vowel, as \_staff, mill,

pass\_; but also under some other circumstances. According to general

usage, final \_f\_ is doubled after a single vowel, in almost all cases; as

in \_bailiff, caitiff, plaintiff, midriff, sheriff, tariff, mastiff\_: yet

not in \_calif\_, which is perhaps better written \_caliph\_. Final \_l\_, as may

be seen by Rule 8th, admits not now of a duplication like this; but, by the

exceptions to Rule 4th, it is frequently doubled when no other consonant

would be; as in \_travelling, grovelling\_; unless, (contrary to the opinion

of Lowth, Walker, and Webster,) we will have \_fillipping, gossipping\_, and

\_worshipping\_, to be needful exceptions also.

OBS. 12.--Final \_s\_ sometimes occurs single, as in \_alas, atlas, bias\_; and

especially in Latin words, as \_virus, impetus\_; and when it is added to

form plurals, as \_verse, verses\_: but this letter, too, is generally

doubled at the end of primitive words of more than one syllable; as in

\_carcass, compass, cuirass, harass, trespass, embarrass\_. On the contrary,

the other consonants are seldom doubled, except when they come under Rule

3d. The letter \_p\_, however, is commonly doubled, in some words, even when

it forms a needless exception to Rule 4th; as in the derivatives from

\_fillip, gossip\_, and perhaps also \_worship\_. This letter, too, was very

frequently doubled in Greek; whence we have, from the name of Philip of

Macedon, the words \_Philippic\_ and \_Philippize\_, which, if spelled

according to our rule for such derivatives, would, like \_galloped\_ and

\_galloper, siruped\_ and \_sirupy\_, have but one \_p\_. We find them so written

in some late dictionaries. But if \_fillipped, gossipped\_, and \_worshipped\_,

with the other derivatives from the same roots, are just and necessary

exceptions to Rule 4th, (which I do not admit,) so are these; and for a

much stronger reason, as the classical scholar will think. In our language,

or in words purely English, the letters \_h, i, j, k, q, v, w, x\_, and \_y\_,

are, properly speaking, never doubled. Yet, in the forming of \_compounds\_,

it may possibly happen, that two Aitches, two Kays, or even two Double-ues

or Wies, shall come together; as in \_withhold, brickkiln, slowwoorm,

bayyarn\_.

OBS. 13.--There are some words--as those which come from \_metal, medal,

coral, crystal, argil, axil, cavil, tranquil, pupil, papil\_--in which the

classical scholar is apt to violate the analogy of English derivation, by

doubling the letter \_l\_, because he remembers the \_ll\_ of their foreign

roots, or their foreign correspondents. But let him also remember, that, if

a knowledge of etymology may be shown by spelling metallic, metalliferous,

metallography, metallurgic, metallurgist, metallurgy, medallic, medallion,

crystallize, crystalline, argillous, argillaceous, axillar, axillary,

cavillous, cavillation, papillate, papillous, papillary, tranquillity, and

pupillary, with double \_l\_, ignorance of it must needs be implied in

spelling metaline, metalist, metaloid, metaloidal, medalist, coralaceous,

coraline, coralite, coralinite, coraloid, coraloidal, crystalite, argilite,

argilitic, tranquilize, and pupilage, in like manner. But we cannot well

double the \_l\_ in the former, and not in the latter words. Here is a choice

of difficulties. Etymology must govern orthography. But what etymology? our

own, or that which is foreign? If we say, both, they disagree; and the mere

English scholar cannot know when, or how far, to be guided by the latter.

If a Latin diminutive, as \_papilla\_ from \_papula\_ or \_papa, pupillus\_ from

\_pupus\_, or \_tranquillus\_ from \_trans\_ and \_quietus\_, happen to double an

\_l\_, must we forever cling to the reduplication, and that, in spite of our

own rules to the contrary? Why is it more objectionable to change

\_pupillaris\_ to \_pupilary\_, than \_pupillus\_ to \_pupil\_? or, to change

\_tranquillitas\_ to \_tranquility\_, than \_tranquillus\_ to \_tranquil\_? And

since \_papilous, pupilage\_, and \_tranquilize\_ are formed from the English

words, and not directly from the Latin, why is it not as improper to write

them with double \_l\_, as to write \_perilous, vassalage\_, and \_civilize\_, in

the same manner?

OBS. 14.--If the practice of the learned would allow us to follow the

English rule here, I should incline to the opinion, that all the words

which I have mentioned above, ought to be written with single \_l\_.

Ainsworth exhibits the Latin word for \_coral\_ in four forms, and the Greek

word in three. Two of the Latin and two of the Greek have the \_l\_ single;

the others double it. He also spells "\_coraliticus\_" with one \_l\_, and

defines it "A sort of white marble, called \_coraline\_." [120] The

Spaniards, from whose \_medalla\_, we have \_medal\_; whose \_argil\_[121] is

\_arcilla\_, from the Latin \_argilla\_; and to whose \_cavilar\_, Webster traces

\_cavil\_; in all their derivatives from these Latin roots, \_metallum\_,

metal--\_coralium, corallium, curalium\_, or \_corallum\_, coral--\_crystallus\_

or \_crystallum\_, crystal--\_pupillus\_, pupil--and \_tranquillus\_,

tranquil--follow their own rules, and write mostly with single \_l\_: as,

\_pupilero\_, a teacher; \_metalico\_, metalic; \_corolina\_ (\_fem\_.) coraline;

\_cristalino\_, crystaline; \_crystalizar\_, crystalize; \_traquilizar\_,

tranquilize; and \_tranquilidad\_, tranquility. And if we follow not ours,

when or how shall the English scholar ever know why we spell as we do? For

example, what can he make of the orthography of the following words, which

I copy from our best dictionaries: equip', eq'uipage; wor'ship,

wor'shipper;--peril, perilous; cavil, cavillous;[122]--libel, libellous;

quarrel, quarrelous;--opal, opaline; metal, metalline;[123]--coral,

coralliform; crystal, crystalform;--dial, dialist; medal,

medallist;--rascal, rascalion; medal, medallion;--moral, moralist,

morality; metal, metallist, metallurgy;--civil, civilize, civility;

tranquil, tranquillize, tranquillity;--novel, novelism, novelist, novelize;

grovel, grovelling, grovelled, groveller?

OBS. 15.--The second clause of Murray's or Walker's 5th Rule for spelling,

gives only a single \_l\_ to each of the derivatives above named.[124] But it

also treats in like manner many hundreds of words in which the \_l\_ must

certainly be doubled. And, as neither "the Compiler," nor any of his

copiers, have paid any regard to their own principle, neither their

doctrine nor their practice can be of much weight either way. Yet it is

important to know to what words the rule is, or is not, applicable. In

considering this vexatious question about the duplication of \_l\_, I was at

first inclined to admit that, whenever final \_l\_ has become single in

English by dropping the second \_l\_ of a foreign root, the word shall

resume the \_ll\_ in all derivatives formed from it by adding a termination

beginning with a vowel; as, \_beryllus, beryl, berylline\_. This would, of

course, double the \_l\_ in nearly all the derivatives from \_metal, medal\_,

&c. But what says Custom? She constantly doubles the \_l\_ in most of them;

but wavers in respect to some, and in a few will have it single. Hence the

difficulty of drawing a line by which we may abide without censure.

\_Pu'pillage\_ and \_pu'pillary\_, with \_ll\_, are according to \_Walker's

Rhyming Dictionary\_; but Johnson spells them \_pu'pilage\_ and \_pu'pilary\_,

with single \_l\_; and Walker, in his Pronouncing Dictionary, has \_pupilage\_

with one \_l\_, and \_pupillary\_ with two. Again: both Johnson's and the

Pronouncing Dictionary, give us \_medallist\_ and \_metallist\_ with \_ll\_, and

are sustained by Webster and others; but Walker, in his Rhyming Dictionary,

writes them \_medalist\_ and \_metalist\_, with single \_l\_, like \_dialist,

formalist, cabalist, herbalist\_, and twenty other such words. Further:

Webster doubles the \_l\_ in all the derivatives of \_metal, medal, coral,

axil, argil\_, and \_papil\_; but writes it single in all those of \_crystal,

cavil, pupil\_, and \_tranquil\_--except \_tranquillity\_.

OBS. 16.--Dr. Webster also attempts, or pretends, to put in practice the

hasty proposition of Walker, to spell with single \_l\_ all derivatives from

words ending in \_l\_ not under the accent. "No letter," says Walker, "seems

to be more frequently doubled improperly than \_l\_. Why we should write

\_libelling, levelling, revelling\_, and yet \_offering, suffering,

reasoning\_, I am totally at a loss to determine; and, unless \_l\_ can give a

better plea than any other letter in the alphabet, for being doubled in

this situation, I must, in the style of Lucian, in his trial of the letter

\_T\_, declare for an expulsion."--\_Rhyming Dict.\_, p. x. This rash

conception, being adopted by some men of still less caution, has wrought

great mischief in our orthography. With respect to words ending in \_el\_, it

is a good and sufficient reason for doubling the \_l\_, that the \_e\_ may

otherwise be supposed servile and silent. I have therefore made this

termination a general exception to the rule against doubling. Besides, a

large number of these words, being derived from foreign words in which the

\_l\_ was doubled, have a second reason for the duplication, as strong as

that which has often induced these same authors to double that letter, as

noticed above. Such are bordel, chapel, duel, fardel, gabel, gospel,

gravel, lamel, label, libel, marvel, model, novel, parcel, quarrel, and

spinel. Accordingly we find, that, in his work of expulsion, Dr. Webster

has not unfrequently contradicted himself, and conformed to usage, by

doubling the \_l\_ where he probably intended to write it single. Thus, in

the words bordeller, chapellany, chapelling, gospellary, gospeller,

gravelly, lamellate, lamellar, lamellarly, lamelliform, and spinellane, he

has written the \_l\_ double, while he has grossly corrupted many other

similar words by forbearing the reduplication; as, \_traveler, groveling,

duelist, marvelous\_, and the like. In cases of such difficulty, we can

never arrive at uniformity and consistency of practice, unless we resort to

\_principles\_, and such principles as can be made intelligible to the

\_English\_ scholar. If any one is dissatisfied with the rules and exceptions

which I have laid down, let him study the subject till he can furnish the

schools with better.

OBS. 17.--We have in our language a very numerous class of adjectives

ending in \_able\_ or \_ible\_, as \_affable, arable, tolerable, admissible,

credible, infallible\_, to the number of nine hundred or more. In respect to

the proper form and signification of some of these, there occurs no small

difficulty. \_Able\_ is a common English word, the meaning of which is much

better understood than its origin. Horne Tooke supposes it to have come

from the Gothic noun \_abal\_, signifying \_strength\_; and consequently avers,

that it "has nothing to do with the Latin adjective \_habilis, fit\_, or

\_able\_, from which our etymologists erroneously derive it."--\_Diversions of

Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 450. This I suppose the etymologists will dispute with

him. But whatever may be its true derivation, no one can well deny that

\_able\_, as a suffix, belongs most properly, if not exclusively, to \_verbs\_;

for most of the words formed by it, are plainly a sort of verbal

adjectives. And it is evident that this author is right in supposing that

English words of this termination, like the Latin verbals in \_bilis\_, have,

or ought to have, such a signification as may justify the name which he

gives them, of "\_potential passive adjectives\_;" a signification in which

the English and the Latin derivatives exactly correspond. Thus

\_dis'soluble\_ or \_dissolv'able\_ does not mean \_able to dissolve\_, but

\_capable of being dissolved\_; and \_divisible\_ or \_dividable\_ does not mean

\_able to divide\_, but \_capable of being divided\_.

OBS. 18.--As to the application of this suffix to nouns, when we consider

the signification of the words thus formed, its propriety may well be

doubted. It is true, however, that nouns do sometimes assume something of

the nature of verbs, so as to give rise to adjectives that are of a

participial character; such, for instance, as \_sainted, bigoted, conceited,

gifted, tufted\_. Again, of such as \_hard-hearted, good-natured,

cold-blooded\_, we have an indefinite number. And perhaps, upon the same

principle, the formation of such words as \_actionable, companionable,

exceptionable, marketable, merchantable, pasturable, treasonable\_, and so

forth, may be justified, if care be taken to use them in a sense analogous

to that of the real verbals. But, surely, the meaning which is commonly

attached to the words \_amicable, changeable, fashionable, favourable,

peaceable, reasonable, pleasurable, seasonable, suitable\_, and some others,

would never be guessed from their formation. Thus, \_suitable\_ means

\_fitting\_ or \_suiting\_, and not \_able to suit\_, or \_capable of being

suited\_.

OBS. 19.--Though all words that terminate in \_able\_, used as a suffix, are

properly reckoned derivatives, rather than compounds, and in the former

class the separate meaning of the parts united is much less regarded than

in the latter; yet, in the use of words of this formation, it would be well

to have some respect to the general analogy of their signification as

stated above; and not to make derivatives of the same fashion convey

meanings so very different as do some of these. Perhaps it is from some

general notion of their impropriety, that several words of this doubtful

character have already become obsolete, or are gradually falling into

disuse: as, \_accustomable, chanceable, concordable, conusable, customable,

behoovable, leisurable, medicinable, personable, powerable, razorable,

shapable, semblable, vengeable, veritable\_. Still, there are several

others, yet currently employed, which might better perhaps, for the same

reason, give place to more regular terms: as, \_amicable\_, for \_friendly\_ or

\_kind\_; \_charitable\_, for \_benevolent\_ or \_liberal\_; \_colourable\_, for

\_apparent\_ or \_specious\_; \_peaceable\_, for \_peaceful\_ or \_unhostile\_;

\_pleasurable\_, for \_pleasing\_ or \_delightful\_; \_profitable\_, for \_gainful\_

or \_lucrative\_; \_sociable\_, for \_social\_ or \_affable\_; \_reasonable\_, for

\_rational\_ or \_just\_.

OBS. 20.--In respect to the orthography of words ending in \_able\_ or

\_ible\_, it is sometimes difficult to determine which of these endings ought

to be preferred; as whether we ought to write \_tenable\_ or \_tenible,

reversable\_ or \_reversible, addable\_ or \_addible\_. In Latin, the

termination is \_bilis\_, and the preceding vowel is determined by the

\_conjugation\_ to which the verb belongs. Thus, for verbs of the first

conjugation, it is \_a\_; as, from \_arare\_, to plough, \_arabilis, arable\_,

tillable. For the second conjugation, it is \_i\_; as, from \_doc=ere\_, to

teach, \_docibilis\_, or \_docilis, docible\_ or \_docile\_, teachable. For the

third conjugation, it is \_i\_; as, from \_vend=ere\_, to sell, \_vendibilis,

vendible\_, salable. And, for the fourth conjugation, it is \_i\_; as, from

\_sepelire\_, to bury, \_sepelib~ilis, sep'elible\_,[125] buriable. But from

\_solvo\_ and \_volvo\_, of the third conjugation, we have \_ubilis, uble\_; as,

\_solubilis, sol'uble\_, solvible or solvable; \_volubilis, vol'uble\_,

rollable. Hence the English words, \_rev'oluble, res'oluble, irres'oluble,

dis'soluble, indis'soluble\_, and \_insol'uble\_. Thus the Latin verbals in

\_bilis\_, are a sufficient guide to the orthography of all such words as are

traceable to them; but the mere English scholar cannot avail himself of

this aid; and of this sort of words we have a much greater number than were

ever known in Latin. A few we have borrowed from the French: as, \_tenable,

capable, preferable, convertible\_; and these we write as they are written

in French. But the difficulty lies chiefly in those which are of English

growth. For some of them are formed according to the model of the Latin

verbals in \_ibilis\_; as \_forcible, coercible, reducible, discernible\_; and

others are made by simply adding the suffix \_able\_; as \_traceable,

pronounceable, manageable, advisable, returnable\_. The last are purely

English; and yet they correspond in form with such as come from Latin

verbals in \_abilis\_.

OBS. 21.--From these different modes of formation, with the choice of

different roots, we have sometimes two or three words, differing in

orthography and pronunciation, but conveying the same meaning; as,

\_divis'ible\_ and \_divi'dable, des'picable\_ and \_despi'sable, ref'erable\_

and \_refer'rible, mis'cible\_ and \_mix'able, dis'soluble, dissol'vible\_, and

\_dissol'vable\_. Hence, too, we have some words which seem to the mere

English scholar to be spelled in a very contradictory manner, though each,

perhaps, obeys the law of its own derivation; as, \_peaceable\_ and

\_forcible, impierceable\_ and \_coercible, marriageable\_ and \_corrigible,

damageable\_ and \_eligible, changeable\_ and \_tangible, chargeable\_ and

\_frangible, fencible\_ and \_defensible, pref'erable\_ and \_referrible,

conversable\_ and \_reversible, defendable\_ and \_descendible, amendable\_ and

\_extendible, bendable\_ and \_vendible, dividable\_ and \_corrodible,

returnable\_ and \_discernible, indispensable\_ and \_responsible, advisable\_

and \_fusible, respectable\_ and \_compatible, delectable\_ and \_collectible,

taxable\_ and \_flexible\_.

OBS. 22.--The American editor of the \_Red Book\_, to whom all these apparent

inconsistencies seemed real blunders, has greatly exaggerated this

difficulty in our orthography, and charged Johnson and Walker with having

written all these words and many more, in this contradictory manner,

"\_without any apparent reason\_!" He boldly avers, that, "The perpetual

contradictions of the same or like words, \_in all the books\_, show that the

authors had no distinct ideas of what is right, and what is wrong;" and

ignorantly imagines, that, "The use of \_ible\_ rather than \_able, in any

case\_, originated in the necessity of keeping the soft sound of \_c\_ and

\_g\_, in the derivatives; and if \_ible was confined\_ to that use, it would

be an easy and simple rule."--\_Red Book\_, p. 170. Hence, he proposes to

write \_peacible\_ for \_peaceable, tracible\_ for \_traceable, changible\_ for

\_changeable, managible\_ for \_manageable\_; and so for all the rest that come

from words ending in \_ce\_ or \_ge\_. But, whatever advantage there might be

in this, his "easy and simple rule" would work a revolution for which the

world is not yet prepared. It would make \_audible audable, fallible

fallable, feasible feasable, terrible terrable, horrible horrable\_, &c. No

tyro can spell in a worse manner than this, even if he have no rule at all.

And those who do not know enough of Latin grammar to profit by what I have

said in the preceding observation, may console themselves with the

reflection, that, in spelling these difficult words entirely by guess, they

will not miss the way more than some have done who pretended to be critics.

The rule given by John Burn, for \_able\_ and \_ible\_, is less objectionable;

but it is rendered useless by the great number of its exceptions.

OBS. 23.--As most of the rules for spelling refer to the final letters of

our primitive words, it may be proper for the learner to know and remember,

that not all the letters of the alphabet can assume that situation, and

that some of them terminate words much more frequently than others. Thus,

in Walker's Rhyming Dictionary, the letter \_a\_ ends about 220 words; \_b\_,

160; \_c\_, 450; \_d\_, 1550; \_e\_, 7000; \_f\_, 140; \_g\_, 280; \_h\_, 400; \_i\_, 29;

\_j\_, none; \_k\_, 550; \_l\_, 1900; \_m\_, 550; \_n\_, 3300; \_o\_, 200; \_p\_, 450;

\_q\_, none; \_r\_, 2750; \_s\_, 3250; \_t\_, 3100; \_u\_, 14; \_v\_, none; \_w\_, 200;

\_x\_, 100; \_y\_, 5000; \_z\_, 5. We have, then, three consonants, \_j, q\_, and

\_v\_, which never end a word. And why not? With respect to \_j\_ and \_v\_, the

reason is plain from their history. These letters were formerly identified

with \_i\_ and \_u\_, which are not terminational letters. The vowel \_i\_ ends

no pure English word, except that which is formed of its own capital \_I\_;

and the few words which end with \_u\_ are all foreign, except \_thou\_ and

\_you\_. And not only so, the letter \_j\_ is what was formerly called \_i

consonant\_; and \_v\_ is what was called \_u consonant\_. But it was the

initial \_i\_ and \_u\_, or the \_i\_ and \_u\_ which preceded an other vowel, and

not those which followed one, that were converted into the consonants \_j\_

and \_v\_. Hence, neither of these letters ever ends any English word, or is

ever doubled. Nor do they unite with other consonants before or after a

vowel: except that \_v\_ is joined with \_r\_ in a few words of French origin,

as \_livre, manoeuvre\_; or with \_l\_ in some Dutch names, as \_Watervleit. Q\_

ends no English word, because it is always followed by \_u\_. The French

termination \_que\_, which is commonly retained in \_pique, antique, critique,

opaque, oblique, burlesque\_, and \_grotesque\_, is equivalent to \_k\_; hence

we write \_packet, lackey, checker, risk, mask\_, and \_mosk\_, rather than

\_paquet, laquey, chequer, risque, masque\_, and \_mosque\_. And some authors

write \_burlesk\_ and \_grotesk\_, preferring \_k\_ to \_que\_.

OBS. 24.--Thus we see that \_j, q\_, and \_v\_, are, for the most part, initial

consonants only. Hence there is a harshness, if not an impropriety, in that

syllabication which some have recently adopted, wherein they accommodate to

the ear the division of such words as \_maj-es-ty, proj-ect,

traj-ect,--eq-ui-ty, liq-ui-date, ex-cheq-uer\_. But \_v\_, in a similar

situation, has now become familiar; as in \_ev-er-y, ev-i-dence\_: and it may

also stand with \_l\_ or \_r\_, in the division of such words as \_solv-ing\_ and

\_serv-ing\_. Of words ending in \_ive\_, Walker exhibits four hundred and

fifty--exactly the same number that he spells with \_ic\_. And Horne Tooke,

who derives \_ive\_ from the Latin \_ivus\_, (q. d. \_vis\_,) and \_ic\_ from the

Greek [Greek: \_ikos\_], (q. d. [Greek: \_ischus\_]) both implying \_power\_, has

well observed that there is a general correspondence of meaning between

these two classes of adjectives--both being of "a potential active

signification; as \_purgative, vomitive, operative\_, &c.; \_cathartic,

emetic, energetic\_, &c."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 445. I have

before observed, that Tooke spelled all this latter class of words without

the final \_k\_; but he left it to Dr. Webster to suggest the reformation of

striking the final \_e\_ from the former.

OBS. 25.--In Dr. Webster's "Collection of Essays and \_Fugitiv Peeces\_,"

published in 1790, we find, among other equally ingenious improvements of

our orthography, a general omission of the final \_e\_ in all words ending in

\_ive\_, or rather of all words ending in \_ve\_, preceded by a short vowel;

as, "\_primitiv, derivativ, extensiv, positiv, deserv, twelv, proov, luv,

hav, giv, liv\_." This mode of spelling, had it been adopted by other

learned men, would not only have made \_v\_ a very frequent final consonant,

but would have placed it in an other new and strange predicament, as being

subject to reduplication. For he that will write \_hav, giv\_, and \_liv\_,

must also, by a general rule of grammar, write \_havving, givving\_, and

\_livving\_. And not only so, there will follow also, in the solemn style of

the Bible, a change of \_givest, livest, giveth\_, and \_liveth\_, into

\_givvest, livvest, givveth\_, and \_livveth\_. From all this it may appear,

that a silent final \_e\_ is not always quite so useless a thing as some may

imagine. With a levity no less remarkable, does the author of the \_Red

Book\_ propose at once two different ways of reforming the orthography of

such words as \_pierceable, manageable\_, and so forth; in one of which, the

letter \_j\_ would be brought into a new position, and subjected sometimes to

reduplication. "It would be a useful improvement to change this \_c\_ into

\_s\_, and \_g\_ into \_j\_;" as, \_piersable, manajable\_, &c. "Or they might

assume \_i\_;" as, \_piercibe, managible\_, &c.--\_Red Book\_, p. 170. Now would

not this "useful improvement" give us such a word as \_allejjable\_? and

would not one such monster be more offensive than all our present

exceptions to Rule 9th? Out upon all such tampering with orthography!

OBS. 26.--If any thing could arrest the folly of innovators and dabbling

reformers, it would be the history of former attempts to effect

improvements similar to theirs. With this sort of history every one would

do well to acquaint himself, before he proceeds to disfigure words by

placing their written elements in any new predicament. If the orthography

of the English language is ever reduced to greater regularity than it now

exhibits, the reformation must be wrought by those who have no disposition

either to exaggerate its present defects, or to undertake too much. Regard

must be had to the origin, as well as to the sounds, of words. To many

people, all silent letters seem superfluous; and all indirect modes of

spelling, absurd. Hence, as the learner may perceive, a very large

proportion of the variations and disputed points in spelling, are such as

refer to the silent letters, which are retained by some writers and omitted

by others. It is desirable that such as are useless and irregular should be

always omitted; and such as are useful and regular always retained. The

rules which I have laid down as principles of discrimination, are such as

almost every reader will know to be generally true, and agreeable to

present usage, though several of them have never before been printed in any

grammar. Their application will strike out some letters which are often

written, and retain some which are often omitted; but, if they err on

either hand, I am confident they err less than any other set of rules ever

yet formed for the same purpose. Walker, from whom Murray borrowed his

rules for spelling, declares for an expulsion of the second \_l\_ from

\_traveller, gambolled, grovelling, equalling, cavilling\_, and all similar

words; seems more willing to drop an \_l\_ from \_illness, stillness,

shrillness, fellness\_, and \_drollness\_, than to retain both in \_smallness,

tallness, chillness, dullness\_, and \_fullness\_; makes it one of his

orthographical aphorisms, that, "Words taken into composition often drop

those letters which were superfluous in their simples; as, \_Christmas,

dunghil, handful\_;" and, at the same time, chooses rather to restore the

silent \_e\_ to the ten derivatives from \_move\_ and \_prove\_, from which

Johnson dropped it, than to drop it from the ten similar words in which

that author retained it! And not only so, he argues against the principle

of his own aphorism; and says, "It is certainly to be feared that, if this

pruning of our words of all the superfluous letters, as they are called,

should be much farther indulged, we shall quickly antiquate our most

respectable authors, and irreparably maim our language."--\_Walker's Rhyming

Dict.\_, p. xvii.

OBS. 27.--No attempt to subject our orthography to a system of phonetics,

seems likely to meet with general favour, or to be free from objection, if

it should. For words are not mere sounds, and in their \_orthography\_ more

is implied than in \_phonetics\_, or \_phonography\_. Ideographic forms have,

in general, the advantage of preserving the identity, history, and lineage

of words; and these are important matters in respect to which phonetic

writing is very liable to be deficient. Dr. Johnson, about a century ago,

observed, "There have been many schemes offered for the emendation and

settlement of our orthography, which, like that of other nations, being

formed by chance, or according to the fancy of the earliest writers in rude

ages, was at first very various and uncertain, and [is] as yet sufficiently

irregular. Of these reformers some have endeavoured to accommodate

orthography better to the pronunciation, without considering that this is

to measure by a shadow, to take that for a model or standard which is

changing while they apply it. Others, less absurdly indeed, but with equal

unlikelihood of success, have endeavoured to proportion the number of

letters to that of sounds, that every sound may have its own character, and

every character a single sound. Such would be the orthography of a new

language to be formed by a synod of grammarians upon principles of science.

But who can hope to prevail on nations to change their practice, and make

all their old books useless? or what advantage would a new orthography

procure equivalent to the confusion and perplexity of such an

alteration?"--\_Johnson's Grammar before Quarto Dict.\_, p. 4.

OBS. 28.--Among these reformers of our alphabet and orthography, of whose

schemes he gives examples, the Doctor mentions, first, "\_Sir Thomas Smith\_,

secretary of state to Queen Elizabeth, a man of real learning, and much

practised in grammatical disquisitions;" who died in 1597;--next, "\_Dr.

Gill\_, the celebrated master of St. Paul's School in London;" who died in

1635;--then, "\_Charles Butler\_, a man who did not want an understanding

which might have qualified him for better employment;" who died in

1647;--and, lastly, "\_Bishop Wilkins\_, of Chester, a learned and ingenious

critic, who is said to have proposed his scheme, without expecting to be

followed;" he died in 1672.

OBS. 29.--From this time, there was, so far as I know, no noticeable

renewal of such efforts, till about the year 1790, when, as it is shown

above on page 134 of my Introduction, \_Dr. Webster\_, (who was then only

"\_Noah Webster, Jun.\_, attorney at law,") attempted to spell all words as

they are spoken, without revising the alphabet--a scheme which his

subsequent experience before many years led him to abandon. Such a

reformation was again attempted, about forty years after, by an other young

lawyer, the late lamented \_Thomas S. Grimke\_, of South Carolina, but with

no more success. More recently, phonography, or phonetic writing, has been

revived, and to some extent spread, by the publications of \_Isaac Pitman\_,

of Bath, England, and of \_Dr. Andrew Comstock\_, of Philadelphia. The system

of the former has been made known in America chiefly by the lectures and

other efforts of \_Andrews and Boyle\_, of \_Dr. Stone\_, a citizen of Boston,

and of \_E. Webster\_, a publisher in Philadelphia.

OBS. 30.--The

pronunciation of words being evidently as deficient in regularity, in

uniformity, and in stability, as is their orthography, if not more so,

cannot be conveniently made the measure of their written expression.

Concerning the principle of writing and printing by sounds alone, a recent

writer delivers his opinion thus: "Let me here observe, as something not

remote from our subject, but, on the contrary, directly bearing upon it,

that I can conceive no [other] method of so effectually defacing and

barbarizing our English tongue, no [other] scheme that would go so far to

empty it, practically at least and for us, of all the hoarded wit, wisdom,

imagination, and history which it contains, to cut the vital nerve which

connects its present with the past, as the introduction of the scheme of

'phonetic spelling,' which some have lately been zealously advocating among

us; the principle of which is, that all words should be spelt according as

they are sounded, that the writing should be, in every case, subordinated

to the speaking. The tacit assumption that it ought so to be, is the

pervading error running through the whole system."--\_R. C. Trench, on the

Study of Words\_, p. 177.

OBS. 31.--The phonographic system of stenography, tachygraphy, or

short-hand writing, is, I incline to believe, a very great improvement upon

the earlier methods. It is perhaps the most reliable mode of taking down

speeches, sermons, or arguments, during their delivery, and reporting them

for the press; though I cannot pronounce upon this from any experience of

my own in the \_practice\_ of the art. And it seems highly probable, if it

has not been fully proved, that children may at first be taught to read

more readily, and with better articulation, from phonetic print, or

\_phonotypy\_, as it has been called, than from books that exhibit words in

their current or established orthography. But still it is questionable

whether it is not best for them to learn each word at first by its peculiar

or ideographic form--the form in which they must ultimately learn to read

it, and which indeed constitutes its only \_orthography\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS IN SPELLING.

UNDER RULE I.--OF FINAL F, L, OR S.

"He wil observe the moral law, in hiz conduct."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p.

320.

[FORMULES--1. Not proper, because the word "\_wil\_" is here spelled with one

\_l\_. But, according to Rule 1st, "Monosyllables ending in \_f, l\_, or \_s\_,

preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant." Therefore, this

\_l\_ should be doubled; thus, \_will\_.

2. Not proper again, because the word "\_hiz\_" is here spelled with \_z\_.

But, according to the exceptions to Rule 1st, "The words \_as, gas, has,

was, yes, his\_, &c., are written with single \_s\_." Therefore, this \_z\_

should be \_s\_; thus, \_his\_.]

"A clif is a steep bank, or a precipitous rock."--See \_Rhyming Dict.\_ "A

needy man's budget is ful of schemes."--\_Old Adage\_. "Few large

publications in this country wil pay a printer."--\_Noah Webster's Essays\_,

p. x. "I shal, with cheerfulness, resign my other papers to

oblivion."--\_Ib.\_, p. x. "The proposition waz suspended til the next

session of the legislature."--\_Ib.\_, p. 362. "Tenants for life wil make the

most of lands for themselves."--\_Ib.\_, p. 366. "While every thing iz left

to lazy negroes, a state wil never be wel cultivated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367. "The

heirs of the original proprietors stil hold the soil."--\_Ib.\_, p. 349. "Say

my annual profit on money loaned shal be six per cent."--\_Ib.\_, p. 308. "No

man would submit to the drudgery of business, if he could make money az

fast by lying stil."--\_Ib.\_, p. 310. "A man may az wel feed himself with a

bodkin, az with a knife of the present fashion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 400. "The

clothes wil be ill washed, the food wil be badly cooked; and you wil be

ashamed of your wife, if she iz not ashamed of herself."--\_Ib.\_, p. 404.

"He wil submit to the laws of the state, while he iz a member of

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 320. "But wil our sage writers on law forever think by

tradition?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 318. "Some stil retain a sovereign power in their

territories."--\_Ib.\_, p. 298. "They sel images, prayers, the sound of bels,

remission of sins, &c."--\_Perkins's Theology\_, p. 401. "And the law had

sacrifices offered every day for the sins of al the people."--\_Ib.\_, p.

406. "Then it may please the Lord, they shal find it to be a

restorative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 420. "Perdition is repentance put of til a future

day."--\_Old Maxim\_. "The angels of God, which wil good and cannot wil evil,

have nevertheless perfect liberty of wil."--\_Perkins's Theology\_, p. 716.

"Secondly, this doctrine cuts off the excuse of al sin."--\_Ib.\_, p. 717.

"Knel, the sound of a bell rung at a funeral."--\_Johnson\_ and \_Walker\_.

"If gold with dros or grain with chaf you find,

Select--and leave the chaf and dros behind."--\_Author\_.

UNDER RULE II.--OF OTHER FINALS.

"The mobb hath many heads, but no brains."--\_Old Maxim\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_mobb\_" is here spelled with

double \_b\_. But, according to Rule 2d, "Words ending in any other consonant

than \_f, l\_, or \_s\_, do not double the final letter." Therefore, this \_b\_

should be single: thus, \_mob\_.]

"Clamm, to clog with any glutinous or viscous matter."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

"Whurr, to pronounce the letter \_r\_ with too much force."--\_Ib.\_ "Flipp, a

mixed liquor, consisting of beer and spirits sweetened."--\_Ib.\_ "Glynn, a

hollow between two mountains, a glen."--\_Churchill's Grammar\_, p. 22.

"Lamm, to beat soundly with a cudgel or bludgeon."--\_Walker's Dict.\_ "Bunn,

a small cake, a simnel, a kind of sweet bread."--See \_ib.\_ "Brunett, a

woman with a brown complexion."--\_Ib.\_ and \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "Wad'sett, an

ancient tenure or lease of land in the Highlands of Scotland."--\_Webster's

Dict.\_ "To \_dodd\_ sheep, is to cut the wool away about their tails."--\_Ib.\_

"\_In aliquem arietare\_, CIC. To run full but at one."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 95. "Neither your policy nor your temper would permitt you

to kill me."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 427. "And admitt none but

his own offspring to fulfill them."--\_Ib.\_, i, 437. "The summ of all this

Dispute is, that some make them Participles," &c.--\_Johnson's Gram.\_

\_Com.\_, p. 352. "As, the \_whistling\_ of winds, the \_buz\_ and \_hum\_ of

insects, the \_hiss\_ of serpents, the \_crash\_ of falling timber."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 129; \_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 247; \_Gould's\_, 238. "Vann, to

winnow, or a fan for winnowing."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_ "Creatures that

buz, are very commonly such as will sting."--\_Author\_ "Begg, buy, or

borrow; butt beware how you find."--\_Id.\_ "It is better to have a house to

lett, than a house to gett."--\_Id.\_ "Let not your tongue cutt your

throat."--\_Old Precept\_. "A little witt will save a fortunate man."--\_Old

Adage\_. "There is many a slipp 'twixt the cup and the lipp."--\_Id.\_

"Mothers' darlings make but milksopp heroes."--\_Id.\_ "One eye-witness is

worth tenn hearsays."--\_Id.\_

"The judge shall jobb, the bishop bite the town,

And mighty dukes pack cards for half a crown."--POPE:

\_in Joh. Dict., w. Pack.\_

UNDER RULE III.--OF DOUBLING.

"Friz, to curl; frized, curled; frizing, curling."--\_Webster's Dict.\_, 8vo.

Ed. of 1829.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the words "\_frized\_" and "\_frizing\_" are here

spelled with the single \_z\_, of their primitive \_friz\_. But, according to

Rule 3d, "Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, when they

end with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double their final

consonant before an additional syllable that begins with a vowel."

Therefore, this \_z\_ should be doubled; thus, \_frizzed, frizzing\_.]

"The commercial interests served to foster the principles of

Whigism."--\_Payne's Geog.\_, Vol. ii, p. 511. "Their extreme indolence

shuned every species of labour."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, Vol. i, p. 341. "In

poverty and stripedness they attend their little meetings."--\_The Friend\_,

Vol. vii, p. 256. "In guiding and controling[126] the power you have thus

obtained."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 15. "I began, Thou beganest, He began;

We began, You began, They began."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 92. "Why does

\_began\_ change its ending; as, I began, Thou beganest?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 93.

"Truth and conscience cannot be controled by any methods of

coercion."--\_Hints on Toleration\_, p. xvi. "Dr. Webster noded, when he

wrote 'knit, kniter, and knitingneedle' without doubling the \_t\_."--See

\_El. Spelling-Book\_, 1st Ed., p. 136. "A wag should have wit enough to know

when other wags are quizing him."--\_G. Brown\_. "Bon'y, handsome, beautiful,

merry."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_ "Coquetish, practicing coquetry; after

the manner of a jilt."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Potage, a species of food, made

of meat and vegetables boiled to softness in water."--See \_ib.\_ "Potager,

from potage, a porringer, a small vessel for children's food."--See \_ib.\_,

and \_Worcester's\_. "Compromit, compromited, compromiting; manumit,

manumitted, manumitting."--\_Webster\_. "Inferible; that may be inferred or

deduced from premises."--\_Red Book\_, p. 228. "Acids are either solid,

liquid, or gaseous."--\_Gregory's Dict., art. Chemistry\_. "The spark will

pass through the interrupted space between the two wires, and explode the

gases."--\_Ib.\_ "Do we sound \_gases\_ and \_gaseous\_ like \_cases\_ and

\_caseous?\_ No: they are more like \_glasses\_ and \_osseous\_."--\_G. Brown\_. "I

shall not need here to mention \_Swiming\_, when he is of an age able to

learn."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 12. "Why do lexicographers spell \_thinnish\_

and \_mannish\_ with two Ens, and \_dimish\_ and \_ramish\_ with one Em,

each?"--See \_Johnson\_ and \_Webster\_. "\_Gas\_ forms the plural regularly,

\_gases\_."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 38. "Singular, Gas; Plural,

Gases."--\_S. W. Clark's Gram.\_, p. 47. "These are contractions from

\_sheded, bursted\_."--\_Hiley's Grammar\_, p. 45. "The Present Tense denotes

what is occuring at the present time."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 36, and p. 61.

"The verb ending in \_eth\_ is of the solemn or antiquated style; as, he

loveth, he walketh, he runeth."--\_P. Davis's Gram.\_, p. 34.

"Thro' freedom's sons no more remonstrance rings,

Degrading nobles and controling kings."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 292.

UNDER RULE IV.--NO DOUBLING.

"A bigotted and tyrannical clergy will be feared."--\_Brown's Estimate\_,

Vol. ii, p. 78.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the final \_t\_ of \_bigot\_ is here doubled in

"\_bigotted\_." But, according to Rule 4th, "A final consonant, when it is

not preceded by a single vowel, or when the accent is not on the last

syllable, should remain single before an additional syllable." Therefore,

this \_t\_ should be single; thus, \_bigoted\_.]

"Jacob worshipped his Creator, leaning on the top of his staff."--\_Key in

Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 185. "For it is all marvelously destitute of

interest."--\_Merchant's Criticisms\_. "As, box, boxes; church, churches;

lash, lashes; kiss, kisses; rebus, rebusses."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 12mo, p.

42. "Gossipping and lying go hand in hand."--\_Old Maxim\_. "The substance of

the Criticisms on the Diversions of Purley was, with singular industry,

gossipped by the present precious secretary of war, in Payne the

bookseller's shop."--See \_Key\_. "Worship makes worshipped, worshipper,

worshipping; gossip, gossipped, gossipper, gossipping; fillip, fillipped,

fillipper, fillipping."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 72. "I became as fidgetty as

a fly in a milk-jug."--\_Blackwood's Mag.\_, Vol. xl, p. 674. "That enormous

error seems to be rivetted in popular opinion."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p.

364. "Whose mind iz not biassed by personal attachments to a

sovereign."--\_Ib.\_, p. 318. "Laws against usury originated in a bigotted

prejudice against the Jews."--\_Ib.\_, p. 315. "The most criticcal period of

life iz usually between thirteen and seventeen."--\_Ib.\_, p. 388.

"Generallissimo, the chief commander of an army or military force."--See

\_El. Spelling-Book\_, p. 93. "Tranquillize, to quiet, to make calm and

peaceful."--\_Ib.\_, p. 133. "Pommeled, beaten, bruised; having pommels, as a

sword or dagger."--\_Webster\_ and \_Chalmers\_. "From what a height does the

jeweler look down upon his shoemaker!"--\_Red Book\_, p. 108. "You will have

a verbal account from my friend and fellow traveler."--\_Ib.\_, p. 155. "I

observe that you have written the word \_counseled\_ with one \_l\_

only."--\_Ib.\_, p. 173. "They were offended at such as combatted these

notions."--\_Robertson's America\_, Vol. ii, p. 437. "From libel, come

libeled, libeler, libeling, libelous; from grovel, groveled, groveler,

groveling; from gravel, graveled and graveling."--See \_Webster's Dict.\_

"Wooliness, the state of being woolly."--\_Ib.\_ "Yet he has spelled

chappelling, bordeller, medallist, metalline, metallist, metallize,

clavellated, &c. with \_ll\_, contrary to his rule."--\_Cobb's Review of

Webster\_, p. 11. "Again, he has spelled cancelation and snively with single

\_l\_, and cupellation, pannellation, wittolly, with \_ll\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Oilly,

fatty, greasy, containing oil, glib."--\_Rhyming Dict.\_ "Medallist, one

curious in medals; Metallist, one skilled in metals."--\_Johnson, Webster,

Worcester, Cobb, et al.\_ "He is benefitted."--\_Town's Spelling-Book\_, p. 5.

"They traveled for pleasure."--\_S. W. Clark's Gram.\_, p. 101.

"Without you, what were man? A groveling herd,

In darkness, wretchedness, and want enchain'd."

--\_Beattie's Minstrel\_, p. 40.

UNDER RULE V.--OF FINAL CK.

"He hopes, therefore, to be pardoned by the critick."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_,

p. 10.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_critick\_" is here spelled with a

final \_k\_. But, according to Rule 5th, "Monosyllables and English verbs end

not with \_c\_, but take \_ck\_ for double \_c\_; as, rack, wreck, rock, attack:

but, in general, words derived from the learned languages need not the \_k\_,

and common use discards it." Therefore, this \_k\_ should be omitted; thus,

\_critic\_.]

"The leading object of every publick speaker should be to

persuade."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 153. "May not four feet be as poetick

as five; or fifteen feet, as poetick as fifty?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 146. "Avoid all

theatrical trick and mimickry, and especially all scholastick

stiffness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 154. "No one thinks of becoming skilled in dancing,

or in musick, or in mathematicks, or logick, without long and close

application to the subject."--\_Ib.\_, p. 152. "Caspar's sense of feeling,

and susceptibility of metallick and magnetick excitement were also very

extraordinary."--\_Ib.\_, p. 238. "Authorship has become a mania, or, perhaps

I should say, an epidemick."--\_Ib.\_, p. 6. "What can prevent this republick

from soon raising a literary standard?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. "Courteous reader,

you may think me garrulous upon topicks quite foreign to the subject before

me."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11. "Of the Tonick, Subtonick, and Atoniek

elements."--\_Ib.\_, p. 15. "The subtonick elements are inferiour to the

tonicks in all the emphatick and elegant purposes of speech."--\_Ib.\_, p.

32. "The nine atonicks, and the three abrupt subtonicks cause an

interruption to the continuity of the syllabick impulse."--\_Ib.\_, p. 37.

"On scientifick principles, conjunctions and prepositions are but one part

of speech."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 120. "That some inferior animals should

be able to mimic human articulation, will not seem wonderful."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 2.

"When young, you led a life monastick,

And wore a vest ecelesiastick;

Now, in your age, you grow fantastick."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

UNDER RULE VI.--OF RETAINING.

"Fearlesness, exemption from fear, intrepidity."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_fearlesness\_" is here allowed to

drop one \_s\_ of \_fearless\_. But, according to Rule 6th, "Words ending with

any double letter, preserve it double before any additional termination not

beginning with the same letter." Therefore, the other \_s\_ should be

inserted; thus, \_fearlessness\_.]

"Dreadlesness; fearlesness, intrepidity, undauntedness."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

"Regardlesly, without heed; Regardlesness, heedlessness,

inattention."--\_Ib.\_ "Blamelesly, innocently; Blamlesness,

innocence."--\_Ib.\_ "That is better than to be flattered into pride and

carelesness."--TAYLOR: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "Good fortunes began to breed a proud

recklesness in them."--SIDNEY: \_ib.\_ "See whether he lazily and listlesly

dreams away his time."--LOCKE: \_ib.\_ "It may be, the palate of the soul is

indisposed by listlesness or sorrow."--TAYLOR: \_ib.\_ "Pitilesly, without

mercy; Pitilesness, unmercifulness."--\_Johnson\_. "What say you to such as

these? abominable, accordable, agreable, &c."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol.

ii, p. 432. "Artlesly; naturally, sincerely, without craft."--\_Johnson\_. "A

chilness, or shivering of the body, generally precedes a fever."--\_Murray's

Key\_, p. 167. "Smalness; littleness, minuteness, weakness."--\_Rhyming

Dict.\_ "Gall-less, a. free from gall or bitterness."--\_Webster's Dict.\_

"Talness; height of stature, upright length with comparative

slenderness."--See \_Johnson et al\_. "Wilful; stubborn, contumacious,

perverse, inflexible."--\_Id.\_ "He guided them by the skilfulness of his

hands."--\_Psal.\_ lxxviii, 72. "The earth is the Lord's and the fulness

thereof."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 172. "What is now, is but an amasment of

imaginary conceptions."--GLANVILLE: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "Embarrasment; perplexity,

entanglement."--See \_Littleton's Dict.\_ "The second is slothfulness,

whereby they are performed slackly and carelesly."--\_Perkins's Theology\_,

p. 729. "Instalment; induction into office; part of a large sum of money,

to be paid at a particular time."--See \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "Inthralment;

servitude, slavery."--\_Ib.\_

"I, who at some times spend, at others spare,

Divided between carelesness and care."--\_Pope\_.

UNDER RULE VII.--OF RETAINING.

"Shall, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 88; \_Ingersoll's\_, 136; \_Fisk's\_, 78; \_Jaudon's\_, 59; \_A.

Flint's\_, 42; \_Wright's\_, 90; \_Bullions's\_, 32.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_foretels\_" does not here retain

the double \_l\_ of \_tell\_. But, according to Rule 7th, "Words ending with

any double letter, preserve it double in all derivatives formed from them

by means of prefixes." Therefore, the other \_l\_ should be inserted; thus,

\_foretells\_.]

"There are a few compound irregular verbs, as \_befal, bespeak\_,

&c."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 46. "That we might frequently recal it to our

memory."--\_Calvin's Institutes\_, p. 112. "The angels exercise a constant

solicitude that no evil befal us."--\_Ib.\_, p. 107. "Inthral; to enslave, to

shackle, to reduce to servitude."--\_Walker's Dict.\_ "He makes resolutions,

and fulfils them by new ones."--\_Red Book\_, p. 138. "To enrol my humble

name upon the list of authors on Elocution."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 12.

"Forestal; to anticipate, to take up beforehand."--\_Walker's Rhym. Dict.\_

"Miscal; to call wrong, to name improperly."--\_Johnson\_. "Bethral; to

enslave, to reduce to bondage."--See \_id.\_ "Befal; to happen to, to come to

pass."--\_Rhym. Dict.\_ "Unrol; to open what is rolled or

convolved."--\_Johnson\_. "Counterrol; to keep copies of accounts to prevent

frauds."--See \_id.\_ "As Sisyphus uprols a rock, which constantly overpowers

him at the summit."--\_Author\_. "Unwel; not well, indisposed, not in good

health."--See \_Red Book\_, p. 336. "Undersel; to defeat by selling for less,

to sell cheaper than an other."--See \_id.\_, p. 332. "Inwal; to enclose or

fortify with a wall."--See \_id.\_, p. 295. "Twibil; an instrument with two

bills, or with a point and a blade; a pickaxe, a mattock, a halberd, a

battle-axe."--See \_Dict.\_ "What you miscal their folly, is their

care."--\_Dryden\_. "My heart will sigh when I miscal it so."--\_Shakspeare\_.

"But if the arrangement recal one set of ideas more readily than

another."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 130.

"'Tis done; and since 'tis done, 'tis past recal;

And since 'tis past recal, must be forgotten."--\_Dryden\_.

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF FINAL LL.

"The righteous is taken away from the evill to come."--\_Perkins's Works\_,

p. 417.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_evill\_" is here written with

final \_ll\_. But, according to Rule 8th, "Final \_ll\_ is peculiar to

monosyllables and their compounds, with the few derivatives formed from

such roots by prefixes; consequently, all other words that end in \_l\_, must

be terminated with a single \_l\_." Therefore, one \_l\_ should be here

omitted; thus, \_evil\_.]

"Patroll; to go the rounds in a camp or garrison, to march about and

observe what passes."--\_Webster's Amer. Dict.\_, 8vo. "Marshall; the chief

officer of arms, one who regulates rank and order."--See \_Bailey's Dict.\_

"Weevill; a destructive grub that gets among corn."--See \_Rhym. Dict.\_ "It

much excells all other studies and arts."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 217.

"It is essentiall to all magnitudes, to be in one place."--\_Perkins's

Works\_, p. 403. "By nature I was thy vassall, but Christ hath redeemed

me."--\_Ib.\_, p. 404. "Some, being in want, pray for temporall

blessings."--\_Ib.\_, p. 412. "And this the Lord doth, either in temporall or

spirituall benefits."--\_Ib.\_, p. 415. "He makes an idoll of them, by

setting his heart on them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 416. "This triall by desertion

serveth for two purposes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 420. "Moreover, this destruction is

both perpetuall and terrible."--\_Ib.\_, p. 726. "Giving to severall men

several gifts, according to his good pleasure."--\_Ib.\_, p. 731. "Untill; to

some time, place, or degree, mentioned."--See \_Red Book\_, p. 330. "Annull;

to make void, to nullify, to abrogate, to abolish." "Nitric acid combined

with argill, forms the nitrate of argill."--\_Gregory's Dict., art.

Chemistry\_.

"Let modest Foster, if he will, excell

Ten Metropolitans in preaching well."--\_Pope\_, p. 414.

UNDER RULE IX.--OF FINAL E.

"Adjectives ending in \_able\_ signify capacity; as, \_comfortable, tenable,

improvable\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 33.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_improveable\_" here retains the

final \_e\_ of \_improve\_. But, according to Rule 9th, "The final \_e\_ of a

primitive word is generally omitted before an additional termination

beginning with a vowel." Therefore, this \_e\_ should be omitted; thus,

\_improvable\_.]

"Their mildness and hospitality are ascribeable to a general administration

of religious ordinances."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 336. "Retrench as much as

possible without obscureing the sense."--\_James Brown's Amer. Gram.\_, 1821,

p. 11. "Changable, subject to change; Unchangeable, immutable."--\_Walker's

Rhym. Dict.\_ "Tameable, susceptive of taming; Untameable, not to be

tamed."--\_Ib.\_ "Reconcileable, Unreconcileable, Reconcileableness;

Irreconcilable, Irreconcilably, Irreconcilableness."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "We

have thought it most adviseable to pay him some little attention."--

\_Merchants Criticisms\_. "Proveable, that may be proved; Reprovable.

blameable, worthy of reprehension."--\_Walker's Dict.\_ "Moveable and

Immovable, Moveably and Immovably, Moveables and Removal, Moveableness and

Improvableness, Unremoveable and Unimprovable, Unremoveably and Removable,

Proveable and Approvable, Irreproveable and Reprovable, Unreproveable and

Improvable, Unimproveableness and Improvably."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "And with

this cruelty you are chargable in some measure yourself."--\_Collier's

Antoninus\_, p. 94. "Mothers would certainly resent it, as judgeing it

proceeded from a low opinion of the genius of their sex."--\_British Gram.,

Pref.\_, p. xxv. "Titheable, subject to the payment of tithes; Saleable,

vendible, fit for sale; Loseable, possible to be lost; Sizeable, of

reasonable bulk or size."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_ "When he began this

custom, he was puleing and very tender."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 8.

"The plate, coin, revenues, and moveables,

Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd."--\_Shak.\_

UNDER RULE X.--OF FINAL E.

"Diversly; in different ways, differently, variously."--\_Rhym. Dict.\_, and

\_Webster's\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_Diversly\_" here omits the final

\_e\_ of its primitive word, \_diverse\_. But, according to Rule 10th, "The

final \_e\_ of a primitive word is generally retained before an additional

termination beginning with a consonant." Therefore, this \_e\_ should be

retained; thus, \_Diversely\_.]

"The event thereof contains a wholsome instruction."--\_Bacon's Wisdom of

the Ancients\_, p. 17. "Whence Scaliger falsly concluded that articles were

useless."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 94. "The child that we have just seen

is wholesomly fed."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 187. "Indeed, falshood and

legerdemain sink the character of a prince."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 5.

"In earnest, at this rate of managment, thou usest thyself very

coarsly."--\_Ib.\_, p. 19. "To give them an arrangment and diversity, as

agreeable as the nature of the subject would admit"--\_Murray's Pref. to

Ex.\_, p. vi. "Alger's Grammar is only a trifling enlargment of Murray's

little Abridgment."--\_Author\_. "You ask whether you are to retain or omit

the mute \_e\_ in the word judgment, abridgment, acknowledgment, lodgment,

adjudgment, and prejudgment."--\_Red Book\_, p. 172. "Fertileness,

fruitfulness; Fertily, fruitfully, abundantly."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

"Chastly, purely, without contamination; Chastness, chastity,

purity."--\_Ib.\_, and \_Walker's\_. "Rhymster, \_n.\_ One who makes rhymes; a

versifier; a mean poet."--\_Johnson\_ and \_Webster\_. "It is therefore an

heroical achievment to dispossess this imaginary monarch."--\_Berkley's

Minute Philos.\_, p. 151. "Whereby, is not meant the Present Time, as he

imagins, but the Time Past."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 344 "So far is

this word from affecting the noun, in regard to its definitness, that its

own character of definitness or indefinitness, depends upon the name to

which it is prefixed."--\_Webster's Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 20.

"Satire, by wholsome Lessons, wou'd reclaim,

And heal their Vices to secure their Fame."

--\_Brightland's Gr.\_, p. 171.

UNDER RULE XI.--OF FINAL Y.

"Solon's the veryest fool in all the play."--\_Dryden, from Persius\_, p.

475.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_veryest\_" here retains the final

\_y\_ of its primitive \_very\_. But, according to Rule 13th, "The final \_y\_ of

a primitive word, when preceded by a consonant, is generally changed into

\_i\_ before an additional termination." Therefore, this \_y\_ should be

changed to \_i\_; thus, \_veriest\_.]

"Our author prides himself upon his great slyness and

shrewdness."--\_Merchant's Criticisms\_. "This tense, then, implys also the

signification of \_Debeo\_."--\_B. Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 300. "That may be

apply'd to a Subject, with respect to something accidental."--\_Ib.\_, p.

133. "This latter accompanys his Note with a distinction."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196.

"This Rule is defective, and none of the Annotators have sufficiently

supply'd it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 204. "Though the fancy'd Supplement of Sanctius,

Scioppius, Vossius, and Mariangelus, may take place."--\_Ib.\_, p. 276. "Yet

as to the commutableness of these two Tenses, which is deny'd likewise,

they are all one."--\_Ib.\_, p. 311. "Both these Tenses may represent a

Futurity implyed by the dependence of the Clause."--\_Ib.\_, p. 332. "Cry,

cries, crying, cried, crier, decrial; Shy, shyer, shyest, shyly, shyness;

Fly, flies, flying, flier, high-flier; Sly, slyer, slyest, slyly, slyness;

Spy, spies, spying, spied, espial; Dry, drier, driest, dryly,

dryness."--\_Cobb's Dict.\_ "Cry, cried, crying, crier, cryer, decried,

decrier, decrial; Shy, shyly, shily, shyness, shiness; Fly, flier, flyer,

high-flyer; Sly, slily, slyly, sliness, slyness; Ply, plyer, plying,

pliers, complied, compiler; Dry, drier, dryer, dryly, dryness."--\_Webster's

Dict.\_, 8vo. "Cry, crier, decrier, decrial; Shy, shily, shyly, shiness,

shyness; Fly, flier, flyer, high-flier; Sly, slily, slyly, sliness,

slyness; Ply, pliers, plyers, plying, complier; Dry, drier, dryer, dryly,

dryness."--\_Chalmers's Abridgement of Todd's Johnson\_. "I would sooner

listen to the thrumming of a dandyzette at her piano."--\_Kirkham's

Elocution\_, p. 24. "Send her away; for she cryeth after us."--\_Felton's

Gram.\_, p. 140. "IVYED, \_a.\_ Overgrown with ivy."--\_Todd's Dict.\_, and

\_Webster's\_.

"Some dryly plain, without invention's aid,

Write dull receipts how poems may be made."--\_Pope\_.

UNDER RULE XII.--OF FINAL Y.

"The gaiety of youth should be tempered by the precepts of age."--\_Mur.

Key\_, p. 175.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_gaiety\_" does not here retain the

final \_y\_ of the primitive word \_gay\_. But, according to Rule 12th, "The

final \_y\_ of a primitive word, when preceded by a vowel, should not be

changed into \_i\_ before an additional termination." Therefore, this \_y\_

should be retained; thus, \_gayety\_.]

"In the storm of 1703, two thousand stacks of chimnies were blown down, in

and about London."--See \_Red Book\_, p. 112. "And the vexation was not

abated by the hacknied plea of haste."--\_Ib.\_, p. 142. "The fourth sin of

our daies is lukewarmness."--\_Perkins's Works\_, p. 725. "God hates the

workers of iniquity, and destroies them that speak lies."--\_Ib.\_, p. 723.

"For, when he laies his hand upon us, we may not fret."--\_Ib.\_, p. 726.

"Care not for it; but if thou maiest be free, choose it rather."--\_Ib.\_, p.

736. "Alexander Severus saith, 'He that buieth, must sell: I will not

suffer buyers and sellers of offices.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 737. "With these

measures fell in all monied men."--SWIFT: \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "But rattling

nonsense in full vollies breaks."--POPE: \_ib., w. Volley\_. "Vallies are the

intervals betwixt mountains."--WOODWARD: \_ib.\_ "The Hebrews had fifty-two

journies or marches."--\_Wood's Dict.\_ "It was not possible to manage or

steer the gallies thus fastened together."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. ii,

p. 106. "Turkies were not known to naturalists till after the discovery of

America."--\_See Gregory's Dict.\_ "I would not have given it for a

wilderness of monkies."--See \_Key\_. "Men worked at embroidery, especially

in abbies."--\_Constable's Miscellany\_, Vol. xxi, p. 101. "By which all

purchasers or mortgagees may be secured of all monies they lay

out."--TEMPLE: \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "He would fly to the mines and the gallies

for his recreation."--SOUTH: \_Ib.\_

"Here pullies make the pond'rous oak ascend."--GAY: \_ib.\_

------------"You need my help, and you say,

Shylock, we would have monies."--SHAKSPEARE: \_ib.\_

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF IZE AND ISE.

"Will any able writer authorise other men to revise his works?"--\_Author.\_

[FORMULES.--1. Not proper, because the word "\_authorise\_" is here written

with \_s\_ in the last syllable, in stead of \_z\_. But, according to Rule

13th, "Words ending in \_ize\_ or \_ise\_ sounded alike, as in \_wise\_ and

\_size\_, generally take the \_z\_ in all such as are essentially formed by

means of the termination." Therefore, this \_s\_ should be \_z\_; thus,

\_authorize\_.

2. Not proper again, because the word "\_revize\_" is here written with \_z\_

in the last syllable, in lieu of \_s\_. But, according to Rule 13th, "Words

ending in \_ize\_ or \_ise\_ sounded alike, as in \_wise\_ and \_size\_, generally

take the \_s\_, in monosyllables, and all such as are essentially formed by

means of prefixes." Therefore, this \_z\_ should be \_s\_; thus, \_revise\_.]

"It can be made as strong and expressive as this Latinised

English."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 295. "Governed by the success or the

failure of an enterprize."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, pp. 128 and 259. "Who have

patronised the cause of justice against powerful oppressors."--\_Ib.\_, pp.

94 and 228; \_Merchant\_, p. 199. "Yet custom authorises this use of

it."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 148. "They surprize myself, \* \* \* and I even

think the writers themselves will be surprized."--\_Ib.\_, Pref., p. xi. "Let

the interest rize to any sum which can be obtained."--\_Webster's Essays\_,

p. 310. "To determin what interest shall arize on the use of

money."--\_Ib.\_, p. 313. "To direct the popular councils and check a rizing

opposition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 335. "Five were appointed to the immediate exercize

of the office."--\_Ib.\_, p. 340. "No man ever offers himself [as] a

candidate by advertizing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 344. "They are honest and economical,

but indolent, and destitute of enterprize."--\_Ib.\_, p. 347. "I would

however advize you to be cautious."--\_Ib.\_, p. 404. "We are accountable for

whatever we patronise in others."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 175. "After he was

baptised, and was solemnly admitted into the office."--\_Perkins's Works\_,

p. 732. "He will find all, or most of them, comprized in the

Exercises."--\_British Gram.\_, Pref., p. v. "A quick and ready habit of

methodising and regulating their thoughts."--\_Ib.\_, p. xviii. "To tyrannise

over the time and patience of his reader."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. iii.

"Writers of dull books, however, if patronised at all, are rewarded beyond

their deserts."--\_Ib.\_, p. v. "A little reflection, will show the reader

the propriety and the \_reason\_ for emphasising the words marked."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 163. "The English Chronicle contains an account of a surprizing

cure."--\_Red Book\_, p. 61. "Dogmatise, to assert positively; Dogmatizer, an

asserter, a magisterial teacher."--\_Chalmers's Dict.\_ "And their

inflections might now have been easily analysed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

Vol. i, p. 113. "Authorize, disauthorise, and unauthorized; Temporize,

contemporise, and extemporize."--\_Walkers Dict.\_ "Legalize, equalise,

methodise, sluggardize, womanise, humanize, patronise, cantonize,

gluttonise, epitomise, anatomize, phlebotomise, sanctuarise, characterize,

synonymise, recognise, detonize, colonise."--\_Ibid.\_

"This BEAUTY Sweetness always must comprize,

Which from the Subject, well express'd will rise."

--\_Brightland's Gr.\_, p. 164.

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"The glory of the Lord shall be thy rereward."--COMMON BIBLES: \_Isa.\_,

lviii, 8.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the compound word "\_rereward\_" has not here

the orthography of the two simple words \_rear\_ and \_ward\_, which compose

it. But, according to Rule 14th, "Compounds generally retain the

orthography of the simple words which compose them." And, the accent being

here unfixed, a hyphen is proper. Therefore, this word should be spelled

thus, \_rear-ward\_.]

"A mere vaunt-courier to announce the coming of his master."--\_Tooke's

Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 49. "The parti-coloured shutter appeared to come

close up before him."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 233. "When the day broke

upon this handfull of forlorn but dauntless spirits."--\_Ib.\_, p. 245. "If,

upon a plumbtree, peaches and apricots are ingrafted, no body will say they

are the natural growth of the plumbtree."--\_Berkley's Minute Philos.\_, p.

45. "The channel between Newfoundland and Labrador is called the Straits of

Bellisle."--\_Worcester's Gaz.\_ "There being nothing that more exposes to

Headach." [127]--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 6. "And, by a sleep, to say we

end the heartach."--SHAK.: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "He that sleeps, feels not the

toothach."--ID., \_ibid.\_ "That the shoe must fit him, because it fitted his

father and granfather."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 431. "A single

word, mispelt, in a letter, is sufficient to show, that you have received a

defective education."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 3. "Which mistatement the

committee attributed to a failure of memory."--\_Professors' Reasons\_, p.

14. "Then he went through the Banquetting-House to the scaffold."--

\_Smollett's England\_, Vol. iii, p. 345. "For the purpose of maintaining a

clergyman and skoolmaster."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 355. "They however knew

that the lands were claimed by Pensylvania."--\_Ib.\_, p. 357. "But if you

ask a reason, they immediately bid farewel to argument."--\_Red Book\_, p.

80. "Whom resist stedfast in the faith."--SCOTT: 1 \_Peter\_, v, 9. "And they

continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine."--\_Acts\_, ii, 42. "Beware

lest ye also fall from your own stedfastness."--\_2 Peter\_, iii, 17.

"\_Galiot\_, or \_galliott\_, a Dutch vessel, carrying a main-mast and a

mizen-mast."--\_Web. Dict.\_ "Infinitive, to overflow; Preterit, overflowed;

Participle, overflown."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, (1818,) p. 61. "After they

have mispent so much precious Time."--\_British Gram.\_, p. xv. "Some say,

two \_handsfull\_; some, two \_handfulls\_; and others, two \_handfull\_."--

\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 106. "Lapfull, as much as the lap can

contain."--\_Webster's Octavo Dict.\_ "Darefull, full of defiance."--

\_Walker's Rhym. Dict.\_ "The road to the blissfull regions, is as open to

the peasant as to the king."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 167. "Mis-spel is

\_mis-spell\_ in every Dictionary which I have seen."--\_Barnes's Red Book\_.

p. 303. "Downfal; ruin, calamity, fall from rank or state."--\_Johnson's

Dict.\_ "The whole legislature likewize acts az a court."--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 340. "It were better a milstone were hanged about his

neck."--\_Perkins's Works\_, p. 731. "Plum-tree, a tree that produces plums;

Hog-plumbtree, a tree."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Trisyllables ending in \_re\_ or

\_le\_, accent the first syllable."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 238.

"It happen'd on a summer's holiday,

That to the greenwood shade he took his way."

--\_Churchill's Gr.\_, p. 135.

UNDER RULE XV.--OF USAGE.

"Nor are the modes of the Greek tongue more uniform."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

112.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_modes\_" is here written for

\_moods\_, which is more common among the learned, and usually preferred by

Murray himself. But, according to Rule 15th, "Any word for the spelling of

which we have no rule but usage, is written wrong if not spelled according

to the usage which is most common among the learned." Therefore, the latter

form should be preferred; thus, \_moods\_, and not \_modes\_.]

"If we analize a conjunctive preterite, the rule will not appear to

hold."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 118. "No landholder would have been at that

expence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116. "I went to see the child whilst they were putting

on its cloaths."--\_Ib.\_, p. 125. "This stile is ostentatious, and doth not

suit grave writing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "The king of Israel, and Jehosophat the

king of Judah, sat each on his throne."--\_Mur. Gram.\_, p. 165, \_twice\_;

\_Merchant's\_, 89; \_Churchill's\_, 300. "The king of Israel, and Jehosaphat

the king of Judah, sat each on his throne."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 90;

\_Harrison's\_, 99; \_Churchill's\_, 138; \_Wright's\_, 148. "Lisias, speaking of

his friends, promised to his father, never to abandon them."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, Vol. ii, pp. 121 and 253. "Some, to avoid this errour, run into

it's opposite."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 199. "Hope, the balm of life,

sooths us under every misfortune."--\_Merchants Key\_, p. 204. "Any judgement

or decree might be heerd and reversed by the legislature."--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 340. "A pathetic harang wil skreen from punishment any

knave."--\_Ib.\_, p. 341. "For the same reezon, the wimen would be improper

judges."--\_Ibid.\_ "Every person iz indulged in worshiping az he

pleezes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 345. "Most or all teechers are excluded from genteel

company."--\_Ib.\_, p. 362. "The Kristian religion, in its purity, iz the

best institution on erth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 364. "Neether clergymen nor human

laws hav the leest authority over the conscience."--\_Ib.\_, p. 363. "A gild

is a society, fraternity, or corporation."--\_Red Book\_, p. 83. "Phillis was

not able to unty the knot, and so she cut it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. "An aker of

land is the quantity of one hundred and sixty perches."--\_Ib.\_, p. 93.

"Oker is a fossil earth combined with the oxid of some metal."--\_Ib.\_, p.

96. "\_Genii\_, when denoting ærial spirits: \_Geniuses\_, when signifying

persons of genius."--\_Mur.'s Gram.\_, i, p. 42. "\_Genii\_, when denoting

æriel spirits; \_Geniuses\_, when signifying persons of genius."--\_Frost's

Gram.\_, p. 9. "\_Genius\_, Plu. \_geniuses\_, men of wit; but \_genii\_, ærial

beings."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 18. "Aerisius, king of Argos, had a

beautiful daughter, whose name was Danæ."--\_Classic Tales\_, p. 109. "Phæton

was the son of Apollo and Clymene."--\_Ib.\_, p. 152. "But, after all, I may

not have reached the intended Gaol."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, Pref., p. xxvii.

"'Pitticus was offered a large sum.' Better: 'A large sum was offered to

Pitticus.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 187. "King Missipsi charged his sons to

respect the senate and people of Rome."--See \_ib.\_, p. 161. "For example:

Gallileo invented the telescope."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 54 and 67. "Cathmor's

warriours sleep in death."--\_Ib.\_, p. 54. "For parsing will enable you to

detect and correct errours in composition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 50.

"O'er barren mountains, o'er the flow'ry plain,

Extends thy uncontroul'd and boundless reign."--\_Dryden\_.

PROMISCUOUS ERRORS IN SPELLING.

LESSON I.--MIXED.

"A bad author deserves better usage than a bad critick."--POPE: \_Johnson's

Dict., w. Former\_. "Produce a single passage superiour to the speech of

Logan, a Mingo chief, delivered to Lord Dunmore, when governour of

Virginia."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 247. "We have none synonimous to

supply its place."--\_Jamieson's Rhetoric\_, p. 48. "There is a probability

that the effect will be accellerated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 48. "Nay, a regard to

sound hath controuled the public choice."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. "Though learnt

from the uninterrupted use of gutterel sounds."--\_Ib.\_, p. 5. "It is by

carefully filing off all roughness and inequaleties, that languages, like

metals, must be polished."--\_Ib.\_, p. 48. "That I have not mispent my time

in the service of the community."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, Pref., p. xxviii.

"The leaves of maiz are also called blades."--\_Webster's El.

Spelling-Book\_, p. 43. "Who boast that they know what is past, and can

foretel what is to come."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, Vol. i, p. 360. "Its

tasteless dullness is interrupted by nothing but its perplexities."--

\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 18. "Sentences constructed with the Johnsonian

fullness and swell."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 130. "The privilege of

escaping from his prefatory dullness and prolixity."--\_Kirkham's

Elocution\_, p. iv. "But in poetry this characteristick of dulness attains

its full growth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "The leading characteristick consists in

an increase of the force and fullness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 71. "The character of

this opening fulness and feebler vanish."--\_Ib.\_, p. 31. "Who, in the

fullness of unequalled power, would not believe himself the favourite of

heaven?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 181. "They marr one another, and distract

him."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 433. "Let a deaf worshipper of

antiquity and an English prosodist settle this."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p.

140. "This phillipic gave rise to my satirical reply in self-defence."--

\_Merchant's Criticisms\_. "We here saw no inuendoes, no new sophistry, no

falsehoods."--\_Ib.\_ "A witty and humourous vein has often produced

enemies."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 173. "Cry holla! to thy tongue, I pr'ythee:

it curvetts unseasonably."--\_Shak.\_ "I said, in my slyest manner, 'Your

health, sir.'"--\_Blackwood's Mag.\_, Vol. xl, p. 679. "And attornies also

travel the circuit in pursute of business."--\_Red Book\_, p. 83. "Some whole

counties in Virginia would hardly sel for the valu of the dets du from the

inhabitants."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 301. "They were called the court of

assistants, and exercized all powers legislativ and judicial."--\_Ib.\_, p.

340. "Arithmetic is excellent for the guaging of liquors."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 288. "Most of the inflections may be analysed in a way

somewhat similar."--\_Ib.\_, p. 112.

"To epithets allots emphatic state,

Whilst principals, ungrac'd, like lacquies wait."

--\_C. Churchill's Ros.\_, p. 8.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"Hence it [less] is a privative word, denoting destitution; as, fatherless,

faithless, pennyless."--\_Webster's Dict., w. Less.\_ "\_Bay\_; red, or

reddish, inclining to a chesnut color."--\_Same.\_ "\_To mimick\_, to imitate

or ape for sport; \_a mimic\_, one who imitates or mimics."--\_Ib.\_

"Counterroil, a counterpart or copy of the rolls; Counterrolment, a counter

account."--\_Ib.\_ "Millenium, the thousand years during which Satan shall be

bound."--\_Ib.\_ "Millenial, pertaining to the millenium, or to a thousand

years."--\_Ib.\_ "Thraldom; slavery, bondage, a state of servitude."--See

\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "Brier, a prickly bush; Briery, rough, prickly, full of

briers; Sweetbriar, a fragrant shrub."--See \_Johnson, Walker, Chalmers,

Webster, and others\_. "\_Will\_, in the second and third Persons, barely

foretels."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 132. "And therefor there is no Word false,

but what is distinguished by Italics."--\_Ib.\_, Pref., p. v. "What should be

repeted is left to their Discretion."--\_Ib.\_, p. iv. "Because they are

abstracted or seperated from material Substances."--\_Ib.\_, p. ix. "All

Motion is in Time, and therefor, where-ever it exists, implies Time as its

Concommitant."--\_Ib.\_, p. 140. "And illiterate grown persons are guilty of

blameable spelling."--\_Ib.\_, Pref., p. xiv. "They wil always be ignorant,

and of ruf uncivil manners."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 346. "This fact wil

hardly be beleeved in the northern states."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367. "The province

however waz harrassed with disputes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 352. "So little concern

haz the legislature for the interest of lerning."--\_Ib.\_, p. 349. "The

gentlemen wil not admit that a skoolmaster can be a gentleman."--\_Ib.\_, p.

362. "Such absurd qui-pro-quoes cannot be too strenuously

avoided."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 205. "When we say, 'a man looks

\_slyly\_;' we signify, that he assumes a \_sly look\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 339.

"\_Peep\_; to look through a crevice; to look narrowly, closely, or

slyly."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Hence the confession has become a hacknied

proverb."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 110. "Not to mention the more

ornamental parts of guilding, varnish, &c."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. i,

p. 20. "After this system of self-interest had been rivetted."--\_Brown's

Estimate\_, Vol. ii, p. 136. "Prejudice might have prevented the cordial

approbation of a bigotted Jew."--SCOTT: \_on Luke\_, x.

"All twinkling with the dew-drop sheen,

The briar-rose fell in streamers green."--\_Lady of the Lake\_, p. 16.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"The infinitive mode has commonly the sign \_to\_ before it."--\_Harrison's

Gram.\_, p. 25. "Thus, it is adviseable to write \_singeing\_, from the verb

to \_singe\_, by way of distinction from \_singing\_, the participle of the

verb to \_sing\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 27. "Many verbs form both the preterite tense

and the preterite participle irregularly."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. "Much must be

left to every one's taste and judgment."--\_Ib.\_, p. 67. "Verses of

different lengths intermixed form a Pindarick poem."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 44. "He'll surprize you."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 88. "Unequalled

archer! why was this concealed?"--KNOWLES: \_ib.\_, p. 102. "So gaily curl

the waves before each dashing prow."--BYRON: \_ib.\_, p. 104. "When is a

dipthong called a proper dipthong?"--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 11. "How

many \_ss\_ would goodness then end with? Three."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. "\_Q.\_ What

is a tripthong? \_A.\_ A tripthong is the union of three vowels, pronounced

in like manner."--\_Bacon's Gram.\_, p. 7. "The verb, noun, or pronoun, is

referred to the preceding terms taken seperately."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "The

cubic foot of matter which occupies the center of the globe."--\_Cardell's

Gram.\_, 18mo, p. 47. "The wine imbibes oxigen, or the acidifying principle,

from the air."--\_Ib.\_, p. 62. "Charcoal, sulphur, and niter, make gun

powder."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90. "It would be readily understood, that the thing so

labeled, was a bottle of Madeira wine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 99. "They went their

ways, one to his farm, an other to his merchandize."--\_Ib.\_, p. 130. "A

dipthong is the union of two vowels, sounded by a single impulse of the

voice."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 7. "The professors of the Mahommedan

religion are called Mussulmans."--\_Maltby's Gram.\_, p. 73. "This shews that

\_let\_ is not a sign of the imperative mood, but a real verb."--\_Ib.\_, p.

51. "Those preterites and participles, which are first mentioned in the

list, seem to be the most eligible."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "Monosyllables, for the

most part, are compared by \_er\_ and \_est\_; and dyssyllables by \_more\_ and

\_most\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 19. "This termination, added to a noun, or adjective,

changes it into a verb: as \_modern\_, to \_modernise\_; a \_symbol\_, to

\_symbolize\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 24. "An Abridgment of Murray's

Grammar, with additions from Webster, Ash, Tooke, and others."--\_Maltby's

title-page\_. "For the sake of occupying the room more advantagously, the

subject of Orthography is merely glanced at."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 5. "So

contended the accusers of Gallileo."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, 12mo, 1839,

p. 380. "Murray says, 'They were \_traveling past\_ when \_we\_ met

them.'"--\_Peirce, ib.\_, p. 361. "They fulfil the only purposes for which

they are designed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 359. "On the fulfillment of the

event."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175. "Fullness consists in expressing every

idea."--\_Ib.\_, p. 291. "Consistently with fulness and perspicuity."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 337. "The word \_verriest\_ is a gross corruption; as, 'He is the

\_verriest\_ fool on earth.'"--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 202. "The sound will

recal the idea of the object."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 142. "Formed for great

enterprizes."--\_Bullions's Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 153. "The most important

rules and definitions are printed in large type, \_italicised\_."--\_Hart's

Gram.\_, p. 3. "HAMLETTED, \_a.\_ Accustomed to a hamlet; countrified."--

\_Bolles's Dict.\_, and \_Chalmers's\_. "Singular, \_spoonful, cup-full,

coach-full, handful\_; plural, \_spoonfuls, cup-fulls, coach-fulls,

handfuls\_."--\_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 27.

"Between Superlatives and following Names,

OF, by Grammatick Right, a Station claims."

--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 146.

CHAPTER V.--QUESTIONS.

ORDER OF REHEARSAL, AND METHOD OF EXAMINATION.

[Fist][The student ought to be able to answer with readiness, and in the

words of the book, all the following questions on grammar. And if he has

but lately commenced the study, it may be well to require of him a general

rehearsal of this kind, before he proceeds to the correction of any part of

the false grammar quoted in the foregoing chapters. At any rate, he should

be master of so many of the definitions and rules as precede the part which

he attempts to correct; because this knowledge is necessary to a creditable

performance of the exercise. But those who are very quick at reading, may

perform it \_tolerably\_, by consulting the book at the time, for what they

do not remember. The answers to these questions will embrace all the main

text of the work; and, if any further examination be thought necessary,

extemporaneous questions may be framed for the purpose.]

LESSON I.--GRAMMAR.

1. What is the name, or title, of this book? 2. What is Grammar? 3. What is

an English Grammar? 4. What is English Grammar, in itself? and what

knowledge does it imply? 5. If grammar is the art of reading, writing, and

speaking, define these actions. What is it, \_to read\_? 6. What is it, \_to

write\_? 7. What is it, \_to speak\_? 8. How is grammar to be taught, and by

what means are its principles to be made known? 9. What is a perfect

definition? 10. What is an example, as used in teaching? 11. What is a rule

of grammar? 12. What is an exercise? 13. What was language at first, and

what is it now? 14. Of what two kinds does the composition of language

consist? and how do they differ? 15. What are the least parts of language?

16. What has discourse to do with sentences? or sentences, with points? 17.

In extended compositions, what is the order of the parts, upwards from a

sentence? 18. What, then, is the common order of literary division,

downwards, throughout? 19. Are all literary works divided exactly in this

way? 20. How is Grammar divided? 21. Of what does Orthography treat? 22. Of

what does Etymology treat? 23. Of what does Syntax treat? 24. Of what does

Prosody treat?

PART FIRST, ORTHOGRAPHY.

LESSON II.--LETTERS.

1. Of what does Orthography treat? 2. What is a letter? 3. What is an

elementary sound of human voice, or speech? 4. What name is given to the

sound of a letter? and what epithet, to a letter not sounded? 5. How many

letters are there in English? and how many sounds do they represent? 6. In

what does a knowledge of the letters consist? 7. What variety is there in

the letters? and how are they always the same? 8. What different sorts of

types, or styles of letters, are used in English? 9. What are the names of

the letters in English? 10. What are their names in both numbers, singular

and plural? 11. Into what general classes are the letters divided? 12. What

is a vowel? 13. What is a consonant? 14. What letters are vowels? and what,

consonants? 15. When are \_w\_ and \_y\_ consonants? and when, vowels? 16. How

are the consonants divided? 17. What is a semivowel? 18. What is a mute?

19. What letters are reckoned semivowels? and how many of these are

aspirates? 20. What letters are called liquids? and why? 21. What letters

are reckoned mutes? and which of them are imperfect mutes?

LESSON III.--SOUNDS.

1. What is meant, when we speak of the powers of the letters? 2. Are the

sounds of a language fewer than its words? 3. How are different vowel

sounds produced? 4. What are the vowel sounds in English? 5. How may these

sounds be modified in the formation of syllables? 6. Can you form a word

upon each by means of an \_f\_? 7. Will you try the series again with a \_p\_?

8. How may the vowel sounds be written? and how uttered when they are not

words? 9. Which of the vowel sounds form words? and what of the rest? 10.

How many and what are the consonant sounds in English? 11. In what series

of words may all these sounds be heard? 12. In what series of words may

each of them be heard two or three times? 13. What is said of the sounds of

\_j\_ and \_x\_? 14. What is said of the sounds of \_c\_ and \_g\_? 15. What is

said of \_sc\_, or \_s\_ before \_c\_? 16. What, of \_ce, ci\_, and \_ch\_? 17. What

sounds has the consonant \_g\_? 18. In how many different ways can the

letters of the alphabet be combined? 19. What do we derive from these

combinations of sounds and characters?

LESSON IV.--CAPITALS.

1. What characters are employed in English? 2. Why should the different

sorts of letters be kept distinct? 3. What is said of the slanting strokes

in Roman letters? 4. For what purpose are \_Italics\_ chiefly used? 5. In

preparing a manuscript, how do we mark these things for the printer? 6.

What distinction of form belongs to each of the letters? 7. What is said of

small letters? and why are capitals used? 8. What things are commonly

exhibited wholly in capitals? 9. How many rules for capitals are given in

this book? and what are their titles? 10. What says Rule 1st of \_books\_?

11. What says Rule 2d of \_first words\_? 12. What says Rule 3d of \_names of

Deity\_? 13. What says Rule 4th of \_proper names\_? 14. What says Rule 5th of

\_titles\_? 15. What says Rule 6th of \_one capital\_? 16. What says Rule 7th

of \_two capitals\_? 17. What says Rule 8th of \_compounds\_? 18. What says

Rule 9th of \_apposition\_? 19. What says Rule 10th of \_personifications\_?

20. What says Rule 11th of \_derivatives\_? 21. What says Rule 12th of \_I and

O\_? 22. What says Rule 13th of \_poetry\_? 23. What says Rule 14th of

\_examples\_? 24. What says Rule 15th of \_chief words\_? 25. What says Rule

16th of \_needless capitals\_?

[Now turn to the first chapter of Orthography, and correct the

improprieties there quoted for the practical application of these rules.]

LESSON V.--SYLLABLES.

1. What is a syllable? 2. Can the syllables of a word be perceived by the

ear? 3. Under what names are words classed according to the number of their

syllables? 4. Which of the letters can form syllables of themselves? and

which cannot? 5. What is a diphthong? 6. What is a proper diphthong? 7.

What is an improper diphthong? 8. What is a triphthong? 9. What is a proper

triphthong? 10. What is an improper triphthong? 11. How many and what are

the diphthongs in English? 12. How many and which of these are so variable

in sound that they may be either proper or improper diphthongs? 13. How

many and what are the proper diphthongs? 14. How many and what are the

improper diphthongs? 15. Are proper triphthongs numerous in our language?

16. How many and what are the improper triphthongs? 17. What guide have we

for dividing words into syllables? 18. How many special rules of

syllabication are given in this book? and what are their titles, or

subjects? 19. What says Rule 1st of \_consonants\_? 20. What says Rule 2d of

\_vowels\_? 21. What says Rule 3d of \_terminations\_? 22. What says Rule 4th

of \_prefixes\_? 23. What says Rule 5th of \_compounds\_? 24. What says Rule

6th of \_lines full\_?

[Now turn to the second chapter of Orthography, and correct the

improprieties there quoted for the practical application of these rules.]

LESSON VI.--WORDS.

1. What is a word? 2. How are words distinguished in regard to \_species\_

and \_figure\_? 3. What is a primitive word? 4. What is a derivative word? 5.

What is a simple word? 6. What is a compound word? 7. How do permanent

compounds differ from others? 8. How many rules for the figure of words are

given in this book? and what are their titles, or subjects? 9. What says

Rule 1st of \_compounds\_? 10. What says Rule 2d of \_simples\_? 11. What says

Rule 3d of \_the sense\_? 12. What says Rule 4th of \_ellipses\_? 13. What says

Rule 5th of \_the hyphen\_? 14. What says Rule 6th of \_no hyphen\_?

[Now turn to the third chapter of Orthography, and correct the

improprieties there quoted for the practical application of these rules.]

LESSON VII.--SPELLING.

1. What is spelling? 2. How is this art to be acquired? and why so? 3. Why

is it difficult to learn to spell accurately? 4. Is it then any disgrace to

spell words erroneously? 5. What benefit may be expected from the rules for

spelling? 6. How many rules for spelling are given in this book? and what

are their titles, or subjects? 7. What says Rule 1st of \_final f, l\_, or

\_s\_? 8. Can you mention the principal exceptions to this rule? 9. What says

Rule 2d of \_other finals\_? 10. Are there any exceptions to this rule? 11.

What says Rule 3d of the \_doubling\_ of consonants? 12. Under what three

heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 13. What says Rule 4th

\_against the doubling\_ of consonants? 14. Under what four heads are the

apparent exceptions to this Rule noticed? 15. What says Rule 5th of \_final

ck\_? 16. What monosyllables, contrary to this rule, end with \_c\_ only? 17.

What says Rule 6th of the \_retaining\_ of double letters before affixes? 18.

Under what three heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 19. What

says Rule 7th of the \_retaining\_ of double letters after prefixes? 20. What

observation is made respecting exceptions to this rule?

LESSON VIII.--SPELLING.

21. What says Rule 8th of \_final ll\_, and of \_final l single\_? 22. What

words does this rule claim, which might seem to come under Rule 7th? and

why? 23. What says Rule 9th of \_final e omitted\_? 24. Under what three

heads are the exceptions, real or apparent, here noticed? 25. What says

Rule 10th of \_final e retained?\_ 26. Under what three heads are the

exceptions to this rule noticed? 27. What says Rule 11th of \_final y

changed?\_ 28. Under what three heads are the limits and exceptions to this

rule noticed? 29. What says Rule 12th of \_final y unchanged?\_ 30. Under

what three heads are the exceptions to this rule noticed? 31. What says

Rule 13th of the terminations \_ize\_ and \_ise?\_ 32. Under what three heads

are the apparent exceptions to this rule noticed? 33. What says Rule 14th

of \_compounds?\_ 34. Under what seven heads are the exceptions to this rule

noticed? 35. What says Rule 15th of \_usage\_, as a law of spelling?

[Now turn to the fourth chapter of Orthography, and correct the

improprieties there quoted for the practical application of these rules and

their exceptions.]

CHAPTER VI.--FOR WRITING.

EXERCISES IN ORTHOGRAPHY.

[Fist] [The following examples of false orthography are inserted here, and

not explained in the general Key, that they may he corrected by the pupil

\_in writing\_. Some of the examples here quoted are less inaccurate than

others, but all of them, except a few shown in contrast, are, in some

respect or other, erroneous. It is supposed, that every student who can

answer the questions contained in the preceding chapter, will readily

discern wherein the errors lie, and be able to make the necessary

corrections.]

EXERCISE I.--CAPITALS.

"Alexander the great killed his friend Clitus."--\_Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 68.

"The words in italics are parsed in the same manner."--\_Maltby's Gram.\_, p.

69. "It may be read by those who do not understand latin."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 262. "A roman \_s\_ being added to a word in italics or

small capitals."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 215. "This is not simply a

gallicism, but a corruption of the French \_on\_; itself a corruption."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 228. "The Gallicism, '\_it is me\_,' is perpetually striking the

ear in London."--\_Ib.\_, p. 316. "'Almost nothing,' is a common Scotticism,

equally improper: it should be, 'scarcely any thing.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 333. "To

use \_learn\_ for \_teach\_, is a common Scotticism, that ought to be carefully

avoided."--See \_ib.\_, p. 261. "A few observations on the subjunctive mood

as it appears in our English bible."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 40. "The

translators of the bible, have confounded two tenses, which in the original

are uniformly kept distinct."--\_Ib.\_, p. 40. "More like heaven on earth,

than the holy land would have been."--\_Anti-Slavery Mag.\_, Vol. i, p. 72.

"There is now extant a poetical composition, called the golden verses of

Pythagoras."-- \_Lempriere's Dict.\_ "Exercise of the Mind upon Theorems of

Science, like generous and manly Exercise of the Body, tends to call forth

and strengthen Nature's original Vigour."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 295. "O

that I could prevail on Christians to melt down, under the warm influence

of brotherly love, all the distinctions of methodists, independents,

baptists, anabaptists, arians, trinitarians, unitarians, in the glorious

name of christians."--KNOX: \_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 173. "Pythagoras long

ago remarked, 'that ability and necessity dwell near each

other.'"--\_Student's Manual\_, p. 285.

"The Latin Writers Decency neglect,

But modern Readers challenge more Respect."

--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 172.

EXERCISE II.--SYLLABLES.

1. Correct \_Bolles\_, in the division of the following words: "Del-ia,

Jul-ia, Lyd-ia, heigh-ten, pat-ron, ad-roit, worth-y, fath-er, fath-er-ly,

mar-chi-o-ness, i-dent-ic-al, out-ra-ge-ous, ob-nox-i-ous, pro-di-gi-ous,

tre-mend-ous, ob-liv-i-on, pe-cul-i-ar."--\_Revised Spelling-Book\_: New

London, 1831.

2. Correct \_Sears\_, in the division of the following words: "A-quil-a,

hear-ty, drea-ry, wor-my, hai-ry, thor-ny, phil-os-o-phy, dis-cov-e-ry,

re-cov-e-ry, ad-diti-on, am-biti-on, au-spici-ous, fac-titi-ous,

fla-giti-ous, fru-iti-on, sol-stiti-al, ab-o-liti-on."--\_Standard

Spelling-Book\_: "New Haven," 1826.

3. Correct \_Bradley\_, in the division of the following words: "Jes-ter,

rai-ny, forg-e-ry, fin-e-ry, spic-e-ry, brib-e-ry, groc-e-ry, chi-can-e-ry,

fer-riage, line-age, cri-ed, tri-ed, sù-ed, slic-ed, forc-ed, pledg-ed,

sav-ed, dup-ed, strip-ed, touch-ed, trounc-ed."--\_Improved Spelling-Book\_:

Windsor, 1815.

4. Correct \_Burhans\_, in the division of the following words: "Boar-der,

brigh-ten, cei-ling, frigh-ten, glea-ner, lea-kage, suc-ker, mos-sy,

fros-ty, twop-ence, pu-pill-ar-y, crit-i-call-y, gen-er-all-y,

lit-er-all-y, log-i-call-y, trag-i-call-y, ar-ti-fici-al, po-liti-call-y,

sloth-full-y, spite-full-y, re-all-y, sui-ta-ble, ta-mea-ble, flumm-er-y,

nesc-i-ence, shep-her-dess, trav-ell-er, re-pea-ter, re-pressi-on,

suc-cessi-on, un-lear-ned."--\_Critical Pronouncing Spelling-Book\_:[128]

Philadelphia, 1823.

5. Correct \_Marshall\_, in the division of the following words: "Trench-er,

trunch-eon, dros-sy, glos-sy, glas-sy, gras-sy, dres-ses, pres-ses,

cal-ling, chan-ging, en-chan-ging, con-ver-sing, mois-ture, join-ture,

qua-drant, qua-drate, trans-gres-sor, dis-es-teem."--\_New Spelling-Book\_:

New York, 1836.

6. Correct \_Emerson\_, in the division of the following words: "Dus-ty

mis-ty, mar-shy, mil-ky, wes-tern, stor-my, nee-dy, spee-dy, drea-ry,

fros-ty, pas-sing, roc-ky, bran-chy, bland-ish, pru-dish, eve-ning,

a-noth-er."--\_National Spelling-Book\_: Boston, 1828.

"Two Vowels meeting, each with its full Sound,

Always to make Two Syllables are bound."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 64.

EXERCISE III.--FIGURE OF WORDS.

"I was surprised by the return of my long lost brother."--\_Parker's

Exercises in English Composition\_, p. 5. "Such singular and unheard of

clemency cannot be passed over by me in silence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. "I

perceive my whole system excited by the potent stimulus of

sun-shine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11. "To preserve the unity of a sentence, it is

sometimes necessary to employ the case absolute, instead of the verb and

conjunction."--\_Ib.\_, p. 17. "Severity and hard hearted opinions accord

with the temper of the times."--\_Ib.\_, p. 18. "That poor man was put into

the mad house."--\_Ib.\_, p. 22. "This fellow must be put into the poor

house."--\_Ib.\_ p. 22. "I have seen the breast works and other defences of

earth, that were thrown up."--\_Ib.\_, p. 24. "Cloven footed animals are

enabled to walk more easily on uneven ground."--\_Ib.\_, p. 25. "Self conceit

blasts the prospects of many a youth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 26. "Not a moment should

elapse without bringing some thing to pass."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36. "A school

master decoyed the children of the principal citizens into the Roman

camp."--\_Ib.\_, p. 39. "The pupil may now write a description of the

following objects. A school room. A steam boat. A writing desk. A dwelling

house. A meeting house. A paper mill. A grist mill. A wind mill."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 45. "Every metaphor should be founded on a resemblance which is clear

and striking; not far fetched, nor difficult to be discovered."--\_Ib.\_, p.

49. "I was reclining in an arbour overhung with honey suckle and jessamine

of the most exquisite fragrance."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51. "The author of the

following extract is speaking of the slave trade."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. "The all

wise and benevolent Author of nature has so framed the soul of man, that he

cannot but approve of virtue."--\_Ib.\_, p. 74. "There is something of self

denial in the very idea of it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 75. "Age therefore requires a

well spent youth to render it happy."--\_Ib.\_, p. 76. "Pearl-ash requires

much labour in its extraction from ashes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91. "\_Club\_, or

\_crump, footed\_, Loripes; \_Rough\_, or \_leather, footed\_,

Plumipes."--\_Ainsworth's Dict.\_

"The honey-bags steal from the humble bees,

And for night-tapers crop their waxen thighs."

--SHAK.: \_Joh.'s Dict., w. Glowworm.\_

"The honeybags steal from the bumblebees,

And for night tapers crop their waxen thighs."

--SHAK.: \_Joh.'s Dict., w. Humblebee.\_

"The honey bags steal from the humble-bees,

And, for night tapers crop their waxen thighs."

--\_Dodd's Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 51.

EXERCISE IV.--SPELLING.

"His antichamber, and room of audience, are little square chambers

wainscoted."--ADDISON: \_Johnson's Dict., w. Antechamber\_. "Nobody will deem

the quicksighted amongst them to have very enlarged views of

ethicks."--LOCKE: \_Ib., w. Quicksighted\_. "At the rate of this

thick-skulled blunderhead, every plow-jobber shall take upon him to read

upon divinity."--L'ESTRANGE: \_Ib., m. Blunderhead\_. "On the topmast, the

yards, and boltsprit would I flame distinctly."--SHAK.: \_Ib., w. Bowsprit\_.

"This is the tune of our catch plaid by the picture of nobody."--ID.: \_Ib.,

w. Nobody\_. "Thy fall hath left a kind of blot to mark the fulfraught

man."--ID.: \_Ib., w. Fulfraught\_. "Till blinded by some Jack o'Lanthorn

sprite."--\_Snelling's Gift\_, p. 62. "The beauties you would have me

eulogise."--\_Ib.\_, p. 14. "They rail at me--I gaily laugh at them."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 13. "Which the king and his sister had intrusted to him

withall."--\_Josephus\_, Vol. v, p. 143. "The terms of these emotions are by

no means synonimous."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 336. "Lillied, \_adj.\_

Embellished with lilies."--\_Chalmers's Dict.\_ "They seize the compendious

blessing without exertion and without reflexion."--\_Philological Museum\_,

Vol. i, p. 428. "The first cry that rouses them from their torpour, is the

cry that demands their blood."--\_Ib.\_, p. 433. "It meets the wants of

elementary schools and deserves to be patronised."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

5. "Whose attempts were paralysed by the hallowed sound."--\_Music of

Nature\_, p. 270. "It would be an amusing investigation to analyse their

language."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200. "It is my father's will that I should take on me

the hostess-ship of the day."--SHAK.: \_in Johnson's Dict.\_ "To retain the

full apprehension of them undiminisht."--\_Phil. Museum.\_, Vol. i, p. 458.

"The ayes and noes were taken in the House of Commons."--\_Anti-Slavery

Mag.\_, Vol. i, p. 11. "Derivative words are formed by adding letters or

syllables to primatives."--\_Davenport's Gram.\_, p. 7. "The minister never

was thus harrassed himself."--\_Nelson, on Infidelity\_, p. 6. "The most

vehement politician thinks himself unbiassed in his judgment."--\_Ib.\_, p.

17. "Mistress-ship, \_n.\_ Female rule or dominion."--\_Webster's Dict.\_

"Thus forced to kneel, thus groveling to embrace,

The scourge and ruin of my realm and race."

--POPE: \_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 83.

EXERCISE V.--MIXED ERRORS.

"The quince tree is of a low stature; the branches are diffused and

crooked."--MILLER: \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "The greater slow worm, called also

the blindworm, is commonly thought to be blind, because of the littleness

of his eyes."--GREW: \_ib.\_ "Oh Hocus! where art thou? It used to go in

another guess manner in thy time."--ARBUTHNOT: \_ib.\_ "One would not make a

hotheaded crackbrained coxcomb forward for a scheme of moderation."--ID.:

\_ib.\_ "As for you, colonel huff-cap, we shall try before a civil magistrate

who's the greatest plotter."--DRYDEN: \_ib., w. Huff.\_ "In like manner,

Actions co-alesce with their Agents, and Passions with their

Patients."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 263. "These Sentiments are not unusual

even with the Philosopher now a days."--\_Ib.\_, p. 350. "As if the Marble

were to fashion the Chizzle, and not the Chizzle the Marble."--\_Ib.\_, p.

353. "I would not be understood, in what I have said, to undervalue

Experiment."--\_Ib.\_, p. 352. "How therefore is it that they approach nearly

to Non-Entity's?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 431. "Gluttonise, modernise, epitomise,

barbarise, tyranise."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, pp. 31 and 42. "Now fair befal

thee and thy noble house!"--SHAK.: \_ib.\_, p. 241. "Nor do I think the error

above-mentioned would have been so long indulged," &c.--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p.

4. "The editor of the two editions above mentioned was pleased to give this

little manuel to the public," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 7. "A Note of Admiration

denotes a modelation of the voice suited to the expression."--\_Ib.\_, p. 16.

"It always has some respect to the power of the agent; and is therefore

properly stiled the potential mode."--\_Ib.\_, p. 29. "Both these are

supposed to be synonomous expressions."--\_Ib.\_, p. 105. "An expence beyond

what my circumstances admit."--DODDRIDGE: \_ib.\_, p. 138. "There are four of

them: the \_Full-Point\_, or \_Period\_; the \_Colon\_; the \_Semi-Colon\_; the

\_Comma\_."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, N. Y., 1818, p. 77. "There are many men,

who have been at Latin-Schools for years, and who, at last, cannot write

six sentences in English correctly."--\_Ib.\_, p. 39. "But, figures of

rhetorick are edge tools, and two edge tools too."--\_Ib.\_, p. 182. "The

horse-chesnut grows into a goodly standard."--MORTIMER: \_Johnson's Dict.\_

"Whereever \_if\_ is to be used."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 175.

"Peel'd, patch'd, and pyebald, linsey-woolsey brothers."

--POPE: \_Joh. Dict., w., Mummer\_.

"Peel'd, patch'd, and piebald, linsey-woolsey brothers."

--\_ID.: ib., w. Piebald\_.

EXERCISE VI.--MIXED ERRORS.

"Pied, \_adj.\_ [from \_pie.\_] Variegated; partycoloured."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

"Pie, [\_pica\_, Lat.] A magpie; a party-coloured bird."--\_Ib.\_ "Gluy, \_adj.\_

[from \_glue.\_] Viscous; tenacious; glutinous."--\_Ib.\_ "Gluey, \_a.\_ Viscous,

glutinous. Glueyness. \_n.\_ The quality of being gluey."--\_Webster's Dict.\_

"Old Euclio, seeing a crow-scrat[129] upon the muck-hill, returned in all

haste, taking it for an ill sign."--BURTON: \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "Wars are

begun by hairbrained[130] dissolute captains."--ID.: \_ib.\_ "A carot is a

well known garden root."--\_Red Book\_, p. 60. "Natural philosophy,

metaphysicks, ethicks, history, theology, and politicks, were familiar to

him."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 209. "The words in Italicks and capitals,

are emphatick."--\_Ib.\_, p. 210. "It is still more exceptionable; Candles,

Cherrys, Figs, and other sorts of Plumbs, being sold by Weight, and being

Plurals."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 135. "If the End of Grammar be not to

save that Trouble, and Expence of Time, I know not what it is good

for."--\_Ib.\_, p. 161. "\_Caulce\_, Sheep Penns, or the like, has no Singular,

according to Charisius."--\_Ib.\_, p. 194. "These busibodies are like to such

as reade bookes with intent onely to spie out the faults

thereof"--\_Perkins's Works\_, p. 741. "I think it every man's indispensible

duty, to do all the service he can to his country."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 4.

"Either fretting it self into a troublesome Excess, or flaging into a

downright want of Appetite."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "And nobody would have a child

cramed at breakfast."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "Judgeship and judgment, lodgable and

alledgeable, alledgement and abridgment, lodgment and infringement,

enlargement and acknowledgment."--\_Webster's Dict.\_, 8vo. "Huckster, \_n.

s.\_ One who sells goods by retail, or in small quantities; a

pedler."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

"He seeks bye-streets, and saves th' expensive coach."

--GAY: \_ib., w. Mortgage.\_

"He seeks by-streets, and saves th' expensive coach."

--GAY: \_ib., w. By-street.\_

EXERCISE VII.--MIXED ERRORS.

"Boys like a warm fire in a wintry day."--\_Webster's El. Spelling-Book\_, p.

62. "The lilly is a very pretty flower."--\_Ib.\_, p. 62. "The potatoe is a

native plant of America."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. "An anglicism is a peculiar mode

of speech among the English."--\_Ib.\_, p. 136. "Black berries and

raspberries grow on briars."--\_Ib.\_, p. 150. "You can broil a beef steak

over the coals of fire."--\_Ib.\_, p. 38. "Beef'-steak, \_n.\_ A steak or slice

of beef for broiling."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Beef'steak, \_s.\_ a slice of beef

for broiling."--\_Treasury of Knowledge.\_ "As he must suffer in case of the

fall of merchandize, he is entitled to the corresponding gain if

merchandize rises."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 258. "He is the

worshipper of an hour, but the worldling for life."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_,

p. 424. "Slyly hinting something to the disadvantage of great and honest

men."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 329. "'Tis by this therefore that I Define

the Verb; namely, that it is a Part of Speech, by which something is

apply'd to another, as to its Subject."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 255.

"It may sometimes throw a passing cloud over the bright hour of

gaiety."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 178. "To criticize, is to discover

errors; and to crystalize implies to freeze or congele."--\_Red Book\_, p.

68. "The affectation of using the preterite instead of the participle, is

peculiarly aukward; as, he has came."--\_Priestley's Grammar\_, p. 125. "They

are moraly responsible for their individual conduct."--\_Cardell's El.

Gram.\_, p. 21. "An engine of sixty horse power, is deemed of equal force

with a team of sixty horses."--\_Red Book\_, p. 113. "This, at fourpence per

ounce, is two shillings and fourpence a week, or six pounds, one shining

and four pence a year."--\_Ib.\_, p. 122. "The tru meening of \_parliament\_ iz

a meeting of barons or peers."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 276. "Several

authorities seem at leest to favor this opinion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 277. "That iz,

az I hav explained the tru primitiv meening of the word."--\_Ib.\_, p. 276.

"The lords are peers of the relm; that iz, the ancient prescriptiv judges

or barons."--\_Ib.\_, p. 274.

"Falshood is folly, and 'tis just to own

The fault committed; this was mine alone."

--\_Pope, Odys.\_, B. xxii, l. 168.

EXERCISE VIII--MIXED ERRORS.

"A second verb so nearly synonimous with the first, is at best

superfluous."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 332. "Indicate it, by some mark

opposite [to] the word misspelt."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 74. "And

succesfully controling the tendencies of mind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 24. "It [the

Monastick Life] looks very like what we call Childrens-Play."--[LESLIE'S]

\_Right of Tythes\_, p. 236. "It seems rather lik Playing of Booty, to Please

those Fools and Knaves."--\_Ib.\_, Pref., p. vi. "And first I Name Milton,

only for his Name, lest the Party should say, that I had not Cousider'd his

Performance against Tythes."--\_Ib.\_, p. iv. "His Fancy was too Predominant

for his Judgment. His Talent lay so much in Satyr that he hated

Reasoning."--\_Ib.\_, p. iv. "He has thrown away some of his Railery against

Tythes, and the Church then underfoot."--\_Ib.\_, p. v. "They Vey'd with one

another in these things."--\_Ib.\_, p. 220. "Epamanondas was far the most

accomplished of the Thebans."--\_Cooper's New Gram.\_, p. 27. "\_Whoever\_ and

\_Whichever\_, are thus declined. Sing. and Plur. \_nom.\_ whoever, \_poss.\_

whoseever, \_obj.\_ whomever. Sing. and Plu. \_nom.\_ whichever, \_poss.\_

whoseever, \_obj.\_ whichever."--\_Ib.\_, p. 38. "WHEREEVER, \_adv.\_ [\_where\_

and \_ever\_.] At whatever place."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "They at length took

possession of all the country south of the Welch mountains."--\_Dobson's

Comp. Gram.\_, p. 7. "Those Britains, who refused to submit to the foreign

yoke, retired into Wales."--\_Ib.\_, p. 6. "Religion is the most chearful

thing in the world."--\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "\_Two\_ means the number two compleatly,

whereas \_second\_ means only the last of two, and so of all the

rest."--\_Ib.\_, p. 44. "Now send men to Joppa, and call for one Simon, whose

sirname is Peter."--\_Ib.\_, p. 96. (See \_Acts\_, x, 5.) "In French words, we

use \_enter\_ instead of \_inter\_; as, entertain, enterlace,

enterprize."--\_Ib.\_, p. 101. "Amphiology, i. e. a speech of uncertain or

doubtful meaning."--\_Ib.\_, p. 103. "Surprize; as, hah! hey day! what!

strange!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 109. "Names of the letters: ai bee see dee ee ef jee

aitch eye jay kay el em en o pee cue ar ess tee you voe double u eks wi

zed."--\_Rev. W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 3.

"I, O, and U, at th' End of Words require,

The silent (e), the same do's (va) desire."

--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 15.

EXERCISE IX.--MIXED ERRORS.

"\_And\_ is written for \_eacend\_, adding, ekeing."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of

Europ. Lang.\_, Vol. i, p. 222. "The Hindus have changed \_ai\_ into \_e\_,

sounded like \_e\_ in \_where\_."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 121. "And therefor I

would rather see the cruelest usurper than the mildest despot."--

\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 430. "Sufficiently distinct to prevent

our marveling."--\_Ib.\_, i, 477. "Possessed of this preheminence he

disregarded the clamours of the people."--\_Smollett's England\_, Vol. iii,

p. 222. "He himself, having communicated, administered the sacrament to

some of the bye-standers."--\_Ib.\_, p. 222. "The high fed astrology which it

nurtured, is reduced to a skeleton on the leaf of an almanac."--\_Cardell's

Gram.\_, p. 6. "Fulton was an eminent engineer: he invented steam

boats."--\_Ib.\_, p. 30. "Then, in comes the benign latitude of the doctrine

of goodwill."--SOUTH: \_in Johnson's Dict.\_ "Being very lucky in a pair of

long lanthorn-jaws, he wrung his face into a hideous grimace."--SPECTATOR:

\_ib.\_ "Who had lived almost four-and-twenty years under so politick a king

as his father."--BACON: \_ib., w. Lowness\_. "The children will answer;

John's, or William's, or whose ever it may be."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p.

32. "It is found tolerably easy to apply them, by practising a little guess

work."--\_Cardell's Gram.\_, p. 91. "For between which two links could speech

makers draw the division line?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 50. "The wonderful activity of

the rope dancer who stands on his head."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. "The brilliancy

which the sun displays on its own disk, is sun shine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 63. "A

word of three syllables is termed a trisyllable."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 23;

\_Coar's\_, 17; \_Jaudon's\_, 13; \_Comly's\_, 8; \_Cooper's, New Gr.\_, 8;

\_Kirkham's\_, 20; \_Picket's\_, 10; \_Alger's\_, 12; \_Blair's\_, 1; \_Guy's\_, 2;

\_Bolles's Spelling-Book\_, 161. See \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "A word of three

syllables is termed a trissyllable."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 33;

\_Comprehensive Gram.\_, 23; \_Bicknell's\_, 17; \_Allen's\_, 31; \_John

Peirce's\_, 149; \_Lennie's\_, 5; \_Maltby's\_, 8; \_Ingersoll's\_, 7;

\_Bradley's\_, 66; \_Davenport's\_, 7; \_Bucke's\_, 16; \_Bolles's Spelling-Book\_,

91. See \_Littleton's Lat. Dict.\_ (1.) "\_Will\_, in the first Persons,

promises or threatens: But in the second and third Persons, it barely

foretells."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 132. (2.) "\_Will\_, in the first Persons,

promises or threatens; but in the second and third Persons, it barely

foretells."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 41. (3.) "\_Will\_, in the first person,

promises, engages, or threatens. In the second and third persons, it merely

foretels."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 59. (4.) "\_Will\_, in the first person

singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third

persons, only foretells."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 41. (5.) "\_Will\_, in the

first person singular and plural, intimates resolution and promising; in

the second and third person, only foretels."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 88;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 136; \_Fisk's\_, 78; \_A. Flint's\_, 42; \_Bullions's\_, 32;

\_Hamlin's\_, 41; \_Cooper's Murray\_, 50. [Fist] \_Murray's Second Edition\_ has

it "\_foretells\_." (6.) "\_Will\_, in the first person singular and plural,

expresses resolution and promising. In the second and third persons it only

foretells."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 38; \_E. Devis's\_, 51; \_Lennie's\_, 22. (7.)

"\_Will\_, in the first person, promises. In the second and third persons, it

simply foretels."--\_Maltby's Gram.\_, p. 24. (8.) "\_Will\_, in the first

person implies resolution and promising; in the second and third, it

foretells."--\_Cooper's New Gram.\_, p. 51. (9.) "\_Will\_, in the first person

singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third

persons, only foretels: \_shall\_, on the contrary, in the first person,

simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or

threatens."--\_Adam's Lat. and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 83. (10.) "In the first

person shall \_foretels\_, and will \_promises\_ or \_threatens\_; but in the

second and third persons \_will\_ foretels, and \_shall\_ promises or

threatens."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 65.

"If Mævius scribble in Apollo's spight,

There are who judge still worse than he can write."--\_Pope\_.

EXERCISE X.--MIXED ERRORS.

"I am liable to be charged that I latinize too much."--DRYDEN: in

\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "To mould him platonically to his own idea."--WOTTON:

\_ib.\_ "I will marry a wife as beautiful as the houries, and as wise as

Zobeide."--\_Murray's E. Reader\_, p. 148. "I will marry a wife, beautiful as

the Houries."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 65. "The words in italics are all in

the imperative mood."--\_Maltby's Gram.\_, p. 71. "Words Italicised, are

emphatick, in various degrees."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 173. "Wherever

two gg's come together, they are both hard."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 5.

"But these are rather silent (\_o\_)'s than obscure (\_u\_)'s."--\_Brightland's

Gram.\_, p. 19. "That can be Guest at by us, only from the

Consequences."--\_Right of Tythes\_, p. viii. "He says he was glad that he

had Baptized so few; And asks them, Were ye Baptised in the Name of

Paul?"--\_Ib.\_, p. ix. "Therefor he Charg'd the Clergy with the Name of

Hirelings."--\_Ib.\_, p. viii. "On the fourth day before the first second day

in each month."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. vii, p. 230. "We are not bound to

adhere for ever to the terms, or to the meaning of terms, which were

established by our ancestors."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 140. "O! learn from

him to station quick eyed Prudence at the helm."--\_Frosts El. of Gram.\_, p.

104. "It pourtrays the serene landscape of a retired village."--\_Music of

Nature\_, p. 421. "By stating the fact, in a circumlocutary

manner."--\_Booth's Introd. to Dict.\_, p. 33. "Time as an abstract being is

a non-entity."--\_Ib.\_, p. 29. "From the difficulty of analysing the

multiplied combinations of words."--\_Ib.\_, p. 19. "Drop those letters that

are superfluous, as: handful, foretel."--\_Cooper's Plain & Pract. Gram.\_,

p. 10. "\_Shall\_, in the first person, simply foretells."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51.

"And the latter must evidently be so too, or, at least, cotemporary, with

the act."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. "The man has been traveling for five

years."--\_Ib.\_, p. 77. "I shall not take up time in combatting their

scruples."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 320. "In several of the chorusses of

Euripides and Sophocles, we have the same kind of lyric poetry as in

Pindar."--\_Ib.\_, p. 398. "Until the Statesman and Divine shall unite their

efforts in \_forming\_ the human mind, rather than in loping its

excressences, after it has been neglected."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 26.

"Where conviction could be followed only by a bigotted persistence in

error."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "All the barons were entitled to a seet in the

national council, in right of their baronys."--\_Ib.\_, p. 260. "Some

knowledge of arithmetic is necessary for every lady."--\_Ib.\_, p. 29. "Upon

this, [the system of chivalry,] were founded those romances of

night-errantry."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 374. "The subject is, the

atchievements of Charlemagne and his Peers, or Paladins."--\_Ib.\_, p. 374.

"Aye, aye; this slice to be sure outweighs the other."--\_Blair's Reader\_,

p. 31. "In the common phrase, \_good-bye, bye\_ signifies \_passing, going\_.

The phrase signifies, a good going, a prosperous passage, and is equivalent

to \_farewell\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Good-by, \_adv\_.--a contraction of \_good

be with you\_--a familiar way of bidding farewell."--See \_Chalmers's Dict.\_

"Off he sprung, and did not so much as stop to say good bye to

you."--\_Blair's Reader\_, p. 16. "It no longer recals the notion of the

action."--\_Barnard's Gram.\_, p. 69.

"Good-nature and good-sense must ever join;

To err, is human; to forgive, divine."--\_Pope, Ess. on Crit.\_

EXERCISE XI.--MIXED ERRORS.

"The practices in the art of carpentry are called planeing, sawing,

mortising, scribing, moulding, &c."--\_Blair's Reader\_, p. 118. "With her

left hand, she guides the thread round the spindle, or rather round a spole

which goes on the spindle."--\_Ib.\_, p. 134. "Much suff'ring heroes next

their honours claim."--POPE: \_Johnson's Dict., w. Much\_. "Vein healing

verven, and head purging dill."--SPENSER: \_ib., w. Head\_. "An, in old

English, signifies \_if\_; as, '\_an\_ it please your honor.'"--\_Webster's

Dict.\_ "What, then, was the moral worth of these renouned

leaders?"--\_M'Ilvaine's Lect.\_, p. 460. "Behold how every form of human

misery is met by the self denying diligence of the benevolent."--\_Ib.\_, p.

411. "Reptiles, bats, and doleful creatures--jackalls, hyenas, and

lions--inhabit the holes, and caverns, and marshes of the desolate

city."--\_Ib.\_, p. 270. "ADAYS, \_adv\_. On or in days; as, in the phrase, now

\_adays\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "REFEREE, one to whom a thing is referred;

TRANSFERREE, the person to whom a transfer is made."--\_Ib.\_ "The

Hospitallers were an order of knights who built a hospital at Jerusalem for

pilgrims."--\_Ib.\_ "GERARD, Tom, or Tung, was the institutor and first grand

master of the knights hospitalers: he died in 1120."--\_Biog. Dict.\_ "I had

a purpose now to lead our many to the holy land."--SHAK.: \_in Johnson's

Dict.\_ "He turned their heart to hate his people, to deal subtilly with his

servants."--\_Psalms\_, cv, 25. "In Dryden's ode of Alexander's Feast, the

line, '\_Faln, faln, faln, faln\_,' represents a gradual sinking of the

mind."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 71. "The first of these lines is

marvelously nonsensical."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 117. "We have the nicely

chiseled forms of an Apollo and a Venus, but it is the same cold marble

still."--\_Christian Spect.\_, Vol. viii, p. 201. "Death waves his mighty

wand and paralyses all."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 35. "Fear God. Honor the

patriot. Respect virtue."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 216. "Pontius Pilate being

Governour of Judea, and Herod being Tetrarch of Galilee."--\_Ib.\_, p. 189.

See \_Luke\_, iii, 1. "AUCTIONEER, \_n. s\_. The person that manages an

auction."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "The earth put forth her primroses and

days-eyes, to behold him."--HOWEL: \_ib.\_ "\_Musselman\_, not being a compound

of \_man\_, is \_musselmans\_ in the plural."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 9. "The

absurdity of fatigueing them with a needless heap of grammar

rules."--\_Burgh's Dignity\_, Vol. i, p. 147. "John was forced to sit with

his arms a kimbo, to keep them asunder."--ARBUTHNOT: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "To set

the arms a kimbo, is to set the hands on the hips, with the elbows

projecting outward."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "We almost uniformly confine the

inflexion to the last or the latter noun."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 2. "This

is all souls day, fellows! Is it not?"--SHAK.: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "The english

physicians make use of troy-weight."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "There is a certain

number of ranks allowed to dukes, marquisses, and earls."--PEACHAM: \_ib.,

w. Marquis\_.

"How could you chide the young good natur'd prince,

And drive him from you with so stern an air."

--ADDISON: \_ib., w. Good\_, 25.

EXERCISE XII.--MIXED ERRORS.

"In reading, every appearance of sing-song should be avoided."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 75. "If you are thoroughly acquainted with the inflexions of the

verb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 53. "The preterite of \_read\_ is pronounced

\_red\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 48. "Humility opens a high way to dignity."--\_Ib.\_, p.

15. "What is intricate must be unraveled."--\_Ib.\_, p. 275. "Roger Bacon

invented gun powder, A. D. 1280."--\_Ib.\_, p. 277. "On which ever word we

lay the emphasis."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 243; 12mo, p. 195. "Each of

the leaders was apprized of the Roman invasion."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 123.

"If I say, 'I \_gallopped\_ from Islington to Holloway;' the verb is

intransitive: if, 'I \_gallopped\_ my \_horse\_ from Islington to Holloway;' it

is transitive."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 238. "The reasonableness of

setting a part one day in seven."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. iv, p. 240. "The

promoters of paper money making reprobated this act."--\_Webster's Essays\_,

p. 196. "There are five compound personal pronouns, which are derived from

the five simple personal pronouns by adding to some of their cases the

syllable \_self\_; as, my-self, thy-self, him-self, her-self,

it-self."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 16. "Possessives, my-own, thy-own, his-own,

her-own, its-own, our-own, your-own, their-own."--\_Ib., Declensions\_. "Thy

man servant and thy maid servant may rest, as well as thou."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 160. "How many right angles has an acute angled

triangle?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 220. "In the days of Jorum, king of Israel,

flourished the prophet Elisha."--\_Ib.\_, p. 148. "In the days of Jorum, king

of Israel, Elisha, the prophet flourished."--\_Ib.\_, p. 133. "Lodgable, \_a\_.

Capable of affording a temporary abode."--\_Webster's Octavo Dict.\_--"Win me

into the easy hearted man."--\_Johnson's Quarto Dict.\_ "And then to end

life, is the same as to dye."--\_Milnes's Greek Gram.\_, p. 176. "Those

usurping hectors who pretend to honour without religion, think the charge

of a lie a blot not to be washed out but by blood."--SOUTH: \_Joh. Dict.\_

"His gallies attending him, he pursues the unfortunate."--\_Nixon's Parser\_,

p. 91. "This cannot fail to make us shyer of yielding our

assent."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 117. "When he comes to the Italicised

word, he should give it such a definition as its connection with the

sentence may require."--\_Claggett's Expositor\_, p. vii. "Learn to distil

from your lips all the honies of persuasion."--\_Adams's Rhetoric\_, Vol. i,

p. 31. "To instill ideas of disgust and abhorrence against the

Americans."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 300. "Where prejudice has not acquired an

uncontroled ascendency."--\_Ib.\_, i, 31. "The uncontrolable propensity of

his mind was undoubtedly to oratory."--\_Ib.\_, i, 100. "The Brutus is a

practical commentary upon the dialogues and the orator."--\_Ib.\_, i, 120.

"The oratorical partitions are a short elementary compendium."--\_Ib.\_, i,

130. "You shall find hundreds of persons able to produce a crowd of good

ideas upon any subject, for one that can marshall them to the best

advantage."--\_Ib.\_, i, 169. "In this lecture, you have the outline of all

that the whole course will comprize."--\_Ib.\_, i, 182. "He would have been

stopped by a hint from the bench, that he was traveling out of the

record."--\_Ib.\_, i, 289. "To tell them that which should befal them in the

last days."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 308. "Where all is present, there is nothing past

to recal."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 358. "Whose due it is to drink the brimfull cup of

God's eternal vengeance."--\_Law and Grace\_, p. 36.

"There, from the dead, centurions see him rise,

See, but struck down with horrible surprize!"--\_Savage\_.

"With seed of woes my heart brimful is charged."--SIDNEY: \_Joh. Dict.\_

"Our legions are brimful, our cause is ripe."--SHAKSPEARE: \_ib.\_

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the different parts of speech, with their classes and

modifications.

The \_Parts of Speech\_ are the several kinds, or principal classes, into

which words are divided by grammarians.

\_Classes\_, under the parts of speech, are the particular sorts into which

the several kinds of words are subdivided.

\_Modifications\_ are inflections, or changes, in the terminations, forms, or

senses, of some kinds of words.

CHAPTER I.--PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech, or sorts of words, in English, are ten; namely, the

Article, the Noun, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Participle,

the Adverb, the Conjunction, the Preposition, and the Interjection.

1. THE ARTICLE.

An Article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_, which we put before nouns to

limit their signification: as, \_The\_ air, \_the\_ stars; \_an\_ island, \_a\_

ship.

2. THE NOUN.

A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or

mentioned: as, \_George, York, man, apple, truth\_.

3. THE ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses

quality: as, A \_wise\_ man; a \_new\_ book. You \_two\_ are \_diligent\_.

4. THE PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun: as, The boy loves \_his\_ book;

\_he\_ has long lessons, and \_he\_ learns \_them\_ well.

5. THE VERB.

A Verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_: as,

I \_am\_, I \_rule\_, I \_am ruled\_; I \_love\_, thou \_lovest\_, he \_loves\_.

6. THE PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of

a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding

\_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb: thus, from the verb \_rule\_, are formed

three participles, two simple and one compound; as, 1. \_ruling\_, 2.

\_ruled\_, 3. \_having ruled\_.

7. THE ADVERB.

An Adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an

other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner: as,

They are \_now here\_, studying \_very diligently\_.

8. THE CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction,

and to show the dependence of the terms so connected: as, "Thou \_and\_ he

are happy, \_because\_ you are good."--\_L. Murray\_.

9. THE PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things

or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a

pronoun; as, The paper lies \_before\_ me \_on\_ the desk.

10. THE INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is a word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or

sudden emotion of the mind: as, \_Oh! alas! ah! poh! pshaw! avaunt! aha!

hurrah!\_

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The first thing to be learned in the study of this the second part

of grammar, is the distribution of the words of the language into those

principal sorts, or classes, which are denominated \_the Parts of Speech\_.

This is a matter of some difficulty. And as no scheme which can be adopted,

will be in all cases so plain that young beginners will not occasionally

falter in its application, the teacher may sometimes find it expedient to

refer his pupils to the following simple explanations, which are designed

to aid their first and most difficult steps.

How can we know to what class, or part of speech, any word belongs? By

learning the definitions of the ten parts of speech, and then observing how

the word is written, and in what sense it is used. It is necessary also to

observe, so far as we can, with what other words each particular one is

capable of making sense.

1. Is it easy to distinguish an ARTICLE? If not always easy, it is

generally so: \_the, an\_, and \_a\_, are the only English words called

articles, and these are rarely any thing else. Because \_an\_ and \_a\_ have

the same import, and are supposed to have the same origin, the articles are

commonly reckoned two, but some count them as three.

2. How can we distinguish a NOUN? By means of the article before it, if

there is one; as, \_the house, an apple, a book\_; or, by adding it to the

phrase, "\_I mentioned\_;" as, "I mentioned \_peace\_;"--"I mentioned

\_war\_;"--"I mentioned \_slumber\_." Any word which thus makes complete sense,

is, in that sense, a noun; because a noun is the \_name\_ of any thing which

can thus be mentioned \_by a name\_. Of English nouns, there are said to be

as many as twenty-five or thirty thousand.

3. How can we distinguish an ADJECTIVE? By putting a noun after it, to see

if the phrase will be sense. The noun \_thing\_, or its plural \_things\_, will

suit almost any adjective; as, A \_good\_ thing--A \_bad\_ thing--A \_little\_

thing--A \_great\_ thing--\_Few\_ things--\_Many\_ things--\_Some\_ things--\_Fifty\_

things. Of adjectives, there are perhaps nine or ten thousand.

4. How can we distinguish a PRONOUN? By observing that its noun repeated

makes the same sense. Thus, the example of the pronoun above, "The boy

loves \_his\_ book; \_he\_ has long lessons, and \_he\_ learns \_them\_

well,"--very clearly means, "The boy loves \_the boy's\_ book; \_the boy\_ has

long lessons, and \_the boy\_ learns \_those lessons\_ well." Here then, by a

disagreeable repetition of two nouns, we have the same sense without any

pronoun; but it is obvious that the pronouns form a better mode of

expression, because they prevent this awkward repetition. The different

pronouns in English are twenty-four; and their variations in declension are

thirty-two: so that the number of \_words\_ of this class, is fifty-six.

5. How can we distinguish a VERB? By observing that it is usually the

principal word in the sentence, and that without it there would be no

assertion. It is the word which expresses what is affirmed or said of the

person or thing mentioned; as, "Jesus \_wept\_."--"Felix \_trembled\_."--"The

just \_shall live\_ by faith." It will make sense when inflected with the

pronouns; as, I \_write\_, thou \_writ'st\_, he \_writes\_; we \_write\_, you

\_write\_, they \_write\_.--I \_walk\_, thou \_walkst\_, he \_walks\_; we \_walk\_, you

\_walk\_, they \_walk\_. Of English verbs, some recent grammarians compute the

number at eight thousand; others formerly reckoned them to be no more than

four thousand three hundred.[131]

6. How can we distinguish a PARTICIPLE? By observing its derivation from

the verb, and then placing it after \_to be\_ or \_having\_; as, To be

\_writing\_, Having \_written\_--To be \_walking\_, Having \_walked\_--To be

\_weeping\_, Having \_wept\_--To be \_studying\_, Having \_studied\_. Of simple

participles, there are twice as many as there are of simple or radical

verbs; and the possible compounds are not less numerous than the simples,

but they are much less frequently used.

7. How can we distinguish an ADVERB? By observing that it answers to the

question, \_When? Where? How much?\_ or \_How\_?--or serves to ask it; as, "He

spoke fluently." \_How\_ did he speak? \_Fluently\_. This word \_fluently\_ is

therefore an adverb: it tells \_how\_ he spoke. Of adverbs, there are about

two thousand six hundred; and four fifths of them end in \_ly\_.

8. How can we distinguish a CONJUNCTION? By observing what words or terms

it joins together, or to what other conjunction it corresponds; as,

"\_Neither\_ wealth \_nor\_ honor can heal a wounded conscience."--\_Dillwyn's

Ref.\_, p. 16. Or, it may be well to learn the whole list at once: \_And, as,

both, because, even, for, if, that, then, since, seeing, so: Or, nor,

either, neither, than, though, although, yet, but, except, whether, lest,

unless, save, provided, notwithstanding, whereas.\_ Of conjunctions, there

are these twenty-nine in common use, and a few others now obsolete.

9. How can we distinguish a PREPOSITION? By observing that it will govern

the pronoun \_them\_, and is not a verb or a participle; as, \_About\_

them--\_above\_ them--\_across\_ them--\_after\_ them--\_against\_ them--\_amidst\_

them--\_among\_ them--\_around\_ them--\_at\_ them--\_Before\_ them--\_behind\_

them--\_below\_ them--\_beneath\_ them--\_beside\_ them--\_between\_ them--\_beyond\_

them--\_by\_ them--\_For\_ them--\_from\_ them--\_In\_ them--\_into\_ them, &c. Of

the prepositions, there are about sixty now in common use.

10. How can we distinguish an INTERJECTION? By observing that it is an

independent word or sound, uttered earnestly, and very often written with

the note of exclamation; as \_Lo! behold! look! see! hark! hush! hist! mum!\_

Of interjections, there are sixty or seventy in common use, some of which

are seldom found in books.

OBS. 2.--An accurate knowledge of words, and of their changes, is

indispensable to a clear discernment of their proper combinations in

sentences, according to the usage of the learned. Etymology, therefore,

should be taught before syntax; but it should be chiefly taught by a direct

analysis of entire sentences, and those so plainly written that the

particular effect of every word may be clearly distinguished, and the

meaning, whether intrinsic or relative, be discovered with precision. The

parts of speech are usually named and defined with reference to the use of

words \_in sentences\_; and, as the same word not unfrequently stands for

several different parts of speech, the learner should be early taught to

make for himself the proper application of the foregoing distribution,

without recurrence to a dictionary, and without aid from his teacher. He

who is endeavouring to acquaint himself with the grammar of a language

which he can already read and understand, is placed in circumstances very

different from those which attend the school-boy who is just beginning to

construe some sentences of a foreign tongue. A frequent use of the

dictionary may facilitate the progress of the one, while it delays that of

the other. English grammar, it is hoped, may be learned directly from this

book alone, with better success than can be expected when the attention of

the learner is divided among several or many different works.

OBS. 3.--Dr. James P. Wilson, in speaking of the classification of words,

observes, "The \_names\_ of the distributive parts should either express,

distinctly, the influence, which each class produces on sentences; or some

other characteristic trait, by which the respective species of words may be

distinguished, without danger of confusion. It is at least probable, that

no distribution, sufficiently minute, can ever be made, of the parts of

speech, which shall be wholly free from all objection. Hasty innovations,

therefore, and crude conjectures, should not be permitted to disturb that

course of grammatical instruction, which has been advancing in melioration,

by the unremitting labours of thousands, through a series of

ages."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 66. Again: "The \_number\_ of the parts

of speech may be reduced, or enlarged, at pleasure; and the rules of

syntax may be accommodated to such new arrangement. The best grammarians

find it difficult, in practice, to distinguish, in some instances, adverbs,

prepositions, and conjunctions; yet their effects are generally distinct.

This inconvenience should be submitted to, since a less comprehensive

distribution would be very unfavourable to a rational investigation of the

meaning of English sentences."--\_Ib.\_, p. 68. Again: "\_As\_ and \_so\_ have

been also deemed substitutes, and resolved into other words. But if all

abbreviations are to be restored to their primitive parts of speech, there

will be a general revolution in the present systems of grammar; and the

various improvements, which have sprung from convenience, or necessity, and

been sanctioned by the usage of ancient times, must be retrenched, and

anarchy in letters universally prevail."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114.

OBS. 4.--I have elsewhere sufficiently shown why \_ten\_ parts of speech are

to be preferred to any other number, in English; and whatever diversity of

opinion there may be, respecting the class to which some particular words

ought to be referred, I trust to make it obvious to good sense, that I have

seldom erred from the course which is most expedient. 1. \_Articles\_ are

used with appellative nouns, sometimes to denote emphatically the species,

but generally to designate individuals. 2. \_Nouns\_ stand in discourse for

persons, things, or abstract qualities. 3. \_Adjectives\_ commonly express

the concrete qualities of persons or things; but sometimes, their situation

or number. 4. \_Pronouns\_ are substitutes for names, or nouns; but they

sometimes represent sentences. 5. \_Verbs\_ assert, ask, or say something;

and, for the most part, express action or motion. 6. \_Participles\_ contain

the essential meaning of their verbs, and commonly denote action, and imply

time; but, apart from auxiliaries, they express that meaning either

adjectively or substantively, and not with assertion. 7. \_Adverbs\_ express

the circumstances of time, of place, of degree, and of manner; the \_when\_,

the \_where\_, the \_how much\_, and the \_how\_. 8. \_Conjunctions\_ connect,

sometimes words, and sometimes sentences, rarely phrases; and always show,

either the manner in which one sentence or one phrase depends upon an

other, or what connexion there is between two words that refer to a third.

9. \_Prepositions\_ express the correspondent relations of things to things,

of thoughts to thoughts, or of words to words; for these, if we speak

truly, must be all the same in expression. 10. \_Interjections\_ are either

natural sounds or exclamatory words, used independently, and serving

briefly to indicate the wishes or feelings of the speaker.

OBS. 5.--In the following passage, all the parts of speech are exemplified,

and each is pointed out by the figure placed over the word:--

1 2 9 2 5 1 2 3 9 2 1 2 6

"The power of speech is a faculty peculiar to man; a faculty bestowed

9 4 9 4 3 2 9 1 3 8 7 3

on him by his beneficent Creator, for the greatest and most excellent

2 8 10 7 7 5 4 5 4 9 1 3 9

uses; but, alas! how often do we pervert it to the worst of

2

purposes!"--See \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 1.

In this sentence, which has been adopted by Murray, Churchill, and others,

we have the following parts of speech: 1. The words \_the, a\_, and \_an\_, are

articles. 2. The words \_power, speech, faculty, man, faculty, Creator,

uses\_, and \_purposes\_, are nouns. 3. The words \_peculiar, beneficent,

greatest, excellent\_, and \_worst\_, are adjectives. 4. The words \_him, his,

we\_, and \_it\_, are pronouns. 5. The words \_is, do\_, and \_pervert\_, are

verbs. 6. The word \_bestowed\_ is a participle. 7. The words \_most, how\_,

and \_often\_, are adverbs. 8. The words \_and\_ and \_but\_ are conjunctions. 9.

The words \_of, on, to, by, for, to\_, and \_of\_, are prepositions. 10. The

word \_alas!\_ is an interjection.

OBS. 6.--In speaking or writing, we of course bring together the different

parts of speech just as they happen to be needed. Though a sentence of

ordinary length usually embraces more than one half of them, it is not

often that we find them \_all\_ in so small a compass. Sentences sometimes

abound in words of a particular kind, and are quite destitute of those of

some other sort. The following examples will illustrate these remarks. (1)

ARTICLES: "\_A\_ square is less beautiful than \_a\_ circle; and \_the\_ reason

seems to be, that \_the\_ attention is divided among \_the\_ sides and angles

of \_a\_ square, whereas \_the\_ circumference of \_a\_ circle, being \_a\_ single

object, makes one entire impression."--\_Kames, Elements of Criticism\_, Vol.

i, p. 175. (2.) NOUNS: "A \_number\_ of \_things\_ destined for the same \_use\_,

such as \_windows, chairs, spoons, buttons\_, cannot be too uniform; for,

supposing their \_figure\_ to be good, \_utility\_ requires

\_uniformity\_."--\_Ib.\_, i, 176. (3.) ADJECTIVES: "Hence nothing \_just,

proper, decent, beautiful, proportioned\_, or \_grand\_, is

\_risible\_."--\_Ib.\_, i, 229. (4.) PRONOUNS: "\_I\_ must entreat the courteous

reader to suspend \_his\_ curiosity, and rather to consider \_what\_ is written

than \_who they\_ are \_that\_ write it."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 556. (5.)

VERBS: "The least consideration \_will inform\_ us how easy it \_is\_ to \_put\_

an ill-natured construction upon a word; and what perverse turns and

expressions \_spring\_ from an evil temper. Nothing \_can be explained\_ to him

who \_will\_ not \_understand\_, nor \_will\_ any thing \_appear\_ right to the

unreasonable."--\_Cecil\_. (6.) PARTICIPLES: "The Scriptures are an

authoritative voice, \_reproving, instructing\_, and \_warning\_ the world; and

\_declaring\_ the only means \_ordained\_ and \_provided for escaping\_ the awful

penalties of sin."--\_G. B.\_ (7.) ADVERBS: "The light of Scripture shines

\_steadily, purely, benignly, certainly, superlatively\_."--\_Dr. S. H. Cox.\_

(8.) CONJUNCTIONS: "Quietness and silence \_both\_ become \_and\_ befriend

religious exercises. Clamour \_and\_ violence often hinder, \_but\_ never

further, the work of God."--\_Henry's Exposition.\_ (9.) PREPOSITIONS: "He

has kept \_among us\_, in times of peace, standing armies, \_without\_ the

consent of our legislatures."--\_Dec. of Indep.\_ (10.) INTERJECTIONS: "\_Oh\_,

my dear strong-box! \_Oh\_, my lost guineas! \_Oh\_, poor, ruined, beggared old

man! \_Boo! hoo! hoo!\_"--MOLIERE: \_Burgh's Art of Speaking\_, p. 266.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

\_Parsing\_ is the resolving or explaining of a sentence, or of some related

word or words, according to the definitions and rules of grammar. Parsing

is to grammar what ciphering is to arithmetic.

A \_Praxis\_ is a method of exercise, or a form of grammatical resolution,

showing the learner how to proceed. The word is Greek, and literally

signifies action, doing, practice, or formal use.

PRAXIS I--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the first Praxis, it is required of the pupil--merely to distinguish

and define the different parts of speech.

The definitions to be given in the First Praxis, are one, and only one, for

each word, or part of speech. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The patient ox submits to the yoke, and meekly performs the labour

required of him."

\_The\_ is an article. 1.[132] An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification.

\_Patient\_ is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

\_Ox\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that

can be known or mentioned.

\_Submits\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or

\_to be acted upon.\_

\_To\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_The\_ is an article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_, which we

put before nouns to limit their signification.

\_Yoke\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing,

that can be known or mentioned.

\_And\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or

sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_Meekly\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner.

\_Performs\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_,

or \_to be acted upon.\_

\_The\_ is an article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_, which we

put before nouns to limit their signification.

\_Labour\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing,

that can be known or mentioned.

\_Required\_ is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb,

participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and

is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Him\_ is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"A nimble tongue often trips. The rule of the tongue is a great attainment.

The language of truth is direct and plain. Truth is never evasive. Flattery

is the food of vanity. A virtuous mind loathes flattery. Vain persons are

an easy prey to parasites. Vanity easily mistakes sneers for smiles. The

smiles of the world are deceitful. True friendship hath eternal views. A

faithful friend is invaluable. Constancy in friendship denotes a generous

mind. Adversity is the criterion of friendship. Love and fidelity are

inseparable. Few know the value of a friend till they lose him. Justice is

the first of all moral virtues. Let justice hold, and mercy turn, the

scale. A judge is guilty who connives at guilt. Justice delayed is little

better than justice denied. Vice is the deformity of man. Virtue is a

source of constant cheerfulness. One vice is more expensive than many

virtues. Wisdom, though serious, is never sullen. Youth is the season of

improvement."--\_Dillwyn's Reflections\_, pp. 4-27.

"Oh! my ill-chang'd condition! oh, my fate!

Did I lose heaven for this?"--\_Cowley's Davideis.\_

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"So prone is man to society, and so happy in it, that, to relish perpetual

solitude, one must be an angel or a brute. In a solitary state, no creature

is more timid than man; in society, none more bold. The number of offenders

lessens the disgrace of the crime; for a common reproach is no reproach. A

man is more unhappy in reproaching himself when guilty, than in being

reproached by others when innocent. The pains of the mind are harder to

bear than those of the body. Hope, in this mixed state of good and ill, is

a blessing from heaven: the gift of prescience would be a curse. The first

step towards vice, is to make a mystery of what is innocent: whoever loves

to hide, will soon or late have reason to hide. A man who gives his

children a habit of industry, provides for them better than by giving them

a stock of money. Our good and evil proceed from ourselves: death appeared

terrible to Cicero, indifferent to Socrates, desirable to Cato."--Home's

Art of Thinking, pp. 26-53.

"O thou most high transcendent gift of age!

Youth from its folly thus to disengage."--\_Denham's Age\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"Calm was the day, and the scene, delightful. We may expect a calm after a

storm. To prevent passion is easier than to calm it."--\_Murray's Ex.\_, p.

5. "Better is a little with content, than a great deal with anxiety. A

little attention will rectify some errors. Unthinking persons care little

for the future."--See \_ib.\_ "Still waters are commonly deepest. He laboured

to still the tumult. Though he is out of danger, he is still

afraid."--\_Ib.\_ "Damp air is unwholesome. Guilt often casts a damp over our

sprightliest hours. Soft bodies damp the sound much more than hard

ones."--\_Ib.\_ "The hail was very destructive. Hail, virtue! source of every

good. We hail you as friends."--\_Ib.\_, p. 6. "Much money makes no man

happy. Think much, and speak little. He has seen much of the world."--See

\_ib.\_ "Every being loves its like. We must make a like space between the

lines. Behave like men. We are apt to like pernicious company."--\_Ib.\_

"Give me more love, or more disdain."--\_Carew\_. "He loved Rachel more than

Leah."--\_Genesis\_. "But how much that more is; he hath no distinct

notion."--\_Locke\_.

"And my more having would be as a sauce

To make me hunger more."--\_Shakspeare\_.

CHAPTER II.--ARTICLES.

An Article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_, which we put before nouns to

limit their signification: as, \_The\_ air, \_the\_ stars; \_an\_ island, \_a\_

ship.

\_An\_ and \_a\_, being equivalent in meaning, are commonly reckoned \_one and

the same\_ article. \_An\_ is used in preference to \_a\_, whenever the

following word begins with a vowel sound; as, \_An\_ art, \_an\_ end, \_an\_

heir, \_an\_ inch, \_an\_ ounce, \_an\_ hour, \_an\_ urn. \_A\_ is used in preference

to \_an\_, whenever the following word begins with a consonant sound; as, \_A\_

man, \_a\_ house, \_a\_ wonder, \_a\_ one, \_a\_ yew, \_a\_ use, \_a\_ ewer. Thus the

consonant sounds of \_w\_ and \_y\_, even when expressed by other letters,

require \_a\_ and not \_an\_ before them.

A common noun, when taken in its \_widest sense\_, usually admits no article:

as, "A candid temper is proper for \_man\_; that is, for \_all

mankind\_."--\_Murray\_.

In English, nouns without any article, or other definitive, are often used

in a sense \_indefinitely partitive\_: as, "He took \_bread\_, and gave

thanks."--\_Acts\_. That is, "\_some bread\_." "To buy \_food\_ are thy servants

come."--\_Genesis\_. That is, "\_some food\_." "There are \_fishes\_ that have

wings, and are not strangers to the airy region."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p.

322. That is, "\_some fishes\_."

"Words in which nothing but the \_mere being\_ of any thing is implied, are

used without articles: as, 'This is not \_beer\_, but \_water\_;' 'This is not

\_brass\_, but \_steel\_.'"--See \_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 5.

\_An\_ or \_a\_ before the genus, may refer to \_a whole species\_; and \_the\_

before the species, may denote that whole species emphatically: as, "\_A

certain bird\_ is termed \_the cuckoo\_, from \_the sound\_ which it

emits."--\_Blair\_.

But \_an\_ or \_a\_ is commonly used to denote individuals as \_unknown\_, or as

not specially distinguished from others: as, "I see \_an object\_ pass by,

which I never saw till now; and I say, 'There goes \_a beggar\_ with \_a long

beard\_.'"--\_Harris\_.

And \_the\_ is commonly used to denote individuals as \_known\_, or as

specially distinguished from others: as, "\_The man\_ departs, and returns a

week after; and I say, 'There goes \_the beggar\_ with \_the long

beard\_.'"--\_Id.\_

The article \_the\_ is applied to nouns of cither number: as, "\_The\_ man,

\_the\_ men;" "\_The\_ good boy, \_the\_ good boys."

\_The\_ is commonly required before adjectives that are used by ellipsis as

nouns: as, "\_The young\_ are slaves to novelty; \_the old\_, to custom."--\_Ld.

Kames.\_

The article \_an\_ or \_a\_ implies \_unity\_, or \_one\_, and of course belongs to

nouns of the singular number only; as, \_A\_ man,--\_An\_ old man,--\_A\_ good

boy.

\_An\_ or \_a\_, like \_one\_, sometimes gives a collective meaning to an

adjective of number, when the noun following is plural; as, \_A few days,--A

hundred men,--One hundred pounds sterling\_.

Articles should be \_inserted\_ as often as the sense requires them; as,

"Repeat the preterit and [\_the\_] perfect participle of the verb \_to

abide\_."--Error in \_Merchant's American School Grammar\_, p. 66.

\_Needless articles\_ should be omitted; they seldom fail to pervert the

sense: as, "\_The\_ Rhine, \_the\_ Danube, \_the\_ Tanais, \_the\_ Po, \_the\_ Wolga,

\_the\_ Ganges, like many hundreds of similar \_names\_, rose not from any

obscure jargon or irrational dialect."--Error in \_Dr. Murray's Hist. of

Europ. Lang.\_, Vol. i, p. 327.

The articles can seldom be put \_one for the other\_, without gross

impropriety; and of course either is to be preferred to the other, as it

better suits the sense: as, "\_The\_ violation of this rule never fails to

hurt and displease \_a\_ reader."--Error in \_Blair's Lectures\_, p. 107. Say,

"\_A\_ violation of this rule never fails to displease \_the\_ reader."

CLASSES.

The articles are distinguished as the \_definite\_ and the \_indefinite\_.

I. The \_definite article\_ is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or

things; as, \_The\_ boy, \_the\_ oranges.

II. The \_indefinite article\_ is \_an\_ or \_a\_, which denotes one thing of a

kind, but not any particular one; as, \_A\_ boy, \_an\_ orange.

MODIFICATIONS.[133]

The English articles have no modifications, except that \_an\_ is shortened

into \_a\_ before the sound of a consonant; as, "In \_an\_ epic poem, or \_a\_

poem upon \_an\_ elevated subject, \_a\_ writer ought to avoid raising \_a\_

simile on \_a\_ low image."--\_Ld. Kames.\_

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--No other words are so often employed as the articles. And, by

reason of the various and very frequent occasions on which these

definitives are required, no words are oftener misapplied; none, oftener

omitted or inserted erroneously. I shall therefore copiously illustrate

both their \_uses\_ and their \_abuses\_; with the hope that every reader of

this volume will think it worth his while to gain that knowledge which is

requisite to the true use of these small but important words. Some parts of

the explanation, however, must be deferred till we come to Syntax.

OBS. 2.--With the attempts of Tooke, Dalton, Webster, Cardell, Fowle,

Wells,[134] Weld, Butler Frazee, Perley, Mulligan, Pinneo, S. S. Greene,

and other writers, to \_degrade\_ the article from its ancient rank among the

parts of speech, no judicious reader, duly acquainted with the subject,

can, I think, be well pleased. An article is not properly an "\_adjective\_,"

as they would have it to be; but it is a word of a peculiar sort--a

\_customary index\_ to the sense of nouns. It serves not merely to show the

extent of signification, in which nouns are to be taken, but is often the

principal, and sometimes the only mark, by which a word is known to have

the sense and construction of a noun. There is just as much reason to deny

and degrade the Greek or French article, (or that of any other language,)

as the English; and, if those who are so zealous to reform our \_the, an\_,

and \_a\_ into \_adjectives\_, cared at all to appear consistent in the view of

Comparative or General Grammar, they would either set about a wider

reformation or back out soon from the pettiness of this.

OBS. 3.--First let it be understood, that \_an\_ or \_a\_ is nearly equivalent

in meaning to the numeral adjective \_one\_, but less emphatic; and that

\_the\_ is nearly equivalent in meaning to the pronominal adjective \_that\_ or

\_those\_, but less emphatic. On \_some\_ occasions, these adjectives may well

be substituted for the articles; but \_not generally\_. If the articles were

generally equivalent to adjectives, or even if they were generally \_like\_

them, they would \_be\_ adjectives; but, that adjectives may occasionally

supply their places, is no argument at all for confounding the two parts of

speech. Distinctions must be made, where differences exist; and, that \_a,

an\_, and \_the\_, do differ considerably from the other words which they most

resemble, is shown even by some who judge "the distinctive name of

\_article\_ to be useless." See \_Crombie's Treatise\_, Chap. 2. The articles

therefore must be distinguished, not only from adjectives, but from each

other. For, though both are \_articles\_, each is an index \_sui generis\_; the

one definite, the other indefinite. And as the words \_that\_ and \_one\_

cannot often be interchanged without a difference of meaning, so the

definite article and the indefinite are seldom, if ever, interchangeable.

To put one for the other, is therefore, in general, to put one \_meaning\_

for an other: "\_A\_ daughter of \_a\_ poor man"--"\_The\_ daughter of \_the\_ poor

man"--"\_A\_ daughter of \_the\_ poor man"--and, "\_The\_ daughter of \_a\_ poor

man," are four phrases which certainly have four different and distinct

significations. This difference between the two articles may be further

illustrated by the following example: "That Jesus was \_a\_ prophet sent from

God, is one proposition; that Jesus was \_the\_ prophet, \_the\_ Messiah, is an

other; and, though he certainly was both \_a\_ prophet and \_the\_ prophet, yet

\_the\_ foundations of \_the\_ proof of these propositions are separate and

distinct."--\_Watson's Apology\_, p. 105.

OBS. 4.--Common nouns are, for the most part, names of large classes of

objects; and, though what really constitutes the species must always be

found entire in every individual, the several objects thus arranged under

one general name or idea, are in most instances susceptible of such a

numerical distribution as gives rise to an other form of the noun,

expressive of plurality; as, \_horse, horses\_. Proper nouns in their

ordinary application, are, for the most part, names of particular

individuals; and as there is no plurality to a particular idea, or to an

individual person or thing as distinguished from all others, so there is in

general none to this class of nouns; and no room for \_further restriction

by articles\_. But we sometimes divert such nouns from their usual

signification, and consequently employ them with articles or in the plural

form; as, "I endeavoured to retain it nakedly in my mind, without regarding

whether I had it from \_an Aristotle\_ or \_a Zoilus, a Newton\_ or \_a

Descartes\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, Pref., p. 8. "It is not enough to have

\_Vitruviuses\_, we must also have \_Augustuses\_ to employ them."--\_Bicknell's

Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 61.

"\_A Daniel\_ come to judgment! yea, \_a Daniel\_!"

--SHAK. \_Shylock\_.

"Great Homer, in \_th' Achilles\_, whom he drew,

Sets not that one sole Person in our View."

--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 183.

OBS. 5.--The article \_an\_ or \_a\_ usually denotes one out of several or

many; one of a sort of which there are more; any one of that name, no

matter which. Hence its effect upon a particular name, or proper noun, is

\_directly the reverse\_ of that which it has upon a common noun. It varies

and fixes the meaning of both; but while it restricts that of the latter,

it enlarges that of the former. It reduces the general idea of the common

noun to any one individual of the class: as, "\_A man\_;" that is, "\_One

man\_, or \_any man\_." On the contrary, it extends the particular idea of the

proper noun, and makes the word significant of a class, by supposing others

to whom it will apply: as, "\_A Nero\_;" that is, "\_Any Nero\_, or \_any cruel

tyrant\_." Sometimes, however, this article before a proper name, seems to

leave the idea still particular; but, if it really does so, the propriety

of using it may be doubted: as, "No, not by \_a John the Baptist\_ risen from

the dead."--\_Henry's Expos., Mark\_, vi. "It was not solely owing to the

madness and depravity of \_a Tiberius, a Caligula, a Nero\_, or \_a

Caracalla\_, that a cruel and sanguinary spirit, in their day, was so

universal."--\_M'Ilvaine's Evid.\_, p. 398.

OBS. 6.--With the definite article, the noun is applied, sometimes

specifically, sometimes individually, but always \_definitely\_, always

distinctively. This article is demonstrative. It marks either the

particular individual, or the particular species,--or, (if the noun be

plural,) some particular individuals of the species,--as being

distinguished from all others. It sometimes refers to a thing as having

been previously mentioned; sometimes presumes upon the hearer's familiarity

with the thing; and sometimes indicates a limitation which is made by

subsequent words connected with the noun. Such is the import of this

article, that with it the singular number of the noun is often more

comprehensive, and at the same time more specific, than the plural. Thus,

if I say, "\_The horse\_ is a noble animal," without otherwise intimating

that I speak of some particular horse, the sentence will be understood to

embrace collectively \_that species\_ of animal; and I shall be thought to

mean, "Horses are noble animals." But if I say, "\_The horses\_ are noble

animals," I use an expression so much more limited, as to include only a

few; it must mean some particular horses, which I distinguish from all the

rest of the species. Such limitations should be made, whenever there is

occasion for them; but needless restrictions displease the imagination, and

ought to be avoided; because the mind naturally delights in terms as

comprehensive as they may be, if also specific. Lindley Murray, though not

uniform in his practice respecting this, seems to have thought it necessary

to use the plural in many sentences in which I should decidedly prefer the

singular; as, "That \_the learners\_ may have no doubts."--\_Murray's Octavo

Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 81. "The business will not be tedious to \_the

scholars\_."--\_Ib.\_, 81. "For the information of \_the learners\_."--\_Ib.\_,

81. "It may afford instruction to \_the learners\_."--\_Ib.\_, 110. "That this

is the case, \_the learners\_ will perceive by the following

examples."--\_Ib.\_, 326. "Some knowledge of it appears to be indispensable

to \_the scholars\_."--\_Ib.\_, 335.

OBS. 7.--Proper names of a plural form and signification, are almost always

preceded by the definite article; as, "\_The Wesleys\_,"--"\_The twelve

Cæsars\_,"--"\_All the Howards\_." So the names of particular nations, tribes,

and sects; as, \_The Romans, the Jews, the Levites, the Stoics\_. Likewise

the plural names of mountains; as, \_The Alps, the Apennines, the Pyrenees,

the Andes\_. Of plural names like these, and especially of such as designate

tribes and sects, there is a very great number. Like other proper names,

they must be distinguished from the ordinary words of the language, and

accordingly they are always written with capitals; but they partake so

largely of the nature of common nouns, that it seems doubtful to which

class they most properly belong. Hence they not only admit, but require the

article; while most other proper names are so definite in themselves, that

the article, if put before them, would be needless, and therefore improper.

"\_Nash, Rutledge, Jefferson\_, in council great,

And \_Jay\_, and \_Laurens\_ oped the rolls of fate;

\_The Livingstons\_, fair freedoms generous band,

\_The Lees, the Houstons\_, fathers of the land."--\_Barlow\_.

OBS. 8.--In prose, the definite article is always used before names of

rivers, unless the word \_river\_, be added; as, \_The Delaware, the Hudson,

the Connecticut\_. But if the word \_river\_ be added, the article becomes

needless; as, \_Delaware river, Hudson river, Connecticut river\_. Yet there

seems to be no impropriety in using both; as, \_The Delaware river, the

Hudson river, the Connecticut river\_. And if the common noun be placed

before the proper name, the article is again necessary; as, \_The river

Delaware, the river Hudson, the river Connecticut\_. In the first form of

expression, however, the article has not usually been resolved by

grammarians as relating to the proper name; but these examples, and others

of a similar character, have been supposed elliptical: as, "\_The\_ [river]

\_Potomac\_"--"\_The\_ [ship] \_Constitution\_,"--"\_The\_ [steamboat] \_Fulton\_."

Upon this supposition, the words in the first and fourth forms are to be

parsed alike; the article relating to the common noun, expressed or

understood, and the proper noun being in apposition with the appellative.

But in the second form, the apposition is reversed; and, in the third, the

proper name appears to be taken adjectively. Without the article, some

names of rivers could not be understood; as,

"No more \_the Varus\_ and \_the Atax\_ feel

The lordly burden of the Latian keel."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. i. l. 722.

OBS. 9.--The definite article is often used by way of eminence, to

distinguish some particular individual emphatically, or to apply to him

some characteristic name or quality: as, "\_The Stagirite\_,"--that is,

Aristotle; "\_The Psalmist\_," that is, David; "\_Alexander the Great\_,"--that

is, (perhaps,) Alexander the Great \_Monarch\_, or Great \_Hero\_. So,

sometimes, when the phrase relates to a collective body of men: as, "\_The

Honourable, the Legislature\_,"--"\_The Honourable, the Senate\_;"--that is,

"The Honourable \_Body\_, the Legislature," &c. A similar application of the

article in the following sentences, makes a most beautiful and expressive

form of compliment: "These are the sacred feelings of thy heart, O

Lyttleton, \_the friend\_."--\_Thomson\_. "The pride of swains Palemon was,

\_the generous\_ and \_the rich\_."--\_Id.\_ In this last example, the noun \_man\_

is understood after "\_generous\_," and again after "\_rich\_;" for, the

article being an index to the noun, I conceive it to be improper ever to

construe two articles as having reference to one unrepeated word. Dr.

Priestley says, "We sometimes \_repeat the article\_, when the epithet

precedes the substantive; as He was met by \_the\_ worshipful \_the\_

magistrates."--\_Gram.\_, p. 148. It is true, we occasionally meet with such

fulsome phraseology as this; but the question is, how is it to be

explained? I imagine that the word \_personages\_, or something equivalent,

must be understood after \_worshipful\_, and that the Doctor ought to have

inserted a comma there.

OBS. 10.--In Greek, there is no article corresponding to our \_an\_ or \_a\_,

consequently \_man\_ and \_a man\_ are rendered alike; the word, [Greek:

anthropos] may mean either. See, in the original, these texts: "There was

\_a man\_ sent from God," (\_John\_, i, 6,) and, "What is \_man\_, that thou art

mindful of him?"--\_Heb.\_, ii, 6. So of other nouns. But the \_definite\_

article of that language, which is exactly equivalent to our \_the\_, is a

declinable word, making no small figure in grammar. It is varied by

numbers, genders, and cases; so that it assumes more than twenty different

forms, and becomes susceptible of six and thirty different ways of

\_agreement\_. But this article in English is perfectly simple, being

entirely destitute of grammatical modifications, and consequently incapable

of any form of grammatical agreement or disagreement--a circumstance of

which many of our grammarians seem to be ignorant; since they prescribe a

rule, wherein they say, it "\_agrees\_," "\_may agree\_," or "\_must agree\_,"

with its noun. Nor has the indefinite article any variation of form, except

the change from \_an\_ to \_a\_, which has been made for the sake of brevity or

euphony.

OBS. 11.--As \_an\_ or \_a\_ conveys the idea of unity, of course it applies to

no other than nouns of the singular number. \_An eagle\_ is one eagle, and

the plural word \_eagles\_ denotes more than one; but what could possibly be

meant by "\_ans eagles\_," if such a phrase were invented? Harris very

strangely says, "The Greeks have no article correspondent to \_an\_ or \_a\_,

but \_supply its place by a NEGATION of their article\_. And even in English,

\_where\_ the article \_a\_ cannot be used, as \_in\_ plurals, \_its force is

exprest by the same\_ NEGATION."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 218. What a sample

of grammar is this! Besides several minor faults, we have here a

\_nonentity\_, a NEGATION \_of the Greek article\_, made to occupy a place in

language, and to express \_force!\_ The force of what? Of a plural \_an\_ or

\_a,!\_ of such a word as \_ans\_ or \_aes!\_ The error of the first of these

sentences, Dr. Blair has copied entire into his eighth lecture.

OBS. 12.--The following rules of agreement, though found in many English

grammars, are not only objectionable with respect to the sense intended,

but so badly written as to be scarcely intelligible in any sense: 1. "The

article \_a\_ or \_an agrees\_ with nouns \_in\_ the singular number \_only,

individually, or collectively\_: as, A Christian, an infidel, a score, a

thousand." 2. "The definite article \_the\_ may \_agree\_ with nouns \_in the

singular\_ AND[135] \_plural number\_: as, The garden, the houses, the

stars."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 170; 12mo, 139; \_Fish's Murray\_, 98; \_a

Teacher's\_, 45. For the purpose of preventing any erroneous construction of

the articles, these rules are utterly useless; and for the purpose of

syntactical parsing, or the grammatical resolution of this part of speech,

they are awkward and inconvenient. The syntax of the articles may be much

better expressed in this manner: "\_Articles relate to the nouns which they

limit\_," for, in English, the bearing of the articles upon other words is

properly that of simple \_relation\_, or dependence, according to the sense,

and not that of \_agreement\_, not a similarity of distinctive modifications.

OBS. 13.--Among all the works of earlier grammarians, I have never yet

found a book which taught correctly the \_application\_ of the two forms of

the indefinite article \_an\_ or \_a\_. Murray, contrary to Johnson and

Webster, considers \_a\_ to be the original word, and \_an\_ the euphonic

derivative. He says: "\_A\_ becomes \_an\_ before a vowel, and before a silent

\_h\_. But if \_the h be\_ sounded, \_the a only\_ is to be used."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 31. To this he adds, in a marginal note, "\_A instead of an\_ is

\_now\_ used before words beginning with \_u\_ long. It is used before \_one.

An\_ must be used before \_words\_ WHERE \_the h\_ is not silent, if the accent

is on the second syllable; as, \_an heroic action, an historical

account\_."--\_Ib.\_ This explanation, clumsy as it is, in the whole

conception; broken, prolix, deficient, and inaccurate as it is, both in

style and doctrine; has been copied and copied from grammar to grammar, as

if no one could possibly better it. Besides several other faults, it

contains a palpable misuse of the article itself: "\_the h\_" which is

specified in the second and fifth sentences, is the "\_silent h\_" of the

first sentence; and this inaccurate specification gives us the two obvious

solecisms of supposing, "\_if the [silent] h be sounded\_," and of \_locating

"words WHERE the [silent] h is not silent!\_" In the word \_humour\_, and its

derivatives, the \_h\_ is silent, by all authority except Webster's; and yet

these words require \_a\_ and not \_an\_ before them.

OBS. 14.--It is the \_sound\_ only, that governs the form of the article, and

not the \_letter\_ itself; as, "Those which admit of the regular form, are

marked with \_an\_ R."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 101. "\_A\_ heroic poem, written

by Virgil."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Every poem of the kind has no doubt \_a\_

historical groundwork."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 457. "A poet

must be \_a\_ naturalist and \_a\_ historian."--\_Coleridge's Introduction\_, p.

111. Before \_h\_ in an unaccented syllable, either form of the article may

be used without offence to the ear; and either may be made to appear

preferable to the other, by merely aspirating the letter in a greater or

less degree. But as the \_h\_, though ever so feebly aspirated has

\_something\_ of a consonant sound, I incline to think the article in this

case ought to conform to the general principle: as, "\_A historical\_

introduction has, generally, \_a happy\_ effect to rouse attention."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 311. "He who would write heroic poems, should make his

whole life \_a heroic\_ poem."--See \_Life of Schiller\_, p. 56. Within two

lines of this quotation, the biographer speaks of "\_an\_ heroic multitude!"

The suppression of the sound of \_h\_ being with Englishmen a very common

fault in pronunciation, it is not desirable to increase the error, by using

a form of the article which naturally leads to it. "How often do we hear

\_an air\_ metamorphosed into \_a hair\_, a \_hat\_ into a \_gnat\_, and a \_hero\_

into \_a Nero!\_"--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 205. Thus: "Neither of them had

that bold and adventurous ambition which makes a conqueror \_an

hero.\_"--\_Bolingbroke, on History\_, p. 174.

OBS. 15.--Some later grammarians are still more faulty than Murray, in

their rules for the application of \_an\_ or \_a\_. Thus Sanborn: "The vowels

are \_a, e, i, o\_, and \_u\_. \_An\_ should be used before words beginning with

\_any of these letters\_, or with a silent \_h.\_"--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 11.

"\_An\_ is used before words beginning with \_u\_ long or with \_h not silent\_,

when the accent is on the second syllable; as, \_an united\_ people, \_an

historical\_ account, \_an heroic\_ action."--\_Ib.\_, p. 85. "\_A\_ is used when

the next word begins with a \_consonant; an\_, when it begins with a \_vowel\_

or silent \_h\_."--\_lb.\_, p. 129. If these rules were believed and followed,

they would greatly multiply errors.

OBS. 16.--Whether the word \_a\_ has been formed from \_an\_, or \_an\_ from \_a\_,

is a disputed point--or rather, a point on which our grammarians dogmatize

differently. This, if it be worth the search, must be settled by consulting

some genuine writings of the twelfth century. In the pure Saxon of an

earlier date, the words \_seldom occur\_; and in that ancient dialect \_an\_, I

believe, is used only as a declinable numerical adjective, and \_a\_ only as

a preposition. In the thirteenth century, both forms were in common use, in

the sense now given them, as may be seen in the writings of Robert of

Gloucester; though some writers of a much later date--or, at any rate,

\_one\_, the celebrated Gawin Douglas, a Scottish bishop, who died of the

plague in London, in 1522--constantly wrote \_ane\_ for both \_an\_ and \_a\_:

as,

"Be not ouer studyous to spy \_ane\_ mote in myn E,

That in gour awin \_ane\_ ferrye bot can not se."

--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 124.

"\_Ane\_ uthir mache to him was socht and sperit;

Bot thare was \_nane\_ of all the rout that sterit."

--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 160.

OBS. 17.--This, however, was a \_Scotticism\_; as is also the use of \_ae\_ for

\_a\_: Gower and Chaucer used \_an\_ and \_a\_ as we now use them. The Rev. J. M.

M'Culloch, in an English grammar published lately in Edinburgh, says, "\_A\_

and \_an\_ were originally \_ae\_ and \_ane\_, and were probably used at first

simply to convey the idea of unity; as, \_ae\_ man, \_ane\_ ox."--\_Manual of E.

Gram.\_, p. 30. For this idea, and indeed for a great part of his book, he

is indebted to Dr. Crombie; who says, "To signify unity, or one of a class,

our forefathers employed \_ae\_ or \_ane\_; as, \_ae\_ man, \_ane\_ ox."--\_Treatise

on Etym. and Synt.\_, p. 53. These authors, like Webster, will have \_a\_ and

\_an\_ to be \_adjectives\_. Dr. Johnson says, "\_A\_, an \_article\_ set before

nouns of the singular number; as, \_a\_ man, \_a\_ tree. This article has no

plural signification. Before a word beginning with a vowel, it is written

\_an\_; as, \_an\_ ox, \_an\_ egg; of which \_a\_ is the contraction."--\_Quarto

Dict., w. A\_.

OBS. 18.--Dr. Webster says, "\_A\_ is also an abbreviation of the Saxon \_an\_

or \_ane, one\_, used before words beginning with an articulation; as, \_a\_

table, \_instead\_ of \_an\_ table, or one table. \_This is a modern change\_;

for, in Saxon, \_an\_ was used before articulations as well as vowels; as,

\_an tid, a\_ time, \_an gear\_, a year."--\_Webster's Octavo Dict., w. A\_. A

modern change, indeed! By his own showing in other works, it was made long

before the English language existed! He says, "\_An\_, therefore, is the

original English adjective or ordinal number \_one\_; and was never written

\_a\_ until after the Conquest."--\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 20; \_Improved

Gram.\_, 14. "\_The Conquest\_," means the Norman Conquest, in 1066; but

English was not written till the thirteenth century. This author has long

been idly contending, that \_an\_ or \_a\_ is not an \_article\_, but an

\_adjective\_; and that it is not properly distinguished by the term

"\_indefinite\_." Murray has answered him well enough, but he will not be

convinced.[136] See \_Murray's Gram.\_, pp. 34 and 35. If \_a\_ and \_one\_ were

equal, we could not say, "\_Such a one\_,"--"\_What a one\_,"--"\_Many a

one\_,"--"\_This one thing\_;" and surely these are all good English, though

\_a\_ and \_one\_ here admit no interchange. Nay, \_a\_ is sometimes found before

\_one\_ when the latter is used adjectively; as, "There is no record in Holy

Writ of the institution of \_a one\_ all-controlling monarchy."--\_Supremacy

of the Pope Disproved\_, p. 9. "If not to \_a one\_ Sole Arbiter."--\_Ib.\_, p.

19.

OBS. 19.--\_An\_ is sometimes a \_conjunction\_, signifying \_if\_; as, "Nay,

\_an\_ thou'lt mouthe, I'll rant as well as thou."--\_Shak.\_ "\_An\_ I have not

ballads made on you all, and sung to fifty tunes, may a cup of sack be my

poison."--\_Id., Falstaff\_. "But, \_an\_ it were to do again, I should write

again."--\_Lord Byron's Letters\_. "But \_an\_ it be a long part, I can't

remember it."--SHAKSPEARE: \_Burgh's Speaker\_, p. 136.

OBS. 20.--In the New Testament, we meet with several such expressions as

the following: "And his disciples were \_an hungred\_."--SCOTT'S BIBLE:

\_Matt\_, xii, 1. "When he was \_an hungred.\_"--\_Ib.\_ xii, 3. "When he had

need and was \_an hungered.\_"--\_Ib. Mark\_, ii, 25. Alger, the improver of

Murray's Grammar, and editor of the Pronouncing Bible, taking this \_an\_ to

be the indefinite article, and perceiving that the \_h\_ is sounded in

\_hungered\_, changed the particle to \_a\_ in all these passages; as, "And his

disciples were \_a hungered\_." But what sense he thought he had made of the

sacred record, I know not. The Greek text, rendered word for word, is

simply this: "\_And his disciples hungered\_." And that the sentences above,

taken either way, are \_not good English\_, must be obvious to every

intelligent reader. \_An\_, as I apprehend, is here a mere \_prefix\_, which

has somehow been mistaken in form, and erroneously disjoined from the

following word. If so, the correction ought to be made after the fashion of

the following passage from Bishop M'Ilvaine: "On a certain occasion, our

Saviour was followed by five thousand men, into a desert place, where they

were \_enhungered\_."--\_Lectures on Christianity\_, p. 210.

OBS. 21.--The word \_a\_, when it does not denote one thing of a kind, is not

an article, but a genuine \_preposition\_; being probably the same as the

French à, signifying \_to, at, on, in\_, or \_of\_: as, "Who hath it? He that

died \_a\_ Wednesday."--\_Shak\_. That is, \_on\_ Wednesday. So sometimes before

plurals; as, "He carves \_a\_ Sundays."--\_Swift\_. That is, \_on\_ Sundays. "He

is let out \_a\_ nights."--\_Id.\_ That is, \_on\_ nights--like the following

example: "A pack of rascals that walk the streets \_on\_ nights."--\_Id.\_ "He

will knap the spears \_a\_ pieces with his teeth."--\_More's Antid.\_ That is,

\_in\_ pieces, or \_to\_ pieces. So in the compound word \_now-a-days\_, where it

means \_on\_; and in the proper names, Thomas \_à\_ Becket, Thomas \_à\_ Kempis,

Anthony \_à\_ Wood, where it means \_at\_ or \_of\_.

"Bot certainly the daisit blude \_now on dayis\_

Waxis dolf and dull throw myne unwieldy age."--\_Douglas.\_

OBS. 22.--As a preposition, \_a\_ has now most generally become a \_prefix\_,

or what the grammarians call an inseparable preposition; as in \_abed\_, in

bed; \_aboard\_, on board; \_abroad\_, at large; \_afire\_, on fire; \_afore\_, in

front; \_afoul\_, in contact; \_aloft\_, on high; \_aloud\_, with loudness;

\_amain\_, at main strength; \_amidst\_, in the midst; \_akin\_, of kin; \_ajar\_,

unfastened; \_ahead\_, onward; \_afield\_, to the field; \_alee\_, to the

leeward; \_anew\_, of new, with renewal. "\_A-nights\_, he was in the practice

of sleeping, &c.; but \_a-days\_ he kept looking on the barren ocean,

shedding tears."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.\_, Vol. ii, p. 162.

Compounds of this kind, in most instances, follow verbs, and are

consequently reckoned adverbs; as, \_To go astray,--To turn aside,--To soar

aloft,--To fall asleep\_. But sometimes the antecedent term is a noun or a

pronoun, and then they are as clearly adjectives; as, "Imagination is like

to work better upon sleeping men, than \_men awake\_."--\_Lord Bacon.\_ "\_Man

alive\_, did you ever make a \_hornet afraid\_, or catch a \_weasel asleep?\_"

And sometimes the compound governs a noun or a pronoun after it, and then

it is a preposition; as, "A bridge is laid \_across\_ a river."--\_Webster's

Dict.\_, "To break his bridge \_athwart\_ the Hellespont."--\_Bacon's Essays.\_

"Where Ufens glides \_along\_ the lowly lands,

Or the black water of Pomptina stands."--\_Dryden.\_

OBS. 23.--In several phrases, not yet to be accounted obsolete, this old

preposition \_à\_ still retains its place as a separate word; and none have

been more perplexing to superficial grammarians, than those which are

formed by using it before participles in \_ing\_; in which instances, the

participles are in fact governed by it: for nothing is more common in our

language, than for participles of this form to be governed by

prepositions. For example, "You have set the cask \_a\_ leaking," and, "You

have set the cask \_to\_ leaking," are exactly equivalent, both in meaning

and construction. "Forty and six years was this temple \_in\_

building."--\_John, ii, 20.\_ \_Building\_ is not here a noun, but a

participle; and \_in\_ is here better than \_a\_, only because the phrase, \_a

building\_, might be taken for an article and a noun, meaning \_an

edifice\_.[137] Yet, in almost all cases, other prepositions are, I think,

to be preferred to \_à\_, if others equivalent to it can be found. Examples:

"Lastly, they go about to apologize for the long time their book hath been

\_a coming\_ out:" i.e., \_in\_ coming out.--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p.

179. "And, for want of reason, he falls \_a railing\_::" i.e., \_to\_

railing.--\_Ib.\_, iii, 357. "That the soul should be this moment busy \_a

thinking\_:" i.e., \_at\_ or \_in\_ thinking.--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 78. "Which,

once set \_a going\_, continue in the same steps:" i.e., \_to\_ going.--\_Ib.\_,

p. 284. "Those who contend for four per cent, have set men's mouths \_a

watering\_ for money:" i.e., \_to\_ watering.--LOCKE: \_in Johnson's Dict.\_ "An

other falls \_a ringing\_ a Pescennius Niger:" i.e., \_to\_ ringing.--ADDISON:

\_ib.\_ "At least to set others \_a thinking\_ upon the subject:" i.e., \_to\_

thinking.--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 300. "Every one that could reach it,

cut off a piece, and fell \_a eating\_:" i.e., \_to\_ eating.--\_Newspaper.\_ "To

go \_a mothering\_,[138] is to visit parents on Midlent Sunday."--\_Webster's

Dict., w. Mothering.\_ "Which we may find when we come \_a fishing\_

here."--\_Wotton.\_ "They go \_a begging\_ to a bankrupt's door."--\_Dryden.\_

"\_A hunting\_ Chloë went."--\_Prior.\_ "They burst out \_a laughing\_."--\_M.

Edgeworth.\_ In the last six sentences, \_a\_ seems more suitable than any

other preposition would be: all it needs, is an accent to distinguish it

from the article; as, \_à\_.

OBS. 24.--Dr. Alexander Murray says, "To be \_a\_-seeking, is the relic of

the Saxon to be \_on\_ or \_an\_ seeking. What are you a-seeking? is

\_different\_ from, What are you seeking? It means more fully \_the going on\_

with the process."--\_Hist. Europ. Lang\_,, Vol. ii, p. 149. I disapprove of

the hyphen in such terms as "\_à\_ seeking," because it converts the

preposition and participle into I know not what; and it may be observed, in

passing, that the want of it, in such as "\_the going on\_," leaves us a

loose and questionable word, which, by the conversion of the participle

into a noun, becomes a nondescript in grammar. I dissent also from Dr.

Murray, concerning the use of the preposition or prefix \_a\_, in examples

like that which he has here chosen. After a \_neuter verb\_, this particle is

unnecessary to the sense, and, I think, injurious to the construction.

Except in poetry, which is measured by syllables, it may be omitted without

any substitute; as, "I am \_a walking\_."--\_Johnson's Dict., w. A\_. "He had

one only daughter, and she lay \_a\_ dying."--\_Luke\_, viii, 42. "In the days

of Noah, while the ark was \_a\_ preparing."--\_1 Pet.\_, iii, 20. "Though his

unattentive thoughts be elsewhere \_a\_ wandering."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 284.

Say--"be wandering elsewhere;" and omit the \_a\_, in all such cases.

"And--when he thinks, good easy man, full surely

His greatness is \_a\_ ripening--nips his root."--\_Shak\_.

OBS. 25.--"\_A\_ has a peculiar signification, denoting the proportion of one

thing to an other. Thus we say, The landlord hath a hundred \_a\_ year; the

ship's crew gained a thousand pounds \_a\_ man."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "After

the rate of twenty leagues \_a\_ day."--\_Addison\_. "And corn was at two

sesterces \_a\_ bushel."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 82. Whether \_a\_ in this

construction is the article or the preposition, seems to be questionable.

Merchants are very much in the habit of supplying its place by the Latin

preposition \_per\_, by; as, "Board, at $2 \_per\_ week."--\_Preston's

Book-Keeping\_, p. 44. "Long lawn, at $12 \_per\_ piece."--\_Dilworth's\_, p.

63. "Cotton, at 2s. 6d. \_per\_ pound."--\_Morrison's\_, p. 75. "Exchange, at

12d. \_per\_ livre."--\_Jackson's\_, p. 73. It is to be observed that \_an\_, as

well as \_a\_, is used in this manner; as, "The price is one dollar \_an\_

ounce." Hence, I think, we may infer, that this is not the old preposition

\_a\_, but the article \_an\_ or \_a\_, used in the distributive sense of \_each\_

or \_every\_, and that the noun is governed by a preposition understood; as,

"He demands a dollar \_an\_ hour;" i. e., a dollar \_for each\_ hour.--"He

comes twice \_a\_ year:" i. e., twice \_in every\_ year.--"He sent them to

Lebanon, ten thousand \_a\_ month by courses:" (\_1 Kings\_, v, 14:) i. e., ten

thousand, \_monthly\_; or, as our merchants say, "\_per month\_." Some

grammarians have also remarked, that, "In mercantile accounts, we

frequently see \_a\_ put for \_to\_, in a very odd sort of way; as, 'Six bales

marked 1 \_a\_ 6.' The merchant means, 'marked \_from\_ 1 to 6.' This is taken

to be a relic of the Norman French, which was once the law and mercantile

language of England; for, in French, \_a\_, with an accent, signifies \_to\_ or

\_at\_."--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p. 73. Modern merchants, in stead of accenting

the \_a\_, commonly turn the end of it back; as, @.

OBS. 26.--Sometimes a numeral word with the indefinite article--as \_a few,

a great many, a dozen, a hundred, a thousand\_--denotes an aggregate of

several or many taken collectively, and yet is followed by a plural noun,

denoting the sort or species of which this particular aggregate is a part:

as, "A few small fishes,"--"A great many mistakes,"--"A dozen bottles of

wine,"--"A hundred lighted candles,"--"A thousand miles off." Respecting

the proper manner of explaining these phrases, grammarians differ in

opinion. That the article relates not to the plural noun, but to the

numerical word only, is very evident; but whether, in these instances, the

words \_few, many, dozen, hundred\_, and \_thousand\_, are to be called nouns

or adjectives, is matter of dispute. Lowth, Murray, and many others, call

them \_adjectives\_, and suppose a peculiarity of construction in the

article;--like that of the singular adjectives \_every\_ and \_one\_ in the

phrases, "\_Every\_ ten days,"--"\_One\_ seven times more."--\_Dan.\_, iii, 19.

Churchill and others call them \_nouns\_, and suppose the plurals which

follow, to be always in the objective case governed by \_of\_, understood:

as, "A few [of] years,"--"A thousand [of] doors;"--like the phrases, "A

\_couple of\_ fowls,"--"A \_score of\_ fat bullocks."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p.

279. Neither solution is free from difficulty. For example: "There are a

great many adjectives."--\_Dr. Adam\_. Now, if \_many\_ is here a singular

nominative, and the only subject of the verb, what shall we do with \_are\_?

and if it is a plural adjective, what shall we do with \_a\_ and \_great?\_

Taken in either of these ways, the construction is anomalous. One can

hardly think the word "\_adjectives\_" to be here in the objective case,

because the supposed ellipsis of the word \_of\_ cannot be proved; and if

\_many\_ is a noun, the two words are perhaps in apposition, in the

nominative. If I say, "\_A thousand men\_ are on their way," the men \_are the

thousand\_, and the thousand \_is nothing but the men\_; so that I see not why

the relation of the terms may not be that of \_apposition\_. But if

\_authorities\_ are to decide the question, doubtless we must yield it to

those who suppose the whole numeral phrase to be taken \_adjectively\_; as,

"Most young Christians have, in the course of \_half a dozen\_ years, time to

read \_a great many\_ pages."--\_Young Christian\_, p. 6.

"For harbour at \_a thousand doors\_ they knock'd;

Not one of all \_the thousand\_ but was lock'd."--\_Dryden\_.

OBS. 27.--The numeral words considered above, seem to have been originally

adjectives, and such may be their most proper construction now; but all of

them are susceptible of being construed as nouns, even if they are not such

in the examples which have been cited. \_Dozen\_, or \_hundred\_, or

\_thousand\_, when taken abstractly, is unquestionably a noun; for we often

speak of \_dozens, hundreds\_, and \_thousands\_. \_Few\_ and \_many\_ never assume

the plural form, because they have naturally a plural signification; and \_a

few\_ or \_a great many\_ is not a collection so definite that we can well

conceive of \_fews\_ and \_manies\_; but both are sometimes construed

substantively, though in modern English[139] it seems to be mostly by

ellipsis of the noun. Example: "The praise of \_the judicious few\_ is an

ample compensation for the neglect of \_the illiterate many\_."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 278. Dr. Johnson says, the word \_many\_ is remarkable in Saxon

for its frequent use. The following are some of the examples in which he

calls it a substantive, or noun: "After him the rascal \_many\_

ran."--\_Spenser\_. "O thou fond \_many\_."--\_Shakspeare\_. "A care-craz'd

mother of a \_many\_ children."--\_Id.\_ "And for thy sake have I shed \_many\_ a

tear."--\_Id.\_ "The vulgar and the \_many\_ are fit only to be led or

driven."--\_South\_. "He is liable to a great \_many\_ inconveniences every

moment of his life."--\_Tillotson\_. "Seeing a great \_many\_ in rich gowns, he

was amazed."--\_Addison\_.

"There parting from the king, the chiefs divide,

And wheeling east and west, before their \_many\_ ride."--\_Dryden\_.

OBS. 28.--"On the principle here laid down, we may account for a peculiar

use of the article with the adjective \_few\_, and some other diminutives. In

saying, 'A \_few\_ of his adherents remained with him;' we insinuate, that

they constituted a number sufficiently important to be formed into an

aggregate: while, if the article be omitted, as, '\_Few\_ of his adherents

remained with him;' this implies, that he was nearly deserted, by

representing them as individuals not worth reckoning up. A similar

difference occurs between the phrases: 'He exhibited \_a little\_ regard for

his character;' and 'He exhibited \_little\_ regard for his

character.'"--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 279. The word \_little\_, in its most

proper construction, is an adjective, signifying \_small\_; as, "He was

\_little\_ of stature."--\_Luke\_. "Is it not a \_little\_ one?"--\_Genesis\_. And

in sentences like the following, it is also reckoned an adjective, though

the article seems to relate to it, rather than to the subsequent noun; or

perhaps it may be taken as relating to them both: "Yet \_a little\_ sleep, \_a

little\_ slumber, \_a little\_ folding of the hands to sleep."--\_Prov.\_, vi,

10; xxiv, 33. But by a common ellipsis, it is used as a noun, both with and

without the article; as, "\_A little\_ that a righteous man hath, is better

than the riches of many wicked."--\_Psalms\_, xxxvii, 16. "Better is \_little\_

with the fear of the Lord, than great treasure and trouble

therewith."--\_Prov.\_, xv, 16. "He that despiseth little things, shall

perish by \_little\_ and \_little\_."--\_Ecclesiasticus\_. It is also used

adverbially, both alone and with the article \_a\_; as, "The poor sleep

\_little\_."--\_Otway\_. "Though they are \_a little\_ astringent."--\_Arbuthnot\_.

"When he had gone \_a little\_ farther thence."--\_Mark\_, i, 19. "Let us vary

the phrase [in] \_a very little\_" [degree].--\_Kames\_, Vol. ii, p. 163.

OBS. 29.--"As it is the nature of the articles to limit the signification

of a word, they are applicable only to words expressing ideas capable of

being individualized, or conceived of as single things or acts; and nouns

implying a general state, condition, or habit, must be used without the

article. It is not vaguely therefore, but on fixed principles, that the

article is omitted, or inserted, in such phrases as the following: 'in

terror, in fear, in dread, in haste, in sickness, in pain, in trouble; in

\_a\_ fright, in \_a\_ hurry, in \_a\_ consumption; \_the\_ pain of his wound was

great; her son's dissipated life was \_a\_ great trouble to

her."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 127.

OBS. 30.--Though \_the, an\_, and \_a\_, are the only articles in our language,

they are far from being the only definitives. Hence, while some have

objected to the peculiar distinction bestowed upon these little words,

firmly insisting on throwing them in among the common mass of adjectives;

others have taught, that the definitive adjectives--I know not how

many--such as, \_this, that, these, those, any, other, some, all, both,

each, every, either, neither\_--"are much more properly articles than any

thing else."--\_Hermes\_, p. 234. But, in spite of this opinion, it has

somehow happened, that these definitive adjectives have very generally, and

very absurdly, acquired the name of \_pronouns\_. Hence, we find Booth, who

certainly excelled most other grammarians in learning and acuteness,

marvelling that the \_articles\_ "were ever separated from the class of

\_pronouns\_." To all this I reply, that \_the, an\_, and \_a\_, are worthy to be

distinguished as \_the only articles\_, because they are not only used with

much greater \_frequency\_ than any other definitives, but are specially

restricted to the limiting of the signification of nouns. Whereas the other

definitives above mentioned are very often used to supply the place of

their nouns; that is, to represent them understood. For, in general, it is

only by ellipsis of the noun after it, and not as the representative of a

noun going before, that any one of these words assumes the appearance of a

pronoun. Hence, they are not pronouns, but adjectives. Nor are they "more

properly articles than any thing else;" for, "if the essence of an article

be to define and ascertain" the meaning of a noun, this very conception of

the thing necessarily supposes the noun to be used with it.

OBS. 31.--The following example, or explanation, may show what is meant by

definitives. Let the general term be \_man\_, the plural of which is \_men: A

man\_--one unknown or indefinite; \_The man\_--one known or particular; \_The

men\_--some particular ones; \_Any man\_--one indefinitely; \_A certain

man\_--one definitely; \_This man\_--one near; \_That man\_--one distant; \_These

men\_--several near; \_Those men\_--several distant; \_Such a man\_--one like

some other; \_Such men\_--some like others; \_Many a man\_--a multitude taken

singly; \_Many men\_--an indefinite multitude taken plurally; \_A thousand

men\_--a definite multitude; \_Every man\_--all or each without exception;

\_Each man\_--both or all taken separately; \_Some man\_--one, as opposed to

none; \_Some men\_--an indefinite number or part; \_All men\_--the whole taken

plurally; \_No men\_--none of the sex; \_No man\_--never one of the race.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS II--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Second Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and to explain the\_ ARTICLES \_as

definite or indefinite.

The definitions to be given in the Second Praxis, are two for an article,

and one for a noun, an adjective, a pronoun, a verb, a participle, an

adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The task of a schoolmaster laboriously prompting and urging an indolent

class, is worse than his who drives lazy horses along a sandy road."--\_G.

Brown\_.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Task\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing,

that can be known or mentioned.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_A\_ is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The indefinite

article is \_an\_ or \_a\_, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any

particular one.

\_Schoolmaster\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned.

\_Laboriously\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner.

\_Prompting\_ is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb,

participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and

is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb.

\_And\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or

sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_Urging\_ is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb,

participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and

is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb.

\_An\_ is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or

\_a\_, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The

indefinite article is \_an\_ or \_a\_, which denotes one thing of a kind, but

not any particular one.

\_Indolent\_ is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

\_Class\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing,

that can be known or mentioned.

\_Is\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

be acted upon\_.

\_Worse\_ is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

\_Than\_ is a conjunction. 1, A conjunction is a word used to connect words

or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_He\_ is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

\_Who\_ is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

\_Drives\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or

\_to be acted upon\_.

\_Lazy\_ is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

\_Horses\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing,

that can be known or mentioned.

\_Along\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_A\_ is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The indefinite

article is \_an\_ or \_a\_, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any

particular one.

\_Sandy\_ is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

\_Road\_ is a noun. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing,

that can be known or mentioned.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"The Honourable, the Corporation of the city, granted the use of the common

council chamber, for holding the Convention; generously adding the

privilege of occupying the rotunda, or the new court-room, if either would

better suit the wishes of the committee."--\_Journal of Literary

Convention\_, N. Y., 1830.

"When the whole is put for a part, or a part for the whole; the genus for a

species, or a species for the genus; the singular number for the plural, or

the plural for the singular; and, in general, when any thing less, or any

thing more, is put for the precise object meant; the figure is called a

Synecdoche."--See \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 141.

"The truth is, a representative, as an individual, is on a footing with

other people; but, as a representative of a State, he is invested with a

share of the sovereign authority, and is so far a governor of the

people."--See \_Webster's Essays\_, p. 50.

"Knowledge is the fruit of mental labour--the food and the feast of the

mind. In the pursuit of knowledge, the greater the excellence of the

subject of inquiry, the deeper ought to be the interest, the more ardent

the investigation, and the dearer to the mind the acquisition of the

truth."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 15.

"Canst thou, O partial Sleep! give thy repose

To the wet seaboy in an hour so rude?"--\_Shakspeare\_.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"Every family has a master; (or a mistress--I beg the ladies' pardon;) a

ship has a master; when a house is to be built, there is a master; when the

highways are repairing, there is a master; every little school has a

master: the continent is a great school; the boys are numerous, and full of

roguish tricks; and there is no master. The boys in this great school play

truant, and there is no person to chastise them."--See \_Webster's Essays\_,

p. 128.

"A man who purposely rushes down a precipice and breaks his arm, has no

right to say, that surgeons are an evil in society. A legislature may

unjustly limit the surgeon's fee; but the broken arm must be healed, and a

surgeon is the only man to restore it."--See \_ib.\_, p. 135.

"But what new sympathies sprung up immediately where the gospel prevailed!

It was made the duty of the whole Christian community to provide for the

stranger, the poor, the sick, the aged, the widow, and the

orphan."--\_M'Ilvaine's Evi.\_, p. 408.

"In the English language, the same word is often employed both as a noun

and as a verb; and sometimes as an adjective, and even as an adverb and a

preposition also. Of this, \_round\_ is an example."--See \_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 24.

"The old oaken bucket, the iron-bound bucket,

The moss-covered bucket, arose from the well."--\_Woodworth\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"Most of the objects in a natural landscape are beautiful, and some of them

are grand: a flowing river, a spreading oak, a round hill, an extended

plain, are delightful; and even a rugged rock, and a barren heath, though

in themselves disagreeable, contribute by contrast to the beauty of the

whole."--See \_Kames's El. of Crit.\_, i, 185.

"An animal body is still more admirable, in the disposition of its several

parts, and in their order and symmetry: there is not a bone, a muscle, a

blood-vessel, a nerve, that hath not one corresponding to it on the

opposite side; and the same order is carried through the most minute

parts."--See \_ib.\_, i, 271. "The constituent parts of a plant, the roots,

the stem, the branches, the leaves, the fruit, are really different

systems, united by a mutual dependence on each other."--\_Ib.\_, i, 272.

"With respect to the form of this ornament, I observe, that a circle is a

more agreeable figure than a square, a globe than a cube, and a cylinder

than a parallelopipedon. A column is a more agreeable figure than a

pilaster; and, for that reason, it ought to be preferred, all other

circumstances being equal. An other reason concurs, that a column connected

with a wall, which is a plain surface, makes a greater variety than a

pilaster."--See \_ib.\_, ii, 352.

"But ah! what myriads claim the bended knee!

Go, count the busy drops that swell the sea."--\_Rogers\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING ARTICLES.

LESSON I.--ADAPT THE ARTICLES.

"Honour is an useful distinction in life."--\_Milnes's Greek Grammar\_, p.

vii.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article \_an\_ is used before \_useful\_,

which begins with the sound of \_yu\_. But, according to a principle

expressed on page 225th, "\_A\_ is to be used whenever the following word

begins with a consonant sound." Therefore, \_an\_ should here be changed to

\_a\_; thus, "Honour is \_a\_ useful distinction in life."]

"No writer, therefore, ought to foment an humour of

innovation."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 55. "Conjunctions require a situation

between the things of which they form an union."--\_Ib.\_, p. 83. "Nothing is

more easy than to mistake an \_u\_ for an \_a\_."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, i,

130. "From making so ill an use of our innocent expressions."--\_Wm. Penn\_.

"To grant thee an heavenly and incorruptible crown of glory."--\_Sewel's

Hist., Ded.\_, p. iv. "It in no wise follows, that such an one was able to

predict."--\_Ib.\_, p. viii. "With an harmless patience they have borne most

heavy oppressions,"--\_Ib.\_, p. x. "My attendance was to make me an happier

man."--\_Spect.\_, No. 480. "On the wonderful nature of an human

mind."--\_Ib.\_, 554. "I have got an hussy of a maid, who is most craftily

given to this."--\_Ib.\_, No. 534. "Argus is said to have had an hundred

eyes, some of which were always awake."--\_Classic Stories\_, p. 148.

"Centiped, an hundred feet; centennial, consisting of a hundred

years."--\_Town's Analysis\_, p. 19. "No good man, he thought, could be an

heretic."--\_Gilpin's Lives\_, p. 72. "As, a Christian, an infidel, an

heathen."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 50. "Of two or more words, usually joined by

an hyphen."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 7. "We may consider the whole space of an

hundred years as time present."--BEATTIE: \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 69. "In

guarding against such an use of meats and drinks."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 138.

"Worship is an homage due from man to his Creator."--\_Annual Monitor for\_

1836. "Then, an eulogium on the deceased was pronounced."--\_Grimshaw's U.

S.\_, p. 92. "But for Adam there was not found an help meet for

him."--\_Gen.\_, ii, 20. "My days are consumed like smoke, and my bones are

burned as an hearth."--\_Psalms\_, cii, 3. "A foreigner and an hired servant

shall not eat thereof"--\_Exod.\_, xii, 45. "The hill of God is as the hill

of Bashan; an high hill, as the hill of Bashan."--\_Psalms\_, lxviii, 15.

"But I do declare it to have been an holy offering, and such an one too as

was to be once for all."--\_Wm. Penn\_. "An hope that does not make ashamed

those that have it."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 15. "Where there is not

an unity, we may exercise true charity."--\_Ib.\_, i, 96. "Tell me, if in any

of these such an union can be found?"--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 16.

"Such holy drops her tresses steeped,

Though 'twas an hero's eye that weeped."--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

LESSON II.--INSERT ARTICLES.

"This veil of flesh parts the visible and invisible world."--\_Sherlock\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article \_the\_ is omitted before

\_invisible\_, where the sense requires it. But, according to a suggestion on

page 225th, "Articles should be inserted as often as the sense requires

them." Therefore, \_the\_ should be here supplied; thus, "This veil of flesh

parts the visible and the invisible world."]

"The copulative and disjunctive conjunctions operate differently on the

verb."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 286. "Every combination of a

preposition and article with the noun."--\_Ib.\_, i, 44. "\_Either\_ signifies,

'the one or the other;' \_neither\_ imports \_not either\_, that is, 'not one

nor the other.'"--\_Ib.\_, i, 56. "A noun of multitude may have a pronoun, or

verb, agreeing with it, either of the singular or plural number."--\_Bucke's

Gram.\_, p. 90. "Copulative conjunctions are, principally, and, as, both,

because, for, if, that, then, since, &c."--See \_ib.\_, 28. "The two real

genders are the masculine and feminine."--\_Ib.\_, 34. "In which a mute and

liquid are represented by the same character, \_th\_."--\_Music of Nature\_, p.

481. "They said, John Baptist hath sent us unto thee."--\_Luke\_, vii, 20.

"They indeed remember the names of abundance of places."--\_Spect.\_, No.

474. "Which created a great dispute between the young and old

men."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. ii, p. 127. "Then shall be read the

Apostles' or Nicene Creed."--\_Com. Prayer\_, p. 119. "The rules concerning

the perfect tenses and supines of verbs are Lily's."--\_King Henry's Gram.\_,

p. iv. "It was read by the high and the low, the learned and

illiterate."--\_Johnson's Life of Swift\_. "Most commonly, both the pronoun

and verb are understood."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. viii. "To signify the

thick and slender enunciation of tone."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alph.\_, p.

9. "The difference between a palatial and guttural aspirate is very

small."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. "Leaving it to waver between the figurative and

literal sense."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 154. "Whatever verb will not admit

of both an active and passive signification."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p.

31. "\_The\_ is often set before adverbs in the comparative or superlative

degree."--\_Ib.\_, p. 15; \_Kirkham's Gram.\_, 66. "Lest any should fear the

effect of such a change upon the present or succeeding age of

writers."--\_Fowle's Common School Gram.\_, p. 5. "In all these measures, the

accents are to be placed on even syllables; and every line is, in general,

more melodious, as this rule is more strictly observed."--\_L. Murray's

Octavo Gram\_, p. 256; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 307. "How many numbers do nouns

appear to have? Two, the singular and plural."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 8.

"How many persons? Three persons--the first, second, and third."--\_Ib.\_, p.

10. "How many cases? Three--the nominative, possessive and

objective."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12.

"Ah! what avails it me, the flocks to keep,

Who lost my heart while I preserv'd sheep."

POPE'S WORKS: \_British Poets\_, Vol. vi, p. 309: Lond., 1800.

LESSON III.--OMIT ARTICLES.

"The negroes are all the descendants of Africans."--\_Morse's Geog\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article \_the\_ before \_descendants\_, is

useless to the construction, and injurious to the sense. But, according to

a principle on page 225th, "Needless articles should be omitted; they

seldom fail to pervert the sense." Therefore, \_the\_ should be here omitted;

thus, "The negroes are all \_descendants\_ of Africans."]

"A Sybarite was applied as a term of reproach to a man of dissolute

manners."--\_Morse's Ancient Geog.\_, p. 4. "The original signification of

knave was a boy."--\_Webster's El. Spell.\_, p. 136. "The meaning of these

will be explained, for the greater clearness and precision."--\_Bucke's

Gram.\_, p. 58. "What Sort of a Noun is Man? A Noun Substantive

common."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 166. "Is \_what\_ ever used as three kinds

of a pronoun?"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 117. "They delighted in the having

done it, as well as in the doing of it."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 344.

"Both the parts of this rule are exemplified in the following

sentences."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 174. "He has taught them to hope for

another and a better world."--\_S. L. Knapp\_. "It was itself only

preparatory to a future, a better, and perfect revelation."--\_Keith's

Evid.\_, p. 23. "\_Es\_ then makes another and a distinct syllable."--

\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 17. "The eternal clamours of a selfish and a

factious people."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, i, 74. "To those whose taste in

Elocution is but a little cultivated."--\_Kirkham's Eloc.\_, p. 65. "They

considered they had but a Sort of a Gourd to rejoice in."--\_Bennet's

Memorial\_, p. 333. "Now there was but one only such a bough, in a spacious

and shady grove."--\_Bacon's Wisdom\_, p. 75. "Now the absurdity of this

latter supposition will go a great way towards the making a man

easy."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_ p. 131. "This is true of the mathematics,

where the taste has but little to do."--\_Todd's Student's Manual\_, p. 331.

"To stand prompter to a pausing, yet a ready comprehension."--\_Rush, on the

Voice\_, p. 251. "Such an obedience as the yoked and the tortured negro is

compelled to yield to the whip of the overseer."--\_Chalmers's Serm.\_, p.

90. "For the gratification of a momentary and an unholy

desire."--\_Wayland's Mor. Sci.\_, p. 288. "The body is slenderly put

together; the mind a rambling sort of a thing."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p.

26. "The only nominative to the verb, is, \_the officer\_."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, ii, 22. "And though in the general it ought to be admitted,

&c."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 376. "Philosophical writing admits of a polished,

a neat, and elegant style."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367. "But notwithstanding this

defect, Thomson is a strong and a beautiful describer."--\_Ib.\_, p. 405. "So

should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives

saved."--SHAK.: \_Hen.\_ v.

"Who felt the wrong, or fear'd it, took the alarm,

Appeal'd to Law, and Justice lent her arm."--\_Pope\_, p. 406.

LESSON IV.--CHANGE ARTICLES.

"To enable us to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same

word."--\_Bucke's Gr.\_, p, 52.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article \_the\_ is used to limit the

meaning of "repetition," or "too frequent repetition," where \_a\_ would

better suit the sense. But, according to a principle on page 225th, "The

articles can seldom be put one for the other, without gross impropriety;

and either is of course to be preferred to the other, as it better suits

the sense." Therefore, "\_the\_" should be \_a\_, which, in this instance,

ought to be placed after the adjective; thus, "To enable us to avoid \_too

frequent a repetition\_ of the same word."]

"The former is commonly acquired in the third part of the time."--\_Burn's

Gram.\_, p. xi. "Sometimes the adjective becomes a substantive, and has

another adjective joined to it: as, 'The chief good.'"--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 169. "An articulate sound is the sound of the human voice,

formed by the organs of speech."--\_Ib.\_, i, 2; \_Lowth's Gram.\_, 2; \_T.

Smith's\_, 5. "Tense is the distinction of time: there are six

tenses."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 6. "In this case, the ellipsis of the last

article would be improper."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 218. "Contrast has

always the effect to make each of the contrasted objects appear in the

stronger light."--\_Ib.\_, i, 349; \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 167. "These remarks

may serve to shew the great importance of the proper use of the

article."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 12; \_Murray's\_, i, 171. "'Archbishop

Tillotson,' says an author of the History of England, 'died in this

year.'"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 107. "Pronouns are used instead of

substantives, to prevent the too frequent repetition of them."--\_Alex.

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 22. "\_That\_, as a relative, seems to be introduced to

save the too frequent repetition of \_who\_ and \_which\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "A

pronoun is a word used instead of a noun to avoid the too frequent

repetition of the same word."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 28. "\_That\_ is

often used as a relative, to prevent the too frequent repetition of \_who\_

and \_which\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 109; \_L. Murray's\_, i, 53; \_Hiley's\_,

84. "His knees smote one against an other."--\_Logan's Sermons\_. "They stand

now on one foot, then on another."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 259. "The Lord

watch between me and thee, when we are absent one from another."--\_Gen.\_,

xxxi, 49. "Some have enumerated ten [parts of speech], making a participle

a distinct part."--\_L. Murray's Gram\_, i, p. 29. "Nemesis rides upon an

Hart, because a Hart is a most lively Creature."--\_Bacon's Wisdom\_, p. 50.

"The transition of the voice from one vowel of the diphthong to

another."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 29. "So difficult it is to

separate these two things from one another."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 92.

"Without the material breach of any rule."--\_Ib.\_, p. 101. "The great

source of a loose style, in opposition to precision, is the injudicious use

of those words termed synonymous."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97. "The great source of a

loose style, in opposition to precision, is the injudicious use of the

words termed \_synonymous\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 302. "Sometimes one

article is improperly used for another."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 197.

"Satire of sense, alas! can Sporus feel?

Who breaks a butterfly upon a wheel?"--\_Pope\_, p. 396.

LESSON V.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"He hath no delight in the strength of an horse."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p.

311. "The head of it would be an universal monarch."--\_Butler's Analogy\_,

p. 98. "Here they confound the material and formal object of

faith."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 57. "The Irish and Scotish Celtic

are one language; the Welsh, Cornish, and Armorican, are another."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist.\_, Vol. ii, p. 316. "In an uniform and perspicuous

manner."--\_Ib.\_, i, 49. "SCRIPTURE, \_n.\_ Appropriately, and by way of

distinction, the books of the Old and New Testament; the

Bible."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "In two separate volumes, entitled the Old and

the New Testaments."--\_Wayland's Mor. Sci.\_, p. 139. "The Scriptures of the

Old and New Testament contain a revelation."--\_Ib.\_ "Q has ever an u after

it; which is not sounded in words derived from the French."--\_Wilson's

Essay\_, p. 32. "What should we say of such an one? That he is regenerate?

No."--\_Hopkins's Prim. Ch.\_, p. 22. "Some grammarians subdivide vowels into

the simple and the compound."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 8. "Emphasis has

been further distinguished into the weaker and stronger emphasis."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 244. "Emphasis has also been divided into superior and the inferior

emphasis."--\_Ib.\_, i, 245, "Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or

nouns which they represent, in gender, number, and person."--\_Merchant's

Gram.\_, pp. 86, 111, and 130. "The adverb \_where\_, is often improperly

used, for the relative pronoun and preposition."--\_Ib.\_, 94. "The

termination \_ish\_ imports diminution, or lessening the quality."--\_Ib.\_,

79. "In this train all their verses proceed: the one half of the line

always answering to the other."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 384. "To an height of

prosperity and glory, unknown to any former age."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p.

352. "HWILC, who, which, such as, such an one, is declined as

follows."--\_Gwilt's Saxon Gram.\_, p. 15. "When a vowel precedes \_y\_, an \_s\_

only is required to form a plural."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 40. "He is asked

what sort of a word each is, whether a primitive, derivative, or

compound."--\_British Gram.\_, p. vii. "It is obvious, that neither the 2d,

3d, nor 4th chapter of Matthew is the first; consequently, there are not

\_four first\_ chapters."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 306. "Some thought, which

a writer wants art to introduce in its proper place."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

109. "Groves and meadows are most pleasing in the spring."--\_Ib.\_, p. 207.

"The conflict between the carnal and spiritual mind, is often

long."--\_Gurney's Port. Ev.\_, p. 146. "A Philosophical Inquiry into the

Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and Beautiful."--\_Burke's Title-page\_.

"Silence, my muse! make not these jewels cheap,

Exposing to the world too large an heap."--\_Waller\_, p. 113.

CHAPTER III.--NOUNS.

A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or

mentioned: as, \_George, York, man, apple, truth\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--All words and signs taken \_technically\_, (that is, independently

of their meaning, and merely as things spoken of,) are \_nouns\_; or, rather,

are \_things\_ read and construed \_as nouns\_; because, in such a use, they

temporarily assume the \_syntax\_ of nouns: as, "For this reason, I prefer

\_contemporary\_ to \_cotemporary\_."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 175; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, p. 368. "I and J were formerly expressed by the same character;

as were U and V."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 3. "\_Us\_ is a personal

pronoun."--\_Murray\_. "\_Th\_ has two sounds."--\_Ib.\_ "The \_'s\_ cannot be a

contraction of \_his\_, because \_'s\_ is put to \_female\_ [feminine] nouns; as,

\_Woman's beauty, the Virgin's delicacy\_."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_ "\_Their\_

and \_theirs\_ are the possessives likewise of \_they\_, when \_they\_ is the

plural of \_it\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Let B be a \_now\_ or instant."--\_Harris's Hermes\_,

p. 103. "In such case, I say that the instant B is the end of the time A

B."--\_Ib.\_, 103. "\_A\_ is sometimes a noun: as, a great \_A\_."--\_Todd's

Johnson\_. "Formerly \_sp\_ was cast in a piece, as \_st's\_ are now."--\_Hist.

of Printing\_, 1770. "I write to others than he will perhaps include in his

\_we\_."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 455. "Here are no fewer than eight

\_ands\_ in one sentence."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 112; \_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol.

i, p. 319. "Within this wooden \_O\_;" i. e., circle.--\_Shak.\_

OBS. 2.--In parsing, the learner must observe the sense and use of each

word, and class it accordingly. Many words commonly belonging to other

parts of speech are occasionally used as nouns; and, since it is the manner

of its use, that determines any word to be of one part of speech rather

than of an other, whatever word is used directly as a noun, must of course

be parsed as such.

1. Adjectives made nouns: "The \_Ancient\_ of days did sit."--\_Bible\_. "Of

the \_ancients\_."--\_Swift\_. "For such \_impertinents\_."--\_Steele\_. "He is an

\_ignorant\_ in it."--\_Id.\_ "In the luxuriance of an unbounded

\_picturesque\_."--\_Jamieson\_. "A source of \_the sublime\_;" i. e., of

sublimity.--\_Burke\_. "The vast \_immense\_ of space:" i. e.,

immensity.--\_Murray\_. "There is none his \_like.\_"--\_Job\_, xli, 33. "A

\_little\_ more than a \_little\_, is by \_much\_ too \_much\_."--\_Shakspeare\_.

"And gladly make \_much\_ of that entertainment."--\_Sidney\_. "A covetous man

makes \_the most\_ of what he has."--\_L'Estrange\_. "It has done \_enough\_ for

me."--\_Pope\_. "He had \_enough\_ to do."--\_Bacon\_.

"\_All\_ withers here; who \_most\_ possess, are losers by their gain,

Stung by full proof, that bad at best, life's idle \_all\_ is vain."

--\_Young\_.

"Nor grudge I thee \_the much\_ the Grecians give,

Nor murm'ring take \_the little\_ I receive."

--\_Dryden\_.

2. Pronouns made nouns: "A love of seeing the \_what\_ and \_how\_ of all about

him."--STORY'S LIFE OF FLAXMAN: \_Pioneer\_, Vol. i, p. 133. "The nameless

HE, whose nod is Nature's birth."--\_Young\_, Night iv. "I was wont to load

my \_she\_ with knacks."--\_Shak. Winter's Tale\_. "Or any \_he\_, the proudest

of thy sort."--\_Shak\_. "I am the happiest \_she\_ in Kent."--\_Steele\_. "The

\_shes\_ of Italy."--\_Shak\_. "The \_hes\_ in birds."--\_Bacon\_. "We should soon

have as many \_hes\_ and \_shes\_ as the French."--\_Cobbet's E. Gram.\_, Para.

42. "If, for instance, we call a nation a \_she\_, or the sun a

\_he\_."--\_Ib.\_, Para. 198. "When I see many \_its\_ in a page, I always

tremble for the writer."--\_Ib.\_, Para. 196. "Let those two questionary

petitioners try to do this with their \_whos\_ and their \_whiches\_."--SPECT:

\_Ash's Gr.\_, p. 131.

"Such mortal drugs I have; but Mantua's law

Is death to any \_he\_ that utters them."--\_Shak\_.

3. Verbs made nouns: "Avaunt all attitude, and \_stare\_, and \_start\_

theatric."--\_Cowper\_. "A \_may-be\_ of mercy is sufficient."--\_Bridge\_.

"Which \_cuts\_ are reckoned among the fractures."--\_Wiseman\_. "The officer

erred in granting a \_permit\_."--"Feel darts and charms, \_attracts\_ and

flames."--\_Hudibras\_. "You may know by the falling off of the \_come\_, or

sprout."--\_Mortimer\_. "And thou hast talk'd of \_sallies\_ and

\_retires\_."--\_Shak\_.

"For all that else did come, were sure to fail;

Yet would he further none, but for \_avail\_."--\_Spenser\_.

4. Participles made nouns: "For the \_producing\_ of real

happiness."--\_Crabb\_. "For the \_crying\_ of the poor and the \_sighing\_ of

the needy, I will arise."--\_Bible\_. "Surely the \_churning\_ of milk bringeth

forth butter, and the \_wringing\_ of the nose bringeth forth blood; so the

\_forcing\_ of wrath bringeth forth strife."--\_Prov.\_, xxx, 33. "\_Reading,

writing\_, and \_ciphering\_, are indispensable to civilized man."--"Hence was

invented the distinction between \_doing\_ and \_permitting\_."--\_Calvin's

Inst.\_, p. 131. "Knowledge of the \_past\_ comes next."--\_Hermes\_, p. 113. "I

am my \_beloved's\_, and his desire is toward me."--\_Sol. Song\_, vii, 10.

"Here's--a simple \_coming-in\_ for one man."--\_Shak\_.

"What are thy rents? What are thy \_comings-in\_?

O Ceremony, show me but thy worth."--\_Id.\_

5. Adverbs made nouns: "In these cases we examine the \_why\_, the \_what\_,

and the \_how\_ of things."--\_L'Estrange\_. "If a point or \_now\_ were

extended, each of them would contain within itself infinite other points or

\_nows\_."--\_Hermes\_, p. 101. "The \_why\_ is plain as way to parish

church."--\_Shak\_. "'Tis Heaven itself that points out \_an

hereafter\_."--\_Addison\_. "The dread of \_a hereafter\_."--\_Fuller\_. "The

murmur of the deep \_amen\_."--\_Sir W. Scott\_. "For their \_whereabouts\_ lieth

in a mystery."--\_Book of Thoughts\_, p. 14. Better: "Their \_whereabout\_

lieth," or, "Their \_whereabouts lie\_," &c.

"Bid them farewell, Cordelia, though unkind;

Thou losest \_here\_, a better \_where\_ to find."--\_Shak\_.

6. Conjunctions made nouns: "The \_if\_, which is here employed, converts the

sentence into a supposition."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_ "Your \_if\_ is the only

peacemaker; much virtue is in \_if\_."--\_Shak\_.

"So his Lordship decreed with a grave solemn tone,

Decisive and clear, without one \_if\_ or \_but\_--

That whenever the Nose put his spectacles on,

By daylight or candlelight--Eyes should be shut."--\_Cowper\_.

7. Prepositions made nouns: "O, not like me; for mine's beyond

\_beyond\_."--\_Shakspeare: Cymb.\_, iii, 2. "I. e., her longing is \_further

than beyond\_; beyond any thing that desire can be said to be

beyond."--\_Singer's Notes\_. "You whirled them to the back of \_beyont\_ to

look at the auld Roman camp."--\_Antiquary\_, i. 37.

8. Interjections or phrases made nouns: "Come away from all the \_lo-heres\_!

and \_lo-theres\_!"--\_Sermon\_. "Will cuts him short with a '\_What

then\_?'"--\_Addison\_. "With \_hark\_ and \_whoop\_, and wild

\_halloo\_."--\_Scott\_. "And made a \_pish\_ at chance and sufferance."--\_Shak\_.

"A single look more marks th' internal wo,

Than all the windings of the lengthen'd \_oh\_."--\_Lloyd\_.

CLASSES.

Nouns are divided into two general classes; \_proper\_ and \_common\_. I. A

\_proper noun\_ is the name of some particular individual, or people, or

group; as, \_Adam, Boston\_, the \_Hudson\_, the \_Romans\_, the \_Azores\_, the

\_Alps\_.

II. A \_common noun\_ is the name of a sort, kind, or class, of beings or

things; as, \_Beast, bird, fish, insect,--creatures, persons, children\_.

The particular classes, \_collective, abstract\_, and \_verbal\_, or

\_participial\_, are usually included among common nouns. The name of a thing

\_sui generis\_ is also called common.

1. A \_collective noun\_, or \_noun of multitude\_, is the name of many

individuals together; as, \_Council, meeting, committee, flock\_.

2. An \_abstract noun\_ is the name of some particular quality considered

apart from its substance; as, \_Goodness, hardness, pride, frailty\_.

3. A \_verbal\_ or \_participial noun\_ is the name of some action, or state of

being; and is formed from a verb, like a participle, but employed as a

noun: as, "The \_triumphing\_ of the wicked is short."--\_Job\_, xx, 5.

4. A thing \_sui generis\_, (i. e., \_of its own peculiar kind\_,) is something

which is distinguished, not as an individual of a species, but as a sort by

itself, without plurality in either the noun or the sort of thing; as,

\_Galvanism, music, geometry\_.

OBS. 1.--Through the influence of an article, a proper name sometimes

acquires the import of a common noun: as, "He is \_the Cicero\_ of his age;"

that is, \_the great orator\_. "Many \_a fiery Alp\_;" that is, \_high volcanic

mountain\_. "Such is the following application of famous names; a Solomon

for a wise man, a Croesus for a rich man, a Judas for a traitor, a

Demosthenes for an orator, and a Homer for a poet."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p.

326.

"Consideration, like an angel, came,

And whipp'd \_th' offending Adam\_ out of him."--\_Shak\_.

OBS. 2.--A common noun, with the definite article before it, sometimes

becomes proper: as, \_The Park; the Strand; the Gharmel; the Downs; the

United States\_.

OBS. 3.--The common name of a thing or quality personified, often becomes

proper; our conception of the object being changed by the figure of speech:

as, "My power," said \_Reason\_, "is to advise, not to compel."--\_Johnson\_.

"Fair \_Peace\_ her olive branch extends." For such a word, the form of

parsing should be like this: "\_Peace\_ is a \_common noun, personified

proper\_; of the third person, singular number, feminine gender, and

nominative case." Here the construction of the word as a proper noun, and

of the \_feminine gender\_, is the result of the personification, and

contrary to the literal usage.

MODIFICATIONS.

Nouns have modifications of four kinds; namely, \_Persons, Numbers,

Genders\_, and \_Cases\_.

PERSONS.

Persons, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish the speaker, the

hearer, and the person or thing merely spoken of.

There are three persons; the \_first\_, the \_second\_, and the \_third\_.

The \_first person\_ is that which denotes the speaker or writer; as, "\_I

Paul\_ have written it."

The second person is that which denotes the hearer, or the person

addressed; as, "\_Robert\_, who did this?"

The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken

of; as, "\_James\_ loves his book."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The distinction of persons is founded on the different relations

which the objects mentioned in any discourse may bear to the discourse

itself. The speaker or writer, being the mover and maker of the

communication, of course stands in the nearest or \_first\_ of these

relations. The hearer or hearers, being personally present and directly

addressed, evidently sustain the next or \_second\_ of these relations; this

relation is also that of the reader, when he peruses what is addressed to

himself in print or writing. Lastly, whatsoever or whosoever is merely

mentioned in the discourse, bears to it that more remote relation which

constitutes the \_third\_ person. The distinction of persons belongs to

nouns, pronouns, and finite verbs; and to these it is always applied,

either by peculiarity of form or construction, or by inference from the

principles of concord. Pronouns are like their antecedents, and verbs are

like their subjects, in person.

OBS. 2.--Of the persons, numbers, genders, cases, and some other

grammatical modifications of words, it should be observed that they belong

not exclusively to any one part of speech, but jointly and equally, to two

or three. Hence, it is necessary that our \_definitions\_ of these things be

such as will apply to each of them in full, or under all circumstances; for

the definitions ought to be as general in their application as are the

things or properties defined. Any person, number, gender, case, or other

grammatical modification, is really but one and the same thing, in whatever

part of speech it may be found. This is plainly implied in the very nature

of every form of syntactical agreement; and as plainly contradicted in one

half, and probably more, of the definitions usually given of these things.

OBS. 3.--Let it be understood, that \_persons, in grammar\_, are not \_words\_,

but mere forms, relations, or modifications of words; that they are things,

thus named by a \_figure\_; \_things\_ of the neuter gender, and not living

souls. But persons, in common parlance, or in ordinary life, are

\_intelligent beings\_, of one or the other sex. These objects, different as

they are in their nature, are continually confounded by the makers of

English grammars: as, "The \_first\_ person is \_the person who

speaks\_."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 17. So Bicknell, of London: "The \_first

person\_ speaks of \_himself\_; as, \_I John take thee Elizabeth\_. The \_second\_

person has the speech directed to \_him\_, and is supposed to be present; as,

\_Thou Harry art a wicked fellow\_. The \_third\_ person is spoken of, or

described, and supposed to be \_absent\_; as, \_That Thomas is a good man\_.

And in the same manner the plural pronouns are used, when more than one are

spoken of."--\_Bicknell's Grammatical Wreath\_, p. 50. "The person speaking

is the first person; the person spoken to, the second; and the person

spoken of, the third."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 16. "The first person is the

speaker."--\_Parker & Fox's Gram.\_, Part i, p. 6. "Person is that, which

distinguishes a noun, that speaks, one spoken to, or one spoken

about."--\_S. B. Hall's Gram.\_, p. 6. "A noun that speaks!" A noun "spoken

to!" If ever one of Father Hall's nouns shall speak for itself, or answer

when "spoken to," will it not reprove him? And how can the \_first person\_

be "the \_person\_ WHO \_speaks\_," when every word of this phrase is of the

\_third\_ person? Most certainly, \_it is not\_ HE, nor any one of his sort. If

any body can boast of being "\_the first person in grammar\_," I pray, \_Who\_

is it? Is it not \_I\_, even \_I\_? Many grammarians say so. But nay: such

authors know not what the first person in grammar is. The Rev. Charles

Adams, with infinite absurdity, makes the three persons in grammar to be

never any thing but \_three nouns\_, which hold a confabulation thus: "Person

is defined to be \_that\_ which distinguishes a \_noun that speaks, one spoken

to, or one spoken of\_. The \_noun\_ that speaks [,] is the first person; as,

\_I, James\_, was present. The \_noun\_ that is spoken to, is the second

person; as, \_James\_, were you present? The \_noun\_ that is spoken of is the

third person; as, \_James\_ was present."--\_Adams's System of English Gram.\_,

p. 9. What can be a greater blunder, than to call the first person of a

verb, of a pronoun, or even of a noun, "\_the noun that speaks?\_" What can

be more absurd than are the following assertions? "\_Nouns\_ are \_in\_ the

first person when \_speaking\_. Nouns are \_of\_ the second person when

\_addressed\_ or \_spoken to\_."--\_O. C. Felton's Gram.\_, p. 9.

OBS. 4.--An other error, scarcely less gross than that which has just been

noticed, is the very common one of identifying the three grammatical

persons with certain \_words\_, called personal pronouns: as, "\_I\_ is the

first person, \_thou\_ the second, \_he, she\_ or \_it\_, the third."--\_Smith's

Productive Gram.\_, p. 53. "\_I\_ is the first person, singular. \_Thou\_ is the

second person, singular. \_He, she\_, or \_it\_, is the third person, singular.

\_We\_ is the first person, plural. \_Ye\_ or \_you\_ is the second person,

plural. \_They\_ is the third person, plural."--\_L. Murray's Grammar\_, p. 51;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 54; \_D. Adams's\_, 37; \_A. Flint's\_, 18; \_Kirkham's\_, 98;

\_Cooper's\_, 34; \_T. H. Miller's\_, 26; \_Hull's\_, 21; \_Frost's\_, 13;

\_Wilcox's\_, 18; \_Bacon's\_, 19; \_Alger's\_, 22; \_Maltby's\_, 19; \_Perley's\_,

15; \_S. Putnam's\_, 22. Now there is no more propriety in affirming, that

"\_I is the first person\_," than in declaring that \_me, we, us, am,

ourselves, we think, I write\_, or any other word or phrase \_of\_ the first

person, \_is\_ the first person. Yet Murray has given us no other definitions

or explanations of the persons than the foregoing erroneous assertions;

and, if I mistake not, all the rest who are here named, have been content

to define them only as he did. Some others, however, have done still worse:

as, "There are \_three\_ personal pronouns; so called, because they denote

the three persons, \_who\_ are the subjects of a discourse, viz. 1st. \_I, who

is\_ the person \_speaking\_; 2d \_thou, who is\_ spoken to; 3d \_he, she\_, or

\_it, who\_ is spoken of, and their plurals, \_we, ye\_ or \_you,

they\_."--\_Bingham's Accidence\_, 20th Ed., p. 7. Here the two kinds of error

which I have just pointed out, are jumbled together. It is impossible to

write \_worse English\_ than this! Nor is the following much better: "Of the

personal pronouns there are five, viz. \_I\_, in the first person, speaking;

\_Thou\_, in the second person, spoken to; and \_He, she, it\_, in the third

person, spoken of."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 25.

OBS. 5.--In \_written\_ language, the \_first person\_ denotes the writer or

author; and the \_second\_, the reader or person addressed: except when the

writer describes not himself, but some one else, as uttering to an other

the words which he records. This exception takes place more particularly in

the writing of dialogues and dramas; in which the first and second persons

are abundantly used, not as the representatives of the author and his

reader, but as denoting the fictitious speakers and hearers that figure in

each scene. But, in discourse, the grammatical persons may be changed

without a change of the living subject. In the following sentence, the

three grammatical persons are all of them used with reference to one and

the same individual: "Say ye of \_Him whom\_ the Father hath sanctified and

sent into the world, \_Thou blasphemest\_, because \_I said I am\_ the \_Son\_ of

\_God?\_"--\_John\_, x, 36.

OBS. 6.-The speaker seldom refers to himself \_by name\_, as the speaker;

and, of the objects which there is occasion to name in discourse, but

comparatively few are such as can ever be supposed to speak. Consequently,

\_nouns\_ are rarely used in the first person; and when they do assume this

relation, a pronoun is commonly associated with them: as, "\_I John\_,"--"\_We

Britons\_." These words I conceive to agree throughout, in person, number,

gender, and case; though it must be confessed, that agreement like this is

not always required between words in apposition. But some grammarians deny

the first person to nouns altogether; others, with much more consistency,

ascribe it;[140] while very many are entirely silent on the subject. Yet it

is plain that both the doctrine of concords, and the analogy of general

grammar, require its admission. The reason of this may be seen in the

following examples: "\_Themistocles ad te veni\_." "I Themistocles have come

to you."--\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 72. "\_Adsum Troius Æneas\_."--\_Virgil\_.

"\_Romulus Rex regia arma offero\_."--Livy. "\_Annibal peto pacem\_."--Id.

"\_Callopius recensui.\_"--See \_Terence's Comedies, at the end\_. "\_Paul\_, an

apostle, &c., unto Timothy, \_my\_ own son in the faith."--\_1 Tim.\_, i, 2.

Again, if the word \_God\_ is of the second person, in the text, "\_Thou,

God\_, seest me," why should any one deny that \_Paul\_ is of the first

person, in this one? "\_I Paul\_ have written it."--\_Philemon\_, 19. Or this?

"The salutation by the hand of \_me Paul\_."--\_Col.\_, iv, 18. And so of the

plural: "Of \_you builders\_."--\_Acts\_, iv, 11. "Of \_us the apostles\_."--\_2

Pet.\_, iii, 2. How can it be pretended, that, in the phrase, "\_I Paul\_,"

\_I\_ is of the first person, as denoting the speaker, and \_Paul\_, of some

other person, as denoting something or somebody that is \_not\_ the speaker?

Let the admirers of Murray, Kirkham, Ingersoll, R. C. Smith, Comly,

Greenleaf, Parkhurst, or of any others who teach this absurdity, answer.

OBS. 7.--As, in the direct application of what are called Christian names,

there is a kind of familiarity, which on many occasions would seem to

indicate a lack of proper respect; so in a frequent and familiar use of the

second person, as it is the placing of an other in the more intimate

relation of the hearer, and one's self in that of the speaker, there is a

sort of assumption which may seem less modest and respectful than to use

the third person. In the following example, the patriarch Jacob uses both

forms; applying the term \_servant\_ to himself, and to his brother Esau the

term \_lord\_: "Let \_my lord, I\_ pray \_thee\_, pass over before \_his servant\_:

and \_I\_ will lead on softly."--\_Gen.\_, xxxiii, 14. For when a speaker or

writer does not choose to declare himself in the \_first\_ person, or to

address his hearer or reader in the \_second\_, he speaks of both or either

in the \_third\_. Thus Moses relates what \_Moses\_ did, and Cæsar records the

achievements of \_Cæsar\_. So Judah humbly beseeches Joseph: "Let \_thy

servant\_ abide in stead of the lad a bondman to \_my lord\_."--\_Gen.\_, xliv,

33. And Abraham reverently intercedes with God: "Oh! let not \_the Lord\_ be

angry, and I will speak."--\_Gen.\_, xviii, 30. And the Psalmist prays:

"\_God\_ be merciful unto us, and bless us; and cause \_his\_ face to shine

upon us."--\_Ps.\_, lxvii, 1. So, on more common occasions:--

"As will the rest, so \_willeth Winchester\_."--\_Shak\_.

"Richard of York, how \_fares\_ our dearest \_brother\_?"--\_Id.\_[141]

OBS. 8.--When inanimate things are spoken to, they are \_personified\_; and

their names are put in the second person, because by the figure the objects

are \_supposed\_ to be capable of hearing: as, "What ailed thee, \_O thou

sea\_, that thou fleddest? \_thou Jordan\_, that thou wast driven back? \_Ye

mountains\_, that ye skipped like rams; and \_ye little hills\_, like lambs?

Tremble, \_thou earth\_, at the presence of the Lord, at the presence of the

God of Jacob."--\_Psalms\_, cxiv, 5-7.

NUMBERS.

Numbers, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish unity and

plurality.

There are two numbers; the \_singular\_ and the \_plural\_.

The \_singular number\_ is that which denotes but one; as, "The \_boy

learns\_."

The \_plural number\_ is that which denotes more than one; as, "The \_boys

learn\_."

The plural number \_of nouns\_ is regularly formed by adding \_s\_ or \_es\_ to

the singular: as, \_book, books; box, boxes; sofa, sofas; hero, heroes\_.

When the singular ends in a sound which will unite with that of \_s\_, the

plural is generally formed by adding \_s only\_, and the number of syllables

is not increased: as, \_pen, pens; grape, grapes\_.

But when the sound of \_s\_ cannot be united with that of the primitive word,

the regular plural adds \_s\_ to final \_e\_, and \_es\_ to other terminations,

and forms a separate syllable: as, \_page, pages; fox, foxes\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The distinction of numbers serves merely to show whether we speak

of one object, or of more. In some languages, as the Greek and the Arabic,

there is a \_dual\_ number, which denotes \_two\_, or a \_pair\_; but in ours,

this property of words, or class of modifications, extends no farther than

to distinguish unity from plurality, and plurality from unity. It belongs

to nouns, pronouns, and finite verbs; and to these it is always applied,

either by peculiarity of form, or by inference from the principles of

concord. Pronouns are like their antecedents, and verbs are like their

subjects, in number.

OBS. 2.--The most common way of forming the plural of English nouns, is

that of simply adding to them an \_s\_; which, when it unites with a sharp

consonant, is always sharp, or hissing; and when it follows a vowel or a

flat mute, is generally flat, like \_z\_: thus, in the words, \_ships, skiffs,

pits, rocks, depths, lakes, gulfs\_, it is sharp; but in \_seas, lays,

rivers, hills, ponds, paths, rows, webs, flags\_, it is flat. The

terminations which always make the regular plural in \_es\_, with increase of

syllables, are twelve; namely, \_ce, ge, ch\_ soft, \_che\_ soft, \_sh, ss, s,

se, x, xe, z\_, and \_ze\_: as in \_face, faces; age, ages; torch, torches;

niche, niches; dish, dishes; kiss, kisses; rebus, rebuses; lens, lenses;

chaise, chaises; corpse, corpses; nurse, nurses; box, boxes; axe, axes;

phiz, phizzes; maze, mazes.\_ All other endings readily unite in sound

either with the sharp or with the flat \_s\_, as they themselves are sharp or

flat; and, to avoid an increase of syllables, we allow the final \_e\_ mute

to remain mute after that letter is added: thus, we always pronounce as

monosyllables the words \_babes, blades, strifes, tithes, yokes, scales,

names, canes, ropes, shores, plates, doves\_, and the like.

OBS. 3.--Though the irregular plurals of our language appear considerably

numerous when brought together, they are in fact very few in comparison

with the many thousands that are perfectly simple and regular. In some

instances, however, usage is various in writing, though uniform in speech;

an unsettlement peculiar to certain words that terminate in vowels: as,

\_Rabbis\_, or \_rabbies; octavos\_, or \_octavoes; attornies\_, or \_attorneys\_.

There are also some other difficulties respecting the plurals of nouns, and

especially respecting those of foreign words; of compound terms; of names

and titles; and of words redundant or deficient in regard to the numbers.

What is most worthy of notice, respecting all these puzzling points of

English grammar, is briefly contained in the following observations.

OBS. 4.--It is a general rule of English grammar, that all singular nouns

ending with a vowel preceded by an other vowel, shall form the plural by

simply assuming an \_s\_: as, \_Plea, pleas; idea, ideas; hernia, hernias;

bee, bees; lie, lies; foe, foes; shoe, shoes; cue, cues; eye, eyes; folio,

folios; bamboo, bamboos; cuckoo, cuckoos; embryo, embryos; bureau, bureaus;

purlieu, purlieus; sou, sous; view, views; straw, straws; play, plays; key,

keys; medley, medleys; viceroy, viceroys; guy, guys.\_ To this rule, the

plurals of words ending in \_quy\_, as \_alloquies, colloquies, obloquies,

soliloquies\_, are commonly made exceptions; because many have conceived

that the \_u\_, in such instances, is a mere appendage to the \_q\_, or is a

consonant having the power of \_w\_, and not a vowel forming a diphthong with

the \_y\_. All other deviations from the rule, as \_monies\_ for \_moneys,

allies\_ for \_alleys, vallies\_ for \_valleys, chimnies\_ for \_chimneys\_, &c.,

are now usually condemned as errors. See Rule 12th for Spelling.

OBS. 5.--It is also a general principle, that nouns ending in \_y\_ preceded

by a consonant, change the \_y\_ into \_i\_, and add \_es\_ for the plural,

without increase of syllables: as, \_fly, flies; ally, allies; city, cities;

colony, colonies\_. So nouns in \_i\_, (so far as we have any that are

susceptible of a change of number,) form the plural regularly by assuming

\_es\_: as, \_alkali, alkalies; salmagundi, salinagundies.\_ Common nouns

ending in \_y\_ preceded by a consonant, are numerous; and none of them

deviate from the foregoing rule of forming the plural: thus, \_duty,

duties\_. The termination added is \_es\_, and the \_y\_ is changed into \_i\_,

according to the general principle expressed in Rule 11th for Spelling.

But, to this principle, or rule, some writers have supposed that \_proper

nouns\_ were to be accounted exceptions. And accordingly we sometimes find

such names made plural by the mere addition of an \_s\_; as, "How come the

\_Pythagoras'\_, [it should be, \_the Pythagorases\_,] the \_Aristotles\_, the

\_Tullys\_, the \_Livys\_, to appear, even to us at this distance, as stars of

the first magnitude in the vast fields of ether?"--\_Burgh's Dignity\_, Vol.

i, p. 131. This doctrine, adopted from some of our older grammars, I was

myself, at one period, inclined to countenance; (see \_Institutes of English

Grammar\_, p. 33, at the bottom;) but further observation having led me to

suspect, there is more \_authority\_ for changing the \_y\_ than for retaining

it, I shall by-and-by exhibit some examples of this change, and leave the

reader to take his choice of the two forms, or principles.

OBS. 6.--The vowel \_a\_, at the end of a word, (except in the questionable

term \_huzza\_, or when silent, as in \_guinea\_,) has always its Italian or

middle sound, as heard in the interjection \_aha!\_ a sound which readily

unites with that of \_s\_ flat, and which ought, in deliberate speech, to be

carefully preserved in plurals from this ending: as, \_Canada, the Canadas;

cupola, cupolas; comma, commas; anathema, anathemas\_. To pronounce the

final \_a\_ flat, as \_Africay\_ for \_Africa\_, is a mark of vulgar ignorance.

OBS. 7.--The vowel \_e\_ at the end of a word, is generally silent; and, even

when otherwise, it remains single in plurals from this ending; the \_es\_,

whenever the \_e\_ is vocal, being sounded \_eez\_, or like the word \_ease\_:

as, \_apostrophe, apostrophes; epitome, epitomes; simile, similes\_. This

class of words being anomalous in respect to pronunciation, some authors

have attempted to reform them, by changing the \_e\_ to \_y\_ in the singular,

and writing \_ies\_ for the plural: as, \_apostrophy, apostrophies; epitomy,

epitomies; simily, similies\_. A reformation of some sort seems desirable

here, and this has the advantage of being first proposed; but it is not

extensively adopted, and perhaps never will be; for the vowel sound in

question, is not exactly that of the terminations \_y\_ and \_ies\_, but one

which seems to require \_ee\_--a stronger sound than that of \_y\_, though

similar to it.

OBS. 8.--For nouns ending in open \_o\_ preceded by a consonant, the regular

method of forming the plural seems to be that of adding \_es\_; as in

\_bilboes, umboes, buboes, calicoes, moriscoes, gambadoes, barricadoes,

fumadoes, carbonadoes, tornadoes, bravadoes, torpedoes, innuendoes,

viragoes, mangoes, embargoes, cargoes, potargoes, echoes, buffaloes,

volcanoes, heroes, negroes, potatoes, manifestoes, mulattoes, stilettoes,

woes\_. In words of this class, the \_e\_ appears to be useful as a means of

preserving the right sound of the \_o\_; consequently, such of them as are

the most frequently used, have become the most firmly fixed in this

orthography. In practice, however, we find many similar nouns very

frequently, if not uniformly, written with \_s\_ only; as, \_cantos, juntos,

grottos, solos, quartos, octavos, duodecimos, tyros\_. So that even the best

scholars seem to have frequently doubted which termination they ought to

regard as the \_regular\_ one. The whole class includes more than one hundred

words. Some, however, are seldom used in the plural; and others, never.

\_Wo\_ and \_potato\_ are sometimes written \_woe\_ and \_potatoe\_. This may have

sprung from a notion, that such as have the \_e\_ in the plural, should have

it also in the singular. But this principle has never been carried out;

and, being repugnant to derivation, it probably never will be. The only

English appellatives that are established in \_oe\_, are the following

fourteen: seven monosyllables, \_doe, foe, roe, shoe, sloe, soe, toe\_; and

seven longer words, \_rockdoe, aloe, felloe, canoe, misletoe, tiptoe,

diploe\_. The last is pronounced \_dip'-lo-e\_ by Worcester; but Webster,

Bolles, and some others, give it as a word of two syllables only.[142]

OBS. 9.--Established exceptions ought to be enumerated and treated as

exceptions; but it is impossible to remember how to write some scores of

words, so nearly alike as \_fumadoes\_ and \_grenados, stilettoes\_ and

\_palmettos\_, if they are allowed to differ in termination, as these

examples do in Johnson's Dictionary. Nay, for lack of a rule to guide his

pen, even Johnson himself could not remember the orthography of the common

word \_mangoes\_ well enough to \_copy\_ it twice without inconsistency. This

may be seen by his example from King, under the words \_mango\_ and

\_potargo\_. Since, therefore, either termination is preferable to the

uncertainty which must attend a division of this class of words between the

two; and since \_es\_ has some claim to the preference, as being a better

index to the sound; I shall make no exceptions to the principle, that

common nouns ending in \_o\_ preceded by a consonant take \_es\_ for the

plural. Murray says, "\_Nouns which\_ end in \_o\_ have sometimes \_es\_ added,

to form the plural; as, cargo, echo, hero, negro, manifesto, potato,

volcano, wo: and sometimes only \_s\_; as, folio, nuncio, punctilio,

seraglio."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 40. This amounts to nothing, unless it is to

be inferred from his \_examples\_, that others like them in form are to take

\_s\_ or \_es\_ accordingly; and this is what I teach, though it cannot be said

that Murray maintains the principle.

OBS. 10.--Proper names of \_individuals\_, strictly used as such, have no

plural. But when several persons of the same name are spoken of, the noun

becomes in some degree common, and admits of the plural form and an

article; as, "\_The Stuarts, the Cæsars\_."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 41.

These, however, may still be called \_proper nouns\_, in parsing; because

they are only inflections, peculiarly applied, of certain names which are

indisputably such. So likewise when such nouns are used to denote

character: as, "\_Solomons\_, for wise men; \_Neros\_, for tyrants."--\_Ib.\_

"Here we see it becomes a doubt which of the two \_Herculeses\_, was the

monster-queller."--\_Notes to Pope's Dunciad\_, iv, 492. The proper names of

\_nations, tribes\_, and \_societies\_, are generally plural; and, except in a

direct address, they are usually construed with the definite article: as,

"\_The Greeks, the Athenians, the Jews, the Jesuits\_." But such words may

take the singular form with the indefinite article, as often as we have

occasion to speak of an individual of such a people; as, "\_A Greek, an

Athenian, a Jew, a Jesuit\_." These, too, may be called \_proper nouns\_;

because they are national, patrial, or tribal names, each referring to some

place or people, and are not appellatives, which refer to actual sorts or

kinds, not considered local.

OBS. 11.--Proper names, when they form the plural, for the most part form

it regularly, by assuming \_s\_ or \_es\_ according to the termination: as,

\_Carolina\_, the \_Carolinas\_; \_James\_, the \_Jameses\_. And those which are

only or chiefly plural, have, or ought to have, such terminations as are

proper to distinguish them as plurals, so that the form for the singular

may be inferred: as, "The \_Tungooses\_ occupy nearly a third of

Siberia."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 379. Here the singular must certainly be \_a

Tungoose\_. "The principal tribes are the \_Pawnees\_, the \_Arrapahoes\_, and

the \_Cumanches\_, who roam through the regions of the Platte, the Arkansaw,

and the Norte."--\_Ib.\_, p. 179. Here the singulars may be supposed to be a

\_Pawnee\_, an \_Arrapaho\_, and a \_Cumanche\_. "The Southern or Floridian

family comprised the \_Cherokees, Creeks, Chickasaws, Choctaws, Seminoles\_,

and \_Natchez\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 179. Here all are regular plurals, except the

last; and this probably ought to be \_Natchezes\_, but Jefferson spells it

\_Natches\_, the singular of which I do not know. Sometimes foreign words or

foreign terminations have been improperly preferred to our own; which last

are more intelligible, and therefore better: as, \_Esquimaux\_, to

\_Esquimaus\_; \_Knistenaux\_, to \_Knistenaus\_, or \_Crees; Sioux\_, to \_Sious\_,

or \_Dahcotahs; Iroquois\_, to \_Iroquoys\_, or \_Hurons\_.

OBS. 12.--Respecting the plural of nouns ending in \_i, o, u\_, or \_y\_,

preceded by a consonant, there is in present usage much uncertainty. As any

vowel sound may be uttered with an \_s\_, many writers suppose these letters

to require for plurals strictly regular, the \_s\_ only; and to take \_es\_

occasionally, by way of exception. Others, (perhaps with more reason,)

assume, that the most usual, regular, and proper endings for the plural, in

these instances, are \_ies, oes, and ues\_: as, \_alkali, alkalies; halo,

haloes; gnu, gnues; enemy, enemies\_. This, I think, is right for common

nouns. How far proper names are to be made exceptions, because they are

proper names, is an other question. It is certain that some of them are not

to be excepted: as, for instance, \_Alleghany\_, the \_Alleghanies\_; \_Sicily\_,

the Two \_Sicilies\_; \_Ptolemy\_, the \_Ptolemies\_; \_Jehu\_, the \_Jehues\_. So

the names of tribes; as, The \_Missouries\_, the \_Otoes\_, the \_Winnebagoes\_.

Likewise, the \_houries\_ and the \_harpies\_; which words, though not strictly

proper names, are often written with a capital as such. Like these are

\_rabbies, cadies, mufties, sophies\_, from which some writers omit the \_e\_.

Johnson, Walker, and others, write \_gipsy\_ and \_gipsies\_; Webster, now

writes \_Gipsey\_ and \_Gipseys\_; Worcester prefers \_Gypsy\_, and probably

\_Gypsies\_: Webster once wrote the plural \_gypsies\_; (see his \_Essays\_, p.

333;) and Johnson cites the following line:--

"I, near yon stile, three sallow \_gypsies\_ met."--\_Gay\_.

OBS. 13.--Proper names in \_o\_ are commonly made plural by \_s\_ only. Yet

there seems to be the same reason for inserting the \_e\_ in these, as in

other nouns of the same ending; namely, to prevent the \_o\_ from acquiring a

short sound. "I apprehend," says Churchill, "it has been from an erroneous

notion of proper names being unchangeable, that some, feeling the necessity

of obviating this mispronunciation, have put an apostrophe between the \_o\_

and the \_s\_ in the plural, \_in stead of an e\_; writing \_Cato's, Nero's\_;

and on a similar principle, \_Ajax's, Venus's\_; thus using the possessive

case singular for the nominative or objective plural. Harris says very

properly, 'We have our \_Marks\_ and our \_Antonies\_: \_Hermes\_, B. 2, Ch. 4;

for which those would have given us \_Mark's\_ and \_Antony's\_."--\_New Gram.\_,

p. 206. Whatever may have been the motive for it, such a use of the

apostrophe is a gross impropriety. "In this quotation, ['From the

Socrates's, the Plato's, and the Confucius's of the age,'] the proper names

should have been pluralized like common nouns; thus, From the \_Socrateses\_,

the \_Platoes\_, and the \_Confuciuses\_ of the age."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p.

126; \_Bullions's\_, 142.

OBS. 14.--The following are some examples of the plurals of proper names,

which I submit to the judgement of the reader, in connexion with the

foregoing observations: "The Romans had their plurals \_Marci\_ and

\_Antonii\_, as we in later days have our \_Marks\_ and our

\_Anthonies\_."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 40. "There seems to be more reason for

such plurals, as the \_Ptolemies, Scipios, Catos\_: or, to instance in more

modern names, the \_Howards, Pelhams, and Montagues\_."--\_Ib.\_, 40. "Near the

family seat of the \_Montgomeries\_ of Coil's-field."--\_Burns's Poems\_, Note,

p. 7. "Tryphon, a surname of one of the \_Ptolemies\_."--\_Lempriere's Dict.\_

"Sixteen of the \_Tuberos\_, with their wives and children, lived in a small

house."--\_Ib.\_ "What are the \_Jupiters\_ and \_Junos\_ of the heathens to such

a God?"--\_Burgh's Dignity\_, i, 234. "Also when we speak of more than one

person of the same name; as, the \_Henries\_, the \_Edwards\_."--\_Cobbetts E.

Gram.\_, ¶ 40. "She was descended from the \_Percies\_ and the

\_Stanleys\_."--\_Loves of the Poets\_, ii, 102. "Naples, or the \_Two

Sicilies\_."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 273. The word \_India\_, commonly makes the

plural \_Indies\_, not \_Indias\_; and, for \_Ajaxes\_, the poets write \_Ajaces\_.

But Richard Hiley says, "Proper nouns, when pluralized, follow the same

rules as common nouns; as, Venus, the \_Venuses\_; Ajax, the \_Ajaxes\_; Cato,

the \_Catoes\_; Henry, the \_Henries\_."--\_Hiley's E. Gram.\_, p. 18.

"He ev'ry day from King to King can walk,

Of all our \_Harries\_, all our Edwards talk."--\_Pope's Satires\_, iv.

OBS. 15.--When a name and a title are to be used together in a plural

sense, many persons are puzzled to determine whether the name, or the

title, or both, should be in the plural form. For example--in speaking of

two young ladies whose family name is Bell--whether to call them the \_Miss

Bells\_, the \_Misses Bell\_, or the \_Misses Bells\_. To an inquiry on this

point, a learned editor, who prefers the last, lately gave his answer thus:

"There are two young ladies; of course they are 'the Misses.' Their name is

Bell; of course there are two 'Bells.' Ergo, the correct phrase, in

speaking of them, is--'the Misses Bells.'"--\_N. Y. Com. Adv\_. This puts the

words in apposition; and there is no question, that it is \_formally\_

correct. But still it is less agreeable to the ear, less frequently heard,

and less approved by grammarians, than the first phrase; which, if we may

be allowed to assume that the two words may be taken together as a sort of

compound, is correct also. Dr. Priestley says, "When a name has a title

prefixed to it, as \_Doctor, Miss, Master\_, &c., the plural termination

affects only the latter of the two words; as, 'The two \_Doctor

Nettletons\_'--'The two \_Miss Thomsons\_;' though a strict analogy would

plead for the alteration of the former word, and lead us to say, 'The two

\_Doctors Nettleton\_'--'The two \_Misses Thomson\_.'"--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

59. The following quotations show the opinions of some other grammarians:

"Two or more nouns in concordance, and forming one complex name, or a name

and a title, have the plural termination annexed to the last only; as, 'The

\_Miss Smiths\_'--'The three \_Doctor Simpsons\_'--'The two \_Master

Wigginses\_.' With a few exceptions, and those not parallel to the examples

just given, we almost uniformly, in complex names, confine the inflection

to the last or the latter noun."--\_Dr. Crombie\_. The foregoing opinion from

Crombie, is quoted and seconded by Maunder, who adds the following

examples: "Thus, Dr. Watts: 'May there not be \_Sir Isaac Newtons\_ in every

science?'--'You must not suppose that the world is made up of \_Lady Aurora

Granvilles\_.'"--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 2.

OBS. 16.--These writers do not seem to accord with W. L. Stone, the editor

above quoted, nor would his reasoning apply well to several of their

examples. Yet both opinions are right, if neither be carried too far. For

when the words are in apposition, rather than in composition, the first

name or title must be made plural, if it refers to more than one: as, "The

\_Misses Bell and Brown\_,"--"\_Messrs. Lambert and Son\_,"--"The \_Lords

Calthorpe and Erskine\_,"--"The \_Lords Bishops\_ of Durham and St.

David's,"--"The \_Knights Hospitalers\_,"--"The \_Knights Templars\_,"--"The

\_Knights Baronets\_." But this does not prove the other construction, which

varies the last word only, to be irregular; and, if it did, there is

abundant authority for it. Nor is that which varies the first only, to be

altogether condemned, though Dr. Priestley is unquestionably wrong

respecting the "\_strict analogy\_" of which he speaks. The joining of a

plural title to one singular noun, as, "\_Misses Roy\_,"--"\_The Misses

Bell\_,"--"\_The two Misses Thomson\_," produces a phrase which is in itself

the \_least analogous\_ of the three; but, "\_The Misses Jane and Eliza

Bell\_," is a phrase which nobody perhaps will undertake to amend. It

appears, then, that each of these forms of expression may be right in some

cases; and each of them may be wrong, if improperly substituted for either

of the others.

OBS. 17.--The following statements, though erroneous in several

particulars, will show the opinions of some other grammarians, upon the

foregoing point: "Proper nouns have the plural only when they refer to a

race or family; as, \_The Campbells\_; or to several persons of the same

name; as, \_The eight Henrys; the two Mr. Sells; the two Miss Browns\_; or,

without the numeral, \_the Miss Roys.\_ But in addressing letters in which

both or all are equally concerned, and also when the names are different,

we pluralize the \_title\_, (Mr. or Miss,) and write, \_Misses\_ Brown;

\_Misses\_ Roy; \_Messrs\_, (for Messieurs, Fr.) Guthrie and Tait."\_--Lennie's

Gram.\_, p. 7. "If we wish to distinguish the \_unmarried\_ from the \_married\_

Howards, we call them \_the Miss Howards.\_ If we wish to distinguish these

Misses from other Misses, we call them the \_Misses Howard\_."--\_Fowle's

Gram.\_ "To distinguish several persons of the same name and family from

others of a different name and family, the \_title\_, and not the \_proper

name\_, is varied to express the distinction; as, the \_Misses\_ Story, the

\_Messrs.\_ Story. The elliptical meaning is, the Misses and Messrs, \_who are

named\_ Story. To distinguish \_unmarried\_ from \_married\_ ladies, \_the proper

name\_, and not the \_title\_, should be varied; as, the \_Miss\_ Clarks. When

we mention more than one person of different names, the title should be

expressed before each; as, \_Miss\_ Burns, \_Miss\_ Parker, and \_Miss\_

Hopkinson, were present."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 79. In the following

examples from Pope's Works, the last word only is varied: "He paragons

himself to two \_Lord Chancellors\_ for law."--Vol. iii, p. 61. "Yearly

panegyrics upon the \_Lord Mayors\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 83.

"Whence hapless Monsieur much complains at Paris

Of wrongs from Duchesses and \_Lady Maries\_."\_--Dunciad\_, B. ii, L 135.

OBS. 18.--The following eleven nouns in \_f\_, change the \_f\_ into \_v\_ and

assume \_es\_ for the plural: \_sheaf, sheaves; leaf, leaves; loaf, loaves;

leaf, beeves; thief, thieves; calf, calves; half, halves; elf, elves;

shelf, shelves; self, selves; wolf, wolves\_. Three others in \_fe\_ are

similar: \_life, lives; knife, knives; wife, wives.\_ These are specific

exceptions to the general rule for plurals, and not a series of examples

coming under a particular rule; for, contrary to the instructions of nearly

all our grammarians, there are more than twice as many words of the same

endings, which take \_s\_ only: as, \_chiefs, kerchiefs, handkerchiefs,

mischiefs, beliefs, misbeliefs, reliefs, bassreliefs, briefs, feifs,

griefs, clefs, semibrefs, oafs, waifs, coifs, gulfs, hoofs, roofs, proofs,

reproofs, woofs, califs, turfs, scarfs, dwarfs, wharfs, fifes, strifes,

safes.\_ The plural of \_wharf\_ is sometimes written \_wharves\_; but perhaps

as frequently, and, if so, more accurately, \_wharfs\_. Examples and

authorities: "\_Wharf, wharfs\_."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 80; \_Ward's\_, 24;

\_Goar's\_, 26; \_Lennie's\_, 7; \_Bucke's\_, 39. "There were not in London so

many \_wharfs\_, or \_keys\_, for the landing of merchants' goods."--CHILD: \_in

Johnson's Dict.\_ "The \_wharfs\_ of Boston are also worthy of

notice."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 37. "Between banks thickly clad with

dwelling-houses, manufactories, and \_wharfs\_."\_--London Morn. Chronicle\_,

1833. Nouns in \_ff\_ take \_s\_ only; as, \_skiffs, stuffs, gaffs\_. But the

plural of \_staff\_ has hitherto been generally written \_staves\_; a puzzling

and useless anomaly, both in form and sound: for all the compounds of

\_staff\_ are regular; as, \_distaffs, whipstaffs, tipstaffs, flagstaffs,

quarterstaffs\_; and \_staves\_ is the regular plural of \_stave\_, a word now

in very common use with a different meaning, as every cooper and every

musician knows. \_Staffs\_ is now sometimes used; as, "I saw the husbandmen

bending over their \_staffs\_."--\_Lord Carnarvon\_. "With their \_staffs\_ in

their hands for very age."--\_Hope of Israel\_, p. 16. "To distinguish

between the two \_staffs\_."--\_Comstock's Elocution\_, p. 43. In one instance,

I observe, a very excellent scholar has written \_selfs\_ for \_selves\_, but

the latter is the established plural of \_self\_:

"Self-love would cease, or be dilated, when

We should behold as many \_selfs\_ as men."\_--Waller's Poems\_, p. 55.

OBS. 19.--Of nouns purely English, the following thirteen are the only

simple words that form distinct plurals not ending in \_s\_ or \_es\_, and four

of these are often regular: \_man, men; woman, women; child, children;

brother, brethren\_ or \_brothers; ox, oxen; goose, geese; foot, feet; tooth,

teeth; louse, lice; mouse, mice; die, dice\_ or \_dies; penny, pence\_ or

\_pennies; pea, pease\_ or \_peas\_. The word \_brethren\_ is now applied only to

fellow-members of the same church or fraternity; for sons of the same

parents we always use \_brothers\_; and this form is sometimes employed in

the other sense. \_Dice\_ are spotted cubes for gaming; \_dies\_ are stamps for

coining money, or for impressing metals. \_Pence\_, as \_six pence\_, refers to

the amount of money in value; \_pennies\_ denotes the corns themselves. "We

write \_peas\_, for two or more individual seeds; but \_pease\_, for an

indefinite number in quantity or bulk."\_--Webster's Dict.\_ This last

anomaly, I think, might well enough "be spared; the sound of the word being

the same, and the distinction to the eye not always regarded." Why is it

not as proper, to write an order for "a bushel of \_peas\_," as for "a bushel

of \_beans\_?" "\_Peas\_ and \_beans\_ may be severed from the ground before they

be quite dry."\_--Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 31.

OBS. 20.--When a compound, ending with any of the foregoing irregular

words, is made plural, it follows the fashion of the word with which it

ends: as, \_Gentleman, gentlemen; bondwoman, bondwomen; foster-child,

foster-children; solan-goose, solan-geese; eyetooth, eyeteeth; woodlouse,

woodlice\_;[143] \_dormouse, dormice; half-penny, halfpence, half-pennies\_.

In this way, these irregularities extend to many words; though some of the

metaphorical class, as \_kite's-foot, colts-foot, bear's-foot, lion's-foot\_,

being names of plants, have no plural. The word \_man\_, which is used the

most frequently in this way, makes more than seventy such compounds. But

there are some words of this ending, which, not being compounds of \_man\_,

are regular: as, \_German, Germans; Turcoman, Turcomans; Mussulman,

Mussulmans; talisman, talismans; leman, lemans; caiman, caimans\_.

OBS. 21.--Compounds, in general, admit but one variation to form the

plural, and that must be made in the principal word, rather than in the

adjunct; but where the terms differ little in importance, the genius of the

language obviously inclines to a variation of the last only. Thus we write

\_fathers-in-law, sons-in-law, knights-errant, courts-martial,

cousins-german, hangers-on, comings-in, goings-out, goings-forth\_, varying

the first; and \_manhaters, manstealers, manslayers, maneaters, mandrills,

handfuls, spoonfuls, mouthfuls, pailfuls, outpourings, ingatherings,

downsittings, overflowings\_, varying the last. So, in many instances, when

there is a less intimate connexion of the parts, and the words are written

with a hyphen, if not separately, we choose to vary the latter or last: as,

\_fellow-servants, queen-consorts, three-per-cents, he-goats, she-bears,

jack-a-dandies, jack-a-lanterns, piano-fortes\_. The following mode of

writing is irregular in two respects; first, because the words are

separated, and secondly, because both are varied: "Is it unreasonable to

say with John Wesley, that '\_men buyers\_ are exactly on a level with \_men

stealers\_?"--GOODELL'S LECT. II: \_Liberator\_, ix, 65. According to analogy,

it ought to be: "\_Manbuyers\_ are exactly on a level with \_manstealers\_." J.

W. Wright alleges, that, "The phrase, 'I want two \_spoonfuls\_ or

\_handfuls\_,' though common, is improperly constructed;" and that, "we

should say, 'Two \_spoons\_ or \_hands full\_.'"--\_Philos. Gram.\_, p. 222. From

this opinion, I dissent: both authority and analogy favour the former mode

of expressing the plural of such quantities.

OBS. 22.--There is neither difficulty nor uncertainty respecting the proper

forms for the plurals of compound nouns in general; but the two irregular

words \_man\_ and \_woman\_ are often varied at the beginning of the looser

kind of compounds, contrary to what appears to be the general analogy of

similar words. Of the propriety of this, the reader may judge, when I shall

have quoted a few examples: "Besides their \_man-servants\_ and their

\_maid-servants\_."--\_Nehemiah\_, vii, 67. "And I have oxen and asses, flocks,

and \_men-servants\_, and \_women-servants\_."--\_Gen.\_, xxxii, 5. "I gat me

\_men-singers\_, and \_women-singers\_, and the delights of the sons of

men."--\_Ecclesiastes\_, ii, 8. "And she brought forth a \_man-child\_, who was

to rule all nations with a rod of iron."--\_Rev.\_, xii, 5.--"Why have ye

done this, and saved the \_men-children\_ alive?"--\_Exod.\_, i, 18. Such terms

as these, if thought objectionable, may easily be avoided, by substituting

for the former part of the compound the separate adjective \_male\_ or

\_female\_; as, \_male child, male children\_. Or, for those of the third

example, one might say, "\_singing men\_ and \_singing women\_," as in

\_Nehemiah\_, vii, 67; for, in the ancient languages, the words are the same.

Alger compounds "\_singing-men\_ and \_singing-women\_."

OBS. 23.--Some foreign compound terms, consisting of what are usually, in

the language from which they come, distinct words and different parts of

speech, are made plural in English, by the addition of \_e\_ or \_es\_ at the

end. But, in all such cases, I think the hyphen should be inserted in the

compound, though it is the practice of many to omit it. Of this odd sort of

words, I quote the following examples from Churchill; taking the liberty to

insert the hyphen, which he omits: "\_Ave-Maries, Te-Deums, camera-obscuras,

agnus-castuses, habeas-corpuses, scire-faciases, hiccius-docciuses,

hocus-pocuses, ignis-fatuuses, chef-d'oeuvres, congé-d'élires,

flower-de-luces, louis-d'-ores, tête-à-têtes\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p.

62.

OBS. 24.--Some nouns, from the nature of the things meant, have no plural.

For, as there ought to be no word, or inflection of a word, for which we

cannot conceive an appropriate meaning or use, it follows that whatever is

of such a species that it cannot be taken in any plural sense, must

naturally be named by a word which is singular only: as, \_perry, cider,

coffee, flax, hemp, fennel, tallow, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, meekness,

eloquence\_. But there are some things, which have in fact neither a

comprehensible unity, nor any distinguishable plurality, and which may

therefore be spoken of in either number; for the distinction of unity and

plurality is, in such instances, merely verbal; and, whichever number we

take, the word will be apt to want the other: as, \_dregs\_, or \_sediment;

riches\_, or \_wealth; pains\_, or \_toil; ethics\_, or \_moral philosophy;

politics\_, or \_the science of government; belles-lettres\_, or \_polite

literature\_. So \_darkness\_, which in English appears to have no plural, is

expressed in Latin by \_tenebræ\_, in French by \_ténèbres\_, which have no

singular. It is necessary that every noun should be understood to be of one

number or the other; for, in connecting it with a verb, or in supplying its

place by a pronoun, we must assume it to be either singular or plural. And

it is desirable that singulars and plurals should always abide by their

appropriate forms, so that they may be thereby distinguished with

readiness. But custom, which regulates this, as every thing else of the

like nature, does not always adjust it well; or, at least, not always upon

principles uniform in themselves and obvious to every intellect.

OBS. 25.--Nouns of multitude, when taken collectively, generally admit the

regular plural form; which of course is understood with reference to the

individuality of the whole collection, considered as one thing: but, when

taken distributively, they have a plural signification without the form;

and, in this case, their plurality refers to the individuals that compose

the assemblage. Thus, a \_council\_, a \_committee\_, a \_jury\_, a \_meeting\_, a

\_society\_, a \_flock\_, or a \_herd\_, is singular; and the regular plurals are

\_councils, committees, juries, meetings, societies, flocks, herds\_. But

these, and many similar words, may be taken plurally without the \_s\_,

because a collective noun is the name of many individuals together. Hence

we may say, "The \_council were\_ unanimous."--"The \_committee are\_ in

consultation."--"The \_jury were\_ unable to agree."--"The \_meeting have

shown their\_ discretion."--"The \_society have settled their\_

dispute."--"The \_flock are\_ widely scattered."--"The whole \_herd were

drowned\_ in the sea." The propriety of the last example seems questionable;

because \_whole\_ implies unity, and \_were drowned\_ is plural. Where a purer

concord can be effected, it may be well to avoid such a construction,

though examples like it are not uncommon: as, "Clodius was acquitted by \_a

corrupt jury\_, that had palpably taken shares of money before \_they gave

their\_ verdict."--\_Bacon\_. "And the \_whole multitude\_ of the people \_were

praying\_ without, at the time of incense."--\_Luke\_, i, 10.

OBS. 26.--Nouns have, in some instances, a unity or plurality of meaning,

which seems to be directly at variance with their form. Thus, \_cattle\_, for

beasts of pasture, and \_pulse\_, for peas and beans, though in appearance

singulars only, are generally, if not always, plural; and \_summons,

gallows, chintz, series, superficies, molasses, suds, hunks, jakes,

trapes\_, and \_corps\_, with the appearance of plurals, are generally, if not

always, singular. Dr. Webster says that \_cattle\_ is of both numbers; but

wherein the oneness of cattle can consist, I know not. The Bible says, "God

made--\_cattle after their kind\_."--\_Gen.\_, i, 25. Here \_kind\_ is indeed

singular, as if \_cattle\_ were a natural genus of which one must be \_a

cattle\_; as \_sheep\_ are a natural genus of which one is \_a sheep\_: but

whether properly expressed so or not, is questionable; perhaps it ought to

be, "and cattle after their \_kinds\_." Dr. Gillies says, in his History of

Greece, "\_cattle was regarded\_ as the most convenient \_measure\_ of value."

This seems to me to be more inaccurate and unintelligible, than to say,

"\_Sheep was regarded\_ as the most convenient \_measure\_ of value." And what

would this mean? \_Sheep\_ is not singular, unless limited to that number by

some definitive word; and \_cattle\_ I conceive to be incapable of any such

limitation.

OBS. 27.--Of the last class of words above cited, some may assume an

additional \_es\_, when taken plurally; as, \_summonses, gallowses, chintses\_:

the rest either want the plural, or have it seldom and without change of

form. \_Corps\_, a body of troops, is a French word, which, when singular, is

pronounced \_c=ore\_, and when plural, \_c=ores\_. But \_corpse\_, a dead body,

is an English word, pronounced \_k~orps\_, and making the plural in two

syllables, \_corpses\_. \_Summonses\_ is given in Cobb's Dictionary as the

plural of \_summons\_; but some authors have used the latter with a plural

verb: as, "But Love's first \_summons\_ seldom \_are\_ obey'd."--\_Waller's

Poems\_, p. 8. Dr. Johnson says this noun is from the verb \_to summon\_; and,

if this is its origin, the singular ought to be \_a summon\_, and then

\_summons\_ would be a regular plural. But this "singular noun with a plural

termination," as Webster describes it, more probably originated from the

Latin verb \_submoneas\_, used in the writ, and came to us through the jargon

of law, in which we sometimes hear men talk of "\_summonsing\_ witnesses."

The authorities for it, however, are good enough; as, "\_This\_ present

\_summons\_."--SHAK.: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "\_This summons\_ he resolved to

disobey."--FELL: \_ib.\_ \_Chints\_ is called by Cobb a "substantive \_plural\_"

and defined as "cotton \_cloths\_, made in India;" but other lexicographers

define it as singular, and Worcester (perhaps more properly) writes it

\_chintz\_. Johnson cites Pope as speaking of "\_a charming chints\_," and I

have somewhere seen the plural formed by adding es. "Of the Construction of

single Words, or \_Serieses\_ of Words."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 114. Walker, in

his Elements of Elocution, makes frequent use of the word "\_serieses\_," and

of the phrase "\_series of serieses\_." But most writers, I suppose, would

doubt the propriety of this practice; because, in Latin, all nouns of the

fifth declension, such as \_caries, congeries, series, species,

superficies\_, make their nominative and vocative cases alike in both

numbers. This, however, is no rule for writing English. Dr. Blair has used

the word \_species\_ in a plural sense; though I think he ought rather to

have preferred the regular English word \_kinds\_: "The higher \_species\_ of

poetry seldom \_admit\_ it."--\_Rhet.\_, p. 403. \_Specie\_, meaning hard money,

though derived or corrupted from \_species\_, is not the singular of that

word; nor has it any occasion for a plural form, because we never speak of

\_a specie\_. The plural of \_gallows\_, according to Dr. Webster, is

\_gallowses\_; nor is that form without other authority, though some say,

\_gallows\_ is of both numbers and not to be varied: "\_Gallowses\_ were

occasionally put in order by the side of my windows."--\_Leigh Hunt's

Byron\_, p. 369.

"Who would not guess there might be hopes,

The fear of \_gallowses\_ and ropes,

Before their eyes, might reconcile

Their animosities a while?"--\_Hudibras\_, p. 90.

OBS. 28.--Though the plural number is generally derived from the singular,

and of course must as generally imply its existence, we have examples, and

those not a few, in which the case is otherwise. Some nouns, because they

signify such things as nature or art has made plural or double; some,

because they have been formed from other parts of speech by means of the

plural ending which belongs to nouns; and some, because they are compounds

in which a plural word is principal, and put last, are commonly used in the

plural number only, and have, in strict propriety, no singular. Though

these three classes of plurals may not be perfectly separable, I shall

endeavour to exhibit them in the order of this explanation.

1. Plurals in meaning and form: \_analects, annals,[144] archives, ashes,

assets, billiards, bowels, breeches, calends, cates, chops, clothes,

compasses, crants, eaves, embers, estovers, forceps, giblets, goggles,

greaves, hards\_ or \_hurds, hemorrhoids, ides, matins, nippers, nones,

obsequies, orgies,[145] piles, pincers\_ or \_pinchers, pliers, reins,

scissors, shears, skittles, snuffers, spectacles, teens, tongs, trowsers,

tweezers, umbles, vespers, victuals\_.

2. Plurals by formation, derived chiefly from adjectives: \_acoustics,

aeronautics, analytics, bitters, catoptrics, commons, conics, credentials,

delicates, dioptrics, economics, ethics, extraordinaries, filings, fives,

freshes, glanders, gnomonics, goods, hermeneutics, hustings, hydrodynamics,

hydrostatics, hydraulics, hysterics, inwards, leavings, magnetics,

mathematics, measles, mechanics, mnemonics, merils, metaphysics, middlings,

movables, mumps, nuptials, optics, phonics, phonetics, physics,[146]

pneumatics, poetics, politics, riches, rickets, settlings, shatters,

skimmings, spherics, staggers, statics, statistics, stays, strangles,

sundries, sweepings, tactics, thanks, tidings, trappings, vives, vitals,

wages,[147] withers, yellows\_.

3. Plurals by composition: \_backstairs, cocklestairs, firearms,[148]

headquarters, hotcockles, spatterdashes, self-affairs\_. To these may be

added the Latin words, \_aborigines, antipodes, antes, antoeci, amphiscii,

anthropophagi, antiscii, ascii, literati, fauces, regalia\_, and \_credenda\_,

with the Italian \_vermicelli\_, and the French \_belles-lettres\_ and

\_entremets\_.

OBS. 29.--There are several nouns which are set down by some writers as

wanting the singular, and by others as having it. Of this class are the

following: \_amends,[149] ancients, awns, bots, catacombs, chives, cloves,

cresses, dogsears, downs, dregs,[150] entrails, fetters, fireworks, greens,

gyves, hatches, intestines, lees,[151] lungs, malanders, mallows, moderns,

oats, orts, pleiads, premises, relics, remains, shackles, shambles,[152]

stilts, stairs, tares, vetches\_. The fact is, that these words have, or

ought to have, the singular, as often as there is any occasion to use it;

and the same may, in general terms, be said of other nouns, respecting the

formation of \_the plural\_.[153] For where the idea of unity or plurality

comes clearly before the mind, we are very apt to shape the word

accordingly, without thinking much about the authorities we can quote for

it.

OBS. 30.--In general, where both numbers exist in common use, there is some

palpable oneness or individuality, to which the article \_a\_ or \_an\_ is

applicable; the nature of the species is found entire in every individual

of it; and a multiplication of the individuals gives rise to plurality in

the name. But the nature of a mass, or of an indefinite multitude taken

collectively, is not found in individuals as such; nor is the name, whether

singular, as \_gold\_, or plural, as \_ashes\_, so understood. Hence, though

every noun must be of one number or the other, there are many which have

little or no need of both. Thus we commonly speak of \_wheat, barley, or

oats\_, collectively; and very seldom find occasion for any other forms of

these words. But chafferers at the corn-market, in spite of Cobbett,[154]

will talk about \_wheats\_ and \_barleys\_, meaning different kinds[155] or

qualities; and a gardener, if he pleases, will tell of an \_oat\_, (as does

Milton, in his Lycidas,) meaning a single seed or plant. But, because

\_wheat\_ or \_barley\_ generally means that sort of grain in mass, if he will

mention a single kernel, he must call it a \_grain of wheat\_ or a

\_barleycorn\_. And these he may readily make plural, to specify any

particular number; as, \_five grains of wheat\_, or \_three barleycorns\_.

OBS. 31.--My chief concern is with general principles, but the illustration

of these requires many particular examples--even far more than I have room

to quote. The word \_amends\_ is represented by Murray and others, as being

singular as well as plural; but Webster's late dictionaries exhibit

\_amend\_ as singular, and \_amends\_ as plural, with definitions that

needlessly differ, though not much. I judge "\_an amends\_" to be bad

English; and prefer the regular singular, \_an amend\_. The word is of French

origin, and is sometimes written in English with a needless final \_e\_; as,

"But only to make a kind of honourable \_amende\_ to God."--\_Rollin's Ancient

Hist.\_, Vol. ii, p. 24. The word \_remains\_ Dr. Webster puts down as plural

only, and yet uses it himself in the singular: "The creation of a Dictator,

even for a few months, would have buried every \_remain\_ of

freedom."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 70. There are also other authorities for

this usage, and also for some other nouns that are commonly thought to have

no singular; as, "But Duelling is unlawful and murderous, a \_remain\_ of the

ancient Gothic barbarity."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. 26. "I grieve with the

old, for so many additional inconveniences, more than their small \_remain\_

of life seemed destined to undergo."--POPE: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "A disjunctive

syllogism is one whose major \_premise\_ is disjunctive."--\_Hedge's Logic\_.

"Where should he have this gold? It is some poor fragment, some slender

\_ort\_ of his remainder."--SHAK.: \_Timon of Athens\_.

OBS. 32.--There are

several nouns which are usually alike in both numbers. Thus, \_deer, folk,

fry, gentry, grouse, hose, neat, sheep, swine, vermin\_, and \_rest\_, (i. e.

\_the rest\_, the others, the residue,) are regular singulars, but they are

used also as plurals, and that more frequently. Again, \_alms, aloes,

bellows, means, news, odds, shambles\_, and \_species\_, are proper plurals,

but most of them are oftener construed as singulars. \_Folk\_ and \_fry\_ are

collective nouns. \_Folk\_ means \_people\_; \_a folk, a people\_: as, "The ants

are \_a people\_ not strong;"--"The conies are but \_a feeble

folk\_."--\_Prov.\_, xxx, 25, 26. "He laid his hands on a few sick \_folk\_, and

healed \_them\_."--\_Mark\_, vi, 5. \_Folks\_, which ought to be the plural of

\_folk\_, and equivalent to \_peoples\_, is now used with reference to a

plurality of individuals, and the collective word seems liable to be

entirely superseded by it. A \_fry\_ is a swarm of young fishes, or of any

other little creatures living in water: so called, perhaps, because their

motions often make the surface \_fry\_. Several such swarms might properly be

called \_fries\_; but this form can never be applied to the individuals,

without interfering with the other. "So numerous \_was the fry\_."--\_Cowper\_.

"The \_fry betake themselves\_ to the neighbouring pools."--\_Quarterly

Review\_. "You cannot think more contemptuously of \_these gentry\_ than

\_they\_ were thought of by the true prophets."--\_Watson's Apology\_, p. 93.

"\_Grouse\_, a heathcock."--\_Johnson\_.

"The 'squires in scorn will fly the house

For better game, and look for \_grouse\_."--\_Swift\_.

"Here's an English tailor, come hither for stealing out of \_a\_ French

\_hose\_."--\_Shak\_. "He, being in love, could not see to garter his

\_hose\_."--\_Id.\_ Formerly, the plural was \_hosen\_: "Then these men were

bound, in their coats, their \_hosen\_, and their hats."--\_Dan.\_, iii, 21. Of

\_sheep\_, Shakspeare has used the regular plural: "Two hot \_sheeps\_,

marry!"--\_Love's Labour Lost\_, Act ii, Sc. 1.

"Who both by his calf and his lamb will be known,

May well kill \_a neat\_ and \_a sheep\_ of his own."--\_Tusser\_.

"His droves of asses, camels, herds of \_neat\_,

And flocks of \_sheep\_, grew shortly twice as great."--\_Sandys\_.

"As a jewel of gold in \_a swine's\_ snout."--\_Prov.\_, xi, 22. "A herd of

\_many swine\_, feeding."--\_Matt.\_, viii, 30. "An idle person only lives to

spend his time, and eat the fruits of the earth, like a \_vermin\_ or a

wolf."--\_Taylor\_. "The head of a wolf, dried and hanged up, will scare away

\_vermin\_."--\_Bacon\_. "Cheslip, \_a small vermin\_ that lies under stones or

tiles."--SKINNER: in \_Joh. and in Web. Dict.\_ "This is flour, the \_rest is\_

bran."--"And the \_rest were\_ blinded."--\_Rom.\_, xi, 7. "The poor beggar

hath a just demand of \_an alms\_."--\_Swift\_. "Thine \_alms are\_ come up for a

memorial before God."--\_Acts\_, x, 4. "The draught of air performed the

function of \_a bellows\_."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, ii, 223. "As the \_bellows

do\_."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, ii, 11. "The \_bellows are\_ burned."--\_Jer.\_, vi,

29. "Let \_a gallows\_ be made."--\_Esther\_, v, 14. "\_Mallows are\_ very useful

in medicine."--\_Wood's Dict.\_ "\_News\_," says Johnson, "is without the

singular, unless it be considered as singular."--\_Dict.\_ "So \_is\_ good

\_news\_ from a far country."--\_Prov.\_, xxv, 25. "Evil \_news rides\_ fast,

while good \_news baits\_."--\_Milton\_. "When Rhea heard \_these news\_, she

fled."--\_Raleigh\_. "\_News were brought\_ to the queen."--\_Hume's Hist.\_, iv,

426. "The \_news\_ I bring \_are\_ afflicting, but the consolation with which

\_they\_ are attended, ought to moderate your grief."--\_Gil Blas\_, Vol. ii,

p. 20. "Between these two cases there \_are\_ great \_odds\_."--\_Hooker\_.

"Where the \_odds is\_ considerable."--\_Campbell\_. "Determining on which side

the \_odds lie\_."--\_Locke\_. "The greater \_are the odds\_ that he mistakes his

author."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 1. "Though thus \_an odds\_ unequally

they meet."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. iv, l. 789. "Preëminent by so \_much

odds\_."--\_Milton\_. "To make a \_shambles\_ of the parliament house."--\_Shak\_.

"The earth has been, from the beginning, a great Aceldama, \_a shambles\_ of

blood."--\_Christian's Vade-Mecum\_, p. 6. "\_A shambles\_" sounds so

inconsistent, I should rather say, "\_A shamble\_." Johnson says, the

etymology of the word is \_uncertain\_; Webster refers it to the Saxon

\_scamel\_: it means \_a butcher's stall, a meat-market\_; and there would seem

to be no good reason for the \_s\_, unless more than one such place is

intended. "Who sells his subjects to the \_shambles\_ of a foreign

power."--\_Pitt\_. "A special idea is called by the schools \_a

species\_."--\_Watts\_. "He intendeth the care of \_species\_, or common

natures."--\_Brown\_. "ALOE, (al~o) \_n.; plu.\_ ALOES."--\_Webster's Dict.\_,

and \_Worcester's\_. "But it was \_aloe\_ itself to lose the reward."--

\_Tupper's Crock of Gold\_, p. 16.

"But high in amphitheatre above,

\_His\_ arms the everlasting \_aloes\_ threw."

--\_Campbell\_, G. of W., ii, 10.

OBS. 33.--There are some nouns, which, though really regular in respect to

possessing the two forms for the two numbers, are not free from

irregularity in the manner of their application. Thus \_means\_ is the

regular plural of \_mean\_; and, when the word is put for mediocrity, middle

point, place, or degree, it takes both forms, each in its proper sense; but

when it signifies things instrumental, or that which is used to effect an

object, most writers use \_means\_ for the singular as well as for the

plural:[156] as, "By \_this means\_"--"By \_those means\_," with reference to

one mediating cause; and, "By \_these means\_,"--"By \_those means\_," with

reference to more than one. Dr. Johnson says the use of \_means\_ for \_mean\_

is not very grammatical; and, among his examples for the true use of the

word, he has the following: "Pamela's noble heart would needs gratefully

make known the valiant \_mean\_ of her safety."--\_Sidney.\_ "Their virtuous

conversation was a \_mean\_ to work the heathens' conversion."--\_Hooker.\_

"Whether his wits should by that \_mean\_ have been taken from him."--\_Id.\_

"I'll devise a \_mean\_ to draw the Moor out of the way."--\_Shak.\_ "No place

will please me so, no \_mean\_ of death."--\_Id.\_ "Nature is made better by no

\_mean\_, but nature makes that \_mean.\_"--\_Id.\_ Dr. Lowth also questioned the

propriety of construing \_means\_ as singular, and referred to these same

authors as authorities for preferring the regular form. Buchanan insists

that \_means\_ is right in the plural only; and that, "The singular should be

used as perfectly analogous; by this \_mean\_, by that \_mean\_."--\_English

Syntax\_, p. 103. Lord Kames, likewise, appears by his practice to have been

of the same opinion: "Of this the child must be sensible intuitively, for

it has no other \_mean\_ of knowledge."--\_Elements of Criticism\_, Vol. i, p.

357. "And in both the same \_mean\_ is employed."--\_Ib.\_ ii, 271. Caleb

Alexander, too, declares "\_this means\_," "\_that means\_." and "\_a means\_,"

to be "ungrammatical."--\_Gram.\_, p. 58. But common usage has gone against

the suggestions of these critics, and later grammarians have rather

confirmed the irregularity, than attempted to reform it.

OBS. 34.--Murray quotes sixteen good authorities to prove that means may be

singular; but whether it \_ought\_ to be so or not, is still a disputable

point. Principle is for the regular word \_mean\_, and good practice favours

the irregularity, but is still divided. Cobbett, to the disgrace of

grammar, says, "\_Mean\_, as a noun, is \_never used in the singular\_. It,

like some other words, has broken loose from all principle and rule. By

universal consent, it \_is become always a plural\_, whether used with

\_singular or plural\_ pronouns and articles, \_or not\_."--\_E. Gram.\_, p. 144.

This is as ungrammatical, as it is untrue. Both mean and means are

sufficiently authorized in the singular: "The prospect which by this mean

is opened to you."--\_Melmoth's Cicero\_. "Faith in this doctrine never

terminates in itself, but is \_a mean\_, to holiness as an end."--\_Dr.

Chalmers, Sermons\_, p. v. "The \_mean\_ of basely affronting him."--\_Brown's

Divinity\_, p. 19. "They used every \_mean\_ to prevent the re-establishment

of their religion."--\_Dr Jamieson's Sacred Hist.\_, i, p. 20. "As a

necessary \_mean\_ to prepare men for the discharge of that duty."--

\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 153. "Greatest is the power of a \_mean\_, when

its power is least suspected."--\_Tupper's Book of Thoughts\_, p. 37. "To the

deliberative orator the reputation of unsullied virtue is not only useful,

as a \_mean\_ of promoting his general influence, it is also among his most

efficient engines of persuasion, upon every individual occasion."--\_J. Q.

Adams's Lectures on Rhetoric and Oratory\_, i, 352. "I would urge it upon

you, as the most effectual \_mean\_ of extending your respectability and

usefulness in the world."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 395. "Exercise will be admitted to be

a necessary \_mean\_ of improvement."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 343. "And by \_that

means\_ we have now an early prepossession in their favour."--\_Ib.\_, p. 348.

"To abolish all sacrifice by revealing a better \_mean\_ of reconciliation."

--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 46. "As a \_mean\_ of destroying the distinction."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 3. "Which however is by no \_mean\_ universally the case."--

\_Religious World Displayed\_, Vol. iii, p. 155.

OBS. 35.--Again, there are some nouns, which, though they do not lack the

regular plural form, are sometimes used in a plural sense without the

plural termination. Thus \_manner\_ makes the plural \_manners\_, which last is

now generally used in the peculiar sense of behaviour, or deportment, but

not always: it sometimes means methods, modes, or ways; as, "At sundry

times and in divers \_manners\_."--\_Heb.\_, i, 1. "In the \_manners\_ above

mentioned."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 100. "There be three \_manners\_ of

trials in England."--COWELL: \_Joh. Dict., w. Jury\_. "These two \_manners\_ of

representation."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 15. "These are the three primary

modes, or \_manners\_, of expression."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 83. "In

arrangement, too, various \_manners\_ suit various styles."--\_Campbell's

Phil. of Rhet.\_, p. 172. "Between the two \_manners\_."--\_Bolingbroke, on

Hist.\_, p. 35. "Here are three different \_manners\_ of asserting."--

\_Barnard's Gram.\_, p. 59. But \_manner\_ has often been put for \_sorts\_,

without the \_s\_; as, "The tree of life, which bare \_twelve manner\_ of

fruits."--\_Rev.\_, xxii, 2. "All \_manner\_ of men assembled here in

arms."--\_Shak\_. "\_All manner\_ of outward advantages."--\_Atterbury\_. Milton

used \_kind\_ in the same way, but not very properly; as, "\_All kind\_ of

living creatures."--\_P. Lost\_, B. iv, l. 286. This irregularity it would be

well to avoid. \_Manners\_ may still, perhaps, be proper for modes or ways;

and \_all manner\_, if allowed, must be taken in the sense of a collective

noun; but for sorts, kinds, classes, or species, I would use neither the

plural nor the singular of this word. The word \_heathen\_, too, makes the

regular plural \_heathens\_, and yet is often used in a plural sense without

the \_s\_; as, "Why do the \_heathen\_ rage?"--\_Psalms\_, ii, 1. "Christianity

was formerly propagated among the \_heathens\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

217. The word \_youth\_, likewise, has the same peculiarities.

OBS. 36.--Under the present head come names of fishes, birds, or other

things, when the application of the singular is extended from the

individual to the species, so as to supersede the plural by assuming its

construction: as, Sing. "A great \_fish\_."--\_Jonah\_, i, 17. Plur. "For the

multitude of \_fishes\_'."--\_John\_, xxi, 6. "A very great multitude of

\_fish\_."--\_Ezekiel\_, xlvii, 9.[157] The name of the genus being liable to

this last construction, men seem to have thought that the species should

follow; consequently, the regular plurals of some very common names of

fishes are scarcely known at all. Hence some grammarians affirm, that

\_salmon, mackerel, herring, perch, tench\_, and several others, are alike in

both numbers, and ought never to be used in the plural form. I am not so

fond of honouring these anomalies. Usage is here as unsettled, as it is

arbitrary; and, if the expression of plurality is to be limited to either

form exclusively, the regular plural ought certainly to be preferred. But,

\_for fish taken in bulk\_, the singular form seems more appropriate; as,

"These vessels take from thirty-eight to forty-five quintals of \_cod\_ and

\_pollock\_, and six thousand barrels of \_mackerel\_, yearly."--\_Balbi's

Geog.\_, p. 28.

OBS. 37.--The following examples will illustrate the unsettled usage just

mentioned, and from them the reader may judge for himself what is right. In

quoting, at second-hand, I generally think it proper to make double

references; and especially in citing authorities after Johnson, because he

so often gives the same passages variously. But he himself is reckoned good

authority in things literary. Be it so. I regret the many proofs of his

fallibility. "Hear you this Triton of the \_minnows?\_"--\_Shak\_. "The shoal

of \_herrings\_ was of an immense extent."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 185. "Buy my

\_herring\_ fresh."--SWIFT: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "In the fisheries of Maine, \_cod,

herring, mackerel alewives, salmon\_, and other \_fish\_, are

taken."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 23. "MEASE, \_n.\_ The quantity of 500; as, a

\_mease\_ of \_herrings\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "We shall have plenty of

\_mackerel\_ this season."--ADDISON: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "\_Mackarel\_ is the same

in both numbers. Gay has improperly \_mackarels\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p.

208. "They take \_salmon\_ and \_trouts\_ by groping and tickling them under

the bellies."--CAREW: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "The pond will keep \_trout\_ and

\_salmon\_ in their seasonable plight."--\_Id., ib., w. Trout\_. "Some \_fish\_

are preserved fresh in vinegar, as \_turbot\_."--\_Id., ib., w. Turbot\_. "Some

\_fish\_ are boiled and preserved fresh in vinegar, as \_tunny\_ and

\_turbot\_."--\_Id., ib., w. Tunny\_. "Of round \_fish\_, there are \_brit, sprat,

barn, smelts\_."--\_Id., ib., w. Smelt.\_ "For \_sprats\_ and \_spurlings\_ for

your house."--TUSSEE: \_ib., w. Spurling\_. "The coast is plentifully stored

with \_pilchards, herrings\_, and \_haddock\_."--CAREW: \_ib., w. Haddock\_. "The

coast is plentifully stored with round \_fish, pilchard, herring, mackerel\_,

and \_cod\_"--\_Id., ib., w. Herring\_. "The coast is plentifully stored with

\_shellfish, sea-hedgehogs, scallops, pilcherd, herring\_, and

\_pollock\_."--\_Id., ib., w. Pollock\_. "A \_roach\_ is \_a fish\_ of no great

reputation for his dainty taste. It is noted that \_roaches\_ recover

strength and grow a fortnight after spawning."--WALTON: \_ib., w. Roach\_. "A

friend of mine stored a pond of three or four acres with \_carps\_ and

\_tench\_."--HALE: \_ib., w. Carp\_. "Having stored a very great pond with

\_carps, tench\_, and other \_pond-fish\_, and only put in two small \_pikes\_,

this pair of tyrants in seven years devoured the whole."--\_Id., ib., w.

Tench\_. "Singular, \_tench\_; plural, \_tenches\_."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p.

78. "The polar bear preys upon \_seals, fish\_, and the carcasses of

\_whales\_."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 172. "\_Trouts\_ and \_salmons\_ swim against

the stream."--BACON: \_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 130.

"'Tis true no \_turbots\_ dignify my boards,

But \_gudgeons, flounders\_, what my Thames affords."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 38.--Prom the foregoing examples it would seem, if fish or fishes are

often spoken of without a regular distinction of the grammatical numbers,

it is not because the words are not susceptible of the inflection, but

because there is some difference of meaning between the mere name of the

sort and the distinct modification in regard to number. There are also

other nouns in which a like difference may be observed. Some names of

building materials, as \_brick, stone, plank, joist\_, though not destitute

of regular plurals, as \_bricks, stones, planks, joists\_, and not unadapted

to ideas distinctly singular, as \_a brick, a stone, a plank, a joist\_, are

nevertheless sometimes used in a plural sense without the \_s\_, and

sometimes in a sense which seems hardly to embrace the idea of either

number; as, "Let us make \_brick\_, and burn \_them\_ thoroughly."--\_Gen.\_, xi,

3. "And they had \_brick\_ for \_stone\_."--\_Ib.\_ "The tale of

\_bricks\_."--\_Exod.\_, v, 8 and 18. "Make \_brick\_."--\_Ib.\_, v, 16. "From your

\_bricks\_."--\_Ib.\_, v, 19. "Upon altars of \_brick\_."--\_Isaiah\_. lxv, 3. "The

\_bricks\_ are fallen down."--\_Ib.\_, ix, 10. The same variety of usage occurs

in respect to a few other words, and sometimes perhaps without good reason;

as, "Vast numbers of sea \_fowl\_ frequent the rocky cliffs."--\_Balbi's

Geog.\_, p. 231. "Bullocks, sheep, and \_fowls\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 439. "\_Cannon\_

is used alike in both numbers."--\_Everest's Gram.\_, p. 48. "\_Cannon\_ and

\_shot\_ may be used in the singular or plural sense."--\_O. B. Peirce's

Gram.\_, p. 37. "The column in the Place Vendome is one hundred and

thirty-four feet high, and is made of the brass of the \_cannons\_ taken from

the Austrians and Prussians."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 249. "As his \_cannons\_

roar."--\_Dryden's Poems\_, p. 81. "Twenty \_shot\_ of his greatest

cannon."--CLARENDON: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "Twenty \_shots\_" would here, I think, be

more proper, though the word is not made plural when it means \_little balls

of lead\_. "And \_cannons\_ conquer armies."--\_Hudibras\_, Part III, Canto iii,

l. 249.

"Healths to both kings, attended with the roar

Of \_cannons\_ echoed from th' affrighted shore."--\_Waller\_, p. 7.

OBS. 39.--Of foreign nouns, many retain their original plural; a few are

defective; and some are redundant, because the English form is also in use.

Our writers have laid many languages under contribution, and thus furnished

an abundance of irregular words, necessary to be explained, but never to be

acknowledged as English till they conform to our own rules.

1. Of nouns in \_a, saliva\_, spittle, and \_scoria\_, dross, have no occasion

for the plural; \_lamina\_, a thin plate, makes \_laminæ\_; \_macula\_, a spot,

\_maculæ\_; \_minutia\_, a little thing, \_minutiæ\_; \_nebula\_, a mist, \_nebulæ\_;

\_siliqua\_, a pod, \_siliqiuæ\_. \_Dogma\_ makes \_dogmas\_ or \_dogmata\_;

\_exanthema, exanthemas\_ or \_exanthemata\_; \_miasm\_ or \_miasma, miasms\_ or

\_miasmata\_; \_stigma, stigmas\_ or \_stigmata\_.

2. Of nouns in \_um\_, some have no need of the plural; as, \_bdellium,

decorum, elysium, equilibrium, guaiacum, laudanum, odium, opium, petroleum,

serum, viaticum\_. Some form it regularly; as, \_asylums, compendiums,

craniums, emporiums, encomiums, forums, frustums, lustrums, mausoleums,

museums, pendulums, nostrums, rostrums, residuums, vacuums\_. Others take

either the English or the Latin plural; as, \_desideratums\_ or \_desiderata,

mediums\_ or \_media, menstruums\_ or \_menstrua, memorandums\_ or \_memoranda,

spectrums\_ or \_spectra, speculums\_ or \_specula, stratums\_ or \_strata,

succedaneums\_ or \_succedanea, trapeziums\_ or \_trapezia, vinculums\_ or

\_vincula\_. A few seem to have the Latin plural only: as, \_arcanum, arcana;

datum, data; effluvium, effluvia; erratum, errata; scholium, scholia\_.

3. Of nouns in \_us\_, a few have no plural; as, \_asparagus, calamus, mucus\_.

Some have only the Latin plural, which usually changes \_us\_ to \_i\_; as,

\_alumnus, alumni; androgynus, androgyni; calculus, calculi; dracunculus,

dracunculi; echinus, echini; magus, magi\_. But such as have properly become

English words, may form the plural regularly in \_es\_; as, \_chorus,

choruses\_: so, \_apparatus, bolus, callus, circus, fetus, focus, fucus,

fungus, hiatus, ignoramus, impetus, incubus, isthmus, nautilus, nucleus,

prospectus, rebus, sinus, surplus\_. Five of these make the Latin plural

like the singular; but the mere English scholar has no occasion to be told

which they are. \_Radius\_ makes the plural \_radii\_ or \_radiuses\_. \_Genius\_

has \_genii\_, for imaginary spirits, and \_geniuses\_, for men of wit.

\_Genus\_, a sort, becomes \_genera\_ in Latin, and \_genuses\_ in English.

\_Denarius\_ makes, in the plural, \_denarii\_ or \_denariuses\_.

4. Of nouns in \_is\_, some are regular; as, \_trellis, trellises\_: so,

\_annolis, butteris, caddis, dervis, iris, marquis, metropolis, portcullis,

proboscis\_. Some seem to have no need of the plural; as, \_ambergris,

aqua-fortis, arthritis, brewis, crasis, elephantiasis, genesis, orris,

siriasis, tennis\_. But most nouns of this ending follow the Greek or Latin

form, which simply changes \_is\_ to \_=es\_: as, \_amanuensis, amanuenses;

analysis, analyses; antithesis, antitheses; axis, axes; basis, bases;

crisis, crises; diæresis, diæreses; diesis, dieses; ellipsis, ellipses;

emphasis, emphases; fascis, fasces; hypothesis, hypotheses; metamorphosis,

metamorphoses; oasis, oases; parenthesis, parentheses; phasis, phases;

praxis, praxes; synopsis, synopses; synthesis, syntheses; syrtis, syrtes;

thesis, theses\_. In some, however, the original plural is not so formed;

but is made by changing \_is\_ to \_~ides\_; as, \_aphis, aphides; apsis,

apsides; ascaris, ascarides; bolis, bolides; cantharis, cantharides;

chrysalis, chrysalides; ephemeris, ephemerides; epidermis, epidermides\_. So

\_iris\_ and \_proboscis\_, which we make regular; and perhaps some of the

foregoing may be made so too. Fisher writes \_Praxises\_ for \_praxes\_, though

not very properly. See his \_Gram\_, p. v. \_Eques\_, a Roman knight, makes

\_equites\_ in the plural.

5. Of nouns in \_x\_, there are few, if any, which ought not to form the

plural regularly, when used as English words; though the Latins changed \_x\_

to \_ces\_, and \_ex\_ to \_ices\_, making the \_i\_ sometimes long and sometimes

short: as, \_apex, apices\_, for \_apexes; appendix, appendices\_, for

\_appendixes; calix, calices\_, for \_calixes\_; \_calx, calces\_, for \_calxes;

calyx, calyces\_, for \_calyxes; caudex, caudices\_, for \_caudexes; cicatrix,

cicatrices\_, for \_cicatrixes; helix, helices\_, for \_helixes; index,

indices\_, for \_indexes; matrix, matrices\_, for \_matrixes; quincunx,

quincunces\_, for \_quincunxes; radix, radices\_, for \_radixes; varix,

varices\_, for \_varixes; vertex, vertices\_, for \_vertexes; vortex,

vortices\_, for \_vortexes\_. Some Greek words in \_x\_ change that letter to

\_ges\_; as, \_larynx, larynges\_, for \_larinxes; phalanx, phalanges\_, for

\_phalanxes\_. \_Billet-doux\_, from the French, is \_billets-doux\_ in the

plural.

6. Of nouns in \_on\_, derived from Greek, the greater part always form the

plural regularly; as, \_etymons, gnomons, ichneumons, myrmidons, phlegmons,

trigons, tetragons, pentagons, hexagons, heptagons, octagons, enneagons,

decagons, hendecagons, dodecagons, polygons\_. So \_trihedrons, tetrahedrons,

pentahedrons\_, &c., though some say, these last may end in \_dra\_, which I

think improper. For a few words of this class, however, there are double

plurals in use; as, \_automata\_ or \_atomatons, criteria\_ or \_criterions,

parhelia\_ or \_parhelions\_; and the plural of \_phenomenon\_ appears to be

always \_phenomena\_.

7. The plural of \_legumen\_ is \_legumens\_ or \_legumina\_; of \_stamen,

stamens\_ or \_stamina\_: of \_cherub, cherubs\_ or \_cherubim\_; of \_seraph,

seraphs\_ or \_seraphim\_; of \_beau, beaus\_ or \_beaux\_; of \_bandit, bandits\_

or \_banditti\_. The regular forms are in general preferable. The Hebrew

plurals \_cherubim\_ and \_seraphim\_, being sometimes mistaken for singulars,

other plurals have been formed from them; as, "And over it the \_cherubims\_

of glory."--\_Heb\_. ix, 5. "Then flow one of the \_seraphims\_ unto

me."--\_Isaiah\_, vi, 6. Dr. Campbell remarks: "We are authorized, both by

use and by analogy, to say either \_cherubs\_ and \_seraphs\_, according to the

English idiom, or \_cherubim\_ and \_seraphim\_, according to the oriental. The

former suits better the familiar, the latter the solemn style. I shall add

to this remark," says he, "that, as the words \_cherubim\_ and \_seraphim\_ are

plural, the terms \_cherubims\_ and \_seraphims\_, as expressing the plural,

are quite improper."--\_Phil. of Rhet.\_, p. 201.

OBS. 40.--When other parts of speech become nouns, they either want the

plural, or form it regularly,[158] like common nouns of the same endings;

as, "His affairs went on at \_sixes\_ and \_sevens\_."--\_Arbuthnot\_. "Some

mathematicians have proposed to compute by \_twoes\_; \_others\_, by \_fours\_;

\_others\_, by \_twelves\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 81. "Three \_fourths\_,

nine \_tenths\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 230. "Time's \_takings\_ and \_leavings\_."--

\_Barton\_. "The \_yeas\_ and \_nays\_."--\_Newspaper\_. "The \_ays\_ and

\_noes\_."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Oes\_ and \_spangles\_."--\_Bacon\_. "The \_ins\_ and the

\_outs\_."--\_Newspaper\_."--We find it more safe against \_outs\_ and

\_doubles\_."--\_Printer's Gram.\_ "His \_ands\_ and his \_ors\_."--\_Mott\_. "One of

the \_buts\_."--\_Fowle\_. "In raising the mirth of \_stupids\_."--\_Steele\_.

"\_Eatings, drinkings, wakings, sleepings, walkings, talkings, sayings,

doings\_--all were for the good of the public; there was not such a things

as a secret in the town."--LANDON: \_Keepsake\_, 1833. "Her innocent

\_forsooths\_ and \_yesses\_."--\_Spect.\_, No. 266.

"Henceforth my wooing mind shall be expressed

In russet \_yeas\_ and honest kersey \_noes\_."

--SHAK. See \_Johnson's Dict., w. Kersey\_.

GENDERS.

Genders, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish objects in regard

to sex.

There are three genders; the \_masculine\_, the \_feminine\_, and the \_neuter\_.

The \_masculine gender\_ is that which denotes persons or animals of the male

kind; as, \_man, father, king\_.

The \_feminine gender\_ is that which denotes persons or animals of the

female kind; as, \_woman, mother, queen\_.

The \_neuter gender\_ is that which denotes things that are neither male nor

female; as, \_pen, ink, paper\_.

Hence, names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine; and names

of things inanimate, literally, neuter.

Masculine nouns make regular feminines, when their termination is changed

to \_ess\_: as, \_hunter, huntress\_; \_prince, princess\_; \_lion, lioness\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The different genders in grammar are founded on the natural

distinction of sex in animals, and on the absence of sex in other things.

In English, they belong only to nouns and pronouns; and to these they are

usually applied, not arbitrarily, as in some other languages, but agreeably

to the order of nature. From this we derive a very striking advantage over

those who use the gender differently, or without such rule; which is, that

our pronouns are easy of application, and have a fine effect when objects

are personified. Pronouns are of the same gender as the nouns for which

they stand.

OBS. 2.--Many nouns are equally applicable to both sexes; as, \_cousin,

friend, neighbour, parent, person, servant\_. The gender of these is usually

determined by the context; and they are to be called masculine or feminine

accordingly. To such words, some grammarians have applied the unnecessary

and improper term \_common gender\_. Murray justly observes, "There is no

such gender belonging to the language. The business of parsing can be

effectually performed, without having recourse to a \_common

gender\_."--\_Gram.\_, 8vo. p. 39. The term is more useful, and less liable to

objection, as applied to the learned languages; but with us, whose genders

\_distinguish objects in regard to sex\_, it is plainly a solecism.

OBS. 3.--A great many of our grammars define gender to be "\_the distinction

of sex\_," and then speak of a \_common gender\_, in which the two sexes are

left \_undistinguished\_; and of the \_neuter gender\_, in which objects are

treated as being of \_neither sex\_. These views of the matter are obviously

inconsistent. Not genders, or a gender, do the writers undertake to define,

but "gender" as a whole; and absurdly enough, too; because this whole of

gender they immediately distribute into certain \_other genders\_, into

genders of gender, or kinds of gender, and these not compatible with their

definition. Thus Wells: "Gender is \_the distinction\_ of objects, with

regard to sex. There are four genders;--the \_masculine\_, the \_feminine\_,

the \_common\_, and the \_neuter\_."--\_School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 49. [Those]

"Nouns which are applicable \_alike to both sexes\_, are of the \_common\_

gender."--\_Ib.\_ This then is manifestly no gender under the foregoing

definition, and the term \_neuter\_ is made somewhat less appropriate by the

adoption of a third denomination before it. Nor is there less absurdity in

the phraseology with which Murray proposes to avoid the recognition of the

\_common gender\_: "Thus we may say, \_Parents\_ is a noun of the \_masculine

and feminine\_ gender; \_Parent\_, if doubtful, is of the \_masculine or

feminine\_ gender; and \_Parent\_, if the gender is known by the construction,

is of the gender so ascertained."--\_Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 39. According to this,

we must have \_five genders\_, exclusive of that which is called \_common\_;

namely, the \_masculine\_, the \_feminine\_, the \_neuter\_, the \_androgynal\_,

and the \_doubtful\_.

OBS. 4.--It is plain that many writers on grammar have had but a confused

notion of what a gender really is. Some of them, confounding gender with

sex, deny that there are more than two genders, because there are only two

sexes. Others, under a like mistake, resort occasionally, (as in the

foregoing instance,) to an \_androgynal\_, and also to a \_doubtful\_ gender:

both of which are more objectionable than the \_common gender\_ of the old

grammarians; though this \_common\_ "distinction with regard to sex," is, in

our language, confessedly, no distinction at all. I assume, that there are

in English the three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter, and no more;

and that every noun and every pronoun must needs be of some gender;

consequently, of some one of these three. A gender is, literally, a sort, a

kind, a sex. But genders, \_in grammar\_, are attributes of words, rather

than of persons, or animals, or things; whereas sexes are attributes, not

of words, but of living creatures. He who understands this, will perceive

that the absence of sex in some things, is as good a basis for a

grammatical distinction, as the presence or the difference of it in others;

nor can it be denied, that the neuter, according to my definition, is a

gender, is a distinction "in \_regard\_ to sex," though it does not embrace

either of the sexes. There are therefore three genders, and only three.

OBS. 5.--Generic names, even when construed as masculine or feminine, often

virtually include both sexes; as, "Hast thou given \_the horse\_ strength?

hast thou clothed \_his\_ neck with thunder? Canst thou make \_him\_ afraid as

a grasshopper? the glory of \_his\_ nostrils is terrible."--\_Job\_, xxxix, 19.

"Doth \_the hawk\_ fly by thy wisdom, and stretch \_her\_ wings toward the

south? Doth \_the eagle\_ mount up at thy command, and make \_her\_ nest on

high?"--\_Ib.\_, ver. 26. These were called, by the old grammarians,

\_epicene\_ nouns--that is, \_supercommon\_; but they are to be parsed each

according to the gender of the pronoun which is put for it.

OBS. 6.--The gender of words, in many instances, is to be determined by the

following principle of universal grammar. Those terms which are equally

applicable to both sexes, (if they are not expressly applied to females,)

and those plurals which are known to include both sexes, should be called

masculine in parsing; for, in all languages, the masculine gender is

considered the most worthy,[159] and is generally employed when both sexes

are included under one common term. Thus \_parents\_ is always masculine, and

must be represented by a masculine pronoun, for the gender of a word is a

property indivisible, and that which refers to the male sex, always takes

the lead in such cases. If one say, "Joseph took \_the young child and his

mother\_ by night, and fled with \_them\_ into Egypt," the pronoun \_them\_ will

be masculine; but let "\_his\_" be changed to \_its\_, and the plural pronoun

that follows, will be feminine. For the feminine gender takes precedence of

the neuter, but not of the masculine; and it is not improper to speak of a

young child without designating the sex. As for such singulars as \_parent,

friend, neighbour, thief, slave\_, and many others, they are feminine when

expressly applied to any of the female sex; but otherwise, masculine.

OBS. 7.--Nouns of multitude, when they convey the idea of unity or take the

plural form, are of the neuter gender; but when they convey the idea of

plurality without the form, they follow the gender of the individuals which

compose the assemblage. Thus a \_congress\_, a \_council\_, a \_committee\_, a

\_jury\_, a \_sort\_, or a \_sex\_, if taken collectively, is neuter; being

represented in discourse by the neuter pronoun \_it\_: and the formal

plurals, \_congresses, councils, committees, juries, sorts, sexes\_, of

course, are neuter also. But, if I say, "The committee disgraced

\_themselves\_," the noun and pronoun are presumed to be masculine, unless it

be known that I am speaking of a committee of females. Again: "The \_fair

sex, whose\_ task is not to mingle in the labours of public life, have

\_their\_ own part assigned \_them\_ to act."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 132. Here

\_sex\_, and the three pronouns which have that word for their antecedent,

are all feminine. Again: "\_Each sex\_, dressing \_themselves\_ in the clothes

of the other."--\_Wood's Dictionary\_, v. \_Feast of Purim\_. Here \_sex\_, and

the pronoun which follows, are masculine; because, the male sex, as well as

the female, is here spoken of plurally.

OBS. 8.--To \_persons\_, of every description, known or unknown, real or

imaginary, we uniformly ascribe sex.[160] But, as personality implies

intelligence, and sex supposes some obvious difference, a \_young child\_ may

be spoken of with distinction of sex or without, according to the notion of

the speaker; as, "I went to see the \_child\_ whilst they were putting on

\_its cloaths\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 125. "Because the \_child\_ has no

idea of any nurse besides \_his\_ own."--\_Ib.\_, p. 153. To \_brute animals\_

also, the same distinction is generally applied, though with less

uniformity. Some that are very small, have a gender which seems to be

merely occasional and figurative; as, "Go to the \_ant\_, thou sluggard;

consider \_her\_ ways, and be wise."--\_Prov.\_, vi, 6. "The \_spider\_ taketh

hold with \_her\_ hands, and is in kings' palaces."--\_Prov.\_, xxx, 28. So the

\_bee\_ is usually made feminine, being a little creature of admirable

industry and economy. But, in general, irrational creatures whose sex is

unknown, or unnecessary to be regarded, are spoken of as neuter; as, "And

it became a \_serpent\_; and Moses fled from before \_it\_. And the Lord said

unto Moses, Put forth thine hand, and take \_it\_ by the tail. And he put

forth his hand and caught \_it\_, and \_it\_ became a rod in his

hand."--\_Exod.\_, iv, 3, 4. Here, although the word \_serpent\_ is sometimes

masculine, the neuter pronoun seems to be more proper. So of some imaginary

creatures: as, "\_Phenix\_, the fowl which is said to exist single, and to

rise again from \_its\_ own ashes."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "So shall the

\_Phoenix\_ escape, with no stain on \_its\_ plumage."--\_Dr. Bartlett's Lect.\_,

p. 10.

OBS. 9.--But this liberty of representing animals as of no sex, is often

carried to a very questionable extent; as, "The \_hare\_ sleeps with \_its\_

eyes open."--\_Barbauld\_. "The \_hedgehog\_, as soon as \_it\_ perceives

\_itself\_ attacked, rolls \_itself\_ into a kind of ball, and presents nothing

but \_its\_ prickles to the foe."--\_Blair's Reader\_, p. 138. "The \_panther\_

is a ferocious creature: like the tiger \_it\_ seizes \_its\_ prey by

surprise."--\_Ib.\_, p. 102. "The \_leopard\_, in \_its\_ chace of prey, spares

neither man nor beast."--\_Ib.\_, p. 103. "If a man shall steal an \_ox\_, or a

\_sheep\_, and kill \_it\_, or sell \_it\_."--\_Exod.\_, xxii, 1. "A \_dog\_ resists

\_its\_ instinct to run after a hare, because \_it\_ recollects the beating

\_it\_ has previously received on that account. The \_horse\_ avoids the stone

at which \_it\_ once has stumbled."--\_Spurzheim, on Education\_, p. 3. "The

\_racehorse\_ is looked upon with pleasure; but it is the \_warhorse\_, that

carries grandeur in \_its\_ idea."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 30.

OBS. 10.--The sexes are distinguished \_by words\_, in four different ways.

First, by the use of different terminations: as, \_Jew, Jewess; Julius,

Julia; hero, heroine\_. Secondly, by the use of entirely different names:

as, \_Henry, Mary; king, queen\_. Thirdly, by compounds or phrases including

some distinctive term: as, \_Mr. Murray, Mrs. Murray; Englishman,

Englishwoman; grandfather, grandmother; landlord, landlady; merman,

mermaid; servingman, servingmaid; man-servant, maid-servant; schoolmaster,

schoolmistress; school-boy, school-girl; peacock, peahen; cock-sparrow,

hen-sparrow; he-goat, she-goat; buck-rabbit, doe-rabbit; male elephant,

female elephant; male convicts, female convicts\_. Fourthly, by the pronouns

\_he, his, him\_, put for nouns masculine; and \_she, her, hers\_, for nouns

feminine: as, "Ask \_him\_ that fleeth, and \_her\_ that escapeth, and say,

What is done?"--\_Jer.\_, xlviii, 19.

"O happy \_peasant!\_ Oh unhappy \_bard!\_

\_His\_ the mere tinsel, \_hers\_ the rich reward."--\_Cowper\_.

OBS. 11.--For feminine nouns formed by inflection, the regular termination

is \_ess\_; but the manner in which this ending is applied to the original or

masculine noun, is not uniform:--

1. In some instances the syllable \_ess\_ is simply added: as, \_accuser,

accuseress; advocate, advocatess; archer, archeress; author, authoress;

avenger, avengeress; barber, barberess; baron, baroness; canon, canoness;

cit, cittess;[161] coheir, coheiress; count, countess; deacon, deaconess;

demon, demoness; diviner, divineress; doctor, doctoress; giant, giantess;

god, goddess; guardian, guardianess; Hebrew, Hebrewess; heir, heiress;

herd, herdess; hermit, hermitess; host, hostess; Jesuit, Jesuitess; Jew,

Jewess; mayor, mayoress; Moabite, Moabitess; monarch, monarchess; pape,

papess\_; or, \_pope, popess; patron, patroness; peer, peeress; poet,

poetess; priest, priestess; prior, prioress; prophet, prophetess; regent,

regentess; saint, saintess; shepherd, shepherdess; soldier, soldieress;

tailor, tailoress; viscount, viscountess; warrior, warrioress\_.

2. In other instances, the termination is changed, and there is no increase

of syllables: as, \_abbot, abbess; actor, actress; adulator, adulatress;

adulterer, adulteress; adventurer, adventuress; advoutrer, advoutress;

ambassador, ambassadress; anchorite, anchoress\_; or, \_anachoret,

anachoress; arbiter, arbitress; auditor, auditress; benefactor,

benefactress; caterer, cateress; chanter, chantress; cloisterer,

cloisteress; commander, commandress; conductor, conductress; creator,

creatress; demander, demandress; detractor, detractress; eagle, eagless;

editor, editress; elector, electress; emperor, emperess\_, or \_empress;

emulator, emulatress; enchanter, enchantress; exactor, exactress; fautor,

fautress; fornicator, fornicatress; fosterer, fosteress\_, or \_fostress;

founder, foundress; governor, governess; huckster, huckstress\_; or,

\_hucksterer, hucksteress; idolater, idolatress; inhabiter, inhabitress;

instructor, instructress; inventor, inventress; launderer, launderess\_, or

\_laundress; minister, ministress; monitor, monitress; murderer, murderess;

negro, negress; offender, offendress; ogre, ogress; porter, portress;

progenitor, progenitress; protector, protectress; proprietor, proprietress;

pythonist, pythoness; seamster, seamstress; solicitor, solicitress;

songster, songstress; sorcerer, sorceress; suitor, suitress; tiger,

tigress; traitor, traitress; victor, victress; votary, votaress\_.

3. In a few instances the feminine is formed as in Latin, by changing \_or\_

to \_rix\_; but some of these have also the regular form, which ought to be

preferred: as, \_adjutor, adjutrix; administrator, administratrix;

arbitrator, arbitratrix; coadjutor, coadjutrix; competitor, competitress\_,

or \_competitrix; creditor, creditrix; director, directress\_, or \_directrix;

executor, executress\_, or \_executrix; inheritor, inheritress\_, or

\_inheritrix; mediator, mediatress\_, or \_mediatrix; orator, oratress\_, or

\_oratrix; rector, rectress\_, or \_rectrix; spectator, spectatress\_, or

\_spectatrix; testator, testatrix; tutor, tutoress\_, or \_tutress\_, or

\_tutrix; deserter, desertress\_, or \_desertrice\_, or \_desertrix\_.

4. The following are irregular words, in which the distinction of sex is

chiefly made by the termination: \_amoroso, amorosa: archduke, archduchess;

chamberlain, chambermaid; duke, duchess; gaffer, gammer; goodman, goody;

hero, heroine; landgrave, landgravine; margrave, margravine; marquis,

marchioness; palsgrave, palsgravine; sakeret, sakerhawk; sewer, sewster;

sultan, sultana; tzar, tzarina; tyrant, tyranness; widower, widow\_.

OBS. 12.--The proper names of persons almost always designate their sex;

for it has been found convenient to make the names of women different from

those of men. We have also some appellatives which correspond to each

other, distinguishing the sexes by their distinct application to each: as,

\_bachelor, maid; beau, belle; boy, girl; bridegroom, bride; brother,

sister; buck, doe; boar, sow; bull, cow; cock, hen; colt, filly; dog,

bitch; drake, duck; earl, countess; father, mother; friar, nun; gander,

goose; grandsire, grandam; hart, roe; horse, mare; husband, wife; king,

queen; lad, lass; lord, lady; male, female; man, woman; master, mistress\_;

Mister, Missis; (Mr., Mrs.;) \_milter, spawner; monk, nun; nephew, niece;

papa, mamma; rake, jilt; ram, ewe; ruff, reeve; sire, dam; sir, madam;

sloven, slut; son, daughter; stag, hind; steer, heifer; swain, nymph;

uncle, aunt; wizard, witch; youth, damsel; young man, maiden\_.

OBS. 13.--The people of a particular country are commonly distinguished by

some name derived from that of their country; as, \_Americans, Africans,

Egyptians, Russians, Turks\_. Such words are sometimes called \_gentile

names\_. There are also adjectives, of the same origin, if not the same

form, which correspond with them. "Gentile names are for the most part

considered as masculine, and the feminine is denoted by the gentile

adjective and the noun \_woman\_: as, a \_Spaniard\_, a \_Spanish woman\_; a

\_Pole\_, or \_Polander\_, a \_Polish woman\_. But, in a few instances, we always

use a compound of the adjective with \_man\_ or \_woman\_: as, an \_Englishman\_,

an \_Englishwoman\_; a \_Welshman\_, a \_Welshwoman\_; an \_Irishman\_, an

\_Irishwoman\_; a \_Frenchman\_, a \_Frenchwoman\_; a \_Dutchman\_, a \_Dutchwoman\_:

and in these cases the adjective is employed as the collective noun; as,

\_the Dutch, the French\_, &c. A \_Scotchman\_, and a \_Scot\_, are both in use;

but the latter is not common in prose writers: though some employ it, and

these generally adopt the plural, \_Scots\_, with the definite article, as

the collective term."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 70.

OBS. 14.--The names of things without life, used literally, are always of

the neuter gender: as, "When Cleopatra fled, Antony pursued her in a

five-oared galley; and, coming along side of her \_ship\_, entered \_it\_

without being seen by her."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, p. 160. "The \_sun\_, high

as \_it\_ is, has \_its\_ business assigned; and so have the

stars."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 138. But inanimate objects are often

represented figuratively as having sex. Things remarkable for power,

greatness, or sublimity, are spoken of as masculine; as, the \_sun, time,

death, sleep, fear, anger, winter, war\_. Things beautiful, amiable, or

prolific, are spoken of as feminine; as, a \_ship\_, the \_moon\_, the \_earth,

nature, fortune, knowledge, hope, spring, peace\_. Figurative gender is

indicated only by the personal pronouns of the singular number: as, "When

we say of the \_sun, He\_ is setting; or of a \_ship, She\_ sails well."--\_L.

Murray\_. For these two objects, the \_sun\_ and a \_ship\_, this phraseology is

so common, that the literal construction quoted above is rarely met with.

OBS. 15.--When any inanimate object or abstract quality is distinctly

personified, and presented to the imagination in the character of a living

and intelligent being, there is necessarily a change of the gender of the

word; for, whenever personality is thus ascribed to what is literally

neuter, there must be an assumption of one or the other sex: as, "\_The

Genius of Liberty\_ is awakened, and springs up; \_she\_ sheds her divine

light and creative powers upon the two hemispheres. A great \_nation\_,

astonished at seeing \_herself\_ free, stretches \_her\_ arms from one

extremity of the earth to the other, and embraces the first nation that

became so."--\_Abbé Fauchet\_. But there is an inferior kind of

personification, or of what is called such, in which, so far as appears,

the gender remains neuter: as, "The following is an instance of

personification and apostrophe united: 'O \_thou sword\_ of the Lord! how

long will it be ere \_thou\_ be quiet? put \_thyself\_ up into \_thy\_ scabbard,

rest, and be still! How can \_it\_ be quiet, seeing the Lord hath given \_it\_

a charge against Askelon, and against the sea-shore? there hath he

appointed \_it\_.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 348. See \_Jer.\_, xlvii, 6.

OBS. 16.--If what is called personification, does not always imply a change

of gender and an ascription of sex, neither does a mere ascription of sex

to what is literally of no sex, necessarily imply a personification; for

there may be sex without personality, as we see in brute animals. Hence the

gender of a brute animal personified in a fable, may be taken literally as

before; and the gender which is figuratively ascribed to the \_sun\_, the

\_moon\_, or a \_ship\_, is merely metaphorical. In the following sentence,

\_nature\_ is animated and made feminine by a metaphor, while a lifeless

object bearing the name of \_Venus\_, is spoken of as neuter: "Like that

conceit of old, which declared that the \_Venus of Gnidos\_ was not the work

of Praxiteles, since \_nature herself\_ had concreted the boundary surface of

\_its\_ beauty."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. xxv.

OBS. 17.--"In personifications regard must be had to propriety in

determining the gender. Of most of the passions and moral qualities of man

the ancients formed deities, as they did of various other things: and, when

these are personified, they are usually made male or female, according as

they were gods or goddesses in the pagan mythology. The same rule applies

in other cases: and thus the planet Jupiter will be masculine; Venus,

feminine: the ocean, \_Oce=anus\_, masculine: rivers, months, and winds, the

same: the names of places, countries, and islands, feminine."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 71.

OBS. 18.--These suggestions are worthy of consideration, but, for the

gender which ought to be adopted in personifications, there seems to be no

absolute general rule, or none which English writers have observed with

much uniformity. It is well, however, to consider what is most common in

each particular case, and abide by it. In the following examples, the sex

ascribed is not that under which these several objects are commonly

figured; for which reason, the sentences are perhaps erroneous:--

"\_Knowledge\_ is proud that \_he\_ has learn'd so much;

\_Wisdom\_ is humble that \_he\_ knows no more."--\_Cowper\_.

"But hoary \_Winter\_, unadorned and bare,

Dwells in the dire retreat, and freezes there;

There \_she\_ assembles all her blackest storms,

And the rude hail in rattling tempests forms."--\_Addison\_.

"\_Her\_ pow'r extends o'er all things that have breath,

A cruel tyrant, and \_her\_ name is \_Death\_."--\_Sheffield\_.

CASES.

Cases, in grammar, are modifications that distinguish the relations of

nouns or pronouns to other words.

There are three cases; the \_nominative\_, the \_possessive\_, and the

\_objective\_.

The \_nominative case\_ is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which

usually denotes the subject of a finite verb: as, The \_boy\_ runs; \_I\_ run.

The subject of a finite verb is that which answers to \_who\_ or \_what\_

before it; as, "The boy runs."--\_Who\_ runs? "The \_boy\_." Boy is therefore

here in the \_nominative\_ case.

The \_possessive case\_ is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which

usually denotes the relation of property: as, The \_boy's\_ hat; \_my\_ hat.

The possessive case of nouns is formed, in the singular number, by adding

to the nominative \_s preceded by an apostrophe\_; and, in the plural, when

the nominative ends in \_s\_, by adding \_an apostrophe only\_: as, singular,

\_boy's\_; plural, \_boys'\_;--sounded alike, but written differently.

The \_objective case\_ is that form or state of a noun or pronoun which

usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition: as, I

know the \_boy\_, having seen \_him\_ at \_school\_; and he knows \_me\_.

The object of a verb, participle, or preposition, is that which answers to

\_whom\_ or \_what\_ after it; as, "I know the boy."--I know \_whom\_? "The boy."

\_Boy\_ is therefore here in the \_objective\_ case.

The nominative and the objective of nouns, are always alike in form, being

distinguishable from each other only by their place in a sentence, or by

their simple dependence according to the sense.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The cases, in grammar, are founded on the different relations

under which things are represented in discourse; and from which the words

acquire correspondent relations; or connexions and dependences according to

the sense. In Latin, there are six cases; and in Greek, five. Consequently,

the nouns and pronouns of those languages, and also their adjectives and

participles, (which last are still farther inflected by the three genders,)

are varied by many different terminations unknown to our tongue. In

English, those modifications or relations which we call cases, belong only

to nouns and pronouns; nor are there ever more than three. Pronouns are not

necessarily like their antecedents in case.

OBS. 2.--Because the infinitive mood, a phrase, or a sentence, may in some

instances be made the subject of a verb, so as to stand in that relation in

which the nominative case is most commonly found; very many of our

grammarians have deliberately represented all terms used in this manner, as

being "\_in the nominative case\_:" as if, to sustain any one of the

relations which are usually distinguished by a particular case, must

necessarily constitute that modification itself. Many also will have

participles, infinitives, phrases, and sentences, to be occasionally "\_in

the objective case\_:" whereas it must be plain to every reader, that they

are, all of them, \_indeclinable\_ terms; and that, if used in any relation

common to nouns or pronouns, they assume that office, as participles, as

infinitives, as phrases, or as sentences, and not as \_cases\_. They no more

take the nature of cases, than they become nouns or pronouns. Yet Nixon, by

assuming that \_of\_, with the word governed by it, constitutes a \_possessive

case\_, contrives to give to participles, and even to the infinitive mood,

\_all three of the cases\_. Of the infinitive, he says, "An examination of

the first and second methods of parsing this mood, must naturally lead to

the inference that \_it is a substantive\_; and that, if it has the

nominative case, it must also have the possessive and objective cases of a

substantive. The fourth method proves its [capacity of] being in the

possessive case: thus, 'A desire \_to learn\_;' that is, '\_of learning\_.'

When it follows a participle, or a verb, as by the fifth or [the] seventh

method, it is in the objective case. Method sixth is analogous to the Case

Absolute of a substantive."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 83. If the infinitive

mood is really a \_declinable substantive\_, none of our grammarians have

placed it in the right chapter; except that bold contemner of all

grammatical and literary authority, Oliver B. Peirce. When will the cause

of learning cease to have assailants and underminers among those who

profess to serve it? Thus every new grammatist, has some grand absurdity or

other, peculiar to himself; and what can be more gross, than to talk of

English infinitives and participles as being in the \_possessive case\_?

OBS. 3.--It was long a subject of dispute among the grammarians, what

number of cases an English noun should be supposed to have. Some, taking

the Latin language for their model, and turning certain phrases into cases

to fill up the deficits, were for having \_six\_ in each number; namely, the

nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the

ablative. Others, contending that a case in grammar could be nothing else

than a terminational inflection, and observing that English nouns have but

one case that differs from the nominative in form, denied that there were

more than two, the nominative and the possessive. This was certainly an

important question, touching a fundamental principle of our grammar; and

any erroneous opinion concerning it, might well go far to condemn the book

that avouched it. Every intelligent teacher must see this. For what sense

could be made of parsing, without supposing an objective case to nouns? or

what propriety could there be in making the words, \_of\_, and \_to\_, and

\_from\_, govern or compose three different cases? Again, with what truth can

it be said, that nouns have \_no cases\_ in English? or what reason can be

assigned for making more than three?

OBS. 4.--Public opinion is now clear in the decision, that it is

\_expedient\_ to assign to English nouns three cases, and no more; and, in a

matter of this kind, what is expedient for the purpose of instruction, is

right. Yet, from the works of our grammarians, may be quoted every

conceivable notion, right or wrong, upon this point. Cardell, with Tooke

and Gilchrist on his side, contends that English nouns have \_no cases\_.

Brightland averred that they have neither cases nor genders.[162] Buchanan,

and the author of the old British Grammar, assigned to them \_one\_ case

only, the possessive, or genitive. Dr. Adam also says, "In English, nouns

have \_only one case\_, namely, the genitive, or possessive case."--\_Latin

and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 7. W. B. Fowle has two cases, but rejects the word

\_case\_: "We use the simple term \_agent\_ for a \_noun that acts\_, and

\_object\_ for the object of an action."--\_Fowle's True Eng. Gram.\_, Part II,

p. 68. Spencer too discards the word \_case\_, preferring "\_form\_," that he

may merge in one the nominative and the objective, giving to nouns \_two\_

cases, but neither of these. "Nouns have \_two Forms\_, called the \_Simple\_

and [the] \_Possessive\_."--\_Spencer's E. Gram.\_, p. 30. Webber's Grammar,

published at Cambridge in 1832, recognizes but \_two\_ cases of nouns,

declaring the objective to be "altogether superfluous."--P. 22. "Our

substantives have no more cases than two."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 14. "A

Substantive doth not properly admit of more than two cases: the Nominative,

and the Genitive."--\_Ellen Devis's Gram.\_, p. 19. Dr. Webster, in his

Philosophical Grammar, of 1807, and in his Improved Grammar, of 1831,

teaches the same doctrine, but less positively. This assumption has also

had the support of Lowth, Johnson, Priestley, Ash, Bicknell, Fisher,

Dalton, and our celebrated Lindley Murray.[163] In Child's or Latham's

English Grammar, 1852, it is said, "The cases in the present English are

three:--1. Nominative; 2. Objective; 3. Possessive." But this seems to be

meant of pronouns only; for the next section affirms, "The \_substantives\_

in English \_have only two\_ out of the three cases."--See pp. 79 and 80.

Reckless of the current usage of grammarians, and even of self-consistency,

both author and reviser will have no objective case of nouns, because this

is like the nominative; yet, finding an objective set after "the adjective

\_like\_," they will recognize it as "\_a dative\_ still existing in

English!"--See p. 156. Thus do they forsake their own enumeration of cases,

as they had before, in all their declensions, forsaken the new order in

which they had at first so carefully set them!

OBS. 5.--For the \_true\_ doctrine of \_three\_ cases, we have the authority of

Murray, in his later editions; of Webster, in his "Plain and Comp. Grammar,

grounded on \_True Principles\_," 1790; also in his "Rudiments of English

Grammar," 1811; together with the united authority of Adams, Ainsworth,

Alden, Alger, Bacon, Barnard, Bingham, Burr, Bullions, Butler, Churchill,

Chandler, Cobbett, Cobbin, Comly, Cooper, Crombie, Davenport, Davis, Fisk,

A. Flint, Frost, Guy, Hart, Hiley, Hull, Ingersoll, Jaudon, Kirkham,

Lennie, Mack, M'Culloch, Maunder, Merchant, Nixon, Nutting, John Peirce,

Perley, Picket, Russell, Smart, R. C. Smith, Rev. T. Smith, Wilcox, and I

know not how many others.

OBS. 6.--Dearborn, in 1795, recognized \_four\_ cases: "the nominative, the

possessive, the objective, and the absolute."--\_Columbian Gram.\_, pp. 16

and 20. Charles Bucke, in his work misnamed "A Classical Grammar of the

English Language," published in London in 1829, asserts, that,

"Substantives in English do not vary their terminations;" yet he gives them

\_four\_ cases; "the nominative, the genitive, the accusative, and the

vocative." So did Allen, in a grammar much more classical, dated, London,

1813. Hazen, in 1842, adopted "four cases; namely, the nominative, the

possessive, the objective, and the independent."--\_Hazen's Practical

Gram.\_, p. 35. Mulligan, since, has chosen these four: "Nominative,

Genitive, Dative, Accusative."--\_Structure of E. Lang.\_, p. 185. And yet

his case after \_to\_ or \_for\_ is \_not\_ "\_dative\_," but "\_accusative!\_"--

\_Ib.\_, p. 239. So too, Goodenow, of Maine, makes the cases four: "the

\_subjective\_,[164] the \_possessive\_, the \_objective\_, and the

\_absolute\_."--\_Text-Book\_, p. 31. Goldsbury, of Cambridge, has also four:

"the Nominative, the Possessive, the Objective, and the Vocative."--\_Com.

S. Gram.\_, p. 13. Three other recent grammarians,--Wells, of Andover,--

Weld, of Portland,--and Clark, of Bloomfield, N. Y.,--also adopt "\_four\_

cases;--the \_nominative\_, the \_possessive\_, the \_objective\_, and the

\_independent\_."--\_Wells's Gram.\_, p. 57; \_Weld's\_, 60; \_Clark's\_, 49. The

first of these gentlemen argues, that, "Since a noun or pronoun, used

\_independently\_, cannot at the same time be employed as 'the subject of a

verb,' there is a manifest impropriety in regarding it as a \_nominative\_."

It might as well be urged, that a nominative after a verb, or in apposition

with an other, is, for this reason, not a \_nominative\_. He also cites this

argument: "'Is there not as much difference between the \_nominative\_ and

[the] \_independent\_ case, as there is between the \_nominative\_ and [the]

\_objective?\_ If so, why class them together as \_one\_ case?'--\_S. R.

Hall\_."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, p. 51. To this I answer, No. "The

nominative is that case which \_primely denotes the name\_ of any person or

thing;" (\_Burn's Gram.\_, p. 36;) and \_this only\_ it is, that can be

absolute, or independent, in English. This scheme of four cases is, in

fact, a grave innovation. As authority for it, Wells cites Felton; and bids

his readers, "See also Kennion, Parkhurst, Fowle, Flint, Goodenow, Buck,

Hazen, Goldsbury, Chapin, S. Alexander, and P. Smith."--Page 57. But is the

fourth case of these authors \_the same\_ as his? Is it a case which "has

usually the nominative form," but admits occasionally of "\_me\_" and

"\_him\_," and embraces objective nouns of "\_time, measure, distance,

direction\_, or \_place\_?" No. Certainly one half of them, and probably more,

give little or no countenance to \_such\_ an independent case as he has

adopted. Parkhurst admitted but three cases; though he thought \_two others\_

"might be an improvement." What Fowle has said in support of Wells's four

cases, I have sought with diligence, and not found. Felton's "independent

case" is only what he absurdly calls, "\_The noun or pronoun addressed\_."--

Page 91. Bucke and Goldsbury acknowledge "\_the nominative case absolute\_;"

and none of the twelve, so far as I know, admit any objective word, or what

others call objective, to be independent or absolute, except perhaps

Goldsbury.

OBS. 7.--S. R. Hall, formerly principal of the Seminary for Teachers at

Andover, (but no great grammarian,) in 1832, published a manual, called

"The Grammatical Assistant;" in which he says, "There are \_at least five

cases\_, belonging to English nouns, differing as much from \_each\_ other, as

the cases of Latin and Greek nouns. They may be called Nominative,

Possessive, Objective, Independent and Absolute."--P. 7. O. B. Peirce will

have both nouns and pronouns to be used in \_five cases\_, which he thus

enumerates: "Four simple cases; the Subjective, Possessive, Objective, and

the Independent; and the Twofold case."--\_Gram.\_, p. 42. But, on page 56th,

he speaks of a "twofold \_subjective\_ case," "the twofold \_objective\_ case,"

and shows how the \_possessive\_ may be twofold also; so that, without taking

any of the Latin cases, or even all of Hall's, he really recognizes as many

as seven, if not eight. Among the English grammars which assume all the

\_six cases\_ of the Latin Language, are Burn's, Coar's, Dilworth's,

Mackintosh's, Mennye's, Wm. Ward's, and the "Comprehensive Grammar," a

respectable little book, published by Dobson of Philadelphia, in 1789, but

written by somebody in England.

OBS. 8.--Of the English grammars which can properly be said to be \_now in

use\_, a very great majority agree in ascribing to nouns three cases, and

three only. This, I am persuaded, is the best number, and susceptible of

the best defence, whether we appeal to authority, or to other argument. The

disputes of grammarians make no small part of the \_history of grammar\_; and

in submitting to be guided by their decisions, it is proper for us to

consider what \_degree of certainty\_ there is in the rule, and what

difference or concurrence there is among them: for, the teaching of any

other than the best opinions, is not the teaching of science, come from

what quarter it may. On the question respecting the objective case of

nouns, Murray and Webster \_changed sides with each other\_; and that, long

after they first appeared as grammarians. Nor was this the only, or the

most important instance, in which the different editions of the works of

these two gentlemen, present them in opposition, both to themselves and to

each other. "What cases are there in English? The \_nominative\_, which

usually stands before a verb; as, the \_boy\_ writes: The \_possessive\_, which

takes an \_s\_ with a \_comma\_, and denotes property; as, \_John's\_ hat: The

\_objective\_, which follows a verb or preposition; as, he honors \_virtue\_,

or it is an honor to \_him\_."--\_Webster's Plain and Comp. Gram., Sixth

Edition\_, 1800, p. 9. "But for convenience, the two positions of nouns, one

\_before\_, the other \_after\_ the verb, are called \_cases\_. There are then

three cases, the \_nominative, possessive\_, and \_objective\_."--\_Webster's

Rudiments of Gram.\_, 1811, p. 12. "In English therefore names have two

cases only, the \_nominative\_ or simple name, and the \_possessive\_."--

\_Webster's Philosoph. Gram.\_, 1807, p. 32: also his \_Improved Gram.\_, 1831,

p. 24.

OBS. 9.--Murray altered his opinion after the tenth or eleventh edition of

his duodecimo Grammar. His instructions stand thus: "In English,

substantives have but two cases, the nominative, and [the] possessive or

genitive."--\_Murray's Gram. 12mo, Second Edition\_, 1796, p. 35. "For the

assertion, that there are in English but two cases of nouns, and three of

pronouns, we have the authority of Lowth, Johnson, Priestley, &c. \_names

which are sufficient\_ to decide this point."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36. "In English,

substantives have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the

objective."--\_Murray's Gram., 12mo, Twenty-third Edition\_, 1816, p. 44.

"The author of this work \_long doubted\_ the propriety of assigning to

English substantives an \_objective case\_: but a renewed critical

examination of the subject; an examination to which he was prompted by the

extensive and increasing demand for the grammar, has produced in his mind

\_a full persuasion\_, that the nouns of our language are entitled to this

comprehensive objective case."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. If there is any credit in

changing one's opinions, it is, doubtless, in changing them for the better;

but, of all authors, a grammarian has the most need critically to examine

his subject before he goes to the printer. "This case was adopted in the

\_twelfth edition\_ of the Grammar."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, 12mo, N. Y.,

1818, p. viii.

OBS. 10.--The \_possessive case\_ has occasioned no less dispute than the

objective. On this vexed article of our grammar, custom has now become much

more uniform than it was a century ago; and public opinion may be said to

have settled most of the questions which have been agitated about it. Some

individuals, however, are still dissatisfied. In the first place, against

those who have thought otherwise, it is determined, by infinite odds of

authority, that there \_is such a case\_, both of nouns and of pronouns. Many

a common reader will wonder, who can have been ignorant enough to deny it.

"The learned and sagacious Wallis, to whom every English grammarian owes a

tribute of reverence, calls this modification of the noun an \_adjective

possessive\_; I think, with no more propriety than he might have applied the

same to the Latin genitive."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 5. Brightland also,

who gave to \_adjectives\_ the name of \_qualities\_, included all possessives

among them, calling them "\_Possessive Qualities\_, or \_Qualities of

Possession\_."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 90.

OBS. 11.--This exploded error, William S. Cardell, a few years ago,

republished as a novelty; for which, among other pretended improvements of

a like sort, he received the ephemeral praise of some of our modern

literati. William B. Fowle also teaches the same thing. See his \_Common

School Gram.\_, Part II, p. 104. In Felch's Grammar, too, published in

Boston in 1837, an attempt is made, to revive this old doctrine; but the

author takes no notice of any of the above-named authorities, being

probably ignorant of them all. His \_reasoning\_ upon the point, does not

appear to me to be worthy of a detailed answer.[165] That the possessive

case of nouns is not an adjective, is demonstrable; because it may have

adjectives of various kinds, relating to it: as, "\_This old man's\_

daughter."--\_Shak.\_ It may also govern an other possessive; as, "\_Peter's

wife's\_ mother."--\_Bible\_. Here the former possessive is governed by the

latter; but, if both were adjectives, they would both relate to the noun

\_mother\_, and so produce a confusion of ideas. Again, nouns of the

possessive case have a distinction of number, which adjectives have not. In

gender also, there lies a difference. Adjectives, whenever they are varied

by gender or number, \_agree with their nouns\_ in these respects. Not so

with possessives; as, "In the \_Jews'\_ religion."--\_Gal.\_, i. 13. "The

\_children's\_ bread."--\_Mark\_, vii, 27. "Some \_men's\_ sins."--\_1 Tim.\_, v,

24. "Other \_men's\_ sins."--\_Ib.\_, ver. 22.

OBS. 12.--Secondly, general custom has clearly determined that the

possessive case of \_nouns\_ is always to be written \_with an apostrophe\_:

except in those few instances in which it is not governed singly by the

noun following, but so connected with an other that both are governed

jointly; as, "\_Cato the Censor's\_ doctrine,"--"\_Sir Walter Scott's\_

Works,"--"\_Beaumont\_ and \_Fletcher's Plays.\_" This custom of using the

apostrophe, however, has been opposed by many. Brightland, and Buchanan,

and the author of the British Grammar, and some late writers in the

Philological Museum, are among those who have successively taught, that the

possessive case should be formed \_like the nominative plural\_, by adding

\_s\_ when the pronunciation admits the sound, and \_es\_ when the word

acquires an additional syllable. Some of these approve of the apostrophe,

and others do not. Thus Brightland gives some examples, which are contrary

to his rule, adopting that strange custom of putting the \_s\_ in Roman, and

the name in Italic; "as, King \_Charles\_'s \_Court\_, and St. \_James\_'s

\_Park.\_"--\_Gram. of the English Tongue\_, p. 91.

OBS. 13.--"The genitive case, in my opinion," says Dr. Ash, "might be much

more properly formed by adding \_s\_, or when the pronunciation requires it,

\_es\_, without an Apostrophe: as, \_men, mens; Ox, Oxes; Horse, Horses; Ass,

Asses.\_"--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 23. "To write \_Ox's, Ass's, Fox's\_, and at the

same time pronounce it \_Oxes, Asses, Foxes\_, is such a departure from the

original formation, at least in writing, and such an inconsistent use of

the Apostrophe, as cannot be equalled perhaps in any other

language."--\_Ib.\_ Lowth, too, gives some countenance to this objection: "It

[i.e., \_'God's grace'\_] was formerly written \_'Godis grace;'\_ we now always

shorten it with an apostrophe; often \_very improperly\_, when we are obliged

to pronounce it fully; as, \_'Thomas's\_ book,' that is, '\_Thomasis\_ book,'

not '\_Thomas his\_ book,' as it is commonly supposed."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p.

17. Whatever weight there may be in this argument, the objection has been

overruled by general custom. The convenience of distinguishing, even to the

eye alone, the numbers and cases of the noun, is found too great to be

relinquished. If the declension of English nouns is ever to be amended, it

cannot be done in this way. It is understood by every reader, that the

\_apostrophic s\_ adds a syllable to the noun, whenever it will not unite

with the sound in which the nominative ends; as, \_torch's\_, pronounced

\_torchiz\_.

"Yet time ennobles or degrades each line;

It brightened \_Craggs's\_, and may darken thine."--\_Pope.\_

OBS. 14.--The English possessive case unquestionably originated in that

form of the Saxon genitive which terminates in \_es\_, examples of which may

be found in almost any specimen of the Saxon tongue: as, "On \_Herodes\_

dagum,"--"In \_Herod's\_ days;"--"Of \_Aarones\_ dohtrum,"--"Of \_Aaron's\_

daughters."--\_Luke\_, i, 5. This ending was sometimes the same as that of

the plural; and both were changed to \_is\_ or \_ys\_, before they became what

we now find them. This termination added a syllable to the word; and Lowth

suggests, in the quotation above, that the apostrophe was introduced to

shorten it. But some contend, that the use of this mark originated in a

mistake. It appears from the testimony of Brightland, Johnson, Lowth,

Priestley, and others, who have noticed the error in order to correct it,

that an opinion was long entertained, that the termination \_'s\_ was a

contraction of the word \_his\_. It is certain that Addison thought so; for

he expressly says it, in the 135th number of the Spectator. Accordingly he

wrote, in lieu of the regular possessive, "My paper is \_Ulysses his\_

bow."--\_Guardian\_, No. 98. "Of \_Socrates his\_ rules of prayer."--\_Spect.\_,

No. 207. So Lowth quotes Pope: "By \_young Telemachus his\_ blooming

years."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 17.[166] There is also one late author who

says, "The \_'s\_ is a contraction of \_his\_, and was formerly written in

full; as, William Russell \_his\_ book."--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p. 32. This is

undoubtedly bad English; and always was so, however common may have been

the erroneous notion which gave rise to it. But the apostrophe, whatever

may have been its origin, is now the acknowledged distinctive mark of the

possessive case of English nouns. The application of the \_'s\_, frequently

to feminines, and sometimes to plurals, is proof positive that it is \_not a

contraction\_ of the pronoun \_his\_; as,

"Now Jove suspends his golden scales in air,

Weighs the \_men's\_ wits against the \_Lady's\_ hair."

--\_Pope\_, R. of L., C. v, l. 72.

OBS. 15.--Many of the old grammarians, and Guy, Pinneo, and Spencer, among

the moderns, represent the regular formation of the possessive case as

being the same in both numbers, supposing generally in the plural an

abbreviation of the word by the omission of the second or syllabic \_s\_.

That is, they suppose that such terms as \_eagles' wings, angels' visits\_,

were written for \_eagles's wings, angels's visits\_, &c. This odd view of

the matter accounts well enough for the fashion of such plurals as \_men's,

women's, children's\_, and makes them regular. But I find no evidence at all

of the fact on which these authors presume; nor do I believe that the

regular possessive plural was ever, in general, a syllable longer than the

nominative. If it ever had been so, it would still be easy to prove the

point, by citations from ancient books. The general principle then is, that

\_the apostrophe forms the possessive case, with an s in the singular, and

without it in the plural\_; but there are some exceptions to this rule, on

either hand; and these must be duly noticed.

OBS. 16.--The chief exceptions, or irregularities, in the formation of the

possessive \_singular\_, are, I think, to be accounted mere poetic licenses;

and seldom, if ever, to be allowed in prose. Churchill, (closely copying

Lowth,) speaks of them thus: "In poetry the \_s\_ is frequently omitted after

proper names ending in \_s\_ or \_x\_ as, 'The wrath of \_Peleus'\_ son.' \_Pope.\_

This is scarcely allowable in prose, though instances of it occur: as,

'\_Moses'\_ minister.' \_Josh.\_, i, 1. \_'Phinehas'\_ wife.' \_1 Sam.\_, iv, 19.

'Festus came into \_Felix'\_ room.' \_Acts\_, xxiv, 27. It was done in prose

evidently to avoid the recurrence of a sibilant sound at the end of two

following syllables; but this may as readily be obviated by using the

preposition \_of\_, which is now commonly substituted for the possessive case

in most instances."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 215. In Scott's Bible,

Philadelphia, 1814, the texts here quoted are all of them corrected, thus:

"\_Moses's\_ minister,"--"\_Phinehas's\_ wife,"--"\_Felix's\_ room." But the

phrase, "for \_conscience\_ sake," (\_Rom.\_, xiii, 5,) is there given without

the apostrophe. Alger prints it, "for \_conscience'\_ sake," which is better;

and though not regular, it is a common form for this particular expression.

Our common Bibles have this text: "And the weaned child shall put his hand

on the \_cockatrice'\_ den."--\_Isaiah\_, xi, 8. Alger, seeing this to be

wrong, wrote it, "on the \_cockatrice-den\_."--\_Pronouncing Bible.\_ Dr.

Scott, in his Reference Bible, makes this possessive regular, "on the

\_cockatrice's\_ den." This is right. The Vulgate has it, "\_in caverna

reguli\_;" which, however, is not classic Latin. After \_z\_ also, the poets

sometimes drop the \_s\_: as,

"Sad was the hour, and luckless was the day,

When first from \_Shiraz'\_ walls I bent my way."--\_Collins.\_

OBS. 17.--A recent critic, who, I think, has not yet learned to speak or

write the possessive case of \_his own name\_ properly, assumes that the

foregoing occasional or poetical forms are the only true ones for the

possessive singular of such words. He says, "When the name \_does end\_ with

the sound of \_s\_ or \_z\_, (no matter what letter represents the sound,) the

possessive form \_is made\_ by annexing only an apostrophe."--\_O. B. Peirce's

Gram.\_, p. 44. Agreeably to this rule, he letters his work, "\_Peirce'

Grammar\_," and condemns, as bad English, the following examples and all

others like them: "James \_Otis's\_ letters, General \_Gates's\_ command,

General \_Knox's\_ appointment, Gov. \_Meigs's\_ promptness, Mr. \_Williams's\_

oration, The \_witness's\_ deposition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. It is obvious that

this gentleman's doctrine and criticism are as contrary to the common

practice of all good authors, as they are to the common grammars, which he

ridicules. Surely, such expressions as, "\_Harris's\_ Hermes, \_Philips's\_

Poems, \_Prince's\_ Bay, \_Prince's\_ Island, \_Fox's\_ Journal, King \_James's\_

edict, a \_justice's\_ warrant, \_Sphinx's\_ riddle, the \_lynx's\_ beam, the

\_lass's\_ beauty," have authority enough to refute the cavil of this writer;

who, being himself wrong, falsely charges the older grammarians, that,"

their theories vary from the principles of the language correctly spoken or

written."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. A much more judicious author treats this point of

grammar as follows: "When the possessive noun is singular, and terminates

with an \_s\_, another \_s\_ is requisite after it, and the apostrophe must be

placed between the two; as, '\_Dickens's\_ works,'--'\_Harris's\_

wit.'"--\_Day's Punctuation, Third London Edition\_, p. 136. The following

example, too, is right: "I would not yield to be your \_house's\_

guest."--\_Shakespeare\_.

OBS. 18.--All \_plural\_ nouns that differ from the singular without ending

in \_s\_, form the possessive case in the same manner as the singular: as,

\_man's, men's; woman's, women's j child's, children's; brother's, brothers'

or brethren's; ox's, oxen's; goose, geese's\_. In two or three words which

are otherwise alike in both numbers, the apostrophe ought to follow the \_s\_

in the plural, to distinguish it from the singular: as, the \_sheep's\_

fleece, the \_sheeps'\_ fleeces; a \_neat's\_ tongue, \_neats'\_ tongues; a

\_deer's\_ horns, a load of \_deers'\_ horns.

OBS. 19.--Dr. Ash says, "Nouns of the plural number that end in \_s\_, will

not very properly admit of the genitive case."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 54. And

Dr. Priestley appears to have been of the same opinion. See his \_Gram.\_, p.

69. Lowth too avers, that the sign of the possessive case is "never added

to the plural number ending in \_s\_."--\_Gram.\_, p. 18. Perhaps he thought

the plural sign must involve an other \_s\_, like the singular. This however

is not true, neither is Dr. Ash's assertion true; for the New Testament

speaks as properly of "the \_soldiers'\_ counsel," as of the "\_centurion's\_

servant;" of "the scribes that were of the \_Pharisees'\_ part," as of

"\_Paul's sister's\_ son." It would appear, however, that the possessive

plural is less frequently used than the possessive singular; its place

being much oftener supplied by the preposition \_of\_ and the objective. We

cannot say that either of them is absolutely necessary to the language; but

they are both worthy to be commended, as furnishing an agreeable variety of

expression.

"Then shall \_man's\_ pride and dulness comprehend

His \_actions', passions', being's\_ use and end."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 20.--The apostrophe was introduced into the possessive case, at least

for the singular number, in some part of the seventeenth century. Its

adoption for the plural, appears to have been later: it is not much used in

books a hundred years old. In Buchanan's "Regular English Syntax," which

was written, I know not exactly when, but near the middle of the eighteenth

century, I find the following paragraph: "We have certainly a Genitive

Plural, though there has been no Mark to distinguish it. The Warriors Arms,

i. e. the Arms of the Warriors, is as much a Genitive Plural, as the

Warrior's Arms, for the Arms of the Warrior is a Genitive Singular. To

distinguish this Genitive Plural, especially to Foreigners, we might use

the Apostrophe reversed, thus, the Warrior`s Arms, the Stone`s End, for the

End of the Stones, the Grocer`s, Taylor`s, Haberdasher`s, &c. Company; for

the Company of Grocers, Taylors, &c. The Surgeon`s Hall, for the Hall of

the Surgeons; the Rider`s Names, for the Names of the Riders; and so of all

Plural Possessives."--See \_Buchan. Synt.\_, p. 111. Our present form of the

possessive plural, being unknown to this grammarian, must have had a later

origin; nor can it have been, as some imagine it was, an abbreviation of a

longer and more ancient form.

OBS. 21.--The apostrophic \_s\_ has often been added to nouns \_improperly\_;

the words formed by it not being intended for the possessive singular, but

for the nominative or objective plural. Thus we find such authors as

Addison and Swift, writing \_Jacobus's\_ and \_genius's\_, for \_Jacobuses\_ and

\_geniuses\_; \_idea's, toga's\_, and \_tunica's\_, for \_ideas, togas\_, and

\_tunicas\_; \_enamorato's\_ and \_virtuoso's\_, for \_enamoratoes\_ and

\_virtuosoes\_. Errors of this kind, should be carefully avoided.

OBS. 22.--The apostrophe and \_s\_ are sometimes added to mere characters, to

denote plurality, and not the possessive case; as, two \_a\_'s, three \_b\_'s,

four 9's. These we cannot avoid, except by using the \_names\_ of the things:

as, two \_Aes\_, three \_Bees\_, four \_Nines\_. "Laced down the sides with

little \_c\_'s."--\_Steele\_. "Whenever two \_gg\_'s come together, they are both

hard."--\_Buchanan\_. The names of \_c\_ and \_g\_, plural, are \_Cees\_ and

\_Gees\_. Did these authors \_know\_ the words, or did they not? To have

learned the \_names\_ of the letters, will be found on many occasions a great

convenience, especially to critics. For example: "The pronunciation of

these two consecutive \_s's\_ is hard."--\_Webber's Gram.\_, p. 21. Better:

"\_Esses\_." "\_S\_ and \_x\_, however, are exceptions. They are pluralyzed by

adding \_es\_ preceded by a hyphen [-], as the \_s-es\_; the \_x-es\_."--\_O. B.

Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 40. Better, use the \_names, Ess\_ and \_Ex\_, and

pluralize thus: "the \_Esses\_; the \_Exes\_."

"Make Q's of answers, to waylay

What th' other party's like to say."

--\_Hudibras\_, P. III, C. ii, l. 951.

Here the cipher is to be read \_Kues\_, but it has not the meaning of this

name merely. It is put either for the plural of \_Q.\_, a \_Question\_, like D.

D.'s, (read \_Dee-Dees\_,) for \_Doctors of Divinity\_; or else, more

erroneously, for \_cues\_, the plural of \_cue\_, a turn which the next speaker

catches.

OBS. 23.--In the following example, the apostrophe and \_s\_ are used to give

the sound of a \_verb's\_ termination, to words which the writer supposed

were not properly verbs: "When a man in a soliloquy reasons with himself,

and \_pro's\_ and \_con's\_, and weighs all his designs."--\_Congreve\_. But

here, "\_proes\_ and \_cons\_," would have been more accurate. "We put the

ordered number of \_m's\_ into our composing-stick."--\_Printer's Gram.\_ Here

"\_Ems\_" would have done as well. "All measures for \_folio's\_ and

\_quarto's\_, should be made to \_m's\_ of the English body; all measures for

\_octavo's\_, to Pica \_m's\_."--\_Ibid.\_ Here regularity requires, "\_folios,

quartoes, octavoes\_," and "\_pica Ems\_." The verb \_is\_, when contracted,

sometimes gives to its nominative the same form as that of the possessive

case, it not being always spaced off for distinction, as it may be; as,

"A \_wit's\_ a feather, and a chief a rod;

An honest \_man's\_ the noblest work of God."

--\_Pope, on Man\_, Ep. iv, l. 247.

OBS. 24.--As the \_objective case of nouns\_ is to be distinguished from the

nominative, only by the sense, relation, and position, of words in a

sentence, the learner must acquire a habit of attending to these several

things. Nor ought it to be a hardship to any reader to understand that

which he thinks worth reading. It is seldom possible to mistake one of

these cases for the other, without a total misconception of the author's

meaning. The nominative denotes the agent, actor, or doer; the person or

thing that is made the subject of an affirmation, negation, question, or

supposition: its place, except in a question, is commonly \_before\_ the

verb. The objective, when governed by a verb or a participle, denotes the

person on whom, or the thing on which, the action falls and terminates: it

is commonly placed \_after\_ the verb, participle, or preposition, which

governs it. Nouns, then, by changing places, may change cases: as,

"\_Jonathan\_ loved \_David\_;" "\_David\_ loved \_Jonathan\_." Yet the case

depends not entirely upon position; for any order in which the words cannot

be misunderstood, is allowable: as, "Such tricks hath strong

imagination."--\_Shak.\_ Here the cases are known, because the meaning is

plainly this: "Strong imagination hath such tricks." "To him give all the

prophets witness."--\_Acts\_, x, 43. This is intelligible enough, and more

forcible than the same meaning expressed thus: "All the prophets give

witness to him." The \_order\_ of the words never can affect the explanation

to be given of them in parsing, unless it change the sense, and form them

into a different sentence.

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

The declension of a noun is a regular arrangement of its numbers and cases.

Thus:--

EXAMPLE I.--FRIEND.

Sing. Nom. friend, Plur. Nom. friends,

Poss. friend's, Poss. friends',

Obj. friend; Obj. friends.

EXAMPLE II.--MAN.

Sing. Nom. man, Plur. Nom. men,

Poss. man's, Poss. men's,

Obj. man; Obj. men.

EXAMPLE III.--FOX.

Sing. Nom. fox, Plur. Nom. foxes,

Poss. fox's, Poss. foxes',

Obj. fox; Obj. foxes.

EXAMPLE IV.--FLY.

Sing. Nom. fly, Plur. Nom. flies,

Poss. fly's, Poss. flies',

Obj. fly; Obj. flies.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS III.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Third Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the ARTICLES and NOUNS.

The definitions to be given in the Third Praxis, are two for an article,

six for a noun, and one for an adjective, a pronoun, a verb, a participle,

an adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The writings of Hannah More appear to me more praiseworthy than Scott's."

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Writings\_ is a common noun, of the third person, plural number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The plural number is

that which denotes more than one. 5. The neuter gender is that which

denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is

that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject

of a finite verb.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Hannah More\_ is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number,

feminine gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person,

place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A proper noun is the

name of some particular individual, or people, or group. 3. The third

person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The

singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The feminine gender is

that which denotes persons or animals of the female kind. 6. The objective

case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the

object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

\_Appear\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or

\_to be acted upon\_.

\_To\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Me\_ is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

\_More\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle,

an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place,

degree, or manner.

\_Praiseworthy\_ is an adjective. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun

or pronoun, and generally expresses quality.

\_Than\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words

or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_Scott's\_ is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine

gender, and possessive case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A proper noun is the name of some

particular individual, or people, or group. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The masculine gender is that which

denotes persons or animals of the male kind. 6. The possessive case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the relation of

property.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"The virtue of Alexander appears to me less vigorous than that of Socrates.

Socrates in Alexander's place I can readily conceive: Alexander in that of

Socrates I cannot. Alexander will tell you, he can subdue the world: it was

a greater work in Socrates to fulfill the duties of life. Worth consists

most, not in great, but in good actions."--\_Kames's Art of Thinking\_, p.

70.

"No one should ever rise to speak in public, without forming to himself a

just and strict idea of what suits his own age and character; what suits

the subject, the hearers, the place, the occasion."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, p.

260.

"In the short space of little more than a century, the Greeks became such

statesmen, warriors, orators, historians, physicians, poets, critics,

painters, sculptors, architects, and, last of all, philosophers, that one

can hardly help considering that golden period, as a providential event in

honour of human nature, to show to what perfection the species might

ascend."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 417.

"Is genius yours? Be yours a glorious end,

Be your king's, country's, truth's, religion's friend."--\_Young\_.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"He that is called in the Lord, being a servant, is the Lord's freeman:

likewise also, he that is called, being free, is Christ's servant."--\_1

Cor.\_, vii, 22.

"What will remain to the Alexanders, and the Cæsars, and the Jenghizes, and

the Louises, and the Charleses, and the Napoleons, with whose 'glories' the

idle voice of fame is filled?"--\_J. Dymond\_. "Good sense, clear ideas,

perspicuity of language, and proper arrangement of words and thoughts, will

always command attention."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 174.

"A mother's tenderness and a father's care are nature's gifts for man's

advantage.--Wisdom's precepts form the good man's interest and

happiness."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 194.

"A dancing-school among the Tuscaroras, is not a greater absurdity than a

masquerade in America. A theatre, under the best regulations, is not

essential to our happiness. It may afford entertainment to individuals; but

it is at the expense of private taste and public morals."--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 86.

"Where dancing sunbeams on the waters played,

And verdant alders form'd a quivering shade."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"I have ever thought that advice to the young, unaccompanied by the routine

of honest employments, is like an attempt to make a shrub grow in a certain

direction, by blowing it with a bellows."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 247.

"The Arabic characters for the writing of numbers, were introduced into

Europe by Pope Sylvester II, in the eleventh century."--\_Constable's

Miscellany\_.

"Emotions raised by inanimate objects, trees, rivers, buildings, pictures,

arrive at perfection almost instantaneously; and they have a long

endurance, a second view producing nearly the same pleasure with the

first."--\_Kames's Elements\_, i, 108.

"There is great variety in the same plant, by the different appearances of

its stem, branches, leaves, blossoms, fruit, size, and colour; and yet,

when we trace that variety through different plants, especially of the same

kind, there is discovered a surprising uniformity."--\_Ib.\_, i, 273.

"Attitude, action, air, pause, start, sigh, groan,

He borrow'd, and made use of as his own."--\_Churchill\_.

"I dread thee, fate, relentless and severe,

With all a poet's, husband's, father's fear!"--\_Burns\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS OF NOUNS.

LESSON I.--NUMBERS.

"All the ablest of the Jewish Rabbis acknowledge it."--\_Wilson's Heb.

Gram.\_, p. 7.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_Rabbi\_ is here made plural by the

addition of \_s\_ only. But, according to Observation 12th on the Numbers,

nouns in \_i\_ ought rather to form the plural in \_ies\_. The capital \_R\_,

too, is not necessary. Therefore, \_Rabbis\_ should be \_rabbies\_, with \_ies\_

and a small \_r\_.]

"Who has thoroughly imbibed the system of one or other of our Christian

rabbis."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 378. "The seeming singularitys of reason

soon wear off."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 47. "The chiefs and arikis or

priests have the power of declaring a place or object taboo."--\_Balbi's

Geog.\_, p. 460. "Among the various tribes of this family, are the

Pottawatomies, the Sacs and Foxes, or Saukis and Ottogamis."--\_Ib.\_, p.

178. "The Shawnees, Kickapoos, Menomonies, Miamis and Delawares, are of the

same region."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178. "The Mohegans and Abenaquis belonged also to

this family."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178. "One tribe of this family, the Winnebagos,

formerly resided near lake Michigan."--\_Ib.\_, p. 179. "The other tribes are

the Ioways, the Otoes, the Missouris, the Quapaws."--\_Ib.\_, p. 179. "The

great Mexican family comprises the Aztecs, Toltecs, and Tarascos."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 179. "The Mulattoes are born of negro and white parents; the Zambos, of

Indians and negroes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 165. "To have a place among the

Alexanders, the Cæsars, the Lewis', or the Charles', the scourges and

butchers of their fellow-creatures."--\_Burgh's Dignity\_, i, 132. "Which was

the notion of the Platonic Philosophers and Jewish rabbii."--\_Ib.\_, p. 248.

"That they should relate to the whole body of virtuosos."--\_Gobbett's E.

Gram.\_, ¶ 212. "What thank have ye? for sinners also love those that love

them."--\_Luke\_, vi, 32. "There are five ranks of nobility; dukes,

marquesses, earls, viscounts, and barons."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 228. "Acts,

which were so well known to the two Charles's."--\_Payne's Geog.\_, ii, 511.

"Court Martials are held in all parts, for the trial of the

blacks."--\_Observer\_, No. 458. "It becomes a common noun, and may have a

plural number; as, the two \_Davids\_; the two \_Scipios\_, the two

\_Pompies\_."--\_Staniford's Gram.\_, p. 8. "The food of the rattlesnake is

birds, squirrels, hare, rats, and reptiles."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 177. "And

let fowl multiply in the earth."--\_Genesis\_, i, 22. "Then we reached the

hill-side where eight buffalo were grazing."--\_Martineau's Amer.\_, i, 202.

"\_Corset, n.\_ a pair of bodice for a woman."--\_Worcester's Dict.\_, 12mo.

"As the \_be's\_; the \_ce's\_, the \_doubleyu's\_."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p.

40. "Simplicity is the means between ostentation and rusticity."--\_Pope's

Pref. to Homer\_. "You have disguised yourselves like tipstaves."--\_Gil

Blas\_, i, 111. "But who, that hath any taste, can endure the incessant

quick returns of the \_also\_'s, and the \_likewise\_'s, and the \_moreover\_'s,

and the \_however\_'s, and the \_notwithstanding\_'s?"--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p.

439.

"Sometimes, in mutual sly disguise,

Let Aye's seem No's, and No's seem Aye's."--\_Gay\_, p. 431.

LESSON II.--CASES.

"For whose name sake, I have been made willing."--\_Wm. Penn\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the noun \_name\_, which is here meant for the

possessive case singular, has not the true form of that case. But,

according to a principle on page 258th, "The possessive case of nouns is

formed, in the singular number, by adding to the nominative \_s preceded by

an apostrophe\_; and, in the plural, when the nominative ends in \_s\_, by

adding \_an apostrophe only\_." Therefore, name should be \_name's\_; thus,

"For whose \_name's\_ sake, I have been made willing."]

"Be governed by your conscience, and never ask anybodies leave to be

honest."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 105. "To overlook nobodies merit or

misbehaviour."--\_Ib.\_, p. 9. "And Hector at last fights his way to the

stern of Ajax' ship."--\_Coleridge's Introd.\_, p. 91. "Nothing is lazier,

than to keep ones eye upon words without heeding their meaning."--

\_Philological Museum\_, i, 645. "Sir William Joneses division of the

day."--\_Ib., Contents\_. "I need only refer here to Vosses excellent account

of it."--\_Ib.\_, i, 465. "The beginning of Stesichoruses palinode has been

preserved."--\_Ib.\_, i, 442. "Though we have Tibulluses elegies, there is

not a word in them about Glycera."--\_Ib.\_, p. 446. "That Horace was at

Thaliarchuses country-house."--\_Ib.\_, i, 451. "That Sisyphuses foot-tub

should have been still in existence."--\_Ib.\_, i, 468. "How every thing went

on in Horace's closet, and in Mecenases antechamber."--\_Ib.\_, i, 458. "Who,

for elegant brevities sake, put a participle for a verb."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 42. "The countries liberty being oppressed, we have no more

to hope."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73. "A brief but true account of this peoples'

principles."--\_Barclay's Pref.\_ "As, the Churche's Peace, or the Peace of

the Church; Virgil's Eneid, or the Eneid of Virgil"--\_British Gram.\_, p.

93. "As, Virgil's Æneid, for the Æneid of Virgil; the Church'es Peace, for

the Peace of the Church."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 18. "Which, with

Hubner's Compend, and Wells' Geographia Classica, will be sufficient."--

\_Burgh's Dignity\_, i, 155. "Witness Homer's speaking horses, scolding

goddesses, and Jupiter enchanted with Venus' girdle."--\_Ib.\_, i, 184. "Dr.

Watts' Logic may with success be read and commented on to them."--\_Ib.\_, p.

156. "Potter's Greek, and Kennet's Roman Antiquities, Strauchius' and

Helvicus' Chronology."--\_Ib.\_, p. 161. "\_Sing\_. Alice' friends, Felix'

property; \_Plur.\_ The Alices' friends, The Felixes' property."--\_O. B.

Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 46. "Such as Bacchus'es company,"--"at Bacchus'es

festivals."--\_Ainsworth's Dict., w. Thyrsus.\_ "Burn's inimitable \_Tam

o'Shanter\_ turns entirely upon such a circumstance."--\_Scott's Lay, Notes\_,

p. 201. "Nominative, Men. Genitive, Mens. Objective, Men."--\_Cutler's

Gram.\_, p. 20. "Mens Happiness or Misery is most part of their own

making."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 1. "That your Sons Cloths be never made

strait, especially about the Breast."--\_Ib.\_, p. 15. "Childrens Minds are

narrow and weak."--\_Ib.\_, p. 297. "I would not have little Children much

tormented about Punctilio's, or Niceties of Breeding."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90. "To

fill his Head with suitable Idea's."--\_Ib.\_, p. 113. "The Burgusdiscius's

and the Scheiblers did not swarm in those Days, as they do now."--\_Ib.\_, p.

163. "To see the various ways of dressing--a calve's head!"--\_Shenstone\_,

Brit. Poets, Vol. vii, p. 143.

"He puts it on, and for decorum sake

Can wear it e'en as gracefully as she."--\_Cowper's Task\_.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"Simon the witch was of this religion too."--\_Bunyan's P. P.\_, p. 123.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the feminine name \_witch\_ is here applied to

a man. But, according to the doctrine of genders, on page 254th, "Names of

males are masculine; names of females, feminine;" &c. Therefore, \_witch\_

should be \_wizard\_; thus, "Simon the \_wizard\_," &c.]

"Mammodis, n. Coarse, plain India muslins."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Go on from

single persons to families, that of the Pompeyes for instance."--\_Collier's

Antoninus\_, p. 142. "By which the ancients were not able to account for

phænomenas."--\_Bailey's Ovid\_, p. vi. "After this I married a wife who had

lived at Crete, but a Jew by birth."--\_Josephus's Life\_, p. 194. "The very

heathen are inexcusable for not worshipping him."--\_Student's Manual\_, p.

328. "Such poems as Camoen's Lusiad, Voltaire's Henriade, &c."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 422. "My learned correspondent writes a word in defence of large

scarves."--SPECT.: in \_Joh. Dict.\_ "The forerunners of an apoplexy are

dulness, vertigos, tremblings."--ARBUTHNOT: \_ib.\_ "\_Vertigo\_ changes the

\_o\_ into \_~in=es\_, making the plural \_vertig~in=es\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_,

p. 59. "\_Noctambulo\_ changes the \_o\_ into \_=on=es\_, making the plural

\_noctambul=on=es\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59. "What shall we say of

noctambulos?"--ARBUTHNOT: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "In the curious fretwork of rocks

and grottos."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 220. "\_Wharf\_ makes the plural

\_wharves\_."--\_Smith's Gram.\_, p. 45; \_Merchant's\_, 29; \_Picket's\_, 21;

\_Frost's\_, 8. "A few cent's worth of maccaroni supplies all their

wants."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 275. "C sounds hard, like \_k\_, at the end of a

word or syllables."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 4. "By which the virtuosi try The

magnitude of every lie."--\_Hudibras\_. "Quartos, octavos, shape the

lessening pyre."--\_Pope's Dunciad\_, B. i, l. 162. "Perching within square

royal rooves."--SIDNEY: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "Similies should, even in poetry,

be used with moderation."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 166. "Similies should never

be taken from low or mean objects."--\_Ib.\_, p. 167. "It were certainly

better to say, 'The house of lords,' than 'the Lord's house.'"--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 177. "Read your answers. Unit figure? 'Five.' Ten's? 'Six.'

Hundreds? 'Seven.'"--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 79. "Alexander conquered

Darius' army."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 58. "Three days time was requisite,

to prepare matters."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 156. "So we say that Ciceros

stile and Sallusts, were not one, nor Cesars and Livies, nor Homers and

Hesiodus, nor Herodotus and Theucidides, nor Euripides and Aristophanes,

nor Erasmus and Budeus stiles."--\_Puttenham's Arte of English Poesie\_, iii,

5. "\_Lex\_ (i.e. \_legs\_) is no other than our ancestors past participle

\_læg, laid down\_."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, ii, 7. "Achaia's sons at Ilium

slain for the Atridæ' sake."--\_Cowper's Iliad\_. "The corpse[167] of half

her senate manure the fields of Thessaly."--\_Addison's Cato\_.

"Poisoning, without regard of fame or fear:

And spotted corpse are frequent on the bier."--\_Dryden\_.

CHAPTER IV.--ADJECTIVES.

An Adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses

quality: as, A \_wise\_ man; a \_new\_ book. You \_two\_ are \_diligent\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Adjectives have been otherwise called attributes, attributives,

qualities, adnouns; but none of these names is any better than the common

one. Some writers have classed adjectives with verbs; because, with a

neuter verb for the copula, they often form logical predicates: as, "Vices

\_are contagious\_." The Latin grammarians usually class them with nouns;

consequently their nouns are divided into nouns substantive and nouns

adjective. With us, substantives are nouns; and adjectives form a part of

speech by themselves. This is generally acknowledged to be a much better

distribution. Adjectives cannot with propriety be called \_nouns\_, in any

language; because they are not \_the names\_ of the qualities which they

signify. They must be \_added\_ to nouns or pronouns in order to make sense.

But if, in a just distribution of words, the term "\_adjective nouns\_" is

needless and improper, the term "\_adjective pronouns\_" is, certainly, not

less so: most of the words which Murray and others call by this name, are

not pronouns, but adjectives.

OBS. 2.--The noun, or substantive, is a \_name\_, which makes sense of

itself. The adjective is an adjunct to the noun or pronoun. It is a word

added to denote quality, situation, quantity, number, form, tendency, or

whatever else may characterize and distinguish the thing or things spoken

of. Adjectives, therefore, are distinguished \_from\_ nouns by their

\_relation to\_ them; a relation corresponding to that which qualities bear

to things: so that no part of speech is more easily discriminated than the

adjective. Again: English adjectives, as such, are all indeclinable. When,

therefore, any words usually belonging to this class, are found to take

either the plural or the possessive form, like substantive nouns, they are

to be parsed as nouns. To abbreviate expression, we not unfrequently, in

this manner, convert adjectives into nouns. Thus, in grammar, we often

speak of \_nominatives, possessives\_, or \_objectives\_, meaning nouns or

pronouns of the nominative, the possessive, or the objective case; of

\_positives, comparatives\_, or \_superlatives\_, meaning adjectives of the

positive, the comparative, or the superlative degree; of \_infinitives,

subjunctives\_, or \_imperatives\_, meaning verbs of the infinitive, the

subjunctive, or the imperative mood; and of \_singulars, plurals\_, and many

other such things, in the same way. So a man's \_superiors\_ or \_inferiors\_

are persons superior or inferior to himself. His \_betters\_ are persons

better than he. \_Others\_ are any persons or things distinguished from some

that are named or referred to; as, "If you want enemies, excel \_others\_; if

you want friends, let \_others\_ excel you."--\_Lacon\_. All adjectives thus

taken substantively, become \_nouns\_, and ought to be parsed as such, unless

this word \_others\_ is to be made an exception, and called a "\_pronoun\_."

"Th' event is fear'd; should we again provoke

Our \_stronger\_, some worse way his wrath may find."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. ii, l. 82.

OBS. 3.--Murray says, "Perhaps the words \_former\_ and \_latter\_ may be

properly ranked amongst the demonstrative pronouns, \_especially in many of

their applications\_. The following sentence may serve as an example: 'It

was happy for the state, that Fabius continued in the command with

Minutius: the \_former's\_ phlegm was a check upon the \_latter's\_

vivacity.'"--\_Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 57. This I take to be bad English. \_Former\_

and \_latter\_ ought to be adjectives only; except when \_former\_ means

\_maker\_. And, if not so, it is too easy a way of multiplying pronouns, to

manufacture two out of one single anonymous sentence. If it were said, "The

deliberation of \_the former\_ was a seasonable chock upon the fiery temper

of \_the latter\_" the words \_former\_ and \_latter\_ would seem to me not to be

pronouns, but adjectives, each relating to the noun \_commander\_ understood

after it.

OBS. 4.--The sense and relation of words in sentences, as well as their

particular form and meaning, must be considered in parsing, before the

learner can say, with certainty, to what class they belong. Other parts of

speech, and especially nouns and participles, by a change in their

construction, may become adjectives. Thus, to denote the material of which

a thing is formed, we very commonly make the name of the substantive an

adjective to that of the thing: as, A \_gold chain\_, a \_silver spoon\_, a

\_glass pitcher\_, a \_tin basin\_, an \_oak plank\_, a \_basswood slab\_, a

\_whalebone rod\_. This construction is in general correct, whenever the

former word may be predicated of the latter; as, "The chain is gold."--"The

spoon is silver." But we do not write \_gold beater\_ for \_goldbeater\_, or

\_silver smith\_ for \_silversmith\_; because the beater is not gold, nor is

the smith silver. This principle, however, is not universally observed; for

we write \_snowball, whitewash\_, and many similar compounds, though the ball

is snow and the wash is white; and \_linseed oil\_, or \_Newark cider\_, may be

a good phrase, though the former word cannot well be predicated of the

latter. So in the following examples: "Let these \_conversation\_ tones be

the foundation of public pronunciation."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 334. "A

\_muslin\_ flounce, made very full, would give a very agreeable \_flirtation\_

air."--POPE: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 79.

"Come, calm Content, serene and sweet,

O gently guide my \_pilgrim\_ feet

To find thy \_hermit\_ cell."--\_Barbauld\_.

OBS. 5.--Murray says, "Various nouns placed before other nouns assume the

nature of adjectives: as, sea fish, wine vessel, corn field, meadow ground,

&c."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 48. This is, certainly, very lame instruction. If

there is not palpable error in all his examples, the propriety of them all

is at least questionable; and, to adopt and follow out their principle,

would be, to tear apart some thousands of our most familiar compounds.

"\_Meadow ground\_" may perhaps be a correct phrase, since the ground is

meadow; it seems therefore preferable to the compound word meadow-ground.

What he meant by "\_wine vessel\_" is doubtful: that is, whether a ship or a

cask, a flagon or a decanter. If we turn to our dictionaries, Webster has

\_sea-fish\_ and \_wine-cask\_ with a hyphen, and \_cornfield\_ without; while

Johnson and others have \_corn-field\_ with a hyphen, and \_seafish\_ without.

According to the rules for the figure of words, we ought to write them

\_seafish, winecask, cornfield\_. What then becomes of the thousands of

"adjectives" embraced in the "&c." quoted above?

OBS. 6.--The pronouns \_he\_ and \_she\_, when placed before or prefixed to

nouns merely to denote their gender, appear to be used adjectively; as,

"The male or \_he\_ animals offered in sacrifice."--\_Wood's Dict., w. Males\_.

"The most usual term is \_he\_ or \_she, male\_ or \_female\_, employed as an

adjective: as, a \_he bear\_, a \_she bear\_; a \_male elephant\_, a \_female

elephant\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 69. Most writers, however, think

proper to insert a hyphen in the terms here referred to: as, \_he-bear,

she-bear\_, the plurals of which are \_he-bears\_ and \_she-bears\_. And,

judging by the foregoing rule of predication, we must assume that this

practice only is right. In the first example, the word \_he\_ is useless; for

the term "\_male animals\_" is sufficiently clear without it. It has been

shown in the third chapter, that \_he\_ and \_she\_ are sometimes used as

nouns; and that, as such, they may take the regular declension of nouns,

making the plurals \_hes\_ and \_shes\_. But whenever these words are used

adjectively to denote gender, whether we choose to insert the hyphen or

not, they are, without question, indeclinable, like other adjectives. In

the following example, Sanborn will have \_he\_ to be a noun in the

\_objective\_ case; but I consider it rather, to be an adjective, signifying

\_masculine\_:

"(\_Philosophy\_, I say, and call \_it He\_;

For, whatsoe'er the painter's fancy be,

It a male-virtue seems to me.")--\_Cowley\_, Brit. Poets, Vol. ii, p. 54.

OBS. 7.--Though verbs give rise to many adjectives, they seldom, if ever,

become such by a mere change of construction. It is mostly by assuming an

additional termination, that any verb is formed into an adjective: as in

\_teachable, moveable, oppressive, diffusive, prohibitory\_. There are,

however, about forty words ending in \_ate\_, which, without difference of

form, are either verbs or adjectives; as, \_aggregate, animate, appropriate,

articulate, aspirate, associate, complicate, confederate, consummate,

deliberate, desolate, effeminate, elate, incarnate, intimate, legitimate,

moderate, ordinate, precipitate, prostrate, regenerate, reprobate,

separate, sophisticate, subordinate\_. This class of adjectives seems to be

lessening. The participials in \_ed\_, are superseding some of them, at least

in popular practice: as, \_contaminated\_, for \_contaminate\_, defiled;

\_reiterated\_, for \_reiterate\_, repeated; \_situated\_, for \_situate\_, placed;

\_attenuated\_, for \_attenuate\_, made thin or slender. \_Devote, exhaust\_, and

some other verbal forms, are occasionally used by the poets, in lieu of the

participial forms, \_devoted, exhausted\_, &c.

OBS. 8.--Participles, which have naturally much resemblance to this part

of speech, often drop their distinctive character, and become adjectives.

This is usually the case whenever they stand immediately \_before\_ the nouns

to which they relate; as, A \_pleasing\_ countenance, a \_piercing\_ eye, an

\_accomplished\_ scholar, an \_exalted\_ station. Many participial adjectives

are derivatives formed from participles by the negative prefix \_un\_, which

reverses the meaning of the primitive word; as, \_undisturbed, undivided,

unenlightened\_. Most words of this kind differ of course from participles,

because there are no such verbs as \_to undisturb, to undivide\_, &c. Yet

they may be called participial adjectives, because they have the

termination, and embrace the form, of participles. Nor should any

participial adjective be needlessly varied from the true orthography of the

participle: a distinction is, however, observed by some writers, between

\_past\_ and \_passed, staid\_ and \_stayed\_; and some old words, as \_drunken,

stricken, shotten, rotten\_, now obsolete as participles, are still retained

as adjectives. This sort of words will be further noticed in the chapter on

participles.

OBS. 9.--Adverbs are generally distinguished from adjectives, by the form,

as well as by the construction, of the words. Yet, in instances not a few,

the same word is capable of being used both adjectively and adverbially. In

these cases, the scholar must determine the part of speech, by the

construction alone; remembering that adjectives belong to nouns or pronouns

only; and adverbs, to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs,

only. The following examples from Scripture, will partially illustrate this

point, which will be noticed again under the head of syntax: "Is your

father well?"--\_Gen.\_, xliii, 27. "Thou hast well said."--\_John\_, iv, 17.

"He separateth very friends."--\_Prov.\_, xvii, 9. "Esaias is \_very\_

bold."--\_Rom.\_, x, 20. "For a pretence, ye make \_long\_ prayer."--\_Matt.\_,

xxiii, 14. "They that tarry \_long\_ at the wine."--\_Prov.\_, xxiii, 30. "It

had not \_much\_ earth."--\_Mark\_, iv, 5. "For she loved \_much\_."--\_Luke\_,

vii, 47.

OBS. 10.--Prepositions, in regard to their \_construction\_, differ from

adjectives, almost exactly as active-transitive participles differ

syntactically from adjectives: that is, in stead of being mere adjuncts to

the words which follow them, they govern those words, and refer back to

some other term; which, in the usual order of speech, stands before them.

Thus, if I say, "A spreading oak," \_spreading\_ is an adjective relating to

oak; if, "A boy spreading hay," \_spreading\_ is a participle, governing

\_hay\_, and relating to \_boy\_, because the boy is the agent of the action.

So, when Dr. Webster says, "The \_off\_ horse in a team," \_off\_ is an

adjective, relating to the noun \_horse\_; but, in the phrase, "A man \_off\_

his guard," \_off\_ is a preposition, showing the relation between \_man\_ and

\_guard\_, and governing the latter. The following are other examples: "From

the \_above\_ speculations."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 194. "An \_after\_ period

of life."--MARSHALL: \_in Web. Dict.\_ "With some other of the \_after\_

Judaical rites."--\_Right of Tythes\_, p. 86. "Whom this \_beneath\_ world doth

embrace and hug."--\_Shak.\_ "Especially is \_over\_ exertion made."--\_Journal

of Lit. Conv.\_, p. 119. "To both the \_under\_ worlds."--\_Hudibras\_. "Please

to pay to A. B. the amount of the \_within\_ bill." Whether properly used or

not, the words \_above, after, beneath, over, under, and within\_, are here

unquestionably made \_adjectives\_; yet every scholar knows, that they are

generally prepositions, though sometimes adverbs.

CLASSES.

Adjectives may be divided into six classes; namely, \_common, proper,

numeral, pronominal, participial\_, and \_compound\_.

I. A \_common adjective\_ is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting

quality or situation; as, \_Good, bad, peaceful, warlike--eastern, western,

outer, inner\_.

II. A \_proper adjective\_ is an adjective formed from a proper name; as,

\_American, English, Platonic, Genoese\_.

III. A \_numeral adjective\_ is an adjective that expresses a definite

number; as, \_One, two, three, four, five, six\_, &c.

IV. A \_pronominal adjective\_ is a definitive word which may either

accompany its noun, or represent it understood; as, "\_All\_ join to guard

what \_each\_ desires to gain."--\_Pope\_. That is, "\_All men\_ join to guard

what \_each man\_ desires to gain."

V. A \_participial adjective\_ is one that has the form of a participle, but

differs from it by rejecting the idea of time; as, "An \_amusing\_

story,"--"A \_lying\_ divination."

VI. A \_compound adjective\_ is one that consists of two or more words joined

together, either by the hyphen or solidly: as, \_Nut-brown, laughter-loving,

four-footed; threefold, lordlike, lovesick\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--This distribution of the adjectives is no less easy to be applied,

than necessary to a proper explanation in parsing. How many adjectives

there are in the language, it is difficult to say; none of our

dictionaries profess to exhibit all that are embraced in some of the

foregoing classes. Of the Common Adjectives, there are probably not fewer

than six thousand, exclusive of the common nouns which we refer to this

class when they are used adjectively. Walker's Rhyming Dictionary contains

five thousand or more, the greater part of which may be readily

distinguished by their peculiar endings. Of those which end in \_ous\_, as

\_generous\_, there are about 850. Of those in \_y\_ or \_ly\_, as \_shaggy,

homely\_, there are about 550. Of those in \_ive\_, as \_deceptive\_, there are

about 400. Of those in \_al\_, as \_autumnal\_, there are about 550. Of those

in \_ical\_, as \_mechanical\_, there are about 350. Of those in \_able\_, as

\_valuable\_, there are about 600. Of those in \_ible\_, as \_credible\_, there

are about 200. Of those in \_ent\_, as \_different\_, there are about 300. Of

those in \_ant\_, as \_abundant\_, there are about 170. Of those in \_less\_, as

\_ceaseless\_, there are about 220. Of those in \_ful\_, as \_useful\_, there are

about 130. Of those in \_ory\_, as \_explanatory\_, there are about 200. Of

those in \_ish\_, as \_childish\_, there are about 100. Of those in \_ine\_, as

\_masculine\_, there are about 70. Of those in \_en\_, as \_wooden\_, there are

about 50. Of those in \_some\_, as \_quarrelsome\_, there are about 30. These

sixteen numbers added together, make 4770.

OBS. 2.--The Proper Adjectives are, in many instances, capable of being

converted into declinable nouns: as, \_European, a European, the Europeans;

Greek, a Greek, the Greeks; Asiatic, an Asiatic, the Asiatics\_. But with

the words \_English, French, Dutch, Scotch, Welsh, Irish\_, and in general

all such as would acquire an additional syllable in their declension, the

case is otherwise. The gentile noun has frequently fewer syllables than the

adjective, but seldom more, unless derived from some different root.

Examples: \_Arabic, an Arab, the Arabs; Gallic, a Gaul, the Gauls; Danish, a

Dane, the Danes; Moorish, a Moor, the Moors; Polish, a Pole\_, or \_Polander,

the Poles; Swedish, a Swede, the Swedes; Turkish, a Turk, the Turks\_. When

we say, \_the English, the French, the Dutch, the Scotch, the Welsh, the

Irish\_,--meaning, \_the English people, the French people\_, &c., many

grammarians conceive that \_English, French\_, &c., are \_indeclinable nouns\_.

But in my opinion, it is better to reckon them \_adjectives\_, relating to

the noun \_men\_ or \_people\_ understood. For if these words are nouns, so are

a thousand others, after which there is the same ellipsis; as when we say,

\_the good, the great, the wise, the learned\_.[168] The principle would

involve the inconvenience of multiplying our nouns of the singular form and

a plural meaning, indefinitely. If they are nouns, they are, in this sense,

plural only; and, in an other, they are singular only. For we can no more

say, \_an English, an Irish\_, or \_a French\_, for \_an Englishman, an

Irishman\_, or \_a Frenchman\_; than we can say, \_an old, a selfish\_, or \_a

rich\_, for \_an old man, a selfish man\_, or \_a rich man\_. Yet, in

distinguishing the \_languages\_, we call them \_English, French, Dutch,

Scotch, Welsh, Irish\_; using the words, certainly, in no plural sense; and

preferring always the line of adjectives, where the gentile noun is

different: as, \_Arabic\_, and not \_Arab\_; \_Danish\_, and not \_Dane\_;

\_Swedish\_, and not \_Swede\_. In this sense, as well as in the former,

Webster, Chalmers, and other modern lexicographers, call the words \_nouns\_;

and the reader will perceive, that the objections offered before do not

apply here. But Johnson, in his two quarto volumes, gives only two words of

this sort, \_English\_ and \_Latin\_; and both of these he calls \_adjectives\_:

"ENGLISH, \_adj.\_ Belonging to England; hence English[169] is the language

of England." The word \_Latin\_, however, he makes a noun, when it means a

schoolboy's exercise; for which usage he quotes, the following inaccurate

example from Ascham: "He shall not use the common order in schools for

making of \_Latins\_."

OBS. 3.--Dr. Webster gives us explanations like these: "CHINESE, \_n. sing.\_

and \_plu.\_ A native of China; also the language of China."--"JAPANESE, \_n.\_

A native of Japan; or the language of the inhabitants."--"GENOESE, \_n. pl.\_

the people of Genoa in Italy. \_Addison\_."--"DANISH, \_n.\_ The language of

the Danes."--"IRISH, \_n.\_ 1. A native of Ireland. 2. The language of the

Irish; the Hiberno-Celtic." According to him, then, it is proper to say, \_a

Chinese, a Japanese\_, or \_an Irish\_; but not, \_a Genoese\_, because he will

have this word to be plural only! Again, if with him we call a native of

Ireland \_an Irish\_, will not more than one be \_Irishes?\_[170] If a native

of Japan be \_a Japanese\_, will not more than one be \_Japaneses?\_ In short,

is it not plain, that the words, \_Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese, Maltese,

Genoese, Milanese\_, and all others of like formation, should follow one and

the same rule? And if so, what is that rule? Is it not this;--that, like

\_English, French\_, &c., they are always \_adjectives\_; except, perhaps, when

they denote \_languages\_? There may possibly be some real authority from

usage, for calling a native of China \_a Chinese\_,--of Japan \_a

Japanese\_,--&c.; as there is also for the regular plurals, \_Chineses,

Japaneses\_, &c.; but is it, in either case, good and sufficient authority?

The like forms, it is acknowledged, are, on some occasions, mere

adjectives; and, in modern usage, we do not find these words inflected, as

they were formerly. Examples: "The \_Chinese\_ are by no means a cleanly

people, either in person or dress."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 415. "The

\_Japanese\_ excel in working in copper, iron, and steel."--\_Ib.\_, p. 419.

"The \_Portuguese\_ are of the same origin with the Spaniards."--\_Ib.\_, p.

272. "By whom the undaunted \_Tyrolese\_ are led."--\_Wordsworth's Poems\_, p.

122. Again: "Amongst the \_Portugueses\_, 'tis so much a Fashion, and

Emulation, amongst their Children, to \_learn\_ to \_Read\_, and Write, that

they cannot hinder them from it."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 271. "The

\_Malteses\_ do so, who harden the Bodies of their Children, and reconcile

them to the Heat, by making them go stark Naked."--\_Idem, Edition of\_ 1669,

p. 5. "CHINESE, \_n. s\_. Used elliptically for the language and people of

China: plural, \_Chineses. Sir T. Herbert\_."--\_Abridgement of Todd's

Johnson\_. This is certainly absurd. For if \_Chinese\_ is used \_elliptically\_

for the people of China, it is an \_adjective\_, and does not form the

plural, \_Chineses\_: which is precisely what I urge concerning the whole

class. These plural forms ought not to be imitated. Horne Tooke quotes some

friend of his, as saying, "No, I will never descend with him beneath even

\_a Japanese\_: and I remember what Voltaire remarks of \_that

country\_."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, i, 187. In this case, he ought,

unquestionably, to have said--"beneath even \_a native of Japan\_;" because,

whether \_Japanese\_ be a noun or not, it is absurd to call \_a Japanese\_,

"\_that country\_." Butler, in his Hudibras, somewhere uses the word

\_Chineses\_; and it was, perhaps, in his day, common; but still, I say, it

is contrary to analogy, and therefore wrong. Milton, too, has it:

"But in his way lights on the barren plains

Of Sericana, where Chineses[171] drive

With sails and wind their cany \_waggons\_ light."

--\_Paradise Lost\_, B. iii, l. 437.

OBS. 4.--The Numeral Adjectives are of three kinds, namely, \_cardinal,

ordinal\_, and \_multiplicative\_: each kind running on in a series

indefinitely. Thus:--

1. \_Cardinal\_; One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten,

eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen,

nineteen, twenty, twenty-one, twenty-two, &c.

2. \_Ordinal\_; First, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth,

ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth,

sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first,

twenty-second, &c.

3. \_Multiplicative\_; Single or alone, double or twofold, triple or

threefold, quadruple or fourfold, quintuple or fivefold, sextuple or

sixfold, septuple or sevenfold, octuple or eightfold, &c. But high terms of

this series are seldom used. All that occur above decuple or tenfold, are

written with a hyphen, and are usually of round numbers only; as,

thirty-fold, sixty-fold, hundred-fold.

OBS. 5.--A cardinal numeral denotes the whole number, but the corresponding

ordinal denotes only the last one of that number, or, at the beginning of a

series, the first of several or many. Thus: "\_One\_ denotes simply the

number \_one\_, without any regard to more; but \_first\_ has respect to more,

and so denotes only the first one of a greater number; and \_two\_ means the

number \_two\_ completely; but \_second\_, the last one of \_two\_: and so of all

the rest."--\_Burn's Gram.\_, p. 54. A cardinal number answers to the

question, "\_How many\_?" An ordinal number answers to the question, "\_Which

one\_?" or, "\_What one\_?" All the ordinal numbers, except \_first, second,

third\_, and the compounds of these, as \_twenty-first, twenty-second,

twenty-third\_, are formed directly from the cardinal numbers by means of

the termination \_th\_. And as the primitives, in this case, are many of them

either compound words, or phrases consisting of several words, it is to be

observed, that the addition is made to the last term only. That is, of

every compound ordinal number, the last term only is ordinal in form. Thus

we say, \_forty-ninth\_, and not \_fortieth-ninth\_; nor could the meaning of

the phrase, \_four hundred and fiftieth\_, be expressed by saying, \_fourth

hundredth and fiftieth\_; for this, if it means any thing, speaks of three

different numbers.

OBS. 6.--Some of the numerals are often used as \_nouns\_; and, as such, are

regularly declined: as, \_Ones, twoes, threes, fours, fives\_, &c. So,

\_Fifths, sixths, sevenths, eighths, ninths, tenths\_, &c. "The \_seventy's\_

translation."--\_Wilson's Hebrew Gram.\_, p. 32. "I will not do it for

\_forty's\_ sake."--\_Gen.\_, xviii, 29. "I will not destroy it for \_twenty's\_

sake."--\_Ib.\_, ver. 31. "For \_ten's\_ sake."--\_Ib.\_, ver. 32. "They sat down

in ranks, by \_hundreds\_, and by \_fifties\_."--\_Mark\_, vi, 40. "There are

\_millions\_ of truths that a man is not concerned to know."--\_Locke\_. With

the compound numerals, such a construction is less common; yet the

denominator of a fraction may be a number of this sort: as, seven

\_twenty-fifths\_. And here it may be observed, that, in stead of the ancient

phraseology, as in 1 Chron., xxiv, 17th, "The \_one and twentieth\_ to

Jachin, the \_two and twentieth\_ to Gamul, the \_three and twentieth\_ to

Delaiah, the \_four and twentieth\_ to Maaziah," we now generally say, \_the

twenty-first, the twenty-second\_, &c.; using the hyphen in all compounds

till we arrive at \_one hundred\_, or \_one hundredth\_, and then first

introducing the word \_and\_; as, \_one hundred and one\_, or \_one hundred and

first\_, &c.

OBS. 7.--The Pronominal Adjectives are comparatively very few; but

frequency of use gives them great importance in grammar. The following

words are perhaps all that properly belong to this class, and several of

these are much oftener something else: \_All, any, both, certain, divers,

each, either, else, enough, every, few, fewer, fewest, former, first,

latter, last, little, less, least, many, more, most, much, neither, no\_ or

\_none, one, other, own, only, same, several, some, such, sundry, that,

this, these, those, what, whatever, whatsoever, which, whichever,

whichsoever\_.[172] Of these forty-six words, seven are always singular, if

the word \_one\_ is not an exception; namely, \_each, either, every, neither,

one, that, this\_: and nine or ten others are always plural, if the word

\_many\_ is not an exception; namely, \_both, divers, few, fewer, fewest,

many, several, sundry, these, those\_. All the rest, like our common

adjectives, are applicable to nouns of either number. \_Else, every, only,

no\_, and \_none\_, are definitive words, which I have thought proper to call

pronominal adjectives, though only the last can now with propriety be made

to represent its noun understood. "Nor has Vossius, or \_any else\_ that I

know of, observed it."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 279. Say, "or any \_one\_

else." Dr. Webster explains this word \_else\_ thus: "ELSE, \_a.\_ or \_pron.\_

[Sax. \_elles\_] Other; one or something \_beside\_; as, Who \_else\_ is

coming?"--\_Octavo Dict.\_ "Each and \_every\_ of them," is an old phrase in

which \_every\_ is used pronominally, or with ellipsis of the word to which

it refers; but, in common discourse, we now say, \_every one, every man\_,

&c., never using the word \_every\_ alone to suggest its noun. \_Only\_ is

perhaps most commonly an adverb; but it is still in frequent use as an

adjective; and in old books we sometimes find an ellipsis of the noun to

which it belongs; as, "Neither are they the \_only\_ [verbs] in which it is

read."--\_Johnson's Grammatical Commentaries\_, p. 373. "But I think he is

the \_only\_ [one] of these Authors."--\_Ib.\_, p. 193. \_No\_ and \_none\_ seem to

be only different forms of the same adjective; the former being used before

a noun expressed, and the latter when the noun is understood, or not placed

after the adjective; as, "For \_none\_ of us liveth to himself, and \_no\_ man

dieth to himself."--\_Romans\_, xiv, 7. \_None\_ was anciently used for \_no\_

before all words beginning with a vowel sound; as, "They are sottish

children; and they have \_none\_ understanding."--\_Jeremiah\_, iv, 22. This

practice is now obsolete. \_None\_ is still used, when its noun precedes it;

as,

"Fools! who from hence into the notion fall,

That \_vice\_ or \_virtue\_ there is \_none\_ at all."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 8.--Of the words given in the foregoing list as pronominal adjectives,

about one third are sometimes used \_adverbially\_. They are the following:

\_All\_, when it means \_totally; any\_, for \_in any degree; else\_, meaning

\_otherwise; enough\_, signifying \_sufficiently; first\_, for \_in the first

place; last\_, for \_in the last place; little\_, for \_in a small degree;

less\_, for \_in a smaller degree; least\_, for \_in the smallest degree;

much\_, for \_in a great degree; more\_, for \_in a greater degree; most\_, for

\_in the greatest degree; no\_, or \_none\_, for \_in no degree; only\_, for

\_singly, merely, barely; what\_, for \_in what degree\_, or \_in how great a

degree\_.[173] To these may perhaps be added the word \_other\_, when used as

an alternative to \_somehow\_; as, "\_Somehow\_ or \_other\_ he will be

favoured."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 89. Here \_other\_ seems to be put for

\_otherwise\_; and yet the latter word would not be agreeable in such a

sentence. "\_Somewhere or other\_," is a kindred phrase equally common, and

equally good; or, rather, equally irregular and puzzling. Would it not be

better, always to avoid both, by saying, in their stead, "\_In some way or

other\_,"--"\_In someplace or other?\_" In the following examples, however,

\_other\_ seems to be used for \_otherwise\_, without such a connection: "How

is THAT used, \_other\_ than as a Conjunction?"--\_Ainsworth's Gram.\_, p. 88.

"Will it not be receiv'd that they have done 't?

--Who dares receive it \_other?\_"--SHAK.: \_Joh. Dict., w. Other\_.

OBS. 9.--\_All\_ and \_enough, little\_ and \_much, more\_ and \_less\_, sometimes

suggest the idea of quantity so abstractly, that we can hardly consider

them as adjuncts to any other words; for which reason, they are, in this

absolute sense, put down in our dictionaries as \_nouns\_. If nouns, however,

they are never inflected by cases or numbers; nor do they in general admit

the usual adjuncts or definitives of nouns.[174] Thus, we can neither say,

\_the all\_, for \_the whole\_, nor \_an enough\_, for \_a sufficiency\_. And

though \_a little, the more\_, and \_the less\_, are common phrases, the

article does not here prove the following word to be a noun; because the

expression may either be elliptical, or have the construction of an adverb:

as, "Though \_the more\_ abundantly I love you, \_the less\_ I be loved."--\_2

Cor.\_, xii, 15. Dr. Johnson seems to suppose that the partitive use of

these words makes them nouns; as, "They have \_much of the poetry\_ of

Mecænas, but \_little of his liberality\_."--DRYDEN: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ Upon

this principle, however, adjectives innumerable would be made nouns; for we

can just as well say, "\_Some of the poetry\_,"--"\_Any of the

poetry\_,"--"\_The best of Poetry\_," &c. In all such expressions, the name of

the thing divided, is understood in the partitive word; for a part of any

thing must needs be of the same species as the whole. Nor was this great

grammarian sufficiently attentive to adjuncts, in determining the parts of

speech. \_Nearly all, quite enough, so little, too much, vastly more, rather

less\_, and an abundance of similar phrases, are familiar to every body; in

none of which, can any of these words of quantity, however abstract, be

very properly reckoned nouns; because the preceding word is an adverb, and

adverbs do not relate to any words that are literally nouns. All these may

also be used partitively; as, "\_Nearly all of us\_."

OBS. 10.--The following are some of Dr. Johnson's "\_nouns\_;" which, in

connexion with the foregoing remarks, I would submit to the judgement of

the reader: "'Then shall we be news-crammed.'--'\_All\_ the better; we shall

be the more remarkable.'"--SHAK.: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "\_All\_ the fitter,

Lentulus; our coming is not for salutation; we have business."--BEN JONSON:

\_ib.\_ "'Tis \_enough\_ for me to have endeavoured the union of my

country."--TEMPLE: \_ib.\_ "Ye take too \_much\_ upon you."--NUMBERS: \_ib.\_

"The fate of love is such, that still it sees too \_little\_ or too

\_much\_."--DRYDEN: \_ib.\_ "He thought not \_much\_ to clothe his

enemies."--MILTON: \_ib.\_ "There remained not so \_much\_ as one of

them."--\_Ib., Exod.\_, xiv, 28. "We will cut wood out of Lebanon, as \_much\_

as thou shalt need."--\_Ib.\_, \_2 Chronicles\_. "The matter of the universe

was created before the flood; if any \_more\_ was created, then there must be

as \_much\_ annihilated to make room for it."--BURNET: \_ib.\_ "The Lord do so,

and much \_more\_, to Jonathan."--1 SAMUEL: \_ib.\_ "They that would have

\_more\_ and \_more\_, can never have \_enough\_; no, not if a miracle should

interpose to gratify their avarice."--L'ESTRANGE: \_ib.\_ "They gathered some

\_more\_, some \_less\_."--EXODUS: \_ib.\_ "Thy servant knew nothing of this,

\_less\_ or \_more\_."--1 SAMUEL: \_ib.\_ The first two examples above, Johnson

explains thus: "That is, '\_Every thing is the better\_.'--\_Every thing is

the fitter\_."--\_Quarto Dict.\_ The propriety of this solution may well be

doubted; because the similar phrases, "\_So much\_ the better,"--"\_None\_ the

fitter," would certainly be perverted, if resolved in the same way: \_much\_

and \_none\_ are here, very clearly, adverbs.

OBS. 11.--Whatever disposition may be made of the terms cited above, there

are instances in which some of the same words can hardly be any thing else

than nouns. Thus \_all\_, when it signifies \_the whole\_, or \_every thing\_,

may be reckoned a noun; as, "Our \_all\_ is at stake, and irretrievably lost,

if we fail of success."--\_Addison\_. "A torch, snuff and \_all\_, goes out in

a moment, when dipped in the vapour."--\_Id.\_ "The first blast of wind laid

it flat on the ground; nest, eagles, and \_all\_."--\_L'Estrange\_.

"Finding, the wretched \_all\_ they here can have,

But present food, and but a future grave."--\_Prior\_.

"And will she yet debase her eyes on me;

On me, whose \_all\_ not equals Edward's moiety?"--\_Shak\_.

"Thou shalt be \_all\_ in \_all\_, and I in thee,

Forever; and in me all whom thou lov'st."--\_Milton\_.

OBS. 12.--There are yet some other words, which, by their construction

alone, are to be distinguished from the pronominal adjectives. \_Both\_, when

it stands as a correspondent to \_and\_, is reckoned a conjunction; as, "For

\_both\_ he that sanctifieth, \_and\_ they who are sanctified, are all of

one."--\_Heb.\_, ii, 11. But, in sentences like the following, it seems to be

an adjective, referring to the nouns which precede: "Language and manners

are \_both\_ established by the usage of people of fashion."--\_Amer.

Chesterfield\_, p. 83. So \_either\_, corresponding to \_or\_, and \_neither\_,

referring to \_nor\_, are conjunctions, and not adjectives. \_Which\_ and

\_what\_, with their compounds, \_whichever\_ or \_whichsoever, whatever\_ or

\_whatsoever\_, though sometimes put before nouns as adjectives, are, for the

most part, relative or interrogative pronouns. When the noun is used after

them, they are adjectives; when it is omitted, they are pronouns: as,

"There is a witness of God, \_which witness\_ gives true judgement."--\_I.

Penington\_. Here the word \_witness\_ might be omitted, and \_which\_ would

become a relative pronoun. Dr. Lowth says, "\_Thy, my, her, our, your,

their\_, are pronominal adjectives."--\_Gram.\_, p. 23. This I deny; and the

reader may see my reasons, in the observations upon the declension of

pronouns.

OBS. 13.--The words \_one\_ and \_other\_, besides their primitive uses as

adjectives, in which they still remain without inflection, are frequently

employed as nouns, or as substitutes for nouns; and, in this substantive or

pronominal character, they commonly have the regular declension of nouns,

and are reckoned such by some grammarians; though others call them

indefinite pronouns, and some, (among whom are Lowth and Comly,) leave them

with the pronominal adjectives, even when they are declined in both

numbers. Each of them may be preceded by either of the articles; and so

general is the signification of the former, that almost any adjective may

likewise come before it: as, \_Any one, some one, such a one, many a one, a

new one, an old one, an other one, the same one, the young ones, the little

ones, the mighty ones, the wicked one, the Holy One, the Everlasting One\_.

So, like the French \_on\_, or \_l'on\_, the word \_one\_, without any adjective,

is now very frequently used as a general or indefinite term for any man, or

any person. In this sense, it is sometimes, unquestionably, to be preferred

to a personal pronoun applied indefinitely: as, "Pure religion, and

undefiled before God and the Father, is this, To visit the fatherless and

widows in their affliction, and to keep \_himself\_ [better, \_one's self\_]

unspotted from the world."--\_James\_, i, 27. But, as its generality of

meaning seems to afford a sort of covering for egotism, some writers are

tempted to make too frequent a use of it. Churchill ridicules this

practice, by framing, or anonymously citing, the following sentence: "If

\_one\_ did but dare to abide by \_one's\_ own judgement, \_one's\_ language

would be much more refined; but \_one\_ fancies \_one's\_ self obliged to

follow, whereever the many choose to lead \_one\_."--See \_Churchill's Gram.\_,

p. 229. Here every scholar will concur with the critic in thinking, it

would be better to say: "If \_we\_ did but dare to abide by \_our\_ own

judgement, \_our\_ language would be much more refined; but \_we\_ fancy

\_ourselves\_ obliged to follow wherever the many choose to lead \_us\_."--See

\_ib.\_

OBS. 14.--Of the pronominal adjectives the following distribution has been

made: "\_Each, every\_, and \_either\_, are called \_distributives\_; because,

though they imply all the persons or things that make up a number, they

consider them, not as one whole, but as taken separately. \_This, that,

former, latter, both, neither\_, are termed \_demonstratives\_; because they

point out precisely the subjects to which they relate. \_This\_ has \_these\_

for its plural; \_that\_ has \_those\_. \_This\_ and \_that\_ are frequently put in

opposition to each other; \_this\_, to express what is nearer in place or

time; \_that\_, what is more remote. \_All, any, one, other, some, such\_, are

termed \_indefinite\_. \_Another\_ is merely \_other\_ in the singular, with the

indefinite article not kept separate from it.[175] \_Other\_, when not joined

with a noun, is occasionally used both in the possessive case, and in the

plural number: as,

'Teach me to feel \_an other's\_ wo, to hide the fault I see;

That mercy I to \_others\_ show, that mercy show to me.'--\_Pope\_.

\_Each other\_ and \_one another\_, when used in conjunction, may be termed

\_reciprocals\_; as they are employed to express a reciprocal action; the

former, between two persons or things; the latter, \_between\_[176] more than

two. The possessive cases of the personal pronouns have been also ranked

under the head of pronominal adjectives, and styled possessives; but for

this I see no good reason."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 76.

OBS. 15.--The reciprocal terms \_each other\_ and \_one an other\_ divide,

according to some mutual act or interchangeable relation, the persons or

things spoken of, and are commonly of the singular number only. \_Each

other\_, if rightly used, supposes two, and only two, to be acting and acted

upon reciprocally; \_one an other\_, if not misapplied, supposes more than

two, under like circumstances, and has an indefinite reference to all taken

distributively: as, "Brutus and Aruns killed \_each other\_." That is, \_Each

combatant\_ killed \_the other\_. "The disciples were commanded to love \_one

an other\_, and to be willing to wash \_one an other's\_ feet." That is, \_All\_

the disciples were commanded to love \_mutually\_; for both terms, \_one\_ and

\_other\_, or \_one disciple\_ and \_an other disciple\_, must be here understood

as taken indefinitely. The reader will observe, that the two terms thus

brought together, if taken substantively or pronominally in parsing, must

be represented as being of \_different cases\_; or, if we take them

adjectively the noun, which is twice to be supplied, will necessarily be

so.

OBS. 16.--Misapplications of the foregoing reciprocal terms are very

frequent in books, though it is strange that phrases so very common should

not be rightly understood. Dr. Webster, among his explanations of the word

\_other\_, has the following: "Correlative to \_each\_, and applicable to \_any

number\_ of individuals."--\_Octavo Dict.\_ "\_Other\_ is used as a substitute

for a noun, and in this use has the plural number and the sign of the

possessive case."--\_Ib.\_ Now it is plain, that the word \_other\_, as a

"correlative to \_each\_," may be so far "a substitute for a noun" as to take

the form of the possessive case singular, and perhaps also the plural; as,

"Lock'd in \_each other's\_ arms they lay." But, that the objective \_other\_,

in any such relation, can convey a plural idea, or be so loosely

applicable--"to \_any number\_ of individuals," I must here deny. If it were

so, there would be occasion, by the foregoing rule, to make it plural in

form; as, "The ambitious strive to excel \_each others\_." But this is not

English. Nor can it be correct to say of more than two, "They all strive to

excel \_each other\_." Because the explanation must be, "\_Each\_ strives to

excel \_other\_;" and such a construction of the word \_other\_ is not

agreeable to modern usage. \_Each other\_ is therefore not equivalent to \_one

an other\_, but nearer perhaps to \_the one the other\_: as, "The two generals

are independent \_the one of the other\_."--\_Voltaire's Charles XII\_, p. 67.

"And these are contrary \_the one to the other\_."--\_Gal.\_, v, 17. "The

necessary connexion \_of the one with the other\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 304.

The latter phraseology, being definite and formal, is now seldom used,

except the terms be separated by a verb or a preposition. It is a literal

version of the French \_l'un l'autre\_, and in some instances to be preferred

to \_each other\_; as,

"So fellest foes, whose plots have broke their sleep,

To take \_the one the other\_, by some chance."--\_Shak\_.

OBS. 17.--The Greek term for the reciprocals \_each other\_ and \_one an

other\_, is a certain plural derivative from [Greek: allos], \_other\_; and is

used in three cases, the genitive, [Greek: allælon], the dative, [Greek:

allælois], the accusative, [Greek: allælous]: these being all the cases

which the nature of the expression admits; and for all these we commonly

use the \_objective\_;--that is, we put \_each\_ or \_one\_ before the objective

\_other\_. Now these English terms, taken in a reciprocal sense, seldom, if

ever, have any plural form; because the article in \_one an other\_ admits of

none; and \_each other\_, when applied to two persons or things, (as it

almost always is,) does not require any. I have indeed seen, in some

narrative, such an example as this: "The two men were ready to cut \_each

others' throats\_." But the meaning could not be, that each was ready to cut

"\_others' throats\_;" and since, between the two, there was but one throat

for \_each\_ to cut, it would doubtless be more correct to say, "\_each

other's throat\_." So Burns, in touching a gentler passion, has an

inaccurate elliptical expression:

"'Tis when a youthful, loving, modest pair,

In \_others'\_ arms, breathe out the tender tale."

--\_Cotter's Sat. Night\_.

He meant, "In \_each other's\_ arms;" the apostrophe being misplaced, and the

metre improperly allowed to exclude a word which the sense requires. Now,

as to the plural of \_each other\_, although we do not use the objective, and

say of many, "They love \_each others\_," there appear to be some instances

in which the possessive plural, \_each others'\_, would not be improper; as,

"Sixteen ministers, who meet weekly at \_each other's\_ houses."--\_Johnson's

Life of Swift\_. Here the singular is wrong, because the governing noun

implies a plurality of owners. "The citizens of different states should

know \_each others characters\_."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 35. This also is

wrong, because no possessive sign is used. Either write, "\_each others'

characters\_," or say, "\_one an other's character\_."

OBS. 18.--\_One\_ and \_other\_ are, in many instances, terms relative and

partitive, rather than reciprocal; and, in this use, there seems to be an

occasional demand for the plural form. In French, two parties are

contrasted by \_les uns--les autres\_; a mode of expression seldom, if ever

imitated in English. Thus: "Il les séparera \_les uns\_ d'avec \_les autres\_."

That is, "He shall separate them \_some\_ from \_others\_;"--or, literally,

"\_the ones\_ from \_the others\_." Our version is: "He shall separate them

\_one from an other\_."--\_Matt.\_, xxv, 32. Beza has it: "Separabit eos

\_alteros ab alteris\_." The Vulgate: "Separabit eos \_ab invicem\_." The

Greek: "[Greek: Aphoriei autous ap allælon]." To separate many "\_one from

an other\_," seems, literally, to leave none of them together; and this is

not, "as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats." To express such an

idea with perfect propriety, in our language, therefore, we must resort to

some other phraseology. In Campbell's version, we read: "And \_out of them\_

he will separate \_the good from the bad\_, as a shepherd separateth \_the\_

sheep from the goats." Better, perhaps, thus: "And he shall separate them,

\_the righteous from the wicked\_, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the

goats."

OBS. 19.--Dr. Bullions says, "\_One\_ and \_other\_ refer to \_the singular

only\_."--\_Eng. Gram.\_, p. 98. Of \_ones\_ and \_others\_ he takes no notice;

nor is he sufficiently attentive to usage in respect to the roots. If there

is any absurdity in giving a \_plural\_ meaning to the singulars \_one\_ and

\_other\_, the following sentences need amendment: "\_The one\_ preach Christ

of contention; but \_the other\_, of love."--\_Philippians\_, i, 16. Here "\_the

one\_" is put for "the one \_class\_," and "\_the other\_" for "the other

\_class\_;" the ellipsis in the first instance not being a very proper one.

"The confusion arises, when \_the one\_ will put \_their\_ sickle into \_the

other's\_ harvest."--LESLEY: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ This may be corrected by

saying, "\_the one party\_," or, "\_the one nation\_," in stead of "\_the one\_."

"It is clear from Scripture, that Antichrist shall be permitted to work

false miracles, and that they shall so counterfeit the true, that it will

be hard to discern \_the one\_ from \_the other\_."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii,

93. If in any ease we may adopt the French construction above, "\_the ones\_

from the \_others\_," it will be proper here. Again: "I have seen \_children\_

at a table, who, whatever was there, never asked for any thing, but

contentedly took what was given them: and, at an other place, I have seen

\_others\_ cry for every thing they saw; they must be served out of every

dish, and that first too. What made this vast difference, but this: That

\_one was\_ accustomed to have what \_they\_ called or cried for; \_the other\_

to go without it?"--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 55. Here, (with \_were\_ for

\_was\_,) the terms of contrast ought rather to have been, \_the ones--the

others\_; \_the latter--the former\_; or, \_the importunate--the modest\_.

"Those nice shades, by which \_virtues and vices\_ approach \_each one

another\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 350. This expression should be any

thing, rather than what it is. Say, "By which \_virtue\_ and \_vice\_ approach

\_each other\_." Or: "By which certain virtues and vices \_approximate--

blend--become difficult of distinction\_."

OBS. 20.--"Most authors have given the name of \_pronoun adjectives\_,

['pronouns adjective,' or 'pronominal adjectives,'] to \_my, mine; our,

ours; thy, thine; your, yours; his, her, hers; their, theirs\_: perhaps

because they are followed by, or refer to, some substantive [expressed or

understood after them]. But, were they adjectives, they must either express

the quality of their substantive, or limit its extent: adjectives properly

so called, do the first; definitive pronouns do the last. All adjectives

[that are either singular or plural,] agree with their substantives in

\_number\_; but I can say, 'They are \_my books\_:' \_my\_ is singular, and

\_books\_ plural; therefore \_my\_ is not an adjective. Besides, \_my\_ does not

express the \_quality\_ of the books, but only ascertains the possessor, the

same as the genitive or substantive does, to which it is similar. Examples:

'They are \_my\_ books;'--'They are \_John's\_ books;' &c."--\_Alex. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 108.

OBS. 21.--To the class of Participial Adjectives, should be referred all

such words as the following: (1.) The simple participles made adjectives by

position; as. "A \_roaring\_ lion,"--"A \_raging\_ bear,"--"A \_brawling\_

woman,"--"A \_flattering\_ mouth,"--"An \_understanding\_ heart,"--"\_Burning\_

coals,"--"The \_hearing\_ ear, and the \_seeing\_ eye."--\_Bible\_. "A \_troubled\_

fountain,"--"A \_wounded\_ spirit,"--"An \_appointed\_ time."--\_Ib.\_ (2.) Words

of a participial appearance, formed from nouns by adding \_ed\_; as, "The eve

thy \_sainted\_ mother died."--\_W. Scott\_. "What you write of me, would make

me more \_conceited\_, than what I scribble myself."--\_Pope\_. (3.)

Participles, or participial adjectives, reversed in sense by the prefix

\_un\_; as, \_unaspiring, unavailing, unbelieving, unbattered, uninjured,

unbefriended\_. (4.) Words of a participial form construed elliptically, as

if they were nouns; as, "Among the \_dying\_ and the dead."--"The \_called\_ of

Jesus Christ."--\_Rom.\_, i, 6. "Dearly \_beloved\_, I beseech you."--\_1 Pet.\_,

ii, 11. "The \_redeemed\_ of the Lord shall return."--\_Isaiah\_, li, 11. "They

talk, to the grief of thy \_wounded\_."--\_Psalms\_, lxix, 26: \_Margin\_.

OBS. 22.--In the text, Prov., vii, 26, "She hath cast down many wounded,"

\_wounded\_ is a participle; because the meaning is, "\_many men wounded\_,"

and not, "\_many wounded men\_." Our Participial Adjectives are exceedingly

numerous. It is not easy to ascertain how many there are of them; because

almost any simple participle may be set before a noun, and thus become an

adjective: as,

"Where \_smiling\_ spring its earliest visit paid,

And \_parting\_ summer's \_ling'ring\_ blooms delay'd."--\_Goldsmith\_.

OBS. 23.--Compound Adjectives, being formed at pleasure, are both numerous

and various. In their formation, however, certain analogies may be traced:

(1.) Many of them are formed by joining an adjective to its noun, and

giving to the latter the participial termination \_ed\_; as, \_able-bodied,

sharp-sighted, left-handed, full-faced, flat-nosed, thick-lipped,

cloven-footed, high-heeled\_. (2.) In some, two nouns are joined, the latter

assuming \_ed\_, as above; as, \_bell-shaped, hawk-nosed, eagle-sighted,

lion-hearted, web-footed\_. (3.) In some, the object of an active participle

is placed before it; as, \_money-getting, time-serving, self-consuming,

cloud-compelling, fortune-hunting, sleep-disturbing\_. (4.) Some, embracing

numerals, form a series, though it is seldom carried far; as, \_one-legged,

two-legged, three-legged, four-legged\_. So, \_one-leaved, two-leaved,

three-leaved, four-leaved\_: or, perhaps better as Webster will have them,

\_one-leafed, two-leafed, &c\_. But, upon the same principle, \_short-lived\_,

should be \_short-lifed\_, and \_long-lived, long-lifed\_. (5.) In some, there

is a combination of an adjective and a participle; as, \_noble-looking,

high-sounding, slow-moving, thorough-going, hard-finished, free-born,

heavy-laden, only-begotten\_. (6.) In some, we find an adverb and a

participle united; as, \_ever-living, ill-judging, well-pleasing,

far-shooting, forth-issuing, back-sliding, ill-trained, down-trodden,

above-mentioned\_. (7.) Some consist of a noun and a participle which might

be reversed with a preposition between them; as, \_church-going,

care-crazed, travel-soiled, blood-bespotted, dew-sprinkled\_. (8.) A few,

and those inelegant, terminate with a preposition; as, \_unlooked-for,

long-looked-for, unthought-of, unheard-of\_. (9.) Some are phrases of many

words, converted into one part of speech by the hyphen; as, "Where is the

\_ever-to-be-honoured\_ Chaucer?"--\_Wordsworth\_.

"And, with \_God-only-knows-how-gotten\_ light,

Informs the nation what is wrong or right."

--\_Snelling's Gift for Scribblers\_, p. 49.

OBS. 24.--Nouns derived from compound adjectives, are generally disapproved

by good writers; yet we sometimes meet with them: as, \_hard-heartedness\_,

for hardness of heart, or cruelty; \_quick-sightedness\_, for quickness of

sight, or perspicacity; \_worldly-mindedness\_, for devotion to the world, or

love of gain; \_heavenly-mindedness\_, for the love of God, or true piety. In

speaking of ancestors or descendants, we take the noun, \_father, mother,

son, daughter\_, or \_child\_; prefix the adjective \_grand\_; for the second

generation; \_great\_, for the, third; and then, sometimes, repeat the same,

for degrees more remote: as, \_father, grandfather, great-grandfather,

great-great-grandfather\_. "What would my \_great-grandmother\_ say, thought

I, could she know that thou art to be chopped up for fuel to warm the

frigid fingers of her \_great-great-great-granddaughters\_!"--\_T. H.

Bayley\_.

MODIFICATIONS.

Adjectives have, commonly, no modifications but the forms of \_comparison\_.

Comparison is a variation of the adjective, to express quality in different

degrees: as, \_hard, harder, hardest; soft, softer, softest.\_

There are three degrees of comparison; the \_positive\_, the \_comparative\_,

and the \_superlative\_.

The \_positive degree\_ is that which is expressed by the adjective in its

simple form: as, "An elephant is \_large\_; a mouse, \_small\_; a lion,

\_fierce, active, bold\_, and \_strong\_."

The \_comparative degree\_ is that which is \_more\_ or \_less\_ than something

contrasted with it: as, "A whale is \_larger\_ than an elephant; a mouse is a

much \_smaller\_ animal than a rat."

The \_superlative degree\_ is that which is \_most\_ or \_least\_ of all included

with it: as, "The whale is the \_largest\_ of the animals that inhabit this

globe; the mouse is the \_smallest\_ of all beasts."--\_Dr. Johnson.\_

Those adjectives whose signification does not admit of different degrees,

cannot be compared; as, \_two, second, all, every, immortal, infinite.\_

Those adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form, are

compared by means of adverbs; as, fruitful, \_more\_ fruitful, \_most\_

fruitful--fruitful, \_less\_ fruitful, \_least\_ fruitful.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--"Some scruple to call the positive a degree of comparison; on the

ground, that it does not imply either comparison, or degree. But no quality

can exist, without existing in some degree: and, though the positive is

very frequently used without reference to any other degree; as it is \_the

standard\_, with which other degrees of the quality are compared, it is

certainly an essential object of the comparison. While these critics allow

only two degrees, we might in fact with more propriety say, that there are

five: 1, the quality in its standard state, or positive degree; as \_wise\_:

2, in a higher state, or the comparative ascending; \_more wise\_: 3, in a

lower, or the comparative descending; \_less wise\_: 4, in the highest state,

or superlative ascending; \_most wise\_: 5, in the lowest state, or

superlative descending; \_least wise.\_ All grammarians, however, agree about

the things themselves, and the forms used to express them; though they

differ about the names, by which these forms should be called: and as those

names are practically best, which tend least to perplex the learner, I see

no good reason here for deviating from what has been established by long

custom."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 231.

OBS. 2.--Churchill here writes plausibly enough, but it will be seen, both

from his explanation, and from the foregoing definitions of the degrees of

comparison, that there are but three. The comparative and the superlative

may each be distinguishable into the ascending and the descending, as often

as we prefer the adverbial form to the regular variation of the adjective

itself; but this imposes no necessity of classing and defining them

otherwise than simply as the comparative and the superlative. The

assumption of two comparatives and two superlatives, is not only contrary

to the universal practice of the teachers of grammar; but there is this

conclusive argument against it--that the regular method of comparison has

no degrees of diminution, and the form which has such degrees, is \_no

inflection\_ of the adjective. If there is any exception, it is in the

words, \_small, smaller, smallest\_, and \_little, less, least\_. But of the

smallness or littleness, considered abstractly, these, like all others, are

degrees of increase, and not of diminution. \_Smaller\_ is as completely

opposite to \_less small\_, as \_wiser\_ is to \_less wise\_. \_Less\_ itself is a

comparative descending, only when it diminishes some \_other\_ quality: \_less

little\_, if the phrase were proper, must needs be nearly equivalent to

\_greater\_ or \_more\_. Churchill, however, may be quite right in the

following remark: "The comparative ascending of an adjective, and the

comparative descending of an adjective expressing the opposite quality, are

often considered synonymous, by those who do not discriminate nicely

between ideas. But \_less imprudent\_ does not imply precisely the same thing

as \_more prudent\_; or \_more brave\_, the same as \_less cowardly\_."--\_New

Gram.\_, p. 231.

OBS. 3.--The definitions which I have given of the three degrees of

comparison, are new. In short, I know not whether any other grammarian has

ever given what may justly be called a \_definition\_, of any one of them.

Here, as in most other parts of grammar, loose \_remarks\_, ill-written and

untrue assertions, have sufficed. The explanations found in many English

grammars are the following: "The positive state expresses the quality of an

object, without any increase or diminution; as, good, wise, great. The

comparative degree increases or lessens the positive in signification; as,

wiser, greater, less wise. The superlative degree increases or lessens the

positive to the highest or [the] lowest degree; as, wisest, greatest, least

wise. The simple word, or positive, becomes [the] comparative by adding \_r\_

or \_er\_; and the superlative by adding \_st\_ or \_est\_, to the end of it.

And the adverbs \_more\_ and \_most\_, placed before the adjective, have the

same effect; as, wise, \_more\_ wise, \_most\_ wise."--\_Murray's Grammar\_, 2d

Ed., 1796, p. 47. If a man wished to select some striking example of bad

writing--of thoughts ill conceived, and not well expressed--he could not do

better than take the foregoing: provided his auditors knew enough of

grammar to answer the four simple questions here involved; namely, What is

the positive degree? What is the comparative degree? What is the

superlative degree? How are adjectives regularly compared? To these

questions I shall furnish \_direct answers\_, which the reader may compare

with such as he can derive from the foregoing citation: the last two

sentences of which Murray ought to have credited to Dr. Lowth; for he

copied them literally, except that he says, "the adverbs \_more\_ AND

\_most\_," for the Doctor's phrase, "the adverbs \_more\_ OR \_most\_." See the

whole also in \_Kirkham's Grammar\_, p. 72; in \_Ingersoll's\_, p. 35; in

\_Alger's\_, p. 21; in \_Bacon's\_, p. 18; in \_Russell's\_, p. 14; in

\_Hamlin's\_, p. 22; in \_J. M. Putnam's\_, p. 33; in \_S. Putnam's\_, p. 20; in

\_R. C. Smith's\_, p. 51; in \_Rev. T. Smith's\_, p. 20.

OBS. 4.--In the five short sentences quoted above, there are more errors,

than can possibly be enumerated in ten times the space. For example: (1.)

If one should say of a piece of iron, "It grows cold or hot very rapidly,"

\_cold\_ and \_hot\_ could not be in the "\_positive state\_," as they define it:

because, either the "quality" or the "object," (I know not which,) is

represented by them as "without any increase or diminution;" and this would

not, in the present case, be true of either; for iron changes in bulk, by a

change of temperature. (2.) What, in the first sentence, is erroneously

called "the positive \_state\_," in the second and the third, is called, "the

positive \_degree\_;" and this again, in the fourth, is falsely identified

with "the simple \_word\_." Now, if we suppose the meaning to be, that "the

positive state," "the positive degree," or "the simple word," is "without

any increase or diminution;" this is expressly contradicted by three

sentences out of the five, and implicitly, by one of the others. (3.) Not

one of these sentences is \_true\_, in the most obvious sense of the words,

if in any other; and yet the doctrines they were designed to teach, may

have been, in general, correctly gathered from the examples. (4.) The

phrase, "\_positive in signification\_," is not intelligible in the sense

intended, without a comma after \_positive\_; and yet, in an armful of

different English grammars which contain the passage, I find not one that

has a point in that place. (5.) It is not more correct to say, that the

comparative or the superlative degree, "increases or lessens the positive,"

than it would be to aver, that the plural number increases or lessens the

singular, or the feminine gender, the masculine. Nor does the superlative

mean, what a certain learned Doctor understands by it--namely, "\_the

greatest or least possible degree\_." If it did, "the \_thickest\_ parts of

his skull," for example, would imply small room for brains; "the

\_thinnest\_," protect them ill, if there were any. (6.) It is improper to

say, "\_The simple word becomes\_ [the] \_comparative by adding r or er\_; and

\_the superlative by adding st or est\_." The thought is wrong; and nearly

all the words are misapplied; as, \_simple\_ for \_primitive, adding\_ for

\_assuming\_, &c. (7.) Nor is it very wise to say, "the adverbs \_more\_ and

\_most\_, placed before the adjective, \_have the same effect\_:" because it

ought to be known, that the effect of the one is very different from that

of the other! "\_The same effect\_," cannot here be taken for any effect

previously described; unless we will have it to be, that these words,

\_more\_ and \_most\_, "become comparative by adding \_r\_ or \_er\_; and the

superlative by adding \_st\_ or \_est\_, to the end of them:" all of which is

grossly absurd. (8.) The repetition of the word \_degree\_, in saying, "The

superlative \_degree\_ increases or lessens the positive to the highest or

lowest \_degree\_," is a disagreeable tautology. Besides, unless it involves

the additional error of presenting the same word in different senses, it

makes one degree swell or diminish an other \_to itself\_; whereas, in the

very next sentence, this singular agency is forgotten, and a second equally

strange takes its place: "The positive \_becomes\_ the superlative by adding

\_st\_ or \_est\_, to the end of it;" i. e., to the end of \_itself\_. Nothing

can be more ungrammatical, than is much of the language by which grammar

itself is now professedly taught!

OBS. 5.--It has been almost universally assumed by grammarians, that the

positive degree is \_the only standard\_ to which the other degrees can

refer; though many seem to think, that the superlative always implies or

includes the comparative, and is consequently inapplicable when only two

things are spoken of. Neither of these positions is involved in any of the

definitions which I have given above. The reader may think what he will

about these points, after observing the several ways in which each form may

be used. In the phrases, "\_greater\_ than Solomon,"--"\_more\_ than a

bushel,"--"\_later\_ than one o'clock," it is not immediately obvious that

the positives \_great, much\_, and \_late\_, are the real terms of contrast.

And how is it in the Latin phrases, "\_Dulcior melle\_, sweeter than

honey,"--"\_Præstantior auro\_, better than gold?" These authors will resolve

all such phrases thus: "\_greater\_, than Solomon \_was great\_,"--"\_more\_,

than a bushel \_is much\_," &c. As the conjunction \_than\_ never governs the

objective case, it seems necessary to suppose an ellipsis of some verb

after the noun which follows it as above; and possibly the foregoing

solution, uncouth as it seems, may, for the English idiom, be the true one:

as, "My Father is \_greater than I\_."--\_John\_, xiv, 28. That is, "My Father

is greater \_than I am\_;"--or, perhaps, "than I am \_great\_." But if it

appear that \_some\_ degree of the same quality must always be contrasted

with the comparative, there is still room to question whether this degree

must always be that which we call the positive. Cicero, in exile, wrote to

his wife: "Ego autem hoc \_miserior\_ sum, quam tu, quæ es \_miserrima\_, quod

ipsa calamitas communis est utriusque nostrùm, sed culpa mea propria

est."--\_Epist. ad Fam.\_, xiv, 3. "But in this I am \_more wretched\_, than

thou, who art \_most wretched\_, that the calamity itself is common to us

both, but the fault is all my own."

OBS. 6.--In my Institutes and First Lines of English Grammar, I used the

following brief definitions: "The \_comparative degree\_ is that which

exceeds the positive; as, \_harder, softer, better\_." "The \_superlative

degree\_ is that which is not exceeded; as, \_hardest, softest, best\_." And

it is rather for the sake of suggesting to the learner the peculiar

\_application\_ of each of these degrees, than from any decided

dissatisfaction with these expressions, that I now present others. The

first, however, proceeds upon the common supposition, that the comparative

degree of a quality, ascribed to any object, must needs be contrasted with

the positive in some other, or with the positive in the same at an other

time. This idea may be plausibly maintained, though it is certain that the

positive term referred to, is seldom, if ever, allowed to appear. Besides,

the comparative or the superlative \_may\_ appear, and in such a manner as to

be, or seem to be, in the point of contrast. Thus: "Objects near our view

are apt to be thought \_greater than those of a larger size\_, that are more

remote."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 186. Upon the principle above, the

explanation here must be, that the meaning is--"\_greater\_ than those of a

larger size \_are thought great.\_" "The \_poor\_ man that loveth Christ, is

\_richer than the richest man\_ in the world, that hates him."--\_Bunyan's

Pilgrim's Progress\_, p. 86. This must be "\_richer\_ than the richest man \_is

rich\_." The riches contemplated here, are of different sorts; and the

comparative or the superlative of one sort, may be exceeded by either of

these degrees of an other sort, though the same epithet be used for both.

So in the following instances: "He that is \_higher than the highest\_

regardeth; and there be \_higher than they\_."--\_Eccl.\_, v, 8. That is, "He

that is higher than the highest \_earthly dignitaries\_, regardeth; and there

are higher \_authorities\_ than \_these.\_" "\_Fairer\_ than aught imagined else

\_fairest\_."--\_Pollok\_. "\_Sadder than saddest\_ night."--\_Byron\_. It is

evident that the superlative degree is not, in general, that which \_cannot

be\_ exceeded, but that which, in the actual state of the things included,

"\_is\_ not exceeded." Again, as soon as any given comparative or superlative

is, by a further elevation or intension of the quality, surpassed and

exceeded, that particular degree, whatever it was, becomes merely positive;

for the positive degree of a quality, though it commonly includes the very

lowest measure, and is understood to exceed nothing, may at any time

\_equal\_ the very highest. There is no paradox in all this, which is not

also in the following simple examples: "\_Easier\_, indeed, I was, but far

from \_easy\_."--\_Cowper's Life\_, p. 50.

"Who canst the \_wisest wiser\_ make,

And babes \_as wise\_ as they."--\_Cowper's Poems\_.

OBS. 7.--The relative nature of these degrees deserves to be further

illustrated. (1.) It is plain, that the greatest degree of a quality in one

thing, may be less than the least in an other; and, consequently, that the

least degree in one thing, may be greater than the greatest in an other.

Thus, the \_heaviest\_ wood is \_less heavy\_ than the \_lightest\_ of the

metals; and the \_least valuable\_ of the metals is perhaps of \_more value\_

than the \_choicest\_ wood. (2.) The comparative degree may increase upon

itself, and be repeated to show the gradation. Thus, a man may ascend into

the air with a balloon, and rise \_higher\_, and \_higher\_, and \_higher\_, and

\_higher\_, till he is out of sight. This is no uncommon form of expression,

and the intension is from comparative to comparative. (3.) If a ladder be

set up for use, one of its rounds will be \_the highest\_, and one other will

be \_the lowest\_, or \_least high.\_ And as that which is \_highest\_, is

\_higher\_ than all the rest, so every one will be \_higher\_ than all below

it. \_The higher rounds\_, if spoken of generally, and without definite

contrast, will be those in the upper half; \_the lower rounds\_, referred to

in like manner, will be those in the lower half, or those not far from the

ground. \_The highest rounds\_, or \_the lowest\_, if we indulge such latitude

of speech, will be those near the top or the bottom; there being,

absolutely, or in \_strictness\_ of language, but \_one\_ of each. (4.) If \_the

highest\_ round be removed, or left uncounted, the next becomes the

\_highest\_, though not \_so high\_ as the former. For every one is \_the

highest\_ of the number which it completes. All admit this, till we come to

\_three\_. And, as the third is \_the highest of the three\_, I see not why the

second is not properly \_the highest of the two\_. Yet nearly all our

grammarians condemn this phrase, and prefer "\_the higher of the two\_." But

can they give a \_reason\_ for their preference? That the comparative degree

is implied between the positive and the superlative, so that there must

needs be three terms before the latter is applicable, is a doctrine which I

deny. And if the second is \_the higher of the two\_, because it is \_higher

than the first\_; is it not also \_the highest of the two\_, because it

\_completes the number?\_ (5.) It is to be observed, too, that as our ordinal

numeral \_first\_, denoting the one which begins a series, and having

reference of course to more, is an adjective of the superlative degree,

equivalent to \_foremost\_, of which it is perhaps a contraction; so \_last\_

likewise, though no numeral, is a superlative also. (6.) These, like other

superlatives, admit of a looser application, and may possibly include more

than one thing at the beginning or at the end of a series: as, "\_The last

years\_ of man are often helpless, like \_the first\_." (7.) With undoubted

propriety, we may speak of \_the first two, the last two, the first three,

the last three\_, &c.; but to say, \_the two first, the two last\_, &c., with

this meaning, is obviously and needlessly inaccurate. "\_The two first men\_

in the nation," may, I admit, be good English; but it can properly be meant

only of \_the two most eminent.\_ In specifying any part of a \_series\_, we

ought rather to place the cardinal number after the ordinal. (8.) Many of

the foregoing positions apply generally, to almost all adjectives that are

susceptible of comparison. Thus, it is a common saying, "Take \_the best

first\_, and \_all\_ will be \_best\_." That is, remove that degree which is now

superlative, and the epithet will descend to an other, "\_the next best.\_"

OBS. 8.--It is a common assumption, maintained by almost all our

grammarians, that the degrees which add to the adjective the terminations

\_er\_ and \_est\_, as well as those which are expressed by \_more\_ and \_most\_,

indicate an \_increase\_, or heightening, of the quality expressed by the

positive. If such must needs be their import, it is certainly very

improper, to apply them, as many do, to what can be only an approximation

to the positive. Thus Dr. Blair: "Nothing that belongs to human nature, is

\_more universal\_ than the relish of beauty of one kind or

other."--\_Lectures\_, p. 16. "In architecture, the Grecian models were long

esteemed \_the most perfect\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 20. Again: In his reprehension of

Capernaum, the Saviour said, "It shall be \_more tolerable\_ for the land of

Sodom, in the day of judgement, than for thee."--\_Matt.\_, xi, 24. Now,

although [Greek: anektoteron], \_more tolerable\_, is in itself a good

comparative, who would dare infer from this text, that in the day of

judgement Capernaum shall fare \_tolerably\_, and Sodom, \_still better\_?

There is much reason to think, that the essential nature of these

grammatical degrees has not been well understood by those who have

heretofore pretended to explain them. If we except those few approximations

to sensible qualities, which are signified by such words as \_whitish,

greenish, &c.\_, there will be found no actual measure, or inherent degree

of any quality, to which the simple form of the adjective is not

applicable; or which, by the help of intensive adverbs of a positive

character, it may not be made to express; and that, too, without becoming

either comparative or superlative, in the technical sense of those terms.

Thus \_very white, exceedingly white, perfectly white\_, are terms quite as

significant as \_whiter\_ and \_whitest\_, if not more so. Some grammarians,

observing this, and knowing that the Romans often used their superlative in

a sense merely intensive, as \_altissimus\_ for \_very high\_, have needlessly

divided our English superlative into two, "\_the definite\_, and the

\_indefinite\_;" giving the latter name to that degree which we mark by the

adverb \_very\_, and the former to that which alone is properly called the

superlative. Churchill does this: while, (as we have seen above,) in naming

the degrees, he pretends to prefer "what has been established by long

custom."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 231. By a strange oversight also, he failed to

notice, that this doctrine interferes with his scheme of \_five\_ degrees,

and would clearly furnish him with \_six\_: to which if he had chosen to add

the "\_imperfect degree\_" of Dr. Webster, (as \_whitish, greenish, &c.\_,)

which is recognized by Johnson, Murray, and others, he might have had

\_seven\_. But I hope my readers will by-and-by believe there is \_no need\_ of

more than \_three\_.

OBS. 9.--The true nature of the Comparative degree is this: it denotes

either some \_excess\_ or some \_relative deficiency\_ of the quality, when one

thing or party is compared with an other, in respect to what is in both:

as, "Because the foolishness of God is \_wiser\_ than men; and the weakness

of God is \_stronger\_ than men."--\_1 Cor.\_, i, 25. "Few languages are, in

fact, \_more copious\_ than the English."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 87. "Our style

is \_less compact\_ than that of the ancients."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "They are

counted to him \_less\_ than nothing and vanity."--\_Isaiah\_, xl, 17. As the

comparatives in a long \_series\_ are necessarily many, and some of them

\_higher\_ than others, it may be asked, "How can the comparative degree, in

this case, be merely 'that which exceeds the positive?'" Or, as our common

grammarians prompt me here to say, "May not the comparative degree increase

or lessen \_the comparative\_, in signification?" The latter form of the

question they may answer for themselves; remembering that the comparative

\_may advance from the comparative\_, step by step, from the second article

in the series to the utmost. Thus, three is a higher or greater number than

two; but four is higher than three; five, than four; and so on, \_ad

infinitum\_. My own form of the question I answer thus: "The \_highest\_ of

the \_higher\_ is not \_higher\_ than the rest are \_higher\_, but simply

\_higher\_ than they are \_high\_."

OBS. 10.--The true nature of the Superlative degree is this: it denotes, in

a quality, \_some extreme\_ or \_unsurpassed extent\_. It may be used either

absolutely, as being without bounds; or relatively, as being confined

within any limits we choose to give it. It is equally applicable to that

which is naturally unsurpassable, and to that which stands within the

narrowest limits of comparison. The \_heaviest\_ of \_three feathers\_ would

scarcely be thought a \_heavy\_ thing, and yet the expression is proper;

because the weight, whatever it is, is relatively \_the greatest\_. The

\_youngest\_ of three persons, may not be \_very young\_; nor need we suppose

the \_oldest\_ in a whole college to have arrived at \_the greatest

conceivable age\_. What then shall be thought of the explanations which our

grammarians have given of this degree of comparison? That of Murray I have

already criticised. It is ascribed to him, not upon the supposition that he

invented it; but because common sense continues to give place to the

authority of his name in support of it. Comly, Russell, Alger, Ingersoll,

Greenleaf, Fisk, Merchant, Kirkham, T. Smith, R. C. Smith, Hall, Hiley, and

many others, have copied it into their grammars, as being better than any

definition they could devise. Murray himself unquestionably took it from

some obscure pedagogue among the old grammarians. Buchanan, who long

preceded him, has nearly the same words: "The Superlative increases or

diminishes the Positive in Signification, to the highest or [the] lowest

Degree of all."--\_English Syntax\_, p. 28. If this is to be taken for a

grammatical definition, what definition shall grammar itself bear?

OBS. 11.--Let us see whether our later authors have done better. "The

\_superlative\_ expresses a quality in the greatest or [the] least \_possible\_

degree; as, \_wisest, coldest, least wise\_."--\_Webster's Old Gram.\_, p. 13.

In his later speculations, this author conceives that the termination \_ish\_

forms the \_first\_ degree of comparison; as, "Imperfect, \_dankish\_," Pos.

\_dank\_, Comp. \_danker\_, Superl. \_dankest\_. "There are therefore \_four\_

degrees of comparison."--\_Webster's Philosophical Gram.\_ p. 65. "The

\_fourth\_ denotes the utmost or [the] least degree of a quality; as,

\_bravest, wisest, poorest, smallest\_. This is called the \_superlative\_

degree."--\_Ib.\_; also his \_Improved Gram.\_, 1831, p. 47. "This degree is

called the Superlative degree, from its raising the amount of the quality

above that of all others."--\_Webber's Gram.\_, 1832, p. 26. It is not easy

to quote, from any source, a worse sentence than this; if, indeed, so

strange a jumble of words can be called a sentence. "\_From its raising the

amount\_," is in itself a vicious and untranslatable phrase, here put for

"\_because it raises the amount\_;" and who can conceive of the superlative

degree, as "\_raising the amount of the quality\_ above that of \_all other

qualities\_?" Or, if it be supposed to mean, "above the amount of all other

\_degrees\_," what is this amount? Is it that of one and one, the \_positive\_

and the \_comparative\_ added numerically? or is it the sum of all the

quantities which these may indicate? Perhaps the author meant, "above the

amount of all other \_amounts\_." If none of these absurdities is here

taught, nothing is taught, and the words are nonsense. Again: "The

\_superlative degree\_ increases or diminishes the positive to the highest or

[the] lowest degree \_of which it is susceptible\_."--\_Bucke's Classical

Gram.\_, p. 49. "The superlative degree is generally formed by adding \_st\_

or \_est\_ to the positive; and denotes \_the greatest excess\_."--\_Nutting's

Gram.\_, p. 33. "The Superlative increases or diminishes the Signification

of the Positive or Adjective, to a \_very high\_ or a \_very low\_

Degree."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 97. What \_excess\_ of skill, or what \_very

high degree\_ of acuteness, have the \_brightest\_ and \_best\_ of these

grammarians exhibited? There must be some, if their definitions are \_true\_.

OBS. 12.--The common assertion of the grammarians, that the superlative

degree is not applicable to two \_objects\_,[177] is not only unsupported by

any reason in the nature of things, but it is contradicted in practice by

almost every man who affirms it. Thus Maunder: "When only two persons or

things are spoken of comparatively, to use the superlative is improper: as,

'Deborah, my dear, give those two boys a lump of sugar each; and let Dick's

be the largest, because he spoke first.' This," says the critic, "should

have been 'larger.'"--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 4. It is true, the comparative

\_might\_ here have been used; but the superlative is clearer, and more

agreeable to custom. And how can "\_largest\_" be wrong, if "\_first\_" is

right? "Let Dick's be the \_larger\_, because he spoke \_sooner\_," borders too

much upon a different idea, that of \_proportion\_; as when we say, "\_The

sooner the better\_,"--"\_The more the merrier\_." So Blair: "When only two

things are compared, the comparative degree should be used, and not the

superlative."--\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 81. "A Trochee has the \_first\_

syllable accented, and the \_last\_ unaccented."--\_Ib.\_, p. 118. "An Iambus

has the first syllable unaccented, and the \_last\_ accented."--\_Ibid.\_ These

two examples are found also in \_Jamieson's Rhetoric\_, p. 305; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 253; \_Kirkham's\_, 219; \_Bullions's\_, 169; \_Guy's\_, 120;

\_Merchant's\_, 166. So Hiley: "When \_two\_ persons or things are compared,

the \_comparative\_ degree must be employed. When \_three or more\_ persons or

things are compared, the \_superlative\_ must be used."--\_Treatise on English

Gram.\_, p. 78. Contradiction in practice: "Thomas is \_wiser\_ than his

brothers."--\_Ib.\_, p. 79. Are not "\_three or more persons\_" here compared

by "the comparative" \_wiser\_? "In an \_Iambus\_ the \_first\_ syllable is

unaccented."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. An iambus has but \_two\_ syllables; and this

author expressly teaches that "\_first\_" is "superlative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 21. So

Sanborn: "The \_positive\_ degree denotes the \_simple\_ form of an adjective

\_without\_ any variation of meaning. The \_comparative\_ degree increases or

lessens the meaning \_of the positive\_, and denotes a comparison \_between

two\_ persons or things. The \_superlative\_ degree increases or lessens the

positive \_to the greatest extent\_, and denotes a comparison \_between more

than two\_ persons or things."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 30 and p. 86. These

pretended definitions of the degrees of comparison embrace not only the

absurdities which I have already censured in those of our common grammars,

but several new ones peculiar to this author. Of the inconsistency of his

doctrine and practice, take the following examples: "Which of two bodies,

that move with the same velocity, will exercise the \_greatest\_

power?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 93; and again, p. 203, "'I was offered a \_dollar\_;'--'A

\_dollar\_ was offered (to) \_me\_.' The \_first\_ form should always be

avoided."--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. "Nouns in apposition generally annex the sign of

the possessive case to the \_last\_; as, 'For David my \_servant's\_

sake.'--'John the \_Baptist's\_ head.' \_Bible\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 197.

OBS. 13.--So Murray: "We commonly say, 'This is the \_weaker of the two\_;'

or, 'The \_weakest\_ of the two;'[178] but the former is the regular mode of

expression, because there are \_only two\_ things compared."--\_Octavo Gram.\_,

i, 167. What then of the following example: "Which of \_those two persons\_

has \_most\_ distinguished himself?"--\_Ib., Key\_, ii, 187. Again, in treating

of the adjectives \_this\_ and \_that\_, the same hand writes thus: "\_This\_

refers to the \_nearest\_ person or thing, and \_that\_ to the \_most distant\_:

as, '\_This\_ man is \_more intelligent\_ than \_that\_.' \_This\_ indicates the

\_latter\_, or \_last\_ mentioned; \_that\_, the \_former\_, or \_first\_ mentioned:

as, 'Both wealth and poverty are temptations; \_that\_ tends to excite pride,

\_this\_, discontent.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 56. In the former part of this

example, the superlative is twice applied where only two things are spoken

of; and, in the latter, it is twice made equivalent to the comparative,

with a like reference. The following example shows the same equivalence:

"\_This\_ refers to the \_last\_ mentioned or \_nearer\_ thing, \_that\_ to the

\_first\_ mentioned or \_more\_ distant thing."--\_Webber's Gram.\_, p. 31. So

Churchill: "The superlative should not be used, when only two persons or

things are compared."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 80. "In the \_first\_ of these two

sentences."--\_Ib.\_, p. 162; \_Lowth\_, p. 120. According to the rule, it

should have been, "In the \_former\_ of these two sentences;" but this would

be here ambiguous, because \_former\_ might mean \_maker\_. "When our

sentence consists of two members, the \_longest\_ should, generally, be the

concluding one."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 117: and \_Jamieson's\_, p. 99. "The

\_shortest\_ member being placed \_first\_, we carry it \_more readily\_ in our

memory as we proceed to the second."--\_Ib.\_, & \_Ib.\_ "Pray consider us, in

this respect, as the \_weakest\_ sex."--\_Spect.\_, No. 533. In this last

sentence, the comparative, \_weaker\_, would perhaps have been better;

because, not an absolute, but merely a comparative weakness is meant. So

Latham and Child: "It is better, in speaking of only two objects, to use

the comparative degree rather than the superlative, even, where we use the

article \_the\_. \_This is the better of the two\_, is preferable to \_this is

the best of the two\_."--\_Elementary Gram.\_, p. 155. Such is their rule; but

very soon they forget it, and write thus: "In this case the relative refers

to the \_last\_ of the two."--\_Ib.\_, p. 163.

OBS. 14.--Hyperboles are very commonly expressed by comparatives or

superlatives; as, "My \_little finger\_ shall be \_thicker\_ than my \_father's

loins\_."--\_1 Kings\_, xii, 10. "Unto me, who am \_less than the least\_ of all

saints, is this grace given."--\_Ephesians\_, iii, 8. Sometimes, in thus

heightening or lowering the object of his conception, the writer falls into

a catachresis, solecism, or abuse of the grammatical degrees; as,

"Mustard-seed--which is \_less than all the seeds\_ that be in the

earth."--\_Mark\_, iv, 31. This expression is objectionable, because

mustard-seed is a seed, and cannot be less than itself; though that which

is here spoken of, may perhaps have been "\_the least of all seeds\_:" and it

is the same Greek phrase, that is thus rendered in Matt, xiii, 32. Murray

has inserted in his Exercises, among "unintelligible and inconsistent words

and phrases," the following example from Milton:

"And, in the lowest deep, a lower deep

Still threat'ning to devour me, opens wide."--\_Exercises\_, p. 122.

For this supposed inconsistency, ho proposes in his Key the following

amendment:

"And, in the \_lower\_ deep, \_another\_ deep

Still threat'ning to devour me, opens wide."--\_Key\_, p. 254.

But, in an other part of his book, he copies from Dr. Blair the same

passage, with commendation: saying, "The following sentiments of \_Satan in

Milton\_, as strongly as they are described, \_contain nothing\_ but what is

\_natural and proper\_:

'Me miserable! which way shall I fly

Infinite wrath, and infinite despair?

Which way I fly is Hell; myself am Hell;

And in the lowest \_depth\_, a lower deep,

Still threat'ning to devour me, opens wide,

To which the Hell I suffer seems a Heaven.' \_P. Lost\_, B. iv, l. 73."

\_Blair's Lectures\_, p. 153; \_Murray's Grammar\_, p. 352.

OBS. 15.--Milton's word, in the fourth line above, is \_deep\_, and not

\_depth\_, as these authors here give it: nor was it very polite in them, to

use a phraseology which comes so near to saying, the devil was in the poet.

Alas for grammar! accuracy in its teachers has become the most rare of all

qualifications. As for Murray's correction above, I see not how it can

please any one who chooses to think Hell a place of great depth. A descent

into his "\_lower\_ deep" and "\_other\_ deep," might be a plunge less horrible

than two or three successive slides in one of our western caverns! But

Milton supposes the arch-fiend might descend to the lowest \_imaginable\_

depth of Hell, and there be liable to a still further fall of more

tremendous extent. Fall whither? Into the horrid and inconceivable

profundity of the \_bottomless pit\_! What signifies it, to object to his

language as "\_unintelligible\_" if it conveys his idea better than any other

could? In no human conception of what is infinite, can there be any real

exaggeration. To amplify beyond the truth, is here impossible. Nor is there

any superlation which can fix a limit to the idea of more and more in

infinitude. Whatever literal absurdity there may be in it, the duplication

seems greatly to augment what was even our greatest conception of the

thing. Homer, with a like figure, though expressed in the positive degree,

makes Jupiter threaten any rebel god, that he shall be thrown down from

Olympus, to suffer the burning pains of the Tartarean gulf; not in the

centre, but,

"As \_deep\_ beneath th' infernal centre hurl'd,

As from that centre to th' ethereal world."

--\_Pope's Iliad\_, B. viii, l. 19.

REGULAR COMPARISON.

Adjectives are regularly compared, when the comparative degree is expressed

by adding \_er\_, and the superlative, by adding \_est\_ to them: as, Pos.,

\_great\_, Comp., \_greater\_, Superl., \_greatest\_; Pos., \_mild\_, Comp.,

\_milder\_, Superl., \_mildest\_.

In the variation of adjectives, final consonants are doubled, final \_e\_ is

omitted, and final \_y\_ is changed to \_i\_, agreeably to the rules for

spelling: as, \_hot, hotter, hottest; wide, wider, widest; happy, happier,

happiest\_.

The regular method of comparison belongs almost exclusively to

monosyllables, with dissyllables ending in \_w\_ or \_y\_, and such others as

receive it and still have but one syllable after the accent: as, \_fierce,

fiercer, fiercest; narrow, narrower, narrowest; gloomy, gloomier,

gloomiest; serene, serener, serenest; noble, nobler, noblest; gentle,

gentler, gentlest\_.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS.

The two degrees of superiority may also be expressed with precisely the

same import as above, by prefixing to the adjective the adverbs \_more\_ and

\_most\_: as, \_wise, more wise, most wise; famous, more famous, most famous;

amiable, more amiable, most amiable\_.

The degrees of inferiority are expressed, in like manner, by the adverbs

\_less\_ and \_least\_: as, \_wise, less wise, least wise; famous, less famous,

least famous; amiable, less amiable, least amiable\_. The regular method of

comparison has, properly speaking, no degrees of this kind.

Nearly all adjectives that admit of different degrees, may be compared by

means of the adverbs; but, for short words, the regular method is generally

preferable: as, \_quick, quicker, quickest\_; rather than, \_quick, more

quick, most quick\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The genius of our language is particularly averse to the

lengthening of long words by additional syllables; and, in the comparison

of adjectives, \_er\_ and \_est\_ always add a syllable to the word, except it

end in \_le\_ after a mute. Thus, \_free, freer, freest\_, increases

syllabically; but \_ample, ampler, amplest\_, does not. Whether any

particular adjective admits of comparison or not, is a matter of reasoning

from the sense of the term; by which method it shall be compared, is in

some degree a matter of taste; though custom has decided that long words

shall not be inflected, and for the shorter, there is generally an obvious

bias in favour of one form rather than the other. Dr. Johnson says, "The

comparison of adjectives is very uncertain; and being much regulated by

commodiousness of utterance, or agreeableness of sound, is not easily

reduced to rules. Monosyllables are commonly compared. Polysyllables, or

words of more than two syllables, are seldom compared otherwise than by

\_more\_ and \_most\_. Dissyllables are seldom compared if they terminate in

\_full, less, ing, ous, ed, id, at, ent, ain, or ive\_."--\_Gram. of the

English Tongue\_, p. 6. "When the positive contains but one syllable, the

degrees are usually formed by adding \_er\_ or \_est\_. When the positive

contains two syllables, it is matter of taste which method you shall use in

forming the degrees. The ear is, in this case, the best guide. But, when

the positive contains more than two syllables, the degrees must be formed

by the use of \_more\_ and \_most\_. We may say, \_tenderer\_ and \_tenderest,

pleasanter\_ and \_pleasantest, prettier\_ and \_prettiest\_; but who could

endure \_delicater\_ and \_delicatest\_?"--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, p. 81. \_Quiet,

bitter, clever, sober\_, and perhaps some others like them, are still

regularly compared; but such words as \_secretest, famousest, virtuousest,

powerfullest\_, which were used by Milton, have gone out of fashion. The

following, though not very commonly used, are perhaps allowable. "Yet these

are the two \_commonest\_ occupations of mankind."--\_Philological Museum\_, i,

431. "Their \_pleasantest\_ walks throughout life must be guarded by armed

men."--\_Ib.\_, i, 437. "Franklin possessed the rare talent of drawing useful

lessons from the \_commonest\_ occurrences."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 323.

"Unbidden guests are often \_welcomest\_ when they are gone."--SHAK.: \_in

Joh. Dict.\_

"There was a lad, th' \_unluckiest\_ of his crew,

Was still contriving something bad, but new."--KING: \_ib.\_

OBS. 2.--I make a distinction between the regular comparison by \_er\_ and

\_est\_, and the comparison by adverbs; because, in a grammatical point of

view, these two methods are totally different: the meaning, though the

same, being expressed in the one case, by an inflection of the adjective;

and in the other, by a phrase consisting of two different parts of speech.

If the placing of an adverb before an adjective is to be called a

grammatical modification or variation of the latter word, we shall have

many other degrees than those which are enumerated above. The words may

with much more propriety be parsed separately, the degree being ascribed to

the adverb--or, if you please, to both words, for both are varied in sense

by the inflection of the former. The degrees in which qualities may exist

in nature, are infinitely various; but the only degrees with which the

grammarian is concerned, are those which our variation of the adjective or

adverb enables us to express--including, as of course we must, the state or

sense of the primitive word, as one. The reasoning which would make the

positive degree to be no degree, would also make the nominative case, or

the \_casus rectus\_ of the Latins, to be no case.

OBS. 3.--Whenever the adjective itself denotes these degrees, and is duly

varied in form to express them, they properly belong to it; as, \_worthy,

worthier, worthiest\_. (Though no apology can be made for the frequent error

of confounding the \_degree of a quality\_, with the \_verbal sign\_ which

expresses it.) If an adverb is employed for this purpose, that also is

compared, and the two degrees thus formed or expressed, are properly its

own; as, worthy, \_more\_ worthy, \_most\_ worthy. But these same degrees may

be yet otherwise expressed; as, worthy, \_in a higher degree\_ worthy, \_in

the highest degree\_ worthy. Here also the adjective \_worthy\_ is virtually

compared, as before; but only the adjective \_high\_ is grammatically

modified. Again, we may form three degrees with several adverbs to each,

thus: Pos., \_very truly\_ worthy; Comp., \_much more truly\_ worthy; Sup.,

\_much the most truly\_ worthy. There are also other adverbs, which, though

not varied in themselves like \_much, more, most\_, may nevertheless have

nearly the same effect upon the adjective; as, worthy, \_comparatively\_

worthy, \_superlatively\_ worthy. I make these remarks, because many

grammarians have erroneously parsed the adverbs \_more\_ and \_most, less\_ and

\_least\_, as parts of the adjective.

OBS. 4.--Harris, in his Hermes, or Philosophical Inquiry concerning

Universal Grammar, has very unceremoniously pronounced the doctrine of

three degrees of comparison, to be \_absurd\_; and the author of the British

Grammar, as he emotes the whole passage without offering any defence of

that doctrine, seems to second the allegation. "Mr. Harris observes, that,

'There cannot well be more than two degrees; one to denote simple excess,

and one to denote superlative. Were we indeed to introduce more degrees, we

ought perhaps to introduce infinite, which is absurd. For why stop at a

limited number, when in all subjects, susceptible of intension, the

intermediate excesses are in a manner infinite? There are infinite degrees

of \_more white\_ between the first simple \_white\_ and the superlative

\_whitest\_; the same may be said of \_more great, more strong, more minute\_,

&c. The doctrine of grammarians about \_three\_ such degrees, which they call

the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative, must needs be absurd;

both because in their Positive there is no comparison at all, and because

their Superlative is a Comparative as much as their Comparative itself.'

\_Hermes\_, p. 197."--\_Brit. Gram.\_, p. 98. This objection is rashly urged.

No comparison can be imagined without bringing together as many as two

terms, and if the positive is one of these, it is a degree of comparison;

though neither this nor the superlative is, for that reason, "\_a

Comparative\_." Why we stop at three degrees, I have already shown: we have

three \_forms\_, and only three.

OBS. 5.--"The termination \_ish\_ may be accounted in some sort a degree of

comparison, by which the signification is diminished below the positive, as

\_black, blackish\_, or tending to blackness; \_salt, saltish\_, or having a

little taste of salt:[179] they therefore admit of no comparison. This

termination is seldom added but to words expressing sensible qualities, nor

often to words of above one syllable, and is scarcely used in the solemn or

sublime style."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_ "The \_first\_ [degree] denotes a

slight degree of the quality, and is expressed by the termination \_ish\_;

as, \_reddish, brownish, yellowish\_. This may be denominated the \_imperfect\_

degree of the attribute."--\_Dr. Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 47. I doubt

the correctness of the view taken above by Johnson, and dissent entirely

from Webster, about his "\_first degree\_ of comparison." Of adjectives in

\_ish\_ we have perhaps a hundred; but nine out of ten of them are derived

clearly from \_nouns\_, as, \_boyish, girlish\_; and who can prove that

\_blackish, saltish, reddish, brownish\_, and \_yellowish\_, are not also from

the \_nouns, black, salt, red, brown\_, and \_yellow\_? or that "a \_more

reddish\_ tinge,"--"a \_more saltish\_ taste," are not correct phrases? There

is, I am persuaded, no good reason for noticing this termination as

constituting a degree of comparison. All "double comparisons" are said to

be ungrammatical; but, if \_ish\_ forms a degree, it is such a degree as may

be compared again: as,

"And seem \_more learnedish\_ than those

That at a greater charge compose."--\_Butler\_.

OBS. 6.--Among the degrees of comparison, some have enumerated that of

\_equality\_; as when we say, "It is \_as sweet as\_ honey." Here is indeed a

comparison, but it is altogether in the \_positive\_ degree, and needs no

other name. This again refutes Harris; who says, that in the positive there

is no comparison at all. But further: it is plain, that in this degree

there may be comparisons of \_inequality\_ also; as, "Molasses is \_not so

sweet\_ as honey."--"Civility is \_not so slight\_ a matter as it is commonly

thought."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 92. Nay, such comparisons may equal any

superlative. Thus it is said, I think, in the Life of Robert Hall:

"Probably no human being ever before suffered \_so much\_ bodily pain." What

a preëminence is here! and yet the form of the adjective is only that of

the positive degree. "Nothing \_so uncertain\_ as general reputation."--\_Art

of Thinking\_, p. 50. "Nothing \_so nauseous\_ as undistinguishing

civility."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. These, likewise, would be strong expressions, if

they were correct English. But, to my apprehension, every such comparison

of equality involves a solecism, when, as it here happens, the former term

includes the latter. The word \_nothing\_ is a general negative, and

\_reputation\_ is a particular affirmative. The comparison of equality

between them, is therefore certainly improper: because \_nothing\_ cannot be

equal to \_something\_; and, reputation being something, and of course equal

to itself, the proposition is evidently untrue. It ought to be, "Nothing

\_is more uncertain than\_ general reputation." This is the same as to say,

"General reputation is \_as uncertain as any thing\_ that can be named." Or

else the former term should exempt the latter; as. "\_Nothing else\_"--or,

"No \_other\_ thing, is \_so uncertain\_ as" \_this popular honour, public

esteem\_, or "\_general reputation\_." And so of all similar examples.

OBS. 7.--In all comparisons, care must be taken to adapt the terms to the

degree which is expressed by the adjective or adverb. The superlative

degree requires that the object to which it relates, be one of those with

which it is compared; as, "\_Eve\_ was \_the fairest\_ of women." The

comparative degree, on the contrary, requires that the object spoken of be

not included among those with which it is compared; as, "\_Eve\_ was \_fairer\_

than any of \_her daughters\_." To take the inclusive term here, and say,

"\_Eve\_ was \_fairer\_ than any \_woman\_," would be no less absurd, than

Milton's assertion, that "Eve was \_the fairest\_ of \_her daughters\_:" the

former supposes that she was \_not a woman\_; the latter, that she was \_one

of her own daughters\_. But Milton's solecism is double; he makes Adam \_one

of his own sons\_:--

"Adam the goodliest man of men since born

His sons, the fairest of her daughters Eve."--\_P. Lost\_, B. iv, l. 324.

OBS. 8.--"Such adjectives," says Churchill, "as have in themselves a

superlative signification, or express qualities not susceptible of degrees,

do not properly admit either the comparative or [the] superlative form.

Under this rule may be included \_all adjectives with a negative

prefix\_."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 80. Again: "As \_immediate\_ signifies instant,

present with regard to time, Prior should not have written '\_more\_

immediate.' \_Dr. Johnson\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 233. "Hooker has \_unaptest\_; Locke,

\_more uncorrupted\_; Holder, \_more undeceivable\_: for these the proper

expressions would have been the opposite signs without the negation: \_least

apt, less corrupted, less deceivable\_. Watts speaks of 'a \_most unpassable\_

barrier.' If he had simply said 'an unpassable barrier,' we should have

understood it at once in the strongest sense, as a barrier impossible to be

surmounted: but, by attempting to express something more, he gives an idea

of something less; we perceive, that his \_unpassable\_ means \_difficult to

pass\_. This is the mischief of the propensity to exaggeration; which,

striving after strength, sinks into weakness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 234.

OBS. 9.--The foregoing remarks from Churchill appear \_in general\_ to have

been dictated by good sense; but, if his own practice is right, there must

be some exceptions to his rule respecting the comparison of adjectives with

a negative prefix; for, in the phrase "\_less imprudent\_," which, according

to a passage quoted before, he will have to be different from "\_more

prudent\_," he himself furnishes an example of such comparison. In fact,

very many words of that class are compared by good writers: as, "Nothing is

\_more unnecessary\_."--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. v. "What is yet \_more

unaccountable\_."--ROGERS: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "It is hard to determine which is

\_most uneligible\_."--\_Id., ib.\_ "Where it appears the \_most unbecoming\_ and

\_unnatural\_."--ADDISON: \_ib.\_ "Men of the best sense and of the \_most

unblemished\_ lives."--\_Id., ib.\_ "March and September are the \_most

unsettled\_ and \_unequable\_ of seasons."--BENTLEY: \_ib.\_ "Barcelona was

taken by a \_most unexpected\_ accident."--SWIFT: \_ib.\_ "The \_most barren\_

and \_unpleasant\_."--WOODWARD: \_ib.\_ "O good, but \_most unwise\_

patricians!"--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "\_More unconstant\_ than the wind."--\_Id., ib.\_

"We may say \_more\_ or \_less imperfect\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 168. "Some

of those [passions] which act with the \_most irresistible\_ energy upon the

hearts of mankind, are altogether omitted in the catalogue of

Aristotle."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, i, 380. "The wrong of him who presumes to

talk of owning me, is \_too unmeasured\_ to be softened by

kindness."--\_Channing, on Emancipation\_, p. 52. "Which, we are sensible,

are \_more inconclusive\_ than the rest."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 319.

"Ere yet the salt of \_most unrighteous\_ tears

Had left the flushing in her galled eyes."--\_Shak.\_

OBS. 10.--Comparison must not be considered a general property of

adjectives. It belongs chiefly to the class which I call common adjectives,

and is by no means applicable to all of these. \_Common adjectives\_, or

epithets denoting quality, are perhaps more numerous than all the other

classes put together. Many of these, and a few that are pronominal, may be

varied by comparison; and some \_participial\_ adjectives may be compared by

means of the adverbs. But adjectives formed from \_proper names\_, all the

numerals, and most of the compounds, are in no way susceptible of

comparison. All nouns used adjectively, as an \_iron\_ bar, an \_evening\_

school, a \_mahogany\_ chair, a \_South-Sea\_ dream, are also incapable of

comparison. In the title of "His \_Most Christian\_ Majesty," the superlative

adverb is applied to a \_proper adjective\_; but who will pretend that we

ought to understand by it "\_the highest degree\_" of Christian attainment?

It might seem uncourtly to suggest that this is "an abuse of the king's

English," I shall therefore say no such thing. Pope compares the word

Christian, in the following couplet:--

"Go, purified by flames ascend the sky,

My better and \_more Christian\_ progeny."--\_Dunciad\_, B. i, l. 227.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

The following adjectives are compared irregularly: \_good, better, best;

bad, evil\_, or \_ill, worse, worst; little, less, least; much, more, most;

many, more, most\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In \_English\_, and also in \_Latin\_, most adjectives that denote

\_place\_ or \_situation\_, not only form the superlative irregularly, but are

also either defective or redundant in comparison. Thus:

I. The following nine have more than one superlative: \_far, farther,

farthest, farmost\_, or \_farthermost; near, nearer, nearest\_ or \_next; fore,

former, foremost\_ or \_first; hind, hinder, hindmost\_ or \_hindermost; in,

inner, inmost\_ or \_innermost; out, outer\_, or \_utter, outmost\_ or \_utmost,

outermost\_ or \_uttermost; up, upper, upmost\_ or \_uppermost; low, lower,

lowest\_ or \_lowermost; late, later\_ or \_latter, latest\_ or \_last\_.

II. The following five want the positive: [\_aft\_, adv.,] \_after, aftmost\_

or \_aftermost\_; [\_forth\_, adv., formerly \_furth\_,[180]] \_further, furthest\_

or \_furthermost; hither, hithermost; nether, nethermost; under, undermost\_.

III. The following want the comparative: \_front, frontmost; rear, rearmost;

head, headmost; end, endmost; top, topmost; bottom, bottommost; mid\_ or

\_middle, midst,[181] midmost\_ or \_middlemost; north, northmost; south,

southmost; east, eastmost; west, westmost; northern, northernmost;

southern, southernmost; eastern, easternmost; western, westernmost\_.

OBS. 2.--Many of these irregular words are not always used as adjectives,

but oftener as nouns, adverbs, or prepositions. The sense in which they are

employed, will show to what class they belong. The terms \_fore\_ and \_hind,

front\_ and \_rear, right\_ and \_left, in\_ and \_out, high\_ and \_low, top\_ and

\_bottom, up\_ and \_down, upper\_ and \_under, mid\_ and \_after\_, all but the

last pair, are in direct contrast with each other. Many of them are often

joined in composition with other words; and some, when used as adjectives

of place, are rarely separated from their nouns: as, \_in\_land, \_out\_house,

\_mid\_-sea, \_after\_-ages. Practice is here so capricious, I find it

difficult to determine whether the compounding of these terms is proper or

not. It is a case about which he that inquires most, may perhaps be most in

doubt. If the joining of the words prevents the possibility of mistaking

the adjective for a preposition, it prevents also the separate

classification of the adjective and the noun, and thus in some sense

destroys the former by making the whole a noun. Dr. Webster writes thus:

"FRONTROOM, \_n.\_ A room or apartment in the \_forepart\_ of a house.

BACKROOM, \_n.\_ A room behind the \_front room\_, or in the \_back part\_ of the

house."--\_Octavo Dict.\_ So of many phrases by which people tell of turning

things, or changing the position of their parts; as, \_in\_side out,

\_out\_side \_in; up\_side \_down, down\_side \_up\_; \_wrong\_ end \_foremost,

but\_-end \_foremost\_; \_fore\_-part \_back, fore\_-end \_aft\_; \_hind\_ side

\_before, back\_side \_before\_. Here all these contrasted particles seem to be

adjectives of place or situation. What grammarians in general would choose

to call them, it is hard to say; probably, many would satisfy themselves

with calling the whole "\_an adverbial phrase\_,"--the common way of

disposing of every thing which it is difficult to analyze. These, and the

following examples from Scott, are a fair specimen of the uncertainty of

present usage:

"The herds without a keeper strayed,

The plough was in \_mid-furrow\_ staid."--\_Lady of the Lake\_.

"The eager huntsman knew his bound,

And in \_mid chase\_ called off his hound."--\_Ibidem\_.

OBS. 3.--For the chief points of the compass, we have so many adjectives,

and so many modes of varying or comparing them, that it is difficult to

tell their number, or to know which to choose in practice. (1.) \_North,

south, east\_, and \_west\_, are familiarly used both as nouns and as

adjectives. From these it seems not improper to form superlatives, as

above, by adding \_most\_; as, "From Aroar to Nebo, and the wild of

\_southmost\_ Abarim."--\_Milton\_. "There are no rivulets or springs in the

island of Feror, the \_westmost\_ of the Canaries."--\_White's Nat. Hist.\_

(2.) These primitive terms may also be compared, in all three of the

degrees, by the adverbs \_farther\_ and \_farthest\_, or \_further\_ and

\_furthest\_; as, "Which is yet \_farther west\_."--\_Bacon\_. (3.) Though we

never employ as separate words the comparatives \_norther, souther, easter,

wester\_, we have \_northerly, southerly, easterly\_, and \_westerly\_, which

seem to have been formed from such comparatives, by adding \_ly\_; and these

four may be compared by the adverbs \_more\_ and \_most\_, or \_less\_ and

\_least\_: as, "These hills give us a view of the \_most easterly, southerly\_,

and \_westerly\_ parts of England."--GRAUNT: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ (4.) From these

supposed comparatives likewise, some authors form the superlatives

\_northermost, southermost, eastermost\_, and \_westermost\_; as, "From the

\_westermost\_ part of Oyster bay."--\_Dr. Webster's Hist. U. S.\_, p. 126.

"And three miles southward of the \_southermost\_ part of said

bay."--\_Trumbull's Hist. of Amer.\_, Vol. i, p. 88. "Pockanocket was on the

\_westermost\_ line of Plymouth Colony."--\_Ib.\_, p. 44. "As far as the

\_northermost\_ branch of the said bay or river."--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. The

propriety of these is at least questionable; and, as they are neither very

necessary to the language, nor recognized by any of our lexicographers, I

forbear to approve them. (5.) From the four primitives we have also a third

series of positives, ending in \_ern\_; as, \_northern, southern, eastern,

western\_. These, though they have no comparatives of their own, not only

form superlatives by assuming the termination \_most\_, but are sometimes

compared, perhaps in both degrees, by a separate use of the adverbs: as,

"\_Southernmost, a\_. Furthest towards the south."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Until

it shall intersect the \_northernmost\_ part of the thirty-first degree of

north latitude."--\_Articles of Peace\_. "To the \_north-westernmost\_ head of

Connecticut river."--\_Ib.\_ "Thence through the said lake to the \_most

north-western\_ point thereof."--\_Ib.\_

OBS. 4.--It may be remarked of the comparatives \_former\_ and \_latter\_ or

\_hinder, upper\_ and \_under\_ or \_nether, inner\_ and \_outer\_ or \_utter,

after\_ and \_hither\_; as well as of the Latin \_superior\_ and \_inferior,

anterior\_ and \_posterior, interior\_ and \_exterior, prior\_ and \_ulterior,

senior\_ and \_junior, major\_ and \_minor\_; that they cannot, like other

comparatives, be construed with the conjunction \_than\_. After all genuine

English comparatives, this conjunction may occur, because it is the only

fit word for introducing the latter term of comparison; but we never say

one thing is \_former\_ or \_latter, superior\_ or \_inferior, than\_ an other.

And so of all the rest here named. Again, no real comparative or

superlative can ever need an other superadded to it; but \_inferior\_ and

\_superior\_ convey ideas that do not always preclude the additional

conception of \_more\_ or \_less\_: as, "With respect to high and low notes,

pronunciation is still \_more inferior\_ to singing."--\_Kames, Elements of

Criticism\_, Vol. ii, p. 73. "The mistakes which the \_most superior\_

understanding is apt to fall into."--\_West's Letters to a Young Lady\_, p.

117.

OBS. 5.--Double comparatives and double superlatives, being in general

awkward and unfashionable, as well as tautological, ought to be avoided.

Examples: "The Duke of Milan, and his \_more braver\_ daughter, could control

thee."--\_Shak., Tempest\_. Say, "his \_more gallant\_ daughter." "What in me

was purchased, falls upon thee in a \_more fairer\_ sort."--\_Id., Henry IV\_.

Say, "\_fairer\_," or, "\_more honest\_;" for "\_purchased\_" here means

\_stolen\_. "Changed to a \_worser\_ shape thou canst not be."--\_Id., Hen. VI\_.

Say, "a \_worse\_ shape"--or, "an \_uglier\_ shape." "After the \_most

straitest\_ sect of our religion, I lived a Pharisee."--\_Acts\_, xxvi, 5.

Say, "the \_strictest\_ sect." "Some say he's mad; others, that \_lesser\_ hate

him, do call it valiant fury."--\_Shak\_. Say, "others, that hate him

\_less\_." In this last example, \_lesser\_ is used adverbially; in which

construction it is certainly incorrect. But against \_lesser\_ as an

adjective, some grammarians have spoken with more severity, than comports

with a proper respect for authority. Dr. Johnson says, "LESSER, \_adj\_. A

barbarous corruption of \_less\_, formed by the vulgar from the habit of

terminating comparatives in \_er; afterward adopted by poets, and then by

writers of prose, till it has all the authority which a mode originally

erroneous can derive from custom\_."--\_Quarto Dict.\_ With no great fairness,

Churchill quotes this passage as far as the semicolon, and there stops. The

position thus taken, he further endeavours to strengthen, by saying,

"\_Worser\_, though \_not more barbarous\_, offends the ear in a much greater

degree, because it has not been so frequently used."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 232.

Example: "And God made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day,

and the \_lesser\_ light to rule the night."--\_Gen.\_, i, 16. Kirkham, after

making an \_imitation\_ of this passage, remarks upon it: "\_Lesser\_ is \_as

incorrect\_ as \_badder, gooder, worser\_."--\_Gram.\_, p. 77. The judgement of

any critic who is ignorant enough to say this, is worthy only of contempt.

\_Lesser\_ is still frequently used by the most tasteful authors, both in

verse and prose: as, "It is the glowing style of a man who is negligent of

\_lesser\_ graces."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 189.

"Athos, Olympus, Ætna, Atlas, made

These hills seem things of \_lesser\_ dignity."--\_Byron\_.

OBS. 6.--The adjective \_little\_ is used in different senses; for it

contrasts sometimes with \_great\_, and sometimes with \_much\_. \_Lesser\_

appears to refer only to size. Hence \_less\_ and \_lesser\_ are not always

equivalent terms. \_Lesser\_ means \_smaller\_, and contrasts only with

\_greater\_. \_Less\_ contrasts sometimes with \_greater\_, but oftener with

\_more\_, the comparative of \_much\_; for, though it may mean \_not so large\_,

its most common meaning is \_not so much\_. It ought to be observed,

likewise, that \_less\_ is not an adjective of \_number\_,[182] though not

unfrequently used as such. It does not mean \_fewer\_, and is therefore not

properly employed in sentences like the following: "In all verbs, there are

no \_less\_ than three things implied at once."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 81.

"\_Smaller\_ things than three," is nonsense; and so, in reality, is what the

Doctor here says. \_Less\_ is not the proper opposite to \_more\_, when \_more\_

is the comparative of \_many: few, fewer, fewest\_, are the only words which

contrast regularly with \_many, more, most\_. In the following text, these

comparatives are rightly employed: "And to the \_more\_ ye shall give the

\_more\_ inheritance, and to the \_fewer\_ ye shall give the \_less\_

inheritance."--\_Numbers\_, xxxiii, 54. But if writers will continue to use

\_less\_ for \_fewer\_, so that "\_less cattle\_," for instance, may mean "\_fewer

cattle\_;" we shall be under a sort of \_necessity\_ to retain \_lesser\_, in

order to speak intelligibly: as, "It shall be for the sending-forth of

oxen, and for the treading of \_lesser\_ cattle."--\_Isaiah\_, vii, 25. I have

no partiality for the word \_lesser\_, neither will I make myself ridiculous

by flouting at its rudeness. "This word," says Webster, "is a corruption,

but [it is] too well established to be discarded. Authors always write the

\_Lesser\_ Asia."--\_Octavo Dict.\_ "By the same reason, may a man punish the

\_lesser\_ breaches of that law."--\_Locke\_. "When we speak of the \_lesser\_

differences among the tastes of men."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 20. "In greater

or \_lesser\_ degrees of complexity."--\_Burke, on Sublime\_, p. 94. "The

greater ought not to succumb to the \_lesser\_."--\_Dillwyn's Reflections\_, p.

128. "To such productions, \_lesser\_ composers must resort for

ideas."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p. 413.

"The larger here, and there the \_lesser\_ lambs,

The new-fall'n young herd bleating for their dams."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 7.--Our grammarians deny the comparison of many adjectives, from a

false notion that they are already superlatives. Thus W. Allen: "Adjectives

compounded with the Latin preposition \_per\_, are already superlative: as,

\_perfect, perennial, permanent\_, &c."--\_Elements of E. Gram.\_, p. 52. In

reply to this, I would say, that nothing is really superlative, in English,

but what has the form and construction of the superlative; as, "The \_most

permanent\_ of all dyes." No word beginning with \_per\_, is superlative by

virtue of this Latin prefix. "Separate spirits, which are beings that have

\_perfecter\_ knowledge and greater happiness than we, must needs have also a

\_perfecter\_ way of communicating their thoughts than we have."--\_Locke's

Essay\_, B. ii, Ch. 24, §36, This mode of comparison is not now good, but it

shows that \_perfect\_ is no superlative. Thus Kirkham: "The \_following\_

adjectives, and \_many others\_, are \_always in the superlative degree\_;

because, by expressing a quality \_in the highest degree\_, they carry in

themselves a superlative signification: \_chief, extreme, perfect, right,

wrong, honest, just, true, correct, sincere, vast, immense, ceaseless,

infinite, endless, unparalleled, universal, supreme, unlimited, omnipotent,

all-wise, eternal\_." [183]--\_Gram.\_, p. 73. So the Rev. David Blair: "The

words \_perfect, certain, infinite, universal, chief, supreme, right, true,

extreme, superior\_, and some others, which express a perfect and

superlative sense in themselves, do not admit of comparison."--\_English

Gram.\_, p. 81. Now, according to Murray's definition, which Kirkham adopts,

none of these words can be at all in the superlative degree. On the

contrary, there are several among them, from which true superlatives are

frequently and correctly formed. Where are the positives which are here

supposed to be "\_increased to the highest degree\_?" Every real superlative

in our language, except \_best\_ and \_worst, most\_ and \_least, first\_ and

\_last\_, with the still more irregular word \_next\_, is a derivative, formed

from some other English word, by adding \_est\_ or \_most\_; as, \_truest,

hindmost\_. The propriety or impropriety of comparing the foregoing words,

or any of the "\_many others\_" of which this author speaks, is to be

determined according to their meaning, and according to the usage of good

writers, and not by the dictation of a feeble pedant, or upon the

supposition that if compared they would form "\_double superlatives\_."

OBS. 8.--\_Chief\_ is from the French word \_chef\_, the \_head: chiefest\_ is

therefore no more a double superlative than \_headmost\_: "But when the

\_headmost\_ foes appeared."--\_Scott\_. Nor are \_chief\_ and \_chiefest\_

equivalent terms: "Doeg an Edomite, the \_chiefest\_ of the herdsmen."--\_1

Samuel\_, xxi, 7. "The \_chief\_ of the herdsmen," would convey a different

meaning; it would be either the \_leader\_ of the herdsmen, or the \_principal

part\_ of them. \_Chiefest\_, however, has often been used where \_chief\_ would

have been better; as, "He sometimes denied admission to the \_chiefest\_

officers of the army."--\_Clarendon\_, let us look further at Kirkham's list

of \_absolute\_ "\_superlatives\_."

OBS. 9.--\_Extreme\_ is from the Latin superlative \_extremus\_, and of course

its literal signification is not really susceptible of increase. Yet

\_extremest\_ has been used, and is still used, by some of the very best

writers; as, "They thought it the \_extremest\_ of evils."--\_Bacon\_. "That on

the sea's \_extremest\_ border stood."--\_Addison\_. "How, to \_extremest\_

thrill of agony."--\_Pollok\_, B. viii, l. 270. "I go th' \_extremest\_ remedy

to prove."--\_Dryden\_. "In \_extremest\_ poverty."--\_Swift\_. "The hairy fool

stood on th' \_extremest\_ verge of the swift brook, augmenting it with

tears."--\_Shak\_. "While the \_extremest\_ parts of the earth were meditating

submission."--\_Atterbury\_. "His writings are poetical to the \_extremest\_

boundaries of poetry."--\_Adams's Rhetoric\_, i, 87. In prose, this

superlative is not now very common; but the poets still occasionally use

it, for the sake of their measure; and it ought to be noticed that the

simple adjective is \_not partitive\_. If we say, for the first example, "the

\_extreme\_ of evils;" we make the word a \_noun\_, and do not convey exactly

the same idea that is there expressed.

OBS. 10.--\_Perfect\_, if taken in its

strictest sense, must not be compared; but this word, like many others

which mean most in the positive, is often used with a certain latitude of

meaning, which renders its comparison by the adverbs not altogether

inadmissible; nor is it destitute of authority, as I have already shown.

(See Obs. 8th, p. 280.) "From the first rough sketches, to the \_more

perfect\_ draughts."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 152. "The \_most

perfect\_."--\_Adams's Lect. on Rhet.\_, i, 99 and 136; ii, 17 and 57:

\_Blair's Lect.\_, pp. 20 and 399. "The most \_beautiful and perfect\_ example

of analysis."--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. 10. "The plainest, \_most

perfect\_, and most useful manual."--\_Bullions's E. Gram., Rev.\_, p. 7. "Our

sight is the \_most perfect\_, and the most delightful, of all our

senses."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 411; \_Blair's Lect.\_, pp. 115 and 194;

\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 322. Here Murray anonymously copied Blair. "And to

render natives \_more perfect\_ in the knowledge of it."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_,

p. 171; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 366. Here Murray copied Campbell, the most

accurate of all his masters. Whom did he copy when he said, "The phrases,

\_more perfect\_, and \_most perfect\_, are improper?"--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 168.

But if these are wrong, so is the following sentence: "No poet has ever

attained a \_greater perfection\_ than Horace."--\_Blair's Lect.\_, p. 398. And

also this: "Why are we brought into the world \_less perfect\_ in respect to

our nature?"--\_West's Letters to a Young Lady\_, p. 220.

OBS. 11.--\_Right\_ and \_wrong\_ are not often compared by good writers;

though we sometimes see such phrases as \_more right\_ and \_more wrong\_, and

such words as \_rightest\_ and \_wrongest\_: "'Tis always in the \_wrongest\_

sense."--\_Butler\_. "A method of attaining the \_rightest\_ and greatest

happiness."--PRICE: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 78. "It is no \_more right\_ to

steal apples, than it is to steal money."--\_Webster's New Spelling-Book\_,

p. 118. There are equivalent expressions which seem preferable; as, \_more

proper, more erroneous, most proper, most erroneous\_.

OBS. 12.--\_Honest, just, true, correct, sincere\_, and \_vast\_, may all be

compared at pleasure. Pope's Essay on Criticism is \_more correct\_ than any

thing this modest pretender can write; and in it, he may find the

comparative \_juster\_, the superlatives \_justest, truest, sincerest\_, and

the phrases, "\_So vast\_ a throng,"--"\_So vast\_ is art:" all of which are

contrary to his teaching. "\_Unjuster\_ dealing is used in buying than in

selling."--\_Butler's Poems\_, p. 163. "\_Iniquissimam\_ pacem \_justissimo\_

bello antefero."--\_Cicero\_. "I prefer the \_unjustest\_ peace before the

\_justest\_ war."--\_Walker's English Particles\_, p. 68. The poet Cowley used

the word \_honestest\_; which is not now very common. So Swift: "What

\_honester\_ folks never durst for their ears."--\_The Yahoo's Overthrow\_. So

Jucius: "The \_honestest\_ and ablest men."--\_Letter XVIII\_. "The sentence

would be \_more correct\_ in the following form."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p.

223. "Elegance is chiefly gained by studying the \_correctest\_

writers."--\_Holmes's Rhetoric\_, p. 27. \_Honest\_ and \_correct\_, for the sake

of euphony, require the adverbs; as, \_more honest\_, "\_most

correct\_."--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. iv. \_Vast, vaster, vastest\_, are

words as smooth, as \_fast, faster, fastest\_; and \_more vast\_ is certainly

as good English as \_more just\_: "Shall mortal man be \_more just\_ than

God?"--\_Job\_, iv, 17. "Wilt thou condemn him that is \_most just\_?"--\_Ib.\_,

xxxiv, 17. "More wise, more learn'd, \_more just\_, more-everything."--\_Pope.

Universal\_ is often compared by the adverbs, but certainly with no

reënforcement of meaning: as, "One of the \_most universal\_ precepts, is,

that the orator himself should feel the passion."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, i, 379.

"Though not \_so universal\_."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 311. "This experience is general,

though not \_so universal\_, as the absence of memory in childhood."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 362. "We can suppose no motive which would \_more universally\_

operate."--\_Dr. Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 55. "Music is known to have been \_more

universally\_ studied."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "We shall not wonder, that his

grammar has been \_so universally\_ applauded."--\_Walker's Recommendation in

Murray's Gram.\_, ii, 306. "The pronoun \_it\_ is the \_most universal\_ of all

the pronouns."--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 66. Thus much for one half of this

critic's twenty-two "\_superlatives\_." The rest are simply adjectives that

are not susceptible of comparison: they are not "superlatives" at all. A

man might just as well teach, that \_good\_ is a superlative, and not

susceptible of comparison, because "\_there is none good but one\_."

OBS. 13.--Pronominal adjectives, when their nouns are expressed, simply

relate to them, and have no modifications: except \_this\_ and \_that\_, which

form the plurals \_these\_ and \_those\_; and \_much, many\_, and a few others,

which are compared. Examples: "Whence hath \_this\_ man \_this\_ wisdom, and

\_these\_ mighty works?"--\_Matt.\_, xiii, 54. "But \_some\_ man will say, How

are the dead raised up? and with \_what\_ body do they come?"--\_1 Cor.\_, xv,

35. "The \_first\_ man Adam was made a living soul; the \_last\_ Adam was made

a quickening spirit."--\_Ib.\_, 45. So, when one pronominal adjective

"precedes an other, the former \_must be taken\_ simply as an adjective;" as,

"Those suns are set. O rise \_some other\_ such!"

--\_Cowper's Task\_, B. ii, l. 252.

OBS. 14.--Pronominal adjectives, when their nouns are not expressed, may be

parsed as representing them in \_person, number, gender\_, and \_case\_; but

those who prefer it, may supply the ellipsis, and parse the adjective,

\_simply as an adjective\_. Example: "He threatens \_many\_, who injures

\_one\_."--\_Kames\_. Here it may be said, "\_Many\_ is a pronominal adjective,

meaning \_many persons\_; of the third person, plural number, masculine

gender, and objective case." Or those who will take the word simply as an

adjective, may say, "\_Many\_ is a pronominal adjective, of the positive

degree, compared \_many, more, most\_, and relating to \_persons\_ understood."

And so of "\_one\_," which represents, or relates to, \_person\_ understood.

Either say, "\_One\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared," and give the

\_three definitions\_ accordingly; or else say, "One is a pronominal

adjective, relating to \_person\_ understood; of the third person, singular

number, masculine gender, and objective case," and give the \_six

definitions\_ accordingly.

OBS. 15.--\_Elder\_ for \_older\_, and \_eldest\_ for \_oldest\_, are still

frequently used; though the ancient positive, \_eld\_ for \_old\_, is now

obsolete. Hence some have represented \_old\_ as having a two-fold

comparison; and have placed it, not very properly, among the irregular

adjectives. The comparatives \_elder\_ and \_better\_, are often used as

\_nouns\_; so are the Latin comparatives \_superior\_ and \_inferior, interior\_

and \_exterior, senior\_ and \_junior, major\_ and \_minor\_: as, The \_elder's\_

advice,--One of the \_elders\_,--His \_betters\_,--Our \_superiors\_,--The

\_interior\_ of the country,--A handsome \_exterior\_,--Your \_seniors\_,--My

\_juniors\_,--A \_major\_ in the army,--He is yet a \_minor\_. The word \_other\_,

which has something of the nature of a comparative, likewise takes the form

of a noun, as before suggested; and, in that form, the reader, if he will,

may call it a noun: as, "What do ye more than \_others\_?"--\_Bible\_. "God in

thus much is bounded, that the evil hath he left unto \_an other\_; and \_that

Dark Other\_ hath usurped the evil which Omnipotence laid down."--\_Tupper's

Book of Thoughts\_, p. 45. Some call it a pronoun. But it seems to be

pronominal, merely by ellipsis of the noun after it; although, unlike a

mere adjective, it assumes the ending of the noun, to mark that ellipsis.

Perhaps therefore, the best explanation of it would be this: "'\_Others\_ is

a pronominal adjective, having the form of a noun, and put for \_other men\_;

in the third person, plural number, masculine gender, and nominative case."

The gender of this word varies, according to that of the contrasted term;

and the case, according to the relation it bears to other words. In the

following example, it is neuter and objective: "The fibres of this muscle

act as those of \_others\_."--\_Cheyne\_. Here, "as \_those of others\_," means,

"as \_the fibres\_ of \_other muscles\_."

OBS. 16.--"Comparatives and superlatives seem sometimes to part with their

relative nature, and only to retain their \_intensive\_, especially those

which are formed by the superlative adverb \_most\_; as, 'A \_most learned\_

man,'--'A \_most brave\_ man:' i. e. not the bravest or the most learned man

that ever was, but a man possessing bravery or learning in a very eminent

degree."--See \_Alexander Murray's Gram.\_, p. 110. This use of the terms of

comparison is thought by some not to be very grammatical.

OBS. 17.--Contractions of the superlative termination \_est\_, as \_high'st\_

for \_highest, bigg'st for biggest\_, though sometimes used by the poets, are

always inelegant, and may justly be considered grammatically improper. They

occur most frequently in doggerel verse, like that of \_Hudibras\_; the

author of which work, wrote, in his droll fashion, not only the foregoing

monosyllables, but \_learned'st\_ for \_most learned, activ'st\_ for \_most

active, desperat'st\_ for \_most desperate, epidemical'st\_ for \_most

epidemical\_, &c.

"And \_th' activ'st\_ fancies share as loose alloys,

For want of equal weight to counterpoise."--\_Butler's Poems\_.

"Who therefore finds the \_artificial'st\_ fools

Have not been chang'd \_i th'\_ cradle, but the schools."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143.

OBS. 18.--Nouns used adjectively are not varied in number to agree with the

nouns to which they relate, but what is singular or plural when used

substantively, is without number when taken as an adjective: as, "One of

the nine \_sister\_ goddesses."--\_Webster's Dict., w. Muse\_. "He has money in

a \_savings\_ bank." The latter mode of expression is uncommon, and the term

\_savings-bank\_ is sometimes compounded, but the hyphen does not really

affect the nature of the former word. It is doubtful, however, whether a

plural noun can ever properly assume the character of an adjective;

because, if it is not then really the same as the possessive case, it will

always be liable to be thought a false form of that case. What Johnson

wrote "\_fullers earth\_" and "\_fullers thistle\_;" Chalmers has "\_fullers

earth\_" and "\_fuller's thistle\_;" Webster, "\_fuller's-earth\_" and

"\_fuller's-thistle\_;" Ainsworth, "\_fuller's earth\_" and "\_fuller's

thistle\_;" Walker has only "\_fullers-earth\_;" Worcester,

"\_fuller's-earth\_;" Cobb, "\_fullers earth\_;" the Treasury of Knowledge,

"\_fullers'-earth\_." So unsettled is this part of our grammar, that in many

such cases it is difficult cult to say whether we ought to use the

apostrophe, or the hyphen, or both, or neither. To insert neither, unless

we make a close compound, is to use a plural noun adjectively; which form,

I think, is the most objectionable of all. See "\_All souls

day\_,"--"\_All-fools-day\_,"--"\_All-saints'-day\_," &c., in the dictionaries.

These may well be written "\_All Souls' Day\_" &c.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS IV.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Fourth Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the\_ ARTICLES, NOUNS, \_and\_ ADJECTIVES.

\_The definitions to be given in the Fourth Praxis, are two for an article,

six for a noun, three for an adjective, and one for a pronoun, a verb, a

participle, an adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection.

Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The best and most effectual method of teaching grammar, is precisely that

of which the careless are least fond: teach learnedly, rebuking whatsoever

is false, blundering, or unmannerly."--\_G. Brown\_.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Best\_ is a common adjective, of the superlative degree; compared

irregularly, \_good, better, best\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a

noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is

any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The

superlative degree is that which is \_most\_ or \_least\_ of all included with

it.

\_And\_, is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words

or sentences in constructing, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_Most\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle,

an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place,

degree, or manner.

\_Effectual\_ is a common adjective, compared by means of the adverbs;

\_effectual, more effectual, most effectual\_; or, \_effectual, less

effectual, least effectual\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any

ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. Those

adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form, are compared by

means of adverbs.

\_Method\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person, is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a

finite verb.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Teaching\_ is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb,

participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and

is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb.

\_Grammar\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form

or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb,

participle, or preposition.

\_Is\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

be acted upon\_.

\_Precisely\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner.

\_That\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared; standing for \_that method\_,

in the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case.

[See OBS. 14th,] 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and

generally expresses quality. 2. A pronominal adjective is a definitive word

which may either accompany its noun or represent it understood. 3. The

third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4.

The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is

that which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The

nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually

denotes the subject of a finite verb.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Which\_ is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Careless\_ is a common adjective, compared by means of the adverbs;

\_careless, more careless, most careless\_; or, \_careless, less careless,

least careless\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and

generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet,

or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. Those adjectives which may

be varied in sense, but not in form, are compared by means of adverbs.

\_Are\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

be acted upon\_.

\_Least\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle,

an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place,

degree, or manner.

\_Fond\_ is a common adjective, compared regularly, \_fond, fonder, fondest\_;

but here made superlative by the adverb \_least\_. 1. An adjective is a word

added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common

adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or

situation. 8. The superlative degree is that which is \_most\_ or \_least\_ of

all included with it.

\_Teach\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or

\_to be acted upon\_.

\_Learnedly\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner.

\_Rebuking\_ is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb,

participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and

is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb.

\_Whatsoever\_ is a pronoun. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

\_Is\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

be acted upon\_.

\_False\_ is a common adjective, of the positive degree; compared regularly,

\_false, falser, falsest\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any

ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The

positive degree is that which is expressed by the adjective in its simple

form.

\_Blundering\_ is a participial adjective, compared by means of the adverbs;

\_blundering, more blundering, most blundering\_; or, \_blundering, less

blundering, least blundering\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A participial adjective is one

that has the form of a participle, but differs from it by rejecting the

idea of time. 3. Those adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in

form, are compared by means of adverbs.

\_Or\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or

sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_Unmannerly\_ is a common adjective, compared by means of the adverbs;

\_unmannerly, more unmannerly, most unmannerly\_; or, \_unmannerly, less

unmannerly, least unmannerly\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any

ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. Those

adjectives which may be varied in sense, but not in form, are compared by

means of adverbs.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"The noblest and most beneficial invention of which human ingenuity can

boast, is that of writing."--\_Robertson's America\_, Vol. II, p. 193.

"Charlemagne was the tallest, the handsomest, and the strongest man of his

time; his appearance was truly majestic, and he had surprising agility in

all sorts of manly exercises."--\_Stories of France\_, p. 19.

"Money, like other things, is more or less valuable, as it is less or more

plentiful."--\_Beanie's Moral Science\_, p. 378.

"The right way of acting, is, in a moral sense, as much a reality, in the

mind of an ordinary man, as the straight or the right road."--\_Dr. Murray's

Hist. Lang.\_, i, 118.

"The full period of several members possesses most dignity and modulation,

and conveys also the greatest degree of force, by admitting the closest

compression of thought."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 79.

"His great master, Demosthenes, in addressing popular audiences, never had

recourse to a similar expedient. He avoided redundancies, as equivocal and

feeble. He aimed only to make the deepest and most efficient impression;

and he employed for this purpose, the plainest, the fewest, and the most

emphatic words."--\_Ib.\_, p. 68.

"The high eloquence which I have last mentioned, is always the offspring of

passion. A man actuated by a strong passion, becomes much greater than he

is at other times. He is conscious of more strength and force; he utters

greater sentiments, conceives higher designs, and executes them with a

boldness and felicity, of which, on other occasions, he could not think

himself capable."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 236.

"His words bore sterling weight, nervous and strong,

In manly tides of sense they roll'd along."--\_Churchill\_.

"To make the humble proud, the proud submiss,

Wiser the wisest, and the brave more brave."--\_W. S. Landor\_.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"I am satisfied that in this, as in all cases, it is best, safest, as well

as most right and honorable, to speak freely and plainly."--\_Channing's

Letter to Clay\_, p. 4.

"The gospel, when preached with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven,

through the wonder-working power of God, can make the proud humble, the

selfish disinterested, the worldly heavenly, the sensual pure."--\_Christian

Experience\_, p. 399.

"I am so much the better, as I am the liker[184] the best; and so much the

holier, as I am more conformable to the holiest, or rather to Him who is

holiness itself."--\_Bp. Beneridge\_.

"Whether any thing in Christianity appears to them probable, or improbable;

consistent, or inconsistent; agreeable to what they should have expected,

or the contrary; wise and good, or ridiculous and useless; is perfectly

irrelevant."--\_M'Ilvaine's Evidences\_, p. 523.

"God's providence is higher, and deeper, and larger, and stronger, than all

the skill of his adversaries; and his pleasure shall be accomplished in

their overthrow, except they repent and become his friends."--\_Cox, on

Christianity\_, p. 445.

"A just relish of what is beautiful, proper, elegant, and ornamental, in

writing or painting, in architecture or gardening, is a fine preparation

for the same just relish of these qualities in character and behaviour. To

the man who has acquired a taste so acute and accomplished, every action

wrong or improper must be highly disgustful: if, in any instance, the

overbearing power of passion sway him from his duty, he returns to it with

redoubled resolution never to be swayed a second time."--\_Kames, Elements

of Criticism\_, Vol. i, p. 25.

"In grave Quintilian's copious work, we find

The justest rules and clearest method join'd."--\_Pope, on Crit.\_

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"There are several sorts of scandalous tempers; some malicious, and some

effeminate; others obstinate, brutish, and savage. Some humours are

childish and silly; some, false, and others, scurrilous; some, mercenary,

and some, tyrannical."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 52.

"Words are obviously voluntary signs: and they are also arbitrary;

excepting a few simple sounds expressive of certain internal emotions,

which sounds being the same in all languages, must be the work of nature:

thus the unpremeditated tones of admiration are the same in all

men."--\_Kames, Elements of Crit.\_, i, 347.

"A stately and majestic air requires sumptuous apparel, which ought not to

be gaudy, nor crowded with little ornaments. A woman of consummate beauty

can bear to be highly adorned, and yet shows best in a plain

dress."--\_Ib.\_, p. 279. "Of all external objects a graceful person is the

most agreeable. But in vain will a person attempt to be graceful, who is

deficient in amiable qualities."--\_Ib.\_, p. 299.

"The faults of a writer of acknowledged excellence are more dangerous,

because the influence of his example is more extensive; and the interest of

learning requires that they should be discovered and stigmatized, before

they have the sanction of antiquity bestowed upon them, and become

precedents of indisputable authority."--\_Dr. Johnson, Rambler\_, Vol. ii,

No. 93.

"Judges ought to be more learned than witty, more reverend than plausible,

and more advised than confident; above all things, integrity is their

portion and proper virtue."--\_Bacon's Essays\_, p. 145.

"The wisest nations, having the most and best ideas, will consequently have

the best and most copious languages."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 408.

"Here we trace the operation of powerful causes, while we remain ignorant

of their nature; but everything goes on with such regularity and harmony,

as to give a striking and convincing proof of a combining directing

intelligence."--\_Life of W. Allen\_, Vol. i, p. 170.

"The wisest, unexperienced, will be ever

Timorous and loth, with novice modesty,

Irresolute, unhardy, unadventurous."--\_Milton\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS OF ADJECTIVES.

LESSON I.--DEGREES.

"I have the real excuse of the honestest sort of bankrupts."--\_Cowley's

Preface\_, p. viii.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adjective \_honestest\_ is harshly

compared by \_est\_. But, according to a principle stated on page 283d

concerning the regular degrees, "This method of comparison is to be applied

only to monosyllables, and to dissyllables of a smooth termination, or such

as receive it and still have but one syllable after the accent." Therefore,

\_honestest\_ should be \_most honest\_; thus, "I have real excuse of the \_most

honest\_ sort of bankrupts."]

"The honourablest part of talk, is, to give the occasion."--\_Bacon's

Essays\_, p. 90. "To give him one of his own modestest proverbs."--

\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 340. "Our language is now certainly properer and

more natural, than it was formerly."--\_Bp. Burnet\_. "Which will be of most

and frequentest use to him in the world."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 163.

"The same is notified in the notablest places in the diocese."--\_Whitgift\_.

"But it was the dreadfullest sight that ever I saw."--\_Pilgrim's Progress\_,

p. 70. "Four of the ancientest, soberest, and discreetest of the brethren,

chosen for the occasion, shall regulate it."--\_Locke, on Church Gov\_. "Nor

can there be any clear understanding of any Roman author, especially of

ancienter time, without this skill."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. x. "Far the

learnedest of the Greeks."--\_Ib.\_, p. 120. "The learneder thou art, the

humbler be thou."--\_Ib.\_, p. 228. "He is none of the best or honestest."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 274. "The properest methods of communicating it to others."--

\_Burn's Gram.\_, Prof, p. viii. "What heaven's great King hath powerfullest

to send against us."--\_Paradise Lost\_. "Benedict is not the unhopefullest

husband that I know."--SHAK.: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "That he should immediately

do all the meanest and triflingest things himself."--RAY: \_in Johnson's

Gram.\_, p. 6. "I shall be named among the famousest of women."--MILTON'S

\_Samson Agonistes: ib.\_ "Those have the inventivest heads for all

purposes."--ASCHAM: \_ib.\_ "The wretcheder are the contemners of all

helps."--BEN JONSON: \_ib.\_ "I will now deliver a few of the properest and

naturallest considerations that belong to this piece."--WOTTON: \_ib.\_ "The

mortalest poisons practised by the West Indians, have some mixture of the

blood, fat, or flesh of man."--BACON: \_ib.\_ "He so won upon him, that he

rendered him one of the faithfulest and most affectionate allies the Medes

ever had."--\_Rollin\_, ii, 71. "'You see before you,' says he to him, 'the

most devoted servant, and the faithfullest ally, you ever had.'"--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 79. "I chose the flourishing'st tree in all the park."--\_Cowley\_.

"Which he placed, I think, some centuries backwarder than Julius Africanus

thought fit to place it afterwards."--\_Bolingbroke, on History\_, p. 53.

"The Tiber, the notedest river of Italy."--\_Littleton's Dict.\_

"To fartherest shores the ambrosial spirit flies."

--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 140.

----"That what she wills to do or say,

Seems wisest, virtuousest, discreetest, best."

--\_Milton\_, B. viii, l. 550.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"During the three or four first years of its

existence."--\_Taylor's District School\_, p. 27.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the cardinal numbers, \_three\_ and \_four\_ are

put before the ordinal \_first\_. But, according to the 7th part of Obs. 7th,

page 280th, "In specifying any part of a series, we ought to place the

cardinal number after the ordinal." Therefore the words \_three\_ and \_four\_

should be placed after \_first\_; thus, "During the \_first three\_ or \_four\_

years of its existence."]

"To the first of these divisions, my ten last lectures have been

devoted."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. i, p. 391. "There are in the twenty-four

states not less than sixty thousand common schools."--\_Taylor's District

School\_, p. 38. "I know of nothing which gives teachers so much trouble as

this want of firmness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 57. "I know of nothing that throws such

darkness over the line which separates right from wrong."--\_Ib.\_, p. 58.

"None need this purity and simplicity of language and thought so much as

the common school instructor."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "I know of no periodical that

is so valuable to the teacher as the Annals of Education."--\_Ib.\_, p. 67.

"Are not these schools of the highest importance? Should not every

individual feel the deepest interest in their character and

condition?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "If instruction were made a profession, teachers

would feel a sympathy for each other."--\_Ib.\_, p. 93. "Nothing is so likely

to interest children as novelty and change."--\_Ib.\_, p. 131. "I know of no

labour which affords so much happiness as that of the teacher's."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 136. "Their school exercises are the most pleasant and agreeable of any

that they engage in."--\_Ib.\_, p. 136. "I know of no exercise so beneficial

to the pupil as that of drawing maps."--\_Ib.\_, p. 176. "I know of nothing

in which our district schools are so defective as they are in the art of

teaching grammar."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196. "I know of nothing so easily acquired as

history."--\_Ib.\_ p. 206. "I know of nothing for which scholars usually have

such an abhorrence, as composition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 210. "There is nothing in

our fellow-men that we should respect with so much sacredness as their good

name."--\_Ib.\_, p. 307. "Sure never any thing was so unbred as that odious

man."--CONGREVE: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "In the dialogue between the mariner and

the shade of the deceast."--\_Philological Museum\_, i, 466. "These

master-works would still be less excellent and finisht"--\_Ib.\_, i, 469.

"Every attempt to staylace the language of polisht conversation, renders

our phraseology inelegant and clumsy."--\_Ib.\_, i, 678. "Here are a few of

the unpleasant'st words that ever blotted paper."--SHAK.: \_in Joh. Dict.\_

"With the most easy, undisobliging transitions."--BROOME: \_ib.\_ "Fear is,

of all affections, the unaptest to admit any conference with

reason."--HOOKER: \_ib.\_ "Most chymists think glass a body more

undestroyable than gold itself."--BOYLE: \_ib.\_ "To part with unhackt edges,

and bear back our barge undinted."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "Erasmus, who was an

unbigotted Roman Catholic, was transported with this passage."--ADDISON:

\_ib.\_ "There are no less than five words, with any of which the sentence

might have terminated."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 397. "The one preach Christ

of contention; but the other, of love."--\_Philippians\_, i, 16. "Hence we

find less discontent and heart-burnings, than where the subjects are

unequally burdened."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 56.

"The serpent, subtil'st beast of all the field,

I knew; but not with human voice indu'd."

--MILTON: \_Joh. Dict., w. Human.\_

"How much more grievous would our lives appear,

To reach th' eighth hundred, than the eightieth year?"

--DENHAM: B. P., ii, 244.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"Brutus engaged with Aruns; and so fierce was the attack, that they pierced

one another at the same time."--\_Lempriere's Dict.\_

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrase \_one another\_ is here applied to

two persons only, the words \_an\_ and \_other\_ being needlessly compounded.

But, according to Observation 15th, on the Classes of Adjectives, \_each

other\_ must be applied to two persons or things, and \_one an other\_ to more

than two. Therefore \_one another\_ should here be \_each other\_; thus,

"Brutus engaged with Aruns; and so fierce was the attack, that they pierced

\_each other\_ at the same time."]

"Her two brothers were one after another turned into stone."--\_Art of

Thinking\_, p. 194. "Nouns are often used as adjectives; as, A \_gold\_-ring,

a \_silver\_-cup."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 14. "Fire and water destroy one

another."--\_Wanostrocht's Gram.\_, p. 82. "Two negatives in English destroy

one another, or are equivalent to an affirmative."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 94;

\_E. Devis's\_, 111; \_Mack's\_, 147; \_Murray's\_, 198; \_Churchill's\_, 148;

\_Putnam's\_, 135; \_C. Adams's\_, 102; \_Hamlin's\_, 79; \_Alger's\_, 66;

\_Fisk's\_, 140; \_Ingersoll's\_, 207; and \_many others\_. "Two negatives

destroy one another, and are generally equivalent to an

affirmative."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 191; \_Felton's\_, 85. "Two negatives

destroy one another and make an affirmative."--\_J. Flint's Gram.\_, p. 79.

"Two negatives destroy one another, being equivalent to an

affirmative."--\_Frost's El. of E. Gram.\_, p. 48. "Two objects, resembling

one another, are presented to the imagination."--\_Parker's Exercises in

Comp.\_, p. 47. "Mankind, in order to hold converse with each other, found

it necessary to give names to objects."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 42. "Words

are derived from each other[185] in various ways."--\_Cooper's Gram.\_, p.

108. "There are many other ways of deriving words from one

another."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 131. "When several verbs connected by

conjunctions, succeed each other in a sentence, the auxiliary is usually

omitted except with the first."--\_Frost's Gram.\_, p. 91. "Two or more

verbs, having the same nominative case, and immediately following one

another, are also separated by commas." [186]--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 270;

\_C. Adams's\_, 126; \_Russell's\_, 113; and others. "Two or more adverbs

immediately succeeding each other, must be separated by commas."--\_Same

Grammars\_. "If, however, the members succeeding each other, are very

closely connected, the comma is unnecessary."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 273;

\_Comly's\_, 152; \_and others\_. "Gratitude, when exerted towards one another,

naturally produces a very pleasing sensation in the mind of a grateful

man."--\_Mur.\_, p. 287. "Several verbs in the infinitive mood, having a

common dependence, and succeeding one another, are also divided by

commas."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 153. "The several words of which it consists,

have so near a relation to each other."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 268;

\_Comly's\_, 144; \_Russell's\_, 111; \_and others\_. "When two or more verbs

have the same nominative, and immediately follow one another, or two or

more adverbs immediately succeed one another, they must be separated by

commas."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 145. "Nouns frequently succeed each other,

meaning the same thing."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 63. "And these two tenses

may thus answer one another."--\_Johnson's Gram.\_ \_Com.\_, p. 322. "Or some

other relation which two objects bear to one another."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_,

p. 149. "That the heathens tolerated each other, is allowed."--\_Gospel its

own Witness\_, p. 76. "And yet these two persons love one another

tenderly."--\_Murray's E. Reader\_, p. 112. "In the six hundredth and first

year."--\_Gen.\_, viii, 13. "Nor is this arguing of his but a reiterate

clamour."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 250. "In severals of them the inward life

of Christianity is to be found."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 272. "Though Alvarez,

Despauterius, and other, allow it not to be Plural."--\_Johnson's Gram.

Com.\_, p. 169. "Even the most dissipate and shameless blushed at the

sight."--\_Lemp. Dict., w. Antiochus\_. "We feel a superior satisfaction in

surveying the life of animals, than that of vegetables."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, 172. "But this man is so full fraughted with malice."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i11, 205. "That I suggest some things concerning the properest

means."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 337.

"So hand in hand they pass'd, the loveliest pair

That ever since in love's embraces met."

--\_Milton\_, P. L., B., iv, l. 321.

"Aim at the high'est, without the high'est attain'd

Will be for thee no sitting, or not long."

--\_Id.\_, P. R., B. iv, l. 106.

CHAPTER V.--PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun: as, The boy loves \_his\_ book;

\_he\_ has long lessons, and \_he\_ learns \_them\_ well.

The pronouns in our language are twenty-four; and their variations are

thirty-two: so that the number of \_words\_ of this class, is fifty-six.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The word for which a pronoun stands, is called its \_antecedent\_,

because it usually precedes the pronoun. But some have limited the term

\_antecedent\_ to the word represented by a \_relative\_ pronoun. There can be

no propriety in this, unless we will have every pronoun to be a relative,

when it stands for a noun which precedes it; and, if so, it should be

called something else, when the noun is to be found elsewhere. In the

example above, \_his\_ and \_he\_ represent \_boy\_, and \_them\_ represents

\_lessons\_; and these nouns are as truly the antecedents to the pronouns, as

any can be. Yet \_his, he\_, and \_them\_, in our most approved grammars, are

not called relative pronouns, but personal.

OBS. 2.--Every pronoun may be explained as standing for the \_name\_ of

something, for the \_thing itself\_ unnamed, or for a \_former pronoun\_; and,

with the noun, pronoun, or thing, for which it stands, every pronoun must

agree in person, number, and gender. The exceptions to this, whether

apparent or real, are very few; and, as their occurrence is unfrequent,

there will be little occasion to notice them till we come to syntax. But if

the student will observe the use and import of pronouns, he may easily see,

that some of them are put \_substantively\_, for nouns not previously

introduced; some, \_relatively\_, for nouns or pronouns going before; some,

\_adjectively\_, for nouns that must follow them in any explanation which can

be made of the sense. These three modes of substitution, are very

different, each from the others. Yet they do not serve for an accurate

division of the pronouns; because it often happens, that a substitute which

commonly represents the noun in one of these ways, will sometimes represent

it in an other.

OBS. 3.--The pronouns \_I\_ and \_thou\_, in their different modifications,

stand immediately for persons that are, in general, sufficiently known

without being named; (\_I\_ meaning \_the speaker\_, and \_thou, the hearer\_;)

their antecedents, or nouns, are therefore generally \_understood\_. The

other personal pronouns, also, are sometimes taken in a general and

demonstrative sense, to denote persons or things not previously mentioned;

as, "\_He\_ that hath knowledge, spareth his words."--\_Bible\_. Here \_he\_ is

equivalent to \_the man\_, or \_the person\_. "The care of posterity is most in

\_them\_ that have no posterity."--\_Bacon\_. Here \_them\_ is equivalent to

\_those persons\_. "How far do you call \_it\_ to such a place?"--\_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 85. Here \_it\_, according to Priestley, is put for \_the

distance\_. "For the priest's lips should keep knowledge, and \_they\_ should

seek the law at his mouth."--\_Malachi\_, ii, 7. Here \_they\_ is put

indefinitely for \_men\_ or \_people\_. So \_who\_ and \_which\_, though called

relatives, do not always relate to a noun or pronoun going before them; for

\_who\_ may be a direct substitute for \_what person\_; and \_which\_ may mean

\_which person\_, or \_which thing\_: as, "And he that was healed, wist not

\_who\_ it was."--\_John\_, v, 13. That is, "\_The man who\_ was healed, knew not

\_what person\_ it was." "I care not \_which\_ you take; they are so much

alike, one cannot tell \_which\_ is \_which\_."

OBS. 4.--A pronoun with which a question is asked, usually stands for some

person or thing unknown to the speaker; the noun, therefore, cannot occur

before it, but may be used after it or in place of it. Examples: "In the

grave, \_who\_ shall give thee thanks?"--\_Ps.\_, vi, 5. Here the word \_who\_ is

equivalent to \_what person\_, taken interrogatively. "Which of you

convinceth me of sin?"--\_John\_, viii, 46. That is, "\_Which man\_ of you?"

"Master, \_what\_ shall we do?"--\_Luke\_, iii, 12. That is, "\_What act\_, or

\_thing\_?" These solutions, however, convert \_which\_ and \_what\_ into

\_adjectives\_: and, in fact, as they have no inflections for the numbers and

cases, there is reason to think them at all times essentially such. We call

them pronouns, to avoid the inconvenience of supposing and supplying an

infinite multitude of ellipses. But \_who\_, though often equivalent (as

above) to an adjective and a noun, is never itself used adjectively; it is

always a pronoun.

OBS. 5.--In respect to \_who\_ or \_whom\_, it sometimes makes little or no

difference to the sense, whether we take it as a demonstrative pronoun

equivalent to \_what person\_, or suppose it to relate to an antecedent

understood before it: as, "Even so the Son quickeneth \_whom\_ he

will."--\_John\_, v, 21. That is--"\_what persons\_ he will," or, "\_those

persons\_ whom he will;" for the Greek word for \_whom\_, is, in this

instance, plural. The former is a shorter explanation of the meaning, but

the latter I take to be the true account of the construction; for, by the

other, we make \_whom\_ a double relative, and the object of two governing

words at once. So, perhaps, of the following example, which Dr. Johnson

cites under the word \_who\_, to show what he calls its "\_disjunctive\_

sense:"--

"There thou tellst \_of\_ kings, and \_who\_ aspire;

\_Who\_ fall, \_who\_ rise, \_who\_ triumph, \_who\_ do moan."--\_Daniel\_.

OBS. 6.--It sometimes happens that the real antecedent, or the term which

in the order of the sense must stand before the pronoun, is not placed

antecedently to it, in the order given to the words: as, "It is written, To

\_whom\_ he was not spoken of, \_they\_ shall see; and they that have not

heard, shall understand."--\_Romans\_, xv, 21. Here the sense is, "\_They\_ to

\_whom\_ he was not spoken of, shall see." Whoever takes the passage

otherwise, totally misunderstands it. And yet the same order of the words

might be used to signify, "They shall see \_to whom\_ (that is, \_to what

persons\_) he was not spoken of." Transpositions of this kind, as well as of

every other, occur most frequently in poetry. The following example is from

an Essay on Satire, printed with Pope's Works, but written by one of his

friends:--

"\_Whose\_ is the crime, the scandal too be \_theirs\_;

The knave and fool are their own libellers."--\_J. Brown.\_

OBS. 7.--The personal and the interrogative pronouns often stand in

construction as the antecedents to other pronouns: as, "\_He\_ also \_that\_ is

slothful in his work, is brother to \_him that\_ is a great

waster."--\_Prov.\_, xviii. 9. Here \_he\_ and \_him\_ are each equivalent to

\_the man\_, and each is taken as the antecedent to the relative which

follows it. "For both \_he that\_ sanctifieth, and \_they who\_ are sanctified,

are all of one: for which cause, \_he\_ is not ashamed to call \_them\_

brethren."--\_Heb.\_, ii, 11. Here \_he\_ and \_they\_ may be considered the

antecedents to \_that\_ and \_who\_, of the first clause, and also to \_he\_ and

\_them\_, of the second. So the interrogative \_who\_ may be the antecedent to

the relative \_that\_; as, "\_Who that\_ has any moral sense, dares tell lies?"

Here \_who\_, being equivalent to \_what person\_, is the term with which the

other pronoun agrees. Nay, an interrogative pronoun, (or the noun which is

implied in it,) may be the antecedent to a \_personal\_ pronoun; as, "\_Who\_

hath first given to Him, and it shall be recompensed to \_him\_

again?"--\_Romans\_, xi, 35. Here the idea is, "\_What person\_ hath first

given \_any thing\_ to \_the Lord\_, so that it ought to be repaid \_him\_?" that

is, "so that \_the gift\_ ought to be recompensed from Heaven to \_the

giver\_?" In the following example, the first pronoun is the antecedent to

all the rest:--

"And \_he that\_ never doubted of \_his\_ state,

\_He\_ may perhaps--perhaps \_he\_ may--too late."--\_Cowper\_.

OBS. 8.--So the personal pronouns of the \_possessive\_ case, (which some

call adjectives,) are sometimes represented by relatives, though less

frequently than their primitives: as, "How different, O Ortogrul, is \_thy\_

condition, \_who\_ art doomed to the perpetual torments of unsatisfied

desire!"--\_Dr. Johnson\_. Here \_who\_ is of the second person, singular,

masculine; and represents the antecedent pronoun \_thy\_: for \_thy\_ is a

pronoun, and not (as some writers will have it) an adjective. Examples like

this, disprove the doctrine of those grammarians who say that \_my, thy,

his, her, its\_, and their plurals, \_our, your, their\_, are adjectives. For,

if they were mere adjectives, they could not thus be made antecedents.

Examples of this construction are sufficiently common, and sufficiently

clear, to settle that point, unless they can be better explained in some

other way. Take an instance or two more: "And they are written for \_our\_

admonition, upon \_whom\_ the ends of the world are come."--\_1 Cor.\_, x, 11.

"Be thou the first true merit to befriend;

\_His\_ praise is lost, \_who\_ stays till all commend."--\_Pope\_.

CLASSES.

Pronouns are divided into three classes; \_personal, relative\_, and

\_interrogative\_.

I. A \_personal pronoun\_ is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what

person it is; as, "Whether \_it\_[187] were \_I\_ or \_they\_, so \_we\_ preach,

and so \_ye\_ believed."--\_1 Cor.\_, xv, 11.

The simple personal pronouns are five: namely, \_I\_, of the first person;

\_thou\_, of the second person; \_he, she\_, and \_it\_, of the third person.

The compound personal pronouns are also five: namely, \_myself\_, of the

first person; \_thyself\_, of the second person; \_himself, herself\_, and

\_itself\_, of the third person.

II. A \_relative pronoun\_ is a pronoun that represents an antecedent word or

phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence; as, "No people can be

great, \_who\_ have ceased to be virtuous."--\_Dr. Johnson.\_

The relative pronouns are \_who, which, what, that, as\_, and the compounds

\_whoever\_ or \_whosoever, whichever\_ or \_whichsoever, whatever\_ or

\_whatsoever\_.[188]

\_What\_ is a kind of \_double relative\_, equivalent to \_that which\_ or \_those

which\_; and is to be parsed, first as antecedent, and then as relative: as,

"This is \_what\_ I wanted; that is to say, \_the thing which\_ I wanted."--\_L.

Murray\_. III. An \_interrogative pronoun\_ is a pronoun with which a question

is asked; as, "\_Who\_ touched my clothes?"--\_Mark\_, v, 30.

The interrogative pronouns are \_who, which\_, and \_what\_; being the same in

form as relatives.

\_Who\_ demands a person's name; \_which\_, that a person or thing be

distinguished from others; \_what\_, the name of a thing, or a person's

occupation and character.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The pronouns \_I\_ and \_myself, thou\_ and \_thyself\_, with their

inflections, are literally applicable to persons only; but, \_figuratively\_,

they represent brutes, or whatever else the human imagination invests with

speech and reason. The latter use of them, though literal perhaps in every

thing \_but person\_, constitutes the purest kind of personification. For

example: "The \_trees\_ went forth on a time to anoint a king over them: and

they said unto the \_olive-tree\_, 'Reign \_thou\_ over \_us\_.' But the

\_olive-tree\_ said unto them, 'Should \_I\_ leave \_my\_ fatness, wherewith by

\_me\_ they honour God and man, and go to be promoted over the trees?'" See

\_Judges\_, ix, from 8 to 16.

OBS. 2.--The pronouns \_he\_ and \_himself, she\_ and \_herself\_, with their

inflections, are literally applicable to persons and to brutes, and to

these only; if applied to lifeless objects, they animate them, and are

figurative \_in gender\_, though literal perhaps in every other respect. For

example: "A \_diamond\_ of beauty and lustre, observing at \_his\_ side in the

same cabinet, not only many other gems, but even a \_loadstone\_, began to

question the latter how \_he\_ came there--\_he, who\_ appeared to be no better

than a mere flint, a sorry rusty-looking pebble, without the least shining

quality to advance \_him\_ to such honour; and concluded with desiring \_him\_

to keep \_his\_ distance, and to pay a proper respect to \_his\_

superiors."--\_Kames's Art of Thinking\_, p. 226.

OBS. 3.--The pronoun \_it\_, as it carries in itself no such idea as that of

personality, or sex, or life, is chiefly used with reference to things

inanimate; yet the word is, in a certain way, applicable to animals, or

even to persons; though it does not, in itself, present them as such. Thus

we say, "\_It\_ is \_I\_;"--"\_It\_ was \_they\_;"--"\_It\_ was \_you\_;"--"\_It\_ was

your \_agent\_;"--"\_It\_ is your \_bull\_ that has killed one of my oxen." In

examples of this kind, the word \_it\_ is simply demonstrative; meaning, \_the

thing or subject spoken of\_. That subject, whatever it be in itself, may be

introduced again after the verb, in any person, number, or gender, that

suits it. But, as the verb agrees with the pronoun \_it\_, the word which

follows, can in no sense be made, as Dr. Priestley will have it to be, the

\_antecedent\_ to that pronoun. Besides, it is contrary to the nature of what

is primarily demonstrative, to represent a preceding word of any kind. The

Doctor absurdly says, "Not only things, but persons, may be the

\_antecedent\_ to this pronoun; as, \_Who is it\_? \_Is it not Thomas\_? i. e.

\_Who is the person\_? \_Is not he Thomas?\_"--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 85. In

these examples, the terms are transposed by interrogation; but that

circumstance, though it may have helped to deceive this author and his

copiers, affects not my assertion.

OBS. 4.--The pronoun \_who\_ is usually applied only to persons. Its

application to brutes or to things is improper, unless we mean to personify

them. But \_whose\_, the possessive case of this relative, is sometimes used

to supply the place of the possessive case, otherwise wanting, to the

relative \_which\_. Examples: "The mutes are those consonants \_whose\_ sounds

cannot be protracted."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 9. "Philosophy, \_whose\_ end

is, to instruct us in the knowledge of nature."--\_Ib.\_, p. 54; \_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, 421. "Those adverbs are compared \_whose\_ primitives are

obsolete."--\_Adam's Latin Gram.\_, p. 150. "After a sentence \_whose\_ sense

is complete in itself, a period is used."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 124. "We

remember best those things \_whose\_ parts are methodically disposed, and

mutually connected."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, i, 59. "Is there any other

doctrine \_whose\_ followers are punished?"--ADDISON: \_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

54; \_Lowth's\_, p. 25.

"The question, \_whose\_ solution I require,

Is, what the sex of women most desire."--DRYDEN: \_Lowth\_, p. 25.

OBS. 5.--Buchanan, as well as Lowth, condemns the foregoing use of \_whose\_,

except in grave poetry: saying, "This manner of \_personification\_ adds an

air of dignity to the higher and more solemn kind of poetry, but it is

highly improper in the lower kind, or in prose."--\_Buchanan's English

Syntax\_, p. 73. And, of the last two examples above quoted, he says, "It

ought to be \_of which\_, in both places: i. e. The followers \_of which\_; the

solution \_of which\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73. The truth is, that no personification

is here intended. Hence it may be better to avoid, if we can, this use of

\_whose\_, as seeming to imply what we do not mean. But Buchanan himself

(stealing the text of an older author) has furnished at least one example

as objectionable as any of the foregoing: "Prepositions are naturally

placed betwixt the Words \_whose\_ Relation and Dependence each of them is to

express."--\_English Syntax\_, p. 90; \_British Gram.\_, p. 201. I dislike this

construction, and yet sometimes adopt it, for want of another as good. It

is too much, to say with Churchill, that "this practice is now

discountenanced by all correct writers."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 226. Grammarians

would perhaps differ less, if they would read more. Dr. Campbell commends

the use of \_whose\_ for \_of which\_, as an improvement suggested by good

taste, and established by abundant authority. See \_Philosophy of Rhetoric\_,

p. 420. "WHOSE, the possessive or genitive case of \_who\_ or \_which\_;

applied to persons or things."--\_Webster's Octavo Dict.\_ "\_Whose\_ is well

authorized by good usage, as the possessive of \_which\_."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 69. "Nor is any language complete, \_whose\_ verbs have not

tenses."--\_Harris's Hermes\_.

"--------'Past and future, are the wings

On \_whose\_ support, harmoniously conjoined,

Moves the great spirit of human knowledge.'--MS."

\_Wordsworth's Preface to his Poems\_, p. xviii.

OBS. 6.--The relative \_which\_, though formerly applied to persons and made

equivalent to \_who\_, is now confined to brute animals and inanimate things.

Thus, "Our Father \_which\_ art in heaven," is not now reckoned good English;

it should be, "Our Father \_who\_ art in heaven." In this, as well as in many

other things, the custom of speech has changed; so that what was once

right, is now ungrammatical. The use of \_which\_ for \_who\_ is very common in

the Bible, and in other books of the seventeenth century; but all good

writers now avoid the construction. It occurs seventy-five times in the

third chapter of Luke; as, "Joseph, \_which\_ was the son of Heli, \_which\_

was the son of Matthat," etc. etc. After a personal term taken by metonymy

for a thing, \_which\_ is not improper; as, "Of the particular \_author which\_

he is studying."--\_Gallaudet\_. And as an interrogative or a demonstrative

pronoun or adjective, the word \_which\_ is still applicable to persons, as

formerly; as, "\_Which\_ of you all?"--"\_Which\_ man of you all?"--"There

arose a reasoning among them, \_which\_ of them should be the

greatest."--\_Luke\_, ix, 46. "Two fair twins--the puzzled Strangers, \_which\_

is \_which\_, inquire."--\_Tickell\_.

OBS. 7.--If \_which\_, as a direct relative, is inapplicable to persons,

\_who\_ ought to be preferred to it in all personifications: as,

"The seal is set. Now welcome thou dread power,

Nameless, yet thus omnipotent, \_which\_ here

Walk'st in the shadow of the midnight hour."

BYRON: \_Childe Harold's Pilgrimage\_, Cant, iv, st. 138.

What sort of personage is here imagined and addressed, I will not pretend

to say; but it should seem, that \_who\_ would be more proper than \_which\_,

though less agreeable in sound before the word \_here\_. In one of his notes

on this word, Churchill has fallen into a strange error. He will have \_who\_

to represent a \_horse!\_ and that, in such a sense, as would require \_which\_

and not \_who\_, even for a person. As he prints the masculine pronoun in

Italics, perhaps he thought, with Murray and Webster, that \_which\_ must

needs be "of the \_neuter gender\_." [189] He says, "In the following

passage, \_which\_ seems to be used \_instead\_ of \_who\_:--

'Between two horses, \_which\_ doth bear him best;

I have, perhaps, some shallow spirit of judgment'

SHAKS., 1 Hen. VI."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 226.

OBS. 8.--The pronoun \_what\_ is usually applied to things only. It has a

twofold relation, and is often used (by ellipsis of the noun) both as

antecedent and as relative, in the form of a single word; being equivalent

to \_that which\_, or \_the thing which,--those which\_, or \_the things which\_.

In this double relation, \_what\_ represents two cases at the same time: as,

"He is ashamed of \_what\_ he has done;" that is, "of what [\_thing\_ or

\_action\_] he has done;"--or, "of \_that\_ [thing or action] \_which\_ he has

done." Here are two objectives. The two cases are sometimes alike,

sometimes different; for either of them may be the nominative, and either,

the objective. Examples: "The dread of censure ought not to prevail \_over

what is\_ proper."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 252. "The public ear

will not easily \_bear what is\_ slovenly and incorrect."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 12. "He who buys \_what\_ he does not need, will often need \_what\_ he

cannot buy."--\_Student's Manual\_, p. 290. "\_What\_ is just, is honest; and

again, \_what\_ is honest, is just."--\_Cicero\_. "He that hath an ear, let him

hear \_what\_ the Spirit saith unto the churches."--\_Rev.\_, ii, 7, 11, 17,

29; iii, 6, 13, 22.

OBS. 9.--This pronoun, \_what\_, is usually of the singular number, though

sometimes plural: as, "I must turn to the faults, or \_what appear\_ such to

me."--\_Byron\_. "All distortions and mimicries, as such, are \_what raise\_

aversion instead of pleasure."--\_Steele\_. "Purified indeed from \_what

appear\_ to be its real defects."--\_Wordsworth's Pref.\_, p. xix. "Every

single impression, made even by the same object, is distinguishable from

\_what\_ have gone before, and from \_what\_ succeed."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

Vol. i, p. 107. "Sensible people express no thoughts but \_what\_ make some

figure."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 399. The following example, which makes \_what\_

both singular and plural at once, is a manifest solecism: "\_What has\_ since

followed \_are\_ but natural consequences."--J. C. CALHOUN, \_Speech in U. S.

Senate\_, March 4, 1850. Here \_has\_ should be \_have\_; or else the form

should be this: "What has since followed, \_is\_ but \_a\_ natural

\_consequence\_."

OBS. 10.--The common import of this remarkable pronoun, \_what\_, is, as we

see in the foregoing examples, twofold; but some instances occur, in which

it does not appear to have this double construction, but to be simply

declaratory; and many, in which the word is simply an adjective: as,

"\_What\_ a strange run of luck I have had to-day!"--\_Columbian Orator\_, p.

293. Here \_what\_ is a mere adjective; and, in the following examples, a

pronoun indefinite:--

"I tell thee \_what\_, corporal, I could tear her."--\_Shak.\_

"He knows \_what's what\_, and that's as high

As metaphysic wit can fly."--\_Hudibras\_.

OBS. 11.--\_What\_ is sometimes used both as an adjective and as a relative

at the same time, and is placed before the noun which it represents; being

equivalent to the adjective \_any\_ or \_all\_, and the simple relative \_who,

which\_[190] or \_that\_: as, "\_What\_ money we had, was taken away." That is,

"\_All the\_ money \_that\_ we had, was taken away." "\_What\_ man but enters,

dies." That is, "\_Any\_ man \_who\_ enters, dies." "It was agreed that \_what\_

goods were aboard his vessels, should be landed."--\_Mickle's India\_, p. 89.

"\_What\_ appearances of worth afterwards succeeded, were drawn from

thence."--\_Internal Policy of Great Britain\_, p. 196. That is, "\_All the\_

appearances of worth, \_which\_ afterwards succeeded."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 93. Indeed, this pronoun does not admit of being construed after a noun,

as a simple relative: none but the most illiterate ever seriously use it

so. \_What\_ put for \_who\_ or \_which\_, is therefore a ludicrous vulgarism;

as, "The aspiring youth \_what\_ fired the Ephesian dome."--\_Jester\_. The

word used as above, however, does not always preclude the introduction of a

personal pronoun before the subsequent verb; as,[191]

"\_What\_ god but enters yon forbidden field,

Who yields assistance, or but wills to yield,

Back to the skies with shame \_he\_ shall be driven,

Gash'd with dishonest wounds, the scorn of heaven."--\_Pope's Homer\_.

OBS. 12.--The compound \_whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_ has the same

peculiarities of construction as has the simpler word \_what\_: as, "Whatever

word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, \_Whatever\_

word, with a noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a

verb."--\_Adam's Latin Gram.\_, p. 78. That is, "\_Any\_ word \_which\_

expresses," &c. "We will certainly do \_whatsoever\_ thing goeth forth out of

our own mouth."--\_Jeremiah\_, xliv, 17. That is--"\_any\_ thing, or \_every\_

thing, \_which\_." "\_Whatever\_ sounds are difficult in pronunciation, are, in

the same proportion, harsh and painful to the ear."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

121; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 325. "\_Whatsoever\_ things were written aforetime,

were written for our learning."--\_Romans\_, xv, 4. In all these examples,

the word \_whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_ appears to be used both adjectively and

relatively. There are instances, however, in which the relation of this

term is not twofold, but simple: as, "\_Whatever\_ useful or engaging

endowments we possess, virtue is requisite in order to their shining with

proper lustre."--\_English Reader\_, p. 23. Here \_whatever\_ is simply an

adjective. "The declarations contained in them [the Scriptures] rest on the

authority of God \_himself\_; and there can be no appeal from them to any

other authority \_whatsoever\_."--\_London Epistle\_, 1836. Here \_whatsoever\_

may be parsed either as an adjective relating to \_authority\_, or as an

emphatic pronoun in apposition with its noun, like \_himself\_ in the

preceding clause. In this general explanatory sense, \_whatsoever\_ may be

applied to persons as well as to things; as, "I should be sorry if it

entered into the imagination \_of any person whatsoever\_, that I was

preferred to all other patrons."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 11. Here the word

\_whomsoever\_ might have been used.

OBS. 13.--But there is an other construction to be here explained, in which

\_whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_ appears to be a \_double relative\_, or a term

which includes both antecedent and relative; as, "\_Whatever\_ purifies,

fortifies also the heart."--\_English Reader\_, p. 23. That is. "\_All that

purifies\_--or, \_Everything which\_ purifies--fortifies also the heart."

"\_Whatsoever\_ he doeth, shall prosper."--\_Psal.\_, i, 3. That is, "\_All

that\_ he doeth--or, \_All the things which he doeth\_--shall prosper." This

construction, however, may be supposed elliptical. The Latin expression is,

"\_Omnia quæcumque faciet prosperabuntur\_."--\_Vulgate\_. The Greek is

similar: [Greek: "Kai panta hosa an poiæi kateuodothæsetai."]--

\_Septuagint\_. It is doubtless by some sort of ellipsis which familiarity of

use inclines us to overlook, that \_what, whatever\_, and \_whatsoever\_, which

are essentially adjectives, have become susceptible of this double

construction as pronouns. But it is questionable what particular ellipsis

we ought here to suppose, or whether any; and certainly, we ought always to

avoid the supposing of an ellipsis, if we can.[192] Now if we say the

meaning is, "Whatsoever \_things\_ he doeth, shall prosper;" this, though

analogous to other expressions, does not simplify the construction. If we

will have it to be, "Whatsoever \_things\_ he doeth, \_they\_ shall prosper;"

the pronoun \_they\_ appears to be pleonastic. So is the word \_it\_, in the

text, "\_Whatsoever\_ he saith unto you, do \_it\_."--\_John\_, ii, 5. If we say

the full phrase is, "\_All things\_ whatsoever he doeth, shall prosper;" this

presents, to an English ear, a still more obvious pleonasm. It may be, too,

\_a borrowed idiom\_, found nowhere but in translations; as, "\_All things

whatsoever\_ ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive."--\_Matt.\_,

xxi, 22. From these views, there seems to be some objection to any and

every method of parsing the above-mentioned construction as \_elliptical\_.

The learner may therefore say, in such instances, that \_whatever\_ or

\_whatsoever\_ is a double relative, including both antecedent and relative;

and parse it, first as antecedent, in connexion with the latter verb, and

then as relative, in connexion with the former. But let him observe that

the order of the verbs may be the reverse of the foregoing; as, "Ye are my

friends, if ye \_do\_ whatsoever I \_command\_ you."--\_John\_, xv, 14. That is,

according to the Greek, "If ye do whatsoever I command \_to\_ you;" Though it

would be better English to say, "If ye do whatsoever I command you \_to

do\_." In the following example, however, it seems proper to recognize an

ellipsis; nay, the omissions in the construction of the last line, are as

many as three or four;--

"Expatiate with glad step, and choose at will

Whate'er bright spoils the florid earth contains,

Whate'er the waters, or the liquid air."--\_Akenside\_.

OBS. 14.--As the simple word \_who\_ differs from \_which\_ and \_what\_, in

being always a declinable pronoun; so its compounds differ from theirs, in

being incapable of either of the double constructions above described. Yet

\_whoever\_ and \_whoso\_ or \_whosoever\_, as well as \_whichever\_ and

\_whichsoever, whatever\_ and \_whatsoever\_, derive, from the affix which is

added, or from the peculiarity of their syntax, an unlimited

signification--or a signification which is limited only by the following

verb; and, as some general term, such as \_any person\_, or \_all persons\_, is

implied as the antecedent, they are commonly connected with other words as

if they stood for two cases at once: as, "\_Whoever\_ seeks, shall find."

That is, "\_Any person who\_ seeks, shall find." But as the case of this

compound, like that of the simple word \_who, whose\_, or \_whom\_, is known

and determined by its form, it is necessary, in parsing, to treat this

phraseology as being elliptical. The compounds of \_who\_ do not, therefore,

actually stand for two cases, though some grammarians affirm that they

do.[193] Example: "The soldiers made proclamation, that they would sell the

empire to \_whoever\_ would purchase it at the highest price."--\_Goldsmith's

Rome\_, p. 231. That is--"to \_any man who\_ would purchase it." The affix

\_ever\_ or \_soever\_ becomes unnecessary when the ellipsis is supplied; and

this fact, it must be confessed, is a plausible argument against the

supposition of an ellipsis. But the supposing of an antecedent understood,

is here unavoidable; because the preposition \_to\_ cannot govern the

nominative case, and the word \_whoever\_ cannot be an objective. And so in

all other instances in which the two cases are different: as, "He bids

\_whoever\_ is athirst, to come."--\_Jenks's Devotions\_, p. 151. "Elizabeth

publicly threatened, that she would have the head of \_whoever\_ had advised

it."--HUME: \_in Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 104.

OBS. 15.--If it is necessary in parsing to supply the antecedent to

\_whoever\_ or \_whosoever\_, when two \_different\_ cases are represented, it is

but analogous and reasonable to supply it also when two similar cases

occur: as, "\_Whoever\_ borrows money, \_is bound\_ in conscience to repay

it."--\_Paley\_. "\_Whoever\_ is eager to find excuses for vice and folly,

\_will find\_ his own backwardness to practise them much diminished."--

\_Chapone\_. "\_Whoever\_ examines his own imperfections, \_will cease\_ to be

fastidious; \_whoever\_ restrains humour and caprice, \_will cease\_ to be

squeamish."--\_Crabb's Synonymes\_. In all these examples, we have the word

in the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and nominative

case. And here it is most commonly found. It is always of the third person;

and, though its number \_may\_ be plural; its gender, feminine; its case,

possessive or objective; we do not often use it in any of these ways. In

some instances, the latter verb is attended with an other pronoun, which

represents the same person or persons; as, "And \_whosoever\_ will, let \_him\_

take of the water of life freely."--\_Rev.\_, xxii, 17. The case of this

compound relative always depends upon what follows it, and not upon what

precedes; as, "Or ask of \_whomsoever\_ he has taught."--\_Cowper\_. That

is--"of \_any person whom\_ he has taught." In the following text, we have

the possessive plural: "\_Whosesoever\_ sins ye remit, they are remitted unto

\_them\_."--\_John\_, xx, 23. That is, "\_Whatever persons'\_ sins."

OBS. 16.--In such phraseology as the following, there is a stiffness which

ought to be avoided: "For \_whomever\_ God loves, he loves \_them\_ in Christ,

and no otherways."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 215. Better: "For \_all

whom\_ God loves, he loves in Christ, and no \_otherwise\_." "When the Father

draws, \_whomever\_ he draws, may come."--\_Penington\_. Better: "When the

Father draws, \_all whom\_ he draws, (or, \_every one whom\_ he draws.) may

come." A modern critic of immense promise cites the following clause as

being found in the Bible: "But he loveth \_whomsoever\_ followeth after

righteousness."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 72. It is lamentable to see the

unfaithfulness of this gentleman's quotations. About half of them are

spurious; and I am confident that this one is neither Scripture nor good

English. The compound relative, being the subject of \_followeth\_, should be

in the nominative case; for the object of the verb \_loveth\_ is the

antecedent \_every one\_, understood. But the idea may be better expressed,

without any ellipsis, thus: "He loveth \_every one who\_ followeth after

righteousness." The following example from the same hand is also wrong, and

the author's rule and reasoning connected with it, are utterly fallacious:

"I will give the reward to \_whomsoever\_ will apprehend the rogue."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 256. Much better say, "\_to any one who\_;" but, if you choose the

compound word, by all analogy, and all good authority, it must here be

\_whoever\_ or \_whosoever\_. The shorter compound \_whoso\_, which occurs very

frequently in the Bible, is now almost obsolete in prose, but still

sometimes used by the poets. It has the same meaning as \_whosoever\_, but

appears to have been confined to the nominative singular; and \_whatso\_ is

still more rare: as, "\_Whoso\_ diggeth a pit, shall fall therein."--\_Prov.\_,

xxvi, 27.

"Which \_whoso\_ tastes, can be enslaved no more."--\_Cowper\_.

"On their intended journey to proceed,

And over night \_whatso\_ thereto did need."--\_Hubbard\_.

OBS. 17.--The relative \_that\_ is applied indifferently to persons, to brute

animals, and to inanimate things. But the word \_that\_ is not always a

relative pronoun. It is sometimes a pronoun, sometimes an adjective, and

sometimes a conjunction. I call it not a demonstrative pronoun and also a

relative; because, in the sense in which Murray and others have styled it a

"demonstrative adjective \_pronoun\_," it is a pronominal \_adjective\_, and it

is better to call it so. (1.) It is a \_relative pronoun\_ whenever it is

equivalent to \_who, whom\_, or \_which\_: as, "There is not a \_just man\_ upon

earth, \_that\_ doeth good, and sinneth not"--\_Eccl.\_, vii, 20. "It was

diverse from all the \_beasts that\_ were before it."--\_Dan.\_, vii, 7. "And

he had a \_name\_ written, \_that\_ no man knew but he himself."--\_Rev.\_, xix,

12. (2.) It is a \_pronominal adjective\_ whenever it relates to a noun

expressed or understood after it: as, "Thus with violence shall \_that\_

great \_city\_, Babylon, be thrown down."--\_Rev.\_, xviii, 21. "Behold \_that\_

[thing] which I have seen."--\_Eccl.\_, v, 18. "And they said, 'What is

\_that\_[194] [matter] to us? See thou to \_that\_' [matter]."--\_Matt.\_, xxvii,

4. (3.) In its other uses, it is a \_conjunction\_, and, as such, it most

commonly makes what follows it, the purpose, object, or final cause, of

what precedes it: as, "I read \_that\_ I may learn."--\_Dr. Adam.\_ "Ye men of

Athens, I perceive \_that\_ in all things ye are too superstitious."--\_St.

Paul.\_ "Live well, \_that\_ you may die well."--\_Anon.\_ "Take heed \_that\_

thou speak not to Jacob."--\_Genesis.\_ "Judge not, \_that\_ ye be not

judged."--\_Matthew.\_

OBS. 18.--The word \_that\_, or indeed any other word, should never be so

used as to leave the part of speech uncertain; as, "For in the day \_that\_

thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die."--\_Gen.\_, ii, 17. Here \_that\_

seems to be a relative \_pronoun\_, representing \_day\_, in the third person,

singular, neuter; yet, in other respects, it seems to be a \_conjunction\_,

because there is nothing to determine its case. Better: "For in the day \_on

which\_ thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die." This mongrel

construction of the word \_that\_, were its justification possible, is common

enough in our language to be made good English. But it must needs be

condemned, because it renders the character of the term ambiguous, and is

such a grammatical difficulty as puts the parser at a dead nonplus.

Examples: (1.) "But \_at the same time\_ THAT men are giving their orders,

God on his part is likewise giving his."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 106. Here

the phrase, "\_at the same time that\_," is only equivalent to the adverb

\_while\_; and yet it is incomplete, because it means, "\_at the same time at

which\_," or, "\_at the very time at which.\_" (2.) "The author of this work,

\_at the same time\_ THAT he has endeavoured to avoid a plan, \_which may be\_

too concise or too extensive, defective in its parts or irregular in the

disposition of them, has studied to render his \_subject\_ sufficiently easy,

intelligible, and \_comprehensive.\_"--\_Murray's Gram., Introd.\_, p. 1. This

sentence, which is no unfair specimen of its author's original style, needs

three corrections: 1. For "\_at the same time that\_," say \_while\_: 2. Drop

the phrase, "\_which may be\_," because it is at least useless: 3. For

"\_subject\_," read \_treatise\_, or \_compilation.\_ You will thus have

tolerable diction. Again: (3.) "The participles of active verbs \_act upon

objects\_ and govern them in the objective case, in the same manner \_that\_

the verbs \_do\_, from which they are derived. \_A participle\_ in the nature

of an adjective, belongs or refers to \_nouns\_ or \_pronouns\_ in the same

manner \_that\_ adjectives do; and \_when it will admit\_ the degrees of

comparison, \_it is called\_ a participial \_adjective\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_,

p. 38. This is the style of a gentleman of no ordinary pretensions, one who

thinks he has produced the best grammar that has ever appeared in our

language. To me, however, his work suggests an abundance of questions like

these; each of which would palpably involve him in a dilemma: What is here

meant by "\_objects\_," the \_words\_, or the \_things?\_ if the former, how are

they acted upon? if the latter, how are they governed? If "a \_participle\_

is called an \_adjective\_," which is it, an adjective, or a participle? If

"\_a\_ participle refers to \_nouns\_ or \_pronouns\_," \_how many\_ of these are

required by the relation? When does a \_participle\_ "admit the degrees of

comparison?" How shall we parse the word \_that\_ in the foregoing sentences?

OBS. 19.--The word \_as\_, though usually a conjunction or an adverb, has

sometimes the construction of a relative pronoun, especially after \_such,

so many\_, or \_as many\_; and, whatever the antecedent \_noun\_ may be, this is

the \_only fit relative\_ to follow any of these terms in a restrictive

sense. Examples: "We have been accustomed to repose on its veracity with

\_such\_ humble confidence \_as\_ suppresses curiosity."--\_Johnson's Life of

Cowley.\_ "The malcontents made \_such\_ demands \_as\_ none but a tyrant could

refuse."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, Let. 7. "The Lord added to the church

daily \_such\_ [persons] \_as\_ should be saved."--\_Acts\_, ii, 47. "And \_as

many as\_ were ordained to eternal life, believed."--\_Acts\_, xiii, 48. "\_As

many as\_ I love, I rebuke and chasten."--\_Rev.\_, iii, 19. "Know ye not,

that \_so many\_ of us \_as\_ were baptized into Jesus Christ, were baptized

into his death?"--\_Rom.\_, vi, 3. "For \_as many\_ of you \_as\_ have been

baptized into Christ, have put on Christ."--\_Gal.\_, iii, 27. "A syllable is

\_so many\_ letters \_as\_ are spoken with one motion of the voice."--\_Perley's

Gram.\_, p. 8. "The compound tenses are \_such as\_ cannot be formed without

an auxiliary verb."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 91. "Send him \_such\_ books \_as\_

will please him."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 37. "In referring to

\_such\_ a division of the day \_as\_ is past, we use the imperfect."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 70. "Participles have \_the same\_ government \_as\_ the

verbs from which they are derived."--\_Ib.\_, Rule xiv. "Participles have

\_the same\_ government \_as\_ the verbs \_have\_ from which they are derived."--

\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 94. In some of these examples, \_as\_ is in the

nominative case, and in others, in the objective; in some, it is of the

masculine gender, and in others, it is neuter; in some, it is of the plural

number, and in others, it is singular: but in all, it is of the third

person; and in all, its person, number, gender, and case, are as obvious as

those of any invariable pronoun can be.

OBS. 20.--Some

writers--(the most popular are Webster, Bullions, Wells, and Chandler--)

imagine that \_as\_, in such sentences as the foregoing, can be made a

conjunction, and not a pronoun, if we will allow them to consider the

phraseology elliptical. Of the example for which I am indebted to him, Dr.

Webster says, "\_As\_ must be considered as the nominative to \_will please\_,

or we must suppose an ellipsis of several words: as, 'Send him such books

as \_the books which\_ will please him, or as \_those which\_ will please

him.'"--\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 37. This pretended explanation must be

rejected as an absurdity. In either form of it, \_two\_ nominatives are idly

imagined between \_as\_ and its verb; and, I ask, of what is the first one

the subject? If you say, "Of \_are\_ understood," making the phrase, "such

books \_as the books are\_;" does not \_as\_ bear the same relation to this new

verb \_are\_, that is found in the pronoun \_who\_, when one says, "Tell him

\_who\_ you \_are?\_" If so, \_as\_ is a pronoun still; so that, thus far, you

gain nothing. And if you will have the whole explanation to be, "Send him

such books \_as the books are books which\_ will please him;" you multiply

words, and finally arrive at nothing, but tautology and nonsense. Wells,

not condescending to show his pupils what he would supply after this \_as\_,

thinks it sufficient to say, the word is "followed by an ellipsis of one or

more words required to complete the construction; as, 'He was the father of

all such as [] handle the harp and organ.'--\_Gen.\_ 4: 21."--\_Wells's School

Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 164; 3d Ed., p. 172.

OBS. 21.--Chandler exhibits the sentence, "\_These are not such as are

worn\_;" and, in parsing it, expounds the words \_as\_ and \_are\_, thus; the

crotchets being his, not mine: "\_as\_.... is an \_adverb, connecting\_ the two

sentences in comparing them, [\_It is a fault\_ of some, that they make \_as\_

a pronoun, when, in a comparative sentence, it corresponds with \_such\_, and

is immediately followed by a verb, as in the sentence now given. This is

probably done \_from an ignorance\_ of the real nominative to the verb. The

sentence \_should stand thus\_: 'These (\_perhaps\_ bonnets) are not such

(bonnets) \_as\_ (those bonnets) are (which are) worn.' Then] \_are\_ .... is

the substantive verb, third person, plural number, indicative mood, present

tense, and agrees with the noun \_bonnets\_, understood."--\_Chandler's Common

School Gram.\_, p. 162. All this bears the marks of shallow flippancy. No

part of it is accurate. "\_Are worn\_," which the critic unwarrantably

divides by his misplaced curves and uncouth impletions, is a passive verb,

agreeing with the pronoun \_as\_. But the text itself is faulty, being

unintelligible through lack of a noun; for, of things that \_may be\_

"\_worn\_," there are a thousand different sorts. Is it not ridiculous, for a

great grammarian to offer, as a model for parsing, what he himself, "\_from

an ignorance\_ of the real nominative," can only interpret with a

"\_perhaps?\_" But the noun which this author supplies, the meaning which he

guesses that he had, he here very improperly stows away within a pair of

\_crotchets\_. Nor is it true, that "the sentence \_should stand\_" as above

exhibited; for the tautological correction not only has the very extreme of

awkwardness, but still makes \_as\_ a pronoun, a nominative, belonging after

\_are\_: so that the phrase, "\_as are worn\_," is only encumbered and

perverted by the verbose addition made. So of an other example given by

this expounder, in which \_as\_ is an objective: "He is exactly such a man

\_as\_ I saw."--\_Chandler's Com. Sch. Gram.\_, p. 163. Here \_as\_ is the object

of \_saw\_. But the author says, "The sentence, however, \_should stand\_ thus:

'He is exactly such a man \_as\_ that person \_was\_ whom I saw.'"--\_Ibid.\_

This inelegant alteration makes \_as\_ a nominative dependent on \_was.\_

OBS. 22.--The use of \_as\_ for a relative pronoun, is almost entirely

confined to those connexions in which no other relative would be proper;

hence few instances occur, of its absolute equivalence to \_who, which\_, or

\_that\_, by which to establish its claim to the same rank. Examples like the

following, however, go far to prove it, if proof be necessary; because

\_who\_ and \_which\_ are here employed, where \_as\_ is certainly now required

by all good usage: "It is not only convenient, but absolutely needful, that

there be certain meetings at certain places and times, \_as\_ may best suit

the convenience of \_such, who\_ may be most particularly concerned in

them."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 495. "Which, no doubt, will be found

obligatory upon all \_such, who\_ have a sense and feeling of the mind of the

Spirit."--\_Ib.\_, i, p. 578. "Condemning or removing \_such\_ things, \_which\_

in themselves are evil."--\_Ib.\_, i, p. 511. In these citations, not only

are \_who\_ and \_which\_ improperly used for \_as\_, but the \_commas\_ before

them are also improper, because the relatives are intended to be taken in a

restrictive sense. "If there be \_such that\_ walk disorderly now."--\_Ib.\_,

i, p. 488. Here \_that\_ ought to be \_as\_; or else \_such\_ ought to be

\_persons\_, or \_those.\_ "When such virtues, \_as which\_ still accompany the

truth, are necessarily supposed to be wanting."--\_Ib.\_, i, p. 502. Here

\_which\_, and the comma before \_as\_, should both be expunged. "I shall raise

in their minds the same course of thought \_as\_ has taken possession of my

own."--\_Duncan's Logic\_, p. 61. "The pronoun must be in the same case \_as\_

the antecedent would be \_in\_, if substituted for it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

181. "The verb must therefore have the same construction \_as\_ it has in the

following sentence."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 190. Here \_as\_ is exactly

equivalent to the relative \_that\_, and either may be used with equal

propriety. We cannot avoid the conclusion, therefore, that, as the latter

word is sometimes a conjunction and sometimes a pronoun, so is the former.

OBS. 23.--The relatives \_that\_ and \_as\_ have this peculiarity; that, unlike

\_whom\_ and \_which\_, they never follow the word on which their case depends;

nor indeed can any simple relative be so placed, except it be governed by a

preposition or an infinitive. Thus, it is said, (John, xiii, 29th,) "Buy

those things \_that\_ we have need \_of\_;" so we may say, "Buy such things

\_as\_ we have need of." But we cannot say, "Buy those things \_of that\_ we

have need;" or, "Buy such things \_of as\_ we have need." Though we may say,

"Buy those things \_of which\_ we have need," as well as, "Buy those things

\_which\_ we have need \_of\_;" or, "Admit those persons of whom we have need,"

as well as, "Admit those persons \_whom\_ we have need \_of.\_" By this it

appears that \_that\_ and \_as\_ have a closer connexion with their antecedents

than the other relatives require: a circumstance worthy to have been better

remembered by some critics. "Again, \_that\_ and \_as\_ are used rather

differently. When \_that\_ is used, the verb must be repeated; as,

'Participles \_require\_ the same government, \_that\_ their verbs

\_require\_.'--'James \_showed\_ the same credulity, \_that\_ his minister

\_showed\_.' But when \_as\_ is used, the verb generally may, or may not be

repeated; as, 'Participles \_require\_ the same government \_as\_ their verbs;'

or, '\_as\_ their verbs \_require\_.'--'James \_showed\_ the same credulity as

his minister;' or, '\_as\_ his minister \_showed\_:' the second nominative

\_minister\_ being parsed as the nominative to the same verb \_showed\_

understood."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 140.[195]

OBS. 24.--The terminating of a sentence with a preposition, or other small

particle, is in general undignified, though perhaps not otherwise improper.

Hence the above-named inflexibility in the construction of \_that\_ and \_as\_,

sometimes induces an ellipsis of the governing word designed; and is

occasionally attended with some difficulty respecting the choice of our

terms. Examples: "The answer is always in the same case \_that\_ the

interrogative word \_is\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 70. Here is a faulty

termination; and with it a more faulty ellipsis. In stead of ending the

sentence with \_is in\_, say, "The answer always \_agrees in case with\_ the

interrogative word." Again: "The relative is of the same person \_with\_ the

antecedent."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 101. This sentence is wrong, because the

person of the relative is not really \_identical with\_ the antecedent. "The

relative is of the same person \_as\_ the antecedent."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

154. Here the writer means--"\_as\_ the antecedent \_is of\_." "A neuter verb

becomes active, when followed by a noun of the same signification \_with\_

its own."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 127. Here same is wrong, or else the last

three words are useless. It would therefore be improper to say--"of \_the

same\_ signification \_as\_ its own." The expression ought to be--"of a

signification \_similar to\_ its own." "Ode is, \_in Greek\_, the same \_with\_

song or hymn."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 396. \_Song\_ being no Greek word, I

cannot think the foregoing expression accurate, though one might say, "Ode

is \_identical with\_ song or hymn." Would it not be better to say, "Ode is

the same \_as\_ song or hymn?" That is, "Ode is, \_literally\_, the same \_thing

that\_ song or hymn \_is\_?" "Treatises of philosophy, ought not to be

composed in the same style \_with\_ orations."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 175. Here

neither \_with\_ nor \_as\_ can be proper; because \_orations\_ are not \_a

style\_. Expunge \_same\_; and say--"in the style \_of\_ orations."

OBS. 25.--Few writers are sufficiently careful in their choice and

management of relatives. In the following instance, Murray and others

violate a special rule of their own grammars, by using \_whom\_ for \_that\_

"after an adjective of the superlative degree:" "Modifying them according

to the genius of that tongue, and the established practice of \_the best\_

speakers and writers \_by whom\_ it is used."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 1;

\_Fisk's\_, p. 11; \_et al.\_ According to Priestley and himself, the great

Compiler is here in an error. The rule is perhaps too stringent; but

whoever teaches it, should keep it. If he did not like to say, "\_the best\_

speakers and writers \_that\_ it is used \_by\_;" he ought to have said, "\_the

best\_ speakers and writers \_that use it\_." Or, rather, he ought to have

said \_nothing\_ after the word "writers;" because the whole relative clause

is here weak and useless. Yet how many of the amenders of this grammar have

not had perspicacity enough, either to omit the expression, or to correct

it according to the author's own rule!

OBS. 26.--Relative pronouns are capable of being taken in two very

different senses: the one, restrictive of the general idea suggested by the

antecedent; the other, \_resumptive\_ of that idea, in the full import of the

term--or, in whatever extent the previous definitives allow. The

distinction between these two senses, important as it is, is frequently

made to depend solely upon the insertion or the omission of \_a comma\_.

Thus, if I say, "Men who grasp after riches, are never satisfied;" the

relative \_who\_ is taken restrictively, and I am understood to speak \_only

of the avaricious\_. But, if I say, "Men, who grasp after riches, are never

satisfied;" by separating the terms \_men\_ and \_who\_, I declare \_all men\_ to

be covetous and unsatisfied. For the former sense, the relative \_that\_ is

preferable to \_who\_; and I shall presently show why. This example, in the

latter form, is found in Sanborn's Grammar, page 142d; but whether the

author meant what he says, or not, I doubt. Like many other unskillful

writers, he has paid little regard to the above-mentioned distinction; and,

in some instances, his meaning cannot have been what his words declare: as,

"A prism is a solid, whose sides are all parallelograms."--\_Analytical

Gram.\_, p. 142. This, as it stands, is no definition of a prism, but an

assertion of two things; that a prism is a solid, and that all the sides of

a solid are parallelograms. Erase the comma, and the words will describe

the prism as a peculiar kind of solid; because \_whose\_ will then be taken

in the restrictive sense. This sense, however, may be conveyed even with a

comma before the relative; as, "Some fictitious histories yet remain,

\_that\_ were composed during the decline of the Roman empire."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 374. This does not suggest that there are no other fictitious

histories now extant, than such as were composed during the decline of the

Roman empire; but I submit it to the reader, whether the word \_which\_, if

here put for \_that\_, would not convey this idea.

OBS. 27.--Upon this point, many philologists are open to criticism; and

none more so, than the recent author above cited. By his own plain showing,

this grammarian has no conception of the difference of meaning, upon which

the foregoing distinction is founded. What marvel, then, that he falls into

errors, both of doctrine and of practice? But, if no such difference

exists, or none that is worthy of a critic's notice; then the error is

mine, and it is vain to distinguish between the restrictive and the

resumptive sense of relative pronouns. For example: "The boy that desires

to assist his companions, deserves respect."--\_G. Brown.\_ "That boy, who

desires to assist his companions, deserves respect."--\_D. H. Sanborn.\_

According to my notion, these two sentences clearly convey two very

different meanings; the relative, in the former, being restrictive, but, in

the latter, resumptive of the sense of the antecedent. But of the latter

example this author says, "The clause, 'who desires to assist his

companions,' with the relative who at its head, \_explains or tells what boy

deserves respect\_; and, like a conjunction, connects this clause to the

noun \_boy\_."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 69. He therefore takes it in a

restrictive sense, as if this sentence were exactly equivalent to the

former. But he adds, "A relative pronoun is resolvable into a personal

pronoun and a conjunction. The sentence would then read, 'That boy desires

to assist his companions, \_and\_ he deserves respect.' The relative pronoun

governs the nearer verb, and the antecedent the more distant one."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 69. Now, concerning the restrictive relative, this doctrine of

equivalence does not hold good; and, besides, the explanation here given,

not only contradicts his former declaration of the sense he intended, but,

with other seeming contradiction, joins the antecedent to the nearer verb,

and the substituted pronoun to the more distant.

OBS. 28.--Again, the following principles of this author's punctuation are

no less indicative of his false views of this matter: "RULE xiv.--Relative

pronouns in the nominative or [\_the\_] objective case, are preceded by

commas, when the clause which the relative \_connects\_ [,] ends a sentence;

as, 'Sweetness of temper is a quality, which reflects a lustre on every

accomplishment'--B. Greenleaf.' Self [-] denial is the sacrifice [,] which

virtue must make.' [\_--L. Murray.\_] The comma is omitted before the

relative, when the verb which the antecedent governs, follows the relative

clause; as, 'He that suffers by imposture, has too often his virtue more

impaired than his fortune.'--\_Johnson\_." See \_Sanborn's Analytical Gram.\_,

p. 269. Such are some of our author's principles--"the essence of modern

improvements." His practice, though often wrong, is none the worse for

contradicting these doctrines. Nay, his proudest boast is ungrammatical,

though peradventure not the less believed: "\_No\_ [other] \_grammar in the

language\_ probably contains so great a quantity of \_condensed and\_ useful

matter with so little superfluity."--\_Sanborn's Preface\_, p. v.

OBS. 29.--Murray's rule for the punctuation of relatives, (a rule which he

chiefly copied from Lowth,) recognizes virtually the distinction which I

have made above; but, in assuming that relatives "\_generally\_" require a

comma before them, it erroneously suggests that the resumptive sense is

more common than the restrictive. Churchill, on the contrary, as wrongly

makes it an essential characteristic of \_all\_ relatives, "to limit or

explain the words to which they refer." See his \_New Gram.\_, p. 74. The

fact is, that relatives are so generally restrictive, that not one half of

them are thus pointed; though some that do restrict their antecedent,

nevertheless admit the point. This may be seen by the first example given

us by Murray: "Relative pronouns are connective words, and \_generally

admit\_ a comma before them: as, 'He preaches sublimely, who lives a sober,

righteous, and pious life.' But when two members, or \_phrases\_, [say

\_clauses\_,] are closely connected by a relative, restraining the general

notion of the antecedent to a particular sense, \_the comma should be

omitted\_: as, '\_Self-denial\_ is the \_sacrifice which\_ virtue must make;' 'A

\_man who\_ is of a detracting spirit, will misconstrue the most innocent

\_words that\_ can be put together.' In the latter example, the assertion is

not of 'a man in general,' but of 'a man who is of a detracting spirit;'

and therefore \_they\_ [say \_the pronoun and its antecedent\_] should not be

separated."--\_Murray's Gram., Octavo\_, p. 273; \_Ingersoll's\_, 285;

\_Comly's\_, 152. This reasoning, strictly applied, would exclude the comma

before \_who\_ in the first example above; but, as the pronoun does not

"closely" or immediately follow its antecedent, the comma is allowed,

though it is not much needed. Not so, when the sense is resumptive: as,

"The \_additions, which\_ are very considerable, are chiefly \_such as\_ are

calculated to obviate objections." See \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. ix. Here the

comma is essential to the meaning. Without it, \_which\_ would be equivalent

to \_that\_; with it, which is equivalent to \_and they\_. But this latter

meaning, as I imagine, cannot be expressed by the relative \_that\_.

OBS. 30.--Into the unfortunate example which Sanborn took from Murray, I

have inserted the comma for him; not because it is necessary or right, but

because his rule requires it: "\_Self-denial\_ is the \_sacrifice\_," &c. The

author of "a complete system of grammar," might better contradict even

Murray, than himself. But why was this text admired? and why have \_Greene,

Bullions, Hiley, Hart\_, and others, also copied it? A \_sacrifice\_ is

something devoted and lost, for the sake of a greater good; and, \_if Virtue

sacrifice self-denial\_, what will she do, but run into indulgence? The

great sacrifice which she demands of men, is rather that of their

\_self-love\_. Wm. E. Russell has it, "\_Self defence\_ is the sacrifice which

virtue must make!"--\_Russell's Abridgement of Murray's Gram.\_, p. 116.

Bishop Butler tells us, "It is indeed \_ridiculous\_ to assert, that

\_self-denial is essential to virtue and piety\_; but it would have been

nearer the truth, though not strictly the truth itself, to have said, that

it is essential to discipline and improvement."--\_Analogy of Religion\_, p.

123.

OBS. 31.--The relative \_that\_, though usually reckoned equivalent to \_who\_

or \_which\_, evidently differs from both, in being more generally, and

perhaps more appropriately, taken in the restrictive sense. It ought

therefore, for distinction's sake, to be preferred to \_who\_ or \_which\_,

whenever an antecedent not otherwise limited, is to be restricted by the

relative clause; as, "\_Men that\_ grasp after riches, are never

satisfied."--"I love \_wisdom that\_ is gay and civilized."--\_Art of

Thinking\_, p. 34. This phraseology leaves not the limitation of the meaning

to depend solely upon the absence of a pause after the antecedent; because

the relative \_that\_ is seldom, if ever, used by good writers in any other

than a restrictive sense. Again: "A man of a polite imagination is let into

a great many pleasures \_that\_ the vulgar are not capable of

receiving."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 411. Here, too, according to my notion,

\_that\_ is obviously preferable to \_which\_; though a great critic, very

widely known, has taken some pains to establish a different opinion. The

"many pleasures" here spoken of, are no otherwise defined, than as being

such as "the vulgar are not capable of receiving." The writer did not mean

to deny that the vulgar are capable of receiving a great many pleasures;

but, certainly, if \_that\_ were changed to \_which\_, this would be the

meaning conveyed, unless the reader were very careful to avoid a pause

where he would be apt to make one. I therefore prefer Addison's expression

to that which Dr. Blair would substitute.

OBS. 32.--The style of Addison is more than once censured by Dr. Blair, for

the frequency with which the relative \_that\_ occurs in it, where the

learned lecturer would have used which. The reasons assigned by the critic

are these: "\_Which\_ is a much more definitive word than that, being never

employed in any other way than as a relative; whereas \_that\_ is a word of

many senses; sometimes a demonstrative pronoun, often a conjunction. In

some cases we are indeed obliged to use \_that\_ for a relative, in order to

avoid the ungraceful repetition of \_which\_ in the same sentence. But when

we are laid under no necessity of this kind, \_which\_ is always the

preferable word, and certainly was so in this sentence: '\_Pleasures which\_

the vulgar are not capable of receiving,' is much better than '\_pleasures

that\_ the vulgar are not capable of receiving.'"--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, Lect.

xx, p. 200. Now the facts are these: (1.) That \_that\_ is the more

definitive or restrictive word of the two. (2.) That the word \_which\_ has

as many different senses and uses as the word \_that\_. (3.) That not the

repetition of \_which\_ or \_who\_ in a series of clauses, but a \_needless

change\_ of the relative, is ungraceful. (4.) That the necessity of using

\_that\_ rather than \_which\_ or \_who\_, depends, not upon what is here

supposed, but upon the different senses which these words usually convey.

(5.) That as there is always some reason of choice, \_that\_ is sometimes to

be preferred; \_which\_, sometimes; and \_who\_, sometimes: as, "It is not the

man \_who\_ has merely taught, or \_who\_ has taught long, or \_who\_ is able to

point out defects in authors, \_that\_ is capable of enlightening the world

in the respective sciences \_which\_ have engaged his attention; but the man

\_who\_ has taught well."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 7.

OBS. 33.--Blair's Rhetoric consists of forty-seven lectures; four of which

are devoted to a critical examination of the style of Addison, as exhibited

in four successive papers of the Spectator. The remarks of the professor

are in general judicious; but, seeing his work is made a common textbook

for students of "Belles Lettres," it is a pity to find it so liable to

reprehension on the score of inaccuracy. Among the passages which are

criticised in the twenty-first lecture, there is one in which the essayist

speaks of the effects of \_novelty\_ as follows:

'It is this \_which\_ bestows charms on a monster, and makes even the

imperfections of nature please us. It is this \_that\_ recommends variety,

where the mind is every instant called off to something new, and the

attention not suffered to dwell too long and waste itself on any particular

object. It is this, likewise, \_that\_ improves what is great or beautiful,

and makes it afford the mind a double entertainment.'--\_Spectator\_, No.

412.

This passage is deservedly praised by the critic, for its "perspicuity,

grace, and harmony;" but, in using different relatives under like

circumstances, the writer has hardly done justice to his own good taste.

Blair's remark is this: "His frequent use of \_that\_, instead of \_which\_, is

another peculiarity of his style; but, on this occasion in particular, [it]

cannot be much commended, as, 'It is this \_which\_,' seems, in every view,

to be better than, 'It is this \_that\_,' three times repeated."--\_Lect.\_

xxi, p. 207. What is here meant by "\_every view\_," may, I suppose, be seen

in the corresponding criticism which is noticed in my last observation

above; and I am greatly deceived, if, in this instance also, the relative

\_that\_ is not better than \_which\_, and more agreeable to polite usage. The

direct relative which corresponds to the introductory pronoun \_it\_ and \_an

other antecedent\_, should, I think, be \_that\_, and not \_who\_ or \_which\_:

as, "It is not ye \_that\_ speak."--\_Matt.\_, x, 20. "It is thou, Lord, \_who\_

hast the hearts of all men in thy hands, \_that\_ turnest the hearts of any

to show me favour."--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 278. Here \_who\_ has reference to

\_thou\_ or \_Lord\_ only; but \_that\_ has some respect to the pronoun \_it\_,

though it agrees in person and gender with \_thou\_. A similar example is

cited at the close of the preceding observation; and I submit it to the

reader, whether the word \_that\_, as it there occurs, is not the \_only fit\_

word for the place it occupies. So in the following examples: "There are

\_Words, which\_ are \_not Verbs, that\_ signify actions and passions, and even

things transient."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 100. "It is the universal

taste of mankind, which is subject to no such changing modes, \_that\_ alone

is entitled to possess any authority."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, p. 286.

OBS. 34.--Sometimes the broad import of an antecedent is \_doubly

restricted\_, first by one relative clause, and then by an other; as, "And

all \_that dwell upon the earth\_, shall worship him, \_whose names are not

written in the book of life\_."--\_Rev.\_, xiii, 8. "And then, like true

Thames-Watermen, they abuse every man \_that\_ passes by, \_who\_ is better

dressed than themselves."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol. ii, p. 10. Here \_and\_,

or \_if he\_, would be as good as "\_who\_;" for the connective only serves to

carry the restriction into narrower limits. Sometimes the limit fixed by

one clause is \_extended\_ by an other; as, "There is no evil \_that you may

suffer\_, or \_that you may expect to suffer, which\_ prayer is not the

appointed means to alleviate."--\_Bickersteth, on Prayer\_, p. 16. Here

\_which\_ resumes the idea of "\_evil\_," in the extent last determined; or

rather, in that which is fixed by either clause, since the limits of both

are embraced in the assertion. And, in the two limiting clauses, the same

pronoun was requisite, on account of their joint relation; but the clause

which assumes a different relation, is rightly introduced by a different

pronoun. This is also the case in the following examples: "For there is no

condemnation to those \_that\_ are in Christ Jesus, \_who\_ walk not after the

flesh, but after the Spirit."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 432. "I will

tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast \_that\_ carrieth her,

\_which\_ hath the seven heads and ten horns."--\_Rev.\_, xvii, 7. Here the

restrictive sense is well expressed by one relative, and the resumptive by

an other. When neither of these senses is intended by the writer, \_any\_

form of the relative must needs be improper: as, "The greatest genius

\_which runs\_ through the arts and sciences, takes a kind of tincture from

them, and falls unavoidably into imitation."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 160.

Here, as I suppose, \_which runs\_ should be \_in running\_. What else can the

author have meant?

OBS. 35.--Having now, as I imagine, clearly shown the difference between

the restrictive and the resumptive sense of a relative pronoun, and the

absolute necessity of making such a choice of words as will express that

sense only which we intend; I hope the learner will see, by these

observations, not merely that clearness requires the occasional use of each

of our five relatives, \_who, which, what, that\_, and \_as\_; but that this

distinction in the meaning, is a very common principle by which to

determine what is, and what is not, good English. Thus \_that\_ and \_as\_ are

appropriately our \_restrictive\_ relatives, though \_who\_ and \_which\_ are

sometimes used restrictively; but, in a \_resumptive\_ sense, \_who\_ or

\_which\_ is required, and required even after those terms which usually

demand \_that\_ or \_as\_: thus, "We are vexed at the unlucky chance, and go

away dissatisfied. \_Such\_ impressions, \_which\_ ought not to be cherished,

are a sufficient reason for excluding stories of that kind from the

theatre."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 279. Here \_which\_ is proper to the

sense intended; but \_such\_ requires \_as\_, when the latter term limits the

meaning of the former. In sentences like the following, \_who\_ or \_which\_

may be used in lieu of \_that\_; whether with any advantage or not, the

reader may judge: "You seize the critical moment \_that\_ is favorable to

emotion."--\_Bair's Rhet.\_, p. 321. "\_An\_ historian \_that\_ would instruct

us, must know when to be concise."--\_Ib.\_, p. 359. "Seneca has been

censured for the affectation \_that\_ appears in his style."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367.

"Such as the prodigies \_that\_ attended the death of Julius Cæsar."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 401. "By unfolding those principles \_that\_ ought to govern the taste of

every individual."--\_Kames's Dedication to El. of Crit.\_ "But I am sure he

has that \_that\_ is better than an estate."--\_Spect.\_, No. 475. "There are

two properties, \_that\_ characterize and essentially distinguish relative

pronouns."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 74. By these examples, it may be seen,

that Dr. Blair often forgot or disregarded his own doctrine respecting the

use of this relative; though he was oftener led, by the error of that

doctrine, to substitute \_which\_ for \_that\_ improperly.

OBS. 36.--\_Whether\_ was formerly used as an interrogative pronoun, in which

sense it always referred to one of two things; as, "Ye fools and blind! for

\_whether\_ is greater, the gold, or the temple that sanctifieth the

gold?"--\_Matt.\_, xxiii, 17. This usage is now obsolete; and, in stead of

it, we say, "\_Which\_ is greater?" But as a disjunctive conjunction,

corresponding to \_or\_, the word \_whether\_ is still in good repute; as,

"Resolve \_whether\_ you will go \_or\_ not."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ In this sense

of the term, some choose to call \_whether\_ an \_adverb\_.

OBS. 37.--In the view of some writers, interrogative pronouns differ from

relatives chiefly in this; that, as the subject referred to is unknown to

the speaker, they do not relate to a \_preceding\_ noun, but to something

which is to be expressed in the answer to the question. It is certain that

their \_person, number\_, and \_gender\_, are not regulated by an antecedent

noun; but by what the speaker supposes or knows of a subject which may, or

may not, agree with them in these respects: as, "\_What\_ lies there?"

Answer, "Two \_men\_ asleep." Here \_what\_, standing for \_what thing\_, is of

the third person, singular number, and neuter gender; but \_men\_, which is

the term that answers to it, is of the third person, plural, masculine.

There is therefore no necessary agreement between the question and the

answer, in any of those properties in which a pronoun usually agrees with

its noun. Yet some grammarians will have interrogatives to agree with these

"\_subsequents\_," as relatives agree with their \_antecedents\_. The answer,

it must be granted, commonly contains a noun, corresponding in some

respects to the interrogative pronoun, and agreeing with it \_in case\_; but

this noun cannot be supposed to control the interrogation, nor is it, in

any sense, the word for which the pronoun stands. For every pronoun must

needs stand for something that is uttered or conceived by the same speaker;

nor can any question be answered, until its meaning is understood.

Interrogative pronouns must therefore be explained as direct substitutes

for such other terms as one might use in stead of them. Thus \_who\_ means

\_what person\_?

"\_Who\_ taught that heav'n-directed spire to rise?

\_The Man of Ross\_, each lisping babe replies."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 38.--In the classification of the pronouns, and indeed in the whole

treatment of them, almost all our English grammars are miserably faulty, as

well as greatly at variance. In some forty or fifty, which I have examined

on this point, the few words which constitute this part of speech, have

more than twenty different modes of distribution. (1.) Cardell says, "There

is but one kind of pronouns"--\_Elements of Gram.\_, p. 30. (2.) D. Adam's,

Greenleaf, Nutting, and Weld, will have two kinds; "\_personal\_ and

\_relative\_." (3.) Dr. Webster's "Substitutes, or pronouns, are of two

kinds:" the one, "called \_personal\_;" the other, without name or number.

See his \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 24. (4.) Many have fixed upon three sorts;

"\_personal, relative\_, and \_adjective\_;" with a subdivision of the last. Of

these is Lindley Murray, in his late editions, with his amenders,

Ainsworth, Alger, Bacon, Bullions, Fisk, A. Flint, Frost, Guy, Hall,

Kirkham, Lennie, Merchant, Picket, Pond, and S. Putnam. (5.) Kirkham,

however, changes the order of the classes; thus, "\_personal, adjective\_,

and \_relative\_;" and, with ridiculous absurdity, makes \_mine, thine, hers,

ours, yours\_, and \_theirs\_ to be "\_compounds\_." (6.) Churchill adopts the

plan of "\_personal, relative\_, and \_adjective\_ pronouns;" and then destroys

it by a valid argument. (7.) Comly, Wilcox, Wells, and Perley, have these

three classes; "\_personal, relative\_, and \_interrogative\_:" and this

division is right. (8.) Sanborn makes the following bull: "The \_general\_

divisions of pronouns are \_into personal, relative, interrogative\_, and

\_several sub-divisions\_."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 91. (9.) Jaudon has these

three kinds; "\_personal, relative\_, and \_distributive\_." (10.) Robbins,

these; "\_simple, conjunctive\_, and \_interrogative\_." (11.) Lindley Murray,

in his early editions, had these four; "\_personal, possessive, relative\_,

and \_adjective\_." (12.) Bucke has these; "\_personal, relative,

interrogative\_, and \_adjective\_." (13.) Ingersoll, these; "\_personal,

adjective, relative\_, and \_interrogative\_." (14.) Buchanan; "\_personal,

demonstrative, relative\_, and \_interrogative\_." (15.) Coar; "\_personal,

possessive\_ or \_pronominal adjectives, demonstrative\_, and \_relative\_."

(16.) Bicknell; "\_personal, possessive, relative\_, and \_demonstrative\_."

(17.) Cobbett; "\_personal, relative, demonstrative\_, and \_indefinite\_."

(18) M'Culloch; "\_personal, possessive, relative\_, and \_reciprocal\_." (19.)

Staniford has five; "\_personal, relative, interrogative, definitive\_, and

\_distributive\_." (20.) Alexander, six; "\_personal, relative, demonstrative,

interrogative, definitive\_, and \_adjective\_." (21.) Cooper, in 1828, had

five; "\_personal, relative, possessive, definite\_, and \_indefinite\_." (22.)

Cooper, in 1831, six; "\_personal, relative, definite, indefinite,

possessive\_, and \_possessive pronominal adjectives\_." (23.) Dr. Crombie

says: "Pronouns may be divided into \_Substantive\_, and \_Adjective;

Personal\_, and \_Impersonal; Relative\_, and \_Interrogative\_." (24.) Alden

has seven sorts; "\_personal, possessive, relative, interrogative,

distributive, demonstrative\_, and \_indefinite\_." (25.) R. C. Smith has many

kinds, and treats them so badly that nobody can count them. In respect to

definitions, too, most of these writers are shamefully inaccurate, or

deficient. Hence the filling up of their classes is often as bad as the

arrangement. For instance, four and twenty of them will have interrogative

pronouns to be relatives; but who that knows what a relative pronoun is,

can coincide with them in opinion? Dr. Crombie thinks, "that interrogatives

are strictly relatives;" and yet divides the two classes with his own hand!

MODIFICATIONS.

Pronouns have the same modifications as nouns; namely, \_Persons, Numbers,

Genders\_, and \_Cases\_. Definitions universally applicable have already been

given of all these things; it is therefore unnecessary to define them again

in this place.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In the personal pronouns, most of these properties are

distinguished by the words themselves; in the relative and the

interrogative pronouns, they are ascertained chiefly by means of the

antecedent and the verb. Interrogative pronouns, however, as well as the

relatives \_which, what, as\_, and all the compounds of \_who, which\_, and

\_what\_, are always of the third person. Even in etymological parsing, some

regard must be had to the syntactical relations of words. By

\_modifications\_, we commonly mean actual changes in the forms of words, by

which their grammatical properties are inherently distinguished; but, in

all languages, the distinguishable properties of words are somewhat more

numerous than their actual variations of form; there being certain

principles of universal grammar, which cause the person, number, gender, or

case, of some words, to be inferred from their relation to others; or, what

is nearly the same thing, from the sense which is conveyed by the sentence.

Hence, if in a particular instance it happen, that some, or even all, of

these properties, are without any index in the form of the pronoun itself,

they are still to be ascribed in parsing, because they may be easily and

certainly discovered from the construction. For example: in the following

text, it is just as easy to discern the \_genders\_ of the pronouns, as the

\_cases\_ of the nouns; and both are known and asserted to be what they are,

upon principles of mere inference: "For what knowest \_thou\_, O \_wife\_,

whether \_thou\_ shalt save \_thy husband\_? or how knowest \_thou\_, O \_man\_,

whether \_thou\_ shalt save \_thy wife\_?"--\_1 Cor.\_, vii, 16. Again: "\_Who\_

betrayed \_her\_ companion? Not \_I\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 211. Here \_her\_

being of the feminine gender, it is the inference of every reader, that

\_who\_ and \_I\_ are so too; but whether the word \_companion\_ is masculine or

feminine, is not so obvious.

OBS. 2.--The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, are equally

applicable to both sexes; and should be considered masculine or feminine,

according to the known application of them. [See \_Levizac's French Gram.\_,

p. 73.] The speaker and the hearer, being present to each other, of course

know the sex to which they respectively belong; and, whenever they appear

in narrative or dialogue, we are told who they are. In \_Latin\_, an

adjective or a participle relating to these pronouns, is varied \_to agree\_

with them in \_number, gender\_, and \_case\_. This is a sufficient proof that

\_ego, I\_, and \_tu, thou\_, are not destitute of gender, though neither the

Latin words nor the English are themselves varied to express it:--

"\_Miseræ\_ hoc tamen unum

Exequere, Anna, \_mihi: solam\_ nam perfidus ille

\_Te\_ colere, arcanos etiam tibi credere sensus;

\_Sola\_ viri molles aditus et tempora nôras."--\_Virgil\_.

OBS. 3.--Many English grammarians, and Murray at their head, deny the first

person of nouns, and the gender of pronouns of the first and second

persons; and at the same time teach, that, "Pronouns must always agree with

their antecedents, \_and\_ the nouns for which they stand, in \_gender,

number\_, and \_person\_:" (\_Murray's Gr., 2d Ed.\_, p. 111; \_Rev. T. Smith's\_,

p. 60:) and further, with redundance of expression, that, "The relative is

of the same person \_with\_ the antecedent, and the verb agrees with it

accordingly."--\_Same\_. These quotations form Murray's fifth rule of syntax,

as it stands in his early editions.[196] In some of his revisings, the

author erased the word \_person\_ from the former sentence, and changed

\_with\_ to \_as\_ in the latter. But other pronouns than relatives, agree with

their nouns in person; so that his first alteration was not for the better,

though Ingersoll, Kirkham, Alger, Bacon, J. Greenleaf, and some others,

have been very careful to follow him in it. And why did he never discern,

that the above-named principles of his etymology are both of them

contradicted by this rule of his syntax, and one of them by his rule as it

now stands? It is manifest, that no two words can possibly \_agree\_ in any

property which belongs not to both. Else what \_is\_ agreement? Nay, no two

things in nature, can in any wise agree, accord, or be alike, but by having

some quality or accident in common. How strange a contradiction then is

this! And what a compliment to learning, that it is still found in

well-nigh all our grammars!

OBS. 4.--If there were truth in what Murray and others affirm, that "Gender

has respect only to the third person singular of the pronouns, \_he, she,

it\_," [197] no two words could ever agree in gender; because there can be

no such agreement between any two of the words here mentioned, and the

assertion is, that gender has respect to no others. But, admitting that

neither the author nor the numerous copiers of this false sentence ever

meant to deny that gender has respect to \_nouns\_, they do deny that it has

respect to any other \_pronouns\_ than these; whereas I affirm that it ought

to be recognized as a property of \_all\_ pronouns, as well as of all nouns.

Not that the gender of either is in all instances invariably fixed by the

\_forms\_ of the particular words; but there is in general, if not in every

possible case, some principle of grammar, on which the gender of any noun

or pronoun in a sentence may be readily ascertained. Is it not plain, that

if we know who speaks or writes, who hears or is addressed, we know also

the gender of the pronouns which are applied to these persons? The poet of

The Task looked upon his mother's picture, and expressed his tender

recollections of a deceased parent by way of \_address\_; and will any one

pretend, that the pronouns which he applied to himself and to her, are

either of the same gender, or of no gender? If we take neither of these

assumptions, must we not say, they are of different genders? In this

instance, then, let the parser call those of the first person, masculine;

and those of the second, feminine:--

"\_My\_ mother! when \_I\_ learned that \_thou\_ wast dead,

Say, wast \_thou\_ conscious of the tears \_I\_ shed?"--\_Cowper\_.

OBS. 5.--That the pronouns of the first and second persons are sometimes

masculine and sometimes feminine, is perfectly certain; but whether they

can or cannot be neuter, is a question difficult to be decided. To things

inanimate they are applied only \_figuratively\_; and the question is,

whether the figure always necessarily changes the gender of the antecedent

noun. We assume the general principle, that the noun and its pronoun are

always of the same gender; and we know that when inanimate objects are

personified in the third person, they are usually represented as masculine

or feminine, the gender being changed by the figure. But when a lifeless

object is spoken to in the second person, or represented as speaking in the

first, as the pronouns here employed are in themselves without distinction

of gender, no such change can be proved by the mere words; and, if we allow

that it would be needless to \_imagine\_ it where the words do not prove it,

the gender of these pronouns must in such cases be neuter, because we have

no ground to think it otherwise. Examples: "And Jesus answered and said

unto \_it\_, [the barren \_figtree\_,] No man eat fruit of \_thee\_ hereafter

forever."--\_Mark\_, xi, 14. "O \_earth\_, cover not \_thou\_ my blood."--\_Job\_,

xvi, 18. "O \_thou sword\_ of the Lord, how long will it be ere \_thou\_ be

quiet?"--\_Jeremiah\_, xlvii, 6. In these instances, the objects addressed do

not appear to be figuratively invested with the attribute of sex. So

likewise with respect to the first person. If, in the following example,

\_gold\_ and \_diamond\_ are neuter, so is the pronoun \_me\_; and, if not

neuter, of what gender are they? The personification indicates or

discriminates no other.

"Where thy true treasure? Gold says, 'Not in \_me\_;

And, 'Not in \_me\_,' the diamond. Gold is poor."--\_Young\_.

THE DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

The declension of a pronoun is a regular arrangement of its numbers and

cases.

I. SIMPLE PERSONALS.

The simple personal pronouns are thus declined:--

I, \_of the\_ FIRST PERSON, \_any of the genders\_.[198]

Sing. Nom. I, Plur. Nom. we,

Poss. my, \_or\_ mine,[199] Poss. our, \_or\_ ours,

Obj. me; Obj. us.

THOU, \_of the\_ SECOND PERSON, \_any of the genders\_.

Sing. Nom. thou,[200] Plur. Nom. ye, or you,

Poss. thy, \_or\_ thine, Poss. your, \_or\_ yours,

Obj. thee; Obj. you, or ye.[201]

HE, \_of the\_ THIRD PERSON, \_masculine gender\_.

Sing. Nom. he, Plur. Nom. they,

Poss. his, Poss. their, \_or\_ theirs,

Obj. him; Obj. them.

SHE, \_of the\_ THIRD PERSON, \_feminine gender\_.

Sing. Nom. she, Plur. Nom. they,

Poss. her, \_or\_ hers, Poss. their, \_or\_ theirs,

Obj. her; Obj. them.

IT, \_of the\_ THIRD PERSON, \_neuter gender\_.

Sing. Nom, it, Plur. Nom. they,

Poss. its, Poss. their, \_or\_ theirs,

Obj. it; Obj. them.

II. COMPOUND PERSONALS.

The word \_self\_, added to the simple personal pronouns, forms the class of

\_compound personal pronouns\_; which are used when an action reverts upon

the agent, and also when some persons are to be distinguished from others:

as, sing, \_myself\_, plur. \_ourselves\_; sing, \_thyself\_, plur. \_yourselves\_;

sing, \_himself\_, plur. \_themselves\_; sing, \_herself\_, plur. \_themselves\_;

sing, \_itself\_, plur. \_themselves\_. They all want the possessive case, and

are alike in the nominative and objective. Thus:--

MYSELF, \_of the\_ FIRST PERSON,[202] \_any of the genders\_.

Sing. Nom. myself, Plur. Nom. ourselves,

Poss. ------, Poss. ---------,

Obj. myself; Obj. ourselves.

THYSELF, \_of the\_ SECOND PERSON, \_any of the genders\_.

Sing. Nom. thyself,[203] Plur. Nom. yourselves,

Poss. -------, Poss. ----------,

Obj. thyself; Obj. yourselves.

HIMSELF, \_of the\_ THIRD PERSON, \_masculine gender\_.

Sing. Nom. himself, Plur. Nom. themselves,

Poss. -------, Poss. ----------,

Obj. himself; Obj. themselves.

HERSELF, \_of the\_ THIRD PERSON, \_feminine gender\_.

Sing. Nom. herself, Plur. Nom. themselves,

Poss. -------, Poss. ----------,

Obj. herself; Obj. themselves.

ITSELF, \_of the\_ THIRD PERSON, \_neuter gender\_.

Sing. Nom. itself, Plur. Nom. themselves,

Poss. ------, Poss. ----------,

Obj. itself; Obj. themselves.

III. RELATIVES AND INTERROGATIVES.

The relative and the interrogative pronouns are thus declined:--

WHO, \_literally applied to persons only\_.

Sing. Nom. who, Plur. Nom. who,

Poss. whose, Poss. whose,

Obj. whom; Obj. whom.

WHICH, \_applied to animals and things\_.

Sing. Nom. which, Plur. Nom. which,

Poss. [204]--, Poss. -----,

Obj. which; Obj. which.

WHAT, \_applied ordinarily to things only\_.[205]

Sing. Nom. what, Plur. Nom. what,

Poss. ----, Poss. ----,

Obj. what; Obj. what.

THAT, \_applied to persons, animals, and things\_.

Sing. Nom. that, Plur. Nom. that,

Poss. ----, Poss. ----,

Obj. that; Obj. that.

AS, \_applied to persons, animals, and things\_.

Sing. Nom. as, Plur. Nom. as,

Poss. ----, Poss. ----,

Obj. as; Obj. as.

IV. COMPOUND RELATIVES.

The compound relative pronouns, \_whoever\_ or \_whosoever, whichever\_ or

\_whichsoever\_, and \_whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_[206] are declined in the same

manner as the simples, \_who which, what\_. Thus:--

WHOEVER or WHOSOEVER, \_applied only to persons\_.

Sing. Nom. whoever, Plur. Nom. whoever,

Poss. whosever, Poss. whosever,

Obj. whomever; Obj. whomever.

Sing. Nom. whosoever, Plur. Nom. whosoever,

Poss. whosesoever, Poss. whosesoever,

Obj. whomsoever; Obj. whomsoever.

WHICHEVER or WHICHSOEVER, \_applied to persons, animals, and things\_.

Sing. Nom. whichever, Plur. Nom. whichever,

Poss. ---------, Poss. --------,

Obj. whichever; Obj. whichever.

Sing. Nom. whichsoever, Plur. Nom. whichsoever,

Poss. ---------, Poss. --------,

Obj. whichsoever; Obj. whichsoever.

WHATEVER or WHATSOEVER, \_applied ordinarily to things only\_.

Sing. Nom. whatever, Plur. Nom. whatever,

Poss. --------, Poss. --------,

Obj. whatever; Obj. whatever.

Sing. Nom. whatsoever, Plur. Nom. whatsoever,

Poss. ---------, Poss. --------,

Obj. whatsoever; Obj. whatsoever.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Most of the personal pronouns have two forms of the possessive

case, in each number: as, \_my\_ or \_mine, our\_ or \_ours\_; \_thy\_ or \_thine,

your\_ or \_yours\_; \_her\_ or \_hers, their\_ or \_theirs\_. The former is used

before a noun expressed, or when nothing but an adjective intervenes; the

latter, when the governing noun is understood, or is so placed that a

repetition of it is implied in or after the pronoun: as, "\_My\_ powers are

\_thine\_; be \_thine\_ alone The glory of my song."--\_Montgomery\_. "State what

\_mine\_ and \_your\_ principles are."--\_Legh Richmond, to his Daughters\_.

Better, perhaps: "State what \_my\_ principles and \_yours\_ are;"--"State what

\_your\_ principles and \_mine\_ are;"--or, "State what are \_my\_ principles and

\_your own\_."

"Resign'd he fell; superior to the dart

That quench'd its rage in \_yours\_ and \_Britain's\_ heart."--\_J. Brown\_.

"Behold! to \_yours\_ and \_my\_ surprise,

These trifles to a volume rise."--\_Lloyd\_, p. 186.

OBS. 2.--Possibly, when the same persons or things stand in a joint

relation of this kind to different individuals or parties, it may be proper

to connect two of the simple possessives to express it; though this

construction can seldom, if ever, be necessary, because any such expression

as \_thy and her sister, my and his duty\_, if not erroneous, can mean

nothing but \_your sister, our duty, &c\_. But some examples occur, the

propriety of which it is worth while to consider: as, "I am sure it will be

a pleasure to you to hear that she proves worthy of her father, worthy of

you, and of \_your and her\_ ancestors."--\_Spectator\_, No. 525. This sentence

is from a version of Pliny's letter to his wife's aunt; and, as the

ancestors of the two individuals are here the same, the phraseology may be

allowable. But had the aunt commended her niece to Pliny, she should have

said, "worthy of you and of \_your\_ ancestors and \_hers\_." "Is it \_her\_ or

\_his\_ honour that is tarnished? It is not \_hers\_, but \_his\_."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 175. This question I take to be bad English. It ought to be, "Is

it \_her\_ honour or \_his\_, that is tarnished?" Her honour and his honour

cannot be one and the same thing. This example was framed by Murray to

illustrate that idle and puzzling distinction which he and some others make

between "possessive adjective pronouns" and "the genitive case of the

personal pronouns;" and, if I understand him, the author will here have

\_her\_ and \_his\_ to be of the former class, and \_hers\_ and \_his\_ of the

latter. It were a better use of time, to learn how to employ such words

correctly. Unquestionably, they are of the same class and the same case,

and would be every way equivalent, if the first form were fit to be used

elliptically. For example: "The same phrenzy had hindered the Dutch from

improving to \_their\_ and to the common advantage the public misfortunes of

France."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 309. Here the possessive case \_their\_

appears to be governed by \_advantage\_ understood, and therefore it would

perhaps be better to say, \_theirs\_, or \_their own\_. But in the following

instance, \_our\_ may be proper, because both possessives appear to be

governed by one and the same noun:--

"Although 'twas \_our\_ and \_their\_ opinion

Each other's church was but a Rimmon."--\_Hudibras\_.

OBS. 3.--\_Mine\_ and \_thine\_ were formerly preferred to \_my\_ and \_thy\_,

before all words beginning with a vowel sound; or rather, \_mine\_ and

\_thine\_ were the original forms,[207] and \_my\_ and \_thy\_ were first

substituted for them before consonants, and afterwards before vowels: as,

"But it was thou, a man \_mine\_ equal, \_my\_ guide, and \_mine\_

acquaintance."--\_Psalms\_, lv, 13. "\_Thy\_ prayers and \_thine\_ alms are come

up for a memorial before God."--\_Acts\_, x, 4. When the Bible was

translated, either form appears to have been used before the letter \_h\_;

as, "Hath not \_my hand\_ made all these things?"--\_Acts\_, vii, 50. "By

stretching forth \_thine hand\_ to heal."--\_Acts\_, iv, 30. According to

present practice, \_my\_ and \_thy\_ are in general to be preferred before all

nouns, without regard to the sounds of letters. The use of the other forms,

in the manner here noticed, has now become obsolete; or, at least,

antiquated, and peculiar to the poets. We occasionally meet with it in

modern verse, though not very frequently, and only where the melody of the

line seems to require it: as,

"Time writes no wrinkle on \_thine\_ azure brow."--\_Byron\_.

"Deign on the passing world to turn \_thine\_ eyes."--\_Johnson\_.

"\_Mine\_ eyes beheld the messenger divine."--\_Lusiad\_.

"\_Thine\_ ardent symphony sublime and high."--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

OBS. 4.--The possessives \_mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs\_, usually

denote possession, or the relation of property, with an \_ellipsis\_ of the

name of the thing possessed; as, "My sword and \_yours\_ are

kin."--\_Shakspeare\_. Here \_yours\_ means \_your sword\_. "You may imagine what

kind of faith \_theirs\_ was."--\_Bacon\_. Here \_theirs\_ means \_their faith\_.

"He ran headlong into his own ruin whilst he endeavoured to precipitate

\_ours\_."--\_Bolingbroke\_. Here \_ours\_ means \_our ruin\_. "Every one that

heareth these saying of \_mine\_."--\_Matt.\_, vii, 26. Here \_mine\_ means \_my

sayings\_. "Sing unto the Lord, O ye saints of \_his\_."--\_Psalms\_, xxx, 4.

Here \_his\_ means \_his saints\_. The noun which governs the possessive, is

here \_understood\_ after it, being inferred from that which precedes, as it

is in all the foregoing instances. "And the man of \_thine\_, whom I shall

not cut off from \_mine\_ altar, shall be to consume \_thine\_ eyes, and to

grieve \_thine\_ heart."--\_1 Samuel\_, ii, 33. Here \_thine\_, in the first

phrase, means \_thy men\_; but, in the subsequent parts of the sentence, both

\_mine and thine\_ mean neither more nor less than \_thy\_ and \_my\_, because

there is no ellipsis. \_Of\_ before the possessive case, governs the noun

which is understood after this case; and is always taken in a \_partitive\_

sense, and not as the sign of the possessive relation: as, "When we say, 'a

soldier \_of the king's\_', we mean, '\_one of\_ the king's

\_soldiers\_.'"--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 29. There is therefore an

ellipsis of the word \_soldiers\_, in the former phrase. So, in the following

example, \_mine\_ is used elliptically for \_my feet\_; or rather, \_feet\_ is

understood after \_mine\_, though \_mine feet\_ is no longer good English, for

reasons before stated:--

"Ere I absolve thee, stoop I that on thy neck

Levelled with earth tins \_foot of mine\_ may tread."--\_Wordsworth\_.

OBS. 5.--Respecting the \_possessive case\_ of the simple personal pronouns,

there appears among our grammarians a strange diversity of sentiment. Yet

is there but one view of the matter, that has in it either truth or reason,

consistency or plausibility. And, in the opinion of any judicious teacher,

an erroneous classification of words so common and so important as these,

may well go far to condemn any system of grammar in which it is found. A

pronoun agrees in person, number, and gender, with the noun \_for which it

is a substitute\_; and, if it is in the possessive case, it is usually

governed by \_an other noun\_ expressed or implied after it. That is, if it

denotes possession, it stands for the name of the possessor, and is

governed by the name of the thing possessed. Now do not \_my, thy, his, her,

our, your, their\_, and \_mine, thine, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs\_, all

equally denote possession? and do they not severally show by their forms

the person, the number, and sometimes also the gender, of whomever or

whatever they make to be the possessor? If they do, they are all of them

\_pronouns\_, and nothing else; all found in the \_possessive case\_, and

nowhere else. It is true, that in Latin, Greek, and some other languages,

there are not only genitive cases corresponding to these possessives, but

also certain declinable adjectives which we render in English by these same

words: that is, by \_my\_ or \_mine, our\_ or \_ours; thy\_ or \_thine, your\_ or

\_yours\_; &c. But this circumstance affords no valid argument for

considering any of these English terms to be mere adjectives; and, say what

we will, it is plain that they have not the signification of adjectives,

nor can we ascribe to them the construction of adjectives, without making

their grammatical agreement to be what it very manifestly is not. They

never agree, in any respect, with the nouns which \_follow\_ them, unless it

be by mere accident. This view of the matter is sustained by the authority

of many of our English grammars; as may be seen by the declensions given by

Ash, C. Adams, Ainsworth, R. W. Bailey, Barnard, Buchanan, Bicknell, Blair,

Burn, Butler, Comly, Churchill, Cobbett, Dalton, Davenport, Dearborn,

Farnum, A. Flint, Fowler, Frost, Gilbert, S. S. Green, Greenleaf, Hamlin,

Hiley, Kirkham, Merchant, Murray the schoolmaster, Parkhurst, Picket,

Russell, Sanborn, Sanders, R. C. Smith, Wilcox.

OBS. 6.--In opposition to the classification and doctrine adopted above,

many of our grammarians teach, that \_my, thy, this, her, our, your, their\_,

are adjectives or "adjective pronouns;" and that \_mine, thine, hers, its,

ours, yours, theirs\_, are personal pronouns in the possessive case. Among

the supporters of this notion, are D. Adams, Alden, Alger, Allen, Bacon,

Barrett, Bingham, Bucke, Bullions, Cutler, Fisk, Frost, (in his small

Grammar,) Guy, Hall, Hart, Harrison, Ingersoll, Jaudon, Lennie, Lowth,

Miller, L. Murray, Pond, T. Smith, Spear, Spencer, Staniford, Webber,

Woodworth. The authority of all these names, however, amounts to little

more than that of one man; for Murray pretended to follow Lowth, and nearly

all the rest copied Murray. Dr. Lowth says, "\_Thy, my, her, our, your,

their\_, are pronominal adjectives; but \_his\_, (that is, \_he's\_,) \_her's,

our's, your's, their's\_, have evidently the form of the possessive case:

And, by analogy, \_mine, thine\_, may be esteemed of the same

rank."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 23.[208] But why did he not see, that by the

same analogy, and also by the sense and meaning of the words, as well as by

their distinctions of person, number, and gender, all the other six are

entitled to "the same rank?" Are not the forms of \_my, thy, her, our, your,

their\_, as fit to denote the relation of property, and to be called the

possessive case, as \_mine, thine, his\_, or any others? In grammar, all

needless distinctions are reprehensible. And where shall we find a more

blamable one than this? It seems to have been based merely upon the false

notion, that the possessive case of pronouns ought to be formed like that

of nouns; whereas custom has clearly decided that they shall always be

different: the former must never be written with an apostrophe; and the

latter, never without it. Contrary to all good usage, however, the Doctor

here writes "\_her's, our's, your's, their's\_," each with a needless

apostrophe. Perhaps he thought it would serve to strengthen his position;

and help to refute what some affirmed, that all these words are adjectives.

OBS. 7.--Respecting \_mine, thine\_, and \_his\_, Lowth and L. Murray disagree.

The latter will have them to be sometimes "\_possessive pronouns\_," and

sometimes "\_possessive cases\_." An admirable distinction this for a great

author to make! too slippery for even the inventor's own hold, and utterly

unintelligible to those who do not know its history! In short, these

authors disagree also concerning \_my, thy, her, our, your, their\_; and

where two leaders of a party are at odds with each other, and each is in

the wrong, what is to be expected from their followers? Perceiving that

Lowth was wrong in calling these words "\_pronominal adjectives\_," Murray

changed the term to "\_possessive pronouns\_," still retaining the class

entire; and accordingly taught, in his early editions, that, "There are

\_four kinds\_ of pronouns, viz., the personal, \_the possessive, the\_

relative, and \_the\_ adjective pronouns."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 2d Edition, p.

37. "The Possessive Pronouns are such as principally relate to possession

or property. There are seven of them; viz. \_my, thy, his, her, our, your,

their\_. The possessives \_his, mine, thine\_, may be accounted either

\_possessive pronouns\_, or the \_possessive cases\_ of their respective

personal pronouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 40. He next idly demonstrates that these

seven words may come before nouns of any number or case, without variation;

then, forgetting his own distinction, adds, "When they are separated from

the noun, all of them, except \_his\_, vary \_their terminations\_; as, this

hat is \_mine\_, and the other is \_thine\_; those trinkets are \_hers\_; this

house is \_ours\_, and that is \_yours; theirs\_ is more commodious than

\_ours\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 40. Thus all his personal pronouns of the possessive

case, he then made to be inflections of pronouns of \_a different class!\_

What are they now? Seek the answer under the head of that gross solecism,

"\_Adjective Pronouns\_." You may find it in one half of our English

grammars.

OBS. 8.--Any considerable error in the classing of words, does not stand

alone; it naturally brings others in its train. Murray's "\_Adjective

Pronouns\_," (which he now subdivides into four little classes, \_possessive,

distributive, demonstrative\_, and \_indefinite\_,) being all of them misnamed

and misplaced in his etymology, have led both him and many others into

strange errors in syntax. The \_possessives only\_ are "pronouns;" and

these are pronouns of the possessive \_case\_. As such, they agree with the

\_antecedent\_ nouns for which they stand, in \_person, number\_, and \_gender\_;

and are governed, like all other possessives, by the nouns which follow

them. The rest are \_not pronouns\_, but pronominal \_adjectives\_; and, as

such, they relate to nouns expressed or understood \_after them\_.

Accordingly, they have none of the above-mentioned qualities, except that

the words \_this\_ and \_that\_ form the plurals \_these\_ and \_those\_. Or, if we

choose to ascribe to a pronominal adjective all the properties of the noun

understood, it is merely for the sake of brevity in parsing. The

difference, then, between a "pronominal adjective" and an "adjective

pronoun," should seem to be this; that the one is \_an adjective\_, and the

other \_a pronoun\_: it is like the difference between a \_horserace\_ and a

\_racehorse\_. What can be hoped from the grammarian who cannot discern it?

And what can be made of rules and examples like the following? "Adjective

\_pronouns\_ must agree, in number, with \_their substantives\_: as, '\_This\_

book, \_these\_ books; \_that\_ sort, \_those\_ sorts; \_another\_ road, \_other\_

roads.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Rule viii, \_Late Editions; Alger's Murray\_, p.

56; \_Alden's, 85; Bacon's, 48; Maltby's, 59; Miller's, 66; Merchant's, 81;

S. Putnam's, 10; and others\_. "Pronominal \_adjectives\_ must agree with

\_their nouns\_ in gender, number, and person; thus, '\_My son\_, hear the

instructions of \_thy\_ father.' 'Call the \_labourers\_, and give them \_their\_

hire.'"--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, Rule xvii. Here Murray gives a rule for

\_pronouns\_, and illustrates it by \_adjectives\_; and Maunder, as ingeniously

blunders in reverse: he gives a rule for \_adjectives\_, and illustrates it

by \_pronouns\_. But what do they mean by "\_their substantives\_," or "\_their

nouns\_?" As applicable to \_pronouns\_, the phrase should mean \_nouns

antecedent\_; as applicable to \_adjectives\_, it should mean \_nouns

subsequent\_. Both these rules are therefore false, and fit only to

bewilder; and the examples to both are totally inapplicable. Murray's was

once essentially right, but he afterwards corrupted it, and a multitude of

his admirers have since copied the perversion. It formerly stood thus: "The

pronominal adjectives \_this\_ and \_that, &c\_. and the numbers[209] \_one,

two\_, &c., must agree in number with their substantives: as, 'This book,

these books; that sort, those sorts; one girl, ten girls; another road,

other roads.' "--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Rule viii, 2d Ed., 1796.

OBS. 9.--Among our grammarians, some of considerable note have contended,

that the personal pronouns have but \_two cases\_, the nominative and the

objective. Of this class, may be reckoned Brightland, Dr. Johnson, Fisher,

Mennye, Cardell, Cooper, Dr. Jas. P. Wilson, W. B. Fowle. and, according to

his late grammars, Dr. Webster. But, in contriving what to make of \_my\_ or

\_mine, our\_ or \_ours, thy\_ or \_thine, your\_ or \_yours, his, her\_ or \_hers,

its\_, and \_their\_ or \_theirs\_, they are as far from any agreement, or even

from self-consistency, as the cleverest of them could ever imagine. To the

person, the number, the gender, and the case, of each of these words, they

either profess themselves to be total strangers, or else prove themselves

so, by the absurdities they teach. Brightland calls them "Possessive

Qualities, or Qualities of Possession;" in which class he also embraces all

\_nouns\_ of the possessive case. Johnson calls them pronouns; and then says

of them, "The possessive \_pronouns\_, like \_other adjectives\_, are without

\_cases\_ or change of termination."--\_Gram.\_, p. 6. Fisher calls them

"Personal Possessive Qualities;" admits the person of \_my, our\_, &c.; but

supposes \_mine, ours\_, &c. to supply the place of the \_nouns which govern

them!\_ Mennye makes them one of his three classes of pronouns, "\_personal,

possessive\_, and \_relative\_;" giving to both forms the rank which Murray

once gave, and which Allen now gives, to the first form only. Cardell

places them among his "defining adjectives." With Fowle, these, and all

other possessives, are "possessive adjectives." Cooper, in his grammar of

1828. copies the last scheme of Murray: in that of 1831, he avers that the

personal pronouns "want the possessive case." Now, like Webster and Wilson,

he will have \_mine, thine, hers, ours, yours\_, and \_theirs\_, to be pronouns

of the nominative or the objective case. Dividing the pronouns into six

general classes, he makes these the fifth; calling them "Possessive

Pronouns," but preferring in a note the monstrous name, "\_Possessive

Pronouns Substitute\_." His sixth class are what he calls, "The Possessive

Pronominal \_Adjectives\_;" namely, "\_my, thy, his, her, our, your, their,

its, own\_, and sometimes \_mine\_ and \_thine\_."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr.

Gram.\_, p. 43. But all these he has, unquestionably, either misplaced or

misnamed; while he tells us, that, "Simplicity of arrangement should be the

object of every compiler."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. Dr. Perley, (in whose scheme of

grammar all the pronouns are \_nouns\_,) will have \_my, thy, his, her, its,

our, your\_, and \_their\_, to be in the possessive case; but of \_mine, thine,

hers, ours, yours\_, and \_theirs\_, he says, "These may be called

\_Desiderative Personal Pronouns\_."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 15.

OBS. 10.--Kirkham, though he professes to follow Murray, declines the

simple personal pronouns as I have declined them; and argues admirably,

that \_my, thy, his, &c.\_, are pronouns of the possessive case, because,

"They always \_stand for nouns in the possessive case\_." But he afterwards

contradicts both himself and the common opinion of all former grammarians,

in referring \_mine, thine, hers\_, &c., to the class of "\_Compound Personal

Pronouns.\_" Nay, as if to outdo even himself in absurdity, he first makes

\_mine, thine, hers, ours\_, &c., to be compounds, by assuming that, "These

\_pluralizing adjuncts, ne\_ and \_s\_, were, no doubt, formerly detached from

the pronouns with which they now coalesce;" and then, because he finds in

each of his supposed compounds the signification of a pronoun and its

governing noun, reassumes, in parsing them, the very principle of error, on

which he condemns their common classification. He says, "They should be

parsed \_as two words\_." He also supposes them to represent the nouns \_which

govern them\_--nouns with which they do not agree in any respect! Thus is he

wrong in almost every thing he says about them. See \_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

99, p. 101, and p. 104. Goodenow, too, a still later writer, adopts the

major part of all this absurdity. He will have \_my, thy, his, her, its,

our, your, their\_, for the possessive case of his personal pronouns; but

\_mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs\_, he calls "\_compound possessive

pronouns\_, in the subjective or [the] objective case."--\_Text-Book of E.

Gram.\_, p. 33. Thus he introduces a new class, unknown to his primary

division of the pronouns, and not included in his scheme of their

declension. Fuller, too, in a grammar produced at Plymouth, Mass., in 1822,

did nearly the same thing. He called \_I, thou, he, she\_, and \_it\_, with

their plurals, "\_antecedent\_ pronouns;" took \_my, thy, his, her\_, &c., for

their \_only\_ possessive forms in his declension; and, having passed from

them by the space of just half his book, added: "Sometimes, to prevent the

repetition of the same word, an \_antecedent pronoun in the possessive

case\_, is made to represent, both the pronoun and a noun; as, 'That book is

\_mine\_'--i. e. '\_my book\_.' MINE is a \_compound antecedent pronoun\_, and is

equivalent to \_my\_ book. Then parse \_my\_, and \_book\_, as though they were

both expressed."--\_Fuller's Gram.\_, p. 71.

OBS. 11.--Amidst all this diversity of doctrine at the very centre of

grammar, who shall so fix its principles that our schoolmasters and

schoolmistresses may know \_what to believe and teach\_? Not he that

speculates without regard to other men's views; nor yet he that makes it a

merit to follow implicitly "the footsteps of" \_one only\_. The true

principles of grammar are with the learned; and that man is in the wrong,

with whom the \_most\_ learned will not, in general, coincide. Contradiction

of falsities, is necessary to the maintenance of truth; correction of

errors, to the success of science. But not every man's errors can be so

considerable as to deserve correction from other hands than his own.

Misinstruction in grammar has for this reason generally escaped censure. I

do not wish any one to coincide with me merely through ignorance of what

others inculcate. If doctors of divinity and doctors of laws will

contradict themselves in teaching grammar, so far as they do so, the lovers

of consistency will find it necessary to deviate from their track.

Respecting these pronouns, I learned in childhood, from Webster, a doctrine

which he now declares to be false. This was nearly the same as Lowth's,

which is quoted in the sixth observation above. But, in stead of correcting

its faults, this zealous reformer has but run into others still greater.

Now, with equal reproach to his etymology, his syntax, and his logic, he

denies that our pronouns have any form of the possessive case at all. But

grant the obvious fact, that \_substitution\_ is one thing, and \_ellipsis\_ an

other, and his whole argument is easily overthrown; for it is only by

confounding these, that he reaches his absurd conclusion.

OBS. 12.--Dr. Webster's doctrine now is, that none of the English pronouns

have more than two cases. He says, "\_mine, thine, his, hers, yours\_, and

\_theirs\_, are \_usually considered\_ as [being of] the possessive case. But

the \_three first\_ are either attributes, and used with nouns, or they are

substitutes. The \_three last\_ are always substitutes, used in the place of

names WHICH ARE UNDERSTOOD."--"That \_mine, thine, his\_, [\_ours\_,] \_yours,

hers\_, and \_theirs\_, do not constitute a possessive case, is demonstrable;

for they are constantly used as the nominatives to verbs and as the

objectives after verbs and prepositions, as in the following passages.

'Whether it could perform its operations of thinking and memory out of a

body organized as \_ours is\_.'--\_Locke\_. 'The reason is, that his subject is

generally things; \_theirs\_, on the contrary, \_is\_ persons.'--\_Camp. Rhet.\_

'Therefore leave your forest of beasts for \_ours\_ of brutes, called

men.'--\_Wycherley to Pope\_. It is needless to multiply proofs. We observe

these \_pretended possessives\_ uniformly used as nominatives or

objectives.[210] Should it be said that \_a noun is understood\_; I reply,

\_this cannot be true\_," &c.--\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 35; \_Improved

Gram.\_, p. 26. Now, whether it be true or not, this very position is

expressly affirmed by the Doctor himself, in the citation above; though he

is, unquestionably, wrong in suggesting that the pronouns are "used \_in the

place\_ of [those] names WHICH ARE UNDERSTOOD." They are used in the place

of other names--the names of \_the possessors\_; and are governed by those

which he here both admits and denies to be "understood."

OBS. 13.--The other arguments of Dr. Webster against the possessive case of

pronouns, may perhaps be more easily answered than some readers imagine.

The first is drawn from the fact that conjunctions connect like cases.

"Besides, in three passages just quoted, the word \_yours\_ is joined by a

connective \_to a name\_ in the same case; 'To ensure \_yours\_ and \_their

immortality\_.' 'The easiest part of \_yours\_ and \_my design\_.' '\_My sword\_

and \_yours\_ are kin.' Will any person pretend that the connective here

joins different cases?"--\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 28; \_Philosophical Gram.\_, p.

36. I answer, No. But it is falsely assumed that \_yours\_ is here connected

by \_and\_ to \_immortality\_, to \_design\_, or to \_sword\_; because these words

are again severally understood after \_yours\_: or, if otherwise, the two

pronouns alone are connected by \_and\_, so that the proof is rather, that

\_their\_ and \_my\_ are in the possessive case. The second argument is drawn

from the use of the preposition \_of\_ before the possessive. "For we say

correctly, 'an acquaintance \_of yours, ours\_, or \_theirs\_'--\_of\_ being the

sign of the possessive; but if the words in themselves are possessives,

then there must be two signs of the same case, which is absurd."--\_Improved

Gram.\_, p. 28; \_Phil. Gr.\_, 36. I deny that \_of\_ is here the sign of the

possessive, and affirm that it is taken partitively, in all examples of

this sort. "I know my sheep, and am known \_of mine\_," is not of this kind;

because \_of\_ here means \_by\_--a sense in which the word is antiquated. In

recurring afterwards to this argument, the Doctor misquotes the following

texts, and avers that they "are evidently meant to include the \_whole

number\_: 'Sing \_to\_ the Lord, \_all\_ ye saints of \_his\_.'--\_Ps.\_ 30, 4.

'\_He\_ that heareth these sayings \_of mine\_.'--\_Matt.\_ 7."--\_Improved

Gram.\_, p. 29; \_Phil. Gr.\_, 38. If he is right about the meaning, however,

the passages are mistranslated, as well as misquoted: they ought to be,

"Sing \_unto\_ the Lord, \_O ye his Saints\_."--"\_Every one\_ that heareth

\_these my sayings\_." But when a definitive particle precedes the noun, it

is very common with us, to introduce the possessive elliptically after it;

and what Dr. Wilson means by suggesting that it is erroneous, I know not:

"When the preposition \_of\_ precedes \_mine, ours, yours\_, &c. the \_errour\_

lies, not in this, that there are double possessive cases, but in forming

an implication of a noun, which the substitute already denotes, together

with the persons."--\_Essay on Gram.\_, p. 110.

OBS. 14.--In his Syllabus of English Grammar, Dr. Wilson teaches thus:

"\_My, our, thy, your, his, her, its, their, whose\_, and \_whosesoever\_ are

possessive pronominal \_adjectives. Ours, yours, hers\_, and \_theirs\_ are

\_pronoun substantives\_, used either as subjects, or [as] objects; as

singulars, or [as] plurals; and are substituted both for [the names of] the

possessors, and [for those of the] things possessed. \_His, its, whose,

mine\_, and \_thine\_, are sometimes used as \_such substantives\_; but also are

at other times \_pronominal possessive\_ adjectives."--\_Wilson's Syllabus\_,

p. X. Now compare with these three positions, the following three from the

same learned author. "In Hebrew, the \_adjective\_ generally agrees with its

noun in gender and number, but \_pronouns\_ follow the gender of their

antecedents, and not of the nouns with which they stand. So in English,

\_my, thy, his, her, its, our, your\_, and \_their\_, agree with the nouns they

represent, in number, gender, and person. But \_adjectives\_, having no

change expressive of number, gender, or case, cannot accord with their

nouns."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 192. "\_Ours, yours, hers\_, and

\_theirs\_, are most usually considered possessive cases of personal

pronouns; but they are, more probably, possessive substitutes, not

adjectives, but \_nouns\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 109. "Nor can \_mine\_ or \_thine\_, with

any more propriety than \_ours, yours\_, &c. be joined to any noun, as

possessive adjectives and possessive cases may."--\_Ib.\_, p. 110. Whoever

understands these instructions, cannot but see their inconsistency.

OBS. 15.--Murray argues at some length, without naming his opponents, that

the words which he assumes to be such, are really personal pronouns

standing rightfully in the possessive case; and that, "they should not, on

the slight pretence of their differing from nouns, be dispossessed of the

right and privilege, which, from time immemorial they have

enjoyed."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 53. Churchill as ably shows, that the

corresponding terms, which Lowth calls \_pronominal adjectives\_, and which

Murray and others will have to be \_pronouns of no case\_, are justly

entitled to the same rank. "If \_mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs\_, be

the possessive case; \_my, thy, her, our, your, their\_, must be the same.

Whether we say, 'It is \_John's\_ book,' or, 'The book is \_John's\_;' \_John's\_

is not less the possessive case in one instance, than it is in the other.

If we say, 'It is \_his\_ book,' or, 'The book is \_his\_;' 'It is \_her\_ book,'

or, 'The book is \_hers\_;' 'It is \_my\_ book,' or, 'The book is \_mine\_;' 'It

is \_your\_ book,' or, 'The book is \_yours\_;' are not these parallel

instances? Custom has established it as a law, that this case of the

pronoun shall drop its original termination, for the sake of euphony, when

it precedes the noun that governs it; retaining it only where the noun is

understood: but this certainly makes no alteration in the nature of the

word; so that either \_my\_ is as much a possessive case as \_mine\_; or \_mine\_

and \_my\_ are equally pronominal adjectives."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p.

221. "Mr. Murray considers the phrases, '\_our desire\_,' '\_your

intention\_,' '\_their resignation\_,' as instances of plural adjectives

\_agreeing\_ with singular nouns; and consequently exceptions to the general

(may we not say \_universal\_?) rule: but if they [the words \_our, your,

their\_,] be, as is attempted to be proved above, the possessive cases of

pronouns, no rule is here violated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 224.

OBS. 16.--One strong argument, touching this much-disputed point of

grammar, was incidentally noticed in the observations upon antecedents: an

adjective cannot give person, number, and gender, to a relative pronoun;

because, in our language, adjectives do not possess these qualities; nor

indeed in any other, except as they take them by immediate agreement with

nouns or pronouns in the same clause. But it is undeniable, that \_my, thy,

his, her, our, your, their\_, do sometimes stand as antecedents, and give

person, number, and gender to relatives, which head other clauses. For the

learner should remember, that, "When a relative pronoun is used, the

sentence is divided into two parts; viz. the \_antecedent\_ sentence, or that

which contains the \_antecedent\_; and the \_relative\_ sentence, containing

the \_relative\_."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 123. We need not here deny, that

Terence's Latin, as quoted in the grammars, "Omnes laudare fortunas \_meas,

qui\_ haberem gnatum tali ingeuio præditum," is quite as intelligible

syntax, as can literally be made of it in English--"That all would praise

\_my\_ fortunes, \_who had\_ a son endued with such a genius." For, whether the

Latin be good or not, it affords no argument against us, except that of a

supposed analogy; nor does the literality of the version prove, at all

points, either the accuracy or the sameness of the construction.

OBS. 17.--Surely, without some imperative reason, we ought not, in English,

to resort to such an assumption as is contained in the following Rule:

"Sometimes the relative agrees in person with that pronoun substantive,

from which the possessive pronoun adjective is derived; as, Pity \_my\_

condition, \_who am\_ so destitute. I rejoice at \_thy\_ lot, \_who art\_ so

fortunate. We lament \_his\_ fate, \_who is\_ so unwary. Beware of \_her\_

cunning, \_who is\_ so deceitful. Commiserate \_our\_ condition, \_who are\_ so

poor. Tremble at \_your\_ negligence, \_who are\_ so careless. It shall be

\_their\_ property, \_who are\_ so diligent. We are rejoicing at \_thy\_ lot,

\_who hast\_ been so fortunate."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 142. In his

explanation of the last of these sentences, the author says, "\_Who\_ is a

relative pronoun; in the masculine gender, singular number, second person,

and agrees with \_thee\_, implied in the adjective \_thy\_. RULE.--Sometimes

the relative agrees in person, &c. And it is the nominative to the verb

\_hast been\_. RULE.--When no nominative comes between the relative and the

verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143. A pupil

of G. Brown's would have said, "\_Who\_ is a relative pronoun, representing

'\_thy\_,' or the person addressed, in the second person, singular number,

and masculine gender; according to the rule which says, 'A pronoun must

agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it represents, in

person, number, and gender:' and is in the nominative case, being the

subject of \_hast been\_; according to the rule which says, 'A noun or a

pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb, must be in the nominative

case.' Because the meaning is--\_who hast been\_; that is, \_thy lot\_, or the

lot \_of thee, who hast been\_."

OBS. 18.--Because the possessive case of a noun or pronoun is usually

equivalent in meaning to the preposition \_of\_ and the objective case, some

grammarians, mistaking this equivalence of meaning for sameness of case,

have asserted that all our possessives have a double form. Thus Nixon:

"When the particle \_of\_ comes between two substantives signifying different

things, it is not to be considered a preposition, but \_the sign of the

substantive's being in the possessive case\_, equally as if the apostrophic

\_s\_ had been affixed to it; as, 'The skill \_of Cæsar\_,' or \_Cæsar's\_

skill.'"--\_English Parser\_, p. 38. "When the apostrophic \_s\_ is used, the

genitive is the former of the two substantives; as, '\_John's\_ house:' but

when the particle \_of\_ is used, it is the latter; as, 'The house \_of

John\_.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. The work here quoted is adapted to two different

grammars; namely, Murray's and Allen's. These the author doubtless

conceived to be the best English grammars extant. And it is not a little

remarkable, that both of these authors, as well as many others, teach in

such a faulty manner, that their intentions upon this point may be matter

of dispute. "When Murray, Allen, and others, say, 'we make use of the

particle \_of\_ to express the \_relation\_ of the genitive,' the ambiguity of

their assertion leaves it in doubt whether or not they considered the

substantive which is preceded by \_of\_ and an other substantive, as in the

\_genitive\_ case."--\_Nixon's English Parser\_, p. 38. Resolving this doubt

according to his own fancy, Nixon makes the possessive case of our personal

pronouns to be as follows: "\_mine\_ or \_of me, ours\_ or \_of us; thine\_ or

\_of thee, yours\_ or \_of you; his\_ or \_of him, theirs\_ or \_of them; hers\_ or

\_of her, theirs\_ or \_of them; its\_ or \_of it, theirs\_ or \_of

them\_."--\_English Parser\_, p. 43. This doctrine gives us a form of

declension that is both complex and deficient. It is therefore more

objectionable than almost any of those which are criticised above. The

arguments and authorities on which the author rests his position, are not

thought likely to gain many converts; for which reason, I dismiss the

subject, without citing or answering them.

OBS. 19.--In old books, we sometimes find the word \_I\_ written for the

adverb \_ay\_, yes: as, "To dye, to sleepe; To sleepe, perchance to dreame;

\_I\_, there's the rub."--\_Shakspeare, Old Copies\_. The British Grammar,

printed in 1784, and the Grammar of Murray the schoolmaster, published some

years earlier than Lindley Murray's, say: "We use \_I\_ as an Answer, in a

familiar, careless, or merry Way; as, 'I, I, Sir, I, I;' but to use \_ay\_,

is accounted rude, especially to our Betters." See \_Brit. Gram.\_, p. 198.

The age of this rudeness, or incivility, if it ever existed, has long

passed away; and the fashion seems to be so changed, that to write or utter

\_I\_ for \_ay\_, would now in its turn be "accounted \_rude\_"--the rudeness of

ignorance--a false orthography, or a false pronunciation. In the word \_ay\_,

the two sounds of \_ah-ee\_ are plainly heard; in the sound of \_I\_, the same

elements are more quickly blended. (See a note at the foot of page 162.)

When this sound is suddenly repeated, some writers make a new word of it,

which must be called an \_interjection\_: as, "'Pray, answer me a question or

two.' '\_Ey, ey\_, as many as you please, cousin Bridget, an they be not too

hard.'"--\_Burgh's Speaker\_, p. 99. "\_Ey, ey\_, 'tis so; she's out of her

head, poor thing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. This is probably a corruption of \_ay\_,

which is often doubled in the same manner: thus,

"\_Ay, ay\_, Antipholus, look strange, and frown."--\_Shakspeare\_.

OBS. 20.--The common fashion of address being nowadays altogether in the

plural form, the pronouns \_thou, thy, thine, thee\_, and \_thyself\_, have

become unfamiliar to most people, especially to the vulgar and uneducated.

These words are now confined almost exclusively to the writings of the

poets, to the language of the Friends, to the Holy Scriptures, and to the

solemn services of religion. They are, however, the \_only genuine\_

representatives of the second person singular, in English; and to displace

them from that rank in grammar, or to present \_you, your\_, and \_yours\_, as

being literally singular, though countenanced by several late writers, is a

useless and pernicious innovation. It is sufficient for the information of

the learner, and far more consistent with learning and taste, to say, that

the plural is fashionably used \_for the singular\_, by a figure of syntax;

for, in all correct usage of this sort, the \_verb\_ is plural, as well as

the pronoun--Dr. Webster's fourteen authorities to the contrary

notwithstanding. For, surely, "\_You was\_" cannot be considered good

English, merely because that number of respectable writers have happened,

on some particular occasions, to adopt the phrase; and even if we must

needs concede this point, and grant to the Doctor and his converts, that

"\_You was\_ is \_primitive\_ and \_correct\_," the example no more proves that

\_you\_ is singular, than that \_was\_ is plural. And what is one singular

irregular preterit, compared with all the verbs in the language?

OBS. 21.--In our present authorized version of the Bible, the numbers and

cases of the second person are kept remarkably distinct,[211] the pronouns

being always used in the following manner: \_thou\_ for the nominative, \_thy\_

or \_thine\_ for the possessive, and \_thee\_ for the objective, singular; \_ye\_

for the nominative, \_your\_ or \_yours\_ for the possessive, and \_you\_ for the

objective, plural. Yet, before that version was made, fashionable usage had

commonly substituted \_you\_ for \_ye\_, making the former word nominative as

well as objective, and applying it to one hearer as well as to more. And

subsequently, as it appears, the religious sect that entertained a scruple

about applying \_you\_ to an individual, fell for the most part into an

ungrammatical practice of putting \_thee\_ for \_thou\_; making, in like

manner, the objective pronoun to be both nominative and objective; or, at

least, using it very commonly so in their conversation. Their manner of

speaking, however, was not--or, certainly, with the present generation of

their successors, \_is\_ not--as some grammarians represent it to be, that

formal and antique phraseology which we call \_the solemn style\_.[212] They

make no more use of the pronoun \_ye\_, or of the verbal termination \_eth\_,

than do people of fashion; nor do they, in using the pronoun \_thou\_, or

their improper nominative \_thee\_, ordinarily inflect with \_st\_ or \_est\_ the

preterits or the auxiliaries of the accompanying verbs, as is done in the

solemn style. Indeed, to use the solemn style familiarly, would be, to turn

it into burlesque; as when Peter Pindar "\_telleth what he troweth.\_" [213]

And let those who think with Murray, that our present version of the

Scriptures \_is the best standard\_ of English grammar,[214] remember that in

it they have no warrant for substituting \_s\_ or \_es\_ for the old

termination \_eth\_, any more than for ceasing to use the solemn style of the

second person familiarly. That version was good in its day, yet it shows

but very imperfectly what the English language now is. Can we consistently

take for our present standard, a style which does not allow us to use \_you\_

in the nominative case, or \_its\_ for the possessive? And again, is not a

simplification of the verb as necessary and proper in the familiar use of

the second person singular, as in that of the third? This latter question I

shall discuss in a future chapter.

OBS. 22.--The use of the pronoun \_ye\_ in the nominative case, is now mostly

confined to the solemn style;[215] but the use of it in the objective,

which is disallowed in the solemn style, and nowhere approved by our

grammarians, is nevertheless \_common\_ when no emphasis falls upon the

word: as,

"When you're unmarried, never load \_ye\_

With jewels; they may incommode \_ye\_."--\_Dr. King\_, p. 384.

Upon this point, Dr. Lowth observes, "Some writers have used \_ye\_ as the

objective case plural of the pronoun of the second person, very improperly

and ungrammatically; [as,]

'The more shame for \_ye\_; holy men I thought \_ye\_.' Shak. Hen. VIII.

'But tyrants dread \_ye\_, lest your just decree

Transfer the pow'r, and set the people free.' Prior.

'His wrath, which one day will destroy \_ye\_ both.' Milt. P. L. ii. 734.

Milton uses the same manner of expression in a few other places of his

Paradise Lost, and more frequently in his [smaller] poems, \_It may,

perhaps, be allowed in the comic and burlesque style\_, which often imitates

a vulgar and incorrect pronunciation; but in the serious and solemn style,

\_no authority is sufficient\_ to justify so manifest a solecism."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 22. Churchill copies this remark, and adds; "Dryden has \_you\_ as

the nominative, and \_ye\_ as the objective, in the same passage:[216]

'What gain \_you\_, by forbidding it to tease \_ye\_?

It now can neither trouble \_ye\_, nor please \_ye\_.'

Was this from a notion, that \_you\_ and \_ye\_, thus employed, were more

analogous to \_thou\_ and \_thee\_ in the singular number?"--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 25. I answer, No; but, more probably, from a notion, that the

two words, being now confessedly equivalent in the one case, might as well

be made so in the other: just as the Friends, in using \_thee\_ for \_you\_,

are carelessly converting the former word into a nominative, to the

exclusion of \_thou\_; because the latter has generally been made so, to the

exclusion of \_ye\_. When the confounding of such distinctions is begun, who

knows where it will end? With like ignorance, some writers suppose, that

the fashion of using the plural for the singular is a sufficient warrant

for putting the singular for the plural: as,

"The joys of love, are they not doubly \_thine,

Ye poor!\_ whose health, whose spirits ne'er decline?"

--\_Southwick's Pleas. of Poverty.\_

"But, \_Neatherds\_, go look to the kine,

Their cribs with fresh fodder supply;

The task of compassion be \_thine\_,

For herbage the pastures deny."--\_Perfect's Poems\_, p. 5.

OBS. 23.--When used in a burlesque or ludicrous manner, the pronoun \_ye\_ is

sometimes a mere expletive; or, perhaps, intended rather as an objective

governed by a preposition understood. But, in such a construction, I see no

reason to prefer it to the regular objective \_you\_; as,

"He'll laugh \_ye\_, dance \_ye\_, sing \_ye\_, vault, look gay,

And ruffle all the ladies in his play."--\_King\_, p. 574.

Some grammarians, who will have \_you\_ to be singular as well as plural,

ignorantly tell us, that "\_ye\_ always means more than one." But the fact

is, that when \_ye\_ was in common use, it was as frequently applied to one

person as \_you\_: thus,

"Farewell my doughter lady Margarete,

God wotte full oft it grieued hath my mynde,

That \_ye\_ should go where we should seldome mete:

Now am I gone, and haue left \_you\_ behynde."--\_Sir T. More\_, 1503.

In the following example, \_ye\_ is used for \_thee\_, the objective singular;

and that by one whose knowledge of the English language, is said to have

been unsurpassed:--

"Proud Baronet of Nova Scotia!

The Dean and Spaniard must reproach \_ye\_."--\_Swift\_.

So in the story of the Chameleon:--

"'Tis green, 'tis green, Sir, I assure \_ye\_."--\_Merrick\_.

Thus we have \_ye\_ not only for the nominative in both numbers, but at

length for the objective in both; \_ye\_ and \_you\_ being made everywhere

equivalent, by very many writers. Indeed this pronoun has been so

frequently used for the objective case, that one may well doubt any

grammarian's authority to condemn it in that construction. Yet I cannot but

think it ill-chosen in the third line below, though right in the first:--

"\_Ye\_! who have traced the Pilgrim to the scene

Which is his last, if in your memories dwell

A thought which once was his, if on \_ye\_ swell

A single recollection, not in vain

He wore his sandal-shoon, and scallop-shell."--\_Byron\_.

OBS. 24.--The three pronouns of the third person, \_he, she\_, and \_it\_, have

always formed their plural number after one and the same manner, \_they,

their\_ or \_theirs, them\_. Or, rather, these plural words, which appear not

to be regular derivatives from any of the singulars, have ever been applied

alike to them all. But \_it\_, the neuter pronoun singular, had formerly no

variation of cases, and is still alike in the nominative and the objective.

The possessive \_its\_ is of comparatively recent origin. In our common

Bible, the word is not found, except by misprint; nor do other writings of

the same age contain it. The phrase, \_of it\_, was often used as an

equivalent; as, "And it had three ribs in the mouth \_of it\_ between the

teeth \_of it\_."--\_Dan.\_, vii, 5. That is--"in \_its\_ mouth, between \_its\_

teeth." But, as a possessive case was sometimes necessary, our ancestors

used to borrow one; commonly from the masculine, though sometimes from the

feminine. This produced what now appears a strange confusion of the

genders: as, "\_Learning\_ hath \_his\_ infancy, when \_it\_ is but beginning,

and almost childish; then \_his\_ youth, when \_it\_ is luxuriant and juvenile;

then \_his\_ strength of years, when \_it\_ is solid and reduced; and lastly

\_his\_ old age, when \_it\_ waxeth dry and exhaust."--\_Bacon's Essays\_, p. 58.

"Of beaten work shall the \_candlestick\_ be made: \_his\_ shaft, and \_his\_

branches, \_his\_ bowls, \_his\_ knops, and \_his\_ flowers, shall be of the

same."--\_Exodus\_, xxv, 31. "They came and emptied the \_chest\_, and took

\_it\_ and carried \_it\_ to \_his\_ place again."--\_2 Chron.\_, xxiv, 11. "Look

not thou upon the \_wine, when\_ it is red, when \_it\_ giveth \_his\_ colour in

the cup, when \_it\_ moveth \_itself\_ aright."--\_Prov.\_, xxiii, 31. "The

\_tree\_ is known by \_his\_ fruit."--\_Matt.\_, xii, 33. "When thou tillest the

ground, \_it\_ shall not henceforth yield unto thee \_her\_ strength."--\_Gen.\_,

iv, 12. "He that pricketh the heart, maketh \_it\_ to show \_her\_

knowledge."--\_Eccl.\_, xxii, 19. Shakspeare rarely, if ever, used \_its\_; and

his style is sometimes obscure for the want of it: as,

"There is no \_vice\_ so simple, but assumes

Some mark of virtue on \_his\_ outward parts."

--\_Merch. of Venice\_.

"The name of Cassius honours this corruption,

And \_chastisement\_ doth therefore hide \_his\_ head."

--\_Jul. Cæs.\_, Act iv.

OBS. 25.--The possessive case of pronouns should never be written with an

apostrophe. A few pronominal adjectives taken substantively receive it; but

the construction which it gives them, seems to make them nouns: as, \_one's,

other's\_, and, according to Murray, \_former's\_ and \_latter's\_. The real

pronouns that end in \_s\_, as \_his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs\_, though

true possessives after their kind, have no occasion for this mark, nor does

good usage admit it. Churchill, with equal disregard of consistency and

authority, gives it to one of them, and denies it to the rest. Referring to

the classification of these words as possessives, and of \_my, thy, her,

our, your, their\_, as adjectives, he says: "It seems as if the termination

in \_s\_ had led to the distinction: but no one will contend, that \_ours\_ is

the possessive case of \_our\_, or \_theirs\_ of \_their\_; though \_ours, yours,

hers\_, and \_theirs\_, are often very improperly spelt with an apostrophe, a

fault not always imputable to the printer; while in \_it's\_, which is

unquestionably the possessive case of \_it\_, the apostrophe, by a strange

perverseness, is almost always omitted."--\_Churchill Gram.\_, p. 222. The

charge of strange perverseness may, in this instance, I think, be retorted

upon the critic; and that, to the fair exculpation of those who choose to

conform to the general usage which offends him.

OBS. 26.--Of the compound personal pronouns, this author gives the

following account: "\_Self\_, in the plural \_selves\_, a noun, is often

combined with the personal pronouns, in order to express emphasis, or

opposition, or the identity of the subject and [the] object of a verb; and

thus forms a pronoun \_relative\_: as, 'I did it \_myself\_;' 'he was not

\_himself\_, when he said so;' 'the envious torment \_themselves\_ more than

others.' Formerly \_self\_ and \_selves\_ were used simply as nouns, and

governed the pronoun, which was kept distinct from \_it\_ [them] in the

possessive case: but since \_they\_ [the pronoun and the noun] have coalesced

into one word, \_they\_ [the compounds] are used only in the following forms:

for the first person, \_myself, ourselves\_; for the second, \_thyself\_, or

\_yourself, yourselves\_; for the third, \_himself, herself, itself,

themselves\_: except in the regal style, in which, as generally in the

second person, the singular noun is added to the plural pronoun, [making]

\_ourself\_. Each of these is \_the same in all three cases.\_"--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 75. In a note referring to the close of this explanation, he

adds: "\_Own\_ also is often employed with the possessive cases of the

personal pronouns by way of emphasis, or opposition; but separately, as an

adjective, and not combining with them to form \_a relative\_: as, 'I did it

of \_my own\_ free will:' 'Did he do it with \_his own\_ hand?'"--\_Ib.\_, p.

227.

OBS. 27.--The preceding instructions, faulty and ungrammatical as they are,

seem to be the best that our writers have furnished upon this point. To

detect falsities and blunders, is half the grammarian's duty. The pronouns

of which the term \_self\_ or \_selves\_ forms a part, are used, not for the

connecting of different clauses of a sentence, but for the purpose of

emphatic distinction in the sense. In calling them "\_relatives\_," Churchill

is wrong, even by his own showing. They have not the characteristics which

he himself ascribes to relatives; but are compound personal pronouns, and

nothing else. He is also manifestly wrong in asserting, that they are

severally "the same in all three cases." From the very nature of their

composition, the possessive case is alike impossible to them all. To

express ownership with emphasis or distinction, we employ neither these

compounds nor any others; but always use the simple possessives with the

separate adjective \_own\_: as, "With \_my own\_ eyes,"--"By \_thy own\_

confession,"--"To \_his own\_ house,"--"For \_her own\_ father,"--"By \_its own\_

weight,"--"To save \_our own\_ lives,"--"For \_your own\_ sake,"--"In \_their

own\_ cause."

OBS. 28.--The phrases, \_my own, thy own, his own\_, and so forth, Dr.

Perley, in his little Grammar, has improperly converted by the hyphen into

compound words: calling them the possessive forms of \_myself, thyself,

himself\_, and so forth; as if one set of compounds could constitute the

possessive case of an other! And again, as if the making of eight new

pronouns for two great nations, were as slight a feat, as the inserting of

so many hyphens! The word \_own\_, anciently written \_owen\_, is an

\_adjective\_; from an old form of the perfect participle of the verb \_to

owe\_; which verb, according to Lowth and others, once signified \_to

possess\_. It is equivalent to \_due, proper\_, or \_peculiar\_; and, in its

present use as an adjective, it stands nowhere else than between the

possessive case and the name of the thing possessed; as, "The Boy's \_Own\_

Book,"--"Christ's \_own\_ words,"--"Solomon's \_own\_ and only son." Dr.

Johnson, while he acknowledges the abovementioned derivation, very

strangely calls own a noun substantive; and, with not more accuracy, says:

"This is a word of no other use than as it is added to the possessive

pronouns, \_my, thy, his, our, your, their\_."--\_Quarto Dict., w. Own\_. O. B.

Peirce, with obvious untruth, says, "\_Own\_ is used in combination with a

name or substitute, and as a part of it, to constitute it

emphatic."--\_Gram.\_, p. 63. He writes it separately, but parses it as a

part of the possessive noun or pronoun which precedes it!

OBS. 29.--The word \_self\_ was originally \_an adjective\_, signifying \_same,

very\_, or \_particular\_; but, when used alone, it is now generally \_a noun\_.

This may have occasioned the diversity which appears in the formation of

the compound personal pronouns. Dr. Johnson, in his great Dictionary, calls

\_self\_ a pronoun; but he explains it as being both adjective and

substantive, admitting that, "Its primary signification seems to be that of

an adjective."--Again he observes, "\_Myself, himself, themselves\_, and the

rest, may, contrary to the analogy of \_my, him, them\_, be used as

nominatives." \_Hisself, itsself\_, and \_theirselves\_, would be more

analogical than \_himself, itself, themselves\_; but custom has rejected the

former, and established the latter. When an adjective qualifies the term

\_self\_, the pronouns are written separately in the possessive case; as, \_My

single self,--My own self,--His own self,--Their own selves\_. So,

anciently, without an adjective: as, "A man shall have diffused his life,

\_his self\_, and his whole concernments so far, that he can weep his sorrows

with an other's eyes."--\_South\_. "Something valuable for \_its self\_ without

view to anything farther."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 293. "That they would

willingly, and of \_their selves\_ endeavour to keep a perpetual

chastity."--\_Stat. Ed. VI. in Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 26. "Why I should either

\_imploy my self\_ in that study or put others upon it."--\_Walker's English

Particles\_, p. xiv. "It is no matter whether you do it by your proctor, or

by \_your self\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 96. The compound \_oneself\_ is sometimes written

in stead of the phrase \_one's self\_; but the latter is preferable, and more

common. Even \_his self\_, when written as two words, may possibly be right

in some instances; as,

"Scorn'd be the wretch that quits his genial bowl,

His loves, his friendships, ev'n \_his self\_, resigns;

Perverts the sacred instinct of his soul,

And to a ducat's dirty sphere confines."

--SHENSTONE: \_Brit. Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 107.

OBS. 30.--In poetry, and even in some compositions not woven into regular

numbers, the simple personal pronouns are not unfrequently used, for

brevity's sake, in a reciprocal sense; that is, in stead of the compound

personal pronouns, which are the proper reciprocals: as, "Wash \_you\_, make

\_you\_ clean."--\_Isaiah\_, i, 16. "I made me great works; I builded \_me\_

houses; I planted \_me\_ vineyards; I made \_me\_ gardens and

orchards."--\_Ecclesiastes\_, ii, 4. "Thou shalt surely clothe \_thee\_ with

them all as with an ornament, and bind them on \_thee\_ as a bride

doeth."--\_Isaiah\_, xlix, 18. Compare with these the more regular

expression: "As a bridegroom decketh \_himself\_ with ornaments, and as a

bride adorneth \_herself\_ with jewels."--\_Isaiah\_, lxi, 10. This phraseology

is almost always preferable in prose; the other is a poetical license, or

peculiarity: as,

"I turn \_me\_ from the martial roar."--\_Scott's L. L.\_, p. 97.

"Hush \_thee\_, poor maiden, and be still."--\_Ib.\_, p. 110.

"Firmer he roots \_him\_ the ruder it blow."--\_Ib.\_, p. 49.

OBS. 31.--To accommodate the writers of verse, the word \_ever\_ is

frequently contracted into \_e'er\_, pronounced like the monosyllable \_air\_.

An easy extension of this license, gives us similar contractions of all the

compound relative pronouns; as, \_whoe'er\_ or \_whosoe'er, whose'er\_ or

\_whosesoe'er, whome'er\_ or \_whomsoe'er, whiche'er\_ or \_whichsoe'er,

whate'er\_ or \_whatsoe'er\_. The character and properties of these compounds

are explained, perhaps sufficiently, in the observations upon the \_classes\_

of pronouns. Some of them are commonly parsed as representing two cases at

once; there being, in fact, an ellipsis of the noun, before or after them:

as,

"Each art he prompts, each charm he can create,

\_Whate'er\_ he gives, \_are given\_ for you to hate."--\_Pope's Dunciad\_.

OBS. 32.--For a form of parsing the double relative \_what\_, or its

compound \_whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_, it is the custom of some teachers, to

suggest equivalent words, and then proceed to explain these, in lieu of the

word in question. This is the method of \_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 99; of

\_Merchants\_, p. 110; of \_Kirkham's\_, p. 111; of \_Gilbert's\_, p. 92. But it

should be remembered that equivalence of meaning is not sameness of

grammatical construction; and, even if the construction be the same, to

parse other equivalent words, is not really to parse the text that is

given. A good parser, with the liberty to supply obvious ellipses, should

know how to explain all good English \_as it stands\_; and for a teacher to

pervert good English into false doctrine, must needs seem the very worst

kind of ignorance. What can be more fantastical than the following

etymology, or more absurd than the following directions for parsing?

"\_What\_ is compounded of \_which that\_. These words have been contracted and

made to coalesce, a part of the orthography of both being still retained:

\_what--wh[ich--t]hat\_; (\_which-that\_.) Anciently it appeared in the varying

forms, \_tha qua, qua tha, qu'tha, quthat, quhat, hwat\_, and finally

\_what\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 111. This bald pedantry of "\_tha qua, qua

tha\_," was secretly borrowed from the grammatical speculations of William

S. Cardell:[217] the "\_which-that\_" notion contradicts it, and is partly of

the borrower's own invention. If \_what\_ is a compound, it was compounded

more than a thousand years ago; and, of course, long before any part of the

English language existed as such. King Alfred used it, as he found it, in

the Saxon form of \_hwæt\_. The Scotch afterwards spelled it \_quhat\_. Our

English grammarians have \_improperly\_ called it a compound; and \_Kirkham\_,

still more absurdly, calls the word \_others\_ a compound, and \_mine, thine,

ours, yours\_, &e. compounds.[218]

OBS. 33.--According to this gentleman's notion of things, there is, within

the little circle of the word \_what\_, a very curious play of antecedent

parts and parts relative--a dodging contra-dance of \_which that\_ and \_that

which\_, with \_things which\_, and so forth. Thus: "When \_what\_ is a

\_compound relative\_ you must always parse it as \_two words\_; that is, you

must parse the antecedent part \_as a noun\_, and give it case; the relative

part you may \_analyze\_ like any other relative, giving it a case likewise.

Example: 'I will try \_what\_ (that which) can be found in female delicacy.'

Here \_that\_, the antecedent part of \_what\_, is in the obj. case, governed

by the verb 'will try;' \_which\_, the relative part, is in the nom. case to

'can be found.' 'I have heard \_what\_ (i.e. \_that which\_, or \_the thing

which\_) has been alleged.' "--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 111. Here, we sec, the

author's "\_which-that\_" becomes \_that which\_, or something else. But this

is not a full view of his method. The following vile rigmarole is a further

sample of that "\_New Systematick Order of Parsing\_," by virtue of which he

so very complacently and successfully sets himself above all other

grammarians: "'From \_what\_ is recorded, he appears, &c.' \_What\_ is a comp.

rel. pron. including both the antecedent and the relative, and is

equivalent to \_that which\_, or the \_thing which.--Thing\_, the antecedent

part of \_what\_, is a noun, the name of a thing--com. the name of a

species--neuter gender, it has no sex--third person, spoken of--sing.

number, it implies but one--and in the obj. case, it is the object of the

relation expressed by the prep. 'from,' and gov. by it: RULE 31. (Repeat

the Rule, and \_every other Rule\_ to which I refer.) \_Which\_, the relative

part of \_what\_, is a pronoun, a word used instead of a noun--relative, it

relates to 'thing' for its antecedent--neut. gender, third person, sing,

number, because the antecedent is with which it agrees, according to RULE

14. \_Rel. pron\_. &c. \_Which\_ is \_in\_ the nom. case to the verb 'is

recorded,' agreeably to RULE 15. \_The relative is the nominative case to

the verb, when no nominative comes between it and the verb.\_"--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 113.

OBS. 34.--The distinction which has been made by Murray and others, between

etymological parsing and syntactical--or, between that exercise which

simply classifies and describes the words of a sentence, and that which

adds to this the principles of their construction--is rejected by Kirkham,

and also by Ingersoll, Fuller, Smith, Sanborn, Mack, and some others, it

being altogether irreconcilable with their several modes of confounding the

two main parts of grammar. If such a distinction is serviceable, the want

of it is one of the inherent faults of the schemes which they have adopted.

But, since "grammar is the art of speaking and writing with \_propriety\_"

who that really values clearness and accuracy of expression, can think the

want of them excusable in \_models\_ prescribed for the exercise of parsing?

And is it not better to maintain the distinction above named, than to

interlace our syntactical parsing with broken allusions to the definitions

which pertain to etymology? If it is, this new mode of parsing, which

Kirkham claims to have invented, and Smith pretends to have got from

Germany, whatever boast may be made of it, is essentially defective and

very immethodical.[219] This remark applies not merely to the forms above

cited, respecting the pronoun \_what\_, but to the whole method of parsing

adopted by the author of "\_English Grammar in Familiar Lectures\_."

OBS. 35.--The forms of etymological parsing which I have adopted, being

designed to train the pupil, in the first place, by a succession of easy

steps, to a rapid and accurate description of the several species of words,

and a ready habit of fully defining the technical terms employed in such

descriptions, will be found to differ more from the forms of syntactical

parsing, than do those of perhaps any other grammarian. The definitions,

which constitute so large a portion of the former, being omitted as soon as

they are thoroughly learned, give place in the latter, to the facts and

principles of syntax. Thus have we fullness in the one part, conciseness in

the other, order and distinctness in both. The separation of etymology from

syntax, however, though judiciously adopted by almost all grammarians, is

in itself a mere matter of convenience. No one will pretend that these two

parts of grammar are in their nature \_totally\_ distinct and independent.

Hence, though a due regard to method demands the maintenance of this

ancient and still usual division of the subject, we not unfrequently, in

treating of the classes and modifications of words, exhibit contingently

some of the principles of their construction. This, however, is very

different from a purposed blending of the two parts, than which nothing can

be more unwise.

OBS. 36.--The great peculiarity of the pronoun \_what\_, or of its compound

\_whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_, is a peculiarity of construction, rather than

of etymology. Hence, in etymological parsing, it may be sufficient to

notice it only as a relative, though the construction be double. It is in

fact a relative; but it is one that reverses the order of the antecedent,

whenever the noun is inserted with it. But as the noun is usually

suppressed, and as the supplying of it is attended with an obvious

difficulty, arising from the transposition, we cut the matter short, by

declaring the word to have, as it appears to have, a double syntactical

relation. Of the foregoing example, therefore--viz., "From \_what\_ is

recorded," &c.,--a pupil of mine, in parsing \_etymologically\_, would say

thus: "\_What\_ is a relative pronoun, of the third person, singular number,

neuter gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of

a noun. 2. A relative pronoun is a pronoun that represents an antecedent

word or phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence. 3. The third

person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The

singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that

which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative

case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which denotes the subject

of a verb." In parsing \_syntactically\_, he would say thus: "\_What\_ is a

double relative, including both antecedent and relative, being equivalent

to \_that which\_. As \_antecedent\_, it is of the third person, singular

number, neuter gender, and objective case; being governed by \_from\_;

according to the rule which says, 'A Noun or a Pronoun made the object of a

preposition, is goverved [sic--KTH] by it in the objective case.' Because

the meaning is--\_from what\_. As \_relative\_, it is of the third person,

singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case; being the subject of

\_is recorded\_; according to the rule which says, 'A Noun or a Pronoun which

is the subject of a finite verb, must be in the nominative case.' Because

the meaning is--\_what is recorded\_."

OBS. 37.--The word \_what\_, when uttered independently as a mark of

surprise, or as the prelude to an emphatic question which it does not ask,

becomes an interjection; and, as such, is to be parsed merely as other

interjections are parsed: as, "\_What!\_ came the word of God out from you?

or came it unto you only?"--\_1 Cor.\_, xiv, 36. "\_What!\_ know ye not that

your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of

God?"--\_1 Cor.\_, vi, 19. "But \_what!\_ is thy servant a dog, that he should

do this great thing?"--\_2 Kings\_, viii, 13. "\_What!\_ are you so ambitious

of a man's good word, who perhaps in an hour's time shall curse himself to

the pit of hell?"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 152.

"\_What!\_ up and down, carv'd like an apple-tart?"--\_Shakspeare\_.

"\_What!\_ can you lull the winged winds asleep?"--\_Campbell\_.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS V.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Fifth Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the\_ ARTICLES, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, and PRONOUNS.

\_The definitions to be given in the Fifth Praxis, are two for an article,

six for a noun, three for an adjective, six for a pronoun, and one for a

verb, a participle, an adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an

interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"Nay but, O man, who art thou that repliest against God? Shall the thing

formed say to him that formed it, Why hast thou made me thus."--\_Rom.\_, ix,

20.

\_Nay\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle,

an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place,

degree, or manner.

\_But\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or

sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_O\_ is an interjection. 1. An interjection is a word that is uttered merely

to indicate some strong or sudden emotion of the mind.

\_Man\_ is a common noun, of the second person, singular number, masculine

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The second person is that

which denotes the hearer, or the person addressed. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The masculine gender is that which

denotes persons or animals of the male kind. 6. The nominative case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a

finite verb.

\_Who\_ is an interrogative pronoun, of the third person, singular number,

masculine gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead

of a noun. 2. An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun with which a question

is asked. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing

merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5.

The masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of the male

kind. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun

which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

\_Art\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

be acted upon\_.

\_Thou\_ is a personal pronoun, of the second person, singular number,

masculine gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead

of a noun. 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of

what person it is. 3. The second person is that which denotes the hearer,

or the person addressed. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but

one. 5. The masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of

the male kind. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or

pronoun which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

\_That\_ is a relative pronoun, of the second person, singular number,

masculine gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead

of a noun. 2. A relative pronoun is a pronoun that represents an antecedent

word or phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence. 3. The second

person is that which denotes the hearer, or the person addressed. 4. The

singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The masculine gender is

that which denotes persons or animals of the male kind. 6. The nominative

case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the

subject of a finite verb.

\_Repliest\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_,

or \_to be acted upon\_.

\_Against\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_God\_ is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known, or mentioned. 2. A proper noun is the name of

some particular individual, or people, or group. 3. The third person is

that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular

number is that which denotes but one. 5. The masculine gender is that which

denotes persons or animals of the male kind. 6. The objective case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a

verb, participle, or preposition.

\_Shall\_ is a verb, auxiliary to \_say\_, and may be taken with it.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Thing\_ is a common noun of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a

finite verb.

\_Formed\_ is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb,

participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and

is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb.

\_Say\_, or \_shall say\_, is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to

be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_.

\_To\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Him\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number,

masculine gender, and objective case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead

of a noun. 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of

what person it is. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or

thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but

one. 5. The masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of

the male kind. 6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or

pronoun which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or

preposition.

\_That\_ is a relative pronoun, of the third person, singular number,

masculine gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead

of a noun. 2. A relative pronoun is a pronoun that represents an antecedent

word or phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence. 3. The third

person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The

singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The masculine gender is

that which denotes persons or animals of the male kind. 6. The nominative

case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the

subject of a finite verb.

\_Formed\_ is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or

\_to be acted upon\_. \_It\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person,

singular number, neuter gender, and objective case. 1. A pronoun is a word

used in stead of a noun. 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by

its form, of what person it is. 3. The third person is that which denotes

the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which

denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are

neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form or state of a

noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or

preposition.

\_Why\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle,

an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place,

degree, or manner.

\_Hast\_ is a verb, auxiliary to \_made\_, and may be taken with it.

\_Thou\_ is a personal pronoun, of the second person, singular number,

masculine gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead

of a noun. 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of

what person it is. 3. The second person is that which denotes the hearer,

or the person addressed. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but

one. 5. The masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of

the male kind. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or

pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

\_Made\_, or \_hast made\_, is a verb. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to

be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_.

\_Me\_ is a personal pronoun, of the first person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person

it is. 3. The first person is that which denotes the speaker or writer. 4.

The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is

that which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The

objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun which usually

denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

\_Thus\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle,

an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place,

degree, or manner.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"Every man has undoubtedly an inward perception of the celestial goodness

by which he is quickened. But, if to obtain some ideas of God, it be not

necessary for us to go beyond ourselves, what an unpardonable indolence it

is in those who will not descend into themselves that they may find

him?"--\_Calvin's Institutes\_, B. i, Ch. 5.

"Jesus answered, If I honour myself, my honour is nothing: it is my Father

that honoureth me; of whom ye say, that he is your God: yet ye have not

known him; but I know him."--\_John\_, viii, 54.

"What! have ye not houses to eat and to drink in? or despise ye the church

of God, and shame them that have not? What shall I say to you? shall I

praise you in this? I praise you not."--\_1 Cor.\_, xi, 22.

"We know not what we ought to wish for, but He who made us,

knows."--\_Burgh's Dignity\_, Vol. ii, p. 20.

"And who is he that will harm you, if ye be followers of that which is

good?"--\_1 Peter\_, iii, 13.

"For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with

some that commend themselves: but they, measuring themselves by themselves,

and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise."--\_2 Cor.\_, x, 12.

"Whatever is humane, is wise; whatever is wise, is just; whatever is wise,

just, and humane, will be found the true interest of states."--\_Dr. Rush,

on Punishments\_, p. 19.

"But, methinks, we cannot answer it to ourselves, as-well-as to our Maker,

that we should live and die ignorant of ourselves, and thereby of him, and

of the obligations which we are under to him for ourselves."--\_William

Penn\_.

"But where shall wisdom be found? and where is the place of understanding?

The depth saith, 'It is not in me;' and the sea saith, 'It is not with me.'

Destruction and death say, 'We have heard the fame thereof with our

ears.'"--See \_Job\_, xxviii, 12, 14, 22; and \_Blair's Lect.\_, p. 417.

"I still had hopes, my latest hours to crown,

Amidst these humble bow'rs to lay me down."--\_Goldsmith\_.

"Why dost thou then suggest to me distrust,

Knowing who I am, as I know who thou art?"--\_Milton\_, P. R.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"I would, methinks, have so much to say for myself, that if I fell into the

hands of him who treated me ill, he should be sensible when he did so: his

conscience should be on my side, whatever became of his

inclination."--\_Steele, Spect.\_, No. 522.

"A boy should understand his mother tongue well before he enters upon the

study of a dead language; or, at any rate, he should be made perfect master

of the meaning of all the words which are necessary to furnish him with a

translation of the particular author which he is studying."--\_Gallaudet,

Lit. Conv.\_, p. 206.

"No discipline is more suitable to man, or more congruous to the dignity of

his nature, than that which refines his taste, and leads him to

distinguish, in every subject, what is regular, what is orderly, what is

suitable, and what is fit and proper."--\_Kames's El. of Crit.\_, i, 275.

"Simple thoughts are what arise naturally; what the occasion or the subject

suggests unsought; and what, when once suggested, are easily apprehended by

all. Refinement in writing, expresses a less natural and [less] obvious

train of thought."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 184.

"Where the story of an epic poem is founded on truth, no circumstances must

be added, but such as connect naturally with what are known to be true:

history may be supplied, but it must not be contradicted."--See \_Kames's

El. of Crit.\_, ii, 280.

"Others, I am told, pretend to have been once his friends. Surely they are

their enemies, who say so; for nothing can be more odious than to treat a

friend as they have treated him. But of this I cannot persuade myself, when

I consider the constant and eternal aversion of all bad writers to a good

one."--\_Cleland, in Defence of Pope\_.

"From side to side, he struts, he smiles, he prates,

And seems to wonder what's become of Yates."--\_Churchill\_.

"Alas! what sorrows gloom'd that parting day,

That call'd them from their native walks away!"--\_Goldsmith\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"It is involved in the nature of man, that he cannot be indifferent to an

event that concerns him or any of his connexions: if it be fortunate, it

gives him joy; if unfortunate, it gives him sorrow."--\_Kames's El. of

Crit.\_, i, 62.

"I knew a man who had relinquished the sea for a country life: in the

corner of his garden he reared an artificial mount with a level summit,

resembling most accurately a quarter-deck, not only in shape, but in size;

and here he generally walked."--\_Ib.\_, p. 328.

"I mean, when we are angry with our Maker. For against whom else is it that

our displeasure is pointed, when we murmur at the distribution of things

here, either because our own condition is less agreeable than we would have

it, or because that of others is more prosperous than we imagine they

deserve?"--\_Archbishop Seeker\_.

"Things cannot charge into the soul, or force us upon any opinions about

them; they stand aloof and are quiet. It is our fancy that makes them

operate and gall us; it is we that rate them, and give them their bulk and

value."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 212.

"What is your opinion of truth, good-nature, and sobriety? Do any of these

virtues stand in need of a good word; or are they the worse for a bad one?

I hope a diamond will shine ne'er the less for a man's silence about the

worth of it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 49.

"Those words which were formerly current and proper, have now become

obsolete and barbarous. Alas! this is not all: fame tarnishes in time too;

and men grow out of fashion, as well as languages."--\_Ib.\_, p. 55.

"O Luxury! thou curs'd by Heaven's decree,

How ill exchang'd are things like these for thee."--\_Goldsmith\_.

"O, then, how blind to all that truth requires,

Who think it freedom when a part aspires!"--\_Id.\_

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS OF PRONOUNS.

LESSON I.--RELATIVES.

"At the same time that we attend to this pause, every appearance of

sing-song and tone must be carefully guarded against."--\_Murray's English

Reader\_, p. xx.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_that\_ had not clearly the

construction either of a pronoun or of a conjunction. But, according to

Observation 18th, on the Classes of Pronouns, "The word \_that\_, or indeed

any other word, should never be so used as to leave the part of speech

uncertain." Therefore, the expression should be altered: thus, "\_While\_ we

attend to this pause, every appearance of \_singsong\_ must be carefully

\_avoided\_."]

"For thou shalt go to all that I shall send thee."--\_Jeremiah\_, i, 7;

\_Gurney's Obs.\_, p. 223. "Ah! how happy would it have been for me, had I

spent in retirement these twenty-three years that I have possessed my

kingdom."--See \_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 242. "In the same manner that relative

pronouns and their antecedents are usually parsed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 71. "Parse

or mention all the other nouns in the parsing examples, in the same manner

that you do the word in the form of parsing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 8. "The passive

verb will always be of the person and number that the verb \_be\_ is, of

which it is in part composed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 53. "You have been taught that a

verb must always be of the same person and number that its nominative

is."--\_Ib.\_, p. 68. "A relative pronoun, also, must always be of the same

person, number, and even gender that its antecedent is."--\_Ib.\_, p. 68.

"The subsequent is always in the same case that the word is, which asks the

question."--\_Ib.\_, p. 95. "\_One\_ sometimes represents an antecedent noun in

the same definite manner that personal pronouns do."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98. "The

mind being carried forward to the time that an event happens, easily

conceives it to be present."--\_Ib.\_, p. 107. "\_Save\_ and \_saving\_ are

parsed in the same manner that \_except\_ and \_excepting\_ are."--\_Ib.\_, p.

123. "Adverbs describe, qualify, or modify the meaning of a verb in the

same manner that adjectives do nouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 16. "The third person

singular of verbs, is formed in the same manner, that the plural number of

nouns is."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. "He saith further: 'that the apostles did not

anew baptize such persons, that had been baptized with the baptism of

John.'"--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 292. "For we which live, are always

delivered unto death for Jesus' sake."--\_2 Cor.\_, iv, 11. "For they, which

believe in God, must be careful to maintain good works."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 431. "Nor yet of those which teach things which they ought not,

for filthy lucre's sake."--\_Ib.\_, i, 435. "So as to hold such bound in

heaven, whom they bind on earth, and such loosed in heaven, whom they loose

on earth."--\_Ib.\_, i, 478. "Now, if it be an evil to do any thing out of

strife; then such things that are seen so to be done, are they not to be

avoided and forsaken?"--\_Ib.\_, i, 522. "All such who satisfy themselves not

with the superficies of religion."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 23. "And he is the same in

substance, what he was upon earth, both in spirit, soul and body."--\_Ib.\_,

iii, 98. "And those that do not thus, are such, to whom the Church of Rome

can have no charity."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 204. "Before his book he placeth a great

list of that he accounts the blasphemous assertions of the

Quakers."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 257. "And this is that he should have

proved."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 322. "Three of which were at that time actual

students of philosophy in the university."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 180. "Therefore it

is not lawful for any whatsoever \* \* \* to force the consciences of

others."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 13. "What is the cause that the former days were

better than these?"--\_Eccl.\_, vii, 10. "In the same manner that the term

\_my\_ depends on the name \_books\_."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 54. "In the

same manner as the term \_house\_ depends on the relative \_near\_."--\_Ib.\_, p.

58. "James died on the day that Henry returned."--\_Ib.\_, p. 177.

LESSON II.--DECLENSIONS.

"\_Other\_ makes the plural \_others\_, when it is found without it's

substantive."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 12.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_it's\_ is written with an

apostrophe. But, according to Observation 25th, on the Declensions of

Pronouns, "The possessive case of pronouns should never be written with an

apostrophe." Therefore, this apostrophe should be omitted; thus, "\_Other\_

makes the plural \_others\_, when it is found without its substantive."]

"But \_his, her's, our's, your's, their's\_, have evidently the form of the

possessive case."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 23. "To the Saxon possessive cases,

\_hire, ure, eower, hira\_, (that is, \_her's, our's, your's, their's\_,) we

have added the \_s\_, the characteristic of the possessive case of

nouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "Upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both

their's and our's."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_1 Cor.\_, i, 2. "In this Place \_His\_

Hand is clearly preferable either to Her's or It's." [220]--\_Harris's

Hermes\_, p. 59. "That roguish leer of your's makes a pretty woman's heart

ake."--ADDISON: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "Lest by any means this liberty of your's

become a stumbling-block."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_1 Cor.\_, viii, 9. "First

person: Sing. I, mine, me; Plur. we, our's, us."--\_Wilbur and Livingston's

Gram.\_, p. 16. "Second person: Sing. thou, thine, thee; Plur. ye or you,

your's, you."--\_Ib.\_ "Third person: Sing. she, her's, her; Plur. they,

their's, them."--\_Ib.\_ "So shall ye serve strangers in a land that is not

your's."--SCOTT ET AL.: \_Jer.\_, v, 19. "Second person, Singular: Nom. thou

or you, Poss. thine or yours, Obj. thee or you."--\_Frost's El. of E.

Gram.\_, p. 13. "Second person, Dual: Nom. Gyt, ye two; Gen. Incer, of ye

two; Dat. Inc, incrum, to ye two; Acc. Inc, ye two; Voc. Eala inc, O ye

two; Abl. Inc, incrum, from ye two."--\_Gwill's Saxon Gram.\_, p. 12. "Second

person, Plural; Nom. Ge, ye; Gen. Eower, of ye; Dat. Eow, to ye; Acc. Eow,

ye; Voc. Eala ge, O ye; Abl. Eow, from ye."--\_Ib.\_ (\_written in\_ 1829.)

"These words are, \_mine, thine, his, her's, our's, your's, their's\_, and

\_whose\_."--\_Cardell's Essay\_, p. 88. "This house is \_our's\_, and that is

\_your's. Their's\_ is very commodious."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90. "And they shall eat

up thine harvest, and thy bread: they shall eat up thy flocks and thine

herds."--\_Jeremiah\_, v, 17. "\_Whoever\_ and \_Whichever\_ are thus declined.

\_Sing.\_ and \_Plu. nom.\_ whoever, \_poss.\_ whoseever, \_obj.\_ whomever.

\_Sing.\_ and \_Plu. nom.\_ whichever, \_poss.\_ whoseever, \_obj.\_

whichever."--\_Cooper's Plain and Practical Gram.\_, p. 38. "The compound

personal pronouns are thus declined; \_Sing. N.\_ Myself, \_P.\_ my-own, \_O.\_

myself; \_Plur. N.\_ ourselves, \_P.\_ our-own, \_O.\_ ourselves. \_Sing. N.\_

Thyself or yourself, \_P.\_ thy-own or your-own, \_O.\_ thyself or yourself;"

&c.--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 16. "Every one of us, each for hisself, laboured

how to recover him."--SIDNEY: \_in Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 96. "Unless when

ideas of their opposites manifestly suggest their selves."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 49. "It not only exists in time, but is time its self."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 75. "A position which the action its self will palpably deny."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 102. "A difficulty sometimes presents its self."--\_Ib.\_, p. 165. "They

are sometimes explanations in their selves."--\_Ib.\_, p. 249. "Our's,

Your's, Their's, Her's, It's."--\_S. Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 24.

"Their's the wild chace of false felicities:

His, the compos'd possession of the true."

--\_Murray's E. Reader\_, p. 216.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"It is the boast of Americans, without distinction of parties, that their

government is the most free and perfect, which exists on the earth."--\_Dr.

Allen's Lectures\_, p. 18.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the relative \_which\_ is here intended to be

taken in a restrictive sense. But, according to Observation 26th, on the

Classes of Pronouns, (and others that follow it,) the word \_who\_ or

\_which\_, with a comma before it, does not usually limit the preceding term.

Therefore, \_which\_ should be \_that\_, and the comma should be omitted;

thus,--"that their government is the most free and perfect \_that\_ exists on

the earth."]

"Children, who are dutiful to their parents, enjoy great

prosperity."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 69. "The scholar, who improves his

time, sets an example worthy of imitation."--\_Ib.\_, p. 69. "Nouns and

pronouns, which signify the same person, place, or thing, agree in

case."--\_Cooper's Gram.\_, p. 115. "An interrogative sentence is one, which

asks a question."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114. "In the use of words and phrases, which

in point of time relate to each other, a \_due regard\_ to \_that relation\_

should be \_observed\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 146; see \_L. Murray\_'s Rule xiii. "The

same observations, which have been made respecting the effect of the

article and participle, appear to be applicable to the pronoun and

participle."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 193. "The reason that they have not the

same use of them in reading, may be traced to the very defective and

erroneous method, in which the art of reading is taught."--\_Ib.\_, p. 252.

"Since the time that reason began to exert her powers, thought, during our

waking hours, has been active in every breast, without a moment's

suspension or pause."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 271; \_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 212.

"In speaking of such who greatly delight in the same."--\_Notes to Dunciad\_,

177. "Except such to whom the king shall hold out the golden sceptre, that

he may live."--\_Esther\_, iv, 11.--"But the same day that Lot went out of

Sodom, it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them

all."--\_Luke\_, xvii, 29. "In the next place I will explain several cases of

nouns and pronouns which have not yet come under our notice."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 129. "Three natural distinctions of time are all which can

exist."--\_Rail's Gram.\_, p. 15. "We have exhibited such only as are

obviously distinct; and which seem to be sufficient, and not more than

sufficient."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 68; \_Hall's\_, 14. "This point encloses a

part of a sentence which may be omitted without materially injuring the

connexion of the other members."--\_Hall's Gram.\_, p. 39. "Consonants are

letters, which cannot be sounded without the aid of a Vowel."--\_Bucke's

Gram.\_, p. 9. "Words are not simple sounds, but sounds, which convey a

meaning to the mind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 16. "Nature's postures are always easy;

and which is more, nothing but your own will can put you out of

them."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 197. "Therefore ought we to examine our

ownselves, and prove our ownselves."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 426. "Certainly

it had been much more natural, to have divided Active Verbs into

\_Immanent\_, or such whose Action is terminated in it self, and \_Transient\_,

or such whose Action is terminated in something without it

self."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 273. "This is such an advantage which no

other lexicon will afford."--DR. TAYLOR: \_in Pike's Lex.\_, p. iv. "For

these reasons, such liberties are taken in the Hebrew tongue with those

words as are of the most general and frequent use."--\_Pike's Heb. Lexicon\_,

p. 184. "At the same time that we object to the laws, which the antiquarian

in language would impose upon us, we must enter our protest against those

authors, who are too fond of innovations."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p.

136.

CHAPTER VI.--VERBS.

A Verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_: as,

I \_am\_, I \_rule\_, I \_am ruled\_; I \_love\_, thou \_lovest\_, he \_loves\_. VERBS

are so called, from the Latin \_Verbum\_, a \_Word\_; because the verb is that

word which most essentially contains what is said in any clause or

sentence.

An English verb has four CHIEF TERMS, or PRINCIPAL PARTS, ever needful to

be ascertained in the first place; namely, the \_Present\_, the \_Preterit\_,

the \_Imperfect Participle\_, and the \_Perfect Participle\_. The \_Present\_ is

that form of the verb, which is the root of all the rest; the verb itself;

or that simple term which we should look for in a dictionary: as, \_be, act,

rule, love, defend, terminate\_.

The \_Preterit\_ is that simple form of the verb, which denotes time past;

and which is always connected with some noun or pronoun, denoting the

subject of the assertion: as, \_I was, I acted, I ruled, I loved, I

defended\_.

The \_Imperfect Participle\_ is that which ends commonly[221] in \_ing\_, and

implies a \_continuance\_ of the being, action, or passion: as, \_being,

acting, ruling, loving, defending, terminating\_.

The \_Perfect Participle\_ is that which ends commonly in \_ed\_ or \_en\_, and

implies a \_completion\_ of the being, action, or passion: as, \_been, acted,

ruled, loved\_.

CLASSES.

Verbs are divided, with respect to their \_form\_, into four classes;

\_regular\_ and \_irregular, redundant\_ and \_defective\_.

I. A \_regular verb\_ is a verb that forms the preterit and the perfect

participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_; as, \_love, loved, loving, loved\_.

II. An \_irregular verb\_ is a verb that does not form the preterit and the

perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_; as, \_see, saw, seeing, seen\_.

III. A \_redundant verb\_ is a verb that forms the preterit or the perfect

participle in two or more ways, and so as to be both regular and irregular;

as, \_thrive, thrived\_ or \_throve, thriving, thrived\_ or \_thriven\_.

IV. A \_defective verb\_ is a verb that forms no participles, and is used in

but few of the moods and tenses; as, \_beware, ought, quoth\_.

Verbs are divided again, with respect to their \_signification\_, into four

classes; \_active-transitive, active-intransitive, passive\_, and \_neuter\_.

I. An \_active-transitive\_ verb is a verb that expresses an action which has

some person or thing for its object; as, "Cain \_slew Abel\_."--"Cassius

\_loved Brutus\_."

II. An \_active-intransitive\_ verb is a verb that expresses an action which

has no person or thing for its object; as, "John \_walks\_."--"Jesus \_wept\_."

III. A. \_passive verb\_ is a verb that represents its subject, or what the

nominative expresses, as being acted upon; as, "I \_am compelled\_."--"Cæsar

\_was slain\_."

IV. A \_neuter verb\_ is a verb that expresses neither action nor passion,

but simply being, or a state of being; as, "There \_was\_ light."--"The babe

\_sleeps\_."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--So various have been the views of our grammarians, respecting this

complex and most important part of speech, that almost every thing that is

contained in any theory or distribution of the English verbs, may be

considered a matter of opinion and of dispute. Nay, the essential nature of

a verb, in Universal Grammar, has never yet been determined by any received

definition that can be considered unobjectionable. The greatest and most

acute philologists confess that a faultless definition of this part of

speech, is difficult, if not impossible, to be formed. Horne Tooke, at the

close of his Diversions of Purley, cites with contempt nearly a dozen

different attempts at a definition, some Latin, some English, some French;

then, with the abruptness of affected disgust, breaks off the catalogue and

the conversation together, leaving his readers to guess, if they can, what

he conceived a verb to be. He might have added some scores of others, and

probably would have been as little satisfied with any one of them. A

definition like that which is given above, may answer in some degree the

purpose of distinction; but, after all, we must judge what is, and what is

not a verb, chiefly from our own observation of the sense and use of

words.[222]

OBS. 2.--Whether \_participles\_ ought to be called verbs or not, is a

question that has been much disputed, and is still variously decided; nor

is it possible to settle it in any way not liable to some serious

objections. The same may perhaps be said of all the forms called

\_infinitives\_. If the essence of a verb be made to consist in affirmation,

predication, or assertion, (as it is in many grammars,) neither infinitives

nor participles can be reckoned verbs, without a manifest breach of the

definition. Yet are the former almost universally treated as verbs, and by

some as the only pure verbs; nor do all deny them this rank, who say that

affirmation is \_essential\_ to a verb. Participles, when unconnected with

auxiliaries, are most commonly considered a separate part of speech; but in

the formation of many of our moods and tenses, we take them as \_constituent

parts of the verb\_. If there is absurdity in this, there is more in

undertaking to avoid it; and the inconvenience should be submitted to,

since it amounts to little or nothing in practice. With auxiliaries, then,

participles \_are verbs\_: without auxiliaries, they are \_not verbs\_, but

form a separate part of speech.

OBS. 3.--The number of verbs in our language, amounts unquestionably to

four or five thousand; some say, (perhaps truly,) to eight thousand. All

these, whatever be the number, are confessedly \_regular\_ in their

formation, except about two hundred. For, though the catalogues in our

grammars give the number somewhat variously, all the irregular, redundant,

and defective verbs, put together, are \_commonly\_ reckoned fewer than two

hundred. I admit, in all, two hundred and nineteen. The regular verbs,

therefore, are vastly more numerous than those which deviate from the

stated form. But, since many of the latter are words of very frequent

occurrence, the irregular verbs appear exceedingly numerous in practice,

and consequently require a great deal of attention. The defective verbs

being very few, and most of these few being mere auxiliaries, which are

never parsed separately, there is little occasion to treat them as a

distinct class; though Murray and others have ranked them so, and perhaps

it is best to follow their example. The redundant verbs, which are regular

in one form and irregular in an other, being of course always found written

either one way or the other, as each author chooses, may be, and commonly

have been, referred in parsing to the class of regular or irregular verbs

accordingly. But, as their number is considerable, and their character

peculiar, there may be some advantage in making them a separate class.

Besides, the definition of an irregular verb, as given in any of our

grammars, seems to exclude all such as \_may\_ form the preterit and the

perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_.

OBS. 4.--In most grammars and dictionaries, verbs are divided, with respect

to their signification, into three classes only; \_active, passive\_, and

\_neuter\_. In such a division, the class of \_active\_ verbs includes those

only which are \_active-transitive\_, and all the \_active-intransitive\_ verbs

are called \_neuter\_. But, in the division adopted above,

\_active-intransitive\_ verbs are made a distinct class; and those only are

regarded as neuter, which imply a state of existence without action. When,

therefore, we speak of verbs without reference to their regimen, we may, if

we please, apply the simple term active to all those which express

\_action\_, whether \_transitive\_ or \_intransitive\_. "We \_act\_ whenever we

\_do\_ any thing; but we \_may act\_ without \_doing\_ any thing."--\_Crabb's

Synonymes\_.

OBS. 5.--Among the many English grammars in which verbs are divided, as

above mentioned, into \_active, passive\_, and \_neuter\_, only, are those of

the following writers: Lowth, Murray, Ainsworth, Alden, Allen, Alger,

Bacon, Bicknell, Blair, Bullions, (at first,) Charles Adams, Bucke,

Cobbett, Cobbin, Dilworth, A. Flint, Frost, (at first,) Greenleaf, Hall,

Johnson,[223] Lennie, Picket, Pond, Sanborn, R. C. Smith, Rev. T. Smith,

and Wright. These authors, and many more, agree, that, "A \_verb neuter\_

expresses neither action nor passion, but being, or a state of being."--\_L.

Murray\_. Yet, according to their scheme, such words as \_walk, run, fly,

strive, struggle, wrestle, contend\_, are verbs \_neuter\_. In view of this

palpable absurdity, I cannot but think it was a useful improvement upon the

once popular scheme of English grammar, to make active-intransitive verbs a

distinct class, and to apply the term \_neuter\_ to those few only which

accord with the foregoing definition. This had been done before the days of

Lindley Murray, as may be seen in Buchanan's English Syntax, p. 56, and in

the old British Grammar, p. 153, each published many years before the

appearance of his work;[224] and it has often been done since, and is

preferred even by many of the professed admirers and followers of Murray;

as may be seen in the grammars of Comly, Fisk, Merchant, Kirkham, and

others.

OBS. 6.--Murray himself quotes this improved distribution, and with

some appearance of approbation; but strangely imagines it must needs be

\_inconvenient\_ in practice. Had he been a schoolmaster, he could hardly

have so judged. He says, "Verbs have been distinguished by some writers,

into the following kinds:--

"1st. \_Active-transitive\_, or those which denote an action that passes from

the agent to some object: as, Cæsar conquered Pompey.

"2d. \_Active-intransitive\_, or those which express that kind of action,

which has no effect upon any thing beyond itself: as, Cæsar walked.

"3d. \_Passive\_, or those which express, not action, but passion, whether

pleasing or painful: as, Portia was loved; Pompey was conquered.

"4th. \_Neuter\_, or those which express an attribute that consists neither

in action nor passion: as, Cæsar stood.

"This appears to be an orderly arrangement. But if the class of

\_active-intransitive\_ verbs were admitted, \_it would rather perplex\_ than

assist the learner: for the difference between verbs active and neuter, as

transitive and intransitive is easy and obvious: but the difference between

verbs absolutely neuter and [those which are] intransitively active, is not

always clear. It is, indeed, often \_very difficult\_, if not impossible to

be ascertained."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 60.[225]

OBS. 7.--The following note, from a book written on purpose to apply the

principles of Murray's Grammar, and of Allen's, (the two best of the

foregoing two dozen,) may serve as an offset to the reason above assigned

for rejecting the class of active-intransitive verbs: "It is possible that

some teachers may look upon the nice distinction here made, between the

active \_transitive\_ and the active \_intransitive verbs\_, as totally

unnecessary. They may, perhaps, rank the latter with the neuter verbs. The

author had his choice of difficulties: on the one hand, he was aware that

his arrangement might not suit the views of the above-mentioned persons;

and, on the other, he was so sensible of the inaccuracy of their system,

and of its clashing with the definitions, as well as rules, laid down in

almost every grammar, that he was unwilling to bring before the public a

work containing so well-known and manifest an error. Of what use can

Murray's definition of the \_active\_ verb be, to one who endeavours to prove

the propriety of thus assigning an epithet to the various parts of speech,

in the course of parsing? He says, 'A verb active expresses an action, and

necessarily implies an agent, and an object acted upon.' In the sentence,

'William hastens away,' the active intransitive verb \_hastens\_ has indeed

an \_agent\_, 'William,' but where is the \_object\_? Again, he says, 'Active

verbs govern the objective case;' although it is clear it is not the

\_active\_ meaning of the verb which requires the objective case, but the

\_transitive\_, and that only. He adds, 'A verb neuter expresses \_neither

action, nor passion\_, but being, or a state of being;' and the accuracy of

this definition is borne out by the assent of perhaps every other

grammarian. If, with this clear and forcible definition before our eyes, we

proceed to class \_active\_ intransitive verbs with neuter verbs, and direct

our pupils to prove such a classification by reciting Murray's definition

of the \_neuter\_ verb, we may indeed expect from a thinking pupil the

remonstrance which was actually made to a teacher on that system, while

parsing the verb '\_to run\_.' 'Sir,' asks the boy, 'does not \_to run\_ imply

action, for it always makes me perspire?'"--\_Nixon's English Parser\_, p. 9.

OBS. 8.--For the consideration of those classical scholars who may think we

are bound by the authority of \_general usage\_, to adhere to the old

division of verbs into active, passive, and neuter, it may be proper to

say, that the distribution of the verbs in Latin, has been as much a matter

of dispute among the great grammarians of that language, as has the

distribution of English verbs, more recently, among ourselves; and often

the points at issue were precisely the same.[226] To explain here the

different views of the very old grammarians, as Charisius, Donatus,

Servius, Priscian; or even to notice the opinions of later critics, as

Sanctius, Scioppius, Vossius, Perizonius; might seem perhaps a needless

departure from what the student of mere English grammar is concerned to

know. The curious, however, may find interesting citations from all these

authors, under the corresponding head, in some of our Latin grammars. See

\_Prat's Grammatica Latina\_, 8vo, London, 1722. It is certain that the

division of \_active\_ verbs, into \_transitive\_ and \_intransitive\_--or, (what

is the same thing,) into "\_absolute\_ and \_transitive\_"--or, into

"\_immanent\_ and \_transient\_"--is of a very ancient date. The notion of

calling \_passive\_ verbs \_transitive\_, when used in their ordinary and

proper construction, as some now do, is, I think, a \_modern\_ one, and no

small error.

OBS. 9.--Dr. Adam's distribution of verbs, is apparently the same as the

first part of Murray's; and his definitions are also in nearly the same

words. But he adds, "The verb \_Active\_ is also called \_Transitive\_, when

the action \_passeth over\_ to the object, or hath an effect on some other

thing; as, \_scribo literas\_, I write letters: but when the action is

confined within the agent, and \_passeth not over\_ to any object, it is

called \_Intransitive\_; as, \_ambulo\_, I walk; \_curro\_, I run: [fist] which

are likewise called \_Neuter Verbs\_."--\_Adam's Latin and English Gram.\_, p.

79. But he had just before said, "A \_Neuter\_ verb properly expresses

neither action nor passion, but \_simply the being, state, or condition\_ of

things; as, \_dormio\_, I sleep; \_sedeo\_, I sit."--\_Ibid.\_ Verbs of motion or

action, then, must needs be as improperly called neuter, in Latin, as in

English. Nor is this author's arrangement orderly in other respects; for he

treats of "\_Deponent\_ and \_Common\_ Verbs," of "\_Irregular\_ Verbs," of

"\_Defective\_ Verbs," and of "\_Impersonal\_ Verbs," none of which had he

mentioned in his distribution. Nor are the late revisers of his grammar any

more methodical.

OBS. 10.--The division of our verbs into \_active-transitive,

active-intransitive, passive\_, and \_neuter\_, must be understood to have

reference not only to their \_signification\_ as of themselves, but also to

their \_construction\_ with respect to the government of an objective word

after them. The latter is in fact their most important distinction, though

made \_with reference\_ to a different part of speech. The classical scholar,

too, being familiar with the forms of Latin and Greek verbs, will doubtless

think it a convenience, to have the arrangement as nearly correspondent to

those ancient forms, as the nature of our language will admit. This is

perhaps the strongest argument for the recognition of the class of \_passive

verbs\_ in English. Some grammarians, choosing to parse the passive

participle separately, reject this class of verbs altogether; and, forming

their division of the rest with reference to the construction alone, make

but two classes, \_transitive\_ and \_intransitive\_. Such is the distribution

adopted by C. Alexander, D. Adams, Bingham, Chandler, E. Cobb, Harrison,

Nutting, and John Peirce; and supported also by some British writers, among

whom are McCulloch and Grant. Such too was the distribution of Webster, in

his Plain and Comprehensive Grammar, as published in 1800. He then taught:

"We have no \_passive\_ verb in the language; and those which are called

\_neuter\_ are mostly \_active\_."--Page 14. But subsequently, in his

Philosophical, Abridged, and Improved Grammars, he recognized "a more

natural and comprehensive division" of verbs, "\_transitive, intransitive,

and passive\_."--\_Webster's Rudiments\_, p. 20. This, in reality, differs but

little from the old division into \_active, passive\_, and \_neuter\_. In some

grammars of recent date, as Churchill's, R. W. Bailey's, J. R. Brown's,

Butler's, S. W. Clark's, Frazee's, Hart's, Hendrick's, Perley's, Pinneo's,

Weld's, Wells's, Mulligan's, and the \_improved\_ treatises of Bullions and

Frost, verbs are said to be of \_two\_ kinds only, \_transitive\_ and

\_intransitive\_; but these authors allow to transitive verbs a "passive

form," or "passive voice,"--absurdly making all passive verbs transitive,

and all neuters intransitive, as if \_action\_ were expressed by both. For

this most faulty classification, Dr. Bullions pretends the authority of

"Mr. Webster;" and Frazee, that of "Webster, Bullions, and

others."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, Ster. Ed., p. 30. But if Dr. Webster ever

taught the absurd doctrine \_that passive verbs are transitive\_, he has

contradicted it far too much to have any weight in its favour.

OBS. 11.--Dalton makes only two classes; and these he will have to be

\_active\_ and \_passive\_: an arrangement for which he might have quoted

Scaliger, Sanctius, and Scioppius. Ash and Coar recognize but two, which

they call \_active\_ and \_neuter\_. This was also the scheme of Bullions, in

his Principles of E. Gram., 4th Edition, 1842. Priestley and Maunder have

two, which they call \_transitive\_ and \_neuter\_; but Maunder, like some

named above, will have transitive verbs to be susceptible of an active and

a passive voice, and Priestley virtually asserts the same. Cooper, Day,

Davis, Hazen, Hiley, Webster, Wells, (in his 1st Edition,) and Wilcox. have

three classes; \_transitive, intransitive\_, and \_passive\_. Sanders's Grammar

has \_three\_; "\_Transitive, Intransitive\_, and \_Neuter\_;" and two voices,

both \_transitive!\_ Jaudon has four: \_transitive, intransitive, auxiliary\_,

and \_passive\_. Burn has four; \_active, passive, neuter\_, and \_substantive\_.

Cardell labours hard to prove that all verbs are \_both active and

transitive\_; and for this, had he desired their aid, he might have cited

several ancient authorities.[227] Cutler avers, "\_All verbs are active\_;"

yet he divides them "into \_active transitive, active intransitive\_, and

\_participial verbs\_."--\_Grammar and Parser\_, p. 31. Some grammarians,

appearing to think all the foregoing modes of division useless, attempt

nothing of the kind. William Ward, in 1765, rejected all such

classification, but recognized three voices; "Active, Passive, and Middle;

as, \_I call, I am called, I am calling\_." Farnum, in 1842, acknowledged the

first two of these voices, but made no division of verbs into classes.

OBS. 12.--If we admit the class of \_active-intransitive\_ verbs, that of

verbs \_neuter\_ will unquestionably be very small. And this refutes Murray's

objection, that the learner will "\_often\_" be puzzled to know which is

which. Nor can it be of any consequence, if he happen in some instances to

decide wrong. To \_be\_, to \_exist\_, to \_remain\_, to \_seem\_, to \_lie\_, to

\_sleep\_, to \_rest\_, to \_belong\_, to \_appertain\_, and perhaps a few more,

may best be called \_neuter\_; though some grammarians, as may be inferred

from what is said above, deny that there are any neuter verbs in any

language. "Verba Neutra, ait Sanctius, nullo pacto esse possunt; quia,

teste Aristotele, omnis motus, actio, vel passio, nihil medium

est."--\_Prat's Latin Gram.\_, p. 117. John Grant, in his Institutes of Latin

Grammar, recognizes in the verbs of that language the distinction which

Murray supposes to be so "very difficult" in those of our own; and, without

falling into the error of Sanctius, or of Lily,[228] respecting neuter

verbs, judiciously confines the term to such as are neuter in reality.

OBS. 13.--Active-transitive verbs, in English, generally require, that the

agent or doer of the action be expressed \_before\_ them in the nominative

case, and the object or receiver of the action, \_after\_ them in the

objective; as, "Cæsar \_conquered\_ Pompey." Passive verbs, which are never

primitives, but always derived from active-transitive verbs, (in order to

form sentences of like import from natural opposites in voice and sense,)

reverse this order, change the cases of the nouns, and denote that the

subject, named before them, is affected by the action; while the agent

follows, being introduced by the preposition \_by\_: as, "Pompey \_was

conquered\_ by Cæsar." But, as our passive verb always consists of two or

more separable parts, this order is liable to be varied, especially in

poetry; as,

"How many things \_by season seasoned are\_

To their right praise and true perfection!"--\_Shakspeare\_.

"Experience \_is by industry achieved\_,

And \_perfected by\_ the swift \_course\_ of time."--\_Id.\_

OBS. 14.--Most active verbs may be used either transitively or

intransitively. Active verbs are transitive whenever there is any person or

thing expressed or clearly implied on which the action terminates; as, "I

\_knew\_ him well, and every truant \_knew\_."--\_Goldsmith\_. When they do not

govern such an object, they are intransitive, whatever may be their power

on other occasions; as, "The grand elementary principles of pleasure, by

which he \_knows\_, and \_feels\_, and \_lives\_, and \_moves\_."--\_Wordsworth's

Pref.\_, p. xxiii. "The Father \_originates\_ and \_elects\_. The Son \_mediates\_

and \_atones\_. The Holy Spirit \_regenerates\_ and \_sanctifies\_."--\_Gurney's

Portable Evidences\_, p. 66. "Spectators \_remark\_, judges \_decide\_, parties

\_watch\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 271. "In a sermon, a preacher \_may explain,

demonstrate, infer, exhort, admonish, comfort\_."--\_Alexander's E. Gram.\_,

p. 91.

OBS. 15.--Some verbs may be used in either an active or a neuter sense. In

the sentence, "Here I rest," \_rest\_ is a neuter verb; but in the sentence,

"Here I rest my hopes," \_rest\_ is an active-transitive verb, and governs

\_hopes\_. And a few that are always active in a grammatical sense, as

necessarily requiring an object after them, do not always indicate such an

exertion of force as we commonly call \_action\_. Such perhaps are the verbs

to \_have\_, to \_possess\_, to \_owe\_, to \_cost\_; as, "They \_have\_ no

wine."--"The house \_has\_ a portico."--"The man \_possesses\_ no real

estate."--"A son \_owes\_ help and honour to his father."--\_Holyday\_. "The

picture \_cost\_ a crown."--\_Wright\_, p. 181. Yet possibly even these may be

sometimes rather active-intransitive; as, "I can bear my part; 'tis my

occupation: \_have\_ at it with you."--\_Shakspeare\_. "Kings \_have\_ to deal

with their neighbours."--\_Bacon\_. "She will let her instructions enter

where folly now \_possesses\_."--\_Shakspeare.\_

"Thou hast deserv'd more love than I can show;

But 'tis thy fate to give, and mine to \_owe\_."--\_Dryden\_.

OBS. 16.--An active-intransitive verb, followed by a preposition and its

object, will sometimes admit of being put into the passive form: the object

of the preposition being assumed for the nominative, and the preposition

itself being retained with the verb, as an adverb: as, (\_Active\_,) "They

\_laughed\_ at him."--(\_Passive\_,) "He \_was laughed at\_." "For some time the

nonconformists \_were connived at\_."--\_Robertson's America\_, Vol. ii, p.

414. "Every man \_shall be dealt\_ equitably with."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p.

212. "If a church \_would be looked up to\_, it must stand high."--\_Parker's

Idea\_, p. 15.

OBS. 17.--In some instances, what is commonly considered the active form of

the verb, is used in a passive sense; and, still oftener, as we have no

other passive form that so well denotes continuance, we employ the

participle in \_ing\_ in that sense also: as, "I'll teach you all what's

\_owing\_ to your Queen."--\_Dryden\_. That is--what is \_due\_, or \_owed\_. "The

books continue \_selling\_; i.e. \_upon the sale\_, or \_to be

sold\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 111. "So we say the brass is \_forging\_;

i.e. \_at the forging\_, or \_in\_ [\_being forged\_."]--\_Ib.\_ "They are to

\_blame\_; i.e. to \_be blamed.\_"--\_Ib.\_ Hence some grammarians seem to think,

that in our language the distinction between active and passive verbs is of

little consequence: "Mr. Grant, however, observes, p. 65, 'The component

parts of the English verb, or name of action, are few, simple, and natural;

they, consist of three words, as \_plough, ploughing, ploughed\_. Now these

words, and their inflections, may be employed either actively or passively.

Actively, 'They \_plough\_ the fields; they \_are ploughing\_ the fields; they

\_ploughed\_, or \_have ploughed\_, the fields.' Passively, 'The fields

\_plough\_ well; the fields \_are ploughing\_; the fields \_are ploughed\_.' This

passive use of the present tense and participle is, however, restricted to

what he denominates 'verbs of \_external, material\_, or \_mechanical

action\_;' and not to be extended to verbs of \_sensation\_ and \_perception\_;

e.g. \_love, feel, see, &c\_."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 40.

MODIFICATIONS.

Verbs have modifications of four kinds; namely, \_Moods, Tenses, Persons\_

and \_Numbers\_.

MOODS.

Moods [229] are different forms of the verb, each of which expresses the

being, action, or passion, in some particular manner.

There are five moods; the \_Infinitive\_, the \_Indicative\_, the \_Potential\_,

the \_Subjunctive\_, and the \_Imperative\_.

The \_Infinitive mood\_ is that form of the verb, which expresses the being,

action, or passion, in an unlimited manner, and without person or number:

as, "To \_die\_,--to \_sleep\_;--To \_sleep\_!--perchance, to \_dream!\_"

The \_Indicative mood\_ is that form of the verb, which simply indicates or

declares a thing: as, I \_write\_; you \_know\_: or asks a question; as, "Do

you \_know?\_"--"\_Know\_ ye not?"

The \_Potential mood\_ is that form of the verb which expresses the power,

liberty, possibility, or necessity, of the being, action, or passion: as,

"I \_can walk\_; he \_may ride\_; we \_must go\_."

The \_Subjunctive mood\_ is that form of the verb, which represents the

being, action, or passion, as conditional, doubtful, and contingent: as,

"If thou \_go\_, see that thou \_offend\_ not."--"See thou \_do\_ it

not."--\_Rev.\_, xix, 10.

The \_Imperative mood\_ is that form of the verb which is used in commanding,

exhorting, entreating, or permitting: as, "\_Depart\_ thou."--"Be

\_comforted\_."--"\_Forgive\_ me."--"\_Go\_ in peace."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The \_Infinitive\_ mood is so called in opposition to the other

moods, in which the verb is said to be \_finite\_. In all the other moods,

the verb has a strict connexion, and necessary agreement in person and

number, with some subject or nominative, expressed or understood; but the

infinitive is the mere verb, without any such agreement, and has no power

of completing sense with a noun. In the nature of things, however, all

being, action, or passion, not contemplated abstractly as a \_thing\_,

belongs to something that is, or acts, or is acted upon. Accordingly

infinitives have, in most instances, a \_reference\_ to some subject of this

kind; though their grammatical dependence connects them more frequently

with some other term. The infinitive mood, in English, is distinguished by

the preposition to; which, with a few exceptions, immediately precedes it,

and may be said to govern it. In dictionaries, and grammars, \_to\_ is often

used as a mere \_index\_, to distinguish verbs from the other parts of

speech. But this little word has no more claim to be ranked as a part of

the verb, than has the conjunction \_if\_, which is the sign of the

subjunctive. It is the nature of a preposition, to show the relation of

different things, thoughts, or words, to each other; and this "sign of the

infinitive" may well be pursued separately as a preposition, since in most

instances it manifestly shows the relation between the infinitive verb and

some other term. Besides, by most of our grammarians, the present tense of

the infinitive mood is declared to be the \_radical form\_ of the verb; but

this doctrine must be plainly untrue, upon the supposition that this tense

is a compound.

OBS. 2.--The \_Indicative\_ mood is so called because its chief use is, to

\_indicate\_, or declare positively, whatever one wishes to say. It is that

form of the verb, which we always employ when we affirm or deny any thing

in a direct and independent manner. It is more frequently used, and has a

greater number of tenses, than any other mood; and is also, in our

language, the only one in which the principal verb is varied in

termination. It is not, however, on all occasions, confined to its primary

use; else it would be simply and only declarative. But we use it sometimes

interrogatively, sometimes conditionally; and each of these uses is

different from a simple declaration. Indeed, the difference between a

question and an assertion is practically very great. Hence some of the old

grammarians made the form of inquiry a separate mood, which they called the

\_Interrogative Mood\_. But, as these different expressions are

distinguished, not by any difference of form in the verb itself, but merely

by a different order, choice, or delivery of the words, it has been found

most convenient in practice, to treat them as one mood susceptible of

different senses. So, in every conditional sentence, the \_prot'asis\_, or

condition, differs considerably from the \_apod'osis\_, or principal clause,

even where both are expressed as facts. Hence some of our modern

grammarians, by the help of a few connectives, absurdly merge a great

multitude of Indicative or Potential expressions in what they call the

\_Subjunctive Mood\_. But here again it is better to refer still to the

Indicative or Potential mood whatsoever has any proper sign of such mood,

even though it occur in a dependent clause.

OBS. 3.--The \_Potential\_ mood is so called because the leading idea

expressed by it, is that of the \_power\_ of performing some action. This

mood is known by the signs \_may, can, must, might, could, would\_, and

\_should\_. Some of these auxiliaries convey other ideas than that of power

in the agent; but there is no occasion to explain them severally here. The

potential mood, like the indicative, may be used in asking a question; as,

"\_Must\_ I \_budge\_? \_must\_ I \_observe\_ you? \_must\_ I \_stand\_ and \_crouch\_

under your testy humour?"--\_Shakspeare\_. No question can be asked in any

other mood than these two. By some grammarians, the potential mood has been

included in the subjunctive, because its meaning is often expressed in

Latin by what in that language is called the subjunctive. By others, it has

been entirely rejected, because all its tenses are compound, and it has

been thought the words could as well be parsed separately. Neither of these

opinions is sufficiently prevalent, or sufficiently plausible, to deserve a

laboured refutation. On the other hand, James White, in his Essay on the

English Verb, (London, 1761,) divided this mood into the following five:

"the \_Elective\_," denoted by \_may\_ or \_might\_; "the \_Potential\_," by \_can\_

or \_could\_; "the \_Determinative\_" by \_would\_; "the \_Obligative\_," by

\_should\_; and "the \_Compulsive\_," by \_must\_. Such a distribution is

needlessly minute. Most of these can as well be spared as those other

"moods, \_Interrogative, Optative, Promissive, Hortative, Precative\_, &c.",

which Murray mentions only to reject. See his \_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 68.

OBS. 4.--The \_Subjunctive\_ mood is so called because it is always

\_subjoined\_ to an other verb. It usually denotes some doubtful contingency,

or some supposition contrary to fact. The manner of its dependence is

commonly denoted by one of the following conjunctions; \_if, that, though,

lest, unless\_. The indicative and potential moods, in all their tenses, may

be used in the same dependent manner, to express any positive or potential

condition; but this seems not to be a sufficient reason for considering

them as parts of the subjunctive mood. In short, the idea of a "subjunctive

mood in the indicative form," (which is adopted by Chandler, Frazee, Fisk,

S. S. Greene, Comly, Ingersoll, R. C. Smith, Sanborn, Mack, Butler, Hart,

Weld, Pinneo, and others,) is utterly inconsistent with any just notion of

what a mood is; and the suggestion, which we frequently meet with, that the

regular indicative or potential mood may be \_thrown into the subjunctive\_

by merely prefixing a conjunction, is something worse than nonsense.

Indeed, no mood can ever be made \_a part of an other\_, without the grossest

confusion and absurdity. Yet, strange as it is, some celebrated authors,

misled by an \_if\_, have tangled together three of them, producing such a

snarl of tenses as never yet can have been understood without being thought

ridiculous. See \_Murray's Grammar\_, and others that agree with his late

editions.

OBS. 5.--In regard to the number and form of the tenses which should

constitute the \_subjunctive mood\_ in English, our grammarians are greatly

at variance; and some, supposing its distinctive parts to be but elliptical

forms of the indicative or the potential,[230] even deny the existence of

such a mood altogether. On this point, the instructions published by

Lindley Murray, however commended and copied, are most remarkably vague and

inconsistent.[231] The early editions of his Grammar gave to this mood \_six

tenses\_, none of which had any of the personal inflections; consequently

there was, in all the tenses, \_some difference\_ between it and the

indicative. His later editions, on the contrary, make the subjunctive

exactly like the indicative, except in the present tense, and in the choice

of auxiliaries for the second-future. Both ways, he goes too far. And while

at last he restricts the \_distinctive form\_ of the subjunctive to narrower

bounds than he ought, and argues against, "If thou \_loved\_, If thou

\_knew\_," &c., he gives to this mood not only the last five tenses of the

indicative, but also all those of the potential, with its multiplied

auxiliaries; alleging, "that as the indicative mood \_is converted\_ into the

subjunctive, by the expression of a condition, motive, wish, supposition,

&c.[232] being superadded to it, so the potential mood may, in like manner,

\_be turned into\_ the subjunctive."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 82. According to

this, the subjunctive mood of every regular verb embraces, in one voice, as

many as one hundred and thirty-eight different expressions; and it may

happen, that in one single tense a verb shall have no fewer than fifteen

different forms in each person and number. Six times fifteen are ninety;

and so many are the several phrases which now compose Murray's pluperfect

tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb \_to strow\_--a tense which most

grammarians very properly reject as needless! But this is not all. The

scheme not only confounds the moods, and utterly overwhelms the learner

with its multiplicity, but condemns as bad English what the author himself

once adopted and taught for the imperfect tense of the subjunctive mood,

"If thou \_loved\_, If thou \_knew\_," &c., wherein he was sustained by Dr.

Priestley, by Harrison, by Caleb Alexander, by John Burn, by Alexander

Murray, the schoolmaster, and by others of high authority. Dr. Johnson,

indeed, made the preterit subjunctive like the indicative; and this may

have induced the author to change his plan, and inflect this part of the

verb with \_st\_. But Dr. Alexander Murray, a greater linguist than either of

them, very positively declares this to be wrong: "When such words as \_if,

though, unless, except, whether\_, and the like, are used before verbs, they

lose their terminations of \_est, eth\_, and \_s\_, in those persons which

commonly have them. No speaker of good English, expressing himself

conditionally, says, Though thou \_fallest\_, or Though he \_falls\_, but,

Though thou \_fall\_, and Though he \_fall\_; nor, Though thou \_camest\_, but,

Though, or although, thou \_came\_."--\_History of European Languages\_, Vol.

i, p. 55.

OBS. 6.--Nothing is more important in the grammar of any language, than a

knowledge of the \_true forms\_ of its verbs. Nothing is more difficult in

the grammar of our own, than to learn, in this instance and some others,

what forms we ought to prefer. Yet some authors tell us, and Dr. Lowth

among the rest, that our language is wonderfully simple and easy. Perhaps

it is so. But do not its "simplicity and facility" appear greatest to those

who know least about it?--i.e., least of its grammar, and least of its

history? In citing a passage from the eighteenth chapter of Ezekiel, Lord

Kames has taken the liberty to change the word \_hath\_ to \_have\_ seven times

in one sentence. This he did, upon the supposition that the subjunctive

mood has a perfect tense which differs from that of the indicative; and for

such an idea he had the authority of Dr. Johnson's Grammar, and others. The

sentence is this: "But if he \_be\_ a robber, a shedder of blood; if he

\_have\_ eaten upon the mountains, and defiled his neighbour's wife; if he

\_have\_ oppressed the poor and needy, \_have\_ spoiled by violence, \_have\_ not

restored the pledge, \_have lift\_ up his eyes to idols, \_have\_ given forth

upon usury, and \_have\_ taken increase: shall he live? he shall not

live."--\_Elements of Criticism\_, Vol. ii, p. 261. Now, is this good

English, or is it not? One might cite about half of our grammarians in

favour of this reading, and the other half against it; with Murray, the

most noted of all, first on one side, and then on the other. Similar

puzzles may be presented concerning three or four other tenses, which are

sometimes ascribed, and sometimes denied, to this mood. It seems to me,

after much examination, that the subjunctive mood in English should have

\_two tenses\_, and no more; the \_present\_ and the \_imperfect\_. The present

tense of this mood naturally implies contingency and futurity, while the

imperfect here becomes an \_aorist\_, and serves to suppose a case as a mere

supposition, a case contrary to fact. Consequently the foregoing sentence,

if expressed by the subjunctive at all, ought to be written thus: "But if

he \_be\_ a robber, a shedder of blood; if he \_eat\_ upon the mountains, and

\_defile\_ his neighbour's wife; if he \_oppress\_ the poor and needy, \_spoil\_

by violence, \_restore\_ not the pledge, \_lift\_ up his eyes to idols, \_give\_

forth upon usury, and \_take\_ increase; shall he live? he shall not live."

OBS. 7.--"Grammarians \_generally\_ make a present and a past time under the

subjunctive mode."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 100. These are the tenses which

are given to the subjunctive by \_Blair\_, in his "\_Practical Grammar\_." If

any one will give to this mood \_more\_ tenses than these, the five which are

adopted by \_Staniford\_, are perhaps the least objectionable: namely,

"\_Present\_, If thou love, or do love; \_Imperfect\_, If thou loved, or did

love; \_Perfect\_, If thou have loved; \_Pluperfect\_, If thou had loved;

\_Future\_, If thou should or would love."--\_Staniford's Gram.\_, p. 22. But

there are no sufficient reasons for even this extension of its

tenses.--Fisk, speaking of this mood, says: "Lowth restricts it entirely to

the present tense."--"Uniformity on this point is highly desirable."--"On

this subject, we adopt the opinion of Dr. Lowth."--\_English Grammar

Simplified\_, p. 70. His desire of uniformity he has both heralded and

backed by a palpable misstatement. The learned Doctor's subjunctive mood,

in the second person singular, is this: "\_Present time\_. Thou love; AND,

Thou \_mayest\_ love. \_Past time\_. Thou \_mightest\_ love; AND, Thou \_couldst\_,

&c. love; and have loved."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 38. But Fisk's subjunctive

runs thus: "\_Indic. form\_, If thou lovest; \_varied form\_, If thou love."

And again: "\_Present tense\_, If thou art, If thou be; \_Imperfect tense\_, If

thou wast, If thou wert."--\_Fisk's Grammar Simplified\_, p. 70. His very

definition of the subjunctive mood is illustrated \_only by the indicative\_;

as, "If thou \_walkest\_."--"I will perform the operation, if he \_desires\_

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 69. Comly's subjunctive mood, except in some of his early

editions, stands thus: "\_Present tense\_, If thou lovest; \_Imperfect tense\_,

If thou lovedst or loved; \_First future tense\_, If thou (shalt)

love."--\_Eleventh Ed.\_, p. 41. This author teaches, that the indicative or

potential, when preceded by an \_if\_, "should be \_parsed\_ in the subjunctive

mood."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. Of what is in fact the true subjunctive, he says:

"\_Some writers\_ use the singular number in the present tense of the

subjunctive mood, without any variation; as, 'if I \_love\_, if thou \_love\_,

if he \_love\_.' But this usage \_must be ranked amongst the anomalies\_ of our

language."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. Cooper, in his pretended "\_Abridgment of Murray's

Grammar, Philad.\_, 1828," gave to the subjunctive mood the following form,

which contains all six of the tenses: "2d pers. If thou love, If thou do

love, If thou loved, If thou did love, If thou have loved, If thou had

loved, If thou shall (or will) love, If thou shall (or will) have loved."

This is almost exactly what Murray at first adopted, and afterwards

rejected; though it is probable, from the abridger's preface, that the

latter was ignorant of this fact. Soon afterwards, a perusal of Dr.

Wilson's Essay on Grammar dashed from the reverend gentleman's mind the

whole of this fabric; and in his "Plain and Practical Grammar, Philad.,

1831," he acknowledges but four moods, and concludes some pages of argument

thus: "From the above considerations, it will appear \_to every sound

grammarian\_, that our language does not admit a subjunctive mode, at least,

separate and distinct from the indicative and potential."--\_Cooper's New

Gram.\_, p. 63.

OBS. 8.--The true \_Subjunctive\_ mood, in English, is virtually rejected by

some later grammarians, who nevertheless acknowledge under that name a

greater number and variety of forms than have ever been claimed for it in

any other tongue. All that is peculiar to the Subjunctive, all that should

constitute it a distinct mood, they represent as an archaism, an obsolete

or antiquated mode of expression, while they willingly give to it every

form of both the indicative and the potential, the two other moods which

sometimes follow an \_if\_. Thus Wells, in his strange entanglement of the

moods, not only gives to the subjunctive, as well as to the indicative, a

"Simple" or "Common Form," and a "Potential Form;" not only recognizes in

each an "Auxiliary Form," and a "Progressive Form;" but encumbers the whole

with distinctions of style,--with what he calls the "Common Style," and the

"Ancient Style;" or the "Solemn Style," and the "Familiar Style:" yet,

after all, his own example of the Subjunctive, "Take heed, lest any man

\_deceive\_ you," is obviously different from all these, and not explainable

under any of his paradigms! Nor is it truly consonant with any part of his

theory, which is this: "The subjunctive of all verbs except \_be\_, takes

\_the same form as the indicative\_. Good writers were formerly much

accustomed to \_drop\_ the personal termination in the \_subjunctive present\_,

and write 'If he \_have\_,' 'If he \_deny\_,' etc., for 'If he \_has\_,' 'If he

\_denies\_,' etc.; but this termination is now \_generally retained\_, unless

\_an auxiliary is understood\_. Thus, 'If he \_hear\_,' may properly be used

for 'If he \_shall hear\_' or 'If he \_should hear\_,' but not for 'If he

\_hears\_.'"--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 83; 3d Ed., p. 87. Now

every position here taken is demonstrably absurd. How could "good writers"

indite "much" bad English by \_dropping\_ from the subjunctive an indicative

ending which never belonged to it? And how can a needless "auxiliary" be

"\_understood\_," on the principle of equivalence, where, by awkwardly

changing a mood or tense, it only helps some grammatical theorist to

convert good English into bad, or to pervert a text? The phrases above may

all be right, or all be wrong, according to the correctness or

incorrectness of their application: when each is used as best it may be,

there is no exact equivalence. And this is true of half a dozen more of the

same sort; as, "If he \_does hear\_,"--"If he \_do hear\_,"--"If he is

\_hearing\_,"--"If he \_be hearing\_,"--"If he \_shall be hearing\_,"--"If he

\_should be hearing\_."

OBS. 9.--Similar to Wells's, are the subjunctive forms of Allen H. Weld.

Mistaking \_annex\_ to signify \_prefix\_, this author teaches thus: "ANNEX

\_if, though, unless, suppose, admit, grant, allow\_, or any word implying a

\_condition\_, to each tense of the \_Indicative and Potential modes\_, to form

the subjunctive; as, If thou lovest or love. If he loves, or love. Formerly

it was customary to \_omit the terminations\_ in the second and third persons

of the present tense of the Subjunctive mode. But now the terminations are

\_generally retained\_, except when the ellipsis of \_shall\_ or \_should\_ is

implied; as, If he obey, i. e., if he \_shall\_, or \_should\_ obey."--\_Weld's

Grammar, Abridged Edition\_, p. 71. Again: "\_In general\_, the form of the

verb in the Subjunctive, \_is the same as that of the Indicative\_; but an

\_elliptical form\_ in the second and third \_person\_ [persona] singular, is

used in the following instances: (1.) \_Future contingency\_ is expressed by

the \_omission of the Indicative termination\_; as, If he go, for, if he

\_shall\_ go. Though he slay me, i.e., though he \_should\_ slay me. (2.)

\_Lest\_ and \_that\_ annexed to a command are followed by the \_elliptical

form\_ of the Subjunctive; as, Love not sleep [,] lest thou \_come\_ to

poverty. (3.) \_If\_ with \_but\_ following it, when futurity is denoted,

requires the \_elliptical form\_; as, If he \_do\_ but \_touch\_ the hills, they

shall smoke."--\_Ib.\_, p. 126. As for this scheme, errors and

inconsistencies mark every part of it. First, the rule for forming the

subjunctive is false, and is plainly contradicted \_by all that is true\_ in

the examples: "\_If thou love\_," or, "\_If he love\_" contains not the form of

the indicative. Secondly, no terminations have ever been "generally"

omitted from, or retained in, the form of the subjunctive present; because

that part of the mood, as commonly exhibited, is well known to be made of

the \_radical verb\_, without inflection. One might as well talk of suffixes

for the imperative, "\_Love\_ thou," or "\_Do\_ thou love." Thirdly, \_shall\_ or

\_should\_ can never be really implied in the subjunctive present; because

the supposed ellipsis, needless and unexampled, would change the tense, the

mood, and commonly also the meaning. "If he \_shall\_," properly implies a

condition of \_future certainty\_; "If he \_should\_," a supposition of \_duty\_:

the true subjunctive suggests neither of these. Fourthly, "the ellipsis of

\_shall\_, or \_should\_," is most absurdly called above, "the omission of the

\_Indicative termination\_." Fifthly, it is very strangely supposed, that to

omit what pertains to the \_indicative\_ or the \_potential\_ mood, will

produce an "elliptical form of \_the Subjunctive\_." Sixthly, such examples

as the last, "If he \_do\_ but \_touch\_ the hills," having the auxiliary \_do\_

not inflected as in the indicative, disprove the whole theory.

OBS. 10.--In J. B. Chandler's grammars, are taken nearly the same views of

the "Subjunctive or Conditional Mood," that have just been noticed. "This

mood," we are told, "is \_only\_ the indicative \_or\_ potential mood, with the

word \_if\_ placed before the nominative case."--\_Gram. of\_ 1821, p. 48;

\_Gram. of\_ 1847, p. 73. Yet, of even \_this\_, the author has said, in the

former edition, "It would, perhaps, be \_better to abolish the use\_ of the

subjunctive mood entirely. \_Its use\_ is a continual source of dispute among

grammarians, and of perplexity to scholars."--Page 33. The suppositive verb

\_were\_,--(as, "\_Were\_ I a king,"--"If I \_were\_ a king,"--) which this

author formerly rejected, preferring \_was\_, is now, after six and twenty

years, replaced in his own examples; and yet he still attempts to \_disgrace

it\_, by falsely representing it as being only "the indicative \_plural\_"

very grossly misapplied! See \_Chandler's Common School Gram.\_, p. 77.

OBS. 11.--The \_Imperative\_ mood is so called because it is chiefly used in

\_commanding\_. It is that brief form of the verb, by which we directly urge

upon others our claims and wishes. But the nature of this urging varies

according to the relation of the parties. We command inferiors; exhort

equals; entreat superiors; permit whom we will;--and all by this same

imperative form of the verb. In answer to a request, the imperative implies

nothing more than permission. The will of a superior may also be urged

imperatively by the indicative, future. This form is particularly common in

solemn prohibitions; as, "Thou \_shalt not kill\_. \* \* \* Thou \_shalt not

steal\_."--\_Exodus\_, xx, 13 and 15. Of the ten commandments, eight are

negative, and all these are indicative in form. The other two are in the

imperative mood: "\_Remember\_ the sabbath day to keep it holy. \_Honour\_ thy

father and thy mother."--\_Ib.\_ But the imperative form may also be

negative: as, "\_Touch not; taste not; handle not\_."--\_Colossians\_, ii, 21.

TENSES.

Tenses are those modifications of the verb, which distinguish time. There

are six tenses; the \_Present\_, the \_Imperfect\_, the \_Perfect\_, the

\_Pluperfect\_, the \_First-future\_, and the \_Second-future\_.

The \_Present tense\_ is that which expresses what \_now exists\_, or \_is

taking\_ place: as, "I \_hear\_ a noise; somebody \_is coming\_."

The \_Imperfect tense\_ is that which expresses what \_took place\_, or \_was

occurring\_, in time fully past: as, "I \_saw\_ him yesterday, and \_hailed\_

him as he \_was passing\_."

The \_Perfect tense\_ is that which expresses what \_has taken\_ place, within

some period of time not yet fully past: as, "I \_have seen\_ him to-day;

something \_must have detained\_ him."

The \_Pluperfect tense\_ is that which expresses what \_had taken\_ place, at

some past time mentioned: as, "I \_had seen\_ him, when I met you."

The \_First-future tense\_ is that which expresses what \_will take\_ place

hereafter: as, "I \_shall see\_ him again, and I \_will inform\_ him."

The \_Second-future tense\_ is that which expresses what \_will have taken\_

place, at some future time mentioned: as, "I \_shall have seen\_ him by

tomorrow noon."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The terms here defined are the names usually given to those parts

of the verb to which they are in this work applied; and though some of them

are not so strictly appropriate as scientific names ought to be, it is

thought inexpedient to change them. In many old grammars, and even in the

early editions of Murray, the three past tenses are called the

\_Preterimperfect, Preterperfect\_, and \_Preterpluperfect\_. From these names,

the term \_Preter\_, (which is from the Latin preposition \_præter\_, meaning

\_beside, beyond\_, or \_past\_,) has been well dropped for the sake of

brevity.[233]

OBS. 2.--The distinctive epithet \_Imperfect\_, or \_Preterimperfect\_, appears

to have been much less accurately employed by the explainers of our

language, than it was by the Latin grammarians from whom it was borrowed.

That tense which passes in our schools for the \_Imperfect\_, (as, I \_slept,

did sleep\_, or \_was sleeping\_,) is in fact, so far as the indicative mood

is concerned, \_more completely past\_, than that which we call the

\_Perfect\_. Murray indeed has attempted to show that the name is right; and,

for the sake of consistency, one could wish he had succeeded. But every

scholar must observe, that the simple preterit, which is the first form of

this tense, and is never found in any other, as often as the sentence is

declarative, tells what \_happened\_ within some period of time \_fully past\_,

as \_last week, last year\_; whereas the perfect tense is used to express

what \_has happened\_ within some period of time \_not yet fully past\_, as

\_this week, this year\_. As to the completeness of the action, there is no

difference; for what \_has been done\_ to-day, is as \_completely done\_, as

what \_was achieved\_ a year ago. Hence it is obvious that the term

\_Imperfect\_ has no other applicability to the English tense so called, than

what it may have derived from the participle in \_ing\_, which we use in

translating the Latin imperfect tense: as, \_Dormiebam, I was sleeping;

Legebam, I was reading; Docebam, I was teaching\_. And if for this reason

the whole English tense, with all its variety of forms in the different

moods, "may, with propriety, be denominated \_imperfect\_;" surely, the

participle itself should be so denominated \_a fortiori\_: for it always

conveys this same idea, of "\_action not finished\_," be the tense of its

accompanying auxiliary what it may.

OBS. 3.--The tenses do not all express time with equal precision; nor can

the whole number in any language supersede the necessity of adverbs of

time, much less of dates, and of nouns that express periods of duration.

The tenses of the indicative mood, are the most definite; and, for this

reason, as well as for some others, the explanations of all these

modifications of the verb, are made with particular reference to that mood.

Some suppose the compound or participial form, as \_I am writing\_, to be

more definite in time, than the simple form, as \_I write\_, or the emphatic

form, as \_I do write\_; and accordingly they divide all the tenses into

\_Indefinite\_ and \_Definite\_. Of this division Dr. Webster seems to claim

the invention; for he gravely accuses Murray of copying it unjustly from

him, though the latter acknowledges in a note upon his text, it "is, \_in

part\_, taken from Webster's Grammar."--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, p. 73. The

distribution, as it stands in either work, is not worth quarrelling about:

it is evidently more cumbersome than useful. Nor, after all, is it true

that the compound form is more definite in time than the other. For

example; "Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse, \_was always betraying\_ his

unhappiness."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 123. Now, if \_was betraying\_ were a

more definite tense than \_betrayed\_, surely the adverb "\_always\_" would

require the latter, rather than the former.

OBS. 4.--The present tense, of the indicative mood, expresses not only what

is now actually going on, but general truths, and customary actions: as,

"Vice \_produces\_ misery."--"He \_hastens\_ to repent, who \_gives\_ sentence

quickly."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 71. "Among the Parthians, the signal

\_is given\_ by the drum, and not by the trumpet."--\_Justin\_. Deceased

authors may be spoken of in the present tense, because they seem to live

in their works; as, "Seneca \_reasons\_ and \_moralizes\_ well."--\_Murray\_.

"Women \_talk\_ better than men, from the superior shape of their tongues: an

ancient writer \_speaks\_ of their loquacity three thousand years

ago."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p. 27.

OBS. 5.--The text, John, viii, 58, "Before Abraham \_was\_, I \_am\_," is a

literal Grecism, and not to be cited as an example of pure English: our

idiom would seem to require, "Before Abraham \_was\_, I \_existed\_." In

animated narrative, however, the present tense is often substituted for the

past, by the figure \_enallage\_. In such cases, past tenses and present may

occur together; because the latter are used merely to bring past events

more vividly before us: as, "Ulysses \_wakes\_, not knowing where he

\_was\_."--\_Pope\_. "The dictator \_flies\_ forward to the cavalry, beseeching

them to dismount from their horses. They \_obeyed\_; they \_dismount, rush\_

onward, and for vancouriers \_show\_ their bucklers."--\_Livy\_. On this

principle, perhaps, the following couplet, which Murray condemns as bad

English, may be justified:--

"Him portion'd maids, apprentic'd orphans blest,

The young who \_labour\_, and the old who \_rest\_."

See \_Murray's Key\_, R. 13.

OBS. 6.--The present tense of the subjunctive mood, and that of the

indicative when preceded by \_as soon as, after, before, till\_, or \_when\_,

is generally used with reference to future time; as, "If he \_ask\_ a fish,

will he give him a serpent?"--\_Matt.\_, vii, 10. "If I \_will\_ that he

\_tarry\_ till I \_come\_, what is that to thee? Follow thou me."--\_John\_, xxi,

22. "When he \_arrives\_, I will send for you." The imperative mood has but

one tense, and that is always present with regard to the giving of the

command; though what is commanded, must be done in the future, if done at

all. So the subjunctive may convey a present supposition of what the will

of an other may make uncertain: as, "If thou \_count\_ me therefore a

partner, \_receive\_ him as myself."--\_St. Paul to Philemon\_, 17. The perfect

indicative, like the present, is sometimes used with reference to time that

is relatively future; as, "He will be fatigued before he \_has walked\_ a

mile."--"My lips shall utter praise, when thou \_hast taught\_ me thy

statutes."--\_Psalms\_, cxix, 171. "Marvel not at this: for the hour is

coming, in the which all that \_are\_ in the graves, shall hear his voice,

and shall come forth; they that \_have done\_ good, unto the resurrection of

life; and they that \_have done\_ evil, unto the resurrection of

damnation."--\_John\_, v, 28.

OBS. 7.--What is called the \_present\_ infinitive, can scarcely be said to

express any particular time.[234] It is usually dependent on an other verb,

and therefore relative in time. It may be connected with any tense of any

mood: as, "I \_intend to do\_ it; I \_intended to do\_ it; I \_have intended to

do\_ it; I \_had intended to do\_ it;" &c. For want of a better mode of

expression, we often use the infinitive to denote futurity, especially when

it seems to be taken adjectively; as, "The time \_to come\_,"--"The world \_to

come\_,"--"Rapture yet \_to be\_." This, sometimes with the awkward addition

of \_about\_, is the only substitute we have for the Latin future participle

in \_rus\_, as \_venturus, to come\_, or \_about to come\_. This phraseology,

according to Horne Tooke, (see \_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 457,) is

no fitter than that of our ancestors, who for this purpose used the same

preposition, but put the participle in \_ing\_ after it, in lieu of the

radical verb, which we choose to employ: as, "Generacions of eddris, who

shewide to you to fle fro wraththe \_to comynge?\_"--\_Matt.\_, iii, 7. Common

Version: "O generation of vipers! who hath warned you to flee from the

wrath \_to come\_?" "Art thou that art \_to comynge\_, ether abiden we

another?"--\_Matt.\_, xi, 3. Common Version: "Art thou he that \_should come\_,

or do we look for another?" "Sotheli there the ship was \_to puttyng out\_

the charge."--\_Dedis\_, xxi, 3. Common Version: "For there the ship was \_to

unlade\_ her burden."--\_Acts\_, xxi, 3. Churchill, after changing the names

of the two infinitive tenses to "\_Future imperfect\_" and "\_Future

perfect\_," adds the following note: "The tenses of the infinitive mood are

usually termed \_present\_ and \_preterperfect\_: but this is certainly

improper; for they are so completely future, that what is called the

present tense of the infinitive mood is often employed simply to express

futurity; as, 'The life \_to come\_.'"--\_New Gram.\_, p. 249.

OBS. 8.--The pluperfect tense, when used conditionally, in stead of

expressing what actually \_had taken place\_ at a past time, almost always

implies that the action thus supposed \_never was performed\_; on the

contrary, if the supposition be made in a \_negative form\_, it suggests that

the event \_had occurred\_: as, "Lord, if thou \_hadst been here\_, my brother

\_had not died\_."--\_John\_, xi, 32. "If I \_had not come\_ and spoken unto

them, they \_had not had\_ sin; but now they have no cloak for their

sin."--\_John\_, xv, 22. "If thou \_hadst known\_, even thou, at least in this

thy day, the things which belong unto thy peace! But now they are hid from

thine eyes."--\_Luke\_, xix, 42. The supposition is sometimes indicated by a

mere transposition of the verb and its subject; in which case, the

conjunction \_if\_ is omitted; as, "\_Had ye believed\_ Moses, ye would have

believed me."--\_John\_, v, 46.

"\_Had I but fought\_ as wont, one thrust

\_Had laid\_ De Wilton in the dust."--\_Scott\_

OBS. 9.--In the language of prophecy we find the past tenses very often

substituted for the future, especially when the prediction is remarkably

clear and specific. Man is a creature of present knowledge only; but it is

certain, that He who sees the end from the beginning, has sometimes

revealed to him, and by him, things deep in futurity. Thus the sacred seer

who is esteemed the most eloquent of the ancient prophets, more than \_seven

hundred years\_ before the events occurred, spoke of the vicarious

sufferings of Christ as of things already past, and even then described

them in the phraseology of historical facts: "Surely he \_hath borne\_ our

griefs, \_and carried\_ our sorrows: yet we \_did esteem\_ him stricken,

smitten of God, and afflicted. But he \_was wounded\_ for our transgressions;

he \_was bruised\_ for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace \_was\_

upon him; and by his stripes we are healed."--\_Isaiah\_, liii, 4 and 5.

Multiplied instances of a similar application of the past tenses to future

events, occur in the Bible, especially in the writings of this prophet.

PERSONS AND NUMBERS.

The person and number of a verb are those modifications in which it agrees

with its subject or nominative.

In each number, there are three persons; and in each person, two numbers:

thus,

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1st per. I love, 1st per. We love,

2d per. Thou lovest, 2d per. You love,

3d per. He loves; 3d per. They love.

Definitions universally applicable have already been given of all these

things; it is therefore unnecessary to define them again in this place.

Where the verb is varied, the second person singular is regularly formed by

adding \_st\_ or \_est\_ to the first person; and the third person singular, in

like manner, by adding \_s\_ or \_es\_: as, I \_see\_, thou \_seest\_, he \_sees\_; I

\_give\_, thou \_givest\_, he \_gives\_; I \_go\_, thou \_goest\_, he \_goes\_; I

\_fly\_, thou \_fliest\_, he \_flies\_; I \_vex\_, thou \_vexest\_, he \_vexes\_; I

\_lose\_, thou \_losest\_, he \_loses.\_

Where the verb is not varied to denote its person and number, these

properties are inferred from its subject or nominative: as, If I \_love\_, if

thou \_love\_, if he \_love\_; if we \_love\_, if you \_love\_, if they \_love\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--It is considered a principle of Universal Grammar, that a finite

verb must agree with its subject or nominative in person and number. Upon

this principle, we ascribe to every such verb the person and number of the

nominative word, whether the verb itself be literally modified by the

relation or not. The doctrine must be constantly taught and observed, in

every language in which the verbs have \_any variations\_ of this kind. But

suppose an instance, of a language in which all the verbs were entirely

destitute of such inflections; the principle, as regards that language,

must drop. Finite verbs, in such a case, would still relate to their

subjects, or nominatives, agreeably to the sense; but they would certainly

be rendered incapable of adding to this relation any agreement or

disagreement. So the concords which belong to adjectives and participles in

Latin and Greek, are rejected in English, and there remains to these parts

of speech nothing but a simple relation to their nouns according to the

sense. And by the fashionable substitution of \_you\_ for \_thou\_, the concord

of English verbs with their nominatives, is made to depend, in common

practice, on little more than one single terminational \_s\_, which is used

to mark one person of one number of one tense of one mood of each verb. So

near does this practice bring us to the dropping of what is yet called a

universal principle of grammar.[235]

OBS. 2.--In most languages, there are in each tense, through all the moods

of every verb, six different terminations to distinguish the different

persons and numbers. This will be well understood by every one who has ever

glanced at the verbs as exhibited in any Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, or

Italian grammar. To explain it to others, a brief example shall be given:

(with the remark, that the Latin pronouns, here inserted, are seldom

expressed, except for emphasis:) "\_Ego amo\_, I love; \_Tu amas\_, Thou

lovest; \_Ille amat\_, He loves; \_Nos amamus\_, We love; \_Vos amatis\_, You

love; \_Illi amant\_, They love." Hence it may be perceived, that the paucity

of variations in the English verb, is a very striking peculiarity of our

language. Whether we are gainers or losers by this simplicity, is a

question for learned idleness to discuss. The common people who speak

English, have far less inclination to add new endings to our verbs, than to

drop or avoid all the remains of the old. Lowth and Murray tell us, "This

scanty provision of terminations \_is sufficient\_ for all the purposes of

discourse;" and that, "\_For this reason\_, the plural termination \_en\_,

(they \_loven\_, they \_weren\_,) formerly in use, was laid aside as

\_unnecessary\_, and has long been obsolete."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 31;

\_Murray's\_, 63.

OBS. 3.--Though modern usage, especially in common conversation, evidently

inclines to drop or shun all unnecessary suffixes and inflections, still it

is true, that the English verb in some of its parts, varies its

termination, to distinguish, or agree with, the different persons and

numbers. The change is, however, principally confined to the second and

third persons singular of the present tense of the indicative mood, and to

the auxiliaries \_hast\_ and \_has\_ of the perfect. In the ancient biblical

style, now used only on solemn occasions, the second person singular is

distinguished through all the tenses of the indicative and potential moods.

And as the use of the pronoun \_thou\_ is now mostly confined to the solemn

style, the terminations of that style are retained in connexion with it,

through all the following examples of the conjugation of verbs. In the

plural number, there is no variation of ending, to denote the different

persons; and the verb in the three persons plural, (with the two exceptions

\_are\_ and \_were\_, from \_am\_ and \_was\_,) is the same as in the first person

singular. Nor does the use of \_you\_ for the singular, warrant its connexion

with any other than the plural form of the verb. This strange and needless

confusion of the numbers, is, in all languages that indulge it, a practical

inconvenience. It would doubtless have been much better, had \_thou\_ and

\_you\_ still kept their respective places--the one, nominative singular--the

other, objective plural--as they appear in the Bible. But as the English

verb is always attended by a noun or a pronoun, expressing the subject of

the affirmation, no ambiguity arises from the want of particular

terminations in the verb, to distinguish the different persons and numbers.

OBS. 4.--Although our language, in its ordinary use, exhibits the verbs in

such forms only, as will make, when put together, but a very simple

conjugation; there is probably no other language on earth, in which it

would be so difficult for a learned grammarian to fix, settle, and exhibit,

to the satisfaction of himself and others, the principles, paradigms,

rules, and exceptions, which are necessary for a full and just exhibition

of this part of speech. This difficulty is owing, partly to

incompatibilities or unsettled boundaries between the solemn and the

familiar style; partly to differences in the same style between ancient

usage and modern; partly to interfering claims of new and old forms of the

preterit and the perfect participle; partly to the conflicting notions of

different grammarians respecting the subjunctive mood; and partly to the

blind tenacity with which many writers adhere to rugged derivatives, and

prefer unutterable contractions to smooth and easy abbreviations. For

example: a clergyman says to a lucky gamester, (1.) "\_You dwell\_ in a house

which \_you\_ neither \_planned\_ nor \_built\_." A member of the Society of

Friends would say, (2.) "\_Thou dwellst\_ in a house which \_thou\_ neither

\_planned\_ nor \_built\_." Or, if not a scholar, as likely as not, (3.) "\_Thee

dwells\_ in a house which \_thee\_ neither \_planned\_ nor \_built\_." The old or

solemn style would b3, (4.) "\_Thou dwellest\_ in a house which \_thou\_

neither \_plannedst\_ nor \_buildedst\_." Some untasteful and overgrammatical

poet will have it, (5.) "\_Thou dwell'st\_ in halls \_thou\_ neither

\_plann'dst\_ nor \_build'dst\_." The doctrine of Murray's Grammar, and of most

others, would require, (6.) "\_Thou dwellest\_ in a house which \_thou\_

neither \_plannedst\_ nor \_builtest\_." Or, (according to this author's method

of avoiding unpleasant sounds,) the more complex form, (7.) "\_Thou dost

dwell\_ in a house which \_thou\_ neither \_didst plan\_ nor \_didst build\_." Out

of these an other poet will make the line, (8.) "\_Dost dwell\_ in halls

which \_thou\_ nor \_plann'dst\_ nor \_built'st\_." An other, more tastefully,

would drop the \_st\_ of the preterit, and contract the present, as in the

second instance above: thus,

(9.) "\_Thou dwellst\_ in halls \_thou\_ neither \_planned\_ nor \_built\_,

And \_revelst\_ there in riches won by guilt."

OBS. 5.--Now let all these nine different forms of saying the same thing,

by the same verbs, in the same mood, and the same two tenses, be

considered. Let it also be noticed, that for these same verbs within these

limits, there are yet other forms, of a complex kind; as, "\_You do dwell\_,"

or, "\_You are dwelling\_;" used in lieu of, "\_Thou dost dwell\_," or, "\_Thou

art dwelling\_:" so, "\_You did plan\_," or, "\_You were planning\_;" used in

lieu of, "\_Thou didst plan\_," or, "\_Thou wast planning\_." Take into the

account the opinion of Dr. Webster and others, that, "\_You was planning\_,"

or, "\_You was building\_," is a still better form for the singular number;

and well "established by national usage, both here and in

England."--\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 25. Add the less inaccurate practice of

some, who use \_was\_ and \_did\_ familiarly with \_thou\_; as, "\_Thou was

planning, did thou build?\_" Multiply all this variety tenfold, with a view

to the other moods and tenses of these three verbs, \_dwell, plan\_, and

\_build\_; then extend the product, whatever it is, from these three common

words, to \_all\_ the verbs in the English language. You will thus begin to

have some idea of the difficulty mentioned in the preceding observation.

But this is only a part of it; for all these things relate only to the

second person singular of the verb. The double question is, Which of these

forms ought to be approved and taught for that person and number? and which

of them ought to be censured and rejected as bad English? This question is

perhaps as important, as any that can arise in English grammar. With a few

candid observations by way of illustration, it will be left to the

judgement of the reader.

OBS. 6.--The history of \_youyouing\_ and \_thoutheeing\_ appears to be this.

Persons in high stations, being usually surrounded by attendants, it

became, many centuries ago, a species of court flattery, to address

individuals of this class, in the plural number, as if a great man were

something more than one person. In this way, the notion of greatness was

agreeably \_multiplied\_, and those who laid claim to such honour, soon began

to think themselves insulted whenever they were addressed with any other

than the plural pronoun.[236] Humbler people yielded through fear of

offence; and the practice extended, in time, to all ranks of society: so

that at present the customary mode of familiar as well as complimentary

address, is altogether plural; both the verb and the pronoun being used in

that form.[237] This practice, which confounds one of the most important

distinctions of the language, affords a striking instance of the power of

fashion. It has made propriety itself \_seem\_ improper. But shall it be

allowed, in the present state of things, to confound our conjugations and

overturn our grammar? Is it right to introduce it into our paradigms, as

the only form of the second person singular, that modern usage

acknowledges? Or is it expedient to augment by it that multiplicity of

other forms, which must either take this same place or be utterly rejected?

With due deference to those grammarians who have adopted one or the other

of these methods, the author of this work answers all these questions

decidedly in the negative. It is not to be denied, that the use of the

plural \_for the singular\_ is now so common as to form the \_customary mode\_

of address to individuals of every rank. The Society of Friends, or

Quakers, however, continue to employ the singular number in familiar

discourse; and custom, which has now destroyed the compliment of the

plural, has removed also the supposed opprobrium of the singular, and

placed it on an equality with the plural in point of respect. The singular

is universally employed in reference to the Supreme Being; and is generally

preferred in poetry. It is the language of Scripture, and of the

Prayer-Book; and is consistently retained in nearly all our grammars;

though not always, perhaps, consistently treated.

OBS. 7.--Whatever is fashionable in speech, the mere disciples of fashion

will always approve; and, probably, they will think it justifiable to

despise or neglect all that is otherwise. These may be contented with the

sole use of such forms of address as, "\_You, you, sir\_;"--"\_You, you,

madam\_." But the literati who so neglect all the services of religion, as

to forget that these are yet conducted in English independently of all this

fashionable youyouing, must needs be poor judges of what belongs to their

own justification, either as grammarians or as moral agents. A fashion by

virtue of which millions of youths are now growing up in ignorance of that

form of address which, in their own tongue, is most appropriate to poetry,

and alone adapted to prayer, is perhaps not quite so light a matter as some

people imagine. It is at least so far from being a good reason for

displacing that form from the paradigms of our verbs in a grammar, that

indeed no better needs be offered for tenaciously retaining it. Many

children may thus learn at school what all should know, and what there is

little chance for them to learn elsewhere. Not all that presume to minister

in religion, are well acquainted with what is called the solemn style. Not

all that presume to explain it in grammars, do know what it is. A late

work, which boasted the patronage of De Witt Clinton, and through the

influence of false praise came nigh to be imposed by a law of New York on

all the common schools of that State; and which, being subsequently sold in

Philadelphia for a great price, was there republished under the name of the

"National School Manual;" gives the following account of this part of

grammar: "In the solemn and poetic styles, the second person singular, in

both the above tenses, is thou; and the second person plural, is ye, \_or

you\_. The verb, to agree with the second person singular, changes its

termination. Thus: 2d person, sing. Pres. Tense, Thou walkest, \_or Thou

walketh\_. Imperfect Tense, Thou walkedst. In the third person singular, \_in

the above styles\_, the verb has sometimes \_a different\_ termination; as,

Present Tense, He, she, or \_it walks\_ or walketh. The \_above form of

inflection\_ may be applied \_to all verbs\_ used in the solemn \_or\_ poetic

\_styles\_; but for ordinary purposes, I have supposed it proper to employ

the form of the verb, adopted in common conversation, as least perplexing

to young minds."--\_Bartlett's Common School Manual\_, Part ii, p. 114. What

can be hoped from an author who is ignorant enough to think "\_Thou

walketh\_" is good English? or from one who tells us, that "\_It walks\_" is

of the solemn style? or from one who does not know that \_you\_ is never a

\_nominative\_ in the style of the Bible?

OBS. 8.--Nowhere on earth is fashion more completely mistress of all the

tastes and usages of society, than in France. Though the common French

Bible still retains the form of the second person singular, which in that

language is shorter and perhaps smoother than the plural; yet even that

sacred book, or at least the New Testament, and that by different persons,

has been translated into more fashionable French, and printed at Paris, and

also at New York, with the form of address everywhere plural; as, "Jesus

anticipated him, saying, 'What \_do you think\_, Simon? of whom do the kings

of the earth take taxes and tribute?'"--\_Matt.\_, xvii, 24. "And, going to

prayers, they said, '0 Lord, \_you who know\_ the hearts of all men, show

which of these two \_you have chosen\_.'"--\_Acts\_, i, 24. This is one step

further in the progress of politeness, than has yet been taken in English.

The French grammarians, however, as far as I can perceive, have never yet

disturbed the ancient order of their conjugations and declensions, by

inserting the plural verb and pronoun in place of the singular; and, in the

familiarity of friendship, or of domestic life, the practice which is

denominated \_tutoyant\_, or \_thoutheeing\_, is far more prevalent in France

than in England. Also, in the prayers of the French, the second person

singular appears to be yet generally preserved, as it is in those of the

English and the Americans. The less frequent use of it in the familiar

conversation of the latter, is very probably owing to the general

impression, that it cannot be used with propriety, except in the solemn

style. Of this matter, those who have laid it aside themselves, cannot with

much modesty pretend to judge for those who have not; or, if they may,

there is still a question how far it is right to lay it aside. The

following lines are a sort of translation from Horace; and I submit it to

the reader, whether it is comely for a Christian divine to be less reverent

toward God, than a heathen poet; and whether the plural language here used,

does not lack the reverence of the original, which is singular:--

"Preserve, Almighty Providence!

Just what \_you gave\_ me, competence."--\_Swift\_.

OBS. 9.--The terms, \_solemn style, familiar style, modern style, ancient

style, legal style, regal style, nautic style, common style\_, and the like,

as used in grammar, imply no certain divisions of the language; but are

designed merely to distinguish, in a general way, the \_occasions\_ on which

some particular forms of expression may be considered proper, or the

\_times\_ to which they belong. For what is grammatical sometimes, may not be

so always. It would not be easy to tell, definitely, in what any one of

these styles consists; because they all belong to one language, and the

number or nature of the peculiarities of each is not precisely fixed. But

whatever is acknowledged to be peculiar to any one, is consequently

understood to be improper for any other: or, at least, the same phraseology

cannot belong to styles of an opposite character; and words of general use

belong to no particular style.[238] For example: "So then it is not of him

that \_willeth\_, nor of him that \_runneth\_, but of God that \_showeth\_

mercy."--\_Rom.\_, ix, 16. If the termination \_eth\_ is not obsolete, as some

say it is, all verbs to which this ending is added, are of the solemn

style; for the common or familiar expression would here be this; "So then

it is not of him that \_wills\_, nor of him that \_runs\_, but of God that

\_shows\_ mercy." Ben Jonson, in his grammar, endeavoured to arrest this

change of \_eth\_ to \_s\_; and, according to Lindley Murray, (\_Octavo Gram.\_,

p. 90,) Addison also injudiciously disapproved it. In spite of all such

objections, however, some future grammarian will probably have to say of

the singular ending \_eth\_, as Lowth and Murray have already said of the

plural \_en\_: "It was laid aside as unnecessary."

OBS. 10.--Of the origin of the personal terminations of English verbs, that

eminent etymologist Dr. Alexander Murray, gives the following account: "The

readers of our modern tongue may be reminded, that the terminations, \_est,

eth\_, and \_s\_, in our verbs, as in \_layest, layeth\_, and \_laid'st\_, or

\_laidest\_; are the faded \_remains of the pronouns\_ which were formerly

joined to the verb itself, and placed the language, in respect of concise

expression, on a level with the Greek, Latin, and Sanscrit, its sister

dialects."--\_History of European Languages\_, Vol. i, p. 52. According to

this, since other signs of the persons and numbers are now employed with

the verb, it is not strange that there should appear a tendency to lay

aside such of these endings as are least agreeable and least necessary. Any

change of this kind will of course occur first in the familiar style. For

example: "Thou \_wentest\_ in to men uncircumcised, and \_didst eat\_ with

them."--\_Acts\_, xi, 3. "These things write I unto thee, that thou \_mayst\_

know how thou \_oughtest\_ to behave thyself in the house of God."--\_1 Tim.\_,

iii, 15. These forms, by universal consent, are now of the solemn style;

and, consequently, are really good English in no other. For nobody, I

suppose, will yet pretend that the inflection of our preterits and

auxiliaries by \_st\_ or \_est\_, is entirely \_obsolete\_;[239] and surely no

person of any literary taste ever uses the foregoing forms familiarly. The

termination \_est\_, however, has \_in some instances\_ become obsolete; or has

faded into \_st\_ or \_t\_, even in the solemn style. Thus, (if indeed, such

forms ever were in good use,) \_diddest\_ has become \_didst; havest, hast;

haddest, hadst; shallest, shalt; willest, wilt\_; and \_cannest, canst.

Mayest, mightest, couldest, wouldest\_, and \_shouldest\_, are occasionally

found in books not ancient; but \_mayst, mightst, couldst, wouldst\_, and

\_shouldst\_, are abundantly more common, and all are peculiar to the solemn

style. \_Must, burst, durst, thrust, blest, curst, past, lost, list, crept,

kept, girt, built, felt, dwelt, left, bereft\_, and many other verbs of

similar endings, are seldom, if ever, found encumbered with an additional

\_est\_. For the rule which requires this ending, has always had many

exceptions that have not been noticed by grammarians.[240] Thus Shakspeare

wrote even in the present tense, "Do as thou \_list\_," and not "Do as thou

\_listest\_." Possibly, however, \_list\_ may here be reckoned of the

subjunctive mood; but the following example from Byron is certainly in the

indicative:--

"And thou, who never yet of human wrong

\_Lost\_ the unbalanced scale, great Nemesis!"--\_Harold\_, C. iv, st. 132.

OBS. 11.--Any phraseology that is really obsolete, is no longer fit to be

imitated even in the solemn style; and what was never good English, is no

more to be respected in that style, than in any other. Thus: "Art not thou

that Egyptian, \_which\_ before these days \_madest\_ an uproar, and \_leddest\_

out into the wilderness four thousand men that were murderers?"--\_Acts\_,

xxi, 38. Here, (I think,) the version ought to be, "Art not thou that

Egyptian, \_who\_ a while ago \_made\_ an uproar, and \_led\_ out into the

wilderness four thousand men, that were murderers?" If so, there is in this

no occasion to make a difference between the solemn and the familiar style.

But what is the familiar form of expression for the texts cited before? The

fashionable will say, it is this: "\_You went\_ in to men uncircumcised, and

\_did eat\_ with them."--"I write these things to \_you\_, that \_you may know\_

how \_you ought\_ to behave \_yourself\_ in the house of God." But this is not

\_literally\_ of the singular number: it is no more singular, than \_vos\_ in

Latin, or \_vous\_ in French, or \_we\_ used for \_I\_ in English, is singular.

And if there remains to us any other form, that is both singular and

grammatical, it is unquestionably the following: "\_Thou went\_ in to men

uncircumcised, and \_did eat\_ with them."--"I write these things to \_thee\_,

that thou \_may know\_ how \_thou ought\_ to behave \_thyself\_ in the house of

God." The acknowledged doctrine of all the teachers of English grammar,

that the inflection of our auxiliaries and preterits by \_st\_ or \_est\_ is

peculiar to "the solemn style," leaves us no other alternative, than either

to grant the propriety of here dropping the suffix for the familiar style,

or to rob our language of any familiar use of the pronoun \_thou\_ forever.

Who, then, are here the neologists, the innovators, the impairers of the

language? And which is the greater \_innovation\_, merely to drop, on

familiar occasions, or \_when it suits our style\_, one obsolescent verbal

termination,--a termination often dropped \_of old\_ as well as now,--or to

strike from the conjugations of all our verbs one sixth part of their

entire scheme?[241]

"O mother myn, that cleaped \_were\_ Argyue,

Wo worth that day that thou me \_bare\_ on lyue."--\_Chaucer\_.

OBS. 12.--The grammatical propriety of distinguishing from the solemn style

both of the forms presented above, must be evident to every one who

considers with candour the reasons, analogies, and authorities, for this

distinction. The support of the latter is very far from resting solely on

the practice of a particular sect; though this, if they would forbear to

corrupt the pronoun while they simplify the verb, would deserve much more

consideration than has ever been allowed it. Which of these modes of

address is the more grammatical, it is useless to dispute; since fashion

rules the one, and a scruple of conscience is sometimes alleged for the

other. A candid critic will consequently allow all to take their choice. It

is enough for him, if he can demonstrate to the candid inquirer, what

phraseology is in any view allowable, and what is for any good reason

reprehensible. That the use of the plural for the singular is

ungrammatical, it is neither discreet nor available to affirm; yet,

surely, it did not originate in any regard to grammar rules. Murray the

schoolmaster, whose English Grammar appeared some years before that of

Lindley Murray, speaks of it as follows: "\_Thou\_, the second person

singular, though \_strictly grammatical\_, is seldom used, except in

addresses to God, in poetry, and by the people called Quakers. In all other

cases, a \_fondness for foreign manners\_,[242] and the power of custom, have

given a sanction to the use of \_you\_, for the second person singular,

though \_contrary to grammar\_,[243] and attended with this particular

inconveniency, that a plural verb must be used to agree with the pronoun in

number, and both applied to a \_single person\_; as, \_you are\_, or \_you

were\_,--not \_you wast\_, or \_you was\_."--\_Third Edition\_, Lond., 1793, p.

34. This author everywhere exhibits the auxiliaries, \_mayst, mightst,

couldst, wouldst\_, and \_shouldst\_, as words of one syllable; and also

observes, in a marginal note, "Some writers begin to say, '\_Thou may, thou

might\_,' &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36. Examples of this are not very uncommon: "Thou

\_shall\_ want ere I want."--\_Old Motto; Scott's Lay\_, Note 1st to Canto 3.

"Thyself the mournful tale \_shall\_ tell."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 20.

"One sole condition would I dare suggest,

That \_thou would save\_ me from my own request."--\_Jane Taylor\_.

OBS. 13.--In respect to the second person singular, the grammar of Lindley

Murray makes no distinction between the solemn and the familiar style;

recognizes in no way the fashionable substitution of \_you\_ for \_thou\_; and,

so far as I perceive, takes it for granted, that every one who pretends to

speak or write grammatically, must always, in addressing an individual,

employ the singular pronoun, and inflect the verb with \_st\_ or \_est\_,

except in the imperative mood and the subjunctive present. This is the more

remarkable, because the author was a valued member of the Society of

Friends; and doubtless his own daily practice contradicted his doctrine, as

palpably as does that of every other member of the Society. And many a

schoolmaster, taking that work for his text-book, or some other as faulty,

is now doing precisely the same thing. But what a teacher is he, who dares

not justify as a grammarian that which he constantly practices as a man!

What a scholar is he, who can be led by a false criticism or a false

custom, to condemn his own usage and that of every body else! What a

casuist is he, who dares pretend conscience for practising that which he

knows and acknowledges to be wrong! If to speak in the second person

singular without inflecting our preterits and auxiliaries, is a censurable

corruption of the language, the Friends have no alternative but to

relinquish their scruple about the application of \_you\_ to one person; for

none but the adult and learned can ever speak after the manner of ancient

books: children and common people can no more be brought to speak agreeably

to any antiquated forms of the English language, than according to the

imperishable models of Greek and Latin. He who traces the history of our

vernacular tongue, will find it has either simplified or entirely dropped

several of its ancient terminations; and that the \_st\_ or \_est\_ of the

second person singular, \_never was adopted\_ in any thing like the extent to

which our modern grammarians have attempted to impose it. "Thus becoming

unused to inflections, we lost the perception of their meaning and

nature."--\_Philological Museum\_, i, 669. "You cannot make a whole people

all at once talk in a different tongue from that which it has been used to

talk in: you cannot force it to unlearn the words it has learnt from its

fathers, in order to learn a set of newfangled words out of [a grammar or]

a dictionary."--\_Ib.\_, i, 650. Nor can you, in this instance, restrain our

poets from transgressing the doctrine of Lowth and Murray:--

"Come, thou pure Light,--which first in Eden \_glowed.\_

And \_threw\_ thy splendor round man's calm abode."--\_Alonzo Lewis\_.

OBS. 14.--That which has passed away from familiar practice, may still be

right in the solemn style, and may there remain till it becomes obsolete.

But no obsolescent termination has ever yet been recalled into the popular

service. This is as true in other languages as in our own: "In almost every

word of the Greek," says a learned author, "we meet with contractions and

abbreviations; but, I believe, the flexions of no language allow of

extension or amplification. In our own we may write \_sleeped\_ or \_slept\_,

as the metre of a line or the rhythm of a period may require; but by no

license may we write \_sleepeed.\_"--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, 4to, p.

107. But, if after contracting \_sleeped\_ into \_slept\_, we add an \_est\_ and

make \_sleptest\_, is there not here an extension of the word from one

syllable to two? Is there not an amplification that is at once novel,

disagreeable, unauthorized, and unnecessary? Nay, even in the regular and

established change, as of \_loved\_ to \_lovedst\_, is there not a syllabic

increase, which is unpleasant to the ear, and unsuited to familiar speech?

Now, to what extent do these questions apply to the verbs in our language?

Lindley Murray, it is presumed, had no conception of that extent; or of the

weight of the objection which is implied in the second. With respect to a

vast number of our most common verbs, he himself never knew, nor does the

greatest grammarian now living know, in what way he ought to form the

simple past tense in the second person singular, otherwise than by the mere

uninflected preterit with the pronoun \_thou\_. Is \_thou sleepedst\_ or \_thou

sleptest, thou leavedst\_ or \_thou leftest, thou feeledst\_ or \_thou feltest,

thou dealedst\_ or \_thou dealtest, thou tossedst\_ or \_thou tostest, thou

losedst\_ or \_thou lostest, thou payedst\_ or \_thou paidest, thou layedst\_ or

\_thou laidest\_, better English than \_thou slept, thou left, thou felt, thou

dealt, thou tossed, thou lost, thou paid, thou laid?\_ And, if so, of the

two forms in each instance, which is the right one? and why? The Bible has

"\_saidst\_" and "\_layedst\_;" Dr. Alexander Murray, "\_laid'st\_" and

"\_laidest!\_" Since the inflection of our preterits has never been orderly,

and is now decaying and waxing old, shall we labour to recall what is so

nearly ready to vanish away?

"Tremendous Sea! what time \_thou lifted\_ up

Thy waves on high, and with thy winds and storms

Strange pastime \_took\_, and \_shook\_ thy mighty sides

Indignantly, the pride of navies fell."--\_Pollok\_, B. vii, l. 611.

OBS. 15.--Whatever difficulty there is in ascertaining the true form of the

preterit itself, not only remains, but is augmented, when \_st\_ or \_est\_ is

to be added for the second person of it. For, since we use sometimes one

and sometimes the other of these endings; (as, said\_st\_, saw\_est\_, bid\_st\_,

knew\_est\_, loved\_st\_, went\_est\_;) there is yet need of some rule to show

which we ought to prefer. The variable formation or orthography of verbs in

the simple past tense, has always been one of the greatest difficulties

that the learners of our language have had to encounter. At present, there

is a strong tendency to terminate as many as we can of them in \_ed\_, which

is the only regular ending. The pronunciation of this ending, however, is

at least threefold; as in \_remembered, repented, relinquished.\_ Here the

added sounds are, first \_d\_, then \_ed\_, then \_t\_; and the effect of adding

\_st\_, whenever the \_ed\_ is sounded like \_t\_, will certainly be a perversion

of what is established as the true pronunciation of the language. For the

solemn and the familiar pronunciation of \_ed\_ unquestionably differ. The

present tendency to a regular orthography, ought rather to be encouraged

than thwarted; but the preferring of \_mixed\_ to \_mixt, whipped\_ to \_whipt,

worked\_ to \_wrought, kneeled\_ to \_knelt\_, and so forth, does not make

\_mixedst, whippedst, workedst, kneeledst\_, and the like, any more fit for

modern English, than are \_mixtest, whiptest, wroughtest, kneltest,

burntest, dweltest, heldest, giltest\_, and many more of the like stamp. And

what can be more absurd than for a grammarian to insist upon forming a

great parcel of these strange and crabbed words for which he can quote no

good authority? Nothing; except it be for a poet or a rhetorician to huddle

together great parcels of consonants which no mortal man can utter,[244]

(as \_lov'dst, lurk'dst, shrugg'dst\_,) and call them "\_words\_." Example:

"The clump of \_subtonick\_ and \_atonick\_ elements at the termination of

\_such words\_ as the following, is frequently, to the no small injury of

articulation, particularly slighted: couldst, wouldst, hadst, prob'st,

\_prob'dst\_, hurl'st, \_hurl'dst\_, arm'st, \_arm'dst\_, want'st, \_want'dst\_,

burn'st, \_burn'dst\_, bark'st, \_bark'dst\_, bubbl'st, \_bubbl'dst, troubbl'st,

troubbl'dst.\_"--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 42. The word \_trouble\_ may

receive the additional sound of \_st\_, but this gentleman does not here

\_spell\_ so accurately as a great author should. Nor did they who penned the

following lines, write here as poets should:--

"Of old thou \_build'st\_ thy throne on righteousness."

--\_Pollok's C. of T.\_, B. vi, l. 638.

"For though thou \_work'dst\_ my mother's ill."

--\_Byron's Parasina\_.

"Thou thyself \_doat'dst\_ on womankind, admiring."

--\_Milton's P. R.\_, B. ii, l. 175.

"But he, the sev'nth from thee, whom thou \_beheldst\_."

--\_Id., P. L.\_, B. xi, l. 700.

"Shall build a wondrous ark, as thou \_beheldst\_."

--\_Id., ib.\_, B. xi, l. 819.

"Thou, who \_inform'd'st\_ this clay with active fire!"

--\_Savage's Poems\_, p. 247.

"Thy valiantness was mine, thou \_suck'dst\_ it from me."

--\_Shak., Coriol.\_, Act iii.

"This cloth thou \_dipp'dst\_ in blood of my sweet boy."

--\_Id., Henry VI\_, P. i.

"Great Queen of arms, whose favour Tydeus won;

As thou \_defend'st\_ the sire, defend the son."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. x, l. 337.

OBS. 16.--Dr. Lowth, whose popular little Grammar was written in or about

1758, made no scruple to hem up both the poets and the Friends at once, by

a criticism which I must needs consider more dogmatical than true; and

which, from the suppression of what is least objectionable in it, has

become, her hands, the source of still greater errors: "\_Thou\_ in the

polite, and even \_in the familiar style, is disused\_, and the plural \_you\_

is employed instead of it; we say, \_you have\_, not \_thou hast.\_ Though in

this case, we apply \_you\_ to a single person, yet the verb too \_must agree

with it in the plural number\_; it must necessarily be, \_you have\_, not \_you

hast.\_ \_You was\_ is an enormous solecism,[245] and yet authors of the first

rank have inadvertently fallen into it. \* \* \* On the contrary, the solemn

style admits not of you for a single person. This \_hath led\_ Mr. Pope into

\_a great impropriety\_ in the beginning of his Messiah:--

'O thou my voice inspire,

Who \_touch'd\_ Isaiah's hallow'd lips with fire!'

The solemnity of the style would not admit of \_you\_ for \_thou\_, in the

pronoun; nor the measure of the verse \_touchedst\_, or \_didst touch\_, in the

verb, as it \_indispensably ought to be\_, in the one or the other of those

two forms; \_you\_, who \_touched\_, or \_thou\_, who \_touchedst\_, or \_didst

touch.\_

'Just of \_thy\_ word, in every thought sincere;

Who \_knew\_ no wish, but what the world might hear.'--Pope.

It ought to be \_your\_ in the first line, or \_knewest\_ in the second. In

order to avoid this \_grammatical inconvenience\_, the two distinct forms of

\_thou\_ and \_you\_, are often used promiscuously by our modern poets, in the

same paragraph, and even in the same sentence, very inelegantly and

improperly:--

'Now, now, I seize, I clasp \_thy\_ charms;

And now \_you burst\_, ah cruel! from my arms.'--Pope."

--\_Lowth's English Gram.\_, p. 34.

OBS. 17.--The points of Dr. Lowth's doctrine which are not sufficiently

true, are the following: First, it is not true, that \_thou\_, in the

familiar style, is \_totally disused\_, and the plural \_you\_ employed

universally in its stead; though Churchill, and others, besides the good

bishop, seem to represent it so. It is now nearly two hundred years since

the rise of the Society of Friends: and, whatever may have been the

practice of others before or since, it is certain, that from their rise to

the present day, there have been, at every point of time, many thousands

who made no use of \_you\_ for \_thou\_; and, but for the clumsy forms which

most grammarians hold to be indispensable to verbs of the second person

singular, the beautiful, distinctive, and poetical words, \_thou, thyself,

thy, thine\_, and \_thee\_, would certainly be in no danger yet of becoming

obsolete. Nor can they, indeed, at any rate, become so, till the fairest

branches of the Christian Church shall wither; or, what should seem no

gracious omen, her bishops and clergy learn to \_pray in the plural number\_,

for fashion's sake. Secondly, it is not true, that, "\_thou\_, who

\_touch'd\_," ought \_indispensably\_ to be, "\_thou\_, who \_touchedst\_, or

\_didst touch\_." It is far better to dispense with the inflection, in such a

case, than either to impose it, or to resort to the plural pronoun. The

"grammatical inconvenience" of dropping the \_st\_ or \_est\_ of a preterit,

even in the solemn style, cannot be great, and may be altogether imaginary;

that of imposing it, except in solemn prose, is not only real, but is often

insuperable. It is not very agreeable, however, to see it added to some

verbs, and dropped from others, in the same sentence: as,

"Thou, who \_didst call\_ the Furies from the abyss,

And round Orestes \_bade\_ them howl and hiss."

--\_Byron's Childe Harold\_, Canto iv, st. 132.

"Thou \_satt'st\_ from age to age insatiate,

And \_drank\_ the blood of men, and \_gorged\_ their flesh."

--\_Pollok's Course of Time\_, B. vii, l. 700.

OBS. 18.--We see then, that, according to Dr. Lowth and others, \_the only

good English\_ in which one can address an individual on any ordinary

occasion, is \_you\_ with a plural verb; and that, according to Lindley

Murray and others, \_the only good English\_ for the same purpose, is \_thou\_

with a verb inflected with \_st\_ or \_est\_. Both parties to this pointed

contradiction, are more or less in the wrong. The respect of the Friends

for those systems of grammar which deny them the familiar use of the

pronoun \_thou\_, is certainly not more remarkable, than the respect of the

world for those which condemn the substitution of the plural \_you\_. Let

grammar be a true record of existing facts, and all such contradictions

must vanish. And, certainly, these great masters here contradict each

other, in what every one who reads English, ought to know. They agree,

however, in requiring, as indispensable to grammar, what is not only

inconvenient, but absolutely impossible. For what "the measure of verse

\_will not admit\_," cannot be used in poetry; and what may possibly be

crowded into it, will often be far from ornamental. Yet our youth have been

taught to spoil the versification of Pope and others, after the following

manner: "Who \_touch'd\_ Isaiah's hallow'd lips with fire." Say, "Who

\_touchedst\_ or \_didst touch\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 180. "For thee that

ever \_felt\_ another's wo." Say, "\_Didst feel\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Who \_knew\_ no wish

but what the world might hear." Say, "Who \_knewest\_ or \_didst

know\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Who all my sense \_confin'd\_." Say, "\_Confinedst\_ or \_didst

confine\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 186. "Yet \_gave\_ me in this dark estate." Say,

"\_Gavedst\_ or \_didst give\_."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Left\_ free the human will."--\_Pope\_.

Murray's criticism extends not to this line, but by the analogy we must

say, "\_Leavedst\_ or \_leftest\_." Now it would be easier to fill a volume

with such quotations, and such corrections, than to find sufficient

authority to prove one such word as \_gavedst, leavedst\_, or \_leftest\_, to

be really good English. If Lord Byron is authority for "\_work'dst\_," he is

authority also for dropping the \_st\_, even where it might be added:--

----"Thou, who with thy frown

\_Annihilated\_ senates."

--\_Childe Harold's Pilgrimage\_, Canto iv, st. 83.

OBS. 19.--According to Dr. Lowth, as well as Coar and some others, those

preterits in which \_ed\_ is sounded like \_t\_, "admit the change of \_ed\_ into

\_t\_; as, \_snacht, checkt, snapt, mixt\_, dropping also one of the double

letters, \_dwelt, past\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 46. If this principle were

generally adopted, the number of our regular verbs would be greatly

diminished, and irregularities would be indefinitely increased. What

confusion the practice must make in the language, especially when we come

to inflect this part of the verb with \_st\_ or \_est\_, has already been

suggested. Yet an ingenious and learned writer, an able contributor to the

Philological Museum, published at Cambridge, England, in 1832; tracing the

history of this class of derivatives, and finding that after the \_ed\_ was

contracted in pronunciation, several eminent writers, as Spenser, Milton,

and others, adopted in most instances a contracted form of orthography; has

seriously endeavoured to bring us back to their practice. From these

authors, he cites an abundance of such contractions as the following: 1.

"Stowd, hewd, subdewd, joyd, cald, expeld, compeld, spoild, kild, seemd,

benumbd, armd, redeemd, staind, shund, paynd, stird, appeard, perceivd,

resolvd, obeyd, equald, foyld, hurld, ruind, joynd, scatterd, witherd," and

others ending in \_d\_. 2. "Clapt, whipt, worshipt, lopt, stopt, stampt,

pickt, knockt, linkt, puft, stuft, hist, kist, abasht, brusht, astonisht,

vanquisht, confest, talkt, twicht," and many others ending in \_t\_. This

scheme divides our regular verbs into three classes; leaving but very few

of them to be written as they now are. It proceeds upon the principle of

accommodating our orthography to the familiar, rather than to the solemn

pronunciation of the language. "This," as Dr. Johnson observes, "is to

measure by a shadow." It is, whatever show of learning or authority may

support it, a pernicious innovation. The critic says, "I have not ventured

to follow the example of Spenser and Milton throughout, but have merely

attempted to revive the old form of the preterit in \_t\_."--\_Phil. Museum\_,

Vol. i, p. 663. "We ought not however to stop here," he thinks; and

suggests that it would be no small improvement, "to write \_leveld\_ for

\_levelled, enameld\_ for \_enamelled, reformd\_ for \_reformed\_," &c.

OBS. 20.--If the multiplication of irregular preterits, as above described,

is a grammatical error of great magnitude; the forcing of our old and

well-known irregular verbs into regular forms that are seldom if ever used,

is an opposite error nearly as great. And, in either case, there is the

same embarrassment respecting the formation of the second person. Thus

\_Cobbett\_, in his English Grammar in a Series of Letters, has dogmatically

given us a list of \_seventy\_ verbs, which, he says, are, "by some persons,

\_erroneously deemed irregular\_;" and has included in it the words, \_blow,

build, cast, cling, creep, freeze, draw, throw\_, and the like, to the

number of \_sixty\_; so that he is really right in no more than one seventh

part of his catalogue. And, what is more strange, for several of the

irregularities which he censures, his own authority may be quoted from the

early editions of this very book: as, "For you could have \_thrown\_ about

seeds."--Edition of 1818, p. 13. "For you could have \_throwed\_ about

seeds."--Edition of 1832, p. 13. "A tree is \_blown\_ down."--Ed. of 1818, p.

27. "A tree is \_blowed\_ down."--Ed. of 1832, p. 25. "It \_froze\_ hard last

night. Now, what was it that \_froze\_ so hard?"--Ed. of 1818, p. 38. "It

\_freezed\_ hard last night. Now, what was it that \_freezed\_ so hard?"--Ed.

of 1832, p. 35. A whole page of such contradictions may be quoted from this

one grammarian, showing that \_he did not know\_ what form of the preterit he

ought to prefer. From such an instructor, who can find out what is good

English, and what is not? Respecting the inflections of the verb, this

author says, "There are three persons; \_but, our verbs have no variation in

their spelling, except for the third person singular\_."--\_Cobbett's E.

Gram.\_, ¶ 88. Again: "Observe, however, that, in our language, there is no

very great use in this distinction of modes; because, for the most part,

our little \_signs\_ do the business, and \_they never vary in the letters of

which they are composed\_."--\_Ib.\_, ¶ 95. One would suppose, from these

remarks, that Cobbett meant to dismiss the pronoun \_thou\_ entirely from his

conjugations. Not so at all. In direct contradiction to himself, he

proceeds to inflect the verb as follows: "I work, \_Thou workest\_, He works;

&c. I worked, \_Thou workedst\_, He worked; &c. I shall or will work, \_Thou

shalt or wilt work\_, He shall or will work;" &c.--\_Ib.\_, ¶ 98. All the

\_compound\_ tenses, except the future, he rejects, as things which "can only

serve to fill up a book."

OBS. 21.--It is a common but erroneous opinion of our grammarians, that the

unsyllabic suffix \_st\_, wherever found, is a modern contraction of the

syllable \_est\_. No writer, however, thinks it always necessary to remind

his readers of this, by inserting the sign of contraction; though English

books are not a little disfigured by questionable apostrophes inserted for

no other reason. Dr. Lowth says, "The nature of our language, the accent

and pronunciation of it, inclines [incline] us to contract even all our

regular verbs: thus \_loved, turned\_, are commonly pronounced in one

syllable \_lov'd, turn'd\_: and the second person, which was originally in

three syllables, \_lovedest, turnedest\_, is [say \_has\_] now become a

dissyllable, \_lovedst, turnedst\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 45; \_Hiley's\_, 45;

\_Churchill's\_, 104. See also \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 114; and \_Coar's\_, p.

102. This latter doctrine, with all its vouchers, still needs confirmation.

What is it but an idle conjecture? If it were \_true\_, a few quotations

might easily prove it; but when, and by whom, have any such words as

\_lovedest, turnedest\_, ever been used? For aught I see, the simple \_st\_ is

as complete and as old a termination for the second person singular of an

English verb, as \_est\_; indeed, it appears to be \_older\_: and, for the

preterit, it is, and (I believe) \_always has been\_, the \_most\_ regular, if

not the \_only\_ regular, addition. If \_sufferedest, woundedest\_, and

\_killedest\_, are words more regular than \_sufferedst, woundedst, killedst\_,

then are \_heardest, knewest, slewest, sawest, rannest, metest, swammest\_,

and the like, more regular than \_heardst, knewst, slewst, sawst, ranst,

metst, swamst, satst, saidst, ledst, fledst, toldst\_, and so forth; but not

otherwise.[246] So, in the solemn style, we write \_seemest, deemest,

swimmest\_, like \_seemeth, deemeth, swimmeth\_, and so forth; but, when we

use the form which has no increase of syllables, why is an apostrophe more

necessary in the second person, than in the third?--in \_seemst, deemst,

swimst\_, than in \_seems, deems, swims\_? When final \_e\_ is dropped from the

verb, the case is different; as,

"Thou \_cutst\_ my head off with a golden axe,

And \_smil'st\_ upon the stroke that murders me."--\_Shakspeare\_.

OBS. 22.--Dr. Lowth supposes the verbal termination \_s\_ or \_es\_ to have

come from a contraction of \_eth\_. He says, "Sometimes, by the rapidity of

our pronunciation, the vowels are shortened or lost; and the consonants,

which are thrown together, do not coalesce with one another, and are

therefore changed into others of the same organ, or of a kindred species.

This occasions a farther deviation from \_the regular form\_: thus, \_loveth,

turneth\_, are contracted into \_lov'th, turn'th\_, and these, for easier

pronunciation, \_immediately\_ become \_loves, turns\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p.

46; \_Hiley's\_, 45. This etymology may possibly be just, but certainly such

contractions as are here spoken of, were not very common in Lowth's age, or

even in that of Ben Jonson, who resisted the \_s\_. Nor is the sound of sharp

\_th\_ very obviously akin to flat \_s\_. The change would have been less

violent, if \_lov'st\_ and \_turnst\_ had become \_loves\_ and \_turns\_; as some

people nowadays are apt to change them, though doubtless this is a

grammatical error: as,

"And wheresoe'er thou \_casts\_ thy view."

--\_Cowley\_.

"Nor thou that \_flings\_ me floundering from thy back."

--\_Bat. of Frogs and Mice\_, 1,123.

"Thou \_sitt'st\_ on high, and \_measures\_ destinies."

--\_Pollok, Course of Time\_, B. vi, 1, 668.

OBS. 23.--Possibly, those personal terminations of the verb which do not

form syllables, are mere contractions or relics of \_est\_ and \_eth\_, which

are syllables; but it is perhaps not quite so easy to prove them so, as

some authors imagine. In the oldest specimens given by Dr. Johnson in his

History of the English Language,--specimens bearing a much earlier date

than the English language can claim,--even in what he calls "Saxon in its

highest state of purity," both \_st\_ and \_th\_ are often added to verbs,

without forming additional syllables, and without any sign of contraction.

Nor were verbs of the second person singular always inflected of old, in

those parts to which \_est\_ was afterwards very commonly added. Examples:

"Buton ic wat thæt thu \_hoefst\_ thara wæpna."--\_King Alfred\_. "But I know

that thou \_hast\_ those weapons." "Thæt thu \_oncnawe\_ thara worda

sothfæstnesse. of tham the thu \_geloered eart\_."--\_Lucæ\_, i, 4. "That thou

\_mightest know\_ the certainty of those things wherein thou \_hast been

instructed\_."--\_Luke\_, i, 4. "And thu \_nemst\_ his naman Johannes."--\_Lucæ\_,

i, 13. "And his name \_schal be clepid\_ Jon."--\_Wickliffe's Version\_. "And

thou \_shalt call\_ his name John."--\_Luke\_, i, 13. "And he ne \_drincth\_ win

ne beor."--\_Lucæ\_, i, 15. "He \_schal\_ not \_drinke\_ wyn ne

sydyr."--\_Wickliffe\_. "And \_shall drink\_ neither wine nor strong

drink."--\_Luke\_, i, 15. "And nu thu \_bist\_ suwigende. and thu \_sprecan\_ ne

\_miht\_ oth thone dæg the thas thing \_gewurthath\_. fortham thu minum wordum

ne \_gelyfdest\_. tha \_beoth\_ on hyra timan \_gefyllede\_."--\_Lucæ\_, i, 20.

"And lo, thou \_schalt\_ be doumbe, and thou \_schalt\_ not mowe \_speke\_, til

into the day in which these thingis \_schulen be don\_, for thou \_hast\_ not

\_beleved\_ to my wordis, whiche \_schulen be fulfild\_ in her

tyme."--\_Wickliffe\_. "And, behold, thou \_shalt\_ be dumb, and not able to

speak, until the day \_that\_[247] these things \_shall be performed\_, because

thou \_believest\_ not my words, which \_shall be fulfilled\_ in their

season."--\_Luke\_, i, 20.

"In chaungyng of her course, the chaunge \_shewth\_ this,

Vp \_startth\_ a knaue, and downe there \_falth\_ a knight."

--\_Sir Thomas More\_.

OBS. 24.--The corollary towards which the foregoing observations are

directed, is this. As most of the peculiar terminations by which the second

person singular is properly distinguished in the solemn style, are not only

difficult of utterance, but are quaint and formal in conversation; the

preterits and auxiliaries of our verbs are seldom varied in familiar

discourse, and the present is generally simplified by contraction, or by

the adding of \_st\_ without increase of syllables. A distinction between the

solemn and the familiar style has long been admitted, in the pronunciation

of the termination \_ed\_, and in the ending of the verb in the third person

singular; and it is evidently according to good taste and the best usage,

to admit such a distinction in the second person singular. In the familiar

use of the second person singular, the verb is usually varied only in the

present tense of the indicative mood, and in the auxiliary \_hast\_ of the

perfect. This method of varying the verb renders the second person singular

analogous to the third, and accords with the practice of the most

intelligent of those who retain the common use of this distinctive and

consistent mode of address. It disencumbers their familiar dialect of a

multitude of harsh and useless terminations, which serve only, when

uttered, to give an uncouth prominency to words not often emphatic; and,

without impairing the strength or perspicuity of the language, increases

its harmony, and reduces the form of the verb in the second person singular

nearly to the same simplicity as in the other persons and numbers. It may

serve also, in some instances, to justify the poets, in those abbreviations

for which they have been so unreasonably censured by Lowth, Murray, and

some other grammarians: as,

"And thou their natures \_knowst\_, and \_gave\_ them names,

Needless to thee repeated."--\_Milton\_, P. L., Book vii, line 494.

OBS. 25.--The writings of the Friends, being mostly of a grave cast, afford

but few examples of their customary manner of forming the verb in connexion

with the pronoun \_thou\_, in familiar discourse. The following may serve to

illustrate it: "Suitable to the office thou \_layst\_ claim to."--R.

BARCLAY'S \_Works\_, Vol. i, p. 27. "Notwithstanding thou \_may have\_

sentiments opposite to mine."--THOMAS STORY. "To devote all thou \_had\_ to

his service;"--"If thou \_should come\_;"--"What thou \_said\_;"--"Thou kindly

\_contributed\_;"--"The epistle which thou \_sent\_ me;"--"Thou \_would\_ perhaps

\_allow\_;"--"If thou \_submitted\_;"--"Since thou \_left\_;"--"\_Should\_ thou

\_act\_;"--"Thou \_may be\_ ready;"--"That thou \_had met\_;"--"That thou \_had

intimated\_;"--"Before thou \_puts\_" [putst];--"What thou \_meets\_"

[meetst];--"If thou \_had made\_;"--"I observed thou \_was\_;"--"That thou

\_might put\_ thy trust;"--"Thou \_had been\_ at my house."--JOHN KENDALL.

"Thou \_may be plundered\_;"--"That thou \_may feel\_;"--"Though thou \_waited\_

long, and \_sought\_ him;"--"I hope thou \_will bear\_ my style;"--"Thou also

\_knows\_" [knowst];--"Thou \_grew\_ up;"--"I wish thou \_would\_ yet \_take\_ my

counsel."--STEPHEN CRISP. "Thou \_manifested\_ thy tender regard, \_stretched\_

forth thy delivering hand, and \_fed\_ and \_sustained\_ us."--SAMUEL

FOTHERGILL. The writer has met with thousands that used the second person

singular in conversation, but never with any one that employed, on ordinary

occasions, all the regular endings of the solemn style. The simplification

of the second person singular, which, to a greater or less extent, is

everywhere adopted by the Friends, and which is here defined and explained,

removes from each verb eighteen of these peculiar terminations; and, (if

the number of English verbs be, as stated by several grammarians, 8000,)

disburdens their familiar dialect of 144,000 of these awkward and useless

appendages.[248] This simplification is supported by usage as extensive as

the familiar use of the pronoun \_thou\_; and is also in accordance with the

canons of criticism: "The \_first\_ canon on this subject is, All words and

phrases which are remarkably harsh and unharmonious, and not absolutely

necessary, should be rejected." See \_Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, B.

ii, Ch. ii, Sec. 2, Canon Sixth, p. 181. See also, in the same work, (B.

hi, Ch. iv, Sec. 2d,) an \_express defence\_ of "those elisions whereby the

sound is improved;" especially of the suppression of the "feeble vowel in

the last syllable of the preterits of our regular verbs;" and of "such

abbreviations" as "the eagerness of conveying one's sentiments, the

rapidity and ease of utterance, necessarily produce, in the dialect of

conversation."--Pages 426 and 427. Lord Kames says, "That the English

tongue, originally harsh, is at present much softened by dropping many

\_redundant consonants\_, is undoubtedly true; that it is not capable of

being further mellowed without suffering in its force and energy, will

scarce be thought by any one who possesses an ear."--\_Elements of

Criticism\_, Vol. ii, p. 12.

OBS. 26.--The following examples are from a letter of an African Prince,

translated by Dr. Desaguillier of Cambridge, England, in 1743, and

published in a London newspaper: "I lie there too upon the bed \_thou

presented\_ me;"--"After \_thou\_ left me, in thy swimming house;"--"Those

good things \_thou presented\_ me;"--"When \_thou spake\_ to the Great Spirit

and his Son." If it is desirable that our language should retain this power

of a simple literal version of what in others may be familiarly expressed

by the second person singular, it is clear that our grammarians must not

continue to dogmatize according to the letter of some authors hitherto

popular. But not every popular grammar condemns such phraseology as the

foregoing. "I improved, Thou \_improvedst\_, &c. This termination of the

second person preterit, on account of its harshness, \_is seldom used\_, and

especially in the irregular verbs."--\_Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 26. "The

termination \_est\_, annexed to the preter tenses of verbs, is, at best, a

very harsh one, when it is contracted, according to our general custom of

throwing out the \_e\_; as \_learnedst\_, for \_learnedest\_; and especially, if

it be again contracted into one syllable, \_as it is commonly pronounced\_,

and made \_learndst.\_ \* \* \* I believe a writer or speaker would have

recourse to any periphrasis rather than say \_keptest\_, or \_keptst\_. \* \* \*

Indeed this harsh termination \_est\_ is \_generally quite dropped in common

conversation\_, and sometimes by the poets, in writing."--\_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 115. The fact is, it never was added with much uniformity.

Examples: "But like the hell hounde \_thou waxed\_ fall furious, expressing

thy malice when \_thou\_ to honour \_stied\_."--FABIAN'S CHRONICLE, V. ii, p.

522: in \_Tooke's Divers.\_, T. ii, p. 232.

"Thou from the arctic regions came. Perhaps

Thou noticed on thy way a little orb,

Attended by one moon--her lamp by night."

--\_Pollok\_, B. ii, l. 5.

"'So I believ'd.'--No, Abel! to thy grief,

So thou \_relinquish'd\_ all that was belief."

--\_Crabbe, Borough\_, p. 279.

OBS. 27.--L. Murray, and his numerous copyists, Ingersoll, Greenleaf,

Kirkham, Fisk, Flint, Comly, Alger, and the rest; though they insist on it,

that the \_st\_ of the second person can never be dispensed with, except in

the imperative mood and some parts of the subjunctive; are not altogether

insensible of that monstrous harshness which their doctrine imposes upon

the language. Some of them tell us to avoid this by preferring the

auxiliaries \_dost\_ and \_didst\_: as \_dost burst\_, for \_burstest; didst

check\_, for \_checkedst.\_ This recommendation proceeds on the supposition

that \_dost\_ and \_didst\_ are smoother syllables than \_est\_ and \_edst\_; which

is not true: \_didst learn\_ is harsher than either \_learnedst\_ or

\_learntest\_; and all three of them are intolerable in common discourse. Nor

is the "\_energy\_, or \_positiveness\_," which grammarians ascribe to these

auxiliaries, always appropriate. Except in a question, \_dost\_ and \_didst\_,

like \_do, does\_, and \_did\_, are usually signs of \_emphasis\_; and therefore

unfit to be substituted for the \_st, est\_, or \_edst\_, of an unemphatic

verb. Kirkham, who, as we have seen, graces his Elocution with such

unutterable things, as "\_prob'dst, hurl'dst, arm'dst, want'dst, burn'dst,

bark'dst, bubbl'dst, troubbl'dst\_," attributes the use of the plural for

the singular, to a design of avoiding the raggedness of the latter. "In

order to avoid the disagreeable harshness of sound, occasioned by the

frequent recurrence of the termination \_est, edst\_, in the adaptation of

our verbs to the nominative \_thou\_, a \_modern innovation\_ which substitutes

\_you\_ for \_thou\_, in familiar style, has generally been adopted. This

innovation contributes greatly to the harmony of our colloquial style.

\_You\_ was formerly restricted to the plural number; but now it is employed

to represent either a singular or a plural noun."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

99. A modern innovation, forsooth! Does not every body know it was current

four hundred years ago, or more? Certainly, both \_ye\_ and \_you\_ were

applied in this manner, to the great, as early as the fourteenth century.

Chaucer sometimes used them so, and he died in 1400. Sir T. More uses them

so, in a piece dated 1503.

"O dere cosyn, Dan Johan, she sayde,

What eyleth \_you\_ so rathe to aryse?"--\_Chaucer\_.

Shakspeare most commonly uses \_thou\_, but he sometimes has \_you\_ in stead

of it. Thus, he makes Portia say to Brutus:

"\_You\_ suddenly arose, and walk'd about,

Musing, and sighing, with \_your\_ arms across;

And when I ask'd \_you\_ what the matter was,

\_You\_ star'd upon me with ungentle looks."--\_J. Cæsar\_, Act ii, Sc. 2.

OBS. 28.--"There is a natural tendency in all languages to throw out the

rugged parts which improper consonants produce, and to preserve those which

are melodious and agreeable to the ear."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p.

29. "The English tongue, so remarkable for its grammatical simplicity, is

loaded with a great variety of dull unmeaning terminations. Mr. Sheridan

attributes this defect, to an utter inattention to what is easy to the

organs of speech and agreeable to the ear; and further adds, that, 'the

French having been adopted as the language of the court, no notice was

taken, of the spelling or pronunciation of our words, until the reign of

queen Anne.' So little was spelling attended to in the time of Elizabeth,

that Dr. Johnson informs us, that on referring to Shakspeare's will, to

determine how his name was spelt, he was found to have written it himself

[in] no \_less\_ [fewer] than three different ways."--\_Ib.\_, p. 477. In old

books, our participial or verbal termination \_ed\_, is found written in

about a dozen different ways; as, \_ed, de, d, t, id, it, yd, yt, ede, od,

ud\_. For \_est\_ and \_eth\_, we find sometimes the consonants only; sometimes,

\_ist\_ or \_yst, ith\_ or \_yth\_; sometimes, for the latter, \_oth\_ or \_ath\_;

and sometimes the ending was omitted altogether. In early times also the

\_th\_ was an ending for verbs of the third person plural, as well as for

those of the third person singular;[249] and, in the imperative mood, it

was applied to the second person, both singular and plural: as,

"\_Demith\_ thyself, that demist other's dede;

And trouthe the shall deliver, it's no drede."--\_Chaucer\_.

OBS. 29.--It must be obvious to every one who has much acquaintance with

the history of our language, that this part of its grammar has always been

quite as unsettled as it is now; and, however we may wish to establish its

principles, it is idle to teach for absolute certainty that which every

man's knowledge may confute. Let those who desire to see our forms of

conjugation as sure as those of other tongues, study to exemplify in their

own practice what tends to uniformity. The best that can be done by the

author of a grammar, is, to exhibit usage, as it has been, and as it is;

pointing out to the learner what is most fashionable, as well as what is

most orderly and agreeable. If by these means the usage of writers and

speakers cannot be fixed to what is fittest for their occasions, and

therefore most grammatical, there is in grammar no remedy for their

inaccuracies; as there is none for the blunders of dull opinionists, none

for the absurdities of Ignorance stalled in the seats of Learning. Some

grammarians say, that, whenever the preterit of an irregular verb is like

the present, it should take \_edst\_ for the second person singular. This

rule, (which is adopted by Walker, in his Principles, No. 372,) gives us

such words as \_cast-edst, cost-edst, bid-dedst, burst-edst, cut-tedst,

hit-tedst, let-tedst, put-tedst, hurt-edst, rid-dedst, shed-dedst\_, &c. But

the rule is groundless. The few examples which may be adduced from ancient

writings, in support of this principle, are undoubtedly formed in the usual

manner from regular preterits now obsolete; and if this were not the case,

no person of taste could think of employing, on any occasion, derivatives

so uncouth. Dr. Johnson has justly remarked, that "the chief defect of our

language, is ruggedness and asperity." And this defect, as some of the

foregoing remarks have shown, is peculiarly obvious, when even the regular

termination of the second person singular is added to our preterits.

Accordingly, we find numerous instances among the poets, both ancient and

modern, in which that termination is omitted. See Percy's Reliques of

Ancient Poetry, everywhere.

"Thou, who of old the prophet's eye \_unsealed\_."--\_Pollok\_.

"Thou \_saw\_ the fields laid bare and waste."--\_Burns\_.[250]

OBS. 30.--With the familiar form of the second person singular, those who

constantly put \_you\_ for \_thou\_ can have no concern; and many may think it

unworthy of notice, because Murray has said nothing about it: others will

hastily pronounce it bad English, because they have learned at school some

scheme of the verb, which implies that this must needs be wrong. It is this

partial learning which makes so much explanation here necessary. The

formation of this part of speech, form it as you will, is \_central to

grammar\_, and cannot but be very important. Our language can never entirely

drop the pronoun \_thou\_, and its derivatives, \_thy, thine, thee, thyself\_,

without great injury, especially to its poetry. Nor can the distinct

syllabic utterance of the termination \_ed\_ be now generally practised,

except in solemn prose. It is therefore better, not to insist on those old

verbal forms against which there are so many objections, than to exclude

the pronoun of the second person singular from all such usage, whether

familiar or poetical, as will not admit them. It is true that on most

occasions \_you\_ may be substituted for \_thou\_, without much inconvenience;

and so may \_we\_ be substituted for \_I\_, with just as much propriety; though

Dr. Perley thinks the latter usage "is not to be encouraged."--\_Gram.\_, p.

28. Our authors and editors, like kings and emperors, are making \_we\_ for

\_I\_ their most common mode of expression. They renounce their individuality

to avoid egotism. And when all men shall have adopted this enallage, the

fault indeed will be banished, or metamorphosed, but with it will go an

other sixth part of every English conjugation. The pronouns in the

following couplet are put for the first person singular, the second person

singular, and the second person plural; yet nobody will understand them so,

but by their antecedents:

"Right trusty, and so forth--\_we\_ let \_you\_ to know

\_We\_ are very ill used by \_you mortals\_ below."--\_Swift.\_

OBS. 31.--It is remarkable that some, who forbear to use the plural for the

singular in the second person, adopt it without scruple, in the first. The

figure is the same in both; and in both, sufficiently common. Neither

practice is worthy to be made more general than it now is. If \_thou\_ should

not be totally sacrificed to what was once a vain compliment, neither

should \_I\_, to what is now an occasional, and perhaps a vain assumption.

Lindley Murray, who does not appear to have used \_you\_ for \_thou\_, and who

was sometimes singularly careful to periphrase [sic--KTH] and avoid the

latter, nowhere in his grammar speaks of himself in the first person

singular. He is often "the \_Compiler\_;" rarely, "the \_Author\_;" generally,

"We:" as, "\_We\_ have distributed these parts of grammar, in the mode which

\_we\_ think most correct and intelligible."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 58. "\_We\_

shall not pursue this subject any further."--\_Ib.\_, p. 62. "\_We\_ shall

close these remarks on the tenses."--\_Ib.\_, p. 76. "\_We\_ presume no solid

objection can be made."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "The observations which \_we\_ have

made."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "\_We\_ shall produce a remarkable example of this

beauty from Milton."--\_Ib.\_, p. 331. "\_We\_ have now given sufficient

openings into this subject."--\_Ib.\_, p. 334. This usage has authority

enough; for it was not uncommon even among the old Latin grammarians; but

he must be a slender scholar, who thinks the pronoun \_we\_ thereby becomes

\_singular.\_ What advantage or fitness there is in thus putting \_we\_ for

\_I\_, the reader may judge. Dr. Blair did not hesitate to use \_I\_, as often

as ho had occasion; neither did Lowth, or Johnson, or Walker, or Webster:

as, "\_I\_ shall produce a remarkable example of this beauty from

Milton."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 129. "\_I\_ have now given sufficient openings

into this subject."--\_Ib.\_, p. 131. So in Lowth's Preface: "\_I\_

believe,"--"\_I\_ am persuaded,"--"\_I\_ am sure,"--"\_I\_ think,"--"\_I\_ am

afraid,"--"\_I\_ will not take upon \_me\_ to say."

OBS. 32.--Intending to be critical without hostility, and explicit without

partiality, I write not for or against any sect, or any man; but to teach

all who desire to know \_the grammar\_ of our tongue. The student must

distinctly understand, that it is necessary to speak and write differently,

according to the different circumstances or occasions of writing. Who is he

that will pretend that the solemn style of the Bible may be used in

familiar discourse, without a mouthing affectation? In preaching, or in

praying, the ancient terminations of \_est\_ for the second person singular

and \_eth\_ for the third, as well as \_ed\_ pronounced as a separate syllable

for the preterit, are admitted to be generally in better taste than the

smoother forms of the familiar style: because the latter, though now

frequently heard in religious assemblies, are not so well suited to the

dignity and gravity of a sermon or a prayer. In grave poetry also,

especially when it treats of scriptural subjects, to which \_you\_ put for

\_thou\_ is obviously unsuitable, the personal terminations of the verb,

though from the earliest times to the present day they have usually been

contracted and often omitted by the poets, ought still perhaps to be

considered grammatically necessary, whenever they can be uttered, agreeably

to the notion of our tuneless critics. The critical objection to their

elision, however, can have no very firm foundation while it is admitted by

some of the objectors themselves, that, "Writers \_generally\_ have recourse

to this mode of expression, that they may avoid harsh terminations."--

\_Irving's Elements of English Composition\_, p. 12. But if writers of good

authority, such as Pope, Byron, and Pollok, have sometimes had recourse to

this method of simplifying the verb, even in compositions of a grave cast,

the elision may, with tenfold stronger reason, be admitted in familiar

writing or discourse, on the authority of general custom among those who

choose to employ the pronoun \_thou\_ in conversation.

"But thou, false Arcite, never \_shall\_ obtain," &c.

--\_Dryden, Fables\_.

"These goods \_thyself can\_ on thyself bestow."

--\_Id., in Joh. Dict.\_

"What I show, \_thy self may\_ freely on thyself bestow."

--\_Id., Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 26.

"That thou \_might\_ Fortune to thy side engage."

--\_Prior\_.

"Of all thou ever \_conquered\_, none was left."

--\_Pollok\_, B. vii, l. 760.

"And touch me trembling, as thou \_touched\_ the man," &c.

--\_Id.\_, B. x, l. 60.

OBS. 33.--Some of the Friends (perhaps from an idea that it is less formal)

misemploy \_thee\_ for \_thou\_; and often join it to the third person of the

verb in stead of the second. Such expressions as, \_thee does, thee is, thee

has, thee thinks\_, &c., are double solecisms; they set all grammar at

defiance. Again, many persons who are not ignorant of grammar, and who

employ the pronoun aright, sometimes improperly sacrifice concord to a

slight improvement in sound, and give to the verb the ending of the third

person, for that of the second. Three or four instances of this, occur in

the examples which have been already quoted. See also the following, and

many more, in the works of the poet Burns; who says of himself, "Though it

cost the schoolmaster some thrashings, I made an excellent English scholar;

and, by the time I was ten or eleven years of age, I was a critic in

substantives, VERBS, and particles:"--"But when thou \_pours\_;"--"There thou

\_shines\_ chief;"--"Thou \_clears\_ the head;"--"Thou \_strings\_ the

nerves;"--"Thou \_brightens\_ black despair;"--"Thou \_comes\_;"--"Thou

\_travels\_ far;"--"Now \_thou's turned\_ out;"--"Unseen thou \_lurks\_;"--"O

thou pale orb that silent \_shines\_." This mode of simplifying the verb,

confounds the persons; and, as it has little advantage in sound, over the

regular contracted form of the second person, it ought to be avoided. With

this author it may be, perhaps, a Scotticism: as,

"Thou \_paints\_ auld nature to the nines,

In thy sweet Caledonian lines."--\_Burns to Ramsay\_.

"Thou \_paintst old\_ nature," would be about as smooth poetry, and certainly

much better English. This confounding of the persons of the verb, however,

is no modern peculiarity. It appears to be about as old as the use of \_s\_

for \_th\_ or \_eth\_. Spenser, the great English poet of the sixteenth

century, may be cited in proof: as,

"Siker, \_thou's\_ but a lazy loord,

And \_rekes\_ much of thy swinke."--\_Joh. Dict., w. Loord\_.

OBS. 34.--In the solemn style, (except in poetry, which usually contracts

these forms,) the second person singular of the present indicative, and

that of the irregular preterits, commonly end in \_est\_, pronounced as a

separate syllable, and requiring the duplication of the final consonant,

according to Rule 3d for Spelling: as, I \_run\_, thou \_runnest\_; I \_ran\_,

thou \_rannest\_. But as the termination \_ed\_, in solemn discourse,

constitutes a syllable, the regular preterits form the second person

singular by assuming \_st\_, without further increase of syllables: as, I

\_loved\_, thou \_lovedst\_; not, "\_lovedest\_," as Chandler made it in his

English Grammar, p. 41, Edition of 1821; and as Wells's rule, above cited,

if literally taken, would make it. \_Dost\_ and \_hast\_, and the three

irregular preterits, \_wast, didst\_, and \_hadst\_, are permanently

contracted; though \_doest\_ and \_diddest\_ are sometimes seen in old books.

\_Saidst\_ is more common, and perhaps more regular, than \_saidest. Werest\_

has long been contracted into \_wert\_: "I would thou \_werest\_ either cold or

hot."--\_W. Perkins\_, 1608.[251] The auxiliaries \_shall\_ and \_will\_ change

the final \_l\_ to \_t\_, and become \_shalt\_ and \_wilt\_. To the auxiliaries,

\_may, can, might, could, would\_, and \_should\_, the termination \_est\_ was

formerly added; but they are now generally written with \_st\_ only, and

pronounced as monosyllables, even in solemn discourse. Murray, in quoting

the Scriptures, very often charges \_mayest\_ to \_mayst, mightest\_ to

\_mightst\_, &c. Some other permanent contractions are occasionally met with,

in what many grammarians call the solemn style; as \_bidst\_ for \_biddest,

fledst\_ for \_fleddest, satst\_ for \_sattest\_:

"Riding sublime, thou \_bidst\_ the world adore,

And humblest nature with thy northern blast."

--\_Thomson\_.

"Fly thither whence thou \_fledst\_."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. iv, l. 963.

"Unspeakable, who \_sitst\_ above these heavens."

--\_Id., ib.\_, B. v, l. 156.

"Why \_satst\_ thou like an enemy in wait?"

--\_Id., ib.\_, B. iv, l. 825.

OBS. 35.--The formation of the third person singular of verbs, is \_now\_

precisely the same as that of the plural number of nouns: as, \_love, loves;

show, shows; boast, boasts; fly, flies; reach, reaches\_. This form began to

be used about the beginning of the sixteenth century. The ending seems once

to have been \_es\_, sounded as \_s\_ or \_z\_: as,

"And thus I see among these pleasant thynges

Eche care \_decayes\_, and yet my sorrow \_sprynges\_."--\_Earl of Surry\_.

"With throte yrent, he \_roares\_, he \_lyeth\_ along."--\_Sir T. Wyat\_.

"He \_dyeth\_, he is all dead, he \_pantes\_, he \_restes\_."--\_Id.\_, 1540.

In all these instances, the \_e\_ before the \_s\_ has become improper. The

\_es\_ does not here form a syllable; neither does the \_eth\_, in "\_lyeth\_"

and "\_dyeth\_." In very ancient times, the third person singular appears to

have been formed by adding \_th\_ or \_eth\_ nearly as we now add \_s\_ or

\_es\_[252] Afterwards, as in our common Bible, it was formed by adding \_th\_

to verbs ending in \_e\_, and \_eth\_ to all others; as, "For he that \_eateth\_

and \_drinketh\_ unworthily, \_eateth\_ and \_drinketh\_ damnation to

himself."--\_1 Cor.\_, xi, 29. "He \_quickeneth\_ man, who is dead in

trespasses and sins; he \_keepeth\_ alive the quickened soul, and \_leadeth\_

it in the paths of life; he \_scattereth, subdueth\_, and \_conquereth\_ the

enemies of the soul."--\_I. Penington\_. This method of inflection, as now

pronounced, always adds a syllable to the verb. It is entirely confined to

the solemn style, and is little used. \_Doth, hath\_, and \_saith\_, appear to

be permanent contractions of verbs thus formed. In the days of Shakspeare,

both terminations were common, and he often mixed them, in a way which is

not very proper now: as,

"The quality of mercy is not strained;

It \_droppeth\_, as the gentle rain from heaven

Upon the place beneath: it is twice bless'd;

It \_blesseth\_ him that \_gives\_, and him that \_takes\_."

--\_Merchant of Venice\_.

OBS. 36.--When the second person singular is employed in familiar

discourse, with any regard to correctness, it is usually formed in a manner

strictly analogous to that which is now adopted in the third person

singular. When the verb ends with a sound which will unite with that of

\_st\_ or \_s\_, the second person singular is formed by adding \_s\_ only, and

the third, by adding \_s\_ only; and the number of syllables is not

increased: as, I \_read\_, thou \_readst\_, he \_reads\_; I \_know\_, thou

\_knowst\_, he \_knows\_; I \_take\_, thou \_takest\_, he \_takes\_; I \_free\_, thou

\_freest\_, he \_frees\_. For, when the verb ends in mute \_a\_, no termination

renders this \_a\_ vocal in the familiar style, if a synæresis can take

place. To prevent their readers from ignorantly assuming the pronunciation

of the solemn style, the poets have generally marked such words with an

apostrophe: as,

"Look what thy soul holds dear, imagine it

To lie the way thou \_go'st\_, not whence thou \_com'st\_."--\_Shak\_.

OBS. 37.--But when the verb ends in a sound which will not unite with that

of \_st\_ or \_s\_, the second and third persons are formed by adding \_est\_ and

\_es\_; or, if the first person end in mute \_e\_, the \_st\_ and \_s\_ render that

\_e\_ vocal; so that the verb acquires an additional syllable: as, I \_trace\_,

thou \_tracest\_, he \_traces\_; I \_pass\_, thou \_passest\_, he \_passes\_; I

\_fix\_, thou \_fixest\_, he \_fixes\_; I \_preach\_, thou \_preachest\_, he

\_preaches\_; I \_blush\_, thou \_blushest\_, he \_blushes\_; I \_judge\_, thou

\_judgest\_, he \_judges\_. But verbs ending in \_o\_ or \_y\_ preceded by a

consonant, do not exactly follow either of the foregoing rules. In these,

\_y\_ is changed into \_i\_; and, to both \_o\_ and \_i, est\_ and \_es\_ are added

without increase of syllables: as, I \_go\_, thou \_goest\_, he \_goes\_; I

\_undo\_, thou \_undoest\_,[253] he \_undoes\_; I \_fly\_, thou \_fliest\_, he

\_flies\_; I \_pity\_, thou \_pitiest\_, he \_pities\_. Thus, in the following

lines, \_goest\_ must be pronounced like \_ghost\_; otherwise, we spoil the

measure of the verse:

"Thou \_goest\_ not now with battle, and the voice

Of war, as once against the rebel hosts;

Thou \_goest\_ a Judge, and \_findst\_ the guilty bound;

Thou \_goest\_ to prove, condemn, acquit, reward."--\_Pollok\_, B. x.

In solemn prose, however, the termination is here made a separate syllable:

as, I \_go\_, thou \_goëst\_, he \_goëth\_; I \_undo\_, thou \_undoëst\_, he

\_undoëth\_; I \_fly\_, thou \_fliëst\_, he \_fliëth\_; I \_pity\_, thou \_pitiëst\_,

he \_pitiëth\_.

OBS. 38.--The auxiliaries \_do, dost, does\_,--(pronounced \_doo, dust, duz\_;

and not as the words \_dough, dosed, doze\_,--) \_am, art, is,--have, hast,

has\_,--being also in frequent use as principal verbs of the present tense,

retain their peculiar forms, with distinction of person and number, when

they help to form the compound tenses of other verbs. The other auxiliaries

are not varied, or ought not to be varied, except in the solemn style.

Example of the familiar use: "That thou \_may\_ be found truly owning

it."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 234.

OBS. 39.--The only regular terminations that are added to English verbs,

are \_ing, d\_ or \_e, st\_ or \_est, s\_ or \_es, th\_ or \_eth\_[254] \_Ing\_, and

\_th\_ or \_eth\_, always add a syllable to the verb; except in \_doth, hath,

saith\_.[255] The rest, whenever their sound will unite with that of the

final syllable of the verb, are usually added without increasing the number

of syllables; otherwise, they are separately pronounced. In solemn

discourse, however, \_ed\_ and \_est\_ are by most speakers uttered distinctly

in all cases; except sometimes when a vowel precedes: as in \_sanctified,

glorified\_, which are pronounced as three syllables only. Yet, in spite of

this analogy, many readers will have \_sanctifiest\_ and \_glorifiest\_ to be

words of four syllables. If this pronunciation is proper, it is only so in

solemn prose. The prosody of verse will show how many syllables the poets

make: as,

"Thou \_diedst\_, a most rare boy, of melancholy!"

--\_Shak., Cymb.\_, Act iv, sc. 2.

"Had not a voice thus warn'd me: What thou \_seest\_,

What there thou \_seest\_, fair creature, is thyself."

--\_Milton\_, B. iv, l. 467.

"By those thou \_wooedst\_ from death to endless life."

--\_Pollok\_, B. ix, l. 7.

"Attend: that thou art happy, owe to God;

That thou \_continuest\_ such, owe to thyself"

--\_Milton\_, B. v, l. 520.

OBS. 40.--If the grave and full form of the second person singular must

needs be supposed to end rather with the syllable \_est\_ than with \_st\_

only, it is certain that this form may be \_contracted\_, whenever the verb

ends in a sound which will unite with that of \_st\_. The poets generally

employ the briefer or contracted forms; but they seem not to have adopted a

uniform and consistent method of writing them. Some usually insert the

apostrophe, and, after a single vowel, double the final consonant before

\_st\_; as, \_hold'st, bidd'st, said'st, ledd'st, wedd'st, trimm'st, may'st,

might'st\_, and so forth: others, in numerous instances, add \_st\_ only, and

form permanent contractions; as, \_holdst, bidst, saidst, ledst, wedst,

trimst, mayst, mightst\_, and so forth. Some retain the vowel \_e\_, in the

termination of certain words, and suppress a preceding one; as,

\_quick'nest, happ'nest, scatt'rest, rend'rest, rend'redst, slumb'rest,

slumb'redst\_: others contract the termination of such words, and insert the

apostrophe; as, \_quicken'st, happen'st, scatter'st, render'st, render'dst,

slumber'st, slumber'dst\_. The nature and idiom of our language, "the accent

and pronunciation of it," incline us to abbreviate or "contract even all

our regular verbs;" so as to avoid, if possible, an increase of syllables

in the inflection of them. Accordingly, several terminations which formerly

constituted distinct syllables, have been either wholly dropped, or blended

with the final syllables of the verbs to which they are added. Thus the

plural termination \_en\_ has become entirely obsolete; \_th\_ or \_eth\_ is no

longer in common use; \_ed\_ is contracted in pronunciation; the ancient \_ys\_

or \_is\_, of the third person singular, is changed to \_s\_ or \_es\_, and is

usually added without increase of syllables; and \_st\_ or \_est\_ has, in

part, adopted the analogy. So that the proper mode of forming these

contractions of the second person singular, seems to be, to add \_st\_ only;

and to insert no apostrophe, unless a vowel is suppressed from the verb to

which this termination is added: as, \_thinkst, sayst, bidst, sitst, satst,

lov'st, lov'dst, slumberst, slumber'dst\_.

"And know, for that thou \_slumberst\_ on the guard,

Thou shalt be made to answer at the bar."--\_Cotton\_.

OBS. 41.--Ho man deserves more praise for his attention to English

pronunciation, than John Walker. His Pronouncing Dictionary was, for a long

period, the best standard of orthoëpy, that our schools possessed. But he

seems to me to have missed a figure, in preferring such words as

\_quick'nest, strength'nest\_, to the smoother and more regular forms,

\_quickenst, strengthenst\_. It is true that these are rough words, in any

form you can give them; but let us remember, that needless apostrophes are

as rough to the eye, as needless \_st\_'s to the ear. Our common grammarians

are disposed to encumber the language with as many of both as they can find

any excuse for, and vastly more than can be sustained by any good argument.

In words that are well understood to be contracted in pronunciation, the

apostrophe is now less frequently used than it was formerly. Walker says,

"This contraction of the participial \_ed\_, and the verbal \_en\_, is so fixed

an idiom of our pronunciation, that to alter it, would be to alter the

sound of the whole language. It must, however, be regretted that it

subjects our tongue to some of the most hissing, snapping, clashing,

grinding sounds that ever grated the ears of a Vandal; thus, \_rasped,

scratched, wrenched, bridled, fangled, birchen, hardened, strengthened,

quickened\_, &c. almost frighten us when written as they are actually

pronounced, as \_rapt, scratcht, wrencht, bridl'd, fangl'd, birch'n,

strength'n'd, quick'n'd\_, &c.; they become still more formidable when used

contractedly in the solemn style, which never ought to be the case; for

here instead of \_thou strength'n'st\_ or \_strength'n'd'st, thou quick'n'st\_

or \_quick'n'd'st\_, we ought to pronounce \_thou strength'nest\_ or

\_strength'nedst, thou quick'nest\_ or \_quick'nedst\_, which are sufficiently

harsh of all conscience."--\_Principles\_, No. 359. Here are too many

apostrophes; for it does not appear that such words as \_strengthenedest\_

and \_quickenedest\_ ever existed, except in the imagination of certain

grammarians. In solemn prose one may write, \_thou quickenest, thou

strengthenest\_, or \_thou quickenedst, thou strengthenedst\_; but, in the

familiar style, or in poetry, it is better to write, \_thou quickenst, thou

strengthenst, thou quickened, thou strengthened\_. This is language which it

is possible to utter; and it is foolish to strangle ourselves with strings

of rough consonants, merely because they are insisted on by some

superficial grammarians. Is it not strange, is it not incredible, that the

same hand should have written the two following lines, in the same

sentence? Surely, the printer has been at fault.

"With noiseless foot, thou \_walkedst\_ the vales of earth"--

"Most honourable thou \_appeared\_, and most

To be desired."--\_Pollok's Course of Time\_, B. ix, l. 18, and l. 24.

OBS. 42.--It was once a very common practice, to retain the final \_y\_, in

contractions of the preterit or of the second person of most verbs that end

in \_y\_, and to add the consonant terminations \_d, st\_, and \_dst\_, with an

apostrophe before each; as, \_try'd\_ for \_tried, reply'd\_ for \_replied,

try'st\_ for \_triest, try'dst\_ for \_triedst\_. Thus Milton:--

"Thou following \_cry'dst\_ aloud, Return, fair Eve;

Whom \_fly'st\_ thou? whom thou \_fly'st\_, of him thou art."

--\_P. L.\_, B. iv, l. 481.

This usage, though it may have been of some advantage as an index to the

pronunciation of the words, is a palpable departure from the common rule

for spelling such derivatives. That rule is, "The final \_y\_ of a primitive

word, when preceded by a consonant, is changed into \_i\_ before an

additional termination." The works of the British poets, except those of

the present century, abound with contractions like the foregoing; but late

authors, or their printers, have returned to the rule; and the former

practice is wearing out and becoming obsolete. Of regular verbs that end in

\_ay, ey\_, or \_oy\_, we have more than half a hundred; all of which usually

retain the \_y\_ in their derivatives, agreeably to an other of the rules for

spelling. The preterits of these we form by adding \_ed\_ without increase of

syllables; as, \_display, displayed; survey, surveyed; enjoy, enjoyed\_.

These also, in both tenses, may take \_st\_ without increase of syllables;

as, \_display'st, display'dst\_; \_survey'st, survey'dst; enjoy'st,

enjoy'dst\_. All these forms, and such as these, are still commonly

considered contractions, and therefore written with the apostrophe; but if

the termination \_st\_ is sufficient of itself to mark the second person

singular, as it certainly is considered to be as regards one half of them,

and as it certainly was in the Saxon tongue still more generally, then for

the other half there is no need of the apostrophe, because nothing is

omitted. \_Est\_, like \_es\_, is generally a syllabic termination; but \_st\_,

like \_s\_, is not. As signs of the third person, the \_s\_ and the \_es\_ are

always considered equivalent; and, as signs of the second person, the \_st\_

and the \_est\_ are sometimes, and ought to be always, considered so too. To

all verbs that admit the sound, we add the \_s\_ without marking it as a

contraction for \_es\_; and there seems to be no reason at all against adding

the \_st\_ in like manner, whenever we choose to form the second person

without adding a syllable to the verb. The foregoing observations I commend

to the particular attention of all those who hope to write such English as

shall do them honour--to every one who, from a spark of literary ambition,

may say of himself,

---------"I twine

My hopes of being remembered in my line

With my land's language."--\_Byron's Childe Harold\_, Canto iv, st. 9.

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

The conjugation of a verb is a regular arrangement of its moods, tenses,

persons, numbers, and participles.

There are four PRINCIPAL PARTS in the conjugation of every simple and

complete verb; namely, the \_Present\_, the \_Preterit\_, the \_Imperfect

Participle\_, and the \_Perfect Participle\_.[256] A verb which wants any of

these parts, is called \_defective\_; such are most of the auxiliaries.

An \_auxiliary\_ is a short verb prefixed to one of the principal parts of an

other verb, to express some particular mode and time of the being, action,

or passion. The auxiliaries are \_do, be, have, shall, will, may, can\_, and

\_must\_, with their variations.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The \_present\_, or the verb in the present tense, is radically the

same in all the moods, and is the part from which all the rest are formed.

The present infinitive is commonly considered \_the root\_, or \_simplest

form\_, of the English verb. We usually place the \_preposition\_ TO \_before\_

it; but never when with an auxiliary it forms a compound tense that is not

infinitive: there are also some other exceptions, which plainly show, that

the word \_to\_ is neither a part of the verb, as Cobbett, R. C. Smith, S.

Kirkham, and Wells, say it is; nor a part of the infinitive mood, as Hart

and many others will have it to be, but a distinct \_preposition\_. (See, in

the \_Syntax\_ of this work, Observations on Rule 18th.) The preterit and the

perfect participle are regularly formed by adding \_d\_ or \_ed\_, and the

imperfect participle, by adding \_ing\_, to the present.

OBS. 2.--The moods and tenses, in English, are formed partly by

inflections, or changes made in the verb itself, and partly by the

combination of the verb or its participle, with a few short verbs, called

\_auxiliaries\_, or \_helping verbs\_. This view of the subject, though

disputed by some, is sustained by such a preponderance both of authority

and of reason, that I shall not trouble the reader with any refutation of

those who object to it. Murray the schoolmaster observes, "In the English

language, the times and modes of verbs are expressed in a perfect, easy,

and beautiful manner, by the aid of a few little words called

\_auxiliaries\_, or \_helping verbs\_. The possibility of a thing is expressed

by \_can\_ or \_could\_; the liberty to do a thing, by \_may\_ or \_might\_; the

inclination of the will, by \_will\_ or \_would\_; the necessity of a thing, by

\_must\_ or \_ought, shall\_ or \_should\_. The preposition \_to\_ is never

expressed after the helping verbs, except after \_ought\_."--\_Alex. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 112. See nearly the same words in \_Buchanan's English Syntax\_,

p. 36; and in \_the British Gram.\_, p. 125.

OBS. 3.--These authors are wrong in calling \_ought\_ a helping verb, and so

is Oliver B. Peirce, in calling "\_ought to\_," and "\_ought to have\_"

auxiliaries; for no auxiliary ever admits the preposition \_to\_ after it or

into it: and Murray of Holdgate is no less in fault, for calling \_let\_ an

auxiliary; because no mere auxiliary ever governs the objective case. The

sentences, "He \_ought\_ to \_help\_ you," and, "\_Let\_ him \_help\_ you,"

severally involve two different moods: they are equivalent to, "It \_is his

duty\_ to \_help\_ you;"--"\_Permit\_ him \_to help\_ you." Hence \_ought\_ and

\_let\_ are not auxiliaries, but principal verbs.

OBS. 4.--Though most of the auxiliaries are defective, when compared with

other verbs; yet these three, \_do, be\_, and \_have\_, being also principal

verbs, are complete: but the participles of \_do\_ and \_have\_ are not used as

auxiliaries; unless \_having\_, which helps to form the third or "compound

perfect" participle, (as \_having loved\_,) may be considered such. The other

auxiliaries have no participles.

OBS. 5.--English verbs are principally conjugated by means of auxiliaries;

the only tenses which can be formed by the simple verb, being the present

and the imperfect; as, I \_love\_, I \_loved\_. And even here an auxiliary is

usually preferred in questions and negations; as, "\_Do\_ you love?"--"You

\_do\_ not \_love\_." "\_Did\_ he \_love\_?"--"He \_did\_ not \_love\_." "\_Do\_ I not

yet \_grieve\_?"--"\_Did\_ she not \_die\_?" All the other tenses, even in their

simplest form, are compounds.

OBS. 6.--Dr. Johnson says, "\_Do\_ is sometimes used superfluously, as \_I\_ do

\_love, I\_ did \_love\_; simply for \_I love\_, or \_I loved\_; but this is

considered as a \_vitious\_ mode of speech."--\_Gram., in 4to Dict.\_, p. 8. He

also somewhere tells us, that these auxiliaries "are not proper before \_be\_

and \_have\_;" as, "\_I do be\_," for \_I am\_; "\_I did have\_," for \_I had\_. The

latter remark is generally true, and it ought to be remembered;[257] but,

in the \_imperative mood, be\_ and \_have\_ will perhaps admit the emphatic

word \_do\_ before them, in a colloquial style: as, "Now \_do be\_

careful;"--"\_Do have\_ a little discretion." Sanborn repeatedly puts \_do\_

before \_be\_, in this mood: as, "\_Do\_ you \_be. Do\_ you \_be\_ guarded. \_Do\_

thou \_be. Do\_ thou \_be\_ guarded."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 150. "\_Do\_ thou

\_be\_ watchful."--\_Ib.\_, p. 155. In these instances, he must have forgotten

that he had elsewhere said positively, that, "\_Do\_, as an auxiliary, \_is

never used\_ with the verb \_be\_ or \_am\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 112. In the other

moods, it is seldom, if ever, proper before \_be\_; but it is sometimes used

before \_have\_, especially with a negative: as, "Those modes of charity

which \_do not have\_ in view the cultivation of moral excellence, are

essentially defective."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 428. "Surely, the

law of God, whether natural or revealed, \_does not have\_ respect merely to

the external conduct of men."--\_Stuart's Commentary on Romans\_, p. 158.

"And each day of our lives \_do we have\_ occasion to see and lament

it."--\_Dr. Bartlett's Lecture on Health\_, p. 5. "Verbs, in themselves

considered, \_do not have\_ person and number."--\_R. C. Smith's New Gram.\_,

p. 21. [This notion of Smith's is absurd. Kirkham taught the same as

regards "person."] In the following example, \_does he\_ is used for

\_is\_,--the auxiliary \_is\_,--and perhaps allowably: "It is certain from

scripture, that the same person \_does\_ in the course of life many times

offend and \_be\_ forgiven."--\_West's Letters to a Young Lady\_, p. 182.

OBS. 7.--In the compound tenses, there is never any variation of ending for

the different persons and numbers, except in the \_first auxiliary\_: as,

"Thou \_wilt have finished\_ it;" not, "Thou \_wilt hast finishedst\_ it;" for

this is nonsense. And even for the former, it is better to say, in the

familiar style, "Thou \_will have finished\_ it;" for it is characteristic of

many of the auxiliaries, that, unlike other verbs, they are not varied by

\_s\_ or \_eth\_, in the third person singular, and never by \_st\_ or \_est\_, in

the second person singular, except in the solemn style. Thus all the

auxiliaries of the potential mood, as well as \_shall\_ and \_will\_ of the

indicative, are without inflection in the third person singular, though

\_will\_, as a principal verb, makes \_wills\_ or \_willeth\_, as well as

\_willest\_, in the indicative present. Hence there appears a tendency in the

language, to confine the inflection of its verbs to \_this tense only\_; and

to the auxiliary \_have, hast, has\_, which is essentially present, though

used with a participle to form the perfect. \_Do, dost, does\_, and \_am, art,

is\_, whether used as auxiliaries or as principal verbs, are always of the

indicative present.

OBS. 8.--The word \_need\_,--(though, as a principal verb and transitive, it

is unquestionably both regular and complete,--having all the requisite

parts, \_need, needed, needing, needed\_,--and being necessarily inflected in

the indicative present, as, I \_need\_, thou \_needst\_ or \_needest\_, he

\_needs\_ or \_needeth\_,--) is so frequently used without inflection, when

placed before an other verb to express a necessity of the being, action, or

passion, that one may well question whether it has not become, under these

circumstances, an \_auxiliary\_ of the potential mood; and therefore proper

to be used, like all the other auxiliaries of this mood, without change of

termination. I have not yet knowingly used it so myself, nor does it appear

to have been classed with the auxiliaries, by any of our grammarians,

except Webster.[258] I shall therefore not presume to say now, with

positiveness, that it deserves this rank; (though I incline to think it

does;) but rather quote such instances as have occurred to me in reading,

and leave the student to take his choice, whether to condemn as bad English

the uninflected examples, or to justify them in this manner. "He that can

swim, \_need\_ not despair to fly."--\_Johnson's Rasselas\_, p. 29. "One

therefore \_needs\_ not expect to do it."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 155. "In

so doing I should only record some vain opinions of this age, which a

future one \_need\_ not know."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 345. "That a boy

\_needs\_ not be kept at school."--LISDSEY: \_in Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 164.

"No man \_need\_ promise, unless he please."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p.

312. "What better reason \_needs\_ be given?"--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 51. "He

\_need\_ assign no other reason for his conduct."--\_Wayland, ib.\_, p. 214.

"Sow there is nothing that a man \_needs\_ be ashamed of in all

this."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 45. "No notice \_need\_ be taken of the

advantages."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_, Vol. ii, p. 304. "Yet it \_needs\_

not be repeated."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 51. "He \_need\_ not be

anxious."--\_Greenleaf's Gram. Simplified\_, p. 38. "He \_needs\_ not be

afraid."--\_Fisk's Gram. Simplified\_, p. 124. "He who will not learn to

spell, \_needs\_ not learn to write."--\_Red Book\_, p. 22. "The heeder \_need\_

be under no fear."--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 38.[259] "More \_need\_ not be

said about it."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 272. "The object \_needs\_ not be

expressed."--\_Booth's Introduct. to Dict.\_, p. 37. "Indeed, there \_need\_ be

no such thing."--\_Fosdick's De Sacy\_, p. 71. "This \_needs\_ to be

illustrated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 81. "And no part of the sentence \_need\_ be

omitted."--\_Parkhurst's Grammar for Beginners\_, p. 114. "The learner

\_needs\_ to know what sort of words are called verbs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 6. "No one

\_need\_ be apprehensive of suffering by faults of this kind."--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. 171. "The student who has bought any of the former copies

\_needs\_ not repent."--\_Dr. Johnson, Adv. to Dict.\_ "He \_need\_ not enumerate

their names."--\_Edward's First Lessons in Grammar\_, p. 38. "A quotation

consisting of a word or two only \_need\_ not begin with a

capital."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 383. "Their sex is commonly known, and

\_needs\_ not to be marked."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72; \_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, 51. "One

\_need\_ only open Lord Clarendon's history, to find examples every

where."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 108. "Their sex is commonly known, and \_needs\_

not be marked."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 21; \_Murray's Duodecimo Gram.\_, p. 51.

"Nobody \_need\_ be afraid he shall not have scope enough."--LOCKE: \_in

Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 168. "No part of the science of language, \_needs to be

ever\_ uninteresting to the pursuer."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. vii. "The exact

amount of knowledge is not, and \_need\_ not be, great."--\_Todd's Student's

Manual\_, p. 44. "He \_needs to\_ act under a motive which is

all-pervading."--\_Ib.\_, p. 375. "What \_need\_ be said, will not occupy a

long space."--\_Ib.\_, p. 244. "The sign TO \_needs\_ not always be

used."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 96. "Such as he \_need\_ not be ashamed

of."--\_Snelling's Gift for Scribblers\_, p. 23.

"\_Needst\_ thou--\_need\_ any one on earth--despair?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 32.

"Take timely counsel; if your dire disease

Admits no cure, it \_needs\_ not to displease."--\_Ib.\_, p. 14.

OBS. 9.--If \_need\_ is to be recognized as an auxiliary of the potential

mood, it must be understood to belong to two tenses; the present and the

perfect; like \_may, can\_, and \_must\_: as, "He \_need\_ not \_go\_, he \_need\_

not \_have gone\_; Thou \_need\_ not \_go, Thou need\_ not \_have gone\_;" or, in

the solemn style, "Thou \_needst\_ not go, Thou \_needst\_ not \_have gone\_."

If, on the contrary, we will have it to be always a principal verb, the

distinction of time should belong to itself, and also the distinction of

person and number, in the parts which require it: as, "He \_needs\_ not go.

He \_needed\_ not go; Thou \_needst\_ not go, Thou \_needed\_ not go;" or, in the

solemn style, "Thou \_needest\_ not go, Thou \_neededst\_ not go." Whether it

can be right to say, "He \_needed\_ not \_have gone\_," is at least

questionable. From the observations of Murray, upon relative tenses, under

his thirteenth rule of syntax, it seems fair to infer that he would have

judged this phraseology erroneous. Again, "He \_needs\_ not \_have gone\_,"

appears to be yet more objectionable, though for the same reason. And if,

"He \_need\_ not \_have gone\_," is a correct expression, \_need\_ is clearly

proved to be an \_auxiliary\_, and the three words taken together must form

the potential perfect. And so of the plural; for the argument is from the

connexion of the tenses, and not merely from the tendency of auxiliaries to

reject inflection: as, "They need not \_have been\_ under great concern about

their public affairs."--\_Hutchinson's History\_, i, 194, From these

examples, it may be seen that an auxiliary and a principal verb have some

essential difference; though these who dislike the doctrine of compound

tenses, pretend not to discern any. Take some further citations; a few of

which are erroneous in respect to time. And observe also that the regular

verb sometimes admits the preposition \_to\_ after it: "' There is great

dignity in being waited for,' said one who had the habit of tardiness, and

who \_had\_ not much else of which he \_need\_ be vain."--\_Students Manual\_, p.

64. "But he \_needed\_ not \_have gone\_ so far for more instances."--

\_Johnson's Gram.\_ \_Com.\_, p. 143. "He \_need\_ not \_have said\_, 'perhaps the

virtue.'"--\_Sedgwick's Economy\_, p. 196. "I \_needed\_ not \_to ask\_ how she

felt."--\_Abbott's Young Christian\_, p. 84. "It \_need\_ not \_have been\_

so."--\_Ib.\_, p. 111. "The most unaccommodating politician \_need\_ not

absolutely \_want\_ friends."--\_Hunts Feast of the Poets\_, p. iii. "Which

therefore \_needs\_ not be introduced with much precaution."--\_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, p. 326. "When an obscurer term \_needs\_ to be explained by one that

is clearer."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367. "Though, if she had died younger, she \_need\_

not \_have known it\_."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 120. "Nothing \_need\_ be said,

but that they were the \_most perfect\_ barbarisms."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

470. "He \_need\_ not go."--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p. 36. "He \_needed\_ but use

the word \_body\_."--LOCKE: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "He \_need\_ not be required to use

them."--\_Parker's Eng. Composition\_, p. 50. "The last consonant of \_appear\_

need not be doubled."--\_Dr. Webster\_. "It \_needs\_ the less \_to be

inforced\_."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 158. "Of these pieces of his, we

\_shall not need to give\_ any particular account."--\_Seneca's Morals\_, p. vi

"And therefore I \_shall need say\_ the less of them."--\_Scougal\_, p. 1101.

"This compounding of words \_need\_ occasion no surprise."--\_Cardell's Essay

on Language\_, p. 87.

"Therefore stay, thou \_needst\_ not to be gone."--\_Shakspeare\_.

"Thou \_need\_ na \_start\_ awa sae hasty."--\_Burns, Poems\_, p. 15.

"Thou \_need\_ na \_jouk\_ behint the hallan."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 67.

OBS. 10.--The auxiliaries, except \_must\_, which is invariable, have

severally two forms in respect to tense, or time; and when inflected in the

second and third persons singular, are usually varied in the following

manner:--

TO DO.

PRESENT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE INDICATIVE PRESENT.

\_Sing\_. I do, thou dost, he does;

\_Plur\_. We do, you do, they do.

IMPERFECT TENSE; AND SIGN of THE INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.

\_Sing\_. I did, thou didst, he did;

\_Plur\_. We did, you did, they did.

TO BE.

PRESENT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE INDICATIVE PRESENT.

\_Sing\_. I am, thou art, he is;

\_Plur\_. We are, you are, they are.

IMPERFECT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.

\_Sing\_. I was, thou wast, he was;

\_Plur\_. We were, you were; they were.

TO HAVE.

PRESENT TENSE; BUT SIGN OF THE INDICATIVE PERFECT.

\_Sing\_. I have, thou hast, he has;

\_Plur\_. We have, you have, they have.

IMPERFECT TENSE; BUT SIGN OF THE INDICATIVE PLUPERFECT.

\_Sing\_. I had, thou hadst, he had;

\_Plur\_. We had, you had, they had.

SHALL AND WILL.

These auxiliaries have distinct meanings, and, as signs of the future, they

are interchanged thus:

PRESENT TENSE; BUT SIGNS OF THE INDICATIVE FIRST-FUTURE.

1. Simply to express a future action or event:--

\_Sing\_. I shall, thou wilt, he will;

\_Plur\_. We shall, you will, they will.

2. To express a promise, command, or threat:--

\_Sing\_.: I will, thou shalt, he shall;

\_Plur\_. We will, you shall, they shall.

IMPERFECT TENSE; BUT, AS SIGNS, AORIST, OR INDEFINITE.

1. Used with reference to duty or expediency:--

\_Sing.\_ I should, thou shouldst, he should;

\_Plur.\_ We should, you should, they should.

2. Used with reference to volition or desire:--

\_Sing.\_ I would, thou wouldst, he would;

\_Plur.\_ We would, you would, they would.

MAY.

PRESENT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE POTENTIAL PRESENT.

\_Sing.\_ I may, thou mayst, he may;

\_Plur.\_ We may, you may, they may.

IMPERFECT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE POTENTIAL IMPERFECT.

\_Sing.\_ I might, thou mightst, he might;

\_Plur.\_ We might, you might, they might.

CAN.

PRESENT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE POTENTIAL PRESENT.

\_Sing.\_ I can, thou canst, he can;

\_Plur.\_ We can, you can, they can.

IMPERFECT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE POTENTIAL IMPERFECT.

\_Sing.\_ I could, thou couldst, he could;

\_Plur.\_ We could, you could, they could.

MUST.

PRESENT TENSE; AND SIGN OF THE POTENTIAL PRESENT.

\_Sing.\_ I must, thou must, he must;

\_Plur.\_ We must, you must, they must.

If must is ever used in the sense of the Imperfect tense, or Preterit, the

form is the same as that of the Present: this word is entirely invariable.

OBS. 11.--Several of the auxiliaries are occasionally used as mere

expletives, being quite unnecessary to the sense: as, 1. DO and DID: "And

it is night, wherein all the beasts of the forest \_do\_ creep

forth."--\_Psalms\_, civ, 20. "And ye, that on the sands with printless foot

\_do\_ chase the ebbing Neptune, and \_do\_ fly him when he comes

back."--\_Shak.\_ "And if a man \_did\_ need a poison now."--\_Id.\_ This

needless use of do and did is now avoided by good writers. 2. SHALL,

SHOULD, and COULD: "'Men \_shall\_ deal unadvisedly sometimes, which

after-hours give leisure to repent of.' I \_should\_ advise you to proceed. I

\_should\_ think it would succeed. He, it \_should\_ seem, thinks

otherwise."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 65. "I \_could\_ wish you to go."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 71. 3. WILL, &c. The following are nearly of the same character, but not

exactly: "The isle is full of noises; sometimes a thousand twanging

instruments \_will\_ hum about mine ears."--\_Shak.\_ "In their evening sports

she \_would\_ steal in amongst them."--\_Barbauld\_.

"His listless length at noontide \_would\_ he stretch."--\_Gray\_.

OBS. 12.--As our old writers often formed the infinitive in \_en\_, so they

sometimes dropped the termination of the perfect participle. Hence we find,

in the infancy of the language, \_done\_ used for \_do\_, and \_do\_ for \_done\_;

and that by the same hand, with like changes in other verbs: as, "Thou

canst nothing \_done\_."--\_Chaucer\_. "As he was wont to \_done\_."--\_Id.\_ "The

treson that to women hath be \_do\_."--\_Id.\_ "For to \_ben\_ honourable and

free."--\_Id.\_ "I am sworn to \_holden\_ it secre."--\_Id.\_ "Our nature God

hath to him \_unyte\_."--\_Douglas\_. "None otherwise negligent than I you saie

haue I not \_bee\_."--\_Id.\_ See \_W. Allen's E. Gram.\_, p. 97.

"But netheless the thynge is \_do\_,

That fals god was soone \_go\_."--GOWER: \_H. Tooke\_, Vol. i, p. 376.

OBS. 13.--"\_May\_ is from the Anglo-Saxon, \_mægan\_, to be able. In the

parent language also, it is used as an auxiliary. It is exhibited by

Fortescue, as a principal verb; 'They shall \_may\_ do it:' i. e. they shall

be able (to) do it."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 70. "\_May not\_, was formerly

used for \_must not\_; as, 'Graces for which we \_may not\_ cease to sue.'

Hooker."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91. "\_May\_ frequently expresses doubt of the fact; as,

'I \_may\_ have the book in my library, but I think I have not.' It is used

also, to express doubt, or a consequence, with a future signification; as,

'I \_may\_ recover the use of my limbs, but I see little probability of

it.'--'That they \_may\_ receive me into their houses.' \_Luke\_, xvi,

4."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 247. In these latter instances, the potential

present is akin to the subjunctive. Hence Lowth and others improperly call

"I \_may love\_," &c. the subjunctive mood. Others, for the same reason, and

with as little propriety, deny that we have any subjunctive mood; alleging

an ellipsis in every thing that bears that name: as, "'If it (\_may\_) \_be\_

possible, live peaceably with all men.' Scriptures."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_,

p. 61. \_May\_ is also a sign of wishing, and consequently occurs often in

prayer: as, "\_May\_ it be thy good pleasure;"--"O that it \_may\_ please

thee;"--"\_Mayst\_ thou be pleased." Hence the potential is akin also to the

imperative: the phrases, "Thy will be done,"--"\_May\_ thy will be

done,"--"Be thy will done,"--"\_Let\_ thy will be done,"--are alike in

meaning, but not in mood or construction.

OBS. 14.--\_Can\_, to be able, is etymologically the same as the regular

verbs \_ken\_, to see, and \_con\_, to learn; all of them being derived from

the Saxon \_connan\_ or \_cunnan\_, to know: whence also the adjective cunning,

which was formerly a participle. In the following example \_will\_ and \_can\_

are principal verbs: "In evil, the best condition is, not to \_will\_; the

second, not to \_can\_."--\_Ld. Bacon\_. "That a verb which signifies

knowledge, may also signify power, appears from these examples: \_Je ne

saurois, I should not know how\_, (i. e. \_could\_ not.) [Greek: Asphalisasthe

hos oidate], Strengthen it as you \_know how\_, (i. e. as you \_can\_.)

\_Nescio\_ mentiri, I \_know not how to\_ (i.e. \_I cannot\_) lie."--\_W. Allen's

Gram.\_, p. 71. \_Shall\_, Saxon \_sceal\_, originally signified to \_owe\_; for

which reason \_should\_ literally means \_ought\_. In the following example

from Chaucer, \_shall\_ is a principal verb, with its original meaning:

"For, by the faith I \_shall\_ to God, I wene,

Was neuer straungir none in hir degre."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 64.

OBS. 15.--\_Do\_ and \_did\_ are auxiliary only to the present infinitive, or

the radical verb; as, \_do throw, did throw\_: thus the mood of \_do throw\_ or

\_to throw\_ is marked by \_do\_ or \_to\_. \_Be\_, in all its parts, is auxiliary

to either of the simple participles; as, \_to be throwing, to be thrown; I

am throwing, I am thrown\_: and so, through the whole conjugation. \_Have\_

and \_had\_, in their literal use, are auxiliary to the perfect participle

only; as, \_have thrown, had thrown. Have\_ is from the Saxon \_habban\_, to

possess; and, from the nature of the perfect participle, the tenses thus

formed, suggest in general a completion of the action. The French idiom is

similar to this: as, \_J'ai vu\_, I have seen. \_Shall\_ and \_should, will\_ and

\_would, may\_ and \_might, can\_ and \_could, must\_, and also \_need, (if we

call the last a helping verb,) are severally auxiliary to both forms of the

infinitive, and to these only: as, shall throw, shall have thrown; should

throw, should have thrown\_; and so of all the rest.

OBS. 16.--The form of the indicative pluperfect is sometimes used in lieu

of the potential pluperfect; as, "If all the world could have seen it, the

wo \_had been\_ universal."--\_Shakspeare\_. That is,--"\_would have been\_

universal." "I \_had been drowned\_, but that the shore was shelvy and

shallow."--\_Id.\_ That is,--"I \_should have been drowned\_." This mode of

expression may be referred to the figure \_enallage\_, in which one word or

one modification is used for an other. Similar to this is the use of \_were\_

for \_would be\_: "It \_were\_ injustice to deny the execution of the law to

any individual;" that is, "it \_would\_ be injustice."--\_Murray's Grammar\_,

p. 89. In some instances, \_were\_ and \_had been\_ seem to have the same

import; as, "Good \_were\_ it for that man if he had never been

born."--\_Mark\_, xiv, 21. "It \_had been\_ good for that man if he had not

been born."--\_Matt.\_, xxvi, 24. In prose, all these licenses are needless,

if not absolutely improper. In poetry, their brevity may commend them to

preference; but to this style, I think, they ought to be confined: as,

"That \_had been\_ just, replied the reverend bard;

But done, fair youth, thou ne'er \_hadst met\_ me here."--\_Pollok\_.

"The keystones of the arch!--though all were o'er,

For us repeopled \_were\_ the solitary shore."--\_Byron\_.

OBS. 17.--With an adverb of comparison or preference, as \_better, rather,

best, as lief\_, or \_as lieve\_, the auxiliary \_had\_ seems sometimes to be

used before the infinitive to form the potential imperfect or pluperfect:

as, "He that loses by getting, \_had better lose\_ than get."--\_Penn's

Maxims\_. "Other prepositions \_had better have been substituted\_."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 166. "I had as lief say."--LOWTH: \_ib.\_, p. 110.

"It compels me to think of that which I \_had rather forget\_."--

\_Bickersteth, on Prayer\_, p. 25. "You \_had much better say\_ nothing upon

the subject."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 147. "I \_had much rather show\_ thee

what hopes thou hast before thee."--\_Baxter\_. "I \_had rather speak\_ five

words with my understanding, than ten thousand words in an unknown

tongue."--\_1 Cor.\_, xiv, 19. "I knew a gentleman in America who told me

\_how much rather he had be\_ a woman than the man he is."--\_Martineau's

Society in America\_, Vol. i, p. 153. "I \_had as lief go\_ as not."--

\_Webster's Dict., w. Lief\_. "I \_had as lieve\_ the town crier spoke my

lines."--SHAK.: \_Hamlet\_. "We \_had best leave\_ nature to her own

operations."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 310. "What method \_had he

best take\_?"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. ix. These are equivalent to the

phrases, \_might better lose--might\_ better have been substituted--\_would\_

as lief say--\_would\_ rather forget--\_might\_ much better say--\_would\_ much

rather show--\_would\_ rather speak--how much rather he \_would\_ be--\_would\_

as lief go--\_should\_ best leave--\_might\_ he best take; and, for the sake of

regularity, these latter forms ought to be preferred, as they sometimes

are: thus, "For my own part, I \_would rather look\_ upon a tree in all its

luxuriancy."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 414; \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 223. The

following construction is different: "Augustus \_had like to\_ have been

slain."--\_S. Butler\_. Here \_had\_ is a principal verb of the indicative

imperfect. The following examples appear to be positively erroneous: "Much

that was said, \_had better remained\_ unsaid."--\_N. Y. Observer\_. Say,

"\_might better have remained\_." "A man that is lifting a weight, if he put

not sufficient strength to it, \_had as good\_ put none at all."--\_Baxter\_.

Say, "\_might as well put\_." "You \_were better pour\_ off the first infusion,

and use the latter."--\_Bacon\_. Say, "\_might better pour\_;" or, if you

prefer it, "\_had better pour.\_" Shakspeare has an expression which is still

worse:--

"Or, by the worth of mine eternal soul,

Thou \_hadst been better have been born\_ a dog."--\_Beauties\_, p. 295.

OBS. 18.--The form of conjugating the active verb, is often called the

\_Active Voice\_, and that of the passive verb, the \_Passive Voice\_. These

terms are borrowed from the Latin and Greek grammars, and, except as

serving to diversify expression, are of little or no use in English

grammar. Some grammarians deny that there is any propriety in them, with

respect to any language. De Sacy, after showing that the import of the verb

does not always follow its form of voice, adds: "We must, therefore,

carefully distinguish the Voice of a Verb from its signification. To

facilitate the distinction, I denominate that an \_Active\_ Verb which

contains an Attribute in which the action is considered as performed by the

Subject; and that a \_Passive\_ Verb which contains an Attribute in which the

action is considered as suffered by the Subject, and performed upon it by

some agent. I call that voice a \_Subjective\_ Voice which is generally

appropriated to the Active Verb, and that an \_Objective\_ Voice which is

generally appropriated to the Passive Verb. As to the Neuter Verbs, if they

possess a peculiar form, I call it a Neuter Voice."--\_Fosdick's

Translation\_, p. 99.

OBS. 19.--A recognition of the difference between actives and passives, in

our original classification of verbs with respect to their signification,--

a principle of division very properly adopted in a great majority of our

grammars and dictionaries, but opinionately rejected by Webster, Bolles,

and sundry late grammarians,--renders it unnecessary, if not improper, to

place Voices, the Active Voice and the Passive, among the \_modifications\_

of our verbs, or to speak of them as such in the conjugations. So must it

be in respect to "a Neuter Voice," or any other distinction which the

classification involves. The significant characteristic is not overlooked;

the distinction is not neglected as nonessential; but it is transferred to

a different category. Hence I cannot exactly approve of the following

remark, which "the Rev. W. Allen" appears to cite with approbation: "'The

distinction of active or passive,' says the accurate Mr. Jones, '\_is not

essential\_ to verbs. In the infancy of language, it was, in all

probability, not known. In Hebrew, the difference but imperfectly exists,

and, in the early periods of it, probably did not exist at all. In Arabic,

the only distinction which obtains, arises from the vowel points, a late

invention compared with the antiquity of that language. And in our own

tongue, the names of \_active\_ and \_passive\_ would have remained unknown, if

they had not been learnt in Latin.'"--\_Allen's Elements of English Gram.\_,

p. 96.

OBS. 20.--By \_the conjugation\_ of a verb, some teachers choose to

understand nothing more than the naming of its principal parts; giving to

the arrangement of its numbers and persons, through all the moods and

tenses, the name of \_declension.\_ This is a misapplication of terms, and

the distinction is as needless, as it is contrary to general usage. Dr.

Bullions, long silent concerning principal parts, seems now to make a

singular distinction between "\_conjugating\_" and "\_conjugation.\_" His

\_conjugations\_ include the moods, tenses, and inflections of verbs; but he

teaches also, with some inaccuracy, as follows: "The principal parts of the

verb are the \_Present indicative\_, the \_Past indicative\_ and the \_Past

participle.\_ The mentioning of these parts is called CONJUGATING THE

VERB."--\_Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, 1849, p. 80.

OBS. 21.--English verbs having but very few inflections to indicate to what

part of the scheme of moods and tenses they pertain, it is found convenient

to insert in our conjugations the preposition \_to\_, to mark the infinitive;

personal \_pronouns\_, to distinguish the persons and numbers; the

conjunction \_if\_, to denote the subjunctive mood; and the adverb \_not\_, to

show the form of negation. With these additions, or indexes, a verb may be

conjugated in \_four ways\_:--

1. Affirmatively; as, I write, I do write, or, I am writing; and so on.

2. Negatively; as, I write not, I do not write, or, I am not writing.

3. Interrogatively; as, Write I? Do I write? or, Am I writing?

4. Interrogatively and negatively; as, Write I not? Do I not write? or, Am

I not writing?

1. SIMPLE FORM, ACTIVE OR NEUTER.

The simplest form of an English conjugation, is that which makes the

present and imperfect tenses without auxiliaries; but, even in these,

auxiliaries are required for the potential mood, and are often preferred

for the indicative.

FIRST EXAMPLE.

\_The regular active verb LOVE, conjugated affirmatively\_.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

\_Present. Preterit. Imperfect Participle. Perfect Participle.\_

Love. Loved. Loving. Loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.[260]

The infinitive mood is that form of the verb, which expresses the being,

action, or passion, in an unlimited manner, and without person or number.

It is used only in the present and perfect tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.

This tense is the \_root\_, or \_radical verb\_; and is usually preceded by the

preposition \_to\_, which shows its relation to some other word: thus,

To love.

PERFECT TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary \_have\_ to the perfect participle; and,

like the infinitive present, is usually preceded by the preposition \_to\_:

thus,

To have loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

The indicative mood is that form of the verb, which simply indicates or

declares a thing, or asks a question. It is used in all the tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.

The present indicative, in its simple form, is essentially the same as the

present infinitive, or radical verb; except that the verb \_be\_ has \_am\_ in

the indicative.

1. The simple form of the present tense is varied thus:--

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1st person, I love, 1st person. We love,

2d person, Thou lovest, 2d person, You love,

3d person, He loves; 3d person, They love.

2. This tense may also be formed by prefixing the auxiliary \_do\_ to the

verb: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I do love, 1. We do love,

2. Thou dost love, 2. You do love,

3. He does love; 3. They do love.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

This tense, in its simple form is \_the preterit\_; which, in all regular

verbs, adds \_d\_ or \_ed\_ to the present, but in others is formed variously.

1. The simple form of the imperfect tense is varied thus:--

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I loved, 1. We loved,

2. Thou lovedst, 2. You loved,

3. He loved; 3. They loved.

2. This tense may also be formed by prefixing the auxiliary \_did\_ to the

present: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I did love, 1. We did love,

2. Thou didst love, 2. You did love,

3. He did love; 3. They did love.

PERFECT TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary \_have\_ to the perfect participle: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I have loved, 1. We have loved,

2. Thou hast loved, 2. You have loved,

3. He has loved; 3. They have loved.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary \_had\_ to the perfect participle: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I had loved, 1. We had loved,

2. Thou hadst loved, 2. You had loved,

3. He had loved; 3. They had loved.

FIRST-FUTURE TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary \_shall\_ or \_will\_ to the present: thus,

1. Simply to express a future action or event:--

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I shall love, 1. We shall love,

2. Thou wilt love, 2. You will love,

3. He will love; 3. They will love;

2. To express a promise, volition, command, or threat:--

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I will love, 1. We will love,

2. Thou shalt love, 2. You shall love,

3. He shall love; 3. They shall love.

SECOND-FUTURE TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliaries \_shall have\_ or \_will have\_ to the

perfect participle: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I shall have loved, 1. We shall have loved,

2. Thou wilt have loved, 2. You will have loved,

3. He will have loved; 3. They will have loved.

OBS.--The auxiliary \_shall\_ may also be used in the second and third

persons of this tense, when preceded by a conjunction expressing condition

or contingency; as, "\_If\_ he \_shall have completed\_ the work by

midsummer."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 80. So, with the conjunctive adverb

\_when\_; as, "Then cometh the end, \_when\_ he \_shall have delivered\_ up the

kingdom to God, even the Father; \_when\_ he \_shall have put\_ down all rule

and all authority and power."--\_1 Cor.\_, xv, 24. And perhaps \_will\_ may

here be used in the first person to express a promise, though such usage, I

think, seldom occurs. Professor Fowler has given to this tense, first, the

"\_Predictive\_" form, as exhibited above, and then a form which he calls

"\_Promissive\_," and in which the auxiliaries are varied thus: "Singular. 1.

I \_will\_ have taken. 2. Thou \_shalt\_ have taken, you \_shall\_ have taken. 3.

He \_shall\_ have taken. Plural. 1. We \_will\_ have taken. 2. Ye \_or\_ you

\_shall\_ have taken. 3. He [say \_They\_,] \_shall\_ have taken."--\_Fowler's E.

Gram.\_, 8vo., N. Y., 1850, p. 281. But the other instances just cited show

that such a form is not always promissory.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

The potential mood is that form of the verb, which expresses the power,

liberty, possibility, or necessity of the being, action, or passion. It is

used in the first four tenses; but the potential \_imperfect\_ is properly an

\_aorist\_: its time is very indeterminate; as, "He \_would be\_ devoid of

sensibility were he not greatly satisfied."--\_Lord Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

Vol. i, p. 11.

PRESENT TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary \_may, can\_, or \_must\_, to the radical

verb: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I may love, 1. We may love,

2. Thou mayst love, 2. You may love,

3. He may love; 3. They may love.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliary \_might, could, would\_, or \_should\_, to

the radical verb: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might love, 1. We might love,

2. Thou mightst love, 2. You might love,

3. He might love; 3. They might love.

PERFECT TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliaries, \_may have, can have\_, or \_must have\_,

to the perfect participle: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I may have loved, 1. We may have loved,

2. Thou mayst have loved, 2. You may have loved,

3. He may have loved; 3. They may have loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

This tense prefixes the auxiliaries, \_might have, could have, would have\_,

or \_should have\_, to the perfect participle: thus,

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might have loved, 1. We might have loved,

2. Thou mightst have loved, 2. You might have loved,

3. He might have loved; 3. They might have loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive mood is that form of the verb, which represents the being,

action, or passion, as conditional, doubtful, or contingent. This mood is

generally preceded by a conjunction; as, \_if, that, though, lest, unless,

except\_. But sometimes, especially in poetry, it is formed by a mere

placing of the verb before the nominative; as, "\_Were I\_," for, "\_If I

were\_;"--"\_Had he\_," for, "\_If he had\_;"--"\_Fall we\_" for, "\_If we

fall\_;"--"\_Knew they\_," for, "\_If they knew\_." It does not vary its

termination at all, in the different persons.[261] It is used in the

present, and sometimes in the imperfect tense; rarely--and perhaps never

\_properly\_--in any other. As this mood can be used only in a dependent

clause, the \_time\_ implied in its tenses is always relative, and generally

indefinite; as,

"It shall be in eternal restless change,

Self-fed, and self-consum'd: \_if this fail\_,

The pillar'd firmament is rottenness."--\_Milton, Comus\_, l. 596.

PRESENT TENSE.

This tense is generally used to express some condition on which a future

action or event is affirmed. It is therefore erroneously considered by some

grammarians, as an elliptical form of the future.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I love, 1. If we love,

2. If Thou love, 2. If you love,

3. If He love; 3. If they love.

OBS.--In this tense, the auxiliary \_do\_ is sometimes employed; as, "If thou

\_do prosper\_ my way."--\_Genesis\_, xxiv, 42. "If he \_do\_ not \_utter\_

it."--\_Leviticus\_, v, 1. "If he \_do\_ but \_intimate\_ his desire."--\_Murray's

Key\_, p. 207. "If he \_do promise\_, he will certainly perform."--\_Ib.\_, p.

208. "An event which, if it ever \_do occur\_, must occur in some future

period."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, (3d Ed., Lond.,) p. 89. "If he \_do\_ but

\_promise\_, thou art safe."--\_Ib.\_, 89.

"Till old experience \_do attain\_

To something like prophetic strain."--MILTON: \_Il Penseroso\_.

These examples, if they are right, prove the tense to be \_present\_, and not

\_future\_, as Hiley and some others suppose it to be.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

This tense, like the imperfect of the potential mood, with which it is

frequently connected, is properly an aorist, or indefinite tense; for it

may refer to time past, present, or future: as, "If therefore perfection

\_were\_ by the Levitical priesthood, what further need \_was\_ there that an

other priest \_should rise\_?"--\_Heb.\_, vii, 11. "They must be viewed

\_exactly\_ in the same light, as if the intention to purchase \_now

existed\_."--\_Murray's Parsing Exercises\_, p. 24. "If it \_were\_ possible,

they \_shall deceive\_ the very elect."--\_Matt.\_, xxiv, 24. "If the whole

body \_were\_ an eye, where \_were\_ the hearing?"--\_1 Corinthians\_, xii, 17.

"If the thankful \_refrained\_, it \_would be\_ pain and grief to

them."--\_Atterbury\_.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I loved, 1. If we loved,

2. If thou loved, 2. If you loved,

3. If he loved; 3. If they loved.

OBS.--In this tense, the auxiliary \_did\_ is sometimes employed. The

subjunctive may here be distinguished from the indicative, by these

circumstances; namely, that the time is indefinite, and that the

supposition is always contrary to the fact: as, "Great is the number of

those who might attain to true wisdom, if they \_did not already think\_

themselves wise."--\_Dillwyn's Reflections\_, p. 36. This implies that they

\_do think\_ themselves wise; but an indicative supposition or

concession--(as, "Though they \_did not think\_ themselves wise, they were

so--") accords with the fact, and with the literal time of the tense,--here

time past. The subjunctive imperfect, suggesting the idea of what is not,

and known by the sense, is sometimes introduced without any of the \_usual

signs\_; as, "In a society of perfect men, \_where all understood\_ what was

morally right, and \_were determined\_ to act accordingly, it is obvious,

that human laws, or even human organization to enforce God's laws, would be

altogether unnecessary, and could serve no valuable purpose."--PRES.

SHANNON: \_Examiner\_, No. 78.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative mood is that form of the verb, which is used in commanding,

exhorting, entreating, or permitting. It is commonly used only in the

second person of the present tense.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ 2. Love [thou,] \_or\_ Do thou love;

\_Plural.\_ 2. Love [ye \_or\_ you,] \_or\_ Do you love.

OBS.--In the Greek language, which has three numbers, the imperative mood

is used in the second and third persons of them all; and has also several

different tenses, some of which cannot be clearly rendered in English. In

Latin, this mood has a distinct form for the third person, both singular

and plural. In Italian, Spanish, and French, the first person plural is

also given it. Imitations of some of these forms are occasionally employed

in English, particularly by the poets. Such imitations must be referred to

this mood, unless by ellipsis and transposition we make them out to be

something else; and against this there are strong objections. Again, as

imprecation on one's self is not impossible, the first person singular may

be added; so that this mood \_may possibly have\_ all the persons and

numbers. Examples: "\_Come we\_ now to his translation of the

Iliad."--\_Pope's Pref. to Dunciad\_. "\_Proceed we\_ therefore in our

subject."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Blessed be he\_ that blesseth thee."--\_Gen.\_, xxvii, 29.

"Thy \_kingdom come\_."--\_Matt.\_, vi, 10. "But \_pass we\_ that."--\_W. Scott\_.

"Third person: \_Be he, Be they\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 92.

"My soul, \_turn\_ from them--\_turn we\_ to survey," &c.--\_Goldsmith\_.

"Then \_turn we\_ to her latest tribune's name."--\_Byron\_.

"Where'er the eye could light these words you read:

'Who \_comes\_ this way--\_behold\_, and \_fear\_ to sin!'"--\_Pollok\_.

"\_Fall he\_ that must, beneath his rival's arms,

And \_live the rest\_, secure of future harms."--\_Pope\_.

"\_Cursed be I\_ that did so!--All the \_charms\_

Of Sycorax, toads, beetles, bats, \_light\_ on you!"--\_Shakspeare\_.

"\_Have done\_ thy charms, thou hateful wither'd hag!"--\_Idem\_.

PARTICIPLES.

1. \_The Imperfect\_. 2. \_The Perfect\_. 3. \_The Preperfect\_.

Loving. Loved. Having loved.

SYNOPSIS OF THE FIRST EXAMPLE.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

IND. I love \_or\_ do love, I loved \_or\_ did love, I have loved. I had loved,

I shall \_or\_ will love, I shall \_or\_ will have loved. POT. I may, can, \_or\_

must love; I might, could, would, \_or\_ should love; I may, can, \_or\_ must

have loved; I might, could, would, \_or\_ should have loved. SUBJ. If I love,

If I loved.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

IND. Thou lovest \_or\_ dost love, Thou lovedst \_or\_ didst love, Thou hast

loved, Thou hadst loved, Thou shalt \_or\_ wilt love, Thou shalt \_or\_ wilt

have loved. POT. Thou mayst, canst, \_or\_ must love; Thou mightst, couldst,

wouldst, \_or\_ shouldst love; Thou mayst, canst, \_or\_ must have loved; Thou

mightst, couldst, wouldst \_or\_ shouldst have loved. SUBJ. If thou love, If

thou loved. IMP. Love [thou,] \_or\_ Do thou love.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

IND. He loves \_or\_ does love, He loved \_or\_ did love, He has loved, He had

loved, He shall \_or\_ will love, He shall \_or\_ will have loved. POT. He may,

can, \_or\_ must love; He might, could, would, \_or\_ should love; He may, can,

\_or\_ must have loved; He might, could, would, \_or\_ should have loved. SUBJ.

If he love, If he loved.

FIRST PERSON PLURAL.

IND. We love \_or\_ do love, We loved \_or\_ did loved, We have loved, We had

loved, We shall \_or\_ will love, We shall \_or\_ will have loved. POT. We may,

can, \_or\_ must love, We might, could, would, \_or\_ should love; We may, can,

\_or\_ must have loved; We might, could, would, \_or\_ should have loved. SUBJ.

If we love, If we loved.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

IND. You love \_or\_ do love, You loved \_or\_ did love, You have loved, You

had loved, You shall \_or\_ will love, You shall \_or\_ will have loved. POT.

You may, can, \_or\_ must love; You might, could, would, \_or\_ should love;

You may, can, \_or\_ must have loved; You might, could, would, \_or\_ should

have loved. SUBJ. If you love, If you loved. IMP. Love [ye \_or\_ you,] \_or\_

Do you love.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

IND. They love \_or\_ do love, They loved \_or\_ did love, They have loved,

They had loved, They shall \_or\_ will love, They shall \_or\_ will have loved.

POT. They may, can, \_or\_ must love; They might, could, would, \_or\_ should

love; They may, can, \_or\_ must have loved; They might, could, would, \_or\_

should have loved. SUBJ. If they love, If they loved.

FAMILIAR FORM WITH 'THOU.'

NOTE.--In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb, is

usually and more properly formed thus:

IND. Thou lov'st \_or\_ dost love, Thou loved \_or\_ did love, Thou hast loved,

Thou had loved, Thou shall \_or\_ will love, Thou shall \_or\_ will have loved.

POT. Thou may, can, \_or\_ must love; Thou might, could, would, \_or\_ should

love; Thou may, can, \_or\_ must have loved; Thou might, could, would, \_or\_

should have loved. SUBJ. If thou love, If thou loved. IMP. Love [thou,]

\_or\_ Do thou love.

SECOND EXAMPLE.

\_The irregular active verb SEE, conjugated affirmatively.\_

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

\_Present\_. \_Preterit\_. \_Imp. Participle\_. \_Perf. Participle\_.

See. Saw. Seeing. Seen.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. To See.

PERFECT TENSE. To have seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I see, 2. Thou seest, 3. He sees;

\_Plural\_. 1. We see, 2. You see, 3. They see.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I saw, 2. Thou sawest, 3. He saw;

\_Plural\_. 1. We saw, 2. You saw, 3. They saw.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I have seen, 2. Thou hast seen, 3. He has seen;

\_Plural\_. 1. We have seen, 2. You have seen, 3. They have seen.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I had seen, 2. Thou hadst seen, He had seen;

\_Plural\_. 1. We had seen, 2. You had seen, 3. They had seen.

FIRST-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I shall see, 2. Thou wilt see, He will see;

\_Plural\_. 1. We shall see, 2. You will see, 3. They will see.

SECOND-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I shall have seen, 2. Thou wilt have seen, 3. He will have

seen;

\_Plural\_. 1. We shall have seen, 2. You will have seen, 3. They will have

seen.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I may see, 2. Thou mayst see, 3. He may see;

\_Plural\_. 1. We may see, 2. You may see, 3. They may see.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I might see, 2. Thou mightst see, 3. He might see;

\_Plural\_. 1. We might see, 2. You might see, 3. They might see.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I may have seen, 2. Thou mayst have seen, 3. He may have

seen;

\_Plural.\_ 1. We may have seen, 2. You may have seen, 3. They may have seen.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. I might have seen, 2. Thou mightst have seen, 3. He might

have seen;

\_Plural\_. 1. We might have seen, 2. You might have seen, 3. They might have

seen.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. If I see, 2. If thou see, 3. If he see;

\_Plural\_. 1. If we see, 2. If you see, 3. If they see.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 1. If I saw, 2. If thou saw, 3. If he saw;

\_Plural\_. 1. If we saw, 2. If you saw, 3. If they saw.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ 2. See [thou,] \_or\_ Do thou see; \_Plural.\_ 2. See [ye \_or\_

you,] \_or\_ Do you see.

PARTICIPLES.

1. \_The Imperfect\_. 2. \_The Perfect\_. 3. \_The Preperfect\_.

Seeing. Seen. Having seen.

NOTES.

NOTE I--The student ought to be able to rehearse the form of a verb, not

only according to the order of the entire conjugation, but also according

to the synopsis of the several persons and numbers. One sixth part of the

paradigm, thus recited, gives in general a fair sample of the whole: and,

in class recitations, this mode of rehearsal will save much time: as, IND.

I see \_or\_ do see, I saw \_or\_ did see, I have seen, I had seen, I shall

\_or\_ will see, I shall \_or\_ will have seen. POT. I may, can, \_or\_ must see;

I might, could, would, \_or\_ should see; I may, can, \_or\_ must have seen; I

might, could, would, \_or\_ should have seen. SUBJ. If I see, If I saw.

NOTE II.--In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb is

usually and more properly formed thus: IND. Thou seest \_or\_ dost see, Thou

saw \_or\_ did see, Thou hast seen, Thou had seen, Thou shall \_or\_ will see,

Thou shall \_or\_ will have seen. POT. Thou may, can, \_or\_ must see; Thou

might, could, would, \_or\_ should see; Thou may, can, \_or\_ must have seen;

Thou might, could, would, \_or\_ should have seen. SUBJ. If thou see, If thou

saw. IMP. See [thou,] \_or\_ Do thou see.

THIRD EXAMPLE.

\_The irregular neuter verb BE, conjugated affirmatively\_.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

\_Present.\_ \_Preterit.\_ \_Imp. Participle.\_ \_Perf. Participle.\_

Be. Was. Being. Been.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

To be.

PERFECT TENSE.

To have been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I am, 1. We are,

2. Thou art, 2. You are,

3. He is; 3. They are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I was, 1. We were,

2. Thou wast, (\_or\_ wert,)[262] 2. You were,

3. He was; 3. They were.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I have been, 1. We have been,

2. Thou hast been, 2. You have been,

3. He has been; 3. They have been.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I had been, 1. We had been,

2. Thou hadst been, 2. You had been,

3. He had been; 3. They had been.

FIRST-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I shall be, 1. We shall be,

2. Thou wilt be, 2. You will be,

3. He will be; 3. They will be.

SECOND-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I shall have been, 1. We shall have been,

2. Thou wilt have been, 2. You will have been,

3. He will have been; 3. They will have been.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I may be, 1. We may be,

2. Thou mayst be, 2. You may be,

3. He may be, 3. They may be.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might be, 1. We might be,

2. Thou mightst be, 2. You might be,

3. He might be; 3. They might be.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I may have been, 1. We may have been,

2. Thou mayst have been, 2. You may have been,

3. He may have been; 3. They may have been.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might have been, 1. We might have been,

2. Thou mightst have been, 2. You might have been,

3. He might have been; 3. They might have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I be, 1. If we be,

2. If thou be, 2. If you be,

3. If he be; 3. If they be.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I were,[263] 1. If we were,

2. If thou were, \_or\_ wert,[264] 2. If you were,

3. If he were; If they were.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 2. Be [thou,] \_or\_ Do thou be;

\_Plural\_. 2. Be [ye \_or\_ you,] \_or\_ Do you be.

PARTICIPLES.

1. \_The Imperfect\_. 2. \_The Perfect\_. 3. \_The Preperfect\_.

Being. Been. Having been.

FAMILIAR FORM WITH 'THOU.'

NOTE.--In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb, is

usually and more properly formed thus: IND. Thou art, Thou was, Thou hast

been, Thou had been, Thou shall \_or\_ will be, Thou shall \_or\_ will have

been. POT. Thou may, can, \_or\_ must be; Thou might, could, would, \_or\_

should be; Thou may, can, \_or\_ must have been; Thou might, could, would,

\_or\_ should have been. SUBJ. If thou be, If thou were. IMP. Be [thou,] \_or\_

Do thou be.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--It appears that \_be\_, as well as \_am\_, was formerly used for the

indicative present: as, "I be, Thou beest, He be; We be, Ye be, They be."

See \_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 114. Dr. Lowth, whose Grammar is still

preferred at Harvard University, gives both forms, thus: "I am, Thou art,

He is; We are, Ye are, They are. Or, I be, Thou beest, He \_is\_; We be, Ye

be, They be." To the third person singular, he subjoins the following

example and remark: "'I think it \_be\_ thine indeed, for thou liest in it.'

Shak. Hamlet. \_Be\_, in the singular number of this time and mode,

especially in the third person, is obsolete; and \_is become\_ somewhat

antiquated \_in the plural\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 36. Dr. Johnson gives

this tense thus: "\_Sing\_. I am; thou art; he is; \_Plur\_. We are, \_or\_ be;

ye are, \_or\_ be; they are, \_or\_ be." And adds, "The plural \_be\_ is now

little in use."--\_Gram. in Johnson's Dict.\_, p. 8. The Bible commonly has

\_am, art, is\_, and \_are\_, but not always; the indicative \_be\_ occurs in

some places: as, "We \_be\_ twelve brethren."--\_Gen.\_, xlii, 32. "What \_be\_

these two olive branches?"--\_Zech.\_, iv, 12. Some traces of this usage

still occur in poetry: as,

"There \_be\_ more things to greet the heart and eyes

In Arno's dome of Art's most princely shrine,

Where Sculpture with her rainbow sister vies;

There \_be\_ more marvels yet--but not for mine."

--\_Byron's Childe Harold\_, Canto iv, st. 61.

OBS. 2.--Respecting the verb \_wert\_, it is not easy to determine whether it

is most properly of the indicative mood only, or of the subjunctive mood

only, or of both, or of neither. The \_regular\_ and \_analogical\_ form for

the indicative, is "Thou \_wast\_;" and for the subjunctive, "If thou

\_were\_." Brightland exhibits, "I \_was\_ or \_were\_, Thou \_wast\_ or \_wert\_, He

\_was\_ or \_were\_," without distinction of mood, for the three persons

singular; and, for the plural, \_were\_ only. Dr. Johnson gives us, for the

indicative, "Thou wast, \_or\_ wert;" with the remark, "\_Wert\_ is properly of

the \_conjunctive\_ mood, and ought not to be used in the

indicative."--\_Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 8. In his conjunctive (or subjunctive)

mood, he has, "Thou \_beest\_," and "Thou \_wert\_." So Milton wrote, "If thou

\_beest\_ he."--\_P. Lost\_, B. i, l. 84. Likewise Shakspeare: "If thou \_beest\_

Stephano."--\_Tempest\_. This inflection of \_be\_ is obsolete: all now say,

"If thou \_be\_." But \_wert\_ is still in use, to some extent, \_for both

moods\_; being generally placed by the grammarians in the subjunctive only,

but much oftener written for the indicative: as, "Whate'er thou art or

\_wert\_."--\_Byron's Harold\_, Canto iv, st. 115. "O thou that \_wert\_ so

happy!"--\_Ib.\_, st. 109. "Vainly \_wert\_ thou wed."--\_Ib.\_, st. 169.

OBS. 3.--Dr. Lowth gave to this verb, BE, that form of the subjunctive

mood, which it now has in most of our grammars; appending to it the

following examples and questions: "'Before the sun, Before the Heavens,

thou \_wert\_.'--\_Milton\_. 'Remember what thou \_wert\_.'--\_Dryden\_. 'I knew

thou \_wert\_ not slow to hear.'--\_Addison\_. 'Thou who of old \_wert\_ sent to

Israel's court.'--\_Prior\_. 'All this thou \_wert\_.'--\_Pope\_. 'Thou, Stella,

\_wert\_ no longer young.'--\_Swift\_. Shall we, in deference to these great

authorities," asks the Doctor, "allow \_wert\_ to be the same with \_wast\_,

and common to the indicative and [the] subjunctive mood? or rather abide by

the practice of our best ancient writers; the propriety of the language,

which requires, as far as may be, distinct forms, for different moods; and

the analogy of formation in each mood; I \_was\_, thou \_wast\_; I \_were\_, thou

\_wert\_? all which conspire to make \_wert\_ peculiar to the subjunctive

mood."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 37; \_Churchill's\_, p. 251. I have before shown,

that several of the "best ancient writers" \_did not inflect\_ the verb

\_were\_, but wrote "\_thou were\_;" and, surely, "the analogy of formation,"

requires that the subjunctive \_be not inflected\_. Hence "the propriety

which requires distinct forms," requires not \_wert\_, in either mood. Why

then should we make this contraction of the old indicative form \_werest\_, a

\_solitary exception\_, by fixing it in the subjunctive only, and that in

opposition to the best authorities that ever used it? It is worthier to

take rank with its kindred \_beest\_, and be called an \_archaism\_.

OBS. 4.--The chief characteristical difference between the indicative and

the subjunctive mood, is, that in the latter the verb is \_not inflected at

all\_, in the different persons: IND. "Thou \_magnifiest\_ his work." SUBJ.

"Remember that thou \_magnify\_ his work."--\_Job\_, xxxvi, 24. IND. "He \_cuts\_

off, \_shuts\_ up, and \_gathers\_ together." SUBJ. "If he \_cut\_ off, and

\_shut\_ up, or \_gather\_ together, then who can hinder him?"--\_Job\_, xl, 10.

There is also a difference of meaning. The Indicative, "If he \_was\_,"

admits the fact; the Subjunctive, "If he \_were\_," supposes that he was

not. These moods may therefore be distinguished by the sense, even when

their forms are alike: as, "Though \_it thundered\_, it did not

rain."--"Though \_it thundered\_, he would not hear it." The indicative

assumption here is, "Though it \_did thunder\_," or, "Though there \_was

thunder\_;" the subjunctive, "Though it \_should thunder\_," or, "Though there

\_were\_ thunder." These senses are clearly different. Writers however are

continually confounding these moods; some in one way, some in an other.

Thus S. R. Hall, the teacher of a \_Seminary for Teachers\_: "SUBJ. \_Present

Tense\_. 1. If I be, \_or\_ am, 2. If thou be, \_or\_ art, 3. If he be, \_or\_ is;

1. If we be, \_or\_ are, 2. If ye \_or\_ you be, \_or\_ are, 3. If they be, \_or\_

are. \_Imperfect Tense\_. 1. If I were, \_or\_ was, 2. If thou wert, \_or\_ wast,

3. If he were, \_or\_ was; 1. If we were, 2. If ye \_or\_ you were, 3. If they

were."--\_Hall's Grammatical Assistant\_, p. 11. Again: "SUBJ. \_Present

Tense\_. 1. If I love, 2. If thou \_lovest\_, 3. If he love," &c. "The

remaining tenses of this \_mode\_, are, \_in general\_, similar to the

correspondent tenses of the Indicative \_mode, only\_ with the conjunction

prefixed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 20. Dr. Johnson observes, "The indicative and

conjunctive moods are by modern writers frequently confounded; or rather

the conjunctive is wholly neglected, when some convenience of versification

does not invite its revival. It is used among the purer writers of former

times; as, 'Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham \_be\_ ignorant of

us, and Israel \_acknowledge\_ us not.'"--\_Gram. in Joh. Dict.\_, p. 9. To

neglect the subjunctive mood, or to confound it with the indicative, is to

augment several of the worst faults of the language.

II. COMPOUND OR PROGRESSIVE FORM.

Active and neuter verbs may also be conjugated, by adding the Imperfect

Participle to the auxiliary verb BE, through all its changes; as, "I \_am

writing\_ a letter."--"He \_is sitting\_ idle."--"They \_are going\_." This form

of the verb denotes a \_continuance\_ of the action or state of being, and

is, on many occasions, preferable to the simple form of the verb.

FOURTH EXAMPLE.

\_The irregular active verb READ, conjugated affirmatively, in the Compound

Form.\_

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE SIMPLE VERB.

\_Present.\_ \_Preterit.\_ \_Imp. Participle.\_ \_Perf. Participle.\_

R=ead. R~ead. R=eading. R~ead.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

To be reading.

PERFECT TENSE.

To have been reading.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I am reading, 1. We are reading,

2. Thou art reading, 2. You are reading,

3. He is reading; 3. They are reading.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I was reading, 1. We were reading,

2. Thou wast reading, 2. You were reading,

3. He was reading; 3. They were reading.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I have been reading, 1. We have been reading,

2. Thou hast been reading, 2. You have been reading,

3. He has been reading; 3. They have been reading.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I had been reading, 1. We had been reading,

2. Thou hadst been reading, 2. You had been reading,

3. He had been reading; 3. They had been reading.

FIRST-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I shall be reading, 1. We shall be reading,

2. Thou wilt be reading, 2. You will be reading,

3. He will be reading; 3. They will be reading.

SECOND-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular.\_ \_Plural.\_

1. I shall have been reading, 1. We shall have been reading,

2. Thou wilt have been reading, 2. You will have been reading,

3. He will have been reading; 3. They will have been reading.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I may be reading, 1. We may be reading,

2. Thou mayst be reading, 2. You may be reading,

3. He may be reading; 3. They may be reading.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might be reading, 1. We might be reading,

2. Thou mightst be reading, 2. You might be reading,

3. He might be reading; 3. They might be reading.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I may have been reading, 1. We may have been reading,

2. Thou mayst have been reading, 2. You may have been reading,

3. He may have been reading; 3. They may have been reading.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might have been reading, 1. We might have been reading,

2. Thou mightst have been reading, 2. You might have been reading,

3. He might have been reading; 3. They might have been reading.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I be reading, 1. If we be reading,

2. If thou be reading, 2. If you be reading,

3. If he be reading; 3. If they be reading.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I were reading, 1. If we were reading,

2. If thou were reading, 2. If you were reading,

3. If he were reading; 3. If they were reading.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. 2. Be [thou] reading, \_or\_ Do thou be reading;

Plur. 2. Be [ye or you] reading, \_or\_ Do you be reading.

PARTICIPLES.

1. \_The Imperfect\_. 2. \_The Perfect\_. 3. \_The Preperfect\_.

Being reading. --------- Having been reading.

FAMILIAR FORM WITH 'THOU.'

NOTE.--In the familiar style, the second person singular of this verb, is

usually and more properly formed thus: IND. Thou art reading, Thou was

reading, Thou hast been reading, Thou had been reading, Thou shall \_or\_

will be reading, Thou shall \_or\_ will have been reading. POT. Thou may,

can, \_or\_ must be reading; Thou might, could, would, \_or\_ should be

reading; Thou may, can, \_or\_ must have been reading; Thou might, could,

would, \_or\_ should have been reading. SUBJ. If thou be reading, If thou

were reading. IMP. Be [thou,] reading, \_or\_ Do thou be reading.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Those verbs which, in their simple form, imply continuance, do not

admit the compound form: thus we say, "I \_respect\_ him;" but not, "I \_am

respecting\_ him." This compound form seems to imply that kind of action,

which is susceptible of intermissions and renewals. Affections of the mind

or heart are supposed to last; or, rather, actions of this kind are

complete as soon as they exist. Hence, \_to love, to hate, to desire, to

fear, to forget, to remember\_, and many other such verbs, are \_incapable\_

of this method of conjugation.[265] It is true, we often find in grammars

such models, as, "I \_was loving\_, Thou \_wast loving\_, He \_was loving\_," &c.

But this language, to express what the authors intend by it, is not

English. "He \_was loving\_," can only mean, "He was \_affectionate\_:" in

which sense, loving is an adjective, and susceptible of comparison. Who, in

common parlance, has ever said, "He \_was loving me\_," or any thing like it?

Yet some have improperly published various examples, or even whole

conjugations, of this spurious sort. See such in \_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 91;

\_Gould's Adam\_, 83; \_Bullions's English Gram.\_, 52; \_his Analyt. and Pract.

Gram.\_, 92; \_Chandler's New Gram.\_, 85 and 86; \_Clark's\_, 80; \_Cooper's

Plain and Practical\_, 70; \_Frazee's Improved\_, 66 and 69; \_S. S. Greene's\_,

234; \_Guy's\_, 25; \_Hallock's\_, 103; \_Hart's\_, 88; \_Hendrick's\_, 38;

\_Lennie's\_, 31; \_Lowth's\_, 40; \_Harrison's\_, 34; \_Perley's\_, 36; \_Pinneo's

Primary\_, 101.

OBS. 2.--Verbs of this form have sometimes a passive signification; as,

"The books \_are now selling\_."--\_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 82. "As the money \_was

paying\_ down."--\_Ainsworth's Dict., w.\_ As. "It requires no motion in the

organs whilst it \_is forming\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 8. "Those works \_are

long forming\_ which must always last."--\_Dr. Chetwood\_. "While the work of

the temple \_was carrying\_ on."--\_Dr. J. Owen\_. "The designs of Providence

\_are carrying on\_."--\_Bp. Butler\_. "A scheme, which \_has been carrying\_ on,

and \_is\_ still \_carrying\_ on."--\_Id., Analogy\_, p. 188. "We are permitted

to know nothing of what \_is transacting\_ in the regions above us."--\_Dr.

Blair\_. "While these things \_were transacting\_ in Germany."--\_Russell's

Modern Europe\_, Part First, Let. 59. "As he \_was carrying\_ to execution, he

demanded to be heard."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. i, p. 163. "To declare

that the action \_was doing\_ or done."--\_Booth's Introd.\_, p. 28. "It \_is

doing\_ by thousands now."--\_Abbott's Young Christian\_, p. 121. "While the

experiment \_was making\_, he was watching every movement."--\_Ib.\_, p. 309.

"A series of communications from heaven, which \_had been making\_ for

fifteen hundred years."--\_Ib.\_, p. 166. "Plutarch's Lives \_are

re-printing\_."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 64. "My Lives \_are

reprinting\_."--DR. JOHNSON: \_Worcester's Univ. and Crit. Dict.\_, p. xlvi.

"All this \_has been transacting\_ within 130 miles of London."--BYRON:

\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 37. "When the heart \_is corroding\_ by

vexations."--\_Student's Manual\_, p. 336. "The padlocks for our lips \_are

forging\_."--WHITTIER: \_Liberator\_, No. 993. "When his throat \_is

cutting\_."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_. "While your story \_is

telling\_."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, i, 425. "But the seeds of it \_were sowing\_

some time before."--\_Bolingbroke, on History\_, p. 168. "As soon as it was

formed, nay even whilst it \_was forming\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 163. "Strange schemes

of private ambition \_were formed and forming\_ there."--\_Ib.\_, p. 291. "Even

when it \_was making and made\_."--\_Ib.\_, 299. "Which have been made and \_are

making\_."--HENRY CLAY: \_Liberator\_, ix, p. 141. "And they are in measure

\_sanctified\_, or \_sanctifying\_, by the power thereof."--\_Barclay's Works\_,

i, 537. "Which \_is\_ now \_accomplishing\_ amongst the uncivilized countries

of the earth."--\_Chalmers, Sermons\_, p. 281. "Who \_are ruining\_, or

\_ruined\_, [in] this way."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 155. "Whilst they \_were

undoing\_."--\_Ibid.\_ "Whether he was employing fire to consume [something,]

or \_was\_ himself \_consuming\_ by fire."--\_Crombie, on Etym. and Syntax\_, p.

148. "At home, the greatest exertions \_are making\_ to promote its

progress."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. iv. "With those [sounds] which \_are

uttering\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 125. "Orders \_are now concerting\_ for the dismissal

of all officers of the Revenue marine."--\_Providence Journal\_, Feb. 1,

1850. Expressions of this kind are condemned by some critics, under the

notion that the participle in \_ing\_ must never be passive; but the usage is

unquestionably of far better authority, and, according to my apprehension,

in far better taste, than the more complex phraseology which some late

writers adopt in its stead; as, "The books \_are\_ now \_being sold\_."--"In

all the towns about Cork, the whiskey shops \_are being closed\_, and soup,

coffee, and tea houses [are] \_establishing\_ generally."--\_Dublin Evening

Post\_, 1840.

OBS. 3.--The question here is, Which is the most correct expression, "While

the bridge \_was building\_,"--"While the bridge was \_a\_ building,"--or,

"While the bridge \_was being built\_?" And again, Are they all wrong? If

none of these is right, we must reject them all, and say, "While \_they were

building\_ the bridge;"--"While the bridge \_was in process of

erection\_;"--or resort to some other equivalent phrase. Dr. Johnson, after

noticing the compound form of active-intransitives, as, "I \_am

going\_"--"She \_is dying\_,"--"The tempest \_is raging\_,"--"I \_have been

walking\_," and so forth, adds: "There is another manner of using the active

participle, which gives it a \_passive\_ signification:[266] as, The grammar

is now printing, \_Grammatica jam nunc chartis imprimitur\_. The brass is

forging, \_Æra excuduntur\_. This is, in my opinion," says he, "a \_vitious\_

expression, probably corrupted from a phrase more pure, but now somewhat

obsolete: The book is \_a\_ printing, The brass is \_a\_ forging; \_a\_ being

properly \_at\_, and \_printing\_ and \_forging\_ verbal nouns signifying action,

according to the analogy of this language."--\_Gram. in Joh. Dict.\_, p. 9.

OBS. 4.--\_A\_ is certainly sometimes a \_preposition\_; and, as such, it may

govern a participle, and that without converting it into a "\_verbal noun\_."

But that such phraseology ought to be preferred to what is exhibited with

so many authorities, in a preceding paragraph, and with an example from

Johnson among the rest, I am not prepared to concede. As to the notion of

introducing a new and more complex passive form of conjugation, as, "The

bridge is \_being built\_," "The bridge \_was being built\_," and so forth, it

is one of the most absurd and monstrous innovations ever thought of. Yet

some two or three men, who seem to delight in huge absurdities, declare

that this "modern \_innovation\_ is \_likely to supersede\_" the simpler mode

of expression. Thus, in stead of, "The work \_is now publishing\_," they

choose to say, "The work is \_now being published\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

82. This is certainly no better English than, "The work \_was being

published, has been being published, had been being published, shall or

will be being published, shall or will have been being published\_;" and so

on, through all the moods and tenses. What a language shall we have when

our verbs are thus conjugated!

OBS. 5.--A certain \_Irish\_ critic, who even outdoes in rashness the

above-cited American, having recently arrived in New York, has republished

a grammar, in which he not only repudiates the passive use of the

participle in \_ing\_, but denies the usual passive form of the present

tense, "\_I am loved, I am smitten\_" &c., as taught by Murray and others, to

be good English; and tells us that the true form is, "\_I am being loved, I

am being smitten\_," &c. See the 98th and 103d pages of \_Joseph W. Wright's

Philosophical Grammar\_, (\_Edition of\_ 1838,) \_dedicated\_ "TO COMMON

SENSE!" [267] But both are offset, if not refuted, by the following

observations from a source decidedly better: "It has lately become common

to use the present participle passive [,] to express the suffering of an

action as \_continuing\_, instead of the participle in \_-ing\_ in the passive

sense; thus, instead of, 'The house \_is building\_,' we now very frequently

hear, 'The house \_is being built\_.' This mode of expression, besides being

awkward, is incorrect, and \_does not express the idea intended\_. This will

be obvious, I think, from the following considerations.

"1. The expression, '\_is being\_,' is equivalent to '\_is\_,' and expresses no

more; just as, '\_is loving\_,' is equivalent to, '\_loves\_.' Hence, '\_is

being built\_,' is precisely equivalent to, '\_is built\_.'

"2. '\_Built\_,' is a perfect participle; and therefore cannot, in any

connexion, express an action, or the suffering of an action, \_now in

progress\_. The verb \_to be\_, signifies \_to exist\_; '\_being\_,' therefore, is

equivalent to '\_existing\_.' If then we substitute the synonyme, the nature

of the expression will be obvious; thus, 'the house is \_being built\_,' is,

in other words, 'the house is \_existing built\_,' or more simply as before,

'the house \_is built\_;' plainly importing an action not progressing, but

now \_existing in a finished state\_.

"3. If the expression, '\_is being built\_,' be a correct form of the present

indicative passive, then it must be equally correct to say in the perfect,

'\_has been being built\_;' in the past perfect, '\_had been being built\_;' in

the present infinitive,'\_to be being built\_;' in the perfect

infinitive,'\_to have been being built\_;' and in the present participle,

'\_being being built\_;' which all will admit to be expressions as incorrect

as they are inelegant, but precisely analogous to that which now begins to

prevail."--\_Bullions's Principles of English Gram.\_, p. 58.

OBS. 6.--It may be replied, that the verbs \_to be\_ and \_to exist\_ are not

always synonymous; because the former is often a mere auxiliary, or a mere

copula, whereas the latter always means something positive, as \_to be in

being, to be extant\_. Thus we may speak of a thing as \_being destroyed\_, or

may say, it \_is annihilated\_; but we can by no means speak of it as

\_existing destroyed\_, or say, it \_exists annihilated\_. The first argument

above is also nugatory. These drawbacks, however, do not wholly destroy the

force of the foregoing criticism, or at all extenuate the obvious tautology

and impropriety of such phrases as, \_is being, was being\_, &c. The

gentlemen who affirm that this new form of conjugation "\_is being

introduced\_ into the language," (since they allow participles to follow

possessive pronouns) may very fairly be asked, "What evidence have you of

\_its being being introduced\_?" Nor can they, on their own principles,

either object to the monstrous phraseology of this question, or tell how to

better it![268]

OBS. 7.--D. H. Sanborn, an other recent writer, has very emphatically

censured this innovation, as follows: "English and American writers have of

late introduced a new kind of phraseology, which has become quite prevalent

in the periodical and popular publications of the day. Their intention,

doubtless, is, to supersede the use of the verb in the \_definite form\_,

when it has a passive signification. They say, 'The ship is \_being\_

built,'--'time is \_being wasted\_,"--'the work is \_being advanced\_,' instead

of, 'the ship is \_building\_, time is \_wasting\_, the work is \_advancing\_.'

Such a phraseology is a solecism too palpable to receive any favor; it is

at war with the practice of the most distinguished writers in the English

language, such as Dr. Johnson and Addison. "When an individual says, 'a

house is being burned,' he declares that a house is \_existing, burned\_,

which is impossible; for \_being\_ means existing, and \_burned, consumed by

fire\_. The house ceases to exist as such, after it is consumed by fire. But

when he says, 'a house \_is burning\_,' we understand that it is \_consuming

by fire\_; instead of inaccuracy, doubt, and ambiguity, we have a form of

expression perfectly intelligible, beautiful, definite, and

appropriate."--\_Sanborn's Analytical Gram.\_, p. 102.

OBS. 8.--Dr. Perley speaks of this usage thus: "An attempt has been made of

late to introduce a kind of passive participial voice; as, 'The temple is

being built.' This ought not to be encouraged. For, besides being an

innovation, it is less convenient than the use of the present participle in

the passive sense. \_Being built\_ signifies action \_finished\_; and how can,

\_Is being built\_, signify an \_action unfinished?"--Perley's Gram.\_, p. 37.

OBS. 9.--The question now before us has drawn forth, on either side, a deal

of ill scholarship and false logic, of which it would be tedious to give

even a synopsis. Concerning the import of some of our most common words and

phrases, these ingenious masters,--Bullions, Sanborn, and

Perley,--severally assert some things which seem not to be exactly true. It

is remarkable that critics can err in expounding terms so central to the

language, and so familiar to all ears, as "\_be, being, being built, burned,

being burned, is, is burned, to be burned\_," and the like. \_That to be\_ and

\_to exist\_, or their like derivatives, such as \_being\_ and \_existing, is\_

and \_exists\_, cannot always explain each other, is sufficiently shown

above; and thereby is refuted Sanborn's chief argument, that, "\_is being

burned\_," involves the contradiction of "\_existing, burned\_," or "\_consumed

by fire\_." According to his reasoning, as well as that of Bullions, \_is

burned\_ must mean \_exists consumed; was burned, existed consumed\_; and thus

our whole passive conjugation would often be found made up of bald

absurdities! That this new \_unco-passive\_ form conflicts with the older and

better usage of taking the progressive form sometimes passively, is

doubtless a good argument against the innovation; but that "Johnson and

Addison" are fit representatives of the older "practice" in this case, may

be doubted. I know not that the latter has anywhere made use of such

phraseology; and one or two examples from the former are scarcely an offset

to his positive verdict against the usage. See OBS. 3rd, above.

OBS. 10.--As to what is called "\_the present\_ or \_the imperfect participle

passive\_,"--as, "\_being burned\_," or "\_being burnt\_,"--if it is rightly

interpreted in \_any\_ of the foregoing citations, it is, beyond question,

very improperly \_thus\_ named. In participles, \_ing\_ denotes \_continuance\_:

thus \_being\_ usually means \_continuing to be; loving, continuing to love;

building, continuing to build\_,--or (as taken passively) \_continuing to be

built\_: i. e., (in words which express the sense more precisely and

certainly,) \_continuing to be in process of construction\_. What then is

"being built," but "\_continuing to be built\_," the same, or nearly the

same, as "\_building\_" taken passively? True it is, that \_built\_, when

alone, being a perfect participle, does not mean "\_in process of

construction\_," but rather, "\_constructed\_" which intimates \_completion\_;

yet, in the foregoing passive phrases, and others like them, as well as in

all examples of this unco-passive voice, continuance of the passive state

being first suggested, and cessation of the act being either regarded as

future or disregarded, the imperfect participle passive is for the most

part received as equivalent to the simple imperfect used in a passive

sense. But Dr. Bullions, who, after making "\_is being built\_ precisely

equivalent to \_is built\_," classes the two participles differently, and

both erroneously,--the one as a "\_present\_ participle," and the other, of

late, as a "\_past\_,"--has also said above, "'\_Built\_,' is a \_perfect\_

participle: and THEREFORE cannot, in \_any connexion\_, express an action, or

the suffering of an action, \_now in progress\_." And Dr. Perley, who also

calls the compound of \_being\_ a "\_present\_ participle," argues thus:

"\_Being built\_ signifies an \_action, finished\_; and how can \_Is being

built\_, signify an \_action unfinished\_?" To expound a \_passive\_ term

\_actively\_, or as "signifying \_action\_," is, at any rate, a near approach

to absurdity; and I shall presently show that the fore-cited notion of "a

perfect participle," now half abandoned by Bullions himself, has been the

seed of the very worst form of that ridiculous neology which the good

Doctor was opposing.

OBS. 11.--These criticisms being based upon the \_meaning\_ of certain

participles, either alone or in phrases, and the particular terms spoken of

being chiefly meant to represent \_classes\_, what is said of them may be

understood of their \_kinds\_. Hence the appropriate \_naming\_ of the kinds,

so as to convey no false idea of any participle's import, is justly brought

into view; and I may be allowed to say here, that, for the first participle

passive, which begins with "\_being\_," the epithet "\_Imperfect\_" is better

than "\_Present\_," because this compound participle denotes, not always

what is \_present\_, but always \_the state\_ of something by which an action

is, \_or was, or will be, undergone or undergoing--a state continuing\_, or

so regarded, though perhaps the action causative may be ended--or sometimes

perhaps imagined only, and not yet really begun. With a marvellous

instability of doctrine, for the professed systematizer of different

languages and grammars, Dr. Bullions has recently changed his names of the

second and third participles, in both voices, from "\_Perfect\_" and

"\_Compound Perfect\_," to "\_Past\_" and "\_Perfect\_." His notion now is, that,

"\_The Perfect\_ participle is always compound; as, \_Having finished, Having

been finished\_."--\_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract. Grammar\_, 1849, p. 77. And

what was the "\_Perfect\_" before, in his several books, is now called the

"\_Past\_;" though, with this change, he has deliberately made an other which

is repugnant to it: this participle, being the basis of three tenses

always, and of all the tenses sometimes, is now allowed by the Doctor to

lend the term "\_perfect\_" to the three,--"\_Present-perfect, Past-perfect,

Future-perfect,"\_--even when itself is named otherwise!

OBS. 12.--From the erroneous conception, that a perfect participle must, in

every connexion, express "\_action finished\_," \_action past\_,--or perhaps

from only a moiety of this great error,--the notion that such a participle

cannot, in connexion with an auxiliary, constitute a passive verb of the

\_present tense\_,--J. W. Wright, above-mentioned, has not very unnaturally

reasoned, that, "The expression, '\_I am loved\_,' which Mr. Murray has

employed to exhibit the passive conjugation of the \_present tense\_, may

much more \_feasibly\_ represent \_past\_ than \_present\_ time."--See \_Wright's

Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 99. Accordingly, in his own paradigm of the

passive verb, he has formed \_this\_ tense solely from what he calls the

participle \_present\_, thus: "I \_am being smitten\_, Thou \_art being

smitten\_," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 98. His "\_Passed Tense\_," too, for some reason

which I do not discover, he distinguishes above the rest by a \_double

form\_, thus: "I \_was smitten, or being smitten\_; Thou \_wast smitten, or

being smitten\_;" &c.--P. 99. In his opinion, "Few will object to \_the

propriety of\_ the more familiar phraseology, '\_I am in the\_ ACT,--or,

\_suffering\_ the ACTION \_of\_ BEING SMITTEN;' and yet," says he, "in

substance and effect, it is wholly the same as, '\_I am being smitten\_,'

which is THE TRUE FORM of the verb in the \_present\_ tense of the \_passive

voice!\_"--\_Ibid.\_ Had we not met with some similar expressions of English

or American blunderers, "the \_act\_ or \_action of being smitten\_," would be

accounted a downright Irish bull; and as to this ultra notion of

neologizing all our passive verbs, by the addition of "\_being\_,"--with the

author's cool talk of "\_the presentation of this theory, and\_ [\_the\_]

\_consequent suppression of that hitherto employed\_,"--there is a

transcendency in it, worthy of the most sublime aspirant among grammatical

newfanglers.

OBS. 13.--But, with all its boldness of innovation, Wright's Philosophical

Grammar is not a little \_self-contradictory\_ in its treatment of the

passive verb. The entire "suppression" of the usual form of its present

tense, did not always appear, even to this author, quite so easy and

reasonable a matter, as the foregoing citations would seem to represent it.

The passive use of the participle in \_ing\_, he has easily disposed of:

despite innumerable authorities for it, one false assertion, of seven

syllables, suffices to make it quite impossible.[269] But the usual passive

form, which, with some show of truth, is accused of not having always

precisely the same meaning as the progressive used passively,--that is, of

not always denoting \_continuance in the state of receiving continued

action\_,--and which is, for that remarkable reason, judged worthy of

\_rejection\_, is nevertheless admitted to have, in very many instances, a

conformity to this idea, and therefore to "belong [thus far] to the present

tense."--P. 103. This contradicts to an indefinite extent, the proposition

for its rejection. It is observable also, that the same examples, '\_I am

loved\_' and 'I \_am smitten\_,'--the same "\_tolerated, but erroneous forms\_,"

(so called on page 103,) that are given as specimens of what he would

reject,--though at first pronounced "\_equivalent\_ in grammatical

construction," censured for the same pretended error, and proposed to be

changed alike to "\_the true form\_" by the insertion of "\_being\_,"--are

subsequently declared to "belong to" different classes and different

tenses. "\_I am loved\_," is referred to that "numerous" class of verbs,

which "\_detail\_ ACTION \_of prior, but retained, endured, and continued

existence\_; and therefore, in this sense, \_belong to the present tense\_."

But "\_I am smitten\_," is idly reckoned of an opposite class, (said by Dr.

Bullions to be "perhaps the greater number,") whose "ACTIONS described are

neither \_continuous\_ in their nature, nor \_progressive\_ in their duration;

but, on the contrary, \_completed\_ and \_perfected\_; and [which] are

consequently descriptive of \_passed\_ time and ACTION."--\_Wright's Gram.\_,

p. 103. Again: "In what instance soever this latter form and signification

\_can\_ be introduced, \_their import should be, and, indeed, ought to be,

supplied by the perfect tense construction\_:--for example, '\_I am

smitten\_,' [should] be, '\_I have been smitten\_.'"--\_Ib.\_ Here is

self-contradiction indefinitely extended \_in an other way\_. Many a good

phrase, if not every one, that the author's first suggestion would turn to

the unco-passive form, his present "\_remedy\_" would about as absurdly

convert into "the perfect tense."

OBS. 14.--But Wright's inconsistency, about this matter, ends not here: it

runs through all he says of it; for, in this instance, error and

inconsistency constitute his whole story. In one place, he anticipates and

answers a question thus: "To what tense do the constructions, 'I am

pleased;' 'He is expected;' '\_I am smitten\_;' 'He is bound;' belong?" "We

answer:--\_So far as\_ these and like constructions are applicable to the

delineation of \_continuous\_ and \_retained\_ ACTION, they express \_present\_

time; and must be treated accordingly."--P. 103. This seems to intimate

that even, "\_I am smitten\_," and its likes, as they stand, may have some

good claim to be of the present tense; which suggestion is contrary to

several others made by the author. To expound this, or any other passive

term, \_passively\_, never enters his mind: with him, as with sundry others,

"ACTION," "\_finished\_ ACTION," or "\_progressive\_ ACTION," is all any

\_passive\_ verb or participle ever means! No marvel, that awkward

perversions of the forms of utterance and the principles of grammar should

follow such interpretation. In Wright's syntax a very queer distinction is

apparently made between a passive verb, and the participle chiefly

constituting it; and here, too, through a fancied ellipsis of "\_being\_"

before the latter, most, if not all, of his other positions concerning

passives, are again disastrously overthrown by something worse--a word

"\_imperceptibly understood\_." "'\_I am smitten\_;' '\_I was smitten\_;' &c.,

are," he says, "the \_universally acknowledged forms\_ of the VERBS in these

tenses, in the passive voice:--not of the \_PARTICIPLE\_. In all verbal

constructions of the character of which we have hitherto treated, (see page

103) \_and, where\_ the ACTIONS described are \_continuous\_ in their

\_operations\_,--the participle BEING is \_imperceptibly omitted, by

ellipsis\_."--P. 144.

OBS. 15.--Dr. Bullions has stated, that, "The present participle active,

and the present participle passive, are \_not counterparts\_ to each other in

signification; [,] the one signifying the present doing, and the other the

present suffering of an action, [;] for the latter \_always intimates the

present being of an\_ ACT, \_not in progress, but completed\_."--\_Prin. of

Eng. Gram.\_, p. 58. In this, he errs no less grossly than in his idea of

the "\_action\_ or the suffering" expressed by "a \_perfect\_ participle," as

cited in OBS. 5th above; namely, that it must have \_ceased\_. Worse

interpretation, or balder absurdity, is scarcely to be met with; and yet

the reverend Doctor, great linguist as he should be, was here only trying

to think and tell the common import of a very common sort of \_English\_

participles; such as, "\_being loved\_" and "\_being seen\_." In grammar, "\_an

act\_," that has "\_present being\_," can be nothing else than an act now

doing, or "\_in progress\_;" and if, "\_the present being of an\_ ACT \_not in

progress\_," were here a possible thought, it surely could not be intimated

by any \_such\_ participle. In Acts, i, 3 and 4, it is stated, that our

Saviour showed himself to the apostles, "alive after his passion, by many

infallible proofs, \_being seen\_ of them forty days, and \_speaking\_ of the

things \_pertaining\_ to the kingdom of God; and, \_being assembled\_ together

with them commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem." Now,

of these misnamed "\_present\_ participles," we have here one "\_active\_," one

"\_passive\_," and two others--(one in each form--) that are \_neuter\_; but

\_no present time\_, except what is in the indefinite date of "\_pertaining\_."

The events are past, and were so in the days of St. Luke. Yet each of the

participles denotes \_continuance\_: not, indeed, in or to the \_present

time\_, but \_for a time\_. "\_Being seen\_" means \_continuing to be seen\_; and,

in this instance, the period of the continuance was "forty days" of time

past. But, according to the above-cited "\_principle of English Grammar\_,"

so long and so widely inculcated by "the Rev. Peter Bullions, D. D.,

Professor of Languages," &c.,--a central principle of interpretation,

presumed by him to hold "\_always\_"--this participle must intimate "\_the

present being of an act, not in progress, but completed\_;"--that is, "\_the

present being of" the apostles' act in formerly seeing the risen Saviour\_!

OBS. 16.--This grammarian has lately taken a deal of needless pains to

sustain, by a studied division of verbs into two classes, similar to those

which are mentioned in OBS. 13th above, a part of the philosophy of J. W.

Wright, concerning our usual form of passives in the present tense. But, as

he now will have it, that the two voices sometimes tally as counterparts,

it is plain that he adheres but partially to his former erroneous

conception of a perfect or "past" participle, and the terms which hold it

"in any connexion." The awkward substitutes proposed by the Irish critic,

he does not indeed countenance; but argues against them still, and, in some

respects, very justly. The doctrine now common to these authors, on this

point, is the highly important one, that, in respect to half our verbs,

what we commonly take for the passive present, \_is not such\_--that, in "the

\_second\_ class, (perhaps the greater number,) the \_present-passive\_ implies

that \_the act expressed by the active voice has ceased\_. Thus, 'The house

is built.' \* \* \* Strictly speaking, then," says the Doctor, "the PAST

PARTICIPLE with the verb TO BE \_is not the present tense in the passive

voice of verbs thus used\_; that is, this form does not express passively

the \_doing\_ of the act."--\_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract. Grammar\_, Ed. of

1849, p. 235. Thus far these two authors agree; except that Wright seems to

have avoided the incongruity of \_calling\_ that "\_the present-passive\_"

which he \_denies\_ to be such. But the Doctor, approving none of this

practitioner's "remedies," and being less solicitous to provide other

treatment than expulsion for the thousands of present passives which both

deem spurious, adds, as from the chair, this verdict: "These verbs either

\_have no present-passive\_, or it is made by annexing the participle in

\_ing\_, in its passive sense, to the verb \_to be\_; as, 'The house \_is

building\_.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 236.

OBS. 17.--It would seem, that Dr. Bullions thinks, and in reality Wright

also, that nothing can be a present passive, but what "\_expresses passively

the\_ DOING \_of the act\_." This is about as wise, as to try to imagine every

active verb to \_express actively the receiving of an act\_! It borders

exceedingly hard upon absurdity; it very much resembles the nonsense of

"\_expressing receptively the giving of something\_!" Besides, the word

"DOING," being used substantively, does not determine well what is here

meant; which is, I suppose, \_continuance\_, or an \_unfinished state\_ of the

act received--an idea which seems adapted to the participle in \_ing\_, but

which it is certainly no fault of a participle ending in \_d, t\_, or \_n\_,

not to suggest. To "\_express passively the doing of the act\_," if the

language means any thing rational, may be, simply to say, that the act \_is\_

or \_was done\_. For "\_doings\_" are, as often as any-wise, "\_things done\_,"

as \_buildings\_ are \_fabrics built\_; and "\_is built\_," and "\_am smitten\_,"

the gentlemen's choice examples of \_false passives\_, and of "\_actions

finished\_,"--though neither of them necessarily intimates either

continuance or cessation of the act suffered, or, if it did, would be the

less or the more passive or present,--may, in such a sense, "express \_the

doing\_ of the act," if any passives can:--nay, the "finished act" has such

completion as may be stated with degrees of progress or of frequency; as,

"The house \_is partly built\_."--"I \_am oftener smitten\_." There is,

undoubtedly, some difference between the assertions, "The house \_is

building\_,"--and, "The house \_is partly built\_;" though, for practical

purposes, perhaps, we need not always be very nice in choosing between

them. For the sake of variety, however, if for nothing else, it is to be

hoped, the doctrine above-cited, which limits half our passive verbs of the

present tense, \_to the progressive form only\_, will not soon be generally

approved. It impairs the language more than unco-passives are likely ever

to corrupt it.

OBS. 18.--"No \_startling novelties\_ have been introduced," says the preface

to the "Analytical and Practical Grammar of the English Language." To have

shunned all shocking innovations, is only to have exercised common

prudence. It is not pretended, that any of the Doctor's errors here

remarked upon, or elsewhere in this treatise, will \_startle\_ any body; but,

if errors exist, even in plausible guise, it may not be amiss, if I tell of

them. To suppose every verb or participle to be either "\_transitive\_" or

"\_intransitive\_," setting all \_passives\_ with the former sort, all

\_neuters\_ with the latter; (p. 59;)--to define the \_transitive\_ verb or

participle as expressing always "\_an act\_ DONE \_by one person or thing to

another\_;" (p. 60;)--to say, after making passive verbs transitive, "The

object of a transitive verb is in the \_objective case\_," and, "A verb that

does not make sense with an objective after it, is intransitive;" (p.

60;)--to insist upon a precise and almost universal \_identity of "meaning\_"

in terms so obviously \_contrasted\_ as are the two voices, "active" and

"passive;" (pp. 95 and 235;)--to allege, as a general principle, "that

whether we use the active, or the passive voice, \_the meaning is the same\_,

except in some cases in the present tense;" (p. 67;)--to attribute to the

forms naturally opposite in voice and sense, that sameness of meaning which

is observable only in certain \_whole sentences\_ formed from them; (pp. 67,

95, and 235;)--to assume that each "VOICE is a particular \_form of the

verb\_," yet make it include \_two cases\_, and often a preposition before one

of them; (pp. 66, 67, and 95;)--to pretend from the words, "The PASSIVE

VOICE represents the subject of the verb as \_acted upon\_," (p. 67,) that,

"\_According to the\_ DEFINITION, the passive voice expresses, passively,

\_the same thing\_ that the active does actively;" (p. 235;)--to affirm that,

"'Cæsar \_conquered\_ Gaul,' and 'Gaul \_was conquered\_ by Cæsar,' express

\_precisely the same idea\_,"--and then say, "It will be felt at once that

the expressions, 'Cæsar \_conquers\_ Gaul,' and 'Gaul \_is conquered\_ by

Cæsar,' \_do not express the same thing\_;" (p. 235;)--to deny that passive

verbs or neuter are worthy to constitute a distinct class, yet profess to

find, in one single tense of the former, such a difference of meaning as

warrants a general division of verbs in respect to it; (\_ib.\_;)--to

announce, in bad English, that, "\_In regard to this matter\_ [,] there are

evidently Two CLASSES of verbs; namely, those \_whose\_ present-passive

expresses precisely the same thing, passively, as the active voice does

actively, and those \_in which it\_ does not:" (\_ib.\_;)--to do these several

things, as they have been done, is, to set forth, not "novelties" only, but

errors and inconsistencies.

OBS. 19.--Dr. Bullions still adheres to his old argument, that \_being\_

after its own verb must be devoid of meaning; or, in his own words, "that

\_is being built\_, if it mean anything, can mean nothing more than \_is

built\_, which is not the idea intended to be expressed."--\_Analyt. and

Pract. Gram.\_, p. 237. He had said, (as cited in OBS. 5th above,) "The

expression, '\_is being\_,' is equivalent to \_is\_, and expresses \_no more\_;

just as, '\_is loving\_,' is equivalent to '\_loves\_.' Hence, '\_is being

built\_,' is precisely equivalent to '\_is built\_.'"--\_Principles of E.

Gram.\_, p. 58. He has now discovered "that \_there is no progressive form\_

of the verb \_to be\_, and no need of it:" and that, "hence, \_there is no

such expression\_ in English as \_is being\_."--\_Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, p.

236. He should have noticed also, that "\_is loving\_" is not an authorized

"equivalent to \_loves\_;" and, further, that the error of saying "\_is being

built\_," is only in the relation of the \_first two words\_ to each other. If

"\_is being\_," and "\_is loving\_," are left unused for the same reason, the

truth may be, that \_is\_ itself, like \_loves\_, commonly denotes

"\_continuance\_;" and that \_being\_ after it, in stead of being necessary or

proper, can only be awkwardly tautologous. This is, in fact, THE GRAND

OBJECTION to the new phraseology--"\_is being practised\_"--"\_am being

smitten\_"--and the like. Were there no danger that petty writers would one

day seize upon it with like avidity, an other innovation, exactly similar

to this in every thing but tense--similar in awkwardness, in tautology, in

unmistakeableness--might here be uttered for the sake of illustration. Some

men conceive, that "The \_perfect\_ participle is always compound; as,

\_having seen, having written\_;"--and that the simple word, \_seen\_ or

\_written\_, had originally, and still ought to have, only a passive

construction. For such views, they find authorities. Hence, in lieu of the

common phrases, "\_had we seen\_," "\_we have written\_," they adopt such

English as this; "\_Had we having seen\_ you, we should have stopped."--"\_We

have having written\_ but just now, to our correspondent." Now, "\_We are

being smitten\_," is no better grammar than this;--and no worse: "The idea

intended" is in no great jeopardy in either case.

OBS. 20.--J. R. Chandler, of Philadelphia, in his Common School Grammar of

1847, has earnestly undertaken the \_defence\_ of this new and much-mooted

passive expression: which he calls "\_the Definite Passive Voice\_," or "\_the

Passive Voice of the Definite Form\_." He admits it, however, to be a form

that "does not \_sound well\_,"--a "\_novelty\_ that strikes the ear

unpleasantly;" but he will have the defect to be, not in the tautologous

conceit of "\_is being\_," "\_was being\_," "\_has been being\_," and the like,

but in everybody's organ of hearing,--supposing all ears corrupted, "from

infancy," to a distaste for correct speech, by "the habit of \_hearing\_ and

using words \_ungrammatically\_!"--See p. 89. Claiming this new form as "\_the

true passive\_," in just contrast with the progressive active, he not only

rebukes all attempts "to evade" the use of it, "by some real or supposed

\_equivalent\_," but also declares, that, "The attempt to deprive the

transitive definite verb of [this] \_its passive voice\_, is \_to strike at

the foundation of the language\_, and \_to strip it of one of its most

important qualities\_; that of making both actor and sufferer, each in turn

and at pleasure, the subject of conversation."--\_Ibid.\_ Concerning

\_equivalents\_, he evidently argues fallaciously; for he urges, that the

using of them "\_does not dispense with the necessity of the definite

passive voice\_."--P. 88. But it is plain, that, of the many fair

substitutes which may in most cases be found, if any one is preferred, this

form, and all the rest, are of course rejected for the time.

OBS. 21.--By Chandler, as well as others, this new passive form is

justified only on the supposition, that the simple participle in \_ing\_ can

never with propriety be used passively. No plausible argument, indeed, can

be framed for it, without the assumption, that the simpler form, when used

in the same sense, \_is ungrammatical\_. But this is, in fact, a begging of

the main question; and that, in opposition to abundant authority for the

usage condemned. (See OBS. 3d, above.) This author pretends that, "\_The

RULE of all grammarians\_ declares the verb \_is\_, and a \_present participle\_

(\_is building\_, or \_is writing\_), to be in the active voice" only.--P. 88.

(I add the word "\_only\_," but this is what he means, else he merely

quibbles.) Now in this idea he is wrong, and so are the several grammarians

who support the principle of this imaginary "\_RULE\_." The opinion of

critics in general would be better represented by the following suggestions

of the Rev. W. Allen: "When the English verb does not signify \_mental

affection\_, the distinction of voice is often disregarded: thus we say,

\_actively\_, they \_were selling\_ fruit; and, \_passively\_, the books \_are\_

now \_selling\_. The same remark applies to the participle used as a noun:

as, actively, \_drawing\_ is an elegant amusement, \_building\_ is expensive;

and, passively, his \_drawings\_ are good, this is a fine

\_building\_."--\_Allen's Elements of E. Gram.\_, p. 82.

OBS. 22.--Chandler admits, that, "When it is said, 'The house is

\_building\_,' the meaning is easily obtained; though," he strangely insists,

"\_it is exactly opposite to the assertion\_."--P. 89. He endeavours to show,

moreover, by a fictitious example made for the purpose, that the

progressive form, if used in both voices, will be liable to ambiguity. It

may, perhaps, be so in some instances; but, were there weight enough in the

objection to condemn the passive usage altogether, one would suppose there

might be found, somewhere, \_an actual example or two\_ of the abuse. Not

concurring with Dr. Bullions in the notion that the active voice and the

passive usually "express precisely the same thing," this critic concludes

his argument with the following sentence: "There is an \_important

difference\_ between \_doing\_ and \_suffering\_; and that \_difference is

grammatically shown\_ by the appropriate use of the active and passive

voices of a verb."--\_Chandler's Common School Gram.\_, p. 89.

OBS. 23.--The opinion given at the close of OBS. 2d above, was first

published in 1833. An opposite doctrine, with the suggestion that it is

"\_improper\_ to say, '\_the house is building\_,' instead of 'the house \_is

being built\_,'"--is found on page 64th of the Rev. David Blair's Grammar,

of 1815,--"Seventh Edition," with a preface dated, "\_October 20th\_, 1814."

To any grammarian who wrote at a period much earlier than that, the

question about \_unco-passives\_ never occurred. Many critics have passed

judgement upon them since, and so generally with reprobation, that the man

must have more hardihood than sense, who will yet disgust his readers or

hearers with them.[270] That "This new form has been used by \_some

respectable writers\_," we need not deny; but let us look at the given

"\_instances of it\_: 'For those who \_are being educated\_ in our seminaries.'

R. SOUTHEY.--'It \_was being uttered\_.' COLERIDGE.--'The foundation \_was

being laid\_.' BRIT. CRITIC."--\_English Grammar with Worcester's Univ. and

Crit. Dict.\_, p. xlvi. Here, for the first example, it would be much better

to say, "For those who \_are educated\_," [271]--or, "who \_are receiving

their education\_;" for the others, "It \_was uttering\_,"--"\_was

uttered\_,"--or, "\_was in uttering\_."--"The foundation \_was laying\_,"--"\_was

laid\_,"--or, "\_was about being laid\_." Worcester's opinion of the "new

form" is to be inferred from his manner of naming it in the following

sentence: "Within a few years, a \_strange and awkward\_ neologism has been

introduced, by which the \_present passive participle\_ is substituted, in

such cases as the above, for the participle in \_ing\_."--\_Ibid.\_ He has two

instances more, in each of which the phrase is linked with an expression of

disapprobation; "' It [[Greek: tetymmenos]] signifies properly, though \_in

uncouth English\_, one who \_is being beaten\_.' ABP. WHATELY.--'The bridge

\_is being built\_, and other phrases of the like kind, \_have\_ pained the

eye.' D. BOOTH."--\_Ibid.\_[272]

OBS. 24.--Richard Hiley, in the third edition of his Grammar, published in

London, in 1840, after showing the passive use of the participle in \_ing\_,

proceeds thus: "No ambiguity arises, we presume, from the use of the

participle in this manner. To avoid, however, affixing a passive

signification to the participle in \_ing\_, an attempt has lately been made

to substitute the passive participle in its place. Thus instead of 'The

house was \_building\_,' 'The work \_imprinting\_,' we sometimes hear, 'The

house was \_being built\_,' 'The work is \_being printed\_.' But this mode is

\_contrary to the English idiom\_, and has not yet obtained the sanction of

reputable authority."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 30.

OBS. 25.--Professor Hart, of Philadelphia, whose English Grammar was first

published in 1845, justly prefers the usage which takes the progressive

form occasionally in a passive sense; but, in arguing against the new

substitute, he evidently remoulds the early reasoning of Dr. Bullions,

errors and all; a part of which he introduces thus: "I know the correctness

of this mode of expression has lately been very much assailed, and an

attempt, to some extent successful, has been made [,] to introduce the form

[,] \_'is being built.'\_ But, in the first place, the old mode of expression

is a well established usage of the language, being found in our best and

most correct writers. Secondly, \_is being built\_ does not convey the idea

intended, [;] namely [,] that of \_progressive action. Is being\_, taken

together, means simply \_is\_, just as \_is writing\_ means \_writes\_;

therefore, \_is being built\_ means \_is built\_, a perfect and not a

progressive ACTION. Or, if \_being\_ [and] \_built\_ be taken together, \_they

signify an\_ ACTION COMPLETE, and the phrase means, as before, \_the house

is\_ (EXISTS) \_being built\_."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 76. The last three

sentences here are liable to many objections, some of which are suggested

above.

OBS. 26.--It is important, that the central phraseology of our language be

so understood, as not to be \_misinterpreted with credit\_, or falsely

expounded by popular critics and teachers. Hence errors of \_exposition\_ are

the more particularly noticed in these observations. In "\_being built\_,"

Prof. Hart, like sundry authors named above, finds nothing but "ACTION

COMPLETE." Without doubt, Butler interprets better, when he says, "'The

house \_is built\_,' denotes an \_existing state\_, rather than a \_completed

action\_." But this author, too, in his next three sentences, utters as many

errors; for he adds: "The name of the agent \_cannot be expressed\_ in

phrases of this kind. We \_cannot say\_, 'The house is built \_by John\_.' When

we say, 'The house is built by mechanics,' we \_do not express an existing

state\_."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 80. Unquestionably, "\_is built by

mechanics\_," expresses \_nothing else\_ than the "\_existing state\_" of being

"built by mechanics," together with an affirmation:--that is, the "existing

state" of receiving the action of mechanics, is affirmed of "the house."

And, in my judgement, one may very well say, "\_The house is built by

John\_;" meaning, "\_John is building the house.\_" St. Paul says, "Every

house \_is builded by\_ SOME MAN."--\_Heb.\_, iii, 4. In this text, the common

"name of the agent" is "expressed."

OBS. 27.--Wells and Weld, whose grammars date from 1846, being remarkably

chary of finding anything wrong in "respectable writers," hazard no opinion

of their own, concerning the correctness or incorrectness of either of the

usages under discussion. They do not always see absurdity in the

approbation of opposites; yet one should here, perhaps, count them with the

majorities they allow. The latter says, "The participle in \_ing\_ is

sometimes used passively; as, forty and six years was this temple in

\_building\_; not in \_being built\_."--\_Weld's English Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 170.

Here, if he means to suggest, that "\_in being built\_" would "not" be good

English, he teaches very erroneously; if his thought is, that this phrase

would "not" express the sense of the former one, "\_in building\_," he

palpably contradicts his own position! But he proceeds, in a note, thus:

"The form of expression, \_is being built, is being committed\_, &c., is

almost universally condemned by grammarians; but it is \_sometimes\_ met with

in respectable writers. It occurs most frequently in newspaper paragraphs,

and in hasty compositions."--\_Ibid.\_ Wells comments thus: "Different

opinions have long existed among critics respecting this passive use of

the imperfect participle. Many respectable writers substitute the compound

passive participle; as, 'The house is \_being built\_;' 'The book is \_being

printed\_.' But the prevailing practice of the best authors is in favor of

the \_simple form\_; as, 'The house \_is building\_.'"--\_Wells's School Gram.\_,

1st Ed., p. 148; 113th Ed., p. 161.[273]

OBS. 28.--S. W. Clark, in the second edition of his Practical Grammar,

stereotyped and published in New York in 1848, appears to favour the

insertion of "\_being\_" into passive verbs; but his instructions are so

obscure, so often inaccurate, and so incompatible one with an other, that

it is hard to say, with certainty, what he approves. In one place, he has

this position: "The Passive Voice of a verb is formed by adding the

\_Passive Participle\_ of that verb, to the verb \_be\_. EXAMPLES--To \_be\_

loved. I \_am\_ feared. They \_are\_ worshipped."--Page 69. In an other, he has

this: "When the Subject is to be represented as receiving the action, \_the

Passive Participle\_ should be used. EXAMPLE--Henry's \_lesson\_ is BEING

RECITED."--P. 132. Now these two positions utterly confound each other; for

they are equally general, and "\_the Passive Participle\_" is first one

thing, and then an other. Again, he has the following assertions, both

false: "The Present (or First) Participle \_always\_ ends in \_ing\_, and is

\_limited to the Active Voice\_. The Past (or Second) Participle of Regular

Verbs ends in \_d\_ or \_ed\_, and is \_limited to the Passive Voice\_."--P. 131.

Afterwards, in spite of the fancied limitation, he acknowledges the passive

use of the participle in \_ing\_, and that there is "\_authority\_" for it;

but, at the same time, most absurdly supposes the word to predicate

"\_action\_," and also to be \_wrong\_: saying, "\_Action\_ is \_sometimes\_

predicated of a \_passive\_ subject. EXAMPLE--'The \_house is building\_,..

for.. 'The \_house is being built\_,'.. which means.. The house \_is becoming

built\_." On this, he remarks thus: "This is one of the instances in which

\_Authority\_ is against \_Philosophy\_. For an \_act\_ cannot \_properly\_ be

predicated of a \_passive agent\_. Many good writers \_properly reject\_ this

idiom. 'Mansfield's prophecy \_is being realized\_.'--MICHELET'S

LUTHER."--\_Clark's Practical Gram.\_, p. 133. It may require some study to

learn from this \_which idiom it is\_. that these "many good writers reject:"

but the grammarian who can talk of "\_a passive agent\_," without perceiving

that the phrase is self-contradictory and absurd, may well be expected to

entertain a "Philosophy" which is against "Authority," and likewise to

prefer a ridiculous innovation to good and established usage.

OBS. 29.--As

most verbs are susceptible of both forms, the simple active and the

compound or progressive, and likewise of a transitive and an intransitive

sense in each; and as many, when taken intransitively, may have a meaning

which is scarcely distinguishable from that of the passive form; it often

happens that this substitution of the imperfect participle passive for the

simple imperfect in \_ing\_, is quite needless, even when the latter is not

considered passive. For example: "See by the following paragraph, how

widely the bane \_is being circulated!\_"--\_Liberator\_, No. 999, p. 34. Here

\_is circulating\_ would be better; and so would \_is circulated\_. Nor would

either of these much vary the sense, if at all; for "\_circulate\_" may mean,

according to Webster, "\_to be diffused\_," or, as Johnson and Worcester have

it, "\_to be dispersed\_." See the second marginal note on p. 378.

OBS. 30.--R. G. Parker appears to have formed a just opinion of the "modern

innovation," the arguments for which are so largely examined in the

foregoing observations; but the "principle" which he adduces as

"conclusive" against it, if \_principle\_ it can be called, has scarcely any

bearing on the question; certainly no more than has the simple assertion of

one reputable critic, that our participle in \_ing\_ may occasionally be used

passively. "Such expressions as the following," says he, "have recently

become very common, not only in the periodical publications of the day, but

are likewise finding favor with popular writers; as, 'The house \_is being

built\_.' 'The street \_is being paved\_.' 'The actions that \_are\_ now \_being

performed\_,' &c. 'The patents \_are being prepared\_.' The usage of the best

writers does not sanction these expressions; and Mr. Pickbourn lays down

the following principle, which is conclusive upon the subject. '\_Whenever

the participle\_ in \_ing\_ is joined by an auxiliary verb to a nominative

capable of the action, it is taken actively; but, when joined to one

incapable of the action, it becomes passive. If we say, \_The man are

building a house\_, the participle \_building\_ is evidently used in an active

sense; \_because\_ the men are capable of the action. But when we say, \_The

house is building\_, or, \_Patents are preparing\_, the participles \_building\_

and \_preparing\_ must necessarily be understood in a passive sense; because

neither the house nor the patents are capable of action.'--See Pickbourn on

the English Verb, pp. 78-80."--\_Parker's Aids to English Composition\_, p.

105. Pickbourn wrote his Dissertation before the question arose which he is

here supposed to decide. Nor is he right in assuming that the common

Progressive Form, of which he speaks, must be either \_active-transitive\_ or

\_passive\_: I have shown above that it may be \_active-intransitive\_, and

perhaps, in a few instances, \_neuter\_. The class of the verb is determined

by something else than the mere \_capableness\_ of the "\_nominative\_."

III. FORM OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Passive verbs, in English, are always of a

compound form; being made from active-transitive verbs, by adding the

Perfect Participle to the auxiliary verb BE, through all its changes: thus

from the active-transitive verb \_love\_, is formed the passive verb \_be

loved\_.

FIFTH EXAMPLE.

The regular passive verb BE LOVED, conjugated affirmatively.

PRINCIPAL PARTS or THE ACTIVE VERB.

\_Present\_. \_Preterit\_. \_Imp. Participle\_. \_Perf. Participle\_.

Love. Loved. Loving. Loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

To be loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

To have been loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I am loved, 1. We are loved,

2. Thou art loved, 2. You are loved,

3. He is loved; 3. They are loved.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I was loved, 1. We were loved,

2. Thou wast loved, 2. You were loved,

3. He was loved; 3. They were loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I have been loved, 1. We have been loved,

2. Thou hast been loved, 2. You have been loved,

3. He has been loved; 3. They have been loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I had been loved, 1. We had been loved,

2. Thou hadst been loved, 2. You had been loved,

3. He had been loved; 3. They had been loved.

FIRST-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I shall be loved, 1. We shall be loved,

2. Thou wilt be loved, 2. You will be loved,

3. He will be loved; 3. They will be loved.

SECOND-FUTURE TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I shall have been loved, 1. We shall have been loved,

2. Thou wilt have been loved, 2. You will have been loved,

3. He will have been loved; 3. They will have been loved.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I may be loved, 1. We may be loved,

2. Thou mayst be loved, 2. You may be loved,

3. He may be loved; 3. They may be loved.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might be loved, 1. We might be loved,

2. Thou mightst be loved, 2. You might be loved,

3. He might be loved; 3. They might be loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I may have been loved, 1. We may have been loved,

2. Thou mayst have been loved, 2. You may have been loved,

3. He may have been loved; 3. They may have been loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. I might have been loved, 1. We might have been loved,

2. Thou mightst have been loved, 2. You might have been loved,

3. He might have been loved; 3. They might have been loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I be loved, 1. If we be loved,

2. If thou be loved, 2. If you be loved,

3. If he be loved; 3. If they be loved.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. \_Plural\_.

1. If I were loved, 1. If we were loved,

2. If thou were loved, 2. If you were loved,

3. If he were loved; 3. If they were loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

\_Singular\_. 2. Be [thou] loved, \_or\_ Do thou be loved;

\_Plural\_. 2. Be [ye or you] loved, \_or\_ Do you be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

1. \_The Imperfect\_. 2. \_The Perfect\_. 3. \_The Preperfect\_.

Being loved. Loved. Having been loved.

FAMILIAR FORM WITH 'THOU.' NOTE.--In the familiar style, the second person

singular of this verb, is usually and more properly formed thus: IND. Thou

art loved, Thou was loved, Thou hast been loved, Thou had been loved, Thou

shall or will be loved, Thou shall or will have been loved. POT. Thou may,

can, \_or\_ must be loved; Thou might, could, would, \_or\_ should be loved;

Thou may, can, \_or\_ must have been loved; Thou might, could, would, \_or\_

should have been loved. SUBJ. If thou be loved, If thou were loved. IMP. Be

[thou] loved, or Do thou be loved.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A few active-intransitive verbs, that signify mere motion, change

of place, or change of condition, may be put into this form, with a

\_neuter\_ signification; making not \_passive\_ but \_neuter\_ verbs, which

express nothing more than the state which results from the change: as, "\_I

am come\_."--"She \_is gone\_."--"He \_is risen\_."--"They \_are fallen\_." These

are what Dr. Johnson and some others call "\_neuter\_ passives;" a name which

never was very proper, and for which we have no frequent use.

OBS. 2.--Most neuter verbs of the passive form, such as, "\_am grown, art

become, is lain, are flown, are vanished, are departed, was sat, were

arrived\_," may now be considered errors of conjugation, or perhaps of

syntax. In the verb, \_to be mistaken\_, there is an irregularity which ought

to be particularly noticed. When applied to \_persons\_, this verb is

commonly taken in a \_neuter\_ sense, and signifies, \_to be in error, to be

wrong\_; as, "I \_am mistaken\_, thou \_art mistaken\_, he \_is mistake\_." But,

when used of \_things\_, it is a proper passive verb, and signifies, \_to be

misunderstood\_, or \_to be taken wrong\_; as, "The sense of the passage \_is

mistaken\_; that is, not rightly understood." See \_Webster's Dict., w.

Mistaken\_. "I have known a shadow across a brook \_to be mistaken\_ for a

footbridge."

OBS. 3.--Passive verbs may be easily distinguished from neuter verbs of the

same form, by a reference to the agent or instrument, common to the former

class, but not to the latter. This frequently is, and always may be,

expressed after \_passive\_ verbs; but never is, and never can be, expressed

after \_neuter\_ verbs: as, "The thief has been caught \_by the officer\_."--

"Pens are made \_with a knife\_." Here the verbs are passive; but, "\_I am not

yet ascended\_," (John, xx, 17,) is not passive, because it does not convey

the idea of being ascended \_by\_ some one's agency.

OBS. 4.--Our ancient writers, after the manner of the French, very

frequently employed this mode of conjugation in a neuter sense; but, with a

very few exceptions, present usage is clearly in favour of the auxiliary

\_have\_ in preference to \_be\_, whenever the verb formed with the perfect

participle is not passive; as, "They \_have\_ arrived,"--not, "They \_are\_

arrived." Hence such examples as the following, are not now good English:

"All these reasons \_are\_ now ceased."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 157. Say,

"\_have now\_ ceased." "Whether he \_were\_ not got beyond the reach of his

faculties."--\_Ib.\_, p. 158. Say, "\_had\_ not got." "Which \_is\_ now grown

wholly obsolete."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 330. Say, "\_has\_ now grown."

"And when he \_was\_ entered into a ship."--\_Bible\_. Say, "\_had\_ entered."--

"What \_is\_ become of decency and virtue?"--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 196. Say,

"\_has\_ become."

OBS. 5.--Dr. Priestley says, "It seems \_not to have been determined\_ by the

English grammarians, whether the \_passive\_ participles of verbs neuter

require the auxiliary \_am\_ or \_have\_ before them. The French, in this case,

confine themselves strictly to the former. 'What \_has become\_ of national

liberty?' Hume's History, Vol. 6. p. 254. The French would say, \_what is

become\_; and, in this instance, perhaps, with more propriety."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 128. It is no marvel that those writers who have

not rightly made up their minds upon this point of English grammar, should

consequently fall into many mistakes. The perfect participle of a neuter

verb is not "\_passive\_," as the doctor seems to suppose it to be; and the

mode of conjugation which he here inclines to prefer, is a mere

\_Gallicism\_, which is fast wearing out from our language, and is even now

but little countenanced by good writers.

OBS. 6.--There are a few verbs of the passive form which seem to imply that

a person's own mind is the agent that actuates him; as, "The editor \_is

rejoiced\_ to think," &c.--\_Juvenile Keepsake\_. "I \_am resolved\_ what to

do."--\_Luke\_, xvi, 4. "He \_was resolved\_ on going to the city to

reside."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 114. "James \_was resolved\_ not to indulge

himself."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 220. "He \_is inclined\_ to go."--"He \_is

determined\_ to go."--"He \_is bent\_ on going." These are properly passive

verbs, notwithstanding there are active forms which are nearly equivalent

to most of them; as, "The editor \_rejoices\_ to think."--"I \_know\_ what to

do."--"He \_had resolved\_ on going."--"James \_resolved\_ not to indulge

himself." So in the phrase, "I \_am ashamed\_ to beg," we seem to have a

passive verb of this sort; but, the verb \_to ashame\_ being now obsolete,

\_ashamed\_ is commonly reckoned an \_adjective\_. Yet we cannot put it before

a noun, after the usual manner of adjectives. \_To be indebted\_, is an other

expression of the same kind. In the following example, "\_am remember'd\_" is

used for \_do remember\_, and, in my opinion, \_inaccurately\_:

"He said mine eyes were black, and my hair black;

And, now I \_am remember'd\_, scorn'd at me."--\_Shakspeare\_.

IV. FORM OF NEGATION.

A verb is conjugated \_negatively\_, by placing the adverb \_not\_ after it, or

after the first auxiliary; but the infinitive and participles take the

negative first: as, Not to love, Not to have loved; Not loving, Not loved,

Not having loved.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

IND. I love not, \_or\_ I do not love; I loved not, \_or\_ I did not love; I

have not loved; I had not loved; I shall not, \_or\_ will not, love; I shall

not, \_or\_ will not, have loved. POT. I may, can, \_or\_ must not love; I

might, could, would, \_or\_ should not love; I may, can, \_or\_ must not have

loved; I might, could, would, \_or\_ should not have loved, SUBJ. If I love

not, If I loved not.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

SOLEMN STYLE:--IND. Thou lovest not, \_or\_ Thou dost not love; Thou lovedst

not, \_or\_ Thou didst not love; Thou hast not loved; Thou hadst not loved;

Thou shalt not, \_or\_ wilt not, love; Thou shalt not, \_or\_ wilt not, have

loved. POT. Thou mayst, canst, \_or\_ must not love; Thou mightst, couldst,

wouldst, \_or\_ shouldst not love; Thou mayst, canst, \_or\_ must not have

loved; Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, \_or\_ shouldst not have loved. SUBJ.

If thou love not, If thou loved not. IMP. Love [thou] not, \_or\_ Do thou not

love.

FAMILIAR STYLE:--IND. Thou lov'st not, \_or\_ Thou dost not love; Thou loved

not, \_or\_ Thou did not love; Thou hast not loved; Thou had not loved; Thou

shall not, \_or\_ will not, love; Thou shall not, \_or\_ will not, have loved.

POT. Thou may, can, \_or\_ must not love; Thou might, could, would, \_or\_

should not love; Thou may, can, \_or\_ must not have loved; Thou might,

could, would, \_or\_ should not have loved. SUBJ. If thou love not, If thou

loved not. IMP. Love [thou] not, \_or\_ Do [thou] not love.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

IND. He loves not, \_or\_ He does not love; He loved not, \_or\_ He did not

love; He has not loved; He had not loved; He shall not, \_or\_ will not,

love; He shall not, \_or\_ will not, have loved. POT. He may, can, \_or\_ must

not love; He might, could, would, \_or\_ should not love; He may, can, \_or\_

must not have loved; He might, could, would, \_or\_ should not have loved.

SUBJ. If he love not, If he loved not.

V. FORM OF QUESTION.

A verb is conjugated \_interrogatively\_, in the indicative and potential

moods, by placing the nominative after it, or after the first auxiliary:

as,

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

IND. Love I? \_or\_ Do I love? Loved I? \_or\_ Did I love? Have I loved? Had I

loved? Shall I love? Shall I have loved? POT. May, can, \_or\_ must I love?

Might, could, would, \_or\_ should I love? May, can, \_or\_ must I have loved?

Might, could, would, \_or\_ should I have loved?

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

SOLEMN STYLE:--IND. Lovest thou? \_or\_ Dost thou love? Lovedst thou? \_or\_

Didst thou love? Hast thou loved? Hadst thou loved? Wilt thou love? Wilt

thou have loved? POT. Mayst, canst, \_or\_ must thou love? Mightst, couldst,

wouldst, \_or\_ shouldst thou love? Mayst, canst, \_or\_ must thou have loved?

Mightst, couldst, wouldst, \_or\_ shouldst thou have loved?

FAMILIAR STYLE:--IND. Lov'st thou? \_or\_ Dost thou love? Loved thou? \_or\_

Did thou love? Hast thou loved? Had thou loved? Will thou love? Will thou

have loved? POT. May, can, \_or\_ must thou love? Might, could, would, \_or\_

should thou love? May, can, \_or\_ must thou have loved? Might, could, would,

\_or\_ should thou have loved?

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

IND. Loves he? \_or\_ Does he love? Loved he? \_or\_ Did he love? Has he loved?

Had he loved? Shall \_or\_ will he love? Will he have loved? POT. May, can,

\_or\_ must he love? Might, could, would, \_or\_ should he love? May, can, \_or\_

must he have loved? Might, could, would, \_or\_ should he have loved?

VI. FORM OF QUESTION WITH NEGATION.

A verb is conjugated \_interrogatively and negatively\_, in the indicative

and potential moods, by placing the nominative and the adverb \_not\_ after

the verb, or after the first auxiliary: as,

FIRST PERSON PLURAL.

IND. Love we not? \_or\_ Do we not love? Loved we not? \_or\_ Did we not love?

Have we not loved? Had we not loved? Shall we not love? Shall we not have

loved? POT. May, can, \_or\_ must we not love? Might, could, would, \_or\_

should we not love? May, can, \_or\_ must we not have loved? Might, could,

would, \_or\_ should we not have loved?

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

IND. See ye not? \_or\_ Do you not see? Saw ye not? \_or\_ Did you not see?

Have you not seen? Had you not seen? Will you not see? Will you not have

seen? POT. May, can, \_or\_ must you not see? Might, could, would, \_or\_

should you not see? May, can, \_or\_ must you not have seen? Might, could,

would, \_or\_ should you not have seen?

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

IND. Are they not loved? Were they not loved? Have they not been loved? Had

they not been loved? Shall \_or\_ will they not be loved? Will they not have

been loved? May, can, \_or\_ must they not be loved? Might, could, would,

\_or\_ should they not be loved? May, can, \_or\_ must they not have been

loved? Might, could, would, \_or\_ should they not have been loved?

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In a familiar question or negation, the compound or auxiliary form

of the verb is, in general, preferable to the simple: as, "No man lives to

purpose, who \_does not live\_ for posterity."--\_Dr. Wayland\_. It is indeed

so much more common, as to seem the only proper mode of expression: as,

"\_Do I say\_ these things as a man?"--"\_Do you think\_ that we excuse

ourselves?"--"\_Do you not know\_ that a little leaven \_leavens\_ the whole

lump?"--"\_Dost thou revile?\_" &c. But in the solemn or the poetic style,

though either may be used, the simple form is more dignified, and perhaps

more graceful: as, "\_Say I\_ these things as a man?"--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 8.

"\_Think ye\_ that we excuse ourselves?"--\_2 Cor.\_, xii, 19. "\_Know ye not\_

that a little leaven \_leaveneth\_ the whole lump?"--\_1 Cor.\_, v, 6.

"\_Revilest thou\_ God's high priest?"--\_Acts\_. "King Agrippa, \_believest

thou\_ the prophets?"--\_Ib.\_ "\_Understandest thou\_ what thou

readest?"--\_Ib.\_ "Of whom \_speaketh\_ the prophet this?"--\_Id.\_ "And the man

of God said, Where \_fell it?\_"--\_2 Kings\_, vi, 6.

"What! \_heard ye not\_ of lowland war?"--\_Sir W. Scott, L. L.\_

"\_Seems he not\_, Malise, like a ghost?"--\_Id., L. of Lake\_.

"Where \_thinkst thou\_ he is now? \_Stands he\_, or \_sits he?\_

Or \_does he walk?\_ or \_is he\_ on his horse?"--\_Shak., Ant. and Cleop.\_

OBS. 2.--In interrogative sentences, the auxiliaries \_shall\_ and \_will\_ are

not always capable of being applied to the different persons agreeably to

their use in simple declarations: thus, "\_Will\_ I go?" is a question which

there never can be any occasion to ask in its literal sense; because none

knows better than I, what my will or wish is. But "\_Shall\_ I go?" may

properly be asked; because \_shall\_ here refers to \_duty\_, and asks to know

what is agreeable to the will of an other. In questions, the first person

generally requires \_shall\_; the second, \_will\_; the third admits of both:

but, in the second-future, the third, used interrogatively, seems to

require \_will\_ only. Yet, in that figurative kind of interrogation which is

sometimes used to declare a negative, there may be occasional exceptions to

these principles; as, "\_Will I eat\_ the flesh of bulls, or drink the blood

of goats?"--\_Psalms\_, 1, 13. That is, \_I will not eat\_, &c.

OBS. 3.--\_Cannot\_ is not properly one word, but two: in parsing, the adverb

must be taken separately, and the auxiliary be explained with its

principal. When power is denied, \_can\_ and \_not\_ are now \_generally

united\_--perhaps in order to prevent ambiguity; as, "I \_cannot\_ go." But

when the power is affirmed, and something else is denied, the words are

written separately; as, "The Christian apologist \_can not merely\_ expose

the utter baseness of the infidel assertion, but he has positive ground for

erecting an opposite and confronting assertion in its place."--\_Dr.

Chalmers.\_ The junction of these terms, however, is not of much importance

to the sense; and, as it is plainly contrary to analogy, some writers,--(as

Dr. Webster, in his late or "improved" works; Dr. Bullions, in his; Prof.

W. C. Fowler, in his new "English Grammar," 8vo; R. C. Trench, in his

"Study of Words;" T. S. Pinneo, in his "revised" grammars; J. R. Chandler,

W. S. Cardell, O. B. Peirce,--) always separate them. And, indeed, why

should we write, "I \_cannot\_ go, Thou \_canst not\_ go, He \_cannot\_ go?"

Apart from the custom, we have just as good reason to join \_not\_ to \_canst\_

as to \_can\_; and sometimes its union with the latter is a gross error: as,

"He \_cannot only\_ make a way to escape, but with the injunction to duty can

infuse the power to perform."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 287. The fear of

ambiguity never prevents us from disjoining \_can\_ and \_not\_ whenever we

wish to put a word between them: as, "Though the waves thereof toss

themselves, yet \_can\_ they \_not\_ prevail; though they roar, yet \_can\_ they

\_not\_ pass over it."--\_Jeremiah\_, v, 22. "Which then I \_can\_ resist

\_not\_."--\_Byron's Manfred\_, p. 1.

"\_Can\_ I \_not\_ mountain maiden spy,

But she must bear the Douglas eye?"--\_Scott\_.

OBS. 4.--In negative questions, the adverb \_not\_ is sometimes placed before

the nominative, and sometimes after it: as, "Told \_not I\_ thee?"--\_Numb.\_,

xxiii, 26. "Spake \_I not\_ also to thy messengers?"--\_Ib.\_, xxiv, 12.

"\_Cannot I\_ do with you as this potter?"--\_Jer.\_, xviii, 6. "Art \_not thou\_

a seer?"--\_2 Sam.\_, xv, 27. "Did \_not Israel\_ know?"--\_Rom.\_, x, 19. "Have

\_they not\_ heard?"--\_Ib.\_, 18. "Do \_not they\_ blaspheme that worthy

name?"--\_James\_, ii, 7. This adverb, like every other, should be placed

where it will sound most agreeably, and best suit the sense. Dr. Priestley

imagined that it could not properly come before the nominative. He says,

"When the nominative case is put after the verb, on account of \_an\_

interrogation, \_no other word\_ should be interposed between them.

[EXAMPLES:] 'May \_not we\_ here say with Lucretius?'--Addison on Medals, p.

29. May \_we not\_ say? 'Is \_not it\_ he.' [?] Smollett's Voltaire, Vol 18, p.

152. Is \_it not\_ he. [?]"--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 177.

OBS. 5.--In grave discourse, or in oratory, the adverb \_not\_ is spoken as

distinctly as other words; but, \_ordinarily\_, when placed before the

nominative, it is rapidly slurred over in utterance and the \_o\_ is not

heard. In fact, it is \_generally\_ (though inelegantly) contracted in

familiar conversation, and joined to the auxiliary: as, IND. Don't they do

it? Didn't they do it? Haven't they done it? Hadn't they done it? Shan't,

\_or\_ won't they do it? Won't they have done it? POT. Mayn't, can't, \_or\_

mustn't they do it? Mightn't, couldn't, wouldn't, \_or\_ shouldn't they do

it? Mayn't, can't, \_or\_ mustn't they have done it? Mightn't, couldn't,

wouldn't, \_or\_ shouldn't they have done it?

OBS. 6.--Well-educated people commonly utter their words with more

distinctness and fullness than the vulgar, yet without adopting ordinarily

the long-drawn syllables of poets and orators, or the solemn phraseology of

preachers and prophets. Whatever may be thought of the grammatical

propriety of such contractions as the foregoing, no one who has ever

observed how the English language is usually spoken, will doubt their

commonness, or their antiquity. And it may be observed, that, in the use of

these forms, the distinction of persons and numbers in the verb, is almost,

if not entirely, dropped. Thus \_don't\_ is used for \_dost not\_ or \_does

not\_, as properly as for \_do not\_; and, "\_Thou can't\_ do it, or \_shan't\_ do

it," is as good English as, "\_He can't\_ do it, or \_shan't\_ do it." \_Will\_,

according to Webster, was anciently written \_woll\_: hence \_won't\_ acquired

the \_o\_, which is long in Walker's orthoëpy. \_Haven't\_, which cannot be

used for \_has not\_ or \_hast not\_, is still further contracted by the

vulgar, and spoken \_ha'nt\_, which serves for all three. These forms are

sometimes found in books; as, "WONT, a contraction of \_woll not\_, that is,

\_will not\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "HA'NT, a contraction of \_have not\_ or \_has

not\_."--\_Id.\_ "WONT, (w=ont \_or\_ w~unt,) A contraction of \_would not\_:--

used for \_will\_ not."--\_Worcester's Dict.\_ "HAN'T, (hänt or h=ant,) A

vulgar contraction for \_has not\_, or \_have not\_."--\_Id.\_ In the writing of

such contractions, the apostrophe is not always used; though some think it

necessary for distinction's sake: as, "Which is equivalent, because what

\_can't\_ be done \_won't\_ be done."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 312.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

An \_irregular verb\_ is a verb that does not form the preterit and the

perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_; as, \_see, saw, seeing, seen\_.

Of this class of verbs there are about one hundred and ten, beside their

several derivatives and compounds.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Regular verbs form their preterits and perfect participles, by

adding \_d\_ to final \_e\_, and \_ed\_ to all other terminations; the final

consonant of the verb being sometimes doubled, (as in \_dropped\_,) and final

\_y\_ sometimes changed into \_i\_, (as in \_cried\_,) agreeably to the rules for

spelling in such cases. The verb \_hear, heard, hearing, heard\_, adds \_d\_ to

\_r\_, and is therefore irregular. \_Heard\_ is pronounced \_h~erd\_ by all our

lexicographers, except \_Webster\_: who formerly wrote it \_heerd\_, and still

pronounces it so; alleging, in despite of universal usage against him, that

it is written "more correctly \_heared\_."--\_Octavo Dict.\_, 1829. Such

pronunciation would doubtless require this last orthography, "\_heared\_;"

but both are, in fact, about as fanciful as his former mode of spelling,

which ran thus: "\_Az\_ I had \_heerd\_ suggested by \_frends\_ or indifferent

\_reeders\_."--\_Dr. Webster's Essays, Preface\_, p. 10.

OBS. 2.--When a verb ends in a sharp consonant, \_t\_ is sometimes improperly

substituted for \_ed\_, making the preterit and the perfect participle

irregular in spelling, when they are not so in sound; as, \_distrest\_ for

\_distressed, tost\_ for \_tossed, mixt\_ for \_mixed, cract\_ for \_cracked\_.

These contractions are now generally treated as \_errors\_ in writing; and

the verbs are accordingly (with a few exceptions) accounted regular. Lord

Kames commends Dean Swift for having done "all in his power to restore the

syllable \_ed\_;" says, he "possessed, if any man ever did, the true genius

of the English tongue;" and thinks that in rejecting these ugly

contractions, "he well deserves to be imitated."--\_Elements of Criticism\_,

Vol. ii, p. 12. The regular orthography is indeed to be preferred in all

such cases; but the writing of \_ed\_ restores no syllable, except in solemn

discourse; and, after all, the poems of Swift have so very many of these

irregular contractions in \_t\_, that one can hardly believe his lordship had

ever read them. Since the days of these critics still more has been done

towards the restoration of the \_ed\_, in orthography, though not in sound;

but, even at this present time, our poets not unfrequently write, \_est\_ for

\_essed\_ or \_ess'd\_, in forming the preterits or participles of verbs that

end in the syllable \_ess\_. This is an ill practice, which needlessly

multiplies our redundant verbs, and greatly embarrasses what it seems at

first to simplify: as,

"O friend! I know not which way I must look

For comfort, being, as I am, \_opprest\_,

To think that now our life is only \_drest\_

For show."--\_Wordsworth's Poetical Works\_, 8vo, p. 119.

OBS. 3.--When the verb ends with a smooth consonant, the substitution of

\_t\_ for \_ed\_ produces an irregularity in sound as well as in writing. In

some such irregularities, the poets are indulged for the sake of rhyme; but

the best speakers and writers of prose prefer the regular form, wherever

good use has sanctioned it: thus \_learned\_ is better than \_learnt; burned\_,

than \_burnt; penned\_, than \_pent; absorbed\_, than \_absorbt; spelled\_, than

\_spelt; smelled\_, than \_smelt\_. So many of this sort of words as are

allowably contracted, belong to the class of redundant verbs, among which

they may be seen in a subsequent table.

OBS. 4.--Several of the irregular verbs are variously used by the best

authors; redundant forms are occasionally given to some verbs, without

sufficient authority; and many preterits and participles which were

formerly in good use, are now obsolete, or becoming so. The \_simple\_

irregular verbs in English are about one hundred and ten, and they are

nearly all monosyllables. They are derived from the Saxon, in which

language they are also, for the most part, irregular.

OBS. 5.--The following alphabetical list exhibits the simple irregular

verbs, as they are \_now generally\_ used. In this list, those preterits and

participles which are supposed to be preferable, and best supported by

authorities, are placed first. Nearly all compounds that follow the form of

their simple verbs, or derivatives that follow their primitives, are here

purposely omitted. \_Welcome\_ and \_behave\_ are always regular, and therefore

belong not here. Some words which are obsolete, have also been omitted,

that the learner might not mistake them for words in present use. Some of

those which are placed last, are now little used.

LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

\_Imperfect Perfect\_

\_Present. Preterit. Participle. Participle\_.

Arise, arose, arising, arisen.

Be, was, being, been.

Bear, bore \_or\_ bare, bearing, borne \_or\_ born.[274]

Beat, beat, beating, beaten \_or\_ beat.

Begin, began \_or\_ begun,[275] beginning, begun.

Behold, beheld, beholding, beheld.

Beset, beset, besetting, beset.

Bestead, bestead, besteading, bestead.[276]

Bid, bid \_or\_ bade, bidding, bidden \_or\_ bid.

Bind, bound, bing, bound.

Bite, bit, biting, bitten \_or\_ bit.

Bleed, bled, bleeding, bled.

Break, broke,[277] breaking, broken.

Breed, bred, breeding, bred.

Bring, brought, bringing, brought.

Buy, bought, buying, bought.

Cast, cast, casting, cast.

Chide, chid, chiding, chidden \_or\_ chid.

Choose, chose, choosing, chosen.

Cleave,[278] cleft \_or\_ clove, cleaving, cleft \_or\_ cloven.

Cling, clung, clinging, clung.

Come, came, coming, come.

Cost, cost, costing, cost.

Cut, cut, cutting, cut.

Do, did, doing, done.

Draw, drew, drawing, drawn.

Drink, drank, drinking, drunk, \_or\_ drank.[279]

Drive, drove, driving, driven.

Eat, ate \_or\_ ~eat, eating, eaten \_or\_ eat.

Fall, fell, falling, fallen.

Feed, fed, feeding, fed.

Feel, felt, feeling, felt.

Fight, fought, fighting, fought.

Find, found, finding, found.

Flee, fled, fleeing, fled.

Fling, flung, flinging, flung.

Fly, flew, flying, flown.

Forbear, forbore, forbearing, forborne.

Forsake, forsook, forsaking, forsaken.

Get, got, getting, got \_or\_ gotten.

Give, gave, giving, given.

Go, went, going, gone.

Grow, grew, growing, grown.

Have, had, having, had.

Hear, heard, hearing, heard.

Hide, hid, hiding, hidden \_or\_ hid.

Hit, hit, hitting, hit.

Hold, held, holding, held \_or\_ holden.[280]

Hurt, hurt, hurting, hurt.[281]

Keep, kept,[282] keeping, kept.

Know, knew, knowing, known.

Lead, led, leading, led.

Leave, left, leaving, left.

Lend, lent, lending, lent.

Let, let, letting, let

Lie,[283] lay, lying, lain.

Lose, lost, losing, lost.

Make, made, making, made.

Meet, met, meeting, met.

Outdo, outdid, outdoing, outdone.

Put, put, putting, put.

Read, r~ead, reading, r~ead.

Rend, rent, rending, rent.[284]

Rid, rid, ridding, rid.

Ride, rode, riding, ridden \_or\_ rode.

Ring, rung \_or\_ rang, ringing, rung.

Rise, rose, rising, risen.

Run, ran \_or\_ run, running, run.

Say, said, saying, said.[285]

See, saw, seeing, seen.

Seek, sought, seeking, sought.

Sell, sold, selling, sold.

Send, sent, sending, sent.

Set, set, setting, set.

Shed, shed, shedding, shed.

Shoe, shod, shoeing, shod.[286]

Shoot, shot, shooting, shot.

Shut, shut, shutting, shut.

Shred, shred, shredding, shred.

Shrink, shrunk \_or\_ shrank, shrinking, shrunk \_or\_ shrunken.

Sing, sung \_or\_ sang,[287] singing, sung.

Sink, sunk \_or\_ sank, sinking, sunk.

Sit, sat, sitting, sat.[288]

Slay, slew, slaying, slain.

Sling, slung, slinging, slung.

Slink, slunk \_or\_ slank, slinking, slunk.

Smite, smote, smiting, smitten \_or\_ smit.

Speak, spoke, speaking, spoken.

Spend, spent, spending, spent.

Spin, spun, spinning, spun.

Spit, spit \_or\_ spat, spitting, spit \_or\_ spitten.

Spread, spread, spreading, spread.

Spring, sprung \_or\_ sprang, springing, sprung.

Stand, stood, standing, stood.

Steal, stole, stealing, stolen.

Stick, stuck, sticking, stuck.

Sting, stung, stinging, stung.

Stink, stunk \_or\_ stank, stinking, stunk.

Stride, strode \_or\_ strid, striding, stridden

\_or\_ strid.[289]

Strike, struck, striking, struck \_or\_ stricken.

Swear, swore, swearing, sworn.

Swim, swum \_or\_ swam, swimming, swum.

Swing, swung \_or\_ swang, swinging, swung.

Take, took, taking, taken.

Teach, taught, teaching, taught.

Tear, tore, tearing, torn.

Tell, told, telling, told.

Think, thought, thinking, thought.

Thrust, thrust, thrusting, thrust.

Tread, trod, treading, trodden \_or\_ trod.

Wear, wore, wearing, worn.

Win, won, winning, won.

Write, wrote, writing, written.[290]

REDUNDANT VERBS.

A \_redundant verb\_ is a verb that forms the preterit or

the perfect participle in two or more ways, and so as to be both regular

and irregular; as, \_thrive, thrived\_ or \_throve, thriving, thrived\_ or

\_thriven\_. Of this class of verbs, there are about ninety-five, beside

sundry derivatives and compounds.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Those irregular verbs which have more than one form for the

preterit or for the perfect participle, are in some sense redundant; but,

as there is no occasion to make a distinct class of such as have double

forms that are never regular, these redundancies are either included in the

preceding list of the simple irregular verbs, or omitted as being improper

to be now recognized for good English. Several examples of the latter kind,

including both innovations and archaisms, will appear among the

improprieties for correction, at the end of this chapter. A few old

preterits or participles may perhaps be accounted good English in the

solemn style, which are not so in the familiar: as, "And none \_spake\_ a

word unto him."--\_Job\_, ii, 13. "When I \_brake\_ the five loaves."--\_Mark\_,

viii, 19. "And he \_drave\_ them from the judgement-seat."--\_Acts\_, xviii,

16. "Serve me till I have eaten and \_drunken\_."--\_Luke\_, xvii, 8. "It was

not possible that he should be \_holden\_ of it."--\_Acts\_, ii, 24. "Thou

\_castedst\_ them down into destruction."--\_Psal.\_, lxxiii, 18. "Behold, I

was \_shapen\_ in iniquity."--\_Ib.\_, li, 5. "A meat-offering \_baken\_ in the

oven."--\_Leviticus\_, ii, 4.

"With \_casted\_ slough, and fresh celerity."--SHAK., \_Henry V\_.

"Thy dreadful vow, \_loaden\_ with death."--ADDISON: \_in Joh. Dict.\_

OBS. 2.--The verb \_bet\_ is given in Worcester's Dictionary, as being always

regular: "BET, \_v. a.\_ [\_i\_. BETTED; \_pp\_. BETTING, BETTED.] To wager; to

lay a wager or bet. SHAK."--\_Octavo Dict.\_ In Ainsworth's Grammar, it is

given as being always irregular: "\_Present\_, Bet; \_Imperfect\_, Bet;

\_Participle\_, Bet."--Page 36. On the authority of these, and of some others

cited in OBS. 6th below, I have put it with the redundant verbs. The verb

\_prove\_ is redundant, if \_proven\_, which is noticed by Webster, Bolles, and

Worcester, is an admissible word. "The participle \_proven\_ is used in

Scotland and in some parts of the United States, and sometimes, though

rarely, in England.--'There is a mighty difference between \_not proven\_ and

\_disproven\_.' DR. TH. CHALMERS. 'Not \_proven\_.' QU. REV."--\_Worcester's

Universal and Critical Dict.\_ The verbs \_bless\_ and \_dress\_ are to be

considered redundant, according to the authority of Worcester, Webster,

Bolles, and others. Cobbett will have the verbs, \_cast, chide, cling, draw,

grow, shred, sling, slink, spring, sting, stride, swim, swing\_, and

\_thrust\_, to be always regular; but I find no sufficient authority for

allowing to any of them a regular form; and therefore leave them, where

they always have been, in the list of simple irregulars. These fourteen

verbs are a part of the long list of \_seventy\_ which this author says,

"are, by some persons, \_erroneously\_ deemed irregular." Of the following

\_nine\_ only, is his assertion true; namely, \_dip, help, load, overflow,

slip, snow, stamp, strip, whip\_. These nine ought always to be formed

regularly; for all their irregularities may well be reckoned obsolete.

After these deductions from this most erroneous catalogue, there remain

forty-five other very common verbs, to be disposed of contrary to this

author's instructions. All but two of these I shall place in the list of

\_redundant\_ verbs; though for the use of \_throwed\_ I find no written

authority but his and William B. Fowle's. The two which I do not consider

redundant are \_spit\_ and \_strew\_, of which it may be proper to take more

particular notice.

OBS. 3.--\_Spit\_, to stab, or to put upon a spit, is regular; as, "I

\_spitted frogs\_, I crushed a heap of emmets."--\_Dryden. Spit\_, to throw out

saliva, is irregular, and most properly formed thus: \_spit, spit, spitting,

spit. "Spat\_ is obsolete."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ It is used in the Bible; as,

"He \_spat\_ on the ground, and made clay of the spittle."--\_John\_, ix, 6. L.

Murray gives this verb thus: "Pres. \_Spit\_; Imp. \_spit, spat\_; Perf. Part.

\_spit, spitten\_." NOTE: "\_Spitten\_ is nearly obsolete."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p.

106. Sanborn has it thus: "Pres. \_Spit\_; Imp. \_spit\_; Pres. Part.

\_spitting\_; Perf. Part. \_spit, spat\_."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 48. Cobbett,

at first, taking it in the form, "to \_spit\_, I \_spat, spitten\_," placed it

among the seventy which he so erroneously thought should be made regular;

afterwards he left it only in his list of irregulars, thus: "to \_spit\_, I

\_spit, spitten\_."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, of 1832, p. 54. Churchill, in

1823, preferring the older forms, gave it thus: "\_Spit, spat\_ or \_spit,

spitten\_ or \_spit\_."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 111. NOTE:--"Johnson gives \_spat\_ as

the preterimperfect, and \_spit\_ or \_spitted\_ as the participle of this

verb, when it means to pierce through with a pointed instrument: but in

this sense, I believe, it is always regular; while, on the other hand, the

regular form is now never used, when it signifies to eject from the mouth;

though we find in \_Luke\_, xviii, 32, 'He shall be \_spitted\_

on.'"--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 264. This text ought to have been, "He

shall be \_spit\_ upon."

OBS. 4.--\_To strew\_ is in fact nothing else than an other mode of spelling

the verb \_to strow\_; as \_shew\_ is an obsolete form for \_show\_; but if we

pronounce the two forms differently, we make them different words. Walker,

and some others, pronounce them alike, \_stro\_; Sheridan, Jones, Jameson,

and Webster, distinguish them in utterance, \_stroo\_ and \_stro\_. This is

convenient for the sake of rhyme, and perhaps therefore preferable. But

\_strew\_, I incline to think, is properly a regular verb only, though Wells

and Worcester give it otherwise: if \_strewn\_ has ever been proper, it seems

now to be obsolete. EXAMPLES: "Others cut down branches from the trees, and

\_strewed\_ them in the way."--\_Matt.\_, xxi, 8. "Gathering where thou hast

not \_strewed\_."--\_Matt.\_, xxv, 24.

"Their name, their years, \_spelt\_ by th' unletter'd \_muse\_,

The place of fame and elegy supply;

And many \_a holy text\_ around she \_strews\_,

\_That teach\_ the rustic moralist to die."--\_Gray\_.

OBS. 5.--The list which I give below, prepared with great care, exhibits

the redundant verbs, as they are now generally used, or as they may be used

without grammatical impropriety.[291] Those forms which are supposed to be

preferable, and best supported by authorities, are placed first. No words

are inserted here, but such as some modern authors countenance. L. Murray

recognizes \_bereaved, catched, dealed, digged, dwelled, hanged, knitted,

shined, spilled\_; and, in his early editions, he approved of \_bended,

builded, creeped, weaved, worked, wringed\_. His two larger books now tell

us, "The Compiler \_has not inserted\_ such verbs as \_learnt, spelt, spilt\_,

&c. which are improperly terminated by \_t\_, instead of \_ed\_."--\_Octavo

Gram.\_, p. 107; \_Duodecimo\_, p. 97. But if he did not, in all his grammars,

insert, "\_Spill, spilt\_, R. \_spilt\_, R.," (pp. 106, 96,) preferring the

irregular form to the regular, somebody else has done it for him. And, what

is remarkable, many of his \_amenders\_, as if misled by some evil genius,

have contradicted themselves in precisely the same way! Ingersoll, Fisk,

Merchant, and Hart, republish exactly the foregoing words, and severally

become "\_The Compiler\_" of the same erroneous catalogue! Kirkham prefers

\_spilt\_ to \_spilled\_, and then declares the word to be "\_improperly\_

terminated by \_t\_ instead of \_ed\_."--\_Gram.\_, p. 151. Greenleaf, who

condemns \_learnt\_ and \_spelt\_, thinks \_dwelt\_ and \_spilt\_ are "the \_only

established\_ forms;" yet he will have \_dwell\_ and \_spill\_ to be "\_regular\_"

verbs, as well as "\_irregular!\_"--\_Gram. Simp.\_, p. 29. Webber prefers

\_spilled\_ to \_spilt\_; but Picket admits only the latter. Cobbett and

Sanborn prefer \_bereaved, builded, dealed, digged, dreamed, hanged\_, and

\_knitted\_, to \_bereft, built, dealt, dug, dreamt, hung\_, and \_knit\_. The

former prefers \_creeped\_ to \_crept\_, and \_freezed\_ to \_froze\_; the latter,

\_slitted\_ to \_slit, wringed\_ to \_wrung\_; and both consider, "\_I bended\_,"

"\_I bursted\_" and "\_I blowed\_," to be good modern English. W. Allen

acknowledges \_freezed\_ and \_slided\_; and, like Webster, prefers \_hove\_ to

\_hoven\_: but the latter justly prefers \_heaved\_ to both. EXAMP.: "The

supple kinsman \_slided\_ to the helm."--\_New Timon\_. "The rogues \_slided\_ me

into the river."--\_Shak\_. "And the sand \_slided\_ from beneath my feet."--

DR. JOHNSON: \_in Murray's Sequel\_, p. 179. "Wherewith she \_freez'd\_ her

foes to congeal'd stone."--\_Milton's Comus\_, l. 449. "It \_freezed\_ hard

last night. Now, what was it that \_freezed\_ so hard?"--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p.

25. "Far hence lies, ever \_freez'd\_, the northern main."--\_Savage's

Wanderer\_, l. 57. "Has he not taught, \_beseeched\_, and shed abroad the

Spirit unconfined?"--\_Pollok's Course of Time\_, B. x, l. 275.

OBS. 6.--D. Blair supposes \_catched\_ to be an "erroneous" word and

unauthorized: "I \_catch'd\_ it," for "I \_caught\_ it," he sets down for a

"\_vulgarism\_."--\_E. Gram.\_, p. 111. But \_catched\_ is used by some of the

most celebrated authors. Dearborn prefers the regular form of \_creep\_:

"creep, creeped \_or\_ crept, creeped \_or\_ crept."--\_Columbian Gram.\_, p. 38.

I adopt no man's opinions implicitly; copy nothing without examination;

but, \_to prove all my decisions to be right\_, would be an endless task. I

shall do as much as ought to be expected, toward showing that they are so.

It is to be remembered, that the \_poets\_, as well as the \_vulgar\_, use some

forms which a \_gentleman\_ would be likely to avoid, unless he meant to

quote or imitate; as,

"So \_clomb\_ the first grand thief into God's fold;

So since into his church lewd hirelings climb."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. iv, l. 192.

"He \_shore\_ his sheep, and, having packed the wool,

Sent them unguarded to the hill of wolves."

--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, B. vi, l. 306.

------"The King of heav'n

Bar'd his red arm, and launching from the sky

His \_writhen\_ bolt, not shaking empty smoke,

Down to the deep abyss the flaming felon \_strook\_."

--\_Dryden\_.

OBS. 7.--The following are examples in proof of some of the forms

acknowledged below: "Where etiquette and precedence \_abided\_ far

away."--\_Paulding's Westward-Ho!\_ p. 6. "But there were no secrets where

Mrs. Judith Paddock \_abided\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 8. "They \_abided\_ by the forms of

government established by the charters."--\_John Quincy Adams, Oration\_,

1831. "I have \_abode\_ consequences often enough in the course of my

life."--\_Id., Speech\_, 1839. "Present, \_bide\_, or \_abide\_; Past, \_bode, or

abode\_."--\_Coar's Gram.\_, p. 104. "I \_awaked\_ up last of all."--\_Ecclus.\_,

xxxiii, 16. "For this are my knees \_bended\_ before the God of the spirits

of all flesh."--\_Wm. Penn\_. "There was never a prince \_bereaved\_ of his

dependencies," &c.--\_Bacon\_. "Madam, you have \_bereft\_ me of all

words."--\_Shakspeare\_. "Reave, \_reaved or reft\_, reaving, \_reaved or reft\_.

\_Bereave\_ is similar."--\_Ward's Practical Gram.\_, p. 65. "And let them tell

their tales of woful ages, long ago \_betid\_."--\_Shak\_. "Of every nation

\_blent\_, and every age."--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, B vii, p. 153. "Rider and

horse,--friend, foe,--in one red burial \_blent!\_"--\_Byron, Harold\_, C. iii,

st. 28. "I \_builded\_ me houses."--\_Ecclesiastes\_, ii, 4. "For every house

is \_builded\_ by some man; but he that \_built\_ all things is God."--\_Heb\_.

iii, 4. "What thy hands \_builded\_ not, thy wisdom gained."--\_Milton's P.

L.\_, X, 373. "Present, \_bet\_; Past, \_bet\_; Participle, \_bet\_."--

\_Mackintosh's Gram.\_, p. 197; \_Alexander's\_, 38. "John of Gaunt loved him

well, and \_betted\_ much upon his head."--SHAKSPEARE: \_Joh. Dict, w. Bet\_.

"He lost every earthly thing he \_betted\_."--PRIOR: \_ib.\_ "A seraph

\_kneeled\_."--\_Pollok, C. T.\_, p. 95.

"At first, he declared he himself would be \_blowed\_,

Ere his conscience with such a foul crime he would load."

--\_J. R. Lowell\_.

"They are \_catched\_ without art or industry."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_,-Vol. i,

p. 302. "Apt to be \_catched\_ and dazzled."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 26. "The

lion being \_catched\_ in a net."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 232. "In their

self-will they \_digged\_ down a wall."--\_Gen.\_, xlix, 6. "The royal mother

instantly \_dove\_ to the bottom and brought up her babe unharmed."--

\_Trumbull's America\_, i, 144. "The learned have \_diven\_ into the secrets of

nature."--CARNOT: \_Columbian Orator\_, p. 82. "They have \_awoke\_ from that

ignorance in which they had slept."--\_London Encyclopedia\_. "And he \_slept\_

and \_dreamed\_ the second time."--\_Gen.\_, xli, 5. "So I \_awoke\_."--\_Ib.\_,

21. "But he \_hanged\_ the chief baker."--\_Gen.\_, xl, 22. "Make as if you

\_hanged\_ yourself."--ARBUTHNOT: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "\_Graven\_ by art and man's

device."--\_Acts\_, xvii, 29. "\_Grav'd\_ on the stone beneath yon aged

thorn."--\_Gray\_. "That the tooth of usury may be \_grinded\_."--\_Lord Bacon\_.

"MILN-EE, The hole from which the \_grinded\_ corn falls into the chest

below."--\_Glossary of Craven\_, London, 1828. "UNGRUND, Not \_grinded\_."--

\_Ibid.\_ "And he \_built\_ the inner court with three rows of \_hewed\_

stone."--\_1 Kings\_, vi, 36. "A thing by which matter is \_hewed\_."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.\_, Vol. i, p. 378. "SCAGD or SCAD \_meaned\_

distinction, dividing."--\_Ib.\_, i, 114. "He only \_meaned\_ to acknowledge

him to be an extraordinary person."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 12. "\_The\_

determines what particular thing is \_meaned\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11. "If Hermia

\_mean'd\_ to say Lysander lied."--\_Shak\_. "As if I \_meaned\_ not the first

but the second creation."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 289. "From some stones

have rivers \_bursted\_ forth."--\_Sale's Koran\_, Vol. i, p. 14.

"So move we on; I only \_meant\_

To show the reed on which you \_leant\_."--\_Scott, L. L.\_, C. v, st. 11.

OBS. 8.--\_Layed, payed\_, and \_stayed\_, are now less common than \_laid,

paid\_, and \_staid\_; but perhaps not less correct, since they are the same

words in a more regular and not uncommon orthography: "Thou takest up that

[which] thou \_layedst\_ not down."--FRIENDS' BIBLE, SMITH'S, BRUCE'S:

\_Luke\_, xix, 21. Scott's Bible, in this place, has "\_layest\_," which is

wrong in tense. "Thou \_layedst\_ affliction upon our loins."--FRIENDS'

BIBLE: \_Psalms\_, lxvi, 11. "Thou \_laidest\_ affliction upon our

loins."--SCOTT'S BIBLE, \_and\_ BRUCE'S. "Thou \_laidst\_ affliction upon our

loins."--SMITH'S BIBLE, Stereotyped by J. Howe. "Which gently \_lay'd\_ my

knighthood on my shoulder."--SINGER'S SHAKSPEARE: \_Richard II\_, Act i, Sc.

1. "But no regard was \_payed\_ to his remonstrance."--\_Smollett's England\_,

Vol. iii, p. 212. "Therefore the heaven over you is \_stayed\_ from dew, and

the earth is \_stayed\_ from her fruit."--\_Haggai\_, i, 10. "STAY, \_i\_. STAYED

\_or\_ STAID; \_pp\_. STAYING, STAYED \_or\_ STAID."--\_Worcester's Univ. and

Crit. Dict.\_ "Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz \_stayed\_ by En-rogel."--\_2 Sam.\_,

xvii, 17. "This day have I \_payed\_ my vows."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Prov\_, vii,

14. Scott's Bible has "\_paid\_." "They not only \_stayed\_ for their resort,

but discharged divers."--HAYWARD: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "I \_stayed\_ till the

latest grapes were ripe."--\_Waller's Dedication\_. "\_To lay\_ is regular, and

has in the past time and participle \_layed\_ or \_laid\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_,

p. 54. "To the flood, that \_stay'd\_ her flight."--\_Milton's Comus\_, l. 832.

"All rude, all waste, and desolate is \_lay'd\_."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. ix, l.

1636. "And he smote thrice, and \_stayed\_."--\_2 Kings\_, xiii, 18.

"When Cobham, generous as the noble peer

That wears his honours, \_pay'd\_ the fatal price

Of virtue blooming, ere the storms were \_laid\_."--\_Shenstone\_, p. 167.

OBS. 9.--By the foregoing citations, \_lay, pay\_, and \_stay\_, are clearly

proved to be redundant. But, in nearly all our English grammars, \_lay\_ and

\_pay\_ are represented as being always irregular; and \_stay\_ is as often,

and as improperly, supposed to be always regular. Other examples in proof

of the list: "I \_lit\_ my pipe with the paper."--\_Addison\_.

"While he whom learning, habits, all prevent,

Is largely \_mulct\_ for each impediment."--\_Crabbe, Bor.\_, p. 102.

"And then the chapel--night and morn to pray,

Or \_mulct\_ and threaten'd if he kept away."--\_Ib.\_, p. 162.

"A small space is formed, in which the breath is \_pent\_ up."--\_Gardiner's

Music of Nature\_, p. 493. "\_Pen\_, when it means to write, is always

regular. Boyle has \_penned\_ in the sense of confined."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 261. "So far as it was now \_pled\_."--ANDERSON: \_Annals of the

Bible\_, p. 25. "\_Rapped\_ with admiration."--HOOKER: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "And being

\_rapt\_ with the love of his beauty."--\_Id., ib.\_ "And \_rapt\_ in secret

studies."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "I'm \_rapt\_ with joy."--ADDISON: \_ib.\_ "\_Roast\_

with fire."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Exod.\_, xii, 8 and 9. "\_Roasted\_ with

fire."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: \_Exod.\_, xii, 8 and 9. "Upon them hath the light

\_shined\_."--\_Isaiah\_, ix, 2. "The earth \_shined\_ with his

glory."--\_Ezekiel\_, xliii, 2. "After that he had \_showed\_

wonders."--\_Acts\_, vii, 36. "Those things which God before had

\_showed\_."--\_Acts\_, iii, 18. "As shall be \_shewed\_ in Syntax."--\_Johnson's

Gram. Com.\_, p. 28. "I have \_shown\_ you, that the \_two first\_ may be

dismissed."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 10. "And in this struggle were \_sowed\_

the seeds of the revolution."--\_Everett's Address\_, p. 16. "Your favour

\_showed\_ to the performance, has given me boldness."--\_Jenks's Prayers,

Ded\_. "Yea, so have I \_strived\_ to preach the gospel."--\_Rom.\_, xv, 20.

"Art thou, like the adder, \_waxen\_ deaf?"--\_Shakspeare. "Hamstring'd\_

behind, unhappy Gyges died."--\_Dryden\_. "In Syracusa was I born and

\_wed\_."--\_Shakspeare\_. "And thou art \_wedded\_ to calamity."--\_Id.\_ "I saw

thee first, and \_wedded\_ thee."--\_Milton\_. "Sprung the rank weed, and

\_thrived\_ with large increase."--\_Pope\_. "Some errors never would have

\_thriven\_, had it not been for learned refutation."--\_Book of Thoughts\_, p.

34. "Under your care they have \_thriven\_."--\_Junius\_, p. 5. "Fixed by being

rolled closely, compacted, \_knitted\_."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist.\_, Vol. i, p.

374. "With kind converse and skill has \_weaved\_."--\_Prior\_. "Though I shall

be \_wetted\_ to the skin."--\_Sandford and Merton\_, p. 64. "I \_speeded\_

hither with the very extremest inch of possibility."--\_Shakspeare\_. "And

pure grief \_shore\_ his old thread in twain."--\_Id.\_ "And must I ravel out

my \_weaved-up\_ follies?"--\_Id., Rich. II\_. "Tells how the drudging Goblin

\_swet\_."--\_Milton's L'Allegro\_. "Weave, wove or \_weaved\_, weaving, wove,

\_weaved\_, or woven."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 67.

"Thou who beneath the frown of fate hast stood,

And in thy dreadful agony \_sweat\_ blood."--\_Young\_, p. 238.

OBS. 10.--The verb to \_shake\_ is now seldom used in any other than the

irregular form, \_shake, shook, shaking, shaken\_; and, in this form only, is

it recognized by our principal grammarians and lexicographers, except that

Johnson improperly acknowledges \_shook\_ as well as \_shaken\_ for the perfect

participle: as, "I've \_shook\_ it off."--DRYDEN: \_Joh. Dict.\_ But the

regular form, \_shake, shaked, shaking, shaked\_, appears to have been used

by some writers of high reputation; and, if the verb is not now properly

redundant, it formerly was so. Examples regular: "The frame and huge

foundation of the earth \_shak'd\_ like a coward."--SHAKSPEARE: \_Hen. IV\_. "I

am he that is so \_love-shaked\_."--ID.: \_As You Like it\_. "A sly and

constant knave, not to be \_shak'd\_."--ID.: \_Cymbeline: Joh. Dict.\_ "I

thought he would have \_shaked\_ it off."--TATTLER: \_ib.\_ "To the very point

I \_shaked\_ my head at."--\_Spectator\_, No. 4. "From the ruin'd roof of

\_shak'd\_ Olympus."--\_Milton's Poems\_. "None hath \_shak'd\_ it

off."--\_Walker's English Particles\_, p. 89. "They \_shaked\_ their

heads."--\_Psalms\_, cix, 25. Dr. Crombie says, "Story, in his Grammar, has,

\_most unwarrantably\_, asserted, that the Participle of this Verb should be

\_shaked\_."--ON ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX, p. 198. Fowle, on the contrary,

pronounces \_shaked\_ to be right. See \_True English Gram.\_, p. 46.

OBS. 11.--All former lists of our irregular and redundant verbs are, in

many respects, defective and erroneous; nor is it claimed for those which

are here presented, that they are absolutely perfect. I trust, however,

they are much nearer to perfection, than are any earlier ones. Among the

many individuals who have published schemes of these verbs, none have been

more respected and followed than Lowth, Murray, and Crombie; yet are these

authors' lists severally faulty in respect to as many as sixty or seventy

of the words in question, though the whole number but little exceeds two

hundred, and is commonly reckoned less than one hundred and eighty. By

Lowth, eight verbs are made redundant, which I think are now regular only:

namely, \_bake, climb, fold, help, load, owe, wash\_. By Crombie, as many:

to wit, \_bake, climb, freight, help, lift, load, shape, writhe\_. By Murray,

two: \_load\_ and \_shape\_. With Crombie, and in general with the others too,

twenty-seven verbs are always irregular, which I think are sometimes

regular, and therefore redundant: \_abide, beseech, blow, burst, creep,

freeze, grind, lade, lay, pay, rive, seethe, shake, show, sleep, slide,

speed, string, strive, strow, sweat, thrive, throw, weave, weep, wind,

wring\_. Again, there are, I think, more than twenty redundant verbs which

are treated by Crombie,--and, with one or two exceptions, by Lowth and

Murray also,--as if they were always regular: namely, \_betide, blend,

bless, burn, dive, dream, dress, geld, kneel, lean, leap, learn, mean,

mulct, pass, pen, plead, prove, reave, smell, spell, stave, stay, sweep,

wake, whet, wont\_. Crombie's list contains the auxiliaries, which properly

belong to a different table. Erroneous as it is, in all these things, and

more, it is introduced by the author with the following praise, in bad

English: "\_Verbs, which\_ depart from this rule, are called Irregular, \_of

which\_ I believe the subsequent enumeration to be \_nearly

complete\_."--TREATISE ON ETYM. AND SYNT., p. 192.

OBS. 12.--Dr. Johnson, in his Grammar of the English Tongue, recognizes two

forms which would make \_teach\_ and \_reach\_ redundant. But \_teached\_ is now

"obsolete," and \_rought\_ is "old," according to his own Dictionary. Of

\_loaded\_ and \_loaden\_, which he gives as participles of \_load\_, the regular

form only appears to be now in good use. For the redundant forms of many

words in the foregoing list, as of \_abode\_ or \_abided, awaked\_ or \_awoke,

besought\_ or \_beseeched, caught\_ or \_catched, hewed\_ or \_hewn, mowed\_ or

\_mown, laded\_ or \_laden, seethed\_ or \_sod, sheared\_ or \_shore, sowed\_ or

\_sown, waked\_ or \_woke, wove\_ or \_weaved\_, his authority may be added to

that of others already cited. In Dearborn's Columbian Grammar, published in

Boston in 1795, the year in which Lindley Murray's Grammar first appeared

in York, no fewer than thirty verbs are made redundant, which are not so

represented by Murray. Of these I have retained nineteen in the following

list, and left the other eleven to be now considered always regular. The

thirty are these: "bake, \_bend, build, burn\_, climb, \_creep, dream\_, fold,

freight, \_geld, heat, heave\_, help, \_lay, leap\_, lift, \_light\_, melt, owe,

\_quit\_, rent, rot, \_seethe, spell, split, strive\_, wash, \_weave, wet,

work\_." See \_Dearborn's Gram.\_, p. 37-45.

LIST OF THE REDUNDANT VERBS.

\_Imperfect\_

\_Present. Preterit. Participle. Perfect Participle\_.

Abide, abode \_or\_ abided, abiding, abode \_or\_ abided.

Awake, awaked \_or\_ awoke, awaking, awaked \_or\_ awoke.

Belay, belayed \_or\_ belaid, belaying, belayed \_or\_ belaid.

Bend, bent \_or\_ bended, bending, bent \_or\_ bended.

Bereave, bereft \_or\_ bereaved, bereaving, bereft \_or\_ bereaved.

Beseech, besought \_or\_ beseeched, beseeching, besought \_or\_ beseeched.

Bet, betted \_or\_ bet, betting, betted \_or\_ bet.

Betide, betided \_or\_ betid, betiding, betided \_or\_ betid.

Bide, bode \_or\_ bided, biding, bode \_or\_ bided.

Blend, blended \_or\_ blent, blending, blended \_or\_ blent.

Bless, blessed \_or\_ blest, blessing, blessed \_or\_ blest.

Blow, blew \_or\_ blowed, blowing, blown \_or\_ blowed.

Build, built \_or\_ builded, building, built \_or\_ builded.

Burn, burned \_or\_ burnt, burning, burned \_or\_ burnt.

Burst, burst \_or\_ bursted, bursting, burst \_or\_ bursted.

Catch, caught \_or\_ catched, catching, caught \_or\_ catched.

Clothe, clothed \_or\_ clad, clothing, clothed \_or\_ clad.

Creep, crept \_or\_ creeped, creeping, crept \_or\_ creeped.

Crow, crowed \_or\_ crew, crowing, crowed.

Curse, cursed \_or\_ curst, cursing, cursed \_or\_ curst.

Dare, dared \_or\_ durst, daring, dared.

Deal, dealt \_or\_ dealed, dealing, dealt \_or\_ dealed.

Dig, dug \_or\_ digged, digging, dug \_or\_ digged.

Dive, dived \_or\_ dove, diving, dived \_or\_ diven.

Dream, dreamed \_or\_ dreamt, dreaming, dreamed \_or\_ dreamt.

Dress, dressed \_or\_ drest, dressing, dressed \_or\_ drest.

Dwell, dwelt \_or\_ dwelled, dwelling, dwelt \_or\_ dwelled.

Freeze, froze \_or\_ freezed, freezing, frozen \_or\_ freezed.

Geld, gelded \_or\_ gelt, gelding, gelded \_or\_ gelt.

Gild, gilded \_or\_ gilt, gilding, gilded \_or\_ gilt.

Gird, girded \_or\_ girt, girding, girded \_or\_ girt.

Grave, graved, graving, graved \_or\_ graven.

Grind, ground \_or\_ grinded, grinding, ground \_or\_ grinded.

Hang, hung \_or\_ hanged, hanging, hung \_or\_ hanged.

Heat, heated \_or\_ het, heating, heated \_or\_ het.

Heave, heaved \_or\_ hove, heaving, heaved \_or\_ hoven.

Hew, hewed, hewing, hewed \_or\_ hewn.

Kneel, kneeled \_or\_ knelt, kneeling, kneeled \_or\_ knelt.

Knit, knit \_or\_ knitted, knitting, knit \_or\_ knitted.

Lade, laded, lading, laded \_or\_ laden.

Lay, laid \_or\_ layed, laying, laid \_or\_ layed.

Lean, leaned \_or\_ leant, leaning, leaned \_or\_ leant.

Leap, leaped \_or\_ leapt, leaping, leaped \_or\_ leapt.[292]

Learn, learned \_or\_ learnt, learning, learned \_or\_ learnt.

Light, lighted \_or\_ lit, lighting, lighted \_or\_ lit.

Mean, meant \_or\_ meaned, meaning, meant \_or\_ meaned.

Mow, mowed, mowing, mowed \_or\_ mown.

Mulct, mulcted \_or\_ mulct, mulcting, mulcted \_or\_ mulct.

Pass, passed \_or\_ past, passing, passed \_or\_ past.

Pay, paid \_or\_ payed, paying, paid \_or\_ payed.

Pen, penned \_or\_ pent, penning, penned \_or\_ pent.

(to coop,)

Plead, pleaded \_or\_ pled, pleading, pleaded \_or\_ pled.

Prove, proved, proving, proved \_or\_ proven.

Quit, quitted \_or\_ quit, quitting, quitted \_or\_ quit.[293]

Rap, rapped \_or\_ rapt, rapping, rapped \_or\_ rapt.

Reave, reft \_or\_ reaved, reaving, reft \_or\_ reaved.

Rive, rived, riving, riven \_or\_ rived.

Roast, roasted \_or\_ roast, roasting, roasted \_or\_ roast.

Saw, sawed, sawing, sawed \_or\_ sawn.

Seethe, seethed \_or\_ sod, seething, seethed \_or\_ sodden.

Shake, shook \_or\_ shaked, shaking, shaken \_or\_ shaked.

Shape, shaped, shaping, shaped \_or\_ shapen.

Shave, shaved, shaving, shaved \_or\_ shaven.

Shear, sheared \_or\_ shore, shearing, sheared \_or\_ shorn.

Shine, shined \_or\_ shone, shining, shined \_or\_ shone.

Show, showed, showing, showed \_or\_ shown.

Sleep, slept \_or\_ sleeped, sleeping, slept \_or\_ sleeped.

Slide, slid \_or\_ slided, sliding, slidden, slid,

\_or\_ slided.

Slit, slitted \_or\_ slit, slitting, slitted \_or\_ slit.

Smell, smelled \_or\_ smelt, smelling, smelled \_or\_ smelt.

Sow, sowed, sowing, sowed \_or\_ sown.

Speed, sped \_or\_ speeded, speeding, sped \_or\_ speeded.

Spell, spelled \_or\_ spelt, spelling, spelled \_or\_ spelt.

Spill, spilled \_or\_ spilt, spilling, spilled \_or\_ spilt.

Split, split \_or\_ splitted, splitting, split

\_or\_ splitted.[294]

Spoil, spoiled \_or\_ spoilt, spoiling, spoiled \_or\_ spoilt.

Stave, stove \_or\_ staved, staving, stove \_or\_ staved.

Stay, staid \_or\_ stayed, staying, staid \_or\_ stayed.

String, strung \_or\_ stringed, stringing, strung \_or\_ stringed.

Strive, strived \_or\_ strove, striving, strived \_or\_ striven.

Strow, strowed, strowing, strowed \_or\_ strown.

Sweat, sweated \_or\_ sweat, sweating, sweated \_or\_ sweat.

Sweep, swept \_or\_ sweeped, sweeping, swept \_or\_ sweeped.

Swell, swelled, swelling, swelled \_or\_ swollen.

Thrive, thrived \_or\_ throve, thriving, thrived \_or\_ thriven.

Throw, threw \_or\_ throwed, throwing, thrown \_or\_ throwed.

Wake, waked \_or\_ woke, waking, waked \_or\_ woke.

Wax, waxed, waxing, waxed \_or\_ waxen.

Weave, wove \_or\_ weaved, weaving, woven \_or\_ weaved.

Wed, wedded \_or\_ wed, wedding, wedded \_or\_ wed.

Weep, wept \_or\_ weeped, weeping, wept \_or\_ weeped.

Wet, wet \_or\_ wetted, wetting, wet \_or\_ wetted.

Whet, whetted \_or\_ whet, whetting, whetted \_or\_ whet.[295]

Wind, wound \_or\_ winded, winding, wound \_or\_ winded.

Wont, wont \_or\_ wonted, wonting, wont \_or\_ wonted.

Work, worked \_or\_ wrought, working, worked \_or\_ wrought.

Wring, wringed \_or\_ wrung, wringing, wringed \_or\_ wrung.[296]

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

A \_defective verb\_ is a verb that forms no participles, and is used in but

few of the moods and tenses; as, \_beware, ought, quoth\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1. When any of the principal parts of a verb are wanting, the tenses

usually derived from those parts are also, of course, wanting. All the

auxiliaries, except \_do, be\_, and \_have\_, if we compare them with other

verbs, are defective; but, \_as auxiliaries\_, they lack nothing; for no

complete verb is used throughout as an auxiliary, except \_be\_. And since an

auxiliary differs essentially from a principal verb, the propriety of

referring \_may, can, must\_, and \_shall\_, to the class of defective verbs,

is at least questionable. In parsing there is never any occasion to \_call\_

them defective verbs, because they are always taken together with their

principals. And though we may technically say, that their participles are

"\_wanting\_," it is manifest that none are \_needed\_.

OBS. 2. \_Will\_ is sometimes used as a principal verb, and as such it is

regular and complete; \_will, willed, willing, willed\_: as, "His Majesty

\_willed\_ that they should attend."--\_Clarendon\_. "He \_wills\_ for them a

happiness of a far more exalted and enduring nature."--\_Gurney\_. "Whether

thou \_willest\_ it to be a minister to our pleasure."--\_Harris\_. "I \_will\_;

be thou clean."--\_Luke\_, v, 13. "Nevertheless, not as I \_will\_, but as thou

\_will\_."--\_Matt.\_, xxvi, 39. "To \_will\_ is present with me."--\_Rom.\_, vii,

18. But \_would\_ is sometimes also a principal verb; as, "What \_would\_ this

man?"--\_Pope\_. "Would God that all the Lord's people were

prophets."--\_Numb.\_, xi, 29. "And Israel \_would\_ none of me."--\_Psalm\_,

lxxxi, 11. If we refer this indefinite preterit to the same root, \_will\_

becomes redundant; \_will, willed\_ or \_would, willing, willed\_. In respect

to time, \_would\_ is less definite than \_willed\_, though both are called

preterits. It is common, and perhaps best, to consider them distinct verbs.

The latter only can be a participle: as,

"How rarely does it meet with this time's guise,

When man was \_will'd\_ to love his enemies!"--\_Shakspeare\_.

OBS. 3. The remaining defective verbs are only five or six questionable

terms, which our grammarians know not well how else to explain; some of

them being now nearly obsolete, and others never having been very proper.

\_Begone\_ is a needless coalition of \_be\_ and \_gone\_, better written

separately, unless Dr. Johnson is right in calling the compound an

\_interjection\_: as,

"Begone! the goddess cries with stern disdain,

Begone! nor dare the hallow'd stream to stain!"--\_Addison\_.

\_Beware\_ also seems to be a needless compound of \_be\_ and the old adjective

\_ware\_, wary, aware, cautious. Both these are, of course, used only in

those forms of expression in which \_be\_ is proper; as, "\_Beware\_ of dogs,

\_beware\_ of evil workers, \_beware\_ of the concision."--\_Philippians\_, iii,

2. "But we \_must beware\_[297] of carrying our attention to this beauty too

far."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 119. These words were formerly separated: as,

"Of whom \_be\_ thou \_ware\_ also."--\_1 Tim.\_, iv, 15. "They \_were ware\_ of

it."--FRIENDS' BIBLE, and ALGER'S: \_Acts\_, xiii, 6. "They were \_aware\_ of

it."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: ib. "And in an hour \_that\_ he is not \_ware\_ of

him."--\_Johnson's Dict., w. Ware\_. "And in an hour that he is not \_aware\_

of."--COMMON BIBLES: \_Matt.\_, xxiv, 50. "Bid her well \_be ware\_ and still

erect."--MILTON: \_in Johnson's Dict.\_ "That even Silence \_was took\_ ere she

\_was ware\_."--\_Id., Comus\_, line 558. The adjective \_ware\_ is now said to

be "\_obsolete\_;" but the propriety of this assertion depends upon that of

forming such a defective verb. What is the use of doing so?

"This to disclose is all thy guardian can;

\_Beware\_ of all, but most \_beware\_ of man."--\_Pope\_.

The words written separately will always have the same meaning, unless we

omit the preposition \_of\_, and suppose the compound to be a \_transitive\_

verb. In this case, the argument for compounding the terms appears to be

valid; as,

"\_Beware\_ the public \_laughter\_ of the town;

Thou springst a-leak already in thy crown."--\_Dryden\_.

OBS. 4. The words \_ought\_ and \_own\_, without question, were originally

parts of the redundant verb \_to owe\_; thus: \_owe, owed\_ or \_ought, owing,

owed\_ or \_own\_. But both have long been disjoined from this connexion, and

hence \_owe\_ has become regular. \_Own\_, as now used, is either a pronominal

adjective, as, "my \_own\_ hand," or a regular verb thence derived, as, "to

\_own\_ a house." \_Ought\_, under the name of a \_defective verb\_, is now

generally thought to be properly used, in this one form, in all the persons

and numbers of the present and the imperfect tense of the indicative and

subjunctive moods. Or, if it is really of one tense only, it is plainly an

aorist; and hence the time must be specified by the infinitive that

follows: as, "He \_ought\_ to \_go\_; He \_ought\_ to \_have gone\_." "If thou

\_ought\_ to \_go\_; If thou \_ought\_ to \_have gone\_." Being originally a

preterit, it never occurs in the infinitive mood, and is entirely

invariable, except in the solemn style, where we find \_oughtest\_ in both

tenses; as, "How thou \_oughtest\_ to \_behave\_ thyself."--\_1 Tim.\_, iii, 15.

"Thou \_oughtest\_ therefore to \_have put\_ my money to the

exchangers."--\_Matt.\_, xxiv, 27. We never say, or have said, "He, she, or

it, \_oughts\_ or \_oughteth\_." Yet we manifestly use this verb in the present

tense, and in the third person singular; as, "Discourse \_ought always to

begin\_ with a clear proposition."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 217. I have already

observed that some grammarians improperly call \_ought\_ an auxiliary. The

learned authors of Brightland's Grammar, (which is dedicated to Queen

Anne,) did so; and also affirmed that \_must\_ and \_ought\_ "have only the

\_present time\_," and are alike \_invariable\_. "It is \_now\_ quite obsolete to

say, \_thou oughtest\_; for \_ought\_ now changes its ending no more than

\_must\_."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, (approved by \_Isaac Bickerstaff, Esq.\_,) p.

112.

"\_Do, will\_, and \_shall, must\_, OUGHT, and \_may\_,

\_Have, am\_, or \_be\_, this Doctrine will display."--\_Ib.\_, p. 107.

OBS. 5.--\_Wis\_, preterit \_wist\_, to know, to think, to suppose, to imagine,

appears to be now nearly or quite obsolete; but it may be proper to explain

it, because it is found in the Bible: as, "I \_wist\_ not, brethren, that he

was the high priest."--\_Acts\_, xxiii, 5. "He himself '\_wist\_ not that his

face shone.'"--\_Life of Schiller\_, p. iv. \_Wit\_, to know, and \_wot\_, knew,

are also obsolete, except in the phrase \_to wit\_; which, being taken

abstractly, is equivalent to the adverb \_namely\_, or to the phrase, \_that

is to say\_. The phrase, "\_we do you to wit\_," (in 2 Cor., viii, 1st,)

means, "we \_inform\_ you." Churchill gives the present tense of this verb

three forms, \_weet, wit\_, and \_wot\_; and there seems to have been some

authority for them all: as, "He was, \_to weet\_, a little roguish

page."--\_Thomson\_. "But little \_wotteth\_ he the might of the means his

folly despiseth."--\_Tupper's Book of Thoughts\_, p. 35. \_To wit\_, used

alone, to indicate a thing spoken of, (as the French use their infinitive,

\_savoir, à savoir\_, or the phrase, \_c'est à savoir\_,) is undoubtedly an

elliptical expression: probably for, "\_I give you to wit\_;" i. e., "I give

you \_to know\_." \_Trow\_, to think, occurs in the Bible; as, "I \_trow\_

not."--\_N. Test\_. And Coar gives it as a defective verb; and only in the

first person singular of the present indicative, "\_I trow\_." Webster and

Worcester mark the words as obsolete; but Sir W. Scott, in the Lady of the

Lake, has this line:

"Thinkst thou \_he trow'd\_ thine omen ought?"--\_Canto\_ iv, stanza 10.

\_Quoth\_ and \_quod\_, for \_say, saith\_, or \_said\_, are obsolete, or used only

in ludicrous language. Webster supposes these words to be equivalent, and

each confined to the first and third persons of the present and imperfect

tenses of the indicative mood. Johnson says, that, "\_quoth you\_," as used

by Sidney, is irregular; but Tooke assures us, that "The \_th\_ in \_quoth\_,

does not designate the third person."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p.

323. They are each invariable, and always placed before the nominative: as,

\_quoth I, quoth he\_.

"Yea, so sayst thou, (\_quod\_ Tröylus,) alas!"--\_Chaucer\_.

"I feare, \_quod\_ he, it wyll not be."--\_Sir T. More\_.

"Stranger, go! Heaven be thy guide!

\_Quod\_ the beadsman of Nith-side."--\_Burns\_.

OBS. 6.--\_Methinks\_, (i. e., \_to\_ me \_it\_ thinks,) for I think, or, it

seems to me, with its preterit \_methought\_, (i. e., \_to\_ me \_it\_

thought,) is called by Dr. Johnson an "ungrammatical word." He imagined it

to be "a Norman corruption, the French being apt to confound \_me\_ and

\_I\_."--\_Joh. Dict.\_ It is indeed a puzzling anomaly in our language, though

not without some Anglo-Saxon or Latin parallels; and, like its kindred, "me

\_seemeth\_," or "\_meseems\_," is little worthy to be countenanced, though

often used by Dryden, Pope, Addison, and other good writers. Our

lexicographers call it an \_impersonal verb\_, because, being compounded with

an objective, it cannot have a nominative expressed. It is nearly

equivalent to the adverb \_apparently\_; and if impersonal, it is also

defective; for it has no participles, no "\_methinking\_," and no participial

construction of "\_methought\_;" though Webster's American Dictionary,

whether quarto or octavo, absurdly suggests that the latter word may be

used as a participle. In the Bible, we find the following text: "\_Me

thinketh\_ the running of the foremost is like the running of Ahimaaz."--\_2

Sam.\_, xviii, 27. And Milton improperly makes \_thought\_ an impersonal verb,

apparently governing the separate objective pronoun \_him\_; as,

"\_Him thought\_ he by the brook of Cherith stood."

--\_P. R.\_, B. ii, l. 264.

OBS. 7.--Some verbs from the nature of the subjects to which they refer,

are chiefly confined to the third person singular; as, "It \_rains\_; it

\_snows\_; it \_freezes\_; it \_hails\_; it \_lightens\_; it \_thunders\_." These

have been called \_impersonal verbs\_; because the neuter pronoun it, which

is commonly used before them, does not seem to represent any noun, but, in

connexion with the verb, merely to express a state of things. They are

however, in fact, neither impersonal nor defective. Some, or all of them,

may possibly take some other nominative, if not a different person; as,

"The \_Lord rained\_ upon Sodom, and upon Gomorrah, brimstone and

fire."--\_Gen.\_, xix, 24. "The \_God\_ of glory \_thundereth\_."--\_Psalms\_,

xxix, 3. "\_Canst thou thunder\_ with a voice like him?"--\_Job\_, xl, 9. In

short, as Harris observes, "The doctrine of Impersonal Verbs has been

justly rejected by the best grammarians, both ancient and

modern."--\_Hermes\_, p. 175.

OBS. 8.--By some writers, words of this kind are called \_Monopersonal

Verbs\_; that is, verbs of \_one person\_. This name, though not very properly

compounded, is perhaps more fit than the other; but we have little occasion

to speak of these verbs as a distinct class in our language. Dr. Murray

says, "What is called an impersonal verb, is not so; for \_lic-et, juv-at\_,

and \_oport-et\_, have \_Tha, that thing\_, or \_it\_, in their

composition."--\_History of European Languages\_, Vol. ii, p. 146. \_Ail,

irk\_, and \_behoove\_, are regular verbs and transitive; but they are used

only in the third person singular: as, "What \_ails\_ you?"--"It \_irks\_

me."--"It \_behooves\_ you." The last two are obsolescent, or at least not in

very common use. In Latin, \_passive\_ verbs, or neuters of the passive form,

are often used impersonally, or without an obvious nominative; and this

elliptical construction is sometimes imitated in English, especially by the

poets: as,

"Meanwhile, ere thus \_was sinn'd\_ and \_judg'd\_ on earth,

Within the gates of Hell sat Sin and Death."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. x, l. 230.

"Forthwith on all sides to his aid \_was run\_

By angels many and strong, who interpos'd."

--\_Id.\_, B. vi, l. 335.

LIST OF THE DEFECTIVE VERBS.

\_Present. Preterit.\_

Beware, ------

Can, could.

May, might.

Methinks, methought.

Must, must.[298]

Ought, ought.[298]

Shall, should,

Will[299] would.

Quoth, quoth.

Wis, wist.[300]

Wit, wot.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS VI--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Sixth Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the\_ ARTICLES, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, \_and\_ VERBS.

\_The definitions to be given in the Sixth Praxis, are two for an article,

six for a noun, three for an adjective, six for a pronoun, seven for a verb

finite, five for an infinitive, and one for a participle, an adverb, a

conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"The freedom of choice seems essential to happiness; because, properly

speaking, that is riot our own which is imposed upon us."--\_Dillwyn's

Reflections\_, p. 109.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or

\_a\_, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The

definite article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Freedom\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a

finite verb.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Choice\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is; the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can he known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form

or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb,

participle, or preposition.

\_Seems\_ is a regular neuter verb, from \_seem, seemed, seeming, seemed\_;

found in the indicative mood, present tense, third person, and singular

number. 1. A verb is a word that signifies to be, to act, or to be acted

upon. 2. A regular verb is a verb that forms the preterit and the perfect

participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. A neuter verb is a verb that

expresses neither action nor passion, but simply being, or a state of

being. 4. The indicative mood is that form of the verb, which simply

indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question. 5. The present tense is

that which expresses what now exists, or is taking place. 6. The third

person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 7. The

singular number is that which denotes but one. \_Essential\_ is a common

adjective, compared by means of the adverbs; \_essential, more essential,

most essential\_; or, \_essential, less essential, least essential\_. 1. An

adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses

quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary epithet, or adjective

denoting quality or situation. 3. Those adjectives which may be varied in

sense, but not in form, are compared by means of adverbs.

\_To\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Happiness\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form

or state of a noun or pronoun which usually denotes the object of a verb,

participle, or preposition.

\_Because\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect

words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms

so connected.

\_Properly\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner.

\_Speaking\_ is a participle. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb,

participating the properties of a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and

is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb.

\_That\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared; standing for \_that thing\_,

in the third person, singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case.

[See OBS. 14th, p. 290.] 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or

pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A pronominal adjective is a

definitive word which may either accompany its noun, or represent it

understood. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing

merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5.

The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor

female. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun,

which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

\_Is\_ is an irregular neuter verb, from \_be, was, being, been\_; found in the

indicative mood, present tense, third person, and singular number. 1. A

verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon.\_ 2. An

irregular verb is a verb that does not form the preterit and the perfect

participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed.\_ 3. A neuter verb is a verb that

expresses neither action nor passion, but simply being, or a state of

being. 4. The indicative mood is that form of the verb, which simply

indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question. 5. The present tense is

that which expresses what now exists, or is taking place. 6. The third

person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 7. The

singular number is that which denotes but one.

\_Not\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle,

an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place,

degree, or manner.

\_Our\_ is a personal pronoun, of the first person, plural number, masculine

gender, and possessive case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a

noun. 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what

person it is. 3. The first person is that which denotes the speaker or

writer. 4. The plural number is that which denotes more than one. 5. The

masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of the male kind.

6. The possessive case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which

usually denotes the relation of property.

\_Own\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared. 1. An adjective is a word

added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A

pronominal adjective is a definitive word which may either accompany its

noun, or represent it understood. 3. Those adjectives whose signification

does not admit of different degrees cannot be compared.

\_Which\_ is a relative pronoun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a

noun. 2. A relative pronoun is a pronoun that represents an antecedent word

or phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence. 3. The third

person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The

singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that

which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative

case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun which usually denotes the

subject of a finite verb.

\_Is imposed\_ is a regular passive verb, from the active verb, \_impose,

imposed, imposing, imposed\_,--passive, \_to be imposed\_; found in the

indicative mood, present tense, third person, and singular number. 1. A

verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_. 2. A

regular verb is a verb that forms the preterit and the perfect participle

by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. A passive verb is a verb that represents the

subject, or what the nominative expresses, as being acted upon. 4. The

indicative mood is that form of the verb which simply indicates or declares

a thing, or asks a question. 5. The present tense is that which expresses

what now exists, or is taking place. 6. The third person is that which

denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 7. The singular number is

that which denotes but one.

\_Upon\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Us\_ is a personal pronoun, of the first person, plural number, masculine

gender, and objective case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person

it is. 3. The first person is that which denotes the speaker or writer. 4.

The plural number is that which denotes more than one. 5. The masculine

gender is that which denotes persons or animals of the male kind. 6. The

objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually

denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"He has desires after the kingdom, and mates no question but it shall be

his; he wills, runs, strives, believes, hopes, prays, reads scriptures,

observes duties, and regards ordinances."--\_Penington\_, ii, 124.

"Wo unto you, lawyers! for ye have taken away the key of knowledge: ye

enter not in yourselves, and them that were entering in ye

hindered."--\_Luke\_, xi, 52.

"Above all other liberties, give me the liberty to know, to utter, and to

argue freely, according to my conscience."--\_Milton\_.

"Eloquence is to be looked for only in free states. Longinus illustrates

this observation with a great deal of beauty. 'Liberty,' he remarks, 'is

the nurse of true genius; it animates the spirit, and invigorates the

hopes, of men; it excites honourable emulation, and a desire of excelling

in every art.'"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 237.

"None of the faculties common to man and the lower animals, conceive the

idea of civil liberty, any more than that of religion."--\_Spurzheim, on

Education\_, p. 259. "Whoever is not able, or does not dare, to think, or

does not feel contradictions and absurdities, is unfit for a refined

religion and civil liberty."--\_Ib.\_, p. 258.

"The too great number of journals, and the extreme partiality of their

authors, have much discredited them. A man must have great talents to

please all sorts of readers; and it is impossible to please all authors,

who, generally speaking, cannot bear with the most judicious and most

decent criticisms."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 170.

"Son of man, I have broken the arm of Pharaoh king of Egypt; and, lo, it

shall not be bound up to be healed, to put a roller to bind it, to make it

strong to hold the sword."--\_Ezekiel\_, xxx, 21.

"Yet he was humble, kind, forgiving, meek,

Easy to be entreated, gracious, mild;

And, with all patience and affection, taught,

Rebuked, persuaded, solaced, counselled, warned."--\_Pollok\_, B. ix.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"What is coming, will come; what is proceeding onward, verges towards

completion."--\_Dr. Murray's Europ. Lang.\_, i, 324. "Sir, if it had not been

for the art of printing, we should now have had no learning at all; for

books would have perished faster than they could have been

transcribed."--\_Dr. Johnson's Life\_, iii, 400.

"Passionate reproofs are like medicines given scalding hot: the patient

cannot take them. If we wish to do good to those whom we rebuke, we should

labour for meekness of wisdom, and use soft words and hard

arguments."--\_Dodd\_.

"My prayer for you is, that God may guide you by his counsel, and in the

end bring you to glory: to this purpose, attend diligently to the dictates

of his good spirit, which you may hear within you; for Christ saith, 'He

that dwelleth with you, shall be in you.' And, as you hear and obey him,

he will conduct you through this troublous world, in ways of truth and

righteousness, and land you at last in the habitations of everlasting rest

and peace with the Lord, to praise him for ever and ever."--\_T. Gwin\_.

"By matter, we mean, that which is tangible, extended, and divisible; by

mind, that which perceives, reflects, wills, and reasons. These properties

are wholly dissimilar and admit of no comparison. To pretend that mind is

matter, is to propose a contradiction in terms; and is just as absurd, as

to pretend that matter is mind."--\_Gurney's Portable Evidence\_, p. 78.

"If any one should think all this to be of little importance, I desire him

to consider what he would think, if vice had, essentially, and in its

nature, these advantageous tendencies, or if virtue had essentially the

direct contrary ones."--\_Butler\_, p. 99.

"No man can write simpler and stronger English than the celebrated Boz, and

this renders us the more annoyed at those manifold vulgarities and slipshod

errors, which unhappily have of late years disfigured his

productions."--LIVING AUTHORS OF ENGLAND: \_The Examiner\_, No. 119.

"Here Havard, all serene, in the same strains,

Loves, hates, and rages, triumphs, and complains."--\_Churchill\_, p. 3.

"Let Satire, then, her proper object know,

And ere she strike, be sure she strike a foe."--\_John Brown\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"The Author of nature has as truly directed that vicious actions,

considered as mischievous to society, should be punished, and has as

clearly put mankind under a necessity of thus punishing them, as he has

directed and necessitated us to preserve our lives by food."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 88. "An author may injure his works by altering, and even

amending, the successive editions: the first impression sinks the deepest,

and with the credulous it can rarely be effaced; nay, he will be vainly

employed who endeavours to eradicate it."--\_Werter\_, p. 82.

"It is well ordered, that even the most innocent blunder is not committed

with impunity; because, were errors licensed where they do no hurt,

inattention would grow into habit, and be the occasion of much

hurt."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 285.

"The force of language consists in raising complete images; which have the

effect to transport the reader, as by magic, into the very place of the

important action, and to convert him as it were into a spectator, beholding

every thing that passes."--\_Id., ib.\_, ii, 241.

"An orator should not put forth all his strength at the beginning, but

should rise and grow upon us, as his discourse advances."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 309.

"When a talent is given to any one, an account is open with the giver of

it, who appoints a day in which he will arrive and 'redemand his own with

usury.'"--\_West's Letters to a Young Lady\_, p. 74.

"Go, and reclaim the sinner, instruct the ignorant, soften the obdurate,

and (as occasion shall demand) cheer, depress, repel, allure, disturb,

assuage, console, or terrify."--\_Jerningham's Essay on Eloquence\_, p. 97.

"If all the year were playing holydays,

To sport would be as tedious as to work:

But when they seldom come, they wish'd-for come,

And nothing pleaseth but rare accidents."

--\_Shak., Hen. V\_.

"The man that once did sell the lion's skin

While the beast liv'd, was kill'd with hunting him."

--\_Id., Joh. Dict., w. Beast\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS OF VERBS.

LESSON I.--PRETERITS.

"In speaking on a matter which toucht their hearts."--\_Philological

Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 441.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_toucht\_ is terminated in \_t\_. But,

according to Observation 2nd, on the irregular verbs, \_touch\_ is regular.

Therefore, this \_t\_ should be changed to \_ed\_; thus, "In speaking on a

matter which \_touched\_ their hearts."]

"Though Horace publisht it some time after."--\_Ib.\_, i, 444. "The best

subjects with which the Greek models furnisht him."--\_Ib.\_, i, 444. "Since

he attacht no thought to it."--\_Ib.\_, i, 645. "By what slow steps the Greek

alphabet reacht its perfection."--\_Ib.\_, i, 651. "Because Goethe wisht to

erect an affectionate memorial."--\_Ib.\_, i, 469. "But the Saxon forms soon

dropt away."--\_Ib.\_, i, 668. "It speaks of all the towns that perisht in

the age of Philip."--\_Ib.\_, i, 252. "This enricht the written language with

new words."--\_Ib.\_, i, 668. "He merely furnisht his friend with matter for

laughter."--\_Ib.\_, i, 479. "A cloud arose and stopt the light."--\_Swift's

Poems\_, p. 313. "She slipt \_zpadillo\_ in her breast."--\_Ib.\_, p. 371. "I

guest the hand."--\_Ib.\_, p. 372. "The tyrant stript me to the skin: My skin

he flay'd, my hair he cropt; At head and foot my body lopt."--\_Ib., On a

Pen\_, p. 338. "I see the greatest owls in you, That ever screecht or ever

flew."--\_Ib.\_, p. 403. "I sate with delight, from morning till

night."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367. "Dick nimbly skipt the gutter."--\_Ib.\_, p. 375. "In

at the pantry door this morn I slipt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 369. "Nobody living ever

toucht me but you."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 92. "\_Present\_, I ship;

\_Past\_, I shipped or shipt; \_Participle\_, shipped or shipt."--\_Murray the

schoolmaster. Gram.\_, p. 31. "Then the king arose, and tare his

garments."--\_2 Sam.\_, xiii, 31. "When he lift up his foot, he knew not

where he should set it next."--\_Bunyan\_. "He lift up his spear against

eight hundred, whom he slew at one time."--2 SAM.: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "Upon

this chaos rid the distressed ark."--BURNET: \_ib.\_ "On whose foolish

honesty, my practices rid easy."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_ "That form of the first or

primogenial Earth, which rise immediately out of chaos."--BURNET: \_ib.\_

"Sir, how come it you have holp to make this rescue?"--SHAK.: \_in Joh.

Dict.\_ "He sware he had rather lose all his father's images than that

table."--PEACHAM: \_ib.\_ "When our language dropt its ancient

terminations."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist.\_, ii, 5. "When themselves they

vilify'd."--\_Milton\_, P. L., xi, 515. "But I choosed rather to do

thus."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 456. "When he plead against the parsons."--

\_School History\_, p. 168. "And he that saw it, bear record."--\_Cutler's

Gram.\_, p. 72. "An irregular verb has one more variation, as drive,

drivest, drives, drivedst, drove, driving, driven."--REV. MATT. HARRISON,

\_on the English Language\_, p. 260. "Beside that village Hannibal pitcht his

camp."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 79. "He fetcht it even from Tmolus."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 114. "He supt with his morning gown on."--\_Ib.\_, p. 285. "There

stampt her sacred name."--\_Barlow's Columbiad\_, B. i, l. 233.

"Fixt on the view the great discoverer stood,

And thus addrest the messenger of good."--\_Barlow\_, B, i, l. 658.

LESSON II.--MIXED.

"Three freemen were being tried at the date of our last

information."--\_Newspaper\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the participle \_being\_ is used after its own

verb \_were\_. But, according to Observation 4th, on the compound form of the

conjugation, this complex passive form is an absurd innovation. Therefore,

the expression should be changed; thus, "Three freemen \_were on

trial\_"--or, "\_were receiving their trial\_--at the date of our last

information."]

"While the house was being built, many of the tribe arrived."--\_Ross Cox's

Travels\_, p. 102. "But a foundation has been laid in Zion, and the church

is being built upon it."--\_The Friend\_, ix, 377. "And one fourth of the

people are being educated."--\_East India Magazine\_. "The present, or that

which is now being done."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 13. "A new church, called the

Pantheon, is just being completed in an expensive style."--\_G. A.

Thompson's Guatemala\_, p. 467. "When I last saw him, he was grown

considerably."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 223; \_Merchants\_, 198. "I know what a

rugged and dangerous path I am got into."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 83. "You

were as good preach case to one on the rack."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 285.

"Thou hast heard me, and art become my salvation."--\_Psal.\_, cxviii, 21.

"While the Elementary Spelling-Book was being prepared for the press."--\_L.

Cobb's Review\_, p. vi. "Language is become, in modern times, more correct

and accurate."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 16. "If the plan have been executed

in any measure answerable to the author's wishes."--\_Robbins's Hist.\_, p.

3. "The vial of wrath is still being poured out on the seat of the

beast."--\_Christian Experience\_, p. 409. "Christianity was become the

generally adopted and established religion of the whole Roman

Empire."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 35. "Who wrote before the first century was

elapsed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 13. "The original and analogical form is grown quite

obsolete."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 56. "Their love, and their hatred, and

their envy, are perished."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 149. "The poems were got

abroad and in a great many hands."--\_Pref. to Waller\_. "It is more

harmonious, as well as more correct, to say, 'the bubble is almost

bursted.'"--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 109. "I drave my suitor from his mad

humour of love."--\_Shak\_. "Se viriliter expedivit. (\_Cicero\_.) He hath

plaid the man."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 214. "Wilt thou kill me, as thou

diddest the Egyptian yesterday."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Acts\_, vii, 28. "And we,

methoughts, look'd up t'him from our hill."--\_Cowley's Davideis\_, B. iii,

l. 386. "I fear thou doest not think as much of best things as thou

oughtest."--\_Memoir of M. C. Thomas\_, p. 34. "When this work was being

commenced."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 10. "Exercises and Key to this work are

being prepared."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. "James is loved, or being loved by

John."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "Or that which is being exhibited."--\_Ib.\_, p. 77.

"He was being smitten."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "In the passive state we say, 'I am

being loved.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 80. "Subjunctive Mood: If I am being smitten, If

thou art being smitten, If he is being smitten."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "I will

not be able to convince you how superficial the reformation

is."--\_Chalmers's Sermons\_, p. 88. "I said to myself, I will be obliged to

expose the folly."--\_Chazotte's Essay\_, p. 3. "When Clodius, had he meant

to return that day to Rome, must have been arrived."--\_Adams's Rhetoric\_,

i, 418. "That the fact has been done, is being done, or shall or will be

done."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, pp. 347 and 356. "Am I being

instructed?"--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 70. "I am choosing him."--\_Ib.\_, p. 112.

"John, who was respecting his father, was obedient to his

commands."--\_Barrett's Revised Gram.\_, p. 69. "The region echos to the

clash of arms."--\_Beattie's Poems\_, p. 63.

"And sitt'st on high, and mak'st creation's top

Thy footstool; and behold'st below thee, all."

--\_Pollok\_, B. vi, l. 663.

"And see if thou can'st punish sin, and let

Mankind go free. Thou fail'st--be not surprised."

--\_Id.\_, B. ii, l. 118.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"What follows, had better been wanting altogether."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

201.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrase \_had better been\_, is used in the

sense of the potential pluperfect. But, according to Observation 17th, on

the conjugations, this substitution of one form for another is of

questionable propriety. Therefore, the regular form should here be

preferred; thus, "What follows, \_might better have been\_ wanting

altogether."]

"This member of the sentence had much better have been omitted

altogether."--\_Ib.\_, p. 212. "One or [the] other of them, therefore, had

better have been omitted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 212. "The whole of this last member

of the sentence had better have been dropped."--\_Ib.\_, p. 112. "In this

case, they had much better be omitted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 173. "He had better have

said, 'the \_productions\_'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 220. "The Greeks have ascribed the

origin of poetry to Orpheus, Linus, and Musæus."--\_Ib.\_, p. 377. "It has

been noticed long ago, that all these fictitious names have the same number

of syllables."--\_Phil. Museum\_, i, 471. "When I found that he had committed

nothing worthy of death, I have determined to send him."--\_Acts\_, xxv, 25.

"I had rather be a door-keeper in the house of my God."--\_Ps.\_, lxxxiv, 10.

"As for such, I wish the Lord open their eyes."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii.

263. "It would a made our passidge over the river very difficult."--

\_Walley, in\_ 1692. "We should not a been able to have carried our great

guns."--\_Id.\_ "Others would a questioned our prudence, if wee had."--\_Id.\_

See \_Hutchinson's Hist. of Mass.\_, i, 478. "Beware thou bee'st not

BECÆSAR'D; i.e. Beware that thou dost not dwindle into a mere

Cæsar."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 183. "Thou raisedest thy voice to record the

stratagems of needy heroes."--ARBUTHNOT: \_in Joh. Dict., w. Scalade\_. "Life

hurrys off apace: thine is almost up already."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p.

19. "'How unfortunate has this accident made me!' crys such a one."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 60. "The muse that soft and sickly wooes the ear."--\_Pollok\_, i, 13. "A

man were better relate himself to a statue."--\_Bacon.\_ "I heard thee say

but now, thou lik'dst not that."--\_Shak.\_ "In my whole course of wooing,

thou cried'st, \_Indeed!\_"--\_Id.\_ "But our ears are grown familiar with \_I

have wrote, I have drank\_, &c., which are altogether as ungrammatical."--

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 63; \_Churchill's\_, 114. "The court was sat before Sir

Roger came."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 122. "She need be no more with the

jaundice possest."--\_Swift's Poems\_, p. 346. "Besides, you found fault with

our victuals one day that you was here."--\_Ib.\_, p. 333. "If spirit of

other sort, So minded, have o'erleap'd these earthy bounds."--\_Milton, P.

L.\_, B. iv, l. 582. "It should have been more rational to have forborn

this."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 265. "A student is not master of it

till he have seen all these."--\_Dr. Murray's Life\_, p. 55. "The said

justice shall summons the party."--\_Brevard's Digest.\_ "Now what is become

of thy former wit and humour?"--\_Spect.\_, No. 532. "Young stranger, whither

wand'rest thou?"--\_Burns\_, p. 29. "SUBJ.: \_Pres.\_ If I love, If thou

lovest, If he love. \_Imp.\_ If I loved, If thou lovedst, If he

loved."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 51. "SUBJ.: If I do not love, If thou dost

not love, If he does not love;" &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. "If he have committed

sins, they shall be forgiven him."--\_James\_, v, 15. "Subjunctive Mood of

the verb \_to call\_, second person singular: If Thou callest. If Thou

calledst. If Thou hast called. If Thou hadst called. If Thou call. If Thou

shalt or wilt have called."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 41. "Subjunctive Mood of

the verb \_to love\_, second person singular: If thou love. If thou do love.

If thou lovedst. If thou didst love. If thou hast loved. If thou hadst

loved. If thou shalt or wilt love. If thou shalt or wilt have

loved."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 46. "I was; thou wast, or you was; he,

she, or it was: We, you or ye, they, were."--\_White, on the English Verb\_,

p. 51. "I taught, thou taughtedst, he taught."--\_Coar's English Gram.\_, p.

66. "We say, \_if it rains, suppose it rains\_, lest \_it should rain\_, unless

\_it rains\_. This manner of speaking is called the SUBJUNCTIVE

mode."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 72; Abridged Ed., 59. "He is arrived at

what is deemed the age of manhood."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, 163. "He had much

better have let it alone."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, i, 43. "He were better be

without it."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 105. "Hadest not thou been

by."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 107. "I learned geography. Thou learnedest

arithmetick. He learned grammar."--\_Fuller's Gram.\_, p. 34. "Till the sound

is ceased."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 126. "Present, die; Preterit, died;

Perf. Participle, dead."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 158; \_Buchanan's\_, 58;

\_Priestley's\_, 48; \_Ash's\_, 45; \_Fisher's\_, 71; \_Bicknell's\_, 73.

"Thou bowed'st thy glorious head to none, feared'st none."

--\_Pollok\_, B. viii, l. 603.

"Thou look'st upon thy boy as though thou guessedst it."

--\_N. A. Reader\_, p. 320.

"As once thou slept'st, while she to life was form'd"

--\_Milt., P. L.\_, B. xi, l. 369.

"Who finds the partridge in the puttock's nest,

But may imagine how the bird was dead?"

--SHAK.: \_Joh. Dict.\_

"Which might have well becom'd the best of men."

--\_Id., Ant. and Cleop.\_

CHAPTER VII.--PARTICIPLES.

A Participle is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of

a verb, and of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding

\_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_, to the verb: thus, from the verb \_rule\_, are formed

three participles, two simple and one compound; as, 1. \_ruling\_, 2.

\_ruled\_, 3. \_having ruled\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Almost all verbs and participles seem to have their very essence

in \_motion\_, or \_the privation of motion\_--in \_acting\_, or \_ceasing to

act\_. And to all motion and rest, \_time\_ and \_place\_ are necessary

concomitants; nor are the ideas of \_degree\_ and \_manner\_ often irrelevant.

Hence the use of \_tenses\_ and of \_adverbs\_. For whatsoever comes to pass,

must come to pass \_sometime\_ and \_somewhere\_; and, in every event,

something must be affected \_somewhat\_ and \_somehow\_. Hence it is evident

that those grammarians are right, who say, that "\_all participles imply

time\_." But it does not follow, that the \_English\_ participles \_divide\_

time, like the tenses of a verb, and \_specify\_ the period of action; on the

contrary, it is certain and manifest, that they do not. The phrase, "\_men

labouring\_," conveys no other idea than that of \_labourers at work\_; it no

more suggests the \_time\_, than the \_place, degree\_, or \_manner\_, of their

work. All these circumstances require \_other words\_ to express them; as,

"Men \_now here awkwardly\_ labouring \_much\_ to little purpose." Again:

"\_Thenceforward\_ will men, \_there\_ labouring \_hard\_ and \_honourably\_, be

looked down upon by dronish lordlings."

OBS. 2.--Participles retain the \_essential meaning\_ of their verbs; and,

\_like verbs\_, are either \_active-transitive, active-intransitive, passive\_,

or \_neuter\_, in their signification. For this reason, many have classed

them with the verbs. But their \_formal meaning\_ is obviously different.

They convey no affirmation, but usually relate to nouns or pronouns, \_like

adjectives\_, except when they are joined with auxiliaries to form the

compound tenses of their verbs; or when they have in part the nature of

substantives, like the Latin gerunds. Hence some have injudiciously ranked

them with the adjectives. The most discreet writers have commonly assigned

them a separate place among the parts of speech; because, in spite of all

opposite usages, experience has shown that it is expedient to do so.

OBS. 3.--According to the doctrine of Harris, all words denoting the

\_attributes\_ of things, are either verbs, or participles, or adjectives.

Some attributes have their essence in motion: as, \_to walk, to run, to fly,

to strike, to live\_; or, \_walking, running, flying, striking, living\_.

Others have it in the privation of motion: as, \_to stop, to rest, to cease,

to die\_; or, \_stopping, resting, ceasing, dying\_. And there are others

which have nothing to do with either motion or its privation; but have

their essence in the quantity, quality, or situation of things; as, \_great\_

and \_small, white\_ and \_black, wise\_ and \_foolish, eastern\_ and \_western\_.

These last terms are adjectives; and those which denote motion or its

privation, are either verbs or participles, according to their formal

meaning; that is, according to their manner of attribution. See \_Hermes\_,

p. 95. Verbs commonly say or affirm something of their subjects; as, "\_The

babe wept\_." Participles suggest the action or attribute without

affirmation; as, "\_A babe weeping\_,"--"\_An act regretted\_."

OBS. 4.--A verb, then, being expressive of some attribute, which it

ascribes to the thing or person named as its subject; of time, which it

divides and specifies by the tenses; and also, (with the exception of the

infinitive,) of an assertion or affirmation; if we take away the

affirmation and the distinction of tenses, there will remain the attribute

and the general notion of time; and these form the essence of an English

participle. So that a participle is something less than a verb, though

derived immediately from it; and something more than an adjective, or mere

attribute, though its manner of attribution is commonly the same. Hence,

though the participle by rejecting the idea of time may pass almost

insensibly into an adjective, and become truly a participial adjective; yet

the participle and the adjective are by no means one and the same part of

speech, as some will have them to be. There is always an essential

difference in their meaning. For instance: there is a difference between \_a

thinking man\_ and \_a man thinking\_; between \_a bragging fellow\_ and \_a

fellow bragging\_; between \_a fast-sailing ship\_ and \_a ship sailing fast\_.

A thinking man, a bragging fellow, or a fast-sailing ship, is contemplated

as being habitually or permanently such; a man thinking, a fellow bragging,

or a ship sailing fast, is contemplated as performing a particular act; and

this must embrace a period of \_time\_, whether that time be specified or

not. John Locke was a \_thinking man\_; but we should directly contradict his

own doctrine, to suppose him \_always thinking\_.

OBS. 5.--The English participles are all derived from the \_roots\_ of their

respective verbs, and do not, like those of some other languages, take

their names from the \_tenses\_. On the contrary, they are reckoned among the

principal parts in the conjugation of their verbs, and many of the tenses

are formed from them. In the compound forms of conjugation, they are found

alike \_in all the tenses\_. They do not therefore, of themselves, express

any particular time; but they denote the state of the being, action, or

passion, in regard to its progress or completion. This I conceive to be

their principal distinction. Respecting the participles in \_Latin\_, it has

been matter of dispute, whether those which are called the \_present\_ and

the \_perfect\_, are really so in respect to time or not. Sanctius denies it.

In \_Greek\_, the distinction of tenses in the participles is more apparent,

yet even here the time to which they refer, does not always correspond to

their names. See remarks on the Participles in the \_Port Royal Latin and

Greek Grammars\_.

OBS. 6.--Horne Tooke supposes our participles in \_ed\_ to express time past,

and those in \_ing\_ to have no signification of time. He says, "I did not

mean to deny the adsignification of time to \_all\_ the participles; though I

continue to withhold it from that which is called the \_participle

present\_."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 415. Upon the same point,

he afterwards adds, "I am neither new nor singular; for Sanctius both

asserted and proved it by numerous instances in the Latin. Such as, 'Et

\_abfui proficiscens\_ in Græciam.' \_Cicero\_. 'Sed postquam amans \_accessit\_

pretium \_pollicens\_.' \_Terent\_. 'Ultro ad cam \_venies indicans\_ te amare.'

\_Terent\_. 'Turnum \_fugientem\_ hæc terra videbit.' \_Virg\_."--\_Tooke's Div.\_,

ii, 420. Again: "And thus I have given you my opinion concerning what is

called the \_present participle\_. Which I think improperly so called;

because I take it to be merely the simple verb \_adjectived\_, without any

adsignification of \_manner\_ or \_time\_."--\_Tooke's Div.\_, Vol. ii, p. 423.

OBS. 7.--I do not agree with this author, either in limiting participles in

\_ed\_ to time past, or in denying all signification of time to those in

\_ing\_; but I admit that what is commonly called the \_present participle\_,

is not very properly so denominated, either in English or in Latin, or

perhaps in any language. With us, however, this participle is certainly, in

very many instances, something else than "merely the simple verb

\_adjectived\_." For, in the first place, it is often of a complex character,

as \_being loved, being seen\_, in which two verbs are "\_adjectived\_"

together, and that by different terminations. Yet do these words as

perfectly coalesce in respect to time, as to everything else; and \_being

loved\_ or \_being seen\_ is confessedly as much a "\_present\_" participle, as

\_being\_, or \_loving\_, or \_seeing\_--neither form being solely confined to

what now is. Again, our participle in \_ing\_ stands not only for the present

participle of the Latin or Greek grammarians, but also for the Latin

gerund, and often for the Greek infinitive used substantively; so that by

this ending, the English verb is not only \_adjectived\_, but also

\_substantived\_, if one may so speak. For the participle when governed by a

preposition, partakes not of the qualities "of a verb and an \_adjective\_,"

but rather of those of a verb and a \_noun\_.

CLASSES.

English verbs, not defective, have severally three participles;[301] which

have been very variously denominated, perhaps the most accurately thus: the

\_Imperfect\_, the \_Perfect\_, and the \_Preperfect\_. Or, as their order is

undisputed, they may he conveniently called the \_First\_, the \_Second\_, and

the \_Third\_.

I. The \_Imperfect participle\_ is that which ends commonly in \_ing\_, and

implies a continuance of the being, action, or passion: as, \_being, acting,

ruling, loving, defending, terminating\_.

II. The \_Perfect participle\_ is that which ends commonly in \_ed\_ or \_en\_,

and implies a \_completion\_ of the being, action, or passion: as, \_been,

acted, ruled, loved, defended, terminated\_.

III. The \_Preperfect participle\_ is that which takes the sign \_having\_, and

implies a \_previous completion\_ of the being, action, or passion: as,

\_having loved, having seen, having written; having been loved, having been

writing, having been written\_.

The \_First\_ or \_Imperfect\_ Participle, when simple, is always formed by

adding \_ing\_ to the radical verb; as, \_look, looking\_: when compound, it is

formed by prefixing \_being\_ to some other simple participle; as, \_being

reading, being read, being completed\_.

The \_Second\_ or \_Perfect\_ Participle is always simple, and is regularly

formed by adding \_d\_ or \_ed\_ to the radical verb: those verbs from which it

is formed otherwise, are either irregular or redundant.

The \_Third\_ or \_Preperfect\_ Participle is always compound, and is formed by

prefixing \_having\_ to the perfect, when the compound is double, and \_having

been\_ to the perfect or the imperfect, when the compound is triple: as,

\_having spoken, having been spoken, having been speaking\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Some have supposed that both the simple participles denote present

\_time\_; some have supposed that the one denotes present, and the other,

past time; some have supposed that the first denotes no time, and the

second time past; some have supposed that neither has any regard to time;

and some have supposed that both are of \_all\_ times. In regard to the

distinction of \_voice\_, or the manner of their signification, some have

supposed the one to be active, and the other to be passive; some have

supposed the participle in \_ing\_ to be active or neuter, and the other

active or passive; and some have supposed that either of them may be

active, passive, or neuter. Nor is there any more unanimity among

grammarians, in respect to the compounds. Hence several different names

have been loosely given to each of the participles: and sometimes with

manifest impropriety; as when Buchanan, in his conjugations, calls \_being\_,

"Active,"--and \_been, having been, having had\_, "Passive." Learned men may

differ in opinion respecting the nature of words, but grammar can never

well deserve the name of \_science\_, till at least an ordinary share of

reason and knowledge appears in the language of those who teach it.

OBS. 2.--The FIRST participle has been called the Present, the Progressive,

the Imperfect, the Simple Imperfect, the Indefinite, the Active, the

Present Active, the Present Passive, the Present Neuter, and, in the

passive voice, the Preterimperfcct, the Compound Imperfect, the Compound

Passive, the Passive. The SECOND, which, though it is always but \_one

word\_, some authors treat as being \_two participles\_, or \_three\_, has been

called the Perfect, the Preter, the Preterperfect, the Imperfect, the

Simple Perfect, the Past, the Simple Past, the First Past, the Preterit,

the Passive, the Present Passive, the Perfect Active, the Past Active, the

Auxiliary Perfect, the Perfect Passive, the Perfect Neuter, the Simple

Perfect Active, the Simple Perfect Passive. The THIRD has been called the

Compound, the Compound Active, the Compound Passive, the Compound Perfect,

the Compound Perfect Active, the Compound Perfect Passive, the Compound

Preter, the Present, the Present Perfect, the Past, the Second Past, the

Past Compound, the Compound Past, the Prior-perfect, the Prior-present, the

Perfect, the Pluperfect, the Preterperfect, the Preperfect.[302]

In teaching others to speak and write well, it becomes us to express our

doctrines in the most suitable terms; but the application of a name is of

no great consequence, so that the thing itself be rightly understood by the

learner. Grammar should be taught in a style at once neat and plain, clear

and brief. Upon the choice of his terms, the writer of this work has

bestowed much reflection; yet he finds it impossible either to please

everybody, or to explain, without intolerable prolixity, all the reasons

for preference.

OBS. 3.--The participle in \_ing\_ represents the action or state as

\_continuing\_ and ever \_incomplete\_; it is therefore rightly termed the

IMPERFECT participle: whereas the participle in \_ed\_ always, or at least

usually, has reference to the action as \_done\_ and \_complete\_; and is, by

proper contradistinction, called the PERFECT participle. It is hardly

necessary to add, that the terms \_perfect\_ and \_imperfect\_, as thus applied

to the English participles, have no reference to \_time\_, or to those

\_tenses\_ of the verb which are usually (but not very accurately) named by

these epithets. The terms \_present\_ and \_past\_, which some still prefer to

\_imperfect\_ and \_perfect\_, do denote \_time\_, and are in a kind of oblique

contradistinction; but how well they apply to the participles, may be seen

by the following texts: "God \_was\_ in Christ, \_reconciling\_ the world unto

himself."--"We pray you in Christ's stead, \_be\_ ye \_reconciled\_ to

God."--ST. PAUL: \_2 Cor.\_, v, 19, 20. Here \_reconciling\_ refers to the

death of Christ, and \_reconciled\_, to the desired conversion of the

Corinthians; and if we call the former a \_present\_ participle, and the

latter a \_past\_, (as do Bullions, Burn, Clark, Felton, S. S. Greene,

Lennie, Pinneo, and perhaps others,) we nominally reverse the order of time

in respect to the events, and egregiously misapply both terms.

OBS. 4.--Though the participle in \_ing\_ has, by many, been called the

\_Present\_ participle, it is as applicable to past or future, as to present

time; otherwise, such expressions as, "I \_had been writing\_,"--"I \_shall be

writing\_," would be solecisms. It has also been called, almost as

frequently, the \_Active\_ participle. But it is not always active, even when

derived from an active verb; for such expressions as, "The goods are

\_selling\_,"--"The ships are now \_building\_," are in use, and not without

good authority: as, "And hope to allay, by rational discourse, the pains of

his joints \_tearing\_ asunder."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 285. "Insensible of the

designs now \_forming\_ by Philip."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, ii, 48. "The

improved edition now \_publishing\_."--BP. HALIFAX: \_Pref. to Butler\_. "The

present tense expresses an action now \_doing\_."--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p. 40.

The distinguishing characteristic of this participle is, that it denotes an

unfinished and progressive state of the being, action, or passion; it is

therefore properly denominated the IMPERFECT participle. If the term were

applied with reference to \_time\_, it would be no more objectionable than

the word \_present\_, and would be equally supported by the usage of the

\_Greek\_ linguists. I am no more inclined to "\_innovation\_," than are the

pedants who, for the choice here made, have ignorantly brought the false

charge against me. This name, authorized by Beattie and Pickbourn, is

approved by Lindley Murray,[303] and adopted by several of the more recent

grammarians. See the works of Dr. Crombie, J. Grant, T. O. Churchill, R.

Hiley, B. H. Smart, M. Harrison, and W. G. Lewis, published in London; and

J. M. M'Culloch's Grammar, published in Edinburgh; also some American

grammars, as E. Hazen's, N. Butler's, D. B. Tower's, W. H. Wells's, the

Sanderses'.

OBS. 5.--The participle in \_ed\_, as is mentioned above, usually denotes a

\_completion\_ of the being, action, or passion, and should therefore be

denominated the PERFECT participle. But this completion may be spoken of as

present, past, or future; for the participle itself has no tenses, and

makes no distinction of time, nor should the name be supposed to refer to

the perfect tense. The conjugation of any passive verb, is a sufficient

proof of all this: nor is the proof invalidated by resolving verbs of this

kind into their component parts. Of the participles in \_ed\_ applied to

\_present\_ time, the following is an example: "Such a course would be less

likely to produce injury to health, than the \_present course pursued\_ at

our colleges."--\_Literary Convention\_, p. 118. Tooke's notion of

grammatical time, appears to have been in several respects a strange one:

he accords with those who call this a \_past\_ participle, and denies to the

other not only the name and notion of \_a tense\_, but even the \_general

idea\_ of time. In speaking of the old participial termination \_and\_ or

\_ende\_,[304] which our Anglo-Saxon ancestors used where we write \_ing\_, he

says, "I do not allow that there are any \_present\_ participles, or any

\_present tense\_ of the verb." [305]--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p.

41.

OBS. 6.--The \_Perfect\_ participle of transitive verbs, being used in the

formation of passive verbs, is sometimes called the \_Passive\_ participle.

It usually has in itself a passive signification, except when it is used in

forming the compound tenses of the active verb. Hence the difference

between the sentences, "I have written a letter," and, "I have a letter

written;" the former being equivalent to \_Scripsi literas\_, and the latter

to \_Sunt mihi literæ scriptæ\_. But there are many perfect participles which

cannot with any propriety be called passive. Such are all those which come

from intransitive or neuter verbs; and also those which so often occur in

the tenses of verbs not passive. I have already noticed some instances of

this misnomer; and it is better to preclude it altogether, by adhering to

the true name of this Participle, THE PERFECT. Nor is that entirely true

which some assert, "that this participle in the \_active\_ is only found in

combination;" that, "Whenever it stands alone to be parsed as a participle,

it is passive."--\_Hart's English Gram.\_, p. 75. See also \_Bullions's

Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 77; and \_Greene's Analysis, or Gram.\_, p.

225. "Rebelled," in the following examples, cannot with any propriety be

called a \_passive\_ participle:

"\_Rebelled\_, did I not send them terms of peace,

Which not my justice, but my mercy asked?"--\_Pollok\_, x, 253.

"Arm'd with thy might, rid Heav'n of these \_rebell'd\_,

To their prepar'd ill mansion driven down."--\_Milton\_, vi, 737.

OBS. 7.--The third participle has most generally been called the

\_Compound\_, or the \_Compound perfect\_. The latter of these terms seems to

be rather objectionable on account of its length; and against the former it

may be urged that, in the compound forms of conjugation, the first or

imperfect participle is a compound: as, \_being writing, being seen\_. Dr.

Adam calls \_having loved\_ the \_perfect\_ participle \_active\_, which he says

must be rendered in Latin by the \_pluperfect\_ of the subjunctive; as, he

having loved, \_quum amavisset\_; (\_Lat. and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 140;) but it is

manifest that the perfect participle of the verb \_to love\_, whether active

or passive, is the simple word \_loved\_, and not this compound. Dr. Adam, in

fact, if he denies this, only contradicts himself; for, in his paradigms of

the English Active Voice, he gives the participles as two only, and both

simple, thus: "\_Present\_, Loving; \_Perfect\_, Loved:"--"\_Present\_, Having;

\_Perfect\_, Had." So of the Neuter Verb: "\_Present\_, Being; \_Perfect\_,

Been."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 81 and 82. His scheme of either names or forms is no

model of accuracy. On the very next page, unless there is a misprint in

several editions, he calls the \_Second\_ participle the "\_imperfect\_;"

saying, "The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the

auxiliary verb \_to be\_, and the participle \_imperfect\_; as, \_I am loved, I

was loved, &c\_." Further: "In many verbs," he adds, "the \_present\_

participle also is used in a passive sense; as, \_These things are doing,

were doing\_, &c.; \_The house is building, was building\_, &c."--\_Ib.\_, p.

83. N. Butler, in his Practical Grammar, of 1845, names, and counts, and

orders, the participles very oddly: "Every verb," he says, "has \_two\_

participles--the \_imperfect\_ and the \_perfect\_."--P. 78. Yet, for the verb

\_love\_, he finds these six: two "IMPERFECT, \_Loving\_ and \_Being loved\_;"

two "PERFECT, \_Having loved\_, and \_Having been loved\_;" one "AUXILIARY

PERFECT, \_Loved\_," of the "\_Active Voice\_;" and one "PASSIVE, \_Loved\_," of

the "\_Passive Voice\_." Many old writers erroneously represent the

participle in \_ing\_ as always active, and the participle in \_ed\_ or \_en\_ as

always passive; and some, among whom is Buchanan, making no distinction

between the simple perfect \_loved\_ and the compound \_having loved\_, place

the latter with the former, and call it passive also. The absurdity of this

is manifest: for \_having loved\_ or \_having seen\_ is active; \_having been\_

or \_having sat\_ is neuter; and \_having been loved\_ or \_having been seen\_ is

passive. Again, the triple compound, \_having been writing\_, is active; and

\_having been sitting\_ is neuter; but if one speak of goods as \_having been

selling\_ low, a similar compound is passive.

OBS. 8.--Now all the compound participles which begin with \_having\_ are

essentially alike; and, as a class of terms, they ought to have a name

adapted to their nature, and expressive of their leading characteristic.

\_Having loved\_ differs from the simple participle \_loved\_, in signification

as well as in form; and, if this participle is to be named with reference

to its \_meaning\_, there is no more suitable term for it than the epithet

PREPERFECT,--a word which explains itself, like \_prepaid\_ or

\_prerequisite\_. Of the many other names, the most correct one is

PLUPERFECT,--which is a term of very nearly the same meaning. Not because

this compound is really of the pluperfect \_tense\_, but because it always

denotes being, action, or passion, that is, or was, or will be, \_completed

before\_ the doing or being of something else; and, of course, when the

latter thing is represented as past, the participle must correspond to the

pluperfect tense of its verb; as, "\_Having explained\_ her views, it was

necessary she should expatiate on the vanity and futility of the enjoyments

promised by Pleasure."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 181. Here \_having explained\_

is exactly equivalent to \_when she had explained\_. Again: "I may say, \_He

had commanded\_, and we obeyed; or, \_He having commanded\_, we

obeyed."--\_Fetch's Comprehensive Gram.\_, p. ix. Here the two phrases in

Italics correspond in import, though not in construction.

OBS. 9.--\_Pluperfect\_ is a derivative contracted from the Latin

\_plusquam-perfectum\_, and literally signifies \_more than complete\_, or

\_beyond the perfect\_; i. e., (as confirmed by use,) \_antecedently

finished\_, or \_completed before\_. It is the usual name of our fourth tense;

is likewise applicable to a corresponding tense in other tongues; and is a

word familiar to every scholar. Yet several grammarians,--too ready,

perhaps, for innovation,--have shown their willingness to discard it

altogether. Bullions, Butler, Hiley, Perley, Wells, and some others, call

the English \_pluperfect tense\_, the \_past-perfect\_, and understand either

epithet to mean--"\_completed at or before\_ a certain \_past\_ time;"

(\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 39;) that is--"\_finished or past, at\_ some

\_past\_ time."--\_Butler's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 72. The relation of the \_tense\_

is \_before the past\_, but the epithet \_pluperfect\_ is not necessarily

limited to this relation, any more than what is \_perfect\_ is necessarily

past. Butler has urged, that, "\_Pluperfect\_ does not mean \_completed

before\_," but is only "a technical name of a particular tense;" and,

arguing from this erroneous assumption, has convinced himself, "It would be

as correct to call this the \_second future\_ participle, as the

\_pluperfect\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 79. The technical name, as limited to the past,

is \_preterpluperfect\_, from the older term \_præteritum plusquam perfectum\_;

so \_preterperfect\_, from \_præteritum perfectum\_, i. e. \_past perfect\_, is

the name of an \_other\_ tense, now called the \_perfect\_: wherefore the

substitution of \_past-perfect\_ for \_pluperfect\_ is the less to be

commended. There may be a convenience in having the name of the tense to

differ from that of the participle, and this alone induces me to prefer

\_preperfect\_ to \_pluperfect\_ for the name of the latter.

OBS. 10.--From the participle in \_ed\_ or \_en\_, we form three tenses, which

the above-named authors call \_perfect\_;--"the \_present-perfect\_, the

\_past-perfect\_, and the \_future-perfect\_;"--as, \_have seen, had seen, will

have seen\_. Now it is, doubtless, the \_participle\_, that gives to these

their \_perfectness\_; while diversity in the auxiliaries makes their

difference of time. Yet it is assumed by Butler, that, in general, the

simple participle in \_ed\_ or \_en\_, "does not denote an action \_done\_ and

\_completed\_," and is not to be called \_perfect\_; (p. 80;)--that, "If we

wish to express by a participle, an action \_completed at any time\_, we use

the compound form, and \_this is\_ THE \_perfect participle\_;" (p. 79;)--that,

"\_The characteristic\_ of the participle in \_ed\_ is, that it implies the

\_reception\_ of an action;" (p. 79;)--that, hence, it should be called \_the

passive\_, though it "is \_usually\_ called the \_perfect\_ participle;" (p.

79;)--that, "The use of \_this participle\_ in the \_perfect tenses\_ of the

active voice should not be taken into consideration in giving it a name or

a definition;" (p. 80;)--that its \_active, neuter\_, or \_intransitive\_ use

is not a primitive idiom of the language, but the result of a gradual

\_change\_ of the term from the passive to the active voice; (p. 80;)--that,

"the participle \_has changed\_ its mode of signification, so that, instead

of being passive, it is now active in sense;" (p. 105;)--that, "having

changed its original meaning so entirely, it should not be considered \_the

same\_ participle;" (p. 78;)--that, "in such cases, it is a \_perfect\_

participle," and, "for the sake of distinction [,] this may be called the

\_auxiliary perfect\_ participle."--\_Ib.\_ These speculations I briefly throw

before the reader, without designing much comment upon them. It will be

perceived that they are, in several respects, contradictory one to an

other. The author himself names the participle in reference to a usage

which he says, "should not be taken into consideration;" and names it

absurdly too; for he calls that "the \_auxiliary\_," which is manifestly the

\_principal\_ term. He also identifies as one what he professes to

distinguish as two.

OBS. 11.--Participles often become \_adjectives\_, and are construed before

nouns to denote quality. The terms so converted form the class of

\_participial adjectives\_. Words of a participial form may be regarded as

adjectives, under the following circumstances: 1. When they reject the idea

of time, and denote something customary or habitual, rather than a

transient act or state; as, "A \_lying\_ rogue,"--i.e., one that is addicted

to lying. 2. When they admit adverbs of comparison; as, "A \_more learned\_

man." 3. When they are compounded with something that does not belong to

the verb; as, "\_unfeeling, unfelt\_:" there is no verb \_to unfeel\_,

therefore these words cannot be participles. Adjectives are generally

placed before their nouns; participles, after them. The words beginning

with \_un\_, in the following lines may be classed with participial

adjectives:

"No king, no subject was; unscutcheoned all;

Uncrowned, unplumed, unhelmed, unpedigreed;

Unlaced, uncoroneted, unbestarred."

--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, B. viii, l. 89.

OBS. 12.--Participles in \_ing\_ often become \_nouns\_. When preceded by an

article, an adjective or a noun or pronoun of the possessive case, they are

construed as nouns; and, if wholly such, have neither adverbs nor active

regimen: as, "He laugheth at the \_shaking\_ of a spear."--\_Job\_, xli, 29.

"There is \_no searching\_ of \_his understanding\_."--\_Isaiah\_, xl, 28. "In

\_their setting\_ of their threshold by ray threshold."--\_Ezekiel\_, xliii, 8.

"That any man should make \_my glorying\_ void."--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 15. The terms

so converted form the class of \_verbal\_ or \_participial\_ nouns. But some

late authors--(J. S. Hart, S. S. Greene, W. H. Wells, and others--) have

given the name of participial nouns to many \_participles\_,--such

participles, often, as retain all their verbal properties and adjuncts, and

merely partake of some syntactical resemblance to nouns. Now, since the

chief characteristics of such words are from the verb, and are incompatible

with the specific nature of a noun, it is clearly improper to call them

\_nouns\_. There are, in the popular use of participles, certain mixed

constructions which are reprehensible; yet it is the peculiar nature of a

\_participle\_, to participate the properties of other parts of speech,--of

the verb and adjective,--of the verb and noun,--or sometimes, perhaps, of

all three. A participle immediately preceded by a preposition, is not

converted into a noun, but remains a participle, and therefore retains its

adverb, and also its government of the objective case; as, "I thank you

\_for helping him so seasonably\_." Participles in this construction

correspond with the Latin gerund, and are sometimes called \_gerundives\_.

OBS. 13.--To distinguish the participle from the participial noun, the

learner should observe the following four things: 1. Nouns take articles

and adjectives before them; participles, as such, do not. 2. Nouns may

govern the possessive case before them, but not the objective after them;

participles may govern the objective case, but not so properly the

possessive. 3. Nouns, if they have adverbs, require the hyphen; participles

take adverbs separately, as do their verbs. 4. Participial nouns express

actions as things, and are sometimes declined like other nouns; participles

usually refer actions to their agents or recipients, and have in English no

grammatical modifications of any kind.

OBS. 14.--To distinguish the perfect participle from the preterit of the

same form, observe \_the sense\_, and see which of the auxiliary forms will

express it: thus, \_loved\_ for \_being loved\_, is a participle; but \_loved\_

for \_did love\_, is a preterit verb. So \_held\_ for \_did hold, stung\_ for

\_did sting, taught\_ for \_did teach\_, and the like, are irregular verbs; but

\_held\_ for \_being held, stung\_ for \_being stung, taught\_ for \_being

taught\_, and the like, are perfect participles.

OBS. 15.--Though the English participles have no inflections, and are

consequently incapable of any grammatical agreement or disagreement, those

which are simple, are sometimes elegantly taken in a plural sense, with the

apparent construction of \_nouns\_; but, under these circumstances, they are

in reality neither nouns nor participles, but participial adjectives

construed elliptically, as other adjectives often are, and relating to

plural nouns understood. The ellipsis is sometimes of a singular noun,

though very rarely, and much less properly. Examples: "To them who are \_the

called\_ according to his purpose."--\_Rom.\_, x, 28. That is--"the called

\_ones\_ or \_persons\_." "God is not the God of \_the dead\_, but of \_the

living\_."--\_Matt.\_, xxii, 32. "Neither is it found in the land of \_the

living\_."--\_Job\_, xxviii, 13. "\_The living, the living, he\_ shall praise

thee, as I do this day."--\_Isaiah\_, xxxviii, 19. "Till we are made fit to

live and reign with him and \_all his redeemed\_, in the heavenly glory

forever."--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 18.

"\_Ye blessed\_ of my Father, come, \_ye just\_,

Enter the joy eternal of your Lord."--\_Pollok\_, B. x, l. 591.

"Depart from me, \_ye cursed\_, into the fire

Prepared eternal in the gulf of Hell."--\_Id.\_, B. x, l. 449.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS VII.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Seventh Praxis it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the\_ ARTICLES, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, and PARTICIPLES.

\_The definitions to be given in the Seventh Praxis, are two for an article,

six for a noun, three for an adjective, six for a pronoun, seven for a verb

finite, five for an infinitive, two for a participle,--and one for an

adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or an interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"Religion, rightly understood and practised, has the purest of all joys

attending it."

\_Religion\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a

finite verb.

\_Rightly\_ is an adverb. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner.

\_Understood\_ is a perfect participle, from the irregular active-transitive

verb, \_understand, understood, understanding, understood\_. 1. A participle

is a word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and

of an adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or

\_ed\_, to the verb. 2. The perfect participle is that which ends commonly in

\_ed\_ or \_en\_, and implies a completion of the being, action, or passion.

\_And\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction, is a word used to connect words

or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_Practised\_ is a perfect participle, from the regular active-transitive

verb, \_practise, practised, practising, practised\_. 1. A participle is a

word derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an

adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_,

to the verb. 2. The perfect participle is that which ends commonly in \_ed\_

or \_en\_, and implies a completion of the being, action, or passion.

\_Has\_ is an irregular active-transitive verb, from \_have, had, having,

had\_; found in the indicative mood, present tense, third person, and

singular number. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

be acted upon\_. 2. An irregular verb is a verb that does not form the

preterit and the perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. An

active-transitive verb is a verb that expresses an action which has some

person or thing for its object. 4. The indicative mood is that form of the

verb, which simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question. 5.

The present tense is that which expresses what now exists, or is taking

place. 6. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely

spoken of. 7. The singular number is that which denotes but one.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Purest\_ is a common adjective, of the superlative degree; compared

regularly, \_pure, purer, purest\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun

or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any

ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The

superlative degree is that which is \_most\_ or \_least\_ of all included with

it.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_All\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared. 1. An adjective is a word

added to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A

pronominal adjective is a definitive word which may either accompany its

noun or represent it understood. 3. Those adjectives whose signification

does not admit of different degrees, cannot be compared.

\_Joys\_ is a common noun, of the third person, plural number, neuter gender,

and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing,

that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a sort,

kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that which

denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The plural number is that

which denotes more than one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form

or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb,

participle, or preposition.

\_Attending\_ is an imperfect participle, from the regular active-transitive

verb, \_attend, attended, attending, attended\_. 1. A participle is a word

derived from a verb, participating the properties of a verb, and of an

adjective or a noun; and is generally formed by adding \_ing, d\_, or \_ed\_,

to the verb. 2. The imperfect participle is that which ends commonly in

\_ing\_, and implies a continuance of the being, action, or passion.

\_It\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person

it is. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely

spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The

neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor

female. 6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun,

which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"A Verb is a word whereby something or other is represented as existing,

possessing, acting, or being acted upon, at some particular time, past,

present, or future; and this in various manners."--\_White, on the English

Verb\_, p. 1.

"Error is a savage, lurking about on the twilight borders of the circle

illuminated by truth, ready to rush in and take possession, the moment her

lamp grows dim."--\_Beecher\_.

"The science of criticism may be considered as a middle link, connecting

the different parts of education into a regular chain."--\_Ld. Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, p. xxii.

"When I see a man walking, a tree growing, or cattle grazing, I cannot

doubt but that these objects are really what they appear to be. Nature

determines us to rely on the veracity of our senses; for otherwise they

could not in any degree answer their end, that of laying open things

existing and passing around us."--\_Id., ib.\_, i, 85.

"But, advancing farther in life, and inured by degrees to the crooked ways

of men; pressing through the crowd, and the bustle of the world; obliged to

contend with this man's craft, and that man's scorn; accustomed, sometimes,

to conceal their sentiments, and often to stifle their feelings; they

become at last hardened in heart, and familiar with corruption."--BLAIR:

\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 140.

"Laugh'd at, he laughs again; and stricken hard,

Turns to his stroke his adamantine scales,

That fear no discipline of human hands."--\_Cowper's Task\_, p. 47.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"Thus shame and remorse united in the ungrateful person, and indignation

united with hatred in the hearts of others, are the punishments provided by

nature for injustice."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 288.

"Viewing man as under the influence of novelty, would one suspect that

custom also should influence him?--Human nature, diversified with many and

various springs of action, is wonderfully, and, indulging the expression,

intricately constructed."--\_Id., ib.\_, i, 325.

"Dryden frequently introduces three or four persons speaking upon the same

subject, each throwing out his own notions separately, without regarding

what is said by the rest."--\_Id., ib.\_, ii, 294.

"Nothing is more studied in Chinese gardens, than to raise wonder and

surprise. Sometimes one is led insensibly into a dark cavern, terminating

unexpectedly in a landscape enriched with all that nature affords the most

delicious."--\_Id., ib.\_, ii, 334.

"The answer to the objection here implied, is obvious, even on the

supposition of the questions put being answered in the

affirmative."--\_Prof. Vethake.\_

"As birds flying, so will the Lord of hosts defend Jerusalem; defending

also, he will deliver it; and, passing over, he will preserve

it."--\_Isaiah\_, xxxi, 5.

"Here, by the bonds of nature feebly held,

Minds combat minds, repelling and repell'd."--\_Goldsmith.\_

"Suffolk first died, and York, all haggled over,

Comes to him where in gore he lay insteeped."--\_Shakspeare.\_

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"Every change in the state of things is considered as an effect, indicating

the agency, characterizing the kind, and measuring the degree, of its

cause."--\_Dr. Murray, Hist. of En. L.\_, i, 179.

"Having loved his own who were in the world, he loved them unto the end.

And supper being ended, (the devil having now put it into the heart of

Judas Iscariot, Simon's son, to betray him,) Jesus, knowing that the Father

had given all things into his hand, and that he had come from God and was

going to God, arose from supper, and laid aside his coat, and, taking a

towel, girded himself: then he poured some water into a basin, and began to

wash the disciples' feet, and to wipe them with the towel with which he was

girded."--See \_John\_, xiii.

"Spiritual desertion is naturally and judicially incurred by sin. It is the

withdrawal of that divine unction which enriches the acquiescent soul with

moral power and pleasure. The subtraction leaves the mind enervated,

obscured, confused, degraded, and distracted."--HOMO: \_N. Y. Observer.\_

"Giving no offence in any thing, but in all things approving ourselves as

the ministers of God: as unknown, and yet well known; as dying, and,

behold, we live; as chastened, and not killed; as sorrowful, yet always

rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and yet

possessing all things."--\_2 Cor.\_, vi.

"O may th' indulgence of a father's love,

Pour'd forth on me, be doubled from above."--\_Young\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS OF PARTICIPLES.

[Fist] [As the principles upon which our participles ought to be formed,

were necessarily anticipated in the preceding chapter on verbs, the reader

must recur to that chapter for the doctrines by which the following errors

are to be corrected. The great length of that chapter seemed a good reason

for separating these examples from it, and it was also thought, that such

words as are erroneously written for participles, should, for the sake of

order, be chiefly noticed in this place. In many of these examples,

however, the participle is not really a separate part of speech, but is in

fact taken with an auxiliary to form some compound tense of its verb.]

LESSON I.--IRREGULARS.

"Many of your readers have mistook that passage."--\_Steele, Spect.\_, No.

544.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the preterit verb \_mistook\_ is here used for

the perfect participle. But, according to the table of irregular verbs, we

ought to say, \_mistake, mistook, mistaking, mistaken\_; after the form of

the simple verb, \_take, took, taking, taken\_. Therefore, the sentence

should be amended thus: "Many of your readers have \_mistaken\_ that

passage."]

"Had not my dog of a steward ran away."--\_Addison, Spect.\_ "None should be

admitted, except he had broke his collar-bone thrice."--\_Spect.\_, No. 474.

"We could not know what was wrote at twenty."--\_Pref. to Waller\_. "I have

wrote, thou hast wrote, he has wrote; we have wrote, ye have wrote, they

have wrote."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 62. "As if God had spoke his last words

there to his people."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 462. "I had like to have came

in that ship myself."--\_N. Y. Observer\_, No. 453. "Our ships and vessels

being drove out of the harbour by a storm."--\_Hutchinson's Hist. of Mass.\_,

i, 470. "He will endeavour to write as the ancient author would have wrote,

had he writ in the same language."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, i, 68. "When

his doctrines grew too strong to be shook by his enemies."--\_Atterbury\_.

"The immortal mind that hath forsook Her mansion."--\_Milton\_. "Grease

that's sweaten from the murderer's gibbet, throw into the flame."--\_Shak.,

Macbeth\_. "The court also was chided for allowing such questions to be

put."--\_Col. Stone, on Freemasonry\_, p. 470. "He would have spoke."--

\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. x, 1. 517. "Words interwove with sighs found out their

way."--\_Id., ib.\_, i, 621. "Those kings and potentates who have

strove."--\_Id., Eiconoclast\_, xvii. "That even Silence was took."--\_Id.,

Comus\_, l. 557. "And envious Darkness, ere they could return, had stole

them from me."--\_Id., Comus\_, 1. 195. "I have chose this perfect

man."--\_Id., P. R.\_, B. i, l. 165. "I will scarce think you have swam in a

gondola."--\_Shak., As You Like It\_. "The fragrant brier was wove

between."--\_Dryden, Fables\_. "Then finish what you have began."--\_Id.,

Poems\_, ii, 172. "But now the years a numerous train have ran."--\_Pope's

Odyssey\_, B. xi, l. 555. "Repeats your verses wrote on glasses."--\_Prior\_.

"Who by turns have rose."--\_Id.\_ "Which from great authors I have

took."--\_Id., Alma\_. "Ev'n there he should have fell."--\_Id., Solomon.\_

"The sun has rose, and gone to bed,

Just as if Partridge were not dead."--\_Swift\_.

"And though no marriage words are spoke,

They part not till the ring is broke."--\_Id., Riddles\_.

LESSON II.--REGULARS.

"When the word is stript of all the terminations."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of

En. L.\_, i, 319.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the participle \_stript\_ is terminated in

\_t\_. But, according to Observation 2d, on the irregular verbs, \_stript\_ is

regular. Therefore, this \_t\_ should be changed to \_ed\_; and the final \_p\_

should be doubled, according to Rule 3d for Spelling: thus, "When the word

is \_stripped\_ of all the terminations."]

"Forgive him, Tom; his head is crackt."--\_Swift's Poems\_, p. 397. "For 'tis

the sport, to have the engineer hoist with his own petar."--\_Hamlet\_, Act

3. "As great as they are, I was nurst by their mother."--\_Swift's Poems\_,

p. 310. "If he should now be cry'd down since his change."--\_Ib.\_, p. 306.

"Dipt over head and ears--in debt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 312. "We see the nation's

credit crackt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 312. "Because they find their pockets

pickt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 338. "O what a pleasure mixt with pain!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 373.

"And only with her Brother linkt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 387. "Because he ne'er a

thought allow'd, That might not be confest."--\_Ib.\_, p. 361. "My love to

Sheelah is more firmly fixt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 369. "The observations annext to

them will be intelligible."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 457. "Those

eyes are always fixt on the general principles."--\_Ib.\_, i, 458. "Laborious

conjectures will be banisht from our commentaries."--\_Ib.\_, i, 459.

"Tiridates was dethroned, and Phraates was reestablisht in his

stead."--\_Ib.\_, i, 462. "A Roman who was attacht to Augustus."--\_Ib.\_, i,

466. "Nor should I have spoken of it, unless Baxter had talkt about two

such."--\_Ib.\_, i, 467. "And the reformers of language have generally rusht

on."--\_Ib.\_, i, 649. "Three centuries and a half had then elapst since the

date."--\_Ib.\_, i, 249. "Of such criteria, as has been remarkt already,

there is an abundance."--\_Ib.\_, i, 261. "The English have surpast every

other nation in their services."--\_Ib.\_, i, 306. "The party addrest is next

in dignity to the speaker."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 66. "To which we are

many times helpt."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 13. "But for him, I should

have lookt well enough to myself."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "Why are you vext, Lady?

why do frown?"--\_Milton, Comus\_, l. 667. "Obtruding false rules prankt in

reason's garb."--\_Ib.\_, l. 759. "But, like David equipt in Saul's armour,

it is encumbered and oppressed."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 378.

"And when their merchants are blown up, and crackt,

Whole towns are cast away in storms, and wreckt."

--\_Butler\_, p. 163.

LESSON III.--MIXED.

"The lands are holden in free and common soccage."

--\_Trumbull's Hist\_, i, 133.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the participle \_holden\_ is not in that form

which present usage authorizes. But, according to the table of irregular

verbs, the four parts of the verb \_to hold\_, as now used, are \_hold, held,

holding, held\_. Therefore, \_holden\_ should be \_held\_; thus, "The lands are

\_held\_ in free and common soccage."]

"A stroke is drawed under such words."--\_Cobbett's E. Grammar\_, Edition of

1832, ¶ 154. "It is striked even, with a strickle."--\_Walkers Particles\_,

p. 115. "Whilst I was wandring, without any care, beyond my

bounds."--\_Ib.\_, p. 83. "When one would do something, unless hindred by

something present."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 311. "It is used

potentially, but not so as to be rendred by these signs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 320.

"Now who would dote upon things hurryed down the stream thus

fast?"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 89. "Heaven hath timely try'd their

growth."--\_Milton, Comus\_, l. 970. "O! ye mistook, ye should have snatcht

his wand."--\_Ib.\_, p. 815. "Of true virgin here distrest."--\_Ib.\_, p. 905.

"So that they have at last come to be substitute in the stead of

it."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 339. "Though ye have lien among the

pots."--\_Psal.\_, lxviii, 13. "And, lo, in her mouth was an olive-leaf

pluckt off."--FRIENDS' BIBLE, and BRUCE'S: \_Gen.\_, viii, 11. "Brutus and

Cassius Are rid like madmen, through the gates of Rome."--\_Shak\_. "He shall

be spitted on."--\_Luke\_, xviii, 32. "And are not the countries so overflown

still situate between the tropics?"--\_Bentley's Sermons\_. "Not trickt and

frounc't as she was wont, But kercheft in a comely cloud."--\_Milton, Il

Penseroso\_, l. 123. "To satisfy his rigor, Satisfy'd never."--\_Id., P. L.\_,

B. x, l. 804. "With him there crucify'd."--\_Id., P. L.\_, B. xii, l. 417.

"Th' earth cumber'd, and the wing'd air darkt with plumes."--\_Id., Comus\_,

l. 730. "And now their way to Earth they had descry'd."--\_Id., P. L.\_, B.

x, l. 325. "Not so thick swarm'd once the soil Bedropt with blood of

Gorgon."--\_Ib.\_, B. x, l. 527. "And in a troubled sea of passion

tost."--\_Ib.\_, B. x, l. 718. "The cause, alas, is quickly guest."--\_Swift's

Poems\_, p. 404. "The kettle to the top was hoist"--\_Ib.\_, p. 274. "In

chains thy syllables are linkt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 318. "Rather than thus be

overtopt, Would you not wish their laurels cropt?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 415. "The

hyphen, or conjoiner, is a little line, drawed to connect words, or parts

of words."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, 1832, ¶ 150. "In the other manners of

dependence, this general rule is sometimes broke."--\_Joh. Gram. Com.\_, p.

334. "Some intransitive verbs may be rendered transitive by means of a

preposition prefixt to them."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 66. "Whoever now

should place the accent on the first syllable of \_Valerius\_, would set

every body a-laughing."--\_Walker's Dict.\_ "Being mocked, scourged, spitted

on, and crucified."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 40.

"For rhyme in Greece or Rome was never known,

Till by barbarian deluges o'erflown."--\_Roscommon\_.

"In my own Thames may I be drownded,

If e'er I stoop beneath a crown'd-head."--\_Swift\_.

CHAPTER VIII.--ADVERBS.

An Adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an

other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner: as,

They are \_now here\_, studying \_very diligently\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Adverbs briefly express what would otherwise require several

words: as \_Now\_, for \_at this time\_;--\_Here\_, for \_in this place\_;--\_Very\_,

for \_in a high degree\_;--\_Diligently\_, for \_in an industrious manner\_. Thus

the meaning of almost any adverb, may be explained by some phrase beginning

with a preposition and ending with a noun.

OBS. 2.--There are several

customary combinations of short words, which are used adverbially, and

which some grammarians do not analyze in parsing; \_as, not at all, at

length, in fine, in full, at least, at present, at once, this once, in

vain, no doubt, on board\_. But all words that convey distinct ideas, and

rightly retain their individuality, ought to be taken separately in

parsing. With the liberty of supposing a few ellipses, an ingenious parser

will seldom find occasion to speak of "adverbial phrases." In these

instances, \_length, doubt, fine\_, and \_board\_, are unquestionably nouns;

\_once\_, too, is used as a noun; \_full\_ and \_all\_ may be parsed either as

nouns, or as adjectives whose nouns are understood; \_at least\_, is, \_at the

least measure; at present\_, is, \_at the present time\_; and \_in vain\_, is,

\_in a vain course, or manner.\_

OBS. 3.--A phrase is a combination of two or more separable parts of

speech, the \_parsing\_ of which of course implies their separation. And

though the division of our language into words, and the division of its

words into parts of speech, have never yet been made exactly to correspond,

it is certainly desirable to bring them as near together as possible. Hence

such terms as \_everywhere, anywhere, nowadays, forever, everso, to-day,

to-morrow, by-and-by, inside-out, upside-down\_, if they are to be parsed

simply as adverbs, ought to be compounded, and not written as phrases.

OBS. 4--Under nearly all the different classes of words, some particular

instances may be quoted, in which other parts of speech seem to take the

nature of adverbs, so as either to become such, or to be apparently used

\_for\_ them. (1.) ARTICLES: "This may appear incredible, but it is not \_the\_

less true."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist.\_, i, 337. "The other party was \_a\_ little

coy."--\_D. Webster.\_ (2.) NOUNS: "And scrutiny became \_stone\_[306]

blind."--\_Cowper.\_ "He will come \_home to-morrow.\_"--\_Clark.\_ "They were

travelling \_post\_ when he met them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 69. "And with a

vengeance sent from Media \_post\_ to Egypt."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. iv, l.

170. "That I should care \_a groat\_ whether he likes the work or

not."--\_Kirkham.\_ "It has snowed terribly all night, and is \_vengeance\_

cold."--\_Swift.\_ (3.) ADJECTIVES: "Drink \_deep\_, or taste not."--\_Pope.\_ "A

place \_wondrous\_ deep."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "That fools should be so \_deep\_

contemplative."--\_Shak.\_ "A man may speak \_louder\_ or \_softer\_ in the same

key; when he speaks \_higher\_ or \_lower\_, he changes his key."--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. 116. (4.) PRONOUNS: "\_What\_ am I eased?"--\_Job.\_ "\_What\_

have I offended thee?"--\_Gen.\_, xx, 9. "He is \_somewhat\_

arrogant."--\_Dryden.\_ (5.) VERBS: "\_Smack\_ went the whip, round went the

wheels."--\_Cowper.\_ "For then the farmers came \_jog, jog\_, along the miry

road."--\_Id.\_ "\_Crack!\_ went something on deck."--\_Robinson Crusoe.\_ "Then

straight went the yard \_slap\_ over their noddle."--Arbuthnot. (6.)

PARTICIPLES: "Like medicines given \_scalding\_ hot."--\_Dodd.\_ "My clothes

are almost \_dripping\_ wet."--"In came Squire South, stark, \_staring\_

mad."--\_Arbuthnot.\_ "An \_exceeding\_ high mountain."--\_Matt.\_, iv, 8. "How

sweet, how \_passing\_ sweet, the hour to me!"--\_Ch. Observer.\_ "When we act

\_according\_ to our duty."--\_Dr. Johnson.\_ "A man was famous \_according\_ as

he had lifted up axes upon the thick trees."--\_Psal.\_, lxxiv, 5. (7.)

CONJUNCTIONS: "Look, \_as\_ I blow this feather from my face."--\_Shak.\_ "Not

at all, or \_but\_ very gently."--\_Locke.\_ "He was \_but\_ born to try the lot

of man."--\_Pope.\_ (8.) PREPOSITIONS: "They shall go \_in\_ and

\_out.\_"--\_Bible.\_ "From going \_to\_ and \_fro\_ in the earth, and walking \_up\_

and \_down\_ in it."--\_Ib.\_ These are actually \_adverbs\_, and not

prepositions, because they govern nothing. (9.) INTERJECTIONS are never

used as adverbs, though the Greek grammarians refer them nearly all to this

class. The using of other words for adverbs, (i. e., the adverbial use of

any words that we do not actually call adverbs,) may be referred to the

figure \_enallage\_:[307] as,

"\_Tramp, tramp\_, across the land they speed,

\_Splash, splash\_, across the sea."--\_Burger.\_

OBS. 5.--As other parts of speech seem sometimes to take the nature of

adverbs, so adverbs sometimes, either really or apparently, assume the

nature of other parts of speech. (1.) Of NOUNS: as, "A committee is not

needed merely to say \_Yes\_ or \_No\_; that will do very little good; \_the

yes\_ or \_the no\_ must be accompanied and supported by reasons."--\_Dr.

M'Cartee.\_ "Shall I tell you \_why?\_ Ay, sir, and \_wherefore\_; for, they

say, every \_why\_ hath a \_wherefore.\_"--\_Shak.\_ (2.) Of ADJECTIVES: as,

"Nebuchadnezzar invaded the country, and reduced it to an \_almost\_

desert."--\_Wood's Dict., w. Moab.\_ "The \_then\_ bishop of London, Dr. Laud,

attended on his Majesty."--\_Clarendon.\_ "With \_upward\_ speed his agile

wings he spread."--\_Prior.\_ "She lights the \_downward\_ heaven, and rises

there."--\_Dryden.\_ (3.) Of PRONOUNS: as, "He liked the ground \_whereon\_ she

trod."--\_Milton.\_ "\_Wherein\_ have you been galled by the king?"--\_Shak.\_ "O

how unlike the place from \_whence\_ they fell!"--\_Par. Lost\_, B. i, l. 75.

Here \_whereon\_ is exactly equivalent in sense to \_on which; wherein\_, to

\_in what\_; and \_whence\_, to \_which\_: but none of them are actually reckoned

pronouns. (4.) Of VERBS: as, "If he be hungry, more than wanton, bread

alone will \_down.\_"--\_Locke.\_ "To \_down\_ proud hearts that would not

willing die."--\_Sidney.\_ "She never could \_away\_ with me."--\_Shak.\_

"\_Away\_, and glister like the god of war."--\_Id.\_ "\_Up\_, get ye out of this

place."--\_Gen.\_, xix, 14. (5.) Of CONJUNCTIONS: as, "I, \_even\_ I, am

he."--\_Isaiah\_, xliii, 25. "If I will that he tarry \_till\_ I

come."--\_John\_, xxi, 22. "I will go and see him \_before\_ I die."--\_Gen.\_,

xlv, 28. "Before I go \_whence\_ I shall not return."--\_Job\_, x, 21. (6) Of

PREPOSITIONS: as, "Superior to any that are dug \_out\_ the

ground."--\_Eames's Lect.\_, p. 28. "Who act \_so counter\_ heavenly mercy's

plan."--\_Burns.\_ Better perhaps, "\_out of\_" and "\_counter to.\_" (7.) Of

INTERJECTIONS: as, "\_Up, up\_, Glentarkin! rouse thee, ho!"--\_Scott.\_

"\_Down, down\_, cried Mar, your lances \_down!\_"--\_Id.\_ "\_Off!\_ or I fly for

ever from thy sight."--\_Smith.\_

OBS. 6.--In these last examples, \_up\_, and \_down\_, and \_off\_, have perhaps

as much resemblance to imperative verbs, as to interjections; but they need

not be referred to either of these classes, because by supplying a verb we

may easily parse them as adverbs. I neither adopt the notion of Horne

Tooke, that the same word cannot belong to different parts of speech, nor

refer every word to that class to which it may at first sight appear to

belong; for both of these methods are impracticable and absurd. The

essential nature of each part of speech, and every important peculiarity of

its individual terms, it is hoped, will be sufficiently explained in some

part or other of this work; but, as the classification of words often

depends upon their \_construction\_, some explanations that go to determine

the parts of speech, must be looked for under the head of Syntax.

OBS. 7.--The proper classification, or subdivision, of adverbs, though it

does not appear to have been discovered by any of our earlier grammarians,

is certainly very clearly indicated by the meaning and nature of the words

themselves. The four important circumstances of any event or assertion, are

the \_when\_, the \_where\_, the \_how-much\_, and the \_how\_; or the \_time\_, the

\_place\_, the \_degree\_, and the \_manner\_. These four are the things which we

usually express by adverbs. And seldom, if ever, do we find any adverb the

notion of which does not correspond to that of \_sometime, somewhere,

somewhat\_, or \_somehow\_. Hence, the general classes of this sort of words

ought to be formed under these four heads. The classification heretofore

most commonly adopted in English grammar, has every fault which the spirit

of awkwardness could possibly give it. The head of it is this: "Adverbs,

\_though very numerous\_, may be reduced to \_certain\_ classes, the \_chief\_ of

which are \_those of\_ Number, Order, Place, Time, Quantity, Manner or

Quality, Doubt, Affirmation, Negation, Interrogation, and

Comparison."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 115; \_Comly's\_, 66; \_Kirkham's\_, 86; \_R.

C. Smith's\_, 34; \_Hall's\_, 26; \_and others\_.

CLASSES.

Adverbs may be reduced to four general classes; namely, adverbs of \_time\_,

of \_place\_, of \_degree\_, and of \_manner\_. Besides these, it is proper to

distinguish the particular class of \_conjunctive\_ adverbs.

I. Adverbs of \_time\_ are those which answer to the question, \_When? How

long? How soon?\_ or, \_How often?\_ including these which ask.

OBS.--Adverbs of time may be subdivided as follows:--

1. Of time present; as, \_Now, yet, to-day, nowadays, presently, instantly,

immediately, straightway, directly, forthwith\_.

2. Of time past; as, \_Already, just now, lately, recently, yesterday,

formerly, anciently, once, heretofore, hitherto, since, till now, long ago,

erewhile, erst\_.

3. Of time to come; as, \_To-morrow, hereafter, henceforth, henceforward,

by-and-by, soon, erelong, shortly\_.

4. Of time relative; as, \_When, then, first, just, before, after, while,

whilst, meanwhile, as, till, until, seasonably, betimes, early, late,

whenever, afterward, afterwards, otherwhile, otherwhiles\_.

5. Of time absolute; as, \_Always, ever, never, aye, eternally, forever,

perpetually, continually, incessantly, endlessly, evermore, everlastingly\_.

6. Of time repeated; as, \_Often, oft, again, occasionally, frequently,

sometimes, seldom, rarely, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, annually, once,

twice, thrice\_, or \_three times\_. Above this, we use only the phrases

\_four times, five times, six times, &c\_. Whether these ought to be reckoned

adverbs, or not, is questionable: \_times\_, for \_repetitions\_, or

\_instances\_, may be supposed a noun; but such phrases often appear to be

used adverbially.

II. Adverbs of \_place\_ are those which answer to the question, \_Where?

Whither? Whence?\_ or, \_Whereabout?\_ including these which ask.

OBS.--Adverbs of place may be subdivided as follows:--

1. Of place in which; as, \_Where, here, there, yonder, above, below, about,

around, somewhere, anywhere, elsewhere, otherwhere, everywhere, nowhere,

wherever, wheresoever, within, without, whereabout, whereabouts, hereabout,

hereabouts, thereabout, thereabouts\_.

2. Of place to which; as, \_Whither, hither, thither, in, up, down, back,

forth, aside, ashore, abroad, aloft, home, homewards, inwards, upwards,

downwards, backwards, forwards\_. \_Inward, homeward, upward, downward,

backward\_, and \_forward\_, are also adverbs, as well as adjectives; but some

critics, for distinction's sake, choose to use these only as adjectives.

3. Of place from which; as, \_Whence, hence, thence, away, out, off, far,

remotely\_.

4. Of the order of place; as, \_First, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, &c\_.

Thus, \_secondly\_ means \_in the second place\_; \_thirdly, in the third

place\_; &c. For order, or rank, implies place, though it may consist of

relative degrees.

III. Adverbs of \_degree\_ are those which answer to the question, \_How much?

How little?\_ or, to the idea of \_more or less\_.

OBS.--Adverbs of degree may be subdivided as follows:--

1. Of excess or abundance; as, \_Much, more, most, too, very, greatly, far,

besides; chiefly, principally, mainly, mostly, generally; entirely, full,

fully, completely, perfectly, wholly, totally, altogether, all, quite,

clear, stark; exceedingly, excessively, extravagantly, intolerably;

immeasurably, inconceivably, infinitely\_.

2. Of equality or sufficiency; as, \_Enough, sufficiently, competently,

adequately, proportionally, equally, so, as, even, just, exactly,

precisely\_.

3. Of deficiency or abatement; as, \_Little, less, least, scarcely, hardly,

scantly, scantily merely, barely, only, but, partly, partially, nearly,

almost, well-nigh, not quite\_.

4. Of quantity in the abstract; as, \_How\_, (meaning, \_in what degree\_,)

\_however, howsoever, everso, something, anything, nothing, a groat, a

sixpence, a sou-markee\_, and other nouns of quantity used adverbially.

IV. Adverbs of \_manner\_ are those which answer to the question, \_How?\_ or,

by affirming, denying, or doubting, show \_how\_ a subject is regarded.

OBS.--Adverbs of manner may be subdivided as follows:--

1. Of manner from quality; as, \_Well, ill, wisely, foolishly, justly,

wickedly\_, and many others formed by adding \_ly\_ to adjectives of quality.

\_Ly\_ is a contraction of \_like\_; and is the most common termination of

English adverbs. When added to nouns, it forms adjectives; but some few of

these are also used adverbially; as, \_daily, weekly, monthly\_, which denote

time.

2. Of affirmation or assent; as, \_Yes, yea, ay, verily, truly, indeed,

surely, certainly, doubtless, undoubtedly, assuredly, certes,

forsooth,[308] amen\_.

3. Of negation; as, \_No, nay, not, nowise, noway, noways, nohow\_.

4. Of doubt or uncertainty; as, \_Perhaps, haply, possibly, perchance,

peradventure, may-be\_.

5. Of mode or way; as, \_Thus, so, how, somehow, nohow, anyhow, however,

howsoever, like, else, otherwise, across, together, apart, asunder, namely,

particularly, necessarily, hesitatingly, trippingly, extempore, headlong,

lengthwise\_.

V. \_Conjunctive adverbs\_ are those which perform the office of

conjunctions, and serve to connect sentences, as well as to express some

circumstance of time, place, degree, or the like. This class embraces a few

words not strictly belonging to any of the others: as, (1.) The adverbs of

cause; \_why, wherefore, therefore\_; but the last two of these are often

called conjunctions. (2.) The pronominal compounds; \_herein, therein,

wherein\_, &c.; in which the former term is a substitute, and virtually

governed by the enclitic particle.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Conjunctive adverbs often relate equally to two verbs in different

clauses, on which account it is the more necessary to distinguish them from

others; as, "And they feared \_when\_ they heard that they were

Romans,"--\_Acts\_, xvi, 38. Here \_when\_ is a conjunctive adverb of time, and

relates equally to \_feared\_ and to \_heard\_. "The right of coming on the

shore for their purposes in general, \_as\_ and \_when\_ they

please."--\_Holroyd\_. Here \_as\_ is a conjunctive adverb of manner, and

\_when\_, of time; both relating equally to \_coming\_ and to \_please\_.

OBS. 2.--The following words are the most frequently used as conjunctive

adverbs: \_after, again, also, as, before, besides, consequently, else, ere,

even, furthermore, hence, how, however, moreover, nevertheless, otherwise,

since, so, still, till, then, thence, therefore, too, until, when, where,

wherefore, whither\_, and \_while\_, or \_whilst\_.

OBS. 3.--Adverbs of \_time, place\_, and \_manner\_, are generally connected

with verbs or participles; those of \_degree\_ are more frequently placed

before adjectives or adverbs: the latter, however, sometimes denote the

measure of actions or effects; as, "And I wept \_much\_"--\_Rev.\_, v, 4. "And

Isaac trembled \_very exceedingly\_"--\_Gen.\_, xxvii, 33. "Writers who had

felt \_less\_, would have said \_more\_"--\_Fuller\_.

"Victors and vanquished, in the various field,

Nor \_wholly\_ overcome, nor \_wholly\_ yield."--\_Dryden\_.

OBS. 4.--The adverbs \_here, there\_, and \_where\_, when compounded with

prepositions, have the force of pronouns, or of pronominal adjectives: as,

\_Hereby\_, for \_by this; thereby\_, for \_by that\_; \_whereby\_, for \_by which\_,

or \_by what\_. The prepositions which may be subjoined in this manner, are

only the short words, \_at, by, for, from, in, into, of, on, to, unto,

under, upon\_, and \_with\_. Compounds of this kind, although they partake of

the nature of pronouns with respect to the nouns going before, are still

properly reckoned adverbs, because they relate as such to the verbs which

follow them; as, "You take my life, when you do take the means \_whereby\_ I

live."--\_Shak\_. Here \_whereby\_ is a conjunctive adverb, representing

\_means\_, and relating to the verb \_live\_.[309] This mode of expression is

now somewhat antiquated, though still frequently used by good authors, and

especially by the poets.

OBS. 5--The adverbs, \_when, where, whither, whence, how, why, wherefore,

wherein, whereof, whereby\_, and other like compounds of \_where\_, are

sometimes used as \_interrogatives\_; but, as such, they still severally

belong to the classes under which they are placed in the foregoing

distribution, except that words of interrogation are not at the same time

connectives. These adverbs, and the three pronouns, \_who, which\_, and

\_what\_, are the only interrogative words in the language; but questions may

be asked without any of them, and all have other uses than to ask

questions.

OBS. 6.--The conjunctive adverbs, \_when, where, whither, whence, how\_, and

\_why\_, are sometimes so employed as to partake of the nature of \_pronouns\_,

being used as a sort of \_special relatives\_, which refer back to antecedent

nouns of \_time, place, manner\_, or \_cause\_, according to their own

respective meanings; yet being adverbs, because they relate as such, to the

verbs which follow them: as, "In the \_day when\_ God shall judge the secrets

of men."--\_Rom.\_, ii, 16. "In a \_time when\_ thou mayest be

found."--\_Psal.\_, xxxii, 6. "I sought for some time what I at length found

here, a \_place where\_ all real wants might be easily supplied."--\_Dr.

Johnson\_. "To that \_part\_ of the mountain \_where\_ the declivity began to

grow craggy."--\_Id.\_ "At \_Canterbury, whither\_ some voice had run

before."--\_Wotton\_. "Look unto the \_rock whence\_ ye are hewn, and to the

hole of the \_pit whence\_ ye are digged."--\_Isaiah\_, li, 1. "We may remark

three different \_sources whence\_ it arises."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 163.

"I'll tell you a \_way how\_ you may live your time over again."--\_Collier's

Antoninus\_, p. 108. "A crude account of the \_method how\_ they perceive

truth."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 404. "The \_order how\_ the Psalter is

appointed to be read."--\_Common Prayer\_. "In the same reasoning we see the

\_cause, why\_ no substantive is susceptible of these comparative

degrees."--\_Hermes\_, p. 201. "There seems no \_reason why\_ it should not

work prosperously."--\_Society in America\_, p. 68. "There are strong

\_reasons why\_ an extension of her territory would be injurious to

her."--\_Ib.\_ "An other \_reason why\_ it deserved to be more

studied."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 123. "The \_end why\_ God hath ordained faith,

is, that his free grace might be glorified."--\_Goodwin\_.

OBS. 7.--The direct use of adverbs for pronouns, is often, if not

generally, inelegant; and, except the expression may be thereby agreeably

shortened, it ought to be considered ungrammatical. The following examples,

and perhaps also some of the foregoing, are susceptible of improvement:

"Youth is \_the time, when\_ we are young."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 120. Say

rather, "Youth is \_that part of life which\_ succeeds to childhood." "The

boy gave a satisfactory \_reason why\_ he was tardy."--\_Ibid.\_ Say rather,

"The boy gave a satisfactory reason \_for his tardiness\_." "The several

\_sources from whence\_ these pleasures are derived."--\_Murray's Key\_, p.

258. Say rather--"sources from \_which\_" "In \_cases where\_ it is only said,

that a question has been asked."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 117. Say, "In

\_those\_ cases \_in which\_." "To the false rhetoric of the \_age when\_ he

lived."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 415. Say rather--"of the age \_in which\_ he

lived."

OBS. 8.--When a conjunctive adverb is equivalent to both an

antecedent and a relative, the construction seems to be less objectionable,

and the brevity of the expression affords an additional reason for

preferring it, especially in poetry: as, "But the Son of man hath not

\_where\_ to lay his head."--\_Matt.\_, viii, 20. "There might they see

\_whence\_ Po and Ister came."--\_Hoole's Tasso.\_ "Tell \_how\_ he formed your

shining frame."--\_Ogilvie.\_ "The wind bloweth \_where\_ it listeth, and thou

hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell \_whence\_ it cometh, and

\_whither\_ it goeth."--\_John\_, iii, 8. In this construction, the adverb is

sometimes preceded by a preposition; the noun being, in fact, \_understood\_:

as,

"Sinks, like a sea-weed, \_into whence\_ she rose."--\_Byron.\_

"Here Machiavelli's earth return'd \_to whence\_ it rose."--\_Id.\_

OBS. 9.--The conjunctive adverb \_so\_, very often expresses the sense of

some word or phrase going before; as, "Wheresoever the speech is corrupted,

\_so\_ is the mind."--\_Seneca's Morals\_, p. 267. That is, the mind is \_also

corrupted\_. "I consider grandeur and sublimity, as terms synonymous, or

nearly \_so\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 29. The following sentence is grossly

wrong, because the import of this adverb was not well observed by the

writer: "We have now come to \_far the most complicated\_ part of speech; and

one which is sometimes rendered \_still more so\_, than the nature of our

language requires."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 38. \_So\_, in some instances,

repeats the import of a preceding \_noun\_, and consequently partakes the

nature of a \_pronoun\_; as,

"We think our fathers \_fools\_, so wise we grow;

Our wiser sons, no doubt, will think us \_so\_."--\_Pope, on Crit.\_

OBS. 10.--"\_Since\_ is often improperly used for \_ago\_: as, 'When were you

in France?--Twenty years \_since\_.' It ought to be, 'Twenty years \_ago\_.'

\_Since\_ may be admitted to supply the place of \_ago that\_: it being equally

correct to say, 'It is twenty years \_since\_ I was in France;' and, 'It is

twenty years \_ago, that\_ I was in France.'"--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 337.

The difference between \_since\_ and \_ago\_ is clearly this: the former, being

either a preposition or a conjunctive adverb, cannot with strict propriety

be used \_adjectively\_; the latter, being in reality an old participle,

naturally comes after a noun, in the sense of an adjective; as, \_a year

ago, a month ago, a week ago\_. "\_Go, ago, ygo, gon, agon, gone, agone\_, are

all used indiscriminately by our old English writers as the past participle

of the verb \_to go\_."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 376. "Three days

\_agone\_, I fell sick."--\_1 Samuel\_, xxx, 13.

MODIFICATIONS.

Adverbs have no modifications, except that a few are compared, after the

manner of adjectives: as, \_soon, sooner, soonest; often, oftener,

oftenest;[310] long, longer, longest; fast, faster, fastest\_.

The following are irregularly compared: \_well, better, best; badly\_ or

\_ill, worse, worst; little less, least; much, more, most; far, farther,

farthest; forth, further, furthest. Rath, rather, rathest\_, is now used

only in the comparative.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Most adverbs that are formed from adjectives by the addition of

\_ly\_, will admit the comparative adverbs \_more and most, less\_ and \_least\_,

before them:, as, \_wisely, more wisely, most wisely; culpably, less

culpably, least culpably\_. This is virtually a comparison of the latter

adverb, but the grammatical inflection, or degree, belongs only to the

former; and the words being written separately, it is certainly most proper

to parse them separately, ascribing the degree of comparison to the word

which expresses it. As comparison does not belong to adverbs in general, it

should not be mentioned in parsing, except in the case of those few which

are varied by it.

OBS. 2.--In the works of Milton, and occasionally in those of some other

poets of his age,[311] adverbs of two syllables, ending in \_ly\_, are not

only compared regularly like adjectives of the same ending, but are used in

the measure of iambic verse as if they still formed only two syllables.

Examples:--

"But God hath \_wiselier\_ arm'd his vengeful ire."

--\_P. Lost\_, B. x, l. 1022.

"Destroyers \_rightlier\_ call'd and plagues of men."

--\_Ib.\_, B. xi, l. 699.

"And on his quest, where \_likeliest\_ he might find."

--\_Ib.\_, B. ix, l. 414.

"Now \_amplier\_ known thy Saviour and thy Lord."

--\_Ib.\_, B. xii, l. 544.

"Though thou wert \_firmlier\_ fasten'd than a rock."

--\_Sam. Agon.\_, l. 1398.

"Not rustic, as before, but \_seemlier\_ clad."

--\_P. Reg.\_, B. ii, l. 299.

-------------------------"Whereof to thee anon

\_Plainlier\_ shall be reveal'd."

--\_Paradise Lost\_, B. xii, l. 150.

------------"To show what coast thy sluggish erare

Might \_easiliest\_ harbour in."

--\_Shakspeare, Cymb.\_, Act IV.

"Shall not myself be \_kindlier\_ mov'd than thou art?"

--\_Id., Tempest\_, Act V.

"But \_earthlier\_ happy is the rose distill'd."

--\_Id., M. S. N. Dream\_, Act I.

OBS. 3.--The usage just cited is clearly analogical, and has the obvious

advantage of adding to the flexibility of the language, while it also

multiplies its distinctive forms. If carried out as it might be, it would

furnish to poets and orators an ampler choice of phraseology, and at the

same time, obviate in a great measure the necessity of using the same words

both adjectively and adverbially. The words which are now commonly used in

this twofold character, are principally monosyllables; and, of adjectives,

monosyllables are the class which we oftenest compare by \_er\_ and \_est\_:

next to which come dissyllables ending in \_y\_; as, \_holy, happy, lovely\_.

But if to any monosyllable we add \_ly\_ to form an adverb, we have of course

a dissyllable ending in \_y\_; and if adverbs of this class may be compared

regularly, after the manner of adjectives, there can be little or no

occasion to use the primitive word otherwise than as an adjective. But,

according to present usage, few adverbs are ever compared by inflection,

except such words as may also be used adjectively. For example: \_cleanly,

comely, deadly, early, kindly, kingly, likely, lively, princely, seemly,

weakly\_, may all be thus compared; and, according to Johnson and Webster,

they may all be used either adjectively or adverbially. Again: \_late,

later, latest\_, is commonly contrasted in both senses, with \_early,

earlier, earliest\_; but if \_lately, latelier, lateliest\_, were adopted in

the adverbial contrast, \_early\_ and \_late, earlier\_ and \_later, earliest\_

and \_latest\_, might be contrasted as adjectives only.

OBS. 4.--The using of adjectives for adverbs, is \_in general\_ a plain

violation of grammar. Example: "\_To\_ is a preposition, governing the verb

\_sell\_, in the infinitive mood, \_agreeable\_ to Rule 18, which says, The

preposition TO governs the infinitive mood."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 137. Here

\_agreeable\_ ought to be \_agreeably\_; an adverb, relating to the participle

\_governing\_. Again, the using of adverbs for adjectives, is a fault as

gross. Example: "Apprehending the nominative to be put \_absolutely.\_"--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 155. Here \_absolutely\_ ought to be \_absolute\_; an

adjective, relating to the word \_nominative\_. But, \_in poetry\_, there is

not only a frequent substitution of quality for manner, in such a way that

the adjective may still be parsed adjectively; but sometimes also what

\_appears\_ to be (whether right or wrong) a direct use of adjectives for

adverbs, especially in the higher degrees of comparison: as,

"\_Firmer\_ he roots him the \_ruder\_ it blow."

--\_Scott, L. of L.\_, C. ii, st. 19.

"True ease in writing comes from art, not chance,

As those move \_easiest\_ who have learn'd to dance."

--\_Pope, Ess. on Crit.\_

"And also now the sluggard \_soundest\_ slept."

--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, B. vi, l. 257.

"In them is \_plainest\_ taught, and \_easiest\_ learnt,

What makes a nation happy, and keeps it so."

--\_Milton, P. R.\_, B. iv, l. 361.

OBS. 5.--No use of words can be \_right\_, that actually confounds the parts

of speech; but in many instances, according to present practice, the same

words may be used either adjectively or adverbially. \_Firmer\_ and \_ruder\_

are not adverbs, but adjectives. In the example above, they may, I think,

be ranked with the instances in which quality is poetically substituted for

manner, and be parsed as relating to the pronouns which follow them. A

similar usage occurs in Latin, and is considered elegant. \_Easiest\_, as

used above by Pope, may perhaps be parsed upon the same principle; that is,

as relating to \_those\_, or to \_persons\_ understood before the verb \_move\_.

But \_soundest, plainest\_, and \_easiest\_, as in the latter quotations,

cannot be otherwise explained than as being adverbs. \_Plain\_ and \_sound\_,

according to our dictionaries, are used both adjectively and adverbially;

and, if their superlatives are not misapplied in these instances, it is

because the words are adverbs, and regularly compared as such. \_Easy\_,

though sometimes used adverbially by reputable writers, is presented by our

lexicographers as an adjective only; and if the latter are right, Milton's

use of \_easiest\_ in the sense and construction of \_most easily\_, must be

considered an error in grammar. And besides, according to his own practice,

he ought to have preferred \_plainliest\_ to \_plainest\_, in the adverbial

sense of \_most plainly\_.

OBS. 6.--Beside the instances already mentioned, of words used both

adjectively and adverbially, our dictionaries exhibit many primitive terms

which are to be referred to the one class or the other, according to their

construction; as, \_soon, late, high, low, quick, slack, hard, soft, wide,

close, clear, thick, full, scant, long, short, clean, near, scarce, sure,

fast\_; to which may as well be added, \_slow, loud\_, and \_deep\_; all

susceptible of the regular form of comparison, and all regularly

convertible into adverbs in \_ly\_; though \_soonly\_ and \_longly\_ are now

obsolete, and \_fastly\_, which means \_firmly\_, is seldom used. In short, it

is, probably, from an idea, that no adverbs are to be compared by \_er\_ and

\_est\_ unless the same words may also be used adjectively, that we do not

thus compare \_lately, highly, quickly, loudly\_, &c., after the example of

Milton. But, however custom may sanction the adverbial construction of the

foregoing simple terms, the distinctive form of the adverb is in general to

be preferred, especially in prose. For example: "The more it was complained

of, the \_louder\_ it was praised."--\_Daniel Webster, in Congress\_, 1837. If

it would seem quaint to say, "The \_loudlier\_ it was praised," it would

perhaps be better to say, "The \_more loudly\_ it was praised;" for our

critics have not acknowledged \_loud\_ or \_louder\_ to be an adverb. Nor have

\_slow\_ and \_deep\_ been so called. Dr. Johnson cites the following line to

illustrate the latter as an \_adjective\_:

"Drink hellebore, my boy! drink \_deep\_, and scour thy brain. DRYDEN."

--\_Joh. Dict., w. Deep\_.

"Drink hellebore, my boy! drink deep, and \_purge\_ thy brain."

--\_Dryd. IV. Sat. of Persius\_.

OBS. 7.--In some instances, even in prose, it makes little or no difference

to the sense, whether we use adjectives referring to the nouns, or adverbs

of like import, having reference to the verbs: as, "The whole conception is

conveyed \_clear\_ and \_strong\_ to the mind."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p, 138. Here

\_clear\_ and \_strong\_ are adjectives, referring to \_conception\_; but we

might as well say, "The whole conception is conveyed \_clearly\_ and

\_strongly\_ to the mind." "Against a power that exists \_independent\_ of

their own choice."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 46. Here we might as well say,

"exists \_independently\_;" for the independence of the power, in whichever

way it is expressed, is nothing but \_the manner\_ of its \_existence\_. "This

work goeth \_fast\_ on and prospereth."--\_Ezra\_. "Skill comes so \_slow\_, and

life so \_fast\_ doth fly."--\_Davies\_. Dr. Johnson here takes \_fast\_ and

\_slow\_ to be adjectives, but he might as well have called them adverbs, so

far as their meaning or construction is concerned. For what here qualifies

the things spoken of, is nothing but \_the manner\_ of their \_motion\_; and

this might as well be expressed by the words, \_rapidly, slowly, swiftly\_.

Yet it ought to be observed, that this does not prove the equivalent words

to be adverbs, and not adjectives. Our philologists have often been led

into errors by the argument of equivalence.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS VIII.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Eighth Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the\_ ARTICLES, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, PARTICIPLES, \_and\_

ADVERBS.

\_The definitions to be given in the Eighth Praxis, are two for an article,

six for a noun, three for an adjective, six for a pronoun, seven for a verb

finite, five for an infinitive, two for a participle, two (and sometimes

three) for an adverb,--and one for a conjunction, a preposition, or an

interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"When was it that Rome attracted most strongly the admiration of

mankind?"--\_R. G. Harper.\_

\_When\_ is an adverb of time. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree or manner. 2. Adverbs of time are those which answer to the

question, \_When? How long? How soon?\_ or, \_How often?\_ including these

which ask.

\_Was\_ is an irregular neuter verb, from \_be, was, being, been\_; found in

the indicative mood, imperfect tense, third person, and singular number. 1.

A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_. 2.

An irregular verb is a verb that does not form the preterit and the perfect

participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. A neuter verb is a verb that

expresses neither action nor passion, but simply being, or a state of

being. 4. The indicative mood is that form of the verb, which simply

indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question. 5. The imperfect tense

is that which expresses what took place, or was occurring, in time fully

past. 6. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely

spoken of. 7. The singular number is that which denotes but one.

\_It\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a

noun. 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what

person it is. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing

merely spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5.

The neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor

female. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun,

which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

\_That\_ is a conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to connect words

or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms so

connected.

\_Rome\_ is a proper noun, of the third person, singular number, personified

feminine, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place,

or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A proper noun is the name of

some particular individual, or people, or group. 3. The third person is

that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular

number is that which denotes but one. 5. The feminine gender is that which

denotes persons or animals of the female kind. 6. The nominative case is

that form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject

of a finite verb.

\_Attracted\_ is a regular active-transitive verb, from \_attract, attracted,

attracting, attracted\_; found in the indicative mood, imperfect tense,

third person, and singular number. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to

be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_. 2. A regular verb is a verb that forms

the preterit and the perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. An

active-transitive verb is a verb that expresses an action which has some

person or thing for its object. 4. The indicative mood is that form of the

verb, which simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question. 5.

The imperfect tense is that which expresses what took place, or was

occurring, in time fully past. 6. The third person is that which denotes

the person or thing merely spoken of. 7. The singular number is that which

denotes but one.

\_Most\_ is an a adverb of degree, compared, \_much, more, most\_, and found in

the superlative. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an

adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree,

or manner. 2. Adverbs of degree are those which answer to the question,

\_How much? How little?\_ or to the idea of \_more or less\_. 3. The

superlative degree is that which is \_most\_ or \_least\_ of all included with

it.

\_Strongly\_ is an adverb of manner. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb,

a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses

time, place, degree, or manner. 2. Adverbs of manner are those which answer

to the question, \_How?\_ or, by affirming, denying, or doubting, show \_how\_

a subject is regarded.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Admiration\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a

verb, participle, or preposition.

\_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Mankind\_ is a common noun, collective, of the third person, conveying the

idea of plurality, masculine gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the

name of any person, place, or thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A

collective noun, or noun of multitude, is the name of many individuals

together. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing

merely spoken of. 4. The plural number is that which denotes more than one.

5. The masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of the

male kind. 6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or

pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or

preposition.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"Wisely, therefore, is it ordered, and agreeably to the system of

Providence, that we should have nature for our instructor."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, i, 358.

"It is surprising, how quickly, and for the most part how correctly, we

judge of character from external appearance."--\_Id., ib.\_, i, 359.

"The members of a period connected by proper copulatives, glide smoothly

and gently along, and are a proof of sedateness and leisure in the

speaker."--\_Id., ib.\_, ii, 33.

"Antithesis ought only to be occasionally studied, when it is naturally

demanded by the comparison or opposition of objects."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_,

p. 102.

"Did men always think clearly, and were they at the same time fully masters

of the language in which they write, there would be occasion for few

rules."--\_Ib.\_, 102. "Rhetoric, or oratory, is the art of speaking justly,

methodically, floridly, and copiously, upon any subject, in order to touch

the passions, and to persuade."--\_Bradley's Literary Guide\_, p. 155.

"The more closely we follow the natural order of any subject we may be

investigating, the more satisfactorily and explicitly will that subject be

opened to our understanding."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 160.

"Why should we doubt of that, whereof our sense

Finds demonstration from experience?

Our minds are here, and there, below, above;

Nothing that's mortal, can so swiftly move."--\_Denham\_.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"If we can discern particularly and precisely what it is, which is most

directly obedience or disobedience to the will and commands of God; what is

truly morally beautiful, or really and absolutely deformed; the question

concerning liberty, as far as it respects ethics, or morality, will be

sufficiently decided."--\_West, on Agency\_, p. xiii.

"Thus it was true, historically, individually, philosophically, and

universally, that they did not like to retain God in their

knowledge."--\_Cox, on Christianity\_, p. 327.

"We refer to Jeremiah Evarts and Gordon Hall. They had their imperfections,

and against them they struggled discreetly, constantly, successfully, until

they were fitted to ascend to their rest."--\_N. Y. Observer\_, Feb. 2d,

1833.

"Seek not proud riches; but such as thou mayst get justly, use soberly,

distribute cheerfully and leave contentedly."--\_Ld. Bacon.\_

"There are also some particularly grievous sins, of which conscience justly

accuses us; sins committed more or less presumptuously and willingly,

deliberately and repeatedly."--\_Bickersteth, on Prayer\_, p. 59.

"And herein I apprehend myself now to suffer wrongfully, being slanderously

reported, falsely accused, shamefully and despitefully used, and hated

without a cause."--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 173.

"Of perfect knowledge, see, the dawning light

Foretells a noon most exquisitely bright!

Here, springs of endless joy are breaking forth!

There, buds the promise of celestial worth!"--\_Young.\_

LESSON III--PARSING.

"A true friend unbosoms freely, advises justly, assists readily, adventures

boldly, takes all patiently, defends courageously, and continues a friend

unchangeably."--\_Penn's Maxims.\_

"That mind must be wonderfully narrow, that is wholly wrapped up in itself;

but this is too visibly the character of most human minds."--\_Burgh's

Dignity\_, ii, 35.

"There is not a man living, who wishes more sincerely than I do, to see a

plan adopted for the abolition of slavery; but there is only one proper and

effectual mode by which it can be accomplished, and that is, by legislative

authority."--\_Geo. Washington\_, 1786.

"Sloth has frequently and justly been denominated the rust of the soul. The

habit is easily acquired; or, rather, it is a part of our very nature to be

indolent."--\_Student's Manual\_, p. 176.

"I am aware how improper it is to talk much of my wife; never reflecting

how much more improper it is to talk much of myself."--\_Home's Art of

Thinking\_, p. 89.

"Howbeit whereinsoever any is bold, (I speak foolishly,) I am bold also.

Are they Hebrews? so am I. Are they Israelites? so am I. Are they the seed

of Abraham? so am I. Are they ministers of Christ? (I speak as a fool,) I

am more."--\_2 Cor.\_, xi.

"Oh, speak the wondrous man! how mild, how calm,

How greatly humble, how divinely good,

How firm establish'd on eternal truth."--\_Thomson\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING ADVERBS.

"We can much easier form the conception of a fierce combat."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 167.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the adjective \_easier\_ is used as an adverb,

to qualify the verb \_can form.\_ But, according to Observation 4th on the

Modifications of Adverbs, "The using of adjectives for adverbs, is in

general a plain violation of grammar." Therefore, \_easier\_ should be \_more

easily\_; thus, "We can much \_more easily\_ form the conception of a fierce

combat."]

"When he was restored, agreeable to the treaty, he was a perfect

savage."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 235. "How I shall acquit myself suitable

to the importance of the trial."--\_Duncan's Cic.\_, p. 85. "Can any thing

show your holiness how unworthy you treat mankind?"--\_Spect.\_, No. 497. "In

what other [language,] consistent with reason and common sense, can you go

about to explain it to him?"--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. viii. "Agreeable

to this rule, the short vowel Sheva has two characters."--\_Wilson's Hebrew

Gram.\_, p. 46. "We shall give a remarkable fine example of this

figure."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 347. "All of which is most abominable

false."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 431. "He heaped up great riches, but

passed his time miserable."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, ii, 202. "He is never

satisfied with expressing any thing clearly and simple."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 96. "Attentive only to exhibit his ideas clear and exact, he appears

dry."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "Such words as have the most liquids and vowels,

glide the softest."--\_Ib.\_, p. 129. "The simplest points, such as are

easiest apprehended."--\_Ib.\_, p. 312. "Too historical, to be accounted a

perfect regular epic poem."--\_Ib.\_, p. 441. "Putting after them the oblique

case, agreeable to the French construction."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 108.

"Where the train proceeds with an extreme slow pace."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, i, 151. "So as scarce to give an appearance of succession."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 152. "That concord between sound and sense, which is perceived in some

expressions independent of artful pronunciation."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 63. "Cornaro

had become very corpulent, previous to the adoption of his temperate

habits."--\_Hitchcock, on Dysp.\_, p. 396. "Bread, which is a solid and

tolerable hard substance."--\_Sandford and Merton\_, p. 38. "To command every

body that was not dressed as fine as himself."--\_Ib.\_, p, 19. "Many of them

have scarce outlived their authors."--\_Pref. to Lily's Gram.\_, p. ix.

"Their labour, indeed, did not penetrate very deep."--\_Wilson's Heb.

Gram.\_, p. 30. "The people are miserable poor, and subsist on

fish."--\_Hume's Hist.\_, ii, 433. "A scale, which I took great pains, some

years since, to make."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 81. "There is no truth on earth

so well established as the truth of the Bible."--\_Taylor's District

School\_, p. 288. "I know of no work so much wanted as the one Mr. Taylor

has now furnished."--DR. NOTT: \_ib.\_, p. ii. "And therefore their requests

are seldom and reasonable."--\_Taylor\_: \_ib.\_, p. 58. "Questions are easier

proposed than rightly answered."--\_Dillwyn's Reflections\_, p. 19. "Often

reflect on the advantages you possess, and on the source from whence they

are all derived."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 374. "If there be no special Rule

which requires it to be put forwarder."--\_Milnes's Greek Gram.\_, p. 234.

"The Masculine and Neuter have the same Dialect in all Numbers, especially

when they end the same."--\_Ib.\_, p. 259.

"And children are more busy in their play

Than those that wisely'st pass their time away."--\_Butler\_, p. 163.

CHAPTER IX.--CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction is a word used to connect words or sentences in construction,

and to show the dependence of the terms so connected: as, "Thou \_and\_ he

are happy, \_because\_ you are good."--\_Murray\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Our connective words are of four kinds; namely, relative pronouns,

conjunctive adverbs,[312] conjunctions, and prepositions. These have a

certain resemblance to one another, so far as they are all of them

\_connectives\_; yet there are also characteristical differences by which

they may in general be easily distinguished. Relative pronouns represent

antecedents, and stand in those relations which we call cases; conjunctive

adverbs assume the connective power in addition to their adverbial

character, and consequently sustain a double relation; conjunctions,

(except the introductory correspondents,) join words or sentences together,

showing their relation either to each other or to something else;

prepositions, though naturally subject themselves to something going

before, assume the government of the terms which follow them, and in this

they differ from all the rest.

OBS. 2.--Conjunctions do not express any of the real objects of the

understanding, whether things, qualities, or actions, but rather the

several modes of connexion or contrast under which these objects are

contemplated. Hence conjunctions were said by Aristotle and his followers

to be in themselves "devoid of signification;" a notion which Harris, with

no great propriety, has adopted in his faulty definition[313] of this part

of speech. It is the office of this class of particles, to link together

words, phrases, or sentences, that would otherwise appear as loose shreds,

or unconnected aphorisms; and thus, by various forms of dependence, to give

to discourse such continuity as may fit it to convey a connected train of

thought or reasoning. The skill or inability of a writer may as strikingly

appear in his management of these little connectives, as in that of the

longest and most significant words in the language.

"The current is often evinced by the straws,

And the course of the wind by the flight of a feather;

So a speaker is known by his \_ands\_ and his \_ors\_,

Those stitches that fasten his patchwork together."--\_Robert F. Mott\_.

OBS. 3.--Conjunctions sometimes connect entire sentences, and sometimes

particular words or phrases only. When one whole sentence is closely linked

with an other, both become clauses or members of a more complex sentence;

and when one word or phrase is coupled with an other, both have in general

a common dependence upon some other word in the same sentence. In

etymological parsing, it may be sufficient to name the conjunction as such,

and repeat the definition above; but, in syntactical parsing, the learner

should always specify the terms connected. In many instances, however, he

may conveniently abbreviate his explanation, by parsing the conjunction as

connecting "what precedes and what follows;" or, if the terms are

transposed, as connecting its own clause to the second, to the third, or to

some other clause in the context.

OBS. 4.--However easy it may appear, for even the young parser to \_name the

terms\_ which in any given instance are connected by the conjunction, and of

course to know for himself \_what these terms are\_,--that is, to know what

the conjunction does or does not, connect,--it is certain that a multitude

of grammarians and philosophers, great and small, from Aristotle down to

the latest modifier of Murray, or borrower from his text, have been

constantly contradicting one an other, if not themselves, in relation to

this matter. Harris avers, that "the Conjunction connects, \_not Words, but

Sentences\_;" and frames his definition accordingly. See \_Hermes\_, p. 237.

This doctrine is true of some of the conjunctions, but it is by no means

true of them all. He adds, in a note, "Grammarians have usually considered

the Conjunction as connecting rather single Parts of Speech, than whole

Sentences, and that too with the addition of like with like, Tense with

Tense, Number with Number, Case with Case, &c. This \_Sanctius\_ justly

explodes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 238. If such has been the usual doctrine of the

grammarians, they have erred on the one side, as much as our philosopher,

and his learned authorities, on the other. For, in this instance, Harris's

quotations of Latin and Greek writers, prove only that Sanctius, Scaliger,

Apollonius, and Aristotle, held the same error that he himself had

adopted;--the error which Latham and others now inculcate, that, "There are

always \_two propositions\_ where there is one Conjunction."--\_Fowler's E.

Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, p. 557.

OBS. 5.--The common doctrine of L. Murray and others, that, "Conjunctions

connect the same moods and tenses of verbs, and cases of nouns and

pronouns," is not only badly expressed, but is pointedly at variance with

their previous doctrine, that, "Conjunctions very often unite sentences,

when they appear to unite only words; as in the following instances: 'Duty

\_and\_ interest forbid vicious indulgences;' 'Wisdom \_or\_ folly governs us.'

Each of these forms of expression," they absurdly say, "contains two

sentences."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 124; \_Smith's\_, 95; \_Fisk's\_, 84;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 81. By "\_the same moods, tenses\_, or \_cases\_," we must needs

here understand some \_one mood, tense\_, or \_case\_, in which the connected

words \_agree\_; and, if the conjunction has any thing to do with this

agreement, or sameness of mood, tense, or case, it must be because words

only, and not sentences, are connected by it. Now, \_if, that, though, lest,

unless\_, or any other conjunction that introduces the subjunctive, will

almost always be found to connect different moods, or rather to subjoin one

sentence to another in which there is a different mood. On the contrary,

\_and, as, even, than, or\_, and \_nor\_, though they may be used to connect

sentences, do, in very many instances, connect words only; as, "The \_king

and queen\_ are an amiable pair."--\_Murray.\_ "And a being of \_more than

human\_ dignity stood before me."--\_Dr. Johnson.\_ It cannot be plausibly

pretended, that \_and\_ and \_than\_, in these two examples, connect clauses or

sentences. So \_and\_ and \_or\_, in the examples above, connect the nouns

only, and not "sentences:" else our common rules for the agreement of verbs

or pronouns with words connected, are nothing but bald absurdities. It is

idle to say, that the construction and meaning are not \_what they appear to

be\_; and it is certainly absurd to contend, that conjunctions always

connect sentences; or always, words only. One author very strangely

conceives, that, "Conjunctions may be said either always to connect words

only, or always to connect sentences, \_according to the view which may be

taken of them\_ in analyzing."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 77.

OBS. 6.--"Several words belonging to other parts of speech, are

occasionally used as conjunctions. Such are the following: \_provided,

except\_, verbs; \_both\_, an adjective; \_either, neither, that\_, pronouns;

\_being, seeing\_, participles; \_before, since, for\_, prepositions. I will do

it, \_provided\_ you lend some help. Here \_provided\_ is a conjunction, that

connects the two sentences. 'Paul said, \_Except\_ these abide in the ship,

ye cannot be saved.' Here \_except\_ is a conjunction. \_Excepting\_ is also

used as a participle and conjunction. '\_Being\_ this reception of the gospel

was so anciently foretold.'--\_Bishop Pearson.\_ '\_Seeing\_ all the

congregation are holy.'--\_Bible\_. Here \_being\_ and \_seeing\_ are used as

conjunctions."--\_Alexander's Gram\_:, p. 50. 'The foregoing remark, though

worthy of some attention, is not altogether accurate. \_Before\_, when it

connects sentences, is not a conjunction, but a conjunctive adverb.

\_Provided\_, as cited above, resembles not the verb, but the perfect

participle. \_Either\_ and \_neither\_, when they are not conjunctions, are

pronominal adjectives, rather than pronouns. And, to say, that, "words

\_belonging to other parts of speech\_, are used as \_conjunctions\_," is a

sort of solecism, which leaves the learner in doubt to what class they

\_really\_ belong. \_Being\_, and \_being that\_, were formerly used in the sense

of \_because, since, or seeing that\_; (Lat. \_cum, quoniam\_, or \_quando\_;)

but this usage is now obsolete. So there is an uncommon or obsolete use of

\_without\_, in the sense of \_unless\_, or \_except\_; (Lat. \_nisi\_;) as, "He

cannot rise \_without\_ he be helped." \_Walker's Particles\_, p. 425. "Non

potest \_nisi\_ adjutus exsurgere."--\_Seneca.\_

CLASSES.

Conjunctions are divided into two general classes, \_copulative\_ and

\_disjunctive\_; and a few of each class are particularly distinguished from

the rest, as being \_corresponsive\_.

I. A \_copulative conjunction\_ is a conjunction that denotes an addition, a

cause, a consequence, or a supposition: as, "He \_and\_ I shall not dispute;

\_for, if\_ he has any choice, I shall readily grant it."

II. A \_disjunctive conjunction\_ is a conjunction that denotes opposition of

meaning: as, "\_Though\_ he were dead, \_yet\_ shall he live."--\_St. John's

Gospel\_. "Be not faithless, \_but\_ believing."--\_Id.\_

III. The \_corresponsive conjunctions\_ are those which are used in pairs, so

that one refers or answers to the other: as, "John came \_neither\_ eating

\_nor\_ drinking."--\_Matt.\_, xi, 18. "But \_if\_ I cast out devils by the

Spirit of God, \_then\_ the kingdom of God is come unto you."--\_Ib.\_, xii,

28.

OBS.--Not all terms which stand in the relation of correspondents, or

corresponsives, are therefore to be reckoned \_conjunctions\_; nor are both

words in each pair always of the same part of speech: some are adverbs; one

or two are adjectives; and sometimes a conjunction answers to a preceding

adverb. But, if a word is seen to be the mere precursor, index,

introductory sign, or counterpart, of a conjunction, and has no relation or

import which should fix it in any other of the ten classes called parts of

speech, it is, clearly, a conjunction,--a \_corresponding\_ or

\_corresponsive\_ conjunction. It is a word used \_preparatively\_, "to connect

words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of the terms

so connected."

LIST OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The Copulatives; \_And, as, both, because, even, for, if, that, then,

since, seeing, so\_.

2. The Disjunctives; \_Or, nor, either, neither, than, though, although,

yet, but, except, whether, lest, unless, save, provided, notwithstanding,

whereas\_.

3. The Corresponsives; \_Both--and; as--as; as--so; if--then; either--or\_;

\_neither--nor; whether--or; though\_, or \_although--yet\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--By some writers, the words, \_also, since, too, then, therefore\_,

and \_wherefore\_, are placed among the copulative conjunctions; and \_as, so,

still, however\_, and \_albeit\_, among the disjunctive; but Johnson and

Webster have marked most of these terms as \_adverbs\_ only. It is perhaps of

little moment, by which name they are called; for, in some instances,

conjunctions and conjunctive adverbs do not differ very essentially. \_As,

so, even, then, yet\_, and \_but\_, seem to belong sometimes to the one part

of speech, and sometimes to the other. I call them adverbs when they

chiefly express time, manner, or degree; and conjunctions when they appear

to be mere connectives. \_As, yet\_, and \_but\_, are generally conjunctions;

but \_so, even\_, and \_then\_, are almost always adverbs. \_Seeing\_ and

\_provided\_, when used as connectives, are more properly conjunctions than

any thing else; though Johnson ranks them with the adverbs, and Webster, by

supposing many awkward ellipses, keeps them with the participles. Examples:

"For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, \_seeing\_ it is but the third

hour of the day."--\_Acts\_, ii, 15. "The senate shall have power to adjourn

themselves, \_provided\_ such adjournment shall not exceed two days at a

time."--\_Constitution of New Hampshire\_.

OBS. 2.--\_Since\_, when it governs

a noun after it, is a preposition: as, "Hast thou commanded the morning

\_since thy days\_?"--\_Job\_. \_Albeit\_ is equivalent in sense to \_although\_,

and is properly a conjunction; but this old compound is now nearly or quite

obsolete. \_As\_ is sometimes a relative pronoun, sometimes a conjunctive

adverb, and sometimes a copulative conjunction. Example of the last: "We

present ourselves \_as\_ petitioners." If \_as\_ is ever disjunctive, it is not

so here; nor can we parse it as an adverb, because it comes between two

words that are essentially in apposition. The equivalent Latin term \_quasi\_

is called an adverb, but, in such a case, not very properly: as, "Et colles

\_quasi\_ pulverem pones;"--"And thou shalt make the hills \_as\_

chaff."--\_Isaiah\_, xli, 15. So \_even\_, which in English is frequently a

sign of emphatic repetition, seems sometimes to be rather a conjunction

than an adverb: as, "I, \_even\_ I, am the Lord."--\_Isaiah\_, xliii, 11.

OBS. 3.--\_Save\_ and \_saving\_, when they denote exception, are not adverbs,

as Johnson denominates them, or a verb and a participle, as Webster

supposes them to be, or prepositions, as Covell esteems them, but

disjunctive conjunctions; and, as such, they take the same case after as

before them; as, "All the conspirators, \_save\_ only \_he\_, did that they

did, in envy of great Cæsar."--\_Shak.\_ "All this world's glory seemeth

vain, and all their shows but shadows, \_saving she\_."--\_Spenser\_. "Israel

burned none of them, \_save Hazor\_ only."--\_Joshua\_. xi, 13. "And none of

them was cleansed, \_saving Naaman\_ the Syrian."--\_Luke\_, iv, 27. \_Save\_ is

not here a transitive verb, for Hazor was not \_saved\_ in any sense, but

utterly destroyed; nor is Naaman here spoken of as \_being saved by an other

leper\_, but as being cleansed when others were not. These two conjunctions

are now little used; and therefore the propriety of setting the nominative

after them and treating them as conjunctions, is the more apt to be

doubted. The Rev. Matt. Harrison, after citing five examples, four of which

have the nominative with \_save\_, adds, without naming the part of speech,

or assigning any reason, this decision, which I think erroneous: "In all

these passages, \_save\_ requires after it the objective case." His five

examples are these: "All, \_save\_ I, were at rest, and enjoyment."--

\_Frankenstein\_. "There was no stranger with us, in the house, \_save we\_

two."--\_1 Kings\_, iii, 18.

"And nothing wanting is, \_save she\_, alas!"

--DRUMMOND \_of Hawthornden\_.

"When all slept sound, \_save she\_, who bore them both."

--ROGERS, \_Italy\_, p. 108.

"And all were gone, \_save him\_, who now kept guard."

--\_Ibid.\_, p. 185.

OBS. 4.--The conjunction \_if\_ is sometimes used in the Bible to express,

not a supposition of what follows it, but an emphatic negation: as, "I have

sworn in my wrath, \_if\_ they shall enter into my rest."--\_Heb.\_, iv, 3.

That is, \_that they shall not enter\_. The same peculiarity is found in the

Greek text, and also in the Latin, and other versions. \_Or\_, in the

obsolete phrase, "\_or ever\_," is not properly a conjunction, but a

conjunctive adverb of time, meaning \_before\_. It is supposed to be a

corruption of \_ere\_: as, "I was set up from everlasting, from the

beginning, \_or ever\_ the earth was."--\_Prov.\_, viii, 23. "And we, \_or ever\_

he come near, are ready to kill him."--\_Acts\_, xxiii, 15. This term derives

no support from the original text.

OBS. 5.--There are some peculiar phrases, or combinations of words, which

have the force of conjunctions, and which it is not very easy to analyze

satisfactorily in parsing: as, "And \_for all\_ there were so many, yet was

not the net broken."--\_John\_, xxi, 11. Here \_for all\_ is equivalent to

\_although\_, or \_notwithstanding\_; either of which words would have been

more elegant. \_Nevertheless\_ is composed of three words, and is usually

reckoned a conjunctive adverb; but it might as well be called a disjunctive

conjunction, for it is obviously equivalent to \_yet, but\_, or

\_notwithstanding\_; as, "I am crucified with Christ: \_nevertheless\_ I live;

\_yet not\_ I, \_but\_ Christ liveth in me."--\_Gal.\_, ii, 20. Here, for

\_nevertheless\_ and \_but\_, we have in the Greek the same particle [Greek:

de]. "Each man's mind has some peculiarity, \_as well as\_ his

face."--\_Locke\_. "Relative pronouns, \_as well as\_ conjunctions, serve to

connect sentences."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 124. Here the first \_as\_

corresponds to the second, but \_well\_ not being used in the literal sense

of an adverb, some judicious grammarians take the whole phrase as a

conjunction. It is, however, susceptible of division: as, "It is adorned

with admirable pieces of sculpture, \_as well\_ modern \_as\_

ancient."--\_Addison\_.

OBS. 6.--So the phrases, \_for as much as, in as much as, in so much that\_,

if taken collectively, have the nature of conjunctions; yet they contain

within themselves correspondent terms and several different parts of

speech. The words are sometimes printed separately, and sometimes partly

together. Of late years, \_forasmuch, inasmuch, insomuch\_, have been usually

compounded, and called adverbs. They might as well, perhaps, be called

conjunctions, as they were by some of our old grammarians; for two

conjunctions sometimes come together: as, "Answering their questions, \_as

if\_[314] it were a matter that needed it."--\_Locke\_. "These should be at

first gently treated, \_as though\_ we expected an imposthumation,"--\_Sharp\_.

"But there are many things which we must acknowledge to be true,

\_notwithstanding that\_ we cannot comprehend them."--\_Beattie's Moral

Science\_, p. 211. "There is no difference, \_except that\_ some are heavier

than others."--"We may be playful, \_and yet\_ innocent; grave, \_and yet\_

corrupt."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 166.

OBS. 7.--Conjunctions have no grammatical modifications, and are

consequently incapable of any formal agreement or disagreement with other

words; yet their import as connectives, copulative or disjunctive, must be

carefully observed, lest we write or speak them improperly. Example of

error: "Prepositions are \_generally set before\_ nouns \_and\_

pronouns."--\_Wilbur's Gram.\_, p. 20. Here \_and\_ should be \_or\_; because,

although a preposition usually governs a noun \_or\_ a pronoun, it seldom

governs both at once. And besides, the assertion above seems very naturally

to mean, that nouns and pronouns \_are generally preceded\_ by

prepositions--as gross an error as dullness could invent! L. Murray also

says of prepositions: "They are, \_for the most\_ part, put before nouns

\_and\_ pronouns."--\_Gram.\_, p. 117. So Felton: "They generally stand before

nouns \_and\_ pronouns."--\_Analytic and Prac. Gram.\_, p. 61. The blunder

however came originally from Lowth, and out of the following admirable

enigma: "Prepositions, \_standing by themselves in construction\_, are put

before nouns \_and\_ pronouns; \_and\_ sometimes after verbs; but \_in this sort

of composition\_ they are \_chiefly prefixed\_ to verbs: as, \_to outgo, to

overcome\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 66.

OBS. 8.--The opposition suggested by the disjunctive particle \_or\_, is

sometimes merely nominal, or verbal: as, "That object is a triangle, \_or\_

figure contained under three right lines."--\_Harris\_. "So if we say, that

figure is a sphere, \_or\_ a globe, \_or\_ a ball."--\_Id., Hermes\_, p. 258. In

these cases, the disjunction consists in nothing but an alternative of

words; for the terms connected describe or name the same thing. For this

sense of \_or\_, the Latins had a peculiar particle, \_sive\_, which they

called \_Subdisjunctiva\_, a \_Subdisjunctive\_: as, "Alexander \_sive\_ Paris;

Mars \_sive\_ Mavors."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 258. In English, the

conjunction \_or\_ is very frequently equivocal: as, "They were both more

ancient than Zoroaster \_or\_ Zerdusht."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 250;

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 297. Here, if the reader does not happen to know that

\_Zoroaster\_ and \_Zerdusht\_ mean the same person, he will be very likely to

mistake the sense. To avoid this ambiguity, we substitute, (in judicial

proceedings,) the Latin adverb \_alias, otherwise\_; using it as a

conjunction subdisjunctive, in lieu of \_or\_, or the Latin \_sive\_: as,

"Alexander, \_alias\_ Ellick."--"Simson, \_alias\_ Smith, \_alias\_

Baker."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS IX.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Ninth Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the\_ ARTICLES, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, PARTICIPLES, ADVERBS,

\_and\_ CONJUNCTIONS.

\_The definitions to be given in the Ninth Praxis, are two for an article,

six for a noun, three for an adjective, six for a pronoun, seven for a verb

finite, five for an infinitive, two for a participle, two (and sometimes

three) for an adverb, two for a conjunction,--and one for a preposition, or

an interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"If thou hast done a good deed, boast not of it."--\_Maxims\_.

\_If\_ is a copulative conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to

connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of

the terms so connected. 2. A copulative conjunction is a conjunction that

denotes an addition, a cause, a consequence, or a supposition.

\_Thou\_ is a personal pronoun, of the second person, singular number,

masculine gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead

of a noun. 2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of

what person it is. 3. The second person is that which denotes the hearer,

or the person addressed. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but

one. 5. The masculine gender is that which denotes persons or animals of

the male kind. 6. The nominative case is that form or state of a noun or

pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a finite verb.

\_Hast done\_ is an irregular active-transitive verb, from \_do, did, doing,

done\_; found in the indicative mood, perfect tense, second person, and

singular number. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to act\_ or \_to

be acted upon\_. 2. An irregular verb is a verb that does not form the

preterit and the perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. An

active-transitive verb is a verb that expresses an action which has some

person or thing for its object. 4. The indicative mood is that form of the

verb, which simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question. 5.

The perfect tense is that which expresses what has taken place, within some

period of time not yet fully past. 6. The second person is that which

denotes the hearer, or the person addressed. 7. The singular number is that

which denotes but one.

\_A\_ is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The indefinite

article is \_an\_ or \_a\_, which denotes one thing of a kind, but not any

particular one.

\_Good\_ is a common adjective, of the positive degree; compared irregularly,

\_good, better, best\_. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun or pronoun,

and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any ordinary

epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The positive degree

is that which is expressed by the adjective in its simple form.

\_Deed\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form

or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb,

participle or preposition.

\_Boast\_ is a regular active-intransitive verb, from \_boast, boasted,

boasting, boasted\_; found in the imperative mood, present tense, second

person, and singular number. 1. A verb is a word that signifies \_to be, to

act\_ or \_to be acted upon\_. 2. A regular verb is a verb that forms the

preterit and the perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. An

active-intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action which has no

person or thing for its object. 4. The imperative mood is that form of the

verb, which is used in commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting. 5.

The present tense is that which expresses what now exists, or is taking

place. 6. The second person is that which denotes the hearer, or the person

addressed. 7. The singular number is that which denotes but one.

\_Not\_ is an adverb or manner, expressing negation. 1. An adverb is a word

added to a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and

generally expresses time, place, degree, or manner. 2. Adverbs of manner

are those which answer to the question, \_How?\_ or, by affirming, denying,

or doubting, show \_how\_ a subject is regarded. \_Of\_ is a preposition. 1. A

preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things or

thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_It\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun.

2. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person

it is. 3. The third person is that which denotes the person or thing merely

spoken of. 4. The singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The

neuter gender is that which denotes things that are neither male nor

female. 6. The objective case is that form or state of a noun or pronoun

which usually denotes the object of a verb, participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"In all gratifications, disgust ever lies nearest to the highest pleasures;

and therefore let us not marvel, if this is peculiarly the case in

eloquence. By glancing at either poets or orators, we may easily satisfy

ourselves, that neither a poem nor an oration which aims continually at

what is fine, showy, and sparkling, can please us long. Wherefore, though

we may wish for the frequent praise of having expressed ourselves well and

properly, we should not covet repeated applause for being bright and

splendid."--CICERO, \_de Oratore\_.

"The foundation of eloquence, as well as of every other high attainment, is

practical wisdom. For it happens in oratory, as in life, that nothing is

more difficult, than to discern what is proper and becoming. Through lack

of such discernment, gross faults are very often committed. For neither to

all ranks, fortunes, and ages, nor to every time, place, and auditory, can

the same style either of language or of sentiment be adapted. In every part

of a discourse, as in every part of life, we must consider what is suitable

and decent; and this must be determined with reference both to the matter

in question, and to the personal character of those who speak and those who

hear."--CICERO, \_Orator ad Brutum\_.

"So spake th' Omnipotent, and with his words

All seem'd well pleas'd; all seem'd, but were not all."--\_Milton\_.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"A square, though not more regular than a hexagon or an octagon, is more

beautiful than either: for what reason, but that a square is more simple,

and the attention is less divided?"--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 175.

"We see the material universe in motion; but matter is inert; and, so far

as we know, nothing can move it but mind: therefore God is a spirit. We do

not mean that his nature is the same as that of our soul; for it is

infinitely more excellent. But we mean, that he possesses intelligence and

active power in supreme perfection; and, as these qualities do not belong

to matter, which is neither active nor intelligent, we must refer them to

that which is not matter, but mind."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, p. 210.

"Men are generally permitted to publish books, and contradict others, and

even themselves, as they please, with as little danger of being confuted,

as of being understood."--\_Boyle\_.

"Common reports, if ridiculous rather than dangerous, are best refuted by

neglect."--\_Kames's Thinking\_, p. 76. "No man is so foolish, but that he

may give good counsel at a time; no man so wise, but he may err, if he take

no counsel but his own."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97.

"Young heads are giddy, and young hearts are warm,

And make mistakes for manhood to reform."--\_Cowper\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"The Nouns denote substances, and those either natural, artificial, or

abstract. They moreover denote things either general, or special, or

particular. The Pronouns, their substitutes, are either prepositive, or

subjunctive."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 85.

"In a thought, generally speaking, there is at least one capital object

considered as acting or as suffering. This object is expressed by a

substantive noun: its action is expressed by an active verb; and the thing

affected by the action is expressed by an other substantive noun: its

suffering, or passive state, is expressed by a passive verb; and the thing

that acts upon it, by a substantive noun. Beside these, which are the

capital parts of a sentence, or period, there are generally underparts;

each of the substantives, as well as the verb, may be qualified: time,

place, purpose, motive, means, instrument, and a thousand other

circumstances, may be necessary to complete the thought."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, ii, 34.

"Yet those whom pride and dullness join to blind,

To narrow cares and narrow space confined,

Though with big titles each his fellow greets,

Are but to wits, as scavengers to streets."--\_Mallet\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING CONJUNCTIONS.

"A Verb is so called from the Latin \_verbum\_, or \_word.\_"--\_Bucke's

Classical Gram.\_, p. 56.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the conjunction \_or\_, connecting \_verbum\_

and \_word\_, supposes the latter to be \_Latin\_. But, according to

Observation 7th, on the Classes of Conjunctions, "The import of

connectives, copulative or disjunctive, must be carefully observed, lest we

write or speak them improperly." In this instance, \_or\_ should be changed

to \_a\_; thus, "A \_Verb\_ is so called from the Latin \_verbum, a word\_" that

is, "which means, \_a word\_."]

"References are often marked by letters and figures."--\_Gould's Adam's

Gram.\_, p. 283. (1.) "A Conjunction is a word which joins words and

sentences together."--\_Lennie's E. Gram.\_, p. 51; \_Bullions's\_, 70;

\_Brace's\_, 57. (2.) "A conjunction is used to connect words and sentences

together."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 37. (3.) "A conjunction is used to

connect words and sentences."--\_Maunders Gram.\_, p. 1. (4.) "Conjunctions

are words used to join words and sentences."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 3. (5.)

"A Conjunction is a word used to connect words and sentences."--

\_M'Culloch's Gram.\_, p. 36; \_Hart's\_, 92; \_Day's\_, 10. (6.) "A Conjunction

joins words and sentences together."--\_Mackintosh's Gram.\_, p. 115;

\_Hiley's\_, 10 and 53. (7.) "The Conjunction joins words and sentences

together."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 2d Edition, p. 28. (8.) "Conjunctions

connect words and sentences to each other."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 35. (9.)

"Conjunctions connect words and sentences."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 80;

\_Wells's\_, 1st Ed., 159 and 168. (10.) "The conjunction is a part of speech

used to connect words and sentences."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 49. (11.)

"A conjunction is a word used to connect words and sentences together."--

\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §329. (12.) "Connectives are words which unite words

and sentences in construction."--\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 123;

\_Improved Gram.\_, 81. "English Grammar is miserably taught in our district

schools; the teachers know but little or nothing about it."--\_Taylor's

District School\_, p. 48. "Least, instead of preventing, you draw on

Diseases."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 40. "The definite article \_the\_ is

frequently applied to adverbs in the comparative and superlative

degree."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 33; \_Ingersoll's\_, 33; \_Lennie's\_, 6;

\_Bullions's\_, 8; \_Fisk's\_, 53, and others. "When nouns naturally neuter are

converted into masculine and feminine."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 38.

"This form of the perfect tense represents an action completely past, and

often at no great distance, but not specified."--\_Ib.\_, p. 74. "The

Conjunction Copulative serves to connect or to continue a sentence, by

expressing an addition, a supposition, a cause, &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "The

Conjunction Disjunctive serves, not only to connect and continue the

sentence, but also to express opposition of meaning in different

degrees."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "Whether we open the volumes of our divines,

philosophers, historians, or artists, we shall find that they abound with

all the terms necessary to communicate their observations and

discoveries."--\_Ib.\_, p. 138. "When a disjunctive occurs between a singular

noun, or pronoun, and a plural one, the verb is made to agree with the

plural noun and pronoun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 152: \_R. G. Smith, Alger, Gomly,

Merchant, Picket, et al.\_ "Pronouns must always agree with their

antecedents, and the nouns for which they stand, in gender and

number."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 154. "Verbs neuter do not act upon, or

govern, nouns and pronouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 179. "And the auxiliary both of the

present and past imperfect times."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "If this rule should not

appear to apply to every example, which has been produced, nor to others

which might be adduced."--\_Ib.\_, p. 216. "An emphatical pause is made,

after something has been said of peculiar moment, and on which we desire to

fix the hearer's attention."--\_Ib.\_, p. 248; \_Hart's Gram.\_, 175. "An

imperfect phrase contains no assertion, or does not amount to a proposition

or sentence."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 267. "The word was in the mouth of

every one, but for all that, the subject may still be a secret."--\_Ib.\_, p.

213. "A word it was in the mouth of every one, but for all that, as to its

precise and definite idea, this may still be a secret."--\_Harris's Three

Treatises\_, p. 5. "It cannot be otherwise, in regard that the French

prosody differs from that of every other country in Europe."--\_Smollett's

Voltaire\_, ix, 306. "So gradually as to allow its being engrafted on a

subtonic."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 255. "Where the Chelsea or Maiden

bridges now are."--\_Judge Parker\_. "Adverbs are words joined to verbs,

participles, adjectives, and other adverbs."--\_Smith's Productive Gram.\_,

p. 92. "I could not have told you, who the hermit was, nor on what mountain

he lived."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 32. "\_Am\_, or \_be\_ (for they are

the same) naturally, or in themselves signify \_being\_."--\_Brightland's

Gram.\_, p. 113. "Words are distinct sounds, by which we express our

thoughts and ideas."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 13. "His fears will detect

him, but he shall not escape."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 64. "\_Whose\_ is equally

applicable to persons or things."--WEBSTER \_in Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 95.

"One negative destroys another, or is equivalent to an affirmative."--

\_Bullions, Eng. Gram.\_, p. 118.

"No sooner does he peep into

The world, but he has done his do."--\_Hudibras\_.

CHAPTER X.--PREPOSITIONS.

A Preposition is a word used to express some relation of different things

or thoughts to each other, and is generally placed before a noun or a

pronoun: as, "The paper lies \_before\_ me \_on\_ the desk."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The relations of things to things in nature, or of words to words

in discourse, are infinite in number, if not also in variety. But just

classification may make even infinites the subjects of sure science. Every

\_relation\_ of course implies more objects, and more terms, than one; for

any one thing, considered merely in itself, is taken independently,

abstractly, irrelatively, as if it had no relation or dependence. In all

correct language, the grammatical relation of the \_words\_ corresponds

exactly to the relation of the \_things\_ or \_ideas\_ expressed; for the

relation of words, is their dependence, or connexion, \_according to the

sense.\_ This relation is oftentimes immediate, as of one word to an other,

without the intervention of a preposition; but it is seldom, if ever,

reciprocally equal; because dependence implies subordination; and mere

adjunction is a sort of inferiority.

OBS. 2.--To a preposition, the \_prior\_ or \_antecedent\_ term may be a noun,

an adjective, a pronoun, a verb, a participle, or an adverb; and the

\_subsequent\_ or \_governed\_ term may be a noun, a pronoun, a pronominal

adjective, an infinitive verb, or a participle. In some instances, also, as

in the phrases, \_in vain, on high, at once, till now, for ever, by how

much, until then, from thence, from above\_, we find adjectives used

elliptically, and adverbs substantively, after the preposition. But, in

phrases of an adverbial character, what is elsewhere a preposition often

becomes an adverb. Now, if prepositions are concerned in expressing the

various relations of so many of the different parts of speech, multiplied,

as these relations must be, by that endless variety of combinations which

may be given to the terms; and if the sense of the writer or speaker is

necessarily mistaken, as often as any of these relations are misunderstood,

or their terms misconceived; how shall we estimate the importance of a

right explanation, and a right use, of this part of speech?

OBS. 3.--The grammarian whom Lowth compliments, as excelling all others, in

"acuteness of investigation, perspicuity of explication, and elegance of

method;" and as surpassing all but Aristotle, in the beauty and perfectness

of his philological analysis; commences his chapter on conjunctions in the

following manner: "Connectives are the subject of what follows; which,

\_according\_ as they connect \_either Sentences or Words\_, are called by the

different \_Names\_ of \_Conjunctions\_ OR \_Prepositions.\_ Of these Names, that

of the Preposition is taken from a \_mere accident\_, as \_it\_ commonly stands

in connection before \_the Part, which it connects.\_ The name of the

Conjunction, as is evident, has reference to its essential character. Of

these two we shall consider the Conjunction \_first\_, because it connects,

\_not Words\_, but Sentences."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 237.

OBS. 4.--In point of order, it is not amiss to treat conjunctions before

prepositions; though this is not the method of Lowth, or of Murray. But, to

any one who is well acquainted with these two parts of speech, the

foregoing passage cannot but appear, in three sentences out of the four,

both defective in style and erroneous in doctrine. It is true, that

conjunctions generally connect sentences, and that prepositions as

generally express relations between particular words: but it is true also,

that conjunctions \_often\_ connect words only; and that prepositions, by

governing antecedents, relatives, or even personal pronouns, may serve to

subjoin sentences to sentences, as well as to determine the relation and

construction of the particular words which they govern. Example: "The path

seems now plain and even, \_but\_ there are asperities and pitfalls, \_over

which\_ Religion only can conduct you."--\_Dr. Johnson.\_ Here are three

simple sentences, which are made members of one compound sentence, by means

of \_but\_ and \_over which\_; while two of these members, clauses, or

subdivisions, contain particular words connected by \_and.\_

OBS. 5.--In one respect, the preposition is the \_simplest\_ of all the parts

of speech: in our common schemes of grammar, it has neither classes nor

modifications. Every connective word that governs an object after it, is

called a preposition, \_because it does so\_; and in etymological parsing, to

name the preposition as such, and define the name, is, perhaps, all that is

necessary. But in syntactical parsing, in which we are to omit the

definitions, and state the construction, we ought to explain what terms the

preposition connects, and to give a rule adapted to this office of the

particle. It is a palpable defect in nearly all our grammars, that their

syntax contains NO SUCH RULE. "Prepositions govern the objective case," is

a rule for \_the objective case\_, and not for the syntax of \_prepositions.\_

"Prepositions show the relations of words, and of the things or thoughts

expressed by them," is the principle for the latter; a principle which we

cannot neglect, without a shameful lameness in our interpretation;--that

is, when we pretend to parse syntactically.

OBS. 6.--Prepositions and their

objects very often precede the words on which they depend, and sometimes at

a great distance. Of this we have an example, at the opening of Milton's

Paradise Lost; where "\_Of\_," the first word, depends upon "\_Sing\_," in the

sixth line below; for the meaning is--"\_Sing of man's first disobedience\_,"

&c. To find the terms of the relation, is to find the \_meaning\_ of the

passage; a very useful exercise, provided the words have a meaning which is

worth knowing. The following text has for centuries afforded ground of

dispute, because it is doubtful in the original, as well as in many of the

versions, whether the preposition \_in\_ (i. e., "\_in the regeneration\_")

refers back to \_have followed\_, or forward to the last verb \_shall sit\_:

"Verily I say unto you that ye who have followed me, \_in\_ the regeneration,

when the Son of man shall sit \_in\_ the throne of his glory, ye also shall

sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel."--\_Matt.\_,

xix, 28. The second \_in\_ is manifestly wrong: the Greek word is [Greek:

epi], \_on\_ or \_upon\_; i. e., "\_upon\_ the throne of his glory."

OBS. 7.--The prepositions have, from their own nature, or from custom, such

an \_adaptation\_ to particular terms and relations, that they can seldom be

used one for an other without manifest impropriety. Example of error:

"Proper seasons should be allotted \_for\_ retirement."--\_Murray's Key\_, p.

173. We do not say "\_allotted for\_," but "\_allotted to\_:" hence \_for\_ is

either wrong in itself or misplaced. Such errors always vex an intelligent

reader. He sees the terms mismatched, the intended connection doubtful, the

sense obscured, and wishes the author could have valued his own meaning

enough to have made it intelligible;--that is, (to speak technically,)

enough to have made it a certain clew to his syntax. We can neither parse

nor correct what we do not understand. Did the writer mean, "Proper seasons

should be \_allotted to\_ retirement?"--or, "Proper \_seasons for\_ retirement

should be allotted?"--or, "Seasons \_proper for\_ retirement should be

alloted?" [sic--KTH] Every expression is incorrigibly bad, the meaning of

which cannot be known. Expression? Nay, expression it is not, but only a

mock utterance or an abortive attempt at expression.

OBS. 8.--Harris observes, in substance, though in other words, that almost

all the prepositions were originally formed to denote relations of place;

that this class of relations is primary, being that which natural bodies

maintain at all times one to an other; that in the continuity of place

these bodies form the universe, or visible whole; that we have some

prepositions to denote the \_contiguous\_ relation of bodies, and others for

the \_detached\_ relation; and that both have, by \_degrees\_, been extended

from local relations, to the relations of subjects incorporeal. He appears

also to assume, that, in such examples as the following,--"Caius \_walketh

with\_ a staff; "--"The statue \_stood upon\_ a pedestal;"--"The river \_ran

over\_ a sand;"--"He \_is going\_ to Turkey;"--"The sun \_is risen\_ above the

hills;"--"These figs \_came from\_ Turkey;"--the antecedent term of the

relation is not the verb, but the noun or pronoun before it. See \_Hermes\_,

pp. 266 and 267. Now the true antecedent is, unquestionably, that word

which, in the order of the sense, the preposition should immediately

follow: and a verb, a participle, or an adjective, may sustain this

relation, just as well as a substantive. "\_The man spoke of colour\_," does

not mean, "\_The man of colour spoke\_;" nor does, "\_The member from Delaware

replied\_," mean, "\_The member replied from Delaware\_"

OBS. 9.--To make this matter more clear, it may be proper to observe

further, that what I call the order of the sense, is not always that order

of the words which is fittest to express the sense of a whole period; and

that the true antecedent is that word to which the preposition, and its

object would naturally be subjoined, were there nothing to interfere with

such an arrangement. In practice it often happens, that the preposition and

its object cannot be placed immediately after the word on which they

depend, and which they would naturally follow. For example: "She hates the

means \_by which\_ she lives." That is, "She hates the means which she \_lives

by\_." Here we cannot say, "She hates the means she \_lives by which\_;" and

yet, in regard to the preposition \_by\_, this is really the order of the

sense. Again: "Though thou shouldest bray a fool \_in a mortar among wheat

with a pestle\_, yet will not his foolishness depart from him."--\_Prov.\_,

xxvii, 23. Here is no transposition to affect our understanding of the

prepositions, yet there is a liability to error, because the words which

immediately precede some of them, are not their true antecedents: the text

does not really speak of "\_a mortar among wheat\_" or of "\_wheat with a

pestle\_." To what then are the \_mortar\_, the \_wheat\_, and the \_pestle\_, to

be mentally subjoined? If all of them, to any one thing, it must be to the

\_action\_ suggested by the verb \_bray\_, and not to its object \_fool\_; for

the text does not speak of "\_a fool with a pestle\_," though it does \_seem\_

to speak of "\_a fool in a mortar\_, and \_among wheat\_." Indeed, in this

instance, as in many others, the verb and its object are so closely

associated that it makes but little difference in regard to the sense,

whether you take both of them together, or either of them separately, as

the antecedent to the preposition. But, as the instrument of an action is

with the agent rather than with the object, if you will have the

substantives alone for antecedents, the natural order of the sense must be

supposed to be this: "Though \_thou with\_ a pestle shouldest bray a, \_fool

in\_ a mortar [and] \_among\_ wheat, yet will not his \_foolishness from\_ him

depart." This gives to each of the prepositions an antecedent different

from that which I should assign. Sanborn observes, "There seem to be \_two

kinds\_ of relation expressed by prepositions,--an \_existing\_ and a

\_connecting\_ relation."--\_Analyt. Gram.\_, p. 225. The latter, he adds, "\_is

the most important\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 226. But it is the former that admits

nothing but \_nouns\_ for antecedents. Others besides Harris may have adopted

this notion, but I have never been one of the number, though a certain

author scruples not to charge the error upon me. See \_O. B Peirce's Gram.\_,

p. 165.

OBS. 10.--It is a very common error among grammarians, and the source of

innumerable discrepancies in doctrine, as well as one of the chief means of

maintaining their interminable disputes, that they suppose \_ellipses\_ at

their own pleasure, and supply in every given instance just what words

their fancies may suggest. In this work, I adopt for myself, and also

recommend to others, the contrary course of avoiding on all occasions the

supposition of any \_needless\_ ellipses. Not only may the same preposition

govern more than one object, but there may also be more than one antecedent

word, bearing a joint relation to that which is governed by the

preposition. (1.) Examples of joint objects: "There is an inseparable

connection BETWEEN \_piety and virtue\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 171. "In

the conduct of Parmenio, a mixture OF \_wisdom and folly\_ was very

conspicuous."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178. "True happiness is an enemy TO \_pomp and

noise\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. (2.) Examples of joint antecedents: "In unity

consist the \_welfare and security\_ OF every society."--\_Ib.\_, p. 182. "It

is our duty to be \_just and kind\_ TO our fellow--creatures, and to be

\_pious and faithful\_ TO Him that made us."--\_Ib.\_, p. 181. If the author

did not mean to speak of being \_pious to God\_ as well as \_faithful to Him\_,

he has written incorrectly: a comma after \_pious\_, would alter both the

sense and the construction. So the text, "For I am meek, and lowly in

heart," is commonly perverted in our Bibles, for want of a comma after

\_meek\_. The Saviour did not say, he was \_meek in heart\_: the Greek may be

\_very literally\_ rendered thus: "For gentle am I, and humble in heart."

OBS. 11.--Many writers seem to suppose, that no preposition can govern more

than one object. Thus L. Murray, and his followers: "The ellipsis of the

\_preposition\_, as well as of the verb, is seen in the following instances:

'He went into the abbeys, halls, and public buildings;' that is, 'He went

into the abbeys, he went into the halls, and he went into the public

buildings.'--'He also went through all the streets, and lanes of the city;'

that is, 'Through all the streets, and through all the lanes,'

&c."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 219. See the same interpretations in

\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 155; \_Merchant's\_, 100; \_Picket's\_, 211; \_Alger's\_,

73; \_Fish's\_, 147; \_Guy's\_, 91; \_Adams's\_, 82; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 183;

\_Hamlin's\_, 105; \_Putnam's\_, 139; \_Weld's\_, 292. Now it is plain, that in

neither of these examples is there any such ellipsis at all. Of the three

prepositions, the first governs three nouns; the second, two; and the

third, one only. But the last, (which is \_of\_,) has two antecedents,

\_streets\_ and \_lanes\_, the comma after \_streets\_ being wrong; for the

author does not speak of all the streets in the world, but of \_all the

streets and lanes\_ of a particular city. Dr. Ash has the same example

without the comma, and supposes it only an ellipsis of the preposition

\_through\_, and even that supposition is absurd. He also furnished the

former example, to show an ellipsis, not of the verb \_went\_, but only of

the preposition \_into\_; and in this too he was utterly wrong. See \_Ash's

Gram.\_, p. 100. Bicknell also, whose grammar appeared five years before

Murray's, confessedly copied the same examples from Ash; and repeated, not

the verb and its nominative, but only the prepositions \_through\_ and

\_into\_, agreeably to Ash's erroneous notion. See his \_Grammatical Wreath\_,

Part i, p. 124. Again the principles of Murray's supposed ellipses, are as

inconsistent with each other, as they are severally absurd. Had the author

explained the second example according to his notion of the first, he

should have made it to mean, '\_He also went\_ through all the streets \_of

the city\_, and \_he also went\_ through all the lanes \_of the city\_.' What a

pretty idea is this for a principle of grammar! And what a multitude of

admirers are pretending to carry it out in parsing! One of the latest

writers on grammar says, that, "\_Between him and me\_" signifies, "\_Between

him, and between me\_!"--\_Wright's Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 206. And an

other absurdly resolves a simple sentence into a compound one, thus:

"'There was a difficulty between John, and his brother.' That is, there was

a difficulty between John, and \_there was a difficulty between\_ his

brother."--\_James Brown's English Syntax\_, p. 127; and again, p. 130.

OBS. 12.--Two prepositions are not unfrequently connected by a conjunction,

and that for different purposes, thus: (1.) To express two different

relations at once; as, "The picture of my travels \_in and around\_

Michigan."--\_Society in America\_, i, 231. (2.) To suggest an alternative in

the relation affirmed; as, "The action will be fully accomplished \_at or

before\_ the time."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 72. Again: "The First Future Tense

represents the action as yet to come, \_either with or without\_ respect to

the precise time."--\_Ib.\_; and \_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 23. \_With\_ and

\_without\_ being direct opposites, this alternative is a thing of course,

and the phrase is an idle truism. (3.) To express two relations so as to

affirm the one and deny the other; as, "Captain, yourself are the fittest

to live and reign not \_over\_, but next and immediately \_under\_ the

people."--\_Dryden\_. Here, perhaps, "\_the people\_" may be understood after

\_over\_. (4.) To suggest a mere alternative of words; as, "NEGATIVELY, adv.

\_With or by\_ denial."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ (5.) To add a similar word, for

aid or force; as, "Hence adverbs of time were necessary, \_over and above\_

the tenses."--See \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 116. "To take effect \_from and

after\_ the first day of May."--\_Newspaper\_.

OBS. 13.--In some instances, two prepositions come directly together, so as

jointly to express a sort of compound relation between what precedes the

one and what follows the other: as, "And they shall sever the wicked \_from

among\_ the just."--\_Matt.\_, xiii, 49. "Moses brought out all the rods \_from

before\_ the Lord."--\_Numb.\_, xvii, 9. "Come out \_from among\_ them."--\_2

Cor.\_, vi, 17. "From Judea, and \_from beyond\_ Jordan."--\_Matt\_. iv, 25.

"Nor a lawgiver \_from between\_ his feet."--\_Gen.\_, xlix, 10. Thus the

preposition \_from\_, being itself adapted to the ideas of motion and

separation, easily coincides with any preposition of place, to express this

sort of relation; the terms however have a limited application, being used

only between \_a verb\_ and \_a noun\_, because the relation itself is between

\_motion\_ and \_the place\_ of its beginning: as, "The sand \_slided from

beneath\_ my feet."--\_Dr. Johnson\_. In this manner, we may form \_complex

prepositions\_ beginning with \_from\_, to the number \_of about\_ thirty; as,

\_from amidst, from around, from before, from behind\_, &c. Besides these,

there are several others, of a more questionable character, which are

sometimes referred to the same class; as, \_according to, as to, as for,

because of, instead of, off of, out of, over against\_, and \_round about\_.

Most or all of these are sometimes resolved in a different way, upon the

assumption that the former word is an adverb; yet we occasionally find some

of them compounded by the hyphen: as, "Pompey's lieutenants, Afranius and

Petreius, who lay \_over-against\_ him, decamp suddenly."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_,

Argument to B. iv. But the common fashion is, to write them separately; as,

"One thing is set \_over against\_ an other."--\_Bible\_.

OBS. 14.--It is not easy to fix a principle by which prepositions may in

all cases be distinguished from adverbs. The latter, we say, do not govern

the objective case; and if we add, that the former do \_severally\_ require

some object after them, it is clear that any word which precedes a

preposition, must needs be something else than a preposition. But this

destroys all the doctrine of the preceding paragraph, and admits of no such

thing as a \_complex preposition\_; whereas that doctrine is acknowledged, to

some extent or other, by every one of our grammarians, not excepting even

those whose counter-assertions leave no room for it. Under these

circumstances, I see no better way, than to refer the student to the

definitions of these parts of speech, to exhibit examples in all needful

variety, and then let him judge for himself what disposition ought to be

made of those words which different grammarians parse differently.

OBS. 15.--If our prepositions were to be divided into classes, the most

useful distinction would be, to divide them into \_Single\_ and \_Double\_. The

distinction which some writers make, who divide them into "\_Separable\_ and

\_Inseparable\_," is of no use at all in parsing, because the latter are mere

syllables; and the idea of S. R. Hall, who divides them into "\_Possessive\_

and \_Relative\_," is positively absurd; for he can show us only \_one\_ of the

former kind, and that one, (the word \_of\_,) is not always such. A \_Double

Preposition\_, if such a thing is admissible, is one that consists of two

words which in syntactical parsing must be taken together, because they

jointly express the relation between two other terms; as, "The waters were

dried up \_from off\_ the earth."--\_Gen.\_, viii, 13. "The clergy kept this

charge \_from off\_ us."--\_Leslie, on Tithes\_, p. 221. "Confidence in an

unfaithful man in time of trouble, is like a broken tooth, and a foot \_out

of\_ joint."--\_Prov.\_, xxv, 19. "The beam \_out of\_ the timber shall answer

it."--\_Hab.\_, ii, 11. \_Off\_ and \_out\_ are most commonly adverbs, but

neither of them can be called an adverb here.

OBS. 16.--Again, if \_according to\_ or \_as to\_ is a preposition, then is

\_according\_ or \_as\_ a preposition also, although it does not of itself

govern the objective case. \_As\_, thus used, is called a conjunction by

some, an adverb by others. Dr. Webster considers \_according\_ to be always a

participle, and expressly says, "It is never a preposition."--\_Octavo

Dict.\_ The following is an instance in which, if it is not a preposition,

it is a participle: "This is a construction \_not according\_ to the rules of

grammar."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 22. But \_according to\_ and

\_contrary to\_ are expressed in Latin and Greek by single prepositions; and

if \_to\_ alone is the preposition in English, then both \_according\_ and

\_contrary\_ must, in many instances, be \_adverbs\_. Example: "For dost thou

sit as judging me \_according to\_ the law, and \_contrary\_ to law command me

to be smitten?" (See the Greek of Acts, xxiii, 3.) \_Contrary\_, though

literally an adjective, is often made either an adverb, or a part of a

complex preposition, unless the grammarians are generally in error

respecting it: as, "Ha dares not act \_contrary to\_ his instructions."--

\_Murray's Key\_, p. 179.

OBS. 17.--J. W. Wright, with some appearance of analogy on his side, but

none of usage, everywhere adds \_ly\_ to the questionable word \_according\_;

as, "We are usually estimated \_accordingly to\_ our company."--

\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 127. "\_Accordingly to\_ the forms in which they

are employed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 137. "\_Accordingly to\_ the above principles, the

\_adjective\_ ACCORDING (or \_agreeable\_) is frequently, but improperly,

substituted for the adverb ACCORDINGLY (or \_agreeably\_.)"--\_Ib.\_, p. 145.

The word \_contrary\_ he does not notice; but, on the same principle, he

would doubtless say, "He dares not act \_contrarily\_ to his instructions."

We say indeed, "He acted \_agreeably\_ to his instructions;"--and not, "He

acted \_agreeable\_ to his instructions." It must also be admitted, that the

adverbs \_accordingly\_ and \_contrarily\_ are both of them good English words.

If these were adopted, where the character of \_according\_ and \_contrary\_ is

disputable, there would indeed be no longer any occasion to call these

latter either adverbs or prepositions. But the fact is, that \_no good

writers have yet preferred them\_, in such phrases; and the adverbial ending

\_ly\_ gives an additional syllable to a word that seems already quite too

long.

OBS. 18.--\_Instead\_ is reckoned an adverb by some, a preposition by others;

and a few write \_instead-of\_ with a needless hyphen. The best way of

settling the grammatical question respecting this term, is, to write the

noun \_stead\_ as a separate word, governed by \_in\_. Bating the respect that

is due to anomalous usage, there would be more propriety in compounding \_in

quest of, in lieu of\_, and many similar phrases. For \_stead\_ is not always

followed by \_of\_, nor always preceded by \_in\_, nor always made part of a

compound. We say, \_in our stead, in your stead, in their stead\_, &c.; but

\_lieu\_, which has the same meaning as \_stead\_, is much more limited in

construction. Examples: "In \_the stead\_ of sinners, He, a divine and human

person, suffered."--\_Barnes's Notes\_. "Christ suffered in \_the place\_ and

\_stead\_ of sinners."--\_Ib.\_ "\_For\_, in its primary sense, is \_pro, loco

alterius\_, in \_the stead\_ or \_place\_ of \_another\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p.

65.

"If it may stand him more in \_stead\_ to lie."

--\_Milt., P. L.\_, B. i, l. 473.

"But here thy sword can do thee little \_stead\_."

--\_Id., Comus\_, l. 611.

OBS. 19.--\_From forth\_ and \_from out\_ are two poetical phrases, apparently

synonymous, in which there is a fanciful transposition of the terms, and

perhaps a change of \_forth\_ and \_out\_ from adverbs to prepositions. Each

phrase is equivalent in meaning to \_out of\_ or \_out from. Forth\_, under

other circumstances, is never a preposition; though \_out\_, perhaps, may be.

We speak as familiarly of going \_out doors\_, as of going \_up stairs\_, or

\_down cellar\_. Hence \_from out\_ may be parsed as a complex preposition,

though the other phrase should seem to be a mere example of hyperbaton:

"I saw \_from out\_ the wave her structures rise."--\_Byron\_.

"Peeping \_from forth\_ their alleys green."--\_Collins\_.

OBS. 20.--"\_Out of\_ and \_as to\_," says one grammarian, "are properly

prepositions, although they are double words. They may be called \_compound\_

prepositions."--\_Cooper's Gram.\_, p. 103. I have called the \_complex\_

prepositions \_double\_ rather than \_compound\_, because several of the single

prepositions are compound words; as, \_into, notwithstanding, overthwart,

throughout, upon, within, without\_. And even some of these may follow the

preposition \_from\_; as, "If he shall have removed \_from within\_ the limits

of this state." But \_in\_ and \_to, up\_ and \_on, with\_ and \_in\_, are not

always compounded when they come together, because the sense may positively

demand that the former be taken as an adverb, and the latter only as a

preposition: as, "I will come \_in to\_ him, and will sup with him."--\_Rev.\_,

iii, 20. "A statue of Venus was set \_up on\_ Mount Calvary."--\_M'Ilvaine's

Lectures\_, p. 332. "The troubles which we meet \_with in\_ the

world."--\_Blair\_. And even two prepositions may be brought together without

union or coalescence; because the object of the first one may be expressed

or understood \_before\_ it: as, "The man whom you spoke \_within\_ the

street;"--"The treatment you complain \_of on\_ this occasion;"--"The house

that you live \_in in\_ the summer;"--"Such a dress as she had \_on in\_ the

evening."

OBS. 21.--Some grammarians assume, that, "Two prepositions in immediate

succession require a noun to be \_understood\_ between them; as, 'Hard by, a

cottage chimney smokes, \_From betwixt\_ two aged oaks.'--'The mingling notes

came softened \_from below\_.'"--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 105. This author would

probably understand here--"From \_the space\_ betwixt two aged oaks;"--"came

softened from \_the region\_ below \_us\_." But he did not consider all the

examples that are included in his proposition; nor did he rightly regard

even those which he cites. The doctrine will be found a very awkward one in

practice; and an other objection to it is, that most of the ellipses which

it supposes, are entirely imaginary. If there were truth in his assumption,

the compounding of prepositions would be positively precluded. The terms

\_over-against\_ and \_round-about\_ are sometimes written with the hyphen, and

perhaps it would be well if all the complex prepositions were regularly

compounded; but, as I before suggested, such is not the present fashion of

writing them, and the general usage is not to be controlled by what any

individual may think.

OBS. 22.--Instances may, doubtless, occur, in which the object of a

preposition is suppressed by ellipsis, when an other preposition follows,

so as to bring together two that do not denote a compound relation, and do

not, in any wise, form one complex preposition. Of such suppression, the

following is an example; and, I think, a double one: "They take pronouns

\_after instead of before\_ them."--\_Fowler, E. Gram.\_, §521. This may be

interpreted to mean, and probably does mean--"They take pronouns after

\_them\_ in \_stead\_ of \_taking them\_ before them."

OBS. 23.--In some instances, the words \_in, on, of, for, to, with\_, and

others commonly reckoned prepositions, are used after infinitives or

participles, in a sort of \_adverbial\_ construction, because they do not

govern any objective; yet not exactly in the usual sense of adverbs,

because they evidently express the relation between the verb or participle

and a nominative or objective going before. Examples: "Houses are built to

live \_in\_, and not to look \_on\_; therefore let use be preferred before

uniformity, except where both may be had."--\_Ld. Kames\_. "These are not

mysteries for ordinary readers to be let \_into\_."--ADDISON: \_Joh. Dict., w.

Let.\_ "Heaven is worth dying \_for\_, though earth is not worth living

\_for\_."--\_R. Hall\_. "What! have ye not houses to eat and to drink

\_in\_?"--\_1 Cor.\_, xi, 22. This is a very peculiar idiom of our language;

and if we say, "Have ye not houses \_in which\_ to eat and to drink?" we form

\_an other\_ which is not much less so. Greek: "[Greek: Mæ gar oikias ouk

echete eis to esthiein kai pinein];" Latin: "Num enim domos non habetis ad

manducandum et bibendum?"--\_Leusden\_. "N'avez vous pas des maisons pour

manger et pour boire?"--\_French Bible\_.[315]

OBS. 24.--In OBS. 10th, of Chapter Fourth, on Adjectives, it was shown that

words of \_place\_, (such as, \_above, below, beneath, under\_, and the like,)

are sometimes set before nouns in the character of adjectives, and not of

prepositions: as, "In the \_above\_ list,"--"From the \_above\_

list."--\_Bullions', E. Gram.\_, p. 70. To the class of adjectives also,

rather than to that of adverbs, may some such words be referred, when,

without governing the objective case, they are put \_after\_ nouns to signify

place: as, "The \_way\_ of life is \_above\_ to the wise, that he may depart

from \_hell beneath\_."--\_Prov.\_, xv, 24. "Of any thing that is in \_heaven

above\_, or that is in the \_earth beneath\_."--\_Exod.\_, xx, 4.

"Say first, of \_God above\_ or \_man below\_,

What can we reason but from what we know?"--\_Pope\_.

LIST OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

The following are the principal prepositions,

arranged alphabetically: \_Aboard, about, above, across, after, against,

along, amid\_ or \_amidst, among\_ or \_amongst, around, at, athwart;--Bating,

before, behind, below, beneath, beside or besides, between\_ or \_betwixt,

beyond, by;--Concerning;--Down, during;--Ere, except, excepting;--For,

from;--In, into;--Mid\_ or \_midst;--Notwithstanding;--Of, off,[316] on, out,

over, overthwart;--Past, pending;--Regarding, respecting,

round;--Since;--Through, throughout, till, to, touching, toward\_ or

\_towards;--Under, underneath, until, unto, up, upon;--With, within,

without\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Grammarians differ considerably in their tables of the English

prepositions. Nor are they all of one opinion, concerning either the

characteristics of this part of speech, or the particular instances in

which the acknowledged properties of a preposition are to be found. Some

teach that, "Every preposition requires an \_objective case\_ after

it."--\_Lennie\_, p. 50; \_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 69. In opposition

to this, I suppose that the preposition \_to\_ may take an \_infinitive verb\_

after it; that \_about\_ also may be a preposition, in the phrase, "\_about to

write\_;" that \_about, above, after, against, by, for, from, in, of\_, and

some other prepositions, may govern \_participles\_, as such; (i. e. without

making them nouns, or cases;) and, lastly, that after a preposition an

\_adverb\_ is sometimes construed substantively, and yet is indeclinable; as,

\_for once, from afar, from above, at unawares\_.

OBS. 2.--The writers just quoted, proceed to say: "When a \_preposition does

not govern\_ an objective case, it becomes an adverb; as, 'He rides

\_about\_.' But in such phrases as, \_cast up, hold out, fall on\_, the words

\_up, out\_, and \_on\_, must be considered as \_a part\_ of the \_verb\_, rather

than as prepositions or adverbs."--\_Lennie's Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 50;

\_Bullions's\_, p. 59; \_his Analyt. and P. Gram.\_, p. 109. Both these

sentences are erroneous: the one, more particularly so, in expression; the

other, in doctrine. As the preposition is chiefly distinguished by its

regimen, it is absurd to speak of it as governing nothing; yet it does not

always govern the objective case, for participles and infinitives have no

cases. \_About, up, out\_, and \_on\_, as here cited, are all of them

\_adverbs\_; and so are all other particles that thus qualify verbs, without

governing any thing. L. Murray grossly errs when ha assumes that, "The

distinct component parts of such phrases as, \_to cast up, to fall on, to

bear oat, to give over, &c.\_, are \_no guide\_ to the sense of the whole."

Surely, "to cast \_up\_" is to cast \_somehow\_, though the meaning of the

phrase may be "\_to compute\_." By this author, and some others, all \_such

adverbs\_ are absurdly called \_prepositions\_, and are also as absurdly

declared to be \_parts\_ of the preceding verbs! See \_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

117; \_W. Allen's\_, 179; \_Kirkham's\_, 95; \_R. G. Smith's\_, 93; \_Fisk's\_, 86;

\_Butler's\_, 63; \_Wells's\_, 146.

OBS. 3--In comparing the different English grammars now in use, we often

find the primary distinction of the parts of speech, and every thing that

depends upon it, greatly perplexed by the \_fancied ellipses\_, and \_forced

constructions\_, to which their authors resort. Thus Kirkham: "Prepositions

are sometimes erroneously called adverbs, when their nouns are understood.

'He rides \_about\_;' that is, about the \_town, country\_, or \_something\_

else. 'She was \_near\_ [the \_act\_ or \_misfortune\_ of] falling;' 'But do not

\_after\_ [that \_time\_ or \_event\_] lay the blame on me.' 'He came \_down\_ [the

\_ascent\_] from the hill;' 'They lifted him \_up\_ [the \_ascent\_] out of the

pit.' 'The angels \_above\_;'--above \_us\_--'Above these lower \_heavens\_, to

us invisible, or dimly seen.'"--\_Gram.\_, p. 89. The errors of this passage

are almost as numerous as the words; and those to which the doctrine leads

are absolutely innumerable. That \_up\_ and \_down\_, with verbs of motion,

imply ascent and descent, as \_wisely\_ and \_foolishly\_ imply wisdom and

folly, is not to be denied; but the grammatical bathos of coming "\_down

[the ascent] from the hill" of science\_, should startle those whose faces

are directed upward! \_Downward ascent\_ is a movement worthy only of

Kirkham, and his Irish rival, Joseph W. Wright. The \_brackets\_ here used

are Kirkham's, not mine.

OBS. 4.--"Some of the \_prepositions\_," says L. Murray, "have the

\_appearance and effect\_ of conjunctions: as, '\_After\_ their prisons were

thrown open,' &c. '\_Before\_ I die;' 'They made haste to be prepared

\_against\_ their friends arrived:' but if the noun \_time\_, which is

\_understood\_, be added, they will lose their \_conjunctive form\_: as, 'After

[\_the time when\_] their prisons,' &c."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 119. Here,

\_after, before\_, and \_against\_, are neither conjunctions nor prepositions,

but conjunctive \_adverbs of time\_, referring to the verbs which follow

them, and also, when the sentences are completed, to others antecedent. The

awkward addition of "\_the time when\_," is a sheer perversion. If \_after,

before\_, and the like, can ever be adverbs, they are so here, and not

conjunctions, or prepositions.

OBS. 5.--But the great Compiler proceeds: "The \_prepositions, after,

before, above, beneath\_, and several others, sometimes \_appear to be

adverbs\_, and may be \_so considered\_: as, 'They had their reward soon

\_after\_;' 'He died not long \_before\_;' 'He dwells \_above\_;' but if the

nouns \_time\_ and \_place\_ be added, they will lose their adverbial form: as,

'He died not long \_before that time\_,' &c."--\_Ib.\_ Now, I say, when any of

the foregoing words "\_appear\_ to be adverbs," they \_are\_ adverbs, and, if

adverbs, then not prepositions. But to consider prepositions to be adverbs,

as Murray here does, or seems to do; and to suppose "the NOUNS \_time\_ AND

\_place\_" to be understood in the several examples here cited, as he also

does, or seems to do; are singly such absurdities as no grammarian should

fail to detect, and together such a knot of blunders, as ought to be

wondered at, even in the Compiler's humblest copyist. In the following

text, there is neither preposition nor ellipsis:

"Above, below, without, within, around,

Confus'd, unnumber'd multitudes are found."--\_Pope, on Fame\_.

OBS. 6.--It comports with the name and design of this work, which is a

broad synopsis of grammatical criticism, to notice here one other

absurdity; namely, the doctrine of "\_sentential nouns\_." There is something

of this in several late grammars: as, "The prepositions, after, before,

ere, since, till, and until, frequently govern \_sentential\_ nouns; and

after, before, since, notwithstanding, and some others, frequently govern a

noun or pronoun \_understood\_. A preposition governing a sentential noun,

is, by Murray and others, considered a \_conjunction\_; and a preposition

governing a noun understood, an \_adverb\_."--J. L. PARKHURST: \_in Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 123. "Example: 'He will, \_before he dies\_, sway the sceptre.'

\_He dies\_ is a sentential noun, third person, singular number; and is

governed by \_before\_; \_before he dies\_, being equivalent in meaning to

\_before his death\_."--\_Sanborn, Gram.\_, p. 176. "'\_After they had waited\_ a

long time, they departed.' After \_waiting\_."--\_Ib.\_ This last solution

supposes the phrase, "\_waiting a long time\_," or at least the participle

\_waiting\_, to be a \_noun\_; for, upon the author's principle of equivalence,

"\_they had waited\_," will otherwise be a "\_sentential\_" \_participle\_--a

thing however as good and as classical as the other!

OBS. 7.--If a preposition can ever be justly said to take a sentence for

its object, it is chiefly in certain ancient expressions, like the

following: "For \_in that\_ he died, he died unto sin once; but \_in that\_ he

liveth, he liveth unto God."--\_Rom.\_, vi, 10. "My Spirit shall not always

strive with man, \_for that\_ he also is flesh."--\_Gen.\_, vi, 3. "For, \_after

that\_, in the wisdom of God, the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased

God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe."--\_1 Cor.\_,

i, 21. Here, \_in, for\_, and \_after\_, are all followed by the word \_that\_;

which Tooke, Webster, Frazee, and some others, will have to be "a

substitute," or "pronoun," representing the sentence which follows it, and

governed by the preposition. But \_that\_, in this sense, is usually, and

perhaps more properly, reckoned a conjunction. And if we take it so, \_in,

for\_, and \_after\_, (unless the latter be an adverb,) must either be

reckoned conjunctions also, or be supposed to govern sentences. The

expressions however are little used; because "\_in that\_" is nearly

equivalent to \_as\_; "\_for that\_" can be better expressed by \_because\_; and

"\_after that\_," which is equivalent to [Greek: epeide], \_postquam\_, may

well be rendered by the term, \_seeing that\_, or \_since\_. "\_Before that\_

Philip called thee," is a similar example; but "\_that\_" is here needless,

and "\_before\_" may be parsed as a conjunctive adverb of time. I have one

example more: "But, \_besides that\_ he attempted it formerly with no

success, it is certain the Venetians keep too watchful an eye,"

&c.--\_Addison\_. This is good English, but the word "\_besides\_" if it be not

a conjunction, may as well be called an adverb, as a preposition.

OBS. 8.--There are but few words in the list of prepositions, that are not

sometimes used as being of some other part of speech. Thus \_bating,

excepting, concerning, touching, respecting, during, pending\_, and a part

of the compound \_notwithstanding\_, are literally participles; and some

writers, in opposition to general custom, refer them always to their

original class. Unlike most other prepositions, they do not refer to

\_place\_, but rather to \_action, state\_, or \_duration\_; for, even as

prepositions, they are still allied to participles. Yet to suppose them

always participles, as would Dr. Webster and some others, is impracticable.

Examples: "They speak \_concerning\_ virtue."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_,

p. 69. Here \_concerning\_ cannot be a participle, because its antecedent

term is a \_verb\_, and the meaning is, "they \_speak\_ of virtue." "They are

bound \_during life\_." that is, \_durante vitâ\_, life continuing, or, as long

as life lasts. So, "\_Notwithstanding this\_," i.e., "\_hoc non obstante\_,"

this not hindering. Here the nature of the construction seems to depend on

the order of the words. "Since he had succeeded, \_notwithstanding them\_,

peaceably to the throne."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 31. "This is a

correct English idiom, Dr. Lowth's \_criticism\_, to the contrary

\_notwithstanding\_."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 85. In the phrase,

"\_notwithstanding them\_," the former word is clearly a preposition

governing the latter; but Dr. Webster doubtless supposed the word

"\_criticism\_" to be in the nominative case, put absolute with the

participle: and so it would have been, had he written \_not withstanding\_ as

two words, like "\_non obstante\_;" but the compound word \_notwithstanding\_

is not a participle, because there is no verb \_to notwithstand\_. But

\_notwithstanding\_, when placed before a nominative, or before the

conjunction \_that\_, is a conjunction, and, as such, must be rendered in

Latin by \_tamen\_, yet, \_quamvis\_, although, or \_nihilominus\_, nevertheless.

OBS. 9.--\_For\_, when it signifies \_because\_, is a conjunction: as, "Boast

not thyself of to-morrow; \_for\_ thou knowest not what a day may bring

forth."--\_Prov.\_, xxvii, 1. \_For\_ has this meaning, and, according to Dr.

Johnson, is a conjunction, when it precedes \_that\_; as, "Yet \_for that\_ the

worst men are most ready to remove, I would wish them chosen by discretion

of wise men."--\_Spenser.\_ The phrase, as I have before suggested, is almost

obsolete; but Murray, in one place, adopts it from Dr. Beattie: "For \_that\_

those parts of the verb are not properly called tenses."--\_Octavo Gram.\_,

p. 75. How he would have parsed it, does not appear. But both words are

connectives. And, from the analogy of those terms which serve as links to

other terms, I should incline to take \_for that, in that, after that\_, and

\_besides that\_, (in which a known conjunction is put last,) as complex

conjunctions; and also, to take \_as for, as to\_, and \_because of\_, (in

which a known preposition is put last,) as complex prepositions. But there

are other regular and equivalent expressions that ought in general to be

preferred to any or all of these.

OBS. 10.--Several words besides those contained in the list above, are (or

have been) occasionally employed in English as prepositions: as, \_A\_,

(chiefly used before participles,) \_abaft, adown, afore, aloft, aloof,

alongside, anear, aneath, anent, aslant, aslope, astride, atween, atwixt,

besouth, bywest, cross, dehors, despite, inside, left-hand, maugre, minus,

onto, opposite, outside, per, plus, sans, spite, thorough, traverse,

versus, via, withal, withinside\_.

OBS. 11.--Dr. Lowth says, "The particle \_a\_ before participles, in the

phrases \_a\_ coming, \_a\_ going, \_a\_ walking, \_a\_ shooting, &c. and before

nouns, as \_a\_-bed, \_a\_-board, \_a\_-shore, \_a\_-foot, &c. seems to be \_a true

and genuine preposition\_, a little disguised by familiar use and quick

pronunciation. Dr. Wallis supposes it to be the preposition \_at\_. I rather

think it is the preposition \_on\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 65; \_Churchill's\_,

268. There is no need of supposing it to be either. It is not from \_on\_;

for in Saxon it sometimes accompanied \_on\_: as in the phrase, "\_on á

weoruld\_;" that is, "\_on to ages\_;" or, as Wickliffe rendered it, "\_into

worldis\_;" or, as our version has it, "\_for ever\_." See \_Luke\_, i, 55. This

preposition was in use long before either \_a\_ or \_an\_, as an article,

appeared in its present form in the language; and, for ought I can

discover, it may be as old as either \_on\_ or \_at\_. \_An\_, too, is found to

have had at times the sense and construction of \_in\_ or \_on\_; and this

usage is, beyond doubt, older than that which makes it an article. \_On\_,

however, was an exceedingly common preposition in Saxon, being used almost

always where we now put \_on, in, into, upon\_, or \_among\_, and sometimes,

for \_with\_ or \_by\_; so, sometimes, where \_a\_ was afterwards used: thus,

"What in the Saxon Gospel of John, is, 'Ic wylle gan \_on\_ fixoth,' is, in

the English version, 'I go \_a\_ fishing.' Chap, xxi, ver. 3." See \_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 65; \_Churchill's\_, 269. And \_a\_ is now sometimes equivalent to

\_on\_; as, "He would have a learned University make Barbarisms a

purpose."--\_Bentley, Diss. on Phalaris\_, p. 223. That is,--"\_on\_ purpose."

How absurdly then do some grammarians interpret the foregoing text!--"I go

\_on\_ a fishing."--\_Alden's Gram.\_, p. 117. "I go \_on\_ a fishing voyage or

business."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 221; \_Merchant's\_, 101. "It may not be

improper," says Churchill in another place, "to observe here, that the

preposition \_on\_, is too frequently pronounced as if it were the vowel \_a\_,

in ordinary conversation; and this corruption \_is\_ [has] become so

prevalent, that I have even met with 'laid it \_a oneside\_' in a periodical

publication. It should have been '\_on one side\_,' if the expression were

meant to be particular; '\_aside\_,' if general."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 345. By

these writers, \_a\_ is also supposed to be sometimes a corruption of \_of\_:

as, "Much in the same manner, Thomas \_of\_ Becket, by very frequent and

familiar use, became Thomas \_à\_ Becket; and one \_of the\_ clock, or perhaps

\_on the\_ clock, is written one o'clock, but pronounced one \_a\_ clock. The

phrases with \_a\_ before a participle are out of use in the solemn style;

but still prevail in familiar discourse. They are established by long

usage, and good authority; and there seems to be no reason, why they should

be utterly rejected."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 66. "Much in the same manner,

John \_of\_ Nokes, and John \_of\_ Styles, become John \_a\_ Nokes, and John \_a\_

Styles: and one \_of the\_ clock, or rather \_on the\_ clock, is written one

\_o\_'clock, but pronounced one \_a\_ clock. The phrases with a before

participles, are out of use in the solemn style; but still prevail in

familiar discourse."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 269.

OBS. 12.--The following are \_examples\_ of the less usual prepositions, \_a\_,

and others that begin with \_a\_: "And he set--three thousand and six hundred

overseers to set the people a work."--\_2 Chron.\_, ii, 18. "Who goeth \_a\_

warfare any time at his own charges?"--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 7. "And the mixed

multitude that was among them fell \_a\_ lusting."--\_Num.\_, xi, 4.

"And sweet Billy Dimond, \_a\_ patting his hair up."

--\_Feast of the Poets\_, p. 17.

"The god fell \_a\_ laughing to see his mistake."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 18.

"You'd have thought 'twas the bishops or judges \_a\_ coming."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 22.

"A place on the lower deck, \_abaft\_ the mainmast."--\_Gregory's Dict.\_ "A

moment gazed \_adown\_ the dale."--\_Scott, L. L.\_, p. 10. "\_Adown\_

Strath-Gartney's valley broad."--\_Ib.\_, p. 84. "For \_afore\_ the harvest,

when the bud is perfect," &c.--\_Isaiah\_, xviii, 5. "Where the great

luminary \_aloof\_ the vulgar constellations thick,"--See \_Milton's Paradise

Lost\_, B. iii, l. 576. "The great luminary \_aloft\_ the vulgar

constellations thick."--\_Johnson's Dict., w. Aloft\_. "Captain Falconer

having previously gone \_alongside\_, the Constitution."--\_Newspaper\_.

"Seventeen ships sailed for New England, and \_aboard\_ these above fifteen

hundred persons."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, ii, 429. "There is a willow grows

\_askant\_ the brook:" Or, as in some editions: "There is a willow grows

\_aslant\_ the brook."--SHAK., \_Hamlet\_, Act iv, 7. "\_Aslant\_ the dew-bright

earth."--\_Thomson\_. "Swift as meteors glide \_aslope\_ a summer

eve."--\_Fenton\_. "\_Aneath\_ the heavy rain."--\_James Hogg\_, "With his magic

spectacles \_astride\_ his nose."--\_Merchant's Criticisms\_.

"\_Atween\_ his downy wings be furnished, there."

--\_Wordsworth's Poems\_, p. 147.

"And there a season \_atween\_ June and May."

--\_Castle of Indolence\_, C. i, st. 2.

OBS. 13.--The following are examples of rather unusual prepositions

beginning with \_b, c\_, or \_d\_; "Or where wild-meeting oceans boil \_besouth\_

Magellan."--\_Burns\_. "Whereupon grew that \_by-word\_, used by the Irish,

that they dwelt \_by-west\_ the law, \_which\_ dwelt beyond the river \_of the\_

Barrow."--DAVIES: in \_Joh. Dict.\_ Here Johnson calls \_by-west\_ a noun

substantive, and Webster, as improperly, marks it for an adverb. No hyphen

is needed in \_byword\_ or \_bywest\_. The first syllable of the latter is

pronounced \_be\_, and ought to be written so, if "\_besouth\_" is right.

"From Cephalonia \_cross\_ the surgy main

Philætius late arrived, a faithful swain."

--\_Pope, Odys.\_, B. xx, l. 234.

"And \_cross\_ their limits cut a sloping way,

Which the twelve signs in beauteous order sway."

--\_Dryden's Virgil\_.

"A fox was taking a walk one night \_cross\_ a village."--\_L'Estrange\_. "The

enemy had cut down great trees \_cross\_ the ways."--\_Knolles\_. "DEHORS,

prep. [Fr.] Without: as, '\_dehors\_ the land.' Blackstone."--\_Worcester's

Dict.\_, 8vo. "You have believed, \_despite\_ too our physical

conformation."--\_Bulwer\_.

"And Roderick shall his welcome make,

\_Despite\_ old spleen, for Douglas' sake."

--\_Scott, L. L.\_, C. ii, st. 26.

OBS. 14.--The following quotations illustrate further the list of unusual

prepositions: "And she would be often weeping \_inside\_ the room while

George was amusing himself without."--\_Anna Ross\_, p. 81. "Several nuts

grow closely together, \_inside\_ this prickly covering."--\_Jacob Abbot\_. "An

other boy asked why the peachstone was not \_outside\_ the peach."--\_Id.\_ "As

if listening to the sounds \_withinside\_ it."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_,

p. 214. "Sir Knight, you well might mark the mound, \_Left hand\_ the

town."--\_Scott's Marmion\_. "Thus Butler, \_maugre\_ his wicked intention,

sent them home again."--\_Sewel's Hist.\_, p. 256. "And, \_maugre\_ all that

can be said in its favour."--\_Stone, on Freemasonry\_, p. 121. "And,

\_maugre\_ the authority of Sterne, I even doubt its benevolence."--\_West's

Letters\_, p. 29.

"I through the ample air in triumph high

Shall lead Hell captive \_maugre\_ Hell."

--\_Milton's P. L.\_, B. iii, l. 255.

"When Mr. Seaman arose in the morning, he found himself \_minus\_ his coat,

vest, pocket-handkerchief, and tobacco-box."--\_Newspaper\_. "Throw some

coals \_onto\_ the fire."--FORBY: \_Worcester's Dict., w. Onto\_. "Flour, at $4

\_per\_ barrel."--\_Preston's Book-Keeping\_. "Which amount, \_per\_ invoice, to

$4000."--\_Ib.\_ "\_To Smiths\_ is the substantive \_Smiths, plus\_ the

preposition \_to\_."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §33. "The Mayor of Lynn \_versus\_

Turner."--\_Cowper's Reports\_, p. 86. "Slaves were imported from Africa,

\_via\_ Cuba."--\_Society in America\_, i, 327. "\_Pending\_ the discussion of

this subject, a memorial was presented."--\_Gov. Everett\_.

"Darts his experienced eye and soon \_traverse\_

The whole battalion views their order due."--\_Milton\_.

"Because, when \_thorough\_ deserts vast

And regions desolate they past."--\_Hudibras\_.

OBS. 15.--\_Minus\_, less, \_plus\_, more, \_per\_, by, \_versus\_, towards, or

against, and \_viâ\_, by the way of, are Latin words; and it is not very

consistent with the \_purity\_ of our tongue, to use them as above. \_Sans\_,

without, is French, and not now heard with us. \_Afore\_ for \_before, atween\_

for \_between, traverse\_ for \_across, thorough\_ for \_through\_, and \_withal\_

for \_with\_, are obsolete. \_Withal\_ was never placed before its object, but

was once very common at the end of a sentence. I think it not properly a

preposition, but rather an adverb. It occurs in Shakspeare, and so does

\_sans\_; as,

"I did laugh, \_sans\_ intermission, an hour by his dial."

--\_As You Like It\_.

"I pr'ythee, \_whom\_ doth he trot \_withal\_?"

--\_Ib.\_

"\_Sans\_ teeth, \_sans\_ eyes, \_sans\_ taste, \_sans\_ every thing."

--\_Ib.\_

OBS. 16.--Of the propriety and the nature of such expressions as the

following, the reader may now judge for himself: "In consideration of what

passes sometimes \_within-side of\_ those vehicles."--\_Spectator\_, No. 533.

"Watch over yourself, and let nothing throw you \_off from\_ your

guard."--\_District School\_, p. 54. "The windows broken, the door \_off from\_

the hinges, the roof open and leaky."--\_Ib.\_, p. 71. "He was always a

shrewd observer of men, \_in and out of\_ power."--\_Knapp's Life of Burr\_, p.

viii. "Who had never been broken \_in to\_ the experience of sea

voyages."--\_Timothy Flint\_. "And there came a fire \_out from before\_ the

Lord."--\_Leviticus\_, ix, 24. "Because eight readers \_out of\_ ten, it is

believed, forget it."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 32. "Fifty days after the

\_Passover\_, and \_their coming out of\_ Egypt."--\_Watts's Script. Hist.\_, p.

57. "As the mountains are \_round about\_ Jerusalem, so the Lord is \_round

about\_ his people."--\_Psal.\_, cxxv, 2. "Literally, 'I proceeded \_forth from

out of\_ God and am come.'"--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 161. "But he that came

\_down from\_ (or \_from out of\_) heaven."--\_Ibid.\_

"Here none the last funereal rights receive;

To be cast \_forth the camp\_, is all their friends can give."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, vi, 166.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS X.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Tenth Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and the classes and modifications of

the\_ ARTICLES, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, PARTICIPLES, ADVERBS,

CONJUNCTIONS, \_and\_ PREPOSITIONS.

\_The definitions to be given in the Tenth Praxis, are, two for an article,

six for a noun, three for an adjective, six for a pronoun, seven for a verb

finite, five for an infinitive, two for a participle, two (and sometimes

three) for an adverb, two for a conjunction, one for a preposition, and one

for an interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"Never adventure on too near an approach to what is evil."--\_Maxims\_.

\_Never\_ is an adverb of time. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner. 2. Adverbs of time are those which answer to the

question, \_When? How long? How soon?\_ or, \_How often?\_ including these

which ask.

\_Adventure\_ is a regular active-intransitive verb, from \_adventure,

adventured, adventuring, adventured\_; found in the imperative mood, present

tense, second person, singular (or it may be plural) number. 1. A verb is a

word that signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_. 2. A regular

verb is a verb that forms the preterit and the perfect participle by

assuming \_d\_ or \_ed\_. 3. An active-intransitive verb is a verb that

expresses an action that has no person or thing for its object. 4. The

imperative mood is that form of the verb which is used in commanding,

exhorting, entreating, or permitting. 5. The present tense is that which

expresses what now exists, or is taking place. 6. The second person is that

which denotes the hearer, or the person addressed. 7. The singular number

is that which denotes but one.

\_On\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Too\_ is an adverb of degree. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time,

place, degree, or manner. 2. Adverbs of decree are those which answer to

the question, \_How much? How little?\_ or to the idea of \_more or less\_.

\_Near\_ is a common adjective, of the positive degree; compared, \_near,

nearer, 2.[sic--KTH] nearest\_ or \_next\_. 1. An adjective is a word added

to a noun or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. A common adjective

is any ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The

positive degree is that which is expressed by the adjective in its simple

form.

\_An\_ is the indefinite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or

\_a\_, which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The

indefinite article is \_an\_ or \_a\_, which denotes one thing of a kind, but

not any particular one.

\_Approach\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form

or state of a noun or pronoun which usually denotes the object of a verb,

participle, or preposition.

\_To\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_What\_ is a relative pronoun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A pronoun is a word used in stead of a

noun. 2. A relative pronoun is a pronoun that represents an antecedent word

or phrase, and connects different clauses of a sentence. 3. The third

person is that which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The

singular number is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that

which denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative

case is that form or stats of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the

subject of a finite verb.

\_Is\_ is an irregular neuter verb, from be, was, being, been; found in the

indicative mood, present tense, third person, and singular number. 1. A

verb is a word that signifies to be, to act, or to be acted upon. 2. An

irregular verb is a verb that does not form the preterit and the perfect

participle by assuming d or ed. 3. A neuter verb is a verb that expresses

neither action nor passion, but simply being, or a state of being. 4. The

indicative mood is that form of a verb, which simply indicates or declares

a thing, or asks a question. 5. The present tense is that which expresses

what now exists, or is taking place. 6. The third person is that which

denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 7. The singular number is

that which denotes but one.

\_Evil\_ is a common adjective, of the positive degree; compared irregularly,

bad, evil, or ill, worse, worst. 1. An adjective is a word added to a noun

or pronoun, and generally expresses quality. 2. A common adjective is any

ordinary epithet, or adjective denoting quality or situation. 3. The

positive degree is that which is expressed by the adjective in its simple

form.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"My Lord, I do here, in the name of all the learned and polite persons of

the nation, complain to your Lordship, as first minister, that our language

is imperfect; that its daily improvements are by no means in proportion to

its daily corruptions; that the pretenders to polish and refine it, have

chiefly multiplied abuses and absurdities; and that, in many instances, it

offends against every part of grammar."--\_Dean Swift, to the Earl of

Oxford\_.

"Swift must be allowed to have been a good judge of this matter; to which

he was himself very attentive, both in his own writings, and in his remarks

upon those of his friends: He is one of the most correct, and perhaps [he

is] the best, of our prose writers. Indeed the justness of this complaint,

\_as\_ far as I can find, \_hath\_ never yet been questioned; and yet no

effectual method \_hath\_ hitherto been taken to redress the grievance which

was the object of it."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. iv.

"The only proper use to be made of the blemishes which occur in the

writings of such authors, [as Addison and Swift--authors whose 'faults are

overbalanced by high beauties'--] is, to point out to those who apply

themselves to the study of composition, some of the rules which they ought

to observe for avoiding such errors; and to render them sensible of the

necessity of strict attention to language and style."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

233.

"Thee, therefore, and with thee myself I weep,

For thee and me I mourn in anguish deep."--\_Pope's Homer\_.

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"The southern corner of Europe, comprehended between the thirty-sixth and

fortieth degrees of latitude, bordering on Epirus and Macedonia towards the

north, and on other sides surrounded by the sea, was inhabited, above

eighteen centuries before the Christian era, by many small tribes of

hunters and shepherds, among whom the Pelasgi and Hellenes were the most

numerous and powerful."--\_Gillies, Gr.\_, p. 12.

"In a vigorous exertion of memory, ideal presence is exceedingly distinct:

thus, when a man, entirely occupied with some event that made a deep

impression, forgets himself, he perceives every thing as passing before

him, and has a consciousness of presence, similar to that of a

spectator."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 88.

"Each planet revolves about its own axis in a given time; and each moves

round the sun, in an orbit nearly circular, and in a time proportioned to

its distance. Their velocities, directed by an established law, are

perpetually changing by regular accelerations and retardations."--\_Ib.\_, i,

271.

"You may as well go about to turn the sun to ice by fanning in his face

with a peacock's feather."--\_Shak\_.

"\_Ch. Justice\_. I sent for you, when there were matters against you for

your life, to come speak with me. \_Falstaff\_. As I was then advised by my

learned counsel in the laws of this land-service, I did not come."--\_Id.\_,

2. Hen. IV, Act i, Sc. 2.

"It is surprising to see the images of the mind stamped upon the aspect; to

see the cheeks take the die of the passions and appear in all the colors of

thought."--\_Collier\_.

----------"Even from out thy slime

The monsters of the deep are made."--\_Byron\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"With a mind weary of conjecture, fatigued by doubt, sick of disputation,

eager for knowledge, anxious for certainty, and unable to attain it by the

best use of my reason in matters of the utmost importance, I \_have\_ long

ago turned my thoughts to an impartial examination of the proofs on which

revealed religion is grounded, and I am convinced of its truth."--\_Bp.

Watson's Apology\_, p. 69.

"The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his

feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people

be."--\_Gen.\_, xlix, 10.

"Again, ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, thou

shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths.

But I say unto you, Swear not at all: neither by heaven; for it is God's

throne: nor by the earth; for it is his footstool: neither by Jerusalem;

for it is the city of the great King. Neither shalt thou swear by thy head;

because thou canst not make one hair white or black."--\_Matt.\_, v, 33--36.

"Refined manners, and polite behaviour, must not be deemed altogether

artificial: men who, inured to the sweets of society, cultivate humanity,

find an elegant pleasure in preferring others, and making them happy, of

which the proud, the selfish, scarcely have a conception."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, i, 105.

"Bacchus, that first from out the purple grape

Crush'd the sweet poison of misused wine."--\_Milton\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING PREPOSITIONS.

"Nouns are often formed by participles."--\_L. Murray's Index, Octavo

Gram.\_, ii, 290.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the relation here intended, between \_are

formed\_ and \_participles\_, is not well signified by the preposition by.

But, according to Observation 7th, on this part of speech, "The

prepositions have, from their own nature, or from custom, such an

adaptation to particular terms and relations, that they can seldom be used

one for an other without manifest impropriety." This relation would be

better expressed by \_from\_; thus, "Nouns are often formed \_from\_

participles."]

"What tenses are formed on the perfect participle?"--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_,

p. 104. "Which tense is formed on the present?"--\_Ibid.\_ "When a noun or

pronoun is placed before a participle, independently on the rest of the

sentence," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 150; \_Murray\_, 145; and others. "If the addition

consists in two or more words."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 176; \_Ingersoll's\_,

177. "The infinitive mood is often made absolute, or used independently on

the rest of the sentence."--\_Mur.\_, p. 184; \_Ing.\_, 244; and others. "For

the great satisfaction of the reader, we shall present him with a variety

of false constructions."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 189. "For your satisfaction,

I shall present you with a variety of false constructions."--\_Ingersoll's

Gram.\_, p. 258. "I shall here present you with a scale of

derivation."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 81. "These two manners of representation

in respect of number."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 15; \_Churchill's\_, 57; "There

are certain adjectives, which seem to be derived without any variation from

verbs."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 89. "Or disqualify us for receiving

instruction or reproof of others."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 253. "For being

more studious than any other pupil of the school."--\_Ib.\_, p. 226. "From

misunderstanding the directions, we lost our way."--\_Ib.\_, p. 201. "These

people reduced the greater part of the island to their own power."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 261.[317] "The principal accent distinguishes one syllable in a word

from the rest."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 236. "Just numbers are in unison to

the human mind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 298. "We must accept of sound instead of

sense."--\_Ib.\_, p. 298. "Also, instead for \_consultation\_, he uses

\_consult\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 143. "This ablative seems to be

governed of a preposition understood."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 268. "That

my father may not hear on't by some means or other."--\_Ib.\_, p. 257. "And

besides, my wife would hear on't by some means."--\_Ib.\_, p. 81. "For

insisting in a requisition is so odious to them."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, i,

206. "Based in the great self-evident truths of liberty and

equality."--\_Scholar's Manual\_. "Very little knowledge of their nature is

acquired by the spelling book."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 21. "They do not cut

it off: except in a few words; as, \_due, duly\_, &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 24.

"Whether passing in such time, or then finished."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 31.

"It hath disgusted hundreds of that confession."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii,

269. "But they have egregiously fallen in that inconveniency."--\_Ib.\_, iii,

73. "For is not this to set nature a work?"--\_Ib.\_, i, 270. "And surely

that which should set all its springs a-work, is God."--ATTERBURY: \_in

Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 298. "He could not end his treatise without a panegyric

of modern learning."--TEMPLE: \_ib.\_, p. 110. "These are entirely

independent on the modulation of the voice."--\_Walker's Elocution\_, p. 308.

"It is dear of a penny. It is cheap of twenty pounds."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 274. "It will be despatched, in most occasions, without

resting."--\_Locke\_. "'0, the pain the bliss in dying.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_,

p. 129. "When [he is] presented with the objects or the facts."--\_Smith's

Productive Gram.\_, p. 5. "I will now present you with a synopsis."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 25. "The conjunction disjunctive connects sentences, by expressing

opposition of meaning in various degrees."--\_Ib.\_, p. 38. "I shall now

present you with a few lines."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram\_, p. 13. "Common

names of Substantives are those, which stand for things generally."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 31. "Adjectives in the English language admit no variety in gender,

number, or case whatever, except that of the degrees of

comparison."--\_Ib.\_, p. 48. "Participles are adjectives formed of

verbs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 63. "I do love to walk out of a fine summer's

evening."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97. "An \_Ellipsis\_, when applied to grammar, is the

elegant omission of one or more words in a sentence."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_,

p. 99. "The prefix \_to\_ is generally placed before verbs in the infinitive

mood, but before the following verbs it is properly omitted; (viz.) \_bid,

make, see, dare, need, hear, feel\_, and \_let\_; as, He \_bid\_ me \_do\_ it; He

\_made\_ me \_learn\_; &c."--\_Ib., Stereotype Edition\_, p. 91; \_Old Edition\_,

85. "The infinitive sometimes follows \_than\_, after a comparison; as, I

wish nothing more, \_than to know\_ his fate."--\_Ib.\_, p. 92. See \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, i, 184. "Or by prefixing the adverbs \_more\_ or \_less\_, in the

comparative, and \_most\_ or \_least\_, in the superlative."--\_Merchant's

Gram.\_, p. 36. "A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 17;

\_Comly\_, 15. "In monosyllables the Comparative is regularly formed by

adding \_r\_ or \_er\_."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 21. "He has particularly named

these, in distinction to others."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. vi. "To revive the

decaying taste of antient Literature."--\_Ib.\_, p. xv. "He found the

greatest difficulty of writing."--HUME: \_in Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 159.

"And the tear that is wip'd with a little address

May be followed perhaps with a smile."

\_Webster's American Spelling-Book\_, p. 78;

and \_Murray's E. Reader\_, p. 212.

CHAPTER XI--INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is a word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or

sudden emotion of the mind: as, \_Oh! alas! ah! poh! pshaw! avaunt! aha!

hurrah!\_

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Of pure interjections but few are admitted into books.

Unimpassioned writings reject this part of speech altogether. As words or

sounds of this kind serve rather to indicate feeling than to express

thought, they seldom have any definable signification. Their use also is so

variable, that there can be no very accurate classification of them. Some

significant words, perhaps more properly belonging to other classes, are

sometimes ranked with interjections, when uttered with emotion and in an

unconnected manner; as, \_strange! prodigious! indeed!\_ Wells says, "\_Other

parts of speech\_, used by way of exclamation, are \_properly regarded as

interjections\_; as, \_hark! surprising! mercy!\_"--\_School Gram.\_, 1846, p.

110. This is an evident absurdity; because it directly confounds the

classes which it speaks of as being different. Nor is it right to say,

"\_Other parts of speech\_ are frequently used \_to perform the office\_ of

interjections."--\_Wells\_, 1850, p. 120.

OBS. 2.--The word \_interjection\_ comes to us from the Latin name

\_interjectio\_, the root of which is the verb \_interjicio\_, to throw

between, to interject. Interjections are so called because they are usually

thrown in between \_the parts of discourse\_, without any syntactical

connexion with other words. Dr. Lowth, in his haste, happened to describe

them as a kind of natural sounds "thrown in between the parts \_of a

sentence\_;" and this strange blunder has been copied into almost every

definition that has been given of the Interjection since. See Murray's

Grammar and others. Webster's Dictionary defines it as, "A word thrown in

between \_words connected in construction\_;" but of all the parts of speech

none are less frequently found in this situation.

OBS. 3.--The following is a fair sample of "Smith's \_New Grammar\_,"--i.e.,

of "English Grammar on the \_Productive System\_,"--a new effort of quackery

to scarf up with cobwebs the eyes of common sense: "Q. When I exclaim, 'Oh!

I have ruined my friend,' 'Alas! I fear for life,' \_which words\_ here

appear to be thrown in \_between the sentences\_, to express passion or

feeling? Ans. \_Oh! Alas!\_ Q. What does \_interjection\_ mean? Ans. \_Thrown

between\_. Q. What name, then, shall we give such words as \_oh! alas! &c.\_?

Ans. INTERJECTIONS. Q. What, then, are interjections? Ans. Interjections

are words thrown in \_between the parts of sentences\_, to express the

passions or sudden feelings of the speaker. Q. How may an interjection

generally be known? Ans. By \_its taking\_ an exclamation \_point\_ after it:

[as,] '\_Oh!\_ I have alienated my friend.'"--\_R. C. Smith's New Gram.\_, p.

39. Of the interjection, this author gives, in his examples for parsing,

\_fifteen\_ other instances; but nothing can be more obvious, than that not

more than one of the whole fifteen stands either "between sentences" or

between the parts of any sentence! (See \_New Gram.\_, pp. 40 and 96.) Can he

be a competent grammarian, who does not know the meaning of \_between\_; or

who, knowing it, misapplies so very plain a word?

OBS. 4.--The Interjection, which is idly claimed by sundry writers to have

been the first of words at the origin of language, is now very constantly

set down, among the parts of speech, as the last of the series. But, for

the name of this the last of the ten sorts of words, some of our

grammarians have adopted the term \_exclamation\_. Of the old and usual term

\_interjection\_, a recent writer justly says, "This name is preferable to

that of \_exclamation\_, for some exclamations are not interjections, and

some interjections are not exclamations."--GIBBS: \_Fowler's E. Gram.\_,

§333.

LIST OF THE INTERJECTIONS.

The following are the principal interjections, arranged according to the

emotions which they are generally intended to indicate:--1. Of joy; \_eigh!

hey! io!\_--2. Of sorrow; \_oh! ah! hoo! alas! alack! lackaday! welladay!\_ or

\_welaway!\_--3. Of wonder; \_heigh! ha! strange! indeed!\_--4. Of wishing,

earnestness, or vocative address; (often with a noun or pronoun in the

nominative absolute;) \_O!\_--5. Of praise; \_well-done! good! bravo!\_--6. Of

surprise with disapproval; \_whew! hoity-toity! hoida! zounds! what!\_--7. Of

pain or fear; \_oh! ooh! ah! eh! O dear!\_--8. Of contempt; \_fudge! pugh!

poh! pshaw! pish! tush! tut! humph!\_--9. Of aversion; \_foh! faugh! fie! fy!

foy!\_[318]--10. Of expulsion; \_out! off! shoo! whew! begone! avaunt!

aroynt!\_--11. Of calling aloud; \_ho! soho! what-ho! hollo! holla! hallo!

halloo! hoy! ahoy!\_--12. Of exultation; \_ah! aha! huzza! hey! heyday!

hurrah!\_--13. Of laughter; \_ha, ha, ha; he, he, he; te-hee, te-hee.\_--14.

Of salutation; \_welcome! hail! all-hail!\_--15. Of calling to attention;

\_ho! lo! la! law![319] look! see! behold! hark!\_--16. Of calling to

silence; \_hush! hist! whist! 'st! aw! mum!\_--17. Of dread or horror; \_oh!

ha! hah! what!\_--18. Of languor or weariness; \_heigh-ho!

heigh-ho-hum!\_--19. Of stopping; \_hold! soft! avast! whoh!\_--20. Of

parting; \_farewell! adieu! good-by! good-day!\_--21. Of knowing or

detecting; \_oho! ahah! ay-ay!\_--22. Of interrogating; \_eh? ha? hey?\_[320]

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--With the interjections, may perhaps be reckoned \_hau\_ and \_gee\_,

the imperative words of teamsters driving cattle; and other similar sounds,

useful under certain circumstances, but seldom found in books. Besides

these, and all the foregoing, there are several others, too often heard,

which are unworthy to be considered parts of a cultivated language. The

frequent use of interjections savours more of thoughtlessness than of

sensibility. Philosophical writing and dispassionate discourse exclude them

altogether. Yet are there several words of this kind, which in earnest

utterance, animated poetry, or impassioned declamation, are not only

natural, but exceedingly expressive: as, "Lift up thy voice, \_O\_ daughter

of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, \_O\_ poor Anathoth."--\_Isaiah\_,

x, 30. "\_Alas, alas\_, that great city Babylon, that mighty city! for in one

hour is thy judgement come."--\_Rev.\_, xviii, 10.

"\_Ah me!\_ forbear, returns the queen, forbear;

\_Oh!\_ talk not, talk not of vain beauty's care."

--\_Odyssey\_, B. xviii, l. 310.

OBS. 2.--Interjections, being in general little else than mere natural

voices or cries, must of course be adapted to the sentiments which are

uttered with them, and never carelessly confounded one with an other when

we express them on paper. The adverb \_ay\_ is sometimes improperly written

for the interjection \_ah\_; as, \_ay me!\_ for \_ah me!\_ and still oftener we

find \_oh\_, an interjection of sorrow, pain, or surprise,[321] written in

stead of \_O\_, the proper sign of wishing, earnestness, or vocative address:

as,

"\_Oh\_ Happiness! our being's end and aim!"

--\_Pope, Ess. Ep.\_ iv, l. 1.

"And peace, \_oh\_ Virtue! peace is all thy own."

--\_Id., ib., Ep.\_ iv, l. 82.

"\_Oh\_ stay, O pride of Greece! Ulysses, stay!

O cease thy course, and listen to our lay!"

--\_Odys.\_, B. xii, 1 222.

OBS. 3.--The chief characteristics of the interjection are independence,

exclamation, and the want of any definable signification. Yet not all the

words or signs which we refer to this class, will be found to coincide in

all these marks of an interjection. Indeed the last, (the want of a

rational meaning,) would seem to exclude them from the language; for

\_words\_ must needs be significant of something. Hence many grammarians deny

that mere sounds of the voice have any more claim to be reckoned among the

parts of speech, than the neighing of a horse, or the lowing of a cow.

There is some reason in this; but in fact the reference which these sounds

have to the feelings of those who utter them, is to some extent

instinctively understood; and does constitute a sort of significance,

though we cannot really define it. And, as their use in language, or in

connexion with language, makes it necessary to assign them a place in

grammar, it is certainly more proper to treat them as above, than to follow

the plan of the Greek grammarians, most of whom throw all the interjections

into the class of \_adverbs\_.

OBS. 4.--Significant words uttered independently, after the manner of

interjections, ought in general, perhaps, to be referred to their original

classes; for all such expressions may be supposed elliptical: as, "\_Order!\_

gentlemen, \_order!\_" i.e., "Come to order,"--or, "Keep order." "\_Silence!\_"

i.e., "Preserve silence." "\_Out! out!\_" i.e., "Get out,"--or, "Clear out!"

(See Obs. 5th and 6th, upon Adverbs.)

"Charge, Chester, charge! \_On\_, Stanley, \_on\_!

Were the last words of Marmion."--\_Scott\_.

OBS. 5.--In some instances, interjections seem to be taken substantively

and made nouns; as,

"I may sit in a corner, and cry \_hey-ho\_ for a husband."--\_Shak\_.

So, according to James White, in his Essay on the Verb, is the word \_fie\_,

in the following example:

"If you deny me, \_fie\_ upon your law."--SHAK.: \_White's Verb\_, p. 163.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS XI.--ETYMOLOGICAL.

\_In the Eleventh Praxis, it is required of the pupil--to distinguish and

define the different parts of speech, and\_ ALL \_their classes and

modifications.

The definitions to be given in the Eleventh Praxis, are, two for an

article, six for a noun, three for an adjective, six for a pronoun, seven

for a verb finite, five for an infinitive, two for a participle, two (and

sometimes three) for an adverb, two for a conjunction, one for a

preposition, and two for an interjection. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"O! sooner shall the earth and stars fall into chaos!"--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p.

92.

\_O\_ is an interjection, indicating earnestness. 1. An interjection is a

word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or sudden emotion of

the mind. 2. The interjection of wishing, earnestness, or vocative address,

is \_O\_.

\_Sooner\_ is an adverb of time, of the comparative degree; compared, \_soon,

sooner, soonest\_. 1. An adverb is a word added to a verb, a participle, an

adjective, or an other adverb; and generally expresses time, place, degree,

or manner. 2. Adverbs of time are those which answer to the question,

\_When? How long? How soon?\_ or, \_How often?\_ including these which ask. 3.

The comparative degree is that which is more or less than something

contrasted with it.

\_Shall\_ is an auxiliary to \_fall\_. 1. An auxiliary is a short verb prefixed

to one of the principal parts of an other verb, to express some particular

mode and time of the being, action, or passion.

\_The\_ is the definite article. 1. An article is the word \_the, an\_, or \_a\_,

which we put before nouns to limit their signification. 2. The definite

article is \_the\_, which denotes some particular thing or things.

\_Earth\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is that

form or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the subject of a

finite verb.

\_And\_ is a copulative conjunction. 1. A conjunction is a word used to

connect words or sentences in construction, and to show the dependence of

the terms so connected. 2. A copulative conjunction is a conjunction that

denotes an addition, a cause, a consequence, or a supposition.

\_Stars\_ is a common noun, of the third person, plural number, neuter

gender, and nominative case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The plural number is

that which denotes more than one. 5. The neuter gender is that which

denotes things that are neither male nor female. 6. The nominative case is

that form or state of a noun or pronoun which usually denotes the subject

of a finite verb.

\_Fall\_, or \_Shall fall\_, is an irregular active-intransitive verb, from

\_fall, fell, falling, fallen\_; found in the indicative mood, first-future

tense, third person, and plural number. 1. A verb is a word that signifies

\_to be, to act\_, or \_to be acted upon\_. 2. An irregular verb is a verb that

does not form the preterit and the perfect participle by assuming \_d\_ or

\_ed\_. 3. An active-intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action

which has no person or thing for its object. 4. The indicative mood is that

form of the verb, which simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a

question. 5. The first-future tense is that which expresses what will take

place hereafter. 6. The third person is that which denotes the person or

thing merely spoken of. 7. The plural number is that which denotes more

than one.

\_Into\_ is a preposition. 1. A preposition is a word used to express some

relation of different things or thoughts to each other, and is generally

placed before a noun or a pronoun.

\_Chaos\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case. 1. A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing, that can be known or mentioned. 2. A common noun is the name of a

sort, kind, or class, of beings or things. 3. The third person is that

which denotes the person or thing merely spoken of. 4. The singular number

is that which denotes but one. 5. The neuter gender is that which denotes

things that are neither male nor female. 6. The objective case is that form

or state of a noun or pronoun, which usually denotes the object of a verb,

participle, or preposition.

LESSON I.--PARSING.

"Ah! St. Anthony preserve me!--Ah--ah--eh--eh!--Why--why--after all, your

hand is not so co-o-o-old, neither. Of the two, it is rather warmer than my

own. Can it be, though, that you are not dead?" "Not I."--MOLIERE: \_in

Burgh's Speaker\_, p. 232.

"I'll make you change your cuckoo note, you old philosophical humdrum,

you--[\_Beats him\_]--I will--[\_Beats him\_]. I'll make you say somewhat else

than, 'All things are doubtful; all things are uncertain;'--[\_Beats

him\_]--I will, you old fusty pedant." "Ah!--oh!--ehl--What, beat a

philosopher!--Ah!--oh!--eh!"--MOLIERE: \_ib.\_, p. 247.

"What! will these hands never be clean?--No more of that, my lord; no more

of that. You mar all with this starting." \* \* \* "Here is the smell of blood

still.--All the perfumes of Arabia will not sweeten this little hand. Oh!

oh! oh!"--\_Shak., Macbeth\_, Act V, Sc. 1.

"Ha! at the gates what grisly forms appear!

What dismal shrieks of laughter wound the ear!"--\_Merry.\_

LESSON II.--PARSING.

"Yet this may be the situation of some now known to us.--O frightful

thought! O horrible image! Forbid it, O Father of mercy! If it be possible,

let no creature of thine ever be the object of that wrath, against which

the strength of thy whole creation united, would stand but as the moth

against the thunderbolt!"--\_Burgh's Speaker\_, p. 289.

"If it be so, our God, whom we serve, is able to deliver us from the

burning fiery furnace; and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king.

But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods,

nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up."--\_Daniel\_, iii, 17

and 18.

"Grant me patience, just Heaven!--Of all the cants which are canted in this

canting world--though the cant of hypocrites may be the worst--the cant of

criticism is the most tormenting!"--\_Sterne\_.

"Ah, no! Achilles meets a shameful fate,

Oh! how unworthy of the brave and great."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON III.--PARSING.

"O let not thy heart despise me! thou whom experience has not taught that

it is misery to lose that which it is not happiness to possess."--\_Dr.

Johnson\_.

"Disguise thyself as thou wilt, still, Slavery! still thou art a bitter

draught; and though thousands in all ages have been made to drink of thee,

thou art no less bitter on that account."--\_Sterne\_.

"Put it out of the power of truth to give you an ill character; and if any

body reports you not to be an honest or a good man, let your practice give

him the lie. This is all very feasible."--\_Antoninus\_.

"Oh that men should put an enemy into their mouths to steal away their

brains! that we should, with joy, pleasance, revel, and applause, transform

ourselves into beasts!"--\_Shakspeare\_.

"All these afar off stood, crying, Alas!

Alas! and wept, and gnashed their teeth, and groaned;

And with the owl, that on her ruins sat,

Made dolorous concert in the ear of Night."--\_Pollok\_.

"Snatch'd in thy prime! alas, the stroke were mild,

Had my frail form obey'd the fate's decree!

Blest were my lot, O Cynthio! O my child!

Had Heaven so pleas'd, and I had died for thee!"--\_Shenstone\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

ERRORS RESPECTING INTERJECTIONS.

"Of chance or change, oh let not man complain."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_,

p. 85.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the interjection \_oh\_, a sign of sorrow,

pain, or surprise, is here used to indicate mere earnestness. But,

according to the list of interjections, or OBS. 2d under it, the

interjection of wishing, earnestness, or vocative address, is \_O\_, and not

\_oh\_. Therefore, \_oh\_ should here be \_O\_; thus, "Of chance or change, \_O\_

let not man complain."--\_Beattie's Minstrel\_, B. ii, l. 1.]

"O thou persecutor! Oh ye hypocrites."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 99; \_et al\_.

"Oh! thou, who touchedst Isaiah's hallowed lips with fire."--\_Ib.\_,

(\_Key\_,) p. 197. "Oh! happy we, surrounded by so many blessings."--\_Ib.\_,

(\_Exercises\_,) p. 138. "Oh! thou, who art so unmindful of thy

duty."--\_Ib.\_, (\_Key\_,) p. 196. "If I am wrong, oh teach my heart To find

that better way."--\_Pope's Works\_. "Heus! evocate hue Davum. \_Ter\_. Hoe!

call Davus out hither."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 155. "It was represented

by an analogy, (Oh, how inadequate!) which was borrowed from the religion

of paganism."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 281. "Oh that Ishmael might live before

thee!"--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Gen.\_, xvii, 18. "And he said unto him, Oh let not

the Lord be angry, and I will speak."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Gen.\_, xviii, 30.

"And he said, Oh let not the Lord be angry."--ID., and SCOTT'S: \_ib.\_, ver.

32. "Oh, my lord, let thy servant, I pray thee, speak a word."--FRIENDS'

BIBLE, and ALGER'S: \_Gen.\_, xliv, 18. "Oh, Virtue! how amiable thou art! I

fear, alas! for my life."--\_Fisk's Gram.\_, p. 89. "Ay me, they little know

How dearly I abide that boast so vain."--\_Milton's P. L.\_, B. iv, l. 86.

"Oh! that I had digged myself a cave."--FLETCHER: \_in Bucke's Gram.\_, p.

78. "O, my good lord! thy comfort comes too late."--SHAK.: \_ib.\_, p. 78.

"The vocative takes no article; it is distinguished thus: \_O Pedro\_, Oh

Peter! \_O Dios\_, Oh God!"--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 43. "Oh, o! But, the

relative is always the same."--\_Cobbett's Eng. Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 127.

"Oh, oh! But, the relative is always the same."--\_Id.\_, Edition of 1832, p.

116. "Ah hail, ye happy men!"--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 116. "Oh that I had

wings like a dove!"--FRIENDS' BIBLE, and ALGER'S: \_Ps.\_, lv, 6. "Oh

Glorious hope! O Blessed abode!"--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 183. "Alas,

Friends, how joyous is your presence."--\_Rev. T. Smith's Gram.\_, p. 87.

"Oh, blissful days! Ah me! how soon ye pass!"--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_,

Part I, p. 16; Part III, p. 29.

"Oh golden days! oh bright unvalued hours!

What bliss (did ye but know that bliss) were yours!"--\_Barbauld\_.

"Ay me! what perils do eviron

The man that meddles with cold iron."--\_Hudibras\_.

CHAPTER XII.--QUESTIONS.

ORDER OF REHEARSAL, AND METHOD OF EXAMINATION.

PART SECOND, ETYMOLOGY.

[Fist] [The following questions refer almost wholly to the main text of the

Etymology of this work, and are such as every student should be able to

answer with readiness and accuracy, before he proceeds to any subsequent

part of the study or the exercises of English grammar.]

LESSON I.--PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. Of what does Etymology treat? 2. What is meant by the term, "\_Parts of

Speech?\_" 3. What are \_Classes\_, under the parts of speech? 4. What are

\_Modifications?\_ 5. How many and what are the parts of speech? 6. What is

an article? 7. What is a noun? 8. What is an adjective? 9. What is a

pronoun? 10. What is a verb? 11. What is a participle? 12. What is an

adverb? 13. What is a conjunction? 14. What is a preposition? 15. What is

an interjection?

LESSON II.--PARSING.

1. What is \_Parsing?\_ and what relation does it bear to grammar? 2. What is

a \_Praxis?\_ and what is said of the word? 3. What is required of the pupil

in the FIRST PRAXIS? 4. How many definitions are here to be given for each

part of speech? 5. How is the following example parsed? "The patient ox

submits to the yoke, and meekly performs the labour required of him."

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_First Chapter\_, or

the \_First Praxis\_.]

LESSON III.--ARTICLES.

1. What is an ARTICLE? 2. Are \_an\_ and \_a\_ different articles, or the same?

3. When ought \_an\_ to be used, and what are the examples? 4. When should

\_a\_ be used, and what are the examples? 5. What form of the article do the

sounds of \_w\_ and \_y\_ require? 6. Can you repeat the alphabet, with \_an\_ or

\_a\_ before the name of each letter? 7. Will you name the ten parts of

speech, with \_an\_ or \_a\_ before each name? 8. When does a common noun not

admit an article? 9. How is the sense of nouns commonly made indefinitely

partitive? 10. Does the mere being of a thing demand the use of articles?

11. Can articles ever be used when we mean to speak of a whole species? 12.

But how does \_an\_ or \_a\_ commonly limit the sense? 13. And how does \_the\_

commonly limit the sense? 14. Which number does \_the\_ limit, the singular

or the plural? 15. When is \_the\_ required before adjectives? 16. Why is

\_an\_ or \_a\_ not applicable to plurals? 17. What is said of \_an\_ or \_a\_

before an adjective of number? 18. When, or how often, should articles be

inserted? 19. What is said of needless articles? 20. What is the effect of

putting one article for the other, and how shall we know which to choose?

21. How are the two articles distinguished in grammar? 22. Which is the

definite article, and what does it denote? 23. Which is the indefinite

article, and what does it denote? 24. What modifications have the articles?

LESSON IV.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the SECOND PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed? "The task of a schoolmaster laboriously prompting

and urging an indolent class, is worse than his who drives lazy horses

along a sandy road."

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Second Chapter\_, or

the \_Second Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

five lessons of \_bad English\_, with which the Second Chapter concludes.]

LESSON V.--NOUNS.

1. What is a NOUN, and what are the examples given? 2. Into what general

classes are nouns divided? 3. What is a proper noun? 4. What is a common

noun? 5. What particular classes are included among common nouns? 6. What

is a collective noun? 7. What is an abstract noun? 8. What is a verbal or

participial noun? 9. What modifications have nouns? 10. What are \_Persons\_,

in grammar? 11. How many persons are there, and what are they called? 12.

What is the first person? 13. What is the second person? 14. What is the

third person? 15. What are \_Numbers\_, in grammar? 16. How many numbers are

there, and what are they called? 17. What is the singular number? 18. What

is the plural number? 19. How is the plural number of nouns regularly

formed? 20. How is the regular plural formed without increase of syllables?

21. How is the regular plural formed when the word gains a syllable? LESSON

VI--NOUNS.

1. What are \_Genders\_, in grammar? 2. How many genders are there, and what

are they called? 3. What is the masculine gender? 4. What is the feminine

gender? 5. What is the neuter gender? 6. What nouns, then, are masculine?

what, feminine? and what, neuter? 7. What inflection of English nouns

regularly changes their gender? 8. On what are the different genders

founded, and to what parts of speech do they belong? 9. When the noun is

such as may be applied to either sex, how is the gender usually determined?

10. What principle of universal grammar determines the gender when both

sexes are taken together? 11. What is said of the gender of nouns of

multitude? 12. Under what circumstances is it common to disregard the

distinction of sex? 13. In how many ways are the sexes distinguished in

grammar? 14. When the gender is figurative, how is it indicated? 15. What

are \_Cases\_, in grammar? 16. How many cases are there, and what are they

called? 17. What is the nominative case? 18. What is the subject of a verb?

19. What is the possessive case? 20. How is the possessive case of nouns

formed? 21. What is the objective case? 22. What is the object of a verb,

participle, or preposition? 23. What two cases of nouns are alike in form,

and how are they distinguished? 24. What is the declension of a noun? 25.

How do you decline the nouns, \_friend, man, fox\_, and \_fly?\_

LESSON VII--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the THIRD PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example to be parsed? "The writings of Hannah More appear to me

more praise-worthy than Scott's."

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Third Chapter\_, or

the \_Third Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

three lessons of \_bad English\_, with which the Third Chapter concludes.]

LESSON VIII.--ADJECTIVES.

1. What is an ADJECTIVE, and what are the examples given? 2. Into what

classes may adjectives be divided? 3. What is a common adjective? 4. What

is a proper adjective? 5. What is a numeral adjective? 6. What is a

pronominal adjective? 7. What is a participial adjective? 8. What is a

compound adjective? 9. What modifications have adjectives? 10. What is

comparison, in grammar? 11. How many and what are the degrees of

comparison? 12. What is the positive degree? 13. What is the comparative

degree? 14. What is the superlative degree? 15. What adjectives cannot be

compared? 16. What adjectives are compared by means of adverbs? 17. How are

adjectives regularly compared? 18. What principles of spelling must be

observed in the comparing of adjectives? 19. To what adjectives is the

regular method of comparison, by \_er\_ and \_est\_, applicable? 20. Is there

any other method of expressing the degrees of comparison? 21. How are the

degrees of diminution, or inferiority, expressed? 22. Has the regular

method of comparison any degrees of this kind? 23. Do we ever compare by

adverbs those adjectives which can be compared by \_er\_ and \_est\_? 24. How

do you compare \_good? bad, evil\_, or \_ill? little? much? many?\_ 25. How do

you compare \_far? near? fore? hind? in? out? up? low? late?\_ 26. What words

want the positive? 27. What words want the comparative?

LESSON IX.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the FOURTH PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed? "The best and most effectual method of teaching

grammar, is precisely that of which the careless are least fond: teach

learnedly, rebuking whatsoever is false, blundering, or unmannerly."

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Fourth Chapter\_, or

the \_Fourth Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

three lesons of \_bad English\_, with which the Fourth Chapter concludes.]

LESSON X.--PRONOUNS.

1. What is a PRONOUN, and what is the example given? 2. How many pronouns

are there? 3. How are pronouns divided? 4. What is a personal pronoun? 5.

How many and what are the simple personal pronouns? 6. How many and what

are the compound personal pronouns? 7. What is a relative pronoun? 8. Which

are the relative pronouns? 9. What peculiarity has the relative \_what\_? 10.

What is an interrogative pronoun? 11. Which are the interrogative pronouns?

12. Do \_who, which\_, and \_what\_, all ask the same question? 13. What

modifications have pronouns? 14. Why are not these things defined under the

head of pronouns? 15. What is the declension of a pronoun? 16. How do you

decline the pronoun \_I? Thou? He? She? It?\_ 17. What is said of the

compound personal pronouns? 18. How do you decline the pronoun \_Myself?

Thyself? Himself? Herself? Itself?\_ 19. Are the interrogative pronouns

declined like the simple relatives? 20. How do you decline \_Who? Which?

What? That? As?\_ 21. Have the compound relative pronouns any declension?

22. How do you decline \_Whoever? Whosoever? Whichever? Whichsoever?

Whatever? Whatsoever?\_

LESSON XI.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the FIFTH PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed? "Nay but, O man, who art thou that repliest

against God? Shall the thing formed say to him that formed it, Why hast

thou made me thus?"

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Fifth Chapter\_, or

the \_Fifth Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

three lessons of \_bad English\_, with which the Fifth Chapter concludes.]

LESSON XII.--VERBS.

1. What is a VERB, and what are the examples given? 2. Why are verbs called

by that name? 3. Respecting an English verb, what things are to be sought

in the first place? 4. What is \_the Present\_? 5. What is \_the Preterit\_? 6.

What is \_the Imperfect Participle\_? 7. What is the \_Perfect Participle\_? 8.

How are verbs divided, with respect to their form? 9. What is a regular

verb? 10. What is an irregular verb? 11. What is a redundant verb? 12. What

is a defective verb? 13. How are verbs divided, with respect to their

signification? 14. What is an active-transitive verb? 15. What is an

active-intransitive verb? 16. What is a passive verb? 17. What is a neuter

verb? 18. What modifications have verbs? 19. What are \_Moods\_, in grammar?

20. How many moods are there, and what are they called? 21. What is the

infinitive mood? 22. What is the indicative mood? 23. What is the potential

mood? 24. What is the subjunctive mood? 25. What is the imperative mood?

LESSON XIII.--VERBS.

1. What are \_Tenses\_, in grammar? 2. How many tenses are there, and what

are they called? 3. What is the present tense? 4. What is the imperfect

tense? 5. What is the perfect tense? 6. What is the pluperfect tense? 7.

What is the first-future tense? 8. What is the second-future tense? 9. What

are the \_Person\_ and \_Number\_ of a verb? 10. How many persons and numbers

belong to verbs? 11. Why are not these things defined under the head of

verbs? 12. How are the second and third persons singular distinctively

formed? 13. How are the person and number of a verb ascertained, where no

peculiar ending is employed to mark them? 14. What is the conjugation of a

verb? 15. What are the PRINCIPAL PARTS in the conjugation of a verb? 16.

What is a verb called which wants some of these parts? 17. What is an

auxiliary, in grammar? 18. What verbs are used as auxiliaries? 19. What are

the inflections of the verb \_do\_, in its simple tenses? 20. What are the

inflections of the verb \_be\_, in its simple tenses? 21. What are the

inflections of the verb \_have\_, in its simple tenses? 22. What are the

inflections and uses of \_shall\_ and \_will\_? 23. What are the inflections

and uses of \_may\_? 24. What are the inflections and uses of \_can\_? 25. What

are the uses of \_must\_, which is uninflected? 26. To what style is the

inflecting of \_shall, will, may, can, should, would, might\_, and \_could\_,

now restricted?

LESSON XIV.--VERBS.

1. What is the simplest form of an English conjugation? 2. What is the

first example of conjugation? 3. What are the principal parts of the verb

LOVE? 4. How many and what tenses has the \_infinitive\_ mood?--the

\_indicative\_?--the \_potential\_?--the \_subjunctive\_?--the \_imperative\_? 9.

What is the verb LOVE in the \_Infinitive\_, present?--perfect?--

\_Indicative\_, present?--imperfect?--perfect?--pluperfect?--first-future?--

second-future?--\_Potential\_, present?--imperfect?--perfect?--pluperfect?--

\_Subjunctive\_, present?--imperfect?--\_Imperative\_, present? 24. What are

its participles?

LESSON XV.--VERBS.

1. What is the synopsis of the verb LOVE, in the first person

singular?--second person singular, solemn style?--third person

singular?--first person plural?--second person plural?--third person

plural? 7. If the second person singular of this verb be used familiarly,

how should it be formed?

LESSON XVI.--VERBS.

1. What is the second example of conjugation? 2. What are the principal

parts? 3. How is the verb SEE conjugated throughout? 4. How do you form a

synopsis of the verb \_see\_, with the pronoun \_I? thou? he? we? you? they?\_

LESSON XVII.--VERBS.

1. What is the third example of conjugation? 2. What are the principal

parts? 3. How is the verb BE conjugated? 4. How do you form a synopsis of

the verb \_be\_, with the nominative \_I? thou? he? we? you? they? the man?

the men?\_

LESSON XVIII.--VERBS.

1. What is the compound form of conjugating active or neuter verbs? 2. What

peculiar meaning does this form convey? 3. What is the fourth example of

conjugation? 4. What are the principal parts of the simple verb READ? 5.

How is the verb READ conjugated in the compound form? 6. How do you form a

synopsis of the verb BE READING, with the nominative \_I? thou? he? we? you?

they? the boy? the boys?\_

LESSON XIX.--VERBS.

1. How are passive verbs formed? 2. What is the fifth example of

conjugation? 3. How is the passive verb BE LOVED conjugated throughout? 4.

How do you form a synopsis of the verb BE LOVED, with the nominative \_I?

thou? he? we? you? they? the child? the children?\_

LESSON XX.--VERBS.

1. How is a verb conjugated negatively? 2. How is the form of negation

exemplified by the verb \_love\_ in the first person singular? 3. What is the

form of negation for the solemn style, second person singular? 4. What is

the form for the familiar style? 5. What is the negative form of the verb

\_love\_ with the pronoun \_he\_? 6. How is the verb conjugated

interrogatively? 7. What is the interrogative form of the verb \_love\_ with

the pronoun \_I\_? 8. What is the form of question in the solemn style, with

this verb in the second person singular? 9. How are such questions asked in

the familiar style? 10. What is the interrogative form of the verb \_love\_

with the pronoun \_he\_? 11. How is a verb conjugated interrogatively and

negatively? 12. How is the negative question exemplified in the first

person plural? 13. How is the negative question exemplified in the second

person plural? 14. How is the like synopsis formed in the third person

plural?

LESSON XXI.--VERBS.

1. What is an irregular verb? 2. How many simple irregular verbs are there?

3. What are the principal parts of the following verbs: Arise, be, bear,

beat, begin, behold, beset, bestead, bid, bind, bite, bleed, break, breed,

bring, buy, cast, chide, choose, cleave, cling, come, cost, cut, do, draw,

drink, drive, eat, fall, feed, feel, fight, find, flee, fling, fly,

forbear, forsake, get, give, go, grow, have, hear, hide, hit, hold, hurt,

keep, know, lead, leave, lend, let, lie, lose, make, meet, outdo, put,

read, rend, rid, ride, ring, rise, run, say, see, seek, sell, send, set,

shed, shoe, shoot, shut, shred, shrink, sing, sink, sit, slay, sling,

slink, smite, speak, spend, spin, spit, spread, spring, stand, steal,

stick, sting, stink, stride, strike, swear, swim, swing, take, teach, tear,

tell, think, thrust, tread, wear, win, write?

LESSON XXII.--VERBS.

1. What is a redundant verb? 2. How many redundant verbs are there? 3. What

are the principal parts of the following verbs: Abide, awake, belay, bend,

bereave, beseech, bet, betide, blend, bless, blow, build, burn, burst,

catch, clothe, creep, crow, curse, dare, deal, dig, dive, dream, dress,

dwell, freeze, geld, gild, gird, grave, grind, hang, heave, hew, kneel,

knit, lade, lay, lean, leap, learn, light, mean, mow, mulet, pass, pay,

pen, plead, prove, quit, rap, reave, rive, roast, saw, seethe, shake,

shape, shave, shear, shine, show, sleep, slide, slit, smell, sow, speed,

spell, spill, split, spoil, stave, stay, string, strive, strow, sweat,

sweep, swell, thrive, throw, wake, wax, weave, wed, weep, wet, whet, wind,

wont, work, wring? 4. What is a defective verb? 5. What verbs are

defective?

LESSON XXIII.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the SIXTH PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed? "The freedom of choice seems essential to

happiness; because, properly speaking, that is not our own which is imposed

upon us."

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Sixth Chapter\_, or

the \_Sixth Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

three lessons of \_bad English\_, with which the Sixth Chapter concludes.]

LESSON XXIV.--PARTICIPLES.

1. What is a PARTICIPLE, and how is it generally formed? 2. How many kinds

of participles are there, and what are they called? 3. What is the

imperfect participle? 4. What is the perfect participle? 5. What is the

preperfect participle? 6. How is the first or imperfect participle formed?

7. How is the second or perfect participle formed? 8. How is the third or

preperfect participle formed? 9. What are the participles of the following

verbs, according to the simplest form of conjugation: Repeat, study,

return, mourn, seem, rejoice, appear, approach, suppose, think, set, come,

rain, stand, know, deceive?

LESSON XXV.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the SEVENTH PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed: "Religion, rightly understood and practised, has

the purest of all joys attending it."

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Seventh Chapter\_, or

the \_Seventh Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

three lessons of \_bad English\_, with which the Seventh Chapter concludes.]

LESSON XXVI.--ADVERBS.

1. What is an ADVERB, and what is the example given? 2. To what general

classes may adverbs be reduced? 3. What are adverbs of time? 4. What are

adverbs of place? 5. What are adverbs of degree? 6. What are adverbs of

manner? 1. What are conjunctive adverbs? 8. Are all the conjunctive adverbs

included in the first four classes? 9. How may the adverbs of time be

subdivided? 10. How may the adverbs of place be subdivided? 11. How may the

adverbs of degree be subdivided? 12. How may the adverbs of manner be

subdivided? 13. What modifications have adverbs? 14. How do we compare

\_well, badly\_ or \_ill, little, much, far\_, and \_forth\_? 15. Of what degree

is the adverb \_rather\_? 16. What is said of the comparison of adverbs by

\_more\_ and \_most, less\_ and \_least\_?

LESSON XXVII.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the EIGHTH PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed? "When was it that Rome attracted most strongly

the admiration of mankind?"

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Eighth Chapter\_, or

the \_Eighth Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

lesson of \_bad English\_, with which the Eighth Chapter concludes.]

LESSON XXVIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

1. What is a CONJUNCTION, and what is the example given? 2. Have we any

connective words besides the conjunctions? 3. How do relative pronouns

differ from other connectives? 4. How do conjunctive adverbs differ from

other connectives? 5. How do conjunctions differ from other connectives? 6.

How do prepositions differ from other connectives? 7. How are the

conjunctions divided? 8. What is a copulative conjunction? 9. What is a

disjunctive conjunction? 10. What are corresponsive conjunctions? 11. Which

are the copulative conjunctions? 12. Which are the disjunctive

conjunctions? 13. Which are the corresponsive conjunctions?

LESSON XXIX.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the NINTH PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed? "If thou hast done a good deed, boast not of it."

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Ninth Chapter\_, or

the \_Ninth Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

lesson of \_bad English\_, with which the Ninth Chapter concludes.]

LESSON XXX.--PREPOSITIONS.

1. What is a PREPOSITION, and what is the example given? 2. Are the

prepositions divided into classes? 3. Have prepositions any grammatical

modifications? 4. How are the prepositions arranged in the list? 5. What

are the prepositions beginning with \_a\_?--with \_b\_?--with \_c\_?--with

\_d\_?--with \_e\_?--with \_f\_?--with \_i\_?--with \_m\_?--with \_n\_?--with

\_o\_?--with \_p\_?--with \_r\_?--with \_s\_?--with \_t\_?--with \_u\_?--with \_w\_? 21.

Does this list contain all the words that are ever used in English as

prepositions?

LESSON XXXI.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the TENTH PRAXIS? 2. How many

definitions are here to be given for each part of speech? 3. How is the

following example parsed? "Never adventure on too near an approach to what

is evil?"

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Tenth Chapter\_, or

the \_Tenth Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

lesson of \_bad English\_, with which the Tenth Chapter concludes.]

LESSON XXXII.--INTERJECTIONS.

1. What is an INTERJECTION, and what are the examples given? 2. Why are

interjections so called? 3. How are the interjections arranged in the list?

4. What are the interjections of joy?--of praise?--of sorrow?--of

wonder?--of wishing or earnestness?--of pain or fear?--of contempt?--of

aversion?--of calling aloud?--of exultation?--of laughter?--of

salutation?--of calling to attention?--of calling to silence?--of surprise

or horror?--of languor?--of stopping?--of parting?--of knowing or

detecting?--of interrogating?

LESSON XXXIII.--PARSING.

1. What is required of the pupil in the ELEVENTH PRAXIS? How many

definitions are here given for each part of speech? 3. How is the following

example parsed? "O! sooner shall the earth and stars fall into chaos!"

[Now parse, in like manner, the three lessons of the \_Eleventh Chapter\_, or

the \_Eleventh Praxis\_; and then, if you please, you may correct orally the

lesson of \_bad English\_, with which the Eleventh Chapter concludes.]

CHAPTER XIII.--FOR WRITING.

EXERCISES IN ETYMOLOGY.

[When the pupil has become familiar with the different parts of speech, and

their classes and modifications, and has been sufficiently exercised in

etymological parsing and correcting, he should write out the following

exercises; for speech and writing afford us different modes of testing the

proficiency of students, and exercises in both are necessary to a complete

course of English Grammar.]

EXERCISE I.--ARTICLES.

1. Prefix the definite article to each of the following nouns: path, paths;

loss, losses; name, names; page, pages; want, wants; doubt, doubts; votary,

votaries.

2. Prefix the indefinite article to each of the following nouns: age,

error, idea, omen, urn, arch, bird, cage, dream, empire, farm, grain,

horse, idol, jay, king, lady, man, novice, opinion, pony, quail, raven,

sample, trade, uncle, vessel, window, youth, zone, whirlwind, union, onion,

unit, eagle, house, honour, hour, herald, habitation, hospital, harper,

harpoon, ewer, eye, humour.

3. Insert the definite article rightly in the following phrases: George

Second--fair appearance--part first--reasons most obvious--good man--wide

circle--man of honour--man of world--old books--common people--same

person--smaller piece--rich and poor--first and last--all time--great

excess--nine muses--how rich reward--so small number--all ancient

writers--in nature of things--much better course.

4. Insert the indefinite article rightly in each of the following phrases:

new name--very quick motion--other sheep--such power--what instance--great

weight--such worthy cause--to great difference--high honour--humble

station--universal law--what strange event--so deep interest--as firm

hope--so great wit--humorous story--such person--few dollars--little

reflection.

EXERCISE II.--NOUNS.

1. Write the plurals of the following nouns: town, country, case, pin,

needle, harp, pen, sex, rush, arch, marsh, monarch, blemish, distich,

princess, gas, bias, stigma, wo, grotto, folio, punctilio, ally, duty, toy,

money, entry, valley, volley, half, dwarf, strife, knife, roof, muff,

staff, chief, sheaf, mouse, penny, ox, foot, erratum, axis, thesis,

criterion, bolus, rebus, son-in-law, pailful, man-servant, fellow-citizen.

2. Write the feminines corresponding to the following nouns: earl, friar,

stag, lord, duke, marquis, hero, executor, nephew, heir, actor, enchanter,

hunter, prince, traitor, lion, arbiter, tutor, songster, abbot, master,

uncle, widower, son, landgrave.

3. Write the possessive case singular, of the following nouns: table, leaf,

boy, torch, park, porch, portico, lynx, calf, sheep, wolf, echo, folly,

cavern, father-in-law, court-martial, precipice, countess, lordship.

4. Write the possessive case plural, of the following nouns: priest, tutor,

scholar, mountain, city, courtier, judge, citizen, woman, servant, writer,

grandmother.

5. Write the possessive case, both singular and plural, of the following

nouns: body, fancy, lady, attorney, negro, nuncio, life, brother, deer,

child, wife, goose, beau, envoy, distaff, hero, thief, wretch.

EXERCISE III.--ADJECTIVES.

1. Annex a suitable noun to each of the following adjectives, without

repeating any word: good, great, tall, wise, strong, dark, dangerous,

dismal, drowsy, twenty, true, difficult, pale, livid, ripe, delicious,

stormy, rainy, convenient, heavy, disastrous, terrible, necessary.

Thus--good \_manners\_, &c.

2. Place a suitable adjective before each of the following nouns, without

repeating any word: man, son, merchant, work, fence, fear, poverty,

picture, prince, delay, suspense, devices, follies, actions. Thus--\_wise\_

man, &c.

3. Write the forms in which the following adjectives are compared by

inflection, or change of form: black, bright, short, white, old, high, wet,

big, few, lovely, dry, fat, good, bad, little, much, many, far, true, just,

vast.

4. Write the forms in which the following adjectives are compared, using

the adverbs of increase: delightful, comfortable, agreeable, pleasant,

fortunate, valuable, wretched, vivid, timid, poignant, excellent, sincere,

honest, correct.

5. Write the forms in which the following adjectives are compared, using

the comparative adverbs of inferiority or diminution: objectionable,

formidable, forcible, comely, pleasing, obvious, censurable, prudent,

imprudent, imperfect, pleasant, unpleasant.

EXERCISE IV.--PRONOUNS.

1. Write the nominative plural of the following pronouns: I, thou, he, she,

it, who, which, what, that, as.

2. Write the objective singular of the following pronouns: I, thou, he,

she, it, who, which, what, that, as.

3. Write the following words in their customary and proper forms: he's,

her's, it's, our's, your's, their's, who's, myself, hisself, theirselves.

4. Write together in declension the following pronouns, according to the

agreement of each two: I myself, thou thyself, he himself, she herself it

itself.

5. Rewrite the following sentences, and make them good English: "Nor is the

criminal binding any thing: but was, his self, being bound."--\_Wrights

Gram.\_, p. 193. "The writer surely did not mean, that the work was

preparing its self."--\_Ib.\_ "\_May\_, or \_can\_, in its self, denotes

possibility."--\_Ib.\_, p. 216. "Consequently those in connection with the

remaining pronouns respectively, should be written,--he, \_his self\_;--she,

\_her self\_;--ye or you, \_your selves\_; they, \_their selves\_."--\_Ib.\_, p.

154. "Lest their beacons be lost to the view, and their selves wrecked on

the shoals of destruction."--\_Ib.\_, p. 155. "In the regal style, as

generally in the second person, the singular noun is added to the plural

pronoun, \_ourself\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 78. "Each has it's peculiar

advantages."--\_Ib.\_, p. 283. "Who his ownself bare our sins in his own body

on the tree."--\_The Friend\_, iv, 302. "It is difficult to look inwardly on

oneself."--\_Journal of N. Y. Lit. Convention\_. p. 287.

EXERCISE V.--VERBS.

1. Write the four principal parts of each of the following verbs: slip,

thrill, caress, force, release, crop, try, die, obey, delay, destroy, deny,

buy, come, do, feed, lie, say, huzza, pretend, deliver, arrest.

2. Write the following preterits, each in its appropriate form: exprest,

stript, dropt, jumpt, prest, topt, whipt, linkt, propt, fixt, crost, stept,

distrest, gusht, confest, snapt, skipt, kist, discust, tackt.

3. Write the following verbs in the indicative mood, present tense, second

person singular: move, strive, please, reach, confess, fix, deny, survive,

know, go, outdo, close, lose, pursue, defend, surpass, conquer, deliver,

enlighten, protect, polish.

4. Write the following verbs in the indicative mood, present tense, third

person singular: leave, seem, search, impeach, fear, redress, comply,

bestow, do, woo, sue, view, allure, rely, beset, release, be, bias, compel,

degrade, efface, garnish, handle, induce.

5. Write the following verbs in the subjunctive mood, present tense, in the

three persons singular: serve, shun, turn, learn, find, wish, throw, dream,

possess, detest, disarm, allow, pretend, expose, alarm, deprive,

transgress.

EXERCISE VI.--VERBS.

1. Write a synopsis of the first person singular of the active verb

\_amuse\_, conjugated affirmatively.

2. Write a synopsis of the second person singular of the neuter verb \_sit\_,

conjugated affirmatively in the solemn style.

3. Write a synopsis of the third person singular of the active verb

\_speak\_, conjugated affirmatively in the compound form.

4. Write a synopsis of the first person plural of the passive verb \_be

reduced\_, conjugated affirmatively.

5. Write a synopsis of the second person plural of the active verb \_lose\_,

conjugated negatively.

6. Write a synopsis of the third person plural of the neuter verb \_stand\_,

conjugated interrogatively.

7. Write a synopsis of the first person singular of the active verb

\_derive\_, conjugated interrogatively and negatively.

EXERCISE VII.--PARTICIPLES.

1. Write the simple imperfect participles of the following verbs: belong,

provoke, degrade, impress, fly, do, survey, vie, coo, let, hit, put, defer,

differ, remember.

2. Write the perfect participles of the following verbs: turn, burn, learn,

deem, crowd, choose, draw, hear, lend, sweep, tear, thrust, steal, write,

delay, imply, exist.

3. Write the preperfect participles of the following verbs: depend, dare,

deny, value, forsake, bear, set, sit, lay, mix, speak, sleep, allot.

4. Write the following participles each in its appropriate form: dipt,

deckt, markt, equipt, ingulft, embarrast, astonisht, tost, embost, absorpt,

attackt, gasht, soakt, hackt.

5. Write the regular participles which are now generally preferred to the

following irregular ones: blent, blest, clad, curst, diven, drest, graven,

hoven, hewn, knelt, leant, leapt, learnt, lit, mown, mulct, past, pent,

quit, riven, roast, sawn, sodden, shaven, shorn, sown, striven, strown,

sweat, swollen, thriven, waxen.

6. Write the irregular participles which are commonly preferred to the

following regular ones: abided, bended, builded, bursted, catched, creeped,

dealed, digged, dwelled, freezed, grinded, knitted, layed, meaned, payed,

reaved, slided, speeded, splitted, stringed, sweeped, throwed, weaved,

weeped, winded.

EXERCISE VIII.--ADVERBS, &c.

1. Compare the following adverbs: soon, often, long, fast, near, early,

well, badly \_or\_ ill, little, much, far, forth.

2. Place the comparative adverbs of increase before each of the following

adverbs: purely, fairly, sweetly, earnestly, patiently, completely,

fortunately, profitably, easily.

3. Place the comparative adverbs of diminution before each of the following

adverbs: secretly, slily, liberally, favourably, powerfully, solemnly.

4. Insert suitable conjunctions in place of the following dashes:

Love--fidelity are inseparable. Be shy of parties--factions. Do well--boast

not. Improve time--it flies. There would be few paupers--no time were lost.

Be not proud--thou art human. I saw--it was necessary. Wisdom is

better--wealth. Neither he--I can do it. Wisdom--folly governs us. Take

care--thou fall. Though I should boast--am I nothing.

5. Insert suitable prepositions in place of the following dashes:

Plead--the dumb. Qualify thyself--action--study. Think often--the

worth--time. Live--peace--all men. Keep--compass. Jest not--serious

subjects. Take no part--slander. Guilt starts--its own shadow. Grudge

not--giving. Go not--sleep--malice. Debate not--temptation. Depend not--the

stores--others. Contend not--trifles. Many fall--grasping--things--their

reach. Be deaf--detraction.

6. Correct the following sentences, and adapt the interjections to the

emotions expressed by the other words: Aha! aha! I am undone. Hey! io! I am

tired. Ho! be still. Avaunt! this way. Ah! what nonsense. Heigh-ho! I am

delighted. Hist! it is contemptible. Oh! for that sympathetic glow! Ah!

what withering phantoms glare!

PART III.

SYNTAX.

Syntax treats of the relation, agreement, government, and arrangement, of

words in sentences. The \_relation\_ of words is their reference to other

words, or their dependence according to the sense.

The \_agreement\_ of words is their similarity in person, number, gender,

case, mood, tense, or form.

The \_government\_ of words is that power which one word has over an other,

to cause it to assume some particular modification.

The \_arrangement\_ of words is their collocation, or relative position, in a

sentence.

CHAPTER I.--SENTENCES.

A \_Sentence\_ is an assemblage of words, making complete sense, and always

containing a nominative and a verb; as, "Reward sweetens labour."

The \_principal parts\_ of a sentence are usually three; namely, the SUBJECT,

or nominative,--the attribute, or finite VERB,--and the case put after, or

the OBJECT[322] governed by the verb: as, "\_Crimes deserve punishment\_."

The \_other\_ or \_subordinate parts\_ depend upon these, either as primary or

as secondary \_adjuncts\_; as, "\_High\_ crimes \_justly\_ deserve \_very severe\_

punishments."

Sentences are usually said to be of two kinds, \_simple\_ and

\_compound\_.[323]

A \_simple sentence\_ is a sentence which consists of one single assertion,

supposition, command, question, or exclamation; as, "David and Jonathan

loved each other."--"If thine enemy hunger."--"Do violence to no man."--"Am

I not an apostle?"--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 1. "What immortal glory shall I have

acquired!"--HOOKE: \_Mur. Seq.\_, p. 71.

A \_compound sentence\_ is a sentence which consists of two or more simple

ones either expressly or tacitly connected; as, "Send men to Joppa, \_and\_

call for Simon, \_whose\_ surname is Peter; \_who\_ shall tell thee words,

\_whereby\_ thou and all thy house shall be saved."--\_Acts\_, xi, 13. "The

more the works of Cowper are read, the more his readers will find reason to

admire the variety and the extent, the graces and the energy, of his

literary talents."--HAYLEY: \_Mur. Seq.\_, p. 250.

A \_clause\_, or \_member\_, is a subdivision of a compound sentence; and is

itself a sentence, either simple or compound: as, "If thine enemy be

hungry, give him bread to eat; if he be thirsty, give him water to

drink."--\_Prov.\_, xxv, 21.[324]

A \_phrase\_ is two or more words which express some relation of different

ideas, but no entire proposition; as, "By the means appointed."--"To be

plain with you."--"Having loved his own."

Words that are omitted by \_ellipsis\_, and that are necessarily understood

in order to complete the construction, (and only such,) must be supplied in

parsing.

The \_leading principles\_ to be observed in the construction of sentences,

are embraced in the following twenty-four rules, which are arranged, as

nearly as possible, in the order of the parts of speech.

THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

RULE I.--ARTICLES.

Articles relate to the nouns which they limit.

RULE II.--NOMINATIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb, must be in the

nominative case.

RULE III.--APPOSITION. A Noun or a personal Pronoun used to explain a

preceding noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same case.

RULE IV.--POSSESSIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the name of the

thing possessed.

RULE V.--OBJECTIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun made the object of an active-transitive verb or

participle, is governed by it in the objective case.

RULE VI.--SAME CASES.

A Noun or a Pronoun put after a verb or participle not transitive, agrees

in case with a preceding noun or pronoun referring to the same thing.

RULE VII.--OBJECTIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun made the object of a preposition, is governed by it in

the objective case.

RULE VIII.--NOM. ABSOLUTE.

A Noun or a Pronoun is put absolute in the nominative, when its case

depends on no other word.

RULE IX.--ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns.

RULE X.--PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it

represents, in person, number, and gender.

RULE XI--PRONOUNS.

When the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality,

the Pronoun must agree with it in the plural number.

RULE XII.--PRONOUNS.

When a Pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by \_and\_, it must

agree with them jointly in the plural, because they are taken together.

RULE XIII.--PRONOUNS.

When a Pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, it

must agree with them singly, and not as if taken together.

RULE XIV.--FINITE VERBS.

Every finite Verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and

number.

RULE XV.--FINITE VERBS.

When the nominative is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality,

the Verb must agree with it in the plural number.

RULE XVI.--FINITE VERBS.

When a Verb has two or more nominatives connected by \_and\_, it must agree

with them jointly in the plural, because they are taken together.

RULE XVII.--FINITE VERBS.

When a Verb has two or more nominatives connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, it must

agree with them singly, and not as if taken together.

RULE XVIII.--INFINITIVES.

The Infinitive Mood is governed in general by the preposition TO, which

commonly connects it to a finite verb.

RULE XIX.--INFINITIVES.

The active verbs, \_bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see\_, and their

participles, usually take the Infinitive after them without the preposition

TO.

RULE XX.--PARTICIPLES.

Participles relate to nouns or pronouns, or else are governed by

prepositions.

RULE XXI.--ADVERBS.

Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs.

RULE XXII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions connect words, sentences, or parts of sentences.

RULE XXIII.--PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions show the relations of words, and of the things or thoughts

expressed by them.

RULE XXIV.--INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections have no dependent construction; they are put absolute, either

alone, or with other words.

GENERAL OR CRITICAL OBSERVATIONS ON SYNTAX.

OBS. 1.--An explanation of the relation, agreement, government, and

arrangement, of words in sentences, constitutes that part of grammar which

we call \_Syntax\_. But many grammarians, representing this branch of their

subject as consisting of two parts only, "\_concord\_ and \_government\_" say

little or nothing of the \_relation\_ and \_arrangement\_ of words, except as

these are involved in the others. The four things are essentially different

in their nature, as may be seen by the definitions given above, yet not so

distinct in practice that they can well be made the basis of any perfect

division of the rules of syntax. I have therefore, on this occasion,

preferred the order of the parts of speech; each of which will form a

chapter in the Syntax of this work, as each forms a chapter in the

Etymology.

OBS. 2.--\_Agreement\_ and \_concord\_ are one and the same thing. \_Relation\_

and \_agreement\_, though different, may yet coincide, and be taken together.

The latter is moreover naturally allied to the former. Seven of the ten

parts of speech are, with a few exceptions, incapable of any agreement; of

these the \_relation\_ and \_use\_ must be explained in parsing; and all

\_requisite agreement\_ between any of the rest, is confined to words that

\_relate\_ to each other. For one word may \_relate\_ to an other and not

\_agree\_ with it; but there is never any \_necessary agreement\_ between words

that have not a \_relation\_ one to the other, or a connexion according to

the sense. Any similarity happening between unconnected words, is no

syntactical concord, though it may rank the terms in the same class

etymologically.

OBS. 3.--From these observations it may be seen, that the most important

and most comprehensive principle of English syntax, is the simple

\_Relation\_ of words, according to the sense. To this head alone, ought to

be referred all the rules of construction by which our articles, our

nominatives, our adjectives, our participles, our adverbs, our

conjunctions, our prepositions, and our interjections, are to be parsed. To

the ordinary syntactical use of any of these, no rules of concord,

government, or position, can at all apply. Yet so defective and erroneous

are the schemes of syntax which are commonly found in our English grammars,

that \_no rules\_ of simple relation, none by which any of the above-named

parts of speech can be consistently parsed, are in general to be found in

them. If there are any exceptions to this censure, they are very few, and

in treatises still marked with glaring defects in regard to the syntax of

some of these parts of speech.

OBS. 4.--Grammarians, of course, do not utter falsehoods intentionally; but

it is lamentable to see how often they pervert doctrine by untruths uttered

ignorantly. It is the design of this pandect, to make every one who reads

it, an intelligent judge of the \_perversions\_, as well as of the true

doctrines, of English grammar. The following citations will show him the

scope and parts which have commonly been assigned to our syntax: "The

construction of sentences depends principally upon the \_concord\_ or

\_agreement\_, and the \_regimen\_ or \_government\_, of words."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 68; \_Churchill's\_, 120. "Words in sentences have a \_twofold

relation\_ to one another; namely, that of \_Concord\_ or Agreement; and that

of \_Government\_ or Influence."--\_Dr. Adam's Latin and English Grammar\_, p.

151. "The third part of Grammar is SYNTAX, which treats of the \_agreement

and construction\_ of words in a sentence."--\_E. G. Greene's Grammatical

Text-Book\_, p. 15. "Syntax principally consists of two parts, \_Concord\_ and

\_Government\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 142; \_Ingersoll's\_, 170; \_Alger's\_,

51; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 119; and many others. "Syntax consists of two parts,

\_Concord\_ and \_Government\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 175; \_Wright's\_, 124.

"The Rules of Syntax may all be included under three heads, \_Concord,

Government\_, and \_Position\_."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 87. "\_Position\_

means the \_place\_ which a word occupies in a sentence."--\_Ib.\_ "These rules

may be mostly ranked under the two heads of \_agreement\_ and \_government\_;

the remainder may be termed \_miscellaneous\_."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 92.

"Syntax treats of the agreement, government and proper arrangement of words

in \_a sentence\_."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 43. This last-named author,

in touching the text of my books, has often \_corrupted\_ it, as he does

here; but my definitions of \_the tenses\_ he copied without marring them

much. The borrowing occurred as early as 1828, and I add this notice now,

lest any should suppose \_me\_ the plagiarist.

OBS. 5.--Most of our English grammars have \_more\_ rules of syntax than are

needed, and yet are very deficient in \_such\_ as are needed. To say, as some

do, that articles, adjectives, and participles, \_agree\_ with nouns, is to

teach Greek or Latin syntax, and not English. To throw, as Nutting does,

the whole syntax of adverbs into a remark on \_such a rule of agreement\_, is

to choose disorder for its own sake. To say, with Frost, Hall, Smith,

Perley, Kirkham, Sanborn, Rand, and others, "The nominative case \_governs\_

the verb in number and person," and again, "A verb must \_agree\_ with its

nominative case in number and person," is to confound the meaning of

\_government\_ and \_agreement\_, to say the same thing in different words, and

to leave the subject of a verb still without a rule: for rules of

government are applicable only to the words governed, and nothing ever

agrees with that which governs it.[325] To say, with Murray and others,

"Participles have the same government as the verbs from which they are

derived," is to say nothing by which either verbs or participles may be

parsed, or any of their errors corrected: those many grammarians,

therefore, who make this their only rule for participles, leave them all

without any syntax. To say, with Murray, Alger, and others, "Adverbs,

\_though they have no government of case, tense, &c.\_, require an

appropriate \_situation\_ in the sentence," is to squander words at random,

and leave the important question unanswered, "To what do adverbs relate?"

To say again, with the same gentlemen, "Conjunctions connect \_the same

moods and tenses of verbs, and cases\_ of nouns and pronouns," is to put an

ungrammatical, obscure, and useless assertion, in the place of an important

rule. To say merely, "Prepositions govern the objective case," is to rest

all the syntax of prepositions on a rule that never applies to them, but

which is meant only for one of the constructions of the objective case. To

say, as many do, "Interjections \_require\_ the objective case of a pronoun

of the first person after them, and the nominative case of the second," is

to tell what is utterly false as the words stand, and by no means true in

the sense which the authors intend. Finally, to suppose, with Murray, that,

"the Interjection \_does not require a distinct, appropriate rule\_," is in

admirable keeping with all the foregoing quotations, and especially with

his notion of what it \_does\_ require; namely, "the \_objective case\_ of the

first person:" but who dares deny that the following exclamation is good

English?

"\_O\_ wretched \_we!\_ why were we hurried down

This lubric and adulterate age!"--\_Dryden\_.

OBS. 6.--The \_truth\_ of any doctrine in science, can be nothing else than

its conformity to facts, or to the nature of things; and chiefly by what he

knows of the things themselves, must any one judge of what others say

concerning them. Erroneous or inadequate views, confused or inconsistent

statements, are the peculiar property of those who advance them; they have,

in reality, no relationship to science itself, because they originate in

ignorance; but all science is knowledge--it is knowledge methodized. What

general rules are requisite for the syntactical parsing of the several

parts of speech in English, may be seen at once by any one who will

consider for a moment the usual construction of each. The correction of

false syntax, in its various forms, will require more--yes, five times as

many; but such of these as answer only the latter purpose, are, I think,

better reserved for notes under the principal rules. The doctrines which I

conceive most worthy to form the leading canons of our syntax, are those

which are expressed in the twenty-four rules above. If other authors

prefer more, or fewer, or different principles for their chief rules, I

must suppose, it is because they have studied the subject less. Biased, as

we may be, both by our knowledge and by our ignorance, it is easy for men

to differ respecting matters of \_expediency\_; but that clearness, order,

and consistency, are both \_expedient\_, and \_requisite\_, in didactic

compositions, is what none can doubt.

OBS. 7.--Those English grammarians who tell us, as above, that syntax is

divided into \_parts\_, or included under a certain number of \_heads\_, have

almost universally contradicted themselves by treating the subject without

any regard to such a division; and, at the same time, not a few have

somehow been led into the gross error of supposing broad principles of

concord or government where no such things exist. For example, they have

invented general RULES like these: "The adjective \_agrees\_ with its noun in

number, case, and gender."--\_Bingham's English Gram.\_, p. 40.

"Interjections \_govern\_ the nominative case, and sometimes the objective:

as, '\_O thou! alas me!\_'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "Adjectives \_agree\_ with their

nouns in number."--\_Wilbur and Livingston's Gram.\_, p. 22. "Participles

\_agree\_ with their nouns in number."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "Every adjective

\_agrees in number\_ with some substantive expressed or understood."--

\_Hiley's Gram.\_, Rule 8th, p. 77. "The article THE \_agrees\_ with nouns in

either number: as, \_The wood, the woods\_."--\_Bucke's Classical Grammar of

the English Language\_, p. 84. "O! oh! ah! \_require\_ the accusative case of

a pronoun in the first person after them: as '\_Ah me!\_' But when the second

person is used, \_it requires\_ a nominative case: as, '\_O thou!\_'"--\_Ib.\_,

p. 87. "Two or more Nominatives in the singular number, connected by the

Conjunction \_or, nor\_, EITHER, NEITHER, \_govern\_ a singular Verb. But

Pronouns singular, of different persons, joined by \_or\_, EITHER, \_nor\_,

NEITHER, \_govern\_ a plural Verb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 94. "One Nominative frequently

\_governs\_ many Verbs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 95. "Participles are sometimes \_governed\_

by the article."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 192. "An adverb, an adjective,

or a participle, may involve in itself the force of \_a preposition, and

govern\_ the objective case."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 99. "The nominative

case \_governs\_ the verb." [326]--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 32; \_Kirkham's\_,

176; and others. "The nominative case \_comes before\_ the verb."--\_Bingham's

Gram.\_, p. 38; \_Wilbur and Livingston's\_, 23. "The Verb TO BE, \_always

governs\_ a Nominative, \_unless it be\_ of the Infinitive Mood."--\_Buchanan's

Syntax\_, p. 94. "A verb in the infinitive mood \_may be governed\_ by a verb,

noun, adjective, participle, or pronoun."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 187. Or,

(as a substitute for the foregoing rule,) say, according to this author: "A

verb in the infinitive mood, \_refers\_ to some noun or pronoun, as its

subject or actor."--\_Ib.\_, p. 188. Now what does he know of English

grammar, who supposes any of these rules to be worthy of the place which

they hold, or have held, in the halls of instruction?

OBS. 8.--It is a very common fault with the compilers of English grammars,

to join together in the same rule the syntax of different parts of speech,

uniting laws that must ever be applied separately in parsing. For example:

"RULE XI. Articles and adjectives \_relate to nouns\_ expressed or

understood; and the adjectives \_this, that, one, two\_, must agree in number

with the nouns to which they relate."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 87. Now, in

parsing an \_article\_, why should the learner have to tell all this story

about \_adjectives\_? Such a mode of expressing the rule, is certainly in bad

taste; and, after all, the syntax of adjectives is not here comprised, for

they often relate to pronouns. "RULE III. Every adjective and participle

\_belongs\_ to some noun or pronoun expressed or understood."--\_Frost's El.

of Gram.\_, p. 44. Here a compiler who in his etymology supposes participles

to be \_verbs\_, allows them no other construction than that of \_adjectives\_.

His rule implicitly denies that they can either be parts of their verbs in

the formation of \_tenses\_, or be governed by prepositions in the character

of \_gerunds\_. To suppose that a \_noun\_ may govern the objective case, is

both absurd in itself, and contrary to all authority; yet, among his

forty-nine rules, this author has the following: "RULE XXV. A participial

\_noun\_ is sometimes governed by a preposition, and \_may govern an objective

case\_; as, 'George is too fond of \_wasting time\_ in trifles.'"--\_Frost's

El. of Gram.\_, p. 47. Here again is the fault of which I am speaking, two

rules in one; and this fault is combined with an other still worse.

\_Wasting\_ is a participle, governed by \_of\_; and \_time\_ is a \_noun\_,

governed by \_wasting\_. The latter is a declinable word, and found in the

objective case; the former is indeclinable, and found in no case. It is an

error to suppose that cases are the only things which are susceptible of

being governed; nor is the brief rule, "Prepositions govern the objective

case," so very clear a maxim as never to be misapprehended. If the learner

infer from it, that \_all\_ prepositions must necessarily govern the

objective case, or that the objective case \_is always\_ governed by a

preposition, he will be led into a great mistake.

OBS. 9.--This error of crowding things together, is still more conspicuous

in the following examples: "RULE IV. Every article, adjective, and

participle, \_must qualify\_ some noun, or pronoun, either expressed or

understood."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 94. "RULE IX. The objective case is

governed by a transitive verb or a preposition, usually coming before

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98. Here an author who separates participles from verbs,

has attempted first to compress the entire syntax of three different parts

of speech into one short rule; and, secondly, to embrace all the forms of

dependence, incident to objective nouns and pronouns, in an other as short.

This brevity is a poor exchange for the order and distribution which it

prevents--especially as none of its objects are here reached. Articles do

not relate to pronouns, unless the obsolete phrase \_the which\_ is to be

revived;[327] participles have other constructions than those which

adjectives admit; there are exceptions to the rules which tie articles to

nouns, and adjectives to nouns or pronouns; and the objective case may not

only be governed by a participle, but may be put in apposition with an

other objective. The objective case in English usually stands for the Latin

genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative; hence any rule that shall

embrace the whole construction of this one case, will be the sole

counterpart to four fifths of all the rules in any code of Latin syntax.

For I imagine the construction of these four oblique cases, will be found

to occupy at least that proportion of the syntactical rules and notes in

any Latin grammar that can be found. Such rules, however, are often placed

under false or equivocal titles;[328] as if they contained the construction

of the \_governing\_ words, rather than that of the \_governed\_. And this

latter error, again, has been transferred to most of our English grammars,

to the exclusion of any rule for the proper construction of participles, of

adverbs, of conjunctions, of prepositions, or of interjections. See the

syntax of Murray and his copyists, whose treatment of these parts of speech

is noticed in the fifth observation above.

OBS. 10.--It is doubtless most convenient, that, in all rules for the

construction of \_cases\_, nouns and pronouns be taken together; because the

very same doctrines apply equally well to both, and a case is as distinct a

thing in the mind, as a part of speech. This method, therefore, I have

myself pursued; and it has indeed the authority of all grammarians--not

excepting those who violate its principles by adopting two special rules

for the relative pronoun, which are not needed. These special rules, which

I shall notice again hereafter, may be seen in Murray's Rule 6th, which is

double, and contains them both. The most complex rule that I have admitted,

is that which embraces the government of objectives by verbs and

participles. The regimen by verbs, and the regimen by participles, may not

improperly be reckoned distinct principles; but the near alliance of

participles to their verbs, seems to be a sufficient reason for preferring

one rule to two, in this instance.

OBS. 11.--An other common fault in the treatment of this part of grammar,

is the practice of making many of the rules \_double\_, or even \_triple\_, in

their form. Of L. Murray's twenty-two rules, for instance, there are six

which severally consist of two distinct paragraphs; and one is composed of

three such parts, with examples under each. Five others, though simple in

their form, are complex in their doctrine, and liable to the objections

which have been urged above against this characteristic. These twelve,

therefore, I either reject entirely from my catalogue, or divide and

simplify to fit them for their purpose. In short, by comparing the

twenty-two rules which were adopted by this popular grammarian, with the

twenty-four which are given in this work, the reader may see, that twelve

of the former have pleased me too little to have any place at all among the

latter, and that none of the remaining ten have been thought worthy to be

copied without considerable alteration. Nor are the rules which I adopt,

more nearly coincident with those of any other writer. I do not proffer to

the schools the second-hand instructions of a mere compiler. In his

twenty-two rules, independently of their examples, Hurray has used six

hundred and seventeen words, thus giving an average of twenty-eight to each

rule; whereas in the twenty-four rules which are presented above, the words

are but four hundred and thirty-six, making the average less than nineteen.

And yet I have not only divided some of his propositions and extended

others, but, by rejecting what was useless or erroneous, and filling up the

deficiencies which mark his code, I have delivered twice the amount of

doctrine in two thirds of the space, and furnished eleven important rules

which are not contained in his grammar. Thus much, in this place, to those

who so frequently ask, "Wherein does your book differ from Murray's?"

OBS. 12.--Of all the systems of syntax, or of grammar, which it has been my

fortune to examine, a book which was first published by Robinson and

Franklin of New York in 1839, a fair-looking duodecimo volume of 384 pages,

under the brief but rather ostentatious title, "THE GRAMMAR \_of the English

Language\_" is, I think, the most faulty,--the most remarkable for the

magnitude, multitude, and variety, of its strange errors, inconsistencies,

and defects. This singular performance is the work of \_Oliver B. Peirce\_,

an itinerant lecturer on grammar, who dates his preface at "Rome, N. Y.,

December 29th, 1838." Its leading characteristic is boastful innovation; it

being fall of acknowledged "contempt for the works of other writers."--P.

379. It lays "claim to \_singularity\_" as a merit, and boasts of a new thing

under the sun--"in a theory RADICALLY NEW, a Grammar of the English

Language; something which I believe," says the author, "has NEVER BEFORE

BEEN FOUND."--P. 9. The old scholastic notion, that because Custom is the

arbitress of speech, novelty is excluded from grammar, this hopeful

reformer thoroughly condemns; "repudiating this sentiment to the full

extent of it," (\_ib.\_) and "writing his theory as though he had never seen

a book, entitled an English Grammar."--\_Ib.\_ And, for all the ends of good

learning, it would have been as well or better, if he never had. His

passion for novelty has led him not only to abandon or misapply, in an

unprecedented degree, the usual terms of the art, but to disregard in many

instances its most unquestionable principles, universal as well as

particular. His parts of speech are the following ten: "Names, Substitutes,

\_Asserters\_, Adnames, Modifiers, Relatives, Connectives, Interrogatives,

Repliers, and Exclamations."--\_The Gram.\_, p. 20. His \_names\_ are nouns;

his \_substitutes\_ are pronouns, and any adjectives whose nouns are not

expressed; his \_asserters\_ are verbs and participles, though the latter

assert nothing; his \_adnames\_ are articles, adjectives whose nouns or

pronouns are expressed, and adverbs that relate to adjectives; his

\_modifiers\_ are such adverbs as "modify the sense or sound of a whole

sentence;" his \_relatives\_ are prepositions, some of which \_govern no

object\_; his \_connectives\_ are conjunctions, with certain adverbs and

phrases; his \_interrogatives\_ and \_repliers\_ are new parts of speech, very

lamely explained; his \_exclamations\_ are interjections, and "\_phrases used

independently\_; as, O hapless choice!"--\_The Gram.\_, p. 22. In parsing, he

finds a world of "\_accommodatives\_;" as, "John is \_more than five years\_

older than William."--\_Ib.\_ p. 202. Here he calls the whole phrase "\_more

than five years\_" "a secondary \_adname\_" i. e., \_adjective\_. But, in the

phrase, "\_more than five years\_ afterwards," he would call the same words

"a secondary \_modifier\_;" i. e., \_adverb\_.--\_Ib.\_, p. 203. And, in the

phrase, "\_more than five years\_ before the war," he would call them "a

secondary \_relative\_;" i. e., \_preposition\_.--\_Ib.\_, p. 204. And so of

other phrases innumerable. His cases are five, two of which are new, "the

\_Independent\_" and "the \_Twofold\_ case." His "\_independent\_ case" is

sometimes the nominative in form, as "\_thou\_" and "\_she\_;" (p. 62;)

sometimes the objective, as, "\_me\_" and "\_him\_;" (p. 62 and p. 199;)

sometimes erroneously supposed to be the subject of a finite verb; while

\_his nominative\_ is sometimes as erroneously said to have \_no\_ verb. His

code of syntax has two sorts of rules, Analytical and Synthetical. The

former are professedly seventeen in number; but, many of them consisting of

two, three, or four distinct parts, their real number is more properly

thirty-four. The latter are reckoned forty-five; but if we count their

separate parts, they are fifty-six: and these with the others make

\_ninety\_. I shall not particularize their faults. All of them are

whimsically conceived and badly written. In short, had the author artfully

designed to turn English grammar into a subject of contempt and ridicule,

by as ugly a caricature of it as he could possibly invent, he could never

have hit the mark more exactly than he has done in this "\_new

theory\_"--this rash production, on which he so sincerely prides himself.

Alone as he is, in well-nigh all his opinions, behold how prettily he talks

of "COMMON SENSE, the only sure foundation of any theory!" and says, "On

this imperishable foundation--this rock of eternal endurance--I rear my

superstructure, \_the edifice of scientific truth\_, the temple of

Grammatical consistency!"--\_Peirce's Preface\_, p. 7.

OBS. 13.--For the teaching of different languages, it has been thought very

desirable to have "a Series of grammars, Greek, Latin, English, &c., all,

so far as general principles are concerned, upon the same plan, and as

nearly in the same words as the genius of the languages would permit."--See

\_Bullions's Principles of E. Gram.\_, 2d Ed., pp. iv and vi. This scheme

necessarily demands a minute comparison not only of the several languages

themselves, but also of the various grammars in which their principles,

whether general or particular, are developed. For by no other means can it

be ascertained to what extent uniformity of this kind will be either

profitable to the learner, or consistent with truth. Some books have been

published, which, it is pretended, are thus accommodated to one an other,

and to the languages of which they treat. But, in view of the fact, that

the Latin or the Greek grammars now extant, (to say nothing of the French,

Spanish, and others,) are almost as various and as faulty as the English, I

am apprehensive that this is a desideratum not soon to be realized,--a

design more plausible in the prospectus, than feasible in the attempt. At

any rate, the grammars of different languages must needs differ as much as

do the languages themselves, otherwise some of their principles will of

course be false; and we have already seen that the nonobservance of this

has been a fruitful source of error in respect to English syntax. The

achievement, however, is not altogether impossible, if a man of competent

learning will devote to it a sufficient degree of labour. But the mere

revising or altering of some one grammar in each language, can scarcely

amount to any thing more than a pretence of improvement. Waiving the

pettiness of compiling upon the basis of an other man's compilation, the

foundation of a good grammar for any language, must be both deeper and

broader than all the works which Professor Bullions has selected to build

upon: for the Greek, than Dr. Moor's "\_Elementa Linguæ, Græcæ\_;" for the

Latin, than Dr. Adam's "\_Rudiments of Latin and English Grammar\_;" for the

English, than Murray's "\_English Grammar\_," or Lennie's "\_Principles of

English Grammar\_;" which last work, in fact, the learned gentleman

preferred, though he pretends to have mended the code of Murray. But,

certainly, Lennie never supposed himself a copyist of Murray; nor was he

to much extent an imitator of him, either in method or in style.

OBS. 14.--We have, then, in this new American form of "\_The Principles of

English Grammar\_," Lennie's very compact little book, altered, enlarged,

and bearing on its title-page (which is otherwise in the very words of

Lennie) an other author's name, and, in its early editions, the false and

self-accusing inscription, "(ON THE PLAN OF MURRAY'S GRAMMAR.)" And this

work, claiming to have been approved "by the most competent judges," now

challenges the praise not only of being "better adapted to the use of

academies and schools \_than any yet published\_" but of so presenting "\_the

rules and principles of general grammar\_, as that they may apply to, and be

in perfect harmony with, \_the grammars of the dead languages\_"--

\_Recommendations\_, p. iv. These are admirable professions for a critical

author to publish; especially, as every rule or principle of General

Grammar, condemning as it must whoever violates it, cannot but "be in

\_perfect harmony\_ with" every thing that is true. In this model for all

grammars, Latin, Greek, &c., the doctrines of punctuation, of

abbreviations, and of capital letters, and also sections on the rhetorical

divisions of a discourse, the different kinds of composition, the different

kinds of prose composition, and the different kinds of poetry, are made

\_parts of the Syntax\_; while his hints for correct and elegant writing, and

his section on the composition of letters and themes, which other writers

suppose to belong rather to syntax, are here subjoined as \_parts of

Prosody\_. In the exercises for parsing appended to his \_Etymology\_, the

Doctor furnishes \_twenty-five Rules of Syntax\_, which, he says, "are not

intended to be committed to memory, but to be used as directions to the

beginner in parsing the exercises under them."--\_E. Gram.\_, p. 75. Then,

for his syntax proper, he copies from Lennie, with some alterations,

\_thirty-four other rules\_, nine of which are double, and all are jumbled

together by both authors, without any regard to the distinction of concord

and government, so common in the grammars of the dead languages, and even,

so far as I can discover, without any principle of arrangement whatever.

They profess indeed to have placed those rules first, which are eaisest

[sic--KTH] to learn, and oftenest to be applied; but the syntax of

\_articles\_, which even on this principle should have formed the first of

the series, is placed by Lennie as the thirty-fourth rule, and by his

amender as the thirty-second. To all this complexity the latter adds

\_twenty-two Special Rules\_, with an abundance of "\_Notes\_" "\_Observations\_"

and "\_Remarks\_" distinguished by these titles, on some principle which no

one but the author can understand. Lastly, his \_method of syntactical

parsing\_ is not only mixed up with etymological questions and answers, but

his \_directions\_ for it, with their \_exemplification\_, are perplexingly at

variance with his own \_specimen\_ of the performance. See his book, pages

131 and 133. So much for this grand scheme.

OBS. 15.--Strictures like the foregoing, did they not involve the defence

of grammar itself, so as to bear upon interests more important than the

success or failure of an elementary book, might well be withheld through

motives of charity, economy, and peace. There is many a grammar now extant,

concerning which a truly critical reader may know more at first sight, than

ever did he that made it. What such a reader will be inclined to rate

beneath criticism, an other perhaps will confidently pronounce above it. If

my remarks are just, let the one approve them for the other's sake. For

what becomes of the teaching of grammar, when that which is received as the

most excellent method, must be exempted from censure by reason of its utter

worthlessness? And what becomes of Universal Syntax, when the imperfect

systems of the Latin and Greek grammars, in stead of being amended, are

modelled to the grossest faults of what is worthless in our own?[329]

OBS. 16.--What arrangement of Latin or Greek syntax may be best in itself,

I am not now concerned to show. Lily did not divide his, as others have

divided the subject since; but first stated briefly his \_three concords\_,

and then proceeded to what he called \_the construction\_ of the several

parts of speech, taking them in their order. The three concords of Lily are

the following: (1.) Of the \_Nominative and Verb\_; to which the accusative

before an infinitive, and the collective noun with a plural verb, are

reckoned exceptions; while the agreement of a verb or pronoun with two or

more nouns, is referred to the figure \_syllepsis\_. (2.) Of the \_Substantive

and Adjective\_; under which the agreement of participles, and of some

pronouns, is placed in the form of a note. (3.) Of the \_Relative and

Antecedent\_; after which the two special rules for the \_cases\_ of relatives

are given as underparts. Dr. Adam divided his syntax into two parts; of

Simple Sentences, and of Compound Sentences. His three concords are the

following: (1.) Of one \_Substantive with an Other\_; which construction is

placed by Lily and many others among the figures of syntax, and is called

\_apposition\_. (2.) Of an \_Adjective with a Substantive\_; under which

principle, we are told to take adjective pronouns and participles. (3.) Of

a \_Verb with a Nominative\_; under which, the collective noun with a verb of

either number, is noticed in an observation. The construction of relatives,

of conjunctions, of comparatives, and of words put absolute, this author

reserves for the second part of his syntax; and the agreement of plural

verbs or pronouns with joint nominatives or antecedents, which Ruddiman

places in an observation on his \_four concords\_, is here absurdly reckoned

a part of the construction of conjunctions. Various divisions and

subdivisions of the Latin syntax, with special dispositions of some

particular principles of it, may be seen in the elaborate grammars of

Despauter, Prat, Ruddiman, Grant, and other writers. And here it may be

proper to observe, that, the mixing of syntax with etymology, after the

manner of Ingersoll, Kirkham, R. W. Green, R. C. Smith, Sanborn, Felton,

Hazen, Parkhurst, Parker and Fox, Weld, and others, is a modern innovation,

pernicious to both; either topic being sufficiently comprehensive, and

sufficiently difficult, when they are treated separately; and each having,

in some instances, employed the pens of able writers almost to the

exclusion of the other.

OBS. 17.--The syntax of any language must needs conform to the

peculiarities of its etymology, and also be consistent with itself; for all

will expect better things of a scholar, than to lay down positions in one

part of his grammar, that are irreconcilable with what he has stated in an

other. The English language, having few inflections, has also few concords

or agreements, and still fewer governments. Articles, adjectives, and

participles, which in many other languages agree with their nouns in

gender, number, and case, have usually, in English, no modifications in

which they \_can agree\_ with their nouns. Yet \_Lowth\_ says, "The adjective

in English, having no variation of gender and number, \_cannot but agree\_

with the substantive in these respects."--\_Short Introd. to Gram.\_, p. 86.

What then is the \_agreement\_ of words? Can it be anything else than their

\_similarity\_ in some common property or modification? And is it not

obvious, that no two things in nature can at all \_agree\_, or \_be alike\_,

except in some quality or accident which belongs to each of them? Yet how

often have \_Murray\_ and others, as well as \_Lowth\_, forgotten this! To give

one instance out of many: "\_Gender\_ has respect only to the third person

singular of the pronouns, \_he, she, it\_."--\_Murray, J. Peirce, Flint, Lyon,

Bacon, Russell, Fisk, Maltby, Alger, Miller, Merchant, Kirkham\_, and other

careless copyists. Yet, according to these same gentlemen, "Gender is \_the

distinction of nouns\_, with regard to sex;" and, "Pronouns \_must always

agree\_ with their antecedents, \_and the nouns\_ for which they stand, in

gender." Now, not one of these three careless assertions can possibly be

reconciled with either of the others!

OBS. 18.--\_Government\_ has respect only to nouns, pronouns, verbs,

participles, and prepositions; the other five parts of speech neither

govern nor are governed. The \_governing\_ words may be either nouns, or

verbs, or participles, or prepositions; the words \_governed\_ are either

nouns, or pronouns, or verbs, or participles. In parsing, the learner must

remember that the rules of government are not to be applied to the

\_governing\_ words, but to those which \_are governed\_; and which, for the

sake of brevity, are often technically named after the particular form or

modification assumed; as, \_possessives, objectives, infinitives,

gerundives\_. These are the only things in English, that can properly be

said to be subject to government; and these are always so, in their own

names; unless we except such infinitives as stand in the place of

nominatives. \_Gerundives\_ are participles governed by prepositions; but,

there being little or no occasion to distinguish these from other

participles, we seldom use this name. The Latin \_Gerund\_ differs from a

participle, and the English \_Gerundive\_ differs from a participial noun.

The participial noun may be the subject or the object of a verb, or may

govern the possessive case before it, like any other noun; but the true

English gerundive, being essentially a participle, and governing an object

after it, like any other participle, is itself governed only by a

preposition. At least, this is its usual and allowed construction, and no

other is acknowledged to be indisputably right.

OBS. 19.--The simple \_Relations\_ of words in English, (or those several

\_uses\_ of the parts of speech which we may refer to this head,) are the

following nine: (1.) Of Articles to nouns, by Rule 1st; (2.) Of Nominatives

to verbs, by Rule 2d; (3.) Of Nominatives absolute or independent, by Rule

8th; (4.) Of Adjectives to nouns or pronouns, by Rule 9th; (5.) Of

Participles to nouns or pronouns, by Rule 20th; (6.) Of Adverbs to verbs,

participles, &c., by Rule 21st; (7.) Of Conjunctions as connecting words,

phrases, or sentences, by Rule 22nd; (8.) Of Prepositions as showing the

relations of things, by Rule 23d; (9.) Of Interjections as being used

independently, by Rule 24th.

OBS. 20.--The syntactical \_Agreements\_ in English, though actually much

fewer than those which occur in Latin, Greek, or French, may easily be so

reckoned as to amount to double, or even triple, the number usually spoken

of by the old grammarians. The twenty-four rules above, embrace the

following ten heads, which may not improperly be taken for so many distinct

concords: (1.) Of a Noun or Pronoun in direct apposition with another, by

Rule 3d; (2.) Of a Noun or Pronoun after a verb or participle not

transitive, by Rule 6th; (3.) Of a Pronoun with its antecedent, by Rule

10th; (4.) Of a Pronoun with a collective noun, by Rule 11th; (5.) Of a

Pronoun with joint antecedents, by Rule 12th; (6.) Of a Pronoun with

disjunct antecedents, by Rule 13th; (7.) Of a Verb with its nominative, by

Rule 14th; (8.) Of a Verb with a collective noun, by Rule 15th; (9.) Of a

Verb with joint nominatives, by Rule 16th; (10.) Of a Verb with disjunct

nominatives, by Rule 17th. To these may be added two other \_special\_

concords, less common and less important, which will be explained in

\_notes\_ under the rules: (11.) Of one Verb with an other, in mood, tense,

and form, when two are connected so as to agree with the same nominative;

(12.) Of Adjectives that imply unity or plurality, with their nouns, in

number.

OBS. 21.--Again, by a different mode of reckoning them, the

concords or the \_general principles\_ of agreement, in our language, may be

made to be only three or four; and some of these much \_less general\_, than

they are in other languages: (1.) \_Words in apposition agree in case\_,

according to Rule 3d; of which principle, Rule 6th may be considered a

modification. (2.) \_Pronouns agree, with their nouns, in person, number,

and gender\_, according to Rule 10th; of which principle, Rules 11th, 12th,

and 13th, may be reckoned modifications. (3.) \_Verbs agree with their

nominatives, in person and number\_, according to Rule 14th; of which

principle Rules 15th, 16th, and 17th, and the occasional agreement of one

verb with an other, may be esteemed mere modifications. (4.) \_Some

adjectives agree with their nouns in number\_. These make up the twelve

concords above enumerated.

OBS. 22.--The rules of \_Government\_ in the best Latin grammars are about

sixty; and these are usually distributed (though not very properly) under

three heads; "1. Of Nouns. 2. Of Verbs. 3. Of Words indeclinable."--

\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 170. "Regimen est triplex: 1. Nominum. 2.

Verborum. 3. Vocum indeclinabilium."--\_Ruddiman's Gram.\_, p. 138. This

division of the subject brings all the \_titles\_ of the rules wrong. For

example, if the rule be, "Active verbs govern the accusative case," this is

not properly "the government of \_verbs\_" but rather the government \_of the

accusative\_ by verbs. At least, such titles are \_equivocal\_, and likely to

mislead the learner. The governments in English are only seven, and these

are expressed, perhaps with sufficient distinctness, in six of the

foregoing rules: (1.) Of Possessives by nouns, in Rule 4th; (2.) Of

Objectives by verbs, in Rule 5th; (3.) Of Objectives by participles, in

Rule 5th; (4.) Of Objectives by prepositions, in Rule 7th; (5.) Of

Infinitives by the preposition \_to\_, in Rule 18th; (6.) Of Infinitives by

the verbs \_bid, dare\_, &c., in Rule 19th; (7.) Of Participles by

prepositions, in Rule 20th.

OBS. 23.--The \_Arrangement\_ of words, (which will be sufficiently treated

of in the observations hereafter to be made on the several rules of

construction,) is an important part of syntax, in which not only the beauty

but the propriety of language is intimately concerned, and to which

particular attention should therefore be paid in composition. But it is to

be remembered, that the mere collocation of words in a sentence never

affects the method of parsing them: on the contrary, the same words,

however placed, are always to be parsed in precisely the same way, so long

as they express precisely the same meaning. In order to show that we have

parsed any part of an inverted or difficult sentence rightly, we are at

liberty to declare the meaning by any arrangement which will make the

construction more obvious, provided we retain both the sense and all the

words unaltered; but to drop or alter any word, is to pervert the text

under pretence of resolving it, and to make a mockery of parsing. Grammar

rightly learned, enables one to understand both the sense and the

construction of whatsoever is rightly written; and he who reads what he

does not understand, reads to little purpose. With great indignity to the

muses, several pretenders to grammar have foolishly taught, that, "In

parsing poetry, in order to \_come at the meaning\_ of the author, the

learner will find it necessary to transpose his language."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 166. See also the books of \_Merchant, Wilcox, O. B. Peirce,

Hull, Smith, Felton\_, and others, to the same effect. To what purpose can

he \_transpose\_ the words of a sentence, who does not first see what they

mean, and how to explain or parse them as they stand?

OBS. 24.--Errors innumerable have been introduced into the common modes of

parsing, through a false notion of what constitutes a \_simple sentence\_.

Lowth, Adam, Murray, Gould, Smith, Ingersoll, Comly, Lennie, Hiley,

Bullions, Wells, and many others, say, "A simple sentence has in it \_but

one subject\_, and \_one finite verb\_: as, 'Life is short.'"--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 141. In accordance with this assertion, some assume, that,

"Every nominative \_has its own verb\_ expressed or understood;" and that,

"Every verb (except in the infinitive mood and participle) \_has its own

nominative\_ expressed or understood."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 87. The

adopters of these dogmas, of course think it right to \_supply\_ a nominative

whenever they do not find a separate one expressed for every finite verb,

and a verb whenever they do not find a separate one expressed for every

nominative. This mode of interpretation not only precludes the agreement of

a verb with two or more nominatives, so as to render nugatory two of the

most important rules of these very gentlemen's syntax; but, what is worse,

it perverts many a plain, simple, and perfect sentence, to a form which its

author did not choose, and a meaning which he never intended. Suppose, for

example, the text to be, "A good constitution and good laws make good

subjects."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 152. Does not the verb \_make\_ agree with

\_constitution\_ and \_laws\_, taken conjointly? and is it not a \_perversion\_

of the sentence to interpret it otherwise? Away then with all this

\_needless subaudition!\_ But while we thus deny that there can be a true

ellipsis of what is not necessary to the construction, it is not to be

denied that there \_are\_ true ellipses, and in some men's style very many.

The assumption of O. B. Peirce, that no correct sentence is elliptical, and

his impracticable project of a grammar founded on this principle, are among

the grossest of possible absurdities.

OBS. 25.--Dr. Wilson says, "There may be several subjects to the same verb,

several verbs to the same subject, or several objects to the same verb, and

the sentence be simple. But when the sentence remains simple, the same verb

must be differently affected by its several adjuncts, or the sense liable

to be altered by a separation. If the verb or the subject \_be\_ affected in

the same manner, or the sentence \_is\_ resolvable into more, it is

compounded. Thus, 'Violet, indigo, blue, green, yellow, orange, and red,

mixed in due proportion, produce white,' is a simple sentence, for the

subject is indivisible. But, 'Violet, indigo, blue, green, yellow, orange,

and red, are refrangible rays of light,' is a compound sentence, and may be

separated into seven."--\_Essay on Gram.\_, p. 186. The propriety of the

distinction here made, is at least questionable; and I incline to consider

the second example a simple sentence, as well as the first; because what

the writer calls a separation into seven, involves a change of \_are\_ to

\_is\_, and of \_rays\_ to \_ray\_, as well as a sevenfold repetition of this

altered predicate, "\_is a refrangible ray of light\_." But the parser, in

interpreting the words of others, and expounding the construction of what

is written, has no right to alter anything in this manner. Nor do I admit

that he has a right to insert or repeat anything \_needlessly\_; for the

nature of a sentence, or the syntax of some of its words, may often be

altered without change of the sense, or of any word for an other: as, "'A

wall seven feet high;' that is, 'A wall \_which is\_ seven feet

high.'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 109. "'He spoke and acted prudently;' that is,

'He spoke \_prudently\_, and \_he\_ acted prudently.'"--\_Ibid.\_ '"He spoke and

acted wisely;' that is, 'He spoke \_wisely\_, and \_he\_ acted

wisely.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 219; \_Alger's\_, 70: \_R. C. Smith's\_, 183;

\_Weld's\_, 192; and others. By this notion of ellipsis, the connexion or

joint relation of words is destroyed.

OBS. 26.--Dr. Adam, who thought the division of sentences into simple and

compound, of sufficient importance to be made the basis of a general

division of syntax into two parts, has defined a simple sentence to be,

"that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb;" and a compound

sentence, "that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb."

And of the latter he gives the following erroneous and self-contradictory

account: "A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or

\_phrases\_, and is commonly called a \_Period\_. The parts of which a compound

sentence consists, are called \_Members\_ or \_Clauses\_. In every compound

sentence there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several

attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and several

attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the

same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both. Every

verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a

subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period, as many

propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode. Sentences are compounded

by means of relatives and conjunctions; as, Happy is the man \_who\_ loveth

religion, and practiseth virtue."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 202; \_Gould's\_, 199;

and others.

OBS. 27.--Now if every compound sentence consists of such

parts, members, or clauses, as are in themselves sentences, either simple

or compound, either elliptical or complete; it is plain, in the first

place, that the term "phrases" is misapplied above, because a phrase is

properly only a part of some simple sentence. And if "a simple sentence is

that which has but one nominative and one finite verb," and "a compound

sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences," it follows, since

"all sentences are either simple or compound," that, \_in no sentence, can

there be\_ "either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several

verbs applied to the same nominative." What, therefore, this author

regarded as \_the characteristic\_ of all compound sentences, is, according

to his own previous positions, utterly impossible to any sentence. Nor is

it less repugnant to his subsequent doctrine, that, "Sentences are

compounded by means of \_relatives\_ and \_conjunctions\_;" for, according to

his notion, "A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join

\_sentences\_ together."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 149. It is assumed, that, "In

every \_sentence\_ there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or

understood."--\_Ib.\_, p. 151. Now if there happen to be two nominatives to

one verb, as when it was said, "Even the \_winds\_ and the \_sea\_ obey him;"

this cannot be anything more than a simple sentence; because one single

verb is a thing indivisible, and how can we suppose it to form the most

essential part of two different sentences at once?

OBS. 28.--The distinction, or real difference, between those simple

sentences in which two or more nominatives or verbs are taken conjointly,

and those compound sentences in which there is an ellipsis of some of the

nominatives or verbs, is not always easy to be known or fixed; because in

many instances, a supposed \_ellipsis\_, without at all affecting the sense,

may obviously change the construction, and consequently the nature of the

sentence. For example: "And they all forsook him, and [they all]

fled."--\_Mark\_, xiv, 50. Some will say, that the words in brackets are here

\_understood\_. I may deny it, because they are needless; and nothing

needless can form a true ellipsis. To the supplying of useless words, if we

admit the principle, there may be no end; and the notion that conjunctions

join sentences only, opens a wide door for it. For example: "And that man

was perfect and upright, and one that feared God, and eschewed

evil."--\_Job\_, i, 1. No additional words will make this clause any plainer,

and none are really necessary to the construction; yet some grammarians

will parse it with the following impletions, or more: "And that man was \_a\_

perfect \_man\_, and \_he was an\_ upright \_man\_, and \_he was\_ one \_man\_ that

feared God, and \_that\_ eschewed evil \_things\_." It is easy to see how this

liberty of interpretation, or of interpolation, will change simple

sentences to compound sentences, as well as alter the nature and relation

of many particular words; and at the same time, it takes away totally those

peculiarities of construction by which Dr. Adam and others would recognize

a sentence as being compound. What then? are there not two kinds of

sentences? Yes, truly; but these authors are wrong in their notions and

definitions of both. Joint nominatives or joint verbs may occur in either;

but they belong primarily to some simple sentences, and only for that

reason are found in any that are compound. A sentence, too, may possibly be

made compound, when a simple one would express the whole meaning as well or

better; as, "And [David] smote the Philistines from Geba \_until thou come\_

to Gazer."--\_2 Sam.\_, v, 25. Here, if we omit the words in Italics, the

sentence will become simple, not elliptical.

THE ANALYZING OF SENTENCES.

To analyze a sentence, is, to resolve it into some species of constituent

parts, but most properly into words, its first significant elements, and to

point out their several relations and powers in the given connexion.

The component parts of a sentence are \_members, clauses, phrases\_, or

\_words\_. Some sentences, which are short and simple, can only be divided

into their words; others, which are long and complex, may be resolved into

parts again and again divisible.

Of analysis applicable to sentences, there are several different methods;

and, so far as their difference may compatibly aid the application of

different principles of the science of grammar, there may be an advantage

in the occasional use of each.

FIRST METHOD OF ANALYSIS.

\_Sentences not simple may be reduced to their constituent members, clauses,

or simple sentences; and the means by which these are united, may be shown.

Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE ANALYZED.

"Even the Atheist, who tells us that the universe is self-existent and

indestructible--even he, who, instead of seeing the traces of a manifold

wisdom in its manifold varieties, sees nothing in them all but the

exquisite structures and the lofty dimensions of materialism--even he, who

would despoil creation of its God, cannot look upon its golden suns, and

their accompanying systems, without the solemn impression of a magnificence

that fixes and overpowers him."--DR. CHALMERS, \_Discourses on Revelation

and Astronomy\_, p. 231.

ANALYSIS.--This is a compound sentence, consisting of three complex

members, which are separated by the two dashes. The three members are

united in one sentence, by a suspension of the sense at each dash, and by

two virtual repetitions of the subject, "\_Atheist\_" through the pronoun

"\_he\_," put in the same case, and representing this noun. The sense mainly

intended is not brought out till the period ends. Each of the three members

is complex, because each has not only a relative clause, commencing with

"\_who\_," but also an antecedent word which makes sense with "\_cannot

look\_," &c. The first of these relative clauses involves also a

subordinate, supplementary clause,--"\_the universe is self-existent and

indestructible\_"--introduced after the verb "\_tells\_" by the conjunction

"\_that\_." The last phrase, "\_without the solemn impression\_," &c., which is

subjoined by "\_without\_" to "\_cannot look\_," embraces likewise a

subordinate, relative clause,--"\_that fixes and overpowers him\_,"--which

has two verbs; the whole, antecedent and all, being but an adjunct of an

adjunct, yet an essential element of the sentence.

SECOND METHOD OF ANALYSIS.

\_Simple sentences, or the simple members of compound sentences, may be

resolved into their PRINCIPAL and their SUBORDINATE PARTS; the subject, the

verb, and the case put after or governed by the verb, being first pointed

out as THE PRINCIPAL PARTS; and the other words being then detailed as

ADJUNCTS to these, according to THE SENSE, or as adjuncts to adjuncts.

Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE ANALYZED.

"Fear naturally quickens the flight of guilt. Rasselas could not catch the

fugitive, with his utmost efforts; but, resolving to weary, by

perseverance, him whom he could not surpass in speed, he pressed on till

the foot of the mountain stopped his course."--DR. JOHNSON, \_Rasselas\_, p.

23.

ANALYSIS.--The first period here is a simple sentence. Its principal parts

are--\_Fear, quickens, flight\_; \_Fear\_ being the subject, \_quickens\_ the

verb, and \_flight\_ the object. \_Fear\_ has no adjunct; \_naturally\_ is an

adjunct of \_quickens\_; \_the\_ and \_of guilt\_ are adjuncts of \_flight\_. The

second period is composed of several clauses, or simple members, united.

The first of these is also a simple sentence, having, three principal

parts--\_Rasselas, could catch\_, and \_fugitive\_; the subject, the verb, and

its object, in their order. \_Not\_ is added to \_could catch\_, reversing the

meaning; \_the\_ is an adjunct to \_fugitive\_; \_with\_ joins its phrase to

\_could not catch\_; but \_his\_ and \_utmost\_ are adjuncts of \_efforts\_. The

word \_but\_ connects the two chief members as parts of one sentence.

"\_Resolving to weary\_" is an adjunct to the pronoun \_he\_, which stands

before \_pressed\_. "\_By perseverance\_," is an adjunct to \_weary\_. \_Him\_ is

governed by \_weary\_, and is the antecedent to \_whom\_. "\_Whom he could not

surpass in speed\_," is a relative clause, or subordinate simple member,

having three principal parts--\_he, could surpass\_, and \_whom. Not\_ and \_in

speed\_ are adjuncts to the verb \_could surpass\_. "\_He pressed on\_" is an

other simple member, or sentence, and the chief clause here used, the

others being subjoined to this. Its principal parts are two, \_he\_ and

\_pressed\_; the latter taking the particle \_on\_ as an adjunct, and being

intransitive. The words dependent on the nominative \_he\_, (to wit,

\_resolving\_, &c.,) have already been mentioned. \_Till\_ is a conjunctive

adverb of time, connecting the concluding clause to \_pressed on\_. "\_The

foot of the mountain stopped his course\_," is a subordinate clause and

simple member, whose principal parts are--the subject \_foot\_, the verb

\_stopped\_, and the object \_course\_. The adjuncts of \_foot\_ are \_the\_ and

\_of the mountain\_; the verb in this sentence has no adjunct but \_course\_,

which is better reckoned a principal word; lastly, \_his\_ is an adjunct to

\_course\_, and governed by it.

THIRD METHOD OF ANALYSIS.

\_Sentences may be partially analyzed by a resolution into their SUBJECTS

and their PREDICATES, a method which some late grammarians have borrowed

from the logicians; the grammatical subject with its adjuncts, being taken

for the logical subject; and the finite verb, which some call the

grammatical predicate[330] being, with its subsequent case and the adjuncts

of both, denominated the predicate, or the logical predicate. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE ANALYZED.

"Such is the emptiness of human enjoyment, that we are always impatient of

the present. Attainment is followed by neglect, and possession, by disgust.

Few moments are more pleasing than those in which the mind is concerting

measures for a new undertaking. From the first hint that wakens the fancy,

to the hour of actual execution, all is improvement and progress, triumph

and felicity."--DR. JOHNSON, \_Rambler\_.

ANALYSIS.--Here the first period is a compound sentence, containing two

clauses,--which are connected by \_that\_. In the first clause, \_emptiness\_

is the grammatical subject, and "\_the emptiness of human enjoyment\_" is the

logical. \_Is\_ some would call the grammatical predicate, and "Such is," or

\_is such\_, the logical; but the latter consists, as the majority teach, of

"the copula" \_is\_, and "the attribute," or "predicate," \_such\_. In the

second clause, (which explains the import of "\_Such\_,") the subject is

\_we\_; which is unmodified, and in which therefore the logical form and the

grammatical coincide and are the same. \_Are\_ may here be called the

grammatical predicate; and "\_are always impatient of the present\_," the

logical. The second period, too, is a compound sentence, having two

clauses, which are connected by \_and\_. \_Attainment\_ is the subject of the

former; and, "\_is followed by neglect\_" is the predicate. In the latter,

\_possession\_ alone is the subject; and, "[\_is followed\_] \_by disgust\_," is

the predicate; the verb \_is followed\_ being understood at the comma. The

third period, likewise, is a compound, having three parts, with the two

connectives \_than\_ and \_which\_. Here we have \_moments\_ for the first

grammatical subject, and \_Few moments\_ for the logical; then, \_are\_ for the

grammatical predicate, and \_are more pleasing\_ for the logical: or, if we

choose to say so, for "the copula and the attribute." "\_Than those\_," is an

elliptical member, meaning, "than \_are\_ those \_moments\_," or, "than those

\_moments are pleasing\_;" both subject and predicate are wholly suppressed,

except that \_those\_ is reckoned a part of the logical subject. \_In which\_

is an adjunct of \_is concerting\_, and serves well to connect the members,

because \_which\_ represents \_those\_, i.e. \_those moments.\_ \_Mind\_, or \_the

mind\_, is the next subject of affirmation; and \_is concerting\_, or, "\_is

concerting measures for a new undertaking\_," is the predicate or matter

affirmed. Lastly, the fourth period, like the rest, is compound. The

phrases commencing with \_From\_ and \_to\_, describe a period of time, and are

adjuncts of the verb \_is.\_ The former contains a subordinate relative

clause, of which \_that\_ (representing \_hint\_) is the subject, and \_wakens\_,

or \_wakens the fancy\_, the predicate. Of the principal clause, the word

\_all\_, taken as a noun, is the subject, whether grammatical or logical; and

"the copula," or "grammatical predicate," \_is\_, becomes, with its adjuncts

and the nominatives following, the logical predicate.

FOURTH METHOD OF ANALYSIS.

\_All syntax is founded on the\_ RELATION \_of words one to an other, and the\_

CONNEXION \_of clauses and phrases, according to\_ THE SENSE. \_Hence

sentences may be, in some sort, analyzed, and perhaps profitably, by the

tracing of such relation or connexion, from link to link, through a series

of words, beginning and ending with such as are somewhat remote from each

other, yet within the period. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLES ANALYZED.

1. "Swift would say, 'The thing has not life enough in it to keep it

sweet;' Johnson, 'The creature possesses not vitality sufficient to

preserve it from putrefaction.'"--MATT. HARRISON, \_on the English

Language\_, p. 102. ANALYSIS.--What is the general sense of this passage?

and what, the chain of connexion between the words \_Swift\_ and

\_putrefaction\_? The period is designed to show, that Swift preferred words

of Saxon origin; and Johnson, of Latin. It has in contrast two coördinate

members, tacitly connected: the verb \_would say\_ being understood after

\_Johnson\_, and perhaps also the particle \_but\_, after the semicolon.

\_Swift\_ is the subject of \_would say\_; and \_would say\_ introduces the

clause after it, as what would be said. \_The\_ relates to \_thing\_; \_thing\_

is the subject of \_has\_; \_has\_, which is qualified by \_not\_, governs

\_life\_; \_life\_ is qualified by the adjective \_enough\_, and by the phrase,

\_in it\_; \_enough\_ is the prior term of \_to\_; \_to\_ governs \_keep\_; \_keep\_

governs \_it\_, which stands for \_the thing\_; and \_it\_, in lieu of \_the

thing\_, is qualified by \_sweet\_. The chief members are connected either by

standing in contrast as members, or by \_but\_, understood before \_Johnson.\_

\_Johnson\_ is the subject of \_would say\_, understood: and this \_would say\_,

again introduces a clause, as what would be said. \_The\_ relates to

\_creature\_; \_creature\_ is the subject of \_possesses\_; \_possesses\_, which is

qualified by \_not\_, governs \_vitality\_; \_vitality\_ is qualified by

\_sufficient\_; \_sufficient\_ is the prior term of \_to\_; \_to\_ governs

\_preserve\_; \_preserve\_ governs \_it\_, and is the prior term of \_from\_; and

\_from\_ governs \_putrefaction.\_

2. "There is one Being to whom we can look with a perfect conviction of

finding that security, which nothing about us can give, and which nothing

about us can take away."--GREENWOOD; \_Wells's School Gram.\_, p. 192.[331]

ANALYSIS.--What is the general structure of this passage? and what, the

chain of connexion "between the words \_away\_ and \_is?"\_ The period is a

complex sentence, having four clauses, all connected together by relatives;

the second, by \_whom\_, to the first and chief clause, \_"There is one

Being;"\_ the third and the fourth, to the second, by \_which\_ and \_which\_;

but the last two, having the same antecedent, \_security\_, and being

coördinate, are also connected one to the other by \_and.\_ As to "the chain

of connexion," \_Away\_ relates to \_can take\_; \_can take\_ agrees with its

nominative \_nothing\_, and governs \_which\_; \_which\_ represents \_security\_;

\_security\_ is governed by \_finding\_; \_finding\_ is governed by \_of\_; \_of\_

refers back to \_conviction\_; \_conviction\_ is governed by \_with\_; \_with\_

refers back to \_can look\_; \_can look\_ agrees with \_we\_, and is, in sense,

the antecedent of \_to\_; \_to\_ governs \_whom\_; \_whom\_ represents \_Being\_; and

\_Being\_ is the subject of \_is.\_

FIFTH METHOD OF ANALYSIS.

\_The best and most thorough method of analysis is that of\_ COMPLETE

SYNTACTICAL PARSING; \_a method which, for the sake of order and brevity,

should ever be kept free from all mixture of etymological definitions or

reasons, but which may be preceded or followed by any of the foregoing

schemes of resolution, if the teacher choose to require any such

preliminary or subsidiary exposition. This method is fully illustrated in

the Twelfth Praxis below.\_

OBSERVATIONS ON METHODS OF ANALYSIS.

OBS. 1.--The almost infinite variety in the forms of sentences, will

sometimes throw difficulty in the way of the analyzer, be his scheme or his

skill what it may. The last four or five observations of the preceding

series have shown, that the distinction of sentences as \_simple\_ or

\_compound\_, which constitutes the chief point of the First Method of

Analysis above, is not always plain, even to the learned. The definitions

and examples which I have given, will make it \_generally\_ so; and, where it

is otherwise, the question or puzzle, it is presumed, cannot often be of

much practical importance. If the difference be not obvious, it can hardly

be a momentous error, to mistake a phrase for an elliptical clause, or to

call such a clause a phrase.

OBS. 2.--The Second Method above is, I think, easier of application than

any of the rest; and, if other analysis than the regular method of parsing

seem desirable, this will probably be found as useful as any. There is, in

many of our popular grammars, some recognition of the principles of this

analysis--some mention of "the \_principal parts\_ of a sentence," in

accordance with what are so called above,--and also, in a few, some

succinct account of the parts called "\_adjuncts\_;" but there seems to have

been no prevalent practice of applying these principles, in any stated or

well-digested manner. Lowth, Murray, Alger, W. Allen, Hart, Hiley,

Ingersoll, Wells, and others, tell of these "PRINCIPAL PARTS;"--Lowth

calling them, "the \_agent\_, the \_attribute\_, and the \_object\_;" (\_Gram.\_,

p. 72;)--Murray, and his copyists, Alger, Ingersoll, and others, calling

them, "the \_subject\_, the \_attribute\_, and the \_object\_;"--Hiley and Hart

calling them, "the \_subject\_ or \_nominative\_, the \_attribute\_ or \_verb\_,

and the \_object\_;"--Allen calling them, "the \_nominative\_, the \_verb\_, and

(if the verb is active,) the \_accusative\_ governed by the verb;" and also

saying, "The nominative is sometimes called the \_subject\_; the verb, the

\_attribute\_; and the accusative, the \_object\_;"--Wells calling them, "the

\_subject\_ or \_nominative\_, the \_verb\_, and the \_object\_;" and also

recognizing the "\_adjuncts\_," as a species which "embraces all the words of

a simple sentence [,] except the \_principal parts\_;"--yet not more than two

of them all appearing to have taken any thought, and they but little, about

the formal \_application\_ of their common doctrine. In Allen's English

Grammar, which is one of the best, and likewise in Wells's, which is

equally prized, this reduction of all connected words, or parts of speech,

into "the principal parts" and "the adjuncts," is fully recognized; the

adjuncts, too, are discriminated by Allen, as "either primary or

secondary," nor are their more particular species or relations overlooked;

but I find no method prescribed for the analysis intended, except what

Wells adopted in his early editions but has since changed to an other or

abandoned, and no other allusion to it by, Allen, than this Note, which,

with some appearance of intrusion, is appended to his "Method of Parsing

the Infinitive Mood:"--"The pupil \_may now begin\_ to analyse [\_analyze\_]

the sentences, by distinguishing the principal words and their

adjuncts."--\_W. Allen's E. Gram.\_, p. 258.

OBS. 3.--These authors in general, and many more, tell us, with some

variation of words, that the agent, subject, or nominative, is that of

which something is said, affirmed, or denied; that the attribute, verb, or

predicate, is that which is said, affirmed, or denied, of the subject; and

that the object, accusative, or case sequent, is that which is introduced

by the finite verb, or affected by the action affirmed. Lowth says, "In

English the nominative case, denoting the agent, usually goes before the

verb, or attribution; and the objective case, denoting the object, follows

the verb active."--\_Short Introd.\_, p. 72. Murray copies, but not

literally, thus: "The nominative denotes the subject, and usually goes

before the verb [,] or attribute; and the word \_or phrase\_, denoting the

object, follows the verb: as, 'A wise man governs his passions.' Here, a

\_wise man\_ is the subject; \_governs\_, the attribute, or thing affirmed; and

\_his passions\_, the object."--\_Murray's Octavo\_, p. 142; \_Duodecimo\_, 116.

To include thus the adjuncts with their principals, as the logicians do, is

\_here\_ manifestly improper; because it unites what the grammatical analyzer

is chiefly concerned to separate, and tends to defeat the main purpose for

which "THE PRINCIPAL PARTS" are so named and distinguished.

OBS. 4.--The Third Method of Analysis, described above, is an attempt very

briefly to epitomize the chief elements of a great scheme,--to give, in a

nutshell, the substance of what our grammarians have borrowed from the

logicians, then mixed with something of their own, next amplified with

small details, and, in some instances, branched out and extended to

enormous bulk and length. Of course, they have not failed to set forth the

comparative merits of this scheme in a sufficiently favourable light. The

two ingenious gentlemen who seem to have been chiefly instrumental in

making it popular, say in their preface, "The rules of syntax contained in

this work result directly from the analysis of propositions, and of

compound sentences; and for this reason the student should make himself

perfectly familiar with the sections relating to \_subject\_ and \_predicate\_,

and should be able readily to analyze sentences, whether simple or

compound, and to explain their structure and connection. \* \* \* This

exercise \_should always precede\_ the more minute and subsidiary labor of

parsing. If the latter be conducted, as it often is, independently of

previous analysis, the \_principal advantage\_ to be derived from the study

of language, as an intellectual exercise, will inevitably be lost."--\_Latin

Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard\_, p. vi. N. Butler, who bestows upon this

subject about a dozen duodecimo pages, says in his preface, "The rules for

the analysis of sentences, which is a \_very useful and interesting\_

exercise, have been taken from Andrews' and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, some

changes and additions being made."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. iv.[332]

OBS. 5.--Wells, in the early copies of his School Grammar, as has been

hinted, adopted a method of analysis similar to the \_Second\_ one prescribed

above; yet referred, even from the first, to "Andrews and Stoddard's Latin

Grammar," and to "De Sacy's General Grammar," as if these were authorities

for what he then inculcated. Subsequently, \_he changed his scheme\_, from

that of \_Parts Principal\_ and \_Adjuncts\_, to one of \_Subjects\_ and

\_Predicates\_, "either grammatical or logical," also "either simple or

compound;"--to one resembling Andrews and Stoddard's, yet differing from

it, often, as to what constitutes a "grammatical predicate;"--to one

resenbling [sic--KTH] the \_Third Method\_ above, yet differing from it, (as

does Andrews and Stoddard's,) in taking the logical subject and predicate

before the grammatical. "The chapter on Analysis," said he then, "has been

Revised and enlarged with great care, and will be found to embody all the

most important principles on this subject [.] \_which\_ are contained in the

works of De Sacy, Andrews and Stoddard, Kühner, Crosby, and Crane. It is

gratifying to observe that the attention of teachers is now so generally

directed \_to this important mode\_ of investigating the structure of our

language, \_in connection with\_ the ordinary exercises of \_etymological\_ and

syntactical parsing."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, New Ed., 1850, p. iv.

OBS. 6.--In view of the fact, that Wells's chief mode of sentential

analysis had just undergone an almost total metamorphosis, a change

plausible perhaps, but of doubtful utility,--that, up to the date of the

words just cited, and afterwards, so far and so long as any copies of his

early "Thousands" remain in use, the author himself has earnestly directed

attention to a method which he now means henceforth to abandon,--in this

view, the praise and gratulation expressed above seem singular. If it has

been found practicable, to slide "the attention of teachers," and their

approbation too, adroitly over from one "important mode of investigating

the structure of our language," to an other;--if "it is gratifying to

observe," that the direction thus given to public opinion sustains itself

so well, and "is so generally" acquiesced in;--if it is proved, that the

stereotyped praise of one system of analysis may, without alteration, be so

transferred to an other, as to answer the double purpose of commending and

superseding;--it is not improbable that the author's next new plates will

bear the stamp of yet \_other\_ "most important principles" of analysis. This

process is here recommended to be used "\_in connection with\_ the ordinary

exercises of \_etymological\_ and syntactical parsing,"--exercises, which,

in Wells's Grammar, are generally, and very improperly, commingled; and if,

to these, may be profitably conjoined either his present or his former

scheme of analysis, it were well, had he somewhere put them together and

shown how.

OBS. 7.--But there are other passages of the School Grammar, so little

suited to this notion of "\_connection\_" that one can hardly believe the

word ought to be taken in what seems its only sense. "Advanced classes

should attend less to the common \_Order of Parsing\_, and more to the

\_Analysis\_ of language."--\_Wells's Grammar\_, "3d Thousand," p. 125; "113th

Thousand," p. 132. This implies, what is probably true of the etymological

exercise, that parsing is more rudimental than the other forms of analysis.

It also intimates, what is not so clear, that pupils rightly instructed

must advance from the former to the latter, as to something more worthy of

their intellectual powers. The passage is used with reference to either

form of analysis adopted by the author. So the following comparison, in

which Parsing is plainly disparaged, stands permanently at the head of "the

chapter on Analysis," to commend first one mode, and then an other: "It is

particularly desirable that pupils \_should pass as early as practicable

from the formalities\_ of common PARSING, to the \_more important\_ exercise

of ANALYZING critically the structure of language. The mechanical routine

of technical parsing is peculiarly liable to become monotonous and dull,

while the \_practice of explaining the various relations and offices of

words in a sentence\_, is adapted to call the mind of the learner into

constant and vigorous action, and can hardly fail of exciting the deepest

interest,"--\_Wells's Gram.\_, 3d Th., p. 181; 113th Th., p. 184.

OBS. 8.--An ill scheme of \_parsing\_, or an ill use of a good one, is almost

as unlucky in grammar, as an ill method of \_ciphering\_, or an ill use of a

good one, would be in arithmetic. From the strong contrast cited above, one

might suspect that, in selecting, devising, or using, a technical process

for the exercising of learners in the principles of etymology and syntax,

this author had been less fortunate than the generality of his fellows. Not

only is it implied, that parsing is no critical analysis, but even what is

set \_in opposition\_ to the "mechanical routine," may very well serve for \_a

definition\_ of Syntactical Parsing--"\_the practice of explaining the

various relations and offices of words in a sentence\_!" If this "practice,"

well ordered, can be at once interesting and profitable to the learner, so

may parsing. Nor, after all, is even this author's mode of parsing,

defective though it is in several respects, less "important" to the users

of his book, or less valued by teachers, than the analysis which he sets

above it.

OBS. 9.--S. S. Greene, a public teacher in Boston, who, in answer to a

supposed "demand for a \_more philosophical plan\_ of teaching the English

language," has entered in earnest upon the "Analysis of Sentences," having

devoted to one method of it more than the space of two hundred duodecimo

pages, speaks of analysis and of parsing, thus: "The resolving of a

sentence into its elements, or of any complex element into the parts which

compose it, is called \_analysis\_."--\_Greene's Analysis\_, p. 14. "Parsing

consists in naming a part of speech, giving its modifications, relation,

agreement or dependence, and the rule for its construction. \_Analysis\_

consists in pointing out the words or groups of words which constitute the

elements of a sentence. Analysis \_should precede\_ parsing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 26.

"A large proportion of the elements of sentences are not single words, but

combinations or groups of words. These groups perform the office of the

\_substantive\_, the \_adjective\_, or the \_adverb\_, and, in some one of these

relations, enter in as the component parts of a sentence. The pupil who

learns to determine the elements of a sentence, \_must, therefore, learn the

force of these combinations before\_ he separates them into the single words

which compose them. \_This advantage\_ is wholly lost in the ordinary methods

of parsing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 3.

OBS. 10.--On these passages, it may be remarked in the first place, that

the distinction attempted between analysis and parsing is by no means

clear, or well drawn. Nor indeed could it be; because parsing is a species

of analysis. The first assertion would be just as true as it is now, were

the former word substituted for the latter: thus, "The resolving of a

sentence into its elements, or of any complex element into the \_parts\_

which compose it, is called \_parsing\_." Next, the "\_Parsing\_" spoken of in

the second sentence, is \_Syntactical\_ Parsing only; and, without a

limitation of the species, neither this assertion nor the one concerning

precedence is sufficiently true. Again, the suggestion, that, "\_Analysis\_

consists in \_pointing out\_ the words or groups of words which \_constitute

the elements\_ of a sentence," has nothing distinctive in it; and, without

some idea of the author's peculiar system of "elements," previously

impressed upon the mind, is scarcely, if at all, intelligible. Lastly, that

a pupil must \_understand\_ a sentence,--or, what is the same thing, "\_learn

the force of the words combined\_,"--before he can be sure of parsing each

word rightly, is a very plain and certain truth; but what "advantage" over

parsing this truth gives to the lesser analysis, which deals with "groups,"

it is not easy to discover. If the author had any clear idea of "\_this

advantage\_," he has conveyed no such conception to his readers.

OBS. 11.--Greene's Analysis is the most expanded form of the Third Method

above.[333] Its nucleus, or germinating kernel, was the old partition of

\_subject\_ and \_predicate\_, derived from the art of logic. Its chief

principles may be briefly stated thus: Sentences, which are simple, or

complex, or compound, are made up of \_words, phrases\_, and \_clauses\_--three

grand classes of elements, called the \_first\_, the \_second\_, and the

\_third\_ class. From these, each sentence must have two elements; the

\_Subject\_, or Substantive element, and the \_Predicate\_, or Predicative

element, which are principal; and a sentence \_may\_ have five, the

subordinates being the Adjective element, the Objective element, and the

Adverbial element. The five elements have sundry modifications and

subdivisions. Each of the five may, like a sentence, be simple, or complex,

or compound; and each may be of any of the three grand classes. The

development of this scheme forms a volume, not small. The system is

plausible, ingenious, methodical, mostly true, and somewhat elaborate; but

it is neither very useful nor very accurate. It seems too much like a great

tree, beautiful, symmetrical, and full of leaves, but raised or desired

only for fruit, yet bearing little, and some of that little not of good

quality, but knurly or bitter. The chief end of a grammar, designed for our

tongue, is, to show what is, and what is not, good English. To this end,

the system in question does not appear to be well adapted.

OBS. 12.--Dr. Bullions, the projector of the "Series of Grammars, English,

Latin, and Greek, all \_on the same plan\_," inserted in his Latin Grammar,

of 1841, a short sketch of the new analysis by "subjects and predicates,"

"grammatical and logical," the scheme used by Andrews and Stoddard; but his

English Grammar, which appeared in 1834, was too early for this "new and

improved method of investigating" language. In his later English Grammar,

of 1849, however, paying little regard to \_sameness of "plan\_" or

conformity of definitions, he carefully devoted to this matter the space of

fifteen pages, placing the topic, not injudiciously, in the first part of

his syntax, and referring to it thus in his Preface: "The subject of

ANALYSIS, wholly omitted in the former work, is here introduced in its

proper place; and to an extent in accordance with its importance."--

\_Bullions, Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 3.

OBS. 13.--In applying any of the different methods of analysis, as a school

exercise, it will in general perhaps be best to use each \_separately\_; the

teacher directing which one is to be applied, and to what examples. The

selections prepared for the stated praxes of this work, will be found as

suitable as any. Analysis of sentences is a central and essential matter in

the teaching or the study of grammar; but the truest and the most important

of the sentential analyses is \_parsing\_; which, because it is a method

distinguished by a technical name of its own, is not commonly denominated

analysis. The relation which other methods should bear to \_parsing\_, is, as

we have seen, variously stated by different authors. \_Etymological\_ parsing

and \_Syntactical\_ are, or ought to be, distinct exercises. The former,

being the most simple, the most elementary, and also requisite to be used

before the pupil is prepared for the latter, should, without doubt, take

precedence of all the rest, and be made familiar in the first place. Those

who say, "\_Analysis should precede parsing\_," will scarcely find the

application of other analysis practicable, till this is somewhat known. But

\_Syntactical Parsing\_ being, when complete in form, the most thorough

process of grammatical resolution, it seems proper to have introduced the

other methods before it, as above. It can hardly be said that any of these

are \_necessary\_ to this exercise, or to one an other; yet in a full course

of grammatical instruction, each may at times be usefully employed.

OBS. 14.--Dr. Bullions suggests, that, "\_Analysis\_ should precede

\_Syntactical parsing\_, because, till we know the parts and elements of a

sentence, we can not understand their relations, nor intelligently combine

them into one consistent whole."--\_Analytical and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 114.

This reason is entirely fictitious and truthless; for the \_words\_ of a

sentence are intuitively known to be its "parts and elements;" and, to

"\_understand\_ their relations," is as necessary to one form of analysis as

to another; but, "intelligently to \_combine\_ them," is no part of the

parser's duty: this belongs to the \_writer\_; and where he has not done it,

he must be criticised and censured, as one that knows not well what he

says. In W. Allen's Grammar, as in Wells's, Syntactical parsing and

Etymological are not divided. Wells intersperses his "Exercises in

Parsing," at seven points of his Syntax, and places "the chapter on

Analysis," at the end of it. Allen treats first of the several parts of

grammar, didactically; then presents a series of exercises adapted to the

various heads of the whole. At the beginning of these, are fourteen

"Methods of Parsing," which show, successively, the properties and

construction of his nine parts of speech; and, \_at the ninth method\_, which

resolves \_infinitives\_, it is proposed that the pupil begin to apply a

method of analysis similar to the Second one above.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING. PRAXIS XII.--SYNTACTICAL.

\_The grand clew to all syntactical parsing is THE SENSE; and as any

composition is faulty which does not rightly deliver the authors meaning,

so every solution of a word or sentence is necessarily erroneous, in which

that meaning is not carefully noticed and literally preserved.

In all complete syntactical parsing, it is required of the pupil--to

distinguish the different parts of speech and their classes; to mention

their modifications in order; to point out their relation, agreement, or

government; and to apply the Rules of Syntax. Thus\_:--

EXAMPLE PARSED.

"A young man studious to know his duty, and honestly bent on doing it, will

find himself led away from the sin or folly in which the multitude

thoughtlessly indulge themselves; but, ah! poor fallen human nature! what

conflicts are thy portion, when inclination and habit--a rebel and a

traitor--exert their sway against our only saving principle!"--\_G. Brown\_.

\_A\_ is the indefinite article: and relates to \_man\_, or \_young man\_;

according to Rule 1st, which says, "Articles relate to the nouns which they

limit." Because the meaning is--\_a man--a young man\_.

\_Young\_ is a common adjective, of the positive degree, compared regularly,

\_young, younger, youngest\_: and relates to \_man\_; according to Rule 9th,

which says, "Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns." Because the meaning

is--\_young man\_.

\_Man\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine

gender, and nominative case: and is the subject of \_will find\_; according

to Rule 2d, which says, "A noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a

finite verb, must be in the nominative case." Because the meaning is--\_man

will find\_.

\_Studious\_ is a common adjective, compared by means of the adverbs;

\_studious, more studious, most studious\_; or, \_studious, less studious,

least studious\_: and relates to \_man\_; according to Rule 9th, which says,

"Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns." Because the meaning is--\_man

studious\_.

\_To\_ is a preposition: and shows the relation between \_studious\_ and

\_know\_; according to Rule 23d, which says, "Prepositions show the relations

of words, and of the things or thoughts expressed by them." Because the

meaning is--\_studious to know\_.

\_Know\_ is an irregular active-transitive verb, from \_know, knew, knowing,

known\_; found in the infinitive mood, present tense--no person, or number:

and is governed by \_to\_; according to Rule 18th, which says, "The

infinitive mood is governed in general by the preposition TO, which

commonly connects it to a finite verb." Because the meaning is--\_to know\_.

\_His\_ is a personal pronoun, representing \_man\_, in the third person,

singular number, and masculine gender; according to Rule 10th, which says,

"A pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it

represents, in person, number, and gender:" and is in the possessive case,

being governed by \_duty\_; according to Rule 4th, which says, "A noun or a

pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the name of the thing

possessed." Because the meaning is--\_his duty\_;--i. e., the young \_man's

duty\_.

\_Duty\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case: and is governed by \_know\_; according to Rule

5th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of an

active-transitive verb or participle, is governed by it in the objective

case." Because the meaning is--to \_know\_ his \_duty\_.

\_And\_ is a copulative conjunction: and connects the phrase which follows

it, to that which precedes; according to Rule 22d, which says,

"Conjunctions connect words, sentences, or parts of sentences." Because the

meaning is--studious to know his duty, \_and\_ honestly bent, &c.

\_Honestly\_ is an adverb of manner: and relates to \_bent\_; according to Rule

21st, which says, "Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or

other adverbs." Because the meaning is--\_honestly bent\_.

\_Bent\_ is a perfect participle, from the redundant active-transitive verb,

\_bend, bent\_ or \_bended, bending, bent\_ or \_bended\_: and relates to \_man\_;

according to Rule 20th, which says, "Participles relate to nouns or

pronouns, or else are governed by prepositions." Because the meaning

is--\_man bent\_. \_On\_ is a preposition: and shows the relation between

\_bent\_ and \_doing\_; according to Rule 23d, which says, "Prepositions show

the relations of words, and of the things or thoughts expressed by them."

Because the meaning is--\_bent on doing\_.

\_Doing\_ is an imperfect participle, from the irregular active-transitive

verb, \_do, did, doing, done\_: and is governed by on; according to Rule

20th, which says, "Participles relate to nouns or pronouns, or else are

governed by prepositions." Because the meaning is--\_on doing\_.

\_It\_ is a personal pronoun, representing \_duty\_, in the third person,

singular number, and neuter gender; according to Rule 10th, which says, "A

pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it

represents, in person, number, and gender:" and is in the objective case,

being governed by \_doing\_; according to Rule 5th, which says, "A noun or a

pronoun made the object of an active-transitive verb or participle, is

governed by it in the objective case." Because the meaning is--\_doing

it\_;--i. e., doing \_his duty\_.

\_Will find\_ is an irregular active-transitive verb, from \_find, found,

finding, found\_; found in the indicative mood, first-future tense, third

person, and singular number: and agrees with its nominative \_man\_;

according to Rule 14th, which says, "Every finite verb must agree with its

subject, or nominative, in person and number." Because the meaning is--\_man

will find\_.

\_Himself\_ is a compound personal pronoun, representing man, in the third

person, singular number, and masculine gender; according to Rule 10th,

which says, "A pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or

pronoun which it represents, in person, number, and gender;" and is in the

objective case, being governed by \_will find\_; according to Rule 5th, which

says, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of an active-transitive verb or

participle, is governed by it in the objective case." Because the meaning

is--\_will find himself\_;--i. e., his own mind or person.

\_Led\_ is a perfect participle, from the irregular active-transitive verb,

\_lead, led, leading, led\_: and relates to \_himself\_; according to Rule

20th, which says, "Participles relate to nouns or pronouns, or else are

governed by prepositions." Because the meaning is--\_himself led\_.

\_Away\_ is an adverb of place: and relates to \_led\_; according to Rule 21st,

which says, "Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other

adverbs." Because the meaning is--\_led away\_.

\_From\_ is a preposition: and shows the relation between \_led\_ and \_sin or

folly\_; according to Rule 23d, which says, "Prepositions show the relations

of words, and of the things or thoughts expressed by them." Because the

meaning is--\_led from sin or folly\_.

\_The\_ is the definite article: and relates to \_sin\_ and \_folly\_; according

to Rule 1st, which says, "Articles relate to the nouns which they limit."

Because the meaning is--\_the sin or folly\_.

\_Sin\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case: and is governed by \_from\_; according to Rule

7th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of a preposition, is

governed by it in the objective case." Because the meaning is--\_from sin\_.

\_Or\_ is a disjunctive conjunction: and connects \_sin\_ and \_folly\_;

according to Rule 22d, which says, "Conjunctions connect words, sentences,

or parts of sentences." Because the meaning is--\_sin or folly\_.

\_Folly\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case; and is connected by \_or\_ to \_sin\_, and governed

by the same preposition \_from\_; according to Rule 7th, which says, "A noun

or a pronoun made the object of a preposition, is governed by it in the

objective case." Because the meaning is--\_from sin or folly\_.

\_In\_ is a preposition: and shows the relation between \_indulge\_ and

\_which\_; according to Rule 23d, which says, "Prepositions show the

relations of words, and of the things or thoughts expressed by them."

Because the meaning is--\_indulge in which\_--or, \_which they indulge in\_.

\_Which\_ is a relative pronoun, representing \_sin or folly\_, in the third

person, singular number, and neuter gender; according to Rule 13th, which

says, "When a pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by \_or\_ or

\_nor\_, it must agree with them singly, and not as if taken together:" and

is in the objective case, being governed by \_in\_; according to Rule 7th,

which says, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of a preposition, is

governed by it in the objective case." Because the meaning is--\_in

which\_;--i. e., \_in which sin or folly\_.

\_The\_ is the definite article: and relates to \_multitude\_; according to

Rule 1st, which says, "Articles relate to the nouns which they limit."

Because the meaning is--\_the multitude\_.

\_Multitude\_ is a common noun, collective, of the third person, conveying

the idea of plurality, masculine gender, and nominative case: and is the

subject of \_indulge\_; according to Rule 2d, which says, "A noun or a

pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb, must be in the nominative

case." Because the meaning is--\_multitude indulge\_.

\_Thoughtlessly\_ is an adverb of manner: and relates to \_indulge\_; according

to Rule 21st, which says, "Adverbs relate to verbs, participles,

adjectives, or other adverbs." Because the meaning is--\_thoughtlessly

indulge\_.

\_Indulge\_ is a regular active-transitive verb, from \_indulge, indulged,

indulging, indulged\_; found in the indicative mood, present tense, third

person, and plural number: and agrees with its nominative multitude;

according to Rule 15th, which says, "When the nominative is a collective

noun conveying the idea of plurality, the verb must agree with it in the

plural number." Because the meaning is--\_multitude indulge\_.

\_Themselves\_ is a compound personal pronoun, representing \_multitude\_, in

the third person, plural number, and masculine gender; according to Rule

11th, which says, "When the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the

idea of plurality, the pronoun must agree with it in the plural number:"

and is in the objective case, being governed by \_indulge\_; according to

Rule 5th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of an

active-transitive verb or participle, is governed by it in the objective

case." Because the meaning is--\_indulge themselves\_;--i. e., the

individuals of the multitude indulge themselves.

\_But\_ is a disjunctive conjunction: and connects what precedes and what

follows; according to Rule 22d, which says, "Conjunctions connect words,

sentences, or parts of sentences." Because the meaning is--A young man,

&c., \_but\_, ah! &c.

\_Ah\_ is an interjection, indicating sorrow: and is used independently;

according to Rule 24th, which says, "Interjections have no dependent

construction; they are put absolute, either alone, or with other words."

Because the meaning is--\_ah!\_--unconnected with the rest of the sentence.

\_Poor\_ is a common adjective, of the positive degree, compared regularly,

\_poor, poorer, poorest\_: and relates to \_nature\_; according to Rule 9th,

which says, "Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns." Because the meaning

is--\_poor human nature\_.

\_Fallen\_ is a participial adjective, compared (perhaps) by adverbs: and

relates to \_nature\_; according to Rule 9th, which says, "Adjectives relate

to nouns or pronouns." Because the meaning is--\_fallen nature\_.

\_Human\_ is a common adjective, not compared: and relates to \_nature\_;

according to Rule 9th, which says, "Adjectives relate to nouns or

pronouns." Because the meaning is--\_human nature\_.

\_Nature\_ is a common noun, of the second person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case: and is put absolute by direct address;

according to Rule 8th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun is put absolute in

the nominative, when its case depends on no other word." Because the

meaning is--\_poor fallen human nature!\_--the noun being unconnected with

any verb.

\_What\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared: and relates to \_conflicts\_;

according to Rule 9th, which says, "Adjectives relate to nouns or

pronouns." Because the meaning is--\_what conflicts\_.

\_Conflicts\_ is a common noun, of the third person, plural number, neuter

gender, and nominative case: and is the subject of \_are\_; according to Rule

2d, which says, "A noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb,

must be in the nominative case." Because the meaning is--\_conflicts are\_.

\_Are\_ is an irregular neuter verb, from \_be, was, being, been\_; found in

the indicative mood, present tense, third person, and plural number: and

agrees with its nominative \_conflicts\_; according to Rule 14th, which says,

"Every finite verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person

and number." Because the meaning is--\_conflicts are\_.

\_Thy\_ is a personal pronoun, representing \_nature\_, in the second person,

singular number, and neuter gender; according to Rule 10th, which says, "A

pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it

represents, in person, number, and gender:" and is in the possessive case,

being governed by \_portion\_; according to Rule 4th, which says, "A noun or

a pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the name of the thing

possessed." Because the meaning is--\_thy portion\_.

\_Portion\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case: and is put after \_are\_, in agreement with

\_conflicts\_; according to Rule 6th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun put

after a verb or participle not transitive, agrees in case with a preceding

noun or pronoun referring to the same thing." Because the meaning

is--\_conflicts are thy portion\_.

\_When\_ is a conjunctive adverb of time: and relates to the two verbs, \_are\_

and \_exert\_; according to Rule 21st, which says, "Adverbs relate to verbs,

participles, adjectives, or other adverbs." Because the meaning is--what

conflicts \_are\_ thy portion, \_when\_ inclination and habit \_exert\_, &c.

\_Inclination\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number,

neuter gender, and nominative case: and is one of the subjects of \_exert\_;

according to Rule 2d, which says, "A noun or a pronoun which is the subject

of a finite verb, must be in the nominative case." Because the meaning

is--\_inclination and habit exert\_.

\_And\_ is a copulative conjunction: and connects \_inclination\_ and \_habit\_;

according to Rule 22d, which says, "Conjunctions connect words, sentences,

or parts of sentences." Because the meaning is--\_inclination and habit\_.

\_Habit\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and nominative case: and is one of the subjects of \_exert\_;

according to Rule 2d, which says, "A noun or a pronoun which is the subject

of a finite verb, must be in the nominative case." Because the meaning

is--\_inclination and habit exert\_.

\_A\_ is the indefinite article: and relates to \_rebel\_; according to Rule

1st, which says, "Articles relate to the nouns which they limit." Because

the meaning is--\_a rebel\_.

\_Rebel\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine

gender, and nominative case: and is put in apposition with \_inclination\_;

according to Rule 3d, which says, "A noun or a personal pronoun used to

explain a preceding noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same

case." Because the meaning is--\_inclination, a rebel\_.

\_And\_ is a copulative conjunction: and connects \_rebel\_ and \_traitor\_;

according to Rule 22d, which says, "Conjunctions connect words, sentences,

or parts of sentences." Because the meaning is--\_a rebel and a traitor\_.

\_A\_ is the indefinite article: and relates to \_traitor\_; according to Rule

1st, which says, "Articles relate to the nouns which they limit." Because

the meaning is--\_a traitor\_.

\_Traitor\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, masculine

gender, and nominative case: and is put in apposition with \_habit\_;

according to Rule 3d, which says, "A noun or a personal pronoun used to

explain a preceding noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same

case." Because the meaning is--\_habit, a traitor\_.

\_Exert\_ is a regular active-transitive verb, from \_exert, exerted,

exerting, exerted\_; found in the indicative mood, present tense, third

person, and plural number: and agrees with its two nominatives \_inclination

and habit\_; according to Rule 16th, which says, "When a verb has two or

more nominatives connected by \_and\_, it must agree with them jointly in the

plural, because they are taken together." Because the meaning

is--\_inclination and habit exert\_.

\_Their\_ is a personal pronoun, representing \_inclination and habit\_, in the

third person, plural number, and neuter gender; according to Rule 12th,

which says, "When a pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by \_and\_,

it must agree with them jointly in the plural, because they are taken

together:" and is in the possessive case, being governed by \_sway\_;

according to Rule 4th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun in the possessive

case, is governed by the name of the thing possessed." Because the meaning

is--\_their sway\_;--i. e., the sway of inclination and habit.

\_Sway\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case; and is governed by \_exert\_; according to Rule

5th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of an

active-transitive verb or participle, is governed by it in the objective

case." Because the meaning is--\_exert sway\_.

\_Against\_ is a preposition: and shows the relation between \_exert\_ and

\_principle\_; according to Rule 23d, which says, "Prepositions show the

relations of words, and of the things or thoughts expressed by them."

Because the meaning is--\_exert against principle\_.

\_Our\_ is a personal pronoun, representing \_the speakers\_, in the first

person, plural number, and masculine gender; according to Rule 10th, which

says, "A pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun

which it represents, in person, number, and gender:" and is in the

possessive case, being governed by \_principle\_; according to Rule 4th,

which says, "A noun or a pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by the

name of the thing possessed." Because the meaning is--\_our principle\_;--i.

e., the \_speakers\_' principle.

\_Only\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared: and relates to \_principle\_;

according to Rule 9th, which says, "Adjectives relate to nouns or

pronouns." Because the meaning is--\_only principle\_.

\_Saving\_ is a participial adjective, compared by adverbs when it means

\_frugal\_, but not compared in the sense here intended: and relates to

\_principle\_; according to Rule 9th, which says, "Adjectives relate to nouns

or pronouns." Because the meaning is--\_saving principle\_.

\_Principle\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, neuter

gender, and objective case: and is governed by \_against\_; according to Rule

7th, which says, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of a preposition, is

governed by it in the objective case." Because the meaning is--\_against

principle\_.

LESSON I.--ARTICLES.

"In English heroic verse, the capital pause of every line, is determined by

the sense to be after the fourth, the fifth, the sixth or the seventh

syllable."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 105.

"When, in considering the structure of a tree or a plant, we observe how

all the parts, the roots, the stem, the bark, and the leaves, are suited to

the growth and nutriment of the whole; when we survey all the parts and

members of a living animal; or when we examine any of the curious works of

art--such as a clock, a ship, or any nice machine; the pleasure which we

have in the survey, is wholly founded on this sense of beauty."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 49.

"It never can proceed from a good taste, to make a teaspoon resemble the

leaf of a tree; for such a form is inconsistent with the destination of a

teaspoon."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 351.

"In an epic poem, a history, an oration, or any work of genius, we always

require a fitness, or an adjustment of means to the end which the author is

supposed to have in view."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 50.

"Rhetoric, Logic, and Grammar, are three arts that should always walk hand

in hand. The first is the art of speaking eloquently; the second, that of

thinking well; and the third, that of speaking with propriety."--\_Formey's

Belles-Lettres\_, p. 114.

"Spring hangs her infant blossoms on the trees,

Rock'd in the cradle of the western breeze."--\_Cowper\_.

LESSON II.--NOUNS.

"There goes a rumour that I am to be banished. And let the sentence come,

if God so will. The other side of the sea is my Father's ground, as well as

this side."--\_Rutherford\_.

"Gentlemen, there is something on earth greater than arbitrary or despotic

power. The lightning has its power, and the whirlwind has its power, and

the earthquake has its power. But there is something among men more capable

of shaking despotic power than lightning, whirlwind, or earthquake; that

is--the threatened indignation of the whole civilized world."--\_Daniel

Webster\_.

"And Isaac sent away Jacob; and he went to Padan Aram, unto Laban, son of

Bethuel the Syrian, and brother of Rebecca, Jacob's and Esau's

mother."--See \_Gen.\_, xxviii, 5.

"The purpose you undertake is dangerous." "Why that is certain: it is

dangerous to take a cold, to sleep, to drink; but I tell you, my Lord fool,

out of this nettle danger, we pluck this flower safety."--\_Shakespeare\_.

"And towards the Jews alone, one of the noblest charters of liberty on

earth--\_Magna Charta\_, the Briton's boast--legalized an act of

injustice."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 74.

"Were Demosthenes's Philippics spoken in a British assembly, in a similar

conjuncture of affairs, they would convince and persuade at this day. The

rapid style, the vehement reasoning, the disdain, anger, boldness, freedom,

which perpetually animate them, would render their success infallible over

any modern assembly. I question whether the same can be said of Cicero's

orations; whose eloquence, however beautiful, and however well suited to

the Roman taste, yet borders oftener on declamation, and is more remote

from the manner in which we now expect to hear real business and causes of

importance treated."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 248.

"In fact, every attempt to present on paper the splendid effects of

impassioned eloquence, is like gathering up dewdrops, which appear jewels

and pearls on the grass, but run to water in the hand; the essence and the

elements remain, but the grace, the sparkle, and the form, are

gone."--\_Montgomery's Life of Spencer\_.

"As in life true dignity must be founded on character, not on dress and

appearance; so in language the dignity of composition must arise from

sentiment and thought, not from ornament."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 144.

"And man, whose heaven-erected face the smiles of love adorn,

Man's inhumanity to man makes countless thousands mourn."

--\_Burns\_.

"Ah wretched man! unmindful of thy end!

A moment's glory! and what fates attend."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. xvii, l. 231.

LESSON III.--ADJECTIVES.

"Embarrassed, obscure, and feeble sentences, are generally, if not always,

the result of embarrassed, obscure, and feeble thought."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 120.

"Upon this ground, we prefer a simple and natural, to an artificial and

affected style; a regular and well-connected story, to loose and scattered

narratives; a catastrophe which is tender and pathetic, to one which leaves

us unmoved."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23.

"A thorough good taste may well be considered as a power compounded of

natural sensibility to beauty, and of improved understanding."--\_Ib.\_, p.

18.

"Of all writings, ancient or modern, the sacred Scriptures afford us the

highest instances of the sublime. The descriptions of the Deity, in them,

are wonderfully noble; both from the grandeur of the object, and the manner

of representing it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36.

"It is not the authority of any one person, or of a few, be they ever so

eminent, that can establish one form of speech in preference to another.

Nothing but the general practice of good writers and good speakers can do

it."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 107.

"What other means are there to attract love and esteem so effectual as a

virtuous course of life? If a man be just and beneficent, if he be

temperate, modest, and prudent, he will infallibly gain the esteem and love

of all who know him."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 167.

"But there are likewise, it must be owned, people in the world, whom it is

easy to make worse by rough usage, and not easy to make better by any

other."--\_Abp. Seeker\_.

"The great comprehensive truth written in letters of living light on every

page of our history--the language addressed by every past age of New

England to all future ages, is this: Human happiness has no perfect

security but freedom;--freedom, none but virtue;--virtue, none but

knowledge: and neither freedom, nor virtue, nor knowledge, has any vigour

or immortal hope, except in the principles of the Christian faith, and in

the sanctions of the Christian religion."--\_President Quincy\_.

"For bliss, as thou hast part, to me is bliss;

Tedious, unshared with thee, and odious soon."

--\_P. Lost\_, B. ix, l. 880.

LESSON IV.--PRONOUNS.

"There is but one governor whose sight we cannot escape, whose power we

cannot resist: a sense of His presence and of duty to Him, will accomplish

more than all the laws and penalties which can be devised without

it."--\_Woodbridge, Lit. C.\_, p. 154.

"Every voluntary society must judge who shall be members of their body, and

enjoy fellowship with them in their peculiar privileges."--\_Watts\_.

"Poetry and impassioned eloquence are the only sources from which the

living growth of a language springs; and even if in their vehemence they

bring down some mountain rubbish along with them, this sinks to the bottom,

and the pure stream flows along over it."--\_Philological Museum\_, i, 645.

"This use is bounded by the province, county, or district, which gives name

to the dialect, and beyond which its peculiarities are sometimes

unintelligible, and always ridiculous."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 163.

"Every thing that happens, is both a cause and an effect; being the effect

of what goes before, and the cause of what follows."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, ii, 297.

"Withhold not good from them to whom it is due, when it is in the power of

thine hand to do it."--\_Prov.\_, iii, 27.

"Yet there is no difficulty at all in ascertaining the idea. \* \* \* By

reflecting upon that which is myself now, and that which was myself twenty

years ago, I discern they are not two, but one and the same

self."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 271.

"If you will replace what has been long expunged from the language, and

extirpate what is firmly rooted, undoubtedly you yourself become an

innovator."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 167; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 364.

"To speak as others speak, is one of those tacit obligations, annexed to

the condition of living in society, which we are bound in conscience to

fulfill, though we have never ratified them by any express promise;

because, if they were disregarded, society would be impossible, and human

happiness at an end."--See \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 139.

"In England \_thou\_ was in current use until, perhaps, near the commencement

of the seventeenth century, though it was getting to be regarded as

somewhat disrespectful. At Walter Raleigh's trial, Coke, when argument and

evidence failed him, insulted the defendant by applying to him the term

\_thou\_. 'All that Lord Cobham did,' he cried, 'was at \_thy\_ instigation,

\_thou\_ viper! for I \_thou\_ thee, \_thou\_ traitor!'"--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_,

§220.

"Th' Egyptian crown I to your hands remit;

And with it take his heart who offers it."--\_Shakspeare\_.

LESSON V.--VERBS.

"Sensuality contaminates the body, depresses the understanding, deadens the

moral feelings of the heart, and degrades man from his rank in the

creation."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, p. 231.

"When a writer reasons, we look only for perspicuity; when he describes, we

expect embellishment; when he divides, or relates, we desire plainness and

simplicity."--\_Blair's\_ \_Rhet.\_, p. 144.

"Livy and Herodotus are diffuse; Thucydides and Sallust are succinct; yet

all of them are agreeable."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178.

"Whenever petulant ignorance, pride, malice, malignity, or envy, interposes

to cloud or sully his fame, I will take upon me to pronounce that the

eclipse will not last long."--\_Dr. Delany\_.

"She said she had nothing to say, for she was resigned, and I knew all she

knew that concerned us in this world; but she desired to be alone, that in

the presence of God only, she might without interruption do her last duty

to me."--\_Spect.\_, No. 520.

"Wisdom and truth, the offspring of the sky, are immortal; while cunning

and deception, the meteors of the earth, after glittering for a moment,

must pass away."--\_Robert Hall\_. "See, I have this day set thee over the

nations, and over the kingdoms, to root out, and to pull down, and to

destroy, and to throw down, to build, and to plant."--\_Jeremiah\_, i, 10.

"God might command the stones to be made bread, or the clouds to rain it;

but he chooses rather to leave mankind to till, to sow, to reap, to gather

into barns, to grind, to knead, to bake, and then to eat."--\_London

Quarterly Review\_.

"Eloquence is no invention of the schools. Nature teaches every man to be

eloquent, when he is much in earnest. Place him in some critical situation,

let him have some great interest at stake, and you will see him lay hold of

the most effectual means of persuasion."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 235.

"It is difficult to possess great fame and great ease at the same time.

Fame, like fire, is with difficulty kindled, is easily increased, but dies

away if not continually fed. To preserve fame alive, every enterprise ought

to be a pledge of others, so as to keep mankind in constant

expectation."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 50. "Pope, finding little advantage

from external help, resolved thenceforward to direct himself, and at twelve

formed a plan of study which he completed with little other incitement than

the desire of excellence."--\_Johnson's Lives of Poets\_, p. 498.

"Loose, then, from earth the grasp of fond desire,

Weigh anchor, and some happier clime explore."--\_Young\_.

LESSON VI.--PARTICIPLES.

"The child, affrighted with the view of his father's helmet and crest, and

clinging to the nurse; Hector, putting off his helmet, taking the child

into his arms, and offering up a prayer for him; Andromache, receiving back

the child with a smile of pleasure, and at the same instant bursting into

tears; form the most natural and affecting picture that can possibly be

imagined."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 435.

"The truth of being, and the truth of knowing are one; differing no more

than the direct beam and the beam reflected."--\_Ld. Bacon\_. "Verbs denote

states of being, considered as beginning, continuing, ending, being

renewed, destroyed, and again repeated, so as to suit any

occasion."--\_William Ward's Gram.\_, p. 41.

"We take it for granted, that we have a competent knowledge and skill, and

that we are able to acquit ourselves properly, in our own native tongue; a

faculty, solely acquired by use, conducted by habit, and tried by the ear,

carries us on without reflection."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. vi.

"I mean the teacher himself; who, stunned with the hum, and suffocated with

the closeness of his school-room, has spent the whole day in controlling

petulance, exciting indifference to action, striving to enlighten

stupidity, and labouring to soften obstinacy."--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

"The inquisitive mind, beginning with criticism, the most agreeable of all

amusements, and finding no obstruction in its progress, advances far into

the sensitive part of our nature; and gains imperceptibly a thorough

knowledge of the human heart, of its desires, and of every motive to

action."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 42.

"They please, are pleased; they give to get esteem;

Till, seeming blest, they grow to what they seem."--\_Goldsmith\_.

LESSON VII.--ADVERBS.

"How cheerfully, how freely, how regularly, how constantly, how

unweariedly, how powerfully, how extensively, he communicateth his

convincing, his enlightening, his heart-penetrating, warming, and melting;

his soul-quickening, healing, refreshing, directing, and fructifying

influence!"--\_Brown's Metaphors\_, p. 96.

"The passage, I grant, requires to be well and naturally read, in order to

be promptly comprehended; but surely there are very few passages worth

comprehending, either of verse or prose, that can be promptly understood,

when they are read unnaturally and ill."--\_Thelwall's Lect\_. "They waste

life in what are called good resolutions--partial efforts at reformation,

feebly commenced, heartlessly conducted, and hopelessly

concluded."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 262.

"A man may, in respect of grammatical purity, speak unexceptionably, and

yet speak obscurely and ambiguously; and though we cannot say, that a man

may speak properly, and at the same time speak unintelligibly, yet this

last case falls more naturally to be considered as an offence against

perspicuity, than as a violation of propriety."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p.

104.

"Ye are witnesses, and God also, how holily and justly and unblamably we

behaved ourselves among you that believe."--\_1 Thes.\_, ii, 10.

"The question is not, whether they know what is said of Christ in the

Scriptures; but whether they know it savingly, truly, livingly,

powerfully."--\_Penington's Works\_, iii, 28.

"How gladly would the man recall to life

The boy's neglected sire! a mother too,

That softer friend, perhaps more gladly still,

Might he demand them at the gates of death!"--\_Cowper\_.

LESSON VIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

"Every person's safety requires that he should submit to be governed; for

if one man may do harm without suffering punishment, every man has the same

right, and no person can be safe."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 38.

"When it becomes a practice to collect debts by law, it is a proof of

corruption and degeneracy among the people. Laws and courts are necessary,

to settle controverted points between man and man; but a man should pay an

acknowledged debt, not because there is a law to oblige him, but because it

is just and honest, and because he has promised to pay it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42.

"The liar, and only the liar, is invariably and universally despised,

abandoned, and disowned. It is therefore natural to expect, that a crime

thus generally detested, should be generally avoided."--\_Hawkesworth\_.

"When a man swears to the truth of his tale, he tacitly acknowledges that

his bare word does not deserve credit. A swearer will lie, and a liar is

not to be believed even upon his oath; nor is he believed, when he happens

to speak the truth."--\_Red Book\_, p. 108.

"John Adams replied, 'I know Great Britain has determined on her system,

and that very determination determines me on mine. You know I have been

constant and uniform in opposition to her measures. The die is now cast. I

have passed the Rubicon. Sink or swim, live or die, survive or perish with

my country, is my unalterable determination.'"--SEWARD'S \_Life of John

Quincy Adams\_, p. 26.

"I returned, and saw under the sun that the race is not to the swift, nor

the battle to the strong, neither yet bread to the wise, nor yet riches to

men of understanding, nor yet favour to men of skill; but time and chance

happen to them all."--\_Ecclesiastes\_, ix, 11.

"Little, alas! is all the good I can;

A man oppress'd, dependent, yet a man."--\_Pope, Odys.\_, B. xiv, p. 70.

LESSON IX.--PREPOSITIONS.

"He who legislates only for a party, is engraving his name on the

adamantine pillar of his country's history, to be gazed on forever as an

object of universal detestation."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 401.

"The Greek language, in the hands of the orator, the poet, and the

historian, must be allowed to bear away the palm from every other known in

the world; but to that only, in my opinion, need our own yield the

precedence."--\_Barrow's Essays\_, p. 91.

"For my part, I am convinced that the method of teaching which approaches

most nearly to the method of investigation, is incomparably the best;

since, not content with serving up a few barren and lifeless truths, it

leads to the stock on which they grew."--\_Burke, on Taste\_, p. 37.

Better--"on which \_truths grow\_."

"All that I have done in this difficult part of grammar, concerning the

proper use of prepositions, has been to make a few general remarks upon the

subject; and then to give a collection of instances, that have occurred to

me, of the improper use of some of them."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 155.

"This is not an age of encouragement for works of elaborate research and

real utility. The genius of the trade of literature is necessarily

unfriendly to such productions."--\_Thelwall's Lect.\_, p. 102.

"At length, at the end of a range of trees, I saw three figures seated on a

bank of moss, with a silent brook creeping at their feet."--\_Steele\_.

"Thou rather, with thy sharp and sulph'rous bolt,

Splitst the unwedgeable and gnarled oak."--\_Shakspeare\_.

LESSON X.--INTERJECTIONS.

"Hear the word of the Lord, O king of Judah, that sittest upon the throne

of David; thou, and thy servants, and thy people, that enter in by these

gates: thus saith the Lord, Execute ye judgement and righteousness, and

deliver the spoiled out of the hand of the oppressor."--\_Jeremiah\_, xxii,

2, 3.

"Therefore, thus saith the Lord concerning Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king

of Judah, They shall not lament for him, saying, Ah my brother! or, Ah

sister! they shall not lament for him, saying, Ah lord! or, Ah his glory!

He shall be buried with the burial of an ass, drawn and cast forth beyond

the gates of Jerusalem."--\_Jer.\_, xxii, 18, 19.

"O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will

lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with

sapphires."--\_Isaiah\_, liv, 11.

"O prince! O friend! lo! here thy Medon stands;

Ah! stop the hero's unresisted hands."

--\_Pope, Odys.\_, B. xxii, l. 417.

"When, lo! descending to our hero's aid,

Jove's daughter Pallas, war's triumphant maid!"

--\_Ib.\_, B. xxii, l. 222.

"O friends! oh ever exercised in care!

Hear Heaven's commands, and reverence what ye hear!"

--\_Ib.\_, B. xii, l. 324.

"Too daring prince! ah, whither dost thou run?

Ah, too forgetful of thy wife and you!"

--\_Pope's Iliad\_, B. vi, l. 510.

CHAPTER II.--ARTICLES.

In this chapter, and those which follow it, the

Rules of Syntax are again exhibited, in the order of the parts of speech,

with Examples, Exceptions, Observations, Notes, and False Syntax. The Notes

are all of them, in form and character, subordinate rules of syntax,

designed for the detection of errors. The correction of the False Syntax

placed under the rules and notes, will form an \_oral exercise\_, similar to

that of parsing, and perhaps more useful.[334]

RULE I.--ARTICLES.

Articles relate to the nouns which they limit:[335] as, "At \_a\_ little

distance from \_the\_ ruins of \_the\_ abbey, stands \_an\_ aged elm."

"See \_the\_ blind beggar dance, \_the\_ cripple sing,

\_The\_ sot \_a\_ hero, lunatic \_a\_ king."--\_Pope's Essay\_, Ep. ii, l. 268.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

The definite article used \_intensively\_, may relate to an \_adjective\_ or

\_adverb\_ of the comparative or the superlative degree; as, "A land which

was \_the mightiest\_."--\_Byron\_. "\_The farther\_ they proceeded, \_the

greater\_ appeared their alacrity."--\_Dr. Johnson\_. "He chooses it \_the

rather\_"--\_Cowper\_. See Obs. 10th, below.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

The indefinite article is sometimes used to give a collective meaning to

what seems a \_plural adjective of number\_; as, "Thou hast \_a few\_ names

even in Sardis."--\_Rev.\_, iii, 4. "There are \_a thousand\_ things which

crowd into my memory."--\_Spectator\_, No. 468. "The centurion commanded \_a

hundred\_ men."--\_Webster\_. See Etymology, Articles, Obs. 26.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE I.

OBS. 1.--The article is a kind of \_index\_, usually pointing to some noun;

and it is a general, if not a universal, principle, that no one noun admits

of more than one article. Hence, two or more articles in a sentence are

signs of two or more nouns; and hence too, by a very convenient ellipsis,

an article before an adjective is often made to relate to a noun

understood; as, "\_The\_ grave [\_people\_] rebuke \_the\_ gay [\_people\_], and

\_the\_ gay [\_people\_] mock \_the\_ grave" [\_people\_].--\_Maturin's Sermons\_,

p. 103. "\_The\_ wise [\_persons\_] shall inherit glory."--\_Prov.\_, iii, 35.

"\_The\_ vile [\_person\_] will talk villainy."--\_Coleridge's Lay Sermons\_, p.

105: see \_Isaiah\_, xxxii, 6. "The testimony of the Lord is sure, making

wise \_the\_ simple" [\_ones\_].--\_Psal.\_, xix, 7. "\_The\_ Old [\_Testament\_] and

the New Testament are alike authentic."--"\_The\_ animal [\_world\_] and the

vegetable world are adapted to each other."--"\_An\_ epic [\_poem\_] and a

dramatic poem are the same in substance."--\_Ld. Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii,

274. "The neuter verb is conjugated like \_the\_ active" [\_verb\_].--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 99. "Each section is supposed to contain \_a\_ heavy [\_portion\_]

and a light portion; \_the\_ heavy [\_portion\_] being the accented syllable,

and \_the\_ light [\_portion\_] \_the\_ unaccented" [\_syllable\_].--\_Rush, on the

Voice\_, p. 364.

OBS. 2.--Our language does not, like the French, \_require a repetition\_ of

the article before every noun in a series; because the same article may

serve to limit the signification of several nouns, provided they all stand

in the same construction. Hence the following sentence is bad English: "The

understanding and language have a strict connexion."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

p. 356. The sense of the former noun only was meant to be limited. The

expression therefore should have been, "\_Language and the understanding\_

have a strict connexion," or, "The understanding \_has\_ a strict connexion

\_with language\_." In some instances, one article \_seems\_ to limit the sense

of several nouns that are not all in the same construction, thus: "As it

proves a greater or smaller obstruction to \_the speaker's\_ or \_writer's

aim\_."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 200. That is--"to \_the\_ aim of \_the\_ speaker

or \_the\_ writer." It is, in fact, the possessive, that limits the other

nouns; for, "\_a man's foes\_" means, "\_the\_ foes of \_a\_ man;" and, "\_man's

wisdom\_," means, "\_the\_ wisdom of man." The governing noun cannot have an

article immediately before it. Yet the omission of articles, when it

occurs, is not properly \_by ellipsis\_, as some grammarians declare it to

be; for there never can be a proper ellipsis of an article, when there is

not also an ellipsis of its noun. Ellipsis supposes the omitted words to be

necessary to the construction, when they are not so to the sense; and this,

it would seem, cannot be the case with a mere article. If such a sign be in

any wise necessary, it ought to be used; and if not needed in any respect,

it cannot be said to be \_understood\_. The definite article being generally

required before adjectives that are used by ellipsis as nouns, we in this

case repeat it before every term in a series; as, "They are singled out

from among their fellows, as \_the\_ kind, \_the\_ amiable, \_the\_

sweet-tempered, \_the\_ upright."--\_Dr. Chalmers\_.

"\_The\_ great, \_the\_ gay, shall they partake

The heav'n that thou alone canst make?"--\_Cowper\_.

OBS. 3.--The article precedes its noun, and is never, by itself, placed

after it; as, "Passion is \_the\_ drunkenness of \_the\_ mind."--\_Southey\_.

When an \_adjective\_ likewise precedes the noun, the article is usually

placed before the adjective, that its power of limitation may extend over

that also; as, "\_A concise\_ writer compresses his thoughts into \_the

fewest\_ possible words."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 176.

"\_The private\_ path, \_the secret\_ acts of men,

If noble, far \_the noblest\_ of their lives."--\_Young\_.

OBS. 4.--The relative position of the article and the adjective is seldom a

matter of indifference. Thus, it is good English to say, "\_both the men\_,"

or, "\_the two men\_;" but we can by no means say, "\_the both men\_" or, "\_two

the men\_." Again, the two phrases, "\_half a dollar\_," and "\_a half

dollar\_," though both good, are by no means equivalent. Of the pronominal

adjectives, some exclude the article; some precede it; and some follow it,

like other adjectives. The word \_same\_ is seldom, if ever used without the

definite article or some stronger definitive before it; as, "On \_the same\_

day,"--"in \_that same\_ hour,"--"\_These same\_ gentlemen." After the

adjective \_both\_, the definite article \_may\_ be used, but it is generally

\_unnecessary\_, and this is a sufficient reason for omitting it: as, "The

following sentences will fully exemplify, to the young grammarian, \_both

the parts\_ of this rule."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 192. Say, "\_both

parts\_." The adjective \_few\_ may be used either with or without an article,

but not with the same import: as, "\_The few\_ who were present, were in the

secret;" i. e., All then present knew the thing. "\_Few\_ that were present,

were in the secret;" i.e., Not many then present knew the thing. "When I

say, 'There were \_few\_ men with him,' I speak diminutively, and mean to

represent them as inconsiderable; whereas, when I say, 'There were \_a few\_

men with him,' I evidently intend to make the most of them."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 171. See Etymology, Articles, Obs. 28.

OBS. 5.--The pronominal adjectives which exclude the article, are \_any,

each, either, every, much, neither, no\_, or \_none, some, this, that, these,

those\_. The pronominal adjectives which precede the article, are \_all,

both, many, such\_, and \_what\_; as, "\_All the\_ world,"--"\_Both the\_

judges,"--"\_Many a\_[336] mile,"--"\_Such a\_ chasm,"--"\_What a\_ freak." In

like manner, any adjective of quality, when its meaning is limited by the

adverb \_too, so, as\_, or \_how\_, is put before the article; as, "\_Too great

a\_ study of strength, is found to betray writers into a harsh

manner."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 179. "Like \_many an\_ other poor wretch, I now

suffer \_all the\_ ill consequences of \_so foolish an\_ indulgence." "\_Such a\_

gift is \_too small a\_ reward for \_so great a\_ labour."--\_Brightland's

Gram.\_, p. 95. "Here flows \_as clear a\_ stream as any in Greece. \_How

beautiful a\_ prospect is here!"--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 52. The

pronominal adjectives which follow the article, are \_few, former, first,

latter, last, little, one, other\_, and \_same\_; as, "An author might lean

either to \_the one [style]\_ or to \_the other\_, and yet be

beautiful."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 179. \_Many\_, like \_few\_, sometimes follows

the article; as, "\_The many\_ favours which we have received."--"In

conversation, for \_many a man\_, they say, \_a many men\_."--\_Johnson's

Dict.\_ In this order of the words, \_a\_ seems awkward and needless; as,

"Told of \_a many\_ thousand warlike French."--\_Shak.\_

OBS. 6.--When the adjective is preceded by any other adverb than \_too, so,

as\_, or \_how\_, the article is almost always placed before the adverb: as,

"One of \_the\_ most complete models;"--"\_An\_ equally important

question;"--"\_An\_ exceedingly rough passage;"--"\_A\_ very important

difference." The adverb \_quite\_, however, may be placed either before or

after the article, though perhaps with a difference of construction: as,

"This is \_quite a\_ different thing;"--or, "This is \_a quite different\_

thing." "Finding it \_quite an\_ other thing;"--or, "Finding it \_a quite

other\_ thing."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 153. Sometimes \_two adverbs\_ intervene

between the article and the adjective; as, "We had a \_rather more\_ explicit

account of the Novii."--\_Philol. Museum\_, i, 458. But when an other adverb

follows \_too, so, as\_, or \_how\_, the three words should be placed either

before the article or after the noun; as, "Who stands there in \_so purely

poetical\_ a light."--\_Ib.\_, i, 449. Better, perhaps: "\_In a light so purely

poetical\_."

OBS. 7.--The definitives \_this, that\_, and some others, though they

supersede the article \_an\_ or \_a\_, may be followed by the adjective \_one\_;

for we say, "\_this one thing\_," but not, "\_this a thing\_." Yet, in the

following sentence, \_this\_ and \_a\_ being separated by other words, appear

to relate to the same noun: "For who is able to judge \_this\_ thy so great

\_a\_ people?"--\_1 Kings\_, iii, 9. But we may suppose the noun \_people\_ to be

understood after \_this\_. Again, the following example, if it is not wrong,

has an ellipsis of the word \_use\_ after the first \_a\_:

"For highest cordials all their virtue lose,

By \_a\_ too frequent and too bold \_a\_ use."--\_Pomfret\_.

OBS. 8.--When the adjective is placed \_after\_ the noun, the article

generally retains its place before the noun, and is not repeated before the

adjective: as, "\_A\_ man \_ignorant\_ of astronomy;"--"\_The\_ primrose \_pale\_."

In \_Greek\_, when an adjective is placed after its noun, if the article is

applied to the noun, it is repeated before the adjective; as, "[Greek: Hæ

polis hæ megalæ,]"--"\_The\_ city \_the\_ great;" i.e., "The great city." [337]

OBS. 9.--Articles, according to their own definition and nature, come

\_before\_ their nouns; but the definite article and an adjective seem

sometimes to be placed after the noun to which they both relate: as,

"Section \_the Fourth\_;"--"Henry \_the Eighth\_." Such examples, however, may

possibly be supposed elliptical; as, "Section, \_the fourth division\_ of the

chapter;"--"Henry, \_the eighth king\_ of that name:" and, if they are so,

the article, in \_English\_, can never be placed after its noun, nor can two

articles ever properly relate to one noun, in any particular construction

of it. Priestley observes, "Some writers affect to \_transpose\_ these words,

and place the numeral adjective first; [as,] '\_The first Henry\_.' Hume's

History, Vol. i, p. 497. This construction is common with this writer, but

there seems to be a \_want of dignity\_ in it."--\_Rudiments of E. Gram.\_, p.

150. Dr. Webster cites the word \_Great\_, in "\_Alexander the Great\_" as a

\_name\_, or \_part\_ of a name; that is, he gives it as an instance of

"\_cognomination\_." See his \_American Dict.\_, 8vo. And if this is right, the

article may be said to relate to the epithet only, as it appears to do.

For, if the word is taken substantively, there is certainly no ellipsis;

neither is there any transposition in putting it last, but rather, as

Priestley suggests, in putting it first.

OBS. 10.--The definite article is often prefixed to \_comparatives\_ and

\_superlatives\_; and its effect is, as Murray observes, (in the words of

Lowth,) "to mark the degree \_the more\_ strongly, and to define it \_the

more\_ precisely: as, '\_The more\_ I examine it, \_the better\_ I like it.' 'I

like this \_the least\_ of any.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 33; \_Lowth's\_, 14.

"For neither if we eat, are we \_the better\_; neither if we eat not, are we

\_the worse\_."--\_1 Cor.\_, viii, 8. "One is not \_the more\_ agreeable to me

for loving beef, as I do; nor \_the less\_ agreeable for preferring

mutton."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 365. "They are not the men in

the nation, \_the most\_ difficult to be replaced."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

148. In these instances, the article seems to be used \_adverbially\_, and to

relate only to the \_adjective\_ or \_adverb\_ following it. (See observation

fourth, on the Etymology of Adverbs.) Yet none of our grammarians have

actually reckoned \_the\_ an adverb. After the \_adjective\_, the noun might

perhaps be supplied; but when the word \_the\_ is added to an \_adverb\_, we

must either call it an adverb, or make an exception to Rule 1st above: and

if an exception is to be made, the brief form which I have given, cannot

well be improved. For even if a noun be understood, it may not appear that

the article relates to it, rather than to the degree of the quality. Thus:

"\_The\_ deeper the well, \_the\_ clearer the water." This Dr. Ash supposes to

mean, "The deeper \_well\_ the well \_is\_, the clearer \_water\_ the water

\_is\_."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 107. But does the text specify a \_particular\_

"deeper well" or "clearer water?" I think not. To what then does \_the\_

refer, but to the proportionate degree of \_deeper\_ and \_clearer\_?

OBS. 11.--The article the is sometimes elegantly used, after an idiom

common in the French language, in lieu of a possessive pronoun; as, "He

looked him full in \_the\_ face; i. e. in \_his\_ face."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 150. "Men who have not bowed \_the knee\_ to the image of Baal."--\_Rom.\_,

xi, 4. That is, \_their knees\_.

OBS. 12.--The article \_an\_ or \_a\_, because it implies unity, is applicable

to nouns of the singular number only; yet a collective noun, being singular

in form, is sometimes preceded by this article even when it conveys the

idea of plurality and takes a plural verb: as, "There \_are\_ a very great

\_number\_ [of adverbs] ending in \_ly\_."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 63. "A

\_plurality\_ of them \_are\_ sometimes felt at the same instant."--\_Kames, El.

of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 114. In support of this construction, it would be

easy to adduce a great multitude of examples from the most reputable

writers; but still, as it seems not very consistent, to take any word

plurally after restricting it to the singular, we ought rather to avoid

this if we can, and prefer words that literally agree in number: as, "Of

adverbs there \_are\_ very \_many\_ ending in \_ly\_"--"\_More than one\_ of them

\_are\_ sometimes felt at the same instant." The word \_plurality\_, like other

collective nouns, is literally singular: as, "To produce the latter, a

\_plurality\_ of objects \_is\_ necessary."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p.

224.

OBS. 13.--Respecting the form of the indefinite article, present practice

differs a little from that of our ancient writers. \_An\_ was formerly used

before all words beginning with \_h\_, and before several other words which

are now pronounced in such a manner as to require \_a\_: thus, we read in the

Bible, "\_An\_ help,"--"\_an\_ house,"--"\_an\_ hundred,"--"\_an\_ one,"--"\_an\_

ewer,"--"\_an\_ usurer;" whereas we now say, "\_A\_ help,"--"\_a\_ house,"--"\_a\_

hundred,"--"\_a\_ one,"--"\_a\_ ewer,"--"\_a\_ usurer."

OBS. 14.--Before the word \_humble\_, with its compounds and derivatives,

some use \_an\_, and others, \_a\_; according to their practice, in this

instance, of sounding or suppressing the aspiration. Webster and Jameson

sound the \_h\_, and consequently prefer \_a\_; as, "But \_a humbling\_ image is

not always necessary to produce that effect."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i,

205. "O what a blessing is \_a humble\_ mind!"--\_Christian Experience\_, p.

342. But Sheridan, Walker, Perry, Jones, and perhaps a majority of

fashionable speakers, leave the \_h\_ silent, and would consequently say,

"\_An humbling\_ image,"--"\_an humble\_ mind,"--&c.

OBS. 15.--An observance of the principles on which the article is to be

repeated or not repeated in a sentence, is of very great moment in respect

to accuracy of composition. These principles are briefly stated in the

notes below, but it is proper that the learner should know the reasons of

the distinctions which are there made. By a repetition of the article

before several adjectives in the same construction, a repetition of the

noun is implied; but without a repetition of the article, the adjectives,

in all fairness of interpretation, are confined to one and the same noun:

as, "No figures will render \_a cold\_ or \_an empty\_ composition

interesting."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 134. Here the author speaks of a cold

composition and an empty composition as different things. "\_The\_

metaphorical and \_the\_ literal meaning \_are\_ improperly mixed."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 339. Here the verb are has two nominatives, one of which is

expressed, and the other understood. "But \_the\_ third and \_the\_ last of

these [forms] are seldom used."--\_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 186. Here the verb

"\_are used\_" has two nominatives, both of which are understood; namely,

"the third \_form\_," and "the last \_form\_." Again: "\_The original and

present\_ signification \_is\_ always retained."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of

Lang.\_, Vol. ii, p. 149. Here \_one signification\_ is characterized as being

both original and present. "\_A loose and verbose manner\_ never \_fails\_ to

create disgust."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 261. That is, \_one manner\_, loose and

verbose. "To give \_a\_ short and yet clear and plain answer to this

proposition."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 533. That is, \_one answer,

short, clear, and plain\_; for the conjunctions in the text connect nothing

but the adjectives.

OBS. 16.--To avoid repetition, even of the little word \_the\_, we sometimes,

with one article, join \_inconsistent\_ qualities to a \_plural noun\_;--that

is, when the adjectives so differ as to individualize the things, we

sometimes make the noun plural, in stead of repeating the article: as,

"\_The\_ north and south \_poles\_;" in stead of, "\_The\_ north and \_the\_ south

\_pole\_."--"\_The\_ indicative and potential \_moods\_;" in stead of "\_The\_

indicative and \_the\_ potential \_mood\_."--"\_The\_ Old and New \_Testaments\_;"

in stead of, "\_The\_ Old and \_the\_ New \_Testament\_." But, in any such case,

to repeat the article when the noun is made plural, is a huge blunder;

because it implies a repetition of the plural noun. And again, not to

repeat the article when the noun is singular, is also wrong; because it

forces the adjectives to coalesce in describing one and the same thing.

Thus, to say, "\_The\_ north and south \_pole\_" is certainly wrong, unless we

mean by it, \_one pole\_, or \_slender stick of wood\_, pointing north and

south; and again, to say, "\_The\_ north and \_the\_ south \_poles\_," is also

wrong, unless we mean by it, \_several poles at the north\_ and \_others at

the south\_. So the phrase, "\_The\_ Old and New \_Testament\_" is wrong,

because we have not \_one Testament that is both Old and New\_; and again,

"\_The\_ Old and \_the\_ New \_Testaments\_," is wrong, because we have not

several \_Old Testaments and several New ones\_: at least we have them not in

the Bible.

OBS. 17.--Sometimes a noun that \_admits no article\_, is preceded by

adjectives that do not describe the same thing; as, "Never to jumble

\_metaphorical and plain language\_ together."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 146. This

means, "\_metaphorical language\_ and \_plain language\_;" and, for the sake of

perfect clearness, it would perhaps be better to express it so. "For as

\_intrinsic and relative beauty\_ must often be blended in the same building,

it becomes a difficult task to attain \_both\_ in any perfection."--\_Karnes,

El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 330. That is, "\_intrinsic beauty\_ and \_relative

beauty\_" must often be blended; and this phraseology would be better. "In

correspondence to that distinction of \_male and female sex\_."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 74. This may be expressed as well or better, in half a dozen

other ways; for the article may be added, or the noun may be made plural,

with or without the article, and before or after the adjectives. "They make

no distinction between causes of civil and criminal jurisdiction."--

\_Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. i, p. 302. This means--"between causes of civil and

\_causes\_ of criminal jurisdiction;" and, for the sake of perspicuity, it

ought to have been so written,--or, still better, \_thus\_: "They make no

distinction between civil causes and criminal."

NOTES TO RULE I.

NOTE I.--When the indefinite article is required, \_a\_ should always be used

before the sound of a consonant, and \_an\_, before that of a vowel; as,

"With the talents of \_an\_ angel, a man may be \_a\_ fool."--\_Young\_.

NOTE II.--The article \_an\_ or \_a\_ must never be so used as to relate, or

even seem to relate, to a plural noun. The following sentence is therefore

faulty: "I invited her to spend a day in viewing \_a seat and

gardens.\_"--\_Rambler\_, No. 34. Say, "a seat and \_its\_ gardens."

NOTE III.--When nouns are joined in construction, with different adjuncts,

different dependence, or positive contrast, the article, if it belong at

all to the latter, must be repeated. The following sentence is therefore

inaccurate: "She never considered the quality, but merit of her

visitors."--\_Wm. Penn\_. Say, "\_the\_ merit." So the article in brackets is

absolutely necessary to the sense and propriety of the following phrase,

though not inserted by the learned author: "The Latin introduced between

the Conquest and [\_the\_] reign of Henry the Eighth."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_,

8vo, 1850, p. 42.

NOTE IV.--When adjectives are connected, and the qualities belong to things

individually different, though of the same name, the article should be

repeated: as, "\_A\_ black and \_a\_ white horse;"--i. e., \_two horses\_, one

black and the other white. "\_The\_ north and \_the\_ south line;"--i. e., \_two

lines\_, running east and west.

NOTE V.--When adjectives are connected, and the qualities all belong to the

same thing or things, the article should not be repeated: as, "\_A\_ black

and white horse;"--i. e., \_one\_ horse, \_piebald\_. "\_The\_ north and south

line;"--i. e., \_one line\_, running north and south, like a meridian. NOTE

VI.--When two or more individual things of the same name are distinguished

by adjectives that cannot unite to describe the same thing, the article

must be added to each if the noun be singular, and to the first only if the

noun follow them in the plural: as, "\_The\_ nominative and \_the\_ objective

\_case\_;" or, "\_The\_ nominative and objective \_cases\_."--"\_The\_ third, \_the\_

fifth, \_the\_ seventh, and \_the\_ eighth \_chapter\_;" or, "\_The\_ third, fifth,

seventh, and eighth \_chapters\_." [338]

NOTE VII.--When two phrases of the same sentence have any special

correspondence with each other, the article, if used in the former, is in

general required also in the latter: as, "For ye know neither \_the\_ day nor

\_the\_ hour."--\_Matt.\_, xxv, 13. "Neither \_the\_ cold nor \_the\_ fervid are

formed for friendship."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 209. "The vail of the temple

was rent in twain, from \_the\_ top to \_the\_ bottom."--\_Matt.\_, xxvii, 51.

NOTE VIII.--When a special correspondence is formed between individual

epithets, the noun which follows must not be made plural; because the

article, in such a case, cannot be repeated as the construction of

correspondents requires. Thus, it is improper to say, "Both \_the\_ first and

second \_editions\_" or, "Both \_the\_ first and \_the\_ second \_editions\_" for

the accurate phrase, "Both \_the\_ first and \_the\_ second \_edition\_;" and

still worse to say, "Neither \_the\_ Old nor New \_Testaments\_" or, "Neither

\_the\_ Old nor \_the\_ New \_Testaments\_" for the just expression, "Neither

\_the\_ Old nor \_the\_ New \_Testament\_." Yet we may say, "Neither \_the old\_

nor \_the new statutes\_" or, "Both \_the early\_ and \_the late editions\_;" for

here the epithets severally apply to more than one thing.

NOTE IX.--In a series of three or more terms, if the article is used with

any, it should in general be added either to every one, or else to the

first only. The following phrase is therefore inaccurate: "Through their

attention to the helm, the sails, or rigging."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol. i,

p. 11. Say, "\_the\_ rigging."

NOTE X.--As the article \_an\_ or \_a\_ denotes "\_one thing of a kind\_," it

should not be used as we use \_the\_, to denote emphatically a \_whole kind\_;

and again, when the species is said to be \_of the genus\_, no article should

be used to limit the latter. Thus some will say, "\_A jay\_ is a sort of \_a

bird\_;" whereas they ought to say, "\_The jay\_ is a sort \_of bird\_." Because

it is absurd to suggest, that \_one jay\_ is \_a sort\_ of \_one bird\_. Yet we

may say, "\_The jay\_ is \_a bird\_," or, "\_A jay\_ is \_a bird\_;" because, as

every species is one under the genus, so every individual is one under

both.

NOTE XI.--The article should not be used before the names of virtues,

vices, passions, arts, or sciences, in their general sense; before terms

that are strictly limited by other definitives; or before any noun whose

signification is sufficiently definite without it: as, "\_Falsehood\_ is

odious."--"\_Iron\_ is useful."--"\_Beauty\_ is vain."--"\_Admiration\_ is

useless, when it is not supported by \_domestic worth\_"--\_Webster's Essays\_,

p. 30.

NOTE XII.--When titles are mentioned merely as titles; or names of things,

merely as names or words; the article should not be used before them: as,

"He is styled \_Marquis\_;" not, "\_the\_ Marquis," or, "\_a\_ Marquis,"--"Ought

a teacher to call his pupil \_Master\_?"--"\_Thames\_ is derived from the Latin

name \_Tam~esis\_."

NOTE XIII.--When a comparison or an alternative is made with two nouns, if

both of them refer to the same subject, the article should not be inserted

before the latter; if to different subjects, it should not be omitted:

thus, if we say, "He is a better teacher than poet," we compare different

qualifications of the same man; but if we say, "He is a better teacher than

\_a\_ poet," we speak of different men, in regard to the same qualification.

NOTE XIV.--The definite article, or some other definitive, (as \_this, that,

these, those\_,) is generally required before the antecedent to the pronoun

\_who\_ or \_which\_ in a restrictive clause; as, "All \_the men who\_ were

present, agreed to it."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 145. "The \_thoughts which\_

passion suggests are always plain and obvious ones."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

468. "The \_things which\_ are impossible with men, are possible with

God."--\_Luke\_, xviii, 27. See Etymology, Chap. V, Obs. 26th, &c., on

Classes of Pronouns.

NOTE XV.--The article is generally required in that construction which

converts a participle into a verbal or participial noun; as, "\_The

completing of\_ this, by \_the working-out of\_ sin inherent, must be by the

power and spirit of Christ in the heart."--\_Wm. Penn\_. "They shall be \_an

abhorring\_ unto all flesh."--\_Isaiah\_, lxvi, 24. "For \_the dedicating of\_

the altar."--\_Numb.\_, vii, 11.

NOTE XVI.--The article should not be added to any participle that is not

taken in all other respects as a noun; as, "For \_the\_ dedicating the

altar."--"He made a mistake in \_the\_ giving out the text." Expunge \_the\_,

and let \_dedicating\_ and \_giving\_ here stand as participles only; for in

the construction of nouns, they must have not only a definitive before

them, but the preposition \_of\_ after them.

NOTE XVII.--The false syntax of articles properly includes every passage in

which there is any faulty insertion, omission, choice, or position, of this

part of speech. For example: "When the verb is \_a\_ passive, the agent and

object change places."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 73. Better: "When the verb is

\_passive\_, the agent and \_the\_ object change places." "Comparisons used by

the sacred poets, are generally short."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 87. Better:

"\_The\_ comparisons," &c. "Pronoun means \_for noun\_, and \_is used\_ to \_avoid

the\_ too frequent repetition of \_the\_ noun."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 89.

Say rather: "\_The\_ pronoun \_is put\_ for \_a\_ noun, and is used to \_prevent\_

too frequent a repetition of the noun." Or: "\_The word\_ PRONOUN means \_for

noun\_; and \_a pronoun\_ is used to prevent too frequent a repetition of

\_some\_ noun."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION. FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE I.

[Fist][The examples of False Syntax placed under the rules and notes, are

to be corrected \_orally\_ by the pupil, according to the formules given, or

according to others framed in like manner, and adapted to the several

notes.]

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--AN OR A.

"I have seen an horrible thing in the house of Israel."--\_Hosea\_, vi, 10.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article \_an\_ is used before \_horrible\_,

which begins with the sound of the consonant \_h\_. But, according to Note

1st, under Rule 1st, "When the indefinite article is required, \_a\_ should

always be used before the sound of a consonant, and \_an\_, before that of a

vowel." Therefore, \_an\_ should be \_a\_; thus, "I have seen \_a\_ horrible

thing in the house of Israel."]

"There is an harshness in the following sentences."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 188. "Indeed, such an one is not to be looked for."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

27. "If each of you will be disposed to approve himself an useful

citizen."--\_Ib.\_, p. 263. "Land with them had acquired almost an European

value."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 325. "He endeavoured to find out an

wholesome remedy."--\_Neef's Method of Ed.\_, p. 3. "At no time have we

attended an Yearly Meeting more to our own satisfaction."--\_The Friend\_, v,

224. "Addison was not an humourist in character."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

i, 303. "Ah me! what an one was he?"--\_Lily's Gram.\_, p. 49. "He was such

an one as I never saw."--\_Ib.\_ "No man can be a good preacher, who is not

an useful one."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 283. "An usage which is too frequent

with Mr. Addison."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200. "Nobody joins the voice of a sheep with

the shape of an horse."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 298. "An universality seems to

be aimed at by the omission of the article."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 154.

"Architecture is an useful as well as a fine art."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 335. "Because the same individual conjunctions do not preserve an

uniform signification."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 78. "Such a work required

the patience and assiduity of an hermit."--\_Johnson's Life of Morin\_.

"Resentment is an union of sorrow with malignity."--\_Rambler\_, No. 185.

"His bravery, we know, was an high courage of blasphemy."--\_Pope\_. "Hyssop;

a herb of bitter taste."--\_Pike's Heb. Lex.\_, p. 3.

"On each enervate string they taught the note

To pant, or tremble through an Eunuch's throat."--\_Pope\_.

UNDER NOTE II.--AN OR A WITH PLURALS.

"At a sessions of the court in March, it was moved," &c.--\_Hutchinson's

Hist. of Mass.\_, i, 61. "I shall relate my conversations, of which I kept a

memoranda."--\_Duchess D'Abrantes\_, p. 26. "I took another dictionary, and

with a scissors cut out, for instance, the word ABACUS."--\_A. B. Johnson's

Plan of a Dict.\_, p. 12. "A person very meet seemed he for the purpose, of

a forty-five years old."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p. 338. "And it

came to pass about an eight days after these sayings."--\_Luke\_, ix, 28."

There were slain of them upon a three thousand men."--\_1 Mac.\_, iv, 15."

Until I had gained the top of these white mountains, which seemed another

Alps of snow."--\_Addison, Tat.\_, No. 161. "To make them a satisfactory

amends for all the losses they had sustained."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, p.

187. "As a first fruits of many more that shall be gathered."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 506. "It makes indeed a little amends, by inciting us to oblige

people."--\_Sheffield's Works\_, ii, 229. "A large and lightsome backstairs

leads up to an entry above."--\_Ib.\_, p. 260. "Peace of mind is an

honourable amends for the sacrifices of interest."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

162; \_Smith's\_, 138. "With such a spirit and sentiments were hostilities

carried on."--\_Robertson's America\_, i, 166. "In the midst of a thick

woods, he had long lived a voluntary recluse."--\_G. B\_. "The flats look

almost like a young woods."--\_Morning Chronicle\_. "As we went on, the

country for a little ways improved, but scantily."--\_Essex County Freeman\_,

Vol. ii, No. 11. "Whereby the Jews were permitted to return into their own

country, after a seventy years captivity at Babylon."--\_Rollin's An.

Hist.\_, Vol. ii, p. 20. "He did riot go a great ways into the

country."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_, p. 85.

"A large amends by fortune's hand is made,

And the lost Punic blood is well repay'd."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, iv, 1241.

UNDER NOTE III.--NOUNS CONNECTED.

"As where a landscape is conjoined with the music of birds and odour of

flowers."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 117. "The last order resembles the

second in the mildness of its accent, and softness of its pause."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 113. "Before the use of the loadstone or knowledge of the

compass."--\_Dryden\_. "The perfect participle and imperfect tense ought not

to be confounded."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, ii, 292. "In proportion as the taste

of a poet, or orator, becomes more refined."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 27. "A

situation can never be intricate, as long as there is an angel, devil, or

musician, to lend a helping hand."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 285. "Avoid

rude sports: an eye is soon lost, or bone broken."--"Not a word was

uttered, nor sign given."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 125. "I despise not the

doer, but deed."--\_Ibid.\_ "For the sake of an easier pronunciation and more

agreeable sound."--\_Lowth\_. "The levity as well as loquacity of the Greeks

made them incapable of keeping up the true standard of history."--

\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 115.

UNDER NOTE IV.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"It is proper that the vowels be a long and short one."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 327. "Whether the person mentioned was seen by the speaker a long or

short time before."--\_Ib.\_, p. 70; \_Fisk's\_, 72. "There are three genders,

Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter."--\_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 8. "The numbers

are two; Singular and Plural."--\_Ib.\_, p. 80; \_Gould's\_, 77. "The persons

are three; First, Second, [and] Third."--\_Adam, et al\_. "Nouns and pronouns

have three cases; the nominative, possessive, and objective."--\_Comly's

Gram.\_, p. 19; \_Ingersoll's\_, 21. "Verbs have five moods; namely, the

Indicative, Potential, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive."--

\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 35; \_Lennie's\_, 20. "How many numbers have

pronouns? Two, the singular and plural."--\_Bradley's Gram.\_, p. 82. "To

distinguish between an interrogative and exclamatory sentence."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 280; \_Comly's\_, 163; \_Ingersoll's\_, 292. "The first and last of

which are compounded members."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 123. "In the last

lecture, I treated of the concise and diffuse, the nervous and feeble

manner."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 183. "The passive and neuter verbs, I shall

reserve for some future conversation."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 69. "There

are two voices; the Active and Passive."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 59; \_Gould's\_,

87. "Whose is rather the poetical than regular genitive of \_which\_."--\_Dr.

Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 7. "To feel the force of a compound, or derivative

word."--\_Town's Analysis\_, p. 4. "To preserve the distinctive uses of the

copulative and disjunctive conjunctions."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 150;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 233. "E has a long and short sound in most languages."--

\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 13. "When the figurative and literal sense

are mixed and jumbled together."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 151. "The Hebrew,

with which the Canaanitish and Phoenician stand in connection."--CONANT:

\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, p. 28. "The languages of Scandinavia

proper, the Norwegian and Swedish."--\_Fowler, ib.\_, p. 31.

UNDER NOTE V.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"The path of truth is a plain and a safe path"--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 236.

"Directions for acquiring a just and a happy elocution."--\_Kirkham's

Elocution\_, p. 144. "Its leading object is to adopt a correct and an easy

method."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 9. "How can it choose but wither in a long

and a sharp winter."--\_Cowley's Pref.\_, p. vi. "Into a dark and a distant

unknown."--\_Chalmers, on Astronomy\_, p. 230. "When the bold and the strong

enslaved his fellow man."--\_Chazotte's Essay\_, p. 21. "We now proceed to

consider the things most essential to an accurate and a perfect sentence."

--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 306. "And hence arises a second and a very

considerable source of the improvement of taste."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 18.

"Novelty produces in the mind a vivid and an agreeable emotion."--\_Ib.\_, p.

50. "The deepest and the bitterest feeling still is, the separation."--

\_Dr. M'Rie\_. "A great and a good man looks beyond time."--\_Brown's

Institutes\_, p. 125. "They made but a weak and an ineffectual resistance."

--\_Ib.\_ "The light and the worthless kernels will float."--\_Ib.\_ "I rejoice

that there is an other and a better world."--\_Ib.\_ "For he is determined to

\_revise\_ his work, and present to the publick another and a better

edition."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 7. "He hoped that this title would secure

him an ample and an independent authority."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 172: see

\_Priestley's\_, 147. "There is however another and a more limited

sense."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. ii, p. 232.

UNDER NOTE VI.--ARTICLES OR PLURALS.

"This distinction forms, what are called the diffuse and the concise

styles."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 176. "Two different modes of speaking,

distinguished at first by the denominations of the Attic and the Asiatic

manners."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. i, p. 83. "But the great design of uniting

the Spanish and the French monarchies under the former was laid."--

\_Bolingbroke, on History\_, p. 180. "In the solemn and the poetic styles, it

[\_do\_ or \_did\_] is often rejected."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 68. "They

cannot be at the same time in the objective and the nominative

cases."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 151; \_Ingersoll's\_, 239; \_R. G.

Smith's\_, 127. "They are named the POSITIVE, the COMPARATIVE, and the

SUPERLATIVE degrees."--\_Smart's Accidence\_, p. 27. "Certain Adverbs are

capable of taking an Inflection, namely, that of the comparative and the

superlative degrees."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, §321. "In the

subjunctive mood, the present and the imperfect tenses often carry with

them a future sense."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 187; \_Fisk's\_, 131. "The

imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first future tenses of this

mood, are conjugated like the same tenses of the indicative."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 145. "What rules apply in parsing personal pronouns of the

second and third person?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 116. "Nouns are sometimes in the

nominative or objective case after the neuter verb to be, or after an

active-intransitive or passive verb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 55. "The verb varies its

endings in the singular in order to agree in form with the first, second,

and third person of its nominative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "They are identical in

effect, with the radical and the vanishing stresses."--\_Rush, on the

Voice\_, p. 339. "In a sonnet the first, fourth, fifth, and eighth line

rhyme to each other: so do the second, third, sixth, and seventh line; the

ninth, eleventh, and thirteenth line; and the tenth, twelfth, and

fourteenth line."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 311. "The iron and the golden

ages are run; youth and manhood are departed."--\_Wright's Athens\_, p. 74.

"If, as you say, the iron and the golden ages are past, the youth and the

manhood of the world."--\_Ib.\_ "An Exposition of the Old and New

Testament."--\_Matthew Henry's Title-page\_. "The names and order of the

books of the Old and New Testament."--\_Friends' Bible\_, p. 2; \_Bruce's\_, p.

2; et al. "In the second and third person of that tense."--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 81. "And who still unites in himself the human and the divine

natures."--\_Gurney's Evidences\_, p. 59. "Among whom arose the Italian, the

Spanish, the French, and the English languages."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

p. 111. "Whence arise these two, the singular and the plural

Numbers."--\_Burn's Gram.\_, p. 32.

UNDER NOTE VII.--CORRESPONDENT TERMS.

"Neither the definitions, nor examples, are entirely the same with

his."--\_Ward's Pref. to Lily's Gram.\_, p. vi. "Because it makes a

discordance between the thought and expression."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 24. "Between the adjective and following substantive."--\_Ib.\_ ii, 104.

"Thus, Athens became both the repository and nursery of

learning."--\_Chazotte's Essay\_, p. 28. "But the French pilfered from both

the Greek and Latin."--\_Ib.\_, p. 102. "He shows that Christ is both the

power and wisdom of God."--\_The Friend\_, x, 414. "That he might be Lord

both of the dead and living."--\_Rom.\_, xiv, 9. "This is neither the obvious

nor grammatical meaning of his words."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 209. "Sometimes

both the accusative and infinitive are understood."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p.

155; \_Gould's\_, 158. "In some cases we can use either the nominative or

accusative promiscuously."--\_Adam\_, p. 156; \_Gould\_, 159. "Both the former

and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood."--\_Adam\_, p. 157;

\_Gould\_, 160. "Many whereof have escaped both the commentator and poet

himself."--\_Pope\_. "The verbs must and ought have both a present and past

signification."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 108. "How shall we distinguish

between the friends and enemies of the government?"--\_Webster's Essays\_, p.

352. "Both the ecclesiastical and secular powers concurred in those

measures."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 260. "As the period has a beginning and

end within itself it implies an inflexion."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, ii, 245.

"Such as ought to subsist between a principal and accessory."--\_Kames, on

Crit.\_, ii, 39.

UNDER NOTE VIII.--CORRESPONDENCE PECULIAR.

"When both the upward and the downward slides occur in pronouncing a

syllable, they are called a \_Circumflex\_ or \_Wave\_."--\_Kirkham's

Elocution\_, pp. 75 and 104. "The word \_that\_ is used both in the nominative

and objective cases."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 69. "But all the other moods

and tenses of the verbs, both in the active and passive voices, are

conjugated at large."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 81. "Some writers on

Grammar object to the propriety of admitting the second future, in both the

indicative and subjunctive moods."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "The same conjunction

governing both the indicative and the subjunctive moods, in the same

sentence, and in the same circumstances, seems to be a great

impropriety."--\_Ib.\_, p. 207. "The true distinction between the subjunctive

and the indicative moods in this tense."--\_Ib.\_, p. 208. "I doubt of his

capacity to teach either the French or English languages."--\_Chazotte's

Essay\_, p. 7. "It is as necessary to make a distinction between the active

transitive and the active intransitive forms of the verb, as between the

active and passive forms."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 13.

UNDER NOTE IX.--A SERIES OF TERMS.

"As comprehending the terms uttered by the artist, the mechanic, and

husbandman."--\_Chazotte's Essay\_, p. 24. "They may be divided into four

classes--the Humanists, Philanthropists, Pestalozzian and the Productive

Schools."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. iii. "Verbs have six tenses, the

Present, the Imperfect, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, and the First and

Second Future tenses."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 138; \_L. Murray's\_, 68; \_R.

C. Smith's\_, 27; \_Alger's\_, 28. "\_Is\_ is an irregular verb neuter,

indicative mood, present tense, and the third person singular."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 2. "\_Should give\_ is an irregular verb active, in the

potential mood, the imperfect tense, and the first person plural."--\_Ibid.\_

"\_Us\_ is a personal pronoun, first person plural, and in the objective

case."--\_Ibid.\_ "\_Them\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person, the

plural number, and in the objective case."--\_Ibid.\_ "It is surprising that

the Jewish critics, with all their skill in dots, points, and accents,

never had the ingenuity to invent a point of interrogation, of admiration,

or a parenthesis."--\_Wilson's Hebrew Gram.\_, p. 47. "The fifth, sixth,

seventh, and the eighth verse."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 263.

"Substitutes have three persons; the First, Second, and the Third."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 34. "\_John's\_ is a proper noun, of the masculine gender, the third

person, singular number, possessive case, and governed by \_wife\_, by Rule

I."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 48. "Nouns in the English language have three

cases; the nominative, the possessive, and objective."--\_Barrett's Gram.\_,

p. 13; \_Alexander's\_, 11. "The Potential [mood] has four [tenses], viz. the

Present, the Imperfect, the Perfect, and Pluperfect."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_,

p. 96.

"Where Science, Law, and Liberty depend,

And own the patron, patriot, and the friend."--\_Savage, to Walpole\_.

UNDER NOTE X.--SPECIES AND GENUS.

"A pronoun is a part of speech put for a noun."--\_Paul's Accidence\_, p. 11.

"A verb is a part of speech declined with mood and tense."--\_Ib.\_, p. 15.

"A participle is a part of speech derived of a verb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 38. "An

adverb is a part of speech joined to verbs to declare their

signification."--\_Ib.\_, p. 40. "A conjunction is a part of speech that

joineth sentences together."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. "A preposition is a part of

speech most commonly set before other parts."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. "An

interjection is a part of speech which betokeneth a sudden motion or

passion of the mind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 44. "An enigma or riddle is also a species

of allegory."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 151; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 343. "We may take

from the Scriptures a very fine example of an allegory."--\_Ib.\_: \_Blair\_,

151; \_Mur.\_, 341. "And thus have you exhibited a sort of a sketch of

art."--HARRIS: \_in Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 176. "We may 'imagine a subtle

kind of a reasoning,' as Mr. Harris acutely observes."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 71. "But, before entering on these, I shall give one instance of

a very beautiful metaphor, that I may show the figure to full

advantage."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 143. "Aristotle, in his Poetics, uses

metaphor in this extended sense, for any figurative meaning imposed upon a

word; as a whole put for the part, or a part for a whole; the species for

the genus, or a genus for the species."--\_Ib.\_, p. 142. "It shows what kind

of an apple it is of which we are speaking."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 69.

"Cleon was another sort of a man."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. i, p. 124.

"To keep off his right wing, as a kind of a reserved body."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 12.

"This part of speech is called a verb."--\_Mack's Gram.\_, p. 70. "What sort

of a thing is it?"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 20. "What sort of a charm do they

possess?"--\_Bullions's Principles of E. Gram.\_, p. 73.

"Dear Welsted, mark, in dirty hole,

That painful animal, a Mole."--\_Note to Dunciad\_, B. ii, l. 207.

UNDER NOTE XI.--ARTICLES NOT REQUISITE.

"Either thou or the boys were in the fault."--\_Comly's Key, in Gram.\_, p.

174. "It may, at the first view, appear to be too general."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 222; \_Ingersoll's\_, 275. "When the verb has a reference to

future time."--\_Ib.: M.\_, p. 207; \_Ing.\_, 264. "No; they are the language

of imagination rather than of a passion."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 165. "The

dislike of the English Grammar, which has so generally prevailed, can only

be attributed to the intricacy of syntax."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p. iv. "Is

that ornament in a good taste?"--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 326. "There are

not many fountains in a good taste."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 329. "And I persecuted

this way unto the death."--\_Acts\_, xxii, 4. "The sense of the feeling can,

indeed, give us the idea of extension."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 196. "The

distributive adjective pronouns, \_each, every, either\_, agree with the

nouns, pronouns, and verbs, of the singular number only."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 165; \_Lowth's\_, 89. "Expressing by one word, what might, by a

circumlocution, be resolved into two or more words belonging to the other

parts of speech."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 84. "By the certain muscles which

operate all at the same time."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 19. "It is sufficient

here to have observed thus much in the general concerning

them."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 112. "Nothing disgusts us sooner than the

empty pomp of language."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 319.

UNDER NOTE XII.--TITLES AND NAMES.

"He is entitled to the appellation of a gentleman."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p.

126. "Cromwell assumed the title of a Protector."--\_Ib.\_ "Her father is

honoured with the title of an Earl."--\_Ib.\_ "The chief magistrate is styled

a President."--\_Ib.\_ "The highest title in the state is that of the

Governor."--\_Ib.\_ "That boy is known by the name of the Idler."--\_Murray's

Key\_, 8vo, p. 205. "The one styled the Mufti, is the head of the ministers

of law and religion."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 360. "Banging all that possessed

them under one class, he called that whole class \_a tree\_."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 73. "For the oak, the pine, and the ash, were names of whole

classes of objects."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73. "It is of little importance whether we

give to some particular mode of expression the name of a trope, or of a

figure."--\_Ib.\_, p. 133. "The collision of a vowel with itself is the most

ungracious of all combinations, and has been doomed to peculiar reprobation

under the name of an hiatus."--\_J. Q. Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. ii, p. 217. "We

hesitate to determine, whether the \_Tyrant\_ alone, is the nominative, or

whether the nominative includes the spy."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 246.

"Hence originated the customary abbreviation of \_twelve months\_ into a

\_twelve-month\_; \_seven nights\_ into \_se'night\_; \_fourteen nights\_ into a

\_fortnight\_."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 105.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--COMPARISONS AND ALTERNATIVES.

"He is a better writer than a reader."--\_W. Allen's False Syntax, Gram.\_,

p. 332. "He was an abler mathematician than a linguist."--\_Ib.\_ "I should

rather have an orange than apple."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 126. "He was no

less able a negotiator, than a courageous warrior."--\_Smollett's Voltaire\_,

Vol. i, p. 181. "In an epic poem we pardon many negligences that would not

be permitted in a sonnet or epigram."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p.

186. "That figure is a sphere, or a globe, or a ball."--\_Harris's Hermes\_,

p. 258.

UNDER NOTE XIV.--ANTECEDENTS TO WHO OR WHICH.

"Carriages which were formerly in use, were very clumsy."--\_Inst.\_, p. 126.

"The place is not mentioned by geographers who wrote at that time."--\_Ib.\_

"Questions which a person asks himself in contemplation, ought to be

terminated by points of interrogation."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 279;

\_Comly's\_, 162; \_Ingersoll's\_, 291. "The work is designed for the use of

persons, who may think it merits a place in their Libraries."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo., p. iii. "That persons who think confusedly, should express

themselves obscurely, is not to be wondered at."--\_Ib.\_, p. 298.

"Grammarians who limit the number to two, or at most to three, do not

reflect."--\_Ib.\_, p. 75. "Substantives which end in \_ian\_, are those that

signify profession."--\_Ib.\_, p. 132. "To these may be added verbs, which

chiefly among the poets govern the dative."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 170;

\_Gould's\_, 171. "Consonants are letters, which cannot be sounded without

the aid of a vowel."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 9. "To employ the curiosity of

persons who are skilled in grammar."--\_Murray's Gram., Pref.\_, p. iii.

"This rule refers only to nouns and pronouns, which have the same bearing

or relation."--\_Ib.\_, i, p. 204. "So that things which are seen, were not

made of things which do appear."--\_Heb.\_, xi, 3. "Man is an imitative

creature; he may utter sounds, which he has heard."--\_Wilson's Essay on

Gram.\_, p. 21. "But men, whose business is wholly domestic, have little or

no use for any language but their own."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 5.

UNDER NOTE XV.--PARTICIPIAL NOUNS.

"Great benefit may be reaped from reading of histories."--\_Sewel's Hist.\_,

p. iii. "And some attempts were made towards writing of

history."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 110. "It is Invading of the Priest's

Office for any other to Offer it."--\_Right of Tythes\_, p. 200. "And thus

far of forming of verbs."--\_Walker's Art of Teaching\_, p. 35. "And without

shedding of blood is no remission."--\_Heb.\_, ix, 22. "For making of

measures we have the best method here in England."--\_Printer's Gram.\_ "This

is really both admitting and denying, at once."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 72.

"And hence the origin of making of parliaments."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol.

i, p. 71. "Next thou objectest, that having of saving light and grace

presupposes conversion. But that I deny: for, on the contrary, conversion

presupposeth having light and grace."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 143.

"They cried down wearing of rings and other superfluities as we

do."--\_Ib.\_, i, 236. "Whose adorning, let it not be that outward adorning

of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of

apparel."--\_1 Peter\_, iii, 3. "In spelling of derivative Words, the

Primitive must be kept whole."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 50; \_Buchanan's

Syntax\_, 9. "And the princes offered for dedicating of the

altar."--\_Numbers\_, vii, 10. "Boasting is not only telling of lies, but

also many unseemly truths."--\_Sheffield's Works\_, ii, 244. "We freely

confess that forbearing of prayer in the wicked is sinful."--\_Barclay\_, i,

316. "For revealing of a secret, there is no remedy."--\_Inst. E. Gram.\_, p.

126. "He turned all his thoughts to composing of laws for the good of the

state."--\_Rollin's Ancient Hist.\_, Vol. ii, p. 38.

UNDER NOTE XVI.--PARTICIPLES, NOT NOUNS. "It is salvation to be kept from

falling into a pit, as truly as to be taken out of it after the falling

in."--\_Barclay\_, i, 210. "For in the receiving and embracing the testimony

of truth, they felt eased."--\_Ib.\_, i, 469. "True regularity does not

consist in the having but a single rule, and forcing every thing to conform

to it."--\_Philol. Museum\_, i, 664. "To the man of the world, this sound of

glad tidings appears only an idle tale, and not worth the attending

to."--\_Life of Tho. Say\_, p. 144. "To be the deliverer of the captive Jews,

by the ordering their temple to be re-built," &c.--\_Rollin\_, ii, 124. "And

for the preserving them from being defiled."--\_N. E. Discipline\_, p. 133.

"A wise man will avoid the showing any excellence in trifles."--\_Art of

Thinking\_, p. 80. "Hirsutus had no other reason for the valuing a

book."--\_Rambler\_, No. 177; \_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 190. "To the being heard

with satisfaction, it is necessary that the speaker should deliver himself

with ease."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 114. "And to the being well heard,

and clearly understood, a good and distinct articulation contributes more,

than power of voice."--\_Ib.\_, p. 117.

"\_Potential\_ means the having power or will;

As, If you \_would\_ improve, you \_should\_ be still."

--\_Tobitt's Gram.\_, p. 31.

UNDER NOTE XVII.--VARIOUS ERRORS.

"For the same reason, a neuter verb cannot become a passive."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 74. "The period is the whole sentence complete in

itself."--\_Ib.\_, p. 115. "The colon or member is a chief constructive part,

or greater division of a sentence."--\_Ib.\_ "The semicolon or half member,

is a less constructive part or subdivision, of a sentence or

member."--\_Ib.\_ "A sentence or member is again subdivided into commas or

segments."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116. "The first error that I would mention, is, a too

general attention to the dead languages, with a neglect of our

own."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 3. "One third of the importations would

supply the demands of people."--\_Ib.\_, p. 119. "And especially in grave

stile."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 72. "By too eager pursuit, he ran a great

risk of being disappointed."--\_Murray's Key, Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p.

201. "Letters are divided into vowels and consonants."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

i, p. 7; \_and others\_. "Consonants are divided into mutes and

semi-vowels."--\_Ib.\_, i, 8; \_and others\_. "The first of these forms is most

agreeable to the English idiom."--\_Ib.\_, i, 176. "If they gain, it is a too

dear rate."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 504. "A pronoun is a word used instead

of a noun, to prevent a too frequent repetition of it."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_,

p. 1. "This vulgar error might perhaps arise from a too partial fondness

for the Latin."--\_Dr. Ash's Gram., Pref.\_, p. iv. "The groans which a too

heavy load extorts from her."--\_Hitchcock, on Dyspepsy\_, p. 50. "The

numbers [of a verb] are, of course, singular and plural."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_

p. 58. "To brook no meanness, and to stoop to no dissimulation, are the

indications of a great mind."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 236. "This mode of

expression rather suits familiar than grave style."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

198. "This use of the word rather suits familiar and low

style."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 134. "According to the nature of the

composition the one or other may be predominant."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 102.

"Yet the commonness of such sentences prevents in a great measure a too

early expectation of the end."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 411. "An eulogy or a

philippie may be pronounced by an individual of one nation upon the subject

of another."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, i, 298. "A French sermon, is for most part,

a warm animated exhortation."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 288. "I do not envy

those who think slavery no very pitiable a lot."--\_Channing, on

Emancipation\_, p. 52. "The auxiliary and principal united, constitute a

tense."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 75. "There are some verbs which are defective

with respect to persons."--\_Ib.\_, i, 109. "In youth, the habits of industry

are most easily acquired."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 235. "Apostrophe (') is

used in place of a letter left out."--\_Bullions's Eng. Gram.\_, p. 156.

CHAPTER III.--CASES, OR NOUNS.

The rules for the construction of Nouns, or Cases, are seven; hence this

chapter, according to the order adopted above, reviews the series of rules

from the second rule to the eighth, inclusively. Though \_Nouns\_ are here

the topic, all these seven rules apply alike to \_Nouns and to Pronouns\_;

that is, to all the words of our language which are susceptible of \_Cases\_.

RULE II.--NOMINATIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb, must be in the

nominative case: as, "The \_Pharisees\_ also, \_who\_ were covetous, heard all

these things; and \_they\_ derided him."--\_Luke\_, xvi, 14. "But where the

\_meekness\_ of self-knowledge veileth the front of self-respect, there look

\_thou\_ for the man whom \_none\_ can know but \_they\_ will honour."--\_Book of

Thoughts\_, p. 66.

"Dost \_thou\_ mourn Philander's fate?

\_I\_ know \_thou\_ sayst it: says thy \_life\_ the same?"

--\_Young\_, N. ii, l. 22.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE II.

OBS. 1.--To this rule, there are \_no exceptions\_; and nearly all

nominatives, or far the greater part, are to be parsed by it. There are

however \_four\_ different ways of disposing of the nominative case. \_First\_,

it is generally \_the subject of a verb\_, according to Rule 2d. \_Secondly\_,

it may be put \_in apposition\_ with an other nominative, according to Rule

3d. \_Thirdly\_, it may be put after a verb or a participle \_not transitive\_,

according to Rule 6th. \_Fourthly\_, it may be put \_absolute\_, or may help to

form a \_phrase that\_ is \_independent\_ of the rest of the sentence,

according to Rule 8th.

OBS. 2.--The subject, or nominative, is generally placed \_before\_ the verb;

as, "\_Peace dawned\_ upon his mind."--\_Johnson\_. "\_What is written\_ in the

law?"--\_Bible\_. But, in the following nine cases, the subject of the verb

is usually placed \_after\_ it, or after the first auxiliary: 1. When a

question is asked without an interrogative pronoun in the nominative case;

as, "\_Shall mortals be\_ implacable?"--\_Hooke\_. "What \_art thou

doing\_?"--\_Id.\_ "How many loaves \_have ye\_?"--\_Bible\_. "\_Are they\_

Israelites? so \_am I\_."--\_Ib.\_

2. When the verb is in the imperative mood; as, "\_Go thou\_"--"\_Come ye\_"

But, with this mood, the pronoun is very often omitted and understood; as,

"Philip saith unto him, \_Come\_ and \_see\_"--\_John\_, i, 46. "And he saith

unto them, \_Be\_ not \_affrighted\_."--\_Mark\_, xvi, 5.

3. When an earnest wish, or other strong feeling, is expressed; as, "\_May

she be\_ happy!"--"How \_were we struck\_!"--\_Young\_. "Not as the world

giveth, \_give I\_ unto you."--\_Bible\_.

4. When a supposition is made without the conjunction \_if\_; as, "\_Had they

known\_ it;" for, "\_If\_ they had known it."--"\_Were it\_ true;" for, "\_If\_ it

were true."--"\_Could we draw\_ by the covering of the grave;" for, "\_If\_ we

could draw," &c.

5. When \_neither\_ or \_nor\_, signifying \_and not\_, precedes the verb; as,

"This was his fear; \_nor was his apprehension\_ groundless."--"Ye shall not

eat of it, \_neither shall ye touch\_ it."--\_Gen.\_, iii, 3.

6. When, for the sake of emphasis, some word or words are placed before the

verb, which more naturally come after it; as, "Here \_am I\_."--"Narrow \_is\_

the \_way\_."--"Silver and gold \_have I\_ none; but such as I have, \_give I\_

thee."--\_Bible\_.

7. When the verb has no regimen, and is itself emphatical; as, "\_Echo\_ the

\_mountains\_ round."--\_Thomson\_. "After the Light Infantry \_marched\_ the

\_Grenadiers\_, then \_followed\_ the \_Horse\_."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 71.

8. When the verbs, \_say, answer, reply\_, and the like, introduce the parts

of a dialogue; as, "'Son of affliction,' \_said Omar\_, 'who art thou?' 'My

name,' \_replied\_ the \_stranger\_, 'is Hassan.'"--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

9. When the adverb \_there\_ precedes the verb; as, "There \_lived\_ a

\_man\_."--\_Montgomery\_. "In all worldly joys, there \_is\_ a secret

\_wound\_."--\_Owen\_. This use of \_there\_, the general introductory adverb of

place, is idiomatic, and somewhat different from the use of the same word

in reference to a particular locality; as, "Because \_there\_ was not much

water \_there\_."--\_John\_, iii, 23.

OBS. 3.--In exclamations, and some other forms of expression, a few verbs

are liable to be suppressed, the ellipsis being obvious; as, "How different

[is] this from the philosophy of Greece and Rome!"--DR. BEATTIE: \_Murray's

Sequel\_, p. 127. "What a lively picture [is here] of the most disinterested

and active benevolence!"--HERVEY: \_ib.\_, p. 94. "When Adam [spake] thus to

Eve."--MILTON: \_Paradise Lost\_, B. iv, l. 610.

OBS. 4.--Though we often use nouns in the nominative case to show whom we

address, yet the imperative verb takes no other nominative of the second

person, than the simple personal pronoun, \_thou, ye\_, or \_you\_, expressed

or understood. It would seem that some, who ought to know better, are

liable to mistake for the subject of such a verb, the noun which we put

absolute in the nominative by direct address. Of this gross error, the

following is an example: "\_Study boys\_. In this sentence," (says its

author,) "\_study\_ is a verb of the second person, plural number, and agrees

with its nominative case, \_boys\_--according to the rule: A verb must agree

with its nominative case in number and person. \_Boys\_ is a noun \_of\_ the

second person, plural number, masculine gender, in the nominative case to

the verb study."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 17.[339] Now the fact is, that

this laconic address, of three syllables, is written wrong; being made bad

English for want of a comma between the two words. Without this mark,

\_boys\_ must be an objective, governed by \_study\_; and with it, a

nominative, put absolute by direct address. But, in either case, \_study\_

agrees with \_ye\_ or \_you\_ understood, and has not the noun for its subject,

or nominative.

OBS. 5.--Some authors say, and if the first person be no exception, say

truly: "The nominative case to a verb, unless it be a pronoun, is always of

the \_third\_ person."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 141. But W. B. Fowle will

have all pronouns to be \_adjectives\_. Consequently all his verbs, of every

sort, agree with nouns "expressed or understood." This, and every other

absurd theory of language, can easily be made out, by means of a few

perversions, which may be called corrections, and a sufficient number of

interpolations, made under pretence of filling up ellipses. Thus, according

to this author, "They fear," means, "They \_things spoken of\_ fear."--\_True

Eng. Gram.\_, p, 33. And, "\_John, open\_ the door," or, "\_Boys, stop\_ your

noise," admits no comma. And, "Be grateful, ye children," and, "Be ye

grateful children," are, in his view, every way equivalent: the comma in

the former being, in his opinion, needless. See \_ib.\_, p. 39.

OBS. 6.--Though the nominative and objective cases of nouns do not differ

in form, it is nevertheless, in the opinion of many of our grammarians,

improper to place any noun in both relations at once, because this produces

a confusion in the syntax of the word. Examples: "He then goes on to

declare that there \_are\_, and distinguish \_of\_, four \_manners\_ of saying

\_Per se\_."--\_Walker's Treatise of Particles\_, p. xii. Better: "He then

proceeds to show, that \_per se\_ is susceptible of four different senses."

"In just allegory \_and\_ similitude there is always a propriety, or, if you

choose to call it, \_congruity\_, in the literal sense, as well as a distinct

meaning or sentiment suggested, which is called the figurative

sense."--\_Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, p. 291. Better: "In just

allegory \_or\_ similitude, there is always a propriety--or, if you choose to

call it \_so, a congruity\_--in the literal sense," &c. "It must then be

meant of his sins who \_makes\_, not of his who \_becomes\_, the

convert."--\_Atterbury's Sermons\_, i, 2. Better: "It must then be meant of

his sins who \_makes the convert\_, not of his who \_becomes converted\_." "Eye

\_hath\_ not \_seen\_, nor ear \_heard\_, neither \_have entered\_ into the heart

of man, \_the things\_ which God hath prepared for them that love him."--\_1

Cor.\_, ii, 9. A more regular construction would be: "Eye hath not seen, nor

ear heard, neither \_hath it\_ entered into the heart of man to \_conceive\_,

the things which God hath prepared for them that love him." The following

example, from Pope, may perhaps be conceded to the poet, as an allowable

ellipsis of the words "\_a friend\_," after \_is\_:

"In who obtain defence, or who defend;

In him who \_is\_, or him who \_finds, a friend\_."

--\_Essay on Man\_, Ep. iv, l. 60.

Dr. Lowth cites the last three examples, without suggesting any forms of

correction; and says of them, "There seems to be an impropriety in these

sentences, in which the same noun stands in a double capacity, performing

at the same time the offices \_both of the\_ nominative and objective

case."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 73. He should have said--"\_of both the\_

nominative and \_the\_ objective case." Dr. Webster, citing the line, "In him

who is, and him who finds, a friend," adds, "Lowth condemns this use of the

noun in the nominative and objective at the same time; but \_without

reason\_, as the cases are not distinguished in English."--\_Improved Gram.\_,

p. 175.

OBS. 7.--In Latin and Greek, the accusative before the infinitive, is often

reckoned \_the subject\_ of the latter verb; and is accordingly parsed by a

sort of exception to the foregoing rule--or rather, to that general rule of

concord which the grammarians apply to the verb and its nominative. This

construction is translated into English, and other modern tongues,

sometimes literally, or nearly so, but much oftener, by a nominative and a

finite verb. Example: "\_[Greek: Eipen auton phonæthænai]\_."--\_Mark\_, x, 49.

"Ait illum vocari."--\_Leusden\_. "Jussit eum vocari."--\_Beza\_. "Præcepit

illum vocari."--\_Vulgate\_. "He commanded him to be called."--\_English

Bible\_. "He commanded that he should be called."--\_Milnes's Gr. Gram.\_, p.

143. "Il dit qu'on l'appelât."--\_French Bible\_. "He bid that somebody

should call him." "Il commanda qu'on le fît venir."--\_Nouveau Test.\_,

Paris, 1812. "He commanded that they should \_make him come\_;" that is,

"\_lead him\_, or \_bring him\_." "Il commanda qu'on l'appelât."--\_De Sacy's N.

Test\_.

OBS. 8.--In English, the objective case before the infinitive mood,

although it may truly denote the agent of the infinitive action, or the

subject of the infinitive passion, is nevertheless taken as the object of

the preceding verb, participle, or preposition. Accordingly our language

does not admit a literal translation of the above-mentioned construction,

except the preceding verb be such as can be interpreted transitively.

"\_Gaudeo te val=ere\_," "I am glad that thou art well," cannot be translated

more literally; because, "I am glad thee to be well," would not be good

English. "\_Aiunt regem advent=are\_," "They say the king is coming," may be

otherwise rendered "They \_declare\_ the king to be coming;" but neither

version is entirely literal; the objective being retained only by a change

of \_aiunt, say\_, into such a verb as will govern the noun.

OBS. 9.--The following sentence is a literal imitation of the Latin

accusative before the infinitive, and for that reason it is not good

English: "But experience teacheth us, \_both these opinions to be\_ alike

ridiculous."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 262. It should be, "But

experience \_teaches us, that both these opinions are\_ alike ridiculous."

The verbs \_believe, think, imagine\_, and others expressing \_mental action\_,

I suppose to be capable of governing nouns or pronouns in the objective

case, and consequently of being interpreted transitively. Hence I deny the

correctness of the following explanation: "RULE XXIV. The objective case

precedes the infinitive mode; [as,] 'I \_believe\_ your \_brother to be\_ a

good man.' Here \_believe\_ does not govern brother, in the objective case,

because it is not the object after it. \_Brother\_, in the objective case,

third person singular, precedes the neuter verb \_to be\_, in the infinitive

mode, present time, third person singular."--\_S. Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 135.

This author teaches that, "The \_infinitive mode agrees\_ with the objective

case in number and person."--\_Ibid.\_ Which doctrine is denied; because

the infinitive has no number or person, in any language. Nor do I see why

the noun \_brother\_, in the foregoing example, may not be both the object of

the active verb \_believe\_, and the subject of the neuter infinitive \_to

be\_, at the same time; for the subject of the infinitive, if the infinitive

can be said to have a subject, is not necessarily in the nominative case,

or necessarily independent of what precedes.

OBS. 10.--There are many teachers of English grammar, who still adhere to

the principle of the Latin and Greek grammarians, which refers the

accusative or objective to the latter verb, and supposes the former to be

intransitive, or to govern only the infinitive. Thus Nixon: "The objective

case is frequently put before the infinitive mood, as its subject; as,

'Suffer \_me\_ to depart.'" [340]--\_English Parser\_, p. 34. "When an

objective case stands before an infinitive mood, as 'I understood \_it\_ to

be him,' 'Suffer \_me\_ to depart,' such objective should be parsed, not as

governed by the preceding verb, but as the objective case before the

infinitive; that is, \_the subject\_ of it. The reason of this is--the former

verb can govern one object only, and that is (in such sentences) the

infinitive mood; the intervening objective being the subject of the

infinitive following, and not governed by the former verb; as, in that

instance, it \_would be governing\_ two objects."--\_Ib., Note.\_[341]

OBS. 11.--The notion that one verb governs an other in the infinitive, just

as a transitive verb governs a noun, and so that it cannot also govern an

objective case, is not only contradictory to my scheme of parsing the

infinitive mood, but is also false in itself, and repugnant to the

principles of General Grammar. In Greek and Latin, it is certainly no

uncommon thing for a verb to govern two cases at once; and even the

accusative before the infinitive is sometimes governed by the preceding

verb, as the objective before the infinitive naturally is in English. But,

in regard to construction, every language differs more or less from every

other; hence each must have its own syntax, and abide by its own rules. In

regard to the point here in question, the reader may compare the following

examples: "[Greek: Echo anagkæn exelthein]."--\_Luke\_, xiv, 18. "Habeo

necesse exire."--\_Leusden\_. English: "I have \_occasion to go\_ away." Again:

"[Greek: O echon hota akouein, akoueto]."--\_Luke\_, xiv, 35. "Habens aures

audiendi, audiat."--\_Leusden\_. "Qui habet aures ad audiendum,

audiat."--\_Beza\_. English: "He that hath \_ears to hear\_, let \_him hear\_."

But our most frequent use of the infinitive after the objective, is in

sentences that must not be similarly constructed in Latin or Greek;[342]

as, "And he commanded the \_porter to watch\_."--\_Mark\_, xiii, 34. "And he

delivered \_Jesus to be crucified\_."--\_Mark\_, xv, 15. "And they led \_him\_

out \_to crucify him\_."--\_Mark\_, xv, 20. "We heard \_him say\_."--\_Mark\_, xiv,

58. "That I might make \_thee know\_."--\_Prov.\_, xxii, 21.

OBS. 12.--If our language does really admit any thing like the accusative

before the infinitive, in the sense of a positive subject at the head of a

clause, it is only in some prospective descriptions like the following:

"Let certain studies be prescribed to be pursued during the freshman year;

\_some\_ of these to be attended to by the whole class; with regard to

others, a \_choice\_ to be allowed; \_which\_, when made by the student, (the

parent or guardian sanctioning it,) to be binding during the freshman year:

the same \_plan\_ to be adopted with regard to the studies of the succeeding

years."--GALLAUDET: \_Journal of the N. Y. Literary Convention\_, p. 118.

Here the four words, \_some, choice, which\_, and \_plan\_, may appear to a

Latinist to be so many objectives, or accusatives, placed before

infinitives, and used to describe that state of things which the author

would promote. If objectives they are, we may still suppose them to be

governed by \_let, would have\_, or something of the kind, understood: as,

"\_Let\_ some of these be attended to;" or, "Some of these \_I would have\_ to

be attended to," &c. The relative \_which\_ might with more propriety be

made nominative, by changing "\_to\_ be binding" to "\_shall\_ be binding;" and

as to the rest, it is very doubtful whether they are not now nominatives,

rather than objectives. The infinitive, as used above, is a mere substitute

for the Latin future participle; and any English noun or pronoun put

absolute with a participle, is in the nominative case. English relatives

are rarely, if ever, put absolute in this manner: and this may be the

reason why the construction of \_which\_, in the sentence above, seems

awkward. Besides, it is certain that the other pronouns are sometimes put

absolute with the infinitive; and that, in the nominative case, not the

objective: as,

"And \_I to be\_ a corporal in his field,

And wear his colours like a tumbler's hoop!

What? \_I! I love! I sue! I seek\_ a wife!"--\_Shak., Love's Labour Lost\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE II.

THE SUBJECT OF A FINITE VERB.

"The whole need not a physician, but them that are sick."--\_Bunyan's Law

and Gr.\_, p. iv.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the objective pronoun \_them\_ is here made

the subject of the verb \_need\_, understood. But, according to Rule 2d, "A

noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb, must be in the

nominative case." Therefore, \_them\_ should be \_they\_; thus, "The whole need

not a physician, but they that are sick."]

"He will in no wise cast out whomsoever cometh unto him."--\_Robert Hall\_

"He feared the enemy might fall upon his men, whom he saw were off their

guard."--\_Hutchinson's Massachusetts\_, ii, 133. "Whomsoever shall compel

thee to go a mile, go with him twain."--\_Dymond's Essays\_, p. 48. "The

idea's of the author have been conversant with the faults of other

writers."--\_Swift's T. T.\_, p. 55. "You are a much greater loser than me by

his death."--\_Swift to Pope\_, l. 63. "Such peccadillo's pass with him for

pious frauds."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 279. "In whom I am nearly

concerned, and whom I know would be very apt to justify my whole

procedure."--\_Ib.\_, i, 560. "Do not think such a man as me contemptible for

my garb."--\_Addison.\_ "His wealth and him bid adieu to each

other."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 107. "So that, 'He is greater than \_me\_,'

will be more grammatical than, 'He is greater than \_I\_.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 106.

"The Jesuits had more interests at court than him."--SMOLLETT: in \_Pr.

Gram.\_, p. 106.[343] "Tell the Cardinal that I understand poetry better

than him."--\_Id., ib.\_ "An inhabitant of Crim Tartary was far more happy

than him."--\_Id., ib.\_ "My father and him have been very intimate

since."--\_Fair American\_, ii, 53. "Who was the agent, and whom the object

struck or kissed?"--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 32. "To find the person whom

he imagined was concealed there."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 225. "He

offered a great recompense to whomsoever would help him."--HUME: in \_Pr.

Gram.\_, p. 104. "They would be under the dominion, absolute and unlimited,

of whomsoever might exercise the right of judgement."--\_Gov. Haynes's

Speech\_, in 1832. "They had promised to accept whomsoever should be born in

Wales."--\_Stories by Croker\_. "We sorrow not as them that have no

hope."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 27. "If he suffers, he suffers as them that

have no hope."--\_Ib.\_, p. 32. "We acknowledge that he, and him only, hath

been our peacemaker."--\_Gratton\_. "And what can be better than him that

made it?"--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 329. "None of his school-fellows is more

beloved than him."--\_Cooper's Gram.\_, p. 42. "Solomon, who was wiser than

them all."--\_Watson's Apology\_, p. 76. "Those whom the Jews thought were

the last to be saved, first entered the kingdom of God."--\_Eleventh Hour,

Tract\_, No. 4. "A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty; but a fool's wrath

is heavier than them both."--\_Prov.\_, xxvii, 3. "A man of business, in good

company, is hardly more insupportable than her they call a notable

woman."--\_Steele, Sped\_. "The king of the Sarmatians, whom we may imagine

was no small prince, restored him a hundred thousand Roman

prisoners."--\_Life of Antoninus\_, p. 83. "Such notions would be avowed at

this time by none but rosicrucians, and fanatics as mad as

them."--\_Bolingbroke's Ph. Tr.\_, p. 24. "Unless, as I said, Messieurs, you

are the masters, and not me."--BASIL HALL: \_Harrison's E. Lang.\_, p. 173.

"We had drawn up against peaceable travellers, who must have been as glad

as us to escape."--BURNES'S TRAVELS: \_ibid.\_ "Stimulated, in turn, by their

approbation, and that of better judges than them, she turned to their

literature with redoubled energy."--QUARTERLY REVIEW: \_Life of H. More:

ibid.\_ "I know not whom else are expected."--SCOTT'S PIRATE: \_ibid.\_ "He is

great, but truth is greater than us all."--\_Horace Mann, in Congress\_,

1850. "Him I accuse has entered."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §482: see

\_Shakspeare's Coriolanus\_, Act V, sc. 5.

"Scotland and thee did each in other live."

--\_Dryden's Po.\_, Vol. ii, p. 220.

"We are alone; here's none but thee and I."

--\_Shak.\_, 2 Hen. VI.

"Me rather had, my heart might feel your love,

Than my unpleas'd eye see your courtesy."

--\_Idem: Joh. Dict.\_

"Tell me, in sadness, whom is she you love?"

--\_Id., Romeo and Juliet\_, A. I, sc. 1.

"Better leave undone, than by our deeds acquire

Too high a fame, when him we serve's away."

--\_Shak., Ant. and Cleop.\_

RULE III.--APPOSITION.

A Noun or a personal Pronoun used to explain a preceding noun or pronoun,

is put, by apposition, in the same case: as, "But it is really \_I\_, your

old \_friend and neighbour., Piso\_, late a \_dweller\_ upon the Coelian hill,

who am now basking in the warm skies of Palmyra."--\_Zenobia.\_

"But \_he\_, our gracious \_Master\_, kind as just,

Knowing our frame, remembers we are dust."--\_Barbauld\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE III.

OBS. 1--\_Apposition\_ is that peculiar relation which one noun or pronoun

bears to an other, when two or more are placed together in the same case,

and used to designate the same person or thing: as, "\_Cicero\_ the

\_orator\_;"--"The \_prophet Joel\_;"--"\_He\_ of Gath, \_Goliah\_;"--"Which \_ye

yourselves\_ do know;"--"To make \_him king\_;"--"To give his \_life\_ a

\_ransom\_ for many;"--"I made the \_ground\_ my \_bed\_;"--"\_I\_, thy

\_schoolmaster\_;"--"\_We\_ the \_People\_ of the United States." This

placing-together of nouns and pronouns in the same case, was reckoned by

the old grammarians a \_figure of syntax\_; and from them it received, in

their elaborate detail of the grammatical and rhetorical figures, its

present name of \_apposition\_. They reckoned it a species of \_ellipsis\_, and

supplied between the words, the participle \_being\_, the infinitive \_to be\_,

or some other part of their "\_substantive verb\_:" as, "Cicero \_being\_ the

orator;"--"To make him \_to be\_ king;"--"I \_who am\_ thy schoolmaster." But

the later Latin grammarians have usually placed it among their regular

concords; some calling it the first concord, while others make it the last,

in the series; and some, with no great regard to consistency, treating it

both as a figure and as a regular concord, at the same time.

OBS. 2.--Some English grammarians teach, "that the words in the cases

preceding and following the verb \_to be\_, may be said to be \_in apposition\_

to each other."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 181; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 155;

\_Fisk's\_, 126; \_Ingersoll's\_, 146; \_Merchant's\_, 91. But this is entirely

repugnant to the doctrine, that apposition is a \_figure\_; nor is it at all

consistent with the original meaning of the word \_apposition\_; because it

assumes that the literal reading, when the supposed ellipsis is supplied,

is \_apposition\_ still. The old distinction, however, between apposition and

same cases, is \_generally\_ preserved in our grammars, and is worthy ever to

be so. The rule for \_same cases\_ applies to all nouns or pronouns that are

put after verbs or participles not transitive, and that are made to agree

in case with other nouns or pronouns going before, and meaning the same

thing. But some teachers who observe this distinction with reference to the

neuter verb \_be\_, and to certain passive verbs of \_naming, appointing\_, and

the like, absurdly break it down in relation to other verbs, neuter or

active-intransitive. Thus Nixon: "Nouns in apposition are in the same case;

as, '\_Hortensius\_ died a \_martyr\_;' '\_Sydney\_ lived the shepherd's

\_friend\_.'"--\_English Parser\_, p. 55. It is remarkable that \_all\_ this

author's examples of "\_nominatives in apposition\_," (and he gives eighteen

in the exercise,) are precisely of this sort, in which there is really \_no

apposition at all\_.

OBS. 3.--In the exercise of parsing, rule third should be applied only to

the \_explanatory term\_; because the case of the \_principal term\_ depends on

its relation to the rest of the sentence, and comes under some other rule.

In certain instances, too, it is better to waive the analysis which \_might\_

be made under rule third, and to take both or all the terms together, under

the rule for the main relation. Thus, the several proper names which

distinguish an individual, are always in apposition, and should be taken

together in parsing; as, \_William Pitt--Marcus Tullius Cicero\_. It may, I

think, be proper to include with the personal names, some titles also; as,

\_Lord Bacon--Sir Isaac Newton\_. William E. Russell and Jonathan Ware, (two

American authors of no great note,) in parsing the name of "\_George

Washington\_," absurdly take the former word as an \_adjective\_ belonging to

the latter. See \_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 100; and \_Ware's\_, 17. R. C. Smith

does the same, both with honorary titles, and with baptismal or Christian

names. See his \_New Gram.\_, p. 97. And one English writer, in explaining

the phrases, "\_John Wickliffe's influence\_," "\_Robert Bruce's exertions\_,"

and the like, will have the first nouns to be governed by the last, and the

intermediate ones to be distinct possessives \_in apposition\_ with the

former. See \_Nixon's English Parser\_, p. 59. Wm. B. Fowle, in his "True

English Grammar," takes all titles, all given names, all possessives, and

all pronouns, to be adjectives. According to him, this class embraces more

than half the words in the language. A later writer than any of these says,

"The proper noun is \_philosophically\_ an adjective. Nouns common or proper,

of similar or dissimilar import, \_may be parsed as adjectives\_, when they

become qualifying or distinguishing words; as, \_President\_

Madison,--\_Doctor\_ Johnson,--\_Mr\_. Webster,--\_Esq\_. Carleton,--\_Miss\_

Gould,--\_Professor\_ Ware,--\_lake\_ Erie,--the \_Pacific\_ ocean,--\_Franklin\_

House,--\_Union\_ street."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 134. I dissent from all

these views, at least so far as not to divide a \_man's name\_ in parsing it.

A person will sometimes have such a multitude of names, that it would be a

flagrant waste of time, to parse them all separately: for example, that

wonderful doctor, \_Paracelsus\_, who called himself, "\_Aureolus Philippus

Theophrastus Bombastus Paracelsus de Hoenheim\_."--\_Univ. Biog. Dict.\_

OBS. 4.--A very common rule for apposition in Latin, is this: "Substantives

signifying the same thing, agree in case."--\_Adam's Latin Gram.\_, p. 156.

The same has also been applied to our language: "Substantives denoting the

same person or thing, agree in case."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 102. This

rule is, for two reasons, very faulty: first, because the apposition of

\_pronouns\_ seems not to be included it; secondly, because two nouns that

are not in the same case, do sometimes "signify" or "denote" the same

thing. Thus, "\_the city of London\_," means only \_the city London\_; "\_the

land of Egypt\_," is only Egypt; and "\_the person of Richard\_" is \_Richard

himself\_. Dr. Webster defines \_apposition\_ to be, "The placing of two nouns

in the same case, without a connecting word between them."--\_Octavo Dict.\_

This, too, excludes the pronouns, and has exceptions, both various and

numerous. In the first place, the apposition may be of more than two nouns,

without any connective; as, "\_Ezra\_ the \_priest\_, the \_scribe\_ of the

law."--\_Ezra\_, vii, 21. Secondly, two nouns connected by a conjunction, may

both be put in apposition with a preceding noun or pronoun; as, "God hath

made that same \_Jesus\_, whom ye have crucified, both \_Lord\_ and

\_Christ\_."--\_Acts\_, ii, 36. "Who made \_me\_ a \_judge\_ or a \_divider\_ over

you."--\_Luke\_, xii, 14. Thirdly, the apposition may be of two nouns

immediately connected by \_and\_, provided the two words denote but one

person or thing; as, "This great \_philosopher and statesman\_ was bred a

printer." Fourthly, it may be of two words connected by \_as\_, expressing

the idea of a partial or assumed identity; as, "Yet count \_him\_ not \_as\_ an

\_enemy\_, but admonish \_him as\_ a \_brother\_."--\_2 Thess.\_, iii, 15. "So that

\_he, as God\_, sitteth in the temple of God."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 4. Fifthly, it may

perhaps be of two words connected by \_than\_; as, "He left \_them\_ no more

\_than\_ dead \_men\_."--\_Law and Grace\_, p. 28. Lastly, there is a near

resemblance to apposition, when two equivalent nouns are connected by \_or\_;

as, "The back of the hedgehog is covered with \_prickles, or

spines\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_

OBS. 5.--To the rule for apposition, as I have expressed it, there are

properly \_no exceptions\_. But there are many puzzling examples of

construction under it, some of which are but little short of exceptions;

and upon such of these as are most likely to embarrass the learner, some

further observations shall be made. The rule supposes the first word to be

the principal term, with which the other word, or subsequent noun or

pronoun, is in apposition; and it generally is so: but the explanatory word

is sometimes placed first, especially among the poets; as,

"From bright'ning fields of ether fair disclos'd,

\_Child\_ of the sun, refulgent \_Summer\_ comes."--\_Thomson\_.

OBS. 6.--The pronouns of the \_first\_ and \_second\_ persons are often placed

before nouns merely to distinguish their person; as, "\_I John\_ saw these

things."--\_Bible\_. "But what is this to \_you receivers?\_"--\_Clarkson's

Essay on Slavery\_, p. 108. "His praise, \_ye brooks\_, attune."--\_Thomson\_.

In this case of apposition, the words are in general closely united, and

either of them may be taken as the explanatory term. The learner will find

it easier to parse \_the noun\_ by rule third; or \_both nouns\_, if there be

two: as, "\_I\_ thy \_father-in-law Jethro\_ am come unto thee."--\_Exod.\_,

xviii, 6. There are many other examples, in which it is of no moment, which

of the terms we take for the principal; and to all such the rule may be

applied literally: as, "Thy \_son Benhadad king\_ of Syria hath sent me to

thee."--\_2 Kings\_, viii, 9.

OBS. 7.--When two or more nouns of the \_possessive case\_ are put in

apposition, the possessive termination added to one, denotes the case of

both or all; as, "For \_Herodias\_' sake, his \_brother Philip's

wife\_"--\_Matt.\_, xiv, 3; Mark, vi, 17. Here \_wife\_ is in apposition with

\_Herodias\_', and \_brother\_ with \_Philip's\_; consequently all these words

are reckoned to be in the possessive case. The Greek text, which is better,

stands essentially thus: "For the sake of Herodias, the wife of Philip his

brother." "For \_Jacob\_ my \_servant's\_ sake, and \_Israel\_ mine

\_elect\_."--\_Isaiah\_, xlv, 4. Here, as \_Jacob\_ and \_Israel\_ are only

different names for the same person or nation, the four nouns in Italics

are, according to the rule, all made possessives by the one sign used; but

the construction is not to be commended: it would be better to say, "For

\_the\_ sake \_of\_ Jacob my servant, and Israel mine elect." "With \_Hyrcanus\_

the high \_priest's\_ consent."--\_Wood's Dict., w. Herod\_. "I called at

\_Smith's\_, the \_bookseller\_; or, at \_Smith\_ the \_bookseller's\_."--

\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 105. Two words, each having the possessive sign,

can never be in apposition one with the other; because that sign has

immediate reference to the governing noun expressed or understood after it;

and if it be repeated, separate governing nouns will be implied, and the

apposition will be destroyed.[344]

OBS. 8.--If the foregoing remark is just, the apposition of two nouns in

the possessive case, requires the possessive sign to be added to that noun

which immediately precedes the governing word, whether expressed or

understood, and positively excludes it from the other. The sign of the case

is added, sometimes to the former, and sometimes to the latter noun, but

never to both: or, if added to both, the two words are no longer in

apposition. Example: "And for that reason they ascribe to him a great part

of his \_father Nimrod's\_, or \_Belus's\_ actions."--\_Rollin's An. Hist.\_,

Vol. ii, p. 6. Here \_father\_ and \_Nimrod's\_ are in strict apposition; but

if \_actions\_ governs \_Belus's\_, the same word is implied to govern

\_Nimrod's\_, and the two names are not in apposition, though they are in the

same case and mean the same person.

OBS. 9.--Dr. Priestley says, "Some would say, 'I left the parcel at \_Mr.

Smith's\_, the \_bookseller\_;' others, 'at \_Mr. Smith\_ the \_bookseller's\_;'

and perhaps others, at '\_Mr. Smith's\_ the \_bookseller's\_.' The last of

these forms is most agreeable to the Latin idiom, but the first seems to be

more natural in ours; and if the addition consist [\_consists\_, says

Murray,] of two or more words, \_the case seems to be very clear\_; as, 'I

left the parcel at \_Mr. Smith's\_ the \_bookseller\_ and \_stationer\_;' i. e.

at Mr. Smith's, \_who is a\_ bookseller and stationer."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 70. Here the examples, if rightly pointed, \_would all be right\_; but the

ellipsis supposed, not only destroys the apposition, but converts the

explanatory noun into a nominative. And in the phrase, "\_at Mr. Smiths, the

bookseller's\_," there is no apposition, except that of \_Mr\_. with

\_Smith's\_; for the governing noun \_house\_ or \_store\_ is understood as

clearly after the one possessive sign as after the other. Churchill

imagines that in Murray's example, "I reside at \_Lord Stormont's\_, my old

\_patron\_ and \_benefactor\_," the last two nouns are in the nominative after

"\_who was\_" understood; and also erroneously suggests, that their joint

apposition with \_Stormont's\_ might be secured, by saying, less elegantly,

"I reside at Lord \_Stormont's\_, my old patron and \_benefactor's\_."--

\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 285. Lindley Murray, who tacitly takes from

Priestley all that is quoted above, except the term "\_Mr.\_," and the notion

of an ellipsis of "\_who is\_," assumes each of the three forms as an

instance of apposition, but pronounces the first only to be "correct and

proper." If, then, the first is elliptical, as Priestley suggests, and the

others are ungrammatical, as Murray pretends to prove, we cannot have in

reality any such construction as the apposition of two possessives; for the

sign of the case cannot possibly be added in more than these three ways.

But Murray does not adhere at all to his own decision, as may be seen by

his subsequent remarks and examples, on the same page; as, "The \_emperor

Leopold's\_;"--"\_Dionysius\_ the \_tyrant's\_;"--"For \_David\_ my \_servant's\_

sake;"--"Give me here \_John\_ the \_Baptist's\_ head;"--"\_Paul\_ the

\_apostle's\_ advice." See \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 176; \_Smith's New

Gram.\_, p. 150; and others.

OBS. 10.--An explanatory noun without the possessive sign, seems sometimes

to be put in apposition with a \_pronoun of the possessive case\_; and, if

introduced by the conjunction \_as\_, it may either precede or follow the

pronoun: thus, "I rejoice in \_your\_ success \_as\_ an \_instructer\_."--

\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 244. "\_As\_ an \_author\_, his 'Adventurer' is \_his\_

capital work."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 329.

"Thus shall mankind \_his\_ guardian care engage,

The promised \_father\_ of a future age."--\_Pope\_.

But possibly such examples may be otherwise explained on the principle of

ellipsis; as, [\_He being\_] "the promised \_father\_," &c. "As [\_he was\_] an

\_author\_," &c. "As [\_you are\_] an \_instructer\_."

OBS. 11.--When a noun or pronoun \_is repeated\_ for the sake of emphasis, or

for the adding of an epithet, the word which is repeated may properly be

said to be in apposition with that which is first introduced; or, if not,

the repetition itself implies sameness of case: as, "They have forsaken

\_me\_, the \_fountain\_ of living waters, and hewed them out \_cisterns\_,

broken \_cisterns\_, that can hold no water."--\_Jer.\_, ii, 13.

"I find the total of their hopes and fears

\_Dreams\_, empty \_dreams\_."--\_Cowper's Task\_, p. 71.

OBS. 12.--A noun is sometimes put, as it were, in apposition to a

\_sentence\_; being used (perhaps elliptically) to sum up the whole idea in

one emphatic word, or short phrase. But, in such instances, the noun can

seldom be said to have any positive relation that may determine its case;

and, if alone, it will of course be in the nominative, by reason of its

independence. Examples: "He permitted me to consult his library--a

\_kindness\_ which I shall not forget."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 148. "I have

offended reputation--a most unnoble \_swerving\_."--\_Shakspeare\_. "I want a

hero,--an uncommon \_want\_."--\_Byron\_. "Lopez took up the sonnet, and after

reading it several times, frankly acknowledged that he did not understand

it himself; a \_discovery\_ which the poet probably never made

before."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 280.

"In Christian hearts O for a pagan zeal!

A needful, but opprobrious \_prayer!\_"--\_Young\_, N. ix, l. 995.

"Great standing \_miracle\_, that Heav'n assign'd

Its only thinking thing this turn of mind."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 13.--A \_distributive term\_ in the singular number, is frequently

construed in apposition with a comprehensive plural; as, "\_They\_ reap

vanity, \_every one\_ with his neighbour."--\_Bible\_. "Go \_ye every man\_ unto

his city."--\_Ibid.\_ So likewise with two or more singular nouns which are

taken conjointly; as, "The \_Son and Spirit\_ have \_each\_ his proper

office."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 163. And sometimes a \_plural\_ word is

emphatically put after a series of particulars comprehended under it; as,

"Ambition, interest, glory, \_all\_ concurred."--\_Letters on Chivalry\_, p.

11. "Royalists, republicans, churchmen, sectaries, courtiers, patriots,

\_all parties\_ concurred in the illusion."--\_Hume's History\_, Vol. viii, p.

73. The foregoing examples are plain, but similar expressions sometimes

require care, lest the distributive or collective term be so placed that

its construction and meaning may be misapprehended. Examples: "We have

\_turned every one\_ to his own way."--\_Isaiah\_, liii, 6. Better: "\_We have

every one\_ turned to his own way." "For in many things we \_offend

all\_."--\_James\_, iii, 2. Better: "For in many things \_we all\_ offend." The

latter readings doubtless convey the \_true sense\_ of these texts. To the

relation of apposition, it may be proper also to refer the construction of

a singular noun taken in a distributive sense and repeated after \_by\_ to

denote order; as, "\_They\_ went out \_one\_ by one."--\_Bible\_. "Our whole

\_company, man\_ by man, ventured in."--\_Goldsmith\_. "To examine a \_book,

page\_ by page; to search a \_place, house\_ by house."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p.

106. So too, perhaps, when the parts of a thing explain the whole; as,

"But those that sleep, and think not on their sins,

Pinch \_them, arms, legs, backs, shoulders, sides\_, and \_shins\_."

--\_Shak\_.

OBS. 14.--To express a reciprocal action or relation, the pronominal

adjectives \_each other\_ and \_one an other\_ are employed: as, "They love

\_each other\_;"--"They love \_one an other\_." The words, separately

considered, are singular; but, taken together, they imply plurality; and

they can be properly construed only after plurals, or singulars taken

conjointly. \_Each other\_ is usually applied to two persons or things; and

\_one an other\_, to more than two. The impropriety of applying them

otherwise, is noticed elsewhere; (see, in Part II, Obs. 15th, on the

Classes of Adjectives;) so that we have here to examine only their

relations of case. The terms, though reciprocal and closely united, are

seldom or never in the same construction. If such expressions be analyzed,

\_each\_ and \_one\_ will generally appear to be in the nominative case, and

\_other\_ in the objective; as, "They love \_each other\_;" i. e. \_each\_ loves

\_the other\_. "They love \_one an other\_;" i. e. any or every \_one\_ loves any

or every \_other\_. \_Each\_ and \_one\_ (--if the words be taken as cases, and

not adjectively--) are properly in agreement or apposition with \_they\_, and

\_other\_ is governed by the verb. The terms, however, admit of other

constructions; as, "Be ye helpers \_one\_ of an \_other\_."--\_Bible\_. Here

\_one\_ is in apposition with \_ye\_, and \_other\_ is governed by \_of\_. "Ye are

\_one\_ an \_other's\_ joy."--\_Ib.\_ Here \_one\_ is in apposition with \_ye\_, and

\_other's\_ is in the possessive case, being governed by \_joy\_. "Love will

make you \_one\_ an \_other's\_ joy." Here \_one\_ is in the objective case,

being in apposition with \_you\_, and \_other's\_ is governed as before.

"\_Men's\_ confidence in \_one an other\_;"--"\_Their\_ dependence \_one\_ upon \_an

other\_." Here the word \_one\_ appears to be in apposition with the

possessive going before; for it has already been shown, that words standing

in that relation \_never take the possessive sign\_. But if its location

after the preposition must make it objective, the whole object is the

complex term, "\_one an other\_." "Grudge not \_one\_ against \_an

other\_."--\_James\_, v, 9. "Ne vous plaignez point \_les uns des

autres\_."--\_French Bible\_. "Ne suspirate \_alius\_ adversus

\_alium\_."--\_Beza\_. "Ne ingemiscite adversus \_alii alios."--Leusden\_.

"[Greek: Mæ stenazete kat hallælon]."--\_Greek New Testament\_.

OBS. 15.--The construction of the Latin terms \_alius alium, alii alios\_,

&c., with that of the French \_l'un l'autre, l'un de l'autre\_, &c., appears,

at first view, sufficiently to confirm the doctrine of the preceding

observation; but, besides the frequent use, in Latin and Greek, of a

reciprocal adverb to express the meaning of one an other or each other,

there are, from each of these languages, some analogical arguments for

taking the English terms together as compounds. The most common term in

Greek for \_one an other\_, ([Greek: Hallælon], dat. [Greek: hallælois, ais,

ois], acc. [Greek: hallælous]: ab [Greek: hallos], \_alius\_,) is a single

derivative word, the case of which is known by its termination; and \_each

other\_ is sometimes expressed in Latin by a compound: as, "Et osculantes se

\_alterutrum\_, fleverunt pariter."--\_Vulgate\_. That is: "And kissing \_each

other\_, they wept together." As this text speaks of but two persons, our

translators have not expressed it well in the common version: "And they

kissed \_one an other\_, and wept \_one\_ with \_an other\_"--\_1 Sam.\_, xx, 41.

\_Alter-utrum\_ is composed of a nominative and an accusative, like

\_each-other\_; and, in the nature of things, there is no reason why the

former should be compounded, and the latter not. Ordinarily, there seems to

be no need of compounding either of them. But some examples occur, in which

it is not easy to parse \_each other\_ and \_one an other\_ otherwise than as

compounds: as, "He only recommended this, and not the washing of \_one

another's\_ feet."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 143.

"The Temple late two brother sergeants saw,

Who deem'd \_each other oracles\_ of law."--\_Pope\_, B. ii, Ep. 2.[345]

OBS. 16.--The \_common\_ and the \_proper\_ name of an object are very often

associated, and put in apposition; as, "\_The river Thames\_,"--"\_The ship

Albion\_,"--"\_The poet Cowper\_"--"\_Lake Erie\_,"--"\_Cape May\_"--"\_Mount

Atlas\_." But, in English, the proper name of a place, when accompanied by

the common name, is generally put in the objective case, and preceded by

\_of\_; as, "The city \_of\_ New York,"--"The land \_of\_ Canaan,"--"The island

\_of\_ Cuba,"--"The peninsula \_of\_ Yucatan." Yet in some instances, even of

this kind, the immediate apposition is preferred; as, "That the \_city

Sepphoris\_ should be subordinate to the \_city Tiberias\_."--\_Life of

Josephus\_, p. 142. In the following sentence, the preposition \_of\_ is at

least needless: "The law delighteth herself in the number \_of\_ twelve; and

the number \_of\_ twelve is much respected in holy writ."--\_Coke, on Juries\_.

Two or three late grammarians, supposing \_of\_ always to indicate a

possessive relation between one thing and an other, contend that it is no

less improper, to say, "The city \_of\_ London, the city \_of\_ New Haven, the

month \_of\_ March, the islands \_of\_ Cuba and Hispaniola, the towns \_of\_

Exeter and Dover," than to say, "King \_of\_ Solomon, Titus \_of\_ the Roman

Emperor, Paul \_of\_ the apostle, or, Cicero \_of\_ the orator."--See

\_Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 101; \_Emmons's\_, 16. I cannot but think there is some

mistake in their mode of finding out what is proper or improper in grammar.

Emmons scarcely achieved two pages more, before he forgot his criticism,

and adopted the phrase, "in the city \_of\_ New Haven."--\_Gram.\_, p. 19.

OBS. 17.--When an object acquires a new name or character from the action

of a verb, the new appellation is put in apposition with the object of the

active verb, and in the nominative after the passive: as, "They named the

\_child John\_;"--"The child was named \_John\_."--"They elected \_him

president\_;"--"He was elected \_president\_." After the active verb, the

acquired name must be parsed by Rule 3d; after the passive, by Rule 6th. In

the following example, the pronominal adjective \_some\_, or the noun \_men\_

understood after it, is the direct object of the verb \_gave\_, and the nouns

expressed are in apposition with it: "And he gave \_some, apostles\_; and

\_some, prophets\_; and \_some, evangelists\_; and \_some, pastors\_ and

\_teachers\_"--\_Ephesians\_, iv, 11. That is, "He \_bestowed some\_ [men] as

\_apostles\_; and \_some\_ as \_prophets\_; and \_some\_ as \_evangelists\_; and

\_some\_ as \_pastors\_ and \_teachers\_." The common reader might easily mistake

the meaning and construction of this text in two different ways; for he

might take \_some\_ to be either a \_dative case\_, meaning \_to some persons\_,

or an adjective to the nouns which are here expressed. The punctuation,

however, is calculated to show that the nouns are in apposition with

\_some\_, or \_some men\_, in what the Latins call the \_accusative, case\_. But

the version ought to be amended by the insertion of \_as\_, which would here

be an express sign of the apposition intended.

OBS. 18.--Some authors teach that words in apposition must agree in person,

number, and gender, as well as in case; but such agreement the following

examples show not to be always necessary: "The \_Franks, a people\_ of

Germany."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_ "The Kenite \_tribe\_, the \_descendants\_ of

Hobab."--\_Milman's Hist. of the Jews\_. "But how can \_you\_ a \_soul\_, still

either hunger or thirst?"--\_Lucian's Dialogues\_, p. 14. "Who seized the

wife of \_me\_ his \_host\_, and fled."--\_Ib.\_, p. 16.

"Thy gloomy \_grandeurs\_ (Nature's most august.

Inspiring \_aspect\_!) claim a grateful verse."--\_Young\_, N. ix, l. 566.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE III.

ERRORS OF WORDS IN APPOSITION.

"Now, therefore, come thou, let us make a covenant, I and thou."--\_Gen.\_,

xxxi, 44.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronouns I and thou, of the nominative

case, are here put in apposition with the preceding pronoun \_us\_, which is

objective. But, according to Rule 3d, "A noun or a personal pronoun, used

to explain a preceding noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same

case." Therefore, \_I\_ and \_thou\_ should be \_thee\_ and \_me\_; (the first

person, in our idiom, being usually put last;) thus, "Now, therefore, come

thou, let us make a covenant, thee and me."]

"Now, therefore, come thou, we will make a covenant, thee and

me."--\_Variation of Gen.\_ "The word came not to Esau, the hunter, that

stayed not at home; but to Jacob, the plain man, he that dwelt in

tents."--\_Wm. Penn\_. "Not to every man, but to the man of God, (i. e.) he

that is led by the spirit of God."--\_Barclays Works\_, i, 266. "For,

admitting God to be a creditor, or he to whom the debt should be paid, and

Christ he that satisfies or pays it on behalf of man the debtor, this

question will arise, whether he paid that debt as God, or man, or

both?"--\_Wm. Penn.\_ "This Lord Jesus Christ, the heavenly Man, the

Emmanuel, God with us, we own and believe in: he whom the high priests

raged against," &c.--\_George Fox\_. "Christ, and Him crucified, was the

Alpha and Omega of all his addresses, the fountain and foundation of his

hope and trust."--\_Experience of Paul\_, p. 399. "'Christ and Him crucified'

is the head, and only head, of the church."--\_Denison's Sermon\_. "But if

'Christ and Him crucified' are the burden of the ministry, such disastrous

results are all avoided."--\_Ib.\_ "He never let fall the least intimation,

that himself, or any other person, whomsoever, was the object of

worship."--\_Hannah Adams's View\_, p. 250. "Let the elders that rule well,

be counted worthy of double honour, especially they who labour in the word

and doctrine."--\_1 Tim.\_, v, 17. "Our Shepherd, him who is styled King of

saints, will assuredly give his saints the victory."--\_Sermon\_. "It may

seem odd to talk of \_we subscribers\_"--\_Fowlers True Eng. Gram.\_, p. 20.

"And they shall have none to bury them, them, their wives, nor their sons,

nor their daughters; for I will pour their wickedness upon

them."--\_Jeremiah\_, xiv, 16. "Yet I supposed it necessary to send to you

Epaphroditus, my brother, and companion in labour, and fellow-soldier, but

your messenger, and he that ministered to my wants."--\_Philippians\_, ii,

25.

"Amidst the tumult of the routed train,

The sons of false Antimachus were slain;

He, who for bribes his faithless counsels sold,

And voted Helen's stay for Paris' gold."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. xi. l. 161.

"See the vile King his iron sceptre bear--

His only praise attends the pious Heir;

He, in whose soul the virtues all conspire,

The best good son, from the worst wicked sire."

--DR. LOWTH: \_Union Poems\_, p. 19.

"Then from thy lips poured forth a joyful song

To thy Redeemer!--yea, it poured along

In most melodious energy of praise,

To God, the Saviour, he of ancient days."

--\_Arm Chair\_, p. 15.

RULE IV.--POSSESSIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun in the possessive case, is

governed by the name of the thing possessed: as, "\_God's\_ mercy prolongs

\_man's\_ life."--\_Allen\_.

"\_Theirs\_ is the vanity, the learning \_thine\_;

Touched by \_thy\_ hand, again \_Rome's\_ glories shine."--\_Pope\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE IV.

OBS. 1.--Though the \_ordinary\_ syntax of the possessive case is

sufficiently plain and easy, there is perhaps, among all the puzzling and

disputable points of grammar, nothing more difficult of decision, than are

some questions that occur respecting the right management of this case.

That its usual construction is both clearly and properly stated in the

foregoing rule, is what none will doubt or deny. But how many and what

exceptions to this rule ought to be allowed, or whether any are justly

demanded or not, are matters about which there may be much diversity of

opinion. Having heretofore published the rule without any express

exceptions, I am not now convinced that it is best to add any; yet are

there three different modes of expression which might be plausibly

exhibited in that character. Two of these would concern only the parser;

and, for that reason, they seem not to be very important. The other

involves the approval or reprehension of a great multitude of very common

expressions, concerning which our ablest grammarians differ in opinion, and

our most popular digest plainly contradicts itself. These points are;

\_first\_, the apposition of possessives, and the supposed ellipses which may

affect that construction; \_secondly\_, the government of the possessive case

after \_is, was\_, &c., when the ownership of a thing is simply affirmed or

denied; \_thirdly\_, the government of the possessive by a participle, as

such--that is, while it retains the government and adjuncts of a

participle.

OBS. 2.--The apposition of one possessive with an other, (as, "For \_David\_

my \_servant's\_ sake,") might doubtless be consistently made a formal

exception to the direct government of the possessive by its controlling

noun. But this apposition is only a sameness of construction, so that what

governs the one, virtually governs the other. And if the case of any noun

or pronoun is known and determined by the rule or relation of apposition,

there can be no need of an exception to the foregoing rule for the purpose

of parsing it, since that purpose is already answered by rule third. If the

reader, by supposing an ellipsis which I should not, will resolve any given

instance of this kind into something else than apposition, I have already

shown him that some great grammarians have differed in the same way before.

Useless ellipses, however, should never be supposed; and such \_perhaps\_ is

the following: "At Mr. Smith's [\_who is\_] the bookseller."--See \_Dr.

Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 71.

OBS. 3.--In all our Latin grammars, the verb \_sum, fui, esse\_, to be, is

said (though not with strict propriety) sometimes to \_signify\_ possession,

property, or duty, and in that sense to govern the genitive case: as, "\_Est

regis\_;"--"It is the king's."--"\_Hominis est errare\_;"--"It is man's to

err."--"\_Pecus est Melib&oelig;i\_;"--"The flock is Meliboeus's." And

sometimes, with like import, this verb, expressed or understood, may govern

the dative; as, "\_Ego\_ [sum] \_dilecto meo, et dilectus meus\_ [est]

\_mihi\_."--\_Vulgate\_. "I am my beloved's, and my beloved is

mine."--\_Solomon's Song\_, vi, 3. Here, as both the genitive and the dative

are expressed in English by the possessive, if the former are governed by

the verb, there seems to be precisely the same reason from the nature of

the expression, and an additional one from analogy, for considering the

latter to be so too. But all the annotators upon the Latin syntax suggest,

that the genitive thus put after \_sum\_ or \_est\_, is really governed, not by

the verb, but by some \_noun understood\_; and with this idea, of an ellipsis

in the construction, all our English grammarians appear to unite. They

might not, however, find it very easy to tell by what noun the word

\_beloved's\_ or \_mine\_ is governed, in the last example above; and so of

many others, which are used in the same way: as, "There shall nothing die

of all that is the \_children's\_ of Israel."--\_Exod.\_, ix, 4. The Latin here

is, "Ut nihil omnino pereat ex his \_quæ pertinent ad\_ filios

Israel."--\_Vulgate\_. That is,--"of all those \_which belong to\_ the

children of Israel."

"For thou art \_Freedom's\_ now--and \_Fame's\_,

One of the few, the immortal names,

That were not born to die."--HALLECK: \_Marco Bozzaris\_.

OBS. 4.--Although the possessive case is always intrinsically an \_adjunct\_

and therefore incapable of being used or comprehended in any sense that is

positively abstract; yet we see that there are instances in which it is

used with a certain degree of abstraction,--that is, with an actual

separation from the name of the thing possessed; and that accordingly

there are, in the simple personal pronouns, (where such a distinction is

most needed,) two different forms of the case; the one adapted to the

concrete, and the other to the abstract construction. That form of the

pronoun, however, which is equivalent in sense to the concrete and the

noun, is still the possessive case, and nothing more; as, "All \_mine\_ are

\_thine\_, and \_thine\_ are \_mine\_."--\_John\_, xvii, 10. For if we suppose this

equivalence to prove such a pronoun to be something more than the

possessive case, as do some grammarians, we must suppose the same thing

respecting the possessive case of a noun, whenever the relation of

ownership or possession is simply affirmed or denied with such a noun put

last: as, "For all things are \_yours\_; and ye are \_Christ's\_; and Christ is

\_God's\_."--\_1 Cor.\_, iii, 21. By the second example placed under the rule,

I meant to suggest, that the possessive case, when placed before or after

this verb, (\_be\_,) \_might\_ be parsed as being governed by the nominative;

as we may suppose "\_theirs\_" to be governed by "\_vanity\_," and "\_thine\_" by

"\_learning\_," these nouns being the names of the things possessed. But then

we encounter a difficulty, whenever a \_pronoun\_ happens to be the

nominative; as, "Therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit,

\_which are God's\_"--\_1 Cor.\_, vi, 20. Here the common resort would be to

some ellipsis; and yet it must be confessed, that this mode of

interpretation cannot but make some difference in the sense: as, "\_If ye be

Christ's\_, then are ye Abraham's seed."--\_Gal.\_, iii, 29. Here some may

think the meaning to be, "\_If ye be Christ's seed\_, or \_children\_." But a

truer version of the text would be, "If ye \_are of Christ\_, then are ye

Abraham's seed."--"Que si vous \_êtes à Christ\_, vous êtes done la posterité

d'Abraham."--\_French Bible\_.

OBS. 5.--Possession is the having of something, and if the possessive case

is always an adjunct, referring either directly or indirectly to that which

constitutes it a possessive, it would seem but reasonable, to limit the

government of this case to that part of speech which is understood

\_substantively\_--that is, to "the \_name\_ of the thing possessed." Yet, in

violation of this restriction, many grammarians admit, that a \_participle\_,

with the regimen and adjuncts of a participle, may govern the possessive

case; and some of them, at the same time, with astonishing inconsistency,

aver, that the possessive case before a participle converts the latter into

a noun, and necessarily deprives it of its regimen. Whether participles are

worthy to form an exception to my rule or not, this palpable contradiction

is one of the gravest faults of L. Murray's code of syntax. After copying

from Lowth the doctrine that a participle with an \_article\_ before it

becomes a noun, and must drop the government and adjuncts of a participle,

this author informs us, that the same principles are applicable to the

\_pronoun\_ and participle: as, "Much depends on \_their observing of\_ the

rule, and error will be the consequence of \_their neglecting of\_ it;" in

stead of, "\_their observing the rule\_," and "\_their neglecting it\_." And

this doctrine he applies, with yet more positiveness, to the \_noun\_ and

participle; as if the error were still more glaring, to make an active

participle govern a possessive \_noun\_; saying, "We shall perceive this

\_more clearly\_, if we substitute a noun for the pronoun: as, 'Much depends

upon \_Tyro's observing of\_ the rule,' &c.; which is the same as, 'Much

depends on Tyro's \_observance\_ of the rule.' But, as this construction

sounds rather \_harshly\_, it would, in general, be better to express the

sentiment in the following, or some other form: 'Much depends on the

\_rule's being observed\_; and error will be the consequence of \_its being

neglected\_? or--'\_on observing the rule\_; and--\_of neglecting

it\_.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 193; \_Ingersoll's\_, 199; and others.

OBS. 6.--Here it is assumed, that "\_their observing the rule\_," or "\_Tyro's

observing the rule\_," is an ungrammatical phrase; and, several different

methods being suggested for its correction, a preference is at length given

to what is perhaps not less objectionable than the original phrase itself.

The last form offered, "\_on observing the rule\_," &c., is indeed correct

enough in itself; but, as a substitute for the other, it is both inaccurate

and insufficient. It merely omits the possessive case, and leaves the

action of the participle undetermined in respect to the agent. For the

possessive case before a real participle, denotes not the possessor of

something, as in other instances, but the agent of the action, or the

subject of the being or passion; and the simple question here is, whether

this extraordinary use of the possessive case is, or is not, such an idiom

of our language as ought to be justified. Participles may become nouns, if

we choose to use them substantively; but can they govern the possessive

case before them, while they govern also the objective after them, or while

they have a participial meaning which is qualified by adverbs? If they can,

Lowth, Murray, and others, are wrong in supposing the foregoing phrases to

be ungrammatical, and in teaching that the possessive case before a

participle converts it into a noun; and if they cannot, Priestley, Murray,

Hiley, Wells, Weld, and others, are wrong in supposing that a participle,

or a phrase beginning with a participle, may properly govern the possessive

case. Compare Murray's seventh note under his Rule 10th, with the second

under his Rule 14th. The same contradiction is taught by many other

compilers. See \_Smith's New Grammar\_, pp. 152 and 162; \_Comly's Gram.\_, 91

and 108; \_Ingersoll's\_, 180 and 199.

OBS. 7.--Concerning one of the forms of expression which Murray approves

and prefers, among his corrections above, the learned doctors Lowth and

Campbell appear to have formed very different opinions. The latter, in the

chapter which, in his Philosophy of Rhetoric, he devotes to disputed points

in syntax, says: "There is only one other observation of Dr. Lowth, on

which, before I conclude this article, I must beg leave to offer some

remarks. 'Phrases like the following, though very common, are improper:

Much depends upon the \_rule's being observed\_; and error will be the

consequence of \_its being neglected\_. For here \_is\_ a noun \_and\_ a pronoun

representing it, each in the possessive case, that is, under the government

of another noun, but without other noun to govern it: for \_being observed\_,

and \_being neglected\_, are not nouns: nor can you supply the place of the

possessive case by the preposition \_of\_ before the noun or pronoun.'[346]

For my part," continues Campbell, "notwithstanding what is here very

speciously urged, I am not satisfied that there is any fault in the phrases

censured. They appear to me to be perfectly in the idiom of our tongue, and

such as on some occasions could not easily be avoided, unless by recurring

to circumlocution, an expedient which invariably tends to enervate the

expression."--\_Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, B. ii, Ch. iv, p. 234.

OBS. 8.--Dr. Campbell, if I understand his argument, defends the foregoing

expressions against the objections of Dr. Lowth, not on the ground that

participles as such may govern the possessive case, but on the supposition

that as the simple active participle may become a noun, and in that

character govern the possessive case, so may the passive participle, and

with equal propriety, notwithstanding it consists of two or more words,

which must in this construction be considered as forming "one compound

noun." I am not sure that he means to confine himself strictly to this

latter ground, but if he does, his position cannot be said in any respect

to contravene my rule for the possessive case. I do not, however, agree

with him, either in the opinion which he offers, or in the negative which

he attempts to prove. In view of the two examples, "Much depends upon the

\_rule's being observed\_," and, "Much depends upon \_their observing of the

rule\_," he says: "Now, although I allow both \_the\_ modes of expression to

be good, I think the first \_simpler and better\_ than the second." Then,

denying all faults, he proceeds: "Let us consider whether the former be

liable to \_any objections\_, which do not equally affect the latter." But in

his argument, he considers only the objections offered by Lowth, which

indeed he sufficiently refutes. Now to me there appear to be other

objections, which are better founded. In the first place, the two sentences

are not equivalent in meaning; hence the preference suggested by this

critic and others, is absurd. Secondly, a compound noun formed of two or

three words without any hyphen, is at best such an anomaly, as we ought

rather to avoid than to prefer. If these considerations do not positively

condemn the former construction, they ought at least to prevent it from

displacing the latter; and seldom is either to be preferred to the regular

noun, which we can limit by the article or the possessive at pleasure: as,

"Much depends on \_an observance\_ of the rule."--"Much depends on \_their

observance\_ of the rule." Now these two sentences are equivalent to the two

former, but not to each other; and, \_vice versa\_: that is, the two former

are equivalent to these, but not to each other.[347]

OBS. 9.--From Dr. Campbell's commendation of Lowth, as having "given some

excellent directions for preserving a proper distinction between the noun

and the gerund,"--that is, between the participial noun and the

participle,--it is fair to infer that he meant to preserve it himself; and

yet, in the argument above mentioned, he appears to have carelessly framed

one ambiguous or very erroneous sentence, from which, as I imagine, his

views of this matter have been misconceived, and by which Murray and all

his modifiers have been furnished with an example wherewith to confound

this distinction, and also to contradict themselves. The sentence is this:

"Much will depend on \_your pupil's composing\_, but more on \_his reading\_

frequently."--\_Philos. of Rhet.\_, p. 235. Volumes innumerable have gone

abroad, into our schools and elsewhere, which pronounce this sentence to be

"correct and proper." But after all, what does it mean? Does the adverb

"\_frequently\_" qualify the verb "\_will depend\_" expressed in the sentence?

or "\_will depend\_" understood after \_more\_? or both? or neither? Or does

this adverb qualify the action of "\_reading\_?" or the action of

"\_composing\_?" or both? or neither? But \_composing\_ and \_reading\_, if they

are mere \_nouns\_, cannot properly be qualified by any adverb; and, if they

are called participles, the question recurs respecting the possessives.

Besides, \_composing\_, as a participle, is commonly \_transitive\_; nor is it

very fit for a noun, without some adjunct. And, when participles become

nouns, their government (it is said) falls upon \_of\_, and their adverbs are

usually converted into adjectives; as, "Much will depend on your \_pupil's

composing of themes\_; but more, on \_his frequent reading\_." This may not be

the author's meaning, for the example was originally composed as a mere

mock sentence, or by way of "\_experiment\_;" and one may doubt whether its

meaning was ever at all thought of by the philosopher. But, to make it a

respectable example, some correction there must be; for, surely, no man can

have any clear idea to communicate, which he cannot better express, than by

imitating this loose phraseology. It is scarcely more correct, than to say,

"Much will depend on \_an author's using\_, but more on \_his learning\_

frequently." Yet is it commended as a \_model\_, either entire or in part, by

Murray, Ingersoll, Fisk, R. C. Smith, Cooper, Lennie, Hiley, Bullions, C.

Adams, A. H. Weld, and I know not how many other school critics.

OBS. 10.--That singular notion, so common in our grammars, that a

participle and its adjuncts may form "\_one name\_" or "\_substantive

phrase\_," and so govern the possessive case, where it is presumed the

participle itself could not, is an invention worthy to have been always

ascribed to its true author. For this doctrine, as I suppose, our

grammarians are indebted to Dr. Priestley. In his grammar it stands thus:

"When an \_entire clause\_ of a sentence, beginning with a participle of the

present tense, is used as one name, or to express one idea, or

circumstance, the noun on which it depends may be put in the genitive case.

Thus, instead of saying, \_What is the meaning of this lady holding up her

train\_, i. e. \_what is the meaning of the lady in holding up her train\_, we

may say, \_What is the meaning of this\_ lady's \_holding up her train\_; just

as we say, \_What is the meaning of this lady's dress\_, &c. So we may either

say, \_I remember\_ it being \_reckoned a great exploit\_; or, perhaps more

elegantly, \_I remember\_ its being \_reckoned\_, &c."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

69. Now, to say nothing of errors in punctuation, capitals, &c., there is

scarcely any thing in all this passage, that is either conceived or worded

properly. Yet, coining from a Doctor of Laws, and Fellow of the Royal

Society, it is readily adopted by Murray, and for his sake by others; and

so, with all its blunders, the vain gloss passes uncensured into the

schools, as a rule and model for elegant composition. Dr. Priestley

pretends to appreciate the difference between participles and participial

nouns, but he rather contrives a fanciful distinction in the sense, than a

real one in the construction. His only note on this point,--a note about

the "\_horse running to-day\_," and the "\_horse's running\_ to-day,"--I shall

leave till we come to the syntax of participles.

OBS. 11.--Having prepared the reader to understand the origin of what is to

follow, I now cite from L. Murray's code a paragraph which appears to be

contradictory to his own doctrine, as suggested in the fifth observation

above; and not only so, it is irreconcilable with any proper distinction

between the participle and the participial noun. "When an \_entire clause\_

of a sentence, beginning with a participle of the present tense, is used as

\_one name\_, or to express one idea or circumstance, the \_noun on which it

depends\_ may be put in the \_genitive\_ case; thus, \_instead\_ of saying,

'What is the reason of this \_person dismissing\_ his servant so hastily?'

\_that is\_, 'What is the reason of this person, \_in\_ dismissing his servant

so hastily?' we \_may\_ say, and \_perhaps\_ ought to say, 'What is the reason

of this \_person's\_ dismissing of his servant \_so hastily?\_' Just as we say,

'What is the reason of this person's \_hasty dismission\_ of his servant?' So

also, we say, 'I remember it being reckoned a great exploit;' or more

properly, 'I remember \_its\_ being reckoned,' &c. The following sentence is

\_correct and proper\_: 'Much will depend on \_the pupil's composing\_, but

more on \_his reading\_ frequently.' It would not be accurate to say, 'Much

will depend on the \_pupil composing\_.' &c. We also properly say; 'This will

be the effect \_of the pupil's composing\_ frequently;' instead of, '\_Of the

pupil composing\_ frequently.' The \_participle\_, in such constructions,

\_does the office\_ of a substantive; and it should therefore have a

CORRESPONDENT REGIMEN."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Rule 10th, Note 7;

\_Ingersoll's\_, p. 180; \_Fisk's\_, 108; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 152; \_Alger's\_, 61;

\_Merchant's\_, 84. See also \_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 150; "Abridged Ed.,"

117.[348]

OBS. 12.--Now, if it were as easy to prove that a participle, as such, or

(what amounts to the same thing) a phrase beginning with a participle,

ought never to govern the possessive case, as it is to show that every part

and parcel of the foregoing citations from Priestley, Murray, and others,

is both weakly conceived and badly written, I should neither have detained

the reader so long on this topic, nor ever have placed it among the most

puzzling points of grammar. Let it be observed, that what these writers

absurdly call "\_an entire\_ CLAUSE \_of a sentence\_," is found on examination

to be some \_short\_ PHRASE, the participle with its adjuncts, or even the

participle alone, or with a single adverb only; as, "holding up her

train,"--"dismissing his servant so hastily,"--"composing,"--"reading

frequently,"--"composing frequently." And each of these, with an opposite

error as great, they will have to be "\_one name\_," and to convey but "\_one

idea\_;" supposing that by virtue of this imaginary oneness, it may govern

the possessive case, and signify something which a "lady," or a "person,"

or a "pupil," may consistently \_possess\_. And then, to be wrong in every

thing, they suggest that any noun on which such a participle, with its

adjuncts, "depends, \_may be put\_ in the \_genitive case\_;" whereas, such a

change is seldom, if ever, admissible, and in our language, no participle

\_ever can depend\_ on any other than the nominative or the objective case.

Every participle so depending is an adjunct to the noun; and every

possessive, in its turn, is an adjunct to the word which governs it. In

respect to construction, no terms differ more than a participle which

governs the possessive case, and a participle which does not. These

different constructions the contrivers of the foregoing rule, here take to

be equivalent in meaning; whereas they elsewhere pretend to find in them

quite different significations. The meaning is sometimes very different,

and sometimes very similar; but seldom, if ever, are the terms convertible.

And even if they were so, and the difference were nothing, would it not be

better to adhere, where we can, to the analogy of General Grammar? In Greek

and Latin, a participle may agree with a noun in the genitive case; but, if

we regard analogy, that genitive must be Englished, not by the possessive

case, but by \_of\_ and the objective; as, "[Greek: 'Epeì dokim`æn zæteîte

toû 'en 'emoì laloûntos Christoû.]"--"Quandoquidem experimentum quæritis in

me loquentis Christi."--\_Beza\_. "Since ye seek a proof of \_Christ speaking\_

in me."--\_2 Cor.\_, xiii, 3. We might here, perhaps, say, "of \_Christ's

speaking\_ in me," but is not the other form better? The French version is,

"Puisque vous cherchez une preuve \_que Christ parle\_ par moi;" and this,

too, might be imitated in English: "Since ye seek a proof \_that Christ

speaks\_ by me."

OBS. 13.--As prepositions very naturally govern any of our participles

except the simple perfect, it undoubtedly seems agreeable to our idiom not

to disturb this government, when we would express the subject or agent of

the being, action, or passion, between the preposition and the participle.

Hence we find that the doer or the sufferer of the action is usually made

its possessor, whenever the sense does not positively demand a different

reading. Against this construction there is seldom any objection, if the

participle be taken entirely as a noun, so that it may be called a

participial noun; as, "Much depends \_on their observing of\_ the

rule."--\_Lowth, Campbell\_, and \_L. Murray\_. On the other hand, the

participle after the objective is unobjectionable, if the noun or pronoun

be the leading word in sense; as, "It would be idle to profess an

apprehension of serious \_evil resulting\_ in any respect from the utmost

\_publicity being given\_ to its contents."--\_London Eclectic Review\_, 1816.

"The following is a beautiful instance of the \_sound\_ of words

\_corresponding\_ to motion."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 333. "We shall

discover many \_things partaking\_ of both those characters."--\_West's

Letters\_, p. 182. "To a \_person following\_ the vulgar mode of omitting the

comma."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 365. But, in comparing the different

constructions above noticed, writers are frequently puzzled to determine,

and frequently too do they err in determining, which word shall be made the

adjunct, and which the leading term. Now, wherever there is much doubt

which of the two forms ought to be preferred, I think we may well conclude

that both are wrong; especially, if there can easily be found for the idea

an other expression that is undoubtedly clear and correct. Examples: "These

appear to be instances of the present \_participle being used\_

passively."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 64. "These are examples of the past

\_participle being applied\_ in an active sense."--\_Ib.\_, 64. "We have some

examples of \_adverbs being used\_ for substantives."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 134; \_Murray's\_, 198; \_Ingersoll's\_, 206; \_Fisk's\_, 140; \_Smith's\_, 165.

"By a \_noun, pronoun\_, or \_adjective, being prefixed\_ to the

substantive."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 39; also \_Ingersoll's, Fisk's, Alger's,

Maltby's, Merchant's, Bacon's\_, and others. Here, if their own rule is good

for any thing, these authors ought rather to have preferred the possessive

case; but strike out the word \_being\_, which is not necessary to the sense,

and all question about the construction vanishes. Or if any body will

justify these examples as they stand, let him observe that there are

others, without number, to be justified on the same principle; as, "Much

depends \_on the rule being observed\_."--"Much will depend \_on the pupil

composing frequently\_." Again: "Cyrus did not wait for the \_Babylonians

coming\_ to attack him."--\_Rollin\_, ii, 86. "Cyrus did not wait for the

\_Babylonians' coming\_ to attack him." That is--"for \_their\_ coming," and

not, "for \_them\_ coming;" but much better than either: "Cyrus did not wait

for the Babylonians \_to come and\_ attack him." Again: "To prevent his

\_army's being\_ enclosed and hemmed in."--\_Rollin\_, ii, 89. "To prevent his

\_army being\_ enclosed and hemmed in." Both are wrong. Say, "To prevent his

\_army from being\_ enclosed and hemmed in." Again: "As a sign of \_God's

fulfilling\_ the promise."--\_Rollin\_, ii, 23. "As a sign of \_God

fulfilling\_ the promise." Both are objectionable. Say, "As a sign \_that God

would fulfill\_ the promise." Again: "There is affirmative evidence for

\_Moses's being\_ the author of these books."--\_Bp. Watson's Apology\_, p. 28.

"The first argument you produce against \_Moses being\_ the author of these

books."--\_Ib.\_, p. 29. Both are bad. Say,--"for \_Moses as being\_ the

author,"--"against \_Moses as being\_ the author," &c.

OBS. 14.--Now, although thousands of sentences might easily be quoted, in

which the possessive case is \_actually\_ governed by a participle, and that

participle not taken in every respect as a noun; yet I imagine, there are,

of this kind, few examples, if any, the meaning of which might not be

\_better expressed\_ in some other way. There are surely none among all the

examples which are presented by Priestley, Murray, and others, under their

rule above. Nor would a thousand such as are there given, amount to any

proof of the rule. They are all of them \_unreal\_ or \_feigned\_ sentences,

made up for the occasion, and, like most others that are produced in the

same way, made up badly--made up after some ungrammatical model. If a

gentleman could possibly demand a \_lady's meaning\_ in such an act as \_the

holding-up of her train\_, he certainly would use none of Priestley's three

questions, which, with such ridiculous and uninstructive pedantry, are

repeated and expounded by Latham, in his Hand-Book, §481; but would

probably say, "Madam, \_what do you mean\_ by holding up your train?" It was

folly for the doctor to ask \_an other person\_, as if an other could \_guess\_

her meaning better than he. The text with the possessive is therefore not

to be corrected by inserting a hyphen and an \_of\_, after Murray's doctrine

before cited; as, "What is the meaning of this \_lady's holding-up of\_ her

train?" Murray did well to reject this example, but as a specimen of

English, his own is no better. The question which he asks, ought to have

been, "\_Why did this person dismiss\_ his servant so hastily?" Fisk has it

in the following form: "What is the reason of this \_person's dismissing his

servant\_ so hastily?"--\_English Grammar Simplified\_, p. 108. This amender

of grammars omits the \_of\_ which Murray and others scrupulously insert to

govern the noun \_servant\_, and boldly avows at once, what their rule

implies, that, "Participles are sometimes used both as verbs and as nouns

at the same time; as, 'By the \_mind's changing the object\_,' &c."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 134; so \_Emmons's Gram.\_, p. 64. But he errs as much as they, and

contradicts both himself and them. For one ought rather to say, "By the

\_mind's changing of\_ the object;" else \_changing\_, which "does the office

of a noun," has not truly "a correspondent regimen." Yet \_of\_ is useless

after \_dismissing\_, unless we take away the \_adverb\_ by which the

participle is prevented from becoming a noun. "Dismissing \_of\_ his servant

so \_hastily\_," is in itself an ungrammatical phrase; and nothing but to

omit either the preposition, or the two adverbs, can possibly make it

right. Without the latter, it may follow the possessive; but without the

former, our most approved grammars say it cannot. Some critics, however,

object to the \_of\_, because \_the dismissing\_ is not \_the servant's\_ act;

but this, as I shall hereafter show, is no valid objection: they stickle

for a false rule.

OBS. 15.--Thus these authors, differing from one an other as they do, and

each contradicting himself and some of the rest, are, as it would seem, all

wrong in respect to the whole matter at issue. For whether the phrase in

question be like Priestley's, or like Murray's, or like Fisk's, it is

still, according to the best authorities, unfit to govern the possessive

case; because, in stead of being a substantive, it is something more than a

participle, and yet they take it substantively. They form this phrase in

many different fashions, and yet each man of them pretends that what he

approves, is just like the construction of a regular noun: "\_Just as we

say\_, 'What is the reason of this person's \_hasty dismission of\_ his

servant.'"--\_Murray, Fisk, and others. "Just as we say\_, 'What is the

meaning of this lady's \_dress\_,' &c."--\_Priestley\_. The meaning of a

\_lady's dress\_, forsooth! The illustration is worthy of the doctrine

taught. "\_An entire clause of a sentence\_" substantively possessed, is

sufficiently like "\_the meaning of a lady's dress, &c.\_" Cobbett despised

\_andsoforths\_, for their lack of meaning; and I find none in this one,

unless it be, "\_of tinsel and of fustian\_." This gloss therefore I wholly

disapprove, judging the position more tenable, to deny, if we consequently

must, that either a phrase or a participle, as such, can consistently

govern the possessive case. For whatever word or term gives rise to the

direct relation of property, and is rightly made to govern the possessive

case, ought in reason to be a \_noun\_--ought to be the name of some

substance, quality, state, action, passion, being, or thing. When therefore

other parts of speech assume this relation, they naturally \_become nouns\_;

as, "Against the day of \_my burying\_."--\_John\_, xii, 7. "Till the day of

\_his showing\_ unto Israel."--\_Luke\_, i, 80. "By \_my own

showing\_."--\_Cowper, Life\_, p. 22. "By a fortune of \_my own

getting\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Let \_your yea\_ be yea, and \_your nay\_ nay."--\_James\_, v,

12. "Prate of \_my whereabout\_."--\_Shah\_.

OBS. 16.--The government of possessives by "\_entire clauses\_" or

"\_substantive phrases\_," as they are sometimes called, I am persuaded, may

best be disposed of, in almost every instance, by charging the construction

with impropriety or awkwardness, and substituting for it some better

phraseology. For example, our grammars abound with sentences like the

following, and call them good English: (1.) "So we may either say, 'I

remember \_it being\_ reckoned a great exploit;' or perhaps more elegantly,

'I remember \_its being\_ reckoned a great exploit.'"--\_Priestley, Murray,

and others\_. Here both modes are wrong; the latter, especially; because it

violates a general rule of syntax, in regard to the case of the noun

\_exploit\_. Say, "I remember \_it\_ was reckoned a great exploit." Again: (2.)

"We also properly say, 'This will be the effect of the \_pupil's composing\_

frequently.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 179; \_and others\_. Better, "This will

be the effect, \_if the pupil compose\_ frequently." But this sentence is

\_fictitious\_, and one may doubt whether good authors can be found who use

\_compose\_ or \_composing\_ as being intransitive. (3.) "What can be the

reason of the \_committee's having delayed\_ this business?"--\_Murray's Key\_,

p. 223. Say, "\_Why have the committee\_ delayed this business?" (4.) "What

can be the cause of the \_parliament's neglecting\_ so important a

business?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 195. Say, "\_Why does the parliament neglect\_ so

important a business?" (5.) "The time of \_William's making\_ the experiment,

at length arrived."--\_Ib.\_, p. 195. Say, "The time \_for William to make\_

the experiment, at length arrived." (6.) "I hope this is the last time of

\_my acting\_ so imprudently."--\_Ib.\_, p. 263. Say, "I hope \_I shall never

again act\_ so imprudently." (7.) "If I were to give a reason for \_their

looking so well\_, it would be, that they rise early."--\_Ib.\_, p. 263. Say,

"I should attribute \_their healthful appearance\_ to their early rising."

(8.) "The tutor said, that diligence and application to study were

necessary to \_our becoming\_ good scholars."--\_Cooper's Gram.\_, p. 145. Here

is an anomaly in the construction of the noun \_scholars\_. Say, "The tutor

said, that \_diligent application\_ to study was necessary to our \_success in

learning\_." (9.) "The reason of \_his having acted\_ in the manner he did,

was not fully explained."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 263. This author has a very

singular mode of giving "STRENGTH" to weak sentences. The faulty text here

was. "The reason why he \_acted\_ in the manner he did, was not fully

explained."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, p. 131. This is much better than the

other, but I should choose to say. "The reason of \_his conduct\_ was not

fully explained." For, surely, the "one idea or circumstance" of his

"having acted in the manner in \_which\_ he did act," may be quite as

forcibly named by the one word \_conduct\_, as by all this verbiage, this

"substantive phrase," or "entire clause," of such cumbrous length.

OBS. 17.--The foregoing observations tend to show, that the government of

possessives by participles, is in general a construction little to be

commended, if at all allowed. I thus narrow down the application of the

principle, but do not hereby determine it to be altogether wrong. There are

other arguments, both for and against the doctrine, which must be taken

into the account, before we can fully decide the question. The double

construction which may be given to infinitive verbs; the Greek idiom which

allows to such verbs an article before them and an objective after them;

the mixed character of the Latin gerund, part noun, part verb; the use or

substitution of the participle in English for the gerund in Latin;--all

these afford so many reasons by analogy, for allowing that our

participle--except it be the perfect--since it participates the properties

of a verb and a noun, as well as those of a verb and an adjective, may

unite in itself a double construction, and be taken substantively in one

relation, and participially in an other. Accordingly some grammarians so

define it; and many writers so use it; both parties disregarding the

distinction between the participle and the participial noun, and justifying

the construction of the former, not only as a proper participle after its

noun, and as a gerundive after its preposition; not only as a participial

adjective before its noun, and as a participial noun, in the regular syntax

of a noun; but also as a mixed term, in the double character of noun and

participle at once. Nor are these its only uses; for, after an auxiliary,

it is the main verb; and in a few instances, it passes into a preposition,

an adverb, or something else. Thus have we from the verb a single

derivative, which fairly ranks with about half the different parts of

speech, and takes distinct constructions even more numerous; and yet these

authors scruple not to make of it a hybridous thing, neither participle nor

noun, but constructively both. "But this," says Lowth, "is inconsistent;

let it be either the one or the other, and abide by its proper

construction."--\_Gram.\_, p. 82. And so say I--as asserting the general

principle, and leaving the reader to judge of its exceptions. Because,

without this mongrel character, the participle in our language has a

multiplicity of uses unparalleled in any other; and because it seldom

happens that the idea intended by this double construction may not be

otherwise expressed more elegantly. But if it sometimes seem proper that

the gerundive participle should be allowed to govern the possessive case,

no exception to my rule is needed for the \_parsing\_ of such possessive;

because whatever is invested with such government, whether rightly or

wrongly, is assumed as "the name of something possessed."

OBS. 18.--The reader may have observed, that in the use of participial

nouns, the distinction of \_voice\_ in the participle is sometimes

disregarded. Thus, "Against the day of my \_burying\_," means, "Against the

day of my \_being buried.\_" But in this instance the usual noun \_burial\_ or

\_funeral\_ would have been better than either: "Against the day of \_my

burial\_." I. e., "In diem \_funerationis meæ.\_"--\_Beza\_. "In diem \_sepulturæ

meæ\_."--\_Leusden\_. "[Greek: 'Eis t`æn hæméran toû entaphiasmoû

mou.]"--\_John\_, xii, 7. In an other text, this noun is very properly used

for the Greek infinitive, and the Latin gerund; as, "\_For my

burial.\_"--\_Matt.\_, xxvi, 12. "Ad \_funerandum\_ me."--\_Beza\_. "Ad

\_sepeliendum\_ me."--\_Leusden\_. Literally: "\_For burying me.\_" "[Greek: Pròs

tò entaphiásai me.]" Nearly: "\_For to have me buried.\_" Not all that is

allowable, is commendable; and if either of the uncompounded terms be found

a fit substitute for the compound participial noun, it is better to

dispense with the latter, on account of its dissimilarity to other nouns:

as, "Which only proceed upon the \_question's being begged.\_"--\_Barclay's

Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 361. Better, "Which only proceed upon \_a begging of

the question.\_" "The \_king's having conquered\_ in the battle, established

his throne."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 128. Better, "The king's \_conquering\_ in

the battle;" for, in the participial noun, the distinction of \_tense\_, or

of previous \_completion\_, is as needless as that of voice. "The \_fleet's

having sailed\_ prevented mutiny."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. Better, "The \_sailing of

the fleet\_,"--or, "The \_fleet's sailing\_" &c. "The \_prince's being

murdered\_ excited their pity."--\_Ibid.\_ Better, "The \_prince's murder\_

excited their \_indignation\_."

OBS. 19.--In some instances, as it appears, not a little difficulty is

experienced by our grammarians, respecting the addition or the omission of

the possessive sign, the terminational apostrophic \_s\_, which in nouns is

the ordinary index of the possessive case. Let it be remembered that every

possessive is governed, or ought to be governed, by some noun expressed or

understood, except such as (without the possessive sign) are put in

apposition with others so governed; and for every possessive termination

there must be a separate governing word, which, if it is not expressed, is

shown by the possessive sign to be understood. The possessive sign itself

\_may\_ and \_must\_ be omitted in certain cases; but, because it can never be

inserted or discarded without suggesting or discarding a governing noun, it

is never omitted \_by ellipsis\_, as Buchanan, Murray, Nixon, and many

others, erroneously teach. The four lines of Note 2d below, are sufficient

to show, in every instance, when it must be used, and when omitted; but

Murray, after as many octavo pages on the point, still leaves it perplexed

and undetermined. If a person knows what he means to say, let him express

it according to the Note, and he will not fail to use just as many

apostrophes and Esses as he ought. How absurd then is that common doctrine

of ignorance, which Nixon has gathered from Allen and Murray, his chief

oracles! "If \_several\_ nouns in the \_genitive\_ case, are immediately

connected by a \_conjunction\_, the apostrophic \_s\_ is annexed \_to the last\_,

but \_understood to the rest\_; as, Neither \_John\_ (i. e. John's) nor

\_Eliza's\_ books."--\_English Parser\_, p. 115. The author gives fifteen other

examples like this, all of them bad English, or at any rate, not adapted to

the sense which he intends!

OBS. 20.--The possessive case generally comes \_immediately before\_ the

governing noun, expressed or understood; as, "All \_nature's\_ difference

keeps all \_nature's\_ peace."--\_Pope\_. "Lady! be \_thine\_ (i. e., \_thy walk\_)

the \_Christian's\_ walk."--\_Chr. Observer.\_ "Some of \_Æschylus's\_ [plays]

and \_Euripides's\_ plays are opened in this manner."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

459. And in this order one possessive sometimes governs an other: as,

"\_Peter's wife's mother\_;"--"\_Paul's sister's son\_."--\_Bible\_. But, to this

general principle of arrangement, there are some exceptions: as,

1. When the governing noun has an adjective, this may intervene; as,

"\_Flora's\_ earliest \_smells\_."--\_Milton\_. "Of \_man's\_ first

disobedience."--\_Id.\_ In the following phrase from the Spectator, "Of

\_Will's\_ last \_night's\_ lecture," it is not very clear, whether \_Will's\_ is

governed by \_night's\_ or by \_lecture\_; yet it violates a general principle

of our grammar, to suppose the latter; because, on this supposition, two

possessives, each having the sign, will be governed by one noun.

2. When the possessive is affirmed or denied; as, "The book is \_mine\_, and

not \_John's\_." But here the governing noun \_may be supplied\_ in its proper

place; and, in some such instances, it \_must\_ be, else a pronoun or the

verb will be the only governing word: as, "Ye are \_Christ's\_ [disciples, or

people]; and Christ is \_God's\_" [son].--\_St. Paul\_. Whether this

phraseology is thus elliptical or not, is questionable. See Obs. 4th, in

this series.

3. When the case occurs without the sign, either by apposition or by

connexion; as, "In her \_brother Absalom's\_ house."--\_Bible\_. "\_David\_ and

\_Jonathan's\_ friendship."--\_Allen\_. "\_Adam\_ and \_Eve's\_ morning

hymn."--\_Dr. Ash\_. "Behold the heaven, and the heaven of heavens, is the

\_Lord's\_ thy \_God\_."--\_Deut.\_,, x, 14. "For \_peace\_ and \_quiet's\_

sake."--\_Cowper\_. "To the beginning of \_King James\_ the \_First's\_

reign."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 32.

OBS. 21--The possessive case is in general (though not always) equivalent

to the preposition \_of\_ and \_the objective\_; as, "\_Of\_ Judas Iscariot,

\_Simon's\_ son."--\_John\_, xiii, 2. "\_To\_ Judas Iscariot, the son \_of

Simon\_."--\_Ib.\_, xiii, 26. On account of this one-sided equivalence, many

grammarians erroneously reckon the latter to be a "\_genitive case\_" as well

as the former. But they ought to remember, that the preposition is used

more frequently than the possessive, and in a variety of senses that cannot

be interpreted by this case; as, "\_Of\_ some \_of\_ the books \_of\_ each \_of\_

these classes \_of\_ literature, a catalogue will be given at the end \_of\_

the work."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 178. Murray calls this a "laborious

mode of expression," and doubtless it might be a little improved by

substituting \_in\_ for the third \_of\_; but my argument is, that the meaning

conveyed cannot be expressed by possessives. The notion that \_of\_ forms a

genitive case, led Priestley to suggest, that our language admits a

"\_double genitive\_;" as, "This book \_of\_ my \_friend's\_."--\_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 71. "It is a discovery \_of Sir Isaac Newton's\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72.

"This exactness \_of his\_."--STERNE: \_ib.\_ The doctrine has since passed

into nearly all our grammars; yet is there no double case here, as I shall

presently show.

OBS. 22.--Where the governing noun cannot be easily mistaken, it is often

omitted by ellipsis: as, "At the alderman's" [\_house\_];--"St. Paul's"

[\_church\_];--"A book of my brother's" [\_books\_];--"A subject of the

emperor's" [\_subjects\_];--"A friend of mine;" i. e., \_one of my friends\_.

"Shall we say that Sacrificing was a pure invention of \_Adam's\_, or of

\_Cain\_ or \_Abel's?\_"--\_Leslie, on Tythes\_, p. 93. That is--of Adam's

\_inventions\_, or of Cain or Abel's \_inventions\_. The Rev. David Blair,

unable to resolve this phraseology to his own satisfaction, absurdly sets

it down among what he calls "ERRONEOUS OR VULGAR PHRASES." His examples are

these: "A poem of Pope's;"--"A soldier of the king's;"--"That is a horse of

my father's."--\_Blair's Practical Gram.\_, p. 110, 111. He ought to have

supplied the plural nouns, \_poems, soldiers, horses\_. This is the true

explanation of all the "double genitives" which our grammarians discover;

for when the first noun is \_partitive\_, it naturally suggests more or other

things of the same kind, belonging to this possessor; and when such is not

the meaning, this construction is improper. In the following example, the

noun \_eyes\_ is understood after \_his\_:

"Ev'n \_his\_, the \_warrior's eyes\_, were forced to yield,

That saw, without a tear, Pharsalia's field."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. viii, l. 144.

OBS. 23.--When two or more nouns of the possessive form are in any way

connected, they usually refer to things individually different but of the

same name; and when such is the meaning, the governing noun, which we

always suppress somewhere to avoid tautology, is \_understood\_ wherever the

sign is added without it; as, "A \_father's\_ or \_mother's sister\_ is an

aunt."--\_Dr. Webster\_. That is, "A \_father's sister\_ or a mother's sister

is an aunt." "In the same commemorative acts of the senate, \_were thy

name\_, thy \_father's\_, thy \_brother's\_, and the \_emperor's\_."--\_Zenobia\_,

Vol. i, p. 231.

"From Stiles's pocket into \_Nokes's\_" [pocket].

--\_Hudibras\_, B. iii, C. iii, l. 715.

"Add \_Nature's, Custom's, Reason's\_, Passion's strife."

--\_Pope, Brit. Poets\_, Vol. vi, p. 383.

It will be observed that in all these examples the governing noun is

singular; and, certainly, it must be so, if, with more than one possessive

sign, we mean to represent each possessor as having or possessing but one

object. If the noun be made plural where it is expressed, it will also be

plural where it is implied. It is good English to say, "A \_father's\_ or

\_mother's sisters\_ are aunts;" but the meaning is, "A father's \_sisters\_ or

a mother's sisters are aunts." But a recent school critic teaches

differently, thus: "When different things of the same name belong to

different possessors, the sign should be annexed to each; as, \_Adams's,

Davies's\_, and \_Perkins'\_ Arithmetics; i. e., \_three different

books\_."--\_Spencer's Gram.\_, p. 47. Here the example is fictitious, and has

almost as many errors as words. It would be much better English to say,

"\_Adams's, Davies's, and Perkins's Arithmetic\_;" though the objective form

with \_of\_ would, perhaps, be still more agreeable for these peculiar names.

Spencer, whose Grammar abounds with useless repetitions, repeats his note

elsewhere, with the following illustrations: "E. g. \_Olmstead's\_ and

\_Comstock's\_ Philosophies. \_Gould's Adam's\_ Latin Grammar."--\_Ib.\_, p. 106.

The latter example is no better suited to his text, than "\_Peter's wife's

mother\_;" and the former is fit only to mean, "Olmstead's \_Philosophies\_

and Comstock's Philosophies." To speak of the two books only, say,"

Olmstead's \_Philosophy\_ and Comstock's."

OBS. 24.--The possessive sign is sometimes annexed to that part of a

compound name, which is, of itself, in the objective case; as, "At his

\_father-in-law's\_ residence." Here, "\_At the residence of his

father-in-law\_," would be quite as agreeable; and, as for the plural, one

would hardly think of saying, "Men's wedding parties are usually held at

their \_fathers-in-law's\_ houses." When the compound is formed with \_of\_, to

prevent a repetition of this particle, the possessive sign is sometimes

added as above; and yet the hyphen is not commonly inserted in the phrase,

as I think it ought to be. Examples: "The duke of Bridgewater's

canal;"--"The bishop of Landaff's excellent book;"--"The Lord mayor of

London's authority;"--"The captain of the guard's house."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 176. "The Bishop of Cambray's writings on eloquence."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 345. "The bard of Lomond's lay is done."--\_Queen's Wake\_, p. 99.

"For the kingdom of God's sake."--\_Luke\_, xviii, 29. "Of the children of

Israel's half."--\_Numbers\_, xxxi, 30. From these examples it would seem,

that the possessive sign has a less intimate alliance with the possessive

case, than with the governing noun; or, at any rate, a dependence less

close than that of the objective noun which here assumes it. And since the

two nouns here so intimately joined by \_of\_, cannot be explained separately

as forming two cases, but must be parsed together as \_one name\_ governed in

the usual way, I should either adopt some other phraseology, or write the

compound terms with hyphens, thus: "The \_Duke-of-Bridgewater's\_

canal;"--"The \_Bishop-of-Landaff's\_ excellent book;"--"The \_Bard-of-

Lomond's\_ lay is done." But there is commonly some better mode of

correcting such phrases. With deference to Murray and others, "\_The King of

Great Britain's prerogative\_," [349] is but an untoward way of saying,

"\_The prerogative of the British King\_;" and, "\_The Lord mayor of London's

authority\_," may quite as well be written, "\_The authority of London's Lord

Mayor\_." Blair, who for brevity robs the \_Arch\_bishop of half his title,

might as well have said, "\_Fenelon's\_ writings on eloquence." "\_Propter

regnum Dei\_," might have been rendered, "For the kingdom \_of God\_;"--"For

\_the sake of\_ the kingdom of God;"--or, "For the sake of \_God's\_ kingdom."

And in lieu of the other text, we might say, "Of the \_Israelites'\_ half."

OBS. 25.--"Little explanatory circumstances," says Priestley, "are

particularly awkward between the \_genitive case\_, and the word which

usually follows it; as, 'She began to extol the farmer's, \_as she called

him\_, excellent understanding.' Harriet Watson, Vol. i, p.

27."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p 174. Murray assumes this remark, and adds

respecting the example, "It ought to be, 'the excellent understanding of

the farmer, as she called him.' "--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 175. Intersertions

of this kind are as uncommon as they are uncouth. Murray, it seems, found

none for his Exercises, but made up a couple to suit his purpose. The

following might have answered as well for an other: "Monsieur D'acier

observes, that Zeno's (the Founder of the Sect,) opinion was Fair and

Defensible in these Points."--\_Colliers Antoninus\_, p. ii.

OBS. 26.--It is so usual a practice in our language, to put the possessive

sign always and only where the two terms of the possessive relation meet,

that this ending is liable to be added to any adjunct which can be taken as

a part of the former noun or name; as, (1.) "The \_court-martial's\_ violent

proceedings." Here the plural would be \_courts-martial\_; but the possessive

sign must be at the end. (2.) "In \_Henry the Eighth's\_ time."--\_Walker's

Key, Introd.\_, p. 11. This phrase can be justified only by supposing the

adjective a part of the name. Better, "In the time of Henry the Eighth."

(3.) "And strengthened with a \_year or two's age\_."--\_Locke, on Education\_,

p. 6. Here \_two's\_ is put for \_two years\_; and, I think, improperly;

because the sign is such as suits the former noun, and not the plural.

Better, "And strengthened with \_a year's age or more\_." The word \_two\_

however is declinable as a noun, and possibly it may be so taken in

Locke's phrase. (4.) "This rule is often infringed, by the \_case absolute's

not being properly distinguished\_ from certain forms of expression

apparently \_similar\_ to it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 155; \_Fisk's\_, 113;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 210. Here the possessive sign, being appended to a distinct

adjective, and followed by nothing that can be called a noun, is employed

as absurdly as it well can be. Say, "This rule is often infringed by an

improper use of the nominative absolute;" for this is precisely what these

authors mean. (5.) "The participle is distinguished from the adjective by

the \_former's expressing the idea of time\_, and the \_latter's denoting only

a quality\_"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 65; \_Fisk's\_, 82; \_Ingersoll's\_, 45;

\_Emmons's\_, 64; \_Alger's\_, 28. This is liable to nearly the same

objections. Say, "The participle differs from an adjective by expressing

the idea of time, whereas the adjective denotes only a quality." (6.) "The

relatives \_that\_ and \_as\_ differ from \_who\_ and \_which\_ in the \_former's

not being immediately joined\_ to the governing word."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p.

140. This is still worse, because \_former's\_, which is like a singular

noun, has here a plural meaning; namely, "in \_the former terms' not

being\_," &c. Say--"in \_that the former never follow\_ the governing word."

OBS. 27.--The possessive termination is so far from being liable to

suppression \_by ellipsis\_, agreeably to the nonsense of those interpreters

who will have it to be "\_understood\_" wherever the case occurs without it,

that on the contrary it is sometimes retained where there is an actual

suppression of the noun to which it belongs. This appears to be the case

whenever the pronominal adjectives \_former\_ and \_latter\_ are inflected, as

above. The inflection of these, however, seems to be needless, and may well

be reckoned improper. But, in the following line, the adjective elegantly

takes the sign; because there is an ellipsis of both nouns; \_poor's\_ being

put for \_poor man's\_, and the governing noun \_joys\_ being understood after

it: "The \_rich man's joys\_ increase, the \_poor's decay\_."--\_Goldsmith\_. So,

in the following example, \_guilty's\_ is put for \_guilty person's\_:

"Yet, wise and righteous ever, scorns to hear

The fool's fond wishes, or the \_guilty's\_ prayer."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. v, l. 155.

This is a poetical license; and others of a like nature are sometimes met

with. Our poets use the possessive case much more frequently than prose

writers, and occasionally inflect words that are altogether invariable in

prose; as,

"Eager that last great chance of war he waits,

Where \_either's\_ fall determines \_both their\_ fates."

--\_Ibid.\_, B. vi, l. 13.

OBS. 28.--To avoid a concurrence of hissing sounds, the \_s\_ of the

possessive singular is sometimes omitted, and the apostrophe alone retained

to mark the case: as, "For \_conscience'\_ sake."--\_Bible\_. "\_Moses'\_

minister."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Felix'\_ room."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Achilles'\_ wrath."--\_Pope\_.

"\_Shiraz'\_ walls."--\_Collins\_. "\_Epicurus'\_ sty."--\_Beattie\_. "\_Douglas'\_

daughter."--\_Scott\_. "For \_Douglas'\_ sake."--\_Ib.\_ "To his \_mistress'\_

eyebrow."--\_Shak\_. This is a sort of poetic license, as is suggested in the

16th Observation upon the Cases of Nouns, in the Etymology. But in prose

the elision should be very sparingly indulged; it is in general less

agreeable, as well as less proper, than the regular form. Where is the

propriety of saying, \_Hicks' Sermons, Barnes' Notes, Kames' Elements,

Adams' Lectures, Josephus' Works\_, while we so uniformly say, in \_Charles's

reign, St. James's Palace\_, and the like? The following examples are right:

"At Westminster and \_Hicks's Hall\_."--\_Hudibras\_. "Lord \_Kames's\_ Elements

of Criticism."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 331. "Of \_Rubens's\_ allegorical

pictures."--\_Hazlitt\_. "With respect to \_Burns's\_ early

education."--\_Dugald Stewart\_. "\_Isocrates's\_ pomp;"--"\_Demosthenes's\_

life."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 242. "The repose of \_Epicurus's\_

gods."--\_Wilson's Heb. Gram.\_, p. 93.

"To \_Douglas's\_ obscure abode."--\_Scott, L. L.\_, C. iii, st. 28.

"Such was the \_Douglas's\_ command."--\_Id., ib.\_, C. ii, st. 36.

OBS. 29.--Some of our grammarians, drawing broad conclusions from a few

particular examples, falsely teach as follows: "When a singular noun ends

in \_ss\_, the apostrophe only is added; as, 'For \_goodness'\_ sake:' except

the word \_witness\_; as, 'The \_witness's\_ testimony.' When a noun in the

possessive case ends in \_ence\_, the \_s\_ is omitted, but the apostrophe is

retained; as, 'For \_conscience'\_ sake.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 49;

\_Hamlin's\_, 16; \_Smith's New Gram.\_, 47.[350] Of principles or inferences

very much like these, is the whole system of "\_Inductive Grammar\_"

essentially made up. But is it not plain that \_heiress's, abbess's,

peeress's, countess's\_, and many other words of the same form, are as good

English as \_witness's\_? Did not Jane West write justly, "She made an

attempt to look in at the dear \_dutchess's\_?"--\_Letters to a Lady\_, p. 95.

Does not the Bible speak correctly of "\_an ass's head\_," sold at a great

price?--\_2 Kings\_, vi, 25. Is Burns also wrong, about "\_miss's fine

lunardi\_," and "\_miss's bonnet?\_"--\_Poems\_, p. 44. Or did Scott write

inaccurately, whose guide "Led slowly through the \_pass's\_ jaws?"--\_Lady of

the Lake\_, p. 121. So much for the \_ss\_; nor is the rule for the

termination \_ence\_, or (as Smith has it) \_nce\_, more true. \_Prince's\_ and

\_dunce's\_ are as good possessives as any; and so are the following:

"That vice should triumph, virtue vice obey;

This sprung some doubt of \_Providence's\_ sway."--\_Parnell\_.

"And sweet \_Benevolence's\_ mild command."--\_Lord Lyttleton\_.

"I heard the \_lance's\_ shivering crash,

As when the whirlwind rends the ash."--\_Sir Walter Scott\_.

OBS. 30.--The most common rule now in use for the construction of the

possessive case, is a shred from the old code of Latin grammar: "One

substantive governs \_another\_, signifying a different thing, \_in\_ the

possessive or genitive case."--\_L. Murray's Rule X\_. This canon not only

leaves occasion for an additional one respecting pronouns of the possessive

case, but it is also obscure in its phraseology, and too negligent of the

various modes in which nouns may come together in English. All nouns used

adjectively, and many that are compounded together, seem to form exceptions

to it. But who can limit or enumerate these \_exceptions?\_ Different

combinations of nouns have so often little or no difference of meaning, or

of relation to each other, and so frequently is the very same vocal

expression written variously by our best scholars, and ablest

lexicographers, that in many ordinary instances it seems scarcely possible

to determine who or what is right. Thus, on the authority of Johnson, one

might write, \_a stone's cast\_, or \_stone's throw\_; but Webster has it,

\_stones-cast\_, or \_stones-throw\_; Maunder, \_stonecast, stonethrow\_;

Chalmers, \_stonescast\_; Worcester, \_stone's-cast\_. So Johnson and Chalmers

write \_stonesmickle\_, a bird; Webster has it, \_stone's-mickle\_; yet, all

three refer to Ainsworth as their authority, and his word is

\_stone-smickle\_: Littleton has it \_stone-smich\_. Johnson and Chalmers

write, \_popeseye\_ and \_sheep's eye\_; Walker, Maunder, and Worcester,

\_popeseye\_ and \_sheep's-eye\_; Scott has \_pope's-eye\_ and \_sheepseye\_;

Webster, \_pope's-eye\_ and \_sheep's-eye, bird-eye\_, and \_birds-eye.\_

Ainsworth has \_goats beard\_, for the name of a plant; Johnson, \_goatbeard\_;

Webster, \_goat-beard\_ and \_goats-beard.\_ Ainsworth has \_prince's feather\_,

for the amaranth; Johnson, Chalmers, Walker, and Maunder, write it

\_princes-feather\_; Webster and Worcester, \_princes'-feather\_; Bolles has it

\_princesfeather\_: and here they are all wrong, for the word should be

\_prince's-feather.\_ There are hundreds more of such terms; all as uncertain

in their orthography as these.

OBS. 31.--While discrepances like the foregoing abound in our best

dictionaries, none of our grammars supply any hints tending to show which

of these various forms we ought to prefer. Perhaps the following

suggestions, together with the six Rules for the Figure of Words, in Part

First, may enable the reader to decide these questions with sufficient

accuracy. (1.) Two short radical nouns are apt to unite in a permanent

compound, when the former, taking the sole accent, expresses the main

purpose or chief characteristic of the thing named by the latter; as,

\_teacup, sunbeam, daystar, horseman, sheepfold, houndfish, hourglass.\_ (2.)

Temporary compounds of a like nature may be formed with the hyphen, when

there remain two accented syllables; as, \_castle-wall, bosom-friend,

fellow-servant, horse-chestnut, goat-marjoram, marsh-marigold.\_ (3.) The

former of two nouns, if it be not plural, may be taken adjectively, in any

relation that differs from apposition and from possession; as, "The

\_silver\_ cup,"--"The \_parent\_ birds,"--"My \_pilgrim\_ feet,"--"Thy \_hermit\_

cell,"--"Two \_brother\_ sergeants." (4.) The possessive case and its

governing noun, combining to form a literal name, may be joined together

without either hyphen or apostrophe: as, \_tradesman, ratsbane, doomsday,

kinswoman, craftsmaster.\_ (5.) The possessive case and its governing noun,

combining to form a \_metaphorical\_ name, should be written with both

apostrophe and hyphen; as, \_Job's-tears, Jew's-ear, bear's-foot,

colts-tooth, sheep's-head, crane's-bill, crab's-eyes, hound's-tongue,

king's-spear, lady's-slipper, lady's-bedstraw\_, &c. (6.) The possessive

case and its governing noun, combining to form an adjective, whether

literal or metaphorical, should generally be written with both apostrophe

and hyphen; as, "\_Neats-foot\_ oil,"--"\_Calfs-foot\_ jelly,"--"A

\_carp's-tongue\_ drill,"--"A \_bird's-eye\_ view,"--"The \_states'-rights'\_

party,"--"A \_camel's-hair\_ shawl." But a triple compound noun may be formed

with one hyphen only: as, "In doomsday-book;" (--\_Joh. Dict.\_;) "An

\_armsend-lift.\_" Cardell, who will have all possessives to be adjectives,

writes an example thus: "John's camel's hair girdle."--\_Elements of Eng.

Gram.\_, p. 39. That is as if John's camel had a hair girdle! (7.) When the

possessive case and its governing noun merely help to form a regular

phrase, the compounding of them in any fashion may be reckoned improper;

thus the phrases, \_a day's work, at death's door, on New Year's Day, a new

year's gift, All Souls' Day, All Saints' Day, All Fools' Day, the saints'

bell, the heart's blood, for dog's meat\_, though often written otherwise,

may best stand as they do here.

OBS. 32.--The existence of a permanent compound of any two words, does not

necessarily preclude the use of the possessive relation between the same

words. Thus, we may speak of \_a horse's shoe\_ or \_a goat's skin\_,

notwithstanding there are such words as horseshoe and goatskin. E.g., "That

preach ye upon the \_housetops.\_"--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Matt.\_, x, 27. "Unpeg the

basket on the \_house's top.\_"--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 238. Webster defines

\_frostnail\_, (which, under the word \_cork\_, he erroneously writes \_frost

nail\_,) "A nail driven into a \_horse-shoe\_, to prevent \_the horse\_ from

slipping on ice." Worcester has it, "A nail driven into a \_horse's shoe\_,

to prevent \_his slipping on the ice.\_" Johnson, "A nail with a \_prominent

head driven\_ into the \_horse's shoes\_, that it may pierce the ice."

Maunder, "A nail with a \_sharp head driven\_ into the \_horses' shoes\_ in

frosty weather." None of these descriptions is very well written. Say

rather, "A \_spur-headed\_ nail driven into a \_horse's shoe\_ to prevent \_him

from\_ slipping." There is commonly some difference, and sometimes a very

great one, between the compound noun and the possessive relation, and also

between the radical compound and that of the possessive. Thus a \_harelip\_

is not a \_hare's lip\_, nor is a \_headman\_ a \_headsman\_, or \_heart-ease

heart's-ease.\_ So, according to the books, a \_cat-head\_, a \_cat's-head\_,

and a \_cat's head\_, are three very different things; yet what Webster

writes, \_cat-tail\_, Johnson, \_cats-tail\_, Walker and others, \_cats-tail\_,

means but the same thing, though not a \_cat's tail.\_ Johnson's

"\_kingspear, Jews-ear, lady-mantle, and lady-bedstraw\_," are no more

proper, than Webster's "\_bear's-wort, lion's foot, lady's mantle, and

lady's bed-straw.\_" All these are wrong.

OBS. 33.--Particular examples, both of proper distinction, and of blind

irregularity, under all the heads above suggested, may be quoted and

multiplied indefinitely, even from our highest literary authorities; but,

since nothing can be settled but by the force of \_principles\_, he who would

be accurate, must resort to rules,--must consider what is analogical, and,

in all doubtful cases, give this the preference. But, in grammar,

particular analogies are to be respected, as well as those which are more

general. For example, the noun \_side\_, in that relation which should seem

to require the preceding noun to be in the possessive case, is usually

compounded with it, the hyphen being used where the compound has more than

two syllables, but not with two only; as, \_bedside, hillside, roadside,

wayside, seaside, river-side, water-side, mountain-side.\_ Some instances of

the separate construction occur, but they are rare: as, "And her maidens

walked along by the \_river's side.\_"--\_Exodus\_, ii, 5. After this noun

also, the possessive preposition \_of\_ is sometimes omitted; as, "On this

\_side\_ the river;"(--\_Bible\_;) "On this \_side\_ Trent."--\_Cowell\_. Better,

"On this \_side of\_ the river," &c. "Blind Bartimeus sat by the \_highway

side\_, begging."--\_Mark\_, x, 46. Here Alger more properly writes

"\_highway-side.\_" In Rev., xiv, 20th, we have the unusual compound,

"\_horse-bridles.\_" The text ought to have been rendered, "even unto the

\_horses' bridles.\_" Latin, "usque ad frænos equorum." Greek, "[Greek: achri

ton chalinon ton hippon]."

OBS. 34.--Correlatives, as father and son, husband and wife, naturally

possess each other; hence such combinations as \_father's son\_, and \_son's

father\_, though correct enough in thought, are redundant in expression. The

whole and a part are a sort of correlatives, but the whole seems to possess

its parts, more properly than any of the parts, the whole. Yet we seldom

put the whole in the possessive case before its part, or parts, but rather

express the relation by \_of\_; as, "a quarter \_of\_ a dollar," rather than,

"a \_dollar's\_ quarter." After the noun \_half\_, we usually suppress this

preposition, if an article intervene; as, "\_half a dollar\_," rather than,

"half \_of\_ a dollar," or "a \_dollar's\_ half." So we may say, "\_half the

way\_," for "half \_of\_ the way;" but we cannot say, "\_half us\_" for "half

\_of\_ us." In the phrase, "\_a half dollar\_," the word \_half\_ is an

adjective, and a very different meaning is conveyed. Yet the compounds

\_half-pint\_ and \_half-penny\_ are sometimes used to signify, the \_quantity\_

of \_half a pint\_, the \_value\_ of \_half a penny\_. In weight, measure, or

time, the part is sometimes made possessive of the whole; as, "a \_pound's\_

weight, a \_yard's\_ length, an \_hour's\_ time." On the contrary, we do not

say, "\_weight's\_ pound, \_length's\_ yard, or \_time's\_ hour;" nor yet, "a

pound \_of\_ weight, a yard \_of\_ length;" and rarely do we say, "an hour \_of\_

time." \_Pound\_ and \_yard\_ having other uses, we sometimes say, "a pound

\_in\_ weight, a yard \_in\_ length;" though scarcely, "an hour \_in\_ time."

OBS. 35.--Between a portion of time and its correlative action, passion, or

being, the possessive relation is interchangeable; so that either term may

be the principal, and either, the adjunct: as, "\_Three years'\_ hard work,"

or, "Three years \_of hard work\_." Sometimes we may even put either term in

either form; as, "During the \_ten years'\_ war,"--"During the ten years \_of

war\_,"--"During the war \_of ten years\_,"--"During the \_war's\_ ten years."

Hence some writers, not perceiving why either word should make the other

its governed adjunct, place both upon a par, as if they were in apposition;

as, "Three \_days time\_."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol. ii, p. 156. "By a few

\_years preparation\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 341. "Of forty \_years

planting\_."--\_Wm. Penn\_. "An account, of five \_years standing\_." If these

phrases were correct, it would also be correct to say, "\_one day

time\_,"--"\_one year preparation\_,"--"\_one year planting\_,"--"\_of one year

standing\_;" but all these are manifestly bad English; and, by analogy, so

are the others.

OBS. 36.--Any noun of weight, measure, or time, put immediately before an

other, if it be not in the possessive case, will naturally be understood

\_adjectively\_; as, "No person can, by words only, give to an other an

adequate idea of a \_pound weight\_, or [a] \_foot rule\_."--\_Gregory's Dict.\_

This phraseology can, with propriety, refer only to the weight or the rule

with which we weigh or measure; it cannot signify \_a pound in weight\_, or

\_a foot in length\_, though it is very probable that the author intended the

latter. When the noun \_times\_ is used before an other noun by way of

multiplication, there may be supposed an ellipsis of the preposition \_of\_

between the two, just as when we divide by the word \_half\_; as, "An hour is

sixty \_times the length\_ of a minute."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 48. "Thirty

seconds are \_half the length\_ of a minute." That is,--"half \_of\_ the

length,"--"sixty times \_of\_ the length."

NOTES TO RULE IV.

NOTE I.--In the syntax of the possessive case, its appropriate form,

singular or plural, should be observed, agreeably to the sense and

declension of the word. Thus, write \_John's, men's, hers, its, ours, yours,

theirs\_; and not, \_Johns, mens', her's, it's, our's, your's, their's\_.

NOTE II.--When nouns of the possessive case are connected by conjunctions

or put in apposition, the sign of possession must always be annexed to

such, and such only, as immediately precede the governing noun, expressed

or understood; as, "\_John\_ and \_Eliza's\_ teacher is a man of more learning

than \_James's\_ or \_Andrew's\_"--"For \_David\_ my \_servant's\_ sake."--\_Bible\_.

"For my sake and the \_gospel's\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Lost in \_love's\_ and

\_friendship's\_ smile."--\_Scott\_.

NOTE III.--The relation of property may also be expressed by the

preposition \_of\_ and the objective; as, "\_The will of man\_," for "\_man's

will\_." Of these forms, we should adopt that which will render the sentence

the most perspicuous and agreeable; and, by the use of both, avoid an

unpleasant repetition of either.

NOTE IV.--A noun governing the possessive plural, should not, by a forced

agreement, be made plural, when its own sense does not require it; as, "For

\_our parts\_,"--"Were I in \_your places\_:" for we may with propriety say,

"\_Our part, your place\_, or \_your condition\_;" as well as, "\_Our desire,

your intention, their resignation\_."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 169. A noun

taken figuratively may also be singular, when the literal meaning would

require the plural: such expressions as, "\_their face\_,"--"\_their

neck\_,"--"\_their hand\_,"--"\_their head\_,"--"\_their heart\_,"--"\_our

mouth\_,"--"\_our life\_,"--are frequent in the Scriptures, and not improper.

NOTE V.--The possessive case should not be needlessly used before a

participle that is not taken in other respects as a noun. The following

phrase is therefore wrong: "Adopted by the Goths in \_their\_ pronouncing the

Greek."--\_Walker's Key\_, p. 17. Expunge \_their\_. Again: "Here we speak of

\_their\_ becoming both in form and signification passive."--\_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, p. 226. Say rather, "Here we speak of \_them as becoming passive\_,

both in form and signification."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION. FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE IV.

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--THE POSSESSIVE FORM.

"Mans chief good is an upright mind." See \_Brown's Institutes of E. Gram.\_,

p. 179.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the noun \_mans\_, which is intended for the

possessive singular of \_man\_, has \_not\_ the appropriate form of that case

and number. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 4th, "In the syntax ef

the possessive case, its appropriate form, singular or plural, should be

observed, agreeably to the sense and declension of the word." Therefore,

\_mans\_ should be maris, with the apostrophe before the \_s\_; thus, "\_Man's\_

chief good is an upright mind."]

"The translator of Mallets History has the following note,"--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 263. "The act, while it gave five years full pay to the

officers, allowed but one year's pay to the privates."--\_Ib.\_, p. 184. "For

the study of English is preceded by several years attention to Latin and

Greek."--\_Ib.\_, p. 7. "The first, the Court Baron, is the freeholders or

freemens court."--\_Coke, Litt.\_, p. 74. "I affirm, that Vaugelas'

definition labours under an essential defect."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 163.

"I affirm, that Vangelas's definition labours under an essential

defect."--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, Fourth Amer. Ed., Vol. ii, p. 360.[351]

"There is a chorus in Aristophane's plays."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 480. "It

denotes the same perception in my mind as in their's."--\_Duncan's Logic\_,

p. 65. "This afterwards enabled him to read Hicke's Saxon Grammar."--\_Life

of Dr. Murray\_, p. 76. "I will not do it for tens sake."--\_Dr. Ash's

Gram.\_, p. 56. "I arose, and asked if those charming infants were

her's."--\_Werter\_, p. 21. "They divide their time between milliners shops

and taverns."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol. i, p. 65. "The angels adoring of

Adam is also mentioned in the Talmud."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p. 6. "Quarrels

arose from the winners insulting of those who lost."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. "The

vacancy, occasioned by Mr. Adams' resignation."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. i,

p. vii. "Read for instance Junius' address, commonly called his letter to

the king."--\_Ib.\_, i, 225. "A perpetual struggle against the tide of

Hortensius' influence."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 23. "Which, for distinction sake, I

shall put down severally."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 302. "The fifth case

is in a clause signifying the matter of ones fear."--\_Ib.\_, p. 312. "And

they took counsel, and bought with them the potters' field."--ALGER'S

BIBLE: \_Matt.\_, xxvii, 7. "Arise for thy servant's help, and redeem them

for thy mercy's sake."--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 265. "Shall not their cattle,

and their substance, and every beast of their's be ours?"--SCOTT'S BIBLE:

\_Gen.\_, xxxiv, 23. "And every beast of their's, be our's?"--FRIENDS' BIBLE:

\_ib.\_ "It's regular plural, \_bullaces\_, is used by Bacon."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 213. "Mordecai walked every day before the court of the womens

house."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: \_Esther\_, ii, 11. "Behold, they that wear soft

clothing are in king's houses."--IB. and FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Matt.\_, xi, 8:

also \_Webster's Imp. Gram.\_, p. 173. "Then Jethro, Moses' father-in-law,

took Zipporah, Moses' wife, and her two sons; and Jethro, Moses'

father-in-law, came, with his sons and his wife, unto Moses."--ALGER'S

BIBLE, and THE FRIENDS': \_Exod.\_, xviii, 2--6. "King James' translators

merely revised former translations."--\_Rev. B. Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 137.

"May they be like corn on houses tops."--\_White, on the English Verb.\_, p.

160.

"And for his Maker's image sake exempt."

--\_Par. Lost\_, B. xi, l. 514.

"By all the fame acquir'd in ten years war."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. i, l. 674.

"Nor glad vile poets with true critics gore."

--\_Pope's Dunicad\_, [sic--KTH] p. 175.

"Man only of a softer mold is made,

Not for his fellow's ruin, but their aid."

--\_Dryden's Poems\_, p. 92.

UNDER NOTE II.--POSSESSIVES CONNECTED.

"It was necessary to have both the physician, and the surgeon's

advice."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_, p. 140. "This out-side

fashionableness of the Taylor on Tire-woman's making."--\_Locke, on

Education\_, p. 49. "Some pretending to be of Paul's party, others of

Apollos, others of Cephas, and others, pretending yet higher, to be of

Christ's."--\_Woods Dict., w. Apollos\_. "Nor is it less certain that

Spenser's and Milton's spelling agrees better with our pronunciation."--

\_Philol. Museum\_, i, 661. "Law's, Edwards', and Watts' surveys of the

Divine Dispensations."--\_Burgh's Dignity\_, Vol. i, p. 193. "And who was

Enoch's Saviour, and the Prophets?"--\_Bayly's Works\_, p. 600. "Without any

impediment but his own, or his parents or guardians will."--\_Literary

Convention\_, p. 145. "James relieves neither the boy[352] nor the girl's

distress."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 116. "John regards neither the master nor

the pupil's advantage."--\_Ib.\_, p. 117. "You reward neither the man nor the

woman's labours."--\_Ib.\_ "She examines neither James nor John's conduct."--

\_Ib.\_ "Thou pitiest neither the servant nor the master's injuries."--\_Ib.\_

"We promote England or Ireland's happiness."--\_Ib.\_ "Were Cain and Abel's

occupation the same?"--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 179. "Were Cain's and Abel's

occupations the same?"--\_Ib.\_ "What was Simon's and Andrew's employment?"--

\_Author\_. "Till he can read himself Sanctii Minerva with Scioppius and

Perizonius's Notes."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 295.

"And love's and friendship's finely--pointed dart

Falls blunted from each indurated heart."--\_Goldsmith\_.

UNDER NOTE III.--CHOICE OF FORMS.

"But some degree of trouble is all men's portion."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 218;

\_Merchant's\_, 197. "With his father's and mother's names upon the blank

leaf."--\_Corner-Stone\_, p. 144. "The general, in the army's name, published

a declaration."--HUME: in \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 69. "The Commons'

vote."--\_Id, ib.\_ "The Lords' house."--\_Id., ib.\_ "A collection of writers

faults."--SWIFT: \_ib.\_, p. 68. "After ten years wars."--\_Id., ib.\_

"Professing his detestation of such practices as his predecessors."--\_Notes

to the Dunciad\_. "By that time I shall have ended my years

office."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 104. "For Herodias' sake, his brother

Philip's wife."--\_Mark\_, vi, 17. "For Herodias's sake, his brother Philip's

wife."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 194. "I endure all things for the elect's sakes,

that they may also obtain salvation."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_2 Tim.\_, ii, 10.

"For the elects' sakes."--SCOTT'S BIBLE. "For the elect's sake."--ALGER'S

BIBLE, and BRUCE'S. "He was Louis the Sixteenth's son's heir."--\_W. Allen's

Exercises, Gram.\_, p. 329. "The throne we honour is the choice of the

people."--"An account of the proceedings of the court of Alexander."--"An

excellent tutor of a person of fashion's child!"--\_Gil Bias\_, Vol. 1, p.

20. "It is curious enough, that this sentence of the Bishop is, itself,

ungrammatical!"--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 201. "The troops broke into

Leopold the emperor's palace."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 59. "The meeting was

called by Eldon the judge's desire."--\_Ibid.\_ "Peter's, John's, and

Andrew's occupation was that of fishermen."--\_Brace's Gram.\_, p. 79. "The

venerable president of the Royal Academy's debility has lately

increased."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 12.

UNDER NOTE IV.--NOUNS WITH POSSESSIVES PLURAL.

"God hath not given us our reasons to no purpose."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol.

i, p. 496. "For our sakes, no doubt, this is written."--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 10.

"Are not health and strength of body desirable for their own

sakes?"--\_Hermes\_, p. 296; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 289. "Some sailors who were

boiling their dinners upon the shore."--\_Day's Sandford and Merton\_, p. 99.

"And they in their turns were subdued by others."--\_Pinnock's Geography\_,

p. 12. "Industry on our parts is not superseded by God's

grace."--\_Arrowsmith\_. "Their Healths perhaps may be pretty well

secur'd."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 51. "Though he was rich, yet for our

sakes he became poor."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 211. "It were to be wished,

his correctors had been as wise on their parbs."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 60.

"The Arabs are commended by the ancients for being most exact to their

words, and respectful to their kindred."--\_Sale's Koran\_. "That is, as a

reward of some exertion on our parts."--\_Gurney's Evidences\_, p. 86. "So

that it went ill with Moses for their sakes."--\_Psalms\_, cvi, 32. "All

liars shall have their parts in the burning lake."--\_Watts\_, p. 33. "For

our own sakes as well as for thine."--\_Pref. to Waller's Poems\_, p. 3. "By

discover- ing their abilities to detect and amend errors."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, Vol. 11, p. iv.

"This world I do renounce; and, in your sights, Shake patiently my great

affliction off."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 286 "If your relenting angers

yield to treat, Pompey and thou, in safety, here may meet."--\_Rowe's

Lucan\_, B. iii, l. 500.

UNDER NOTE Y.--POSSESSIVES WITH PARTICIPLES.

"This will encourage him to proceed without his acquiring the

prejudice."--\_Smith's Gram.\_, p. 5. "And the notice which they give of an

action's being completed or not completed."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 72;

\_Alger's\_, 30. "Some obstacle or impediment that prevents its taking

place."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 38; \_Alex. Murray's\_, 37. "They have

apostolical authority for their so frequently urging the seeking of the

Spirit."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. xii, p. 54. "Here then is a wide field for

reason's exerting its powers in relation to the objects of taste."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 18. "Now this they derive altogether from their having

a greater capacity of imitation and description."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51. "This is

one clear reason of their paying a greater attention to that construction."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "The dialogue part had also a modulation of its own, which

was capable of its being set to notes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 471. "What is the reason

of our being often so frigid and unpersuasive in public discourse?"--\_Ib.\_,

p. 334. "Which is only a preparation for his leading his forces directly

upon us."--\_Ib.\_, p. 264. "The nonsense about \_which's\_ relating to things

only, and having no declension, needs no refutation."--\_Fowle's True E.

Gram.\_, p. 18. "Who, upon his breaking it open, found nothing but the

following inscription."--\_Rollin\_, Vol. ii, p. 33. "A prince will quickly

have reason to repent his having exalted one person so high."--\_Id.\_, ii,

116. "Notwithstanding it's being the immediate subject of his discourse."--

\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 294. "With our definition of its being synonymous

with time."--\_Booth's Introd.\_, p. 29. "It will considerably increase the

danger of our being deceived."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 293. "His beauties

can never be mentioned without their suggesting his blemishes also."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 442. "No example has ever been adduced of a man's

conscientiously approving of an action, because of its badness."--\_Gurney's

Evidences\_, p. 90. "The last episode of the angel's shewing Adam the fate

of his posterity, is happily imagined."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 452. "And the

news came to my son, of his and the bride being in Dublin."--\_Castle

Rackrent\_, p. 44. "There is no room for the mind's exerting any great

effort."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 32. "One would imagine, that these criticks

never so much as heard of Homer's having written first."--\_Pope's Preface

to Homer\_. "Condemn the book, for its not being a geography."--\_O. B.

Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 317. "There will be in many words a transition from

their being the figurative to their being the proper signs of certain

ideas."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 322. "The doctrine of the Pope's being the

only source of ecclesiastical power."--\_Religious World\_, ii, 290. "This

has been the more expedient from the work's being designed for the benefit

of private learners."--\_Murray's Exercises, Introd.\_, p. v. "This was

occasioned by the Grammar's having been \_set up\_, and not admitting of

enlargement."--\_Ib., Advertisement\_, p. ix.

RULE V.--OBJECTIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun made the object of an active-transitive verb or

participle, is governed by it in the objective case: as, "I found \_her\_

assisting \_him\_"--"Having finished the \_work\_, I submit \_it\_."

"Preventing \_fame\_, misfortune lends him \_wings\_,

And Pompey's self his own sad \_story\_ brings."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. viii, l. 66.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE V.

OBS. 1.--To this rule there are no exceptions; but to the old one adopted

by Murray and others, "Active verbs govern the objective case," there are

more than any writer will ever think it worth his while to enumerate. In

point of brevity, the latter has the advantage, but in nothing else; for,

as a general rule for NOUNS AND PRONOUNS, this old brief assertion is very

defective; and, as a rule for "THE SYNTAX OF VERBS," under which head it

has been oftener ranked, it is entirely useless and inapplicable. As there

are four different constructions to which the nominative case is liable, so

there are four in which the objective may be found; and two of these are

common to both; namely, \_apposition\_, and \_sameness of\_ case. Every

objective is governed by some \_verb\_ or \_participle\_, according to Rule

5th, or by some \_preposition\_, according to Rule 7th; except such as are

put in \_apposition\_ with others, according to Rule 3d, or after an

infinitive or a participle \_not transitive\_, according to Rule 6th: as,

"Mistaking \_one\_ for the \_other\_, they took \_him\_, a sturdy \_fellow\_,

called \_Red Billy\_, to be \_me\_." Here is every construction which the

objective case can have; except, perhaps, that in which, as an expression

of time, place, measure, or manner, it is taken after the fashion of an

\_adverb\_, the governing preposition being suppressed, or, as some say, no

governing word being needed. Of this exception, the following quotations

may serve for examples: "It holds on by a single button round my neck,

\_cloak-fashion\_"--EDGEWORTH'S \_Castle Rackrent\_. p. 17. A man quite at

leisure to parse all his words, would have said, "\_in the fashion of a

cloak\_." Again: "He does not care the \_rind of a lemon\_ for her all the

while."--\_Ib.\_, p. 108. "We turn our eyes \_this way or that

way\_."--\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 172; \_Frazee's Gram.\_, 157. Among his

instances of "\_the objective case restrictive\_," or of the noun "used in

the objective, without a governing word," Dr. Bullions gives this: "Let us

go \_home\_" But, according to the better opinion of Worcester, \_home\_ is

here an \_adverb\_, and not a noun. See Obs. 6th on Rule 7th.

OBS. 2.--The objective case \_generally follows\_ the governing word: as,

"And Joseph knew his \_brethren\_, but they knew not him"--\_Gen.\_, xlii, 8.

But when it is emphatic, it often precedes the nominative; as, "\_Me\_ he

restored to mine office, and \_him\_ he hanged."--\_Gen.\_, xli, 13. "\_John\_

have I beheaded."--\_Luke\_, ix, 9. "But \_me\_ ye have not always."--\_Matt.\_,

xxvi, 11. "\_Him\_ walking on a sunny hill he found."--\_Milton\_. In poetry,

the objective is sometimes placed between the nominative and the verb; as,

"His daring foe securely \_him\_ defied."--\_Milton\_.

"Much he the \_place\_ admired, the person more."--\_Id.\_

"The broom its yellow \_leaf\_ shed."--\_Langhorne\_.

If the nominative be a pronoun which cannot be mistaken for an objective,

the words may possibly change places; as, "\_Silver\_ and \_gold\_ have I

none."--\_Acts\_, iii, 6. "Created \_thing\_ nought valued \_he\_ nor

shunn'd."--\_Milton\_, B. ii, l. 679. But such a transposition of \_two nouns\_

can scarcely fail to render the meaning doubtful or obscure; as,

"This \_pow'r\_ has praise, that virtue scarce can warm,

Till fame supplies the universal charm."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

A relative or an interrogative pronoun is commonly placed at the head of

its clause, and of course it precedes the verb which governs it; as, "I am

Jesus, \_whom\_ thou persecutest."--\_Acts\_, ix, 5. "\_Which\_ of the prophets

have not your fathers persecuted?"--\_Ib.\_, vii, 52.

"Before their Clauses plac'd, by settled use,

The Relatives these Clauses introduce."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 86.

OBS. 3.--Every active-transitive verb or participle has some \_noun\_ or

\_pronoun\_ for its object, or some \_pronominal adjective\_ which assumes the

relation of the objective case. Though verbs are often followed by the

infinitive mood, or a dependent clause, forming a part of the logical

predicate; yet these terms, being commonly introduced by a connecting

particle, do not form \_such an object\_ as is contemplated in our definition

of a transitive verb. Its government of the \_objective\_, is the only proper

criterion of this sort of verb. If, in the sentence, "Boys \_love\_ to play,"

the former verb is transitive, as several respectable grammarians affirm;

why not also in a thousand others; as, "Boys \_like\_ to play;"--"Boys

\_delight\_ to play;"--"Boys \_long\_ to play;"--"The boys \_seem\_ to

play;"--"The boys \_cease\_ to play;"--"The boys \_ought\_ to play;"--"The boys

\_go out\_ to play;"--"The boys \_are gone out\_ to play;"--"The boys \_are

allowed\_ to play;" and the like? The construction in all is precisely the

same, and the infinitive may follow one kind of verb just as well as an

other. How then can the mere addition of this mood make \_any\_ verb

transitive? or where, on such a principle, can the line of distinction for

transitive verbs be drawn? The infinitive, \_in fact\_, is governed by the

preposition \_to\_; and the preceding verb, if it has no other object, is

intransitive. It must, however, be confessed that some verbs which thus

take the infinitive after them, cannot otherwise be intransitive; as, "A

great mind \_disdains to hold\_ any thing by courtesy."--\_Johnson's Life of

Swift\_. "They \_require to be distinguished\_ by a comma."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 272.

OBS. 4.--A transitive verb, as I have elsewhere shown, may both govern the

objective case, and be followed by an infinitive also; as, "\_What\_ have I

\_to do\_ with thee?"--\_John\_, ii, 4. This question, as one would naturally

take it, implies, "I have \_nothing to do\_ with thee;" and, by analogy,

\_what\_ is governed by \_have\_, and not by \_do\_; so that the latter verb,

though not commonly intransitive, appears to be so here. Indeed the

infinitive mood is often used without an objective, when every other part

of the same verb would require one. Maunder's rule is, "Transitive verbs

and participles govern \_either\_ the objective case \_or\_ the infinitive

\_mode\_."--\_Comprehensive Gram.\_, p. 14. Murray teaches, not only that, "The

\_infinitive mood\_ does the office of a substantive in the objective case;

as, 'Boys love \_to play\_;'" but that, "The \_participle\_ with its adjuncts,

may be considered as a substantive phrase \_in the objective case\_, governed

by the preposition or verb; as, 'He studied to avoid \_expressing himself

too severely\_.'"--See his \_Octavo Gram.\_, pp. 184 and 194. And again:

"\_Part of a sentence\_, as well as a noun or pronoun, may be said to be \_in

the objective case\_, or to be put objectively, \_governed\_ by the active

verb; as, 'We sometimes see \_virtue in distress\_, but we should consider

\_how great will be her ultimate reward\_.' Sentences or phrases under this

circumstance, may be termed \_objective sentences\_ or \_phrases\_."--\_Ib.\_, p.

180.

OBS. 5.--If we admit that sentences, parts of sentences, infinitives,

participles with their adjuncts, and other phrases, as well as nouns and

pronouns, may be \_"in the objective case;"\_ it will be no easy matter,

either to define this case, or to determine what words do, or do not,

govern it.[353] The construction of infinitives and participles will be

noticed hereafter. But on one of Murray's examples, I would here observe,

that the direct use of the infinitive for an objective noun is a manifest

\_Grecism\_; as, "For to will is present with me; but \_to perform\_ that which

is good, I find not."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 184. That is, "\_the performance

of\_ that which is good, I find not." Or perhaps we may supply a noun after

the verb, and take this text to mean, "But to perform that which is good,

I find not \_the ability\_." Our Bible has it, "But \_how\_ to perform that

which is good. I find not;" as if \_the manner\_ in which he might do good,

was what the apostle found not: but Murray cites it differently, omitting

the word \_how\_, as we see above. All active verbs to which something is

subjoined by \_when, where, whence, how\_, or \_why\_, must be accounted

intransitive, unless we suppose them to govern such nouns of time, place,

degree, manner, or cause, as correspond to these connectives; as, "I \_know

why\_ she blushed." Here we might supply the noun \_reason\_, as, "I know the

\_reason why\_ she blushed;" but the word is needless, and I should rather

parse \_know\_ as being intransitive. As for "\_virtue in distress\_," if this

is an "\_objective phrase\_," and not to be analyzed, we have millions of the

same sort; but, if one should say, "\_Virtue in distress\_ excites pity," the

same phrase would demonstrate the absurdity of Murray's doctrine, because

the two nouns here take \_two different cases\_.

OBS. 6.--The word \_that\_, which is often employed to introduce a dependent

clause, is, by some grammarians, considered as a \_pronoun\_, representing

the clause which follows it; as, "I know \_that\_ Messias cometh."--\_John\_,

iv, 25. This text they would explain to mean, "\_Messias cometh\_, I know

\_that\_;" and their opinion seems to be warranted both by the origin and by

the usual import of the particle. But, in conformity to general custom, and

to his own views of the practical purposes of grammatical analysis, the

author has ranked it with the conjunctions. And he thinks it better, to

call those verbs intransitive, which are followed by \_that\_ and a dependent

clause, than to supply the very frequent ellipses which the other

explanation supposes. To explain it as a conjunction, connecting an

active-transitive verb and its object, as several respectable grammarians

do, appears to involve some inconsistency. If \_that\_ is a conjunction, it

connects what precedes and what follows; but a transitive verb should

exercise a direct government, without the intervention of a conjunction. On

the other hand, the word \_that\_ has not, in any such sentence, the

inherent nature of a pronoun. The transposition above, makes it only a

\_pronominal adjective\_; as, "Messias cometh, I know \_that fact\_." And in

many instances such a solution is impracticable; as, "The people sought

him, and came unto him, and stayed him, \_that\_ he should not depart from

them."--\_Luke\_, iv, 42. Here, to prove \_that\_ to be a pronoun, the

disciples of Tooke and Webster must resort to more than one imaginary

ellipsis, and to such inversion as will scarcely leave the sense in sight.

OBS. 7.--In some instances the action of a transitive verb gives to its

direct object an additional name, which is also in the objective case, the

two words being in apposition; as, "Thy saints proclaim \_thee

king\_."--\_Cowper\_. "And God called the \_firmament Heaven\_."--\_Bible\_.

"Ordering them to make \_themselves masters\_ of a certain steep

eminence."--\_Rollin\_, ii, 67. And, in such a construction, the direct

object is sometimes placed before the verb; though the name which results

from the action, cannot be so placed: as, "And \_Simon\_ he surnamed

\_Peter\_."--\_Mark\_, iii, 15. "\_Him\_ that overcometh will I make a \_pillar\_

in the temple of my God."--\_Rev.\_, iii, 12. Some grammarians seem not to

have considered this phraseology as coming within the rule of apposition.

Thus Webster: "We have some verbs which govern two words in the objective

case; as,

'Did I request thee, maker, from my clay

To mold \_me man\_?'--\_Milton\_, 10, 744.

'God seems to have made \_him what\_ he was.'--\_Life of

Cowper\_."[354]--\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 170. \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 120.

See also \_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 154; "Abridged Ed.," p. 119; and

\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §450. So Murray: "Some of our verbs \_appear to govern

two words\_ in the objective case; as, 'The Author of my being formed \_me

man\_.'--'They desired me to call \_them brethren\_.'--'He seems to have made

\_him what\_ he was.' "--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 183. Yet this latter writer says,

that in the sentence, "They appointed \_me executor\_," and others like it,"

the verb \_to be\_ is \_understood\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 182. These then, according to

his own showing, are instances of apposition; but I pronounce then such,

without either confounding same cases with apposition, or making the latter

a species of ellipsis. See Obs. 1st and 2d, under Rule 3d.

OBS. 8.--In

general, if not always, when a verb is followed by two objectives which are

neither in apposition nor connected by a conjunction, one of them is

governed by a preposition understood; as, "I paid [to] \_him\_ the

\_money\_"--"They offered [to] \_me\_ a \_seat\_"--"He asked [of] \_them\_ the

\_question\_"--"I yielded, and unlock'd [to] \_her\_ all my

\_heart\_."--\_Milton\_. In expressing such sentences passively, the object of

the preposition is sometimes erroneously assumed for the nominative; as,

"\_He\_ was paid \_the money\_," in stead of, "The \_money\_ was paid [to]

\_him\_."--"\_I\_ was offered \_a seat\_," in stead of, "\_A seat\_ was offered

[to] \_me\_." This kind of error is censured by Murray more than once, and

yet he himself has, in very many instances, fallen into it. His first

criticism on it, is in the following words: "We sometimes meet with such

expressions as these: 'They were asked a question;' 'They were offered a

pardon;' 'He hath been left a great estate by his father.' In these

\_phrases\_, verbs passive are made to govern the objective case. This

license \_is not to be approved\_. The expressions should be: 'A question was

put to them;' 'A pardon was offered to them;' 'His father left him a great

estate.'"--\_L. Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, p. 183. See Obs. 12, below.

OBS. 9.--In the Latin syntax, verbs of \_asking\_ and \_teaching\_ are said to

govern two accusatives; as, "\_Posce Deum veniam\_, Beg pardon of

God."--\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 207. "\_Docuit me grammaticam\_, He taught

me grammar."--\_Grant, Adam, and others\_. And again: "When a verb in the

active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case;

as, \_Doceor grammaticam\_, I am taught grammar."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 177.

These writers however suggest, that in reality the \_latter\_ accusative is

governed, not by the verb, but by a preposition understood. "'\_Poscere deos

veniam\_ is 'to ask the gods \_for\_ pardon.'"--\_Barnes's Philological Gram.\_,

p. 116. In general the English idiom \_does not coincide\_ with what occurs

in Latin under these rules. We commonly insert a preposition to govern one

or the other of the terms. But we sometimes leave to the verb the objective

of the person, and sometimes that of the thing; and after the two verbs

\_ask\_ and \_teach\_, we sometimes \_seem\_ to leave both: as, "When thou dost

\_ask me blessing\_, I'll kneel down, and \_ask of thee forgiveness\_."--

\_Shakspeare\_. "In long journeys, \_ask\_ your \_master leave\_ to give ale to

the horses."--\_Swift\_. "And he \_asked them of\_ their \_welfare\_."--\_Gen.\_,

xliii, 27. "They \_asked of him\_ the parable."--\_Mark\_, iv, 10.

("\_Interrogârunt eum de parabolâ\_."--\_Beza\_.) "And asking \_them

questions\_"--\_Luke\_, ii, 46. "But \_teach them\_ thy \_sons\_."--\_Deut.\_, iv,

9. "\_Teach them\_ diligently \_unto\_ thy \_children\_"--\_Ib.\_, vi, 7. '"Ye

shall \_teach them\_ your \_children\_."--\_Ib.\_, xi, 19. "Shall any \_teach God

knowledge\_?"--\_Job\_, xxi, 22. "I will \_teach you\_ the \_fear\_ of the

Lord."--\_Psal\_, xxxiv, 11. "He will \_teach us of\_ his ways."--\_Isaiah\_, ii,

3; \_Micah\_, iv, 2. "Let him that \_is taught in\_ the \_word\_,

communicate."--\_Gal.\_, vi, 6.

OBS. 10.--After a careful review of the various instances in which more

than one noun or pronoun may possibly be supposed to be under the

government of a single active verb in English, I incline to the opinion

that none of our verbs ought to be parsed as actually governing two cases,

except such as are followed by two objectives connected by a conjunction.

Consequently I do not admit, that any passive verb can properly govern an

objective noun or pronoun. Of the ancient Saxon dative case, and of what

was once considered the government of two cases, there yet appear some

evident remains in our language; as, "Give \_him bread\_ to eat."--"Bread

shall be given \_him\_"--\_Bible\_. But here, by almost universal consent, the

indirect object is referred to the government of a "preposition

understood;" and in many instances this sort of ellipsis is certainly no

elegance: as, "Give [\_to\_] truth and virtue the \_same arms which\_ you give

[\_to\_] vice and falsehood, and the former are likely to prevail."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 235. The questionable expression, "\_Ask me blessing\_," if

interpreted analogically, must mean, "Ask \_for\_ me \_a\_ blessing," which is

more correct and explicit; or, if \_me\_ be not supposed a dative, (and it

does not appear to be so, above,) the sentence is still wrong, and the

correction must be, "Ask \_of\_ me \_a\_ blessing," or, "Ask \_my\_ blessing."

So, "Ask your \_master leave\_," ought rather to be, "Ask \_of\_ your master

leave," "Ask your master \_for\_ leave," or, "Ask your \_master's\_ leave." The

example from Mark ought to be, "They asked \_him about\_ the parable." Again,

the elliptical sentence, "Teach them thy sons," is less perspicuous, and

therefore less accurate, than the full expression, "Teach them \_to\_ thy

sons." \_To teach\_ is to tell things \_to\_ persons, or to instruct persons

\_in\_ things; \_to ask\_ is to request or demand things \_of\_ or \_from\_

persons, or to interrogate or solicit persons \_about\_ or \_for\_ things.

These verbs cannot be proved to govern two cases in English, because it is

more analogical and more reasonable to supply a preposition, (if the author

omits it,) to govern one or the other of the objects.

OBS. 11.--Some writers erroneously allow passive verbs to govern the

objective in English, not only where they imagine our idiom to coincide

with the Latin, but even where they know that it does not. Thus Dr.

Crombie: "Whatever is put in the accusative case after the verb, must be

the nominative to it in the passive voice, while the other case is retained

under the government of the verb, and cannot become its nominative. Thus,

'I persuade you \_to\_ this or \_of\_ this, '\_Persuadeo hoc tibi\_. Here, the

person persuaded is expressed in the dative case, and cannot, therefore, be

the nominative to the passive verb. We must, therefore, say, \_Hoc tibi

persuadetur\_, 'You are persuaded \_of\_ this;' not, \_Tu persuaderis\_. 'He

trusted me \_with\_ this affair,' or 'He believed me \_in\_ this,' \_Hoc mihi

credidit\_.--Passively, \_Hoc mihi creditum est\_. 'I told you this,' \_Hoc

tibi dixi\_. 'YOU WERE TOLD THIS,' \_Hoc tibi dictum est\_; not, \_Tu dictus

es\_." [No, surely: for, '\_Tu dictus es\_,' means, 'You were called,' or,

'Thou art reputed;'--and, if followed by any case, it must be the

\_nominative\_.'] "It is the more necessary to attend to this rule, and to

these distinctions, as the idioms of the two languages do not always

concur. Thus, \_Hoc tibi dictum est\_, means not only 'This was told \_to\_

you,' but 'YOU WERE TOLD THIS.' \_Liber mihi apatre promissus est\_, means

both 'A book was promised (\_to\_) me by my father,' and 'I WAS PROMISED A

BOOK.' \_Is primum rogatua est sententiam\_, 'He was first asked \_for\_ his

opinion,' and 'An opinion was first asked \_of\_ him;' in which last the

accusative of the person becomes, in Latin, the nominative in the passive

voice." See \_Grants Latin Gram.\_, p. 210.

OBS. 12.--Murray's \_second\_ censure upon passive government, is this: "The

following sentences, which give [to] the passive voice the regimen of an

active verb, \_are very irregular, and by no means to be imitated\_. 'The

bishops and abbots \_were allowed their seats\_ in the house of lords.'

'Thrasea \_was forbidden the presence\_ of the emperor.' 'He \_was shown\_ that

very \_story\_ in one of his own books.'[355] These sentences should have

been: 'The bishops and abbots were allowed \_to have\_ (or \_to take\_) their

seats in the house of lords;' or, 'Seats in the house of lords were allowed

\_to\_ the bishops and abbots:' 'Thrasea was forbidden \_to approach\_ the

presence of the emperor;' or, 'The presence of the emperor was forbidden

\_to\_ Thrasea:' 'That very story was shown \_to\_ him in one of his own

books.'"--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 223. See Obs. 8, above. One late grammarian,

whose style is on the whole highly commendable for its purity and accuracy,

forbears to condemn the phraseology here spoken of; and, though he does not

expressly defend and justify it, he seems disposed to let it pass, with the

license of the following canon. "For convenience, it may be well to state

it as a rule, that--\_Passive verbs govern an objective, when the nominative

to the passive verb is not the proper object of the active

voice\_."--\_Barnard's Analytic Gram.\_, p. 134. An other asserts the

government of two cases by very many of our active verbs, and the

government of one by almost any passive verb, according to the following

rules: "Verbs of teaching, giving, and some others of a similar nature,

govern two objectives, the one of a person and the other of a thing; as, He

taught \_me grammar\_: His tutor gave \_him a lesson\_: He promised \_me a

reward\_. A passive verb may govern an objective, when the words immediately

preceding and following it, do not refer to the same thing; as, Henry \_was

offered a dollar\_ by his father to induce him to remain."--\_J. M. Putnam's

Gram.\_, pp. 110 and 112.

OBS. 13.--The common dogmas, that an active verb must govern an object, and

that a neuter or intransitive verb must not, amount to nothing as

directions to the composer; because the classification of verbs depends

upon this very matter, whether they have, or have not, an object after

them; and no general principle has been, or can be, furnished beforehand,

by which their fitness or unfitness for taking such government can be

determined. This must depend upon usage, and usage must conform to the

sense intended. Very many verbs--probably a vast majority--govern an object

sometimes, but not always: many that are commonly intransitive or neuter,

are not in all their uses so; and many that are commonly transitive, have

sometimes no apparent regimen. The distinction, then, in our dictionaries,

of verbs active and neuter, or transitive and intransitive, serves scarcely

any other purpose, than to show how the presence or absence of the

objective case, affects the meaning of the word. In some instances the

signification of the verb seems almost merged in that of its object; \_as,

to lay hold, to make use, to take care\_. In others, the transitive

character of the word is partial; as, "He \_paid\_ my \_board\_; I \_told you

so\_." Some verbs will govern any objective whatever; as, \_to name, to

mention\_. What is there that \_cannot be named or mentioned?\_ Others again

are restricted to one noun, or to a few; as, \_to transgress a law, or

rule\_. What can be transgressed, but a law, a limit, or \_something\_

equivalent? Some verbs will govern a kindred noun, or its pronoun, but

scarcely any other; as, "He \_lived\_ a virtuous \_life\_."--"Hear, I pray you,

this \_dream which I have dreamed\_"--\_Gen.\_, xxxvii, 6. "I will also command

the clouds that they \_rain\_ no \_rain\_ upon it."--\_Isaiah\_, v, 6.

OBS. 14.--Our grammarians, when they come to determine what verbs are

properly transitive, and what are not so, do not in all instances agree in

opinion. In short, plain as they think the matter, they are much at odds.

Many of them say, that, "In the phrases, 'To dream a dream,' 'To live a

virtuous life,' 'To run a race,' 'To walk a horse,' 'To dance a child,' the

verbs assume a transitive character, and in these cases may be denominated

active."--See \_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 21; \_Murray's\_, 180; \_Ingersoll's\_, 183;

\_Fisk's\_, 123; \_Smith's\_, 153. This decision is undoubtedly just; yet a

late writer has taken a deal of pains to find fault with it, and to

persuade his readers, that, "No verb is active in \_any sense\_, or under

\_any construction\_, that will not, in \_every sense\_, permit the objective

case of a personal pronoun after it."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 174. Wells

absurdly supposes, "An \_intransitive\_ verb may be used to govern an

objective."--\_Gram.\_, p. 145. Some imagine that verbs of mental action,

such as \_conceive, think, believe\_, &c., are not properly transitive; and,

if they find an object after such a verb, they choose to supply a

preposition to govern it: as, "I conceived it (\_of\_ it) in that

light."--\_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 21. "Did you conceive (of) him to be

me?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. With this idea, few will probably concur.

OBS. 15.--We sometimes find the pronoun \_me\_ needlessly thrown in after a

verb that either governs some other object or is not properly transitive,

at least, in respect to this word; as, "It ascends \_me\_ into the brain;

dries \_me\_ there all the foolish, dull, and crudy vapours."--\_Shakspeare's

Falstaff\_. "Then the vital commoners and inland petty spirits muster \_me\_

all to their captain, the heart."--\_Id.\_ This is a faulty relic of our old

Saxon dative case. So of the second person; "Fare \_you\_ well,

Falstaff."--\_Shak\_. Here \_you\_ was written for the objective case, but it

seems now to have become the nominative to the verb \_fare\_. "Fare thee

well."--\_W. Scott\_. "Farewell \_to\_ thee."--\_Id.\_ These expressions were

once equivalent in syntax; but they are hardly so now; and, in lieu of the

former, it would seem better English to say, "Fare \_thou\_ well." Again:

"Turn \_thee\_ aside to thy right hand or to thy left, and lay \_thee hold\_ on

one of the young men, and take \_thee\_ his armour."--\_2 Sam.\_, ii, 21. If

any modern author had written this, our critics would have guessed he had

learned from some of the Quakers to misemploy \_thee\_ for \_thou\_. The

construction is an imitation of the French reciprocal or reflected verbs.

It ought to be thus: "Turn \_thou\_ aside to thy right hand or to thy left,

and \_lay hold\_ on one of the young men, and take \_to thyself\_ his armour."

So of the third person: "The king soon found reason to repent \_him\_ of his

provoking such dangerous enemies."--HUME: \_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 180.

Here both of the pronouns are worse than useless, though Murray discerned

but one error.

"Good Margaret, \_run thee\_ into the parlour;

There thou shalt find my cousin Beatrice."--SHAK.: \_Much Ado\_.

NOTES TO RULE V.

NOTE I.--Those verbs or participles which require a regimen, or which

signify action that must terminate transitively, should not be used without

an object; as, "She \_affects\_ [kindness,] in order to \_ingratiate\_

[herself] with you."--"I \_must caution\_ [you], at the same time, against a

servile imitation of any author whatever."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 192.

NOTE II.--Those verbs and participles which do not admit an object, or

which express action that terminates in themselves, or with the doer,

should not be used transitively; as, "The planters \_grow\_ cotton." Say

\_raise, produce, or cultivate\_. "Dare you speak lightly of the law, or move

that, in a criminal trial, judges should advance one step beyond \_what\_ it

permits them \_to go\_?"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 278. Say,--"beyond \_the point

to which\_ it permits them to go."

NOTE III.--No transitive verb or participle should assume a government to

which its own meaning is not adapted; as, "\_Thou\_ is a pronoun, a word used

\_instead\_ of a noun--personal, it \_personates\_ 'man.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_,

p. 131. Say, "It \_represents man\_." "Where \_a string\_ of such sentences

\_succeed each other\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 168. Say, "Where \_many\_ such

sentences \_come in succession\_."

NOTE IV.--The passive verb should always take for its subject or nominative

the direct object of the active-transitive verb from which it is derived;

as, (Active,) "They denied me this privilege." (Passive,) "This \_privilege\_

was denied \_me\_;" not, "\_I\_ was denied this \_privilege\_:" for \_me\_ may be

governed by \_to\_ understood, but \_privilege\_ cannot, nor can any other

regimen be found for it.

NOTE V.--Passive verbs should never be made to govern the objective case,

because the receiving of an action supposes it to terminate on the subject

or nominative.[356] Errors: "Sometimes it \_is made use of\_ to give a small

degree of emphasis."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 197. Say, "Sometimes it

\_is used\_," &c. "His female characters \_have been found fault with\_ as

insipid."--\_Hazlitt's Lect.\_, p. 111. Say,--"have been \_censured\_;"

or,--"have been \_blamed, decried, dispraised\_, or \_condemned\_."

NOTE VI.--The perfect participle, as such, should never be made to govern

any objective term; because, without an active auxiliary, its signification

is almost always passive: as, "We shall set down the characters \_made use

of\_ to represent all the elementary sounds."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 5;

\_Fisk's\_, 34. Say,--"the characters \_employed\_, or \_used\_."

NOTE VII.--As the different cases in English are not always distinguished

by their form, care must be taken lest their construction be found

equivocal, or ambiguous; as, "And we shall always \_find our sentences

acquire\_ more vigour and energy when thus retrenched."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

111. Say, "We shall always find \_that\_ our sentences acquire more vigour,"

&c.; or, "We shall always find our sentences \_to\_ acquire more vigour and

energy when thus retrenched."

NOTE VIII.--In the language of our Bible, rightly quoted or printed, \_ye\_

is not found in the objective case, nor \_you\_ in the nominative; scriptural

texts that preserve not this distinction of cases, are consequently to be

considered inaccurate.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION. FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE V.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE OBJECTIVE FORM.

"Who should I meet the other day but my old friend!"--\_Spectator\_, No. 32.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_who\_ is in the nominative case,

and is used as the object of the active-transitive verb \_should meet\_. But,

according to Rule 5th, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of an

active-transitive verb or participle, is governed by it in the objective

case." Therefore, \_who\_ should be \_whom\_; thus, "\_Whom\_ should I meet,"

&c.]

"Let not him boast that puts on his armour, but he that takes it

off."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 262. "Let none touch it, but they who are

clean."--\_Sale's Koran\_, 95. "Let the sea roar, and the fullness thereof;

the world, and they that dwell therein."--\_Psalms\_, xcviii, 7. "Pray be

private, and careful who you trust."--\_Mrs. Goffe's Letter\_. "How shall the

people know who to entrust with their property and their liberties?"--

\_District School\_, p. 301. "The chaplain entreated my comrade and I to

dress as well as possible."--\_World Displayed\_, i, 163. "He that cometh

unto me, I will in no wise cast out."--\_Tract\_, No. 3, p. 6. "Who, during

this preparation, they constantly and solemnly invoke."--\_Hope of Israel\_,

p. 84. "Whoever or whatever owes us, is Debtor; whoever or whatever we owe,

is Creditor."--\_Marsh's Book-Keeping\_, p. 23. "Declaring the curricle was

his, and he should have who he chose in it."--\_Anna Ross\_, p. 147. "The

fact is, Burke is the only one of all the host of brilliant contemporaries

who we can rank as a first-rate orator."--\_The Knickerbocker, May\_, 1833.

"Thus you see, how naturally the Fribbles and the Daffodils have produced

the Messalina's of our time:"--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 53. "They would find

in the Roman list both the Scipio's."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 76. "He found his wife's

clothes on fire, and she just expiring."--\_New-York Observer\_. "To present

ye holy, unblameable, and unreproveable in his sight."--\_Barclay's Works\_,

i, 353. "Let the distributer do his duty with simplicity; the

superintendent, with diligence; he who performs offices of compassion, with

cheerfulness."--\_Stuart's Romans\_, xii, 9. "If the crew rail at the master

of the vessel, who will they mind?"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 106. "He

having none but them, they having none but hee."--DRAYTON'S \_Polyolbion\_.

"Thou, nature, partial nature, I arraign! Of thy caprice maternal I

complain!"--\_Burns's Poems\_, p. 50. "Nor knows he who it is his arms pursue

With eager clasps, but loves he knows not who."--\_Addison's\_, p. 218.

UNDER NOTE I.--OF VERBS TRANSITIVE.

"When it gives that sense, and also connects, it is a conjunction."--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 116. "Though thou wilt not acknowledge, thou canst not

deny the fact."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 209. "They \_specify\_, like many other

adjectives, and \_connect\_ sentences."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 114. "The

violation of this rule tends so much to perplex and obscure, that it is

safer to err by too many short sentences."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 312. "A

few \_Exercises\_ are subjoined to each important definition, for him to

\_practice\_ upon as he proceeds in committing."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, 3d Ed.,

p. vii. "A verb signifying actively governs the accusative."--\_Adam's

Gram.\_, p. 171; \_Gould's\_, 172; \_Grant's\_, 199; and others. "Or, any word

that will \_conjugate\_, is a verb."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 44. "In these two

concluding sentences, the author, hastening to finish, appears to write

rather carelessly."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 216. "He simply reasons on one

side of the question, and then finishes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 306. "Praise to God

teaches to be humble and lowly ourselves."--ATTERBURY: \_ib.\_, p. 304. "This

author has endeavored to surpass."--\_Green's Inductive Gram.\_, p. 54.

"Idleness and plezure fateeg az soon az bizziness."--\_Noah Webster's

Essays\_, p. 402. "And, in conjugating, you must pay particular attention to

the manner in which these signs are applied."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 140.

"He said Virginia would have emancipated long ago."--\_The Liberator\_, ix,

33. "And having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience."--\_2 Cor.\_, x,

6. "However, in these cases, custom generally determines."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 50. "In proof, let the following cases demonstrate."--\_Ib.\_, p.

46. "We must surprise, that he should so speedily have forgotten his first

principles."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. "How should we surprise at the expression,

'This is a \_soft\_ question!'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 219. "And such as prefer, can

parse it as a possessive adjective."--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p. 89. "To assign

all the reasons, that induced to deviate from other grammarians, would lead

to a needless prolixity."--\_Alexander's Gram.\_, p. 4. "The Indicative mood

simply indicates or declares."--\_Farnum's Gram.\_, p. 33.

UNDER NOTE II.--OF VERBS INTRANSITIVE.

"In his seventh chapter he expatiateth himself at great

length."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 350. "He quarrelleth my bringing some

testimonies of antiquity, agreeing with what I say."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 373.

"Repenting him of his design."--\_Hume's Hist.\_, ii, 56. "Henry knew, that

an excommunication could not fail of operating the most dangerous

effects."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 165. "The popular lords did not fail to enlarge

themselves on the subject."--\_Mrs. Macaulay's Hist.\_, iii, 177. "He is

always master of his subject; and seems to play himself with it."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 445. "But as soon as it comes the length of disease, all his

secret infirmities shew themselves."--\_Ib.\_, p. 256. "No man repented him

of his wickedness."--\_Jeremiah\_, viii, 6. "Go thee one way or other, either

on the right hand, or on the left."--\_Ezekiel\_, xxi, 16. "He lies him down

by the rivers side."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 99. "My desire has been for

some years past, to retire myself to some of our American

plantations."--\_Cowley's Pref. to his Poems\_, p. vii. "I fear me thou wilt

shrink from the payment of it."--\_Zenobia\_, i, 76. "We never recur an idea,

without acquiring some combination."--\_Rippingham's Art of Speaking\_, p.

xxxii.

"Yet more; the stroke of death he must abide,

Then lies him meekly down fast by his brethren's side."--\_Milton\_.

UNDER NOTE III.--OF VERBS MISAPPLIED.

"A parliament forfeited all those who had borne arms against the

king."--\_Hume's Hist.\_, ii, 223. "The practice of forfeiting ships which

had been wrecked."--\_Ib.\_, i, 500. "The nearer his military successes

approached him to the throne."--\_Ib.\_, v, 383. "In the next example, \_you\_

personifies \_ladies\_, therefore it is plural."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 103.

"The first \_its\_ personates vale; the second \_its\_ represents

stream."--\_Ib.\_, p. 103. "Pronouns do not always avoid the repetition of

nouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 96. "\_Very\_ is an adverb of comparison, it compares the

adjective \_good\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "You will please to commit the following

paragraph."--\_Ib.\_, p. 140. "Even the Greek and Latin passive verbs require

an auxiliary to conjugate some of their tenses."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 100.

"The deponent verbs, in Latin, require also an auxiliary to conjugate

several of their tenses."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "I have no doubt he made as wise

and true proverbs, as any body has done since."--\_Ib.\_, p. 145. "A uniform

variety assumes as many set forms as Proteus had shapes."--\_Kirkham's

Elocution\_, p. 72. "When words in apposition follow each other in quick

succession."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 57. "Where such sentences frequently

succeed each other."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 349. "Wisdom leads us to

speak and act what is most proper."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 99; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 303.

"\_Jul\_. Art thou not Romeo, and a Montague?

\_Rom\_. Neither, fair saint, if either thee dislike."--\_Shak\_.

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF PASSIVE VERBS.

"We too must be allowed the privilege of forming our own laws."--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 134. "For we are not only allowed the use of all the

ancient poetic feet," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 259; \_Kirkham's Elocution\_, 143;

\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 310. "By what code of morals am I denied the right and

privilege?"--\_Dr. Bartlett's Lect.\_, p. 4. "The children of Israel have

alone been denied the possession of it."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 68. "At

York fifteen hundred Jews were refused all quarter."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73. "He

would teach the French language in three lessons, provided he was paid

fifty-five dollars in advance."--\_Chazotte's Essay\_, p. 4. "And when he was

demanded of the Pharisees, when the kingdom of God should come."--\_Luke\_,

xvii, 20. "I have been shown a book."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 392. "John

Horne Tooke was refused admission only because he had been in holy

orders."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, i, 60. "Mr. Horne Tooke having taken

orders, he was refused admission to the bar."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 145.

"Its reference to place is lost sight of."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 116.

"What striking lesson are we taught by the tenor of this history?"--\_Bush's

Questions\_, p. 71. "He had been left, by a friend, no less than eighty

thousand pounds."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 112. "Where there are many

things to be done, each must be allowed its share of time and

labour."--\_Johnson's Pref. to Dict.\_, p. xiii. "Presenting the subject in a

far more practical form than it has been heretofore given."--\_Kirkham's

Phrenology\_, p. v. "If a being of entire impartiality should be shown the

two companies."--\_Scott's Pref. to Bible\_, p. vii. "He was offered the

command of the British army."--\_Grimshaw's Hist.\_, p. 81. "Who had been

unexpectedly left a considerable sum."--\_Johnson's Life of Goldsmith\_.

"Whether a maid or a widow may be granted such a privilege."--\_Spectator\_,

No. 536. "Happily all these affected terms have been denied the public

suffrage."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 199. "Let him next be shewn the parsing

table."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. viii. "Thence, he may be shown the use of

the Analyzing Table."--\_Ib.\_, p. ix. "Pittacus was offered a great sum of

money."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 228. "He had been allowed more time for

study."--\_Ib.\_, p. 229. "If the walks were a little taken care of that lie

between them."--\_Addison's Spect.\_, No. 414. "Suppose I am offered an

office or a bribe."--\_Pierpont's Discourse\_, Jan. 27, 1839.

"Am I one chaste, one last embrace deny'd?

Shall I not lay me by his clay-cold side?"

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. ix, l. 103.

UNDER NOTE V.--PASSIVE VERBS TRANSITIVE.

"The preposition \_to\_ is made use of before nouns of place, when they

follow verbs and participles of motion."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 203;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 231; \_Greenlef's\_, 35; \_Fisk's\_, 143; \_Smith's\_, 170;

\_Guy's\_, 90; \_Fowler's\_, 555. "They were refused entrance into the

house."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 204. "Their separate signification has been

lost sight of."--\_Horne Tooke\_, ii, 422. "But, whenever \_ye\_ is made use

of, it must be in the nominative, and never in the objective,

case."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, 58. "It is said, that more persons than one

are paid handsome salaries, for taking care to see acts of parliament

properly worded."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 334. "The following Rudiments of

English Grammar, have been made use of in the University of

Pennsylvania."--DR. ROGERS: \_in Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 2. "It never should

be lost sight of."--\_Newman's Rhetoric\_, p. 19. "A very curious fact hath

been taken notice of by those expert metaphysicians."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_,

p. 281. "The archbishop interfered that Michelet's lectures might be put a

stop to."--\_The Friend\_, ix, 378. "The disturbances in Gottengen have been

entirely put an end to."--\_Daily Advertiser\_. "Besides those that are taken

notice of in these exceptions."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 6. "As one, two,

or three auxiliary verbs are made use of."--\_Ib.\_, p. 24. "The arguments

which have been made use of."--\_Addison's Evidences\_, p. 32. "The

circumstance is properly taken notice of by the author."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 217. "Patagonia has never been taken possession of by any European

nation."--\_Cumming's Geog.\_, p. 62. "He will be found fault withal no more,

i. e. not hereafter."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 226. "The thing was to be

put an end to somehow."--\_Leigh Hunt's Byron\_, p. 15. "In 1798, the Papal

Territory was taken possession of by the French."--\_Pinnock's Geog.\_, p.

223. "The idea has not for a moment been lost sight of by the

Board."--\_Common School Journal\_, i, 37. "I shall easily be excused the

labour of more transcription."--\_Johnson's Life of Dryden\_. "If I may be

allowed that expression."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 259, and 288. "If without

offence I may be indulged the observation."--\_Ib.\_, p. 295. "There are

other characters, which are frequently made use of in composition."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 280; \_Ingersoll's\_, 293. "Such unaccountable

infirmities might be in many, perhaps in most, cases got the better

of."--\_Seattle's Moral Science\_, i, 153. "Which ought never to be had

recourse to."--\_Ib.\_, i, 186. "That the widows may be taken care

of."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 499. "Other cavils will yet be taken notice

of."--\_Pope's Pref. to Homer\_. "Which implies, that all Christians are

offered eternal salvation."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 149. "Yet even the dogs

are allowed the crumbs which fall from their master's table."--\_Campbell's

Gospels, Matt.\_, xv. 27. "For we say the light within must be taken heed

unto."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 148. "This sound of a is taken notice of in

Steele's Grammar."--\_Walker's Dict.\_, p. 22. "One came to be paid ten

guineas for a pair of silver buckles."--\_Castle Rackrent\_, p. 104. "Let

him, therefore, be carefully shewn the application of the several questions

in the table."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 8, "After a few times, it is no

longer taken notice of by the hearers."--\_Sheridan's Lect.\_, p. 182. "It

will not admit of the same excuse, nor be allowed the same indulgence, by

people of any discernment."--\_Ibid.\_ "Inanimate things may be made property

of."--\_Beanie's M. Sci.\_, p. 355.

"And, when he's bid a liberaller price,

Will not be sluggish in the work, nor nice."--\_Butler's Poems\_, p. 162.

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

"All the words made use of to denote spiritual and intellectual things, are

in their origin metaphors."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 380. "A reply to an

argument commonly made use of by unbelievers."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 293.

"It was heretofore the only form made use of in the preter tenses."--\_Dr.

Ash's Gram.\_, p. 47. "Of the points, and other characters made use of in

writing."--\_Ib.\_, p. xv. "If \_thy\_ be the personal pronoun made use

of."--\_Walker's Dict.\_ "The Conjunction is a word made use of to connect

sentences."--\_Burn's Gram.\_, p. 28. "The points made use of to answer these

purposes are the four following."--\_Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 67. "\_Incense\_

signifies perfumes exhaled by fire, and made use of in religious

ceremonies."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 171. "In most of his orations, there is

too much art; even carried the length of ostentation."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

246. "To illustrate the great truth, so often lost sight of in our

times."--\_Common School Journal\_, I, 88. "The principal figures, made use

of to affect the heart, are Exclamation, Confession, Deprecation,

Commination, and Imprecation."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 133.

"Disgusted at the odious artifices made use of by the Judge."--\_Junius\_, p.

13. "The whole reasons of our being allotted a condition, out of which so

much wickedness and misery would in fact arise."--\_Butler's Analogy\_ p.

109. "Some characteristieal circumstance being generally invented or laid

hold of."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 246.

"And \_by\_ is likewise us'd with Names that shew

The Means made use of, or the Method how."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 105.

UNDER NOTE VII.--CONSTRUCTIONS AMBIGUOUS.

"Many adverbs admit of degrees of comparison as well as

adjectives."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 133. "But the author, who, by the

number and reputation of his works, formed our language more than any one,

into its present state, is Dryden."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 180. "In some

States, Courts of Admiralty have no juries, nor Courts of Chancery at

all."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p, 146. "I feel myself grateful to my

friend."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 276. "This requires a writer to have, himself,

a very clear apprehension of the object he means to present to

us."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 94. "Sense has its own harmony, as well as

sound."--\_lb.\_, p. 127. "The apostrophe denotes the omission of an \_i\_

which was formerly inserted, and made an addition of a syllable to the

word."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 67. "There are few, whom I can refer to,

with more advantage than Mr. Addison."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 139. "DEATH, in

\_theology\_, [is a] perpetual separation from God, and eternal

torments."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "That could inform the \_traveler\_ as well as

the old man himself!"--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 345.

UNDER NOTE VIII.--YE AND YOU IN SCRIPTURE.

"Ye daughters of Rabbah, gird ye with sackcloth."--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Jer.\_,

xlix, 3. "Wash ye, make you clean."--\_Brown's Concordance, w. Wash\_. "Strip

ye, and make ye bare, and gird sackcloth upon your loins."--ALGER'S BIBLE:

\_Isaiah\_, xxxii, 11. "You are not ashamed that you make yourselves strange

to me."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Job\_, xix, 3. "You are not ashamed that ye make

yourselves strange to me."--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_ib.\_ "If you knew the gift of

God."--\_Brown's Concordance, w. Knew\_. "Depart from me, ye workers of

iniquity, I know ye not."--\_Penington's Works\_, ii, 122.

RULE VI.--SAME CASES.

A Noun or a Pronoun put after a verb or participle not transitive, agrees

in case with a preceding noun or pronoun referring to the same thing: as,

"\_It\_ is \_I\_."--"\_These\_ are \_they\_."--"The \_child\_ was named

\_John\_."--"\_It\_ could not be \_he\_."--"The \_Lord\_ sitteth \_King\_

forever."--\_Psalms\_, xxix, 10.

"What war could ravish, commerce could bestow,

And \_he\_ return'd a \_friend, who\_ came a \_foe\_."

--\_Pope\_, Ep. iii, l. 206.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE VI.

OBS. 1.--Active-transitive verbs, and their

imperfect and preperfect participles, always govern the objective case; but

active-intransitive, passive, and neuter verbs, and their participles, take

the same case after as before them, when both words refer to the same

thing. The latter are rightly supposed \_not to govern\_[357] any case; nor

are they in general followed by any noun or pronoun. But, because they are

not transitive, some of them become connectives to such words as are in the

same case and signify the same thing. That is, their finite tenses may be

followed by a nominative, and their infinitives and participles by a

nominative or an objective, \_agreeing\_ with a noun or a pronoun which

precedes them. The cases are the same, because the person or thing is one;

as, "\_I\_ am \_he\_."--"\_Thou\_ art \_Peter\_."--"Civil \_government\_ being the

sole \_object\_ of forming societies, its administration must be conducted by

common consent."--\_Jefferson's Notes\_, p. 129. Identity is both the

foundation and the characteristic of this construction. We chiefly use it

to affirm or deny, to suggest or question, the \_sameness\_ of things; but

sometimes \_figuratively\_, to illustrate the relations of persons or things

by comparison:[358] as, "\_I\_ am the true \_vine\_, and my \_Father\_ is the

\_husbandman\_."--\_John\_, xv, 1. "\_I\_ am the \_vine, ye\_ are the

\_branches\_."--\_John\_, xv, 5. Even the names of direct opposites, are

sometimes put in the same case, under this rule; as,

"By such a change thy \_darkness\_ is made \_light\_,

Thy \_chaos order\_, and thy \_weakness might\_."--\_Cowper\_, Vol. i, p. 88.

OBS. 2.--In this rule, the terms \_after\_ and \_preceding\_ refer rather to

the order of the sense and construction, than to the mere \_placing\_ of the

words; for the words in fact admit of various positions. The proper subject

of the verb is the nominative \_to\_ it, or \_before\_ it, by Rule 2d; and the

other nominative, however placed, is understood to be that which comes

\_after\_ it, by Rule 6th. In general, however, the proper subject \_precedes\_

the verb, and the other word \_follows\_ it, agreeably to the literal sense

of the rule. But when the proper subject is placed after the verb, as in

certain instances specified in the second observation under Rule 2d, the

explanatory nominative is commonly introduced still later; as, "But be

\_thou\_ an \_example\_ of the believers."--\_1 Tim\_. iv, 12. "But what! is thy

\_servant\_ a \_dog\_?"--\_2 Kings\_, viii, 13. "And so would I, were \_I

Parmenio\_."--\_Goldsmith\_. "O Conloch's daughter! is \_it thou\_?"--\_Ossian\_.

But in the following example, on the contrary, there is a transposition of

the entire lines, and the verb agrees with the two nominatives in the

latter:

"To thee \_were\_ solemn \_toys\_ or empty \_show\_,

The \_robes\_ of pleasure and the \_veils\_ of wo."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

OBS. 3.--In interrogative sentences, the terms are usually transposed,[359]

or both are placed after the verb; as, "Am \_I\_ a \_Jew\_?"--\_John\_, xviii,

35. "Art \_thou\_ a \_king\_ then?"--\_Ib.\_, ver. 37. "\_What\_ is

\_truth\_?"--\_Ib.\_, ver. 38. "\_Who\_ art \_thou\_?"--\_Ib.\_, i, 19. "Art \_thou

Elias\_?"--\_Ib.\_, i, 21. "Tell me, Alciphron, is not \_distance\_ a \_line\_

turned endwise to the eye?"--\_Berkley's Dialogues\_, p. 161.

"Whence, and \_what\_ art \_thou\_, execrable shape?"--\_Milton\_.

"Art \_thou\_ that traitor \_angel\_? art \_thou he\_?"--\_Idem\_.

OBS. 4.--In a declarative sentence also, there may be a rhetorical or

poetical transposition of one or both of the terms: as, "And I \_thy victim\_

now remain."--\_Francis's Horace\_, ii, 45. "To thy own dogs a \_prey\_ thou

shalt be made."--\_Pope's Homer\_, "I was eyes to the blind, and \_feet\_ was

\_I\_ to the lame."--\_Job\_, xxix, 15. "Far other \_scene\_ is \_Thrasymenè\_

now."--\_Byron\_. In the following sentence, the latter term is palpably

misplaced: "It does not clearly appear at first \_what the antecedent is\_ to

\_they\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 218. Say rather: "It does not clearly appear

at first, \_what is the antecedent\_ to [the pronoun] \_they\_." In examples

transposed like the following, there is an elegant ellipsis of the verb to

which the pronoun is nominative; as, \_am, art\_, &c.

"When pain and anguish wring the brow,

A ministering \_angel thou\_."--\_Scott's Marmion.\_

"The forum's champion, and the people's chief,

Her new-born \_Numa thou\_--with reign, alas! too brief."--\_Byron\_.

"For this commission'd, I forsook the sky--

Nay, cease to kneel--thy \_fellow-servant I\_."--\_Parnell.\_

OBS. 5.--In some peculiar constructions, both words naturally come \_before\_

the verb; as, "I know not \_who she\_ is."--"\_Who\_ did you say \_it\_ was?"--"I

know not how to tell thee \_who I\_ am."--\_Romeo\_. "Inquire thou whose \_son\_

the \_stripling\_ is."--\_1 Sam.\_, xvii, 56. "Man would not be the creature

\_which he\_ now is."--\_Blair\_. "I could not guess \_who it\_ should

be."--\_Addison\_. And they are sometimes placed in this manner by

\_hyberbaton\_ [sic--KTH], or transposition; as, "Yet \_he it\_ is."--\_Young\_.

"No contemptible \_orator he\_ was."--\_Dr. Blair\_. "\_He it\_ is to whom I

shall give a sop."--\_John\_, xiii, 26. "And a very noble \_personage Cato\_

is."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 457. "\_Clouds they\_ are without water."--\_Jude\_,

12.

"Of worm or serpent kind \_it something\_ looked,

But monstrous, with a thousand snaky heads."--\_Pollok\_, B. i, l. 183.

OBS. 6.--As infinitives and participles have no nominatives of their own,

such of them as are not transitive in their nature, may take \_different\_

cases after them; and, in order to determine what \_case\_ it is that follows

them, the learner must carefully observe what preceding word denotes the

same person or thing, and apply the principle of the rule accordingly. This

word being often remote, and sometimes understood, the \_sense\_ is the only

clew to the construction. Examples: "\_Who\_ then can bear the thought of

being an \_outcast\_ from his presence?"--\_Addison\_. Here \_outcast\_ agrees

with \_who\_, and not with \_thought\_. "\_I\_ cannot help being so passionate an

\_admirer\_ as I am."--\_Steele\_. Here \_admirer\_ agrees with \_I\_. "To

recommend \_what\_ the soberer part of mankind look upon to be a

\_trifle\_."--\_Steele\_. Here \_trifle\_ agrees with \_what\_ as relative, the

objective governed by \_upon\_. "\_It\_ would be a romantic \_madness\_, for a

\_man\_ to be a \_lord\_ in his closet."--\_Id.\_ Here \_madness\_ is in the

nominative case, agreeing with \_it\_; and \_lord\_, in the objective, agreeing

with \_man\_. "To \_affect\_ to be a \_lord\_ in one's closet, would be a

romantic \_madness\_." In this sentence also, \_lord\_ is in the objective,

after \_to be\_; and \_madness\_, in the nominative, after \_would be.\_

"'My dear \_Tibullus!\_' If that will not do,

Let \_me\_ be \_Horace\_, and be \_Ovid you\_."--\_Pope\_, B. ii, Ep. ii, 143.

OBS. 7.--An active-intransitive or a neuter participle in \_ing\_, when

governed by a preposition, is often followed by a noun or a pronoun the

case of which depends not on the preposition, but on the case which goes

before. Example: "The \_Jews\_ were in a particular manner ridiculed \_for

being\_ a credulous \_people\_."--\_Addison's Evidences\_, p. 28. Here \_people\_

is in the nominative case, agreeing with \_Jews\_. Again: "The learned pagans

ridiculed the \_Jews\_ for \_being\_ a credulous \_people\_." Here \_people\_ is in

the objective case, because the preceding noun \_Jews\_ is so. In both

instances the preposition \_for\_ governs the participle \_being\_, and nothing

else. "The atrocious crime of \_being\_ a young \_man\_, I shall neither

attempt to palliate \_or\_ deny."--PITT: \_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 82; \_S. S.

Greene's\_, 174. Sanborn has this text, with "\_nor\_" for

"\_or\_."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 190. This example has been erroneously

cited, as one in which the case of the noun after the participle is \_not

determined\_ by its relation to any other word. Sanborn absurdly supposes it

to be "in the \_nominative independent\_." Bullions as strangely tells us,

"it may correctly be called the \_objective indefinite\_"--like \_me\_ in the

following example: "He was not sure of \_its being me\_."--\_Bullions's E.

Gram.\_, p. 82. This latter text I take to be \_bad English\_. It should be,

"He was not sure \_of it as being me\_;" or, "He was not sure \_that it was

I."\_ But, in the text above, there is an evident transposition. The

syntactical order is this: "\_I\_ shall neither deny \_nor\_ attempt to

palliate the atrocious crime of being a young \_man\_." The words \_man\_ and

\_I\_ refer to the same person, and are therefore in the same case, according

to the rule which I have given above.

OBS. 8.--S. S. Greene, in his late Grammar, improperly denominates this

case after the participle \_being\_, "the \_predicate-nominative\_," and

imagines that it necessarily remains a nominative even when the possessive

case precedes the participle. If he were right in this, there would be an

important exception to Rule 6th above. But so singularly absurd is his

doctrine about "\_abridged predicates\_," that in general the \_abridging\_

shows an \_increase\_ of syllables, and often a conversion of good English

into bad. For example: "\_It\_ [the predicate] remains \_unchanged in the

nominative\_, when, with the participle of the copula, \_it\_ becomes \_a

verbal noun\_, limited by the possessive case of the subject; as, 'That he

was a foreigner prevented his election,'='\_His\_ being a \_foreigner\_

prevented his election.'"--\_Greene's Analysis\_, p. 169. Here the number of

syllables is unaltered; but \_foreigner\_ is very improperly called "a verbal

noun," and an example which only lacks a comma, is changed to what Wells

rightly calls an "\_anomalous expression\_," and one wherein that author

supposes \_foreigner\_ and \_his\_ to be necessarily in the same case. But

Greene varies this example into other "\_abridged forms\_," thus: "I knew

\_that he was a foreigner\_," = "I knew \_his being\_, or \_of his being a

foreigner\_." "The fact \_that he was a foreigner\_, = \_of his being a

foreigner\_, was undeniable." "\_When he was first called a foreigner\_, = \_on

his being first called a foreigner\_, his anger was excited."--\_Ib.\_, p.

171. All these changes \_enlarge\_, rather than abridge, the expression; and,

at the same time, make it questionable English, to say the least of it.

OBS. 9.--In some examples, the adverb \_there\_ precedes the participle, and

we evidently have nothing by which to determine the case that follows; as,

"These judges were twelve in number. Was this \_owing to there being\_

twelve primary \_deities\_ among the Gothic nations?"--\_Webster's Essays\_, p.

263. Say rather: "Was this \_because there were\_ twelve primary deities

among the Gothic nations?" "How many are injured by Adam's fall, that know

nothing of \_there ever being\_ such a man in the world!"--\_Barclay's

Apology\_, p. 185. Say rather,--"\_who know not that there ever was\_ such a

man in the world!"

OBS. 10.--In some other examples, we find a possessive before the

participle, and a doubtful case after it; as, "This our Saviour himself was

pleased to make use of as the strongest argument of \_his\_ being the

promised \_Messiah\_"--\_Addison's Evidences\_, p. 81. "But my chief affliction

consisted in \_my\_ being singled out from all the other boys, by a lad about

fifteen years of age, as a proper \_object\_ upon whom he might let loose the

cruelty of his temper."--\_Cowper's Memoir\_, p. 13. "[Greek: Tou patros

[ontos] onou euthus hypemnæsthæ]. He had some sort of recollection of his

\_father's\_ being an ass"--\_Collectanea Græca Minora, Notæ\_, p. 7. This

construction, though not uncommon, is anomalous in more respects than one.

Whether or not it is worthy to form an exception to the rule of \_same

cases\_, or even to that of \_possessives\_, the reader may judge from the

observations made on it under the latter. I should rather devise some way

to avoid it, if any can be found--and I believe there can; as, "This our

Saviour himself was pleased to \_advance\_ as the strongest \_proof that he

was\_ the promised Messiah."--"But my chief affliction consisted in \_this,

that I was\_ singled out," &c. The story of the mule is, "\_He seemed to

recollect on a sudden that his father was an ass\_." This is the proper

meaning of the Greek text above; but the construction is different, the

Greek nouns being genitives in apposition.

OBS. 11.--A noun in the nominative case sometimes follows a finite verb,

when the equivalent subject that stands before the verb, is not a noun or

pronoun, but a phrase or a sentence which supplies the place of a

nominative; as, "That the barons and freeholders derived their authority

from kings, is wholly a \_mistake\_."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 277. "To speak

of a slave as a member of civil society, may, by some, be regarded a

\_solecism\_."--\_Stroud's Sketch\_, p. 65. Here \_mistake\_ and \_solecism\_ are

as plainly nominatives, as if the preceding subjects had been declinable

words.

OBS. 12.--When a noun is put after an abstract infinitive that is not

transitive, it appears necessarily to be in the objective case,[360] though

not governed by the verb; for if we supply any noun to which such

infinitive may be supposed to refer, it must be introduced before the verb

by the preposition \_for\_: as, "To be an \_Englishman\_ in London, a

\_Frenchman\_ in Paris, a \_Spaniard\_ in Madrid, is no easy matter; and yet it

is necessary."--\_Home's Art of Thinking\_, p. 89. That is, "\_For a

traveller\_ to be an \_Englishman\_ in London," &c. "It is certainly as easy

to be a \_scholar\_, as a \_gamester\_."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 425. That is,

"It is as easy \_for a young man\_ to be a \_scholar, as it is for him to be a

gamester\_." "To be an eloquent \_speaker\_, in the proper sense of the

\_word\_, is far from being a common or easy \_attainment.\_"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 337. Here \_attainment\_ is in the nominative, after \_is\_--or, rather

after \_being\_, for it follows both; and \_speaker\_, in the objective after

\_to be\_. "It is almost as hard a thing [for a \_man\_] to be a poet in

despite of fortune, as it is [for \_one\_ to be a \_poet\_] in despite of

nature."--\_Cowley's Preface to his Poems\_, p. vii.

OBS. 13.--Where precision is necessary, loose or abstract infinitives are

improper; as, "But \_to be precise\_, signifies, that \_they\_ express \_that

idea\_, and \_no more\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 94; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 301;

\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 64. Say rather: "But, \_for an author's words to be

precise\_, signifies, that they express \_his exact\_ idea, and \_nothing\_ more

\_or less\_."

OBS. 14.--The principal verbs that take the same case after as before them,

except those which are passive, are the following: to be, to stand, to sit,

to lie, to live, to grow, to become, to turn, to commence, to die, to

expire, to come, to go, to range, to wander, to return, to seem, to appear,

to remain, to continue, to reign. There are doubtless some others, which

admit of such a construction; and of some of these, it is to be observed,

that they are sometimes transitive, and govern the objective: as, "To

\_commence\_ a suit."--\_Johnson\_. "O \_continue\_ thy loving kindness unto

them."--\_Psalms\_, xxxvi, 10. "A feather will \_turn\_ the scale."--\_Shak.\_

"\_Return\_ him a trespass offering."--\_1 Samuel\_. "For it \_becomes\_ me so to

speak."--\_Dryden\_. But their construction with like cases is easily

distinguished by the sense; as, "When \_I\_ commenced \_author\_, my aim was to

amuse."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 286. "\_Men\_ continue men's

\_destroyers\_."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 56. "'Tis most just, that thou turn

rascal"--\_Shak., Timon of Athens\_. "He went out \_mate\_, but \_he\_ returned

\_captain\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 182. "After this event \_he\_ became

\_physician\_ to the king."--\_Ib.\_ That is, "When I \_began to be\_ an author,"

&c.

"Ev'n mean \_self-love\_ becomes, by force divine,

The \_scale\_ to measure others' wants by thine."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 15.--The common instructions of our English grammars, in relation to

the subject of the preceding rule, are exceedingly erroneous and defective.

For example: "The verb TO BE, has \_always\_ a nominative case after it,

\_unless it be\_ in the infinitive mode."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 77. "The verb

TO BE \_requires\_ the same case after it as before it."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 142. "The verb TO BE, through all its variations, \_has\_ the same

case after it, \_expressed or understood\_, as \_that\_ which \_next\_ precedes

it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 181; \_Alger's\_, 62; \_Merchant's\_, 91;

\_Putnam's\_, 116; \_Smith's\_, 97; and many others. "The verb TO BE has

\_usually\_ the same case after it, as that which \_immediately\_ precedes

it."--\_Hall's Gram.\_, p. 31. "\_Neuter verbs have\_ the same case after them,

as that which \_next\_ precedes them."--\_Folker's Gram.\_, p. 14. "Passive

verbs \_which signify naming\_, and others of a \_similar nature\_, have the

same case \_before and after\_ them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 182. "A Noun or

Pronoun used in predication with a verb, is in the Independent Case.

EXAMPLES--'Thou art a \_scholar\_.' 'It is \_I\_.' 'God is \_love\_.'"--\_S. W.

Clark's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 149. So many and monstrous are the faults of

these rules, that nothing but very learned and reverend authority, could

possibly impose such teaching anywhere. The first, though written by Lowth,

is not a whit wiser than to say, "The preposition \_to\_ has \_always\_ an

infinitive mood after it, \_unless it be\_ a preposition." And this latter

absurdity is even a better rule for all infinitives, than the former for

all predicated nominatives. Nor is there much more fitness in any of the

rest. "The verb TO BE, \_through all\_," or even \_in any\_, of its parts, has

neither "\_always\_" nor \_usually\_ a case "\_expressed\_ or \_understood\_" after

it; and, even when there is a noun or a pronoun put after it, the case is,

in very many instances, not to be determined by that which "\_next\_" or

"\_immediately\_" precedes the verb. Examples: "A \_sect of freethinkers\_ is a

\_sum\_ of ciphers."--\_Bentley\_. "And \_I\_ am this \_day\_ weak, though anointed

\_king\_."--\_2 Sam.\_, iii, 39. "\_What\_ made \_Luther\_ a great \_man\_, was \_his\_

unshaken \_reliance\_ on God."--\_Kortz's Life of Luther\_, p. 13. "The devil

offers his service; \_He\_ is sent with a positive \_commission\_ to be a lying

\_spirit\_ in the mouth of all the prophets."--\_Calvin's Institutes\_, p. 131.

It is perfectly certain that in these four texts, the words \_sum, king,

reliance\_, and \_spirit\_, are \_nominatives\_, after the verb or participle;

and not \_objectives\_, as they must be, if there were any truth in the

common assertion, "that the two cases, which, in the construction of the

sentence, are \_the next\_ before and after it, must always be

alike."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 98. Not only may the nominative before the

verb be followed by an objective, but the nominative after it may be

preceded by a possessive; as, "Amos, the herdsman of \_Tekoa\_, was not a

\_prophet's\_ son."--"It is the \_king's\_ chapel, and it is the \_king's\_

court."--\_Amos\_, vii, 13. How ignorant then must that person be, who cannot

see the falsity of the instructions above cited! How careless the reader

who overlooks it!

NOTES TO RULE VI.

NOTE I.--The putting of a noun in an unknown case after a participle or a

participial noun, produces an anomaly which it seems better to avoid; for

the cases ought to be \_clear\_, even in exceptions to the common rules of

construction. Examples: (1.) "WIDOWHOOD, \_n.\_ The state \_of being a

widow\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ Say rather, "WIDOWHOOD, \_n.\_ The state of a

widow."--\_Johnson, Walker, Worcester\_. (2.) "I had a suspicion of the

\_fellow's\_ being a \_swindler\_/" Say rather, "I had a suspicion \_that the

fellow was a swindler\_." (3.) "To prevent \_its\_ being a dry \_detail\_ of

terms."--\_Buck\_. Better, "To prevent it \_from\_ being a dry detail of

terms." [361]

NOTE II.--The nominative which follows a verb or participle, ought to

accord in signification, either literally or figuratively, with the

preceding term which is taken for a sign of the same thing. Errors: (1.)

"\_To be convicted\_ of bribery, was then a crime altogether

unpardonable."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 265. To be convicted of a crime, is not

the crime itself; say, therefore, "\_Bribery\_ was then a \_crime\_ altogether

unpardonable." (2.) "The second person is the \_object\_ of the

Imperative."--\_Murray's Gram., Index\_, ii, 292. Say rather, "The second

person is the \_subject\_ of the imperative;" for the \_object\_ of a verb is

the word governed by it, and not its nominative.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE VI.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF PROPER IDENTITY.

"Who would not say, 'If it be \_me\_,' rather than, If it be

\_I\_?"--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 105.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the

pronoun \_me\_,--which comes after the neuter verb \_be\_, is in the objective

case, and does not agree with the pronoun \_it\_, the verb's nominative,[362]

which refers to the same thing. But, according to Rule 6th, "A noun or a

pronoun put after a verb or participle not transitive, agrees in case with

a preceding noun or pronoun referring to the same thing." Therefore, \_me\_

should be \_I\_; thus, "Who would not say, 'If it be \_I\_,' rather than, 'If

it be \_me\_?'"]

"Who is there? It is me."--\_Priestley, ib.\_, p. 104. "It is him."--\_Id.,

ib.\_, 104. "Are these the houses you were speaking of? Yes, they are

them."--\_Id., ib.\_, 104. "It is not me you are in love with."--\_Addison's

Spect.\_, No. 290; \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 104; and \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p.

203. "It cannot be me."--SWIFT: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 104. "To that which

once was thee."--PRIOR: \_ib.\_, 104. "There is but one man that she can

have, and that is me."--CLARISSA: \_ib.\_, 104. "We enter, as it were, into

his body, and become, in some measure, him."--ADAM SMITH: \_ib.\_, p. 105.

"Art thou proud yet? Ay, that I am not thee."--\_Shak., Timon\_. "He knew not

whom they were."--\_Milnes, Greek Gram.\_, p. 234. "Who do you think me to

be?"--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 108. "Whom do men say that I, the Son of man,

am?"--\_Matt.\_, xvi, 13. "But whom say ye that I am?"--\_Ib.\_, xvi,

15.--"Whom think ye that I am? I am not he."--\_Acts\_, xiii, 25. "No; I am

mistaken; I perceive it is not the person whom I supposed it was."--\_Winter

in London\_, ii, 66. "And while it is Him I serve, life is not without

value."--\_Zenobia\_, i, 76. "Without ever dreaming it was him."--\_Life of

Charles XII\_, p. 271. "Or he was not the illiterate personage whom he

affected to be."--\_Montgomery's Lect.\_ "Yet was he him, who was to be the

greatest apostle of the Gentiles."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 540. "Sweet was

the thrilling ecstacy; I know not if 'twas love, or thee."--\_Queen's

Wake\_, p. 14. "Time was, when none would cry, that oaf was me."--\_Dryden,

Prol.\_ "No matter where the vanquish'd be, nor whom."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B.

i, l. 676. "No, I little thought it had been him."--\_Life of Oration\_.

"That reverence and godly fear, whose object is 'Him who can destroy both

body and soul in hell.'"--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 312. "It is us that they

seek to please, or rather to astonish."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 28. "Let the

same be she that thou hast appointed for thy servant Isaac."--\_Gen.\_, xxiv,

14. "Although I knew it to be he."--\_Dickens's Notes\_, p. 9. "Dear gentle

youth, is't none but thee?"--\_Dorset's Poems\_, p. 4. "Whom do they say it

is?"--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §493.

"These are her garb, not her; they but express

Her form, her semblance, her appropriate dress."--\_Hannah More\_.

UNDER NOTE I.--THE CASE DOUBTFUL.

"I had no knowledge of there being any connexion between them."--\_Stone, on

Freemasonry\_, p. 25. "To promote iniquity in others, is nearly the same as

being the actors of it ourselves."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 170. "It must arise

from feeling delicately ourselves."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 330; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 248. "By reason of there not having been exercised a competent

physical power for their enforcement."--\_Mass. Legislature\_, 1839.

"PUPILAGE, \_n.\_ The state of being a scholar."--\_Johnson, Walker, Webster,

Worcester\_. "Then the other part's being the definition would make it

include all verbs of every description."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 343.

"John's being my friend,[363] saved me from inconvenience."--\_Ib.\_, p. 201.

"William's having become a judge, changed his whole demeanor."--\_Ib.\_, p.

201. "William's having been a teacher, was the cause of the interest which

he felt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 216. "The being but one among many stifleth the

chidings of conscience."--\_Book of Thoughts\_, p. 131. "As for its being

esteemed a close translalation [sic--KTH], I doubt not many have been led

into that error by the shortness of it."--\_Pope's Pref. to Homer\_. "All

presumption of death's being the destruction of living beings, must go upon

supposition that they are compounded, and so discerptible."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 63. "This argues rather their being proper

names."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 382. "But may it not be retorted, that its

being a gratification is that which excites our resentment?"--\_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, p. 145. "Under the common notion, of its being a system of the

whole poetical art."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 401. "Whose time or other

circumstances forbid their becoming classical scholars."--\_Literary

Convention\_, p. 113. "It would preclude the notion of his being a merely

fictitious personage."--\_Philological Museum\_, i, 446. "For, or under

pretence of their being heretics or infidels."--\_The Catholic Oath\_; Geo.

III, 31st. "We may here add Dr. Home's sermon on Christ's being the Object

of religious Adoration."--\_Relig. World\_, Vol. ii, p. 200. "To say nothing

of Dr. Priestley's being a strenuous advocate," &c.--\_Ib.\_, ii, 207. "By

virtue of Adam's being their public head."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 233. "Objections

against there being any such moral plan as this."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p.

57. "A greater instance of a man's being a blockhead."--\_Spect.\_, No. 520.

"We may insure or promote its being a happy state of existence to

ourselves."--\_Gurney's Evidences\_, p. 86. "By its often falling a victim to

the same kind of unnatural treatment."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 41.

"Their appearing foolishness is no presumption against this."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 189. "But what arises from their being offences; \_i. e\_. from

their being liable to be perverted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 185. "And he entered into a

certain man's house, named Justus, one that worshipped God."--\_Acts\_,

xviii, 7.

UNDER NOTE II.--OF FALSE IDENTIFICATION.

"But to be popular, he observes, is an ambiguous word."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 307. "The infinitive mood, or part of a sentence, is often the

nominative case to a verb."--\_L. Murray's Index, Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p.

290. "When any person, in speaking, introduces his own name, it is the

first person; as, 'I, James, of the city of Boston.'"--\_R. C. Smith's New

Gram.\_, p. 43. "The name of the person spoken to, is the second person; as,

'James, come to me.'"--\_Ibid.\_ "The name of the person or thing spoken of,

or about, is the third person; as, 'James has come.'"--\_Ibid.\_ "The object

[of a passive verb] is always its subject or nominative case."--\_Ib.\_, p.

62. "When a noun is in the nominative case to an active verb, it is the

actor."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 44. "And the person commanded, is its

nominative."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 120. "The first person is that who

speaks."--\_Pasquier's Lévizac\_, p. 91. "The Conjugation of a Verb is its

different variations or inflections throughout the Moods and

Tenses."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 80. "The first person is the speaker. The

second person is the one spoken to. The third person is the one spoken

of."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, Part i, p. 6; \_Hiley's\_, 18. "The first

person is the one that speaks, or the speaker."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, pp. 23

and 75. "The second person is the one that is spoken to, or

addressed."--\_Ibid.\_ "The third person is the one that is spoken of, or

that is the topic of conversation."--\_Ibid.\_ "\_I\_, is the first person

Singular. \_We\_, is the first person Plural."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 51;

\_Alger's, Ingersoll's\_, and \_many others\_. "\_Thou\_, is the second person

Singular. \_Ye\_ or \_you\_, is the second person Plural."--\_Ibid.\_ "\_He, she\_,

or \_it\_, is the third person Singular. \_They\_, is the third person

Plural."--\_Ibid.\_ "The nominative case is the actor, or subject of the

verb."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 43. "The noun \_John\_ is the actor, therefore

John is in the nominative case."--\_Ibid.\_ "The actor is always the

nominative case."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 62. "The nominative case is

always the agent or actor."--\_Mack's Gram.\_, p. 67. "Tell the part of

speech each name is."--\_J. Flint's Gram.\_, p. 6. "What number is \_boy\_?

Why? What number is \_pens\_? Why?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 27. "The speaker is the first

person, the person spoken to, the second person, and the person or thing

spoken of, is the third person."--\_Ib.\_, p. 26. "What nouns are masculine

gender? All males are masculine gender."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. "An interjection is

a sudden emotion of the mind."--\_Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 62.

RULE VII.--OBJECTIVES.

A Noun or a Pronoun made the object of a preposition, is governed by it in

the objective case: as, "The temple of \_fame\_ stands upon the \_grave\_: the

flame that burns upon its \_altars\_, is kindled from the \_ashes\_ of great

\_men\_"--\_Hazlitt\_.

"Life is His gift, from \_whom\_ whate'er life needs, With ev'ry good and

perfect \_gift\_, proceeds."--\_Cowper\_, Vol. i, p. 95.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE VII.

OBS. 1.--To this rule there are no exceptions; for prepositions, in

English, govern no other case than the objective.[364] But the learner

should observe that most of our prepositions may take the \_imperfect

participle\_ for their object, and some, the \_pluperfect\_, or \_preperfect\_;

as, "\_On opening\_ the trial they accused him \_of having defrauded\_

them."--"A quick wit, a nice judgment, &c., could not raise this man \_above

being received\_ only upon the foot \_of contributing\_ to mirth and

diversion."--\_Steele\_. And the preposition \_to\_ is often followed by an

\_infinitive verb\_; as, "When one sort of wind is said \_to whistle\_, and an

other \_to roar\_; when a serpent is said \_to hiss\_, a fly \_to buzz\_, and

falling timber \_to crash\_; when a stream is said \_to flow\_, and hail \_to

rattle\_; the analogy between the word and the thing signified, is plainly

discernible."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 55. But let it not be supposed that

participles or infinitives, when they are governed by prepositions, are

therefore in the \_objective case\_; for case is no attribute of either of

these classes of words: they are indeclinable in English, whatever be the

relations they assume. They are governed \_as participles\_, or \_as

infinitives\_, and not \_as cases\_. The mere fact of government is so far

from \_creating\_ the modification governed, that it necessarily presupposes

it to exist, and that it is something cognizable in etymology.

OBS. 2.--The brief assertion, that, "Prepositions govern the objective

case," which till very lately our grammarians have universally adopted as

their sole rule for both terms, the governing and the governed,--the

preposition and its object,--is, in respect to both, somewhat

exceptionable, being but partially and lamely applicable to either. It

neither explains the connecting nature of the preposition, nor applies to

all objectives, nor embraces all the terms which a preposition may govern.

It is true, that prepositions, when they introduce declinable words, or

words that have cases, always govern the objective; but the rule is liable

to be misunderstood, and is in fact often misapplied, as if it meant

something more than this. Besides, in no other instance do grammarians

attempt to parse both the governing word and the governed, by one and the

same rule. I have therefore placed the \_objects\_ of this government here,

where they belong in the order of the parts of speech, expressing the rule

in such terms as cannot be mistaken; and have also given, in its proper

place, a distinct rule for the construction of the preposition itself. See

Rule 23d.

OBS. 3.--Prepositions are sometimes \_elliptically\_ construed with

\_adjectives\_, the real object of the relation being thought to be some

objective noun understood: as, \_in vain, in secret, at first, on high\_; i.

e. \_in a vain manner, in secret places, at the first time, on high places\_.

Such phrases usually imply time, place, degree, or manner, and are

equivalent to adverbs. In parsing, the learner may supply the ellipsis.

OBS. 4.--In some phrases, a preposition seems to govern a \_perfect

participle\_; but these expressions are perhaps rather to be explained as

being elliptical: as, "To give it up \_for lost\_;"--"To take that \_for

granted\_ which is disputed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 109. That is,

perhaps, "To give it up for \_a thing\_ lost;"--"To take that for \_a thing\_

granted," &c. In the following passage the words \_ought\_ and \_should\_ are

employed in such a manner that it is difficult to say to what part of

speech they belong: "It is that very character of \_ought\_ and \_should\_

which makes justice a law to us; and the same character is applicable to

propriety, though perhaps more faintly than to justice."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 286. The meaning seems to be, "It is that very character

of \_being owed\_ and \_required, that\_ makes justice a law to us;" and this

mode of expression, as it is more easy to be \_parsed\_, is perhaps more

grammatical than his Lordship's. But, as preterits are sometimes put by

\_enallage\_ for participles, a reference of them to this figure may afford a

mode of explanation in parsing, whenever they are introduced by a

preposition, and not by a nominative: as, "A kind of conquest Cæsar made

here; but made not here his brag Of, \_came\_, and \_saw\_, and

\_overcame\_"--\_Shak., Cymb.\_, iii, 1. That is,--"of \_having come\_, and

\_seen\_, and \_overcome\_." Here, however, by assuming that a \_sentence\_ is

the object of the preposition, we may suppose the pronoun \_I\_ to be

understood, as \_ego\_ is in the bulletin referred to, "\_Veni, vidi, vici\_."

For, as a short sentence is sometimes made the subject of a verb, so is it

sometimes made the object of a preposition; as,

"Earth's highest station ends \_in, 'here he lies;'\_

And '\_dust to dust\_,' concludes her noblest song."--\_Young\_.

OBS. 5.--In some instances, prepositions precede \_adverbs\_; as, \_at once,

at unawares, from thence, from above, till now, till very lately, for once,

for ever\_. Here the adverb, though an indeclinable word, appears to be made

\_the object\_ of the preposition. It is in fact used substantively, and

governed by the preposition. The term \_forever\_ is often written as one

word, and, as such, is obviously an adverb. The rest are what some writers

would call \_adverbial phrases\_; a term not very consistent with itself, or

with the true idea of \_parsing\_. If different parts of speech are to be

taken together as having the nature of an adverb, they ought rather to

coalesce and be united; for the verb to \_parse\_, being derived from the

Latin \_pars\_, a \_part\_, implies in general a distinct recognition of the

elements or words of every phrase or sentence.

OBS. 6.--Nouns of \_time, measure, distance\_, or \_value\_, have often so

direct a relation to verbs or adjectives, that the prepositions which are

supposed to govern them, are usually suppressed; as, "We rode \_sixty miles\_

that day." That is,--"\_through\_ sixty miles \_on\_ that day." "The country is

not a \_farthing\_ richer."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 122. That is,--"richer

\_by\_ a farthing." "The error has been copied \_times\_ without

number."--\_Ib.\_, p. 281. That is,--"\_on\_ or \_at\_ times \_innumerable\_." "A

row of columns \_ten feet\_ high, and a row \_twice that height\_, require

different proportions." \_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 344. That is,--"high

\_to\_ ten feet," and, "a row \_of\_ twice that height." "\_Altus sex pedes\_,

High \_on\_ or \_at\_ six feet."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist of Europ. Lang.\_, ii, 150.

All such nouns are in the \_objective case\_, and, in parsing them, the

learner may supply the ellipsis;[365] or, perhaps it might be as well, to

say, as do B. H. Smart and some others, that the noun is an objective of

time, measure, or value, taken \_adverbially\_, and relating directly to the

verb or adjective qualified by it. Such expressions as, "A board of six

feet \_long\_,"--"A boy \_of\_ twelve years \_old\_," are wrong. Either strike

out the \_of\_, or say, "A board of six feet \_in length\_,"--"A boy of twelve

years \_of age\_;" because this preposition is not suited to the adjective,

nor is the adjective fit to qualify the time or measure.

OBS. 7.--After the adjectives \_like, near\_, and \_nigh\_, the preposition

\_to\_ or \_unto\_ is often understood;[366] as, "It is \_like\_ [\_to\_ or \_unto\_]

silver."--\_Allen\_. "How \_like\_ the former."--\_Dryden\_. "\_Near\_ yonder

copse."--\_Goldsmith\_. "\_Nigh\_ this recess."--\_Garth\_. As similarity and

proximity are \_relations\_, and not \_qualities\_, it might seem proper to

call \_like, near\_, and \_nigh\_, prepositions; and some grammarians have so

classed the last two. Dr. Johnson seems to be inconsistent in calling

\_near\_ a preposition, in the phrase, "\_So near\_ thy heart," and an

adjective, in the phrase, "Being \_near\_ their master." See his \_Quarto

Dict.\_ I have not placed them with the prepositions, for the following four

reasons: (1.) Because they are sometimes \_compared\_; (2.) Because they

sometimes have \_adverbs\_ evidently relating to them; (3.) Because the

preposition \_to\_ or \_unto\_ is sometimes expressed after them; and (4.)

Because the words which \_usually\_ stand for them in the learned languages,

are clearly \_adjectives\_.[367] But \_like\_, when it expresses similarity of

\_manner\_, and \_near\_ and \_nigh\_, when they express proximity of \_degree\_,

are \_adverbs\_.

OBS. 8.--The word \_worth\_ is often followed by an objective, or a

participle, which it appears to govern; as, "If your arguments produce no

conviction, they are \_worth\_ nothing to me."--\_Beattie\_. "To reign is

\_worth\_ ambition."--\_Milton\_. "This is life indeed, life \_worth\_

preserving."--\_Addison\_. It is not easy to determine to what part of speech

\_worth\_ here belongs. Dr. Johnson calls it an \_adjective\_, but says nothing

of the \_object\_ after it, which some suppose to be governed by \_of\_

understood. In this supposition, it is gratuitously assumed, that \_worth\_

is equivalent to \_worthy\_, after which \_of\_ should be expressed; as,

"Whatsoever is \_worthy of\_ their love, is \_worth\_ their anger."--\_Denham\_.

But as \_worth\_ appears to have no certain characteristic of an adjective,

some call it a \_noun\_, and suppose a double ellipsis; as, "'My knife is

worth a shilling;' i. e. 'My knife is \_of the\_ worth of a

shilling.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 163. "'The book is worth that sum;' that

is, 'The book is (\_the\_) worth (\_of\_) that \_sum\_;' 'It is worth \_while\_;'

that is, 'It is (\_the\_) worth (\_of the\_) while.'"--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 54.

This is still less satisfactory;[368] and as the whole appears to be mere

guess-work, I see no good reason why \_worth\_ is not a \_preposition\_,

governing the noun or participle.[369] If an \_adverb\_ precede \_worth\_, it

may as well be referred to the foregoing verb, as when it occurs before any

other preposition: as, "It \_is richly worth\_ the money."--"It \_lies

directly before\_ your door." Or if we admit that an adverb sometimes

relates to this word, the same thing may be as true of other prepositions;

as, "And this is a lesson which, to the greatest part of mankind, is, I

think, \_very well worth\_ learning."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 303. "He sees let

down from the ceiling, \_exactly over\_ his head, a glittering sword, hung by

a single hair."--\_Murray's E. Reader\_, p. 33. See Exception 3d to Rule

21st.

OBS. 9.--Both Dr. Johnson and Horne Tooke, (who never agreed if they could

help it,) unite in saying that \_worth\_, in the phrases, "Wo \_worth\_ the

man,"--"Wo \_worth\_ the day," and the like, is from the imperative of the

Saxon verb \_wyrthan\_ or \_weorthan\_, to \_be\_; i. e., "Wo \_be\_ [\_to\_] the

man," or, "Wo \_betide\_ the man," &c. And the latter affirms, that, as the

preposition \_by\_ is from the imperative of \_beon\_, to \_be\_, so \_with\_,

(though admitted to be sometimes from \_withan\_, to join,) is often no other

than this same imperative verb \_wyrth\_ or \_worth\_: if so, the three words,

\_by, with\_, and \_worth\_, were originally synonymous, and should now be

referred at least to one and the same class. The \_dative case\_, or oblique

object, which they governed as \_Saxon verbs\_, becomes their proper object,

when taken as \_English prepositions\_; and in this also they appear to be

alike. \_Worth\_, then, when it signifies \_value\_, is a common noun; but when

it signifies \_equal in value to\_, it governs an objective, and has the

usual characteristics of a preposition. Instances may perhaps be found in

which \_worth\_ is an adjective, meaning \_valuable\_ or \_useful\_, as in the

following lines:

"They glow'd, and grew more intimate with God,

\_More worth to\_ men, more joyous to themselves."

--\_Young\_, N. ix, l. 988.

In one instance, the poet Campbell appears to have used the word

\_worthless\_ as a preposition:

"Eyes a mutual soul confessing,

Soon you'll make them grow

Dim, and \_worthless your possessing\_,

Not with age, but woe!"

OBS. 10.--After verbs of \_giving, paying, procuring\_, and some others,

there is usually an ellipsis of \_to\_ or \_for\_ before the objective of the

person; as, "Give [\_to\_] \_him\_ water to drink."--"Buy [\_for\_] \_me\_ a

knife."--"Pay [\_to\_] \_them\_ their wages." So in the exclamation, "Wo is

\_me\_!" meaning, "Wo is \_to\_ me!" This ellipsis occurs chiefly before the

personal pronouns, and before such nouns as come between the verb and its

direct object; as, "Whosoever killeth you, will think that he doeth [\_to\_]

\_God\_ service."--\_John\_, xvi, 2. "Who brought [\_to\_] her \_masters\_ much

gain by soothsaying."--\_Acts\_, xvi, 16. "Because he gave not [\_to\_] \_God\_

the glory."--\_Ib.\_, xii, 23. "Give [\_to\_] \_me\_ leave to allow [\_to\_]

\_myself\_ no respite from labour."--\_Spect.\_, No. 454. "And the sons of

Joseph, which were born [\_to\_] \_him\_ in Egypt, were two souls."--\_Gen.\_,

xlvi, 27. This elliptical construction of a few objectives, is what remains

to us of the ancient Saxon dative case. If the order of the words be

changed, the preposition must be inserted; as, "Pray do my service \_to\_ his

majesty."--\_Shak\_. The doctrine inculcated by several of our grammarians,

that, "Verbs of \_asking, giving, teaching\_, and \_some others\_, are often

employed to govern two objectives," (\_Wells\_, §215,) I have, under a

preceding rule, discountenanced; preferring the supposition, which appears

to have greater weight of authority, as well as stronger support from

reason, that, in the instances cited in proof of such government, a

preposition is, in fact, understood. Upon this question of ellipsis,

depends, in all such instances, our manner of parsing one of the objective

words.

OBS. 11.--In \_dates\_, as they are usually written, there is much

abbreviation; and several nouns of place and time are set down in the

objective case, without the prepositions which govern them: as, "New York,

Wednesday, 20th October, 1830."--\_Journal of Literary Convention\_. That is,

"\_At\_ New York, \_on\_ Wednesday, \_the\_ 20th \_day of\_ October, \_in the year\_

1830."

NOTE TO RULE VII.

An objective noun of time or measure, if it qualifies a subsequent

adjective, must not also be made an adjunct to a preceding noun; as, "To an

infant \_of\_ only two or three years \_old\_."--\_Dr. Wayland\_. Expunge \_of\_,

or for \_old\_ write \_of age\_. The following is right: "The vast army of the

Canaanites, \_nine hundred chariots strong\_, covered the level plain of

Esdraelon."--\_Milman's Jews\_, Vol. i, p. 159. See Obs. 6th above.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE VII. UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF THE OBJECTIVE IN

FORM.

"But I do not remember who they were for."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 265.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_who\_ is in the nominative case,

and is made the object of the preposition \_for\_. But, according to Rule

7th, "A noun or a pronoun made the object of a preposition, is governed by

it in the objective case." Therefore, \_who\_ should be \_whom\_; thus, "But I

do not remember \_whom\_ they were for."]

"But if you can't help it, who do you complain of?"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_,

p. 137. "Who was it from? and what was it about?"--\_Edgeworth's Frank\_, p.

72. "I have plenty of victuals, and, between you and I, something in a

corner."--\_Day's Sandford and Merton\_. "The upper one, who I am now about

to speak of."--\_Hunt's Byron\_, p. 311. "And to poor we, thine enmity's most

capital."--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p. 201. "Which thou dost confess, were

fit for thee to use, as they to claim."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196. "To beg of thee, it

is my more dishonour, than thou of them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 197. "There are still

a few who, like thou and I, drink nothing but water."--\_Gil Blas\_, Vol. i,

p. 104. "Thus, I \_shall\_ fall; Thou \_shalt\_ love thy neighbour; He \_shall\_

be rewarded, express no resolution on the part of \_I, thou,

he\_."--\_Lennie's E. Gram.\_, p. 22; \_Bullions's\_, 32. "So saucy with the

hand of she here--What's her name?"--\_Shak., Ant. and Cleop.\_, Act iii, Sc.

11. "All debts are cleared between you and I."--\_Id., Merchant of Venice\_,

Act iii, Sc. 2. "Her price is paid, and she is sold like thou."--\_Milman's

Fall of Jerusalem\_. "Search through all the most flourishing era's of

Greece."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 16. "The family of the Rudolph's had been

long distinguished."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. v, p. 54. "It will do well enough

for you and I."--\_Castle Rackrent\_, p. 120. "The public will soon

discriminate between him who is the sycophant, and he who is the

teacher."--\_Chazotte's Essay\_, p. 10. "We are still much at a loss who

civil power belongs to."--\_Locke\_. "What do you call it? and who does it

belong to?"--\_Collier's Cebes\_. "He had received no lessons from the

Socrates's, the Plato's, and the Confucius's of the age."--\_Hatter's

Letters\_. "I cannot tell who to compare them to."--\_Bunyan's P. P.\_, p.

128. "I see there was some resemblance betwixt this good man and

I."--\_Pilgrim's Progress\_, p. 298. "They by that means have brought

themselves into the hands and house of I do not know who."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196.

"But at length she said there was a great deal of difference between Mr.

Cotton and we."--\_Hutchinson's Mass.\_, ii, 430. "So you must ride on

horseback after we." [370]--MRS. GILPIN: \_Cowper\_, i, 275. "A separation

must soon take place between our minister and I."--\_Werter\_, p. 109. "When

she exclaimed on Hastings, you, and I."--\_Shakspeare\_. "To who? to thee?

What art thou?"--\_Id.\_ "That they should always bear the certain marks who

they came from."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 221.

"This life has joys for you and I,

And joys that riches ne'er could buy."--\_Burns\_.

UNDER THE NOTE--OF TIME OR MEASURE.

"Such as almost every child of ten years old knows."--\_Town's Analysis\_, p.

4. "One winter's school of four months, will carry any industrious scholar,

of ten or twelve years old, completely through this book."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12.

"A boy of six years old may be taught to speak as correctly, as Cicero did

before the Roman Senate."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 27. "A lad of about

twelve years old, who was taken captive by the Indians."--\_Ib.\_, p. 235.

"Of nothing else but that individual white figure of five inches long which

is before him."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 288. "Where lies the fault, that

boys of eight or ten years old, are with great difficulty made to

understand any of its principles."--\_Guy's Gram.\_, p. v. "Where language of

three centuries old is employed."--\_Booth's Introd. to Dict.\_, p. 21. "Let

a gallows be made of fifty cubits high."--\_Esther\_, v. 14. "I say to this

child of nine years old bring me that hat, he hastens and brings it

me."--\_Osborn's Key\_, p. 3. "He laid a floor twelve feet long, and nine

feet wide; that is, over the extent \_of\_ twelve feet long, and \_of\_ nine

feet wide."--\_Merchants School Gram.\_, p. 95. "The Goulah people are a

tribe of about fifty thousand strong."--\_Examiner\_, No. 71. RULE

VIII.--NOM. ABSOLUTE.

A Noun or a Pronoun is put absolute in the nominative, when its case

depends on no other word: as, \_"He failing, who shall meet

success?"\_--"Your \_fathers\_, where are they? and the \_prophets\_, do they

live forever?"--\_Zech.\_, i, 5. "Or \_I\_ only and \_Barnabas\_, have not we

power to forbear working?"--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 6. "Nay but, O man, who art thou

that repliest against God?"--\_Rom.\_, ix, 20. "O rare \_we!\_"--\_Cowper\_.

"Miserable \_they!\_"--\_Thomson\_.

"The \_hour\_ conceal'd, and so remote the \_fear\_, Death still draws nearer,

never seeming near."--\_Pope\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE VIII.

OBS. 1.--Many grammarians make an idle distinction between the nominative

\_absolute\_ and the nominative \_independent\_, as if these epithets were not

synonymous; and, at the same time, they are miserably deficient in

directions for disposing of the words so employed. Their two rules do not

embrace more than one half of those \_frequent\_ examples in which the case

of the noun or pronoun depends on no other word. Of course, the remaining

half cannot be parsed by any of the rules which they give. The lack of a

comprehensive rule, like the one above, is a great and glaring defect in

all the English grammars that the author has seen, except his own, and such

as are indebted to him for such a rule. It is proper, however, that the

different forms of expression which are embraced in this general rule,

should be discriminated, one from an other, by the scholar: let him

therefore, in parsing any nominative absolute, tell \_how it is put so\_;

whether with a \_participle\_, by direct \_address\_, by \_pleonasm\_, or by

\_exclamation\_. For, in discourse, a noun or a pronoun is put absolute in

the nominative, after \_four modes\_, or under the following \_four

circumstances\_: (of which Murray's "case absolute," or "nominative

absolute," contains only the first:)

I. When, \_with a participle\_, it is used to express a cause, or a

concomitant fact; as, "I say, \_this being so\_, the \_law being broken\_,

justice takes place."--\_Law and Grace\_, p. 27. \_"Pontius Pilate being\_

governor of Judea, and \_Herod being\_ tetrarch of Galilee, and his \_brother\_

Philip tetrarch of Iturea." &c.--\_Luke\_, iii, 1. "I \_being\_ in the way, the

Lord led me to the house of my master's brethren."--\_Gen.\_, xxiv, 27.

---------"While shame, \_thou looking on\_,

Shame to be overcome or overreach'd,

Would utmost vigor raise."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. ix, 1, 312.

II. When, \_by direct address\_, it is put in the second person, and set off

from the verb, by a comma or an exclamation point; as, "At length, \_Seged\_,

reflect and be wise."--\_Dr. Johnson.\_ "It may be, \_drunkard, swearer, liar,

thief\_, thou dost not think of this."--\_Law and Grace\_, p. 27.

"\_This said\_, he form'd thee, \_Adam!\_ thee, O \_man!\_

\_Dust\_ of the ground, and in thy nostrils breath'd

The breath of life."--\_Milton's Paradise Lost\_, B. vii, l. 524.

III. When, by \_pleonasm\_, it is introduced abruptly for the sake of

emphasis, and is not made the subject or the object of any verb; as, "\_He\_

that hath, to him shall be given."--\_Mark\_, iv, 25. "\_He\_ that is holy, let

him be holy still."--\_Rev.\_, xxii, 11. "\_Gad\_, a troop shall overcome

him."--\_Gen.\_, xlix, 19. "The \_north\_ and the \_south\_, thou hast created

them."--\_Psalms\_, lxxxix, 12. "And \_they\_ that have believing masters, let

them not despise them."--\_1 Tim.\_, vi, 2. "And the \_leper\_ in whom the

plague is, his clothes shall be rent, and his head bare."--\_Levit.\_, xiii,

45. "\_They\_ who serve me with adoration,--I am in them, and they [are] in

me."--R. W. EMERSON: \_Liberator\_, No. 996.

-------------------------"What may this mean,

That thou, dead corse, again in complete steel,

Revisitst thus the glimpses of the moon,

Making night hideous; and, we fools of nature,[371]

So horribly to shake our disposition

With thoughts beyond the reaches of our souls?"--\_Shak. Hamlet.\_

IV. When, \_by mere exclamation\_, it is used without address, and without

other words expressed or implied to give it construction; as, "And the Lord

passed by before him, and proclaimed, \_the Lord, the Lord God\_, merciful

and gracious, long-suffering, and abundant in goodness and truth."

\_Exodus\_, xxxiv, 6. "O \_the depth\_ of the riches both of the wisdom and

knowledge of God!"--\_Rom.\_, xi, 33. "I should not like to see her limping

back, Poor \_beast\_!"--\_Southey\_.

"Oh! deep enchanting prelude to repose,

The dawn of bliss, the \_twilight\_ of our woes!"--\_Campbell\_.

OBS. 2.--The nominative put absolute with a participle, is often equivalent

to a dependent clause commencing with \_when, while, if, since\_, or

\_because\_. Thus, "I being a child," may be equal to, "When I was a child,"

or, "Because I was a child." Here, in lieu of the nominative, the Greeks

used the genitive case, and the Latins, the ablative. Thus, the phrase,

"[Greek: Kai hysteræsantos oinou]," "\_And the wine failing\_," is rendered

by Montanus, "\_Et deficiente vino\_;" but by Beza, "\_Et cum defecisset

vinum\_;" and in our Bible, "\_And when they wanted wine\_."--\_John\_, ii, 3.

After a noun or a pronoun thus put absolute, the participle \_being\_ is

frequently understood, especially if an adjective or a like case come after

the participle; as,

"They left their bones beneath unfriendly skies,

His worthless absolution [\_being\_] all the prize."

--\_Cowper\_, Vol. i, p. 84.

"Alike in ignorance, \_his reason\_ [------] \_such\_,

Whether he thinks too little or too much."--\_Pope, on Man\_.

OBS. 3.--The case which is put absolute in addresses or invocations, is

what in the Latin and Greek grammars is called \_the Vocative\_. Richard

Johnson says, "The only use of the Vocative Case, is, to call upon a

Person, or a thing put Personally, which we speak to, to give notice to

what we direct our Speech; and this is therefore, properly speaking, the

\_only Case absolute or independent\_ which we may make use of without

respect to any other Word."--\_Gram. Commentaries\_, p. 131. This remark,

however, applies not justly to our language; for, with us, the vocative

case, is unknown, or not distinguished from the nominative. In English, all

nouns of the second person are either put absolute in the nominative,

according to Rule 8th, or in apposition with their own pronouns placed

before them, according to Rule 3d: as, "This is the stone which was set at

nought of \_you builders\_."--\_Acts\_, iv, 11. "How much rather ought \_you

receivers\_ to be considered as abandoned and execrable!"--\_Clarkson's

Essay\_, p. 114.

"Peace! \_minion\_, peace! it boots not me to hear

The selfish counsel of \_you hangers-on\_."

--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 189.

"Ye \_Sylphs\_ and \_Sylphids\_, to your chief give ear;

\_Fays, Faries, Genii, Elves\_, and Dæmons, hear!"

--\_Pope, R. L.\_, ii, 74.

OBS. 4.--The case of nouns used in exclamations, or in mottoes and

abbreviated sayings, often depends, or may be conceived to depend, on

something \_understood\_; and, when their construction can be satisfactorily

explained on the principle of ellipsis, they are \_not put absolute\_, unless

the ellipsis be that of the participle. The following examples may perhaps

be resolved in this manner, though the expressions will lose much of their

vivacity: "A \_horse\_! a \_horse\_! my \_kingdom\_ for a horse!"--\_Shak.\_ "And

he said unto his father, My \_head\_! my \_head\_!"--\_2 Kings\_, iv, 19. "And

Samson said, With the jaw-bone of an ass, \_heaps\_ upon heaps, with the jaw

of an ass, have I slain a thousand men."--\_Judges\_, xv, 16. "Ye have heard

that it hath been said, An \_eye\_ for an eye, and a \_tooth\_ for a

tooth."--\_Matt.\_, v, 38. "\_Peace\_, be still."--\_Mark\_, iv, 39. "One God,

\_world\_ without end. Amen."--\_Com. Prayer\_.

"\_My fan\_, let others say, who laugh at toil;

\_Fan! hood! glove! scarf!\_ is her laconic style."--\_Young\_.

OBS. 5.--"Such Expressions as, \_Hand to Hand, Face to Face, Foot to Foot\_,

are of the nature of Adverbs, and are of elliptical Construction: For the

Meaning is, \_Hand\_ OPPOSED \_to Hand\_, &c."--\_W. Ward's Gram.\_, p. 100. This

learned and ingenious author seems to suppose the former noun to be here

put absolute with a participle understood; and this is probably the best

way of explaining the construction both of that word and of the preposition

that follows it. So Samson's phrase, "\_heaps upon heaps\_," may mean, "heaps

\_being piled\_ upon heaps;" and Scott's, "\_man to man\_, and \_steel to

steel\_," may be interpreted, "\_man being opposed\_ to man, and \_steel being

opposed\_ to steel:"

"Now, man to man, and steel to steel,

A chieftain's vengeance thou shalt feel."--\_Lady of the Lake\_.

OBS. 6.--Cobbett, after his own hasty and dogmatical manner, rejects the

whole theory of nominatives absolute, and teaches his "soldiers, sailors,

apprentices, and ploughboys," that, "The supposition, that there can be a

noun, or pronoun, which has reference to \_no\_ verb, and \_no preposition\_,

is certainly a mistake."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 201. To sustain his

position, he lays violent hands upon the plain truth, and even trips

himself up in the act. Thus: "For want of a little thought, as to the

matter immediately before us, some grammarians have found out '\_an absolute

case\_,' as they call it; and Mr. Lindley Murray gives an instance of it in

these words: '\_Shame being lost\_, all virtue is lost.' The full meaning of

this sentence is this: '\_It being\_, or \_the state of things being such,

that\_ shame \_is\_ lost, all virtue is lost.'"--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 191.

Again: "There must, you will bear in mind, always be a verb expressed or

understood. One would think, that this was not the case in [some instances:

as,] '\_Sir\_, I beg you to give me a bit of bread.' The sentence which

follows the \_Sir\_, is complete; but the \_Sir\_ appears to stand wholly

without connexion. However, the full meaning is this: 'I beg you, \_who are

a Sir\_, to give me a bit of bread.' Now, if you take time to reflect a

little on this matter, you will never be puzzled for a moment by those

detached words, to suit which grammarians have invented \_vocative cases\_

and \_cases absolute\_, and a great many other appellations, with which they

puzzle themselves, and confuse and bewilder and torment those who read

their books."--\_Ib.\_, Let. xix, ¶¶ 225 and 226. All this is just like

Cobbett. But, let his admirers reflect on the matter as long as they

please, the two \_independent\_ nominatives \_it\_ and \_state\_, in the text,

"\_It being\_, or the state of things \_being\_ such," will forever stand a

glaring confutation both of his doctrine and of his censure: "the \_case

absolute\_" is there still! He has, in fact, only converted the single

example into a double one!

OBS. 7.--The Irish philologer, J. W. Wright, is even more confident than

Cobbett, in denouncing "\_the case absolute\_;" and more severe in his

reprehension of "Grammarians in general, and Lowth and Murray in

particular," for entertaining the idea of such a case. "Surprise must

cease," says he, "on an acquaintance with the fact, that persons who imbibe

such fantastical doctrine \_should be destitute of sterling information\_ on

the subject of English grammar.--The English language is a stranger to this

case. We speak thus, with confidence, conscious of the justness of \_our\_

opinion:--an opinion, not precipitately formed, but one which is the result

of mature and deliberate inquiry. '\_Shame being lost\_, all virtue is lost:'

The meaning of this is,--'\_When\_ shame \_is being lost\_, all virtue is

lost.' Here, the words \_is being lost\_ form \_the true present tense\_ of the

passive voice; in which voice, all verbs, thus expressed, are

\_unsuspectedly\_ situated: thus, agreeing with the noun \_shame\_, as the

nominative of the first member of the sentence."--\_Wright's Philosophical

Gram.\_, p. 192. With all his deliberation, this gentleman has committed one

oversight here, which, as it goes to contradict his scheme of the passive

verb, some of his sixty venerable commenders ought to have pointed out to

him. My old friend, the "Professor of \_Elocution\_ in Columbia College," who

finds by this work of "superior excellence," that "the nature of the

\_verb\_, the most difficult part of grammar, has been, at length,

\_satisfactorily explained\_," ought by no means, after his "very attentive

examination" of the book, to have left this service to me. In the clause,

"all virtue \_is lost\_," the passive verb "\_is lost\_" has the form which

Murray gave it--the form which, till within a year or two, \_all men\_

supposed to be the only right one; but, according to this new philosophy of

the language, all men have been as much in error in this matter, as in

their notion of the nominative absolute. If Wright's theory of the verb is

correct, the only just form of the foregoing expression is, "all virtue \_is

being lost\_." If this central position is untenable, his management of the

nominative absolute falls of course. To me, the inserting of the word

\_being\_ into all our passive verbs, seems the most monstrous absurdity ever

broached in the name of grammar. The threescore certifiers to the accuracy

of that theory, have, I trow, only recorded themselves as so many

\_ignoramuses\_; for there are more than threescore myriads of better

judgements against them.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE VIII.

NOUNS OR PRONOUNS PUT ABSOLUTE.

"Him having ended his discourse, the assembly dispersed."--\_Brown's Inst.\_,

p. 190.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_him\_, whose case depends on no

other word, is in the objective case. But, according to Rule 8th, "A noun

or a pronoun is put absolute in the nominative, when its case depends on no

other word." Therefore, \_him\_ should be \_he\_; thus, "\_He\_ having ended his

discourse, the assembly dispersed."]

"Me being young, they deceived

me."--\_Inst. E. Gram.\_, p. 190. "Them refusing to comply, I

withdrew."--\_Ib.\_ "Thee being present, he would not tell what he

knew."--\_Ib.\_ "The child is lost; and me, whither shall I go?"--\_Ib.\_ "Oh!

happy us, surrounded with so many blessings."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 187;

\_Merchant's\_, 197; \_Smith's New Gram.\_, 96; \_Farnum's\_, 63. "'Thee, too!

Brutus, my son!' cried Cæsar, overcome."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 190. "Thee!

Maria! and so late! and who is thy companion?"--\_New-York Mirror\_, Vol. x,

p. 353. "How swiftly our time passes away! and ah! us, how little concerned

to improve it!"--\_Comly's Gram., Key\_, p. 192.

"There all thy gifts and graces we display,

Thee, only thee, directing all our way."

CHAPTER IV.--ADJECTIVES.

The syntax of the English Adjective is fully embraced in the following

brief rule, together with the exceptions, observations, and notes, which

are, in due order, subjoined.

RULE IX.--ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns: as, "\_Miserable\_ comforters are ye

\_all\_"--\_Job\_, xvi, 2. "\_No worldly\_ enjoyments are \_adequate\_ to the

\_high\_ desires and powers of an \_immortal\_ spirit."--\_Blair\_.

"Whatever faction's \_partial\_ notions are,

\_No\_ hand is wholly \_innocent\_ in war."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. vii, l. 191.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

An adjective sometimes relates to a \_phrase\_ or \_sentence\_ which is made

the subject of an intervening verb; as, "\_To insult the afflicted\_, is

\_impious\_"--\_Dillwyn\_. "\_That he should refuse\_, is not \_strange\_"--"\_To

err\_ is \_human\_." \_Murray\_ says, "\_Human\_ belongs to its substantive

'nature' understood."--\_Gram.\_, p. 233. From this I dissent.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

In combined arithmetical numbers, one adjective often relates \_to an

other\_, and the whole phrase, to a subsequent noun; as, "\_One thousand four

hundred and fifty-six\_ men."--"Six dollars and \_eighty-seven and a half\_

cents for \_every five\_ days' service."--"In the \_one hundred and

twenty-second\_ year."--"\_One seven\_ times more than it was wont to be

heated."--\_Daniel\_, iii, 19.

EXCEPTION THIRD.

With an infinitive or a participle denoting being or action in the

abstract, an adjective is sometimes also taken \_abstractly\_; (that is,

without reference to any particular noun, pronoun, or other subject;) as,

"To be \_sincere\_, is to be \_wise, innocent\_, and \_safe\_."--\_Hawkesworth\_.

"\_Capacity\_ marks the abstract quality of being \_able\_ to receive or

hold."--\_Crabb's Synonymes\_. "Indeed, the main secret of being \_sublime\_,

is to say great things in few and plain words."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 215.

"Concerning being \_free\_ from sin in heaven, there is no

question."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 437. Better: "Concerning \_freedom\_ from

sin," &c.

EXCEPTION FOURTH.

Adjectives are sometimes substituted for their corresponding abstract

nouns; (perhaps, in most instances, \_elliptically\_, like Greek neuters;)

as, "The sensations of \_sublime\_ and \_beautiful\_ are not always

distinguished by very distant boundaries."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 47. That

is, "of \_sublimity\_ and \_beauty\_." "The faults opposite to \_the sublime\_

are chiefly two: \_the frigid\_, and \_the bombast\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 44. Better:

"The faults opposite to \_sublimity\_, are chiefly two; \_frigidity\_ and

\_bombast\_." "Yet the ruling character of the nation was that of \_barbarous\_

and \_cruel\_."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 26. That is, "of \_barbarity\_ and

\_cruelty\_." "In a word, \_agreeable\_ and \_disagreeable\_ are qualities of the

objects we perceive," &c.--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 99. "\_Polished\_, or

\_refined\_, was the idea which the author had in view."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

219.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE IX.

OBS. 1.--Adjectives often relate to nouns or pronouns \_understood\_; as, "A

new sorrow recalls \_all\_ the \_former\_" [sorrows].--\_Art of Thinking\_, p.

31. [The place] "\_Farthest\_ from him is best."--\_Milton, P. L.\_ "To whom

they all gave heed, from the \_least\_ [person] to the \_greatest\_"

[person].--\_Acts\_, viii, 10. "The Lord your God is God of gods, and Lord of

lords, a great God, a \_mighty\_ [God], and a \_terrible\_" [God].--\_Deut.\_, x,

17. "Every one can distinguish an \_angry\_ from a \_placid\_, a \_cheerful\_

from a \_melancholy\_, a \_thoughtful\_ from a \_thoughtless\_, and a \_dull\_ from

a penetrating, countenance."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, p. 192. Here the

word \_countenance\_ is understood seven times; for eight different

countenances are spoken of. "He came unto his \_own\_ [possessions], and his

\_own\_ [men] received him not."--\_John\_, i, 11. The \_Rev. J. G. Cooper\_, has

it: "He came unto his own (\_creatures\_,) and his own (\_creatures\_) received

him not."--\_Pl. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 44. This ambitious editor of Virgil,

abridger of Murray, expounder of the Bible, and author of several "new and

improved" grammars, (of different languages,) should have understood this

text, notwithstanding the obscurity of our version. "[Greek: Eis ta idia

ælthe. kai oi idioi auton ou parelabon]."--"In \_propria\_ venit, et

\_proprii\_ eum non receperunt."--\_Montanus\_. "Ad \_sua\_ venit, et sui eum non

exceperunt."--\_Beza\_. "Il est venu \_chez soi\_; et \_les siens\_ ne l'ont

point reçu."--\_French Bible\_. Sometimes the construction of the adjective

involves an ellipsis of \_several words\_, and those perhaps the principal

parts of the clause; as, "The sea appeared to be agitated more than [in

that degree \_which\_ is] \_usual\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 217. "During the

course of the sentence, the scene should be changed as little as [in the

least] \_possible\_" [degree].--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 107; \_Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, p. 312.

"Presumptuous man! the reason wouldst thou find,

Why [\_thou art\_] form'd so \_weak\_, so \_little\_, and so \_blind\_"

--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 2.--Because \_qualities\_ belong only to \_things\_, most grammarians

teach, that, "\_Adjectives\_ are capable of being added \_to nouns

only\_."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 26. Or, as Murray expresses the doctrine:

"Every adjective, and every adjective pronoun, \_belongs to a substantive\_,

expressed or understood."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 161. "The adjective \_always\_

relates to a \_substantive\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 169. This teaching, which is alike

repugnant to the true \_definition\_ of an adjective, to the true \_rule\_ for

its construction, and to \_all the exceptions\_ to this rule, is but a sample

of that hasty sort of induction, which is ever jumping to false conclusions

for want of a fair comprehension of the facts in point. The position would

not be tenable, even if all our \_pronouns\_ were admitted to be \_nouns\_, or

"\_substantives\_;" and, if these two parts of speech are to be

distinguished, the consequence must be, that Murray supposes a countless

number of unnecessary and absurd \_ellipses.\_ It is sufficiently evident,

that in the construction of sentences, adjectives often relate immediately

to \_pronouns\_, and only through them to the nouns which they represent.

Examples: "I should like to know who has been carried off, except \_poor

dear me\_."--\_Byron\_. "To \_poor us\_ there is not much hope

remaining."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p 204. "It is the final pause \_which

alone\_, on many occasions, marks the difference between prose and

verse."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 260. "And sometimes after \_them

both\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196. "All men hail'd \_me happy\_."--\_Milton\_. "To receive

\_unhappy me\_."--\_Dryden\_. "Superior to \_them all\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

419. "\_They\_ returned to their own country, \_full\_ of the discoveries which

they had made."--\_Ib.\_, p. 350. "\_All ye\_ are brethren."--\_Matt.\_, xxiii,

8. "And \_him only\_ shalt thou serve."--\_Matt.\_, iv, 10.

"Go \_wiser thou\_, and in thy scale of sense

Weigh thy opinion against Providence."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 3.--When an adjective follows a finite verb, and is not followed by a

noun, it generally relates to the subject of the verb; as, "\_I\_ am \_glad\_

that the \_door\_ is made \_wide\_."--"An unbounded \_prospect\_ doth not long

continue \_agreeable\_."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 244. "Every thing which

is \_false, vicious\_, or \_unworthy\_, is \_despicable\_ to him, though all the

world should approve it."--\_Spectator\_, No. 520. Here \_false, vicious\_, and

\_unworthy\_, relate to \_which\_; and \_despicable\_ relates to \_thing\_. The

practice of Murray and his followers, of supplying a "substantive" in all

such cases, is absurd. "When the Adjective forms the \_Attribute\_ of a

Proposition, it belongs to the noun [or pronoun] which serves as the

\_Subject\_ of the Proposition, and cannot be joined to any other noun, since

it is of the Subject that we affirm the quality expressed by this

Adjective."--\_De Sacy, on General Gram.\_, p. 37. In some peculiar phrases,

however, such as, \_to fall short of, to make bold with, to set light by\_,

the adjective has such a connexion with the verb, that it may seem

questionable how it ought to be explained in parsing. Examples: (1.) "This

latter mode of expression falls \_short\_ of the force and vehemence of the

former."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 353. Some will suppose the word \_short\_

to be here used \_adverbially\_, or to qualify \_falls\_ only; but perhaps it

may as well be parsed as an adjective, forming a predicate with "\_falls\_,"

and relating to "\_mode\_," the nominative. (2.) "And that I have made so

\_bold\_ with thy glorious Majesty."--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 156. This

expression is perhaps elliptical: it may mean, "that I have made \_myself\_

so bold," &c. (3.) "Cursed be he that \_setteth light\_ by his father or his

mother: and all the people shall say, Amen."--\_Deut.\_, xxvii, 16. This may

mean, "that setteth light \_esteem\_ or \_estimation\_," &c.

OBS. 4.--When an adjective follows an infinitive or a participle, the noun

or pronoun to which it relates, is sometimes before it, and sometimes after

it, and often considerably remote; as, "A real gentleman cannot but

practice those virtues \_which\_, by an intimate knowledge of mankind, he has

found to be \_useful\_ to them."--"He [a melancholy enthusiast] thinks

\_himself\_ obliged in duty to be \_sad\_ and \_disconsolate\_."--\_Addison\_. "He

is scandalized at \_youth\_ for being \_lively\_, and at \_childhood\_ for being

playful."--\_Id.\_ "But growing \_weary\_ of one who almost walked him out of

breath, \_he\_ left him for Horace and Anacreon."--\_Steele.\_

OBS. 5.--Adjectives preceded by the definite article, are often used, by

\_ellipsis\_, as \_nouns\_; as, \_the learned\_, for \_learned men\_. Such phrases

usually designate those classes of persons or things, which are

characterized by the qualities they express; and this, the reader must

observe, is a use quite different from that \_substitution\_ of adjectives

for nouns, which is noticed in the fourth exception above. In \_our\_

language, the several senses in which adjectives may thus be taken, are not

distinguished with that clearness which the inflections of other tongues

secure. Thus, \_the noble, the vile, the excellent\_, or \_the beautiful\_, may

be put for three extra constructions: first, for \_noble persons, vile

persons\_, &c.; secondly, for \_the noble man, the vile man\_, &c.; thirdly,

for the abstract qualities, \_nobility, vileness, excellence, beauty\_. The

last-named usage forms an exception to the rule; in the other two the noun

is understood, and should be supplied by the parser. Such terms, if

elliptical, are most commonly of the plural number, and refer to the word

\_persons\_ or \_things\_ understood; as, "\_The careless\_ and \_the imprudent,

the giddy\_ and \_the fickle, the ungrateful\_ and \_the interested\_,

everywhere meet us."--\_Blair\_. Here the noun \_persons\_ is to be six times

supplied. "Wherever there is taste, \_the witty\_ and \_the humorous\_ make

themselves perceived."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 21. Here the author meant,

simply, the qualities \_wit\_ and \_humour\_, and he ought to have used these

words, because the others are equivocal, and are more naturally conceived

to refer to persons. In the following couplet, the noun \_places\_ or

\_things\_ is understood after "\_open\_," and again after "\_covert\_," which

last word is sometimes misprinted "\_coverts\_:"

"Together let us beat this ample field,

Try what \_the open\_, what \_the covert\_, yield."--\_Pope, on Man.\_

OBS. 6.--The adjective, in English, is generally placed immediately \_before

its noun\_; as, "\_Vain\_ man! is grandeur given to \_gay\_ attire?"--\_Beattie\_.

Those adjectives which relate to \_pronouns\_, most commonly follow them; as,

"They left \_me weary\_ on a grassy turf."--\_Milton.\_ But to both these

general rules there are many exceptions; for the position of an adjective

may be varied by a variety of circumstances, not excepting the mere

convenience of emphasis: as, "And Jehu said, Unto \_which\_ of \_all us\_?"--\_2

Kings\_, ix, 5. In the following instances the adjective is placed \_after

the word\_ to which it relates:

1. When other words depend on the adjective, or stand before it to qualify

it; as, "A mind \_conscious of right\_,"--"A wall \_three feet thick\_,"--"A

body of troops \_fifty thousand strong\_."

2. When the quality results from an action, or receives its application

through a verb or participle; as, "Virtue renders \_life happy\_."--"He was

in Tirzah, drinking \_himself drunk\_ in the house of Arza."--\_1 Kings\_, xvi,

9. "All men agree to call \_vinegar sour, honey sweet\_, and \_aloes

bitter\_."--\_Burke, on Taste\_, p. 38. "God made \_thee perfect\_, not

\_immutable\_."--\_Milton\_.

3. When the quality excites admiration, and the adjective would thus be

more clearly distinctive; as, "Goodness \_infinite\_,"--"Wisdom

\_unsearchable\_."--\_Murray\_.

4. When a verb comes between the adjective and the noun; as, "Truth stands

\_independent\_ of all external things."--\_Burgh\_. "Honour is not \_seemly\_

for a fool."--\_Solomon\_.

5. When the adjective is formed by means of the prefix \_a\_; as, \_afraid,

alert, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake, aware, averse, ashamed, askew\_.

To these may be added a few other words; as, \_else, enough, extant,

extinct, fraught, pursuant\_.

6. When the adjective has the nature, but not the form, of a participle;

as, "A queen \_regnant\_,"--"The prince \_regent\_,"--"The heir

\_apparent\_,"--"A lion, not \_rampant\_, but \_couchant\_ or \_dormant\_"--"For

the time then \_present\_."

OBS. 7.--In some instances, the adjective may

\_either precede or follow\_ its noun; and the writer may take his choice, in

respect to its position: as, 1. In \_poetry\_--provided the sense be obvious;

as,

------------------"Wilt thou to the \_isles

Atlantic\_, to the \_rich Hesperian clime\_,

Fly in the train of Autumn?"

--\_Akenside, P. of I.\_, Book i, p. 27.

-----------------------------"Wilt thou fly

With laughing Autumn to \_the Atlantic isles\_,

And range with him th' \_Hesperian field\_?"

--\_Id. Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 120.

2. When technical usage favours one order, and common usage an other; as,

"A notary \_public\_," or, "A \_public\_ notary;"--"The heir \_presumptive\_,"

or, "The \_presumptive\_ heir."--See \_Johnson's Dict.\_, and \_Webster's\_.

3. When an adverb precedes the adjective; as, "A Being \_infinitely\_ wise,"

or, "An \_infinitely wise\_ Being." Murray, Comly, and others, here approve

only the former order; but the latter is certainly not ungrammatical.

4. When several adjectives belong to the same noun; as, "A woman, \_modest,

sensible\_, and \_virtuous\_," or, "A \_modest, sensible\_, and \_virtuous\_

woman." Here again, Murray, Comly, and others, approve only the former

order; but I judge the latter to be quite as good.

5. When the adjective is emphatic, it may be \_foremost\_ in the sentence,

though the natural order of the words would bring it last; as, "\_Weighty\_

is the anger of the righteous."--\_Bible\_. "\_Blessed\_ are the pure in

heart."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Great\_ is the earth, \_high\_ is the heaven, \_swift\_ is the

sun in his course."--\_1 Esdras\_, iv, 34. "\_The more laborious\_ the life is,

\_the less populous\_ is the country."--\_Goldsmith's Essays\_, p. 151.

6. When the adjective and its noun both follow a verb as parts of the

predicate, either may possibly come before the other, yet the arrangement

is \_fixed by the sense intended\_: thus there is a great difference between

the assertions, "We call the \_boy good\_," and, "We call the \_good boy\_"

OBS. 8.--By an ellipsis of the noun, an adjective with a preposition before

it, is sometimes equivalent to an adverb; as, \_"In particular;"\_ that is,

\_"In a particular manner;"\_ equivalent to \_particularly\_. So \_"in general"\_

is equivalent to \_generally\_. It has already been suggested, that, in

parsing, the scholar should here supply the ellipsis. See Obs. 3d, under

Rule vii.

OBS. 9.--Though English adjectives are, for the most part, incapable of any

\_agreement\_, yet such of them as denote unity or plurality, ought in

general to have nouns of the same number: as, \_this man, one man, two men,

many men\_.[372] In phrases of this form, the rule is well observed; but in

some peculiar ways of numbering things, it is commonly disregarded; for

certain nouns are taken in a plural sense without assuming the plural

termination. Thus people talk of many \_stone\_ of cheese,--many \_sail\_ of

vessels,--many \_stand\_ of arms,--many \_head\_ of cattle,--many \_dozen\_ of

eggs,--many \_brace\_ of partridges,--many \_pair\_ of shoes. So we read in

the Bible of "two hundred \_pennyworth\_ of bread," and "twelve \_manner\_ of

fruits." In all such phraseology, there is, in regard to the \_form\_ of the

latter word, an evident disagreement of the adjective with its immediate

noun; but sometimes, (where the preposition \_of\_ does not occur,)

expressions that seem somewhat like these, may be elliptical: as when

historians tell of \_many thousand foot\_ (soldiers), or \_many hundred horse\_

(troops). To denote a collective number, a singular adjective may precede a

plural one; as, "\_One\_ hundred men,"--"\_Every\_ six weeks." And to denote

plurality, the adjective many may, in like manner, precede \_an\_ or \_a\_ with

a singular noun; as, "The Odyssey entertains us with \_many a wonderful

adventure\_, and \_many a landscape\_ of nature."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 436."

There \_starts up many\_ a writer."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 306.

"Full \_many a flower is born\_ to blush unseen,

And waste its sweetness on the desert air."--\_Gray\_.

OBS. 10.--Though \_this\_ and \_that\_ cannot relate to plurals, many writers

do not hesitate to place them before singulars taken conjointly, which are

equivalent to plurals; as, "\_This power and will\_ do necessarily produce

that which man is empowered to do."--\_Sale's Koran\_, i, 229. "\_That

sobriety and self-denial\_ which are essential to the support of

virtue."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 218. "\_This modesty and decency\_ were

looked upon by them as a law of nature."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 45. Here

the plural forms, \_these\_ and \_those\_, cannot be substituted; but the

singular may be repeated, if the repetition be thought necessary. Yet, when

these same pronominal adjectives are placed \_after\_ the nouns to suggest

the things again, they must be made plural; as, "\_Modesty and decency\_ were

thus carefully guarded, for \_these\_ were looked upon as being enjoined by

the law of nature."

OBS. 11.--In prose, the use of adjectives for adverbs is improper; but, in

poetry, an adjective relating to the noun or pronoun, is sometimes

elegantly used in stead of an adverb qualifying the verb or participle; as;

"\_Gradual\_ sinks the breeze Into a perfect calm."--\_Thomson's Seasons\_, p.

34. "To Thee I bend the knee; to Thee my thoughts \_Continual\_

climb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 48. "As on he walks \_Graceful\_, and crows

defiance."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. "As through the falling glooms \_Pensive\_ I

stray."--\_Ib.\_, p. 80. "They, \_sportive\_, wheel; or, sailing down the

stream, Are snatch'd \_immediate\_ by the quick-eyed trout."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82.

"\_Incessant\_ still you flow."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91. "The shatter'd clouds

\_Tumultuous\_ rove, the interminable sky \_Sublimer\_ swells."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116.

In order to determine, in difficult cases, whether an adjective or an

adverb is required, the learner should carefully attend to the definitions

of these parts of speech, and consider whether, in the case in question,

\_quality\_ is to be expressed, or \_manner\_: if the former, an adjective is

always proper; if the latter, an adverb. That is, in this case, the adverb,

though not always required in poetry, is specially requisite in prose. The

following examples will illustrate this point: "She looks \_cold\_;"--"She

looks \_coldly\_ on him."--"I sat \_silent\_;"--"I sat \_silently\_

musing."--"Stand \_firm\_; maintain your cause \_firmly\_." See \_Etymology\_,

Chap, viii, Obs. 4th, 5th, 6th, and 7th, on the Modifications of Adverbs.

OBS. 12.--In English, an adjective and its noun are often taken as a sort

of compound term, to which other adjectives may be added; as, "An \_old

man\_; a \_good\_ old man; a very \_learned, judicious\_, good old man."--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 169; \_Brit. Gram.\_, 195; \_Buchanan's\_, 79. "Of an

\_other determinate positive new\_ birth, subsequent to baptism, we know

nothing."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 183. When adjectives are thus accumulated,

the subsequent ones should convey such ideas as the former may consistently

qualify, otherwise the expression will be objectionable. Thus the ordinal

adjectives, \_first, second, third, next\_, and \_last\_, may qualify the

cardinal numbers, but they cannot very properly be qualified by them. When,

therefore, we specify any part of a series, the cardinal adjective ought,

by good right, to follow the ordinal, and not, as in the following phrase,

be placed before it: "In reading the \_nine last chapters\_ of

John."--\_Fuller\_. Properly speaking, there is but one last chapter in any

book. Say, therefore, "the \_last nine\_ chapters;" for, out of the

twenty-one chapters in John, a man may select several different nines. (See

\_Etymology\_, Chap, iv, Obs. 7th, on the Degrees of Comparison.) When one of

the adjectives merely qualifies the other, they should be joined together

by a hyphen; as, "A \_red-hot\_ iron."--"A \_dead-ripe\_ melon." And when both

or all refer equally and solely to the noun, they ought either to be

connected by a conjunction, or to be separated by a comma. The following

example is therefore faulty: "It is the business of an epic poet, to form a

\_probable interesting\_ tale."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 427. Say, "probable

\_and\_ interesting;" or else insert a comma in lieu of the conjunction.

"Around him wide a sable army stand,

A \_low-born, cell-bred, selfish, servile band\_."

--\_Dunciad\_, B. ii, l. 355.

OBS. 13.--Dr. Priestley has observed: "There is a remarkable ambiguity in

the use of the negative adjective \_no\_; and I do not see," says he, "how it

can be remedied in any language. If I say, '\_No laws are better than the

English\_,' it is only my known sentiments that can inform a person whether

I mean to praise, or dispraise \_them\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 136. It

may not be possible to remove the ambiguity from the phraseology here

cited, but it is easy enough to avoid the form, and say in stead of it,

"\_The English laws are worse than none\_," or, "\_The English laws are as

good as any\_;" and, in neither of these expressions, is there any

ambiguity, though the other may doubtless be taken in either of these

senses. Such an ambiguity is sometimes used on purpose: as when one man

says of an other, "He is no small knave;" or, "He is no small fool."

"There liv'd in primo Georgii (they record)

A worthy member, \_no small fool, a lord\_."--\_Pope\_, p. 409.

NOTES TO RULE IX.

NOTE I.--Adjectives that imply unity or plurality, must agree with their

nouns in number: as, "\_That sort, those sorts\_;"--"\_This hand, these

hands\_." [373]

NOTE II.--When the adjective is necessarily plural, or necessarily

singular, the noun should be made so too: as, "\_Twenty pounds\_" not,

"Twenty \_pound\_;"--"\_Four feet\_ long," not, "\_Four foot\_ long;"--"\_One

session\_" not, "One \_sessions\_."

NOTE III.--The reciprocal expression, \_one an other\_, should not be applied

to two objects, nor \_each other\_, or \_one the other\_, to more than two; as,

"Verse and prose, on some occasions, run into \_one another\_, like light and

shade."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 377; \_Jamieson's\_, 298. Say, "into \_each

other\_" "For mankind have always been butchering \_each other\_"--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 151. Say, "\_one an other\_" See \_Etymology\_, Chap, iv, Obs.

15th, 16th, 17th, and 18th, on the Classes of Adjectives.

NOTE IV.--When the comparative degree is employed with \_than\_, the latter

term of comparison should \_never include\_ the former; nor the former the

latter: as, "\_Iron is more useful\_ than \_all the metals\_"--"\_All the metals

are less useful\_ than \_iron\_." In either case, it should be, "all the other

metals,"

NOTE V.--When the superlative degree is employed, the latter term of

comparison, which is introduced by \_of\_, should \_never exclude\_ the former;

as, "A fondness for show, is, of all \_other\_ follies, the most vain." Here

the word \_other\_ should be expunged; for this latter term must \_include\_

the former: that is, the fondness for show must be one of the follies of

which it is the vainest.

NOTE VI.--When equality is denied, or inequality affirmed, neither term of

the comparison should \_ever include\_ the other; because every thing must

needs be equal to itself, and it is absurd to suggest that a part surpasses

the whole: as, "\_No writings whatever\_ abound \_so much\_ with the bold and

animated figures, \_as the sacred books\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 414. Say,

"No \_other\_ writings whatever;" because the sacred books are "\_writings\_"

See \_Etymology\_, Chap, iv, Obs. 6th, on Regular Comparison.

NOTE VII.--Comparative terminations, and adverbs of degree, should not be

applied to adjectives that are not susceptible of comparison; and all

double comparatives and double superlatives should be avoided: as, "\_So

universal\_ a complaint:" say rather, "\_So general\_."--"Some \_less nobler\_

plunder:" say, "\_less noble\_"--"The \_most straitest\_ sect:" expunge \_most\_.

See \_Etymology\_, Chap, iv, from Obs. 5th to Obs. 13th, on Irregular

Comparison.[374]

NOTE VIII.--When adjectives are connected by \_and, or\_, or \_nor\_, the

shortest and simplest should in general be placed first; as, "He is \_older\_

and \_more respectable\_ than his brother." To say, "\_more respectable\_ and

\_older\_" would be obviously inelegant, as possibly involving the inaccuracy

of "\_more older\_."

NOTE IX.--When one adjective is superadded to an other without a

conjunction expressed or understood, the most distinguishing quality must

be expressed next to the noun, and the latter must be such as the former

may consistently qualify; as, "An \_agreeable young\_ man," not, "A \_young

agreeable\_ man."--"The art of speaking, like \_all other practical\_ arts,

may be facilitated by rules,"--\_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 10. Example of

error: "The Anglo-Saxon language possessed, for the \_two first\_ persons, a

\_Dual\_ number."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 1850, p. 59. Say, "the \_first two\_

persons;" for the \_second\_ of three can hardly be one of the \_first\_; and

"\_two first\_" with the \_second\_ and \_third\_ added, will clearly make \_more\_

than three. See Obs. 12th, above.

NOTE X.--In prose, the use of adjectives for adverbs, is a vulgar error;

the adverb alone being proper, when \_manner\_ or \_degree\_ is to be

expressed, and not \_quality\_; as, "He writes \_elegant\_;" say,

"\_elegantly\_."--"It is a \_remarkable\_ good likeness;" say, "\_remarkably

good\_."

NOTE XI.--The pronoun \_them\_ should never be used as an adjective, in lieu

of \_those\_: say, "I bought \_those\_ books;" not, "\_them\_ books." This also

is a vulgar error, and chiefly confined to the conversation of the

unlearned.[375]

NOTE XII.--When the pronominal adjectives, \_this\_ and \_that\_, or \_these\_

and \_those\_, are contrasted; \_this\_ or \_these\_ should represent the latter

of the antecedent terms, and \_that\_ or \_those\_ the former: as,

"And, reason raise o'er instinct as you can,

In \_this\_ 'tis God directs, in \_that\_ 'tis man."--\_Pope\_.

"Farewell my friends! farewell my foes!

My peace with \_these\_, my love with \_those\_!"--\_Burns\_.

NOTE XIII.--The pronominal adjectives \_either\_ and \_neither\_, in strict

propriety of syntax, relate to two things only; when more are referred to,

\_any\_ and \_none\_, or \_any one\_ and \_no one\_, should be used in stead of

them: as, "\_Any\_ of the three," or, "\_Any one\_ of the three;" not,

"\_Either\_ of the three."--"\_None\_ of the four," or, "\_No one\_ of the four;"

not, "\_Neither\_ of the four." [376]

NOTE XIV.--The adjective \_whole\_ must not be used in a plural sense, for

\_all\_; nor \_less\_, in the sense of \_fewer\_; nor \_more\_ or \_most\_, in any

ambiguous construction, where it may be either an adverb of degree, or an

adjective of number or quantity: as, "Almost the \_whole\_ inhabitants were

present."--HUME: see \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 190.[377] Say, "Almost \_all\_

the inhabitants." "No \_less\_ than three dictionaries have been published to

correct it."--\_Dr. Webster\_. Say, "No \_fewer\_." "This trade enriched some

\_people more\_ than them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 215. This passage

is not clear in its import: it may have either of two meanings. Say, "This

trade enriched some \_other\_ people, \_besides\_ them." Or, "This trade

enriched some \_others\_ more than \_it did them\_."

NOTE XV.--Participial adjectives retain the termination, but not the

government of participles; when, therefore, they are followed by the

objective case, a preposition must be inserted to govern it: as, "The man

who is most \_sparing of\_ his words, is generally most \_deserving of\_

attention."

NOTE XVI.--When the figure of any adjective affects the syntax and sense of

the sentence, care must be taken to give to the word or words that form,

simple or compound, which suits the true meaning and construction.

Examples: "He is \_forehead bald\_, yet he is clean."--FRIENDS' BIBLE:

\_Lev.\_, xiii, 41. Say, "\_forehead-bald.\_,"--ALGER'S BIBLE, and SCOTT'S.

"From such phrases as, '\_New England scenery\_,' convenience requires the

\_omission\_ of the hyphen."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 89. This is a false

notion. Without the hyphen, the phrase properly means, "\_New scenery in

England\_;" but \_New-England scenery\_ is scenery in New England. "'\_Many

coloured wings\_,' means \_many wings which are coloured\_; but

'\_many-coloured wings\_' means \_wings of many colours\_."--\_Blair's Gram.\_,

p. 116.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE IX.

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

"I am not recommending these kind of sufferings to your liking."--BP.

SHERLOCK: \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 87.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adjective \_these\_ is plural, and does

not agree with its noun \_kind\_, which is singular. But, according to Note

1st under Rule 9th: "Adjectives that imply unity or plurality, must agree

with their nouns in number." Therefore, \_these\_ should be \_this\_; thus, "I

am not recommending \_this\_ kind of sufferings."]

"I have not been to London this five years."--\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p.

152. "These kind of verbs are more expressive than their radicals."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of Lang.\_, Vol. ii, p. 163. "Few of us would be less

corrupted than kings are, were we, like them, beset with flatterers, and

poisoned with that vermin."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 66. "But it seems this

literati had been very ill rewarded for their ingenious

labours."--\_Roderick Random\_, Vol. ii, p. 87. "If I had not left off

troubling myself about those kind of things."--\_Swift\_. "For these sort of

things are usually join'd to the most noted fortune."--\_Bacon's Essays\_, p.

101. "The nature of that riches and long-suffering is, to lead to

repentance."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 380. "I fancy they are these kind of

gods, which Horace mentions."--\_Addison, on Medals\_, p. 74. "During that

eight days they are prohibited from touching the skin."--\_Hope of Israel\_,

p. 78. "Besides, he had not much provisions left for his

army."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 86. "Are you not ashamed to have no other

thoughts than that of amassing wealth, and of acquiring glory, credit, and

dignities?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 192. "It distinguisheth still more remarkably the

feelings of the former from that of the latter."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

Vol. i, p. xvii. "And this good tidings of the reign shall be published

through all the world."--\_Campbell's Gospels, Matt.\_, xxiv, 14. "This

twenty years have I been with thee."--\_Gen.\_, xxxi, 38. "In these kind of

expressions some words seem to be understood."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p.

179. "He thought these kind of excesses indicative of greatness."--\_Hunt's

Byron\_, p. 117. "These sort of fellows are very numerous."--\_Spect.\_, No.

486. "Whereas these sort of men cannot give account of their

faith."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 444. "But the question is, whether that be

the words."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 321. "So that these sort of Expressions are not

properly Optative."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 276. "Many things are not

that which they appear to be."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 176. "So that every

possible means are used."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. iv.

"We have strict statutes, and most biting laws,

Which for this nineteen years we have let sleep."--\_Shak\_.

"They could not speak; and so I left them both,

To bear this tidings to the bloody king."--\_Id., Richard III\_.

UNDER NOTE II.--OF FIXED NUMBERS.

"Why, I think she cannot be above six foot two inches high."--\_Spect.\_, No.

533. "The world is pretty regular for about forty rod east and ten

west."--\_Ib.\_, No. 535. "The standard being more than two foot above

it."--BACON: \_Joh. Dict., w. Standard\_. "Supposing (among other Things) he

saw two Suns, and two Thebes."--\_Bacon's Wisdom\_, p. 25. "On the right hand

we go into a parlour thirty three foot by thirty nine."--\_Sheffield's

Works\_, ii, 258. "Three pound of gold went to one shield."--\_1 Kings\_, x,

17. "Such an assemblage of men as there appears to have been at that

sessions."--\_The Friend\_, x, 389. "And, truly, he hath saved me this

pains."--\_Barclay's Works\_, ii, 266. "Within this three mile may you see it

coming."--SHAK.: \_Joh. Dict., w. Mile\_. "Most of the churches, not all, had

one or more ruling elder."--\_Hutchinson's Hist. of Mass.\_, i, 375. "While a

Minute Philosopher, not six foot high, attempts to dethrone the Monarch of

the universe."--\_Berkley's Alciphron\_, p. 151. "The wall is ten foot

high."--\_Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 50. "The stalls must be ten foot

broad."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 201. "A close prisoner in a room twenty

foot square, being at the north side of his chamber, is at liberty to walk

twenty foot southward, not to walk twenty foot northward."--LOCKE: \_Joh.

Dict., w. Northward\_. "Nor, after all this pains and industry, did they

think themselves qualified."--\_Columbian Orator\_, p. 13. "No less than

thirteen \_gypsies\_ were condemned at one Suffolk assizes, and

executed."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 333. "The king was petitioned to appoint

one, or more, person, or persons."--MACAULAY: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 194.

"He carries weight! he rides a race! 'Tis for a thousand pound!"--\_Cowper's

Poems\_, i, 279. "They carry three tire of guns at the head, and at the

stern there are two tire of guns."--\_Joh. Dict., w. Galleass\_. "The verses

consist of two sort of rhymes."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 112. "A

present of 40 camel's load of the most precious things of Syria."--\_Wood's

Dict.\_, Vol. i, p. 162. "A large grammar, that shall extend to every

minutiæ."--\_S. Barrett's Gram.\_, Tenth Ed., Pref., p. iii.

"So many spots, like næves on Venus' soil,

One jewel set off with so many foil."--\_Dryden\_.

"For, of the lower end, two handful

It had devour'd, it was so manful."--\_Hudibras\_, i, 365.

UNDER NOTE III.--OF RECIPROCALS.

"That \_shall\_ and \_will\_ might be substituted for one

another."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 131. "We use not \_shall\_ and \_will\_

promiscuously for one another."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 110. "But I wish

to distinguish the three high ones from each other also."--\_Fowle's True

Eng. Gram.\_, p. 13. "Or on some other relation, which two objects bear to

one another."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 142. "Yet the two words lie so near to

one another in meaning, that in the present case, any one of them, perhaps,

would have been sufficient."--\_Ib.\_, p. 203. "Both orators use great

liberties with one another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 244. "That greater separation of

the two sexes from one another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 466. "Most of whom live remote

from each other."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 39. "Teachers like to see their

pupils polite to each other."--\_Webster's El. Spelling-Book\_, p. 28. "In a

little time, he and I must keep company with one another only."--\_Spect.\_,

No. 474. "Thoughts and circumstances crowd upon each other."--\_Kames, El.

of Crit.\_, i, 32. "They cannot see how the ancient Greeks could understand

each other."--\_Literary Convention\_, p. 96. "The spirit of the poet, the

patriot, and the prophet, vied with each other in his breast."--\_Hazlitt's

Lect.\_, p. 112. "Athamas and Ino loved one another."--\_Classic Tales\_, p.

91. "Where two things are compared or contrasted to one another."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 119. "Where two things are compared, or contrasted, with one

another."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 324. "In the classification of

words, almost all writers differ from each other."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_,

p. iv.

"I will not trouble thee, my child. Farewell;

We'll no more meet; no more see one another."--\_Shak. Lear\_.

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF COMPARATIVES.

"Errours in Education should be less indulged than any."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_,

p. iv. "This was less his case than any man's that ever wrote."--\_Pref. to

Waller\_. "This trade enriched some people more than it enriched

them." [378]--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 215. "The Chaldee alphabet, in

which the Old Testament has reached us, is more beautiful than any ancient

character known."--\_Wilson's Essay\_, p. 5. "The Christian religion gives a

more lovely character of God, than any religion ever did."--\_Murray's Key\_,

p. 169. "The temple of Cholula was deemed more holy than any in New

Spain."--\_Robertson's America\_, ii, 477. "Cibber grants it to be a better

poem of its kind than ever was writ."--\_Pope\_. "Shakspeare is more faithful

to the true language of nature, than any writer."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 468.

"One son I had--one, more than all my sons, the strength of

Troy."--\_Cowper's Homer\_. "Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his

children, because he was the son of his old age."--\_Gen.\_, xxxvii, 3.

UNDER NOTE V.--OF SUPERLATIVES.

"Of all other simpletons, he was the greatest."--\_Nutting's English

Idioms\_. "Of all other beings, man has certainly the greatest reason for

gratitude."--\_Ibid., Gram.\_, p. 110. "This lady is the prettiest of all her

sisters."--\_Peyton's Elements of Eng. Lang.\_, p. 39. "The relation which,

of all others, is by far the most fruitful of tropes, I have not yet

mentioned."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 141. "He studied Greek the most of any

nobleman."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 231. "And indeed that was the

qualification of all others most wanted at that time."--\_Goldsmith's

Greece\_, ii, 35. "Yet we deny that the knowledge of him, as outwardly

crucified, is the best of all other knowledge of him."--\_Barclay's Works\_,

i, 144. "Our ideas of numbers are of all others the most accurate and

distinct."--\_Duncan's Logic\_, p. 35. "This indeed is of all others the case

when it can be least necessary to name the agent."--\_J. Q. Adams's Rhet.\_,

i, 231. "The period, to which you have arrived, is perhaps the most

critical and important of any moment of your lives."--\_Ib.\_, i, 394.

"Perry's royal octavo is esteemed the best of any pronouncing Dictionary

yet known."--\_Red Book\_, p. x. "This is the tenth persecution, and of all

the foregoing, the most bloody."--\_Sammes's Antiquities\_, Chap. xiii. "The

English tongue is the most susceptible of sublime imagery, of any language

in the world."--See \_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 141. "Homer is universally allowed

to have had the greatest Invention of any writer whatever."--\_Pope's

Preface to Homer\_. "In a version of this particular work, which most of any

other seems to require a venerable antique cast."--\_Ib.\_ "Because I think

him the best informed of any naturalist who has ever written."--

\_Jefferson's Notes\_, p. 82. "Man is capable of being the most social of any

animal."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 145. "It is of all others that which

most moves us."--\_Ib.\_, p. 158. "Which of all others, is the most necessary

article."--\_Ib.\_, p. 166.

"Quoth he 'this gambol thou advisest,

Is, of all others, the unwisest.'"--\_Hudibras\_, iii, 316.

UNDER NOTE VI.--INCLUSIVE TERMS. "Noah and his family outlived all the

people who lived before the flood."--\_Webster's El. Spelling-Book\_, p. 101.

"I think it superior to any work of that nature we have yet had."--\_Dr.

Blair's Rec. in Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 300. "We have had no

grammarian who has employed so much labour and judgment upon our native

language, as the author of these volumes."--\_British Critic, ib.\_, ii, 299.

"No persons feel so much the distresses of others, as they who have

experienced distress themselves."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo., p. 227. "Never was

any people so much infatuated as the Jewish nation."--\_Ib.\_, p. 185;

\_Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 135. "No tongue is so full of connective particles as

the Greek."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 85. "Never sovereign was so much beloved

by the people."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, R. xv, p. 68. "No sovereign was ever

so much beloved by the people."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 202. "Nothing ever

affected her so much as this misconduct of her child."--\_Ib.\_, p. 203;

\_Merchant's\_, 195. "Of all the figures of speech, none comes so near to

painting as metaphor."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 142; \_Jamieson's\_, 149. "I know

none so happy in his metaphors as Mr. Addison."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 150.

"Of all the English authors, none is so happy in his metaphors as

Addison."--\_Jamieson's, Rhet.\_, p. 157. "Perhaps no writer in the world was

ever so frugal of his words as Aristotle."--\_Blair\_, p. 177; \_Jamieson\_,

251. "Never was any writer so happy in that concise spirited style as Mr.

Pope."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 403. "In the harmonious structure and

disposition of periods, no writer whatever, ancient or modern, equals

Cicero."--\_Blair\_, 121; \_Jamieson\_, 123. "Nothing delights me so much as

the works of nature."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 150. "No person was

ever so perplexed as he has been to-day."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 216. "In no

case are writers so apt to err as in the position of the word

\_only\_."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 15. "For nothing is so tiresome as

perpetual uniformity."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 102.

"No writing lifts exalted man so high,

As sacred and soul-moving poesy."--\_Sheffield\_.

UNDER NOTE VII.--EXTRA COMPARISONS.

"How much more are ye better than the fowls!"--\_Luke\_, xii, 24. "Do not

thou hasten above the Most Highest."--\_2 Esdras\_, iv, 34. "This word \_peer\_

is most principally used for the nobility of the realm."--\_Cowell\_.

"Because the same is not only most universally received," &c.--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 447. "This is, I say, not the best and most principal

evidence."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 41. "Offer unto God thanksgiving, and pay thy vows

unto the Most Highest."--\_The Psalter\_, Ps. 1, 14. "The holy place of the

tabernacle of the Most Highest."--\_Ib.\_, Ps. xlvi, 4. "As boys should be

educated with temperance, so the first greatest lesson that should be

taught them is to admire frugality."--\_Goldsmith's Essays\_, p. 152. "More

universal terms are put for such as are more restricted."--\_Brown's

Metaphors\_, p. 11. "This was the most unkindest cut of all."--\_Dodd's

Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 251; \_Singer's Shak.\_, ii, 264. "To take the basest

and most poorest shape."--\_Dodd's Shak.\_, p. 261. "I'll forbear: and am

fallen out with my more headier will."--\_Ib.\_, p. 262. "The power of the

Most Highest guard thee from sin."--\_Percival, on Apostolic Succession\_, p.

90. "Which title had been more truer, if the dictionary had been in Latin

and Welch."--VERSTEGAN: \_Harrison's E. Lang.\_, p. 254. "The waters are more

sooner and harder frozen, than more further upward, within the

inlands."--\_Id., ib.\_ "At every descent, the worst may become more

worse."--H. MANN: \_Louisville Examiner\_, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 149.

"Or as a moat defensive to a house

Against the envy of less happier lands."--\_Shakspeare\_.

"A dreadful quiet felt, and worser far

Than arms, a sullen interval of war."--\_Dryden\_.

UNDER NOTE VIII.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"It breaks forth in its most energetick, impassioned, and highest

strain."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 66. "He has fallen into the most gross

and vilest sort of railing."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 261. "To receive that

more general and higher instruction which the public affords."--\_District

School\_, p. 281. "If the best things have the perfectest and best

operations."--HOOKER: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "It became the plainest and most

elegant, the most splendid and richest, of all languages."--See \_Bucke's

Gram.\_, p. 140. "But the most frequent and the principal use of pauses, is,

to mark the divisions of the sense."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 331; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 248. "That every thing belonging to ourselves is the perfectest and

the best."--\_Clarkson's Prize Essay\_, p. 189. "And to instruct their pupils

in the most thorough and best manner."--\_Report of a School Committee\_.

UNDER NOTE IX.--ADJECTIVES SUPERADDED.

"The Father is figured out as an old venerable man."--\_Dr. Brownlee's

Controversy\_. "There never was exhibited such another masterpiece of

ghostly assurance."--\_Id.\_ "After the three first sentences, the question

is entirely lost."--\_Spect.\_, No, 476. "The four last parts of speech are

commonly called particles."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 14. "The two last

chapters will not be found deficient in this respect."--\_Student's Manual\_,

p. 6. "Write upon your slates a list of the ten first nouns."--\_Abbott's

Teacher\_, p. 85. "We have a few remains of other two Greek poets in the

pastoral style, Moschus and Bion."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 393. "The nine

first chapters of the book of Proverbs are highly poetical."--\_Ib.\_, p.

417. "For of these five heads, only the two first have any particular

relation to the sublime."--\_Ib.\_, p. 35. "The resembling sounds of the two

last syllables give a ludicrous air to the whole."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 69. "The three last are arbitrary."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "But in the phrase

'She hangs the curtains,' the verb \_hangs\_ is a transitive active

verb."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 30. "If our definition of a verb, and the

arrangement of transitive or intransitive active, passive, and neuter

verbs, are properly understood."--\_Ib.\_, 15th Ed., p. 30. "These two last

lines have an embarrassing construction."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 160.

"God was provoked to drown them all, but Noah and other seven

persons."--\_Wood's Dict.\_, ii, 129. "The \_six first\_ books of the Æneid are

extremely beautiful."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 27. "A few more

instances only can be given here."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 131. "A few more

years will obliterate every vestige of a subjunctive form."--\_Nutting's

Gram.\_, p. 46. "Some define them to be verbs devoid of the two first

persons."--\_Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 205. "In such another Essay-tract as

this."--\_White's English Verb\_, p. 302. "But we fear that not such another

man is to be found."--REV. ED. IRVING: \_on Horne's Psalms\_, p. xxiii.

"Oh such another sleep, that I might see

But such another man!"--SHAK., \_Antony and Cleopatra\_.

UNDER NOTE X.--ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS.

"\_The\_ is an article, relating to the noun \_balm\_, agreeable to Rule

11."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 133. "\_Wise\_ is an adjective relating to the noun

\_man's\_, agreeable to Rule 11th."--\_Ibid.\_, 12th Ed., often. "To whom I

observed, that the beer was extreme good."--\_Goldsmith's Essays\_, p. 127.

"He writes remarkably elegant."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 152. "John

behaves truly civil to all men."--\_Ib.\_, p. 153. "All the sorts of words

hitherto considered have each of them some meaning, even when taken

separate."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, i, 44. "He behaved himself

conformable to that blessed example."--\_Sprat's Sermons\_, p. 80.

"Marvellous graceful."--\_Clarendon, Life\_, p. 18. "The Queen having changed

her ministry suitable to her wisdom."--\_Swift, Exam.\_, No. 21. "The

assertions of this author are easier detected."--\_Swift\_: censured in

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 93. "The characteristic of his sect allowed him to

affirm no stronger than that."--\_Bentley: ibid.\_ "If one author had spoken

nobler and loftier than an other."--\_Id., ib.\_ "Xenophon says

express."--\_Id., ib.\_ "I can never think so very mean of him."--\_Id., ib.\_

"To convince all that are ungodly among them, of all their ungodly deeds,

which they have ungodly committed."--\_Jude\_, 15th: \_ib.\_ "I think it very

masterly written."--\_Swift to Pope\_, Let. 74: \_ib.\_ "The whole design must

refer to the golden age, which it lively represents."--\_Addison, on Medals:

ib.\_ "Agreeable to this, we read of names being blotted out of God's

book."--BURDER: approved in \_Webster's Impr. Gram.\_, p. 107; \_Frazee's\_,

140; \_Maltby's\_, 93. "Agreeable to the law of nature, children are bound to

support their indigent parents."--\_Webster's Impr. Gram.\_, p. 109. "Words

taken independent of their meaning are parsed as nouns of the neuter

gender."--\_Maltby's Gr.\_, 96.

"Conceit in weakest bodies strongest works."--\_Beaut. of Shak.\_, p. 236.

UNDER NOTE XI.--THEM FOR THOSE.

"Though he was not known by them letters, or the name Christ."--\_Wm.

Bayly's Works\_, p. 94. "In a gig, or some of them things."--\_Edgeworth's

Castle Rackrent\_, p. 35. "When cross-examined by them lawyers."--\_Ib.\_, p.

98. "As the custom in them cases is."--\_Ib.\_, p. 101. "If you'd have

listened to them slanders."--\_Ib.\_, p. 115. "The old people were telling

stories about them fairies, but to the best of my judgment there's nothing

in it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 188. "And is it not a pity that the Quakers have no

better authority to substantiate their principles than the testimony of

them old Pharisees?"--\_Hibbard's Errors of the Quakers\_, p. 107.

UNDER NOTE XII.--THIS AND THAT.

"Hope is as strong an incentive to action, as fear: this is the

anticipation of good, that of evil."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 135. "The

poor want some advantages which the rich enjoy; but we should not therefore

account those happy, and these miserable."--\_Ib.\_

"Ellen and Margaret fearfully,

Sought comfort in each other's eye;

Then turned their ghastly look each one,

This to her sire, that to her son."

\_Scott's Lady of the Lake\_, Canto ii, Stanza 29.

"Six youthful sons, as many blooming maids,

In one sad day beheld the Stygian shades;

These by Apollo's silver bow were slain,

Those Cynthia's arrows stretched upon the plain."

--\_Pope, Il.\_, xxiv, 760.

"Memory and forecast just returns engage,

This pointing back to youth, that on to age."

--See \_Key\_.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--EITHER AND NEITHER.

"These make the three great subjects of discussion among mankind; truth,

duty, and interest. But the arguments directed towards either of them are

generically distinct."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 318. "A thousand other

deviations may be made, and still either of them may be correct in

principle. For these divisions and their technical terms, are all

arbitrary."--\_R. W. Green's Inductive Gram.\_, p. vi. "Thus it appears, that

our alphabet is deficient, as it has but seven vowels to represent thirteen

different sounds; and has no letter to represent either of five simple

consonant sounds."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 19. "Then neither of these

[five] verbs can be neuter."--\_Oliver B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 343. "And the

\_asserter\_ is in neither of the four already mentioned."--\_Ib.\_, p. 356.

"As it is not in either of these four."--\_Ib.\_, p. 356. "See whether or not

the word comes within the definition of either of the other three simple

cases."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51. "Neither of the ten was there."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_,

p. 108. "Here are ten oranges, take either of them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 102. "There

are three modes, by either of which recollection will generally be

supplied; inclination, practice, and association."--\_Rippingham's Art of

Speaking\_, p. xxix. "Words not reducible to either of the three preceding

heads."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, pp. 335 and 340. "Now a sentence

may be analyzed in reference to either of these [four] classes."--\_Ib.\_, p.

577.

UNDER NOTE XIV.--WHOLE, LESS, MORE, AND MOST.

"Does not all proceed from the law, which regulates the whole departments

of the state?"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 278. "A messenger relates to Theseus

the whole particulars."--\_Kames. El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 313. "There are

no less than twenty dipthhongs [sic--KTH] in the English language."--\_Dr.

Ash's Gram.\_, p. xii. "The Redcross Knight runs through the whole steps of

the Christian life."--\_Spectator\_ No. 540. "There were not less than fifty

or sixty persons present."--\_Teachers' Report.\_ "Greater experience, and

more cultivated society, abate the warmth of imagination, and chasten the

manner of expression."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 152; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 351.

"By which means knowledge, much more than oratory, is become the principal

requisite."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 254. "No less than seven illustrious

cities disputed the right of having given birth to the greatest of

poets."--\_Lemp. Dict., n. Homer.\_ "Temperance, more than medicines, is the

proper means of curing many diseases."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 222. "I do

not suppose, that we Britons want genius, more than our

neighbours."--\_Ib.\_, p. 215. "In which he saith, he has found no less than

twelve untruths."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 460. "The several places of

rendezvous were concerted, and the whole operations fixed."--HUME: see

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 190. "In these rigid opinions the whole sectaries

concurred."--\_Id., ib.\_ "Out of whose modifications have been made most

complex modes."--LOCKE: \_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 148. "The Chinese vary each

of their words on no less than five different tones."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

58. "These people, though they possess more shining qualities, are not so

proud as he is, nor so vain as she."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 211. "'Tis

certain, we believe ourselves more, after we have made a thorough Inquiry

into the Thing."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 244. "As well as the whole

Course and Reasons of the Operation."--\_Ib.\_ "Those rules and principles

which are of most practical advantage."--\_Newman's Rhet.\_, p. 4. "And there

shall be no more curse."--\_Rev.\_, xxii, 3. "And there shall be no more

death."--\_Rev.\_, xxi, 4. "But in recompense, we have more pleasing pictures

of ancient manners."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 436. "Our language has suffered

more injurious changes in America, since the British army landed on our

shores, than it had suffered before, in the period of three

centuries."--\_Webster's Essays\_, Ed. of 1790, p. 96. "The whole

conveniences of life are derived from mutual aid and support in

society."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 166.

UNDER NOTE XV.--PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVES.

"To such as think the nature of it deserving their attention."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 84. "In all points, more deserving the approbation of their

readers."--\_Keepsake\_, 1830. "But to give way to childish sensations was

unbecoming our nature."--\_Lempriere's Dict., n. Zeno.\_ "The following

extracts are deserving the serious perusal of all."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. v,

p. 135. "No inquiry into wisdom, however superficial, is undeserving

attention."--\_Bulwer's Disowned\_, ii, 95. "The opinions of illustrious men

are deserving great consideration."--\_Porter's Family Journal\_, p. 3. "And

resolutely keeps its laws, Uncaring consequences."--\_Burns's Works\_, ii,

43. "This is an item that is deserving more attention."--\_Goodell's

Lectures.\_

"Leave then thy joys, unsuiting such an age, To a fresh comer, and resign

the stage."--\_Dryden.\_

UNDER NOTE XVI.--FIGURE OF ADJECTIVES.

"The tall dark mountains and the deep toned seas."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p.

278. "O! learn from him To station quick eyed Prudence at the

helm."--ANON.: \_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 104. "He went in a one horse

chaise."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 113. "It ought to be, 'in a one horse

chaise.'"--\_Dr. Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 334. "These are marked with the

above mentioned letters."--\_Folker's Gram.\_, p. 4. "A many headed

faction."--\_Ware's Gram.\_, p. 18. "Lest there should be no authority in any

popular grammar for the perhaps heaven inspired effort."--\_Fowle's True

English Gram.\_, Part 2d, p. 25. "Common metre stanzas consist of four

Iambic lines; one of eight, and the next of six syllables. They were

formerly written in two fourteen syllable lines."--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p.

69. "Short metre stanzas consist of four Iambic lines; the third of eight,

and the rest of six syllables."--\_Ibid.\_ "Particular metre stanzas consist

of six Iambic lines; the third and sixth of six syllables, the rest of

eight."--\_Ibid.\_ "Hallelujah metre stanzas consist of six Iambic lines; the

last two of eight syllables, and the rest of six."--\_Ibid.\_ "Long metre

stanzas are merely the union of four Iambic lines, of ten syllables

each."--\_Ibid.\_ "A majesty more commanding than is to be found among the

rest of the Old Testament poets."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 418.

"You sulphurous and thought executed fires, Vaunt couriers to oak cleaving

thunderbolts, Singe my white head! And thou, all shaking thunder Strike

flat the thick rotundity o' the world!"--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 264.

CHAPTER V.--PRONOUNS.

The rules for the agreement of Pronouns with their antecedents are four;

hence this chapter extends from the tenth rule to the thirteenth,

inclusively. The \_cases\_ of Pronouns are embraced with those of nouns, in

the seven rules of the third chapter.

RULE X.--PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun which it

represents, in person, number, and gender:[379] as, "This is the friend \_of

whom I spoke\_; he has just arrived."--"This is the book \_which I\_ bought;

it is an excellent work."--"\_Ye\_, therefore, \_who\_ love mercy, teach \_your\_

sons to love \_it\_ too."--\_Cowper.\_

"Speak \_thou, whose\_ thoughts at humble peace repine,

Shall Wolsey's wealth with Wolsey's end be \_thine\_?"--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

When a pronoun stands for some person or thing \_indefinite\_, or \_unknown to

the speaker\_, this rule is not \_strictly\_ applicable; because the person,

number, and gender, are rather assumed in the pronoun, than regulated by an

antecedent: as, "I do not care \_who\_ knows it."--\_Steele\_. "\_Who\_ touched

me? Tell me \_who\_ it was."--"We have no knowledge how, or by \_whom\_, it is

inhabited."--ABBOT: \_Joh. Dict.\_

EXCEPTION SECOND.

The neuter pronoun \_it\_ may be applied to a young child, or to other

creatures masculine or feminine by nature, when they are not obviously

distinguishable with regard to sex; as, "Which is the real friend to the

\_child\_, the person who gives \_it\_ the sweetmeats, or the person who,

considering only \_its\_ health, resists \_its\_ importunities?"--\_Opis.\_ "He

loads the \_animal\_ he is showing me, with so many trappings and collars,

that I cannot distinctly view \_it\_"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 301. "The

\_nightingale\_ sings most sweetly when \_it\_ sings in the night."--\_Bucke's

Gram.\_, p. 52.

EXCEPTION THIRD.

The pronoun \_it\_ is often used without a definite reference to any

antecedent, and is sometimes a mere expletive, and sometimes the

representative of an action expressed afterwards by a verb; as, "Whether

she grapple \_it\_ with the pride of philosophy."--\_Chalmers.\_ "Seeking to

lord \_it\_ over God's heritage."--\_The Friend\_, vii, 253. "\_It\_ is not for

kings, O Lemuel, \_it\_ is not for kings \_to drink\_ wine, nor for princes

strong drink."--\_Prov.\_, xxxi, 4. "Having no temptation to \_it\_, God cannot

\_act unjustly\_ without defiling his nature."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. 11.

"Come, and trip \_it\_ as you go, On the light fantastic toe."--\_Milton.\_

EXCEPTION FOURTH.

A singular antecedent with the adjective \_many\_, sometimes admits a plural

pronoun, but never in the same clause; as, "Hard has been the fate of

\_many\_ a great \_genius\_, that while \_they\_ have conferred immortality on

others, \_they\_ have wanted themselves some friend to embalm their names to

posterity."--\_Welwood's Pref. to Rowe's Lucan.\_

"In Hawick twinkled \_many a light\_,

Behind him soon \_they\_ set in night."--\_W. Scott.\_

EXCEPTION FIFTH.

When a plural pronoun is put by enallagè for the singular, it does not

agree with its noun in number, because it still requires a plural verb; as,

"\_We\_ [Lindley Murray] \_have followed\_ those authors, who appear to have

given them the most natural and intelligible distribution."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 29. "\_We shall close our\_ remarks on this subject, by

introducing the sentiments of Dr. Johnson respecting it."--\_Ib.\_ "My lord,

\_you know\_ I love \_you\_"--\_Shakspeare.\_

EXCEPTION SIXTH.

The pronoun sometimes disagrees with its antecedent in one sense, because

it takes it in an other; as, "I have perused Mr. Johnson's \_Grammatical

Commentaries\_, and find \_it\_[380] a very laborious, learned, and useful

Work."--\_Tho. Knipe\_, D. D. "\_Lamps\_ is of the plural number, because \_it\_

means more than one."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 8. "\_Man\_ is of the

masculine gender, because \_it\_ is the name of a male."--\_Ib.\_ "The \_Utica

Sentinel\_ says \_it\_ has not heard whether the wounds are

dangerous."--\_Evening Post\_. (Better: "The \_editor\_ of the Utica Sentinel

says, \_he\_ has not heard," &c.) "There is little \_Benjamin\_ with \_their\_

ruler."--\_Psalms\_, lxviii, 27.

"\_Her\_ end when \_emulation\_ misses,

\_She\_ turns to envy, stings, and hisses."--\_Swift's Poems\_, p. 415.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE X.

OBS. 1.--Respecting a pronoun, the main thing is, that the reader perceive

clearly \_for what it stands\_; and next, that he do not misapprehend \_its

relation of case\_. For the sake of completeness and uniformity in parsing,

it is, I think, expedient to apply the foregoing rule not only to those

pronouns which have obvious antecedents expressed, but also to such as are

not accompanied by the nouns for which they stand. Even those which are put

for persons or things unknown or indefinite, may be said to agree with

whatever is meant by them; that is, with such nouns as their own properties

indicate. For the reader will naturally understand something by every

pronoun, unless it be a mere expletive, and without any antecedent. For

example: "It would depend upon \_who\_ the forty were."--\_Trial at

Steubenville\_, p. 50. Here \_who\_ is an indefinite relative, equivalent to

\_what persons\_; of the third person, plural, masculine; and is in the

nominative case after were, by Rule 6th. For the full construction seems to

be this: "It would depend upon \_the persons who\_ the forty were." So

\_which\_, for \_which person\_, or \_which thing\_, (if we call it a pronoun

rather than an adjective,) may be said to have the properties of the noun

\_person\_ or \_thing\_ understood; as,

"His notions fitted things so well,

That \_which\_ was \_which\_ he could not tell."--\_Hudibras\_.

OBS. 2.--The pronoun \_we\_ is used by the speaker or writer to represent

himself and others, and is therefore plural. But it is sometimes used, by a

sort of fiction, in stead of the singular, to intimate that the speaker or

writer is not alone in his opinions; or, perhaps more frequently, to evade

the charge of egotism; for this modest assumption of plurality seems most

common with those who have something else to assume: as, "And so lately as

1809, Pope Pius VII, in excommunicating his 'own dear son,' Napoleon, whom

he crowned and blessed, says: '\_We\_, unworthy as \_we\_ are, represent the

God of peace.'"--\_Dr. Brownlee\_. "The coat fits \_us\_ as well as if \_we\_ had

been melted and poured into it."--\_Prentice\_. Monarchs sometimes prefer

\_we\_ to \_I\_, in immediate connexion with a singular noun; as, "\_We

Alexander\_, Autocrat of all the Russias."--"\_We the Emperor\_ of China,"

&c.--\_Economy of Human Life\_, p. vi. They also employ the anomalous

compound \_ourself\_, which is not often used by other people; as, "Witness

\_ourself\_ at Westminster, 28 day of April, in the tenth year of \_our\_

reign. CHARLES."

"\_Cæs.\_ What touches \_us ourself\_, shall be last serv'd."

--\_Shak., J. C.\_, Act iii, Sc. 1.

"\_Ourself\_ to hoary Nestor will repair."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. x, l. 65.

OBS. 3.--The pronoun \_you\_, though originally and properly plural, is now

generally applied alike to one person or to more. Several observations upon

this fashionable substitution of the plural number for the singular, will

be found in the fifth and sixth chapters of Etymology. This usage, however

it may seem to involve a solecism, is established by that authority against

which the mere grammarian has scarcely a right to remonstrate. Alexander

Murray, the schoolmaster, observes, "When language was plain and simple,

the English always said \_thou\_, when speaking to a single person. But when

an affected politeness, and a fondness for continental manners and customs

began to take place, persons of rank and fashion said \_you\_ in stead of

\_thou\_. The innovation gained ground, and custom gave sanction to the

change, and stamped it with the authority of law."--\_English Gram.\_, Third

Edition, 1793, p. 107. This respectable grammarian acknowledged both \_thou\_

and \_you\_ to be of the second person singular. I do not, however, think it

necessary or advisable to do this, or to encumber the conjugations, as some

have done, by introducing the latter pronoun, and the corresponding form of

the verb, as singular.[381] It is manifestly better to say, that the plural

is used \_for the singular\_, by the figure \_Enallagè\_. For if \_you\_ has

literally become singular by virtue of this substitution, \_we\_ also is

singular for the same reason, as often as it is substituted for \_I\_; else

the authority of innumerable authors, editors, compilers, and crowned,

heads, is insufficient to make it so. And again, if \_you\_ and the

corresponding form of the verb are \_literally of the second person

singular\_, (as Wells contends, with an array of more than sixty names of

English grammarians to prove it,) then, by their own rule of concord, since

\_thou\_ and its verb are still generally retained in the same place by these

grammarians, a verb that agrees with one of these nominatives, must also

agree with the other; so that \_you hast\_ and \_thou have, you seest\_ and

\_thou see\_, may be, so far as appears from \_their\_ instructions, as good a

concord as can be made of these words!

OBS. 4.--The putting of you for thou has introduced the anomalous compound

\_yourself\_, which is now very generally used in stead of \_thyself\_. In this

instance, as in the less frequent adoption of \_ourself\_ for \_myself\_,

Fashion so tramples upon the laws of grammar, that it is scarcely possible

to frame an intelligible exception in her favour. These pronouns are

essentially singular, both in form and meaning; and yet they cannot be used

with \_I\_ or \_thou\_, with \_me\_ or \_thee\_, or with any verb that is literally

singular; as, "\_I ourself am.\_" but, on the contrary, they must be

connected only with such plural terms as are put for the singular; as, "\_We

ourself are\_ king."--"Undoubtedly \_you yourself become\_ an innovator."--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 364; \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, 167.

"Try touch, or sight, or smell; try what you will,

\_You\_ strangely \_find\_ nought but \_yourself\_ alone."

--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, B. i, l. 162.

OBS. 5.--Such terms of address, as \_your Majesty, your Highness, your

Lordship, your Honour\_, are sometimes followed by verbs and pronouns of the

second person plural, substituted for the singular; and sometimes by words

literally singular, and of the third person, with no other figure than a

substitution of \_who\_ for \_which\_: as, "Wherein \_your Lordship, who shines\_

with so much distinction in the noblest assembly in the world, peculiarly

\_excels\_"--\_Dedication of Sale's Koran\_. "We have good cause to give \_your

Highness\_ the first place; \_who\_, by a continued series of favours \_have

obliged\_ us, not only while \_you moved\_ in a lower orb, but since the Lord

hath called \_your Highness\_ to supreme authority."--\_Massachusetts to

Cromwell\_, in 1654.

OBS. 6.--The general usage of the French is like that of the English, \_you\_

for \_thou\_; but Spanish, Portuguese, or German politeness requires that the

third person be substituted for the second. And when they would be very

courteous, the Germans use also the plural for the singular, as \_they\_ for

\_thou\_. Thus they have a fourfold method of addressing a person: as,

\_they\_, denoting the highest degree of respect; \_he\_, a less degree; \_you\_,

a degree still less; and \_thou\_, none at all, or absolute reproach. Yet,

even among them, the last is used as a term of endearment to children, and

of veneration to God! \_Thou\_, in English, still retains its place firmly,

and without dispute, in all addresses to the Supreme Being; but in respect

to the \_first person\_, an observant clergyman has suggested the following

dilemma: "Some men will be pained, if a minister says \_we\_ in the pulpit;

and others will quarrel with him, if he says \_I\_."--\_Abbott's Young

Christian\_, p. 268.

OBS. 7.--Any extensive perversion of the common words of a language from

their original and proper use, is doubtless a matter of considerable

moment. These changes in the use of the pronouns, being some of them

evidently a sort of complimentary fictions, some religious people have made

it a matter of conscience to abstain from them, and have published their

reasons for so doing. But the \_moral objections\_ which may lie against such

or any other applications of words, do not come within the grammarian's

province. Let every one consider for himself the moral bearing of what he

utters: not forgetting the text, "But I say unto you, that \_every idle

word\_ that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of

judgement: for \_by thy words\_ thou shalt be justified, and \_by thy words\_

thou shalt be condemned."--\_Matt.\_, xii, 36 and 37. What scruples this

declaration \_ought to\_ raise, it is not my business to define. But if such

be God's law, what shall be the reckoning of those who make no conscience

of uttering continually, or when they will, not idle words only, but

expressions the most absurd, insignificant, false, exaggerated, vulgar,

indecent, injurious, wicked, sophistical, unprincipled, ungentle, and

perhaps blasphemous, or profane?

OBS. 8.--The agreement of pronouns with their antecedents, it is necessary

to observe, is liable to be controlled or affected by several of the

figures of rhetoric. A noun used figuratively often suggests two different

senses, the one literal, and the other tropical; and the agreement of the

pronoun must be sometimes with this, and sometimes with that, according to

the nature of the trope. If the reader be unacquainted with tropes and

figures, he should turn to the explanation of them in Part Fourth of this

work; but almost every one knows something about them, and such as must

here be named, will perhaps be made sufficiently intelligible by the

examples. There seems to be no occasion to introduce under this head more

than four; namely, personification, metaphor, metonymy, and synecdoche.

OBS. 9.--When a pronoun represents the name of an inanimate object

\_personified\_, it agrees with its antecedent in the figurative, and not in

the literal sense; as, "There were others whose crime it was rather to

neglect \_Reason\_ than to disobey \_her\_."--\_Dr. Johnson\_. "\_Penance\_ dreams

her life away."--\_Rogers\_. "Grim \_Darkness\_ furls \_his\_ leaden

shroud."--\_Id.\_ Here if the pronoun were made neuter, the personification

would be destroyed; as, "By the progress which \_England\_ had already made

in navigation and commerce, \_it\_ was now prepared for advancing

farther."--\_Robertson's America\_, Vol. ii, p. 341. If the pronoun \_it\_ was

here intended to represent England, the feminine \_she\_ would have been much

better; and, if such was not the author's meaning, the sentence has some

worse fault than the agreement of a pronoun with its noun in a wrong sense.

OBS. 10.--When the antecedent is applied \_metaphorically\_, the pronoun

usually agrees with it in its literal, and not in its figurative sense; as,

"Pitt was the \_pillar which\_ upheld the state."--"The \_monarch\_ of

mountains rears \_his\_ snowy head."--"The \_stone which\_ the builders

rejected."--\_Matt.\_, xxi, 42. According to this rule, \_which\_ would be

better than \_whom\_, in the following text: "I considered the horns, and,

behold, there came up among them an other \_little horn\_, before \_whom\_

there were three of the first horns plucked up by the roots."--\_Daniel\_,

vii, 8. In \_Rom.\_, ix, 33, there is something similar: "Behold, I lay in

Sion a \_stumbling-stone\_ and \_rock\_ of offence: and whosoever believeth \_on

him\_ shall not be ashamed." Here the \_stone\_ or \_rock\_ is a metaphor for

\_Christ\_, and the pronoun \_him\_ may be referred to the sixth exception

above; but the construction is not agreeable, because it is not regular: it

would be more grammatical, to change \_on him\_ to \_thereon\_. In the

following example, the noun "\_wolves\_," which literally requires \_which\_,

and not \_who\_, is used metaphorically for \_selfish priests\_; and, in the

relative, the figurative or personal sense is allowed to prevail:

"\_Wolves\_ shall succeed for teachers, grievous \_wolves\_,

\_Who\_ all the sacred mysteries of Heaven

To their own vile advantages shall turn."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. xii, l. 508.

This seems to me somewhat forced and catachrestical. So too, and worse, the

following; which makes a \_star\_ rise and \_speak\_:

"So \_spake\_ our \_Morning Star\_ then in \_his rise\_,

And \_looking\_ round on every side \_beheld\_

A pathless desert, dusk with horrid shades."

--\_Id., P. R.\_, B. i, l. 294.

OBS. 11.--When the antecedent is put by \_metonymy\_ for a noun of different

properties, the pronoun sometimes agrees with it in the figurative, and

sometimes in the literal sense; as, "When \_Israel\_ was a child, then I

loved \_him\_, and called my son out of Egypt. As they called \_them\_, so

\_they\_ went from them: [i. e., When Moses and the prophets called the

\_Israelites\_, they often refused to hear:] \_they\_ sacrificed unto Baalim,

and burnt incense to graven images. I taught \_Ephraim\_ also to go, taking

\_them\_ by \_their\_ arms; but \_they\_ knew not that I healed

\_them\_."--\_Hosea\_, xi, 1, 2, 3. The mixture and obscurity which are here,

ought not to be imitated. The name of a man, put for the nation or tribe of

his descendants, may have a pronoun of either number, and a nation may be

figuratively represented as feminine; but a mingling of different genders

or numbers ought to be avoided: as, "\_Moab\_ is spoiled, and gone up out of

\_her\_ cities, and \_his\_ chosen young men are gone down to the

slaughter."--\_Jeremiah\_, xlviii, 15.

"The wolf, who [say \_that\_] from the nightly fold,

Fierce drags the bleating \_prey\_, ne'er drunk \_her\_ milk,

Nor wore \_her\_ warming fleece."--\_Thomson's Seasons\_.

"That each may fill the circle mark'd by \_Heaven\_,

\_Who\_ sees with equal eye, as God of all,

A hero perish or a sparrow fall."--\_Pope's Essay on Man\_.

"And \_heaven\_ behold \_its\_ image in his breast."--\_Ib.\_

"Such fate to suffering \_worth\_ is given,

\_Who\_ long with wants and woes has striven."--\_Burns\_.

OBS. 12.--When the antecedent is put by \_synecdoche\_ for more or less than

it literally signifies, the pronoun agrees with it in the figurative, and

not in the literal sense; as,

"A dauntless \_soul\_ erect, \_who\_ smiled on death."--\_Thomson\_

"But to the generous still improving \_mind\_,

\_That\_ gives the hopeless heart to sing for joy,

To \_him\_ the long review of ordered life

Is inward rapture only to be felt."--\_Id. Seasons\_.

OBS. 13.--Pronouns usually \_follow\_ the words which they represent; but

this order is sometimes reversed: as, "\_Whom\_ the cap fits, let \_him\_ put

it on."--"Hark! \_they\_ whisper; angels say," &c.--\_Pope\_. "\_Thou, O Lord\_,

art a God full of compassion."--\_Old Test\_. And in some cases of

apposition, the pronoun naturally comes first; as, "\_I Tertius\_"--"\_Ye

lawyers\_." The pronoun \_it\_, likewise, very often precedes the clause or

phrase which it represents; as, "Is \_it\_ not manifest, that the generality

of people speak and write very badly?"--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 160;

\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 358. This arrangement is too natural to be called a

transposition. The most common form of the real inversion is that of the

antecedent and relative in poetry; as,

"\_Who\_ stops to plunder at this signal hour,

The birds shall tear \_him\_, and the dogs devour."

--POPE: \_Iliad\_, xv, 400.

OBS. 14.--A pronoun sometimes represents a \_phrase\_ or a \_sentence\_; and in

this case the pronoun is always in the third person singular neuter: as,

"Surely the Lord is in this place, and I knew \_it\_ not."--\_Gen.\_, xxviii,

10. "Yet men can go on to vilify or disregard Christianity; \_which\_ is to

talk and act as if they had a demonstration of its falsehood."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 269. "When \_it\_ is asked wherein personal identity consists,

the answer should be the same as if \_it\_ were asked, wherein consists

similitude or equality."--\_Ib.\_, p. 270. "Also, that the soul be without

knowledge, \_it\_ is not good."--\_Prov.\_, xix, 2. In this last example, the

pronoun is not really necessary. "That the soul be without knowledge, \_is\_

not good."--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 144. Sometimes an infinitive verb is

taken as an antecedent; as, "He will not be able \_to think\_, without \_which

it\_ is impertinent \_to read\_; nor \_to act\_, without \_which it\_ is

impertinent \_to think\_."--\_Bolingbroke, on History\_, p. 103.

OBS. 15.--When a pronoun follows two words, having a neuter verb between

them, and both referring to the same thing, it may represent either of

them, but not often with the same meaning: as, 1. "I am the man, who

command." Here, \_who command\_ belongs to the subject \_I\_, and the meaning

is, "I who command, am the man." (The latter expression places the relative

nearer to its antecedent, and is therefore preferable.) 2. "I am the man

who commands." Here, \_who commands\_ belongs to the predicate \_man\_, and the

meaning is, "I am the commander." Again: "I perceive thou art a pupil, \_who

possessest\_ good talents."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 136. Here

the construction corresponds not to the perception, which is, of the

pupil's talents. Say, therefore, "I perceive thou art a \_pupil possessing\_

(or, \_who possesses\_) good talents."

OBS. 16.--After the expletive \_it\_, which may be employed to introduce a

noun or a pronoun of any person, number, or gender, the above-mentioned

distinction is generally disregarded; and the relative is most commonly

made to agree with the latter word, especially if this word be of the first

or the second person: as, "\_It\_ is no more \_I that do it\_."--\_Rom.\_, vii,

20. "For \_it\_ is not \_ye that speak\_."--\_Matt.\_, x, 20. The propriety of

this construction is questionable. In the following examples, the relative

agrees with the \_it\_, and not with the subsequent nouns: "\_It\_ is the

combined \_excellencies\_ of all the denominations \_that\_ gives to her her

winning beauty and her powerful charms."--\_Bible Society's Report\_, 1838,

p. 89. "\_It\_ is \_purity and neatness\_ of expression \_which is\_ chiefly to

be studied."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 271. "\_It\_ is \_not the difficulty\_ of the

language, but on the contrary the \_simplicity and facility\_ of it, \_that

occasions\_ this neglect."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. vi. "\_It\_ is \_a wise head

and a good heart that constitutes\_ a great man."--\_Child's Instructor\_, p.

22.

OBS. 17.--The pronoun \_it\_ very frequently refers to something mentioned

subsequently in the sentence; as, "\_It\_ is useless \_to complain\_ of what is

irremediable." This pronoun is a necessary expletive at the commencement of

any sentence in which the verb is followed by a phrase or a clause which,

by transposition, might be made the subject of the verb; as, "\_It is

impossible\_ \_to please every one\_."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_ "\_It\_ was requisite

\_that the papers should be\_ sent."--\_Ib.\_ The following example is censured

by the Rev. Matt. Harrison: "\_It is really curious, the course\_ which balls

will sometimes take."--\_Abernethy's Lectures\_. "This awkward expression,"

says the critic, "might have been avoided by saying, 'The course which

balls will sometimes take is really curious.'"--\_Harrison, on the English

Language\_, p. 147. If the construction is objectionable, it may, in this

instance, be altered thus: "It is really curious, \_to observe\_ the course

which balls will sometimes take!" So, it appears, we may avoid a \_pleonasm\_

by an \_addition\_. But he finds a worse example: saying, "Again, in an

article \_from\_ the 'New Monthly,' No. 103, we meet with the same form of

expression, \_but with an aggravated aspect\_:--'It is incredible, the number

of apothecaries' shops, presenting themselves.' It would be quite as easy

to say, 'The number of apothecaries' shops, presenting themselves, is

incredible.' "--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. This, too, may take an infinitive, "\_to

tell\_," or "\_to behold\_;" for there is no more extravagance in doubting

one's eyes, than in declaring one's own statement "incredible." But I am

not sure that the original form is not allowable. In the following line, we

seem to have something like it:

"It curled not Tweed alone, that breeze."--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

OBS. 18.--\_Relative\_ and \_interrogative\_ pronouns are placed at or near the

beginning of their own clauses; and the learner must observe that, through

all their cases, they almost invariably retain this situation in the

sentence, and are found before their verbs even when the order of the

construction would reverse this arrangement: as, "He \_who\_ preserves me, to

\_whom\_ I owe my being, \_whose\_ I am, and \_whom\_ I serve, is

eternal."--\_Murray\_, p. 159. "He \_whom\_ you seek."--\_Lowth\_.

"The good must merit God's peculiar care;

But \_who\_, but God, can tell us \_who\_ they are?"--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 19.--A \_relative\_ pronoun, being the representative of some antecedent

word or phrase, derives from this relation its person, number, and gender,

but not its case. By taking an other relation of case, it helps to form an

other clause; and, by retaining the essential meaning of its antecedent,

serves to connect this clause to that in which the antecedent is found. No

relative, therefore, can ever be used in an independent simple sentence, or

be made the subject of a subjunctive verb, or be put in apposition with any

noun or pronoun; but, like other connectives, this pronoun belongs at the

head of a clause in a compound sentence, and excludes conjunctions, except

when two such clauses are to be joined together, as in the following

example: "I should be glad, at least, of an easy companion, \_who\_ may tell

me his thoughts, \_and\_ to \_whom\_ I may communicate mine."--\_Goldsmith's

Essays\_, p. 196.

OBS. 20.--The two \_special\_ rules commonly given by the grammarians, for

the construction of relatives, are not only unnecessary,[382] but faulty. I

shall notice them only to show my reasons for discarding them. With whom

they originated, it is difficult to say. Paul's Accidence has them, and if

Dean Colet, the supposed writer, did not take them from some earlier

author, they must have been first taught by \_him\_, about the year 1510; and

it is certain that they have been copied into almost every grammar

published since. The first one is faulty, because, "\_When there cometh no

nominative case between the relative and the verb, the relative shall\_ [not

always] \_be the nominative case to the verb\_;" as may be seen by the

following examples: "Many are the works of human industry, \_which\_ to begin

and finish are [say \_is\_] hardly granted to the same man."--\_Dr. Johnson's

Adv. to Dict.\_ "They aim at his removal; \_which\_ there is reason to fear

they will effect."--"\_Which\_ to avoid, I cut them off."--\_Shak., Hen. IV\_.

The second rule is faulty, because, "\_When there cometh a nominative case

between the relative and the verb, the relative shall\_ [not always] \_be

such case as the verb will have after it\_;" as may be seen by the following

examples: "The author has not advanced any instances, \_which\_ he does not

think \_are\_ pertinent."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 192. "\_Which\_ we have reason

to think \_was\_ the case with the Greek and Latin."--\_Ib.\_, 112. "Is this

your son, \_who\_ ye say \_was born\_ blind?"--\_John\_, ix, 19. The case of the

relative cannot be accurately determined by any rules of mere location. It

may be nominative to a verb afar off, or it may be objective with a verb

immediately following; as, "\_Which\_ I do not find that there ever

\_was\_."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 31. "And our chief reason for

believing \_which\_ is that our ancestors did so before us."--\_Philological

Museum\_, i, 641. Both these particular rules are useless, because the

general rules for the cases, as given in chapter third above, are

applicable to relatives, sufficient to all the purpose, and not liable to

any exceptions.

OBS. 21.--In syntactical parsing, each word, in general, is to be resolved

by some \_one\_ rule; but the parsing of a pronoun commonly requires \_two\_;

one for its agreement with the noun or nouns for which it stands, and an

other for its case. The rule of agreement will be one of the four which are

embraced in this present chapter; and the rule for the case will be one of

the seven which compose chapter third. So that the whole syntax of pronouns

requires the application of eleven different rules, while that of nouns or

verbs is embraced in six or seven, and that of any other part of speech, in

one only. In respect to their cases, relatives and interrogatives admit of

every construction common to nouns, or to the personal pronouns, except

apposition. This is proved by the following examples:

1. Nominatives by Rule 2d: "I \_who\_ write;--Thou \_who\_ writest;--He \_who\_

writes;--The animal \_which\_ runs."--\_Dr. Adam\_. "He \_that spareth\_ his rod,

hateth his son."--\_Solomon\_. "He \_who\_ does any thing \_which\_ he knows is

wrong, ventures on dangerous ground."--"\_What\_ will become of us without

religion?"--\_Blair\_. "Here I determined to wait the hand of death; \_which\_,

I hope, when at last it comes, \_will fall\_ lightly upon me."--\_Dr.

Johnson\_. "\_What is\_ sudden and unaccountable, \_serves\_ to

confound."--\_Crabb\_. "They only are wise, \_who are\_ wise to

salvation."--\_Goodwin\_.

2. Nominatives by Rule 6th: (i.e., words parsed as nominatives after the

verbs, though mostly transposed:) "\_Who\_ art thou?"--\_Bible\_. "\_What\_ were

we?"--\_Ib.\_ "Do not tell them \_who\_ I am."--"Let him be \_who\_ he may, he is

not the honest fellow \_that\_ he seemed."--"The general conduct of mankind

is neither \_what\_ it was designed, nor \_what\_ it ought to be."

3. Nominatives absolute by Rule 8th: "There are certain bounds to

imprudence, \_which being transgressed\_, there remains no place for

repentance in the natural course of things."--\_Bp. Butler\_. "\_Which being

so\_, it need not be any wonder, why I should."--\_Walker's Particles,

Pref.\_, p. xiv. "He offered an apology, \_which not being admitted\_, he

became submissive."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 202. This construction of the

relative is a Latinism, and very seldom used by the best \_English\_ writers.

4. Possessives by Rule 4th: "The chief man of the island, \_whose\_ name was

Publius."--\_Acts\_. "Despair, a cruel tyrant, from \_whose\_ prisons none can

escape."--\_Dr. Johnson\_. "To contemplate on Him \_whose\_ yoke is easy and

\_whose\_ burden is light."--\_Steele\_.

5. Objectives by Rule 5th: "Those \_whom\_ she persuaded."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

"The cloak \_that\_ I left at Troas."--\_St. Paul\_. "By the things \_which\_ he

suffered."--\_Id.\_ "A man \_whom\_ there is reason to suspect."--"\_What\_ are

we to do?"--\_Burke\_. "Love refuses nothing \_that\_ love sends."--\_Gurnall\_.

"The first thing, says he, is, to choose some maxim or point of morality;

to inculcate \_which\_, is to be the design of his work."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 421. "\_Whomsoever\_ you please to appoint."--\_Lowth\_. "\_Whatsover\_

[sic--KTH] he doeth, shall prosper."--\_Bible\_. "\_What\_ we are afraid to do

before men, we should be afraid to think before God."--\_Sibs\_. "Shall I

hide from Abraham that thing \_which\_ I do?"--\_Gen.\_, xviii, 32. "Shall I

hide from Abraham \_what\_ I am going to do?"--"Call imperfection \_what\_ thou

fanciest such."--\_Pope\_.

6. Objectives by Rule 6th: (i.e., pronouns parsed as objectives after

neuter verbs, though they stand before them:) "He is not the man \_that\_ I

took him to be."--"\_Whom\_ did you suppose me to be?"--"If the lad ever

become \_what\_ you wish him to be."

7. Objectives by Rule 7th: "To \_whom\_ shall we go?"--\_Bible\_. "The laws by

\_which\_ the world is governed, are general."--\_Bp. Butler\_. "\_Whom\_ he

looks upon as his defender."--\_Addison\_. "That secret heaviness of heart

\_which\_ unthinking men are subject to."--\_Id.\_ "I cannot but think the loss

of such talents as the man of \_whom\_ I am speaking was master of, a more

melancholy instance."--\_Steele\_. "Grammar is the solid foundation upon

\_which\_ all other science rests."--\_Buchanan's Eng. Synt.\_, p. xx.

OBS. 22.--In familiar language, the relative of the objective case is

frequently understood; as, "The man [\_whom\_] I trust."--\_Cowper\_. "Here is

the letter [\_which\_] I received." So in the following sentences: "This is

the man they hate. These are the goods they bought. Are these the Gods they

worship? Is this the woman you saw?"--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 96. This ellipsis

seems allowable only in the familiar style. In grave writing, or deliberate

discourse, it is much better to express this relative. The omission of it

is often attended with some obscurity; as, "The next error [\_that\_] I shall

mention [,] is a capital one."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 157. "It is

little [\_that\_] we know of the divine perfections."--\_Scougal\_, p. 94. "The

faith [\_which\_] we give to memory, may be thought, on a superficial view,

to be resolvable into consciousness, as well as that [\_which\_] we give to

the immediate impressions of sense."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 53. "We speak

that [\_which\_] we do know, and testify that [\_which\_] we have

seen."--\_John\_, iii, 11. The omission of a relative in the nominative case,

is almost always inelegant; as, "This is the worst thing [\_that\_] could

happen."--"There were several things [\_which\_] brought it upon

me."--\_Pilgrim's Progress\_, p. 162. The latter ellipsis may occur after

\_but\_ or \_than\_, and it is also sometimes allowed in poetry; as, [There is]

"No person of reflection but [who] must be sensible, that an incident makes

a stronger impression on an eye-witness, than when heard at second

hand."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 257.

"In this 'tis God directs, in that 'tis man."--\_Pope, on Man\_.

"Abuse on all he lov'd, or lov'd him, spread."--\_Id., to Arbuthnot\_.

"There's nothing blackens like the ink of fools."--\_Id., to Augustus\_.

OBS. 23.--The \_antecedent\_ is sometimes suppressed, especially in poetry;

as, "Who will, may be a judge."--\_Churchill\_. "How shall I curse [\_him\_ or

\_them\_] whom God hath not cursed?"--\_Numbers\_, xxiii, 8. "There are,

indeed, [some persons] who seem disposed to extend her authority much

farther."--\_Campbell's Philosophy of Rhet.\_, p. 187.

[He] "Who lives to nature, rarely can be poor;

[He] Who lives to fancy, never can be rich."--\_Young\_.

"Serious should be an author's final views;

[They] Who write for pure amusement, ne'er amuse."--\_Id.\_

OBS. 24.--\_Which\_, as well as \_who\_, was formerly applied to persons; as,

"Our \_Father which\_ art in heaven."--\_Bible\_. "Pray for \_them which\_

despitefully use you."--\_Luke\_, vi, 28. And, as to the former example here

cited, some British critics, still preferring the archaism, have accused

"The Americans" of "poor criticism," in that they "have changed \_which\_

into \_who\_, as being more consonant to the rules of Grammar." Falsely

imagining, that \_which\_ and \_who\_, with the same antecedent, can be of

different \_genders\_, they allege, that, "The use of the \_neuter\_ pronoun

carried with it a certain vagueness and sublimity, not inappropriate in

reminding us that our worship is addressed to a Being, infinite, and

superior to all distinctions applicable to material objects."--\_Men and

Manners in America\_: quoted and endorsed by the REV. MATT. HARRISON, in his

treatise on the English Language, p. 191. This is all fancy; and, in my

opinion, absurd. It is just like the religious prejudice which could

discern "a singular propriety" in "the double superlative \_most

highest\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 28. But \_which\_ may still be applied to a

young child, if sex and intelligence be disregarded; as, "The \_child which\_

died." Or even to adults, when they are spoken of without regard to a

distinct personality or identity; as, "\_Which\_ of you will go?"--"Crabb

knoweth not \_which\_ is \_which\_, himself or his parodist."--\_Leigh Hunt\_.

OBS. 25.--A proper name taken merely as a name, or an appellative taken in

any sense not strictly personal, must be represented by \_which\_, and not by

\_who\_; as, "Herod--\_which\_ is but an other name for cruelty."--"In every

prescription of duty, God proposeth himself as a rewarder; \_which\_ he is

only to those that please him."--\_Dr. J. Owen\_. \_Which\_ would perhaps be

more proper than \_whom\_, in the following passage: "They did not destroy

the \_nations\_, concerning \_whom\_ the Lord commanded them."--\_Psalms\_, cvi,

34. Dr. Blair has preferred it in the following instance: "My lion and my

pillar are sufficiently interpreted by the mention of \_Achilles\_ and the

\_minister, which\_ I join to them."--\_Lectures\_, p. 151. He meant, "\_whose

names I connect with theirs\_;" and not, that he joined the \_person\_ of

Achilles to a lion, or that of a minister to a pillar.

OBS. 26.--When two or more relative clauses pertain to the same antecedent,

if they are connected by a conjunction, the same relative ought to be

employed in each, agreeably to the doctrine of the seventh note below; but

if no conjunction is expressed or understood between them, the pronouns

ought rather to be different; as, "There are many things \_that\_ you can

speak of, \_which\_ cannot be seen."--\_R W. Green's Gram.\_, p. 11. This

distinction is noticed in the fifth chapter of Etymology, Obs. 29th, on the

Classes of Pronouns. Dr. Priestley says, "Whatever relative \_be\_ used, in a

\_series\_ of clauses, relating to the same antecedent, the same ought to be

used in them all. 'It is remarkable, that \_Holland\_, against \_which\_ the

war was undertaken, \_and that\_, in the very beginning, was reduced to the

brink of destruction, lost nothing.'--\_Universal History\_, Vol. 25, p. 117.

It ought to have been, \_and which in the very beginning\_."--\_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 102. L. Murray, (as I have shown in the Introduction, Ch. x, ¶

22,) assumes all this, without references; adding as a salvo the word

"\_generally\_," which merely impairs the certainty of the rule:--"the same

relative ought \_generally\_ to be used in them all."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p.

155. And, of \_who\_ and \_that\_, Cobbett says: "Either may do; but both

\_never\_ ought to be relatives of the same antecedent in the same

sentence."--\_Gram.\_, ¶ 202. The inaccuracy of these rules is as great as

that of the phraseology which is corrected under them. In the following

sentence, the first relative only is restrictive, and consequently the

other may be different: "These were the officers \_that\_ were called

\_Homotimoi\_, and \_who\_ signalized themselves afterwards so gloriously upon

all occasions."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 62. See also in \_Rev.\_, x, 6th, a

similar example without the conjunction.

OBS. 27.--In conversation, the possessive pronoun \_your\_ is sometimes used

in a droll way, being shortened into \_your\_ in pronunciation, and nothing

more being meant by it, than might be expressed by the article \_an\_ or \_a\_:

as, "Rich honesty dwells, like \_your\_ miser, sir, in a poor house; as,

\_your\_ pearl in \_your\_ foul oyster."--\_Shakspeare\_.

NOTES TO RULE X.

NOTE 1.--A pronoun should not be introduced in connexion with words that

belong more properly to the antecedent, or to an other pronoun; as, "And

then there is good use for \_Pallas her\_ glass."--\_Bacon's Wisdom\_, p. 22.

Say--"for \_Pallas's\_ glass."

"My \_banks they\_ are furnish'd with bees,

Whose murmur invites one to sleep."--\_Shenstone\_, p. 284.

This last instance, however, is only an example of \_pleonasm\_; which is

allowable and frequent in \_animated discourse\_, but inelegant in any other.

Our grammarians have condemned it too positively. It occurs sundry times in

the Bible; as, "Know ye that the LORD \_he\_ is God."--\_Psalms\_, c, 3.

NOTE II.--A change of number in the second person, or even a promiscuous

use of \_ye\_ and \_you\_ in the same case and the same style, is inelegant,

and ought to be avoided; as, "\_You\_ wept, and I for \_thee\_"--"Harry, said

my lord, don't cry; I'll give \_you\_ something towards \_thy\_

loss."--\_Swift's Poems\_, p. 267. "\_Ye\_ sons of sloth, \_you\_ offspring of

darkness, awake from your sleep."--\_Brown's Metaphors\_, p. 96. Our poets

have very often adopted the former solecism, to accommodate their measure,

or to avoid the harshness of the old verb in the second person singular:

as, "\_Thy\_ heart is yet blameless, O fly while \_you may\_!"--\_Queen's Wake\_,

p. 46.

"Oh! Peggy, Peggy, when \_thou\_ goest to brew,

Consider well what \_you're\_ about to do."--\_King's Poems\_, p. 594.

"As in that lov'd Athenian bower,

You \_learn'd\_ an all-commanding power,

Thy mimic soul, O nymph endear'd!

Can well recall what then it heard."--\_Collins, Ode to Music.\_

NOTE III.--The relative \_who\_ is applied only to persons, and to animals or

things personified; and \_which\_, to brute animals and inanimate things

spoken of literally: as, "The \_judge who\_ presided;"--"The old \_crab who\_

advised the young one;"--"The \_horse which\_ ran away;"--"The \_book which\_

was given me."

NOTE IV.--Nouns of multitude, unless they express persons directly as such,

should not be represented by the relative \_who\_: to say, "The \_family whom\_

I visited," would hardly be proper; \_that\_ would here be better. When such

nouns are strictly of the neuter gender, \_which\_ may represent them; as,

"The \_committees which\_ were appointed." But where the idea of rationality

is predominant, \_who\_ or \_whom\_ seems not to be improper; as, "The

conclusion of the Iliad is like the exit of a great man out of \_company

whom\_ he has entertained magnificently."--\_Cowper.\_ "A law is only the

expression of the desire of a \_multitude who\_ have power to

punish."--\_Brown's Philosophy of the Mind.\_

NOTE V.--In general, the pronoun must so agree with its antecedent as to

present the same idea, and never in such a manner as to confound the name

with the thing signified, or any two things with each other. Examples:

"\_Jane\_ is in the nominative case, because \_it\_ leads the

sentence."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 30. Here \_it\_ represents \_the word

"Jane"\_ and not \_the person Jane.\_ "What mark or sign is put after \_master\_

to show that \_he\_ is in the possessive case? Spell \_it\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 32.

Here \_the word "master"\_ is most absurdly confounded with \_the man\_; and

that to accommodate grammar to a child's comprehension!

NOTE VI.--The relative \_that\_ may be applied either to persons or to

things. In the following cases, it is more appropriate than \_who, whom\_, or

\_which\_; and ought to be preferred, unless it be necessary to use a

preposition before the relative:--(1.) After an adjective of the

superlative degree, when the relative clause is restrictive;[383] as, "He

was the \_first that\_ came."--"He was the \_fittest\_ person \_that\_ could then

be found."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 422. "The Greeks were the \_greatest\_

reasoners \_that\_ ever appeared in the world."--BEATTIE: \_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 127. (2.) After the adjective \_same\_, when the relative clause is

restrictive; as, "He is the \_same\_ man \_that\_ you saw before."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 101; \_Murray's\_, 156; \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, 422. (3.)

After the antecedent \_who\_; as, "Who that is a sincere friend to it, can

look with indifference upon attempts to shake the foundation of the

fabric?"--\_Washington.\_ (4.) After two or more antecedents that demand a

relative adapted both to persons and to things; as, "He spoke largely of

the \_men and things that\_ he had seen."--"When some particular \_person\_ or

\_thing\_ is spoken of, \_that\_ ought to be more distinctly marked."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 51. (5.) After an unlimited antecedent which the

relative clause is designed to restrict; as, "\_Thoughts that\_ breathe, and

\_words that\_ burn."--\_Gray\_. "Music \_that accords\_ with the present tone of

mind, is, on that account, doubly agreeable."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii,

311. "For Theocritus descends sometimes into \_ideas that\_ are gross and

mean."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 393. (6.) After any antecedent introduced by

the expletive \_it\_; as, "\_It\_ is \_you that\_ suffer."--"It was I, and not

he, \_that\_ did it."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 142. "It was not he[384]

\_that\_ they were so angry with."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, R. 17. "\_It\_ was

not \_Gavius\_ alone \_that\_ Verres meant to insult."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

325. (7.) And, in general, wherever the propriety of \_who\_ or \_which\_ is

doubtful; as, "The little \_child that\_ was placed in the midst."

NOTE VII.--When two or more relative clauses connected by a conjunction

have a similar dependence in respect to the antecedent, the same pronoun

must be employed in each; as, "O thou, \_who\_ art, and \_who\_ wast, and \_who\_

art to come!"--"And they shall spread them before the sun, and the moon,

and all the host of heaven, \_whom\_ they have loved, and \_whom\_ they have

served, and after \_whom\_ they have walked, and \_whom\_ they have sought, and

\_whom\_ they have worshiped."--\_Jer.\_, viii, 2. NOTE VIII.--The relative,

and the preposition governing it, should not be omitted, when they are

necessary to the sense intended, or to a proper connexion of the parts of

the sentence; as, "He is still in the situation you saw him." Better thus:

"He is still in the situation in \_which\_ you saw him."

NOTE IX.--After certain nouns, of time, place, manner, or cause, the

conjunctive adverbs \_when, where, whither, whence, how\_, and \_why\_, are a

sort of special relatives; but no such adverb should be used where a

preposition and a relative pronoun would better express the relation of the

terms: as, "A cause \_where\_ justice is so much concerned." Say, "A cause

\_in which\_." See Etymology, Obs. 6th, 7th, and 8th, on the Classes of

Adverbs.

NOTE X.--Where a pronoun or a pronominal adjective will not express the

meaning clearly, the noun must be repeated, or inserted in stead of it: as,

"We see the beautiful variety of colour in the rainbow, and are led to

consider the cause of \_it\_." Say,--"the cause of \_that variety\_;" because

the \_it\_ may mean \_the variety, the colour\_, or \_the rainbow\_.

NOTE XI.--To prevent ambiguity or obscurity, the relative should, in

general, be placed as near as possible to the antecedent. The following

sentence is therefore faulty: "He is like a beast of prey, that is void of

compassion." Better thus: "He that is void of compassion, is like a beast

of prey."

NOTE XII.--The pronoun \_what\_ should never be used in stead of the

conjunction \_that\_; as, "Think no man so perfect but \_what\_ he may err."

This is a vulgar fault. Say,--"but \_that\_ he may err."

NOTE XIII.--A pronoun should never be used to represent an

\_adjective\_,--except the pronominal adjectives, and others taken

substantively; because a pronoun can neither express a concrete quality as

such, nor convert it properly into an abstract: as, "Be \_attentive\_;

without \_which\_ you will learn nothing." Better thus: "Be attentive; \_for

without attention\_ you will learn nothing."

NOTE XIV.--Though the relative which may in some instances stand for a

phrase or a sentence, it is seldom, if ever, a fit representative of an

indicative assertion; as, "The man opposed me, \_which\_ was anticipated."--

\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 127. Say,--"\_but his opposition\_ was anticipated."

Or: "The man opposed me, \_as\_ was anticipated." Or:--"\_as I expected he

would\_." Again: "The captain disobeys orders, \_which\_ is punished."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 128. This is an other factitious sentence, formed after the same model,

and too erroneous for correction: none but a conceited grammatist could

ever have framed such a construction.

NOTE XV.--The possessive pronouns, \_my, thy, his, her, its\_, &c., should be

inserted or repeated as often as the sense or construction of the sentence

requires them; their omission, like that of the articles, can scarcely in

any instance constitute a proper ellipsis: as, "Of Princeton and

vicinity."--Say, "Of Princeton and \_its\_ vicinity." "The man and

wife."--Say, "The man and \_his\_ wife." "Many verbs vary both their

signification and construction."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 170; \_Gould's\_, 171.

Say,--"and \_their\_ construction."

NOTE XVI.--In the correcting of any discord between the antecedent and its

pronoun, if the latter for any sufficient reason is most proper as it

stands, the former must be changed to accord with it: as, "Let us discuss

what relates to \_each particular\_ in \_their\_ order:--\_its\_ order."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 193. Better thus: "Let us discuss what relates to

\_the several particulars\_, in \_their\_ order." For the order of things

implies plurality.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE X. UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF AGREEMENT

"The subject is to be joined with his predicate."--BP. WILKINS: \_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 42.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_his\_ is of the masculine

gender, and does not correctly represent its antecedent noun \_subject\_,

which is of the third person, singular, \_neuter\_. But, according to Rule

10th, "A pronoun must agree with its antecedent, or the noun or pronoun

which it represents, in person, number, and gender." Therefore, \_his\_

should be \_its\_; thus, "The subject is to be joined with \_its\_ predicate."]

"Every one must judge of their own feelings."--\_Byron's Letters\_. "Every

one in the family should know their duty."--\_Wm. Penn\_. "To introduce its

possessor into 'that way in which it should go.'"--\_Infant School Gram.\_,

p. v. "Do not they say, every true believer has the Spirit of God in

them?"--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 388. "There is none in their natural state

righteous, no not one."--\_Wood's Dict. of Bible\_, ii, 129. "If ye were of

the world, the world would love his own."--\_John\_, xv, 19. "His form had

not yet lost all her original brightness."--\_Milton\_. "No one will answer

as if I were their friend or companion."--\_Steele\_, Spect., No. 534. "But

in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves."--

\_Philippians\_, ii, 3. "And let none of you imagine evil in your hearts

against his neighbour."--\_Zechariah\_, viii, 17. "For every tree is known by

his own fruit."--\_Luke\_, vi, 44. "But she fell to laughing, like one out of

their right mind."--\_Castle Rackrent\_, p. 51. "Now these systems, so far

from having any tendency to make men better, have a manifest tendency to

make him worse."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 128. "And nobody else would

make that city their refuge any more."--\_Josephus's Life\_, p. 158. "What is

quantity, as it respects syllables or words? It is that time which is

occupied in pronouncing it."--\_Bradley's Gram.\_, p. 108. "In such

expressions the adjective so much resembles an adverb in its meaning, that

they are usually parsed as such."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 103. "The

tongue is like a race-horse; which runs the faster the less weight it

carries."--ADDISON: \_Joh. Dict.; Murray's Key\_, Rule 8. "As two thoughtless

boys were trying to see which could lift the greatest weight with their

jaws, one of them had several of his firm-set teeth wrenched from their

sockets."--\_Newspaper\_. "Everybody nowadays publishes memoirs; everybody

has recollections which they think worthy of recording."--\_Duchess

D'Abrantes\_, p. 25. "Every body trembled for themselves or their

friends."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 171.

"A steed comes at morning: no rider is there;

But its bridle is red with the sign of despair."--\_Campbell\_.

UNDER NOTE I.--PRONOUNS WRONG OR NEEDLESS.

"Charles loves to study; but John, alas! he is very idle."--\_Merchant's

School Gram.\_, p. 22. "Or what man is there of you, whom if his son ask

bread, will he give him a stone?"--\_Matt.\_, vii, 9. "Who, in stead of going

about doing good, they are perpetually intent upon doing mischief."--

\_Tillotson\_. "Whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of

Pontius Pilate."--\_Acts\_, iii, 13. "Whom, when they had washed, they laid

her in an upper chamber."--\_Acts\_, ix, 37. "Then Manasseh knew that the

Lord he was God."--\_2 Chron.\_, xxxiii, 13. "Whatever a man conceives

clearly, he may, if he will be at the trouble, put it into distinct

propositions, and express it clearly to others."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

293. "But to that point of time which he has chosen, the painter being

entirely confined, he cannot exhibit various stages of the same

action."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 52. "It is without any proof at all what he

subjoins."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 301. "George Fox his Testimony concerning

Robert Barclay."--\_Ib.\_, i, 111. "According to the author of the Postscript

his advice."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 263. "These things seem as ugly to the Eye of

their Meditations, as those Æthiopians pictur'd in Nemesis her

Pitcher."--\_Bacon's Wisdom of the Ancients\_, p. 49. "Moreover, there is

always a twofold Condition propounded with Sphynx her Ænigma's."--\_Ib.\_, p.

73. "Whoever believeth not therein, they shall perish."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p.

20. "When, at Sestius his entreaty, I had been at his house."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 59.

"There high on Sipylus his shaggy brow,

She stands, her own sad monument of woe."

--\_Pope's Homer\_, B. xxiv, l. 777.

UNDER NOTE II.--CHANGE OF NUMBER.

"So will I send upon you famine, and evil beasts, and they shall bereave

thee."--\_Ezekiel\_, v, 17. "Why do you plead so much for it? why do ye

preach it up?"--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 180. "Since thou hast decreed that I

shall bear man, your darling."--\_Edward's First Lesson in Gram.\_, p. 106.

"You have my book and I have thine; i.e. thy book."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_,

1821, p. 22. "Neither art thou such a one as to be ignorant of what you

are."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, p. 70. "Return, thou backsliding Israel,

saith the Lord, and I will not cause mine anger to fall upon

you."--\_Jeremiah\_, iii, 12. "The Almighty, unwilling to cut thee off in the

fullness of iniquity, has sent me to give you warning."--\_Art of Thinking\_,

p. 278. "Wert thou born only for pleasure? were you never to do any

thing?"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 63. "Thou shalt be required to go to

God, to die, and give up your account."--BARNES'S NOTES: \_on Luke\_, xii,

20. "And canst thou expect to behold the resplendent glory of the Creator?

would not such a sight annihilate you?"--\_Milton\_. "If the prophet had

commanded thee to do some great thing, would you have refused?"--\_Common

School Journal\_, i, 80. "Art thou a penitent? Evince your sincerity by

bringing forth fruits meet for repentance."--\_Christian's Vade-Mecum\_, p.

117. "I will call thee my dear son: I remember all your tenderness."--

\_Classic Tales\_, p. 8. "So do thou, my son: open your ears, and your

eyes."--\_Wright's Athens\_, p. 33. "I promise you, this was enough to

discourage thee."--\_Pilgrim's Progress\_, p. 446. "Ere you remark an other's

sin, Bid thy own conscience look within."--\_Gay\_. "Permit that I share in

thy woe, The privilege can you refuse?"--\_Perfect's Poems\_, p. 6. "Ah!

Strephon, how can you despise Her who without thy pity dies?"--\_Swift's

Poems\_, p. 340.

"Thy verses, friend, are Kidderminster stuff,

And I must own, you've measur'd out enough."--\_Shenstone.\_

"This day, dear Bee, is thy nativity;

Had Fate a luckier one, she'd give it ye."--\_Swift.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--WHO AND WHICH.

"Exactly like so many puppets, who are moved by wires."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 462. "They are my servants, which I brought forth out of the land of

Egypt."--\_Leviticus\_, xxv, 42. "Behold I and the children which God hath

given me."--\_Heb.\_, ii, 13; \_Webster's Bible, and others.\_ "And he sent

Eliakim which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe."--\_2 Kings\_,

xix, 2. "In a short time the streets were cleared of the corpses who filled

them."--\_M'Ilvaine's Led.\_, p. 411. "They are not of those which teach

things which they ought not, for filthy lucre's sake."--\_Barclay's Works\_,

i, 435. "As a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among

the flocks of sheep; who, if he go through, both treadeth down and teareth

in pieces."--\_Micah\_, v, 8. "Frequented by every fowl whom nature has

taught to dip the wing in water."--\_Rasselas\_, p. 10. "He had two sons, one

of which was adopted by the family of Maximus."--\_Lempriere, w. Æmytius\_.

"And the ants, who are collected by the smell, are burned by fire."--\_The

Friend\_, xii, 49. "They being the agents, to which this thing was

trusted."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 139. "A packhorse who is driven constantly

forwards and backwards to market."--LOCKE: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "By instructing

children, the affection of which will be increased."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p.

136. "He had a comely young woman which travelled with him."--\_Hutchinson's

Hist.\_, i, 29. "A butterfly, which thought himself an accomplished

traveller, happened to light upon a beehive."--\_Inst.\_, p. 143. "It is an

enormous elephant of stone, who disgorges from his uplifted trunk a vast

but graceful shower."--\_Zenobia\_, i, 150. "He was met by a dolphin, who

sometimes swam before him, and sometimes behind him."--\_Edward's First

Lessons in Gram.\_, p. 34.

"That Cæsar's horse, who, as fame goes,

Had corns upon his feet and toes,

Was not by half so tender-hooft,

Nor trod upon the ground so soft."--\_Hudibras\_, p. 6.

UNDER NOTE IV.--NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.

"He instructed and fed the crowds who surrounded him."--\_Murray's

Exercises\_, p. 52. "The court, who gives currency to manners, ought to be

exemplary."--\_Ibid.\_ "Nor does he describe classes of sinners who do not

exist."--\_Anti-Slavery Magazine\_, i, 27. "Because the nations among whom

they took their rise, were not savage."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 113. "Among

nations who are in the first and rude periods of society."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 60. "The martial spirit of those nations, among whom the feudal

government prevailed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 374. "France who was in alliance with

Sweden."--\_Smollett's Voltaire\_, vi, 187. "That faction in England who most

powerfully opposed his arbitrary pretensions."--\_Mrs. Macaulay's Hist.\_,

iii, 21. "We may say, the crowd, \_who\_ was going up the

street.'"--\_Cobbett's Gram.\_, ¶ 204. "Such members of the Convention who

formed this Lyceum, as have subscribed this Constitution."--\_New-York

Lyceum.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--CONFUSION OF SENSES.

"The possessor shall take a particular form to show its case."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 53. "Of which reasons the principal one is, that no Noun,

properly so called, implies its own Presence."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 76.

"Boston is a proper noun, which distinguishes it from other

cities."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 22. "Conjunction means union, or joining

together. It is used to join or unite either words or sentences."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 20. "The word \_interjection\_ means \_thrown among\_. It is interspersed

among other words to express sudden or strong emotion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 21. "\_In

deed\_, or in very deed, may better be written separately, as they formerly

were."--\_Cardell's Gram.\_, 12mo, p. 89. "\_Alexander\_, on the contrary, is a

particular name, and is restricted to distinguish him alone."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 25. "As an indication that nature itself had changed her

course."--\_Hist. of America\_, p. 9. "Of removing from the United States and

her territories the free people of colour."--\_Jenifer\_. "So that \_gh\_ may

be said not to have their proper sound."--\_Webster's El. Spelling-Book\_, p.

10. "Are we to welcome the loathsome harlot, and introduce it to our

children?"--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 167. "The first question is this, 'Is

reputable, national, and present use, which, for brevity's sake, I shall

hereafter simply denominate good use, always uniform in her

decisions?"--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 171. "Time is always masculine, on

account of its mighty efficacy. Virtue is feminine from its beauty, and its

being the object of love."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 37; \_Blair's\_, 125;

\_Sanborn's\_, 189; \_Emmons's\_, 13; \_Putnam's\_, 25; \_Fisk's\_, 57;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 26; \_Greenleaf's\_, 21. See also \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 76.

"When you speak to a person or thing, it is in the second

person."--\_Bartlett's Manual\_, Part ii, p. 27. "You now know the noun, for

it means name."--\_Ibid.\_ "\_T\_. What do you see? \_P\_. A book. \_T\_. Spell

it."--\_R. W. Green's Gram.\_, p. 12. "\_T\_. What do you see now? \_P\_. Two

books. \_T\_. Spell them."--\_Ibid.\_ "If the United States lose her rights as

a nation."--\_Liberator\_, Vol. ix, p. 24. "When a person or thing is

addressed or spoken to, it is in the second person."--\_Frost's El. of

Gram.\_, p. 7. "When a person or thing is spoken of, it is in the third

person."--\_Ibid.\_ "The ox, that ploughs the ground, has the same plural

termination also, \_oxen\_."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 40.

"Hail, happy States! thine is the blissful seat,

Where nature's gifts and art's improvements meet."

EVERETT: \_Columbian Orator\_, p. 239.

UNDER NOTE VI.--THE RELATIVE THAT.

(1.) "This is the most useful art which men possess."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo,

p. 275. "The earliest accounts which history gives us concerning all

nations, bear testimony to these facts."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 379;

\_Jamieson's\_, 300. "Mr. Addison was the first who attempted a regular

inquiry" [into the pleasures of taste.]--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 28. "One of

the first who introduced it was Montesquieu."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 125.

"Massillon is perhaps the most eloquent writer of sermons which modern

times have produced."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 289. "The greatest barber who

ever lived, is our guiding star and prototype."--\_Hart's Figaro\_, No. 6.

(2.) "When prepositions are subjoined to nouns, they are generally the same

which are subjoined to the verbs, from which the nouns are

derived."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 157. "The same proportions which are

agreeable in a model, are not agreeable in a large building."--\_Kames, EL

of Crit.\_, ii, 343. "The same ornaments, which we admire in a private

apartment, are unseemly in a temple."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 128. "The same

whom John saw also in the sun."--\_Milton. P. L.\_, B. iii, l. 623.

(3.) "Who can ever be easy, who is reproached with his own ill

conduct?"--\_Thomas à Kempis\_, p. 72. "Who is she who comes clothed in a

robe of green?"--\_Inst.\_, p. 143. "Who who has either sense or civility,

does not perceive the vileness of profanity?"

(4.) "The second person denotes the person or thing which is spoken

to."--\_Compendium in Kirkham's Gram.\_ "The third person denotes the person

or thing which is spoken of."--\_Ibid.\_ "A passive verb denotes action

received or endured by the person or thing which is its

nominative."--\_Ibid, and Gram.\_, p. 157. "The princes and states who had

neglected or favoured the growth of this power."--\_Bolingbroke, on

History\_, p. 222. "The nominative expresses the name of the person, or

thing which acts, or which is the subject of discourse."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_,

p. 19. (5.) "Authors who deal in long sentences, are very apt to be

faulty."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 108. "Writers who deal in long sentences, are

very apt to be faulty."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 313. "The neuter gender

denotes objects which are neither male nor female."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p.

26. "The neuter gender denotes things which have no sex."--\_Kirkham's

Compendium\_. "Nouns which denote objects neither male nor female, are of

the neuter gender."--\_Wells's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 49. "Objects and ideas

which have been long familiar, make too faint an impression to give an

agreeable exercise to our faculties."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 50. "Cases which

custom has left dubious, are certainly within the grammarian's

province."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 164. "Substantives which end in \_ery\_,

signify action or habit."--\_Ib.\_, p. 132. "After all which can be done to

render the definitions and rules of grammar accurate," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 36.

"Possibly, all which I have said, is known and taught."--\_A. B. Johnson's

Plan of a Dict.\_, p. 15.

(6.) "It is a strong and manly style which should chiefly be

studied."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 261. "It is this which chiefly makes a

division appear neat and elegant."--\_Ib.\_, p. 313. "I hope it is not I with

whom he is displeased."--\_Murray's Key\_, R. 17. "When it is this alone

which renders the sentence obscure."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 242. "This

sort of full and ample assertion, \_'it is this which\_,' is fit to be used

when a proposition of importance is laid down."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 197.

"She is the person whom I understood it to have been." \_See Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 181. "Was it thou, or the wind, who shut the door?"--\_Inst.\_, p.

143. "It was not I who shut it."--\_Ib.\_

(7.) "He is not the person who it seemed he was."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

181; \_Ingersoll's\_, p. 147. "He is really the person who he appeared to

be."--\_Same\_. "She is not now the woman whom they represented her to have

been."--\_Same\_. "An only child, is one who has neither brother nor sister;

a child alone, is one who is left by itself"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 98;

\_Jamieson's\_, 71; \_Murray's Gram.\_ 303.

UNDER NOTE VII.--RELATIVE CLAUSES CONNECTED.

(1.) "A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of a thing; of whatever we

conceive in any way to subsist, or of which we have any notion."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 14. (2.) "A Substantive or noun is the name of any thing that

exists, or of which we have any notion."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 27;

\_Alger's\_, 15; \_Bacon's\_, 9; \_E. Dean's\_, 8; \_A. Flint's\_, 10; \_Folker's\_,

5; \_Hamlin's\_, 9; \_Ingersoll's\_, 14; \_Merchant's\_, 25; \_Pond's\_, 15; \_S.

Putnam's\_, 10; \_Rand's\_, 9; \_Russell's\_, 9; \_T. Smith's\_, 12; and others.

(3.) "A substantive or noun is the name of any person, place, or thing that

exists, or of which we can have an idea."--\_Frost's El. of E. Gram.\_, p. 6.

(4.) "A noun is the name of anything that exists, or of which we form an

idea."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 37. (5.) "A Noun is the name of any person,

place, object, or thing, that exists, or which we may conceive to

exist."--\_D. C. Allen's Grammatic Guide\_, p. 19. (6.) "The name of every

thing that exists, or of which we can form any notion, is a noun."--\_Fisk's

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 56. (7.) "An allegory is the representation of some one

thing by an other that resembles it, and which is made to stand for

it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 341. (8.) "Had he exhibited such sentences as

contained ideas inapplicable to young minds, or which were of a trivial or

injurious nature."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. v. (9.) "Man would have

others obey him, even his own kind; but he will not obey God, that is so

much above him, and who made him."--\_Penn's Maxims\_. (10.) "But what we may

consider here, and which few Persons have taken Notice of, is,"

&c.--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 117. (11.) "The Compiler has not inserted

such verbs as are irregular only in familiar writing or discourse, and

which are improperly terminated by \_t\_, instead of \_ed\_."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 107; \_Fisk's\_, 81; \_Hart's\_, 68; \_Ingersoll's\_, 104;

\_Merchant's\_, 63. (12.) "The remaining parts of speech, which are called

the indeclinable parts, or that admit of no variations, will not detain us

long."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 84.

UNDER NOTE VIII.--THE RELATIVE AND PREPOSITION.

"In the temper of mind he was then."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 54. "To bring

them into the condition I am at present."--\_Spect.\_, No. 520. "In the

posture I lay."--\_Swift's Gulliver\_. "In the sense it is sometimes

taken."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 527. "Tools and utensils are said to be

\_right\_, when they serve for the uses they were made."--\_Collier's

Antoninus\_, p. 99. "If, in the extreme danger I now am, I do not imitate

the behaviour of those," &c.--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 193. "News was

brought, that Darius was but twenty miles from the place they then

were."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 113. "Alexander, upon hearing this news, continued four

days in the place he then was."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 113. "To read, in the best

manner it is now taught."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 246. "It may be

expedient to give a few directions as to the manner it should be

studied."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 9. "Participles are words derived from

verbs, and convey an idea of the acting of an agent, or the suffering of an

object, with the time it happens."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 50.

"Had I but serv'd my God with half the zeal

I serv'd my king, he would not in mine age

Have left me naked to mine enemies."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 173.

UNDER NOTE IX.--ADVERBS FOR RELATIVES.

"In compositions where pronunciation has no place."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

101. "They framed a protestation, where they repeated their

claims."--\_Hume's Hist\_. "Which have reference to Substances, where Sex

never had existence."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 43. "Which denote substances

where sex never had existence."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 38; \_Fisk's\_, 57.

"There is no rule given how truth may be found out."--\_Walker's Particles\_,

p. 160. "The nature of the objects whence they are taken."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 165. "That darkness of character, where we can see no

heart."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 236. "The states where they

negotiated."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 159. "Till the motives whence

men act be known."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, p. 262. "He assigns the

principles whence their power of pleasing flows."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 19.

"But I went on, and so finished this History in that form as it now

appears."--\_Sewel's Preface\_, p. v. "By prepositions we express the cause

why, the instrument by which, wherewith, or the manner how a thing is

done."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 128; \_John Burn's\_, 121. "They are not

such in the language whence they are derived."--\_Town's Analysis\_, p. 13.

"I find it very hard to persuade several, that their passions are affected

by words from whence they have no ideas."--\_Burke, on the Sublime\_, p. 95.

"The known end, then, why we are placed in a state of so much affliction,

hazard, and difficulty, is our improvement in virtue and piety."--\_Butler's

Anal.\_, p. 109.

"Yet such his acts, as Greeks unborn shall tell,

And curse the battle where their fathers fell."

--\_Pope, Il.\_, B. x, I. 61.

UNDER NOTE X.--REPEAT THE NOUN.

"Youth may be thoughtful, but it is not very common."--\_Webster's El.

Spelling-Book\_, p. 85. "A proper name is that given to one person or

thing."--\_Bartlett's School Manual\_, ii, 27. "A common name is that given

to many things of the same sort."--\_Ibid.\_ "This rule is often violated;

some instances of which are annexed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 149;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 237. "This is altogether careless writing. It renders style

often obscure, always embarrassed and inelegant."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 106.

"Every inversion which is not governed by this rule, will be disrelished by

every one of taste."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 62. "A proper diphthong is

that in which both the vowels are sounded."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 9;

\_Alger's\_, 11; \_Bacon's\_, 8; \_Merchant's\_, 9; \_Hiley's\_, 3; and others. "An

improper Diphthong is one in which only one of the two Vowels is

sounded."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 5. "Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and his

descendants, are called Hebrews."--\_Wood's Dict.\_ "Every word in our

language, of more than one syllable, has one of them distinguished from the

rest in this manner."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 236. "Two consonants proper to

begin a word must not be separated; as, fa-ble, sti-fle. But when they come

between two vowels, and are such as cannot begin a word, they must be

divided; as, ut-most, un-der."--\_Ib.\_, p. 22. "Shall the intellect alone

feel no pleasures in its energy, when we allow them to the grossest

energies of appetite and sense?"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 298; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 289. "No man hath a propensity to vice as such: on the contrary, a

wicked deed disgusts him, and makes him abhor the author."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, i, 66. "The same that belong to nouns, belong also to

pronouns."--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 8. "What is Language? It is the means

of communicating thoughts from one to another."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p.

15. "A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one."--\_Adam's

Gram.\_, p. 4; \_Gould's\_, p. 4. "A compound word is that which is made up of

two or more words."--\_Ib.\_ "When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is

called Asyndeton."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 235.

UNDER NOTE XI.--PLACE OF THE RELATIVE.

"It gives a meaning to words, which they would not have."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 244. "There are many words in the English language, that are

sometimes used as adjectives, and sometimes as adverbs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114.

"Which do not more effectually show the varied intentions of the mind, than

the auxiliaries do which are used to form the potential mood."--\_Ib.\_, p.

67. "These accents make different impressions on the mind, which will be

the subject of a following speculation."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 108.

"And others very much differed from the writer's words, to whom they were

ascribed."--\_Pref. to Lily's Gram.\_, p. xii. "Where there is nothing in the

sense which requires the last sound to be elevated, an easy fall will be

proper."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 250; \_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, 167.

"There is an ellipsis of the verb in the last clause, which, when you

supply, you find it necessary to use the adverb not."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_,

p. 176; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 368. "\_Study\_ is singular number, because its

nominative \_I\_ is, with which it agrees."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 22.

"John is the person, or, thou art who is in error."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p.

136. "For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin."--\_2 Cor.\_,

v, 21.

"Take that of me, my friend, who have the power

To seal the accuser's lips."--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p. 268.

UNDER NOTE XII.--WHAT FOR THAT.

"I had no idea but what the story was true."--\_Browns Inst.\_, p. 144. "The

post-boy is not so weary but what he can whistle."--\_Ib.\_ "He had no

intimation but what the men were honest."--\_Ib.\_ "Neither Lady Haversham

nor Miss Mildmay will ever believe, but what I have been entirely to

blame."--See \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 93. "I am not satisfied, but what the

integrity of our friends is more essential to our welfare than their

knowledge of the world."--\_Ibid.\_ "There is, indeed, nothing in poetry, so

entertaining or descriptive, but what a didactic writer of genius may be

allowed to introduce in some part of his work."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 401.

"Brasidas, being bit by a mouse he had catched, let it slip out of his

fingers: 'No creature, (says he,) is so contemptible but what may provide

for its own safety, if it have courage.'"--PLUTARCH: \_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

Vol. i, p. 81.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--ADJECTIVES FOR ANTECEDENTS.

"In narration, Homer is, at all times, remarkably concise, which renders

him lively and agreeable."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 435. "It is usual to talk

of a nervous, a feeble, or a spirited style; which are plainly the

characters of a writer's manner of thinking."--\_Ib.\_, p. 92. "It is too

violent an alteration, if any alteration were necessary, which none

is."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 134. "Some men are too ignorant

to be humble, without which, there can be no docility."--\_Berkley's

Alciphron\_, p. 385. "Judas declared him innocent; which he could not be,

had he in any respect deceived the disciples."--\_Porteus\_. "They supposed

him to be innocent, which he certainly was not."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i,

p. 50; \_Emmons's\_, 25. "They accounted him honest, which he certainly was

not."--\_Fetch's Comp. Gram.\_, p. 89. "Be accurate in all you say or do; for

it is important in all the concerns of life."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 145.

"Every law supposes the transgressor to be wicked; which indeed he is, if

the law is just."--\_Ib.\_ "To be pure in heart, pious, and benevolent, which

all may be, constitutes human happiness."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 232. "To be

dexterous in danger, is a virtue; but to court danger to show it, is

weakness."--\_Penn's Maxims\_.

UNDER NOTE XIV.--SENTENCES FOR ANTECEDENTS.

"This seems not so allowable in prose; which the following erroneous

examples will demonstrate."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 175. "The accent is laid

upon the last syllable of a word; which is favourable to the

melody."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 86. "Every line consists of ten

syllables, five short and five long; from which there are but two

exceptions, both of them rare."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 89. "The soldiers refused

obedience, which has been explained."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 128. "Cæsar

overcame Pompey, which was lamented."--\_Ib.\_ "The crowd hailed William,

which was expected."--\_Ib.\_ "The tribunes resisted Scipio, which was

anticipated."--\_Ib.\_ "The censors reproved vice, which was admired."--\_Ib.\_

"The generals neglected discipline, which has been proved."--\_Ib.\_ "There

would be two nominatives to the verb was, which is improper."--\_Adam's Lat.

Gram.\_, p. 205; \_Gould's\_, 202. "His friend bore the abuse very patiently;

which served to increase his rudeness: it produced, at length, contempt and

insolence."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 50; \_Emmons's\_, 25. "Almost all

compounded sentences, are more or less elliptical; some examples of which

may be seen under the different parts of speech."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

217; \_Guy's\_, 90; \_R G. Smith's\_, 180; \_Ingersoll's\_, 153; \_Fisk's\_, 144;

\_J. M. Putnam's\_, 137; \_Weld's\_, 190, \_Weld's Imp. Ed.\_, 214.

UNDER NOTE XV.--REPEAT THE PRONOUN.

"In things of Nature's workmanship, whether we regard their internal or

external structure, beauty and design are equally conspicuous."--\_Kames,

El. of Crit.\_, i, 269. "It puzzles the reader, by making him doubt whether

the word ought to be taken in its proper or figurative sense."--\_Ib.\_, ii,

231. "Neither my obligations to the muses, nor expectations from them, are

so great."--\_Cowley's Preface\_. "The Fifth Annual Report of the

Anti-Slavery Society of Ferrisburgh and vicinity."--\_Liberator\_, ix, 69.

"Meaning taste in its figurative as well as proper sense."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, ii, 360. "Every measure in which either your personal or political

character is concerned."--\_Junius\_, Let. ix. "A jealous, righteous God has

often punished such in themselves or offspring."--\_Extracts\_, p. 179.

"Hence their civil and religious history are inseparable."--\_Milman's

Jews\_, i, 7. "Esau thus carelessly threw away both his civil and religious

inheritance."--\_Ib.\_, i, 24. "This intelligence excited not only our hopes,

but fears likewise."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 170. "In what manner our defect

of principle and ruling manners have completed the ruin of the national

spirit of union."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, i, 77. "Considering her descent, her

connexion, and present intercourse."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 85. "His own

and wife's wardrobe are packed up in a firkin."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_,

Part i, p. 73.

UNDER NOTE XVI.--CHANGE THE ANTECEDENT.

"The sound of \_e\_ and \_o\_ long, in their due degrees, will be preserved,

and clearly distinguished."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 242. "If any person

should be inclined to think," &c., "the author takes the liberty to suggest

to them," &c.--\_Ib., Pref.\_, p. iv. "And he walked in all the ways of Asa

his father; he turned not aside from it."--\_1 Kings\_, xxii, 43. "If ye from

your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses."--\_Matt.\_,

xviii, 35. "Nobody ever fancied they were slighted by him, or had the

courage to think themselves his betters."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 8.

"And Rebekah took goodly raiment of her eldest son Esau, which were with

her in the house, and put them upon Jacob her younger son."--\_Gen.\_, xxvii,

15. "Where all the attention of man is given to their own indulgence."--

\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 181. "The idea of a \_father\_ is a notion

superinduced to the substance, or man--let man be what it will."--\_Locke's

Essay\_, i, 219. "Leaving every one to do as they list."--\_Barclay's Works\_,

i, 460. "Each body performed his part handsomely."--\_J. Flint's Gram.\_, p.

15. "This block of marble rests on two layers of stone, bound together with

lead, which, however, has not prevented the Arabs from forcing out several

of them."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, Part i, p. 72.

"Love gives to every power a double power,

Above their functions and their offices."--\_Shakspeare\_.

RULE XI.--PRONOUNS.

When the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality,

the Pronoun must agree with it in the plural number: as, "The \_council\_

were divided in \_their\_ sentiments."--"The Christian \_world\_ are beginning

to awake out of \_their\_ slumber."--\_C. Simeon\_. "Whatever Adam's

\_posterity\_ lost through him, that and more \_they\_ gain in

Christ."--\_J. Phipps\_.

"To this, one pathway gently-winding leads,

Where march a train with baskets on their heads."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. xviii, l. 657.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XI.

OBS. 1.--The collective noun, or noun of multitude, being a name that

signifies many, may in general be taken in either of two ways, according to

the intention of the user: that is, either with reference to the

\_aggregate\_ as one thing, in which sense it will accord with the neuter

pronoun \_it\_ or \_which\_; or with reference to the \_individuals\_, so as to

accord with a plural pronoun \_they, their, them\_, or \_who\_, masculine, or

feminine, as the individuals of the assemblage may happen to be. The noun

itself, being literally singular both in form and in fact, has not

unfrequently some article or adjective before it that implies unity; so

that the interpretation of it in a plural sense by the pronoun or verb, was

perhaps not improperly regarded by the old grammarians as an example of the

figure \_syllepsis\_:.as, "Liberty should reach every individual of \_a

people\_, as \_they\_ all share one common nature."--\_Spectator\_, No. 287.

"Thus urg'd the chief; \_a generous troop appears\_,

\_Who spread their\_ bucklers and \_advance their\_ spears."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. xi, l. 720.

OBS. 2.--Many of our grammarians say, "When a noun of multitude is preceded

by a definitive word, which clearly limits the sense to an aggregate with

an idea of unity, it requires a verb and pronoun to agree with it in the

singular number."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 153; \_Ingersoll's\_, 249; Fisk's,

122; \_Fowler's\_, 528. But this principle, I apprehend, cannot be sustained

by an appeal to general usage. The instances in practice are not few, in

which both these senses are clearly indicated with regard to the same noun;

as, "\_Each House\_ shall keep a journal of \_its\_ proceedings, and from time

to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in \_their\_ judgement

require secrecy."--\_Constitution of the United States\_, Art. i, Sec. 5. "I

mean \_that part\_ of mankind \_who are known\_ by the name of women's men, or

beaux."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 536. "A \_set\_ of men \_who are\_ common

enough in the world."--\_Ibid.\_ "It is vain for \_a people\_ to expect to be

free, unless \_they\_ are first willing to be virtuous."--\_Wayland's Moral

Science\_, p. 397. "For \_this people's\_ heart is waxed gross, and \_their\_

ears are dull of hearing, and \_their\_ eyes \_they\_ have closed."--\_Matt.\_,

xiii, 15. "\_This enemy\_ had now enlarged \_their\_ confederacy, and made

\_themselves\_ more formidable than before."--\_Life of Antoninus\_, p. 62.

"Thus from the tents the fervent \_legion swarms\_;

So loud \_their\_ clamour, and so keen \_their\_ arms."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. xvi, l. 320.

OBS. 3.--Most collective nouns of the neuter gender, may take the regular

plural form, and be represented by a pronoun in the third person, plural,

neuter; as, "The \_nations\_ will enforce \_their\_ laws." This construction

comes under Rule 10th, as does also the singular, "The \_nations\_ will

enforce \_its\_ laws;" for, in either case, the agreement is entirely

literal. Half of Murray's Rule 4th is therefore needless. To Rule 11th

above, there are properly no exceptions; because the number of the pronoun

is itself the index to the sense in which the antecedent is therein taken.

It does not follow, however, but that there may be violations of the rule,

or of the notes under it, by the adoption of one number when the other

would be more correct, or in better taste. A collection of things

inanimate, as a fleet, a heap, a row, a tier, a bundle, is seldom, if ever,

taken distributively, with a plural pronoun. For a further elucidation of

the construction of collective nouns, see Rule 15th, and the observations

under it.

NOTES TO RULE XI.

NOTE I.--A collective noun conveying the idea of unity, requires a pronoun

in the third person, singular, neuter; as, "When a legislative \_body\_ makes

laws, \_it\_ acts for \_itself\_ only; but when \_it\_ makes grants or contracts,

\_it\_ acts as a party."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 40. "A civilized \_people\_

has no right to violate \_its\_ solemn obligations, because the other party

is uncivilized."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 314.

NOTE II.--When a collective noun is followed by two or more words which

must each in some sense agree with it, uniformity of number is commonly

preferable to diversity, and especially to such a mixture as puts the

singular both before and after the plural; as, "\_That\_ ingenious nation

\_who have done\_ so much honour to modern literature, \_possesses\_, in an

eminent degree, the talent of narration."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 364. Better:

\_"which has done."\_

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XI.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE IDEA OF PLURALITY.

"The jury will be confined

till it agrees on a verdict."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 145.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_it\_ is of the singular number,

and does not correctly represent its antecedent \_jury\_, which is a

collective noun conveying rather the idea of plurality. But, according to

Rule 11th, "When the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the idea of

plurality, the pronoun must agree with it in the plural number." Therefore,

it should be \_they\_; thus, "The jury will be confined till \_they\_ agree on

a verdict."]

"And mankind directed its first cares towards the needful."--\_Formey's

Belles-Lettres\_, p. 114. "It is difficult to deceive a free people

respecting its true interest."--\_Life of Charles XII\_, p. 67. "All the

virtues of mankind are to be counted upon a few fingers, but his follies

and vices are innumerable."--\_Swift\_. "Every sect saith, 'Give me liberty:'

but give it him, and to his power, he will not yield it to any body

else."--\_Oliver Cromwell\_. "Behold, the people shall rise up as a great

lion, and lift up himself as a young lion."--\_Numbers, xxiii\_, 24. "For all

flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth."--\_Gen.\_, vi, 12. "There

happened to the army a very strange accident, which put it in great

consternation."--\_Goldsmith\_.

UNDER NOTE I.--THE IDEA OF UNITY.

"The meeting went on in their business as a united body."--\_Foster's

Report\_, i, 69. "Every religious association has an undoubted right to

adopt a creed for themselves."--\_Gould's Advocate\_, iii, 405. "It would

therefore be extremely difficult to raise an insurrection in that State

against their own government."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 104. "The mode in

which a Lyceum can apply themselves in effecting a reform in common

schools."--\_New York Lyceum\_. "Hath a nation changed their gods, which are

yet no gods?"--\_Jeremiah\_, ii, 11. "In the holy scriptures each of the

twelve tribes of Israel is often called by the name of the patriarch, from

whom they descended."--\_J. Q. Adams's Rhet.\_, ii, 331.

UNDER NOTE II.--UNIFORMITY OF NUMBER.

"A nation, by the reparation of their own wrongs, achieves a triumph more

glorious than any field of blood can ever give."--\_J. Q. Adams\_. "The

English nation, from which we descended, have been gaining their liberties

inch by inch."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 45. "If a Yearly Meeting should

undertake to alter its fundamental doctrines, is there any power in the

society to prevent their doing so?"--\_Foster's Report\_, i, 96. "There is a

generation that curseth their father, and doth not bless their

mother."--\_Proverbs\_, xxx, 11. "There is a generation that are pure in

their own eyes, and yet is not washed from their filthiness."--\_Ib.\_, xxx,

12. "He hath not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither hath he seen

perverseness in Israel: the Lord his God is with him, and the shout of a

king is among them."--\_Numb.\_, xxiii, 21. "My people hath forgotten me,

they have burnt incense to vanity."--\_Jer.\_, xviii, 15. "When a quarterly

meeting hath come to a judgment respecting any difference, relative to any

monthly meeting belonging to them," &c.--\_Extracts\_, p. 195; \_N. E.

Discip.\_, p. 118. "The number of such compositions is every day increasing,

and appear to be limited only by the pleasure or conveniency of the

writer."--\_Booth's Introd. to Dict.\_, p. 37. "The church of Christ hath the

same power now as ever, and are led by the same Spirit into the same

practices."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 477. "The army, whom the chief had thus

abandoned, pursued meanwhile their miserable march."--\_Lockhart's

Napoleon\_, ii, 165.

RULE XII.--PRONOUNS.

When a Pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by \_and\_, it must

agree with them jointly in the plural, because they are taken together: as,

"\_Minos\_ and \_Thales\_ sung to the lyre the laws which \_they\_

composed."--STRABO: \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 379. "\_Saul\_ and \_Jonathan\_ were

lovely and pleasant in \_their\_ lives, and in \_their\_ death \_they\_ were not

divided."--\_2 Sam.\_, i, 23.

"\_Rhesus\_ and \_Rhodius\_ then unite their rills,

Caresus roaring down the stony hills."--\_Pope, Il.\_, B. xii, l. 17.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

When two or more antecedents connected by and serve merely to describe one

person or thing, they are either in apposition or equivalent to one name,

and do not require a plural pronoun; as, "This great \_philosopher\_ and

\_statesman\_ continued in public life till \_his\_ eighty-second year."--"The

same \_Spirit, light\_, and \_life, which enlighteneth\_, also sanctifieth, and

there is not an other."--\_Penington\_. "My \_Constantius and Philetus\_

confesseth me two years older when I writ \_it\_."--\_Cowley's Preface\_.

"Remember these, O \_Jacob\_ and \_Israel\_! for \_thou\_ art my

servant."--\_Isaiah\_, xliv, 21. "In that \_strength\_ and \_cogency which

renders\_ eloquence powerful."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 252.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

When two antecedents connected by \_and\_ are emphatically distinguished,

they belong to different propositions, and, if singular, do not require a

plural pronoun; as, "The \_butler\_, and not the \_baker\_, was restored to

\_his\_ office."--"The \_good man\_, and the \_sinner too\_, shall have \_his\_

reward."--"\_Truth\_, and \_truth only\_, is worth seeking for \_its\_ own

sake."--"It is \_the sense\_ in which the word is used, and \_not the letters\_

of which it is composed, \_that determines\_ what is the part of speech to

which it belongs."--\_Cobbett's Gram.\_, ¶ 130.

EXCEPTION THIRD.

When two or more antecedents connected by \_and\_ are preceded by the

adjective \_each, every\_, or \_no\_, they are taken separately, and do not

require a plural pronoun; as, "\_Every plant\_ and \_every tree\_ produces

others after \_its\_ own kind."--"It is the cause of \_every reproach\_ and

\_distress\_ which \_has attended\_ your government."--\_Junius\_, Let. xxxv. But

if the latter be a collective noun, the pronoun may be plural; as, "\_Each

minister\_ and \_each church\_ act according to \_their\_ own

impressions."--\_Dr. M'Cartee\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XII.

OBS. 1.--When the antecedents are of \_different persons\_, the first person

is preferred to the second, and the second to the third; as, "\_John\_, and

\_thou\_, and \_I\_, are attached to \_our\_ country."--"\_John\_ and \_thou\_ are

attached to \_your\_ country."--"The Lord open some light, and show both

\_you\_ and \_me our\_ inheritance!"--\_Baxter\_. "\_Thou\_ and thy \_sons\_ with

thee \_shall bear\_ the iniquity of \_your\_ priesthood."--\_Numbers\_, xviii, 1.

"For all are friends in heaven; all faithful friends;

And many friendships in the days of Time

Begun, are lasting here, and growing still:

So grows \_ours\_ evermore, both \_theirs and mine\_."

--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, B. v, l. 335.

OBS 2.--The \_gender\_ of pronouns, except in the third person singular, is

distinguished only by their antecedents. In expressing that of a pronoun

which has antecedents of \_different\_ genders, the masculine should be

preferred to the feminine, and the feminine to the neuter. The parser of

English should remember, that this is a principle of General Grammar.

OBS 3.--When two words are taken separately as nominatives, they ought not

to be united in the same sentence as antecedents. In the following example,

therefore, \_them\_ should be \_it\_: "The first has a lenis, and the other an

asper over \_them\_."--\_Printer's Gram.\_, p. 246. Better thus: "The first has

a lenis \_over it\_, and the other an asper."

OBS. 4.--Nouns that stand as nominatives or antecedents, are sometimes

taken conjointly when there is no conjunction expressed; as, "The

historian, the orator, the philosopher, \_address themselves\_ primarily to

the understanding: \_their\_ direct aim is, to inform, to persuade, to

instruct."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 377. The copulative \_and\_ may here be said

to be understood, because the verb and the pronouns are plural; but it

seems better \_in general\_, either to introduce the connective word, or to

take the nouns disjunctively: as, "They have all the copiousness, the

fervour, the inculcating method, that \_is\_ allowable and graceful in an

orator; perhaps too much of it for a writer."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 343. To

this, however, there may be exceptions,--cases in which the plural form is

to be preferred,--especially in poetry; as,

"Faith, justice, heaven itself, now quit their hold,

When to false fame the captive heart is sold."--\_Brown, on Satire\_.

OBS. 5.--When two or more antecedents connected by \_and\_ are nominally

alike, one or more of them may be \_understood\_; and, in such a case, the

pronoun must still be plural, as agreeing with all the nouns, whether

expressed or implied: as, "But intellectual and moral culture ought to go

hand in hand; \_they\_ will greatly help each other."--\_Dr. Weeks\_. Here

\_they\_ stands for \_intellectual culture\_ and \_moral culture\_. The following

example is incorrect: "The Commanding and Unlimited \_mode\_ may be used in

an absolute sense, or without a name or substitute on which \_it\_ can

depend."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 80. Change \_it\_ to \_they\_, or \_and\_ to

\_or\_. See Note 6th to Rule 16th.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XII.

PRONOUNS WITH ANTECEDENTS CONNECTED BY AND.

"Discontent and sorrow manifested itself in his countenance."--\_Brown's

Inst.\_, p. 146.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the pronoun \_itself\_ is of the singular

number, and does not correctly represent its two antecedents \_discontent\_

and \_sorrow\_, which are connected by \_and\_, and taken conjointly. But,

according to Rule 12th, "When a pronoun has two or more antecedents

connected by \_and\_, it must agree with then, jointly in the plural, because

they are taken together." Therefore, \_itself\_ should be \_themselves\_; thus,

"Discontent and sorrow manifested \_themselves\_ in his countenance."]

"Both conversation and public speaking became more simple and plain, such

as we now find it."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 59. "Idleness and ignorance, if it

be suffered to proceed, &c."--JOHNSON: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 186. "Avoid

questions and strife; it shows a busy and contentious disposition."--\_Wm.

Penn\_. "To receive the gifts and benefits of God with thanksgiving, and

witness it blessed and sanctified to us by the word and prayer, is owned by

us."--\_Barclays Works\_, i, 213. "Both minister and magistrate are compelled

to choose between his duty and his reputation."--\_Junius\_, p. 9. "All the

sincerity, truth, and faithfulness, or disposition of heart or conscience

to approve it, found among rational creatures, necessarily originate from

God."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. 12. "Your levity and heedlessness, if it

continue, will prevent all substantial improvement."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p.

147. "Poverty and obscurity will oppress him only who esteems it

oppressive."--\_Ib.\_ "Good sense and refined policy are obvious to few,

because it cannot be discovered but by a train of reflection."--\_Ib.\_

"Avoid haughtiness of behaviour, and affectation, of manners: it implies a

want of solid merit."--\_Ib.\_ "If love and unity continue, it will make you

partakers of one an other's joy."--\_Ib.\_ "Suffer not jealousy and distrust

to enter: it will destroy, like a canker, every germ of friendship."--\_Ib.\_

"Hatred and animosity are inconsistent with Christian charity; guard,

therefore, against the slightest indulgence of it."--\_Ib.\_ "Every man is

entitled to liberty of conscience, and freedom of opinion, if he does not

pervert it to the injury of others."--\_Ib.\_

"With the azure and vermilion

Which is mix'd for my pavilion."--\_Byron's Manfred\_, p. 9.

RULE XIII.--PRONOUNS.

When a Pronoun has two or more antecedents connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, it

must agree with them singly, and not as if taken together: as; "\_James\_ or

\_John\_ will favour us with \_his\_ company."--"Neither \_wealth\_ nor \_honour\_

can secure the happiness of \_its\_ votaries."

"What \_virtue\_ or what mental \_grace\_,

But men unqualified and base

Will boast \_it\_ their possession?"--\_Cowper, on Friendship\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XIII.

OBS. 1.--When two or more singular antecedents are connected by \_or\_ or

\_nor\_, the pronoun which represents them, ought in general to be singular,

because \_or\_ and \_nor\_ are disjunctives; and, to form a complete concord,

the nouns ought also to be of the same person and gender, that the pronoun

may agree in all respects with each of them. But when \_plural\_ nouns are

connected in this manner, the pronoun will of course be plural, though it

still agrees with the antecedents singly; as, "Neither \_riches\_ nor

\_honours\_ ever satisfy \_their\_ pursuers." Sometimes, when different numbers

occur together, we find the plural noun put last, and the pronoun made

plural after both, especially if this noun is a mere substitute for the

other; as,

"What's justice to a man, or laws,

That never comes within \_their\_ claws."--\_Hudibras\_.

OBS. 2.--When antecedents of different persons, numbers, or genders, are

connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, they cannot very properly be represented by any

pronoun that is not applicable to each of them. The following sentences are

therefore inaccurate; or at least they contradict the teachings of their

own authors: "Either \_thou or I\_ am greatly mistaken, in \_our\_ judgment on

this subject."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 184 "Your character, which \_I, or any

other writer\_, may now value \_ourselves\_ by (upon) drawing."--SWIFT:

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 96. "Either \_you or I\_ will be in \_our\_ place in due

time."--\_Coopers Gram.\_, p. 127. But different pronouns may be so connected

as to refer to such antecedents taken separately; as, "By requiring greater

labour from such \_slave or slaves\_, than \_he or she or they\_ are able to

perform."--\_Prince's Digest\_. Or, if the gender only be different, the

masculine may involve the feminine by implication; as, "If a man smite the

eye of his \_servant\_, or the eye of his \_maid\_, that it perish, he shall

let \_him\_ go free for \_his\_ eye's sake."--\_Exodus\_, xxi, 26.

OBS. 3.--It is however very common to resort to the plural number in such

instances as the foregoing, because our plural pronouns are alike in all

the genders; as, "When either \_man or woman\_ shall separate \_themselves\_ to

vow a vow of a Nazarite."--\_Numbers\_, vi, 2. "Then shalt thou bring forth

\_that man or that woman\_ unto thy gates, and shalt stone them with stones,

till \_they\_ die."--\_Deut.\_, xvii, 5. "Not on outward charms could \_he or

she\_ build \_their\_ pretensions to please."--\_Opie, on Lying\_, p. 148.

"Complimenting either \_man or woman\_ on agreeable qualities which \_they\_ do

not possess, in hopes of imposing on \_their\_ credulity."--\_Ib.\_, p. 108.

"\_Avidien\_, or his \_wife\_, (no matter which,) \_sell their\_ presented

partridges and fruits."--\_Pope\_, Sat. ii, l. 50. "Beginning with Latin \_or\_

Greek hexameter, \_which are\_ the same."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 79.

"Did ever \_Proteus, Merlin\_, any \_witch\_,

Transform \_themselves\_ so strangely as the rich?"

--\_Pope\_, Ep. i, l. 152.

OBS. 4.--From the observations and examples above, it may be perceived,

that whenever there is a difference of person, number, or gender, in

antecedents connected disjunctively, there is an inherent difficulty

respecting the form of the pronoun personal. The best mode of meeting this

inconvenience, or of avoiding it by a change of the phraseology, may be

different on different occasions. The disjunctive connexion of explicit

pronouns is the most correct, but it savours too much of legal precision

and wordiness to be always eligible. Commonly an ingenious mind may invent

some better expression, and yet avoid any syntactical anomaly. In Latin,

when nouns are connected by the conjunctions which correspond to \_or\_ or

\_nor\_, the pronoun or verb is so often made plural, that no such principle

as that of the foregoing Rule, or of Rule 17th, is taught by the common

grammars of that language. How such usage can be logically right, however,

it is difficult to imagine. Lowth, Murray, Webster, and most other English

grammarians, teach, that, "The conjunction disjunctive has an effect

contrary to that of the copulative; and, as the verb, noun, or pronoun, is

referred to the preceding terms taken separately, it must be in the

singular number."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 75; \_L. Murray's\_, 151;

\_Churchill's\_, 142; \_W. Allen's\_, 133; \_Lennie's\_, 83; \_and many others\_.

If there is any allowable exception to this principle, it is for the

adoption of the plural when the concord cannot be made by any one pronoun

singular; as, "If I value my friend's \_wife or son\_ upon account of \_their\_

connexion with him."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 73. "Do not drink wine nor

strong drink, \_thou nor thy sons\_ with thee, when \_ye\_ go into the

tabernacle of the congregation."--\_Levit.\_, x, 8. These examples, though

they do not accord with the preceding rule, seem not to be susceptible of

any change for the better. There are also some other modes of expression,

in which nouns that are connected disjunctively, may afterwards be

represented together; as "\_Foppery\_ is a sort of folly much more contagious

THAN \_pedantry\_; but as \_they\_ result alike from affectation, \_they\_

deserve alike to be proscribed."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 217.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XIII.

PRONOUNS WITH ANTECEDENTS CONNECTED BY OR OR NOR.

"Neither prelate nor priest can give their flocks any decisive evidence

that you are lawful pastors."--\_Dr. Brownlee\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_their\_ is of the plural number,

and does not correctly represent its two antecedents \_prelate\_ and

\_priest\_, which are connected by \_nor\_, and taken disjunctively. But,

according to Rule 13th, "When a pronoun has two or more antecedents

connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, it must agree with them singly, and not as if

taken together." Therefore, \_their\_ should be \_his\_; thus, "Neither prelate

nor priest can give \_his\_ flocks any decisive evidence that you are lawful

pastors."]

"And is there a heart of parent or of child, that does not beat and burn

within them?"--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 367. "This is just as if an eye or a

foot should demand a salary for their service to the body."--\_Collier's

Antoninus\_, p. 178. "If thy hand or thy foot offend thee, cut them off, and

cast them from thee."--\_Matt.\_, xviii, 8. "The same might as well be said

of Virgil, or any great author, whose general character will infallibly

raise many casual additions to their reputation."--\_Pope's Pref. to Homer\_.

"Either James or John, one of them, will come."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p.

37. "Even a rugged rock or barren heath, though in themselves disagreeable,

contribute by contrast to the beauty of the whole."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

i, 185. "That neither Count Rechteren nor Monsieur Mesnager had behaved

themselves right in this affair."--\_Spect.\_, No. 481. "If an Aristotle, a

Pythagoras, or a Galileo, suffer for their opinions, they are

'martyrs.'"--\_Gospel its own Witness\_, p. 80. "If an ox gore a man or a

woman, that they die; then the ox shall be surely stoned."--\_Exodus\_, xxi,

28. "She was calling out to one or an other, at every step, that a Habit

was ensnaring them."--DR. JOHNSON: \_Murray's Sequel\_, 181. "Here is a Task

put upon Children, that neither this Author, nor any other have yet

undergone themselves."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 162. "Hence, if an

adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular

number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective

noun."--\_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 154; \_Gould's\_, 158. "And if you can find a

diphthong, or a triphthong, be pleased to point them out too."--\_Bucke's

Classical Gram.\_, p. 16. "And if you can find a diphthong, or a triphthong,

a trissyllable, or a polysyllable, point them respectively out."--\_Ib.\_, p.

25. "The false refuges in which the atheist or the sceptic have intrenched

themselves."--\_Christian Spect.\_, viii, 185. "While the man or woman thus

assisted by art expects their charms will be imputed to nature

alone."--\_Opie\_, 141. "When you press a watch, or pull a clock, they answer

your question with precision; for they repeat exactly the hour of the day,

and tell you neither more nor less than you desire to know."--\_Bolingbroke,

on History\_, p. 102.

"Not the Mogul, or Czar of Muscovy,

Not Prester John, or Cham of Tartary,

Are in their houses Monarch more than I."

--KING: \_Brit. Poets\_, Vol. iii, p. 613.

CHAPTER VI.--VERBS.

In this work, the syntax of Verbs is embraced in six consecutive rules,

with the necessary exceptions, notes, and observations, under them; hence

this chapter extends from the fourteenth to the twentieth rule in the

series.

RULE XIV.--FINITE VERBS.

Every finite Verb must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and

number: as, "I \_know\_; thou \_knowst\_, or \_knowest\_; he \_knows\_, or

\_knoweth\_"--"The bird \_flies\_; the birds \_fly\_."

"Our fathers' fertile \_fields\_ by slaves \_are till'd\_,

And \_Rome\_ with dregs of foreign lands \_is fill'd\_."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. vii, l. 600.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XIV.

OBS. 1.--To this general rule for the verb, there are properly \_no

exceptions\_;[385] and all the special rules that follow, which prescribe

the concord of verbs in particular instances, virtually accord with it.

Every \_finite verb\_, (that is, every verb \_not in the infinitive mood\_,)

must have some noun, pronoun, or phrase equivalent, known as the \_subject\_

of the being, action, or passion;[386] and with this subject, whether

expressed or understood, the verb must agree in person and number. The

infinitive mood, as it does not unite with a nominative to form an

assertion, is of course exempt from any such agreement. These may be

considered principles of Universal Grammar. The Greeks, however, had a

strange custom of using a plural noun of the neuter gender, with a verb of

the third person singular; and in both Greek and Latin, the infinitive mood

with an accusative before it was often equivalent to a finite verb with its

nominative. In English we have \_neither of these usages\_; and plural nouns,

even when they denote no absolute plurality, (as \_shears, scissors,

trowsers, pantaloons, tongs\_,) require plural verbs or pronouns: as, "Your

\_shears come\_ too late, to clip the bird's wings."--SIDNEY: \_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 30.

OBS. 2.--When a book that bears a plural title, is spoken of as one thing,

there is sometimes presented an \_apparent exception\_ to the foregoing rule;

as, "The \_Pleasures\_ of Memory \_was published\_ in the year 1792, and became

at once popular."--\_Allan Cunningham\_. "The '\_Sentiments\_ of a

Church-of-England Man' \_is written\_ with great coolness, moderation, ease,

and perspicuity."--\_Johnson's Life of Swift\_. "The '\_Pleasures\_ of Hope'

\_is\_ a splendid poem; \_it\_ was written for perpetuity."--\_Samuel L. Knapp\_.

In these instances, there is, I apprehend, either an agreement of the verb,

by the figure \_syllepsis\_, with the mental conception of the thing spoken

of; or an improper ellipsis of the common noun, with which each sentence

ought to commence; as, "The \_poem\_ entitled,"--"The \_work\_ entitled," &c.

But the plural title sometimes controls the form of the verb; as, "My Lives

are reprinting."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

OBS. 3.--In the figurative use of the present tense for the past or

imperfect, the vulgar have a habit of putting the third person singular

with the pronoun \_I\_; as, "\_Thinks I\_ to myself."--\_Rev. J. Marriott\_. "O,

\_says I\_, Jacky, are you at that work?"--\_Day's Sandford and Merton\_.

"Huzza! huzza! Sir Condy Rackrent forever, was the first thing \_I hears\_ in

the morning."--\_Edgeworth's Castle Rackrent\_, p. 97. This vulgarism is to

be avoided, not by a simple omission of the terminational \_s\_, but rather

by the use of the literal preterit: as, "\_Thought\_ I to myself;"--"O,

\_said\_ I;"--"The first thing I \_heard\_." The same mode of correction is

also proper, when, under like circumstances, there occurs a disagreement in

number; as, "After the election was over, there \_comes shoals\_ of people

from all parts."--\_Castle Rackrent\_, p. 103. "Didn't ye hear it? \_says

they\_ that were looking on."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. Write, "there \_came\_,"--"\_said

they\_."

OBS. 4.--It has already been noticed, that the article \_a\_, or a singular

adjective, sometimes precedes an arithmetical number with a plural noun;

as, "\_A thousand years\_ in thy sight \_are\_ but as yesterday."--\_Psalms\_,

xc, 4. So we might say, "\_One\_ thousand years \_are\_,"--"\_Each\_ thousand

years \_are\_"--"\_Every\_ thousand years \_are\_," &c. But it would not be

proper to say, "A thousand years \_is\_," or, "Every thousand years \_is\_;"

because the noun \_years\_ is plainly plural, and the anomaly of putting a

singular verb after it, is both needless and unauthorized. Yet, to this

general rule for the verb, the author of a certain "English Grammar \_on the

Productive System\_," (a strange perversion of Murray's compilation, and a

mere catch-penny work, now extensively used in New England,) is

endeavouring to establish, by his own bare word, the following exception:

"\_Every\_ is sometimes associated with a plural noun, in which case the verb

must be singular; as, 'Every hundred years \_constitutes\_ a

century.'"--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 103. His \_reason\_ is this; that the

phrase containing the nominative, "\_signifies a single period of time\_, and

is, therefore, \_in reality\_ singular."--\_Ib.\_ Cutler also, a more recent

writer, seems to have imbibed the same notion; for he gives the following

sentence as an example of "false construction: Every hundred years \_are\_

called a century."--\_Cutler's Grammar and Parser\_, p. 145. But, according

to this argument, no plural verb could ever be used with any \_definite

number\_ of the parts of time; for any three years, forty years, or

threescore years and ten, are as single a period of time, as "every hundred

years," "every four years," or "every twenty-four hours." Nor is it true,

that, "\_Every\_ is sometimes associated with a plural noun;" for "\_every

years\_" or "\_every hours\_," would be worse than nonsense. I, therefore,

acknowledge no such exception; but, discarding the principle of the note,

put this author's pretended \_corrections\_ among my quotations of \_false

syntax\_.

OBS. 5.--Different verbs always have different subjects, expressed or

understood; except when two or more verbs are connected in the same

construction, or when the same word is repeated for the sake of emphasis.

But let not the reader believe the common doctrine of our grammarians,

respecting either the ellipsis of nominatives or the ellipsis of verbs. In

the text, "The man was old and crafty," Murray sees no connexion of the

ideas of age and craftiness, but thinks the text a \_compound sentence\_,

containing two nominatives and two verbs; i.e., "The man was old, and \_the

man was\_ crafty." [387] And all his other instances of "the ellipsis of the

verb" are equally fanciful! See his \_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 219; \_Duodecimo\_,

175. In the text, "God loves, protects, supports, and rewards the rights,"

there are four verbs in \_the same construction\_, agreeing with the same

nominative, and governing the same object; but Buchanan and others expound

it, "God loves, and God protects, and God supports, and God rewards the

righteous."--\_English Syntax\_, p. 76; \_British Gram.\_, 192. This also is

fanciful and inconsistent. If the nominative is here "\_elegantly

understood\_ to each verb," so is the objective, which they do not repeat.

"And again," they immediately add, "the \_verb\_ is often understood to its

noun or nouns; as, He dreams of gibbets, halters, racks, daggers, &c. i.e.

He dreams of gibbets, and he dreams of halters, &c."--\_Same works and

places\_. In none of these examples is there any occasion to suppose an

ellipsis, if we admit that two or more words \_can\_ be connected in the same

construction!

OBS. 6.--Verbs in the imperative mood commonly agree with the pronoun

\_thou, ye\_, or \_you\_, understood after them; as, "\_Heal [ye\_] the sick,

\_cleanse [ye\_] the lepers, \_raise [ye\_] the dead, \_cast [ye\_] out

devils."--\_Matt.\_, x, 8. "\_Trust\_ God and \_be doing\_, and \_leave\_ the rest

with him."--\_Dr. Sibs\_. When the doer of a thing must first proceed to the

place of action, we sometimes use \_go\_ or \_come\_ before an other verb,

without any conjunction between the two; as, "Son, \_go work\_ to-day in my

vineyard."--\_Matt.\_, xxi, 28. "\_Come see\_ a man who [has] told me all

things that ever I did."--\_John\_, iv, 29. "He ordered his soldiers to \_go

murder\_ every child about Bethlehem, or near it."--\_Wood's Dict. of Bible,

w. Herod\_. "Take a present in thine hand, and \_go meet\_ the man of

God."--\_2 Kings\_, viii, 8. "I will \_go see\_ if he be at home."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 169.

OBS. 7.--The \_place\_ of the verb has reference mainly to that of the

subject with which it agrees, and that of the object which it governs; and

as the arrangement of these, with the instances in which they come before

or after the verb, has already been noticed, the position of the latter

seems to require no further explanation. See Obs. 2d under Rule 2d, and

Obs. 2d under Rule 5th.

OBS. 8.--The infinitive mood, a phrase, or a sentence, (and, according to

some authors, the participle in \_ing\_, or a phrase beginning with this

participle,) is sometimes the proper subject of a verb, being equivalent to

a nominative of the third person singular; as, "To play \_is\_

pleasant."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 80. "To write well, \_is\_ difficult; to

speak eloquently, \_is\_ still more difficult."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 81. "To

take men off from prayer, \_tends\_ to irreligiousness, \_is

granted\_."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 214. "To educate a child perfectly,

\_requires\_ profounder thought, greater wisdom, than to govern a

state."--\_Channing's Self-Culture\_, p. 30. "To determine these points,

\_belongs\_ to good sense."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 321. "How far the change

would contribute to his welfare, \_comes\_ to be considered."--\_Id.,

Sermons\_. "That too much care does hurt in any of our tasks, \_is\_ a

doctrine so flattering to indolence, that we ought to receive it with

extreme caution."--\_Life of Schiller\_, p. 148. "That there is no disputing

about taste, \_is\_ a saying so generally received as to have become a

proverb."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 360. "For what purpose they embarked,

\_is\_ not yet known."--"To live in sin and yet to believe the forgiveness of

sin, \_is\_ utterly impossible."--\_Dr. J. Owen\_.

"There shallow draughts intoxicate the brain,

But drinking largely \_sobers\_ us again."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 9.--The same meaning will be expressed, if the pronoun \_it\_ be placed

before the verb, and the infinitive, phrase, or santance, after it; as,

"\_It\_ is pleasant \_to play\_,"--"\_It\_ is difficult \_to write well\_;" &c. The

construction of the following sentences is rendered defective by the

omission of this pronoun: "Why do ye that which [\_it\_] is not lawful to do

on the sabbath days?"--\_Luke\_, vi, 2. "The show-bread, which [\_it\_] is not

lawful to eat, but for the priests only."--\_Ib.\_, vi, 4. "We have done that

which [\_it\_] was our duty to do."--\_Ib.\_, xvii, 10. Here the relative

\_which\_ ought to be in the objective case, governed by the infinitives; but

the omission of the word \_it\_ makes this relative the nominative to \_is\_ or

\_was\_, and leaves \_to do\_ and \_to eat\_ without any regimen. This is not

ellipsis, but error. It is an accidental gap into which a side piece falls,

and leaves a breach elsewhere. The following is somewhat like it, though

what falls in, appears to leave no chasm: "From this deduction, [\_it\_] \_may

be easily seen\_ how it comes to pass, that personification makes so great a

figure."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 155. "Whether the author had any meaning in

this expression, or what it was, [\_it\_] \_is not easy\_ to

determine."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 298. "That warm climates should

accelerate the growth of the human body, and shorten its duration, [\_it\_]

\_is very reasonable\_ to believe."--\_Ib.\_, p. 144. These also need the

pronoun, though Murray thought them complete without it.

OBS. 10.--When the infinitive mood is made the subject of a finite verb, it

is most commonly used to express action or state in the abstract; as, "\_To

be\_ contents his natural desire."--\_Pope\_. Here \_to be\_ stands for simple

\_existence\_; or if for the existence \_of the Indian\_, of whom the author

speaks, that relation is merely implied. "\_To define ridicule\_, has puzzled

and vexed every critic."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 300. Here "\_to define\_"

expresses an action quite as distinct from any agent, as would the

participial noun; as, "The \_defining of\_ ridicule," &c. In connexion with

the infinitive, a concrete quality may also be taken as an abstract; as,

"\_To be good\_ is \_to be happy\_." Here \_good\_ and \_happy\_ express the

quality of \_goodness\_ and the state of \_happiness\_ considered abstractly;

and therefore these adjectives do not relate to any particular noun. So

also the passive infinitive, or a perfect participle taken in a passive

sense; as, "\_To be satisfied with a little\_, is the greatest wisdom."--"\_To

appear discouraged\_, is the way to become so." Here the \_satisfaction\_ and

the \_discouragement\_ are considered abstractly, and without reference to

any particular person. (See Obs. 12th and 13th on Rule 6th.) So too,

apparently, the participles \_doing\_ and \_suffering\_, as well as the

adjective \_weak\_, in the following example:

"Fallen Cherub, to be \_weak\_ is miserable,

\_Doing\_ or \_suffering\_."--\_Milton's Paradise Lost\_.

OBS. 11.--When the action or state is to be expressly limited to one class

of beings, or to a particular person or thing, without making the verb

finite; the noun or pronoun may be introduced before the infinitive by the

preposition \_for\_: as, "\_For men to search\_ their own glory, is not

glory."--\_Prov.\_, xxv, 27. "\_For a prince to be reduced\_ by villany

[sic--KTH] to my distressful circumstances, is calamity

enough."--\_Translation of Sallust\_. "\_For holy persons to be humble\_, is as

hard, as \_for a prince to submit\_ himself to be guided by tutors."--TAYLOR:

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 132; \_Murray's\_, 184. But such a limitation is

sometimes implied, when the expression itself is general; as, "\_Not to know

me\_, argues thyself unknown."--\_Milton\_. That is, "\_For thee\_ not to know

me." The phrase is put far, "\_Thy ignorance of me\_;" for an other's

ignorance would be no argument in regard to the individual addressed. "\_I,

to bear this\_, that never knew but better, \_is\_ some burden."--\_Beauties of

Shak.\_, p. 327. Here the infinitive \_to bear\_, which is the subject of the

verb \_is\_, is limited in sense by the pronoun \_I\_, which is put absolute in

the nominative, though perhaps \_improperly\_; because, "\_For me to bear

this\_," &c., will convey the same meaning, in a form much more common, and

perhaps more grammatical. In the following couplet, there is an ellipsis of

the infinitive; for the phrase, "fool with fool," means, "\_for\_ fool \_to

contend\_ with fool," or, "for one fool to contend with an other:"

"Blockheads with reason wicked wits abhor,

But \_fool with fool\_ is barb'rous civil war."

--\_Pope, Dunciad\_, B. iii, l. 175.

OBS. 12.--The objective noun or pronoun thus introduced by \_for\_ before the

infinitive, was erroneously called by Priestley, "\_the subject of the

affirmation\_;" (\_Gram.\_, p. 132;) and Murray, Ingersoll, and others, have

blindly copied the blunder. See \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 184; \_Ingersoll's\_,

244. Again, Ingersoll says, "The infinitive mood, or part of a sentence, is

sometimes the subject of a verb, \_and is, therefore, its\_

NOMINATIVE."--\_Conversations on English Gram.\_, p. 246. To this erroneous

deduction, the phraseology used by Murray and others too plainly gives

countenance: "The infinitive mood, or part of a sentence, is sometimes put

\_as the nominative case\_ to the verb."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 144; \_Fisk's\_,

123; \_Kirkham's\_, 188; \_Lennie's\_, 99; \_Bullions's\_, 89; and many more. Now

the objective before the infinitive may not improperly be called \_the

subject\_ of this form of the verb, as the nominative is, of the finite; but

to call it "the subject \_of the affirmation\_," is plainly absurd; because

no infinitive, in English, ever expresses an affirmation. And again, if a

whole phrase or sentence is made the subject of a \_finite\_ verb, or of an

affirmation, no one word contained in it, can singly claim this title. Nor

can the whole, by virtue of this relation, be said to be "in the

\_nominative case\_;" because, in the nature of things, neither phrases nor

sentences are capable of being declined by cases.

OBS. 13.--Any phrase or sentence which is made the subject of a finite

verb, must be taken in the sense of \_one thing\_, and be spoken of as \_a

whole\_; so that the verb's agreement with it, in the third person singular,

is not an exception to Rule 14th, but a construction in which the verb may

be parsed by that rule. For any one thing merely spoken of, is of the third

person singular, whatever may be the nature of its parts. Not every phrase

or sentence, however, is fit to be made the subject of a verb;--that is, if

its own import, and not the mere expression, is the thing whereof we

affirm. Thus Dr. Ash's example for this very construction, "a \_sentence\_

made the subject of a verb," is, I think, a palpable solecism: "The King

and Queen appearing in public \_was\_ the cause of my going."--\_Ash's Gram.\_,

p. 52. What is here before the verb \_was\_, is \_no\_ "\_sentence\_;" but a mere

phrase, and such a one as we should expect to see used independently, if

any regard were had to its own import. The Doctor would tell us what "was

\_the cause\_ of his going:" and here he has two nominatives, which are

equivalent to the plural \_they\_; q.d., "\_They\_ appearing in public \_was\_

the cause." But such a construction is not English. It is an other sample

of the false illustration which grammar receives from those who \_invent\_

the proof-texts which they ought to \_quote\_.

OBS. 14.--One of Murray's examples of what he erroneously terms

"\_nominative sentences\_," i.e., "sentences or clauses constituting the

subject of an affirmation," is the following: "A desire to excel others in

learning and virtue [,] \_is\_ commendable."--\_Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 144. Here the

verb \_is\_ agrees regularly with the noun \_desire\_, and with that only; the

whole text being merely a simple sentence, and totally irrelevant to the

doctrine which it accompanies.[388] But the great "Compiler" supposes the

adjuncts of this noun to be parts of the nominative, and imagines the verb

to agree with all that precedes it. Yet, soon after, he expends upon the

ninth rule of Webster's Philosophical Grammar a whole page of useless

criticism, to show that the adjuncts of a noun are not to be taken as parts

of the nominative; and that, when objectives are thus subjoined, "the

assertion grammatically respects the first nouns only."--\_Ib.\_, p. 148. I

say \_useless\_, because the truth of the doctrine is so very plain. Some,

however, may imagine an example like the following to be an exception to

it; but I do not, because I think the true nominative suppressed:

"By force they could not introduce these gods;

For \_ten to one\_ in former days \_was\_ odds."--\_Dryden's Poems\_, p. 38.

OBS. 15.--Dr. Webster's ninth rule is this: "When the nominative consists

of several words, and the last of the names is in the plural number, the

verb is commonly in the plural also; as, 'A part of the exports \_consist\_

of raw silk.' 'The number of oysters \_increase\_.' GOLDSMITH. 'Such as the

train of our ideas \_have lodged\_ in our memories.' LOCKE. 'The greater part

of philosophers \_have acknowledged\_ the excellence of this government.'

ANACHARSIS."--\_Philos. Gram.\_, p. 146; \_Impr. Gram.\_, 100. The last of

these examples Murray omits; the second he changes thus: "A number of men

and women \_were\_ present." But all of them his reasoning condemns as

ungrammatical. He thinks them wrong, upon the principle, that the verbs,

being plural, do not agree with the first nouns only. Webster, on the

contrary, judges them all to be right; and, upon this same principle,

conceives that his rule must be so too. He did not retract or alter the

doctrine after he saw the criticism, but republished it verbatim, in his

"Improved Grammar," of 1831. Both err, and neither convinces the other.

OBS. 16.--In this instance, as Webster and Murray both teach erroneously,

whoever follows either, will be led into many mistakes. The fact is, that

some of the foregoing examples, though perhaps not all, are perfectly

right; and hundreds more, of a similar character, might be quoted, which no

true grammarian would presume to condemn. But what have these to do with

the monstrous absurdity of supposing objective adjuncts to be "parts of the

actual nominative?" The words, "\_part," "number," "train\_" and the like,

are \_collective nouns\_; and, as such, they often have plural verbs in

agreement with them. To say, "A \_number\_ of men and women \_were\_ present,"

is as correct as to say, "A very great \_number\_ of our words \_are\_ plainly

derived from the Latin."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 86. Murray's criticism,

therefore, since it does not exempt these examples from the censure justly

laid upon Webster's rule, will certainly mislead the learner. And again the

rule, being utterly wrong in principle, will justify blunders like these:

"The truth of the narratives \_have\_ never been disputed;"--"The virtue of

these men and women \_are\_ indeed exemplary."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 148. In

one of his notes, Murray suggests, that the article \_an\_ or \_a\_ before a

collective noun must confine the verb to the singular number; as, "\_A great

number\_ of men and women \_was\_ collected."--\_Ib.\_, p. 153. But this

doctrine he sometimes forgot or disregarded; as, "But if \_a number\_ of

interrogative or exclamatory sentences \_are thrown\_ into one general

group."--\_Ib.\_, p. 284; \_Comly\_, 166; \_Fisk\_, 160; \_Ingersoll\_, 295.

OBS. 17.--Cobbett, in a long paragraph, (the 245th of his English Grammar,)

stoutly denies that any \_relative pronoun\_ can ever be the nominative to a

verb; and, to maintain this absurdity, he will have the relative and its

antecedent to be always alike in \_case\_, the only thing in which they are

always independent of each other. To prove his point, he first frames these

examples: "The men \_who are\_ here, the man \_who is\_ here; the cocks \_that

crow\_, the cock \_that crows\_;" and then asks, "Now, if the relative be the

nominative, why do the verbs \_change\_, seeing that here is no change in the

relative?" He seems ignorant of the axiom, that two things severally equal

to a third, are also equal to each other: and accordingly, to answer his

own question, resorts to a new principle: "The verb is continually varying.

Why does it vary? Because it \_disregards the relative\_ and goes and finds

the antecedent, and accommodates its number to that."--\_Ibid.\_ To this wild

doctrine, one erratic Irishman yields a full assent; and, in one American

grammatist, we find a partial and unintentional concurrence with it.[389]

But the fact is, the relative agrees with the antecedent, and the verb

agrees with the relative: hence all three of the words are alike in person

and number. But between the case of the relative and that of the antededent

[sic--KTH], there never is, or can be, in our language, any sort of

connexion or interference. The words belong to different clauses; and, if

both be nominatives, they must be the subjects of different verbs: or, if

the noun be sometimes put absolute in the nominative, the pronoun is still

left to its own verb. But Cobbett concludes his observation thus: "You will

observe, therefore, that, when I, in the etymology and syntax as relating

to relative pronouns, speak of relatives as being in the nominative case, I

mean, that they relate to nouns or to personal pronouns, \_which are in that

case\_. The same observation applies \_to the other cases\_."--\_Ib.\_, ¶ 245.

This suggestion betrays in the critic an unaccountable ignorance of his

subject.

OBS. 18.--Nothing is more certain, than that the relatives, \_who, which,

what, that\_, and \_as\_, are often nominatives, and the only subjects of the

verbs which follow them: as, "The Lord will show \_who are\_ his, and \_who

is\_ holy."--\_Numbers\_, xvi, 5. "Hardly is there any person, but \_who\_, on

such occasions, \_is disposed\_ to be serious."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 469.

"Much of the merit of Mr. Addison's Cato depends upon that moral turn of

thought \_which distinguishes\_ it."--\_Ib.\_, 469. "Admit not a single word

but \_what is\_ necessary."--\_Ib.\_, p. 313. "The pleader must say nothing but

\_what is\_ true; and, at the same time, he must avoid saying any thing \_that

will hurt\_ his cause."--\_Ib.\_, 313. "I proceed to mention such \_as appear\_

to me most material."--\_Ib.\_, p. 125. After \_but\_ or \_than\_, there is

sometimes an ellipsis of the relative, and perhaps also of the antecedent;

as, "There is no heart \_but must feel\_ them."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 469.

"There is no one \_but must be\_ sensible of the extravagance."--\_Ib.\_, p.

479. "Since we may date from it a more general and a more concerted

opposition to France \_than there had been\_ before."--\_Bolingbroke, on

Hist.\_, p. 213. That is, "than \_what\_ there had been before;"--or, "than

\_any opposition which\_ there had been before." "John has more fruit \_than

can be gathered\_ in a week."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, pp. 196 and 331. I

suppose this sentence to mean, "John has more fruit than \_what\_ can be

gathered in a week." But the author of it denies that it is elliptical, and

seems to suppose that \_can be gathered\_ agrees with \_John\_. Part of his

comment stands thus: "The above sentence--'John has more fruit than can be

gathered in a week'--in every respect full and \_perfect\_--must, to be

\_grammatical\_! according to \_all\_ the 'old theories,' stand, John has more

fruit than \_that fruit is which, or which fruit\_ can be gathered in a

week!!!"--\_Ib.\_, 331. What shall be done with the headlong critic who thus

mistakes exclamation points for arguments, and multiplies his confidence in

proportion to his fallacies and errors?

OBS. 19.--In a question, the nominative \_I\_ or \_thou\_ put after the verb,

controls the agreement, in preference to the interrogative \_who, which\_, or

\_what\_, put before it; as, "\_Who am I? What am I? Who art thou? What art

thou?\_" And, by analogy, this seems to be the case with all plurals; as,

"\_Who are we? Who are you? Who are they? What are these\_?" But sometimes

the interrogative pronoun is the only nominative used; and then the verb,

whether singular or plural, must agree with this nominative, in the third

person, and not, as Cobbett avers, with an antecedent understood: as, "\_Who

is\_ in the house? \_Who are\_ in the house? \_Who strikes\_ the iron? \_Who

strike\_ the iron? \_Who was\_ in the street? \_Who were\_ in the

street?"--\_Cobbett's Gram.\_, ¶ 245. All the interrogative pronouns may be

used in either number, but, in examples like the following, I imagine the

singular to be more proper than the plural: "\_What have become\_ of our

previous customs?"--\_Hunt's Byron\_, p. 121. "And \_what have become\_ of my

resolutions to return to God?"--\_Young Christian\_, 2d Ed., p. 91. When two

nominatives of different properties come after the verb, the first controls

the agreement, and neither the plural number nor the most worthy person is

always preferred; as, "\_Is it I? Is it thou? Is it they\_?"

OBS. 20.--The verb after a relative sometimes has the appearance of

disagreeing with its nominative, because the writer and his reader disagree

in their conceptions of its mood. When a relative clause is subjoined to

what is itself subjunctive or conditional, some writers suppose that the

latter verb should be put in the subjunctive mood; as, "If there be any

intrigue \_which stand\_ separate and independent."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 457.

"The man also would be of considerable use, who should vigilantly attend to

every illegal practice \_that were beginning\_ to prevail."--\_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, p. 171. But I have elsewhere shown, that relatives, in English, are

not compatible with the subjunctive mood; and it is certain, that no other

mood than the indicative or the potential is commonly used after them. Say

therefore, "If there be any intrigue \_which stands\_," &c. In assuming to

himself the other text, Murray's says, "\_That\_ man also would be of

considerable use, who should vigilantly attend to every illegal practice

that \_was\_ beginning to prevail."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 366. But this seems

too positive. The potential imperfect would be better: viz., "that \_might

begin\_ to prevail."

OBS. 21.--The termination \_st\_ or \_est\_, with which the second person

singular of the verb is formed in the indicative present, and, for the

solemn style, in the imperfect also; and the termination \_s\_ or \_es\_, with

which the third person singular is formed in the indicative present, and

only there; are signs of the mood and tense, as well as of the person and

number, of the verb. They are not applicable to a future uncertainty, or to

any mere supposition in which we would leave the time indefinite and make

the action hypothetical; because they are commonly understood to fix the

time of the verb to the present or the past, and to assume the action as

either doing or done. For this reason, our best writers have always omitted

those terminations, when they intended to represent the action as being

doubtful and contingent as well as conditional. And this omission

constitutes the whole \_formal\_ difference between the indicative and the

subjunctive mood. The \_essential\_ difference has, by almost all

grammarians, been conceived to extend somewhat further; for, if it were

confined strictly within the limits of the literal variation, the

subjunctive mood would embrace only two or three words in the whole

formation of each verb. After the example of Priestley, Dr. Murray, A.

Murray, Harrison, Alexander, and others, I have given to it all the persons

of the two simple tenses, singular and plural; and, for various reasons, I

am decidedly of the opinion, that these are its most proper limits. The

perfect and pluperfect tenses, being past, cannot express what is really

contingent or uncertain; and since, in expressing conditionally what may or

may not happen, we use the subjunctive present as embracing the future

indefinitely, there is no need of any formal futures for this mood. The

comprehensive brevity of this form of the verb, is what chiefly commends

it. It is not an elliptical form of the future, as some affirm it to be;

nor equivalent to the indicative present, as others will have it; but a

\_true subjunctive\_, though its distinctive parts are chiefly confined to

the second and third persons singular of the simple verb: as, "Though \_thou

wash\_ thee with nitre."--\_Jer.\_, ii, 22. "It is just, O great king! that a

\_murderer perish\_."--\_Corneille\_. "This single \_crime\_, in my judgment,

\_were\_ sufficient to condemn him."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 82. "Beware that

\_thou bring\_ not my son thither."--BIBLE: \_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 128. "See

[that] \_thou tell\_ no man."--\_Id., ib.\_ These examples can hardly be

resolved into any thing else than the subjunctive mood.

NOTES TO RULE XIV.

NOTE I.--When the nominative is a relative pronoun, the verb must agree

with it in person and number, according to the pronoun's agreement with its

true antecedent or antecedents. Example of error: "The second book [of the

Æneid] is one of the greatest masterpieces \_that ever was executed\_ by any

hand."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 439. Here the true antecedent is

\_masterpieces\_, and not the word \_one\_; but \_was executed\_ is singular, and

"by any \_hand\_" implies but one agent. Either say, "It is one of the

greatest \_masterpieces that\_ ever \_were executed\_;" or else, "It is \_the

greatest masterpiece that ever was executed by any hand\_." But these

assertions differ much in their import.

NOTE II.--"The adjuncts of the nominative do not control its agreement with

the verb; as, Six months' \_interest was\_ due. The \_progress\_ of his forces

\_was\_ impeded."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 131. "The \_ship\_, with all her

furniture, was destroyed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 150. "All \_appearances\_ of

modesty \_are\_ favourable and prepossessing."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 308. "The

\_power\_ of relishing natural enjoyments \_is\_ soon gone."--\_Fuller, on the

Gospel\_, p. 135. "\_I\_, your master, \_command\_ you (not \_commands\_)"--

\_Latham's Hand-Book\_, p. 330.[390]

NOTE III.--Any phrase, sentence, mere word, or other sign, taken as one

whole, and made the subject of an assertion, requires a verb in the third

person singular; as, "To lie \_is\_ base."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 154. "When, to

read and write, \_was\_ of itself an honorary distinction."--\_Hazlitt's

Lect.\_, p. 40. "To admit a God and then refuse to worship him, \_is\_ a

modern and inconsistent practice."--\_Fuller, on the Gospel\_, p. 30. "\_We

is\_ a personal pronoun."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 227. "\_Th has\_ two

sounds."--\_Ib.\_, p. 161. "The \_'s is annexed\_ to each."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_,

p. 89. "\_Ld. stands\_ for \_lord\_."--\_Webster's American Dict.\_, 8vo.

NOTE IV.--The pronominal adjectives, \_each, one,[391] either\_, and

\_neither\_, are always in the third person singular; and, when they are the

leading words in their clauses, they require verbs and pronouns to agree

with them accordingly: as, "\_Each\_ of you \_is\_ entitled to \_his\_

share."--"Let no \_one\_ deceive \_himself\_."

NOTE V.--A neuter or a passive verb between two nominatives should be made

to agree with that which precedes it;[392] as, "Words \_are\_ wind:" except

when the terms are transposed, and the proper subject is put after the verb

by \_question\_ or \_hyperbaton\_; as, "His pavilion \_were\_ dark \_waters\_ and

thick \_clouds\_ of the sky."--\_Bible\_. "Who \_art thou\_?"--\_Ib.\_ "The wages

of sin \_is death\_."--\_Ib. Murray, Comly\_, and others. But, of this last

example, Churchill says, "\_Wages are\_ the subject, of which it is affirmed,

that \_they are\_ death."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 314. If so, \_is\_ ought to be

\_are\_; unless Dr. Webster is right, who imagines \_wages\_ to be \_singular\_,

and cites this example to prove it so. See his \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 21.

NOTE VI.--When the verb cannot well be made singular, the nominative should

be made plural, that they may agree: or, if the verb cannot be plural, let

the nominative be singular. Example of error: "For \_every one\_ of them

\_know\_ their several duties."--\_Hope of Israel\_, p. 72. Say, "For \_all\_ of

them know their several duties."

NOTE VII.--When the verb has different forms, that form should be adopted,

which is the most consistent with present and reputable usage in the style

employed: thus, to say familiarly, "The clock \_hath stricken\_;"--"Thou

\_laughedst\_ and \_talkedst\_, when thou \_oughtest\_ to have been silent;"--"He

\_readeth\_ and \_writeth\_, but he \_doth\_ not cipher," would be no better,

than to use \_don't, won't, can't, shan't\_, and \_didn't\_, in preaching.

NOTE VIII.--Every finite verb not in the imperative mood, should have a

separate nominative expressed; as, "\_I came, I saw, I conquered\_:" except

when the verb is repeated for the sake of emphasis, or connected to an

other in the same construction, or put after \_but\_ or \_than\_; as, "Not an

eminent orator has lived \_but is\_ an example of it."--\_Ware\_. "Where more

is meant \_than meets\_ the ear."--\_Milton's Allegro\_. (See Obs. 5th and Obs.

18th above.)

"They \_bud, blow, wither, fall\_, and \_die\_."--\_Watts\_.

"That evermore his teeth they \_chatter,

Chatter, chatter, chatter\_ still."--\_Wordsworth\_.

NOTE IX.--A future contingency is best expressed by a verb in the

subjunctive present; and a mere supposition, with indefinite time, by a

verb in the subjunctive imperfect; but a conditional circumstance assumed

as a fact, requires the indicative mood:[393] as, "If thou \_forsake\_ him,

he will cast thee off forever."--\_Bible\_. "If it \_were\_ not so, I would

have told you."--\_Ib.\_ "If thou \_went\_, nothing would be gained."--"Though

he \_is\_ poor, he is contented."--"Though he \_was\_ rich, yet for your sakes

he became poor."--\_2 Cor.\_, viii, 9.

NOTE X.--In general, every such use or extension of the subjunctive mood,

as the reader will be likely to mistake for a discord between the verb and

its nominative, ought to be avoided as an impropriety: as, "We are not

sensible of disproportion, till the difference between the quantities

compared \_become\_ the most striking circumstance."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 341. Say rather, "\_becomes\_;" which is indicative. "Till the general

preference of certain forms \_have been declared\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.,

Pref.\_, p. xvii. Say, "\_has been declared\_;" for "\_preference\_" is here the

nominative, and Dr. Priestley himself recognizes no other subjunctive

tenses than the present and the imperfect; as, "If thou \_love\_, If thou

\_loved\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 16.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XIV.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--VERB AFTER THE NOMINATIVE.

"Before you left Sicily, you was reconciled to Verres."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_,

p. 19.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the passive verb \_was reconciled\_ is of the

singular number, and does not agree with its nominative \_you\_, which is of

the second person plural. But, according to Rule 14th, "Every finite verb

must agree with its subject, or nominative, in person and number."

Therefore, \_was reconciled\_ should be \_were reconciled\_; thus, "Before you

left Sicily, you \_were reconciled\_ to Verres."]

"Knowing that you was my old master's good friend."--\_Spect.\_, No. 517.

"When the judge dare not act, where is the loser's remedy?"--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 131. "Which extends it no farther than the variation of the

verb extend."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 211. "They presently dry

without hurt, as myself hath often proved."--\_Roger Williams\_. "Whose

goings forth hath been from of old, from everlasting."--\_Keith's

Evidences\_. "You was paid to fight against Alexander, not to rail at

him."--\_Porter's Analysis\_, p. 70. "Where more than one part of speech is

almost always concerned."--\_Churchill's Gram., Pref.\_, p. viii. "Nothing

less than murders, rapines, and conflagrations, employ their

thoughts."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 175. "I wondered where you was, my

dear."--\_Lloyd's Poems\_, p. 185. "When thou most sweetly sings."--\_Drummond

of Hawthornden\_. "Who dare, at the present day, avow himself equal to the

task?"--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 11. "Every body are very kind to her, and not

discourteous to me."--\_Byron's Letters\_. "As to what thou says respecting

the diversity of opinions."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. ix, p. 45. "Thy nature,

immortality, who knowest?"--\_Everest's Gram.\_, p. 38. "The natural

distinction of sex in animals gives rise to what, in grammar, is called

genders."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51. "Some pains has likewise been taken."--\_Scott's

Pref. to Bible\_. "And many a steed in his stables were seen."--\_Penwarne's

Poems\_, p. 108. "They was forced to eat what never was esteemed

food."--\_Josephus's Jewish War\_, B. i, Ch. i, §7. "This that yourself hath

spoken, I desire that they may take their oaths upon."--\_Hutchinson's

Mass.\_, ii, 435. "By men whose experience best qualify them to

judge."--\_Committee on Literature, N. Y. Legislature\_. "He dare venture to

kill and destroy several other kinds of fish."--\_Johnson's Dict, w. Perch\_.

"If a gudgeon meet a roach, He dare not venture to approach."--SWIFT: \_Ib.,

w. Roach\_. "Which thou endeavours to establish unto thyself."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 164. "But they pray together much oftener than thou

insinuates."--\_Ib.\_, i, 215. "Of people of all denominations, over whom

thou presideth."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. v, p. 198. "I can produce ladies and

gentlemen whose progress have been astonishing."--\_Chazotte, on Teaching

Lang.\_, p. 62. "Which of these two kinds of vice are more

criminal?"--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 115. "Every twenty-four hours affords

to us the vicissitudes of day and night."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 103.

"Every four years adds another day."--\_Ib.\_ "Every error I could find, Have

my busy muse employed."--\_Swift's Poems\_, p. 335. "A studious scholar

deserve the approbation of his teacher."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 226.

"Perfect submission to the rules of a school indicate good

breeding."--\_Ib.\_, p. 37. "A comparison in which more than two is

concerned."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 114. "By the facilities which

artificial language afford them."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 16. "Now

thyself hath lost both lop and top."--SPENSER: \_Joh. Dict., w. Lop.\_ "Glad

tidings is brought to the poor."--\_Campbell's Gospels: Luke\_, vii, 23.

"Upon which, all that is pleasurable, or affecting in elocution, chiefly

depend."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 129. "No pains has been spared to

render this work complete."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram., Pref.\_, p. iv. "The

United States contains more than a twentieth part of the land of this

globe."--DE WITT CLINTON: \_Cobb's N. Amer. Reader\_, p. 173. "I am mindful

that myself is (or am) strong."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, § 500. "Myself \_is\_

(not \_am\_) weak; thyself \_is\_ (not \_art\_) weak."--\_Ib.\_, §479.

"How pale each worshipful and reverend guest

Rise from a clergy or a city feast!"--\_Pope\_, Sat. ii, l. 75.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--VERB BEFORE THE NOMINATIVE.

"Where was you born? In London."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 133. "There is

frequent occasions for commas."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 281. "There

necessarily follows from thence, these plain and unquestionable

consequences."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 191. "And to this impression

contribute the redoubled effort."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 112. "Or if

he was, was there no spiritual men then?"--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 86. "So

by these two also is signified their contrary principles."--\_Ib.\_, iii,

200. "In the motions made with the hands, consist the chief part of gesture

in speaking."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 336. "Dare he assume the name of a

popular magistrate?"--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 140. "There was no damages as

in England, and so Scott lost his wager."--\_Byron\_. "In fact there exists

such resemblances."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 64. "To him giveth all the

prophets witness."--\_Crewdson's Beacon\_, p. 79. "That there was so many

witnesses and actors."--\_Addison's Evidences\_, p. 37. "How does this man's

definitions stand affected?"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 136. "Whence comes

all the powers and prerogatives of rational beings?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 144. "Nor

does the Scriptures cited by thee prove thy intent."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i,

155. "Nor do the Scripture cited by thee prove the contrary."--\_Ib.\_, i,

211. "Why then cite thou a Scripture which is so plain and clear for

it?"--\_Ib.\_, i, 163. "But what saith the Scriptures as to respect of

persons among Christians?"--\_Ib.\_, i, 404. "But in the mind of man, while

in the savage state, there seems to be hardly any ideas but what enter by

the senses."--\_Robertson's America\_, i, 289. "What sounds have each of the

vowels?"--\_Griscom's Questions\_. "Out of this has grown up aristocracies,

monarchies, despotisms, tyrannies."--\_Brownson's Elwood\_, p. 222. "And

there was taken up, of fragments that remained to them, twelve baskets."--

\_Luke\_, ix, 17. "There seems to be but two general classes."--\_Day's

Gram.\_, p. 3. "Hence arises the six forms of expressing time."--\_Ib.\_, p.

37. "There seems to be no other words required."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, p.

28. "If there is two, the second increment is the syllable next the

last."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, 12th Ed., p. 281. "Hence arises the

following advantages."--\_Id., Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, 1849, p. 67.

"There is no data by which it can be estimated."--\_J. C. Calhoun's Speech\_,

March 4, 1850. "To this class belong the Chinese [language], in which we

have nothing but naked roots."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, p. 27.

"There was several other grotesque figures that presented themselves."--

\_Spect.\_, No. 173. "In these consist that sovereign good which ancient

sages so much extol."--\_Percival's Tales\_, ii, 221. "Here comes those I

have done good to against my will."--\_Shak., Shrew\_. "Where there is more

than one auxiliary."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 80.

"On me to cast those eyes where shine nobility."

--SIDNEY: \_Joh. Dict.\_

"Here's half-pence in plenty, for one you'll have twenty."

--\_Swift's Poems\_, p. 347.

"Ah, Jockey, ill advises thou, I wis,

To think of songs at such a time as this."

--\_Churchill\_, p. 18.

UNDER NOTE I.--THE RELATIVE AND VERB.

"Thou who loves us, wilt protect us still."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 67.

"To use that endearing language, Our Father, who is in heaven"--\_Bates's

Doctrines\_, p. 103. "Resembling the passions that produceth these

actions."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 157. "Except \_dwarf, grief, hoof,

muff\_, &c. which takes \_s\_ to make the plural."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 19. "As

the cattle that goeth before me and the children be able to endure."--

\_Gen.\_ xxxiii, 14 "Where is the man who dare affirm that such an action is

mad?"--\_Werter\_. "The ninth book of Livy affords one of the most beautiful

exemplifications of historical painting, that is any where to be met

with."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 360. "In some studies too, that relate to taste

and fine writing, which is our object," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 349. "Of those

affecting situations, which makes man's heart feel for man."--\_Ib.\_, p.

464. "We see very plainly, that it is neither Osmyn, nor Jane Shore, that

speak."--\_Ib.\_, p. 468. "It should assume that briskness and ease, which is

suited to the freedom of dialogue."--\_Ib.\_, p. 469. "Yet they grant, that

none ought to be admitted into the ministry, but such as is truly

pious."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 147. "This letter is one of the best that

has been written about Lord Byron."--\_Hunt's Byron\_, p. 119. "Thus, besides

what was sunk, the Athenians took above two hundred ships."--\_Goldsmith's

Greece\_, i, 102. "To have made and declared such orders as was

necessary."--\_Hutchinson's Hist.\_, i, 470. "The idea of such a collection

of men as make an army."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 217. "I'm not the first that

have been wretched."--\_Southern's In. Ad.\_, Act 2. "And the faint sparks of

it, which is in the angels, are concealed from our view."--\_Calvin's

Institutes\_, B. i, Ch. 11. "The subjects are of such a nature, as allow

room for much diversity of taste and sentiment."--\_Blair's Rhet., Pref.\_,

p. 5. "It is in order to propose examples of such perfection, as are not to

be found in the real examples of society."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p.

16. "I do not believe that he would amuse himself with such fooleries as

has been attributed to him."--\_Ib.\_, p. 218. "That shepherd, who first

taughtst the chosen seed."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 238. "With respect

to the vehemence and warmth which is allowed in popular eloquence."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 261. "Ambition is one of those passions that is never

to be satisfied."--\_Home's Art of Thinking\_, p. 36. "Thou wast he that

leddest out and broughtest in Israel."--\_2 Samuel\_, v, 2; and \_1 Chron.\_,

xi, 2. "Art thou the man of God that camest from Judah?"--\_1 Kings\_, xiii,

14.

"How beauty is excell'd by manly grace

And wisdom, which alone is truly fair."--\_Milton\_, B. iv, l. 490.

"What art thou, speak, that on designs unknown,

While others sleep, thus range the camp alone?"--\_Pope, Il.\_, x, 90.

UNDER NOTE II.--NOMINATIVE WITH ADJUNCTS.

"The literal sense of the words are, that the action had been done."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of Lang.\_, i, 65. "The rapidity of his movements were beyond

example."--\_Wells's Hist.\_, p. 161. "Murray's Grammar, together with his

Exercises and Key, have nearly superseded every thing else of the

kind."--EVAN'S REC.: \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, ii, 305. "The mechanism of

clocks and watches were totally unknown."--HUME: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

193. "The \_it\_, together with the verb \_to be\_, express states of

being."--\_Cobbett's Eng. Gram.\_, ¶ 190. "Hence it is, that the profuse

variety of objects in some natural landscapes, neither breed confusion nor

fatigue."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 266. "Such a clatter of sounds

indicate rage and ferocity."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 195. "One of the fields

make threescore square yards, and the other only fifty-five."--\_Duncan's

Logic\_, p. 8. "The happy effects of this fable is worth attending

to."--\_Bailey's Ovid\_, p. x. "Yet the glorious serenity of its parting rays

still linger with us."--\_Gould's Advocate\_. "Enough of its form and force

are retained to render them uneasy."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 261. "The

works of nature, in this respect, is extremely regular."--\_Dr. Pratt's

Werter\_. "No small addition of exotic and foreign words and phrases have

been made by commerce."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 10. "The dialect

of some nouns are taken notice of in the notes."--\_Milnes, Greek Gram.\_, p.

255. "It has been said, that a discovery of the full resources of the arts,

afford the means of debasement, or of perversion."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_,

p. xxvii. "By which means the Order of the Words are disturbed."--\_Holmes's

Rhet.\_, B. i, p. 57. "The twofold influence of these and the others require

the asserter to be in the plural form."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 251.

"And each of these afford employment."--\_Percival's Tales\_, Vol. ii, p.

175. "The pronunciation of the vowels are best explained under the rules

relative to the consonants."--\_Coar's Gram.\_, p. 7. "The judicial power of

these courts extend to all cases in law and equity."--\_Hall and Baker's

School Hist.\_, p. 286. "One of you have stolen my money."--\_Rational

Humorist\_, p. 45. "Such redundancy of epithets, instead of pleasing,

produce satiety and disgust."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 256. "It has been

alleged, that a compliance with the rules of Rhetoric, tend to cramp the

mind."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, 3d Ed., p. 187. "Each of these are presented to us

in different relations"--\_Hendrick's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 34. "The past

tense of these verbs, \_should, would, might, could\_, are very indefinite

with respect to time."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 33; 5th Ed., p.

31. "The power of the words, which are said to govern this mood, are

distinctly understood."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, Ed. of 1821, p. 33.

"And now, at length, the fated term of years

The world's desire have brought, and lo! the God appears."

--\_Dr. Lowth, on "the Genealogy of Christ."\_

"Variety of Numbers still belong

To the soft Melody of Ode or Song."

--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 170.

UNDER NOTE III.--COMPOSITE OR CONVERTED SUBJECTS.

"Many are the works of human industry, which to begin and finish are hardly

granted to the same man."--\_Johnson, Adv. to Dict.\_ "To lay down rules for

these are as inefficacious."--\_Dr. Pratt's Werter\_, p. 19. "To profess

regard, and to act \_differently\_, discover a base mind."--\_Murray's Key\_,

ii, p. 206. See also \_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, 82 and 112; \_Lennie's\_, 58. "To

magnify to the height of wonder things great, new, and admirable, extremely

please the mind of man."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 152. "In this passage,

\_according as\_ are used in a manner which is very common."--\_Webster's

Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 183. "A \_cause de\_ are called a preposition; \_a

cause que\_, a conjunction."--DR. WEBSTER: \_Knickerbocker\_, 1836. "To these

are given to speak in the name of the Lord."--\_The Friend\_, vii, 256.

"While \_wheat\_ has no plural, \_oats\_ have seldom any singular."--\_Cobbett's

E. Gram.\_ ¶ 41. "He cannot assert that \_ll\_ are inserted in \_fullness\_ to

denote the sound of \_u\_."--\_Cobb's Review of Webster\_, p. 11. "\_ch\_ have

the power of \_k\_."--\_Gould's Adam's Gram.\_, p. 2. "\_ti\_, before a vowel,

and unaccented, have the sound of \_si\_ or \_ci\_."--\_Ibid.\_ "In words derived

from the French, as \_chagrin, chicanery\_, and \_chaise, ch\_ are sounded like

\_sh\_."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 10. "But in the word \_schism, schismatic\_, &c.,

the \_ch\_ are silent."--\_Ibid.\_ "\_Ph\_ are always sounded like \_f\_, at the

beginning of words."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_ "\_Ph\_ have the sound of \_f\_ as in

\_philosophy\_."--\_Webster's El. Spelling-Book\_, p. 11. "\_Sh\_ have one sound

only as in \_shall\_."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Th\_ have two sounds."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Sc\_ have the

sound of \_sk\_, before \_a, o, u\_, and \_r\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Aw, have the sound of

\_a\_ in hall."--\_Bolles's Spelling-Book\_, p. vi. "Ew, sound like

\_u\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Ow, when both sounded, have the sound of \_ou\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Ui,

when both pronounced in one syllable sound like \_wi\_ in \_languid\_."--\_Ib.\_

"\_Ui\_ three several Sorts of Sound express,

As \_Guile, rebuild, Bruise\_ and \_Recruit\_ confess."

--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 34.

UNDER NOTE IV.--EACH, ONE, EITHER, AND NEITHER.

"When each of the letters which compose this word, have been

learned."--\_Dr. Weeks, on Orthog.\_, p. 22. "As neither of us deny that both

Homer and Virgil have great beauties."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 21. "Yet

neither of them are remarkable for precision."--\_Ib.\_, p. 95. "How far each

of the three great epic poets have distinguished themselves."--\_Ib.\_, p.

427. "Each of these produce a separate agreeable sensation."--\_Ib.\_, p. 48.

"On the Lord's day every one of us Christians keep the sabbath."--\_Tr. of

Irenæus\_. "And each of them bear the image of purity and holiness."--\_Hope

of Israel\_, p. 81. "Were either of these meetings ever acknowledged or

recognized?"--\_Foster's Report\_, i, 96. "Whilst neither of these letters

exist in the Eugubian inscription."--\_Knight, on Greek Alph.\_, p. 122. "And

neither of them are properly termed indefinite."--\_Wilson's Essay on

Gram.\_, p. 88. "As likewise of the several subjects, which have in effect

each their verb."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 120. "Sometimes when the word ends

in \_s\_, neither of the signs are used."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 21.

"And as neither of these manners offend the ear."--\_Walker's Dict., Pref.\_,

p. 5. "Neither of these two Tenses are confined to this signification

only."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 339. "But neither of these circumstances

are intended here."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, ii, 237. "So that all are

indebted to each, and each are dependent upon all."--\_Am. Bible Society's

Rep.\_, 1838, p. 89. "And yet neither of them express any more action in

this case than they did in the other."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 201. "Each

of these expressions denote action."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 74. "Neither of

these moods seem to be defined by distinct boundaries."--\_Butler's

Practical Gram.\_, p. 66. "Neither of these solutions are correct."--

\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, p. 236. "Neither bear any sign of case at

all."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, §217.

"Each in their turn like Banquo's monarchs stalk."--\_Byron\_.

"And tell what each of them by th'other lose."--\_Shak., Cori.\_, iii, 2.

UNDER NOTE V.--VERB BETWEEN TWO NOMINATIVES.

"The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love."--\_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p.

156; \_Alexander's\_, 49; \_Gould's\_, 159; \_Bullions's\_, 206. "Two dots, one

placed above the other, is called \_Sheva\_."--\_Dr. Wilson's Heb. Gram.\_, p.

43. "A few centuries, more or less, is a matter of small

consequence."--\_Ib.\_ p. 31. "Pictures were the first step towards the art

of writing. Hieroglyphicks was the second step."--\_Parker's English

Composition\_, p. 27. "The comeliness of youth are modesty and frankness; of

age, condescension and dignity."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 166. "Merit and

good works is the end of man's motion."--\_Lord Bacon\_. "Divers

philosophers hold that the lips is parcel of the mind."--\_Shakspeare\_. "The

clothing of the natives were the skins of wild beasts."--\_Indian Wars\_, p.

92. "Prepossessions in favor of our nativ town, is not a matter of

surprise."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 217. "Two shillings and six pence is

half a crown, but not a half crown."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 150;

\_Bicknell's\_, ii, 53. "Two vowels, pronounced by a single impulse of the

voice, and uniting in one sound, is called a dipthong."--\_Cooper's Pl. and

Pr. Gram.\_, p. 1. "Two or more sentences united together is called a

Compound Sentence."--\_P. E. Day's District School Gram.\_, p. 10. "Two or

more words rightly put together, but not completing an entire proposition,

is called a Phrase."--\_Ibid.\_ "But the common Number of Times are

five."--\_The British Grammar\_, p. 122. "Technical terms, injudiciously

introduced, is another source of darkness in composition."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 107. "The United States is the great middle division of North

America."--\_Morse's Geog.\_, p. 44. "A great cause of the low state of

industry were the restraints put upon it."--HUME: \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 145;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 172; \_Sanborn's\_, 192; \_Smith's\_, 123; and others. "Here two

tall ships becomes the victor's prey."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. ii, l. 1098.

"The expenses incident to an outfit is surely no object."--\_The Friend\_,

Vol. iii., p. 200.

"Perhaps their loves, or else their sheep,

Was all that did their silly thoughts so busy keep."--\_Milton\_.

UNDER NOTE VI.--CHANGE THE NOMINATIVE.

"Much pains has been taken to explain all the kinds of words."--\_Infant

School Gram.\_ p. 128. "Not less [\_time\_] than three years are spent in

attaining this faculty."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 28. "Where this night are

met in state Many a friend to gratulate His wish'd presence."--\_Milton's

Comus\_. l. 948. "Peace! my darling, here's no danger, Here's no oxen near

thy bed."--\_Watts.\_ "But every one of these are mere conjectures, and some

of them very unhappy ones."--\_Coleridge's Introduction\_, p. 61. "The old

theorists, calling the Interrogatives and Repliers, \_adverbs\_, is only a

part of their regular system of naming words."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p.

374. "Where a series of sentences occur, place them in the order in which

the facts occur."--\_Ib.\_, p. 264. "And that the whole in conjunction make a

regular chain of causes and effects."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 275. "The

origin of the Grecian, and Roman republics, though equally involved in the

obscurities and uncertainties of fabulous events, present one remarkable

distinction."--\_Adam's Rhet.\_, i, 95. "In these respects, mankind is left

by nature an unformed, unfinished creature."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 144.

"The scripture are the oracles of God himself."--HOOKER: \_Joh. Dict., w.

Oracle\_. "And at our gates are all manner of pleasant fruits."--\_Solomon's

Song\_, vii, 13. "The preterit of \_pluck, look\_, and \_toss\_ are, in speech,

pronounced \_pluckt, lookt, tosst\_."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 1850, §68.

"Severe the doom that length of days impose,

To stand sad witness of unnumber'd woes!"--\_Melmoth\_.

UNDER NOTE VII.--ADAPT FORM TO STYLE.

1. \_Forms not proper for the Common or Familiar Style\_.

"Was it thou that buildedst that house?"--\_Inst.\_, p. 151. "That boy

writeth very elegantly."--\_Ib.\_ "Couldest not thou write without blotting

thy book?"--\_Ib.\_ "Thinkest thou not it will rain to-day?"--\_Ib.\_ "Doth not

your cousin intend to visit you?"--\_Ib.\_ "That boy hath torn my

book."--\_Ib.\_ "Was it thou that spreadest the hay?"--\_Ib.\_ "Was it James,

or thou, that didst let him in?"--\_Ib.\_ "He dareth not say a word."--\_Ib.\_

"Thou stoodest in my way and hinderedst me."--\_Ib.\_

"Whom see I?--Whom seest thou now?--Whom sees he?--Whom lovest thou

most?--What dost thou to-day?--What person seest thou teaching that

boy?--He hath two new knives.--Which road takest thou?--What child teaches

he?"--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 66. "Thou, who makest my shoes, sellest many

more."--\_Ib.\_, p. 67.

"The English language hath been much cultivated during the last two hundred

years. It hath been considerably polished and refined."--\_Lowth's Gram.,

Pref.\_, p. iii. "This \_stile\_ is ostentatious, and doth not suit grave

writing."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 82. "But custom hath now appropriated

\_who\_ to persons, and \_which\_ to things."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97. "The indicative

mood sheweth or declareth; as, \_Ego amo\_, I love: or else asketh a

question; as, \_Amas tu\_? Dost thou love?"--\_Paul's Accidence\_, Ed. of 1793,

p. 16. "Though thou canst not do much for the cause, thou mayst and

shouldst do something."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 143. "The support of so many

of his relations, was a heavy task; but thou knowest he paid it

cheerfully."--\_Murray's Key\_, R. 1, p. 180. "It may, and often doth, come

short of it."--\_Campbell's Rhetoric\_, p. 160.

"'Twas thou, who, while thou seem'dst to chide,

To give me all thy pittance tried."--\_Mitford's Blanch\_, p. 78.

2. \_Forms not proper for the Solemn or Biblical Style\_.

"The Lord has prepaid his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom rules over

all."--See \_Key\_. "Thou answer'd them, O Lord our God: thou was a God that

forgave them, though thou took vengeance of their inventions."--See \_Key\_.

"Then thou spoke in vision to thy Holy One, and said, I have laid help upon

one that is mighty."--See \_Key\_. "So then, it is not of him that wills, nor

of him that rules, but of God that shows mercy; who dispenses his

blessings, whether temporal or spiritual, as seems good in his sight."--See

\_Key\_.

"Thou, the mean while, was blending with my thought;

Yea, with my life, and life's own secret joy."--\_Coleridge\_.

UNDER NOTE VIII.--EXPRESS THE NOMINATIVE.

"Who is here so base, that would be a bondman?"--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_,

p. 249. "Who is here so rude, that would not be a Roman?"--\_Ib.\_ "There is

not a sparrow falls to the ground without his notice."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 300. "In order to adjust them so, as shall consist equally with the

perspicuity and the strength of the period."--\_Ib.\_, p. 324; \_Blair's

Rhet.\_, 118. "But, sometimes, there is a verb comest in."--\_Cobbett's

English Gram.\_, ¶248. "Mr. Prince has a genius would prompt him to better

things."--\_Spectator\_, No. 466. "It is this removes that impenetrable

mist."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 362. "By the praise is given him for his

courage."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 214. "There is no man would be more

welcome here."--\_Steele, Spect.\_, No. 544. "Between an antecedent and a

consequent, or what goes before, and immediately follows."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 141. "And as connected with what goes before and follows."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 354. "There is no man doth a wrong for the wrong's sake."--\_Lord

Bacon\_. "All the various miseries of life, which people bring upon

themselves by negligence and folly, and might have been avoided by proper

care, are instances of this."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 108. "Ancient

philosophers have taught many things in favour of morality, so far at least

as respect justice and goodness towards our fellow-creatures."--\_Gospel its

own Witness\_, p. 56. "Indeed, if there be any such, have been, or appear to

be of us, as suppose, there is not a wise man among us all, nor an honest

man, that is able to judge betwixt his brethren; we shall not covet to

meddle in their matter."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 504. "There were that drew

back; there were that made shipwreck of faith: yea, there were that brought

in damnable heresies."--\_Ib.\_, i, 466. "The nature of the cause rendered

this plan altogether proper, and in similar situations is fit to be

imitated."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 274. "This is an idiom to which our

language is strongly inclined, and was formerly very prevalent."--

\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 150. "His roots are wrapped about the heap, and

seeth the place of stones."--\_Job\_, viii, 17.

"New York, Fifthmonth 3d, 1823.

"Dear friend, Am sorry to hear of thy loss; but hope it may be

retrieved. Should be happy to render thee any assistance in my power.

Shall call to see thee to-morrow morning. Accept assurances of my

regard. A. B."

"New York, May 3d, P. M., 1823.

"Dear Sir, Have just received the kind note favoured me with this

morning; and cannot forbear to express my gratitude to you. On further

information, find have not lost so much as at first supposed; and

believe shall still be able to meet all my engagements. Should,

however, be happy to see you. Accept, dear sir, my most cordial thanks.

C. D."--See \_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 151.

"Will martial flames forever fire thy mind,

And never, never be to Heaven resign'd?"--\_Pope, Odys.\_, xii, 145.

UNDER NOTE IX.--APPLICATION OF MOODS.

\_First Clause of the Note.--For the Subjunctive Present.\_

"He will not be pardoned, unless he repents."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p.

191.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_repents\_, which is here used to

express a future contingency, is in the indicative mood. But, according to

the first clause of Note 9th to Rule 14th, "A future contingency is best

expressed by a verb in the subjunctive present." Therefore, \_repents\_

should be \_repent\_; thus, "He will not be pardoned, unless he \_repent\_."]

"If thou findest any kernelwort in this marshy meadow, bring it to

me."--\_Neef's Method of Teaching\_, p. 258. "If thou leavest the room, do

not forget to shut that drawer."--\_Ib.\_, p. 246. "If thou graspest it

stoutly, thou wilt not be hurt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196. "On condition that he

comes, I will consent to stay."--\_Murray's Exerc.\_, p. 74. "If he is but

discreet, he will succeed."--\_Inst.\_, p. 191. "Take heed that thou speakest

not to Jacob."--\_Ib.\_ "If thou castest me off, I shall be miserable."--

\_Ib.\_ "Send them to me, if thou pleasest."--\_Ib.\_ "Watch the door of thy

lips, lest thou utterest folly."--\_Ib.\_ "Though a liar speaks the truth, he

will hardly be believed."--\_Common School Manual\_, ii, 124. "I will go

unless I should be ill."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 300. "If the word or words

understood are supplied, the true construction will be apparent."--

\_Murray's Exercises in Parsing\_, p. 21. "Unless thou shalt see the

propriety of the measure, we shall not desire thy support."--\_Murray's

Key\_, p. 209. "Unless thou shouldst make a timely retreat, the danger will

be unavoidable."--\_Ib.\_, p. 209. "We may live happily, though our

possessions are small."--\_Ib.\_, p. 202. "If they are carefully studied,

they will enable the student to parse all the exercises."--\_Ib., Note\_, p.

165. "If the accent is fairly preserved on the proper syllable, this

drawling sound will never be heard."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 242. "One phrase

may, in point of sense, be equivalent to another, though its grammatical

nature is essentially different."--\_Ib.\_, p. 108. "If any man obeyeth not

our word by this epistle, note that man."--\_Dr. Webster's Bible\_. "Thy

skill will be the greater, if thou hittest it."--\_Putnam's Analytical

Reader\_, p. 204. "Thy skill will be the greater if thou hit'st

it."--\_Cobb's N. A. Reader\_, p. 321. "We shall overtake him though he

should run."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 113; \_Murray's\_, 207; \_Smith's\_, 173.

"We shall be disgusted if he gives us too much."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 388.

"What is't to thee, if he neglect thy urn,

Or without spices lets thy body burn?"--DRYDEN: \_Joh. Dict., w. What.\_

\_Second Clause of Note IX.--For the Subjunctive Imperfect.\_

"And so would I, if I was he."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 191.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_was\_, which is here used to

express a mere supposition, with indefinite time, is in the indicative

mood. But, according to the second clause of Note 9th to Rule 14th, "A mere

supposition, with indefinite time, is best expressed by a verb in the

subjunctive imperfect." Therefore, \_was\_ should be \_were\_; thus, "And so

would I, if I \_were\_ he."]

"If I was a Greek, I should resist Turkish despotism."--\_Cardell's Elements

of Gram.\_, p. 80. "If he was to go, he would attend to your

business."--\_Ib.\_, p. 81. "If thou feltest as I do, we should soon

decide."--\_Inst.\_, p. 191. "Though thou sheddest thy blood in the cause, it

would but prove thee sincerely a fool."--\_Ib.\_ "If thou lovedst him, there

would be more evidence of it."--\_Ib.\_ "If thou couldst convince him, he

would not act accordingly."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 209. "If there was no

liberty, there would be no real crime."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 118.

"If the house was burnt down, the case would be the same."--\_Foster's

Report\_, i, 89. "As if the mind was not always in action, when it prefers

any thing!"--\_West, on Agency\_, p. 38. "Suppose I was to say, 'Light is a

body.'"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 78. "If either oxygen or azote was omitted,

life would be destroyed."--\_Gurney's Evidences\_, p. 155. "The verb \_dare\_

is sometimes used as if it was an auxiliary."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 132.

"A certain lady, whom I could name, if it was necessary."--\_Spectator\_, No.

536. "If the \_e\_ was dropped, \_c\_ and \_g\_ would assume their hard

sounds."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 10. "He would no more comprehend it, than

if it was the speech of a Hottentot."--\_Neef's Sketch\_, p. 112. "If thou

knewest the gift of God," &c.--\_John\_, iv, 10. "I wish I was at home."--\_O.

B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 260. "Fact alone does not constitute right; if it

does, general warrants were lawful."--\_Junius\_, Let. xliv, p. 205. "Thou

look'st upon thy boy as though thou guessest it."--\_Putnam's Analytical

Reader\_, p. 202. "Thou look'st upon thy boy as though thou guessedst

it."--\_Cobb's N. A. Reader\_, p. 320. "He fought as if he had contended for

life."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 92. "He fought as if he had been contending for

his life."--\_Ib.\_, 92.

"The dewdrop glistens on thy leaf,

As if thou seem'st to shed a tear;

As if thou knew'st my tale of grief,

Felt all my sufferings severe."--\_Alex. Letham\_.

\_Last Clause of Note IX.--For the Indicative Mood.\_

"If he know the way, he does not need a guide."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p.

191.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_know\_, which is used to express a

conditional circumstance assumed as a fact, is in the subjunctive mood.

But, according to the last clause of Note 9th to Rule 14th, "A conditional

circumstance assumed as a fact, requires the indicative mood." Therefore,

\_know\_ should be \_knows\_; thus, "If he \_knows\_ the way, he does not need a

guide."]

"And if there be no difference, one of them must be superfluous, and ought

to be rejected."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 149. "I cannot say that I admire

this construction, though it be much used."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 172.

"We are disappointed, if the verb do not immediately follow it."--\_Ib.\_, p.

177. "If it were they who acted so ungratefully, they are doubly in

fault."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 223. "If art become apparent, it disgusts

the reader."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 80. "Though perspicuity be more

properly a rhetorical than a grammatical quality, I thought it better to

include it in this book."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 238. "Although the

efficient cause be obscure, the final cause of those sensations lies

open."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 29. "Although the barrenness of language, and

the want of words be doubtless one cause of the invention of

tropes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 135. "Though it enforce not its instructions, yet it

furnishes us with a greater variety."--\_Ib.\_, p. 353. "In other cases,

though the idea be one, the words remain quite separate"--\_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 140. "Though the Form of our language be more simple, and has

that peculiar Beauty."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. v. "Human works are of no

significancy till they be completed."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 245. "Our

disgust lessens gradually till it vanish altogether."--\_Ib.\_, i, 338. "And

our relish improves by use, till it arrive at perfection."--\_Ib.\_, i, 338.

"So long as he keep himself in his own proper element."--COKE: \_ib.\_, i,

233. "Whether this translation were ever published or not I am wholly

ignorant."--\_Sale's Koran\_, i, 13. "It is false to affirm, 'As it is day,

it is light,' unless it actually be day."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 246. "But

we may at midnight affirm, 'If it be day, it is light.'"--\_Ibid.\_ "If the

Bible be true, it is a volume of unspeakable interest."--\_Dickinson\_.

"Though he were a son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he

suffered."--\_Heb.\_, v, 8. "If David then call him Lord, how is he his

son?"--\_Matt.\_, xxii, 45.

"'Tis hard to say, if greater want of skill

Appear in writing or in judging ill."--\_Pope, Ess. on Crit.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--FALSE SUBJUNCTIVES.

"If a man have built a house, the house is his."--\_Wayland's Moral

Science\_, p. 286.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_have built\_, which extends the

subjunctive mood into the perfect tense, has the appearance of disagreeing

with its nominative \_man\_. But, according to Note 10th to Rule 14th, "Every

such use or extension of the subjunctive mood, as the reader will be likely

to mistake for a discord between the verb and its nominative, ought to be

avoided as an impropriety." Therefore, \_have built\_ should be \_has built\_;

thus, "If a man \_has built\_ a house, the house is his."]

"If God have required them of him, as is the fact, he has time."--\_Ib.\_, p.

351. "Unless a previous understanding to the contrary have been had with

the Principal."--\_Berrian's Circular\_, p. 5. "O if thou have Hid them in

some flowery cave."--\_Milton's Comus\_, l. 239. "O if Jove's will Have

linked that amorous power to thy soft lay."--\_Milton, Sonnet\_ 1.

"SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: If thou love, If thou loved, If thou have loved, If thou

had loved, If thou shall or will love, If thou shall or will have

loved."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 71; \_Cooper's Murray\_, 58; \_D.

Adams's Gram.\_, 48; and others. "Till religion, the pilot of the soul, have

lent thee her unfathomable coil."--\_Tupper's Thoughts\_, p. 170. "Whether

nature or art contribute most to form an orator, is a trifling

inquiry."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 338. "Year after year steals something from

us; till the decaying fabric totter of itself, and crumble at length into

dust."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 225. "If spiritual pride have not entirely

vanquished humility."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 184. "Whether he have gored a

son, or have gored a daughter."--\_Exodus\_, xxi, 31. "It is doubtful whether

the object introduced by way of simile, relate to what goes before, or to

what follows."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 45.

"And bridle in thy headlong wave,

Till thou our summons answer'd have."--\_Milt., Comus\_, l. 887.

RULE XV.--FINITE VERBS.

When the nominative is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality,

the Verb must agree with it in the plural number: as, "The \_council were

divided\_."--"The \_college\_ of cardinals \_are\_ the electors of the

pope."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 176. "Quintus Curtius relates, that a \_number\_

of them \_were drowned\_ in the river Lycus."--\_Home's Art of Thinking\_, p.

125.

"Yon \_host come\_ learn'd in academic rules."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, vii, 401.

"While heaven's high \_host\_ on hallelujahs \_live\_."

--\_Young's N. Th.\_, iv, 378.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XV.

OBS. 1.--To this rule there are \_no exceptions\_; because, the collective

noun being a name which even in the singular number "signifies \_many\_," the

verb which agrees with it, can never properly be singular, unless the

collection be taken literally as one aggregate, and not as "conveying the

idea of plurality." Thus, the collective noun singular being in general

susceptible of two senses, and consequently admitting two modes of concord,

the form of the verb, whether singular or plural, becomes the principal

index to the particular sense in which the nominative is taken. After such

a noun, we can use either a singular verb, agreeing with it literally,

strictly, formally, according to Rule 14th; as, "The whole \_number\_ WAS two

thousand and six hundred;" or a plural one, agreeing with it figuratively,

virtually, ideally, according to Rule 15th; as, "The whole \_number\_ WERE

two thousand and six hundred."--\_2 Chron.\_, xxvi, 12. So, when the

collective noun is an antecedent, the relative having in itself no

distinction of the numbers, its verb becomes the index to the sense of all

three; as, "Wherefore lift up thy prayer for the \_remnant that\_ IS

\_left.\_"--\_Isaiah\_, xxxvii, 4. "Wherefore lift up thy prayer for the

\_remnant that\_ ARE \_left\_."--\_2 Kings\_, xix, 4. Ordinarily the word

\_remnant\_ conveys no idea of plurality; but, it being here applied to

persons, and having a meaning to which the mere singular neuter noun is not

well adapted, the latter construction is preferable to the former. The

Greek version varies more in the two places here cited; being plural in

Isaiah, and singular in Kings. The Latin Vulgate, in both, is, "\_pro

reliquiis quæ repertæ sunt\_:" i.e., "for the \_remains\_, or \_remnants\_, that

are found."

OBS. 2.--Dr. Adam's rule is this: "A collective noun may be joined with a

verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, \_Multitudo stat\_,

or \_stant\_; the multitude stands, or stand."--\_Latin and English Gram.\_ To

this doctrine, Lowth, Murray, and others, add: "Yet not without regard to

the \_import of the word\_, as conveying \_unity or plurality of

idea\_."--\_Lowth\_, p. 74; \_Murray\_, 152. If these latter authors mean, that

collective nouns are permanently divided in import, so that some are

invariably determined to the idea of unity, and others to that of

plurality, they are wrong in principle; for, as Dr. Adam remarks, "A

collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many

considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, it signifies

many separately, or as individuals."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 154. And if this

alone is what their addition means, it is entirely useless; and so, for all

the purposes of parsing, is the singular half of the rule itself. Kirkham

divides this rule into two, one for "unity of idea," and the other for

"plurality of idea," shows how each is to be applied in parsing, according

to his "\_systematick order\_;" and then, turning round with a gallant tilt

at his own work, condemns both, as idle fabrications, which it were better

to reject than to retain; alleging that, "The existence of such a thing as

'unity or plurality of idea,' as applicable to nouns of this class, is

\_doubtful\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 59.[394] How then shall a plural verb

or pronoun, after a collective noun, be parsed, seeing it does not agree

with the noun by the ordinary rule of agreement? Will any one say, that

every such construction is \_bad English\_? If this cannot be maintained,

rules eleventh and fifteenth of this series are necessary. But when the

noun conveys the idea of unity or takes the plural form, the verb or

pronoun has no other than a literal agreement by the common rule; as,

"A \_priesthood\_, such \_as\_ Baal's \_was\_ of old,

A \_people\_, such \_as\_ never \_was\_ till now."--\_Cowper\_.

OBS. 3.--Of the construction of the verb and collective noun, a late

British author gives the following account: "Collective nouns are

substantives \_which\_ signify \_many in the singular number\_. Collective

nouns are of two sorts: 1. Those which cannot become plural like other

substantives; as, nobility, mankind, &c. 2. Those which can be made plural

by the usual rules for a substantive; as, 'A multitude, multitudes; a

crowd, crowds;' &c. Substantives which imply plurality in the singular

number, and consequently have no other plural, generally require a plural

verb. They are cattle, cavalry, clergy, commonalty, gentry, laity, mankind,

nobility, peasantry people, populace, public, rabble, &c. [;] as, 'The

public \_are\_ informed.' Collective nouns which form a regular plural, such

as, number, numbers; multitude, multitudes; have, like all other

substantives, a singular verb, when they are in the singular number; and a

plural verb, when they are in the plural number; as, 'A number of people

\_is\_ assembled; Numbers \_are\_ assembled.'--'The fleet \_was\_ dispersed; a

\_part\_ of it \_was\_ injured; the several \_parts are\_ now collected.'"--

\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 120. To this, his main text, the author appends a

note, from which the following passages are extracted: "There are few

persons acquainted with Grammar, who may not have noticed, in many authors

as well as speakers, an irregularity in supposing collective nouns to have,

at one time, a singular meaning, and consequently to require a singular

verb; and, at an other time, to have a plural meaning, and therefore to

require a plural verb. This irregularity appears to have arisen from the

want of a clear idea of the nature of a collective noun. This defect the

author has endeavoured to supply; and, upon his definition, he has founded

the two rules above. It is allowed on all sides that, hitherto, no

satisfactory rules have been produced to enable the pupil to ascertain,

with any degree of certainty, when a collective noun should have a singular

verb, and when a plural one. A rule that simply tells its examiner, that

when a collective noun in the nominative case conveys the idea of unity,

its verb should be singular; and when it implies plurality, its verb should

be plural, is of very little value; for such a rule will prove the \_pupil's

being in the right\_, whether he \_should\_ put the verb in the singular or

the plural."--\_Ibid.\_

OBS. 4.--The foregoing explanation has many faults; and whoever trusts to

it, or to any thing like it, will certainly be very much misled. In the

first place, it is remarkable that an author who could suspect in others

"the \_want of a clear idea\_ of the nature of a collective noun," should

have hoped to supply the defect by a definition so ambiguous and

ill-written as is the one above. Secondly, his subdivision of this class of

nouns into two sorts, is both baseless and nugatory; for that plurality

which has reference to the individuals of an assemblage, has no manner of

connexion or affinity with that which refers to more than one such

aggregate; nor is there any interference of the one with the other, or any

ground at all for supposing that the absence of the latter is, has been, or

ought to be, the occasion for adopting the former. Hence, thirdly, his two

rules, (though, so far as they go, they seem not untrue in themselves,) by

their limitation under this false division, exclude and deny the true

construction of the verb with the greater part of our collective nouns.

For, fourthly, the first of these rules rashly presumes that any collective

noun which in the singular number implies a plurality of individuals, is

consequently destitute of any other plural; and the second accordingly

supposes that no such nouns as, council, committee, jury, meeting, society,

assembly, court, college, company, army, host, band, retinue, train,

multitude, number, part, half, portion, majority, minority, remainder, set,

sort, kind, class, nation, tribe, family, race, and a hundred more, can

ever be properly used with a plural verb, except when they assume the

plural form. To prove the falsity of this supposition, is needless. And,

finally, the objection which this author advances against the common rules,

is very far from proving them useless, or not greatly preferable to his

own. If they do not in every instance enable the student to ascertain with

certainty which form of concord he ought to prefer, it is only because no

rules can possibly tell a man precisely when he ought to entertain the idea

of unity, and when that of plurality. In some instances, these ideas are

unavoidably mixed or associated, so that it is of little or no consequence

which form of the verb we prefer; as, "Behold, the \_people\_ IS \_one\_, and

\_they have all\_ one language."--\_Gen.\_, xi, 6.

"Well, if a king's a lion, at the least

The \_people\_ ARE a many-headed \_beast\_."--\_Pope\_, Epist. i, l. 120.

OBS. 5.--Lindley Murray says, "On many occasions, \_where\_ a noun of

multitude is used, it is very difficult to decide, whether the verb should

be in the singular, or in the plural number; and this difficulty has

induced some grammarians to cut the knot at once, and to assert that every

noun of multitude must always be considered as conveying the idea of

unity."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 153. What these occasions, or who these

grammarians, are, I know not; but it is certain that the difficulty here

imagined does not concern the application of such rules as require the verb

and pronoun to conform to the sense intended; and, where there is no

apparent impropriety in adopting either number, there is no occasion to

raise a scruple as to which is right. To cut knots by dogmatism, and to tie

them by sophistry, are employments equally vain. It cannot be denied that

there are in every multitude both a unity and a plurality, one or the other

of which must be preferred as the principle of concord for the verb or the

pronoun, or for both. Nor is the number of nouns small, or their use

unfrequent, which, according to our best authors, admit of either

construction: though Kirkham assails and repudiates \_his own rules\_,

because, "Their application is quite limited."--\_Grammar in Familiar

Lectures\_, p. 59.

OBS. 6.--Murray's doctrine seems to be, not that collective nouns are

generally susceptible of two senses in respect to number, but that some

naturally convey the idea of unity, others, that of plurality, and a few,

either of these senses. The last, which are probably ten times more

numerous than all the rest, he somehow merges or forgets, so as to speak of

\_two classes\_ only: saying, "Some nouns of multitude certainly convey to

the mind an idea of plurality, others, that of a whole as one thing, and

others again, sometimes that of unity, and sometimes that of plurality. On

this ground, it is warrantable, and consistent with the nature of things,

to apply a plural verb and pronoun \_to the one class\_, and a singular verb

and pronoun \_to the other\_. We shall immediately perceive the \_impropriety\_

of the following constructions: 'The clergy \_has\_ withdrawn \_itself\_ from

the temporal courts;' 'The assembly \_was\_ divided in \_its\_ opinion;'

&c."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 153. The simple fact is, that \_clergy, assembly\_,

and perhaps every other collective noun, may sometimes convey the idea of

unity, and sometimes that of plurality; but an "\_opinion\_" or a voluntary

"\_withdrawing\_" is a \_personal\_ act or quality; \_wherefore\_ it is here more

consistent to adopt the plural sense and construction, in which alone we

take the collection as individuals, or persons.

OBS. 7.--Although a uniformity of number is generally preferable to

diversity, in the construction of words that refer to the same collective

noun: and although many grammarians deny that any departure from such

uniformity is allowable; yet, if the singular be put first, a plural

pronoun may sometimes follow without obvious impropriety: as, "So Judah

\_was\_ carried away out of \_their\_ land."--\_2 Kings\_, xxv, 21. "Israel is

reproved and threatened for \_their\_ impiety and idolatry."--\_Friends'

Bible, Hosea\_, x. "There \_is\_ the enemy \_who wait\_ to give us

battle."--\_Murray's Introductory Reader\_, p. 36. When the idea of plurality

predominates in the author's mind, a plural verb is sometimes used \_before\_

a collective noun that has the singular article \_an\_ or \_a\_; as, "There

\_are a sort\_ of authors, \_who seem\_ to take up with appearances."--

\_Addison\_. "Here \_are a number\_ of facts or incidents leading to the end in

view."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 296. "There \_are a great number\_ of

exceedingly good writers among the French."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 11.

"There in the forum \_swarm a numerous train\_,

The subject of debate a townsman slain."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. xviii, l. 578.

OBS. 8.--Collective nouns, when they are merely \_partitive\_ of the plural,

like the words \_sort\_ and \_number\_ above, are usually connected with a

plural verb, even though they have a singular definitive; as, "And \_this

sort of\_ adverbs commonly \_admit\_ of Comparison."--\_Buchanan's English

Syntax\_, p. 64. Here, perhaps, it would be better to say, "\_Adverbs of this

sort\_ commonly admit of comparison." "\_A part\_ of the exports \_consist\_ of

raw silk."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 100. This construction is

censured by Murray, in his octavo Gram., p. 148; where we are told, that

the verb should agree with the first noun only. Dr. Webster alludes to this

circumstance, in \_improving\_ his grammar, and admits that, "A part of the

exports \_consists\_, seems to be more correct."--\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 100.

Yet he retains his original text, and obviously thinks it a light thing,

that, "in some cases," his rules or examples "may not be vindicable." (See

Obs. 14th, 15th, and 16th, on Rule 14th, of this code.) It would, I think,

be better to say, "The exports consist \_partly\_ of raw silk." Again: "\_A

multitude\_ of Latin words \_have\_, of late, been poured in upon

us."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 94. Better, perhaps: "\_Latin words, in great

multitude\_, have, of late, been poured in upon us." So: "For \_the bulk\_ of

\_writers\_ are very apt to confound them with each other."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97.

Better: "For \_most writers\_ are very apt to confound them with each other."

In the following example, (here cited as \_Kames\_ has it, \_El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 247,) either the verb \_is\_, or the phrase, "\_There are some moveless

men\_" might as well have been used:

"There \_are a sort\_ of men, whose visages

Do cream and mantle like a standing pond."--\_Shak.\_

OBS. 9.--Collections of \_things\_ are much less frequently and less properly

regarded as individuals, or under the idea of plurality, than collections

of \_persons\_. This distinction may account for the difference of

construction in the two clauses of the following example; though I rather

doubt whether a plural verb ought to be used in the former: "The \_number\_

of commissioned \_officers\_ in the guards \_are\_ to the marching regiments as

one to eleven: the \_number\_ of \_regiments\_ given to the guards, compared

with those given to the line, \_is\_ about three to one."--\_Junius\_, p. 147.

Whenever the multitude is spoken of with reference to a personal act or

quality, the verb ought, as I before suggested, to be in the plural number;

as, "The public \_are informed\_."--"The plaintiff's counsel \_have assumed\_ a

difficult task."--"The committee \_were instructed\_ to prepare a

remonstrance." "The English nation \_declare\_ they are grossly injured by

\_their\_ representatives."--\_Junius\_, p. 147. "One particular class of men

\_are\_ permitted to call \_themselves\_ the King's friends."--\_Id.\_, p. 176.

"The Ministry \_have\_ realized the compendious ideas of Caligula."--\_Id.\_,

p. 177. It is in accordance with this principle, that the following

sentences have plural verbs and pronouns, though their definitives are

singular, and perhaps ought to be singular: "So depraved \_were that people\_

whom in their history we so much admire."--HUME: \_M'Ilvaine's Lect.\_, p.

400. "Oh, \_this people have sinned\_ a great sin, and have made them gods of

gold."--\_Exodus\_, xxxii, 31. "\_This people\_ thus gathered \_have\_ not wanted

those trials."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 460. The following examples, among

others, are censured by Priestley, Murray, and the copyists of the latter,

without sufficient discrimination, and for a reason which I think

fallacious; namely, "because the ideas they represent seem not to be

sufficiently divided in the mind:"--"The court of Rome \_were\_ not without

solicitude."--\_Hume\_. "The house of Lords \_were\_ so much influenced by

these reasons."--\_Id.\_ See \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 188; \_Murray's\_, 152;

\_R. C. Smith's\_, 129; \_Ingersoll's\_, 248; and others.

OBS. 10.--In general, a collective noun, unless it be made plural in form,

no more admits a plural adjective before it, than any other singular noun.

Hence the impropriety of putting \_these\_ or \_those\_ before \_kind\_ or

\_sort\_; as, "\_These kind\_ of knaves I know."--\_Shakspeare\_. Hence, too, I

infer that \_cattle\_ is not a collective noun, as Nixon would have it to be,

but an irregular plural which has no singular; because we can say \_these

cattle\_ or \_those cattle\_, but neither a bullock nor a herd is ever called

\_a cattle, this cattle\_, or \_that cattle\_. And if "\_cavalry, clergy,

commonalty\_," &c., were like this word, they would all be plurals also, and

not "substantives which imply plurality in the singular number, and

consequently have no other plural." Whence it appears, that the writer who

most broadly charges others with not understanding the nature of a

collective noun, has most of all misconceived it himself. If there are not

\_many clergies\_, it is because \_the clergy\_ is one body, with one Head, and

not because it is in a particular sense many. And, since the forms of words

are not necessarily confined to things that exist, who shall say that the

plural word \_clergies\_, as I have just used it, is not good English?

OBS. 11.--If we say, "\_these people\_," "\_these gentry\_," "\_these folk\_," we

make \_people, gentry\_, and \_folk\_, not only irregular plurals, but plurals

to which there are no correspondent singulars; but by these phrases, we

must mean certain individuals, and not more than one people, gentry, or

folk. But these names are sometimes collective nouns singular; and, as

such, they may have verbs of either number, according to the sense; and may

also form regular plurals, as \_peoples\_, and \_folks\_; though we seldom, if

ever, speak of \_gentries\_; and \_folks\_ is now often irregularly applied to

persons, as if one person were \_a folk\_. So \_troops\_ is sometimes

irregularly, if not improperly, put for \_soldiers\_, as if a soldier were \_a

troop\_; as, "While those gallant \_troops\_, by \_whom\_ every hazardous, every

laborious service is performed, are left to perish."--\_Junius\_, p. 147. In

Genesis, xxvii, 29th, we read, "Let \_people\_ serve thee, and nations bow

down to thee." But, according to the Vulgate, it ought to be, "Let

\_peoples\_ serve thee, and nations bow down to thee;" according to the

Septuagint, "Let \_nations\_ serve thee, and \_rulers\_ bow down to thee."

Among Murray's "instances of false syntax," we find the text, "This people

draweth near to me with their mouth," &c.--\_Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 49.

This is corrected in his Key, thus: "\_These\_ people \_draw\_ near to me with

their mouth."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 185. The Bible has it: "This people \_draw near

me\_ with their mouth."--\_Isaiah\_, xxix, 13. And again: "This people

\_draweth nigh unto\_ me with their mouth.,"--\_Matt.\_, xv, 8. Dr. Priestley

thought it ought to be, "This people \_draws\_ nigh unto me with their

\_mouths\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 63. The second evangelist omits some

words: "This people \_honoureth\_ me with their lips, but \_their heart\_ is

far from me."--\_Mark\_, vii, 6. In my opinion, the plural verb is here to be

preferred; because the pronoun \_their\_ is plural, and the worship spoken of

was a personal rather than a national act. Yet the adjective \_this\_ must be

retained, if the text specify the Jews as a people. As to the words \_mouth\_

and \_heart\_, they are to be understood figuratively of \_speech\_ and \_love\_;

and I agree not with Priestley, that the plural number must necessarily be

used. See Note 4th to Rule 4th.

OBS. 12.--In making an assertion concerning a number or quantity with some

indefinite excess or allowance, we seem sometimes to take for the subject

of the verb what is really the object of a preposition; as, "In a sermon,

there \_may be\_ from three to five, or six heads."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 313.

"In those of Germany, there \_are\_ from eight to twelve professors."--

\_Dwight, Lit. Convention\_, p. 138. "About a million and a half \_was

subscribed\_ in a few days."--\_N. Y. Daily Advertiser\_. "About one hundred

feet of the Muncy dam \_has been swept off\_."--\_N. Y. Observer\_. "Upwards of

one hundred thousand dollars \_have been appropriated\_."--\_Newspaper\_. "But

I fear there \_are\_ between twenty and thirty of them."--\_Tooke's

Diversions\_, ii, 441. "Besides which, there \_are\_ upwards of fifty smaller

islands."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 30. "On board of which \_embarked\_ upwards of

three hundred passengers."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, ii, 419. The propriety of

using \_above\_ or \_upwards of\_ for \_more than\_, is questionable, but the

practice is not uncommon. When there is a preposition before what seems at

first to be the subject of the verb, as in the foregoing instances, I

imagine there is an ellipsis of the word \_number, amount, sum\_ or

\_quantity\_; the first of which words is a collective noun and may have a

verb either singular or plural: as, "In a sermon, there may be \_any number\_

from three to five or six heads." This is awkward, to be sure; but what

does the Doctor's sentence \_mean\_, unless it is, that there \_may be an

optional number\_ of heads, varying from three to six?

OBS. 13.--Dr. Webster says, "When an aggregate amount is expressed by the

plural names of the particulars composing that amount, the verb may be in

the singular number; as, 'There \_was\_ more than a hundred and fifty

thousand pounds sterling.' \_Mavor's Voyages\_." To this he adds, "However

repugnant to the principles of grammar this may seem at first view, the

practice is correct; for the affirmation is not made of the individual

parts or divisions named, the \_pounds\_, but of the entire sum or

amount."--\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 146; \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 100. The fact

is, that the Doctor here, as in some other instances, deduces a false rule

from a correct usage. It is plain that either the word \_more\_, taken

substantively, or the noun to which it relates as an adjective, is the only

nominative to the verb \_was\_. Mavor does not affirm that there \_were\_ a

hundred and fitly thousand pounds; but that there \_was more\_--i.e., more

\_money\_ than so many pounds \_are\_, or \_amount to\_. Oliver B. Peirce, too.

falls into a multitude of strange errors respecting the nature of \_more

than\_, and the construction of other words that accompany these. See his

"Analytical Rules," and the manner in which he applies them, in "\_The

Grammar\_," p. 195 \_et seq.\_

OBS. 14.--Among certain educationists,--grammarians, arithmeticians,

schoolmasters, and others,--there has been of late not a little dispute

concerning the syntax of the phraseology which we use, or should use, in

expressing \_multiplication\_, or in speaking of \_abstract numbers\_. For

example: is it better to say, "Twice one \_is\_ two," or, "Twice one \_are\_

two?"--"Two times one \_is\_ two," or, "Two times one \_are\_ two?"--"Twice two

\_is\_ four," or, "Twice two \_are\_ four?"--"Thrice one \_is\_ or \_are\_,

three?"--"Three times one \_is\_, or \_are\_, three?"--"Three times naught

\_is\_, or \_are\_, naught?"--"Thrice three \_is\_, or \_are\_, nine?"--"Three

times four \_is\_, or \_are\_, twelve?"--"Seven times three \_make\_, or \_makes\_,

twenty-one?"--"Three times his age \_do\_ not, or \_does\_ not, equal

mine?"--"Three times the quantity \_is\_ not, or \_are\_ not,

sufficient?"--"Three quarters of the men were discharged; and three

quarters of the money \_was\_, or \_were\_, sent back?"--"As 2 \_is\_ to 4, so

\_is\_ 6 to 12;" or, "As two \_are\_ to four, so \_are\_ six to twelve?"

OBS. 15.--Most of the foregoing expressions, though all are perhaps

intelligible enough in common practice, are, in some respect, difficult of

analysis, or grammatical resolution. I think it possible, however, to frame

an argument of some plausibility in favour of every one of them. Yet it is

hardly to be supposed, that any \_teacher\_ will judge them all to be alike

justifiable, or feel no interest in the questions which have been raised

about them. That the language of arithmetic is often defective or

questionable in respect to grammar, may be seen not only in many an ill

choice between the foregoing variant and contrasted modes of expression,

but in sundry other examples, of a somewhat similar character, for which it

may be less easy to find advocates and published arguments. What critic

will not judge the following phraseology to be faulty? "4 times two units

\_is\_ 8 units, and 4 times 5 tens \_is\_ twenty tens."--\_Chase's Common School

Arithmetic\_, 1848, p. 42. Or this? "1 time 1 is l. 2 times 1 are 2; 1 time

4 is 4, 2 times 4 are 8."--\_Ray's Arithmetic\_, 1853. Or this? "8 and 7 \_is\_

15, 9's out leaves 6; 3 and 8 \_is\_ 11, 9's out leaves 2."--\_Babcock's

Practical Arithmetic\_, 1829, p. 22. Or this again? "3 times 3 \_is\_ 9, and 2

we had to carry \_is\_ 11."--\_Ib.\_, p. 20.

OBS. 16.--There are several different opinions as to what constitutes the

grammatical subject of the verb in any ordinary English expression of

multiplication. Besides this, we have some variety in the phraseology which

precedes the verb; so that it is by no means certain, either that the

multiplying terms are always of the same part of speech, or that the true

nominative to the verb is not essentially different in different examples.

Some absurdly teach, that an abstract number is necessarily expressed by

"\_a singular noun\_," with only a singular meaning; that such a number, when

multiplied, is always, of itself the subject of the assertion; and,

consequently, that the verb must be singular, as agreeing only with this

"singular noun." Others, not knowing how to parse separately the

multiplying word or words and the number multiplied, take them both or all

together as "the grammatical subject" with which the verb must agree. But,

among these latter expounders, there are two opposite opinions on the very

essential point, whether this "\_entire expression\_" requires a singular

verb or a plural one:--as, whether we ought to say, "Twice one \_is\_ two,"

or, "Twice one \_are\_ two;"--"Twice two \_is\_ four," or, "Twice two \_are\_

four;"--"Three times one \_is\_ three," or, "Three times one \_are\_

three;"--"Three times three \_is\_ nine," or, "Three times three \_are\_ nine."

Others, again, according to Dr. Bullions, and possibly according to their

own notion, find the grammatical subject, sometimes, if not generally, in

the multiplying term only; as, perhaps, is the case with those who write or

speak as follows: "If we say, 'Three times one \_are\_ three,' we make

'\_times\_' the subject of the verb."--\_Bullions, Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_,

1849, p. 39. "Thus, 2 times 1 \_are\_ 2; 2 times 2 \_are\_ four; 2 times 3

\_are\_ 6."--\_Chase's C. S. Arith.\_, p. 43. "Say, 2 times O \_are\_ O; 2 times

1 \_are\_ 2."--\_Robinson's American Arith.\_, 1825, p. 24.

OBS. 17.--Dr. Bullions, with a strange blunder of some sort in almost every

sentence, propounds and defends his opinion on this subject thus: "Numeral

\_adjectives\_, being \_also names\_ of numbers, are often used as nouns, and

so have the inflection and construction of nouns: thus, by \_twos\_, by

\_tens\_, by \_fifties\_. \_Two\_ is an even number. Twice \_two\_ is four. Four

\_is\_ equal to twice two. In some arithmetics the language employed in the

operation of multiplying--such as 'Twice two \_are\_ four, twice three \_are\_

six'--is incorrect. It should be, 'Twice two \_is\_ four,' &c.; for the word

\_two\_ is used as a singular noun--the name of a number. The adverb

'\_twice\_' is \_not in construction with it\_, and consequently does not make

it plural. The meaning is, 'The number two taken twice is equal to four.'

For the same reason we should say, 'Three times \_two\_ is six,' because the

meaning is, 'Two taken three times \_is\_ six.' If we say, 'Three times one

\_are\_ three,' we make '\_times\_' the subject of the verb, whereas the

subject of the verb really is '\_one\_,' and '\_times\_' is in the \_objective

of number\_ (§828). 2:4:: 6:12, should be read, 'As 2 \_is\_ to 4, so \_is\_ 6

to 12;' not 'As two \_are\_ to four, so \_are\_ six to twelve.' But when

numerals denoting more than one, are used as adjectives, with a substantive

expressed or understood, they must have a plural construction."--\_Bullions,

Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, 1849, p. 39.

OBS. 18.--Since nouns and adjectives are different parts of speech, the

suggestion, that, "Numeral \_adjectives\_ are \_also names\_, or \_nouns\_," is,

upon the very face of it, a flat absurdity; and the notion that "the name

of a number" above unity, conveys only and always the idea of unity, like

an ordinary "singular noun," is an other. A number in arithmetic is most

commonly an \_adjective\_ in grammar; and it is always, in form, an

expression that tells \_how many\_, or--"denotes \_how many things\_ are spoken

of."--\_Chase\_, p. 11. But the \_name\_ of a number is also a number, whenever

it is \_not made plural\_ in form. Thus \_four\_ is a number, but \_fours\_ is

not; so \_ten\_ is a number, but \_tens\_ is not. Arithmetical numbers, which

run on to infinity, severally \_consist\_ of a \_definite idea of how many\_;

each is a \_precise count\_ by the unit; \_one\_ being the beginning of the

series, and the measure of every successive step. Grammatical numbers are

only the verbal forms which distinguish one thing from more of the same

sort. Thus the word \_fours\_ or \_tens\_, unless some arithmetical number be

prefixed to it, signifies nothing but a mere plurality which repeats

indefinitely the collective idea of \_four\_ or \_ten\_.

OBS. 19.--All actual \_names\_ of numbers calculative, except \_one\_, (for

\_naught\_, though it fills a place among numbers, is, in itself, a mere

negation of number; and such terms as \_oneness, unity, duality\_, are not

used in calculation,) are \_collective nouns\_--a circumstance which seems to

make the discussion of the present topic appropriate to the location which

is here given it under Rule 15th. Each of them denotes a particular

aggregate \_of units\_. And if each, as signifying one whole, may convey the

idea of unity, and take a singular verb; each, again, as denoting so many

units, may quite as naturally take a plural verb, and be made to convey the

idea of plurality. For the mere abstractness of numbers, or their

separation from all "\_particular objects\_," by no means obliges us to limit

them always to the construction with verbs singular. If it is right to say,

"Two \_is\_ an even number;" it is certainly no error to say, "Two \_are\_ an

even number." If it is allowable to say, "As 2 \_is\_ to 4, so \_is\_ 6 to 12;"

it is as well, if not better, to say, "As two \_are\_ to four, so \_are\_ six

to twelve." If it is correct to say, "Four \_is\_ equal to twice two;" it is

quite as grammatical to say, "Four \_are\_ equal to twice two." Bullions bids

say, "Twice two \_is\_ four," and, "Three times two \_is\_ six;" but I very

much prefer to say, "Twice two \_are\_ four," and, "Three times two \_are\_

six." The Doctor's reasoning, whereby he condemns the latter phraseology,

is founded only upon false assumptions. This I expect to show; and

more--that the word which he prefers, is wrong.

OBS. 20.--As to what constitutes the subject of the verb in multiplication,

I have already noticed \_three different opinions\_. There are yet three or

four more, which must not be overlooked in a general examination of this

grammatical dispute. Dr. Bullions's notion on this point, is stated with so

little consistency, that one can hardly say what it is. At first, he seems

to find his nominative in the multiplicand, "used as a singular noun;" but,

when he ponders a little on the text, "\_Twice two is four\_," he finds the

leading term not to be the word "\_two\_," but the word "\_number\_,"

understood. He resolves, indeed, that no one of the four words used, "is in

construction with" any of the rest; for he thinks, "The meaning is, '\_The

number\_ two \_taken\_ twice is \_equal to\_ four.'" Here, then, is a \_fourth

opinion\_ in relation to the subject of the verb: it must be "\_number\_"

understood. Again, it is conceded by the same hand, that, "When numerals

denoting more than one, are used as adjectives, with a substantive

expressed or understood, they must have a plural construction." Now who can

show that this is not the case in general with the numerals of

multiplication? To explain the syntax of "\_Twice two are four\_," what can

be more rational than to say, "The sense is, 'Twice two \_units\_, or

\_things\_, are four?'" Is it not plain, that twice two things, of any sort,

are four things of that same sort, and only so? Twice two duads are how

many? Answer: \_Four duads\_, or \_eight units\_. Here, then, is a \_fifth

opinion\_,--and a very fair one too,--according to which we have for the

subject of the verb, not "\_two\_" nor "\_twice\_" nor "\_twice two\_," nor

"\_number\_," understood before "\_two\_," but the plural noun "\_units\_" or

"\_things"\_ implied in or after the multiplicand.

OBS. 21.--It is a doctrine taught by sundry grammarians, and to some extent

true, that a neuter verb between two nominatives "may agree with either of

them." (See Note 5th to Rule 14th, and the footnote.) When, therefore, a

person who knows this, meets with such examples as, "Twice one \_are\_

two;"--"Twice one unit \_are\_ two units;"--"Thrice one \_are\_ three;"--he

will of course be apt to refer the verb to the nominative which follows it,

rather than to that which precedes it; taking the meaning to be, "\_Two are\_

twice one;"--"\_Two units are\_ twice one unit;"--"\_Three are\_ thrice one."

Now, if such is the sense, the construction in each of these instances is

right, because it accords with such sense; the interpretation is right

also, because it is the only one adapted to such a construction; and we

have, concerning the subject of the verb, a \_sixth opinion\_,--a very proper

one too,--that it is found, not where it is most natural to look for it, in

the expression of the \_factors\_, but in a noun which is either uttered or

implied in the \_product\_. But, no doubt, it is better to avoid this

construction, by using such a verb as may be said to agree with the number

multiplied. Again, and lastly, there may be, touching all such cases as,

"Twice \_one are\_ two," a \_seventh opinion\_, that the subject of the verb is

the product taken \_substantively\_, and not as a numeral \_adjective\_. This

idea, or the more comprehensive one, that all abstract numbers are nouns

substantive, settles nothing concerning the main question, What form of the

verb is required by an abstract number above unity? If the number be

supposed an adjective, referring to the implied term \_units\_, or \_things\_,

the verb must of course be plural; but if it be called a \_collective noun\_,

the verb only follows and fixes "the idea of plurality," or "the idea of

unity," as the writer or speaker chooses to adopt the one or the other.

OBS. 22.--It is marvellous, that four or five monosyllables, uttered

together in a common simple sentence, could give rise to all this diversity

of opinion concerning the subject of the verb; but, after all, the chief

difficulty presented by the phraseology of multiplication, is that of

ascertaining, not "the grammatical subject of the verb," but the

grammatical relation between the multiplier and the multiplicand--the true

way of parsing the terms \_once, twice, three times\_, &c., but especially

the word \_times\_. That there must be some such relation, is obvious; but

what is it? and how is it to be known? To most persons, undoubtedly,

"\_Twice two\_," and, "\_Three times two\_," seem to be \_regular phrases\_, in

which the words cannot lack syntactical connexion; yet Dr. Bullions, who is

great authority with some thinkers, denies all immediate or direct relation

between the word "\_two\_," and the term before it, preferring to parse both

"\_twice\_" and "\_three times\_" as adjuncts to the participle "\_taken\_,"

understood. He says, "The adverb '\_twice\_' is not in construction with

'\_two\_,' and consequently does not make it plural." His first assertion

here is, in my opinion, untrue; and the second implies the very erroneous

doctrine, that the word \_twice\_, if it relate to a singular term, \_will

"make it plural\_." From a misconception like this, it probably is, that

some who ought to be very accurate in speech, are afraid to say, "Twice one

\_is\_ two," or, "Thrice one \_is\_ three," judging the singular verb to be

wrong; and some there are who think, that "\_usage\_ will not permit" a

careful scholar so to speak. Now, analysis favours the singular form here;

and it is contrary to a plain principle of General Grammar, to suppose that

a \_plural\_ verb can be demanded by any phrase which is made \_collectively\_

the subject of the assertion. (See Note 3d, and Obs. 13th, 14th, 15th, and

16th, under Rule 14th.) \_Are\_ is, therefore, \_not required here\_; and, if

allowable, it is so only on the supposition that the leading nominative is

put after it.

OBS. 23.--In Blanchard's small Arithmetic, published in 1854, the following

inculcations occur: "When we say, 3 times 4 trees are 12 trees, we have

reference to the \_objects\_ counted; but in saying 3 times 4 \_is\_ twelve, we

mean, that 3 times the \_number\_ 4, \_is the number\_ 12. Here we use 4 and

12, not as numeral \_adjectives\_, but as \_nouns\_, the \_names\_ of particular

\_numbers\_, and as such, each conveys the idea of \_unity\_, and \_the entire

expression\_ is the subject of \_is\_, and conveys the \_idea of unity\_."--P.

iv. Here we have, with an additional error concerning "the entire

expression," a repetition of Dr. Bullions's erroneous assumption, that the

name of a particular number, as being "a singular noun," must "convey the

idea of unity," though the number itself be a distinct plurality. These men

talk as if there were an absurdity in affirming that "the number 4" is

\_plural\_! But, if \_four\_ be taken as only one thing, how can \_three\_

multiply this one thing into \_twelve\_? It is by no means proper to affirm,

that, "\_Every\_ four, taken three times, \_is\_, or \_are\_, twelve;" for three

instances, or "\_times\_," of the \_figure\_ 4, or of the \_word four\_, are only

three 4's, or three verbal \_fours\_. And is it not \_because\_ "\_the number\_

4" \_is plural--is in itself four units\_--and because the word \_four\_, or

the figure 4, conveys explicitly the \_idea of this plurality\_, that the

multiplication table is true, where it says, "3 times 4 \_are\_ 12?" It is

not right to say, "Three times one quaternion is twelve;" nor is it quite

unobjectionable to say, with Blanchard "3 \_times the number\_ 4, \_is the

number\_ 12." Besides, this pretended interpretation explains nothing. The

syntax of the shorter text, "3 times 4 \_is\_ 12," is in no way justified or

illustrated by it. Who does not perceive that \_the four\_ here spoken of

must be four \_units\_, or four \_things\_ of some sort; and that no \_such\_

"four," multiplied by 3, or \_till\_ "3 \_times\_," can "convey the idea of

unity," or match a singular verb? Dr. Webster did not so conceive of this

"abstract number," or of "the entire expression" in which it is multiplied;

for he says, "Four times four \_amount\_ to sixteen."--\_American Dict., w.

Time.\_

OBS. 24.--In fact no phrase of multiplication is of such a nature that it

can, with any plausibility be reckoned a composite subject of the verb.

\_Once, twice\_, and \_thrice\_, are adverbs; and each of them may, in general,

be parsed as relating directly to the multiplicand. Their construction, as

well as that of the plural verb, is agreeable to the Latin norm; as, when

Cicero says of somebody, "Si, \_bis bina\_ quot \_essent\_, didicisset,"--"If

he had learned how many \_twice two are\_."--See \_Ainsworth's Dict., w.

Binus.\_ The phrases, "\_one time\_," for \_once\_, and "\_two times\_" for

\_twice\_, seem puerile expressions: they are not often used by competent

teachers. \_Thrice\_ is a good word, but more elegant than popular. Above

\_twice\_, we use the phrases, \_three times, four times\_, and the like, which

are severally composed of a numeral adjective and the noun \_times\_. If

these words were united, as some think they ought to be, the compounds

would be \_adverbs\_ of \_time repeated\_; as, \_threetimes, fourtimes\_, &c.,

analogous to \_sometimes\_. Each word would answer, as each phrase now does,

to the question, \_How often?\_ These expressions are taken by some as having

a direct adverbial relation to the terms which they qualify; but they are

perhaps most commonly explained as being dependent on some preposition

understood. See Obs. 1st on Rule 5th, and Obs. 6th on Rule 7th.

OBS. 25.--In multiplying one only, it is evidently best to use a singular

verb: as, "Twice \_naught\_ is naught;"--"Three times \_one is\_ three." And,

in multiplying any number above \_one\_, I judge a plural verb to be

necessary: as, "Twice \_two are\_ four;"--"Three times \_two are six\_;"

because this number must be just \_so many\_ in order to give the product.

Dr. Bullions says, "We should say, 'Three times two \_is\_ six,' because the

meaning is, 'Two \_taken\_ three times \_is\_ six.'" This is neither reasoning,

nor explanation, nor good grammar. The relation between "\_two\_" and

"\_three\_," or the syntax of the word "\_times\_," or the propriety of the

\_singular verb\_, is no more apparent in the latter expression than in the

former. It would be better logic to affirm, "We should say, 'Three times

two \_are\_ six;' because the meaning is, 'Two (\_units\_), taken \_for, to\_, or

\_till\_ three times, are six.'" The preposition \_till\_, or \_until\_, is

sometimes found in use before an expression of \_times numbered\_; as, "How

oft shall I forgive? \_till\_ seven times? I say not unto thee, \_Until\_ seven

times; but, \_Until\_ seventy times seven."--\_Matt.\_, xviii, 21. But here is

still a difficulty with repect to the \_multiplying\_ term, or the word

"\_times\_." For, unless, by an unallowable ellipsis, "\_seventy times

seven\_," is presumed to mean, "seventy times \_of\_ seven," the preposition

\_Until\_ must govern, not this noun "\_times.\_" expressed, but an other,

understood after "\_seven\_;" and the meaning must be, "Thou shalt forgive

him until \_seventy-times\_ seven times;" or--"until seven \_times taken for,

to\_, or \_till\_, seventy times."

OBS. 26.--With too little regard to consistency. Dr. Bullions suggests that

when "we make '\_times\_' the subject of the verb," it is not "really" such,

but "is in \_the objective of number\_." He is, doubtless, right in

preferring to parse this word as an objective case, rather than as a

nominative, in the construction to which he alludes; but to call it an

"objective of \_number\_," is an uncouth error, a very strange mistake for so

great a grammarian to utter: there being in grammar no such thing as "\_the

objective of number\_:" nothing of the sort, even under his own "Special

Rule," to which he refers us for it! And, if such a thing there were, so

that a \_number\_ could be "\_put in the objective case without a governing

word\_," (see his §828,) the plural word \_times\_, since it denotes no

particular aggregate of units, could never be an example of it. It is true

that \_times\_, like \_days, weeks\_, and other nouns of \_time\_, may be, and

often is, in the objective case without a governing word \_expressed\_; and,

in such instances, it may be called the objective of \_repetition\_, or of

\_time repeated\_. But the construction of the word appears to be such as is

common to many nouns of time, of value, or of measure; which, in their

relation to other words, seem to resemble adverbs, but which are usually

said to be governed by prepositions understood: as, "Three \_days\_ later;"

i.e., "Later \_by\_ three days."--"Three \_shillings\_ cheaper;" i.e., "Cheaper

\_by\_ three shillings."--"Seven \_times\_ hotter;" i.e., "Hotter \_by\_ seven

times."--"Four \_feet\_ high;" i.e., "High \_to\_ four feet."--"Ten \_years\_

old;" i.e., "Old \_to\_ ten years."--"Five \_times\_ ten;" i.e., "Ten \_by\_ five

times;" or, perhaps, "Ten \_taken till\_ five times."

NOTE TO RULE XV.

A collective noun conveying the idea of unity, requires a verb in the third

person, singular; and generally admits also the regular plural

construction: as, "His \_army was\_ defeated."--"His \_armies were\_ defeated."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XV.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE IDEA OF PLURALITY.

"The gentry is punctilious in their etiquette."

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_is\_ is of the singular number, and

does not correctly agree with its nominative \_gentry\_, which is a

collective noun conveying rather the idea of plurality. But, according to

Rule 15th, "When the nominative is a collective noun conveying the idea of

plurality, the verb must agree with it in the plural number." Therefore,

\_is\_ should be \_are\_; thus, "The gentry \_are\_ punctilious in their

etiquette."]

"In France the peasantry goes barefoot, and the middle sort makes use of

wooden shoes."--HARVEY: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 188. "The people rejoices

in that which should cause sorrow."--See \_Murray's Exercises\_, p. 49. "My

people is foolish, they have not known me."--\_Jer.\_, iv, 22; \_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 75. "For the people speaks, but does not write."--\_Philological

Museum\_, i, 646. "So that all the people that was in the camp,

trembled."--\_Exodus\_, xix, 16. "No company likes to confess that they are

ignorant."--\_Student's Manual\_, p. 217. "Far the greater part of their

captives was anciently sacrificed."--\_Robertson's America\_, i, 339. "Above

one half of them was cut off before the return of spring."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 419.

"The other class, termed Figures of Thought, supposes the words to be used

in their proper and literal meaning."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 133; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 337. "A multitude of words in their dialect approaches to the

Teutonic form, and therefore afford excellent assistance."--\_Dr. Murray's

Hist of Lang.\_, i, 148. "A great majority of our authors is defective in

manner."--\_James Brown's Crit.\_ "The greater part of these new-coined words

has been rejected."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, ii, 445. "The greater part of

the words it contains is subject to certain modifications and

inflections."--\_The Friend\_, ii, 123. "While all our youth prefers her to

the rest."--\_Waller's Poems\_, p. 17. "Mankind is appointed to live in a

future state."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 57. "The greater part of human kind

speaks and acts wholly by imitation."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 169. "The

greatest part of human gratifications approaches so nearly to

vice."--\_Ibid.\_

"While still the busy world is treading o'er

The paths they trod five thousand years before."--\_Young.\_

UNDER THE NOTE.--THE IDEA OF UNITY.

"In old English this species of words were numerous."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist.

of Lang.\_, ii, 6. "And a series of exercises in false grammar are

introduced towards the end."--\_Frost's El. of E. Gram.\_, p. iv. "And a

jury, in conformity with the same idea, were anciently called \_homagium\_,

the homage, or manhood."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 296. "With respect to the

former, there are indeed plenty of means."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 319.

"The number of school districts have increased since the last

year."--\_Governor Throop\_, 1832. "The Yearly Meeting have purchased with

its funds these publications."--\_Foster's Reports\_, i, 76. "Have the

legislature power to prohibit assemblies?"--\_Wm. Sullivan\_. "So that the

whole number of the streets were fifty."--\_Rollin's Ancient Hist.\_, ii, 8.

"The number of inhabitants were not more than four millions."--SMOLLETT:

see \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 193. "The House of Commons were of small

weight."--HUME: \_Ib.\_, p. 188. "The assembly of the wicked have enclosed

me."--\_Psal.\_ xxii, 16; \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 75. "Every kind of convenience

and comfort are provided."--\_Com. School Journal\_, i, 24. "Amidst the great

decrease of the inhabitants of Spain, the body of the clergy have suffered

no diminution; but has rather been gradually increasing."--\_Payne's Geog.\_,

ii, 418. "Small as the number of inhabitants are, yet their poverty is

extreme."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 417. "The number of the names were about one hundred

and twenty."--\_Ware's Gram.\_, p. 12; see \_Acts\_, i, 15.

RULE XVI.--FINITE VERBS.

When a Verb has two or more nominatives connected by \_and\_, it must agree

with them jointly in the plural, because they are taken together: as, "True

rhetoric \_and\_ sound logic \_are\_ very nearly allied."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

11. "Aggression and injury in no case \_justify\_ retaliation."--\_Wayland's

Moral Science\_, p. 406.

"Judges and senates \_have been bought\_ for gold,

Esteem \_and\_ love \_were\_ never to be sold."--\_Pope\_.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

When two nominatives connected by \_and\_ serve merely to describe one person

or thing, they are either in apposition or equivalent to one name, and do

not require a plural verb; as, "Immediately \_comes a hue and cry\_ after a

gang of thieves."--\_L'Estrange\_. "The \_hue and cry\_ of the country

\_pursues\_ him."--\_Junius\_, Letter xxiii. "Flesh and blood [i. e. man, or

man's nature,] \_hath not revealed\_ it unto thee."--\_Matt.\_, xvi, 17."

Descent and fall to us \_is\_ adverse."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, ii, 76. "This

\_philosopher\_ and \_poet was banished\_ from his country."--"Such a \_Saviour\_

and \_Redeemer is\_ actually \_provided\_ for us."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 386.

"Let us then declare what great things our \_God and Saviour has done\_ for

us."--\_Dr. Scott\_, on Luke viii. "\_Toll, tribute\_, and \_custom, was paid\_

unto them."--\_Ezra\_, iv, 20.

"Whose icy \_current\_ and compulsive \_course\_

Ne'er \_feels\_ retiring ebb, but \_keeps\_ due on."--\_Shakspeare\_.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

When two nominatives connected by \_and\_, are emphatically distinguished,

they belong to different propositions, and, if singular, do not require a

plural verb; as, "\_Ambition\_, and not the \_safety\_ of the state, \_was

concerned\_."--\_Goldsmith\_. "\_Consanguinity\_, and not \_affinity, is\_ the

ground of the prohibition."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 324. "But a

\_modification\_, and oftentimes a total \_change, takes\_ place."--\_Maunder.

"Somewhat\_, and, in many circumstances, a great \_deal\_ too, \_is put\_ upon

us."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 108. "\_Disgrace\_, and perhaps \_ruin, was\_ the

certain consequence of attempting the latter."--\_Robertson's America\_, i,

434.

"\_Ay\_, and \_no\_ too, \_was\_ no good divinity."--\_Shakespeare.

"Love\_, and \_love only\_, is the loan for love."--\_Young\_.

EXCEPTION THIRD.

When two or more nominatives connected by \_and\_ are preceded by the

adjective \_each, every, or no\_, they are taken separately, and do not

require a plural verb; as, "When \_no part\_ of their substance, and \_no one\_

of their properties, \_is\_ the same."--\_Bp. Butler\_. "Every limb and feature

\_appears\_ with its respective grace."--\_Steele\_. "Every person, and every

occurrence, \_is beheld\_ in the most favourable light."--\_Murray's Key\_, p.

190. "Each worm, and each insect, \_is\_ a marvel of creative power."

"Whose every look and gesture \_was\_ a joke

To clapping theatres and shouting crowds."--\_Young\_.

EXCEPTION FOURTH.

When the verb separates its nominatives, it agrees with that which precedes

it, and is understood to the rest; as, "The \_earth is\_ the Lord's, and the

\_fullness\_ thereof."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, p. 36.

"\_Disdain forbids\_ me, and my \_dread\_ of shame."--\_Milton\_.

"------Forth in the pleasing spring,

Thy \_beauty walks\_, thy \_tenderness\_, and \_love\_."--\_Thomson\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XVI.

OBS. 1.--According to Lindley Murray, (who, in all his compilation, from

whatever learned authorities, refers us to \_no places\_ in any book but his

own.) "Dr. Blair observes, that 'two or more substantives, joined by a

copulative, \_must always require\_ the verb or pronoun to which they refer,

to be \_placed\_ in the plural number:' and this," continues the great

Compiler, "is the \_general sentiment\_ of English grammarians."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 150. The same thing is stated in many other grammars:

thus, \_Ingersoll\_ has the very same words, on the 238th page of his book;

and \_R. C. Smith\_ says, "Dr. Blair \_very justly\_ observes,"

&c.--\_Productive Gram.\_, p. 126. I therefore doubt not, the learned

rhetorician has somewhere made some such remark: though I can neither

supply the reference which these gentlemen omit, nor vouch for the accuracy

of their quotation. But I trust to make it very clear, that so many

grammarians as hold this sentiment, are no great readers, to say the least

of them. Murray himself acknowledges \_one\_ exception to this principle, and

unconsciously furnishes examples of one or two more; but, in stead of

placing the former in his Grammar, and under the rule, where the learner

would be likely to notice it, he makes it an obscure and almost

unintelligible note, in the \_margin of his Key\_, referring by an asterisk

to the following correction: "Every man and every woman \_was\_

numbered."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. ii. p. 190. To justify this

phraseology, he talks thus: "\_Whatever number\_ of nouns may be connected

\_by a conjunction with the pronoun\_ EVERY, this \_pronoun\_ is as applicable

to \_the whole mass\_ of them, as to any \_one of the nouns\_; and \_therefore\_

the verb is correctly put in the singular number, and \_refers to the whole\_

separately and individually considered."--\_Ib.\_ So much, then, for "\_the

pronoun\_ EVERY!" But, without other exceptions, what shall be done with the

following texts from Murray himself? "The flock, \_and\_ not the fleece,

\_is\_, or \_ought\_ to be the object of the shepherd's care."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 184.

"This prodigy of learning, this scholar, critic, \_and\_ antiquary, \_was\_

entirely destitute of breeding and civility."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 217. And, in the

following line, what conjunction appears, or what is the difference between

"horror" and "black despair." that the verb should be made plural?

"What black despair, what horror, \_fill\_ his \_mind\_!"--\_Ib.\_, ii, 183.

"What black despair, what horror \_fills\_ his \_heart\_!"--\_Thomson\_.[395]

OBS. 2.--Besides the many examples which may justly come under the four

exceptions above specified, there are several questionable but customary

expressions, which have some appearance of being deviations from this rule,

but which may perhaps be reasonably explained on the principle of ellipsis:

as, "All work and no play, \_makes\_ Jack a dull boy."--"Slow and steady

often \_outtravels\_ haste."--\_Dillwyn's Reflections\_, p. 23. "Little and

often \_fills\_ the purse."--\_Treasury of Knowledge\_, Part i, p. 446. "Fair

and softly \_goes\_ far." These maxims, by universal custom, lay claim to a

singular verb; and, for my part, I know not how they can well be considered

either real exceptions to the foregoing rule, or real inaccuracies under

it; for, in most of them, the words connected are not \_nouns\_; and those

which are so, may not be nominatives. And it is clear, that every exception

must have some specific character by which it may be distinguished; else it

destroys the rule, in stead of confirming it, as known exceptions are said

to do. Murray appears to have thought the singular verb \_wrong\_; for, among

his examples for parsing, he has, "Fair and softly \_go\_ far," which

instance is no more entitled to a plural verb than the rest. See his

\_Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 5. Why not suppose them all to be elliptical?

Their meaning may be as follows: "\_To have\_ all work and no play, \_makes\_

Jack a dull boy."--"\_What is\_ slow and steady, often \_outtravels\_

haste."--"To \_put in\_ little and often, \_fills\_ the purse."--"\_What

proceeds\_ fair and softly, \_goes\_ far." The following line from Shakspeare

appears to be still more elliptical:

"Poor and content \_is\_ rich, and rich enough."--\_Othello\_.

This may be supposed to mean, "\_He who is\_ poor and content," &c. In the

following sentence again, we may suppose an ellipsis of the phrase \_To

have\_, at the beginning; though here, perhaps, to have pluralized the verb,

would have been as well:

"One eye on death and one full fix'd on heaven,

\_Becomes\_ a mortal and immortal man."--\_Young\_.

OBS. 3.--The names of two persons are not unfrequently used jointly as the

name of their story; in which sense, they must have a singular verb, if

they have any; as, "Prior's \_Henry and Emma contains\_ an other beautiful

example."--\_Jamieson's Rhetoric\_, p. 179. I somewhat hesitate to call this

an exception to the foregoing rule, because here too the phraseology may be

supposed elliptical. The meaning is, "Prior's \_little poem, entitled\_,

'Henry and Emma,' contains," &c.;--or, "Prior's \_story of\_ Henry and Emma

contains," &c. And, if the first expression is only an abbreviation of one

of these, the construction of the verb \_contains\_ may be referred to Rule

14th. See Exception 1st to Rule 12th, and Obs. 2d on Rule 14th.

OBS. 4.--The conjunction \_and\_, by which alone we can with propriety

connect different words to make them joint nominatives or joint

antecedents, is sometimes suppressed and \_understood\_; but then its

effect is the same, as if it were inserted; though a singular verb might

sometimes be quite as proper in the same sentences, because it would merely

imply a disjunctive conjunction or none at all: as, "The high breach of

trust, the notorious corruption, \_are stated\_ in the strongest

terms."--\_Junius\_, Let. xx. "Envy, self-will, jealousy, pride, often

\_reign\_ there."--\_Abbott's Corner Stone\_, p. 111. (See Obs. 4th on Rule

12th.)

"Art, empire, earth itself, to change \_are\_ doomed."--\_Beattie\_.

"Her heart, her mind, her love, \_is\_ his alone."--\_Cowley\_.

In all the foregoing examples, a singular verb might have been used without

impropriety; or the last, which is singular, might have been plural. But

the following couplet evidently requires a plural verb, and is therefore

correct as the poet wrote it; both because the latter noun is plural, and

because the conjunction \_and\_ is understood between the two. Yet a late

grammarian, perceiving no difference between the joys of sense and the

pleasure of reason, not only changes "\_lie\_" to "\_lies\_," but uses the

perversion for a \_proof text\_, under a rule which refers the verb to the

first noun only, and requires it to be singular. See \_Oliver B. Peirce's

Gram.\_, p. 250.

"Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense.

\_Lie\_ in three words--health, peace, and competence."

--\_Pope's Ess.\_, Ep. iv, l. 80.

OBS. 5.--When the speaker changes his nominative to take a stronger

expression, he commonly uses no conjunction; but, putting the verb in

agreement with the noun which is next to it, he leaves the other to an

implied concord with its proper form of the same verb: as, "The man whose

\_designs\_, whose \_whole conduct, tends\_ to reduce me to subjection, that

man is at war with me, though not a blow has yet been given, nor a sword

drawn."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 265. "All \_Greece\_, all the barbarian \_world,

is\_ too narrow for this man's ambition."--\_Ibid.\_ "This \_self-command\_,

this \_exertion\_ of reason in the midst of passion, \_has\_ a wonderful effect

both to please and to persuade."--\_Ib.\_, p. 260. "In the mutual influence

of body and soul, there \_is a wisdom\_, a \_wonderful wisdom\_, which we

cannot fathom."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 150. If the principle here

stated is just, Murray has written the following models erroneously:

"Virtue, honour, nay, even self-interest, \_conspire\_ to recommend the

measure."--\_Ib.\_, p. 150. "Patriotism, morality, every public and private

consideration, \_demand\_ our submission to just and lawful

government."--\_Ibid.\_ In this latter instance, I should prefer the singular

verb \_demands\_; and in the former, the expression ought to be otherwise

altered, thus. "Virtue, honour, \_and\_ interest, all \_conspire\_ to recommend

the measure." Or thus: "Virtue, honour--nay, even self-interest,

\_recommends\_ the measure." On this principle, too, Thomson was right, and

this critic wrong, in the example cited at the close of the first

observation above. This construction is again recurred to by Murray, in the

second chapter of his Exercises; where he explicitly condemns the following

sentence because the verb is singular: "Prudence, policy, nay, his own true

interest, strongly \_recommends\_ the line of conduct proposed to

him."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 22.

OBS. 6.--When two or more nominatives are in apposition with a preceding

one which they explain, the verb must agree with the first word only,

because the others are adjuncts to this, and not joint subjects to the

verb; as, "Loudd, the ancient Lydda and Diospolis, \_appears\_ like a place

lately ravaged by fire and sword."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 93. "Beattie,

James,--a philosopher and poet,--\_was born\_ in Scotland, in the year

1735."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 306. "For, the quantity, the length, and

shortness of our syllables, \_is\_ not, by any means, so fixed."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 124. This principle, like the preceding one, persuades me again

to dissent from Murray, who corrects or \_perverts\_ the following sentence,

by changing \_originates\_ to \_originate\_: "All that makes a figure on the

great theatre of the world; the employments of the busy, the enterprises of

the ambitious, and the exploits of the warlike; the virtues which form the

happiness, and the crimes which occasion the misery of mankind;

\_originates\_ in that silent and secret recess of thought, which is hidden

from every human eye."--See \_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 181; or

his \_Duodecimo Key\_, p. 21. The true subject of this proposition is the

noun \_all\_, which is singular; and the other nominatives are subordinate to

this, and merely explanatory of it.

OBS. 7.--Dr. Webster says, "\_Enumeration\_ and addition of numbers are

\_usually\_ expressed in the singular \_number\_; [as,] two and two \_is\_ four;

seven and nine \_is\_ sixteen; that is, \_the sum of\_ seven and nine \_is\_

sixteen. But modern usage inclines to reject the use of the verb in the

singular number, in these and similar phrases."--\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 106.

Among its many faults, this passage exhibits a virtual contradiction. For

what "\_modern usage\_ inclines to reject," can hardly be the fashion in

which any ideas "\_are usually expressed\_." Besides, I may safely aver, that

this is a kind of phraseology which all correct usage always did reject. It

is not only a gross vulgarism, but a plain and palpable violation of the

foregoing rule of syntax; and, as such it must be reputed, if the rule has

any propriety at all. What "\_enumeration\_" has to do with it, is more than

I can tell. But Dr. Webster once admired and commended this mode of speech,

as one of the "wonderful proofs of ingenuity in the \_framers\_ of language;"

and laboured to defend it as being "correct upon principle;" that is, upon

the principle that "\_the sum of\_" is understood to be the subject of the

affirmation, when one says, "Two \_and\_ two \_is\_ four," in stead of, "Two

and two \_are\_ four."--See \_Webster's Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 153. This

seems to me a "wonderful proof" of \_ignorance\_ in a very learned man.

OBS. 8.--In Greek and Latin, the verb frequently agrees with the nearest

nominative, and is understood to the rest; and this construction is

sometimes imitated in English, especially if the nouns follow the verb: as,

"[Greek: Nuni do MENEI pistis, elpis agape, ta tria tanta]."--"Nunc vero

\_manet\_ fides, spes, charitas; tria hæc."--"Now \_abideth\_ faith, hope,

charity; these three."--\_1 Cor.\_, xiii, 13. "And now \_abideth\_ confession,

prayer, and praise, these three; but the greatest of these is

praise."--ATTERBURY: \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 300. The propriety of this usage,

so far as our language is concerned, I doubt. It seems to open a door for

numerous deviations from the foregoing rule, and deviations of such a sort,

that if they are to be considered exceptions, one can hardly tell why. The

practice, however, is not uncommon, especially if there are more nouns than

two, and each is emphatic; as, "Wonderful \_was\_ the patience, fortitude,

self-denial, \_and\_ bravery of our ancestors."--\_Webster's Hist. of U. S.\_,

p. 118. "It is the very thing I would have you make out: for therein

\_consists\_ the form, and use, and nature of language."--\_Berkley's

Alciphron\_, p. 161. "There \_is\_ the proper noun, and the common noun. There

\_is\_ the singular noun, and the plural noun."--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p. 11.

"From him \_proceeds\_ power, sanctification, truth, grace, and every other

blessing we can conceive."--\_Calvin's Institutes\_, B. i, Ch. 13. "To what

purpose \_cometh\_ there to me incense from Sheba, \_and\_ the sweet cane from

a far country?"--\_Jer.\_, vi, 20. "For thine \_is\_ the kingdom, \_and\_ the

power, \_and\_ the glory, forever."--\_Matt.\_, vi, 13. In all these instances,

the plural verb might have been used; and yet perhaps the singular may be

justified on the ground that there is a distinct and emphatic enumeration

of the nouns. Thus, it would be proper to say, "Thine \_are\_ the kingdom,

the power, and the glory;" but this construction seems less emphatic than

the preceding, which means, "For thine is the kingdom, \_thine is\_ the

power, and \_thine is\_ the glory, forever;" and this repetition is still

more emphatic, and perhaps more proper, than the elliptical form. The

repetition of the conjunction "\_and\_," in the original text as above, adds

time and emphasis to the reading, and makes the singular verb more proper

than it would otherwise be; for which reason, the following form, in which

the Rev. Dr. Bullions has set the sentence down for bad English, is in some

sort a \_perversion\_ of the Scripture: "Thine is the kingdom, the power, and

the glory."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 141.

OBS. 9.--When the nominatives are of different \_persons\_, the verb agrees

with the first person in preference to the second, and with the second in

preference to the third; for \_thou\_ and \_I\_, or \_he, thou\_, and \_I\_, are

equivalent to \_we\_; and \_thou\_ and \_he\_ are equivalent to you: as, "Why

speakest thou any more of thy matters? I have said, \_thou and Ziba divide\_

the land."--\_2 Sam.\_, xix. 29. That is, "divide \_ye\_ the land." "And \_live

thou\_ and thy \_children\_ of the rest."--\_2 Kings\_, iv, 7. "That \_I\_ and thy

\_people have found\_ grace in thy sight."--\_Exodus\_, xxxiii, 16. "\_I\_ and my

\_kingdom are\_ guiltless."--\_2 Sam.\_, iii, 28. "\_I\_, and \_you\_, and \_Piso\_

perhaps too, \_are\_ in a state of dissatisfaction."--\_Zenobia\_, i, 114.

"Then \_I\_, and \_you\_, and \_all\_ of us, \_fell\_ down,

Whilst bloody treason flourish'd over \_us\_."--\_Shak., J. Cæsar\_.

OBS. 10.--When two or more nominatives connected by \_and\_ are of the same

form but distinguished by adjectives or possessives, one or more of them

may be omitted by ellipsis, but the verb must be plural, and agree with

them all; as, "A literary, a scientific, a wealthy, and a poor man, \_were

assembled\_ in one room."--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 263. Here four different men

are clearly spoken of. "Else the rising and the falling emphasis \_are\_ the

same."--\_Knowles's Elocutionist\_, p. 33. Here the noun \_emphasis\_ is

understood after \_rising\_. "The singular and [the] plural form \_seem\_ to be

confounded."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 22. Here the noun \_form\_ is presented to

the mind twice; and therefore the article should have been repeated. See

Obs. 15th on Rule 1st. "My farm and William's \_are\_ adjacent to each

other."--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 220. Here the noun \_farm\_ is understood after

the possessive \_William's\_, though the author of the sentence foolishly

attempts to explain it otherwise. "Seth's, Richard's and Edmund's \_farms\_

are those which their fathers left them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 257. Here the noun

\_farms\_ is understood after \_Seth's\_, and again after \_Richard's\_; so that

the sentence is written wrong, unless each man has more than one farm.

"\_Was\_ not Demosthenes's style, and his master Plato's, perfectly Attic;

and yet none more lofty?"--\_Milnes's Greek Gram.\_, p. 241. Here \_style\_ is

understood after \_Plato's\_; wherefore \_was\_ should rather be \_were\_, or

else \_and\_ should be changed to \_as well as\_. But the text, as it stands,

is not much unlike some of the exceptions noticed above. "The character of

a fop, and of a rough warrior, \_are\_ no where more successfully

contrasted."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 236. Here the ellipsis is

not very proper. Say, "the character of a fop, and \_that\_ of a rough

warrior," &c. Again: "We may observe, that the eloquence of the bar, of the

legislature, and of public assemblies, \_are\_ seldom \_or ever\_ found united

\_to high perfection in\_ the same person."--\_J. Q. Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. i,

p. 256. Here the ellipsis cannot so well be avoided by means of the

pronominal adjective \_that\_, and therefore it may be thought more

excusable; but I should prefer a repetition of the nominative: as, "We may

observe, that the eloquence of the bar, \_the eloquence\_ of the legislature,

and \_the eloquence\_ of public assemblies, are seldom \_if ever\_ found

united, \_in any high degree\_, in the same person."

OBS. 11.--The conjunction \_as\_, when it connects nominatives that are in

\_apposition\_, or significant of the same person or thing, is commonly

placed at the beginning of a sentence, so that the verb agrees with its

proper nominative following the explanatory word: thus, "\_As a poet, he

holds\_ a high rank."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 355. "\_As a poet, Addison

claims\_ a high praise."--\_Ib.\_, p. 304. "\_As a model\_ of English prose, his

\_writings merit\_ the greatest praise."--\_Ib.\_, p. 305. But when this

conjunction denotes a \_comparison\_ between different persons or things

signified by two nominatives, there must be two verbs expressed or

understood, each agreeing with its own subject; as, "Such \_writers\_ as \_he

[is,] have\_ no reputation worth any man's envy." [396]

"Such \_men\_ as \_he [is] be\_ never at heart's ease

Whiles they behold a greater than themselves."--\_Shakspeare\_.

OBS. 12.--When two nominatives are connected by \_as well as, but\_, or

\_save\_, they must in fact have two verbs, though in most instances only one

is expressed; as, "Such is the mutual dependence of words in sentences,

that several \_others\_, as well as [is] the \_adjective, are\_ not to be used

alone."--\_Dr. Wilson's Essay\_, p. 99. "The Constitution was to be the one

fundamental law of the land, to which \_all\_, as well \_States\_ as \_people\_,

should submit."--W. I. BOWDITCH: \_Liberator\_, No. 984. "As well those which

history, as those which experience \_offers\_ to our reflection."--

\_Bolingbroke, on History\_, p. 85. Here the words "\_offers to our

reflection\_" are understood after "\_history\_." "\_None\_ but \_He\_ who

discerns futurity, \_could have foretold\_ and described all these

things."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 62. "That there \_was\_ in those times no

other \_writer\_, of any degree of eminence, save \_he\_ himself."--\_Pope's

Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 43.

"I do entreat you not a man depart,

Save \_I\_ alone, till Antony have spoke."--\_Shak., J. Cæsar\_.

OBS. 13.--Some grammarians say, that \_but\_ and \_save\_, when they denote

exception, should govern the objective case as \_prepositions\_. But this

idea is, without doubt, contrary to the current usage of the best authors,

either ancient or modern. Wherefore I think it evident that these

grammarians err. The objective case of \_nouns\_ being like the nominative,

the point can be proved only by the \_pronouns\_; as, "There is none \_but he\_

alone."--\_Perkins's Theology\_, 1608. "There is none other \_but

he\_."--\_Mark\_, xii, 32. (This text is good authority as regards the \_case\_,

though it is incorrect in an other respect: it should have been, "There is

\_none but\_ he," or else, "There is \_no other than he\_.") "No man hath

ascended up to heaven, \_but he\_ that came down from heaven."--\_John\_, iii,

13. "Not that any man hath seen the father, \_save he\_ which is of

God."--\_John\_, vi, 46. "Few can, \_save he\_ and \_I\_."--\_Byron's Werner\_.

"There is none justified, \_but he\_ that is in measure sanctified."--\_Isaac

Penington\_. \_Save\_, as a conjunction, is nearly obsolete.

OBS. 14.--In Rev., ii, 17th, we read, "Which no man knoweth, \_saving he\_

that receiveth it;" and again, xiii, 17th, "That no man might buy or sell,

\_save he\_ that had the mark." The following text is inaccurate, but not in

the construction of the nominative \_they\_: "All men cannot receive this

saying, \_save they\_ to whom it is given."--\_Matt.\_, xix, 11. The version

ought to have been, "\_Not all\_ men can receive this saying, \_but they only\_

to whom it is given:" i.e., "they only \_can receive it\_, to whom \_there is

given power to receive it\_." Of \_but\_ with a nominative, examples may be

multiplied indefinitely. The following are as good as any: "There is no God

\_but He\_."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p. 27. "The former none \_but He\_ could

execute."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 317. "There was nobody at home \_but

I\_."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 95. "A fact, of which as none \_but he\_ could

be conscious, [so] none \_but he\_ could be the publisher of it."--\_Pope's

Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 117. "Few \_but they\_ who are involved in the vices,

are involved in the irreligion of the times."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, i, 101.

"I claim my right. No Grecian prince but \_I\_

Has power this bow to grant, or to deny."

--\_Pope, Odys.\_, B. xxi, l. 272.

"Thus she, and none \_but she\_, the insulting rage

Of heretics oppos'd from age to age."

--\_Dryden's Poems\_, p. 98.

In opposition to all these authorities, and many more that might be added,

we have, with now and then a text of false syntax, the absurd opinion of

perhaps \_a score or two\_ of our grammarians; one of whom imagines he has

found in the following couplet from Swift, an example to the purpose; but

he forgets that the verb \_let\_ governs the \_objective\_ case:

"Let \_none but him\_ who rules the thunder,

Attempt to part these twain asunder."

--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 62.

OBS. 15.--It is truly a wonder, that so many professed critics should not

see the absurdity of taking \_but\_ and \_save\_ for "\_prepositions\_," when

this can be done only by condemning the current usage of nearly all good

authors, as well as the common opinion of most grammarians; and the greater

is the wonder, because they seem to do it innocently, or to teach it

childishly, as not knowing that they cannot justify both sides, when the

question lies between opposite and contradictory principles. By this sort

of simplicity, which approves of errors, if much practised, and of

opposites, or essential contraries, when authorities may be found for them,

no work, perhaps, is more strikingly characterized, than the popular School

Grammar of W. H. Wells. This author says, "The use of \_but\_ as a

preposition is \_approved\_ by J. E. Worcester, John Walker, R. C. Smith,

Picket, Hiley, Angus, Lynde, Hull, Powers, Spear, Farnum, Fowle, Goldsbury,

Perley, Cobb, Badgley, Cooper, Jones, Davis, Beall, Hendrick, Hazen, and

Goodenow."--\_School Gram.\_, 1850, p. 178. But what if all these authors do

prefer, "\_but him\_," and "\_save him\_," where ten times as many would say,

"\_but he\_," "\_save he\_?" Is it therefore difficult to determine which

party is right? Or is it proper for a grammarian to name sundry authorities

on both sides, excite doubt in the mind of his reader, and leave the matter

\_unsettled\_? "The use of \_but\_ as a preposition," he also states, "is

\_discountenanced\_ by G. Brown, Sanborn, Murray, S. Oliver, and several

other grammarians. (See also an able article in the Mass. Common School

Journal, Vol. ii, p. 19.)"--\_School Gram.\_, p. 178.

OBS. 16.--Wells passes no censure on the use of nominatives after \_but\_ and

\_save\_; does not intimate which case is fittest to follow these words;

gives no false syntax under his rule for the regimen of prepositions; but

inserts there the following brief remarks and examples:

"REM. 3.--The word \_save\_ is frequently used to perform the office of a

preposition; as, 'And all desisted, all \_save him\_ alone.'--\_Wordsworth\_."

"REM. 4.--\_But\_ is sometimes employed as a preposition, in the sense of

\_except\_; as, 'The boy stood on the burning deck, Whence all \_but him\_ had

fled.'--\_Hemans\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 167.

Now, "BUT," says Worcester, as well as Tooke and others, was "originally

\_bot\_, contracted from \_be out\_;" and, if this notion of its etymology is

just, it must certainly be followed by the nominative case, rather than by

the objective; for the imperative \_be\_ or \_be out\_ governs no case, admits

no additional term but a nominative--an obvious and important fact, quite

overlooked by those who call \_but\_ a preposition. According to Allen H.

Weld, \_but\_ and \_save\_ "are \_commonly\_ considered \_prepositions\_," but "are

\_more commonly\_ termed \_conjunctions\_!" This author repeats Wells's

examples of "\_save him\_," and "\_but him\_," as being \_right\_; and mixes them

with opposite examples of "\_save he\_," "\_but he\_," "\_save I\_," which he

thinks to be \_more right\_!--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p. 187.

OBS. 17.--Professor Fowler, too, an other author remarkable for a facility

of embracing incompatibles, contraries, or dubieties, not only condemns as

"false syntax" the use of \_save\_ for an exceptive conjunction. (§587. ¶28,)

but cites approvingly from Latham the following very strange absurdity:

"One and the same word, in one and the same sentence, may be a Conjunction

or [a] Preposition, as the case may be: [as] All fled \_but\_

John."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, § 555. This is equivalent to

saying, that "one and the same sentence" \_may be two different sentences\_;

may, without error, be understood in two different senses; may be rightly

taken, resolved, and parsed in two different ways! Nay, it is equivalent to

a denial of the old logical position, that "It is impossible for a thing

\_to be\_ and \_not be\_ at the same time;" for it supposes "\_but\_," in the

instance given, to be at once both a conjunction and \_not\_ a conjunction,

both a preposition and \_not\_ a preposition, "\_as the case may be\_!" It is

true, that "one and the same word" may sometimes be differently parsed \_by

different grammarians\_, and possibly even an adept may doubt who or what is

right. But what ambiguity of construction, or what diversity of

interpretation, proceeding from the same hand, can these admissions be

supposed to warrant? The foregoing citation is a boyish attempt to justify

different modes of parsing the same expression, on the ground that the

expression itself is equivocal. "All fled \_but John\_," is thought to mean

equally well, "All fled \_but he\_," and, "All fled \_but him\_;" while these

latter expressions are erroneously presumed to be alike good English, and

to have a difference of meaning corresponding to their difference of

construction. Now, what is equivocal, or ambiguous, being therefore

erroneous, is to be \_corrected\_, rather than parsed in any way. But I deny

both the ambiguity and the difference of meaning which these critics

profess to find among the said phrases. "\_John fled not, but all the rest

fled\_," is virtually what is told us in each of them; but, in the form,

"All fled but \_him\_," it is told ungrammatically; in the other two,

correctly.

OBS. 18.--In Latin, \_cum\_ with an ablative, sometimes has, or is supposed

to have, the force of the conjunction \_et\_ with a nominative; as, "Dux

\_cum\_ aliquot principibus capiuntur."--LIVY: \_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 131. In

imitation of this construction, some English writers have substituted

\_with\_ for \_and\_, and varied the verb accordingly; as, "A long course of

time, \_with\_ a variety of accidents and circumstances, \_are\_ requisite to

produce those revolutions."--HUME: \_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 131; \_Ware's\_, 12;

\_Priestley's\_, 186. This phraseology, though censured by Allen, was

expressly approved by Priestley, who introduced the present example, as his

proof text under the following observation: "It is not necessary that the

two \_subjects of an affirmation\_ should stand in the very same

construction, to require the verb to be in the plural number. If one of

them be made to depend upon the other \_by a connecting particle\_, it may,

\_in some cases\_, have the same force, as if it were independent of

it."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 186. Lindley Murray, on the contrary,

condemns this doctrine, and after citing the same example with others,

says: "It is however, proper to observe that these modes of expression do

not appear to be warranted by \_the just principles\_ of construction."--

\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 150. He then proceeds to prove his point, by alleging

that the preposition governs the objective case in English, and the

ablative in Latin, and that what is so governed, cannot be the nominative,

or any part of it. All this is true enough, but still some men who know it

perfectly well, will now and then write as if they did not believe it. And

so it was with the writers of Latin and Greek. They sometimes wrote bad

syntax; and the grammarians have not always seen and censured their errors

as they ought. Since the preposition makes its object only an adjunct of

the preceding noun, or of something else, I imagine that any construction

which thus assumes two different cases as joint nominatives or joint

antecedents, must needs be inherently faulty.

OBS. 19.--Dr. Adam simply remarks, "The plural is sometimes used after the

preposition \_cum\_ put for \_et\_; as, \_Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt\_.

Virg."--\_Latin and English Gram.\_, p. 207; \_Gould's Adam's Latin Gram.\_, p.

204; \_W. Allen's English Gram.\_, 131. This example is not fairly cited;

though many have adopted the perversion, as if they knew no better.

Alexander has it in a worse form still: "Quirinus, cum fratre, jura

dabunt."--\_Latin Gram.\_, p. 47. Virgil's words are, "\_Cana\_ FIDES, \_et\_

VESTA, \_Remo cum fratre Quirinus, Jura dabunt\_."--\_Æneid\_, B. i, l. 296.

Nor is \_cum\_ here "put for \_et\_," unless we suppose also an antiptosis of

\_Remo fratre\_ for \_Remus frater\_; and then what shall the literal meaning

be, and how shall the rules of syntax be accommodated to such changes? Fair

examples, that bear upon the point, may, however, be adduced from good

authors, and in various languages; but the question is, are they \_correct\_

in syntax? Thus Dr. Robertson: "The palace of Pizarro, \_together with\_ the

houses of several of his adherents, \_were\_ pillaged by the soldiers."--

\_Hist. of Amer.\_, Vol. ii, p. 133. To me, this appears plainly

ungrammatical; and, certainly, there are ways enough in which it may be

corrected. First, with the present connective retained, "\_were\_" ought to

be \_was\_. Secondly, if \_were\_ be retained, "\_together with\_" ought to be

changed to \_and\_, or \_and also\_. Thirdly, we may well change both, and say,

"The palace of Pizarro, \_as well as\_ the houses of several of his

adherents, \_was\_ pillaged by the soldiers." Again, in Mark, ix, 4th, we

read: "And there appeared \_unto them\_ Elias, \_with\_ Moses; and \_they\_ were

talking with Jesus." If this text meant that \_the three disciples\_ were

talking with Jesus, it would be right as it stands; but St. Matthew has it,

"And, behold, there appeared unto them \_Moses and Elias, talking\_ with

him;" and our version in Luke is, "And, behold, there talked with him two

men, which were Moses and Elias."--Chap. ix, 30. By these corresponding

texts, then, we learn, that the pronoun \_they\_, which our translators

inserted, was meant for "\_Elias with Moses\_;" but the Greek verb for

"\_appeared\_," as used by Mark, is \_singular\_, and agrees only with Elias.

"[Greek: \_Kai ophthæ autois Aelias sun Mosei, kai hæsan syllalountes to

Iæsoy\_.]"--"Et \_apparuit\_ illis Elias cum Mose, et erant colloquentes

Jesu."--\_Montanus\_. "Et \_visus est\_ eis Elias cum Mose, qui colloquebantur

cum Jesu."--\_Beza\_. This is as discrepant as our version, though not so

ambiguous. The French Bible avoids the incongruity: "Et iis virent paroître

\_Moyse et Elie\_, qui s'entretenoient avec Jésus." That is, "And there

appeared to them \_Moses and Elias\_, who were talking with Jesus." Perhaps

the closest and best version of the Greek would be, "And there appeared to

them Elias, with Moses;[397] and \_these two\_ were talking with Jesus."

There is, in our Bible, an other instance of the construction now in

question; but it has no support from the Septuagint, the Vulgate, or the

French: to wit, "The second [lot came forth] to Gedaliah, \_who with\_ his

brethren and sons \_were\_ twelve."--\_1 Chron.\_, xxv, 9. Better: "\_and he\_,

his brethren, and \_his\_ sons, were twelve."

OBS. 20.--Cobbett, who, though he wrote several grammars, was but a very

superficial grammarian, seems never to have doubted the propriety of

putting \_with\_ for \_and\_; and yet he was confessedly not a little puzzled

to find out when to use a singular, and when a plural verb, after a

nominative with such "a sort of addition made to it." The 246th paragraph

of his English Grammar is a long and fruitless attempt to fix a rule for

the guidance of the learner in this matter. After dashing off a culpable

example, "Sidmouth, \_with\_ Oliver the \_spye\_, have brought Brandreth to the

block;" or, as his late editions have it, "The \_Tyrant, with\_ the \_Spy,

have\_ brought \_Peter\_ to the block." He adds: "We hesitate which to employ,

the singular or the plural verb; that is to say, \_has\_ or \_have\_. The

meaning must be our guide. If we mean, that the act has been done by the

Tyrant himself, and that the spy has been a mere involuntary agent, then we

ought to use the singular; but if we believe that the spy has been a

co-operator, an associate, an accomplice, then we must use the plural

verb." Ay, truly; but must we not also, in the latter case, use \_and\_, and

not \_with\_? After some further illustrations, he says: "When \_with\_ means

\_along with, together with, in Company with\_, and the like, it is nearly

the same as \_and\_; and then the plural verb must be used: [as,] 'He, with

his brothers, \_are\_ able to do much.' Not, '\_is\_ able to do much.' If the

pronoun be used instead of \_brothers\_, it will be in the objective case:

'He, \_with\_ them, \_are\_ able to do much.' But this is \_no impediment\_ to

the including of the noun (represented by \_them\_) in the nominative." I

wonder what would be an impediment to the absurdities of such a dogmatist!

The following is his last example: "'Zeal, with discretion, \_do\_ much;' and

not '\_does\_ much;' for we mean, on the contrary, that it \_does nothing\_. It

is the meaning that must determine which of the numbers we ought to

employ." This author's examples are all fictions of his own, and such of

them as here have a plural verb, are wrong. His rule is also wrong, and

contrary to the best authority. St. Paul says to Timothy, "Godliness \_with\_

contentment \_is\_ great gain:"--\_1 Tim.\_, vi, 6. This text is right; but

Cobbett's principle would go to prove it erroneous. Is he the only man who

has ever had a right notion of its \_meaning\_? or is he not rather at fault

in his interpretations?

OBS. 21.--There is one other apparent exception to Rule 16th, (or perhaps a

real one,) in which there is either an ellipsis of the preposition \_with\_,

or else the verb is made singular because the first noun only is its true

subject, and the others are explanatory nominatives to which the same verb

must be understood in the plural number; as, "\_A torch\_, snuff and all,

\_goes out\_ in a moment, when dipped in the vapour."--ADDISON: \_in Johnson's

Dict., w. All\_. "Down \_comes\_ the \_tree\_, nest, eagles, and all."--See

\_All, ibidem\_. Here \_goes\_ and \_comes\_ are necessarily made singular, the

former agreeing with \_torch\_ and the latter with \_tree\_; and, if the other

nouns, which are like an explanatory parenthesis, are nominatives, as they

appear to me to be, they must be subjects of \_go\_ and \_come\_ understood.

Cobbett teaches us to say, "The bag, \_with\_ the guineas and dollars in it,

\_were\_ stolen," and not, \_was\_ stolen. "For," says he, "if we say \_was\_

stolen, it is possible for us to mean, that the \_bag only\_ was

stolen,"--\_English Gram.\_, ¶ 246. And I suppose he would say, "The bag,

guineas, dollars, and all, \_were\_ stolen," and not, "\_was\_ stolen;" for

here a rule of syntax might be urged, in addition to his false argument

from the sense. But the meaning of the former sentence is, "The bag was

stolen, with the guineas and dollars in it;" and the meaning of the latter

is, "The bag was stolen, guineas, dollars, and all." Nor can there be any

doubt about the meaning, place the words which way you will; and whatever,

in either case, may be the true construction of the words in the

parenthetical or explanatory phrase, they should not, I think, prevent the

verb from agreeing with the first noun only. But if the other nouns

intervene without affecting this concord, and without a preposition to

govern them, it may be well to distinguish them in the punctuation; as,

"The bag, (guineas, dollars, and all,) was stolen."

NOTES TO RULE XVI.

NOTE I.--When the conjunction \_and\_ between two nominatives appears to

require a plural verb, but such form of the verb is not agreeable, it is

better to reject or change the connective, that the verb may stand

correctly in the singular number; as, "There \_is\_ a peculiar force \_and\_

beauty in this figure."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 224. Better: "There is

a peculiar force, \_as well as a peculiar\_ beauty, in this figure." "What

\_means\_ this restless stir and commotion of mind?"--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

242. Better: "What means this restless stir, \_this\_ commotion of mind?"

NOTE II.--When two subjects or antecedents are connected, one of which is

taken affirmatively, and the other negatively, they belong to different

propositions; and the verb or pronoun must agree with the affirmative

subject, and be understood to the other: as "Diligent \_industry\_, and not

mean savings, \_produces\_ honourable competence."--"Not a loud \_voice\_ but

strong \_proofs bring\_ conviction."--"My \_poverty\_, but not my will,

\_consents\_."--\_Shakespeare\_.

NOTE III.--When two subjects or antecedents are connected by \_as well as,

but\_, or \_save\_, they belong to different propositions; and, (unless one of

them is preceded by the adverb \_not\_,) the verb and pronoun must agree with

the former and be understood to the latter: as, "\_Veracity\_, as well as

justice, \_is\_ to be our rule of life."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 283. "The

lowest \_mechanic\_, as well as the richest citizen, \_may boast\_ that

thousands of \_his\_ fellow-creatures are employed for \_him\_."--\_Percival's

Tales\_, ii, 177. "These \_principles\_, as well as every just rule of

criticism, \_are founded\_ upon the sensitive part of our nature."--\_Kames,

El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. xxvi. "\_Nothing\_ but wailings \_was\_

heard."--"\_None\_ but thou \_can aid\_ us."--"No mortal \_man\_, save he," &c.,

"\_had e'er survived\_ to say \_he\_ saw."--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

NOTE IV.--When two or more subjects or antecedents are preceded by the

adjective \_each, every\_, or \_no\_, they are taken separately; and, (except

\_no\_ be followed by a plural noun,) they require the verb and pronoun to be

in the singular number: as, "No rank, no honour, no fortune, no condition

in life, \_makes\_ the guilty mind happy."--"Every phrase and every figure

\_which\_ he uses, \_tends\_ to render the picture more lively and

complete."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 179.

"And every sense, and every heart, \_is\_ joy."--\_Thomson\_.

"Each beast, each insect, happy in \_its\_ own."--\_Pope\_.

NOTE V.--When any words or terms are to be taken conjointly as subjects or

antecedents, the conjunction \_and\_, (in preference to \_with, or, nor\_, or

any thing else,) must connect them. The following sentence is therefore

inaccurate; \_with\_ should be \_and\_; or else \_were\_ should be \_was\_: "One of

them, [the] wife of Thomas Cole, \_with\_ her husband, \_were\_ shot down, the

others escaped."--\_Hutchinson's Hist.\_, Vol. ii, p. 86. So, in the

following couplet, \_or\_ should be \_and\_, or else \_engines\_ should be

\_engine\_:

"What if the head, the eye, \_or\_ ear repined,

To serve mere \_engines\_ to the ruling mind?"--\_Pope\_.

NOTE VI.--Improper omissions must be supplied; but when there occurs a true

ellipsis in the construction of joint nominatives or joint antecedents, the

verb or pronoun must agree with them in the plural, just as if all the

words were expressed: as, "The \_second\_ and the \_third Epistle\_ of John

\_are\_ each but one short chapter."--"The metaphorical and the literal

meaning \_are\_ improperly mixed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 339. "The Doctrine

of Words, separately consider'd, and in a Sentence, \_are\_ Things distinct

enough."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, Pref., p. iv. Better perhaps: "The doctrine

of words separately considered, and \_that of words\_ in a sentence, \_are\_

things distinct enough."

"The \_Curii's\_ and the \_Camilli's\_ little \_field\_,

To vast extended territories \_yield\_."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. i, l. 320.

NOTE VII.--Two or more distinct subject phrases connected by \_and\_, require

a plural verb, and generally a plural noun too, if a nominative follow the

verb; as, "\_To be wise in our own eyes, to be wise in the opinion of the

world\_, and \_to be wise in the sight of our Creator\_, are three things so

very different, as rarely to coincide."--\_Blair\_. "'\_This picture of my

friend\_,' and '\_This picture of my friend's\_,' suggest very different

ideas."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 71; \_Murray's\_, i, 178.

"Read of this burgess--on the stone \_appear\_,

How worthy he! how virtuous! and how dear!"--\_Crabbe\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XVI.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE VERB AFTER JOINT NOMINATIVES.

"So much ability and merit is seldom found."--\_Murray's Key\_, 12mo, p. 18;

\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 190.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_is\_ is in the singular number, and

does not correctly agree with its two nominatives, \_ability\_ and \_merit\_,

which are connected by \_and\_, and taken conjointly. But, according to Rule

16th, "When a verb has two or more nominatives connected by \_and\_, it must

agree with them jointly in the plural, because they are taken together."

Therefore, \_is\_ should be \_are\_; thus, "So much ability and merit \_are\_

seldom found." Or: "So much ability and \_so much\_ merit \_are\_ seldom

found."]

"The syntax and etymology of the language is thus spread before

the learner."--\_Bullions's English Gram.\_, 2d Edition, Rec., p. iii. "Dr.

Johnson tells us, that in English poetry the accent and the quantity of

syllables is the same thing."--\_J. Q. Adams's Rhet.\_, ii, 213. "Their

general scope and tendency, having never been clearly apprehended, is not

remembered at all."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 126. "The soil and sovereignty

was not purchased of the natives."--\_Knapp's Lect. on Amer. Lit.\_, p. 55.

"The boldness, freedom, and variety of our blank verse, is infinitely more

favourable than rhyme, to all kinds of sublime poetry."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 40. "The vivacity and sensibility of the Greeks seems to have been much

greater than ours."--\_Ib.\_, p. 253. "For sometimes the Mood and Tense is

signified by the Verb, sometimes they are signified of the Verb by

something else.'"--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 254. "The Verb and the Noun

making a complete Sense, which the Participle and the Noun does

not."--\_Ib.\_, p. 255. "The growth and decay of passions and emotions,

traced through all their mazes, is a subject too extensive for an

undertaking like the present."--\_Kames El. of Crit.\_, i, 108. "The true

meaning and etymology of some of his words was lost."--\_Knight, on the

Greek Alph.\_, p. 37. "When the force and direction of personal satire is no

longer understood."--\_Junius\_, p. 5. "The frame and condition of man admits

of no other principle."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 54. "Some considerable

time and care was necessary."--\_Ib.\_, ii 150. "In consequence of this idea,

much ridicule and censure has been thrown upon Milton."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 428. "With rational beings, nature and reason is the same

thing."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 111. "And the flax and the barley was

smitten."--\_Exod.\_, ix, 31. "The colon, and semicolon, divides a period,

this with, and that without a connective."--\_J. Ware's Gram.\_, p. 27.

"Consequently wherever space and time is found, there God must also

be."--\_Sir Isaac Newton\_. "As the past tense and perfect participle of

\_love\_ ends in \_ed\_, it is regular."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, p. 40; New

Edition, p. 66. "But the usual arrangement and nomenclature prevents this

from being readily seen."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 3. "\_Do\_ and

\_did\_ simply implies opposition or emphasis."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p.

41. "\_I\_ and \_another\_ make \_we\_, plural: \_Thou\_ and \_another\_ is as much

as \_ye\_: \_He, she\_, or \_it\_ and \_another\_ make \_they\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 124. "I

and another, is as much as (we) the first Person Plural; Thou and another,

is as much as (ye) the second Person Plural; He, she, or it, and another,

is as much as (they) the third Person Plural."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 193;

\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 76. "God and thou art two, and thou and thy

neighbour are two."--\_The Love Conquest\_, p. 25. "Just as \_an\_ and \_a\_ has

arisen out of the numeral \_one\_."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo. 1850, §200.

"The tone and style of each of them, particularly the first and the last,

is very different."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 246. "Even as the roebuck and the

hart is eaten."--\_Deut.\_, xiii, 22. "Then I may conclude that two and three

makes not five."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 354. "Which at sundry times thou

and thy brethren hast received from us."--\_Ib.\_, i, 165. "Two and two is

four, and one is five."--POPE: \_Lives of the Poets\_, p. 490. "Humility and

knowledge with poor apparel, excels pride and ignorance under costly

array."--\_Day's Gram., Parsing Lesson\_, p. 100. "A page and a half has been

added to the section on composition."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, 5th Ed.,

Pref., p. vii. "Accuracy and expertness in this exercise is an important

acquisition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 71.

"Woods and groves are of thy dressing,

Hill and dale doth boast thy blessing."--\_Milton's Poems\_, p. 139.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE VERB BEFORE JOINT NOMINATIVES.

"There is a good and a bad, a right and a wrong in taste, as in other

things."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 21. "Whence has arisen much stiffness and

affectation."--\_Ib.\_, p. 133. "To this error is owing, in a great measure,

that intricacy and harshness, in his figurative language, which I before

remarked."--\_Ib.\_, p. 150; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 157. "Hence, in his Night

Thoughts, there prevails an obscurity and hardness in his style."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 150. "There is, however, in that work much good sense, and

excellent criticism."--\_Ib.\_, p. 401. "There is too much low wit and

scurrility in Plautus."--\_Ib.\_, p. 481. "There is too much reasoning and

refinement; too much pomp and studied beauty in them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 468.

"Hence arises the structure and characteristic expression of

exclamation."--\_Rush on the Voice\_, p. 229. "And such pilots is he and his

brethren, according to their own confession."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 314.

"Of whom is Hymeneus and Philetus: who concerning the truth have

erred."--\_2 Tim.\_, ii, 17. "Of whom is Hymeneus and Alexander; whom I have

delivered unto Satan."--\_1 Tim.\_, i, 20. "And so was James and John, the

sons of Zebedee."--\_Luke\_, v, 10. "Out of the same mouth proceedeth

blessing and cursing."--\_James\_, iii, 10. "Out of the mouth of the Most

High proceedeth not evil and good."--\_Lam.\_, iii, 38. "In which there is

most plainly a right and a wrong."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 215. "In this

sentence there is both an actor and an object."--\_Smith's Inductive Gram.\_,

p. 14. "In the breast-plate was placed the mysterious Urim and

Thummim."--\_Milman's Jews\_, i, 88. "What is the gender, number, and person

of those in the first?"--\_Smith's Productive Gram.\_, p. 19. "There seems to

be a familiarity and want of dignity in it."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 150.

"It has been often asked, what is Latin and Greek?"--\_Literary Convention\_,

p. 209. "For where does beauty and high wit But in your constellation

meet?"--\_Hudibras\_, p. 134. "Thence to the land where flows Ganges and

Indus."--\_Paradise Lost\_, B. ix, l. 81. "On these foundations seems to rest

the midnight riot and dissipation of modern assemblies."--\_Brown's

Estimate\_, ii, 46. "But what has disease, deformity, and filth, upon which

the thoughts can be allured to dwell?"--\_Johnson's Life of Swift\_, p. 492.

"How is the gender and number of the relative known?"--\_Bullions, Practical

Lessons\_, p. 32.

"High rides the sun, thick rolls the dust,

And feebler speeds the blow and thrust."--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

UNDER NOTE I.--CHANGE THE CONNECTIVE.

"In every language there prevails a certain structure and analogy of parts,

which is understood to give foundation to the most reputable

usage."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 90. "There runs through his whole manner, a

stiffness and affectation, which renders him very unfit to be considered a

general model."--\_Ib.\_, p. 102. "But where declamation and improvement in

speech is the sole aim"--\_Ib.\_, p. 257. "For it is by these chiefly, that

the train of thought, the course of reasoning, and the whole progress of

the mind, in continued discourse of all kinds, is laid open."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 103. "In all writing and discourse, the proper composition and

structure of sentnences is of the highest importance."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

101. "Here the wishful look and expectation of the beggar naturally leads

to a vivid conception of that which was the object of his

thoughts."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 386. "Who say, that the outward naming

of Christ, and signing of the cross, puts away devils."--\_Barclay's Works\_,

i, 146. "By which an oath and penalty was to be imposed upon the

members."--\_Junius\_, p. 6. "Light and knowledge, in what manner soever

afforded us, is equally from God."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 264. "For

instance, sickness and untimely death is the consequence of

intemperance."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "When grief, and blood ill-tempered vexeth

him."--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p. 256. "Does continuity and connexion

create sympathy and relation in the parts of the body?"--\_Collier's

Antoninus\_, p. 111. "His greatest concern, and highest enjoyment, was to be

approved in the sight of his Creator."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 224. "Know ye

not that there is a prince and a great man fallen this day in Israel?"--\_2

Sam\_, iii, 38. "What is vice and wickedness? No rarity, you may depend on

it."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 107. "There is also the fear and

apprehension of it."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 87. "The apostrophe and \_s\_,

('s,) is an abbreviation for \_is\_, the termination of the old English

genitive."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 17. "\_Ti, ce\_, and \_ci\_, when followed

by a vowel, usually has the sound of \_sh\_; as in \_partial, special,

ocean\_."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p. 15.

"Bitter constraint and sad occasion dear

Compels me to disturb your season due."--\_Milton's Lycidas\_.

"Debauches and excess, though with less noise,

As great a portion of mankind destroys."--\_Waller\_, p. 55.

UNDER NOTE II.--AFFIRMATION WITH NEGATION.

"Wisdom, and not wealth, procure esteem."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 156.

"Prudence, and not pomp, are the basis of his fame."--\_Ib.\_ "Not fear, but

labour have overcome him."--\_Ib.\_ "The decency, and not the abstinence,

make the difference."--\_Ib.\_ "Not her beauty, but her talents attracts

attention."--\_Ib.\_ "It is her talents, and not her beauty, that attracts

attention."--\_Ib.\_ "It is her beauty, and not her talents that attract

attention."--\_Ib.\_

"His belly, not his brains, this impulse give:

He'll grow immortal; for he cannot live."--\_Young, to Pope\_.

UNDER NOTE III.--AS WELL AS, BUT, OR SAVE.

"Common sense as well as piety tell us these are proper."--\_Family

Commentary\_, p. 64. "For without it the critic, as well as the undertaker,

ignorant of any rule, have nothing left but to abandon themselves to

chance."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 42. "And accordingly hatred as well as

love are extinguished by long absence."--\_Ib.\_, i, 113. "But at every turn

the richest melody as well as the sublimest sentiments are

conspicuous."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 121. "But it, as well as the lines immediately

subsequent, defy all translation."--\_Coleridge's Introduction\_, p. 96. "But

their religion, as well as their customs, and manners, were strangely

misrepresented."--BOLINGBROKE, ON HISTORY, p. 123; \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

192; \_Murray's Exercises\_, p. 47. "But his jealous policy, as well as the

fatal antipathy of Fonseca, were conspicuous."--\_Robertson's America\_, i,

191. "When their extent as well as their value were unknown."--\_Ib.\_, ii,

138. "The Etymology, as well as the Syntax, of the more difficult parts of

speech are reserved for his attention [at a later period]."--\_Parker and

Fox's E. Gram.\_, Part i, p. 3. "What I myself owe to him, no one but myself

know."--See \_Wright's Athens\_, p. 96. "None, but thou, O mighty prince!

canst avert the blow."--\_Inst.\_, p. 156. "Nothing, but frivolous

amusements, please the indolent."--\_Ib.\_

"Nought, save the gurglings of the rill, were heard."--\_G. B.\_

"All songsters, save the hooting owl, was mute."--\_G. B.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--EACH, EVERY, OR NO.

"Give every word, and every member, their due weight and force."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 110. "And to one of these belong every noun, and every third

person of every verb."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 74. "No law, no

restraint, no regulation, are required to keep him in bounds."--\_Literary

Convention\_, p. 260. "By that time, every window and every door in the

street were full of heads."--\_N. Y. Observer\_, No. 503. "Every system of

religion, and every school of philosophy, stand back from this field, and

leave Jesus Christ alone, the solitary example"--\_The Corner Stone\_, p. 17.

"Each day, and each hour, bring their portion of duty."--\_Inst.\_, p. 156.

"And every one that was in distress, and every one that was in debt, and

every one that was discontented, gathered themselves unto him."--\_1 Sam.\_,

xxii, 2. "Every private Christian and member of the church ought to read

and peruse the Scriptures, that they may know their faith and belief

founded upon them."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 340. "And every mountain and

island were moved out of their places."--\_Rev.\_, vi, 14.

"No bandit fierce, no tyrant mad with pride,

No cavern'd hermit rest self-satisfied."

UNDER NOTE V.--WITH, OR, &c. FOR AND.

"The side A, with the sides B and C, compose the triangle."--\_Tobitt's

Gram.\_, p. 48; \_Felch's\_, 69; \_Ware's\_, 12. "The stream, the rock, or the

tree, must each of them stand forth, so as to make a figure in the

imagination."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 390. "While this, with euphony,

constitute, finally, the whole."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 293. "The bag,

with the guineas and dollars in it, were stolen."--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_,

¶246. "Sobriety, with great industry and talent, enable a man to perform

great deeds."--\_Ib.\_, ¶245. "The \_it\_, together with the verb \_to be\_,

express states of being."--\_Ib.\_, ¶190. "Where Leonidas the Spartan king,

with his chosen band, fighting for their country, were cut off to the last

man."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 203. "And Leah also, with her

children, came near and bowed themselves."--\_Gen.\_, xxxiii, 7. "The First

or Second will, either of them, by themselves coalesce with the Third, but

not with each other."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 74. "The whole must centre in

the query, whether Tragedy or Comedy are hurtful and dangerous

representations?"--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 215. "Grief as well as joy

are infectious: the emotions they raise in the spectator resemble them

perfectly."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 157. "But in all other words the

\_Qu\_ are both sounded."--\_Ensell's Gram.\_, p. 16. "\_Qu\_ (which are always

together) have the sound of \_ku\_ or \_k\_, as in \_queen, opaque\_."--

\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p. 45. "In this selection the \_ai\_ form distinct

syllables."--\_Walker's Key\_, p. 290. "And a considerable village, with

gardens, fields, &c., extend around on each side of the square."--

\_Liberator\_, Vol. ix, p. 140. "Affection, or interest, guide our notions

and behaviour in the affairs of life; imagination and passion affect the

sentiments that we entertain in matters of taste."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p.

171. "She heard none of those intimations of her defects, which envy,

petulance, or anger, produce among children."--\_Rambler\_, No. 189. "The

King, with the Lords and Commons, constitute an excellent form of

government."--\_Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 242. "If we say, 'I am the man, who

commands you,' the relative clause, with the antecedent \_man\_, form the

predicate."--\_Ib.\_, p. 266.

"The spacious firmament on high,

With all the blue ethereal sky,

And spangled heav'ns, a shining frame,

Their great Original proclaim."

--ADDISON. \_Murray's Key\_, p. 174; \_Day's Gram.\_, p. 92;

\_Farnum's\_, 106.

UNDER NOTE VI.--ELLIPTICAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

"There is a reputable and a disreputable practice."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol.

i, p. 350. "This and this man was born in her."--\_Milton's Psalms\_,

lxxxvii. "This and that man was born in her."--\_Psal.\_ lxxxvii, 5. "This

and that man was born there."--\_Hendrick's Gram.\_, p. 94. "Thus \_le\_ in

\_l~ego\_ and \_l~egi\_ seem to be sounded equally long."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p.

253; \_Gould's\_, 243. "A distinct and an accurate articulation forms the

groundwork of good delivery."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 25. "How is vocal

and written language understood?"--\_C. W. Sanders, Spelling-Book\_, p. 7.

"The good, the wise, and the learned man is an ornament to human

society."--\_Bartlett's Reader\_. "On some points, the expression of song and

speech is identical."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 425. "To every room there

was an open and secret passage."--\_Johnson's Rasselas\_, p. 13. "There iz

such a thing az tru and false taste, and the latter az often directs

fashion, az the former."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 401. "There is such a

thing as a prudent and imprudent institution of life, with regard to our

health and our affairs"--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 210. "The lot of the

outcasts of Israel and the dispersed of Judah, however different in one

respect, have in another corresponded with wonderful exactness."--\_Hope of

Israel\_, p. 301. "On these final syllables the radical and vanishing

movement is performed."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 64. "To be young or old,

good, just, or the contrary, are physical or moral events."--SPURZHEIM:

\_Felch's Comp. Gram.\_, p. 29. "The eloquence of George Whitfield and of

John Wesley was of a very different character each from the other."--\_Dr.

Sharp\_. "The affinity of \_m\_ for the series \_b\_, and of \_n\_ for the series

\_t\_, give occasion for other Euphonic changes."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §77.

"Pylades' soul and mad Orestes', was

In these, if we believe Pythagoras"--\_Cowley's Poems\_, p. 3.

UNDER NOTE VII.--DISTINCT SUBJECT PHRASES.

"To be moderate in our views, and to proceed temperately in the pursuit of

them, is the best way to ensure success."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 206. "To

be of any species, and to have a right to the name of that species, is all

one."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 300. "With whom to will and to do is the

same."--\_Jamieson's Sacred History\_, Vol. ii, p. 22. "To profess, and to

possess, is very different things."--\_Inst.\_, p. 156. "To do justly, to

love mercy, and to walk humbly with God, is duties of universal

obligation."--\_Ib.\_ "To be round or square, to be solid or fluid, to be

large or small, and to be moved swiftly or slowly, is all equally alien

from the nature of thought."--\_Ib.\_ "The resolving of a sentence into its

elements or parts of speech and stating the Accidents which belong to

these, is called PARSING."--\_Bullion's Pract. Lessons\_, p. 9. "To spin and

to weave, to knit and to sew, was once a girl's employment; but now to

dress and catch a beau, is all she calls enjoyment."--\_Lynn News\_, Vol. 8,

No. 1.

RULE XVII.--FINITE VERBS.

When a Verb has two or more nominatives connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, it must

agree with them singly, and not as if taken together: as, "Fear \_or\_

jealousy \_affects\_ him."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 133. "Nor eye, \_nor\_

listening ear, an object \_finds\_: creation sleeps."--\_Young\_. "Neither

character \_nor\_ dialogue \_was\_ yet understood."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p.

151.

"The wife, where danger \_or\_ dishonour \_lurks\_,

Safest and seemliest by her husband stays."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, ix, 267.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XVII.

OBS. 1.--To this rule, so far as its application is practicable, there are

properly no exceptions; for, \_or\_ and \_nor\_ being disjunctive conjunctions,

the nominatives are of course to assume the verb separately, and as

agreeing with each. Such agreement seems to be positively required by the

alternativeness of the expression. Yet the ancient grammarians seldom, if

at all, insisted on it. In Latin and Greek, a plural verb is often employed

with singular nominatives thus connected; as,

"Tunc nec mens mini, nec color

Certa sede \_manent\_."--HORACE. See \_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 133.

[Greek: "Ean de adelphos æ adelphæ lumnoi huparchosi, kai leipomenoi osi

tæs ephæmerou trophæs."]--\_James\_, ii. 15. And the best scholars have

sometimes \_improperly\_ imitated this construction in English; as, "Neither

Virgil nor Homer \_were\_ deficient in any of the former beauties."--DRYDEN'S

PREFACE: \_Brit. Poets\_, Vol. iii, p. 168. "Neither Saxon nor Roman \_have

availed\_ to add any idea to his [Plato's] categories."--R. W. EMERSON:

\_Liberator\_, No. 996.

"He comes--nor want \_nor\_ cold his course \_delay\_:

Hide, blushing Glory! hide Pultowa's day."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

"No monstrous height, \_or\_ breadth, \_or\_ length, \_appear\_;

The whole at once is bold and regular."--\_Pope, on Crit.\_, l. 250.

OBS. 2.--When two collective nouns of the singular form are connected by

\_or\_ or \_nor\_, the verb may agree with them in the plural number, because

such agreement is adapted to each of them, according to Rule 15th; as, "Why

\_mankind\_, or such a \_part\_ of mankind, are placed in this

condition."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 213. "But neither the \_Board\_ of

Control nor the \_Court\_ of Directors \_have\_ any scruples about sanctioning

the abuses of which I have spoken."--\_Glory and Shame of England\_, Vol. ii,

p. 70.

OBS. 3.--When a verb has nominatives of different persons or numbers,

connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, an explicit concord with each is impossible;

because the verb cannot be of different persons or numbers at the same

time; nor is it so, even when its form is made the same in all the persons

and numbers: thus, "I, thou, [or] he, \_may affirm\_; we, ye, or they, \_may

affirm\_."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, p. 36. Respecting the proper

management of the verb when its nominatives thus disagree, the views of our

grammarians are not exactly coincident. Few however are ignorant enough, or

rash enough, to deny that there may be an implicit or implied concord in

such cases,--a \_zeugma\_ of the verb in English, as well as of the verb or

of the adjective in Latin or Greek. Of this, the following is a brief

example: "But \_he nor I feel\_ more."--\_Dr. Young\_, Night iii, p. 35. And I

shall by-and-by add others--enough, I hope, to confute those false critics

who condemn all such phraseology.

OBS. 4.--W. Allen's rule is this: "If the nominatives are of different

numbers or persons, the verb agrees with \_the last\_; as, he \_or\_ his

\_brothers were\_ there; neither \_you nor I am\_ concerned."--\_English Gram.\_,

p. 133. Lindley Murray, and others, say: (1.) "When singular pronouns, or a

noun and pronoun, of different \_persons\_, are disjunctively connected, the

verb must agree with that person which is placed \_nearest to it\_: as, 'I or

thou \_art\_ to blame;' 'Thou or I \_am\_ in fault;' 'I, or thou, or he, \_is\_

the author of it;' 'George or I \_am\_ the person.' But it would be better to

say; 'Either I am to blame, or thou art,' &c. (2.) When a disjunctive

occurs between a singular noun, \_or\_ pronoun, and a plural one, the verb is

made to agree with the \_plural\_ noun \_and\_ pronoun: as, 'Neither poverty

nor riches \_were\_ injurious to him;' 'I or they \_were\_ offended by it.' But

in this case, the plural noun \_or\_ pronoun, when \_it\_ can conveniently be

\_done\_, should be placed next to the verb."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 151;

\_Smith's New Gram.\_, 128; \_Alger's Gram.\_, 54; \_Comly's\_, 78 and 79;

\_Merchant's\_, 86; \_Picket's\_, 175; and many more. There are other

grammarians who teach, that the verb must agree with the nominative which

is placed next to it, whether this be singular or plural; as, "Neither the

servants nor the master \_is\_ respected;"--"Neither the master nor the

servants \_are\_ respected."--\_Alexander Murray's Gram.\_, p. 65. "But if

neither the writings nor the author \_is\_ in existence, the Imperfect should

be used."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 107.

OBS. 5.--On this point, a new author has just given us the following

precept and criticism: "Never connect by \_or\_, or \_nor\_, two or more names

or substitutes that have the same \_asserter\_ [i.e. \_verb\_] depending on

them for sense, if when taken separately, they require different forms of

the \_asserters\_. Examples. 'Neither you nor I \_am concerned\_. Either he

\_or\_ thou \_wast\_ there. Either they \_or\_ he is faulty.' These examples are

as erroneous as it would be to say, 'Neither \_you am\_ concerned, nor am I.'

'Either he \_wast\_ there, or thou wast.' 'Either \_they is\_ faulty, or he

is.' The sentences should stand thus--'Neither of us \_is\_ concerned,' or,

'neither \_are you\_ concerned, nor \_am I\_.' 'Either \_he was\_ there, or \_thou

wast\_.' 'Either \_they are\_ faulty, or \_he is\_. They are, however, in all

their impropriety, writen [sic--KTH] according to the principles of Goold

Brown's \_grammar!\_ and the theories of most of the former

writers."--\_Oliver B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 252. We shall see by-and-by who

is right.

OBS. 6.--Cobbett also--while he approves of such English as, "\_He, with

them, are\_ able to do much," for, "\_He and they are\_ able to do

much"--condemns expressly every possible example in which the verb has not

a full and explicit concord with each of its nominatives, if they are

connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_. His doctrine is this: "If nominatives of

different \_numbers\_ present themselves, we must not give them a verb which

\_disagrees\_ with either the one or the other. We must not say: 'Neither the

halter \_nor\_ the bayonets \_are\_ sufficient to prevent us from obtaining our

rights.' We must avoid this bad grammar by using a different form of words:

as, 'We are to be prevented from obtaining our rights by neither the halter

nor the bayonets.' And, why should we \_wish\_ to write bad grammar, if we

can express our meaning in good grammar?"--\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶ 242.

This question would have more force, if the correction here offered did not

convey a meaning \_widely different\_ from that of the sentence corrected.

But he goes on: "We cannot say, 'They or I \_am\_ in fault; I, or they, or

he, \_is\_ the author of it; George or I \_am\_ the person.' Mr. Lindley Murray

says, that we \_may\_ use these phrases; and that we have only to take care

that the verb agree with that person which is \_placed nearest\_ to it; but,

he says also, that it would be \_better\_ to avoid such phrases by giving a

different turn to our words. I do not like to leave any thing to chance or

to discretion, when we have a \_clear principle\_ for our guide."--\_Ib.\_, ¶

243. This author's "clear principle" is merely his own confident

assumption, that every form of figurative or implied agreement, every thing

which the old grammarians denominated \_zeugma\_, is at once to be condemned

as a solecism. He is however supported by an other late writer of much

greater merit. See \_Churchill's New Gram.\_, pp. 142 and 312.

OBS. 7.--If, in lieu of their fictitious examples, our grammarians would

give us actual quotations from reputable authors, their instructions would

doubtless gain something in accuracy, and still more in authority. "\_I or

they were offended by it\_," and, "\_I, or thou, or he, is the author of

it\_," are expressions that I shall not defend. They imply an \_egotistical\_

speaker, who either does not know, or will not tell, whether he is

\_offended\_ or not,--whether he \_is the author\_ or not! Again, there are

expressions that are unobjectionable, and yet not conformable to any of the

rules just quoted. That nominatives may be correctly connected by \_or\_ or

\_nor\_ without an express agreement of the verb with each of them, is a

point which can be proved to as full certainty as almost any other in

grammar; Churchill, Cobbett, and Peirce to the contrary notwithstanding.

But with which of the nominatives the verb shall expressly agree, or to

which of them it may most properly be understood, is a matter not easy to

be settled by any \_sure\_ general rule. Nor is the lack of such a rule a

very important defect, though the inculcation of a false or imperfect one

may be. So judged at least the ancient grammarians, who noticed and named

almost every possible form of the zeugma, without censuring any as being

ungrammatical. In the Institutes of English Grammar, I noted first the

usual form of this concord, and then the allowable exceptions; but a few

late writers, we see, denounce every form of it, exceptions and all: and,

standing alone in their notions of the figure, value their own authority

more than that of all other critics together.

OBS. 8.--In English, as in other languages, when a verb has discordant

nominatives connected disjunctively, it most commonly agrees expressly with

that which is nearest, and only by implication, with the more remote; as,

"When some word or words \_are\_ dependent on the attribute."--\_Webster's

Philos. Gram.\_, p. 153. "To the first of these qualities, dulness or

refinements \_are\_ dangerous enemies."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol. ii, p. 15.

"He hazards his own life with that of his enemy, and one or both \_are\_ very

\_honorably\_ murdered."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 235. "The consequence is,

that they frown upon everyone whose faults or negligence \_interrupts\_ or

\_retards\_ their lessons."--\_W. C. Woodbridge: Lit. Conv.\_, p. 114. "Good

intentions, or at least sincerity of purpose, \_was\_ never denied

her."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 43. "Yet this proves not that either he or we

\_judge\_ them to be the rule."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 157. "First clear

yourselves of popery before you or thou \_dost throw\_ it upon us."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 169. "\_Is\_ the gospel or glad tidings of this salvation brought nigh

unto all?"--\_Ib.\_, i, 362. "Being persuaded, that either they, or their

cause, \_is\_ naught."--\_Ib.\_, i, 504. "And the reader may judge whether he

or I \_do\_ most fully acknowledge man's fall."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 332. "To do

justice to the Ministry, they have not yet pretended that any one, or any

two, of the three Estates, \_have\_ power to make a new law, without the

concurrence of the third."--\_Junius\_, Letter xvii. "The forest, or

hunting-grounds, \_are\_ deemed the property of the tribe."--\_Robertson's

America\_, i, 313. "Birth or titles \_confer\_ no preëminence."--\_Ib.\_, ii,

184. "Neither tobacco nor hides \_were\_ imported from Caraccas into

Spain."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 507. "The keys or seed-vessel of the maple \_has\_ two

large side-wings."--\_The Friend\_, vii, 97. "An example or two \_are\_

sufficient to illustrate the general observation."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of

Lang.\_, i, 58.

"Not thou, nor those thy factious arts engage,

\_Shall\_ reap that harvest of rebellious rage."--\_Dryden\_, p. 60.

OBS. 9.--But when the remoter nominative is the principal word, and the

nearer one is expressed parenthetically, the verb agrees literally with the

former, and only by implication, with the latter; as, "One example, (or

ten,) \_says\_ nothing against it."--\_Leigh Hunt\_. "And we, (or future ages,)

\_may\_ possibly \_have\_ a proof of it."--\_Bp. Butler\_. So, when the

alternative is merely in the \_words\_, not in the \_thought\_, the former term

is sometimes considered the principal one, and is therefore allowed to

control the verb; but there is always a harshness in this mixture of

different numbers, and, to render such a construction tolerable, it is

necessary to read the latter term like a parenthesis, and make the former

emphatic: as, "A \_parenthesis\_, or brackets, \_consists\_ of two angular

strokes, or hooks, enclosing one or more words."--\_Whiting's Reader\_, p.

28. "To show us that our own \_schemes\_, or prudence, \_have\_ no share in our

advancements."--\_Addison\_. "The Mexican \_figures\_, or picture-writing,

\_represent\_ things, not words; \_they\_ exhibit images to the eye, not ideas

to the understanding."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 243; \_English Reader\_, p.

xiii. "At Travancore, \_Koprah\_, or dried cocoa-nut kernels, \_is\_

monopolized by government."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 12. "The \_Scriptures\_,

or Bible, \_are\_ the only authentic source."--\_Bp. Tomline's Evidences\_.

"Nor foes nor fortune \_take\_ this power away;

And is my Abelard less kind than \_they\_?"--\_Pope\_, p. 334.

OBS. 10.--The English adjective being indeclinable, we have no examples of

some of the forms of zeugma which occur in Latin and Greek. But adjectives

differing in \_number\_, are sometimes connected without a repetition of the

noun; and, in the agreement of the verb, the noun which is understood, is

less apt to be regarded than that which is expressed, though the latter be

more remote; as, "There \_are one or two\_ small \_irregularities\_ to be

noted."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 63. "There \_are one or two persons\_, and but

one or two."--\_Hazlitt's Lectures\_. "There \_are one or two\_

others."--\_Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 206. "There \_are one or two\_."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 319. "There \_are one or more\_ seminaries in every

province."--\_H. E. Dwight: Lit. Conv.\_, p. 133. "Whether \_one or more\_ of

the clauses \_are\_ to be considered the nominative case."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

Vol. i, p. 150. "So that, I believe, there \_is\_ not \_more\_ than \_one\_

genuine example extant."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 10. "There

\_is\_, properly, no \_more\_ than \_one\_ pause or rest in the

sentence."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 329; \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 125.

"Sometimes a small \_letter or two is\_ added to the capital."--\_Adam's Lat.

Gram.\_, p. 223; \_Gould's\_, 283. Among the examples in the seventh paragraph

above, there is one like this last, but with a plural verb; and if either

is objectionable, \_is\_ should here be \_are\_. The preceding example, too, is

such as I would not imitate. To L. Murray, the following sentence seemed

false syntax, because \_one\_ does not agree with \_persons\_: "He saw \_one or

more persons\_ enter the garden."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, Rule 8th, p. 54. In

his Key, he has it thus: "He saw one \_person\_, or \_more than one\_, enter

the garden."--\_Oct. Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 189. To me, this stiff

\_correction\_, which many later grammarians have copied, seems worse than

none. And the effect of the principle may be noticed in Murray's style

elsewhere; as, "When a \_semicolon, or more than one\_, have

preceded."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, i, p. 277; \_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 288. Here a

ready writer would be very apt to prefer one of the following phrases:

"When a semicolon \_or two\_ have preceded,"--"When \_one or two semicolons\_

have preceded,"--"When \_one or more semicolons\_ have preceded." It is

better to write by guess, than to become systematically awkward in

expression.

OBS. 11.--In Greek and Latin, the pronoun of the first person, according to

our critics, is \_generally\_[398] placed first; as, "[Greek: Ego kai su ta

dikaia poiæsomen]. Xen."--\_Milnes's Gr. Gram.\_, p. 120. That is, "\_Ego et

tu justa faciemus\_." Again: "\_Ego et Cicero valemus\_. Cic."--\_Buchanan's

Pref.\_, p. x; \_Adam's Gram.\_, 206; \_Gould's\_, 203. "I and Cicero are

well."--\_Ib.\_ But, in English, a modest speaker usually gives to others the

precedence, and mentions himself last; as, "He, or thou, or I, must

go."--"Thou and I will do what is right."--"Cicero and I are well."--\_Dr.

Adam\_.[399] Yet, in speaking of himself and his \_dependants\_, a person most

commonly takes rank before them; as, "Your inestimable letters supported

\_myself, my wife\_, and \_children\_, in adversity."--\_Lucien Bonaparte,

Charlemagne\_, p. v. "And I shall be destroyed, \_I\_ and \_my

house\_."--\_Gen.\_, xxxiv, 30. And in acknowledging a fault, misfortune, or

censure, any speaker may assume the first place; as, "Both \_I and thou\_ are

in the fault."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 207. "Both \_I and you\_ are in

fault."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. ix. "Trusty did not do it; \_I and Robert\_

did it."--\_Edgeworth's Stories\_.

"With critic scales, weighs out the partial wit,

What \_I\_, or \_you\_, or \_he\_, or \_no one\_ writ."

--\_Lloyd's Poems\_, p. 162.

OBS. 12.--According to the theory of this work, verbs themselves are not

unfrequently connected, one to an other, by \_and, or\_, or \_nor\_; so that

two or more of them, being properly in the same construction, may be parsed

as agreeing with the same nominative: as, "So that the blind and dumb

[\_man\_] both \_spake\_ and \_saw\_."--\_Matt.\_, xii, 22. "That no one \_might

buy\_ or \_sell\_."--\_Rev.\_, xiii, 17. "Which \_see\_ not, nor \_hear\_, nor

\_know\_."--\_Dan.\_, v, 23. We have certainly very many examples like these,

in which it is neither convenient nor necessary to suppose an ellipsis of

the nominative before the latter verb, or before all but the first, as most

of our grammarians do, whenever they find two or more finite verbs

connected in this manner. It is true, the nominative may, in most

instances, be repeated without injury to the sense; but this fact is no

proof of such an ellipsis; because many a sentence which is not incomplete,

may possibly take additional words without change of meaning. But these

authors, (as I have already suggested under the head of conjunctions,) have

not been very careful of their own consistency. If they teach, that, "Every

finite verb has its own separate nominative, either expressed or implied,"

which idea Murray and others seem to have gathered from Lowth; or if they

say, that, "Conjunctions really unite sentences, when they appear to unite

only words," which notion they may have acquired from Harris; what room is

there for that common assertion, that, "Conjunctions connect the same moods

and tenses of verbs," which is a part of Murray's eighteenth rule, and

found in most of our grammars? For no agreement is usually required between

verbs that have separate nominatives; and if we supply a nominative

wherever we do not find one for each verb, then in fact no two verbs will

ever be connected by any conjunction.

OBS. 13.--What agreement there must be, between verbs that are in the same

construction, it is not easy to determine with certainty. Some of the Latin

grammarians tell us, that certain conjunctions connect "sometimes similar

moods and tenses, and sometimes similar moods but different tenses." See

\_Prat's Grammatica Latina, Octavo\_, Part ii, p. 95. Ruddiman, Adam, and

Grant, omit the concord of tenses, and enumerate certain conjunctions which

"couple like cases and moods." But all of them acknowledge some exceptions

to their rules. The instructions of Lindley Murray and others, on this

point, may be summed up in the following canon: "When verbs are connected

by a conjunction, they must either agree in mood, tense, and form, or have

separate nominatives expressed." This rule, (with a considerable exception

to it, which other authors had not noticed.) was adopted by myself in the

Institutes of English Grammar, and also retained in the Brief Abstract of

that work, entitled, The First Lines of English Grammar. It there stands as

the thirteenth in the series of principal rules; but, as there is no

occasion to refer to it in the exercise of parsing, I now think, a less

prominent place may suit it as well or better. The principle may be

considered as being less certain and less important than most of the usual

rules of syntax: I shall therefore both modify the expression of it, and

place it among the notes of the present code. See Notes 5th and 6th below.

OBS. 14.--By the agreement of verbs with each other in \_form\_, it is meant,

that the simple form and the compound, the familiar form and the solemn,

the affirmative form and the negative, or the active form and the passive,

are not to be connected without a repetition of the nominative. With

respect to \_our\_ language, this part of the rule is doubtless as important,

and as true, as any other. A thorough agreement, then, in mood, tense, and

form, is \_generally\_ required, when verbs are connected by \_and, or\_, or

\_nor\_; and, under each part of this concord, there may be cited certain

errors which ought to be avoided, as will by-and-by be shown. But, at the

same time, there seem to be many allowable violations of the rule, some or

other of which may perhaps form exceptions to every part of it. For

example, the \_tense\_ may be varied, as it often is in Latin; thus, "As the

general state of religion \_has been, is\_, or \_shall be\_, affected by

them."--\_Butlers Analogy\_, p. 241. "Thou art righteous, O Lord, which

\_art\_, and \_wast\_, and \_shall be\_, because thou hast judged thus."--\_Rev.\_,

xvi, 5. In the former of these examples, a repetition of the nominative

would not be agreeable; in the latter, it would perhaps be an improvement:

as, "\_who\_ art, and \_who\_ wast, and \_who\_ shalt be." (I here change the

pronoun, because the relative \_which\_ is not now applied as above.) "This

dedication may serve for almost any book, that \_has been\_, or \_shall be\_

published."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_ p. 207; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 222. "It ought

to be, '\_has been, is\_, or \_shall be\_, published.'"--\_Crombie's Treatise\_,

p. 383. "Truth and good sense \_are\_ firm, and \_will establish\_

themselves."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_ p. 286. "Whereas Milton \_followed\_ a

different plan, and \_has given\_ a tragic conclusion to a poem otherwise

epic in its form."--\_Ib.\_, p. 428. "I am certain, that such \_are not\_, nor

ever \_were\_, the tenets of the church of England."--\_West's Letters\_, p.

148. "They \_deserve\_, and \_will meet with\_, no regard."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 109.

"Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see,

Thinks what ne'er \_was\_, nor \_is\_, nor e'er \_shall be\_."

--\_Pope, on Crit.\_

OBS. 15.--So verbs differing in \_mood\_ or \_form\_ may sometimes agree with

the same nominative, if the simplest verb be placed first--rarely, I think,

if the words stand in any other order: as, "One \_may be\_ free from

affectation and \_not have\_ merit"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 189. "There \_is\_,

and \_can be\_, no other person."--\_Murray's Key\_. 8vo. p. 224. "To see what

\_is\_, and \_is allowed\_ to be, the plain natural rule."--\_Butler's Analogy\_,

p. 284. "This great experiment \_has worked\_, and \_is working\_, well, every

way well"--BRADBURN: \_Liberator\_, ix. 162. "This edition of Mr. Murray's

works on English Grammar, \_deserves\_ a place in Libraries, and \_will not

fail\_ to obtain it."--BRITISH CRITIC: \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, ii, 299.

"What nothing earthly \_gives\_, or \_can destroy\_."--\_Pope\_.

"Some \_are\_, and \_must be\_, greater than the rest."--\_Id.\_

OBS. 16.--Since most of the tenses of an English verb are composed of two

or more words, to prevent a needless or disagreeable repetition of

auxiliaries, participles, and principal verbs, those parts which are common

to two or more verbs in the same sentence, are generally expressed to the

first, and understood to the rest; or reserved, and put last, as the common

supplement of each; as, "To which they \_do\_ or \_can extend\_."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 77. "He \_may\_, as any one \_may\_, if he \_will, incur\_ an

infamous execution from the hands of civil justice."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "All

that has usurped the name of virtue, and [\_has\_] deceived us by its

semblance, must be a mockery and a delusion."--\_Dr. Chalmers\_. "Human

praise, and human eloquence, may acknowledge it, but the Discerner of the

heart never will" [\_acknowledge it\_].--\_Id.\_ "We use thee not so hardly, as

prouder livers do" [\_use thee\_].--\_Shak.\_ "Which they might have foreseen

and [\_might have\_] avoided."--\_Butler\_. "Every sincere endeavour to amend,

shall be assisted, [\_shall be\_] accepted, and [\_shall be\_]

rewarded."--\_Carter\_. "Behold, I thought, He will surely come out to me,

and [\_will\_] stand and [\_will\_] call on the name of the Lord his God, and

[\_will\_] strike his hand over the place, and [\_will\_] recover the

leper."--\_2 Kings\_, v, 11. "They mean to, and will, hear

patiently."--\_Salem Register\_. That is, "They mean to \_hear patiently\_, and

\_they\_ will hear patiently." "He can create, and he destroy."--\_Bible\_.

That is,--"and he \_can\_ destroy."

"Virtue \_may be assail'd\_, but never \_hurt\_,

\_Surpris'd\_ by unjust force, but not \_inthrall'd\_."--\_Milton\_.

"Mortals whose pleasures are their only care,

First wish to be \_imposed on\_, and then \_are\_."--\_Cowper\_.

OBS. 17.--From the foregoing examples, it may be seen, that the complex and

divisible structure of the English moods and tenses, produces, when verbs

are connected together, a striking peculiarity of construction in our

language, as compared with the nearest corresponding construction in Latin

or Greek. For we can connect different auxiliaries, participles, or

principal verbs, without repeating, and apparently without connecting, the

other parts of the mood or tense. And although it is commonly supposed that

these parts are necessarily understood wherever they are not repeated,

there are sentences, and those not a few, in which we cannot express them,

without inserting also an additional nominative, and producing distinct

clauses; as, "\_Should\_ it not \_be taken\_ up and \_pursued\_?"--\_Dr.

Chalmers\_. "Where thieves \_do\_ not \_break\_ through nor \_steal\_."--\_Matt.\_,

vi, 20. "None present \_could\_ either \_read\_ or \_explain\_ the

writing-."--\_Wood's Dict.\_, Vol. i, p. 159. Thus we sometimes make a single

auxiliary an index to the mood and tense of more than one verb.

OBS. 18.--The verb \_do\_, which is sometimes an auxiliary and sometimes a

principal verb, is thought by some grammarians to be also fitly made a

\_substitute\_ for other verbs, as a pronoun is for nouns; but this doctrine

has not been taught with accuracy, and the practice under it will in many

instances be found to involve a solecism. In this kind of substitution,

there must either be a true ellipsis of the principal verb, so that \_do\_ is

only an auxiliary; or else the verb \_do\_, with its \_object\_ or \_adverb\_, if

it need one, must exactly correspond to an action described before; so that

to speak of \_doing this\_ or \_thus\_, is merely the shortest way of repeating

the idea: as, "He \_loves\_ not plays, as thou \_dost\_. Antony."--\_Shak.\_ That

is, "as thou \_dost love plays.\_" "This fellow is wise enough \_to play the

fool\_; and, \_to do that\_ well, craves a kind of wit."--\_Id.\_ Here, "\_to do

that\_," is, "\_to play the fool\_." "I will not \_do it\_, if I find thirty

there."--\_Gen.\_, xviii, 30. Do what? Destroy the city, as had been

threatened. Where \_do\_ is an auxiliary, there is no real substitution; and,

in the other instances, it is not properly the verb \_do\_, that is the

substitute, but rather the word that follows it--or perhaps, both. For,

since every action consists in \_doing something\_ or in \_doing somehow\_,

this general verb \_do\_, with \_this, that, it, thus\_, or \_so\_, to identify

the action, may assume the import of many a longer phrase. But care must be

taken not to substitute this verb for any term to which it is not

equivalent; as, "The \_a\_ is certainly to be sounded as the English

\_do\_."--\_Walker's Dict., w. A\_. Say, "as the English \_sound it\_;" for \_do\_

is here absurd, and grossly solecistical. "The duke had not behaved with

that loyalty with which he ought to have \_done\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 111;

\_Murray's\_, i, 212; \_Churchill's\_, 355; \_Fisk's\_, 137; \_Ingersoll's\_, 269.

Say, "with which he ought to have \_behaved\_;" for, to have \_done\_ with

loyalty is not what was meant--far from it. Clarendon wrote the text thus:

"The Duke had not behaved with that loyalty, \_as\_ he ought to have done."

This should have been corrected, not by changing \_"as"\_ to \_"with which"\_,

but by saying--"with that loyalty \_which\_ he ought to have \_observed;"\_ or,

"\_which would have become him"\_.

OBS. 19.--It is little to the credit of our grammarians, to find so many of

them thus concurring in the same obvious error, and even making bad English

worse. The very examples which have hitherto been given to prove that \_do\_

may be a substitute for other verbs, are \_none of them in point\_, and all

of them have been constantly and shamefully \_misinterpreted.\_ Thus: "They

[\_do\_ and \_did\_] sometimes also supply the place of \_another verb\_, and

make the repetition of it, in the same or a subsequent sentence,

unnecessary: as, 'You attend not to your studies as he \_does\_;' (i. e. as

he \_attends\_, &c.) 'I shall come if I can; but if I \_do not\_, please to

excuse me;' (i. e. if I \_come\_ not.)"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 88;

\_R. C. Smith's\_, 88; \_Ingersoll's\_, 135; \_Fisk's\_, 78; \_A. Flint's\_, 41;

\_Hiley's\_, 30. This remark, but not the examples, was taken from \_Lowths

Gram.\_, p. 41. Churchill varies it thus, and retains Lowth's example: "It

[i. e., \_do\_] is used also, to supply the \_place of another verb\_, in order

to avoid the repetition of it: as, 'He \_loves\_ not plays, As thou \_dost\_,

Antony.' SHAKS."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 96. Greenleaf says, "To prevent the

repetition of \_one or more verbs\_, in the same, or [a] following sentence,

we frequently make use of \_do\_ AND \_did\_; as, 'Jack learns the English

language as fast as Henry \_does\_;' that is, 'as fast as Henry \_learns\_.' 'I

shall come if I can; but if I \_do\_ not, please to excuse me;' that is, 'if

I \_come\_ not.'"--\_Gram. Simplified\_, p. 27. Sanborn says, "\_Do\_ is also

used \_instead of another verb\_, and not unfrequently instead of both \_the

verb and its object\_; as, 'he \_loves work\_ as well as you \_do\_;' that is,

as well as you \_love work\_."--\_Analyt. Gram.\_, p. 112. Now all these

interpretations are wrong; the word \_do, dost\_, or \_does\_, being simply an

auxiliary, after which the principal verb (with its object where it has

one) is \_understood\_. But the first example is \_bad English\_, and its

explanation is still worse. For, "\_As he attends\_, &c.," means, "As \_he\_

attends \_to your studies!\_" And what good sense is there in this? The

sentence ought to have been, "You do not attend to your studies, as he does

\_to his\_." That is--"as he does \_attend\_ to his \_studies\_." This plainly

shows that there is, in the text, no real substitution of \_does\_ for

\_attends\_. So of all other examples exhibited in our grammars, under this

head: there is nothing to the purpose, in any of them; the common principle

of \_ellipsis\_ resolves them all. Yet, strange to say, in the latest and

most learned of this sort of text-books, we find the same sham example,

fictitious and solecistical as it is, still blindly repeated, to show that

"\_does\_" is not in its own place, as an auxiliary, but "supplies the place

of another verb."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo. 1850. p. 265.

NOTES TO RULE XVII.

NOTE I.--When a verb has nominatives of different persons or numbers,[400]

connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, it must agree with the nearest, (unless an

other be the principal term,) and must be understood to the rest, in the

person and number required; as, "Neither you nor I \_am\_ concerned."--\_W.

Allen\_. "That neither they nor ye also \_die\_."--\_Numb.\_, xviii, 3.

"But neither god, nor shrine, nor mystic rite,

Their city, nor her walls, his soul \_delight\_."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. x, l. 26.

NOTE II.--But, since all nominatives that require different forms of the

verb, virtually produce separate clauses or propositions, it is better to

complete the concord whenever we conveniently can, by expressing the verb

or its auxiliary in connexion with each of them; as, "Either thou \_art\_ to

blame, or I \_am\_."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 78. "Neither \_were\_ their numbers,

nor \_was\_ their destination, known."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 134. So in

clauses connected by \_and\_: as, "But declamation \_is\_ idle, and \_murmurs\_

fruitless."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 82. Say,--"and murmurs \_are\_

fruitless."

NOTE III.--In English, the speaker should always mention himself last;

unless his own superior dignity, or the confessional nature of the

expression, warrant him in taking the precedence: as, "\_Thou or I\_ must

go."--"He then addressed his discourse to \_my father and me\_."--"\_Ellen and

I\_ will seek, apart, the refuge of some forest cell."--\_Scott\_. See Obs.

11th above.

NOTE IV.--Two or more distinct subject phrases connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_,

require a singular verb; and, if a nominative come after the verb, that

must be singular also: as, "That a drunkard should be poor, \_or\_ that a fop

should be ignorant, \_is\_ not strange."--"To give an affront, or to take one

tamely, \_is\_ no \_mark\_ of a great mind." So, when the phrases are

unconnected: as, "To spread suspicion, to invent calumnies, to propagate

scandal, \_requires\_ neither labour nor courage."--\_Rambler\_, No. 183.

NOTE V.--In general, when \_verbs\_ are connected by \_and, or\_, or \_nor\_,

they must either agree in mood, tense, and form, or the simplest in form

must be placed first; as, "So Sennacherib king of Assyria \_departed\_, and

\_went\_ and \_returned\_, and \_dwelt\_ at Nineveh."--\_Isaiah\_, xxxvii, 37. "For

if I \_be\_ an offender, or \_have committed\_ any thing worthy of death, I

refuse not to die."--\_Acts\_, xxv, 11.

NOTE VI.--In stead of conjoining discordant verbs, it is in general better

to repeat the nominative or insert a new one; as, "He was greatly heated,

and [\_he] drank\_ with avidity."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 201. "A person may

be great or rich by chance; but \_cannot be\_ wise or good, without taking

pains for it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200. Say,--"but \_no one can be\_ wise or good,

without taking pains for it."

NOTE VII.--A mixture of the forms of the solemn style and the familiar, is

inelegant, whether the verbs refer to the same nominative or have different

ones expressed; as, "What \_appears\_ tottering and in hazard of tumbling,

\_produceth\_ in the spectator the painful emotion of fear."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, ii, 356. "And the milkmaid \_singeth\_ blithe, And the mower \_whets\_

his sithe."--\_Milton's Allegro\_, l. 65 and 66.

NOTE VIII.--To use different moods under precisely the same circumstances,

is improper, even if the verbs have separate nominatives; as, "Bating that

one \_speak\_ and an other \_answers\_, it is quite the same."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 368. Say,--"that one \_speaks\_;" for both the speaking and the

answering are assumed as facts.

NOTE IX.--When two terms are connected, which involve different forms of

the same verb, such parts of the compound tenses as are not common to both

forms, should be inserted in full: except sometimes after the auxiliary

\_do\_; as, "And then he \_falls\_, as I \_do\_."--\_Shak\_. That is, "as I \_do

fall\_." The following sentences are therefore faulty: "I think myself

highly obliged \_to make\_ his fortune, as he \_has\_ mine."--\_Spect.\_, No.

474. Say,--"as he \_has made\_ mine." "Every attempt to remove them, \_has\_,

and likely \_will prove\_ unsuccessful."--\_Gay's Prosodical Gram.\_, p. 4.

Say,--"\_has proved\_, and likely \_will prove\_, unsuccessful."

NOTE X.--The verb \_do\_ must never be substituted for any term to which its

own meaning is not adapted; nor is there any use in putting it for a

preceding verb that is equally short: as, "When we see how confidently men

rest on groundless surmises in reference to their own souls, we cannot

wonder that they \_do it\_ in reference to others."--\_Simeon\_. Better:--"that

they \_so rest\_ in reference to \_the souls of\_ others;" for this repeats the

idea with more exactness. NOTE XI.--The preterit should not be employed

to form the compound tenses of the verb; nor should the perfect participle

be used for the preterit or confounded with the present. Thus: say, "To

have \_gone\_," not, "To have \_went\_;" and, "I \_did\_ so," not, "I \_done\_ so;"

or, "He \_saw\_ them," not, "He \_seen\_ them." Again: say not, "It was \_lift\_

or \_hoist\_ up;" but, "It was \_lifted\_ or \_hoisted\_ up."

NOTE XII.--Care should be taken, to give every verb or participle its

appropriate form, and not to confound those which resemble each other; as,

\_to flee\_ and \_to fly, to lay\_ and \_to lie, to sit\_ and \_to set, to fall\_

and \_to fell\_, &c. Thus: say, "He \_lay\_ by the fire;" not, "He \_laid\_ by

the fire;"--"He \_has become\_ rich;" not, "He \_is become\_ rich;"--"I \_would\_

rather \_stay\_;" not, "I \_had\_ rather \_stay\_."

NOTE XIII.--In the syntax of words that express time, whether they be

verbs, adverbs, or nouns, the order and fitness of time should be observed,

that the tenses may be used according to their import. Thus: in stead of,

"I \_have seen\_ him \_last week\_;" say, "I \_saw\_ him \_last week\_;"--and, in

stead of, "I \_saw\_ him \_this week\_;" say, "I \_have seen\_ him \_this week\_."

So, in stead of, "I \_told\_ you \_already\_;" or, "I \_have told\_ you

\_before\_;" say, "I \_have told\_ you \_already\_;"--"I \_told\_ you \_before\_."

NOTE XIV.--Verbs of commanding, desiring, expecting, hoping, intending,

permitting, and some others, in all their tenses, refer to actions or

events, relatively present or future: one should therefore say, "I hoped

you \_would come\_;" not, "I hoped you \_would have come\_;"--and, "I intended

\_to do\_ it;" not, "I intended \_to have done\_ it;"--&c.

NOTE XV.--Propositions that are as true now as they ever were or will be,

should generally be expressed in the present tense: as, "He seemed hardly

to know, that two and two \_make\_ four;" not, "\_made\_."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p.

65. "He will tell you, that whatever \_is, is\_ right." Sometimes the present

tense is improper with the conjunction \_that\_, though it would be quite

proper without it; as, "Others said, \_That\_ it \_is\_ Elias. And others said,

\_That\_ it \_is\_ a prophet."--\_Mark\_, vi, 15. Here \_That\_ should be omitted,

or else \_is\_ should be \_was\_. The capital \_T\_ is also improper.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XVII.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--NOMINATIVES CONNECTED BY OR.

"We do not know in what either reason or instinct consist."--\_Rambler\_, No.

41.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the verb \_consist\_ is of the plural number,

and does not correctly agree with its two nominatives, \_reason\_ and

\_instinct\_, which are connected by \_or\_, and taken disjunctively. But,

according to Rule 17th, "When a verb has two or more nominatives connected

by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, it must agree with them singly, and not as if taken

together." Therefore, \_consist\_ should be \_consists\_; thus, "We do not know

in what either reason or instinct \_consists\_."]

"A noun or a pronoun joined with a participle, constitute a nominative case

absolute."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 50. "The relative will be of

that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going

before, use to govern."--\_Dr. Adam's Gram.\_, p. 203. "Which the verb or

noun following, or the preposition going before, usually govern."--\_Gould's

Adam's Gram.\_, p. 200.[401] "In the different modes of pronunciation which

habit or caprice give rise to."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 14.

"By which he, or his deputy, were authorized to cut down any trees in

Whittlebury forest."--\_Junius\_, p. 251. "Wherever objects were to be named,

in which sound, noise, or motion were concerned, the imitation by words was

abundantly obvious."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 55. "The pleasure or pain

resulting from a train of perceptions in different circumstances, are a

beautiful contrivance of nature for valuable purposes."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, i, 262. "Because their foolish vanity or their criminal ambition

represent the principles by which they are influenced, as absolutely

perfect."--\_Life of Madame De Stael\_, p. 2. "Hence naturally arise

indifference or aversion between the parties."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 37.

"A penitent unbeliever, or an impenitent believer, are characters no where

to be found."--\_Tract\_, No. 183. "Copying whatever is peculiar in the talk

of all those whose birth or fortune entitle them to imitation."--\_Rambler\_,

No. 194. "Where love, hatred, fear, or contempt, are often of decisive

influence."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 119. "A lucky anecdote, or an enlivening

tale relieve the folio page."--\_D'Israeli's Curiosities\_, Vol. i, p. 15.

"For outward matter or event, fashion not the character within."--\_Book of

Thoughts\_, p. 37. "Yet sometimes we have seen that wine, or chance, have

warmed cold brains."--\_Dryden's Poems\_, p. 76. "Motion is a Genus; Flight,

a Species; this Flight or that Flight are Individuals."--\_Harris's Hermes\_,

p. 38. "When \_et, aut, vel, sine\_, or \_nec\_, are joined to different

members of the same sentence."--\_Adam's Lat. and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 206;

\_Gould's Lat. Gram.\_, 203; \_Grant's\_, 266. "Wisdom or folly govern

us."--\_Fisk's English Gram.\_, 84. "\_A\_ or \_an\_ are styled indefinite

articles."--\_Folker's Gram.\_, p. 4. "A rusty nail, or a crooked pin, shoot

up into prodigies."--\_Spectator\_, No. 7. "Are either the subject or the

predicate in the second sentence modified?"--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo,

1850, p. 578, §589.

"Praise from a friend, or censure from a foe,

Are lost on hearers that our merits know."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. x, l. 293.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--NOMINATIVES CONNECTED BY NOR.

"Neither he nor she have spoken to him."--\_Perrin's Gram.\_, p. 237. "For

want of a process of events, neither knowledge nor elegance preserve the

reader from weariness."--JOHNSON: \_in Crabb's Syn.\_, p. 511. "Neither

history nor tradition furnish such information."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, Vol.

i, p. 2. "Neither the form nor power of the liquids have varied

materially."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alph.\_, p. 16. "Where neither noise nor

motion are concerned."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 55. "Neither Charles nor his

brother were qualified to support such a system."--\_Junius\_, p. 250. "When,

therefore, neither the liveliness of representation, nor the warmth of

passion, serve, as it were, to cover the trespass, it is not safe to leave

the beaten track."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 381. "In many countries called

Christian, neither Christianity, nor its evidence, are fairly laid before

men."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 269. "Neither the intellect nor the heart are

capable of being driven."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 20. "Throughout this

hymn, neither Apollo nor Diana are in any way connected with the Sun or

Moon."--\_Coleridge's Introd.\_, p. 199. "Of which, neither he, nor this

Grammar, take any notice."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 346. "Neither their

solicitude nor their foresight extend so far."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, Vol.

i, p. 287. "Neither Gomara, nor Oviedo, nor Herrera, consider Ojeda, or his

companion Vespucci, as the first discoverers of the continent of

America."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 471. "Neither the general situation of our

colonies, nor that particular distress which forced the inhabitants of

Boston to take up arms, have been thought worthy of a moment's

consideration."--\_Junius\_, p. 174.

"Nor War nor Wisdom yield our Jews delight,

They will not study, and they dare not fight."

--\_Crabbe's Borough\_, p. 50.

"Nor time nor chance breed such confusions yet,

Nor are the mean so rais'd, nor sunk the great."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. iii, l. 213.

UNDER NOTE I.--NOMINATIVES THAT DISAGREE.

"The definite article \_the\_, designates what particular thing or things is

meant."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 23 and p. 33. "Sometimes a word or

words necessary to complete the grammatical construction of a sentence, is

not expressed, but omitted by ellipsis."--\_Burr's Gram.\_, p. 26. "Ellipsis,

or abbreviations, is the wheels of language."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 12.

"The conditions or tenor of none of them appear at this

day."--\_Hutchinson's Hist. of Mass.\_, Vol. i, p. 16. "Neither men nor money

were wanting for the service."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 279. "Either our own

feelings, or the representation of those of others, require frequent

emphatic distinction."--\_Barber's Exercises\_, p. 13. "Either Atoms and

Chance, or Nature are uppermost: now I am for the latter part of the

disjunction,"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 181. "Their riches or poverty are

generally proportioned to their activity or indolence."--\_Ross Cox's

Narrative\_. "Concerning the other part of him, neither you nor he seem to

have entertained an idea."--\_Bp. Horne\_. "Whose earnings or income are so

small."--\_N. E. Discipline\_, p. 130. "Neither riches nor fame render a man

happy."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 71. "The references to the pages, always point

to the first volume, unless the Exercises or Key are mentioned."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 283.

UNDER NOTE II.--COMPLETE THE CONCORD.

"My lord, you wrong my father; nor he nor I are capable of harbouring a

thought against your peace."--\_Walpole\_. "There was no division of acts; no

pauses or interval between them; but the stage was continually full;

occupied either by the actors, or the chorus."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 463.

"Every word ending in B, P, F, as also many in V, are of this order."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of Lang.\_, i, 73. "As proud as we are of human reason,

nothing can be more absurd than the general system of human life and human

knowledge."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 347. "By which the body of sin and

death is done away, and we cleansed."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 165. "And

those were already converted, and regeneration begun in them."--\_Ib.\_, iii,

433. "For I am an old man, and my wife well stricken in years."--\_Luke\_, i,

18. "Who is my mother, or my brethren?"--\_Mark\_, iii, 33. "Lebanon is not

sufficient to burn, nor the beasts thereof sufficient for a

burnt-offering."--\_Isaiah\_, xl, 16. "Information has been obtained, and

some trials made."--\_Society in America\_, i, 308. "It is as obvious, and

its causes more easily understood."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 84. "All

languages furnish examples of this kind, and the English as many as any

other."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 157. "The winters are long, and the cold

intense."--\_Morse's Geog.\_, p. 39. "How have I hated instruction, and my

heart despised reproof!"--\_Prov.\_, v, 12. "The vestals were abolished by

Theodosius the Great, and the fire of Vesta extinguished."--\_Lempriere, w.

Vestales\_. "Riches beget pride; pride, impatience."--\_Bullions's Practical

Lessons\_, p. 89. "Grammar is not reasoning, any more than organization is

thought, or letters sounds."--\_Enclytica\_, p. 90. "Words are implements,

and grammar a machine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91.

UNDER NOTE III.--PLACE OF THE FIRST PERSON.

"I or thou art the person who must undertake the business

proposed."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 184. "I and he were there."--\_Dr. Ash's

Gram.\_, p. 51. "And we dreamed a dream in one night, I and he."--\_Gen.\_,

xli, 11. "If my views remain the same as mine and his were in

1833."--GOODELL: \_Liberator\_, ix, 148. "I and my father were riding

out."--\_Inst.\_, p. 158. "The premiums were given to me and George."--\_Ib.\_

"I and Jane are invited."--\_Ib.\_ "They ought to invite me and my

sister."--\_Ib.\_ "I and you intend going."--\_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 55. "I and

John are going to Town."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 193. "I, and he are sick. I,

and thou are well."--\_James Brown's American Gram.\_, Boston Edition of

1841, p. 123. "I, and he is. I, and thou art. I, and he writes."--\_Ib.\_, p.

126. "I, and they are well. I, thou, and she were walking."--\_Ib.\_, p.

127.

UNDER NOTE IV.--DISTINCT SUBJECT PHRASES.

"To practise tale-bearing, or even to countenance it, are great

injustice."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 159. "To reveal secrets, or to betray

one's friends, are contemptible perfidy."--\_Ib.\_ "To write all substantives

with capital letters, or to exclude them from adjectives derived from

proper names, may perhaps be thought offences too small for animadversion;

but the evil of innovation is always something."--\_Dr. Barrow's Essays\_, p.

88. "To live in such families, or to have such servants, are blessings from

God."--\_Family Commentary\_, p. 64. "How they portioned out the country,

what revolutions they experienced, or what wars they maintained, are

utterly unknown."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. i, p. 4. "To speak or to

write perspicuously and agreeably, are attainments of the utmost

consequence to all who purpose, either by speech or writing, to address the

public."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 11.

UNDER NOTE V.--MAKE THE VERBS AGREE.

"Doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and goeth into the mountains, and

seeketh that which is gone astray?"--\_Matt.\_, xviii, 12. "Did he not fear

the Lord, and besought the Lord, and the Lord repented him of the evil

which he had pronounced?"--\_Jer.\_, xxvi, 19. "And dost thou open thine eyes

upon such an one, and bringest me into judgement with thee?"--\_Job\_, xiv,

3. "If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue,

but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion is vain."--\_James\_, i, 26.

"If thou sell aught unto thy neighbour, or buyest aught of thy neighbour's

hand, ye shall not oppress one an other."--\_Leviticus\_, xxv, 14. "And if

thy brother that dwelleth by thee, shall have become poor, and be sold to

thee, thou shalt not compel him to serve as a bond servant."--WEBSTER'S

BIBLE: \_Lev.\_, xxv, 39. "If thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there

rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee," &c.--\_Matt.\_, v, 23.

"Anthea was content to call a coach, and crossed the brook."--\_Rambler\_,

No. 34. "It is either totally suppressed, or appears in its lowest and most

imperfect form."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 23. "But if any man be a worshiper of

God, and doeth his will, him he heareth."--\_John\_, ix, 31. "Whereby his

righteousness and obedience, death and sufferings without, become

profitable unto us, and is made ours."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 164. "Who

ought to have been here before thee, and object, if they had aught against

me."--\_Acts\_, xxiv, 19.

"Yes! thy proud lords, unpitied land, shall see

That man hath yet a soul, and dare be free."--\_Campbell\_.

UNDER NOTE VI.--USE SEPARATE NOMINATIVES.

"\_H\_ is only an aspiration or breathing; and sometimes at the beginning of

a word is not sounded at all."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 4. "Man was made for

society, and ought to extend his good will to all men."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12;

\_Murray's\_, i, 170. "There is, and must be, a supreme being, of infinite

goodness, power, and wisdom, who created and supports them."--\_Beattie's

Moral Science\_, p. 201. "Were you not affrighted, and mistook a spirit for

a body?"--\_Watson's Apology\_, p. 122. "The latter noun or pronoun is not

governed by the conjunction \_than\_ or \_as\_, but agrees with the verb, or is

governed by the verb or the preposition, expressed or understood."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 214; \_Russell's\_, 103; \_Bacon's\_, 51; \_Alger's\_, 71;

\_R. C. Smith's\_, 179. "He had mistaken his true interests, and found

himself forsaken."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 201. "The amputation was

exceedingly well performed, and saved the patient's life."--\_Ib.\_, p. 191.

"The intentions of some of these philosophers, nay, of many [,] might have

been, and probably were good."--\_Ib.\_, p. 216. "This may be true, and yet

will not justify the practice."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 33. "From the

practice of those who have had a liberal education, and are therefore

presumed to be best acquainted with men and things."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_,

p. 161. "For those energies and bounties which created and preserve the

universe."--\_J. Q. Adams's Rhet.\_, i, 327. "I shall make it once for all

and hope it will be afterwards remembered."--\_Blair's Lect.\_, p. 45. "This

consequence is drawn too abruptly, and needed more explanation."--\_Ib.\_, p.

229. "They must be used with more caution, and require more preparation."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 153. "The apostrophe denotes the omission of an \_i\_, which was

formerly inserted, and made an addition of a syllable to the word."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 67. "The succession may be rendered more various or

more uniform, but in one shape or an other is unavoidable."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, i. 253. "It excites neither terror nor compassion, nor is agreeable

in any respect."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 277.

"Cheap vulgar arts, whose narrowness affords

No flight for thoughts, but poorly stick at words."--\_Denham\_.

UNDER NOTE VII.--MIXTURE OF DIFFERENT STYLES.

"Let us read the living page, whose every character delighteth and

instructs us."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 5. "For if it be in any degree

obscure, it puzzles, and doth not please."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 357.

"When a speaker addresseth himself to the understanding, he proposes the

instruction of his hearers."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 13. "As the wine which

strengthens and refresheth the heart."--\_H. Adams's View\_, p. 221. "This

truth he wrappeth in an allegory, and feigns that one of the goddesses had

taken up her abode with the other."--\_Pope's Works\_, iii, 46. "God

searcheth and understands the heart."--\_Thomas à Kempis\_. "The grace of

God, that brings salvation hath appeared to all men."--\_Barclays Works\_, i,

366. "Also we speak not in the words, which man's wisdom teaches; but which

the Holy Ghost teacheth."--\_Ib.\_, i, 388. "But he hath an objection, which

he urgeth, and by which he thinks to overturn all."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 327. "In

that it gives them not that comfort and joy which it giveth unto them who

love it."--\_Ib.\_, i, 142. "Thou here misunderstood the place and

misappliedst it."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 38. "Like the barren heath in the desert,

which knoweth not when good comes."--\_Friends' Extracts\_, p. 128; \_N. E.

Discip.\_, p. 75. "It speaketh of the time past, but shews that something

was then doing, but not quite finished."--\_E. Devis's Gram.\_, p. 42. "It

subsists in spite of them; it advanceth unobserved."--PASCAL: \_Addison's

Evidences\_, p. 17.

"But where is he, the Pilgrim of my song?--

Methinks he cometh late and tarries long."--\_Byron\_, Cant. iv, St. 164.

UNDER NOTE VII.--CONFUSION OF MOODS.

"If a man have a hundred sheep, and one of them is gone astray,

&c."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 227 with 197. "As a speaker advances in his

discourse, especially if it be somewhat impassioned, and increases in

energy and earnestness, a higher and louder tone will naturally steal upon

him."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 68. "If one man esteem a day above

another, and another esteemeth every day alike; let every man be fully

persuaded in his own mind."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 439. "If there be but

one body of legislators, it is no better than a tyranny; if there are only

two, there will want a casting voice."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 287. "Should

you come up this way, and I am still here, you need not be assured how glad

I shall be to see you."--\_Ld. Byron\_. "If he repent and becomes holy, let

him enjoy God and heaven."--\_Brownson's Elwood\_, p. 248. "If thy fellow

approach thee, naked and destitute, and thou shouldst say unto him, 'Depart

in peace; be you warmed and filled;' and yet shouldst give him not those

things that are needful to him, what benevolence is there in thy

conduct?"--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 108.

"Get on your nightgown, lost occasion calls us.

And show us to be watchers."

--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p. 278.

"But if it climb, with your assisting hands,

The Trojan walls, and in the city stands."

--\_Dryden's Virgil\_, ii, 145.

--------------------------"Though Heaven's king

Ride on thy wings, and thou with thy compeers,

Us'd to the yoke, draw'st his triumphant wheels."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, iv, l. 973.

"Us'd to the yoke, \_draw'dst\_ his triumphant wheels."

--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 106.

UNDER NOTE IX.--IMPROPER ELLIPSES.

"Indeed we have seriously wondered that Murray should leave some things as

he has."--\_Education Reporter\_. "Which they neither have nor can

do."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 73. "The Lord hath, and doth, and will reveal

his will to his people, and hath and doth raise up members of his body,"

&c.--\_Ib.\_, i, 484. "We see then, that the Lord hath, and doth give

such."--\_Ib.\_, i, 484. "Towards those that have or do declare themselves

members."--\_Ib.\_, i, 494. "For which we can, and have given our sufficient

reasons."--\_Ib.\_, i, 507. "When we mention the several properties of the

different words in sentences, in the same manner as we have those of

\_William's\_, above, what is the exercise called?"--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p.

12. "It is, however to be doubted whether this peculiarity of the Greek

idiom, ever has or will obtain extensively in the English."--\_Nutting's

Gram.\_, p. 47. "Why did not the Greeks and Romans abound in auxiliary words

as much as we?"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 111. "Who delivers his

sentiments in earnest, as they ought to be in order to move and

persuade."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 151.

UNDER NOTE X.--DO, USED AS A SUBSTITUTE.

"And I would avoid it altogether, if it could be done."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, i, 36. "Such a sentiment from a man expiring of his wounds, is

truly heroic, and must elevate the mind to the greatest height that can be

done by a single expression."--\_Ib.\_, i, 204. "Successive images making

thus deeper and deeper impressions, must elevate more than any single image

can do."--\_Ib.\_, i, 205. "Besides making a deeper impression than can be

done by cool reasoning."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 273. "Yet a poet, by the force of

genius alone, can rise higher than a public speaker can do."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 338. "And the very same reason that has induced several

grammarians to go so far as they have done, should have induced them to go

farther."--\_Priestley's Gram., Pref.\_, p. vii. "The pupil should commit the

first section perfectly, before he does the second part of grammar."--

\_Bradley's Gram.\_, p. 77. "The Greek \_ch\_ was pronounced hard, as we now do

in \_chord\_."--\_Booth's Introd. to Dict.\_, p. 61. "They pronounce the

syllables in a different manner from what they do at other times."--

\_Murray's Eng. Reader\_, p. xi. "And give him the formal cool reception that

Simon had done."--\_Dr. Scott, on Luke\_, vii. "I do not say, as some have

done."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 271. "If he suppose the first, he may

do the last."--\_Barclay's Works\_, ii, 406. "Who are now despising Christ in

his inward appearance, as the Jews of old did him in his outward."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 506. "That text of Revelations must not be understood, as he doth it."--

\_Ib.\_, iii, 309. "Till the mode of parsing the noun is so familiar to him,

that he can do it readily."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 13. "Perhaps it is

running the same course which Rome had done before."--\_Middleton's Life of

Cicero\_. "It ought even on this ground to be avoided; which may easily be

done by a different construction."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 312. "These two

languages are now pronounced in England as no other nation in Europe does

besides."--\_Creighton's Dict.\_, p. xi. "Germany ran the same risk that

Italy had done."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 211: see \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

196.

UNDER NOTE XI.--PRETERITS AND PARTICIPLES.

"The Beggars themselves will be broke in a trice."--\_Swift's Poems\_, p.

347. "The hoop is hoist above his nose."--\_Ib.\_, p. 404. "My heart was lift

up in the ways of the Lord. 2 CHRON."--\_Joh. Dict., w. Lift\_. "Who sin so

oft have mourned, Yet to temptation ran."--\_Burns\_. "Who would not have let

them appeared."--\_Steele\_. "He would have had you sought for ease at the

hands of Mr. Legality."--\_Pilgrim's Progress\_, p. 31. "From me his madding

mind is start, And wooes the widow's daughter of the glen."--SPENSER: \_Joh.

Dict., w. Glen\_. "The man has spoke, and still speaks."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p.

54. "For you have but mistook me all this while."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p.

114. "And will you rent our ancient love asunder."--\_Ib.\_, p. 52. "Mr.

Birney has plead the inexpediency of passing such resolutions."--

\_Liberator\_, Vol. xiii, p. 194. "Who have wore out their years in such most

painful Labours."--\_Littleton's Dict., Pref\_. "And in the conclusion you

were chose probationer."--\_Spectator\_, No. 32.

"How she was lost, took captive, made a slave;

And how against him set that should her save."--\_Bunyan\_.

UNDER NOTE XII.--VERBS CONFOUNDED.

"But Moses preferred to wile away his time."--\_Parker's English

Composition\_, p. 15. "His face shown with the rays of the sun."--\_Calvin's

Inst.\_, 4to, p. 76. "Whom they had sat at defiance so lately."--

\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 320. "And when he was set, his disciples came

unto him."--\_Matt.\_, v, 1. "When he was set down on the judgement-seat."--

\_Ib.\_, xxvii, 19. "And when they had kindled a fire in the midst of the

hall, and were set down together, Peter sat down among them."--\_Luke\_,

xxii, 55. "So after he had washed their feet, and had taken his garments,

and was set down again, he said unto them, Know ye what I have done to

you?"--\_John\_, xiii, 12. "Even as I also overcame, and am set down with my

Father in his throne."--\_Rev.\_, iii, 21. "We have such an high priest, who

is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens."--

\_Heb.\_, viii, 1. "And is set down at the right hand of the throne of

God."--\_Ib.\_, xii, 2.[402] "He sat on foot a furious persecution."--

\_Payne's Geog.\_, ii, 418. "There layeth an obligation upon the saints, to

help such."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 389. "There let him lay."--\_Byron's

Pilgrimage\_, C. iv, st. 180. "Nothing but moss, and shrubs, and stinted

trees, can grow upon it."--\_Morse's Geog.\_, p. 43. "Who had lain out

considerable sums purely to distinguish themselves."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_,

i, 132. "Whereunto the righteous fly and are safe."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i,

146. "He raiseth from supper, and laid aside his garments."--\_Ib.\_, i, 438.

"Whither--Oh! whither shall I fly?"--\_Murray's English Reader\_, p. 123.

"Flying from an adopted murderer."--\_Ib.\_, p. 122. "To you I fly for

refuge."--\_Ib.\_, p. 124. "The sign that should warn his disciples to fly

from approaching ruin."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 62. "In one she sets as a

prototype for exact imitation."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. xxiii. "In which

some only bleat, bark, mew, winnow, and bray, a little better than

others."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90. "Who represented to him the unreasonableness of

being effected with such unmanly fears."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 106. "Thou

sawedst every action."--\_Guy's School Gram.\_, p. 46. "I taught, thou

taughtedst, he or she taught."--\_Coar's Gram.\_, p. 79. "Valerian is taken

by Sapor and flead alive, A. D. 260."--\_Lempriere's Chron. Table, Dict.\_,

p. xix. "What a fine vehicle is it now become for all conceptions of the

mind!"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 139. "What are become of so many productions?"

--\_Volney's Ruins\_, p. 8. "What are become of those ages of abundance and

of life?"--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 107. "The Spartan admiral was sailed to

the Hellespont."--\_Goldsmiths Greece\_, i, 150. "As soon as he was landed,

the multitude thronged about him."--\_Ib.\_, i, 160. "Cyrus was arrived at

Sardis."--\_Ib.\_, i, 161. "Whose year was expired."--\_Ib.\_, i, 162. "It had

better have been, 'that faction which.'"--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 97. "This

people is become a great nation."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 153; \_Ingersoll's\_,

249. "And here we are got into the region of ornament."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 181. "The ungraceful parenthesis which follows, had far better have been

avoided."--\_Ib.\_, p. 215. "Who forced him under water, and there held him

until drounded."--\_Indian Wars\_, p. 55.

"I had much rather be myself the slave,

And wear the bonds, than fasten them on him."--\_Cowper\_.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--WORDS THAT EXPRESS TIME.

"I had finished my letter before my brother arrived."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_,

p. 139. "I had written before I received his letter."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

82. "From what has been formerly delivered."--\_Ib.\_, p. 182. "Arts were of

late introduced among them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 245. "I am not of opinion that such

rules can be of much use, unless persons saw them exemplified."--\_Ib.\_, p.

336. "If we use the noun itself, we should say, 'This composition is

John's.' "--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 174. "But if the assertion referred to

something, that is not always the same, or supposed to be so, the past

tense must be applied."--\_Ib.\_, p. 191. "They told him, that Jesus of

Nazareth passeth by."--\_Luke\_, xviii, 37. "There is no particular

intimation but that I continued to work, even to the present moment."--\_R.

W. Green's Gram.\_, p. 39. "Generally, as was observed already, it is but

hinted in a single word or phrase."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 36. "The

wittiness of the passage was already illustrated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36. "As was

observed already."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. "It was said already in general."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 95. "As I hinted already."--\_Ib.\_, p. 134. "What I believe was hinted

once already."--\_Ib.\_, p. 148. "It is obvious, as hath been hinted

formerly, that this is but an artificial and arbitrary connexion."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 282. "They have done anciently a great deal of hurt."--\_Bolingbroke, on

Hist.\_, p. 109. "Then said Paul, I knew not, brethren, that he is the High

Priest."--\_Dr. Webster's Bible\_: Acts, xxiii, 5. "Most prepositions

originally denote the relation of place, and have been thence transferred

to denote by similitude other relations."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 65;

\_Churchill's\_, 116. "His gift was but a poor offering, when we consider his

estate."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 194. "If he should succeed, and should

obtain his end, he will not be the happier for it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

p. 207. "These are torrents that swell to-day, and have spent themselves by

to-morrow."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 286. "Who have called that wheat to-day,

which they have called tares to-morrow."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii. 168. "He

thought it had been one of his tenants."--\_Ib.\_, i, 11. "But if one went

unto them from the dead, they will repent."--\_Luke\_, xvi, 30. "Neither will

they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead."--\_Ib., verse\_ 31. "But

it is while men slept that the archenemy has always sown his tares."--\_The

Friend\_, x, 351. "Crescens would not fail to have exposed him."--\_Addison's

Evidences\_, p. 30.

"Bent was his bow, the Grecian hearts to wound;

Fierce as he mov'd, his silver shafts resound."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. i, l. 64.

UNDER NOTE XIV.--VERBS OF COMMANDING, &c.

"Had I commanded you to have done this, you would have thought hard of

it."--\_G. B.\_ "I found him better than I expected to have found

him."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 126. "There are several smaller faults,

which I at first intended to have enumerated."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 246.

"Antithesis, therefore, may, on many occasions, be employed to advantage,

in order to strengthen the impression which we intend that any object

should make."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 168. "The girl said, if her master would

but have let her had money, she might have been well long ago."--See

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 127. "Nor is there the least ground to fear, that

we should be cramped here within too narrow limits."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_,

p. 163; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 360. "The Romans, flushed with success,

expected to have retaken it."--\_Hooke's Hist.\_, p. 37. "I would not have

let fallen an unseasonable pleasantry in the venerable presence of Misery,

to be entitled to all the wit that ever Rabelais scattered."--STERNE:

\_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 54. "We expected that he would have arrived last

night."--\_Inst.\_ p. 192. "Our friends intended to have met us."--\_Ib.\_ "We

hoped to have seen you."--\_Ib.\_ "He would not have been allowed to have

entered."--\_Ib.\_

UNDER NOTE XV.--PERMANENT PROPOSITIONS.

"Cicero maintained that whatsoever was useful was good."--"I observed that

love constituted the whole moral character of God."--\_Dwight\_. "Thinking

that one gained nothing by being a good man."--\_Voltaire\_. "I have already

told you that I was a gentleman."--\_Fontaine\_. "If I should ask, whether

ice and water were two distinct species of things."--\_Locke\_. "A stranger

to the poem would not easily discover that this was verse."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 12mo, p. 260. "The doctor affirmed, that fever always produced

thirst."--\_Inst.\_, p. 192. "The ancients asserted, that virtue was its own

reward."--\_Ib.\_ "They should not have repeated the error, of insisting that

the infinitive was a mere noun."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 288.

"It was observed in Chap. III. that the distinctive \_or\_ had a double

use."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 154. "Two young gentlemen, who have made a

discovery that there was no God."--\_Swift\_.

RULE XVIII.--INFINITIVES.

The Infinitive Mood is governed in general by the preposition TO, which

commonly connects it to a finite verb: as, "I desire TO \_learn\_."--\_Dr.

Adam\_. "Of me the Roman people have many pledges, which I must strive, with

my utmost endeavours, TO \_preserve\_, TO \_defend\_, TO \_confirm\_, and TO

\_redeem\_."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 41.

"What if the foot, ordain'd the dust TO \_tread\_,

Or hand TO \_toil\_, aspir'd TO \_be\_ the head?"--\_Pope\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XVIII.

OBS. 1.--No word is more variously explained by grammarians, than this word

TO, which is put before the verb in the infinitive mood. Johnson, Walker,

Scott, Todd, and some other lexicographers, call it an \_adverb\_; but, in

explaining its use, they say it denotes certain \_relations\_, which it is

not the office of an adverb to express. (See the word in \_Johnson's Quarto

Dictionary\_.) D. St. Quentin, in his Rudiments of General Grammar, says,

"\_To\_, before a verb, is an \_adverb\_;" and yet his "Adverbs are words that

are joined to verbs or adjectives, and express some \_circumstance\_ or

\_quality\_." See pp. 33 and 39. Lowth, Priestley, Fisher, L. Murray,

Webster, Wilson, S. W. Clark, Coar, Comly, Blair, Felch, Fisk, Greenleaf,

Hart, Weld, Webber, and others, call it a \_preposition\_; and some of these

ascribe to it the government of the verb, while others do not. Lowth says,

"The \_preposition\_ TO, placed before the verb, \_makes\_ the infinitive

mood."--\_Short Gram.\_, p. 42. "Now this," says Horne Tooke, "is manifestly

not so: for TO placed before the verb \_loveth\_, will not make the

infinitive mood. He would have said more truly, that TO placed before some

\_nouns\_, makes \_verbs\_."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 287.

OBS. 2.--Skinner, in his \_Canones Etymologici\_, calls this TO "an

\_equivocal article\_,"--\_Tooke\_, ib., i, 288. Nutting, a late American

grammarian, says: "The \_sign\_ TO is no other than the Greek article \_to\_;

as, \_to agapan\_ [, to love]; or, as some say, it is the Saxon

\_do\_"--\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 66. Thus, by suggesting two false and

inconsistent derivations, though he uses not the name \_equivocal article\_,

he first makes the word an \_article\_, and then \_equivocal\_--equivocal in

etymology, and of course in meaning.[403] Nixon, in his English Parser,

supposes it to be, \_unequivocally\_, the Greek article [Greek: to], \_the\_.

See the work, p. 83. D. Booth says, "\_To\_ is, by us, applied to Verbs; but

it was the neuter Article (\_the\_) among the Greeks."--\_Introd. to Analyt.

Dict.\_, p. 60. According to Horne Tooke, "Minshew also distinguishes

between the preposition TO, and the \_sign\_ of the infinitive TO. Of the

former he is silent, and of the latter he says: 'To, as \_to\_ make, \_to\_

walk, \_to\_ do, a Græco articulo [Greek: to].' But Dr. Gregory Sharpe is

persuaded, that our language has taken it from the \_Hebrew\_. And Vossius

derives the correspondent Latin preposition AD from the same

source."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 293.

OBS. 3.--Tooke also says, "I observe, that Junius and Skinner and Johnson,

have not chosen to give the slightest hint concerning the derivation of

TO."--\_Ibid.\_ But, certainly, of his \_adverb\_ TO, Johnson gives this hint:

"TO, Saxon; \_te\_, Dutch." And Webster, who calls it not an adverb, but a

preposition, gives the same hint of the source from which it comes to us.

This is as much as to say, it is etymologically the old Saxon preposition

\_to\_--which, truly, it is--the very same word that, for a thousand years or

more, has been used before nouns and pronouns to govern the objective case.

Tooke himself does not deny this; but, conceiving that almost all

particles, whether English or any other, can be traced back to ancient

verbs or nouns, he hunts for the root of this, in a remoter region, where

he pretends to find that \_to\_ has the same origin as \_do\_; and though he

detects the former in a \_Gothic noun\_, he scruples not to identify it with

an \_auxiliary verb\_! Yet he elsewhere expressly denies, "that \_any\_ words

change their nature by use, so as to belong sometimes to one part of

speech, and sometimes to another."--\_Div. of Pur.\_, Vol. i, p. 68.

OBS 4.--From this, the fair inference is, that he will have both \_to\_ and

\_do\_ to be "\_nouns substantive\_" still! "Do (the \_auxiliary\_ verb, as it

has been called) is derived from the same root, and is indeed the same word

as TO."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 290. "Since FROM means \_commencement\_ or

\_beginning\_, TO must mean \_end\_ or \_termination\_."--\_Ib.\_, i, 283. "The

preposition TO (in Dutch written TOE and TOT, a little nearer to the

original) is the Gothic substantive [Gothic: taui] or [Gothic: tauhts], i.

e. \_act, effect, result, consummation.\_ Which Gothic substantive is indeed

itself no other than the past participle of the verb [Gothic: taujan],

\_agere\_. And what is \_done\_, is \_terminated, ended, finished\_."--\_Ib.\_, i,

285. No wonder that Johnson, Skinner, and Junius, gave no hint of \_this\_

derivation: it is not worth the ink it takes, if it cannot be made more

sure. But in showing its bearing on the verb, the author not unjustly

complains of our grammarians, that: "Of all the points which they endeavour

to \_shuffle over\_, there is none in which they do it more grossly than in

this of the infinitive."--\_Ib.\_, i, 287.

OBS. 5.--Many are content to call the word TO a \_prefix\_, a \_particle\_, a

\_little word\_, a \_sign of the infinitive\_, a \_part of the infinitive\_, a

\_part of the verb\_, and the like, without telling us whence it comes, how

it differs from the preposition \_to\_, or to what part of speech it belongs.

It certainly is not what we usually call a \_prefix\_, because we never \_join

it to\_ the verb; yet there are three instances in which it becomes such,

before a noun: viz., \_to-day, to-night, to-morrow\_. If it is a

"\_particle\_," so is any other preposition, as well as every small and

invariable word. If it is a "\_little word\_," the whole bigness of a

preposition is unquestionably found in it; and no "\_word\_" is so small but

that it must belong to some one of the ten classes called parts of speech.

If it is a "\_sign of the infinitive\_," because it is used before no other

mood; so is it a \_sign of the objective case\_, or of what in Latin is

called the dative, because it precedes no other case. If we suppose it to

be a "\_part of the infinitive\_," or a "\_part of the verb\_," it is certainly

no \_necessary\_ part of either; because there is no verb which may not, in

several different ways, be properly used in the infinitive without it. But

if it be a part of the infinitive, it must be a \_verb\_, and ought to be

classed with the \_auxiliaries\_. Dr. Ash accordingly placed it among the

auxiliaries; but he says, (inaccurately, however,) "The auxiliary \_sign

seems\_ to have the nature of \_adverbs.\_"--\_Grammatical Institutes\_, p. 33.

"The auxiliary [signs] \_are, to, do, did, have, had, shall, will, may, can,

must, might\_," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 31.

OBS. 6.--It is clear, as I have already shown, that the word \_to\_ may be a

\_sign\_ of the infinitive, and yet not be a \_part\_ of it. Dr. Ash supposes,

it may even be a part of the \_mood\_, and yet not be a part of the \_verb\_.

How this can be, I see not, unless the mood consists in something else than

either the form or the parts of the verb. This grammarian says, "In

parsing, every word should be considered as a \_distinct part of speech\_:

for though two or more words may be united to form a mode, a tense, or a

comparison; yet it seems quite improper to unite two or more words to make

a noun, a verb, an adjective, &c."--\_Gram. Inst.\_, p. 28. All the

auxiliaries, therefore, and the particle \_to\_ among them, he parses

separately; but he follows not his own advice, to make them distinct parts

of speech; for he calls them all \_signs\_ only, and signs are not one of his

ten parts of speech. And the participle too, which is one of the ten, and

which he declares to be "no part of the verb," he parses separately;

calling it a verb, and not a participle, as often as it accompanies any of

his auxiliary signs. This is certainly a greater impropriety than there can

be in supposing an auxiliary and a participle to constitute a verb; for the

mood and tense are the properties of the compound, and ought not to be

ascribed to the principal term only. Not so with the preposition \_to\_

before the infinitive, any more than with the conjunction \_if\_ before the

subjunctive. These may well be parsed as separate parts of speech; for

these moods are sometimes formed, and are completely distinguished in each

of their tenses, without the adding of these signs.

OBS. 7.--After a careful examination of what others have taught respecting

this disputed point in grammar, I have given, in the preceding rule, that

explanation which I consider to be the most correct and the most simple,

and also as well authorized as any. Who first parsed the infinitive in this

manner, I know not; probably those who first called the \_to\_ a

\_preposition\_; among whom were Lowth and the author of the old British

Grammar. The doctrine did not originate with me, or with Comly, or with any

American author. In Coar's English Grammar, published in London in 1796.

the phrase \_to trample\_ is parsed thus: "\_To\_--A preposition, serving for a

sign of the infinitive mood to the verb \_Trample\_--A verb neuter,

infinitive mood, present tense, \_governed by the preposition\_ TO before it.

RULE. The preposition \_to\_ before a verb, is the sign of the infinitive

mood." See the work, p. 263. This was written by a gentleman who speaks of

his "long habit of teaching the Latin Tongue," and who was certainly

partial enough to the principles of Latin grammar, since he adopts in

English the whole detail of Latin cases.

OBS 8.--In Fisher's English Grammar, London, 1800, (of which there had been

many earlier editions,) we find the following rule of syntax: "When two

principal \_Verbs\_ come together, the latter of them expresses an unlimited

Sense, with the Preposition \_to\_ before it; as \_he loved to learn; I chose

to dance\_: and is called the \_infinitive Verb\_, which may also follow a

Name or Quality; as, \_a Time to sing; a Book delightful to read\_." That

this author supposed the infinitive to be \_governed\_ by \_to\_, and not by

the preceding verb, noun, or adjective, is plain from the following note,

which he gives in his margin: "The Scholar will best understand this, by

being told that \_infinite\_ or \_invariable Verbs\_, having neither Number,

Person, nor Nominative Word belonging to them, are known or \_governed by

the Preposition\_ TO coming before them. The Sign \_to\_ is often understood;

as, Bid Robert and his company (\_to\_) tarry."--\_Fisher's New Gram.\_, p. 95.

OBS. 9.--The forms of parsing, and also the rules, which are given in the

early English grammars, are so very defective, that it is often impossible

to say positively, what their authors did, or did not, intend to teach. Dr.

Lowth's specimen of "grammatical resolution" contains four infinitives. In

his explanation of the first, the preposition and the verb are parsed

separately, as above; except that he says nothing about government. In his

account of the other three, the two words are taken together, and called a

"\_verb\_, in the infinitive \_mode\_." But as he elsewhere calls the particle

\_to\_ a preposition, and nowhere speaks of any thing else as governing the

infinitive, it seems fair to infer, that he conceived the verb to be the

regimen of this preposition.[404] If such was his idea, we have the learned

Doctor's authority in opposition to that of his professed admirers and

copyists. Of these, Lindley Murray is doubtless the most famous. But

Murray's twelfth rule of syntax, while it expressly calls \_to\_ before the

infinitive a \_preposition\_, absurdly takes away from it this regimen, and

leaves us a preposition that \_governs nothing\_, and has apparently nothing

to do with the \_relation\_ of the terms between which it occurs.

OBS. 10.--Many later grammarians, perceiving the absurdity of calling \_to\_

before the infinitive a \_preposition\_ without supposing it to govern the

verb, have studiously avoided this name; and have either made the "\_little

word\_" a supernumerary part of speech, or treated it as no part of speech

at all. Among these, if I mistake not, are Allen, Lennie, Bullions, Alger,

Guy, Churchill, Hiley, Nutting, Mulligan, Spencer, and Wells. Except Comly,

the numerous modifiers of Murray's Grammar are none of them more

consistent, on this point, than was Murray himself. Such of them as do not

follow him literally, either deny, or forbear to affirm, that \_to\_ before a

verb is a \_preposition\_; and consequently either tell us not what it is, or

tell us falsely; some calling it "\_a part of the verb\_," while they neither

join it to the verb as a prefix, nor include it among the auxiliaries. Thus

Kirkham: "\_To\_ is not a preposition when \_joined to\_ a verb in this mood;

thus, \_to\_ ride, \_to\_ rule; but it should be parsed \_with the verb\_, and

\_as a part\_ of it."--\_Gram. in Familiar Lect.\_, p. 137. So R. C. Smith:

"This little word \_to\_ when \_used before\_ verbs in this manner, is not a

preposition, but forms a part of the verb, and, in parsing, should be so

considered."--\_Productive Gram.\_, p. 65. How can that be "\_a part\_ of the

verb," which is \_a word\_ used \_before\_ it? or how is \_to\_ "joined to the

verb," or made a part of it, in the phrase, "\_to\_ ride?" But Smith does not

abide by his own doctrine; for, in an other part of his book, he adopts the

phraseology of Murray, and makes \_to\_ a preposition: saying, "The

\_preposition\_ TO, though generally used before the latter verb, is

sometimes properly omitted; as, 'I heard him say it;' instead of '\_to\_ say

it.'"--\_Productive Gram.\_, p. 156. See \_Murray's Rule\_ 12th.

OBS. 11.--Most English grammarians have considered the word \_to\_ as a part

of the infinitive, a part \_of the verb\_; and, like the teachers of Latin,

have referred the government of this mood to a preceding verb. But the rule

which they give, is partial, and often inapplicable; and their exceptions

to it, or the heterogeneous parts into which some of them divide it, are

both numerous and puzzling. They teach that at least half of the ten

different parts of speech "\_frequently\_ govern the infinitive:" if so,

there should be a distinct rule for each; for why should the government of

one part of speech be made an exception to that of an other? and, if this

be done, with respect to the infinitive, why not also with respect to the

objective case? In all instances to which their rule is applicable, the

rule which I have given, amounts to the same thing; and it obviates the

necessity for their numerous exceptions, and the embarrassment arising from

other constructions of the infinitive not noticed in them. Why then is the

simplest solution imaginable still so frequently rejected for so much

complexity and inconsistency? Or how can the more common rule in question

be suitable for a child, if its applicability depends on a relation between

the two verbs, which the preposition \_to\_ sometimes expresses, and

sometimes does not?

OBS. 12.--All authors admit that in some instances, the sign \_to\_ is

"superfluous and improper," the construction and government appearing

complete without it; and the "Rev. Peter Bullions, D. D., Professor of

Languages in the Albany Academy," has recently published a grammar, in

which he adopts the common rule, "One verb governs \_another\_ in the

infinitive mood; as, \_I desire to learn\_;" and then remarks, "The

infinitive after a verb is governed by it \_only when the attribute

expressed by the infinitive is either the subject or\_ [the] \_object of the

other verb\_. In such expressions as '\_I read to learn\_,' the infinitive is

\_not governed\_ by 'I read,' but depends on the phrase '\_in order to\_'

understood."--\_Bullions's Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 110. But, "\_I read 'in

order to' to learn\_," is not English; though it might be, if either \_to\_

were any thing else than a preposition: as, "Now \_set to to learn\_ your

lesson." This broad exception, therefore, which embraces well-nigh half the

infinitives in the language, though it contains some obvious truth, is both

carelessly stated, and badly resolved. The single particle \_to\_ is quite

sufficient, both to govern the infinitive, and to connect it to any

antecedent term which can make sense with such an adjunct. But, in fact,

the reverend author must have meant to use the "\_little word\_" but once;

and also to deny that it is a preposition; for he elsewhere says expressly,

though, beyond question, erroneously, "A preposition should never be used

before the infinitive."--\_Ib.\_, p. 92. And he also says, "The \_Infinitive\_

mood expresses \_a thing\_ in a general manner, without distinction of

number, person, \_or time\_, and commonly has TO \_before\_ it."--\_Ib.\_, Second

Edition, p. 35. Now if TO is "\_before\_" the mood, it is certainly not \_a

part\_ of it. And again, if this mood had no distinction of "\_time\_," our

author's two tenses of it, and his own two special rules for their

application, would be as absurd as is his notion of its government. See his

\_Obs. 6 and 7, ib.\_, p. 124.

OBS. 13.--Richard Hiley, too, a grammarian of perhaps more merit, is

equally faulty in his explanation of the infinitive mood. In the first

place, he absurdly says, "TO \_before the infinitive mood\_, is considered as

forming \_part of the verb\_; but in \_every other\_ situation it is a

preposition."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, Third Edition, p. 28. To teach that a

"\_part of the verb\_" stands "\_before the mood\_," is an absurdity manifestly

greater, than the very opposite notion of Dr. Ash, that what is \_not a part

of the verb\_, may yet be included \_in the mood\_. There is no need of either

of these false suppositions; or of the suggestion, doubly false, that \_to\_

"in \_every other\_ situation, is a preposition." What does \_preposition\_

mean? Is \_to\_ a preposition when it is placed \_after\_ a verb, and \_not\_ a

preposition when it is placed \_before\_ it? For example: "I rise \_to shut

to\_ the door."--See \_Luke\_, xiii, 25.

OBS. 14.--In his syntax, this author further says, "When two verbs come

together, the latter \_must be in the infinitive mood, when it denotes the

object\_ of the former; as, 'Study \_to improve\_.'" This is his \_Rule\_. Now

look at his \_Notes\_. "1. When the latter verb \_does not express\_ the

object, \_but the end\_, or something remote, the word \_for\_, or the words

\_in order to\_, are understood; as, 'I read \_to learn\_;' that is, 'I read

\_for\_ to learn,' or, '\_in order\_ [TO] \_to\_ learn.' The word \_for\_, however,

is never, in such instances, expressed in good language. 2. The infinitive

is \_frequently governed\_ by adjectives, substantives, and participles; but

in \_this instance\_ also, a preposition is understood, though \_never

expressed\_; as, 'Eager \_to learn\_;' that is, 'eager \_for\_ to learn;' or,

'\_for\_ learning;' 'A desire \_to improve\_;' that is, '\_for to

improve\_.'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 89. Here we see the origin of some of

Bullions's blunders. \_To\_ is so small a word, it slips through the fingers

of these gentlemen. Words utterly needless, and worse than needless, they

foist into our language, in instances beyond number, to explain infinitives

that occur at almost every breath. Their students must see that, "\_I read

to learn\_," and, "\_I study to improve\_," with countless other examples of

either sort, are very \_different constructions\_, and not to be parsed by

the same rule! And here the only government of the infinitive which Hiley

affirms, is immediately contradicted by the supposition of a needless \_for\_

"understood."

OBS. 15.--In all such examples as, "I \_read\_ to \_learn\_,"--"I \_strive\_ to

\_learn\_"--"Some \_eat\_ to \_live\_,"--"Some \_live\_ to \_eat\_,"--"She \_sings\_ to

\_cheer\_ him,"--"I \_come\_ to \_aid\_ you,"--"I \_go\_ to \_prepare\_ a place for

you,"--\_the action\_ and \_its purpose\_ are connected by the word \_to\_; and

if, in the countless instances of this kind, the former verbs \_do not

govern\_ the latter, it is not because the phraseology is elliptical, or

ever was elliptical,[405] but because in no case is there any such

government, except in the construction of those verbs which take the

infinitive after them without the preposition \_to\_. Professor Bullions will

have the infinitive to be governed by a finite verb, "when the \_attribute

expressed by the infinitive is the subject\_ of the other verb." An

infinitive may be made \_the subject\_ of a finite verb; but this grammarian

has mistaken the established meaning of \_subject\_, as well as of

\_attribute\_, and therefore written nonsense. Dr. Johnson defines his

\_adverb\_ TO, "A particle coming between two verbs, and noting the second as

the \_object\_ of the first." But of all the words which, according to my

opponents and their oracles, govern the infinitive, probably not more than

a quarter are such verbs as usually \_have an object\_ after them. Where then

is the propriety of their notion of infinitive government? And what

advantage has it, even where it is least objectionable?

OBS. 16.--Take for an example of this contrast the terms, "Strive to enter

in--many will seek to enter in."--\_Luke\_, xiii, 24. Why should it be

thought more eligible to say, that the verb \_strive\_ or \_will seek\_ governs

the infinitive verb \_to enter\_; than to say, that \_to\_ is a preposition,

showing the relation between \_strive\_ and \_enter\_, or between \_will seek\_

and \_enter\_, and governing the latter verb? (See the exact and only needful

form for parsing any such term, in the \_Twelfth Praxis\_ of this work.)

None, I presume, will deny, that in the Greek or the Latin of these

phrases, the finite verbs govern the infinitive; or that, in the French,

the infinitive \_entrer\_ is governed first by one preposition, and then by

an other. "\_Contendite intrare--multi quærent intrare\_."--\_Montanus\_.

"Efforcez-vous \_d'\_entrer--plusieurs chercheront \_à\_ y entrer."--\_French

Bible\_. In my opinion, \_to\_ before a verb is as fairly a preposition as the

French \_de\_ or \_à\_; and it is the main design of these observations, while

they candidly show the reader what others teach, \_to prove it so\_. The only

construction which makes it any thing else, is that which puts it after a

verb or a participle, in the sense of an adverbial supplement; as, "The

infernal idol is bowed down \_to\_."--\_Herald of Freedom\_. "Going \_to\_ and

\_fro\_."--\_Bible\_. "At length he came \_to\_."--"Tell him to heave \_to\_."--"He

was ready to set \_to\_." With singular absurdness of opinion, some

grammarians call \_to\_ a preposition, when it thus \_follows\_ a verb and

governs nothing, who resolutely deny it that name, when it \_precedes\_ the

verb, and \_requires it to be in the infinitive mood\_, as in the last two

examples. Now, if this is not \_government\_, what is? And if \_to\_, without

government, is not an \_adverb\_, what is? See Obs. 2d on the List of

Prepositions.

OBS. 17.--The infinitive thus admits a simpler solution in English, than in

most other languages; because we less frequently use it without a

preposition, and seldom, if ever, allow any variety in this connecting and

governing particle. And yet in no other language has its construction given

rise to a tenth part of that variety of absurd opinions, which the defender

of its true syntax must refute in ours. In French, the infinitive, though

frequently placed in immediate dependence on an other verb, may also be

governed by several different prepositions, (as, \_à, de, pour, sans,

après\_,) according to the sense.[406] In Spanish and Italian, the

construction is similar. In Latin and Greek, the infinitive is, for the

most part, immediately dependent on an other verb. But, according to the

grammars, it may stand for a noun, in all the six cases; and many have

called it an \_indeclinable noun\_. See the Port-Royal Latin and Greek

grammars; in which several peculiar constructions of the infinitive are

referred to the government of a \_preposition\_--constructions that occur

frequently in Greek, and sometimes even in Latin.

OBS. 18.--It is from an improper extension of the principles of these

"learned languages" to ours, that much of the false teaching which has so

greatly and so long embarrassed this part of English grammar, has been, and

continues to be, derived. A late author, who supposes every infinitive to

be virtually \_a noun\_, and who thinks he finds in ours \_all the cases\_ of

an English noun, not excepting the possessive, gives the following account

of its origin and nature: "This mood, with almost all its properties and

uses, has been adopted into our language from the ancient Greek and Latin

tongues. \* \* \* The definite article [Greek: tò] [,] \_the\_, which they [the

Greeks] used before the infinitive, to mark, in an especial manner, its

nature of a substantive, \_is evidently the same word\_ that we use before

our infinitive; thus, '\_to\_ write,' signifies \_the\_ writing; that is, the

action of writing;--and when a verb governs an infinitive, it only governs

it \_as in the objective case\_."--\_Nixon's English Parser\_, p. 83. But who

will believe, that our old Saxon ancestors borrowed from Greek or Latin

what is now our construction of the very \_root\_ of the English verb, when,

in all likelihood, they could not read a word in either of those languages,

or scarcely knew the letters in their own, and while it is plain that they

took not thence even the inflection of a \_single branch\_ of any verb

whatever?

OBS. 19.--The particle \_to\_, being a very common preposition in the Saxon

tongue, has been generally used before the English infinitive, ever since

the English language, or any thing like it, existed. And it has always

\_governed the verb\_, not indeed "as in the \_objective case\_," for no verb

is ever declined by cases, but simply as the \_infinitive mood\_. In the

Anglo-Saxon version of the Gospels, which was made as early as the eleventh

century, the infinitive mood is sometimes expressed in this manner, and

sometimes by the termination \_on\_ without the preposition. Dr. Johnson's

History of the English Language, prefixed to his large Dictionary,

contains, of this version, and of Wickliffe's, the whole of the first

chapter of Luke; except that the latter omits the first four verses, so

that the numbers for reference do not correspond. Putting, for convenience,

English characters for the Saxon, I shall cite here three examples from

each; and these, if he will, the reader may compare with the 19th, the

77th, and the 79th verse, in our common Bible. SAXON: "And ic eom asend

with the \_sprecan\_. and the this \_bodian\_."--\_Lucæ\_, i, 19. WICKLIFFE:

"And Y am sent to thee \_to speke\_ and \_to evangelise\_ to thee these

thingis."--\_Luk\_, i, 15. SAXON: "\_To syllene\_ his folce hæle gewit on hyra

synna forgyfnesse."--\_Lucæ\_, i, 77. WICKLIFFE: "\_To geve\_ science of heelth

to his puple into remissioun of her synnes."--\_Luk\_, i, 73. SAXON:

"\_Onlyhtan\_ tham the on thystrum and on deathes sceade sittath. ure fet \_to

gereccenne\_ on sibbe weg."--\_Lucæ\_, i, 79. WICKLIFFE: "\_To geve\_ light to

them that sitten in derknessis, and in schadowe of deeth, \_to dresse\_ oure

feet into the weye of pees."--\_Luk\_, i, 75. "In Anglo-Saxon," says Dr.

Latham, "the dative of the infinitive verb ended in \_-nne\_, and was

preceded by the preposition \_to\_: as, To lufienne = \_ad amandum\_ [= \_to

loving\_, or \_to love\_]; To bærnenne = \_ad urendum\_ [= \_to burning\_, or \_to

burn\_]; To syllanne = \_ad dandum\_ [= \_to giving\_, or \_to

give\_]."--\_Hand-Book\_, p. 205.

OBS. 20.--Such, then, has ever been the usual construction of the \_English\_

infinitive mood; and a wilder interpretation than that which supposes \_to\_

an \_article\_, and says, "\_to write\_ signifies \_the writing\_," cannot

possibly be put upon it. On this supposition, "I am going \_to write\_ a

letter," is a pure Grecism; meaning, "I am going \_the writing\_ a letter,"

which is utter nonsense. And further, the infinitive in Greek and Latin, as

well as in Saxon and English, is always in fact governed as a \_mood\_,

rather than as a \_case\_, notwithstanding that the Greek article in any of

its four different cases may, in some instances, be put before it; for even

with an article before it, the Greek infinitive usually retains its regimen

as a verb, and is therefore not "a \_substantive\_," or noun. I am well aware

that some learned critics, conceiving that the essence of the verb consists

in predication, have plainly denied that the infinitive is a verb; and,

because it may be made the subject of a finite verb, or may be governed by

a verb or a preposition, have chosen to call it "a mere noun substantive."

Among these is the erudite Richard Johnson, who, with so much ability and

lost labour, exposed, in his Commentaries, the errors and defects of Lily's

Grammar and others. This author adduces several reasons for his opinion;

one of which is the following: "Thirdly, it is found to have a Preposition

set before it, an other \_sure sign of a Substantive\_; as, '\_Ille nihil

præter loqui, et ipsum maledicè et malignè, didicit\_.' Liv. l. 45, p. 888.

[That is, "He learned nothing \_but to speak\_, and that slanderously and

maliciously."] '\_At si quis sibi beneficium dat, nihil interest inter dare

et accipere\_.' Seneca, de Ben. l. 5, c. 10." [That is, "If any one bestows

a benefit on himself, there is no difference \_between give and

take\_;" [407]--or, "\_between bestowing\_ and \_receiving\_."]--See \_Johnson's

Gram. Com.\_, p. 342. But I deny that a preposition is a "sure sign of a

substantive." (See Obs. 2d on the Prepositions, and also Obs. 1st on the

List of Prepositions, in the tenth chapter of Etymology.) And if we appeal

to philological authorities, to determine whether infinitives are nouns or

verbs, there will certainly be found more for the latter name, than the

former; that is, more in number, if not in weight; though it must be

confessed, that many of the old Latin grammarians did, as Priscian tells

us, consider the infinitive a noun, calling it \_Nomen Verbi\_, the Name of

the Verb.[408] If we appeal to reasons, there are more also of these;--or

at least as many, and most of them better: as, 1. That the infinitive is

often transitive; 2. That it has tenses; 3. That it is qualified by

adverbs, rather than by adjectives; 4. That it is never declined like a

noun; 5. That the action or state expressed by it, is not commonly

abstract, though it may be so sometimes; 6. That in some languages it is

\_the root\_ from which all other parts of the verb are derived, as it is in

English.

OBS. 21.--So far as I know, it has not yet been denied, that \_to\_ before a

\_participle\_ is a preposition, or that a preposition before a participle

\_governs\_ it; though there are not a few who erroneously suppose that

participles, by virtue of such government, are necessarily converted into

\_nouns\_. Against this latter idea, there are many sufficient reasons; but

let them now pass, because they belong not here. I am only going to prove,

in this place, that \_to\_ before the infinitive is \_just such a word\_ as it

is before the participle; and this can be done, call either of them what

you will. It is plain, that if the infinitive and the participle are ever

\_equivalent to each other\_, the same word \_to\_ before them both must needs

be equivalent \_to itself\_. Now I imagine there are some examples of each

equivalence; as, "When we are habituated \_to doing\_ [or \_to do\_] any thing

wrong, we become blinded by it."--\_Young Christian\_, p. 326. "The lyre, or

harp, was best adapted \_to accompanying\_ [or \_to accompany\_] their

declamations."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 336. "The new beginner should be

accustomed \_to giving\_ [or \_to give\_] all the reasons for each part of

speech."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 88. "Which, from infecting our religion and

morals, fell \_to corrupt\_ [say, \_to corrupting\_] our language."--SWIFT:

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 108. Besides these instances of \_sameness in the

particle\_, there are some cases of \_constructional ambiguity\_, the noun and

the verb having the same form, and the \_to\_ not determining which is meant:

as, "He was inclined \_to sleep\_."--"It must be a bitter experience, to be

more accustomed \_to hate\_ than \_to love\_." Here are \_double\_ doubts for the

discriminators: their "\_sign of the infinitive\_" fails, or becomes

uncertain; \_because they do not know it from a preposition\_. Cannot my

opponents see in these examples an argument against the distinction which

they attempt to draw between \_to\_ and \_to\_? An other argument as good, is

also afforded by the fact, that our ancestors often used the participle

after \_to\_, in the very same texts in which we have since adopted the

infinitive in its stead; as, "And if yee wolen resceyue, he is Elie that is

\_to comynge\_."--\_Matt.\_, xi, 14. "Ihesu that delyueride us fro wraththe \_to

comynge\_."--\_1 Thes.\_, i, 10. These, and seventeen other examples of the

same kind, may be seen in \_Tooke's Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii. pp. 457

and 458.

OBS. 22.--Dr. James P. Wilson, speaking of the English infinitive,

says:--"But if the appellation of \_mode\_ be denied it, it is then a \_verbal

noun\_. This is indeed \_its truest character\_, because \_its idea ever

represents\_ an \_object of approach\_. \_To\_ supplies the defect of a

termination characteristic of the infinitive, precedes it, and marks it

either as \_that, towards which\_ the preceding verb is directed;[409] or it

signifies \_act\_, and shows the word to import an action. When the

infinitive is the expression of an \_immediate\_ action, which it must be,

after the verbs, \_bid, can, dare, do, feel, hear, let, make, may, must,

need, see, shall\_, and \_will\_, the \_preposition\_ TO is omitted."--\_Essay on

Grammar\_, p. 129. That the truest character of the infinitive is that of a

verbal noun, is not to be conceded, in weak abandonment of all the reasons

for a contrary opinion, until it can be shown that the action or being

expressed by it, must needs assume a \_substantive\_ character, in order to

be "that \_towards which\_ the preceding verb is directed." But this

character is manifestly not supposable of any of those infinitives which,

according to the foregoing quotation, must follow other verbs without the

intervention of the preposition \_to\_: as, "Bid him \_come\_;"--"He can

\_walk\_." And I see no reason to suppose it, where the relation of the

infinitive to an other word is \_not\_ "\_immediate\_" but marked by the

preposition, as above described. For example: "And he laboured till the

going-down of the sun TO \_deliver\_ him."--\_Dan.\_, vi, 14. Here \_deliver\_ is

governed by \_to\_, and connected by it to the finite verb \_laboured\_; but to

tell us, it is to be understood \_substantively\_ rather than \_actively\_, is

an assumption as false, as it is needless.

OBS. 23.--To deny to the infinitive the appellation of \_mood\_, no more

makes it a \_verbal noun\_, than does the Doctor's solecism about what "ITS

IDEA \_ever represents\_." "The infinitive therefore," as Horne Tooke

observes, "appears plainly to be what the Stoics called it, \_the very verb

itself\_, pure and uncompounded."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 286.

Not indeed as including the particle \_to\_, or as it stands in the English

perfect tense, but as it occurs in the \_simple root\_. But I cited Dr.

Wilson, as above, not so much with a design of animadverting again on this

point, as with reference to the \_import\_ of the particle \_to\_; of which he

furnishes a twofold explanation, leaving the reader to take which part he

will of the contradiction. He at first conceives it to convey in general

the idea of "\_towards\_," and to mark the infinitive as a term "\_towards

which\_" something else "\_is directed\_." If this interpretation is the true

one, it is plain that \_to\_ before a verb is no other than the common

preposition \_to\_; and this idea is confirmed by its ancient usage, and by

all that is certainly known of its derivation. But if we take the second

solution, and say, "it signifies \_act\_," we make it not a preposition, but

either a noun or a verb; and then the question arises, \_Which of these is

it\_? Besides, what sense can there be, in supposing \_to go\_ to mean \_act

go\_, or to be equivalent to \_do go\_.[410]

OBS. 24.--Though the infinitive is commonly made an adjunct to some finite

verb, yet it may be connected to almost all the other parts of speech, or

even to an other infinitive. The preposition \_to\_ being its only and almost

universal index, we seldom find any other preposition put before this;

unless the word \_about\_, in such a situation, is a preposition, as I

incline to think it is.[411] Anciently, the infinitive was sometimes

preceded by \_for\_ as well as \_to\_; as, "I went up to Jerusalem \_for to\_

worship."--\_Acts\_, xxiv, 11. "What went ye out \_for to\_ see?"--\_Luke\_, vii,

26. "And stood up \_for to\_ read."--\_Luke\_, iv, 16. Here modern usage

rejects the former preposition: the idiom is left to the uneducated. But it

seems practicable to subjoin the infinitive to every one of the ten parts

of speech, except the article: as,

1. To a noun; as, "If there is any \_precept to obtain\_

felicity."--\_Hawkesworth\_. "It is high \_time to awake\_ out of

sleep."--\_Rom.\_, xiii, 11. "To flee from the \_wrath to come\_."--\_Matt.\_,

iii, 7.

2. To an adjective; as, "He seemed \_desirous to speak\_, yet \_unwilling to

offend\_."--\_Hawkesworth\_. "He who is the \_slowest to promise\_, is \_the

quickest to perform\_."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 35.

3. To a pronoun; as, "I discovered \_him to be\_ a scholar."--\_W. Allen's

Gram.\_, p. 166. "Is it lawful for \_us to give\_ tribute to Cæsar?"--\_Luke\_,

xx, 22. "Let me desire \_you to reflect\_ impartially."--BLAIR: \_Murray's

Eng. Reader\_, p. 77. "Whom hast thou then or \_what t' accuse\_?"--\_Milton\_,

P. L., iv, 67.

4. To a finite verb; as, "Then Peter \_began to rebuke\_ him."--\_Matt.\_, xvi,

22. "The Son of man \_is come to seek and to save\_ that which was

lost."--\_Luke\_, xix, 10.

5. To an other infinitive; as, "\_To go to enter\_ into Egypt."--\_Jer.\_, xli,

17. "We are not often willing \_to wait to consider\_."--\_J. Abbott\_. "For

what had he \_to do to chide\_ at me?"--\_Shak.\_

6. To a participle; as, "Still \_threatening to devour\_ me."--\_Milton\_. "Or

as a thief \_bent to unhoard\_ the cash of some rich burgher."--\_Id.\_

7. To an adverb; as, "She is old \_enough to go\_ to school."--"I know not

\_how to act\_."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 106. "Tell me \_when to come\_, and

\_where to meet\_ you."--"He hath not \_where to lay\_ his head."

8. To a conjunction; as, "He knows better \_than to trust\_ you."--"It was so

hot \_as to melt\_ these ornaments."--"Many who praise virtue, do no more

\_than praise\_ it."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

9. To a preposition; as, "I was \_about to write\_."--\_Rev.\_, x, 4. "Not \_for

to hide\_ it in a hedge."--\_Burns's Poems\_, p. 42. "Amatum iri, To be \_about

to be loved\_."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 95.[412]

10. To an interjection; as, "\_O to forget\_ her!"--\_Young's Night Thoughts\_.

OBS. 25.--The infinitive is the mere verb, without affirmation, without

person or number, and therefore without the agreement peculiar to a finite

verb. (See Obs. 8th on Rule 2d.) But, in most instances, it is not without

\_limitation\_ of the being, action, or passion, to some particular person or

persons, thing or things, that are said, supposed, or denied, to be, to

act, or to be acted upon. Whenever it is not thus limited, it is taken

\_abstractly\_, and has some resemblance to a noun: because it then suggests

the being, action, or passion alone: though, even then, the active

infinitive may still govern the objective case; and it may also be easy to

\_imagine\_ to whom or to what the being, action, or passion, naturally

pertains. The uses of the infinitive are so many and various, that it is no

easy matter to classify them accurately. The following are unquestionably

\_the chief\_ of the things for which it may stand:

1. For the \_supplement\_ to an other verb, to complete the sense; as, "Loose

him, and \_let\_ him \_go\_."--\_John\_, xi, 44. "They that \_go to seek\_ mixed

wine."--\_Prov.\_, xxiii, 30. "His hands \_refuse\_ to \_labour\_."--\_Ib.\_, xxi,

25. "If you \_choose to have\_ those terms."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 374. "How

our old translators first \_struggled to express\_ this."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 456.

"To any one who \_will please to examine\_ our language."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 444.

"They \_are forced to give up\_ at last."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 375. "Which \_ought to

be done\_."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 451. "Which \_came to pass\_."--\_Acts\_, xi, 28. "I

\_dare engage to make\_ it out."--\_Swift\_.

2. For the \_purpose\_, or \_end\_, of that to which it is added; as, "Each has

employed his time and pains \_to establish\_ a criterion."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_,

ii, 374. "I shall not stop now, \_to assist\_ in their elucidation."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 75. "Our purposes are not endowed with words \_to make\_ them

known."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 74. [A] "TOOL is some instrument taken up \_to work\_

with."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 145. "Labour not \_to be\_ rich."--\_Prov.\_, xxiii, 4. "I

flee unto thee \_to hide\_ me."--\_Ps.\_, cxliii, 9. "Evil shall hunt the

violent man \_to overthrow\_ him."--\_Ib.\_, cxl, 11.

3. For the \_object\_ of an affection or passion; as, "He \_loves to

ride\_."--"I \_desire to hear\_ her \_speak\_ again."--\_Shale.\_ "If we \_wish to

avoid\_ important error."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 3. "Who \_rejoice to do\_

evil."--\_Prov.\_, ii, 14. "All agreeing in \_earnestness to see\_

him."--\_Shak\_. "Our \_curiosity\_ is raised \_to know\_ what lies

beyond."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 335.

4. For the \_cause\_ of an affection or passion; as, "I rejoice \_to hear\_

it."--"By which I hope \_to have laid\_ a foundation," &c.--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 34. "For he made me mad, \_to see\_ him \_shine\_ so brisk, and \_smell\_ so

sweet."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 118. "Thou didst eat strange flesh, which

some did die \_to look\_ on."--\_Ib.\_, p. 182. "They grieved \_to see\_ their

best allies at variance."--\_Rev. W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 165.

5. For the \_subject\_ of a proposition, or the chief term in such subject;

as, "\_To steal\_ is sinful."--"\_To do\_ justice and judgement, is more

acceptable to the Lord than sacrifice."--\_Prov.\_, xxi, 3. "\_To do\_ RIGHT,

is, to do that which is ordered to be done."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 7. "\_To

go\_ to law to plague a neighbour, has in it more of malice, than of love to

justice."--\_Seattle's Mor. Sci.\_, i, 177.

6. For the \_predicate\_ of a proposition, or the chief term in such

predicate; as, "To enjoy is \_to obey\_."--\_Pope\_. "The property of rain is

\_to wet\_, and fire, \_to burn\_."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 15. "To die is \_to

be banished\_ from myself."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "The best way is, \_to slander\_

Valentine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 83. "The highway of the upright is \_to depart\_ from

evil."--\_Prov.\_, xvi, 17.

7. For a \_coming event\_, or what \_will\_ be; as, "A mutilated structure soon

\_to fall\_."--\_Cowper.\_ "He being dead, and I speedily \_to follow\_

him."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 111. "She shall rejoice in time \_to

come\_."--\_Prov.\_, xxxi, 25. "Things present, or things \_to come\_."--\_1

Cor.\_, iii, 22.

8. For a \_necessary event\_, or what \_ought\_ to be; as, "It is \_to be

remembered\_."--"It is never \_to be forgotten\_."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 2.

"An oversight much \_to be deplored\_."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 460. "The sign is not \_to

be used\_ by itself, or \_to stand\_ alone; but is \_to be joined\_ to some

other term."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 372. "The Lord's name is \_to be praised\_."--\_Ps.\_,

cxiii, 3.

9. For what is \_previously suggested\_ by another word; as, "I have \_faith

to believe\_."--"The glossarist \_did well\_ here \_not to yield\_ to his

inclination."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 329. "It is a good \_thing to give\_

thanks unto the Lord."--\_Ps.\_, xcii, 1. "\_It\_ is \_as sport\_ to a fool \_to

do\_ mischief."--\_Prov.\_, x, 23. "They have the \_gift to know\_ it."--\_Shak.\_

"We have no remaining \_occupation\_ but \_to take\_ care of the public."--\_Art

of Thinking\_, p. 52.

10. For a term of \_comparison\_ or \_measure\_; as, "He was so much affected

as \_to weep\_."--"Who could do no less than \_furnish\_ him."--\_Tooke's D.

P.\_, ii, 408. "I shall venture no farther than \_to explain\_ the nature and

convenience of these abbreviations."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 439. "I have already said

enough \_to show\_ what sort of operation that is."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 358.

OBS. 26.--After dismissing all the examples which may fairly be referred to

one or other of the ten heads above enumerated, an observant reader may yet

find \_other uses\_ of the infinitive, and those so dissimilar that they can

hardly be reduced to any one head or rule; except that all are governed by

the preposition to, which points towards or to the verb; as, "A great altar

\_to see to\_."--\_Joshua\_, xxii, 10. "[Greek: Bomon megan tou

idein]."--\_Septuagint\_. That is, "An altar \_great to behold\_." "Altare

infinitæ magnitudinis."--\_Vulgate\_. "Un fort grand autel."--\_French Bible\_.

"Easy \_to be entreated\_."--\_Jos.\_, iii, 17. "There was none \_to

help\_."--\_Ps.\_, cvii, 12. "He had rained down manna upon them \_to

eat\_."--\_Ps.\_, lxxviii, 24. "Remember his commandments \_to do\_

them."--\_Ps.\_, viii, 18. "Preserve thou those that are appointed \_to

die\_."--\_Ps.\_, lxxix, 11. "As coals to burning coals, and as wood to fire;

so is a contentious man \_to kindle\_ strife."--\_Prov.\_, xxvi, 21. "These are

far beyond the reach and power of any kings \_to do\_ away."--\_Tooke's D.

P.\_, ii, 126. "I know not indeed what \_to do\_ with those words."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 441. "They will be as little able \_to justify\_ their

innovation."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 448. "I leave you \_to compare\_ them."--\_Ib.\_, ii,

458. "There is no occasion \_to attribute\_ it."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 375. "There is

no day for me \_to look\_ upon."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 82. "Having no

external thing \_to lose.\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "I'll never be a gosling \_to

obey\_ instinct."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200. "Whereto serves mercy, but \_to confront\_

the visage of offence?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 233. "If things do not go \_to suit\_

him."--\_Liberator\_, ix, 182. "And, \_to be\_ plain, I think there is not half

a kiss \_to choose\_, who loves an other best."--\_Shak.\_, p. 91. "But \_to

return\_ to R. Johnson's instance of \_good man\_."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 370.

Our common Bibles have this text: "And a certain woman cast a piece of a

millstone upon Abimelech's head, and \_all to break\_ his skull."--\_Judges\_,

ix, 53. Perhaps the interpretation of this may be, "and \_so as completely

to break\_ his skull." The octavo edition stereotyped by "the Bible

Association of Friends in America," has it, "and \_all-to brake\_ his skull."

This, most probably, was supposed by the editors to mean, "and \_completely

broke\_ his skull;" but \_all-to\_ is no proper compound word, and therefore

the change is a perversion. The Septuagint, the Vulgate, and the common

French version, all accord with the simple indicative construction, "and

\_broke\_ his skull."

OBS. 27.--According to Lindley Murray, "The infinitive mood is often \_made

absolute\_, or used independently \_on\_ [say \_of\_] the rest of the sentence,

supplying the place of the conjunction \_that\_ with the potential mood: as,

'\_To confess\_ the truth, I was in fault;' '\_To begin\_ with the first;' '\_To

proceed\_;' '\_To conclude\_;' that is, 'That I may confess,' &c."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 184; \_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 244. Some other compilers have

adopted the same doctrine. But on what ground the \_substitution\_ of one

mood for the other is imagined, I see not. The reader will observe that

this potential mood is here just as much "\_made absolute\_," as is the

infinitive; for there is nothing expressed to which the conjunction \_that\_

connects the one phrase, or the preposition \_to\_ the other. But possibly,

in either case, there may be an ellipsis of some antecedent term; and

surely, if we imagine the construction to be complete without any such

term, we make the conjunction the more anomalous word of the two.

Confession of the truth, is here the aim of speaking, but not of what is

spoken. The whole sentence may be, "\_In order\_ to confess the truth, \_I

admit that\_ I was in fault." Or, "\_In order\_ that I may confess the truth,

\_I admit that\_ I was in fault." I do not deny, that the infinitive, or a

phrase of which the infinitive is a part, is sometimes put \_absolute\_; for,

if it is not so in any of the foregoing examples, it appears to be so in

the following: "For every object has several faces, \_so to speak\_, by which

it may be presented to us."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 41. "\_To declare\_ a thing

shall be, long before it is in being, and then \_to bring about\_ the

accomplishment of that very thing, according to the same declaration; this,

or nothing, is the work of God."--\_Justin Martyr\_.

"\_To be\_, or \_not to be\_;--that is the question."--\_Shakspeare\_.

"\_To die;--to sleep;--To sleep\_! perchance, \_to dream\_!"--\_Id., Hamlet\_.

OBS. 28.--The infinitive usually \_follows\_ the word on which it depends, or

to which the particle \_to\_ connects it; but this order is sometimes

reversed: as, "To beg I am ashamed."--\_Luke\_, xvi, 3. "To keep them no

longer in suspense, [I say plainly,] Sir Roger de Coverly is

dead."--\_Addison\_. "To suffer, as to do, Our strength is equal."--\_Milton\_.

"To catch your vivid scenes, too gross her hand."--\_Thomson\_.

OBS. 29.--Though, in respect to its syntax, the infinitive is oftener

connected with a verb, a participle, or an adjective, than with a noun or a

pronoun, it should never be so placed that the reader will be liable to

mistake the \_person\_ to whom, or the \_thing\_ to which, the being, action,

or passion, pertains. Examples of error: "This system will require a long

time to be executed as it should be."--\_Journal of N. Y. Lit. Convention\_,

1830, p. 91. It is not the \_time\_, that is to be executed; therefore say,

"This system, to be executed as it should be, will require a long time."

"He spoke in a \_manner distinct enough to be heard\_ by the whole

assembly."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 192. This implies that the orator's

\_manner\_ was \_heard\_! But the grammarian interprets his own meaning, by the

following alternative: "Or--\_He spoke distinctly enough to be heard\_ by the

whole assembly."--\_Ibid.\_ This suggests that the man himself was heard.

"When they hit upon a figure that pleases them, they are loth to part with

it, and frequently continue it so long, as to become tedious and

intricate."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 341. Is it the \_authors\_, or their

\_figure\_, that becomes tedious and intricate? If the latter, strike out,

"\_so long, as to become\_," and say, "\_till it becomes\_." "Facts are always

of the greatest consequence \_to be remembered\_ during the course of the

pleading."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 272. The rhetorician here meant: "The facts

stated in an argument, are always those parts of it, which it is most

important that the hearers should be made to remember."

OBS. 30.--According to some grammarians, "The Infinitive of the verb \_to

be\_, is often \_understood\_; as, 'I considered it [\_to be\_] necessary to

send the dispatches.'"--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 166. In this example, as in

thousands more, of various forms, the verb \_to be\_ may be inserted without

affecting the sense; but I doubt the necessity of supposing an ellipsis in

such sentences. The adjective or participle that follows, always relates to

the preceding objective; and if a noun is used, it is but an other

objective in apposition with the former: as, "I considered \_it\_ an

\_imposition\_." The verb \_to be\_, with the perfect participle, forms the

passive infinitive; and the supposition of such an ellipsis, extensively

affects one's mode of parsing. Thus, "He considered himself \_insulted\_," "I

will suppose the work \_accomplished\_," and many similar sentences, might be

supposed to contain passive infinitives. Allen says, "In the following

construction, the words in \_italics\_ are (elliptically) passive

infinitives; I saw the bird \_caught\_, and the hare \_killed\_; we heard the

letters \_read\_."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 168. Dr. Priestley observes,

"There is a remarkable ambiguity in the use of the participle \_preterite\_,

as the same word may express a thing either doing, or done; as, I went to

see the child \_dressed\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 125. If the Doctor's

participle is ambiguous, I imagine that Allen's infinitives are just as

much so. "The \_participle\_ which we denominate \_past\_, often means an

action \_whilst performing\_: thus, I saw the \_battle fought\_, and the

\_standard lowered\_."--\_Wilson's Essay\_, p. 158. Sometimes, especially in

familiar conversation, an infinitive verb is suppressed, and the sign of it

retained; as, "They might have aided us; they ought \_to\_" [have aided

us].--\_Herald of Freedom\_. "We have tried to like it, but it's hard

\_to\_."--\_Lynn News\_.

OBS. 31.--After the verb \_make\_, some writers insert the verb \_be\_, and

suppress the preposition \_to\_; as, "He \_must make\_ every syllable, and even

every letter, in the word which he pronounces, \_be heard\_

distinctly."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 329; \_Murray's E. Reader\_, p. 9. "You

\_must make\_ yourself \_be heard\_ with pleasure and attention."--\_Duncan's

Cicero\_, p. 84. "To \_make\_ himself \_be heard\_ by all."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

328. "To \_make\_ ourselves \_be heard\_ by one."--\_Ibid.\_ "Clear enough to

\_make\_ me \_be\_ understood."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 198. In my opinion, it

would be better, either to insert the \_to\_, or to use the participle only;

as, "The information which he possessed, \_made\_ his company \_to be\_

courted."--\_Dr. M'Rie\_. "Which will both show the importance of this rule,

and \_make\_ the application of it \_to be\_ understood."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

103. Or, as in these brief forms: "To \_make\_ himself \_heard\_ by

all."--"Clear enough to \_make\_ me \_understood\_."

OBS. 32.--In those languages in which the infinitive is distinguished as

such by its termination, this part of the verb may be used alone as the

subject of a finite verb; but in English it is always necessary to retain

the sign \_to\_ before an abstract infinitive, because there is nothing else

to distinguish the verb from a noun. Here we may see a difference between

our language and the French, although it has been shown, that in their

government of the infinitive they are in some degree analogous:--"HAÏR est

un tourment; AIMER est un besoin de l'âme."--\_M. de Ségur. "To hate\_ is a

torment; \_to love\_ is a requisite of the soul." If from this any will argue

that \_to\_ is not here a preposition, the same argument will be as good, to

prove that \_for\_ is not a preposition when it governs the objective case;

because that also may be used without any antecedent term of relation: as,

"They are by no means points of equal importance, \_for me to be deprived\_

of your affections, and \_for him to be defeated\_ in his

prosecution."--\_Anon., in W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 166. I said, the sign \_to\_

must \_always\_ be put before an abstract infinitive: but possibly a

\_repetition\_ of this sign may not always be necessary, when several such

infinitives occur in the same construction: as, "But, \_to fill\_ a heart

with joy, \_restore\_ content to the afflicted, or \_relieve\_ the necessitous,

these fall not within the reach of their five senses."--\_Art of Thinking\_,

p. 66. It may be too much to affirm, that this is positively ungrammatical;

yet it would be as well or better, to express it thus: "But \_to relieve\_

the necessitous, \_to restore\_ content to the afflicted, \_and to fill\_ a

heart with joy, these full not within the reach of their five senses."

OBS. 33.--In the use of the English infinitive, as well as of the

participle in \_ing\_, the distinction of \_voice\_ is often disregarded; the

active form being used in what, with respect to the noun before it, is a

passive sense: as, "There's no time \_to waste\_."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p.

82. "You are \_to blame\_."--\_Ib.\_ "The humming-bird is delightful \_to look\_

upon."--\_Ib.\_ "What pain it was \_to drown\_."--\_Shak.\_ "The thing's \_to

do\_."--\_Id.\_ "When deed of danger was \_to do\_."--\_Scott\_. "The evil I bring

upon myself, is the hardest \_to bear\_."--\_Home's Art of Thinking\_, p. 27.

"Pride is worse \_to bear\_ than cruelty."--\_Ib.\_, p. 37. These are in fact

active verbs, and not passive. We may suggest agents for them, if we

please; as, "There is no time \_for us\_ to waste." That the simple

participle in \_ing\_ may be used passively, has been proved elsewhere. It

seems sometimes to have no distinction of voice; as, "What is worth

\_doing\_, is worth \_doing well\_."--\_Com. Maxim.\_ This is certainly much more

agreeable, than to say, "What is worth \_being done\_, is worth \_being done

well\_." In respect to the voice of the infinitive, and of this participle,

many of our grammarians are obviously hypercritical. For example: "The

active voice should not be used for the passive; as, I have work \_to do\_: a

house \_to sell, to let\_, instead of \_to be done, to be sold, to be

let\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 220. "Active verbs are often used improperly

with a passive signification, as, 'the house is \_building\_, lodgings to

\_let\_, he has a house to \_sell\_, nothing is \_wanting\_;' in stead of 'the

house is \_being built\_, lodgings to \_be lett\_, he has a house to \_be\_ sold,

nothing is \_wanted\_.'"--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 64. In punctuation,

orthography, and the use of capitals, here are more errors than it is worth

while to particularize. With regard to such phraseology as, "The house \_is

being built\_," see, in Part II, sundry Observations on the Compound Form of

Conjugation. To say, "I have work \_to do\_,"--"He has a house \_to

sell\_,"--or, "We have lodgings \_to let\_," is just as good English, as to

say, "I have meat \_to eat\_."--\_John\_, iv, 32. And who, but some sciolist in

grammar, would, in all such instances, prefer the passive voice?

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION. FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XVIII.

INFINITIVES DEMANDING THE PARTICLE TO.

"William, please hand me that pencil."--\_R. C. Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 12.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the infinitive verb \_hand\_ is not preceded by

the preposition \_to\_. But, according to Rule 18th, "The preposition \_to\_

governs the infinitive mood, and commonly connects it to a finite verb."

Therefore, \_to\_ should be here inserted; thus, "William, please \_to\_ hand

me that pencil."]

"Please insert points so as to make sense."--\_Davis's Gram.\_, p. 123. "I

have known Lords abbreviate almost the half of their words."--\_Cobbett's

English Gram.\_, ¶ 153. "We shall find the practice perfectly accord with

the theory."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 23. "But it would tend to

obscure, rather than elucidate the subject."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 95.

"Please divide it for them as it should be."--\_Willett's Arith.\_, p. 193.

"So as neither to embarrass, nor weaken the sentence."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

116; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 322. "Carry her to his table, to view his poor

fare,[413] and hear his heavenly discourse."--SHERLOCK: \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

157; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 347. "That we need not be surprised to find this

hold in eloquence."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 174. "Where he has no occasion

either to divide or explain."--\_Ib.\_, p. 305. "And they will find their

pupils improve by hasty and pleasant steps."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, Pref., p.

4. "The teacher however will please observe," &c.--\_Infant School Gram.\_,

p. 8. "Please attend to a few rules in what is called syntax."--\_Ib.\_, p.

128. "They may dispense with the laws to favor their friends, or secure

their office."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 39. "To take back a gift, or break a

contract, is a wanton abuse."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. "The legislature has nothing

to do, but let it bear its own price."--\_Ib.\_, p. 315. "He is not to form,

but copy characters."--\_Rambler\_, No. 122. "I have known a woman make use

of a shoeing-horn."--\_Spect.\_, No. 536. "Finding this experiment answer, in

every respect, their wishes."--\_Sandford and Merton\_, p. 51. "In fine let

him cause his argument conclude in the term of the question."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 443.

"That he permitted not the winds of heaven

Visit her face too roughly."--\_Shakspeare, Hamlet\_.

RULE XIX.--INFINITIVES. The active verbs, \_bid, dare, feel, hear, let,

make, need, see\_, and their participles, usually take the Infinitive after

them without the preposition \_to\_: as, "If he \_bade\_ thee \_depart\_, how

\_darest\_ thou \_stay\_?"--"I \_dare\_ not \_let\_ my mind \_be\_ idle as I walk in

the streets."--\_Cotton Mather\_.

"Thy Hector, wrapt in everlasting sleep,

Shall neither \_hear\_ thee \_sigh\_, nor \_see\_ thee \_weep\_."

--\_Pope's Homer\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XIX.

OBS. 1.--Respecting the syntax of the infinitive mood when the particle

\_to\_ is not expressed before it, our grammarians are almost as much at

variance, as I have shown them to be, when they find the particle employed.

Concerning \_verbs governed by verbs\_, Lindley Murray, and some others, are

the most clear and positive, where their doctrine is the most obviously

wrong; and, where they might have affirmed with truth, that the former verb

\_governs the latter\_, they only tell us that "the preposition TO \_is

sometimes properly omitted\_,"--or that such and such verbs "\_have commonly

other verbs following them\_ without the sign TO."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

183; \_Alger's\_, 63; \_W. Allen's\_, 167, and others. If these authors meant,

that the preposition \_to\_ is omitted \_by ellipsis\_, they ought to have said

so. Then the many admirers and remodellers of Murray's Grammar might at

least have understood him alike. Then, too, any proper definition of

\_ellipsis\_ must have proved both them and him to be clearly wrong about

this construction also. If the word \_to\_ is really "understood," whenever

it is omitted after \_bid, dare, feel\_, &c., as some authors, affirm, then

is it here the governing word, if anywhere; and this nineteenth rule,

however common, is useless to the parser.[414] Then, too, does no English

verb ever govern the infinitive without governing also a \_preposition\_,

"expressed or understood." Whatever is omitted by ellipsis, and truly

"\_understood\_," really belongs to the grammatical construction; and

therefore, if inserted, it cannot be actually \_improper\_, though it may be

unnecessary. But all our grammarians admit, that \_to\_ before the infinitive

is sometimes "superfluous \_and improper\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 183. I

imagine, there cannot be any proper ellipsis of \_to\_ before the infinitive,

except in some forms of comparison; because, wherever else it is necessary,

either to the sense or to the construction, it ought to be inserted. And

wherever the \_to\_ is rightly used, it is properly the governing word; but

where it cannot be inserted without \_impropriety\_, it is absurd to say,

that it is "\_understood\_." The infinitive that is put after such a verb or

participle as excludes the preposition \_to\_, is governed by this verb or

participle, if it is governed by any thing: as,

"To make them \_do, undo, eat, drink, stand, move,

Talk, think\_, and \_feel\_, exactly as he chose."--\_Pollok\_, p. 69.

OBS. 2.--Ingersoll, who converted Murray's Grammar into "\_Conversations\_,"

says, "I will just remark to you that the verbs in the infinitive mood,

that follow \_make, need, see, bid, dare, feel, hear, let\_, and their

participles, are \_always\_ GOVERNED by them."--\_Conv. on Eng. Gram.\_, p.

120. Kirkham, who pretended to turn the same book into "\_Familiar

Lectures\_," says, "\_To\_, the sign of the infinitive mood, is \_often

understood\_ before the verb; as, 'Let me proceed;' that is, Let me \_to\_

proceed."--\_Gram. in Fam. Lect.\_, p. 137. The lecturer, however, does not

suppose the infinitive to be here governed by the preposition \_to\_, or the

verb \_let\_, but rather by the pronoun \_me\_. For, in an other place, he

avers, that the infinitive may be governed by a noun or a pronoun; as, "Let

\_him do\_ it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 187. Now if the government of the infinitive is to

be referred to the objective noun or pronoun that intervenes, none of those

verbs that take the infinitive after them without the preposition, will

usually be found to govern it, except \_dare\_ and \_need\_; and if \_need\_, in

such a case, is an \_auxiliary\_, no government pertains to that. R. C.

Smith, an other modifier of Murray, having the same false notion of

ellipsis, says, "\_To\_, the usual sign of this mood, is \_sometimes

understood\_; as, 'Let me go,' instead of, 'Let me \_to\_ go.'"--\_Smith's New

Gram.\_, p. 65. According to Murray, whom these men profess to follow,

\_let\_, in all these examples, is \_an auxiliary\_, and the verb that follows

it, is not in the \_infinitive\_ mood, but in the \_imperative\_. So they

severally contradict their oracle, and all are wrong, both he and they! The

disciples pretend to correct their master, by supposing "\_Let me to go\_,"

and "\_Let me to proceed\_," good English!

OBS. 3.--It is often impossible to say \_by what\_ the infinitive is

governed, according to the instructions of Murray, or according to any

author who does not parse it as I do. Nutting says, "The infinitive \_mode\_

sometimes follows the comparative conjunctions, \_as, than\_, and \_how\_,

WITHOUT GOVERNMENT."--\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 106. Murray's uncertainty[415]

may have led to some part of this notion, but the idea that \_how\_ is a

"comparative conjunction," is a blunder entirely new. Kirkham is so puzzled

by "the language of that eminent philologist," that he bolts outright from

the course of his guide, and runs he knows not whither; feigning that other

able writers have well contended, "that this mood IS NOT GOVERNED by any

particular word." Accordingly he leaves his pupils at liberty to "\_reject

the idea of government\_, as applied to the verb in this mood;" and even

frames a rule which refers it always "To some noun or pronoun, as its

subject or actor."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 188. Murray teaches that the

object of the active verb sometimes governs the infinitive that follows it:

as, "They have a \_desire\_ to improve."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 184. To what

extent, in practice, he would carry this doctrine, nobody can tell;

probably to every sentence in which this object is the antecedent term to

the preposition \_to\_, and perhaps further: as, "I \_have\_ a \_house\_ to

\_sell\_"--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 106. "I \_feel\_ a \_desire\_ to \_excel\_." "I

\_felt\_ my \_heart\_ within me \_die\_."--\_Merrick\_.

OBS. 4.--Nutting supposes that the objective case before the infinitive

always governs it wherever it denotes the agent of the infinitive action;

as, "He commands \_me\_ to \_write\_ a letter."--\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 96.

Nixon, on the contrary, contends, that the finite verb, in such a sentence,

can govern only one object, and that this object is the infinitive. "The

objective case preceding it," he says, "is the subject or agent of that

infinitive, and not governed by the preceding verb." His example is, "Let

\_them\_ go."--\_English Parser\_, p. 97. "In the examples, 'He is endeavouring

\_to persuade\_ them \_to learn\_,'--'It is pleasant \_to see\_ the sun,'--the

pronoun \_them\_, the adjective \_pleasant\_, and the participle

\_endeavouring\_, I consider as \_governing\_ the following verb in the

infinitive mode."--\_Cooper's Plain and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 144. "Some

erroneously say that pronouns govern the infinitive mode in such examples

as this: 'I expected \_him\_ to be present.' We will change the expression:

'He was expected to be present.' \_All will admit\_ that \_to be\_ is governed

by \_was expected\_. The same verb that governs it in the passive voice,

governs it in the active."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 144. So do our \_professed

grammarians\_ differ about the government of the infinitive, even in \_the

most common\_ constructions of it! Often, however, it makes but little

difference in regard to the sense, which of the two words is considered the

governing or antecedent term; but where the preposition is excluded, the

construction seems to imply some immediate influence of the finite verb

upon the infinitive.

OBS. 5.--The \_extent\_ of this influence, or of such government, has never

yet been clearly determined. "This \_irregularity\_," says \_Murray\_, "extends

only to \_active or neuter\_ verbs: ['active \_and\_ neuter verbs,' says

\_Fisk\_:] for all the verbs above mentioned, when made \_passive\_, require

the preposition \_to\_ before the following verb: as, 'He was seen \_to\_ go;'

'He was heard \_to\_ speak;' 'They were bidden \_to\_ be upon their

guard.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 183. Fisk adds with no great accuracy "In

the \_past\_ and \_future\_ tenses of the active voice also, these verbs

generally require the sign \_to\_, to be prefixed to the following verbs; as,

'You \_have dared to proceed\_ without authority;' 'They \_will\_ not \_dare to

attack\_ you.'"--\_Gram. Simplified\_, p. 125. What these gentlemen here call

"\_neuter verbs\_," are only the two words \_dare\_ and \_need\_, which are, in

most cases, active, though not always transitive; unless the infinitive

itself can make them so--an inconsistent doctrine of theirs which I have

elsewhere refuted. (See Obs. 3rd on Rule 5th.) These two verbs take the

infinitive after them without the preposition, only when they are

intransitive; while all the rest seem to have this power, only when they

are transitive. If there are any exceptions, they shall presently be

considered. A more particular examination of the construction proper for

the infinitive after each of these eight verbs, seems necessary for a right

understanding of the rule.

OBS. 6.--Of the verb BID. This verb, in any of its tenses, when it commands

an action, usually governs an object and also an infinitive, which come

together; as, "Thou \_bidst\_ the \_world adore\_."--\_Thomson\_. "If the prophet

\_had bid thee do\_ some great thing."--\_2 Kings\_, v, 13. But when it means,

\_to promise\_ or \_offer\_, the infinitive that follows, must be introduced by

the preposition \_to\_; as, "He \_bids\_ fair \_to excel\_ them all"--"Perhaps no

person under heaven \_bids\_ more unlikely \_to\_ be saved."--\_Brown's

Divinity\_, p. vii. "And each \_bade\_ high \_to\_ win him."--GRANVILLE: \_Joh.

Dict.\_ After the compound \_forbid\_, the preposition is also necessary; as,

"Where honeysuckles \_forbid\_ the sun \_to\_ enter."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_. p.

57. In poetry, if the measure happens to require it, the word \_to\_ is

sometimes allowed after the simple verb \_bid\_, denoting a command; as,

"\_Bid\_ me \_to\_ strike my dearest brother dead,

\_To\_ bring my aged father's hoary head."--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. i, l. 677.

OBS. 7.--Of the verb DARE. This verb, when used intransitively, and its

irregular preterit \_durst\_, which is never transitive, usually take the

infinitive after them without \_to\_; as, "I \_dare do\_ all that may become a

man: Who \_dares do\_ more, is none."--\_Shakspeare\_. "If he \_durst steal\_ any

thing adventurously."--\_Id.\_ "Who \_durst defy\_ th' Omnipotent to

arms."--\_Milton\_. "Like one who \_durst\_ his destiny \_control\_."--\_Dryden\_.

In these examples, the former verbs have some resemblance to auxiliaries,

and the insertion of the preposition \_to\_ would be improper. But when we

take away this resemblance, by giving \_dare\_ or \_dared\_, an objective case,

the preposition is requisite before the infinitive; as, "Time! I \_dare

thee to\_ discover Such a youth or such a lover."--\_Dryden\_. "He \_dares me

to\_ enter the lists."--\_Fisk's Gram.\_, p. 125. So when \_dare\_ itself is in

the infinitive mood, or is put after an auxiliary, the preposition is not

improper; as, "And \_let\_ a private man \_dare to say\_ that it

will."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 147. "\_Would\_ its compiler \_dare to

affront\_ the Deity?"--\_West's Letters\_, p. 151. "What power so great, \_to

dare to disobey?\_"--\_Pope's Homer\_. "Some \_would\_ even \_dare\_ to

die."--\_Bible\_. "What \_would dare to molest\_ him?"--\_Dr. Johnson\_. "\_Do\_

you \_dare to prosecute\_ such a creature as Vaughan?"--\_Junius\_, Let.

xxxiii. Perhaps these examples might be considered good English, either

with or without the \_to\_; but the last one would be still better thus:

"\_Dare\_ you \_prosecute\_ such a creature as Vaughan?" Dr. Priestley thinks

the following sentence would have been better with the preposition

inserted: "Who \_have dared defy\_ the worst."--HARRIS: \_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 132. \_To\_ is sometimes used after the simple verb, in the present tense;

as, "Those whose words no one \_dares to\_ repeat."--\_Opie, on Lying\_, p.

147.

"\_Dare\_ I \_to\_ leave of humble prose the shore?"

--\_Young\_, p. 377.

"Against heaven's endless mercies pour'd, how \_dar'st\_ thou \_to\_ rebel?"

--\_Id.\_, p. 380.

"The man who \_dares to\_ be a wretch, deserves still greater pain."

--\_Id.\_, p. 381.

OBS. 8.--Of the verb FEEL. This verb, in any of its tenses, may govern the

infinitive without the sign \_to\_; but it does this, only when it is used

transitively, and that in regard to a bodily perception: as, "I \_feel\_ it

\_move\_."--"I \_felt\_ something \_sting\_ me." If we speak of feeling any

mental affection, or if we use the verb intransitively, the infinitive that

follows, requires the preposition; as, "I \_feel\_ it \_to\_ be my duty."--"I

\_felt\_ ashamed \_to\_ ask."--"I \_feel\_ afraid \_to\_ go alone."--"I \_felt\_

about, \_to\_ find the door." One may say of what is painful to the body, "I

\_feel\_ it \_to\_ be severe."

OBS. 9.--Of the verb HEAR. This verb is often intransitive, but it is

usually followed by an objective case when it governs the infinitive; as.

"To \_hear\_ a \_bird sing\_."--\_Webster\_. "You have never \_heard me say\_ so."

For this reason, I am inclined to think that those sentences in which it

appears to govern the infinitive alone, are elliptical; as, "I \_have heard

tell\_ of such things."--"And I \_have heard say\_ of thee, that thou canst

understand a dream to interpret it."--\_Gen\_, xli, 15. Such examples may be

the same as. "I have heard \_people\_ tell,"--"I have heard \_men\_ say," &c.

OBS. 10.--Of the verb LET. By many grammarians this verb has been

erroneously called an \_auxiliary\_ of the optative mood; or, as Dr. Johnson

terms it, "a \_sign\_ of the \_optative\_ mood:" though none deny, that it is

sometimes also a principal verb. It is, in fact, always a principal verb;

because, as we now apply it, it is always transitive. It commonly governs

an objective noun or pronoun, and also an infinitive without the sign \_to\_;

as, "Rise up, \_let us go\_."--\_Mark\_. "Thou \_shalt let it rest\_."--\_Exodus\_.

But sometimes the infinitive coalesces with it more nearly than the

objective, so that the latter is placed after both verbs; as, "The solution

\_lets go\_ the \_mercury\_."--\_Newton\_. "One \_lets slip\_ out of his account a

good \_part\_ of that duration."--\_Locke\_. "Back! on \_your\_ lives; \_let\_ be,

said he, my \_prey\_."--\_Dryden\_. The phrase, \_let go\_, is sometimes spoken

for, \_let go your hold\_; and \_let be\_, for \_let him be, let it be\_, &c. In

such instances, therefore, the verb \_let\_ is not really intransitive. This

verb, even in the passive form, may have the infinitive after it without

the preposition to; as, "Nothing \_is let slip\_."--\_Walker's English

Particles\_, p. 165. "They \_were let go\_ in peace."--\_Acts\_, xv, 33. "The

stage was never empty, nor the curtain \_let fall\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

459. "The pye's question was wisely \_let fall\_ without a

reply."--\_L'Estrange\_. With respect to other passives, Murray and Fisk

appear to be right; and sometimes the preposition is used after this one:

as, "There's a letter for you, sir, if your name be Horatio, as I \_am let

to know\_ it is."--\_Shakspeare\_. \_Let\_, when used intransitively, required

the preposition \_to\_ before the following infinitive; as, "He would not

\_let\_ [i. e. \_forbear\_] \_to counsel\_ the king."--\_Bacon\_. But this use of

\_let\_ is now obsolete.

OBS. 11.--Of the verb MAKE. This verb, like most of the others, never

immediately governs an infinitive, unless it also governs a noun or a

pronoun which is the immediate \_subject\_ of such infinitive; as, "You \_make

me blush\_."--"This only \_made\_ the \_youngster laugh\_"--\_Webster's

Spelling-Book\_. "Which soon \_made\_ the young \_chap hasten\_ down."--\_Ib.\_

But in very many instances it is quite proper to insert the preposition

where this verb is transitive; as, "He \_maketh\_ both the deaf \_to\_ hear,

and the dumb \_to\_ speak."--\_Mark\_, vii, 37. "He \_makes\_ the excellency of a

sentence \_to\_ consist in four things."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 122;

\_Jamieson's\_, 124. "It is this that \_makes\_ the observance of the dramatic

unities \_to\_ be of consequence."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 464. "In \_making\_

some tenses of the English verb \_to\_ consist of principal and

auxiliary."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 76. "When \_make\_ is intransitive, it has

some qualifying word after it, besides the sign of the infinitive; as,--I

think he \_will make out\_ to pay his debts." Formerly, the preposition \_to\_

was almost always inserted to govern the infinitive after \_make\_ or \_made\_;

as, "Lest I \_make\_ my brother \_to\_ offend."--\_1 Cor.\_, viii, 13. "He \_made\_

many \_to\_ fall."--\_Jer.\_, xlvi, 16. Yet, in the following text, it is

omitted, even where the verb is meant to be \_passive\_: "And it was lifted

up from the earth, and \_made stand\_ upon the feet as a man."--\_Dan.\_, vii,

4. This construction is improper, and not free from ambiguity; because

\_stand\_ may be a noun, and \_made\_, an active verb governing it. There may

also be uncertainty in the meaning, where the insertion of the preposition

leaves none in the construction; for \_made\_ may signify either \_created\_ or

\_compelled\_, and the infinitive after it, may denote either the \_purpose\_

of creation, or the \_effect\_ of any temporary compulsion: as, "We are \_made

to be serviceable\_ to others."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 167. "Man \_was

made to mourn\_."--\_Burns\_. "Taste \_was never made to cater\_ for

vanity."--\_Blair\_. The primitive word \_make\_ seldom, if ever, produces a

construction that is thus equivocal. The infinitive following it without

\_to\_, always denotes the effect of the making, and not the purpose of the

maker; as, "He \_made\_ his son Skjöld \_be received\_ there as king."--\_North.

Antiq.\_, p. 81. But the same meaning may be conveyed when the \_to\_ is used;

as,

"The fear of God is freedom, joy, and peace;

And \_makes\_ all ills that vex us here \_to\_ cease."--\_Waller\_, p. 56.

OBS. 12.--Of the verb NEED. I incline to think, that the word \_need\_,

whenever it is rightly followed by the infinitive without \_to\_, is, in

reality an \_auxiliary\_ of the potential mood; and that, like \_may, can\_,

and \_must\_, it may properly be used, in both the present and the perfect

tense, without personal inflection: as, "He \_need\_ not \_go\_, He \_need\_ not

\_have gone\_;" where, if \_need\_ is a principal verb, and governs the

infinitive without \_to\_, the expressions must be, "He \_needs\_ not \_go\_, He

\_needed\_ not \_go\_, or, He \_has\_ not \_needed go\_." But none of these three

forms is agreeable; and the last two are never used. Wherefore, in stead of

placing in my code of false syntax the numerous examples of the former

kind, with which the style of our grammarians and critics has furnished me,

I have exhibited many of them, in contrast with others, in the eighth and

ninth observations on the Conjugation of Verbs; in which observations, the

reader may see what reasons there are for supposing the word \_need\_ to be

sometimes an auxiliary and sometimes a principal verb. Because no other

author has yet intentionally recognized the propriety of this distinction,

I have gone no farther than to show on what grounds, and with what

authority from usage, it might be acknowledged. If we adopt this

distinction, perhaps it will be found that the regular or principal verb

\_need\_ always requires, or, at least, always admits, the preposition \_to\_

before the following infinitive; as, "They \_need\_ not \_to\_ be specially

indicated."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, i, 302. "We \_need\_ only \_to\_ remark."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 224. "A young man \_needed\_ only \_to\_ ask himself," &c.--\_Ib.\_, i, 117.

"Nor is it conceivable to me, that the lightning of a Demosthenes \_could

need to\_ be sped upon the wings of a semiquaver."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 226. "But

these people \_need to\_ be informed."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 220. "No man

\_needed\_ less \_to\_ be informed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175. "We \_need\_ only \_to\_

mention the difficulty that arises."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 362.

"\_Can\_ there \_need to\_ be argument to prove so plain a point?"--\_Graham's

Lect\_. "Moral instruction \_needs to\_ have a more prominent place."--\_Dr.

Weeks\_. "Pride, ambition, and selfishness, \_need to\_ be restrained."--\_Id.\_

"Articles are sometimes omitted, where they \_need to\_ be used."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 197. "Whose power \_needs\_ not \_to\_ be dreaded."--\_Wilson's

Hebrew Gram.\_, p. 93. "A workman that \_needeth\_ not \_to\_ be ashamed."--\_2

Tim.\_, ii, 15. "The small boys \_may have needed to\_ be managed according to

the school system."--\_T. D. Woolsey\_. "The difficulty of making variety

consistent, \_needs\_ not \_to\_ disturb him."--\_Rambler\_, No. 122. "A more

cogent proof \_needs\_ not \_to\_ be introduced."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 66. "No

person \_needs to\_ be informed, that \_you\_ is used in addressing a single

person."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 19. "I hope I \_need\_ not \_to\_ advise you

further."--\_Shak., All's Well\_.

"Nor me, nor other god, thou \_needst to\_ fear,

For thou to all the heavenly host art dear."--\_Congreve\_.

OBS. 13.--If \_need\_ is ever an auxiliary, the essential difference between

an auxiliary and a principal verb, will very well account for the otherwise

puzzling fact, that good writers sometimes inflect this verb, and sometimes

do not; and that they sometimes use \_to\_ after it, and sometimes do not.

Nor do I see in what other way a grammarian can treat it, without

condemning as bad English a great number of very common phrases which he

cannot change for the better. On this principle, such examples as, "He

\_need\_ not \_proceed\_," and "He \_needs\_ not \_to\_ proceed," may be perfectly

right in either form; though Murray, Crombie,[416] Fisk, Ingersoll, Smith,

C. Adams, and many others, pronounce both these forms to be wrong; and

unanimously, (though contrary to what is perhaps the best usage,) prefer,

"He \_needs\_ not \_proceed\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 180.

OBS. 14.--On questions of grammar, the \_practice of authors\_ ought to be of

more weight, than the \_dogmatism of grammarians\_; but it is often difficult

to decide well by either; because errors and contradictions abound in both.

For example: Dr. Blair says, (in speaking of the persons represented by \_I\_

and \_thou\_,) "Their sex \_needs\_ not \_be\_ marked."--\_Rhet.\_, p. 79. Jamieson

abridges the work, and says, "\_needs\_ not \_to\_ be marked."--\_Gram. of

Rhet.\_, p. 28. Dr. Lowth also says, "\_needs\_ not \_be\_ marked."--\_Gram.\_, p.

21. Churchill enlarges the work, and says, "\_needs\_ not \_to\_ be

marked."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 72. Lindley Murray copies Lowth, and says,

"\_needs\_ not \_be\_ marked."--\_Gram.\_, 12mo, 2d Ed., p. 39; 23d Ed., p. 51;

and perhaps all other editions. He afterwards enlarges his own work, and

says, "\_needs\_ not \_to\_ be marked."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 51. But, according

to Greenleaf they all express the idea ungrammatically; the only true form

being, "Their sex \_need\_ not \_be marked\_." See \_Gram. Simplified\_, p. 48.

In the two places in which the etymology and the syntax of this verb are

examined, I have cited from proper sources more than twenty examples in

which \_to\_ is used after it, and more than twenty others in which the verb

is not inflected in the third person singular. In the latter, \_need\_ is

treated as an auxiliary; in the former, it is a principal verb, of the

regular construction. If the principal verb \_need\_ can also govern the

infinitive without \_to\_, as all our grammarians have supposed, then there

is a third form which is unobjectionable, and my pupils may take their

choice of the three. But still there is a fourth form which nobody

approves, though the hands of some great men have furnished us with

examples of it: as, "A figure of thought \_need\_ not \_to\_ detort the words

from their literal sense."--\_J. Q. Adams's Lectures\_, Vol. ii, p. 254.

"Which a man \_need\_ only \_to\_ appeal to his own feelings immediately to

evince."--\_Clarkson's Prize-Essay on Slavery\_, p. 106.

OBS. 15.--Webster and Greenleaf seem inclined to justify the use of \_dare\_,

as well as of \_need\_, for the third person singular. Their doctrine is

this: "In \_popular practice\_ it is used in the third person, without the

personal termination. Thus, instead of saying, 'He \_dares\_ not do it;' WE

\_generally\_ say, 'He \_dare\_ not do it.' In like manner, \_need\_, when an

active verb, is regular in its inflections; as, 'A man \_needs\_ more

prudence.' But \_when intransitive\_, it drops the personal terminations in

the present tense, and is followed by a verb without the prefix \_to\_; as,

'A man \_need\_ not \_be\_ uneasy.'"--\_Greenleaf s Grammar Simplified\_, p. 38;

\_Webster's Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 178; \_Improved Gram.\_, 127. Each part

of this explanation appears to me erroneous. In \_popular practice\_, one

shall oftener hear, "He \_dares n't\_ do it," or even, "\_You dares n't\_ do

it," than, "\_He dare not\_ do it." But it is only in the trained practice of

the schools, that he shall ever hear, "He \_needs n't\_ do it," or, "He

\_needs not\_ do it." If \_need\_ is sometimes used without inflection, this

peculiarity, or the disuse of \_to\_ before the subsequent infinitive, is not

a necessary result of its "\_intransitive\_" character. And as to their

latent \_nominative\_, "whereof there \_is\_ no \_account\_," or, "whereof there

\_needs\_ no \_account\_;" their \_fact\_, of which "there \_is\_ no \_evidence\_,"

or of which "there \_needs\_ no \_evidence\_;" I judge it a remarkable

phenomenon, that authors of so high pretensions, could find, in these

\_transpositions\_, a nominative to "\_is\_," but none to "\_needs\_!" See a

marginal note under Rule 14th, at p. 570.

OBS. 16.--Of the verb SEE. This verb, whenever it governs the infinitive

without \_to\_, governs also an objective noun or pronoun; as, "\_See me do\_

it."--"I \_saw him do\_ it."--\_Murray\_. Whenever it is intransitive, the

following infinitive must be governed by \_to\_; as, "I \_will see to have\_ it

done."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 98; \_Greenleaf's\_, 38. "How \_could\_ he \_see to

do\_ them?"--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 43. In the following text, \_see\_ is

transitive, and governs the infinitive; but the two verbs are put so far

apart, that it requires some skill in the reader to make their relation

apparent: "When ye therefore \_shall see\_ the abomination of desolation,

spoken of by Daniel the prophet, \_stand\_ in the holy place," &c.--\_Matt.\_,

xxiv, 15. An other scripturist uses the \_participle\_, and says--"\_standing\_

where it ought not," &c.--\_Mark\_, xiii, 14. The Greek word is the same in

both; it is a participle, agreeing with the noun for \_abomination\_.

Sometimes the preposition \_to\_ seems to be admitted on purpose to protract

the expression: as,

"Tranio, I \_saw\_ her coral lips \_to move\_,

And with her breath she did perfume the air."--\_Shak\_.

OBS 17.--A few other verbs, besides the eight which are mentioned in the

foregoing rule and remarks, sometimes have the infinitive after them

without \_to\_. W. Allen teaches, that, "The sign \_to\_ is \_generally\_

omitted," not only after these eight, but also after eight others; namely,

"\_find, have, help, mark, observe, perceive, watch\_, and the old preterit

\_gan\_, for \_began\_; and \_sometimes\_ after \_behold\_ and \_know\_."--\_Elements

of Gram.\_, p. 167. Perhaps he may have found \_some instances\_ of the

omission of the preposition after all these, but in my opinion his rule

gives a very unwarrantable extension to this "irregularity," as Murray

calls it. The usage belongs only to particular verbs, and to them not in

all their applications. Other verbs of the same import do not in general

admit the same idiom. But, by a license for the most part peculiar to the

poets, the preposition \_to\_ is occasionally omitted, especially after verbs

equivalent to those which exclude it; as, "And \_force\_ them

\_sit\_."--\_Cowper's Task\_, p. 46. That is, "And \_make\_ them \_sit\_."

According to Churchill, "To use \_ought\_ or \_cause\_ in this manner, is a

Scotticism: [as,] 'Won't you \_cause\_ them \_remove\_ the hares?'--'You

\_ought\_ not \_walk\_.' SHAK."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 317. The verbs, \_behold, view,

observe, mark, watch\_, and \_spy\_, are only other words for \_see\_; as,

"There might you \_behold\_ one joy \_crown\_ an other."--\_Shak\_. "There I sat,

\_viewing\_ the silver stream \_glide\_ silently towards the tempestuous

sea."--\_Walton\_. "I \_beheld\_ Satan as lightning \_fall\_ from

heaven."--\_Luke\_, x, 18.

"Thy drowsy nurse hath sworn she did them \_spy

Come\_ tripping to the room where thou didst lie."--\_Milton\_.

------"Nor with less dread the loud

Ethereal trumpet from on high '\_gan blow\_."--\_Id., P. L.\_, vi, 60.

OBS. 18.--After \_have, help\_, and \_find\_, the infinitive sometimes occurs

without the preposition \_to\_, but much oftener with it; as, "When

enumerating objects which we wish to \_have appear\_ distinct."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 222. "Certainly, it is heaven upon earth, to \_have\_ a man's mind

\_move\_ in charity, \_rest\_ in Providence, and \_turn\_ upon the poles of

truth."--\_Ld. Bacon\_. "What wilt thou \_have\_ me \_to\_ do?"--\_Acts\_, ix, 6.

"He will \_have\_ us \_to\_ acknowledge him."--\_Scougal\_, p. 102. "I \_had to

walk\_ all the way."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 85. "Would you \_have\_ them \_let

go\_ then? No."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 248. According to Allen's rule,

this question is ambiguous; but the learned author explains it in Latin

thus: "Placet igitur eos \_dimitti\_? Minimé." That is, "Would you have them

\_dismissed\_ then? No." Had he meant, "Would you have them \_to\_ let go

then?" he would doubtless have said so. Kirkham, by adding \_help\_ to

Murray's list, enumerates nine verbs which he will have to exclude the sign

of the infinitive; as, "\_Help\_ me \_do\_ it."--\_Gram.\_, p. 188. But good

writers sometimes use the particle \_to\_ after this verb; as, "And Danby's

matchless impudence \_helped to\_ support the knave."--DRYDEN: \_Joh. Dict.,

w. Help\_. Dr. Priestley says, "It must, I suppose, be according to the

\_Scotch\_ idiom that Mrs. Macaulay omits it after the verb \_help\_: 'To \_help

carry\_ on the new measures of the court.' \_History\_, Vol. iv, p.

150."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 133. "You will \_find\_ the difficulty

\_disappear\_ in a short time."--\_Cobbett's English Gram.\_, ¶ 16. "We shall

always \_find\_ this distinction \_obtain\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 245. Here

the preposition \_to\_ might have been inserted with propriety. Without it, a

plural noun will render the construction equivocal. The sentence, "You will

find the \_difficulties disappear\_ in a short time," will probably be

understood to mean, "You will find \_that\_ the difficulties disappear in a

short time." "I do not \_find\_ him \_reject\_ his authority."--\_Johnson's

Gram. Com.\_, p. 167. Here too the preposition might as well have been

inserted. But, as this use of the infinitive is a sort of Latinism, some

critics would choose to say, "I do not find \_that he rejects\_ his

authority." "Cyrus was extremely glad to find \_them have\_ such sentiments

of religion."--\_Rollin\_, ii, 117. Here the infinitive may be varied either

by the participle or by the indicative; as, "to find \_them having\_," or,

"to find \_they had\_." Of the three expressions, the last, I think, is

rather the best.

OBS. 19.--When two or more infinitives are connected in the same

construction, one preposition sometimes governs them both or all; a

repetition of the particle not being always necessary, unless we mean to

make the terms severally emphatical. This fact is one evidence that \_to\_ is

not a necessary part of each infinitive verb, as some will have it to be.

Examples: "Lord, suffer me first TO \_go\_ and \_bury\_ my father."--\_Matt.\_,

viii, 21. "To \_shut\_ the door, means, TO \_throw\_ or \_cast\_ the door

to."--\_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 105. "Most authors expect the printer TO \_spell,

point\_, and \_digest\_ their copy, that it may be intelligible to the

reader."--\_Printer's Grammar\_.

"I'll not be made a soft and dull-eyed fool,

To \_shake\_ the head, \_relent\_, and \_sigh\_, and \_yield\_."--\_Shak\_.

OBS. 20.--An infinitive that explains an other, may sometimes be introduced

without the preposition \_to\_; because, the former having it, the

construction of the latter is made the same by this kind of apposition: as,

"The most accomplished way of using books at present is, TO \_serve\_ them as

some do lords; \_learn\_ their \_titles\_, and, then \_brag\_ of their

acquaintance."--SWIFT: \_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 166.

OBS. 21.--After \_than\_ or \_as\_, the sign of the infinitive is sometimes

required, and sometimes excluded; and in some instances we can either

insert it or not, as we please. The latter term of a comparison is almost

always more or less elliptical; and as the nature of its ellipsis depends

on the structure of the former term, so does the necessity of inserting or

of omitting the sign of the infinitive. Examples: "No desire is more

universal than [\_is the desire\_] to be exalted and honoured."--\_Kames, El.

of Crit.\_, i, 197. "The difficulty is not so great to die for a friend, as

[\_is the difficulty\_] to find a friend worth dying for."--\_Id., Art of

Thinking\_, p. 42. "It is no more in one's power to love or not to love,

than [\_it is in one's power\_] to be in health or out of order."--\_Ib.\_, p.

45. "Men are more likely to be praised into virtue, than [\_they are

likely\_] to be railed out of vice."--\_Ib.\_, p. 48. "It is more tolerable to

be always alone, than [\_it is tolerable\_] never to be so."--\_Ib.\_, p. 26.

"Nothing [\_is\_] more easy than to do mischief [\_is easy\_]: nothing [is]

more difficult than to suffer without complaining" [\_is

difficult\_].--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. Or: "than [\_it is easy\_] to do mischief:" &c.,

"than [\_it is difficult\_] to suffer," &c. "It is more agreeable to the

nature of most men to follow than [\_it is agreeable to their nature\_] to

lead."--\_Ib.\_, p. 55. In all these examples, the preposition \_to\_ is very

properly inserted; but what excludes it from the former term of a

comparison, will exclude it from the latter, if such governing verb be

understood there: as, "You no more heard me \_say\_ those words, than [\_you

heard me\_] \_talk\_ Greek." It may be equally proper to say, "We choose

rather to lead than \_follow\_," or, "We choose rather to lead than \_to\_

follow."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 37. The meaning in either case is, "We

choose to lead rather than \_we choose to\_ follow." In the following

example, there is perhaps an ellipsis of \_to\_ before \_cite\_: "I need do

nothing more than \_simply cite\_ the explicit declarations," &c.--\_Gurney's

Peculiarities\_, p. 4. So in these: "Nature did no more than \_furnish\_ the

power and means."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 147.

"To beg, than \_work\_, he better understands;

Or we perhaps might take him off thy hands."

--\_Pope's Odyssey\_, xvii, 260.

OBS. 22.--It has been stated, in Obs. 16th on Rule 17th, that good writers

are apt to shun a repetition of any part common to two or more verbs in the

same sentence; and among the examples there cited is this: "They mean \_to\_,

and will, hear patiently."--\_Salem Register\_. So one might say, "Can a man

arrive at excellence, who has no desire \_to\_?"--"I do not wish to go, nor

expect \_to\_."--"Open the door, if you are going \_to\_." Answer: "We want

\_to\_, and try \_to\_, but can't." Such ellipses of the infinitive after \_to\_,

are by no means uncommon, especially in conversation; nor do they appear to

me to be always reprehensible, since they prevent repetition, and may

contribute to brevity without obscurity. But Dr. Bullions has lately

thought proper to \_condemn\_ them; for such is presumed to have been the

design of the following note: "\_To\_, the sign of the infinitive, should

never be used for the infinitive itself. Thus, 'I have not written, and I

do not intend \_to\_,' is a colloquial vulgarism for, 'I have not written,

and I do not intend \_to write\_.'"--\_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_,

p. 179. His "Exercises to be corrected," here, are these: "Be sure to write

yourself and tell him to. And live as God designed me to."--\_Ib.\_, 1st Ed.,

p. 180. It being manifest, that \_to\_ cannot "be used \_for\_"--(that is, \_in

place of\_--)what is implied \_after\_ it, this is certainly a very awkward

way of hinting "there should never be an ellipsis of the infinitive after

\_to\_." But, from the false syntax furnished, this appears to have been the

meaning intended. The examples are severally faulty, but not for the reason

suggested--not because "\_to\_" is used for "\_write\_" or "\_live\_"--not,

indeed, for any one reason common to the three--but because, in the first,

"\_to write\_" and "\_have not written\_," have nothing in common which we can

omit; in the second, the mood of "\_tell\_" is doubtful, and, without a comma

after "yourself," we cannot precisely know the meaning; in the third, the

mood, the person, and the number of "\_live\_," are all unknown. See Note 9th

to Rule 17th, above; and Note 2d to the General Rule, below.

OBS. 23.--Of some infinitives, it is hard to say whether they are

transitive or intransitive; as, "Well, then, let us proceed; we have other

forced marches to \_make\_; other enemies to \_subdue\_; more laurels to

\_acquire\_; and more injuries to \_avenge\_."--BONAPARTE: \_Columbian Orator\_,

p. 136. These, without ellipsis, are intransitive; but relatives may be

inserted.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XIX.

INFINITIVES AFTER BID, DARE, FEEL, HEAR, LET, &c.

"I dare not to proceed so hastily, lest I should give offence."--\_Murray's

Exercises\_, p. 63.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the preposition \_to\_ is inserted before

\_proceed\_, which follows the active verb \_dare\_. But, according to Rule

19th, "The active verbs, \_bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see\_, and

their participles, usually take the infinitive after them without the

preposition \_to\_;" and this is an instance in which the finite verb should

immediately govern the infinitive. Therefore, the \_to\_ should be omitted;

thus, "I \_dare\_ not \_proceed\_ so hastily," &c.]

"Their character is formed, and made appear."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 115.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the preposition \_to\_ is not inserted between

\_made\_ and \_appear\_, the verb \_is made\_ being passive. But, according to

Obs. 5th and 10th on Rule 19th, those verbs which in the active form govern

the infinitive without \_to\_, do not so govern it when they are made

passive, except the verb \_let\_. Therefore, \_to\_ should be here inserted;

thus, "Their character is formed, and made \_to\_ appear."]

"Let there be but matter and opportunity offered, and you shall see them

quickly to revive again."--\_Wisdom of the Ancients\_, p. 53. "It has been

made appear, that there is no presumption against a revelation."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 252. "MANIFEST, \_v. t\_. To reveal; to make to appear; to show

plainly."--\_Webster's American Dict.\_ "Let him to reign like unto good

Aurelius, or let him to bleed like unto Socrates."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

169. "To sing I could not; to complain I durst not."--\_S. Fothergill\_. "If

T. M. be not so frequently heard pray by them."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii,

132. "How many of your own church members were never heard pray?"--\_Ib.\_,

iii, 133. "Yea, we are bidden pray one for another."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 145. "He

was made believe that neither the king's death, nor imprisonment would help

him."--\_Sheffield's Works\_, ii, 281. "I felt a chilling sensation to creep

over me."--\_Inst.\_, p. 188. "I dare to say he has not got home yet."--\_Ib.\_

"We sometimes see bad men to be honoured."--\_Ib.\_ "I saw him to

move."--\_Felch's Comprehensive Gram.\_, p. 62. "For see thou, ah! see thou a

hostile world to raise its terrours."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 167. "But that

he make him to rehearse so."--\_Lily's Gram.\_, p. xv. "Let us to

rise."--\_Fowle's True Eng. Gram.\_, p. 41.

"Scripture, you know, exhorts us to it;

Bids us to 'seek peace, and ensue it.'"--\_Swift's Poems\_, p. 336.

"Who bade the mud from Dives' wheel

To spurn the rags of Lazarus?

Come, brother, in that dust we'll kneel,

Confessing Heaven that ruled it thus."--\_Christmas Book\_.

CHAPTER VII--PARTICIPLES.

The true or regular syntax of the English Participle, as a part of speech

distinct from the verb, and not converted into a noun or an adjective, is

twofold; being sometimes that of simple \_relation\_ to a noun or a pronoun

that precedes it, and sometimes that of \_government\_, or the state of

\_being governed\_ by a preposition. In the former construction, the

participle resembles an adjective; in the latter, it is more like a noun,

or like the infinitive mood: for the participle after a preposition is

governed \_as a participle\_, and not as a case.[417] To these two

constructions, some add three others less regular, using the participle

sometimes as the \_subject\_ of a finite verb, sometimes as the \_object\_ of a

transitive verb, and sometimes as a \_nominative\_ after a neuter verb. Of

these five constructions, the first two, are the legitimate uses of this

part of speech; the others are occasional, modern, and of doubtful

propriety.

RULE XX.--PARTICIPLES.

Participles relate to nouns or pronouns, or else are governed by

prepositions: as, "Elizabeth's tutor, at one time \_paying\_ her a visit,

found her \_employed\_ in \_reading\_ Plato."--\_Hume\_. "I have no more pleasure

in \_hearing\_ a man \_attempting\_ wit and \_failing\_, than in \_seeing\_ a man

\_trying\_ to leap over a ditch and tumbling into it."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

"Now, \_rais'd\_ on Tyre's sad ruins, Pharaoh's pride

Soar'd high, his legions \_threat'ning\_ far and wide."--\_Dryden\_.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

A participle sometimes relates to a preceding \_phrase\_ or \_sentence\_, of

which it forms no part; as, "I then quit the society; \_to withdraw and

leave them to themselves\_, APPEARING to me a duty."--"It is almost

exclusively on the ground we have mentioned, that we have heard \_his being

continued in office\_ DEFENDED."--\_Professors' Reasons\_, p. 23. (Better,

"\_his continuance\_ in office," or, "\_the continuing of him\_ in office." See

Obs. 18th on Rule 4th.)

"But \_ever to do ill\_ our sole delight,

As \_being\_ the contrary to his high will."--\_Milton\_.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

With an infinitive denoting being or action in the abstract, a participle

is sometimes also taken \_abstractly\_; (that is, without reference to any

particular noun, pronoun, or other subject;) as, "To seem \_compelled\_, is

disagreeable."--"To keep always \_praying\_ aloud, is plainly

impossible."--"It must be disagreeable to be left pausing[418] on a word

which does not, by itself, produce any idea."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

323.

"To praise him is to serve him, and fulfill,

\_Doing\_ and \_suffering\_, his unquestion'd will."

--\_Cowper\_, Vol. i, p. 88.

EXCEPTION THIRD.

The participle is often used irregularly in English, as a substitute for

the infinitive mood, to which it is sometimes equivalent without

irregularity; as, "I saw him \_enter\_, or \_entering\_"--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_,

p. 230. "He is afraid of \_trying\_, or \_to try\_."--\_Ibid.\_ Examples

irregular: "Sir, said I, if the case stands thus, 'tis dangerous

\_drinking\_:" i.e., to drink.--\_Collier's Tablet of Cebes\_. "It will be but

ill \_venturing\_ thy soul upon that:" i.e., to venture.--\_Bunyan's Law and

Grace\_, p. 27. "\_Describing\_ a past event as present, has a fine effect in

language:" i.e., to describe.--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 93. "In English

likewise it deserves \_remarking\_:" i.e., to be remarked.--\_Harris's

Hermes\_, p. 232. "Bishop Atterbury deserves \_being particularly

mentioned\_:" i.e., to be particularly mentioned.--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 291.

"This, however, is in effect no more than \_enjoying\_ the sweet that

predominates:" i.e., to enjoy.--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 43.

"Habits are soon assum'd; but when we strive

To strip them off, 'tis being \_flay'd\_ alive."--\_Cowper\_, Vol. i, p. 44

EXCEPTION FOURTH.

An other frequent irregularity in the construction of participles, is the

practice of treating them essentially as nouns, without taking from them

the regimen and adjuncts of participles; as, "\_Your having been well

educated will be\_ a great recommendation."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 171.

(Better: "\_Your excellent education\_"--or, "\_That you have been well

educated\_, will be," &c.) "It arises from \_sublimity's expressing grandeur\_

in its highest degree."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 29. "Concerning \_the

separating\_ by a circumstance, \_words\_ intimately connected."--\_Kames, El.

of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 104. "As long as there is any hope of \_their keeping

pace\_ with them."--\_Literary Convention\_, p. 114. "Which could only arise

from \_his knowing the secrets\_ of all hearts."--\_West's Letters to a Young

Lady\_, p. 180. "But this again is \_talking\_ quite at random."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 146.

"\_My being here\_ it is, that holds thee hence."--\_Shak.\_

"Such, but by foils, the clearest lustre see,

And deem \_aspersing others, praising thee\_."--\_Savage, to Walpole\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XX.

OBS. 1.--To this rule, I incline to think, there are \_properly\_ no other

exceptions than the first two above; or, at least, that we ought to avoid,

when we can, any additional anomalies. Yet, not to condemn with unbecoming

positiveness what others receive for good English, I have subjoined two

items more, which include certain other irregularities now very common,

that, when examples of a like form occur, the reader may \_parse them as

exceptions\_, if he does not choose \_to censure them as errors\_. The mixed

construction in which participles are made to govern the possessive case,

has already been largely considered in the observations on Rule 4th.

Murray, Allen, Churchill, and many other grammarians, great and small,

admit that participles may be made the subjects or the objects of verbs,

while they retain the nature, government, and adjuncts, of participles; as,

"Not \_attending\_ to this rule, is the cause of a very common

error."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 200; \_Comly's Gram.\_, 188; \_Weld's Gram.\_,

2d Ed., 170. "\_Polite\_ is employed to signify their being \_highly

civilized\_.'"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 219. "One abhors \_being\_ in

debt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 71; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 144. "Who

affected \_being\_ a fine gentleman so unmercifully."--\_Spect.\_, No. 496.

"The minister's \_being attached\_ to the project, prolonged their

debate."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 78. "It finds [i.e., \_the mind\_ finds,] that

\_acting thus\_ would gratify one passion; \_not acting\_, or \_acting

otherwise\_, would gratify another."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 109. "But

further, \_cavilling\_ and \_objecting\_ upon any subject \_is\_ much easier than

\_clearing up\_ difficulties."--\_Bp. Butler's Charge to the Clergy of

Durham\_, 1751.

OBS. 2.--W. Allen observes, "The use of the participle as a nominative, is

one of the \_peculiarities\_ of our language."--\_Elements of Gram.\_, p. 171.

He might have added, that the use of the participle as an objective

governed by a verb, as a nominative after a verb neuter, or as a word

governing the possessive, is also one of the peculiarities of our language,

or at least an idiom adopted by no few of its recent writers. But whether

any one of these four modern departures from General Grammar ought to be

countenanced by us, as an idiom that is either elegant or advantageous, I

very much doubt. They are all however sufficiently common in the style of

reputable authors; and, however questionable their character, some of our

grammarians seem mightily attached to them all. It becomes me therefore to

object with submission. These mixed and irregular constructions of the

participle, ought, in my opinion, to be \_generally\_ condemned as false

syntax; and for this simple reason, that the ideas conveyed by them may

\_generally\_, if not always, be expressed more briefly, and more elegantly,

by other phraseology that is in no respect anomalous. Thus, for the

examples above: "\_Inattention\_ to this rule, is the cause of a very common

error."--"\_Polite\_ is employed to signify a \_high degree of civilization\_;"

or, "\_that they are\_ highly civilized."--"One abhors \_debt\_."--"Who

affected \_the\_ fine gentleman so unmercifully."--"The minister's

\_partiality\_ to the project, prolonged their debate."--"It finds [i.e.,

\_the mind\_ finds,] that \_to act thus\_, would gratify one passion; \_and that

not to act\_, or \_to act otherwise\_, would gratify another."--"But further,

\_to cavil and object\_, upon any subject, is much easier than \_to clear up\_

difficulties." Are not these expressions much better English than the

foregoing quotations? And if so, have we not reason to conclude that the

adoption of participles in such instances is erroneous and ungrammatical?

OBS. 3.--In Obs. 17th on Rule 4th, it was suggested, that in English the

participle, without governing the possessive case, is turned to a greater

number and variety of uses, than in any other language. This remark applies

mainly to the participle in \_ing\_. Whether it is expedient to make so much

of one sort of derivative, and endeavour to justify every possible use of

it which can be plausibly defended, is a question well worthy of

consideration. We have already converted this participle to such a

multiplicity of purposes, and into so many different parts of speech, that

one can well-nigh write a chapter in it, without any other words. This

practice may have added something to the copiousness and flexibility of the

language, but it certainly has a tendency to impair its strength and

clearness. Not every use of participles is good, for which there may be

found precedents in good authors. One may run to great excess in the

adoption of such derivatives, without becoming absolutely unintelligible,

and without violating any rule of our common grammars. For example, I may

say of somebody, "This very superficial grammatist, supposing empty

criticism about the adoption of proper phraseology to be a show of

extraordinary erudition, was displaying, in spite of ridicule, a very

boastful turgid argument concerning the correction of false syntax, and

about the detection of false logic in debate." Now, in what other language

than ours, can a string of words anything like the following, come so near

to a fair and literal translation of this long sentence? "This exceeding

trifling witling, considering ranting criticising concerning adopting

fitting wording being exhibiting transcending learning, was displaying,

notwithstanding ridiculing, surpassing boasting swelling reasoning,

respecting correcting erring writing, and touching detecting deceiving

arguing during debating." Here are \_not all\_ the uses to which our writers

apply the participle in \_ing\_, but there would seem to be enough, without

adding others that are less proper.

OBS. 4.--The active participles, \_admitting, allowing, considering,

granting, speaking, supposing\_, and the like, are frequently used in

discourse so independently, that they either relate to nothing, or to the

pronoun \_I\_ or \_we\_ understood; as, "\_Granting\_ this to be true, what is

to be inferred from it?"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 195. This may be supposed to

mean, "\_I\_, granting this to be true, \_ask\_ what is to be inferred from

it?" "The very chin was, \_modestly speaking\_, as long as my whole

face."--\_Addison\_. Here the meaning may be, "\_I\_, modestly speaking,

\_say\_." So of the following examples: "\_Properly speaking\_, there is no

such thing as chance."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 172. "Because, \_generally

speaking\_, the figurative sense of a word is derived from its proper

sense."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 190. "But, \_admitting\_ that two or three

of these offend less in their morals than in their writings, must poverty

make nonsense sacred?"--\_Pope's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 7. Some grammarians

suppose such participles to be put absolute in themselves, so as to have no

reference to any noun or pronoun; others, among whom are L. Murray and Dr.

James P. Wilson, suppose them to be put absolute with a pronoun understood.

On the former supposition, they form an other exception to the foregoing

rule; on the latter, they do not: the participle relates to the pronoun,

though both be independent of the rest of the sentence. If we supply the

ellipsis as above, there is nothing put absolute.

OBS. 5.--Participles are almost always placed after the words on which

their construction depends, and are distinguished from adjectives by this

position; but when other words depend on the participle, or when several

participles have the same construction, the whole phrase may come before

the noun or pronoun: as, "\_Leaning\_ my head upon my hand, \_I\_ began to

figure to myself the miseries of confinement."--\_Sterne\_.

"\_Immured\_ in cypress shades, a \_sorcerer\_ dwells."--\_Milton\_.

"\_Brib'd, bought, and bound\_, they banish shame and fear;

Tell you they're stanch, and have a soul sincere."--\_Crabbe\_.

OBS. 6.--When participles are compounded with something that does not

belong to the verb, they become \_adjectives\_; and, as such, they cannot

govern an object after them. The following construction is therefore

inaccurate: "When Caius did any thing \_unbecoming\_ his dignity."--\_Jones's

Church History\_, i, 87. "Costly and gaudy attire, \_unbecoming\_

godliness."--\_Extracts\_, p. 185. Such errors are to be corrected by Note

15th to Rule 9th, or by changing the particle \_un\_ to \_not\_: as,

"Unbecoming \_to\_ his dignity;" or, "\_Not\_ becoming his dignity."

OBS. 7.--An imperfect or a preperfect participle, preceded by an article,

an adjective, or a noun or pronoun of the possessive case, becomes a

\_verbal\_ or \_participial noun\_; and, as such, it cannot with strict

propriety, govern an object after it. A word which may be the object of the

participle in its proper construction, requires the preposition \_of\_, to

connect it with the verbal noun; as, 1. THE PARTICIPLE: "\_Worshiping\_

idols, the Jews sinned."--"\_Thus worshiping\_ idols,--\_In worshiping\_

idols,--or, \_By worshiping\_ idols, they sinned." 2. THE VERBAL NOUN: "\_The

worshiping of\_ idols,--\_Such worshiping of\_ idols,--or, \_Their worshiping

of\_ idols, was sinful."--"\_In the worshiping of\_ idols, there is sin."

OBS. 8.--It is commonly supposed that these two modes of expression are, in

very many instances, equivalent to each other in meaning, and consequently

interchangeable. How far they really are so, is a question to be

considered. Example: "But if candour be \_a confounding of\_ the distinctions

between sin and holiness, \_a depreciating of\_ the excellence of the latter,

and at the same time \_a diminishing of\_ the evil of the former; then it

must be something openly at variance with the letter and the spirit of

revelation."--\_The Friend\_, iv, 108. Here the nouns, \_distinctions,

excellence\_, and \_evil\_, though governed by \_of\_, represent the \_objects\_

of the forenamed actions; and therefore they might well be governed by

\_confounding, depreciating\_, and \_diminishing\_, if these were participles.

But if, to make them such, we remove the article and the preposition, the

construction forsakes our meaning; for \_be confounding, (be) depreciating\_,

and \_(be) diminishing\_, seem rather to be verbs of the compound form; and

our uncertain nominatives after \_be\_, thus disappear in the shadow of a

false sense. But some sensible critics tell us, that this preposition \_of\_

should refer rather to the \_agent\_ of the preceding action, than to its

\_passive object\_; so that such a phrase as, "\_the teaching of boys\_,"

should signify rather the instruction which boys give, than that which they

receive. If, for the sake of this principle, or for any other reason, we

wish to avoid the foregoing phraseology, the meaning may be expressed thus:

"But if \_your\_ candour \_confound\_ the distinctions between sin and

holiness; \_if it depreciate\_ the excellence of the latter, and at the same

time \_diminish\_ the evil of the former; then it must be something openly at

variance with the letter and the spirit of revelation."

OBS. 9.--When the use of the preposition produces ambiguity or harshness,

let a better expression be sought. Thus the sentence, "He mentions

\_Newton's writing of\_ a commentary," is not entirely free from either of

these faults. If the preposition be omitted, the word \_writing\_ will have a

double construction, which is inadmissible, or at least objectionable. Some

would say, "He mentions \_Newton writing\_ a commentary." This, though not

uncommon, is still more objectionable because it makes the leading word in

sense the adjunct in construction. The meaning may be correctly expressed

thus: "He mentions \_that Newton wrote\_ a commentary." "Mr. Dryden makes a

very handsome observation on \_Ovid's writing a letter\_ from Dido to

Æneas."--\_Spect.\_, No. 62; \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 265; \_Murray's Key\_, ii,

253. Here the word \_writing\_ is partly a noun and partly a participle. If

we make it wholly a noun, by saying, "on \_Ovid's writing of\_ a letter," or

wholly a participle, by saying, "on \_Ovid writing\_ a letter;" it may be

doubted, whether we have effected any improvement. And again, if we adopt

Dr. Lowth's advice, "Let it be either the one or the other, and abide by

its proper construction;" we must make some change; and therefore ought

perhaps to say; "on \_Ovid's conceit of writing\_ a letter from Dido to

Æneas." This is apparently what Addison meant, and what Dryden remarked

upon; the latter did not speak of the letter itself, else the former would

have said, "on \_Ovid's letter\_ from Dido to Æneas."

OBS. 10.--When a needless possessive, or a needless article, is put before

the participle, the correction is to be made, not by inserting \_of\_, but by

expunging the article, according to Note 16th to Rule 1st, or the

possessive, according to Note 5th to Rule 4th. Example: "By \_his\_ studying

the Scriptures he became wise."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 91. Here \_his\_ serves

only to render the sentence incorrect; yet this spurious example is

presented by Lennie to \_prove\_ that a participle may take the possessive

case before it, when the preposition \_of\_ is not admissible after it. So,

in stead of expunging one useless word, our grammarians \_often\_ add an

other and call the twofold error a \_correction\_; as, "For \_his\_ avoiding

\_of\_ that precipice, he is indebted to his friend's care."--\_Murray's Key\_,

ii, 201. Or worse yet: "\_It was from our\_ misunderstanding \_of\_ the

directions \_that\_ we lost our way."--\_Ibid.\_ Here, not \_our\_ and \_of\_ only,

but four other words, are worse than useless. Again: "By \_the\_ exercising

\_of\_ our judgment, it is improved. Or thus: By \_exercising\_ our judgment,

it is improved."--\_Comly's Key in his Gram.\_, 12th Ed., p. 188. Each of

these pretended corrections is wrong in more respects than one. Say, "By

exercising our \_judgement, we improve it\_" Or, "Our \_judgement\_ is improved

by \_being exercised\_" Again: "\_The loving of\_ our enemies is a divine

\_command\_; Or, \_loving our enemies\_ [is a divine command]."--\_Ibid.\_ Both

of these are also wrong. Say, "'\_Love your enemies\_,' is a divine command."

Or, "\_We are divinely commanded to love\_ our enemies." Some are apt to

jumble together the active voice and the passive, and thus destroy the

unity even of a short sentence; as, "By \_exercising\_ our memories, they

\_are improved\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 226 and 195. "The error \_might have

been avoided\_ by \_repeating\_ the substantive."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 172.

"By \_admitting\_ such violations of established grammatical distinctions,

confusion \_would be introduced\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 187. In these instances, we

have an active participle without an agent; and this, by the preposition

\_by\_, is made an adjunct to a passive verb. Even the participial noun of

this form, though it actually drops the distinction of voice, is awkward

and apparently incongruous in such a relation.

OBS. 11.--When the verbal noun necessarily retains any adjunct of the verb

or participle, it seems proper that the two words be made a compound by

means of the hyphen: as, "Their hope shall be as the \_giving-up\_ of the

ghost."--\_Job\_, xi, 20. "For if the \_casting-away\_ of them be the

reconciling of the world."--\_Rom.\_, xi, 15. "And the \_gathering-together\_

of the waters called he seas."--\_Gen.\_, i, 10. "If he should offer to stop

the \_runnings-out\_ of his justice."--\_Law and Grace\_, p. 26. "The

\_stopping-short\_ before the usual pause in the melody, aids the impression

that is made by the description of the stone's \_stopping-short\_.'"--\_Kames,

El. of Crit.\_, ii, 106. I do not find these words united in the places

referred to, but this is nevertheless their true figure. Our authors and

printers are lamentably careless, as well as ignorant, respecting \_the

figure of words\_: for which part of grammar, see the whole of the third

chapter, in Part First of this work; also observations on the fourth rule

of syntax, from the 30th to the 35th. As certain other compounds may

sometimes be broken by \_tmesis\_, so may some of these; as, "Not forsaking

the \_assembling\_ of ourselves \_together\_, as the manner of some

is."--\_Heb.\_, x, 23. Adverbs may relate to participles, but nouns require

adjectives. The following phrase is therefore inaccurate: "For the more

\_easily\_ reading of large numbers." Yet if we say, "For reading large

numbers \_the more easily\_," the construction is different, and not

inaccurate. Some calculator, I think, has it, "For the more \_easily\_

reading large numbers." But Hutton says, "For the more \_easy\_ reading \_of\_

large numbers."--\_Hutton's Arith.\_, p. 5; so \_Babcock's\_, p. 12. It would

be quite as well to say, "For the \_greater ease in\_ reading large numbers."

OBS. 12.--Many words of a participial form are used directly as nouns,

without any article, adjective, or possessive case before them, and without

any object or adjunct after them. Such is commonly the construction of the

words \_spelling, reading, writing, ciphering, surveying, drawing, parsing\_,

and many other such \_names\_ of actions or exercises. They are rightly put

by Johnson among "\_nouns\_ derived from \_verbs\_;" for, "The [name of the]

action is the same with the participle present, as \_loving, frighting,

fighting, striking\_."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 10. Thus: "I like

\_writing\_."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 171. "He supposed, with them, that

\_affirming\_ and \_denying\_ were operations of the mind."--\_Tooke's

Diversions\_, i, 35. "'Not rendering,' said Polycarp the disciple of John,

'evil for evil, or \_railing\_ for \_railing\_, or \_striking\_ for \_striking\_,

or \_cursing\_ for \_cursing\_."--\_Dymond, on War\_. Against this practice,

there is seldom any objection; the words are wholly nouns, both in sense

and construction. We call them \_participial\_ nouns, only because they

resemble participles in their derivation; or if we call them \_verbal\_

nouns, it is because they are derived from verbs. But we too frequently

find those which retain the government and the adjuncts of participles,

used as nouns before or after verbs; or, more properly speaking, used as

mongrels and nondescripts, a doubtful species, for which there is seldom

any necessity, since the infinitive, the verbal or some other noun, or a

clause introduced by the conjunction \_that\_, will generally express the

idea in a better manner: as, "\_Exciting\_ such disturbances, is unlawful."

Say rather, "\_To excite\_ such disturbances,--\_The exciting of\_ such

disturbances,--\_The excitation of\_ such disturbances,--or, \_That one should

excite\_ such disturbances, is unlawful."

OBS. 13.--Murray says, "The word \_the\_, before the \_active participle\_, in

the following sentence, and in all others of a similar construction, is

improper, and should be omitted: '\_The\_ advising, or \_the\_ attempting, to

excite such disturbances, is unlawful.' It should be, '\_Advising\_ or

\_attempting\_ to excite disturbances.'"--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 195. But, by his

own showing, "the present participle, with the definite article \_the\_

before it, becomes a \_substantive\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 192. And substantives, or

nouns, by an other of his notes, can govern the infinitive mood, just as

well as participles; or just as well as the verbs which he thinks would be

very proper here; namely, "To \_advise\_ or \_attempt\_ to excite such

disturbances."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196. It would be right to say, "\_Any advice\_, or

\_attempt\_, to excite such disturbances, is unlawful." And I see not that he

has improved the text at all, by expunging the article. \_Advising\_ and

\_attempting\_, being disjunct nominatives to \_is\_, are nothing but nouns,

whether the article be used or not; though they are rather less obviously

such without it, and therefore the change is for the worse.

OBS. 14.--Lennie observes, "When \_a preposition\_"--(he should have said,

When \_an other\_ preposition--) "follows the participle, \_of\_ is

inadmissible; as, \_His\_ depending \_on\_ promises proved his ruin. \_His\_

neglecting \_to\_ study when young, rendered him ignorant all his

life."--\_Prin. of E. Gram.\_, 5th Ed., p. 65; 13th Ed., 91. Here \_on\_ and

\_to\_, of course, exclude \_of\_; but the latter may be changed to \_of\_, which

will turn the infinitive into a noun: as, "\_His\_ neglecting \_of study\_,"

&c. "\_Depending\_" and "\_neglecting\_," being equivalent to \_dependence\_ and

\_neglect\_, are participial nouns, and not "participles." Professor

Bullions, too, has the same faulty remark, examples and all; (for his book,

of the same title, is little else than a gross plagiarism from Lennie's;)

though he here forgets his other erroneous doctrines, that, "A

\_preposition\_ should never be used before the infinitive," and that,

"Active verbs do not admit a preposition after them." See \_Bullions's Prin.

of E. Gram.\_, pp. 91, 92, and 107.

OBS. 15.--The participle in \_ing\_ is, on many occasions, equivalent to the

infinitive verb, so that the speaker or writer may adopt either, just as he

pleases: as, "So their gerunds are sometimes found \_having\_ [or \_to have\_]

an absolute or apparently neuter signification."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p.

234. "With tears that ceas'd not \_flowing\_" [or \_to flow\_].--\_Milton\_. "I

would willingly have him \_producing\_ [\_produce\_, or \_to produce\_] his

credentials."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 273. There are also instances, and

according to my notion not a few, in which the one is put \_improperly\_ for

the other. The participle however is erroneously used for the infinitive

much oftener than the infinitive for the participle. The lawful uses of

both are exceedingly numerous; though the syntax of the participle,

strictly speaking, does not include its various \_conversions\_ into other

parts of speech. The principal instances of \_regular\_ equivalence between

infinitives and participles, may be reduced to the following heads:

1. After the verbs \_see, hear\_, and \_feel\_, the participle in \_ing\_,

relating to the objective, is often equivalent to the infinitive governed

by the verb; as, "I saw him \_running\_"--"I heard it \_howling\_."--\_W.

Allen\_. "I feel the wind \_blowing\_." Here the verbs, \_run, howl\_, and

\_blow\_, might be substituted. 2. After intransitive verbs signifying \_to

begin\_ or \_to continue\_, the participle in \_ing\_, relating to the

nominative, may be used in stead of the infinitive connected to the verb;

as, "The ass began \_galloping\_ with all his might."--\_Sandford and Merton\_.

"It commenced \_raining\_ very hard."--\_Silliman\_. "The steamboats commenced

\_running\_ on Saturday."--\_Daily Advertiser\_. "It is now above three years

since he began \_printing\_."--\_Dr. Adam's Pref. to Rom. Antiq.\_ "So when

they continued \_asking\_ him."--\_John\_, viii, 7. Greek, "[Greek: Os epemenon

erotontes auton.]" Latin, "Cum ergo perseverarent \_interrogantes\_

eum."--\_Vulgate\_. "Cùm autem perseverarent eum \_interrogare\_."--\_Beza\_.

"Then shall ye continue \_following\_ the Lord your God."--\_1 Sam.\_, xii, 14.

"Eritis \_sequentes\_ Dominum Deum vestrum."--\_Vulgate\_. "As she continued

\_praying\_ before the Lord."--\_1 Sam.\_, i, 12. "Cùm ilia \_multiplicaret

preces\_ coram Domino."--\_Vulgate\_. "And they went on \_beating down\_ one an

other."--\_2 Sam.\_, xiv, 16. "Make the members of them go on \_rising\_ and

\_growing\_ in their importance."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 116. "Why do you keep

\_teasing\_ me?"

3. After \_for, in, of\_, or \_to\_, and perhaps some other prepositions, the

participle may in most cases be varied by the infinitive, which is governed

by \_to\_ only; as, "We are better fitted \_for receiving\_ the tenets and

\_obeying\_ the precepts of that faith which will make us wise unto

salvation."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 51. That is--"\_to receive\_ the tenets and

\_obey\_ the precepts." "Men fit \_for fighting\_, practised \_in fighting\_,

proud \_of fighting\_, accustomed \_to fighting\_."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p.

172. That is, "fit \_to fight\_," &c. "What is the right path, few take the

trouble \_of inquiring\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo. ii, 235. Better,

perhaps:--"few take the trouble \_to inquire\_."

OBS. 16.--One of our best grammarians says, "The infinitive, in the

following sentences, \_should be exchanged\_ for the participle: 'I am weary

\_to bear\_ them.' Is. i, 14. 'Hast thou, spirit, perform'd \_to point\_ the

tempest?' Shak."--\_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 172. This suggestion implies, that

the participle would be here not only equivalent to the infinitive in

sense, but better in expression. It is true, the preposition \_to\_ does not

well express the relation between \_weary\_ and \_bear\_; and, doubtless, some

regard should be had to the meaning of this particle, whenever it is any

thing more than an index of the mood. But the critic ought to have told us

how he would make these corrections. For in neither case does the

participle alone appear to be a fit substitute for the infinitive, either

with or without the \_to\_; and the latter text will scarcely bear the

participle at all, unless we change the former verb; as, "Hast thou,

spirit, \_done pointing\_ the tempest?" The true meaning of the other example

seems somewhat uncertain. The Vulgate has it, \_"Laboravi sustinens\_," "I

have laboured \_bearing\_ them;" the French Bible, "\_Je suis las de les

souffrir\_," "I am tired of \_bearing\_ them;" the Septuagint, "[Greek: Ouketi

anæso tas hamartias humon,]" "I will no more forgive your sins."

OBS. 17.--In the following text, the infinitive is used improperly, nor

would the participle in its stead make pure English: "I will not reprove

thee for thy sacrifices or thy burnt-offerings, \_to have been\_ continually

before me."--\_Ps. 1. 8.\_ According to the French version, \_"to have been"\_

should be \_"which are;"\_ but the Septuagint and the Vulgate take the

preceding noun for the nominative, thus: "I will not reprove thee for thy

sacrifices, \_but thy burnt-offerings are\_ continually before me."

OBS. 18.--As the preposition \_to\_ before the infinitive shows the latter to

be "\_that towards which\_ the preceding verb is directed," verbs of

\_desisting, omitting, preventing\_, and \_avoiding\_, are generally found to

take the participle after them, and not the infinitive; because, in such

instances, the direction of effort seems not to be so properly \_to\_, or

\_towards\_, as \_from\_ the action.[419] Where the preposition \_from\_ is

inserted, (as it most commonly is, after some of these verbs.) there is no

irregularity in the construction of the participle; but where the

participle immediately follows the verb, it is perhaps questionable whether

it ought to be considered the object of the verb, or a mere participle

relating to the nominative which precedes. If we suppose the latter, the

participle may be parsed by the common rule; if the former, it must be

referred to the third exception above. For example:

1. After verbs of DESISTING; as, "The Cryer used to proclaim, DIXERUNT, i.

e. They \_have done speaking.\_"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 132. "A friend is

advised to \_put off making\_ love to Lalage."--\_Philological Museum\_, i,

446. "He \_forbore doing\_ so, on the ground of expediency."--\_The Friend\_,

iv, 35. "And yet architects never \_give over attempting\_ to reconcile these

two incompatibles."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 338. "Never to \_give over

seeking\_ and \_praying\_ for it."--\_N. Y. Observer.\_ "Do not \_leave off

seeking.\_"--\_President Edwards.\_ "Then Satan \_hath done flattering\_ and

\_comforting.\_"--\_Baxter.\_ "The princes \_refrained talking.\_"--\_Job\_, xxix,

9. "Principes \_cessabant loqui.\_"--\_Vulgate.\_ Here it would be better to

say, "The princes refrained \_from\_ talking." But Murray says, "\_From\_ seems

to be superfluous after \_forbear\_: as, 'He could not forbear from

appointing the pope,' &c."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 203. But \_"forbear to

appoint"\_ would be a better correction; for this verb is often followed by

the infinitive; as, \_"Forbear to insinuate."\_--\_West's Letters\_, p. 62.

"And he \_forbare to go\_ forth."--\_1 Sam.\_, xxiii, 13. The reader will

observe, that, \_"never to give over"\_ or \_"not to leave off,"\_ is in fact

the same thing as to continue; and I have shown by the analogy of other

languages, that after verbs of continuing the participle is not an object

of government; though possibly it may be so, in these instances, which are

somewhat different. 2. After verbs of OMITTING; as, "He \_omits giving\_ an

account of them."--\_Tooke's Diversions of Purley\_, i, 251. I question the

propriety of this construction; and yet, \_"omits to give"\_ seems still more

objectionable. Better, "He \_omits all account\_ of them." Or, "He \_neglects

to give\_, or \_forbears to give\_, any account of them." L. Murray twice

speaks of apologizing, "for the use he has made of his predecessors'

labours, and for \_omitting to insert\_ their names."--\_Octavo Gram., Pref.\_,

p. vii; and \_Note\_, p. 73. The phrase, \_"omitting to insert,"\_ appears to

me a downright solecism; and the pronoun \_their\_ is ambiguous, because

there are well-known names both for the \_men\_ and for their \_labours\_, and

he ought not to have omitted either species wholly, as he did. "Yet they

absolutely \_refuse doing so\_, one with another."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p.

264. Better, \_"refuse to do so."\_ "I had as repeatedly \_declined\_

going."--\_Leigh Hunt's Byron\_, p. 15.

3. After verbs of PREVENTING; as, "Our sex are happily \_prevented from

engaging\_ in these turbulent scenes."--\_West's Letters to a Lady\_, p. 74.

"To prevent our frail natures \_from deviating\_ into bye paths [write

\_by-paths\_] of error."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "Prudence, prevents our speaking or

acting improperly."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 99; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 303;

\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 72. This construction, though very common, is

palpably wrong: because its most natural interpretation is, "Prudence

improperly prevents our speech or action." These critics ought to have

known enough to say, "Prudence prevents \_us from\_ speaking or acting

improperly." "This, however, doth not \_hinder\_ pronunciation \_to borrow\_

from singing."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 70. Here the infinitive is used,

merely because it does not sound well to say, \_"from borrowing from

singing;"\_ but the expression might very well be changed thus, \_"from being

indebted to singing."\_ "'This by no means \_hinders\_ the book \_to be\_ a

useful one.'--\_Geddes.\_ It should be, \_'from being.'\_"--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 318.

4. After verbs of AVOIDING: as, "He might have \_avoided treating\_ of the

origin of ideas."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, i, 28. "We may \_avoid talking\_

nonsense on these subjects."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 281. "But carefully

\_avoid being\_ at any time ostentatious and affected."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

233. "Here I cannot \_avoid mentioning\_[420] the assistance I have

received."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. iv. "It is our duty to \_avoid leading\_

others into temptation,"--\_West's Letters\_, p. 33. "Nay, such a garden

should in some measure \_avoid imitating\_ nature."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 251. "I can promise no entertainment to those who \_shun

thinking\_."--\_Ib.\_, i, 36. "We cannot \_help being\_ of opinion."--ENCYC.

BRIT. \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 76. "I cannot \_help being\_ of

opinion."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 311. "I cannot \_help mentioning\_ here one

character more."--\_Hughes. Spect.\_, No. 554. "These would sometimes very

narrowly \_miss being catched\_ away."--\_Steele\_. "Carleton very narrowly

\_escaped being taken\_."--\_Grimshaw's Hist.\_, p. 111. Better, "escaped

\_from\_ being taken;"--or, "\_escaped capture\_."

OBS. 19.--In sentences like the following, the participle seems to be

improperly made \_the object\_ of the verb: "I intend \_doing\_ it."--"I

remember \_meeting\_ him." Better, "I intend \_to do\_ it."--"I remember \_to

have met\_ him." According to my notion, it is an error to suppose that

verbs in general may govern participles. If there are any proper instances

of such government, they would seem to be chiefly among verbs of \_quitting\_

or \_avoiding\_. And even here the analogy of General Grammar gives

countenance to a different solution; as, "They \_left beating of\_

Paul."--\_Acts\_, xxi, 32. Better, "They \_left beating\_ Paul;"--or, "They

\_quit beating\_ Paul." Greek, "[Greek: Epausanto tuptontes ton Paulon.]"

Latin, "Cessaverunt \_percutientes\_ Paulum."--\_Montanus\_. "Cessarunt

\_coedere\_ Paulum."--\_Beza\_. "Cessaverunt \_percutere\_ Paulum."--\_Vulgate\_.

It is true, the English participle in \_ing\_ differs in some respects from

that which usually corresponds to it in Latin or Greek; it has more of a

substantive character, and is commonly put for the Latin gerund. If this

difference does not destroy the argument from analogy, the opinion is still

just, that \_left\_ and \_quit\_ are here \_intransitive\_, and that the

participle \_beating\_ relates to the pronoun \_they\_. Such is unequivocally

the construction of the Greek text, and also of the literal Latin of Arias

Montanus. But, to the mere English grammarian, this method of parsing will

not be apt to suggest itself: because, at first sight, the verbs appear to

be transitive, and the participle in \_ing\_ has nothing to prove it an

adjunct of the nominative, and not the object of the verb--unless, indeed,

the mere fact that it is a participle, is proof of this.

OBS. 20.--Our great Compiler, Murray, not understanding this construction,

or not observing what verbs admit of it, or require it, has very

unskillfully laid it down as a rule, that, "The participle with its

adjuncts, may be considered as a \_substantive phrase\_ in the objective

case, governed by the preposition or verb, \_expressed or understood\_: as,

'By \_promising much and performing but little\_, we become despicable.' 'He

studied to avoid \_expressing himself too severely\_.'"--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p.

194.[421] This very popular author seems never to have known that

participles, as such, may be governed in English by prepositions. And yet

he knew, and said, that "prepositions do not, \_like articles and pronouns\_,

convert the participle itself into the nature of a substantive."--\_Ibid.\_

This he avouches in the same breath in which he gives that "nature" to a

participle and its adverb! For, by a false comma after \_much\_, he cuts his

first "\_substantive phrase\_" absurdly in two; and doubtless supposes a

false ellipsis of \_by\_ before the participle \_performing\_. Of his method of

resolving the second example, some notice has already been taken, in

Observations 4th and 5th on Rule 5th. Though he pretends that the whole

phrase is in the objective case, "the truth is, the assertion grammatically

affects the first word only;" which in one aspect he regards as a noun, and

in an other as a participle: whereas he himself, on the preceding page, had

adopted from Lowth a different doctrine, and cautioned the learner against

treating words in \_ing\_, "as if they were of an \_amphibious\_ species,

partly nouns and partly \_verbs\_;" that is, "partly nouns and partly

\_participles\_;" for, according to Murray, Lowth, and many others,

participles are verbs. The term, "\_substantive phrase\_," itself a solecism,

was invented merely to cloak this otherwise bald inconsistency. Copying

Lowth again, the great Compiler defines a phrase to be "two or more words

rightly put together;" and, surely, if we have a well-digested system of

grammar, whatsoever words are rightly put together, may be regularly parsed

by it. But how can one indivisible word be consistently made two different

parts of speech at once? And is not this the situation of every transitive

participle that is made either the \_subject\_ or the \_object\_ of a verb?

Adjuncts never alter either the nature or the construction of the words on

which they depend; and participial nouns differ from participles in both.

The former express actions \_as things\_; the latter generally attribute them

to their agents or recipients.

OBS. 21.--The Latin gerund is "a kind of verbal noun, partaking of the

nature of a participle."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "A gerund is a participial

noun, of the neuter gender, and singular-number, declinable like a

substantive, having no vocative, construed like a substantive, and

governing the case of its verb."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 70. In the Latin

gerund thus defined, there is an appearance of ancient classical authority

for that "amphibious species" of words of which so much notice has already

been taken. Our participle in \_ing\_, when governed by a preposition,

undoubtedly corresponds very nearly, both in sense and construction, to

this Latin gerund; the principal difference being, that the one is

declined, like a noun, and the other is not. The analogy, however, is but

lamely maintained, when we come to those irregular constructions in which

the participle is made a half-noun in English. It is true, the gerund of

the nominative case may be made the subject of a verb in Latin; but we do

not translate it by the English participle, but rather by the infinitive,

or still oftener by the verb with the auxiliary \_must\_: as, "\_Vivendum est

mihi rectè\_, I must live well."--\_Grant's L. Gram.\_, p. 232. This is better

English than the nearer version, "Living correctly is necessary for me;"

and the exact imitation, "Living is to me correctly," is nonsense. Nor does

the Latin gerund often govern the genitive like a noun, or ever stand as

the direct object of a transitive verb, except in some few doubtful

instances about which the grammarians dispute. For, in fact, to explain

this species of words, has puzzled the Latin grammarians about as much as

the English; though the former do not appear to have fallen into those

palpable self-contradictions which embarrass the instructions of the

latter.

OBS. 22.--Dr. Adam says, "The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by

\_prefixing\_ the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with

the preposition \_of\_; as, 'He is employed \_in writing\_ letters,' or, 'in

\_the writing of\_ letters:' but it is improper to say, 'in \_the writing\_

letters,' or, 'in \_writing of\_ letters.'"--\_Latin and English Gram.\_, p.

184. This doctrine is also taught by Lowth, Priestley, Murray, Comly,

Chandler, and many others; most of whom extend the principle to all

participles that govern the possessive case; and they might as well have

added all such as are made either the subjects or the objects of verbs, and

such as are put for nominatives after verbs neuter. But Crombie, Allen,

Churchill, S. S. Greene, Hiley, Wells, Weld, and some others, teach that

participles may perform these several offices of a substantive, without

dropping the regimen and adjuncts of participles. This doctrine, too,

Murray and his copyists absurdly endeavour to reconcile with the other, by

resorting to the idle fiction of "\_substantive phrases\_" endued with all

these powers: as, "\_His being at enmity with Cæsar\_ was the cause of

perpetual discord."--\_Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 237; \_Churchill's Gram.\_, p.

141. "Another fault is \_allowing it to supersede\_ the use of a point."--

\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 372. "To be sure there is a possibility of some

ignorant \_reader's confounding the two vowels\_ in pronunciation."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 375. It is much better to avoid all such English as this. Say, rather,

"\_His enmity with Cæsar\_ was the cause of perpetual discord."--"An other

fault is \_the allowing of\_ it to \_supersede\_ the use of a point."--"To be

sure, there is a possibility \_that\_ some ignorant \_reader may confound\_ the

two vowels, in pronunciation."

OBS. 23.--In French, the infinitive is governed by several different

prepositions, and the gerundive by one only, the preposition \_en\_,--which,

however, is sometimes suppressed; as, "\_en passant, en faisant,--il alloit

courant\_."--\_Traité des Participes\_, p. 2. In English, the gerundive is

governed by several different prepositions, and the infinitive by one only,

the preposition \_to\_,--which, in like manner, is sometimes suppressed; as,

"\_to pass, to do,--I saw him run\_." The difficulties in the syntax of the

French participle in \_ant\_, which corresponds to ours in \_ing\_, are

apparently as great in themselves, as those which the syntax of the English

word presents; but they result from entirely different causes, and chiefly

from the liability there is of confounding the participle with the verbal

adjective, which is formed from it. The confounding of it with the

gerundive is now, in either language, of little or no consequence, since in

modern French, as well as in English, both are indeclinable. For this

reason, I have framed the syntactical rule for participles so as to include

under that name the gerund, or gerundive, which is a participle governed by

a preposition. The great difficulty with us, is, to determine whether the

participle ought, or ought not, to be allowed to assume \_other\_

characteristics of a noun, without dropping those of a participle, and

without becoming wholly a noun. The liability of confounding the English

participle with the verbal or participial adjective, amounts to nothing

more than the occasional misnaming of a word in parsing; or perhaps an

occasional ambiguity in the style of some writer, as in the following

citation: "I am resolved, 'let the newspapers say what they please of

\_canvassing\_ beauties, \_haranguing\_ toasts, and \_mobbing\_ demireps,' not to

believe one syllable."--\_Jane West's Letters to a Young Lady\_, p. 74. From

these words, it is scarcely possible to find out, even with the help of the

context whether these three sorts of ladies are spoken of as the

canvassers, haranguers, and mobbers, or as being canvassed, harangued, and

mobbed. If the prolixity and multiplicity of these observations transcend

the reader's patience, let him consider that the questions at issue cannot

be settled by the brief enunciation of loose individual opinions, but must

be examined in the light of \_all the analogies and facts\_ that bear upon

them. So considerable are the difficulties of properly distinguishing the

participle from the verbal adjective in French, that that indefatigable

grammarian, Girault Du Vivier, after completing his \_Grammaire des

Grammaires\_ in two large octavo volumes, thought proper to \_enlarge\_ his

instructions on this head, and to publish them in a separate book, (\_Traité

des Participes\_,) though we have it on his own authority, that the rule for

participles had already given rise to a greater number of dissertations and

particular treatises than any other point in French grammar.

OBS. 24.--A participle construed after the nominative or the objective

case, is not in general equivalent to a verbal noun governing the

possessive. There is sometimes a nice distinction to be observed in the

application of these two constructions. For the leading word in sense,

should not be made the adjunct in construction. The following sentences

exhibit a disregard to this principle, and are both inaccurate: "He felt

his \_strength's\_ declining."--"He was sensible of his \_strength\_

declining." In the former sentence, the noun \_strength\_ should be in the

objective case, governed by \_felt\_; and in the latter, it should rather be

in the possessive, governed by \_declining\_. Thus: "He felt his \_strength\_

declining;" i.e., "\_felt it decline\_."--"He was sensible of his

\_strength's\_ declining;" i.e., "\_of its decline\_." These two sentences

state the same fact, but, in construction, they are very different; nor

does it appear, that where there is no difference of meaning, the two

constructions are properly interchangeable. This point has already been

briefly noticed in Obs. 12th and 13th on Rule 4th. But the false and

discordant instructions which our grammarians deliver respecting

possessives before participles; their strange neglect of this plain

principle of reason, that the leading word in sense ought to be made the

leading or governing word in the construction; and the difficulties which

they and other writers are continually falling into, by talking their

choice between two errors, in stead of avoiding both: these, as well as

their suggestions of sameness or difference of import between the

participle and the participial noun, require some farther extension of my

observations in this place.

OBS. 25.--Upon the classification of words, as parts of speech,

distinguished according to their natures and uses, depends the whole scheme

of grammatical science. And it is plain, that a bad distribution, or a

confounding of such things as ought to be separated, must necessarily be

attended with inconveniences to the student, for which no skill or learning

in the expounder of such a system can ever compensate. The absurdity of

supposing with Horne Tooke, that the same word can never be used so

differently as to belong to different parts of speech, I have already

alluded to more than once. The absolute necessity of classing words, not

according to their derivation merely, but rather according to their sense

and construction, is too evident to require any proof. Yet, different as

are the natures and the uses of \_verbs, participles\_, and \_nouns\_, it is no

uncommon thing to find these three parts of speech confounded together; and

that too to a very great extent, and by some of our very best grammarians,

without even an attempt on their part to distinguish them. For instances of

this glaring fault and perplexing inconsistency, the reader may turn to the

books of W. Allen and T. O. Churchill, two of the best authors that have

ever written on English grammar. Of the participle the latter gives no

formal definition, but he represents it as "\_a form\_, in which \_the action\_

denoted by \_the verb\_ is capable of being joined \_to a noun\_ as \_its

quality\_, or accident."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 85. Again he says,

"That the participle is \_a mere mode of the verb\_ is manifest, if our

definition of a verb be admitted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 242. While he thus identifies

the participle with the verb, this author scruples not to make what he

calls the imperfect participle perform all the offices of a \_noun\_: saying,

"Frequently too it is used as a noun, admits a preposition or an article

before it, becomes a plural by taking \_s\_ at the end, and governs a

possessive case: as, 'He who has \_the comings\_ in of a prince, may be

ruined \_by his\_ own \_gaming\_, or his \_wife's squandering\_.'"--\_Ib.\_, p.

144. The plural here exhibited, if rightly written, would have the \_s\_, not

at the end, but in the middle; for \_comings-in\_, (an obsolete expression

for \_revenues\_,) is not two words, but one. Nor are \_gaming\_ and

\_squandering\_, to be here called participles, but nouns. Yet, among all his

rules and annotations, I do not find that Churchill any where teaches that

participles \_become nouns\_ when they are used substantively. The following

example he exhibits for the express purpose of showing that the nominatives

to "\_is\_" and "\_may be\_" are not nouns, but participles: "\_Walking is\_ the

best exercise, though riding \_may be\_ more pleasant."--\_Ib.\_, p. 141. And,

what is far worse, though his book is professedly an amplification of

Lowth's brief grammar, he so completely annuls the advice of Lowth

concerning the distinguishing of participles from participial nouns, that

he not only misnames the latter when they are used correctly, but approves

and adopts well-nigh all the various forms of error, with which the mixed

and irregular construction of participles has filled our language: of these

forms, there are, I think, not fewer than a dozen.

OBS. 26.--Allen's account of the participle is no better than

Churchill's--and no worse than what the reader may find in many an English

Grammar now in use. This author's fault is not so much a lack of learning

or of comprehension, as of order and discrimination. We see in him, that it

is possible for a man to be well acquainted with English authors, ancient

as well as modern, and to read Greek and Latin, French and Saxon, and yet

to falter miserably in describing the nature and uses of the English

participle. Like many others, he does not acknowledge this sort of words to

be one of the parts of speech; but commences his account of it by the

following absurdity: "The participles \_are adjectives\_ derived from the

verb; as, \_pursuing, pursued, having pursued\_."--\_Elements of E. Gram.\_, p.

62. This definition not only confounds the participle with the participial

adjective, but merges the whole of the former species in a part of speech

of which he had not even recognized the latter as a subdivision: "An

adjective shows the \_quality\_ of a thing. Adjectives may be reduced to five

classes: 1. Common--2. Proper--3. Numeral--4. Pronominal--5.

Compound."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. Now, if "participles are adjectives," to which of

these five classes do they belong? But there are participial or verbal

adjectives, very many; a sixth class, without which this distribution is

false and incomplete: as, "a \_loving\_ father; an \_approved\_ copy." The

participle differs from these, as much as it does from a noun. But says our

author, "Participles, as simple adjectives, belong to \_a noun\_; as, a

\_loving\_ father; an \_approved\_ copy;--as parts of the verb, they have the

same government \_as\_ their verbs have; as, his father, \_recalling the

pleasures\_ of past years, joined their party."--\_Ib.\_, p. 170. What

confusion is this! a complete jumble of adjectives, participles, and "parts

of verbs!" Again: "Present participles are often construed as substantives;

as, early \_rising\_ is conducive to health; I like \_writing\_; we depend on

\_seeing\_ you."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. Here \_rising\_ and \_writing\_ are nouns; but

\_seeing\_ is a participle, because it is active and governs \_you\_, Compare

this second jumble with the definition above. Again he proceeds: "To

participles thus used, many of our best authors prefix the article; as,

'\_The being chosen\_ did not prevent disorderly behaviour.' Bp. Tomline.

'\_The not knowing how to pass\_ our vacant hours.' Seed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171.

These examples I take to be bad English. Say rather, "The \_state of

election\_ did not prevent disorderly behaviour."--"The \_want of some

entertainment for\_ our vacant hours." The author again proceeds: "If a noun

limits the meaning of a participle thus used, that noun is put in the

genitive; as, your \_father's coming\_ was unexected."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. Here

\_coming\_ is a noun, and no participle at all. But the author has a marginal

note, "A possessive pronoun is equivalent to a genitive;" (\_ibid.\_;) and he

means to approve of possessives before active participles: as, "Some of

these irregularities arise from \_our having received the words\_ through a

French medium."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116. This brings us again to that difficult and

apparently unresolvable problem, whether participles as such, by virtue of

their mixed gerundive character, can, or cannot, govern the possessive

case; a question, about which, the more a man examines it, the more he may

doubt.

OBS. 27.--But, before we say any thing more about the government of this

case, let us look at our author's next paragraph on participles: "An active

participle, preceded by \_an article\_ or by \_a genitive\_, is elegantly

followed by the preposition \_of\_, before the substantive which follows it;

as, \_the\_ compiling \_of\_ that book occupied several years; \_his\_ quitting

\_of\_ the army was unexpected."--\_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 171. Here the

participial nouns \_compiling\_ and \_quitting\_ are improperly called active

participles, from which they are certainly as fairly distinguished by the

construction, as they can be by any means whatever. And this complete

distinction the author considers at least an elegance, if not an absolute

requisite, in English composition. And he immediately adds: "When this

construction produces \_ambiguity\_, the expression \_must be

varied\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. This suggestion is left without illustration; but

it doubtless refers to one of Murray's remarks, in which it is said: "A

phrase in which the article precedes the \_present participle\_ and the

possessive preposition follows it, will not, in every instance, convey the

same meaning as would be conveyed by the participle without the article and

preposition. 'He expressed the pleasure he had \_in the hearing of\_ the

philosopher,' is \_capable of a different sense\_ from, 'He expressed the

pleasure he had \_in hearing\_ the philosopher.'"--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_,

p. 193; \_R. C. Smith's Gram.\_, 161; \_Ingersoll's\_, 199; and others. Here

may be seen a manifest difference between the verbal or participial noun,

and the participle or gerund; but Murray, in both instances, absurdly calls

the word \_hearing\_ a "present participle;" and, having robbed the former

sentence of a needful comma, still more absurdly supposes it ambiguous:

whereas the phrase, "in the hearing \_of the philosopher\_," means only, "in

the \_philosopher's\_ hearing;" and not, "in hearing the philosopher," or,

"in hearing \_of\_ the philosopher." But the true question is, would it be

right to say, "He expressed the pleasure he had in the \_philosopher's\_

hearing \_him\_?" For here it would be \_equivocal\_ to say, "in the

philosopher's hearing \_of\_ him;" and some aver, that \_of\_ would be wrong,

in any such instance, even if the sense were clear. But let us recur to the

mixed example from Allen, and compare it with his own doctrines. To say,

"from \_our\_ having received \_of\_ the words through a French medium," would

certainly be no elegance; and if it be not an ambiguity, it is something

worse. The expression, then, "must be varied." But varied how? Is it right

without the \_of\_, though contrary to the author's rule for elegance?

OBS. 28.--The observations which have been made on this point, under the

rule for the possessive case, while they show, to some extent, the

inconsistencies in doctrine, and the improprieties of practice, into which

the difficulties of the mixed participle have betrayed some of our

principal grammarians, bring likewise the weight of much authority and

reason against the custom of blending without distinction the

characteristics of nouns and participles in the same word or words; but

still they may not be thought sufficient to prove this custom to be

altogether wrong; nor do they pretend to have fully established the dogma,

that such a construction is in no instance admissible. They show, however,

that possessives before participles are \_seldom\_ to be approved; and

perhaps, in the present instance, the meaning might be quite as well

expressed by a common substantive, or the regular participial noun: as,

"Some of these irregularities arise from \_our reception of\_ the words--or

\_our receiving of\_ the words--through a French medium." But there are some

examples which it is not easy to amend, either in this way, or in any

other; as, "The miscarriages of youth have very much proceeded from \_their

being imprudently indulged\_, or \_left\_ to themselves."--\_Friends' N. E.

Discipline\_, p. 13. And there are instances too, of a similar character, in

which the possessive case cannot be used. For example: "Nobody will doubt

of \_this being\_ a sufficient proof."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 66. "But

instead of \_this being\_ the fact of the case, &c."--\_Butlers Analogy\_, p.

137. "There is express historical or traditional evidence, as ancient as

history, of the \_system\_ of religion \_being taught\_ mankind by

revelation."--\_Ibid.\_ "From \_things\_ in it \_appearing\_ to men

foolishness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175. "As to the consistency of the \_members\_ of

our society \_joining\_ themselves to those called free-masons."--\_N. E.

Discip.\_, p. 51. "In \_either of these cases happening\_, the \_person

charging\_ is at liberty to bring the matter before the church, who are the

only \_judges\_ now \_remaining\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36; \_Extracts\_, p. 57. "Deriving

its efficacy from the \_power of God fulfilling\_ his purpose."--\_Religious

World\_, Vol. ii, p. 235. "We have no idea of any certain \_portion of time

intervening\_ between the time of the action and the time of speaking of

it."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 33: \_Murray's\_, i, 70; \_Emmons's\_, 41; and

others. The following example therefore, however the participle may seem to

be the leading word in sense, is unquestionably wrong; and that in more

respects than one: "The reason and time of the \_Son of God's becoming\_

man."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. xxii. Many writers would here be satisfied

with merely omitting the possessive sign; as does Churchill, in the

following example: "The chief cause of this appears to me to lie in

\_grammarians having considered\_ them solely as the signs of tense."--\_New

Gram.\_, p. 243. But this sort of construction, too, whenever the noun

before the participle is not the leading word in sense, is ungrammatical.

In stead, therefore, of stickling for choice between two such errors, we

ought to adopt some better expression; as, "The reason and time of the

\_Saviour's incarnation\_."--"The chief cause of this appears to me to \_be,

that\_ grammarians \_have\_ considered them solely as signs of tense."

OBS. 29.--It is certain that the noun or pronoun which "limits the meaning

of a participle," cannot always be "put in the \_genitive\_" or \_possessive\_

case; for the sense intended sometimes positively forbids such a

construction, and requires the objective: as, "A syllable consists of one

or more \_letters forming\_ one sound."--\_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 29. The word

\_representing\_ or \_denoting\_ would here be better than \_forming\_, because

the letters do not, strictly speaking, \_form\_ the sound. But chiefly let it

be noticed, that the word \_letters\_ could not with any propriety have been

put in the possessive case. Nor is it always necessary or proper, to prefer

that case, where the sense may be supposed to admit it; as, "'The example

which Mr. Seyer has adduced, of the \_gerund governing\_ the genitive of the

agent.' Dr. Crombie."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 237. "Which possibly might

have been prevented by \_parents doing\_ their duty."--\_N. E. Discipline\_, p.

187. "As to the seeming contradiction of \_One being\_ Three, and \_Three\_

One."--\_Religious World\_, Vol. ii, p. 113. "You have watched \_them

climbing\_ from chair to chair."--PIERPONT: \_Liberator\_, Vol. x, p. 22.

"Whether the world came into being as it is, by an intelligent \_Agent

forming\_ it thus, or not."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 129. "In the farther

supposition of necessary \_agents being\_ thus rewarded and

punished."--\_Ib.\_, p. 140. "He grievously punished the \_Israelites

murmuring\_ for want of water."--\_Leslie, on Tythes\_, p. 21. Here too the

words, \_gerund, parents, One, Three, them, Agent, agents\_, and

\_Israelites\_, are rightly put in the objective case; yet doubtless some

will think, though I do not, that they might as well have been put in the

possessive. Respectable writers sometimes use the latter case, where the

former would convey the same meaning, and be more regular; as, "Which is

used, as active verbs often are, without its \_regimen's\_ being

expressed."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 302. Omit the apostrophe and \_s\_;

and, if you please, the word \_being\_ also. "The daily instances of \_men's\_

dying around us."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 113. Say rather,--"of \_men\_ dying

around us." "To prevent \_our\_ rashly engaging in arduous or dangerous

enterprises."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. 17. Say, "To prevent \_us from\_," &c.

The following example is manifestly inconsistent with itself; and, in my

opinion, the three possessives are all wrong: "The kitchen too now begins

to give 'dreadful note of preparation;' not from \_armourers\_ accomplishing

the knights, but from the \_shop maid's\_ chopping \_force meat\_, the

\_apprentice's\_ cleaning knives, and the \_journeyman's\_ receiving a

practical lesson in the art of waiting at table."--\_West's Letters to a

Lady\_, p. 66. It should be--"not from \_armorers\_ accomplishing the knights,

but from the \_shopmaid\_ chopping \_forcemeat\_, the \_apprentice\_ cleaning

knives, and the \_journeyman\_ receiving," &c. The nouns are the principal

words, and the participles are adjuncts. They might be separated by commas,

if semicolons were put where the commas now are.

OBS. 30.--Our authors, good and bad, critics and no critics, with few

exceptions, write sometimes the objective case before the participle, and

sometimes the possessive, under precisely the same circumstances; as, "We

should, presently, be sensible of the \_melody\_ suffering."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 122. "We should, presently, be sensible of the \_melody's\_

suffering."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 327. "We \_shall\_ presently be

sensible of the \_melody\_ suffering."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, 8vo, p. 60. "We

shall presently be sensible of the \_melody's\_ suffering."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 195. "And I explain what is meant by the nominative \_case

governing\_ the verb, and by the \_verb agreeing\_ with its nominative

case."--\_Rand's Gram.\_, p. 31. "Take the verb \_study\_, and speak of \_John's

studying\_ his lesson, at different times."--\_Ib.\_, p. 53. "The following

are examples of the nominative \_case being used\_ instead of the

objective."--\_J. M. Putnam's Gram.\_, p. 112. "The following are examples of

an \_adverb's qualifying\_ a whole sentence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 128. "Where the noun

is the name of a \_person\_, the cases may also be distinguished by the

\_nominative's\_ answering to WHO, and the \_objective\_ to WHOM."--\_Hart's

Gram.\_, p. 46. "This depends chiefly on \_their\_ being more or less

emphatic; and on the vowel \_sound\_ being long or short."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 182. "When they speak of a \_monosyllable\_ having the grave or

the acute accent."--\_Walker's Key\_, p. 328. Here some would erroneously

prefer the possessive case before "\_having\_;" but, if any amendment can be

effected it is only by inserting \_as\_ there. "The \_event of Maria's loving\_

her brother."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 55. "Between that and the \_man

being\_ on it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59. "The fact of \_James placing\_

himself."--\_Ib.\_, p. 166. "The event of the \_persons' going\_."--\_Ib.\_, p.

165. Here \_persons'\_ is carelessly put for \_person's\_, i.e., \_James's\_: the

author was \_parsing\_ the puerile text, "James went into a store and placed

himself beside Horatio."--\_Ib.\_, p. 164. And I may observe, in passing,

that Murray and Blair are both wrong in using commas with the adverb

\_presently\_ above.

OBS. 31.--It would be easy to fill a page with instances of these two

cases, the objective and the possessive, used, as I may say,

indiscriminately; nor is there any other principle by which we can

determine which of them is right, or which preferable, than that the

leading word in sense ought not to be made the adjunct in the construction,

and that the participle, if it remain such, ought rather to relate to its

noun, as being the adjunct, than to govern it in the possessive, as being

the principal term. To what extent either of these cases may properly be

used before the participle, or in what instances either of them may be

preferable to the other, it is not very easy to determine. Both are used a

great deal too often, filling with blemishes the style of many authors: the

possessive, because the participle is not the name of any thing that can be

possessed; the objective, because no construction can be right in which the

relation of the terms is not formed according to the sense. The former

usage I have already criticised to a great extent. Let one example suffice

here: "There can be no objection to a \_syllable's being long\_, on the

ground of \_its not being so long\_, or so much protracted, as some other

long syllables are."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 242. Some would here prefer

\_syllable\_ to \_syllable's\_, but none would be apt to put \_it\_ for \_its\_,

without some other change. The sentence may be amended thus: "There can be

no objection to a \_syllable as being long\_, on the ground \_that it is not

so long\_ as some other syllables."

OBS. 32.--It should be observed, that the use of \_as\_ between the

participle and the noun is \_very often\_ better than either the adoption of

the possessive sign, or the immediate connexion of the two words; as,

"Another point constantly brought into the investigation now, is that of

military \_success as forming\_ a claim to civil position."--\_Boston Daily

Advertiser\_. Concerning examples like the following, it may be questioned,

whether the objective is proper or not; whether the possessive would be

preferable or not; or whether a better construction than either may not be

found: "There is scarce an instance of any \_one being chosen\_ for a

pattern."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 338. "Instead of its

\_authenticity being shaken\_, it has been rendered more sure than ever."--

\_West's Letters\_, p. 197. "When there is no longer a possibility of a

proper \_candidate being nominated\_ by either party."--\_Liberator\_, Vol. x.

p. 9. "On the first \_stone being thrown\_, it was returned by a fire of

musketry."--\_Ib.\_, p. 16. "To raise a cry about an innocent \_person being

circumvented\_ by bribery."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 276. "Whose principles

forbid \_them taking\_ part in the administration of the government."--

\_Liberator\_, Vol. x, p. 15. "It can have no other ground than some such

imagination, as that of our gross \_bodies being\_ ourselves."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 150. "In consequence of this \_revelation being made\_."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 162. If such relations between the participle and the objective be

disapproved, the substitution of the possessive case is liable to still

stronger objections; but both may be avoided, by the use of the nominative

or otherwise: thus, "\_Scarcely is\_ any one \_ever\_ chosen for a pattern."--

"\_Its authenticity, in stead of being shaken\_, has been rendered more sure

than ever."--"When there is no longer a possibility \_that\_ a proper

candidate \_will be\_ nominated by either party."--"\_As soon as\_ the first

stone \_was\_ thrown, \_there\_ was returned a fire of musketry."--"To raise a

cry, \_as if\_ an innocent person \_had been\_ circumvented by bribery."--

"Whose principles forbid them \_to take\_ part in the administration of the

government."--"It can have no other ground than some such imagination, as

that our gross bodies \_are\_ ourselves."--"In consequence of this revelation

\_which is\_ made."

OBS. 33.--A recent grammarian quotes Dr. Crombie thus: "Some \_late writers\_

have discarded a phraseology which appears unobjectionable, and substituted

one that seems less correct; and instead of saying, 'Lady \_Macbeth's\_

walking in her sleep is an incident full of tragic horror,' would say,

'Lady \_Macbeth\_ walking in her sleep is an incident full of tragic horror.'

This seems to me an idle affectation of the Latin idiom, less precise than

the common mode of expression, and less consonant with the genius of our

language; for, ask what was an incident full of tragic horror, and,

according to this phraseology, the answer must be, \_Lady Macbeth\_; whereas

the meaning is, not that \_Lady Macbeth\_, but her \_walking in her sleep\_, is

an incident full of tragic horror. This phraseology also, in many

instances, conveys not the intended idea; for, as Priestley remarks, if it

is said, 'What think you of my \_horse's running\_ to-day?' it is implied

that the horse did actually run. If it is said, 'What think you of my

\_horse running\_ to-day?' it is intended to ask whether it be proper for my

horse to run to-day. This distinction, though frequently neglected,

deserves attention; for it is obvious that ambiguity may arise from using

the latter only of these phraseologies to express both meanings."--

\_Maunder's Compendious Eng. Gram.\_, p. 15. (See \_Crombie's Treatise\_, p.

288-290.) To this, before any comment is offered, let me add an other

quotation: "RULE. \_A noun before the present participle is put in the

possessive case\_; as, Much will depend on the \_pupil's composing\_

frequently. Sometimes, however, the sense forbids it to be put in the

possessive case; thus, What do you think of my \_horse running\_ to-day?

means, Do you think I should let him run? but, What do you think of my

\_horse's running\_? means, he \_has\_ run, do you think he ran well?"--

\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 91; \_Brace's Gram.\_, 94. See \_Bullions's Gram.\_, p.

107; \_Hiley's\_, 94; \_Murray's\_, 8vo. 195: \_Ingersoll's\_, 201: and many

others.

OBS. 34.--Any phraseology that conveys not the intended idea, or that

involves such an absurdity as that of calling a lady an "incident" is

doubtless sufficiently reprehensible; but, compared with a rule of grammar

so ill-devised as to mislead the learner nine times in ten, an occasional

ambiguity or solecism is a mere trifle. The word \_walking\_, preceded by a

possessive and followed by a preposition, as above, is clearly a \_noun\_,

and not a participle; but these authors probably intend to justify the use

of possessives before \_participles\_, and even to hold all phraseology of

this kind "unobjectionable." If such is not their design, they write as

badly as they reason; and if it is, their doctrine is both false and

inconsistent. That a verbal noun may govern the possessive case, is

certainly no proof that a participle may do so too; and, if these parts of

speech are to be kept distinct the latter position must be disallowed: each

must "abide by its own construction," as says Lowth. But the practice which

these authors speak of, as an innovation of "some late writers," and "an

idle affectation of the Latin idiom," is in fact a practice as different

from the blunder which they quote, or feign, as their just correction of

that blunder is different from the thousand errors or irregularities which

they intend to shelter under it. To call a lady an "incident," is just as

far from any Latin idiom, as it is from good English; whereas the very

thing which they thus object to at first, they afterwards approve in this

text: "What think you of my \_horse running\_ to-day?" This phraseology

corresponds with "\_the Latin idiom\_;" and it is this, that, in fact, they

begin with pronouncing to be "less correct" than, "What think you of my

\_horse's running\_ to-day?"

OBS. 35.--Between these expressions, too, they pretend to fix a distinction

of signification; as, if "the \_horse's running\_ to-day," must needs imply a

past action, though, (they suppose,) "the \_pupil's composing\_ frequently,"

or, "the \_horse running\_ to-day," signifies a \_future\_ one. This

distinction of time is altogether \_imaginary\_; and the notion, that to

prefer the possessive case before participles, is merely to withstand an

error of "\_some late writers\_," is altogether false. The instructions above

cited, therefore, determine nothing rightly, except the inaccuracy of one

very uncommon form of expression. For, according to our best grammarians,

the simple mode of correction there adopted will scarcely be found

applicable to any other text. It will not be right where the participle

happens to be transitive, or even where it is qualified by an adverb. From

their subsequent examples, it is plain that these gentlemen think

otherwise; but still, who can understand what they mean by "\_the common

mode of expression\_?" What, for instance, would they substitute for the

following very inaccurate expression from the critical belles-lettres of

Dr. Blair? "A \_mother accusing\_ her son, and \_accusing\_ him of such

actions, \_as having\_ first \_bribed\_ judges to condemn her husband, and

\_having\_ afterwards \_poisoned\_ him, \_were circumstances\_ that naturally

raised strong prejudices against Cicero's client."--\_Blair's Lectures\_, p.

274. Would they say. "A \_mother's accusing her son\_, &c., \_were

circumstances\_," &c.? Is this their "common mode of expression?" and if it

is, do they not make "common" what is no better English than the Doctor's?

If, to accuse a son, and to accuse him greatly, can be considered different

circumstances of the same prosecution, the sentence may be corrected thus:

"A \_mother's\_ accusing \_of\_ her son, and \_her charging of\_ him \_with\_ such

actions, as \_those of\_ having first bribed judges to condemn her husband,

and having afterwards poisoned him, were circumstances that naturally

raised strong prejudices against Cicero's client."

OBS. 36.--On several occasions, as in the tenth and twelfth observations on

Rule 4th, and in certain parts of the present series, some notice has been

taken of the equivalence or difference of meaning, real or supposed,

between the construction of the possessive, and that of an other case,

before the participle; or between the participial and the substantive use

of words in \_ing\_. Dr. Priestley, to whom, as well as to Dr. Lowth, most of

our grammarians are indebted for some of their doctrines respecting this

sort of derivatives, pretends to distinguish them, both as constituting

different parts of speech, and as conveying different meanings. In one

place, he says, "When a word ending in \_ing\_ is preceded by an article, it

seems to be used as a \_noun\_; and therefore \_ought not to govern an other

word\_, without the intervention of a preposition."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

157. And in an other: "Many nouns are derived from verbs, and end in \_ing\_,

like participles of the present tense. The difference between these nouns

and participles is often overlooked, and the accurate distinction of the

two senses not attended to. If I say, What think you of my \_horse's

running\_ to-day, I use the NOUN \_running\_, and suppose the horse to have

actually run; for it is the same thing as if I had said, What think you of

\_the running of\_ my horse. But if I say, What think you of my \_horse

running\_ to-day, I use the PARTICIPLE, and I mean to ask, whether it be

proper that my horse should run or not: which, therefore, supposes that he

had not then run."--\_Ib.\_, p. 122. Whatever our other critics say about the

\_horse running\_ or the \_horse's running\_, they have in general borrowed

from Priestley, with whom the remark originated, as it here stands. It

appears that Crombie, Murray, Maunder, Lennie, Bullions, Ingersoll,

Barnard, Hiley, and others, approve the doctrine thus taught, or at least

some part of it; though some of them, if not all, thereby contradict

themselves.

ODS. 37.--By the two examples here contrasted, Priestley designed to

establish a distinction, not for these texts only, but for \_all similar

expressions\_--a distinction both of the noun from the participle, and of

the different senses which he supposed these two constructions to exhibit.

In all this, there is a complete failure. Yet with what remarkable

ductility and implicitness do other professed critics take for granted what

this superficial philologer so hastily prescribes! By acknowledging with

reference to such an application of them, that the two constructions above

are both \_good English\_, our grammarians do but the more puzzle their

disciples respecting the choice between them; just as Priestley himself was

puzzled, when he said, "So we \_may either say\_, I remember \_it being

reckoned\_, a great exploit; or, \_perhaps more elegantly\_, I remember \_its

being reckoned\_, &c."--\_Gram.\_, p. 70. Murray and others omit this

"\_perhaps\_," and while they allow both forms to be good, decidedly prefer

the latter; but neither Priestley, nor any of the rest, ever pretended to

discern in these a difference of signification, or even of parts of speech.

For my part, in stead of approving either of these readings about the

"\_great exploit\_," I have rejected both, for reasons which have already

been given; and now as to the first two forms of the \_horserace question\_,

so far as they may strictly be taken for models, I cannot but condemn them

also, and for the same reasons: to which reasons may be joined the

additional one, that neither expression is well adapted to the sense which

the author himself gives to it in his interpretation. If the Doctor

designed to ask, "Do you think my horse ran well to-day?" or, "Do you think

it proper for my horse to run to-day?" he ought to have used one or the

other of these unequivocal and unobjectionable expressions. There is in

fact between the others, no such difference of meaning as he imagines; nor

does he well distinguish "the NOUN \_running\_" from the PARTICIPLE

\_runnning\_; because he apparently allows the word, in both instances, to be

qualified by the adverb \_to-day\_.[422]

OBS. 38.--It is clear, that the participle in \_ing\_ partakes sometimes the

nature of its verb and \_an adjective\_; so that it relates to a noun, like

an adjective, and yet implies time, and, if transitive, governs an object,

like a verb: as, "Horses \_running\_ a race." Hence, by dropping what here

distinguishes it as a participle, the word may become an adjective, and

stand before its noun; as, "A \_running\_ brook." So, too, this participle

sometimes partakes the nature of its verb and \_a noun\_; so that it may be

governed by a preposition, like a noun, though in itself it has no cases or

numbers, but is indeclinable: as "In \_running\_ a race." Hence, again, by

dropping what distinguishes it as a participle, it may become a noun; as,

"\_Running\_ is a safer sport than \_wrestling\_." Now, if to a participle we

prefix something which makes it an adjective, we also take away its

regimen, by inserting a preposition; as, "A doctrine \_un\_deserving \_of\_

praise,"--"A man \_un\_compromising \_in\_ his principles." So, if we put

before it an article, an adjective, or a possessive, and thus give to the

participle a substantive character or relation, there is reason to think,

that we ought, in like manner, to take away its regimen, and its adverb

too, if it have any, and be careful also to distinguish this noun from the

participial adjective; as, "\_The\_ running \_of\_ a race,"--"\_No\_ racing \_of\_

horses,"--"\_Your\_ deserving \_of\_ praise."--"A \_man's\_ compromising \_of\_ his

principles." With respect to the articles, or any adjectives, it seems now

to be generally conceded, that these are signs of \_substantives\_; and that,

if added to participles, they must cause them to be taken, in all respects,

\_substantively\_. But with respect to possessives before participles, the

common practice of our writers very extensively indulges the mixed

construction of which I have said so much, and concerning the propriety of

which, the opinions of our grammarians are so various, so confused, and so

self-contradictory.

OBS. 39.--Though the participle with a nominative or an objective before

it, is not \_in general\_, equivalent to the verbal noun or the mixed

participle with a possessive before it; and though the significations of

the two phrases are often so widely different as to make it palpably absurd

to put either for the other; yet the instances are not few in which it

makes little or no difference \_to the sense\_, which of the two forms we

prefer, and therefore, in these instances, I would certainly choose the

more simple and regular construction; or, where a better than either can

readily be found, reject both. It is also proper to have some regard to the

structure of other languages, and to the analogy of General Grammar. If

there be "some late writers" who are chargeable with "an idle affectation

of the Latin idiom," there are perhaps more who as idly affect what they

suppose "consonant with the genius of our language." I allude to those who

would prefer the possessive case in a text like the following: "Wherefore

is this noise of the \_city being\_ in an uproar?"'--\_1 Kings\_, i, 41. "Quid

sibi vult clamor civitatis tumultuantis?"--\_Vulgate\_. "[Greek: \_Gis hæ

phonæ tæs poleos æchousæs\_];"--\_Septuagint\_. Literally: "What [\_means\_] the

clamour of the \_city resounding\_?" "Que veut dire ce bruit de la ville qui

est ainsi émue?"--\_French Bible\_. Literally: "What means this noise of the

\_city which is so moved\_?" Better English: "What means this noise \_with

which the city rings\_?" In the following example, there is a seeming

imitation of the foregoing Latin or Greek construction; but it may well be

doubted whether it would be any improvement to put the word "\_disciples\_"

in the possessive case; nor is it easy to find a third form which would be

better than these: "Their difficulties will not be increased by the

intended \_disciples having ever resided\_ in a Christian country."--\_West's

Letters\_, p. 119.

OBS. 40.--It may be observed of these different relations between

participles and other words, that \_nouns\_ are much more apt to be put in

the nominative or the objective case, than are \_pronouns\_. For example:

"There is no more of moral principle in the way of \_abolitionists

nominating\_ their own candidates, than in that of \_their voting\_ for those

nominated by others."--GERRIT SMITH: \_Liberator\_, Vol. X, p. 17. Indeed, a

pronoun of the nominative or the objective case is hardly ever used in such

a relation, unless it be so obviously the leading word in sense, as to

preclude all question about the construction.[423] And this fact seems to

make it the more doubtful, whether it be proper to use nouns in that

manner. But it may safely be held, that if the noun can well be considered

the leading word in sense, we are at least under no \_necessity\_ of

subjecting it to the government of a mere participle. If it be thought

desirable to vary the foregoing example, it may easily be done, thus:

"There is no more of moral principle \_to prevent abolitionists\_ from

nominating their own candidates, than \_to prevent them from\_ voting for

those nominated by others." The following example is much like the

preceding, but less justifiable: "We see comfort, security, strength,

pleasure, wealth, and prosperity, all flowing from \_men combining

together\_; and misery, weakness, and poverty, ensuing from \_their acting

separately\_ or in opposition to each other."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 133. Say

rather,--"from \_men's combining-together\_," or, "from \_the just combination

of men in society\_;" and,--"from their \_separate action\_, or \_their\_

opposition to \_one an other\_." Take an other example: "If \_illorum\_ be

governed here of \_negotii\_, it must be in this order, \_gratia negotii

illorum videndi\_; and this is, for the sake of their \_business\_ being seen,

and not, for the sake of \_them\_ being seen."--\_Johnson's Grammatical

Commentaries\_, p. 352. Here the learned critic, in disputing Perizonius's

resolution of the phrase, "\_illorum videndi gratiâ\_" has written disputable

English. But, had he \_affected the Latin idiom\_, a nearer imitation of it

would have been,--"for the sake of their \_business's being seen\_, and not

for the sake of \_their being seen\_." Or nearer still,--"for the sake of

\_seeing of their business\_, and not, for the sake of \_seeing of them\_." An

elegant writer would be apt to avoid all these forms, and say,--"for the

sake of \_seeing their business\_;" and,--"\_for the sake of seeing them\_;"

though the former phrase, being but a version of bad Latin, makes no very

good sense in any way.

OBS. 41.--Idioms, or peculiarities of expression, are never to be approved

or valued, but according to their convenience, utility, or elegance. By

this rule, some phrases that are not positively barbarous, may yet be

ungrammatical, and a construction that is sometimes allowable, may yet be

quite unworthy to be made or reckoned, "the common mode of expression."

Thus, in Latin, the infinitive verb is occasionally put for a noun, and

taken to signify a property possessed; as, "\_Tuum scire\_, [thy to know,]

the same as \_tua scientia\_, thy knowledge. Pers."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 153.

So, in English, the participle in \_ing\_ is often taken substantively, when

it does not actually become a substantive or noun; as, "Thy \_knowing\_

this,"--"Our \_doing\_ so."--\_West\_. Such forms of speech, because they are

idiomatical, seldom admit of any literal translation, and are never

naturalized by any transfer from one language or dialect into an other; nor

is it proper for grammarians to justify them, in vernacular speech, except

as figures or anomalies that ought not to be generally imitated. It cannot

be truly affirmed, that the genius of our language ever requires that

participles, as such, should assume the relations of a noun, or govern the

possessive case; nor, on the other hand, can it be truly denied, that very

excellent and learned writers do sometimes make use of such phraseology.

Without disrespect to the many users and approvers of these anomalies, I

set down for bad English every mixed construction of the participle, for

which the language can furnish an equivalent expression that is more simple

and more elegant. The extent to which these comparative barbarisms now

abound in English books, and the ridiculous fondness for them, which has

been shown by some writers on English grammar, in stead of amounting to any

argument in their favour, are in fact, plain proofs of the necessity of an

endeavour to arrest so obvious and so pernicious an innovation.

OBS. 42.--A late author observes as follows: "That the English gerund,

participle, or verbal noun, in \_ing\_, has both an active and a passive

signification, there can be little doubt.[424] Whether the Latin gerund has

precisely a similar import, or whether it is only active, it may be

difficult, and, indeed, after all, it is not of much moment, to

ascertain."--\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 234. The gerund in Latin most

commonly governs the case of its own verb, as does the active participle,

both in Latin and English: as, "Efferor studio \_patres vestros videndi\_.

Cic. de sen. 23."--\_Lily's Gram.\_, p. 96. That is, "I am transported, with

a desire of \_seeing your fathers\_." But sometimes we find the gerund taken

substantively and made to govern the genitive. Or,--to adopt the language

of an old grammarian:--"Interdum \_non invenustè\_ additur gerundiis in \_di\_

etiam genitivus pluralis: ut, 'Quum \_illorum videndi\_ gratiâ me in forum

contulissem.'--'\_Novarum\_ [qui] \_spectandi\_ faciunt copiam.' Ter. Heaut.

prol. 29."--\_Lily's Gram.\_, p. 97. That is, "To gerunds in \_di\_ there is

sometimes \_not inelegantly\_ added a genitive plural: as, 'When, for the

sake \_of seeing of them\_, I went into the forum.'--'Who present an

opportunity of \_attending of new ones\_:' i.e., new comedies." Here the \_of\_

which is inserted after the participle to mark the genitive case which is

added, forms rather an error than an elegance, though some English writers

do now and then adopt this idiom. The gerund thus governing the genitive,

is not analogous to our participle governing the possessive; because this

genitive stands, not for \_the subject\_ of the being or action, but for what

would otherwise be \_the object\_ of the gerund, or of the participle, as may

be seen above. The objection to the participle as governing the possessive,

is, that it retains its object or its adverb; for when it does not, it

becomes fairly a noun, and the objection is removed. R. Johnson, like many

others, erroneously thinks it a noun, even when it governs an objective,

and has merely a preposition before it; as, "For the sake \_of seeing them\_.

Where \_seeing\_ (says he) is a Substantive."--\_Gram. Com.\_, p. 353.

OBS. 43.--If the Latin gerund were made to govern the genitive of the

\_agent\_, and allowed at the same time to retain its government as a gerund,

it would then correspond in every thing but declension, to the English

participle when made to govern both the possessive case and the objective.

But I have before observed that no such analogy appears. The following

example has been quoted by Seyer, as a proof that the gerund may govern the

genitive of the agent: "\_Cujus autem in dicendo aliquid reprehensum

est\_--Cic."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 236. That is, (as I understand it,)

"But in \_whose speaking\_ something is reprehended." This seems to me a case

in point; though Crombie and Grant will not allow it to be so. But a single

example is not sufficient. If the doctrine is true, there must be others.

In this solitary instance, it would be easier to doubt the accuracy even of

Cicero, than to approve the notion of these two critics, that \_cujus\_ is

here governed by \_aliquid\_, and not by the gerund. "Here," says Grant, "I

am inclined to concur in opinion with Dr. Crombie, whose words I take the

liberty to use, 'That, \_for the sake of euphony\_, the gerund is sometimes

found governing the genitive of the patient, or \_subject\_ [say \_object\_] of

the action, is unquestionable: thus, \_studio videndi patrum vestrorum\_.

[That is, literally, \_By a desire of seeing of your fathers\_.] But I

recollect no example, where the gerund is joined with a possessive

adjective, or genitive of a noun substantive, where the person is not the

patient, but the agent; as, \_dicendum meum, ejus dicendum, cujus dicendum\_.

[That is, \_my speaking, his speaking, whose speaking\_.] In truth, these

phraseologies appear to me, not only repugnant to the idiom of the

language, but also unfavourable to precision and perspicuity.'"--\_Grant's

Latin Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 236.

OBS. 44.--Of that particular distinction between the participle and the

participial noun, which depends on the insertion or omission of the article

and the preposition \_of\_, a recent grammarian of considerable merit adopts

the following views: "This double nature of the participle has led to much

irregularity in its use. Thus we find, 'indulging which,' 'indulging \_of\_

which,' '\_the\_ indulging which,' and '\_the\_ indulging \_of\_ which,' used

indiscriminately. Lowth very properly instructs us, either to use both the

article and the preposition with the participle; as, '\_the\_ indulging \_of\_

which:' or to reject both; as, 'indulging which:' thus keeping the verbal

and substantive forms distinct. But he is wrong, as Dr. Crombie justly

remarks, in considering these two modes of expression as perfectly similar.

Suppose I am told, 'Bloomfield spoke warmly of the pleasure he had \_in

hearing\_ Fawcet:' I understand at once, that the eloquence of Fawcet gave

Bloomfield great pleasure. But were it said, 'Bloomfield spoke warmly of

the pleasure he had \_in the hearing of\_ Fawcet:' I should be led to

conclude merely that the orator was within hearing, when the poet spoke of

the pleasure he felt from something, about which I have no information.

Accordingly Dr. Crombie suggests as a general rule, conducive at least to

perspicuity, and perhaps to elegance; that, when the noun connected with

the participle is active, or doing something, the article should be

inserted before the participle, and the preposition after it; and, when the

noun is passive, or represents the object of an action, both the article

and the preposition should be omitted:[425] agreeably to the examples just

adduced. It is true, that when the noun following the participle denotes

something incapable of the action the participle expresses, no mistake can

arise \_from using\_ either form: as, 'The middle condition seems to be the

most advantageously situate for \_the gaining of\_ wisdom. Poverty turns our

thoughts too much upon \_the supplying of\_ our wants; and riches, upon

\_enjoying\_ our superfluities.' \_Addison, Spect.\_, 464. Yet I cannot think

it by any means a commendable practice, thus to jumble together different

forms; and indeed it is certainly better, as \_the two modes of expression

have different significations\_, to confine each to its distinct and proper

use, agreeably to Dr. Crombie's rule, even when no mistake could arise

\_from interchanging\_ them."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 319.

OBS. 45.--The two modes of expression which these grammarians would thus

apply constantly to different uses, on the supposition that they have

always different significations, \_are the same\_ that Lindley Murray and his

copyists suppose to be \_generally equivalent\_, and concerning which it is

merely admitted by the latter, that they do "\_not in every instance\_ convey

the same meaning." (See Obs. 27th above.) If Dr. Lowth considered them "as

\_perfectly similar\_," he was undoubtedly very wrong in this matter: though

not more so than these gentlemen, who resolve to interpret them as being

perfectly and constantly dissimilar. Dr. Adam says, "There are, both in

Latin and [in] English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much

resemble the Gerund in their signification, that \_frequently\_ they may be

substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more

undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English, have the article

\_always\_[426] prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, \_Detector legendo

Ciceronem\_, I am delighted \_with reading\_ Cicero. But with the substantive,

\_Delector lectione Ciceronis\_, I am delighted with \_the reading of\_

Cicero."--\_Lat. and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 142. "Gerunds are so called because

they, as it were, signify the thing \_in gerendo\_, (anciently written

\_gerundo\_,) \_in doing\_; and, along with the action, convey an idea of the

agent."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 70; \_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 353. "\_The

reading of Cicero\_," does not necessarily signify an action of which Cicero

is the \_agent\_, as Crombie, Churchill, and Hiley choose to expound it; and,

since the gerundive construction of words in \_ing\_ ought to have a definite

reference to the agent or subject of the action or being, one may perhaps

amend even some of their own phraseology above, by preferring the

participial noun: as, "No mistake can arise \_from the using of\_ either

form."--"And riches [turn our thoughts too much] \_upon the enjoying of\_ our

superfluities."--"Even when no mistake could arise \_from the interchanging

of\_ them." Where the agent of the action plainly appears, the gerundive

form is to be preferred on account of its brevity; as, "By \_the\_ observing

\_of\_ truth, you will command respect;" or, "By \_observing\_ truth,

&c."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 189. Here the latter phraseology is greatly

preferable, though this author did not perceive it. "I thought nothing was

to be done by me before \_the giving of\_ you thanks."--\_Walker's Particles\_,

p. 63. Say,--"before \_giving\_ you thanks;" for otherwise the word \_thanks\_

has no proper construction, the pronoun alone being governed by \_of\_--and

here again is an error; for "\_you\_" ought to be the object of \_to\_.

OBS. 46.--In Hiley's Treatise, a work far more comprehensive than the

generality of grammars, "the \_established principles\_ and \_best usages\_ of

the English" Participle are so adroitly summed up, as to occupy only two

pages, one in Etymology, and an other in Syntax. The author shows how the

participle differs from a verb, and how from an adjective; yet he neither

makes it a separate part of speech, nor tells us with what other it ought

to be included. In lieu of a general rule for the parsing of \_all

participles\_, he presents the remark, "Active transitive participles, like

their verbs, govern the objective case; as, 'I am desirous of \_hearing

him\_;' '\_Having praised them\_, he sat down.'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 93. This

is a rule by which one may parse the \_few objectives\_ which are governed by

participles; but, for the usual construction of \_participles themselves\_,

it is no rule at all; neither does the grammar, full as it is, contain any.

"\_Hearing\_" is here governed by \_of\_, and "\_Having praised\_" relates to

\_he\_; but this author teaches neither of these facts, and the former he

expressly contradicts by his false definition of a preposition. In his

first note, is exhibited, in two parts, the false and ill-written rule

which Churchill quotes from Crombie. (1.) "When the noun, \_connected with

the participle\_, is \_active or doing\_ something, the \_participle must have\_

an article before it, and the preposition \_of\_ after it; as, 'In \_the

hearing of\_ the philosopher;' or, 'In the philosopher's \_hearing\_;' 'By

\_the preaching of\_ Christ;' or, 'By Christ's \_preaching\_.' In these

instances," says Hiley, "the words \_hearing\_ and \_preaching\_ are

\_substantives\_." If so, he ought to have corrected this rule, which twice

calls them \_participles\_; but, in stead of doing that, he blindly adds, by

way of alternative, two examples which expressly contradict what the rule

asserts. (2.) "But when the noun represents the \_object\_ of an \_action\_,

the article and the preposition \_of\_ must be \_omitted\_; as, 'In \_hearing\_

the philosopher.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 94. If this principle is right, my second

note below, and most of the corrections under it, are wrong. But I am

persuaded that the adopters of this rule did not observe how common is the

phraseology which it condemns; as, "For if \_the casting-away of them\_ be

\_the reconciling of the world\_, what shall \_the receiving of them\_ be, but

life from the dead?"--\_Rom.\_, xi, 15. Finally, this author rejects the \_of\_

which most critics insert when a possessive precedes the verbal noun;

justifies and prefers the mixed or double construction of the participle;

and, consequently, neither wishes nor attempts to distinguish the

participle from the verbal noun. Yet he does not fail to repeat, with some

additional inaccuracy, the notion, that, "What do you think of my \_horse's

running\_? is different \_to\_ [say \_from\_,] What do you think of my \_horse

running\_?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 94.

OBS. 47.--That English books in general, and the style of even our best

writers, should seldom be found exempt from errors in the construction of

participles, will not be thought wonderful, when we consider the

multiplicity of uses to which words of this sort are put, and the strange

inconsistencies into which all our grammarians have fallen in treating this

part of syntax. It is useless, and worse than useless, to teach for grammar

any thing that is not true; and no doctrine can be true of which one part

palpably oversets an other. What has been taught on the present topic, has

led me into a multitude of critical remarks, designed both for the

refutation of the principles which I reject, and for the elucidation and

defence of those which are presently to be summed up in notes, or special

rules, for the correction of false syntax. If my decisions do not agree

with the teaching of our common grammarians, it is chiefly because these

authors contradict themselves. Of this sort of teaching I shall here offer

but one example more, and then bring these strictures to a close: "When

present participles are preceded by an article, or pronoun adjective, they

become nouns, and must not be followed by objective pronouns, or nouns

without a preposition; as, \_the reading of many books wastes the health\_.

But such nouns, like all others, may be used without an article, being

sufficiently discovered by the following preposition; as, \_he was sent to

prepare the way, by preaching of repentance\_. Also an article, or pronoun

adjective, may precede a clause, used as a noun, and commencing with a

participle; as, \_his teaching children was necessary\_."--\_Dr. Wilson's

Syllabus of English Gram.\_, p. xxx. Here the last position of the learned

doctor, if it be true, completely annuls the first; or, if the first be

true, the last must needs be false, And, according to Lowth, L. Murray, and

many others, the second is as bad as either. The bishop says, concerning

this very example, that by the use of the preposition \_of\_ after the

participle \_preaching\_, "the phrase is rendered \_obscure\_ and \_ambiguous\_:

for the obvious meaning of it, in its present form, is, 'by preaching

\_concerning\_ repentance, or on that subject;' whereas the sense intended

is, 'by publishing the covenant of repentance, and declaring repentance to

be a condition of acceptance with God.'"--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 82. "It ought

to be, 'by \_the\_ preaching \_of\_ repentance;' or, by \_preaching\_

repentance."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 193.

NOTES TO RULE XX.

NOTE I.--Active participles have the same government as the verbs from

which they are derived; the preposition \_of\_, therefore, should never be

used after the participle, when the verb does not require it. Thus, in

phrases like the following, \_of\_ is improper: "Keeping \_of\_ one day in

seven;"--"By preaching \_of\_ repentance;"--"They left beating \_of\_ Paul."

NOTE II.--When a transitive participle is converted into a noun, \_of\_ must

be inserted to govern the object following; as, "So that there was \_no

withstanding of\_ him."--\_Walker's Particles\_. p. 252. "The cause of their

salvation doth not so much arise from \_their embracing of\_ mercy, as from

\_God's exercising of\_ it"--\_Penington's Works\_, Vol. ii, p. 91. "Faith is

\_the receiving of\_ Christ with the whole soul."--\_Baxter\_. "In \_thy

pouring-out of\_ thy fury upon Jerusalem."--\_Ezekiel\_, ix, 8.

NOTE III.--When the insertion of the word \_of\_, to complete the conversion

of the transitive participle into a noun, produces ambiguity or harshness,

some better phraseology must be chosen. Example: "Because the action took

\_place prior to the taking place of\_ the other past action."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 140. Here the words \_prior\_ and \_place\_ have no regular

construction; and if we say, "\_prior\_ to the taking \_of place of\_ the

other," we make the jumble still worse. Say therefore, "Because the action

took place \_before\_ the other past action;"--or, "Because the action took

place \_previously\_ to the other past action."

NOTE IV.--When participles become nouns, their adverbs should either become

adjectives, or be taken as parts of such nouns, written as compound words:

or, if neither of these methods be agreeable, a greater change should be

made. Examples of error: 1. "\_Rightly\_ understanding a sentence, depends

very much on a knowledge of its grammatical construction."--\_Comly's

Gram.\_, 12th Ed., p. 8. Say, "\_The right\_ understanding \_of\_ a sentence,"

&c. 2. "Elopement is a running \_away\_, or private departure."--\_Webster's

El. Spelling-Book\_. p. 102. Write "\_running-away\_" as one word. 3. "If they

[Milton's descriptions] have any \_faults\_, it is their \_alluding too

frequently\_ to matters of learning, and to fables of antiquity."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 451. Say, "If they have any \_fault\_, it is \_that they allude\_

too frequently," &c.

NOTE V.--When the participle is followed by an adjective, its conversion

into a noun appears to be improper; because the construction of the

adjective becomes anomalous, and its relation doubtful: as, "When we speak

of \_'ambition's being restless\_' or, \_'a disease's being

deceitful\_.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 346; \_Kirkham's\_, p. 224. This

ought to be, "When we speak of \_ambition as\_ being restless, or a \_disease

as\_ being deceitful;" but Dr. Blair, from whom the text originally came,

appears to have written it thus: "When we speak of \_ambition's\_ being

restless, or a \_disease\_ being deceitful."--LECT. xvi, p. 155. This is

\_inconsistent with itself\_; for one noun is possessive, and the other,

objective. NOTE VI.--When a compound participle is converted into a noun,

the hyphen seems to be necessary, to prevent ambiguity; but such compound

nouns are never elegant, and it is in general better to avoid them, by some

change in the expression. Example: "Even as \_the being healed\_ of a wound,

presupposeth the plaster or salve: but not, on the contrary; for the

application of the plaster presupposeth not \_the being healed\_."--\_Barclays

Works\_, Vol. i, p. 143. The phrase, "\_the being healed\_" ought to mean

only, \_the creature healed\_; and not, \_the being-healed\_, or \_the healing

received\_, which is what the writer intended. But the simple word \_healing\_

might have been used in the latter sense; for, in participial nouns, the

distinction of \_voice\_ and of \_tense\_ are commonly disregarded.

NOTE VII.--A participle should not be used where the infinitive mood, the

verbal noun, a common substantive, or a phrase equivalent, will better

express the meaning. Examples: 1. "But \_placing\_ an accent on the second

syllable of these words, would entirely derange them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

Vol. i, p. 239. Say rather, "But, \_to place\_ an accent--But \_the\_ placing

\_of\_ an accent--or, But an \_accent placed\_ on the second syllable of these

words, would entirely derange them." 2. "To require \_their being\_ in that

case."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 21. Say, "To require \_them\_ to be in that case."

3. "She regrets not having read it."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 216. Say, "She

regrets \_that she has not\_ read it." Or, "She \_does not regret that she

has\_ read it." For the text is equivocal, and admits either of these

senses.

NOTE VIII.--A participle used for a nominative after \_be, is, was\_, &c.,

produces a construction which is more naturally understood to be a compound

form of the verb; and which is therefore not well adapted to the sense

intended, when one tells what something is, was, or may be. Examples: 1.

"Whose business \_is shoeing\_ animals."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 365.

Say, "Whose business \_it\_ is, \_to shoe\_ animals;"--or, "Whose business is

\_the\_ shoeing \_of\_ animals." 2. "This \_was in fact converting\_ the deposite

to his own use."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, p. 200. Say rather, "This was in fact

\_a\_ converting \_of\_ the deposite to his own use."--\_Ib.\_

NOTE IX.--Verbs of \_preventing\_ should be made to govern, not the

participle in \_ing\_, nor what are called substantive phrases, but the

objective case of a noun or pronoun; and if a participle follow, it ought

to be governed by the preposition \_from\_: as, "But the admiration due to so

eminent a poet, must not \_prevent us from remarking\_ some other particulars

in which he has failed."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 438. Examples of error: 1. "I

endeavoured to prevent \_letting him\_ escape"--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 150.

Say,--"to prevent \_his escape\_." 2. "To prevent \_its being connected\_ with

the nearest noun."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 367. Say, "To prevent \_it from\_

being connected," &c. 3. "To prevent \_it bursting\_ out with open

violence."--\_Robertson's America\_, Vol. ii, p. 146. Say, "To prevent it

\_from\_ bursting out," &c. 4. "To prevent \_their injuring or murdering of\_

others."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. 26. Say rather, "To prevent \_them from\_

injuring or murdering \_others\_."

NOTE X.--In the use of participles and of verbal nouns, the leading word in

sense should always be made the leading or governing word in the

construction; and where there is reason to doubt whether the possessive

case or some other ought to come before the participle, it is better to

reject both, and vary the expression. Examples: "Any person may easily

convince himself of the truth of this, by listening to \_foreigners

conversing\_ in a language [which] he does not understand."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 361. "It is a relic of the ancient \_style abounding\_ with

negatives."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367. These forms are right; though the latter might

be varied, by the insertion of "\_which abounds\_" for "\_abounding\_." But the

celebrated examples before cited, about the "\_lady holding up\_ her train,"

or the "\_lady's holding up\_ her train,"--the "\_person dismissing\_ his

servant," or the "\_person's dismissing\_ his servant,"--the "\_horse running\_

to-day," or the "\_horse's running\_ to-day,"--and many others which some

grammarians suppose to be interchangeable, are equally bad in both forms.

NOTE XI.--Participles, in general, however construed, should have a clear

reference to the proper subject of the being, action, or passion. The

following sentence is therefore faulty: "By \_establishing\_ good laws, our

\_peace\_ is secured."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 88; \_Folker's\_, p. 27. Peace

not being the \_establisher\_ of the laws, these authors should have said,

"By \_establishing\_ good laws, \_we\_ secure our peace." "\_There will be no

danger\_ of \_spoiling\_ their faces, or of \_gaining\_ converts."--\_Murray's

Key\_, ii, p. 201. This sentence is to me utterly unintelligible. If the

context were known, there might possibly be some sense in saying, "\_They\_

will be in no danger of spoiling their faces," &c. "The law is annulled, in

the very \_act of its being made\_."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 267. "The

\_act of\_ MAKING \_a law\_," is a phrase intelligible; but, "the \_act of its\_

BEING MADE," is a downright solecism--a positive absurdity.

NOTE XII.--A needless or indiscriminate use of participles for nouns, or of

nouns for participles, is inelegant, if not improper, and ought therefore

to be avoided. Examples: "\_Of\_ denotes possession or \_belonging\_."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 118; \_Ingersoll's\_, 71. "The preposition \_of\_,

frequently implies possession, property, or \_belonging to\_."--\_Cooper's Pl.

and Pr. Gram.\_, p. 137. Say, "\_Of\_ frequently denotes possession, or \_the

relation of property\_." "England perceives the folly \_of the denying of\_

such concessions."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 149. Expunge \_the\_ and the last

\_of\_, that \_denying\_ may stand as a participle.

NOTE XIII.--Perfect participles being variously formed, care should be

taken to express them agreeably to the best usage, and also to distinguish

them from the preterits of their verbs, where there is any difference of

form. Example: "It would be well, if all writers who endeavour to be

accurate, would be careful to avoid a corruption at present so prevalent,

of saying, \_it was wrote\_, for, \_it was written; he was drove\_, for, \_he

was driven; I have went\_, for, \_I have gone\_, &c., in all which instances a

verb is absurdly used to supply the proper participle, without any

necessity from the want of such word."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 186.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XX.

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--EXPUNGE OF.

"In forming of his sentences, he was very exact."--\_Error noticed by

Murray\_, Vol. i, p. 194.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the preposition \_of\_ is used after the

participle \_forming\_, whose verb does not require it. But, according to

Note 1st under Rule 20th, "Active participles have the same government as

the verbs from which they are derived; the preposition \_of\_, therefore,

should not be used after the participle, when the verb does not require

it." Therefore, \_of\_ should be omitted; thus, "In forming his sentences, he

was very exact."]

"For not believing of which I condemn them"--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii. 354.

"To prohibit his hearers from reading of that book."--\_Ib.\_, i, 223. "You

will please them exceedingly, in crying down of ordinances."--MITCHELL:

\_ib.\_, i, 219. "The war-wolf subsequently became an engine for casting of

stones,"--\_Constable's Miscellany\_, xxi, 117. "The art of dressing of hides

and working in leather was practised."--\_Ib.\_, xxi, 101. "In the choice

they had made of him, for restoring of order."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 37.

"The Arabians exercised themselves by composing of orations and

poems."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p. 17. "Behold, the widow-woman was there

gathering of sticks."--\_1 Kings\_, xvii, 10. "The priests were busied in

offering of burnt-offerings."--\_2 Chron.\_, xxxv, 14. "But Asahel would not

turn aside from following of him."--\_2 Sam.\_, ii, 21. "He left off building

of Ramah, and dwelt in Tirzah."--\_1 Kings\_, xv, 21. "Those who accuse us of

denying of it, belie us."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 280. "And breaking of

bread from house to house."--\_Ib.\_, i, 192. "Those that set about repairing

of the walls."--\_Ib.\_, i, 459. "And secretly begetting of

divisions."--\_Ib.\_, i, 521. "Whom he had made use of in gathering of his

church."--\_Ib.\_, i, 535. "In defining and distinguishing of the acceptions

and uses of those particles."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 12.

"In punishing of this, we overthrow

The laws of nations, and of nature too."--\_Dryden\_, p. 92.

UNDER NOTE II.--ARTICLES REQUIRE OF.

"The mixing them makes a miserable jumble of truth and fiction."--\_Kames,

El. of Crit.\_, ii, 357. "The same objection lies against the employing

statues."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 358. "More efficacious than the venting opulence upon

the Fine Arts."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. viii. "It is the giving different names

to the same object."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 19. "When we have in view the erecting a

column."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 56. "The straining an elevated subject beyond due

bounds, is a vice not so frequent."--\_Ib.\_, i, 206. "The cutting evergreens

in the shape of animals is very ancient."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 327. "The keeping

juries, without meet, drink or fire, can be accounted for only on the same

idea."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 301. "The writing the verbs at length on his

slate, will be a very useful exercise."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 20. "The

avoiding them is not an object of any moment."--\_Sheridan's Lect.\_, p. 180.

"Comparison is the increasing or decreasing the Signification of a Word by

degrees."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 97. "Comparison is the Increasing or

Decreasing the Quality by Degrees."--\_Buchanan's English Syntax\_, p. 27.

"The placing a Circumstance before the Word with which it is connected, is

the easiest of all Inversion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 140. "What is emphasis? It is the

emitting a stronger and fuller sound of voice," &c.--\_Bradley's Gram.\_, p.

108. "Besides, the varying the terms will render the use of them more

familiar."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 25. "And yet the confining

themselves to this true principle, has misled them!"--\_Horne Tooke's

Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 15. "What is here commanded, is merely the

relieving his misery."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 417. "The

accumulating too great a quantity of knowledge at random, overloads the

mind instead of adorning it."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 5. "For the

compassing his point."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 35. "To the introducing such

an inverted order of things."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 95. "Which require

only the doing an external action."--\_Ib.\_, p. 185. "The imprisoning my

body is to satisfy your wills."--GEO. FOX: \_Sewel's Hist.\_, p. 47. "Who

oppose the conferring such extensive command on one person."--\_Duncan's

Cicero\_, p. 130. "Luxury contributed not a little to the enervating their

forces."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p. 49. "The keeping one day of the week for a

sabbath."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i. 202. "The doing a thing is contrary to the

forbearing of it."--\_Ib.\_, i, 527. "The doubling the Sigma is, however,

sometimes regular."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 29. "The inserting

the common aspirate too, is improper."--\_Ib.\_, p. 134. "But in Spenser's

time the pronouncing the \_ed\_ seems already to have been something of an

archaism."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 656. "And to the reconciling

the effect of their verses on the eye."--\_Ib.\_, i, 659. "When it was not in

their power to hinder the taking the whole."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, ii, 155.

"He had indeed given the orders himself for the shutting the

gates."--\_Ibid.\_ "So his whole life was a doing the will of the

Father."--\_Penington\_, iv, 99. "It signifies the suffering or receiving the

action expressed."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 37. "The pretended crime

therefore was the declaring himself to be the Son of God."--\_West's

Letters\_, p. 210. "Parsing is the resolving a sentence into its different

parts of speech."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 26.

UNDER NOTE II.--ADJECTIVES REQUIRE OF.

"There is no expecting the admiration of beholders."--\_Baxter\_. "There is

no hiding you in the house."--\_Shakspeare\_. "For the better regulating

government in the province of Massachusetts."--\_British Parliament\_. "The

precise marking the shadowy boundaries of a complex government."--\_J. Q.

Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. ii, p. 6. "[This state of discipline] requires the

voluntary foregoing many things which we desire, and setting ourselves to

what we have no inclination to."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 115. "This amounts

to an active setting themselves against religion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 264. "Which

engaged our ancient friends to the orderly establishing our Christian

discipline."--\_N. E. Discip.\_, p. 117. "Some men are so unjust that there

is no securing our own property or life, but by opposing force to

force."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. 26. "An Act for the better securing the

Rights and Liberties of the Subject."--\_Geo.\_ III, 31st. "Miraculous curing

the sick is discontinued."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 137. "It would have

been no transgressing the apostle's rule."--\_Ib.\_, p. 146. "As far as

consistent with the proper conducting the business of the House."--\_Elmore,

in Congress\_, 1839. "Because he would have no quarrelling at the just

condemning them at that day."--\_Law and Grace\_, p. 42. "That transferring

this natural manner--will ensure propriety."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 372.

"If a man were porter of hell-gate, he should have old turning the

key."--\_Macbeth\_, Act ii, Sc. 3.

UNDER NOTE II.--POSSESSIVES REQUIRE OF.

"So very simple a thing as a man's wounding himself."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

97; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 317. "Or with that man's avowing his

designs."--\_Blair\_, p. 104; \_Murray\_, p. 308; \_Parker and Fox, Part III\_,

p. 88. "On his putting the question."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. ii, p. 111.

"The importance of teachers' requiring their pupils to read each section

many times over."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 169. "Politeness is a kind of

forgetting one's self in order to be agreeable to others."--\_Ramsay's

Cyrus\_. "Much, therefore, of the merit, and the agreeableness of epistolary

writing, will depend on its introducing us into some acquaintance with the

writer."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 370; \_Mack's Dissertation in his Gram.\_, p.

175. "Richard's restoration to respectability, depends on his paying his

debts."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 176. "Their supplying ellipses where

none ever existed; their parsing words of sentences already full and

perfect, as though depending on words understood."--\_Ib.\_, p. 375. "Her

veiling herself and shedding tears," &c., "her upbraiding Paris for his

cowardice," &c.--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 433. "A preposition may be known by

its admitting after it a personal pronoun, in the objective

case."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 28; \_Alger's\_, 14; \_Bacon's\_, 10;

\_Merchant's\_, 18; and others. "But this forms no just objection to its

denoting time."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 65. "Of men's violating or

disregarding the relations which God has placed them in here."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 164. "Success, indeed, no more decides for the right, than a

man's killing his antagonist in a duel."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 295. "His

reminding them."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 123. "This mistake was

corrected by his preceptor's causing him to plant some beans."--\_Ib.\_, p.

235. "Their neglecting this was ruinous."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 82.

"That he was serious, appears from his distinguishing the others as

'finite.'"--\_Felch's Gram.\_, p. 10. "His hearers are not at all sensible of

his doing it."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 119.

UNDER NOTE III.--CHANGE THE EXPRESSION.

"An allegory is the saying one thing, and meaning another; a double-meaning

or dilogy is the saying only one thing, but having two in

view."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 461. "A verb may generally be

distinguished, by its making sense with any of the personal pronouns, or

the word \_to\_ before it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 28; \_Alger's\_, 13;

\_Bacon's\_, 10; \_Comly's\_, and many others. "A noun may, in general, be

distinguished by its taking an article before it, or by its making sense of

itself."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 17; \_Murray's\_, 27; &c. "An Adjective may

usually be known by its making sense with the addition of the word \_thing\_:

as, a \_good\_ thing; a \_bad\_ thing."--\_Same Authors\_. "It is seen in the

objective case, from its denoting the object affected by the act of

leaving."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 44. "It is seen in the possessive

case, from its denoting the \_possessor\_ of something."--\_Ibid.\_ "The name

man is caused by the adname \_whatever\_ to be twofold subjective case, from

its denoting, of itself, one person as the subject of the two

remarks."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. "\_When\_, as used in the last line, is a

connective, from its joining that line to the other part of the

sentence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59. "From their denoting reciprocation."--\_Ib.\_, p.

64. "To allow them the making use of that liberty."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p.

116. "The worst effect of it is, the fixing on your mind a habit of

indecision."--\_Todd's Student's Manual\_, p. 60. "And you groan the more

deeply, as you reflect that there is no shaking it off."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "I

know of nothing that can justify the having recourse to a Latin translation

of a Greek writer."--\_Coleridge's Introduction\_, p. 16. "Humour is the

making others act or talk absurdly."--\_Hazlitt's Lectures\_. "There are

remarkable instances of their not affecting each other."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 150. "The leaving Cæsar out of the commission was not from any

slight."--\_Life of Cicero\_, p. 44. "Of the receiving this toleration

thankfully I shall say no more."--\_Dryden's Works\_, p. 88. "Henrietta was

delighted with Julia's working lace so very well."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_,

p. 255. "And it is from their representing each two different words that

the confusion has arisen."--\_Booth's Introd.\_, p. 42. "Æschylus died of a

fracture of his skull, caused by an eagle's letting fall a tortoise on his

head."--\_Biog. Dict.\_ "He doubted their having it."--\_Felch's Comp. Gram.\_,

p. 81. "The making ourselves clearly understood, is the chief end of

speech."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 68. "There is no discovering in their

countenances, any signs which are the natural concomitants of the feelings

of the heart."--\_Ib.\_, p. 165. "Nothing can be more common or less proper

than to speak of a \_river's emptying itself\_."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 186.

"Our not using the former expression, is owing to this."--\_Bullions's E.

Gram.\_, p. 59.

UNDER NOTE IV.--DISPOSAL OF ADVERBS.

"To this generally succeeds the division, or the laying down the method of

the discourse."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 311. "To the pulling down of strong

holds."--\_2 Cor.\_, x, 4. "Can a mere buckling on a military weapon infuse

courage?"--\_Brown's Estimate\_, i, 62. "Living expensively and luxuriously

destroys health."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 234. "By living frugally and

temperately, health is preserved."--\_Ibid.\_ "By living temperately, our

health is promoted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 227. "By the doing away of the

necessity."--\_The Friend\_, xiii, 157. "He recommended to them, however, the

immediately calling of the whole community to the church."--\_Gregory's

Dict., w. Ventriloquism\_. "The separation of large numbers in this manner

certainly facilitates the reading them rightly."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p.

303. "From their merely admitting of a twofold grammatical

construction."--\_Philol. Museum\_, i. 403. "His gravely lecturing his friend

about it."--\_Ib.\_, i, 478. "For the blotting out of sin."--\_Gurney's

Evidences\_, p. 140. "From the not using of water."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i,

189. "By the gentle dropping in of a pebble."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p.

125. "To the carrying on a great part of that general course of

nature."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 127. "Then the not interposing is so far

from being a ground of complaint."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. "The bare omission, or

rather the not employing of what is used."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 180;

\_Jamieson's\_, 48. "Bringing together incongruous adverbs is a very common

fault."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 329. "This is a presumptive proof of its

not proceeding from them."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 186. "It represents him

in a character to which the acting unjustly is peculiarly

unsuitable."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 372. "They will aim at something

higher than merely the dealing out of harmonious sounds."--\_Kirkham's

Elocution\_, p. 65. "This is intelligible and sufficient; and going farther

seems beyond the reach of our faculties."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 147.

"Apostrophe is a turning off from the regular course of the

subject."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 348; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 185. "Even

Isabella was finally prevailed upon to assent to the sending out a

commission to investigate his conduct."--\_Life of Columbus\_. "For the

turning away of the simple shall slay them."--\_Prov.\_, i, 32.

"Thick fingers always should command

Without the stretching out the hand."--\_King's Poems\_, p. 585.

UNDER NOTE V.--PARTICIPLES WITH ADJECTIVES.

"Is there any Scripture speaks of the light's being inward?"--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 367. "For I believe not the being positive therein essential to

salvation."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 330. "Our not being able to act an uniform right

part without some thought and care."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 122. "Upon

supposition of its being reconcileable with the constitution of

nature."--\_Ib.\_, p. 128. "Upon account of its not being discoverable by

reason or experience."--\_Ib.\_, p. 170. "Upon account of their being unlike

the known course of nature."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. "Our being able to discern

reasons for them, gives a positive credibility to the history of

them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 174. "From its not being universal."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175.

"That they may be turned into the passive participle in \_dus\_ is no

decisive argument in favour of their being passive."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_,

p. 233. "With the implied idea of St. Paul's being then \_absent\_ from the

Corinthians."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 123. "On account of its becoming

gradually weaker, until it finally dies away into silence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 32.

"Not without the author's being fully aware."--\_Ib.\_, p. 84. "Being witty

out of season, is one sort of folly."--\_Sheffield's Works\_, ii. 172. "Its

being generally susceptible of a much stronger evidence."--\_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, p. 102. "At least their being such rarely enhanceth our opinion,

either of their abilities or of their virtues."--\_Ib.\_, p. 162. "Which were

the ground of our being one."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 513. "But they may be

distinguished from it by their being intransitive."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

60. "To distinguish the higher degree of our persuasion of a thing's being

possible."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 234.

"His being idle, and dishonest too,

Was that which caus'd his utter overthrow."--\_Tobitt's Gram.\_, p. 61.

UNDER NOTE VI.--COMPOUND VERBAL NOUNS.

"When it denotes being subjected to the exertion of another."--\_Booth's

Introd.\_, p. 37. "In a passive sense, it signifies being subjected to the

influence of the action."--\_Felch's Comp. Gram.\_, p. 60. "The being

abandoned by our friends is very deplorable."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i,

181. "Without waiting for their being attacked by the Macedonians."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 97. "In progress of time, words were wanted to express men's being

connected with certain conditions of fortune."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 135.

"Our being made acquainted with pain and sorrow, has a tendency to bring us

to a settled moderation."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 121. "The chancellor's

being attached to the king secured his crown; The general's having failed

in this enterprise occasioned his disgrace; John's having been writing a

long time had wearied him."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 66; \_Sanborn's\_, 171;

\_Cooper's\_, 96; \_Ingersoll's\_, 46; \_Fisk's\_, 83; \_and others\_. "The

sentence should be, 'John's having been writing a long time has wearied

him.'"--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 186. "Much depends on this rule's being

observed."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 195. "He mentioned a boy's having been

corrected for his faults; The boy's having been corrected is shameful to

him."--\_Alger's Gram.\_, p. 65; \_Merchant's\_, 93. "The greater the

difficulty of remembrance is, and the more important the being remembered

is to the attainment of the ultimate end."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 90. "If

the parts in the composition of similar objects were always in equal

quantity, their being compounded would make no odds."--\_Ib.\_, p. 65.

"Circumstances, not of such importance as that the scope of the relation is

affected by their being known."--\_Ib.\_, p. 379. "A passive verb expresses

the receiving of an action or the being acted upon; as, 'John is

beaten'"--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 16. "So our Language has another great

Advantage, namely its not being diversified by Genders."--\_Buchanan's

Gram.\_, p. 20. "The having been slandered is no fault of Peter."--\_Frost's

El. of Gram.\_, p. 82. "Without being Christ's friends, there is no being

justified."--\_William Penn\_. "Being accustomed to danger, begets

intrepidity, i.e. lessens fear."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 112. "It is, not

being affected so and so, but acting, which forms those habits."--\_Ib.\_, p.

113. "In order to our being satisfied of the truth of the apparent

paradox."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 164. "Tropes consist in a word's being

employed to signify something that is different from its original and

primitive meaning."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 132; \_Jamieson's\_, 140; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 337; \_Kirkham's\_, 222. "A \_Trope\_ consists in a word's being

employed," &c.--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 133. "The scriptural view of our being

saved from punishment."--\_Gurney's Evidences\_, p. 124. "To submit and obey,

is not a renouncing a being led by the Spirit."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 542.

UNDER NOTE VII.--PARTICIPLES FOR INFINITIVES, &C.

"Teaching little children is a pleasant employment."--\_Bartlett's School

Manual\_, ii, 68. "Denying or compromising principles of truth is virtually

denying their divine Author."--\_Reformer\_, i, 34. "A severe critic might

point out some expressions that would bear being retrenched."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 206. "Never attempt prolonging the pathetic too much."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 323. "I now recollect having mentioned a report of that nature."--

\_Whiting's Reader\_, p. 132. "Nor of the necessity which there is for their

being restrained in them."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 116. "But doing what God

commands, because he commands it, is obedience, though it proceeds from

hope or fear."--\_Ib.\_, p. 124. "Simply closing the nostrils does not so

entirely prevent resonance."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 484. "Yet they

absolutely refuse doing so."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 264. "But Artaxerxes

could not refuse pardoning him."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 173. "Doing them

in the best manner is signified by the name of these arts."--\_Rush, on the

Voice\_, p. 360. "Behaving well for the time to come, may be insufficient."

--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 198. "The compiler proposed publishing that part

by itself."--\_Dr. Adam, Rom. Antiq.\_, p. v. "To smile upon those we should

censure, is bringing guilt upon ourselves."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 108.

"But it would be doing great injustice to that illustrious orator to bring

his genius down to the same level."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. "Doubting things go ill,

often hurts more than to be sure they do."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 203.

"This is called straining a metaphor."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 150; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 341. "This is what Aristotle calls giving manners to the

poem."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 427. "The painter's being entirely confined to

that part of time which he has chosen, deprives him of the power of

exhibiting various stages of the same action."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 195.

"It imports retrenching all superfluities, and pruning the expression."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 94; \_Jamieson's\_, 64; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 301;

\_Kirkham's\_, 220. "The necessity for our being thus exempted is further

apparent."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 40. "Her situation in life does not allow

of her being genteel in every thing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 57. "Provided you do not

dislike being dirty when you are invisible."--\_Ib.\_, p. 58. "There is now

an imperious necessity for her being acquainted with her title to

eternity."--\_Ib.\_, p. 120. "Discarding the restraints of virtue, is

misnamed ingenuousness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 105. "The legislature prohibits opening

shop of a Sunday."--\_Ib.\_, p. 66. "To attempt proving that any thing is

right."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 256. "The comma directs making a pause

of a second in duration, or less."--\_Ib.\_, p. 280. "The rule which directs

putting other words into the place of it, is wrong."--\_Ib.\_, p. 326. "They

direct calling the specifying adjectives or adnames adjective pronouns."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 338. "William dislikes attending court."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_,

p. 82. "It may perhaps be worth while remarking that Milton makes a

distinction."--\_Philological Museum\_, i, 659. "Professing regard, and

acting differently, discover a base mind."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 206;

\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, pp. 82 and 112; \_Lennie's\_, 58. "Professing regard

and acting indifferently, discover a base mind."--\_Weld's Gram., Improved

Edition\_, p. 59. "You have proved beyond contradiction, that acting thus is

the sure way to procure such an object."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 92.

UNDER NOTE VIII.--PARTICIPLES AFTER BE, IS, &C.

"Irony is expressing ourselves in a manner contrary to our

thoughts."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 353; \_Kirkham's\_, 225; \_Goldsbury's\_, 90.

"Irony is saying one thing and meaning the reverse of what that expression

would represent."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 303. "An Irony is dissembling

or changing the proper signification of a word or sentence to quite the

contrary."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 151. "Irony is expressing ourselves

contrary to what we mean."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 280. "This is in a great

Measure delivering their own Compositions."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. xxvi.

"But purity is using rightly the words of the language."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 59. "But the most important object is settling the English

quantity."--\_Walker's Key\_. p. 17. "When there is no affinity, the

transition from one meaning to another is taking a very wide step."--

\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 293. "It would be losing time to attempt further to

illustrate it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 79. "This is leaving the sentence too bare, and

making it to be, if not nonsense, hardly sense."--\_Cobbett's Gram.\_, ¶220.

"This is requiring more labours from every private member."--\_West's

Letters\_, p. 120. "Is not this using one measure for our neighbours, and

another for ourselves?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 200. "Is it not charging God foolishly,

when we give these dark colourings to human nature?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. "This

is not enduring the cross as a disciple of Jesus Christ, but snatching at

it like a partizan of Swift's Jack."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175. "What is Spelling? It

is combining letters to form syllables and words."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_,

p. 18. "It is choosing such letters to compose words," &c.--\_Ibid.\_ "What

is Parsing? (1.) It is describing the nature, use, and powers of

words."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 22 and 192. (2.) "For parsing is describing the words

of a sentence as they are used."--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. (3.) "Parsing is only

describing the nature and relations of words as they are used."--\_Ib.\_, p.

11. (4.) "Parsing, let the pupil understand and remember, is describing

facts concerning words; or representing them in their offices and relations

as they are."--\_Ib.\_, p. 34. (5.) "Parsing is resolving and explaining

words according to the rules of grammar."--\_Ib.\_, p. 326. (6.) "Parsing a

word, remember, is enumerating and describing its various relations and

qualities, and its grammatical relations to other words in the

sentence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 325. (7.) "For parsing a word is enumerating and

describing its various properties and relations \_to the\_ sentence."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 326. (8.) "Parsing a noun is telling of what person, number, gender, and

case, it is; and also telling all its grammatical relations in a sentence

with respect to other words."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 16. (9.) "Parsing

any part of speech is telling all its properties and relations."--\_Ibid.\_

(10.) "Parsing is resolving a sentence into its elements."--\_Fowler's E.

Gram.\_, 1850, §588. "The highway of the righteous is, departing from

evil."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 168. "Besides, the first step towards

exhibiting truth should be removing the veil of error."--\_Ib.\_, p. 377.

"Punctuation is dividing sentences and the words of sentences, by

pauses."--\_Ib.\_, p. 280. "Another fault is using the preterimperfect

\_shook\_ instead of the participle \_shaken\_"--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 259.

"Her employment is drawing maps."--\_Alger's Gram.\_, p. 65. "Going to the

play, according to his notion, is leading a sensual life, and exposing ones

self to the strongest temptations. This is begging the question, and

therefor requires no answer."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 217. "It is

overvaluing ourselves to reduce every thing to the narrow measure of our

capacities."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 193; \_Ingersoll's\_, 199. "What is vocal

language? It is speaking; or expressing ideas by the human

voice."--\_Sanders, Spelling-Book\_, p. 7.

UNDER NOTE IX.--VERBS OF PREVENTING.

"The annulling power of the constitution prevented that enactment's

becoming a law."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 267. "Which prevents the

manner's being brief."--\_Ib.\_, p. 365. "This close prevents their bearing

forward as nominatives."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 153. "Because this

prevents its growing drowzy."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 5. "Yet this

does not prevent his being great."--\_Ib.\_, p. 27. "To prevent its being

insipid."--\_Ib.\_, p. 112. "Or whose interruptions did not prevent its being

continued."--\_Ib.\_, p. 167. "This by no means prevents their being also

punishments."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 123. "This hinders not their

being also, in the strictest sense, punishments."--\_Ibid.\_, "The noise made

by the rain and wind prevented their being heard."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_,

Vol. i, p. 118. "He endeavoured to prevent its taking effect."--\_Ib.\_, i,

128. "So sequestered as to prevent their being explored."--\_West's

Letters\_, p. 62. "Who prevented her making a more pleasant party."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 65. "To prevent our being tossed about by every wind of

doctrine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "After the infirmities of age prevented his

bearing his part of official duty."--\_Religious World\_, ii, 193. "To

prevent splendid trifles passing for matters of importance."--\_Kames, El.

of Crit.\_, i, 310. "Which prevents his exerting himself to any good

purpose."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, i, 146. "The want of the observance

of this rule, very frequently prevents our being punctual in our

duties."--\_Student's Manual\_, p. 65. "Nothing will prevent his being a

student, and his possessing the means of study."--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. "Does the

present accident hinder your being honest and brave?"--\_Collier's

Antoninus\_, p. 51. "The e is omitted to prevent two es coming

together."--\_Fowle's Gram.\_, p. 34. "A pronoun is used for or in place of a

noun.--to prevent repeating the noun."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 13.

"Diversity in the style relieves the ear, and prevents it being tired with

the too frequent recurrence of the rhymes."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 166.

"Diversity in the style relieves the ear, and prevents its being tired,"

&c.--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i. p. 362. "Timidity and false shame prevent our

opposing vicious customs."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 236; \_Sanborn's Gram.\_,

171; \_Merchant's\_, 205. "To prevent their being moved by such."--

\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 155. "Some obstacle or impediment, that prevents its

taking place."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 38. "Which prevents our making a

progress towards perfection."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 4. "This method

of distinguishing words, must prevent any regular proportion of time being

settled."--\_Ib.\_, p. 67. "That nothing but affectation can prevent its

always taking place."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "This did not prevent John's being

acknowledged and solemnly inaugurated Duke of Normandy."--HENRY: \_Webster's

Philos. Gram.\_, p. 182; his \_Improved Gram.\_, 130; \_Sanborn's Gram.\_, 189;

\_Fowler's\_, 8vo, 1850, p. 541.

UNDER NOTE X.--THE LEADING WORD IN SENSE.

"This would preclude the possibility of a \_nouns'\_ or any other word's ever

being in the possessive case."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 338. "A great

part of our pleasure arises from the plan or story being well

conducted."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 18, "And we have no reason to wonder at

this being the case."--\_Ib.\_, p. 249. "She objected only, as Cicero says,

to Oppianicus having two sons by his present wife."--\_Ib.\_, p. 274. "The

Britons being subdued by the Saxons, was a necessary consequence of their

having called in these Saxons, to their assistance."--\_Ib.\_, p. 329. "What

he had there said, concerning the Saxons expelling the Britons, and

changing the customs, the religion, and the language of the country, is a

clear and good reason for our present language being Saxon rather than

British."--\_Ib.\_, p. 230. "The only material difference between them,

besides the one being short and the other being prolonged, is, that a

metaphor always explains itself by the words that are connected with

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 151; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 342. "The description of Death's

advancing to meet Satan, on his arrival."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 156.

"Is not the bare fact of God being the witness of it, sufficient ground for

its credibility to rest upon?"--\_Chalmers, Serm.\_, p. 288. "As in the case

of one entering upon a new study."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, i, 77. "The

manner of these affecting the copula is called the imperative mode."--BP.

WILKINS: \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 43. "We are freed from the trouble, by our

nouns having no diversity of endings."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 20. "The

Verb is rather indicative of the actions being \_doing\_, or \_done\_, than

\_the time when\_, but indeed the ideas are undistinguishable."--\_Booth's

Introd.\_, p. 69. "Nobody would doubt of this being a sufficient

proof."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 66. "Against the doctrine here maintained,

of conscience being, as well as reason, a natural faculty."--\_Beattie's M.

Sci.\_, i, 263. "It is one cause of the Greek and English languages being

much more easy to learn, than the Latin."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p.

25. "I have not been able to make out a solitary instance of such being the

fact."--\_Liberator\_, x, 40. "An angel's forming the appearance of a hand,

and writing the king's condemnation on the wall, checked their mirth, and

filled them with terror."--\_Wood's Dict., w. Belshazzar\_. "The prisoners'

having attempted to escape, aroused the keepers."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_,

p. 357. "I doubt not, in the least, of this having been one cause of the

multiplication of divinities in the heathen world."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

155. "From the general rule he lays down, of the verbs being the parent

word of all language."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 227. "He was

accused of himself being idle."--\_Felch's Comp. Gram.\_, p. 52. "Our meeting

is generally dissatisfied with him so removing."--\_Wm. Edmondson\_. "The

spectacle is too rare of men's deserving solid fame while not seeking

it."--\_Prof. Bush's Lecture on Swedenborg\_. "What further need was there of

an other priest rising?"--See \_Key\_.

UNDER NOTE XI.--REFERENCE OF PARTICIPLES.

"Viewing them separately, different emotions are produced."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, ii, 344. "But leaving this doubtful, another objection

occurs."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 358. "Proceeding from one particular to another, the

subject grew under his hand."--\_Ib.\_, i, 27. "But this is still an

interruption, and a link of the chain broken."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 314. "After some

days hunting, Cyrus communicated his design to his officers."--\_Rollin\_,

ii, 66. "But it is made, without the appearance of making it in

form."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 358. "These would have had a better effect

disjoined thus."--\_Ib.\_, p. 119; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 309. "An improper

diphthong has but one of the vowels sounded."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 9;

\_Alger's\_, 12; \_Merchant's\_, 9; \_Smith's\_, 118; \_Ingersoll's\_, 4. "And

being led to think of both together, my view is rendered unsteady."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 95; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 302; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 66. "By

often doing the same thing, it becomes habitual."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 257.

"They remain with us in our dark and solitary hours, no less than when

surrounded with friends and cheerful society."--\_Ib.\_, p. 238. "Besides

shewing what is right, the matter may be further explained by pointing out

what is wrong."--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. viii. "The former teaches the

true pronunciation of words, comprising accent, quantity, emphasis, pause,

and tone."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol., i, p. 235. "Persons may be reproved for

their negligence, by saying; 'You have taken great care indeed.'"--\_Ib.\_,

i, 354. "The words preceding and following it, are in apposition to each

other."--\_Ib.\_, ii, p. 22. "Having finished his speech, the assembly

dispersed."--\_Cooper's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 97. "Were the voice to fall at the

close of the last line, as many a reader is in the habit of doing."--

\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 101. "The misfortunes of his countrymen were but

negatively the effects of his wrath, by depriving them of his

assistance."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 299. "Taking them as nouns, this

construction may be explained thus."--\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 233. "These

have an active signification, those which come from neuter verbs being

excepted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 233. "From the evidence of it not being

universal."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 84. "And this faith will continually

grow, by acquainting ourselves with our own nature."--\_Channing's

Self-Culture\_, p. 33. "Monosyllables ending with any consonant but \_f, l\_,

or \_s\_, and preceded by a single vowel, never double the final consonant;

excepting add, ebb," &c.--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 23; \_Picket's\_, 10;

\_Merchant's\_, 13; \_Ingersoll's\_, 8; \_Fisk's\_, 44; \_Blair's\_, 7. "The

relation of being the object of the action is expressed by the change of

the Noun \_Maria\_ to \_Mariam\_"--\_Booth's Introd.\_, p. 38. "In analyzing a

proposition, it is first to be divided into its logical subject and

predicate."--\_Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Gram.\_, p. 254. "In analyzing a

simple sentence, it should first be resolved into its logical subject and

logical predicate."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 113th Ed., p. 189.

UNDER NOTE XII.--OF PARTICIPLES AND NOUNS.

"The discovering passions instantly at their birth, is essential to our

well being."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 352. "I am now to enter on

considering the sources of the pleasures of taste."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

28. "The varieties in using them are, indeed many."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

319. "Changing times and seasons, removing and setting up kings, belong to

Providence alone."--\_Ib., Key\_, ii, p. 200. "Adhering to the partitions

seemed the cause of France, accepting the will that of the house of

Bourbon."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 246. "Another source of darkness in

composing is, the injudicious introduction of technical words and

phrases."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 247. "These are the rules of grammar, by

the observing of which, you may avoid mistakes."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 192;

\_Merchant's\_, 93; \_Fisk's\_, 135; \_Ingersoll's\_, 198. "By the observing of

the rules you may avoid mistakes."--\_Alger's Gram.\_, p. 65. "By the

observing of these rules he succeeded."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 82.

"Being praised was his ruin."--\_Ibid.\_ "Deceiving is not convincing."--

\_Ibid.\_ "He never feared losing a friend."--\_Ibid.\_ "Making books is his

amusement."--\_Alger's Gram.\_, p. 65. "We call it declining a noun."--

\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 22. "Washington, however, pursued the same policy

of neutrality, and opposed firmly, taking any part in the wars of

Europe."--\_Hall and Baker's School Hist.\_, p. 294. "The following is a note

of Interrogation, or asking a question (?)."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p.

132. "The following is a note of Admiration, or expressing wonder

(!)."--\_Ib.\_ "Omitting or using the article \_a\_ forms a nice distinction in

the sense."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, ii, 284. "Placing the preposition before the

word it governs is more graceful."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 150.

"Assistance is absolutely necessary to their recovery, and retrieving their

affairs."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 197. "Which termination, [\_ish\_,] when

added to adjectives, imports diminution, or lessening the

quality."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 131; \_Kirkham's\_, 172. "After what is said,

will it be thought refining too much to suggest, that the different orders

are qualified for different purposes?"--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 114.

"Who has nothing to think of but killing time."--\_West's Letters\_, p. 58.

"It requires no nicety of ear, as in the distinguishing of tones, or

measuring time."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 65. "The \_Possessive Case\_

denotes possession, or belonging to."--\_Hall's Gram.\_, p. 7.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

"Garcilasso was master of the language spoke by the Incas."--\_Robertson's

Amer.\_, ii, 459. "When an interesting story is broke off in the

middle."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 244. "Speaking of Hannibal's elephants

drove back by the enemy."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 32. "If Du Ryer had not wrote for

bread, he would have equalled them."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 166.

"Pope describes a rock broke off from a mountain, and hurling to the

plain."--\_Kames\_, ii, 106. "I have wrote \_or\_ have written, Thou hast wrote

\_or\_ hast written. He hath or has wrote, \_or\_ hath or has written;"

&c.--\_Dr. Ash's Gram.\_, p. 47; \_Maltby's\_, 47. "This was spoke by a

pagan."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 174. "But I have chose to follow

the common arrangement."--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. "The language spoke in

Bengal."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "And sound Sleep thus broke off, with suddain

Alarms, is apt enough to discompose any one."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 32.

"This is not only the Case of those Open Sinners, before spoke of."--\_Right

of Tythes\_, p. 26. "Some Grammarians have wrote a very perplexed and

difficult doctrine on Punctuation."--\_Ensell's Gram.\_, p. 340. "There hath

a pity arose in me towards thee."--\_Sewel's Hist., fol.\_, p. 324. "Abel is

the only man that has underwent the awful change of death."--\_Juvenile

Theatre\_, p. 4.

"Meantime, on Afric's glowing sands,

Smote with keen heat, the Trav'ler stands."--\_Union Poems\_, p. 88.

CHAPTER VIII.--ADVERBS.

The syntax of an Adverb consists in its simple relation to a verb, a

participle, an adjective, or whatever else it qualifies; just as the syntax

of an English Adjective, (except in a few instances,) consists in its

simple relation to a noun or a pronoun.

RULE XXI.--ADVERBS.

Adverbs relate to verbs, participles, adjectives, or other adverbs: as,

"Any passion that \_habitually\_ discomposes our temper, or unfits us for

\_properly\_ discharging the duties of life, has \_most certainly\_ gained a

\_very\_ dangerous ascendency."--\_Blair\_.

"\_How\_ bless'd this happy hour, should he appear,

Dear to us all, to me \_supremely\_ dear!"--\_Pope's Homer\_.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

The adverbs \_yes, ay\_, and \_yea\_, expressing a simple affirmation, and the

adverbs \_no\_ and \_nay\_, expressing a simple negation, are always

independent. They generally answer a question, and are equivalent to a

whole sentence. Is it clear, that they ought to be called adverbs? \_No\_.

"Can honour set to a leg? \_No\_. Or an arm? \_No\_. Or take away the grief of

a wound? \_No\_. Honour hath no skill in surgery then? \_No\_."--SHAK.: \_First

Part of Hen. IV\_, Act v, 1.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

The word \_amen\_, which is commonly called an adverb, is often used

independently at the beginning or end of a declaration or a prayer; and is

itself a prayer, meaning, \_So let it be\_: as, "Surely, I come quickly.

\_Amen\_: Even so, come Lord Jesus."--\_Rev.\_, xxii, 20. When it does not

stand thus alone, it seems in general to be used substantively; as, "The

strangers among them stood on Gerizim, and echoed \_amen\_ to the

blessings."--\_Wood's Dict.\_ "These things saith the \_Amen\_."--\_Rev.\_, iii,

14

EXCEPTION THIRD.

An adverb before a preposition seems sometimes to relate to the latter,

rather than to the verb or participle to which the preposition connects its

object; as, "This mode of pronunciation runs \_considerably beyond\_ ordinary

discourse."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 334. "Yea, \_all along\_ the times of the

apostasy, this was the thing that preserved the witnesses."--\_Penington's

Works\_, Vol. iv, p. 12. [See Obs. 8th on Rule 7th.]

"\_Right against\_ the eastern gate,

Where the great sun begins his state."--\_Milton, L'Allegro\_.

EXCEPTION FOURTH.

The words \_much, little, far\_, and \_all\_, being originally adjectives, are

sometimes preceded by the negative \_not\_, or (except the last) by such an

adverb as \_too, how, thus, so\_, or \_as\_, when they are taken substantively;

as, "\_Not all\_ that glitters, is gold."--"\_Too much\_ should not be offered

at once."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 140. "\_Thus far\_ is consistent."--\_Ib.\_, p.

161. "\_Thus far\_ is right."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 101.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XXI.

OBS. 1.--On this rule of syntax, Dr. Adam remarks, "Adverbs sometimes

likewise qualify \_substantives\_;" and gives Latin examples of the following

import: "Homer \_plainly\_ an orator:"--"\_Truly\_ Metellus;"--"\_To-morrow\_

morning." But this doctrine is not well proved by such imperfect phrases,

nor can it ever be very consistently admitted, because it destroys the

characteristic difference between an adjective and an adverb. \_To-morrow\_

is here an adjective; and as for \_truly\_ and \_plainly\_, they are not such

words as can make sense with nouns. I therefore imagine the phrases to be

elliptical: "\_Verè Metellus\_," may mean, "\_This is truly\_ Metellus;" and

"\_Homerus planè orator\_," "Homer \_was plainly\_ an orator." So, in the

example, "Behold an Israelite \_indeed\_," the true construction seems to be,

"Behold, \_here is indeed\_ an Israelite;" for, in the Greek or Latin, the

word \_Israelite\_ is a nominative, thus: "\_Ecce verè Israëlita\_."--\_Beza\_;

also \_Montanus\_. "[Greek: Ide alæthos 'Israaelitæs.]"--\_Greek Testament.

Behold\_ appears to be here an interjection, like \_Ecce\_. If we make it a

transitive verb, the reading should be, "Behold a \_true\_ Israelite;" for

the text does not mean, "\_Behold indeed\_ an Israelite." At least, this is

not the meaning in our version. W. H. Wells, citing as authorities for the

doctrine, "Bullions, Allen and Cornwell, Brace, Butler, and Webber," has

the following remark: "There are, however, certain forms of expression in

which \_adverbs\_ bear a special relation to \_nouns\_ or \_pronouns\_; as,

'Behold I, \_even I\_, do bring a flood of waters.'--\_Gen.\_ 6: 17. 'For our

gospel came not unto you in \_word only\_, but also in power.'--1 \_Thes.\_ 1:

5."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 156; late Ed., 168. And again, in

his Punctuation, we find this: "When, however, the intervening word is an

\_adverb\_, the comma is more commonly omitted; as, 'It is \_labor only\_ which

gives a relish to pleasure.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 176. From all this, the doctrine

receives no better support than from Adam's suggestion above considered.

The word "\_only\_" is often an \_adjective\_, and wherever its "special

relation" is to a noun or a pronoun, it can be nothing else. "\_Even\_," when

it introduces a word repeated with emphasis, is a \_conjunction\_.

OBS. 2.--When participles become nouns, their adverbs are not unfrequently

left standing with them in their original relation; as, "For the fall and

\_rising again\_ of many in Israel."--\_Luke\_, ii, 34. "To denote the

\_carrying forward\_ of the action."--\_Barnard's Gram.\_, p. 52. But in

instances like these, \_the hyphen\_ seems to be necessary. This mark would

make the terms \_rising-again\_ and \_carrying-forward\_ compound nouns, and

not participial nouns with adverbs relating to them.

"There is no \_flying hence\_, nor \_tarrying here\_."--\_Shak., Macbeth\_.

"What! in ill thoughts again? men must endure

Their \_going hence\_, ev'n as their \_coming hither\_."--\_Id.\_

OBS. 3.--Whenever any of those words which are commonly used adverbially,

are made to relate directly to nouns or pronouns, they must be reckoned

\_adjectives\_, and parsed by Rule 9th. Examples: "The \_above\_ verbs."--\_Dr.

Adam\_. "To the \_above\_ remarks."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 318. "The \_above

instance\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 442. "After the \_above\_ partial illustration."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of Lang.\_, ii, 62. "The \_above explanation\_."--\_Cobbett's

Gram.\_, ¶ 22. "For \_very\_ age."--\_Zech.\_, viii, 4. "From its \_very\_

greatness."--\_Phil. Museum\_, i, 431. "In his \_then\_ situation."--\_Johnson's

Life of Goldsmith\_. "This was the \_then\_ state of Popery."--\_Id., Life of

Dryden\_, p. 185. "The servant becomes the master of his \_once\_

master."--\_Shillitoe\_. "Time \_when\_ is put in the ablative, time how \_long\_

is put in the accusative."--\_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 201; \_Gould's\_, 198.

"Nouns signifying the time \_when\_ or how \_long\_, may be put in the

objective case without a preposition."--\_Wilbur and Livingston's Gram.\_, p.

24. "I hear the \_far-off\_ curfew sound."--\_Milton\_. "Far on the \_thither\_

side."--\_Book of Thoughts\_, p. 58. "My \_hither\_ way."--"Since my \_here\_

remain in England."--\_Shak.\_ "But short and \_seldom\_ truce."--\_Fell\_. "An

\_exceeding\_ knave."--\_Pope\_. "According to my \_sometime\_

promise."--\_Zenobia\_, i, 176. "Thine \_often\_ infirmities."--\_Bible\_. "A

\_far\_ country."--\_Ib.\_ "\_No\_ wine,"--"\_No\_ new thing,"--"\_No\_ greater

joy."--\_Ib.\_ "Nothing \_else\_."--\_Blair\_. "\_Tomorrow\_ noon."--\_Scott\_.

"Calamity \_enough\_."--\_Tr. Sallust\_. "For thou \_only\_ art holy."--\_Rev.\_,

xv, 4.

OBS. 4.--It is not my design to justify any uncouth substitution of adverbs

for adjectives; nor do I affirm that all the foregoing examples are

indisputably good English, though most of them are so; but merely, that the

words, when they are thus used, \_are adjectives\_, and not adverbs. Lindley

Murray, and his copyists, strongly condemn some of these expressions, and,

by implication, most or all of them; but both he and they, as well as

others, have repeatedly employed at least one of the very models they

censure. They are too severe on all those which they specify. Their

objections stand thus; "\_Such expressions\_ as the following, though not

destitute of authority, \_are very inelegant\_, and do \_not suit the idiom\_

of our language; 'The \_then\_ ministry,' for, 'the ministry of that time;'

'The \_above\_ discourse,' for, 'the preceding discourse.'"--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, p. 198; \_Crombie's\_, 294; \_Ingersoll's\_, 206. "The following

phrases are also exceptionable: 'The \_then\_ ministry;' 'The \_above\_

argument.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 190. "Adverbs used as adjectives, as,

'The \_above\_ statement;' 'The \_then\_ administration;' should be

avoided."--\_Barnard's Gram.\_, p. 285. "\_When\_ and \_then\_ must not be used

for nouns \_and pronouns\_; thus, 'Since \_when\_,' 'since \_then\_,' 'the \_then\_

ministry,' ought to be, 'Since \_which time\_,' 'since \_that time\_,' 'the

ministry \_of that period\_.'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 96. Dr. Priestley, from

whom Murray derived many of his critical remarks, noticed these

expressions; and, (as I suppose,) \_approvingly\_; thus, "Adverbs are often

put for adjectives, agreeably to the idiom of the Greek tongue: [as,] 'The

action was \_amiss\_.'--'The \_then\_ ministry.'--'The idea is \_alike\_ in

both.'--Addison. 'The \_above\_ discourse.'--Harris."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 135. Dr. Johnson, as may be seen above, thought it not amiss to use

\_then\_ as Priestley here cites it; and for such a use of \_above\_, we may

quote the objectors themselves: "To support the \_above\_

construction."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 149; \_Ingersoll's\_, p. 238. "In all

the \_above\_ instances."--\_Mur.\_, p. 202; \_Ing.\_, 230. "To the \_above\_

rule."--\_Mur.\_, p. 270; \_Ing.\_, 283. "The same as the \_above\_."--\_Mur.\_, p.

66; \_Ing.\_, 46. "In such instances as the \_above\_."--\_Mur.\_, p. 24; \_Ing.\_,

9; \_Kirkham\_, 23.[427]

OBS. 5.--When words of an adverbial character are used after the manner of

\_nouns\_, they must be parsed as nouns, and not as adverbs; as, "The Son of

God--was not \_yea\_ and \_nay\_, but in him was \_yea\_."--\_Bible\_. "For a great

\_while\_ to come."--\_Ib.\_ "On this \_perhaps\_, this \_peradventure\_ infamous

for lies."--\_Young\_. "From the extremest \_upward\_ of thine head."--\_Shak\_.

"There are \_upwards\_ of fifteen millions of inhabitants."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 266. "Information has been derived from \_upwards\_ of two hundred

volumes."--\_Worcester's Hist.\_, p. v. "An eternal \_now\_ does always

last"--\_Cowley\_. "Discourse requires an animated \_no\_."--\_Cowper\_. "Their

hearts no proud \_hereafter\_ swelled."--\_Sprague\_. An adverb after a

preposition is used substantively, and governed by the preposition; though

perhaps it is not necessary to call it a common noun: as, "For \_upwards\_ of

thirteen years."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. xvi. "That thou mayst curse me them

\_from thence\_."--\_Numb.\_, xxiii, 27. "Yet \_for once\_ we'll try."--\_Dr.

Franklin\_. But many take such terms together, calling them "\_adverbial

phrases\_." Allen says, "Two adverbs sometimes come together; as, 'Thou hast

kept the good wine \_until now\_.'"--\_Gram.\_, p. 174. But \_until\_ is here

more properly a preposition, governing \_now\_.

OBS. 6.--It is plain, that when words of an adverbial form are used either

adjectively or substantively, they cannot be parsed by the foregoing rule,

or explained as having the ordinary relation of \_adverbs\_; and if the

unusual relation or character which they thus assume, be not thought

sufficient to fix them in the rank of adjectives or nouns, the parser may

describe them as adverbs used adjectively, or substantively, and apply the

rule which their assumed construction requires. But let it be remembered,

that adverbs, as such, neither relate to nouns, nor assume the nature of

cases: but express the time, place, degree, or manner, of actions or

qualities. In some instances in which their construction may seem not to be

reconcilable with the common rule, there may be supposed an ellipsis of a

verb or a participle:[428] as, "From Monday to Saturday

\_inclusively\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ Here, the Doctor ought to have used a

comma after \_Saturday\_; for the adverb relates, not to that noun, but to

the word \_reckoned\_, understood. "It was well said by Roscommon, '\_too

faithfully is pedantically\_.'"--\_Com. Sch. Journal\_, i, 167. This saying I

suppose to mean, "\_To do a thing\_ too faithfully, is, \_to do it\_

pedantically." "And, [\_I say] truly\_, if they had been mindful of that

country from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to have

returned."--\_Heb.\_, xi, 15.

OBS 7.--To abbreviate expressions, and give them vivacity, verbs of

self-motion (such as \_go, come, rise, get\_, &c.) are sometimes suppressed,

being suggested to the mind by an emphatic adverb, which seems to be put

\_for the verb\_, but does in fact relate to it understood; as,

"I'll \_hence\_ to London, on a serious matter."--\_Shak\_. Supply "\_go\_."

"I'll \_in\_. I'll \_in\_. Follow your friend's counsel. I'll \_in\_"--\_Id.\_

Supply "\_get\_."

"\_Away\_, old man; give me thy hand; \_away\_."--\_Id.\_ Supply "\_come\_."

"Love hath wings, and will \_away\_"--\_Waller\_. Supply "\_fly\_."

"\_Up, up\_, Glentarkin! rouse thee, ho!"--\_Scott\_. Supply "\_spring\_."

"Henry the Fifth is crowned; \_up\_, vanity!" Supply "\_stand\_."

"\_Down\_, royal state! all you sage counsellors, \_hence\_!"--\_Shak.\_ Supply

"\_fall\_," and "\_get you\_."

"But \_up\_, and enter now into full bliss."--\_Milton\_. Supply "\_rise\_."

OBS. 8.--We have, on some occasions, a singular way of expressing a

transitive action imperatively, or emphatically, by adding the preposition

\_with\_ to an adverb of direction; as, \_up with it, down with it, in with

it, out with it, over with it, away with it\_, and the like; in which

construction, the adverb seems to be used elliptically as above, though the

insertion of the verb would totally enervate or greatly alter the

expression. Examples: "She \_up with\_ her fist, and took him on the

face."--\_Sydney, in Joh. Dictionary\_. "\_Away with\_ him!"--\_Acts\_, xxi, 36.

"\_Away with\_ such a fellow from the earth."--\_Ib.\_, xxii, 22. "The calling

of assemblies I cannot \_away with\_"--\_Isaiah\_, i, 13. "\_Hence with\_ denial

vain, and coy excuse."--\_Milton's Comus\_. Ingersoll says, "Sometimes a

whole phrase is used as an interjection, and we call such \_interjectional

phrases\_: as, \_out upon him!--away with him!--Alas, what wonder!\_

&c."--\_Conversations on Gram.\_, p. 79. This method of lumping together

several different parts of speech under the notion of one, and calling the

whole an "\_adverbial phrase\_," a "\_substantive phrase\_," or an

"\_interjectional phrase\_," is but a forced put, by which some grammarians

would dodge certain difficulties which they know not how to meet. It is

directly repugnant to the idea of \_parsing\_; for the parser ever deals with

the parts of speech as such, and not with whole phrases in the lump. The

foregoing adverbs when used imperatively, have some resemblance to

interjections; but, in some of the examples above cited, they certainly are

not used in this manner.

OBS. 9.--A \_conjunctive adverb\_ usually relates to two verbs at the same

time, and thus connects two clauses of a compound sentence; as, "And the

rest will I set in order \_when\_ I come,"--\_1 Cor.\_, xi, 34. Here \_when\_ is

a conjunctive adverb of time, and relates to the two verbs \_will set\_ and

\_come\_; the meaning being, "And the rest will I set in order \_at the time

at which\_ I come." This adverb \_when\_ is often used erroneously in lieu of

a nominative after \_is\_, to which construction of the word, such an

interpretation as the foregoing would not be applicable; because the person

means to tell, not \_when\_, but \_what\_, the thing is, of which he speaks:

as, "Another cause of obscurity is \_when\_ the structure of the sentence is

too much complicated, or too artificial; or \_when\_ the sense is too long

suspended by parentheses."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 246. Here the

conjunction \_that\_ would be much better than \_when\_, but the sentence might

advantageously spare them both; thus, "An other cause of obscurity is too

much \_complication\_, too artificial \_a structure\_ of the sentence, or too

long \_a suspension\_ of the sense by \_parenthesis\_."

OBS. 10.--For the \_placing\_ of adverbs, no definite general rule can be

given; yet is there no other part of speech so liable to be misplaced.

Those which relate to adjectives, or to other adverbs, with very few

exceptions, immediately precede them; and those which belong to compound

verbs, are commonly placed after the first auxiliary; or, if they be

emphatical, after the whole verb. Those which relate to simple verbs, or to

simple participles, are placed sometimes before and sometimes after them.

Examples are so very common, I shall cite but one: "A man may, in respect

to grammatical purity, speak \_unexceptionably\_, and yet speak \_obscurely\_,

or \_ambiguously\_; and though we cannot say, that a man may speak

\_properly\_, and at the same time speak \_unintelligibly\_, yet this last case

falls \_more naturally\_ to be considered as an offence against perspicuity,

than as a violation of propriety."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 239.

OBS. 11.--Of the infinitive verb and its preposition \_to\_, some grammarians

say, that they must never be separated by an adverb. It is true, that the

adverb is, in general, more elegantly placed before the preposition than

after it; but, possibly, the latter position of it may sometimes contribute

to perspicuity, which is more essential than elegance: as, "If any man

refuse \_so to implore\_, and \_to so receive\_ pardon, let him die the

death."--\_Fuller, on the Gospel\_, p. 209. The latter word \_so\_, if placed

like the former, might possibly be understood in a different sense from

what it now bears. But perhaps it would be better to say. "If any man

refuse so to implore, and \_on such terms\_ to receive pardon, let him die

the death." "Honour teaches us \_properly\_ to respect ourselves."--\_Murray's

Key\_, ii, 252. Here it is not quite clear, to which verb the adverb

"\_properly\_" relates. Some change of the expression is therefore needful.

The right to place an adverb sometimes between \_to\_ and its verb, should, I

think, be conceded to the poets: as,

"Who dared \_to nobly stem\_ tyrannic pride."--BURNS: \_C. Sat. N.\_

OBS. 12.--The adverb \_no\_ is used independently, only when it is equivalent

to a whole sentence. This word is sometimes an adverb of \_degree\_; and as

such it has this peculiarity, that it can relate only to comparatives: as,

"\_No\_ more,"--"\_No\_ better,"--"\_No\_ greater,"--"\_No\_ sooner." When \_no\_ is

set before a noun, it is clearly an \_adjective\_, corresponding to the Latin

\_nullus\_; as, "\_No\_ clouds, \_no\_ vapours intervene."--\_Dyer\_. Dr. Johnson,

with no great accuracy, remarks, "It seems an \_adjective\_ in these phrases,

\_no\_ longer, \_no\_ more, \_no\_ where; though sometimes it may be so

commodiously changed to \_not\_, that it seems an adverb; as, 'The days are

yet \_no\_ shorter.'"--\_Quarto Dict.\_ And his first example of what he calls

the "\_adverb\_ NO" is this: "'Our courteous Antony, Whom ne'er the word of

\_no\_ woman heard speak.' SHAKSPEARE."--\_Ibid.\_ Dr. Webster says, "When it

precedes \_where\_, as in \_no where\_, it may be considered as adverbial,

though originally an adjective."--\_Octavo Dict.\_ The truth is, that \_no\_ is

an adverb, whenever it relates to an adjective; an adjective, whenever it

relates to a noun; and a noun, whenever it takes the relation of a case.

Thus, in what Johnson cites from Shakspeare, it is a noun, and not an

adverb; for the meaning is, that a woman never heard Antony speak the word

\_of no\_--that is, \_of negation\_. And there ought to be a comma after this

word, to make the text intelligible. To read it thus: "\_the word of no

woman\_," makes \_no\_ an adjective. So, to say, "There are \_no abler critics\_

than these," is a very different thing from saying, "There are \_critics no

abler\_ than these;" because \_no\_ is an adjective in the former sentence,

and an adverb in the latter. \_Somewhere, nowhere, anywhere, else-where\_,

and \_everywhere\_, are adverbs of place, each of which is composed of the

noun \_where\_ and an \_adjective\_; and it is absurd to write a part of them

as compound words, and the rest as phrases, as many authors do.

OBS. 13.--In some languages, the more negatives one crowds into a sentence,

the stronger is the negation; and this appears to have been formerly the

case in English, or in what was anciently the language of Britain: as, "He

\_never\_ yet \_no\_ vilanie \_ne\_ sayde in alle his lif unto \_no\_ manere

wight."--\_Chaucer\_. "\_Ne\_ I \_ne\_ wol \_non\_ reherce, yef that I may."--\_Id.\_

"Give \_not\_ me counsel; \_nor\_ let \_no\_ comforter delight mine

ear."--\_Shakspeare\_. "She \_cannot\_ love, \_nor\_ take \_no\_ shape \_nor\_

project of affection."--\_Id.\_ Among people of education, this manner of

expression has now become wholly obsolete; though it still prevails, to

some extent, in the conversation of the vulgar. It is to be observed,

however, that the \_repetition\_ of an independent negative word or clause

yet strengthens the negation; as, "\_No, no, no\_."--"\_No, never\_."--"\_No,

not\_ for an hour."--\_Gal.\_, ii, 5. "There is \_none\_ righteous, \_no, not\_

one."--\_Rom.\_, iii, 10. But two negatives in the same clause, if they have

any bearing on each other, destroy the negation, and render the meaning

weakly affirmative; as, "\_Nor\_ did they \_not\_ perceive their evil

plight."--\_Milton\_. That is, they \_did\_ perceive it. "'His language, though

inelegant, is \_not ungrammatical\_;' that is, it \_is\_ grammatical."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 198. The term \_not only\_, or \_not merely\_, being a

correspondent to \_but\_ or \_but also\_, may be followed by an other negative

without this effect, because the two negative words have no immediate

bearing on each other; as, "Your brother is \_not only not\_ present, and

\_not\_ assisting in prosecuting your injuries, \_but\_ is now actually with

Verres."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p, 19. "In the latter we have \_not merely

nothing\_, to denote what the point should be; \_but no\_ indication, that any

point at all is wanting."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 373. So the word

\_nothing\_, when taken positively for nonentity, or that which does not

exist, may be followed by an other negative; as,

"First, seat him somewhere, and derive his race,

Or else conclude that \_nothing\_ has \_no\_ place."--\_Dryden\_, p. 95.

OBS. 14.--The common rule of our grammars, "Two negatives, in English,

destroy each other, or are equivalent to an affirmative," is far from being

\_true\_ of all possible examples. A sort of informal exception to it, (which

is mostly confined to conversation,) is made by a familiar transfer of the

word \_neither\_ from the beginning of the clause to the end of it; as, "But

here is \_no\_ notice taken of that \_neither\_"--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p.

336. That is, "But \_neither\_ is \_any\_ notice here taken of that." Indeed a

negation may be repeated, by the same word or others, as often as we

please, if no two of the terms in particular contradict each other; as, "He

will \_never\_ consent, \_not\_ he, \_no, never, nor\_ I \_neither\_." "He will

\_not\_ have time, \_no, nor\_ capacity \_neither\_."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_,

p. 103. "Many terms and idioms may be common, which, nevertheless, have

\_not\_ the general sanction, \_no, nor\_ even the sanction of those that use

them."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 160; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 358. And as

to the equivalence spoken of in the same rule, such an expression as, "He

did \_not\_ say \_nothing\_," is in fact only a vulgar solecism, take it as you

will; whether for, "He did \_not\_ say \_anything\_," or for, "He \_did\_ say

\_something\_." The latter indeed is what the contradiction amounts to; but

double negatives must be shunned, whenever they \_seem\_ like blunders. The

following examples have, for this reason, been thought objectionable;

though Allen says, "Two negatives destroy each other, or \_elegantly\_ form

an affirmation."--\_Gram.\_, p. 174.

------------"\_Nor\_ knew I \_not\_

To be both will and deed created free."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. v., l. 548.

"\_Nor\_ doth the moon \_no\_ nourishment exhale

From her moist continent to higher orbs."

--\_Ib.\_, B. v, l. 421.

OBS. 15.--Under the head of \_double negatives\_, there appears in our

grammars a dispute of some importance, concerning the adoption of \_or\_ or

\_nor\_, when any other negative than \_neither\_ or \_nor\_ occurs in the

preceding clause or phrase: as, "We will \_not\_ serve thy gods, \_nor\_

worship the golden image."--\_Dan.\_, iii., 18. "Ye have \_no\_ portion, \_nor\_

right, \_nor\_ memorial in Jerusalem."--\_Neh.\_, ii, 20. "There is \_no\_

painsworthy difficulty \_nor\_ dispute about them."--\_Horne Tooke, Div.\_,

Vol. i, p. 43. "So as \_not\_ to cloud that principal object, \_nor\_ to bury

it."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 115; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 322. "He did \_not\_

mention Leonora, \_nor\_ her father's death."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 264. "Thou

canst \_not\_ tell whence it cometh, \_nor\_ whither it goeth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 215.

The form of this text, in John iii, 8th. is--"But canst not tell whence it

cometh, \_and\_ whither it goeth;" which Murray inserted in his exercises as

bad English. I do not see that the copulative \_and\_ is here ungrammatical;

but if we prefer a disjunctive, ought it not to be \_or\_ rather than \_nor\_?

It appears to be the opinion of some, that in ail these examples, and in

similar instances innumerable, \_nor\_ only is proper. Others suppose, that

\_or\_ only is justifiable; and others again, that either \_or\_ or \_nor\_ is

perfectly correct. Thus grammar, or what should be grammar, differs in the

hands of different men! The principle to be settled here, must determine

the correctness or incorrectness of a vast number of very common

expressions. I imagine that none of these opinions is warrantable, if taken

in all that extent to which each of them has been, or may be, carried.

OBS. 16.--It was observed by Priestley, and after him by Lindley Murray,

from whom others again have copied the remark: "Sometimes the particles

\_or\_ and \_nor\_, may, either of them, be used with nearly equal propriety;

[as,] 'The king, whose character was not sufficiently vigorous, \_nor\_

decisive, assented to the measure.'--\_Hume. Or\_ would perhaps have been

better, but \_nor\_ seems to repeat the negation in the former part of the

sentence, and therefore gives more emphasis to the expression."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 138; \_Murray's\_, i, 212; \_Ingersoll's\_, 268; \_R. C.

Smith's\_, 177. The conjunction \_or\_ might doubtless have been used in this

sentence, but \_not with the same meaning\_ that is now conveyed; for, if

that connective had been employed, the adjective \_decisive\_ would have been

qualified by the adverb \_sufficiently\_, and would have seemed only an

alternative for the former epithet, \_vigorous\_. As the text now stands, it

not only implies a distinction between vigour of character and decision of

character, but denies the latter to the king absolutely, the former, with

qualification. If the author had meant to suggest such a distinction, and

also to qualify his denial of both, he ought to have said--"not

sufficiently vigorous, \_nor sufficiently\_ decisive." With this meaning,

however, he might have used \_neither\_ for \_not\_; or with the former, he

might have used \_or\_ for \_nor\_, had he transposed the terms--"was not

decisive, \_or\_ sufficiently vigorous."

OBS. 17.--In the tenth edition of John Burn's Practical Grammar, published

at Glasgow, in 1810, are the following suggestions: "It is not uncommon to

find the conjunctions \_or\_ and \_nor\_ used indiscriminately; but if there be

any real distinction in the proper application of them, it is to be wished

that it were settled. It is attempted thus:--Let the conjunction \_or\_ be

used simply to connect the members of a sentence, or to mark distribution,

opposition, or choice, without any preceding negative particle; and \_nor\_

to mark the subsequent part of a negative sentence, with some negative

particle in the preceding part of it. Examples of OR: 'Recreation of one

kind \_or\_ other is absolutely necessary to relieve the body \_or\_ mind from

too constant attention to labour or study.'--'After this life, succeeds a

state of rewards \_or\_ punishments.'--'Shall I come to you with a rod, \_or\_

in love?' Examples of NOR: 'Let no man be too confident, \_nor\_ too

diffident of his own abilities.'--'Never calumniate any man, \_nor\_ give the

least encouragement to calumniators.'--'There is \_not\_ a Christian duty to

which providence has not annexed a blessing, \_nor\_ any affliction for which

a remedy is not provided.' If the above distinction be just, the following

passage seems to be faulty:

'Seasons return, but \_not\_ to me returns

Day, \_or\_ the sweet approach of ev'n \_or\_ morn,

\_Or\_ sight of vernal bloom, \_or\_ summer's rose,

\_Or\_ flocks, \_or\_ herds, \_or\_ human face divine.'

\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. iii, l. 40.--"\_Burn's Gr.\_, p. 108.

OBS. 18.--T. O. Churchill, whose Grammar first appeared in London in 1823,

treats this matter thus: "As \_or\_ answers to \_either, nor\_, a compound of

\_not or [ne or\_] by contraction, answers to \_neither\_, a similar compound

of \_not either [ne either\_]. The latter however does not constitute that

double use of the negative, in which one, agreeably to the principles of

philosophical grammar, destroys the other; for a part of the first word,

\_neither\_, cannot be understood before the second, \_nor\_: and for the same

reason a part of it could not be understood before \_or\_, which is sometimes

improperly used in the second clause; while the whole of it, \_neither\_,

would be obviously improper before \_or\_. On the other hand, when \_not\_ is

used in the first clause, \_nor\_ is improper in the second; since it would

involve the impropriety of understanding \_not\_ before a compound of \_not\_

[or \_ne\_] with \_or\_. 'I shall \_not\_ attempt to convince, \_nor\_ to persuade

you.--What will you \_not\_ attempt?--To convince, \_nor\_ to persuade you.'

The impropriety of \_nor\_ in this answer is clear: but the answer should

certainly repeat the words not heard, or not understood."--\_Churchill's New

Gram.\_, p. 330.

OBS. 19.--"It is probable, that the use of \_nor\_ after \_not\_ has been

introduced, in consequence of such improprieties as the following: 'The

injustice of inflicting death for crimes, when \_not\_ of the most heinous

nature, \_or\_ attended with extenuating circumstances.' Here it is obviously

not the intention of the writer, to understand the negative in the last

clause: and, if this were good English, it would be not merely allowable to

employ \_nor\_ after \_not\_, to show the subsequent clause to be negative as

well as the preceding, but it would always be necessary. In fact, however,

the sentence quoted is faulty, in not repeating the adverb \_when\_ in the

last clause; 'or \_when\_ attended:' which would preclude the negative from

being understood in it; for, if an adverb, conjunction, or auxiliary verb,

preceding a negative, be understood in the succeeding clause, the negative

is understood also; if it be repeated, the negative must be repeated

likewise, or the clause becomes affirmative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 330.

OBS. 20.--This author, proceeding with his remarks, suggests forms of

correction for several other common modes of expression, which he conceives

to be erroneous. For the information of the student, I shall briefly notice

a little further the chief points of his criticism, though he teaches some

principles which I have not thought it necessary always to observe in

writing. "'And seemed \_not\_ to understand ceremony, \_or\_ to despise it.'

\_Goldsmith\_. Here \_either\_ ought to be inserted before \_not\_. 'It is \_not\_

the business of virtue, to extirpate the affections of the mind, but to

regulate them.' \_Addison\_. The sentence ought to have been: 'It is the

business of virtue, \_not\_ to extirpate the affections of the mind, but to

regulate them.' 'I do \_not\_ think, that he was averse to the office; \_nor\_

do I believe, that it was unsuited to him.' How much better to say: 'I do

not think, that he was averse to the office, \_or\_ that it was unsuited to

him!' For the same reason \_nor\_ cannot follow \_never\_, the negative in the

first clause affecting all the rest."--\_Ib.\_ p. 332. "\_Nor\_ is sometimes

used improperly after \_no\_: [as,] 'I humbly however trust in God, that I

have hazarded \_no\_ conjecture, \_nor\_ have given any explanation of obscure

points, inconsistent with the general sense of Scripture, which must be our

guide in all dubious passages.' \_Gilpin\_. It ought to be: '\_and\_ have given

\_no\_ explanation;' or, 'I have \_neither\_ hazarded any conjecture, \_nor\_

given any explanation.' The use of \_or\_ after \_neither\_ is as common, as

that of \_nor\_ after \_no\_ or \_not\_.[429] '\_Neither\_ the pencil \_or\_ poetry

are adequate.' \_Coxe\_. Properly, '\_Neither\_ the pencil \_nor\_ poetry \_is\_

adequate.' 'The vow of poverty \_allowed\_ the Jesuits individually, to have

\_no\_ idea of wealth.' \_Dornford\_. We cannot \_allow\_ a \_nonentity\_. It

should be: 'did \_not\_ allow, to have \_any\_ idea.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 333.

OBS. 21.--Thus we see that Churchill wholly and positively condemns \_nor\_

after \_not, no\_, or \_never\_; while Burn totally disapproves of \_or\_, under

the same circumstances. Both of these critics are wrong, because each

carries his point too far; and yet it may not be right, to suppose both

particles to be often equally good. Undoubtedly, a negation may be repeated

in English without impropriety, and that in several different ways: as,

"There is \_no\_ living, \_none\_, if Bertram be away."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_,

p. 3. "Great men are \_not\_ always wise, \_neither\_ do the aged [always]

understand judgement."--\_Job\_, xxxii, 9. "Will he esteem thy riches? \_no,

not\_ gold, \_nor\_ all the forces of strength."--\_Job\_, xxxiv. 19. Some

sentences, too, require \_or\_, and others \_nor\_, even when a negative occurs

in a preceding clause; as, "There was \_none\_ of you that convinced Job,

\_or\_ that answered his words."--\_Job\_, xxxii, 12. "How much less to him

that accepteth \_not\_ the persons of princes \_nor\_ regardeth the rich more

than the poor."--\_Job\_, xxxiv, 19. "This day is holy unto the Lord your

God; mourn \_not, nor\_ weep."--\_Neh.\_, viii, 9. "Men's behaviour should be

like their apparel, \_not\_ too straight \_or\_ point-de-vise, but free for

exercise."--\_Ld. Bacon\_. Again, the mere repetition of a simple negative

is, on some occasions, more agreeable than the insertion of any connective;

as, "There is \_no\_ darkness, \_nor\_ shadow of death, where the workers of

iniquity may hide themselves."--\_Job\_, xxxiv, 22. Better: "There is \_no\_

darkness, \_no\_ shadow of death, \_wherein\_ the workers of iniquity may hide

themselves." "\_No\_ place \_nor any\_ object appears to him void of

beauty."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 255. Better: "\_No\_ place, \_no\_ object,

appears to him void of beauty." That passage from Milton which Burn

supposes to be faulty, and that expression of Addison's which Churchill

dislikes, are, in my opinion, not incorrect as they stand; though,

doubtless, the latter admits of the variation proposed. In the former, too,

\_or\_ may twice be changed to \_nor\_, where the following nouns are

nominatives; but to change it throughout, would not be well, because the

other nouns are objectives governed by \_of\_:

"Seasons return, but \_not\_ to me returns

Day, \_nor\_ the sweet approach of ev'n \_or\_ morn,

\_Nor\_ sight of vernal bloom, \_or\_ summer's rose,

\_Or\_ flocks, \_or\_ herds, \_or\_ human face divine."

OBS. 22.--\_Ever\_ and \_never\_ are directly opposite to each other in sense,

and yet they are very frequently confounded and misapplied, and that by

highly respectable writers; as, "Seldom, or \_never\_ can we expect,"

&c.--\_Blair's Lectures\_, p. 305. "And seldom, or \_ever\_, did any one rise,

&c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 272. "Seldom, or \_never\_, is[430] there more than one

accented syllable in any English word."--\_Ib.\_, p. 329. "Which that of the

present seldom or \_ever\_ is understood to be."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of

Lang.\_, Vol. ii, p. 120. Here \_never\_ is right, and \_ever\_ is wrong. It is

\_time\_, that is here spoken of; and the affirmative \_ever\_, meaning

\_always\_, or \_at any time\_, in stead of being a fit alternative for

\_seldom\_, makes nonsense of the sentence, and violates the rule respecting

the order and fitness of time: unless we change \_or\_ to \_if\_, and say,

"seldom, \_if\_ ever." But in sentences like the following, the adverb

appears to express, not time, but \_degree\_; and for the latter sense \_ever\_

is preferable to \_never\_, because the degree ought to be possible, rather

than impossible: "\_Ever so\_ little of the spirit of martyrdom is always a

more favourable indication to civilization, than \_ever so\_ much dexterity

of party management, or \_ever so\_ turbulent protestation of immaculate

patriotism."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 411. "Now let man reflect but

\_never so\_ little on himself."--\_Burlamaqui, on Law\_, p. 29. "Which will

\_not\_ hearken to the voice of charmers, charming \_never so\_

wisely."--\_Ps.\_, lviii, 5. The phrase \_ever so\_, (which ought, I think, to

be written as \_one word\_,) is now a very common expression to signify \_in

whatsoever degree\_; as, "\_everso\_ little,"--"\_everso\_ much,"--"\_everso\_

wise,"--"\_everso\_ wisely." And it is manifestly this, and not time, that is

intended by the false phraseology above;--"a form of speech handed down by

the best writers, but lately accused, I think with justice, of solecism. \*

\* \* It can only be defended by supplying a very harsh and unprecedented

ellipsis."--\_Johnson's Dict., w. Never\_.

OBS. 23.--Dr. Lowth seconds this opinion of Johnson, respecting the phrase,

"\_never so wisely\_," and says, "It should be, '\_ever\_ so wisely;' that is,

'\_how\_ wisely \_soever\_.'" To which he adds an other example somewhat

different: "'Besides, a slave would \_not\_ have been admitted into that

society, had he had \_never such\_ opportunities.' Bentley."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 109. This should be, "had he had \_everso excellent\_

opportunities." But Churchill, mistaking the common explanation of the

meaning of \_everso\_ for the manner of parsing or resolving it, questions

the propriety of the term, and thinks it easier to defend the old phrase

\_never so\_; in which he supposes \_never\_ to be an adverb of time, and not

to relate to \_so\_, which is an adverb of degree; saying, "'Be it \_never\_ so

true,' is resolvable into, 'Be it so true, \_as never any thing was\_.'[431]

'I have had \_never\_ so much trouble on this occasion,' may be resolved

into, 'I \_have never had\_ so much trouble, \_as\_ on this occasion:' while,

'I have had \_ever\_ so much trouble on this occasion, cannot be resolved,

without supplying some very harsh and unprecedented ellipsis indeed."--\_New

Gram.\_, p. 337, Why not? I see no occasion at all for supposing any

ellipsis. \_Ever\_ is here an adverb of degree, and relates to \_so\_; or, if

we take \_everso\_ as one word, this too is an adverb of degree, and relates

to \_much\_: because the meaning is--"\_everso much\_ trouble." But the other

phraseology, even as it stands in Churchill's explanations, is a solecism

still; nor can any resolution which supposes \_never\_ to be here an adverb

of time, be otherwise. We cannot call that a grammatical resolution, which

makes a different sense from that which the writer intended: as, "A slave

would not have been admitted into that society, had he \_never\_ had such

opportunities." This would be Churchill's interpretation, but it is very

unlike what Bentley says above. So, 'I have \_never had so much\_ trouble,'

and, 'I have had \_everso much\_ trouble,' are very different assertions.

OBS. 24.--On the word \_never\_, Dr. Johnson remarks thus: "It seems in some

phrases to have the sense of an \_adjective\_, [meaning,] \_not any\_; but in

reality it is \_not ever\_: [as,] 'He answered him to \_never\_ a word.'

MATTHEW, xxvii, 14."--\_Quarto Dict.\_ This mode of expression was formerly

very common, and a contracted form of it is still frequently heard among

the vulgar: as, "Because he'd \_ne'er\_ an other tub."--\_Hudibras\_, p. 102.

That is, "Because he had \_no\_ other tub." "Letter nor line know I \_never\_ a

one."--\_Scott's Lay of L. M.\_, p. 27. This is what the common people

pronounce "\_ne'er a one\_," and use in stead of \_neither\_ or \_no one\_. In

like manner they contract \_ever a one\_ into "\_e'er a one\_;" by which they

mean \_either\_ or \_any one\_. These phrases are the same that somebody--(I

believe it is \_Smith\_, in his Inductive Grammar--) has ignorantly written

"\_ary one\_" and "\_nary one\_" calling them vulgarisms.[432] Under this mode

of spelling, the critic had an undoubted right to think the terms

unauthorized! In the compounds of \_whoever\_ or \_whoe'er, whichever\_ or

\_whiche'er, whatever\_ or \_whate'er\_, the word \_ever\_ or \_e'er\_, which

formerly stood separate, appears to be an adjective, rather than an adverb;

though, by becoming part of the pronoun, it has now technically ceased to

be either.

OBS. 25.--The same may be said of \_soever\_ or \_soe'er\_, which is considered

as only a part of an other word even when it is written separately; as, "On

\_which\_ side \_soever\_ I cast my eyes." In Mark, iii, 28th,

\_wherewithsoever\_ is commonly printed as two words; but Alger, in his

Pronouncing Bible, more properly makes it one. Dr. Webster, in his

grammars, calls \_soever\_ a WORD; but, in his dictionaries, he does not

\_define\_ it as such. "The word \_soever\_ may be interposed between the

attribute and the name; 'how clear soever this idea of infinity,'--'how

remote soever it may seem.'--LOCKE."--\_Webster's Philosophical Gram.\_, p.

154; \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 107. "SOEVER, \_so\_ and \_ever\_, found in

compounds, as in \_whosoever, whatsoever, wheresoever\_. See these

words."--\_Webster's Dict.\_, 8vo.

OBS. 26.--The word \_only\_, (i.e., \_onely\_, or \_onelike\_,) when it relates

to a noun or a pronoun, is a definitive adjective, meaning \_single, alone,

exclusive of others\_; as, "The \_only\_ man,"--"The \_only\_ men,"--"Man

\_only\_,"--"Men \_only\_,"--"He \_only\_,"--"They \_only\_." When it relates to a

verb or a participle, it is an adverb of manner, and means \_simply, singly,

merely, barely\_; as, "We fancy that we hate flattery, when we \_only\_ hate

the manner of it."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 38. "A disinterested love of

one's country can \_only\_ subsist in small republics."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. When

it stands at the head of a clause, it is commonly a connective word,

equivalent to \_but\_, or \_except that\_; in which sense, it must be called a

conjunction, or at least a conjunctive adverb, which is nearly the same

thing; as, "\_Only\_ they would that we should remember the poor."--\_Gal.\_,

ii, 10. "For these signs are prepositions, \_only\_ they are of more constant

use than the rest."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 129.

OBS. 27.--Among our grammarians, the word "\_only\_" often passes for an

adverb, when it is in fact an adjective. Such a mistake in this single

word, has led Churchill to say of the adverb in general, "\_It's\_ place is

for the most part before adjectives, \_after nouns\_, and after verbs;"

&c.--\_New Gram.\_, p. 147. But, properly, the placing of adverbs has nothing

to do with "nouns," because adverbs do not relate to nouns. In this

author's example, "His \_arm only\_ was bare," there is no adverb; and, where

he afterwards speaks of the latitude allowable in the placing of adverbs,

alleging, "It is indifferent whether we say, 'He bared his \_arm only\_;' or,

'He bared \_only\_ his arm,'" the word \_only\_ is an adjective, in one

instance, if not in both. With this writer, and some others, the syntax of

an adverb centres mainly in the suggestion, that, "\_It's\_ propriety and

force depend on \_it's\_ position."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. Illustration: "Thus

people commonly say; '\_I only\_ spoke three words:' which properly implies,

that \_I\_, and \_no other person\_, spoke three words: when the intention of

the speaker requires: 'I spoke \_only three\_ words; that is, \_no more than

three\_ words.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 327. One might just as well say, "I spoke three

words \_only\_." But the interpretation above is hypercritical, and contrary

to that which the author himself gives in his note on the other example,

thus: "Any other situation of the adverb would make a difference. 'He

\_only\_ bared his arm;' would imply, that he did \_nothing more than\_ bare

his arm. '\_Only\_ he bared his arm;' must refer to a preceding part of the

sentence, stating something, to which the act of baring his arm was an

exception; as, 'He did it in the same manner, \_only\_ he bared his arm.' If

\_only\_ were placed immediately before \_arm\_; as, '\_He\_ bared his \_only

arm\_;' it would be an adjective, and signify, that he had but one

arm."--\_Ib.\_, p. 328. Now are not, "\_I only spoke three words\_," and, "\_He

only bared his arm\_," analogous expressions? Is not the former as good

English as the latter? \_Only\_, in both, is most naturally conceived to

belong to the verb; but either may be read in such a manner as to make it

an adjective belonging to the pronoun.

OBS. 28.--The term \_not but\_ is equivalent to two negatives that make an

affirmative; as, "\_Not but\_ that it is a wide place."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 89. "\_Non\_ quo \_non\_ latus locus sit."--\_Cic. Ac.\_, iv, 12.

It has already been stated, that \_cannot but\_ is equal to \_must\_; as, "It

is an affection which \_cannot but\_ be productive of some

distress."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 461. It seems questionable, whether \_but\_

is not here an adverb, rather than a conjunction. However this may be, by

the customary (but faulty) omission of the negative before \_but\_, in some

other sentences, that conjunction has acquired the adverbial sense of

\_only\_; and it may, when used with that signification, be called an

\_adverb\_. Thus, the text, "He hath \_not\_ grieved me \_but\_ in part." (\_2

Cor.\_, ii, 5,) might drop the negative \_not\_, and still convey the same

meaning: "He hath grieved me \_but\_ in part;" i.e., "\_only\_ in part." In the

following examples, too, \_but\_ appears to be an adverb, like \_only\_:

"Things \_but\_ slightly connected should not be crowded into one

sentence."--\_Murray's Octavo Gram., Index\_. "The assertion, however, serves

\_but\_ to show their ignorance."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 96.

"Reason itself \_but\_ gives it edge and power."--\_Pope\_.

"Born \_but\_ to die, and reasoning \_but\_ to err."--\_Id.\_

OBS. 29.--In some constructions of the word \_but\_, there is a remarkable

ambiguity; as, "There \_cannot be but one\_ capital musical pause in a

line."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 92. "A line \_admits but one\_ capital

pause."--\_Ibid.\_ Thus does a great critic, in the same paragraph, palpably

contradict himself, and not perceive it. Both expressions are equivocal. He

ought rather to have said: "A line admits \_no more than\_ one capital

pause."--"There cannot be \_more than\_ one capital musical pause in a line."

Some would say--"admits \_only\_ one"--"there can be \_only one\_." But here,

too, is some ambiguity; because \_only\_ may relate either to \_one\_, or to

the preceding verb. The use of \_only\_ for \_but\_ or \_except that\_, is not

noticed by our lexicographers; nor is it, in my opinion, a practice much to

be commended, though often adopted by men that pretend to write

grammatically: as, "Interrogative pronouns are the same as \_relative\_, ONLY

their antecedents cannot be determined till the answer is \_given to the

question\_."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 16. "A diphthong is always long; as,

\_Aurum, Cæsar\_, &c. ONLY \_præ\_, in composition before a vowel is commonly

short."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 254; \_Gould's\_, 246.

OBS. 30.--It is said by some grammarians, that, "The adverb \_there\_ is

often used as an \_expletive\_, or as a word that adds nothing to the sense;

in which case, it precedes the verb and the nominative; as, '\_There\_ is a

person at the door.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 197; \_Ingersoll's\_, 205;

\_Greenleaf's\_, 33; \_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 53. It is true, that in our

language the word \_there\_ is thus used idiomatically, as an introductory

term, when we tell what is taking, or has taken, \_place\_; but still it is a

regular adverb \_of place\_, and relates to the verb agreeably to the common

rule for adverbs. In some instances it is even repeated in the same

sentence, because, in its introductory sense, it is always unemphatical;

as, "Because \_there\_ was pasture \_there\_ for their flocks."--\_1 Chron.\_,

iv, 41. "If \_there\_ be indistinctness or disorder \_there\_, we can have no

success."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 271. "\_There, there\_ are schools adapted to

every age."--\_Woodbridge, Lit. Conv.\_, p. 78. The import of the word is

more definite, when emphasis is laid upon it; but this is no good reason

for saying, with Dr. Webster, that it is "without signification," when it

is without emphasis; or, with Dr. Priestley, that it "seems to have no

meaning whatever, except it be thought to give a small degree of

emphasis."--\_Rudiments of E. Gram.\_, p. 135.

OBS. 31.--The noun \_place\_ itself is just as loose and variable in its

meaning as the adverb \_there\_. For example; "\_There\_ is never any

difference;" i.e., "No difference ever takes \_place\_." Shall we say that

"\_place\_," in this sense, is not a noun of place? To \_take place\_, is, to

occur \_somewhere\_, or \_anywhere\_; and the unemphatic word \_there\_ is but as

indefinite in respect to place, as these other adverbs of place, or as the

noun itself. S. B. Goodenow accounts it a \_great error\_, to say that

\_there\_ is an adverb of place, when it is thus indefinite; and he chooses

to call it an "\_indefinite pronoun\_," as, "'What is \_there\_

here?'--'\_There\_ is no peace.'--'What need was \_there\_ of it?'" See his

\_Gram.\_, p. 3 and p. 11. In treating of the various classes of adverbs, I

have admitted and shown, that \_here, there\_, and \_where\_, have sometimes

the nature of pronouns, especially in such compounds as \_hereof, thereof,

whereof\_; but in this instance, I see not what advantage there is in

calling \_there\_ a "pronoun:" we have just as much reason to call \_here\_ and

\_where\_ pronouns--and that, perhaps, on all occasions. Barnard says, "In

the sentence, '\_There\_ is one glory of the sun,' &c., the adverb \_there\_

qualifies the verb \_is\_, and seems to have the force of an affirmation,

like \_truly\_"--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 234. But an adverb of the latter kind

may be used with the word \_there\_, and I perceive no particular similarity

between them: as, "\_Verily there\_ is a reward for the righteous."--\_Psal.\_,

lviii, 11. "\_Truly there\_ is a glory of the sun."

OBS. 32.--There is a vulgar error of substituting the adverb \_most\_ for

\_almost\_, as in the phrases, "\_most all\_,"--"\_most anywhere\_,"--"\_most

every day\_,"--which we sometimes hear for "\_almost all\_,"--"\_almost

anywhere\_,"--"\_almost every day\_." The fault is gross, and chiefly

colloquial, but it is sometimes met with in books; as, "But thinking he had

replied \_most\_ too rashly, he said, 'I won't answer your

question.'"--\_Wagstaff's History of Friends\_, Vol. i, p. 207.

NOTES TO RULE XXI.

NOTE I.--Adverbs must be placed in that position which will render the

sentence the most perspicuous and agreeable. Example of error: "We are in

no hazard of mistaking the sense of the author, though every word which he

uses \_be not precise\_ and exact."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 95; \_Jamieson's\_,

66. Murray says,--"though every word which he uses \_is not precise\_ and

exact."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 302. Better:--"though \_not every word\_ which he

uses, \_is precise\_ and exact."

NOTE II.--Adverbs should not be needlessly used for adjectives; nor should

they be employed when quality is to be expressed, and not manner: as, "That

the \_now\_ copies of the original text are entire."--\_S. Fisher\_. Say, "the

\_present\_ copies," or, "the \_existing\_ copies." "The arrows of calumny fall

\_harmlessly\_ at the feet of virtue."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 167; \_Merchant's

Gram.\_, 186; \_Ingersoll's\_, 10; \_Kirkham's\_, 24. Say, "fall \_harmless\_;" as

in this example: "The impending black cloud, which is regarded with so much

dread, may pass by \_harmless\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 262.

NOTE III.--With a verb of motion, most grammarians prefer \_hither,

thither\_, and \_whither\_, to \_here, there\_, and \_where\_, which are in common

use, and perhaps allowable, though not so good; as, "Come \_hither\_,

Charles,"--or, "Come \_here\_."

NOTE IV.--"To the adverbs \_hence, thence\_, and \_whence\_, the preposition

\_from\_ is frequently (though not with strict propriety) prefixed; as, \_from

hence, from whence\_."--See \_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 174. Some critics,

however, think this construction allowable, notwithstanding the former word

is implied in the latter. See \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 134; and \_L.

Murray's\_, p. 198. It is seldom elegant to use any word needlessly.

NOTE V.--The adverb \_how\_ should not be used before the conjunction \_that\_,

nor in stead of it; as, "He said \_how\_ he would go."--"Ye see \_how that\_

not many wise men are called." Expunge \_how\_. This is a vulgar error.

Somewhat similar is the use of \_how\_ for \_lest\_ or \_that not\_; as, "Be

cautious \_how\_ you offend him, i.e., \_that\_ you \_do not\_ offend him."--\_W.

Allen's Gram.\_, p. 175.

NOTE VI.--The adverb \_when, while\_, or \_where\_, is not fit to follow the

verb \_is\_ in a definition, or to introduce a clause taken substantively;

because it expresses identity, not of being, but of time or place: as,

"\_Concord\_, is \_when\_ one word agrees with another in some

accidents."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 151; \_Gould's\_, 155. Say, "Concord is \_the

agreement of\_ one word with \_an other\_ in some \_accident or\_ accidents."

NOTE VII.--The adverb \_no\_ should not be used with reference to a \_verb\_ or

a \_participle\_. Such expressions as, "Tell me whether you will \_go\_ or

\_no\_," are therefore improper: \_no\_ should be \_not\_; because the verb \_go\_

is understood after it. The meaning is, "Tell me whether you will go or

\_will not go\_;" but nobody would think of saying, "Whether you will go or

\_no go\_."

NOTE VIII.--A negation, in English, admits but one negative word; because

two negatives in the same clause, usually contradict each other, and make

the meaning affirmative. The following example is therefore ungrammatical:

"For my part, I love him not, \_nor\_ hate him \_not\_."--\_Beauties of

Shakspeare\_, p. 16. Expunge the last \_not\_, or else change \_nor\_ to \_and\_.

NOTE IX.--The words \_ever\_ and \_never\_ should be carefully distinguished

according to their sense, and not confounded with each other in their

application. Example: "The Lord reigneth, be the earth \_never so\_

unquiet."--\_Experience of St. Paul\_, p. 195. Here, I suppose, the sense to

require \_everso\_, an adverb of degree: "Be the earth \_everso\_ unquiet."

That is,--"unquiet \_in whatever degree\_."

NOTE X.--Adverbs that end in \_ly\_, are in general preferable to those forms

which, for want of this distinction, may seem like adjectives misapplied.

Example: "There would be \_scarce\_ any such thing in nature as a

folio."--\_Addison\_. Better:--"\_scarcely\_."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XXI.

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--THE PLACING OF ADVERBS.

"All that is favoured by good use, is not proper to be

retained."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, ii, p. 296.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adverb \_not\_ is not put in the most

suitable place. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 21st, "Adverbs must

be placed in that position which will render the sentence the most

perspicuous and agreeable." The sentence will be improved by placing \_not\_

before \_all\_; thus, "\_Not all\_ that is favoured by good use, is proper to

be retained."]

"Every thing favoured by good use, [is] not on that account worthy to be

retained."--\_Ib.\_, i, 369; \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 179. "Most men dream, but

all do not."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, i, 72. "By hasty composition, we

shall acquire certainly a very bad style."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 191. "The

comparisons are short, touching on one point only of resemblance."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 416. "Having had once some considerable object set before us."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 116. "The positive seems improperly to be called a degree."--\_Adam's

Gram.\_, p. 69; \_Gould's\_, 68. "In some phrases the genitive is only

used."--\_Adam\_, 159; \_Gould\_, 161. "This blunder is said actually to have

occurred."--\_Smith's Inductive Gram.\_, p. 5. "But every man is not called

James, nor every woman Mary."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 15. "Crotchets are

employed for the same purpose nearly as the parenthesis."--\_Churchill's

Gram.\_, p. 167. "There is still a greater impropriety in a double

comparative."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 78. "We have often occasion to speak

of time."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 39. "The following sentence cannot be

possibly understood."--\_Ib.\_, p. 104. "The words must be generally

separated from the context."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 155. "Words ending in

\_ator\_ have the accent generally on the penultimate."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

239. "The learned languages, with respect to voices, moods, and tenses,

are, in general, differently constructed from the English tongue."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 101. "Adverbs seem originally to have been contrived to express

compendiously in one word, what must otherwise have required two or

more."--\_Ib.\_, i, 114. "But it is only so, when the expression can be

converted into the regular form of the possessive case."--\_Ib.\_, i, 174.

"Enter, (says he) boldly, for here too there are gods."--\_Harris's Hermes\_,

p. 8. "For none work for ever so little a pittance that some cannot be

found to work for less."--\_Sedgwick's Economy\_, p. 190. "For sinners also

lend to sinners, to receive as much again."--\_Luke\_, vi, 34. "They must be

viewed exactly in the same light."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, ii, 24. "If he does

but speak to display his abilities, he is unworthy of attention."--\_Ib.,

Key\_, ii, 207.

UNDER NOTE II.--ADVERBS FOR ADJECTIVES.

"Motion upwards is commonly more agreeable than motion

downwards."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 48. "There are but two ways possibly of

justification before God."--\_Dr. Cox, on Quakerism\_, p. 413. "This

construction sounds rather harshly."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 194;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 199. "A clear conception in the mind of the learner, of

regularly and well-formed letters."--\_Com. School Journal\_, i, 66. "He was

a great hearer of \* \* \* Attalus, Sotion, Papirius, Fabianus, of whom he

makes often mention."--\_Seneca's Morals\_, p. 11. "It is only the Often

doing of a thing that makes it a Custom."--\_Divine Right of Tythes\_, p. 72.

"Because W. R. takes oft occasion to insinuate his jealousies of persons

and things."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 570. "Yet often touching will wear

gold."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 18. "Uneducated persons frequently use an

adjective, when they ought to use an adverb: as, 'The country looks

\_beautiful\_;' instead of \_beautifully\_."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 84. "The

adjective is put absolutely, or without its substantive."--\_Ash's Gram.\_,

p. 57. "A noun or pronoun in the second person, may be put absolutely in

the nominative case."--\_Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 45. "A noun or pronoun, when

put absolutely with a participle," &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 44; \_Jaudon's Gram.\_,

108. "A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands independently of the

remaining part of the sentence."--\_Wilbur and Livingston's Gram.\_, p. 24.

"At my return lately into England, I met a book intituled: 'The Iron

Age.'"--\_Cowley's Preface\_, p. v. "But he can discover no better foundation

for any of them, than the practice merely of Homer and Virgil."--\_Kames,

El. of Criticism, Introd.\_, p. xxv.

UNDER NOTE III--HERE FOR HITHER, &c.

"It is reported that the governour will come here to-morrow."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 196. "It \_has been\_ reported that the governour will come here

to-morrow."--\_Ib., Key\_, p. 227. "To catch a prospect of that lovely land

where his steps are tending."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 244. "Plautus makes

one of his characters ask another where he is going with that Vulcan shut

up in a horn; that is, with a lanthorn in his hand."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_ ii,

331. "When we left Cambridge, we intended to return there in a few

days."--\_Anonym\_. "Duncan comes here to-night."--\_Shak., Macbeth\_. "They

talked of returning here last week."--\_J. M. Putnam's Gram.\_, p. 116.

UNDER NOTE IV.--FROM HENCE, &c.

"From hence he concludes that no inference can be drawn from the meaning of

the word, that a \_constitution\_ has a higher authority than a law or

statute."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 67. "From whence we may likewise date the

period of this event."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, p. 202. "From hence it becomes

evident, that LANGUAGE, taken in the most comprehensive view, implies

certain Sounds, having certain Meanings."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 315. "They

returned to the city from whence they came out."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 135. "Respecting ellipses, some grammarians differ strangely in their

ideas; and from thence has arisen a very whimsical diversity in their

systems of grammar."--\_Author\_. "What am I and from whence? i.e. what am I,

and from whence \_am\_ I?"--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 171.

UNDER NOTE V.--THE ADVERB HOW.

"It is strange how a writer, so accurate as Dean Swift, should have

stumbled on so improper an application of this particle."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 112. "Ye know how that a good while ago God made choice among us,"

&c.--\_Acts\_, xv, 7. "Let us take care \_how\_ we sin; i.e. \_that\_ we \_do not\_

sin."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 135. "We see by these instances, how

prepositions may be necessary to connect those words, which in their

signification are not naturally connected."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 118.

"Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be

reprobates?"--\_2 Cor.\_, xiii, 5. "That thou mayest know how that the earth

is the Lord's."--\_Exod.\_, ix, 29.

UNDER NOTE VI.--WHEN, WHILE, OR WHERE.

"Ellipsis is when one or more words are wanting, to complete the

sense."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 235; \_Gould's\_, p. 229; \_B. F. Fisk's Greek

Gram.\_. 184. "Pleonasm is when a word more is added than is absolutely

necessary to express the sense."--\_Same works\_. "Hyst~eron prot~eron is

when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to

the sense, should be in the latter."--\_Adam\_, p. 237; \_Gould\_, 230.

"Hysteron proteron, \_n.\_ A rhetorical figure when that is said last which

was done first."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "A Barbarism is when a foreign or

strange word is \_made use\_ of."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 242; \_Gould's\_, 234. "A

Solecism is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed."--\_Iidem, ib.\_ "An

Idiotism is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used

in another."--\_Iid., ib.\_ "Tautology is when we either uselessly repeat the

same words, or repeat the same sense in different words."--\_Adam\_, p. 243;

\_Gould\_, 238. "Bombast is when high sounding words are used without

meaning, or upon a trifling occasion."--\_Iid., ib.\_ "Amphibology is when,

by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two

different senses."--\_Iid., ib.\_ "Irony is when one means the contrary of

what is said."--\_Adam\_, p. 247; \_Gould\_, 237. "The Periphrasis, or

Circumlocution, is when several words are employed to express what might be

expressed in fewer."--\_Iid., ib.\_ "Hyperbole is when a thing is magnified

above the truth,"--\_Adam\_, p. 249; \_Gould\_, 240. "Personification is when

we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to

abstract qualities."--\_Iid., ib.\_ "Apostrophe, or Address, is when the

speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself

to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature,

as if endowed with sense and reason."--\_Iid., ib.\_ "A Simile or Comparison

is when the resemblance between two objects, whether \_real\_ or \_imaginary\_,

is expressed in form."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 223. "Simile, or Comparison,

is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to

another."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 250; \_Gould's\_, 240. "Antithesis, or

Opposition, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make

them appear in the more striking light."--\_Iid., ib.\_ "Description, or

Imagery, [is] when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done

before our eyes."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 250. "Emphasis is when a particular

stress is laid on some word in a sentence."--\_Ib.\_ "Epanorthosis, or

Correction, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last

said."--\_Ib.\_ "Paralepsis, or Omission, is when one pretends to omit or

pass by, what he at the same time declares."--\_Ib.\_ "Incrementum, or Climax

in sense, is when one member rises above another to the highest."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 251. "A Metonymy is where the cause is put for the effect, or the effect

for the cause; the container for the thing contained; or the sign for the

thing signified."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 223. "Agreement is when one word

is like another in number, case, gender, or person."--\_Frost's Gram.\_, p.

43; \_Greenleaf's\_, 32. "Government is when one word causes another to be in

some particular number, person, or case."--\_Webster's Imp. Gram.\_, p. 89;

\_Greenleaf's\_, 32; \_Frost's\_, 43. "Fusion is while some solid substance is

converted into a fluid by heat."--\_B.\_ "A Proper Diphthong is where both

the Vowels are sounded together; as, \_oi\_ in \_Voice, ou\_ in \_House\_."--

\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 10. "An Improper Diphthong is where the Sound of but

one of the two Vowels is heard; as \_e\_ in \_People\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11.

UNDER NOTE VII.--THE ADVERB NO FOR NOT.

"An adverb is joined to a verb to show how, or whether or no, or when, or

where one is, does, or suffers."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 62. "We must be

immortal, whether we will or no."--\_Maturin's Sermons\_, p. 33. "He cares

not whether the world was made for Cæsar or no."--\_American Quarterly

Review\_. "I do not know whether they are out or no."--\_Byron's Letters\_.

"Whether it can be proved or no, is not the thing."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p.

84. "Whether or no he makes use of the means commanded by God."--\_Ib.\_,, p.

164. "Whether it pleases the world or no, the care is taken."--

\_L'Estrange's Seneca\_, p. 5. "How comes this to be never heard of nor in

the least questioned, whether the Law was undoubtedly of Moses's writing or

no?"--\_Bp. Tomline's Evidences\_, p. 44. "Whether he be a sinner or no, I

know not."--\_John\_, ix, 25. "Can I make men live, whether they will or

no?"--\_Shak.\_

"Can hearts, not free, be try'd whether they serve

Willing or no, who will but what they must?"--\_Milton, P. L.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--OF DOUBLE NEGATIVES.

"We need not, nor do not, confine the purposes of God."--\_Bentley\_. "I

cannot by no means allow him that."--\_Idem\_. "We must try whether or no we

cannot increase the Attention by the Help of the Senses."--\_Brightland's

Gram.\_, p. 263. "There is nothing more admirable nor more useful."--\_Horne

Tooke\_, Vol. i, p. 20. "And what in no time to come he can never be said to

have done, he can never be supposed to do."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p.

345. "No skill could obviate, nor no remedy dispel, the terrible

infection."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 114. "Prudery cannot be an indication

neither of sense nor of taste."--\_Spurzheim, on Education\_, p. 21. "But

that scripture, nor no other, speaks not of imperfect faith."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 172. "But this scripture, nor none other, proves not that faith

was or is always accompanied with doubting."--\_Ibid.\_ "The light of Christ

is not nor cannot be darkness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 252. "Doth not the Scripture,

which cannot lie, give none of the saints this testimony?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 379.

"Which do not continue, nor are not binding."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. iii. p. 79. "It

not being perceived directly no more than the air."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p.

331. "Let's be no Stoics, nor no stocks, I pray."--\_Shak., Shrew\_. "Where

there is no marked nor peculiar character in the style."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 175. "There can be no rules laid down, nor no manner

recommended."--\_Sheridan's Lect.\_, p. 163.

"\_Bates\_. 'He hath not told his thought to the king?'

\_K. Henry\_. 'No; nor it is not meet he should.'"--\_Shak\_.

UNDER NOTE IX.--EVER AND NEVER.

"The prayer of Christ is more than sufficient both to strengthen us, be we

never so weak; and to overthrow all adversary power, be it never so

strong."--\_Hooker\_. "He is like to have no share in it, or to be ever the

better for it."--\_Law and Grace\_, p. 23. "In some parts of Chili, it seldom

or ever rains."--\_Willetts's Geog\_. "If Pompey shall but never so little

seem to like it."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 346. "Latin: 'Si Pompeius

\_paulum\_ modò ostenderit sibi placere.' \_Cic\_. i, 5."--\_Ib.\_ "Though never

such a power of dogs and hunters pursue him."--\_Walker, ib.\_ "Latin:

'\_Quamlibet\_ magnâ canum et venantium urgente vi.' \_Plin\_. l. 18, c.

16."--\_Ib.\_ "Though you be never so excellent."--\_Walker, ib.\_ "Latin:

'\_Quantumvis\_ licet excellas.' \_Cic. de Amic\_."--\_Ib.\_ "If you do amiss

never so little."--\_Walker, ib.\_ "Latin: 'Si \_tantillum\_ peccâssis.'

\_Plaut. Rud.\_ 4, 4"--\_Ib.\_ "If we cast our eyes never so little

down."--\_Walker, ib.\_ "Latin: 'Si \_tantulum\_ oculos dejecerimus.' \_Cic. 7.

Ver\_."--\_Ib.\_ "A wise man scorneth nothing, be it never so small or

homely."--\_Book of Thoughts\_, p. 37. "Because they have seldom or ever an

opportunity of learning them at all."--\_Clarkson's Prize-Essay\_, p. 170.

"We seldom or ever see those forsaken who trust in God."--\_Atterbury\_.

"Where, playing with him at bo-peep,

He solved all problems, ne'er so deep."--\_Hudibras\_.

UNDER NOTE X.--OF THE FORM OF ADVERBS.

"One can scarce think that Pope was capable of epic or tragic poetry; but

within a certain limited region, he has been outdone by no poet."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 403. "I, who now read, have near finished this

chapter."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 82. "And yet, to refine our taste with

respect to beauties of art or of nature, is scarce endeavoured in any

seminary of learning."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. viii. "By the

Numbers being confounded, and the Possessives wrong applied, the Passage is

neither English nor Grammar."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 123. "The letter G

is wrong named \_jee\_."--\_Creighton's Dict.\_, p. viii. "Last; Remember that

in science, as in morals, authority cannot make right, what, in itself, is

wrong."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 194. "They regulate our taste even

where we are scarce sensible of them."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 96.

"Slow action, for example, is imitated by words pronounced slow."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 257. "Sure, if it be to profit withal, it must be in order to

save."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 366. "Which is scarce possible at

best."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 67. "Our wealth being near

finished."--HARRIS: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 80.

CHAPTER IX.--CONJUNCTIONS.

The syntax of Conjunctions consists, not (as L. Murray and others

erroneously teach) in "their power of determining the mood of verbs," or

the "cases of nouns and pronouns," but in the simple fact, that they link

together such and such terms, and thus "mark the connexions of human

thought."--\_Beattie\_.

RULE XXII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions connect words, sentences, or parts of sentences: as, "Let

there be no strife, I pray thee, between me \_and\_ thee, \_and\_ between my

herdmen \_and\_ thy herdmen; \_for\_ we are brethren."--\_Gen.\_, xiii, 8.

"Ah! \_if\_ she lend not arms \_as well as\_ rules.

What can she more \_than\_ tell us we are fools?"--\_Pope.\_

EXCEPTION FIRST.

The conjunction \_that\_ sometimes serves merely to introduce a sentence

which is made the subject or the object of a finite verb;[433] as, "\_That\_

mind is not matter, is certain."

"\_That\_ you have wronged me, doth appear in this."--\_Shak.\_

"\_That\_ time is mine, O Mead! to thee, I owe."--\_Young\_.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

When two corresponding conjunctions occur, in their usual order, the former

should generally be parsed as referring to the latter, which is more

properly the connecting word; as, "\_Neither\_ sun \_nor\_ stars in many days

appeared."--\_Acts\_, xxvii, 20. "\_Whether\_ that evidence has been afforded

[\_or\_ not,] is a matter of investigation."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 18.

EXCEPTION THIRD. \_Either\_, corresponding to \_or\_, and \_neither\_,

corresponding to \_nor\_ or \_not\_, are sometimes transposed, so as to repeat

the disjunction or negation at the end of the sentence; as, "Where then was

their capacity of standing, \_or\_ his \_either\_?"--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii,

359. "It is \_not\_ dangerous \_neither\_."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 135.

"He is very tall, but \_not\_ too tall \_neither.\_"--\_Spect.\_, No. 475.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XXII.

OBS. 1.--Conjunctions that connect particular \_words\_, generally join

similar parts of speech in a common dependence on some other term. Hence,

if the words connected be such as have \_cases\_, they will of course be in

the same case; as, "For \_me\_ and \_thee\_"--\_Matt.\_, xvii, 27. "Honour thy

\_father\_ and thy \_mother\_."--\_Ib.\_, xviii, 19. Here the latter noun or

pronoun is connected by \_and\_ to the former, and governed by the same

preposition or verb. Conjunctions themselves have no government, unless the

questionable phrase "\_than whom\_" may be reckoned an exception. See Obs.

17th below, and others that follow it.

OBS. 2.--Those conjunctions which connect \_sentences\_ or \_clauses\_,

commonly unite one sentence or clause to an other, either as an additional

assertion, or as a condition, a cause, or an end, of what is asserted. The

conjunction is placed \_between\_ the terms which it connects, except there

is a transposition, and then it stands before the dependent term, and

consequently at the beginning of the whole sentence: as, "He taketh away

the first, \_that\_ he may establish the second."--\_Heb.\_, x, 9. "\_That\_ he

may establish the second, he taketh away the first."

OBS. 3.--The term that follows a conjunction, is in some instances a

\_phrase\_ of several words, yet not therefore a whole clause or member,

unless we suppose it elliptical, and supply what will make it such: as,

"And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, AS \_to the Lord\_, AND \_not unto

men\_"--\_Col.\_, iii, 23. If we say, this means, "as \_doing it\_ to the Lord,

and not \_as doing it\_ unto men," the terms are still mere phrases; but if

we say, the sense is, "as \_if ye did it\_ to the Lord, and not \_as if ye did

it\_ unto men," they are clauses, or sentences. Churchill says, "The office

of the conjunction is, to connect one \_word\_ with an other, or one \_phrase\_

with an other."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 152. But he uses the term \_phrase\_ in a

more extended sense than I suppose it will strictly bear: he means by it, a

\_clause\_, or \_member\_; that is, a sentence which forms a part of a greater

sentence.

OBS. 4.--What is the office of this part of speech, according to Lennie,

Bullions, Brace, Hart, Hiley, Smith, M'Culloch, Webster, Wells, and others,

who say that it "joins \_words\_ and \_sentences\_ together," (see Errors on p.

434 of this work,) it is scarcely possible to conceive. If they imagine it

to connect "\_words\_" on the one side, to "\_sentences\_" on the other; this

is plainly absurd, and contrary to facts. If they suppose it to join

sentence to sentence, by merely connecting word to word, in a joint

relation; this also is absurd, and self-contradictory. Again, if they mean,

that the conjunction sometimes connects word with word, and sometimes,

sentence with sentence; \_this sense they have not expressed\_, but have

severally puzzled their readers by an ungrammatical use of the word

"\_and\_." One of the best among them says, "In \_the sentence\_, 'He \_and\_ I

must go,' the word \_and\_ unites \_two sentences\_, and thus \_avoids\_ an

unnecessary repetition; thus instead of saying, 'He must go,' 'I must go,'

we connect \_the words He, I\_, as the same thing is affirmed of \_both\_,

namely, \_must go\_."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 53. Here is the incongruous

suggestion, that \_by connecting words only\_, the conjunction in fact

\_connects sentences\_; and the stranger blunder concerning \_those words\_,

that "the same thing is affirmed of \_both\_, namely, [\_that they\_] \_must

go\_." Whereas it is plain, that nothing is affirmed of either: for "\_He and

I must go\_," only affirms of \_him\_ and \_me\_, that "\_we must go\_." And again

it is plain, that \_and\_ here connects nothing but the two pronouns; for no

one will say, that, "\_He and I must go together\_" is a compound sentence,

capable of being resolved into two simple sentences; and if, "\_He and I

must go\_," is compound because it is equivalent to, "He must go, and I must

go;" so is, "\_We must go\_," for the same reason, though it has but one

nominative and one verb. "\_He and I\_ were present," is rightly given by

Hiley as an example of \_two pronouns\_ connected together by \_and\_. (See

\_his Gram.\_, p. 105.) But, of \_verbs\_ connected to each other, he absurdly

supposes the following to be examples: "He spake, \_and\_ it was done."--"I

know it, \_and\_ I can prove it."--"Do you say so, \_and\_ can you prove

it?"--\_Ib.\_ Here \_and\_ connects \_sentences\_, and not particular \_words\_.

OBS. 5.--Two or three conjunctions sometimes come together; as, "What

rests, \_but that\_ the mortal sentence pass?"--\_Milton\_. "\_Nor yet that\_ he

should offer himself often."--\_Heb.\_, ix, 25. These may be severally parsed

as "connecting what precedes and what follows," and the observant reader

will not fail to notice, that such combinations of connecting particles are

sometimes required by the sense; but, since nothing that is needless, is

really proper, conjunctions should not be unnecessarily accumulated: as,

"\_But\_ AND \_if\_ that evil servant say in his heart," &c.--\_Matt.\_, xxiv,

48. Greek, "[Greek: Ean de eipæ o kakos donlos ekeinos,]" &c. Here is no

\_and\_. "\_But\_ AND \_if\_ she depart."--\_1 Cor.\_, vii, 11. This is almost a

literal rendering of the Greek, "[Greek: Ean de kai choristhæ.]"--yet

either \_but\_ or \_and\_ is certainly useless. "In several cases," says

Priestley, "we content ourselves, now, with fewer conjunctive particles

than our ancestors \_did\_ [say \_used\_]. Example: '\_So\_ AS \_that\_ his

doctrines were embraced by great numbers.' \_Universal Hist.\_, Vol. 29, p.

501. \_So that\_ would have been much easier, and better."--\_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 139. Some of the poets have often used the word \_that\_ as an

expletive, to fill the measure of their verse; as,

"When \_that\_ the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept."--\_Shakspeare\_.

"If \_that\_ he be a dog, beware his fangs."--\_Id.\_

"That made him pine away and moulder,

As though \_that\_ he had been no soldier."--\_Butler's Poems\_, p. 164.

OBS. 6.--W. Allen remarks, that, "\_And\_ is sometimes introduced to engage

our attention to a following word or phrase; as, 'Part pays, \_and\_ justly,

the deserving steer.' [\_Pope.\_] 'I see thee fall, \_and\_ by Achilles' hand.'

[\_Id.\_]"--\_Allen's E. Gram.\_, p. 184. The like idiom, he says, occurs in

these passages of Latin: "'Forsan et hæc olim meminisse juvabit.' \_Virg\_.

'Mors \_et\_ fugacem persequitur virum.' \_Hor\_."--\_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 184.

But it seems to me, that \_and\_ and \_et\_ are here regular connectives. The

former implies a repetition of the preceding verb: as, "Part pays, \_and

justly pays\_, the deserving steer."--"I see thee fall, \_and fall by

Achilles' hand\_." The latter refers back to what was said before: thus,

"Perhaps it will \_also\_ hereafter delight you to recount these

evils."--"\_And\_ death pursues the man that flees." In the following text,

the conjunction is more like an expletive; but even here it suggests an

extension of the discourse then in progress: "Lord, \_and\_ what shall this

man do?"--\_John\_, xxi, 21. "[Greek: Kurie, outos de ti;]"--"Domine, hic

\_autem\_ quid?"--\_Beza\_.

OBS. 7.--The conjunction \_as\_ often unites words that are in \_apposition\_,

or in \_the same case\_; as, "He offered \_himself\_ AS a \_journeyman\_."--"I

assume \_it\_ AS a \_fact\_."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 94. "In an other example

of the same kind, the \_earth\_, AS a common \_mother\_, is animated to give

refuge against a father's unkindness."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol ii, p.

168. "And then to offer \_himself\_ up AS a \_sacrifice\_ and \_propitiation\_

for them."--\_Scougal\_, p. 99. So, likewise, when an intransitive verb takes

the same case after as before it, by Rule 6th; as, "\_Johnson\_ soon after

engaged AS \_usher\_ in a school."--\_L. Murray\_. "\_He\_ was employed AS

\_usher\_." In all these examples, the case that follows \_as\_, is determined

by that which precedes. If after the verb "\_engaged\_" we supply \_himself,

usher\_ becomes objective, and is in apposition with the pronoun, and not in

agreement with \_Johnson\_: "He engaged \_himself\_ as \_usher\_." One late

writer, ignorant or regardless of the analogy of General Grammar, imagines

this case to be an "objective governed by the conjunction \_as\_," according

to the following rule: "The conjunction \_as\_, when it takes the meaning of

\_for\_, or \_in the character of\_, governs the objective case; as, Addison,

\_as\_ a \_writer\_ of prose, is highly distinguished."--\_J. M. Putnam's

Gram.\_, p. 113. S. W. Clark, in his grammar published in 1848, sets \_as\_ in

his list of \_prepositions\_, with this example: "'That England can spare

from her service such men \_as\_ HIM.'--\_Lord Brougham\_."--\_Clark's Practical

Gram.\_, p. 92. And again: "When the second term of a \_Comparison of

equality\_ is a Noun, or Pronoun, the \_Preposition\_ AS is commonly used.

Example--'He hath died to redeem such a rebel \_as\_ ME.'--\_Wesley\_."

Undoubtedly, Wesley and Brougham here erroneously supposed the \_as\_ to

connect \_words only\_, and consequently to require them to be in the same

case, agreeably to OBS. 1st, above; but a moment's reflection on the sense,

should convince any one, that the construction requires the nominative

forms \_he\_ and \_I\_, with the verbs \_is\_ and \_am\_ understood.

OBS. 8.--The conjunction \_as\_ may also be used between an adjective or a

participle and the noun to which the adjective or participle relates; as,

"It does not appear that brutes have the least reflex sense of \_actions\_ AS

\_distinguished\_ from events; or that will and design, which constitute the

very nature of \_actions\_ AS \_such\_, are at all an object of their

perception."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 277.

OBS. 9.--\_As\_ frequently has the force of a \_relative pronoun\_, and when it

evidently sustains the relation of a case, it ought to be called, and

generally \_is\_ called, a pronoun, rather than a conjunction; as, "Avoid

such \_as are\_ vicious,"--\_Anon\_. "But as many \_as received\_ him,"

&c.--\_John\_, i, 12. "We have reduced the terms into as small a number \_as

was\_ consistent with perspicuity and distinction."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_,

p. ix. Here \_as\_ represents a noun, and while it serves to connect the two

parts of the sentence, it is also the subject of a verb. These being the

true characteristics of a relative pronoun, it is proper to refer the word

to that class. But when a clause or a sentence is the antecedent, it is

better to consider the \_as\_ a conjunction, and to supply the pronoun \_it\_,

if the writer has not used it; as, "He is angry, \_as [it] appears\_ by this

letter." Horne Tooke says, "The truth is, that AS is \_also an article\_; and

(however and whenever used in English) means the same as \_It\_, or \_That\_,

or \_Which\_."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 223. But what definition

he would give to \_"an article\_," does not appear.

OBS. 10.--In some examples, it seems questionable whether \_as\_ ought to be

reckoned a pronoun, or ought rather to be parsed as a conjunction after

which a nominative is understood; as, "He then read the conditions \_as

follow\_."--"The conditions are \_as follow\_."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 106.

"The principal evidences on which this assertion is grounded, are \_as

follow\_."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 166. "The Quiescent verbs are \_as

follow\_."--\_Pike's Heb. Lex.\_, p. 184. "The other numbers are duplications

of these, and proceed \_as follow\_"--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of Lang.\_, Vol. ii,

p. 35. "The most eminent of the kennel are bloodhounds, which lead the van,

and are \_as follow\_."--\_Steele, Tattler\_, No. 62. "His words are \_as

follow\_."--\_Spect.\_, No. 62. "The words are \_as follow\_."--\_Addison,

Spect.\_, No. 513. "The objections that are raised against it as a tragedy,

are \_as follow\_."--\_Gay, Pref. to What d' ye call it\_. "The particulars are

\_as follow\_."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 93. "The principal interjections in

English are \_as follow\_."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 81. In all these instances,

one may suppose the final clause to mean, "as \_they here\_ follow;"--or,

supposing \_as\_ to be a pronoun, one may conceive it to mean, "\_such\_ as

follow." But some critical writers, it appears, prefer the singular verb,

"\_as follows\_" Hear Campbell: "When a verb is used \_impersonally\_, it ought

undoubtedly to be in the singular number, whether the neuter pronoun be

expressed or understood: and when no nominative in the sentence can

regularly be construed with the verb, it ought to be considered as

impersonal. For this reason, analogy as well as usage \_favour\_ [say

\_favours\_] this mode of expression, 'The conditions of the agreement

were \_as follows\_;' and not '\_as follow\_.' A few late writers have

inconsiderately adopted this last form through a mistake of the

construction. For the same reason we ought to say, 'I shall consider his

censures so far only as \_concerns\_ my friend's conduct;' and not 'so far as

\_concern\_.'"--\_Philosophy of Rhet.\_, p. 229. It is too much to say, at

least of one of these sentences, that there is no nominative with which the

plural verb can be regularly construed. In the former, the word \_as\_ may be

said to be a plural nominative; or, if we will have this to be a

conjunction, the pronoun \_they\_, representing \_conditions\_, may be

regularly supplied, as above. In the latter, indeed, \_as\_ is not a pronoun;

because it refers to "\_so far\_," which is not a noun. But the sentence is

\_bad English\_; because the verb \_concern\_ or \_concerns\_ is improperly left

without a nominative. Say therefore, 'I shall consider his censures so far

only as \_they concern\_ my friend's conduct;'--or, 'so far only as \_my

friend's conduct is concerned\_.' The following is an other example which I

conceive to be wrong; because, with an adverb for its antecedent, \_as\_ is

made a nominative: "They ought therefore to be uttered \_as quickly as is\_

consistent with distinct articulation."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 76. Say

rather, "They ought therefore to be uttered \_with as much rapidity\_ as is

consistent with distinct articulation."

OBS. 11.--Lindley Murray was so much puzzled with Tooke's notion of \_as\_,

and Campbell's doctrine of the \_impersonal verb\_, that he has expressly

left his pupils to hesitate and doubt, like himself, whether one ought to

say "\_as follows\_" or "\_as follow\_," when the preceding noun is plural;

or--to furnish an alternative, (if they choose it,) he shows them at last

how they may \_dodge the question\_, by adopting some other phraseology. He

begins thus: "\_Grammarians\_ differ in opinion, respecting the propriety of

the following modes of expression: 'The arguments advanced were nearly \_as

follows\_;' 'the positions were, \_as appears\_, incontrovertible.'"--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 146. Then follows a detail of suggestions from

Campbell and others, all the quotations being anonymous, or at least

without definite references. Omitting these, I would here say of the two

examples given, that they are not parallel instances. For, "\_as follows\_,"

refers to what the arguments were,--to the things themselves, considered

plurally, and immediately to be exhibited; wherefore the expression ought

rather to have been, "\_as follow\_," or, "\_as they here follow\_." But, "\_as

appears\_" means "\_as it appears\_," or "\_as the case now appears\_;" and one

of these plain modes of expression would have been much preferable, because

the \_as\_ is here evidently nothing but a conjunction.

OBS. 12.--"The diversity of sentiment on this subject," says L. Murray,

"and the respectability of the different opponents, will naturally induce

\_the readers\_ to pause and reflect, before they decide."--\_Octavo Gram.\_,

p. 147. The equivalent expressions by means of which he proposes to evade

at last the dilemma, are the following: "The arguments advanced were nearly

such as follow;"--"The arguments advanced were nearly of the following

nature;"--"The following are nearly the arguments which were advanced;"--

"The arguments advanced were nearly those which follow:"--"These, or nearly

these, were the arguments advanced;"--"The positions were such as appear

incontrovertible;"--"It appears that the positions were incontrovertible;"

--"That the positions were incontrovertible, is apparent;"--"The positions

were apparently incontrovertible;"--"In appearance, the positions were

incontrovertible."--\_Ibid.\_ If to shun the expression will serve our turn,

surely here are ways enough! But to those who "pause and reflect" with the

intention \_to decide\_, I would commend the following example:

"Reconciliation was offered, on conditions as moderate as \_were\_ consistent

with a permanent union."--\_Murray's Key\_, under Rule 1. Here Murray

supposes "\_was\_" to be wrong, and accordingly changes it to "\_were\_," by

the Rule, "A verb must agree with its nominative case in number and

person." But the amendment is a pointed rejection of Campbell's "impersonal

verb," or verb which "has no nominative;" and if the singular is not right

here, the rhetorician's respectable authority vouches only for a catalogue

of errors. Again, if this verb must be \_were\_ in order to agree with its

nominative, it is still not clear that \_as\_, is, or ought to be, the

nominative; because the meaning may perhaps be better expressed thus:--"on

conditions as moderate \_as any that were\_ consistent with a permanent

union."

OBS. 13.--A late writer expresses his decision of the foregoing question

thus: "Of all the different opinions on a grammatical subject, which have

arisen in the literary world, there scarcely appears one more indefensible

than that of supposing \_as follows\_ to be an impersonal verb, and to be

correctly used in such sentences as this. 'The conditions were \_as

follows\_.' Nay, we are told that, "A few late writers have adopted this

form, 'The conditions were as follow,' \_inconsiderately\_;" and, to prove

this charge of inconsiderateness, the following sentence is brought

forward: 'I shall consider his censure [\_censures\_ is the word used by

Campbell and by Murray] so far only \_as concern\_ my friend's conduct.'

which should be, it is added, '\_as concerns\_, and not \_as concern\_.' If

analogy, simplicity, or syntactical authority, is of any value in our

resolution of the sentence, 'The conditions were as follows,' the word \_as\_

is as evident a relative as language can afford. It is undoubtedly

equivalent to \_that\_ or \_which\_, and relates to its antecedent \_those\_ or

\_such\_ understood, and should have been the nominative to the verb

\_follow\_; the sentence, in its present form, being inaccurate. The second

sentence is by no means a parallel one. The word \_as\_ is a conjunction; and

though it has, as a relative, a reference to its antecedent \_so\_, yet in

its capacity of a mere conjunction, it cannot possibly be the nominative

case to any verb. It should be, '\_it concerns\_.' Whenever \_as\_ relates to

an \_adverbial\_ antecedent; as in the sentence, '\_So\_ far \_as\_ it concerns

me,' it is merely a conjunction; but when it refers to an \_adjective\_

antecedent; as in the sentence, 'The business is \_such as\_ concerns me;' it

must be a relative, and susceptible of case, whether its antecedent is

expressed or understood; being, in fact, the nominative to the verb

\_concerns\_."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 145. It will be perceived by the

preceding remarks, that I do not cite what is here said, as believing it to

be in all respects well said, though it is mainly so. In regard to the

point at issue, I shall add but one critical authority more: "'The

circumstances were as \_follows\_.' Several grammarians and critics have

approved this phraseology: I am inclined, however, to concur with those who

prefer '\_as follow\_.'"--\_Crombie, on Etym. and Synt.\_, p. 388.

OBS. 14.--The conjunction \_that\_ is frequently understood; as, "It is

seldom [\_that\_] their counsels are listened to."--\_Robertson's Amer.\_, i,

316. "The truth is, [\_that\_] grammar is very much neglected among

us."--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. vi. "The Sportsman believes [\_that\_] there

is Good in his Chace [chase.]"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 296.

"Thou warnst me [\_that\_] I have done amiss;

I should have earlier looked to this."--\_Scott\_.

OBS. 15.--After \_than\_ or \_as\_, connecting the terms of a comparison, there

is usually an ellipsis of some word or words. The construction of the words

employed may be seen, when the ellipsis is supplied; as, "They are stronger

\_than we\_" [are.]--\_Numb.\_, xiii. 31. "Wisdom is better \_than weapons\_ of

war" [are.]--\_Eccl.\_, ix, 18. "He does nothing who endeavours to do more

\_than\_ [what] \_is allowed\_ to humanity."--\_Dr. Johnson\_. "My punishment is

greater \_than\_ [what] \_I can bear\_."--\_Gen.\_, iv, 13. "Ralph gave him more

\_than I\_" [gave him.]--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 351. "Ralph gave him more

\_than\_ [he gave] \_me\_."\_--Ibid.\_ "Revelation, surely, was never intended

for such \_as he\_" [is.]--\_Campbell's Four Gospels\_, p. iv. "Let such as

\_him\_ sneer if they will."--\_Liberator\_, Vol. ix, p. 182. Here \_him\_ ought

to be \_he\_, according to Rule 2d, because the text speaks of such as \_he

is\_ or \_was\_. "'You were as innocent of it \_as me\_:' 'He did it \_as well as

me\_.' In both places it ought to be \_I\_: that is, \_as I was, as I

did\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 352.

"Rather let such poor souls \_as you\_ and \_I\_

Say that the holidays are drawing nigh."--\_Swift\_.

OBS. 16.--The doctrine above stated, of ellipses after \_than\_ and \_as\_,

proceeds on the supposition that these words \_are conjunctions\_, and that

they connect, not particular words merely, but sentences, or clauses. It is

the common doctrine of nearly all our grammarians, and is doubtless liable

to fewer objections than any other theory that ever has been, or ever can

be, devised in lieu of it. Yet \_as\_ is not always a conjunction; nor, when

it is a conjunction, does it always connect sentences; nor, when it

connects sentences, is there always an ellipsis; nor, when there is an

ellipsis, is it always quite certain what that ellipsis is. All these facts

have been made plain, by observations that have already been bestowed on

the word: and, according to some grammarians, the same things may severally

be affirmed of the word \_than\_. But most authors consider \_than\_ to be

always a conjunction, and generally, if not always, to connect \_sentences\_.

Johnson and Webster, in their dictionaries, mark it for an \_adverb\_; and

the latter says of it, "This word signifies also \_then\_, both in English

and Dutch."--\_Webster's Amer. Dict.\_, 8vo, \_w. Than\_. But what he means by

"\_also\_," I know not; and surely, in no English of this age, is \_than\_

equivalent to \_then\_, or \_then\_ to \_than\_. The ancient practice of putting

\_then\_ for \_than\_, is now entirely obsolete;[434] and, as we have no other

term of the same import, most of our expositors merely explain \_than\_ as "a

particle used in comparison."--\_Johnson, Worcester, Maunder\_. Some absurdly

define it thus: "THAN, \_adv\_. Placed in comparison."--\_Walker\_, (Rhym.

Dict.,) \_Jones, Scott\_. According to this definition, \_than\_ would be a

\_participle\_! But, since an express comparison necessarily implies a

connexion between different terms, it cannot well be denied that \_than\_ is

a connective word; wherefore, not to detain the reader with any profitless

controversy, I shall take it for granted that this word is always a

conjunction. That it always connects sentences, I do not affirm; because

there are instances in which it is difficult to suppose it to connect

anything more than particular words: as, "Less judgement \_than\_ wit is more

sail \_than\_ ballast."--\_Penn's Maxims\_. "With no less eloquence \_than\_

freedom. 'Pari eloquentiâ \_ac\_ libertate.' \_Tacitus\_."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 200. "Any comparison between these two classes of writers,

cannot be other \_than\_ vague and loose."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 347. "This

\_far more than\_ compensates all those little negligences."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200.

"Remember Handel? Who that was not born

Deaf as the dead to harmony, forgets,

Or can, \_the more than Homer\_ of his age?"--\_Cowper\_.

OBS. 17.--When any two declinable words are connected by \_than\_ or \_as\_,

they are almost always, according to the true idiom of our language, to be

put in the \_same case\_, whether we suppose an ellipsis in the construction

of the latter, or not; as, "My \_Father\_ is greater than \_I\_."--\_Bible\_.

"What do \_ye\_ more than \_others\_?"--\_Matt.\_, v, 47. "More \_men\_ than

\_women\_ were there."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 114. "Entreat \_him\_ as a

\_father\_, and the younger \_men\_ as \_brethren\_."--\_1 Tim.\_, v, 1. "I would

that all \_men\_ were even as \_I\_ myself."--\_1 Cor.\_, vii, 7. "Simon, son of

Jonas, lovest thou me more than these?"--\_John\_, xxi, 15. This last text is

manifestly \_ambiguous\_; so that some readers will doubt whether it

means--"more than \_thou lovest these\_," or--"more than \_these love me\_." Is

not this because there is an \_ellipsis\_ in the sentence, and such a one as

may be variously conceived and supplied? The original too is ambiguous, but

not for the same reason: "[Greek: Simon Iona, agapas me pleion

touton];"--And so is the Latin of the Vulgate and of Montanus: "Simon Jona,

diligis me \_plus his\_?" Wherefore Beza expressed it differently: "Simon

\_fili Jonæ\_, diligis me plus \_quâm hi\_?" The French Bible has it: "Simon,

fils de Jona, m'aimes-tu plus que \_ne font\_ ceux-ci?" And the expression in

English should rather have been, "Lovest thou me more than \_do\_ these?"

OBS. 18.--The comparative degree, in Greek, is said to govern the genitive

case; in Latin, the ablative: that is, the genitive or the ablative is

sometimes put after this degree without any connecting particle

corresponding to \_than\_, and without producing a compound sentence. We have

examples in the phrases, "[Greek: pleion touton]" and "\_plus his\_," above.

Of such a construction our language admits no real example; that is, no

exact parallel. But we have an imitation of it in the phrase \_than whom\_,

as in this hackneyed example from Milton:

"Which, when Beëlzebub perceived, \_than whom\_,

Satan except, none higher sat," &c.--\_Paradise Lost\_, B. ii, l. 300.

The objective, \_whom\_, is here preferred to the nominative, \_who\_, because

the Latin ablative is commonly rendered by the former case, rather than by

the latter: but this phrase is no more explicable according to the usual

principles of English grammar, than the error of putting the objective case

for a version of the ablative absolute. If the imitation is to be judged

allowable, it is to us \_a figure of syntax\_--an obvious example of

\_Enallagè\_, and of that form of Enallagè, which is commonly called

\_Antiptosis\_, or the putting of one case for an other.

OBS. 19.--This use of \_whom\_ after \_than\_ has greatly puzzled and misled

our grammarians; many of whom have thence concluded that \_than\_ must needs

be, at least in this instance, a \_preposition\_,[435] and some have extended

the principle beyond this, so as to include \_than which, than whose\_ with

its following noun, and other nominatives which they will have to be

objectives; as, "I should seem guilty of ingratitude, \_than which\_ nothing

is more shameful." See \_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 104. "Washington, \_than whose

fame\_ naught earthly can be purer."--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 204. "You have

given him more than \_I\_. You have sent her as much as \_he\_."--\_Buchanan's

Eng. Syntax\_, p. 116. These last two sentences are erroneously called by

their author, "\_false syntax\_;" not indeed with a notion that \_than\_ and

\_as\_ are prepositions, but on the false supposition that the preposition

\_to\_ must necessarily be understood between them and the pronouns, as it is

between the preceding verbs and the pronouns \_him\_ and \_her\_. But, in fact,

"You have given him more than \_I\_," is perfectly good English; the last

clause of which plainly means--"more than I \_have given him\_." And, "You

have sent her as much as \_he\_," will of course be understood to mean--"as

much as he \_has sent her\_;" but here, because the auxiliary implied is

different from the one expressed, it might have been as well to have

inserted it: thus, "\_You have\_ sent her as much as \_he has\_." "She reviles

you as much as \_he\_," is also good English, though found, with the

foregoing, among Buchanan's examples of "false syntax."

OBS. 20.--Murray's twentieth Rule of syntax avers, that, "When the

qualities of different things are compared, the latter noun or pronoun is

\_not governed\_ by the conjunction \_than\_ or \_as\_, but agrees with the

verb," &c.--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 214; \_Russell's Gram.\_, 103; \_Bacon's\_, 51;

\_Alger's\_, 71; \_Smith's\_, 179; \_Fisk's\_, 138. To this rule, the great

Compiler and most of his followers say, that \_than whom\_ "is an exception."

or "\_seems to form\_ an exception;" to which they add, that, "the phrase is,

however, avoided by the best modern writers."--\_Murray\_, i, 215. This

latter assertion Russell conceives to be untrue: the former he adopts; and,

calling \_than whom\_ "an exception to the general rule," says of it, (with

no great consistency,) "Here the conjunction \_than\_ has certainly the force

of a preposition, and supplies its place by governing the

relative."--\_Russell's Abridgement of Murray's Gram.\_, p. 104. But this is

hardly an instance to which one would apply the maxim elsewhere adopted by

Murray: "\_Exceptio probat regulam\_."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 205. To ascribe

to a conjunction the governing power of a preposition, is a very wide step,

and quite too much like straddling the line which separates these parts of

speech one from the other.

OBS. 21.--Churchill says, "If there be no ellipsis to supply, as sometimes

happens when a pronoun relative occurs after \_than\_; the relative is to be

put in the \_objective case absolute\_: as, 'Alfred, \_than whom\_ a greater

king never reigned, deserves to be held up as a model to all future

sovereigns.'"--\_New Gram.\_, p. 153. Among his Notes, he has one with

reference to this "\_objective case absolute\_," as follows: "It is not

governed by the conjunction, for on no other occasion does a conjunction

govern any case; or by any word understood, for we can insert no word, or

words, that will reconcile the phrase with any other rule of grammar: and

if we employ a pronoun personal instead of the relative, as \_he\_, which

will admit of being resolved elliptically, it must be put in the nominative

case."--\_Ib.\_, p. 352. Against this gentleman's doctrine, one may very well

argue, as he himself does against that of Murray, Russell, and others; that

on no other occasion do we speak of putting "the objective case absolute;"

and if, agreeably to the analogy of our own tongue, our distinguished

authors would condescend to say \_than who\_,[436] surely nobody would think

of calling this an instance of the nominative case absolute,--except

perhaps one swaggering \_new theorist\_, that most pedantic of all scoffers,

Oliver B. Peirce.

OBS. 22.--The sum of the matter is this: the phrase, \_than who\_, is a more

regular and more analogical expression than \_than whom\_; but both are of

questionable propriety, and the former is seldom if ever found, except in

some few grammars; while the latter, which is in some sort a Latinism, may

be quoted from many of our most distinguished writers. And, since that

which is irregular cannot be parsed by rule, if out of respect to authority

we judge it allowable, it must be set down among the \_figures\_ of grammar;

which are, all of them, intentional deviations from the ordinary use of

words. One late author treats the point pretty well, in this short hint:

"After the conjunction \_than\_, contrary to analogy, \_whom\_ is used in stead

of \_who\_."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 106. An other gives his opinion in the

following note: "When \_who\_ immediately follows \_than\_, it is used

\_improperly\_ in the objective case; as, 'Alfred, \_than whom\_ a greater king

never reigned;'--\_than whom\_ is not grammatical. It ought to be, \_than

who\_; because \_who\_ is the nominative to \_was\_ understood.--\_Than whom\_ is

as bad a phrase as 'he is taller \_than him\_.' It is true that some of our

best writers have used \_than whom\_; but it is also true, that they have

used \_other\_ phrases which we have rejected as ungrammatical; then why not

reject this too?"--\_Lennie's Grammar\_, Edition of 1830, p. 105.

OBS. 23.--On this point. Bullions and Brace, two American copyists and

plagiarists of Lennie, adopt opposite notions. The latter copies the

foregoing note, without the last sentence; that is, without admitting that

"\_than whom\_" has ever been used by good writers. See \_Brace's Gram.\_, p.

90. The former says, "The relative \_usually\_ follows \_than\_ in the

objective case, \_even when the nominative goes before\_; as, 'Alfred, than

whom a greater king never reigned.' This anomaly it is difficult to

explain. Most probably, \_than\_, at first had the force of a preposition,

which it now retains only when followed by the relative."--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, of 1843, p. 112. Again: "\_A relative\_ after \_than\_ is put in the

objective case; as, 'Satan, than \_whom\_ none higher sat.' This anomaly has

not been satisfactorily explained. In this case, some regard \_than\_ as a

preposition. \_It\_ is probably only a case of simple \_enallagé\_"--\_Bullions,

Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, of 1849, p. 191. Prof. Fowler, in his great

publication, of 1850, says of this example, "The expression should be,

Satan, than \_who\_ None higher sat."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §482, Note 2.

Thus, by one single form of \_antiptosis\_, have our grammarians been as much

divided and perplexed, as were the Latin grammarians by a vast number of

such changes; and, since there were some among the latter, who insisted on

a total rejection of the figure, there is no great presumption in

discarding, if we please, the very little that remains of it in English.

OBS. 24.--Peirce's \_new theory\_ of grammar rests mainly on the assumption,

that no correct sentence ever is, or can be, in any wise, \_elliptical\_.

This is one of the "Two GRAND PRINCIPLES" on which the author says his

"work is based."--\_The Grammar\_, p. 10. The other is, that grammar cannot

possibly be taught without a thorough reformation of its nomenclature, a

reformation involving a change of most of the names and technical terms

heretofore used for its elucidation. I do not give precisely his own words,

for one half of this author's system is expressed in such language as needs

to be translated \_into English\_ in order to be generally understood; but

this is precisely his meaning, and in words more intelligible. In what

estimation he holds these two positions, may be judged from the following

assertion: "\_Without these grand points\_, no work, whatever may be its

pretensions, can be A GRAMMAR of the LANGUAGE."--\_Ib.\_ It follows that no

man who does not despise every other book that is called a grammar, can

entertain any favourable opinion of Peirce's. The author however is

tolerably consistent. He not only scorns to appeal, for the confirmation of

his own assertions and rules, to the judgement or practice of any other

writer, but counsels the learner to "spurn the idea of quoting, either as

proof or for defence, the authority of any man." See p. 13. The notable

results of these important premises are too numerous for detail even in

this general pandect. But it is to be mentioned here, that, according to

this theory, a nominative coming after \_than\_ or \_as\_, is in general to be

accounted a \_nominative absolute\_; that is, a nominative which is

independent of any verb; or, (as the ingenious author himself expresses

it,) "A word in the subjective case following another subjective, and

immediately preceded by \_than, as\_, or \_not\_, may be used \_without an\_

ASSERTER immediately depending on it for sense."--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 195.

See also his "\_Grammatical Chart\_, Rule I, Part 2."

OBS. 25.--"Lowth, Priestley, Murray, and most grammarians say, that

hypothetical, conditional, concessive, or exceptive conjunctions; as, \_if,

lest, though, unless, except\_; \_require\_, or \_govern\_ the subjunctive mood.

But in this they are certainly wrong: for, as Dr. Crombie rightly observes,

the verb is put in the subjunctive mood, because the mood expresses

contingency, \_not because it follows the conjunction\_: for these writers

themselves allow, that the same conjunctions are to be followed by the

indicative mood, when the verb is not intended to express a contingency. In

the following sentence: '\_Though\_ he \_be\_ displeased at it, I will bolt my

door; and \_let\_ him break it open \_if\_ he \_dare\_:' may we not as well

affirm, that \_and\_ governs the imperative mood, as that \_though\_ and \_if\_

govern the subjunctive?"--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 321.

OBS. 26.--In the list of \_correspondents\_ contained in Note 7th below,

there are some words which ought not to be called \_conjunctions\_, by the

parser; for the relation of a word as the proper correspondent to an other

word, does not necessarily determine its part of speech. Thus, \_such\_ is to

be parsed as an adjective; \_as\_, sometimes as a pronoun; \_so\_, as a

conjunctive adverb. And \_only, merely, also\_, and \_even\_, are sometimes

conjunctive adverbs; as, "\_Nor\_ is this \_only\_ a matter of convenience to

the poet, it is \_also\_ a source of gratification to the reader."--

\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 166. \_Murray's, Gram.\_, i, 362. Professor Bullions

will have it, that these adverbs may relate to \_nouns\_--a doctrine which I

disapprove. He says "\_Only, solely, chiefly, merely, too, also\_, and

perhaps \_a few others\_, are sometimes \_joined to substantives\_; as, 'Not

\_only\_ the men, but the women \_also\_ were present.'"--\_English Gram.\_, p.

116. \_Only\_ and \_also\_ are here, I think, conjunctive adverbs; but it is

not the office of adverbs to qualify nouns; and, that these words are

adjuncts to the nouns \_men\_ and \_women\_, rather than the verb \_were\_, which

is once expressed and once understood, I see no sufficient reason to

suppose. Some teachers imagine, that an adverb of this kind qualifies the

\_whole clause\_ in which it stands. But it would seem, that the relation of

such words to verbs, participles, or adjectives, according to the common

rule for adverbs, is in general sufficiently obvious: as, "The perfect

tense not \_only refers\_ to what is past, but \_also conveys\_ an allusion to

the present time."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 70. Is there any question about

the true mode of parsing "\_only\_" and "\_also\_" here? and have they not in

the other sentence, a relation similar to what is seen here?

NOTES TO RULE XXII.

NOTE I.--When two terms connected are each to be extended and completed in

sense by a third, they must both be such as will make sense with it. Thus,

in stead of saying, "He has made alterations and additions to the work,"

say, "He has made alterations \_in\_ the work, and additions \_to it\_;"

because the relation between \_alterations\_ and \_work\_ is not well expressed

by \_to\_.

NOTE II.--In general, any two terms which we connect by a conjunction,

should be the same in kind or quality, rather than different or

heterogeneous. Example: "The assistance was welcome, and seasonably

afforded."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 249. Better: "The assistance was

welcome, and \_it was\_ seasonably afforded." Or: "The assistance was \_both

seasonable and welcome\_."

NOTE III.--The conjunctions, copulative or disjunctive, affirmative or

negative, must be used with a due regard to their own import, and to the

true idiom of the language. Thus, say, "The general bent \_or\_ turn of the

language \_is\_ towards the other form;" and not, with Lowth and Churchill,

"The general bent \_and\_ turn of the language \_is\_ towards the other

form."--\_Short Introd.\_, p. 60; \_New Gram.\_, p. 113. So, say, "I cannot

deny \_that\_ there are perverse jades;" and not, with Addison, "I cannot

deny \_but\_ there are perverse jades."--\_Spect.\_, No. 457. Again, say, "I

feared \_that\_ I should be deserted;" not, "\_lest\_ I should be deserted."

NOTE IV.--After \_else, other,[437] otherwise, rather\_, and all English

\_comparatives\_, the latter term of an exclusive comparison should be

introduced by the conjunction \_than\_--a word which is appropriated to this

use solely: as, "Style is nothing \_else than\_ that sort of expression which

our thoughts most readily assume."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 92. "What we call

fables or parables are no \_other than\_ allegories."--\_Ib.\_, p. 151;

\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 243. "We judge \_otherwise\_ of them \_than\_ of

ourselves."--\_R. Ainsworth\_. "The premeditation should be of things \_rather

than\_ of words."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 262. "Is not the life \_more than\_

meat?"--\_Com. Bible\_. "Is not life a \_greater\_ gift \_than\_

food?"--\_Campbell's Gospels\_.

NOTE V.--Relative pronouns, being themselves a species of connective words,

necessarily exclude conjunctions; except there be two or more relative

clauses to be connected together; that is, one to the other. Example of

error: "The principal and distinguishing excellence of Virgil, \_and which\_,

in my opinion, he possesses beyond \_all poets\_, is tenderness."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 439. Better: "The principal and distinguishing excellence of

Virgil, \_an excellence\_ which, in my opinion, he possesses beyond all

\_other\_ poets, is tenderness."

NOTE VI.--The word \_that\_, (as was shown in the fifth chapter of

Etymology,) is often made a pronoun in respect to what precedes it, and a

conjunction in respect to what follows it--a construction which, for its

anomaly, ought to be rejected. For example: "\_In the mean time\_ THAT the

Muscovites were complaining to St. Nicholas, Charles returned thanks to

God, and prepared for new victories."--\_Life of Charles XII\_. Better thus:

"\_While\_ the Muscovites were \_thus\_ complaining to St. Nicholas, Charles

returned thanks to God, and prepared for new victories."

NOTE VII.--The words in each of the following pairs, are the proper

\_correspondents\_ to each other; and care should be taken, to give them

their right place in the sentence:

1. To \_though\_, corresponds \_yet\_; as, "\_Though\_ he were dead, \_yet\_ shall

he live."--\_John\_, xi, 25. 2. To \_whether\_, corresponds \_or\_; as,

"\_Whether\_ it be greater \_or\_ less."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 77.

3. To \_either\_, corresponds \_or\_; as, "The constant indulgence of a

declamatory manner, is not favourable \_either\_ to good composition, \_or\_

[to] good delivery."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 334.

4. To \_neither\_, corresponds \_nor\_; as, "John the Baptist came \_neither\_

eating bread \_nor\_ drinking wine."--\_Luke\_, vii, 33. "Thou shalt \_neither\_

vex a stranger \_nor\_ oppress him."--\_Exod.\_, xxii, 21.

5. To \_both\_, corresponds \_and\_; as, "I am debtor \_both\_ to the Greeks

\_and\_ to the Barbarians, \_both\_ to the wise \_and\_ to the unwise."--\_Rom.\_,

i, 14.

6. To \_such\_, corresponds \_as\_; (the former being a pronominal adjective,

and the latter a relative pronoun;) as, "An assembly \_such as\_ earth saw

never."--\_Cowper\_.

7. To \_such\_, corresponds \_that\_; with, a finite verb following, to express

a consequence: as, "The difference is \_such that\_ all will perceive it."

8. To \_as\_, corresponds \_as\_; with an adjective or an adverb, to express

equality of degree: as, "And he went out from his presence a leper \_as\_

white \_as\_ snow."--\_2 Kings\_. v. 27.

9. To \_as\_, corresponds \_so\_; with two verbs, to express proportion or

sameness: as, "\_As\_ two are to four, \_so\_ are six to twelve."--"\_As\_ the

tree falls, \_so\_ it must lie."

10. \_So\_ is used before \_as\_; with an adjective or an adverb, to limit the

degree by comparison: as, "How can you descend to a thing \_so\_ base \_as\_

falsehood?"

11. \_So\_ is used before \_as\_; with a negative preceding, to deny equality

of degree: as, "No lamb was e'er \_so\_ mild \_as\_ he."--\_Langhorne\_.

"Relatives are not \_so\_ useful in language \_as\_ conjunctions."--BEATTIE:

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 126.

12. To \_so\_, corresponds \_as\_; with an infinitive following, to express a

consequence: as, "We ought, certainly, to read blank verse \_so as\_ to make

every line sensible to the ear"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 332.

13. To \_so\_, corresponds \_that\_; with a finite verb following, to express a

consequence: as, "No man was \_so\_ poor \_that\_ he could not make

restitution."--\_Milman's Jews\_, i, 113. "\_So\_ run \_that\_ ye may

obtain."--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 24.

14. To \_not only\_, or \_not merely\_, corresponds \_but, but also\_, or \_but

even\_; as, "In heroic times, smuggling and piracy were deemed \_not only\_

not infamous, \_but\_ [even] absolutely honourable."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p.

15. "These are questions, \_not\_ of prudence \_merely, but\_ of morals

\_also\_."--\_Dymond's Essay\_, p. 82.

NOTE VIII.--"When correspondent conjunctions are used, the verb, or phrase,

that precedes the first, applies [also] to the second; but no word

following the former, can [by virtue of this correspondence,] be understood

after the latter."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 353. Such ellipses as the

following ought therefore in general to be avoided: "Tones are different

both from emphasis and [\_from\_] pauses."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, i, 250.

"Though both the intention and [\_the\_] purchase are now past."--\_Ib.\_, ii,

24.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XXII.

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--TWO TERMS WITH ONE.

"The first proposal was essentially different and inferior to the

second."--\_Inst.\_, p. 171.

[FORMULE,--Not proper, because the preposition \_to\_ is used with joint

reference to the two adjectives \_different\_ and \_inferior\_, which require

different prepositions. But, according to Note 1st under Rule 22d, "When

two terms connected are each to be extended and completed in sense by a

third, they must both be such as will make sense with it." The sentence may

be corrected thus: "The first proposal was essentially different from the

second, and inferior \_to it\_."]

"A neuter verb implies the state a subject is in, without acting upon, or

being acted upon, by another."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 30. "I answer,

you may and ought to use stories and anecdotes."--\_Student's Manual\_, p.

220. "ORACLE, n. Any person or place where certain decisions are

obtained."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "Forms of government may, and must be

occasionally, changed."--\_Ld. Lyttelton\_. "I have, and pretend to be a

tolerable judge."--\_Spect.\_, No. 555. "Are we not lazy in our duties, or

make a Christ of them?"--\_Baxter's Saints' Rest\_. "They may not express

that idea which the author intends, but some other which only resembles, or

is a-kin to it."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 94. "We may, we ought therefore to

read them with a distinguishing eye."--\_Ib.\_, p. 352. "Compare their

poverty, with what they might, and ought to possess."--\_Sedgwick's Econ.\_,

p. 95. "He is a much better grammarian than they are."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 211. "He was more beloved, but not so much admired as

Cinthio."--ADDISON, ON MEDALS: \_in Priestly's Gram.\_, p. 200. "Will it be

urged, that the four gospels are as old, or even older than

tradition?"--\_Bolingb. Phil. Es.\_, iv, §19. "The court of Chancery

frequently mitigates, and breaks the teeth of the common

law."--\_Spectator\_, No. 564; \_Ware's Gram.\_, p. 16. "Antony, coming along

side of her ship, entered it without seeing or being seen by

her."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, p. 160. "In candid minds, truth finds an

entrance, and a welcome too."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 168. "In many designs,

we may succeed and be miserable."--\_lb.\_, p. 169. "In many pursuits, we

embark with pleasure, and land sorrowfully."--\_Ib.\_, p. 170. "They are much

greater gainers than I am by this unexpected event."--\_lb.\_, p. 211.

UNDER NOTE II.--HETEROGENEOUS TERMS.

"Athens saw them entering her gates and fill her academies."--\_Chazotte's

Essay\_, p. 30. "We have neither forgot his past, nor despair of his future

success."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 121. "Her monuments and temples had long

been shattered or crumbled into dust."--\_Lit. Conv.\_, p. 15. "Competition

is excellent, and the vital principle in all these things."--DR. LIEBER:

\_ib.\_, p. 64. "Whether provision should or not be made to meet this

exigency."--\_Ib.\_, p. 128. "That our Saviour was divinely inspired, and

endued with supernatural powers, are positions that are here taken for

granted."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i. 206. "It would be much more eligible, to

contract or enlarge their extent, by explanatory notes and observations,

than by sweeping away our ancient landmarks, and setting up

others."--\_Ib.\_, i. p. 30. "It is certainly much better, to supply the

defects and abridge superfluities, by occasional notes and observations,

than by disorganizing, or altering a system which has been so long

established."--\_Ib.\_, i, 59. "To have only one tune, or measure, is not

much better than having none at all"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 126. "Facts too

well known and obvious to be insisted on."--\_Ib.\_, p. 233. "In proportion

as all these circumstances are happily chosen, and of a sublime

kind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. "If the description be too general, and divested of

circumstances."--\_Ibid.\_ "He gained nothing further than to be

commended."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 210. "I cannot but think its application

somewhat strained, and out of place."--VETHAKE: \_Lit. Conv.\_, p. 29. "Two

negatives in the same clause, or referring to the same thing, destroy each

other, and leave the sense affirmative."--\_Maunders Gram.\_, p. 15. "Slates

are stone and used to cover roofs of houses."--\_Webster's El.

Spelling-Book\_, p. 47. "Every man of taste, and possessing an elevated

mind, ought to feel almost the necessity of apologizing for the power he

possesses."--\_Influence of Literature\_. Vol. ii, p, 122. "They very seldom

trouble themselves with Enquiries, or making useful observations of their

own."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 376.

"We've both the field and honour won;

The foe is profligate, and run."--\_Hudibras\_, p. 93.

UNDER NOTE III.--IMPORT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"\_The\_ is sometimes used before adverbs in the comparative and superlative

degree."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 6; \_Bullions's\_, 8; \_Brace's\_, 9. "The

definite article \_the\_ is frequently applied to adverbs in the comparative

and superlative degree."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 33; \_Ingersoll's\_, 33;

\_Lowth's\_, 14; \_Fisk's\_, 53; \_Merchant's\_, 24; and others. "Conjunctions

usually connect verbs in the same mode or tense."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p.

137. "Conjunctions connect verbs in the same style, and usually in the same

mode, tense, or form."--\_Ib.\_ "The ruins of Greece and Rome are but the

monuments of her former greatness."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 88. "In many of

these cases, it is not improbable, but that the articles were used

originally."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 152. "I cannot doubt but that these

objects are really what they appear to be."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 85.

"I question not but my reader will be as much pleased with it."--\_Spect.\_,

No. 535. "It is ten to one but my friend Peter is among them."--\_Ib.\_, No.

457. "I doubt not but such objections as these will be made."--\_Locke, on

Education\_, p. 169. "I doubt not but it will appear in the perusal of the

following sheets."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. vi. "It is not improbable, but

that, in time, these different constructions may be appropriated to

different uses."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 156. "But to forget or to

remember at pleasure, are equally beyond the power of man."--\_Idler\_, No.

72. "The nominative case follows the verb, in interrogative and imperative

sentences."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. 290. "Can the fig-tree, my

brethren, bear olive berries? either a vine, figs?"--\_James\_, iii, 12.

"Whose characters are too profligate, that the managing of them should be

of any consequence."--\_Swift, Examiner\_, No. 24. "You that are a step

higher than a philosopher, a divine; yet have too much grace and wit than

to be a bishop."--\_Pope, to Swift\_, Let. 80. "The terms rich or poor enter

not into their language."--\_Robertson's America\_, Vol. i, p. 314. "This

pause is but seldom or ever sufficiently dwelt upon."--\_Music of Nature\_,

p. 181. "There would be no possibility of any such thing as human life and

human happiness."--\_Butler's Anal.\_, p. 110. "The multitude rebuked them,

because they should hold their peace."--\_Matt.\_, xx, 21.

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF THE CONJUNCTION THAN.

"A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p.

243; \_Gould's\_, 236. "There being no other dictator here but use."--

\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 167. "This Construction is no otherwise known in

English but by supplying the first or second Person Plural."--\_Buchanan's

Syntax\_, p. xi. "Cyaxares was no sooner in the throne, but he was engaged

in a terrible war."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 62. "Those classics contain

little else but histories of murders."--\_Am. Museum\_, v, 526. "Ye shall not

worship any other except God."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p. 15. "Their relation,

therefore, is not otherwise to be ascertained but by their place."--

\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 260. "For he no sooner accosted her, but he gained

his point."--\_Burder's Hist.\_, i, 6. "And all the modern writers on this

subject have done little else but translate them."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

336. "One who had no other aim, but to talk copiously and plausibly."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 317. "We can refer it to no other cause but the structure of the

eye."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. "No more is required but singly an act of vision."--

\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 171. "We find no more in its composition, but the

particulars now mentioned."--\_ Ib.\_, i, 48. "He pretends not to say, that

it hath any other effect but to raise surprise."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 61. "No sooner

was the princess dead, but he freed himself."--\_Johnson's Sketch of Morin\_.

"\_Ought\_ is an imperfect verb, for it has no other modification besides

this one."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 113. "The verb is palpably nothing else

but the tie."--\_Neef's Sketch\_, p. 66. "Does he mean that theism is capable

of nothing else except being opposed to polytheism or atheism?"--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 104. "Is it meant that theism is capable of nothing else besides

being opposed to polytheism, or atheism?"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 307.

"There is no other method of teaching that of which any one is ignorant,

but by means of something already known"--DR. JOHNSON: \_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

163; \_Ingersoll's\_, 214. "O fairest flower, no sooner blown but blasted!"--

\_Milton's Poems\_, p, 132. "Architecture and gardening cannot otherwise

entertain the mind, but by raising certain agreeable emotions or

feelings."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 318. "Or, rather, they are nothing

else but nouns."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 95.

"As if religion were intended

For nothing else but to be mended."--\_Hudibras\_, p. 11.

UNDER NOTE V.--RELATIVES EXCLUDE CONJUNCTIONS.

"To prepare the Jews for the reception of a prophet mightier than him, and

whose shoes he was not worthy to bear."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 214.

"Has this word which represents an action an object after it, and on which

it terminates?"--\_Osborn's Key\_, p. 3. "The stores of literature lie before

him, and from which he may collect, for use, many lessons of wisdom."--

\_Knapp's Lectures\_, p. 31. "Many and various great advantages of this

Grammar, and which are wanting in others, might be enumerated."--

\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 6. "About the time of Solon, the Athenian

legislator, the custom is said to have been introduced, and which still

prevails, of writing in lines from left to right."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p.

19. "The fundamental rule of the construction of sentences, and into which

all others might be resolved, undoubtedly is, to communicate, in the

clearest and most natural order, the ideas which we mean to transfuse into

the minds of others."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 120; \_Jamieson's\_, 102. "He left

a son of a singular character, and who behaved so ill that he was put in

prison."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 221. "He discovered some qualities in the

youth, of a disagreeable nature, and which to him were wholly

unaccountable."--\_Ib.\_, p. 213. "An emphatical pause is made, after

something has been said of peculiar moment, and on which we want ['desire'

\_M\_.] to fix the hearer's attention."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 331; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 248. "But we have duplicates of each, agreeing in movement,

though differing in measure, and which make different impressions on the

ear."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 259.

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF THE WORD THAT.

"It will greatly facilitate the labours of the teacher, at the same time

that it will relieve the pupil of many difficulties."--\_Frost's El. of E.

Gram.\_, p. 4. "At the same time that the pupil is engaged in the exercises

just mentioned, it will be a proper time to study the whole Grammar in

course."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_, Revised Ed., p. viii. "On the same

ground that a participle and auxiliary are allowed to form a

tense."--BEATTIE: \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 76. "On the same ground that

the voices, moods, and tenses, are admitted into the English

tongue."--\_Ib.\_, p. 101. "The five examples last mentioned, are corrected

on the same principle that the preceding examples are corrected."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 186; \_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, 254. "The brazen age began at the death of

Trajan, and lasted till the time that Rome was taken by the

Goths."--\_Gould's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 277. "The introduction to the Duodecimo

Edition, is retained in this volume, for the same reason that the original

introduction to the Grammar, is retained in the first volume."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. iv. "The verb must also be of the same person that

the nominative case is."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 16. "The adjective

pronoun \_their\_, is plural for the same reason that \_who\_ is."--\_Ib.\_, p.

84. "The Sabellians could not justly be called Patripassians, in the same

sense that the Noetians were so called."--\_Religious World\_, Vol. ii, p.

122. "This is one reason that we pass over such smooth language, without

suspecting that it contains little or no meaning."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

p. 298. "The first place that both armies came in sight of each other was

on the opposite banks of the river Apsus."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, p. 118. "At

the very time that the author gave him the first book for his

perusal."--\_Campbell's Rhetoric, Preface\_, p. iv. "Peter will sup at the

time that Paul will dine."--\_Fosdick's De Sacy\_, p. 81. "Peter will be

supping at the time that Paul will enter."--\_Ibid.\_ "These, at the same

time that they may serve as models to those who may wish to imitate them,

will give me an opportunity to cast more light upon the principles of this

book."--\_Ib.\_, p. 115.

"Time was, like thee, they life possest,

And time shall be, that thou shalt rest."

--PARNELL; \_Mur. Seq.\_, p. 241.

UNDER NOTE VII.--OF THE CORRESPONDENTS.

"Our manners should neither be gross, nor excessively

refined."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 11. "A neuter verb expresses neither

action or passion, but being, or a state of being."--\_O. B. Peirce's

Gram.\_, p. 342. "The old books are neither \_English\_ grammars, or

\_grammars\_, in any sense of the English Language."--\_Ib.\_, p. 378. "The

author is apprehensive that his work is not yet as accurate and as much

simplified as it may be."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 7. "The writer could not

treat some topicks as extensively as was desirable."--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. "Which

would be a matter of such nicety, as no degree of human wisdom could

regulate."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 26. "No undertaking is so great or

difficult which he cannot direct."--\_Duncan's Cic.\_, p. 126. "It is a good

which neither depends on the will of others, nor on the affluence of

external fortune."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, 299; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 289. "Not

only his estate, his reputation too has suffered by his

misconduct."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 150; \_Ingersoll's\_, 238. "Neither do

they extend as far as might be imagined at first view."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 350. "There is no language so poor, but it hath two or three past

tenses."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "As far as this system is founded in truth,

language appears to be not altogether arbitrary in its origin."--\_Ib.\_, p.

56. "I have not that command of these convulsions as is

necessary."--\_Spect.\_, No. 474. "Conversation with such who know no arts

which polish life."--\_Ib.\_, No. 480. "And which can be neither very lively

or very forcible."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 78. "To that degree as to give

proper names to rivers."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist of Lang.\_, i, 327. "In the

utter overthrow of such who hate to be reformed."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i,

443. "But still so much of it is retained, as greatly injures the

uniformity of the whole."--\_Priestley's Gram., Pref.\_, p. vii. "Some of

them have gone to that height of extravagance, as to assert," &c.--\_Ib.\_,

p. 91. "A teacher is confined--not more than a merchant, and probably not

as much."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 27. "It shall not be forgiven him,

neither in this world, neither in the world to come."--\_Matt.\_, xii, 32.

"Which no body presumes, or is so sanguine to hope."--\_Swift, Drap. Let.\_

v. "For the torrent of the voice, left neither time or power in the organs,

to shape the words properly."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 118. "That he may

neither unnecessarily waste his voice by throwing out too much, or diminish

his power by using too little."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "I have retained only such

which appear most agreeable to the measures of Analogy."--\_Littleton's

Dict., Pref.\_ "He is both a prudent and industrious man."--\_Day's Gram.\_,

p. 70. "Conjunctions either connect words or sentences."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 81 and

101.

"Such silly girls who love to chat and play,

Deserve no care, their time is thrown away."--\_Tobitt's Gram.\_, p. 20.

"Vice is a monster of so frightful mien,

As to be hated needs but to be seen."--POPE: \_Mur. Gram.\_, ii, 17.

"Justice must punish the rebellious deed:

Yet punish so, as pity shall exceed."--DRYDEN: \_in Joh. Dict.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--IMPROPER ELLIPSES.

"\_That, whose\_, and \_as\_ relate to either persons or things."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 93. "\_Which\_ and \_what\_, as adjectives, relate either to persons

or things."--\_Ib.\_, p. 70. "Whether of a public or private nature."--

\_Adam's Rhet.\_, i, 43. "Which are included both among the public and

private wrongs."--\_Ib.\_, i, 308. "I might extract both from the old and new

testament numberless examples of induction."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 66. "Many verbs

are used both in an active and neuter signification."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p.

30; \_Alger's\_, 26; \_Guy's\_, 21; \_Murray's\_, 60. "Its influence is likely to

be considerable, both on the morals, and taste of a nation."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 373. "The subject afforded a variety of scenes, both of the

awful and tender kind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 439. "Restlessness of mind disqualifies

us, both for the enjoyment of peace, and the performance of our

duty."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 166; \_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 10. "Adjective

Pronouns are of a mixed nature, participating the properties both of

pronouns and adjectives."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 55; \_Merchant's\_, 43;

\_Flint's\_, 22. "Adjective Pronouns have the nature both of the adjective

and the pronoun."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 15. "Pronominal adjectives

are a kind of compound part of speech, partaking the nature both of

pronouns and adjectives."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 36. "Nouns are used either

in the singular or plural number."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 11. "The question

is not, whether the nominative or accusative ought to follow the particles

\_than\_ and \_as\_; but, whether these particles are, in such particular

cases, to be regarded as conjunctions or prepositions."--\_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, p. 204. "In English many verbs are used both as transitives and

intransitives."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 83. "He sendeth rain both on the

just and unjust."--\_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 56. "A foot consists either of two or

three syllables."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 118. "Because they participate the

nature both of adverbs and conjunctions."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 116.

"Surely, Romans, what I am now about to say, ought neither to be omitted

nor pass without notice."--\_Duncan's Cicero\_, p. 196. "Their language

frequently amounts, not only to bad sense, but \_non\_-sense."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 14. "Hence arises the necessity of a social state to man both

for the unfolding, and exerting of his nobler faculties."--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. 147. "Whether the subject be of the real or feigned

kind."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 454. "Not only was liberty entirely

extinguished, but arbitrary power felt in its heaviest and most oppressive

weight."--\_Ib.\_, p. 249. "This rule is applicable also both to verbal

Critics and Grammarians."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 144. "Both the rules and

exceptions of a language must have obtained the sanction of good

usage."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143.

CHAPTER X.--PREPOSITIONS.

The syntax of Prepositions consists, not solely or mainly in their power of

governing the objective case, (though this alone is the scope which most

grammarians have given it,) but in their adaptation to the other terms

between which they express certain relations, such as appear by the sense

of the words uttered.

RULE XXIII.--PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions show the relations of words, and of the things or thoughts

expressed by them: as; "He came \_from\_ Rome \_to\_ Paris, \_in\_ the company

\_of\_ many eminent men, and passed \_with\_ them \_through\_ many

cities"--\_Analectic Magazine\_.

"Ah! who can tell the triumphs \_of\_ the mind,

\_By\_ truth illumin'd, and \_by\_ taste refin'd?"--\_Rogers\_.

EXCEPTION FIRST.

The preposition \_to\_, before an abstract infinitive, and at the head of a

phrase which is made the subject of a verb, has no proper antecedent term

of relation; as, "\_To\_ learn to die, is the great business of

life."--\_Dillwyn\_. "Nevertheless, \_to\_ abide in the flesh, is more needful

for you."--ST. PAUL: \_Phil.\_, i, 24. "\_To\_ be reduced to poverty, is a

great affliction."

"Too much \_to\_ know, is, to know nought but fame;

And every godfather can give a name."--\_Shakspeare\_.

EXCEPTION SECOND.

The preposition \_for\_, when it introduces its object before an infinitive,

and the whole phrase is made the subject of a verb, has properly no

antecedent term of relation; as, "\_For\_ us to learn to die, is the great

business of life."--"Nevertheless, \_for\_ me to abide in the flesh, is more

needful for you."--"\_For\_ an old man to be reduced to poverty is a very

great affliction."

"\_For\_ man to tell how human life began,

Is hard; for who himself beginning knew?"--\_Milton\_.

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XXIII.

OBS. 1.--In parsing any ordinary preposition, the learner should name the

\_two terms\_ of the relation, and apply the foregoing rule, after the manner

prescribed in Praxis 12th of this work. The principle is simple and

etymological, being implied in the very definition of a preposition, yet

not the less necessary to be given as a rule of syntax. Among tolerable

writers, the prepositions exhibit more errors than any other equal number

of words. This is probably owing to the careless manner in which they are

usually slurred over in parsing. But the parsers, in general, have at least

this excuse, that their text-books have taught them no better; they

therefore call the preposition \_a preposition\_, and leave its use and

meaning unexplained.

OBS. 2.--If the learner be at any loss to discover the true terms of

relation, let him ask and answer \_two questions\_: first, with the

interrogative \_what\_ before the preposition, to find the antecedent; and

then, with the same pronoun after the preposition, to find the subsequent

term. These questions answered according to the sense, will always give the

true terms. For example: "They dashed that rapid torrent

through."--\_Scott\_. Ques. \_What\_ through? Ans. "\_Dashed through\_." Ques.

Through \_what?\_ Ans. "\_Through that torrent\_." For the meaning is--"They

dashed through that rapid torrent." If one term is perfectly obvious, (as

it almost always is,) find the other in this way; as, "Day unto day

uttereth speech, and night unto night showeth knowledge."--\_Psal.\_, xix, 2.

Ques. \_What\_ unto day? Ans. "\_Uttereth unto day\_." Ques. \_What\_ unto night?

Ans. "\_Showeth unto night\_" For the meaning is--"Day uttereth speech unto

day, and night showeth knowledge unto night." To parse rightly, is, to

understand rightly; and what is well expressed, it is a shame to

misunderstand or misinterpret. But sometimes the position of the two nouns

is such, that it may require some reflection to find either; as,

"Or that choice plant, so grateful to the nose,

Which \_in\_ I know not what far country grows."--\_Churchill\_, p. 18.

OBS. 3.--When a preposition \_begins\_ or \_ends\_ a sentence or clause, the

terms of relation, if both are given, are transposed; as, "To a studious

\_man\_, action is a relief."--\_Burgh\_. That is, "Action is a relief \_to\_ a

studious man." "\_Science\_ they [the ladies] do not \_pretend\_ TO."--\_Id.\_

That is, "They do not pretend \_to\_ science." "Until I have done that

\_which\_ I \_have spoken\_ to thee OF."--\_Gen.\_, xxviii, 15. The word governed

by the preposition is always the subsequent term of the relation, however

it may be placed; and if this be a relative pronoun, the transposition is

permanent. The preposition, however, may be put before any relative, except

\_that\_ and \_as\_; and this is commonly thought to be its most appropriate

place: as, "Until I have done that \_of which\_ I have spoken to thee," Of

the placing of it last, Lowth says, "This is an idiom \_which\_ our language

is strongly inclined \_to\_;" Murray and others, "This is an idiom \_to which\_

our language is strongly inclined:" while they all add, "it prevails in

common conversation, and suits very well with the familiar style in

writing; but the placing of the preposition before the relative, is more

graceful, as well as more perspicuous, and agrees much better with the

solemn and elevated style."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 95; \_Murray's\_, 8vo, p.

200; \_Fisk's\_, 141; \_R. C. Smiths\_, 167; \_Ingersoll's\_, 227; \_Churchill's\_.

150.

OBS. 4.--The terms of relation between which a preposition may be used, are

very various. The \_former\_ or \_antecedent\_ term may be a noun, an

adjective, a pronoun, a verb, a participle, or an adverb: and, in some

instances, we find not only one preposition put before an other, but even a

conjunction or an interjection used on this side; as, "\_Because\_ OF

offences."--"\_Alas\_ FOR him!"--The \_latter\_ or \_subsequent\_ term, which is

the word governed by the preposition, may be a noun, a pronoun, a

pronominal adjective, an infinitive verb, or an imperfect or preperfect

participle: and, in some instances, prepositions appear to govern adverbs,

or even whole phrases. See the observations in the tenth chapter of

Etymology.

OBS. 5.--Both terms of the relation are usually expressed; though either of

them may, in some instances, be left out, the other being given: as, (1.)

THE FORMER--"All shall know me, [\_reckoning\_] FROM the least to the

greatest."--\_Heb.\_, viii, 11. [\_I say\_] "IN a word, it would entirely

defeat the purpose."--\_Blair\_. "When I speak of reputation, I mean not only

[\_reputation\_] IN regard to knowledge, but [\_reputation\_] IN regard to the

talent of communicating knowledge."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 163; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 360. (2.) THE LATTER--"Opinions and ceremonies [\_which\_] they

would die FOR."--\_Locke\_. "IN [\_those\_] who obtain defence, or [\_in those\_]

who defend."--\_Pope\_. "Others are more modest than [\_what\_] this comes

TO."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 66.

OBS. 6.--The only proper exceptions to the foregoing rule, are those which

are inserted above, unless the abstract infinitive used as a predicate is

also to be excepted; as, "In both, to reason right, is \_to\_

submit."--\_Pope\_. But here most if not all grammarians would say, the verb

"\_is\_" is the antecedent term, or what their syntax takes to govern the

infinitive. The relation, however, is not such as when we say, "He \_is to

submit\_;" that is, "He \_must submit\_, or \_ought to submit\_;" but, perhaps,

to insist on a different mode of parsing the more separable infinitive or

its preposition, would be a needless refinement. Yet some regard ought to

be paid to the different relations which the infinitive may bear to this

finite verb. For want of a due estimate of this difference, the following

sentence is, I think, very faulty: "The great business of this life \_is to

prepare\_, and \_qualify us\_, for the enjoyment of a better."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 373. If the author meant to tell what our great business

in this life is, he should rather have said: "The great business of this

life is, to prepare and qualify \_ourselves\_ for the enjoyment of a better."

OBS. 7.--In relation to the infinitive, Dr. Adam remarks, that, "\_To\_ in

English is often taken \_absolutely\_; as, \_To\_ confess the truth; \_To\_

proceed; \_To\_ conclude."--\_Latin and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 182. But the assertion

is not entirely true; nor are his examples appropriate; for what he and

many other grammarians call the \_infinitive absolute\_, evidently depends on

something \_understood\_; and the preposition is, surely, in no instance

independent of what follows it, and is therefore never entirely absolute.

Prepositions are not to be supposed to have no antecedent term, merely

because they stand at the head of a phrase or sentence which is made the

subject of a verb; for the phrase or sentence itself often contains that

term, as in the following example: "\_In\_ what way mind acts upon matter, is

unknown." Here \_in\_ shows the relation between \_acts\_ and \_way\_; because

the expression suggests, that mind \_acts\_ IN \_some way\_ upon matter.

OBS. 8.--The second exception above, wherever it is found applicable,

cancels the first; because it introduces an antecedent term before the

preposition \_to\_, as may be seen by the examples given. It is questionable

too, whether both of them may not also be cancelled in an other way; that

is, by transposition and the introduction of the pronoun \_it\_ for the

nominative: as, "\_It\_ is a great \_affliction\_, TO \_be reduced\_ to

poverty."--"\_It\_ is \_hard\_ FOR \_man\_ to tell how human life

began."--"Nevertheless \_it\_ is more needful for you, THAT \_I should abide\_

in the flesh." We cannot so well say, "It is more needful \_for you\_, FOR

\_me to abide\_ in the flesh;" but we may say, "It is, \_on your account\_,

more needful FOR \_me to abide\_ in the flesh." If these, and other similar

examples, are not to be accounted additional instances in which \_to\_ and

\_for\_, and also the conjunction that, are without any proper antecedent

terms, we must suppose these particles to show the relation between what

precedes and what follows them.

OBS. 9.--The preposition (as its name implies) \_precedes\_ the word which it

governs. Yet there are some exceptions. In the familiar style, a

preposition governing a relative or an interrogative pronoun, is often

separated from its object, and connected with the other term of relation;

as, "\_Whom\_ did he speak \_to\_?" But it is more dignified, and in general

more graceful, to place the preposition before the pronoun; as, "\_To whom\_

did he speak?" The relatives \_that\_ and \_as\_, if governed by a preposition,

must always precede it. In some instances, the pronoun must be supplied in

parsing; as, "To set off the banquet [\_that\_ or \_which\_] he gives notice

\_of\_."--\_Philological Museum\_, i, 454. Sometimes the objective word is put

first because it is emphatical; as, "\_This\_ the great understand, \_this\_

they pique themselves \_upon\_."--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 66. Prepositions of

more than one syllable, are sometimes put immediately after their objects,

especially in poetry; as, "Known all the \_world over\_."--\_Walker's

Particles\_ p. 291. "The thing is known all \_Lesbos over\_."--\_Ibid.\_

"Wild Carron's lonely \_woods among\_."--\_Langhorne\_.

"Thy deep \_ravines\_ and \_dells along\_."--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

OBS. 10.--Two prepositions sometimes come together; as, "Lambeth is \_over

against\_ Westminster abbey."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 118. "And \_from before\_

the lustre of her face, White break the clouds away."--\_Thomson\_. "And the

meagre fiend Blows mildew \_from between\_ his shrivell'd lips."--\_Cowper\_.

These, in most instances, though they are not usually written as compounds,

appear naturally to coalesce in their syntax, as was observed in the tenth

chapter of Etymology, and to express a sort of compound relation between

the other terms with which they are connected. When such is their

character, they ought to be taken together in parsing; for, if we parse

them separately, we must either call the first an adverb, or suppose some

very awkward ellipsis. Some instances however occur, in which an object may

easily be supplied to the former word, and perhaps ought to be; as, "He is

at liberty to sell it \_at\_ [a price] \_above\_ a fair remuneration."--

\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 258. "And I wish they had been at the bottom

of the ditch I pulled you out of, \_instead of\_ [being] \_upon\_ my

back."--\_Sandford and Merton\_, p. 29. In such examples as the following,

the first preposition, \_of\_, appears to me to govern the plural noun which

ends the sentence; and the intermediate ones, \_from\_ and \_to\_, to have both

terms of their relation \_understood\_: "Iambic verse consists \_of from\_ two

\_to\_ six feet; that is, \_of from\_ four \_to\_ twelve syllables."--\_Blair's

Gram.\_, p. 119. "Trochaic verse consists \_of from\_ one to three

feet."--\_Ibid.\_ The meaning is--"Iambic verse consists \_of feet\_ varying in

number from two to six; or (it consists) \_of syllables\_ varying from four

to twelve."--"Trochaic verse consists \_of feet\_ varying from one \_foot\_ to

three \_feet\_."

OBS. 11.--One antecedent term may have several prepositions depending on

it, with one object after each, or more than one after any, or only one

after both or all; as, "A declaration \_for\_ virtue and \_against\_

vice."--\_Butler's Anal.\_, p. 157. "A positive law \_against\_ all fraud,

falsehood, \_and\_ violence, and \_for\_, or \_in\_ favour \_of\_, all justice

\_and\_ truth." "For \_of\_ him, and \_through\_ him, and \_to\_ him, are all

things."--\_Bible\_. In fact, not only may the relation be simple in regard

to all or any of the words, but it may also be complex in regard to all or

any of them. Hence several different prepositions, whether they have

different antecedent terms or only one and the same, may refer either

jointly or severally to one object or to more. This follows, because not

only may either antecedents or objects be connected by conjunctions, but

prepositions also admit of this construction, with or without a connecting

of their antecedents. Examples: "They are capable \_of\_, and placed \_in\_,

different stations in the society of mankind."--\_Butler's Anal.\_, p. 115.

"Our perception \_of\_ vice \_and\_ ill desert arises \_from\_, and is the result

\_of\_, a comparison \_of\_ actions \_with\_ the nature \_and\_ capacities \_of\_ the

agent."--\_Ib.\_, p. 279. "And the design \_of\_ this chapter is, \_to\_ inquire

how far this is the case; how far, \_over and above\_ the moral nature which

God has given us, \_and\_ our natural notion \_of\_ him, as righteous governor

\_of\_ those his creatures \_to\_ whom he has given this nature; I say, how

far, \_besides\_ this, the principles \_and\_ beginnings \_of\_ a moral

government \_over\_ the world may be discerned, \_notwithstanding and amidst\_

all the confusion \_and\_ disorder \_of\_ it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 85.

OBS. 12.--The preposition \_into\_, expresses a relation produced by motion

or change; and \_in\_, the same relation, without reference to motion as

having produced it: hence, "to walk \_into\_ the garden," and, "to walk \_in\_

the garden," are very different in meaning. "It is disagreeable to find a

word split \_into\_ two by a pause."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 83. This

appears to be right in sense, but because brevity is desirable in

unemphatic particles, I suppose most persons would say, "split \_in\_ two."

In the Bible we have the phrases, "rent \_in\_ twain,"--"cut \_in\_

pieces,"--"brake \_in\_ pieces the rocks,"--"brake all their bones \_in

pieces\_,"--"brake them \_to\_ pieces,"--"broken \_to\_ pieces,"--"pulled \_in\_

pieces." In all these, except the first, \_to\_ may perhaps be considered

preferable to \_in\_; and \_into\_ would be objectionable only because it is

longer and less simple. "Half of them dare not shake the snow from off

their cassocks, lest they shake themselves \_to\_ pieces."--SHAK.: \_Kames\_,

ii, 246.

OBS. 13.--\_Between\_, or \_betwixt\_, is used in reference to two things or

parties; \_among\_, or \_amongst, amid\_, or \_amidst\_, in reference to a

greater number, or to something by which an other may be surrounded: as,

"Thou pendulum \_betwixt\_ a smile and tear."--\_Byron\_. "The host \_between

the\_ mountain and the shore."--\_Id.\_ "To meditate \_amongst\_ decay, and

stand a ruin \_amidst\_ ruins."--\_Id.\_ In the following examples, the import

of these prepositions is not very accurately regarded; "The Greeks wrote in

capitals, and left no spaces between their words."--\_Wilson's Essay\_, p. 6.

This construction may perhaps be allowed, because the spaces by which words

are now divided, occur severally \_between\_ one word and an other; but the

author might as well have said, "and left no spaces \_to distinguish\_ their

words." "There was a hunting match agreed upon \_betwixt\_ a lion, an ass,

and a fox."--\_L'Estrange\_. Here \_by\_ or \_among\_ would, I think, be better

than \_betwixt\_, because the partners were more than two. "\_Between\_ two \_or

more\_ authors, different readers will differ, exceedingly, as to the

preference in point of merit."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 162; \_Jamieson's\_,

40; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 360. Say, "\_Concerning\_ two or more authors,"

because \_between\_ is not consistent with the word \_more\_. "Rising \_one

among another\_ in the greatest confusion and disorder."--\_Spect.\_, No. 476.

Say, "Rising \_promiscuously\_," or, "Rising \_all at once\_;" for \_among\_ is

not consistent with the distributive term \_one an other\_.

OBS. 14.--Of two prepositions coming together between the same terms of

relation, and sometimes connected in the same construction, I have given

several plain examples in this chapter, and in the tenth chapter of

Etymology, a very great number, all from sources sufficiently respectable.

But, in many of our English grammars, there is a stereotyped remark on this

point, originally written by Priestley, which it is proper here to cite, as

an other specimen of the Doctor's hastiness, and of the blind confidence of

certain compilers and copyists: "Two different prepositions \_must be

improper\_ in the same construction, and in the same sentence: [as,] \_The

combat\_ between \_thirty Britons\_, against \_twenty English\_. Smollett's

Voltaire, Vol. 2, p. 292."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 156. Lindley Murray and

others have the same remark, with the example altered thus: "The combat

\_between\_ thirty \_French against\_ twenty English."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

p. 200; \_Smith's New Gram.\_, 167: \_Fisk's\_, 142; \_Ingersoll's\_, 228. W.

Allen has it thus: "Two different prepositions in the \_same construction\_

are improper; as, a combat \_between twenty\_ French \_against thirty\_

English."--\_Elements of E. Gram.\_, p. 179. He gives the odds to the latter

party. Hiley, with no expense of thought, first takes from Murray, as he

from Priestley, the useless remark, "Different relations, and different

senses, must be expressed by different prepositions;" and then adds, "\_One

relation\_ must not, \_therefore\_, be expressed by two different prepositions

in the same clause; thus, 'The combat \_between thirty\_ French \_against

thirty\_ English,' should be, 'The combat \_between thirty\_ French \_and

thirty\_ English.'"--\_Hiley's E. Gram.\_, p 97. It is manifest that the error

of this example is not in the use of \_two prepositions\_, nor is there any

truth or fitness in the note or notes made on it by all these critics; for

had they said, "The combat \_of\_ thirty French \_against\_ twenty English,"

there would still be two prepositions, but where would be the impropriety,

or where the sameness of construction, which they speak of? \_Between\_ is

incompatible with \_against\_, only because it requires two parties or things

for its own regimen; as, "The combat \_between\_ thirty \_Frenchmen and\_

twenty \_Englishmen\_." This is what Smollett should have written, to make

sense with the word "\_between\_."

OBS. 15.--With like implicitness, Hiley excepted, these grammarians and

others have adopted from Lowth an observation in which the learned doctor

has censured quite too strongly the joint reference of different

prepositions to the same objective noun: to wit, "Some writers separate the

preposition from its noun, in order to connect different prepositions to

the same noun; as, 'To suppose the zodiac and planets to be efficient \_of\_,

and antecedent \_to\_, themselves.' Bentley, Serm. 6. This [construction],

whether in the familiar or the solemn style, is \_always inelegant\_; and

\_should never be admitted\_, but in forms of law, and the like; where

fullness and exactness of expression must take \_place\_ of every other

consideration."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 96; \_Murray's\_, i, 200; \_Smith's\_,

167; \_Fisk's\_, 141; \_Ingersoll's\_, 228; \_Alger's\_, 67; \_Picket's\_, 207.

Churchill even goes further, both strengthening the censure, and

disallowing the exception: thus, "This, whether in the solemn or in the

familiar style, is \_always\_ inelegant, and should \_never be admitted\_. It

is an \_awkward shift\_ for avoiding the repetition of a word, \_which might

be accomplished without it\_ by any person who has the least command of

language."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 341. Yet, with all their command of language,

not one of these gentlemen has told us how the foregoing sentence from

Bentley may be \_amended\_; while many of their number not only venture to

use different prepositions before the same noun, but even to add a phrase

which puts that noun in the nominative case: as, "Thus, the time of the

infinitive may be \_before, after\_, or \_the same as\_, the time of the

governing verb, according as the \_thing\_ signified by the infinitive is

supposed to be \_before, after\_, or \_present with\_, the \_thing\_ denoted by

the governing verb."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 191; \_Ingersoll's\_, 260; \_R. C.

Smith's\_, 159.

OBS. 16.--The structure of this example not only contradicts palpably, and

twice over, the doctrine cited above, but one may say of the former part of

it, as Lowth, Murray, and others do, (in no very accurate English,) of the

text 1 Cor., ii, 9: "There seems to be an impropriety in this sentence, in

which the same noun serves in a double capacity, performing at the same

time the \_offices both of the nominative and objective cases\_."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 224. See also \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 73; \_Ingersoll's\_, 277;

\_Fisk's\_, 149; \_Smith's\_, 185. Two other examples, exactly like that which

is so pointedly censured above, are placed by Murray under his thirteenth

rule for the comma; and these likewise, with all faithfulness, are copied

by Ingersoll, Smith, Alger, Kirkham, Comly, Russell, and I know not how

many more. In short, not only does this rule of their punctuation include

the construction in question; but the following exception to it, which is

remarkable for its various faults, or thorough faultiness, is applicable to

\_no other\_: "Sometimes, when the \_word\_ with which the \_last\_ preposition

\_agrees\_, is \_single\_, it is better to \_omit\_ the comma before it: as,

'Many states were in alliance \_with\_, and under the protection \_of\_

Rome.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 272; \_Smith's\_, 190; \_Ingersoll's\_, 284;

\_Kirkham's\_, 215; \_Alger's\_, 79; \_Alden's\_, 149; \_Abel Flint's\_, 103;

\_Russell's\_, 115. But the blunders and contradictions on this point, end

not here. Dr. Blair happened most unlearnedly to say, "What is called

splitting of particles, or separating a preposition from the noun which it

governs, is \_always to be avoided\_. As if I should say, 'Though virtue

borrows no assistance from, yet it may often be accompanied by, the

advantages of fortune.'"--\_Lect. XII\_, p. 112. This too, though the author

himself did not \_always\_ respect the rule, has been thought worthy to be

copied, or stolen, with all its faults! See \_Jamieson's Rhetoric\_, p. 93;

and \_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, p. 319.

OBS. 17.--Dr. Lowth says, "The noun \_aversion\_, (that is, a turning away,)

as likewise the adjective \_averse\_, seems to require the preposition \_from\_

after it; and not so properly to admit of \_to\_, or \_for\_, which are often

used with it."--\_Gram.\_, p. 98. But this doctrine has not been adopted by

the later grammarians: "The words \_averse\_ and \_aversion\_ (says Dr.

Campbell) are more properly construed with \_to\_ than with \_from\_. The

examples in favour of the latter preposition, are beyond comparison

outnumbered by those in favour of the former."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 201;

\_Fisk's\_, 142; \_Ingersoll's\_, 229. This however must be understood only of

mental aversion. The expression of Milton, "On the coast \_averse from\_

entrance," would not be improved, if \_from\_ were changed to \_to\_. So the

noun \_exception\_, and the verb to \_except\_, are sometimes followed by

\_from\_, which has regard to the Latin particle \_ex\_, with which the word

commences; but the noun at least is much more frequently, and perhaps more

properly, followed by \_to\_. Examples: "Objects of horror must be \_excepted

from\_ the foregoing theory."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 268. "\_From\_ which

there are but two \_exceptions\_, both of them rare."--\_Ib.\_, ii. 89. "\_To\_

the rule that fixes the pause after the fifth portion, there is one

\_exception\_, and no more."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 84. "No \_exception\_ can be taken

\_to\_ the justness of the figure."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 37. "Originally there was no

\_exception\_ from the rule."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 58. "\_From\_ this rule

there is mostly an \_exception\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 269. "But \_to\_ this

rule there are many \_exceptions.\_"--\_Ib.\_, i. 240. "They are not to be

regarded as exceptions \_from\_ the rule,"--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 363.

OBS. 18.--After correcting the example. "He \_knows\_ nothing \_on\_ [of] it,"

Churchill remarks, "There seems to be a strange perverseness among the

\_London vulgar\_ in perpetually substituting \_on\_ for \_of\_, and \_of\_ for

\_on\_."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 345. And among the expressions which Campbell

censures under the name of \_vulgarism\_, are the following: "'Tis my humble

request you will be particular in speaking \_to\_ the following

points."--\_Guardian\_, No. 57. "The preposition ought to have been \_on\_.

Precisely of the same stamp is the \_on't\_ for \_of it\_, so much used by one

class of writers."--\_Philosophy of Rhet.\_, p. 217. So far as I have

observed, the use of \_of\_ for \_on\_ has never been frequent; and that of

\_on\_ for \_of\_, or \_on't\_ for \_of it\_, though it may never have been a

polite custom, is now a manifest \_archaism\_, or imitation of ancient usage.

"And so my young Master, whatever comes \_on't\_, must have a Wife look'd out

for him."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 378. In Saxon, \_on\_ was put for more than

half a dozen of our present prepositions. The difference between \_of\_ and

\_on\_ or \_upon\_, appears in general to be obvious enough; and yet there are

some phrases in which it is not easy to determine which of these words

ought to be preferred: as, "Many things they cannot \_lay hold on\_ at

once."--HOOKER: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "Uzzah put forth his hand to the ark of God,

and \_took hold of\_ it."--2 SAM.: \_ib.\_ "Rather thou shouldst \_lay hold

upon\_ him."--BEN JONSON: \_ib.\_ "Let them find courage to \_lay hold on\_ the

occasion."--MILTON: \_ib.\_ "The hand is fitted to \_lay hold of\_

objects."--RAY: \_ib.\_ "My soul \_took hold on\_ thee."--ADDISON: \_ib.\_ "To

\_lay hold of\_ this safe, this only method of cure."--ATTERBURY: \_ib.\_ "And

\_give\_ fortune no more \_hold\_ of him."--DRYDEN: \_ib.\_ "And his laws \_take\_

the surest \_hold of\_ us."--TILLOTSON: \_ib.\_ "It will then be impossible

you can \_have\_ any \_hold upon\_ him."--SWIFT: \_ib.\_ "The court of Rome

gladly \_laid hold on\_ all the opportunities."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, p. 198.

"Then did the officer \_lay hold of\_ him and execute him."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 219.

"When one can \_lay hold upon\_ some noted fact."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 311.

"But when we would \_lay\_ firm \_hold of\_ them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. "An advantage

which every one is glad to \_lay hold of\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 75. "To have \_laid\_

fast \_hold of\_ it in his mind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 94. "I would advise them to lay

aside their common-places, and to \_think\_ closely \_of\_ their

subject."--\_Ib.\_, p. 317. "Did they not \_take hold of\_ your

fathers?"--\_Zech.\_, i, 6. "Ten men shall \_take hold of\_ the skirt of one

that is a Jew."--\_Ib.\_, viii, 23. "It is wrong to say, either 'to \_lay\_

hold \_of\_ a thing,' or 'to \_take\_ hold \_on\_ it.'"--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 101.

In the following couplet, \_on\_ seems to have been preferred only for a

rhyme:

"Yet, lo! in me what authors have to \_brag on\_!

Reduc'd at last to hiss in my own dragon."--\_Pope\_.

OBS. 19.--In the allowable uses of prepositions, there may perhaps be some

room for choice; so that what to the mind of a critic may not appear the

fittest word, may yet be judged not positively ungrammatical. In this light

I incline to view the following examples: "Homer's plan is still more

defective, \_upon\_ another account."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 299.

Say--"\_on an other\_ account." "It was almost eight \_of the\_ clock before I

could leave that variety of objects."--\_Spectator\_, No. 454. Present usage

requires--"eight \_o\_'clock." "The Greek and Latin writers had a

considerable advantage \_above\_ us."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 114. "The study of

oratory has this advantage \_above\_ that of poetry."--\_Ib.\_, p. 338. "A

metaphor has frequently an advantage \_above\_ a formal comparison."--

\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 150. This use of \_above\_ seems to be a sort of

Scotticism: an Englishman, I think, would say--"advantage \_over\_ us," &c.

"Hundreds have all these crowding upon them from morning \_to\_ night."--

\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 33. Better--"from morning \_till\_ night." But Horne

Tooke observes, "We apply TO indifferently to \_place\_ or \_time\_; but TILL

to \_time\_ only, and never to \_place\_. Thus we may say, 'From morn TO night

th' eternal larum rang;' or, 'From morn TILL night.' &c."--\_Diversions of

Purley\_, i, 284.

NOTES TO RULE XXIII.

NOTE I.--Prepositions must be chosen and employed agreeably to the usage

and idiom of the language, so as rightly to express the relations intended.

Example of error: "By which we arrive \_to\_ the last division."--\_Richard W.

Green's Gram.\_, p. vii. Say,--"arrive \_at\_." NOTE II.--Those prepositions

which are particularly adapted in meaning to \_two objects\_, or to \_more\_,

ought to be confined strictly to the government of such terms only as suit

them. Example of error: "What is \_Person\_? It is the \_medium of\_

distinction \_between\_ the \_speaker\_, the \_object\_ addressed or spoken \_to\_,

and the \_object\_ spoken \_of\_."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 34. "\_Between

three\_" is an incongruity; and the text here cited is bad in several other

respects.

NOTE III.--An \_ellipsis\_ or \_omission\_ of the preposition is inelegant,

except where long and general use has sanctioned it, and made the relation

sufficiently intelligible. In the following sentence, \_of\_ is needed: "I

will not flatter you, that all I see in you is \_worthy love\_."--

\_Shakspeare\_. The following requires \_from\_: "Ridicule \_is banished

France\_, and is losing ground in England."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 106.

NOTE IV.--The \_insertion\_ of a preposition is also inelegant, when the

particle is needless, or when it only robs a transitive verb of its proper

regimen; as, "The people of England may congratulate \_to\_

themselves."--DRYDEN: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 163. "His servants ye are,

\_to\_ whom ye obey."--\_Rom.\_, vi, 16.

NOTE V.--The preposition and its object should have that position in

respect to other words, which will render the sentence the most perspicuous

and agreeable. Examples of error: "Gratitude is a forcible and active

principle in good and generous minds."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 169.

Better: "In good and generous minds, gratitude is a forcible and active

principle." "By a single stroke, he knows how to reach the heart."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 439. Better: "He knows how to reach the heart by a

single stroke."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER RULE XXIII.

EXAMPLES UNDER NOTE I.--CHOICE OF PREPOSITIONS.

"You have bestowed your favours to the most deserving persons."--\_Swift, on

E. Tongue\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper because the relation between \_have bestowed\_ and

\_persons\_ is not correctly expressed by the preposition \_to\_. But,

according to Note 1st under Rule 23d, "Prepositions must be chosen and

employed agreeably to the usage and idiom of the language, so as rightly to

express the relations intended." This relation would be better expressed by

\_upon\_; thus, "You have bestowed your favours \_upon\_ the most deserving

persons."]

"But to rise beyond that, and overtop the crowd, is given to

few."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 351. "This also is a good sentence, and gives

occasion to no material remark."--\_Ib.\_, p. 201. "Though Cicero endeavours

to give some reputation of the elder Cato, and those who were his

cotemporaries."--\_Ib.\_, p. 245. "The change that was produced on eloquence,

is beautifully described in the Dialogue."--\_Ib.\_, p. 249. "Without

carefully attending to the variation which they make upon the

idea."--\_Ib.\_, p. 367. "All of a sudden, you are transported into a lofty

palace."--\_Hazlitt's Lect.\_, p. 70. "Alike independent on one

another."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 398. "You will not think of them as

distinct processes going on independently on each other,"--\_Channing's

Self-Culture\_, p. 15. "Though we say, to \_depend on, dependent on\_, and

\_independent on\_, we say, \_independently of\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p.

348. "Independently on the rest of the sentence."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 78;

\_Guy's\_, 88; \_Murray's\_, i, 145 and 184; \_Ingersoll's\_, 150; \_Frost's\_, 46;

\_Fisk's\_, 125; \_Smith's New Gram.\_, 156; \_Gould's Lat. Gram.\_, 209;

\_Nixon's Parser\_, 65. "Because they stand independent on the rest of the

sentence."--\_Fisk's Gram.\_, p. 111. "When a substantive is joined with a

participle in English independently in the rest of the sentence."--\_Adam's

Lat. and Eng. Gram., Boston Ed. of 1803\_, p. 213; \_Albany Ed. of 1820\_, p.

166. "Conjunction, comes of the two Latin words \_con\_, together, and

\_jungo\_, to join."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 19. "How different to

this is the life of Fulvia!"--\_Addison's Spect.\_, No. 15. "\_Loved\_ is a

participle or adjective, derived of the word \_love\_."--\_Dr. Ash's Gram.\_,

p. 27. "But I would inquire at him, what an office is?"--\_Barclay's Works\_,

iii, 463. "For the capacity is brought unto action."--\_Ib.\_, iii, 420. "In

this period, language and taste arrive to purity."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p.

94. "And should you not aspire at distinction in the republick of

letters."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 13. "Delivering you up to the synagogues,

and in prisons."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 55. "One that is kept from

falling in a ditch, is as truly saved, as he that is taken out of

one."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 312. "The best on it is, they are but a sort

of French Hugonots."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 62. "These last Ten Examples

are indeed of a different Nature to the former."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_,

p. 333. "For the initiation of students in the principles of the English

language."--ANNUAL REVIEW: \_Murray's Gram.\_, ii, 299. "Richelieu profited

of every circumstance which the conjuncture afforded,"--\_Bolingbroke, on

Hist.\_, p. 177. "In the names of drugs and plants, the mistake in a word

may endanger life."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 165. "In order to the carrying on

its several parts into execution."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 192. "His

abhorrence to the superstitious figure."--HUME: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

164. "Thy prejudice to my cause."--DRYDEN: \_ib.\_, p. 164. "Which is found

among every species of liberty."--HUME: \_ib.\_, p. 169. "In a hilly region

to the north of Jericho."--\_Milman's Jews\_, Vol. i, p. 8. "Two or more

singular nouns, coupled with AND, require a verb and pronoun in the

plural."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 83.

"Books should to one of these four ends conduce,

For wisdom, piety, delight, or use."--\_Denham\_, p. 239.

UNDER NOTE II.--TWO OBJECTS OR MORE.

"The Anglo-Saxons, however, soon quarrelled between themselves for

precedence."--\_Constable's Miscellany\_, xx, p. 59. "The distinctions

between the principal parts of speech are founded in nature."--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 7. "I think I now understand the difference between the active,

passive, and neuter verbs."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 124. "Thus a figure

including a space between three lines, is the real as well as nominal

essence of a triangle."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 303. "We must distinguish

between an imperfect phrase, a simple sentence, and a compound

sentence."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 117; \_Murray's\_, i, 267; \_Ingersoll's\_,

280; \_Guy's\_, 97. "The Jews are strictly forbidden by their law, to

exercise usury among one another."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p. 177. "All the

writers have distinguished themselves among one another."--\_Addison\_. "This

expression also better secures the systematic uniformity between the three

cases."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 98. "When a disjunctive occurs between two

or more Infinitive Modes, or clauses, the verb must be singular."--

\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 95. "Several nouns or pronouns together in the same

case, not united by \_and\_, require a comma between each."--\_Blair's Gram.\_,

p. 115. "The difference between the several vowels is produced by opening

the mouth differently, and placing the tongue in a different manner for

each."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 2. "Thus feet composed of syllables, being

pronounced with a sensible interval between each, make a more lively

impression than can be made by a continued sound."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

Vol. ii, p. 32. "The superlative degree implies a comparison between three

or more."--\_Smith's Productive Gram.\_, p. 51. "They are used to mark a

distinction between several objects."--\_Levizac's Gram.\_, p. 85.

UNDER NOTE III.--OMISSION OF PREPOSITIONS.

"This would have been less worthy notice."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 197.

"But I passed it, as a thing unworthy my notice."--\_Werter\_. "Which, in

compliment to me, perhaps, you may, one day, think worthy your

attention."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 81. "To think this small present worthy an

introduction to the young ladies of your very elegant establishment."--

\_Ib.\_, p. iv. "There are but a few miles portage."--\_Jefferson's Notes on

Virginia\_, p. 17. "It is worthy notice, that our mountains are not

solitary."--\_Ib.\_, p. 26. "It is of about one hundred feet diameter."--

\_Ib.\_, 33. "Entering a hill a quarter or half a mile."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "And

herself seems passing to that awful dissolution, whose issue is not given

human foresight to scan."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "It was of a spheroidical form,

of about forty feet diameter at the base, and had been of about twelve feet

altitude."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143. "Before this it was covered with trees of twelve

inches diameter, and round the base was an excavation of five feet depth

and width."--\_Ibid.\_ "Then thou mayest eat grapes thy fill at thine own

pleasure."--\_Deut.\_, xxiii, 24. "Then he brought me back the way of the

gate of the outward sanctuary."--\_Ezekiel\_, xliv, 1. "They will bless God

that he has peopled one half the world with a race of freemen."--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 94. "What use can these words be, till their meaning is

known?"--\_Town's Analysis\_, p. 7. "The tents of the Arabs now are black, or

a very dark colour."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. v, p. 265. "They may not be

unworthy the attention of young men."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 157. "The

pronoun that is frequently applied to persons, as well as things."--

\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 87. "And \_who\_ is in the same case that \_man\_

is."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 148. "He saw a flaming stone, apparently about

four feet diameter."--\_The Friend\_, vii, 409. "Pliny informs us, that this

stone was the size of a cart."--\_Ibid.\_ "Seneca was about twenty years of

age in the fifth year of Tiberius, when the Jews were expelled

Rome."--\_Seneca's Morals\_, p. 11. "I was prevented[438] reading a letter

which would have undeceived me."--\_Hawkesworth, Adv.\_, No. 54. "If the

problem can be solved, we may be pardoned the inaccuracy of its

demonstration."--\_Booth's Introd.\_, p. 25. "The army must of necessity be

the school, not of honour, but effeminacy."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, i. 65.

"Afraid of the virtue of a nation, in its opposing bad measures."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 73. "The uniting them in various ways, so as to form words, would be

easy."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 34. "I might be excused taking any more

notice of it."--\_Watson's Apology\_, p. 65. "Watch therefore; for ye know

not what hour your Lord doth come."--\_Matt.\_, xxiv, 42. "Here, not even

infants were spared the sword."--\_M'Ilvaine's Lectures\_, p. 313. "To

prevent men turning aside to corrupt modes of worship."--\_Calvin's

Institutes\_, B. I, Ch. 12, Sec. 1. "God expelled them the Garden of

Eden."--\_Burder's Hist.\_, Vol. i, p. 10. "Nor could he refrain expressing

to the senate the agonies of his mind"--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 123. "Who now

so strenuously opposes the granting him any new powers."--\_Duncan's

Cicero\_, p. 127. "That the laws of the censors have banished him the

forum."--\_Ib.\_, p. 140. "We read not that he was degraded his office any

other way."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 149. "To all whom these presents shall

come, Greeting."--\_Hutchinson's Mass.\_, i, 459. "On the 1st, August,

1834."--\_British Act for the Abolition of Slavery\_.

"Whether you had not some time in your life

Err'd in this point which now you censure him."--\_Shak\_.

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF NEEDLESS PREPOSITIONS.

"And the apostles and elders came together to consider of this

matter."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 481. "And the apostles and elders came

together for to consider of this matter."--\_Acts\_, xv, 6. "Adjectives in

our Language have neither Case, Gender, nor Number; the only Variation they

have is by Comparison."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 27. "'It is to you, that I

am indebted for this privilege;' that is, 'to you am I indebted;' or, 'It

is to you to whom I am indebted.'"--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 232. "\_Books\_ is

a noun, of the third person, plural number, of neuter gender,"--

\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 15. "\_Brother's\_ is a common substantive, of the

masculine gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the

possessive case."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 229. "\_Virtue's\_ is a common

substantive, of the third person, the singular number, and in the

possessive case."--\_Ib.\_, i, 228. "When the authorities on one side greatly

preponderate, it is in vain to oppose the prevailing usage."--\_Campbell's

Rhet.\_, p. 173; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 367. "A captain of a troop of

banditti, had a mind to be plundering of Rome."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p.

51. "And, notwithstanding of its Verbal power, we have added the \_to\_ and

other signs of exertion."--\_Booth's Introd.\_, p. 28. "Some of these

situations are termed CASES, and are expressed by additions to the Noun

instead of by separate words."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. "Is it such a fast that I

have chosen, that a man should afflict his soul for a day, and to bow down

his head like a bulrush?"--\_Bacon's Wisdom\_, p. 65. "And this first emotion

comes at last to be awakened by the accidental, instead of, by the

necessary antecedent."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 17. "At about the

same time, the subjugation of the Moors was completed."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_,

p. 269. "God divided between the light and between the darkness."--

\_Burder's Hist.\_, i, 1. "Notwithstanding of this, we are not against

outward significations of honour."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 242. "Whether

these words and practices of Job's friends, be for to be our rule."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 243. "Such verb cannot admit of an objective case after it."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, "For which God is now visibly punishing of these Nations."--\_Right

of Tythes\_, "In this respect, Tasso yields to no poet, except to

Homer."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, "Notwithstanding of the numerous panegyrics on

the ancient English liberty."--HUME: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, "Their efforts

seemed to anticipate on the spirit, which became so general

afterwards."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 167.

UNDER NOTE V.--THE PLACING OF THE WORDS.

"But how short are my expressions of its excellency!"--\_Baxter\_. "There is

a remarkable union in his style, of harmony with ease."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

"It disposes in the most artificial manner, of the light and shade, for

viewing every thing to the best advantage."--"Aristotle too holds an

eminent rank among didactic writers for his brevity."--"In an introduction,

correctness should be carefully studied in the expression."--"Precision is

to be studied, above all things in laying down a method."--"Which shall

make the impression on the mind of something that is one, whole and

entire."--"At the same time, there are some defects which must be

acknowledged in the Odyssey."--"Beauties, however, there are, in the

concluding books, of the tragic kind."--"These forms of conversation by

degrees multiplied and grew troublesome."--\_Spectator\_, No. 119. "When she

has made her own choice, for form's sake, she sends a congé-d'-élire to her

friends."--"Let us endeavour to establish to ourselves an interest in him

who holds the reins of the whole creation in his hand."--"Let us endeavour

to establish to ourselves an interest in him, who, in his hand, holds the

reins of the whole creation."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 53. "The most

frequent measure next to this in English poetry is that of eight

syllables."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, "To introduce as great a variety as possible

of cadences."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, "He addressed several exhortations to

them suitable to their circumstances."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, "Habits must be

acquired of temperance and self-denial."--"In reducing the rules prescribed

to practice."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, "But these parts must be so closely bound

together as to make the impression upon the mind, of one object, not of

many."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, "Errors are sometimes committed by the most

distinguished writer, with respect to the use of \_shall\_ and

\_will\_"--\_Butler's Pract. Gram.\_,

CHAPTER XI--INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, being seldom any thing more than natural sounds or short

words uttered independently, can hardly be said to have any \_syntax\_; but

since some rule is necessary to show the learner how to dispose of them in

parsing, a brief axiom for that purpose, is here added, which completes our

series of rules: and, after several remarks on this canon, and on the

common treatment of Interjections, this chapter is made to embrace

\_Exercises\_ upon all the other parts of speech, that the chapters in the

Key may correspond to those of the Grammar.

RULE XXIV.--INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections have no dependent construction; they are put absolute, either

alone, or with other words: as, "\_O!\_ let not thy heart despise me."--\_Dr.

Johnson\_. "\_O\_ cruel \_thou\_!"--\_Pope, Odys.\_, B. xii, l. 333. "Ah wretched

\_we\_, poets of earth!"--\_Cowley\_,

"\_Ah Dennis! Gildon ah!\_ what ill-starr'd rage

Divides a friendship long confirm'd by age?"

\_Pope, Dunciad\_, B. iii,

OBSERVATIONS ON RULE XXIV.

OBS. 1.--To this rule, there are properly \_no exceptions\_. Though

interjections are sometimes uttered in close connexion with other words,

yet, being mere signs of passion or of feeling, they seem not to have any

strict grammatical relation, or dependence according to the sense. Being

destitute alike of relation, agreement, and government, they must be used

independently, if used at all. Yet an emotion signified in this manner, not

being causeless, may be accompanied by some object, expressed either by a

nominative absolute, or by an adjective after \_for\_: as, "\_Alas!\_ poor

\_Yorick!\_"--\_Shak\_. Here the grief denoted by \_alas\_, is certainly \_for

Yorick\_; as much so, as if the expression were, "Alas \_for\_ poor Yorick!"

But, in either case, \_alas\_, I think, has no dependent construction;

neither has \_Yorick\_, in the former, unless we suppose an ellipsis of some

governing word.

OBS. 2.--The interjection \_O\_ is common to many languages, and is

frequently uttered, in token of earnestness, before nouns or pronouns put

absolute by direct address; as, "Arise, \_O Lord; O God\_, lift up thine

hand."--\_Psalms\_, x, 12. "\_O ye\_ of little faith!"--\_Matt.\_, vi, 30. The

Latin and Greek grammarians, therefore, made this interjection the \_sign\_

of the \_vocative case\_; which case is the same as the nominative put

absolute by address in English. But this particle is no positive index of

the vocative; because an independent address may be made without that sign,

and the \_O\_ may be used where there is no address: as, "\_O\_ scandalous

want! \_O\_ shameful omission!"--"Pray, \_Sir\_, don't be uneasy."--\_Burgh's

Speaker\_, p. 86.

OBS. 3.--Some grammarians ascribe to two or three of our interjections the

power of governing sometimes the nominative case, and sometimes the

objective. First, NIXON; in an exercise entitled, "NOMINATIVE GOVERNED BY

AN INTERJECTION," thus: "The interjections O! Oh! and Ah! \_require\_ after

them the nominative case of a \_substantive\_ in the \_second\_ person; as, 'O

thou \_persecutor!\_'--'O Alexander! thou hast slain thy friend.' \_O\_ is an

interjection, \_governing\_ the nominative case \_Alexander\_."--\_English

Parser\_, Again, under the title, "OBJECTIVE CASE GOVERNED BY AN

INTERJECTION," he says: "The interjections O! Oh! and Ah! \_require\_ after

them the objective case of a \_substantive\_ in the \_first\_ or \_third\_

person; as, 'Oh \_me!\_' 'Oh the \_humiliations\_!' \_Oh\_ is an interjection,

\_governing\_ the objective case \_humiliations\_."--These two rules are in

fact contradictory, while each of them absurdly suggests that \_O, oh\_, and

\_ah\_, are used only with nouns. So J. M. PUTNAM: "Interjections sometimes

\_govern\_ an objective case; as, \_Ah me! O\_ the tender \_ties! O\_ the soft

\_enmity! O me\_ miserable! \_O\_ wretched \_prince! O\_ cruel \_reverse\_ of

fortune! When an address is made, the interjection does not perform the

office of government."--\_Putnam's Gram.\_, So KIRKHAM; who, under a rule

quite different from these, extends the doctrine of government to \_all\_

interjections: "According to the genius of the English language, transitive

verbs and prepositions \_require\_ the objective case of a noun or pronoun

after them; and this requisition is all that is meant by \_government\_, when

we say that these parts of speech \_govern the objective\_ case. THE SAME

PRINCIPLE APPLIES TO THE INTERJECTION. 'Interjections \_require\_ the

objective case of a pronoun of the first person after them; but the

nominative of a noun or pronoun of the second or third person; as, Ah \_me\_!

Oh \_thou\_! O my \_country!\_' To say, then, that interjections \_require\_

particular cases after them, is synonymous with saying, that they \_govern\_

those cases; and this office of the interjection is in \_perfect accordance\_

with that which it performs in the Latin, and many other

languages."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, According to this, every interjection has

as much need of an object after it, as has a transitive verb or a

preposition! The rule has, certainly, \_no\_ "accordance" with what occurs in

Latin, or in any other language; it is wholly a fabrication, though found,

in some shape or other, in well-nigh all English grammars.

OBS. 4.--L. MURRAY'S doctrine on this point is thus expressed: "The

interjections \_O! Oh!\_ and \_Ah! require\_ the objective case of a pronoun in

the first person after them, as, 'O me! oh me! Ah me!' But the nominative

case in the second person: as, 'O thou persecutor!' 'Oh ye hypocrites!' 'O

thou, who dwellest,' &c."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, INGERSOLL copies this most

faulty note literally, adding these words to its abrupt end,--i. e., to its

inexplicable "&c." used by Murray; "because the first person \_is governed

by a preposition\_ understood: as, 'Ah \_for\_ me!' or, '\_O what will become

of\_ me!' &c., and the second person is in the \_nominative independent\_,

there being a direct address."--\_Conversations on E. Gram.\_, So we see that

this grammarian and Kirkham, both modifiers of Murray, understand their

master's false verb "\_require\_" very differently. LENNIE too, in renouncing

a part of Murray's double or threefold error, "\_Oh! happy us!\_" for, "\_O\_

happy \_we!\_" teaches thus: "Interjections sometimes \_require\_ the objective

case after them, but they never \_govern\_ it. In the first edition of this

grammar," says he, "I followed Mr. Murray and others, in leaving \_we\_, in

the exercises to be turned into \_us\_; but that it should be \_we\_, and not

\_us\_, is obvious; because it is the nominative to \_are\_ understood; thus,

\_Oh\_ happy \_are we\_, or, \_Oh we are\_ happy, (being) surrounded with so many

blessings."--\_Lennie's Gram., Fifth Edition, Twelfth\_, Here is an other

solution of the construction of this pronoun of the first person,

contradictory alike to Ingersoll's, to Kirkham's, and to Murray's; while

\_all are wrong\_, and this among the rest. The word should indeed be \_we\_,

and not \_us\_; because we have both analogy and good authority for the

former case, and nothing but the false conceit of sundry grammatists for

the latter. But it is a \_nominative absolute\_, like any other nominative

which we use in the same exclamatory manner. For the first person may just

as well be put in the nominative absolute, by exclamation, as any other;

as, "Behold \_I\_ and the \_children\_ whom God hath given me!"--\_Heb.\_, "Ecce

\_ego\_ et \_pueri\_ quos mihi dedit Deus!"--\_Beza\_. "O brave \_we!\_"--\_Dr.

Johnson, often\_. So Horace: "O \_ego\_ lævus," &c.--\_Ep. ad Pi.\_, 301.

"Ah! luckless \_I!\_ who purge in spring my spleen--

Else sure the first of bards had Horace been."

--\_Francis's Hor.\_, ii, 209.

OBS. 5.--Whether Murray's remark above, on "\_O! Oh!\_ and \_Ah!\_" was

originally designed for a \_rule of government\_ or not, it is hardly worth

any one's while to inquire. It is too lame and inaccurate every way, to

deserve any notice, but that which should serve to explode it forever. Yet

no few, who have since made English grammars, have copied the text

literally; as they have, for the public benefit, stolen a thousand other

errors from the same quarter. The reader will find it, with little or no

change, in Smith's New Grammar, p. 96 and 134; Alger's, 56; Allen's, 117;

Russell's, 92; Blair's, 100, Guy's, 89; Abel Flint's, 59; A Teacher's, 43,

Picket's, 210; Cooper's[439] Murray, 136; Wilcox's, 95; Bucke's, 87;

Emmons's, 77; and probably in others. Lennie varies it \_indefinitely\_,

thus: "RULE. The interjections \_Oh!\_ and \_Ah!\_ &c. \_generally\_ require the

objective case of the first personal pronoun, \_and\_ the nominative of the

second; as, Ah \_me!\_ O \_thou\_ fool! O \_ye\_ hypocrites!"--\_Lennie's Gram.\_,

p. 110; \_Brace's\_, 88. M'Culloch, after Crombie, thus: "RULE XX.

Interjections are joined with the objective case of the pronoun of the

first person, and with the nominative of the pronoun of the second; as, Ah

me! O ye hypocrites."--\_Manual of E. Gram.\_, p. 145; and \_Crombie's

Treatise\_, p. 315; also \_Fowler's E. Language\_, p. 563. Hiley makes it a

note, thus: "The interjections. O! Oh! Ah! \_are followed by\_ the objective

case of a pronoun of the first person; as, \_'Oh me!' 'Ah me!'\_ but by the

nominative case of the pronoun in the second person; as, '\_O thou\_ who

dwellest.' "--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 82. This is what the same author

elsewhere calls "THE GOVERNMENT OF INTERJECTIONS;" though, like some

others, he had set it in the "Syntax of PRONOUNS." See \_Ib.\_, p. 108.

Murray, in forming his own little "Abridgment," omitted it altogether. In

his other grammars, it is still a mere note, standing where he at first

absurdly put it, under his rule for the agreement of pronouns with their

antecedents. By many of his sage amenders, it has been placed in the

catalogue of principal rules. But, that it is no adequate rule for

interjections, is manifest; for, in its usual form, it is limited to

\_three\_, and none of these can ever, with any propriety, be parsed by it.

Murray himself has not used it in any of his forms of parsing. He

conceived, (as I hinted before in Chapter 1st,) that, "The syntax of the

Interjection is of \_so very limited a nature\_, that it \_does not require\_ a

distinct, appropriate rule."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, i. 224.

OBS. 6.--Against this remark of Murray's, a good argument may be drawn from

the ridiculous use which has been made of his own suggestion in the other

place. For, though that suggestion never had in it the least shadow of

truth, and was never at all applicable either to the three interjections,

or to pronouns, or to cases, or to the persons, or to any thing else of

which it speaks, it has not only been often copied literally, and called a

"RULE" of syntax, but many have, yet more absurdly, made it a \_general

canon\_ which imposes on all interjections a syntax that belongs to none of

them. For example: "\_An interjection must be followed\_ by the objective

case of a pronoun in the first person; \_and\_ by a nominative of the second

person; as--\_Oh me! ah me! oh thou! AH hail, ye\_ happy men!"--\_Jaudon's

Gram.\_, p. 116. This is as much as to say, that every interjection must

have a pronoun or two after it! Again: "\_Interjections must be followed\_ by

the objective case of the pronoun in the first person; as, O \_me!\_ Ah \_me!\_

and by the nominative case of the second person; as, O \_thou\_ persecutor!

Oh \_ye\_ hypocrites!"--\_Merchant's Murray\_, p. 80; \_Merchant's School

Gram.\_, p. 99. I imagine there is a difference between O and \_oh\_,[440] and

that this author, as well as Murray, in the first and the last of these

examples, has misapplied them both. Again: "\_Interjections require\_ the

objective case of a pronoun of the first person, and the nominative case of

the second; as, \_Ah me! O thou\_"--\_Frost's El. of E. Gram.\_, p. 48. This,

too, is general, but equivocal; as if one case or both were necessary to

each interjection!

OBS. 7.--Of \_nouns\_, or of the \_third person\_, the three rules last cited

say nothing;[441] though it appears from other evidence, that their authors

supposed them applicable at least to \_some nouns\_ of the \_second person\_.

The supposition however was quite needless, because each of their grammars

contains an other Rule, that, "When an address is made, the noun or pronoun

is in the nominative case \_independent\_;" which, by the by, is far from

being universally true, either of the noun or of the pronoun. Russell

imagines, "The words \_depending\_ upon interjections, have so near a

resemblance to those in a direct address, that they may very properly be

classed under the same general head," and be parsed as being, "in the

nominative case \_independent\_." See his "\_Abridgment of Murray's Grammar\_,"

p. 91. He does not perceive that \_depending\_ and \_independent\_ are words

that contradict each other. Into the same inconsistency, do nearly all

those gentlemen fall, who ascribe to interjections a control over cases.

Even Kirkham, who so earnestly contends that what any words \_require\_ after

them they must necessarily \_govern\_, forgets his whole argument, or justly

disbelieves it, whenever he parses any noun that is uttered with an

interjection. In short, he applies his principle to nothing but the word

\_me\_ in the phrases, "\_Ah me!\_" "\_Oh me!\_" and "\_Me miserable!\_" and even

these he parses falsely. The second person used in the vocative, or the

nominative put absolute by direct address, whether an interjection be used

or not, he rightly explains as being "in the nominative case independent;"

as, "O \_Jerusalem, Jerusalem!\_"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 130. "O \_maid\_ of

Inistore!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 131. But he is wrong in saying that, "Whenever a noun

is of the second person, it is in the nominative case independent;" (\_Ib.\_,

p. 130;) and still more so, in supposing that, "The principle contained in

the note" [which tells what interjections \_require\_,] "\_proves\_ that every

noun of the second person is in the nominative case."--\_Ib.\_, p. 164. A

falsehood proves nothing but the ignorance or the wickedness of him who

utters it. He is wrong too, as well as many others, in supposing that this

nominative independent is not a nominative absolute; for, "The vocative is

[\_generally\_, if not \_always\_,] absolute."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 142. But

that nouns of the second person are not always absolute or independent, nor

always in the nominative case, or the vocative, appears, I think, by the

following example: "This is the stone which was set at nought \_of you

builders\_."--\_Acts\_, iv, II. See Obs. 3d on Rule 8th.

OBS. 8.--The third person, when uttered in exclamation, with an

interjection before it, is parsed by Kirkham, not as being governed by the

interjection, either in the nominative case, according to his own argument

and own rule above cited, or in the objective, according to Nixon's notion

of the construction; nor yet as being put absolute in the nominative, as I

believe it generally, if not always is; but as being "the nominative to a

verb understood; as, 'Lo,' \_there is\_ 'the poor \_Indian\_!' '0, the \_pain\_'

\_there is!\_ 'the \_bliss\_' \_there is\_ 'IN dying!'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

129. Pope's text is, "\_Oh\_ the pain, the bliss \_of\_ dying!" and, in all

that is here changed, the grammarian has perverted it, if not in all that

he has added. It is an other principle of Kirkham's Grammar, though a false

one, that, "Nouns have but two persons, the second and [the] third."--P.

37. So that, these two being disposed of agreeably to his own methods

above, which appear to include the second and third persons of pronouns

also, there remains to him nothing but the objective of the pronoun of the

first person to which he can suppose his other rule to apply; and I have

shown that there is no truth in it, even in regard to this. Yet, with the

strongest professions of adhering to the principles, and even to "the

language" of Lindley Murray, this gentleman, by copying somebody else in

preference to "that eminent philologist," has made himself one of those by

whom Murray's erroneous remark on \_O, oh\_, and \_ah\_, with pronouns of the

first and second persons, is not only stretched into a rule for all

interjections, but made to include nouns of the second person, and both

nouns and pronouns of the third person: as, "Interjections require the

objective case of a pronoun of the first person after them, but the

nominative of a noun or pronoun of the second or third person; as, 'Ah!

\_me\_; Oh! \_thou\_; O! \_virtue\_!'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 134;

Stereotype Ed., p. 177. See the same rule, with examples and punctuation

different, in his \_Stereotype Edition\_, p. 164; \_Comly's Gram.\_, 116;

\_Greenleaf's\_, 36; and \_Fisk's\_, 144. All these authors, except Comly, who

comes much nearest to the thing, profess to present to us "\_Murray's

Grammar Simplified\_;" and this is a sample of their work of

\_simplification\_!--an ignorant piling of errors on errors!

"O imitatores servum pecus! ut mihi sæpe

Bilem, sæpe jocum vestri movêre tumultus!"--\_Horace\_.

OBS. 9.--Since so many of our grammarians conceive that interjections

require or govern cases, it may be proper to cite some who teach otherwise.

"Interjections, in English, have no government."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 111.

"Interjections have no government, or admit of no construction."--\_Coar's

Gram.\_, p. 189. "Interjections have no connexion with other

word's."--\_Fuller's Gram.\_, p. 71. "The interjection, in a grammatical

sense, is totally unconnected with every other word in a sentence. Its

arrangement, of course, is altogether arbitrary, and cannot admit of any

theory."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 83. "Interjections cannot properly have

either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion,

and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever

case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word

understood, except the vocative, which is always placed

absolutely."--\_Adam's Latin Gram.\_, p. 196; \_Gould's\_, 193. If this is true

of the Latin language, a slight variation will make it as true of ours.

"Interjections, and phrases resembling them, are taken absolutely; as,

\_Oh\_, world, \_thy slippery turns\_! But the phrases Oh \_me\_! and Ah \_me\_!

frequently occur."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 188. This passage is, in several

respects, wrong; yet the leading idea is true. The author entitles it,

"SYNTAX OF INTERJECTIONS," yet absurdly includes in it I know not what

\_phrases\_! In the phrase, "\_thy slippery turns!\_" no word is absolute, or

"taken absolutely" but this noun "\_turns\_;" and this, without the least

hint of its \_case\_, the learned author will have us to understand to be

absolute, because the phrase \_resembles an interjection!\_ But the noun

"\_world\_" which is also absolute, and which still more resembles an

interjection, he will have to be so for a different reason--because it is

in what he chooses to call the \_vocative case\_. But, according to custom,

he should rather have put his interjection absolute \_with\_ the noun, and

written it, "\_O world\_," and not, "\_Oh, world\_." What he meant to do with

"\_Oh me!\_ and \_Ah me!\_" is doubtful. If any phrases come fairly under his

rule, these are the very ones; and yet he seems to introduce them as

exceptions! Of these, it can hardly be said, that they "\_frequently\_

occur." Lowth notices only the latter, which he supposes elliptical. The

former I do not remember to have met with more than three or four times;

except in grammars, which in this case are hardly to be called authorities:

"\_Oh! me\_, how fared it with me then?"--\_Job Scott\_. "\_Oh me!\_ all the

horse have got over the river, what shall we do?"--WALTON: \_Joh. Dict.\_

"But when he was first seen, \_oh me!\_

What shrieking and what misery!"--\_Wordsworth's Works\_, p. 114.

OBS. 10.--When a declinable word not in the nominative absolute, follows an

interjection, as part of an imperfect exclamation, its construction (if the

phrase be good English) depends on something understood; as, "Ah

\_me!\_"--that is, "Ah! \_pity\_ me;" or, "Ah! \_it grieves\_ me;" or, as some

will have it, (because the expression in Latin is "\_Hei mihi!\_") "Ah \_for\_

me!"--\_Ingersoll\_. "Ah! \_wo is to\_ me."--\_Lowth\_. "Ah! \_sorrow is to\_

me."--\_Coar\_. So of "\_oh me!\_" for, in these expressions, if not generally,

\_oh\_ and \_ah\_ are exactly equivalent the one to the other. As for "\_O me\_"

it is now seldom met with, though Shakspeare has it a few times. From these

examples, O. B. Peirce erroneously imagines the "independent case" of the

pronoun \_I\_ to be \_me\_, and accordingly parses the word without supposing

an ellipsis; but in the plural he makes that case to be \_we\_, and not \_us\_.

So, having found an example of "Ah \_Him!\_" which, according to one half of

our grammarians, is bad English, he conceives the independent case of \_he\_

to be \_him\_; but in the plural, and in both numbers of the words \_thou\_ and

\_she\_, he makes it the nominative, or the same in form as the nominative.

So builds he "the temple of Grammatical consistency!"--P. 7. Nixon and

Cooper must of course approve of "\_Ah him!\_" because they assume that the

interjection \_ah\_ "\_requires\_" or "\_governs\_" the objective case of the

third person. Others must condemn the expression, because they teach that

\_ah\_ requires the nominative case of this person. Thus Greenleaf sets down

for false syntax, "O! happy \_them\_, surrounded with so many

blessings!"--\_Gram. Simplified\_, p. 47. Here, undoubtedly, the word should

be \_they\_; and, by analogy, (if indeed the instances are analogous,) it

would seem more proper to say, "Ah \_he!\_" the nominative being our only

case absolute. But if any will insist that "\_Ah him!\_" is good English,

they must suppose that \_him\_ is governed by something understood; as, "Ah!

I \_lament\_ him;" or, "Ah! \_I mourn for\_ him." And possibly, on this

principle, the example referred to may be most correct as it stands, with

the pronoun in the objective case: "\_Ah Him!\_ the first great martyr in

this great cause."--D. WEBSTER: \_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 199.

OBS. 11.--If we turn to the Latin syntax, to determine by analogy what case

is used, or ought to be used, after our English interjections, in stead of

finding a "perfect accordance" between that syntax and the rule for which

such accordance has been claimed, we see at once an utter repugnance, and

that the pretence of their agreement is only a sample of Kirkham's

unconscionable pedantry. The rule, in all its modifications, is based on

the principle, that the choice of \_cases\_ depends on the distinction of

\_persons\_--a principle plainly contrary to the usage of the Latin classics,

and altogether untrue. In Latin, some interjections are construed with the

nominative, the accusative, or the vocative; some, only with the dative;

some, only with the vocative. But, in English, these four cases are all

included in two, the nominative and the objective; and, the case

independent or absolute being necessarily the nominative, it follows that

the objective, if it occur after an interjection, must be the object of

something which is capable of governing it. If any disputant, by supposing

ellipses, will make objectives of what I call nominatives absolute, so be

it; but I insist that interjections, in fact, never "require" or "govern"

one case more than an other. So Peirce, and Kirkham, and Ingersoll, with

pointed self-contradiction, may continue to make "the independent case,"

whether vocative or merely exclamatory, the subject of a verb, expressed or

understood; but I will content myself with endeavouring to establish a

syntax not liable to this sort of objection. In doing this, it is proper to

look at all the facts which go to show what is right, or wrong. "\_Lo, the

poor Indian!\_" is in Latin, "\_Ecce pauper Indus!\_" or, "\_Ecce pauperem

Indum!\_" This use of either the nominative or the accusative after \_ecce\_,

if it proves any thing concerning the case of the word \_Indian\_, proves it

doubtful. Some, it seems, pronounce it an objective. Some, like Murray, say

nothing about it. Following the analogy of our own language, I refer it to

the nominative absolute, because there is nothing to determine it to be

otherwise. In the examples. "\_Heu me miserum!\_ Ah \_wretch\_ that I

am!"--(\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 263.) and "\_Miser ego homo!\_ O wretched

\_man\_ that I am!"--(\_Rom.\_, vii, 24,) if the word \_that\_ is a relative

pronoun, as I incline to think it is, the case of the nouns \_wretch\_ and

\_man\_ does not depend on any other words, either expressed or implied. They

are therefore nominatives absolute, according to Rule 8th, though the Latin

words may be most properly explained on the principle of ellipsis.

OBS. 12.--Of some impenetrable blockhead, Horace, telling how himself was

vexed, says: "\_O te\_, Bollane, cerebri Felicem! aiebam tacitus."--\_Lib.\_ i,

\_Sat.\_ ix, 11. Literally: "\_O thee\_, Bollanus, happy of brain! said I to

myself." That is, "O! \_I envy\_ thee," &c. This shows that \_O\_ does not

"require the nominative case of the second person" after it, at least, in

Latin. Neither does \_oh\_ or \_ah\_: for, if a governing word be suggested,

the objective may be proper; as, "Whom did he injure? Ah! \_thee\_, my

boy?"--or even the possessive; as, "Whose sobs do I hear? Oh! \_thine\_, my

child?" Kirkham tells us truly, (Gram., p. 126,) that the exclamation "\_O

my\_" is frequently heard in conversation. These last resemble Lucan's use

of the genitive, with an ellipsis of the governing noun: "\_O miseræ

sortis!\_" i.e., "\_O\_ [men] \_of miserable lot!\_" In short, all the Latin

cases as well as all the English, may possibly occur after one or other of

the interjections. I have instanced all but the ablative, and the following

is literally an example of that, though the word \_quanto\_ is construed

adverbially: "Ah, \_quanto\_ satius est!"--\_Ter. And.\_, ii, 1. "Ah, \_how

much\_ better it is!" I have also shown, by good authorities, that the

nominative of the first person, both in English and in Latin, may be

properly used after those interjections which have been supposed to require

or govern the objective. But how far is analogy alone a justification? Is

"\_O thee\_" good English, because "\_O te\_" is good Latin? No: nor is it bad

for the reason which our grammarians assign, but because our best writers

never use it, and because \_O\_ is more properly the sign of the vocative.

The literal version above should therefore be changed; as, "O Bollanus,

\_thou\_ happy numskull! said I to myself."

OBS. 13--Allen Fisk, "author of Adam's Latin Grammar Simplified," and of

"Murray's English Grammar Simplified," sets down for "\_False Syntax\_" not

only that hackneyed example, "Oh! happy we," &c., but, "O! You, who love

iniquity," and, "Ah! you, who hate the light."--\_Fisk's E. Gram.\_, p. 144.

But, to imagine that either \_you\_ or \_we\_ is wrong here, is certainly no

sing of a great linguist; and his punctuation is very inconsistent both

with his own rule of syntax and with common practice. An interjection set

off by a comma or an exclamation point, is of course put absolute \_singly\_,

or by itself. If it is to be read as being put absolute with something

else, the separation is improper. One might just as well divide a

preposition from its object, as an interjection from the case which it is

supposed to govern. Yet we find here not only such a division as Murray

sometimes improperly adopted, but in one instance a total separation, with

a capital following; as, "O! You, who love iniquity," for, "O you who love

iniquity!" or "O ye," &c. If a point be here set between the two pronouns,

the speaker accuses all his hearers of loving iniquity; if this point be

removed, he addresses only such as do love it. But an interjection and a

pronoun, each put absolute singly, one after the other, seem to me not to

constitute a very natural exclamation. The last example above should

therefore be, "Ah! you hate the light." The first should be written, "\_O\_

happy we!"

OBS. 14.--In other grammars, too, there are many instances of some of the

errors here pointed out. R. C. Smith knows no difference between \_O\_ and

\_oh\_; takes "\_Oh!\_ happy \_us\_" to be accurate English; sees no impropriety

in separating interjections from the pronouns which he supposes them to

"govern;" writes the same examples variously, even on the same page;

inserts or omits commas or exclamation points at random; yet makes the

latter the means by which interjections are to be known! See his \_New

Gram.\_, pp. 40, 96 and 134. Kirkham, who lays claim to "a new system of

punctuation," and also stoutly asserts the governing power of

interjections, writes, and rewrites, and finally stereotypes, in one part

of his book. "Ah me! \_Oh\_ thou! O my country!" and in an other, "Ah! me;

\_Oh!\_ thou; O! virtue." See Obs. 3d and Obs. 8th above. From such hands,

any thing "\_new\_" should be received with caution: this last specimen of

his scholarship has more errors than words.

OBS. 15.--Some few of our interjections seem to admit of a connexion with

other words by means of a preposition or the conjunction \_that\_ as, "O \_to\_

forget her!"--\_Young\_. "O \_for\_ that warning voice!"--\_Milton\_. "O \_that\_

they were wise!"--\_Deut.\_, xxxii, 29. "O \_that\_ my people had hearkened

unto me!"--\_Ps.\_, lxxxi, 13, "Alas \_for\_ Sicily!"--\_Cowper\_. "O \_for\_ a

world in principle as chaste As this is gross and selfish!"--\_Id.\_ "Hurrah

\_for\_ Jackson!"--\_Newspaper\_. "A bawd, sir, fy \_upon\_ him!"--SHAK.: \_Joh.

Dict.\_ "And fy \_on\_ fortune, mine avowed foe!"--SPENCER: \_ib.\_ This

connexion, however, even if we parse all the words just as they stand, does

not give to the interjection itself any dependent construction. It appears

indeed to refute Jamieson's assertion, that, "The interjection is \_totally

unconnected\_ with every other word in a sentence;" but I did not quote this

passage, with any averment of its accuracy; and, certainly, many nouns

which are put absolute themselves, have in like manner a connexion with

words that are not put absolute: as, "O \_Lord\_ God of hosts, hear my

prayer; give ear, O \_God\_ of Jacob. Selah."--\_Ps.\_, lxxxiv, 8. But if any

will suppose, that in the foregoing examples something else than the

interjection must be the antecedent term to the preposition or the

conjunction, they may consider the expressions elliptical: though it must

be confessed, that much of their vivacity will be lost, when the supposed

ellipses are supplied: as, "O! \_I desire\_ to forget her."--"O! \_how I long\_

for that warning voice!"--"O! \_how I wish\_ that they were wise!"--"Alas! I

\_wail\_ for Sicily."--"Hurrah! \_I shout\_ for Jackson."--"Fy! \_cry out\_ upon

him." Lindley Murray has one example of this kind, and if his punctuation

of it is not bad in all his editions, there must be an ellipsis in the

expression: "O! \_for\_ better times."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, ii, 6; \_Duodecimo

Exercises\_, p. 10. He also writes it thus: "O. \_for\_ better

times."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, i, 120; \_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 47. According to

common usage, it should be, "O for better times!"

OBS. 16.--The interjection may be placed at the \_beginning\_ or the \_end\_ of

a simple sentence, and sometimes \_between\_ its less intimate parts; but

this part of speech is seldom, if ever, allowed to interrupt the connexion

of any words which are closely united in sense. Murray's definition of an

interjection, as I have elsewhere shown, is faulty, and directly

contradicted by his example: "O virtue! how amiable thou art!"--\_Octavo

Gram.\_, i, 28 and 128; ii. 2. This was a favourite sentence with Murray,

and he appears to have written it uniformly in this fashion; which,

undoubtedly, is altogether right, except that the word \_"virtue"\_ should

have had a capital Vee, because the quality is here personified.

OBS. 17.--Misled by the false notion, that the term \_interjection\_ is

appropriate only to what is "thrown in between the parts of a \_sentence\_,"

and perceiving that this is in fact but rarely the situation of this part

of speech, a recent critic, (to whom I should owe some acknowledgements, if

he were not wrong in every thing in which he charges me with error,) not

only denounces this name as "\_barbarous\_," preferring Webster's loose term,

"\_exclamation\_;" but avers, that, "The words called \_interjection\_ should

\_never\_ be so used--should \_always stand alone\_; as, 'Oh! virtue, how

amiable thou art.' 'Oh? Absalom, my son.' G. Brown," continues he, "drags

one into the middle of a sentence, \_where it never belonged\_; thus, 'This

enterprise, \_alas\_! will never compensate us for the trouble and expense

with which it has been attended.' If G. B. meant the \_enterprize\_ of

studying grammar, in the old theories, his sentiment is very appropriate;

but his \_alas\_! he should have known enough to have put into the right

place:--before the sentence representing the fact that excites the emotion

expressed by \_alas\_! See on the Chart part 3, of RULE XVII. An

\_exclamation\_ must \_always precede\_ the phrase or sentence describing the

fact that excites the emotion to be expressed by the \_exclamation\_; as:

Alas! I have alienated my friend! \_Oh!\_ Glorious hope of bliss

secure!"--\_Oliver B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 375. "O Glorious hope of bliss

secure!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 184. "O \_glorious\_ hope!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 304.

OBS. 18.--I see no reason to believe, that the class of words which have

always, and almost universally, been called \_interjections\_, can ever be

more conveniently explained under any other name; and, as for the term

\_exclamation\_, which is preferred also by Cutler, Felton, Spencer, and S.

W. Clark, it appears to me much less suitable than the old one, because it

is less specific. Any words uttered loudly in the same breath, are \_an

exclamation\_. This name therefore is too general; it includes other parts

of speech than interjections; and it was but a foolish whim in Dr. Webster,

to prefer it in his dictionaries. When David "cried \_with a loud voice\_, O

my son Absalom! O Absalom, my son, my son!" [442] he uttered \_two\_

exclamations, but they included all his words. He did not, like my critic

above, set off his first word with an interrogation point, or any other

point. But, says Peirce, "These words are \_used in exclaiming\_, and are

what all know them to be, \_exclamations\_; as I call them. May I not \_call\_

them what they \_are\_?"--\_Ibid.\_ Yes, truly. But to \_exclaim\_ is to \_cry

out\_, and consequently every \_outcry\_ is an \_exclamation\_; though there are

two chances to one, that \_no interjection\_ at all be used by the bawler. As

good an argument, or better, may be framed against every one of this

gentleman's professed improvements in grammar; and as for his punctuation

and orthography, any reader may be presumed capable of seeing that they are

not fit to be proposed as models.

OBS. 19.--I like my position of the word "\_alas\_" better than that which

Peirce supposes to be its only right place; and, certainly, his rule for

the location of words of this sort, as well as his notion that they must

stand alone, is as false, as it is new. The obvious misstatement of Lowth,

Adam, Gould, Murray, Churchill, Alger, Smith, Guy, Ingersoll, and others,

that, "Interjections are words thrown in between the parts of \_a

sentence\_," I had not only excluded from my grammars, but expressly

censured in them. It was not, therefore, to prop any error of the old

theorists, that I happened to set one interjection "\_where\_" according to

this new oracle, "\_it never belonged\_." And if any body but he has been

practically misled by their mistake, it is not I, but more probably some of

the following authors, here cited for his refutation: "I fear, \_alas!\_ for

my life."--\_Fisk's Gram.\_, p. 89. "I have been occupied, \_alas\_! with

trifles."--\_Murray's Gr., Ex. for Parsing\_, p. 5; \_Guy's\_, p. 56. "We

eagerly pursue pleasure, but, \_alas!\_ we often mistake the road."--\_Smith's

New Gram.\_, p. 40, "To-morrow, \_alas!\_ thou \_mayest\_ be

comfortless!"--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 35. "Time flies, \_O!\_ how

swiftly."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 226. "My friend, \_alas!\_ is dead."--\_J.

Flint's Gram.\_, p. 21. "But \_John, alas! he\_ is very idle."--\_Merchant's

Gram.\_, p. 22. "For pale and wan he was, \_alas\_ the while!"--SPENSER: \_Joh.

Dict.\_ "But yet, \_alas! O\_ but yet, \_alas!\_ our haps be but hard

haps."--SYDNEY: \_ib.\_ "Nay, (what's incredible,) \_alack!\_ I \_hardly\_ hear a

woman's clack."--SWIFT: \_ib.\_ "Thus life is spent (\_oh fie\_ upon't!) In

being touch'd, and crying--Don't!"--\_Cowper\_, i, 231. "For whom, \_alas!\_

dost thou prepare The sweets that I was wont to share"--\_Id.\_, i, 203. "But

here, \_alas!\_ the difference lies."--\_Id.\_, i. 100. "Their names, \_alas\_!

in vain reproach an age," &c.--\_Id.\_, i, 88. "What nature, \_alas!\_ has

denied," &c.--\_Id.\_, i, 235. "A. \_Hail\_ Sternhold, then; and Hopkins,

\_hail!\_ B. Amen."--\_Id.\_, i 25.

"These Fate reserv'd to grace thy reign divine,

Foreseen by me, but \_ah!\_ withheld from mine!"--\_Pope, Dun.\_, iii, 215.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX PROMISCUOUS. [Fist] [The following examples of bad grammar,

being similar in their character to others already exhibited, are to be

corrected, by the pupil, according to formules previously given.]

LESSON I.--ANY PARTS OF SPEECH.

"Such an one I believe yours will be proved to be."--PEET: \_Farnum's

Gram.\_, p. 1. "Of the distinction between the imperfect and the perfect

tenses, it may be observed," &c.--\_Ainsworth's Gram.\_, p. 122. "The subject

is certainly worthy consideration."--\_Ib.\_, p. 117. "By this means all

ambiguity and controversy is avoided on this point."--\_Bullions, Principles

of Eng. Gram., 5th Ed., Pref.\_, p. vi. "The perfect participle in English

has both an active and passive signification."--\_Ib.\_, p. 58. "The old

house is at length fallen down."--\_Ib.\_, p. 78. "The king, with the lords

and commons, constitute the English form of government."--\_Ib.\_, p. 93.

"The verb in the singular agrees with the person next it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 95.

"Jane found Seth's gloves in James' hat."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 15.

"Charles' task is too great."--\_Ibid.\_, 15. "The conjugation of a verb is

the naming, in regular order, its several modes tenses, numbers and

persons."--\_Ib.\_, p. 24. "The long remembered beggar was his

guest."--\_Ib.\_, 1st Ed., p. 65. "Participles refer to nouns and

pronouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 81. "F has an uniform sound in every position except

in \_of\_."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 15. "There are three genders; the

masculine, the feminine and neuter."--\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "When \_so that\_ occur

together, sometimes the particle \_so\_ is taken as an adverb."--\_Ib.\_, p.

124. "The definition of the articles show that they modify the words to

which they belong."--\_Ib.\_, p. 138. "The auxiliaries \_shall, will\_, or

\_should\_ is implied."--\_Ib.\_, p. 192. "Single rhyme trochaic omits the

final short syllable."--\_Ib.\_, p. 244. "Agreeable to this, we read of names

being blotted out of God's book,"--BURDER: \_ib.\_, p. 156; \_Webster's

Philos. Gram.\_, 155; \_Improved Gram.\_, 107. "The first person is the person

speaking."--\_Goldsbury's Common School Gram.\_, p. 10. "Accent is the laying

a peculiar stress of the voice on a certain letter or syllable in a

word."--\_Ib.\_, Ed. of 1842, p. 75. "Thomas' horse was caught."--\_Felton's

Gram.\_, p. 64. "You was loved."--\_Ib.\_, p. 45. "The nominative and

objective end the same."--\_Rev. T. Smith's Gram.\_, p. 18. "The number of

pronouns, like those of substantives, are two, the singular and the

plural."--\_Ib.\_, p. 22. "\_I\_ is called the pronoun of the \_first\_ person,

which is the person speaking."--\_Frost's Practical Gram.\_, p. 32. "The

essential elements of the phrase is an intransitive gerundive and an

adjective."--\_Hazen's Practical Gram.\_, p. 141. "Being rich is no

justification for such impudence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 141. "His having been a

soldier in the revolution is not doubted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143. "Catching fish

is the chief employment of the inhabitants. The chief employment of the

inhabitants is catching fish."--\_Ib.\_, p. 144. "The cold weather did not

prevent the work's being finished at the time specified."--\_Ib.\_, p. 145.

"The former viciousness of that man caused his being suspected of this

crime."--\_Ib.\_, p. 145. "But person and number applied to verbs means,

certain terminations."--\_Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 69. "Robert fell a

tree."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "Charles raised up."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "It might not be

an useless waste of time."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. "Neither will you have that

\_implicit faith\_ in the writings and works of others which characterise the

vulgar,"--\_Ib.\_, p. 5. "\_I\_, is the first person, because it denotes the

speaker."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. "I would refer the student to Hedges' or Watts'

Logic."--\_Ib.\_, p. 15. "Hedge's, Watt's, Kirwin's, and Collard's

Logic."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, Part III, p. 116. "Letters are called

vowels which make a full and perfect sound of themselves."--\_Cutler's

Gram.\_, p. 10. "It has both a singular and plural construction."--\_Ib.\_, p.

23. "For he beholdest thy beams no more."--\_Ib.\_, p. 136. "To this

sentiment the Committee has the candour to incline, as it will appear by

their summing up."--\_Macpherson's Ossian, Prelim. Disc.\_, p. xviii. "This

is reducing the point at issue to a narrow compass."--\_Ib.\_, p. xxv. "Since

the English sat foot upon the soil."--\_Exiles of Nova Scotia\_, p. 12. "The

arrangement of its different parts are easily retained by the

memory."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, 3d Ed., p. 262. "The words employed are the most

appropriate which could have been selected."--\_Ib.\_, p. 182. "To prevent it

launching!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 135. "Webster has been followed in preference to

others, where it differs from them."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 8. "Exclamation

and Interrogation are often mistaken for one another."--\_Buchanan's E.

Syntax\_, p. 160. "When all nature is hushed in sleep, and neither love nor

guilt keep their vigils."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 96.

"When all nature's hushed asleep,

Nor love, nor guilt, their vigils keep."--\_Ib.\_, p. 95.

LESSON II.--ANY PARTS OF SPEECH.

"A VERSIFYER and POET are two different Things."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p.

163. "Those Qualities will arise from the well expressing of the

Subject."--\_Ib.\_, p. 165. "Therefore the explanation of \_network\_, is taken

no notice of here."--\_Mason's Supplement\_, p. vii. "When emphasis or pathos

are necessary to be expressed."--\_Humphrey's Punctuation\_, p. 38. "Whether

this mode of punctuation is correct, and whether it be proper to close the

sentence with the mark of admiration, may be made a question."--\_Ib.\_, p.

39. "But not every writer in those days were thus correct."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59.

"The sounds of A, in English orthoepy, are no less than four."--\_Ib.\_, p.

69. "Our present code of rules are thought to be generally correct."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 70. "To prevent its running into another."--\_Humphrey's Prosody\_,

p. 7. "Shakespeare, perhaps, the greatest poetical genius which England has

produced."--\_Ib.\_, p. 93. "This I will illustrate by example; but prior to

which a few preliminary remarks may be necessary."--\_Ib.\_, p. 107. "All

such are entitled to two accents each, and some of which to two accents

nearly equal."--\_Ib.\_, p. 109. "But some cases of the kind are so plain

that no one need to exercise his judgment therein."--\_Ib.\_, p. 122. "I have

forbore to use the word."--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. "The propositions, 'He may

study,' 'He might study,' 'He could study,' affirms an ability or power to

study."--\_Hallock's Gram. of\_ 1842, p. 76. "The divisions of the tenses has

occasioned grammarians much trouble and perplexity."--\_Ib.\_, p. 77. "By

adopting a familiar, inductive method of presenting this subject, it may be

rendered highly attractive to young learners."--\_Wells's Sch. Gram.\_, 1st

Ed., p. 1; 3d, 9; 113th, 11. "The definitions and rules of different

grammarians were carefully compared with each other."--\_Ib., Preface\_, p.

iii. "So as not wholly to prevent some sounds issuing."--\_Sheridan's

Elements of English\_, p. 64. "Letters of the Alphabet not yet taken notice

of."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11. "IT \_is sad\_, IT \_is strange\_, &c., seems to express

only that \_the thing\_ is sad, strange, &c."--\_The Well-Wishers' Gram.\_, p.

68. "THE WINNING is easier than THE PRESERVING a conquest."--\_Ib.\_, p. 65.

"The United States finds itself the owner of a vast region of country at

the West."--\_Horace Mann in Congress\_, 1848. "One or more letters placed

before a word is a Prefix."--\_S. W. Clark's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 42. "One or

more letters added to a word is a Suffix."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. "Two-thirds of my

hair has fallen off."--\_Ib.\_, p. 126. "'Suspecting,' describes 'we,' by

expressing, incidentally, an act of 'we.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 130. "Daniel's

predictions are now being fulfilled."--\_Ib.\_, p. 136. "His being a scholar,

entitles him to respect."--\_Ib.\_, p. 141. "I doubted his having been a

soldier."--\_Ib.\_, p. 142. "Taking a madman's sword to prevent his doing

mischief, cannot be regarded as robbing him."--\_Ib.\_, p. 129. "I thought it

to be him; but it was not him."--\_Ib.\_, p. 149. "It was not me that you

saw."--\_Ib.\_, p. 149. "Not to know what happened before you was born, is

always to be a boy."--\_Ib.\_, p. 149. "How long was you going? Three

days."--\_Ib.\_, 158. "The qualifying Adjective is placed next the

Noun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 165. "All went but me."--\_Ib.\_, p. 93. "This is parsing

their own language, and not the author's."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st

Ed., p. 73. "Nouns which denote males, are of the masculine

gender."--\_Ib.\_, p. 49. "Nouns which denote females, are of the feminine

gender."--\_Ib.\_, p. 49. "When a comparison is expressed between more than

two objects of the same class, the superlative degree is employed."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 133. "Where \_d\_ or \_t\_ go before, the additional letter \_d\_ or \_t\_, in

this contracted form, coalesce into one letter with the radical \_d\_ or

\_t\_."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 9. "Write words which will show what kind

of a house you live in--what kind of a book you hold in your hand--what

kind of a day it is."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p. 7. "One word or more is often

joined to nouns or pronouns to modify their meaning."--\_Ib., 2d Ed.\_, p.

30. "\_Good\_ is an adjective; it explains the quality or character of every

person or thing to which it is applied."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33; \_Abridg.\_, 32. "A

great public as well as private advantage arises from every one's devoting

himself to that occupation which he prefers, and for which he is specially

fitted."--WAYLAND: \_Wells's Gram.\_, p. 121; \_Weld's\_, 180. "There was a

chance of his recovering his senses. Not thus: 'There was a chance of him

recovering his senses.' MACAULEY."--See \_Wells's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 121;

113th, 135. "This may be known by its not having any connecting word

immediately preceding it."--\_Weld's Gram., 2d Edition\_, p. 181. "There are

\_irregular\_ expressions occasionally to be met with, which usage or custom

rather than analogy, sanction."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143. "He added an anecdote of

Quinn's relieving Thomson from prison."--\_Ib.\_, p. 150. "The daily labor of

her hands procure for her all that is necessary."--\_Ib.\_, p. 182. "Its

being \_me\_, need make no change in your determination."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p.

128. "The classification of words into what is called the Parts of

Speech."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p. 5. "Such licenses may be explained under what

is usually termed Figures."--\_Ib.\_, p. 212.

"Liberal, not lavish, is kind nature's hands."--\_Ib.\_, p. 196.

"They fall successive and successive live."--\_Ib.\_, p. 213.

LESSON III.--ANY PARTS OF SPEECH.

"A figure of Etymology is the intentional deviation in the usual form of a

word."--\_Weld's Gram., 2d Edition\_, p. 213. "A figure of Syntax is the

intentional deviation in the usual construction of a word."--\_Ib.\_, 213.

"Synecdoche is putting the name of the whole of anything for a part or a

part for the whole."--\_Ib.\_, 215. "Apostrophe is turning off from the

regular course of the subject to address some person or thing."--\_Ib.\_,

215. "Even young pupils will perform such exercises with surprising

interest and facility, and will unconsciously gain, in a little time, more

knowledge of the structure of Language than he can acquire by a drilling of

several years in the usual routine of parsing."--\_Ib., Preface\_, p. iv. "A

few Rules of construction are employed in this Part, to guide in the

exercise of parsing."--\_Ibidem\_. "The name of every person, object, or

thing, which can be thought of, or spoken of, is a noun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 18;

\_Abridged Ed.\_, 19. "A dot, resembling our period, is used between every

word, as well as at the close of the verses."--\_W. Day's Punctuation\_, p.

16; \_London\_, 1847. "Casting types in matrices was invented by Peter

Schoeffer, in 1452."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "On perusing it, he said, that, so far

from it showing the prisoner's guilt, it positively established his

innocence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 37. "By printing the \_nominative\_ and \_verb\_ in

\_Italic\_ letters, the reader will be able to distinguish them at a

glance."--\_Ib.\_, p. 77. "It is well, no doubt, to avoid using unnecessary

words."--\_Ib.\_, p. 99. "Meeting a friend the other day, he said to me,

'Where are you going?'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 124. "John was first denied \_apples\_,

then he was promised \_them\_, then he was offered \_them\_."--\_Lennie's

Gram.\_, 5th Ed., p. 62. "He was denied admission."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_,

1st Ed., p. 146. "They were offered a pardon."--\_Pond's Murray\_, p. 118;

\_Wells\_, 146. "I was this day shown a new potatoe."--DARWIN: \_Webster's

Philos. Gram.\_, p. 179; \_Imp. Gram.\_, 128; \_Frazee's Gram.\_, 153; \_Weld's\_,

153. "Nouns or pronouns which denote males are of the masculine

gender."--\_S. S. Greene's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 211. "There are three degrees

of comparison--the positive, comparative, and superlative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 216;

\_First Les.\_, p. 49. "The first two refer to direction; the third, to

locality."--\_Ib., Gr.\_, p. 103. "The following are some of the verbs which

take a direct and indirect object."--\_Ib.\_, p. 62. "I was not aware of his

being the judge of the Supreme Court."--\_Ib.\_, p. 86. "An indirect question

may refer to either of the five elements of a declarative

sentence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "I am not sure \_that he will be present\_ = \_of

his being present\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 169. "We left on Tuesday."--\_Ib.\_, p. 103.

"He left, as he told me, before the arrival of the steamer."--\_Ib.\_, p.

143. "We told him \_that he must leave\_ = We told him \_to leave\_."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 168. "Because he was unable to persuade the multitude, he left in

disgust."--\_Ib.\_, p. 172. "He \_left\_, and \_took\_ his brother with

him."--\_Ib.\_, p. 254. "This stating, or declaring, or denying any thing, is

called the indicative mode, or manner of speaking."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d

Ed., p. 72; \_Abr. Ed.\_, 59. "This took place at our friend Sir Joshua

Reynold's."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 150; \_Imp. Ed.\_, 154. "The manner

of a young lady's employing herself usefully in reading will be the subject

of another paper."--\_Ib.\_, 150; or 154. "Very little time is necessary for

Johnson's concluding a treaty with the bookseller."--\_Ib.\_, 150; or 154.

"My father is not now sick, but if he \_was\_ your services would be

welcome."--\_Chandler's Grammar\_, 1821, p. 54. "When we begin to write or

speak, we ought previously to fix in our minds a clear conception of the

end to be aimed at."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, p. 193. "Length of days are in

her right hand, and in her left hand riches and honor."--\_Bullions's

Analytical and Practical Grammar\_, 1849, p. 59. "The active and passive

present express different ideas."--\_Ib.\_, p. 235. "An \_Improper Diphthong\_,

or Digraph, is a diphthong in which only one of the vowels are

sounded."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, §115. "The real origin of the

words are to be sought in the Latin."--\_Ib.\_, §120. "What sort of an

alphabet the Gothic languages possess, we know; what sort of alphabet they

require, we can determine."--\_Ib.\_, §127. "The Runic Alphabet whether

borrowed or invented by the early Goths, is of greater antiquity than

either the oldest Teutonic or the Moeso-Gothic Alphabets."--\_Ib.\_, §129.

"Common to the Masculine and the Neuter Genders."--\_Ib.\_, §222. "In the

Anglo-Saxon \_his\_ was common to both the Masculine and Neuter

Genders."--\_Ib.\_, §222. "When time, number, or dimension are specified, the

adjective follows the substantive."--\_Ib.\_, §459. "Nor pain, nor grief, nor

anxious fear Invade thy bounds."--\_Ib.\_, §563. "To Brighton the Pavilion

lends a \_lath and plaster\_ grace."--\_Ib.\_, §590. "From this consideration

nouns have been given but one person, the THIRD."--\_D. C. Allen's Grammatic

Guide\_, p. 10.

"For it seems to guard and cherish

Even the wayward dreamer--I."--\_Home Journal\_.

EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS XIII.--SYNTACTICAL.

\_In the following Lessons, are exemplified most of the Exceptions, some of

the Notes, and many of the Observations, under the preceding Rules of

Syntax; to which Exceptions, Notes, or Observations, the learner may recur,

for an explanation of whatsoever is difficult in the parsing, or peculiar

in the construction, of these examples or others.\_

LESSON I.--PROSE.

"\_The\_ higher a bird flies, \_the\_ more out of danger he is; and \_the\_

higher a Christian soars above the world, \_the\_ safer are his

comforts."--\_Sparke\_.

"\_In\_ this point of view, and \_with\_ this explanation, \_it\_ is supposed by

some grammarians, that our language contains \_a\_ few Impersonal Verbs; that

is, \_verbs\_ which declare the existence of some action or state, but

\_which\_ do not refer to any animate being, or any determinate particluar

subject."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 109.

"Thus in England and France, a great landholder possesses \_a\_ hundred

\_times\_ the property that is necessary for the subsistence of a family; and

each landlord has perhaps \_a\_ hundred families dependent on him for

subsistence."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 87.

"\_It\_ is as possible to become \_pedantick\_ by fear of pedantry, as to be

\_troublesome\_ by ill timed civility."--\_Johnson's Rambler\_, No. 173.

"\_To\_ commence \_author, is\_ to claim praise; and no man can justly aspire

to honour, but at the hazard of disgrace."--\_Ib.\_, No. 93.

"\_For\_ ministers to be silent in the cause of Christ, \_is\_ to renounce it;

and to fly \_is\_ to desert it."--SOUTH: \_Crabb's Synonymes\_, p. 7.

"Such instances shew how much \_the sublime\_ depends upon a just selection

of circumstances; and \_with\_ how great care every circumstance must be

avoided, which \_by\_ bordering \_in the least\_ upon \_the mean\_, or even upon

\_the gay\_ or \_the trifling\_, alters the tone of the emotion."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 43.

"This great poet and philosopher, \_the\_ more \_he\_ contemplated the nature

of the Deity, \_found\_ that \_he\_ waded \_but the\_ more out of his depth, and

that \_he\_ lost \_himself\_ in the thought \_instead\_ of finding an end to

it."--\_Addison\_. "\_Odin, which\_ in Anglo-Saxon was \_Woden\_, was the supreme

god of the Goths, answering to the Jupiter of the Greeks."--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 262.

"Because confidence, that \_charm\_ and \_cement\_ of intimacy, \_is\_ wholly

wanting in the intercourse."--\_Opie, on Lying\_, p. 146.

"Objects of hearing may be compared together, as also \_of\_ taste, \_of\_

smell, and \_of\_ touch: but the chief \_fund\_ of comparison \_are objects\_ of

sight."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 136.

"The various relations of the various Objects exhibited by this (I mean

relations of \_near\_ and \_distant, present\_ and \_absent, same\_ and

\_different, definite\_ and \_indefinite\_, &c.) made it necessary that \_here

there\_ should not be one, but many Pronouns, such as \_He, This, That,

Other, Any, Some\_, &c."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 72.

"Mr. Pope's Ethical Epistles \_deserve\_ to be mentioned with signal honour,

\_as\_ a \_model\_, next to \_perfect, of\_ this kind of poetry."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 402.

"The knowledge \_of why\_ they so exist, must be the last act of favour

\_which\_ time and toil will bestow."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 253.

"\_It\_ is unbelief, and \_not faith, that\_ sinks the sinner into

despondency.--Christianity disowns such characters."--\_Fuller, on the

Gospel\_, p. 141.

"That God created the universe, [and] that men are accountable for their

actions, \_are frequently mentioned\_ by logicians, as instances of the mind

judging."

LESSON II.--PROSE.

"\_To\_ censure works, \_not men, is\_ the just \_prerogative\_ of criticism, and

accordingly all personal censure is here avoided, unless \_where necessary\_

to illustrate some general proposition."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.,

Introduction\_, p. 27.

"\_There remains\_ to show by examples the manner of treating subjects, so as

to give them a ridiculous appearance."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 303.

"The making of poetry, \_like\_ any other \_handicraft\_, may be learned by

industry."--\_Macpherson's Preface to Ossian\_, p. xiv.

"Whatever is found more strange or beautiful than \_was expected\_, is judged

to be more strange or beautiful than it is in reality."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 243.

"Thus the body of an animal, and of a plant, \_are composed\_ of certain

great vessels; these[,] of \_smaller\_; and these again[,] of still

\_smaller\_, without end, \_as\_ far as we can discover."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 270.

"This cause of beauty, is too extensive to be handled \_as a branch\_ of any

other subject: for \_to\_ ascertain with accuracy even the proper meaning of

words, \_not to talk\_ of their figurative power, \_would require\_ a large

volume; \_an\_ useful \_work\_ indeed, but not to be attempted without a large

stock of time, study, and reflection."--\_Id.\_, Vol. ii, p. 16.

"O the hourly \_dangers\_ that we here walk \_in\_! Every sense, and member,

\_is\_ a snare; every creature, and every duty, \_is\_ a snare to

us."--\_Baxter, Saints's Rest\_.

"\_For\_ a man \_to give\_ his opinion of what he sees \_but\_ in part, \_is\_ an

unjustifiable \_piece\_ of rashness and folly."--\_Addison\_.

"\_That\_ the sentiments thus prevalent among the early Jews \_respecting\_ the

divine authority of the Old Testament were correct, \_appears\_ from the

testimony of Jesus Christ and his apostles."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 69.

"So in Society we are not our \_own\_, but Christ's, and the church's, to

good works and services, yet all in love."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p.

84.

"He [\_Dr. Johnson\_] sat up in his bed, \_clapped\_ his hands, \_and cried, 'O

brave we\_!'--a peculiar \_exclamation\_ of \_his\_ when he rejoices."--

\_Boswell's Life of Johnson\_, Vol. iii, p. 56.

"Single, double, and treble emphasis \_are\_ nothing but examples of

antithesis."--\_Knowles's Elocutionist\_, p. xxviii.

"The curious \_thing, and what\_, I would almost say, \_settles\_ the point,

\_is\_, that we do \_Horace\_ no service, even according to our view of the

matter, by rejecting the scholiast's explanation. No two eggs can be \_more

like each other\_ than Horace's \_Malthinus\_ and Seneca's \_Mecenas\_."--

\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 477. "\_Acting, conduct, behaviour\_,

abstracted from all regard to what is, in fact and event, the consequence

of \_it, is itself\_ the natural object of this moral discernment, as

speculative truth \_and\_ [say \_or\_] falsehood is \_of\_ speculative

reason."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 277.

"\_To\_ do what is \_right\_, with unperverted faculties, \_is\_ ten \_times

easier\_ than to undo what is wrong."--\_Porter's Analysis\_, p. 37.

"Some \_natures the\_ more \_pains\_ a man takes to reclaim them, \_the\_ worse

they are."--L'ESTRANGE: \_Johnson's Dict., w. Pains\_.

"Says \_John Milton\_, in that impassioned speech for the Liberty of

Unlicensed Printing, where every word leaps with intellectual life, '\_Who\_

kills a man, \_kills\_ a reasonable creature, God's image; but \_who\_ destroys

a good book, \_kills\_ reason itself, kills the image of God, as it were, in

the eye. Many a man lives a burden upon the earth; but a good book is the

precious life-blood of a master spirit, embalmed and treasured up on

purpose for a life beyond life!'"--\_Louisville Examiner\_, June, 1850.

LESSON III.--PROSE.

"The philosopher, the saint, or the hero--\_the\_ wise, \_the\_ good, or the

great man--very often lies hid and concealed in a plebeian, \_which\_ a

proper education might have disinterred and \_brought\_ to

light."--\_Addison\_.

"The \_year before\_, he had so used the matter, that \_what\_ by force, \_what\_

by policy, he had taken from the Christians \_above\_ thirty small

castles."--\_Knolles\_.

"\_It\_ is an important truth, that religion, vital \_religion\_, the

\_religion\_ of the heart, is the most powerful auxiliary of reason, in

waging war with the passions, and promoting that sweet composure which

constitutes the peace of God."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 181.

"\_Pray, sir, be pleased\_ to take the part of \_us beauties\_ and \_fortunes\_

into your consideration, and do not let us \_be flattered\_ out of our

senses. \_Tell\_ people that \_we\_ fair \_ones\_ expect honest plain answers, as

well as other folks."--\_Spectator\_, No. 534. "\_Unhappy it\_ would be \_for\_

us, \_did\_ not uniformity \_prevail\_ in morals: \_that\_ our actions should

uniformly be directed to what is \_good\_ and against what is \_ill\_, is the

greatest \_blessing\_ in society; and \_in\_ order to uniformity of action,

uniformity of sentiment is indispensable."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii,

p. 366.

"Thus the pleasure of all the senses is \_the same\_ in \_all, high\_ and \_low,

learned\_ and \_unlearned\_."--\_Burke, on Taste\_, p. 39.

"\_Upwards\_ of eight millions of acres \_have\_, I believe, been thus disposed

of."--\_Society in America\_, Vol. i, p. 333.

"The Latin Grammar comes \_something\_ nearer, but yet does not hit the mark

\_neither\_."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 281.

"\_Of\_ the like nature is the following inaccuracy of \_Dean

Swift's\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 105. "Thus, Sir, I have given \_you\_ my own

opinion, relating to this weighty affair, as well as \_that\_ of a great

majority of both houses here."--\_Ib.\_

"A foot is just \_twelve\_ times as long as an \_inch\_; and an hour is sixty

\_times\_ the \_length\_ of a minute."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 48.

"What can we expect, who come \_a gleaning\_, not after the first reapers,

but after the \_very\_ beggars?"--\_Cowley's Pref. to Poems\_, p. x.

"In our \_Lord's being betrayed\_ into the hands of the chief-priests and

scribes, by Judas Iscariot; in \_his being\_ by them \_delivered\_ to the

Gentiles; in \_his being mocked, scourged, spitted on\_, [say \_spit upon\_,]

and \_crucified\_; and in his \_rising\_ from the dead after three days; there

was much that was singular, complicated, and not to be easily calculated on

before hand."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 40.

"To be \_morose, implacable, inexorable\_, and \_revengeful\_, is one of the

greatest degeneracies of human nature."--\_Dr. J. Owen\_.

"Now, says \_he\_, if tragedy, which is in its nature \_grand\_ and \_lofty\_,

will not admit of this, \_who can forbear laughing\_ to hear the historian

Gorgias Leontinus styling Xerxes, that cowardly Persian king, \_Jupiter\_;

and vultures, living \_sepulchres\_?"--\_Holmes's Rhetoric?\_, Part II, p. 14.

"O let thy all-seeing eye, and not the eye of the world, be the star to

steer my course \_by\_; and let thy blessed favour, more than the liking of

any sinful men, be ever my study and delight."--\_Jenks's Prayers\_, p. 156.

LESSON IV.--PROSE.

"O \_the Hope\_ of Israel, \_the Saviour thereof\_ in time of trouble, why

\_shouldest thou\_ be as a \_stranger\_ in the land, and as a way-faring \_man\_,

that turneth aside to tarry for a night?"--\_Jeremiah\_, xiv, 8.

"When once the long-suffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the

ark was \_a preparing, wherein\_ few, \_that\_ is, eight souls, were

saved."--\_1 Peter\_, iii, 20.

"Mercy and truth \_are\_ met together; righteousness and peace have kissed

\_each other\_."--\_Psalms\_, lxxxv, 10.

"But \_in vain\_ they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments

of men."--\_Matt.\_, xv, 9.

"Knowest thou not this \_of old\_, since man was placed upon the earth, that

the \_triumphing\_ of the \_wicked\_ is short, and the joy of the hypocrite

\_but\_ for a moment?"--\_Job\_, xx, 4, 5.

"For now we \_see\_ through a glass darkly; but \_then, face\_ to \_face\_: now I

\_know\_ in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known."--\_1 Cor.\_,

xiii, 12.

"For then the \_king of Babylon's\_ army besieged Jerusalem: and Jeremiah the

\_Prophet\_ was shut up in the court of the prison which was in the \_king of

Judah's\_ house."--\_Jer.\_, xxxii, 2.

"For Herod had laid hold on John, and \_bound\_ him, and \_put\_ him in prison,

for \_Herodias'\_ sake, his \_brother\_ Philip's \_wife\_."--\_Matt.\_, xiv, 3.

"And now I have sent a cunning man, endued with understanding, \_of Huram\_

my \_father's\_, the \_son\_ of a woman of the daughters of Dan."--\_2 Chron.\_,

ii, 13.

"Bring no \_more\_ vain oblations: incense is an abomination unto me; the new

moons and sabbaths, the \_calling\_ of assemblies, I \_cannot away with: it\_

is iniquity \_even\_ the solemn \_meeting\_."--\_Isaiah\_, i, 13.

"For I have heard the voice of the daughter of Zion, that bewaileth

herself, that spreadeth her hands, \_saying\_, Woe is \_me\_ now! for my soul

is wearied \_because\_ of murderers."--\_Jer.\_, iv, 31.

"She saw men portrayed upon the wall, the \_images\_ of the Chaldeans

portrayed with vermilion, girded with girdles upon their loins, exceeding

in dyed attire upon their heads, all of them princes \_to\_ look \_to, after\_

the manner of the Babylonians of Chaldea, the \_land\_ of their

nativity."--\_Ezekiel\_, xxiii, 15.

"And on them \_was written\_ according to all the words which the Lord spake

with you in the mount, out of the midst of the fire, in the day of the

assembly."--\_Deut.\_, ix, 10.

"And he charged them that they \_should tell no man\_: but \_the\_ more he

charged them, so much \_the\_ more a great \_deal\_ they published

it."--\_Mark\_, vii, 36.

"The results which God has connected with actions, will inevitably occur,

all the created \_power\_ in the universe to the contrary

\_notwithstanding\_."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 5.

"Am \_I\_ not an \_apostle\_? am \_I\_ not \_free\_? have I not seen Jesus Christ

our Lord? are not \_ye\_ my \_work\_ in the Lord? If I be not an apostle unto

others, yet doubtless I am \_to\_ you; for the \_seal\_ of \_mine\_ apostleship

are \_ye\_ in the Lord."--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 1, 2.

"Not \_to insist\_ upon this, \_it\_ is evident, that formality is a term of

general import. It implies, that in religious exercises of all kinds \_the\_

outward and [the] inward man \_are\_ at diametrical variance."--\_Chapman's

Sermons to Presbyterians\_, p. 354.

LESSON V.--VERSE.

"\_See\_ the sole bliss Heaven \_could\_ on all \_bestow\_,

Which \_who but\_ feels, can taste, \_but\_ thinks, can know;

Yet, poor with fortune, and with learning blind,

\_The bad\_ must miss, \_the good\_, untaught, will find."--\_Pope\_.

"There \_are, who, deaf\_ to mad Ambition's call,

Would shrink to hear th' obstreperous trump of fame;

Supremely \_blest\_, if to their portion fall

Health, competence, and peace."--\_Beattie\_.

"High stations \_tumult\_, but \_not bliss\_, create;

None think \_the great\_ unhappy, but \_the great\_.

Fools gaze and \_envy\_: envy darts a sting,

Which makes a swain as \_wretched\_ as a king."--\_Young\_.

"Lo, earth receives him from the bending skies!

\_Sink\_ down, \_ye mountains\_; and, \_ye valleys, rise\_;

With heads declin'd, \_ye cedars\_, homage \_pay\_;

\_Be\_ smooth, \_ye rocks; ye\_ rapid \_floods, give\_ way."--\_Pope\_.

"Amid the forms which this full world presents

\_Like rivals to his\_ choice, what human breast

E'er doubts, before the \_transient and minute\_,

To prize the \_vast\_, the \_stable\_, and \_sublime\_?"--\_Akenside\_.

"Now fears in dire vicissitude invade;

The rustling brake \_alarms\_, and quiv'ring \_shade\_:

\_Nor\_ light nor darkness brings his \_pain\_ relief;

One shows the plunder, and one hides the thief."--\_Johnson\_.

"If Merab's choice could have complied with \_mine\_,

Merab, my elder comfort, had been \_thine\_:

And \_hers\_, at \_last\_, should have with \_mine\_ complied,

Had I not \_thine\_ and Michael's heart descried."--\_Cowley\_.

"The people have \_as much\_ a negative voice

To hinder \_making\_ war without their choice,

As kings of making laws in parliament:

'\_No money' is\_ as \_good\_ as '\_No assent\_.'"--\_Butler\_.

"Full \_many a gem\_ of purest ray serene

The dark unfathom'd caves of ocean bear;

Full \_many a flower\_ is born to blush unseen,

And waste its sweetness on the desert air."--\_Gray\_.

"\_Oh fool\_! to think God hates the worthy \_mind\_,

The lover and the love of human kind,

\_Whose\_ life is healthful, and \_whose\_ conscience clear,

Because \_he\_ wants \_a\_ thousand pounds \_a\_ year."--\_Pope\_.

"O \_Freedom\_! sovereign \_boon\_ of Heav'n,

Great \_charter\_, with our being given;

For \_which\_ the patriot and the sage

Have plann'd, have bled thro' ev'ry age!"--\_Mallet\_.

LESSON VI.--VERSE.

"Am I to set my life upon a throw,

Because a bear is rude and surly? \_No\_."--\_Cowper\_.

"\_Poor, guiltless I\_! and can I choose but \_smile\_,

When every coxcomb knows me by my style?"--\_Pope\_.

"Remote from man, with God he pass'd his days,

\_Prayer\_ all his \_business\_, all his \_pleasure praise\_."--\_Parnell\_.

"These are \_thy\_ blessings, \_Industry\_! rough power;

\_Whom\_ labour still attends, and \_sweat\_, and \_pain\_."--\_Thomson\_.

"\_What ho! thou genius\_ of the clime, \_what ho\_!

Liest thou \_asleep\_ beneath these hills of snow?"--\_Dryden\_.

"\_What\_! canst thou not forbear me \_half an hour\_?

Then \_get\_ thee gone, and \_dig\_ my grave thyself."--\_Shak\_.

"Then palaces and lofty domes arose;

\_These\_ for devotion, and for pleasure \_those\_."--\_Blackmore\_.

"'Tis very dangerous, \_tampering\_ with a muse;

The profit's small, and you have much to lose."--\_Roscommon\_.

"\_Lucretius English'd\_! 't was a work \_might shake\_

The power of English verse to undertake."--\_Otway\_.

"\_The best\_ may slip, and \_the\_ most \_cautious fall\_;

He's \_more\_ than \_mortal\_, that ne'er err'd \_at all\_."--\_Pomfret\_.

"\_Poets\_ large \_souls\_ heaven's noblest stamps do bear,

\_Poets\_, the watchful angels' darling care."--\_Stepney\_.

"Sorrow breaks reasons, and reposing hours;

Makes the night \_morning\_, and the noon-tide \_night\_."--\_Shak.\_

"Nor then the solemn nightingale \_ceas'd warbling\_."--\_Milton\_.

"And O, poor hapless \_nightingale\_, thought I,

How \_sweet\_ thou singst, how \_near\_ the deadly \_snare\_!"--\_Id.\_

"He calls for \_famine\_, and the meagre fiend

Blows mildew \_from between his\_ shrivell'd lips."--\_Cowper\_.

"If o'er their lives a refluent \_glance\_ they cast,

Theirs is \_the present\_ who can praise \_the past\_."--\_Shenstone\_.

"Who wickedly is \_wise\_, or madly \_brave,

Is but the more\_ a fool, the \_more\_ a knave."--\_Pope\_.

"Great \_eldest-born\_ of Dullness, blind and bold!

\_Tyrant!\_ more cruel than Procrustes old;

Who, to his iron bed, by torture, fits,

Their nobler \_part\_, the \_souls\_ of suffering wits."--\_Mallet\_.

"Parthenia, \_rise\_.--What voice alarms my ear?

\_Away\_. Approach not. Hah! \_Alexis\_ there!"--\_Gay\_.

"Nor is it \_harsh\_ to make, nor \_hard\_ to find

A country \_with--ay\_, or without mankind."--\_Byron\_.

"A \_frame\_ of adamant, a \_soul\_ of fire,

\_No\_ dangers fright him, and \_no\_ labours tire."--\_Johnson\_.

"Now \_pall\_ the tasteless \_meats\_, and joyless \_wines\_,

And \_luxury\_ with sighs \_her slave resigns\_."--\_Id.\_

"\_Seems?\_ madam; nay, it is: I know not \_seems\_--

For I have that within which passes show."--\_Hamlet\_.

"\_Return? said\_ Hector, fir'd with stern disdain:

\_What! coop\_ whole armies in our walls again?"--\_Pope\_.

"He whom the fortune of the field shall cast

\_From forth\_ his chariot, \_mount\_ the next in haste."--\_Id.\_

"\_Yet here, Laertes? aboard, aboard, for\_ shame!"--\_Shak\_.

"\_Justice\_, most gracious \_Duke; O grant me\_ justice!"--\_Id.\_

"But what a \_vengeance\_ makes thee \_fly\_

From me too, as thine enemy?"--\_Butler\_.

"Immortal \_Peter\_! first of monarchs! He

His stubborn \_country\_ tam'd, \_her\_ rocks, \_her\_ fens,

\_Her\_ floods, \_her\_ seas, \_her\_ ill-submitting sons."--\_Thomson\_.

"O arrogance! Thou liest, thou thread, thou thimble,

Thou yard, three-quarters, half-yard, quarter, nail,

Thou flea, thou nit, thou winter-cricket, thou:--

Brav'd in mine own house with a skein of thread!

Away, thou rag, thou quantity, thou remnant;

Or I shall so be-mete thee with thy yard,

As thou shalt think on prating whilst thou liv'st."

SHAK.: \_Taming of the Shrew\_, Act IV, Sc 3.

CHAPTER XII.--GENERAL REVIEW.

This twelfth chapter of Syntax is devoted to a series of lessons,

methodically digested, wherein are reviewed and reapplied, mostly in the

order of the parts of speech, all those syntactical principles heretofore

given which are useful for the correction of errors.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX FOR A GENERAL REVIEW.

[Fist][The following examples of false syntax are arranged for a General

Review of the doctrines contained in the preceding Rules and Notes. Being

nearly all of them exact quotations, they are also a sort of syllabus of

verbal criticism on the various works from which they are taken. What

corrections they are supposed to need, may be seen by inspection of the

twelfth chapter of the Key. It is here expected, that by recurring to the

instructions before given, the learner who takes them as an oral exercise,

will ascertain for himself the proper form of correcting each example,

according to the particular Rule or Note under which it belongs. When two

or more errors occur in the same example, they ought to be corrected

successively, in their order. The erroneous sentence being read aloud as it

stands, the pupil should say, "\_first\_, Not proper, because, &c." And when

the first error has thus been duly corrected by a brief and regular

syllogism, either the same pupil or an other should immediately proceed,

and say, "\_Secondly\_, Not proper \_again\_, because," &c. And so of the third

error, and the fourth, if there be so many. In this manner, a class may be

taught to speak in succession without any waste of time, and, after some

practice, with a near approach to the PERFECT ACCURACY which is the great

end of grammatical instruction. When time cannot be allowed for this

regular exercise, these examples may still be profitably rehearsed by a

more rapid process, one pupil reading aloud the quoted false grammar, and

an other responding to each example, by reading the intended correction

from the Key.]

LESSON I.--ARTICLES.

"And they took stones, and made an heap."--\_Com. Bibles; Gen.\_, xxxi, 46.

"And I do know a many fools, that stand in better place."--\_Beauties of

Shak.\_, p. 44. "It is a strong antidote to the turbulence of passion, and

violence of pursuit."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. xxiii. "The word

\_news\_ may admit of either a singular or plural application."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 39. "He has earned a fair and a honorable reputation."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 140. "There are two general forms, called the solemn and familiar

style."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 109. "Neither the article nor preposition

may be omitted."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p 190. "A close union is also

observable between the Subjunctive and Potential Moods."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "We

should render service, equally, to a friend, neighbour, and an

enemy."--\_Ib.\_, p. 140. "Till an habit is obtained of aspirating

strongly."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 49. "There is an uniform, steady use

of the same signs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 163. "A traveller remarks the most objects

he sees."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 72. "What is the name of the river on

which London stands? The Thames."--"We sometimes find the last line of a

couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables."--\_Adam's Lat. and

Eng. Gram.\_, p. 282. "Nouns which follow active verbs, are not in the

nominative case."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 14. "It is a solemn duty to speak

plainly of wrongs, which good men perpetrate."--\_Channing's Emancip.\_, p.

71. "Gathering of riches is a pleasant torment."--\_Treasury of Knowledge,

Dict.\_, p. 446. "It [the lamentation of Helen for Hector] is worth the

being quoted."--\_Coleridge's Introd.\_, p. 100. "\_Council\_ is a noun which

admits of a singular and plural form."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 137. "To

exhibit the connexion between the Old and the New Testaments."--\_Keith's

Evidences\_, p. 25. "An apostrophe discovers the omission of a letter or

letters."--\_Guy's Gram\_, p. 95. "He is immediately ordained, or rather

acknowledged an hero."--\_Pope, Preface to the Dunciad\_. "Which is the same

in both the leading and following State."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 86.

"Pronouns, as will be seen hereafter, have a distinct nominative,

possessive, and objective case."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 15. "A word of many

syllables is called polysyllable."--\_Beck's Outline of E. Gram.\_, p. 4.

"Nouns have two numbers, singular and plural."--\_Ib.\_, p. 6. "They have

three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter."--\_Ib.\_, p. 6. "They have

three cases, nominative, possessive, and objective."--\_Ib.\_, p. 6.

"Personal Pronouns have, like Nouns, two numbers, singular and plural.

Three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter. Two cases, nominative and

objective."--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. "He must be wise enough to know the singular

from plural."--\_Ib.\_, p. 20. "Though they may be able to meet the every

reproach which any one of their fellows may prefer."--\_Chalmers, Sermons\_,

p. 104. "Yet for love's sake I rather beseech thee, being such an one as

Paul the aged."--\_Ep. to Philemon\_, 9. "Being such one as Paul the

aged."--\_Dr. Webster's Bible\_. "A people that jeoparded their lives unto

the death."--\_Judges\_, v, 18. "By preventing the too great accumulation of

seed within a too narrow compass."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. vii, p. 97. "Who

fills up the middle space between the animal and intellectual nature, the

visible and invisible world."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 519. "The Psalms

abound with instances of an harmonious arrangement of the

words."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 339. "On another table were an ewer

and vase, likewise of gold."--\_N. Y. Mirror\_, xi, 307. "\_Th\_ is said to

have two sounds sharp, and flat."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 33.

"Section (§) is used in subdividing of a chapter into lesser

parts."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 152. "Try it in a Dog or an Horse or any

other Creature."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 46. "But particularly in learning of

Languages there is least occasion for poseing of Children."--\_Ib.\_, p.

296. "What kind of a noun is \_river\_, and why?"--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p.

10. "Is \_William's\_ a proper or common noun?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. "What kind of

an article, then, shall we call \_the\_?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 13.

"Each burns alike, who can, or cannot write,

Or with a rival's or an eunuch's spite."--\_Pope, on Crit.\_, l. 30.

LESSON II.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

"And there is stamped upon their Imaginations Idea's that follow them with

Terror and Affrightment."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 251. "There's not a wretch

that lives on common charity, but's happier than me."--VENICE PRESERVED:

\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 63. "But they overwhelm whomsoever is ignorant of

them."--\_Common School Journal\_, i,115. "I have received a letter from my

cousin, she that was here last week."--\_Inst.\_, p. 129. "Gentlemens Houses

are seldom without Variety of Company."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 107. "Because

Fortune has laid them below the level of others, at their Masters

feet."--\_Ib.\_, p. 221. "We blamed neither John nor Mary's delay."--\_Nixon's

Parser\_, p. 117. "The book was written by Luther the reformer's

order."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59. "I saw on the table of the saloon Blair's Sermons,

and somebody else (I forget who's) sermons, and a set of noisy

children."--\_Lord Byron's Letters\_. "Or saith he it altogether for our

sakes?"--\_1 Cor.\_, ix, 10. "He was not aware of the duke's being his

competitor."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 190. "It is no condition of a word's

being an adjective, that it must be placed before a noun."--FOWLE: \_ib.\_,

p. 190. "Though their Reason corrected the wrong Idea's they had taken

in."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 251. "It was him, who taught me to hate

slavery."--\_Morris, in Congress\_, 1839. "It is him and his kindred, who

live upon the labour of others."--\_Id., ib.\_ "Payment of Tribute is an

Acknowledgment of his being King to whom we think it Due."--\_Right of

Tythes\_, p. 161. "When we comprehend what we are taught."--\_Ingersoll's

Gram.\_, p. 14. "The following words, and parts of words, must be taken

notice of."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 96. "Hence tears and commiseration are

so often made use of."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 269. "JOHN-A-NOKES, \_n. s.\_ A

fictitious name, made use of in law proceedings."--\_Chalmers, Eng. Dict.\_

"The construction of Matter, and Part taken hold of."--\_B. F. Fisk's Greek

Gram.\_, p. x. "And such other names, as carry with them the Idea's of some

thing terrible and hurtful."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 250. "Every learner then

would surely be glad to be spared the trouble and fatigue"--\_Pike's Hebrew

Lexicon\_, p. iv. "'Tis not the owning ones Dissent from another, that I

speak against."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p 265. "A man that cannot Fence will be

more careful to keep out of Bullies and Gamesters Company, and will not be

half so apt to stand upon Punctilio's."--\_Ib.\_, p. 357. "From such Persons

it is, one may learn more in one Day, than in a Years rambling from one Inn

to another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 377. "A long syllable is generally considered to be

twice the length of a short one."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 117. "\_I\_ is of the

first person, and singular number; \_Thou\_ is second per. sing.; \_He, She\_,

or \_It\_, is third per. sing.; \_We\_ is first per. plural; \_Ye\_ or \_You\_ is

second per. plural; \_They\_ is third per. plural."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

46. "This actor, doer, or producer of the action, is the

nominative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "No Body can think a Boy of Three or Seven

Years old, should be argued with, as a grown Man."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p.

129. "This was in one of the Pharisees' houses, not, in Simon the

leper's."--\_Hammond\_. "Impossible! it can't be me."--\_Swift\_. "Whose grey

top shall tremble, Him descending."--\_Dr. Bentley\_. "What gender is

\_woman\_, and why?"--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 8. "What gender, then, is

\_man\_, and why?"--\_Ibid.\_ "Who is \_I\_; who do you mean when you say

\_I?"--R. W. Green's Gram.\_, p. 19. "It [Parnassus] is a pleasant air, but a

barren soil."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 311. "You may, in three days time, go

from Galilee to Jerusalem."--\_Josephus\_, Vol. 5, p. 174. "And that which is

left of the meat-offering shall be Aaron's and his sons."--SCOTT'S BIBLE,

and BRUCE'S: \_Lev.\_, ii, 10. See also ii, 3.

"For none in all the world, without a lie,

Can say that this is mine, excepting I."--\_Bunyan\_.

LESSON III.--ADJECTIVES

"When he can be their Remembrancer and Advocate every Assises and

Sessions."--\_Right of Tythes\_, p. 244. "Doing, denotes all manner of

action; as, to dance, to play, to write, to read, to teach, to fight,

&c."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 33. "Seven foot long,"--"eight foot

long,"--"fifty foot long."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 205. "Nearly the whole

of this twenty-five millions of dollars is a dead loss to the

nation."--\_Fowler, on Tobacco\_, p. 16. "Two negatives destroy one

another."--\_R. W. Green's Gram.\_, p. 92. "We are warned against excusing

sin in ourselves, or in each other."--\_The Friend\_, iv, 108. "The Russian

empire is more extensive than any government in the world."--\_School Geog\_.

"You will always have the Satisfaction to think it the Money of all other

the best laid out."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 145. "There is no one passion

which all mankind so naturally give into as pride."--\_Steele, Spect.\_, No.

462. "O, throw away the worser part of it."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p 237.

"He showed us a more agreeable and easier way."--\_Inst.\_, p. 134. "And the

four last [are] to point out those further improvements."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 52; \_Campbell's\_, 187. "Where he has not distinct and, different

clear Idea's."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 353. "Oh, when shall we have such

another Rector of Laracor!"--\_Hazlitt's Lect\_. "Speech must have been

absolutely necessary previous to the formation of society."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 2. "Go and tell them boys to be still."--\_Inst.\_, p. 135.

"Wrongs are engraved on marble; benefits, on sand: these are apt to be

requited; those, forgot."--\_B\_. "Neither of these several interpretations

is the true one."--\_B\_. "My friend indulged himself in some freaks

unbefitting the gravity of a clergyman."--\_B\_. "And their Pardon is All

that either of their Impropriators will have to plead."--\_Right of Tythes\_,

p. 196. "But the time usually chosen to send young Men abroad, is, I think,

of all other, that which renders them least capable of reaping those

Advantages."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 372. "It is a mere figment of the human

imagination, a rhapsody of the transcendent unintelligible."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 120. "It contains a greater assemblage of sublime ideas, of bold

and daring figures, than is perhaps any where to be met with."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 162. "The order in which the two last words are placed, should

have been reversed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 204. "The \_orders\_ in which the two last

words are placed, should have been reversed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

310. "In Demosthenes, eloquence \_shown\_ forth with higher splendour, than

perhaps in any that ever bore the name of an orator."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

242. "The circumstance of his being poor is decidedly favorable."--

\_Student's Manual\_, p. 286. "The temptations to dissipation are greatly

lessened by his being poor."--\_Ib.\_, p. 287. "For with her death that

tidings came."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 257. "The next objection is, that

these sort of authors are poor."--\_Cleland\_. "Presenting Emma as Miss

Castlemain to these acquaintance."--\_Opie's Temper\_. "I doubt not but it

will please more than the opera."--\_Spect.\_, No. 28. "The world knows only

two, that's Rome and I."--\_Ben Jonson\_. "I distinguish these two things

from one another."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 29. "And in this case, mankind

reciprocally claim, and allow indulgence to each other."--\_Sheridan's

Lect.\_, p. 29. "The six last books are said not to have received the

finishing hand of the author."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 438. "The best executed

part of the work, is the first six books."--\_Ib.\_, p. 447.

"To reason how can we be said to rise?

So many cares attend the being wise."--\_Sheffield\_.

LESSON IV.--PRONOUNS.

"Once upon a time a goose fed its young by a pond side."--\_Goldsmith's

Essays\_, p. 175. "If either [work] have a sufficient degree of merit to

recommend them to the attention of the public."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_,

p. iii. "Now W. Mitchell his deceit is very remarkable."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 264 "My brother, I did not put the question to thee, for that I

doubted of the truth of your belief."--\_Bunyan's P. P.\_, p. 158. "I had two

elder brothers, one of which was a lieutenant-colonel."--\_Robinson Crusoe\_,

p. 2. "Though \_James\_ is here the object of the action, yet, he is in the

nominative case."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 64. "Here, \_John\_ is the actor; and

is known to be the nominative, by its answering to the question, 'Who

struck Richard?'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "One of the most distinguished privileges

which Providence has conferred on mankind, is the power of communicating

their thoughts to one another."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 9. "With some of the

most refined feelings which belong to our frame."--\_Ib.\_, p. 13. "And the

same instructions which assist others in composing, will assist them in

judging of, and relishing, the beauties of composition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. "To

overthrow all which had been yielded in favour of the army."--\_Mrs.

Macaulay's Hist.\_, i, 335. "Let your faith stand in the Lord God who

changes not, and that created all, and gives the increase of

all."--\_Friends' Advices\_, 1676. "For it is, in truth, the sentiment or

passion, which lies under the figured expression, that gives it any

merit."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 133. "Verbs are words which affirm the being,

doing, or suffering of a thing, together with the time it happens."--\_Al.

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 29. "The Byass will always hang on that side, that

nature first placed it."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 177. "They should be brought

to do the things are fit for them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178. "Various sources whence

the English language is derived."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 286. "This

attention to the several cases, when it is proper to omit and when to

redouble the copulative, is of considerable importance."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 113. "Cicero, for instance, speaking of the cases where killing another

is lawful in self defence, uses the following words."--\_Ib.\_, p. 156. "But

there is no nation, hardly any person so phlegmatic, as not to accompany

their words with some actions and gesticulations, on all occasions, when

they are much in earnest."--\_Ib.\_, p. 335. "\_William's\_ is said to be

governed by \_coat\_, because it follows \_William's\_"--\_Smith's New Gram.\_,

p. 12. "There are many occasions in life, in which silence and simplicity

are true wisdom."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 197. "In choosing umpires, the

avarice of whom is excited."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 153. "The boroughs sent

representatives, which had been enacted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 154. "No man believes

but what there is some order in the universe."--\_Anon.\_ "The moon is

orderly in her changes, which she could not be by accident."--\_Id.\_ "Of

Sphynx her riddles, they are generally two kinds."--\_Bacons Wisdom\_, p. 73.

"They must generally find either their Friends or Enemies in

Power."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol. ii, p. 166. "For of old, every one took

upon them to write what happened in their own time."--\_Josephus's Jewish

War, Pref.\_, p. 4. "The Almighty cut off the family of Eli the high priest,

for its transgressions."--See \_Key\_. "The convention then resolved

themselves into a committee of the whole."--\_Inst.\_, p. 146. "The severity

with which this denomination was treated, appeared rather to invite than to

deter them from flocking to the colony."--\_H. Adams's View\_, p. 71. "Many

Christians abuse the Scriptures and the traditions of the apostles, to

uphold things quite contrary to it."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 461. "Thus, a

circle, a square, a triangle, or a hexagon, please the eye, by their

regularity, as beautiful figures."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 46. "Elba is

remakable [sic--KTH] for its being the place to which Bonaparte was

banished in 1814."--See \_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 190. "The editor has the

reputation of his being a good linguist and critic."--See \_ib.\_ "'Tis a

Pride should be cherished in them."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 129. "And to

restore us the Hopes of Fruits, to reward our Pains in its season."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 136. "The comick representation of Death's victim relating its own

tale."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 103. "As for Scioppius his Grammar, that doth

wholly concern the Latin Tongue."--DR. WILKINS: \_Tooke's D. P.\_, i, 7.

"And chiefly thee, O Spirit, who dost prefer

Before all temples the upright heart and pure,

Instruct me, for thou knowest."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 45.

LESSON V.--VERBS.

"And there was in the same country shepherds, abiding in the

field."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: \_Luke\_, ii. 8. "Whereof every one bear

twins."--COM. BIBLE: \_Sol. Song\_, iv, 2. "Whereof every one bare

twins."--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_ib.\_ "Whereof every one beareth twins."--SCOTT'S

BIBLE: \_ib.\_ "He strikes out of his nature one of the most divine

principles, that is planted in it."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 181. "\_Genii\_,

denote ærial spirits."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 40. "In proportion as the long

and large prevalence of such corruptions have been obtained by force."--BP.

HALIFAX: \_Brier's Analogy\_, p. xvi. "Neither of these are fix'd to a Word

of a general Signification, or proper Name."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 95.

"Of which a few of the opening lines is all I shall give."--\_Moore's Life

of Byron\_. "The riches we had in England was the slow result of long

industry and wisdom."--DAVENANT: \_Webster's Imp. Gram.\_, p. 21; \_Phil.

Gram.\_, 29. "The following expression appears to be correct:--'Much publick

thanks \_is\_ due.'"--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 201. "He hath been enabled to

correct many mistakes."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. x. "Which road takest thou

here?"--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 106. "Learnest thou thy lesson?"--\_Ib.\_, p.

105. "Learned they their pieces perfectly?"--\_Ibid.\_ "Thou learnedst thy

task well."--\_Ibid.\_ "There are some can't relish the town, and others

can't away with the country."--WAY OF THE WORLD: \_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i,

304. "If thou meetest them, thou must put on an intrepid mien."--\_Neef's

Method of Ed.\_, p. 201. "Struck with terror, as if Philip was something

more than human."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 265. "If the personification of the

form of Satan was admissible, it should certainly have been

masculine."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 176. "If only one follow, there seems

to be a defect in the sentence."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 104. "Sir, if

thou have borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him."--\_John\_, xx,

15. "Blessed be the people that know the joyful sound."--\_Psalms\_, lxxxix,

15. "Every auditory take in good part those marks of respect and awe, which

are paid them by one who addresses them."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 308.

"Private causes were still pleaded [in the forum]: but the public was no

longer interested; nor any general attention drawn to what passed

there."--\_Ib.\_, p. 249. "Nay, what evidence can be brought to show, that

the Inflection of the Classic tongues were not originally formed out of

obsolete auxiliary words?"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, p. 112. "If the student

reflects, that the principal and the auxiliary forms but one verb, he will

have little or no difficulty, in the proper application of the present

rule."--\_Ib.\_, p. 183. "For the sword of the enemy and fear is on every

side."--\_Jeremiah\_, vi, 26. "Even the Stoics agree that nature and

certainty is very hard to come at."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 71. "His

politeness and obliging behaviour was changed."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

186. "His politeness and obliging behaviour were changed."--\_Hume's Hist.\_,

Vol. vi, p. 14. "War and its honours was their employment and

ambition."--\_Goldsmith\_. "Does \_a\_ and \_an\_ mean the same thing?"--\_R. W.

Green's Gram.\_, p. 15. "When a number of words \_come\_ in between the

discordant parts, the ear does not detect the error."--\_Cobbett's Gram.\_, ¶

185. "The sentence should be, 'When a number of words \_comes\_ in,'

&c."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 170. "The nature of our language, the accent and

pronunciation of it, inclines us to contract even all our regular

verbs."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 45. "The nature of our language, together with

the accent and pronunciation of it, incline us to contract even all our

Regular Verbs."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 45. "Prompt aid, and not promises, are

what we ought to give."--\_Author\_. "The position of the several organs

therefore, as well as their functions are ascertained."--\_Medical

Magazine\_, 1833, p. 5. "Every private company, and almost every public

assembly, afford opportunities of remarking the difference between a just

and graceful, and a faulty and unnatural elocution."--\_Enfield's Speaker\_,

p. 9. "Such submission, together with the active principle of obedience,

make up the temper and character in us which answers to his sovereignty."--

\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 126. "In happiness, as in other things, there is a

false and a true, an imaginary and a real."--\_Fuller, on the Gospel\_, p.

134. "To confound things that differ, and to make a distinction where there

is no difference, is equally unphilosophical."--\_Author\_.

"I know a bank whereon the wild thyme blows,

Where ox-lips and the nodding violet grows."--\_Beaut. of Shak.\_, p. 51.

LESSON VI.--VERBS.

"Whose business or profession prevent their attendance in the

morning."--\_Ogilby\_. "And no church or officer have power over one

another."--LECHFORD: \_in Hutchinson's Hist.\_, i, 373. "While neither reason

nor experience are sufficiently matured to protect them."--\_Woodbridge\_.

"Among the Greeks and Romans, every syllable, or the far greatest number at

least, was known to have a fixed and determined quantity."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 383. "Among the Greeks and Romans, every syllable, or at least

by far the greatest number of syllables, was known to have a fixed and

determined quantity."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 303. "Their vanity is

awakened and their passions exalted by the irritation, which their

self-love receives from contradiction."--\_Influence of Literature\_, Vol.

ii. p. 218. "I and he was neither of us any great swimmer."--\_Anon\_.

"Virtue, honour, nay, even self-interest, \_conspire\_ to recommend the

measure."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 150. "A correct plainness, and

elegant simplicity, is the proper character of an introduction."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 308. "In syntax there is what grammarians call concord or

agreement, and government."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 128. "People find

themselves able without much study to write and speak the English

intelligibly, and thus have been led to think rules of no utility."--

\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 6. "But the writer must be one who has studied to

inform himself well, who has pondered his subject with care, and addresses

himself to our judgment, rather than to our imagination."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 353. "But practice hath determined it otherwise; and has, in all the

languages with which we are much acquainted, supplied the place of an

interrogative mode, either by particles of interrogation, or by a peculiar

order of the words in the sentence."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 84. "If the Lord

have stirred thee up against me, let him accept an offering."--\_1 Sam.\_,

xxvi, 19. "But if the priest's daughter be a widow, or divorced, and have

no child, and is returned unto her father's house, as in her youth, she

shall eat of her father's meat."--\_Levit.\_, xxii, 13. "Since we never have,

nor ever shall study your sublime productions."--\_Neef's Sketch\_, p. 62.

"Enabling us to form more distinct images of objects, than can be done with

the utmost attention where these particulars are not found."--\_Kames, El.

of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 174. "I hope you will consider what is spoke comes

from my love."--\_Shak., Othello\_. "We will then perceive how the designs of

emphasis may be marred,"--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 406. "I knew it was

Crab, and goes me to the fellow that whips the dogs."--SHAK: \_Joh. Dict.,

w.\_ ALE. "The youth was being consumed by a slow malady."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 192. "If all men thought, spoke, and wrote alike, something

resembling a perfect adjustment of these points may be accomplished."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 240. "If you will replace what has been long since expunged from

the language."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 167; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 364. "As

in all those faulty instances, I have now been giving."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 149. "This mood has also been improperly used in the following

places."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 184. "He [Milton] seems to have been well

acquainted with his own genius, and to know what it was that nature had

bestowed upon him."--\_Johnson's Life of Milton\_. "Of which I already gave

one instance, the worst, indeed, that occurs in all the poem."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 395. "It is strange he never commanded you to have done

it."--\_Anon\_. "History painters would have found it difficult, to have

invented such a species of beings."--ADDISON: see \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 87.

"Universal Grammar cannot be taught abstractedly, it must be done with

reference to some language already known."--\_Lowth's Preface\_, p. viii.

"And we might imagine, that if verbs had been so contrived, as simply to

express these, no more was needful."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 82. "To a writer

of such a genius as Dean Swift, the plain style was most admirably

fitted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 181. "Please excuse my son's absence."--\_Inst.\_, p.

188. "Bid the boys to come in immediately."--\_Ib.\_

"Gives us the secrets of his Pagan hell,

Where ghost with ghost in sad communion dwell."

--\_Crabbe's Bor.\_, p. 306.

"Alas! nor faith, nor valour now remain;

Sighs are but wind, and I must bear my chain."

--\_Walpole's Catal.\_, p. 11.

LESSON VII.--PARTICIPLES.

"Of which the Author considers himself, in compiling the present work, as

merely laying of the foundation-stone."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. ix. "On the

raising such lively and distinct images as are here described."--\_Kames,

El. of Crit.\_, i, 89. "They are necessary to the avoiding Ambiguities."--

\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 95. "There is no neglecting it without falling

into a dangerous error."--\_Burlamaqui, on Law\_, p. 41. "The contest

resembles Don Quixote's fighting windmills."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 67.

"That these verbs associate with verbs in all the tenses, is no proof of

their having no particular time of their own."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 190.

"To justify my not following the tract of the ancient rhetoricians."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 122. "The putting letters together, so as to make

words, is called spelling."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 11. "What is the

putting vowels and consonants together called?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. "Nobody

knows of their being charitable but themselves."--\_Fuller, on the Gospel\_,

p. 29. "Payment was at length made, but no reason assigned for its having

been so long postponed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 186; \_Kirkham's\_, 194;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 254. "Which will bear being brought into comparison with any

composition of the kind."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 396. "To render vice

ridiculous, is doing real service to the world."--\_Ib.\_, p. 476. "It is

copying directly from nature; giving a plain rehearsal of what passed, or

was supposed to pass, in conversation."--\_Ib.\_, p. 433. "Propriety of

pronunciation is giving to every word that sound, which the most polite

usage of the language appropriates to it."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 200.

"To occupy the mind, and prevent our regretting the insipidity of an

uniform plain."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 329. "There are a

hundred ways of any thing happening."--\_Steele\_. "Tell me, signor, what was

the cause of Antonio's sending Claudio to Venice, yesterday."--\_Bucke's

Gram.\_, p 90. "Looking about for an outlet, some rich prospect unexpectedly

opens to view."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 334. "A hundred volumes of

modern novels may be read, without acquiring a new idea"--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 29. "Poetry admits of greater latitude than prose, with respect

to coining, or, at least, new compounding words."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 93.

"When laws were wrote on brazen tablets enforced by the sword."--\_Notes to

the Dunciad\_. "A pronoun, which saves the naming a person or thing a second

time, ought to be placed as near as possible to the name of that person or

thing."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 49. "The using a preposition in this

case, is not always a matter of choice."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 37. "To save

multiplying words, I would be understood to comprehend both

circumstances."--\_Ib.\_, i, 219. "Immoderate grief is mute: complaining is

struggling for consolation."--\_Ib.\_, i, 398. "On the other hand, the

accelerating or retarding the natural course, excites a pain."--\_Ib.\_, i,

259. "Human affairs require the distributing our attention."--\_Ib.\_, i,

264. "By neglecting this circumstance, the following example is defective

in neatness."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 29. "And therefore the suppressing copulatives

must animate a description."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 32. "If the laying aside

copulatives give force and liveliness, a redundancy of them must render the

period languid."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 33. "It skills not asking my leave, said

Richard."--\_Scott's Crusaders\_. "To redeem his credit, he proposed being

sent once more to Sparta."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 129. "Dumas relates

his having given drink to a dog."--\_Dr. Stone, on the Stomach\_, p. 24.

"Both are, in a like way, instruments of our receiving such ideas from

external objects."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 66. "In order to your proper

handling such a subject."--\_Spectator\_, No. 533. "For I do not recollect

its being preceded by an open vowel."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p.

56. "Such is setting up the form above the power of godliness."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 72. "I remember walking once with my young acquaintance."--

\_Hunt's Byron\_, p 27. "He [Lord Byron] did not like paying a debt."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 74. "I do not remember seeing Coleridge when I was a child."--\_Ib.\_, p.

318. "In consequence of the dry rot's having been discovered, the mansion

has undergone a thorough repair."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 17. "I would not

advise the following entirely the German system."--DR. LIEBER: \_Lit.

Conv.\_, p. 66. "Would it not be making the students judges of the

professors?"--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 4. "Little time should intervene between their

being proposed and decided upon."--PROF. VETHAKE: \_ib.\_, p. 39. "It would

be nothing less than finding fault with the Creator."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116.

"Having once been friends is a powerful reason, both of prudence and

conscience, to restrain us from ever becoming enemies."--\_Secker\_. "By

using the word as a conjunction, the ambiguity is prevented."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 216.

"He forms his schemes the flood of vice to stem,

But preaching Jesus is not one of them."--\_J. Taylor\_.

LESSON VIII.--ADVERBS.

"Auxiliaries cannot only be inserted, but are really

understood,"--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p 209. "He was since a hired Scribbler in

the Daily Courant."--\_Notes to the Dunciad\_, ii, 299. "In gardening,

luckily, relative beauty need never stand in opposition to intrinsic

beauty."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 330. "I doubt much of the propriety of

the following examples."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 44. "And [we see] how far

they have spread one of the worst Languages possibly in this part of the

world."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 341. "And in this manner to merely place him

on a level with the beast of the forest."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 5.

"Where, ah! where, has my darling fled?"--\_Anon\_. "As for this fellow, we

know not from whence he is."--\_John\_, ix, 29. "Ye see then how that by

works a man is justified, and not by faith only."--\_James\_, ii, 24. "The

\_Mixt\_ kind is where the poet speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes

other characters to speak."--\_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 276; \_Gould's\_, 267.

"Interrogation is, when the writer or orator raises questions and returns

answers."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 154. "Prevention is, when an author starts

an objection which he foresees may be made, and gives an answer to

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 154. "Will you let me alone, or no?"--\_Walker's Particles\_,

p. 184. "Neither man nor woman cannot resist an engaging exterior."--

\_Chesterfield\_, Let. lix. "Though the Cup be never so clean."--\_Locke, on

Ed.\_, p. 65. "Seldom, or ever, did any one rise to eminence, by being a

witty lawyer."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 272. "The second rule, which I give,

respects the choice of subjects, from whence metaphors, and other figures,

are to be drawn."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 144. "In the figures which it uses,

it sets mirrors before us, where we may behold objects, a second time, in

their likeness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 139. "Whose Business is to seek the true

measures of Right and Wrong, and not the Arts how to avoid doing the one,

and secure himself in doing the other."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 331. "The

occasions when you ought to personify things, and when you ought not,

cannot be stated in any precise rule."--\_Cobbett's Eng. Gram.\_, ¶ 182.

"They reflect that they have been much diverted, but scarce can say about

what."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 151. "The eyebrows and shoulders should

seldom or ever be remarked by any perceptible motion."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_,

ii, 389. "And the left hand or arm should seldom or never attempt any

motion by itself."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 391. "Every speaker does not propose to

please the imagination."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 104. "And like Gallio,

they care little for none of these things."--\_The Friend\_, Vol. x, p. 351.

"They may inadvertently be imitated, in cases where the meaning would be

obscure."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 272. "Nor a man cannot make him

laugh."--\_Shak\_. "The Athenians, in their present distress, scarce knew

where to turn."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 156. "I do not remember where

ever God delivered his oracles by the multitude."--\_Locke\_. "The object of

this government is twofold, outwards and inwards."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i,

553. "In order to rightly understand what we read."--\_Johnson's Gram.

Com.\_, p. 313. "That a design had been formed, to forcibly abduct or kidnap

Morgan."--\_Stone, on Masonry\_, p. 410. "But such imposture can never

maintain its ground long."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 10. "But sure it is equally

possible to apply the principles of reason and good sense to this art, as

to any other that is cultivated among men."--\_Ibid.\_ "It would have been

better for you, to have remained illiterate, and to have been even hewers

of wood."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 374. "Dissyllables that have two vowels,

which are separated in the pronunciation, have always the accent on the

first syllable."--\_Ib.\_, i, 238. "And they all turned their backs without

almost drawing a sword."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 224. "The principle of

duty takes naturally place of every other."--\_Ib.\_, i, 342. "All that

glitters is not gold."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 13. "Whether now or never so

many myriads of ages hence."--\_Pres. Edwards\_.

"England never did, nor never shall,

Lie at the proud foot of a conqueror."--\_Beaut. of Shak.\_, p. 109.

LESSON IX.--CONJUNCTIONS.

"He readily comprehends the rules of Syntax, and their use and

applicability in the examples before him."--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 6. "The

works of Æschylus have suffered more by time, than any of the ancient

tragedians."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 470. "There is much more story, more

bustle, and action, than on the French theatre."--\_Ib.\_, p. 478. "Such an

unremitted anxiety and perpetual application as engrosses our whole time

and thoughts, are forbidden."--SOAME JENYNS: \_Tract\_, p. 12. "It seems to

be nothing else but the simple form of the adjective."--\_Wright's Gram.\_,

p. 49. "But when I talk of \_Reasoning\_, I do not intend any other, but such

as is suited to the Child's Capacity."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 129. "Pronouns

have no other use in language, but to represent nouns."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p 83. "The speculative relied no farther on their own judgment, but

to choose a leader, whom they implicitly followed."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

Vol. i, p. xxv. "Unaccommodated man is no more but such a poor, bare,

forked animal as thou art."--\_Beaut. of Shak.\_, p. 266. "A Parenthesis is a

clause introduced into the body of a sentence obliquely, and which may be

omitted without injuring the grammatical construction."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

i, 280; \_Ingersoll's\_, 292; \_Smith's\_, 192; \_Alden's\_, 162; \_A. Flint's\_,

114; \_Fisk's\_, 158; \_Cooper's\_, 187; \_Comly's\_, 163. "A Caret, marked thus

^ is placed where some word happens to be left \_out in\_ writing, and which

\_is inserted over\_ the line."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 282; \_Ingersoll's\_,

293; \_and others\_. "At the time that I visit them they shall be cast

down."--\_Jer.\_, vi, 15. "Neither our virtues or vices are all our

own."--DR. JOHNSON: \_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 167. "I could not give him an

answer as early as he had desired."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 200. "He is

not as tall as his brother."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 124. "It is difficult to

judge when Lord Byron is serious or not."--\_Lady Blessington\_. "Some nouns

are both of the second and third declension."--\_Gould's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 48.

"He was discouraged neither by danger or misfortune."--\_Wells's Hist.\_, p.

161. "This is consistent neither with logic nor history."--\_The Dial\_, i,

62. "Parts of Sentences are simple and compound."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 114.

"English verse is regulated rather by the number of syllables than of

feet."--\_Ib.\_, p. 120. "I know not what more he can do, but pray for

him."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 140. "Whilst they are learning, and apply

themselves with Attention, they are to be kept in good Humour."--\_Ib.\_, p.

295. "A man cannot have too much of it, nor too perfectly."--\_Ib.\_, p. 322.

"That you may so run, as you may obtain; and so fight, as you may

overcome."--\_Wm. Penn\_. "It is the case of some, to contrive false periods

of business, because they may seem men of despatch."--\_Lord Bacon\_. "'A

tall man and a woman.' In this sentence there is no ellipsis; the adjective

or quality respect only the man."--\_Dr. Ash's Gram.\_, p. 95. "An

abandonment of the policy is neither to be expected or desired."--\_Pres.

Jackson's Message\_, 1830. "Which can be acquired by no other means but

frequent exercise in speaking."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 344. "The chief and

fundamental rules of syntax are common to the English as well as the Latin

tongue."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90. "Then I exclaim, that my antagonist either is void

of all taste, or that his taste is corrupted in a miserable degree."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 21. "I cannot pity any one who is under no distress of body nor

of mind."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 44. "There was much genius in the

world, before there were learning or arts to refine it."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 391. "Such a Writer can have little else to do, but to new model the

Paradoxes of ancient Scepticism."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, i, 102. "Our ideas

of them being nothing else but a collection of the ordinary qualities

observed in them."--\_Duncan's Logic\_, p. 25. "A \_non-ens\_ or a negative can

neither give pleasure nor pain."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 63. "So as they

shall not justle and embarrass one another."--\_Blair's Lectures\_, p. 318.

"He firmly refused to make use of any other voice but his own."--

\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 190. "Your marching regiments, Sir, will not make

the guards their example, either as soldiers or subjects."--\_Junius, Let\_.

35. "Consequently, they had neither meaning, or beauty, to any but the

natives of each country."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 161.

"The man of worth, and has not left his peer,

Is in his narrow house for ever darkly laid."--\_Burns\_.

LESSON X.--PREPOSITIONS.

"These may be carried on progressively above any assignable

limits."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 296. "To crowd in a single member of a

period different subjects, is still worse than to crowd them into one

period."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 27. "Nor do we rigidly insist for melodious

prose."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 76. "The aversion we have at those who differ from

us."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 365. "For we cannot bear his shifting the scene every

line."--LD. HALIFAX: \_ib.\_, ii, 213. "We shall find that we come by it the

same way."--\_Locke\_. "To this he has no better defense than

that."--\_Barnes's Bed Book\_, p. 347. "Searching the person whom he suspects

for having stolen his casket."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 479. "Who are elected

as vacancies occur by the whole Board."--\_Lit. Convention\_, p. 81. "Almost

the only field of ambition of a German, is science."--DR. LIEBER: \_ib.\_, p.

66. "The plan of education is very different to the one pursued in the

sister country."--DR. COLEY, \_ib.\_, p. 197. "Some writers on grammar have

contended that adjectives relate to, and modify the action of

verbs."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 61. "They are therefore of a mixed nature,

participating of the properties both of pronouns and adjectives."--

\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 57. "For there is no authority which can justify

the inserting the aspirate or doubling the vowel."--\_Knight, on Greek

Alph.\_, p. 52. "The distinction and arrangement between active, passive,

and neuter verbs."--\_Wright's Gram\_, p. 176. "And see thou a hostile world

\_to\_ spread its delusive snares."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 167. "He may be

precaution'd, and be made see, how those joyn in the Contempt."--\_Locke, on

Ed.\_, p. 155. "The contenting themselves now in the want of what they

wish'd for, is a vertue."--\_Ib.\_, p. 185. "If the Complaint be of something

really worthy your notice."--\_Ib.\_, p. 190. "True Fortitude I take to be

the quiet Possession of a Man's self, and an undisturb'd doing his

Duty."--\_Ib.\_, p. 204. "For the custom of tormenting and killing of Beasts

will, by degrees, harden their Minds even towards Men."--\_Ib.\_, p. 216.

"Children are whip'd to it, and made spend many Hours of their precious

time uneasily in Latin."--\_Ib.\_, p. 289. "The ancient rhetoricians have

entered into a very minute and particular detail of this subject; more

particular, indeed, than any other that regards language."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 123. "But the one should not be omitted without the

other."--\_Bullions's Eng. Gram.\_, p. 108. "In some of the common forms of

speech, the relative pronoun is usually omitted."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

218; \_Weld's\_, 191. "There are a great variety of causes, which disqualify

a witness from being received to testify in particular cases."--\_J. Q.

Adams's Rhet.\_, ii, 75. "Aside of all regard to interest, we should expect

that," &c.--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 82. "My opinion was given on a rather

cursory perusal of the book."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 202. "And the next day,

he was put on board his ship."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 201. "Having the command of no

emotions but of what are raised by sight."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 318.

"Did these moral attributes exist in some other being beside

himself."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 161. "He did not behave in that

manner out of pride or contempt of the tribunal."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i,

190. "These prosecutions of William seem to have been the most iniquitous

measures pursued by the court."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 199; \_Priestley's

Gram.\_, 126. "To restore myself into the good graces of my fair

critics."--\_Dryden\_. "Objects denominated beautiful, please not in virtue

of any one quality common to them all."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 46. "This

would have been less worthy notice, had not a writer or two of high rank

lately adopted it."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 197.

"A Grecian youth, with talents rare,

Whom Plato's philosophic care," &c.--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 145.

LESSON XI.--PROMISCUOUS.

"To excel, is become a much less considerable object."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

351. "My robe, and my integrity to heaven, is all I now dare call mine

own."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 173. "So thou the garland wear'st

successively."--\_Ib.\_, p. 134. "For thou the garland wears

successively."--\_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 341. "If that thou need'st a

Roman's, take it forth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 357. "If that thou be'st a Roman, take

it forth."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 256. "If thou provest this to be real,

thou must be a smart lad, indeed."--\_Neef's Method of Teaching\_, p. 210.

"And another Bridge of four hundred Foot in Length."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_,

p. 242. "\_Metonomy\_ is putting one name for another on account of the near

relation there is between them."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 151. "An

\_Antonomasia\_ is putting an appellative or common name for a proper

name."--\_Ib.\_, p. 153. "Its being me needs make no difference in your

determination."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 89. "The first and second page

are torn."--\_Ib.\_, p. 145. "John's being from home occasioned the

delay."--\_Ib.\_, p. 81. "His having neglected opportunities of improvement,

was the cause of his disgrace."--\_Ib.\_, p. 81. "He will regret his having

neglected opportunities of improvement when it may be too late."--\_Ib.\_, p.

81. "His being an expert dancer does not entitle him to our

regard."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82.[443] "Cæsar went back to Rome to take possession of

the public treasure, which his opponent, by a most unaccountable oversight,

had neglected taking with him."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, p. 116. "And Cæsar

took out of the treasury, to the amount of three thousand pound weight of

gold, besides an immense quantity of silver."--\_Ibid.\_ "Rules and

definitions, which should always be clear and intelligible as possible, are

thus rendered obscure."--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 5. "So much both of

ability and merit is seldom found."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 179. "If such

maxims, and such practices prevail, what is become of decency and

virtue?"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 78. "Especially if the subject require

not so much pomp."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 117. "However, the proper mixture

of light and shade, in such compositions; the exact adjustment of all the

figurative circumstances with the literal sense; have ever been considered

as points of great nicety."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 343. "And adding to that

hissing in our language, which is taken so much notice of by

foreigners."--ADDISON: DR. COOTE: \_ib.\_, i, 90. "Speaking impatiently to

servants, or any thing that betrays unkindness or ill-humour, is certainly

criminal."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 183; \_Merchant's\_, 190. "There is here a

fulness and grandeur of expression well suited to the subject."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 218. "I single Strada out among the moderns, because he had the

foolish presumption to censure Tacitus."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 262. "I

single him out among the moderns, because," &c.--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_,

p. 116. "This is a rule not always observed, even by good writers, as

strictly as it ought to be."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 103. "But this gravity

and assurance, which is beyond boyhood, being neither wisdom nor knowledge,

do never reach to manhood."--\_Notes to the Dunciad\_. "The regularity and

polish even of a turnpike-road has some influence upon the low people in

the neighbourhood."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 358. "They become fond of

regularity and neatness; which is displayed, first upon their yards and

little enclosures, and next within doors."--\_Ibid.\_ "The phrase, \_it is

impossible to exist\_, gives us the idea of it's being impossible for men,

or any body to exist."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 85. "I'll give a thousand

pound to look upon him."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 151. "The reader's

knowledge, as Dr. Campbell observes, may prevent his mistaking

it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 172; \_Crombie's\_, 253. "When two words are set

in contrast or in opposition to one another, they are both

emphatic."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 243. "The number of persons, men, women,

and children, who were lost in the sea, was very great."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 20.

"Nor is the resemblance between the primary and resembling object pointed

out"--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 179. "I think it the best book of the kind

which I have met with."--DR. MATHEWS: \_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 2.

"Why should not we their ancient rites restore,

And be what Rome or Athens were before."--\_Roscommon\_, p. 22.

LESSON XII.--TWO ERRORS.

"It is labour only which gives the relish to pleasure."--\_Murray's Key\_,

ii, 234. "Groves are never as agreeable as in the opening of the

spring."--\_Ib.\_, p. 216. "His 'Philosophical Inquiry into the origin of our

Ideas on the Sublime and Beautiful' soon made him known to the

literati."--\_Biog. Rhet., n. Burke\_. "An awful precipice or tower whence we

look down on the objects which lie below."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 30. "This

passage, though very poetical, is, however, harsh and obscure; owing to no

other cause but this, that three distinct metaphors are crowded

together."--\_Ib.\_, p. 149. "I propose making some observations."--\_Ib.\_, p.

280. "I shall follow the same method here which I have all along

pursued."--\_Ib.\_, p. 346. "Mankind never resemble each other so much as

they do in the beginnings of society."--\_Ib.\_, p. 380. "But no ear is

sensible of the termination of each foot, in reading an hexameter

line."--\_Ib.\_, p. 383. "The first thing, says he, which either a writer of

fables, or of heroic poems, does, is, to choose some maxim or point of

morality."--\_Ib.\_, p. 421. "The fourth book has been always most justly

admired, and abounds with beauties of the highest kind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 439.

"There is no attempt towards painting characters in the poem."--\_Ib.\_, p.

446. "But the artificial contrasting of characters, and the introducing

them always in pairs, and by opposites, gives too theatrical and affected

an air to the piece."--\_Ib.\_, p. 479. "Neither of them are arbitrary nor

local."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, p. xxi. "If crowding figures be bad, it is

still worse to graft one figure upon another."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 236. "The

crowding withal so many objects together, lessens the pleasure."--\_Ib.\_,

ii, 324. "This therefore lies not in the putting off the Hat, nor making of

Compliments."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 149. "But the Samaritan Vau may have

been used, as the Jews did the Chaldaic, both for a vowel and

consonant."--\_Wilson's Essay\_, p. 19. "But if a solemn and familiar

pronunciation really exists in our language, is it not the business of a

grammarian to mark both?"--\_Walker's Dict., Pref.\_, p. 4. "By making sounds

follow each other agreeable to certain laws."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 406.

"If there was no drinking intoxicating draughts, there could be no

drunkards."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 178. "Socrates knew his own

defects, and if he was proud of any thing, it was in the being thought to

have none."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 188. "Lysander having brought his

army to Ephesus, erected an arsenal for building of gallies."--\_Ib.\_, i,

161. "The use of these signs are worthy remark."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p.

94. "He received me in the same manner that I would you."--\_Smith's New

Gram.\_, p. 113. "Consisting both of the direct and collateral

evidence."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 224. "If any man or woman that believeth

have widows, let them relieve them, and let not the church be charged."--\_1

Tim.\_, v, 16. "For mens sakes are beasts bred."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p.

131. "From three a clock there was drinking and gaming."--\_Ib.\_, p. 141.

"Is this he that I am seeking of, or no?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 248. "And for the

upholding every one his own opinion, there is so much ado."--\_Sewel's

Hist.\_, p. 809. "Some of them however will be necessarily taken notice

of."--\_Sale's Koran\_, p. 71. "The boys conducted themselves exceedingly

indiscreet."--\_Merchant's Key\_, p. 195. "Their example, their influence,

their fortune, every talent they possess, dispense blessings on all around

them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 197; \_Murray's Key\_, ii, 219. "The two \_Reynolds\_

reciprocally converted one another"--\_Johnson's Lives\_, p. 185. "The

destroying the two last Tacitus calls an attack upon virtue

itself."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, p. 194. "Monies is your suit."--\_Beauties of

Shak.\_, p. 38. "\_Ch\_, is commonly sounded like \_tch\_; as in church; but in

words derived from the Greek, has the sound of \_k\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

11. "When one is obliged to make some utensil supply purposes to which they

were not originally destined."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 222. "But that a

being baptized with water, is a washing away of sin, thou canst not from

hence prove."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 190. "Being but spoke to one, it

infers no universal command."--\_Ibid.\_ "For if the laying aside Copulatives

gives Force and Liveliness, a Redundancy of them must render the Period

languid."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 134. "James used to compare him to a

cat, who always fell upon her legs."--ADAM'S HIST. OF ENG.: \_Crombie\_, p.

384.

"From the low earth aspiring genius springs,

And sails triumphant born on eagles wings."--\_Lloyd\_, p. 162.

LESSON XIII.--TWO ERRORS.

"An ostentatious, a feeble, a harsh, or an obscure style, for instance, are

always faults."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_ p. 190. "Yet in this we find the English

pronounce perfectly agreeable to rule."--\_Walker's Dict.\_, p. 2. "But

neither the perception of ideas, nor knowledge of any sort, are habits,

though absolutely necessary to the forming of them."--\_Butler's Analogy\_,

p. 111. "They were cast: and an heavy fine imposed upon them."--\_Goldsmiths

Greece\_, ii, 30. "Without making this reflection, he cannot enter into the

spirit, nor relish the composition of the author."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

450. "The scholar should be instructed relative to finding his

words."--\_Osborn's Key\_, p. 4. "And therefore they could neither have

forged, or reversified them."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alph.\_, p. 30. "A

dispensary is the place where medicines are dispensed."--\_Murray's Key\_,

ii, 172. "Both the connexion and number of words is determined by general

laws."--\_Neef's Sketch\_, p. 73. "An Anapsest has the two first syllables

unaccented, and the last accented: as, 'Contravene, acquiésce.'"--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 254. "An explicative sentence is, when a thing is said to be or

not to be, to do or not to do, to suffer or not to suffer, in a direct

manner."--\_Ib.\_, i, 141; \_Lowth's\_, 84. "BUT is a \_conjunction\_, in all

cases when it is neither an adverb nor preposition."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_,

p. 109. "He wrote in the king Ahasuerus' name, and sealed it with the

king's ring."--\_Esther\_, viii, 10. "Camm and Audland were departed the town

before this time."--\_Sewel's Hist.\_, p. 100. "Previous to their

relinquishing the practice, they must be convinced."--\_Dr. Webster, on

Slavery\_, p. 5. "Which he had thrown up previous to his setting

out."--\_Grimshaw's Hist. U. S.\_, p. 84. "He left him to the value of an

hundred drachmas in Persian money."--\_Spect.\_, No. 535. "All which the mind

can ever contemplate concerning them, must be divided between the

three."--\_Cardell's Philad. Gram.\_, p. 80. "Tom Puzzle is one of the most

eminent immethodical disputants of any that has fallen under my

observation."--\_Spect.\_, No. 476. "When you have once got him to think

himself made amends for his suffering, by the praise is given him for his

courage."--\_Locke, on Ed\_. §115. "In all matters where simple reason, and

mere speculation is concerned."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 136. "And

therefore he should be spared the trouble of attending to any thing else,

but his meaning."--\_Ib.\_, p. 105. "It is this kind of phraseology which is

distinguished by the epithet \_idiomatical\_, and hath been originally the

spawn, partly of ignorance, and partly of affectation."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_

p. 185. Murray has it--"and \_which has\_ been originally," &c.--\_Octavo

Gram.\_ i, 370. "That neither the letters nor inflection are such as could

have been employed by the ancient inhabitants of Latium."--\_Knight, Gr.

Alph\_. p. 13, "In cases where the verb is intended to be applied to any one

of the terms."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,, 150. "But this people which know not the

law, are accursed."--\_John\_, vii, 49. "And the magnitude of the chorusses

have weight and sublimity."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 428. "Dare he deny but

there are some of his fraternity guilty?"--\_Barclays Works\_, i, 327.

"Giving an account of most, if not all the papers had passed betwixt

them."--\_Ib.\_, i, 235. "In this manner, both as to parsing and correcting,

all the rules of syntax should be treated, proceeding regularly according

to their order."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, 12mo, p. x. "Ovando was allowed a

brilliant retinue and a body guard."--\_Sketch of Columbus\_. "Is it I or he

whom you requested to go?"--\_Kirkham's Gram., Key\_, p. 226. "Let thou and I

go on."--\_Bunyan's P. P.\_, p. 158. "This I no-where affirmed; and do wholly

deny."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 454. "But that I deny; and remains for him

to prove."--\_Ibid.\_ "Our country sinks beneath the yoke; It weeps, it

bleeds, and each new day a gash Is added to her wounds."--SHAKSPEARE: \_Joh.

Dict., w. Beneath\_. "Thou art the Lord who didst choose Abraham, and

broughtest him forth out of Ur of the Chaldees."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 189.

"He is the exhaustless fountain, from which emanates all these attributes,

that exists throughout this wide creation."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, 1st

Ed., p. 155. "I am he who have communed with the son of Neocles; I am he

who have entered the gardens of pleasure."--\_Wright's Athens\_, p. 66.

"Such was in ancient times the tales received,

Such by our good forefathers was believed."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. ix, l. 605.

LESSON XIV.--TWO ERRORS.

"The noun or pronoun that stand before the active verb, may be called the

agent."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 121. "Such seems to be the musings of

our hero of the grammar-quill, when he penned the first part of his

grammar."--\_Merchant's Criticisms\_. "Two dots, the one placed above the

other [:], is called Sheva, and represents a very short \_e\_."--\_Wilson's

Hebrew Gram.\_, p. 43. "Great has been, and is, the obscurity and

difficulty, in the nature and application of them."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p.

184. "As two is to four, so is four to eight."--\_Everest's Gram.\_, p. 231.

"The invention and use of it [arithmetic] reaches back to a period so

remote as is beyond the knowledge of history."--\_Robertson's America\_, i,

288. "What it presents as objects of contemplation or enjoyment, fills and

satisfies his mind."--\_Ib.\_, i, 377. "If he dare not say they are, as I

know he dare not, how must I then distinguish?"--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii,

311. "He was now grown so fond of solitude that all company was become

uneasy to him."--\_Life of Cicero\_, p. 32. "Violence and spoil is heard in

her; before me continually is grief and wounds."--\_Jeremiah\_, vi, 7.

"Bayle's Intelligence from the Republic of Letters, which make eleven

volumes in duodecimo, are truly a model in this kind."--\_Formey's

Belles-Lettres\_, p. 68. "To render pauses pleasing and expressive, they

must not only be made in the right place, but also accompanied with a

proper tone of voice."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 249. "The opposing the

opinions, and rectifying the mistakes of others, is what truth and

sincerity sometimes require of us."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 211. "It is very

probable that this assembly was called, to clear some doubt which the king

had, about the lawfulness of the Hollanders' throwing off the monarchy of

Spain, and withdrawing, entirely, their allegiance to that

crown."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 195. "Naming the cases and numbers of a noun

in their order is called declining it."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 10.

"The embodying them is, therefore, only collecting such component parts of

words."--\_Town's Analysis\_, p. 4. "The one is the voice heard at Christ's

being baptized; the other, at his being transfigured."--\_Barclays Works\_,

i, 267. "Understanding the literal sense would not have prevented their

condemning the guiltless."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 168. "As if this were

taking the execution of justice out of the hand of God, and giving it to

nature."--\_Ib.\_, p. 194. "They will say, you must conceal this good opinion

of yourself; which yet is allowing the thing, though not the showing

it."--\_Sheffield's Works\_, ii, 244. "So as to signify not only the doing an

action, but the causing it to be done."--\_Pike's Hebrew Lexicon\_, p. 180.

"This, certainly, was both dividing the unity of God, and limiting his

immensity."--\_Calvin's Institutes\_, B. i, Ch. 13. "Tones being infinite in

number, and varying in almost every individual, the arranging them under

distinct heads, and reducing them to any fixed and permanent rules, may be

considered as the last refinement in language."--\_Knight, on Gr. Alph.\_, p.

16. "The fierce anger of the Lord shall not return, until he have done it,

and until he have performed the intents of his heart."--\_Jeremiah\_, xxx,

24. "We seek for more heroic and illustrious deeds, for more diversified

and surprising events."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 373. "We distinguish the

Genders, or the Male and Female Sex, four different Ways."--\_Buchanan's

Gram.\_, p. 20. "Thus, ch and g, are ever hard. It is therefore proper to

retain these sounds in Hebrew names, which have not been modernised, or

changed by public use."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 24. "The Substantive

or noun is the name of any thing conceived to subsist, or of which we have

any notion."--\_Lindley Murray's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 26. "The SUBSTANTIVE, or

NOUN; being the name of any thing conceived to subsist, or of which we have

any notion."--\_Dr. Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 6. "The \_Noun\_ is the name of any

thing that exists, or of which we have, or can form, an idea."--\_Maunders

Gram.\_, p. 1. "A noun is the name of any thing in existence, or of which we

can form an idea."--\_Ib.\_, p. 1. (See False Syntax under Note 7th to Rule

10th.) "The next thing to be taken Care of, is to keep him exactly to

speaking of Truth."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 254. "The material, vegetable, and

animal world, receive this influence according to their several

capacities."--\_The Dial\_, i, 59. "And yet, it is fairly defensible on the

principles of the schoolmen; if that can be called principles which

consists merely in words."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 274.

"Art thou so bare and full of wretchedness,

And fears to die? famine is in thy cheeks,

Need and oppression starveth in thy eyes."--\_Beaut. of Shak.\_, p. 317.

LESSON XV.--THREE ERRORS.

"The silver age is reckoned to have commenced on the death of Augustus, and

continued to the end of Trajan's reign."--\_Gould's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 277.

"Language is become, in modern times, more correct, indeed, and

accurate."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 65. "It is evident, that words are most

agreeable to the ear which are composed of smooth and liquid sounds, where

there is a proper intermixture of vowels and consonants."--\_Ib.\_, p. 121.

See \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 325. "It would have had no other effect, but to

add a word unnecessarily to the sentence."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 194. "But

as rumours arose of the judges having been corrupted by money in this

cause, these gave occasions to much popular clamour, and had thrown a heavy

odium on Cluentius."--\_Ib.\_, p. 273. "A Participle is derived of a verb,

and partakes of the nature both of the verb and the adjective."--\_Dr. Ash's

Gram.\_, p. 39; \_E. Devis's\_, 9. "I will have learned my grammar before you

learn your's."--\_Wilbur and Liv. Gram.\_, p. 14. "There is no earthly object

capable of making such various and such forcible impressions upon the human

mind as a complete speaker."--\_Perry's Dict., Pref.\_ "It was not the

carrying the bag which made Judas a thief and an hireling."--\_South\_. "As

the reasonable soul and flesh is one man, so God and man is one

Christ."--\_Athanasian Creed\_. "And I will say to them which were not my

people, Thou art my people; and they shall say, Thou art my God."--\_Hosea\_,

ii, 23. "Where there is nothing in the sense which requires the last sound

to be elevated or emphatical, an easy fall, sufficient to show that the

sense is finished, will be proper."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 250. "Each party

produces words where the letter \_a\_ is sounded in the manner they contend

for."--\_Walker's Dict.\_, p. 1. "To countenance persons who are guilty of

bad actions, is scarcely one remove from actually committing

them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 233. "'To countenance persons who are guilty

of bad actions,' is part of a sentence, which is the nominative case to the

verb 'is.'"--\_Ibid.\_ "What is called splitting of particles, or separating

a preposition from the noun which it governs, is always to be

avoided."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 112; \_Jamieson's\_, 93. See \_Murray's Gram.\_,

i, 319. "There is, properly, no more than one pause or rest in the

sentence, falling betwixt the two members into which it is

divided."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 125; \_Jamieson's\_, 126; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i,

329. "Going barefoot does not at all help on the way to heaven."--\_Steele,

Spect.\_, No. 497. "There is no Body but condemns this in others, though

they overlook it in themselves."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, §145. "In the same

sentence, be careful not to use the same word too frequently, nor in

different senses."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 296. "Nothing could have made her

so unhappy, as marrying a man who possessed such principles."--\_Murray's

Key\_, ii, 200. "A warlike, various, and a tragical age is best to write of,

but worst to write in."--\_Cowley's Pref.\_, p. vi. "When thou instances

Peter his baptizing Cornelius."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 188. "To introduce

two or more leading thoughts or agents, which have no natural relation to,

or dependence on one another."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 313. "Animals, again,

are fitted to one another, and to the elements where they live, and to

which they are as appendices."--\_Ibid.\_ "This melody, or varying the sound

of each word so often, is a proof of nothing, however, but of the fine ear

of that people."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 5. "They can each in their turns

be made use of upon occasion."--\_Duncan's Logic\_, p. 191. "In this reign

lived the poet Chaucer, who, with Gower, are the first authors who can

properly be said to have written English."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 144. "In

the translating these kind of expressions, consider the IT IS, as if it

were \_they\_, or \_they are\_."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 179. "The chin has

an important office to perform; for upon its activity we either disclose a

polite or vulgar pronunciation."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 27. "For no other

reason, but his being found in bad company."--\_Webster's Amer.

Spelling-Book\_, p. 96. "It is usual to compare them in the same manner as

Polisyllables."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 77. "The infinitive mood is

recognised easier than any others, because the preposition \_to\_ precedes

it."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p, 95. "Prepositions, you recollect, connect words

as well as conjunctions: how, then, can you tell the one from the

other?"--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 38.

"No kind of work requires so nice a touch,

And if well finish'd, nothing shines so much"

--\_Sheffield, Duke of Buck.\_

LESSON XVI--THREE ERRORS.

"It is the final pause which alone, on many occasions, marks the difference

between prose and verse; which will be evident from the following

arrangement of a few poetical lines."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 260. "I shall

do all I can to persuade others to take the same measures for their cure

which I have."--GUARDIAN: see \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 207. "I shall do all I

can, to persuade others to take the same measures for their cure which I

have taken."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 215. "It is the nature of extreme

self-lovers, as they will set an house on fire, and [or \_an\_] it were but

to roast their eggs."--\_Ld. Bacon\_. "Did ever man struggle more earnestly

in a cause where both his honour and life are concerned?"--\_Duncan's

Cicero\_, p. 15. "So the rests and pauses, between sentences and their

parts, are marked by points."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 114. "Yet the case and

mode is not influenced by them, but determined by the nature of the

sentence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 113. "By not attending to this rule, many errors have

been committed: a number of which is subjoined, as a further caution and

direction to the learner."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 114. "Though thou clothest

thyself with crimson, though thou deckest thee with ornaments of gold,

though thou rentest thy face with painting, in vain shalt thou make thyself

fair."--\_Jeremiah\_, iv, 30. "But that the doing good to others will make us

happy, is not so evident; feeding the hungry, for example, or clothing the

naked."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 161. "There is no other God but him, no

other light but his."--\_William Penn\_. "How little reason to wonder, that a

perfect and accomplished orator, should be one of the characters that is

most rarely found?"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 337. "Because they neither express

doing nor receiving an action."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 53. "To find the

answers, will require an effort of mind, and when given, will be the result

of reflection, showing that the subject is understood."--\_Ib.\_, p. vii. "To

say, that 'the sun rises,' is trite and common; but it becomes a

magnificent image when expressed as Mr. Thomson has done."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 137. "The declining a word is the giving it different

endings."--\_Ware's Gram.\_, p. 7. "And so much are they for every one's

following their own mind."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 462. "More than one

overture for a peace was made, but Cleon prevented their taking

effect."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, i, 121. "Neither in English or in any other

language is this word, and that which corresponds to it in other languages,

any more an article, than \_two, three, four\_."--DR. WEBSTER: \_Knickerbocker

of 1836\_. "But the most irksome conversation of all others I have met

within the neighbourhood, has been among two or three of your

travellers."--\_Spect.\_, No. 474. "Set down the two first terms of

supposition under each other in the first place."--\_Smiley's Arithmetic\_,

p. 79. "It is an useful rule too, to fix our eye on some of the most

distant persons in the assembly."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 328. "He will

generally please most, when pleasing is not his sole nor chief

aim."--\_Ib.\_, p. 336. "At length, the consuls return to the camp, and

inform them they could receive no other terms but that of surrendering

their arms, and passing under the yoke."--\_Ib.\_, p. 360. "Nor is mankind so

much to blame, in his choice thus determining him."--SWIFT: \_Crombie's

Treatise\_, p 360. "These forms are what is called Number."--\_Fosdick's De

Sacy\_, p. 62. "In languages which admit but two Genders, all Nouns are

either Masculine or Feminine, even though they designate beings which are

neither male or female."--\_Ib.\_, p. 66. "It is called a \_Verb\_ or \_Word\_ by

way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence,

without which the other parts of speech can form no complete

sense."--\_Gould's Adam's Gram.\_, p. 76. "The sentence will consist of two

members, which are commonly separated from one another by a

comma."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 7. "Loud and soft in speaking, is like the

\_fortè\_ and \_piano\_ in music, it only refers to the different degrees of

force used in the same key; whereas high and low imply a change of

key."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 116. "They are chiefly three: the

acquisition of knowledge; the assisting the memory to treasure up this

knowledge; or the communicating it to others."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11.

"These kind of knaves I know, which in this plainness,

Harbour more craft, and more corrupter ends,

Than twenty silly ducking observants."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 261.

LESSON XVII.--MANY ERRORS.

"A man will be forgiven, even great errors, in a foreign language; but in

his own, even the least slips are justly laid hold of, and

ridiculed."--\_American Chesterfield\_, p 83. "\_Let\_ does not only express

permission; but praying, exhorting, commanding."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 41.

"\_Let\_, not only expresses permission, but entreating, exhorting,

commanding."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 88; \_Ingersoll's\_, 135. "That death

which is our leaving this world, is nothing else but putting off these

bodies."--\_Sherlock\_. "They differ from the saints recorded both in the Old

and New Testaments."--\_Newton\_. "The nature therefore of relation consists

in the referring or comparing two things one to another; from which

comparison, one or both comes to be denominated"--\_Locke's Essay\_, i, 220.

"It is not credible, that there hath been any one who through the whole

course of their lives will say, that they have kept themselves undefiled

with the least spot or stain of sin."--\_Witsius\_. "If acting conformably to

the will of our Creator;--if promoting the welfare of mankind around

us;--if securing our own happiness;--are objects of the highest

moment:--then we are loudly called upon to cultivate and extend the great

interests of religion and virtue"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 278; \_Comly's\_,

163; \_Ingersoll's\_, 291. "By the verb being in the plural number, it is

supposed that it has a plural nominative, which is not the case. The only

nominative to the verb, is, \_the officer\_: the expression \_his guard\_, are

in the objective case, governed by the preposition \_with\_; and they cannot

consequently form the nominative, or any part of it. The prominent subject,

and the true nominative of the verb, and to which the verb peculiarly

refers, is \_the officer\_."--\_Murray's Parsing\_, Cr. 8vo, ii, 22. "This is

another use, that, in my opinion, contributes rather to make a man learned

than wise; and is neither capable of pleasing the understanding, or

imagination."--ADDISON: \_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 353. "The work is a dull

performance; and is capable of pleasing neither the understanding, nor the

imagination."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 210. "I would recommend the Elements of

English Grammar, by Mr. Frost. Its plan is after Murray, but his

definitions and language is simplified as far as the nature of the subject

will admit, to meet the understanding of children. It also embraces more

copious examples and exercises in Parsing than is usual in elementary

treatises."--\_Hall's Lectures on School-Keeping\_, 1st Ed., p. 37. "More

rain falls in the first two summer months, than in the first two winter

ones: but it makes a much greater show upon the earth, in these than in

those; because there is a much slower evaporation."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii,

189. See \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 90. "They often contribute also to the

rendering some persons prosperous though wicked: and, which is still worse,

to the rewarding some actions though vicious, and punishing other actions

though virtuous."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 92. "From hence, to such a man,

arises naturally a secret satisfaction and sense of security, and implicit

hope of somewhat further."--\_Ib.\_, p. 93. "So much for the third and last

cause of illusion that was taken notice of, arising from the abuse of very

general and abstract terms, which is the principal source of all the

nonsense that hath been vented by metaphysicians, mystagogues, and

theologians."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 297. "As to those animals whose use

is less common, or who on account of the places which they inhabit, fall

less under our observation, as fishes and birds, or whom their diminutive

size removes still further from our observation, we generally, in English,

employ a single Noun to designate both Genders, Masculine and

Feminine."--\_Fosdick's De Sacy\_, p. 67. "Adjectives may always be

distinguished by their being the word, or words, made use of to describe

the quality, or condition, of whatever is mentioned."--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p.

20. "Adverb signifies a word added to a verb, participle, adjective, or

other adverb, to describe or qualify their qualities."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "The

joining together two such grand objects, and the representing them both as

subject, at one moment, to the command of God, produces a noble

effect."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 37. "Twisted columns, for instance, are

undoubtedly ornamental; but as they have an appearance of weakness, they

always displease when they are made use of to support any part of a

building that is massy, and that seems to require a more substantial

prop."--\_Ib.\_, p. 40. "Upon a vast number of inscriptions, some upon rocks,

some upon stones of a defined shape, is found an Alphabet different from

the Greeks, Latins, and Hebrews, and also unlike that of any modern

nation."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, p. 176.

LESSON XVIII--MANY ERRORS.

"'The empire of Blefuscu is an island situated to the northeast side of

Lilliput, from whence it is parted only by a channel of 800 yards wide.'

\_Gulliver's Travels\_. The ambiguity may be removed thus:--'from whence it

is parted by a channel of 800 yards wide only.'"--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 44. "The nominative case is usually the agent or doer, and always the

subject of the verb."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 47. "There is an

originality, richness, and variety in his [Spenser's] allegorical

personages, which almost vies with the splendor of the ancient

mythology."--\_Hazlitt's Lect.\_, p. 68. "As neither the Jewish nor Christian

revelation have been universal, and as they have been afforded to a greater

or less part of the world at different times; so likewise, at different

times, both revelations have had different degrees of evidence."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 210. "Thus we see, that killing a man with a sword or a

hatchet, are looked upon as no distinct species of action: but if the point

of the sword first enter the body, it passes for a distinct species, called

\_stabbing\_."--\_Locke's Essay\_, p. 314. "If a soul sin, and commit a

trespass against the Lord, and lie unto his neighbour in that which was

delivered him to keep, or hath deceived his neighbour, or have found that

which was lost, and lieth concerning it, and sweareth falsely; in any of

all these that a man doeth, sinning therein, then it shall be,"

&c.--\_Lev.\_, vi, 2. "As the doing and teaching the commandments of God is

the great proof of virtue, so the breaking them, and the teaching others to

break them, is the great proof of vice."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p.

281. "In Pope's terrific maltreatment of the latter simile, it is neither

true to mind or eye."--\_Coleridge's Introd.\_, p. 14. "And the two brothers

were seen, transported with rage and fury, endeavouring like Eteocles and

Polynices to plunge their swords into each other's hearts, and to assure

themselves of the throne by the death of their rival."--\_Goldsmith's

Greece\_, i, 176. "Is it not plain, therefore, that neither the castle, the

planet, nor the cloud, which you see here, are those real ones, which you

suppose exist at a distance?"--\_Berkley's Alciphron\_, p 166. "I have often

wondered how it comes to pass, that every Body should love themselves best,

and yet value their neighbours Opinion about themselves more than their

own."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 226. "VIRTUE ([Greek: Aretahe], Virtus) as

well as most of its Species, are all Feminine, perhaps from their Beauty

and amiable appearance."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 55. "Virtue, with most of

its Species, are all Feminine, from their Beauty and amiable Appearance;

and so Vice becomes Feminine of Course, as being Virtue's natural

opposite."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 97. "Virtue, with most of its Species, is

Feminine, and so is Vice, for being Virtue's opposite."--\_Buchanan's

Gram.\_, p. 22. "From this deduction, may be easily seen how it comes to

pass, that personification makes so great a figure in all compositions,

where imagination or passion have any concern."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 155.

"An Article is a word prefixed to a substantive to point them out, and to

show how far their signification extends."--\_Folker's Gram.\_, p. 4. "All

men have certain natural, essential, and inherent rights--among which are,

the enjoying and defending life and liberty; acquiring, possessing, and

protecting property; and, in a word, of seeking and obtaining

happiness."--\_Constitution of New Hampshire\_. "From Grammarians who form

their ideas, and make their decisions, respecting this part of English

Grammar, on the principles and construction of languages, which, in these

points, do not suit the peculiar nature of our own, but differ considerably

from it, we may naturally expect grammatical schemes that are not very

perspicuous, or perfectly consistent, and which will tend more to perplex

than inform the learner."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 68; \_Hall's\_, 15. "There

are, indeed, very few who know how to be idle and innocent, or have a

relish of any pleasures that are not criminal; every diversion they take,

is at the expense of some one virtue or another, and their very first step

out of business is into vice or folly."--ADDISON: \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

201.[444]

"Hail, holy love! thou word that sums all bliss!

Gives and receives all bliss: fullest when most

Thou givest; spring-head of all felicity!"

--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, B. v, 1, 193.

CHAPTER XIII.--GENERAL RULE.

The following comprehensive canon for the correction of all sorts of

nondescript errors in syntax, and the several critical or general notes

under it, seem necessary for the completion of my design; which is, to

furnish a thorough exposition of the various faults against which the

student of English grammar has occasion to be put upon his guard.

GENERAL RULE OF SYNTAX.

In the formation of sentences, the consistency and adaptation of all the

words should be carefully observed; and a regular, clear, and correspondent

construction should be preserved throughout.

CRITICAL NOTES TO THE GENERAL RULE.

CRITICAL NOTE I.--OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Words that may constitute different parts of speech, must not be left

doubtful as to their classification, or to what part of speech they belong.

CRITICAL NOTE II.--OF DOUBTFUL REFERENCE.

The reference of words to other words, or their syntactical relation

according to the sense, should never be left doubtful, by any one who means

to be understood.

CRITICAL NOTE III.--OF DEFINITIONS.

A definition, in order to be perfect, must include the whole thing, or

class of things, which it pretends to define, and exclude every thing which

comes not under the name.

CRITICAL NOTE IV.--OF COMPARISONS.

A comparison is a form of speech which requires some similarity or common

property in the things compared; without which, it becomes a solecism.

CRITICAL NOTE V.--OF FALSITIES.

Sentences that convey a meaning manifestly false, should be changed,

rejected, or contradicted; because they distort language from its chief

end, or only worthy use; which is, to state facts, and to tell the truth.

CRITICAL NOTE VI.--OF ABSURDITIES.

Absurdities, of every kind, are contrary to grammar, because they are

contrary to reason, or good sense, which is the foundation of grammar.

CRITICAL NOTE VII.--OF SELF-CONTRADICTION.

Every writer or speaker should be careful not to contradict himself; for

what is self-contradictory, is both null in argument, and bad in style.

CRITICAL NOTE VIII.--OF SENSELESS JUMBLING.

To jumble together words without care for the sense, is an unpardonable

negligence, and an abuse of the human understanding.

CRITICAL NOTE IX.--OF WORDS NEEDLESS.

Words that are entirely needless, and especially such as injure or encumber

the expression, ought in general to be omitted.

CRITICAL NOTE X.--OF IMPROPER OMISSIONS.

Words necessary to the sense, or even to the melody or beauty of a

sentence, ought seldom, if ever, to be omitted.

CRITICAL NOTE XI.--OF LITERARY BLUNDERS.

Grave blunders made in the name of learning, are the strongest of all

certificates against the books which contain them unreproved.

CRITICAL NOTE XII.--OF PERVERSIONS.

Proof-texts in grammar, if not in all argument, should be quoted literally;

and even that which needs to be corrected, must never be perverted.

CRITICAL NOTE XIII.--OF AWKWARDNESS.

Awkwardness, or inelegance of expression, is a reprehensible defect in

style, whether it violate any of the common rules of syntax or not.

CRITICAL NOTE XIV.--OF IGNORANCE.

Any use of words that implies ignorance of their meaning, or of their

proper orthography, is particularly unscholarlike; and, in proportion to

the author's pretensions to learning, disgraceful.

CRITICAL NOTE XV.--OF SILLINESS. Silly remarks and idle truisms are traits

of a feeble style, and, when their weakness is positive, or inherent, they

ought to be entirely omitted. CRITICAL NOTE XVI.--OF THE INCORRIGIBLE.

Passages too erroneous for correction, may be criticised, orally or

otherwise, and then passed over without any attempt to amend them.[445]

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE SYNTAX.

OBS. 1.--In the foregoing code of syntax, the author has taken the parts of

speech in their order, and comprised all the general principles of

relation, agreement, and government, in twenty-four leading Rules. Of these

rules, eight--(namely, the 1st, of \_Articles\_; the 4th, of \_Possessives\_;

the 9th, of \_Adjectives\_; the 20th, of \_Participles\_; the 21st, of

\_Adverbs\_; the 22d, of \_Conjunctions\_; the 23d, of \_Prepositions\_; and the

24th, of \_Interjections\_--) are used only in parsing. The remaining

sixteen, because they embrace principles that are sometimes violated in

practice, answer the double purpose of parsing and correcting. The

Exceptions, of which there are thirty-two, (all occasionally applicable in

parsing,) belong to nine different rules, and refer to all the parts of

speech, except nouns and interjections. The Notes, of which there are one

hundred and fifty-two, are subordinate rules of syntax, not designed to be

used in parsing, but formed for the exposition and correction of so many

different forms of false grammar. The Observations, of which there are, in

this part of the work, without the present series, four hundred and

ninety-seven, are designed not only to defend and confirm the doctrines

adopted by the author, but to explain the arrangement of words, and

whatever is difficult or peculiar in construction.

OBS. 2.--The rules in a system of syntax may be more or less comprehensive,

as well as more or less simple or complex; consequently they may, without

deficiency or redundance, be more or less numerous. But either complexity

or vagueness, as well as redundance or deficiency, is a fault; and, when

all these faults are properly avoided, and the two great ends of methodical

syntax, \_parsing\_ and \_correcting\_, are duly answered, perhaps the

requisite number of syntactical rules, or grammatical canons, will no

longer appear very indeterminate. In the preceding chapters, the essential

principles of English syntax are supposed to be pretty fully developed; but

there are yet to be exhibited some forms of error, which must be corrected

under other heads or maxims, and for the treatment of which the several

dogmas of this chapter are added. Completeness in the system, however, does

not imply that it must have shown the pupil how to correct every form of

language that is amiss: for there may be in composition many errors of such

a nature that no rule of grammar can show, either what should be

substituted for the faulty expression, or what fashion of amendment may be

the most eligible. The inaccuracy may be gross and obvious, but the

correction difficult or impossible. Because the sentence may require a

change throughout; and a total change is not properly a correction; it is a

substitution of something new, for what was, perhaps, in itself

incorrigible.

OBS. 3.--The notes which are above denominated \_Critical\_ or \_General\_, are

not all of them obviously different in kind from the other notes; but they

all are such as could not well have been placed in any of the earlier

chapters of the book. The \_General Rule of Syntax\_, since it is not a canon

to be used in parsing, but one that is to be applied only in the correcting

of false syntax, might seem perhaps to belong rather to this order of

notes; but I have chosen to treat it with some peculiar distinction,

because it is not only more comprehensive than any other rule or note, but

is in one respect more important; it is the rule which will be cited for

the correction of the greatest number and variety of errors. Being designed

to meet every possible form of inaccuracy in the mere construction of

sentences,--or, at least, every corrigible solecism by which any principle

of syntax can be violated,--it necessarily includes almost all the other

rules and notes. It is too broad to convey very definite instruction, and

therefore ought not in general to be applied where a more particular rule

or note is clearly applicable. A few examples, not properly fitting under

any other head, will serve to show its use and application: such examples

are given, in great abundance, in the false syntax below. If, in some of

the instances selected, this rule is applied to faults that might as well

have been corrected by some other, the choice, in such cases, is deemed of

little or no importance.

OBS. 4.--The imperfection of \_ancient\_ writing, especially in regard to

division and punctuation, has left the syntactical relation of words, and

also the sense of passages, in no few instances, uncertain; and has

consequently made, where the text has been thought worthy of it, an

abundance of difficult work for translators, critics, and commentators.

Rules of grammar, now made and observed, as they ought to be, may free the

compositions of this, or a future age, from similar embarrassments; and it

is both just and useful, to test our authors by them, criticising or

correcting their known blunders according to the present rules of accurate

writing. But the readers and expounders of what has come to us from remote

time, can be rightly guided only by such principles and facts as have the

stamp of creditable antiquity. Hence there are, undoubtedly, in books, some

errors and defects which have outlived the \_time in which\_, and the

\_authority b which\_, they might have been corrected. As we have no right to

make a man say that which he himself never said or intended to say, so we

have in fact none to fix a positive meaning upon his language, without

knowing for a certainty what he meant by it. Reason, or good sense, which,

as I have suggested, is the foundation of grammar and of all good writing,

is indeed a perpetual as well as a universal principle; but, since the

exercises of our reason must, from the very nature of the faculty, be

limited to what we know and understand, we are not competent to the

positive correction, or to the sure translation, of what is obscure and

disputable in the standard books of antiquity.

OBS. 5.--Let me cite an example: "For all this I considered in my heart,

even to declare all this, that the righteous, and the wise, and their

works, are in the hand of God: no man knoweth either love or hatred \_by\_

all \_that is\_ before them. All \_things come\_ alike to all."--

\_Ecclesiastes\_, ix, 1. Here is, doubtless, \_one\_ error which any English

scholar may point out or correct. The pronoun "\_them\_" should be \_him\_,

because its intended antecedent appears to be "\_man\_," and not "\_the

righteous and the wise\_," going before. But are there not \_other\_ faults in

the version? The common French Bible, in this place, has the following

import: "Surely I have applied my heart to all that, and to unfold all

this; \_to wit\_, that the righteous and the wise, and their actions, \_are\_

in the hand of God and love and hatred; \_and that\_ men know nothing of all

\_that which is\_ before them. All \_happens\_ equally to all." The Latin

Vulgate gives this sense: "All these things have I considered in my heart,

that I might understand them accurately: the righteous and the wise, and

their works, are in the hand of God; and yet man doth not know, whether by

love or by hatred lie may be worthy: but all things in the future are kept

uncertain, so that all may happen alike to the righteous man and to the

wicked." In the Greek of the Septuagint, the introductory members of this

passage are left at the end of the preceding chapter, and are literally

thus: "that all this I received into my heart, and my heart understood all

this." The rest, commencing a new chapter, is as follows: "For the

righteous and the wise and their works \_are\_ in the hand of God, and indeed

both love and hatred man knoweth not: all things before their face \_are\_

vanity to all." Now, which of these several readings is the nearest to what

Solomon meant by the original text, or which is the farthest from it, and

therefore the most faulty, I leave it to men more learned than myself to

decide; but, certainly, there is no \_inspired authority\_ in any of them,

but \_in so far as they convey the sense which he really intended\_. And if

his meaning had not been, by some imperfection in the oldest expression we

have of it, \_obscured and partly lost\_, there could be neither cause nor

excuse for these discrepancies. I say this with no willingness to

depreciate the general authority of the Holy Scriptures, which are for the

most part clear in their import, and very ably translated into English, as

well as into other languages.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER THE GENERAL RULE.

LESSON I.--ARTICLES.

(1.) "An article is a part of speech placed before

nouns."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 11.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the article \_an\_ is here inconsistent with

the term "\_part of speech\_;" for the text declares one thing of a kind to

be the whole kind. But, according to the General Rule of Syntax, "In the

formation of sentences, the consistency and adaptation of all the words

should be carefully observed; and a regular, clear, and correspondent

construction should be preserved throughout." The sentence may be corrected

in two ways, thus: "\_The\_ article is a part of speech placed before

nouns;"--or better, "\_An\_ article is a word placed before nouns." [446]]

(2.) "An article is a part of speech used to limit nouns."--\_Gilbert's

Gram.\_, p. 19. (3.) "An article is a part of speech set before nouns to fix

their vague Signification."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 18. (4.) "An adjective is a

part of speech used to describe a noun."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_, p. 19. (5.) "A

pronoun is a part of speech used instead of a noun."--\_Ibid.\_; and \_Weld's

Gram.\_, pp. 30 and 50; \_Abridg.\_, pp. 29 and 46. (6.) "A Pronoun is a Part

of Speech which is often used instead of a Noun Substantive common, and

supplies the Want of a Noun proper."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 102; \_Buchanan's

Gram.\_, p. 29. (7.) "A verb is a part of speech, which signifies \_to be, to

do, or to be acted upon\_"--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 17. (8.) "A verb

is a part of speech, which signifies \_to be, to act, or to receive an

action\_."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 11. (9.) "A verb is a part of speech by

which any thing is asserted."--\_Weld's Gram\_, p. 50; \_Abridg.\_, 46 and 58.

(10.) "A verb is a part of speech which expresses action, or existence, in

a direct manner."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_, p. 20. (11.) "A participle is a part

of speech derived from a verb, and expresses action or existence in an

indirect manner."--\_Ibid.\_ (12.) "A Participle is a Part of Speech derived

from a Verb, and denotes being, doing, or suffering, and implies Time, as a

Verb does."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 139; \_Buchanan's\_, p. 46. "An adverb is a

part of speech used to add to the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and

participles."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_, p. 20. (14.) "An adverb is an

indeclinable part of speech, added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb,

to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification."--

\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 142; \_Gould's\_, 147. (15.) "An Adverb is a part of

speech joined to a verb, an Adjective, a Participle, and sometimes to

another Adverb, to express the quality or circumstance of it."--\_Ash's

Gram.\_, p. 47, (16.) "An Adverb is a part of speech joined to a Verb,

Adjective, Participle, and sometimes to another Adverb, to express some

circumstances respecting it."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 23. (17.) "An Adverb is a

Part of Speech which is joined to a Verb, Adjective, Participle, or to

another Adverb to express some Modification, or Circumstance, Quality, or

Manner of their Signification."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 61. (18.) "An

Adverb is a part of speech added to a Verb (whence the name), and sometimes

even to another word."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 76. (19.) "A conjunction is a

part of speech used to connect words and sentences."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_, p.

20; \_Weld's\_, 51. (20.) "A Conjunction is a part of speech that joins words

or sentences together."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 43. (21.) "A Conjunction is that

part of speech which connect sentences, or parts of sentences or single

words."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 41. (22.) "A Conjunction is a part of speech,

that is used principally to connect sentences, so as, out of two, three, or

more, sentences, to make one."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 28. (23.) "A

Conjunction is a part of speech that is chiefly used to connect sentences,

joining two or more simple sentences into one compound sentence: it

sometimes connects only words."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 118. (24.) "A

Conjunction is a Part of Speech which joins Sentences together, and shews

the Manner of their Dependance upon one another."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 163;

\_Buchanan's\_, p. 64; \_E. Devis's\_. 103. (25.) "A preposition is a part of

Speech used to show the relation between other words."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_,

p. 20. (26.) "A Preposition is a part of speech which serves to connect

words and show the relation between them."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 42.

(27.) "A \_preposition\_ is a part of speech used to connect words and show

their relation."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p. 51; \_Abridg\_. 47. (28.) "A preposition

is that part of speech which shows the position of persons or things, or

the relation that one noun or pronoun bears toward another."--\_Blair's

Gram.\_, p. 40. (29.) "A Preposition is a Part of Speech, which being added

to any other Parts of Speech serves to shew their State, Relation or

Reference to each other."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 165; \_Buchanan's\_, p. 65.

(30.) "An interjection is a part of speech used to express sudden passion

or emotion."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_, p. 20. (31.) "An interjection is a part of

speech used in giving utterance to some sudden feeling or emotion."--

\_Weld's Gram.\_, pp. 49 and 51; \_Abridg.\_, 44 and 47. (32.) "An Interjection

is that part of speech which denotes any sudden affection or emotion of the

mind."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 42. (33) "An Interjection is a Part of Speech

thrown into discourse, and denotes some sudden Passion or Emotion of the

Soul."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 172; \_Buchanan's\_, p. 67.

(34.) "A scene might tempt some peaceful sage

To rear him a lone hermitage."

--\_Union Poems\_, p. 89.

(35.) "Not all the storms that shake the pole

Can e'er disturb thy halcyon soul,

And smooth th' unaltered brow."

--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 78; \_E. Reader\_, 230.

LESSON II.--NOUNS. "The thrones of every monarchy felt the

shock."--\_Frelinghuysen\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the plural noun \_thrones\_ has not a clear

and regular construction, adapted to the author's meaning. But, according

to the General Rule of Syntax, "In the formation of sentences the

consistency and adaptation of all the words should be carefully observed;

and a regular, clear, and correspondent construction should be preserved

throughout." The sentence may be corrected thus: "The \_throne\_ of every

monarchy felt the shock."]

"These principles ought to be deeply impressed upon the minds of every

American."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 44. "The word \_church\_ and \_shire\_ are

radically the same."--\_Ib.\_, p. 256. "They may not, in their present form,

be readily accommodated to every circumstance belonging to the possessive

cases of nouns."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 53. "\_Will\_, in the second

and third person, only foretels."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "Which seem to form the

true distinction between the subjunctive and the indicative moods."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 208. "The very general approbation, which this performance of Walker has

received from the public."--\_Ib.\_, p. 241. "Lest she carry her improvements

this way too far."--CAMPBELL: \_ib.\_, p. 371. "Charles was extravagant, and

by this means became poor and despicable."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 189.

"We should entertain no prejudices against simple and rustic

persons."--\_Ib.\_, p. 205. "These are indeed the foundations of all solid

merit."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 175. "And his embellishment, by means of

musical cadence, figures, or other parts of speech."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175. "If he

is at no pains to engage us by the employment of figures, musical

arrangement, or any other art of writing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 181. "The most

eminent of the sacred poets are, the Author of the book of Job, David and

Isaiah."--\_Ib.\_, p. 418. "Nothing, in any poet, is more beautifully

described than the death of old Priam."--\_Ib.\_, p. 439. "When two vowels

meet together, and are sounded at one breath, they are called

\_diphthongs\_."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 10. "How many \_ss\_ would goodness

then end with? Three."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. "\_Birds\_ is a noun, the name of a

thing or creature."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 53. "Adam gave names to every

living creature."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 5. "The steps of a stair

ought to be accommodated to the human figure."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol.

ii, p. 337. "Nor ought an emblem more than a simile to be founded on low or

familiar objects."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii. p. 357. "Whatever the Latin has not

from the Greek, it has from the Goth."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. ii, p.

450. "The mint and secretary of state's offices are neat buildings."--\_The

Friend\_, Vol. iv, p. 266. "The scenes of dead and still life are apt to

pall upon us."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 407. "And Thomas Aquinas and Duns

Scotus, the angelical and the subtle doctors, are the brightest stars in

the scholastic constellation."--\_Literary Hist.\_, p. 244. "The English

language has three methods of distinguishing the sex."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 38; \_Ingersoll's\_, 27; \_Alger's\_, 16; \_Bacon's\_, 13; \_Fisk's\_, 58;

\_Greenleaf's\_, 21. "The English language has three methods of

distinguishing sex."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 44. "In English there are the

three following methods of distinguishing sex."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 26.

"There are three ways of distinguishing the sex."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 10;

\_Picket's\_, 26; \_Bullions's\_, 10. "There are three ways of distinguishing

sex."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 26. "Gender is distinguished in three

ways."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 2. "Neither discourse in general, nor poetry

in particular, can be called altogether imitative arts."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 51.

"Do we for this the gods and conscience brave,

That one may rule and make the rest a slave?"

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. ii, l. 96.

LESSON III.--ADJECTIVES.

"There is a deal of more heads, than either heart or horns."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, i, 234.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adjective \_more\_ has not a clear and

regular construction, adapted to the author's meaning. But, according to

the General Rule of Syntax, "In the formation of sentences, the consistency

and adaptation of all the words should be carefully observed; and a

regular, clear, and correspondent construction should be preserved

throughout." The sentence may be corrected thus: "There is a deal \_more\_ of

heads, than \_of\_ either heart or horns."]

"For, of all villains, I think he has the wrong name."--\_Bunyan's P. P.\_,

p. 86. "Of all the men that I met in my pilgrimage, he, I think bears the

wrong name."--\_Ib.\_, p. 84. "I am surprized to see so much of the

distribution, and technical terms of the Latin grammar, retained in the

grammar of our tongue."--\_Priestley's Gram., Pref.\_, p. vi. "Nor did the

Duke of Burgundy bring him the smallest assistance."--HUME: \_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 178. "Else he will find it difficult to make one obstinate

believe him."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 243. "Are there any adjectives

which form the degrees of comparison peculiar to themselves?"--\_Infant

School Gram.\_, p. 46. "Yet the verbs are all of the indicative

mood."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 33. "The word \_candidate\_ is in the absolute

case."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 155. "An Iambus has the first syllable

unaccented, and the latter accented."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 108; \_Smith's

New Gram.\_, 188. "A Dactyl has the first syllable accented, and the two

latter unaccented."--\_L. Murray\_, p. 253; \_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, 170;

\_Smith's\_, 188; \_Kirkham's\_, 219; \_Guy's\_, 120; \_Blair's\_, 118;

\_Merchant's\_, 167; \_Russell's\_, 109. "It is proper to begin with a capital

the first word of every book, chapter, letter, note, or any other piece of

writing."--\_L. Murray\_, p. 284; \_R. C. Smith's New Gram.\_, 192;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 295; \_Comly's\_, 166; \_Merchant's\_, 14; \_Greenleaf's\_, 42;

\_D. C. Allen's\_, 85; \_Fisk's\_, 159; \_Bullions's\_, 158; \_Kirkham's\_, 219;

\_Hiley's\_, 119; \_Weld's Abridged\_, 16; \_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract.\_, 16;

\_Fowler's E. Gr.\_, 674. "Five and seven make twelve, and one makes

thirteen."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 227. "I wish to cultivate a farther

acquaintance with you."--\_Ib.\_, p. 272. "Let us consider the proper means

to effect our purpose."--\_Ib.\_, p. 276. "Yet they are of such a similar

nature, as readily to mix and blend."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 48. "The Latin

is formed on the same model, but more imperfect."--\_Ib.\_, p. 83. "I know

very well how much pains have been taken."--\_Sir W. Temple\_. "The

management of the breath requires a good deal of care."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 331. "Because the mind, during such a momentary stupefaction, is in a

good measure, if not totally, insensible."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i,

p. 222. "Motives alone of reason and interest are not sufficient."--\_Ib.\_,

Vol. i, p. 232. "To render the composition distinct in its parts, and

striking on the whole,"--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 333. "\_A\_ and \_an\_ are named

indefinite because they denote some one thing of a kind."--\_Maunder's

Gram.\_, p. 1. "\_The\_ is named definite, because it points out some

particular thing."--\_Ibid.\_ "So much depends upon the proper construction

of sentences, that, in every sort of composition, we cannot be too strict

in our attention to it."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 103. "All sort of declamation

and public speaking, was carried on by them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "The first

has on many occasions, a sublimity to which the latter never

attains."--\_Ib.\_, p. 440. "When the words \_therefore, consequently,

accordingly\_, and the like are used in connexion with other conjunctions,

they are adverbs."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 88. "Rude nations make little or

no allusions to the productions of the arts."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 10.

"While two of her maids knelt on either side of her."--\_Mirror\_, xi, 307.

"The third personal pronouns differ from each other in meaning and use, as

follows."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, p. 65. "It was happy for the state, that

Fabius continued in the command with Minucius: the former's phlegm was a

check upon the latter's vivacity."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 57. "If it

should be objected that the words must and ought, in the preceding

sentences, are all in the present tense."--\_Ib.\_, p. 108. "But it will be

well if you turn to them, every now and then."--\_Buckets Classical Gram.\_,

p. 6. "That every part should have a dependence on, and mutually contribute

to support each other."--\_Rollin's Hist.\_, ii, 115. "The phrase, '\_Good, my

Lord\_,' is not common, and low."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 110.

"That brother should not war with brother,

And worry and devour each other."--\_Cowper\_.

LESSON IV.--PRONOUNS.

"If I can contribute to your and my country's glory."--\_Goldsmith\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pronoun \_your\_ has not a clear and

regular construction, adapted to the author's meaning. But, according to

the General Rule of Syntax, "In the formation of sentences, the consistency

and adaptation of all the words should be carefully observed; and a

regular, clear, and correspondent construction should be preserved

throughout." The sentence, having a doubtful or double meaning, may be

corrected in two ways, thus: "If I can contribute to our country's

glory;"--or, "If I can contribute to your \_glory\_ and \_that of my

country\_."]

"As likewise of the several subjects, which have in effect each their

verb."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 120. "He is likewise required to make examples

himself."--\_J. Flint's Gram.\_, p. 3. "If the emphasis be placed wrong, we

shall pervert and confound the meaning wholly."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

242. "If the emphasis be placed wrong, we pervert and confound the meaning

wholly."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 330. "It was this that characterized the

great men of antiquity; it is this, which must distinguish moderns who

would tread in their steps."--\_Ib.\_, p. 341. "I am a great enemy to

implicit faith, as well the Popish as Presbyterian, who in that are much

what alike."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 280. "Will he thence dare to say the

apostle held another Christ than he that died?"--\_Ib.\_, iii, 414. "What

need you be anxious about this event?"--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 188. "If

a substantive can be placed after the verb, it is active."--\_Alex. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 31 "When we see bad men honoured and prosperous in the world, it

is some discouragement to virtue."--\_L. Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 224. "It is

a happiness to young persons, when they are preserved from the snares of

the world, as in a garden enclosed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. "The court of Queen

Elizabeth, which was but another name for prudence and economy."--

\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 24. "It is no wonder if such a man did not shine

at the court of Queen Elizabeth, who was but another name for prudence and

economy. Here which ought to be used, and not who."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 99; \_Fowler's\_, §488. "Better thus; Whose name was but another word for

prudence, &c."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 157; \_Fish's\_, 115; Ingersoll's, 221;

Smith's, 133; and others. "A Defective verb is one that wants some of its

parts. They are chiefly the Auxiliary and Impersonal verbs."--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, p. 31; \_Old Editions\_, 32. "Some writers have given our moods a

much greater extent than we have assigned to them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

p. 67. "The Personal Pronouns give information which no other words are

capable of conveying."--\_M'Culloch's Gram.\_, p. 37, "When the article \_a,

an\_, or \_the\_ precedes the participle, it also becomes a noun."--

\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 93. "There is a preference to be given to

some of these, which custom and judgment must determine."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 107. "Many writers affect to subjoin to any word the

preposition with which it is compounded, or the idea of which it

implies."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200; \_Priestley's Gram.\_, 157.

"Say, dost thou know Tectidius?--Who, the wretch

Whose lands beyond the Sabines largely stretch?"

--\_Dryden's IV Sat. of Pers.\_

LESSON V.--VERBS.

"We would naturally expect, that the word \_depend\_, would require \_from\_

after it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 201. "A dish which they pretend to be

made of emerald."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 198. "For the very nature of a

sentence implies one proposition to be expressed."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

106. "Without a careful attention to the sense, we would be naturally led,

by the rules of syntax, to refer it to the rising and setting of the

sun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 105. "For any rules that can be given, on this subject,

are very general."--\_Ib.\_, p. 125. "He is in the right, if eloquence were

what he conceives it to be."--\_Ib.\_, p. 234. "There I would prefer a more

free and diffuse manner."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178. "Yet that they also agreed and

resembled one another, in certain qualities."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73. "But since he

must restore her, he insists to have another in her place."--\_Ib.\_, p. 431.

"But these are far from being so frequent or so common as has been

supposed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 445. "We are not misled to assign a wrong place to

the pleasant or painful feelings." \_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Introd., p.

xviii. "Which are of greater importance than is commonly thought."--Vol.

ii, p. 92. "Since these qualities are both coarse and common, lets find out

the mark of a man of probity."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_, p. 40. "Cicero did

what no man had ever done before him, draw up a treatise of consolation for

himself."--\_Life of Cicero\_. "Then there can be no other Doubt remain of

the Truth."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 245. "I have observed some satirists

use the term."--\_Bullions's Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 79. "Such men are ready

to despond, or commence enemies."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 83. "Common nouns

express names common to many things."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 18. "To

make ourselves be heard by one to whom we address ourselves."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 328. "That, in reading poetry, he may be the better able to

judge of its correctness, and relish its beauties."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

252. "On the stretch to comprehend, and keep pace with the author."--

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 150. "For it might have been sold for more than three

hundred pence, and have been given to the poor."--\_Mark\_, xiv, 5. "He is a

beam that is departed, and left no streak of light behind."--OSSIAN:

\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 262. "No part of this incident ought to have

been represented, but reserved for a narrative."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 294. "The rulers and people debauching themselves, brings ruin on a

country."--\_Ware's Gram.\_, p. 9. "When \_Doctor, Miss, Master, &c.\_, is

prefixed to a name, the last of the two words is commonly made plural; as,

the \_Doctor Nettletons\_--the two \_Miss Hudsons\_."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 106. "Wherefore that field was called, The field of blood, unto this

day."--\_Matt.\_, xxvii, 8. "To comprehend the situations of other countries,

which perhaps may be necessary for him to explore."--\_Brown's Estimate\_,

ii, 111. "We content ourselves, now, with fewer conjunctive particles than

our ancestors did."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 139. "And who will be chiefly

liable to make mistakes where others have been mistaken before

them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 156. "The voice of nature and revelation

unites."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, 3d Ed., p. 307.

"This adjective you see we can't admit,

But changed to \_worse\_, will make it just and fit."

--\_Tobitt's Gram.\_, p. 63.

LESSON VI.--PARTICIPLES.

"Its application is not arbitrary, depending on the caprice of

readers."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 246. "This is the more

expedient, from the work's being designed for the benefit of private

learners."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 161. "A man, he tells us, ordered by his

will, to have erected for him a statue."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 106. "From

some likeness too remote, and laying too far out of the road of ordinary

thought."--\_Ib.\_, p. 146. "Money is a fluid in the commercial world,

rolling from hand to hand."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 123. "He pays much

attention to learning and singing songs."--\_Ib.\_ p. 246. "I would not be

understood to consider singing songs as criminal."--"It is a decided case

by the Great Master of writing."--\_Preface to Waller\_, p. 5. "Did they ever

bear a testimony against writing books?"--\_Bates's Misc. Repository\_.

"Exclamations are sometimes mistaking for interrogations."--\_Hist. of

Printing\_, 1770. "Which cannot fail proving of service."--\_Smith's

Printer's Gram.\_ "Hewn into such figures as would make them easily and

firmly incorporated."--BEATTIE: \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 126. "Following the

rule and example are practical inductive questions."--\_J. Flint's Gram.\_,

p. 3. "I think there will be an advantage in my having collected examples

from modern writings."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, Pref., p. xi. "He was eager of

recommending it to his fellow-citizens."--HUME: p. 160. "The good lady was

careful of serving me of every thing."--"No revelation would have been

given, had the light of nature been sufficient in such a sense, as to

render one not wanting and useless."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 155.

"Description, again is the raising in the mind the conception of an object

by means of some arbitrary or instituted symbols."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 52.

"Disappointing the expectation of the hearers, when they look for our being

done."--\_Ib.\_ p. 326. "There is a distinction which, in the use of them, is

deserving of attention."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 15. "A model has been

contrived, which is not very expensive, and easily managed."--\_Education

Reporter\_. "The conspiracy was the more easily discovered, from its being

known to many."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 191. "That celebrated work had been

nearly ten years published, before its importance was at all

understood."--\_Ib.\_ p. 220. "The sceptre's being ostensibly grasped by a

female hand, does not reverse the general order of Government."--\_West's

Letters to a Lady\_, p. 43. "I have hesitated signing the Declaration of

Sentiments."--\_Liberator\_, x, 16. "The prolonging of men's lives when the

world needed to be peopled, and now shortening them when that necessity

hath ceased to exist."--\_Brown's Divinity\_, p. 7. "Before the performance

commences, we have displayed the insipid formalities of the prelusive

scene."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 23. "It forbade the lending of money, or

sending goods, or in any way embarking capital in transactions connected

with that foreign traffic."--LORD BROUGHAM: \_B. and F. Anti-Slavery

Reporter\_, Vol. ii, p. 218. "Even abstract ideas have sometimes conferred

upon them the same important prerogative."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 171.

"Like other terminations, \_ment\_ changes \_y\_ into \_i\_, when preceded by a

consonant."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_, p. xiii; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 24:

\_Ingersoll's\_, 11. "The term \_proper\_ is from being \_proper\_, that is,

\_peculiar\_ to the individual bearing the name. The term \_common\_ is from

being \_common\_ to every individual comprised in the class."--\_Fowler's E.

Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, §139.

"Thus oft by mariners are shown (Unless the men of Kent are liars)

Earl Godwin's castles overflown, And palace-roofs, and steeple-spires."

--\_Swift\_, p. 313.

LESSON VII.--ADVERBS.

"He spoke to every man and woman there."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 220;

\_Fisk's\_, 147. "Thought and language act and react upon each other

mutually."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 120; \_Murray's Exercises\_, 133. "Thought

and expression act upon each other mutually."--See \_Murray's Key\_, p. 264.

"They have neither the leisure nor the means of attaining scarcely any

knowledge, except what lies within the contracted circle of their several

professions."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 359. "Before they are capable of

understanding but little, or indeed any thing of many other branches of

education."--\_Olney's Introd. to Geog.\_, p. 5. "There is not more beauty in

one of them than in another."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 275. "Which appear not

constructed according to any certain rule."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 47. "The

vehement manner of speaking became not so universal."--\_Ib.\_, p. 61. "All

languages, however, do not agree in this mode of expression."--\_Ib.\_, p.

77. "The great occasion of setting aside this particular day."--ATTERBURY:

p. 294. "He is much more promising now than formerly."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

Vol. ii, p. 4. "They are placed before a participle, independently on the

rest of the sentence."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 21. "This opinion appears to be

not well considered."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 153; \_Ingersoll's\_, 249.

"Precision in language merits a full explication; and the more, because

distinct ideas are, perhaps, not commonly formed about it."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 94. "In the more sublime parts of poetry, he [Pope] is not so

distinguished."--\_Ib.\_, p. 403. "How far the author was altogether happy in

the choice of his subject, may be questioned."--\_Ib.\_, p. 450. "But here

also there is a great error in the common practice."--\_Webster's Essays\_,

p. 7. "This order is the very order of the human mind, which makes things

we are sensible of, a means to come at those that are not so."--\_Formey's

Belles-Lettres, Foreman's Version\_, p. 113. "Now, Who is not Discouraged,

and Fears Want, when he has no money?"--\_Divine Right of Tythes\_, p. 23.

"Which the Authors of this work, consider of but little or no

use."--\_Wilbur and Livingston's Gram.\_, p. 6. "And here indeed the

distinction between these two classes begins not to be clear."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 152. "But this is a manner which deserves not to be

imitated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 180. "And in this department a person never effects

so little, as when he attempts too much."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 173;

\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 367. "The verb that signifies merely being, is

neuter."--\_Dr. Ash's Gram.\_, p. 27. "I hope not much to tire those whom I

shall not happen to please."--\_Rambler\_, No. 1. "Who were utterly unable to

pronounce some letters, and others very indistinctly."--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. 32. "The learner may point out the active, passive, and

neuter verbs in the following examples, and state the reasons why."--\_C.

Adams's Gram.\_, p. 27. "These words are most always conjunctions."--\_S.

Barrett's Revised Gram.\_, p. 73.

"How fluent nonsense trickles from his tongue!

How sweet the periods, neither said, nor sung!"--\_Dunciad\_.

LESSON VIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

"Who at least either knew not, nor loved to make, a distinction."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of Europ. Lang.\_, i, 322. "It is childish in the last

degree, if this become the ground of estranged affection."--\_L. Murray's

Key\_, ii, 228. "When the regular or the irregular verb is to be preferred,

p. 107."--\_Murray's Index, Gram.\_, ii, 296. "The books were to have been

sold, as this day."--\_Priestley's E. Gram.\_, p. 138. "Do, an if you

will."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 195. "If a man had a positive idea of

infinite, either duration or space, he could add two infinites

together."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 174. "None shall more willingly agree

and advance the same nor I."--EARL OF MORTON: \_Robertson's Scotland\_, ii,

428. "That it cannot be but hurtful to continue it."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i,

192. "A conjunction joins words and sentences."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, pp. 4 and

25. "The copulative conjunction connects words and sentences together and

continues the sense."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 42. "The Conjunction

Copulative serves to connect or continue a sentence, by expressing an

addition, a supposition, a cause, &c."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, i, 123. "All

Construction is either true or apparent; or in other Words just and

figurative."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 130; \_British Gram.\_, 234. "But the

divine character is such that none but a divine hand could draw."--\_The

Friend\_, Vol. v, p. 72. "Who is so mad, that, on inspecting the heavens, is

insensible of a God?"--CICERO:--\_Dr. Gibbons\_. "It is now submitted to an

enlightened public, with little desire on the part of the Author, than its

general utility."--\_Town's Analysis\_, 9th Ed., p. 5. "This will

sufficiently explain the reason, that so many provincials have grown old in

the capital without making any change in their original

dialect."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 51. "Of these they had chiefly three

in general use, which were denominated accents, and the term used in the

plural number."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. "And this is one of the chief reasons, that

dramatic representations have ever held the first rank amongst the

diversions of mankind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 95. "Which is the chief reason that

public reading is in general so disgusting."--\_Ib.\_, p. 96. "At the same

time that they learn to read."--\_Ib.\_, p. 96. "He is always to pronounce

his words exactly with the same accent that he speaks them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98.

"In order to know what another knows, and in the same manner that he knows

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 136. "For the same reason that it is in a more limited

state assigned to the several tribes of animals."--\_Ib.\_, p. 145. "Were

there masters to teach this, in the same manner as other arts are

taught."--\_Ib.\_, p. 169.

"Whose own example strengthens all his laws;

And is himself that great Sublime he draws."--\_Pope, on Crit.\_, l. 680.

LESSON IX.--PREPOSITIONS.

"The word \_so\_ has, sometimes, the same meaning with \_also, likewise, the

same\_."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 137. "The verb \_use\_ relates not to

pleasures of the imagination, but to the terms of fancy and imagination,

which he was to employ as synonymous."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 197. "It never

can view, clearly and distinctly, above one object at a time."--\_Ib.\_, p.

94. "This figure [Euphemism] is often the same with the

Periphrasis."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 247; \_Gould's\_, 238. "All the between

time of youth and old age."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 83. "When one thing

is said to act upon, or do something to another."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 70.

"Such a composition has as much of meaning in it, as a mummy has

life."--\_Journal of Lit. Convention\_, p. 81. "That young men of from

fourteen to eighteen were not the best judges."--\_Ib.\_, p. 130. "This day

is a day of trouble, and of rebuke, and blasphemy."--\_2 Kings\_, xix, 3.

"Blank verse has the same pauses and accents with rhyme."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, ii, 119. "In prosody, long syllables are distinguished by ([=]),

and short ones by what is called \_breve\_ ([~])."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 22.

"Sometimes both articles are left out, especially in poetry."--\_Ib.\_, p.

26. "In the following example, the pronoun and participle are omitted: [\_He

being\_] 'Conscious of his own weight and importance, the aid of others was

not solicited.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 221. "He was an excellent

person; a mirror of ancient faith in early youth."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

172. "The carrying on its several parts into execution."--\_Butler's

Analogy\_, p. 192. "Concord, is the agreement which one word has over

another, in gender, number, case, and person."--\_Folker's Gram.\_, p. 3. "It

might perhaps have given me a greater taste of its antiquities."--ADDISON:

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 160. "To call of a person, and to wait of

him."--\_Priestley, ib.\_, p. 161. "The great difficulty they found of fixing

just sentiments."--HUME: \_ib.\_, p. 161. "Developing the difference between

the three."--\_James Brown's first American Gram.\_, p. 12. "When the

substantive singular ends in \_x, ch\_ soft, \_sh, ss\_, or \_s\_, we add \_es\_ in

the plural."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 40. "We shall present him with a list or

specimen of them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 132. "It is very common to hear of the evils

of pernicious reading, of how it enervates the mind, or how it depraves the

principles."--\_Dymond's Essays\_, p. 168. "In this example, the verb

'arises' is understood before 'curiosity' and 'knowledge.'"--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 274; \_Ingersoll's\_, 286; \_Comly's\_, 155; and others. "The

connective is frequently omitted between several words."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_,

p. 81. "He shall expel them from before you, and drive them from out of

your sight."--\_Joshua\_, xxiii, 5. "Who makes his sun shine and his rain to

descend upon the just and the unjust."--\_M'Ilvaine's Lectures\_, p. 411.

LESSON X.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"This sentence violates the rules of grammar."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol.

ii, pp. 19 and 21. "The words \_thou\_ and \_shalt\_ are again reduced to short

quantities."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 246. "Have the greater men always been the

most popular? By no means."--DR. LIEBER: \_Lit. Conv.\_, p. 64. "St. Paul

positively stated that, 'he who loves one another has fulfilled the

law.'"--\_Spurzheim, on Education\_, p. 248. "More than one organ is

concerned in the utterance of almost every consonant."--\_M'Culloch's

Gram.\_, p. 18. "If the reader will pardon my descending so

low."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 20. "To adjust them so, as shall consist

equally with the perspicuity and the grace of the period."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 118: \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 324. "This class exhibits a

lamentable want of simplicity and inefficiency."--\_Gardiner's Music of

Nature\_, p. 481. "Whose style flows always like a limpid stream, where we

see to the very bottom."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 93. "Whose style flows always

like a limpid stream, through which we see to the very bottom."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 293. "We make use of the ellipsis." [447]--\_Ib.\_, p. 217.

"The ellipsis of the article is thus used."--\_Ib.\_, p. 217. "Sometimes the

ellipsis is improperly applied to nouns of different numbers: as, 'A

magnificent house and gardens.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 218. "In some very emphatic

expressions, the ellipsis should not be used."--\_Ib.\_, 218. "The ellipsis

of the adjective is used in the following manner."--\_Ib.\_, 218. "The

following is the ellipsis of the pronoun."--\_Ib.\_, 218. "The ellipsis of

the verb is used in the following instances."--\_Ib.\_, p. 219. "The ellipsis

of the adverb is used in the following manner."--\_Ib.\_, 219. "The following

instances, though short, contain much of the ellipsis."--\_Ib.\_, 220. "If no

emphasis be placed on any words, not only will discourse be rendered heavy

and lifeless, but the meaning often ambiguous."--\_Ib.\_, 242. See \_Hart's

Gram.\_, p. 172. "If no emphasis be placed on any words, not only is

discourse, rendered heavy and lifeless, but the meaning left often

ambiguous."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 330; \_Murray's Eng. Reader\_, p. xi. "He

regards his word, but thou dost not regard it."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p.

129; \_his Analytical and Practical Gram.\_, p. 196. "He regards his word,

but thou dost not: i.e. dost not regard it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

219; \_Parker and Fox's\_, p. 96; \_Weld's\_, 192. "I have learned my task, but

you have not; i.e. have not learned."--\_Ib., Mur.\_, 219; &c. "When the

omission of words would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be

attended with an impropriety, they must be expressed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 217;

\_Weld's Gram.\_ 190. "And therefore the verb is correctly put in the

singular number, and refers to the whole separately and individually

considered."--\_Murray's Gram.\_ 8vo, ii, 24 and 190. "I understood him the

best of all who spoke on the subject."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 192. "I

understood him better than any other who spoke on the subject."--\_Ibid.\_,

"The roughness found on our entrance into the paths of virtue and learning,

grow smoother as we advance."--\_Ib.\_, p. 171. "The roughnesses,"

&c.--\_Murray's Key\_, 12mo, p 8. "Nothing promotes knowledge more than

steady application, and a habit of observation."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

265. "Virtue confers supreme dignity on man: and should be his chief

desire."--\_Ib.\_, p. 192; \_and Merchant's\_, 192. "The Supreme author of our

being has so formed the soul of man, that nothing but himself can be its

last, adequate, and proper happiness."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 413;

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 213. "The inhabitants of China laugh at the plantations

of our Europeans; because, they say, any one may place trees in equal rows

and uniform figures."--\_Ad., Spect.\_, No. 414; \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 222.

"The divine laws are not reversible by those of men."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii,

167. "In both of these examples, the relative and the verb \_which was\_, are

understood."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 273; \_Comly's\_, 152; \_Ingersoll's\_, 285.

"The Greek and Latin languages, though, for many reasons, they cannot be

called dialects of one another, are nevertheless closely connected."--\_Dr.

Murray's Hist. of European Lang.\_, Vol. ii, p. 51. "To ascertain and settle

which, of a white rose or a red rose, breathes the sweetest

fragrance."--\_J. Q. Adams, Orat.\_, 1831. "To which he can afford to devote

much less of his time and labour."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 254.

"Avoid extremes; and shun the fault of such,

Who still are pleas'd too little or too much."

--\_Pope, on Crit.\_, 1, 384.

LESSON XI.--BAD PHRASES.

"He had as good leave his vessel to the direction of the winds."--SOUTH:

\_in Joh. Dict.\_ "Without good nature and gratitude, men had as good live in

a wilderness as in society."--L'ESTRANGE: \_ib.\_ "And for this reason such

lines almost never occur together."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 385. "His being a

great man did not make him a happy man."--\_Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 288.

"Let that which tends to the making cold your love be judged in all."--\_S.

Crisp\_. "It is worthy the observing, that there is no passion in the mind

of man so weak but it mates and masters the fear of death."--\_Bacon's

Essays\_, p. 4. "Accent dignifies the syllable on which it is laid, and

makes it more distinguished by the ear than the rest."--\_Sheridan's Lect.\_,

p. 80; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 244. "Before he proceeds to argue either

on one side or other."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 313. "The change in general of

manners throughout all Europe."--\_Ib.\_, p. 375. "The sweetness and beauty

of Virgil's numbers, throughout his whole works."--\_Ib.\_, p. 440. "The

French writers of sermons study neatness and elegance in laying down their

heads."--\_Ib.\_, p. 13. "This almost never fails to prove a refrigerant to

passion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 321. "At least their fathers, brothers, and uncles,

cannot, as good relations and good citizens, dispense with their not

standing forth to demand vengeance."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. i, p. 191.

"Alleging, that their crying down the church of Rome, was a joining hand

with the Turks."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 239. "To which is added the

Assembly of Divines Catechism."--\_New-England Primer\_, p. 1. "This

treachery was always present in both their thoughts."--\_Dr. Robertson\_.

"Thus far both their words agree." ("\_Convenient adhuo utriusqus verba\_.

Plaut.")--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 125. "Aparithmesis, or Enumeration, is

the branching out into several parts of what might be expressed in fewer

words."--\_Gould's Gram\_, p. 241. "Aparithmesis, or Enumeration, is when

what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several

parts."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 251. "Which may sit from time to time where you

dwell or in the neighbouring vicinity."--\_Taylor's District School\_, 1st

Ed., p. 281. "Place together a large and a small sized animal of the same

species."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 235. "The weight of the swimming body

is equal to that of the weight, of the quantity of fluid displaced by

it."--\_Percival's Tales\_, ii, 213. "The Subjunctive mood, in all its

tenses, is similar to that of the Optative."--\_Gwilt's Saxon Gram.\_, p. 27.

"No other feeling of obligation remains, except that of

fidelity."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, 1st Ed., p. 82. "Who asked him,

'What could be the reason, that whole audiences should be moved to tears,

at the representation of some story on the stage.'"--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. 175. "Art not thou and you ashamed to affirm, that the best

works of the Spirit of Christ in his saints are as filthy

rags?"--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 174. "A neuter verb becomes active, when

followed by a noun of the same signification with its own."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 127. "But he has judged better, in omitting to repeat the

article \_the\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 194. "Many objects please us as highly

beautiful, which have almost no variety at all."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. "Yet

notwithstanding, they sometimes follow them."--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p. 21.

"For I know of nothing more material in all the whole Subject, than this

doctrine of Mood and Tense."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 292. "It is by no

means impossible for an errour to be got rid of or supprest."--

\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 642. "These are things of the highest

importance to the growing age."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 250. "He had

better have omitted the word \_many\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_ p. 205. "Which had

better have been separated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 225. "Figures and metaphors,

therefore, should, on no occasion be stuck on too profusely."--\_Ib.\_, p.

144; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 150. "Metaphors, as well as other figures, should

on no occasion, be stuck on too profusely."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 338;

\_Russell's\_, 136. "Something like this has been reproached to

Tacitus."--BOLINGBROKE: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 164.

"O thou, whom all mankind in vain withstand,

Each of whose blood must one day stain thy hand!"

--\_Sheffield's Temple of Death\_.

LESSON XII.--TWO ERRORS.[448]

"Pronouns are sometimes made to precede the things which they

represent."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 160. "Most prepositions originally denote

the relation of place."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 65. "\_Which\_ is applied to

inferior animals and things without life."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 24;

\_Pract. Lessons\_, 30. "What noun do they describe or tell the

kind?"--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 41. "Iron cannon, as well as brass, is

now universally cast solid."--\_Jamieson's Dict.\_ "We have philosophers,

eminent and conspicuous, perhaps, beyond any nation."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

251. "This is a question about words alone, and which common sense easily

determines."--\_Ib.\_, p. 320. "The low [pitch of the voice] is, when he

approaches to a whisper."--\_Ib.\_, p. 328. "Which, as to the effect, is just

the same with using no such distinctions at all."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. "These two

systems, therefore, differ in reality very little from one

another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "It were needless to give many instances, as they

occur so often."--\_Ib.\_, p. 109. "There are many occasions when this is

neither requisite nor would be proper."--\_Ib.\_, p. 311. "Dramatic poetry

divides itself into the two forms, of comedy or tragedy."--\_Ib.\_, p. 452.

"No man ever rhymed truer and evener than he."--\_Pref. to Waller\_, p. 5.

"The Doctor did not reap a profit from his poetical labours equal to those

of his prose."--\_Johnson's Life of Goldsmith\_. "We will follow that which

we found our fathers practice."--\_Sale's Koran\_, i, 28. "And I would deeply

regret having published them."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. vii. "Figures

exhibit ideas in a manner more vivid and impressive, than could be done by

plain language."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 222. "The allegory is finely drawn,

only the heads various."--\_Spect.\_, No. 540. "I should not have thought it

worthy a place here."--\_Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 219. "In this style,

Tacitus excels all writers, ancient and modern."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_,

ii, 261. "No author, ancient or modern, possesses the art of dialogue equal

to Shakspeare."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 294. "The names of every thing we hear, see,

smell, taste, and feel, are nouns."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 16. "What

number are these boys? these pictures? &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "This sentence

is faulty, somewhat in the same manner with the last."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

230. "Besides perspicuity, he pursues propriety, purity, and precision, in

his language; which forms one degree, and no inconsiderable one, of

beauty."--\_Ib.\_, p. 181. "Many critical terms have unfortunately been

employed in a sense too loose and vague; none more so, than that of the

sublime."--\_Ib.\_, p. 35. "Hence, no word in the language is used in a more

vague signification than beauty."--\_Ib.\_, p. 45. "But, still, he made use

only of general terms in speech."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73. "These give life, body,

and colouring to the recital of facts, and enable us to behold them as

present, and passing before our eyes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 360. "Which carried an

ideal chivalry to a still more extravagant height than it had risen in

fact."--\_Ib.\_, p. 374. "We write much more supinely, and at our ease, than

the ancients."--\_Ib.\_, p. 351. "This appears indeed to form the

characteristical difference between the ancient poets, orators, and

historians, compared with the modern."--\_Ib.\_, p. 350. "To violate this

rule, as is too often done by the English, shews great incorrectness."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 463. "It is impossible, by means of any study to avoid their

appearing stiff and forced."--\_Ib.\_, p. 335. "Besides its giving the

speaker the disagreeable appearance of one who endeavours to compel

assent."--\_Ib.\_, p. 328. "And, on occasions where a light or ludicrous

anecdote is proper to be recorded, it is generally better to throw it into

a note, than to hazard becoming too familiar."--\_Ib.\_, p. 359. "The great

business of this life is to prepare, and qualify us, for the enjoyment of a

better."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 373. "In some dictionaries,

accordingly, it was omitted; and in others stigmatized as a barbarism."--

\_Crombie's Treatise\_, p. 322. "You cannot see, or think of, a thing, unless

it be a noun."--\_Mack's Gram.\_, p. 65. "The fleet are all arrived and

moored in safety."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, 185.

LESSON XIII.--TWO ERRORS.

"They have each their distinct and exactly-limited relation to

gravity."--\_Hasler's Astronomy\_, p 219. "But in cases which would give too

much of the hissing sound, the omission takes place even in

prose."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 175. "After \_o\_ it [the \_w\_] is

sometimes not sounded at all; sometimes like a single \_u\_."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 3. "It is situation chiefly which decides \_of\_ the fortunes and

characters of men."--HUME: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 159. "It is situation

chiefly which decides the fortune (or, \_concerning\_ the fortune) and

characters of men."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 201. "The vice of

covetousness is what enters deeper into the soul than any other."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 167; \_Ingersoll's\_, 193; \_Fisk's\_, 103; \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, 205.

"Covetousness, of all vices, enters the deepest into the soul."--\_Murray\_,

167; \_and others\_. "Covetousness is what of all vices enters the deepest

into the soul."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 205. "The vice of covetousness is

what enters deepest into the soul of any other."--\_Guardian\_, No. 19.

"\_Would\_ primarily denotes inclination of will; and \_should\_, obligation;

but they both vary their import, and are often used to express simple

event."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 43; \_Murray's\_, 89; \_Fisk's\_, 78;

\_Greenleaf's\_, 27. "But they both vary their import, and are often used to

express simple events."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 39; \_Ingersoll's\_, 137. "But

they vary their import, and are often used to express simple event."--\_Abel

Flint's Gram.\_, p 42. "A double conjunctive, in two correspondent clauses

of a sentence, is sometimes made use of: as, '\_Had\_ he done this, he \_had\_

escaped.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 213; \_Ingersoll's\_, 269. "The

pleasures of the understanding are preferable to those of the imagination,

or of sense."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 191. "Claudian, in a fragment upon

the wars of the giants, has contrived to render this idea of their throwing

the mountains, which is in itself so grand, burlesque, and

ridiculous."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 42. "To which not only no other writings

are to be preferred, but even in divers respects not comparable."--

\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 53. "To distinguish them in the understanding, and

treat of their several natures, in the same cool manner as we do with

regard to other ideas."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 137. "For it has

nothing to do with parsing, or analyzing, language."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

19. Or: "For it has nothing to do with parsing, or analyzing,

language."--\_Ib., Second Edition\_, p. 16. "Neither was that language [the

Latin] ever so vulgar in Britain."--SWIFT: see \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 228.

"All that I propose is to give some openings into the pleasures of

taste."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. "But it would have been better omitted in the

following sentences."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 210. "But I think it had

better be omitted in the following sentence."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 162.

"They appear, in this case, like excrescences jutting out from the body,

which had better have been wanted."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 326. "And

therefore, the fable of the Harpies, in the third book of the Æneid, and

the allegory of Sin and Death, in the second book of Paradise Lost, had

been better omitted in these celebrated poems."--\_Ib.\_, p. 430. "Ellipsis

is an elegant Suppression (or the leaving out) of a Word, or Words in a

Sentence."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 234; \_Buchanan's\_, p. 131. "The article \_a\_

or \_an\_ had better be omitted in this construction."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p.

67. "Now suppose the articles had not been left out in these

passages."--\_Burke's Gram.\_, p. 27. "To give separate names to every one of

those trees, would have been an endless and impracticable

undertaking."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 72. "\_Ei\_, in general, sounds the same

as long and slender \_a\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 12. "When a conjunction is

used apparently redundant it is called Polysyndeton."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p.

236; \_Gould's\_, 229. "\_Each, every, either, neither\_, denote the persons or

things which make up a number, as taken separately or distributively."--

\_M'Culloch's Gram.\_, p. 31. "The Principal Sentence must be expressed by

verbs in the Indicative, Imperative, or Potential Modes."--\_Clark's Pract.

Gram.\_, p. 133. "Hence he is diffuse, where he ought to have been

pressing."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 246. "All manner of subjects admit of

explaining comparisons."--\_Ib.\_, p. 164; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 161. "The

present or imperfect participle denotes action or being continued, but not

perfected."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 78. "What are verbs? Those words which

express what the nouns do"--\_Fowle's True Eng. Gram.\_, p. 29.

"Of all those arts in which the wise excel,

Nature's chief masterpiece is writing well."

--\_J. Sheffield, Duke of Buck\_.

"Such was that muse whose rules and practice tell

Nature's chief masterpiece is writing well."

--\_Pope, on Criticism\_.

LESSON XIV.--THREE ERRORS.

"In some words the metaphorical sense has justled out the original sense

altogether, so that in respect of it they are become obsolete."--

\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 323. "Sure never any mortal was so overwhelmed with

grief as I am at this present."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 138. "All

languages differ from each other in their mode of inflexion."--\_Bullions,

E. Gram.\_, Pref., p. v. "Nouns and verbs are the only indispensable parts

of speech--the one to express the subject spoken of, and the other the

predicate or what is affirmed of it."--\_M'Culloch's Gram.\_, p. 36. "The

words in italics of the three latter examples, perform the office of

substantives."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 66. "Such a structure of a

sentence is always the mark of careless writing."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 231.

"Nothing is frequently more hurtful to the grace or vivacity of a period,

than superfluous dragging words at the conclusion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 205. "When

its substantive is not joined to it, but referred to, or understood."--

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 24. "Yet they have always some substantive belonging to

them, either referred to, or understood."--\_Ib.\_, 24. "Because they define

and limit the extent of the common name, or general term, to which they

either refer, or are joined.'"--\_Ib.\_, 24. "Every new object surprises,

terrifies, and makes a strong impression on their mind."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 136. "His argument required to have been more fully unfolded, in order

to make it be distinctly apprehended, and to give it its due

force."--\_Ib.\_, p. 230. "Participles which are derived from active verbs,

will govern the objective case, the same as the verbs from which they are

derived"--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p. 61. "Where, contrary to the rule, the

nominative \_I\_ precedes, and the objective case \_whom\_ follows the

verb."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 181. "The same conjunction governing both

the indicative and the subjunctive moods, in the same sentence, and in the

same circumstances, seems to be a great impropriety."--\_Ib.\_, p. 207;

\_Smith's New Gram.\_, 173: see \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 105; \_Fisk's\_, 128; and

\_Ingersoll's\_, 266. "A nice discernment, and accurate attention to the best

usage, are necessary to direct us, on these occasions."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, p. 170. "The Greeks and Romans, the former especially, were, in truth,

much more musical nations than we; their genius was more turned to delight

in the melody of speech."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 123. "When the sense admits

it, the sooner a circumstance is introduced, the better, that the more

important and significant words may possess the last place, quite

disencumbered."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, i, p. 309; \_Parker and Fox's\_, Part

III, p. 88. "When the sense admits it, the sooner they are despatched,

generally speaking, the better; that the more important and significant

words may possess the last place, quite disencumbered."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 118. See also \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 101. "Thus we find it, both in the

Greek and Latin tongues."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 74. "A train of sentences,

constructed in the same manner, and with the same number of members, should

never be allowed to succeed one another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 102; \_Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, Vol. i, p. 306; \_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, Part III, p. 86. "I proceed

to lay down the rules to be observed in the conduct of metaphors, and which

are much the same for tropes of every kind."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 143. "By

a proper choice of words, we may produce a resemblance of other sounds

which we mean to describe."--\_Ib.\_, p. 129; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. i,

p. 331. "The disguise can almost never be so perfect, but it is

discovered."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 259. "The sense admits of no other pause

than after the second syllable 'sit,' which therefore must be the only

pause made in the reading."--\_Ib.\_, p. 333. "Not that I believe North

America to be peopled so late as the twelfth century, the period of Madoc's

migration."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 212. "Money and commodities will always

flow to that country, where they are most wanted and will command the most

profit."--\_Ib.\_, p. 308. "That it contains no visible marks, of articles,

which are the most important of all others, to a just delivery."--

\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 13. "And of virtue, from its beauty, we call it

a fair and favourite maid."--\_Mack's Gram.\_, p. 66. "The definite article

may agree with nouns in the singular and plural number."--\_Infant School

Gram.\_, p. 130.

LESSON XV.--MANY ERRORS.

(1.) "A compound word is included under the head of derivative words."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 23. (2.) "An Apostrophe, marked thus ' is used to

abbreviate or shorten a word. Its chief use is to show the genitive case of

nouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 281.[449] (3.) "A Hyphen, marked thus - is employed in

connecting compounded words. It is also used when a word is divided."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 282. (4.) "The Acute Accent, marked thus ´: as, '\_Fáncy\_.' The

Grave thus ` as, '\_Fàvour\_'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 282. (5.) "The stress is laid on

long and short syllables indiscriminately. In order to distinguish the one

from the other, some writers of dictionaries have placed the grave on the

former, and the acute on the latter."--\_Ib.\_, 282. (6.) "A Diæresis, thus

marked ¨, consists of two points placed over one of the two vowels that

would otherwise make a diphthong, and parts them into syllables."--\_Ib.\_,

282. (7.) "A Section marked thus §, is the division of a discourse, or

chapter, into less parts or portions."--\_Ib.\_, 282. (8.) "A Paragraph ¶

denotes the beginning of a new subject, or a sentence not connected with

the foregoing. This character is chiefly used in the Old and in the New

Testaments."--\_Ib.\_, 282. (9.) "A Quotation " ". Two inverted commas are

generally placed at the beginning of a phrase or a passage, which is quoted

or transcribed from the speaker or author in his own words; and two commas

in their direct position, are placed at the conclusion."--\_Ib.\_, 282. (10.)

"A Brace is used in poetry at the end of a triplet or three lines, which

have the same rhyme. Braces are also used to connect a number of words with

one common term, and are introduced to prevent a repetition in writing or

printing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 283. (11.) "Two or three asterisks generally denote

the omission of some letters in a word, or of some bold or indelicate

expression, or some defect in the manuscript."--\_Ib.\_, 283. (12.) "An

Ellipsis ---- is also used, when some letters in a word, or some words in a

verse, are omitted."--\_Ib.\_, 283. (13.) "An Obelisk, which is marked thus

[dagger], and Parallels thus ||, together with the letters of the

Alphabet, and figures, are used as references to the margin, or bottom of

the page."--\_Ib.\_, 283. (14.) "A note of interrogation should not be

employed, in cases where it is only said a question has been asked, and

where the words are not used as a question. 'The Cyprians asked me why I

wept.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 279; \_Comly\_, 163; \_Ingersoll\_, 291; \_Fisk\_, 157;

\_Flint\_, 113. (15.) "A point of interrogation is improper after sentences

which are not questions, but only expressions of admiration, or of some

other emotion."--\_Same authors and places\_. (16.) "The parenthesis incloses

in the body of a sentence a member inserted into it, which is neither

necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 124. (17.) "Simple members connected by relatives, and

comparatives, are for the most part distinguished by a comma."

[450]--\_Ib.\_, p. 121. (18.) "Simple members of sentences connected by

comparatives, are, for the most part, distinguished by a comma."--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, p 272; \_Alden's\_, 148; \_Ingersoll's\_, 284. See the same

words without the last two commas, in \_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 149; \_Alger's\_,

79; \_Merchant's Murray\_, 143:--and this again, with a \_different sense\_,

made by a comma before "\_connected\_," in \_Smith's New Gram.\_, 190; \_Abel

Flint's\_, 103. (19.) "Simple members of sentences connected by

comparatives, are for the most part distinguished by the

comma."--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p. 115. (20.) "Simple members of sentences,

connected by comparatives, should generally be distinguished by a

comma."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 150. (21.) "Simple members of

sentences connected by \_than\_ or \_so\_, or that express contrast or

comparison, should, generally, be divided by a comma."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_,

p. 185. (22.) "Simple members of sentences, connected by comparatives, if

they be long, are separated by a comma."--\_Cooper's New Gram.\_, p. 195. See

the same without the first comma, in \_Cooper's Murray\_, p. 183. (23.)

"Simple members of sentences connected by comparatives, and phrases placed

in opposition to, or in contrast with, each other, are separated by

commas."--\_Bullions\_, p. 153; \_Hiley\_, 113. (24.) "On which ever word we

lay the emphasis, whether on the first, second, third, or fourth, it

strikes out a different sense."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 243. (25.) "To

inform those who do not understand sea phrases, that, 'We tacked to the

larboard, and stood off to sea,' would be expressing ourselves very

obscurely."--\_Ib.\_, p. 296; \_and Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 151. (26.) "Of

dissyllables, which are at once nouns and verbs, the verb has commonly the

accent on the latter, and the noun, on the former syllable."--\_Murray\_, p.

237. (27.) "And this gives our language a superior advantage to most

others, in the poetical and rhetorical style."--\_Id. ib.\_, p. 38;

\_Ingersoll\_, 27; \_Fisk\_, 57. (28.) "And this gives the English an advantage

above most other languages in the poetical and rhetorical style."--\_Lowth's

Gram\_, p. 19. (29.) "The second and third scholar may read the same

sentence; and as many, as it is necessary to learn it perfectly to the

whole."--\_Osborn's Key\_, p. 4.

(30.) "Bliss is the name in subject as a king,

In who obtain defence, or who defend."

--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 178.

LESSON XVI.--MANY ERRORS.

"The Japanese, the Tonquinese, and the Corceans, speak different languages

from one another, and from the inhabitants of China, but use, with these

last people, the same written characters; a proof that the Chinese

characters are like hieroglyphics, independent of language."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 18. "The Japanese, the Tonquinese, and the Corceans, who speak

different languages from one another, and from the inhabitants of China,

use, however, the same written characters with them; and by this means

correspond intelligibly with each other in writing, though ignorant of the

language spoken in their several countries; a plain proof," &c.--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 67. "The curved line is made square instead of round, for the

reason beforementioned."--\_Knight, on the Greek Alphabet\_, p. 6. "Every one

should content himself with the use of those tones only that he is

habituated to in speech, and to give none other to emphasis, but what he

would do to the same words in discourse. Thus whatever he utters will be

done with ease, and appear natural."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 103.

"Stops, or pauses, are a total cessation of sound during a perceptible, and

in numerous compositions, a measurable space of time."--\_Ib.\_, p. 104.

"Pauses or rests, in speaking and reading, are a total cessation of the

voice during a perceptible, and, in many cases, a measurable space of

time."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 248; \_English Reader\_, p. 13; \_Goldsbury's

Gr.\_, 76; \_Kirkham's\_, 208; \_Felton's\_, 133; \_et al.\_ "Nouns which express

a small one of the kind are called \_Diminutive Nouns\_; as, lambkin,

hillock, satchel, gosling, from lamb, hill, sack, goose."--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, 1837, p. 9. "What is the cause that nonsense so often escapes being

detected, both by the writer and by the reader?"--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p.

xi, and 280. "An Interjection is a word used to express sudden emotion.

They are so called, because they are generally thrown in between the parts

of a sentence without reference to the structure of the other parts of

it."--\_M'Culloch's Gram.\_, p. 36. "\_Ought\_ (in duty bound) \_oughtest,

oughtedst\_, are it's only inflections."--\_Mackintosh's Gram.\_, p. 165. "But

the arrangment, government, agreement, and dependence of one word upon

another, are referred to our reason."--\_Osborn's Key, Pref.\_, p. 3. "\_Me\_

is a personal pronoun, first person singular, and the accusative

case."--\_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 20. "The substantive \_self\_ is added to a

pronoun; as, herself, himself, &c.; and when thus united, is called a

reciprocal pronoun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 18. "One cannot avoid thinking that our

author had done better to have begun the first of these three sentences,

with saying, \_it is novelty which bestows charms on a monster\_,

&c."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 207. "The idea which they present to us of

nature's resembling art, of art's being considered as an original, and

nature as a copy,[451] seems not very distinct nor well brought out, nor

indeed very material to our author's purpose."--\_Ib.\_, p. 220. "The present

construction of the sentence, has plainly been owing to hasty and careless

writing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 220. "Adverbs serve to modify, or to denote some

circumstance of an action, or of a quality, relative to its time, place,

order, degree, and the other properties of it, which we have occasion to

specify."--\_Ib.\_, p. 84. "The more that any nation is improved by science,

and the more perfect their language becomes, we may naturally expect that

it will abound more with connective particles."--\_Ib.\_, p. 85. "Mr.

Greenleaf's book is by far the best adapted for learners of any that has

yet appeared on the subject."--DR. FELTUS and BP. ONDERDONK: \_Greenleaf's

Gram.\_, p. 2. "Punctuation is the art of marking in writing the several

pauses, or rests, between sentences, and the parts of sentences, according

to their proper quantity or proportion, as they are expressed in a just and

accurate pronunciation."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 114. "A compound sentence

must be resolved into simple ones, and separated by commas."--\_Greenleaf's

Gram.\_, p. 41; \_Allen Fisk's\_, 155.[452] "Simple sentences should be

separated from each other by commas, unless such sentences are connected by

a conjunction: as, 'Youth is passing away, age is approaching and death is

near.'"--\_Hall's Gram.\_, p. 36. "\_V\_ has the sound of flat \_f\_, and bears

the same relation to it, as \_b\_ does to \_p, d\_ to \_t\_, hard \_g\_ to \_k\_, and

\_z\_ to \_s\_. It has one uniform sound."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 17; \_Fisk's\_,

42. "\_V\_ is flat \_f\_, and bears the same relation to it as \_b\_ does to \_p,

d\_ to \_t\_, hard \_g\_ to \_k\_, and \_z\_ to \_s\_. It is never

irregular."--\_Walker's Dict.\_, p. 52. "\_V\_ has the sound of flat \_f\_; and

bears the same relation to it as \_z\_ does to \_s\_. It has one uniform

sound."--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 20. "The author is explaining the

distinction, between the powers of sense and imagination in the human

mind."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 343. [The author is endeavouring]

"to explain a very abstract point, the distinction between the powers of

sense and imagination in the human mind."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 164. "HE

(Anglo-Saxon \_he\_) is a Personal pronoun, of the Third Person, Masculine

Gender (Decline he), of the singular number, in the nominative

case."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, §589.

FALSE SYNTAX UNDER THE CRITICAL NOTES.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE I.--OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

"The passive voice denotes a being acted upon."--\_Maunders Gram.\_, p. 6.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the term "\_being acted upon\_" as here used,

suggests a doubt concerning its classification in parsing. But, according

to Critical Note 1st, "Words that may constitute different parts of speech,

must not be left doubtful as to their classification, or to what part of

speech they belong." Therefore, the phraseology should be altered; thus,

"The passive voice denotes \_an action received\_." Or; "The passive voice

denotes \_the receiving of an\_ action."]

"Milton, in some of his prose works, has very finely turned

periods."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 127; \_Jamieson's\_, 129. "These will be found

to be all, or chiefly, of that class."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 32. "All

appearances of an author's affecting harmony, are disagreeable."--\_Ib.\_, p.

127; \_Jamieson\_, 128. "Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase

by more syllables than one; as, \_iter, itin~eris\_."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p.

255; \_Gould's\_, 241. "The powers of man are enlarged by advancing

cultivation."--\_Gurney's Essays\_, p. 62. "It is always important to begin

well; to make a favourable impression at first setting out."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 307. "For if one take a wrong method at first setting out, it

will lead him astray in all that follows."--\_Ib.\_, 313. "His mind is full

of his subject, and his words are all expressive."--\_Ib.\_, 179. "How

exquisitely is this all performed in Greek!"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 422.

"How little is all this to satisfy the ambition of an immortal soul!"--

\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 253. "So as to exhibit the object in its full and

most striking point of view."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 41. "And that the author

know how to descend with propriety to the plain, as well as how to rise to

the bold and figured style."--\_Ib.\_, p. 401. "The heart can only answer to

the heart."--\_Ib.\_, p. 259. "Upon its first being perceived."--\_Harris's

Hermes\_, p. 229. "Call for Samson, that he may make us sport."--\_Judges\_,

xvi, 25. "And he made them sport."--\_Ibid.\_ "The term \_suffer\_ in this

definition is used in a technical sense, and means simply the receiving of

an action, or the being acted upon."--\_Bullions\_, p. 29. "The Text is what

is only meant to be taught in Schools."--\_Brightland, Pref.\_, p. ix. "The

perfect participle denotes action or being perfected or finished."--

\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 78. "From the intricacy and confusion which are

produced by their being blended together."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 66.

"This very circumstance of a word's being employed antithetically, renders

it important in the sentence."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 121. "It [the

pronoun \_that\_] is applied to both persons and things."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 53. "Concerning us, as being every where evil spoken of."--\_Barclay's

Works\_, Vol. ii, p. vi. "Every thing beside was buried in a profound

silence."--\_Steele\_. "They raise more full conviction than any reasonings

produce."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 367. "It appears to me no more than a

fanciful refinement."--\_Ib.\_, p. 436. "The regular resolution throughout of

a complete passage."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. vii. "The infinitive is known

by its being immediately preceded by the word \_to\_."--\_Maunders Gram.\_, p.

6. "It will not be gaining much ground to urge that the basket, or vase, is

understood to be the capital."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 356.

"The disgust one has to drink ink in reality, is not to the purpose where

the subject is drinking ink figuratively."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 231. "That we run

not into the extreme of pruning so very close."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 111.

"Being obliged to rest for a little on the preposition by itself."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 112; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 93. "Being obliged to rest a little on the

preposition by itself."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 319. "Our days on the earth

are as a shadow, and there is none abiding."--\_1 Chron.\_, xxix, 15. "There

maybe a more particular expression attempted, of certain objects, by means

of resembling sounds."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 129; \_Jamieson's\_, 130;

\_Murray's Gram.\_, 331. "The right disposition of the shade, makes the light

and colouring strike the more."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, 144. "I observed that a

diffuse style inclines most to long periods."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178. "Their poor

Arguments, which they only Pickt up and down the Highway "--\_Divine Right

of Tythes\_, p. iii. "Which must be little, but a transcribing out of their

writings."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 353. "That single impulse is a forcing

out of almost all the breath."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 254. "Picini

compares modulation to the turning off from a road."--\_Gardiner's Music of

Nature\_, p. 405. "So much has been written, on and off, of almost every

subject."--\_The Friend\_, ii, 117. "By reading books written by the best

authors, his mind became highly improved."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 201.

"For I never made the being richly provided a token of a spiritual

ministry."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 470.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE II.--OF DOUBTFUL REFERENCE.

"However disagreeable, we must resolutely perform our

duty."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 171.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adjective \_disagreeable\_ appears to

relate to the pronoun \_we\_, though such a relation was probably not

intended by the author. But, according to Critical Note 2d, "The reference

of words to other words, or their syntactical relation according to the

sense, should never be left doubtful, by any one who means to be

understood." The sentence may be amended thus: "However disagreeable \_the

task\_, we must resolutely perform our duty."]

"The formation of verbs in English, both regular and irregular, is derived

from the Saxon."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 47. "Time and chance have an

influence on all things human, and on nothing more remarkably than on

language."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 180. "Time and chance have an influence

on all things human, and on nothing more remarkable than on

language."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 47. "Archytases being a virtuous man,

who happened to perish once upon a time, is with him a sufficient ground,"

&c.--\_Philological Museum\_, i, 466. "He will be the better qualified to

understand, with accuracy, the meaning of a numerous class of words, in

which they form a material part."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 120. "We

should continually have the goal in view, which would direct us in the

race."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 172. "But [Addison's figures] seem to rise

of their own accord from the subject, and constantly embellish

it."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 150; \_Jamieson's\_, 157. "As far as persons and

other animals and things that we can see go, it is very easy to distinguish

Nouns."--\_Cobbett's Gram.\_, ¶14. "Dissyllables ending in \_y, e\_ mute, or

accented on the last syllable, may be sometimes compared like

monosyllables."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 12. "Admitting the above

objection, it will not overrule the design."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 140.

"These philosophical innovators forget, that objects are like men, known

only by their actions."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of Lang.\_, i, 326. "The

connexion between words and ideas is arbitrary and conventional, owing to

the agreement of men among themselves."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 1. "The

connexion between words and ideas may, in general, be considered as

arbitrary and conventional, owing to the agreement of men among

themselves."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 53. "A man whose inclinations led him to

be corrupt, and had great abilities to manage and multiply and defend his

corruptions."--\_Swift\_. "They have no more control over him than any other

men."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, 1st Ed., p. 372. "His old words are all

true English, and numbers exquisite."--\_Spectator\_, No. 540. "It has been

said, that not only Jesuits can equivocate."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, 8vo, p.

121. "It has been said, that Jesuits can not only equivocate."--\_Murray's

Key\_, 8vo, p. 253. "The nominative of the first and second person in Latin

is seldom expressed."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 154; \_Gould's\_, 157. "Some words

are the same in both numbers."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 40;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 18; \_Fisk's\_, 59; \_Kirkham's\_, 39; \_W. Allen's\_, 42; et al.

"Some nouns are the same in both numbers."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 29;

\_Smith's\_, 45; et al. "Others are the same in both numbers; as, \_deer,

swine\_, &c."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 8. "The following list denotes the

sounds of the consonants, being in number twenty-two."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 6; \_Fisk's\_, 36. "And is the ignorance of these peasants a reason for

others to remain ignorant; or to render the subject a less becoming

inquiry?"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 293; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 288. "He is

one of the most correct, and perhaps the best, of our prose

writers."--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. iv., "The motions of a vortex and a

whirlwind are perfectly similar."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 131. "What I have

been saying throws light upon one important verse in the Bible, which I

should like to have read."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 182. "When there are any

circumstances of time, place, or other limitations, which the principal

object of our sentence requires to have connected with it."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 115; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 98; \_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 322.

"Interjections are words used to express emotion, affection, or passion,

and imply suddenness."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 77. "But the genitive is only

used to express the measure of things in the plural number."--\_Adam's

Gram.\_, p. 200; \_Gould's\_, 198. "The buildings of the institution have been

enlarged; the expense of which, added to the increased price of provisions,

renders it necessary to advance the terms of admission."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 183. "These sentences are far less difficult than complex."--\_S. S.

Greene's Analysis, or Grammar\_, 1st Ed., p. 179.

"Far from the madding crowd's ignoble strife,

Their sober wishes never learn'd to stray."--\_Gray's Elegy\_.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE III.--OF DEFINITIONS.

(1.) "\_Definition\_ is such a description of things as exactly describes the

thing and that thing only."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 135.

[FORMULE.--Not

proper, because this definition of a \_definition\_ is not accurately adapted

to the thing. But, according to Critical Note 3d, "A definition, in order

to be perfect, must include the whole thing, or class of things, which it

pretends to define, and exclude every thing which comes not under the

name." [453] The example may be amended thus: "A definition is a \_short and

lucid\_ description of a \_thing, or species, according to its nature and

properties.\_"]

(2.) "Language, in general, signifies the expression of our ideas by

certain articulate sounds, which are used as the signs of those

ideas."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 53. (3.) "A WORD is an articulate \_sound\_ used

by common consent as the sign of an idea,"--\_Bullions, Analyt. and Pract.

Gr.\_, p. 17. (4.) "A word is a sound, or combination of sounds, which is

used in the expression of thought"--\_Hazen's Gram.\_, p. 12. (5.) "\_Words\_

are articulate sounds, used as \_signs\_ to convey our ideas."--\_Hiley's

Gram.\_, p. 5. (6.) "A \_word\_ is a number of letters used together to

represent some idea."--\_Hart's E. Gram.\_, p. 28. (7.) "A \_Word\_ is a

combination of letters, used as the sign of an idea."--\_S. W. Clark's

Practical Gram.\_, p. 9. (8.) "A \_word\_ is a letter or a combination of

letters, used as the sign of an idea."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, p. 41. (9.)

"Words are articulate sounds, by which ideas are communicated."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 28. (10.) "Words are certain articulate sounds used by common

consent as signs of our ideas."--\_Bullions, Principles of E. Gram.\_, p. 6;

\_Lat. Gram.\_, 6; see \_Lowth, Murray, Smith, et al.\_ (11.) "Words are sounds

used as signs of our ideas."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 30. (12.) "Orthography

means \_word-making\_ or \_spelling\_.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 19; \_Smith's

New Gram.\_, p. 41. (13.) "A vowel is a letter, the name of which

constitutes a full, open sound."--\_Hazen's Gram.\_, p. 10; \_Lennie's, 5;

Brace's, 7.\_ (14.) "Spelling is the art of reading by naming the letters

singly, and rightly dividing words into their syllables. Or, in writing, it

is the expressing of a word by its proper letters."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 5;

\_Churchill's\_, 20. (15.) "Spelling is the art of rightly dividing words

into their syllables, or of expressing a word by its proper

letters."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 21; \_Ingersoll's, 6; Merchant's, 10;

Alger's, 12; Greenleaf's, 20\_; and others. (16) "Spelling is the art of

expressing words by their proper letters; or of rightly dividing words into

syllables."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 8. (17.) "Spelling is the art of

expressing a word by its proper letters, and rightly dividing it into

syllables."--\_Bullions's Princ. of E. Gram.\_, p. 2. (18.) "Spelling is the

art of expressing a word by its proper letters."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 23;

\_Sanborn's\_, p. 259. (19.) "A syllable is a sound either simple or

compounded, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and constituting a

word or part of a word."--\_Lowth\_, p. 5; \_Murray\_, 21; \_Ingersoll\_, 6;

\_Fisk\_, 11; \_Greenleaf\_, 20: \_Merchant\_, 9; \_Alger\_, 12; \_Bucke\_, 15;

\_Smith\_, 118; \_et al\_. (20.) "A Syllable is a complete Sound uttered in one

Breath."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 32; \_Buchanan's\_, 5. (21.) "A syllable is a

distinct sound, uttered by a single impulse of the voice."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 20. (22.) "A Syllable is a distinct sound forming the whole of a

word, or so much of it as can be sounded at once."--\_Bullions, E. Gr.\_, p.

2. (23.) "A \_syllable\_ is a word, or part of a word, or as much as can be

sounded at once."--\_Picket's Gram.\_, p. 10. (24.) "A diphthong is the union

of two Vowels, both of which are pronounced as one: as in bear and

beat."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 15. (25.) "A diphthong consists of two vowels,

forming one syllable; as, \_ea\_, in \_beat\_."--\_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 2. (26.) "A

triphthong consists of three vowels forming one syllable; as, \_eau\_ in

\_beauty\_."--\_Ib.\_ (27.) "But the Triphthong is the union of three Vowels,

pronounced as one."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 15. (28.) "What is a Noun

Substantive? A Noun Substantive is the thing itself; as, a Man, a

Boy."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 85; \_Buchanan's\_, 26. (29.) "An adjective is a

word added to nouns to describe them."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 1. (30.) "An

adjective is a word joined to a noun, to describe or define it."--\_Smith's

New Gram.\_, p. 51. (31.) "An adjective is a word used to describe or define

a noun."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 2. (32.) "The adjective is added to the

noun, to express the quality of it"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 12mo, 2d Ed., p. 27;

\_Lowth\_, p. 6. (33.) "An adjective expresses the quality of the noun to

which it is applied; and may generally be known by its making sense in

connection with it; as, 'A \_good\_ man,' 'A \_genteel\_ woman.'"--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 34. (34.) "An adverb is a word used to modify the sense of other

words."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 2. (35.) "An adverb is a word joined to a

verb, an adjective, or another adverb, to modify or denote some

circumstance respecting it."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 66; \_Lat. Gram.\_,

185. (36.) "A Substantive or Noun is a name given to every object which the

senses can perceive; the understanding comprehend; or the imagination

entertain."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 34. (37.) "GENDER means the distinction

of nouns with regard to sex."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 9.

(38.) "Gender is a distinction of nouns with regard to sex."--\_Frost's

Gram.\_, p. 7. (39.) "Gender is a distinction of nouns in regard to

sex."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 10. (40.) "Gender is the distinction of nouns,

in regard to sex."--\_Cooper's Murray\_, 24; \_Practical Gram.\_, 21. (41.)

"Gender is the distinction of nouns with regard to sex."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 37; \_Alger's\_, 16; \_Bacon's\_, 12; \_R. G. Greene's\_, 16; \_Bullions,

Prin.\_, 5th Ed., 9; \_his New Gr.\_, 22; \_Fisk's\_, 19; \_Hull's\_, 9;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 15. (42.) "Gender is the distinction of sex."--\_Alden's

Gram.\_, p. 9; \_Comly's\_, 20; \_Dalton's\_, 11; \_Davenport's\_, 15; \_J.

Flint's\_, 28; A. \_Flint's\_, 11; \_Greenleaf's\_, 21; \_Guy's\_, 4; \_Hart's\_,

36; \_Hiley's\_, 12; \_Kirkham's\_, 34; \_Lennie's\_, 11; \_Picket's\_, 25;

\_Smith's\_, 43; \_Sanborn's\_, 25; \_Wilcox's\_, 8. (43.) "Gender is the

distinction of Sex, or the Difference betwixt Male and Female."--\_British

Gram.\_, p. 94; \_Buchanan's\_, 18. (44.) "Why are nouns divided into genders?

To distinguish their sexes."--\_Fowle's True Eng. Gram.\_, p. 10. (45.) "What

is meant by \_Gender?\_ The different sexes."--\_Burn's Gram.\_, p. 34. (46)

"Gender, in grammar, is a difference of termination, to express distinction

of sex."--\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p 30; \_Improved Gram.\_, 22. (47.)

"Gender signifies a distinction of nouns, according to the different sexes

of things they denote."--\_Coar's Gram.\_, p. 2. (48.) "Gender is the

distinction occasioned by sex. Though there are but two sexes, still nouns

necessarily admit of four distinctions[454] of gender."--\_Hall's Gram.\_, p.

6. (49.) "Gender is a term which is employed for the distinction of nouns

with regard to sex and species."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 41. (50.) "Gender is

a Distinction of Sex."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 53. (51.) "GENDER marks the

distinction of Sex."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 37. (52.) "\_Gender\_ means the

kind, or sex. There are four genders."--\_Parker and Fox's, Part I\_, p. 7.

(53.) "Gender is a property of the noun which distinguishes sex."--\_Weld's

Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 57. (54.) "Gender is a property of the noun or pronoun

by which it distinguishes sex."--\_Weld's Grammar Abridged\_, p. 49. (55.)

"Case is the state or condition of a noun with respect to the other words

in a sentence."--\_Bullion's, E. Gram.\_, p. 16; \_his Analyt. and Pract.

Gram.\_, p. 31. (56.) "\_Case\_ means the different state or situation of

nouns with regard to other words."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 55. (57.) "The

cases of substantives signify their different terminations, which serve to

express the relation of one thing to another."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 12mo,

2d Ed., p. 35. (58.) "Government is the power which one \_part of speech\_

has over \_another\_, when it causes it or requires it to be of some

particular person, number, gender, case, style, or mode."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 126; see \_Murray's Gram.\_, 142; \_Smith's\_, 119; \_Pond's\_, 88;

\_et al\_. (59.) "A simple sentence is a sentence which contains only one

nominative case and one verb to agree with it."--\_Sanborn, ib.\_; see

\_Murray's Gram., et al\_. (60.) "Declension means putting a noun through the

different cases."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 58. (61.) "Zeugma is when two or

more substantives have a verb in common, which is applicable only to one of

them."--\_B. F. Fisk's Greek Gram.\_, p. 185. (62.) "An Irregular Verb is

that which has its passed tense and perfect participle terminating

differently; as, smite, smote, smitten."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 92. (63.)

"\_Personal\_ pronouns are employed as substitutes for nouns that denote

\_persons\_."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 23.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE IV.--OF COMPARISONS.

"We abound more in vowel and diphthong sounds, than most

languages."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 89.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the

terms \_we\_ and \_languages\_, which are here used to form a comparison,

express things which are totally unlike. But, according to Critical Note

4th, "A comparison is a form of speech which requires some similarity or

common property in the things compared; without which, it becomes a

solecism." Therefore, the expression ought to be changed; thus, "\_Our

language abounds\_ more in vowel and diphthong sounds, than most \_other

tongues\_." Or: "We abound more in vowel and \_diphthongal\_ sounds, than most

\_nations\_."]

"A line thus accented, has a more spirited air, than when the accent is

placed on any other syllable."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 86.

"Homer introduceth his deities with no greater ceremony than as mortals;

and Virgil has still less moderation."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 287. "Which the

more refined taste of later writers, who had far inferior genius to them,

would have taught them to avoid."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 28. "The poetry,

however, of the Book of Job, is not only equal to that of any other of the

sacred writings, but is superior to them all, except those of Isaiah

alone."--\_Ib.\_, p. 419. "On the whole, Paradise Lost is a poem that abounds

with beauties of every kind, and that justly entitles its author to a

degree of fame not inferior to any poet."--\_Ib.\_, p. 452. "Most of the

French writers compose in short sentences; though their style in general,

is not concise; commonly less so than the bulk of English writers, whose

sentences are much longer."--\_Ib.\_, p. 178. "The principles of the

Reformation were deeper in the prince's mind than to be easily

eradicated."--HUME: \_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, ¶217. "Whether they do not create

jealousy and animosity more hurtful than the benefit derived from

them."--DR. J. LEO WOLF: \_Lit. Conv.\_, p. 250. "The Scotch have preserved

the ancient character of their music more entire than any other

country."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 461. "When the time or quantity of one

syllable exceeds the rest, that syllable readily receives the

accent."--\_Rush, on the Voice\_, p. 277. "What then can be more obviously

true than that it should be made as just as we can?"--\_Dymond's Essays\_, p.

198. "It was not likely that they would criminate themselves more than they

could avoid."--\_Clarkson's Hist., Abridged\_, p. 76. "Their understandings

were the most acute of any people who have ever lived."--\_Knapp's

Lectures\_, p32. "The patentees have printed it with neat types, and upon

better paper than was done formerly."--\_Lily's Gram., Pref.\_, p. xiii. "In

reality, its relative use is not exactly like any other word."--\_Felch's

Comprehensive Gram.\_, p. 62. "Thus, instead of two books, which are

required, (the grammar and the exercises,) the learner finds both in one,

for a price at least not greater than the others."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_,

Recom., p. iii; \_New Ed.\_, Recom., p. 6. "They are not improperly regarded

as pronouns, though in a sense less strict than the others"--\_Ib.\_, p. 199.

"We have had the opportunity, as will readily be believed, of becoming

conversant with the case much more particularly, than the generality of our

readers can be supposed to have had."--\_The British Friend\_, 11mo, 29th,

1845.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE V.--OF FALSITIES.

"The long sound of \_i\_ is compounded of the sound of \_a\_, as heard in

\_ball\_, and that of \_e\_, as heard in \_be\_."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 3.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the sentence falsely teaches, that the long

sound of \_i\_ is that of the diphthong heard in \_oil\_ or \_boy\_. But,

according to Critical Note 5th, "Sentences that convey a meaning manifestly

false, should be changed, rejected, or contradicted; because they distort

language from its chief end, or only worthy use; which is, to state facts,

and to tell the truth." The error may be corrected thus: "The long sound of

\_i\_ is \_like a very quick union\_ of the sound of \_a\_, as heard in \_bar\_,

and that of \_e\_, as heard in \_be\_."]

"The omission of a word necessary to grammatical propriety, is called

ELLIPSIS."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 45. "Every substantive is of the third

person."--\_Alexander Murray's Gram.\_, p. 91. "A noun, when the subject is

spoken \_to\_, is in the second person; and when spoken \_of\_, it is in the

third person; but never in the first."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 17. "With us,

no substantive nouns have gender, or are masculine and feminine, except the

proper names of male and female creatures."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 156.

"Apostrophe is a little mark signifying that something is shortened; as,

for William his hat, we say, William's hat."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 30.

"When a word beginning with a vowel is coupled with one beginning with a

consonant, the indefinite article must be repeated; thus, 'Sir Matthew Hale

was \_a\_ noble and \_an\_ impartial judge;' 'Pope was \_an\_ elegant and \_a\_

nervous writer.'"--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 11. "\_W\_ and \_y\_ are consonants,

when they begin a word or syllable; but in every other situation they are

vowels."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 7: \_Bacon, Comly, Cooper, Fish, Ingersoll,

Kirkham, Smith, et al\_. "\_The\_ is used before all adjectives and

substantives, let them begin as they will."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 26.

"Prepositions are also prefixed to words in such manner, as to coalesce

with them, and to become a part of them."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 66. "But \_h\_

is entirely silent at the beginning of syllables not accented, as

\_historian\_."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 5. "Any word that will make sense with

\_to\_ before it, is a verb."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 44. "Verbs do not, in

reality, express actions; but they are intrinsically the mere \_names\_ of

actions."--\_Ib.\_, p. 37. "The nominative is the actor or subject, and the

active verb is the action performed by the nominative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 45. "If,

therefore, only one creature or thing acts, only one action, at the same

instant, can be done; as, the \_girl writes\_."--\_Ib.\_, 45. "The verb

\_writes\_ denotes but one action, which the girl performs; therefore the

verb \_writes\_ is of the singular number."--\_Ib.\_, 45. "And when I say, Two

men \_walk\_, is it not equally apparent, that \_walk\_ is plural, because it

expresses \_two\_ actions?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "The subjunctive mood is formed by

adding a conjunction to the indicative mood."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 16. "The

possessive case should always be distinguished by the apostrophe."--

\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, Rule 44th, p. 49. "'At these proceedings of the

commons,'--Here \_of\_ is the sign of the genitive or possessive case, and

\_commons\_ is of that case, governed of proceedings."--\_Alex. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 95. "Here let it be observed again that, strictly speaking, no

verbs have numbers nor persons, neither have nouns nor pronouns persons,

when they refer to irrational creatures and inanimate things."--\_S.

Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 136. "The noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing

addressed or spoken to, is in the nominative case independent."--\_Frost's

El. of Gram.\_, Rule 8th, p. 44. "Every noun, when addressed, becomes of the

second person, and is in the nominative case absolute; as--'\_Paul\_, thou

art beside thyself.'"--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, Rule 19th, p. 108. "Does the

Conjunction join Words together? No; only Sentences."--\_British Gram.\_, p.

103. "No; the Conjunction only joins sentences together."--\_Buchanan's

Gram.\_, p. 64. "Every Genitive has a Noun to govern it, expressed or

understood; as, St. James's, \_Palace\_ is understood; therefore one Genitive

cannot govern another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 111. "Every adjective, and every

adjective pronoun, belongs to a substantive, expressed or understood."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 161; \_Bacon's\_, 48; \_Alger's\_, 57; \_et al\_. "Every

adjective qualifies a substantive expressed or understood."--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, p. 97. "Every adjective belongs to some noun expressed or

understood."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 36. "Adjectives belong to the nouns

which they describe."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 137. "Adjectives must agree

with the nouns, which they qualify."--\_Fisk's Murray\_, p. 101. "The

Adjective must agree with its Substantive in Number."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_,

p. 94. "Every adjective and participle belongs to some noun or pronoun

expressed or understood."--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 44. "Every Verb of

the Infinitive Mood, supposes a verb before it expressed or

understood."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 94. "Every Adverb has its Verb

expressed or understood."--\_Ib.\_, p. 94. "Conjunctions which connect

Sentence to Sentence, are always placed betwixt the two Propositions or

Sentences which they unite."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "The words \_for all that\_, seem

to be too low."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 213. "\_For all that\_ seems to be too

low and vulgar."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 139. "The reader, or hearer,

then, understands from \_and\_, that he is to add something."--\_J. Brown's E.

Syntax\_, p. 124. "But \_and\_ never, never connects one \_thing\_ with another

thing, nor one \_word\_ with another word."--\_Ib.\_, p. 122. "'Six, and six

are twelve.' Here it is affirmed that, \_six is twelve\_!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 120.

"'John, and his wife have six children.' This is an instance of gross

\_catachresis\_. It is here affirmed that John has six children, and that his

wife has six children."--\_Ib.\_, p. 122. "Nothing which is not right can be

great."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, 8vo, p. 146: see \_Rambler\_, No. 185.

"Nothing can be great which is not right."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 277.

"The highest degree of reverence should be paid to youth."--\_Ib.\_, p. 278.

"There is, in many minds, neither knowledge nor understanding."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 151; \_Russell's\_, 84; \_Alger's\_, 54; \_Bacon's\_, 47; \_et

al\_. "Formerly, what we call the objective cases of our pronouns, were

employed in the same manner as our present nominatives are."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 164. "As it respects a choice of words and expressions, no rules

of grammar can materially aid the learner."--\_S. S. Greene's Gram.\_, 1st

Ed., p. 202. "Whatever exists, or is conceived to exist, is a

Noun."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, §137. "As all men are not brave,

\_brave\_ is itself comparative."--\_Ib.\_, §190.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE VI.--OF ABSURDITIES.

(1.) "And sometimes two unaccented syllables follow each other."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 384.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrase, "\_follow each other\_," is here

an absurdity; it being impossible for two things to "follow each other,"

except they alternate, or whirl round. But, according to Critical Note 6th,

"Absurdities, of every kind, are contrary to grammar; because they are

contrary to reason, or good sense, which is the foundation of grammar."

Therefore, a different expression should here be chosen; thus: "And

sometimes two unaccented syllables \_come together\_." Or: "And sometimes

\_one\_ unaccented \_syllable follows an\_ other."]

(2.) "What nouns frequently succeed each other?"--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 65.

(3.) "Words are derived from one another in various ways."--\_Ib.\_, p. 288;

\_Merchant's Gram.\_, 78; \_Weld's\_, 2d Edition, 222. (4.) "Prepositions are

derived from the two Latin words \_præ\_ and \_pono\_, which signify before and

place."--\_Mack's Gram.\_, p. 86. (5.) "He was sadly laughed at for such

conduct."--\_Bullion's E. Gram.\_, p. 79. (6.) "Every adjective pronoun

belongs to some noun or pronoun expressed or understood."--\_Ingersoll's

Gram.\_, p. 212. (7.) "If he [Addison] fails in anything, it is in want of

strength and precision, which renders his manner not altogether a proper

model."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 187. (8.) "Indeed, if Horace be deficient in

any thing, it is in this, of not being sufficiently attentive to juncture

and connexion of parts."--\_Ib.\_, p. 401. (9.) "The pupil is now supposed to

be acquainted with the nine sorts of speech, and their most usual

modifications."--\_Taylor's District School\_, p. 204. (10.) "I could see,

hear, taste, and smell the rose."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 156. (11.) "The

triphthong \_iou\_ is sometimes pronounced distinctly in two syllables; as in

bilious, various, abstemious."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 13; \_Walker's

Dict.\_, Prin. 292, p. 37. (12.) "The diphthong \_aa\_ generally sounds like a

short in proper names; as in Balaam, Canaan, Isaac; but not in Baal,

Gaal."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 10. (13.) "Participles are sometimes governed

by the article; for the present participle, with the definite article \_the\_

before it, becomes a substantive."--\_Ib.\_, p. 192. (14.) "Words ending with

\_y\_, preceded by a consonant, form the plurals of nouns, the persons of

verbs, verbal nouns, past participles, comparatives and superlatives, by

changing \_y\_ into \_i\_."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_, p. viii; \_Murray's

Gram.\_, 23; \_Merchant's Murray\_, 13; \_Fisk's\_, 44; \_Kirkham's\_, 23;

\_Greenleaf's\_, 20; \_Wright's Gram.\_, 28; \_et al\_. (15.) "But \_y\_ preceded

by a vowel, \_in such instances as the above\_, is not changed; as boy,

boys."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 24; \_Merchant's, Fisk's, Kirkham's,

Greenleaf's, et al\_. (16.) "But when \_y\_ is preceded by a vowel, it is very

rarely[455] changed in the additional syllable: as coy, coyly."--\_Murray's

Gram. again\_, p. 24; \_Merchant's\_, 14; \_Fisk's\_, 45; \_Greenleaf's\_, 20;

\_Wright's\_, 29; \_et al\_. (17.) "But when \_y\_ is preceded by a vowel, \_in

such instances\_, it is very rarely changed into \_i\_; as coy,

COYLESS."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 24. (18.) "Sentences are of a twofold

nature: Simple and Compound."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 123. (19.) "The neuter

pronoun \_it\_ is applied to all nouns and pronouns: as, \_It\_ is \_he; it\_ is

\_she; it\_ is \_they; it\_ is the \_land\_."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 92. (20.) "\_It

is\_ and \_it was\_, are often used in a plural construction; as, '\_It was\_

the heretics who first began to rail.'"--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 87. (21.)

"\_It is\_ and \_it was\_, are often, after the manner of the French, used in a

plural construction, and by some of our best writers: as, '\_It was\_ the

\_heretics that\_ first began to rail.' Smollett."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

190; \_Murray's\_, 158; \_Smith's\_, 134; \_Ingersoll's\_, 210; \_Fisk's\_, 115;

\_et al\_. (22.) "\_w\_ and \_y\_, as consonants, have one sound."--\_Town's

Spelling-Book\_, p. 9. (23.) "The conjunction \_as\_ is frequently used as a

relative."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 93. (24.) "When several clauses succeed

each other, the conjunction may be omitted with propriety."--\_Merchant's

Gram.\_, p. 97. (25.) "If, however, the members succeeding each other, are

very closely connected, the comma is unnecessary: as, 'Revelation tells us

how we may attain happiness.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 273; \_Merchant's\_,

151; \_Russell's\_, 115; \_Comly's\_, 152; \_Alger's\_, 80; \_Smith's\_, 190; \_et

al\_. (26.) "The mind has difficulty in passing readily through so many

different views given it, in quick succession, of the same

object."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 149. (27.) "The mind has difficulty in

passing readily through many different views of the same object, presented

in quick succession."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 341. (28.) "Adjective

pronouns are a kind of adjectives which point out nouns by some distinct

specification."--\_Kirkham's Gram., the Compend, or Table\_. (29.) "A noun of

multitude conveying plurality of idea[456], must have a verb or pronoun

agreeing with it in the plural."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 59 and 181: see also \_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 74; \_L. Murray's\_, 152; \_Comly's\_, 80; \_Lennie's\_, 87;

\_Alger's\_, 54; \_Jaudon's\_, 96; \_Alden's\_, 81; \_Parker and Fox's\_, I, 76;

II, 26; \_and others\_. (30.) "A noun or pronoun signifying possession, is

governed by the noun it possesses."--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 35. (31.) "A

noun signifying possession, is governed by the noun which it

possesses."--\_Wilbur and Livingston's Gram.\_, p. 24. (32.) "A noun or

pronoun in the possessive case is governed by the noun it

possesses."--\_Goldsbury's Gram.\_, p. 68. (33.) "The possessive case is

governed by the person or thing possessed; as, 'this is \_his\_ book.'"--\_P.

E. Day's Gram.\_, p. 81. (34.) "A noun or pronoun in the possessive case, is

governed by the noun which it possesses."--\_Kirkham's Gram., Rule\_ 12th,

pp. 52 and 181; \_Frazer's Gram.\_, 1844, p. 25; \_F. H. Miller's\_, 21. (35.)

"Here the boy is represented as acting. He is, therefore, in the nominative

case."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 41. (36.) "Some of the auxiliaries are

themselves principal verbs, as: \_have, do, will\_, and \_am\_, or

\_be\_."--\_Cooper's Grammars, both\_, p. 50. (37.) "Nouns of the male kind are

masculine. Those of the female kind are feminine."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 6.

(38.) "'To-day's lesson is longer than yesterday's:' here \_to-day\_ and

\_yesterday\_ are substantives."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 114; \_Ingersoll's\_,

50; \_et al.\_ (39.) "In this example, \_to-day\_ and \_yesterday\_ are nouns in

the possessive case."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 88. (40.) "An Indian in

Britain would be much surprised to stumble upon an elephant feeding at

large in the open fields."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 219. (41.)

"If we were to contrive a new language, we might make any articulate sound

the sign of any idea: there would be no impropriety in calling oxen \_men\_,

or rational beings by the name of \_oxen\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 139. (42.)

"All the parts of a sentence should correspond to each other."--\_Ib.\_, p.

222; \_Kirkham's\_, 193; \_Ingersoll's\_, 275; \_Goldsbury's\_, 74; \_Hiley's\_,

110; \_Weld's\_, 193; \_Alger's\_, 71; \_Fisk's\_, 148; \_S. Putnam's\_, 95;

\_Merchant's\_, 101; \_Merchant's Murray\_, 95.

(43.) "Full through his neck the weighty falchion sped,

Along the pavement roll'd the mutt'ring head."

--\_Odyssey\_, xxii, 365.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE VII.--OF SELF-CONTRADICTION.

(1.) "Though the construction will not admit of a \_plural verb\_, the

sentence would certainly stand better thus: 'The king, the lords, and the

commons, \_form\_ an excellent constitution.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 151;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 239.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the first clause here quoted is contradicted

by the last. But, according to Critical Note 7th, "Every writer or speaker

should be careful not to contradict himself; for what is

self-contradictory, is both null in argument, and bad in style." The

following change may remove the discrepance: "Though 'The king \_with\_ the

lords and commons,' \_must have a singular rather than\_ a plural verb, the

sentence would certainly stand better thus: 'The king, the lords, \_and\_ the

commons, \_form\_ an excellent constitution.'"]

(2.) "\_L\_ has always a soft liquid sound; as in love, billow, quarrel. It

is sometimes mute: as in half, talk, psalm."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 14;

\_Fisk's\_, 40. (3.) "\_L\_ has always a soft liquid sound; as in \_love,

billow\_. It is often silent; as in \_half, talk, almond\_."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 22. (4.) "The words \_means\_ and \_amends\_, though formerly used

in the singular, as well as in the plural number, are now, by polite

writers, restricted to the latter. Our most distinguished modern authors

say, 'by \_this means\_,' as well as, by \_these means\_.'"--\_Wright's Gram.\_,

p. 150. (5.) "'A friend exaggerates a man's virtues: an enemy inflames his

crimes.' Better thus: 'A friend exaggerates a man's virtues: an enemy his

crimes.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 325. "A friend exaggerates a man's

virtues, an enemy inflames his crimes"--\_Key\_, Vol. ii, p. 173. (6.) "The

auxiliary \_have\_, in the perfect tense of the subjunctive mood, should be

avoided."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 97. "Subjunctive Mood, Perfect Tense. If

I \_have\_ loved, If thou hast loved," &c.--p. 51. (7.) "There is also an

impropriety in governing both the indicative and subjunctive moods, with

the same conjunction; as, '\_If\_ a man \_have\_ a hundred sheep, and \_if\_ one

of them \_be\_ gone astray,' &c. It should be, and one of them \_is\_ gone

astray, &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97. (8.) "The rising series of contrasts convey

inexpressible dignity and energy to the conclusion."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_,

p. 79. (9.) "A groan or a shriek is instantly understood, as a language

extorted by distress, a language which no art can counterfeit, and which

conveys a meaning that words are utterly inadequate to express."--\_Porter's

Analysis\_, p. 127. "A groan or shriek speaks to the ear, as the language of

distress, with far more thrilling effect than words. Yet these may be

counterfeited by art."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. (10.) "These words [\_book\_ and

\_pen\_] cannot be put together in such a way as will constitute

plurality."--\_James Brown's English Syntax\_, p. 125. (11.) "Nor can the

real \_pen\_, and the real \_book\_ be expressed in two words in such a manner

as will constitute \_plurality\_ in \_grammar.\_"--\_Ibid.\_ (12.) "\_Our\_ is an

adjective pronoun of the possessive kind. Decline it."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 227. (13.) "\_This\_ and \_that\_, and likewise their Plurals, are always

opposed to each other in a Sentence."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_, p. 103. "When

\_this\_ or \_that\_ is used alone, i.e. not opposed to each other, \_this\_ is

written or spoken of Persons or Things immediately present, and as it were

before our Eyes, or nearest with relation to Place or Time. \_That\_ is

spoken or written of Persons or Things passed, absent and distant in

relation to Time and Place."--\_Ibid.\_ (14.) "Active and neuter verbs may be

conjugated by adding their present participle to the auxiliary verb \_to

be\_, through all its variations."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 159. "\_Be\_ is an

auxiliary whenever it is placed before the perfect participle of another

verb, but in every other situation, it is a \_principal\_ verb."--\_Ib.\_, p.

155. (15.) "A verb in the imperative mood, is always of the second

person."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 136. "The verbs, according to an idiom of

our language, or the poet's license, are used in the \_imperative\_, agreeing

with a nominative of the first or third person."--\_Ib.\_, p. 164. (16.)

"Personal Pronouns are distinguished from the relative, by their denoting

the \_person\_ of the nouns for which they stand."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 97.

"Pronouns of the first person, do not agree in person with the nouns they

represent."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98. (17.) "Nouns have three cases, nominative,

possessive, and objective."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 6. "Personal pronouns have,

like nouns, two cases, nominative and objective."--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. (18.). "In

some instances the preposition suffers no change, but becomes an adverb

merely by its application: as, 'He was \_near\_ falling.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 116. (19.) "Some nouns are used only in the plural; as, \_ashes,

literati, minutiæ\_, SHEEP, DEER."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 43. "Some nouns are

the same in both numbers, as, \_alms, couple\_, DEER, \_series, species,

pair\_, SHEEP."--\_Ibid.\_ "Among the inferior parts of speech there are some

\_pairs\_ or \_couples\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 94. (20.) "Concerning the pronominal

\_adjectives\_, that \_can\_ and \_can not, may\_ and \_may not\_, represents \_its\_

noun."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 336. (21.) "The \_article a\_ is in a few

instances employed in the sense of a \_preposition\_; as, Simon Peter said I

go \_a\_ [to] fishing."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 177; Abridg., 128. "'To

go a fishing;' i.e. to go \_on\_ a fishing voyage or business."--\_Weld's

Gram.\_, p. 192. (22.) "So also verbs, really transitive, are used

intransitively, when they have no object."--\_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract.

Gram.\_, p. 60.

(23.) "When first young Maro, in his boundless mind,

A work t' outlast immortal Rome design'd."

--\_Pope, on Crit.\_, l. 130.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE VIII.--OF SENSELESS JUMBLING.

"Number distinguishes them [viz., \_nouns\_], as one, or many, of the same

kind, called the singular and plural."--\_Dr. Blair's Lectures on Rhetoric\_,

p. 74.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the words of this text appear to be so

carelessly put together, as to make nothing but jargon, or a sort of

scholastic balderdash. But, according to Critical Note 8th, "To jumble

together words without care for the sense, is an unpardonable negligence,

and an abuse of the human understanding." I think the learned author should

rather have said: "\_There are two numbers\_ called the singular and \_the\_

plural, \_which\_ distinguish nouns as \_signifying either\_ one \_thing\_, or

many of the same kind."]

"Here the noun \_James Munroe\_ is addressed, he is spoken to, it is here a

noun of the second person."--\_Mack's Gram.\_, p. 66. "The number and case of

a verb can never be ascertained until its nominative is known."--\_Emmons's

Gram.\_, p. 36. "A noun of multitude, or signifying many, may have the verb

and pronoun agreeing with it either in the singular or plural number; yet

not without regard to the import of the word, as conveying unity or

plurality of idea."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 75; \_Murray's\_, 152; \_Alger's\_,

54; \_Russell's\_, 55; \_Ingersoll's\_, 248; \_et al.\_ "To express the present

and past imperfect of the active and neuter verb, the auxiliary \_do\_ is

sometimes used: I \_do\_ (now) love; I \_did\_ (then) love."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_,

p. 40. "If these are perfectly committed, they will be able to take twenty

lines for a lesson on the second day; and may be increased each

day."--\_Osborn's Key\_, p. 4. "When \_c\_ is joined with \_h (ch)\_, they are

generally sounded in the same manner: as in Charles, church, cheerfulness,

and cheese. But foreign words (except in those derived from the French, as

\_chagrin, chicanery\_, and \_chaise\_, in which \_ch\_ are sounded like \_sh\_)

are pronounced like \_k\_; as in Chaos, character, chorus, and

chimera."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 10. "Some substantives, naturally

neuter, are, by a figure of speech, converted into the masculine or

feminine gender."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 37; \_Comly's\_, 20; \_Bacon's\_, 13;

\_A Teacher's\_, 8; \_Alger's\_, 16; \_Lennie's\_, 11; \_Fisk's\_, 56;

\_Merchant's\_, 27; \_Kirkham's\_, 35; \_et al.\_ "Words in the English language

may be classified under ten general heads, the names of which classes are

usually termed the ten parts of speech."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 14. "'Mercy

is the true badge of nobility.' \_Nobility\_ is a noun of multitude, mas. and

fem. gender, third person, sing. and in the obj. case, and governed by

'of:' RULE 31."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 161. "gh, are either silent, or have

the sound of f, as in laugh."--\_Town's Spelling-Book\_, p. 10. "As many

people as were destroyed, were as many languages or dialects lost and

blotted out from the general catalogue."--\_Chazotte's Essay\_, p. 25. "The

\_grammars\_ of some languages contain a greater number of \_the\_ moods, than

\_others\_, and exhibit \_them\_ in different forms."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo.

Vol. i, p. 95. "A COMPARISON OR SIMILE, is, \_when\_ the resemblance between

two objects \_is expressed in form\_, and \_generally pursued\_ more fully than

the nature of a metaphor admits."--\_Ib.\_, p. 343. "In \_some dialects\_, the

word \_what\_ is improperly used for \_that\_, and sometimes we find it in

\_this sense\_ in writing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 156; \_Priestley's Gram.\_, 93;

\_Smith's\_, 132; \_Merchant's\_, 87; \_Fisk's\_, 114; \_Ingersoll's\_, 220; \_et

al.\_ "Brown makes great ado concerning the adname principles of preceding

works, in relation to the \_gender\_ of pronouns."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_,

p. 323. "The nominative precedes and performs the action of the

verb."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 8. "The Primitive are those which cannot receive

more simple forms than those which they already possess."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 28. "The long sound [of \_i\_] is always marked by the \_e\_ final

in monosyllables; as, thin, thine; except give, live."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 13; \_Fisk's\_, 39; \_et al.\_ "But the third person or thing spoken of

being absent, and in many respects unknown, it is necessary that it should

be marked by a distinction of gender."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 21; \_L.

Murray's\_, 51; \_et al.\_ "Each of the diphthongal letters was doubtless,

originally heard in pronouncing the words which contain them. Though this

is not the case at present, with respect to many of them, these

combinations still retain the name of diphthongs; but, to distinguish them,

they are marked by the term \_improper\_."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 9;

\_Fisk's\_, 37; \_et al.\_ "A Mode is the form of, or manner of using a verb,

by which the being, action, or passion is expressed "--\_Alex. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 32. "The word \_that\_ is a demonstrative pronoun when it is

followed immediately by a substantive, to which it is either joined, or

refers, and which it limits or qualifies."--\_Lindley Murray's Gram.\_, p.

54.

"The guiltless woe of being past,

Is future glory's deathless heir."--\_Sumner L. Fairfield.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE IX.--OF WORDS NEEDLESS.

"A knowledge of grammar enables us to express ourselves better in

conversation and in writing composition."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 7.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word \_composition\_ is here needless.

But, according to Critical Note 9th, "Words that are entirely needless, and

especially such as injure or encumber the expression, ought in general to

be omitted." The sentence would be better without this word, thus: "A

knowledge of grammar enables us to express ourselves better in conversation

and in writing."]

"And hence we infer, that there is no other dictator here but

use."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 42. "Whence little else is gained, except

correct spelling and pronunciation."--\_Town's Spelling-Book\_, p. 5. "The

man who is faithfully attached to religion, may be relied on, with humble

confidence."--\_Merchants School Gram.\_, p. 76. "Shalt thou build me an

house for me to dwell in?"--\_2 Sam.\_, vii, 5. "The house was deemed

polluted which was entered into by so abandoned a woman."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 279. "The farther that he searches, the firmer will be his

belief."--\_Keith's Evidences\_, p. 4. "I deny not, but that religion

consists in these things."--\_Barclays Works\_, i, 321. "Except the king

delighted in her, and that she were called by name."--\_Esther\_, ii, 14.

"The proper method of reading these lines, is to read them according as the

sense dictates."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 386. "When any words become obsolete,

or at least are never used, except as constituting part of particular

phrases, it is better to dispense with their service entirely, and give up

the phrases."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 185; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 370. "Those

savage people seemed to have no element but that of war."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 211. "\_Man\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number,

masculine gender, and in the nominative case."--\_J. Flint's Gram.\_, p. 33.

"The orator, according as circumstances require, will employ them

all."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 247. "By deferring our repentance, we accumulate

our sorrows."--\_Murray's Key\_, ii, p. 166. "There is no doubt but that

public speaking became early an engine of government."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

245. "The different meaning of these two first words may not at first

occur."--\_Ib.\_, p. 225. "The sentiment is well expressed by Plato, but much

better by Solomon than him."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 214; \_Ingersoll's\_, 251;

\_Smith's\_, 179; \_et al\_. "They have had a greater privilege than we have

had."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 211. "Every thing should be so arranged, as

that what goes before may give light and force to what follows."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 311. "So as that his doctrines were embraced by great

numbers."--UNIV. HIST.: \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 139. "They have taken

another and a shorter cut."--SOUTH: \_Joh. Dict.\_ "The Imperfect Tense of a

regular verb is formed from the present by adding \_d\_ or \_ed\_ to the

present; as, 'I \_loved\_.'"--\_Frost's El. of Gram.\_, p. 32. "The pronoun

\_their\_ does not agree in gender or number with the noun 'man,' for which

it stands."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 182. "This mark denotes any thing of

wonder, surprise, joy, grief, or sudden emotion."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 19.

"We are all accountable creatures, each for himself."--\_Murray's Key\_, p.

204; \_Merchant's\_, 195. "If he has commanded it, then I must

obey."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, pp. 110 and 112. "I now present him with a

form of the diatonic scale."--\_Dr. John Barber's Elocution\_, p. xi. "One

after another of their favourite rivers have been reluctantly

abandoned."--\_Hodgson's Tour\_. "\_Particular\_ and \_peculiar\_ are words of

different import from each other."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 196. "Some adverbs

admit rules of comparison: as Soon, sooner, soonest."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p.

76. "From having exposed himself too freely in different climates, he

entirely lost his health."--\_Murray's Key\_. p. 200. "The Verb must agree

with its Nominative before it in Number and Person."--\_Buchanan's Syntax\_,

p. 93. "Write twenty short sentences containing only adjectives."--\_Abbot's

Teacher\_, p. 102. "This general inclination and tendency of the language

seems to have given occasion to the introducing of a very great

corruption."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 60. "The second requisite of a perfect

sentence, is its \_Unity\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 311. "It is scarcely

necessary to apologize for omitting to insert their names."--\_Ib.\_, p. vii.

"The letters of the English Language, called the English Alphabet, are

twenty-six in number."--\_Ib.\_, p. 2; \_T. Smith's\_, 5; \_Fisk's\_, 10;

\_Alger's\_, 9; \_et al\_. "A writer who employs antiquated or novel

phraseology, must do it with design: he cannot err from inadvertence as he

may do it with respect to provincial or vulgar expressions."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 56. "The \_Vocative\_ case, in some Grammars, is wholly omitted;

why, if we must have cases, I could never understand the propriety

of."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 45. "Active verbs are conjugated with

the auxiliary verb \_I have\_; passive verbs are conjugated with the

auxiliary verb \_I am\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 57. "What word, then, may \_and\_ be

called? A Conjunction."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 37. "Have they ascertained

the person who gave the information?"--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 81.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE X.--OF IMPROPER OMISSIONS.

"All qualities of things are called adnouns, or adjectives."--\_Blair's

Gram.\_, p. 10.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because this expression lacks two

or three words which are necessary to the sense intended. But according to

Critical Note 10th, "Words necessary to the sense, or even to the melody or

beauty of a sentence, ought seldom, if ever, to be omitted." The sentence

may be amended thus: "All \_words signifying concrete\_ qualities of things,

are called adnouns, or adjectives."]

"The--signifies the long or accented syllable, and the breve indicates a

short or unaccented syllable."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 118. "Whose duty is to

help young ministers."--\_N. E. Discipline\_, p. 78. "The passage is closely

connected with what precedes and follows."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i,

p. 255 "The work is not completed, but soon will be."--\_Smith's Productive

Gram.\_, p. 113. "Of whom hast thou been afraid or feared?"--\_Isaiah\_, lvii,

11. "There is a God who made and governs the world."--\_Butler's Analogy\_,

p. 263. "It was this made them so haughty."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. ii,

p. 102. "How far the whole charge affected him is not easy to determine."--

\_Ib.\_, i, p. 189. "They saw, and worshipped the God, that made them."--

\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 157. "The errors frequent in the use of hyperboles,

arise either from overstraining, or introducing them on unsuitable

occasions."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 256. "The preposition \_in\_ is set

before countries, cities, and large towns; as, 'He lives \_in\_ France, \_in\_

London, or \_in\_ Birmingham.' But before villages, single houses, and cities

which are in distant countries, \_at\_ is used; as, 'He lives \_at\_

Hackney.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 204; \_Dr. Ash's Gram.\_, 60; \_Ingersoll's\_, 232;

\_Smith's\_, 170; \_Fisk's\_, 143; \_et al.\_ "And, in such recollection, the

thing is not figured as in our view, nor any image formed."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 86. "Intrinsic and relative beauty must be handled

separately."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 336. "He should be on his guard not to do

them injustice, by disguising, or placing them in a false light."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 272. "In that work, we are frequently interrupted by unnatural

thoughts."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 275. "To this point have tended all the

rules I have given."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 120. "To these points have tended

all the rules which have been given."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 356.

"Language, as written, or oral, is addressed to the eye, or to the

ear."--\_Lit. Conv.\_, p. 181. "He will learn, Sir, that to accuse and prove

are very different."--\_Walpole\_. "They crowded around the door so as to

prevent others going out."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 17. "One person or thing

is singular number; more than one person or thing is plural number."--\_John

Flint's Gram.\_, p. 27. "According to the sense or relation in which nouns

are used, they are in the NOMINATIVE or POSSESSIVE CASE, thus, \_nom\_. man;

\_poss\_. man's."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 11. "Nouns or pronouns in the

possessive case are placed before the nouns which govern them, to which

they belong."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 130. "A teacher is explaining the

difference between a noun and verb."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p. 72. "And

therefore the two ends, or extremities, must directly answer to the north

and south pole."--HARRIS: \_Joh. Dict., w. Gnomon\_. "\_Walks\_ or \_walketh,

rides\_ or \_rideth, stands\_ or \_standeth\_, are of the third person

singular."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 47. "I grew immediately roguish and

pleasant to a degree, in the same strain."--SWIFT: \_Tattler\_, 31. "An

Anapæst has the first syllables unaccented, and the last accented."--

\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 119. "An Anapæst has the first two syllables

unaccented, and the last accented."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 219; \_Bullions's

Principles\_, 170. "An Anapæst has the two first syllables unaccented, and

the last accented."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 254; \_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, 305;

\_Smith's New Gram.\_, 188; \_Guy's Gram.\_, 120; \_Merchant's\_, 167;

\_Russell's\_, 109; \_Picket's\_, 226. "But hearing and vision differ not more

than words spoken and written."--\_Wilson's Essay on Gram.\_, p. 21. "They

are considered by some prepositions."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_, p.

102. "When those powers have been deluded and gone astray."--\_Philological

Museum\_, i, 642. "They will soon understand this, and like it."--\_Abbott's

Teacher\_, p. 92. "They have been expelled their native country

Romagna."--\_Leigh Hunt, on Byron\_, p. 18. "Future time is expressed two

different ways."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 80; \_Gould's\_, 78. "Such as the

borrowing from history some noted event."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii,

p. 280. "Every Verb must agree with its Nominative in Number and

Person."--\_Burke's Gram.\_, p. 94. "We are struck, we know not how, with the

symmetry of any thing we see."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 268. "Under this

head, I shall consider every thing necessary to a good delivery."--

\_Sheridan's Lect.\_, p. 26. "A good ear is the gift of nature; it may be

much improved, but not acquired by art."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 298.

"'Truth,' A noun, neuter, singular, the nominative."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_,

p. 73. "'Possess,' A verb transitive, present, indicative active,--third

person plural."--\_Ibid.\_, 73. "\_Fear\_ is a noun, neuter, singular, and is

the nominative to (or subject of) \_is\_."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 133. "\_Is\_ is a

verb, intrans., irregular--am, was, been; it is in the present, indicative,

third person singular, and agrees with its nominative \_fear\_. Rule 1. 'A

verb agrees,' &c."--\_Ibid.\_, 133. "\_Ae\_ in \_Gælic\_, has the sound of long

\_a\_."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 29.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XI.--OF LITERARY BLUNDERS.

"Repeat some [adverbs] that are composed of the article \_a\_ and

nouns."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 89.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the grammatist here mistakes for the article

\_a\_, the prefix or preposition \_a\_; as in "\_aside, ashore, afoot, astray\_,"

&c. But, according to Critical Note 11th, "Grave blunders made in the name

of learning, are the strongest of all certificates against the books which

contain them unreproved." The error should be corrected thus: "Repeat some

adverbs that are composed of the \_prefix a, or preposition a\_, and nouns."]

"Participles are so called, because derived from the Latin word

\_participium\_, which signifies \_to partake\_."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_,

p. 18. "The possessive \_follows\_ another noun, and is known by the sign of

'\_s\_ or \_of\_."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 8. "Reciprocal pronouns are formed by

adding \_self\_ or \_selves\_ to the possessive; as, \_myself, yourselves\_."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 10. "The word \_self\_, and its plural \_selves\_, must be considered

nouns, as they occupy the places of nouns, and stand for the names of

them."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 61. "The Dactyl, \_rolls round\_, expresses

beautifully the majesty of the sun in his course."--\_Webster's Philos.

Gram.\_, p. 231; \_Webster's Imp. Gram.\_, p. 165; \_Frazee's Imp. Gram.\_, p.

192. "Prepositions govern the objective case; as, John learned his

lesson."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 153. "Prosody primarily signified

punctuation; and as the name implies, related to stopping \_by the

way\_."--\_Hendrick's Gram.\_, p. 103. "On such a principle of forming modes,

there would be as many modes as verbs; and instead of four modes, we should

have forty-three thousand, which is the number of verbs in the English

language, according to Lowth."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 76. "The following

phrases are elliptical: 'To let \_out\_ blood.' 'To go a hunting:' that is,'

To go on a hunting excursion.'"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 129. "In Rhyme,

the last syllable of every two lines has the same sound."--\_Id., Practical

Lessons\_, p. 129. "The possessive case plural, ending in \_es\_, has the

apostrophe, but omits the \_s\_; as, \_Eagles'\_ wings."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p.

62; \_Abridg.\_, p. 54. "Horses (plural) -mane, [should be written] horses'

mane."--\_Weld', ib.\_, pp. 62 and 54. "W takes its written form from the

union of two \_v\_'s, this being the form of the Roman capital letter which

we call \_V\_."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 1850, p. 157. "In the sentence, 'I saw

the lady who sings,' what \_word\_ do I say sings?"--\_J. Flint's Gram.\_, p.

12. "In the sentence, 'this is the pen which John made,' what \_word\_ do I

say John made?"--\_Ibid.\_ "'That we fall into \_no\_ sin:' \_no\_, an adverb

used idiomatically, instead of we do not fall into any sin."--\_Blair's

Gram.\_, p. 54. "'That \_all\_ our doings may be ordered by thy governance:'

\_all\_, a pronoun used for \_the whole\_."--\_Ibid.\_ "'Let him be made \_to\_

study.' What causes the sign \_to\_ to be expressed before \_study?\_ Its

being used in the passive voice after \_be made\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p.

145. "The following Verbs have neither Preter-Tense nor Passive-participle,

viz. Cast, cut, cost, shut, let, bid, shed, hurt, hit, put, &c."--

\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 60. "The agreement, which \_every\_ word has with

\_the\_ others in person, gender, \_and\_ case, is called CONCORD; and that

power which one \_person of speech\_ has over \_another\_, in respect to ruling

its case, mood, or \_tense\_, is called GOVERNMENT."--\_Bucke's Classical

Gram.\_, p. 83. "The word \_ticks\_ tells what the noun \_watch\_ does."--

\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 15. "\_Breve\_ ([~]) \_marks a short\_ vowel or syllable,

and the dash (--) a long."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 157; \_Lennie\_, 137.

"Charles, you, by your diligence, make easy work of the task given you by

your preceptor.' The first \_you\_ is used in the nom. poss. and obj.

case."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 103. "\_Ouy\_ in \_bouy\_ is a proper tripthong.

\_Eau\_ in flambeau is an improper tripthong."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 255.

"'While I of things to come, As past rehearsing, sing.' POLLOK. That is,

'While I sing of things which are to come, as one sings of things which are

past rehearsing.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 169. "A simple sentence has in it

but one nominative, and one neuter verb."--\_Folker's Gram.\_, p. 14. "An

Irregular Verb is that which has its passed tense and perfect participle

terminating differently; as, smite, smote, smitten."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p.

92. "But when the antecedent is used in a general sense, a comma is

properly inserted before the relative; as, 'There is no \_charm\_ in the

female sex, \_which\_ can supply the place of virtue.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_,

p. 213. "Two capitals in this way denote the plural number; L. D. \_Legis

Doctor\_; LL. D. \_Legum Doctor\_."--\_Gould's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 274. "Was any

person besides the mercer present? Yes, both he and his clerk."--\_Murray's

Key\_, 8vo, p. 188. "\_Adnoun\_, or \_Adjective\_, comes from the Latin, \_ad\_

and \_jicio\_, to \_add to\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 69. "Another figure of

speech, proper only to animated and warm composition, is what some critical

writers call vision; when, \_in place\_ of relating \_some thing that is

past\_, we use the \_present tense\_, and describe \_it\_ as actually \_passing\_

before our eyes. \_Thus Cicero\_, in his fourth oration against Cataline: 'I

seem to myself to behold this city, the ornament of the earth, and the

capital of all nations, suddenly involved in one conflagration. I see

before me the slaughtered heaps of citizens lying unburied in the midst of

their ruined country. The furious countenance of Cethegus rises to my view,

while with a savage joy he is triumphing in \_your\_ miseries.'"--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 171. "Vision is another figure of speech, which is proper only

in animated and warm composition. It is produced when, \_instead\_ of

relating \_something that is past\_, we use the present tense," &c.--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 352. "When several verbs follow one another,

having the same nominative, the auxiliary is frequently \_omitted after the

first\_ through an ellipsis, and understood \_to the rest\_; as, 'He has gone

and left me;' that is, 'He has gone, and \_has\_ left me.' "--\_Comly's

Gram.\_, p. 94. "When I use the word \_pillar\_ as supporting an edifice, I

employ it literally."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, 3d Ed., p. 133. "The conjunction

\_nor\_ is often used for \_neither\_; as,

'Simois \_nor\_ Xanthus shall be wanting there.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 129.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XII.--OF PERVERSIONS.

"In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 330; \_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 179; \_Melmoth, on

Scripture\_, p. 16.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because this reading is false in relation to the

word "\_heavens\_;" nor is it usual to put a comma after the word

"\_beginning\_." But, according to Critical Note 12th, "Proof-tests in

grammar, if not in all argument, should be quoted literally; and even that

which needs to be corrected, must never be perverted." The authorized text

is this: "In the beginning God created the \_heaven\_ and the

earth."--\_Gen.\_, i, 1.]

"Canst thou, by searching, find out the Lord?"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 335.

"Great is the Lord, just and true are thy ways, thou king of

saints."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 171; \_L. Murray's\_, 168; \_Merchant's\_,

90; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 145; \_Ingersoll's\_, 194; \_Ensell's\_, 330; \_Fisk's\_,

104; \_et al\_. "Every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall not enter

into the kingdom of heaven."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 137. "Though he

was rich, yet for our sakes he became poor."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 211;

\_Bullions's\_, 111 and 113; \_Everest's\_, 230; \_Smith's\_, 177; \_et al\_.

"Whose foundation was overflown with a flood."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Job\_,

xxii, 16. "Take my yoke upon ye, for my yoke is easy."--\_The Friend\_, Vol.

iv, p. 150. "I will to prepare a place for you."--\_Weld's E. Gram.\_, 2d

Ed., p. 67. "Ye who are dead hath he quickened."--\_lb.\_, p. 189; Imp. Ed.,

195. "Go, flee thee away into the land of Judea."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 115.

"Hitherto shalt thou come, and no farther."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 222.

"Thine is the day and night."--\_Brown's Concordance\_, p. 82. "Faith worketh

patience; and patience, experience; and experience, hope."--\_O. B. Peirce's

Gram.\_, p. 282. "Soon shall the dust return to dust, and the soul, to God

who gave it. BIBLE."--\_Ib.\_, p. 166. "For, in the end, it biteth like a

serpent, and stingeth like an adder. It will lead thee into destruction,

and cause thee to utter perverse things. Thou wilt be like him who lieth

down in the midst of the sea. BIBLE."--\_Ib.\_, p. 167. "The memory of the

just shall be honored: but the name of the wicked shall rot.

BIBLE."--\_Ib.\_, p. 168. "He that is slow in anger, is better than the

mighty. He that ruleth his spirit, is better than he that taketh a city.

BIBLE."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "The Lord loveth whomsoever he correcteth; as the

father correcteth the son in whom he delighteth. BIBLE."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72.

"The first future tense represents what is to take place hereafter. G.

B."--\_Ib.\_, p. 366. "Teach me to feel another's wo; [and] To hide what

faults I see."--\_Ib.\_, p. 197. "Thy speech bewrayeth thee; for thou art a

Gallilean."--\_Murray's Ex.\_, ii, p. 118. "Thy speech \_betrays\_ thee; for

thou art a Gallilean."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 250. "Strait is the gate,

and narrow the way, that leads to life eternal."--\_Ib., Key\_, p. 172.

"Straight is the gate," &c.--\_Ib., Ex.\_, p. 36. "'Thou buildest the wall,

that thou \_mayst\_ be their king.' \_Neh.\_, vi, 6."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

p. 210. "'There is forgiveness with thee, that thou \_mayst\_ be feared.'

\_Psalms\_, cxxx, 4."--\_Ib.\_, p. 210. "But yesterday, the word, \_Cesar\_,

might Have stood against the world."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 316. "The

northeast spends its rage. THOMSON."--\_Joh. Dict., w. Effusive.\_ "Tells how

the drudging goblet swet. MILTON."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 263. "And to

his faithful servant hath in place \_Bore\_ witness gloriously. SAM.

AGON."--\_Ib.\_, p. 266. "Then, if thou fallest, O Cromwell, Thou fallest a

blessed martyr."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 190. "I see the dagger-crest of

Mar, I see the \_Morays'\_ silver star, \_Waves\_ o'er the cloud of Saxon war,

That up the lake \_came\_ winding far!--SCOTT."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_,

p. 143. "Each \_bird, and\_ each insect, \_is\_ happy in its \_kind\_."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 85. "\_They who are\_ learning to \_compose and\_ arrange \_their\_ sentences

with accuracy and order, \_are\_ learning, at the same time, to think with

accuracy and order. BLAIR."--\_Ib.\_, p. 176; \_L. Murray's Gram.\_,

Title-page, 8vo and 12mo. "We, then, as workers together with \_you\_,

beseech you also, that ye receive not the grace of God in vain."--\_James

Brown's Eng. Syntax\_, p. 129. "And on the \_bounty\_ of thy goodness

calls."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 246. "Knowledge dwells In heads replete

with thoughts of other men; Wisdom, in minds \_retentive\_ to their own.

COWPER."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 172. "\_Oh!\_ let me listen to the

\_word\_ of life. THOMSON."--\_Ib.\_, p. 155. "Save that from yonder

ivy-mantled \_bower\_, &c. GRAY'S ELEGY."--\_Tooke's Div. of Purley\_, Vol. i,

p. 116. "\_Weigh\_ the \_mens\_ wits against the \_ladies hairs\_. POPE."--\_Dr.

Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 6. "\_Weigh\_ the men's wits against the \_women's

hairs\_. POPE."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 214. "\_Prior\_ to the publication of

Lowth's \_excellent little grammar\_, the grammatical study of our \_own\_

language, formed no part of the ordinary method of instruction. HILEY'S

PREFACE."--\_Dr. Bullions's E. Gram.\_, 1843, p. 189. "Let there be no strife

betwixt me and thee."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p. 143.

"What! canst thou not bear with me half an hour?--SHARP."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 185.

"Till then who knew the force of those dire dreams.--MILTON."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 186.

"In words, as fashions, the rule will hold,

Alike fantastic, if too new or old:"

--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 136.

"Be not the first, by whom the new \_is\_ tried,

Nor yet the last, to lay the old aside."

--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 104.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XIII.--OF AWKWARDNESS.

"They slew Varus, who was he that I mentioned before."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 194.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrase, "\_who was he that\_," is here

prolix and awkward. But, according to Critical Note 13th, "Awkwardness, or

inelegance of expression, is a reprehensible defect in style, whether it

violate any of the common rules of syntax or not." This example may be

improved thus: "They slew Varus, \_whom\_ I mentioned before."]

"Maria rejected Valerius, who was he that she had rejected

before."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 174. "The English in its substantives

has but two different terminations for cases."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 18.

"Socrates and Plato were wise; they were the most eminent philosophers of

Greece."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 149; \_et al.\_ "Whether one

person or more than one, were concerned in the business, does not yet

appear."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 184. "And that, consequently, the verb

and pronoun agreeing with it, cannot with propriety, be ever used in the

plural number."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 153; \_Ingersoll's\_, 249; \_et al.\_ "A

second help may be the conversing frequently and freely with those of your

own sex who are like minded."--\_John Wesley\_. "Four of the semi-vowels,

namely, \_l, m, n, r\_, are also distinguished by the name of \_liquids\_, from

their readily uniting with other consonants, and flowing as it were into

their sounds."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 8; \_Churchill's\_, 5; \_Alger's\_, 11;

\_et al.\_ "Some conjunctions have \_their\_ correspondent conjunctions

\_belonging to them\_: so that, \_in\_ the subsequent member of the sentence

the \_latter answers\_ to the former."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 109: \_Adam's\_,

209; \_Gould's\_, 205; \_L. Murray's\_, 211; \_Ingersoll's\_, 268; \_Fisk's\_, 137;

\_Churchill's\_, 153; \_Fowler's\_, 562; \_et al.\_ "The mutes are those

consonants, whose sounds cannot be protracted. The \_semi-vowels, such

whose\_ sounds can be continued \_at pleasure, partaking\_ of the nature of

vowels, from \_which\_ they derive their name."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p 9; \_et

al.\_ "The pronoun of the third person, of the masculine and feminine

gender, is sometimes used as a noun, and regularly declined: as, 'The

\_hes\_ in birds.' BACON. 'The \_shes\_ of Italy.' SHAK."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_,

p. 73. "The following \_examples\_ also \_of\_ separation of a preposition from

the word which it governs, \_is\_ improper \_in common writings\_."--\_C.

Adams's Gram.\_, p. 103. "The word \_whose\_ begins likewise to be restricted

to persons, but \_it\_ is not \_done\_ so generally but that good writers, and

even in prose, use it when speaking of things."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p.

99; \_L. Murray's\_, 157; \_Fisk's\_, 115; \_et al.\_ "There are new and

surpassing wonders present themselves to our views."--\_Sherlock\_.

"Inaccuracies are often found in the way wherein the degrees of comparison

are applied and construed."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 202. "Inaccuracies are

often found in the way in which the degrees of comparison are applied and

construed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 167; \_Smith's\_, 144; \_Ingersoll's\_, 193;

\_et al.\_ "The connecting circumstance is placed too remotely, to be either

perspicuous or agreeable."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 177. "Those tenses are

called simple tenses, which are formed of the principal without an

auxiliary verb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91. "The nearer \_that\_ men approach to \_each

other\_, the more numerous are their points of contact and the greater will

be their pleasures or their pains."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 275. "This is

the machine that he is the inventor of."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p. 124. "To

give this sentence the interrogative form, it should be expressed

thus."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 279. "Never employ those words which may

be susceptible of a sense different from the sense you intend to be

conveyed."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 152. "Sixty pages are occupied in

explaining what would not require more than ten or twelve to be explained

according to the ordinary method."--\_Ib., Pref.\_, p. ix. "The present

participle in \_-ing\_ always expresses an action, or the suffering of an

action, or the being, state, or condition of a thing as \_continuing\_ and

\_progressive\_."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 57. "The \_Present participle of

all active verbs[457]\_ has an active signification; as, James \_is building\_

the house. \_In many of these\_, however, \_it has also\_ a passive

\_signification\_; as, \_the\_ house \_was building when the wall fell\_."--\_Id.,

ib.\_, 2d or 4th Ed., p. 57. "Previous to parsing this sentence, it may be

analyzed to the young pupil by such questions as the following,

viz."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 73. "Subsequent to that period, however, attention

has been paid to this important subject."--\_Ib.\_, New Ed., p. 189; \_Hiley's

Preface\_, p. vi. "A definition of a word is an explanation in what sense

the word is used, or what idea or object we mean by it, and which may be

expressed by any one or more of the properties, effects, or circumstances

of that object, so as sufficiently to distinguish it from other

objects."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 245.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XIV.--OF IGNORANCE.

"What is an Asserter? It is \_the part of speech\_ which asserts."--\_O. B.

Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 20.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the term "\_Asserter\_" which is here put for

\_Verb\_, is both ignorantly misspelled, and whimsically misapplied. But,

according to Critical Note 14th, "Any use of words that implies ignorance

of their meaning, or of their proper orthography, is particularly

unscholarlike; and, in proportion to the author's pretensions to learning,

disgraceful." The errors here committed might have been avoided thus: "What

is \_a verb\_? It is \_a word\_ which signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to be

acted upon\_." Or thus: "What is an \_assertor\_? Ans. 'One who affirms

positively; an affirmer, supporter, or vindicator.'--\_Webster's Dict.\_"]

"Virgil wrote the Ænead."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 56. "Which, to a

supercilious or inconsiderate Japaner, would seem very idle and

impertinent."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 225. "Will not a look of disdain cast

upon you, throw you into a foment?"--\_Life of Th. Say\_, p. 146. "It may be

of use to the scholar, to remark in this place, that though only the

conjunction \_if\_ is affixed to the verb, any other conjunction proper for

the subjunctive mood, may, with equal propriety, be occasionally

annexed."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 93. "When proper names have an article

annexed to them, they are used as common names."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 25; \_et al.\_ "When a proper noun has an article annexed to

it, it is used as a common noun."--\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 25. "Seeming to

disenthral the death-field of its terrors."--\_Ib.\_, p. 109. "For the same

reason, we might, without any disparagement to the language, dispense with

the terminations of our verbs in the singular."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 50.

"It diminishes all possibility of being misunderstood."--\_Abbott's

Teacher\_, p. 175. "Approximation to excellence is all that we can

expect."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. "I have often joined in singing with musicianists

at Norwich."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 274. "When not standing in regular

prosic order."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 281. "Disregardless of the

dogmas and edicts of the philosophical umpire."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 75.

"Others begin to talk before their mouths are open, affixing the

mouth-closing M to most of their words--as M-yes for Yes."--\_Music of

Nature\_, p. 28. "That noted close of his, \_esse videatur\_, exposed him to

censure among his cotemporaries."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 127. "OWN. Formerly,

a man's \_own\_ was what he \_worked for, own\_ being a past participle of a

verb signifying to \_work\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 71. "As [requires] so:

expressing a comparison of quality: as, '\_As\_ the one dieth, \_so\_ dieth the

other.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 212; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 177; \_and many

others\_. "To obey our parents is a solemn duty."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_,

Part I, p. 67. "Most all the political papers of the kingdom have touched

upon these things."--H. C. WRIGHT: \_Liberator\_, Vol. xiv, p. 22. "I shall

take leave to make a few observations upon the subject."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_,

p. iii. "His loss I have endeavoured to supply, as far as additional

vigilance and industry would allow."--\_Ib.\_, p. xi. "That they should make

vegetation so exhuberant as to anticipate every want."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_,

p. 43. "The quotors " " which denote that one or more words are extracted

from another author."--\_Day's District School Gram.\_, p. 112. "Ninevah and

Assyria were two of the most noted cities of ancient history."--\_Ib.\_, p.

32 and p. 88. "Ninevah, the capital of Assyria, \_is\_ a celebrated ancient

city."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "It may, however, be rendered definite by introducing

some definition of time; as, yesterday, last week, &c."--\_Bullions's E.

Gram.\_, p. 40. "The last is called heroic measure, and is the same that is

used by Milton, Young, Thompson, Pollock, &c."--\_Id., Practical Lessons\_,

p. 129. "Perrenial ones must be sought in the delightful regions

above."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 194. "Intransitive verbs are those which are

inseperable from the effect produced."--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 31. "Femenine

gender, belongs to women, and animals of the female kind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 15.

"\_Woe!\_ unto you scribes and pharasees."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 74. "A pyrrick,

which has both its syllables short."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114. "What kind of

Jesamine? a Jesamine in flower, or a flowery Jesamine."--\_Barrett's Gram.\_,

10th Ed., p. 53. "\_Language\_, derived from 'linguæ,' the tongue, is the

\_faculty\_ of communicating our thoughts to \_each\_ other, by proper words,

used by common consent, as signs of our ideas."--\_Ib.\_, p. 9. "Say \_none\_,

not \_nara\_"--\_Staniford's Gram.\_, p. 81. "ARY ONE, for either."--\_Pond's

Larger Gram.\_, p. 194. (See Obs. 24th, on the Syntax of Adverbs, and the

Note at the bottom of the page.)

"Earth loses thy \_patron\_ for ever and aye;

O sailor boy! sailor boy! peace to thy soul."

--\_S. Barrett's Gram.\_, 1837, p. 116.

"His brow was sad, his eye beneath,

Flashed like a halcyon from its sheath."

--\_Liberator\_, Vol. 12, p. 24.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XV.--OF SILLINESS AND TRUISMS.

"Such is the state of man, that he is never at rest."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 57.

[FORMULE.--This is a remark of no wisdom or force, because it would be

nearer the truth, to say, "Such is the state of man, that he \_must often\_

rest," But, according to Critical Note 15th, "Silly remarks and idle

truisms are traits of a feeble style, and when their weakness is positive,

or inherent, they ought to be entirely omitted." It is useless to attempt a

correction of this example, for it is not susceptible of any form worth

preserving.]

"Participles belong to the nouns or pronouns to which they

relate."--\_Wells's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 153. "Though the measure is

mysterious, it is worthy of attention."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 221.

"Though the measure is \_mysterious\_, it is not unworthy your

attention."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, pp. 197 and 227. "The inquietude of his

mind made his station and wealth far from being enviable."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 250. "By rules so general and comprehensive as these are [,] the

clearest ideas are conveyed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 273. "The mind of man cannot be

long without some food to nourish the activity of its thoughts."--\_Ib.\_, p.

185. "Not having known, or not having considered, the measures proposed, he

failed of success."--\_Ib.\_, p. 202. "Not having known or considered the

subject, he made a crude decision."--\_Ib.\_, p. 275. "Not to exasperate him,

I spoke only a very few words."--\_Ib.\_, p. 257. "These are points too

trivial, to be noticed. They are objects with which I am totally

unacquainted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 275. "Before we close this section, it may afford

instruction to the learners, to be informed, more particularly than they

have been."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 110. "The articles are often properly

omitted: when used, they should be justly applied, according to their

distinct nature."--\_Ib.\_, p. 170; \_Alger's\_, 60. "Any thing, which is done

now, is supposed to be done at the present time."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p.

34. "Any thing which was done yesterday is supposed to be done in past

time."--\_Ib.\_, 34. "Any thing which may be done hereafter, is supposed to

be done in future time."--\_Ib.\_, 34. "When the mind compares two things in

reference to each other, it performs the operation of comparing."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 244. "The persons, with whom you dispute, are not of your

opinion."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_, p. 124. "But the preposition \_at\_

is \_always used\_ when it \_follows the neuter Verb\_ in the same Case: as, 'I

have been \_at\_ London.'"--\_Dr. Ash's Gram.\_, p. 60. "But the preposition

\_at\_ is \_generally used\_ after the neuter verb \_to be\_: as, 'I have been

\_at\_ London.'"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 203; \_Ingersoll's\_, 231; \_Fisk's\_,

143; \_et al.\_ "The article \_the\_ has sometimes a \_different\_ effect, in

distinguishing a person by an epithet."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 172. "The

article \_the\_ has, sometimes, a fine effect, in distinguishing a person by

an epithet."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 151. "Some nouns have plurals

belonging only to themselves."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 26. "Sentences

are either simple or compound."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 68. "All sentences are

either simple or compound."--\_Gould's Adam's Gram.\_, p. 155. "The definite

article \_the\_ belongs to nouns in the singular or plural

number."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, Rule 2d, p. 156. "Where a riddle is not

intended, it is \_always a fault\_ in allegory to be \_too dark\_."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 151; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 343. "There may be an \_excess in too

many\_ short sentences \_also\_; by \_which\_ the sense is split and

broken."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 101. "Are there any nouns you cannot see,

hear, or feel, but only think of? Name such a noun."--\_Infant School

Gram.\_, p. 17. "\_Flock\_ is of the singular number, it denotes but one

flock--and in the nominative case, it is the \_active agent\_ of the

verb."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 58. "The article THE \_agrees\_ with nouns of

the \_singular or plural\_ number."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, p. 8. "The

admiral bombarded Algiers, which has been continued."--\_Nixon's Parser\_, p.

128. "The world demanded freedom, which might have been expected."--\_Ibid.\_

"The past tense represents an action as past and finished, either with or

without respect to the time when."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 22. "That boy rode

the \_wicked\_ horse."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 42. "The snake

\_swallowed itself\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 57. "\_Do\_ is sometimes used when \_shall or

should\_ is omitted; as, 'if thou \_do\_ repent.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 85. "SUBJUNCTIVE

MOOD. This mood \_has the tenses of the indicative\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 87. "As

\_nouns never speak\_, they are never in the first person."--\_Davis's

Practical Gram.\_, p. 148. "Nearly \_all parts\_ of speech are \_used more or

less\_ in an \_elliptical sense\_."--\_Day's District School Gram.\_, p. 80.

"RULE. No word in a period can have any greater \_extension\_ than the

\_other\_ words \_or sections\_ in the same sentence \_will give\_

it."--\_Barrett's Revised Gram.\_, p. 38 and p. 43. "Words used exclusively

as Adverbs, should not be used as adjectives."--\_Clark's Practical Gram.\_,

p. 166. "Adjectives used in Predication, should not take the Adverbial

form."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 167 and 173.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XVI.--OF THE INCORRIGIBLE.

"And this state of things belonging to the painter governs it in the

possessive case."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 195; \_Ingersoll's\_, 201; \_et al.\_

[FORMULE.--This composition is incorrigibly bad. The participle

"\_belonging\_" which seems to relate to "\_things\_," is improperly meant to

qualify "\_state\_." And the "\_state of things\_," (which \_state\_ really

belongs \_only to the things\_,) is absurdly supposed to belong to a

\_person\_--i. e., "\_to the painter\_." Then this \_man\_, to whom the "state of

things" is said to belong, is forthwith called "\_it\_," and nonsensically

declared to be "in the possessive case." But, according to Critical Note

16th, "Passages too erroneous for correction, may be criticised, orally or

otherwise, and then passed over without any attempt to amend them."

Therefore, no correction is attempted here.]

"Nouns or pronouns, following the verb \_to be\_; or the words \_than, but,

as\_; or that answer the question \_who?\_ have the same case \_after as

preceded\_ them."--\_Beck's Gram.\_, p. 29. "The common gender is \_when\_ the

noun may be either masculine or feminine."--\_Frost's Gram.\_, p. 8. "The

possessive is generally pronounced the same as if the \_s\_ were

added."--\_Alden's Gram.\_, p. 11. "For, assuredly, as soon as men \_had got\_

beyond simple interjections, and began to communicate \_themselves\_ by

discourse, they would be under a necessity of assigning names to the

objects they \_saw around\_ them, \_which\_ in grammatical language, \_is called

the invention\_ of substantive nouns."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 72. "Young

children will learn to form letters as \_soon\_, if not \_readier, than they\_

will when older."--\_Taylor's District School\_, p. 159. "This comparing

words with one another, constitutes what is called the \_degrees\_ of

comparison."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 29. "Whenever a noun is \_immediately

annexed\_ to a \_preceding neuter\_ verb, it \_expresses either\_ the same

notion \_with\_ the verb, or denotes only \_the\_ circumstance of the

\_action."\_--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 73. "Two or more nouns or pronouns joined

\_singular\_ together by the conjunction \_and, must have verbs\_ agreeing with

them in the plural number."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 129. "Possessive and

demonstrative pronouns agree with their nouns in number and case; as, 'my

brother,' 'this slate, 'these slates.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 130. "Participles which

have no relation to time are used either as adjectives or as

substantives."--\_Maunder's Gram.\_, p. 1. "They are in use only in some of

their times and modes; and in some of them are a composition of times of

several defective verbs, having the same signification."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_,

p. 59. "When \_words\_ of the possessive case \_that are\_ in apposition,

\_follow one another\_ in quick succession, the possessive sign should be

annexed to the \_last only\_, and \_understood\_ to the rest; as, 'For David,

my servant's sake.'"--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 92. "\_By this order\_, the first

nine \_rules\_ accord with \_those\_ which respect the \_rules\_ of concord; and

the \_remainder include\_, though \_they\_ extend beyond the \_rules\_ of

government."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 143. "\_Own\_ and \_self\_, in the plural

\_selves\_, are \_joined\_ to the possessives, \_my, our, thy, your, his, her,

their\_; as, \_my own\_ hand, \_myself, yourselves\_; both of them expressing

emphasis or opposition, as, 'I did it \_my own self\_,' that is, \_and\_ no one

else; the latter also forming the reciprocal pronoun, as, 'he hurt

\_himself\_.'"--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 25. "A \_flowing\_ copious style,

therefore, is required \_in\_ all public speakers; \_guarding\_, at the \_same

time\_, against such a degree of \_diffusion\_, as renders \_them\_ languid and

tiresome; \_which\_ will always \_prove the case\_, when they \_inculcate\_ too

much, and present the \_same thought\_ under \_too many\_ different

views."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 177. "As sentences should be cleared of

redundant words, so also of redundant members. As every word ought to

present a new idea, so every member ought to contain a new thought. Opposed

to \_this\_, stands the fault we sometimes meet with, of the \_last\_ member of

a period \_being\_ no other than \_the\_ echo of the \_former\_, or \_the\_

repetition of it in \_somewhat\_ a different form." [458]--\_Ib.\_, p. 111.

"\_Which\_ always refers grammatically to the substantive \_immediately

preceding\_: [as,] 'It is folly to pretend, by heaping up treasures, to arm

ourselves against the accidents of \_life, which\_ nothing can protect us

against, but the good providence of our heavenly Father.'"--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 311; \_Maunder's\_, p. 18; \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 105. "The English

\_adjectives\_, having but a very limited syntax, \_is classed\_ with \_its\_

kindred \_article\_, the \_adjective pronoun\_, under the eighth rule."--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 143. "When a \_substantive\_ is put \_absolutely\_,

and does \_not agree\_ with the following verb, it \_remains independent on\_

the participle, and \_is called\_ the \_case\_ absolute, or the \_nominative\_

absolute."--\_Ib.\_, p. 195. "It will, doubtless, \_sometimes\_ happen, that,

on \_this occasion\_, as well as on many \_other occasions\_, a strict

adherence to grammatical rules, \_would\_ render \_the\_ language stiff and

formal: but when \_cases of this sort\_ occur, it is better to give the

expression a \_different\_ turn, than to violate \_grammar\_ for the sake of

\_ease\_, or even of \_elegance\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 208. "Number, which

distinguishes \_objects\_ as \_singly\_ or \_collectively\_, must have been

coeval with the very infancy of language"--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 25. "The

article \_a\_ or \_an\_ agrees with nouns \_in\_ the singular number \_only,

individually\_ or \_collectively\_."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 170; \_and

others\_. "No language is perfect \_because it is\_ a human

invention."--\_Parker and Fox's Grammar\_, Part III, p. 112. "The

\_participles\_, or as they may properly be termed, \_forms\_ of the verb in

the \_second infinitive\_, usually \_precedes another\_ verb, and \_states\_ some

fact, or event, from which an \_inference\_ is drawn \_by that verb\_; as, 'the

sun \_having arisen\_, they departed.'"--\_Day's Grammar\_, 2nd Ed., p. 36.

"They must describe \_what has happened\_ as having done so in the past \_or

the present\_ time, or as \_likely to occur\_ in the future."--\_The

Well-Wishers' Grammar, Introd.\_, p. 5. "Nouns are either male, female, or

neither."--\_Fowle's Common School Grammar\_, Part Second, p. 12. "Possessive

\_Adjectives\_ express possession, and distinguish \_nouns\_ from \_each\_ other

by showing \_to what\_ they belong; as, \_my hat, John's\_ hat."--\_Ib.\_, p. 31.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES OF FALSE SYNTAX.

LESSON I.--VARIOUS RULES.

"What is the reason that our language is less refined than that of Italy,

Spain, or France?"--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 185. "What is the reason that

our language is less refined than that of France?"--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p.

152. "'I believe your Lordship will agree with me, in the reason why our

language is less refined than those of Italy, Spain, or France.' DEAN

SWIFT. Even in this short sentence, we may discern an inaccuracy--'why our

language is less refined than \_those\_ of Italy, Spain, or France;' putting

the pronoun \_those\_ in the plural, when the antecedent substantive to which

it refers is in the singular, \_our language\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 228.

"The sentence might have been made to run much better in this way; 'why our

language is less refined than the Italian, Spanish, or French.'"--\_Ibid.\_

"But when arranged in an entire sentence, which they must be to make a

complete sense, they show it still more evidently."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 65. "This is a more artificial and refined construction than that, in

which the common connective is simply made use of."--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. "We

shall present the reader with a list of Prepositions, which are derived

from the Latin and Greek languages."--\_Ib.\_, p. 120. "Relatives comprehend

the meaning of a pronoun and conjunction copulative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 126.

"Personal pronouns being used to supply the place of the noun, are not

employed in the same part of the sentence as the noun which they

represent."--\_Ib.\_, p. 155; \_R. C. Smith's Gram.\_, 131. "There is very

seldom any occasion for a substitute in the same part where the principal

word is present."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 155. "We hardly consider little

children as persons, because that term gives us the idea of reason and

reflection."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 98; \_Murray's\_, 157; \_Smith's\_, 133;

\_and others\_. "The occasion of exerting each of these qualities is

different."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 95; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 302; \_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, 66. "I'll tell you who time ambles withal, who time trots withal,

who time gallops withal and who he stands still withal. I pray thee, who

doth he trot withal?"--\_Shakspeare\_. "By greatness, I do not only mean the

bulk of any single object, but the largeness of a whole view."--\_Addison\_.

"The question may then be put, What does he more than mean?"--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 103. "The question might be put, what more does he than only

mean?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 204. "He is surprised to find himself got to so great a

distance, from the object with which he at first set out."--\_Ib.\_, p. 108.

"He is surprised to find himself at so great a distance from the object

with which he sets out."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 313. "Few precise rules can

be given, which will hold without exception in all cases."--\_Ib.\_, p. 267;

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 115. "Versification is the arrangement of a certain

number of syllables according to certain laws."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_, p.

13. "Versification is the arrangement of a certain number and variety of

syllables, according to certain laws."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 252; R. C.

Smith's, 187; and others. "Charlotte, the friend of Amelia, to whom no one

imputed blame, was too prompt in her own vindication."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 273. "Mr. Pitt, joining the war party in 1793, the most striking

and the most fatal instance of this offence, is the one which at once

presents itself."--\_Brougham's Sketches\_, Vol. i, p. 57. "To the framing

such a sound constitution of mind."--\_The American Lady\_, p. 132. "'I

beseech you,' said St. Paul to his Ephesian converts, 'that ye walk worthy

the vocation wherewith ye are called.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 208. "So as to prevent

its being equal to that."--\_Booth's Introd.\_, p. 88. "When speaking of an

action's being performed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 89. "And, in all questions of an

action's being so performed, \_est\_ is added to the second person."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 72. "No account can be given of this, than that custom has blinded their

eyes."--\_Dymond's Essays\_, p. 269.

"Design, or chance, make other wive;

But nature did this match contrive."--\_Waller\_, p. 24.

LESSON II.--VARIOUS RULES.

"I suppose each of you think it is your own nail."--\_Abbott's Teacher\_, p.

58. "They are useless, from their being apparently based upon this

supposition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 71. "The form and manner, in which this plan may

be adopted, is various."--\_Ib.\_, p. 83. "Making intellectual effort, and

acquiring knowledge, are always pleasant to the human mind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 85.

"This will do more than the best lecture which ever was delivered."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 90. "Doing easy things is generally dull work."--\_Ib.\_, p. 92. "Such is

the tone and manner of some teachers."--\_Ib.\_, p. 118. "Well, the fault is,

being disorderly at prayer time."--\_Ib.\_, p. 153. "Do you remember speaking

on this subject in school?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 154. "The course above recommended,

is not trying lax and inefficient measures."--\_Ib.\_, p. 156. "Our community

is agreed that there is a God."--\_Ib.\_, p. 163. "It prevents their being

interested in what is said."--\_Ib.\_, p. 175. "We will also suppose that I

call another boy to me, who I have reason to believe to be a sincere

Christian."--\_Ib.\_, p. 180. "Five minutes notice is given by the

bell."--\_Ib.\_, p. 211. "The Annals of Education gives notice of

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 240. "Teacher's meetings will be interesting and

useful."--\_Ib.\_, p. 243. "She thought an half hour's study would conquer

all the difficulties."--\_Ib.\_, p. 257. "The difference between an honest

and an hypocritical confession."--\_Ib.\_, p. 263. "There is no point of

attainment where we must stop."--\_Ib.\_, p. 267. "Now six hours is as much

as is expected of teachers."--\_Ib.\_, p. 268. "How much is seven times

nine?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 292. "Then the reckoning proceeds till it come to \_ten

hundred\_."--\_Frost's Practical Gram.\_, p. 170. "Your success will depend on

your own exertions; see, then, that you are diligent."--\_Ib.\_, p. 142.

"Subjunctive Mood, Present Tense: If I am known, If thou art known. If he

is known: etc."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91. "If I be loved, If thou be loved, If he be

loved;" &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 85. "An Interjection is a word used to express

sudden emotion. They are so called, because they are generally thrown in

between the parts of a sentence without any reference to the structure of

the other parts of it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 35. "The Cardinals are those which

simplify or denote number; as one, two, three."--\_Ib.\_, p. 31. "More than

one organ is concerned in the utterance of almost every consonant."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 21. "To extract from them all the Terms we make use in our Divisions and

Subdivisions of the Art."--\_Holmes's Rhetoric\_, Pref. "And there was

written therein lamentations, and mourning, and woe."--\_Ezekiel\_, ii, 10.

"If I were to be judged as to my behaviour, compared with that of

John's."--\_Josephus\_, Vol. 5, p. 172. "When the preposition \_to\_ signifies

\_in order to\_, it used to be preceded by \_for\_, which is now almost

obsolete; What went ye out \_for to\_ see."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 132.

"This makes the proper perfect tense, which, in English, is always

expressed by the help of the auxiliary verb, 'I have written.'"--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 82. "Indeed, in the formation of character, personal exertion is

the first, the second, and the third virtues."--\_Sanders, Spelling-Book\_,

p. 93. "The reducing them to the condition of the beasts that

perish."--\_Dymond's Essays\_, p. 67. "Yet this affords no reason to deny

that the nature of the gift is not the same, or that both are not

divine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 68. "If God have made known his will."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98.

"If Christ have prohibited them, [i.e., oaths,] nothing else can prove them

right."--\_Ib.\_, p. 150 "That the taking them is wrong, every man who simply

consults his own heart, will know."--\_Ib.\_, p. 163. "These evils would be

spared the world, if one did not write."--\_Ib.\_, p. 168. "It is in a great

degree our own faults."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200. "It is worthy observation that

lesson-learning is nearly excluded."--\_Ib.\_, p. 212. "Who spares the

aggressor's life even to the endangering his own."--\_Ib.\_, p. 227. "Who

advocates the taking the life of an aggressor."--\_Ib.\_, p. 229. "And thence

up to the intentionally and voluntary fraudulent."--\_Ib.\_, p. 318. "'And

the contention was so great among them, that they departed asunder, one

from \_an\_other.'--\_Acts\_, xv. 39."--\_Rev. Matt. Harrison's English Lang.\_,

p. 235. "Here the man is John, and John is the man; so the words are \_the

imagination and the fancy\_, and \_the imagination and the fancy\_ are the

\_words\_."--\_Harrison's E. Lang.\_, p. 227. "The article, which is here so

emphatic in the Greek, is lost sight of in our translation."--\_Ib.\_, p.

223. "We have no less than thirty pronouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 166. "It will admit

of a pronoun being joined to it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 137. "From intercourse and

from conquest, all the languages of Europe participate with each

other."--\_Ib.\_, p. 104. "It is not always necessity, therefore, that has

been the cause of our introducing terms derived from the classical

languages."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. "The man of genius stamps upon it any

impression that he pleases."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90. "The proportion of names ending

in \_son\_ preponderate greatly among the Dano-Saxon population of the

North."--\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "As a proof of the strong similarity between the

English and the Danish languages."--\_Ib.\_, p. 37. "A century from the time

that Hengist and Horsa landed on the Isle of Thanet."--\_Ib.\_, p. 27.

"I saw the colours waving in the wind,

And they within, to mischief how combin'd."--\_Bunyan\_.

LESSON III.--VARIOUS RULES.

"A ship expected: of whom we say, \_she\_ sails well."--\_Ben Jonson's Gram.\_,

Chap. 10. "Honesty is reckoned little worth."--\_Paul's Accidence\_, p. 58.

"Learn to esteem life as it ought."--\_Economy of Human Life\_, p. 118. "As

the soundest health is less perceived than the lightest malady, so the

highest joy toucheth us less deep than the smallest sorrow."--\_Ib.\_, p.

152. "Being young is no apology for being frivolous."--\_Whiting's

Elementary Reader\_, p. 117. "The porch was the same width with the

temple."--\_Milman's Jews\_, Vol. i. p. 208. "The other tribes neither

contributed to his rise or downfall."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i. p. 165. "His whole

laws and religion would have been shaken to its foundation."--\_Ib.\_, Vol.

i. p. 109. "The English has most commonly been neglected, and children

taught only the Latin syntax."--\_Lily's Gram., Pref.\_, p. xi. "They are not

taken notice of in the notes."--\_Ib.\_, p. x. "He walks in righteousness,

doing what he would be done to."--\_S. Fisher's Works\_, p. 14. "They stand

independently on the rest of the sentence."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 151.

"My uncle, with his son, were in town yesterday."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p.

142. "She with her sisters are well."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143. "His purse, with its

contents, were abstracted from his pocket."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143. "The great

constitutional feature of this institution being, that directly the

acrimony of the last election is over, the acrimony of the next

begins."--\_Dickens's Notes\_, p. 27. "His disregarding his parents' advice

has brought him into disgrace."--\_Farnum's Pract. Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 19.

"Error: Can you tell me the reason of his father making that

remark?--\_Ib.\_, p. 93. Cor.: Can you tell me the reason of his father's

making that remark?"--See \_Farnum's Gram.\_, Rule 12th. p. 76. "Error: What

is the reason of our teacher detaining us so long?--\_Ib.\_, p. 76. Cor.:

What is the reason of our \_teacher's\_ detaining us so long?"--See \_Ib.\_

"Error: I am certain of the boy having said so. Correction: I am certain of

the \_boy's\_ having said so."--\_Exercises in Farnum's Gram.\_, p. 76.

"\_Which\_ means any thing or things before-named; and \_that\_ may represent

any person or persons, thing or things, which have been speaking, spoken to

or spoken of."--\_Dr. Perley's Gram.\_, p. 9. "A certain number of syllables

connected, form a foot. They are called \_feet\_, because it is by their aid

that the voice, as it were, steps along."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 252; \_C.

Adams's\_, 121. "Asking questions with a principal verb--as, \_Teach I? Burns

he\_, &c. are barbarisms, and carefully to be avoided."--\_Alex. Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 122. "Tell whether the 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, 22d, or 23d Rules

are to be used, and repeat the Rule."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, Part I, p.

4. "The resolution was adopted without much deliberation, which caused

great dissatisfaction."--\_Ib.\_, p. 71. "The man is now taken much notice of

by the people thereabouts."--\_Edward's First Lessons in Gram.\_, p. 42.

"The sand prevents their sticking to one another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 84.

"Defective Verbs are those which are used only in some of their moods and

tenses."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 108; \_Guy's\_, 42; \_Russell's\_, 46;

\_Bacon's\_, 42; \_Frost's\_, 40; \_Alger's\_, 47; \_S. Putnam's\_, 47;

\_Goldsbury's\_, 54; \_Felton's\_, 59; and \_others\_. "Defective verbs are those

which want some of their moods and tenses."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 47;

\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, 65; \_Practical Lessons\_, 75. "Defective Verbs want

some of their parts."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, p. 78. "A Defective verb is

one that wants some of its parts."--\_Bullions, Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_,

1849, p. 101. "To the irregular verbs are to be added the defective; which

are not only for the most part irregular, but also wanting in some of their

parts."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 59. "To the irregular verbs are to be added

the defective; which are not only wanting in some of their parts, but are,

when inflected, irregular."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 112. "When two or more

nouns succeed each other in the possessive case."--\_Farnum's Gram.\_, 2d

Ed., pp. 20 and 63. "When several short sentences succeed each

other."--\_Ib.\_, p. 113. "Words are divided into ten Classes, and are called

PARTS OF SPEECH."--\_Ainsworth's Gram.\_, p. 8. "A Passive Verb has its

\_agent\_ or \_doer\_ always in the objective case, and is governed by a

preposition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 40. "I am surprised at your negligent attention."

\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "SINGULAR: Thou lovest or you love. \_You\_ has always a plural

verb."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 43. "How do you know that \_love\_ is the

first person? \_Ans\_. Because \_we\_ is the first personal pronoun."--\_Id.,

ib.\_, p. 47; \_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 26. "The lowing herd wind slowly round

the lea."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 96. "Iambic verses have every second,

fourth, and other even syllables accented."--\_Ib.\_, p. 170. "Contractions

are often made in poetry, which are not allowable in prose."--\_Ib.\_, p.

179. "Yet to their general's voice they all obeyed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 179. "It

never presents to his mind but one new subject at the same

time."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, 1st edition, p. 6. "When the name of a quality is

abstracted, that is separated from its substance, it is called an abstract

noun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 9. "Nouns are in the \_first\_ person when

speaking."--\_Ib.\_, p. 9. "Which of the two brothers are

graduates?"--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 59. "I am a linen draper bold, as you

and all the world doth know."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. "O the bliss, the pain of

dying!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. "This do; take you censers, Korah, and all his

company."--\_Numbers\_, xvi, 6. "There are two participles,--the \_present\_

and \_perfect\_; as, \_reading, having read\_. Transitive verbs have an

\_active\_ and \_passive\_ participle. Examples: ACTIVE, \_Present\_, Loving;

\_Perfect\_, Having loved: PASSIVE, \_Present\_, Loved \_or\_ being loved;

\_Perfect\_, Having been loved."--\_S. S. Greene's Analysis\_, 1st Ed., p. 225.

"O heav'n, in my connubial hour decree

This man my spouse, or such a spouse as he."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON IV.--VARIOUS RULES.

"The \_Past Tenses\_ represent a conditional past fact or event, and of which

the speaker is uncertain."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 89. "Care also should be

taken that they are not introduced too abundantly."--\_Ib.\_, p. 134. "Till

they are become familiar to the mind."--\_Ib.\_, Pref., p. v. "When once a

particular arrangement and phraseology are become familiar to the

mind."--\_Ib.\_, p. vii. "I have furnished the student with the plainest and

most practical directions which I could devise."--\_Ib.\_, p. xiv. "When you

are become conversant with the Rules of Grammar, you will then be qualified

to commence the study of Style."--\_Ib.\_, p. xxii. "\_C\_ has a soft sound

like \_s\_ before \_e, i\_, and \_y\_, generally."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 10. "\_G\_

before \_e, i\_, and \_y\_, is soft; as in genius, ginger, Egypt."--\_Ib.\_, p.

12. "\_C\_ before \_e, i\_, and \_y\_, generally sounds soft like \_s\_."--\_Hiley's

Gram.\_, p. 4. "\_G\_ is soft before \_e, i\_, and \_y\_, as in genius, ginger,

Egypt."--\_Ib.\_, p. 4. "As a perfect Alphabet must always contain as many

letters as there are elementary sounds in the language, the English

Alphabet is therefore both defective and redundant."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p.

5. "Common Nouns are the names given to a whole class or species, and are

applicable to every individual of that class."--\_Ib.\_, p. 11. "Thus an

adjective has always a noun either expressed or understood."--\_Ib.\_, p.

20. "First, let us consider emphasis; by \_this\_, is meant a \_stronger\_ and

\_fuller\_ sound of voice, by which we distinguish \_the accented syllable\_ of

some word, on \_which\_ we \_design to lay\_ particular stress, \_and to shew\_

how \_it effects\_ the rest of the sentence."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 330. "By

emphasis is meant a \_stronger\_ and \_fuller\_ sound of voice, by which we

distinguish some word or words on which we \_design to lay\_ particular

stress, \_and to show\_ how \_they affect\_ the rest of the

sentence."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 242. "Such a simple question as this: 'Do

you ride to town to-day,' is capable of \_no fewer than\_ four different

acceptations, \_according as\_ the emphasis is differently placed \_on the

words\_."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 330; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 242. "Thus,

\_bravely\_, or 'in a brave manner,' is derived from \_brave-like\_."--\_Hiley's

Gram.\_, p. 51. "In the same manner, the different parts of speech are

formed from each other generally by means of some affix."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60.

"Words derived from each other, are always, more or less, allied in

signification."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. "When a noun of multitude conveys unity of

idea the verb and pronoun should be singular. But when it conveys plurality

of idea, the verb and pronoun must be plural."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 71.

"They have spent their whole time to make the sacred chronology agree with

that of the profane."--\_Ib.\_, p. 87. "'I have studied my lesson, but you

\_have\_ not;' that is, 'but you have not \_studied\_ it.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 109.

"When words follow each other in pairs, there is a comma between each

pair."--\_Ib.\_, p. 112; \_Bullions\_, 152; \_Lennie\_, 132. "When words follow

each other in pairs, the pairs should be marked by the comma."--\_Farnum's

Gram.\_, p. 111. "His 'Studies of Nature,' is deservedly a popular

work."--\_Univ. Biog. Dict., n. St. Pierre\_. "'Here lies \_his\_ head, a

\_youth\_ to fortune and to fame unknown.' 'Youth,' here is in the

\_possessive\_ (the sign being omitted), and is \_in apposition\_ with his.'

The meaning is, 'the head of him, a youth.' &c."--\_Hart's E. Gram.\_, p.

124. "The pronoun I, and the interjection O, should be written with a

capital."--\_Weld's E. Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 16. "The pronoun \_I\_ always should

be written with a capital letter."--\_Ib.\_, p. 68. "He went from England to

York."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. "An adverb is a part of speech joined to verbs,

adjectives and other adverbs, to modify their meaning."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51;

"\_Abridged Ed.\_," 46. "\_Singular\_, signifies 'one person or thing.'

\_Plural\_, (Latin \_plus\_,) signifies 'more than one.'"--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p.

55. "When the present ends in e, \_d\_ only is added to form the Imperfect

and Perfect participle."--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "SYNÆRESIS is the contraction of

two syllables into one; as, \_Seest\_ for \_see-est, drowned\_ for

\_drown-ed\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 213. "Words ending in \_ee\_ drop the final \_e\_ on

receiving an additional syllable beginning with \_e\_; as, \_see, seest,

agree, agreed\_."--\_Ib.\_, p, 227. "Monosyllables in \_f, l\_, or \_s\_, preceded

by a single vowel are doubled; as, staff, grass, mill."--\_Ib.\_, p. 226.

"Words ending \_ie\_ drop the \_e\_ and take \_y\_; as die, \_dying\_."--\_Ib.\_, p.

226. "One number may be used for another; as, \_we\_ for \_I, you\_ for

\_thou\_."--\_S. S. Greene's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 198. "STR~OB´ILE, \_n.\_ A

pericarp made up of scales that lie over each other. SMART."--\_Worcester's

Univ. and Crit. Dict.\_

"Yet ever from the clearest source have ran

Some gross allay, some tincture of the man."--\_Dr. Lowth\_.

LESSON V.--VARIOUS RULES.

"The possessive case is always followed by the noun which is the name of

the thing possessed, expressed or understood."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 61;

\_Revised Edition\_, pp. 64 and 86. "Hadmer of Aggstein was as pious, devout,

and praying a Christian, as were Nelson, Washington, or Jefferson; or as

are Wellington, Tyler, Clay, or Polk."--H. C. WRIGHT: \_Liberator\_, Vol. xv,

p. 21. "A word in the possessive case is not an independent noun, and

cannot stand by its self."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 130. "Mary is not

handsome, but she is good-natured, which is better than beauty."--\_St.

Quentin's Gram.\_, p. 9. "After the practice of joining words together had

ceased, notes of distinction were placed at the end of every

word."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 267; \_Hallock's\_, 224. "Neither Henry nor

Charles dissipate his time."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 166. "'He had taken

from the Christians' abode thirty small castles.'--\_Knowles.\_"--\_Ib.\_, p.

61. "In \_whatever\_ character Butler was admitted, is unknown."--\_Ib.\_, p.

62. "How is the agent of a passive, and the object of an active verb often

left?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "By \_subject\_ is meant the word of which something is

declared of its object."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, 1821, p. 103. "Care should

also be taken that an intransitive verb is not used instead of a

transitive: as, I lay, (the bricks) for, I lie down; I raise the house, for

I rise; I sit down, for, I set the chair down, &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114. "On

them depend the duration of our Constitution and our country."--\_J. C.

Calhoun at Memphis\_. "In the present sentence neither the sense nor the

measure require \_what\_."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, 1821, p. 164. "The Irish

thought themselves oppress'd by the Law that forbid them to draw with their

Horses Tails."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, Pref., p. iii. "So \_willingly\_ are

adverbs, qualifying deceives."--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 90. "Epicurus for

experiment sake confined himself to a narrower diet than that of the

severest prisons."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116. "Derivative words are such as are

compounded of other words, as common-wealth, good-ness,

false-hood."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. "The distinction here insisted on is as old as

Aristotle, and should not be lost sight of."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 61. "The

Tenses of the Subjunctive and the Potential Moods."--\_Ib.\_, p. 80. "A

triphthong is a union of three vowels uttered in like manner: as, \_uoy\_ in

buoy."--\_P. Davis's Practical Gram.\_, p. xvi. "Common nouns are the names

of a species or kind."--\_Ib.\_, p. 8. "The superlative degree is a

comparison between three or more."--\_Ib.\_, p. 14. "An adverb is a word or

phrase serving to give an additional idea of a verb, and adjective,

article, or another adverb."--\_Ib.\_, p. 36. "When several nouns in the

possessive case succeed each other, each showing possession of the same

noun, it is only necessary to add the sign of the possessive to the last:

as, He sells men, women, and \_children's\_ shoes. Dog. cat, and \_tiger's\_

feet are digitated."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "A rail-road is making \_should be\_ A

rail-road is \_being made\_. A school-house is building, \_should be\_ A

school-house is \_being\_ built."--\_Ib.\_, p. 113. "Auxiliaries are not of

themselves verbs; they resemble in their character and use those

terminational or other inflections in other languages, \_which we are

obliged to use in ours\_ to express the action in the mode, tense, &c.,

desired."--\_Ib.\_, p. 158. "Please hold my horse while I speak to my

friend."--\_Ib.\_, p. 159. "If I say, 'Give me \_the\_ book,' I ask for some

\_particular\_ book."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 39. "There are five men

here."--\_Ib.\_, p. 134. "In the active the object may be omitted; in the

passive the name of the agent may be omitted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 63. "The

Progressive and the Emphatic forms give in each case a different shade of

meaning to the verb."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 80. "\_That\_ is a Kind of a

Redditive Conjunction, when it answers to \_so\_ and \_such.\_"--\_W. Ward's

Gram.\_, p. 152. "He attributes to negligence your failing to succeed in

that business."--\_Smart's Accidence\_, p. 36. "Does \_will\_ and \_go\_ express

but \_our\_ action?"--\_S. Barrett's Revised Gram.\_, p. 58. "Language is the

\_principle\_ vehicle of thought. G. BROWN."--\_James Brown's English Syntax\_,

p. 3. "\_Much\_ is applied to things weighed or measured; \_many\_, to those

that are numbered. \_Elder\_ and \_eldest\_, to persons only; \_older\_ and

\_oldest\_, either to persons or things."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 20;

\_Pract. Les.\_, 25. "If there are any old maids still extant, while

mysogonists are so rare, the fault must be attributable to

themselves."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 286. "The second method used by the

Greeks, has never been the practice of any part of Europe."--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. 64. "Neither consonant, nor vowel, are to be dwelt upon

beyond their common quantity, when they close a sentence."--\_Sheridan's

Rhetorical Gram.\_, p. 54. "IRONY is a mode of speech expressing a \_sense

contrary\_ to that which the speaker or writer intends to convey."--\_Wells's

School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 196; 113th Ed., p. 212. "IRONY is \_the

intentional\_ use of words \_in a sense contrary\_ to that which the writer or

speaker \_intends\_ to convey."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 215; Imp. Ed.,

216. "The persons speaking, or spoken to, are supposed to be

present."--\_Wells\_, p. 68. "The persons speaking and spoken to are supposed

to be present."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 51. "A \_Noun\_ is a word used to

express the \_name\_ of an object."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, pp. 46 and 47.

"A \_syllable\_ is a word, or such a part of a word as is uttered by one

articulation."--\_Weld's English Gram.\_, p. 15; "\_Abridged Ed.\_," p. 16.

"Thus wondrous fair; thyself how wondrous then!

Unspeakable, who sits above these heavens."

--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 131.

"And feel thy sovereign vital lamp; but thou

Revisitest not these eyes, that roll in vain."

--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 133.

"Before all temples the upright and pure."

--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 195.

"In forest wild, in thicket, break or den."

--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 130.

"The rogue and fool by fits is fair and wise;

And e'en the best, by fits, what they despise."

--\_Pope's Ess.\_, iii, 233.

CHAPTER XIV.--QUESTIONS.

ORDER OF REHEARSAL, AND METHOD OF EXAMINATION.

PART THIRD, SYNTAX.

[Fist][The following questions, which embrace nearly all the important

particulars of the foregoing code of Syntax, are designed not only to

direct and facilitate class rehearsals, but also to develop the

acquirements of those who may answer them at examinations more public.]

LESSON I.--DEFINITIONS. 1. Of what does Syntax treat? 2. What is the

\_relation\_ of words? 3. What is the \_agreement\_ of words? 4. What is the

\_government\_ of words? 5. What is the \_arrangement\_ of words? 6. What is a

\_sentence\_? 7. How many and what are the \_principal parts\_ of a sentence?

8. What are the other parts called? 9. How many kinds of sentences are

there? 10. What is a \_simple\_ sentence? 11. What is a \_compound sentence\_?

12. What is a \_clause\_, or \_member\_? 13. What is a \_phrase\_? 14. What words

must be supplied in parsing? 15. How are the leading principles of syntax

presented? 16. In what order are the rules of syntax arranged in this work?

LESSON II.--THE RULES.

1. To what do articles relate? 2. What case is employed as the subject of a

finite verb? 3. What agreement is required between words in apposition? 4.

By what is the possessive case governed? 5. What case does an

active-transitive verb or participle govern? 6. What case is put after a

verb or participle not transitive? 7. What case do prepositions govern? 8.

When, and in what case, is a noun or pronoun put absolute in English? 9. To

what do adjectives relate? 10. How does a pronoun agree with its

antecedent? 11. How does a pronoun agree with a collective noun? 12. How

does a pronoun agree with joint antecedents? 13. How does a pronoun agree

with disjunct antecedents?

LESSON III.--THE RULES.

14. How does a finite verb agree with its subject, or nominative? 15. How

does a verb agree with a collective noun? 16. How does a verb agree with

joint nominatives? 17. How does a verb agree with disjunctive nominatives?

18. What governs the infinitive mood? 19. What verbs take the infinitive

after them without the preposition \_to\_? 20. What is the regular

construction of participles, as such? 21. To what do adverbs relate? 22.

What do conjunctions connect? 23. What is the use of prepositions? 24. What

is the syntax of interjections?

LESSON IV.--THE RULES.

1. What are the several titles, or subjects, of the twenty-four rules of

syntax? 2. What says Rule 1st of \_Articles\_? 3. What says Rule 2d of

\_Nominatives\_? 4. What says Rule 3d of \_Apposition\_? 5. What says Rule 4th

of \_Possessives\_? 6. What says Rule 5th of \_Objectives\_? 7. What says Rule

6th of \_Same Cases\_? 8. What says Rule 7th of \_Objectives\_? 9. What says

Rule 8th of the \_Nominative Absolute\_? 10. What says Rule 9th of

\_Adjectives\_? 11. What says Rule 10th of \_Pronouns\_? 12. What says Rule

11th of \_Pronouns\_? 13. What says Rule 12th of \_Pronouns\_? 14. What says

Rule 13th of \_Pronouns\_? 15. What says Rule 14th of \_Finite Verbs\_? 16.

What says Rule 15th of \_Finite Verbs\_? 17. What says Rule 16th of \_Finite

Verbs\_? 18. What says Rule 17th of \_Finite Verbs\_? 19. What says Rule 18th

of \_Infinitives\_? 20. What says Rule 19th of \_Infinitives\_? 21. What says

Rule 20th of \_Participles\_? 22. What says Rule 21st of \_Adverbs\_? 23. What

says Rule 22d of \_Conjunctions\_? 24. What says Rule 23d of \_Prepositions\_?

25. What says Rule 24th of \_Interjections\_?

LESSON V.--THE ANALYZING OF SENTENCES.

1. What is it, "to analyze a sentence?" 2. What are the component parts of

a sentence? 3. Can all sentences be divided into clauses? 4. Are there

different methods of analysis, which may be useful? 5. What is the first

method of analysis, according to this code of syntax? 6. How is the

following example analyzed by this method? "Even the Atheist, who tells us

that the universe is self-existent and indestructible--even he, who,

instead of seeing the traces of a manifold wisdom in its manifold

varieties, sees nothing in them all but the exquisite structures and the

lofty dimensions of materialism--even he, who would despoil creation of its

God, cannot look upon its golden suns, and their accompanying systems,

without the solemn impression of a magnificence that fixes and overpowers

him." 7. What is the second method of analysis? 8. How is the following

example analyzed by this method? "Fear naturally quickens the flight of

guilt. Rasselas could not catch the fugitive, with his utmost efforts; but,

resolving to weary, by perseverance, him whom he could not surpass in

speed, he pressed on till the foot of the mountain stopped his course." 9.

What is the third method of analysis? 10. How is the following example

analyzed by this method? "Such is the emptiness of human enjoyment, that we

are always impatient of the present. Attainment is followed by neglect, and

possession, by disgust. Few moments are more pleasing than those in which

the mind is concerting measures for a new undertaking. From the first hint

that wakens the fancy, to the hour of actual execution, all is improvement

and progress, triumph and felicity." 11. What is the fourth method of

analysis? 12. How are the following sentences analyzed by this method? (1.)

"Swift would say, 'The thing has not life enough in it to keep it sweet;'

Johnson, 'The creature possesses not vitality sufficient to preserve it

from putrefaction.'" (2.) "There is one Being to whom we can look with a

perfect conviction of finding that security, which nothing about us can

give, and which nothing about us can take away." 13. What is said of the

fifth method of analysis?

[Now, if the teacher choose to make use of any other method of analysis

than full syntactical parsing, he may direct his pupils to turn to the next

selection of examples, or to any other accurate sentences, and analyze them

according to the method chosen.]

LESSON VI.--OF PARSING.

1. Why is it necessary to observe \_the sense\_, or \_meaning\_, of what we

parse? 2. What is required of the pupil in syntactical parsing? 3. How is

the following long example parsed in Praxis XII? "A young man studious to

know his duty, and honestly bent on doing it, will find himself led away

from the sin or folly in which the multitude thoughtlessly indulge

themselves; but, ah! poor fallen human nature! what conflicts are thy

portion, when inclination and habit--a rebel and a traitor--exert their

sway against our only saving principle!"

[Now parse, in like manner, and with no needless deviations from the

prescribed forms, the ten lessons of the \_Twelfth Praxis\_; or such parts of

those lessons as the teacher may choose.]

LESSON VII.--THE RULES.

1. In what chapter are the rules of syntax first presented? 2. In what

praxis are these rules first applied in parsing? 3. Which of the ten parts

of speech is left without any rule of syntax? 4. How many and which of the

ten have but one rule apiece? 5. Then, of the twenty-four rules, how many

remain for the other three parts,--nouns, pronouns, and verbs? 6. How many

of these seventeen speak of \_cases\_, and therefore apply equally to nouns

and pronouns? 7. Which are these seven? 8. How many rules are there for the

agreement of pronouns with their antecedents, and which are they? 9. How

many rules are there for finite verbs, and which are they? 10. How many are

there for infinitives, and which are they? 11. What ten chapters of the

foregoing code of syntax treat of the ten parts of speech in their order?

12. Besides the rules and their examples, what sorts of matters are

introduced into these chapters? 13. How many of the twenty-four rules of

syntax are used both in parsing and in correcting? 14. Of what use are

those which cannot be violated in practice? 15. How many such rules are

there among the twenty-four? 16. How many and what parts of speech are

usually parsed by such rules only?

LESSON VIII.--THE NOTES.

1. What is the essential character of the \_Notes\_ which are placed under

the rules of syntax? 2. Are the different forms of false construction as

numerous as these notes? 3. Which exercise brings into use the greater

number of grammatical principles, parsing or correcting? 4. Are the

principles or doctrines which are applied in these different exercises

usually the same, or are they different? 5. In etymological parsing, we use

about seventy \_definitions\_; can these be used also in the correcting of

errors? 6. For the correcting of false syntax, we have a hundred and

fifty-two \_notes\_; can these be used also in parsing? 7. How many of the

rules have no such notes under them? 8. What order is observed in the

placing of these notes, if some rules have many, and others few or none? 9.

How many of them are under the rule for \_articles\_? 10. How many of them

refer to the construction of \_nouns\_? 11. How many of them belong to the

syntax of \_adjectives\_? 12. How many of them treat of \_pronouns\_? 13. How

many of them regard the use of \_verbs\_? 14. How many of them pertain to the

syntax of \_participles\_? 15. How many of them relate to the construction of

\_adverbs\_? 16. How many of them show the application of \_conjunctions\_? 17.

How many of them expose errors in the use of \_prepositions\_? 18. How many

of them speak of \_interjections\_?

[Now correct orally the examples of \_False Syntax\_ placed under the several

Rules and Notes; or so many texts under each head as the teacher may think

sufficient.]

LESSON IX.--THE EXCEPTIONS.

1. In what exercise can there be occasion to cite and apply the

\_Exceptions\_ to the rules of syntax? 2. Are there exceptions to all the

rules, or to how many? 3. Are there exceptions in reference to all the

parts of speech, or to how many of the ten? 4. Do articles always relate to

nouns? 5. Can the subject of a finite verb be in any other case than the

nominative? 6. Are words in apposition always supposed to be in the same

case? 7. Is the possessive case always governed by the name of the thing

possessed? 8. Can an active-transitive verb govern any other case than the

objective? 9. Can a verb or participle not transitive take any other case

after it than that which precedes it? 10. Can a preposition, in English,

govern any other case than the objective? 11. Can "the case absolute," in

English, be any other than the nominative? 12. Does every adjective "belong

to a substantive, expressed or understood," as Murray avers? 13. Can an

adjective ever relate to any thing else than a noun or pronoun? 14. Can an

adjective ever be used without relation to any noun, pronoun, or other

subject? 15. Can an adjective ever be substituted for its kindred abstract

noun? 16. Are the person, number, and gender of a pronoun always determined

by an antecedent? 17. What pronoun is sometimes applied to animals so as

not to distinguish their sex? 18. What pronoun is sometimes an expletive,

and sometimes used with reference to an infinitive following it?

LESSON X.--THE EXCEPTIONS.

19. Does a singular antecedent ever admit of a plural pronoun? 20. Can a

pronoun agree with its antecedent in one sense and not in an other? 21. If

the antecedent is a collective noun conveying the idea of plurality, must

the pronoun always be plural? 22. If there are two or more antecedents

connected by \_and\_, must the pronoun always be plural? 23. If there are

antecedents connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, is the pronoun always to take them

separately? 24. Must a finite verb always agree with its nominative in

number and person? 25. If the nominative is a collective noun conveying the

idea of plurality, must the verb always be plural? 26. If there are two or

more nominatives connected by \_and\_, must the verb always be plural? 21. If

there are nominatives connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, is the verb always to

refer to them separately? 28. Does the preposition \_to\_ before the

infinitive always govern the verb? 29. Can the preposition \_to\_ govern or

precede any other mood than the infinitive? 30. Is the preposition \_to\_

"understood" after \_bid, dare, feel\_, and so forth, where it is

"superfluous and improper?" 31. How many and what exceptions are there to

rule 20th, concerning participles? 32. How many and what exceptions are

there to the rule for adverbs? 33. How many and what exceptions are there

to the rule for conjunctions? 34. How many and what exceptions are there to

the rule for prepositions? 35. Is there any exception to the 24th rule,

concerning interjections?

LESSON XI.--THE OBSERVATIONS.

1. How many of the ten parts of speech in English are in general incapable

of any agreement? 2. Can there be a syntactical relation of words without

either agreement or government? 3. Is there ever any needful agreement

between unrelated words? 4. Is the mere relation of words according to the

sense an element of much importance in English syntax? 5. What parts of

speech have no other syntactical property than that of simple relation? 6.

What rules of relation are commonly found in grammars? 7. Of what parts is

syntax commonly said to consist? 8. Is it common to find in grammars, the

rules of syntax well adapted to their purpose? 9. Can you specify some that

appear to be faulty? 10. Wherein consists \_the truth\_ of grammatical

doctrine, and how can one judge of what others teach? 11. Do those who

speak of syntax as being divided into two parts, Concord and Government,

commonly adhere to such division? 12. What false concords and false

governments are cited in Obs. 7th of the first chapter? 13. Is it often

expedient to join in the same rule such principles as must always be

applied separately? 14. When one can condense several different principles

into one rule, is it not expedient to do so? 15. Is it ever convenient to

have one and the same rule applicable to different parts of speech? 16. Is

it ever convenient to have rules divided into parts, so as to be double or

triple in their form? 17. What instance of extravagant innovation is given

in Obs. 12th of the first chapter?

LESSON XII.--THE OBSERVATIONS.

18. Can a uniform series of good grammars, Latin, Greek, English, &c., be

produced by a mere revising of one defective book for each language? 19.

Whose are "The Principles of English Grammar" which Dr. Bullions has

republished with alterations, "on the plan of Murray's Grammar?" 20. Can

praise and success entitle to critical notice works in themselves unworthy

of it? 21. Do the Latin grammarians agree in their enumeration of the

concords in Latin? 22. What is said in Obs. 16th, of the plan of mixing

syntax with etymology? 23. Do not the principles of etymology affect those

of syntax? 24. Can any words agree, or disagree, except in something that

belongs to each of them? 25. How many and what parts of speech are

concerned in government? 26. Are rules of government to be applied to the

governing words, or to the governed? 27. What are gerundives? 28. How many

and what are the principles of syntax which belong to the head of simple

relation? 29. How many agreements, or concords, are there in English

syntax? 30. How many rules of government are there in the best Latin

grammars? 31. What fault is there in the usual distribution of these rules?

32. How many and what are the governments in English syntax? 33. Can the

parsing of words be varied by any transposition which does not change their

import? 34. Can the parsing of words be affected by the parser's notion of

what constitutes a simple sentence? 35. What explanation of simple and

compound sentences is cited from Dr. Wilson, in Obs. 25? 36. What notion

had Dr. Adam of simple and compound sentences? 37. Is this doctrine

consistent either with itself or with Wilson's? 38. How can one's notion of

\_ellipsis\_ affect his mode of parsing, and his distinction of sentences as

simple or compound?

LESSON XIII.--ARTICLES.

1. Can one noun have more than one article? 2. Can one article relate to

more than one noun? 3. Why cannot the omission of an article constitute a

proper ellipsis? 4. What is the position of the article with respect to its

noun? 5. What is the usual position of the article with respect to an

adjective and a noun? 6. Can the relative position of the article and

adjective be a matter of indifference? 7. What adjectives exclude, or

supersede, the article? 8. What adjectives precede the article? 9. What

four adverbs affect the position of the article and adjective? 10. Do other

adverbs come between the article and the adjective? 11. Can any of the

definitives which preclude \_an\_ or \_a\_, be used with the adjective \_one\_?

12. When the adjective follows its noun, where stands the article? 13. Can

the article in English, ever be placed after its noun? 14. What is the

effect of the word \_the\_ before comparatives and superlatives? 15. What

article may sometimes be used in lieu of a possessive pronoun? 16. Is the

article \_an\_ or \_a\_ always supposed to imply unity? 17. Respecting \_an\_ or

\_a\_, how does present usage differ from the usage of ancient writers? 18.

Can the insertion or omission of an article greatly affect the import of a

sentence? 19. By a repetition of the article before two or more adjectives,

what other repetition is implied? 20. How do we sometimes avoid such

repetition? 21. Can there ever be an implied repetition of the noun when no

article is used?

LESSON XIV.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

1. In how many different ways can the nominative case be used? 2. What is

the usual position of the nominative and verb, and when is it varied? 3.

With what nominatives of the second person, does the imperative verb agree?

4. Why is it thought improper to put a noun in two cases at once? 5. What

case in Latin and Greek is reckoned \_the subject\_ of the infinitive mood?

6. Can this, in general, be literally imitated in English? 7. Do any

English authors adopt the Latin doctrine of the accusative (or objective)

before the infinitive? 8. Is the objective, when it occurs before the

infinitive in English, usually governed by some verb, participle, or

preposition? 9. What is our nearest approach to the Latin construction of

the accusative before the infinitive? 10. What is \_apposition\_, and from

whom did it receive this name? 11. Is there a construction of like cases,

that is not apposition? 12. To which of the apposite terms is the rule for

apposition to be applied? 13. Are words in apposition always to be parsed

separately? 14. Wherein are the common rule and definition of apposition

faulty? 15. Can the explanatory word ever be placed first? 16. Is it ever

indifferent, which word be called the principal, and which the explanatory

term? 17. Why cannot two nouns, each having the possessive sign, be put in

apposition with each other? 18. Where must the sign of possession be put,

when two or more possessives are in apposition? 19. Is it compatible with

apposition to supply between the words a relative and a verb; as, "At Mr.

Smith's [\_who is\_] the bookseller?" 20. How can a noun be, or seem to be,

in apposition with a possessive pronoun? 21. What construction is produced

by the \_repetition\_ of a noun or pronoun? 22. What is the construction of a

noun, when it emphatically repeats the idea suggested by a preceding

sentence?

LESSON XV.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

23. Can words differing in number be in apposition with each other? 24.

What is the usual construction of \_each other\_ and \_one an other\_? 25. Is

there any argument from analogy for taking \_each other\_ and \_one an other\_

for compounds? 26. Do we often put proper nouns in apposition with

appellatives? 27. What preposition is often put between nouns that signify

the same thing? 28. When is an active verb followed by two words in

apposition? 29. Does apposition require any other agreement than that of

case? 30. What three modes of construction appear like exceptions to Rule

4th? 31. In the phrase, "For \_David\_ my servant's sake," which word is

governed by \_sake\_, and which is to be parsed by the rule of apposition?

32. In the sentence, "It is \_man's\_ to err," what is supposed to govern

\_man's\_? 33. Does the possessive case admit of any abstract sense or

construction? 34. Why is it reasonable to limit the government of the

possessive to nouns only, or to words taken substantive? 35. Does the

possessive case before a real participle denote the possessor of something?

36. What two great authors differ in regard to the correctness of the

phrases, "\_upon the rule's being observed\_," and "\_of its being

neglected\_?" 37. Is either of them right in his argument? 38. Is the

distinction between the participial noun and the participle well preserved

by Murray and his amenders? 39. Who invented the doctrine, that a

participle and its adjuncts may be used as "\_one name\_" and in that

capacity govern the possessive? 40. Have any popular authors adopted this

doctrine? 41. Is the doctrine well sustained by its adopters, or is it

consistent with the analogy of general grammar? 42. When one doubts whether

a participle ought to be the governing word or the adjunct,--that is,

whether he ought to use the possessive case before it or the

objective,--what shall he do? 43, What is objected to the sentences in

which participles govern the possessive case, and particularly to the

examples given by Priestley, Murray, and others, to prove such a

construction right? 44. Do the teachers of this doctrine agree among

themselves? 45. How does the author of this work generally dispose of such

government? 46. Does he positively determine, that the participle should

\_never\_ be allowed to govern the possessive case?

LESSON XVI.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

47. Are the distinctions of voice and of time as much regarded in

participial nouns as in participles? 48. Why cannot an omission of the

possessive sign be accounted a true \_ellipsis\_? 49. What is the usual

position of the possessive case, and what exceptions are there? 50. In what

other form can the meaning of the possessive case be expressed? 51. Is the

possessive often governed by what is not expressed? 52. Does every

possessive sign imply a separate governing noun? 53. How do compounds take

the sign of possession? 54. Do we put the sign of possession always and

only where the two terms of the possessive relation meet? 55. Can the

possessive sign be ever rightly added to a separate adjective? 56. What is

said of the omission of \_s\_ from the possessive singular on account of its

hissing sound? 57. What errors do Kirkham, Smith, and others, teach

concerning the possessive singular? 58. Why is Murray's rule for the

possessive case objectionable? 59. Do compounds embracing the possessive

case appear to be written with sufficient uniformity? 60. What rules for

nouns coming together are inserted in Obs. 31st on Rule 4th? 61. Does the

compounding of words necessarily preclude their separate use? 62. Is there

a difference worth notice, between such terms or things as \_heart-ease\_ and

\_heart's-ease\_; a \_harelip\_ and a \_hare's lip\_; a \_headman\_ and a

\_headsman\_; a \_lady's-slipper\_ and a \_lady's slipper\_? 63. Where usage is

utterly unsettled, what guidance should be sought? 64. What peculiarities

are noticed in regard to the noun \_side\_? 65. What peculiarities has the

possessive case in regard to correlatives? 66. What is remarked of the

possessive relation between time and action? 67. What is observed of nouns

of weight, measure, or time, coming immediately together?

LESSON XVII.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

68. Are there any exceptions or objections to the old rule, "Active verbs

govern the objective case?" 69. Of how many different constructions is the

objective case susceptible? 70. What is the usual position of the objective

case, and what exceptions are there? 71. Can any thing but the governing of

an objective noun or pronoun make an active verb transitive? 72. In the

sentence, "What \_have\_ I to \_do\_ with thee?" how are \_have\_ and \_do\_ to be

parsed? 73. Can infinitives, participles, phrases, sentences, and parts of

sentences, be really "in the objective case?" 74. In the sentence, "I \_know

why\_ she blushed," how is \_know\_ to be parsed? 75. In the sentence, "I

\_know that\_ Messias cometh," how are \_know\_ and \_that\_ to be parsed? 76. In

the sentence, "And \_Simon\_ he surnamed \_Peter\_", how are \_Simon\_ and

\_Peter\_ to be parsed? 77. In such sentences as, "I paid \_him\_ the

\_money\_,"--"He asked \_them\_ the \_question\_," how are the two objectives to

be parsed? 78. Does any verb in English ever govern two objectives that are

not coupled? 79. Are there any of our passive verbs that can properly

govern the objective case? 80. Is not our language like the Latin, in

respect to verbs governing two cases, and passives retaining the latter?

81. How do our grammarians now dispose of what remains to us of the old

Saxon dative case? 82. Do any reputable writers allow passive verbs to

govern the objective case? 83. What says Lindley Murray about this passive

government? 84. Why is the position, "Active verbs govern the objective

case," of no use to the composer? 85. On what is the construction of \_same

cases\_ founded? 86. Does this construction admit of any variety in the

position of the words? 87. Does an ellipsis of the verb or participle

change this construction into apposition? 88. Is it ever right to put both

terms before the verb? 89. What kinds of words can take different cases

after them? 90. Can a participle which is governed by a preposition, have a

case after it which is governed by neither? 91. How is the word \_man\_ to be

parsed in the following example? "The atrocious \_crime of being\_ a young

\_man\_, I shall neither attempt to palliate, nor deny."

LESSON XVIII.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

92. In what kinds of examples do we meet with a doubtful case after a

participle? 93. Is the case after the verb reckoned doubtful, when the

subject going before is a sentence, or something not declinable by cases?

94. In the sentence, "It is certainly as easy to be a \_scholar\_, as a

\_gamester\_," what is the case of \_scholar\_ and \_gamester\_, and why? 95. Are

there any verbs that sometimes connect like cases, and sometimes govern the

objective? 96. What faults are there in the rules given by \_Lowth, Murray,

Smith\_, and others, for the construction of \_like cases\_? 97. Can a

preposition ever govern any thing else than a noun or a pronoun? 98. Is

every thing that a preposition governs, necessarily supposed to have cases,

and to be in the objective? 99. Why or wherein is the common rule,

"Prepositions govern the objective case," defective or insufficient? 100.

In such phrases as \_in vain, at first, in particular\_, how is the adjective

to be parsed? 101. In such expressions as, "I give it up \_for lost\_,"--"I

take it \_for granted\_," how is the participle to be parsed? 102. In such

phrases as, \_at once, from thence, till now\_, how is the latter word to be

parsed? 103. What peculiarity is there in the construction of nouns of

time, measure, distance, or value? 104. What is observed of the words

\_like, near\_, and \_nigh\_? 105. What is observed of the word \_worth\_? 106.

According to Johnson and Tooke, what is \_worth\_, in such phrases as, "Wo

\_worth\_ the day?" 107. After verbs of \_giving, paying\_, and the like, what

ellipsis is apt to occur? 108. What is observed of the nouns used in dates?

109. What defect is observable in the common rules for "the case absolute,"

or "the nominative independent?" 110. In how many ways is the nominative

case put absolute? 111. What participle is often understood after nouns put

absolute? 112. In how many ways can nouns of the second person be employed?

113. What is said of nouns used in exclamations, or in mottoes and

abbreviated sayings? 114. What is observed of such phrases as, "\_hand to

hand\_,"--"\_face to face\_?" 115. What authors deny the existence of "the

case absolute?"

LESSON XIX.--ADJECTIVES.

1. Does the adjective frequently relate to what is not uttered with it? 2.

What is observed of those rules which suppose every adjective to relate to

some noun? 3. To what does the adjective usually relate, when it stands

alone after a finite verb? 4. Where is the noun or pronoun, when an

adjective follows an infinitive or a participle? 5. What is observed of

adjectives preceded by \_the\_ and used elliptically? 6. What is said of the

position of the adjective? 7. In what instances is the adjective placed

after its noun? 8. In what instances may the adjective either precede or

follow the noun? 9. What are the construction and import of the phrases,

\_in particular, in general\_, and the like? 10. What is said of adjectives

as agreeing or disagreeing with their nouns in number? 11. What is observed

of \_this\_ and \_that\_ as referring to two nouns connected? 12. What is

remarked of the use of adjectives for adverbs? 13. How can one determine

whether an adjective or an adverb is required? 14. What is remarked of the

placing of two or more adjectives before one noun? 15. How can one avoid

the ambiguity which Dr. Priestley notices in the use of the adjective \_no\_?

LESSON XX.--PRONOUNS.

1. Can such pronouns as stand for things not named, be said to agree with

the nouns for which they are substituted? 2. Is the pronoun \_we\_ singular

when it is used in lieu of \_I\_? 3. Is the pronoun \_you\_ singular when used

in lieu of \_thou\_ or \_thee\_? 4. What is there remarkable in the

construction of \_ourself\_ and \_yourself\_? 5. Of what person, number, and

gender, is the relative, when put after such terms of address as, \_your

Majesty, your Highness, your Lordship, your Honour\_? 6. How does the

English fashion of putting \_you\_ for \_thou\_, compare with the usage of the

French, and of other nations? 7. Do any imagine these fashionable

substitutions to be morally objectionable? 8. What figures of rhetoric are

liable to affect the agreement of pronouns with their antecedents? 9. How

does the pronoun agree with its noun in cases of personification? 10. How

does the pronoun agree with its noun in cases of metaphor? 11. How does the

pronoun agree with its noun in cases of metonymy? 12. How does the pronoun

agree with its noun in cases of synecdoche? 13. What is the usual position

of pronouns, and what exceptions are there? 14. When a pronoun represents a

phrase or sentence, of what person, number, and gender is it? 15. Under

what circumstances can a pronoun agree with either of two antecedents? 16.

With what does the relative agree when an other word is introduced by the

pronoun \_it\_? 17. In the sentence, "\_It\_ is useless to complain," what does

\_it\_ represent? 18. How are relative and interrogative pronouns placed? 19.

What are the chief constructional peculiarities of the relative pronouns?

20. Why does the author discard the two special rules commonly given for

the construction of relatives?

LESSON XXI.--PRONOUNS.

21. To what part of speech is the greatest number of rules applied in

parsing? 22. Of the twenty-four rules in this work, how many are applicable

to pronouns? 23. Of the seven rules for cases, how many are applicable to

relatives and interrogatives? 24. What is remarked of the ellipsis or

omission of the relative? 25. What is said of the suppression of the

antecedent? 26. What is noted of the word \_which\_, as applied to persons?

27. What relative is applied to a proper noun taken merely as a name? 28.

When do we employ the same relative in successive clauses? 29. What odd use

is sometimes made of the pronoun \_your\_? 30. Under what \_figure\_ of syntax

did the old grammarians rank the plural construction of a noun of

multitude? 31. Does a collective noun with a singular definitive before it

ever admit of a plural verb or pronoun? 32. Do collective nouns generally

admit of being made literally plural? 33. When joint antecedents are of

different persons, with which person does the pronoun agree? 34. When joint

antecedents differ in gender, of what gender is the pronoun? 35. Why is it

wrong to say, "The first has a lenis, \_and\_ the other an asper over

\_them\_?" 36. Can nouns without \_and\_ be taken jointly, as if they had it?

37. Can singular antecedents be so suggested as to require a plural

pronoun, when only one of them is uttered? 38. Why do singular antecedents

connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_ appear to require a singular pronoun? 39. Can

different antecedents connected by \_or\_ be accurately represented by

differing pronouns connected in the same way? 40. Why are we apt to use a

plural pronoun after antecedents of different genders? 41. Do the Latin

grammars teach the same doctrine as the English, concerning nominatives or

antecedents connected disjunctively?

LESSON XXII.--VERBS.

1. What is necessary to every finite verb? 2. What is remarked of such

examples as this: "The \_Pleasures\_ of Memory \_was\_ published in 1702?" 3.

What is to be done with "\_Thinks I\_ to myself," and the like? 4. Is it

right to say with Smith, "Every hundred \_years constitutes\_ a century?" 5.

What needless ellipses both of nominatives and of verbs are commonly

supposed by our grammarians? 6. What actual ellipsis usually occurs with

the imperative mood? 7. What is observed concerning the place of the verb?

8. What besides a noun or a pronoun may be made the subject of a verb? 9.

What is remarked of the faulty omission of the pronoun \_it\_ before the

verb? 10 When an infinitive phrase is made the subject of a verb, do the

words remain adjuncts, or are they abstract? 11. How can we introduce a

noun or pronoun before the infinitive, and still make the whole phrase the

subject of a finite verb? 12. Can an objective before the infinitive become

"the subject of the affirmation?" 13. In making a phrase the subject of a

verb, do we produce an exception to Rule 14th? 14. Why is it wrong to say,

with Dr. Ash, "The king and queen appearing in public \_was\_ the cause of my

going?" 15. What inconsistency is found in Murray, with reference to his

"\_nominative sentences\_?" 16. What is Dr. Webster's ninth rule of syntax?

17. Why did Murray think all Webster's examples under this rule bad

English? 18. Why are both parties wrong in this instance? 19. What strange

error is taught by Cobbett, and by Wright, in regard to the relative and

its verb? 20. Is it demonstrable that verbs often agree with relatives? 21.

What is observed of the agreement of verbs in interrogative sentences? 22.

Do we ever find the subjunctive mood put after a relative pronoun? 23. What

is remarked of the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive

mood, and of the limits of the latter?

LESSON XXIII.--VERBS.

24. In respect to collective nouns, how is it generally determined, whether

they convey the idea of plurality or not? 25. What is stated of the rules

of Adam, Lowth, Murray, and Kirkham, concerning collective nouns? 26. What

is Nixon's notion of the construction of the verb and collective noun? 27.

Does this author appear to have gained "a \_clear idea\_ of the nature of a

collective noun?" 28. What great difficulty does Murray acknowledge

concerning "nouns of multitude?" 29. Does Murray's notion, that collective

nouns are of different sorts, appear to be consistent or warrantable? 30.

Can words that agree with the same collective noun, be of different

numbers? 31. What is observed of collective nouns used partitively? 32.

Which are the most apt to be taken plurally, collections of persons, or

collections of things? 33. Can a collective noun, as such, take a plural

adjective before it? 34. What is observed of the expressions, \_these

people, these gentry, these folk\_? 35. What is observed of sentences like

the following, in which there seems to be no nominative: "There \_are\_ from

eight to twelve professors?" 36. What rule does Dr. Webster give for such

examples as the following: "There \_was\_ more than a hundred and fifty

thousand pounds?" 37. What grammarians teach, that two or more nouns

connected by \_and\_, "always require the verb or pronoun to which they

refer, to be in the plural number?" 38. Does Murray acknowledge or furnish

any exceptions to this doctrine? 39. On what principle can one justify such

an example as this: "\_All work and no play, makes\_ Jack a dull boy?" 40.

What is remarked of instances like the following: "Prior's \_Henry and Emma

contains\_ an other beautiful example?" 41. What is said of the suppression

of the conjunction \_and\_? 42. When the speaker changes his nominative, to

take a stronger one, what concord has the verb? 43. When two or more

nominatives connected by \_and\_ explain a preceding one, what agreement has

the verb? 44. What grammarian approves of such expressions as, "Two and two

\_is\_ four?" 45. What is observed of verbs that agree with the nearest

nominative, and are understood to the rest? 46. When the nominatives

connected are of different persons, of what person is the verb?

LESSON XXIV.--VERBS.

47. What is the syntax of the verb, when one of its nominatives is

expressed, and an other or others implied? 48. What is the syntax of the

verb, when there are nominatives connected by \_as\_? 49. What is the

construction when two nominatives are connected by \_as well as, but\_, or

\_save\_? 50. Can words connected by \_with\_ be properly used as joint

nominatives? 51. Does the analogy of other languages with ours prove any

thing on this point? 52. What does Cobbett say about \_with\_ put for \_and\_?

53. What is the construction of such expressions as this: "A torch, \_snuff\_

and \_all, goes\_ out in a moment?" 54. Does our rule for the verb and

disjunct nominatives derive confirmation from the Latin and Greek syntax?

55. Why do collective nouns singular, when connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_,

admit of a plural verb? 56. In the expression, "\_I, thou, or he, may

affirm\_," of what person and number is the verb? 57. Who says, "the verb

agrees with \_the last nominative\_?" 58. What authors prefer "\_the nearest

person\_," and "\_the plural number\_?" 59. What authors prefer "the \_nearest

nominative\_, whether singular or plural?" 60. What author declares it

improper ever to connect by \_or\_ or \_nor\_ any nominatives that require

different forms of the verb? 61. What is Cobbett's "\_clear principle\_" on

this head? 62. Can a zeugma of the verb be proved to be right, in spite of

these authorities? 63. When a verb has nominatives of different persons or

numbers, connected by \_or\_ or \_nor\_, with which of them does it \_commonly\_

agree? 64. When does it agree with the remoter nominative? 65. When a noun

is implied in an adjective of a different number, which word is regarded in

the formation of the verb? 66. What is remarked concerning the place of the

pronoun of the first person singular? 67. When verbs are connected by \_and,

or\_, or \_nor\_, do they necessarily agree with the same nominative? 68. Why

is the thirteenth rule of the author's Institutes and First Lines not

retained as a rule in this work? 69. Are verbs often connected without

agreeing in mood, tense, and form?

LESSON XXV.--VERBS.

70. What particular convenience do we find in having most of our tenses

composed of separable words? 71. Is the connecting of verbs elliptically,

or by parts, anything peculiar to our language? 72. What faults appear in

the teaching of our grammarians concerning \_do\_ used as a "substitute for

other verbs?" 73. What notions have been entertained concerning the word

\_to\_ as used before the infinitive verb? 74. How does Dr. Ash parse \_to\_

before the infinitive? 75. What grammarians have taught that the

preposition \_to\_ governs the infinitive mood? 76. Does Lowth agree with

Murray in the anomaly of supposing \_to\_ a preposition that governs nothing?

77. Why do those teach just as inconsistently, who forbear to call the \_to\_

a preposition? 78. What objections are there to the rule, with its

exceptions, "One verb governs an other in the infinitive mood?" 79. What

large exception to this rule has been recently discovered by Dr. Bullions?

80. Are the countless examples of this exception truly elliptical? 81. Is

the infinitive ever governed by a preposition in French, Spanish, or

Italian? 82. What whimsical account of the English infinitive is given by

Nixon? 83. How was the infinitive expressed in the Anglo-Saxon of the

eleventh century? 84. What does Richard Johnson infer from the fact that

the Latin infinitive is sometimes governed by a preposition? 85. What

reasons can be adduced to show that the infinitive is not a noun? 86. How

can it be proved that \_to\_ before the infinitive is a preposition? 87. What

does Dr. Wilson say of the character and \_import\_ of the infinitive? 88. To

what other terms can the infinitive be connected? 89. What is the

infinitive, and for what things may it stand? 90. Do these ten heads

embrace all the uses of the infinitive? 91. What is observed of Murray's

"\_infinitive made absolute\_?" 92. What is said of the position of the

infinitive? 93. Is the infinitive ever liable to be misplaced?

LESSON XXVI.--VERBS.

94. What is observed of the frequent ellipses of the verb \_to be\_, supposed

by Allen and others? 95. What is said of the suppression of \_to\_ and the

insertion of \_be\_; as, "To make himself \_be\_ heard?" 96. Why is it

necessary to use the sign \_to\_ before an abstract infinitive, where it

shows no relation? 97. What is observed concerning the distinction of

\_voice\_ in the simple infinitive and the first participle? 98. What do our

grammarians teach concerning the omission of \_to\_ before the infinitive,

after \_bid, dare, feel\_, &c.? 99. How do Ingersoll, Kirkham, and Smith,

agree with their master Murray, concerning such examples as, "\_Let me go\_?"

100. What is affirmed of the difficulties of parsing the infinitive

according to the code of Murray? 101. How do Nutting, Kirkham, Nixon,

Cooper, and Sanborn, agree with Murray, or with one an other, in pointing

out what governs the infinitive? 102. What do Murray and others mean by

"\_neuter verbs\_," when they tell us that the taking of the infinitive

without \_to\_ "extends only to active and neuter verbs?" 103. How is the

infinitive used after \_bid\_? 104. How, after \_dare\_? 105. How, after

\_feel\_? 106. How, after \_hear\_? 107. How, after \_let\_? 108. How, after

\_make\_? 109. How, after \_need\_? 110. Is \_need\_ ever an auxiliary? 111. What

errors are taught by Greenleaf concerning \_dare\_ and \_need\_ or \_needs\_?

112. What is said of \_see\_, as governing the infinitive? 113. Do any other

verbs, besides these eight, take the infinitive after them without \_to\_?

114. How is the infinitive used after \_have, help\_, and \_find\_? 115. When

two or more infinitives occur in the same construction, must \_to\_ be used

with each? 116. What is said of the sign \_to\_ after \_than\_ or \_as\_?

LESSON XXVII.--PARTICIPLES.

1. What questionable uses of participles are commonly admitted by

grammarians? 2. Why does the author incline to condemn these peculiarities?

3. What is observed of the multiplicity of uses to which the participle in

\_ing\_ may be turned? 4. What is said of the participles which some suppose

to be put absolute? 5. How are participles placed? 6. What is said of the

transitive use of such words as \_unbecoming\_? 7. What distinction, in

respect to government, is to be observed between a participle and a

participial noun? 8. What shall we do when \_of\_ after the participial noun

is objectionable? 9. What is said of the correction of those examples in

which a needless article or possessive is put before the participle? 10.

What is stated of the retaining of adverbs with participial nouns? 11. Can

words having the form of the first participle be nouns, and clearly known

to be such, when they have no adjuncts? 12. What strictures are made on

Murray, Lennie, and Bullions, with reference to examples in which an

infinitive follows the participial noun? 13. In what instances is the first

participle equivalent to the infinitive? 14. What is said of certain

infinitives supposed to be erroneously put for participles? 15. What verbs

take the participle after them, and not the infinitive? 16. What is said of

those examples in which participles seem to be made the objects of verbs?

17. What is said of the teaching of Murray and others, that, "The

participle with its adjuncts may be considered as a \_substantive phrase\_?"

18. How does the English participle compare with the Latin gerund? 19. How

do Dr. Adam and others suppose "the gerund in English" to become a

"substantive," or noun? 20. How does the French construction of participles

and infinitives compare with the English?

LESSON XXVIII.--PARTICIPLES.

21. What difference does it make, whether we use the possessive case before

words in \_ing\_, or not? 22. What is said of the distinguishing or

confounding of different parts of speech, such as verbs, participles, and

nouns? 23. With how many other parts of speech does W. Allen confound the

participle? 24. How is the distinguishing of the participle from the verbal

noun inculcated by Allen, and their difference of meaning by Murray? 25. Is

it pretended that the authorities and reasons which oppose the mixed

construction of participles, are sufficient to prove such usage altogether

inadmissible? 26. Is it proper to teach, in general terms, that the noun or

pronoun which limits the meaning of a participle should be put in the

possessive case? 27. What is remarked of different cases used

indiscriminately before the participle or verbal noun? 28. What say Crombie

and others about this disputable phraseology? 29. What says Brown of this

their teaching? 30. How do Priestley and others pretend to distinguish

between the participial and the substantive use of verbals in \_ing\_? 31.

What does Brown say of this doctrine? 32. If when a participle becomes an

adjective it drops its regimen, should it not also drop it on becoming a

noun? 33. Where the sense admits of a choice of construction in respect to

the participle, is not attention due to the analogy of general grammar? 34.

Does it appear that nouns before participles are less frequently subjected

to their government than pronouns? 35. Why must a grammarian discriminate

between idioms, or peculiarities, and the common mode of expression? 36. Is

the Latin gerund, like the verbal in \_ing\_, sometimes active, sometimes

passive; and when the former governs the genitive, do we imitate the idiom

in English? 37. Is it agreed among grammarians, that the Latin gerund may

govern the genitive of the agent? 38. What distinction between the

participial and the substantive use of verbals in \_ing\_ do Crombie and

others propose to make? 39. How does this accord with the views of Murray,

Lowth, Adam, and Brown?. 40. How does Hiley treat the English participle?

41. What further is remarked concerning false teaching in relation to

participles?

LESSON XXIX.--ADVERBS.

1. What is replied to Dr. Adam's suggestion, "Adverbs sometimes qualify

substantives?" 2. Do not adverbs sometimes relate to participial nouns? 3.

If an adverbial word relates directly to a noun or pronoun, does not that

fact constitute it an adjective? 4. Are such expressions as, "the \_then\_

ministry," "the \_above\_ discourse," good English, or bad--well authorized,

or not? 5. When words commonly used as adverbs assume the construction of

nouns, how are they to be parsed? 6. Must not the parser be careful to

distinguish adverbs used substantively or adjectively, from such as may be

better resolved by the supposing of an ellipsis? 7. How is an adverb to be

parsed, when it seems to be put for a verb? 8. How are adverbs to be parsed

in such expressions as, "\_Away with him?\_" 9. What is observed of the

relation of conjunctive adverbs, and of the misuse of \_when\_? 10. What is

said in regard to the placing of adverbs? 11. What suggestions are made

concerning the word \_no\_? 12. What is remarked of two or more negatives in

the same sentence? 13. Is that a correct rule which says, "Two negatives,

in English, destroy each other, or are equivalent to an affirmative?" 14.

What is the dispute among grammarians concerning the adoption of \_or\_ or

\_nor\_ after \_not\_ or \_no\_? 15. What fault is found with the opinion of

Priestley, Murray, Ingersoll, and Smith, that "either of them may be used

with nearly equal propriety?" 16. How does John Burn propose to settle this

dispute? 17. How does Churchill treat the matter? 18. What does he say of

the manner in which "the use of \_nor\_ after \_not\_ has been introduced?" 19.

What other common modes of expression are censured by this author under the

same head? 20. How does Brown review these criticisms, and attempt to

settle the question? 21. What critical remark is made on the misuse of

\_ever\_ and \_never\_? 22. How does Churchill differ from Lowth respecting the

phrase, "\_ever so wisely\_," or "\_never so wisely?\_" 23. What is observed of

\_never\_ and \_ever\_ as seeming to be adjectives, and being liable to

contraction? 24. What strictures are made on the classification and placing

of the word \_only\_? 25. What is observed of the term \_not but\_, and of the

adverbial use of \_but\_? 26. What is noted of the ambiguous use of \_but\_ or

\_only\_? 27. What notions are inculcated by different grammarians about the

introductory word \_there\_?

LESSON XXX.--CONJUNCTIONS.

1. When two declinable words are connected by a conjunction, why are they

of the same case? 2. What is the power, and what the position, of a

conjunction that connects sentences or clauses? 3. What further is added

concerning the terms which conjunctions connect? 4. What is remarked of two

or more conjunctions coming together? 5. What is said of \_and\_ as supposed

to be used to call attention? 6. What relation of case occurs between nouns

connected by \_as\_? 7. Between what other related terms can \_as\_ be

employed? 8. What is \_as\_ when it is made the subject or the object of a

verb? 9. What questions are raised among grammarians, about the

construction of \_as follow\_ or \_as follows\_, and other similar phrases? 10.

What is said of Murray's mode of treating this subject? 11. Has Murray

written any thing which goes to show whether \_as follows\_ can be right or

not, when the preceding noun is plural? 12. What is the opinion of Nixon,

and of Crombie? 13. What conjunction is frequently understood? 14. What is

said of ellipsis after \_than\_ or \_as\_? 15. What is suggested concerning the

character and import of \_than\_ and \_as\_? 16. Does \_than\_ as well as \_as\_

usually take the same case after it that occurs before it? 17. Is the Greek

or Latin construction of the latter term in a comparison usually such as

ours? 18. What inferences have our grammarians made from the phrase \_than

whom\_? 19. Is \_than\_ supposed by Murray to be capable of governing any

other objective than \_whom\_? 20. What grammarian supposes \_whom\_ after

\_than\_ to be "in the objective case \_absolute\_?" 21. How does the author of

this work dispose of the example? 22. What notice is taken of O. B.

Peirce's Grammar, with reference to his manner of parsing words after

\_than\_ or \_as\_? 23. What says Churchill about the notion that certain

conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood? 24. What is said of the different

parts of speech contained in the list of correspondents?

LESSON XXXI.--PREPOSITIONS.

1. What is said of the parsing of a preposition? 2. How can the terms of

relation which pertain to the preposition be ascertained? 3. What is said

of the transposition of the two terms? 4. Between what parts of speech, as

terms of the relation, can a preposition be used? 5. What is said of the

ellipsis of one or the other of the terms? 6. Is \_to\_ before the infinitive

to be parsed just as any other preposition? 7. What is said of Dr. Adam's

"\_To\_ taken \_absolutely\_?" 8. What is observed in relation to the

exceptions to Rule 23d? 9. What is said of the placing of prepositions? 10.

What is told of two prepositions coming together? 11. In how many and what

ways does the relation of prepositions admit of complexity? 12. What is the

difference between \_in\_ and \_into\_? 13. What notice is taken of the

application of \_between, betwixt, among, amongst, amid, amidst\_? 14. What

erroneous remark have Priestley, Murray, and others, about two prepositions

"in the same construction?" 15. What false doctrine have Lowth, Murray, and

others, about the separating of the preposition from its noun? 16. What is

said of the prepositions which follow \_averse\_ and \_aversion, except\_ and

\_exception\_? 17. What is remarked concerning the use of \_of, to, on\_, and

\_upon\_? 18. Can there be an inelegant use of prepositions which is not

positively ungrammatical?

LESSON XXXII.--INTERJECTIONS.

1. Are all interjections to be parsed as being put absolute? 2. What is

said of \_O\_ and the vocative case? 3. What do Nixon and Kirkham erroneously

teach about cases governed by interjections? 4. What say Murray, Ingersoll,

and Lennie, about interjections and cases? 5. What is shown of the later

teaching to which Murray's erroneous and unoriginal remark about "\_O, oh\_,

and \_ah\_," has given rise? 6. What notice is taken of the application of

the rule for "\_O, oh\_, and \_ah\_," to nouns of the second person? 7. What is

observed concerning the further extension of this rule to nouns and

pronouns of the third person? 8. What authors teach that interjections are

put absolute, and have no government? 9. What is the construction of the

pronoun in "\_Ah me!\_" "\_Ah him!\_" or any similar exclamation? 10. Is the

common rule for interjections, as requiring certain cases after them,

sustained by any analogy from the Latin syntax? 11. Can it be shown, on

good authority, that \_O\_ in Latin may be followed by the nominative of the

first person or the accusative of the second? 12. What errors in the

construction and punctuation of interjectional phrases are quoted from

Fisk, Smith, and Kirkham? 13. What is said of those sentences in which an

interjection is followed by a preposition or the conjunction \_that\_? 14.

What is said of the place of the interjection? 15. What says O. B. Peirce

about the name and place of the interjection? 16. What is offered in

refutation of Peirce's doctrine?

[Now parse the six lessons of the \_Thirteenth Praxis\_; taking, if the

teacher please, the Italic or difficult words only; and referring to the

exceptions or observations under the rules, as often as there is occasion.

Then proceed to the correction of the eighteen lessons of \_False Syntax\_

contained in Chapter Twelfth, or the General Review.]

LESSON XXXIII.--GENERAL RULE.

1. Why were the general rule and the general or critical notes added to the

foregoing code of syntax? 2. What is the general rule? 3. How many are

there of the general or critical notes? 4. What says Critical Note 1st of

\_the parts of speech\_? 5. What says Note 2d of \_the doubtful reference\_ of

words? 6. What says Note 3d of \_definitions\_? 7. What says Note 4th of

\_comparisons\_? 8. What says Note 5th of \_falsities\_? 9. What says Note 6th

of \_absurdities\_? 10. What says Note 7th of \_self-contradiction\_? 11. What

says Note 8th of \_senseless jumbling\_? 12. What says Note 9th of \_words

needless\_? 13. What says Note 10th of \_improper omissions\_? 14. What says

Note 11th of \_literary blunders\_? 15. What says Note 12th of \_literary

perversions\_? 16. What says Note 13th of \_literary awkwardness\_? 17. What

says Note 14th of \_literary ignorance\_? 18. What says Note 15th of

\_literary silliness\_? 19. What says Note 16th of \_errors incorrigible\_? 20.

In what place are the rules, exceptions, notes, and observations, in the

foregoing system of syntax, enumerated and described? 21. What suggestions

are made in relation to the number of rules or notes, and the completeness

of the system? 22. What is remarked on the place and character of the

critical notes and the general rule? 23. What is noted in relation to the

unamendable imperfections sometimes found in ancient writings?

[Now correct--(or at least read, and compare with the Key--) the sixteen

lessons of \_False Syntax\_, arranged under appropriate heads, for the

application of the General Rule; the sixteen others adapted to the Critical

Notes; and the five concluding ones, for which the rules are various.]

CHAPTER XV.--FOR WRITING.

EXERCISES IN SYNTAX.

[Fist][When the pupil has been sufficiently exercised in \_syntactical

parsing\_, and has corrected \_orally\_, according to the formulas given, all

the examples of false syntax designed for oral exercises, or so many of

them as may be deemed sufficient; he should write out the following

exercises, correcting them according to the principles of syntax given in

the rules, notes, and observations, contained in the preceding chapters;

but omitting or varying the references, because his corrections cannot be

ascribed to the books which contain these errors.]

EXERCISE I.--ARTICLES.

"They are institutions not merely of an useless, but of an hurtful

nature."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 344. "Quintilian prefers the full, the

copious, and the amplifying style."--\_Ib.\_, p. 247. "The proper application

of rules respecting style, will always be best learned by the means of the

illustration which examples afford."--\_Ib.\_, p. 224. "He was even tempted

to wish that he had such an one."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 41. "Every

limb of the human body has an agreeable and disagreeable motion."--\_Kames,

El. of Crit.\_ i, 217. "To produce an uniformity of opinion in all

men."--\_Ib.\_, ii. 365. "A writer that is really an humourist in character,

does this without design."--\_Ib.\_, i. 303. "Addison was not an humourist in

character."--\_Ib.\_, i. 303. "It merits not indeed the title of an universal

language."--\_Ib.\_, i. 353. "It is unpleasant to find even a negative and

affirmative proposition connected."--\_Ib.\_, ii. 25. "The sense is left

doubtful by wrong arrangement of members."--\_Ib.\_, ii. 44. "As, for

example, between the adjective and following substantive."--\_Ib.\_, ii. 104.

"Witness the following hyperbole, too bold even for an Hotspur."--\_Ib.\_,

193. "It is disposed to carry along the good and bad properties of one to

another."--\_Ib.\_, ii. 197. "What a kind of a man such an one is likely to

prove, is easy to foresee."--\_Locke, on Education\_, p. 47. "In propriety

there cannot be such a thing as an universal grammar, unless there were

such a thing as an universal language."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 47. "The

very same process by which he gets at the meaning of any ancient author,

carries him to a fair and a faithful rendering of the scriptures of the Old

and New Testament."--\_Chalmers, Sermons\_, p. 16. "But still a predominancy

of one or other quality in the minister is often visible."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 19. "Among the ancient critics, Longinus possessed most

delicacy; Aristotle, most correctness."--\_Ib.\_, p. 20. "He then proceeded

to describe an hexameter and pentameter verse."--\_Ward's Preface to Lily\_,

p. vi. "And Alfred, who was no less able a negotiator than courageous a

warrior, was unanimously chosen King."--\_Pinnock's Geog.\_, p. 271. "An

useless incident weakens the interest which we take in the

action."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 460. "This will lead into some detail; but I

hope an useful one."--\_Ib.\_, p. 234. "When they understand how to write

English with due Connexion, Propriety, and Order, and are pretty well

Masters of a tolerable Narrative Stile, they may be advanced to writing of

Letters."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 337. "The Senate is divided into the Select

and Great Senate."--\_Hewitt's Student-Life in Germany\_, p. 28. "We see a

remains of this ceremonial yet in the public solemnities of the

universities."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46.

"Where an huge pollard on the winter fire,

At an huge distance made them all retire."--\_Crabbe, Borough\_, p. 209.

EXERCISE II.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

"Childrens Minds are narrow, and weak, and usually susceptible but of one

Thought at once."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 297. "Rather for Example sake, than

that ther is any Great Matter in it."--\_Right of Tythes\_, p. xvii. "The

more that any mans worth is, the greater envy shall he be liable

to."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 461. "He who works only for the common

welfare is the most noble, and no one, but him, deserves the name."--

\_Spurzheim, on Ed.\_, p. 182. "He then got into the carriage, to sit with

the man, whom he had been told was Morgan."--\_Stone, on Masonry\_, p. 480.

"But, for such footmen as thee and I are, let us never desire to meet with

an enemy."--\_Bunyan's P. P.\_, p. 153. "One of them finds out that she is

Tibulluses Nemesis."--\_Philological Museum\_, Vol. i, p. 446. "He may be

employed in reading such easy books as Corderius, and some of Erasmus'

Colloques, with an English translation."--\_Burgh's Dignity\_, Vol. i, p.

150. "For my preface was to show the method of the priests of Aberdeen's

procedure against the Quakers."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 235. "They

signify no more against us, than Cochlæus' lies against Luther."--\_Ib.\_, i,

236. "To justify Moses his doing obeisance to his father in law."--\_Ib.\_,

i, 241. "Which sort of clauses are generally included between two

comma's."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 306. "Between you and I, she is but a

cutler's wife."--\_Goldsmith's Essays\_, p. 187. "In Edward the third, King

of England's time."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 104. "The nominative case is the

agent or doer."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 11. "\_Dog\_ is in the nominative

case, because it is the agent, actor, or doer."--\_Ib.\_ "The actor or doer

is considered the naming or leading noun."--\_Ib.\_ "The radical form of the

principal verb is made use of."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 24. "They would

have the same right to be taken notice of by grammarians."--\_Ib.\_, p. 30.

"I shall not quarrel with the friend of twelve years standing."--

\_Liberator\_, ix, 39. "If there were none living but him, John would be

against Lilburne, and Lilburne against John."--\_Biog. Dict., w. Lilburne\_.

"When a personal pronoun is made use of to relate to them."--\_Cobbett's

Eng. Gram.\_, ¶ 179. "The town was taken in a few hours time."--\_Goldsmith's

Rome\_, p. 120. "You must not employ such considerations merely as those

upon which the author here rests, taken from gratitude's being the law of

my nature."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 296. "Our author's second illustration, is

taken from praise being the most disinterested act of homage."--\_Ib.\_, p.

301. "The first subdivision concerning praise being the most pleasant part

of devotion, is very just and well expressed."--\_Ib.\_ "It was a cold

thought to dwell upon its disburdening the mind of debt."--\_Ib.\_ "The

thought which runs through all this passage, of man's being the priest of

nature, and of his existence being calculated chiefly for this end, that he

might offer up the praises of the mute part of the creation, is an

ingenious thought and well expressed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 297. "The mayor of

Newyork's portrait."--\_Ware's English Grammar\_, p. 9.

"Calm Temperance, whose blessings those partake

Who hunger, and who thirst, for scribbling sake."

--\_Pope, Dunciad\_, i, 50.

EXERCISE III.--ADJECTIVES.

"Plumb down he drops ten thousand fathom deep."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. ii, 1,

933. "In his Night Thoughts, there is much energy of expression: in the

three first, there are several pathetic passages."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

403. "Learn to pray, to pray greatly and strong."--\_The Dial\_, Vol. ii, p.

215. "The good and the bad genius are struggling with one another."--

\_Philological Museum\_, i, 490. "The definitions of the parts of speech, and

application of syntax, should be given almost simultaneous."--\_Wilbur and

Livingston's Gram.\_, p. 6. "I had studied grammar previous to his

instructing me."--\_Ib.\_, p. 13. "So difficult it is to separate these two

things from one another."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 92. "New words should never

be ventured upon, except by such whose established reputation gives them

some degree of dictatorial power over language."--\_Ib.\_, p. 94. "The verses

necessarily succeed each other."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 142. "They saw

that it would be practicable to express, in writing, the whole combinations

of sounds which our words require."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 68. "There are

some Events, the Truth of which cannot appear to any, but such whose Minds

are first qualify'd by some certain Knowledge."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p.

242. "These Sort of Feet are in Latin called Iambics."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_,

p. 134. "And the Words are mostly so disposed, that the Accents may fall on

every 2d, 4th, 6th, 8th, and 10th Syllables."--\_Ib.\_, p. 135. "If the verse

does not sound well and harmonious to the ear."--\_Ib.\_, p. 136. "I gat me

men-singers and women-singers, and the delights of the sons of men, as

musical instruments, and that of all sorts."--\_Ecclesiastes\_, ii, 8. "No

people have so studiously avoided the collision of consonants as the

Italians."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 183. "And these two subjects must

destroy one another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. "Duration and space are two things in

some respects the most like, and in some respects the most unlike to one

another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 103. "Nothing ever affected him so much, as this

misconduct of his friend."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 155. "To see the bearing

of the several parts of speech on each other."--\_Greenleaf's Gram.\_, p. 2.

"Two or more adjectives following each other, either with or without a

conjunction, qualify the same word."--\_Bullion's E. Gram.\_, p. 75. "The two

chapters which now remain, are by far the most important of any."--

\_Student's Manual\_, p. 293. "That has been the subject of no less than six

negotiations."--\_Pres. Jackson's Message\_, 1830. "His gravity makes him

work cautious."--\_Steele, Spect.\_, No. 534. "Grandeur, being an extreme

vivid emotion, is not readily produced in perfection but by reiterated

impressions."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 203. "Every object appears less

than when viewed separately and independent of the series."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 14.

"An Organ is the best of all other musical instruments."--\_Dilworth's

English Tongue\_, p. 94.

"Let such teach others who themselves excel,

And censure freely who have written well."--\_Pope, on Crit.\_, l. 15.

EXERCISE IV.--PRONOUNS.

"You had musty victuals, and he hath holp to eat it."--SHAK.: \_Joh. Dict.,

w. Victuals\_. "Sometime am I all wound with adders, who, with cloven

tongues, do hiss me into madness."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 68. "When a

letter or syllable is transposed, it is called METATHESIS."--\_Adam's Lat.

Gram.\_, p. 275. "When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a

word, it is called PROSTHESIS."--\_Ib.\_ "If a letter or syllable be taken

from the beginning of a word, it is called APHÆRESIS."--\_Ib.\_ "We can

examine few, or rather no Substances, so far, as to assure ourselves that

we have a certain Knowledge of most of its Properties."--\_Brightland's

Gram.\_, p. 244. "Who do you dine with?"--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 99. "Who do

you speak to?"--\_Shakspeare\_. "All the objects of prayer are calculated to

excite the most active and vivid sentiments, which can arise in the heart

of man."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, i, 328. "It has been my endeavour to furnish you

with the most useful materials, which contribute to the purposes of

eloquence."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 28. "All paraphrases are vicious: it is not

translating, it is commenting."--\_Formey's Belles-Lettres\_, p. 163. "Did

you never bear false witness against thy neighbour?"--SIR W. DRAPER:

\_Junius\_, p. 40. "And they shall eat up thine harvest and thy bread: they

shall eat up thy flocks and thine herds."--\_Jer.\_, v, 17. "He was the

spiritual rock who miraculously supplied the wants of the Israelites."--

\_Gurney's Evidences\_, p. 53. "To cull from the mass of mankind those

individuals upon which the attention ought to be most employed."--

\_Rambler\_, No. 4. "His speech contains one of the grossest and most

infamous calumnies which ever was uttered."--\_Merchant's Gram. Key\_, p.

198. "STROMBUS, i. m. A shell-fish of the sea, that has a leader whom they

follow as their king. Plin."--\_Ainsworth's Dict.\_, 4to. "Whomsoever will,

let him come"--MORNING STAR: \_Lib.\_, xi, 13. "Thy own words have convinced

me (stand a little more out of the sun if you please) that thou hast not

the least notion of true honour."--\_Fielding\_. "Whither art going, pretty

Annette? Your little feet you'll surely wet."--\_L. M. Child\_. "Metellus,

who conquered Macedon, was carried to the funeral pile by his four sons,

one of which was the prætor."--\_Kennett's Roman Ant.\_, p. 332. "That not a

soldier which they did not know, should mingle himself among them."--

\_Josephus\_, Vol. v, p. 170. "The Neuter Gender denotes objects which are

neither males nor females."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 37. "And hence it

is, that the most important precept, which a rhetorical teacher can

inculcate respecting this part of discourse, is negative."--\_Adams's

Rhet.\_, ii, 97. "The meanest and most contemptible person whom we behold,

is the offspring of heaven, one of the children of the Most High."--

\_Scougal\_, p. 102. "He shall sit next to Darius, because of his wisdom, and

shall be called Darius his cousin."--\_1 Esdras\_, iii, 7. "In 1757, he

published his 'Fleece;' but he did not long survive it."--\_L. Murray,

Seq.\_, p. 252.

"The sun upon the calmest sea

Appears not half so bright as thee."--\_Prior\_.

EXERCISE V.--VERBS.

"The want of connexion here, as well as in the description of the prodigies

that accompanied the death of Cæsar, are scarce pardonable."--\_Kames, El.

of Crit.\_, Vol. i, p. 38. "The causes of the original beauty of language,

considered as significant, which is a branch of the present subject, will

be explained in their order."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. ii, p. 6. "Neither of these two

Definitions do rightly adjust the Genuine signification of this

Tense."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 280. "In the earnest hope that they may

prove as beneficial to other teachers as they have to the author."--\_John

Flint's Gram.\_, p. 3. "And then an example is given showing the manner in

which the pupil should be required to classify."--\_Ib.\_, p. 3. "\_Qu\_ in

English words are equivalent to \_kw\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 258. "\_Qu\_

has the power of \_kw\_, therefore quit doubles the final consonant in

forming its preterite."--\_Ib.\_, p. 103. "The word pronoun or substantive

can be substituted, should any teacher prefer to do it"--\_Ib.\_, p. 132.

"The three angles of a right-angled triangle were equal to two right angles

in the days of Moses, as well as now."--GOODELL: \_Liberator\_, Vol. xi, p.

4. "But now two paces of the vilest earth is room enough."--\_Beaut. of

Shak.\_, p. 126. "Latin and French, as the World now goes, is by every one

acknowledged to be necessary."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 351. "These things,

that he will thus learn by sight, and have by roat in his Memory, is not

all, I confess, that he is to learn upon the Globes."--\_Ib.\_, p. 321.

"Henry: if John shall meet me, I will hand him your note."--\_O. B. Peirce's

Gram.\_, p. 261. "They pronounce the syllables in a different manner from

what they do at other times."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 329. "Cato reminded him

of many warnings he had gave him."--\_Goldsmith's Rome\_, i, 114. "The Wages

is small. The Compasses is broken."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, p. 95. "Prepare thy

heart for prayer, lest thou temptest God."--\_Life of Luther\_, p. 83. "That

a soldier should fly is a shameful thing."--\_Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 155.

"When there is two verbs which are together."--\_Woodworth's Gram.\_, p. 27.

"Interjections are words used to express some passion of the mind; and is

followed by a note of admiration!"--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 126. "And the

king said, If he be alone, there is tidings in his mouth."--\_2 Samuel\_,

xviii, 25. "The opinions of the few must be overruled, and submit to the

opinions of the many."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 56. "One of the principal

difficulties which here occurs, has been already hinted."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 391. "With milky blood the heart is overflown."--\_Thomson, Castle of

Ind\_. "No man dare solicit for the votes of hiz nabors."--\_Webster's

Essays\_, p. 344. "Yet they cannot, and they have no right to exercise

it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 56. "In order to make it be heard over their vast

theatres."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 471. "Sometimes, however, the relative and

its clause is placed before the antecedent and its clause."--\_Bullions,

Lat. Gram.\_, p. 200.

"Here thou, great Anna! whom three realms obey,

Does sometimes counsel take--and sometimes tea."

--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 321.

EXERCISE VI.--PARTICIPLES.

"On the other hand, the degrading or vilifying an object, is done

successfully by ranking it with one that is really low."--\_Kames, El. of

Crit.\_, ii, 50. "The magnifying or diminishing objects by means of

comparison, proceeds from the same cause."--\_Ib.\_, i, 239. "Gratifying the

affection will also contribute to my own happiness."--\_Ib.\_, i, 53. "The

pronouncing syllables in a high or a low tone."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 77. "The

crowding into one period or thought different figures of speech, is not

less faulty than crowding metaphors in that manner."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 234. "To

approve is acknowledging we ought to do a thing; and to condemn is owning

we ought not to do it."--\_Burlamaqui, on Law\_, p. 39. "To be provoked that

God suffers men to act thus, is claiming to govern the word in his

stead."--\_Secker\_. "Let every subject be well understood before passing on

to another."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 18. "Doubling the \_t\_ in \_bigotted\_

is apt to lead to an erroneous accentuation of the word on the second

syllable."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 22. "Their compelling the man to serve

was an act of tyranny."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 54. "One of the greatest

misfortunes of the French tragedy is, its being always written in

rhyme."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 469. "Horace entitles his satire 'Sermones,'

and seems not to have intended rising much higher than prose put into

numbers."--\_Ib.\_, p. 402. "Feeding the hungry, clothing the naked,

comforting the afflicted, yield more pleasure than we receive from those

actions which respect only ourselves."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 238. "But

when we attempt to go a step beyond this, and inquire what is the cause of

regularity and variety producing in our minds the sensation of beauty, any

reason we can assign is extremely imperfect."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 29. "In

an author's writing with propriety, his being free of the two former faults

seems implied."--\_Ib.\_, p. 94. "To prevent our being carried away by that

torrent of false and frivolous taste."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. "When we are unable

to assign the reasons of our being pleased."--\_Ib.\_, p. 15. "An adjective

will not make good sense without joining it to a noun."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_,

p. 12. "What is said respecting sentences being inverted?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 71.

"Though he admits of all the other cases, made use of by the

Latins."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, p. viii. "This indeed, is accounting but

feebly for its use in this instance."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 148. "The

knowledge of what passes in the mind is necessary for the understanding the

Principles of Grammar."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 73. "By \_than's\_ being

used instead of as, it is not asserted that the former has as much fruit as

the latter."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 207. "Thus much for the Settling

your Authority over your Children."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 58.

EXERCISE VII.--ADVERBS.

"There can scarce be a greater Defect in a Gentleman, than not to express

himself well either in Writing or Speaking."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_, p. 335. "She

seldom or ever wore a thing twice in the same way."--\_Castle Rackrent\_, p.

84. "So can I give no reason, nor I will not."--\_Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 45.

"Nor I know not where I did lodge last night."--\_Ib.\_, p. 270. "It is to be

presumed they would become soonest proficient in Latin."--\_Burn's Gram.\_,

p. xi. "The difficulty of which has not been a little increased by that

variety."--\_Ward's Pref. to Lily's Gram.\_, p. xi. "That full endeavours be

used in every monthly meeting to seasonably end all business or cases that

come before them."--\_N. E. Discipline\_, p. 44. "In minds where they had

scarce any footing before."--\_Spectator\_, No. 566. "The negative form is

when the adverb \_not\_ is used."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 61. "The

interrogative form is when a question is asked."--\_Ibid.\_ "The finding out

the Truth ought to be his whole Aim."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 239.

"Mention the first instance when \_that\_ is used in preference to \_who,

whom\_, or \_which\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 96. "The plot was always

exceeding simple. It admitted of few incidents."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 470.

"Their best tragedies make not a deep enough impression on the

heart."--\_Ib.\_, p. 472. "The greatest genius on earth, not even a Bacon,

can be a perfect master of every branch."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 13. "The

verb OUGHT is only used in the indicative [and subjunctive moods]."--\_Dr.

Ash's Gram.\_, p. 70. "It is still a greater deviation from congruity, to

affect not only variety in the words, but also in the construction."--

\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 28. "It has besides been found that, generally,

students attend those lectures more carefully for which they pay."--\_Dr.

Lieber, Lit. Conv.\_, p. 65. "This book I obtained through a friend, it

being not exposed for sale."--\_Woolsey, ib.\_, p. 76. "Here there is no

manner of resemblance but in the word \_drown\_."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii,

163. "We have had often occasion to inculcate, that the mind passeth easily

and sweetly along a train of connected objects."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 197. "Observe

the periods when the most illustrious persons flourished."--\_Worcester's

Hist.\_, p. iv. "For every horse is not called Bucephalus, nor every dog

Turk."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 15. "One can scarce avoid smiling at the

blindness of a certain critic."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 257. "Provided

always, that we run not into the extreme of pruning so very close, so as to

give a hardness and dryness to style."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 92;

\_Blair's\_, 111. "Agreement is when one word is like another in number,

case, gender or person."--\_Frost's Gram.\_, p. 43. "Government is when one

word causes another to be in some particular number, person or

case."--\_Ibid.\_ "It seems to be nothing more than the simple form of the

adjective, and to imply not either comparison or degree."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 47.

EXERCISE VIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

"The Indians had neither cows, horses, oxen, or sheep."--\_Olney's Introd.

to Geog.\_, p. 46. "Who have no other object in view, but, to make a show of

their supposed talents."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 344. "No other but these,

could draw the attention of men in their rude uncivilized state."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 379. "That he shall stick at nothing, nor nothing stick with

him."--\_Pope\_. "To enliven it into a passion, no more is required but the

real or ideal presence of the object."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 110. "I

see no more to be made of it but to-rest upon the final cause first

mentioned."--\_Ib.\_, i, 175. "No quality nor circumstance contributes more

to grandeur than force."--\_Ib.\_, i, 215. "It being a quotation, not from a

poet nor orator, but from a grave author, writing an institute of

law."--\_Ib.\_, i, 233. "And our sympathy cannot be otherwise gratified but

by giving all the succour in our power."--\_Ib.\_, i, 362. "And to no verse,

as far as I know, is a greater variety of time necessary."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 79.

"English Heroic verse admits no more but four capital pauses."--\_Ib.\_, ii,

105. "The former serves for no other purpose but to make harmony."--\_Ib.\_,

231. "But the plan was not perhaps as new as some might think

it."--\_Literary Conv.\_, p. 85. "The impression received would probably be

neither confirmed or corrected."--\_Ib.\_, p. 183. "Right is nothing else but

what reason acknowledges."--\_Burlamaqui, on Law\_, p. 32. "Though it should

be of no other use but this."--BP. WILKINS: \_Tooke's D. P.\_, ii, 27. "One

hope no sooner dies in us but another rises up."--\_Spect.\_, No. 535. "This

rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a

substantive."--\_Adams Latin Gram.\_, p. 156; \_Gould's\_, 129. "There can be

no doubt but the plan of exercise pointed out at page 132, is the best that

can be adopted."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. viii. "The exertions of this

gentleman have done more than any other writer on the subject."--DR.

ABERCROMBIE: \_Rec. in Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 306. "No accidental nor

unaccountable event ought to be admitted."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 273.

"Wherever there was much fire and vivacity in the genius of

nations."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 5. "I aim at nothing else but your

safety."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 90. "There are pains inflicted upon man

for other purposes except warning."--\_Wayland's Moral Sci.\_, p. 122. "Of

whom we have no more but a single letter remaining."--\_Campbell's Pref. to

Matthew\_. "The publisher meant no more but that W. Ames was the

author."--\_Sewel's History, Preface\_, p. xii. "Be neether bashful, nor

discuver uncommon solicitude."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 403. "They put Minos

to death, by detaining him so long in a bath, till he fainted."--

\_Lempriere's Dict.\_ "For who could be so hard-hearted to be severe?"--

\_Cowley\_. "He must neither be a panegyrist nor a satirist."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 353. "No man unbiassed by philosophical opinions, thinks that

life, air, or motion, are precisely the same things."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist.

of Lang.\_, i, 426. "Which I had no sooner drank, but I found a pimple

rising in my forehead."--ADDISON: \_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 182. "This I view

very important, and ought to be well understood."--\_Osborn's Key\_, p. 5.

"So that neither emphases, tones, or cadences should be the

same."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 5.

"You said no more but that yourselves must be

The judges of the scripture sense, not we."--\_Dryden\_, p. 96.

EXERCISE IX.--PREPOSITIONS.

"To be entirely devoid of relish for eloquence, poetry, or any of the fine

arts, is justly construed to be an unpromising symptom of youth."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 14. "Well met, George, for I was looking of you."--\_Walker's

Particles\_, p. 441. "There is another fact worthy attention."--\_Channing's

Emancip.\_, p. 49. "They did not gather of a Lord's-day, in costly

temples."--\_The Dial\_, No. ii, p. 209. "But certain ideas have, by

convention between those who speak the same language, been agreed to be

represented by certain articulate sounds."--\_Adams's Rhet.\_, ii, 271. "A

careful study of the language is previously requisite, in all who aim at

writing it properly."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 91. "He received his reward in a

small place, which he enjoyed to his death."--\_Notes to the Dunciad\_, B.

ii, l. 283. "Gaddi, the pupil of Cimabue, was not unworthy his

master."--\_Literary History\_, p. 268. "It is a new, and picturesque, and

glowing image, altogether worthy the talents of the great poet who

conceived it."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 100. "If the right does exist, it

is paramount his title."--\_Angell, on Tide Waters\_, p. 237. "The most

appropriate adjective should be placed nearest the noun."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 194. "Is not Mr. Murray's octavo grammar more worthy the

dignified title of a 'Philosophical Grammar?'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 39.

"If it shall be found unworthy the approbation and patronage of the

literary public."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 3. "When the relative is preceded

by two words referring to the same thing, its proper antecedent is the one

next it."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 101. "The magistrates commanded them

to depart the city."--\_Sewel's Hist.\_, p. 97. "Mankind act oftener from

caprice than reason."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 272. "It can never view,

clearly and distinctly, above one object at a time."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_,

p. 65. "The theory of speech, or systematic grammar, was never regularly

treated as a science till under the Macedonian kings."--\_Knight, on Greek

Alph.\_, p. 106. "I have been at London a year, and I saw the king last

summer."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 198. "This is a crucifying of Christ, and

a rebelling of Christ."--\_Waldenfield\_. "There is another advantage worthy

our observation."--\_Bolingbroke, on Hist.\_, p. 26. "Certain conjunctions

also require the subjunctive mood after them, independently on the

sense."--\_Grant's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 77. "If the critical reader will think

proper to admit of it at all."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 191. "It is the

business of an epic poet to copy after nature."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 427.

"Good as the cause is, it is one from which numbers have deserted."--

\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 222. "In respect of the images it will receive from

matter."--\_Spectator\_, No. 413. "Instead of following on to whither

morality would conduct it."--\_Dymond's Essays\_, p. 85. "A variety of

questions upon subjects on which their feelings, and wishes, and interests,

are involved."--\_Ib.\_, p. 147. "In the Greek, Latin, Saxon, and German

tongues, some of these situations are termed CASES, and are expressed by

additions to the Noun instead of by separate words and phrases."--\_Booth's

Introd.\_, p. 33. "Every teacher is bound during three times each week, to

deliver a public lecture, gratis."--\_Howitt's Student-Life in Germany\_, p.

35. "But the professors of every political as well as religious creed move

amongst each other in manifold circles."--\_Ib.\_, p. 113.

EXERCISE X.--PROMISCUOUS.

"The inseparable Prepositions making no Sense alone, they are used only in

Composition."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 66. "The English Scholar learns

little from the two last Rules."--\_Ib., Pref.\_, p. xi. "To prevent the body

being stolen by the disciples."--\_Watson's Apology\_, p. 123. "To prevent

the Jews rejoicing at his death."--\_Wood's Dict.\_, p. 584. "After he had

wrote the chronicles of the priesthood of John Hyrcanus."--\_Whiston's

Josephus\_, v, 195. "Such words are sometimes parsed as a direct address,

than which, nothing could be farther from the truth."--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_,

p. 89. "The signs of the tenses in these modes are as follows."--\_C.

Adams's Gram.\_, p. 33. "The signs of the tenses in the Potential mode are

as follows."--\_Ibid.\_ "And, if more promiscuous examples be found

necessary, they may be taken from Mr. Murray's English Exercises."--

\_Nesbit's Parsing\_, p. xvi. "\_One\_ is a numeral adjective, the same as

\_ten\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 95. "Nothing so much distinguishes a little mind as to

stop at words."--MONTAGUE: \_Letter-Writer\_, p. 129. "But I say, again, What

signifies words?"--\_Id., ib.\_ "Obedience to parents is a divine command,

given in both the Old and the New Testaments."--\_Nesbit's Parsing\_, p. 207.

"A Compound Subject is a union of several Subjects to all which belong the

same Attribute."--\_Fosdick's De Sacy, on General Gram.\_, p. 22. "There are

other languages in which the Conjunctive does not prevent our expressing

the subject of the Conjunctive Proposition by a Pronoun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 58.

"This distinction must necessarily be expressed by language, but there are

several different modes of doing it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "This action may be

considered with reference to the person or thing upon whom the action

falls."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97. "There is nothing in the nature of things to prevent

our coining suitable words."--\_Barnard's Gram.\_, p. 41. "What kind of a

book is this?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 43. "Whence all but him had fled."--\_Ib.\_, p. 58.

"Person is a distinction between individuals, as speaking, spoken to, or

spoken of."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114. "He repented his having neglected his studies

at college."--\_Emmons's Gram.\_, p. 19. "What avails the taking so much

medicine, when you are so careless about taking cold?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 29.

"Active transitive verbs are those where the action passes from the agent

to the object."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. "Active intransitive verbs, are those where

the action is wholly confined to the agent or actor."--\_Ibid.\_ "Passive

verbs express the receiving, or suffering, the action."--\_Ib.\_, p. 34. "The

pluperfect tense expresses an action or event that passed prior or before

some other period of time specified in the sentence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42. "There

is no doubt of his being a great statesman."--\_Ib.\_, p. 64. "Herschell is

the fartherest from the sun of any of the planets."--\_Fuller's Gram.\_, p.

66. "There has not been introduced into the foregoing pages any reasons for

the classifications therein adopted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 80. "There must be a comma

before the verb, as well as between each nominative case."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98.

"\_Yon\_, with \_former\_ and \_latter\_, are also adjectives."--\_Brace's Gram.\_,

p. 17. "You was."--\_Ib.\_, p. 32. "If you was."--\_Ib.\_, p. 39. "Two words

which end in \_ly\_ succeeding each other are indeed a little offensive to

the ear."--\_Ib.\_, p. 85; \_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 102.

"Is endless life and happiness despis'd?

Or both wish'd here, where neither can be found?"--\_Young\_, p. 124.

EXERCISE XI.--PROMISCUOUS.

"Because any one of them is placed before a noun or pronoun, as you observe

I have done in every sentence."--\_Rand's Gram.\_, p. 74. "\_Might accompany\_

is a transitive verb, because it expresses an action which effects the

object \_me\_."--\_Gilbert's Gram.\_, p. 94. "\_Intend\_ is an intransitive verb

because it expresses an action which does not effect any object."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 93. "Charles and Eliza were jealous of one another."--\_J. M. Putnam's

Gram.\_, p. 44. "Thus \_one another\_ include both nouns."--\_Ibid.\_ "When the

antecedent is a child, \_that\_ is elegantly used in preference to \_who,

whom\_, or \_which\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 94. "He can do no more in words,

but make out the expression of his will."--\_Bp. Wilkins\_. "The form of the

first person plural of the imperative, \_love we\_, is grown obsolete."--

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 38. "Excluding those verbs which are become

obsolete."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 47. "He who sighs for pleasure, the

voice of wisdom can never reach, nor the power of virtue touch."--\_Wright's

Athens\_, p. 64. "The other branch of wit in the thought, is that only which

is taken notice of by Addison."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 312. "When any

measure of the Chancellor was found fault with."--\_Professors' Reasons\_, p.

14. "\_Whether\_ was formerly made use of to signify interrogation."--

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 54. "Under the article of \_Pronouns\_ the following

words must be taken notice of."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 95. "In a word, we

are afforded much pleasure, to be enabled to bestow our most unqualified

approbation on this excellent work."--\_Wright's Gram., Rec.\_, p. 4. "For

Recreation is not being Idle, as every one may observe."--\_Locke, on Ed.\_,

p. 365. "In the easier valuing and expressing that sum."--\_Dilworth's

Arith.\_, p. 3. "Addition is putting together of two or more numbers."--

\_Alexander's Arith.\_, p. 8. "The reigns of some of our British Queens may

fairly be urged in proof of woman being capable of discharging the most

arduous and complicated duties of government."--\_West's Letters to Y. L.\_,

p. 43. "What is the import of that command to love such an one as

ourselves?"--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 206. "It should seem then the

grand question was, What is good?"--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 297. "The

rectifying bad habits depends upon our consciousness of them."--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. 32. "To prevent our being misled by a mere name."--

\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 168. "I was refused an opportunity of replying in

the latter review."--\_Fowle's True English Gram.\_, p. 10. "But how rare is

such generosity and excellence as Howard displayed!"--\_M'Culloch's Gram.\_,

p. 39. "The noun is in the Nominative case when it is the name of the

person or thing which acts or is spoken of."--\_Ib.\_, p. 54. "The noun is in

the Objective case when it is the name of the person or thing which is the

object or end of an action or movement."--\_Ib.\_, p. 54. "To prevent their

being erased from your memory."--\_Mack's Gram.\_, p. 17. "Pleonasm, is when

a superfluous word is introduced abruptly."--\_Ib.\_, p. 69.

"Man feels his weakness, and to numbers run,

Himself to strengthen, or himself to shun."--\_Crabbe, Borough\_, p. 137.

EXERCISE XII.--TWO ERRORS.

"Independent on the conjunction, the sense requires the subjunctive

mood."--\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 77. "A Verb in past time without a sign

is Imperfect tense."--\_C. Adams's Gram.\_, p. 33. "New modelling your

household and personal ornaments is, I grant, an indispensable

duty."--\_West's Letters to Y. L.\_, p. 58. "For grown ladies and gentlemen

learning to dance, sing, draw, or even walk, is now too frequent to excite

ridicule."--\_Ib.\_, p. 123. "It is recorded that a physician let his horse

bleed on one of the evil days, and it soon lay dead."--\_Constable's

Miscellany\_, xxi. 99. "As to the apostrophe, it was seldom used to

distinguish the genitive case till about the beginning of the present

century, and then seems to have been introduced by mistake."--\_Dr. Ash's

Gram.\_, p. 23. "One of the relatives only varied to express the three

cases."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 24. "What! does every body take their morning

draught of this liquor?"--\_Collier's Cebes\_. "Here, all things comes round,

and bring the same appearances a long with them."--\_Collier's Antoninus\_,

p. 103. "Most commonly both the relative and verb are elegantly left out in

the second member."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. ix. "A fair receipt of water,

of some thirty or forty foot square."--\_Bacon's Essays\_, p. 127. "The old

know more indirect ways of outwiting others, than the young."--\_Burgh's

Dignity\_, i, 60. "The pronoun singular of the third person hath three

genders."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 21. "The preposition \_to\_ is made use of

before nouns of place, when they follow verbs and participles of

motion."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 203. "It is called, understanding human

nature, knowing the weak sides of men, &c."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p.

284. "Neither of which are taken notice of by this Grammar."--\_Johnson's

Gram. Com.\_, p. 279. "But certainly no invention is entitled to such degree

of admiration as that of language."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 54. "The Indians,

the Persians, and Arabians, were all famous for their tales."--\_Ib.\_, p.

374. "Such a leading word is the preposition and the conjunction."--

\_Felch's Comp. Gram.\_, p. 21. "This, of all others, is the most encouraging

circumstance in these times."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 37. "The putting

any constraint on the organs of speech, or urging them to a more rapid

action than they can easily perform in their tender state, must be

productive of indistinctness in utterance."--\_Ib.\_, p. 35. "Good

articulation is the foundation of a good delivery, in the same manner as

the sounding the simple notes in music, is the foundation of good

singing."--\_Ib.\_, p. 33. "The offering praise and thanks to God, implies

our having a lively and devout sense of his excellencies and of his

benefits."--ATTERBURY: \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 295. "The pause should not be

made till the fourth or sixth syllable."--\_Blair, ib.\_, p. 333.

"Shenstone's pastoral ballad, in four parts, may justly be reckoned one of

the most elegant poems of this kind, which we have in English."--\_Ib.\_, p.

394. "What need Christ to have died, if heaven could have contained

imperfect souls?"--\_Baxter\_. "Every person is not a man of genius, nor is

it necessary that he should."--\_Seattle's Moral Science\_, i, 69. "They were

alarmed from a quarter where they least expected."--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_,

ii, 6.

"If thou more murmur'st, I will rend an oak,

And peg thee in his knotty intrails."--SHAK.: \_White's Verb\_, p. 94.

EXERCISE XIII.--TWO ERRORS.

"In consequence of this, much time and labor are unprofitably expended, and

a confusion of ideas introduced into the mind, which, by never so wise a

method of subsequent instruction, it is very difficult completely to

remove."--\_Grenville's Gram.\_, p. 3. "So that the restoring a natural

manner of delivery, would be bringing about an entire revolution, in its

most essential parts."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 170. "'Thou who loves

us, will protect us still:' here \_who\_ agrees with \_thou\_, and is

nominative to the verb loves."--\_Alex. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 67. "The Active

voice signifies action; the Passive, suffering, or being the object of an

action."--\_Adam's Latin Gram.\_, p. 80; \_Gould's\_, 77. "They sudden set upon

him, fearing no such thing."--\_Walker's Particles\_, p. 252. "\_That\_ may be

used as a pronoun, an adjective, and a conjunction, depending on the office

which it performs in the sentence."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 110. "This is

the distinguishing property of the church of Christ from all other

antichristian assemblies or churches."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 533. "My

lords, the course which the legislature formerly took with respect to the

slave-trade, appears to me to be well deserving the attention both of the

government and your lordships."--BROUGHAM: \_Antislavery Reporter\_, Vol. ii,

p. 218. "We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen."--\_John\_,

iii, 11. "This is a consequence I deny, and remains for him to

prove."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 329. "To back this, He brings in the

Authority of Accursius, and Consensius Romanus, to the latter of which he

confesses himself beholding for this Doctrine."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p.

343. "The compound tenses of the second order, or those in which the

participle present is made use of."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 24. "To lay

the accent always on the same syllable, and the same letter of the

syllable, which they do in common discourse."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p.

78. "Though the converting the \_w\_ into a \_v\_ is not so common as the

changing the \_v\_ into a \_w\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 46. "Nor is this all; for by means

of accent, the times of pauses also are rendered quicker, and their

proportions more easily to be adjusted and observed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "By

mouthing, is meant, dwelling upon syllables that have no accent: or

prolonging the sounds of the accented syllables, beyond their due

proportion of time."--\_Ib.\_, p. 76. "Taunt him with the license of ink; if

thou thou'st him thrice, it shall not be amiss."--SHAK.: \_Joh. Dict., w.

Thou\_. "The eye that mocketh at his father, and despiseth to obey his

mother, the ravens of the valley shall pick it out, and the young eagles

shall eat it."--\_Prov.\_, xxx, 17. "Copying, or merely imitating others, is

the death of arts and sciences."--\_Spurzheim, on Ed.\_, p. 170. "He is

arrived at that degree of perfection, as to surprise all his

acquaintance."--\_Ensell's Gram.\_, p. 296. "Neither the King \_nor\_ Queen are

gone."--\_Buchanan's E. Syntax\_, p. 155. "\_Many\_ is pronounced as if it were

wrote \_manny\_."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram., with Dict.\_, p. 2.

"And as the music on the waters float,

Some bolder shore returns the soften'd note."

--\_Crabbe, Borough\_, p. 118.

EXERCISE XIV.--THREE ERRORS.

"It appears that the Temple was then a building, because these Tiles must

be supposed to be for the covering it."--\_Johnson's Gram. Com.\_, p. 281.

"It was common for sheriffs to omit or excuse the not making returns for

several of the boroughs within their counties."--\_Brown's Estimate\_, Vol.

ii, p. 132. "The conjunction \_as\_ when it is connected with the pronoun,

such, many, or same, is sometimes called a relative pronoun."--\_Kirkham's

Gram., the Compend\_. "Mr. Addison has also much harmony in his style; more

easy and smooth, but less varied than Lord Shaftesbury."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 127; \_Jamieson's\_, 129. "A number of uniform lines having all the same

pause, are extremely fatiguing; which is remarkable in French

versification."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 104. "Adjectives

qualify or distinguish one noun from another."--\_Fowle's True Eng. Gram.\_,

p. 13. "The words \_one, other\_, and \_none\_, are used in both

numbers."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 107. "A compound word is made up of two or

more words, usually joined by an hyphen, as summer-house, spirit-less,

school-master."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 7. "There is an inconvenience in

introducing new words by composition which nearly resembles others in use

before; as, \_disserve\_, which is too much like \_deserve\_."--\_Priestley's

Gram.\_, p. 145. "For even in that case, the trangressing the limits in the

least, will scarce be pardoned."--\_Sheridan's Lect.\_, p. 119. "What other

are the foregoing instances but describing the passion another

feels."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 388. "'Two and three are five.' If each

\_substantive\_ is to be taken separately as a subject, then 'two \_is\_ five,'

and 'three \_is\_ five.'"--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p. 87. "The article \_a\_ joined

to the simple \_pronoun other\_ makes \_it\_ the compound \_another\_."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 96. "The \_word another\_ is composed of the

indefinite \_article prefixed\_ to the \_word other\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

57; et al. "In relating things that were formerly expressed by another

person, we often meet with modes of expression similar to the

following."--\_Ib.\_, p. 191. "Dropping one l prevents the recurrence of

three very near each other."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 202. "Sometimes two

or more genitive cases succeed each other; as, 'John's wife's

father.'"--\_Dalton's Gram.\_, p. 14. "Sometimes, though rarely, two nouns in

the possessive case immediately succeed each other, in the following form:

'My friend's wife's sister.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 45.

EXERCISE XV.--MANY ERRORS.

"Number is of a two fold nature,--Singular and Plural: and comprehends,

accordingly to its application, the distinction between them."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 37. "The former, Figures of Words, are commonly called Tropes,

and \_consists\_ in a word's being employed to signify something, \_which\_ is

different from its original and primitive meaning."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo,

p. 337. "The former, figures of words, are commonly called tropes, and

\_consist\_ in a word's being employed to signify something \_that\_ is

different from its original and primitive meaning."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

132. "A particular number of connected syllables are called feet, or

measured paces."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 118. "Many poems, and especially

songs, are written in the dactyl or anapæstic measure, some consisting of

eleven or twelve syllables, and some of less."--\_Ib.\_, p. 121. "A Diphthong

makes always a long Syllable, unless one of the vowels be droped."--

\_British Gram.\_, p. 34. "An Adverb is generally employed as an attributive,

to denote some peculiarity or manner of action, with respect to the time,

place, or order, of the noun or circumstance to which it is connected."--

\_Wright's Definitions, Philos. Gram.\_, pp. 35 and 114. "A Verb expresses

the action, the suffering or enduring, or the existence or condition of a

noun."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 35 and 64. "These three adjectives should be written

our's, your's, their's."--\_Fowle's True Eng. Gram.\_, p. 22. "Never was man

so teized, or suffered half the uneasiness as I have done this evening."--

\_Tattler\_, No. 160; \_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 200; \_Murray's\_, i, 223. "There

may be reckoned in English four different cases, or relations of a

substantive, called the subjective, the possessive, the objective, and the

absolute cases."--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p. 31. "To avoid the too often

repeating the Names of other Persons or Things of which we discourse, the

words \_he, she, it, who, what\_, were invented."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p.

85. "Names which denote a number of the same things, are called nouns of

multitude."--\_Infant School Gram.\_, p. 21. "But lest he should think, this

were too slightly a passing over his matter, I will propose to him to be

considered these things following."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii, p. 472.

"In the pronunciation of the letters of the Hebrew proper names, we find

nearly the same rules prevail as in those of Greek and Latin."--\_Walker's

Key\_, p. 223. "The distributive pronominal adjectives \_each, every,

either\_, agree with \_the\_ nouns, \_pronouns, and\_ verbs of the singular

number only."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 89. "\_Having treated\_ of the different

\_sorts\_ of \_words\_, and \_their\_ various modifications, \_which is\_ the first

part of Etymology, \_it\_ is now proper to explain the \_methods\_ by which

\_one word\_ is derived from another."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 130.

EXERCISE XVI.--MANY ERRORS.

"A Noun with its Adjectives (or any governing Word with its Attendants) is

one compound Word, whence the Noun and Adjective so joined, do often admit

another Adjective, and sometimes a third, and so on; as, a Man, an old Man,

a very good old Man, a very learned, judicious, sober Man."--\_British

Gram.\_, p. 195; \_Buchanan's\_, 79. "A substantive \_with\_ its adjective \_is\_

reckoned as one \_compounded\_ word; whence \_they\_ often take \_another\_

adjective, and sometimes a third, and so on: as, 'An old man; a good old

man; a very learned, judicious, good old man.'"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p.

169; \_Ingersoll's\_, 195; \_and others\_. "But though this elliptical style

\_be\_ intelligible, and \_is\_ allowable in conversation \_and\_ epistolary

\_writing\_, yet in all \_writings\_ of a serious or dignified kind, \_is\_

ungraceful."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 112. "There is no talent \_so useful\_

towards rising in the world, \_or which\_ puts men more out of the reach of

fortune, than that quality generally possessed by the dullest sort of

people, and is, in common language, called discretion."--SWIFT: \_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 113. "Which to allow, is just as reasonable as to own, that 'tis

the greatest ill of a body to be in the utmost \_manner\_ maimed or

distorted; but \_that\_ to lose the use \_only\_ of one limb, or to be impaired

in some single organ or member, is no ill worthy the least notice."--

SHAFTESBURY: \_ib.\_, p. 115; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 322. "If the singular

nouns \_and\_ pronouns, which \_are joined\_ together by a copulative

conjunction, \_be\_ of \_several\_ persons, in \_making\_ the plural pronoun

\_agree\_ with them in person, the second person takes \_place of\_ the third,

and the \_first of\_ both."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 151; \_et al\_. "'The painter

\* \* \* cannot exhibit various stages of the same action.' \_In\_ this sentence

we see that \_the\_ painter \_governs\_, or agrees with, the verb \_can\_, as

\_its nominative\_ case."--\_Ib.\_, p. 195. "It expresses \_also\_ facts \_which\_

exist \_generally\_, at \_all times\_, general truths, attributes \_which\_ are

permanent, habits, customary actions, and the like, without the reference

to a specific time."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73; \_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 71. "The

different species of animals may therefore be considered, as so many

different nations speaking different languages, \_that have\_ no commerce

with \_each\_ other; each of \_which\_ consequently understands \_none\_ but

\_their\_ own."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 142. "It is also important to

\_understand and\_ apply the principles of grammar in our common

conversation; not only because \_it\_ enables us to make our language

\_understood by educated\_ persons, but because it furnishes the readiest

evidence \_of our\_ having received a good education \_ourselves\_."--\_Frost's

Practical Gram.\_, p. 16.

EXERCISE XVII.--MANY ERRORS.

"This faulty Tumour in Stile is like an huge unpleasant Rock in a Champion

Country, that's difficult to be transcended."--\_Holmes's Rhet.\_, Book ii,

p. 16. "For there are no Pelops's, nor Cadmus's, nor Danaus's dwell among

us."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51. "None of these, except \_will\_, is ever used as a

principal verb, but as an auxiliary to some principal, either expressed or

understood."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 134. "Nouns which signify either the

male or female are common gender."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 11. "An Adjective

expresses the kind, number, or quality of a noun."--\_Parker and Fox's

Gram.\_, Part I, p. 9. "There are six tenses; the Present, the Imperfect,

the Perfect, the Pluperfect, the Future, and the Future Perfect

tenses."--\_Ib.\_, p. 18. "\_My\_ refers to the first person singular, either

gender. \_Our\_ refers to the first person plural, either gender. \_Thy\_

refers to the second person singular, either gender. \_Your\_ refers to the

second person plural, either gender. \_Their\_ refers to the third person

plural, either gender."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, Part II, p. 14. "Good

use, which for brevity's sake, shall hereafter include reputable, national,

and present use, is not always uniform in her decisions."--\_Jamieson's

Rhet.\_, p. 44. "Nouns which denote but one object are considered in the

singular number."--\_Edward's First Lessons in Gram.\_, p. 35. "If,

therefore, the example of Jesus should be plead to authorize accepting an

invitation to dine on the sabbath, it should be plead just as it

was."--\_Barnes's Notes: on Luke\_, xiv, 1. "The teacher will readily dictate

what part may be omitted, the first time going through it."--\_Ainsworth's

Gram.\_, p. 4. "The contents of the following pages have been drawn chiefly,

with various modifications, from the same source which has supplied most

modern writers on this subject, viz. LINDLEY MURRAY'S GRAMMAR."--\_Felton's

Gram.\_, p. 3. "The term \_person\_ in grammar distinguishes between the

speaker, the person or thing spoken to, and the person or thing spoken

of."--\_Ib.\_, p. 9. "In my father's garden grow the Maiden's Blush and the

Prince' Feather."--\_Felton, ib.\_, p. 15. "A preposition is a word used to

connect words with one another, and show the relation between them. They

generally stand before nouns and pronouns."--\_Ib.\_, p. 60. "Nouns or

pronouns addressed are always either in the second person, singular or

plural."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 54. "The plural MEN not ending in s, is the

reason for adding the apostrophie's."--\_T. Smith's Gram.\_, p. 19.

"\_Pennies\_ denote real coin; \_pence\_, their value in computation."--

\_Hazen's Gram.\_, p. 24. "We commence, first, with \_letters\_, which is

termed \_Orthography\_; secondly, with \_words\_, denominated \_Etymology\_;

thirdly, with \_sentences\_, styled \_Syntax\_; fourthly, with \_orations\_ and

\_poems\_, called \_Prosody\_."--\_Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 22. "Care must be taken,

that sentences of proper construction and obvious import be not rendered

obscure by the too free use of the ellipsis."--\_Felton's Grammar,

Stereotype Edition\_, p. 80.

EXERCISE XVIII.--PROMISCUOUS.

"Tropes and metaphors so closely resemble \_each\_ other that it is not

always easy, nor is it important to \_be able\_ to distinguish the \_one\_ from

the \_other\_."--\_Parker and Fox, Part III\_, p. 66. "With regard to

\_relatives\_, it may be further observed, that obscurity often arises from

\_the\_ too frequent repetition of them, particularly of the pronouns WHO,

and THEY, and THEM, and THEIRS. When we find \_these personal pronouns\_

crowding too fast upon us, we have often no method left, but to throw the

whole sentence into some other form."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

311; \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 106. "Do scholars acquire any valuable knowledge,

by learning to repeat long strings of words, without any definite ideas, or

\_several jumbled\_ together like rubbish in a corner, and apparently with no

application, \_either for\_ the improvement of mind \_or of\_ language?"--

\_Cutler's Gram., Pref.\_, p. 5. "The being officiously good natured and

civil are things so uncommon in the world, that one cannot hear a man make

professions of them without being surprised, or at least, suspecting the

disinterestedness of his intentions."--FABLES: \_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 135.

"Irony is the intentional use of words to express a sense contrary to that

which the speaker or writer means to convey."--\_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_,

Part III, p. 68. "The term \_Substantive\_ is derived from \_substare\_, to

\_stand\_, to \_distinguish it\_ from an adjective, which cannot, like the

noun, stand alone."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 11. "They have two numbers, \_like

nouns\_, the singular and plural; and three persons in each number, namely,

\_I\_, the first person, represents the speaker. \_Thou\_, the second person,

represents the person spoken to. \_He, she, it\_, the third person,

represents the person or thing spoken of."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. "\_He, She, It\_,

is the Third Person singular; but \_he with others, she with others\_, or \_it

with others\_, make each of them \_they\_, which is the Third Person

plural."--\_White, on the English Verb\_, p. 97. "The words \_had I been\_,

that is, the Third Past Tense of the Verb, marks the Supposition, as

referring itself, not to the Present, but to some former period of

time."--\_Ib.\_, p. 88. "A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid

a too frequent repetition of the same word."--\_Frazee's Improved Gram.\_, p.

122.

"That which he cannot use, and dare not show,

And would not give--why longer should he owe?"--\_Crabbe\_.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

Prosody treats of punctuation, utterance, figures, and versification.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The word \_prosody\_, (from the Greek--[Greek: pros], \_to\_, and

[Greek: dæ], \_song\_,) is, with regard to its derivation, exactly equivalent

to \_accent\_, or the Latin \_accentus\_, which is formed from \_ad, to\_, and

\_cantus, song\_: both terms, perhaps, originally signifying a \_singing

with\_, or \_sounding to\_, some instrument or voice. PROSODIA, as a Latin

word, is defined by Littleton, "Pars Grammaticæ quæ docet \_accentus, h. e.\_

rationem atollendi et depremendi syllabas, tum quantitatem carundem." And

in English, "\_The art of\_ ACCENTING, \_or the rule of pronouncing syllables

truly\_, LONG \_or\_ SHORT."--\_Litt. Dict.\_, 4to. This is a little varied by

Ainsworth thus: "\_The rule of\_ ACCENTING, \_or pronouncing syllables truly,

whether\_ LONG \_or\_ SHORT."--\_Ains. Dict.\_, 4to. Accent, in English, belongs

as much to prose as to poetry; but some deny that in Latin it belongs to

either. There is also much difficulty about the import of the word; since

some prosodists identify \_accent\_ with \_tone\_; some take it for the

\_inflections\_ of voice; some call it the \_pitch\_ of vocal sounds; and some,

like the authors just cited, seem to confound it with \_quantity\_,--"LONG

\_or\_ SHORT." [459]

OBS. 2.--"\_Prosody\_," says a late writer, "strictly denotes only that

\_musical tone\_ or \_melody\_ which accompanies speech. But the usage of

modern grammarians justifies an extremely general application of the

term."--\_Frost's Practical Grammar\_, p. 160. This remark is a note upon the

following definition: "PROSODY is that part of grammar which treats of the

structure of Poetical Composition."--\_Ibid.\_ Agreeably to this definition,

Frost's Prosody, with all the generality the author claims for it, embraces

only a brief account of Versification, with a few remarks on "Poetical

License." Of Pronunciation and the Figures of Speech, he takes no notice;

and Punctuation, which some place with Orthography, and others distinguish

as one of the chief parts of grammar, he exhibits as a portion of Syntax.

Not more comprehensive is this part of grammar, as exhibited in the works

of several other authors; but, by Lindley Murray, R. C. Smith, and some

others, both Punctuation and Pronunciation are placed here; though no

mention is made of the former in their subdivision of Prosody, which, they

not very aptly say, "consists of \_two\_ parts, Pronunciation and

Versification." Dr. Bullions, no less deficient in method, begins with

saying, "PROSODY consists of two parts; Elocution and Versification;"

(\_Principles of E. Gram.\_, p. 163;) and then absurdly proceeds to treat of

it under the following \_six\_ principal heads: viz., Elocution,

Versification, Figures of Speech, Poetic License, Hints for Correct and

Elegant Writing, and Composition.

OBS. 3.--If, in regard to the subjects which may be treated under the name

of \_Prosody\_, "the usage of \_modern\_ grammarians justifies an extremely

general application of the term," such an application is certainly not

\_less\_ warranted by the usage of \_old\_ authors. But, by the practice of

neither, can it be \_easily\_ determined how many and what things \_ought\_ to

be embraced under this head. Of the different kinds of verse, or "the

structure of Poetical Compostion," some of the old prosodists took little

or no notice; because they thought it their chief business, to treat of

syllables, and determine the orthoëpy of words. The Prosody of Smetius,

dated 1509, (my edition of which was published in Germany in 1691,) is in

fact a \_pronouncing dictionary\_ of the Latin language. After a brief

abstract of the old rules of George Fabricius concerning quantity and

accent, it exhibits, in alphabetic order, and with all their syllables

marked, about twenty-eight thousand words, with a poetic line quoted

against each, to prove the pronunciation just. The Prosody of John

Genuensis, an other immense work, concluded by its author in 1286, improved

by Badius in 1506, and printed at Lyons in 1514, is also mainly a \_Latin

dictionary\_, with derivations and definitions as in other dictionaries. It

is a folio volume of seven hundred and thirty closely-printed pages; six

hundred of which are devoted to the vocabulary, the rest to orthography,

accent, etymology, syntax, figures, points--almost everything \_but

versification\_. Yet this vast sum of grammar has been entitled

\_Prosody\_--"\_Prosodia seu Catholicon\_"--"\_Catholicon seu Universale

Vocabularium ac Summa Grammatices\_."--See pp. 1 and 5.

CHAPTER I--PUNCTUATION.

Punctuation is the art of dividing literary composition, by points, or

stops, for the purpose of showing more clearly the sense and relation of

the words; and of noting the different pauses and inflections required in

reading.

The following are the principal points, or marks; namely, the Comma [,],

the Semicolon [;], the Colon [:], the Period [.], the Dash [--], the

Eroteme, or Note of Interrogation [?], the Ecphoneme, or Note of

Exclamation [!], and the Curves, or Marks of Parenthesis, [()].

The Comma denotes the shortest pause; the Semicolon, a pause double that of

the comma; the Colon, a pause double that of the semicolon; and the Period,

or Full Stop, a pause double that of the colon. The pauses required by the

other four, vary according to the structure of the sentence, and their

place in it. They may be equal to any of the foregoing.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The pauses that are made in the natural flow of speech, have, in

reality, no definite and invariable proportions. Children are often told to

pause at a comma while they might count \_one\_; at a semicolon, \_one, two\_;

at a colon, \_one, two, three\_; at a period, \_one, two, three, four\_. This

may be of some use, as teaching them to observe the necessary stops, that

they may catch the sense; but the standard itself is variable, and so are

the times which good sense gives to the points. As a final stop, the period

is immeasurable; and so may be the pause after a question or an

exclamation.

OBS. 2.--The first four points take their names from the parts of

discourse, or of a sentence, which are distinguished by them. The \_Period\_,

or \_circuit\_, is a complete \_round\_ of words, often consisting of several

clauses or members, and always bringing out full sense at the close. The

\_Colon\_, or \_member\_, is the greatest division or \_limb\_ of a period, and

is the chief constructive part of a compound sentence. The \_Semicolon, half

member\_, or \_half limb\_, is the greatest division of a colon, and is

properly a smaller constructive part of a compound sentence. The \_Comma\_,

or \_segment\_, is a small part of a clause \_cut off\_, and is properly the

least constructive part of a compound sentence. A \_simple sentence\_ is

sometimes a whole period, sometimes a chief member, sometimes a half

member, sometimes a segment, and sometimes perhaps even less. Hence it may

require the period, the colon, the semicolon, the comma, or even no point,

according to the manner in which it is used. A sentence whose relatives and

adjuncts are all taken in a restrictive sense, may be considerably complex,

and yet require no division by points; as,

"Thank him who puts me loath to this revenge

On you who wrong me not for him who wrong'd."--\_Milton\_.

OBS. 3.--The system of punctuation now used in English, is, in its main

features, common to very many languages. It is used in Latin, French,

Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, Dutch, German, and perhaps most of the

tongues in which books are now written or printed. The Germans, however,

make less frequent use of the comma than we; and the Spaniards usually mark

a question or an exclamation \_doubly\_, inverting the point at the beginning

of the sentence. In Greek, the difference is greater: the colon, expressed

by the upper dot alone, is the only point between the comma and the period;

the ecphoneme, or note of exclamation, is hardly recognized, though some

printers of the classics have occasionally introduced it; and the eroteme,

or note of interrogation, retains in that language its pristine form, which

is that of our semicolon. In Hebrew, a full stop is denoted by a heavy

colon, or something like it; and this is the only pointing adopted, when

the vowel points and the accents are not used.

OBS. 4.--Though the points in use, and the principles on which they ought

to be applied, are in general well fixed, and common to almost all sorts of

books; yet, through the negligence of editors, the imperfections of copy,

the carelessness of printers, or some other means, it happens, that

different editions and different versions of the same work are often found

pointed very variously. This circumstance, provided the sense is still

preserved, is commonly thought to be of little moment. But all \_writers\_

will do well to remember, that they owe it to their readers, to show them

at once how they mean to be read; and since the punctuation of the early

printers was unquestionably very \_defective\_, the republishers of ancient

books should not be over scrupulous about an exact imitation of it; they

may, with proper caution, correct obvious faults.

OBS. 5.--The precise origin of the points, it is not easy to trace in the

depth of antiquity. It appears probable, from ancient manuscripts and

inscriptions, that the period is the oldest of them; and it is said by

some, that the first system of punctuation consisted in the different

positions of this dot alone. But after the adoption of the small letters,

which improvement is referred to the ninth century, both the comma and the

colon came into use, and also the Greek note of interrogation. In old

books, however, the comma is often found, not in its present form, but in

that of a straight stroke, drawn up and down obliquely between the words.

Though the colon is of Greek origin, the practice of writing it with two

dots we owe to the Latin authors, or perhaps to the early printers of Latin

books. The semicolon was first used in Italy, and was not adopted in

England till about the year 1600. Our marks for questions and exclamations

were also derived from the same source, probably at a date somewhat

earlier. The curves of the parenthesis have likewise been in use for

several centuries. But the clash is a more recent invention: Lowth, Ash,

and Ward,--Buchanan, Bicknell, and Burn,--though they name all the rest,

make no mention of this mark; but it appears by their books, that they all

occasionally \_used\_ it.

OBS. 6--Of the \_colon\_ it may be observed, that it is now much less

frequently used than it was formerly; its place being usurped, sometimes by

the semicolon, and sometimes by the period. For this ill reason, some late

grammarians have discarded it altogether. Thus Felton: "The COLON is now so

seldom used by good writers, that rules for its use are

unnecessary."--\_Concise Manual of English Gram.\_, p. 140. So Nutting: "It

will be noticed, that the \_colon\_ is omitted in this system; because it is

omitted by the majority of the writers of the present age; three points,

with the dash, being considered sufficient to mark the different lengths of

the pauses."--\_Practical Grammar\_, p. 120. These critics, whenever they

have occasion to copy such authors as Milton and Pope, do not scruple to

mutilate their punctuation by putting semicolons or periods for all the

colons they find. But who cannot perceive, that without the colon, the

semicolon becomes an absurdity? It can no longer be a \_semicolon\_, unless

the half can remain when the whole is taken away! The colon, being the

older point of the two, and once very fashionable, is doubtless on record

in more instances than the semicolon; and, if now, after both have been in

common use for some hundreds of years, it be found out that only one is

needed, perhaps it would be more reasonable to prefer the former. Should

public opinion ever be found to coincide with the suggestions of the two

authors last quoted, there will be reason to regret that Caxton, the old

English typographer of the fifteenth century, who for a while successfully

withstood, in his own country, the introduction of the semicolon, had not

the power to prevent it forever. In short, to leave no literary

extravagance unbroached, the latter point also has not lacked a modern

impugner. "One of the greatest improvements in punctuation," says Justin

Brenan, "is the rejection of the eternal semicolons of our ancestors. In

latter times, the semicolon has been gradually disappearing, not only from

the newspapers, but from books."--\_Brenan's "Composition and Punctuation

familiarly Explained"\_, p. 100; London, 1830. The colon and the semicolon

are both useful, and, not unfrequently, necessary; and all correct writers

will, I doubt not, continue to use both.

OBS. 7--Since Dr. Blair published his emphatic caution against too frequent

a use of \_parentheses\_, there has been, if not an abatement of the kind of

error which he intended to censure, at least a diminution in the use of the

\_curves\_, the sign of a parenthesis. These, too, some inconsiderate

grammarians now pronounce to be out of vogue. "The parenthesis is now

generally exploded as a deformity."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 362. "The

Parenthesis, () has become nearly obsolete, except in mere references, and

the like; its place, by modern writers, being usually supplied by the use

of the comma, and the dash."--\_Nutting's Practical Gram.\_, p. 126;

\_Frazee's Improved Grammar\_, p. 187. More use may have been made of the

curves than was necessary, and more of the parenthesis itself than was

agreeable to good taste; but, the sign being well adapted to the

construction, and the construction being sometimes sprightly and elegant,

there are no good reasons for wishing to discard either of them; nor is it

true, that the former "has become nearly obsolete."

OBS. 8--The name \_parenthesis\_ is, which literally means a

\_putting-in-between\_, is usually applied both to the \_curves\_, and to the

incidental \_clause\_ which they enclose. This twofold application of the

term involves some inconvenience, if not impropriety. According to Dr.

Johnson, the enclosed "\_sentence\_" alone is the \_parenthesis\_; but

Worcester, agreeably to common usage, defines the word as meaning also "the

\_mark\_ thus ()." But, as this sign consists of two distinct parts, two

corresponding curves, it seems more natural to use a plural name: hence L.

Murray, when he would designate the sign only, adopted a plural expression;

as, "\_the parenthetical characters\_,"--"\_the parenthetical marks\_." So, in

another case, which is similar: "the \_hooks\_ in which words are included,"

are commonly called \_crotchets\_ or \_brackets\_; though Bucke, in his

Classical Grammar, I know not why, calls the two "[ ] a \_Crotchet\_;" (p.

23;) and Webster, in his octavo Dictionary, defines a "\_Bracket\_, in

printing," as Johnson does a "\_Crotchet\_" by a plural noun: "\_hooks\_; thus,

[ ]." Again, in his grammars, Dr. Webster rather confusedly says: "The

parenthesis () and hooks [] include a remark or clause, not essential to

the sentence in construction."--\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 219; \_Improved

Gram.\_, p. 154. But, in his Dictionary, he forgets both the hooks and the

parenthesis that are here spoken of; and, with still worse confusion or

inaccuracy, says: "The \_parenthesis\_ is usually included in \_hooks\_ or

curved lines, thus, ()." Here he either improperly calls these regular

little curves "\_hooks\_," or erroneously suggests that both the hooks and

the curves are usual and appropriate signs of "\_the parenthesis\_." In

Garner's quarto Dictionary, the French word \_Crochet\_, as used by printers,

is translated, "\_A brace, a crotchet, a parenthesis\_;" and the English word

\_Crotchet\_ is defined, "The \_mark\_ of a \_parenthesis\_, in printing, thus [

]." But Webster defines \_Crotchet\_, "In printing, a \_hook\_ including words,

a \_sentence\_ or a \_passage\_ distinguished from the rest, thus []." This

again is both ambiguous and otherwise inaccurate. It conveys no clear idea

of what a crotchet is. \_One\_ hook \_includes\_ nothing. Therefore Johnson

said: "\_Hooks\_ in which words are included [thus]." But if each of the

hooks is a crotchet, as Webster suggests, and almost every body supposes,

then both lexicographers are wrong in not making the whole expression

plural: thus, "\_Crotchets\_, in printing, are angular \_hooks\_ usually

including some explanatory words." But is this all that Webster meant? I

cannot tell. He may be understood as saying also, that a \_Crotchet\_ is "\_a

sentence\_ or \_a passage\_ distinguished from the rest, thus [];" and

doubtless it would be much better to call a hint thus marked, a \_crotchet\_,

than to call it \_a parenthesis\_, as some have done. In Parker and Fox's

Grammar, and also in Parker's Aids to English Composition, the term

\_Brackets\_ only is applied to these angular hooks; and, contrary to all

usage of other authors, so far as I know, the name of \_Crotchets\_ is there

given to the \_Curves\_. And then, as if this application of the word were

general, and its propriety indisputable, the pupil is simply told: "The

\_curved lines\_ between which a parenthesis is enclosed are called

\_Crotchets\_."--\_Gram.\_, Part III, p. 30; \_Aids\_, p. 40. "Called

\_Crotchets\_" by whom? That not even Mr. Parker himself knows them by that

name, the following most inaccurate passage is a proof: "The \_note\_ of

admiration \_and\_ interrogation, as also the \_parenthesis\_, the \_bracket\_,

and the reference marks, [are noted in the margin] in the same manner as

the apostrophe."--\_Aids\_, p. 314. In some late grammars, (for example,

\_Hazen's\_ and \_Day's\_,) the parenthetic curves are called "\_the

Parentheses\_" From this the student must understand that it always takes

\_two parentheses\_ to make \_one parenthesis!\_ If then it is objectionable,

to call the two marks "\_a parenthesis\_," it is much more so, to call each

of them by that name, or both "\_the parentheses\_." And since Murray's

phrases are both entirely too long for common use, what better name can be

given them than this very simple one, \_the Curves\_?

OBS. 9.--The words \_eroteme\_ and \_ecphoneme\_, which, like \_aposteme\_ and

\_philosopheme\_, are orderly derivatives from Greek roots[460], I have

ventured to suggest as fitter names for the two marks to which they are

applied as above, than are any of the long catalogue which other

grammarians, each choosing for himself have presented. These marks have not

unfrequently been called "\_the interrogation\_ and the \_exclamation\_;" which

names are not very suitable, because they have other uses in grammar.

According to Dr. Blair, as well as L. Murray and others, interrogation and

exclamation are "passionate \_figures\_" of rhetoric, and oftentimes also

plain "unfigured" expressions. The former however are frequently and more

fitly called by their Greek names \_erotesis\_ and \_ecphonesis\_, terms to

which those above have a happy correspondence. By Dr. Webster and some

others, all \_interjections\_ are called "\_exclamations\_;" and, as each of

these is usually followed by the mark of emotion, it cannot but be

inconvenient to call both by the same name.

OBS. 10.--For things so common as the marks of asking and exclaiming, it is

desirable to have simple and appropriate \_names\_, or at least some settled

mode of denomination; but, it is remarkable, that Lindley Murray, in

mentioning these characters six times, uses six different modes of

expression, and all of them complex: (1.) "Notes of Interrogation and

Exclamation." (2.) "The point of Interrogation,?"--"The point of

Exclamation,!" (3.) "The Interrogatory Point."--"The Exclamatory Point."

(4.) "A note of interrogation,"--"The note of exclamation." (5.) "The

interrogation and exclamation points." (6.) "The points of Interrogation

and Exclamation."--\_Murray, Flint, Ingersoll, Alden, Pond\_. With much

better taste, some writers denote them uniformly thus: (7.) "The Note of

Interrogation,"--"The Note of Exclamation."--\_Churchill, Hiley\_. In

addition to these names, all of which are too long, there may be cited many

others, though none that are unobjectionable: (8.) "The Interrogative

sign,"--"The Exclamatory sign."--\_Peirce, Hazen\_. (9.) "The Mark of

Interrogation,"--"The Mark of Exclamation."--\_Ward, Felton, Hendrick\_.

(10.) "The Interrogative point,"--"The Exclamation point."--\_T. Smith,

Alger\_. (11.) "The interrogation point,"--"The exclamation

point."--\_Webster, St. Quentin, S. Putnam\_. (12.) "A Note of

Interrogation,"--"A Note of Admiration."--\_Coar, Nutting\_. (13.) "The

Interrogative point,"--"The Note of Admiration, or of vocation."--\_Bucke\_.

(14.) "Interrogation (?),"--"Admiration (!) or Exclamation."--\_Lennie,

Bullions\_. (15.) "A Point of Interrogation,"--"A Point of Admiration or

Exclamation."--\_Buchanan\_. (16.) "The Interrogation Point (?),"--"The

Admiration Point (!)."--\_Perley\_. (17.) "An interrogation (?),"--"An

exclamation (!)."--\_Cutler\_. (18.) "The interrogator?"--"The

exclaimor!"--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 112. [The putting of "\_exclaimor\_" for

\_exclaimer\_, like this author's changing of \_quoters\_ to "\_quotors\_," as a

name for the guillemets, is probably a mere sample of ignorance.] (19.)

"Question point,"--"Exclamation point."--\_Sanborn\_, p. 272.

SECTION I.--THE COMMA.

The Comma is used to separate those parts of a sentence, which are so

nearly connected in sense, as to be only one degree removed from that close

connexion which admits no point.

RULE I.--SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence does not, in general, admit the comma; as, "The weakest

reasoners are the most positive."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 202. "Theology

has not hesitated to make or support a doctrine by the position of a

comma."--\_Tract on Tone\_, p. 4.

"Then pain compels the impatient soul to seize

On promis'd hopes of instantaneous ease."--\_Crabbe\_.

EXCEPTION.--LONG SIMPLE SENTENCES.

When the nominative in a long simple sentence is accompanied by

inseparable adjuncts, or when several words together are used in stead of a

nominative, a comma should be placed immediately before the verb; as,

"Confession of sin without amendment, obtains no pardon."--\_Dillwyn's

Reflections\_, p. 6. "To be totally indifferent to praise or censure, is a

real defect in character."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 268.

"O that the tenor of my just complaint,[461]

Were sculpt with steel in rocks of adamant!"--\_Sandys\_.

RULE II.--SIMPLE MEMBERS.

The simple members of a compound sentence, whether successive or involved,

elliptical or complete, are generally divided by the comma; as,

1. "Here stand we both, and aim we at the best."--\_Shak.\_

2. "I, that did never weep, now melt in woe."--\_Id.\_

3. "Tide life, tide death, I come without delay."--\_Id.\_

4. "I am their mother, who shall bar me from them?"--\_Id.\_

5. "How wretched, were I mortal, were my state!"--\_Pope\_.

6. "Go; while thou mayst, avoid the dreadful fate."--\_Id.\_

7. "Grief aids disease, remember'd folly stings,

And his last sighs reproach the faith of kings."--\_Johnson\_.

EXCEPTION I.--RESTRICTIVE RELATIVES.

When a relative immediately follows its antecedent, and is taken in a

restrictive sense, the comma should not be introduced \_before\_ it; as, "For

the things \_which\_ are seen, are temporal; but the things \_which\_ are not

seen, are eternal."--\_2 Cor.\_, iv, 18. "A letter is a character \_that\_

expresses a sound without any meaning."--\_St. Quentin's General Gram.\_, p.

3.

EXCEPTION II.--SHORT TERMS CLOSELY CONNECTED.

When the simple members are short, and closely connected by a conjunction

or a conjunctive adverb, the comma is generally omitted; as, "Honest

poverty is better \_than\_ wealthy fraud."--\_Dillwyn's Ref.\_, p. 11. "Let him

tell me \_whether\_ the number of the stars be even or odd."--TAYLOR: \_Joh.

Dict., w. Even\_. "It is impossible \_that\_ our knowledge of words should

outstrip our knowledge of things."--CAMPBELL: \_Murray's Gram.\_, p 359.

EXCEPTION III.--ELLIPTICAL MEMBERS UNITED.

When two simple members are immediately united, through ellipsis of the

relative, the antecedent, or the conjunction \_that\_, the comma is not

inserted; as, "Make an experiment on the first man you meet."--\_Berkley's

Alciphron\_, p. 125. "Our philosophers do infinitely despise and pity

whoever shall propose or accept any other motive to virtue."--\_Ib.\_, p.

126. "It is certain we imagine before we reflect."--\_Ib.\_, p. 359.

"The same good sense that makes a man excel,

Still makes him doubt he ne'er has written well."--\_Young\_.

RULE III.--MORE THAN TWO WORDS.

When more than two words or terms are connected in the same construction,

or in a joint dependence on some other term, by conjunctions expressed or

understood, the comma should be inserted after every one of them but the

last; and, if they are nominatives before a verb, the comma should follow

the last also:[462] as,

1. "Who, to the enraptur'd heart, and ear, and eye,

Teach beauty, virtue, truth, and love, and melody."--\_Beattie\_.

2. "Ah! what avails \* \* \* \* \* \* \* \* \*

All that art, fortune, enterprise, can bring,

If envy, scorn, remorse, or pride, the bosom wring?"--\_Id.\_.

3. "Women are soft, mild, pitiful, and flexible;

Thou, stern, obdurate, flinty, rough, remorseless."--\_Shak\_.

4. "She plans, provides, expatiates, triumphs there."--\_Young\_.

5. ----"So eagerly the Fiend

O'er bog, or steep, through strait, rough, dense, or rare,

With head, hands, wings, or feet, pursues his way,

And swims, or sinks, or wades, or creeps, or flies."--\_Milton\_.

RULE IV.--ONLY TWO WORDS.

When only two words or terms are connected by a conjunction, they should

not be separated by the comma; as, "It is a \_stupid and barbarous\_ way to

extend dominion by arms; for true power is to be got by \_arts and

industry\_"--\_Spectator\_, No. 2.

"\_Despair and anguish\_ fled the struggling soul."--\_Goldsmith.\_

EXCEPTION I.--TWO WORDS WITH ADJUNCTS.

When the two words connected have several adjuncts, or when one of them has

an adjunct that relates not to both, the comma is inserted; as, "I shall

spare no pains to make their instruction agreeable, and their diversion

useful."--\_Spectator\_, No. 10. "\_Who\_ is applied to persons, or things

personified."--\_Bullions.\_

"With listless eyes the dotard views the store,

He views, and wonders that they please no more."--\_Johnson\_.

EXCEPTION II.--TWO TERMS CONTRASTED.

When two connected words or phrases are contrasted, or emphatically

distinguished, the comma is inserted; as, "The vain are easily obliged, and

easily disobliged."--\_Kames\_.

"Liberal, not lavish, is kind Nature's hand."--\_Beattie\_.

"'Tis certain he could write, and cipher too."--\_Goldsmith\_.

EXCEPTION III.--ALTERNATIVE OF WORDS.

When there is merely an alternative of names, or an explanatory change of

terms, the comma is usually inserted; as, "We saw a large opening, or

inlet."--\_W. Allen\_. "Have we not power to lead about a sister, a wife, as

well as other apostles?"--\_Cor.\_, ix, 5.

EXCEPTION IV.--CONJUNCTION UNDERSTOOD.

When the conjunction is understood, the comma is inserted; and, if two

separated words or terms refer alike to a third term, the second requires a

second comma: as, "Reason, virtue, answer one great aim."--\_L. Murray,

Gram.\_, p. 269.

"To him the church, the realm, their pow'rs consign."--\_Johnson\_.

"She thought the isle that gave her birth.

The sweetest, wildest land on earth."--\_Hogg\_.

RULE V.--WORDS IN PAIRS.

When successive words are joined in pairs by conjunctions, they should be

separated in pairs by the comma; as, "Interest and ambition, honour and

shame, friendship and enmity, gratitude and revenge, are the prime movers

in public transactions."--\_W. Allen\_. "But, whether ingenious or dull,

learned or ignorant, clownish or polite, every innocent man, without

exception, has as good a right to liberty as to life."--\_Beattie's Moral

Science\_, p. 313.

"Then say how hope and fear, desire and hate,

O'erspread with snares the crowded maze of fate."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

RULE VI.--WORDS PUT ABSOLUTE.

Nouns or pronouns put absolute, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by

the comma; as, "The prince, \_his father being dead\_, succeeded."--"\_This

done\_, we parted."--"\_Zaccheus\_, make haste and come down."--"\_His

proctorship in Sicily\_, what did it produce?"--\_Cicero\_.

"Wing'd with his fears, on foot he strove to fly,

\_His steeds too distant\_, and \_the foe too nigh\_"

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, xi, 440.

RULE VII.--WORDS IN APPOSITION.

Words in apposition, (especially if they have adjuncts,) are generally set

off by the comma; as, "He that now calls upon thee, is Theodore, \_the

hermit of Teneriffe\_."--\_Johnson\_. "LOWTH, \_Dr. Robert, bishop of London\_,

born in 1710, died in 1787."--\_Biog. Dict.\_ "HOME, \_Henry, lord

Kames\_."--\_Ib.\_

"What next I bring shall please thee, be assur'd,

Thy \_likeness\_, thy fit \_help\_, thy other \_self\_,

Thy \_wish\_ exactly to thy heart's desire."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, viii, 450.

"And he, their prince, shall rank among my peers."--\_Byron\_.

EXCEPTION I.--COMPLEX NAMES.

When several words, in their common order, are used as one compound name,

the comma is not inserted; as, "Dr. Samuel Johnson,"--"Publius Gavius

Cosanus."

EXCEPTION II.--CLOSE APPOSITION.

When a common and a proper name are closely united, the comma is not

inserted; as, "The brook Kidron,"--"The river Don,"--"The empress

Catharine,"--"Paul the Apostle."

EXCEPTION III.--PRONOUN WITHOUT PAUSE.

When a pronoun is added to an other word merely for emphasis and

distinction, the comma is not inserted; as, "Ye men of Athens,"--"I

myself,"--"Thou flaming minister,"--"You princes."

EXCEPTION IV.--NAMES ACQUIRED.

When a name acquired by some action or relation, is put in apposition with

a preceding noun or pronoun, the comma is not inserted; as, "I made the

\_ground\_ my \_bed\_;"--"To make \_him king\_;"--"\_Whom\_ they revered as

\_God\_;"--"With \_modesty\_ thy \_guide\_."--\_Pope.\_

RULE VIII.--ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives, when something depends on them, or when they have the import of

a dependent clause, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma;

as,

1. ----------------------------"Among the roots

Of hazel, \_pendent o'er the plaintive stream\_,

They frame the first foundation of their domes."--\_Thomson\_.

2. -------------------------"Up springs the lark,

\_Shrill-voic'd\_ and \_loud\_, the messenger of morn."--\_Id.\_

EXCEPTION.--ADJECTIVES RESTRICTIVE.

When an adjective immediately follows its noun, and is taken in a

restrictive sense, the comma should not be used before it; as,

----"And on the coast \_averse\_

From entrance or cherubic watch."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. ix, l. 68.

RULE IX.--FINITE VERBS.

Where a finite verb is understood, a comma is generally required; as, "From

law arises security; from security, curiosity; from curiosity,

knowledge."--\_Murray\_.

"Else all my prose and verse were much the same;

This, prose on stilts; that, poetry fallen lame."--\_Pope\_.

EXCEPTION.--VERY SLIGHT PAUSE.

As the semicolon must separate the clauses when the comma is inserted by

this rule, if the pause for the omitted verb be very slight, it may be left

unmarked, and the comma be used for the clauses; as, "When the profligate

speaks of piety, the miser of generosity, the coward of valour, and the

corrupt of integrity, they are only the more despised by those who know

them."--\_Comstock's Elocution\_, p. 132.

RULE X.--INFINITIVES.

The infinitive mood, when it follows a verb from which it must be

separated, or when it depends on something remote or understood, is

generally, with its adjuncts, set off by the comma; as, "One of the

greatest secrets in composition is, \_to know\_ when to be

simple."--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 151. "To confess the truth, I was much in

fault."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 271.

"The Governor of all--has interposed,

Not seldom, his avenging arm, \_to smite\_

The injurious trampler upon nature's law."--\_Cowper\_.

RULE XI.--PARTICIPLES.

Participles, when something depends on them, when they have the import of a

dependent clause, or when they relate to something understood, should, with

their adjuncts, he set off by the comma; as, 1. "Law is a rule of civil

conduct, \_prescribed\_ by the supreme power in a state, \_commanding\_ what is

right, and \_prohibiting\_ what is wrong."--BLACKSTONE: \_Beattie's Moral

Science\_, p. 346.

2. "Young Edwin, \_lighted by the evening star,

Lingering and list'ning\_ wander'd down the vale."--\_Beattie\_.

3. "\_United\_, we stand; \_divided\_, we fall."--\_Motto\_.

4. "\_Properly speaking\_, there is no such thing as chance."

EXCEPTION.--PARTICIPLES RESTRICTIVE.

When a participle immediately follows its noun, and is taken in a

restrictive sense, the comma should not be used before it; as,

"A man \_renown'd for repartee\_,

Will seldom scruple to make free

With friendship's finest feeling."--\_Cowper\_.

RULE XII.--ADVERBS. Adverbs, when they break the connexion of a simple

sentence, or when they have not a close dependence on some particular word

in the context, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by the comma; as,

"We must not, \_however\_, confound this gentleness with the artificial

courtesy of the world."--"\_Besides\_, the mind must be employed."--\_Gilpin\_.

"\_Most unquestionably\_, no fraud was equal to all this."--\_Lyttelton\_.

"But, \_unfortunately for us\_, the tide was ebbing already."

"When buttress and buttress, \_alternately\_,

Seem framed of ebon and ivory."--\_Scott's Lay\_, p. 33.

RULE XIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions, when they are separated from the principal clauses that

depend on them, or when they introduce examples, are generally set off by

the comma; \_as\_, "\_But\_, by a timely call upon Religion, the force of Habit

was eluded."--\_Johnson\_.

"They know the neck that joins the shore and sea,

\_Or\_, ah! how chang'd that fearless laugh would be."--\_Crabbe\_.

RULE XIV.--PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions and their objects, when they break the connexion of a simple

sentence, or when they do not closely follow the words on which they

depend, are generally set off by the comma; as, "Fashion is, \_for the most

part\_, nothing but the ostentation of riches."--"\_By reading\_, we add the

experience of others to our own."

"In vain the sage, \_with retrospective eye\_,

Would from th' apparent What conclude the Why."--\_Pope\_.

RULE XV.--INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections that require a pause, though more commonly emphatic and

followed by the ecphoneme, are sometimes set off by the comma; as, "For,

\_lo\_, I will call all the families of the kingdoms of the

north."--\_Jeremiah\_, i, 15. "\_O\_, 'twas about something you would not

understand."--\_Columbian Orator\_, p. 221. "\_Ha, ha!\_ you were finely taken

in, then!"--\_Aikin\_. "\_Ha, ha, ha!\_ A facetious gentleman, truly!"--\_Id.\_

"\_Oh\_, when shall Britain, conscious of her claim,

Stand emulous of Greek and Roman fame?"--\_Pope\_.

RULE XVI.--WORDS REPEATED.

A word emphatically repeated, is generally set off by the comma; as,

"Happy, happy, happy pair!"--\_Dryden\_. "Ay, ay, there is some comfort in

that."--\_Shak\_. "Ah! no, no, no."--\_Dryden\_.

"The old oaken bucket, the iron-bound bucket,

The moss-covered bucket, which hung in the well!"--\_Woodworth\_.

RULE XVII.--DEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

A quotation, observation, or description, when it is introduced in close

dependence on a verb, (as, \_say, reply, cry\_, or the like,) is generally

separated from the rest of the sentence by the comma; as, "'The book of

nature,' said he, 'is before thee.'"--\_Hawkesworth\_. "I say unto all,

Watch."--\_Mark\_. "'The boy has become a man,' means, 'he has \_grown to be\_

a man.' 'Such conduct becomes a man,' means, 'such conduct \_befits\_

him.'"--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 116.

"While man exclaims, 'See all things for my use!'

'See man for mine!' replies a pamper'd goose."--\_Pope\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE COMMA.

UNDER RULE I.--OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"Short, simple sentences should not be separated by a comma."--\_Felton's

Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 135; 3d Ed., Stereotyped, p. 137.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because a needless comma is put after \_short\_, the

sentence being simple. But, according to Rule 1st for the Comma, "A simple

sentence does not, in general, admit the comma." Therefore, this comma

should be omitted; thus, "Short simple sentences should not be separated by

a comma." Or, much better: "\_A\_ short simple \_sentence\_ should \_rarely be

divided\_ by \_the\_ comma." For such sentences, combined to form a period,

\_should generally be separated\_; and even a single one may have some phrase

that must be set off.]

"A regular and virtuous education, is an inestimable blessing."--\_Murray's

Key\_, 8vo, p. 174. "Such equivocal expressions, mark an intention to

deceive."--\_Ib.\_, p. 256. "They are, \_This\_ and \_that\_, with their plurals

\_these\_ and \_those\_."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 26; \_Practical Lessons\_, p.

3. "A nominative case and a verb, sometimes make a complete sentence; as,

He sleeps."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 78. "\_Tense\_, expresses the action

connected with certain relations of time; \_mood\_, represents it as farther

modified by circumstances of contingency, conditionally, &c."--\_Bullions,

E. Gram.\_, p. 37. "The word Noun, means name."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 14.

"The present, or active participle, I explained then."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97. "Are

some verbs used, both transitively and intransitively?"--\_Cooper's Pt. and

Pract. Gram.\_, p. 54. "Blank verse, is verse without rhyme."--\_Hallock's

Gram.\_, p. 242. "A distributive adjective, denotes each one of a number

considered separately."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51.

"And may at last my weary age,

Find out the peaceful hermitage."

--\_Murray's Gr.\_, 12mo, p. 205; 8vo, 255.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"A noun without an Article to limit it is taken in its widest

sense."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 8; \_Practical Lessons\_, p. 10.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set before the verb \_is

taken\_. But, according to the Exception to Rule 1st for the Comma, "When

the nominative in a long simple sentence is accompanied by inseparable

adjuncts, or when several words together are used in stead of a nominative,

a comma should be placed immediately before the verb." Therefore, a comma

should be here inserted; thus, "A noun without an article to limit it, is

taken in its widest sense."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 6.]

"To maintain a steady course amid all the adversities of life marks a great

mind."--\_Day's District School Gram.\_, p. 84. "To love our Maker supremely

and our neighbor as ourselves comprehends the whole moral law."--\_Ibid.\_

"To be afraid to do wrong is true courage."--\_Ib.\_, p. 85. "A great fortune

in the hands of a fool is a great misfortune."--\_Bullions, Practical

Lessons\_, p. 89. "That he should make such a remark is indeed

strange."--\_Farnum, Practical Gram.\_, p. 30. "To walk in the fields and

groves is delightful."--\_Id., ib.\_ "That he committed the fault is most

certain."--\_Id., ib.\_ "Names common to all things of the same sort or class

are called \_Common nouns\_; as, \_man, woman, day\_."--\_Bullions, Pract.

Les.\_, p. 12. "That it is our duty to be pious \_admits\_ not of any

doubt."--\_Id., E. Gram.\_, p. 118. "To endure misfortune with resignation is

the characteristic of a great mind,"--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 81. "The assisting of

a friend in such circumstances was certainly a duty."--\_Id., ib.\_, 81.

"That a life of virtue is the safest is certain."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p.

169. "A collective noun denoting the idea of unity should be represented by

a pronoun of the singular number."--\_Ib.\_, p. 167.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"When the sun had arisen the enemy retreated."--\_Day's District School

Gram.\_, p. 85.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma here separates the two simple

members which compose the sentence. But, according to Rule 2d, "The simple

members of a compound sentence, whether successive or involved, elliptical

or complete, are generally divided by the comma." Therefore, a comma should

be inserted after \_arisen\_; thus, "When the sun had arisen, the enemy

retreated."]

"If he \_become\_ rich he may be less industrious."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p.

118. "The more I study grammar the better I like it."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 127.

"There is much truth in the old adage that fire is a better servant than

master."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 128. "The verb \_do\_, when used as an auxiliary

gives force or emphasis to the expression."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 39.

"Whatsoever it is incumbent upon a man to do it is surely expedient to do

well."--\_J. Q. Adams's Rhetoric\_, Vol. i, p. 46. "The soul which our

philosophy divides into various capacities, is still one

essence."--\_Channing, on Self-Culture\_, p. 15. "Put the following words in

the plural and give the rule for forming it."--\_Bullions, Practical

Lessons\_, p. 19. "We will do it if you wish."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 29. "He who

does well will be rewarded."--\_Id., ib.\_, 29. "That which is always true is

expressed in the present tense."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 119. "An observation which

is always true must be expressed in the present tense."--\_Id., Prin. of E.

Gram.\_, p. 123. "That part of orthography which treats of combining letters

to form syllables and words is called SPELLING."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 8. "A

noun can never be of the first person except it is in apposition with a

pronoun of that person."--\_Ib.\_, p. 14. "When two or more singular nouns or

pronouns refer to the same object they require a singular verb and

pronoun."--\_Ib.\_, p. 80. "James has gone but he will return in a few

days."--\_Ib.\_, 89. "A pronoun should have the same person, number, and

gender as the noun for which it stands."--\_Ib.\_, 89 and 80. "Though he is

out of danger he is still afraid."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 80. "She is

his inferior in sense but his equal in prudence."--\_Ib.\_, p. 81. "The man

who has no sense of religion is little to be trusted."--\_Ib.\_, 81. "He who

does the most good has the most pleasure."--\_Ib.\_, 81. "They were not in

the most prosperous circumstances when we last saw them."--\_Ib.\_, 81. "If

the day continue pleasant I shall return."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p.

22; Ster. Ed., 24. "The days that are past are gone for ever."--\_Ib.\_, pp.

89 and 92. "As many as are friendly to the cause will sustain it."--\_Ib.\_,

89 and 92. "Such as desire aid will receive it."--\_Ib.\_, 89 and 92. "Who

gave you that book which you prize so much?"--\_Bullions, Pract. Lessons\_,

p. 32. "He who made it now preserves and governs it."--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, p. 83.

"Shall he alone, whom rational we call,

Be pleased with nothing if not blessed with all?"

--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 126.

UNDER THE EXCEPTIONS CONCERNING SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"Newcastle is the town, in which Akenside was born."--\_Bucke's Classical

Gram.\_, p. 54.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because a needless comma here separates the

restrictive relative \_which\_ from its antecedent \_town\_. But, according to

Exception 1st to Rule 2d, "When a relative immediately follows its

antecedent, and is taken in a restrictive sense, the comma should not be

introduced before it." Therefore, this comma Should be omitted; thus,

"Newcastle is the town in which Akenside was born."]

"The remorse, which issues in reformation, is true

repentance."--\_Campbell's Philos. of Rhet.\_, p. 255. "Men, who are

intemperate, are destructive members of community."--\_Alexander's Gram.\_,

p. 93. "An active-transitive verb expresses an action, which extends to an

object."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, pp. 16 and 22. "They, to whom much is given,

will have much to answer for."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 188. "The prospect,

which we have, is charming."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_, p. 143. "He is

the person, who informed me of the matter."--\_Ib.\_, p. 134; \_Cooper's

Murray\_, 120. "These are the trees, that produce no fruit."--\_Ib.\_, 134;

and 120. "This is the book, which treats of the subject."--\_Ib.\_, 134; and

120. "The proposal was such, as pleased me."--\_Cooper, Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_,

p. 134. "Those, that sow in tears, shall reap in joy."--\_Id., ib.\_, pp. 118

and 124; and \_Cooper's Murray\_, p. 141. "The pen, with which I write, makes

too large a mark."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 71. "Modesty makes large amends

for the pain, it gives the persons, who labour under it, by the prejudice,

it affords every worthy person in their favour."--\_Ib.\_, p. 80. "Irony is a

figure, whereby we plainly intend something very different from what our

words express."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 108. "Catachresis is a figure, whereby

an improper word is used instead of a proper one."--\_Ib.\_, p. 109. "The

man, whom you met at the party, is a Frenchman."--\_Frost's Practical

Gram.\_, p. 155.

UNDER RULE III.--OF MORE THAN TWO WORDS.

"John, James and Thomas are here:

that is, John \_and\_ James, &c."--\_Cooper's Plain and Practical Grammar\_, p.

153.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here used after \_James\_, or

after \_Thomas\_, or again after \_John\_, in the latter clause; the three

nouns being supposed to be in the same construction, and all of them

nominatives to the verb \_are\_. But, according to Rule 3d for the Comma,

"When more than two words or terms are connected in the same construction,

or in a joint dependence on some other term, by conjunctions expressed or

understood, the comma should be inserted after every one of them but the

last; and, if they are nominatives before a verb, the comma should follow

the last also." Therefore, the comma should be inserted after each; thus,

"John, James, and Thomas, are here: that is, John, \_and\_ James, and Thomas,

are here."][463]

"Adverbs modify verbs adjectives and other adverbs."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_,

p. 97. "To Nouns belong Person, Gender, Number and Case."--\_Id., Practical

Lessons\_, p. 12. "Wheat, corn, rye, and oats are extensively

cultivated."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 13. "In many, the definitions, rules and

leading facts are prolix, inaccurate and confused."--\_Finch's Report on

Gram.\_, p. 3. "Most people consider it mysterious, difficult and

useless."--\_Ib.\_, p. 3. "His father and mother, and uncle reside at

Rome."--\_Farnum's Gram.\_, p. 11. "The relative pronouns are \_who, which\_

and \_that\_."--\_Bullions, Practical Lessons\_, p. 29. "\_That\_ is sometimes a

demonstrative, sometimes a relative and sometimes a conjunction."--\_Id.,

ib.\_, p. 33. "Our reputation, virtue, and happiness greatly depend on the

choice of our companions."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 92. "The spirit of true

religion is social, kind and cheerful."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 81. "\_Do, be,

have\_ and \_will\_ are sometimes principal verbs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 26. "John and

Thomas and Peter reside at Oxford."--\_Webster, Philos. Gram.\_, p. 142;

\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 96. "The most innocent pleasures are the most

rational, the most delightful and the most durable."--\_Id., ib.\_, pp. 215

and 151. "Love, joy, peace and blessedness are reserved for the

good."--\_Id., ib.\_, 215 and 151. "The husband, wife and children, suffered

extremely."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 4th Am. Ed., 8vo, p. 269. "The husband,

wife, and children suffer extremely."--\_Sanborn's Analytical Gram.\_, p.

268. "He, you, and I have our parts assigned us."--\_Ibid.\_

"He moaned, lamented, tugged and tried,

Repented, promised, wept and sighed."--\_Felton's Gr.\_, p. 108.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF ONLY TWO WORDS.

"Disappointments derange, and overcome, vulgar minds."--\_Murray's

Exercises\_, p. 15.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the two verbs here connected by \_and\_, are

needlessly separated from each other, and from their object following. But,

according to Rule 4th, "When only two words or terms are connected by a

conjunction, they should not be separated by the comma." Therefore, these

two commas should be omitted; thus, "Disappointments derange and overcome

vulgar minds."]

"The hive of a city, or kingdom, is in the best condition, when there is

the least noise or buzz in it."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 171. "When a

direct address is made, the noun, or pronoun, is in the nominative case

independent."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 88. "The verbs \_love\_ and \_teach\_,

make \_loved\_, and \_taught\_, in the imperfect and participle."--\_Ib.\_, p.

97. "Neither poverty, nor riches were injurious to him."--\_Cooper's Pl. and

Pr. Gram.\_, p. 133. "Thou, or I am in fault."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 136. "A

verb is a word that expresses action, or being."--\_Day's District School

Gram.\_, pp. 11 and 61. "The Objective Case denotes the object of a verb, or

a preposition."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 17 and 19. "Verbs of the second conjugation may

be either transitive, or intransitive."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. "Verbs of the fourth

conjugation may be either transitive, or intransitive."--\_Ib.\_, 41. "If a

verb does not form its past indicative by adding \_d\_, or \_ed\_ to the

indicative present, it is said to be \_irregular\_."--\_Ib.\_, 41. "The young

lady is studying rhetoric, and logic."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_, p.

143. "He writes, and speaks the language very correctly."--\_Ib.\_, p. 148.

"Man's happiness, or misery, is, in a great measure, put into his own

hands."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 183. "This accident, or characteristic of

nouns, is called their \_Gender\_."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, 1843, p. 195.

"Grant that the powerful still the weak controul;

Be Man the Wit, and Tyrant of the whole."

--POPE: \_Brit. Poets\_, vi, 375.

UNDER EXCEPTION I.--TWO WORDS WITH ADJUNCTS.

"Franklin is justly considered the ornament of the new world and the pride

of modern philosophy."--\_Day's District School Gram.\_, p. 88.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the words \_ornament\_ and \_pride\_, each of

which has adjuncts, are here connected by \_and\_ without a comma before it.

But, according to Exception 1st to Rule 4th, "When the two words connected

have several adjuncts, or when one of them has an adjunct that relates not

to both, the comma is inserted." Therefore, a comma should be set before

\_and\_; thus, "Franklin is justly considered the ornament of the New World,

and the pride of modern philosophy."]

"Levity and attachment to worldly

pleasures, destroy the sense of gratitude to him."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

183. "In the following Exercise, point out the adjectives and the

substantives which they qualify."--\_Bullions, Practical Lessons\_, p. 100.

"When a noun or pronoun is used to explain or give emphasis to a preceding

noun or pronoun."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 87. "Superior talents and \_briliancy\_

of intellect do not always constitute a great man."--\_Ib.\_, p. 92. "A word

that makes sense after an \_article\_ or the phrase \_speak of\_, is a

noun."--\_Bullions, Practical Lessons\_, p. 12. "All feet used in poetry, are

reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables and four of

three."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 123. "He would not do it himself nor let me do

it."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 113.[464] "The old writers give examples of

the subjunctive mode and give other modes to explain what is meant by the

words in the subjunctive."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 352.

UNDER EXCEPTION II.--TWO TERMS CONTRASTED.

"We often commend as well as censure imprudently."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

214. "It is as truly a violation of the right of property, to take little

as to take much; to purloin a book, or a penknife, as to steal money; to

steal fruit as to steal a horse; to defraud the revenue as to rob my

neighbour; to overcharge the public as to overcharge my brother; to cheat

the postoffice as to cheat my friend."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, 1st

Edition, p. 254. "The classification of verbs has been and still is a vexed

question."--\_Bullions, E. Grammar\_, Revised Edition, p. 200. "Names applied

only to individuals of a sort or class and not common to all, are called

\_Proper Nouns\_."--\_Id., Practical Lessons\_, p. 12. "A hero would desire to

be loved as well as to be reverenced."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 108. "Death or

some worse misfortune now divides them."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_, p.

133. "Alexander replied, 'The world will not permit two suns nor two

sovereigns.'"--\_Goldsmith's Greece\_, Vol. ii, p. 113.

"From nature's chain, whatever link you strike,

Tenth or ten thousandth, breaks the chain alike."

--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 131.

UNDER EXCEPTION III.--ALTERNATIVE OF WORDS.

"\_Metre\_ or \_Measure\_ is the number of poetical feet which a verse

contains."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 123. "The \_Cæsura\_ or \_division\_, is the

pause which takes place in a verse, and which divides it into two

parts."--\_Ib.\_, 123. "It is six feet or one fathom deep."--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, p. 113. "A BRACE is used in poetry at the end of a triplet or three

lines which rhyme together."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 142. "There are four

principal kinds of English verse or poetical feet."--\_Ib.\_, p. 143. "The

period or full stop denotes the end of a complete sentence."--\_Sanborn's

Analytical Gram.\_, p. 271. "The scholar is to receive as many \_jetons\_ or

counters as there are words in the sentence."--\_St. Quentin's Gram.\_, p.

16. "\_That\_ [thing] or \_the thing which\_ purifies, fortifies also the

heart."--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 74. "\_That thing\_ or \_the thing which\_ would

induce a laxity in public or private morals, or indifference to guilt and

wretchedness, should be regarded as the deadly Sirocco."--\_Ib.\_, 74. "What

is elliptically \_what thing\_ or \_that thing which\_."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p.

99. "\_Demonstrate\_ means \_show\_ or \_point out precisely\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 139.

"\_The\_ man or \_that\_ man, who endures to the end, shall be

saved."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 73. UNDER EXCEPTION IV.--A SECOND COMMA.

"Reason, passion answer one great end."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 152;

\_Hiley's\_, p. 112. "Reason, virtue answer one great aim."--\_Cooper's Pl.

and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 194; \_Butler's\_, 204. "Every good gift, and every

perfect gift is from above."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 90. "Every plant, and

every tree produces others after its kind."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 91. "James,

and not John was paid for his services."--\_Ib.\_, 91. "The single dagger, or

obelisk [Dagger] is the second."--\_Ib.\_, p. 113. "It was I, not he that did

it."--\_St. Quentin's Gram.\_, p. 152. "Each aunt, (and) each cousin hath her

speculation."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 139. "'I shall see you \_when\_ you

come,' is equivalent to 'I shall see you \_then\_, or \_at that time\_ when you

come.'"--\_Butler's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 121.

"Let wealth, let honour wait the wedded dame,

August her deed, and sacred be her fame."--\_Pope\_, p. 334.

UNDER RULE V.--OF WORDS IN PAIRS.

"My hopes and fears, joys and sorrows centre in you."--B. GREENLEAF:

\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 268.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma here separates the second pair of

nominatives from the verb. But, according to Rule 5th, "When successive

words are joined in pairs by conjunctions, they should be separated in

pairs by the comma." Therefore, an other comma should be inserted after

\_sorrows\_; thus, "My hopes and fears, joys and sorrows, centre in you."]

"This mood implies possibility, or liberty, will, or

obligation."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 113. "Substance is divided into Body,

and Spirit into Extended and Thinking."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 253.

"These consonants, [\_d\_ and \_t\_,] like \_p\_, and \_b, f\_, and \_v, k\_, and

hard \_g\_, and \_s\_, and \_z\_, are letters of the same organ."--\_Walkers

Dict.\_, p. 41: \_Principles\_, No. 358. "Neither fig nor twist pigtail nor

cavendish have passed my lips since, nor ever shall they again."--\_Boston

Cultivator\_, Vol. vii, p. 36. "The words WHOEVER, or WHOSOEVER, WHICHEVER,

or WHICHSOEVER, and WHATEVER, or WHATSOEVER are called COMPOUND RELATIVE

PRONOUNS."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 23. "Adjectives signifying profit or

disprofit, likeness or unlikeness govern the dative."--\_Bullions, Lat.

Gram.\_, 12th Ed., 215.

UNDER RULE VI.--OF WORDS ABSOLUTE.

"Thy rod and thy staff they comfort me."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 135.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set after \_staff\_, which,

with the noun \_rod\_, is put absolute by pleonasm. But, according to Rule

6th, "Nouns or pronouns put absolute, should, with their adjuncts, be set

off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be here inserted; thus, "Thy

rod and thy staff, they comfort me."--\_Psalm\_ xxiii, 4.]

"Depart ye wicked."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 70. "He saith to his mother,

Woman behold thy son."--\_Gurney's Portable Evidences\_, p. 44. "Thou God

seest me."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 9; \_Practical Lessons\_, p. 13. "Thou,

God seest me."--\_Id., E. Gram.\_, Revised Ed., p. 195. "John write me a

letter. Henry go home."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 356. "John; write a

letter. Henry; go home."--\_Ib.\_, p. 317. "Now, G. Brown; let us reason

together."--\_Ib.\_, p. 326. "Smith: You say on page 11, the objective case

denotes the object."--\_Ib.\_, p. 344. "Gentlemen: will you always speak as

you mean?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 352. "John: I sold my books to William for his

brothers."--\_Ib.\_, p. 47. "Walter and Seth: I will take my things, and

leave yours."--\_Ib.\_, p. 69. "Henry: Julia and Jane left their umbrella,

and took yours."--\_Ib.\_, p. 73. "John; harness the horses and go to the

mine for some coal. William; run to the store for a few pounds of

tea."--\_Ib.\_, p. 160. "The king being dead the parliament was

dissolved."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, p. 119.

"Cease fond nature, cease thy strife,

And let me languish into life."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 173.

"Forbear great man, in arms renown'd, forbear."--\_Ib.\_, p. 174.

"Eternal sunshine of the spotless mind,

Each prayer accepted and each wish resign'd."--\_Hiley's Gr.\_, p. 123.

UNDER RULE VII.--WORDS IN APPOSITION.

"We the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union,

establish justice," &c.--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 200.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set after the pronoun \_We\_,

with which the word \_people\_, which has adjuncts, is in apposition. But,

according to Rule 7th, "Words in apposition, (especially if they have

adjuncts,) are generally set off by the comma." Therefore, an other comma

should be here inserted; thus, "We, the people of the United States," &c.]

"The Lord, the covenant God of his people requires it."--\_Anti-Slavery

Magazine\_, Vol. i, p. 73. "He as a patriot deserves praise."--\_Hallock's

Gram.\_, p. 124. "Thomson the watchmaker and jeweller from London, was of

the party."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 128. "Every body knows that the

person here spoken of by the name of \_the conqueror\_, is William duke of

Normandy."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 33. "The words \_myself, thyself,

himself, herself\_, and their plurals \_ourselves, yourselves\_, and

\_themselves\_ are called Compound Personal Pronouns."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 22.

"For who to dumb forgetfulness a prey,

This pleasing anxious being e'er resign'd,

Left the warm precincts of the cheerful day,

Nor cast one longing, ling'ring look behind?"--\_U. Poems\_, p. 68.

UNDER EXCEPTIONS CONCERNING APPOSITION.

"Smith and Williams' store; Nicholas, the emperor's army."--\_Day's Gram.\_,

p. 17. "He was named William, the conqueror."--\_Ib.\_, p. 80. "John, the

Baptist, was beheaded."--\_Ib.\_, p. 87. "Alexander, the coppersmith, did me

great harm."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 126. "A nominative in immediate

apposition; as, 'The boy, \_Henry\_, speaks.'"--\_Smart's Accidence\_, p. 29.

"A noun objective can be in apposition with some other; as, 'I teach the

boy, \_Henry\_.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 30.

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF ADJECTIVES.

"But he found me, not singing at my work ruddy with health vivid with

cheerfulness; but pale and dejected, sitting on the ground, and chewing

opium."

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrases, "\_ruddy with health\_," and

"\_vivid with cheerfulness\_," which begin with adjectives, are not here

\_commaed\_. But, according to Rule 8th, "Adjectives, when something depends

on them, or when they have the import of a dependent clause, should, with

their adjuncts, be set off by the comma." Therefore, two other commas

should be here inserted; thus, "But he found me, not singing at my work,

ruddy with health, vivid with cheerfulness; but pale," &c.--\_Dr. Johnson\_.]

"I looked up, and beheld an inclosure beautiful as the gardens of paradise,

but of a small extent."--See \_Key.\_ "\_A\_ is an article, indefinite and

belongs to '\_book\_.'"--\_Bullions, Practical Lessons\_, p. 10. "The first

expresses the rapid movement of a troop of horse over the plain eager for

the combat."--\_Id., Lat. Gram.\_, p. 296. "He [, the Indian chieftain, King

Philip,] was a patriot, attached to his native soil; a prince true to his

subjects and indignant of their wrongs; a soldier daring in battle firm in

adversity patient of fatigue, of hunger, of every variety of bodily

suffering and ready to perish in the cause he had espoused."--See \_Key\_.

"For thee, who mindful of th' unhonour'd dead

Dost in these lines their artless tale relate."

--\_Union Poems\_, p. 68.

"Some mute inglorious Milton here may rest:

Some Cromwell guiltless of his country's blood."

--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 117.

"Idle after dinner in his chair

Sat a farmer ruddy, fat, and fair."

--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 125.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING ADJECTIVES.

"When an attribute becomes a title, or is emphatically applied to a name,

it follows it; as Charles, the Great; Henry, the First; Lewis, the

Gross."--\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 153; \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 107. "Feed

me with food, convenient for me."--\_Cooper's Practical Gram.\_, p. 118. "The

words and phrases, necessary to exemplify every principle progressively

laid down, will be found strictly and exclusively adapted to the

illustration of the principles to which they are referred."--\_Ingersoll's

Gram., Pref.\_, p. x. "The \_Infinitive Mode\_ is that form of the verb which

expresses action or being, unlimited by person, or number."--\_Day's Gram.\_,

p. 35. "A man, diligent in his business, prospers."--\_Frost's Practical

Gram.\_, p. 113.

"O wretched state! oh bosom, black as death!"

--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 118.

"O, wretched state! O, bosom, black as death!"

--\_Singer's Shak.\_, Vol. ii, p. 494.

UNDER RULE IX.--OF FINITE VERBS.

"The Singular denotes \_one\_; the Plural \_more\_ than one."--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, p. 12; \_Pract. Lessons\_, p. 16; \_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 7.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here set after \_Plural\_, where

the verb \_denotes\_ is understood. But, according to Rule 9th, "Where a

finite verb is understood, a comma is generally required." Therefore, a

comma should be inserted at the place mentioned; thus, "The Singular

denotes \_one\_; the Plural, \_more\_ than one."]

"The \_comma\_ represents the shortest pause; the \_semicolon\_ a pause longer

than the comma; the \_colon\_ longer than the semicolon; and the \_period\_

longer than the colon."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 111. "The comma represents the

shortest pause; the semicolon a pause double that of the comma; the colon,

double that of the semicolon; and the period, double that of the

colon."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 151; \_Pract. Lessons\_, p. 127. "Who is

applied only to persons; which to animals and things; what to things only;

and that to persons, animals, and things."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 23. "\_A\_ or

\_an\_ is used before the singular number only; \_the\_ before either singular

or plural."--\_Bullions, Practical Lessons\_, p. 10. "Homer was the greater

genius; Virgil the better artist."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 96. "Homer was the

greater genius, Virgil the better artist."--POPE'S PREFACE: \_British

Poets\_, Vol. vi, p. viii. "Words are formed of syllables; syllables of

letters."--\_St. Quentin's General Gram.\_, p. 2. "The Conjugation of an

active verb is styled the ACTIVE VOICE; and that of a passive verb the

PASSIVE VOICE."--\_Frost's El. of E. Gram.\_, p. 19. "The CONJUGATION of an

active verb is styled the ACTIVE VOICE, and that of a passive verb the

PASSIVE VOICE."--\_Smith's New. Gram.\_, p. 171. "The possessive is sometimes

called the genitive case; and the objective the accusative."--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, 12mo, p. 44. "Benevolence is allied to few vices; selfishness to

fewer virtues."--\_Kames, Art of Thinking\_, p. 40. "Orthography treats of

Letters, Etymology of Words, Syntax of Sentences, and Prosody of

Versification."--\_Hart's English Gram.\_, p. 21.

"Earth praises conquerors for shedding blood;

Heaven those that love their foes, and do them good."--See \_Key\_.

UNDER RULE X.--OF INFINITIVES.

"His business is to observe the agreement or disagreement of

words."--\_Bullions, E. Grammar\_, Revised Edition, p. 189.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma here divides \_to observe\_ from the

preceding verb. But, according to Rule 10th, "The infinitive mood, when it

follows a verb from which it must be separated, or when it depends on

something remote or understood, is generally, with its adjuncts, set off by

the comma." Therefore, a comma should be inserted after \_is\_; thus, "His

business is, to observe the agreement or disagreement of words."]

"It is a mark of distinction to be made a member of this society."--

\_Farnum's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 25; 2d Ed., p. 23. "To distinguish the

conjugations let the pupil observe the following rules."--\_Day's D. S.

Gram.\_, p. 40. "He was now sent for to preach before the Parliament."--

\_Life of Dr. J. Owen\_, p. 18. "It is incumbent on the young to love and

honour their parents."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 83. "It is the business of

every man to prepare for death."--\_Id., ib.\_, 83. "It argued the sincerest

candor to make such an acknowledgement."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 115. "The proper

way is to complete the construction of the first member, and leave that of

the second understood."--\_Ib., ib.\_, p. 125. "ENEMY is a name. It is a term

of distinction given to a certain person to show the character in which he

is represented."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 23. "The object of this is to

preserve the soft sound of \_c\_ and \_g\_."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 29. "The

design of grammar is to facilitate the \_reading, writing\_, and \_speaking\_

of a language."--\_Barrett's Gram.\_, 10th Ed., Pref., p. iii. "Four kinds of

type are used in the following pages to indicate the portions that are

considered more or less elementary."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 3.

UNDER RULE XI.--OF PARTICIPLES.

"The chancellor being attached to the king secured his crown."--\_Wright's

Gram.\_, p. 114.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the phrase, "being attached to the king," is

not \_commaed\_. But, according to Rule 11th, "Participles, when something

depends on them, when they have the import of a dependent clause, or when

they relate to something understood, should, with their adjuncts, be set

off by the comma." Therefore, two commas should be here inserted; thus,

"The chancellor, being attached to the king, secured his crown."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 66.]

"The officer having received his orders, proceeded to execute them."--

\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 108. "Thus used it is in the present tense."--\_Bullions,

E. Gram.\_, Revised Ed., p. 33. "The \_Imperfect\_ tense has three distinct

forms corresponding to those of the present tense."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 40.

"Every possessive case is governed by some noun denoting the thing

possessed."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 87. "The word \_that\_ used as a conjunction is

preceded by a comma."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 154. "His narrative being composed

upon such good authority, deserves credit."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_,

p. 97. "The hen being in her nest, was killed and eaten there by the

eagle."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo. p. 252. "Pronouns being used instead of nouns

are subject to the same modifications."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 92. "When

placed at the beginning of words they are consonants."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_,

p. 14. "Man starting from his couch, shall sleep no more."--\_Ib.\_, p. 222.

"\_His\_ and \_her\_ followed by a noun are possessive pronouns: not followed

by a noun they are personal pronouns."--\_Bullions, Practical Lessons\_, p.

33.

"He with viny crown advancing,

First to the lively pipe his hand addressed."--\_Id., E. Gram.\_, p. 83.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING PARTICIPLES.

"But when they convey the idea of many, acting individually, or separately,

they are of the plural number."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 15. "Two or more

singular antecedents, connected by \_and\_ require verbs and pronouns of the

plural number."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 80 and 91. "Words ending in \_y\_, preceded by a

consonant, change \_y\_ into \_i\_ when a termination is added."--\_Butlers

Gram.\_, p. 11. "A noun, used without an article to limit it, is generally

taken in its widest sense."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 30. "Two nouns,

meaning the same person or thing, frequently come together."--\_Bucke's

Gram.\_, p. 89. "Each one must give an account to God for the use, or the

abuse of the talents, committed to him."--\_Coopers Pl. and Pract. Gram.\_,

p. 133. "Two vowels, united in one sound, form a diphthong."--\_Frost's El.

of Gram.\_, p. 6. "Three vowels, united in one sound, form a

triphthong."--\_Ib.\_ "Any word, joined to an adverb, is a secondary

adverb."--\_Barrett's Revised Gram.\_, p. 68. "The person, spoken to, is put

in the Second person. The person, spoken of, in the Third

person."--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 14. "A man, devoted to his business,

prospers."--\_Frost's Pr. Gram.\_, p. 113.

UNDER RULE XII.--OF ADVERBS.

"So in indirect questions; as, 'Tell me \_when\_ he will come.'"--\_Butler's

Gram.\_, p. 121.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the adverb \_So\_ is not set off by the comma.

But according to Rule 12th, "Adverbs, when they break the connexion of a

simple sentence, or when they have not a close dependence on some

particular word in the context, should, with their adjuncts, be set off by

the comma." Therefore, a comma should be inserted after \_So\_; thus, "So, in

indirect questions; as," &c.]

"Now when the verb tells what one person or thing does to another, the verb

is transitive."--\_Bullions, Pract. Les.\_, p 37. "Agreeably to your request

I send this letter."--\_Id., E. Gram.\_, p. 141. "There seems therefore, to

be no good reason for giving them a different classification."--\_Id., E.

Gram.\_, p. 199. "Again the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchantman,

seeking goodly pearls."--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Matt.\_, xiii, 45. "Again the

kingdom of heaven is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea."--\_Ib,

ib.\_, verse 47. "\_Cease\_ however, is used as a transitive verb by our best

writers."--\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 171. "Time admits of three natural

divisions, namely: Present, Past, and Future."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 37.

"There are three kinds of comparison, namely: regular, irregular, and

adverbial."--\_Ib.\_, p. 31. "There are five Personal Pronouns namely: \_I,

thou, he, she\_, and \_it\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 22. "Nouns have three cases, viz. the

Nominative, Possessive, and Objective."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 16; \_P.

Lessons\_, p. 19. "Hence in studying Grammar, we have to study

words."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 18. "Participles like Verbs relate to Nouns

and Pronouns."--\_Miller's Ready Grammarian\_, p. 23. "The time of the

participle like that of the infinitive is estimated from the time of the

leading verb."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, p. 97.

"The dumb shall sing the lame his crutch forego,

And leap exulting like the bounding roe."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 123.

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"But he said, Nay; lest while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the

wheat with them."--FRIENDS' BIBLE, and SMITH'S: \_Matt.\_, xiii, 29.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is inserted after \_lest\_. But,

according to Rule 13th, "Conjunctions, when they are separated from the

principal clauses that depend on them, or when they introduce examples, are

generally set off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be put after the

word \_lest\_; thus, "But he said, Nay; lest, while ye gather up the tares,

ye root up also the wheat with them."--SCOTT'S BIBLE, ALGER'S, BRUCE'S.]

"Their intentions were good; but wanting prudence, they missed the mark at

which they aimed."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, Vol. ii, p. 221. "The verb \_be\_

often separates the name from its attribute; as war is expensive."--

\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 153. "\_Either\_ and \_or\_ denote an

alternative; as 'I will take \_either\_ road at your pleasure.'"--\_Ib.\_, p.

63; \_Imp. Gram.\_, 45. "\_Either\_ is also a substitute for a name; as

'\_Either\_ of the roads is good.'"--\_Webster, both Grams.\_, 63 and 45. "But

alas! I fear the consequence."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 74. "Or if he ask a fish,

will he for a fish give him a serpent?"--\_Scott's Bible, and Smith's\_. "Or

if he shall ask an egg, will he offer him a scorpion?"--\_Smiths Bible\_.

"The infinitive sometimes performs the office of a nominative case, as 'To

enjoy is to obey.'--POPE."--\_Cutler's Gram.\_, p. 62. "The plural is

commonly formed by adding \_s\_ to the singular, as \_book,

books\_."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 12. "As 'I \_were\_ to blame, if I did

it.'"--\_Smart's Accidence\_, p. 16.

"Or if it be thy will and pleasure

Direct my plough to find a treasure."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 124.

"Or if it be thy will and pleasure,

Direct my plough to find a treasure."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 185.

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF PREPOSITIONS.

"Pronouns agree with the nouns for which they stand in gender, number, and

person."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, pp. 141 and 148; \_Bullions's Analyt.

and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 150.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the preposition \_in\_ has not the comma

before it, as the text requires. But, according to Rule 14th, "Prepositions

and their objects, when they break the connexion of a simple sentence, or

when they do not closely follow the words on which they depend, are

generally set off by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be here

inserted; thus, "Pronouns agree with the nouns for which they stand, in

gender, number, and person." Or the words may be transposed, and the comma

set before \_with\_; thus, "Pronouns agree \_in\_ gender, number, and person,

\_with\_ the nouns for which they stand."]

"In the first two examples the antecedent is \_person\_, or something

equivalent; in the last it is \_thing\_."--\_Butler\_, ib., p. 53. "In what

character he was admitted is unknown."--\_Ib.\_, p. 55. "To what place he was

going is not known."--\_Ib.\_, p. 55. "In the preceding examples \_John,

Cæsar\_, and \_James\_ are the subjects."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59. "\_Yes\_ is generally

used to denote assent in \_the\_ answer to a question."--\_Ib.\_, p. 120.

"\_That\_ in its origin is the passive participle of the Anglo-Saxon verb

\_thean, to take\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. "But in all these sentences \_as\_ and \_so\_

are \_adverbs\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 127. "After an interjection or exclamatory

sentence is placed the mark of exclamation."--\_Blair's Gram.\_, p. 116.

"Intransitive verbs from their nature can have no distinction of

voice."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 30. "To the inflection of verbs belong

Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons."--\_Id.\_, ib., p. 33; \_Pract.

Lessons\_, p. 41. "\_As\_ and \_so\_ in the antecedent member of a comparison

are properly adverbs."--\_Id., E. Gram.\_, p. 113. "In the following Exercise

point out the words in apposition."--\_Id., P. Lessons\_, p. 103. "In the

following Exercise point out the noun or pronoun denoting the possessor."--

\_Id., ib.\_, p. 105. "\_Its\_ is not found in the Bible except by

misprint."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 68. "No one's interest is concerned

except mine."--\_Ib.\_, p. 70. "In most of the modern languages there are

four concords."--\_St. Quentin's Gen. Gram.\_, p. 143. "In illustration of

these remarks let us suppose a case."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 104. "On the

right management of the emphasis depends the life of pronunciation."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 172; \_Murray's\_, 8vo, p. 242.

UNDER RULE XV.--OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Behold he is in the desert."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: \_Matt.\_, xxiv, 26.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the interjection \_Behold\_, which has usually

a comma after it in Scripture, has here no point. But, according to Rule

15th, "Interjections that require a pause, though more commonly emphatic

and followed by the ecphoneme, are sometimes set off by the comma." In this

instance, a comma should be used; thus, "Behold, he is in the

desert."--\_Common Bible\_.]

"And Lot said unto them, Oh not so my Lord."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: \_Gen.\_, xix,

18. "Oh let me escape thither, (is it not a little one?) and my soul shall

live."--SCOTT: \_Gen.\_, xix, 20. "Behold! I come quickly.--BIBLE."--\_Day's

Gram.\_, p. 74. "Lo! I am with you always."--\_Day's Gram.\_, pp. 10 and 73.

"And lo! I am with you always."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 78 and 110. "And lo, I am with

you alway."--SCOTT'S BIBLE, and BRUCE'S: \_Matt.\_, xxviii, 20. "Ha! ha! ha!

how laughable that is."--\_Bullions, Pract. Les.\_, p. 83. "Interjections of

\_Laughter\_,--Ha! he! hi! ho!"--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 121.

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF WORDS REPEATED.

"Lend lend your wings! I mount! I fly!"--\_Example varied\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the repeated word \_lend\_ has here no comma.

But, according to Rule 16th, "A word emphatically repeated, is generally

set off by the comma." In this instance, a comma is required after the

former \_lend\_, but not after the latter; thus,

"Lend, lend your wings! I mount! I fly!"--\_Pope's Poems\_, p. 317.

]

"To bed to bed to bed. There is a knocking at the gate. Come come come.

What is done cannot be undone. To bed to bed to bed."--See \_Burgh's

Speaker\_, p. 130. "I will roar, that the duke shall cry, Encore encore let

him roar let him roar once more once more."--See ib., p. 136.

"Vital spark of heav'nly flame,

Quit oh quit this mortal frame."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 126.

"Vital spark of heav'nly flame,

Quit, oh quit, this mortal frame!"--\_Bullions, E. Gr.\_, p. 172.

"O the pleasing pleasing Anguish,

When we love, and when we languish."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p. 161.

"Praise to God immortal praise

For the love that crowns our days!"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 124.

UNDER RULE XVII.--OF DEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"Thus, of an infant, we say '\_It\_ is a lovely creature.'"--\_Bullions, Prin.

of E. Gram.\_, p. 12.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because no comma is here inserted between \_say\_ and

the citation which follows. But, according to Rule 17th, "A quotation,

observation, or description, when it is introduced in close dependence on a

verb, (as, \_say, reply, cry\_, or the like.) is generally separated from the

rest of the sentence by the comma." Therefore, a comma should be put after

\_say\_; as, "Thus, of an infant, we say, '\_It\_ is a lovely creature.'"]

"No being can state a falsehood in saying \_I am\_; for no one can utter it,

if it is not true."--\_Cardell's Gram.\_, 18mo, p. 118. "I know they will cry

out against this and say 'should he pay, means if he should pay.'"--\_O. B.

Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 352. "For instance, when we say '\_the house is

building\_,' the advocates of the new theory ask, 'building \_what\_?' We

might ask in turn, when you say 'the field ploughs well,' ploughs \_what\_?

'Wheat sells well,' sells \_what\_? If \_usage\_ allows us to say 'wheat

\_sells\_ at a dollar' in a sense that is not active, why may it not also

allow us to say 'wheat \_is selling\_ at a dollar' in a sense that is not

active?"--\_Hart's English Gram.\_, p. 76. "\_Man\_ is accountable, equals

\_mankind\_ are accountable."--\_S. Barrett's Revised Gram.\_, p. 37. "Thus,

when we say 'He may be reading,' \_may\_ is the real verb; the other parts

are verbs by name only."--\_Smart's English Accidence\_, p. 8. "Thus we say

\_an apple, an hour\_, that two vowel sounds may not come together."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 27. "It would be as improper to say \_an unit\_, as to say \_an youth\_; to

say \_an one\_, as to say \_an wonder\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 27. "When we say 'He died

for the truth,' \_for\_ is a preposition."--\_Ib.\_, p. 28. "We do not say 'I

might go yesterday,' but 'I might have gone yesterday.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 11. "By

student, we understand one who has by matriculation acquired the rights of

academical citizenship; but, by bursché, we understand one who has already

spent a certain time at the university."--\_Howitt's Student-Life in

Germany\_, p. 27.

SECTION II.--THE SEMICOLON.

The Semicolon is used to separate those parts of a compound sentence, which

are neither so closely connected as those which are distinguished by the

comma, nor so little dependent as those which require the colon.

RULE I.--COMPLEX MEMBERS.

When two or more complex members, or such clauses as require the comma in

themselves, are constructed into a period, they are generally separated by

the semicolon: as, "In the regions inhabited by angelic natures, unmingled

felicity forever blooms; joy flows there with a perpetual and abundant

stream, nor needs any mound to check its course."--\_Carter\_. "When the

voice rises, the gesture naturally ascends; and when the voice makes the

falling inflection, or lowers its pitch, the gesture follows it by a

corresponding descent; and, in the level and monotonous pronunciation of

the voice, the gesture seems to observe a similar limitation, by moving

rather in the horizontal direction, without much varying its

elevation."--\_Comstock's Elocution\_, p. 107.

"The wide, the unbounded prospect lies before me;

But shadows, clouds, and darkness, rest upon it."--\_Addison\_.

RULE II.--SIMPLE MEMBERS.

When two or more simple members, or such clauses as complete their sense

without subdivision, are constructed into a period; if they require a pause

greater than that of the comma, they are usually separated by the

semicolon: as, "Straws swim upon the surface; but pearls lie at the

bottom."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 276. "Every thing grows old; every thing

passes away; every thing disappears."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 115. "Alexander

asked them the distance of the Persian capital; what forces the king of

Persia could bring into the field; what the Persian government was; what

was the character of the king; how he treated his enemies; what were the

most direct ways into Persia."--\_Whelpley's Lectures\_, p. 175.

"A longer care man's helpless kind demands;

That longer care contracts more lasting bands."--\_Pope\_.

RULE III.--OF APPOSITION, &C.

Words in apposition, in disjunct pairs, or in any other construction, if

they require a pause greater than that of the comma, and less than that of

the colon, may be separated by the semicolon: as, "Pronouns have three

cases; the nominative, the possessive, and the objective."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 51. "Judge, judgement; lodge, lodgement; acknowledge,

acknowledgement."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 11. "Do not the eyes discover

humility, pride; cruelty, compassion; reflection, dissipation; kindness,

resentment?"--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 159. "This rule forbids parents to

lie to children, and children to parents; instructors to pupils, and pupils

to instructors; the old to the young, and the young to the old; attorneys

to jurors, and jurors to attorneys; buyers to sellers, and sellers to

buyers."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 304.

"\_Make, made; have, had; pay, paid; say, said; leave, left;

Dream, dreamt; mean, meant; reave\_ and \_bereave\_ have \_reft\_."

--\_Ward's Gr.\_, p. 66.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE SEMICOLON.

UNDER RULE I.--OF COMPLEX MEMBERS.

"The buds spread into leaves, and the blossoms swell to fruit, but they

know not how they grow, nor who causes them to spring up from the bosom of

the earth."--\_Day's E. Gr.\_, p. 72.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the two chief members which compose this

period, are separated only by the comma after "\_fruit\_." But, according to

Rule 1st for the Semicolon, "When two or more complex members, or such

clauses as require the comma in themselves, are constructed into a period,

they are generally separated by the semicolon." Therefore, the pause after

"\_fruit\_" should be marked by a semicolon.]

"But he used his eloquence chiefly against Philip, king of Macedon, and, in

several orations, he stirred up the Athenians to make war against

him."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 84. "For the sake of euphony, the \_n\_ is

dropped before a consonant, and because most words begin with a consonant,

this of course is its more common form.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 192. "But if I say

'Will \_a\_ man be able to carry this burden?' it is manifest the idea is

entirely changed, the reference is not to number, but to the species, and

the answer might be 'No; but a horse will.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 193. "In direct

discourse, a noun used by a speaker or writer to designate himself, is said

to be of the \_first\_ person--used to designate the person addressed, it is

said to be of the \_second\_ person, and when used to designate a person or

thing spoken of, it is said to be of the \_third\_ person."--\_Ib.\_, p. 195.

"Vice stings us, even in our pleasures, but virtue consoles us, even in our

pains."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 84. "Vice is infamous though in a prince, and

virtue honorable though in a peasant."--\_Ib.\_, p. 72. "Every word that is

the name of a person or thing, is a \_Noun\_, because 'A noun is the name of

any person, place, or thing.'"--\_Bullions, Pract. Les.\_, p. 83.

"This is the sword, with which he did the deed,

And that the shield by which he was defended."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 56.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"A deathlike paleness was diffused over his countenancee [sic--KTH], a

chilling terror convulsed his frame; his voice burst out at intervals into

broken accents."--\_Principles of Eloquence\_, p. 73.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the first pause in this sentence is not

marked by a suitable point. But, according to Rule 2d for the Semicolon,

"When two or more simple members, or such clauses as complete their sense

without subdivision, are constructed into a period; if they require a pause

greater than that of the comma, they are usually separated by the

semicolon." Therefore, the comma after "\_countenance\_" should be changed to

a semicolon.]

"The Lacedemonians never traded--they knew no luxury--they lived in houses

built of rough materials--they lived at public tables--fed on black broth,

and despised every thing effeminate or luxurious."--\_Whelpley's Lectures\_,

p. 167. "Government is the agent. Society is the principal."--\_Wayland's

Moral Science\_, 1st Ed., p. 377. "The essentials of speech were anciently

supposed to be sufficiently designated by the \_Noun\_ and the \_Verb\_, to

which was subsequently added, the \_Conjunction\_"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p.

191. "The first faint gleamings of thought in its mind are but the

reflections from the parents' own intellect,--the first manifestations of

temperament are from the contagious parental fountain,--the first

aspirations of soul are but the warmings and promptings of the parental

spirit."--\_Jocelyn's Prize Essay\_, p. 4. "\_Older\_ and \_oldest\_ refer to

maturity of age, \_elder\_ and \_eldest\_ to priority of right by birth.

\_Farther\_ and \_farthest\_ denote place or distance: \_Further\_ and

\_furthest\_, quantity or addition."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 148. "Let the

divisions be \_natural\_, such as obviously suggest themselves to the mind,

and as may aid your main design, and be easily remembered."--\_Goldsbury's

Manual of Gram.\_, p. 91.

"Gently make haste, of labour not afraid:

A hundred times consider what you've said."--\_Dryden's Art of Poetry\_.

UNDER RULE III.--OF APPOSITION, &c.

(1.) "Adjectives are divided into two classes: \_Adjectives denoting

quality\_, and \_Adjectives denoting number\_."--\_Frost's Practical Gram.\_, p.

31.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the colon after the word "\_classes\_," is not

the most suitable sign of the pause required. But according to Rule 3d for

the Semicolon, "Words in apposition, in disjunct pairs, or in any other

construction if they require a pause greater than that of the comma, and

less than that of the colon, maybe separated by the semicolon." In this

case, the semicolon should have been preferred to the colon.]

(2.) "There are two classes of adjectives--\_qualifying\_ adjectives, and

\_limiting\_ adjectives."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 33. (3.) "There are

three Genders, the \_Masculine\_, the \_Feminine\_, and the \_Neuter\_."--

\_Frost's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 51; \_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 12; \_Alger's\_, 16; \_S.

Putnam's\_, 14: \_Murray's\_, 8vo, 37; \_and others\_. (4.) "There are three

genders: the MASCULINE, the FEMININE, and the NEUTER."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

12mo. p. 39; \_Jaudon's\_, 25. (5.) "There are three genders: The

\_Masculine\_, the \_Feminine\_, and the \_Neuter\_."--\_Hendrick's Gram.\_, p. 15.

(6.) "The Singular denotes ONE, and the Plural MORE THAN ONE."--\_Hart's

Gram.\_, p. 40. (7.) "There are three Cases viz., the \_Nominative\_, the

\_Possessive\_, and the \_Objective\_"--\_Hendrick's Gram.\_, p. 7. (8.) "Nouns

have three cases, the nominative, the possessive, and the objective."--

\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 41. (9.) "In English, nouns have three cases--the

nominative, the possessive, and the objective."--\_R. C. Smith's New Gram.\_,

p. 47. (10.) "Grammar is divided into four parts, namely, ORTHOGRAPHY,

ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, PROSODY."--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. (11) "It is divided into four

parts, viz. ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, and PROSODY."--\_L. Murray's

Grammars all; T. Smith's Gram.\_, p. 5. (12.) "It is divided into four

parts: viz. Orthography--Etymology--Syntax--Prosody."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p.

3. (13.) "It is divided into four parts, namely, Orthography. Etymology,

Syntax and Prosody."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 5. (14.) "It is divided into four

parts: viz. \_Orthography, Etymology, Syntax\_ and \_Prosody\_."--\_Hendrick's

Gram.\_, p. 11. (15.) "Grammar is divided into four parts: viz. Orthography,

Etymology. Syntax and Prosody."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, p, 13. (16.) "It is

divided into four parts: Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and

Prosody."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 1; \_Frost's Pract. Gram.\_,

19. (17.) "English grammar has been usually divided into four parts, viz:

Orthography, Etymology, Syntax and Prosody."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 13.

(18.) "Temperance leads to happiness, intemperance to misery."--\_Hiley's

Gram.\_, p. 137 \_Hart's\_, 180. (19.) "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues,

an enemy his crimes."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 137 (20.) "A friend exaggerates

a man's virtues: an enemy his crimes."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo., p. 325

(21.) "Many writers use a \_plural noun\_ after the second of two numeral

adjectives, thus, 'The first and second pages are torn.'"--\_Bullions, E.

Gram.\_, 5th Ed., p. 145 (22.) "Of these, the Latin has six, the Greek,

five, the German, four, the Saxon, six, the French, three, &c."--\_Id.,

ib.\_, p. 196.

"In (\_ing\_) it ends, when \_doing\_ is express'd,

In \_d, t, n\_, when \_suffering's\_ confess'd."

--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 93.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"In old books \_i\_ is often used for \_j, v\_ for \_u, vv\_ for \_w\_, and \_ii\_ or

\_ij\_ for \_y\_."--\_Hart's E. Gram.\_, p. 22. "The forming of letters into

words and syllables is also called \_Spelling\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 21. "Labials are

formed chiefly by the \_lips\_, dentals by the \_teeth\_, palatals by the

\_palate\_, gutturals by the \_throat\_, nasals by the \_nose\_, and linguals by

the \_tongue\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 25. "The labials are \_p, b, f, v\_; the dentals

\_t, d, s, z\_; the palatals \_g\_ soft and \_j\_; the gutturals \_k, q\_, and \_c\_

and \_g\_ hard; the nasals \_m\_ and \_n\_; and the linguals \_l\_ and

\_r\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 25. "Thus, 'the man \_having finished\_ his letter, will

carry it to the post office.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 75. "Thus, in the sentence 'he

had a dagger \_concealed\_ under his cloak,' \_concealed\_ is passive,

signifying \_being\_ concealed; but in the former combination, it goes to

make up a form, the force of which is active."--\_Ib.\_, p. 75. "Thus, in

Latin, 'he had concealed the dagger' would be '\_pugionem abdiderat\_;' but

'he had the dagger concealed' would be '\_pugionem abditum habebat\_.'"--

\_Ib.\_, p. 75. "\_Here\_, for instance, means 'in this place,' \_now\_, 'at this

time,' &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 90. "Here \_when\_ both declares the \_time\_ of the

action, and so is an adverb, and also \_connects\_ the two verbs, and so is a

conjunction."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91. "These words were all no doubt originally

other parts of speech, viz.: verbs, nouns, and adjectives."--\_Ib.\_, p. 92.

"The principal parts of a sentence are the subject, the attribute, and the

object, in other words the nominative, the verb, and the objective."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 104. "Thus, the adjective is connected with the noun, the adverb

with the verb or adjective, pronouns with their antecedents, &c."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 104. "\_Between\_ refers to two, \_among\_ to more than two."--\_Ib.\_, p.

120. "\_At\_ is used after a verb of \_rest, to\_ after a verb of

motion."--\_Ib.\_, p. 120. "Verbs are of three kinds, Active, Passive, and

Neuter."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 19; \_Bullions, Prin.\_, 2d Ed., p. 29 "Verbs

are divided into two classes: Transitive and Intransitive."--\_Hendrick's

Gram.\_, p. 28 "The Parts of Speech in the English language are nine, viz.

The Article, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition.

Interjection and Conjunction."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 7 "Of

these the Noun, Pronoun, and Verb are declined, the rest are

indeclinable."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 7; \_Practical Lessons\_, p. 9. "The first

expression is called the 'Active form.' The second the 'Passive

form.'"--\_Welds Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 83; Abridged, p. 66.

"O 'tis a godlike privilege to save,

And he that scorns it is himself a slave."--\_Cowper\_, Vol. i., p. 123

SECTION III.--THE COLON.

The Colon is used to separate those parts of a compound sentence, which are

neither so closely connected as those which are distinguished by the

semicolon, nor so little dependent as those which require the period.

RULE I.--ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

When the preceding clause is complete in itself, but is followed by some

additional remark or illustration, especially if no conjunction is used,

the colon is generally and properly inserted: as, "Avoid evil doers: in

such society, an honest man may become ashamed of himself."--"See that moth

fluttering incessantly round the candle: man of pleasure, behold thy

image!"--\_Art of Thinking\_, p. 94. "Some things we can, and others we

cannot do: we can walk, but we cannot fly."--\_Beanie's Moral Science\_, p.

112.

"Remember Heav'n has an avenging rod:

To smite the poor, is treason against God."--\_Cowper\_.

RULE II.--GREATER PAUSES.

When the semicolon has been introduced, or when it must be used in a

subsequent member, and a still greater pause is required within the period,

the colon should be employed: as, "Princes have courtiers, and merchants

have partners; the voluptuous have companions, and the wicked have

accomplices: none but the virtuous can have friends."--"Unless the truth of

our religion be granted, a Christian must be the greatest monster in

nature: he must at the same time be eminently wise, and notoriously

foolish; a wise man in his practice, and a fool in his belief: his

reasoning powers must be deranged by a constant delirium, while his conduct

never swerves from the path of propriety."--\_Principles of Eloquence\_, p.

80.

"A decent competence we fully taste;

It strikes our sense, and gives a constant feast:

More we perceive by dint of thought alone;

The rich must labour to possess their own."--\_Young\_.

RULE III.--INDEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

A quotation introduced without a close dependence on a verb or a

conjunction, is generally preceded by the colon; as, "In his last moments,

he uttered these words: 'I fall a sacrifice to sloth and luxury.'"--"At

this the king hastily retorted: 'No put-offs, my lord; answer me

presently.'"--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 367. "The father addressed himself to

them to this effect: 'O my sons, behold the power of unity!'"--

\_Rippingham's Art of Speaking\_, p. 85.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE COLON.

UNDER RULE I.--ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

"\_Of\_ is a preposition, it expresses the relation between \_fear\_ and

\_Lord\_."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 133.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because

the additional remark in this sentence is not sufficiently separated from

the main clause, by the comma after the word \_preposition\_. But, according

to Rule 1st for the Colon, "When the preceding clause is complete in

itself, but is followed by some additional remark or illustration,

especially if no conjunction is used, the colon is generally and properly

inserted." Therefore, the colon should here be substituted for the comma.]

"Wealth and poverty are both temptations to man; \_that\_ tends to excite

pride, \_this\_ discontentment."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 93; see also \_Lennie's

Gram.\_, p. 81; \_Murray's\_, 56; \_Ingersoll's\_ 61; \_Alger's\_, 25;

\_Merchant's\_, 44; \_Hart's\_, 137; \_et al\_. "Religion raises men above

themselves, irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; \_this\_ binds them

down to a poor pitiable speck of perishable earth, \_that\_ opens for them a

prospect in the skies."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 98; \_Lennie's Gram.\_, p.

81. "Love not idleness, it destroys many."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 71.

"Children, obey your parents; honour thy father and mother, is the first

commandment with promise."--\_Bullions, Pract. Lessons\_, p. 88. "Thou art my

hiding place, and my shield, I hope in thy promises."--\_O. B. Peirce's

Gram.\_, p. 56. "The sun shall not smite me by day nor the moon by night.

The Lord will preserve from evil. He will save my soul.--BIBLE."--\_Ib.\_, p.

57. "Here Greece is assigned the highest place in the class of objects

among which she is numbered--the nations of antiquity--she is one of

them."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 79.

"From short (as usual) and disturb'd repose

I wake; how happy they who wake no more!"--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 216.

UNDER RULE II.--GREATER PAUSES.

"A taste \_of\_ a thing, implies actual enjoyment of it; but a taste for it,

implies only capacity for enjoyment; as, 'When we have had a true taste of

the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish \_for\_ those of

vice.'"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 147.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pause after \_enjoyment\_ is marked only

by a semicolon. But, according to Rule 2d for the Colon, "When the

semicolon has been introduced, or when it must be used in a subsequent

member, and a still greater pause is required within the period, the colon

should be employed." Therefore, the second semicolon here should be changed

to a colon.]

"The Indicative mood simply declares a thing; as, He \_loves\_;

He is \_loved\_; Or, it asks a question; as, \_Lovest\_ thou me?"--\_Id., ib.\_,

p. 35; \_Pract. Lessons\_, p. 43; \_Lennie's Gr.\_, p. 20. "The Indicative Mood

simply indicates or declares a thing: as, 'He \_loves\_, he is \_loved\_:' or

it asks a question: as, 'Does he love?' 'Is he loved?'"--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 63; 12mo, p. 63. "The Imperfect (or Past) tense represents

an action or event indefinitely as past; as, Cæsar \_came\_, and \_saw\_, and

\_conquered\_; or it represents the action definitely as unfinished and

continuing at a certain time, now entirely past; as, My father \_was coming\_

home when I met him."--\_Bullions, P. L.\_, p. 45; \_E. Gr.\_, 39. "Some nouns

have no plural; as, \_gold, silver, wisdom, health\_; others have no

singular; as, \_ashes, shears, tongs\_; others are alike in both numbers; as,

\_sheep, deer, means, news\_"--\_Day's School Gram.\_, p. 15. "The same verb

may be transitive in one sense, and intransitive in another; thus, in the

sentence, 'He believes my story,' \_believes\_ is transitive; but in this

phrase, 'He believes in God,' it is intransitive."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p.

61. "Let the divisions be \_distinct\_; one part should not include another,

but each should have its proper place, and be of importance in that place,

and all the parts well fitted together and united, should present a

whole."--\_Goldsbury's C. S. Gram.\_, p. 91. "In the use of the transitive

verb there are always \_three\_ things implied,--the \_actor\_, the \_act\_, and

the \_object\_ acted upon. In the use of the intransitive there are only

\_two\_--the \_subject\_ or thing spoken of, and the \_state\_, or \_action\_

attributed to it."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_

"Why labours reason? instinct were as well;

Instinct far better; what can choose, can err."

--\_Brit. Poets\_, Vol. viii.

UNDER RULE III.--INDEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"The sentence may run thus; 'He is related to the same person, and is

governed by him.'"--\_Hart's Gram.\_

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the semicolon is here inserted, in an

unusual manner, before a quotation not closely dependent. But, according to

Rule 3d for the Colon, "A quotation introduced without a close dependence

on a verb or a conjunction, is generally preceded by the colon." Therefore,

the colon should be here preferred.]

"Always remember this ancient proverb, 'Know thyself.'"--\_Hallock's Gram.\_

"Consider this sentence. The boy runs swiftly."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_,

Stereotype Ed. 1st Ed. "The comparative is used thus; 'Greece was more

polished than any \_other\_ nation of antiquity.' The same idea is expressed

by the superlative when the word \_other\_ is left out. Thus, 'Greece was the

most polished nation of antiquity'"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_ see \_Lennie's

Gram.\_ "Burke, in his speech on the Carnatic war, makes the following

allusion to the well known fable of Cadmus's sowing dragon's teeth;--'Every

day you are fatigued and disgusted with this cant, the Carnatic is a

country that will soon recover, and become instantly as prosperous as

ever. They think they are talking to innocents, who believe that by the

sowing of dragon's teeth, men may come up ready grown and ready

made.'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, see also \_Hart's\_.

"For sects he car'd not, 'they are not of us,

Nor need we, brethren, their concerns discuss.'"--\_Crabbe\_.

"Habit with him was all the test of truth,

'It must be right: I've done it from my youth.'

Questions he answered in as brief a way,

'It must be wrong--it was of yesterday.'"--\_Id., Borough\_.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"This would seem to say, 'I doubt nothing save one thing, namely, that he

will fulfil his promise;' whereas, that is the very thing not

doubted."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_. "The common use of language requires that

a distinction be made between \_morals\_ and \_manners\_, the former depend

upon internal dispositions, the latter on outward and visible

accomplishments."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_. "Though I detest war in each

particular fibre of my heart yet I honor the Heroes among our fathers who

fought with bloody hand: Peacemakers in a savage way they were faithful to

their light; the most inspired can be no more, and we, with greater light,

do, it may be, far less."--\_Parker's Idea of a Church\_. "The Article \_the\_,

like \_a\_, must have a substantive joined with it, whereas \_that\_, like

\_one\_, may have it understood; thus, speaking of books, I may select one,

and say, 'give me that;' but not, 'give me \_the\_;' 'give me \_one\_;' but not

'give me \_a\_.'"--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_. "The Present tense has three

distinct forms--the \_simple\_; as, I read; the \_emphatic\_; as, I do read;

and the \_progressive\_; as, I am reading'."--\_Ib.\_. "The tenses in English

are usually reckoned six. The \_Present\_, the \_Imperfect\_, the \_Perfect\_,

the \_Pluperfect\_, the \_Future\_, and the \_Future Perfect\_."--\_Ib.\_. "There

are three participles, the Present or Active, the Perfect or Passive, and

the Compound Perfect; as, \_loving, loved, having loved.\_"--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, 2d Edition; \_Alger's\_; \_Fisk's\_; \_Bacon's\_. "The Participles are

three, the Present, the Perfect, and the Compound Perfect; as, \_loving,

loved, having loved\_."--\_Hart's Gram.\_. "\_Will\_ is conjugated regularly,

when it is a principal verb, as, present, I will, past, I willed,

&c."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, Ster. Ed.; Old Ed. "And both sounds of \_x\_ are

compound, one is that of \_gz\_, and the other, that of \_ks\_"--\_Ib.\_, Ster.

Ed. "The man is happy: he is benevolent: he is useful."--\_Cooper's Murray\_;

\_Pl. and Pract. Gr.\_ "The Pronoun stands instead of the noun; as, The man

is happy; \_he\_ is benevolent; \_he\_ is useful.'"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 2d

Ed. "A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent

repetition of the same word: as, 'The man is happy,' '\_he\_ is benevolent,'

'\_he\_ is useful.'"--\_Ib.\_. "A pronoun is a word, used in the room of a

noun, or as a substitute for one or more words, as: the man is happy; \_he\_

is benevolent; \_he\_ is useful."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram., his Abridg.

of Mur.\_ "A common noun is the name of a sort, kind, or class of beings, or

things, as: animal; tree; insect; fish; fowl"--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_

"Nouns have three persons: the first; the second; and the third."--\_Ib.\_

"(Eve) so saying, her rash hand in evil hour

Forth reaching to the fruit; she pluck'd, she ate

Earth felt the wound: and nature from her seat,

Sighing through all her works, gave signs of wo,

That all was lost."--\_Cooper's Pl. and Pr. Gram.\_

SECTION IV.--THE PERIOD.

The Period, or Full Stop, is used to mark an entire and independent

sentence, whether simple or compound.

RULE I.--DISTINCT SENTENCES.

When a sentence, whether long or short, is complete in respect to sense,

and independent in respect to construction, it should be marked with the

period: as, "Every deviation from truth is criminal. Abhor a falsehood. Let

your words be ingenuous. Sincerity possesses the most powerful

charm."--"The force of a true individual is felt through every clause and

part of a right book; the commas and dashes are alive with it."--\_R. W.

Emerson\_.

"By frequent trying, TROY was won.

All things, by trying, may be done."--\_Lloyd\_, p. 184.

RULE II.--ALLIED SENTENCES.

The period is often employed between two sentences which have a general

connexion, expressed by a personal pronoun, a conjunction, or a conjunctive

adverb: as, "The selfish man languishes in his narrow circle of pleasures.

\_They\_ are confined to what affects his own interests. \_He\_ is obliged to

repeat the same gratifications, till they become insipid. \_But\_ the man of

virtuous sensibility moves in a wider sphere of felicity."--\_Blair\_.

"And whether we shall meet again, I know not.

\_Therefore\_ our everlasting farewell take."--\_Shak.\_, J. C.

RULE III.--ABBREVIATIONS.

The period is generally used after abbreviations, and very often to the

exclusion of other points; but, as in this case it is not a constant sign

of pause, other points may properly follow it, if the words written in full

would demand them: as, A. D. for \_Anno Domini\_;--Pro tem. for \_pro

tempore\_;--Ult. for \_ultimo\_;--i.e. for \_id est\_, that is;--Add., Spect,

No. 285; i.e., \_Addison, in the Spectator, Number 285th\_.

"Consult the statute; 'quart.' I think, it is,

'Edwardi sext.,' or 'prim. et quint. Eliz.'"--\_Pope\_, p. 399.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--It seems to be commonly supposed, whether correctly or not, that

short sentences which are in themselves distinct, and which in their stated

use must be separated by the period, may sometimes be rehearsed as

examples, in so close succession as not to require this point: as, "But if

thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments. He saith unto him, Which?

Jesus said, Thou shalt do no murder, Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou

shalt not steal, Thou shalt not bear false witness, Honour thy father and

thy mother: and, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself."--SCOTT, ALGER,

AND OTHERS: \_Matt.\_, xix, 17, 18, 19. "The following sentences exemplify

the possessive pronouns:--'\_My\_ lesson is finished; \_Thy\_ books are

defaced; He loves \_his\_ studies; She performs \_her\_ duty; We own \_our\_

faults; \_Your\_ situation is distressing; I admire \_their\_ virtues.'"--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 55. What mode of pointing is best adapted to

examples like these, is made a very difficult question by the great

diversity of practice in such cases. The semicolon, with guillemets, or the

semicolon and a dash, with the quotation marks, may sometimes be

sufficient; but I see no good reason why the \_period\_ should not in general

be preferred to the comma, the semicolon, or the colon, where full and

distinct sentences are thus recited. The foregoing passage of Scripture I

have examined in five different languages, ten different translations, and

seventeen different editions which happened to be at hand. In these it is

found pointed in twelve different ways. In Leusden's, Griesbach's, and

Aitton's Greek, it has nine colons; in Leusden's Latin from Montanus,

eight; in the common French version, six; in the old Dutch, five; in our

Bibles, usually one, but not always. In some books, these commandments are

mostly or wholly divided by periods; in others, by colons; in others, by

semicolons; in others, as above, by commas. The first four are negative, or

prohibitory; the other two, positive, or mandatory. Hence some make a

greater pause after the fourth, than elsewhere between any two. This

greater pause is variously marked by the semicolon, the colon, or the

period; and the others, at the same time, as variously, by the comma, the

semicolon, or the colon. Dr. Campbell, in his Four Gospels, renders and

points the latter part of this passage thus: "Jesus answered, 'Thou shalt

not commit murder. Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

Thou shalt not give false testimony. Honour thy father and mother; and love

thy neighbour as thyself." But the corresponding passage in Luke, xviii 20,

he exhibits thus: "Thou knowest the commandments. Do not commit adultery;

do not commit murder; do not steal; do not give false testimony; honour thy

father and thy mother." This is here given as present advice, \_referring

to\_ the commandments, but not actually \_quoting\_ them; and, in this view of

the matter, semicolons, not followed by capitals may be right. See the

common reading under Rule XIV for Capitals, on page 166.

OBS. 2.--Letters written for \_numbers\_, after the manner of the Romans,

though read as words, are never words in themselves; nor are they, except

perhaps in one or two instances, abbreviations of words. C, a hundred,

comes probably from \_Centum\_; and M, a thousand, is the first letter of

\_Mille\_; but the others, I, V, X, L, D, and the various combinations of

them all, are direct numerical signs, as are the Arabic figures. Hence it

is not really necessary that the period should be set after them, except at

the end of a sentence, or where it is suitable as a sign of pause. It is,

however, and always has been, a prevalent custom, to mark numbers of this

kind with a period, as if they were abbreviations; as, "While pope Sixtus

V. who succeeded Gregory XIII. fulminated the thunder of the church against

the king of Navarre."--\_Smollet's Eng.\_, iii, 82. The period is here

inserted where the reading requires only the comma; and, in my opinion, the

latter point should have been preferred. Sometimes, of late, we find other

points set after this period; as, "Otho II., surnamed the Bloody, was son

and successor of Otho I.; he died in 983."--\_Univ. Biog. Dict.\_ This may be

an improvement on the former practice, but double points are not

\_generally\_ used, even where they are proper; and, if the period is not

indispensable, a simple change of the point would perhaps sooner gain the

sanction of general usage.

OBS. 3.--Some writers, judging the period to be wrong or needless in such

cases, omit it, and insert only such points as the reading requires; as,

"For want of doing this, Judge Blackstone has, in Book IV, Chap. 17,

committed some most ludicrous errors."--\_Cobbett's Gram.\_, Let. XIX, ¶ 251.

To insert points needlessly, is as bad a fault as to omit them when they

are requisite. In Wm. Day's "Punctuation Reduced to a System," (London,

1847,) we have the following obscure and questionable RULE: "\_Besides

denoting a grammatical pause\_, the \_full point\_ is used to mark

\_contractions\_, and is requisite after \_every abbreviated word\_, as well as

after \_numeral letters.\_"--Page 102. This seems to suggest that both a

pause and a contraction may be denoted by the same point. But what are

properly called "\_contractions\_," are marked not by the period, but by the

apostrophe, which is no sign of pause; and the confounding of these with

words "\_abbreviated\_," makes this rule utterly absurd. As for the period

"after \_numeral letters\_," if they really needed it at all, they would need

it \_severally\_, as do the abbreviations; but there are none of them, which

do not uniformly dispense with it, when not final to the number; and they

may as well dispense with it, in like manner, whenever they are not final

to the sentence.

OBS. 4.--Of these letters, Day gives this account: "\_M.\_ denotes \_mille\_,

1,000; \_D., dimidium mille\_, half a thousand, or 500; \_C. centum\_, 100;

\_L.\_ represents the lower half of \_C.\_, and expresses 50; \_X.\_ resembles

\_V.\_ \_V.\_, the one upright, the other inverted, and signifies 10; \_V.\_

stands for 5, because its sister letter U is the fifth vowel; and \_I.\_

signifies 1, probably because it is the plainest and simplest letter in the

alphabet."--\_Day's Punctuation\_, p. 103. There is some fancy in this. Dr.

Adam says, "The letters employed for this purpose [i.e., to express

\_numbers\_.] were C. I. L. V. X."--\_Latin and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 288. And

again: "A thousand is marked thus CI[C-reverserd], which in later times was

\_contracted\_ into M. \_Five hundred\_ is marked thus, I[C-reversed], or by

\_contraction\_, D."--\_Ib.\_ Day inserts periods thus: "IV. means 4; IX., 9;

XL., 40; XC., 90; CD., 400; CM., 900."--Page 703. And again: "4to.,

\_quarto\_, the fourth of a sheet of paper; 8vo., \_octavo\_, the eighth part

of a sheet of paper; 12mo., \_duodecimo\_, the twelfth of a sheet of paper;

N. L., 8°., 9'., 10''., North latitude, eight degrees, nine minutes, ten

seconds."--Page 104. But IV may mean 4, without the period; 4to or 8vo has

no more need of it than 4th or 8th; and N. L. 8° 9' 10'' is an expression

little to be mended by commas, and not at all by additional periods.

OBS. 5.--To allow the period of abbreviation to supersede all other points

wherever it occurs, as authors generally have done, is sometimes plainly

objectionable; but, on the other hand, to suppose double points to be

always necessary wherever abbreviations or Roman numbers have pauses less

than final, would sometimes seem more nice than wise, as in the case of

Biblical and other references. A concordance or a reference Bible pointed

on this principle, would differ greatly from any now extant. In such

references, \_numbers\_ are very frequently pointed with the period, with

scarcely any regard to the pauses required in the reading; as, "DIADEM, Job

29. 14. Isa. 28. 5. and 62. 3. Ezek. 21. 26."--\_Brown's Concordance\_.

"Where no vision is, the people perish, Prov. xxix. 18. Acts iv. 12. Rom.

x. 14."--\_Brown's Catechism\_, p. 104. "What I urge from 1. Pet. 3. 21. in

my Apology."--\_Barclay's Works\_, iii, 498. "I. Kings--II. Kings."--\_Alger's

Bible\_, p. iv. "Compare iii. 45. with 1. Cor. iv. 13."--\_Scott's Bible,

Pref. to Lam. Jer.\_ "Hen. v. A. 4. Sc. 5."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 41. "See

Rule iii. Rem. 10."--\_Ib.\_, p. 162. Some set a \_colon\_ between the number

of the chapter and that of the verse; which mark serves well for

distinction, where both numbers are in Arabic figures: as, "'He that formed

the eye, shall he not see?'--Ps. 94: 9."--\_Wells's Gram.\_, p. 126. "He had

only a lease-hold title to his service. Lev. 25: 39, Exod. 21: 2."--\_True

Amer.\_, i. 29. Others adopt the following method which seems preferable to

any of the foregoing: "Isa. Iv, 3; Ezek. xviii, 20; Mic. vi, 7."--\_Gurney's

Essays\_, p. 133. Churchill, who is uncommonly nice about his punctuation,

writes as follows: "\_Luke\_. vi, 41, 42. See also Chap. xv, 8; and \_Phil.\_,

iii. 12."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 353.

OBS. 6.--Arabic figures used as ordinals, or used for the numeral adverbs,

\_first\_, or \_firstly, secondly, thirdly, &c.\_, are very commonly pointed

with the period, even where the pause required after them is less than a

full stop; as, "We shall consider these words, 1. as expressing

\_resolution\_; and 2. as expressing \_futurity\_."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 106.

But the period thus followed by a small letter, has not an agreeable

appearance, and some would here prefer the comma, which is, undoubtedly,

better suited to the pause, A fitter practice, however, would be, to change

the expression thus: "We shall consider these words, 1st, as expressing

\_resolution\_; and, 2dly, as expressing \_futurity\_."

OBS. 7.--Names vulgarly shortened, then written as they are spoken, are not

commonly marked with a period; as, \_Ben\_ for \_Benjamin\_. "O RARE BEN

JOHNSON!"--\_Biog. Dict.\_

"From whence the inference is plain,

Your friend MAT PRIOR wrote with pain."

--LLOYD: \_B. P.\_, Vol. viii, p. 188.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE PERIOD.

UNDER RULE I.--DISTINCT SENTENCES.

"The third person is the position of the name spoken of; as, Paul and Silas

were imprisoned, the earth thirsts, the sun shines."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, 1st

Ed., p. 21; Ster. Ed., p. 23.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because three totally distinct sentences are here

thrown together as examples, with no other distinction than what is made by

two commas. But, according to Rule 1st for the Period, "When a sentence,

whether long or short, is complete in respect to sense, and independent in

respect to construction, it should be marked with the period." Therefore,

these commas should be periods; and, of course, the first letter of each

example must be a capital.]

"Two and three and four make nine; if he were here, he would assist his

father and mother, for he is a dutiful son; they live together, and are

happy, because they enjoy each other's society; they went to Roxbury, and

tarried all night, and came back the next day."--\_Goldsbury's Parsing

Lessons in his Manual of E. Gram.\_, p. 64.

"We often resolve, but seldom perform; she is wiser than her sister; though

he is often advised, yet he does not reform; reproof either softens or

hardens its object; he is as old as his classmates, but not so learned;

neither prosperity, nor adversity, has improved him; let him that standeth,

take heed lest he fall; he can acquire no virtue, unless he make some

sacrifices."--\_Ibid.\_

"Down from his neck, with blazing gems array'd,

Thy image, lovely Anna! hung portray'd,

Th' unconscious figure, smiling all serene,

Suspended in a golden chain was seen,"--\_S. Barrett's E. Gr.\_, p. 92.

UNDER RULE II.--ALLIED SENTENCES.

"This life is a mere prelude to another, which has no limits, it is a

little portion of duration. As death leaves us, so the day of judgment will

find us."--\_Merchant's School Gram.\_, p. 76.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pause after \_limits\_, which is

sufficient for the period, is marked only by the comma. But, according to

Rule 2d, "The period is often employed between two sentences which have a

general connexion, expressed by a personal pronoun, a conjunction, or a

conjunctive adverb." It would improve the passage, to omit the first comma,

change the second to a period, and write the pronoun \_it\_ with a capital.

\_Judgment\_ also might be bettered with an \_e\_, and \_another\_ is properly

two words.]

"He went from Boston to New York; he went from Boston; he went to New York;

in walking across the floor, he stumbled over a chair."--\_Goldsbury's

Manual of E. Gram.\_, p. 62.

"I saw him on the spot, going along the road, looking towards the house;

during the heat of the day, he sat on the ground, under the shade of a

tree."--\_Id., ib.\_

"George came home, I saw \_him\_ yesterday, here; the word him, can extend

only to the individual \_George\_"--\_S. Barrett's E. Gram.\_, 10th Ed., p. 45.

"Commas are often used now, where parentheses were formerly; I cannot,

however, esteem this an improvement."--See the \_Key\_.

"Thou, like a sleeping, faithless sentinel

Didst let them pass unnoticed, unimproved,

And know, for that thou slumb'rest on the guard,

Thou shalt be made to answer at the bar

For every fugitive."

--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 222; \_Enfield's Sp.\_, p. 380.

UNDER RULE III.--OF ABBREVIATIONS.

"The term pronoun (Lat \_pronomen\_) strictly means a word used for, or

instead of a noun."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 198.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the syllable here put for the word \_Latin\_,

is not marked with a period. But, according to Rule 3d, "The period is

generally used after abbreviations, and very often to the exclusion of

other points; but, as in this case it is not a constant sign of pause,

other points may properly follow it, if the words written in full would

demand them." In this instance, a period should mark the abbreviation, and

a comma be set after \_of\_. By analogy, \_in stead\_ is also more properly two

words than one.]

"The period is also used after abbreviations; as, A. D. P. S. G. W.

Johnson."--\_Butler's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 211. "On this principle of

classification, the later Greek grammarians divided words into eight

classes or parts of speech, viz: the Article, Noun, Pronoun, Verb,

Participle, Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_,

p. 191.

"'\_Metre\_ is not confined to verse: there is a tune in all good prose; and

Shakspeare's was a sweet one.'--\_Epea Pter\_, II, 61. Mr. H. Tooke's idea

was probably just, agreeing with Aristotle's, but not accurately

expressed."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 385.

"Mr. J. H. Tooke was educated at Eton and at Cambridge, in which latter

college he took the degree of A. M; being intended for the established

church of England, he entered into holy orders when young, and obtained the

living of Brentford, near London, which he held ten or twelve

years."--\_Div. of Purley\_, 1st Amer. Edition, Vol. i, p. 60.

"I, nor your plan, nor book condemn,

But why your name, and why A. M!"--\_Lloyd\_.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"If thou \_turn\_ away thy foot from the sabbath, &c. \_Isaiah\_. lviii.

7."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 67. "'He that hath eeris of herynge, \_here he\_.

\_Wiclif\_. Matt xi."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 76. "See General Rules for

Spelling, iii., v., and vii."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 81. "'False witnesses

\_did\_ rise up.' \_Ps\_. xxxv. ii."--\_Butlers Gram.\_, p. 105.

"An \_explicative\_ sentence is used for explaining. An \_interrogative\_

sentence for enquiring. An \_imperative\_ sentence for commanding."--\_S.

Barrett's Prin. of Language\_, p. 87. "In October, corn is gathered in the

field by men, who go from hill to hill with baskets, into which they put

the ears; Susan labors with her needle for a livelihood; notwithstanding

his poverty, he is a man of integrity."--\_Goldsbury's Parsing, Manual of E.

Gram.\_, p. 62.

"A word of one syllable, is called a monosyllable. A word of two syllables;

a dissyllable. A word of three syllables; a trissyllable. A word of four or

more syllables; a polysyllable."--\_Frazee's Improved Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p.

15. "A word of one syllable, is called a monosyllable. A word of two

syllables, a dissyllable. A word of three syllables, a trissyllable. A word

of four or more syllables, a polysyllable."--\_Frazee's Improved Gram.\_,

Ster. Ed., p. 17.

"If I say, '\_if it did not rain\_, I would take a walk;' I convey the idea

that it \_does rain\_, at the time of speaking, \_If it rained\_, or \_did it

rain\_, in the present time, implies, it does not rain; \_If it did not

rain\_, or \_did it not rain\_, in present time, implies that \_it does rain\_;

thus in this peculiarity, an \_affirmative\_ sentence always implies a

\_negation\_, and a \_negative sentence\_ an \_affirmation\_."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_,

1st Ed., p. 61; Ster. Ed., 62. "\_If I were loved\_, and, \_were I loved\_,

imply, I am \_not\_ loved; \_if I were not loved\_, and, \_were I not loved\_,

imply, I am loved; a negative sentence implies an affirmation; and an

affirmative sentence implies a negation, in these forms of the

subjunctive."--\_Ib.\_, Old Ed., p. 73; Ster. Ed., 72.

"What is Rule III.?"--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 114. "How is Rule III.

violated?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 115. "How do you parse 'letter' in the sentence,

'James writes a \_letter'? Ans.\_--'Letter is a noun com., of the MASC.

gend., in the 3d p., sing. num., and \_objective case\_, and is governed by

the verb 'writes,' according to Rule III., which says. 'A transitive verb,'

&c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114.[465]

"Creation sleeps. 'T is as the general pulse

Of life stood still, and nature made a pause;

An awful pause! prophetic of her end,

And let her prophecy be soon fulfilled;

Fate drop the curtain; I can lose no more."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 216.

SECTION V.--THE DASH.

The Dash is mostly used to denote an unexpected or emphatic pause, of

variable length; but sometimes it is a sign of faltering, or of the

irregular stops of one who hesitates in speaking: as, "Then, after many

pauses, and inarticulate sounds, he said: 'He was very sorry for it, was

extremely concerned it should happen so--but--a--it was necessary--a--'

Here lord E------ stopped him short, and bluntly demanded, if his post were

destined for an other."--See \_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 170.

RULE I.--ABRUPT PAUSES.

A sudden interruption, break, or transition, should be marked with the

dash; as, 1. "'I must inquire into the affair; and if'--'And \_if\_!'

interrupted the farmer." 2. "Whom I--But first 't is fit the billows to

restrain."--\_Dryd. Virg.\_ 3. "HERE LIES THE GREAT--False marble! where?

Nothing but sordid dust lies here."--\_Young\_.

RULE II.--EMPHATIC PAUSES.

To mark a considerable pause, greater than the structure or the sentence or

the points inserted would seem to require, the dash may be employed; as, 1.

"I pause for a reply.--None?--Then none have I offended.--I have done no

more to Cæsar, than you should do to Brutus."--SHAKSPEARE: \_Enfields

Speaker\_, p. 182.

2. "Tarry a little. There is something else.--

This bond--doth give thee here--no jot of blood."

--ID.: \_Burgh's Sp.\_, p. 167.

3. "It thunders;--but it thunders to preserve."--\_Young\_.

4. "Behold the picture!--Is it like?--Like whom?"--\_Cowper\_.

RULE III.--FAULTY DASHES.

Dashes needlessly inserted, or substituted for other stops more definite,

are in general to be treated as errors in punctuation; as, "Here Greece

stands by \_itself\_ as opposed to the \_other\_ nations of antiquity--She was

none of the \_other nations\_--She was more polished than they."--\_Lennie's

Gram.\_, p. 78. "Here Greece stands by \_herself\_, as opposed to the \_other\_

nations of antiquity. She was none of the \_other nations\_: She was more

polished than they."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 114. If this colon is

sufficient, the capital after it is needless: a period would, perhaps, be

better.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The dash does not appear to be always a rhetorical stop, or always

intended to lengthen the pause signified by an other mark before it. As one

instance of a different design, we may notice, that it is now very often

employed between a text and a reference;--i.e., between a quotation and the

name of the author of the book quoted;--in which case, as Wm. Day suggests,

"it serves as a \_connecting mark\_ for the two."--\_Day's Punctuation\_, p.

131. But this usage, being comparatively recent, is, perhaps, not so

general or so necessary, that a neglect of it may properly be censured as

false punctuation.

OBS. 2.--An other peculiar use of the dash, is its application to

\_side-titles\_, to set them off from other words in the same line, as is

seen often in this Grammar as well as in other works. Day says of this,

"When the \_substance\_ of a paragraph is given as a side-head, a dash is

\_necessary\_ to \_connect\_ it with its relative matter."--\_Ibid.\_ Wilson also

approves of this usage, as well as of the others here named; saying, "The

dash should be inserted between a title and the subject-matter, and also

between the subject-matter, and the authority from which it is taken, when

they occur in the same paragraph."--\_Wilson's Punctuation\_, Ed. of 1850, p.

139.

OBS. 3.--The dash is often used to signify the omission of something; and,

when set between the two extremes of a series of numbers, it may represent

all the intermediate ones; as, "Page 10-15;" i. e., "Page 10, 11, 12, &c.

to 15."--"Matt, vi, 9-14."

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE DASH.

UNDER RULE I.--ABRUPT PAUSES.

"And there is something in your very strange story, that resembles ... Does

Mr. Bevil know your history particularly?"--See \_Key\_.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the abrupt pause after \_resembles\_ is here

marked by three periods. But, according to Rule 1st for the Dash. "A sudden

interruption, break, or transition, should be marked with the dash."

Therefore, the dash should be preferred to these points.]

"Sir, Mr. Myrtle, Gentlemen! You are friends; I am but a servant.

But."--See \_Key\_.

"Another man now would have given plump into this foolish story; but I? No,

no, your humble servant for that."--See \_Key\_.

"Do not plunge thyself too far in anger lest thou hasten thy trial; which

if Lord have mercy on thee for a hen!"--See \_Key\_.

"But ere they came, O, let me say no more!

Gather the sequel by that went before."--See \_Key\_.

UNDER RULE II.--EMPHATIC PAUSES.

"\_M\_, Malvolio; \_M\_, why, that begins my name."

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the pauses after \_M\_ and \_Malvolio\_ seem not

to be sufficiently indicated here. But, according to Rule 2d for the Dash,

"To mark a considerable pause, greater than the structure of the sentence

or the points inserted would seem to require, the dash may be employed."

Therefore, a dash may be set after the commas and the semicolon, in this

sentence.]

"Thus, by the creative influence of the Eternal Spirit, were the heavens

and the earth finished in the space of six days, so admirably finished, an

unformed chaos changed into a system of perfect order and beauty, that the

adorable Architect himself pronounced it very good, and all the sons of God

shouted for joy."--See \_Key\_.

"If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop

remained in my country, I NEVER would lay down my arms; NEVER, NEVER,

NEVER."--\_Columbian Orator\_, p. 265.

"Madam, yourself are not exempt in this,

Nor your son Dorset, Buckingham, nor you."--See \_Key\_.

UNDER RULE III.--FAULTY DASHES.

"--You shall go home directly, Le Fevre, said my uncle Toby, to my

house,--and we'll send for a doctor to see what's the matter,--and we'll

have an apothecary,--and the corporal shall be your nurse;--and I'll be

your servant, Le Fevre."--STERNE: \_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 306.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because all the dashes here quoted, except perhaps

the last, are useless, or obviously substituted for more definite marks.

But, according to Rule 3d, "Dashes needlessly inserted, or substituted for

other stops more definite, are in general to be treated as errors in

punctuation." Therefore, the first of these should be simply expunged; the

second, third, and fourth, with their commas, should be changed to

semicolons; and the last, with its semicolon, may well be made a colon.]

"He continued--Inferior artists may be at a stand, because they want

materials."--HARRIS: \_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 191. "Thus, then, continued

he--The end in other arts is ever distant and removed."--\_Id., ib.\_

"The nouns must be coupled with \_and\_, and when a pronoun is used it must

be plural, as in the example--When the nouns are \_disjoined\_ the pronoun

must be singular."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, 5th Ed., p. 57.

"\_Opinion\_ is a noun or substantive common,--of the singular

number,--neuter gender,--nominative case,--and third person."--\_Wright's

Philos. Gram.\_, p. 228.

"The mountain--thy pall and thy prison--may keep thee;

I shall see thee no more; but till death I will weep thee."

--\_Felton's Gram.\_, p. 146.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR

"If to accommodate man and beast, heaven and earth; if this be beyond me,

'tis not possible.--What consequence then follows? or can there be any

other than this--if I seek an interest of my own, detached from that of

others; I seek an interest which is chimerical, and can never have

existence."--HARRIS: \_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 139.

"Again--I must have food and clothing--Without a proper genial warmth, I

instantly perish--Am I not related, in this view, to the very earth itself?

To the distant sun, from whose beams I derive vigour?"--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 140.

"Nature instantly ebb'd again--the film returned to its place--the pulse

flutter'd--stopp'd--went on--throbb'd--stopp'd again--mov'd--stopp'd--shall

I go on?--No."--STERNE: \_ib.\_, p. 307.

"Write ten nouns of the masculine gender. Ten of the feminine. Ten of the

neuter. Ten indefinite in gender."--\_Pardon Davis's Gram.\_, p. 9.

"The Infinitive Mode has two tenses--the Indicative, six--the Potential,

two--the Subjunctive, six, and the Imperative, one."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_,

Ster. Ed., p. 39; 1st Ed., 37. "Now notice the following sentences. John

runs,--boys run--thou runnest."--\_Ib.\_, Ster. Ed., p. 50; 1st Ed., p. 48.

"The Pronoun sometimes stands for a name--sometimes for an adjective--a

sentence--a part of a sentence--and, sometimes for a whole series of

propositions."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., 12mo, p. 321.

"The self-applauding bird, the peacock, see--

Mark what a sumptuous pharisee is he!"--\_Cowper\_, i, 49.

SECTION VI.--THE EROTEME.

The Eroteme, or Note of Interrogation, is used to designate a question.

RULE I.--QUESTIONS DIRECT.

Questions expressed directly as such, if finished, should always be

followed by the note of interrogation; as, "Was it possible that virtue so

exalted should be erected upon injustice? that the proudest and the most

ambitious of mankind should be the great master and accomplished pattern of

humility? that a doctrine so pure as the Gospel should be the work of an

uncommissioned pretender? that so perfect a system of morals should be

established on blasphemy?"--\_Jerningham's Essay\_, p. 81.

"In life, can love be bought with gold?

Are friendship's pleasures to be sold?"--\_Johnson\_.

RULE II.--QUESTIONS UNITED.

When two or more questions are united in one compound sentence, the comma,

semicolon, or dash, is sometimes used to separate them, and the eroteme

occurs after the last only; as, 1. "When--under what administration--under

what exigencies of war or peace--did the Senate ever before deal with such

a measure in such a manner? Never, sir, never."--\_D. Webster, in Congress\_,

1846.

2. "Canst thou, and honour'd with a Christian name,

Buy what is woman-born, and feel no shame;

Trade in the blood of innocence, and plead

Expedience as a warrant for the deed?"--\_Cowper\_.

3. "Truths would you teach, or save a sinking land?

All fear, none aid you, and few understand."--\_Pope\_.

RULE III.--QUESTIONS INDIRECT.

When a question is mentioned, but not put directly as a question, it loses

both the quality and the sign of interrogation; as, "The Cyprians asked me

\_why I wept\_."--\_Murray\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The value of the eroteme as a sign of pause, is stated very

differently by different grammarians; while many of the vast multitude, by

a strange oversight, say nothing about it. It is unquestionably \_variable\_,

like that of the dash, or of the ecphoneme. W. H. Wells says, "The comma

requires a momentary pause; the semicolon, a pause somewhat longer than the

comma; the colon, a pause somewhat longer than the semicolon; and the

period, a full stop. The note of interrogation, or the note of exclamation,

\_may take the place of\_ EITHER \_of these\_, and accordingly requires a pause

of the same length as the point for which it is substituted."--\_Wells's

School Gram.\_, p. 175. This appears to be accurate in idea, though perhaps

hardly so in language. Lindley Murray has stated it thus: "The

interrogation and exclamation points are \_intermediate\_ as to their

quantity or time, and may be equivalent in that respect to a semicolon, a

colon, or a period, as the sense may require."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 280. But

Sanborn, in regard to his "\_Question Point\_," awkwardly says: "\_This pause\_

is generally \_some longer\_ than that of a period."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p.

271. Buchanan, as long ago as 1767, taught as follows: "The Pause after the

two Points of Interrogation and Admiration ought to be equal to that of the

Period, or a Colon at least."--\_English Syntax\_, p. 160. And J. S. Hart

avers, that, "A question is reckoned as equal to a complete sentence, and

the mark of interrogation as equal to a period."--\_Hart's English Gram.\_,

p. 166. He says also, that, "the first word after a note of interrogation

should begin with a capital."--\_Ib.\_, p. 162. In some instances, however,

he, like others, has not adhered to these exceptionable principles, as may

be seen by the false grammar cited below.

OBS. 2.--Sometimes a series of questions may be severally complete in

sense, so that each may require the interrogative sign, though some or all

of them may be so united in construction, as not to admit either a long

intermediate pause or an initial capital; as, "Is there no honor in

generosity? nor in preferring the lessons of conscience to the impulses of

passion? nor in maintaining the supremacy of moral principle, and in paying

reverence to Christian truth?"--\_Gannett\_. "True honour is manifested in a

steady, uniform train of actions, attended by justice, and directed by

prudence. Is this the conduct of the duellist? will justice support him in

robbing the community of an able and useful member? and in depriving the

poor of a benefactor? will it support him in preparing affliction for the

widow's heart? in filling the orphan's eyes with tears?"--\_Jerningham's

Essay\_, p. 113. But, in this latter example, perhaps, commas might be

substituted for the second and fourth erotemes; and the word \_will\_ might,

in both instances, begin with a capital.

OBS. 3.--When a question is mentioned in its due form, it commonly retains

the sign of interrogation, though not actually asked by the writer; and,

except perhaps when it consists of some little interrogative word or

phrase, requires the initial capital: as, "To know when this point ought to

be used, do not say:[,] 'Is a question asked?' but, 'Does the sentence ask

a question?'"--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 368. "They put their huge

inarticulate question, 'What do you mean to do with us?' in a manner

audible to every reflective soul in the kingdom."--\_Carlyle's Past and

Present\_, p. 16. "An adverb may be generally known, by its answering to the

question, How? how much? when? or where? as, in the phrase, 'He reads

\_correctly\_,' the answer to the question, How does he read? is

\_correctly\_."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 28. This passage, which, without

ever arriving at great accuracy, has been altered by Murray and others in

ways innumerable, is everywhere exhibited with five interrogation points.

But, as to capitals and commas, as well as the construction of words, it

would seem no easy matter to determine what impression of it is nearest

right. In Flint's Murray it stands thus: "An adverb may generally be known

by its answering the question, How? How much? When? or Where? As in the

phrase, 'He reads \_correctly\_. The answer to the question, 'How does he

read?' is, '\_correctly\_.'" Such questions, when the pause is slight, do

not, however, in all cases, require capitals: as,

"\_Rosal\_. Which of the visors was it, that you wore?

\_Biron\_. Where? when? what visor? why demand you this?"

\_Shakspeare, Love's Labour Lost\_, Act V, Sc. 2.

OBS. 4.--A question is sometimes put in the form of a mere declaration; its

interrogative character depending solely on the eroteme, and the tone, or

inflection of voice, adopted in the utterance: as, "I suppose, Sir, you are

his apothecary?"--SWIFT: \_Burgh's Speaker\_, p. 85. "I hope, you have, upon

no account, promoted sternutation by hellebore?"--\_Id., ib.\_ "This priest

has no pride in him?"--SINGER'S SHAK., \_Henry\_ VIII, ii, 2.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE EROTEME.

UNDER RULE I.--QUESTIONS DIRECT.

"When will his ear delight in the sound of arms."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_,

12mo, p. 59.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because here is a finished question with a period

set after it. But, according to Rule 1st for the Eroteme, "Questions

expressed directly as such, if finished, should always be followed by the

note of interrogation." Therefore, the eroteme, or note of interrogation,

should here be substituted for the period.]

"When shall I, like Oscar, travel in the light of my steel."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59.

"Will Henry call on me while he shall be journeying South."--\_Peirce, ib.\_,

p. 133.

"An Interrogative Pronoun is one that is used in asking a question; as,

'\_who\_ is he, and \_what\_ does he want?'"--\_Day's School Gram.\_, p. 21.

"\_Who\_ is generally used when we would inquire for some unknown person or

persons; as, \_who\_ is that man."--\_Ib.\_, p. 24. "Our fathers, where are

they, and the prophets, do they live forever?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 109.

"It is true, that some of our best writers have used \_than whom\_; but it is

also true, that they have used \_other\_ phrases which we have rejected as

ungrammatical: then why not reject this too.--The sentences in the

Exercises [with \_than who\_] are correct as they stand."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_,

5th Ed., 1819, p. 79.

"When the perfect participle of an active-intransitive verb is annexed to

the neuter verb \_to be\_? What does the combination form?"--\_Hallock's

Gram.\_, p. 88. "Those adverbs which answer to the question \_where, whither\_

or \_whence\_, are called adverbs of \_place\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116.

"Canst thou, by searching, find out God; Canst thou find out the Almighty

to perfection; It is high as heaven, what canst thou do? deeper than hell,

what canst thou know?"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_ p. 132.

"Where, where, for shelter shall the guilty fly,

When consternation turns the good man pale."--\_Ib.\_, p. 222.

UNDER RULE II.--QUESTIONS UNITED.

"Who knows what resources are in store? and what the power of God may do

for thee?"

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because an eroteme is set after \_store\_, where a

comma would be sufficient. But, according to Rule 2d for the Eroteme, "When

two or more questions are united in one compound sentence, the comma,

semicolon, or dash, is sometimes used to separate them, and the eroteme

occurs after the last only." Therefore, the comma should here be preferred,

as the author probably wrote the text. See \_Key\_.]

"The Lord is not a man that he should lie, neither the son of man that he

should repent. Hath he said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it?

and shall he not make it good?"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 353; 12mo, 277;

\_Hiley's\_, 139; \_Hart's\_, 181. "\_Hath the Lord said it? and shall he not do

it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good\_?"--\_Lennie's Gram.\_,

p. 113; \_Bullions's\_, 176.

"Who calls the council, states the certain day?

Who forms the phalanx, and who points the way."

--\_Brit. Poets\_, vi, 376.

UNDER RULE III.--QUESTIONS INDIRECT.

"To be, or not to be?--that is the question."--\_Enfield's Sp.\_, p. 367;

\_Kirkham's Eloc.\_, 123.[466]

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the note of interrogation is here set after

an expression which has neither the form nor the nature of a direct

question. But, according to Rule 3d for the Eroteme, "When a question is

mentioned, but not put directly as a question, it loses both the quality

and the sign of interrogation." Therefore, the semicolon, which seems

adapted to the pause, should here be preferred.]

"If it be asked, why a pause should any more be necessary to emphasis than

to an accent? or why an emphasis alone, will not sufficiently distinguish

the members of sentences from each other, without pauses, as accent does

words? the answer is obvious; that we are pre-acquainted with the sound of

words, and cannot mistake them when distinctly pronounced, however rapidly;

but we are not pre-acquainted with the meaning of sentences, which must be

pointed out to us by the reader or speaker."--\_Sheridan's Rhet. Gram.\_, p.

lvi.

"Cry, By your Priesthood tell me what you are?"

--POPE: \_British Poets\_, London, 1800, Vol. vi, p. 411.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"Who else can he be. Where else can he go."--\_S. Barrett's Gram.\_, 1845, p.

71. "In familiar language \_here, there\_ and \_where\_ are used for \_hither,

thither\_ and \_whither\_."--\_N. Butler's Gram.\_, p. 183. "Take, for instance,

this sentence, 'Indolence undermines the foundation of virtue.'"--\_Hart's

Gram.\_, p. 106. "Take, for instance, the sentence before quoted.

'\_Indolence\_ undermines the foundation of virtue.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 110. "Under

the same head are considered such sentences as these, '\_he\_ that heareth,

let him hear,' 'Gad, a troop shall overcome him,' &c."--\_Ib.\_, p. 108.

"TENSES are certain modifications of the verb which point out the

distinctions of time."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 38; \_Pract. Les.\_, p. 44.

"Calm was the day and the scene delightful."--\_Id. E. Gr.\_, p. 80. "The

capital letters used by the Romans to denote numbers, were C. I. L. V. X.

which are therefore called Numeral Letters. I, denotes \_one\_; V, \_five\_: X,

\_ten\_; L, \_fifty\_; and C, a hundred."--\_Id., Lat. Gram.\_, p. 56. "'I shall

have written;' viz, at or before some future time or event."--\_Id., ib.\_,

p. 89. "In Latin words the liquids are \_l\_ and \_r\_ only. In Greek words \_l,

r, m, n\_."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 277. "Each legion was divided into ten cohorts,

each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two

centuries."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 300. "Of the Roman literature previous to A. U.

514 scarcely a vestige remains."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 312.

"And that, which He delights in must be happy.

But when!--or where!--This world was made for Cæsar."

--\_Burgh's Sp.\_, p. 122.

"And that which he delights in must be happy.

But when, or where? This world was made for Cæsar."

--\_Enfield's Sp.\_, p. 321.

"Look next on greatness. Say, where greatness lies?

Where but among the heroes and the wise."

--\_Burgh's Sp.\_, p. 91.

"Look next on greatness! say where greatness lies.

Where, but among the heroes and the wise?"

--\_Essay on Man\_, p. 51.

"Look next on Greatness; say where Greatness lies:

Where, but among the Heroes and the Wise?"

--\_Brit. Poets\_, vi, 380.

SECTION VII--THE ECPHONEME.

The Ecphoneme, or Note of Exclamation, is used to denote a pause with some

strong emotion of admiration, joy, grief, or other feeling; and, as a sign

of great wonder, it is sometimes, though not very elegantly, repeated: as,

"Grammatical consistency!!! What a gem!"--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 352.

RULE I.--INTERJECTIONS, &c.

Emphatic interjections, and other expressions of great emotion, are

generally followed by the note of exclamation; as, "Hold! hold! Is the

devil in you? Oh! I am bruised all over."--MOLIERE: \_Burgh's Speaker\_, p.

250.

"And O! till earth, and seas, and heav'n decay,

Ne'er may that fair creation fade away!"--\_Dr. Lowth\_.

RULE II.--INVOCATIONS.

After an earnest address or solemn invocation, the note of exclamation is

now generally preferred to any other point; as, "Whereupon, O king Agrippa!

I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision."--\_Acts\_, xxvi, 19.

"Be witness thou, immortal Lord of all!

Whose thunder shakes the dark aërial hall."--\_Pope\_.

RULE III.--EXCLAMATORY QUESTIONS.

Words uttered with vehemence in the form of a question, but without

reference to an answer, should be followed by the note of exclamation; as,

"How madly have I talked!"--\_Young\_.

"An Author! 'Tis a venerable name!

How few deserve it, and what numbers claim!"

--\_Id., Br. Po.\_, viii, 401.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE ECPHONEME.

UNDER RULE I.--OF INTERJECTIONS, &c.

(1.) "O that he were wise."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 111.

[FORMULE. Not proper, because this strong wish, introduced by "O," is

merely marked with a period. But, according to Rule 1st for the Ecphoneme,

"Emphatic interjections, and other expressions of great emotion, are

generally followed by the note of exclamation." Therefore, the pause after

this sentence, should be marked with the latter sign; and, if the "O" be

read with a pause, the same sign may be there also.]

(2.) "O that his heart was tender."--\_Exercises, ib.\_, p. 111. (3.) "\_Oh\_,

what a sight is here!"--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 48. (4.) "Oh! what a sight is

here."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 71; (Obs. 2;) \_Pract. Les.\_, p. 83. (5.)

"O virtue! How amiable thou art."--\_Id.\_,, p. 71; \_Pract. Les.\_, p. 82.

(6.) "O \_virtue\_! how amiable thou art."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 109. (7.) "O,

virtue! how amiable thou art."--\_S. Putnam's Gram.\_, p. 53. (8.) "\_Oh!\_

virtue, how amiable thou art!"--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 191; \_O. B.

Peirce's\_, 375. (9.) "\_O\_ virtue! how amiable thou art!"--\_Hallock's

Gram.\_, p. 126. (10.) "Oh! that I had been more diligent."--\_Hart's Gram.\_,

p. 167; see \_Hiley's\_, 117. (11.) "O! the humiliation to which vice reduces

us."--\_Farnum's Gram.\_, p. 12; \_Murray's Ex.\_, p. 5. (12.) "O! that he were

more prudent."--\_Farnum's Gram.\_, p. 81. (13.) "Ah! me."--\_P. Davis's

Gram.\_, p. 79. (14.) "Ah me!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 122. (15.) "Lately alas I knew a

gentle boy," \_&c.--The Dial\_, Vol. i, p. 71.

(16.) "Wo is me Alhama."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 190.

(17.) "Wo is me, Alhama."--\_Ibid.\_, "113th Thousand," p. 206.

UNDER RULE II.--OF INVOCATIONS.

"Weep on the rocks of roaring winds, O \_maid\_ of Inistore."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 131; \_Cooper's Plain and Practical Gram.\_, p. 158.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because the emphatic address in this sentence, is

marked with a period after it. But, according to Rule 2d for the Ecphoneme,

"After an earnest address or solemn invocation, the note of exclamation is

now generally preferred to any other point." Therefore, this period should

be changed to the latter sign.]

"Cease a little while, O wind; stream, be thou silent a while; let my voice

be heard around. Let my wanderer hear me. Salgar, it is Colma who calls.

Here is the tree, and the rock. Salgar, my love, I am here. Why delayest

thou thy coming? Lo, the calm moon comes forth. The flood is bright in the

vale."--See \_Key\_.

"Ah, stay not, stay not, guardless and alone;

Hector, my lov'd, my dearest, bravest son."--See \_Key\_.

UNDER RULE III.--EXCLAMATORY QUESTIONS.

"How much better is wisdom than gold."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 153;

\_Hiley\_, p. 113.

[FORMULE--Not proper, because this exclamatory sentence is pointed with a

period at the end. But, according to Rule 3d for the Ecphoneme, "Words

uttered with vehemence in the form of a question, but without reference to

an answer, should be followed by the note of exclamation." Therefore, this

period should be changed to the latter sign.]

"O virtue! how amiable art thou."--\_Flint's Murray\_, p. 51. "At that hour,

O how vain was all sublunary happiness."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 74. "Alas! how

few and transitory are the joys which this world affords to man."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 12. "Oh! how vain and transitory are all things here below."--\_Ib.\_, p.

110.

"And oh! what change of state, what change of rank,

In that assembly everywhere was seen."--\_Day's Gram.\_, p. 12.

"And O! what change of state! what change of rank!

In that assembly every where was seen!"--\_Pollok\_, B. ix, l. 781.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"O shame! where is thy blush."--\_S. Barren's Principles of Language\_, p.

86. "O \_shame\_, where is thy blush; \_John\_, give me my hat."--\_Ib.\_, p. 98.

"What! is Moscow in flames."--\_Ib.\_, p. 86. "Ah! what happiness awaits the

virtuous."--\_Ib.\_, 86.

"Ah, welladay,--do what we can for him, said Trim, maintaining his

point,--the poor soul will die."--STERNE: \_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 306. "A

well o'day! do what we \_can\_ for him, said Trim, maintaining his point: the

poor soul will \_die\_"--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 340.

"Will John \_return\_ to-morrow."--\_S. Barrett's Gram.\_, Tenth Ed., p. 55.

"\_Will not\_ John \_return\_ to-morrow."--\_Ib.\_, 55. "John! \_return\_

to-morrow; Soldiers! \_stand\_ firm."--\_Ib.\_, 55. "If \_mea\_ which means \_my\_

is an adjective in \_Latin\_, why may not \_my\_ be so called \_in\_ English, and

if \_my\_ is an adjective, why not \_Barrett's\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 50.

"Oh? Absalom, my son."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 375. "Oh! STAR-EYED

SCIENCE!! whither hast thou fled?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 366. "Why do you tolerate

your own inconsistency, by calling it the present tense!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 360.

"Thus the declarative mode may be used in asking a question; as, \_what\_ man

\_is\_ frail."--\_Ib.\_, p. 358. "What connexion has motive wish, or

supposition, with the term subjunctive!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 348. "A grand reason,

truly! for calling it a golden key."--\_Ib.\_, p. 347. "What '\_suffering\_'!

the man who can say this, must be '\_enduring.\_'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 345. "What is

Brown's Rule! in relation to this matter?"--\_Ib.\_, p. 334.

"\_Alas!\_ how short is life." "\_Thomas\_, study your book."--\_Day's District

School Gram.\_, p. 109. "As, '\_alas!\_' how short is life; \_Thomas\_, study

your book.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 82. "Who can tell us who they are."--\_Sanborn's

Gram.\_, p. 178. "Lord have mercy on my son; for he is a lunatic,

etc."--\_Felton's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 138; Ster. Ed., 140. "O, ye wild

groves, O, where is now your bloom!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 88; Ster. Ed., 91.

"O who of man the story will unfold!"

--\_Farnum's Gr.\_, 2d Ed., p. 104.

"Methought I heard Horatio say to-morrow.

Go to I will not hear of it--to-morrow."

--\_Hallock's Gr.\_, 1st Ed., p. 221.

"How his eyes languish? how his thoughts adore

That painted coat which Joseph never wore?"

--\_Love of Fame\_, p. 66.

SECTION VIII.--THE CURVES.

The Curves, or Marks of Parenthesis, are used to distinguish a clause or

hint that is hastily thrown in between the parts of a sentence to which it

does not properly belong; as, "Their enemies (and enemies they will always

have) would have a handle for exposing their measures."--\_Walpole\_.

"To others do (the law is not severe)

What to thyself thou wishest to be done."--\_Beattie\_.

OBS.--The incidental clause should be uttered in a lower tone, and faster

than the principal sentence. It always requires a pause as great as that of

a comma, or greater.

RULE I.--THE PARENTHESIS.

A clause that breaks the unity of a sentence or passage too much to be

incorporated with it, and only such, should be inclosed within curves, as a

parenthesis; as, "For I know that in me, (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth

no good thing."--\_Rom.\_, vii, 18.

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,)

Virtue alone is happiness below."--\_Pope\_.

RULE II.--INCLUDED POINTS.

The curves do not supersede other stops; and, as the parenthesis terminates

with a pause equal to that which precedes it, the same point should be

included, except when the sentences differ in form: as, 1. "Now for a

recompense in the same, (I speak as unto my children,) be ye also

enlarged."--\_2 Cor.\_, vi, 13.

2. "Man's thirst of happiness declares it is:

(For nature never gravitates to nought:)

That thirst unquench'd, declares it is not here."--\_Young\_.

3. "Night visions may befriend: (as sung above:)

Our waking dreams are fatal. How I dreamt

Of things impossible! (could sleep do more?)

Of joys perpetual in perpetual change!"--\_Young\_.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--ERRORS CONCERNING THE CURVES.

UNDER RULE I.--OF THE PARENTHESIS.

"Another is composed of the indefinite article \_an\_, which, etymologically

means \_one\_ and \_other\_, and denotes \_one other\_."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p.

63.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the parenthetic expression, "which

etymologically means \_one\_," is not sufficiently separated from the rest of

the passage. But, according to Rule 1st for the Curves, "A clause that

breaks the unity of a sentence or passage too much to be incorporated with

it, and only such, should be enclosed within curves, as a parenthesis."

Therefore, the curves should be here inserted; and also, by Rule 2d, a

comma at the word \_one\_.]

"Each mood has its peculiar Tense, Tenses (or Times)."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p.

58.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the expression, "or Times," which has not

the nature of a parenthesis, is here marked with curves. But, according to

Rule 1st for the Curves, "A clause that breaks the unity of a sentence or

passage too much to be incorporated with it, \_and only such\_, should be

enclosed within curves, as a parenthesis." Therefore, these marks should be

omitted; and a comma should be set after the word "\_Tenses\_," by Rule 3d.]

"In some very ancient languages, as the Hebrew, which have been employed

chiefly for expressing plain sentiments in the plainest manner, without

aiming at any elaborate length or harmony of periods, this pronoun [the

relative] occurs not so often."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 127.

"Before I shall say those Things, (O conscript Fathers) about the Public

Affairs, which are to be spoken at this Time; I shall lay before you, in

few Words, the Motives of the Journey, and the Return."--\_Brightland's

Gram.\_, p. 149.

"Of well-chose Words some take not care enough.

And think they should be (like the Subject) rough."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 173.

"Then having shewed his wounds, \_he'd\_ sit (him) down."

--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 32.

UNDER RULE II.--OF INCLUDED POINTS.

"Then Jael smote the Nail into his Temples, and fastened it to the Ground:

(for he was fast asleep and weary) so he died. OLD TEST."--\_Ward's Gram.\_,

p. 17.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because this parenthesis is not marked as

terminating with a pause equal to that which precedes it. But, according to

Rule 2d above, "The curves do not supersede other stops; and, as the

parenthesis terminates with a pause equal to that which precedes it, the

same point should be included, except when the sentences differ in form."

Therefore, a colon should be inserted within the curve after \_weary\_.]

"Every thing in the Iliad has manners (as Aristotle expresses it) that is,

every thing is acted or spoken."--\_Pope, Pref. to Homer\_, p. vi.

"Those nouns, that end in \_f.\_ or \_fe\_ (except some few I shall mention

presently), form plurals by changing those letters into \_ves\_: as, thief,

\_thieves\_; wife, \_wives\_."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 35.

"\_As\_, requires \_as\_; (expressing equality) Mine is as good as yours.

\_As\_,--so; (expressing equality) As the stars, so shall thy seed be.

\_So,--as\_; (with a negative expressing inequality) He is not so wise as his

brother. \_So.--that\_; (expressing consequence) I am so weak that I cannot

walk."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 113; \_Pract. Les.\_, p. 112.

"A captious question, sir (and yours is one,)

Deserves an answer similar, or none."--\_Cowper\_, ii. 228.

MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"Whatever words the verb TO BE serves to unite referring to the same thing,

must be of the same case; §61, as, \_Alexander\_ is a \_student\_."--\_Bullions,

E. Gram.\_, p. 75. "When the objective is a relative or interrogative, it

comes before the verb that governs it. §40, R. 9. (Murray's 6th rule is

unnecessary.)"--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 90. "It is generally improper (except in

poetry,) to omit the antecedent to a relative; and always to omit a

relative when of the nominative case."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 130. "In every

sentence there must be a \_verb\_ and a \_nominative\_ (or subject) expressed

or understood."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 87; \_Pract. Lessons\_, p. 91. "Nouns and

pronouns, and especially words denoting time, are often governed by

prepositions understood; or are used to restrict verbs or adjectives

without a governing word, §50. Rem. 6 and Rule; as, He gave (to) me a full

account of the whole affair."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 80. "When \_should\_

is used instead of \_ought\_, to express \_present\_ duty, §20, 4, it may be

followed by the present; as, 'You \_should\_ study that you \_may\_ become

learned.'"--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 123. "The indicative present is frequently used

after the words, \_when, till, before, as soon as, after\_, to express the

relative time of a future action; (§24, I, 4,) as, 'When he \_comes\_, he

will be welcome.'"--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 124. "The relative is parsed by stating

its gender, number, case, and antecedent, (the gender and number being

always the same as those of the antecedent) thus, 'The boy who.' '\_Who\_' is

a relative pronoun, masculine, singular, the nominative, and refers to

'\_boy\_' as its antecedent."--\_Bullions, Pract. Les.\_, p. 31.

"Now, now, I seize, I clasp \_thy\_ charms,

And now \_you\_ burst; ah! cruel from my arms."

Here is an unnecessary change from the second person singular to the second

plural. It would have been better thus,

"Now, now I seize, I clasp \_your\_ charms,

And now \_you\_ burst; ah! cruel from my arms."

--\_J. Burn's Gram.\_, p. 193.

SECTION IX.--THE OTHER MARKS.

There are also several other marks, which are occasionally used for various

purposes, as follow:--

I. ['] The APOSTROPHE usually denotes either the possessive case of a noun,

or the elision of one or more letters of a word: as, "The \_girl's\_ regard

to her \_parents'\_ advice;"--\_'gan, lov'd, e'en, thro'\_; for \_began, loved,

even, through\_. It is sometimes used in pluralizing a mere letter or sign;

as, Two \_a's\_--three \_6's\_.[467]

II. [-] The HYPHEN connects the parts of many compound words, especially

such as have two accents; as, \_ever-living\_. It is also frequently inserted

where a word is divided into syllables; as, \_con-tem-plate\_. Placed at the

end of a line, it shows that one or more syllables of a word are can led

forward to the next line.

III. ["] The DIÆRESIS, or DIALYSIS, placed over either of two contiguous

vowels, shows that they are not a diphthong; as, \_Danäe, aërial\_.

IV. ['] The ACUTE ACCENT marks the syllable which requires the principal

stress in pronunciation; as, \_e'qual, equal'ity\_. It is sometimes used in

opposition to the grave accent, to distinguish a close or short vowel; as,

"\_Fáncy\_:" (\_Murray\_:) or to denote the rising inflection of the voice; as,

"Is it \_hé?\_"

V. [`] The GRAVE ACCENT is used in opposition to the acute, to distinguish

an open or long vowel; as, "\_Fàvour\_:" (\_Murray\_:) or to denote the falling

inflection of the voice; as, "\_Yès\_; it is \_hè\_" It is sometimes placed

over a vowel to show that it is not to be suppressed in pronunciation; as,

"Let me, though in humble speech,

Thy refinèd maxims teach."--\_Amer. Review\_, May, 1848.

VI. [^] The CIRCUMFLEX generally denotes either the broad sound of \_a\_ or

an unusual sound given to some other vowel; as in \_âll, hêir, machîne\_.

Some use it to mark a peculiar \_wave\_ of the voice, and when occasion

requires, reverse it; as, "If you said \_s=o\_, then I said \_sô\_."

VII. [[~]] The BREVE, or STENOTONE, is used to denote either the close,

short, \_shut\_ sound of a vowel, or a syllable of short quantity; as,

\_l~ive\_, to have life,--\_r~av'en\_, to devour,[468]--\_c~al~am~us\_, a reed.

VIII. [=] The MACRON, or MACROTONE,[469] is used to denote either the open,

long, \_primal\_ sound of a vowel, or a syllable of long quantity; as,

\_l=ive\_, having life,--\_r=a'ven\_, a bird,--\_=e'qu=ine\_, of a horse.

IX. [----] or [\* \* \* \*] or [....] The ELLIPSIS, or SUPPRESSION, denotes the

omission of some letters or words: as, \_K--g\_, for \_King; c\*\*\*\*d\_, for

\_coward; d....d\_, for \_damned\_.

X. [^] The CARET, used only in writing, shows where to insert words or

letters that have been accidentally omitted. XI [{}] The BRACE serves to

unite a triplet; or, more frequently, to connect several terms with

something to which they are all related. XII. [§] The SECTION marks the

smaller divisions of a book or chapter; and, with the help of numbers,

serves to abridge references.

XIII. [¶] The PARAGRAPH (chiefly used in the Bible) denotes the

commencement of a new subject. The parts of discourse which are called

paragraphs, are, in general, sufficiently distinguished by beginning a new

line, and carrying the first word a little forwards or backwards. The

paragraphs of books being in some instances numbered, this character may

occasionally be used, in lieu of the word \_paragraph\_, to shorten

references.

XIV. [""] The GUILLEMETS, or QUOTATION POINTS, distinguish words that are

exhibited as those of an other author or speaker. A quotation within a

quotation, is usually marked with single points; which, when both are

employed, are placed within the others: as, "And again he saith, 'Rejoice,

ye Gentiles, with his people.'"--\_Rom.\_, xv, 10.

XV. [[]] The CROTCHETS, or BRACKETS, generally inclose some correction or

explanation, but sometimes the sign or subject to be explained; as, "He

[Mr. Maurice] was of a different opinion."--\_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 213.

XVI. [Fist] The INDEX, or HAND, points out something remarkable, or what

the reader should particularly observe.

XVII. [\*] The ASTERISK, or STAR, [Dagger] the OBELISK, or DAGGER, [Double

dagger] the DIESIS, or DOUBLE DAGGER, and [||] the PARALLELS, refer to

marginal notes. The SECTION also [§], and the PARAGRAPH [¶], are often used

for marks of reference, the former being usually applied to the fourth, and

the latter to the sixth note on a page; for, by the usage of printers,

these signs are commonly introduced in the following order: 1, \*; 2,

[Dagger]; 3, [Double dagger]; 4, §; 5, ||; 6, ¶; 7, \*\*; 8,

[Dagger][Dagger]; &c. Where many references are to be made, the \_small

letters\_ of the alphabet, or the \_numerical figures\_, in their order, may

be conveniently used for the same purpose.

XVIII. [[Asterism]] The ASTERISM, or THREE STARS, a sign not very often

used, is placed before a long or general note, to mark it as a note,

without giving it a particular reference.

XIX. [,] The CEDILLA is a mark borrowed from the French, by whom it is

placed under the letter \_c\_, to give it the sound of \_s\_, before \_a\_ or

\_o\_; as in the words, "façade," "Alençon." In Worcester's Dictionary, it is

attached to three other letters, to denote their soft sounds: viz., "[,G]

as J; [,S] as Z; [,x] as gz."

[Fist][Oral exercises in punctuation should not be confined to the

correction of errors. An application of its principles to points rightly

inserted, is as easy a process as that of ordinary syntactical parsing, and

perhaps as useful. For this purpose, the teacher may select a portion of

this grammar, or of any well-pointed book, to which the foregoing rules

and explanations may be applied by the pupil, as reasons for the points

that occur.]

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PUNCTUATION.--MIXED EXAMPLES OF ERROR.

"The principal stops are the following:--

The Comma (,) the semicolon (;) the colon (:) the period, or fall stop (.)

the note of interrogation (?) the note of exclamation (!) the parenthesis

() and the dash (--) [.]"--\_Bullions, E. Gram., p. 151; Pract. Les.\_, p.

127. "The modern punctuation in Latin is the same as in English. The marks

employed, are the \_Comma\_ (,); \_Semicolon\_ (;); \_Colon\_ (:); \_Period\_ (.);

\_Interrogation\_ (?); \_Exclamation\_ (!)."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, p. 3.

"Plato reproving a young man for playing at some childish game; you chide

me, says the youth, for a trifling fault. Custom, replied the philosopher,

is no trifle. And, adds Montagnie, he was in the right; for our vices begin

in infancy."--\_Home's Art of Thinking\_, (N. Y. 1818,) p. 54.

"A merchant at sea asked the skipper what death his father died? 'My

father,' says the skipper, my grandfather, and my great-grandfather, were

all drowned. 'Well,' replies the merchant, and are not you afraid of being

drowned too?'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 135.

"The use of inverted comma's derives from France, where one Guillemet was

the author of them; [and] as an acknowledgement for the improvement his

countrymen call them after his name GUILLEMETS."--\_History of Printing\_,

(London, 1770,) p. 266.

"This, however, is seldem [sic--KTH] if ever done unless the word following

the possessive begins with \_s\_; thus we do not say, 'the prince' feather,'

but, 'the prince's feather.'"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 17. "And this

phrase must mean \_the feather of the prince\_ but \_princesfeather\_ written

as one word is the name of a plant: a species of amaranth."--See \_Key\_.

"Böëthius soon had the satisfaction of obtaining the highest honour his

country could bestow."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_ 12mo., p. 279. "Boethius soon

had," &c.--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. ii., p. 83.

"When an example, a quotation, or a speech is introduced, it is separated

from the rest of the sentence either by a semicolon or a colon; as, 'The

scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity, in these words;

\_God is love.\_'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 116. "Either the colon or semicolon

may be used when an example, a quotation, or a speech is introduced; as,

'Always remember this ancient maxim; \_Know thyself.\_' 'The scriptures give

us an amiable representation of the Deity, in these words: \_God is

love.\_'"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 155.

"The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon [, must begin with

a capital]; as, always remember this ancient maxim: '\_Know\_ thyself.'"--

\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 159; \_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 106. [Lennie has

\_"Always"\_ with a capital.] "The first word of a quotation, introduced

after a colon, or \_when it is\_ in a direct form: as, 'Always remember this

ancient maxim: \_Know thyself\_.' 'Our great lawgiver says, Take up thy cross

daily, and follow me.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 284. "8. The first word

of a quotation, \_introduced after a colon\_, or \_when it is\_ in a direct

form. EXAMPLES.--'Always remember this ancient maxim, 'Know thyself.' 'Our

great Lawgiver says, Take up thy cross daily, and follow me.'"--\_Weld's

Gram., Abridged.\_, p. 17

"Tell me in whose house do you live."--\_N. Butler's Gram.\_, p. 55. "He,

that acts wisely, deserves praise."--\_Ib.\_, p. 50 "He, who steals my purse,

steals trash."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51. "The antecedent is sometimes omitted, as,

'Who steals my purse, steals trash;' that is, \_he\_ who, or \_person\_

who."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51. "Thus, 'Whoever steals my purse steals trash;'

'Whoever does no good does harm.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 53 "Thus, 'Whoever sins will

suffer.' This means that any one without exception who sins will

suffer."--\_Ib.\_, p. 53.

"Letters form syllables, syllables words, words sentences, and sentences,

combined and connected form discourse."--\_Cooper's Plain and Practical

Gram.\_, p. 1. "A letter which forms a perfect sound, when uttered by

itself, is called a vowel, as: \_a, e, i\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 1. "A proper noun is

the name of an individual, as: John; Boston: Hudson; America."--\_Ib.\_, p.

17.

"Many men have been capable of doing a wise thing, more a cunning thing,

but very few a generous thing."--\_P. Davis's Gram.\_, p. 96. "In the place

of an ellipsis of the verb a comma must be inserted."--\_Ib.\_, p. 121. "A

common noun unlimited by an article is sometimes understood in its broadest

acceptation: thus, '\_Fishes\_ swim' is understood to mean \_all\_ fishes.

'\_Man\_ is mortal,' \_all\_ men."--\_Ib.\_, p. 13.

"Thus those sounds formed principally by the throat are called \_gutturals\_.

Those formed principally by the palate are called \_palatals\_. Those formed

by the teeth, \_dentals\_--those by the lips, \_labials\_--those by the nose,

\_nasals\_, &c."--\_P. Davis's Gram.\_, p. 113.

"Some adjectives are compared irregularly; as, \_Good, better, best. Bad,

worse, worst. Little, less, least.\_"--\_Felton's Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 63;

Ster. Ed., p. 66.

"Under the fourth head of grammar, therefore, four topics will be

considered, viz. PUNCTUATION, ORTHOEPY, FIGURES, and VERSIFICATION."--

\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 161.

"Direct her onward to that peaceful shore,

Where peril, pain and death are felt no more!"

\_Falconer's Poems\_, p. 136; \_Barrett's New Gram.\_, p. 94

BAD ENGLISH BADLY POINTED.

LESSON I.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"Discoveries of such a character are sometimes made in grammar also, and

such, too, is often their origin and their end."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p.

191.

"\_Traverse\_, (to cross.) To deny what the opposite party has alleged. To

traverse an indictment, &c. is to deny it."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 216.

"The \_Ordinal\_ [numerals] denote the \_order\_ or \_succession\_ in which any

number of persons or things is mentioned, as \_first, second, third,

fourth\_, &c."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 22.

"Nouns have three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD. The First person is

the speaker, the Second is the one spoken to, the Third is the one spoken

of."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 44.

"Nouns have three cases, NOMINATIVE, POSSESSIVE, and OBJECTIVE. The

relation indicated by the case of a noun includes three ideas, viz: those

of \_subject, object\_, and \_ownership\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 45.

"In speaking of animals that are of inferior size, or whose sex is not

known or not regarded, they are often considered as without sex: thus, we

say of a \_cat 'it\_ is treacherous,' of an infant '\_it\_ is beautiful,' of a

\_deer 'it\_ was killed.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 39.

"When \_this\_ or \_these, that\_ or \_those\_, refers to a preceding sentence;

\_this\_, or \_these\_, refers to the latter member or term; \_that\_, or

\_those\_, to the former."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 136; see \_Lowth's Gram.\_,

p. 102.

"The rearing of them [i. e. of plants] became his first care, their fruit

his first food, and marking their kinds his first knowledge."--\_N. Butler's

Gram.\_, p. 44.

"After the period used with abbreviations we should employ other points, if

the construction demands it; thus, after Esq. in the last example, there

should be, besides a period, a comma."--\_Ib.\_, p. 212.

"In the plural, the verb is the same in all the persons; and hence the

principle in \_Rem.\_ 5, under Rule iii. [that the first or second person

takes precedence,] is not applicable to verbs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 158.

"Rex and Tyrannus are of very different characters. The one rules his

people by laws to which they consent; the other, by his absolute will and

power: \_that\_ is called freedom, this, \_tyranny\_."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p.

190.

"A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, which can be known, or

mentioned, as: George; London; America; goodness; charity."--\_Cooper's

Plain and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 17.

"Etymology treats of the classification of words; their various

modifications and derivations."--\_Day's School Gram.\_, p. 9. "To punctuate

correctly implies a thorough acquaintance with the meaning of words and

phrases, as well as of all their corresponding connexions"--\_W. Day's

Punctuation\_, p. 31.

"All objects which belong to neither the male nor female kind are called

neuter."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 57. "All objects, which belong to

neither the male nor female kind, are said to be of the neuter

gender."--\_Weld's Gram., Abridged\_, p. 51.

"The Analysis of the Sounds in the English language presented in the

preceding statements are sufficiently exact for the purpose in hand. Those

who wish to pursue it further can consult Dr. Rush's admirable work, 'The

Philosophy of the Human Voice.'"--\_Fowlers E. Gram.\_, 1850, §65. "Nobody

confounds the name of \_w\_ or \_y\_ with their sound or phonetic

import."--\_Ib.\_, §74.

"Order is Heaven's first law; and this confest,

Some are and must be, greater than the rest."--\_Ib.\_, p. 96.

LESSON II.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"In adjectives of one syllable, the Comparative is formed by adding \_-er\_

to the positive; and the Superlative by adding \_-est\_; as, \_sweet, sweeter,

sweetest\_."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 19.

"In monosyllables the comparative is formed by adding \_er\_ or \_r\_ to the

positive, and the superlative by adding \_est\_ or \_st\_; as, \_tall, taller,

tallest; wise, wiser, wisest\_."--\_Id., Pract. Les.\_, p. 24.

"By this method the confusion and unnecessary labor occasioned by studying

grammars in these languages, constructed on different principles is

avoided, the study of one is rendered a profitable introduction to the

study of another, and an opportunity is furnished to the enquiring student

of comparing the languages in their grammatical structure, and seeing at

once wherein they agree, and wherein they differ."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E.

Gram.\_, Pref. to 5th Ed., p. vii.

"No larger portion should be assigned for each recitation than the class

can easily master, and till this is done, a new portion should not be given

out."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. viii. "The acquisitions made in every new lesson

should be rivetted and secured by repeated \_revisals\_."--\_Id., ib.\_, p.

viii.

"The personal pronouns may be parsed briefly thus; \_I\_, the first personal

pronoun, masculine (or feminine), singular, the nominative. \_His\_, the

third personal pronoun, masculine, singular, the possessive,

&c."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 23: \_Pract. Les.\_, p. 28.

"When the male and female are expressed by distinct terms; as, \_shepherd,

shepherdess\_, the masculine term has also a general meaning, expressing

both male and female, and is always to be used when the office, occupation,

profession, &c., and not the sex of the individual, is chiefly to be

expressed. The feminine term is used only when the discrimination, of sex

is indispensably necessary. Thus, when it is said 'the Poets of this

country are distinguished by correctness of taste,' the term 'Poet' clearly

includes both male and female writers of poetry."--\_Id., E. Gram.\_, p. 12;

\_his Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, 24.

"Nouns and pronouns, connected by conjunctions, must be in the same

cases."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 78. "Verbs, connected by conjunctions,

must be in the same moods and tenses, and, when in the subjunctive present,

they must be in the same form."--\_Ib.\_, p. 112.

"This will habituate him to reflection--exercise his judgment on the

meaning of the author, and without any great effort on his part, impress

indelibly on his memory, the rules which he is required to give. After the

exercises under the rule have been gone through as directed in the note

page 96, they may be read over again in a corrected state the pupil making

an emphasis on the correction made, or they may be presented in writing at

the next recitation."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_, 2d Ed. Revised and

Cor., p. viii.

"Man, but for \_that\_, no action \_could\_ attend

And but for \_this\_, be \_thoughtful\_ to no end."

--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, Pref. p. 5.

LESSON III.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"'Johnson the bookseller and stationer,' indicates that the bookseller and

the stationer are epithets belonging to the same person; 'the bookseller

and the stationer' would indicate that they belong to different

persons."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 127.

"\_Past\_ is an adjective; \_passed\_, the past tense or perfect participle of

the verb, and they ought not, as is frequently done, to be confounded with

each other."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 148.

"Not only the nature of the thoughts and sentiments, but the very selection

and arrangement of the words, gives English poetry a character, which

separates it widely from common prose."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 178.

"Men of sound, discriminating, and philosophical minds--men prepared for

the work by long study, patient investigation, and extensive acquirements,

have labored for ages to improve and perfect it, and nothing is hazarded in

asserting, that should it be unwisely abandoned, it will be long before

another equal in beauty, stability and usefulness, be produced in its

stead."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 191.

"The Article \_The\_, on the other hand, is used to restrict, and is

therefore termed \_Definite\_. Its proper office is to call the attention to

a particular individual or class, or to any number of such, and is used

with nouns in either the singular or plural number."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 193.

"Hence also the infinitive mood, a participle, a member of a sentence, or a

proposition, forming together the subject of discourse, or the object of a

verb or preposition, and being the name of an act or circumstance, are in

construction, regarded as nouns, and are usually called 'substantive

phrases;' as '\_To play\_ is pleasant,' '\_His being an expert dancer\_ is no

recommendation,' 'Let your motto be \_Honesty is the best policy\_.'"--\_Id.,

ib.\_, p. 194.

"In accordance with his definition, Murray has divided verbs into three

classes, \_Active, Passive\_, and \_Neuter\_, and includes in the first class

\_transitive\_ verbs only, and in the last all verbs used

intransitively"--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 200.

"Moreover, as the name of the speaker or the person spoken to is seldom

expressed, (the pronouns \_I\_ and \_thou\_ being used in its stead,) a noun is

very seldom in the first person, not often in the second, and almost never

in either, unless it be a proper noun, or a common noun

personified."--\_Bullions, Pract. Les.\_, p. 13.

"In using the above exercises it will save much time, which is all

important, if the pupil be taught to say every thing belonging to the nouns

in the fewest words possible, and to say them always in the same order as

above."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 21.

"In any phrase or sentence the adjectives qualifying a noun may generally

be found by prefixing the phrase 'What kind of,' to the noun in the form of

a question; as, What kind of a horse? What kind of a stone? What kind of a

way? The word containing the answer to the question is an

adjective."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 22.

"In the following exercise let the pupil first point out the nouns, and

then the adjectives; and tell how he knows them to be so."--\_Id., ib.\_, p.

23.

"In the following sentences point out the improper ellipsis. Show why it is

improper, and correct it."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 124.

"SINGULAR PRONOUNS. PLURAL PRONOUNS.

1. I--am being smitten. 1. We--are being smitten.

2. Thou--art being smitten. 2. Ye \_or\_ you--are being smitten.

3. He--is being smitten. 3. They--are being smitten."

\_Wright's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 98.

CHAPTER II--UTTERANCE.

Utterance Is the art or act of vocal expression. It includes the principles

of articulation, of pronunciation, and of elocution.

SECTION I.--OF ARTICULATION.

Articulation is the forming of words; by the voice, with reference to their

component letters and sounds.

ARTICLE I.--OF THE DEFINITION.

Articulation differs from pronunciation, in having more particular regard

to the elements of words, and in not embracing accent[470]. A recent author

defines it thus: "ARTICULATION is the act of forming, with the organs of

speech, the elements of vocal language."--\_Comstock's Elocution\_, p. 16.

And again: "A good articulation is the \_perfect\_ utterance of the elements

of vocal language."--\_Ibid.\_

An other describes it more elaborately thus: "ARTICULATION, in language, is

the forming of the human voice, accompanied by the breath, in some few

consonants, into the simple and compound sounds, called vowels, consonants,

and diphthongs, by the assistance of the organs of speech; and the uniting

of those vowels, consonants, and diphthongs, together, so as to form

syllables and words, and constitute spoken language."--\_Bolles's Dict.,

Introd.\_, p. 7.

ARTICLE II--OF GOOD ARTICULATION.

Correctness in articulation is of such importance, that without it speech

or reading becomes not only inelegant, but often absolutely unintelligible.

The opposite faults are mumbling, muttering, mincing, lisping, slurring,

mouthing, drawling, hesitating, stammering, misreading, and the like. "A

good articulation consists in giving every letter in a syllable its due

proportion of sound, according to the most approved custom of pronouncing

it; and in making such a distinction between the syllables of which words

are composed, that the ear shall without difficulty acknowledge their

number; and perceive, at once, to which syllable each letter belongs. Where

these points are not observed, the articulation is proportionably

defective."--\_Sheridan's Rhetorical Grammar\_, p. 50.

Distinctness of articulation depends, primarily, upon the ability to form

the simple elements, or sounds of letters, by the organs of speech, in the

manner which the custom of the language demands; and, in the next place,

upon the avoidance of that precipitancy of utterance, which is greater than

the full and accurate play of the organs will allow. If time be not given

for the full enunciation of any word which we attempt to speak, some of the

syllables will of course be either lost by elision or sounded confusedly.

Just articulation gives even to a feeble voice greater power and reach than

the loudest vociferation can attain without it. It delivers words from the

lips, not mutilated, distorted, or corrupted, but as the acknowledged

sterling currency of thought;--"as beautiful coins newly issued from the

mint, deeply and accurately impressed, perfectly finished, neatly struck by

the proper organs, distinct, sharp, in due succession, and of due

weight."--\_Austin's Chironomia\_, p. 38.

OBS.--The principles of articulation constitute the chief exercise of all

those who are learning either to speak or to read. So far as they are

specifically taught in this work, they will be found in those sections

which treat of the powers of the letters.

SECTION II.--OF PRONUNCIATION.

Pronunciation, as distinguished from elocution, or delivery, is the

utterance of words taken separately. The correct pronunciation of words, or

that part of grammar which teaches it, is frequently called \_Orthoëpy\_.

Pronunciation, or orthoëpy, requires a knowledge of the just powers of the

letters in all their combinations; of the distinction of quantity in vowels

and syllables; and of the force and seat of the accent.

ARTICLE I--OF THE POWERS OF LETTERS.

The JUST POWERS of the letters, are those sounds which are given to them by

the best readers. These are to be learned, as reading is learned, partly

from example, and partly from such books as show or aid the pronunciation

of words.

It is to be observed, however, that considerable variety, even in the

powers of the letters, is produced by the character and occasion of what is

uttered. It is noticed by Walker, that, "Some of the vowels, when neither

under the accent, nor closed by a consonant, have a longer or a shorter, an

opener or a closer sound, according to the solemnity or familiarity, the

deliberation or rapidity of our delivery."--\_Pronouncing Dict., Preface\_,

p. 4. In cursory speech, or in such reading as imitates it, even the best

scholars utter many letters with quicker and obscurer sounds than ought

ever to be given them in solemn discourse. "In public speaking," says

Rippingham, "every word should be uttered, as though it were spoken singly.

The solemnity of an oration justifies and demands such scrupulous

distinctness. That careful pronunciation which would be ridiculously

pedantic in colloquial intercourse, is an essential requisite of good

elocution."--\_Art of Public Speaking\_, p. xxxvii.

ARTICLE II--OF QUANTITY.

QUANTITY, or TIME in pronunciation, is the measure of sounds or syllables

in regard to their duration; and, by way of distinction, is supposed ever

to determine them to be either \_long\_ or \_short\_.[471]

The absolute time in which syllables are uttered, is very variable, and

must be different to suit different subjects, passions, and occasions; but

their relative length or shortness may nevertheless be preserved, and

generally must be, especially in reciting poetry.

Our long syllables are chiefly those which, having sounds naturally capable

of being lengthened at pleasure, are made long by falling under some stress

either of accent or of emphasis. Our short syllables are the weaker sounds,

which, being the less significant words, or parts of words, are uttered

without peculiar stress.

OBS.--As quantity is chiefly to be regarded in the utterance of poetical

compositions, this subject will be farther considered under the head of

Versification.

ARTICLE III.--OF ACCENT.

ACCENT, as commonly understood, is the peculiar stress which we lay upon

some particular syllable of a word, whereby that syllable is distinguished

from and above the rest; as, \_gram'-mar, gram-ma'-ri-an\_.

Every word of more than one syllable, has one of its syllables accented;

and sometimes a compound word has two accents, nearly equal in force; as,

\_e'ven-hand'ed, home'-depart'ment\_.[472]

Besides the \_chief\_ or \_primary\_ accent, when the word is long, for the

sake of harmony or distinctness, we often give a \_secondary\_ or less

forcible accent to an other syllable; as, to the last of

\_tem'-per-a-ture'\_, and to the second of \_in dem'-ni-fi-ca'-tion\_.

"Accent seems to be regulated, in a great measure, by etymology. In words

from the Saxon, the accent is generally on the root; in words from the

learned languages, it is generally on the termination; and if to these we

add the different accent we lay on some words, to distinguish them from

others, we seem to have the three great principles of accentuation; namely,

the radical, the terminational, and the distinctive."--\_Walker's

Principles\_, No. 491; \_L. Murray's Grammar\_, 8vo, p. 236.

A full and open pronunciation of the long vowel sounds, a clear

articulation of the consonants, a forcible and well-placed accent, and a

distinct utterance of the unaccented syllables, distinguish the elegant

speaker.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The pronunciation of the English language is confessedly very

difficult to be mastered. Its rules and their exceptions are so numerous,

that few become thoroughly acquainted with any general system of them. Nor,

among the different systems which have been published, is there any which

is worthy in all respects to be accounted a STANDARD. And, if we appeal to

custom, the custom even of the best speakers is far from an entire

uniformity. Perhaps the most popular directory on this subject is Walker's

Critical Pronouncing Dictionary. The "Principles of English Pronunciation,"

which this author has furnished, occupy fifty-six closely-printed octavo

pages, and are still insufficient for the purpose of teaching our orthoëpy

by rule. They are, however, highly valuable, and ought to be consulted by

every one who wishes to be master of this subject. In its vocabulary, or

stock of words, this Dictionary is likewise deficient. Other lexicographers

have produced several later works, of high value to the student; and,

though no one has treated the subject of pronunciation so elaborately as

did Walker, some may have given the results of their diligence in a form

more useful to the generality of their consulters. Among the good ones, is

the Universal and Critical Dictionary of Joseph E. Worcester.

OBS. 2.--Our modern accentuation of Greek or Latin words is regulated

almost wholly by the noted rule of Sanctius, which Walker has copied and

Englished in the Introduction to his Key, and of which the following is a

new version or paraphrase, never before printed:

RULE FOR THE ACCENTING OF LATIN.

\_One\_ syllable has stress of course,

And words of \_two\_ the \_first\_ enforce;

In \_longer\_ words the \_penult\_ guides,

Its \_quantity\_ the point decides;

If \_long\_, 'tis \_there\_ the accent's due,

If \_short\_, accent the \_last but two\_;

For accent, in a Latin word,

Should ne'er go higher than the third.

This rule, or the substance of it, has become very important by long and

extensive use; but it should be observed, that stress on monosyllables is

more properly \_emphasis\_ than \_accent\_; and that, in English, the accent

governs quantity, rather than quantity the accent.

SECTION III.--OF ELOCUTION.

Elocution is the graceful utterance of words that are arranged into

sentences, and that form discourse.

Elocution requires a knowledge, and right application, of emphasis, pauses,

inflections, and tones.

ARTICLE I--OF EMPHASIS.

EMPHASIS is the peculiar stress of voice which we lay upon some particular

word or words in a sentence, which are thereby distinguished from the rest

as being more especially significant.[473]

As accent enforces a syllable, and gives character to a word; so emphasis

distinguishes a word, and often determines the import of a sentence. The

right placing of accent, in the utterance of words, is therefore not more

important, than the right placing of emphasis, in the utterance of

sentences. If no emphasis be used, discourse becomes vapid and inane; if no

accent, words can hardly be recognized as English.

"Emphasis, besides its other offices, is the great regulator of quantity.

Though the quantity of our syllable is fixed, in words separately

pronounced, yet it is mutable, when [the] words are [ar]ranged in[to]

sentences; the long being changed into short, the short into long,

according to the importance of the words with regard to meaning: and, as it

is by emphasis only, that the meaning can be pointed out, emphasis must be

the regulator of the quantity."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 246.[474]

"Emphasis changes, not only the quantity of words and syllables, but also,

in particular cases, the sent of the accent. This is demonstrable from the

following examples: 'He shall \_in\_crease, but I shall \_de\_crease.' 'There

is a difference between giving and \_for\_giving.' 'In this species of

composition, \_plaus\_ibility is much more essential than \_prob\_ability.' In

these examples, the emphasis requires the accent to be placed on syllables

to which it does not commonly belong."--\_Ib.\_, p. 247.

In order to know what words are to be made emphatic, the speaker or reader

must give constant heed to \_the sense\_ of what he utters; his only sure

guide, in this matter, being a just conception of the force and spirit of

the sentiment which he is about to pronounce. He must also guard against

the error of multiplying emphatic words too much; for, to overdo in this

way, defeats the very purpose for which emphasis is used. To manage this

stress with exact propriety, is therefore one of the surest evidences both

of a quick understanding, and of a delicate and just taste.

ARTICLE II.--OF PAUSES.

Pauses are cessations in utterance, which serve equally to relieve the

speaker, and to render language intelligible and pleasing.

Pauses are of three kinds: first, \_distinctive\_ or \_sentential\_

pauses,--such as form the divisions required by the sense; secondly,

\_emphatic\_ or \_rhetorical\_ pauses,--such as particularly call the hearer's

attention to something which has been, or is about to be, uttered; and

lastly, \_poetical\_ or \_harmonic\_ pauses,--such as are peculiar to the

utterance of metrical compositions.

The duration of the distinctive pauses should be proportionate to the

degree of connexion between the parts of the discourse. The shortest are

long enough for the taking of some breath; and it is proper, thus to

relieve the voice at every stop, if needful. This we may do, slightly at a

comma, more leisurely at a semicolon, still more so at a colon, and

completely at a period.

Pauses, whether in reading or in public discourse, ought always to be

formed after the manner in which we naturally form them in ordinary,

sensible conversation; and not after the stiff, artificial manner which

many acquire at school, by a mere mechanical attention to the common

punctuation.

Forced, unintentional pauses, which accidentally divide words that ought to

be spoken in close connexion, are always disagreeable; and, whether they

arise from exhaustion of breath, from a habit of faltering, or from

unacquaintance with the text, they are errors of a kind utterly

incompatible with graceful elocution.

Emphatic or rhetorical pauses, the kind least frequently used, may be made

immediately before, or immediately after, something which the speaker

thinks particularly important, and on which he would fix the attention of

his audience. Their effect is similar to that of a strong emphasis; and,

like this, they must not be employed too often.

The harmonic pauses, or those which are peculiar to poetry, are of three

kinds: the \_final pause\_, which marks the end of each line; the \_cæsural\_

or \_divisional pause\_, which commonly divides the line near the middle; and

the \_minor rests\_, or \_demi-cæsuras\_, which often divide it still further.

In the reading of poetry, these pauses ought to be observed, as well as

those which have reference to the sense; for, to read verse exactly as if

it were prose, will often rob it of what chiefly distinguishes it from

prose. Yet, at the same time, all appearance of singsong, or affected tone,

ought to be carefully guarded against.

ARTICLE III.--OF INFLECTIONS.

INFLECTIONS are those peculiar variations of the human voice, by which a

continuous sound is made to pass from one note, key, or pitch, into an

other. The passage of the voice from a lower to a higher or shriller note,

is called the \_rising\_ or \_upward\_ inflection. The passage of the voice

from a higher to a lower or graver note, is called tbe \_falling\_ or

\_downward\_ inflection. These two opposite inflections may be heard in the

following examples: 1. The rising, "Do you mean to \_gó\_?" 2. The falling,

"\_When\_ will you \_gò\_?"

In general, questions that may be answered by \_yes\_ or \_no\_, require the

rising inflection; while those which demand any other answer, must be

uttered with the falling inflection. These slides of the voice are not

commonly marked in writing, or in our printed books; but, when there is

occasion to note them, we apply the acute accent to the former, and the

grave accent to the latter.[475]

A union of these two inflections upon the same syllable, is called a

\_circumflex\_, a \_wave\_, or a "\_circumflex inflection\_." When the slide is

first downward and then upward, it is called the \_rising circumflex\_, or

"the \_gravo-acute circumflex\_;" when first upward and then downward, it is

denominated the \_falling circumflex\_, or "the \_acuto-grave circumflex\_." Of

these complex inflections of the voice, the emphatic words in the following

sentences may be uttered as examples: "And it shall go \_h~ard\_ but I will

\_ûse\_ the information."--"\_Ô\_! but he \_pa~used\_ upon the brink."

When a passage is read without any inflection, the words are uttered in

what is called a \_monotone\_; the voice being commonly pitched at a grum

note, and made to move for the time, slowly and gravely, on a perfect

level.

"Rising inflections are far more numerous than falling inflections; the

former constitute the main body of oral language, while the latter are

employed for the purposes of emphasis, and in the formation of cadences.

Rising inflections are often emphatic; but their emphasis is weaker than

that of falling inflections."--\_Comstock's Elocution\_, p. 50.

"Writers on Elocution have given numerous rules for the regulation of

inflections; but most of these rules are better calculated to make \_bad\_

readers than good ones. Those founded on the construction of sentences

might, perhaps, do credit to a \_mechanic\_, but they certainly do none to an

\_elocutionist\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 51.

"The reader should bear in mind that a falling inflection gives more

importance to a word than a rising inflection. Hence it should never be

employed merely for the sake of \_variety\_; but for \_emphasis\_ and

\_cadences\_. Neither should a rising inflection be used for the sake of mere

'\_harmony\_,' where a falling inflection would better express the meaning of

the author. The \_sense\_ should, in \_all\_ cases, determine the direction of

inflections."--\_Ib.\_

\_Cadence\_ is a fall of the voice, which has reference not so much to pitch

as to force, though it may depress both; for it seems to be generally

contrasted with emphasis,[476] and by some is reprehended as a fault.

"Support your voice steadily and firmly," says Rippingham, "and pronounce

the concluding words of the sentence with force and vivacity, rather than

with a languid cadence."--\_Art of Speaking\_, p. 17. The pauses which L.

Murray denominates the suspending and the closing pause, he seems to have

discriminated chiefly by the inflections preceding them, if he can be said

to have distinguished them at all. For he not only teaches that the former

may sometimes be used at the close of a sentence, and the latter sometimes

where "the sense is not completed;" but, treating cadence merely as a

defect, adds the following caution: "The closing pause must not be

confounded with that fall of the voice, or \_cadence\_, with which many

readers uniformly finish a sentence. Nothing is more destructive of

propriety and energy than this habit. The tones and inflections of the

voice at the close of a sentence, ought to be diversified, according to the

general nature of the discourse, and the particular construction and

meaning of the sentence."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 250; 12mo, p. 200.

ARTICLE IV.--OF TONES.

Tones are those modulations of the voice which depend upon the feelings of

the speaker. They are what Sheridan denominates "the language of emotions."

And it is of the utmost importance, that they be natural, unaffected, and

rightly adapted to the subject and to the occasion; for upon them, in a

great measure, depends all that is pleasing or interesting in elocution.

"How much of the propriety, the force, and [the] grace of discourse, must

depend on these, will appear from this single consideration; that to almost

every sentiment we utter, more especially to every strong emotion, nature

has adapted some peculiar tone of voice; insomuch, that he who should tell

another that he was angry, or much grieved, in a tone that did not suit

such emotions, instead of being believed, would be laughed at."--\_Blair's

Rhet.\_, p. 333.

"The different passions of the mind must be expressed by different tones of

the voice. \_Love\_, by a soft, smooth, languishing voice; \_anger\_, by a

strong, vehement, and elevated voice; \_joy\_, by a quick, sweet, and clear

voice; \_sorrow\_, by a low, flexible, interrupted voice; \_fear\_, by a

dejected, tremulous, hesitating voice; \_courage\_, by a full, bold, and loud

voice; and \_perplexity\_, by a grave and earnest voice. In \_exordiums\_, the

voice should be low, yet clear; in \_narrations\_, distinct; in \_reasoning\_,

slow; in \_persuasions\_, strong: it should thunder in \_anger\_, soften in

\_sorrow\_, tremble in \_fear\_, and melt in \_love\_."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 121.

OBS.--Walker observes, in his remarks on the nature of Accent and Quantity,

"As to the tones of the passions, which are so many and various, these, in

the opinion of one of the best judges in the kingdom, are \_qualities\_ of

sound, occasioned by certain vibrations of the organs of speech,

independent \_on\_ [say \_of\_] high, low, loud, soft, quick, slow, forcible,

or feeble: which last may not improperly be called different \_quantities\_

of sound."--\_Walker's Key\_, p. 305.

CHAPTER III.--FIGURES.

A Figure, in grammar, is an intentional deviation from the ordinary

spelling, formation, construction, or application, of words. There are,

accordingly, figures of Orthography, figures of Etymology, figures of

Syntax, and figures of Rhetoric. When figures are judiciously employed,

they both strengthen and adorn expression. They occur more frequently in

poetry than in prose; and several of them are merely poetic licenses.

SECTION I.--FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

A Figure of Orthography is an intentional deviation from the ordinary or

true spelling of a word. The principal figures of Orthography are two;

namely, \_Mi-me'-sis\_ and \_Ar'-cha-ism\_.

EXPLANATIONS.

I. \_Mimesis\_ is a ludicrous imitation of some mistake or mispronunciation

of a word, in which the error is mimicked by a false spelling, or the

taking of one word for another; as, "\_Maister\_, says he, have you any

\_wery\_ good \_weal\_ in you \_vâllet?\_"--\_Columbian Orator\_, p. 292. "Ay, he

was \_porn\_ at Monmouth, captain Gower."--\_Shak.\_ "I will \_description\_ the

matter to you, if you be \_capacity\_ of it."--\_Id.\_

"\_Perdigious!\_ I can hardly stand."

--LLOYD: \_Brit. Poets\_, Vol. viii, p. 184.

II. An \_Archaism\_ is a word or phrase expressed according to ancient usage,

and not according to our modern orthography; as, "\_Newe grene chese of

smalle clammynes comfortethe a hotte stomake.\_"--T. PAYNEL: \_Tooke's

Diversions\_, ii, 132. "He \_hath holpen\_ his servant Israel."--\_Luke\_, i,

54.

"With him was rev'rend Contemplation \_pight\_,

Bow-bent with \_eld\_, his beard of snowy hue."--\_Beattie\_.

OBS.--Among the figures of this section, perhaps we might include the

foreign words or phrases which individual authors now and then adopt in

writing English; namely, the \_Scotticisms\_, the \_Gallicisms\_, the

\_Latinisms\_, the \_Grecisms\_, and the like, with which they too often

garnish their English style. But these, except they stand as foreign

quotations, in which case they are exempt from our rules, are in general

offences against the \_purity\_ of our language; and it may therefore be

sufficient, just to mention them here, without expressly putting any of

them into the category of grammatical figures.

SECTION II.--FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

A Figure of Etymology is an intentional deviation from the ordinary

formation of a word. The principal figures of Etymology are eight; namely,

\_A-phoer'-e-sis, Pros'-the-sis, Syn'-co-pe, A-poc'-o-pe, Par-a-go'-ge,

Di-oer'-e-sis, Syn-oer'-e-sis\_, and \_Tme'-sis\_.

EXPLANATIONS.

I. \_Aphæresis\_ is the elision of some of the initial letters of a word: as,

\_'gainst\_, for \_against\_; \_'gan\_, for \_began\_; \_'neath\_, for \_beneath\_;

\_'thout\_, for \_without\_.

II. \_Prosthesis\_ is the prefixing of an expletive syllable to a word: as,

\_a\_down, for \_down\_; \_ap\_paid, for \_paid\_; \_be\_strown, for \_strown\_;

\_ev\_anished, for \_vanished\_; \_y\_clad, for \_clad\_.

III. \_Syn'copè\_ is the elision of some of the middle letters of a word:

as, \_med'cine\_, for \_medicine\_; \_e'en\_, for \_even\_; \_o'er\_, for \_over\_;

\_conq'ring\_, for \_conquering\_; \_se'nnight\_, for \_sevennight\_.

IV. \_Apoc'opè\_ is the elision of some of the final letters of a word: as,

\_tho'\_ for \_though\_; \_th'\_, for \_the\_; \_t'other\_, for \_the other\_; \_thro'\_,

for \_through\_.

V. \_Parago'gè\_ is the annexing of an expletive syllable to a word: as,

\_Johnny\_, for \_John\_; \_deary\_, for \_dear\_; \_withouten\_, for \_without\_.

VI. \_Diæresis\_ is the separating of two vowels that might be supposed to

form a diphthong: as, \_coöperate\_, not \_cooperate\_; \_aëronaut\_, not

\_æronaut\_; \_or'thoëpy\_, not \_orthoepy\_.

VII. \_Synæresis\_ is the sinking of two syllables into one: as, \_seest\_, for

\_sëest\_; \_tacked\_, for \_tack-ed\_; \_drowned\_, for \_drown-ed\_; \_spoks't\_, for

\_spok-est\_; \_show'dst\_, for \_show-edst\_; \_'tis\_, for \_it is\_; \_I'll\_, for

\_I will\_.

VIII. \_Tmesis\_ is the inserting of a word between the parts of a compound,

or between two words which should be united if they stood together: as, "On

\_which\_ side \_soever\_."--\_Rolla\_. "\_To\_ us \_ward\_;" "\_To\_ God

\_ward\_."--\_Bible\_. "The \_assembling\_ of ourselves \_together\_."--\_Id.\_ "With

\_what\_ charms \_soe'er\_ she will."--\_Cowper\_. "So \_new\_ a \_fashion'd\_

robe."--\_Shak.\_ "Lament the \_live\_ day \_long\_."--\_Burns\_.

OBS.--In all our pronunciation, except that of the solemn style, such

verbal or participial terminations as can be so uttered, are usually sunk

by \_synæresis\_ into mere modifications of preceding syllables. The

terminational consonants, if not uttered with one vowel, must be uttered

with an other. When, therefore, a vowel is entirely suppressed in

pronunciation, (whether retained in writing or not,) the consonants

connected with it, necessarily fall into an other syllable: thus, \_tried,

triest, sued, suest, loved, lovest, mov'd, mov'st\_, are monosyllables; and

\_studied, studiest, studi'dst, argued, arguest, argu'dst\_, are

dissyllables; except in solemn discourse, in which the \_e\_ is generally

retained and made vocal.

SECTION III.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A Figure of Syntax is an intentional deviation from the ordinary

construction of words. The principal figures of Syntax are five; namely,

\_El-lip'-sis, Ple'-o-nasm, Syl-lep'-sis, En-al'-la-ge\_, and

\_Hy-per'-ba-ton.\_ EXPLANATIONS.

I. \_Ellipsis\_ is the omission of some word or words which are necessary to

complete the construction, but not necessary to convey the meaning. Such

words are said, in technical phrase, to be \_understood\_;[477] because they

are received as belonging to the sentence, though they are not uttered.

Of compound sentences, a vast many are more or less elliptical; and

sometimes, for brevity's sake, even the most essential parts of a simple

sentence, are suppressed;[478] as, "But more of this hereafter."--\_Harris's

Hermes\_, p. 77. This means, "But \_I shall say\_ more of this hereafter."

"Prythee, peace."--\_Shak.\_ That is, "\_I pray\_ thee, \_hold thou thy\_ peace."

There may be an omission of any of the parts of speech, or even of a whole

clause, when this repeats what precedes; but the omission of mere articles

or interjections can scarcely constitute a proper ellipsis, because these

parts of speech, wherever they are really necessary to be recognized, ought

to be expressed.

EXAMPLES OF ELLIPSIS SUPPLIED.

1. Of the ARTICLE:--"A man and [\_a\_] woman."--"The day, [\_the\_] month, and

[\_the\_] year."--"She gave me an apple and [\_a\_] pear, for a fig and [\_an\_]

orange."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 170.

2. Of the NOUN:--"The common [\_law\_] and the statute law."--"The twelve

[\_apostles\_]."--"The same [\_man\_] is he."--"One [\_book\_] of my books."--"A

dozen [\_bottles\_] of wine."--"Conscience, I say; not thine own

[\_conscience\_], but [\_the conscience\_] of the other."--\_1 Cor.\_, x, 29.

"Every moment subtracts \_from\_ [\_our lives\_] what it adds \_to\_ our

lives."--\_Dillwyn's Ref.\_, p. 8. "Bad actions mostly lead to worse"

[\_actions\_].--\_Ib.\_, p. 5.

3. Of the ADJECTIVE:--"There are subjects proper for the one, and not

[\_proper\_] for the other."--\_Kames.\_ "A just weight and [\_a just\_] balance

are the Lord's."--\_Prov.\_, xvi, 11. True ellipses of the adjective alone,

are but seldom met with.

4. Of the PRONOUN:--"Leave [\_thou\_] there thy gift before the altar, and go

[\_thou\_] thy way; first be [\_thou\_] reconciled to thy brother, and then

come [\_thou\_] and offer [\_thou\_] thy gift,"--\_Matt.\_, v, 24. "Love [\_ye\_]

your enemies, bless [\_ye\_] them that curse you, do [\_ye\_] good to them that

hate you."--\_Ib.\_, v. 44. "Chastisement does not always immediately follow

error, but [\_it\_] sometimes comes when [\_it is\_] least expected."--

\_Dillwyn, Ref.\_, p. 31. "Men generally put a greater value upon the favours

[\_which\_] they bestow, than upon those [\_which\_] they receive."--\_Art of

Thinking\_, p. 48. "Wisdom and worth were all [\_that\_] he had."--\_Allen's

Gram.\_, p. 294.

5. Of the VERB:--"The world is crucified unto me, and I [\_am crucified\_]

unto the world."--\_Gal.\_, vi, 14. "Hearts should not [\_differ\_], though

heads may, differ."--\_Dillwyn\_, p. 11. "Are ye not much better than they"

[\_are\_]?--\_Matt.\_, vi, 26. "Tribulation worketh patience; and patience

[\_worketh\_] experience; and experience [\_worketh\_] hope."--\_Romans\_, v, 4.

"Wrongs are engraved on marble; benefits [\_are engraved\_] on sand."--\_Art

of Thinking\_, p. 41. "To whom thus Eve, yet sinless" [\_spoke\_].--\_Milton\_.

6. Of the PARTICIPLE:--"That [\_being\_] o'er, they part."--"Animals of

various natures, some adapted to the wood, and some [\_adapted\_] to the

wave."--\_Melmoth, on Scripture\_, p. 13.

"His knowledge [\_being\_] measured to his state and place,

His time [\_being\_] a moment, and a point [\_being\_] his space."--\_Pope\_.

7. Of the ADVERB:--"He can do this independently of me, if not

[\_independently\_] of you."

"She shows a body rather than a life;

A statue, [\_rather\_] than a breather."

--\_Shak., Ant. and Cleo.\_, iii, 3.

8. Of the CONJUNCTION:--"But the fruit of the Spirit is love, [\_and\_] joy,

[\_and\_] peace, [\_and\_] long suffering, [\_and\_] gentleness, [\_and\_]

goodness, [\_and\_] faith, [\_and\_] meekness, [\_and\_] temperance."--\_Gal.\_, v,

22. The repetition of the conjunction is called \_Polysyndeton\_; and the

omission of it, \_Asyndeton\_.

9. Of the PREPOSITION:--"It shall be done [\_on\_] this very day."--"We shall

set off [\_at\_] some time [\_in\_] next month."--"He departed [\_from\_] this

life."--"He gave [\_to\_] me a book."--"We walked [\_through\_] a mile."--"He

was banished [\_from\_] the kingdom."--\_W. Allen\_. "He lived like [\_to\_] a

prince."--\_Wells\_.

10. Of the INTERJECTION:--"Oh! the frailty, [\_oh!\_] the wickedness of

men."--"Alas for Mexico! and [\_alas\_] for many of her invaders!"

11. Of PHRASES or CLAUSES:--"The active commonly do more than they are

bound to do; the indolent [\_commonly do\_] less" [\_than they are bound to

do\_].--"Young men, angry, mean less than they say; old men, [\_angry, mean\_]

more" [\_than they say\_].--"It is the duty of justice, not to injure men;

[\_it is the duty\_] of modesty, not to offend them."--\_W. Allen\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Grammarians in general treat of ellipsis without \_defining\_ it;

and exhibit such rules and examples as suppose our language to be a

hundred-fold more elliptical than it really is.[479] This is a great error,

and only paralleled by that of a certain writer elsewhere noticed, who

denies the existence of all ellipsis whatever. (See Syntax, Obs. 24th on

Rule 22d.) Some have defined this figure in a way that betrays a very

inaccurate notion of what it is: as, "ELLIPSIS is \_when\_ one or more words

are wanting \_to complete the sense\_."--\_Adam's Lat. and Eng. Gram.\_, p.

235; \_Gould's\_, 229. "ELLIPSIS is the omission of one or more words

necessary \_to complete the sense\_."--\_Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_, p. 265. These

definitions are decidedly worse than none; because, if they have any

effect, they can only mislead. They absurdly suggest that every elliptical

sentence lacks a part of its own meaning! Ellipsis is, in fact, the mere

omission or absence of certain \_suggested words\_; or of words that may be

spared from utterance, \_without defect in the sense\_. There never can be an

ellipsis of any thing which is either unnecessary to the construction or

necessary to the sense; for to say what we mean and nothing more, never can

constitute a deviation from the ordinary grammatical construction of words.

As a figure of Syntax, therefore, the \_ellipsis\_ can only be of such words

as are so evidently suggested to the reader, that the writer is as fully

answerable for them as if he had written them.

OBS. 2.--To suppose an ellipsis where there is none, or to overlook one

where it really occurs, is to pervert or mutilate the text, in order to

accommodate it to the parser's or reader's ignorance of the principles of

syntax. There never can be either a general uniformity or a

self-consistency in our methods of parsing, or in our notions of grammar,

till the true nature of an ellipsis is clearly ascertained; so that the

writer shall distinguish it from a \_blundering omission\_ that impairs the

sense, and the reader or parser be barred from an \_arbitrary insertion\_ of

what would be cumbrous and useless. By adopting loose and extravagant ideas

of the nature of this figure, some pretenders to learning and philosophy

have been led into the most whimsical and opposite notions concerning the

grammatical construction of language. Thus, with equal absurdity, \_Cardell\_

and \_Sherman\_, in their \_Philosophic Grammars\_, attempt to confute the

doctrines of their predecessors, by supposing \_ellipses\_ at pleasure. And

while the former teaches, that prepositions do not govern the objective

case, but that every verb is transitive, and governs at least two objects,

expressed or \_understood\_, its own and that of a preposition: the latter,

with just as good an argument, contends that no verb is transitive, but

that every objective case is governed by a preposition expressed or

\_understood\_. A world of nonsense for lack of a \_definition!\_

II. PLEONASM is the introduction of superfluous words; as, "But of the tree

of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat \_of it\_."--\_Gen.\_,

ii, 17. This figure is allowable only, when, in animated discourse, it

abruptly introduces an emphatic word, or repeats an idea to impress it more

strongly; as, "\_He\_ that hath ears to hear, let him hear."--\_Bible\_. "All

ye inhabitants of the world, and \_dwellers on the earth\_."--\_Id.\_ "There

shall not be left one stone upon another \_that shall not be thrown

down\_."--\_Id.\_ "I know thee \_who thou art\_."--\_Id.\_ A Pleonasm, as perhaps

in these instances, is sometimes impressive and elegant; but an unemphatic

repetition of the same idea, is one of the worst faults of bad writing.

OBS.--Strong passion is not always satisfied with saying a thing once, and

in the fewest words possible; nor is it natural that it should be. Hence

repetitions indicative of intense feeling may constitute a beauty of the

highest kind, when, if the feeling were wanting, or supposed to be so, they

would be reckoned intolerable tautologies. The following is an example,

which the reader may appreciate the better, if he remembers the context:

"At her feet he bowed, he fell, he lay down; at her feet he bowed, he fell;

where he bowed, there he fell down dead."--\_Judges\_, v, 27.

III. SYLLEPSIS is agreement formed according to the figurative sense of a

word, or the mental conception of the thing spoken of, and not according to

the literal or common use of the term; it is therefore in general connected

with some figure of rhetoric: as "The \_Word\_ was made flesh, and dwelt

amongst us, and we beheld \_his\_ glory."--\_John\_, i, 14. "Then Philip went

down to the \_city\_ of Samaria, and preached Christ unto \_them\_."--\_Acts\_,

viii, 5. "The \_city\_ of London \_have\_ expressed \_their\_ sentiments with

freedom and firmness."--\_Junius\_, p. 159. "And I said [to backsliding

\_Israel\_,] after \_she\_ had done all these things, Turn \_thou\_ unto me; but

\_she\_ returned not: and \_her\_ treacherous \_sister Judah\_ saw it."--\_Jer.\_,

iii, 7. "And he surnamed them \_Boanerges, which is\_, The sons of

thunder."--\_Mark\_, iii, 17.

"While \_Evening\_ draws \_her\_ crimson curtains round."--\_Thomson\_, p. 63.

"The \_Thunder\_ raises \_his\_ tremendous voice."--\_Id.\_, p. 113.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--To the parser, some explanation of that agreement which is

controlled by tropes, is often absolutely necessary; yet, of our modern

grammarians, none appear to have noticed it; and, of the oldest writers,

few, if any, have given it the rank which it deserves among the figures of

syntax. The term \_Syllepsis\_ literally signifies \_conception,

comprehension\_, or \_taking-together\_. Under this name have been arranged,

by the grammarians and rhetoricians, many different forms of unusual or

irregular agreement; some of which are quite too unlike to be embraced in

the same class, and not a few, perhaps, too unimportant or too ordinary to

deserve any classification as figures. I therefore omit some forms of

expression which others have treated as examples of \_Syllepsis\_, and define

the term with reference to such as seem more worthy to be noticed as

deviations from the ordinary construction of words. Dr. Webster, allowing

the word two meanings, explains it thus: "SYLLEPSIS, \_n.\_ [\_Gr.\_

syllæpsis.] 1. In \_grammar\_, a figure by which we conceive the sense of

words otherwise than the words import, and construe them according to the

intention of the author; otherwise called \_substitution\_.[480] 2. The

agreement of a verb or adjective, not with the word next to it, but with

the most worthy in the sentence."--\_American Dict.\_

OBS. 2.--In short, \_Syllepsis\_ is a \_conception\_ of which grammarians have

\_conceived\_ so variously, that it has become doubtful, what definition or

what application of the term is now the most appropriate. Dr. Prat, in

defining it, cites one notion from Sanctius, and adds an other of his own,

thus: "SYLLEPSIS, id est, \_Conceptio\_, est quoties Generibus, aut Numeris

videntur voces discrepare. Sanct. l. 4. c. 10. Vel sit Comprehensio

indignioris sub digniore."--\_Prat's Lat. Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 164. John

Grant ranks it as a mere form or species of \_Ellipsis\_, and expounds it

thus: "\_Syllepsis\_ is \_when\_ the adjective or verb, joined to different

substantives, agrees with the more worthy."--\_Institutes of Lat. Gram.\_, p.

321. Dr. Littleton describes it thus: "SYLLLEPSIS [sic--KTH],--A

Grammatical figure \_where\_ two Nominative Cases singular of different

persons are joined to a Verb plural."--\_Latin Dict.\_, 4to. By Dr. Morell it

is explained as follows: "SYLLEPSIS,--A grammatical figure, \_where\_ one is

put for many, and many for one, Lat. \_Conceptio\_."--\_Morell's Ainsworth's

Dict.\_, 4to, Index Vitand. IV. \_Enállagè\_ is the use of one part of

speech, or of one modification, for an other. This figure borders closely

upon solecism; and, for the stability of the language, it should be

sparingly indulged. There are, however, several forms of it which can

appeal to good authority: as,

1. "\_You know\_ that \_you are\_ Brutus, that \_say\_ this."--\_Shak.\_

2. "They fall \_successive\_[ly], and \_successive\_[ly] rise."--\_Pope\_.

3. "Than \_whom\_ [who] a fiend more fell is nowhere found."--\_Thomson\_.

4. "Sure some disaster has \_befell\_" [befallen].--\_Gay\_.

5. "So furious was that onset's shock,

Destruction's gates at once \_unlock\_" [unlocked].--\_Hogg\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--\_Enallage\_ is a Greek word, signifying \_commutation, change\_, or

\_exchange. "Enallage\_, in a general sense, is the change of words, or of

their accidents, one for another."--\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 322. The word

\_Antimeria\_, which literally expresses \_change of parts\_, was often used by

the old grammarians as synonymous with \_Enallage\_; though, sometimes, the

former was taken only for the substitution of one \_part of speech\_ for an

other, and the latter, only, or more particularly, for a change of

\_modification\_--as of mood for mood, tense for tense, or number for number.

The putting of one \_case\_ for an other, has also been thought worthy of a

particular name, and been called \_Antiptosis\_. But \_Enallage\_, the most

comprehensive of these terms, having been often of old applied to all such

changes, reducing them to one head, may well be now defined as above, and

still applied, in this way, to all that we need recognize as figures. The

word \_Enallaxis\_, preferred by some, is of the same import. "ENALLAXIS, so

called by \_Longinus\_, or ENALLAGE, is an \_Exchange\_ of \_Cases, Tenses,

Persons, Numbers\_, or \_Genders\_."--\_Holmes's Rhet.\_, Book i, p. 57.

"An ENALLAXIS changes, when it pleases,

Tenses, or Persons, Genders, Numbers, Cases."--\_Ib.\_, B. ii, p. 50.

OBS. 2.--Our most common form of \_Enallage\_ is that by which a single

person is addressed in the plural number. This is so fashionable in our

civil intercourse, that some very polite grammarians improperly dispute its

claims to be called a \_figure\_; and represent it as being more ordinary,

and even more literal than the regular phraseology; which a few of them, as

we have seen, would place among the \_archaisms\_. The next in frequency, (if

indeed it can be called a different form,) is the practice of putting \_we\_

for \_I\_, or the plural for the singular in the \_first person\_. This has

never yet been claimed as literal and regular syntax, though the usages

differ in nothing but commonness; both being honourably authorized, both

still improper on some occasions, and, in both, the \_Enallage\_ being alike

obvious. Other varieties of this figure, not uncommon in English, are the

putting of adjectives for adverbs, of adverbs for nouns, of the present

tense for the preterit, and of the preterit for the perfect participle.

But, in the use of such liberties, elegance and error sometimes approximate

so nearly, there is scarcely an obvious line between them, and grammarians

consequently disagree in making the distinction.

OBS. 3.--Deviations of this kind are, \_in general\_, to be considered

solecisms; otherwise, the rules of grammar would be of no use or authority.

\_Despauter\_, an ancient Latin grammarian, gave an improper latitude to this

figure, or to a species of it, under the name of \_Antiptosis\_; and

\_Behourt\_ and others extended it still further. But \_Sanctius\_ says,

"\_Antiptosi grammaticorum nihil imperitius, quod figmentum si esset verum,

frustra quæreretur, quem casum verba regerent\_." And the \_Messieurs De Port

Royal\_ reject the figure altogether. There are, however, some changes of

this kind, which the grammarian is not competent to condemn, though they do

not accord with the ordinary principles of construction.

V. \_Hyperbaton\_ is the transposition of words; as, "He wanders \_earth

around\_."--\_Cowper\_ "\_Rings the world\_ with the vain stir."--\_Id. "Whom\_

therefore ye ignorantly worship, \_him declare I\_ unto you."--\_Acts\_, xvii,

23. "'\_Happy\_', says \_Montesquieu, 'is that nation\_ whose annals are

tiresome.'"--\_Corwin, in Congress\_, 1847. This figure is much employed in

poetry. A judicious use of it confers harmony, variety, strength, and

vivacity upon composition. But care should be taken lest it produce

ambiguity or obscurity, absurdity or solecism.

OBS.--A confused and intricate arrangement of words, received from some of

the ancients the name of \_Syn'chysis\_, and was reckoned by them among the

figures of grammar. By some authors, this has been improperly identified

with \_Hyper'baton\_, or elegant inversion; as may be seen under the word

\_Synchysis\_ in Littleton's Dictionary, or in Holmes's Rhetoric, at page

58th. \_Synchysis\_ literally means \_confusion\_, or \_commixtion\_; and, in

grammar, is significant only of some poetical jumble of words, some verbal

\_kink\_ or \_snarl\_, which cannot be grammatically resolved or disentangled:

as,

"\_Is piety\_ thus \_and\_ pure \_devotion\_ paid?"

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. xi, l. 452.

"An ass will with his long ears fray

The flies that tickle him away;

But man delights to have \_his ears

Blown maggots in by\_ flatterers."

--\_Butler's Poems\_, p. 161.

SECTION IV.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

A Figure of Rhetoric is an intentional deviation from the ordinary

application of words. Several of this kind of figures are commonly called

\_Tropes\_, i.e., \_turns\_; because certain words are turned from their

original signification to an other.[481]

Numerous departures from perfect simplicity of diction, occur in almost

every kind of composition. They are mostly founded on some similitude or

relation of things, which, by the power of imagination, is rendered

conducive to ornament or illustration.

The principal figures of Rhetoric are sixteen; namely, \_Sim'-i-le,

Met'-a-phor, Al'-le-gor-y, Me-ton'-y-my, Syn-ec'-do-che, Hy-per'-bo-le,

Vis'-ion, A-pos'-tro-phe, Per-son'-i-fi-ca'-tion, Er-o-te'-sis,

Ec-pho-ne'-sis, An-tith'-e-sis, Cli'-max, I'-ro-ny, A-poph'-a-sis\_, and

\_On-o-ma-to-poe'-ia.\_

EXPLANATIONS.

I. A \_Simile\_ is a simple and express comparison; and is generally

introduced by \_like, as\_, or \_so\_: as, "Such a passion is \_like falling in

love with a sparrow flying over your head\_; you have but one glimpse of

her, and she is out of sight."--\_Colliers Antoninus\_. "Therefore they shall

be \_as the morning cloud\_, and \_as the early dew\_ that passeth away; \_as

the chaff\_ that is driven with the whirlwind out of the floor, and \_as the

smoke\_ out of the chimney."--\_Hosea\_, xiii.

"At first, \_like thunder's distant tone\_,

The rattling din came rolling on."--\_Hogg\_.

"Man, \_like the generous vine\_, supported lives;

The strength he gains, is from th' embrace he gives."--\_Pope\_.

OBS.--Comparisons are sometimes made in a manner sufficiently intelligible,

without any express term to point them out. In the following passage, we

have a triple example of what seems the \_Simile\_, without the usual

sign--without \_like, as\_, or \_so\_: "Away with all tampering with such a

question! Away with all trifling with the man in fetters! \_Give a hungry

man a stone, and tell what beautiful houses are made of it;--give ice to a

freezing man, and tell him of its good properties in hot weather;--throw a

drowning man a dollar, as a mark of your good will\_;--but do not mock the

bondman in his misery, by giving him a Bible when he cannot read

it."--FREDERICK DOUGLASS: \_Liberty Bell\_, 1848.

II. A \_Metaphor\_ is a figure that expresses or suggests the resemblance of

two objects by applying either the name, or some attribute, adjunct, or

action, of the one, directly to the other; as,

1. "The LORD is my \_rock\_, and my \_fortress\_."--\_Psal.\_, xviii 1.

2. "His eye was \_morning's brightest ray\_."--\_Hogg\_.

3. "An \_angler\_ in the \_tides\_ of fame."--\_Id., Q. W.\_

4. "Beside him \_sleeps\_ the warrior's bow."--\_Langhorne\_.

5. "Wild fancies in his moody brain

\_Gambol'd unbridled\_ and unbound."--\_Hogg, Q. W.\_

6. "Speechless, and fix'd in all the \_death\_ of wo."--\_Thomson\_.

OBS.--A \_Metaphor\_ is commonly understoood [sic--KTH] to be only the

tropical use of some \_single word\_, or \_short phrase\_; but there seem to be

occasional instances of one \_sentence\_, or \_action\_, being used

metaphorically to represent an other. The following extract from the London

Examiner has several figurative expressions, which perhaps belong to this

head: "In the present age, nearly all people are critics, even to the pen,

and treat the gravest writers with a sort of \_taproom\_ familiarity. If they

are dissatisfied, \_they throw a short and spent cigar in the face of the

offender\_; if they are pleased, \_they lift the candidate off his legs, and

send him away with a hearty slap on the shoulder\_. Some of the shorter,

when they are bent to mischief, \_dip a twig in the gutter, and drag it

across our polished boots\_: on the contrary, when they are inclined to be

gentle and generous, \_they leap boisterously upon our knees, and kiss us\_

with bread-and-butter in their mouths."--WALTER SAVAGE LANDOR.

III. An \_Allegory\_ is a continued narration of fictitious events, designed

to represent and illustrate important realities. Thus the Psalmist

represents the \_Jewish nation\_ under the symbol of a \_vine\_: "Thou hast

brought a vine out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the heathen, and planted

it. Thou preparedst room before it, and didst cause it to take deep root;

and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the shadow of it, and

the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars."--\_Psalms\_, lxxx, 8-10.

OBS.--The \_Allegory\_, agreeably to the foregoing definition of it, includes

most of those similitudes which in the Scriptures are called \_parables\_; it

includes also the better sort of \_fables\_. The term \_allegory\_ is sometimes

applied to a \_true history\_ in which something else is intended, than is

contained in the words literally taken. See an instance in \_Galatians\_, iv,

24. In the \_Scriptures\_, the term \_fable\_ denotes an idle and groundless

story: as, in \_1 Timothy\_, iv, 7; and \_2 Peter\_, i, 16. It is now commonly

used in a better sense. "A \_fable\_ may be defined to be an analogical

narrative, intended to convey some moral lesson, in which irrational

animals or objects are introduced as speaking."--\_Philological Museum\_,

Vol. i, p. 280.

IV. A \_Metonymy\_ is a change of names between things related. It is

founded, not on resemblance, but on some such relation as that of \_cause\_

and \_effect\_, of \_progenitor\_ and \_posterity\_, of \_subject\_ and \_adjunct\_,

of \_place\_ and \_inhabitant\_, of \_container\_ and \_thing contained\_, or of

\_sign\_ and \_thing signified\_: as, (1.) "God is our \_salvation\_;" i.e.,

\_Saviour\_. (2.) "Hear, O \_Israel\_;" i.e. O \_ye descendants of\_ Israel. (3.)

"He was the \_sigh\_ of her secret soul;" i.e., the \_youth\_ she loved. (4.)

"They smote the \_city\_;" i.e., the \_citizens\_. (5.) "My son, give me thy

\_heart\_;" i.e., \_affection\_. (6.) "The \_sceptre\_ shall not depart from

Judah;" i.e., \_kingly power\_. (7.) "They have \_Moses and the prophets\_;"

i.e., \_their writings\_. See \_Luke\_, xvi, 29.

V. \_Synecdoche\_, (that is, \_Comprehension\_,) is the naming of a part for

the whole, or of the whole for a part; as, (1.) "This \_roof\_ [i.e., house]

protects you." (2.) "Now the \_year\_ [i.e., summer] is beautiful." (3.) "A

\_sail\_ [i.e., a ship or vessel] passed at a distance." (4.) "Give us this

day our daily \_bread\_;" i.e., food. (5.) "Because they have taken away \_my

Lord\_, [i.e., the body of Jesus,] and I know not where they have laid

him."--\_John\_. (6.) "The same day there were added unto them about three

thousand \_souls\_;" i.e., persons.--\_Acts\_. (7.) "There went out a decree

from Cæsar Augustus, that all \_the world\_ [i.e., the Roman empire] should

be taxed."--\_Luke\_, ii, 1.

VI. \_Hyperbole\_ is extravagant exaggeration, in which the imagination is

indulged beyond the sobriety of truth; as, "My little finger \_shall be

thicker\_ than my father's loins."--\_2 Chron.\_, x, 10. "When I washed my

\_steps with butter\_, and the rock poured me out \_rivers of oil\_."--\_Job\_,

xxix, 6.

"The sky \_shrunk upward with unusual dread\_,

And trembling Tiber \_div'd beneath his bed\_."--\_Dryden\_.

VII. \_Vision\_, or \_Imagery\_, is a figure by which the speaker represents

the objects of his imagination, as actually before his eyes, and present to

his senses; as,

"I see the dagger-crest of Mar!

I see the Moray's silver star

Wave o'er the cloud of Saxon war,

That up the lake comes winding far!"--\_Scott, L. L.\_, vi, 15.

VIII. \_Apostrophe\_ is a turning from the regular course of the subject,

into an animated address; as, "Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death!

where is thy sting? O Grave! where is thy victory?"--\_1 Cor.\_, xv, 55.

IX. \_Personification\_ is a figure by which, in imagination, we ascribe

intelligence and personality to unintelligent beings or abstract qualities;

as,

1. "The \_Worm\_, aware of his intent,

Harangued him thus, right eloquent."--\_Cowper\_.

2. "Lo, steel-clad \_War\_ his gorgeous standard rears!"--\_Rogers\_.

3. "Hark! \_Truth\_ proclaims, thy triumphs cease!"--\_Idem\_.

X. \_Erotesis\_ is a figure in which the speaker adopts the form of

interrogation, not to express a doubt, but, in general, confidently to

assert the reverse of what is asked; as, "Hast thou an arm like God? or

canst thou thunder with a voice like him?"--\_Job\_, xl, 9. "He that planted

the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not

see?"--\_Psalms\_, xciv, 9.

XI. \_Ecphonesis\_ is a pathetic exclamation, denoting some violent emotion

of the mind; as, "O liberty!--O sound once delightful to every Roman

ear!--O sacred privilege of Roman citizenship!--once sacred--now trampled

upon."--\_Cicero\_. "And I said, O that I had wings like a dove! for then

would I fly away, and be at rest."--\_Psalms\_, lv, 6.

XII. \_Antithesis\_ is a placing of things in opposition, to heighten their

effect by contrast; as, "I will talk of things \_heavenly\_, or things

\_earthly\_; things \_moral\_, or things \_evangelical\_; things \_sacred\_, or

things \_profane\_; things \_past\_, or things \_to come\_; things \_foreign\_, or

things \_at home\_; things more \_essential\_, or things \_circumstantial\_;

provided that all be done to our profit."--\_Bunyan, P. P.\_, p. 90.

"Contrasted faults through all his manners reign;

Though \_poor, luxurious\_; though \_submissive, vain\_;

Though \_grave\_, yet \_trifling\_; \_zealous\_, yet \_untrue\_;

And e'en \_in penance, planning sins\_ anew."--\_Goldsmith\_.

XIII. \_Climax\_ is a figure in which the sense is made to advance by

successive steps, to rise gradually to what is more and more important and

interesting, or to descend to what is more and more minute and particular;

as, "And besides this, giving all diligence, add to your faith, virtue; and

to virtue, knowledge; and to knowledge, temperance; and to temperance,

patience; and to patience, godliness; and to godliness, brotherly kindness;

and to brotherly kindness, charity."--\_2 Peter\_, i, 5.

XIV. \_Irony\_ is a figure in which the speaker sneeringly utters the direct

reverse of what he intends shall be understood; as, "We have, to be sure,

great reason to believe the modest man would not ask him for a debt, when

he pursues his life."--\_Cicero\_. "No doubt but ye are the people, and

wisdom shall die with you."--\_Job\_, xii, 2. "They must esteem learning

\_very much\_, when they see its professors used with such little

ceremony!"--\_Goldsmith's Essays\_, p. 150.

XV. \_Apophasis\_, or \_Paralipsis\_,[482] is a figure in which the speaker or

writer pretends to omit what at the same time he really mentions; as, "I

Paul have written it with mine own hand, I will repay it; albeit \_I do not

say to thee\_, how thou owest unto me even thine own self

besides."--\_Philemon\_, 19.

XVI. \_Onomatopoeia\_ is the use of a word, phrase, or sentence, the sound of

which resembles, or intentionally imitates, the sound of the thing

signified or spoken of: as, "Of a knocking at the door, \_Rat a tat

tat\_."--J. W. GIBBS: \_in Fowler's Gram.\_, p. 334. "\_Ding-dong! ding-dong!\_

Merry, merry, go the bells, \_Ding-dong! ding-dong\_!"--\_H. K. White\_.

"Bow'wow \_n.\_ The loud bark of a dog. \_Booth\_."--\_Worcester's Dict.\_ This

is often written separately; as, "\_Bow wow\_."--\_Fowler's Gram.\_, p. 334.

The imitation is better with three sounds: "\_Bow wow wow\_." The following

verses have been said to exhibit this figure:

"But when loud surges lash the sounding shore,

The hoarse rough verse should like the torrent roar."

--\_Pope, on Crit.\_, l. 369.

OBS.--The whole number of figures, which I have thought it needful to

define and illustrate in this work, is only about thirty. These are the

\_chief\_ of what have sometimes been made a very long and minute catalogue.

In the hands of some authors, Rhetoric is scarcely anything else than a

detail of figures; the number of which, being made to include almost every

possible form of expression, is, according to these authors, not less than

two hundred and forty. Of their \_names\_, John Holmes gives, in his index,

two hundred and fifty-three; and he has not all that might be quoted,

though he has more than there are of the forms named, or the figures

themselves. To find a learned name for every particular mode of expression,

is not necessarily conducive to the right use of language. It is easy to

see the inutility of such pedantry; and Butler has made it sufficiently

ridiculous by this caricature:

"For all a rhetorician's rules

Teach nothing but to name his tools."--\_Hudibras\_, P. i, C. i, l. 90.

SECTION V.--EXAMPLES FOR PARSING.

PRAXIS XIV.--PROSODICAL.

\_In the Fourteenth Praxis, are exemplified the several Figures of

Orthography, of Etymology, of Syntax, and of Rhetoric, which the parser may

name and define\_; \_and by it the pupil may also be exercised in relation to

the principles of Punctuation, Utterance, Analysis, or whatever else of

Grammar, the examples contain\_.

LESSON I.--FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

MIMESIS AND ARCHAISM.

"I \_ax'd\_ you what you had to sell. I am fitting out a \_wessel\_ for

\_Wenice\_, loading her with \_warious keinds\_ of \_prowisions\_, and

\_wittualling\_ her for a long \_woyage\_; and I want several \_undred\_ weight

of \_weal, wenison\_, &c., with plenty of \_inyons\_ and \_winegar\_, for the

\_preserwation\_ of \_ealth\_."--\_Columbian Orator\_, p. 292.

"God bless you, and lie still quiet (\_says\_ I) a bit longer, for my

\_shister's\_ afraid of ghosts, and would die on the spot with the fright,

\_was\_ she to see you come to life all on a sudden this way without the

least preparation."--\_Edgeworth's Castle Rackrent\_, p. 143.

"None [else are] so desperately \_evill\_, as they that may \_bee\_ good and

will not: or have \_beene\_ good and are not."--\_Rev. John Rogers\_, 1620. "A

Carpenter finds his work as \_hee\_ left it, but a Minister shall find his

\_sett\_ back. You need preach continually."--\_Id.\_

"Here \_whilom ligg'd\_ th' Esopus of his age,

But call'd by Fame, in soul \_ypricked\_ deep."--\_Thomson\_.

"It was a fountain of Nepenthe rare,

Whence, as Dan Homer sings, huge \_pleasaunce\_ grew."--\_Id.\_

LESSON II.--FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

APHÆRESIS, PROSTHESIS, SYNCOPE, APOCOPE, PARAGOGE, DIÆRESIS, SYNÆRESIS, AND

TMESIS.

"Bend \_'gainst\_ the steepy hill thy breast,

Burst down like torrent from its crest."--\_Scott\_.

"\_'Tis\_ mine to teach \_th'\_ inactive hand to reap

Kind nature's bounties, \_o'er\_ the globe \_diffus'd\_."--\_Dyer\_.

"Alas! alas! how impotently true

\_Th' aërial\_ pencil forms the scene anew."--\_Cawthorne\_.

"Here a deformed monster \_joy'd\_ to won,

Which on fell rancour ever was \_ybent\_."--\_Lloyd\_.

"\_Withouten\_ trump was proclamation made."--\_Thomson\_.

"The gentle knight, who saw their rueful case,

Let fall \_adown\_ his silver beard some tears.

'Certes,' quoth he, 'it is not \_e'en\_ in grace,

\_T'\_ undo the past and eke your broken years."--\_Id.\_

"Vain \_tamp'ring\_ has but \_foster'd\_ his disease;

\_'Tis desp'rate\_, and he sleeps the sleep of death."--\_Cowper\_.

"'I have a pain upon my forehead here'--

'Why \_that's\_ with watching; \_'twill\_ away again.'"--\_Shakspeare\_.

"I'll to the woods, among the happier brutes;

Come, \_let's\_ away; hark! the shrill horn resounds."--\_Smith\_.

"\_What\_ prayer and supplication \_soever\_ be made."--\_Bible\_. "By the grace

of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly \_to\_

you \_ward\_."--\_Ib.\_

LESSON III.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

FIGURE I.--ELLIPSIS.

"And now he faintly kens the bounding fawn,

And [--] villager [--] abroad at early toil."--\_Beattie\_.

"The cottage curs at [--] early pilgrim bark."--\_Id.\_

"'Tis granted, and no plainer truth appears,

Our most important [--] are our earliest years."--\_Cowper\_.

"To earn her aid, with fix'd and anxious eye,

He looks on nature's [--] and on fortune's course."--\_Akenside\_.

"For longer in that paradise to dwell,

The law [--] I gave to nature him forbids."--\_Milton\_.

"So little mercy shows [--] who needs so much."--\_Cowper\_.

"Bliss is the same [--] in subject, as [--] in king;

In [--] who obtain defence, and [--] who defend."--\_Pope\_.

"Man made for kings! those optics are but dim

That tell you so--say rather, they [--] for him."--\_Cowper\_.

"Man may dismiss compassion from his heart,

But God will never [-------]."--\_Id.\_

"Vigour [--] from toil, from trouble patience grows."--\_Beattie\_.

"Where now the rill melodious, [--] pure, and cool,

And meads, with life, and mirth, and beauty crown'd?"--\_Id.\_

"How dead the vegetable kingdom lies!

How dumb the tuneful [------------]!"--\_Thomson\_.

"Self-love and Reason to one end aspire,

Pain [--] their aversion, pleasure [--] their desire;

But greedy that its object would devour,

This [--] taste the honey, and not wound the flower."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON IV.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

FIGURE II.--PLEONASM.

"\_According\_ to their deeds, \_accordingly\_ he will \_repay\_, fury to his

adversaries, \_recompense\_ to his enemies; to the islands he will repay

recompense."--\_Isaiah\_, lix, 18. "Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove,

my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, \_and my locks with the drops

of the night\_."--\_Song of Sol.\_, v, 2. "Thou hast chastised me, \_and I was

chastised\_, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, \_and I

shall be turned\_; for thou art the Lord my God."--\_Jer.\_, xxxi, 18.

"Consider the \_lilies\_ of the field how \_they grow\_."--\_Matt.\_, vi, 28.

"\_He\_ that glorieth, let \_him\_ glory in the Lord."--\_2 Cor.\_, x, 17.

"\_He\_ too is witness, noblest of the train

That wait on man, the flight-performing horse."--\_Cowper\_.

FIGURE III.--SYLLEPSIS.

"'Thou art Simon the son of Jona: thou shalt be called \_Cephas:' which\_ is,

by interpretation a stone."--\_John\_, i, 42. "Thus saith the Lord of hosts,

'Behold, I will break the bow of \_Elam\_, the chief of \_their\_

might.'"--\_Jer.\_, xlix, 35. "Behold, I lay in Sion a \_stumbling-stone\_ and

\_rock\_ of offence: and whosoever believeth on \_him\_ shall not be

ashamed."--\_Rom.\_, ix, 33.

"Thus \_Conscience\_ pleads \_her\_ cause within the breast,

Though long rebell'd against, not yet suppressed."--\_Cowper\_.

"\_Knowledge\_ is proud that \_he\_ has learn'd so much;

\_Wisdom\_ is humble that \_he\_ knows no more."--\_Id.\_

"For those the \_race\_ of Israel oft forsook

\_Their\_ living \_strength\_, and unfrequented left

\_His\_ righteous altar, bowing lowly down

To bestial gods."--\_Milton, Paradise Lost\_, B. i, l. 432.

LESSON V.--FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

FIGURE IV.--ENALLAGE.

"Let me tell \_you\_, Cassius, \_you\_ yourself

\_Are\_ much condemned to have an itching palm,

To sell and mart \_your\_ offices for gold."--\_Shakspeare\_.

"Come, Philomelus; let us \_instant\_ go,

O'erturn his bow'rs, and lay his castle low."--\_Thomson\_.

"Then palaces shall rise; the joyful son

Shall finish what the short-liv'd sire \_begun\_"--\_Pope\_.

"Such was that temple built by Solomon,

Than \_whom\_ none richer reign'd o'er Israel."--\_Author\_.

"He spoke: with fatal eagerness we \_burn\_,

And \_quit\_ the shores, undestin'd to return."--\_Day\_.

"Still as he pass'd, the nations he \_sublimes\_."--\_Thomson\_.

"Sometimes, with early morn, he mounted \_gay\_."--\_Id.\_

"'I've lost a day'--the prince who nobly cried,

\_Had been\_ an emperor without his crown."--\_Young\_.

FIGURE V.--HYPERBATON.

"Such resting found \_the sole\_ of unblest feet."--\_Milton\_.

"Yet, though successless, \_will the toil\_ delight."--\_Thomson\_.

"Where, 'midst the changeful scen'ry ever new,

Fancy a thousand wondrous \_forms\_ descries."--\_Beattie\_.

"Yet so much bounty is in God, such grace,

That who advance his glory, not their own,

\_Them\_ he himself to glory will advance."--\_Milton\_.

"No quick \_reply\_ to dubious questions make;

Suspense and caution still prevent mistake."--\_Denham\_.

LESSON VI.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE I.--SIMILE.

"Human greatness is short and transitory, \_as the odour of incense in the

fire\_."--\_Dr. Johnson\_. "Terrestrial happiness is of short continuance:

\_the brightness of the flame is wasting its fuel, the fragrant flower is

passing away in its own odours\_."--\_Id.\_ "Thy nod is \_as the earthquake

that shakes the mountains\_; and thy smile, \_as the dawn of the vernal

day\_."--\_Id.\_

"\_Plants rais'd with tenderness are seldom strong\_;

Man's coltish disposition asks the thong;

And, without discipline, the fav'rite child,

\_Like a neglected forester\_, runs wild."--\_Cowper\_.

"As turns a flock of geese, and, on the green,

Poke out their foolish necks in awkward spleen,

(Ridiculous in rage!) to \_hiss\_, not \_bite,

So war their quills\_, when sons of \_dullness\_ write."--\_Young\_.

"Who can unpitying see the flowery race,

Shed by the morn, their new-flush'd bloom resign,

Before th' unbating beam? \_So fade the fair\_,

When fevers revel through their azure veins."--\_Thomson\_.

FIGURE II.--METAPHOR.

"Cathmon, thy name is a pleasant \_gale\_."--\_Ossian\_. "Rolled into himself

he flew, wide on the \_bosom of winds\_. The old \_oak felt\_ his departure,

and \_shook\_ its whistling \_head\_."--\_Id.\_ "Carazan gradually lost the

inclination to do good, as he acquired the power; as the \_hand of time\_

scattered \_snow\_ upon his head, the \_freeziny influence\_ [sic--KTH]

extended to his bosom."--\_Hawkesworth\_. "The sun \_grew weary\_ of gilding

the palaces of Morad; \_the clouds of sorrow\_ gathered round his head; and

\_the tempest of hatred\_ roared about his dwelling."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

LESSON VII.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE III.--ALLEGORY.

"But what think ye? A certain man had two sons; and he came to the first,

and said, 'Son, go work to-day in my vineyard.' He answered and said, 'I

will not;' but afterward he repented, and went. And he came to the second,

and said likewise. And he answered and said, 'I go, sir;' and went not.

Whether of them twain did the will of his father? They say unto him, 'The

first.'"--\_Matt.\_, xxi, 28-31.

FIGURE IV.--METONYMY.

"Swifter than a whirlwind, flies the leaden \_death\_."--\_Hervey\_. "'Be all

the dead forgot,' said Foldath's bursting \_wrath\_. 'Did not I fail in the

field?'"--\_Ossian\_.

"Their \_furrow\_ oft the stubborn glebe has broke."--\_Gray\_.

"Firm in his love, resistless in his hate,

His arm is \_conquest\_, and his frown is \_fate\_."--\_Day\_.

"At length the \_world\_, renew'd by calm repose,

Was strong for toil; the dappled morn arose."--\_Parnell\_.

"What modes of sight betwixt each wide extreme,

The mole's dim curtain and the lynx's \_beam\_!

Of hearing, from the \_life\_ that fills the flood,

To \_that\_ which warbles through the vernal wood!"--\_Pope\_.

FIGURE V.--SYNECDOCHE.

"'Twas then his \_threshold\_ first receiv'd a guest."--\_Parnell\_.

"For yet by swains alone the world he knew,

Whose \_feet\_ came wand'ring o'er the nightly dew."--\_Id.\_

"Flush'd by the spirit of the genial \_year\_,

Now from the virgin's cheek a fresher bloom

Shoots, less and less, the live carnation round."--\_Thomson\_.

LESSON VIII.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE VI.--HYPERBOLE.

"I saw their chief, tall as a rock of ice; his spear, the blasted fir; his

shield the rising moon; he sat on the shore, like a cloud of mist on the

hill."--\_Ossian\_.

"At which the universal host up sent

A shout, that tore Hell's concave, and beyond

Frighted the reign of Chaos and old Night."--\_Milton\_.

"Will all great Neptune's ocean wash this blood

Clean from my hand? No; this my hand will rather

The multitudinous seas incarnadine,

Making the green one red!"--\_Shakspeare\_.

FIGURE VII.--VISION.

"How mighty is their defence who reverently trust in the arm of God! How

powerfully do they contend who fight with lawful weapons! Hark! 'Tis the

voice of eloquence, pouring forth the living energies of the soul;

pleading, with generous indignation and holy emotion, the cause of injured

humanity against lawless might, and reading the awful destiny that awaits

the oppressor!--I see the stern countenance of despotism overawed! I see

the eye fallen, that kindled the elements of war! I see the brow relaxed,

that scowled defiance at hostile thousands! I see the knees tremble, that

trod with firmness the embattled field! Fear has entered that heart which

ambition had betrayed into violence! The tyrant feels himself a man, and

subject to the weakness of humanity!--Behold! and tell me, is that power

contemptible which can thus find access to the sternest hearts?"--\_Author\_.

FIGURE VIII.--APOSTROPHE.

"Yet still they breathe destruction, still go on,

Inhumanly ingenious to find out

New pains for life, new terrors for the grave;

Artificers of death! Still monarchs dream

Of universal empire growing up

From universal ruin. \_Blast the design\_,

\_Great God of Hosts! nor let thy creatures fall\_

\_Unpitied victims at Ambition's shrine\_."--\_Porteus\_.

LESSON IX.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE IX.--PERSONIFICATION.

"Hail, sacred \_Polity\_, by \_Freedom\_ rear'd!

Hail, sacred \_Freedom\_, when by \_Law\_ restrain'd!

Without you, what were man? A grov'ling herd,

In darkness, wretchedness, and want, enchain'd."--\_Beattie\_.

"Let cheerful \_Mem'ry\_, from her purest cells,

Lead forth a godly train of \_Virtues\_ fair,

Cherish'd in early youth, now paying back

With tenfold usury the pious care."--\_Porteus\_.

FIGURE X.--EROTESIS.

"He that chastiseth the heathen, shall not he correct? He that teacheth man

knowledge, shall not he know?"--\_Psalms\_, xciv, 10. "Can the Ethiopian

change his skin, or the leopard his spots? then may ye also do good, that

are accustomed to do evil."--\_Jeremiah\_, xiii, 23.

FIGURE XI.--ECPHONESIS. "O that my head were waters, and mine eyes a

fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night for the slain of the

daughter of my people! O that I had in the wilderness a lodging place of

way-faring men, that I might leave my people, and go from

them!"--\_Jeremiah\_, ix, 1.

FIGURE XII.--ANTITHESIS.

"On this side, modesty is engaged; on that, impudence: on this, chastity;

on that, lewdness: on this, integrity; on that, fraud: on this, piety; on

that, profaneness: on this, constancy; on that, fickleness: on this,

honour; on that, baseness: on this, moderation; on that, unbridled

passion."--\_Cicero\_.

"She, from the rending earth, and bursting skies,

Saw gods descend, and fiends infernal rise;

Here fix'd the dreadful, there the blest abodes;

Fear made her devils, and weak hope her gods."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON X.--FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

FIGURE XIII.--CLIMAX.

"Virtuous actions are necessarily approved by the awakened conscience; and

when they are approved, they are commended to practice; and when they are

practised, they become easy; and when they become easy, they afford

pleasure; and when they afford pleasure, they are done frequently; and when

they are done frequently, they are confirmed by habit: and confirmed habit

is a kind of second nature."--\_Inst.\_, p. 246.

"Weep all of every name: begin the wo,

Ye woods, and tell it to the doleful winds;

And doleful winds, wail to the howling hills;

And howling hills, mourn to the dismal vales;

And dismal vales, sigh to the sorrowing brooks;

And sorrwing brooks, weep to the weeping stream;

And weeping stream, awake the groaning deep;

And let the instrument take up the song,

Responsive to the voice--harmonious wo!"--\_Pollok\_, B. vi, l. 115.

FIGURE XIV.--IRONY.

"And it came to pass at noon, that Elijah mocked them, and said, 'Cry

aloud; for he is a god: either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is

in [\_on\_] a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked!'

"--\_1 Kings\_, xviii, 27.

"After the number of the days in which ye searched the land, even forty

days, each day for a year, shall ye bear your iniquities, even forty years;

and ye shall know my breach of promise."--\_Numbers\_, xiv, 34.

"Some lead a life unblamable and just,

Their own dear virtue their unshaken trust;

They never sin--or if (as all offend)

Some trivial slips their daily walk attend,

The poor are near at hand, the charge is small,

A slight gratuity atones for all."--\_Cowper\_.

FIGURE XV.--APOPHASIS, OR PARALIPSIS.

I say nothing of the notorious profligacy of his character; nothing of the

reckless extravagance with which he has wasted an ample fortune; nothing of

the disgusting intemperance which has sometimes caused him to reel in our

streets;--but I aver that he has not been faithful to our interests,--has

not exhibited either probity or ability in the important office which he

holds.

FIGURE XVI.--ONOMATOPOEIA.

[Fist][The following lines, from Swift's Poems, satirically mimick the

imitative music of a violin.]

"Now slowly move your fiddle-stick;

Now, tantan, tantantivi, quick;

Now trembling, shivering, quivering, quaking,

Set hoping hearts of Lovers aching."

"Now sweep, sweep the deep.

See Celia, Celia dies,

While true Lovers' eyes

Weeping sleep, Sleeping weep,

Weeping sleep, Bo-peep, bo-peep."

CHAPTER IV.--VERSIFICATION.

Versification is the forming of that species of literary composition which

is called \_verse\_; that is, \_poetry\_, or \_poetic numbers\_.

SECTION I.--OF VERSE.

Verse, in opposition to prose, is language arranged into metrical lines of

some determinate length and rhythm--language so ordered as to produce

harmony, by a due succession of poetic feet, or of syllables differing in

quantity or stress.

DEFINITIONS AND PRINCIPLES.

The \_rhythm\_ of verse is its relation of quantities; the modulation of its

numbers; or, the kind of metre, measure, or movement, of which it consists,

or by which it is particularly distinguished.

The \_quantity\_ of a syllable, as commonly explained, is the relative

portion of time occupied in uttering it. In poetry, every syllable is

considered to be either long or short. A long syllable is usually reckoned

to be equal to two short ones.

In the construction of English verse, long quantity coincides always with

the primary accent, generally also with the secondary, as well as with

emphasis; and short quantity, as reckoned by the poets, is found only in

unaccented syllables, and unemphatical monosyllabic words.[483]

The quantity of a syllable, whether long or short, does not depend on what

is called the long or the short sound of a vowel or diphthong, or on a

supposed distinction of accent as affecting vowels in some cases and

consonants in others, but principally on the degree of energy or loudness

with which the syllable is uttered, whereby a greater or less portion of

time is employed.

The open vowel sounds, which are commonly but not very accurately termed

\_long\_, are those which are the most easily protracted, yet they often

occur in the shortest and feeblest syllables; while, on the other hand, no

vowel sound, that occurs under the usual stress of accent or of emphasis,

is either so short in its own nature, or is so "quickly joined to the

succeeding letter," that the syllable is not one of long quantity.

Most monosyllables, in English, are variable in quantity, and may be made

either long or short, as strong or weak sounds suit the sense and rhythm;

but words of greater length are, for the most part, fixed, their accented

syllables being always long, and a syllable immediately before or after the

accent almost always short.

One of the most obvious distinctions in poetry, is that of rhyme and blank

verse. \_Rhyme\_ is a similarity of sound, combined with a difference:

occurring usually between the last syllables of different lines, but

sometimes at other intervals; and so ordered that the rhyming syllables

begin differently and end alike. \_Blank verse\_ is verse without rhyme.

The principal rhyming syllables are almost always long. Double rhyme adds

one short syllable; triple rhyme, two. Such syllables are redundant in

iambic and anapestic verses; in lines of any other sort, they are

generally, if not always, included in the measure.

A \_Stanza\_ is a combination of several verses, or lines, which, taken

together, make a regular division of a poem. It is the common practice of

good versifiers, to form all stanzas of the same poem after one model. The

possible variety of stanzas is infinite; and the actual variety met with in

print is far too great for detail.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Verse, in the broadest acceptation of the term, is poetry, or

metrical language, in general. This, to the eye, is usually distinguished

from prose by the manner in which it is written and printed. For, in very

many instances, if this were not the case, the reader would be puzzled to

discern the difference. The division of poetry into its peculiar lines, is

therefore not a mere accident. The word \_verse\_, from the Latin \_versus\_,

literally signifies a \_turning\_. Each full line of metre is accordingly

called a verse; because, when its measure is complete, the writer \_turns\_

to place another under it. A \_verse\_, then, in the primary sense of the

word with us, is, "A \_line\_ consisting of a certain succession of sounds,

and number of syllables."--\_Johnson, Walker, Todd, Bottes\_, and others. Or,

according to \_Webster\_, it is, "A poetic \_line\_, consisting of a certain

number of long and short syllables, disposed according to the rules of the

species of poetry which the author intends to compose."--See \_American

Dict.\_, 8vo.

OBS. 2.--If to settle the theory of English verse on true and consistent

principles, is as difficult a matter, as the manifold contrarieties of

doctrine among our prosodists would indicate, there can be no great hope of

any scheme entirely satisfactory to the intelligent examiner. The very

elements of the subject are much perplexed by the incompatible dogmas of

authors deemed skillful to elucidate it. It will scarcely be thought a hard

matter to distinguish true verse from prose, yet is it not well agreed,

wherein the difference consists: what the generality regard as the most

essential elements or characteristics of the former, some respectable

authors dismiss entirely from their definitions of both verse and

versification. The existence of quantity in our language; the dependence of

our rhythms on the division of syllables into long and short; the

concurrence of our accent, (except in some rare and questionable

instances,) with long quantity only; the constant effect of emphasis to

lengthen quantity; the limitation of quantity to mere duration of sound;

the doctrine that quantity pertains to all \_syllables\_ as such, and not

merely to vowel sounds; the recognition of the same general principles of

syllabication in poetry as in prose; the supposition that accent pertains

not to certain \_letters\_ in particular, but to certain \_syllables\_ as such;

the limitation of accent to stress, or percussion, only; the conversion of

short syllables into long, and long into short, by a change of accent; our

frequent formation of long syllables with what are called short vowels; our

more frequent formation of short syllables with what are called long or

open vowels; the necessity of some order in the succession of feet or

syllables to form a rhythm; the need of framing each line to correspond

with some other line or lines in length; the propriety of always making

each line susceptible of scansion by itself: all these points, so essential

to a true explanation of the nature of English verse, though, for the most

part, well maintained by some prosodists, are nevertheless denied by some,

so that opposite opinions may be cited concerning them all. I would not

suggest that all or any of these points are thereby made \_doubtful\_; for

there may be opposite judgements in a dozen cases, and yet concurrence

enough (if concurrence \_can\_ do it) to establish them every one.

OBS. 3.--An ingenious poet and prosodist now living,[484] Edgar Allan Poe,

(to whom I owe a word or two of reply,) in his "Notes upon English Verse,"

with great self-complacency, represents, that, "While much has been written

upon the structure of the Greek and Latin rhythms, comparatively \_nothing\_

has been done as regards the English;" that, "It may be said, indeed, we

are \_without a treatise\_ upon our own versification;" that "The very best"

\_definition\_ of versification[485] to be found in any of "\_our ordinary

treatises\_ on the topic," has "\_not a single point\_ which does not involve

an error;" that, "A \_leading deft\_ in each of these treatises is the

confining of the subject to mere \_versification\_, while metre, or rhythm,

in general, is the real question at issue;" that, "Versification is \_not\_

the art, but the \_act\_'--of making verses;" that, "A correspondence in the

\_length\_ of lines is by no means essential;" that "\_Harmony\_" produced "by

the regular alternation of syllables differing in quantity," does not

include "\_melody\_;" that "A \_regular alternation\_, as described, forms \_no

part\_ of the principle of metre:" that "There is no necessity of \_any

regularity\_ in the succession of \_feet\_;" that, "By consequence," he

ventures to "dispute the \_essentiality\_ of any alternation, regular or

irregular, of \_syllables\_ long and short:" that, "For \_anything more

intelligible\_ or \_more satisfactory\_ than this definition [i. e., G.

Brown's former definition of versification,] we shall look in vain in \_any

published\_ treatise upon the subject;" that, "So general and \_so total a

failure\_ can be referred only to some \_radical misconception\_;" that, "The

word \_verse\_ is derived (through \_versus\_ from the Latin \_verto, I turn\_,)

and \* \* \* \* it can be nothing but \_this derivation\_, which has led to \_the

error\_ of our writers upon prosody;" that, "\_It is this\_ which \_has seduced

them\_ into regarding the \_line\_ itself--the \_versus\_, or turning--as an

essential, or principle of metre;" that, "Hence the term \_versification\_

has been employed as sufficiently general, or inclusive, for treatises upon

rhythm in general;" that, "Hence, also, [comes] the precise catalogue of a

few varieties of English \_lines\_, when these varieties are, in fact, almost

without limit;" that, "\_I\_," the aforesaid Edgar Allan Poe, "\_shall dismiss

entirely\_, from the consideration of the principle of \_rhythm\_, the idea of

\_versification\_, or the construction of verse;" that, "In so doing, \_we\_

shall avoid \_a world of confusion\_;" that, "\_Verse\_ is, indeed, an

\_afterthought\_, or an \_embellishment\_, or an \_improvement\_, rather than an

element of rhythm;" that, "\_This fact\_ has induced the easy admission, into

the realms of Poesy, of \_such works\_ as the 'Télémaque' of Fenelon;"

because, forsooth, "In the elaborate modulation of their sentences, THEY

FULFIL THE IDEA OF METRE."--\_The Pioneer, a Literary and Critical Magazine\_

(Boston, March, 1843,) Vol. I, p. 102 to 105.

OBS. 4.--"Holding these things in view," continues this sharp connoisseur,

"the prosodist who rightly examines that which constitutes the external,

or most immediately \_recognisable\_, form of Poetry, will commence with the

definition of \_Rhythm\_. Now \_rhythm\_, from the Greek [\_Greek: arithmos\_],

\_number\_, is a term which, in its present application, very nearly \_conveys

its own idea\_. No more \_proper\_ word could be employed to present \_the

conception intended\_; for \_rhythm\_, in prosody, is, in its \_last analysis\_,

identical with \_time\_ in music. \_For this reason\_," says he, "I have used,

throughout this article, as synonymous with \_rhythm\_, the word \_metre\_ from

[Greek: metron], \_measure\_. Either the one or the other may be defined as

\_the arrangement of words into two or more consecutive, equal, pulsations

of time\_. These pulsations are \_feet\_. Two feet, at least, are requisite to

constitute a \_rhythm\_; just as, in mathematics, two units are necessary to

form [a] \_number\_.[486] The syllables of which the foot consists, when the

foot is not a syllable in itself, are subdivisions of the pulsations. No

equality is demanded in these subdivisions. It is only required that, so

far as regards two consecutive feet at least, the sum of the times of the

syllables in one, shall be equal to the sum of the times of the syllables

in the other. Beyond two pulsations there is no necessity for equality of

time. All beyond is arbitrary or conventional. A third or fourth pulsation

may embody half, or double, or any proportion of the time occupied in the

two first. Rhythm being thus understood, the prosodist should proceed to

define \_versification\_ as \_the making of verses\_, and \_verse\_ as \_the

arbitrary or conventional isolation of rhythm into masses of greater or

less extent\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 105.

OBS. 5.--No marvel that all usual conceptions and definitions of rhythm, of

versification, and of verse, should be found dissatisfactory to the critic

whose idea of \_metre\_ is fulfilled by the pompous \_prose\_ of Fenelon's

Télémaque. No right or real examination of this matter can ever make the

most immediately \_recognizable\_ form of poetry to be any thing else than

the form of \_verse\_--the form of writing in \_specific lines\_, ordered by

number and chime of syllables, and not squared by gage of the

composing-stick. And as to the derivation and primitive signification of

\_rhythm\_, it is plain that in the extract above, both are misrepresented.

The etymology there given is a gross error; for, "the Greek [\_Greek:

arithmos\_], \_number\_," would make, in English, not \_rhythm\_, but \_arithm\_,

as in \_arithmetic\_. Between the two combinations, there is the palpable

difference of three or four letters in either six; for neither of these

forms can be varied to the other, but by dropping one letter, and adding an

other, and changing a third, and moving a fourth. \_Rhythm\_ is derived, not

thence, but from the Greek [\_Greek: rhythmos\_]; which, according to the

lexicons, is a primitive word, and means, \_rhythmus, rhythm, concinnity,

modulation, measured tune\_, or \_regular flow\_, and \_not "number\_."

OBS. 6.--\_Rhythm\_, of course, like every other word not misapplied,

"conveys \_its own idea\_;" and that, not qualifiedly, or "\_very nearly\_,"

but \_exactly\_. That this idea, however, was originally that of

arithmetical \_number\_, or is nearly so now, is about as fanciful a notion,

as the happy suggestion added above, that \_rhythm\_ in lieu of \_arithm\_ or

\_number\_, is the fittest of words, \_because\_ "rhythm in prosody is \_time\_

in music!" Without dispute, it is important to the prosodist, and also to

the poet or versifier, to have as accurate an idea as possible of the

import of this common term, though it is observable that many of our

grammarians make little or no use of it. That it has some relation to

\_numbers\_, is undeniable. But what is it? Poetic numbers, and numbers in

arithmetic, and numbers in grammar, are three totally different sorts of

things. \_Rhythm\_ is related only to the first. Of the signification of this

word, a recent expositor gives the following brief explanation: "RHYTHM,

\_n.\_ Metre; verse; \_numbers\_. Proportion applied to any motion

whatever."--\_Bolles's Dictionary\_, 8vo. To this definition, Worcester

prefixes the following: "The consonance of measure and time in poetry,

\_prose composition\_, and music;--also in dancing."--\_Universal and Critical

Dict.\_ In verse, the proportion which forms rhythm--that is, the chime of

quantities--is applied to the \_sounds\_ of syllables. Sounds, however, may

be considered as a species of \_motion\_, especially those which are

rhythmical or musical.[487] It seems more strictly correct, to regard

rhythm as a \_property\_ of poetic numbers, than to identify it with them. It

is their proportion or modulation, rather than the numbers themselves.

According to Dr. Webster, "RHYTHM, or RHYTHMUS, in \_music\_ [is] variety in

the movement as to quickness or slowness, or length and shortness of the

notes; or \_rather\_ the proportion which the parts of the motion have to

each other."--\_American Dict.\_ The "\_last analysis\_" of rhythm can be

nothing else than the reduction of it to its \_least parts\_. And if, in this

reduction, it is "identical with \_time\_," then it is here the same thing as

\_quantity\_, whether prosodical or musical; for, "The \_time\_ of a note, or

syllable, is called \_quantity\_. The time of a \_rest\_ is also called

quantity; because \_rests\_, as well as notes are a constituent of

rhythm."--\_Comstock's Elocution\_, p. 64. But rhythm is, in fact, neither

time nor quantity; for the analysis which would make it such, destroys the

relation in which the thing consists.

SECTION II.--OF ACCENT AND QUANTITY.

Accent and Quantity have already been briefly explained in the second

chapter of Prosody, as items coming under the head of Pronunciation. What

we have to say of them here, will be thrown into the form of \_critical

observations\_; in the progress of which, many quotations from other writers

on these subjects, will be presented, showing what has been most popularly

taught.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Accent and quantity are distinct things;[488] the former being the

stress, force, loudness, or percussion of voice, that distinguishes certain

syllables from others; and the latter, the \_time\_, distinguished as \_long\_

or \_short\_, in which a syllable is uttered. But, as the \_great\_ sounds

which we utter, naturally take more time than the \_small\_ ones, there is a

necessary connexion between quantity and accent in English,--a connexion

which is sometimes expounded as being the mere relation of \_cause and

effect\_; nor is it in fact much different from that. "As no utterance can

be agreeable to the ear, which is void of proportion; and as \_all

quantity\_, or proportion of time in utterance, depends upon a due

observation of the \_accent\_; it is a matter of absolute necessity to all,

who would arrive at a good and graceful delivery, to be master of that

point. Nor is the use of \_accent\_ in our language confined to \_quantity\_

alone; but it is also the chief mark by which words are distinguished from

mere syllables. Or rather I may say, it is the \_very essence\_ of words,

which without that, would be only so many collections of

syllables."--\_Sheridan's Lectures on Elocution\_, p. 61. "As no utterance

\_which is void of proportion\_, can be agreeable to the ear; and as

quantity, or proportion of time in utterance, \_greatly\_ depends \_on\_ a due

\_attention\_ to the \_accent\_; it is \_absolutely necessary for every person\_,

who would attain a \_just\_ and \_pleasing\_ delivery, to be master of that

point."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 241; 12mo, 194.

OBS. 2.--In the first observation on Prosody, at page 770, and in its

marginal notes, was reference made to the fact, that the nature and

principles of \_accent\_ and \_quantity\_ are involved in difficulty, by reason

of the different views of authors concerning them. To this source of

embarrassment, it seems necessary here again to advert; because it is upon

the distinction of syllables in respect to quantity, or accent, or both,

that every system of versification, except his who merely counts, is based.

And further, it is not only requisite that the principle of distinction

which we adopt should be clearly made known, but also proper to consider

which of these three modes is the best or most popular foundation for a

theory of versification. Whether or wherein the accent and quantity of the

ancient languages, Latin and Greek, differed from those of our present

English, we need not now inquire. From the definitions which the learned

lexicographers Littleton and Ainsworth give to \_prosodia\_, prosody, it

would seem that, with them, "the art of \_accenting\_" was nothing else than

the art of giving to syllables their right \_quantity\_, "whether long or

short." And some have charged it as a glaring error, long prevalent among

English grammarians, and still a fruitful source of disputes, to confound

accent with quantity in our language.[489] This charge, however, there is

reason to believe, is sometimes, if not in most cases, made on grounds

rather fanciful than real; for some have evidently mistaken the notion of

concurrence or coincidence for that of identity. But, to affirm that the

stress which we call accent, coincides always and only with long quantity,

does not necessarily make accent and quantity to be one and the same thing.

The greater force or loudness which causes the accented syllable to occupy

more time than any other, is in itself something different from time.

Besides, quantity is divisible,--being either \_long\_ or \_short\_: these two

species of it are acknowledged on all sides, and some few prosodists will

have a third, which they call "common." [490] But, of our English accent,

the word being taken in its usual acceptation, no \_such\_ division is ever,

with any propriety, made; for even the stress which we call \_secondary

accent\_, pertains to \_long\_ syllables rather than to short ones; and the

mere absence of stress, which produces short quantity, we do not call

\_accent\_.[491]

OBS. 3.--The impropriety of affirming \_quantity\_ to be the same as

\_accent\_, when its most frequent species occurs only in the absence of

accent, must be obvious to every body; and those writers who anywhere

suggest this identity, must either have written absurdly, or have taken

\_accent\_ in some sense which includes the sounds of our \_unaccented\_

syllables. The word sometimes means, "The \_modulation\_ of the voice in

speaking."--\_Worcester's Dict., w. Accent\_. In this sense, the lighter as

well as the more impressive sounds are included; but still, whether both

together, considered as accents, can be reckoned the same as long and short

quantities, is questionable. Some say, they cannot; and insist that they

are yet as different, as the variable tones of a \_trumpet\_, which swell and

fall, are different from the merely loud and soft notes of the monotonous

\_drum\_. This illustration of the "easy Distinction betwixt \_Quantity\_ and

\_Accent\_" is cited with commendation, in Brightland's Grammar, on page

157th;[492] the author of which grammar, \_seems\_ to have understood

\_Accent\_, or \_Accents\_, to be the same as \_Inflections\_--though these are

still unlike to quantities, if he did so. (See an explanation of

Inflections in Chap. II, Sec. iii, Art. 3, above.) His exposition is this:

"\_Accent\_ is the \_rising\_ and \_falling\_ of the Voice, above or under its

usual \_Tone\_. There are three Sorts of Accents, an \_Acute\_, a \_Grave\_, and

an \_Inflex\_, which is also call'd a \_Circumflex\_. The \_Acute\_, or \_Sharp\_,

naturally \_raises\_ the Voice; and the \_Grave\_, or \_Base\_, as naturally

\_falls\_ it. The \_Circumflex\_ is a kind of \_Undulation\_, or \_Waving\_ of the

Voice."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, Seventh Ed., Lond., 1746, p. 156.

OBS. 4.--Dr. Johnson, whose great authority could not fail to carry some

others with him, too evidently identifies accent with quantity, at the

commencement of his Prosody. "PRONUNCIATION is just," says he, "when every

letter has its proper sound, and when every syllable has its proper accent,

or which in English versification is \_the same\_, its proper quantity."--

\_Johnson's Gram.\_, before Dict., 4to, p. 13; \_John Burn's Gram.\_, p. 240;

\_Jones's Prosodial Gram.\_, before Dict., p. 10. Now our most common notion

of \_accent\_--the sole notion with many--and that which the accentuation of

Johnson himself everywhere inculcates--is, that it belongs \_not\_ to "\_every

syllable\_," but only to some particular syllables, being either "a \_stress

of voice\_ on a certain syllable," or a \_small mark\_ to denote such

stress.--See \_Scott's Dict.\_, or \_Worcester's\_. But Dr. Johnson, in the

passage above, must have understood the word \_accent\_ agreeably to his own

imperfect definition of it; to wit, as "\_the sound given to the syllable

pronounced\_."--\_Joh. Dict.\_ An \_unaccented\_ syllable must have been to him

a syllable unpronounced. In short he does not appear to have recognized any

syllables as being unaccented. The word \_unaccented\_ had no place in his

lexicography, nor could have any without inconsistencey. [sic--KTH] It was

unaptly added to his text, after sixty years, by one of his amenders, Todd

or Chalmers; who still blindly neglected to amend his definition of

\_accent\_. In these particulars, Walker's dictionaries exhibit the same

deficiencies as Johnson's; and yet no author has more frequently used the

words \_accent\_ and \_unaccented\_, than did Walker.[493] Mason's Supplement,

first published in 1801, must have suggested to the revisers of Johnson the

addition of the latter term, as appears by the authority cited for it:

"UNA'CCENTED, \_adj.\_ Not accented. 'It being enough to make a syllable

long, if it be accented, and short, if it be \_unaccented\_.' \_Harris's

Philological Inquiries\_."--\_Mason's Sup.\_

OBS. 5--This doctrine of Harris's, that long quantity accompanies the

accent, and unaccented syllables are short, is far from confounding or

identifying accent with quantity, as has already been shown; and, though it

plainly contradicts some of the elementary teaching of Johnson, Sheridan,

Walker, Murray, Webster, Latham, Fowler, and others, in regard to the

length or shortness of certain syllables, it has been clearly maintained by

many excellent authors, so that no opposite theory is better supported by

authority. On this point, our language stands not alone; for the accent

controls quantity in some others.[494] G H. Noehden, a writer of uncommon

ability, in his German Grammar for Englishmen, defines accent to be, as we

see it is in English, "that \_stress\_ which marks a particular syllable in

speaking;" and recognizing, as we do, both a full accent and a partial one,

or "demi-accent," presents the syllables of his language as being of three

conditions: the "\_accented\_," which "cannot be used otherwise than as

\_long\_;" the "\_half-accented\_" which "must be regarded as ambiguous, or

common;" and the "\_accentless\_," which "are in their nature \_short\_."--See

\_Noehden's Gram.\_, p. 87. His middle class, however, our prosodists in

general very properly dispense with. In Fiske's History of Greek

Literature, which is among the additions to the Manual of Classical

Literature from the German of Eschenburg, are the following passages: "The

\_tone\_ [i.e. accent] in Greek is placed upon short syllables as well as

long; in German, it accompanies regularly only long syllables."--"In giving

an accent to a syllable in an English word we \_thereby\_ render it a long

syllable, whatever may be the sound given to its vowel, and in whatever way

the syllable may be composed; so that as above stated in relation to the

German, an English accent, or stress in pronunciation, accompanies only a

long syllable."--\_Manual of Class. Lit.\_, p. 437. With these extracts,

accords the doctrine of some of the ablest of our English grammarians. "In

the English Pronunciation," says William Ward, "there is a certain Stress

of the Voice laid on some one syllable at least, of every Word of two or

more Syllables; and that Syllable on which the Stress is laid may be

considered \_long\_. Our Grammarians have agreed to consider this Stress of

the Voice as \_the Accent\_ in English; and therefore the Accent and long

Quantity coincide in our Language."--\_Ward's Practical Gram.\_, p. 155. As

to the vowel sounds, with the quantity of which many prosodists have

greatly puzzled both themselves and their readers, this writer says, "they

may be made as long, or as short, as the Speaker pleases."--\_Ib.\_, p. 4.

OBS. 6.--From the absurd and contradictory nature of many of the

\_principles usually laid down\_ by our grammarians, for the discrimination

of long quantity and short, it is quite apparent, that but very few of them

have well understood either the distinction itself or their own rules

concerning it. Take Fisher for an example. In Fisher's Practical Grammar,

first published in London in 1753,--a work not unsuccessful, since Wells

quotes the "\_28th edition\_" as appearing in 1795, and this was not the

last--we find, in the first place, the vowel sounds distinguished as long

or short thus: "\_Q.\_ How many Sounds has a Vowel? \_A.\_ Two in general, viz.

1. A LONG SOUND, When the Syllable ends with a Vowel, either in

Monosyllables, or in Words of more Syllables; as, \_t=ake, w=e, =I, g=o,

n=il\_; or, as, \_N=ature, N=ero, N=itre, N=ovice, N=uisance\_. 2. A SHORT

SOUND, When the Syllable ends with a Consonant, either in Monosyllables, or

others; as \_H~at, h~er, b~it, r~ob, T~un\_; or, as \_B~arber, b~itten,

B~utton\_."--See p. 5. To this rule, the author makes needless exceptions of

all such words as \_balance\_ and \_banish\_, wherein a single consonant

between two vowels goes to the former; because, like Johnson, Murray, and

most of our old grammarians, he divides on the vowel; falsely calls the

accented syllable short; and imagines the consonant to be heard \_twice\_, or

to have "\_a double Accent\_." On page 35th, he tells us that, "\_Long and

short Vowels\_, and \_long and short Syllables\_, are \_synonimous\_

[--\_synonymous\_, from [Greek: synonymos]--] Terms;" and so indeed have they

been most erroneously considered by sundry subsequent writers; and the

consequence is, that all who judge by their criteria, mistake the poetic

quantity, or prosodical value, of perhaps one half the syllables in the

language. Let each syllable be reckoned long that "ends with a Vowel," and

each short that "ends with a Consonant," and the decision will probably be

oftener wrong than right; for more syllables end with consonants than with

vowels, and of the latter class a majority are without stress and therefore

short. Thus the foregoing principle, contrary to the universal practice of

the poets, determines many \_accented\_ syllables to be "\_short\_;" as the

first in "\_barber, bitten, button, balance, banish\_;--" and many

\_unaccented\_ ones to be "\_long\_;" as the last in \_sofa, specie, noble,

metre, sorrow, daisy, valley, nature, native\_; or the first in \_around,

before, delay, divide, remove, seclude, obey, cocoon, presume, propose\_,

and other words innumerable.

OBS. 7.--Fisher's conceptions of accent and quantity, as constituting

prosody, were much truer to the original and etymological sense of the

words, than to any just or useful view of English versification: in short,

this latter subject was not even mentioned by him; for prosody, in his

scheme, was nothing but the right pronunciation of words, or what we now

call \_orthoëpy.\_ This part of his Grammar commences with the following

questions and answers:

"\_Q.\_ What is the Meaning of the Word PROSODY? \_A.\_ It is a Word borrowed

from the Greek; which, in Latin, is rendered \_Accentus\_, and in English

\_Accent\_. "\_Q.\_ What do you mean by \_Accent\_? \_A.\_ Accent originally

signified a Modulation of the Voice, or chanting to a musical Instrument;

but is now generally used to signify \_Due Pronunciatian\_, i.e. the

pronouncing [of] a syllable according to its Quantity, (whether it be long

or short,) with a stronger Force or Stress of Voice than the other

Syllables in the same Word; as, \_a\_ in \_able, o\_ in \_above\_, &c. "\_Q.\_ What

is \_Quantity\_? \_A.\_ Quantity is the different Measure of \_Time\_ in

pronouncing Syllables, from whence they are called long or short. "\_Q.\_

What is the \_Proportion\_ between a long and a short Syllable? \_A.\_ Two to

one; that is, a long Syllable is twice as long in pronouncing as a short

one; as, \_Hate, Hat\_. This mark (=) set over a Syllable, shows that it is

long, and this (~) that it is short; as, r=ecord, r~ecord. "\_Q\_. How do

you \_know\_ long and short Syllables? \_A\_. A Syllable is long or short

according to the Situation of the Vowel, i.e. it is generally long when it

ends with a Vowel, and short when with a Consonant; as, \_F=a\_- in \_Favour\_,

and \_M~an\_- in \_Manner\_."--\_Fisher's Practical Gram.\_, p. 34.

Now one grand mistake of this is, that it supposes syllabication to fix the

quantity, and quantity to determine the accent; whereas it is plain, that

accent controls quantity, so far at least that, in the construction of

verse, a syllable fully accented cannot be reckoned short. And this mistake

is practical; for we see, that, in three of his examples, out of the four

above, the author himself misstates the quantity, because he disregards the

accent: the verb \_re-cord'\_, being accented on the second syllable, is an

\_iambus\_; and the nouns \_rec'-ord\_ and \_man'-ner\_, being accented on the

first, are \_trochees\_; and just as plainly so, as is the word \_f=av~our\_.

But a still greater blunder here observable is, that, as a "\_due

pronunciation\_" necessarily includes the utterance of every syllable, the

explanation above stolidly supposes \_all\_ our syllables to be \_accented\_,

each "according to its Quantity, (whether it be long or short,)" and each

"\_with a stronger Force or Stress of Voice\_, than \_the other\_ Syllables!"

Absurdity akin to this, and still more worthy to be criticised, has since

been propagated by Sheridan, by Walker, and by Lindley Murray, with a host

of followers, as Alger, D. Blair, Comly, Cooper, Cutler, Davenport, Felton,

Fowler, Frost, Guy, Jaudon, Parker and Fox, Picket, Pond, Putnam, Russell,

Smith, and others.

OBS. 8.--Sheridan was an able and practical teacher of \_English

pronunciation\_, and one who appears to have gained reputation by all he

undertook, whether as an actor, as an elocutionist, or as a lexicographer.

His publications that refer to that subject, though now mostly superseded

by others of later date, are still worthy to be consulted. The chief of

them are, his Lectures on Elocution, his Lectures on the Art of Reading,

his Rhetorical Grammar, his Elements of English, and his English

Dictionary. His third lecture on Elocution, and many pages of the

Rhetorical Grammar, are devoted to \_accent\_ and \_quantity\_--subjects which

he conceived to have been greatly misrepresented by other writers up to his

time.[495] To this author, as it would seem, we owe the invention of that

absurd doctrine, since copied into a great multitude of our English

grammars, that the accent on a syllable of two or more letters, belongs,

\_not to the whole of it, but only to some\_ ONE LETTER; and that according

to the character of this letter, as vowel or consonant, the same stress

serves to lengthen or shorten the syllable's quantity! Of this matter, he

speaks thus: "The \_great distinction\_ of our accent depends upon its

\_seat\_; which may be either upon a vowel or a consonant. Upon a vowel, as

in the words, glóry, fáther, hóly. Upon a consonant, as in the words,

hab'it, bor'row, bat'tle. When the accent is on the vowel, the syllable is

long; because the accent is \_made by dwelling\_ upon the vowel. When it is

on the consonant, the \_syllable is short\_;[496] because the accent is \_made

by passing rapidly\_ over the vowel, and giving a smart stroke of the voice

to the following consonant. \_Obvious as this point is\_, it \_has wholly

escaped the observation of all our grammarians and compilers of

dictionaries\_; who, instead of examining the peculiar genius of our tongue,

implicitly and pedantically have followed the Greek method of always

placing the accentual mark over a vowel."--\_Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.\_,

p. 51. The author's reprehension of the old mode of accentuation, is not

without reason; but his "great distinction" of short and long syllables is

only fit to puzzle or mislead the reader. For it is plain, that the first

syllables of \_hab'it, bor'row\_, and \_bat'tle\_, are twice as long as the

last; and, in poetry, these words are trochees, as well as the other three,

\_glo'ry, fa'ther\_, and \_ho'ly\_.

OBS. 9.--The only important distinction in our accent, is that of the

\_primary\_ and the \_secondary\_, the latter species occurring when it is

necessary to enforce more syllables of a word than one; but Sheridan, as we

see above, after rejecting all the old distinctions of \_rising\_ and

\_falling, raising\_ and \_depressing, acute\_ and \_grave, sharp\_ and \_base,

long\_ and \_short\_, contrived a new one still more vain, which he founded on

that of vowels and consonants, but "referred to \_time\_, or \_quantity\_." He

recognized, in fact, a \_vowel accent\_ and a \_consonant accent\_; or, in

reference to quantity, a \_lengthening accent\_ and a \_shortening accent\_.

The discrimination of these was with him "THE GREAT DISTINCTION of our

accent." He has accordingly mentioned it in several different places of his

works, and not always with that regard to consistency which becomes a

precise theorist. It led him to new and variant ways of \_defining\_ accent;

some of which seem to imply a division of consonants from their vowels in

utterance, or to suggest that syllables are not the least parts of spoken

words. And no sooner has he told us that our accent is but one single mode

of distinguishing a syllable, than he proceeds to declare it two. Compare

the following citations: "As the pronunciation of English words is chiefly

regulated by \_accent\_, it will be necessary to have a \_precise idea\_ of

that term. Accent with us means \_no more\_ than \_a certain stress\_ of the

voice upon \_one letter\_ of a syllable, which distinguishes it from all the

\_other letters\_ in a word."--\_Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.\_, p. 39. Again:

"Accent, in the English language, means \_a certain stress\_ of the voice

upon \_a particular letter\_ of a syllable which distinguishes it from the

rest, and, at the same time, \_distinguishes the syllable itself\_ to which

it belongs from the others which compose the word."--\_Same work\_, p. 50.

Again: "But as \_our accent consists in stress only\_, it can just as well be

placed on a consonant as [on] a vowel."--\_Same\_, p. 51. Again: "By the word

\_accent\_, is meant \_the stress\_ of the voice on \_one letter\_ in a

syllable."--\_Sheridan's Elements of English\_, p. 55. Again: "The term

[\_accent\_] with us has no reference to \_inflexions\_ of the voice, or

musical notes, but only means \_a peculiar manner of distinguishing one

syllable of a word from the rest\_, denominated by us accent; and the term

for that reason [is] used by us in the singular number.--This distinction

is made by us in \_two ways\_; either by \_dwelling longer upon one syllable\_

than the rest; or by \_giving it a smarter percussion\_ of the voice in

utterance. Of the first of these, we have instances in the words, \_gl=ory,

f=ather, h=oly\_; of the last, in \_bat'tle, hab'it, bor'row\_. So that

accent, with us, is not referred to tune, but to \_time\_; to \_quantity\_, not

quality; to the more \_equable\_ or \_precipitate\_ motion of the voice, not to

the variation of notes or \_inflexions\_."--\_Sheridan's Lectures on

Elocution\_, p. 56; \_Flint's Murray's Gram.\_, p. 85.

OBS. 10.--How "precise" was Sheridan's idea of accent, the reader may well

judge from the foregoing quotations; in four of which, he describes it as

"\_a certain stress\_," "\_the stress\_," and "\_stress only\_," which enforces

some "\_letter\_;" while, in the other, it is whimsically made to consist in

two different modes of pronouncing "\_syllables\_"--namely, with

\_equability\_, and with \_precipitance\_--with "\_dwelling longer\_," and with

"\_smarter percussion\_"--which terms the author very improperly supposes to

be \_opposites\_: saying, "For the two ways of distinguishing syllables by

accent, as mentioned before, are \_directly opposite\_, and produce \_quite

contrary effects\_; the one, by \_dwelling\_ on the syllable, necessarily

makes it long; the other, by the \_smart percussion\_--of the voice, as

necessarily \_makes it short\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 57. Now it is all a mistake,

however common, to suppose that our accent, consisting as it does, in

stress, enforcement, or "percussion of voice," can ever \_shorten\_ the

syllable on which it is laid; because what increases the quantum of a vocal

sound, cannot diminish its length; and a syllable accented will always be

found \_longer\_ as well as \_louder\_, than any unaccented one immediately

before or after it. Though weak sounds may possibly be protracted, and

shorter ones be exploded loudly, it is not the custom of our speech, so to

deal with the sounds of syllables.

OBS. 11.--Sheridan admitted that some syllables are naturally and

necessarily short, but denied that any are naturally and necessarily long.

In this, since syllabic length and shortness are relative to each other,

and to the cause of each, he was, perhaps, hardly consistent. He might have

done better, to have denied both, or neither. Bating his new division of

accent to subject it sometimes to short quantity, he recognized very fully

the dependence of quantity, long or short, whether in syllables or only in

vowels, upon the presence or absence of accent or emphasis. In this he

differed considerably from most of the grammarians of his day; and many

since have continued to uphold other views. He says, "It is an \_infallible

rule\_ in our tongue that no vowel ever has a long sound in an unaccented

syllable."--\_Lectures on Elocution\_, p. 60. Again: "In treating of the

simple elements or letters, I have shown that some, both vowels and

consonants, are \_naturally short\_; that is, whose sounds \_cannot possibly\_

be prolonged; and these are the [short or shut] sounds of ~e, ~i, and ~u,

of vocal sounds; and three pure mutes, k, p, t, of the consonant; as in the

words \_beck, lip, cut\_. I have shown also, that the sounds of all the other

vowels, and of the consonant semivowels, may be prolonged to what degree we

please; but at the same time it is to be observed, that all these may also

be reduced to a short quantity, and are capable of being uttered in as

short a space of time as those which are naturally short. So that they who

speak of syllables as absolutely in their own nature long, \_the common cant

of prosodians\_, speak of a nonentity: for though, as I have shown above,

there are syllables absolutely short, which cannot possibly be prolonged by

any effort of the speaker, yet it is in his power to shorten or prolong the

others to what degree he pleases."--\_Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.\_, p. 52.

And again: "I have already mentioned that when the accent is on the vowel,

it of course makes the syllable \_long\_; and when the accent is on the

consonant, the syllable may be \_either long or short\_, according to the

nature of the consonant, or \_will of the speakers\_. And as \_all unaccented

syllables are short\_, the quantity of our syllables is adjusted by the

easiest and simplest rule in the world, and in the exactest

proportion."--\_Lect. on Elocution\_, p. 66.

OBS. 12.--This praise of our rule for the adjustment of quantity, would

have been much more appropriate, had not the rule itself been greatly

mistaken, perplexed, and misrepresented by the author. If it appear, on

inspection, that "\_beck, lip, cut\_," and the like syllables, are twice as

long when under the accent, as they are when not accented, so that, with a

short syllable annexed or a long one prefixed, they may form \_trochees\_;

then is it \_not true\_, that such syllables are either always necessarily

and \_inherently\_ short, or always, "by the smart percussion of the voice,

as necessarily \_made\_ short;" both of which inconsistent ideas are above

affirmed of them. They may not be so long as some other long syllables;

but, if they are twice as long as the accompanying short ones, they are not

short. And, if not short, then that remarkable distinction in accent, which

assumes that they are so, is as needless as it is absurd and perplexing.

Now let the words, \_beck'on, lip'ping, cut'ter\_, be properly pronounced,

and their syllables be compared with each other, or with those of

\_lim'beck, fil'lip, Dr=a'cut\_; and it cannot but be perceived, that \_beck,

lip\_, and \_cut\_, like other syllables in general, are \_lengthened\_ by the

accent, and shortened only in its absence; so that all these words are

manifestly trochees, as all similar words are found to be, in our

versification. To suppose "as many words as we hear accents," or that "it

is the laying of an accent on \_one\_ syllable, which \_constitutes a word\_,"

and then say, that "no unaccented syllable or vowel is ever to be accounted

long," as this enthusiastic author does in fact, is to make strange

scansion of a very large portion of the trissyllables and polysyllables

which occur in verse. An other great error in Sheridan's doctrine of

quantity, is his notion that all monosyllables, except a few small

particles, are \_accented\_; and that their quantity is determined to be long

or short by the \_seat\_ or the \_mode\_ of the accent, as before stated. Now,

as our poetry abounds with monosyllables, the relative time of which is

adjusted by emphasis and cadence, according to the nature and importance of

the terms, and according to the requirements of rhythm, with no reference

to this factitious principle, no conformity thereto but what is accidental,

it cannot but be a puzzling exercise, when these difficulties come to be

summed up, to attempt the application of a doctrine so vainly conceived to

be "the easiest and simplest rule in the world!"

OBS. 13.--Lindley Murray's principles of accent and quantity, which later

grammarians have so extensively copied, were mostly extracted from

Sheridan's; and, as the compiler appears to have been aware of but few, if

any, of his predecessor's errors, he has adopted and greatly spread

well-nigh all that have just been pointed out; while, in regard to some

points, he has considerably increased the number. His scheme, as he at last

fixed it, appears to consist essentially of propositions already refuted,

or objected to, above; as any reader may see, who will turn to his

definition of accent, and his rules for the determination of quantity. In

opposition to Sheridan, who not very consistently says, that, "\_All\_

unaccented syllables are \_short\_," this author appears to have adopted the

greater error of Fisher, who supposed that the \_vowel sounds\_ called long

and short, are just the same as the long and short \_syllabic quantities\_.

By this rule, thousands of syllables will be called long, which are in fact

short, being always so uttered in both prose and poetry; and, by the other,

some will occasionally be called short, which are in fact long, being made

so by the poet, under a slight secondary accent, or perhaps none. Again, in

supposing our numerous monosyllables to be accented, and their quantity to

be thereby fixed, without excepting "the \_particles\_, such as \_a, the, to,

in\_, &c.," which were excepted by Sheridan, Murray has much augmented the

multitude of errors which necessarily flow from the original rule. This

principle, indeed, he adopted timidly; saying, as though he hardly believed

the assertion true: "And \_some writers assert\_, that every monosyllable of

two or more letters, has one of its letters thus distinguished."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 236; 12mo, 189. But still he \_adopted\_ it, and adopted it

\_fully\_, in his section on Quantity; for, of his twelve words, exemplifying

syllabic time so regulated, no fewer than nine are monosyllables. It is

observable, however, that, in some instances, it is not \_one\_ letter, but

\_two\_, that he marks; as in the words, "m=o=od, h=o=use."--\_Ib.\_, p. 239;

12mo, 192. And again, it should be observed, that generally, wherever he

marks accent, he follows the \_old mode\_, which Sheridan and Webster so

justly condemn; so that, even when he is speaking of "the accent on the

\_consonant\_," the sign of stress, as that of time, is set over a \_vowel\_:

as, "Sádly, róbber."--\_Ib.\_, 8vo, 240; 12mo, 193. So in his Spelling-Book,

where words are often falsely divided: as, "Vé nice," for Ven'-ice; "Há no

ver," for Han'o-ver; &c.--See p. 101.

OBS. 14.--In consideration of the great authority of this grammarian, now

backed by a score or two of copyists and modifiers, it may be expedient to

be yet more explicit. Of \_accent\_ Murray published about as many different

definitions, as did Sheridan; which, as they show what notions he had at

different times, it may not be amiss for some, who hold him always in the

right, to compare. In one, he describes it thus: "Accent signifies \_that

stress\_ of the voice, which is laid on \_one syllable\_, to distinguish it

from the rest."--\_Murray's Spelling-Book\_, p. 138. He should here have

said, (as by his examples it would appear that he meant,) "on one syllable

\_of a word\_;" for, as the phrase now stands, it may include stress on a

\_monosyllable in a sentence\_; and it is a matter of dispute, whether this

can properly be called accent. Walker and Webster say, it is emphasis, and

not accent. Again, in an other definition, which was written before he

adopted the notion of accent on consonants, of accent on monosyllables, or

of accent for quantity in the formation of verse, he used these words:

"Accent is \_the laying of\_ a peculiar stress of the voice on a certain

\_vowel\_ or syllable in a word, that it may be better heard than the rest,

or distinguished from them; as, in the word \_presúme\_, the stress of the

voice must be on the second syllable, \_súme\_, which takes the

accent."--\_Murray's Gram., Second Edition\_, 12mo, p. 161. In this edition,

which was published at York, in 1796, his chief rules of quantity say

nothing about accent, but are thus expressed: [1.] "A \_vowel or syllable\_

is long, when \_the vowel or vowels contained in it\_ are slowly joined in

pronunciation with the \_following letters\_; as, 'F=all, b=ale, m=o=od,

h=o=use, f=eature.' [2.] A syllable is short, when the vowel is quickly

joined to the succeeding \_letter\_; as, '~art, b~onn~et, h~ung~er.'"--\_Ib.\_,

p. 166. Besides the absurdity of representing "\_a vowel\_" as having

"\_vowels\_ contained in it," these rules are \_made up\_ of great faults. They

confound syllabic quantities with vowel sounds. They suppose quantity to

be, not the time of a whole syllable, but the quick or slow junction of

\_some\_ of its parts. They apply to no syllable that ends with a vowel

sound. The former applies to none that ends with one consonant only; as,

"\_mood\_" or the first of "\_feat-ure\_." In fact, it does not apply to \_any\_

of the examples given; the final letter in each of the other words being

\_silent\_. The latter rule is worse yet: it misrepresents the examples; for

"\_bonnet\_" and "\_hunger\_" are trochees, and "\_art\_," with any stress on it,

is long.

OBS. 15.--In all late editions of L. Murray's Grammar, and many

modifications of it, accent is defined thus: "Accent is \_the laying of\_ a

peculiar stress of the voice, on a certain \_letter\_ OR \_syllable\_ in a

word, that \_it\_ may be better heard than \_the rest\_, or distinguished from

\_them\_; as, in the word \_presúme\_, the stress of the voice must be on the

\_letter u\_, AND [the] \_second syllable, sume\_, which takes the

accent."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 235; 12mo, 188; 18mo, 57; \_Alger's\_,

72; \_Bacon's\_, 52; \_Comly's\_, 168; \_Cooper's\_, 176; \_Davenport's\_, 121;

\_Felton's\_, 134; \_Frost's El.\_, 50; \_Fisk's\_, 32; \_Merchant's\_, 145;

\_Parker and Fox's\_, iii, 44; \_Pond's\_, 197; \_Putnam's\_, 96; \_Russell's\_,

106; \_R. O. Smith's\_, 186. Here we see a curious jumble of the common idea

of accent, as "stress laid on some particular \_syllable\_ of a \_word\_," with

Sheridan's doctrine of accenting always "a particular \_letter\_ of a

\_syllable\_,"--an idle doctrine, contrived solely for the accommodation of

short quantity with long, \_under the accent\_. When this definition was

adopted, Murray's scheme of quantity was also revised, and materially

altered. The principles of his main text, to which his copiers all confine

themselves, then took the following form:

"The quantity of a syllable, is \_that\_ time which is occupied in

pronouncing it. It is considered as LONG or SHORT.

"A \_vowel or syllable\_ is long, when the accent is on the vowel; \_which\_

occasions it to be slowly joined in pronunciation with the following

\_letters\_: as, 'F=all, b=ale, m=o=od, h=o=use, f=eature.'

"A \_syllable\_ is short, when the accent is on the consonant; \_which\_

occasions the vowel to be quickly joined to the succeeding \_letter\_: as,

'~ant, b=onn~et, h=ung~er.'

"A long syllable generally requires double the time of a short one \_in

pronouncing it\_: thus, 'M=ate' and 'N=ote' should be pronounced as slowly

again as 'M~at' and 'N~ot.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 239; 12mo, 192;

18mo, 57; \_Alger's\_, 72; \_D. C. Allen's\_, 86; \_Bacon's\_, 52; \_Comly's\_,

168; \_Cooper's\_, 176; \_Cutler's\_, 165; \_Davenport's\_, 121; \_Felton's\_, 134;

\_Frost's El.\_, 50; \_Fisk's\_, 32; \_Maltby's\_, 115; \_Parker and Fox's\_, iii,

47; \_Pond's\_, 198; \_S. Putnam's\_, 96; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 187; \_Rev. T.

Smith's\_, 68.

Here we see a revival and an abundant propagation of Sheridan's erroneous

doctrine, that our accent produces both short quantity and long, according

to its seat; and since none of all these grammars, but the first two of

Murray's, give any \_other\_ rules for the discrimination of quantities, we

must infer, that these were judged sufficient. Now, of all the principles

on which any have ever pretended to determine the quantity of syllables,

none, so far as I know, are more defective or fallacious than these. They

are liable to more objections than it is worth while to specify. Suffice it

to observe, that they divide certain accented syllables into long and

short, and say nothing of the unaccented; whereas it is plain, and

acknowledged even by Murray and Sheridan themselves, that in "\_ant, bonnet,

hunger\_" and the like, the unaccented syllables are the \_only short ones\_:

the rest can be, and here are, lengthened.[497]

OBS. 16.--The foregoing principles, differently expressed, and perchance in

some instances more fitly, are found in many other grammars, and in some of

the very latest; but they are everywhere a \_mere dead letter\_, a record

which, if it is not always untrue, is seldom understood, and never applied

in any way to practice. The following are examples:

(1.) "In a long syllable, the vowel is accented; in a short syllable [,]

the consonant; as [,] \_r=oll, p=oll; t~op, c~ut\_."--\_Rev. W. Allen's

Gram.\_, p. 222. (2.) "A syllable \_or word\_ is long, when the accent is on

the vowel: as n=o, l=ine, l=a, m=e; and short, when on the consonant: as

n~ot, l~in, L~atin, m~et."--\_S. Barrett's Grammar, ("Principles of

Language,")\_ p. 112.

(3.) "A syllable is long when the accent is on the vowel, as, P=all, s=ale,

m=o=use, cr=eature. A syllable is short when the accent is placed on the

consonant; as great´, let´ter, mas´ter."--\_Rev. D. Blair's Practical

Gram.\_, p. 117.

(4.) "When the stress is on the \_vowel\_, the measure of quantity is \_long\_:

as, Máte, fáte, complàin, pláyful, un der míne. When the stress is on a

\_consonant\_, the quantity is short: as, Mat´, fat´, com pel´, prog´ress,

dis man´tle."--\_Pardon Davis's Practical Gram.\_, p. 125.

(5.) "The quantity of a syllable is considered \_as long or short\_. It is

long when the accent is on the vowel; as, F=all, b=ale, m=ood, ho=use,

f=eature. It is short when the accent is placed on the consonant; as,

Mas´ter, let´ter."--\_Guy's School Gram.\_, p. 118; \_Picket's Analytical

School Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 224.

(6.) "A syllable is \_long\_ when the accent is on the vowel; and \_short\_,

when the accent is on the consonant. A \_long\_ syllable requires twice the

time in pronouncing it that a \_short\_ one does. Long syllables are marked

thus =; as, t=ube; short syllables, thus ~; as, m~an."--\_Hiley's English

Gram.\_, p. 120.

(7.) "When the accent is on a vowel, the syllable is generally long; as

\_=aleho=use, am=usement, f=eatures\_. But when the accent is on a consonant,

the syllable is mostly short; as, \_h~ap'py, m~an'ner\_. A long syllable

requires twice as much time in the pronunciation, as a short one; as,

\_h=ate, h~at; n=ote, n~ot; c=ane, c~an; f=ine, f~in\_."--\_Jaudon's Union

Gram.\_, p. 173.

(8.) "If the syllable \_be long\_, the accent is on the vowel; as, in \_b=ale,

m=o=od, educ=ation; &c\_. If \_short\_, the accent is on the consonant; as, in

\_~ant, b~onnet, h~unger\_, &c."--\_Merchant's American School Gram.\_, p. 145.

The quantity of our unaccented syllables, none of these authors, except

Allen, thought it worth his while to notice. But among their accented

syllables, they all include \_words of one syllable\_, though most of them

thereby pointedly contradict their own definitions of accent. To find in

our language no short syllables but such as are accented, is certainly a

very strange and very great oversight. Frazee says, "The pronunciation of

an accented syllable \_requires double the time\_ of that of an unaccented

one."--\_Frazee's Improved Gram.\_, p. 180. If so, our poetical quantities

are greatly misrepresented by the rules above cited. Allen truly says,

"Unaccented syllables are generally short; as, \_r~etúrn, túrn~er\_."--

\_Elements of E. Gram.\_, p. 222. But how it was ever found out, that in

these words we accent only the vowel \_u\_, and in such as \_hunter\_ and

\_bluntly\_, some one of the consonants only, he does not inform us.

OBS. 17.--As might be expected, it is not well agreed among those who

accent single consonants and vowels, \_what particular letter\_ should

receive the stress and the mark. The word or syllable "\_ant\_," for example,

is marked "an´t" by Alger, Bacon, and others, to enforce the \_n\_; "ant´" by

Frost, Putnam, and others, to enforce the \_t\_; "~ant" by Murray, Russell,

and others, to show, as they say, "\_the accent on the consonant\_!" But, in

"A´NTLER," Dr. Johnson accented the \_a\_; and, to mark the same

pronunciation, Worcester now writes, "~ANT´LER;" while almost any

prosodist, in scanning, would mark this word "\_~antl~er\_" and call it a

\_trochee\_.[498] Churchill, who is in general a judicious observer, writes

thus: "The \_leading feature\_ in the English language, on which \_it's\_

melody both in prose and verse \_chiefly depends\_, is \_it's accent\_. Every

word in it of \_more than one syllable\_ has one of \_it's\_ syllables

distinguished by this from the rest; the accent being in some cases on the

vowel, in others on the \_consonant that closes the syllable\_; on the vowel,

when it has \_it's\_ long sound; on the consonant, when the vowel is

short."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 181. But to this, as a rule of

accentuation, no attention is in fact paid nowadays. Syllables that have

long vowels not final, very properly take the sign of stress on or after a

consonant or a mute vowel; as, =an´gel, ch=am´ber, sl=ay´er, b=ead´roll,

sl=ea´zy, sl=e=ep´er, sl=e=eve´less, l=ive´ly, m=ind´ful, sl=ight´ly,

sl=id´ing, b=old´ness, gr=oss´ly, wh=ol´ly, =use´less.--See \_Worcester's

Dict.\_

OBS. 18.--It has been seen, that Murray's principles of quantity were

greatly altered by himself, after the first appearance of his grammar. To

have a full and correct view of them, it is necessary to notice something

more than his main text, as revised, with which all his amenders content

themselves, and which he himself thought sufficient for his Abridgement.

The following positions, which, in some of his revisals, he added to the

large grammar, are therefore cited:--

(1.) "Unaccented syllables are generally short: as, '~admíre, bóldn~ess,

sínn~er.' But to this rule there are \_many\_ exceptions: as, 'áls=o, éx=ile,

gángr=ene, úmp=ire, f=oretáste,' &c.

(2.) "When the accent is on the consonant, the syllable is often \_more or

less short\_, as it ends with a \_single consonant\_, or with more than one:

as, 'Sádly, róbber; persíst, mátchless.'

(3.) "When the accent is on a semi-vowel, the time of the syllable may be

protracted, by dwelling upon the \_semi-vowel\_: as, 'Cur´, can´, f~ulfil´'

but when the accent falls on a mute, the syllable \_cannot be lengthened in

the same manner\_: as, 'Búbble, cáptain, tótter.'"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, p. 240; 12mo, 193.

(4.) "In this work, and in the author's Spelling-book, the vowels \_e\_ and

\_o\_, in the first syllable of such words as, behave, prejudge, domain,

propose; and in the second syllable of such as pulley, turkey, borrow,

follow; are considered as \_long vowels\_. The second syllables in such words

as, baby, spicy, holy, fury, are also considered as \_long

syllables\_."--\_Ib.\_, 8vo, p. 241.

(5.) "In the words \_scarecrow, wherefore\_, both the syllables are

\_unquestionably long\_, but not of equal length. We presume \_therefore\_,

that the syllables under consideration, [i.e., those which end with the

sound of \_e\_ or \_o\_ without accent,] may also be properly styled \_long

syllables\_, though their length is not equal to that of some

others."--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, p. 241.

OBS. 19.--Sheridan's "\_infallible rule\_, that no vowel ever has a long

sound in an unaccented syllable," is in striking contrast with three of

these positions, and the exact truth of the matter is with neither author.

But, for the accuracy of his doctrine, Murray appeals to "the authority of

the judicious Walker," which he thinks sufficient to prove any syllable

long whose vowel is called so; while the important distinction suggested by

Walker, in his Principles, No. 529, between "the length or shortness of the

vowels," and "that quantity which constitutes poetry," is entirely

overlooked. It is safe to affirm, that all the accented syllables occurring

in the examples above, are \_long\_; and all the unaccented ones, \_short\_:

for Murray's long syllables vary in length, and his short ones in

shortness, till not only the just proportion, but the actual relation, of

long and short, is evidently lost with some of them. Does not \_match\_ in

"\_match´less\_," \_sad\_ in "\_sad´ly\_," or \_bub\_ in "\_bub´ble\_," require more

time, than \_so\_ in "\_al´so\_," \_key\_ in "\_tur´key\_," or \_ly\_ in "\_ho´ly\_"?

If so, four of the preceding positions are very faulty. And so, indeed, is

the remaining one; for where is the sense of saying, that "when the accent

falls \_on a mute\_, the syllable cannot be lengthened by \_dwelling upon the

semi-vowel\_"? This is an apparent truism, and yet not true. For a semivowel

in the middle or at the beginning of a syllable, may lengthen it as much as

if it stood at the end. "\_Cur\_" and "\_can\_," here given as protracted

syllables, are certainly no longer by usage, and no more susceptible of

protraction, than "\_mat\_" and "\_not\_," "\_art\_" and "\_ant\_," which are among

the author's examples of short quantity. And if a semivowel accented will

make the syllable long, was it not both an error and a self-contradiction,

to give "\_b~onnet\_" and "\_h~unger\_" as examples of quantity \_shortened\_ by

the accent? The syllable \_man\_ has two semivowels; and the letter \_l\_, as

in "\_ful fil´\_," is the most sonorous of consonants; yet, as we see above,

among their false examples of short syllables accented, different authors

have given the words "\_man\_" and "\_man´ner\_," "\_disman´tle\_" and "\_com

pel´\_," "\_mas´ter\_" and "\_let´ter\_," with sundry other sounds which may

easily be lengthened. Sanborn says, "The \_breve\_ distinguishes a short

syllable; as, \_m~anner\_."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 273. Parker and Fox say,

"The Breve (thus ~) is placed over a vowel to indicate \_its short sound\_;

as, St. H~elena."--\_English Gram.\_, Part iii, p. 31. Both explanations of

this sign are defective; and neither has a suitable example. The name "\_St.

H~l=e´n~a\_," as pronounced by Worcester, and as commonly heard, is two

trochees; but "\_Hel´ena\_," for \_Helen\_, having the penult short, takes the

accent on the first syllable, which is thereby \_made long\_, though the

vowel sound is \_called short\_. Even Dr. Webster, who expressly notes the

difference between "long and short \_vowels\_" and "long and short

\_syllables\_," allows himself, on the very same page, to confound them: so

that, of his three examples of a \_short syllable,--"th~at, not,

m~elon,"\_--all are erroneous; two being monosyllables, which any emphasis

must lengthen; and the third,--the word "\_m~el´on\_,"--with the first

syllable marked short, and not the last! See \_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p.

157.

OBS. 20.--Among the latest of our English Grammars, is Chandler's new one

of 1847. The Prosody of this work is fresh from the mint; the author's old

grammar of 1821, which is the nucleus of this, being "confined to Etymology

and Syantax." [sic--KTH] If from anybody the public have a right to expect

correctness in the details of grammar, it is from one who has had the

subject so long and so habitually before him. "\_Accent\_" says this author,

"is \_the\_ stress on a syllable, \_or letter\_."--\_Chandler's Common School

Gram.\_, p. 188. Now, if our less prominent words and syllables require any

force at all, a definition so loose as this, may give accent to some words,

or to all; to some syllables, or to all; to some letters, or to all--except

those which are \_silent\_! And, indeed, whether the stress which

distinguishes some monosyllables from others, is supposed by the writer to

be accent, or emphasis, or both, it is scarcely possible to ascertain from

his elucidations. "The term \_emphasis\_," says he, "is used to denote a

fuller sound of voice \_after\_ certain words that come in \_antithesis\_; that

is, contrast. 'He can \_write\_, but he cannot \_read\_.' Here, \_read\_ and

\_write\_ are \_antithetical\_ (that is, in contrast), and are \_accented\_, or

\_emphasized\_."--P. 189. The word "\_after\_" here may be a misprint for the

word \_upon\_; but no preposition really suits the connexion: the participle

\_impressing\_ or \_affecting\_ would be better. Of \_quantity\_, this work gives

the following account: "The \_quantity\_ of a \_syllable\_ is that time which

is required to pronounce it. A syllable may be \_long\_ or \_short\_. \_Hate\_ is

long, as the vowel \_a\_ is elongated by the final \_e\_; \_hat\_ is short, and

requires about half the time for pronunciation which is used for

pronouncing \_hate\_. So of \_ate, at; bate, bat; cure, cur\_. Though

unaccented syllables are usually short, yet \_many\_ of those which are

accented are short also. The following are short: \_ád\_vent, \_sin´\_ner,

\_sup´\_per. In the following, the unaccented syllables are long: ál\_so\_,

éx\_ile\_, gán\_grene\_, úm\_pire\_. It maybe remarked, that the quantity of a

syllable is short when the accent is on a consonant; as, art´, bon´net,

hun´ger. The \_hyphen\_ (-), placed over a syllable, denotes that it is long:

n=áture. The breve (~) over a syllable, denotes that it is short; as,

d~etr=áct."--\_Chandler's Common School Gram.\_, p. 189. This scheme of

quantity is truly remarkable for its absurdity and confusion. What becomes

of the elongating power of e, without accent or emphasis, as in \_jun´cate,

pal´ate, prel´ate\_? Who does not know that such syllables as "\_at, bat\_,

and \_cur\_" are often long in poetry? What more absurd, than to suppose both

syllables short in such words as, "\_~advent, sin´ner, sup´per\_," and then

give "serm~on, f=ilt~er, sp=ir~it, g=ath~er," and the like, for regular

trochees, with "the first syllable long, and the second short," as does

this author? What more contradictory and confused, than to pretend that the

primal sound of a vowel lengthens an unaccented syllable, and accent on the

consonant shortens an accented one, as if in "\_âl´so\_" the first syllable

must be short and the second long, and then be compelled, by the evidence

of one's senses to mark "ech~o" as a trochee, and "détract" as an iambus?

What less pardonable misnomer, than for a great critic to call the sign of

long quantity a "\_hyphen\_"?

OBS. 21.--The following suggestions found in two of Dr. Webster's grammars,

are not far from the truth: "Most prosodians who have treated particularly

of this subject, have been guilty of a fundamental error, in considering

the movement of English verse as depending on long and short syllables,

formed by long and short vowels. This hypothesis has led them into capital

mistakes. The truth is, many of those syllables which are considered as

\_long\_ in verse, are formed by the shortest vowels in the language; as,

\_strength, health, grand\_. The doctrine that long vowels are necessary to

form long syllables in poetry is at length exploded, and the principles

which regulate the movement of our verse, are explained; viz. \_accent\_ and

\_emphasis\_. Every emphatical word, and every accented syllable, will form

what is called in verse, a long syllable. The unaccented syllables, and

unemphatical monosyllabic words, are considered as short

syllables."--\_Webster's Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 222; \_Improved Gram.\_,

158. Is it not remarkable, that, on the same page with this passage, the

author should have given the first syllable of "\_melon\_" as an example of

\_short\_ quantity?

OBS. 22.--If the principle is true, which every body now takes for granted,

that the foundation of versifying is some distinction pertaining to

syllables; it is plain, that nothing can be done towards teaching the Art

of Measuring Verses, till it be known \_upon what distinction\_ in syllables

our scheme of versification is based, and by what rule or rules the

discrimination is, or ought to be, made. Errors here are central, radical,

fundamental. Hence the necessity of these present disquisitions. Without

some effectual criticism on their many false positions, prosodists may

continue to theorize, dogmatize, plagiarize, and blunder on, as they have

done, indefinitely, and knowledge of the rhythmic art be in no degree

advanced by their productions, new or old. For the supposition is, that in

general the consulters of these various oracles are persons more fallible

still, and therefore likely to be misled by any errors that are not

expressly pointed out to them. In this work, it is assumed, that

\_quantity\_, not laboriously ascertained by "a great variety of rules

applied from the Greek and Latin Prosody," but discriminated on principles

of our own--\_quantity\_, dependent in some degree on the nature and number

of the letters in a syllable, but still more on the presence or absence of

stress--is the true foundation of our metre. It has already been stated,

and perhaps proved, that this theory is as well supported by authority as

any; but, since Lindley Murray, persuaded wrong by the positiveness of

Sheridan, exchanged his scheme of feet formed by quantities, for a new one

of "feet formed by accents"--or, rather, for an impracticable mixture of

both, a scheme of supposed "\_duplicates\_ of each foot"--it has been

becoming more and more common for grammarians to represent the basis of

English versification to be, not the distinction of long and short

quantities, but the recurrence of \_accent\_ at certain intervals. Such is

the doctrine of Butler, Felton, Fowler, S. S. Greene, Hart, Hiley, R. C.

Smith, Weld, Wells, and perhaps others. But, in this, all these writers

contradict themselves; disregard their own definitions of accent; count

monosyllables to be accented or unaccented; displace emphasis from the rank

which Murray and others give it, as "the great regulator of quantity;" and

suppose the length or shortness of syllables not to depend on the presence

or absence of either accent or emphasis; and not to be of much account in

the construction of English verse. As these strictures are running to a

great length, it may be well now to introduce the poetic feet, and to

reserve, for notes under that head, any further examination of opinions as

to what constitutes the \_foundation\_ of verse.

SECTION III.--OF POETIC FEET.

A verse, or line of poetry., consists of successive combinations of

syllables, called \_feet\_. A poetic \_foot\_, in English, consists either of

two or of three syllables, as in the following examples:

1. "C=an t=y | -r~ants b=ut | b~y t=y | -r~ants c=on | -qu~ered

b=e?"--\_Byron\_.

2. "H=ol~y, | h=ol~y, | h=ol~y! | =all th~e | s=aints ~a | -d=ore

th~ee."--\_Heber\_.

3. "And th~e br=eath | ~of th~e D=e | -~it~y c=ir | -cl~ed th~e

ro=om."--\_Hunt\_.

4. "H=ail t~o th~e | chi=ef wh~o ~in | tr=i~umph ~ad |-v=anc~es!"--\_Scott\_.

EXPLANATIONS AND DEFINITIONS.

Poetic feet being arbitrary combinations, contrived merely for the

measuring of verses, and the ready ascertainment of the syllables that suit

each rhythm, there is among prosodists a perplexing diversity of opinion,

as to the \_number\_ which we ought to recognize in our language. Some will

have only two or three; others, four; others, eight; others, twelve. The

dozen are all that can be made of two syllables and of three. Latinists

sometimes make feet of four syllables, and admit sixteen more of these,

acknowledging and naming twenty-eight in all. The \_principal\_ English feet

are the \_Iambus\_, the \_Trochee\_, the \_Anapest\_, and the \_Dactyl\_.

1. The \_Iambus\_, or \_Iamb\_, is a poetic foot consisting of a short syllable

and a long one; as, \_b~etr=ay, c~onf=ess, d~em=and, ~intent, d~egr=ee\_.

2. The \_Trochee\_, or \_Choree\_, is a poetic foot consisting of a long

syllable and a short one; as, \_h=atef~ul, p=ett~ish, l=eg~al, m=eas~ure,

h=ol~y\_.

3. The \_Anapest\_ is a poetic foot consisting of two short syllables and one

long one; as, \_c~ontr~av=ene, ~acqu~i=esce, ~imp~ort=une\_.

4. The \_Dactyl\_ is a poetic foot consisting of one long syllable and two

short ones; as, \_l=ab~our~er, p=oss~ibl~e, w=ond~erf~ul\_.

These are our principal feet, not only because they are oftenest used, but

because each kind, with little or no mixture, forms a distinct order of

numbers, having a peculiar rhythm. Of verse, or poetic measure, we have,

accordingly, four principal kinds, or orders; namely, \_Iambic, Trochaic,

Anapestic\_, and \_Dactylic\_; as in the four lines cited above.

The more pure these several kinds are preserved, the more exact and

complete is the chime of the verse. But exactness being difficult, and its

sameness sometimes irksome, the poets generally indulge some variety; not

so much, however, as to confound the drift of the rhythmical pulsations:

or, if ever these be not made obvious to the reader, there is a grave fault

in the versification.

The \_secondary\_ feet, if admitted at all, are to be admitted only, or

chiefly, as occasional diversifications. Of this class of feet, many

grammarians adopt four; but they lack agreement about the selection.

Brightland took the \_Spondee\_, the \_Pyrrhic\_, the \_Moloss\_, and the

\_Tribrach\_. To these, some now add the other four; namely, the

\_Amphibrach\_, the \_Amphimac\_, the \_Bacchy\_, and the \_Antibacchy\_.

Few, if any, of these feet are really \_necessary\_ to a sufficient

explanation of English verse; and the adopting of so many is liable to the

great objection, that we thereby produce different modes of measuring the

same lines. But, by naming them all, we avoid the difficulty of selecting

the most important; and it is proper that the student should know the

import of all these prosodical terms.

5. A \_Spondee\_ is a poetic foot consisting of two long syllables; as,

\_c=old n=ight, p=o=or s=ouls, ~am~en, shr=ovet=ide.\_

6. A \_Pyrrhic\_ is a poetic foot consisting of two short syllables; as,

presumpt-|\_~uo~us\_, perpet-|\_~u~al\_, unhap-|\_p~il~y\_, inglo-|\_r~io~us\_.

7. A \_Moloss\_ is a poetic foot consisting of three long syllables; as,

\_De~ath's p=ale h=orse,--gre=at wh=ite thr=one,--d=eep d=amp v=a=ult.\_

8. A \_Tribrach\_ is a poetic foot consisting of three short syllables; as,

prohib-|\_~it~or~y\_, unnat-|\_~ur~all~y\_, author-|\_~it~at~ive\_,

innum-|\_~er~abl~e\_.

9. An \_Amphibrach\_ is a poetic foot of three syllables, having both sides

short, the middle long; as, \_~impr=ud~ent, c~ons=id~er, tr~ansp=ort~ed.\_

10. An \_Amphimac, Amphimacer\_, or \_Cretic\_, is a poetic foot of three

syllables, having both sides long, the middle short; as, \_w~ind~ingsh=eet,

l=ife-~est=ate, s=oul-d~is~eased.\_

11. A \_Bacchy\_ is a poetic foot consisting of one short syllable and two

long ones; as, \_th=e wh=ole w~orld,--~a gre=at v=ase,--=of p=ure g=old\_.

12. An \_Antibacchy\_, or \_Hypobacchy\_, is a poetic foot consisting of two

long syllables and a short one; as, \_kn=ight-s=erv~ice, gl=obe-d=ais~y,

gr=ape-flow~er, g=old-b=eat~er\_.

Among the variegations of verse, one emphatic syllable is sometimes counted

for a foot. "When a single syllable is [thus] taken by itself, it is called

a \_Cæsura\_, which is commonly a long syllable." [499]

FOR EXAMPLE:--

"Keeping | \_time, | time, | time\_,

In a | sort of | Runic | \_rhyme\_,

To the | tintin| -nabu| -lation that so | musi| -cally | \_wells\_

From the | \_bells, | bells, | bells, | bells,

Bells, | bells, | bells.\_"

--EDGAR A. POE: \_Union Magazine, for Nov. 1849; Literary World\_,

No. 143.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In defining our poetic feet, many late grammarians substitute the

terms \_accented\_ and \_unaccented\_ for \_long\_ and \_short\_, as did Murray,

after some of the earlier editions of his grammar; the only feet recognized

in his \_second\_ edition being the \_Iambus\_, the \_Trochee\_, the \_Dactyl\_,

and the \_Anapest\_, and all these being formed by \_quantities\_ only. This

change has been made on the supposition, that accent and long quantity, as

well as their opposites, nonaccent and short quantity, may oppose each

other; and that the basis of English verse is not, like that of Latin or

Greek poetry, a distinction in the \_time\_ of syllables, not a difference in

\_quantity\_, but such a course of accenting and nonaccenting as overrides

all relations of this sort, and makes both length and shortness compatible

alike with stress or no stress. Such a theory, I am persuaded, is

untenable. Great authority, however, may be quoted for it, or for its

principal features. Besides the several later grammarians who give it

countenance, even "the judicious Walker," who, in his Pronouncing

Dictionary, as before cited, very properly suggests a difference between

"\_that quantity which constitutes poetry\_," and the mere "\_length or

shortness of vowels\_," when he comes to explain our English accent and

quantity, in his "\_Observations on the Greek and Latin Accent and

Quantity\_," finds "accent perfectly compatible with either long or short

quantity;" (\_Key\_, p. 312;) repudiates that vulgar accent of Sheridan and

others, which "is only a greater force upon one syllable than another;"

(\_Key\_, p. 313;) prefers the doctrine which "makes the elevation or

depression of the voice inseparable from accent;" (\_Key\_, p. 314;) holds

that, "unaccented vowels are frequently pronounced long when the accented

vowels are short;" (\_Key\_, p. 312;) takes long or short \_vowels\_ and long

or short \_syllables\_ to be things everywhere tantamount; saying, "We have

\_no conception\_ of quantity arising from any thing but the nature of the

vowels, as they are pronounced long or short;" (\_ibid.\_;) and again: "Such

long quantity" as consonants may produce with a close or short vowel, "an

English ear \_has not the least idea of\_. Unless the sound of the vowel be

altered, we have \_not any conception\_ of a long or short

syllable."--\_Walker's Key\_, p. 322; and \_Worcester's Octavo Dict.\_, p. 935.

OBS. 2.--In the opinion of Murray, Walker's authority should be thought

sufficient to settle any question of prosodial quantities. "But," it is

added, "there are some critical writers, who dispute the propriety of his

arrangement."--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, p. 241. And well there may be; not

only by reason of the obvious incorrectness of the foregoing positions, but

because the great orthoëpist is not entirely consistent with himself. In

his "\_Preparatory Observations\_," which introduce the very essay above

cited, he avers that, "the different states of the voice," which are

indicated by the comparative terms \_high\_ and \_low, loud\_ and \_soft, quick\_

and \_slow, forcible\_ and \_feeble\_, "may not improperly be called

\_quantities\_ of sound."--\_Walker's Key\_, p. 305. Whoever thinks this,

certainly conceives of quantity as arising from \_several other things\_ than

"the nature of the vowels." Even Humphrey, with whom, "Quantity differs

materially from time," and who defines it, "the weight, or aggregate

quantum of sounds," may find his questionable and unusual "conception" of

it included among these.

OBS. 3.--Walker must have seen, as have the generality of prosodists since,

that such a distinction as he makes between long syllables and short, could

not possibly be the basis of English versification, or determine the

elements of English feet; yet, without the analogy of any known usage, and

contrary to our customary mode of reading the languages, he proposes it as

applicable--and as the only doctrine conceived to be applicable--to Greek

or Latin verse. Ignoring all long or short quantity not formed by what are

called long or short vowels,[500] he suggests, "\_as a last refuge\_," (§25,)

the very doubtful scheme of reading Latin and Greek poetry with the vowels

conformed, agreeably to this English sense of \_long\_ and \_short\_ vowel

sounds, to the ancient rules of quantity. Of such words as \_fallo\_ and

\_ambo\_, pronounced as we usually utter them, he says, "\_nothing can be more

evident\_ than the long quantity of the final vowel though without the

accent, and the short quantity of the initial and accented

syllable."--\_Obs. on Greek and Lat. Accent\_, §23; Key, p. 331. Now the very

reverse of this appears to me to be "evident." The \_a\_, indeed, may be

close or short, while the \_o\_, having its primal or \_name\_ sound, is

\_called\_ long; but the first \_syllable\_, if fully accented, will have

\_twice the time\_ of the second; nor can this proportion be reversed but by

changing the accent, and misplacing it on the latter syllable. Were the

principle \_true\_, which the learned author pronounces so "evident," these,

and all similar words, would constitute \_iambic feet\_; whereas it is plain,

that in English they are \_trochees\_; and in Latin,--where "\_o\_ final is

\_common\_,"--either \_trochees\_ or \_spondees\_. The word \_ambo\_, as every

accurate scholar knows, is always a \_trochee\_, whether it be the Latin

adjective for "\_both\_," or the English noun for "\_a reading desk\_, or

\_pulpit\_."

OBS. 4.--The names of our poetic feet are all of them derived, by change of

endings, from similar names used in Greek, and thence also in Latin; and,

of course, English words and Greek or Latin, so related, are presumed to

stand for things somewhat similar. This reasonable presumption is an

argument, too often disregarded by late grammarians, for considering our

poetic feet to be quantitative, as were the ancient,--not accentual only,

as some will have them,--nor separately both, as some others absurdly

teach. But, whatever may be the difference or the coincidence between

English verse and Greek or Latin, it is certain, that, in \_our\_ poetic

division of syllables, strength and length must always concur, and any

scheme which so contrasts accent with long quantity, as to confound the

different species of feet, or give contradictory names to the same foot,

must be radically and grossly defective. In the preceding section it has

been shown, that the principles of quantity adopted by Sheridan, Murray,

and others, being so erroneous as to be wholly nugatory, were as unfit to

be the basis of English verse, as are Walker's, which have just been spoken

of. But, the puzzled authors, instead of reforming these their elementary

principles, so as to adapt them to the quantities and rhythms actually

found in our English verse, have all chosen to assume, that our poetical

feet in general \_differ radically\_ from those which the ancients called by

the same names; and yet the \_coincidence\_ found--the "\_exact sameness of

nature\_" acknowledged--is sagely said by some of them \_to duplicate each

foot into two distinct sorts for our especial advantage\_; while the

\_difference\_, which they presume to exist, or which their false principles

of accent and quantity would create, between feet quantitative and feet

accentual, (both of which are allowed to us,) would \_implicate different

names\_, and convert foot into foot--iambs, trochees, spondees, pyrrhics,

each species into some other--till all were confusion!

OBS. 5.--In Lindley Murray's revised scheme of feet, we have first a

paragraph from Sheridan's Rhetorical Grammar, suggesting that the ancient

poetic measures were formed of syllables divided "into \_long\_ and \_short\_,"

and affirming, what is not very true, that, for the forming of ours, "In

English, syllables are divided into \_accented\_ and \_unaccented\_."--\_Rhet.

Gram.\_, p. 64; \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, 253; \_Hart's Gram.\_, 182; and others.

Now \_some\_ syllables are accented, and others are unaccented; but syllables

singly significant, i.e., monosyllables, which are very numerous, belong to

neither of these classes. The contrast is also comparatively new; our

language had much good poetry, long before \_accented\_ and \_unaccented\_ were

ever thus misapplied in it. Murray proceeds thus: "When the feet are

formed by \_accent on vowels\_, they are \_exactly of the same nature as

ancient feet\_, and have the same just quantity in their syllables. So that,

in this respect, \_we have all that the ancients had\_, and something which

they had not. We have in fact \_duplicates of each foot\_, yet with such a

\_difference\_, as to fit them for \_different purposes\_, to be applied at our

pleasure."--\_Ib.\_, p. 253. Again: "\_We\_ have observed, that \_English verse

is composed of feet formed by accent\_; and that when the accent falls on

\_vowels\_, the feet are equivalent to those formed by quantity."--\_Ib.\_, p.

258. And again: "From the preceding view of English versification, we may

see \_what a copious stock of materials\_ it possesses. For \_we are not only

allowed the use of all the ancient poetic feet\_, in our \_heroic measure\_,

but we have, as before observed, \_duplicates of each\_, agreeing in

movement, though differing in measure,[501] \_and which\_ make different

impressions on the ear; \_an opulence peculiar\_ to our language, \_and which\_

may be the source of a boundless variety."--\_Ib.\_, p. 259.

OBS. 6.--If it were not dullness to overlook the many errors and

inconsistencies of this scheme, there should be thought a rare ingenuity in

thus turning them all to the great advantage and peculiar riches of the

English tongue! Besides several grammatical faults, elsewhere noticed,

these extracts exhibit, first, the inconsistent notion--of "\_duplicates

with a difference\_;" or, as Churchill expresses it, of "\_two distinct

species of each foot\_;" (\_New Gram.\_, p. 189;) and here we are gravely

assured withal, that these \_different sorts\_, which have no separate names,

are sometimes forsooth, "\_exactly of the same nature\_"! Secondly, it is

incompatibly urged, that, "English verse is \_composed of feet formed by

accent\_," and at the same time shown, that it partakes largely of \_feet

"formed by quantity\_." Thirdly, if "\_we have all that the ancients had\_,"

of poetic feet, and "\_duplicates of each\_," "\_which they had not\_" we are

encumbered with an enormous surplus; for, of the twenty-eight Latin

feet,[502] mentioned by Dr. Adam and others, Murray never gave the names of

more than eight, and his early editions acknowledged \_but four\_, and these

\_single\_, not "\_duplicates\_"--\_unigenous\_, not severally of "\_two

species\_." Fourthly, to suppose a multiplicity of feet to be "\_a copious

stock of materials\_" for versification, is as absurd as to imagine, in any

other case, a variety of \_measures\_ to be materials for producing the thing

measured. Fifthly, "\_our heroic measure\_" is \_iambic pentameter\_, as Murray

himself shows; and, to give to this, "\_all the ancient poetic feet\_," is to

bestow most of them where they are least needed. Sixthly, "feet \_differing

in measure\_," so as to "\_make different impressions on the ear\_," cannot

well be said to "\_agree in movement\_," or to be "\_exactly of the same

nature!\_"

OBS. 7.--Of the foundation of metre, \_Wells\_ has the following account:

"The \_quantity\_ of a syllable is the relative time occupied in its

pronunciation. A syllable may be \_long\_ in quantity, as \_fate\_; or \_short\_,

as \_let\_. The Greeks and Romans based their poetry on the quantity of

syllables; but modern versification depends chiefly upon accent, the

quantity of syllables being almost wholly disregarded."--\_School Gram.\_,

1st Ed., p. 185. Again: "\_Versification\_ is a measured arrangement of

words[,] in which the \_accent\_ is made to recur at certain regular

intervals. This definition applies only to modern verse. In Greek and Latin

poetry, it is the regular recurrence of \_long syllables\_, according to

settled laws, which constitutes verse."--\_Ib.\_, p. 186. The contrasting of

ancient and modern versification, since Sheridan and Murray each contrived

an example of it, has become very common in our grammars, though not in

principle very uniform; and, however needless where a correct theory

prevails, it is, to such views of accent and quantity as were adopted by

these authors, and by Walker, or their followers, but a necessary

counterpart. The notion, however, that English verse has less regard to

quantity than had that of the old Greeks or Romans, is a mere assumption,

originating in a false idea of what quantity is; and, that Greek or Latin

verse was less accentual than is ours, is another assumption, left

proofless too, of what many authors disbelieve and contradict. Wells's

definition of quantity is similar to mine, and perhaps unexceptionable; and

yet his idea of the thing, as he gives us reason to think, was very

different, and very erroneous. His examples imply, that, like Walker, he

had "no conception of quantity arising from any thing but the nature of the

vowels,"--no conception of a long or a short \_syllable\_ without what is

called a long or a short \_vowel sound\_. That "the Greeks and Romans based

their poetry on quantity" of that restricted sort,--on \_such "quantity"\_ as

"\_fate\_" and "\_let\_" may serve to discriminate,--is by no means probable;

nor would it be more so, were a hundred great modern masters to declare

themselves ignorant of any other. The words do not distinguish at all the

long and short quantities even of our own language; much less can we rely

on them for an idea of what is long or short in other tongues. Being

monosyllables, both are long with emphasis, both short without it; and,

could they be accented, accent too would lengthen, as its absence would

shorten both. In the words \_phosphate\_ and \_streamlet\_, we have the same

sounds, both short; in \_lettuce\_ and \_fateful\_, the same, both long. This

cannot be disproved. And, in the scansion of the following stanza from

Byron, the word "\_Let\_" twice used, is to be reckoned a \_long\_ syllable,

and not (as Wells would have it) a short one:

"Cavalier! and man of worth!

\_Let\_ these words of mine go forth;

\_Let\_ the Moorish Monarch know,

That to him I nothing owe:

Wo is me, Alhama!"

OBS. 8.--In the English grammars of Allen H. Weld, works remarkable for

their egregious inaccuracy and worthlessness, yet honoured by the Boston

school committee of 1848 and '9, the author is careful to say, "Accent

should not be confounded with emphasis. \_Emphasis\_ is a stress of voice on

a word in a sentence, to mark its importance. \_Accent\_ is a stress of voice

on a syllable in a word." Yet, within seven lines of this, we are told,

that, "A \_verse\_ consists of a certain number of \_accented and unaccented

syllables\_, arranged according to certain rules."--\_Weld's English

Grammar\_, 2d Edition, p. 207; "Abridged Edition," p. 137. A doctrine cannot

be contrived, which will more evidently or more extensively confound accent

with emphasis, than does this! In English verse, on an average, about three

quarters of the words are monosyllables, which, according to Walker, "have

no accent," certainly none distinguishable from emphasis; hence, in fact,

our syllables are no more "divided into \_accented\_ and \_unaccented\_" as

Sheridan and Murray would have them, than into \_emphasized\_ and

\_unemphasized\_, as some others have thought to class them. Nor is this

confounding of accent with emphasis at all lessened or palliated by

teaching with Wells, in its justification, that, "The term \_accent\_ is also

applied, in poetry, to \_the\_ stress laid on monosyllabic words."--\_Wells's

School Gram.\_, p. 185; 113th Ed., §273. What better is this, than to apply

the term \_emphasis\_ to the accenting of syllables in poetry, or to all the

stress in question, as is virtually done in the following citation? "In

English, verse is regulated by the \_emphasis\_, as there should be one

\_emphatic\_ syllable in every foot; for it is by the interchange of

\_emphatick\_ and \_non-emphatick\_ syllables, that verse grateful to the ear

is formed."--\_Thomas Coar's E. Gram.\_, p. 196. In Latin poetry, the longer

words predominate, so that, in Virgil's verse, not one word in five is a

monosyllable; hence accent, if our use of it were adjusted to the Latin

quantities, might have much more to do with Latin verse than with English.

With the following lines of Shakspeare, for example, accent has, properly

speaking, no connexion;

"Good friend, thou hast no cause to say so yet;

But thou shalt have; and creep time ne'er so slow,

Yet it shall come, for me to do thee good.

I had a thing to say,--But let it go."--\_King John\_, Act iii, Sc. 3.

OBS. 9.--T. O. Churchill, after stating that the Greek and Latin rhythms

are composed of syllables long and short, sets ours in contrast with them

thus: "These terms are commonly employed also in speaking of English verse,

though it is marked, \_not by long and short\_, but by accented and

unaccented syllables; the accented syllables being \_accounted\_ long; the

unaccented, short."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 183. This, though far from

being right, is very different from the doctrine of Murray or Sheridan;

because, in practice, or the scansion of verses, it comes to the \_same

results\_ as to suppose all our feet to be "formed by quantity." To

\_account\_ syllables long or short and not \_believe\_ them to \_be\_ so, is a

ridiculous inconsistency: it is a shuffle in the name of science.

OBS. 10.--Churchill, though not apt to be misled by others' errors, and

though his own scanning has no regard to the principle, could not rid

himself of the notion, that the quantity of a syllable must depend on the

"vowel sound." Accordingly he says, "Mr. Murray \_justly observes\_, that our

accented syllables, or those reckoned long:, may have either \_a long or [a]

short vowel sound\_, so that we have \_two distinct species\_ of each

foot."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 189. The obvious impossibility of "two distinct

species" in one,--or, as Murray has it, of "duplicates fitted for different

purposes,"--should have prevented the teaching and repeating of this

nonsense, propound it who might. The commender himself had not such faith

in it as is here implied. In a note, too plainly incompatible with this

praise, he comments thus: "Mr. Murray adds, that this is 'an opulence

\_peculiar\_ to our language, and which may be the source of a boundless

variety:' a point, on which, I confess, \_I have long entertained doubts\_. I

am inclined to suspect that the English mode of reading verse \_is

analogous\_ to that of the ancient Greeks and Romans. Dion. Hal., \_de Comp.,

Verb\_. §xi, speaks of the \_rhythm of verse differing\_ from the proper

measure of the syllables, and often reversing it: does not this imply, that

the ancients, contrary to the opinion of the learned author of

Metronariston, read verse as we do?"--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 393, note

329.

OBS. 11.--The nature, chief sources, and true distinction of \_quantity\_, at

least as it pertains to our language, I have set forth with clearness,

first in the short chapter on Utterance, and again, more fully in this,

which treats of Versification; but that the syllables, long and short, of

the old Greek and Latin poets, or the feet they made of them, are to be

expounded on precisely the same principles that apply to ours. I have not

deemed it necessary to affirm or to deny. So far as the same laws are

applicable, let them be applied. This important property of

syllables,--their \_quantity\_, or relative time,--which is the basis of all

rhythm, is, as my readers have seen, very variously treated, and in general

but ill appreciated, by our English prosodists, who ought, at least in this

their own province, to understand it all alike, and as it is; and so common

among the erudite is the confession of Walker, that "the accent and

quantity of the ancients" are, to modern readers, "obscure and mysterious,"

that it will be taken as a sign of arrogance and superficiality, to pretend

to a very certain knowledge of them. Nor is the difficulty confined to

Latin and Greek verse: the poetry of our own ancestors, from any remote

period, is not easy of scansion. Dr. Johnson, in his History of the English

Language, gave examples, with this remark: "Of the \_Saxon\_ poetry some

specimen is necessary, though our ignorance of the laws of their metre and

the quantities of their syllables, \_which it would be very difficult,

perhaps impossible, to recover\_, excludes us from that pleasure which the

old bards undoubtedly gave to their contemporaries."

OBS. 12.--The imperfect measures of "the father of English poetry," are

said by Dryden to have been \_adapted to the ears\_ of the rude age which

produced them. "The verse of Chaucer," says he, "I confess, is not

harmonious to us; but it is like the eloquence of one whom Tacitus

commends, it was \_auribus istius temporis accommodata\_:' they who lived

with him, and sometime after him, thought it musical; and it continues so

even in our judgment, if compared with the numbers of Lidgate and Gower,

his contemporaries: there is the rude sweetness of a Scotch tune in it,

which is natural and pleasing, though not perfect. It is true, I cannot go

so far as he who published the last edition of him; for he would make us

believe that the fault is in \_our ears\_, and that there were really ten

syllables in a verse where we find but nine: but this opinion is not worth

confuting; it is so gross and obvious an error, that common sense (which is

a rule in every thing but matters of faith and revelation) must convince

the reader that equality of numbers in every verse, which we call Heroic,

was either not known, or not always practised in Chaucer's age. It were an

easy matter to produce some thousands of his verses, which are lame for

want of half a foot, and sometimes a whole one, and which no pronunciation

can make otherwise. We can only say, that he lived in the infancy of our

poetry, and that nothing is brought to perfection at the first."--\_British

Poets\_, Vol. iii, p. 171.

OBS. 13.--Dryden appears to have had more faith in the ears of his own age

than in those of an earlier one; but Poe, of our time, himself an ingenious

versifier, in his Notes upon English Verse, conveys the idea that all ears

are alike competent to appreciate the elements of metre. "Quantity,"

according to his dogmatism, "is a point in the investigation of which the

lumber of mere learning may be dispensed with, if ever in any. \_Its

appreciation\_" says he, "\_is universal\_. It appertains to no region, nor

race, nor era in especial. To melody and to harmony the Greeks hearkened

with ears precisely similar to those which we employ, for similar purposes,

at present; and a pendulum at Athens would have vibrated much after the

same fashion as does a pendulum in the city of Penn."--\_The Pioneer\_, Vol.

i. p. 103. Supposing here not even the oscillations of the same pendulum to

be more uniform than are the nature and just estimation of quantity the

world over, this author soon after expounds his idea of the thing as

follows: "I have already said that all syllables, in metre, are either long

or short. Our usual prosodies maintain that a long syllable is equal, in

its time, to two short ones; this, however, is but an approach to the

truth. It should be here observed that the quantity of an English syllable

\_has no dependence upon\_ the sound of its vowel or dipthong [diphthong],

but [depends] chiefly upon \_accentuation\_. Monosyllables are exceedingly

variable, and, for the most part, may be either long or short, to suit the

demand of the rhythm. In polysyllables, the accented \_ones\_ [say,

\_syllables\_] are always long, while those which immediately precede or

succeed them, are always short. \_Emphasis\_ will render any short syllable

long."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 105. In penning the last four sentences, the writer

must have had Brown's Institutes of English Grammar before him, and open at

page 235.

OBS. 14.--Sheridan, in his Rhetorical Grammar, written about 1780, after

asserting that a distinction of accent, and not of quantity, marks the

movement of English verse, proceeds as follows: "From not having examined

the peculiar genius of our tongue, our Prosodians have fallen into a

variety of errors; some having adopted the rules of our neighbours, the

French; and others having had recourse to those of the ancients; though

neither of them, in reality, would square with our tongue, on account of an

essential difference \_between them\_. [He means, "\_between each language and

ours\_," and should have said so.] With regard to the French, they measured

verses by the number of syllables whereof they were composed, on account of

a constitutional defect in their tongue, which rendered it incapable of

numbers formed by poetic feet. For it has neither accent nor quantity

suited to the purpose; the syllables of their words being for the most part

equally accented; and the number of long syllables being out of all

proportion greater than that of the short. Hence for a long time it was

supposed, \_as it is by most people at present\_, that our verses were

composed, not of feet, but syllables; and accordingly they \_are

denominated\_ verses often, eight, six, or four syllables, \_even to this

day\_. Thus have we lost sight of the great advantage which our language has

given us over the French, in point of poetic numbers, by its being capable

of a geometrical proportion, on which the harmony of versification depends;

and blindly reduced ourselves to that of the arithmetical kind which

contains no natural power of pleasing the ear. And hence like the French,

our chief pleasure in verse arises from the poor ornament of

rhyme."--\_Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.\_, p. 64.

OBS. 15.--In a recent work on this subject, Sheridan is particularly

excepted, and he alone, where Hallam, Johnson, Lord Kames, and other

"Prosodians" in general, are charged with "astonishing ignorance of the

first principles of our verse;" and, at the same time, he is as

particularly commended of having "especially insisted on the subject of

Quantity."--\_Everett's English Versification, Preface\_, p. 6. That the

rhetorician was but slenderly entitled to these compliments, may plainly

appear from the next paragraph of his Grammar just cited; for therein he

mistakingly represents it as a central error, to regard our poetic feet as

being "formed by quantity" at all. "Some few of our Prosodians," says he,

"finding this to be an error, and that our verses were really composed of

feet, not syllables, without farther examination, boldly applied all the

rules of the Latin prosody to our versification; though scarce any of them

answered exactly, and some of them were utterly incompatible with the

genius of our tongue. \_Thus because the Roman feet were formed by quantity,

they asserted the same of ours, denominating all the accented syllables

long; whereas I have formerly shewn, that the accent, in some cases, as

certainly makes the syllable on which it is laid, short, as in others it

makes it long\_. And their whole theory of quantity, borrowed from the

Roman, in which they endeavour to establish the proportion of long and

short, as immutably fixed to the syllables of words constructed in a

certain way, at once falls to the ground; when it is shewn, that the

quantity of our syllables is \_perpetually varying with the sense\_, and is

\_for the most part regulated by\_ EMPHASIS: which has been fully proved in

the course of Lectures on the Art of reading Verse; where it has been also

shewn, that \_this very circumstance\_ has given us an \_amazing advantage

over the ancients\_ in the point of poetic numbers."--\_Sheridan's

Rhetorical Gram.\_, p. 64.

OBS. 16.--The lexicographer here claims to have "\_shewn\_" or "\_proved\_,"

what he had only \_affirmed\_, or \_asserted\_. Erroneously taking the quality

of the vowel for the quantity of the syllable, he had suggested, in his

confident way, that short quantity springs from the accenting of

\_consonants\_, and long quantity, from the accenting of \_vowels\_--a doctrine

which has been amply noticed and refuted in a preceding section of the

present chapter. Nor is he, in what is here cited, consistent with himself.

For, in the first place, nothing comes nearer than this doctrine of his, to

an "endeavour to establish the proportion of long and short, as immutably

fixed to the syllables of words constructed in a certain way"! Next,

although he elsewhere contrasts accent and emphasis, and supposes them

different, he either confounds them in reference to verse, or contradicts

himself by ascribing to each the chief control over quantity. And, lastly,

if our poetic feet are not quantitative, not formed of syllables long and

short, as were the Roman, what "advantage over the ancients," can we derive

from the fact, that quantity is regulated by stress, whether accent or

emphasis?

OBS. 17.--We have, I think, no prosodial treatise of higher pretensions

than Erastus Everett's "System of English Versification," first published

in 1848. This gentleman professes to have borrowed no idea but what he has

regularly quoted. "He mentions this, that it may not be supposed that this

work is a compilation. It will be seen," says he, "how great a share of it

is original; and the author, having deduced his rules from the usage of the

great poets, has the best reason for being confident of their

correctness."--\_Preface\_, p. 5. Of the place to be filled by this System,

he has the following conception: "It is thought to supply an important

desideratum. It is a matter of surprise to the foreign student, who

attempts the study of English poetry and the structure of its verse, to

find that \_we have no work on which he can rely as authority on this

subject\_. In the other modern languages, the most learned philologers have

treated of the subject of versification, in all its parts. In English

alone, in a language which possesses a body of poetical literature more

extensive, as well as more valuable than any other modern language, not

excepting the Italian, \_the student has no rules to guide him\_, but a few

meagre and incorrect outlines appended to elementary text-books." Then

follows this singularly inconsistent exception: "We must except from this

remark two works, published in the latter part of the sixteenth century.

But as they were written before the poetical language of the English tongue

was fixed, and as the rules of verse were not then settled, these works can

be of little practical utility."--\_Preface\_, p. 1. The works thus excepted

as of \_reliable authority without practical utility\_, are "a short tract by

\_Gascoyne\_," doubtless \_George Gascoigne's\_ 'Notes of Instruction

concerning the making of Verse or Rhyme in English,' published in 1575, and

Webbe's 'Discourse of English Poetry,' dated 1586, neither of which does

the kind exceptor appear to have ever seen! Mention is next made,

successively, of Dr. Carey, of Dryden, of Dr. Johnson, of Blair, and of

Lord Kames. "To these \_guides\_," or at least to the last two, "the author

is indebted for many valuable hints;" yet he scruples not to say, "Blair

betrays a paucity of knowledge on this subject;"--"Lord Kames has slurred

over the subject of Quantity," and "shown an unpardonable ignorance of the

first principles of Quantity in our verse;"--and, "Even Dr. Johnson speaks

of syllables in such a manner as would lead us to suppose that he was in

the same error as Kames. These inaccuracies," it is added, "can be

accounted for only from the fact that Prosodians have not thought

\_Quantity\_ of sufficient importance to merit their attention."--See

\_Preface\_, p. 4-6.

OBS. 18.--Everett's Versification consists of seventeen chapters, numbered

consecutively, but divided into two parts, under the two titles Quantity

and Construction. Its specimens of verse are numerous, various, and

beautiful. Its modes of scansion--the things chiefly to be taught--though

perhaps generally correct, are sometimes questionable, and not always

consonant with the writer's own rules of quantity. From the citations

above, one might expect from this author such an exposition of quantity, as

nobody could either mistake or gainsay; but, as the following platform will

show, his treatment of this point is singularly curt and incomplete. He is

so sparing of words as not even to have given a \_definition\_ of quantity.

He opens his subject thus: "VERSIFICATION is the proper arrangement of

words in \_a line\_ according to \_their quantity\_, and the disposition of

\_these lines in\_ couplets, stanzas, or in blank verse, in such order, and

according to such rules, as are sanctioned by usage.--A FOOT is a

combination of two or \_more\_ syllables, whether long or short.--A LINE is

one foot, or more than one.--The QUANTITY of each \_word\_ depends on its

\_accent\_. In words of more than one syllable, all accented syllables are

long, and all unaccented syllables are short. Monosyllables are long or

short, according to the following Rules:--1st. All Nouns, Adjectives,

Verbs, and Participles are long.--2nd. The articles are always short.--3rd,

The Pronouns are long or short, according to \_emphasis\_.--4th.

Interjections and Adverbs are generally long, but sometimes \_made short by

emphasis\_.--5th. Prepositions and Conjunctions are almost always \_short\_,

but sometimes \_made long by emphasis\_."--\_English Versification\_, p. 13.

None of these principles of quantity are unexceptionable; and whoever

follows them implicitly, will often differ not only from what is right, but

from their author himself in the analysis of verses. Nor are they free from

important antagonisms. "Emphasis," as here spoken of, not only clashes with

"accent," but contradicts itself, by making some syllables long and some

short; and, what is more mysteriously absurd, the author says, "It

\_frequently happens\_ that syllables \_long by\_ QUANTITY become \_short by\_

EMPHASIS."--\_Everett's Eng. Versif.\_, 1st Ed., p. 99. Of this, he takes the

first syllable of the following line, namely, "the word \_bids\_," to be an

example:

"B~ids m~e l=ive b~ut t=o h=ope f~or p~ost=er~it~y's pr=aise."

OBS. 19.--In the American Review, for May, 1848, Everett's System of

Versification is named as "an apology and occasion"--not for a critical

examination of this or any other scheme of prosody--but for the

promulgation of a new one, a rival theory of English metres, "the

principles and laws" of which the writer promises, "at an other time" more

fully "to develop." The article referred to is entitled, "\_The Art of

Measuring Verses\_." The writer, being designated by his initials, "J. D.

W.," is understood to be James D. Whelpley, editor of the Review. Believing

Everett's principal doctrines to be radically erroneous, this critic

nevertheless excuses them, because he thinks we have nothing better! "The

views supported in the work itself," says his closing paragraph, "\_are not,

indeed, such as we would subscribe to, nor can we admit the numerous

analyses of the English metres which it contains to be correct\_; yet, as it

is as complete in design and execution as anything that has yet appeared on

the subject, and well calculated to excite the attention, and direct the

inquiries, of English scholars, to the study of our own metres, we shall

even pass it by without a word of criticism."--\_American Review, New

Series\_, Vol. I, p. 492.

OBS. 20.--Everett, although, as we have seen, he thought proper to deny

that the student of English versification had any well authorized "rules to

guide him," still argues that, "The laws of our verse are just as fixed,

and may be as clearly laid down, if we but attend to the usage of the great

Poets, as are the laws of our syntax."--\_Preface\_, p. 7. But this critic,

of the American Review, ingenious though he is in many of his remarks,

flippantly denies that our English Prosody has either authorities or

principles which one ought to respect; and accordingly cares so little whom

he contradicts, that he is often inconsistent with himself. Here is a

sample: "As there are \_no established authorities\_ in this art, and,

indeed, \_no acknowledged principles\_--every rhymester being permitted to

\_invent\_ his own \_method\_, and write by \_instinct\_ or \_imitation\_--the

critic feels quite at liberty to say just what he pleases, and \_offer his

private observations\_ as though these were really of some moment."--\_Am.

Rev.\_, Vol. i, p. 484. In respect to writing, "\_to invent\_," and \_to

"imitate\_," are repugnant ideas; and so are, \_after a "method\_," and "\_by

instinct\_." Again, what sense is there in making the "liberty" of

publishing one's "private observations" to depend on the presumed absence

of rivals? That the author did not lack confidence in the general

applicability of his speculations, subversive though they are of the best

and most popular teaching on this subject, is evident from the following

sentence: "We intend, also, that if these principles, with the others

previously expressed, are true in the given instances, \_they are equally

true for all languages and all varieties of metre\_, even to the denial that

\_any\_ poetic metres, founded on other principles, can properly

exist."--\_Ib.\_, p. 491

OBS. 21.--J. D. W. is not one of those who discard quantity and supply

accent in expounding the nature of metre; and yet he does not coincide very

nearly with any of those who have heretofore made quantity the basis of

poetic numbers. His views of the rhythmical elements being in several

respects \_peculiar\_, I purpose briefly to notice them here, though some of

the peculiarities of this new "\_Art of Measuring Verses\_," should rather be

quoted under the head of \_Scanning\_, to which they more properly belong.

"Of every species of beauty," says this author, "and more especially of the

beauty of sounds, \_continuousness\_ is the \_first element\_; a succession of

\_pulses\_ of sound becomes agreeable, only when the breaks or intervals

cease to be heard." Again: "Quantity, or the \_division into measures of

time\_, is a \_second element\_ of verse; each line must be \_stuffed out with

sounds\_, to a certain fullness and plumpness, that will sustain the voice,

and force it to dwell upon the sounds."--\_Rev.\_, p. 485. The first of these

positions is subsequently contradicted, or very largely qualified, by the

following: "So, the line of significant sounds, in a verse, is also marked

by \_accents\_, or \_pulses\_, and divided into portions called \_feet\_. These

are necessary and natural for the very simple reason that \_continuity by

itself is tedious\_; and the greatest pleasure arises from the union of

continuity with \_variety\_. [That is, with "\_interruption\_," as he elsewhere

calls it!] In the line,

'Full màny a tàle theír mùsic tèlls,'

there are at least four accents or stresses of the voice, with faint

\_pauses\_ after them, just enough to separate the continuous stream of sound

into these four parts, to be read thus:

Fullman--yataleth--eirmus--ictells,[503]

by which, new combinations of sound are produced, of a singularly musical

character. It is evident from the inspection of the above line, that the

division of the feet by the accents is quite independent of the division of

words by the sense. The sounds are melted into continuity, and \_re-divided

again\_ in a manner agreeable to the musical ear."--\_Ib.\_, p. 486.

Undoubtedly, the due formation of our poetic feet occasions both a blending

of some words and a dividing of others, in a manner unknown to prose; but

still we have the authority of this writer, as well as of earlier ones, for

saying, "Good verse requires to be read \_with the natural quantites

[sic--KTH] of the syllables\_," (p. 487,) a doctrine with which that of the

\_redivision\_ appears to clash. If the example given be read with any regard

to the \_cæsural pause\_, as undoubtedly it should be, the \_th\_ of \_their\_

cannot be joined, as above, to the word \_tale\_; nor do I see any propriety

in joining the \_s\_ of \_music\_ to the third foot rather than to the fourth.

Can a theory which turns topsyturvy the whole plan of syllabication, fail

to affect "the \_natural quantities\_ of syllables?"

OBS. 22--Different modes of reading verse, may, without doubt, change the

quantities of very many syllables. Hence a correct mode of reading, as well

as a just theory of measure, is essential to correct scansion, or a just

discrimination of the poetic feet. It is a very common opinion, that

English verse has but few spondees; and the doctrine of Brightland has been

rarely disputed, that, "\_Heroic Verses\_ consist of five \_short\_, and five

\_long\_ Syllables \_intermixt\_, but not so very strictly as never to alter

that order."--\_Gram.\_, 7th Ed., p. 160.[504] J. D. W., being a heavy

reader, will have each line so "\_stuffed out with sounds\_," and the

consonants so syllabled after the vowels, as to give to our heroics three

spondees for every two iambuses; and lines like the following, which, with

the elisions, I should resolve into four iambuses, and without them, into

three iambuses and one anapest, he supposes to consist severally of four

spondees:--

"'When coldness wraps this suffering clay,

Ah! whither strays the immortal mind?'

[These are] to be read," according to this prosodian,

"Whencoldn--esswrapsth--issuff'r--ingclay,

Ah! whith--erstraysth'--immort--almind?"

"The verse," he contends, "is perceived to consist of \_six\_ [probably he

meant to say \_eight\_] heavy syllables, each composed of a vowel followed by

a group of consonantal sounds, the whole measured into four equal feet. The

movement is what is called spondaic, a spondee being a foot of two heavy

sounds. The absence of short syllables gives the line a peculiar weight and

solemnity suited to the sentiment, and doubtless prompted by

it."--\_American Review\_, Vol. i, p. 487. Of his theory, he subsequently

says: "It maintains that good English verse is as thoroughly quantitative

as the Greek, though it be \_much more heavy and spondaic\_."--\_Ib.\_, p.

491.[505]

OBS. 23--For the determining of quantities and feet, this author borrows

from some old Latin grammar three or four rules, commonly thought

inapplicable to our tongue, and, mixing them up with other speculations,

satisfies himself with stating that the "Art of Measuring Verses" requires

yet the production of many more such! But, these things being the essence

of his principles, it is proper to state them \_in his own words\_: "A short

vowel sound followed by a double consonantal sound, usually makes a \_long\_

quantity;[506] so also does a long vowel like \_y\_ in \_beauty\_, before a

consonant. The \_metrical accents\_, which \_often differ from the prosaic\_,

mostly fall upon the heavy sounds; \_which must also be prolonged in

reading\_, and never slurred or lightened, unless to help out a bad verse.

In our language \_the groupings of the consonants furnish a great number of

spondaic feet\_, and give the language, especially its more ancient forms,

as in the verse of Milton and the prose of Lord Bacon, a grand and solemn

character. One vowel followed by another, unless the first be \_naturally

made long\_ in the reading, makes a short quantity, as in \_th[=e] old\_. So,

also, a short vowel followed by a single short consonant, gives a short

\_time\_ or \_quantity\_, as in \_tö give\_. [Fist] A great variety of rules for

the detection of long and short quantities \_have yet to be invented\_, or

applied from the Greek and Latin prosody. \_In all languages they are of

course the same\_, making due allowance for difference of organization; but

it is as absurd to suppose that the Greeks should have a system of prosody

differing in principle from our own, as that their rules of musical harmony

should be different from the modern. Both result from the nature of the ear

and of \_the organ of speech\_, and are consequently \_the same\_ in all ages

and nations."--\_Am. Rev.\_, Vol. i, p. 488.

OBS. 24.--QUANTITY is here represented as "\_time\_" only. In this author's

first mention of it, it is called, rather less accurately, "\_the division

into measures of time\_." With too little regard for either of these

conceptions, he next speaks of it as including both "\_time and accent\_."

But I have already shown that "\_accents\_ or \_stresses\_" cannot pertain to

\_short\_ syllables, and therefore cannot be ingredients of quantity. The

whole article lacks that \_clearness\_ which is a prime requisite of a sound

theory. Take all of the writer's next paragraph as an example of this

defect: "The two elements of musical metre, \_time\_ and \_accent\_, both

together constituting \_quantity\_, are \_equally\_ elements of the metre of

verse. Each \_iambic\_ foot or metre, is marked by a swell of the voice,

concluding abruptly in an \_accent\_, or \_interruption\_, on the \_last sound\_

of the foot; or, [omit this 'or:' it is improper,] in metres of the

\_trochaic\_ order, in such words as \_dandy, handy, bottle, favor, labor\_, it

[the foot] begins with a heavy accented sound, and declines to a faint or

light one at the close. The line is thus composed of a series of swells or

waves of sound, \_concluding and beginning alike\_. The \_accents\_, or points

at which the voice is most forcibly exerted in the feet, \_being the

divisions of time\_, by which a part of its musical character is given to

the verse, are \_usually made to coincide\_, in our language, with the

accents of the words as they are spoken; which [coincidence] diminishes the

musical character of our verse. In Greek hexameters and Latin hexameters,

on the contrary, this coincidence is avoided, as tending to monotony and a

prosaic character."--\_Ibid.\_

OBS. 25.--The passage just cited represents "\_accent\_" or "\_accents\_" not

only as partly constituting \_quantity\_, but as being, in its or their turn,

"\_the divisions of time\_;"--as being also stops, pauses, or

"\_interruptions\_" of sound else continuous;--as being of two sorts,

"\_metrical\_" and "\_prosaic\_," which "usually coincide," though it is said,

they "often differ," and their "interference" is "very frequent;"--as being

"the points" of stress "in the \_feet\_," but not always such in "the

\_words\_," of verse;--as striking different feet differently, "each \_iambic\_

foot" on the latter syllable and every \_trochee\_ on the former, yet

causing, in each line, only such waves of sound as conclude and begin

"\_alike\_;"--as coinciding with the long quantities and "\_the prosaic

accents\_," in iambics and trochaics, yet not coinciding with these

always;--as giving to verse "a part of its musical character," yet

\_diminishing\_ that character, by their usual coincidence with "\_the prose

accents\_;"--as being kept distinct in Latin and Greek, "\_the metrical" from

"the prosaic\_" and their "coincidence avoided," to make poetry more

poetical,--though the old prosodists, in all they say of accents, acute,

grave, and circumflex, give no hint of this primary distinction! In all

this elementary teaching, there seems to be a want of a clear, steady, and

consistent notion of the things spoken of. The author's theory led him to

several strange combinations of words, some of which it is not easy, even

with his whole explanation before us, to regard as other than \_absurd\_.

With a few examples of his new phraseology, Italicized by myself, I dismiss

the subject: "It frequently happens that \_word and verse accent\_ fall

differently."--P. 489. "The \_verse syllables\_, like \_the verse feet\_,

differ \_in the prosaic and\_ [the] \_metrical reading\_ of the line."--\_Ib.\_

"If we read it by \_the prosaic syllabication\_, there will be no possibility

of measuring the quantities."--\_Ib.\_ "The metrical are perfectly distinct

from the \_prosaic properties of verse\_."--\_Ib.\_ "It may be called \_an

iambic dactyl\_, formed by the substitution of two short for one long time

in the last portion of the foot. \_Iambic spondees and dactyls\_ are to be

distinguished by the \_metrical accent\_ falling on the last syllable."--P.

491.

SECTION IV.--THE KINDS OF VERSE.

The principal kinds of verse, or orders of poetic numbers, as has already

been stated, are four; namely, \_Iambic, Trochaic, Anapestic\_, and

\_Dactylic\_. Besides these, which are sometimes called "\_the simple orders\_"

being unmixed, or nearly so, some recognize several "\_Composite orders\_" or

(with a better view of the matter) several kinds of mixed verse, which are

said to constitute "\_the Composite order\_." In these, one of the four

principal kinds of feet must still be used as the basis, some other species

being inserted therewith, in each line or stanza, with more or less

regularity.

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES.

The diversification of any species of metre, by the occasional change of a

foot, or, in certain cases, by the addition or omission of a short

syllable, is not usually regarded as sufficient to change the denomination,

or stated order, of the verse; and many critics suppose some variety of

feet, as well as a studied diversity in the position of the cæsural pause,

essential to the highest excellence of poetic composition.

The dividing of verses into the feet which compose them, is called

\_Scanning\_, or \_Scansion\_. In this, according to the technical language of

the old prosodists, when a syllable is wanting, the verse is said to be

\_catalectic\_; when the measure is exact, the line is \_acatalectic\_; when

there is a redundant syllable, it forms \_hypermeter\_.

Since the equal recognition of so many feet as twelve, or even as eight,

will often produce different modes of measuring the same lines; and since

it is desirable to measure verses with uniformity, and always by the

simplest process that will well answer the purpose; we usually scan by the

principal feet, in preference to the secondary, where the syllables give us

a choice of measures, or may be divided in different ways.

A single foot, especially a foot of only two syllables, can hardly be said

to constitute a line, or to have rhythm in itself; yet we sometimes see a

foot so placed, and rhyming as a line. Lines of two, three, four, five,

six, or seven feet, are common; and these have received the technical

denominations of \_dim'eter, trim'eter, tetram'eter, pentam'eter,

hexam'eter\_, and \_heptam'eter\_. On a wide page, iambics and trochaics may

possibly be written in \_octom'eter\_; but lines of this measure, being very

long, are mostly abandoned for alternate tetrameters.

ORDER I.--IAMBIC VERSE.

In Iambic verse, the stress is laid on the even syllables, and the odd ones

are short. Any short syllable added to a line of this order, is

supernumerary; iambic rhymes, which are naturally single, being made double

by one, and triple by two. But the adding of one short syllable, which is

much practised in dramatic poetry, may be reckoned to convert the last foot

into an amphibrach, though the adding of two cannot. Iambics consist of the

following measures:--

MEASURE I.--IAMBIC OF EIGHT FEET, OR OCTOMETER.

\_Psalm XLVII, 1 and 2\_.

"O =all | y~e p=eo | -pl~e, cl=ap | y~our h=ands, | ~and w=ith | tr~i=um

| -ph~ant v=oi | -c~es s=ing;

No force | the might | -=y power | withstands | of God, | the u

| -niver | -sal King."

See the "\_Psalms of David, in Metre\_," p. 54.

Each couplet of this verse is now commonly reduced to, or exchanged for, a

simple stanza of four tetrameter lines, rhyming alternately, and each

commencing with a capital; but sometimes, the second line and the fourth

are still commenced with a small letter: as,

"Your ut | -most skill | in praise | be shown,

for Him | who all | the world | commands,

Who sits | upon | his right | -eous throne,

and spreads | his sway | o'er heath | -en lands."

\_Ib.\_, verses 7 and 8; \_Edition bound with Com. Prayer\_,

N. Y., 1819.

\_An other Example\_.

"The hour | is come | --the cher | -ish'd hour,

When from | the bus | -y world | set free,

I seek | at length | my lone | -ly bower,

And muse | in si | -lent thought | on thee."

THEODORE HOOK'S REMAINS: \_The Examiner\_, No. 82.

MEASURE II.--IAMBIC OF SEVEN FEET, OR HEPTAMETER.

\_Example I.--Hat-Brims\_.

"It's odd | how hats | expand [ their brims | as youth | begins

| to fade,

As if | when life | had reached | its noon, | it want | -ed them

| for shade."

OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES: \_From a Newspaper\_.

\_Example II.--Psalm XLII\_, 1.

"As pants | the hart | for cool | -ing streams, | when heat | -ed in

| the chase;

So longs | my soul, | O God, | for thee, | and thy | refresh

| -ing grace."

EPISCOPAL PSALM-BOOK: \_The Rev. W. Allen's Eng. Gram.\_, p. 227.

\_Example III.--The Shepherd's Hymn\_.

"Oh, when | I rove | the des | -ert waste, | and 'neath | the hot

| sun pant,

The Lord | shall be | my Shep | -herd then, | he will | not let

| me want;

He'll lead | me where | the past | -ures are | of soft | and shad

| -y green,

And where | the gen | -tle wa | -ters rove, | the qui | -et hills

| between.

And when | the sav | -age shall | pursue, | and in | his grasp

| I sink,

He will | prepare | the feast | for me, | and bring | the cool

| -ing drink,

And save | me harm | -less from | his hands, and strength | -en me

| in toil,

And bless | my home | and cot | -tage lands, and crown | my head

| with oil.

With such | a Shep | -herd to | protect, | to guide | and guard

| me still,

And bless | my heart | with ev | -'ry good, | and keep | from ev

| -'ry ill,

\_Surely\_ | I shall | not turn | aside, | and scorn | his kind

| -ly care,

But keep | the path | he points | me out, | and dwell | for ev

| -er there."

W. GILMORE SIMMS: \_North American Reader\_, p. 376.

\_Example IV.--"The Far, Far Fast."--First six Lines.\_

"It was | a dream | of earl | -y years, | the long | -est and

| the last,

And still | it ling | -ers bright | and lone | amid | the drear

| -y past;

When I | was sick | and sad | at heart | and faint | with grief

| and care,

It threw | its ra | -diant smile | athwart | the shad | -ows of

| despair:

And still | when falls | the hour | of gloom | upon | this way

| -ward breast,

Unto | THE FAR, | FAR EAST | I turn | for sol | -ace and | for rest."

\_Edinburgh Journal\_; and \_The Examiner\_,

\_Example V.--"Lament of the Slave."--Eight Lines from thirty-four.\_

"Behold | the sun | which gilds | \_yon heaven\_, how love | -ly it

| appears!

And must | it shine | to light | a world | of war | -fare and

| of tears?

Shall hu | -man pas | -sion ev | -er sway | this glo | \_-rious world\_

| of God,

And beau | -ty, wis | -dom, hap | -piness, | sleep with | the tram

| -pled sod?

Shall peace | ne'er lift | her ban | -ner up, | shall truth | and rea

| -son cry,

And men | oppress | them down | with worse | than an | -cient tyr

| -anny?

Shall all | the les | -sons time | has taught, | be so | long taught

| in vain;

And earth | be steeped | in hu | -man tears, | and groan | with hu

| -man pain?"

ALONZO LEWIS: \_Freedom's Amulet\_, Dec. 6, 1848.

\_Example VI.--"Greek Funeral Chant."--First four of sixty-four Lines.\_

"A wail | was heard | around | the bed, | the death | -bed of

| the young;

Amidst | her tears, | the Fu | \_-neral Chant\_ | a mourn | -ful moth

| -er sung.

'I-an | -this dost | thou sleep?-- | Thou sleepst!-- | but this

| is not | the rest,

The breath | -ing, warm, | and ros | -y calm, | I've pil | -low'd on

| my breast!'"

FELICIA HEMANS: \_Poetical Works\_, Vol. ii, p. 37.

Everett observes, "The \_Iliad\_ was translated into this measure by CHAPMAN,

and the \_Æneid\_ by PHAER."--\_Eng. Versif.\_, p. 68. Prior, who has a ballad

of one hundred and eighty such lines, intimates in a note the great

antiquity of the verse. Measures of this length, though not very uncommon,

are much less frequently used than shorter ones. A practice has long

prevailed of dividing this kind of verse into alternate lines of four and

of three feet, thus:--

"To such | as fear | thy ho | -ly name,

myself | I close | -ly join;

To all | who their | obe | -dient wills

to thy | commands | resign."

\_Psalms with Com. Prayer: Psalm\_ cxix, 63.

This, according to the critics, is the most soft and pleasing of our lyric

measures. With the slight change of setting a capital at the head of each

line, it becomes the regular ballad-metre of our language. Being also

adapted to hymns, as well as to lighter songs, and, more particularly, to

quaint details of no great length, this stanza, or a similar one more

ornamented with rhymes, is found in many choice pieces of English poetry.

The following are a few popular examples:--

"When all | thy mer | -cies, O | my God!

My ris | -ing soul | surveys,

Transport | -ed with | the view | I'm lost

In won | -der, love, | and praise."

\_Addison's Hymn of Gratitude\_.

"John Gil | -pin was | a cit | -izen

Of cred | -it and | renown,

A train | -band cap | -tain eke | was he

Of fam | -ous Lon | -don town."

\_Cowper's Poems\_, Vol. i, p. 275.

"God pros | -per long | our no | -ble king,

Our lives | and safe | -ties all;

A wo | -ful hunt | -ing once | there did

In Chev | -y Chase | befall,"

\_Later Reading of Chevy Chase\_.

"Turn, An | -geli | -na, ev | -er dear,

My charm | -er, turn | to see

Thy own, | thy long | -lost Ed | -win here,

Restored | to love | and thee."

\_Goldsmith's Poems\_, p. 67.

"'Come back! | come back!' | he cried | in grief,

Across | this storm | -y wa\_ter\_:

'And I'll | forgive | your High | -land chief,

My daugh | -ter!--oh | my daugh\_ter\_!

'Twas vain: | the loud | waves lashed | the shore,

Return | or aid | prevent\_ing\_:--

The wa | -ters wild | went o'er | his child,--

And he | was left | lament\_ing\_."--\_Campbell's Poems\_, p. 110.

The rhyming of this last stanza is irregular and remarkable, yet not

unpleasant. It is contrary to rule, to omit any rhyme which the current of

the verse leads the reader to expect. Yet here the word "\_shore\_" ending

the first line, has no correspondent sound, where twelve examples of such

correspondence had just preceded; while the third line, without previous

example, is so rhymed within itself that one scarcely perceives the

omission. Double rhymes are said by some to unfit this metre for serious

subjects, and to adapt it only to what is meant to be burlesque, humorous,

or satiric. The example above does not confirm this opinion, yet the rule,

as a general one, may still be just. Ballad verse may in some degree

imitate the language of a simpleton, and become popular by clownishness,

more than by elegance: as,

"Father | and I | went down | to the camp

Along | with cap | -tain Goodwin,

And there | we saw | the men | and boys

As thick | as hast | -y pudding;

And there | we saw | a thun | -dering gun,--

It took | a horn | of powder,--

It made | a noise | like fa | -ther's gun,

Only | a na | -tion louder."

\_Original Song of Yankee Doodle\_.

Even the line of seven feet may still be lengthened a little by a double

rhyme: as,

How gay | -ly, o | -ver fell | and fen, | yon sports | -man light

| is \_dashing\_!

And gay | -ly, in | the sun | -beams bright, | the mow |--er's blade

| is \_flashing\_!

Of this length, T. O. Churchill reckons the following couplet; but by the

general usage of the day, the final \_ed\_ is not made a separate syllable:--

"With \_hic\_ | and \_hoec\_, | as Pris | -cian tells, | \_sacer | -dos\_ was

| de\_cli | -n~ed\_;

But now | its gen | -der by | the pope | far bet | -ter is | de\_fi

| -n~ed\_."

\_Churchill's New Grammar\_, p. 188.

MEASURE III.--IAMBIC OF SIX FEET, OR HEXAMETER.

\_Example I.--A Couplet\_.

"S~o v=a | \_-r~y~ing still\_ | th~eir m=oods, | ~obs=erv | -~ing =yet

| ~in =all

Their quan | -tities, | their rests, | their cen | -sures met

| -rical."

MICHAEL DRAYTON: \_Johnson's Quarto Dict., w. Quantity\_.

\_Example II.--From a Description of a Stag-Hunt\_.

"And through | the cumb | -rous thicks, | as fear | -fully | he makes,

He with | his branch | -ed head | the ten | -der sap | -lings shakes,

That sprink | -ling their | moist pearl | do seem | for him | to weep;

When aft | -er goes | the cry, | with yell | -ings loud | and deep,

That all | the for | -est rings, | and ev | -ery neigh

| -bouring place:

And there | is not | a hound | but fall | -eth to | the chase."

DRAYTON: \_Three Couplets from twenty-three,

in Everett's Versif.\_, p. 66.

\_Example III.--An Extract from Shakespeare\_.

"If love | make me | forsworn, | how shall | I swear | to love?

O, nev | -er faith | could hold, | if not | to beau | -ty vow'd:

Though to | myself | forsworn, | to thee | I'll con | -stant prove;

Those thoughts, | to me | like oaks, | to thee | like o | -siers bow'd.

\_St=ud~y\_ | his bi | -as leaves, | and makes | his book | thine eyes,

Where all | those pleas | -ures live, | that art | can com | -prehend.

If knowl | -edge be | the mark, | to know | thee shall | suffice;

Well learn | -ed is | that tongue | that well | can thee | commend;

All ig | -norant | that soul | that sees | thee with' | \_o~ut wonder\_;

Which is | to me | some praise, | that I | thy parts | admire:

Thine eye | Jove's light | -ning seems, | thy voice | his dread

| \_-ful thunder\_,

Which (not | to an | -ger bent) | is mu | -sic and | sweet fire.

Celes | -tial as | thou art, | O, do | not love | that wrong,

To sing | the heav | -ens' praise | with such | an earth | -ly tongue."

\_The Passionate Pilgrim, Stanza IX\_;

SINGER'S SHAK., Vol. ii, p. 594.

\_Example IV.--The Ten Commandments Versified\_.

"Adore | no God | besides | me, to | provoke | mine eyes;

Nor wor | -ship me | in shapes | and forms | that men | devise;

With rev | 'rence use | my name, | nor turn | my words | to jest;

Observe | my sab | -bath well, | nor dare | profane | my rest;

Honor | and due | obe | -dience to | thy pa | -rents give;

Nor spill | the guilt | -less blood, | nor let | the guilt

| -y live;[507]

Preserve | thy bod | -y chaste, | and flee | th' unlaw | -ful bed;

Nor steal | thy neigh | -bor's gold, | his gar | -ment, or | his bread;

Forbear | to blast | his name | with false | -hood or deceit;

Nor let | thy wish | -es loose | upon | his large | estate."

DR. ISAAC WATTS: \_Lyric Poems\_, p. 46.

This verse, consisting, when entirely regular, of twelve syllables in six

iambs, is the \_Alexandrine\_; said to have been so named because it was

"first used in a poem called \_Alexander\_."--\_Worcester's Dict.\_ Such metre

has sometimes been written, with little diversity, through an entire

English poem, as in Drayton's Polyolbion; but, couplets of this length

being generally esteemed too clumsy for our language, the Alexandrine has

been little used by English versifiers, except to complete certain stanzas

beginning with shorter iambics, or, occasionally, to close a period in

heroic rhyme. French heroics are similar to this; and if, as some assert,

we have obtained it thence, the original poem was doubtless a French one,

detailing the exploits of the hero "\_Alexandre\_." The phrase, "\_an

Alexandrine verse\_," is, in French, "\_un vers Alexandrin\_." Dr. Gregory, in

his Dictionary of Arts and Sciences, copies Johnson's Quarto Dictionary,

which says, "ALEXANDRINE, a kind of verse borrowed from the French, first

used in a poem called Alexander. They [Alexandrines] consist, among the

French, of twelve and thirteen syllables, in alternate couplets; and, among

us, of twelve." Dr. Webster, in his American Dictionary, \_improperly\_ (as I

think) gives to the name two forms, and seems also to acknowledge two sorts

of the English verse: "ALEXAN'DRINE, or ALEXAN'DRIAN, \_n.\_ A kind of verse,

consisting of twelve syllables, or of twelve and thirteen alternately."

"The Pet-Lamb," a modern pastoral, by Wordsworth, has sixty-eight lines,

all probably meant for Alexandrines; most of which have twelve syllables,

though some have thirteen, and others, fourteen. But it were a great pity,

that versification so faulty and unsuitable should ever be imitated. About

half of the said lines, as they appear in the poet's royal octave, or "the

First Complete American, from the Last London Edition," are as sheer prose

as can be written, it being quite impossible to read them into any proper

rhythm. The poem being designed for children, the measure should have been

reduced to iambic trimeter, and made exact at that. The story commences

thus:--

"The dew | was fall | -ing fast, | the stars | began | to blink;

I heard | a voice; | it said, | 'Drink, pret | -ty crea

| -ture, drink!'

And, look | -ing o'er | the hedge, | before | me I | espied

A snow | -white moun | -tain Lamb | w=ith =a M=aid | -en at

| its side."

All this is regular, with the exception of one foot; but who can make any

thing but \_prose\_ of the following?

"Thy limbs will shortly be twice as stout as they are now,

Then I'll yoke thee to my cart like a pony in the plough."

"Here thou needest not dread the raven in the sky;

Night and day thou art safe,--our cottage is hard by."

WORDSWORTH'S \_Poems\_, New-Haven Ed., 1836, p. 4.

In some very ancient English poetry, we find lines of twelve syllables

combined in couplets with others of fourteen; that is, six iambic feet are

alternated with seven, in lines that rhyme. The following is an example,

taken from a piece of fifty lines, which Dr. Johnson ascribes to the \_Earl

of Surry\_, one of the wits that flourished in the reign of Henry VIII:--

"Such way | -ward wayes | hath Love, | that most | part in | discord,

Our willes | do stand, | whereby | our hartes | but sel | -dom do

| accord;

Decyte | is hys | delighte, | and to | begyle | and mocke,

The sim | ple hartes | which he | doth strike | with fro | -ward di

| -vers stroke.

He caus | -eth th' one | to rage | with gold | -en burn | -ing darte,

And doth | allay | with lead | -en cold, | again | the oth

| -er's harte;

Whose gleames | of burn | -ing fyre | and eas | -y sparkes | of flame,

In bal | -ance of | ~un=e | -qual weyght | he pon | -dereth | by ame."

See \_Johnson's Quarto Dict., History of the Eng. Lang.\_, p. 4.

MEASURE IV.--IAMBIC OF FIVE FEET, OR PENTAMETER.

\_Example I.--Hector to Andromache.\_

"Andr=om | -~ach=e! | m=y s=oul's | f~ar b=et | -t~er p=art,

\_Wh=y w~ith\_ | untime | -ly | sor | -rows heaves | thy heart?

No hos | -tile hand | can an | -tedate | my doom,

Till fate | condemns | me to | the si | -lent tomb.

Fix'd is | the term | to all | the race | of earth;

And such | the hard | conditi | -on of | our birth,

No force | can then | resist, | no flight | can save;

All sink | alike, | the fear | -ful and | the brave."

POPE'S HOMER: \_Iliad\_, B. vi, l. 624-632.

\_Example II.--Angels' Worship.\_

"No soon | -er had | th' Almight | -y ceas'd | \_but\_ all

The mul | -titude | of an | -gels with | a shout

Loud as | from num | -bers with' | -out num | -ber, sweet

As from | blest voi | -ces ut | \_t~er ~ing j=oy\_, | heav'n rung

With ju | -bilee, | and loud | hosan | -nas fill'd

Th' eter | -nal | re | -gions; low | -ly rev | -erent

Tow'rds ei | -ther throne | they bow, | and to | the ground

With sol | -emn ad | -ora | -tion down | they cast

Their crowns | inwove | with am | -arant | and gold."

MILTON: \_Paradise Lost\_, B. iii, l. 344.

\_Example III.--Deceptive Glosses\_.

"The world | is still | deceiv'd | with or | -nament.

In law, | what plea | so taint | -ed and | corrupt,

But, be | -ing sea | -son'd with | a gra | -cious voice,

Obscures | the show | of e | -vil? In | \_religi~on\_,

What dam |--n~ed er | -ror, but | some so | -ber brow

Will bless | it, and | approve | it with | a text,

\_Hid~ing\_ | the gross | -ness with | fair or | -nament?"

SHAKSPEARE: \_Merch. of Venice\_, Act iii, Sc. 2.

\_Example IV.--Praise God\_.

"Ye head | -long tor | -rents, rap | -id, and | profound;

Ye soft | -er floods, | that lead | the hu | -mid maze

Along | the vale; | and thou, | majes | -tic main,

A se | -cret world | of won | -ders in | thyself,

Sound His | stupen | -dous | praise; | whose great | -er voice

Or bids | you roar, | or bids | your roar | -ings fall."

THOMSON: \_Hymn to the Seasons\_.

\_Example V.--The Christian Spirit\_.

"Like him | the soul, | thus kin | -dled from | above,

Spreads wide | her arms | of u | -niver | -sal love;

And, still | enlarg'd | as she | receives | the grace,

Includes | cr~e=a | -tion in | her close | embrace.

Behold | a Chris | -tian! and | without | the fires

The found | -\_~er ~of\_ | that name | alone | inspires,

Though all | accom | -plishment, | all knowl | -edge meet,

To make | the shin | -ing prod | -igy | complete,

Whoev | -er boasts | that name-- | behold | a cheat!"

COWPER: \_Charity; Poems\_, Vol. i, p. 135.

\_Example VI.--To London\_.

"Ten right | -eous would | have sav'd | a cit | -y once,

And thou | hast man | -y right | -eous.--Well | for thee--

That salt | preserves | thee; more | corrupt | -ed else,

And there | -fore more | obnox | -ious, at | this hour,

Than Sod | -om in | her day | had pow'r | to be,

For whom | God heard | his Abr' | -ham plead | in vain."

IDEM: \_The Task\_, Book iii, at the end.

This verse, the iambic pentameter, is the regular English \_heroic\_--a

stately species, and that in which most of our great poems are composed,

whether epic, dramatic, or descriptive. It is well adapted to rhyme, to the

composition of sonnets, to the formation of stanzas of several sorts; and

yet is, perhaps, the only measure suitable for blank verse--which latter

form always demands a subject of some dignity or sublimity.

The \_Elegiac Stanza\_, or the form of verse most commonly used by elegists,

consists of four heroics rhyming alternately; as,

"Thou knowst | how trans | -port thrills | the ten | -der breast,

Where love | and fan | -cy fix | their ope | -ning reign;

How na | -ture shines | in live | -lier col | -ours dress'd,

To bless | their un | -ion, and | to grace | their train."

SHENSTONE: \_British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 106.

Iambic verse is seldom continued perfectly pure through a long succession

of lines. Among its most frequent diversifications, are the following; and

others may perhaps be noticed hereafter:--

(1.) The first foot is often varied by a substitutional trochee; as,

"\_Bacchus\_, | that first | from out | the pur | -ple grape

\_Crush'd the\_ | sweet poi | -son of | mis-=us | -~ed wine,

\_After\_ | the Tus | -can mar | -iners | transform'd,

\_Coasting\_ | the Tyr | -rhene shore, | ~as th~e | winds list\_~ed\_,

On Cir | -ce's isl | -and fell. | Who knows | not Cir\_c~e\_,

The daugh | -ter of | the sun? | whose charm | -~ed cup

Whoev | -er tast | -ed, lost | his up | -right shape,

And down | -ward fell | \_=int~o\_ a grov | -elling swine."

MILTON: \_Comus; British Poets\_, Vol. ii, p. 147.

(2.) By a synæresis of the two short syllables, an anapest may sometimes be

employed for an iambus; or a dactyl, for a trochee. This occurs chiefly

where one unaccented vowel precedes an other in what we usually regard as

separate syllables, and both are clearly heard, though uttered perhaps in

so quick succession that both syllables may occupy only half the time of a

long one. Some prosodists, however, choose to regard these substitutions as

instances of trissyllabic feet mixed with the others; and, doubtless, it is

in general easy to make them such, by an utterance that avoids, rather than

favours, the coalescence. The following are examples:--

"No rest: | through man | \_-y a dark\_ | and drear | -y vale

They pass'd, | and man | \_-y a re\_ | -gion dol | -orous,

\_O'er man\_ | \_-y a fro\_ | -zen, man | \_-y a fi\_ | \_-ery Alp\_."

--MILTON: \_P. L.\_, B. ii, l. 618.

"Rejoice | ye na | -tions, vin | -dicate | the sway

Ordain'd | for com | -mon hap | -piness. | Wide, o'er

The globe | terra | \_-queous, let\_ | Britan | \_-nia pour\_

The fruits | of plen | -ty from | her co | \_-pious horn\_."

--DYER: \_Fleece\_, B. iv, l. 658.

"\_Myriads\_ | of souls | that knew | one pa | -rent mold,

See sad | -ly sev | er'd by | the laws | of chance!

\_Myriads\_, | in time's | peren | \_-nial list\_ | enroll'd,

Forbid | by fate | to change | one tran | \_-sient glance!\_"

SHENSTONE: \_British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 109.

(3.) In plays, and light or humorous descriptions, the last foot of an

iambic line is often varied or followed by an additional short syllable;

and, sometimes, in verses of triple rhyme, there is an addition of two

short syllables, after the principal rhyming syllable. Some prosodists call

the variant foot, in die former instance, an \_amphibrach\_, and would

probably, in the latter, suppose either an \_additional pyrrhic\_, or an

amphibrach with still a \_surplus syllable\_; but others scan, in these

cases, by the iambus only, calling what remains after the last long

syllable \_hypermeter\_; and this is, I think, the better way. The following

examples show these and some other variations from pure iambic measure:--

\_Example I.--Grief.\_

"Each sub | st~ance ~of | a grief | hath twen | -ty shad\_~ows\_,

Which show | like grief | itself, | but are | not so:

For sor | -row's eye, | gl=az~ed | with blind | -ing tears,

Divides one thing | entire | to man |--y ob\_j~ects\_;

Like per | -spectives, | which, right | -ly gaz'd | upon,

Show noth | -ing but | confu | -sion; ey'd | awry,

Distin | -guish form: | so your | sweet maj | -esty,

Lo=ok~ing | awry | upon | your lord's | depart\_~ure\_,

Finds shapes | of grief, | more than | himself, | to wail;

Which, look'd | on as | it is, | is nought | but shad\_~ows\_."

SHAKSPEARE: \_Richard II\_, Act ii, Sc. 2.

\_Example II.--A Wish to Please\_.

"O, that | I had | the art | of eas | -y \_writing\_

What should | be eas | -y read | -ing | could | I scale

Parnas | -sus, where | the Mus | -es sit | in\_diting\_

Those pret | -ty po | -ems nev | -er known | to fail,

How quick | -ly would | I print | (the world | de\_lighting\_)

A Gre | -cian, Syr | -ian, or | Assy | -ian tale;

And sell | you, mix'd | with west | -ern sen | -ti\_mentalism\_,

Some sam | -ples of | the fin | -est O | -ri\_entalism\_."

LORD BYRON: \_Beppo\_, Stanza XLVIII.

MEASURE V.--IAMBIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

\_Example I.--Presidents of the United States of America\_.

"First stands | the loft | -y Wash | -ington,

That no | -ble, great, | immor | -tal one;

The eld | -er Ad | -ams next | we see;

And Jef | -ferson | comes num | -ber three;

Then Mad | -ison | is fourth, | you know;

The fifth | one on | the list, | Monroe;

The sixth | an Ad | -ams comes | again;

And Jack | -son, sev | -enth in | the train;

Van Bu | -ren, eighth | upon | the line;

And Har | -rison | counts num | -ber nine;

The tenth | is Ty | -ler, in | his turn;

And Polk, | elev | -enth, as | we learn;

The twelfth | is Tay | -lor, peo | -ple say;

The next | we learn | some fu | -ture day."

ANONYMOUS: \_From Newspaper\_, 1849.

\_Example II.--The Shepherd Bard\_.

"The bard | on Ett | -rick's moun | tain green

In Na | -ture's bo | -som nursed | had been,

And oft | had marked | in for | -est lone

Her beau | -ties on | her moun | -tain throne;

Had seen | her deck | the wild | -wood tree,

And star | with snow | -y gems | the lea;

In love | \_-li~est c=ol\_ | -ours paint | the plain,

And sow | the moor | with pur | -ple grain;

By gold | -en mead | and moun | -tain sheer,

Had viewed | the Ett | -rick wav | -ing clear,

Where shad | \_-=ow=y fl=ocks\_ | of pur | -est snow

Seemed graz | -ing in | a world | below."

JAMES HOGG: \_The Queen's Wake\_, p. 76.

\_Example III.--Two Stanzas from Eighteen, Addressed to the Ettrick

Shepherd\_.

"O Shep | -herd! since | 'tis thine | to boast

The fas | -cinat | -ing pow'rs | of song,

Far, far | above | the count | -less host,

Who swell | the Mus | -es' sup | -\_pli~ant throng\_,

The GIFT | OF GOD | distrust | no more,

His in | -spira | -tion be | thy guide;

Be heard | thy harp | from shore | to shore,

Thy song's | reward | thy coun | -try's pride."

B. BARTON: \_Verses prefixed to the Queen's Wake\_.

\_Example IV.--"Elegiac Stanzas," in Iambics of Four feet and Three\_.

"O for | a dirge! | But why | complain?

Ask rath | -er a | trium | -phal strain

When FER | MOR'S race | is run;

A gar | -land of | immor | -tal boughs

To bind | around | the Chris | -tian's brows,

Whose glo | \_-rious work\_ | is done.

We pay | a high | and ho | -ly debt;

No tears | of pas | -sionate | regret

Shall stain | this vo | -tive lay;

Ill-wor | -thy, Beau | -mont! were | the grief

That flings | itself | on wild | relief

When Saints | have passed | away."

W. WORDSWORTH: \_Poetical Works\_, First complete Amer. Ed., p. 208.

This line, the iambic tetrameter, is a favourite one, with many writers of

English verse, and has been much used, both in couplets and in stanzas.

Butler's Hudibras, Gay's Fables, and many allegories, most of Scott's

poetical works, and some of Byron's, are written in couplets of this

measure. It is liable to the same diversifications as the preceding metre.

The frequent admission of an additional short syllable, forming double

rhyme, seems admirably to adapt it to a familiar, humorous, or burlesque

style. The following may suffice for an example:--

"First, this | large par | -cel brings | you \_tidings\_

Of our | good Dean's | eter | -nal \_chidings\_;

Of Nel | -ly's pert | -ness, Rob | -in's \_leasings\_,

And Sher | -idan's | perpet | -ual \_teasings\_.

This box | is cramm'd | on ev | -ery side

With Stel | -la's mag | -iste | -rial pride."

DEAN SWIFT: \_British Poets\_, Vol. v, p. 334.

The following lines have \_ten syllables\_ in each, yet the measure is not

iambic of five feet, but that of four with hypermeter:--

"There was | ~an =an | -cient sage | phi\_losopher\_,

Who had | read Al | -exan | -der \_Ross over\_."--\_Butler's Hudibras\_.

"I'll make | them serve | for per | -pen\_diculars\_,

As true | as e'er | were us'd | by \_bricklayers\_."

--\_Ib.\_, Part ii, C. iii, l. 1020.

MEASURE VI.--IAMBIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

\_Example.--To Evening\_.

"Now teach | me, maid | compos'd

To breathe | some soft | -en'd strain."--\_Collins\_, p. 39.

This short measure has seldom, if ever, been used alone in many successive

couplets; but it is often found in stanzas, sometimes without other

lengths, but most commonly with them. The following are a few examples:--

\_Example I.--Two ancient Stanzas, out of Many\_,

"This while | we are | abroad,

Shall we | not touch | our lyre?

Shall we | not sing | an ode?

Shall now | that ho | -ly fire,

In us, | that strong | -ly glow'd,

In this | cold air, | expire?

Though in | the ut | -most peak,

A while | we do | remain,

Amongst | the moun | -tains bleak,

Expos'd | to sleet | and rain,

No sport | our hours | shall break,

To ex | -ercise | our vein."

DRAYTON: \_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_, p. 13; \_John Burn's\_, p. 244.

\_Example II.--Acis and Galatea\_.

"For us | the zeph | -yr blows,

For us | distils | the dew,

For us | unfolds | the rose,

And flow'rs | display | their hue;

For us | the win | -ters rain,

For us | the sum | -mers shine,

Spring swells | for us | the grain,

And au | -tumn bleeds | the vine."

JOHN GAY: \_British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 376.

\_Example III.--"Mene, Mene, Tekel, Upharsin\_."

"The king | was on | his throne,

The sa | -traps thronged | the hall;

A thou | -sand bright | lamps shone

O'er that | high fes | -tival.

A thou | -sand cups | of gold,

In Ju | -dah deemed | divine--

Jeho | -vah's ves | -sels, hold

The god | -less Hea | -then's wine!

In that | same hour | and hall,

The fin | -gers of | a hand

Came forth | against | the wall,

And wrote | as if | on sand:

The fin | -gers of | a man,--

A sol | -ita | -ry hand

Along | the let | -ters ran,

And traced | them like | a wand."

LORD BYRON: \_Vision of Belshazzar\_.

\_Example IV.--Lyric Stanzas\_.

"Descend, | celes | -tial fire,

And seize | me from | above,

Melt me | in flames | of pure | desire,

A sac | -rifice | to love.

Let joy | and wor | -ship spend

The rem | -nant of | my days,

And to | my God, | my soul | ascend,

In sweet | perfumes | of praise."

WATTS: \_Poems sacred to Devotion\_, p. 50.

\_Example V.--Lyric Stanzas\_.

"I would | begin | the mu | -sic here,

And so | my soul | should rise:

O for | some heav'n | -ly notes | to bear

My spir | -it to | the skies!

There, ye | that love | my say | -iour, sit,

There I | would fain | have place

Amongst | your thrones | or at | your feet,

So I | might see | his face."

WATTS: \_Same work\_, "\_Horæ Lyricæ\_," p. 71.

\_Example VI.--England's Dead\_.

"The hur | -ricane | hath might

Along | the In | -dian shore,

And far, | by Gan | -ges' banks | at night,

Is heard | the ti | -ger's roar.

But let | the sound | roll on!

It hath | no tone | of dread

For those | that from | their toils | are gone;--

\_There\_ slum | -ber Eng | -land's dead."

HEMANS: \_Poetical Works\_, Vol. ii, p. 61.

The following examples have some of the common diversifications already

noticed under the longer measures:--

\_Example I.--"Languedocian Air\_."

"\_L=ove ~is\_ | a hunt | -er boy,

Who makes | young hearts | his prey;

\_And in\_ | his nets | of joy

Ensnares | them night | and day.

In vain | conceal'd | they lie,

Love tracks | them ev' | -ry where;

In vain | aloft | they fly,

Love shoots | them fly | -ing there.

But 'tis | his joy | most sweet,

At earl | -y dawn | to trace

The print | of Beau | -ty's feet,

And give | the trem | -bler chase.

And most | he loves | through snow

To track | those foot | -steps fair,

For then | the boy | doth know,

None track'd | before | him there."

MOORE'S \_Melodies and National Airs\_, p. 274.

\_Example II.--From "a Portuguese Air\_."

"Flow on, | thou shin | -ing \_river\_,

But ere | thou reach | the sea,

Seek El | -la's bower, | and \_give her\_

The wreaths | I fling | o'er thee.

But, if | in wand' | -ring \_thither\_,

Thou find | she mocks | my pray'r,

Then leave | those wreaths | to \_wither\_

Upon | the cold | bank there."

MOORE: \_Same Volume\_, p. 261.

\_Example III.--Resignation\_.

"O Res | -igna | -tion! yet | unsung,

Untouch'd | by for | -mer strains;

Though claim | -ing ev | -\_ery mu\_ | -se's smile,

And ev | -\_ery po\_ | -et's pains!

All oth | -er du | -ties cres | -cents are

Of vir | -tue faint | -ly bright;

The glo | -\_rious con\_ | -summa | -tion, thou,

Which fills | her orb | with light!"

YOUNG: \_British Poets\_, Vol. viii, p. 377.

MEASURE VII.--IAMBIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

\_Example--A Scolding Wife\_.

1.

"There was | a man

Whose name | was Dan,

Who sel | -dom spoke;

His part | -ner sweet

He thus | did greet,

Without | a joke;

2.

My love | -ly wife,

Thou art | the life

Of all | my joys;

Without | thee, I

Should sure | -ly die

For want | of noise.

3.

O, prec | -ious one,

Let thy | tongue run

In a | sweet fret;

And this | will give

A chance | to live,

A long | time yet.

4.

When thou | dost scold

So loud | and bold,

I'm kept | awake;

But if | thou leave,

It will | me grieve,

Till life | forsake.

5.

Then said | his wife,

I'll have | no strife

With you, | sweet Dan;

As 'tis | your mind,

I'll let | you find

I am | your man.

6.

And fret | I will,

To keep | you still

Enjoy | -ing life;

So you | may be

Content | with me,

A scold | -ing wife."

ANONYMOUS: \_Cincinnati Herald\_, 1844.

Iambic dimeter, like the metre of three iambs, is much less frequently used

alone than in stanzas with longer lines; but the preceding example is a

refutation of the idea, that no piece is ever composed wholly of this

measure, or that the two feet cannot constitute a line. In Humphrey's

English Prosody, on page 16th, is the following paragraph; which is not

only defective in style, but erroneous in all its averments:--

"Poems are never composed of lines of two [-] feet metre, in succession:

they [combinations of two feet] are only used occasionally in poems, hymns,

odes, &c. to diversify the metre; and are, in no case, lines of poetry, or

verses; but hemistics, [\_hemistichs\_,] or half lines. The shortest metre of

which iambic verse is composed, in lines successively, is that of three

feet; and this is the shortest metre \_which\_ can be denominated lines, or

verses; and \_this is not frequently used\_."

In ballads, ditties, hymns, and versified psalms, scarcely any line is

\_more common\_ than the iambic trimeter, here denied to be "frequently

used;" of which species, there are about seventy lines among the examples

above. Dr. Young's poem entitled "Resignation," has eight hundred and

twenty such lines, and as many more of iambic tetrameter. His "Ocean" has

one hundred and forty-five of the latter, and two hundred and ninety-two of

the species now under consideration; i.e., iambic dimeter. But how can the

metre which predominates by two to one, be called, in such a case, an

occasional diversification of that which is less frequent?

Lines of two iambs are not very uncommon, even in psalmody; and, since we

have some lines \_yet shorter\_, and the lengths of all are determined only

by the act of measuring, there is, surely, no propriety in calling dimeters

"hemistichs," merely because they are short. The following are some

examples of this measure combined with longer ones:--

\_Example I.--From Psalm CXLVIII\_.

1, 2.

"Ye bound | -less realms | of joy,

Exalt | your Ma | -ker's fame;

His praise | your songs | employ

Above | the star | -ry frame:

Your voi | -ces raise,

Ye Cher | -ubim,

And Ser | -aphim,

To sing | his praise.

3, 4.

Thou moon, | that rul'st | the night,

And sun, | that guid'st | the day,

Ye glitt' | -ring stars | of light,

To him | your hom | -age pay:

His praise | declare,

Ye heavens | above,

And clouds | that move

In liq | -uid air."

\_The Book of Psalms in Metre\_, (\_with Com. Prayer\_,) 1819.

\_Example II.--From Psalm CXXXVI.\_

"To God | the might | -y Lord,

your joy | -ful thanks | repeat;

To him | due praise | afford,

as good | as he | is great:

For God | does prove

Our con | -stant friend,

His bound | -less love

Shall nev | -er end."--\_Ib.\_, p. 164.

\_Example III.--Gloria Patri\_.

"To God | the Fa | -ther, Son,

And Spir | -it ev | -er bless'd,

Eter | -nal Three | in One,

All wor | -ship be | address'd;

As here | -tofore

It was, | is now,

And shall | be so

For ev | -ermore."--\_Ib.\_, p. 179.

\_Example IV.--Part of Psalm III\_.

[O] "Lord, | how man | -y are | my foes!

How man | -y those

That [now] | in arms | against | me rise!

\_Many\_ | are they

That of | my life | distrust | -fully | thus say:

'No help | for him | in God | there lies.'

But thou, | Lord, art | my shield | my glo\_ry\_;

Thee, through | my sto\_ry\_,

Th' exalt | -er of | my head | I count;

Aloud | I cried

Unto | Jeho | -vah, he | full soon | replied,

And heard | me from | his ho | -ly mount."

MILTON: \_Psalms Versified, British Poets\_, Vol. ii, p. 161.

\_Example V.--Six Lines of an "Air."\_

"As when | the dove

Laments | her love

All on | the na | -ked spray;

When he | returns,

No more | she mourns,

But loves | the live | -long day."

JOHN GAY: \_British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 377.

\_Example VI.--Four Stanzas of an Ode\_.

"XXVIII.

Gold pleas | -ure buys;

But pleas | -ure dies",

Too soon | the gross | fruiti | -on cloys:

Though rapt | -ures court,

The sense | is short;

But vir | -tue kin | -dles liv | -ing joys:

XXIX.

Joys felt | alone!

Joys ask'd | of none!

Which Time's | and For | -tune's ar | -rows miss;

Joys that | subsist,

Though fates | resist,

An un | -preca | -rious, end | -less bliss!

XXX.

The soul | refin'd

Is most | inclin'd

To ev | -\_~er=y m=or\_ | -al ex | -cellence;

All vice | is dull,

A knave's | a fool;

And Vir | -tue is | the child | of Sense.

XXXI.

The vir | -\_tuous mind\_

Nor wave, | nor wind,

Nor civ | -il rage, | nor ty | -rant's frown,

The shak | -en ball,

Nor plan | -ets' fall,

From its | firm ba | -sis can | dethrone."

YOUNG'S "OCEAN:" \_British Poets\_, Vol. viii, p 277.

There is a line of five syllables and double rhyme, which is commonly

regarded as iambic dimeter with a supernumerary short syllable; and which,

though it is susceptible of two other divisions into two feet, we prefer to

scan in this manner, because it usually alternates with pure iambics.

Twelve such lines occur in the following extract:--

LOVE TRANSITORY

"Could Love | for ev\_er\_

Run like | a riv\_er\_,

And Time's | endeav\_our\_

Be tried | in vain,--

No oth | -er pleas\_ure\_

With this | could meas\_ure\_;

And like | a treas\_ure\_

We'd hug | the chain.

But since | our sigh\_ing\_

Ends not | in dy\_ing\_,

And, formed | for fly\_ing\_,

Love plumes | his wing;

Then for | this rea\_son\_

Let's love | a sea\_son\_;

But let | that sea\_son\_

Be on | -ly spring."

LORD BYRON: See \_Everett's Versification\_, p. 19;

\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, p. 650.

MEASURE VIII.--IAMBIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

"The shortest form of the English Iambic," says Lindley Murray, "consists

of an Iambus with an additional short syllable: as,

Disdaining,

Complaining,

Consenting,

Repenting.

We have no poem of this measure, but it may be met with in stanzas. The

Iambus, with this addition, coincides with the Amphibrach."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 12mo, p. 204; 8vo, p. 254. This, or the substance of it, has been

repeated by many other authors. Everett varies the language and

illustration, but teaches the same doctrine. See \_E. Versif.\_, p. 15.

Now there are sundry examples which may be cited to show, that the iambus,

without any additional syllable, and without the liability of being

confounded with an other foot, may, and sometimes does, stand as a line,

and sustain a regular rhyme. The following pieces contain instances of this

sort:--

\_Example I.--"How to Keep Lent."\_

"Is this | a Fast, | to keep

The lard | -er lean

And clean

From fat | of neats | and sheep?

Is it | to quit | the dish

Of flesh, | yet still

To fill

The plat | -ter high | with fish?

Is it | to fast | an hour,

Or ragg'd | to go,

Or show

A down | -cast look | and sour?

No:--'Tis | a Fast | to dole

Thy sheaf | of wheat,

And meat,

Unto | the hun | -gry soul.

It is | to fast | from strife,

From old | debate,

And hate;

To cir | -cumcise | thy life;

To show | a \_heart\_ | grief-rent;

To starve | thy sin,

Not \_bin\_:

Ay, that's | to keep | thy Lent."

ROBERT HERRICK: \_Clapp's Pioneer\_, p. 48.

Example II.--"To Mary Ann."

[This singular arrangement of seventy-two separate iambic feet, I find

\_without intermediate points\_, and leave it so. It seems intended to be

read in three or more different ways, and the punctuation required by one

mode of reading would not wholly suit an other.]

"Your face Your tongue Your wit

So fair So sweet So sharp

First bent Then drew Then hit

Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

To like To learn To love

Your face Your tongue Your wit

Doth lead Doth teach Doth move

Your face Your tongue Your wit

With beams With sound With art

Doth blind Doth charm Doth rule

Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

With life With hope With skill

Your face Your tongue Your wit

Doth feed Doth feast Doth fill

O face O tongue O wit

With frowns With cheek With smart

Wrong not Vex not Wound not

Mine eye Mine ear Mine heart

This eye This ear This heart

Shall joy Shall bend Shall swear

Your face Your tongue Your wit

To serve To trust To fear."

ANONYMOUS: \_Sundry American Newspapers\_, in 1849.

\_Example III.--Umbrellas.\_

"The late George Canning, of whom Byron said that 'it was his happiness to

be at once a wit, poet, orator, and statesman, and excellent in all,' is

the author of the following clever \_jeu d' esprit\_:" [except three lines

here added in brackets:]

"I saw | a man | with two | umbrellas,

(One of | the lon |--gest kind | of fellows,)

When it rained,

M=eet =a | l=ady

On the | shady

Side of | thirty |-three,

Minus | one of | these rain |-dispellers.

'I see,'

Says she,

'Your qual | -ity | of mer | -cy is | not strained.'

[Not slow | to comprehend | an inkling,

His eye | with wag |-gish hu |-mour twinkling.]

Replied | he, 'Ma'am,

Be calm;

This one | under | my arm

Is rotten,

[And can |-not save | you from | a sprinkling.]

Besides | to keep | you dry,

'Tis plain | that you | as well | as I,

'Can lift | your cotton.'"

See \_The Essex County Freeman\_, Vol. i, No. 1.

\_Example IV.--Shreds of a Song.\_

I. SPRING.

"The cuck |--oo then, | on ev |--ery tree,

Mocks mar |--ried men, | for thus | sings he, \_Cuckoo'\_;

Cuckoo', | cuckoo',-- | O word | of fear,

Unpleas |-ing to | a mar |-ried ear!"

II. WINTER.

"When blood | is nipp'd, | and ways | be foul,

Then night | -ly sings | the star |-ing owl, \_To-who\_;

To-whit, | to-who, | a mer | -ry note,

While greas | -y Joan | doth keel | the pot."

--SHAKSPEARE: \_Love's Labour's Lost\_, Act v, Sc. 2.

\_Example V.--Puck's Charm.\_

[\_When he has uttered the fifth line, he squeezes a juice on Lysander's

eyes\_.]

"On the ground,

\_Sleep sound\_;

I'll apply

To your eye,

Gentle | lover, | remedy.

When thou wak'st,

\_Thou tak'st\_

True delight

In the sight

Of thy | former | lady's eye." [508]

IDEM: \_Midsummer-Night's Dream\_, Act iii, Sc. 2.

ORDER II.--TROCHAIC VERSE.

In Trochaic verse, the stress is laid on the odd syllables, and the even

ones are short. Single-rhymed trochaic omits the final short syllable, that

it may end with a long one; for the common doctrine of Murray, Chandler,

Churchill, Bullions, Butler, Everett, Fowler, Weld, Wells, Mulligan, and

others, that this chief rhyming syllable is "\_additional\_" to the real

number of feet in the line, is manifestly incorrect. One long syllable is,

in some instances, used \_as a foot\_; but it is one or more \_short

syllables\_ only, that we can properly admit \_as hypermeter\_. Iambics and

trochaics often occur in the same poem; but, in either order, written with

exactness, the number of feet is always the number of the long syllables.

\_Examples from Gray's Bard.\_

(1.)

"\_Ruin | seize thee,| ruthless | king\_!

Confu | -sion on | thy ban |-ners wait,

Though, fann'd | by Con | -quest's crim | -son wing.

They mock | the air | with i | -dle state.

\_Helm, nor | hauberk's | twisted | mail\_,

Nor e'en | thy vir | -tues, ty | -rant, shall | avail."

(2.)

"\_Weave the | warp, and | weave the | woof\_,

The wind | -ing-sheet | of Ed | -ward's race.

Give am | -ple room, | and verge | enough,

The char | -acters | of hell | to trace.

\_Mark the |year, and | mark the | night\_,

When Sev | -ern shall | re-ech | -o with | affright."

"\_The Bard, a Pindaric Ode\_;"

\_British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 281 and 282.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Trochaic verse without the final short syllable, is the same as

iambic would be without the \_initial\_ short syllable;--it being quite

plain, that iambic, so changed, \_becomes trochaic, and\_ is iambic no

longer. But trochaic, retrenched of its last short syllable, is trochaic

still; and can no otherwise be made iambic, than by the prefixing of a

short syllable to the line. Feet, and the orders of verse, are

distinguished one from an other by two things, and in general by two only;

the number of syllables taken as a foot, and the order of their quantities.

Trochaic verse is always as distinguishable from iambic, as iambic is from

any other. Yet have we several grammarians and prosodies who contrive to

confound them--or who, at least, mistake catalectic trochaic for catalectic

iambic; and that too, where the syllable wanting affects only the last

foot, and makes it perhaps but a common and needful cæsura.

OBS. 2.--To suppose that iambic verse may drop its initial short syllable,

and still be iambic, still be measured as before, is not only to take a

single long syllable for a foot, not only to recognize a pedal cæsura at

the \_beginning\_ of each line, but utterly to destroy the only principles on

which iambics and trochaics can be discriminated. Yet Hiley, of Leeds, and

Wells, of Andover, while they are careful to treat separately of these two

orders of verse, not only teach that any order may take at the end "an

additional syllable," but also suggest that the iambic \_may drop\_ a

syllable "from the first foot," without diminishing the number of

feet,--without changing the succession of quantities,--without disturbing

the mode of scansion! "Sometimes," say they, (in treating of iambics,) "a

syllable is cut off from the first foot; as,

Práise | to Gód, | immór |-tal práise,

Fór | the lóve | that crówns | our dáys."[--BARBAULD.]

\_Hiley's E. Gram.\_, Third Edition, London, p. 124;

\_Wells's\_, Third Edition, p. 198.

OBS. 3.--Now this couplet is the precise exemplar, not only of the

thirty-six lines of which it is a part, but also of the most common of our

trochaic metres; and if this may be thus scanned into iambic verse, so may

all other trochaic lines in existence: distinction between the two orders

must then be worse than useless. But I reject this doctrine, and trust that

most readers will easily see its absurdity. A prosodist might just as well

scan all iambics into trochaics, by pronouncing each initial short syllable

to be hypermeter. For, surely, if deficiency may be discovered at the

\_beginning\_ of measurement, so may redundance. But if neither is to be

looked for before the measurement ends, (which supposition is certainly

more reasonable,) then is the distinction already vindicated, and the

scansion above-cited is shown to be erroneous.

OBS. 4.--But there are yet other objections to this doctrine, other errors

and inconsistencies in the teaching of it. Exactly the same kind of verse

as this, which is said to consist of "\_four iambuses\_" from one of which "a

syllable \_is cut off\_," is subsequently scanned by the same authors as

being composed of "\_three trochees\_ and an \_additional\_ syllable; as,

'Haste thee, | Nymph, and | bring with | \_thee\_

Jest and | youthful | Jolli |-\_ty\_.'--MILTON."

\_Wells's School Grammar\_, p. 200.

"V=it~al | sp=ark of | he=av'nly | \_fl=me\_,

Q=uit ~oh | q=uit th~is | m=ort~al | \_fr=ame\_." [509][--POPE.]

\_Hiley's English Grammar\_, p. 126.

There is, in the works here cited, not only the inconsistency of teaching

two very different modes of scanning the same species of verse, but in each

instance the scansion is wrong; for all the lines in question are \_trochaic

of four feet\_,--single-rhymed, and, of course, catalectic, and ending with

a cæsura, or elision. In no metre that lacks but one syllable, can this

sort of foot occur \_at the beginning\_ of a line; yet, as we see, it is

sometimes \_imagined\_ to be there, by those who have never been able to find

it \_at the end\_, where it oftenest exists!

OBS. 5.--I have hinted, in the main paragraph above, that it is a common

error of our prosodists, to underrate, by one foot, the measure of all

trochaic lines, when they terminate with single rhyme; an error into which

they are led by an other as gross, that of taking for hypermeter, or mere

surplus, the whole rhyme itself, the sound or syllable most indispensable

to the verse.

"(For rhyme the \_rudder\_ is of verses,

With which, like ships, they steer their courses.)"--\_Hudibras.\_

Iambics and trochaics, of corresponding metres, and exact in them, agree of

course in both the number of feet and the number of syllables; but as the

former are slightly redundant with double rhyme, so the latter are

deficient as much, with single rhyme; yet, the number of feet may, and

should, in these cases, be reckoned the same. An estimable author now

living says, "Trochaic verse, with an additional long syllable, is the same

as iambic verse, without the initial short syllable."--\_N. Butler's

Practical Gram.\_, p. 193. This instruction is not quite accurate. Nor would

it be right, even if there could be "iambic verse without the initial short

syllable," and if it were universally \_true\_, that, "Trochaic verse may

take an additional \_long\_ syllable."--\_Ibid.\_ For the addition and

subtraction here suggested, will inevitably make the difference of a foot,

between the measures or verses said to be the same!

OBS. 6.--"I doubt," says T. O. Churchill, "whether the \_trochaic\_ can be

considered as a legitimate English measure. All the examples of it given by

Johnson have an additional long syllable at the end: but these are

\_iambics\_, if we look upon the additional syllable to be at the beginning,

which is much more agreeable to the analogy of music."--\_Churchill's New

Gram.\_, p. 390. This doubt, ridiculous as must be all reasoning in support

of it, the author seriously endeavours to raise into a general conviction

\_that we have no trochaic order of verse!\_ It can hardly be worth while to

notice here all his remarks. \_"An additional long syllable"\_ Johnson never

dreamed of--"at the end"--"at the beginning"--or anywhere else. For he

discriminated metres, not by the number of feet, as he ought to have done,

but by the number of \_syllables\_ he found in each line. His doctrine is

this: "Our \_iambick\_ measure comprises verses--Of four syllables,--Of

six,--Of eight,--Of ten. Our \_trochaick\_ measures are--Of three

syllables,--Of five,--Of seven. These are the measures \_which are now in

use\_, and above the rest those of seven, eight and ten syllables. Our

ancient poets wrote verses sometimes of twelve syllables, as Drayton's

Polyolbion; and of fourteen, as Chapman's Homer." "We have another measure

very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be

called the \_anapestick\_.

'May I góvern my pássion with ábsolute swáy,

And grow wiser and bétter as life wears awáy.' \_Dr. Pope\_.

"In this measure a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot, [;] as

[,]

'When présent we lóve, and when ábsent agrée,

I th'nk not of I'ris [.] nor I'ris of mé.' \_Dryden\_.

"These measures are varied by many combinations, and sometimes by \_double

endings\_, either with or without rhyme, as in the \_heroick\_ measure.

''Tis the divinity that stirs \_within us\_,

'Tis heaven itself that points out an \_hereafter.\_.' \_Addison\_.

"So in that of eight syllables,

'They neither added nor confounded,

They neither wanted nor abounded.' \_Prior\_.

"In that of seven,

'For resistance I could \_fear none\_,

But with twenty ships had done,

What thou, brave and happy \_Vernon\_,

Hast achieved with six alone.' \_Glover\_.

"To these measures and their laws, may be reduced every species of English

verse."--\_Dr. Johnson's Grammar of the English Tongue\_, p. 14. See his

\_Quarto Dict.\_ Here, except a few less important remarks, and sundry

examples of the metres named, is Johnson's \_whole scheme\_ of versification.

OBS. 7.--How, when a prosodist judges certain examples to "have an

additional long syllable at the end," he can "look upon the additional

syllable to be at the beginning," is a matter of marvel; yet, to abolish

trochaics, Churchill not only does and advises this, but imagines short

syllables removed sometimes from the beginning of lines; while sometimes he

couples final short syllables with initial long ones, to make iambs, and

yet does not always count these as feet in the verse, when he has done so!

Johnson's instructions are both misunderstood and misrepresented by this

grammarian. I have therefore cited them the more fully. The first syllable

being retrenched from an \_anapest\_, there remains an \_iambus\_. But what

countenance has Johnson lent to the gross error of reckoning such a foot an

anapest still?--or to that of commencing the measurement of a line by

including a syllable not used by the poet? The preceding stanza from

Glover, is \_trochaic of four feet\_; the odd lines full, and of course

making double rhyme; the even lines catalectic, and of course ending with a

long syllable counted as a foot. Johnson cited it merely as an example of

"\_double endings\_" imagining in it no "additional syllable," except perhaps

the two which terminate the two trochees, "fear none" and "Vernon." These,

it may be inferred, he improperly conceived to be additional to the regular

measure; because he reckoned measures by the number of syllables, and

probably supposed single rhyme to be the normal form of all rhyming verse.

OBS. 8.--There is false scansion in many a school grammar, but perhaps none

more uncouthly false, than Churchill's pretended amendments of Johnson's.

The second of these--wherein "the old \_seven\_[-]\_foot iambic\_" is

professedly found in two lines of Glover's \_trochaic tetrameter\_--I shall

quote:--

"In the anapæstic measure, Johnson himself allows, that a syllable is often

retrenched from the first foot; yet he gives \_as an example of trochaics

with an additional syllable at the end of the even lines\_ a stanza, which,

by adopting the \_same principle\_, would be in the iambic measure:

"For | resis- | tance I | could fear | none,

But | with twen | ty ships | had done,

What | thou, brave | and hap | py Ver- | non,

Hast | achiev'd | with six | alone.

In fact, \_the second and fourth lines\_ here stamp the character of the

measure; [Fist] \_which is the old seven[-]foot iambic broken into four and

three\_, WITH AN ADDITIONAL SYLLABLE AT THE BEGINNING."--\_Churchill's New

Gram.\_, p. 391.

After these observations and criticisms concerning the trochaic order of

verse, I proceed to say, trochaics consist of the following measures, or

metres:--

MEASURE I.--TROCHAIC OF EIGHT FEET, OR OCTOMETER.

\_Example I.--"The Raven"--First Two out of Eighteen Stanzas\_.

1.

"Once up | -on a | midnight | dreary, | while I | pondered, | weak and

| weary,

Over | \_m=any ~a\_ | quaint and | \_c=ur~io~us\_ | volume | of for

| -gotten | lore,

While I | nodded, | nearly | napping, | sudden |-ly there | came a

| tapping,

As of | some one | gently | rapping, | rapping | at my | chamber

| door.

''Tis some | visit |-or,' I | muttered, | 'tapping | at my | chamber

| door--

Only | this, and |nothing | more."

2.

Ah! dis |-tinctly | I re |-member | it was | in the | bleak De

|-cember,

And each | \_s=ep~ar~ate\_ | dying | ember | wrought its | ghost up

|-on the | floor;

Eager |-ly I | wished the | morrow; | vainly | had I | tried to

| borrow

From my | books sur |-cease of | sorrow--| sorrow | for the | lost Le

|-nore--

For the | rare and | \_r=ad~i~ant\_ | maiden, | whom the | angels

| name Le |-nore--

Nameless | here for | ever |-more."

EDGAR A. POE: \_American Review for February\_, 1845.

Double rhymes being less common than single ones, in the same proportion,

is this long verse less frequently terminated with a full trochee, than

with a single long syllable counted as a foot. The species of measure is,

however, to be reckoned the same, though catalectic. By Lindley Murray, and

a number who implicitly re-utter what he teaches, the verse of \_six

trochees\_, in which are \_twelve syllables\_ only, is said "to be \_the

longest\_ Trochaic line that our language admits."--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_,

p. 257; \_Weld's E. Gram.\_, p. 211. The examples produced here will

sufficiently show the inaccuracy of their assertion.

\_Example II.--"The Shadow of the Obelisk."--Last two Stanzas.\_

"Herds are | feeding |in the | Forum, | as in | old E | -vander's

| time:

Tumbled | from the | steep Tar |\_-peian\_ | \_every\_ | pile that

| sprang sub |-lime.

Strange! that | what seemed | most in |-constant | should the | most a

| -biding | prove;

Strange! that |what is | hourly | moving | no mu |-tation | can re

|-move:

Ruined | lies the | cirque! the | \_chariots\_, | long a |-go, have

| ceased to | roll--

E'en the | Obe |-lisk is | broken |--but the | shadow | still is

| whole.

9.

Out a |--las! if | \_mightiest\_ | empires | leave so | little | mark be

|-hind,

How much | less must | heroes | hope for, | in the | wreck of | human

| kind!

Less than | e'en this | darksome | picture, | which I | tread be

|-neath my | feet,

Copied | by a | lifeless | moonbeam | on the | pebbles | of the

| street;

Since if | Cæsar's | best am |-bition, | living, | was, to | be re

|-nowned,

What shall | Cassar | leave be |-hind him, | save the | shadow | of a

| sound?"

T. W. PARSONS: \_Lowell and Carter's "Pioneer,"\_ Vol. i, p. 120.

\_Example III.--"The Slaves of Martinique."--Nine Couplets out of

Thirty-six.\_

"Beams of | noon, like | burning | lances, | through the | tree-tops

| flash and | glisten,

As she | stands be | -fore her | lover, | with raised | face to

| look and | listen.

Dark, but | comely, | like the | maiden | in the | ancient | Jewish

| song,

Scarcely | has the | toil of | task-fields | done her graceful | beauty

| wrong.

He, the | strong one, | and the | manly, | with the | vassal's

| garb and | hue,

Holding | still his | spirit's | birthright, | to his | higher | nature

| true;

Hiding | deep the | \_strengthening\_ | purpose | of a | freeman | in his

| heart,

As the | Greegree | holds his | Fetish | from the | white man's

| gaze a | -part.

Ever | foremost | of the | toilers, | when the | driver's | morning

| horn

Calls a | -way to | stifling | millhouse, | or to | fields of

| cane and | corn;

Fall the | keen and | burning | lashes | never | on his | back or

| limb;

Scarce with | look or | word of | censure, | turns the | driver | unto

| him.

Yet his | brow is | always | thoughtful, | and his | eye is | hard and

| stern;

\_Slavery's\_ | last and | humblest | lesson | he has | never

| deigned to | learn."

"And, at evening | when his | comrades | dance be | -fore their

| master's | door,

Folding arms and | knitting | forehead, | stands he | silent | ever

|-more.

God be | praised for | every instinct | which re | -bels a | -gainst a

| lot

Where the | brute sur |-vives the | human, | and man's | upright

| form is | not!"

--J. G. WHITTIER: \_National Era, and other Newspapers\_, Jan. 1848.

\_Example IV.--"The Present Crisis"--Two Stanzas out of sixteen.\_

"Once to | \_every\_ | man and | nation | comes the | moment | to de

|-cide,

In the | strife of | Truth with | Falsehood, | for the | good or | evil

| side;

Some great | cause, God's | new Mes |-siah, | \_offering\_ | each the

| bloom or | blight,

Parts the | goats up | -on the | left hand, | and the | sheep up

| -on the | right,

And the | choice goes | by for | -ever |'twixt that | darkness

| and that | light.

Have ye | chosen, | O my | people, | on whose | party | ye shall

| stand,

Ere the | Doom from | \_its\_ worn | sandals | shakes the | dust a

| -gainst our | land?

Though the | cause of | evil | prosper, | yet the | Truth a | -lone is

| strong,

And, al | \_beit she\_ | wander | outcast | now, I | see a | -round her

| throng

Troops of | beauti | -ful tall | angels | to en | -shield her

| from all | wrong."

JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL: \_Liberator\_, September 4th, 1846.

\_Example V.--The Season of Love.--A short Extract\_.

"In the | Spring, a | fuller | crimson | comes up | -on the | robin's

| breast;

In the | Spring, the | wanton | lapwing | gets him | -self an | other

| crest;

In the | Spring, a | \_livelier\_ | iris | changes | on the | burnished

| dove;

In the | Spring, a | young man's | fancy | lightly | turns to

| thoughts of | love.

Then her | cheek was | pale, and | thinner | than should | be for

| one so | young;

And her | eyes on | all my | motions, | with a | mute ob | -servance,

| hung.

And I | said, 'My | cousin | Amy, | speak, and | speak the | truth to

| me;

Trust me, | cousin, | all the | current | of my | being | sets to

| thee.'"

\_Poems by\_ ALFRED TENNYSON, Vol. ii, p. 35.

Trochaic of eight feet, as these sundry examples will suggest, is much

oftener met with than iambic of the same number; and yet it is not a form

very frequently adopted. The reader will observe that it requires a

considerable pause after the fourth foot; at which place one might divide

it, and so reduce each couplet to a stanza of four lines, similar to the

following examples:--

PART OF A SONG, IN DIALOGUE.

SYLVIA.

"Corin, | cease this | idle | teasing;

Love that's | forc'd is | harsh and | sour;

If the | lover | be dis | -pleasing,

To per | -sist dis | -gusts the | more."

CORIN.

"'Tis in | vain, in | vain to | fly me,

\_Sylvia\_, | I will | still pur | -sue;

Twenty | thousand | times de | -ny me,

I will | kneel and | weep a | -new."

SYLVIA.

"Cupid | ne'er shall | make me | languish,

I was | born a | -verse to | love;

Lovers' | sighs, and | tears, and | anguish,

Mirth and | pastime | to me | prove."

CORIN.

"Still I | vow with | patient | duty

Thus to | meet your | proudest | scorn;

You for | unre | -lenting | beauty

I for | constant | love was | born."

\_Poems by\_ ANNA LÆTITIA BARBAULD, p. 56.

PART OF A CHARITY HYMN.

1.

"Lord of | life, all | praise ex | -celling,

thou, in | glory | uncon | -fin'd,

Deign'st to | make thy | humble | dwelling

with the | poor of | humble | mind.

2.

As thy | love, through | all cre | -ation,

beams like | thy dif | -fusive | light;

So the | scorn'd and | humble | station

shrinks be | -fore thine | equal | sight.

3.

Thus thy | care, for | all pro | -viding,

warm'd thy | faithful | prophet's | tongue;

Who, the | lot of | all de | -ciding,

to thy | chosen | \_Israel\_ | sung:

4.

'When thine | harvest | yields thee | pleasure,

thou the | golden | sheaf shalt | bind;

To the | poor be | -longs the | treasure

of the | scatter'd | ears be | -hind.'"

\_Psalms and Hymns of the Protestant Episcopal Church\_, Hymn LV.

A still more common form is that which reduces all these tetrameters to

single rhymes, preserving their alternate succession. In such metre and

stanza, is Montgomery's "Wanderer of Switzerland, a Poem, in Six Parts,"

and with an aggregate of eight hundred and forty-four lines. Example:--

1.

"'\_Wanderer\_, | whither | wouldst thou | roam?

To what | region | far a | -way,

Bend thy | steps to | find a | home,

In the | twilight | of thy | day?'

2.

'In the | twilight | of my | day,

I am | hastening | to the | west;

There my | weary limbs | to lay,

Where the | sun re | -tires to | rest.

3.

Far be | -yond the At | -lantic | floods,

Stretched be | -neath the | evening | sky,

Realms of | mountains, | dark with | woods,

In Co | -lumbia's | bosom | lie.

4.

There, in | glens and | caverns | rude,

Silent | since the | world be | -gan,

Dwells the | virgin | Soli | -tude,

Unbe | -trayed by | faithless | man:

5.

Where a | tyrant | never | trod,

Where a | slave was | never | known,

But where | nature | worships | God

In the | wilder | -ness a | -lone.

6.

Thither, | thither | would I | roam;

There my | children | may be | free;

I for | them will | find a | home;

They shall | find a | grave for | me.'"

\_First six stanzas of Part VI\_, pp. 71 and 72.

MEASURE II.--TROCHAIC OF SEVEN FEET, OR HEPTAMETER.

\_Example.--Psalm LXX,[510] Versified.\_

Hasten, | Lord, to | rescue | me, and | set me | safe from | trouble;

Shame thou | those who | seek my | soul, re | -ward their | mischief

| double.

Turn the | taunting | scorners | back, who | cry, 'A | -ha!' so

| loudly;

Backward | in con | -fusion | hurl the | foe that | mocks me | proudly.

Then in | thee let | those re | -joice, who | seek thee, | self-de

| -nying;

All who | thy sal | -vation | love, thy | name be | glory | -fying.

So let | God be | magni | -fied. But | I am | poor and | needy:

Hasten, | Lord, who | art my | Helper; | let thine | aid be | speedy.

This verse, like all other that is written in very long lines, requires a

cæsural pause of proportionate length; and it would scarcely differ at all

to the ear, if it were cut in two at the place of this pause--provided the

place were never varied. Such metre does not appear to have been at any

time much used, though there seems to be no positive reason why it might

not have a share of popularity. To commend our versification for its

"boundless variety," and at the same time exclude from it forms either

unobjectionable or well authorized, as some have done, is plainly

inconsistent. Full trochaics have some inconvenience, because all their

rhymes must be double; and, as this inconvenience becomes twice as much

when any long line of this sort is reduced to two short ones, there may be

a reason why a stanza precisely corresponding to the foregoing couplets is

seldom seen. If such lines be divided and rhymed at the middle of the

fourth foot, where the cæsural pause is apt to fall, the first part of each

will be a trochaic line of four feet, single-rhymed and catalectic, while

the rest of it will become an iambic line of three feet, with double rhyme

and hypermeter. Such are the prosodial characteristics of the following

lines; which, if two were written as one, would make exactly our full

trochaic of seven feet, the metre exhibited above:--

"Whisp'ring, | heard by | wakeful | maids,

To whom | the night | stars \_guide\_ | \_us\_,

Stolen | walk, through | moonlight | shades,

With those | we love | \_beside\_ | \_us\_"--\_Moore's Melodies\_, p. 276.

But trochaic of seven feet may also terminate with single rhyme, as in the

following couplet, which is given anonymously, and, after a false custom,

erroneously, in N. Butler's recent Grammar, as "trochaic of \_six feet, with

an additional long syllable\_:--

"Night and | morning | were at | meeting | over | Water | -loo;

Cocks had | sung their | \_earliest\_ | greeting; | faint and | low they

| crew." [511]

In Frazee's Grammar, a separate line or two, similar in metre to these, and

rightly reckoned to have \_seven feet\_, and many lines, (including those

above from Tennyson, which W. C. Fowler erroneously gives for

\_Heptameter\_,) being a foot longer, are presented as trochaics of \_eight\_

feet; but Everett, the surest of our prosodists, remaining, like most

others, a total stranger to our octometers, and too little acquainted with

trochaic heptameters to believe the species genuine, on finding a couple of

stanzas in which two such lines are set with shorter ones of different

sorts, and with some which are defective in metre, sagely concludes that

all lines of more than "\_six trochees\_" must necessarily be condemned as

prosodial anomalies. It may be worth while to repeat the said stanzas here,

adding such corrections and marks as may suggest their proper form and

scansion. But since they commence with the shorter metre of six trochees

only, and are already placed under that head, I too may take them in the

like connexion, by now introducing my third species of trochaics, which is

Everett's tenth.

MEASURE III.--TROCHAIC OF SIX FEET, OR HEXAMETER.

\_Example.--Health\_.

"Up the | dewy | mountain, | Health is | bounding | lightly;

On her | brows a | garland, | twin'd with | richest | posies:

Gay is | she, e | -late with | hope, and | smiling | sprighthly;

Redder | is her | cheek, and | sweeter | than the | rose is."

G. BROWN: \_The Institutes of English Grammar\_, p. 258.

This metre appears to be no less rare than the preceding; though, as in

that case, I know no good reason why it may not be brought into vogue.

Professor John S. Hart says of it: "This is the \_longest\_ Trochaic verse

that seems \_to have been cultivated\_."--\_Hart's Eng. Gram.\_, p. 187. The

seeming of its cultivation he doubtless found only in sundry modern

grammars. Johnson, Bicknell, Burn, Coar, Ward, Adam,--old grammarians, who

vainly profess to have illustrated "every species of English verse,"--make

no mention of it; and, with all the grammarians who notice it, \_one

anonymous couplet\_, passing from hand to hand, has everywhere served to

exemplify it.

Of this, "the line of six Trochees," Everett says: "This measure \_is

languishing\_, and rarely used. The following example is often cited:

'On a | mountain, | stretched be | -neath a | hoary | willow,

Lay a | shepherd | swain, and | view'd the | rolling

| billow.'"[512]

Again: "We have the following from BISHOP HEBER:--

'H=ol~y, | h=ol~y | h=ol~y! | =all th~e | s=aints ~a | -d=ore th~ee,

C=ast~ing | d=own th~eir | g=old~en | cr=owns ~a | -r=ound th~e

| gl=ass~y | s=ea;

Ch=er~u | -b=im ~and | s=er~a | -ph=im [~\_are\_,] | f=all~ing

| d=own b~e | -f=ore th~ee,

\_Wh~ich\_ w=ert, | ~and =art, | ~and =ev | -~erm=ore | sh~alt b=e!

Holy, | holy, | holy! | though the | darkness | hide thee,

Though the | eye of | sinful | man thy | glory | may not | see,

Only | thou, [\_O | God\_,] art | holy; | there is | none be

| -side thee,

P=erf~ect | ~in p=ow'r, | ~in l=ove, | ~and p=u | -r~it=y.'

Only the first \_and the third\_ lines of these stanzas are to our purpose,"

remarks the prosodist. That is, only these he conceived to be "lines of six

Trochees." But it is plain, that the third line of the first stanza, having

seven long syllables, must have seven feet, and cannot be a trochaic

hexameter; and, since the third below should be like it in metre, one can

hardly forbear to think the words which I have inserted in brackets, were

accidentally omitted.

Further: "It is worthy of remark," says he, "that the second line of each

of these stanzas is composed of \_six Trochees\_ and an \_additional long

syllable\_. As its corresponding line is an Iambic, and as the piece has

some licenses in its construction, it is \_far safer\_ to conclude that this

line is an \_anomaly\_ than that it forms a distinct species of verse. We

must therefore conclude that the tenth [the metre of six trochees] is the

longest species of Trochaic line known to English verse."--\_Everett's

Versification\_, pp. 95 and 96.

This, in view of the examples above, of our longer trochaics, may serve as

a comment on the author's boast, that, "having deduced his rules from the

usage of the great poets, he has the best reason for being confident of

their correctness."--\_Ibid.\_, Pref., p. 5.

Trochaic hexameter, too, may easily be written with \_single rhyme\_; perhaps

more easily than a specimen suited to the purpose can be cited from any

thing already written. Let me try:--

\_Example I.--The Sorcerer\_.

Lonely | in the | forest, | subtle | from his | birth,

Lived a | necro | -mancer, | wondrous | son of | earth.

More of | him in | -quire not, | than I | choose to | say;

Nymph or | dryad | bore him-- | else 'twas | witch or | fay;

Ask you | who his | father?-- | haply | he might | be

Wood-god, | satyr, | sylvan; | --such his | pedi | -gree.

Reared mid | fauns and | fairies, | knew he | no com | -peers;

Neither | cared he | for them, | saving | ghostly | seers.

Mistress | of the | black-art, | "wizard | gaunt and | grim,"

Nightly | on the | hill-top, | "read the | stars to | him."

These were | welcome | teachers; | drank he | in their | lore;

Witchcraft | so en | -ticed him, | still to | thirst for | more.

Spectres | he would | play with, | phantoms | raise or | quell;

Gnomes from | earth's deep | centre | knew his | potent | spell.

Augur | or a | -ruspex | had not | half his | art;

Master | deep of | magic, | spirits | played his | part;

Demons, | imps in | -fernal, | conjured | from be | -low,

Shaped his | grand en | -chantments | with im | -posing | show.

\_Example II.--An Example of Hart's, Corrected\_

"Where the | wood is | waving, | \_shady\_, | green, and | high,

Fauns and | dryads, | \_nightly\_, | watch the | starry | sky."

See \_Hart's E. Gram.\_, p. 187; or \_the citation thence below\_.

A couplet of this sort might easily be reduced to a pleasant little

stanza, by severing each line after the third foot, thus:--

Hearken! | hearken! | hear ye;

Voices | meet my | ear.

Listen, | never | fear ye;

Friends--or | foes--are | near.

Friends! "So | -ho!" they're | shouting.--

"Ho! so | -ho, a | -hoy!"--

'Tis no | Indian, | scouting.

Cry, \_so | -ho\_! with | joy.

But a similar succession of eleven syllables, six long and five short,

divided after the seventh, leaving two iambs to form the second or shorter

line,--(since such a division produces different orders and metres both,--)

will, I think, retain but little resemblance in rhythm to the foregoing,

though the actual sequence of quantities long and short is the same. If

this be so, the particular measure or correspondent length of lines is more

essential to the character of a poetic strain than some have supposed. The

first four lines of the following extract are an example relevant to this

point:--

\_Ariel's Song.\_

"C=ome ~un |-t=o´ th~ese | y=ell~ow | s=ands,

And th=en | t~ake h=ands:

Court'sied | when you | have and | kiss'd,

(The wild | waves whist,)

Foot it | featly | here and | there;

And, sweet | sprites, the | burden | bear."

SINGER'S SHAKSPEARE: \_Tempest\_, Act i, Sc. 2.

MEASURE IV.--TROCHAIC OF FIVE FEET, OR PENTAMETER

\_Example I.--Double Rhymes and Single, Alternated\_.

"Mountain | winds! oh! | whither | do ye | call me?

Vainly, | vainly, | would my | steps pur |-sue:

Chains of | care to | lower | earth en |-thrall me,

Wherefore | thus my | weary | spirit | woo?

Oh! the | strife of | this di |-vided | being!

Is there | peace where | ye are | borne, on | high?

Could we | soar to | your proud | eyries | fleeing,

In our | hearts, would | haunting | \_m=em~or~ies\_ | die?"

FELICIA HEMANS: "\_To the Mountain Winds:" Everet's Versif.\_, p. 95.

\_Example II--Rhymes Otherwise Arranged.\_

"Then, me |-thought, I | heard a | hollow | sound,

\_G=ath~er~ing\_ | up from | all the lower | ground:

\_N=arr~ow~ing\_ | in to | where they | sat as |-sembled,

Low vo |\_-l~upt~uo~us\_ | music, | winding, | trembled."

ALFRED TENNYSON: \_Frazee's Improved Gram.\_, p. 184; \_Fowler's\_, 657.

This measure, whether with the final short syllable or without it, is said,

by Murray, Everett, and others, to be "\_very uncommon\_." Dr. Johnson, and

the other old prosodists named with him above, knew nothing of it. Two

couplets, exemplifying it, now to be found in sundry grammars, and

erroneously reckoned to \_differ as to the number of their feet\_, were

either selected or composed by Murray, for his Grammar, at its origin--or,

if not then, at its first reprint, in 1796. They are these:--

(1.)

"All that | walk on | foot or | ride in | \_chariots\_,

All that | dwell in | pala |-ces or | garrets."

\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 12mo, 175; 8vo, 257; \_Chandler's\_, 196; \_Churchill's\_,

187; \_Hiley's\_, 126; \_et al.\_

(2.)

"Idle | after | dinner, | in his | chair,

Sat a | farmer, | ruddy, | fat, and | fair."

\_Murray, same places; N. Butler's Gr.\_, p. 193; \_Hallock's\_, 244; \_Hart's\_,

187; \_Weld's\_, 211; \_et al.\_

Richard Hiley most absurdly scans this last couplet, and all verse like it,

into "\_the Heroic measure\_," or a form of our \_iambic pentameter\_; saying,

"Sometimes a syllable is cut off from the \_first\_ foot; as,

=I |-dl~e =af |-t~er d=inn |-n~er =in | h~is ch=air [,]

S=at | ~a f=ar |-m~er [,] r=ud |-dý, f=at, | =and f=air."

\_Hiley's English Grammar\_, Third Edition, p. 125.

J. S. Hart, who, like many others, has mistaken the metre of this last

example for "\_Trochaic Tetrameter\_," with a surplus "syllable," after

repeating the current though rather questionable assertion, that, "this

measure is very uncommon," proceeds with our "\_Trochaic Pentameter\_," thus:

"This species is likewise uncommon. It is composed of five trochees; as,

=In th~e | d=ark ~and | gr=een ~and | gl=oom~y | v=all~ey,

S=at~yrs | b=y th~e | br=ookl~et | l=ove t~o | d=all~y."

And again: [[Fist]] "\_The SAME with an ADDITIONAL accented syllable\_; as,

Wh=ere th~e | w=ood ~is | w=av~ing |gr=een ~and |\_h=igh\_,

F=auns ~and | Dr=y~ads | w=atch th~e | st=arr~y | \_sky.\_"

\_Hart's English Grammar\_, First Edition, p. 187.

These examples appear to have been made for the occasion; and the latter,

together with its introduction, made unskillfully. The lines are of five

feet, and so are those about the ruddy farmer; but there is nothing

"\_additional\_" in either case; for, as pentameter, they are all

\_catalectic\_, the final short syllable being dispensed with, and a cæsura

preferred, for the sake of single rhyme, otherwise not attainable. "Five

trochees" and a rhyming "syllable" will make trochaic \_hexameter\_, a

measure perhaps more pleasant than this. See examples above.

MEASURE V.--TROCHAIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

\_Example I.--A Mournful Song\_.

1.

"Raving | winds a | -round her | blowing,

Yellow | leaves the | woodlands | strewing,

By a | river | hoarsely | roaring,

Isa | -bella | strayed de | -ploring.

'Farewell | hours that | late did | measure

Sunshine | days of | joy and | pleasure;

Hail, thou | gloomy | night of | sorrow,

Cheerless | night that | knows no | morrow.

2.

O'er the | past too | fondly | \_wandering\_,

On the | hopeless | future | \_pondering\_,

Chilly | grief my | life-blood | freezes,

Fell de | -spair my | fancy | seizes.

Life, thou | soul of | \_every\_ | blessing,

Load to | \_misery\_ | most dis | -tressing,

O how | gladly | I'd re | -sign thee,

And to | dark ob | \_-livion\_ | join thee.'"

ROBERT BURNS: \_Select Works\_, Vol. ii, p. 131

\_Example II.--A Song Petitionary\_.

"\_Powers ce\_ | -lestial, | whose pro | -tection

Ever | guards the | \_virtuous\_ | fair,

While in | distant | climes I | wander,

Let my | Mary | be your | care:

Let her | form so | fair and | faultless,

Fair and | faultless | as your | own;

Let my | Mary's | kindred | spirit

Draw your | choicest | \_influence\_ | down.

Make the | gales you | waft a | -round her

Soft and | peaceful | as her | breast;

Breathing | in the | breeze that | fans her,

Soothe her | bosom | into | rest:

\_Guardian\_ | angels, | O pro | -tect her,

When in | distant | lands I | roam;

\_To realms\_ | \_unknown\_ | \_while fate\_ | \_exiles me\_,

Make her | bosom | still my | home."

BURNS'S SONGS, Same Volume, p. 165.

\_Example III.--Song of Juno and Ceres\_.

\_Ju\_. "Honour, | riches, marriage | -blessing,

Long con | \_-tinuance\_, | and in | -creasing,

Hourly | joys be | still up | -on you!

Juno | sings her | blessings | on you."

\_Cer\_. "Earth's in | -crease, and | foison | plenty;

Barns and | garners | never | empty;

Vines with | clust'ring | bunches | growing;

Plants with | goodly | burden | bowing;

Spring come | to you, | at the | farthest,

In the | very | end of | harvest!

Scarci | -ty and | want shall | shun you;

Ceres' | blessing | so is | on you."

SHAKSPEARE: \_Tempest\_, Act iv, Sc. 1.

\_Example IV.--On the Vowels\_.

"We are | little | airy | creatures,

All of | diff'rent | voice and | features;

One of | us in | glass is | set,

One of | us you'll | find in | jet;

T'other | you may | see in | tin,

And the | fourth a | box with | -in;

If the | fifth you | should pur | -sue,

It can | never | fly from | you."

SWIFT: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. v, p. 343.

\_Example V.--Use Time for Good\_.

"Life is | short, and | time is | swift;

Roses | fade, and | shadows | shift;

But the ocean | and the | river

Rise and | fall and | flow for | ever;

Bard! not | vainly | heaves the | ocean;

Bard! not | vainly | flows the | river;

Be thy | song, then, | like their | motion,

Blessing | now, and | blessing | ever."

EBENEZER ELLIOT: \_From a Newspaper\_.

\_Example IV.[sic for VI--KTH]--"The Turkish Lady"--First Four Stanzas\_.

1.

"'Twas the | hour when | rites un | -holy

Called each | Paynim | voice to | pray'r,

And the | star that | faded | slowly,

Left to | dews the | freshened | air.

2.

Day her | sultry | fires had | wasted,

Calm and | sweet the | moonlight | rose;

E'en a | captive's | spirit | tasted

Half ob | -livion | of his | woes.

3.

Then 'twas | from an | Emir's | palace

Came an | eastern | lady | bright;

She, in | spite of | tyrants | jealous,

Saw and | loved an | English | knight.

4.

'Tell me, | captive, | why in | anguish

Foes have | dragged thee | here to | dwell

Where poor | Christians, | as they | languish.

Hear no | sound of | sabbath | bell?'"

THOMAS CAMPBELL: \_Poetical Works\_, p. 115.

\_Example VII.--The Palmer's Morning Hymn\_.

"Lauded | be thy | name for | ever,

Thou, of | life the | guard and | giver!

Thou canst | guard thy | creatures | sleeping,

Heal the | heart long | broke with | weeping,

Rule the | =ouphes ~and | =elves ~at | w=ill

\_Th~at v=ex\_ | \_th~e =air\_ | \_~or h=aunt\_ | \_th~e h=ill\_,

\_~And =all\_ | \_th~e f=u\_ | \_-r~y s=ub\_ | \_-j~ect k=eep\_

\_~Of b=oil\_ | \_-~ing cl=oud\_ | \_~and ch=af\_ | \_-~ed d=eep!\_

I h~ave | s=een, ~and | w=ell I | kn=ow ~it!

Thou hast | done, and | Thou wilt | do it!

God of | stillness | and of | motion!

Of the | rainbow | and the | ocean!

Of the | mountain, | rock, and | river!

Blessed | be Thy | name for | ever!

I have | seen thy | wondrous | might

Through the | shadows | of this | night!

Thou, who | slumber'st | not, nor | sleepest!

Blest are | they thou | kindly | keepest!

Spirits, | from the | ocean | under,

Liquid | flame, and | levell'd | thunder,

Need not | waken | nor a |-larm them--

All com |-bined, they | cannot | harm them.

God of | evening's | yellow | ray,

God of | yonder | dawning | day,

Thine the | flaming | sphere of | light!

Thine the | darkness | of the | night!

Thine are | all the | gems of | even,

God of | angels! | God of | heaven!"

JAMES HOGG: \_Mador of the Moor, Poems\_, p. 206.

\_Example VIII--A Short Song, of Two Stanzas\_.

"Stay, my | charmer, | can you | leave me?

Cruel, | cruel, | to de |-ceive me!

Well you | know how | much you | grieve me:

Cruel | charmer, | can you | go?

Cruel | charmer, | can you | go?

By my | love, so | ill re |-quited;

By the | faith you | fondly plighted;

By the | pangs of | lovers slighted;

Do not, | do not | leave me | so!

Do not, | do not | leave me | so!"

ROBERT BURNS: \_Select Works\_, Vol. ii, p. 129.

\_Example IX.--Lingering Courtship\_.

1.

"Never | wedding, | ever | wooing,

Still | lovelorn | heart pur |-suing,

Read you | not the | wrong you're | doing,

In my | cheek's pale | hue?

All my | life with | sorrow | strewing,

Wed, or | cease to | woo.

2.

Rivals | banish'd, | bosoms | plighted,

Still our | days are | disu |-nited;

Now the | lamp of | hope is | lighted,

Now half | quench'd ap | -pears,

Damp'd, and | \_wavering\_, and be | -nighted,

Midst my | sighs and | tears.

3.

Charms you | call your | dearest | blessing,

Lips that | thrill at | your ca | -ressing,

Eyes a | \_mutual\_ soul con | -fessing,

Soon you'll | make them | grow

Dim, and | worthless | your pos | -sessing,

Not with | age, but | woe!"

CAMPBELL: \_Everett's System of Versification\_, p. 91.

\_Example X.--"Boadicea"--Four Stanzas from Eleven\_.

1.

"When the | British | warrior | queen,

Bleeding | from the | Roman | rods,

Sought, with | an in | -dignant | mien,

Counsel | of her | country's | gods,

2.

Sage be | -neath the | spreading | oak,

Sat the | Druid, | hoary | chief;

\_Every\_ burning | word he | spoke

Full of | rage, and | full of | grief.

3.

Princess! | if our | aged | eyes

Weep up | -on thy | matchless | wrongs,

'Tis be | -cause re | -sentment | ties

All the | terrors | of our | tongues.

4.

ROME SHALL | PERISH-- | write that | word

In the | blood that | she hath | spilt;

Perish, | hopeless | and ab | -horr'd,

Deep in | ruin | as in | guilt."

WILLIAM COWPER: \_Poems\_, Vol. ii, p. 244.

\_Example XI--"The Thunder Storm"--Two Stanzas from Ten\_.

"Now in | deep and | dreadful | gloom,

Clouds on | clouds por | -tentous | spread,

Black as | if the | day of | doom

Hung o'er | Nature's | shrinking | head:

Lo! the | lightning | breaks from | high,

God is | coming! |--God is | nigh!

Hear ye | not his | \_chariot\_ | wheels,

As the | mighty | thunder | rolls?

Nature, | startled | Nature | reels,

From the | centre | to the | poles:

Tremble! | --Ocean, | Earth, and | Sky!

Tremble! | --God is | passing | by!"

J. MONTGOMERY: \_Wanderer of Switzerland, and other Poems\_, p. 130.

\_Example XII.--"The Triumphs of Owen," King of North Wales.\_[513]

"Owen's | praise de | -mands my song,

Owen | swift and | Owen | strong;

Fairest | flow'r of | \_Roderick's\_ | stem,

Gwyneth's | shield, and | Britain's | gem.

He nor | heaps his | brooded | stores,

Nor the | whole pro | -fusely | pours;

Lord of | \_every\_ | regal | art,

\_Liberal\_ | hand and | open | heart.

Big with | hosts of | mighty | name,

Squadrons | three a | -gainst him came;

This the | force of | Eirin | hiding,

Side by | side as | proudly | riding,

On her | shadow | long and | gay,

Lochlin | ploughs the | \_watery\_ | way:

There the Norman | sails a | -far

Catch the | winds, and | join the | war;

Black and | huge, a | -long they | sweep,

Burthens | of the | angry | deep.

Dauntless | on his | native | sands,

\_The Drag | -on-son | of Mo | -na stands;[514]

In glit | -tering arms | and glo | -ry drest\_,

High he | rears his | ruby | crest.

There the | thundering | stroke be | -gin,

There the | press, and | there the | din;

Taly | -malfra's | rocky | shore

\_Echoing\_ | to the | battle's | roar;

Where his | glowing | eyeballs | turn,

Thousand | banners | round him | burn.

Where he | points his | purple | spear,

Hasty, | hasty | rout is | there,

Marking | with in | -dignant | eye

Fear to | stop, and | shame to | fly.

There Con | -fusion, | Terror's | child,

Conflict | fierce, and | Ruin | wild,

Ago | -ny, that | pants for | breath,

\_Despair\_, | and HON | -OURA | -BLE DEATH."

THOMAS GRAY: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 285.

\_Example XIII.--"Grongar Hill."--First Twenty-six Lines\_.

"Silent | Nymph, with | \_curious\_ | eye,

Who, the | purple | eve, dost | lie

On the | mountain's | lonely | van,

\_Beyond\_ | \_the noise\_ | \_of bus\_ | \_-y man\_;

Painting | fair the | form of | things,

While the | yellow | linnet | sings;

Or the | tuneful | nightin | -gale

Charms the | forest | with her | tale;

Come, with | all thy | various hues,

Come, and | aid thy | sister | Muse.

Now, while | Phoebus, | riding | high,

\_Gives lus\_ | \_-tre to\_ | \_the land\_ | \_and sky\_,

Grongar | Hill in | -vites my | song;

Draw the | landscape | bright | and strong;

Grongar, | in whose | mossy | cells,

Sweetly | -musing | Quiet | dwells;

Grongar, | in whose | silent | shade,

For the | modest | Muses | made,

\_So oft\_ | \_I have\_, | \_the eve\_ | \_-ning still\_,

At the | fountain | of a | rill,

Sat up | -on a | \_flowery\_ | bed,

With my | hand be | -neath my | head,

\_While stray'd\_ | \_my eyes\_ | \_o'er Tow\_ | \_-y's flood\_,

Over | mead and | over wood,

\_From house\_ | \_to house\_, | \_from hill\_ | \_to hill\_,

\_Till Con\_ | \_-templa\_ | \_-tion had\_ | \_her fill\_."

JOHN DYER: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 65.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--This is the most common of our trochaic measures; and it seems to

be equally popular, whether written with single rhyme, or with double; in

stanzas, or in couplets; alone, or with some intentional intermixture. By a

careful choice of words and style, it may be adapted to all sorts of

subjects, grave, or gay; quaint, or pathetic; as may the corresponding

iambic metre, with which it is often more or less mingled, as we see in

some of the examples above. Milton's \_L'Allegro\_, or \_Gay Mood\_, has one

hundred and fifty-two lines; ninety-eight of which are iambics; fifty-four

trochaic tetrameters; a very few of each order having double rhymes. These

orders the poet has \_not\_--"very ingeniously \_alternated\_" as Everett

avers; but has simply interspersed, or commingled, with little or no regard

to alternation. His \_Il Penseroso\_, or \_Grave Mood\_, has twenty-seven

trochaic tetrameters, mixed irregularly with one hundred and forty-nine

iambics.

OBS. 2.--Everett, who divides our trochaic tetrameters into two species of

metre, imagines that the catalectic form, or that which is single-rhymed,

"has a \_solemn effect\_,"--"imparts to all pieces \_more dignity\_ than any of

the other short measures,"--"that no trivial or humorous subject should be

treated in this measure,"--and that, "besides dignity, it imparts an air of

\_sadness\_ to the subject."--\_English Verses.\_, p. 87. Our "line of four

trochees" he supposes to be "\_difficult\_ of construction,"--"not of very

\_frequent\_ occurrence,"--"the most \_agreeable\_ of all the trochaic

measures,"--"remarkably well adapted to lively subjects,"--and "peculiarly

expressive of the eagerness and fickleness of the passion of love."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 90. These pretended metrical characteristics seem scarcely more worthy

of reliance, than astrological predictions, or the oracular guessings of

our modern craniologists.

OBS. 3.--Dr. Campbell repeats a suggestion of the older critics, that

gayety belongs naturally to all trochaics, as such, and gravity or

grandeur, as naturally, to iambics; and he attempts to find a reason for

the fact; while, perhaps, even here--more plausible though the supposition

is--the fact may be at least half imaginary. "The iambus," says he, "is

expressive of dignity and grandeur; the trochee, on the contrary, according

to Aristotle, (Rhet. Lib. Ill,) is frolicsome and gay. It were difficult to

assign a reason of this difference that would be satisfactory; but of the

thing itself, I imagine, most people will be sensible on comparing the two

kinds together. I know not whether it will be admitted as a sufficient

reason, that the distinction into metrical feet hath a much greater

influence in poetry on the rise and fall of the voice, than the distinction

into words; and if so, when the cadences happen mostly after the long

syllables, the verse will naturally have an air of greater gravity than

when they happen mostly after the short."--\_Campbell's Philosophy of

Rhetoric\_, p. 354.

MEASURE VI.--TROCHAIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

\_Example I.--Youth and Age Contrasted\_.

"Crabbed | age and | youth

Cannot | live to | -gether;

Youth is | full of | pleasance,

Age is | full of | care:

Youth, like | summer | morn,

Age, like | winter | weather;

Youth, like | summer, | brave;

Age, like | winter, | bare.

Youth is | full of | sport,

Age's | breath is | short,

Youth is | nimble, | age is | lame;

Youth is | hot and | bold,

Age is | weak and | cold;

Youth is | wild, and | age is | tame."

\_The Passionate Pilgrim\_; SINGER'S SHAKSPEARE, Vol. ii p. 594.

\_Example II--Common Sense and Genius\_.

3.

"While I | touch the | string,

Wreathe my | brows with | laurel;

For the | tale I | sing,

Has, for | once, a | moral!

4.

Common | Sense went | on,

Many | wise things | saying;

While the | light that | shone,

Soon set | Genius | straying.

5.

One his eye ne'er | rais'd

From the | path be | -fore him;

T' other | idly | gaz'd

On each | night-cloud | o'er him.

6.

While I | touch the | string,

Wreathe my | brows with | laurel;

For the | tale I | sing,

Has, for | once, a | moral!

7.

So they | came, at | last,

To a | shady | river;

Common | Sense soon |pass'd

Safe,--as | he doth | ever.

8.

While the | boy whose | look

Was in | heav'n that | minute,

Never | saw the | brook,--

\_But tum\_ | \_-bled head\_ | \_-long in it\_."

\_Six Stanzas from Twelve\_.--MOORE'S MELODIES, p. 271.

This short measure is much oftener used in stanzas, than in couplets. It

is, in many instances, combined with some different order or metre of

verse, as in the following:--

\_Example III.--Part of a Song\_.

"Go where | glory | waits thee,

But while | fame e | -lates thee,

\_Oh! still | remem | -ber me\_.

When the | praise thou | meetest,

To thine | ear is | sweetest,

\_Oh! then | remem | -ber me\_.

Other | arms may | press thee,

Dearer | friends ca | -ress thee,

All the | joys that | bless thee,

Sweeter | far may | be:

But when | friends are | nearest,

And when | joys are | dearest,

\_Oh! then | remem | -ber me.\_

When, at | eve, thou | rovest,

By the | star thou | lovest,

\_Oh! then | remem | -ber me\_.

Think when | home re | -turning,

Bright we've | seen it | burning;

\_Oh! thus | remem | -ber me\_.

Oft as | summer | closes,

When thine | eye re | -poses

On its | ling'ring | roses,

Once so | loved by | thee,

Think of | her who | wove them,

Her who | made thee | love them;

\_Oh! then | remem | -ber me\_."

MOORE'S \_Melodies, Songs, and Airs\_, p. 107.

\_Example IV.--From an Ode to the Thames\_.

"On thy | shady | margin,

Care its | load dis | -charging,

\_Is lull'd | to gen | -tle rest\_:

Britain | thus dis | -arming,

Nothing | her a | -larming,

\_Shall sleep on Cæ | -sar's breast\_."

See ROWE'S POEMS: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. iv, p. 58.

\_Example V.--"The True Poet"--First Two of Nine Stanzas\_.

1.

"Poet | of the | heart,

Delving | in its | mine,

From man | -kind a | -part,

Yet where | jewels | shine;

Heaving | upward | to the | light,

Precious | wealth that | charms the | sight;

2.

Toil thou | still, deep | down,

For earth's | hidden | gems;

They shall | deck a | crown,

Blaze in | dia | -dems;

\_And when | thy hand | shall fall | to rest\_,

Brightly | jewel | beauty's | breast."

JANE B. LOCKE: \_N. Y. Evening Post; The Examiner, No. 98\_.

\_Example VI.--"Summer Longings"--First Two of Five Stanzas\_.

"Ah! my | heart is | ever | waiting,

Waiting | for the | May,--

Waiting | for the | pleasant | rambles

Where the | fragrant | hawthorn | brambles,

With the | woodbine | alter | -nating,

Scent the | dewy | way.

Ah! my | heart is | weary | waiting,

Waiting | for the | May.

Ah! my | heart is | sick with | longing,

Longing | for the | May,--

Longing | to e | -scape from | study,

To the | young face | fair and | ruddy,

And the | thousand | charms be | -longing

To the | Summer's | day.

Ah! my | heart is | sick with | longing,

Longing | for the | May."

"D. F. M. C.:" \_Dublin University Magazine; Liberator, No\_. 952.

MEASURE VII.--TROCHAIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

\_Example I.--Three Short Excerpts.\_

1.

"My flocks | feed not,

My ewes | breed not,

My rams | speed not,

All is | \_amiss\_:

Love's de | -nying,

Faith's de | -fying,

Heart's re | -nying,

Causer | \_of this\_."

2.

"In black | mourn I,

All fears | scorn I,

Love hath | lorn me,

Living | \_in thrall\_:

Heart is | bleeding,

All help | needing.

(Cruel | speeding,)

Fraughted | \_with gall\_."

3.

"Clear wells | spring not.

Sweet birds | sing not,

Loud bells | ring not

\_Cheerfully\_;

Herds stand | weeping,

Flocks all | sleeping,

Nymphs back | creeping

\_Fearfully\_."

SHAKSPEARE: \_The Passionate Pilgrim\_. See Sec. xv.

\_Example II.--Specimen with Single Rhyme.

"To Quinbus Flestrin, the Man-Mountain"\_

A LILLIPUTIAN ODE

I.

"In a | -maze,

Lost, I | gaze.

Can our | eyes

Reach thy | size?

May my | lays

Swell with | praise,

Worthy | thee,

Worthy | me!

Muse, in | -spire

All thy | fire!

Bards of | old

Of him | told,

When they | said

Atlas' | head

Propp'd the | skies:

See! and | \_believe\_ | \_your eyes!\_

II.

"See him | stride

Valleys | wide:

Over | woods,

Over | floods,

When he | treads,

Mountains' | heads

Groan and | shake:

Armies | quake,

Lest his | spurn

Over | -turn

Man and | steed:

Troops, take | heed!

Left and | right

Speed your | flight!

Lest an | host

\_Beneath\_ | \_his foot\_ | \_be lost\_.

III.

"Turn'd a | -side

From his | hide,

Safe from | wound,

Darts re | -bound.

From his | nose,

Clouds he | blows;

When he | speaks,

Thunder | breaks!

When he | eats,

Famine | threats!

When he | drinks,

Neptune | shrinks!

Nigh thy | ear,

In mid | air,

On thy | hand,

Let me | stand.

So shall | I

(Lofty | poet!) touch the sky."

JOHN GAY: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 376.

\_Example III.--Two Feet with Four.\_

"Oh, the | pleasing, | pleasing | anguish,

When we | love, and | when we | languish!

Wishes | rising!

Thoughts sur | -prising!

Pleasure | courting!

Charms trans | -porting!

Fancy | viewing

Joys en | -suing!

Oh, the | pleasing, | pleasing | anguish!"

ADDISON'S \_Rosamond\_, Act i, Scene 6.

\_Example IV.--Lines of Three Syllables with Longer Metres\_.

1. WITH TROCHAICS.

"Or we | sometimes | pass an | hour

Under | a green | willow,

That de | -fends us | from the | shower,

Making | earth our | pillow;

Where we | may

Think and | pray,

B=e'fore | death

Stops our | breath:

Other | joys,

Are but | toys,

And to | be la | -mented." [515]

2. WITH IAMBICS.

"What sounds | were heard,

What scenes | appear'd,

O'er all | the drear | -y coasts!

Dreadful | gleams,

Dismal | screams,

Fires that | glow,

Shrieks of | wo,

Sullen | moans,

Hollow | groans,

And cries | of tor | -tur'd ghosts!"

POPE: \_Johnson's Brit. Poets\_, Vol. vi, p. 315.

\_Example V.--"The Shower."--In Four Regular Stanzas\_.

1.

"In a | valley | that I | know--

Happy | scene!

There are | meadows | sloping | low,

There the | fairest | flowers | blow,

And the | brightest | waters | flow.

All se | -rene;

But the | sweetest | thing to | see,

If you | ask the | dripping | tree,

Or the | harvest | -hoping | swain,

Is the | Rain.

2.

Ah, the | dwellers | of the | town,

How they | sigh,--

How un | -grateful | -ly they | frown,

When the | cloud-king | shakes his | crown,

And the | pearls come | pouring | down

From the | sky!

They de | -scry no | charm at | all

Where the | sparkling | jewels | fall,

And each | moment | of the | shower,

Seems an | hour!

3.

Yet there's | something | very | sweet

In the | sight,

When the | crystal | currents | meet

In the | dry and | dusty | street,

And they | wrestle | with the | heat,

In their | might!

While they | seem to | hold a | talk

With the | stones a | -long the | walk,

And re | -mind them | of the | rule,

To 'keep | cool!'

4.

Ay, but | in that | quiet | dell,

Ever | fair,

Still the | Lord doth | all things | well,

When his | clouds with | blessings | swell,

And they | break a | brimming | shell

On the | air;

There the | shower | hath its | charms,

Sweet and | welcome | to the | farms

As they | listen | to its | voice,

And re | -joice!"

Rev. RALPH HOYT'S \_Poems: The Examiner\_, Nov. 6, 1847.

\_Example VI.--"A Good Name?"--Two Beautiful Little Stanzas\_.

1.

"Children, | choose it,

Don't re | -fuse it,

'Tis a | precious | dia | -dem;

Highly | prize it,

Don't de | -spise it,

You will | need it | when you're | men.

2.

Love and | cherish,

Keep and | nourish,

'Tis more | precious | far than | gold;

Watch and | guard it,

Don't dis | -card it,

You will | need it | when you're | old."

\_The Family Christian Almanac, for 1850\_, p. 20.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Trochaics of two feet, like those of three, are, more frequently

than otherwise, found in connexion with longer lines, as in some of the

examples above cited. The trochaic line of three syllables, which our

prosodists in general describe as consisting, not of two feet; but "of one

Trochee and a long syllable," may, when it stands alone, be supposed to

consist of one \_amphimac\_; but, since this species of foot is not admitted

by all, and is reckoned a secondary one by those who do admit it, the

better practice is, to divide even the three syllables into two feet, as

above.

OBS. 2.--Murray, Hart, Weld, and many others, erroneously affirm, that,

"The \_shortest\_ Trochaic verse in our language, consists of one Trochee and

a long syllable."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 256; \_Hart's, First Edition\_, p.

186; \_Weld's, Second Edition\_, p. 210. The error of this will be shown by

examples below--examples of \_true "Trochaic Monometer\_," and not of Dimeter

mistaken for it, like Weld's, Hart's, or Murray's.

OBS. 3.--These authors also aver, that, "This measure is \_defective in

dignity\_, and can seldom be used on serious occasions."--\_Same places\_.

"Trochaic of \_two feet\_--is likewise so \_brief\_, that," in their opinion,

"it is rarely used for any very serious purpose."--\_Same places\_. Whether

the expression of love, or of its disappointment, is "any very serious

purpose" or not, I leave to the decision of the reader. What lack of

dignity or seriousness there is, in several of the foregoing examples,

especially the last two, I think it not easy to discover.

MEASURE VIII.--TROCHAIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

\_Examples with Longer Metres\_.

1. WITH IAMBICS.

"Fr~om w=alk | t~o w=alk, | fr~om sh=ade | t~o sh=ade,

From stream to purl | -ing stream | convey'd,

Through all | the ma | -zes of | the grove,

Through all | the ming | -ling tracks | I rove,

Turning,

Burning,

Changing,

Ranging,

F=ull ~of | gri=ef ~and | f=ull ~of | l=ove."

ADDISON'S \_Rosamond\_, Act I, Sc. 4:

\_Everett's Versification\_, p. 81.

2. WITH ANAPESTICS, &c.

"T~o l=ove ~and t~o l=angu~ish,

T~o s=igh | ~and c~ompl=ain,

H~ow cr=u~el's th~e =angu~ish!

H~ow t~orm=ent | -~ing th~e p=ain!

Suing,

Pursuing,

Flying,

Denying,

O the curse | of disdain!

How torment | -ing's the pain!"

GEO. GRANVILLE: \_Br. Poets\_, Vol. v, p. 31.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The metres acknowledged in our ordinary schemes of prosody,

scarcely amount, with all their "boundless variety," to more than one half,

or three quarters, of what may be found in \_actual use\_ somewhere. Among

the foregoing examples, are some which are longer, and some which are

shorter, than what are commonly known to our grammarians; and some, also,

which seem easily practicable, though perhaps not so easily quotable. This

last trochaic metre, so far as I know, has not been used alone,--that is,

without longer lines,--except where grammarians so set examples of it in

their prosodies.

OBS. 2.--"Trochaic of One foot," as well as "Iambic of One foot," was, I

believe, first recognized, prosodically, in Brown's Institutes of English

Grammar, a work first published in 1823. Since that time, both have

obtained acknowledgement in sundry schemes of versification, contained in

the new grammars; as in Farnum's, and Hallock's, of 1842; in Pardon

Davis's, of 1845; in S. W. Clark's, and S. S. Greene's, of 1848; in

Professor Fowler's, of 1850. Wells, in his School Grammar, of 1846, and D.

C. Allen, in an other, of 1847, give to the \_length of lines\_ a laxity

positively absurd: "\_Rhymed\_ verses," say they, "may consist of \_any

number\_ of syllables."--\_Wells\_, 1st Ed., p. 187; late Ed., 204; \_Allen\_,

p. 88. Everett has recognized "\_The line of a single Trochee\_," though he

repudiates some long measures that are much more extensively authorized.

ORDER III.--ANAPESTIC VERSE.

In full Anapestic verse, the stress is laid on every third syllable, the

first two syllables of each foot being short. The first foot of an

anapestic line, may be an iambus. This is the most frequent diversification

of the order. But, as a diversification, it is, of course, not \_regular\_ or

\_uniform\_. The stated or uniform adoption of the iambus for a part of each

line, and of the anapest for the residue of it, produces verse of the

\_Composite Order\_. As the anapest ends with a long syllable, its rhymes are

naturally single; and a short syllable after this, producing double rhyme,

is, of course, supernumerary: so are the two, when the rhyme is triple.

Some prosodists suppose, a surplus at the end of a line may compensate for

a deficiency at the beginning of the next line; but this I judge to be an

error, or at least the indulgence of a questionable license. The following

passage has two examples of what may have been \_meant\_ for such

compensation, the author having used a dash where I have inserted what

seems to be a necessary word:--

"Apol | -lo smil'd shrewd | -ly, and bade | him sit down,

With 'Well, | Mr. Scott, | you have man | -aged the town;

Now pray, | copy less-- | have a lit | -tle temer | -\_~it~y\_--

[And] Try | if you can't | also man | -age poster | -\_ity\_.

[For] All | you add now | only les | -sens your cred | -\_it\_;

And how | could you think, | too, of tak | -ing to ed | -\_ite?\_'"

LEIGH HUNT'S \_Feast of the Poets\_, page 20.

The anapestic measures are few; because their feet are long, and no poet

has chosen to set a great many in a line. Possibly lines of five anapests,

or of four and an initial iambus, might be written; for these would

scarcely equal in length some of the iambics and trochaics already

exhibited. But I do not find any examples of such metre. The longest

anapestics that have gained my notice, are of fourteen syllables, being

tetrameters with triple rhyme, or lines of four anapests and two short

surplus syllables. This order consists therefore of measures reducible to

the following heads:--

MEASURE I.--ANAPESTIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

\_Example I.--A "Postscript."--An Example with Hypermeter.\_

"Lean Tom, | when I saw | him, last week, | on his \_horse\_ | \_awry\_,

Threaten'd loud | -ly to turn | me to stone | with his \_sor\_ | -\_cery\_.

But, I think, | little Dan, | that, in spite | of what \_our\_

| \_foe says\_,

He will find | I read Ov | -id and his | Meta\_mor\_ | -\_phoses\_.

For, omit | -ting the first, | (where I make | a com\_par\_ | -\_ison\_,

With a sort | of allu | -sion to Put | -land or \_Har\_ | -\_rison\_,)

Yet, by | my descrip | -tion, you'll find | he in \_short\_ | \_is\_

A pack | and a gar | -ran, a top | and a \_tor\_ | -\_toise\_.

So I hope | from hencefor | -ward you ne'er | will ask, \_can\_

| \_I maul\_

This teas | -ing, conceit | -ed, rude, in | -solent \_an\_ | -\_imal?\_

And, if | this rebuke | might be turn'd | to his \_ben\_ | -\_efit\_,

(For I pit | -y the man,) | I should | be glad \_then\_ | \_of it\_"

SWIFT'S POEMS: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. v, p. 324.

\_Example II.--"The Feast of the Poets."--First Twelve Lines.\_

"T' other day, | as Apol | -lo sat pitch | -ing his darts

Through the clouds | of Novem | -ber, by fits | and by starts,

He began | to consid | -er how long | it had been

Since the bards | of Old Eng | -land had all | been rung in.

'I think,' | said the god, | recollect | -ing, (and then

He fell twid | -dling a sun | -beam as I | may my pen,)

'I think-- | let me see-- | yes, it is, | I declare,

As long | ago now | as that Buck | -ingham there;

And yet | I can't see | why I've been | so remiss,

Unless | it may be-- | and it cer | -tainly is,

That since Dry | -den's fine ver | -ses and Mil | -ton's sublime,

I have fair | -ly been sick | of their sing | -song and rhyme.'"

LEIGH HUNT: \_Poems\_, New-York Edition, of 1814.

\_Example III.--The Crowning of Four Favourites.\_

"Then, 'Come,' | cried the god | in his el | -egant mirth,

'Let us make | us a heav'n | of our own | upon earth,

And wake, | with the lips | that we dip | in our bowls,

That divin | -est of mu | -sic--conge | -nial souls.'

So say | -ing, he led | through the din | -ing-room door,

And, seat | -ing the po | -ets, cried, 'Lau | -rels for four!'

No soon | -er demand | -ed, than, lo! | they were there,

And each | of the bards | had a wreath | in his hair.

Tom Camp | -bell's with wil | -low and pop | -lar was twin'd,

And South | -ey's, with moun | -tain-ash, pluck'd | in the wind;

And Scott's, | with a heath | from his old | garden stores,

And, with vine | -leaves and jump | -up-and-kiss | -me, Tom Moore's."

LEIGH HUNT: from line 330 to line 342.

\_Example IV.--"Glenara."--First Two of Eight Stanzas.\_

"O heard | ye yon pi | -broch sound sad | in the gale,

Where a band | cometh slow | -ly with weep | -ing and wail!

'Tis the chief | of Glena | -ra laments | for his dear;

And her sire, | and the peo | -ple, are called | to her bier.

Glena | -ra came first | with the mourn | -ers and shroud;

Her kins | -men, they fol | -lowed, but mourned | not aloud;

Their plaids | all their bo | -soms were fold | -ed around;

They marched | all in si | -lence--they looked | on the ground."

T. CAMPBELL'S \_Poetical Works\_, p. 105.

\_Example V.--"Lochiel's Warning."--Ten Lines from Eighty-six.\_

"'Tis the sun | -set of life | gives me mys | -tical lore,

And com | -ing events | cast their shad | -ows before.

I tell | thee, Cullo | -den's dread ech | -oes shall ring

With the blood | -hounds that bark | for thy fu | -gitive king.

Lo! anoint | -ed by Heav'n | with the vi | -als of wrath,

Behold, | where he flies | on his des | -olate path!

Now, in dark | -ness and bil | -lows he sweeps | from my sight;

Rise! rise! | ye wild tem | -pests, and cov | -er his flight!

'Tis fin | -ished. Their thun | -ders are hushed | on the moors;

Cullo | -den is lost, | and my coun | -try deplores."--\_Ib.\_, p. 89.

\_Example VI.--"The Exile of Erin."--The First of Five Stanzas.\_

"There came | to the beach | a poor Ex | -ile of E | -\_r~in\_,

The dew | on his thin | robe was heav | -y and chill;

For his coun | -try he sighed, | when at twi | -light repair | -\_~ing\_

To wan | -der alone | by the wind | -beaten hill.

But the day | -star attract | -ed his eye's | sad devo | -\_t~ion\_,

For it rose | o'er his own | native isle | of the o | -\_c~ean\_,

Where once, | in the fire | of his youth | -ful emo | \_t~ion\_,

He sang | the bold an | -them of E | -rin go bragh."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116.

\_Example VII.--"The Poplar Field."\_

"\_The pop\_ | -lars are fell'd, | \_farewell\_ | to the shade,

And the whis | -pering sound | of the cool | colonnade;

\_The winds\_ | play no lon | -ger and sing | in the leaves,

\_Nor Ouse\_ | on his bo | -som their im | -age receives.

\_Twelve years\_ | have elaps'd, | since I last | took a view

Of my fa | -vourite field, | and the bank | where they grew;

\_And now\_ | in the grass | \_behold\_ | they are laid,

And the tree | is my seat | that once lent | me a shade.

\_The black\_ | -bird has fled | to anoth | -er retreat,

Where the ha | -zels afford | him a screen | from the heat,

And the scene, | where his mel | -ody charm'd | me before,

\_Resounds\_ | with his sweet | -flowing dit | -ty no more.

\_My fu\_ | -gitive years | are all hast | -ing away,

\_And I\_ | must ere long | lie as low | -ly as they,

With a turf | on my breast, | and a stone | at my head,

Ere anoth | -er such grove | shall arise | in its stead.

'Tis a sight | to engage | me, if an | -y thing can,

\_To muse\_ | on the per | -ishing pleas | -ures of man;

Though his life | be a dream, | his enjoy | -ments, I see,

Have a be | -ing less dur | -able e | -ven than he."

COWPER'S \_Poems\_, Vol. i, p. 257.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Everett avers, that, "The purely Anapestic measure is more easily

constructed than the Trochee, [Trochaic,] and of much more frequent

occurrence."--\_English Versification\_, p. 97. Both parts of this assertion

are at least very questionable; and so are this author's other suggestions,

that, "The Anapest is [necessarily] the vehicle of \_gayety and joy\_;" that,

"Whenever this measure is employed in the treating of \_sad\_ subjects, \_the

effect is destroyed\_;" that, "Whoever should attempt to write an elegy in

this measure, would be \_sure to fail\_;" that, "The words might express

grief, but the measure \_would express joy\_;" that, "The Anapest should

never be employed throughout a \_long piece\_;" because "buoyancy of spirits

can never be supposed to last,"--"sadness \_never leaves us\_, BUT joy

remains but for a moment;" and, again, because, "the measure is

\_exceedingly monotonous\_."--\_Ibid.\_, pp. 97 and 98.

OBS. 2.--Most anapestic poetry, so far as I know, is in pieces of no great

length; but Leigh Hunt's "Feast of the Poets," which is thrice cited above,

though not a long \_poem\_, may certainly be regarded as "\_a long piece\_,"

since it extends through fifteen pages, and contains four hundred and

thirty-one lines, all, or nearly all, of anapestic tetrameter. And, surely,

no poet had ever more need of a metre well suited to his purpose, than he,

who, intending a critical as well as a descriptive poem, has found so much

fault with the versification of others. Pope, as a versifier, was regarded

by this author, "not only as no master of his art, but as a very

indifferent practiser."--\_Notes on the Feast of the Poets\_, p. 35. His

"\_monotonous and cloying\_" use of numbers, with that of Darwin, Goldsmith,

Johnson, Haley, and others of the same "school," is alleged to have wrought

a general corruption of taste in respect to versification--a fashion that

has prevailed, not temporarily,

"\_But ever since Pope spoil'd the ears of the town

With his cuckoo-song verses, half up and half down\_"--\_Ib.\_

OBS. 3.--Excessive monotony is thus charged by one critic upon all verse of

"the purely Anapestic measure;" and, by an other, the same fault is alleged

in general terms against all the poetry "of the school of Pope," well-nigh

the whole of which is iambic. The defect is probably in either case, at

least half imaginary; and, as for the inherent joyousness of anapestics,

that is perhaps not less ideal. Father Humphrey says, "Anapæstic and

amphibrachic verse, being similar in measure and movement, are pleasing to

the ear, and well adapted to cheerful and humourous compositions; and

\_sometimes to elegiac compositions\_, and subjects important and

solemn."--\_Humphrey's English Prosody\_, p. 17.

OBS. 4.--The anapest, the dactyl, and the amphibrach, have this in

common,--that each, with one long syllable, takes two short ones. Hence

there is a degree of similarity in their rhythms, or in their several

effects upon the ear; and consequently lines of each order, (or of any two,

if the amphibrachic be accounted a separate order,) are sometimes

commingled. But the propriety of acknowledging an order of "\_Amphibrachic

verse\_," as does Humphrey, is more than doubtful; because, by so doing, we

not only recognize the amphibrach as one of the principal feet, but make a

vast number of lines ambiguous in their scansion. For our Amphibrachic

order will be \_made up\_ of lines that are commonly scanned as

anapestics--such anapestics as are diversified by an iambus at the

beginning, and sometimes also by a surplus short syllable at the end; as in

the following verses, better divided as in the sixth example above:--

"Th~ere c=ame t~o | th~e b=each ~a | p~oor Ex~ile | ~of Er~in

The dew on | his thin robe | was heavy | and chill:

F~or h~is co=un | -tr~y h~e s=ighed, | wh=en ~at tw=i

| -l~ight r~ep=air | \_-~ing\_

To wander | alone by | the wind-beat | -en hill."

MEASURE II.--ANAPESTIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

\_Example I.--"Alexander Selkirk."--First Two Stanzas.\_

I.

"I am mon | -arch of all | I survey,

My right | there is none | to dispute;

From the cen | -tre all round | to the sea,

I am lord | of the fowl | and the brute.

O Sol | -itude! where | are the charms

That sa | -ges have seen | in thy face?

Better dwell | in the midst | of alarms,

Than reign | in this hor | -rible place.

II.

I am out | of human | -ity's reach,

I must fin | -ish my jour | -ney alone,

Never hear | the sweet mu | -sic of speech,

I start | at the sound | of my own.

The beasts | that roam o | -ver the plain,

My form | with indif | -ference see;

They are so | unacquaint | -ed with man,

Their tame | -ness is shock | -ing to me."

COWPER'S \_Poems\_, Vol. i, p. 199.

\_Example II.--"Catharina."--Two Stanzas from Seven.\_

IV.

"Though the pleas | -ures of Lon | -don exceed

In num | -ber the days | of the year,

Cathari | -na, did noth | -ing impede,

Would feel | herself hap | -pier here;

For the close | -woven arch | -es of limes

On the banks | of our riv | -er, I know,

Are sweet | -er to her | many times

Than aught | that the cit | -y can show.

V.

So it is, | when the mind | is endued

With a well | -judging taste | from above;

Then, wheth | -er embel | -lish'd or rude,

'Tis na | -ture alone | that we love.

The achieve | -ments of art | may amuse,

May e | -ven our won | -der excite,

But groves, | hills, and val | -leys, diffuse

A last | -ing, a sa | -cred delight."

COWPER'S \_Poems\_, Vol. ii, p. 232.

\_Example III.--"A Pastoral Ballad."--Two Stanzas from Twenty-seven.\_

(8.)

"Not a pine | in my grove | is there seen,

But with ten | -drils of wood | -bine is bound;

Not a beech | 's more beau | -tiful green,

But a sweet | -briar twines | it around,

Not my fields | in the prime | of the year

More charms | than my cat | -tle unfold;

Not a brook | that is lim | -pid and clear,

But it glit | -ters with fish | -es of gold.

(9)

One would think | she might like | to retire

To the bow'r | I have la | -bour'd to rear;

Not a shrub | that I heard | her admire,

But I hast | -ed and plant | -ed it there.

O how sud | -den the jes | -samine strove

With the li | -lac to ren | -der it gay!

Alread | -y it calls | for my love,

To prune | the wild branch | -es away."

SHENSTONE: \_British Poets\_, Vol. vii, p. 139.

Anapestic lines of four feet and of three are sometimes alternated in a

stanza, as in the following instance:--

\_Example IV.--"The Rose."\_

"The rose | had been wash'd, | just wash'd | in a show'r,

Which Ma | -ry to An | -na convey'd;

The plen | -tiful moist | -ure encum | -ber'd the flow'r,

And weigh'd | down its beau | -tiful head.

The cup | was all fill'd, | and the leaves | were all wet,

And it seem'd | to a fan | -ciful view,

To weep | for the buds | it had left, | with regret,

On the flour | -ishing bush | where it grew.

I hast | -ily seized | it, unfit | as it was

For a nose | -gay, so drip | -ping and drown'd,

And, swing | -ing it rude | -ly, too rude | -ly, alas!

I snapp'd | it,--it fell | to the ground.

And such, | I exclaim'd, | is the pit | -iless part

Some act | by the del | -icate mind,

Regard | -less of wring | -ing and break | -ing a heart

Alread | -y to sor | -row resign'd.

This el | -egant rose, | had I shak | -en it less,

Might have bloom'd | with its own | -er a while;

And the tear | that is wip'd | with a lit | -tle address,

May be fol | -low'd perhaps | by a smile."

COWPER: \_Poems\_, Vol. i, p. 216; \_English Reader\_, p. 212.

MEASURE III.--ANAPESTIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

\_Example I.--Lines with Hypermeter and Double Rhyme.\_

"CORONACH," OR FUNERAL SONG.

1.

"He is gone | on the mount | -a~in

He is lost | to the for | -~est

Like a sum | -mer-dried foun | -ta~in

When our need | was the sor | -~est.

The font, | reappear | -~ing,

From the rain | -drops shall bor | -r~ow,

But to us | comes no cheer | -~ing,

Do Dun | -can no mor | -r~ow!

2.

The hand | of the reap | -~er

Takes the ears | that are hoar | -~y,

But the voice | of the weep | -~er

Wails man | -hood in glo | -r~y;

The au | -tumn winds rush | -~ing,

Waft the leaves | that are sear | -~est,

But our flow'r | was in flush | -~ing,

When blight | -ing was near | -~est."

WALTER SCOTT: \_Lady of the Lake\_, Canto iii, St. 16.

\_Example II.--Exact Lines of Two Anapests.\_

"Prithee, Cu | -pid, no more

Hurl thy darts | at threescore;

To thy girls | and thy boys,

Give thy pains | and thy joys;

Let Sir Trust | -y and me

From thy frol | -ics be free."

ADDISON: \_Rosamond\_, Act ii, Scene 2; \_Ev. Versif.\_, p. 100.

\_Example III--An Ode, from the French of Malherbe\_.

"This An | -na so fair,

So talk'd | of by fame,

Why dont | she appear?

Indeed, | she's to blame!

Lewis sighs | for the sake

Of her charms, | as they say;

What excuse | can she make

For not com | -ing away?

If he does | not possess,

He dies | with despair;

Let's give | him redress,

And go find | out the fair"

"Cette Anne si belle,

Qu'on vante si fort,

Pourquoi ne vient elle?

Vraiment, elle a tort!

Son Louis soupire,

Après ses appas;

Que veut elle dire,

Qu'elle ne vient pas?

S'il ne la posséde,

Il s'en va mourir;

Donnons y reméde,

Allons la quérir."

WILLIAM KING, LL. D.: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. iii, p. 590.

\_Example IV.--'Tis the Last Rose of Summer\_.

1.

"'Tis the last | rose of sum | -\_m~er\_,

Left bloom | -ing alone;

All her love | -ly compan | -\_i~ons\_

Are fad | -ed and gone;

No flow'r | of her kin | -\_dr~ed\_,

No rose | -bud is nigh,

To give | back her blush | -\_~es\_,

Or give | sigh for sigh.

2.

I'll not leave | thee, thou lone | \_~one!\_

To pine | on the stem!

Since the love | -ly are sleep | -\_~ing\_,

Go, sleep | thou with them;

Thus kind | -ly I scat | -\_t~er\_

Thy leaves | o'er thy bed,

Where thy mates | of the gar | -\_d~en\_

Lie scent | -less and dead.

3.

So, soon | may I fol | -\_l~ow\_,

When friend | -ships decay,

And, from love's | shining cir | -\_cl~e\_,

The gems | drop away;

When true | hearts lie with | -\_~er'd\_,

And fond | ones are flown,

Oh! who | would inhab | -\_it\_

This bleak | world alone ?"

T. MOORE: \_Melodies, Songs, and Airs\_, p. 171.

\_Example V.--Nemesis Calling up the Dead Astarte\_.

"Shadow! | or spir | -\_~it!\_

Whatev | -er thou art,

Which still | doth inher | -\_~it\_

The whole | or a part

Of the form | of thy birth,

Of the mould | of thy clay,

Which return'd | to the earth,

Re-appear | to the day!

Bear what | thou bor | -\_~est\_,

The heart | and the form,

And the as | -pect thou wor | -\_~est\_

Redeem | from the worm!

Appear!--Appear!--Appear!"

LORD BYRON: \_Manfred\_, Act ii, Sc. 4.

\_Example VI.--Anapestic Dimeter with Trimeter\_.

FIRST VOICE.

"Make room | for the com | -bat, make room;

Sound the trum | -pet and drum;

A fair | -er than Ve | -nus prepares

To encoun | -ter a great | -er than Mars.

Make room | for the com | -bat, make room;

Sound the trum | -pet and drum."

SECOND VOICE.

"Give the word | to begin,

Let the com | -batants in,

The chal | -lenger en | -ters all \_glo | r~io~us\_;

But Love | has decreed,

Though Beau | -ty may bleed,

Yet Beau | -ty shall still | be vic\_to | -r~io~us\_."

GEORGE GRANVILLE: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. v, p. 58.

\_Example VII.--Anapestic Dimeter with Tetrameter\_.

AIR.

"Let the pipe's | merry notes | aid the skill | of the voice;

For our wish | -es are crown'd, | and our hearts | shall rejoice.

Rejoice, | and be glad;

For, sure, | he is mad,

Who, where mirth, | and good hum | -mour, and har | -mony's found,

Never catch | -es the smile, | nor lets pleas | -ure go round.

Let the stu | -pid be grave,

'Tis the vice | of the slave;

But can nev | -er agree

With a maid | -en like me,

Who is born | in a coun | -try that's hap | -py and free."

LLOYD: \_Johnson's British Poets\_, Vol. viii, p, 178.

MEASURE IV.--ANAPESTIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

This measure is rarely if ever used except in connexion with longer lines.

The following example has six anapestics of two feet, and two of one; but

the latter, being verses of double rhyme, have each a surplus short

syllable; and four of the former commence with the iambus:--

\_Example I.--A Song in a Drama.\_

"Now, mor |-tal, prepare,

For thy fate | is at hand;

Now, mor |-tal, prepare,

~And s~urr=en |-d~er.

For Love | shall arise,

Whom no pow'r | can withstand,

Who rules | from the skies

T~o th~e c=en |-tr~e."

GRANVILLE, VISCOUNT LANSDOWNE: \_Joh. Brit. Poets\_, Vol. v, p. 49.

The following extract, (which is most properly to be scanned as anapestic,

though considerably diversified,) has two lines, each of which is pretty

evidently composed of a single anapest:--

\_Example II.--A Chorus in the Same\_.

"Let trum |-pets and tym |-b~als,

Let at~a |--bals and cym |-b~als,

Let drums | and let haut |-boys give o |-v~er;

B~ut l~et fl=utes,

And l~et l=utes

Our pas |-sions excite

To gent |-ler delight,

And ev |-ery Mars | be a lov |-~er."

\_Ib.\_, p. 56.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--That a single anapest, a single foot of any kind, or even a single

long syllable, may be, and sometimes is, in certain rather uncommon

instances, set as a line, is not to be denied. "Dr. Caustic," or T. G.

Fessenden, in his satirical "Directions for \_Doing\_ Poetry," uses in this

manner the monosyllables, "\_Whew\_," "\_Say\_," and "\_Dress\_" and also the

iambs, "\_The gay\_" and, "\_All such\_," rhyming them with something less

isolated.

OBS. 2.--Many of our grammarians give anonymous examples of what they

conceive to be "\_Anapestic Monometer\_," or "\_the line of one anapest\_,"

while others--(as Allen, Bullions, Churchill, and Hiley--) will have the

length of two anapests to be the \_shortest\_ measure of this order. Prof.

Hart says, "The shortest anapæstic verse is a \_single\_ anapæst; as,

'~In =a sw=eet

R~es~on=ance,

~All th~eir f=eet

~In th=e d=ance

~All th=e n=ight

T~inkl~ed l=ight.'

This measure," it is added, "is, however, \_ambiguous\_; for by laying an

accent on the first, as well as the third syllable, we may generally make

it a trochaic."--\_Hart's English Gram.\_, p. 188. The same six versicles are

used as an example by Prof. Fowler, who, without admitting any ambiguity in

the measure, introduces them, rather solecistically, thus: "\_Each\_ of the

following lines \_consist\_ of a single Anapest."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo,

1850, §694.

OBS. 3.--Verses of three syllables, with the second short, the last long,

and the first \_common, or variable\_, are, it would seem, \_doubly doubtful\_

in scansion; for, while the first syllable, if made short, gives us an

anapest, to make it long, gives either an amphimac or what is virtually two

trochees. For reasons of choice in the latter case, see Observation 1st on

Trochaic Dimeter. For the \_fixing of variable quantities\_, since the case

admits no other rule, regard should be had to the \_analogy of the verse\_,

and also to the common principles of accentuation. It is doubtless possible

to read the six short lines above, into the measure of so many \_anapests\_;

but, since the two monosyllables "\_In\_" and "\_All\_" are as easily made long

as short, whoever considers the common pronunciation of the longer words,

"\_Resonance\_" and "\_Tinkled\_," may well doubt whether the learned

professors have, in this instance, hit upon the right mode of scansion. The

example may quite as well be regarded either as Trochaic Dimeter,

cataletic, or as Amphimacric Monometer, acatalectic. But the word

\_resonance\_, being accented usually on the first syllable only, is

naturally a \_dactyl\_; and, since the other five little verses end severally

with a monosyllable, which \_can\_ be varied in quantity, it is possible to

read them all as being \_dactylics\_; and so the whole may be regarded as

\_trebly doubtful\_ with respect to the measure.

OBS. 4.--L. Murray says, "\_The shortest anapæstic verse must be a single

anapæst\_; as,

B~ut ~in v=ain

They complain."

And then he adds, "This measure is, however, ambiguous; for, by laying the

stress of the voice on the first and third syllables, we \_might make\_ a

trochaic. \_And therefore\_ the first and simplest form of our genuine

Anapæstic verse, is made up of \_two anapæsts\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

257; 12mo, p. 207. This conclusion is utterly absurd, as well as completely

contradictory to his first assertion. The genuineness of this small metre

depends not at all on what may be made of the same words by other

pronunciation; nor can it be a very natural reading of this passage, that

gives to "\_But\_" and "\_They\_" such emphasis as will make them long.

OBS. 5.--Yet Chandler, in his improved grammar of 1847, has not failed to

repeat the substance of all this absurdity and self-contradiction,

carefully dressing it up in other language, thus: "Verses composed of

single Anapæsts \_are frequently found\_ in stanzas of songs; and the same is

true of several of the other kinds of feet; \_but we may consider the first\_

[i.e., shortest] \_form\_ of anapæstic verse as consisting of \_two\_

Anapæsts."--\_Chandler's Common School Gram.\_, p. 196.

OBS. 6.--Everett, speaking of anapestic lines, says, "The first and

shortest of these is composed of a \_single Anapest following an

Iambus\_."--\_English Versification\_, p. 99. This not only denies the

existence of \_Anapestic Monometer\_, but improperly takes for the Anapestic

verse what is, by the statement itself, half Iambic, and therefore of the

Composite Order. But the false assertion is plainly refuted even by the

author himself and on the same page. For, at the bottom of the page, he has

this contradictory note: "It has been remarked (§15) that though the Iambus

with an additional short syllable \_is the shortest line that is known\_ to

Iambic verse, \_there are isolated instances of a single Iambus\_, and even

of a \_single long syllable\_. There are examples of \_lines made up of a

single Anapest\_, as the following example will show:--

'Jove in his chair,

Of the sky lord mayor,

With his nods

Men and gods

Keeps in awe;

When he winks,

Heaven shrinks;

\* \* \* \*

Cock of the school,

He bears despotic rule;

His word,

Though absurd,

Must be law.

Even Fate,

Though so great,

Must not prate;

His bald pate

Jove would cuff,

He's so bluff,

For a straw.

Cowed deities,

Like mice in cheese,

To stir must cease

Or gnaw.'

O'HARA:--\_Midas\_, Act i, Sc. 1."--\_Everett's Versification\_, p. 99

ORDER IV.--DACTYLIC VERSE.

In pure Dactylic verse, the stress is laid on the first syllable of each

successive three; that is, on the first, the fourth, the seventh, and the

tenth syllable of each line of four feet. Full dactylic generally forms

triple rhyme. When one of the final short syllables is omitted, the rhyme

is double; when both, single. These omissions are here essential to the

formation of such rhymes. Dactylic with double rhyme, ends virtually with a

\_trochee\_; dactylic with single rhyme, commonly ends with a \_cæsura\_; that

is, with a long syllable taken for a foot. Dactylic with single rhyme is

the same as anapestic would be without its initial short syllables.

Dactylic verse is rather uncommon; and, when employed, is seldom perfectly

pure and regular.

MEASURE I.--DACTYLIC OF EIGHT FEET, OR OCTOMETER.

\_Example.--Nimrod.\_

Nimrod the | hunter was | mighty in | hunting, and | famed as the

| ruler of | cities of | yore;

Babel, and | Erech, and | Accad, and | Calneh, from | Shinar's fair

| region his | name afar | bore.

MEASURE II.--DACTYLIC OF SEVEN FEET, OR HEPTAMETER.

\_Example.--Christ's Kingdom.\_

Out of the | kingdom of | Christ shall be | gathered, by | angels o'er

| Satan vic | -torious,

All that of |-fendeth, that | lieth, that | faileth to | honour his

| name ever | glorious.

MEASURE III.--DACTYLIC OF SIX FEET, OR HEXAMETER.

\_Example I.--Time in Motion.\_

Time, thou art | ever in | motion, on | wheels of the

| days, years, and | ages;

Restless as | waves of the | ocean, when | Eurus or | Boreas | rages.

\_Example II.--Where, is Grand-Pré?\_

"This is the | forest pri | -meval; but | where are the | hearts that be

| -neath it

Leap'd like the | roe, when he | hears in the | woodland the

| voice of the | huntsman?

Where is the | thatch-rooféd | village, the | home of A | -cadian

| farmers?"

H. W. LONGFELLOW: \_Evangeline\_, Part i, l. 7--9.

MEASURE IV.--DACTYLIC OF FIVE FEET, OR PENTAMETER.

\_Example.--Salutation to America.\_

"Land of the | beautiful, | beautiful, | land of the | free,

Land of the | negro-slave, | negro-slave, | land of the | chivalry,

Often my | heart had turned, | heart had turned, | longing to | thee;

Often had | mountain-side, | mountain-side, | broad lake, and | stream,

Gleamed on my | waking thought, | waking thought, | crowded my | dream.

Now thou dost | welcome me, | welcome me, | from the dark | sea,

Land of the | beautiful, | beautiful, | land of the | free,

Land of the | negro-slave, | negro-slave, | land of the | chivalry."

MEASURE V.--DACTYLIC OF FOUR FEET, OR TETRAMETER.

\_Example 1--The Soldier's Wife.\_

"Weary way |-wanderer, | languid and | sick at heart,

Travelling | painfully | over the | rugged road,

Wild-visaged | Wanderer! | God help thee, | wretched one!

Sorely thy | little one | drags by thee | barefooted;

Cold is the | baby that | hangs at thy | bending back,

Meagre, and | livid, and | screaming for | misery.

Woe-begone | mother, half | anger, half | agony,

Over thy | shoulder thou | lookest to | hush the babe,

Bleakly the | blinding snow | beats in thy | haggard face.

Ne'er will thy | husband re | -turn from the | war again,

Cold is thy | heart, and as | frozen as | Charity!

Cold are thy | children.--Now | God be thy | comforter!"

ROBERT SOUTHEY: \_Poems\_, Philad., 1843, p. 250.

\_Example II.--Boys.--A Dactylic Stanza\_.

"Boys will an | -ticipate, | lavish, and | dissipate

All that your | busy pate | hoarded with | care;

And, in their | foolishness, | passion, and | mulishness,

Charge you with | churlishness, | spurning your pray'r."

\_Example III--"Labour."--The First of Five Stanzas\_.

"Pause not to | dream of the | future be | -fore us;

Pause not to | weep the wild | cares that come | o'er us:

Hark, how Cre | -ation's deep, | musical | chorus,

Uninter | -mitting, goes | up into | Heaven!

Never the | ocean-wave | falters in | flowing;

Never the | little seed | stops in its | growing;

More and more | richly the | rose-heart keeps | glowing,

Till from its | nourishing | stem it is | riven."

FRANCES S. OSGOOD: \_Clapp's Pioneer\_, p. 94.

\_Example IV.--"Boat Song."--First Stanza of Four.\_

"Hail to the | chief who in | triumph ad | -vances!

Honour'd and | bless'd be the | ever-green | pine!

Long may the | tree in his | banner that | glances,

Flourish, the | shelter and | grace of our | line!

Heaven send it happy dew,

Earth lend it sap anew,

Gayly to | bourgeon, and | broadly to | grow,

While ev'ry | Highland glen

Sends our shout | back agen,

'Roderigh Vich Alpine Dhu, ho! ieroe!'"

WALTER SCOTT: \_Lady of the Lake\_, C. ii, St. 19.

MEASURE VI.--DACTYLIC OF THREE FEET, OR TRIMETER.

\_Example.--To the Katydid.\_

"Ka-ty-did, | Ka-ty-did, | sweetly sing,--

Sing to thy | loving mates | near to thee;

Summer is | come, and the | trees are green,--

Summer's glad | season so | dear to thee.

Cheerily, | cheerily, | insect, sing;

Blithe be thy | notes in the | hickory;

Every | bough shall an | answer ring,

Sweeter than | trumpet of | victory."

MEASURE VII.--DACTYLIC OF TWO FEET, OR DIMETER.

\_Example I.--The Bachelor.--Four Lines from Many.\_

"Free from sa | -tiety,

Care, and anx | -iety,

Charms in va | -riety,

Fall to his | share."--ANON.: \_Newspaper\_.

\_Example II.--The Pibroch.--Sixteen Lines from Forty.\_

"Pibroch of | Donuil Dhu,

Pibroch of | Donuil,

Wake thy wild | voice anew.

Summon Clan | -Conuil.

Come away, | come away!

Hark to the | summons!

Come in your | war-array,

Gentles and | commons!

"Come as the | winds come, when

Forests are | rended;

Come as the | waves come, when

Navies are | stranded;

Faster come, | faster come,

Faster and | faster!

Chief, vassal, | page, and groom,

Tenant and | master."--W. SCOTT.

\_Example III.--"My Boy."\_

\_'There is even a happiness that makes the heart afraid.'\_--HOOD.

1.

"One more new | claimant for

Human fra | -ternity,

Swelling the | flood that sweeps

On to e | -ternity;

I who have | filled the cup,

Tremble to | think of it;

For, be it | what it may,

I must yet | drink of it.

2.

Room for him | into the

Ranks of hu |-manity;

Give him a | place in your

Kingdom of | vanity!

Welcome the | stranger with

Kindly af |-fection;

Hopefully, | trustfully,

Not with de |-jection.

3.

See, in his | waywardness

How his fist | doubles;

Thus pugi |-listical,

Daring life's | troubles:

Strange that the | neophyte

Enters ex |-istence

In such an | attitude,

Feigning re |-sistance.

4.

Could he but | have a glimpse

Into fu |-turity,

Well might he | fight against

Farther ma |-turity;

Yet does it | seem to me

As if his | purity

Were against | sinfulness

Ample se |-curity.

5.

Incompre |-hensible,

Budding im |-mortal,

Thrust all a |-mazedly

Under life's | portal;

Born to a | destiny

Clouded in | mystery,

Wisdom it |-self cannot

Guess at its | history.

6.

Something too | much of this

Timon-like | croaking;

See his face | wrinkle now,

Laughter pro |-voking.

Now he cries | lustily--

Bravo, my | hearty one!

Lungs like an | orator

Cheering his | party on.

7.

Look how his | merry eyes

Turn to me | pleadingly!

Can we help | loving him--

Loving ex |-ceedingly?

Partly with | hopefulness,

Partly with | fears,

Mine, as I | look at him,

Moisten with | tears.

8.

Now then to | find a name;--

Where shall we | search for it?

Turn to his | ancestry,

Or to the | church for it?

Shall we en |-dow him with

Title he |-roic,

After some | warrior,

Poet, or | stoic?

9.

One aunty | says he will

Soon 'lisp in | numbers,'

Turning his | thoughts to rhyme,

E'en in his | slumbers;

Watts rhymed in | babyhood,

No blemish | spots his fame--

Christen him | even so:

Young Mr. | Watts his name."

ANONYMOUS: \_Knickerbocker\_, and \_Newspapers\_, 1849.

MEASURE VIII.--DACTYLIC OF ONE FOOT, OR MONOMETER.

"Fearfully,

Tearfully."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A single dactyl, set as a line, can scarcely be used otherwise

than as part of a stanza, and in connexion with longer verses. The initial

accent and triple rhyme make it necessary to have something else with it.

Hence this short measure is much less common than the others, which are

accented differently. Besides, the line of three syllables, as was noticed

in the observations on Anapestic Monometer, is often peculiarly uncertain

in regard to the measure which it should make. A little difference in the

laying of emphasis or accent may, in many instances, change it from one

species of verse to an other. Even what seems to be dactylic of two feet,

if the last syllable be sufficiently lengthened to admit of single rhyme

with the full metre, becomes somewhat doubtful in its scansion; because, in

such case, the last foot maybe reckoned an \_amphimac\_, or \_amphimacer\_. Of

this, the following stanzas from Barton's lines "to the Gallic Eagle," (or

to Bonaparte on St. Helena,) though different from all the rest of the

piece, may serve as a specimen:--

"Far from the | \_battle's shock\_,

Fate hath fast | bound thee;

Chain'd to the | \_rugged rock\_,

Waves warring | round thee.

[Now, for] the | \_trumpet's sound\_,

Sea-birds are | shrieking;

Hoarse on thy | \_rampart's bound\_,

Billows are | breaking."

OBS. 2.--This may be regarded as verse of the Composite Order; and,

perhaps, more properly so, than as Dactylic with mere incidental

variations. Lines like those in which the questionable foot is here

Italicized, may be united with longer dactylics, and thus produce a stanza

of great beauty and harmony. The following is a specimen. It is a song,

written by I know not whom, but set to music by Dempster. The twelfth line

is varied to a different measure.

"ADDRESS TO THE SKYLARK."

"Bird of the | wilderness,

Blithesome and | cumberless,

Light be thy | matin o'er | moorland and | lea;

Emblem of | happiness,

Blest is thy | dwelling-place;

O! to a |-bide in the | desert with | thee!

"Wild is thy | lay, and loud,

Far on the | downy cloud;

Love gives it | energy, | love gave it | birth:

Where, on thy | dewy wing,

Where art thou | journeying?

Thy lay | is in heav |-en, thy love | is on earth.

"O'er moor and | mountain green,

O'er fell and | fountain sheen,

O'er the red | streamer that | heralds the | day;

Over the | cloudlet dim,

Over the | rainbow's rim,

Musical | cherub, hie, | hie thee a |-way.

"Then, when the | gloamin comes,

Low in the | heather blooms.

Sweet will thy | welcome and | bed of love | be.

Emblem of | happiness,

Blest is thy | dwelling-place;

O! to a |-bide in the | desert with | thee!"

OBS. 3.--It is observed by Churchill, (\_New Gram.\_, p. 387,) that,

"Shakspeare has used the dactyl, as appropriate to mournful occasions." The

chief example which he cites, is the following:--

"Midnight, as |-sist our moan,

Help us to | sigh and groan

Heavily, | heavily.

Graves, yawn and | yield your dead,

Till death be | uttered

Heavily, | heavily."--\_Much Ado\_, V, 3

OBS. 4.--These six lines of Dactylic (or Composite) Dimeter are subjoined

by the poet to four of Trochaic Tetrameter. There does not appear to me to

be any particular adaptation of either measure to mournful subjects, more

than to others; but later instances of this metre may be cited, in which

such is the character of the topic treated. The following long example

consists of lines of two feet, most of them dactylic only; but, of the

seventy-six, there are twelve which \_may\_ be otherwise divided, and as many

more which \_must\_ be, because they commence with a short syllable.

"THE BRIDGE OF SIGHS."--BY THOMAS HOOD.

"One more un |-fortunate,

Weary of | breath,

Rashly im |-portunate,

Gone to her | death!

Take her up | tenderly,

Lift her with | care;

Fashioned so | slenderly,

Young, and so | fair!

Look at her | garments

Clinging like | cerements,

Whilst the wave | constantly

Drips from her | clothing;

Take her up | instantly,

Loving, not | loathing.

Touch her not | scornfully;

Think of her | mournfully,

Gently, and | humanly;

Not of the | stains of her:

All that re |-mains of her

Now, is pure | womanly.

Make no deep | scrutiny

Into her | mutiny,

Rash and un |-dutifull;

Past all dis |-honour,

Death has left | on her

Only the | beautiful.

Still, for all | slips of hers,--

One of Eve's | family,--

Wipe those poor | lips of hers,

Oozing so | clammily.

Loop up her | tresses,

Escaped from the comb,--

Her fair auburn tresses;

Whilst wonderment guesses,

Where was her | home?

Who was her | father?

Who was her | mother?

Had she a | sister?

Had she a | brother?

Was there a | dearer one

Yet, than all | other?

Alas, for the rarity

Of Christian charity

Under the | sun!

O, it was | pitiful!

Near a whole | city full,

Home she had | none.

Sisterly, | brotherly,

Fatherly, | motherly,

Feelings had | changed;

Love, by harsh |evidence,

Thrown from its |eminence

Even God's | providence

Seeming e |-stranged.

Where the lamps | quiver

So far in the river,

With many a light,

From window and casement,

From garret to basement,

She stood, with amazement,

Houseless, by | night.

The bleak wind of March

Made her tremble and shiver;

But not the dark arch,

Or the black-flowing river:

Mad from life's | history,

Glad to death's | mystery,

Swift to be | hurled,--

Anywhere, | anywhere,

Out of the | world!

In she plung'd | boldly,--

No matter how coldly

The rough | river ran,--

Over the | brink of it:

Picture it, | think of it,

Dissolute | man!"

\_Clapp's Pioneer\_, p. 54.

OBS. 5.--As each of our principal feet,--the Iambus, the Trochee, the

Anapest, and the Dactyl,--has always one, and only one long syllable; it

should follow, that, in each of our principal orders of verse,--the Iambic,

the Trochaic, the Anapestic, and the Dactylic,--any line, not diversified

by a secondary foot, must be reckoned to contain just as many feet as long

syllables. So, too, of the Amphibrach, and any line reckoned Amphibrachic.

But it happens, that the common error by which single-rhymed Trochaics have

so often been counted a foot \_shorter\_ than they are, is also extended by

some writers to single-rhymed Dactylics--the rhyming syllable, if long,

being esteemed \_supernumerary!\_ For example, three dactylic stanzas, in

each of which a pentameter couplet is followed by a hexameter line, and

this again by a heptameter, are introduced by Prof. Hart thus: "The

\_Dactylic Tetrameter, Pentameter\_, and \_Hexameter\_, with the \_additional\_

or \_hypermeter syllable\_, are all found combined in the following

extraordinary specimen of versification. \* \* \* This is the only specimen of

Dactylic \_hexameter\_ or even \_pentameter\_ verse that the author recollects

to have seen."

LAMENT OF ADAM.

"Glad was our | meeting: thy | glittering | bosom I | \_heard\_,

Beating on | mine, like the | heart of a | timorous | \_bird\_;

Bright were thine | eyes as the | stars, and their | glances were

| radiant as | \_gleams\_

Falling from | eyes of the | angels, when | singing by | Eden's pur

|-pureal | \_streams.\_

"Happy as | seraphs were | we, for we | wander'd a | -\_lone\_,

Trembling with | passionate | thrills, when the | twilight had

| \_flown\_:

Even the | echo was | silent: our | kisses and | whispers of | \_love\_

Languish'd un | -heard and un | -known, like the | breath of the

| blossoming | buds of the | \_grove.\_

"Life hath its | pleasures, but | fading are | they as the | \_flowers\_;

Sin hath its | sorrows, and | sadly we | turn'd from those | \_bowers\_;

Bright were the | angels be | -hind with their | falchions of

| heavenly | \_flame!\_

Dark was the | desolate | desert be | -fore us, and | darker the

| depth of our | \_shame!\_"

--HENRY B. HIRST: \_Hart's English Grammar\_, p. 190.

OBS. 6.--Of Dactylic verse, our prosodists and grammarians in general have

taken but very little notice; a majority of them appearing by their

silence, to have been utterly ignorant of the whole species. By many, the

dactyl is expressly set down as an inferior foot, which they imagine is

used only for the occasional diversification of an iambic, trochaic, or

anapestic line. Thus Everett: "It is \_never used\_ except as a \_secondary

foot\_, and then in the \_first place\_ of the line."--\_English

Versification\_, p. 122. On this order of verse, Lindley Murray bestowed

only the following words: "The DACTYLIC measure being very uncommon, we

shall give only one example of one species of it:--

Fr=om th~e l~ow pl=eas~ures ~of th=is f~all~en n=at~ure,

Rise we to higher, &c."--\_Gram.\_, 12mo, p. 207; 8vo, p. 257.

Read this example with \_"we rise"\_ for \_"Rise we,"\_ and all the poetry of

it is gone! Humphrey says, "\_Dactyle\_ verse is seldom used, as remarked

heretofore; but \_is used occasionally\_, and has three metres; viz. of 2, 3,

and 4 feet. Specimens follow. 2 feet. Free from anxiety. 3 feet. Singing

most sweetly and merrily. 4 feet. Dactylic measures are wanting in

energy."--\_English Prosody\_, p. 18. Here the prosodist has made his own

examples; and the last one, which unjustly impeaches all dactylics, he has

made very badly--very prosaically; for the word "\_Dactylic\_," though it has

three syllables, is properly no dactyl, but rather an amphibrach.

OBS. 7.--By the Rev. David Blair, this order of poetic numbers is utterly

misconceived and misrepresented. He says of it, "DACTYLIC verse consists of

a \_short syllable\_, with one, two, or three feet, \_and a long syllable\_;

as,

'D~istr=act~ed w~ith w=oe,

'I'll r=ush ~on th~e f=oe.' ADDISON."--\_Blair's Pract. Gram.\_, p. 119.

"'Y~e sh=eph~erds s~o ch=eerf~ul ~and g=ay,

'Wh~ose fl=ocks n~ev~er c=arel~essl~y r=oam;

'Sh~ould C=or~yd~on's h=app~en t~o str=ay,

'Oh! c=all th~e p=oor w=and~er~ers h=ome.' SHENSTONE."--\_Ib.\_, p. 120.

It is manifest, that these lines are not dactylic at all. There is not a

dactyl in them. They are composed of iambs and anapests. The order of the

versification is Anapestic; but it is here varied by the very common

diversification of dropping the first short syllable. The longer example is

from a ballad of 216 lines, of which 99 are thus varied, and 117 are full

anapestics.

OBS. 8.--The makers of school-books are quite as apt to copy blunders, as

to originate them; and, when an error is once started in a grammar, as it

passes with the user for good learning, no one can guess where it will

stop. It seems worth while, therefore, in a work of this nature, to be

liberal in the citation of such faults as have linked themselves, from time

to time, with the several topics of our great subject. It is not probable,

that the false scansion just criticised originated with Blair; for the

Comprehensive Grammar, a British work, republished in its third edition, by

Dobson, of Philadelphia, in 1789, teaches the same doctrine, thus:

"Dactylic measure may consist of one, two, or three Dactyls, introduced by

a feeble syllable, and terminated by a strong one; as,

M~y | d=ear Ir~ish | f=olks,

C=ome | l=eave ~off y~our | j=okes,

And | b=uy ~up m~y | h=alfp~ence s~o | f=ine;

S~o | f=air ~and s~o | br=ight,

Th~ey'll | g=ive y~ou d~e | -l=ight:

Ob | -s=erve h~ow th~ey | gl=ist~er ~and | sh=ine. SWIFT.

A | c=obl~er th~ere | w=as ~and h~e | l=iv'd ~in ~a | st=all,

Wh~ich | s=erv'd h~im f~or | k=itch~en, f~or | p=arl~our ~and | hall;

N~o | c=oin ~in h~is | p=ock~et, n~o | c=are ~in h~is | p=ate;

N~o ~am | -b=it~ion h~e | h=ad, ~and n~o | d=uns ~at h~is | g=ate."

--\_Comp. Gram.\_, p. 150.

To this, the author adds, "Dactylic measure becomes Anapestic by setting

off an Iambic foot in the beginning of the line."--\_Ib.\_ These verses, all

but the last one, unquestionably have an iambic foot at the beginning; and,

for that reason, they are not, and by no measurement can be, dactylics. The

last one is purely anapestic. All the divisional bars, in either example,

are placed wrong.

ORDER V.--COMPOSITE VERSE.

Composite verse is that which consists of various metres, or different

feet, combined,--not accidentally, or promiscuously, but by design, and

with some regularity. In Composite verse, of any form, the stress must be

laid rhythmically, as in the simple orders, else the composition will be

nothing better than unnatural prose. The possible variety of combinations

in this sort of numbers is unlimited; but, the pure and simple kinds being

generally preferred, any stated mixture of feet is comparatively uncommon.

Certain forms which may be scanned by other methods, are susceptible also

of division as Composites. Hence there cannot be an exact enumeration of

the measures of this order, but instances, as they occur, may be cited to

exemplify it.

\_Example I.--From Swift's Irish Feast\_.

"O'Rourk's | noble fare | will ne'er | be forgot,

By those | who were there, | or those | who were not.

His rev |-els to keep, | we sup | and we dine

On sev |-en score sheep, | fat bul |-locks, and swine.

Usquebaugh | to our feast | in pails | was brought up,

An hun |-dred at least, | and a mad |-der our cup.

O there | is the sport! | we rise | with the light,

In disor |-derly sort, | from snor |-ing all night.

O how | was I trick'd! | my pipe | it was broke,

My pock |-et was pick'd, | I lost | my new cloak.

I'm ri |-fled, quoth Nell, | of man |-tle and kerch |-\_er\_:

Why then | fare them well, | the de'il | take the search |-\_er\_."

\_Johnson's Works of the Poets\_, Vol. v, p. 310.

Here the measure is tetrameter; and it seems to have been the design of the

poet, that each hemistich should consist of one iamb and one anapest. Such,

with a few exceptions, is the arrangement throughout the piece; but the

hemistichs which have double rhyme, \_may\_ each be divided into two

amphibrachs. In Everett's Versification, at p. 100, the first six lines of

this example are broken into twelve, and set in three stanzas, being given

to exemplify "\_The Line of a single Anapest preceded by an Iambus\_," or

what he improperly calls "The first and shortest species of Anapestic

lines." His other instance of the same metre is also \_Composite\_ verse,

rather than Anapestic, even by his own showing. "In the following example,"

says he, "we have this measure alternating with Amphibrachic lines:"

\_Example II.--From Byron's Manfred.\_

"The Captive Usurper,

Hurl'd down | from the throne.

Lay buried in torpor,

Forgotten and lone;

I broke through his slumbers,

I shiv |-er'd his chain,

I leagued him with numbers--

He's Ty |-rant again!

With the blood | of a mill |-ion he'll an |-swer my care,

With a na |-tion's destruc |-tion--his flight | and despair."

--Act ii, Sc. 3.

Here the last two lines, which are not cited by Everett, are pure anapestic

tetrameters; and it may be observed, that, if each two of the short lines

were printed as one, the eight which are here scanned otherwise, would

become four of the same sort, except that these would each begin with an

iambus. Hence the specimen \_sounds\_ essentially as anapestic verse.

\_Example III.--Woman on the Field of Battle\_.

"Gentle and | lovely form,

What didst | thou here,

When the fierce | battle storm

Bore down | the spear?

Banner and | shiver'd crest,

Beside | thee strown,

Tell that a |-midst the best

Thy work was done!

Low lies the | stately head,

Earth-bound | the free:

How gave those | haughty dead

A place | to thee?

Slumb'rer! thine | early bier

Friends should | have crown'd,

Many a |flow'r and tear

Shedding | around.

Soft voices, | dear and young,

Mingling | their swell,

Should o'er thy | dust have sung

Earth's last | farewell.

Sisters a |-bove the grave

Of thy | repose

Should have bid | vi'lets wave

With the | white rose.

Now must the | trumpet's note.

Savage | and shrill,

For requi'm | o'er thee float,

Thou fair | and still!

And the swift | charger sweep,

In full | career,

Trampling thy | place of sleep--

Why cam'st | thou here?

Why?--Ask the | true heart why

Woman | hath been

Ever, where | brave men die,

Unshrink |-ing seen.

Unto this | harvest ground,

Proud reap |-ers came,

Some for that | stirring sound,

A warr |-ior's name:

Some for the | stormy play,

And joy | of strife,

And some to | fling away

A wea |-ry life.

But thou, pale | sleeper, thou,

With the | slight frame,

And the rich | locks, whose glow

Death can |-not tame;

Only one | thought, one pow'r,

\_Thee\_ could | have led,

So through the | tempest's hour

To lift | thy head!

Only the | true, the strong,

The love | whose trust

Woman's deep | soul too long

Pours on | the dust."

HEMANS: \_Poetical Works\_, Vol. ii, p. 157.

Here are fourteen stanzas of composite dimeter, each having two sorts of

lines; the first sort consisting, with a few exceptions, of a dactyl and an

amphimac; the second, mostly, of two iambs; but, in some instances, of a

trochee and an iamb;--the latter being, in such a connexion, much the more

harmonious and agreeable combination of quantities.

\_Example IV.--Airs from a "Serenata."\_

Air 1.

"Love sounds | the alarm,

And fear | is a-fly~ing;

When beau |-ty's the prize,

What mor |-tal fears dy |-~ing?

In defence | of my treas |-~ure,

I'd bleed | at each vein;

Without | her no pleas |-ure;

For life | is a pain."

Air 2.

"Consid |-er, fond shep |-h~erd,

How fleet |-ing's the pleas |-~ure,

That flat |-ters our hopes

In pursuit | of the fair:

The joys | that attend | ~it,

By mo |-ments we meas |-~ure;

But life | is too lit |-tle

To meas |-ure our care."

GAY'S POEMS: \_Johnson's Works of the Poets\_, VoL vii, p. 378.

These verses are essentially either anapestic or amphibrachic. The anapest

divides two of them in the middle; the amphibrach will so divide eight. But

either division will give many iambs. By the present scansion, the \_first

foot\_ is an iamb in all of them but the two anapestics.

\_Example V.--"The Last Leaf."\_

1.

"I saw | him once | before

As he pass |-~ed by | the door,

And again

The pave |-ment stones | resound

As he tot |-ters o'er | the ground

With his cane.

2.

They say | that in | his prime,

Ere the prun |-ing knife of Time

Cut him down,

Not a bet |-ter man | was found

By the cri |-er on | his round

Through the town.

3.

But now | he walks | the streets,

And he looks | at all | he meets

So forlorn;

And he shakes | his fee |-ble head,

That it seems | as if | he said,

They are gone.

4.

The mos |-sy mar |-bles rest

On the lips | that he | has press'd

In their bloom;

And the names | he lov'd | to hear

Have been carv'd | for man |-y a year

On the tomb.

5.

My grand |-mamma | has said,--

Poor old La |-dy! she | is dead

Long ago,--

That he had | a Ro |-man nose,

And his cheek | was like | a rose

In the snow.

6.

But now | his nose | is thin,

And it rests | upon | his chin

Like a staff;

And a crook | is in | his back

And a mel |-anchol |-y crack

In his laugh.

7.

I know | it is | a sin

For me [thus] | to sit | and grin

At him here;

But the old | three-cor |-ner'd hat,

And the breech |-es, and | all that,

Are so queer!

8.

And if I | should live | to be

The last leaf | upon | the tree

In the spring,--

Let them smile, | as I | do now,

At the old | forsak |-en bough

Where I cling."

OLIVER W. HOLMES: \_The Pioneer\_, 1843, p. 108.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Composite verse, especially if the lines be short, is peculiarly

liable to uncertainty, and diversity of scansion; and that which does not

always abide by one chosen order of quantities, can scarcely be found

agreeable; it must be more apt to puzzle than to please the reader. The

eight stanzas of this last example, have eight lines of \_iambic trimeter\_;

and, since seven times in eight, this metre holds the first place in the

stanza, it is a double fault, that one such line seems strayed from its

proper position. It would be better to prefix the word \_Now\_ to the fourth

line, and to mend the forty-third thus:--

"And should | I live | to be"--

The trissyllabic feet of this piece, as I scan it, are numerous; being the

sixteen short lines of monometer, and the twenty-four initial feet of the

lines of seven syllables. Every one of the forty--(except the thirty-sixth,

"\_The\_ last leaf"--) begins with a monosyllable which may be varied in

quantity; so that, with stress laid on this monosyllable, the foot becomes

an \_amphimac\_; without such stress, an \_anapest\_.

OBS. 2.--I incline to read this piece as composed of iambs and anapests;

but E. A. Poe, who has commended "the effective harmony of these lines,"

and called the example "an excellently well conceived and well managed

specimen of versification," counts many syllables long, which such a

reading makes short, and he also divides all but the iambics in a way quite

different from mine, thus: "Let us scan the first stanza.

'I s=aw | h~im =once | b~ef=ore

As h~e | p=ass~ed | b=y th~e | d=oor,

And ~a- | g=ain

Th~e p=ave- | m~ent st=ones | r~es=ound

As h~e | t=ott~ers | =o'er th~e | gr=ound

W=ith h~is c=ane.'

This," says he, "is the general scansion of the poem. We have first three

iambuses. The second line shifts the \_rhythm\_ into the \_trochaic\_, giving

us three trochees, with a cæsura equivalent, in this case, to a trochee.

The third line is a trochee and equivalent cæsura."--POE'S NOTES UPON

ENGLISH VERSE: \_Pioneer\_, p. 109. These quantities are the same as those by

which the whole piece is made to consist of iambs and amphimacs.

OBS. 3.--In its \_rhythmical effect\_ upon the ear, a supernumerary short

syllable at the end of a line, may sometimes, perhaps, compensate for the

want of such a syllable at the beginning of the next line, as may be seen

in the fourth example above; but still it is unusual, and seems improper,

to suppose such syllables to belong to the scansion of the subsequent line;

for the division of lines, with their harmonic pauses, is greater than the

division of feet, and implies that no foot can ever actually be split by

it. Poe has suggested that the division into lines may be disregarded in

scanning, and sometimes must be. He cites for an example the beginning of

Byron's "Bride of Abydos,"--a passage which has been admired for its easy

flow, and which, he says, has greatly puzzled those who have attempted to

scan it. Regarding it as essentially anapestic tetrameter, yet as having

some initial iambs, and the first and fifth lines dactylic, I shall here

divide it accordingly, thus:--

"Kn=ow y~e th~e | l=and wh~ere th~e | c=ypr~ess ~and | m=yrtl~e

Ar~e =em | -bl~ems ~of d=eeds | th~at ~are d=one

| ~in th~eir cl=ime--

Where the rage | of the vul | -ture, the love | of the tur | -tle,

Now melt | into soft | -ness, now mad | -den to crime?

Know ye the | land of the | cedar and | vine.

Where the flow'rs | ever blos | -som, the beams | ever shine,

And the light | wings of Zeph | -yr, oppress'd | with perfume,

Wax faint | o'er the gar | -dens of Gul | in her bloom?

Where the cit | -ron and ol | -ive are fair | -est of fruit,

And the voice | of the night | -ingale nev | -er is mute?

Where the vir | -gins are soft as the ros | -es they twine,

And all, | save the spir | -it of man, | is divine?

'Tis the land | of the East- | 't is the clime | of the Sun--

Can he smile | on such deeds | as his chil | -dren have done?

Oh, wild | as the ac | -cents of lov | -ers' farewell,

Are the hearts | that they bear, | and the tales | that they tell."

OBS. 4.--These lines this ingenious prosodist divides not thus, but,

throwing them together like prose unpunctuated, finds in them "a regular

succession of \_dactylic rhythms\_, varied only at three points by equivalent

\_spondees\_, and separated into two distinct divisions by equivalent

terminating \_cæsuras\_." He imagines that, "By all who have ears--not over

long--this will be acknowledged as the true and the sole true

scansion."--\_E. A. Poe: Pioneer\_, p. 107. So it may, for aught I know; but,

having dared to show there is an other way quite as simple and plain, and

less objectionable, I submit both to the judgement of the reader:--

"Kn=ow y~e th~e | l=and wh~ere th~e | c=ypr~ess ~and | m=yrtl~e ~are |

=embl~ems ~of | d=eeds th~at ~are | d=one ~in th~eir | cl=ime wh~ere th~e |

r=age ~of th~e | v=ult~ure th~e | l=ove ~of th~e | t=urtl~e n~ow | m=elt

~int~o | s=oftn~ess n~ow | madd~en t~o | \_crime\_. Kn=ow y~e th~e | l=and

~of th~e | c=ed~ar ~and | v=ine wh~ere th~e | fl=ow'rs ~ev~er | bl=oss~om

th~e | b=eams ~ev~er | sh=ine wh~ere th=e | l=ight w~ings =of | z=eph=yr

~op | -pr=ess'd w~ith p~er | -\_f=ume w=ax\_ | f=aint ~o'er th~e | g=ard~ens

~of | G=ul ~in h~er | bl=oom wh~ere th~e | c=itr~on ~and | =oli~ve ~are |

f=air~est ~of | fr=uit ~and th~e | v=oice ~of th~e | n=ight~ing~ale |

n=ev~er ~is | m=ute wh~ere th~e | v=irg~ins ~are | s=oft ~as th~e | r=os~es

th~ey | \_tw=ine =and\_ | =all s~ave th~e | sp=ir~it ~of | m=an ~is d~i- |

v=ine 't~is th~e | l=and ~of th~e | E=ast 't~is th~e | cl=im~e ~of th~e |

S=un c~an h~e | sm=ile ~on s~uch | d=eeds ~as h~is | ch=ildr~en h~ave |

\_d~one =oh\_ w=ild ~as th~e | =acc~ents ~of | l=ov~ers' f~are- | w=ell ~are

th~e | h=earts th~at th~ey | be=ar and th~e | t=ales th~at th~ey |

\_t=ell\_."--\_Ib.\_

OBS. 5.--In the sum and proportion of their quantities, the anapest, the

dactyl, and the amphibrach, are equal, each having two syllables short to

one long; and, with two short quantities between two long ones, lines may

be tolerably accordant in rhythm, though the order, at the commencement, be

varied, and their number of syllables be not equal. Of the following

sixteen lines, nine are pure anapestic tetrameters; one \_may\_ be reckoned

dactylic, but it may quite as well be said to have a trochee, an iambus,

and two anapests or two amphimacs; one is a spondee and three anapests; and

the rest \_may\_ be scanned as amphibrachics ending with an iambus, but are

more properly anapestics commencing with an iambus. Like the preceding

example from Byron, they lack the uniformity of proper composites, and are

rather to be regarded as anapestics irregularly diversified.

THE ALBATROSS.

"'Tis said the Albatross never rests."--\_Buffon\_.

"Wh~ere th~e f=ath | -~oml~ess w=aves | in magnif | -icence toss,

H=omel~ess | ~and h=igh | soars the wild | Albatross;

Unwea | -ried, undaunt | -ed, unshrink | -ing, alone,

The o | -cean his em | -pire, the tem | -pest his throne.

When the ter | -rible whirl | -wind raves wild | o'er the surge,

And the hur | -ricane howls | out the mar | -iner's dirge,

In thy glo | -ry thou spurn | -est the dark | -heaving sea,

Pr=oud b=ird | of the o | -cean-world, home | -less and free.

When the winds | are at rest, | and the sun | in his glow,

And the glit | -tering tide | sleeps in beau | -ty below,

In the pride | of thy pow | -er trium | -phant above,

With thy mate | thou art hold | -ing thy rev | -els of love.

Untir | -ed, unfet | -tered, unwatched, | unconfined,

Be my spir | -it like thee, | in the world | of the mind;

No lean | -ing for earth, | e'er to wea | -ry its flight,

And fresh | as thy pin | -ions in re | -gions of light."

SAMUEL DALY LANGTREE: \_North American Reader\_, p. 443.

OBS. 6.--It appears that the most noted measures of the Greek and Latin

poets were not of any simple order, but either composites, or mixtures too

various to be called composites. It is not to be denied, that we have much

difficulty in reading them rhythmically, according to their stated feet and

scansion; and so we should have, in reading our own language rhythmically,

in any similar succession of feet. Noticing this in respect to the Latin

Hexameter, or Heroic verse, Poe says, "Now the discrepancy in question is

not observable in English metres; where the scansion coincides with the

reading, \_so far as the rhythm is concerned\_--that is to say, if we pay no

attention to the \_sense\_ of the passage. But these facts indicate \_a

radical difference\_ in the genius of the two languages, as regards their

capacity for modulation. In truth, \* \* \* the Latin is a far more \_stately\_

tongue than our own. It is essentially spondaic; the English is as

essentially dactylic."--\_Pioneer\_, p. 110. (See the marginal note in §3d.

at Obs. 22d, above.) Notwithstanding this difference, discrepance, or

difficulty, whatever it may be, some of our poets have, in a few instances,

attempted imitations of certain Latin metres; which imitations it may be

proper briefly to notice under the present head. The Greek or Latin

Hexameter line has, of course, six feet, or pulsations. According to the

Prosodies, the first four of these may be either dactyls or spondees; the

fifth is always, or nearly always, a dactyl; and the sixth, or last, is

always a spondee: as,

"L=ud~er~e | qu=æ v=el | -l=em c~al~a | -m=o p=er | -m=is~it ~a

| -gr=est=i."--\_Virg.\_

"Inf=an- | d=um, R=e | -g=in~a, j~u | -b=es r~en~o | -v=ar~e d~o

| -l=or=em."--\_Id.\_

Of this sort of verse, in English, somebody has framed the following very

fair example:--

"M=an ~is ~a | c=ompl=ex, | c=omp=ound | c=omp=ost, | y=et ~is h~e

| G=od-b=orn."

OBS. 7.--Of this species of versification, which may be called Mixed or

Composite Hexameter, the most considerable specimen that I have seen in

English, is Longfellow's Evangeline, a poem of one thousand three hundred

and eighty-two of these long lines, or verses. This work has found

admirers, and not a few; for, of these, nothing written by so distinguished

a scholar could fail: but, surely, not many of the verses in question

exhibit truly the feet of the ancient Hexameters; or, if they do, the

ancients contented themselves with very imperfect rhythms, even in their

noblest heroics. In short, I incline to the opinion of Poe, that, "Nothing

less than the deservedly high reputation of Professor Longfellow, could

have sufficed to give currency to his lines as to Greek Hexameters. In

general, they are neither one thing nor another. Some few of them are

dactylic verses--English dactylics. But do away with the division into

lines, and the most astute critic would never have suspected them of any

thing more than prose."--\_Pioneer\_, p. 111. The following are the last ten

lines of the volume, with such a division into feet as the poet is presumed

to have contemplated:--

"Still stands the | forest pri | -meval; but | under the | shade of its

| branches

Dwells an | -other | race, with | other | customs and | language.

Only a | -long the | shore of the | mournful and | misty At | -lantic

Linger a | few A | -cadian | peasants, whose | fathers from | exile

Wandered | back to their | native | land to | die in its | bosom.

In the | fisherman's | cot the | wheel and the | loom are still | busy;

Maidens still | wear their | Norman | caps and their | kirtles of

| homespun,

And by the | evening | fire re | -peat E | -vangeline's story,

While from its | rocky | caverns the | deep-voiced, | neighbouring

| ocean

Speaks, and in | accents dis | -consolate | answers the | wail of the

| forest."

HENRY W. LONGFELLOW: \_Evangeline\_, p. 162.

OBS. 8.--An other form of verse, common to the Greeks and Romans, which has

sometimes been imitated--or, rather, which some writers have \_attempted to

imitate\_--in English, is the line or stanza called Sapphic, from the

inventress, Sappho, a Greek poetess. The Sapphic verse, according to

Fabricius, Smetius, and all good authorities, has eleven syllables, making

"five feet--the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl,

and the fourth and fifth trochees." The Sapphic stanza, or what is

sometimes so called, consists of three Sapphic lines and an Adonian, or

Adonic,--this last being a short line composed of "a dactyl and a spondee."

Example from Horace:--

"=Int~e | -g=er v=i | -tæ, sc~el~e | -r=isqu~e | p=ur~us

Non e | -get Mau | -ri jacu | -lis ne | -qu' arcu,

Nec ven | -ena | -tis gravi | -dâ sa | -gittis,

Fusce, pha | -retra."

To arrange eleven syllables in a line, and have half or more of them to

form trochees, is no difficult matter; but, to find \_rhythm\_ in the

succession of "a trochee, a spondee, and a dactyl," as we read words, seems

hardly practicable. Hence few are the English Sapphics, if there be any,

which abide by the foregoing formule of quantities and feet. Those which I

have seen, are generally, if not in every instance, susceptible of a more

natural scansion as being composed of trochees, with a dactyl, or some

other foot of three syllables, at the \_beginning\_ of each line. The cæsural

pause falls sometimes after the fourth syllable, but more generally, and

much more agreeably, after the fifth. Let the reader inspect the following

example, and see if he do not agree with me in laying the accent on only

the first syllable of each foot, as the feet are here divided. The accent,

too, must be carefully laid. Without considerable care in the reading, the

hearer will not suppose the composition to be any thing but prose:--

"THE WIDOW."--(IN "SAPPHICS.")

"Cold was the | night-wind, | drifting | fast the | snow fell,

Wide were the | downs, and | shelter | -less and | naked,

When a poor | Wanderer | struggled | on her | journey,

Weary and | way-sore.

Drear were the | downs, more | dreary | her re | -flections;

Cold was the | night-wind, | colder | was her | bosom;

She had no | home, the | world was | all be | -fore her;

She had no | shelter.

Fast o'er the | heath a | chariot | rattlee | by her;

'Pity me!' | feebly | cried the | lonely | wanderer;

'Pity me, | strangers! | lest, with | cold and | hunger,

Here I should | perish.

'Once I had | friends,--though | now by | all for | -saken!

'Once I had | parents, | --they are | now in | heaven!

'I had a | home once, | --I had | once a | husband--

Pity me, | strangers!

'I had a | home once, | --I had | once a | husband--

'I am a | widow, | poor and | broken | -hearted!'

Loud blew the | wind; un | -heard was | her com | -plaining;

On drove the | chariot.

Then on the | snow she | laid her | down to | rest her;

She heard a | horseman; | 'Pity | me!' she | groan'd out;

Loud was the | wind; un | -heard was | her com | -plaining;

On went the | horseman.

Worn out with | anguish, | toil, and | cold, and | hunger,

Down sunk the | Wanderer; | sleep had | seized her | senses;

There did the | traveller | find her | in the | morning;

God had re | -leased her."

ROBERT SOUTHEY: \_Poems\_, Philad., 1843, p. 251.

Among the lyric poems of Dr. Watts, is one, entitled, "THE DAY OF

JUDGEMENT; \_an Ode attempted in English Sapphic\_." It is perhaps as good an

example as we have of the species. It consists of nine stanzas, of which I

shall here cite the first three, dividing them into feet as above:--

"When the fierce | North Wind, | with his | airy | forces,

Rears up the | Baltic | to a | foaming | fury;

And the red | lightning | with a | storm of | hail comes

Rushing a | -main down;

How the poor | sailors | stand a | -maz'd and | tremble!

While the hoarse | thunder, | like a bloody | trumpet,

Roars a loud | onset | to the | gaping | waters,

Quick to de | -vour them.

Such shall the | noise be, | and the | wild dis | -order,

(If things e | -ternal | may be | like these | earthly,)

Such the dire | terror, | when the | great Arch | -angel

Shakes the cre | -ation."--\_Horæ Lyricæ\_, p. 67.

"These lines," says Humphrey, who had cited the first four, "are good

English Sapphics, and contain the essential traits of the original as

nearly as the two languages, Greek and English, correspond to each other.

This stanza, together with the poem, from which this was taken, may stand

for a model, in our English compositions."--\_Humphrey's E. Prosody\_, p. 19.

This author erroneously supposed, that the trissyllabic foot, in any line

of the Sapphic stanza, must occupy the second place: and, judging of the

ancient feet and quantities by what he found, or supposed he found, in the

English imitations, and not by what the ancient prosodists say of them, yet

knowing that the ancient and the modern Sapphics are in several respects

unlike, he presented forms of scansion for both, which are not only

peculiar to himself, but not well adapted to either. "We have," says he,

"no established rule for this kind of verse, in our English compositions,

which has been uniformly adhered to. The rule for which, in Greek and Latin

verse, \_as far as I can ascertain\_, was this: = ~ | = = = | ~ ~ |= ~ | = =

a trochee, a \_moloss\_, a \_pyrrhic\_, a trochee, and [a] \_spondee\_; and

\_sometimes, occasionally\_, a trochee, instead of a spondee, at the end. But

as our language is not favourable to the use of the spondee and moloss, the

moloss is seldom or never used in our English Sapphics; but, instead of

which, some other \_trissyllable\_ foot is used. Also, instead of the

spondee, a trochee is commonly used; and sometimes a trochee instead of the

pyrrhic, in the third place. As some prescribed rule, or model for

imitation, may be necessary, in this case, I will cite a stanza from one of

our best English poets, which may serve for a model.

'Wh=en th~e | fi=erce n=orth-w~ind, | w~ith h~is | =air~y | f=orc~es [,]

R=ears ~up | th~e B=alt~ic | t~o ~a | f=oam~ing | f=ur~y;

And th~e | r=ed l=ightn~ing | w~ith ~a | st=orm ~of | h=ail c~omes

R=ush~ing | ~am=ain d=own.'--Watts."--\_Ib.\_, p. 19.

OBS. 12.--In "the Works of George Canning," a small book published in 1829,

there is a poetical dialogue of nine stanzas, entitled, "The Friend of

Humanity and the Knife-Grinder," said to be "a burlesque on Mr. Southey's

Sapphics." The metre appears to be near enough like to the foregoing. But

these verses I divide, as I have divided the others, into trochees with

initial dactyls. At the commencement, the luckier party salutes the other

thus:--

"'Needy knife | -grinder! | whither | are you | going?

Rough is the | road, your | wheel is | out of | order--

Bleak blows the | blast;--your | hat has | got a | hole in't,

So have your | breeches!

'Weary knife | -grinder! | little | think the | proud ones

Who in their | coaches | roll a | -long the | turnpike--

Road, what hard | work 'tis, | crying | all day, | 'Knives and

Scissors to | grind O!'"--P. 44.

OBS. 13.--Among the humorous poems of Thomas Green Fessenden, published

under the sobriquet of Dr. Caustic, or "Christopher Caustic, M. D.," may be

seen an other comical example of Sapphics, which extends to eleven stanzas.

It describes a contra-dance, and is entitled, "Horace Surpassed." The

conclusion is as follows:--

"Willy Wagnimble dancing with Flirtilla,

Almost as light as air-balloon inflated,

Rigadoons around her, 'till the lady's heart is

Forced to surrender.

Benny Bamboozle cuts the drollest capers,

Just like a camel, or a hippopot'mus;

Jolly Jack Jumble makes as big a rout as

Forty Dutch horses.

See Angelina lead the mazy dance down;

Never did fairy trip it so fantastic;

How my heart flutters, while my tongue pronounces,

'Sweet little seraph!'

Such are the joys that flow from contra-dancing,

Pure as the primal happiness of Eden,

Love, mirth, and music, kindle in accordance

Raptures extatic."--\_Poems\_, p. 208.

SECTION V.--ORAL EXERCISES.

IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION.

FALSE PROSODY, OR ERRORS OF METRE.

LESSON I.--RESTORE THE RHYTHM.

"The lion is laid down in his lair."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 134.

[FORMULE.--Not proper, because the word "\_lion\_," here put for Cowper's

word "\_beast\_" destroys the metre, and changes the line to prose. But,

according to the definition given on p. 827, "Verse, in opposition to

prose, is language arranged into metrical lines of some determinate length

and rhythm--language so ordered as to produce harmony by a due succession

of poetic feet." This line was composed of one iamb and two anapests; and,

to such form, it should be restored, thus: "The \_beast\_ is laid down in his

lair."--\_Cowper's Poems\_, Vol. i, p. 201.]

"Where is thy true treasure? Gold says, not in me."

--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, 1842, p. 66.

"Canst thou grow sad, thou sayest, as earth grows bright?"

--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, 1845, p. 140.

"It must be so, Plato, thou reasonest well."

--\_Wells's Gram.\_, 1846, p. 122.

"Slow rises merit, when by poverty depressed."

--\_Ib.\_, p. 195; \_Hiley\_, 132; \_Hart\_, 179.

"Rapt in future times, the bard begun."

--\_Wells's Gram.\_, 1846, p. 153.

"Is there not rain enough in the sweet heavens

To wash it white as snow? Whereunto serves mercy,

But to confront the visage of offence!"

--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, 1842, p. 118.

"Look! in this place ran Cassius's dagger through."

--\_Kames, El. of Cr.\_, Vol. i, p. 74.

"----When they list their lean and flashy songs,

Harsh grate on their scrannel pipes of wretched straw."

--\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 135.

"Did not great Julius bleed for justice's sake?"

--\_Dodd's Beauties of Shak.\_, p. 253.

"Did not great Julius bleed for justice sake?"

--\_Singer's Shakspeare\_, Vol. ii, p. 266.

"May I, unblam'd, express thee? Since God is light."

--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 290.

"Or hearest thou, rather, pure ethereal stream!"

--\_2d Perversion, ib.\_

"Republics; kingdoms; empires, may decay;

Princes, heroes, sages, sink to nought."

--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 287.

"Thou bringest, gay creature as thou art,

A solemn image to my heart."

--\_E. J. Hallock's Gram.\_, p. 197.

"Know thyself presume not God to scan;

The proper study of mankind is Man."

--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 285.

"Raised on a hundred pilasters of gold."

--\_Charlemagne\_, C. i, St. 40.

"Love in Adalgise's breast has fixed his sting."

--\_Ib.\_, C. i, St. 30.

"Thirty days hath September,

April, June, and November,

February twenty-eight alone,

All the rest thirty and one."

\_Colet's Grammar, or Paul's Accidence\_. Lond., 1793, p. 75.

LESSON II.--RESTORE THE RHYTHM.

"'Twas not the fame of what he once had been,

Or tales in old records and annals seen."

--\_Rowe's Lucan\_, B. i, l. 274.

"And Asia now and Afric are explor'd,

For high-priced dainties, and citron board."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. i, l. 311.

"Who knows not, how the trembling judge beheld

The peaceful court with arm'd legions fill'd?"

--\_Eng. Poets; ib.\_, B. i, l. 578.

"With thee the Scythian wilds we'll wander o'er,

With thee burning Libyan sands explore."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. i, l. 661.

"Hasty and headlong different paths they tread,

As blind impulse and wild distraction lead."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. i, l. 858.

"But Fate reserv'd to perform its doom,

And be the minister of wrath to Rome."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. ii, l. 136.

"Thus spoke the youth. When Cato thus exprest

The sacred counsels of his most inmost breast."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. ii, l. 435.

"These were the strict manners of the man,

And this the stubborn course in which they ran;

The golden mean unchanging to pursue,

Constant to keep the proposed end in view."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. ii, l. 580.

"What greater grief can a Roman seize,

Than to be forc'd to live on terms like these!"

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. ii, l. 782.

"He views the naked town with joyful eyes,

While from his rage an arm'd people flies."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. ii, l. 880.

"For planks and beams he ravages the wood,

And the tough bottom extends across the flood."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. ii, l. 1040.

"A narrow pass the horned mole divides,

Narrow as that where Euripus' strong tides

Beat on Euboean Chalcis' rocky sides."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. ii, l. 1095.

"No force, no fears their hands unarm'd bear,

But looks of peace and gentleness they wear."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. iii, l. 112.

"The ready warriors all aboard them ride,

And wait the return of the retiring tide."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. iv, l. 716.

"He saw those troops that long had faithful stood,

Friends to his cause, and enemies to good,

Grown weary of their chief, and satiated with blood."

--\_Eng. Poets: ib.\_, B. v, l. 337.

CHAPTER V.--QUESTIONS.

ORDER OF REHEARSAL, AND METHOD OF EXAMINATION.

PART FOURTH, PROSODY.

[Fist][The following questions call the attention of the student to the

main doctrines in the foregoing code of Prosody, and embrace or demand

those facts which it is most important for him to fix in his memory; they

may, therefore, serve not only to aid the teacher in the process of

examining his classes, but also to direct the learner in his manner of

preparation for recital.]

LESSON I.--OF PUNCTUATION.

1. Of what does Prosody treat? 2. What is \_Punctuation?\_ 3. What are the

principal points, or marks? 4. What pauses are denoted by the first four

points? 5. What pauses are required by the other four? 6. What is the

general use of the Comma? 7. How many rules for the Comma are there, and

what are their heads? 8. What says Rule 1st of \_Simple Sentences?\_ 9. What

says Rule 2d of \_Simple Members?\_ 10. What says Rule 3d of \_More than Two

Words?\_ 11. What says Rule 4th of \_Only Two Words?\_ 12. What says Rule 5th

of \_Words in Pairs?\_ 13. What says Rule 6th of \_Words put Absolute?\_ 14.

What says Rule 7th of \_Words in Apposition?\_ 15. What says Rule 8th of

\_Adjectives?\_ 16. What says Rule 9th of \_Finite Verbs?\_ 17. What says Rule

10th of \_Infinitives?\_ 18. What says Rule 11th of \_Participles?\_ 19. What

says Rule 12th of \_Adverbs?\_ 20. What says Rule 13th of \_Conjunctions?\_ 21.

What says Rule 14th of \_Prepositions?\_ 22. What says Rule 15th of

\_Interjections?\_ 23. What says Rule 16th of \_Words Repeated?\_ 24. What says

Rule 17th of \_Dependent Quotations?\_

LESSON II.--OF THE COMMA.

1. How many exceptions, or forms of exception, are there to Rule 1st for

the comma? 2.--to Rule 2d? 3.--to Rule 3d? 4.--to Rule 4th? 5.--to Rule

5th? 6.--to Rule 6th? 7.--to Rule 7th? 8.--to Rule 8th? 9.--to Rule 9th?

10.--to Rule 10th? 11.--to Rule 11th? 12.--to Rule 12th? 13.--to Rule 13th?

14.--to Rule 14th? 15.--to Rule 15th? 16.--to Rule 16th? 17.--to Rule 17th?

18. What says the Exception to Rule 1st of a \_Long Simple Sentence?\_ 19.

What says Exception 1st to Rule 2d of \_Restrictive Relatives?\_ 20. What

says Exception 2d to Rule 2d of \_Short Terms closely Connected?\_ 21. What

says Exception 3d to Rule 2d of \_Elliptical Members United?\_ 22. What says

Exception 1st to Rule 4th of \_Two Words with Adjuncts?\_ 23. What says

Exception 2d to Rule 4th of \_Two Terms Contrasted?\_ 24. What says Exception

3d to Rule 4th of a mere \_Alternative of Words?\_ 25. What says Exception

4th to Rule 4th of \_Conjunctions Understood?\_

LESSON III.--OF THE COMMA.

1. What rule speaks of the separation of \_Words in Apposition?\_ 2. What

says Exception 1st to Rule 7th of \_Complex Names?\_ 3. What says Exception

2d to Rule 7th of \_Close Apposition?\_ 4. What says Exception 3d to Rule 7th

of \_a Pronoun without a Pause?\_ 5. What says Exception 4th to Rule 7th of

\_Names Acquired?\_ 6. What says the Exception to Rule 8th of \_Adjectives

Restrictive?\_ 7. What is the rule which speaks of a finite \_Verb

Understood?\_ 8. What says the Exception to Rule 9th of a \_Very Slight

Pause?\_ 9. What is the Rule for the pointing of \_Participles?\_ 10. What

says the Exception to Rule 11th of \_Participles Restrictive?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Comma in Section First.]

LESSON IV.--OF THE SEMICOLON.

1. What is the general use of the Semicolon? 2. How many rules are there

for the Semicolon? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of

\_Complex Members?\_ 5. What says Rule 2d of \_Simple Members?\_ 6. What says

Rule 3d of \_Apposition, &c.?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Semicolon in Section Second.]

LESSON V.--OF THE COLON.

1. What is the general use of the Colon? 2. How many rules are there for

the Colon? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of \_Additional

Remarks?\_ 5. What says Rule 2d of \_Greater Pauses?\_ 6. What says Rule 3d of

\_Independent Quotations?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Colon in Section Third.]

LESSON VI.--OF THE PERIOD.

1. What is the general use of the Period? 2. How many rules are there for

the Period? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of \_Distinct

Sentences?\_ 5. What says Rule 2d of \_Allied Sentences?\_ 6. What says Rule

3d of \_Abbreviations?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Period in Section Fourth.]

LESSON VII.--OF THE DASH.

1. What is the general use of the Dash? 2. How many rules are there for the

Dash? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule 1st of \_Abrupt Pauses?\_ 5.

What says Rule 2d of \_Emphatic Pauses?\_ 6. What says Rule 3d of \_Faulty

Dashes?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Dash in Section Fifth.]

LESSON VIII.--OF THE EROTEME.

1. What is the use of the Eroteme, or Note of Interrogation? 2. How many

rules are there for this mark? 3. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule

1st of \_Questions Direct?\_ 5. What says Rule 2d of \_Questions United?\_ 6.

What says Rule 3d of \_Questions Indirect?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Eroteme in Section Sixth.]

LESSON IX--OF THE ECPHONEME.

1. What is the use of the Ecphoneme, or Note of Exclamation? 2. How many

rules are there for this mark? 2. What are their heads? 4. What says Rule

1st of \_Interjections?\_ 5. What says Rule 2d of \_Invocations?\_ 6. What says

Rule 3d of \_Exclamatory Questions?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Ecphoneme in Section Seventh.]

LESSON X.--OF THE CURVES.

1. What is the use of the Curves, or Marks of Parenthesis? 2. How many

rules are there for the Curves? 3. What are their titles, or heads? 4. What

says Rule 1st of \_the Parenthesis?\_ 5. What says Rule 2d of \_Included

Points?\_

[Now, if you please, you may correct orally, according to the formules

given, some or all of the various examples of \_False Punctuation\_, which

are arranged under the rules for the Curves in Section Eighth.]

LESSON XI.--OF THE OTHER MARKS.

1. What is the use of the Apostrophe? 2. What is the use of the Hyphen? 3.

What is the use of the Diæresis, or Dialysis? 4. What is the use of the

Acute Accent? 5. What is the use of the Grave Accent? 6. What is the use of

the Circumflex? 7. What is the use of the Breve, or Stenotone? 8. What is

the use of the Macron, or Macrotone? 9. What is the use of the Ellipsis, or

Suppression? 10. What is the use of the Caret? 11. What is the use of the

Brace? 12. What is the use of the Section? 13. What is the use of the

Paragraph? 14. What is the use of the Guillemets, or Quotation Points? 15.

How do we mark a quotation within a quotation? 16. What is the use of the

Crotchets, or Brackets? 17. What is the use of the Index, or Hand? 18. What

are the six Marks of Reference in their usual order? 19. How can

references be otherwise made? 20. What is the use of the Asterism, or the

Three Stars? 21. What is the use of the Cedilla?

[Having correctly answered the foregoing questions, the pupil should be

taught to apply the principles of punctuation; and, for this purpose, he

may be required to read a portion of some accurately pointed book, or may

be directed to turn to the \_Fourteenth Praxis\_, beginning on p. 821,--and

to assign a reason for every mark he finds.]

LESSON XII.--OF UTTERANCE.

1. What is \_Utterance?\_ 2. What does it include? 3. What is articulation?

4. How does articulation differ from pronunciation? 5. How does Comstock

define it? 6. What, in his view, is a good articulation? 7. How does Bolles

define articulation? 8. Is a good articulation important? 9. What are the

faults opposite to it? 10. What says Sheridan, of a good articulation? 11.

Upon what does distinctness depend? 13. Why is just articulation better

than mere loudness? 13. Do we learn to articulate in learning to speak or

read?

LESSON XIII.--OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. What is pronunciation? 2. What is it that is called \_Orthoëpy?\_ 3. What

knowledge does pronunciation require? 4. What are the just powers of the

letters? 5. How are these learned? 6. Are the just powers of the letters in

any degree variable? 7. What is quantity? 8. Are all long syllables equally

long, and all short ones equally short? 9. What has stress of voice to do

with quantity? 10. What is accent? 11. Is every word accented? 12. Do we

ever lay two equal accents on one word? 13. Have we more than one sort of

accent? 14. Can any word have the secondary accent, and not the primary?

15. Can monosyllables have either? 16. What regulates accent? 17. What four

things distinguish the elegant speaker?

LESSON XIV.--OF ELOCUTION.

1. What is elocution? 2. What does elocution require? 3. What is emphasis?

4. What comparative view is taken of accent and emphasis? 5. How does L.

Murray connect emphasis with quantity? 6. Does emphasis ever affect accent?

7. What is the guide to a right emphasis? 8. Can one read with too many

emphases? 9. What are pauses? 10. How many and what kinds of pauses are

there? 11. What is said of the duration of pauses, and the taking of

breath? 12. After what manner should pauses be made? 13. What pauses are

particularly ungraceful? 14. What is said of rhetorical pauses? 15. How are

the harmonic pauses divided? 16. Are such pauses essential to verse?

LESSON XV.--OF ELOCUTION.

17. What are inflections? 18. What is called the rising or upward

inflection? 19. What is called the falling or downward inflection? 20. How

are these inflections exemplified? 21. How are they used in asking

questions? 22. What is said of the notation of them? 23. What constitutes a

circumflex? 24. What constitutes the rising, and what the falling,

circumflex? 25. Can you give examples? 26. What constitutes a monotone, in

elocution? 27. Which kind of inflection is said to be most common? 28.

Which is the best adapted to strong emphasis? 29. What says Comstock of

rules for inflections? 30. Is the voice to be varied for variety's sake?

31. What should regulate the inflections? 32. What is cadence? 33. What

says Rippingham about it? 34. What says Murray? 35. What are tones? 36. Why

do they deserve particular attention? 37. What says Blair about tones? 38.

What says Hiley?

LESSON XVI.--OF FIGURES.

1. What is a \_Figure\_ in grammar? 2. How many kinds of figures are there?

3. What is a figure of orthography? 4. What are the principal figures of

orthography? 5. What is Mimesis? 6. What is an Archaism? 7. What is a

figure of etymology? 8. How many and what are the figures of etymology? 9.

What is Aphæresis? 10. What is Prosthesis? 11. What is Syncope? 12. What is

Apocope? 13. What is Paragoge? 14. What is Diæresis? 15. What is Synæresis?

16. What is Tmesis? 17. What is a figure of syntax? 18. How many and what

are the figures of syntax? 19. What is Ellipsis, in grammar? 20. Are

sentences often elliptical? 21. What parts of speech can be omitted, by

ellipsis? 22. What is Pleonasm? 23. When is this figure allowable? 24. What

is Syllepsis? 25. What is Enallage? 26. What is Hyperbaton? 27. What is

said of this figure?

LESSON XVII.--OF FIGURES.

28. What is a figure of rhetoric? 29. What peculiar name have some of

these? 30. Do figures of rhetoric often occur? 31. On what are they

founded? 32. How many and what are the principal figures of rhetoric? 33.

What is a Simile? 34. What is a Metaphor? 35. What is an Allegory? 36. What

is a Metonymy? 37. What is Synecdoche? 38. What is Hyperbole? 39. What is

Vision? 40. What is Apostrophe? 41. What is Personification? 42. What is

Erotesis? 43. What is Ecphonesis? 44. What is Antithesis? 45. What is

Climax? 46. What is Irony? 47. What is Apophasis, or Paralipsis? 48. What

is Onomatopoeia?

[Now, if you please, you may examine the quotations adopted for the

\_Fourteenth Praxis\_, and may name and define the various figures of grammar

which are contained therein.]

LESSON XVIII.--OF VERSIFICATION.

1. What is \_Versification\_? 2. What is verse, as distinguished from prose?

3. What is the rhythm of verse? 4. What is the quantity of a syllable? 5.

How are poetic quantities denominated? 6. How are they proportioned? 7.

What quantity coincides with accent or emphasis? 8. On what but the vowel

sound does quantity depend? 9. Does syllabic quantity always follow the

quality of the vowels? 10. Where is quantity variable, and where fixed, in

English? 11. What is rhyme? 12. What is blank verse? 13. What is remarked

concerning the rhyming syllables? 14. What is a stanza? 15. What uniformity

have stanzas? 16. What variety have they?

LESSON XIX.--OF VERSIFICATION.

17. Of what does a verse consist? 18. Of what does a poetic foot consist?

19. How many feet do prosodists recognize? 20. What are the principal feet

in English? 21. What is an Iambus? 22. What is a Trochee? 23. What is an

Anapest? 24. What is a Dactyl? 25. Why are these feet principal? 26. What

orders of verse arise from these? 27. Are these kinds to be kept separate?

28. What is said of the secondary feet? 29. How many and what secondary

feet are explained in this code? 30. What is a Spondee? 31. What is a

Pyrrhic? 32. What is a Moloss? 33. What is a Tribrach? 34. What is an

Amphibrach? 35. What is an Amphimac? 36. What is a Bacchy? 37. What is an

Antibachy? 38. What is a Cæsura?

LESSON XX.--OF VERSIFICATION.

39. What are the principal kinds, or orders, of verse? 40. What other

orders are there? 41. Does the composite order demand any uniformity? 42.

Do the simple orders admit any diversity? 43. What is meant by \_scanning\_

or \_scansion\_? 44. What mean the technical words, \_catalectic,

acatalectic\_, and \_hypermeter\_? 45. In scansion, why are the principal feet

to be preferred to the secondary? 46. Can a single foot be a line? 47. What

are the several combinations that form dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter,

pentameter, hexameter, heptameter, and octometer? 48. What syllables have

stress in a pure iambic line? 49. What are the several measures of iambic

verse? 50. What syllables have stress in a pure trochaic line? 51. Can it

be right, to regard as hypermeter the long rhyming syllables of a line? 52.

Is the number of feet in a line to be generally counted by that of the long

syllables? 53. What are the several measures of trochaic verse?

LESSON XXI.--OF VERSIFICATION.

54. What syllables have stress in a pure anapestic line? 55. What variation

may occur in the first foot? 56. Is this frequent? 57. Is it ever uniform?

58. What is the result of a uniform mixture? 59. Is the anapest adapted to

single rhyme? 60. May a surplus ever make up for a deficiency? 61. Why are

the anapestic measures few? 62. How many syllables are found in the

longest? 63. What are the several measures of anapestic verse? 64. What

syllables have stress in a pure dactylic line? 65. With what does

single-rhymed dactylic end? 66. Is dactylic verse very common? 67. What are

the several measures of dactylic verse? 68. What is composite verse? 69.

Must composites have rhythm? 70. Are the kinds of composite verse numerous?

71. Why have we no exact enumeration of the measures of this order? 72.

Does this work contain specimens of different kinds of composite verse?

[It may now be required of the pupil to determine, by reading and scansion,

the metrical elements of any good English poetry which may be selected for

the purpose--the feet being marked by pauses, and the long syllables by

stress of voice. He may also correct orally the few \_Errors of Metre\_ which

are given in the Fifth Section of Chapter IV.]

CHAPTER VI.--FOR WRITING.

EXERCISES IN PROSODY.

[Fist] [When the pupil can readily answer all the questions on Prosody, and

apply the rules of punctuation to any composition in which the points are

rightly inserted, he should \_write out\_ the following exercises, supplying

what is required, and correcting what is amiss. Or, if any teacher choose

to exercise his classes \_orally\_, by means of these examples, he can very

well do it; because, to read words, is always easier than to write them,

and even points or poetic feet may be quite as readily named as written.]

EXERCISE I.--PUNCTUATION.

\_Copy the following sentences, and insert the\_ COMMA \_where it is

requisite\_.

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE I.--OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"The dogmatist's assurance is paramount to argument." "The whole course of

his argumentation comes to nothing." "The fieldmouse builds her garner

under ground."

EXC.--"The first principles of almost all sciences are few." "What he gave

me to publish was but a small part." "To remain insensible to such

provocation is apathy." "Minds ashamed of poverty would be proud of

affluence." "To be totally indifferent to praise or censure is a real

defect in character."--\_Wilson's Punctuation\_, p. 38.

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"I was eyes to the blind and feet was I to the lame." "They are gone but

the remembrance of them is sweet." "He has passed it is likely through

varieties of fortune." "The mind though free has a governor within itself."

"They I doubt not oppose the bill on public principles." "Be silent be

grateful and adore." "He is an adept in language who always speaks the

truth." "The race is not to the swift nor the battle to the strong."

EXC. I.--"He that has far to go should not hurry." "Hobbes believed the

eternal truths which he opposed." "Feeble are all pleasures in which the

heart has no share." "The love which survives the tomb is one of the

noblest attributes of the soul."--\_Wilson's Punctuation\_, p. 38.

EXC. II.--"A good name is better than precious ointment." "Thinkst thou

that duty shall have dread to speak?" "The spleen is seldom felt where

Flora reigns."

UNDER RULE III.--OF MORE THAN TWO WORDS.

"The city army court espouse my cause." "Wars pestilences and diseases are

terrible instructors." "Walk daily in a pleasant airy and umbrageous

garden." "Wit spirits faculties but make it worse." "Men wives and

children stare cry out and run." "Industry, honesty, and temperance are

essential to happiness."--\_Wilson's Punctuation\_, p. 29. "Honor, affluence,

and pleasure seduce the heart."--\_Ib.\_, p. 31.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF TWO TERMS CONNECTED.

"Hope and fear are essentials in religion." "Praise and adoration are

perfective of our souls." "We know bodies and their properties most

perfectly." "Satisfy yourselves with what is rational and attainable."

"Slowly and sadly we laid him down."

EXC. I.--"God will rather look to the inward motions of the mind than to

the outward form of the body." "Gentleness is unassuming in opinion and

temperate in zeal."

EXC. II.--"He has experienced prosperity and adversity." "All sin

essentially is and must be mortal." "Reprove vice but pity the offender."

EXC. III.--"One person is chosen chairman or moderator." "Duration or time

is measured by motion." "The governor or viceroy is chosen annually."

EXC. IV.--"Reflection reason still the ties improve." "His neat plain

parlour wants our modern style." "We are fearfully wonderfully made."

UNDER RULE V.--OF WORDS IN PAIRS.

"I inquired and rejected consulted and deliberated." "Seed-time and harvest

cold and heat summer and winter day and night shall not cease."

EXERCISE II.--PUNCTUATION.

\_Copy the following sentences, and insert the\_ COMMA \_where it is

requisite\_.

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE VI.--OF WORDS PUT ABSOLUTE.

"The night being dark they did not proceed." "There being no other coach we

had no alternative." "Remember my son that human life is the journey of a

day." "All circumstances considered it seems right." "He that overcometh to

him will I give power." "Your land strangers devour it in your presence."

"Ah sinful nation a people laden with iniquity!"

"With heads declin'd ye cedars homage pay;

Be smooth ye rocks ye rapid floods give way!"

UNDER RULE VII.--OF WORDS IN APPOSITION.

"Now Philomel sweet songstress charms the night." "'Tis chanticleer the

shepherd's clock announcing day." "The evening star love's harbinger

appears." "The queen of night fair Dian smiles serene." "There is yet one

man Micaiah the son of Imlah." "Our whole company man by man ventured

down." "As a work of wit the Dunciad has few equals."

"In the same temple the resounding wood

All vocal beings hymned their equal God."

EXC. I.--"The last king of Rome was Tarquinius Superbus." "Bossuet highly

eulogizes Maria Theresa of Austria." "No emperor has been more praised than

Marcus Aurelius, Antoninus."

EXC. II.--"For he went and dwelt by the brook Cherith." "Remember the

example of the patriarch Joseph." "The poet, Milton, excelled in prose as

well as in verse."

EXC. III.--"I wisdom dwell with prudence." "Ye fools be ye of an

understanding heart." "I tell you that which you yourselves do know."

EXC. IV.--"I crown thee king of intimate delights" "I count the world a

stranger for thy sake." "And this makes friends such miracles below." "God

has pronounced it death to taste that tree." "Grace makes the slave a

freeman."

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF ADJECTIVES.

"Deaf with the noise I took my hasty flight." "Him piteous of his youth

soft disengage." "I played a while obedient to the fair." "Love free as air

spreads his light wings and flies." "Physical science separate from morals

parts with its chief dignity."

"Then active still and unconfined his mind

Explores the vast extent of ages past."

"But there is yet a liberty unsung

By poets and by senators unpraised."

EXC.--"I will marry a wife beautiful as the Houries." "He was a man able to

speak upon doubtful questions." "These are the persons, anxious for the

change." "Are they men worthy of confidence and support?" "A man,

charitable beyond his means, is scarcely honest."

UNDER RULE IX.--OF FINITE VERBS.

"Poverty wants some things--avarice all things." "Honesty has one

face--flattery two." "One king is too soft and easy--an other too fiery."

"Mankind's esteem they court--and he his own:

Theirs the wild chase of false felicities;

His the compos'd possession of the true."

EXERCISE III.--PUNCTUATION.

\_Copy the following sentences, and insert the COMMA where it is

requisite.\_

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE X.--OF INFINITIVES.

"My desire is to live in peace." "The great difficulty was to compel them

to pay their debts." "To strengthen our virtue God bids us trust in him."

"I made no bargain with you to live always drudging." "To sum up all her

tongue confessed the shrew." "To proceed my own adventure was still more

laughable."

"We come not with design of wasteful prey

To drive the country force the swains away."

UNDER RULE XI.--OF PARTICIPLES.

"Having given this answer he departed." "Some sunk to beasts find pleasure

end in pain." "Eased of her load subjection grows more light." "Death still

draws nearer never seeming near." "He lies full low gored with wounds and

weltering in his blood." "Kind is fell Lucifer compared to thee." "Man

considered in himself is helpless and wretched." "Like scattered down by

howling Eurus blown." "He with wide nostrils snorting skims the wave."

"Youth is properly speaking introductory to manhood."

EXC.--"He kept his eye fixed on the country before him." "They have their

part assigned them to act." "Years will not repair the injuries done by

him."

UNDER RULE XII.--OF ADVERBS.

"Yes we both were philosophers." "However Providence saw fit to cross our

design." "Besides I know that the eye of the public is upon me." "The fact

certainly is much otherwise." "For nothing surely can be more

inconsistent."

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"For in such retirement the soul is strengthened." "It engages our desires;

and in some degree satisfies them also." "But of every Christian virtue

piety is an essential part." "The English verb is variable--\_as love lovest

loves\_."

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF PREPOSITIONS.

"In a word charity is the soul of social life." "By the bowstring I can

repress violence and fraud." "Some by being too artful forfeit the

reputation of probity." "With regard to morality I was not indifferent."

"Of all our senses sight is the most perfect and delightful."

UNDER RULE XV.--OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Behold I am against thee O inhabitant of the valley!" "O it is more like a

dream than a reality," "Some wine ho!" "Ha ha ha; some wine eh?"

"When lo the dying breeze begins to fail,

And flutters on the mast the flagging sail."

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF WORDS REPEATED.

"I would never consent never never never." "His teeth did chatter chatter

chatter still." "Come come come--to bed to bed to bed."

UNDER RULE XVII.--OF DEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"He cried 'Cause every man to go out from me.'" "'Almet' said he 'remember

what thou hast seen.'" "I answered 'Mock not thy servant who is but a worm

before thee.'"

EXERCISE IV.--PUNCTUATION.

I. THE SEMICOLON.--\_Copy the following sentences, and insert the Comma and

the SEMICOLON where they are requisite.\_

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE I.--OF COMPOUND MEMBERS.

"'Man is weak' answered his companion 'knowledge is more than equivalent to

force.'" "To judge rightly of the present we must oppose it to the past for

all judgement is compartive [sic--KTH] and of the future nothing can be

known." "'Contentment is natural wealth' says Socrates to which I shall add

'luxury is artificial poverty.'"

"Converse and love mankind might strongly draw

When love was liberty and nature law."

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"Be wise to-day 'tis madness to defer." "The present all their care the

future his." "Wit makes an enterpriser sense a man." "Ask thought for joy

grow rich and hoard within." "Song soothes our pains and age has pains to

soothe." "Here an enemy encounters there a rival supplants him." "Our

answer to their reasons is; 'No' to their scoffs nothing."

"Here subterranean works and cities see

There towns aerial on the waving tree."

UNDER RULE III.--OF APPOSITION.

"In Latin there are six cases namely the nominative the genitive the dative

the accusative the vocative and the ablative." "Most English nouns form the

plural by taking \_s\_; as \_boy boys nation nations king kings bay bays\_."

"Bodies are such as are endued with a vegetable soul as plants a sensitive

soul as animals or a rational soul as the body of man."

II. THE COLON.--\_Copy the following sentences, and insert the Comma, the

Semicolon, and the COLON, where they are requisite.\_

UNDER RULE I.--OF ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

"Indulge not desires at the expense of the slightest article of virtue pass

once its limits and you fall headlong into vice." "Death wounds to cure we

fall we rise we reign." "Beware of usurpation God is the judge of all."

"Bliss!--there is none but unprecarious bliss

That is the gem sell all and purchase that."

UNDER RULE II.--OF GREATER PAUSES.

"I have the world here before me I will review it at leisure surely

happiness is somewhere to be found." "A melancholy enthusiast courts

persecution and when he cannot obtain it afflicts himself with absurd

penances but the holiness of St. Paul consisted in the simplicity of a

pious life."

"Observe his awful portrait and admire

Nor stop at wonder imitate and live."

UNDER RULE III.--OF INDEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"Such is our Lord's injunction 'Watch and pray.'" "He died praying for his

persecutors 'Father forgive them they know not what they do.'" "On the old

gentleman's cane was inscribed this motto '\_Festina lente\_.'"

III.--THE PERIOD.--\_Copy the following sentences, and insert the Comma, the

Semicolon, the Colon, and the PERIOD, where they are requisite.\_

UNDER RULE I.--OF DISTINCT SENTENCES.

"Then appeared the sea and the dry land the mountains rose and the rivers

flowed the sun and moon began their course in the skies herbs and plants

clothed the ground the air the earth and the waters were stored with their

respective inhabitants at last man was made in the image of God"

"In general those parents have most reverence who most deserve it for he

that lives well cannot be despised"

UNDER RULE II.--OF ALLIED SENTENCES.

"Civil accomplishments frequently give rise to fame but a distinction is to

be made between fame and true honour the statesman the orator or the poet

may be famous while yet the man himself is far from being honoured"

UNDER RULE III.--OF ABBREVIATIONS.

"Glass was invented in England by Benalt a monk A D 664" "The Roman era U C

commenced A C 1753 years" "Here is the Literary Life of S T Coleridge Esq"

"PLATO a most illustrious philosopher of antiquity died at Athens 348 B C

aged 81 his writings are very valuable his language beautiful and correct

and his philosophy sublime"--See \_Univ. Biog. Dict.\_

EXERCISE V.--PUNCTUATION.

I. THE DASH.--\_Copy the following sentences, and insert, in their proper

places, the\_ DASH, \_and such other points as are necessary\_.

EXAMPLES UNDER RULE I.--OF ABRUPT PAUSES.

"You say \_famous\_ very often and I don't know exactly what it means a

\_famous\_ uniform \_famous\_ doings What does famous mean"

"O why \_famous\_ means Now don't you know what \_famous\_ means It means It is

a word that people say It is the fashion to say it It means it means

\_famous\_."

UNDER RULE II.--OF EMPHATIC PAUSES.

"But this life is not all there is there is full surely another state

abiding us And if there is what is thy prospect O remorseless obdurate Thou

shalt hear it would be thy wisdom to think thou now nearest the sound of

that trumpet which shall awake the dead Return O yet return to the Father

of mercies and live"

"The future pleases Why The present pains

But that's a secret yes which all men know"

II. THE EROTEME.--\_Copy the following sentences, and insert rightly the\_

EROTEME, \_or\_ NOTE OF INTERROGATION, \_and such other points as are

necessary\_.

UNDER RULE I.--OF QUESTIONS DIRECT.

"Does Nature bear a tyrant's breast

Is she the friend of stern control

Wears she the despot's purple vest

Or fetters she the freeborn soul"

"Why should a man whose blood is warm within

Sit like his grandsire cut in alabaster"

"Who art thou courteous stranger and from whence

Why roam thy steps to this abandon'd dale"

UNDER RULE II.--OF QUESTIONS UNITED.

"Who bid the stork Columbus-like explore

Heav'ns not his own and worlds unknown before

Who calls the council states the certain day

Who forms the phalanx and who points the way"

UNDER RULE III.--OF QUESTIONS INDIRECT.

"They asked me who I was and whither I was going." "St. Paul asked king

Agrippa if he believed the prophets? But he did not wait for an answer."

"Ask of thy mother Earth why oaks are made

Taller and stronger than the weeds they shade"

III. THE ECPHONEME.--\_Copy the following sentences, and insert rightly the\_

ECPHONEME, \_or\_ NOTE OF EXCLAMATION, \_and such other points as are

necessary\_.

UNDER RULE I.--OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Oh talk of hypocrisy after this Most consummate of all hypocrites After

instructing your chosen official advocate to stand forward with such a

defence such an exposition of your motives to dare utter the word hypocrisy

and complain of those who charged you with it" \_Brougham\_

"Alas how is that rugged heart forlorn"

"Behold the victor vanquish'd by the worm"

"Bliss sublunary Bliss proud words and vain"

UNDER RULE II.--OF INVOCATIONS.

"O Popular Applause what heart of man

Is proof against thy sweet seducing charms"

"More than thy balm O Gilead heals the wound"

UNDER RULE III.--OF EXCLAMATORY QUESTIONS.

With what transports of joy shall I be received In what honour in what

delightful repose shall I pass the remainder of my life What immortal glory

shall I have acquired" \_Hooke's Roman History\_.

"How often have I loiter'd o'er thy green

Where humble happiness endear'd each scene"

IV.--THE CURVES.--\_Copy the following sentences, and insert rightly the

CURVES, or MARKS OF PARENTHESIS, and such other points as are necessary\_.

UNDER RULE I.--OF THE PARENTHESIS.

"And all the question wrangle e'er so long

Is only this If God has plac'd him wrong"

"And who what God foretells who speaks in things

Still louder than in words shall dare deny"

UNDER RULE II.--OF INCLUDED POINTS.

"Say was it virtue more though Heav'n ne'er gave

Lamented Digby sunk thee to the grave"

"Where is that thrift that avarice of time

O glorious avarice thought of death inspires"

"And oh the last last what can words express

Thought reach the last last silence of a friend"

EXERCISE VI.--PUNCTUATION.

\_Copy the following MIXED EXAMPLES, and insert the points which they

require.\_

"As one of them opened his sack he espied his money" "They cried out the

more exceedingly Crucify him" "The soldiers' counsel was to kill the

prisoners" "Great injury these vermin mice and rats do in the field" "It is

my son's coat an evil beast hath devoured him" "Peace of all worldly

blessings is the most valuable" "By this time the very foundation was

removed" "The only words he uttered were I am a Roman citizen" "Some

distress either felt or feared gnaws like a worm" "How then must I

determine Have I no interest If I have not I am stationed here to no

purpose" \_Harris\_ "In the fire the destruction was so swift sudden vast and

miserable as to have no parallel in story" "Dionysius the tyrant of Sicily

was far from being happy" "I ask now Verres what thou hast to advance"

"Excess began and sloth sustains the trade" "Fame can never reconcile a man

to a death bed" "They that sail on the sea tell of the danger" "Be doers of

the word and not hearers only" "The storms of wintry time will quickly

pass" "Here Hope that smiling angel stands" "Disguise I see thou art a

wickedness" "There are no tricks in plain and simple faith" "True love

strikes root in reason passion's foe" "Two gods divide them all Pleasure

and Gain" "I am satisfied My son has done his duty" "Remember Almet the

vision which thou hast seen" "I beheld an enclosure beautiful as the

gardens of paradise" "The knowledge which I have received I will

communicate" "But I am not yet happy and therefore I despair" "Wretched

mortals said I to what purpose are you busy" "Bad as the world is respect

is always paid to virtue" "In a word he views men as the clear sunshine of

charity" "This being the case I am astonished and amazed" "These men

approached him and saluted him king" "Excellent and obliging sages these

undoubtedly" "Yet at the same time the man himself undergoes a change" "One

constant effect of idleness is to nourish the passions" "You heroes regard

nothing but glory" "Take care lest while you strive to reach the top you

fall" "Proud and presumptuous they can brook no opposition" "Nay some awe

of religion may still subsist" "Then said he Lo I come to do thy will O

God" \_Bible\_ "As for me behold I am in your hand" \_Ib.\_ "Can any hide

himself in secret places that I shall not see him saith the Lord" \_Jer\_

xxiii 24 "Now I Paul myself beseech you" "Now for a recompense in the same

I speak as unto my children be ye also enlarged" \_2 Cor\_ vi 13 "He who

lives always in public cannot live to his own soul whereas he who retires

remains calm" "Therefore behold I even I will utterly forget you" "This

text speaks only of those to whom it speaks" "Yea he warmeth himself and

saith Aha I am warm" "King Agrippa believest thou the prophets"

EXERCISE VII.--PUNCTUATION.

\_Copy the following MIXED EXAMPLES, and insert the points which they

require.\_

To whom can riches give repute or trust

Content or pleasure but the good and just \_Pope\_

To him no high no low no great no small

He fills he bounds connects and equals all \_Id\_

Reasons whole pleasure all the joys of sense

Lie in three words health peace and competence \_Id\_

Not so for once indulged they sweep the main

Deaf to the call or hearing hear in vain \_Anon\_

Say will the falcon stooping from above

Smit with her varying plumage spare the dove \_Pope\_

Throw Egypts by and offer in its stead

Offer the crown on Berenices head \_Id\_

Falsely luxurious will not man awake

And springing from the bed of sloth enjoy

The cool the fragrant and the silent hour \_Thomson\_

Yet thus it is nor otherwise can be

So far from aught romantic what I sing \_Young\_

Thyself first know then love a self there is

Of virtue fond that kindles at her charms \_Id\_

How far that little candle throws his beams

So shines a good deed in a naughty world \_Shakspeare\_

You have too much respect upon the world

They lose it that do buy it with much care \_Id\_

How many things by season seasoned are

To their right praise and true perfection \_Id\_

Canst thou descend from converse with the skies

And seize thy brothers throat For what a clod \_Young\_

In two short precepts all your business lies

Would you be great--\_be virtuous\_ and \_be wise Denham\_

But sometimes virtue starves while vice is fed

What then is the reward of virtue bread \_Pope\_

A life all turbulence and noise may seem

To him that leads it wise and to be praised

But wisdom is a pearl with most success

Sought in still waters and beneath clear skies \_Cowper\_

All but the swellings of the softened heart

That waken not disturb the tranquil mind \_Thomson\_

Inspiring God who boundless spirit all

And unremitting energy pervades

Adjusts sustains and agitates the whole \_Id\_

Ye ladies for indifferent in your cause

I should deserve to forfeit all applause

Whatever shocks or gives the least offence

To virtue delicacy truth or sense

Try the criterion tis a faithful guide

Nor has nor can have Scripture on its side. \_Cowper\_

EXERCISE VIII.--SCANNING.

\_Divide the following\_ VERSES \_into the feet which compose them, and

distinguish by marks the long and the short syllables\_.

\_Example I.--"Our Daily Paths"--By F. Hemans\_.

"There's Beauty all around our paths, if but our watchful eyes

Can trace it 'midst familiar things, and through their lowly guise;

We may find it where a hedgerow showers its blossoms o'er our way,

Or a cottage-window sparkles forth in the last red light of day."

\_Example II.--"Fetching Water"--Anonymous\_.

"Early on a sunny morning, while the lark was singing sweet,

Came, beyond the ancient farmhouse, sounds of lightly-tripping feet.

'Twas a lowly cottage maiden, going,--why, let young hearts tell,--

With her homely pitcher laden, fetching water from the well."

\_Example III.--Deity\_.

Alone thou sitst above the everlasting hills

And all immensity of space thy presence fills:

For thou alone art God;--as God thy saints adore thee;

Jehovah is thy name;--they have no gods before thee.--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example IV.--Impenitence\_.

The impenitent sinner whom mercy empowers,

Dishonours that goodness which seeks to restore;

As the sands of the desert are water'd by showers.

Yet barren and fruitless remain as before.--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example V.--Piety\_.

Holy and pure are the pleasures of piety,

Drawn from the fountain of mercy and love;

Endless, exhaustless, exempt from satiety,

Rising unearthly, and soaring above.--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example VI.--A Simile\_.

The bolt that strikes the tow'ring cedar dead,

Oft passes harmless o'er the hazel's head.--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example VII.--A Simile\_.

"Yet to their general's voice they soon obey'd

Innumerable. As when the potent rod

Of Amram's son, in Egypt's evil day,

Wav'd round the coast, up call'd a pitchy cloud

Of locusts, warping on the eastern wind,

That o'er the realm of impious Pharaoh hung

Like night, and darken'd all the land of Nile."--\_Milton\_.

\_Example VIII.--Elegiac Stanza.\_

Thy name is dear--'tis virtue balm'd in love;

Yet e'en thy name a pensive sadness brings.

Ah! wo the day, our hearts were doom'd to prove,

That fondest love but points affliction's stings!--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example IX.--Cupid.\_

Zephyrs, moving bland, and breathing fragrant

With the sweetest odours of the spring,

O'er the winged boy, a thoughtless vagrant,

Slumb'ring in the grove, their perfumes fling.--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example X.--Divine Power.\_

When the winds o'er Gennesaret roar'd,

And the billows tremendously rose,

The Saviour but utter'd the word,

They were hush'd to the calmest repose.--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example XI.--Invitation.\_

Come from the mount of the leopard, spouse,

Come from the den of the lion;

Come to the tent of thy shepherd, spouse,

Come to the mountain of Zion.--\_G. Brown\_.

\_Example XII.--Admonition\_.

In the days of thy youth,

Remember thy God:

O! forsake not his truth,

Incur not his rod.--\_G. Brown.\_

\_Example XIII.--Commendation.\_

Constant and duteous,

Meek as the dove,

How art thou beauteous,

Daughter of love!--\_G. Brown.\_

EXERCISE IX.--SCANNING.

\_Mark the feet and syllables which compose the following lines--or mark a

sample of each metre.\_

\_Edwin, an Ode\_.

I. STROPHE.

Led by the pow'r of song, and nature's love,

Which raise the soul all vulgar themes above,

The mountain grove

Would Edwin rove,

In pensive mood, alone;

And seek the woody dell,

Where noontide shadows fell,

Cheering,

Veering,

Mov'd by the zephyr's swell.

Here nurs'd he thoughts to genius only known,

When nought was heard around

But sooth'd the rest profound

Of rural beauty on her mountain throne.

Nor less he lov'd (rude nature's child)

The elemental conflict wild;

When, fold on fold, above was pil'd

The watery swathe, careering on the wind.

Such scenes he saw

With solemn awe,

As in the presence of the Eternal Mind.

Fix'd he gaz'd,

Tranc'd and rais'd,

Sublimely rapt in awful pleasure undefin'd.

II. ANTISTROPHE

Reckless of dainty joys, he finds delight

Where feebler souls but tremble with affright.

Lo! now, within the deep ravine,

A black impending cloud

Infolds him in its shroud,

And dark and darker glooms the scene.

Through the thicket streaming,

Lightnings now are gleaming;

Thunders rolling dread,

Shake the mountain's head;

Nature's war

Echoes far,

O'er ether borne,

That flash

The ash

Has scath'd and torn!

Now it rages;

Oaks of ages,

Writhing in the furious blast,

Wide their leafy honours cast;

Their gnarled arms do force to force oppose

Deep rooted in the crevic'd rock,

The sturdy trunk sustains the shock,

Like dauntless hero firm against assailing foes.

III. EPODE.

'0 Thou who sitst above these vapours dense,

And rul'st the storm by thine omnipotence!

Making the collied cloud thy ear,

Coursing the winds, thou rid'st afar,

Thy blessings to dispense.

The early and the latter rain,

Which fertilize the dusty plain,

Thy bounteous goodness pours.

Dumb be the atheist tongue abhorr'd!

All nature owns thee, sovereign Lord!

And works thy gracious will;

At thy command the tempest roars,

At thy command is still.

Thy mercy o'er this scene sublime presides;

'Tis mercy forms the veil that hides

The ardent solar beam;

While, from the volley'd breast of heaven,

Transient gleams of dazzling light,

Flashing on the balls of sight,

Make darkness darker seem.

Thou mov'st the quick and sulphurous leven--

The tempest-driven

Cloud is riven;

And the thirsty mountain-side

Drinks gladly of the gushing tide.'

So breath'd young Edwin, when the summer shower,

From out that dark o'erchamb'ring cloud,

With lightning flash and thunder loud,

Burst in wild grandeur o'er his solitary bower.--\_G. Brown.\_

THE END OF PART FOURTH.

KEY TO THE IMPROPRIETIES FOR CORRECTION, CONTAINED IN THE GRAMMAR OF

ENGLISH GRAMMARS, AND DESIGNED FOR ORAL EXERCISES UNDER ALL THE RULES AND

NOTES OF THE WORK.

[Fist][The various examples of error which are exhibited for oral

correction, in the Grammar of English Grammars, are all here explained, in

their order, by full amended readings, sometimes with authorities

specified, and generally with references of some sort. They are intended to

be corrected orally by the pupil, according to the formules given under

corresponding heads in the Grammar. Some portion, at least, under each rule

or note, should be used in this way; and the rest, perhaps, may be read and

compared more simply.]

THE KEY.--PART I.--ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.--OF LETTERS. CORRECTIONS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

UNDER RULE I.--OF BOOKS.

"Many a reader of the \_Bible\_ knows not who wrote the \_Acts\_ of the

\_Apostles\_"--G. B. "The sons of Levi, the chief of the fathers, were

written in the book of the \_Chronicles\_."--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Neh.\_, xii, 23.

"Are they not written in the book of the \_Acts\_ of Solomon?"--FRIENDS'

BIBLE: I \_Kings\_, xi, 41. "Are they not written in the book of the

Chronicles of the \_Kings\_ of Israel?"--ALGER CORRECTED: I \_Kings\_, xxii,

39. "Are they not written in the book of the \_Chronicles\_ of the \_Kings\_ of

Judah."--See ALGER: \_ib., ver\_. 45. "Which were written in the law of

Moses, and in the prophets, and in the \_Psalms\_."--ALGER, ET AL.: \_Luke\_,

xxiv, 44. "The narrative of which maybe seen in Josephus's History of the

\_Jewish War\_"--\_Dr. Scott cor.\_ [Obs.--The word in Josephus is "\_War\_," not

"\_Wars\_."--\_G. Brown.\_] "This \_History of the Jewish War\_ was Josephus's

first work, and published about A. D. 75."--\_Whiston cor.\_ "'I have read,'

says Photius, 'the Chronology of Justus of Tiberias.'"--\_Id.\_ "\_A

Philosophical Grammar\_, written by James Harris, Esquire."--\_Murray cor.\_

"The reader is referred to Stroud's \_Sketch\_ of the \_Slave Laws\_"--\_A. S.

Mag. cor.\_ "But God has so made the \_Bible\_ that it interprets

itself."--\_Idem\_. "In 1562, with the help of Hopkins, he completed the

\_Psalter\_."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "Gardiner says this of Sternhold; of whom the

\_Universal Biographical Dictionary\_ and the American \_Encyclopedia\_ affirm,

that he died in 1549."--\_G. B.\_ "The title of a book, to wit: 'English

Grammar in \_Familiar Lectures\_,'" &c.--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "We had not, at that

time, seen Mr. Kirkham's 'Grammar in \_Familiar\_ Lectures.'"--\_Id.\_ "When

you parse, you may spread the Compendium before you."--\_Id. right\_.[516]

"Whenever you parse, you may spread the \_Compendium\_ before you."--\_Id.

cor.\_ "Adelung was the author of a \_Grammatical\_ and \_Critical

Dictionary\_ of the German \_Language\_, and other works." \_Biog. Dict. cor.\_

"Alley, William, author of '\_The Poor Man's Library\_,' and a translation of

the Pentateuch, died in 1570."--\_Id.\_

UNDER RULE II.--OF FIRST WORDS.

"Depart instantly;"--"\_Improve\_ your time;"--"\_Forgive\_ us our

sins."--\_Murray corrected\_. EXAMPLES:--"Gold is corrupting;"--"\_The\_ sea is

green;"--"\_A\_ lion is bold."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ Again: "It may

rain;"--"\_He\_ may go or stay;"--"\_He\_ would walk;;"--"\_They\_ should

learn."--\_Iidem\_. Again: "Oh! I have alienated my friend;"--"\_Alas\_! I fear

for life."--\_Iidem.\_ See \_Alger's Gram.\_, p. 50. Again: "He went from

London to York;"--"\_She\_ is above disguise;" "\_They\_ are supported by

industry."--\_Iidem\_. "On the foregoing examples, I have a word to say.

\_They\_ are better than a fair specimen of their kind. \_Our\_ grammars abound

with worse illustrations. \_Their\_ models of English are generally spurious

quotations. \_Few\_ of their proof-texts have any just parentage.

\_Goose-eyes\_ are abundant, but names scarce. \_Who\_ fathers the foundlings?

\_Nobody. Then\_ let their merit be nobody's, and their defects his who could

write no better."--\_Author\_. "\_Goose-eyes\_!" says a bright boy; "pray, what

are they? \_Does\_ this Mr. Author make new words when he pleases?

\_Dead-eyes\_ are in a ship. \_They\_ are blocks, with holes in them. \_But\_

what are goose-eyes in grammar?" ANSWER: "\_Goose-eyes\_ are quotation

points. \_Some\_ of the Germans gave them this name, making a jest of their

form. \_The\_ French call them \_guillemets\_, from the name of their

inventor."--\_Author\_. "\_It\_ is a personal pronoun, of the third person

singular."--\_Comly cor.\_ "\_Ourselves\_ is a personal pronoun, of the first

person plural."--\_Id.\_ "\_Thee\_ is a personal pronoun, of the second person

singular."--\_Id.\_ "\_Contentment\_ is a \_common noun\_, of the third person

singular."--\_Id.\_ "\_Were\_ is a neuter verb, of the indicative mood,

imperfect tense."--\_Id.\_

UNDER RULE III.--OF DEITY.

"O thou \_Dispenser\_ of life! thy mercies are boundless."--\_Allen cor.\_

"Shall not the \_Judge\_ of all the earth do right?"--ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.:

\_Gen.\_, xviii, 25. "And the \_Spirit of God\_ moved upon the face of the

waters."--SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: \_Gen.\_, i, 2. "It is the gift of

\_Him\_, who is the great \_Author\_ of good, and the Father of

mercies."--\_Murray cor.\_ "This is thy \_God\_ that brought thee up out of

Egypt."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Neh.\_, ix, 18. "For the LORD is our defence; and

the \_Holy One\_ of Israel is our \_King\_."--\_Psal.\_. lxxxix, 18. "By making

him the responsible steward of \_Heaven's\_ bounties."--\_A. S. Mag. cor.\_

"Which the Lord, the righteous \_Judge\_, shall give me at that day."--ALGER:

\_2 Tim.\_, iv, 8. "The cries of them ... entered into the ears of the Lord

of \_Sabaoth\_."--ALGER, FRIENDS: \_James\_, v, 4. "In Horeb, the \_Deity\_

revealed himself to Moses, as the \_Eternal\_ 'I AM,' the \_Self-existent

One\_; and, after the first discouraging interview of his messengers with

Pharaoh, he renewed his promise to them, by the awful name, JEHOVAH--a name

till then unknown, and one which the Jews always held it a fearful

profanation to pronounce."--\_G. Brown\_. "And \_God\_ spake unto Moses, and

said unto him, I am the LORD: and I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and

unto Jacob, by the name of \_God Almighty\_; but by my name JEHOVAH was I not

known to them."--SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS: \_Exod.\_, vi, 2. "Thus saith the

LORD[517] the \_King\_ of Israel, and his \_Redeemer\_ the LORD of hosts; I am

the \_First\_, and I am the \_Last\_; and besides me there is no \_God\_."--See

\_Isa.\_, xliv, 6.

"His impious race their blasphemy renew'd,

And nature's \_King\_, through nature's optics view'd."--\_Dryden cor.\_

UNDER RULE IV.--OF PROPER NAMES.

"Islamism prescribes fasting during the month \_Ramadan\_."--\_Balbi cor.\_

"Near \_Mecca\_, in \_Arabia\_, is \_Jebel Nor\_, or the \_Mountain of Light\_, on

the top of which the \_Mussulmans\_ erected a mosque, that they might perform

their devotions where, according to their belief, \_Mohammed\_ received from

the angel \_Gabriel\_ the first chapter of the Koran."--\_G. Brown\_. "In the

\_Kaaba\_ at \_Mecca\_ there is a celebrated block of volcanic basalt, which

the \_Mohammedans\_ venerate as the gift of \_Gabriel\_ to \_Abraham\_, but their

ancestors once held it to be an image of \_Remphan\_, or \_Saturn\_; so 'the

image which fell down from \_Jupiter\_,' to share with \_Diana\_ the homage of

the \_Ephesians\_, was probably nothing more than a meteoric stone."--\_Id.\_

"When the \_Lycaonians\_ at \_Lystra\_ took \_Paul\_ and \_Barnabas\_ to be gods,

they called the former \_Mercury\_, on account of his eloquence, and the

latter \_Jupiter\_, for the greater dignity of his appearance."--\_Id.\_ "Of

the writings of the apostolic fathers of the first century, but few have

come down to us; yet we have in those of \_Barnabas, Clement\_ of \_Rome,

Hermas, Ignatius\_, and \_Polycarp\_, very certain evidence of the

authenticity of the New Testament, and the New Testament is a voucher for

the Old."--\_Id.\_ "It is said by \_Tatian\_, that \_Theagenes\_ of \_Rhegium\_, in

the time of \_Cambyses, Stesimbrotus\_ the \_Thracian, Antimachus\_ the

\_Colophonian, Herodotus\_ of \_Halicarnassus, Dionysius\_ the \_Olynthian,

Ephorus\_ of \_Cumæ, Philochorus\_ the \_Athenian, Metaclides\_ and \_Chamæleon\_

the \_Peripatetics\_, and \_Zenodotus, Aristophanes, Callimachus, Crates,

Eratosthenes, Aristarchus\_, and \_Apollodorus\_, the grammarians, all wrote

concerning the poetry, the birth, and the age of \_Homer\_."--See

\_Coleridge's Introd.\_, p. 57. "Yet, for aught that now appears, the life of

\_Homer\_ is as fabulous as that of \_Hercules\_; and some have even suspected,

that, as the son of \_Jupiter\_ and \_Alcmena\_ has fathered the deeds of forty

other \_Herculeses\_, so this unfathered son of \_Critheis, Themisto\_, or

whatever dame--this \_Melesigenes, Mæonides, Homer\_--the blind schoolmaster,

and poet, of \_Smyrna, Chios, Colophon, Salamis, Rhodes, Argos, Athens\_, or

whatever place--has, by the help of \_Lycurgus, Solon, Pisistratus\_, and

other learned ancients, been made up of many poets or \_Homers\_, and set so

far aloft and aloof on old \_Parnassus\_, as to become a god in the eyes of

all \_Greece\_, a wonder in those of all \_Christendom\_."--\_G. Brown\_.

"Why so sagacious in your guesses?

Your \_Effs\_, and \_Tees\_, and \_Ars\_, and \_Esses\_?"--\_Swift corrected\_.

UNDER RULE V.--OF TITLES.

"The king has conferred on him the title of \_Duke\_."--\_Murray cor.\_ "At the

court of \_Queen\_ Elizabeth."--\_Priestley's E. Gram.\_, p. 99; see

\_Bullions's\_, p. 24. "The laws of nature are, truly, what \_Lord\_ Bacon

styles his aphorisms, laws of laws."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Sixtus the Fourth was,

if I mistake not, a great collector of books."--\_Id.\_ "Who at that time

made up the court of \_King\_ Charles the \_Second\_"--\_Id.\_ "In case of his

\_Majesty's\_ dying without issue."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "King Charles the \_First\_

was beheaded in 1649."--\_W. Allen cor.\_ "He can no more impart, or (to use

\_Lord\_ Bacon's word) \_transmit\_ convictions."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "I reside at

\_Lord\_ Stormont's, my old patron and benefactor." Better: "I reside \_with

Lord Stormont\_, my old patron and benefactor."--\_Murray cor.\_ "We staid a

month at \_Lord Lyttelton's\_, the ornament of his country." Much better: "We

stayed a month at \_the seat of Lord Lyttelton, who is\_ the ornament of his

country."--\_Id.\_ "Whose prerogative is it? It is the \_King\_-of-Great-

Britain's;" [518]--"That is the \_Duke\_-of-Bridgewater's canal;"--"The

\_Bishop\_-of-Landaff's excellent book;"--"The Lord \_Mayor\_-of-London's

authority."--\_Id.\_ (See Murray's Note 4th on his Rule 10th.) "Why call ye

me, \_Lord, Lord\_, and do not the things which I say?"--\_Luke\_, vi, 46. "And

of them he chose twelve, whom also he named \_Apostles\_."--ALGER, FRIENDS,

ET AL.: \_Luke\_, vi, 13. "And forthwith he came to Jesus, and said, Hail,

\_Master\_; and kissed him."--\_Matt.\_, xxvi, 49. "And he said, Nay, \_Father\_

Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they \_would\_

repent."--\_Bible cor.\_

UNDER RULE VI.--OF ONE CAPITAL.

"\_Fallriver\_, a village in Massachusetts, population (in 1830)

3,431."--\_Williams cor.\_ "Dr. Anderson died at \_Westham\_, in Essex, in

1808."--\_Biog. Dict. cor.\_ "\_Madriver\_, the name of two towns in Clark and

Champaign counties, Ohio."--\_Williams cor.\_ "\_Whitecreek\_, a town of

Washington county, New York."--\_Id.\_ "\_Saltcreek\_, the name of four towns

in different parts of Ohio."--\_Id.\_ "\_Saltlick\_, a town of Fayette county,

Pennsylvania."--\_Id.\_ "\_Yellowcreek\_, a town of Columbiana county,

Ohio."--\_Id.\_ "\_Whiteclay\_, a hundred of \_Newcastle\_ county, Delaware."--

\_Id.\_ "Newcastle, \_a\_ town and \_half-shire\_ of Newcastle county,

Delaware."--\_Id.\_ "\_Singsing\_, a village of \_Westchester\_ county, New York,

situated in the town of \_Mountpleasant\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Westchester\_, a county

of New York: \_East Chester and West Chester are towns\_ in Westchester

county."--\_Id.\_ "\_Westtown\_, a village of Orange county, New York."--\_Id.\_

"\_Whitewater\_, a town of Hamilton county, Ohio."--\_Worcester's Gaz.\_

"\_Whitewater\_ River, a considerable stream that rises in Indiana, and

flowing southeasterly unites with the Miami in Ohio."--See \_ib.\_

"\_Blackwater\_, a village of Hampshire, in England, and a town in

Ireland."--See \_ib.\_ "\_Blackwater\_, the name of seven different rivers, in

England, Ireland, and the United States."--See \_ib.\_ "\_Redhook\_, a town of

Dutchess county, New York, on the Hudson."--\_Williams cor.\_ "Kinderhook, a

town of Columbia county, New York, on the Hudson."--\_Williams right\_.

"\_Newfane\_, a town of Niagara county, New York."--\_Williams cor.\_

"\_Lakeport\_, a town of Chicot county, Arkansas."--\_Id.\_ "\_Moosehead\_ Lake,

the chief source of the Kennebeck, in Maine."--\_Id.\_ (See \_Worcester's

Gaz.\_) "Macdonough, a county of Illinois, population (in 1830)

2,959."--\_Williams's Univ. Gaz.\_, p 408. "\_Macdonough\_, a county of

Illinois, with a \_court-house\_ at Macomb."--\_Williams cor.\_ "\_Halfmoon\_,

the name of two towns in New York and Pennsylvania; also of two bays in the

West Indies."--\_S. Williams's Univ. Gaz.\_ "\_Leboeuf\_, a town of Erie

county, Pennsylvania, near a small lake of the same name."--See \_ib.\_

"\_Charlescity, Jamescity, Eiizabethcity\_, names of counties in Virginia,

not cities, nor towns."--See \_Univ. Gaz.\_, p. 404.[519] "The superior

qualities of the waters of the Frome, here called \_Stroudwater\_."--\_Balbi

cor.\_

UNDER RULE VII.--OF TWO CAPITALS.

"The Forth rises on the north side of \_Ben Lomond\_, and runs

easterly."--\_Glasgow Geog.\_, 8vo, \_corrected\_. "The red granite of \_Ben

Nevis\_ is said to be the finest in the world."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ben More\_, in

Perthshire, is 3,915 feet above the level of the sea."--\_Id.\_ "The height

of \_Ben Cleagh\_ is 2,420 feet."--\_Id.\_ "In Sutherland and Caithness, are

Ben Ormod, Ben Clibeg, Ben Grin, Ben Hope, and Ben Lugal."--\_Glas. Geog.

right\_. "\_Ben Vracky\_ is 2,756 feet high; \_Ben Ledi\_, 3,009; and \_Ben

Voirloich\_, 3,300."--\_Glas. Geog. cor.\_ "The river Dochart gives the name

of \_Glen Dochart\_ to the vale through which it runs."--\_Id.\_ "About ten

miles from its source, it [the Tay] diffuses itself into \_Loch

Dochart\_."--\_Glasgow Geog.\_, Vol. ii, p. 314. LAKES:--"\_Loch Ard\_, Loch

Achray, Loch Con, Loch Doine, Loch Katrine, Loch Lomond, Loch

Voil."--\_Scott corrected\_. GLENS:--"\_Glen Finlas\_, Glen Fruin, Glen Luss,

\_Ross Dhu, Leven Glen\_, Strath Endrick, Strath Gartney. Strath Ire."--\_Id.\_

MOUNTAINS:--"\_Ben An, Ben Harrow, Ben Ledi\_, Ben Lomond, \_Ben Voirlich, Ben

Venue\_, or, (as some spell it,) \_Ben Ivenew\_."--\_Id.\_[520] "Fenelon died in

1715, deeply lamented by all the inhabitants of the \_Low

Countries\_."--\_Murray cor.\_ "And \_Pharaoh Necho\_[521] made Eliakim, the son

of Josiah, king."--See ALGER: \_2 Kings\_, xiii, 34. "Those who seem so merry

and well pleased, call her \_Good Fortune\_; but the others, who weep and

wring their hands, \_Bad Fortune\_."--\_Collier cor.\_

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF COMPOUNDS.

"When Joab returned, and smote Edom in the \_Valley\_ of \_Salt\_"--FRIENDS'

BIBLE: \_Ps\_. lx, title. "Then Paul stood in the midst of \_Mars Hill\_, and

said," &c.--\_Scott cor.\_ "And at night he went out, and abode in the mount

that is called the \_Mount\_ of Olives."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Abgillus, son of the

king of the Frisii, surnamed Prester John, was in the Holy \_Land\_ with

Charlemagne."--\_U. Biog. Dict. cor.\_ "Cape Palmas, in Africa, divides the

Grain \_Coast\_ from the Ivory \_Coast\_."--\_Dict. of Geog. cor.\_ "The North

Esk, flowing from Loch \_Lee\_, falls into the sea three miles north of

Montrose."--\_Id.\_ "At Queen's \_Ferry\_, the channel of the Forth is

contracted by promontories on both coasts."--\_Id.\_ "The Chestnut \_Ridge\_ is

about twenty-five miles west of the Alleghanies, and Laurel \_Ridge\_, ten

miles further west."--\_Balbi cor.\_ "Washington \_City\_, the metropolis of

the United States of America."--\_Williams, U. Caz.\_, p. 380. "Washington

\_City\_, in the District of Columbia, population (in 1830)

18,826."--\_Williams cor.\_ "The loftiest peak of the \_White Mountains\_, in

New Hampshire, is called \_Mount\_ Washington."--\_G. Brown\_. "Mount's \_Bay\_,

in the west of England, lies between the \_Land's End\_ and \_Lizard

Point\_."--\_Id.\_ "Salamis, an island of the Egean Sea, off the southern

coast of the ancient Attica."--\_Dict. of Geog\_. "Rhodes, an island of the

Egean \_Sea\_, the largest and most easterly of the Cyclades."--\_Id. cor.\_

"But he overthrew Pharaoh and his host in the Red \_Sea\_."--SCOTT: \_Ps\_.

cxxxvi, 15. "But they provoked him at the sea, even at the Red

\_Sea\_."--ALGER, FRIENDS: \_Ps\_. cvi, 7.

UNDER RULE IX.--OF APPOSITION.

"At that time, Herod the \_tetrarch\_ heard of the fame of Jesus."--SCOTT,

FRIENDS, ET AL.: \_Matt.\_, xiv, 1. "Who has been more detested than Judas

the \_traitor?\_"--\_G. Brown\_. "St. Luke the \_evangelist\_ was a physician of

Antioch, and one of the converts of St. Paul."--\_Id.\_ "Luther, the

\_reformer\_, began his bold career by preaching against papal

indulgences."--\_Id.\_ "The \_poet\_ Lydgate was a disciple and admirer of

Chaucer: he died in 1440."--\_Id.\_ "The \_grammarian\_ Varro, 'the most

learned of the Romans,'[522] wrote three books when he was eighty years

old."--\_Id.\_ "John Despauter, the great \_grammarian\_ of Flanders, whose

works are still valued, died in 1520."--\_Id.\_ "Nero, the \_emperor\_ and

\_tyrant\_ of Rome, slew himself to avoid a worse death."--\_Id.\_ "Cicero the

\_orator\_, 'the Father of his Country,' was assassinated at the age of

64."--\_Id.\_ "Euripides, the Greek \_tragedian\_, was born in the \_island\_ of

Salamis, B. C. 476."--\_Id.\_ "I will say unto God my \_rock\_, Why hast thou

forgotten me?"--ALGER, ET AL.: \_Ps\_. xlii, 9. "Staten Island, an island of

New York, nine miles below New York \_city\_."--\_Williams cor.\_ "When the son

of Atreus, \_king\_ of \_men\_, and the noble Achilles first

separated."--\_Coleridge cor.\_

"Hermes, his \_patron-god\_, those gifts bestow'd,

Whose shrine with \_weanling\_ lambs he wont to load."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER RULE X.--OF PERSONIFICATIONS.

"But \_Wisdom\_ is justified of all her children."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Luke\_,

vii, 35. "Fortune and the \_Church\_ are generally put in the feminine

gender: that is, when personified." "Go to your \_Natural Religion\_; lay

before her Mahomet and his disciples."--\_Bp. Sherlock\_. "O \_Death!\_ where

is thy sting? O \_Grave!\_ where is thy victory."--\_Pope\_: \_1 Cor.\_, xv, 55;

\_Merchant's Gram.\_, p. 172. "Ye cannot serve God and Mammon."--\_Matt.\_, vi,

24. "Ye cannot serve God and \_Mammon\_"--See \_Luke\_, xvi, 13. "This house

was built as if \_Suspicion\_ herself had dictated the plan."--\_Rasselas\_.

"Poetry distinguishes herself from \_Prose\_, by yielding to a musical

law."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 501. "My beauteous deliverer thus uttered her

divine instructions: 'My name is \_Religion\_. I am the offspring of \_Truth\_

and \_Love\_, and the parent of \_Benevolence, Hope\_, and \_Joy\_. That monster,

from whose power I have freed you, is called \_Superstition\_: she is called

the child of \_Discontent\_, and her followers are \_Fear\_ and

\_Sorrow\_.'"--\_E. Carter\_. "Neither \_Hope\_ nor \_Fear\_ could enter the

retreats; and \_Habit\_ had so absolute a power, that even \_Conscience\_, if

\_Religion\_ had employed her in their favour, would not have been able to

force an entrance."--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

"In colleges and halls in ancient days,

There dwelt a sage called \_Discipline\_."--\_Cowper\_.

UNDER RULE XI.--OF DERIVATIVES.

"In English, I would have \_Gallicisms\_ avoided."--\_Felton\_. "Sallust was

born in Italy, 85 years before the \_Christian\_ era."--\_Murray cor.\_; "Dr.

Doddridge was not only a great man, but one of the most excellent and

useful \_Christians\_, and \_Christian\_ ministers."--\_Id.\_ "They corrupt their

style with untutored \_Anglicisms\_"--\_Milton\_. "Albert of Stade, author of a

chronicle from the creation to 1286, a \_Benedictine\_ of the 13th

century."--\_Biog. Dict. cor.\_ "Graffio, a \_Jesuit\_ of Capua in the 16th

century, author of two volumes on moral subjects."--\_Id.\_ "They \_Frenchify\_

and \_Italianize\_ words whenever they can."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 86. "He who

sells a \_Christian\_, sells the grace of God."--\_Mag. cor.\_ "The first

persecution against the \_Christians\_, under Nero, began A. D.

64."--\_Gregory cor.\_ "P. Rapin, the \_Jesuit\_, uniformly decides in favour

of the Roman writers."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 248. "The Roman poet and

\_Epicurean\_ philosopher Lucretius has said," &c.--\_Cohen cor.\_ Spell

\_"Calvinistic, Atticism, Gothicism, Epicurism, Jesuitism, Sabianism,

Socinianism, Anglican, Anglicism, Anglicize, Vandalism, Gallicism\_, and

\_Romanize\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The large \_Ternate\_ bat."--\_Id. and Bolles

cor.\_

"Church-ladders are not always mounted best

By learned clerks, and \_Latinists\_ profess'd"--\_Cowper cor.\_

UNDER RULE XII.--OF I AND O.

"Fall back, fall back; \_I\_ have not room:--\_O!\_ methinks \_I\_ see a couple

whom \_I\_ should know."--\_Lucian\_. "Nay, \_I\_ live as \_I\_ did, \_I\_ think as

\_I\_ did, \_I\_ love you as \_I\_ did; but all these are to no purpose; the

world will not live, think, or love, as \_I\_ do."--\_Swift to Pope\_.

"Whither, \_O!\_ whither shall \_I\_ fly? \_O\_ wretched prince! \_O\_ cruel

reverse of fortune! \_O\_ father Micipsa! is this the consequence of thy

generosity?"--\_Tr. of Sallust.\_ "When \_I\_ was a child, \_I\_ spake as a

child, \_I\_ understood as a child, \_I\_ thought as a child; but when \_I\_

became a man, \_I\_ put away childish things."--\_1 Cor.\_, xiii, 11. "And \_I\_

heard, but \_I\_ understood not; then said \_I, O\_ my Lord, what shall be the

end of these things?"--\_Dan.\_, xii, 8. "Here am \_I\_; \_I\_ think \_I\_ am very

good, and \_I\_ am quite sure \_I\_ am very happy, yet \_I\_ never wrote a

treatise in my life."--\_Few Days in Athens\_, p. 127. "Singular, Vocative,

\_O master!\_ Plural, Vocative, \_O masters!\_"--\_Bicknell cor.\_

"I, \_I\_ am he; \_O\_ father! rise, behold

Thy son, with twenty winters now grown old!"

--\_Pope's Odyssey\_, B. 24, l. 375.

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF POETRY.

"Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense,

\_Lie\_ in three words--health, peace, and competence;

\_But\_ health consists with temperance alone,

\_And\_ peace, O Virtue! peace is all thy own."--\_Pope.\_

"Observe the language well in all you write,

\_And\_ swerve not from it in your loftiest flight.

The smoothest verse and the exactest sense

\_Displease\_ us, if ill English give offence:

\_A\_ barbarous phrase no reader can approve;

\_Nor\_ bombast, noise, or affectation love.

In short, without pure language, what you write

\_Can\_ never yield us profit or delight.

Take time for thinking; never work in haste;

\_And\_ value not yourself for writing fast."--\_Dryden.\_

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF EXAMPLES.

"The word \_rather\_ is very properly used to express a small degree or

excess of a quality; as, '\_She\_ is \_rather\_ profuse in her

expenses.'"--\_Murray cor.\_ "\_Neither\_ imports \_not either\_; that is, not

one nor the other: as, '\_Neither\_ of my friends was there.'"--\_Id.\_ "When

we say, '\_He\_ is a tall man,'--'\_This\_ is a fair day,' we make some

reference to the ordinary size of men, and to different weather."--\_Id.\_

"We more readily say, 'A million of men,' than, '\_A\_ thousand of

men.'"--\_Id.\_ "So in the instances, '\_Two\_ and two are four;'--'\_The\_ fifth

and sixth volumes will complete the set of books.'"--\_Id.\_ "The adjective

may frequently either precede or follow the verb: as, '\_The\_ man is

\_happy\_;' or, '\_Happy\_ is the man;'--'The interview was \_delightful\_;' or,

'\_Delightful\_ was the interview.'"--\_Id.\_ "If we say, '\_He\_ writes a

pen;'--'\_They\_ ran the river;'--'\_The\_ tower fell the Greeks;'--'Lambeth is

Westminster \_Abbey\_;'--[we speak absurdly;] and, it is evident, there is a

vacancy which must be filled up by some connecting word: as thus, 'He

writes \_with\_ a pen;'--'\_They\_ ran \_towards\_ the river;'--'\_The\_ tower fell

\_upon\_ the Greeks;'--'Lambeth is \_over against\_ Westminster

\_Abbey\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "Let me repeat it;--\_He\_ only is great, who has the

habits of greatness."--\_Id.\_ "I say not unto thee, \_Until\_ seven times;

but, \_Until\_ seventy times seven."--\_Matt.\_, xviii, 22.

"The Panther smil'd at this; and, '\_When\_,' said she,

'Were those first councils disallow'd by me?'"--\_Dryd. cor.\_

UNDER RULE XV.--OF CHIEF WORDS.

"The supreme council of the nation is called the \_Divan\_."--\_Balbi cor.\_

"The British \_Parliament\_ is composed of \_King, Lords\_, and

\_Commons.\_"--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p. 129; and \_Jaudon's\_, 127. "A popular

orator in the House of Commons has a sort of patent for coining as many new

terms as he pleases."--See \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 169; \_Murray's Gram.\_,

364. "They may all be taken together, as one name; as, '\_The House of

Commons.\_'"--\_Merchant cor.\_ "Intrusted to persons in whom the \_Parliament\_

could confide."--\_Murray cor.\_ "For 'The \_Lords' House\_,' it were certainly

better to say, '\_The House of Lords\_;' and, in stead of 'The \_Commons'\_

vote,' to say. 'The \_vote\_ of the \_Commons.\_'"--\_Id. and Priestley cor.\_

"The \_House\_ of \_Lords\_ were so much influenced by these

reasons."--\_Iidem.\_ "Rhetoricians commonly divide them into two great

classes; \_Figures\_ of \_Words\_, and \_Figures\_ of \_Thought\_. The former,

\_Figures\_ of \_Words\_, are commonly called \_Tropes\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

337. "Perhaps, \_Figures\_ of \_Imagination\_, and \_Figures\_ of \_Passion\_,

might be a more useful distribution."--\_Ib.\_ "Hitherto we have considered

sentences, under the heads of \_Perspicuity, Unity\_, and \_Strength\_."--See

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 356.

"The word is then depos'd; and, in this view,

You rule the \_Scripture\_, not the \_Scripture\_ you."--\_Dryd. cor.\_

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF NEEDLESS CAPITALS.

"Be of good cheer; \_it\_ is I; be not afraid."--FRIENDS' BIBLE, AND SCOTT'S:

\_Matt.\_, xiv, 27. "Between passion and lying, there is not a \_finger's\_

breadth."--\_Mur. cor.\_ "Can our \_solicitude\_ alter the course, or unravel

the intricacy, of human events?" "The last edition was carefully compared

with the \_original manuscript\_."--\_Id.\_ "And the governor asked him,

saying, Art thou the \_king\_ of the Jews?"--SCOTT: \_Matt.\_, xxvii, 11. "Let

them be turned back for a reward of their shame, that say, Aha,

\_aha\_!"--SCOTT ET AL.: \_Ps.\_, lxx, 3. "Let them be desolate for a reward of

their shame, that say unto me, Aha, aha!"--IIDEM: \_Ps.\_, xl, 15. "What

think ye of Christ? whose \_son\_ is he? They say unto him, The \_son\_ of

David. He saith unto them, How then doth David in \_spirit\_ call him

Lord?"--ALGER: \_Matt.\_, xxii, 42, 43. "Among all \_things\_ in the

\_universe\_, direct your \_worship\_ to the \_greatest\_. And which is that?

\_It\_ is that Being \_who manages\_ and \_governs\_ all the rest."--\_Collier's

Antoninus cor.\_ "As for \_modesty\_ and \_good faith, truth\_ and \_justice\_,

they have left this wicked \_world\_ and retired to \_heaven; and\_ now what is

it that can keep you here?"--\_Idem\_.

"If pulse of verse a nation's temper shows,

In keen iambics English metre flows."--\_Brightland cor.\_

PROMISCUOUS CORRECTIONS RESPECTING CAPITALS.

LESSON I.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Come, gentle \_Spring, ethereal\_ mildness, come."--\_Thomson's Seasons\_, p.

29. As, "He is the Cicero of his age;"--"\_He\_ is reading the \_Lives\_ of the

Twelve Cæsars;"--or, if no particular book is meant,--"the \_lives\_ of the

\_twelve\_ Cæsars;" (as it is in \_Fisk's Grammar\_, p. 57;) for the sentence,

as it stands in Murray, is ambiguous. "In the \_History\_ of Henry the

\_Fourth\_, by \_Father\_ Daniel, we are \_surprised\_ at not finding him the

great man."--\_Smollett's Voltaire\_, Vol. v, p. 82. "Do not those same poor

peasants use the \_lever\_, and the \_wedge\_, and many other

instruments?"--\_Harris and Mur. cor.\_ "Arithmetic is excellent for the

gauging of \_liquors; geometry\_, for the measuring of \_estates; astronomy\_,

for the making of \_almanacs\_; and \_grammar\_, perhaps, for the drawing of

\_bonds\_ and \_conveyances\_."--See \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 288. "The [\_History\_

of the] \_Wars\_ of Flanders, written in Latin by Famianus Strada, is a book

of some note."--\_Blair cor.\_ "\_William\_ is a noun. \_Why\_? \_Was\_ is a verb.

\_Why\_? \_A\_ is an article. \_Why\_? \_Very\_ is an adverb. \_Why\_?"

&c.--\_Merchant cor.\_ "In the beginning was the \_Word\_, and that \_Word\_ was

with God, and God was that \_Word\_."--See \_Gospel of John\_, i, 1. "The

\_Greeks\_ are numerous in \_Thessaly, Macedonia, Romelia\_, and

\_Albania\_."--\_Balbi's Geog.\_, p. 360. "He [the Grand Seignior] is styled by

the Turks, Sultan, Mighty, or Padishah, \_Lord\_."--\_Balbi cor.\_ "I will

ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death. O

\_Death\_! I will be thy \_plague\_; O \_Grave\_! I will be thy

destruction."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Silver and \_gold\_ have I none; but such as I

have, give I [unto] thee."--See \_Acts\_, iii, 6. "Return, we beseech thee, O

God of \_hosts\_! look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this

vine."--See \_Psalm\_ lxxx, 14. "In the Attic \_commonwealth\_, it was the

privilege of every citizen to rail in public."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i,

p. 316. "They assert, that in the phrases, 'GIVE me \_that\_,'--'\_This\_ is

John's,' and, '\_Such\_ were \_some\_ of you,'--the words in \_Italics\_ are

pronouns; but that, in the following phrases, they are not pronouns:

'\_This\_ book is instructive;'--'\_Some\_ boys are ingenious;'--'\_My\_ health

is declining;'--'\_Our\_ hearts are deceitful.'"--\_Murray partly

corrected\_.[523] "And the coast bends again to the northwest, as far as

\_Farout Head\_."--\_Geog. cor.\_ "Dr. Webster, and other makers of

spelling-books, very improperly write \_Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday,

Thursday, Friday\_, and \_Saturday\_, without capitals."--\_G. Brown\_. "The

commander in chief of the Turkish navy is styled the \_Capitan

Pacha\_."--\_Balbi cor.\_ "Shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the

\_Father\_ of spirits, and live?"--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Heb.\_, xii, 9. "He [Dr.

Beattie] was more anxious to attain the character of a \_Christian\_

hero."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth,

is \_Mount\_ Zion."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 393. "The Lord is my \_helper\_,

and I will not fear what man shall do unto me."--ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.:

\_Heb.\_, xiii, 6. "Make haste to help me, O LORD my \_salvation\_."--IIDEM:

\_Psalms\_, xxxviii, 22.

"The \_city\_ which \_thou\_ seest, no other deem

Than great and glorious Rome, \_queen\_ of the \_earth\_."

--\_Paradise Regained\_, B. iv.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"That range of hills, known under the general name of \_Mount\_

Jura."--\_Account of Geneva\_. "He rebuked the Red \_Sea\_ also, and it was

dried up."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Ps\_. cvi, 9. "Jesus went unto the \_Mount\_ of

Olives."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Milton's book in reply to the \_Defence of the

King\_, by Salmasius, gained him a thousand pounds from the \_Parliament\_,

and killed his antagonist with vexation."--\_G. B\_. "Mandeville, \_Sir\_ John,

an Englishman famous for his travels, born about 1300, died in 1372."--\_B.

Dict. cor.\_ "Ettrick \_Pen\_, a mountain in Selkirkshire, Scotland, height

2,200 feet."--\_G. Geog. cor.\_ "The coast bends from \_Dungsby Head\_, in a

northwest direction, to the promontory of \_Dunnet Head\_."--\_Id.\_ "General

Gaines ordered a detachment of \_nearly\_ 300 men, under the command of Major

Twiggs, to surround and take an Indian \_village\_, called \_Fowltown\_, about

fourteen miles from \_Fort\_ Scott."--\_Cohen Cor.\_ "And he took the damsel by

the hand, and said unto her, 'Talitha, \_cumi\_.'"--\_Bible Editors cor.\_ "On

religious subjects, a frequent \_adoption of Scripture\_ language is attended

with peculiar force."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Contemplated with gratitude to their

Author, the Giver of all \_good\_."--\_Id.\_ "When he, the Spirit of \_truth\_,

is come, he will guide you into all [the] truth,"--SCOTT, ALGER, ET AL.:

\_John\_, xvi, 13. "See the \_Lecture on Verbs, Rule XV, Note\_ 4th."--\_Fisk

cor.\_ "At the commencement of \_Lecture\_ 2d, I informed you that Etymology

treats, \_thirdly\_, of derivation."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "This 8th \_Lecture\_ is a

very important one."--\_Id.\_ "Now read the \_11th\_ and \_12th\_ lectures, four

or five times over."--\_Id.\_ "In 1752, he [Henry Home] was advanced to the

bench, under the title of \_Lord\_ Kames."--\_Murray cor.\_ "One of his maxims

was, '\_Know\_ thyself.'"--\_Lempriere cor.\_ "Good \_Master\_, what good thing

shall I do, that I may have eternal life?"--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Matt.\_, xix,

16. "His best known works, however, [John Almon's] are, '\_Anecdotes\_ of the

\_Life\_ of the \_Earl\_ of Chatham,' 2 vols. 4to, 3 vols. 8vo; and

'\_Biographical, Literary\_, and \_Political Anecdotes\_ of several of the

\_Most Eminent Persons\_ of the \_Present Age\_; never before printed,' 3 vols.

8vo, 1797."--\_Biog. Dict. cor.\_ "O gentle \_Sleep\_, Nature's soft nurse, how

have I frighted thee?"--SHAK.: \_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 175. "And

\_peace, O Virtue!\_ peace is all thy own."--\_Pope et al. cor.\_

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Fenelon united the characters of a nobleman and a \_Christian\_ pastor. His

book entitled, 'An \_Explication\_ of the Maxims of the Saints, concerning

the \_Interior Life\_,' gave considerable offence to the guardians of

orthodoxy."--\_Murray cor.\_ "When \_Natural Religion\_, who before was only a

spectator, is introduced as speaking by the \_Centurion's\_

voice."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 347. "You cannot deny, that the great

\_Mover\_ and \_Author\_ of nature constantly explaineth himself to the eyes of

men, by the sensible intervention of arbitrary signs, which have no

similitude to, or connexion with, the things signified."--\_Berkley cor.\_

"The name of this letter is \_Double-u\_, its form, that of a double

V."--\_Dr. Wilson cor.\_ "Murray, in his \_Spelling-Book\_, wrote \_Charlestown\_

with a \_hyphen\_ and two capitals."--\_G. Brown.\_ "He also wrote \_European\_

without a capital."--\_Id.\_ "They profess themselves to be \_Pharisees\_, who

are to be heard and not imitated."--\_Calvin cor.\_ "Dr. Webster wrote both

\_Newhaven\_ and \_New York\_ with single capitals."--\_G. Brown\_. "\_Gay Head\_,

the west point of Martha's Vineyard."--\_Williams cor.\_ "Write \_Crab

Orchard, Egg Harbour, Long Island, Perth Amboy, West Hampton, Little

Compton, New Paltz, Crown Point, Fell's Point, Sandy Hook, Port Penn, Port

Royal, Porto Bello\_, and \_Porto Rico\_.'"--\_G. Brown.\_ "Write the names of

the months: \_January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August,

September, October, November, December\_."--\_Id.\_ "Write the following names

and words properly: \_Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday,

Saturn;--Christ, Christian, Christmas, Christendom, Michaelmas, Indian,

Bacchanals;--East Hampton, Omega, Johannes, Aonian, Levitical, Deuteronomy,

European\_."--\_Id.\_

"Eight \_letters\_ in some \_syllables\_ we find,

And no more \_syllables\_ in \_words\_ are join'd."--\_Brightland cor.\_

CHAPTER II.--OF SYLLABLES.

CORRECTIONS OF FALSE SYLLABICATION.

LESSON I.--CONSONANTS.

1. Correction of \_Murray\_, in words of two syllables: civ-il, col-our,

cop-y, dam-ask, doz-en, ev-er, feath-er, gath-er, heav-en, heav-y, hon-ey,

lem-on, lin-en, mead-ow, mon-ey, nev-er, ol-ive, or-ange, oth-er,

pheas-ant, pleas-ant, pun-ish, rath-er, read-y, riv-er, rob-in, schol-ar,

shov-el, stom-ach, tim-id, whith-er.

2. Correction of \_Murray\_, in words of three syllables: ben-e-fit,

cab-i-net, can-is-ter, cat-a-logue, char-ac-ter, char-i-ty, cov-et-ous,

dil-i-gence, dim-i-ty, el-e-phant, ev-i-dent, ev-er-green, friv-o-lous,

gath-er-ing, gen-er-ous, gov-ern-ess, gov-ern-or, hon-est-y, kal-en-dar,

lav-en-der, lev-er-et, lib-er-al, mem-or-y, min-is-ter, mod-est-ly,

nov-el-ty, no-bod-y, par-a-dise, pov-er-ty, pres-ent-ly, prov-i-dence,

prop-er-ly, pris-on-er, rav-en-ous, sat-is-fy, sev-er-al, sep-ar-ate,

trav-el-ler, vag-a-bond;--con-sid-er, con-tin-ue, de-liv-er, dis-cov-er,

dis-fig-ure, dis-hon-est, dis-trib-ute, in-hab-it, me-chan-ic,

what-ev-er;--rec-om-mend, ref-u-gee, rep-ri-mand.

3. Correction of \_Murray\_, in words of four syllables: cat-er-pil-lar,

char-i-ta-ble, dil-i-gent-ly, mis-er-a-ble, prof-it-a-ble,

tol-er-a-ble;--be-nev-o-lent, con-sid-er-ate, di-min-u-tive, ex-per-i-ment,

ex-trav-a-gant, in-hab-i-tant, no-bil-i-ty, par-tic-u-lar, pros-per-i-ty,

ri-dic-u-lous, sin-cer-i-ty;--dem-on-stra-tion, ed-u-ca-tion, em-u-la-tion,

ep-i-dem-ic, mal-e-fac-tor, man-u-fac-ture, mem-o-ran-dum, mod-er-a-tor,

par-a-lyt-ic, pen-i-ten-tial, res-ig-na-tion, sat-is-fac-tion,

sem-i-co-lon.

4. Correction of \_Murray\_, in words of five syllables: a-bom-i-na-ble,

a-poth-e-ca-ry, con-sid-er-a-ble, ex-plan-a-to-ry, pre-par-a-to-ry;--

ac-a-dem-i-cal, cu-ri-os-i-ty, ge-o-graph-i-cal, man-u-fac-tor-y,

sat-is-fac-tor-y, mer-i-to-ri-ous;--char-ac-ter-is-tic, ep-i-gram-mat-ic,

ex-per-i-ment-al, pol-y-syl-la-ble, con-sid-er-a-tion.

5. Correction of \_Murray\_, in the division of proper names: Hel-en,

Leon-ard, Phil-ip, Rob-ert, Hor-ace, Thom-as;--Car-o-line, Cath-a-rine,

Dan-i-el, Deb-o-rah, Dor-o-thy, Fred-er-ick, Is-a-bel, Jon-a-than, Lyd-i-a,

Nich-o-las, Ol-i-ver, Sam-u-el, Sim-e-on, Sol-o-mon, Tim-o-thy,

Val-en-tine;--A-mer-i-ca, Bar-thol-o-mew, E-liz-a-beth, Na-than-i-el,

Pe-nel-o-pe, The-oph-i-lus.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

1. Correction of \_Webster\_, by Rule 1st:--ca-price, e-steem, dis-e-steem,

o-blige;--a-zure, ma-tron, pa-tron, pha-lanx, si-ren, trai-tor, tren-cher,

bar-ber, bur-nish, gar-nish, tar-nish, var-nish, mar-ket, mus-ket,

pam-phlet;--bra-ver-y, kna-ver-y, sla-ver-y, e-ven-ing, sce-ner-y,

bri-ber-y, ni-ce-ty, chi-ca-ner-y, ma-chin-er-y, im-a-ger-y;--a-sy-lum,

ho-ri-zon,--fin-an-cier, her-o-ism, sar-do-nyx, scur-ri-lous,--co-me-di-an,

pos-te-ri-or.

2. Correction of \_Webster\_, by Rule 2d: o-yer, fo-li-o, ge-ni-al, ge-ni-us,

ju-ni-or, sa-ti-ate, vi-ti-ate;--am-bro-si-a, cha-me-\_le\_-on, par-he-li-on,

con-ve-ni-ent, in-ge-ni-ous, om-nis-ci-ence, pe-cu-li-ar, so-ci-a-ble,

par-ti-al-i-ty, pe-cu-ni-a-ry;--an-nun-ci-ate, e-nun-ci-ate, ap-pre-ci-ate,

as-so-ci-ate, ex-pa-ti-ate, in-gra-ti-ate, in-i-ti-ate, li-cen-ti-ate,

ne-go-ti-ate, no-vi-ti-ate, of-fi-ci-ate, pro-pi-ti-ate, sub-stan-ti-ate.

3. Correction of \_Cobb\_ and \_Webster\_, by each other, under Rule 3d:

"dress-er, hast-y, past-ry, seiz-ure, roll-er, jest-er, weav-er, vamp-er,

hand-y, dross-y, gloss-y, mov-er, mov-ing, ooz-y, full-er, trust-y,

weight-y, nois-y, drows-y, swarth-y."--\_Webster\_. Again: "east-ern, ful-ly,

pul-let, ril-let, scant-y, need-y."--\_Cobb.\_

4. Correction of \_Webster\_ and \_Cobb\_, under Rule 4th: a-wry, a-thwart´,

pros-pect´-ive, pa-ren´-the-sis, re-sist-i-bil´-i-ty, hem-i-spher´-ic,

mon´-o-stich, hem´-i-stich, to´-wards.

5. Correction of the words under Rule 5th; Eng-land, an oth-er,[524]

Beth-es´-da, Beth-ab´-a-ra.

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

1. Correction of \_Cobb\_, by Rule 3d: bend-er, bless-ing, brass-y, chaff-y,

chant-er, clasp-er, craft-y, curd-y, fend-er, film-y, fust-y, glass-y,

graft-er, grass-y, gust-y, hand-ed, mass-y, musk-y, rust-y, swell-ing,

tell-er, test-ed, thrift-y, vest-ure.

2. Corrections of \_Webster\_, mostly by Rule 1st: bar-ber, bur-nish,

bris-ket, can-ker, char-ter, cuc-koo, fur-nish, gar-nish, guilt-y, han-ker,

lus-ty, por-tal, tar-nish, tes-tate, tes-ty, trai-tor, trea-ty, var-nish,

ves-tal, di-ur-nal, e-ter-nal, in-fer-nal, in-ter-nal, ma-ter-nal,

noc-tur-nal, pa-ter-nal.

3. Corrections of \_Webster\_, mostly by Rule 1st: ar-mor-y, ar-ter-y,

\_butch-er-y\_, cook-er-y, eb-on-y, em-er-y, ev-er-y, fel-on-y, fop-per-y,

frip-per-y, gal-ler-y, his-tor-y, liv-er-y, lot-ter-y, mock-er-y,

\_mys-ter-y\_,[525] nun-ner-y, or-rer-y, pil-lor-y, quack-er-y, sor-cer-y,

witch-er-y.

4. Corrections of \_Cobb\_, mostly by Rule 1st: an-kle, bas-ket, blan-ket,

buc-kle, cac-kle, cran-kle, crin-kle, Eas-ter, fic-kle, frec-kle, knuc-kle,

mar-ket, mon-key, por-tress, pic-kle, poul-tice, pun-cheon, quad-rant,

quad-rate, squad-ron, ran-kle, shac-kle, sprin-kle, tin-kle, twin-kle,

wrin-kle.

5. Corrections of \_Emerson\_, by Rules 1st and 3d: as-cribe, blan-dish,

branch-y, cloud-y, dust-y, drear-y, e-ven-ing, fault-y, filth-y, frost-y,

gaud-y, gloom-y, health-y, heark-en, heart-y, hoar-y, leak-y, loun-ger,

marsh-y, might-y, milk-y, naught-y, pass-ing, pitch-er, read-y, rock-y,

speed-y, stead-y, storm-y, thirst-y, thorn-y, trust-y, vest-ry, west-ern,

wealth-y.

CHAPTER III.--OF WORDS.

CORRECTIONS RESPECTING THE FIGURE, OR FORM, OF WORDS.

RULE I.--COMPOUNDS.

"Professing to imitate Timon, the \_manhater\_."--\_Goldsmith corrected\_. "Men

load hay with a \_pitchfork.\_"--\_Webster cor.\_ "A \_peartree\_ grows from the

seed of a pear."--\_Id.\_ "A \_toothbrush\_ is good to brush your

teeth."--\_Id.\_ "The mail is opened at the \_post-office\_."--\_Id.\_ "The error

seems to me \_twofold\_."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "To \_preëngage\_ means to engage

\_beforehand\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "It is a mean act to deface the figures on a

\_milestone\_."--\_Id.\_ "A grange is a farm, \_with its farm- house\_."--\_Id.\_

"It is no more right to steal apples or \_watermelons\_, than [to steal]

money."--\_Id.\_ "The awl is a tool used by shoemakers and

\_harness-makers\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Twenty-five\_ cents are equal to one quarter of

a dollar."--\_Id.\_ "The \_blowing-up\_ of the Fulton at New York, was a

terrible disaster."--\_Id.\_ "The elders also, and the \_bringers-up\_ of the

children, sent to Jehu."--ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: \_2 Kings\_, x, 5. "Not

with \_eyeservice\_ as \_menpleasers\_."--\_Col.\_, iii, 22. "A \_good-natured\_

and equitable construction of cases."--\_Ash cor.\_ "And purify your hearts,

ye \_double-minded\_."--\_James\_, iv, 8. "It is a \_mean-spirited\_ action to

steal; i.e., To steal is a \_mean-spirited\_ action."--\_A. Murray cor.\_

"There is, indeed, one form of orthography which is \_akin\_ to the

subjunctive mood of the Latin tongue."--\_Booth cor.\_ "To bring him into

nearer connexion with real and \_everyday\_ life."--\_Philological Museum\_,

Vol. i, p. 459. "The \_commonplace\_, stale declamation of its revilers would

be silenced."--\_Id. cor.\_ "She [Cleopatra] formed a very singular and

\_unheard-of\_ project."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "He [William Tell] had many

vigilant, though \_feeble-talented\_ and \_mean-spirited\_ enemies."--\_R. Vaux

cor.\_ "These \_old-fashioned\_ people would level our psalmody,"

&c.--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "This \_slow-shifting\_ scenery in the theatre of

harmony."--\_Id.\_ "So we are assured from Scripture \_itself\_."--\_Harris

cor.\_ "The mind, being disheartened, then betakes \_itself\_ to

trifling."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "\_Whosesoever\_ sins ye remit, they are

remitted unto them."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Tarry we \_ourselves\_ how we will."--\_W.

Walker cor.\_ "Manage your credit so, that you need neither swear

\_yourself\_, nor seek a voucher."--\_Collier cor.\_ "Whereas song never

conveys any of the \_abovenamed\_ sentiments."--\_Dr. Rush cor.\_ "I go on

\_horseback\_."--\_Guy cor.\_ "This requires purity, in opposition to

barbarous, obsolete, or \_new-coined words\_."--\_Adam cor.\_ "May the

\_ploughshare\_ shine."--\_White cor.\_ "\_Whichever\_ way we consider

it."--\_Locke cor.\_

"\_Where'er\_ the silent \_e\_ a \_place\_ obtains,

The \_voice\_ foregoing, \_length\_ and softness gains."--\_Brightland cor.\_

RULE II.--SIMPLES.

"It qualifies any of the four parts of speech \_above named\_."--\_Kirkham

cor.\_ "After \_a while\_ they put us out among the rude multitude."--\_Fox

cor.\_ "It would be a \_shame\_, if your mind should falter and give

in."--\_Collier cor.\_ "They stared \_a while\_ in silence one upon \_an

other\_."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "After passion has for \_a while\_ exercised its

tyrannical sway."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Though set within the same \_general

frame\_ of intonation."--\_Rush cor.\_ "Which do not carry any of the natural

\_vocal signs\_ of expression."--\_Id.\_ "The measurable \_constructive powers\_

of a few associable constituents."--\_Id.\_ "Before each accented syllable or

emphatic \_monosyllabic word\_."--\_Id.\_ "One should not think too favourably

of \_one's self\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 154. "Know ye not your \_own

selves\_, how that Jesus Christ is in you?"--\_2 Cor.\_, xiii, 5. "I judge not

my \_own self\_, for I know nothing of my \_own self\_."--See \_1 Cor.\_, iv, 3.

"Though they were in such a rage, I desired them to tarry \_a

while\_."--\_Josephus cor.\_ "\_A, in stead\_ of \_an\_, is now used before words

beginning with \_u\_ long."--\_Murray cor.\_ "John will have earned his wages

\_by\_ next \_new year's\_ day."--\_Id.\_ "A \_new year's gift\_ is a present made

on the first day of the year."--\_Johnson et al. cor.\_ "When he sat on the

throne, distributing \_new year's gifts\_."--\_Id.\_ "St. Paul admonishes

Timothy to refuse \_old wives' fables\_."--See \_1 Tim.\_, iv, 7. "The world,

take it \_all together\_, is but one."--\_Collier cor.\_ "In writings of this

stamp, we must accept of sound \_in stead\_ of sense."--\_Murray cor.\_ "A

\_male\_ child, a \_female\_ child; \_male\_ descendants, \_female\_

descendants."--\_Goldsbury et al. cor.\_ "\_Male\_ servants, \_female\_ servants;

\_male\_ relations, \_female\_ relations."--\_Felton cor.\_

"Reserved and cautious, with no partial aim,

My muse e'er sought to blast \_an other's\_ fame."--\_Lloyd cor.\_

RULE III.--THE SENSE.

"Our discriminations of this matter have been but \_four-footed\_

instincts."--\_Rush cor.\_ "He is in the right, (says Clytus,) not to bear

\_free-born\_ men at his table."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "To the \_short-seeing\_ eye

of man, the progress may appear little."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "Knowledge and

virtue are, emphatically, the \_stepping-stones\_ to individual

distinction."--\_Town cor.\_ "A \_tin-peddler\_ will sell tin vessels as he

travels."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The beams of a \_wooden house\_ are held up by the

posts and joists."--\_Id.\_ "What you mean by \_future-tense\_ adjective, I can

easily understand."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "The town has been for several days very

\_well-behaved\_."--\_Spectator cor.\_ "A \_rounce\_ is the handle of a

\_printing-press\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The phraseology [which] we call

\_thee-and-thouing\_ [or, better, \_thoutheeing\_,] is not in so common use

with us, as the \_tutoyant\_ among the French."--\_Walker cor.\_ "Hunting and

other \_outdoor\_ sports, are generally pursued."--\_Balbi cor.\_ "Come unto

me, all ye that labor and are \_heavy-laden\_."--\_Scott et al. cor.\_ "God so

loved the world, that he gave his \_only-begotten\_ Son to save it."--See

ALGER'S BIBLE, and FRIENDS': \_John\_, iii, 16. "Jehovah is a

\_prayer-hearing\_ God: Nineveh repented, and was spared."--\_Observer cor.\_

"These are \_well-pleasing\_ to God, in all ranks and relations."--\_Barclay

cor.\_ "Whosoever cometh \_anything\_ near unto the tabernacle."--\_Bible cor.\_

"The words coalesce, when they have a \_long-established\_

association."--\_Mur. cor.\_ "Open to me the gates of righteousness: I will

go \_into\_ them."--MODERN BIBLE: \_Ps\_. cxviii, 19. "He saw an angel of God

coming \_in to\_ him."--\_Acts\_, x, 3. "The consequences of any action are to

be considered in a \_twofold\_ light."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "We commonly write

\_twofold, threefold, fourfold\_, and so on up to \_tenfold\_, without a

hyphen; and, after that, we use one."--\_G. Brown\_. "When the first mark is

going off, he cries, \_Turn\_! the \_glassholder\_ answers, \_Done\_!"--\_Bowditch

cor.\_ "It is a kind of familiar \_shaking-hands\_ (or \_shaking of hands\_)

with all the vices."--\_Maturin cor.\_ "She is a \_good-natured\_

woman;"--"James is \_self-opinionated\_;"--"He is \_broken-hearted\_."--\_Wright

cor.\_ "These three examples apply to the \_present-tense\_ construction

only."--\_Id.\_ "So that it was like a game of \_hide-and-go-seek\_."--\_Gram.

cor.\_

"That lowliness is young ambition's ladder,

Whereto the \_climber-upward\_ turns his face."--\_Shak.\_

RULE IV.--ELLIPSES.

"This building serves yet for a \_schoolhouse\_ and a meeting-house."--\_G.

Brown\_. "Schoolmasters and \_schoolmistresses, if\_ honest friends, are to be

encouraged."--\_Discip. cor.\_ "We never assumed to ourselves a

\_faith-making\_ or a \_worship-making\_ power."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "\_Potash\_ and

\_pearlash\_ are made from common ashes."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Both the

\_ten-syllable\_ and the \_eight-syllable\_ verses are iambics."--\_Blair cor.\_

"I say to myself, thou \_say'st to thyself\_, he says to \_himself\_,

&c."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "Or those who have esteemed themselves \_skillful\_,

have tried for the mastery in \_two-horse\_ or \_four-horse\_ chariots."--\_Ware

cor.\_ "I remember him barefooted and \_bareheaded\_, running through the

streets."--\_Edgeworth cor.\_ "Friends have the entire control of the

\_schoolhouse\_ and \_dwelling-house\_." Or:--"of the \_schoolhouses\_ and

\_dwelling-houses\_" Or:--"of the \_schoolhouse\_ and the \_dwelling-houses\_"

Or:--"of the \_schoolhouses\_ and the \_dwelling-house\_." Or:--"of the

\_school\_, and \_of the dwelling-houses\_." [For the sentence here to be

corrected is so ambiguous, that any of these may have been the meaning

intended by it.]--\_The Friend cor.\_ "The meeting is held at the

\_first-mentioned\_ place in \_Firstmonth\_; at the \_last-mentioned\_, in

\_Secondmonth\_; and so on."--\_Id.\_ "Meetings for worship are held, at the

same hour, on \_Firstday\_ and \_Fourthday\_." Or:--"on \_Firstdays\_ and

\_Fourthdays\_."--\_Id.\_ "Every part of it, inside and \_outside\_, is covered

with gold leaf."--\_Id.\_ "The Eastern Quarterly Meeting is held on the last

\_Seventhday\_ in \_Secondmonth, Fifthmonth, Eighthmonth\_, and

\_Eleventhmonth\_."--\_Id.\_ "Trenton Preparative Meeting is held on the third

\_Fifthday\_ in each month, at ten o'clock; meetings for worship [are held,]

at the same hour, on \_Firstdays\_ and \_Fifthdays\_."--\_Id.\_ "Ketch, a vessel

with two masts, a \_mainmast\_ and \_a mizzenmast\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "I only

mean to suggest a doubt, whether nature has enlisted herself [either] as a

\_Cis-Atlantic\_ or [as a] \_Trans-Atlantic\_ partisan."--\_Jefferson cor.\_ "By

large hammers, like those used for \_paper-mills\_ and \_fulling-mills\_, they

beat their hemp."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "ANT-HILL, or ANT-HILLOCK, n. A small

\_protuberance\_ of earth, \_formed\_ by ants, \_for\_ their \_habitation\_."--

\_Id.\_ "It became necessary to substitute simple indicative terms called

\_pronames\_ or \_pronouns\_."

"Obscur'd, where highest woods, impenetrable

To \_light of star or sun\_, their umbrage spread."--\_Milton cor.\_

RULE V.--THE HYPHEN.

"\_Evil-thinking\_; a noun, compounded of the noun \_evil\_ and the imperfect

participle \_thinking\_; singular number;" &c.--\_Churchill cor.\_

"\_Evil-speaking\_; a noun, compounded of the noun \_evil\_ and the imperfect

participle \_speaking\_."--\_Id.\_ "I am a tall, \_broad-shouldered\_, impudent,

black fellow."--\_Spect\_, or \_Joh. cor.\_ "Ingratitude! thou \_marble-hearted\_

fiend."--\_Shak\_. or \_Joh. cor.\_ "A popular \_license\_ is indeed the

\_many-headed\_ tyranny."--\_Sydney\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "He from the

\_many-peopled\_ city flies."--\_Sandys\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "He \_many-languaged\_

nations has surveyed."--\_Pope\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "The \_horse-cucumber\_ is the

large green cucumber, and the best for the table."--\_Mort\_. or \_Joh. cor.\_

"The bird of night did sit, even at \_noon-day\_, upon the

market-place."--\_Shak\_. or \_Joh. cor.\_ "These make a general

\_gaol-delivery\_ of souls not for punishment."--\_South\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "Thy

air, thou other \_gold-bound\_ brow, is like the first."--\_Shak\_. or \_Joh.

cor.\_ "His person was deformed to the highest degree; \_flat-nosed\_ and

\_blobber-lipped\_."--\_L'Estr.\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "He that defraudeth the

labourer of his hire, is a \_blood-shedder\_."--\_Ecclus.\_, xxxiv, 22.

"\_Bloody-minded, adj.\_, from \_bloody\_ and \_mind\_; Cruel, inclined to

\_bloodshed\_."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "\_Blunt-witted\_ lord, ignoble in

demeanour."--\_Shak\_. or \_Joh. cor.\_ "A young fellow, with a \_bob-wig\_ and a

black silken bag tied to it."--\_Spect\_. or \_Joh. cor.\_ "I have seen enough

to confute all the \_bold-faced\_ atheists of this age."--\_Bramhall\_ or \_Joh.

cor.\_ "Before \_milk-white\_, now purple with love's wound."--\_Joh. Dict., w.

Bolt\_. "For what else is a \_red-hot\_ iron than fire? and what else is a

burning coal than \_red-hot\_ wood?"--\_Newton\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "\_Poll-evil\_ is

a large swelling, inflammation, or imposthume, in the horse's poll, or nape

of the neck, just between the ears."--\_Far\_. or \_Joh. cor.\_

"Quick-witted, \_brazen-fac'd\_, with fluent tongues,

Patient of labours, and dissembling wrongs."--\_Dryden cor.\_

RULE VI.--NO HYPHEN.

"From his fond parent's eye a \_teardrop\_ fell."--\_Snelling cor.\_ "How

great, poor \_jackdaw\_, would thy sufferings be!"--\_Id.\_ "Placed, like a

\_scarecrow\_ in a field of corn."--\_Id.\_ "Soup for the almshouse at a cent a

quart."--\_Id.\_ "Up into the \_watchtower\_ get, and see all things despoiled

of fallacies."--\_Donne\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "In the \_daytime\_ she [Fame] sitteth

in a \_watchtower\_, and flieth most by night."--\_Bacon\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "The

moral is the first business of the poet, as being the \_groundwork\_ of his

instruction."--\_Dryd.\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "Madam's own hand the \_mousetrap\_

baited."--\_Prior\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "By the sinking of the \_airshaft\_, the air

\_has\_ liberty to circulate."--\_Ray\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "The multiform and

amazing operations of the \_airpump\_ and the loadstone."--\_Watts\_ or \_Joh.

cor.\_ "Many of the \_firearms\_ are named from animals."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "You

might have trussed him and all his apparel into an \_eelskin\_"--\_Shak\_. or

\_Joh. cor.\_ "They may serve as \_landmarks\_, to show what lies in the direct

way of truth."--\_Locke\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "A \_packhorse\_ is driven constantly

in a narrow lane and dirty road."--\_Locke\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "A \_millhorse\_,

still bound to go in one circle."--\_Sidney\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_ "Of singing

birds, they have linnets, \_goldfinches\_, ruddocks, \_Canary birds,

blackbirds\_, thrushes, and divers others."--\_Carew\_ or \_Joh. cor.\_

"Cartridge, a case of paper or parchment filled with \_gunpowder\_; [or,

rather, containing the \_entire charge\_ of a gun]."--\_Joh. cor.\_

"Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night,

The time of night when Troy was set on fire,

The time when \_screechowls\_ cry, and \_bandogs\_ howl."

SHAKSPEARE: \_in Johnson's Dict., w. Screechowl\_.

PROMISCUOUS CORRECTIONS IN THE FIGURE OF WORDS.

LESSON I.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"They that live in \_glass houses\_, should not throw stones."--\_Adage\_. "If

a man profess Christianity in any manner or form \_whatsoever\_."--\_Watts

cor.\_ "For Cassius is \_aweary\_ of the world." Better: "For Cassius is

\_weary\_ of the world."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "By the \_coming-together\_ of more, the

chains were fastened on."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "Unto the \_carrying-away\_ of

Jerusalem captive in the fifth month."--\_Bible cor.\_ "And the

\_goings-forth\_ of the border shall be to Zedad."--\_Id.\_ "And the

\_goings-out\_ of it shall be at \_Hazar Enan\_."--See \_Walker's Key\_ "For the

\_taking-place\_ of effects, in a certain particular series."--\_West cor.\_

"The \_letting-go\_ of which was the \_occasion\_ of all that

corruption."--\_Owen cor.\_ "A \_falling-off\_ at the end, is always

injurious."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "As all \_holdings-forth\_ were courteously

supposed to be trains of reasoning."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "Whose

\_goings-forth\_ have been from of old, from everlasting."--\_Bible cor.\_

"\_Sometimes\_ the adjective becomes a substantive."--\_Bradley cor.\_ "It is

very plain, \_that\_ I consider man as visited \_anew\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Nor

do I \_anywhere say\_, as he falsely insinuates."--\_Id.\_ "\_Everywhere,

anywhere, elsewhere, somewhere, nowhere\_"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i, p.

115. "The world hurries off apace, and time is like a rapid

river."--\_Collier cor.\_ "But to \_new-model\_ the paradoxes of ancient

skepticism."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "The \_southeast\_ winds from the ocean

invariably produce rain."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Northwest\_ winds from the

\_highlands\_ produce cold clear weather."--\_Id.\_ "The greatest part of such

tables would be of little use to \_Englishmen\_."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The

\_ground-floor\_ of the east wing of \_Mulberry-street\_ meeting-house was

filled."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "Prince Rupert's Drop. This singular production

is made at the \_glasshouses\_."--\_Barnes cor.\_

"The lights and shades, whose \_well-accorded\_ strife

Gives all the strength and colour of our life."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"In the \_twenty-seventh\_ year of Asa king of Judah, did Zimri reign seven

days in Tirzah."--\_Bible cor.\_ "In the \_thirty-first\_ year of Asa king of

Judah, began Omri to reign over Israel."--\_Id.\_ "He cannot so deceive

himself as to fancy that he is able to do a \_rule-of-three\_ sum."

Better--"\_a sum in the rule of three\_."--\_Qr. Rev. cor.\_ "The best cod are

those known under the name of \_Isle-of-Shoals dun-fish\_."--\_Balbi cor.\_

"The soldiers, with \_downcast eyes\_, seemed to beg for mercy."--\_Goldsmith

cor.\_ "His head was covered with a coarse, \_wornout\_ piece of

cloth."--\_Id.\_ "Though they had lately received a reinforcement of a

thousand \_heavy-armed\_ Spartans."--\_Id.\_ "But he laid them by unopened;

and, with a smile, said, 'Business \_to-morrow\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "Chester \_Monthly

Meeting\_ is held at \_Moorestown, on\_ the \_Thirdday\_ following the second

\_Secondday\_"--\_The Friend cor.\_ "Eggharbour \_Monthly Meeting\_ is held \_on\_

the first \_Secondday\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Little-Eggharbour\_ Monthly Meeting is held

at Tuckerton on the second \_Fifthday\_ in each month."--\_Id.\_ "At three

o'clock, on \_Firstday\_ morning, the 24th of \_Eleventhmonth\_, 1834,"

&c.--\_Id.\_ "In less than \_one fourth\_ part of the time usually

devoted."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The pupil will not have occasion to use it \_one

tenth\_ part \_so\_ much."--\_Id.\_ "The painter dips his \_paintbrush\_ in paint,

to paint the carriage."--\_Id.\_ "In an ancient English version of the \_New

Testament\_."--\_Id.\_ "The little boy was \_bareheaded\_."--\_Red Book cor.\_

"The man, being a little \_short-sighted\_, did not immediately know

him."--\_Id.\_ "\_Picture-frames\_ are gilt with gold."--\_Id.\_ "The

\_parkkeeper\_ killed one of the deer."--\_Id.\_ "The fox was killed near the

\_brickkiln\_."--\_Id.\_ "Here comes Esther, with her \_milkpail\_"--\_Id.\_ "The

\_cabinet-maker\_ would not tell us."--\_Id.\_ "A fine \_thorn-hedge\_ extended

along the edge of the hill."--\_Id.\_ "If their private interests should be

\_everso\_ little affected."--\_Id.\_ "Unios are \_fresh-water\_ shells, vulgarly

called \_fresh-water\_ clams."--\_Id.\_

"Did not each poet mourn his luckless doom,

Jostled by pedants out of \_elbow-room\_."--\_Lloyd cor.\_

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"The captive hovers \_a while\_ upon the sad remains."--\_Johnson cor.\_

"Constantia saw that the \_hand-writing\_ agreed with the contents of the

letter."--\_Id.\_ "They have put me in a silk \_night-gown\_, and a gaudy

\_foolscap\_"--\_Id.\_ "Have you no more manners than to rail at Hocus, that

has saved that clod-pated, \_numb-skulled ninny-hammer\_ of yours from ruin,

and all his family?"--\_Id.\_ "A noble, (that is, six shillings and \_eight

pence\_,) is [paid], and usually hath been paid."--\_Id.\_ "The king of birds,

\_thick-feathered\_, and with full-summed wings, fastened his talons east and

west."--\_Id.\_ "\_To-morrow\_. This--supposing \_morrow\_ to mean \_morning\_, as

it did originally--is an idiom of the same kind as \_to-night,

to-day\_."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "To-day goes away, and to-morrow comes."--\_Id.\_

"Young children, who are tried in \_Gocarts\_, to keep their steps from

sliding."--\_Id.\_ "Which, followed well, would demonstrate them but

\_goers-backward\_"--\_Id.\_ "Heaven's \_golden-winged\_ herald late he saw, to a

poor Galilean virgin sent."--\_Id.\_ "My \_pent-house eyebrows\_ and my shaggy

beard offend your sight."--\_Id.\_ "The hungry lion would fain have been

dealing with good \_horseflesh\_."--\_Id.\_ "A \_broad-brimmed\_ hat ensconsed

each careful head."--\_Snelling cor.\_ "With harsh vibrations of his

\_three-stringed lute\_."--\_Id.\_ "They magnify a \_hundred-fold\_ an author's

merit."--\_Id.\_ "I'll nail them fast to some \_oft-opened\_ door."--\_Id.\_

"Glossed over only with \_saintlike\_ show, still thou art bound to

vice."--\_Johnson's Dict., w. Saintlike\_. "Take of aqua-fortis two ounces,

of \_quicksilver\_ two drachms."--\_Id. cor.\_ "This rainbow never appears but

when it rains in the \_sunshine\_."--\_Id. cor.\_

"Not but there are, who merit other palms;

Hopkins and \_Sternhold\_ glad the heart with \_psalms\_."--\_Pope\_.

CHAPTER IV.--OF SPELLING.

CORRECTIONS OF FALSE SPELLING.

RULE I.--FINAL F, L, OR S.

"He \_will\_ observe the moral law, in \_his\_ conduct."--\_Webster corrected\_.

"A \_cliff\_ is a steep bank, or a precipitous rock."--\_Walker cor.\_ "A needy

man's budget is \_full\_ of schemes."--\_Maxim cor.\_ "Few large publications,

in this country, \_will\_ pay a printer."--\_N. Webster cor.\_ "I \_shall\_, with

cheerfulness, resign my other papers to oblivion."--\_Id.\_ "The proposition

\_was\_ suspended \_till\_ the next session of the legislature."--\_Id.\_

"Tenants for life \_will\_ make the most of lands for themselves."--\_Id.\_

"While every thing \_is\_ left to lazy negroes, a state \_will\_ never be

\_well\_ cultivated."--\_Id.\_ "The heirs of the original proprietors \_still\_

hold the soil."--\_Id.\_ "Say my annual profit on money loaned \_shall\_ be

six per cent."--\_Id.\_ "No man would submit to the drudgery of business, if

he could make money \_as\_ fast by lying \_still\_."--\_Id.\_ "A man may \_as

well\_ feed himself with a bodkin, \_as\_ with a knife of the present

fashion."--\_Id.\_ "The clothes \_will\_ be ill washed, the food \_will\_ be

badly cooked; you \_will\_ be ashamed of your wife, if she \_is\_ not ashamed

of herself."--\_Id.\_ "He \_will\_ submit to the laws of the state while he

\_is\_ a member of it."--\_Id.\_ "But \_will\_ our sage writers on law forever

think by tradition?"--\_Id.\_ "Some \_still\_ retain a sovereign power in their

territories."--\_Id.\_ "They \_sell\_ images, prayers, the sound of \_bells\_,

remission of sins, &c."--\_Perkins cor.\_ "And the law had sacrifices offered

every day, for the sins of \_all\_ the people."--\_Id.\_ "Then it may please

the Lord, they \_shall\_ find it to be a restorative."--\_Id.\_ "Perdition is

repentance put \_off till\_ a future day."--\_Maxim cor.\_ "The angels of God,

who \_will\_ good and cannot \_will\_ evil, have nevertheless perfect liberty

of \_will\_."--\_Perkins cor.\_ "Secondly, this doctrine cuts off the excuse of

\_all\_ sin."--\_Id.\_ "\_Knell\_, the sound of a bell rung at a

funeral."--\_Dict. cor.\_

"If gold with \_dross\_ or grain with \_chaff\_ you find,

Select--and leave the \_chaff\_ and \_dross\_ behind."--\_G. Brown\_.

RULE II.--OTHER FINALS.

"The \_mob\_ hath many heads, but no brains."--\_Maxim cor.\_ "\_Clam\_; to clog

with any glutinous or viscous matter."--See \_Webster's Dict.\_ "\_Whur\_; to

pronounce the letter \_r\_ with too much force." "\_Flip\_; a mixed liquor,

consisting of beer and spirit sweetened." "\_Glyn\_; a hollow between two

mountains, a glen."--See \_Walker's Dict.\_ "\_Lam\_, or \_belam\_; to beat

soundly with a cudgel or bludgeon."--See \_Red Book\_. "\_Bun\_; a small cake,

a simnel, a kind of sweet bread."--See \_Webster's Dict.\_ "\_Brunet\_, or

\_Brunette\_; a woman with a brown complexion."--See \_ib.\_, and \_Scott's

Dict.\_ "\_Wadset\_; an ancient tenure or lease of land in the Highlands of

Scotland."--\_Webster cor.\_ "To \_dod\_ sheep, is to cut the wool away about

their tails."--\_Id.\_ "In aliquem arietare. \_Cic.\_ To run full \_butt\_ at

one."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "Neither your policy nor your temper would \_permit\_

you to kill me."--\_Phil. Mu. cor.\_ "And \_admit\_ none but his own offspring

to fulfill them."--\_Id.\_ "The \_sum\_ of all this dispute is, that some make

them Participles."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "As the \_whistling\_ winds, the \_buzz\_

and \_hum\_ of insects, the \_hiss\_ of serpents, the \_crash\_ of falling

timber."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 331. "\_Van\_; to winnow, or a fan for

winnowing."--See \_Scott\_. "Creatures that \_buzz\_, are very commonly such as

will sting."--\_G. Brown\_. "\_Beg\_, buy, or borrow; \_but\_ beware how yon

find."--\_Id.\_ "It is better to have a house to \_let\_, than a house to

\_get\_." "Let not your tongue \_cut\_ your throat."--\_Precept cor.\_ "A little

\_wit\_ will save a fortunate man."--\_Adage cor.\_ "There is many a \_slip\_

'twixt the cup and the \_lip\_."--\_Id.\_ "Mothers' darlings make but \_milksop\_

heroes."--\_Id.\_ "One eye-witness is worth \_ten\_ hearsays."--\_Id.\_

"The judge shall \_job\_, the bishop bite the town,

And mighty dukes pack cards for half a crown."

POPE: \_in Johnson's Dict., w. Job\_.

RULE III.--DOUBLING.

"Friz, to curl; \_frizzed\_, curled; \_frizzing\_, curling."--\_Webster cor.\_

"The commercial interests served to foster the principles of

\_Whiggism\_."--\_Payne cor.\_ "Their extreme indolence \_shunned\_ every species

of labour."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "In poverty and \_strippedness\_, they attend

their little meetings."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "In guiding and \_controlling\_

the power you have thus obtained."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "I began, Thou

\_begannest\_ or \_beganst\_, He began, &c."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "Why does

\_began\_ change its ending; as, I began, Thou \_begannest\_ or

\_beganst\_?"--\_Id.\_ "Truth and conscience cannot be \_controlled\_ by any

methods of coercion."--\_Hints cor.\_ "Dr. Webster \_nodded\_, when he wrote

\_knit, knitter\_, and \_knitting-needle\_, without doubling the \_t\_."--\_G.

Brown\_. "A wag should have wit enough to know when other wags are

\_quizzing\_ him." "\_Bonny\_; handsome, beautiful, merry."--\_Walker cor.\_

"\_Coquettish; practising\_ coquetry; after the manner of a jilt."--See

\_Worcester\_. "\_Pottage\_; a species of food made of meat and vegetables

boiled to softness in water."--See \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "\_Pottager\_; (from

\_pottage\_;) a porringer, a small vessel for children's food." "Compromit,

\_compromitted, compromitting\_; manumit, manumitted, manumitting."--\_Webster

cor.\_ "\_Inferrible\_; that may be inferred or deduced from

premises."--\_Walker\_. "Acids are either solid, liquid, or

\_gasseous\_."--\_Gregory cor.\_ "The spark will pass through the interrupted

space between the two wires, and explode the \_gasses\_."--\_Id.\_ "Do we sound

gasses and \_gasseous\_ like \_cases\_ and \_caseous\_? No: they are more like

\_glasses\_ and \_osseous\_."--\_G. Brown\_. "I shall not need here to mention

\_Swimming\_, when he is of an age able to learn."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Why do

lexicographers spell \_thinnish\_ and \_mannish\_ with two Ens, and \_dimmish\_

and \_rammish\_ with one Em, each?"--\_G. Brown.\_ "\_Gas\_ forms the plural

regularly, \_gasses\_."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "Singular, \_gas\_; Plural,

\_gasses\_."--\_Clark cor.\_ "These are contractions from \_shedded,

bursted\_."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "The Present Tense denotes what is \_occurring\_ at

the present time."--\_Day cor.\_ "The verb ending in \_eth\_ is of the solemn

or antiquated style; as, He loveth, He walketh, He \_runneth\_."--\_Davis

cor.\_

"Thro' Freedom's sons no more remonstrance rings,

Degrading nobles and controlling kings."--\_Johnson\_.

RULE IV--NO DOUBLING.

"A \_bigoted\_ and tyrannical clergy will be feared."--See \_Johnson, Walker\_,

&c. "Jacob \_worshiped\_ his Creator, leaning on the top of his

staff."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 165. "For it is all \_marvellously\_

destitute of interest."--See \_Johnson, Walker\_, and \_Worcester\_. "As, box,

boxes; church, churches; lash, lashes; kiss, kisses; rebus,

\_rebuses\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 40. "\_Gossiping\_ and lying go hand

in hand."--See \_Webster's Dict., and Worcester's, w. Gossiping\_. "The

substance of the Criticisms on the Diversions of Purley was, with singular

industry, \_gossiped\_ by the present precious Secretary \_at\_ [of] war, in

Payne the bookseller's shop."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 187.

"\_Worship\_ makes \_worshiped, worshiper, worshiping\_; \_gossip, gossiped,

gossiper, gossiping\_; \_fillip, filliped, filliper, filliping\_."--\_Web.

Dict.\_ "I became as \_fidgety\_ as a fly in a milk-jug."--See \_ib.\_ "That

enormous error seems to be \_riveted\_ in popular opinion." "Whose mind is

not \_biased\_ by personal attachments to a sovereign."--See \_ib.\_ "Laws

against usury originated in a \_bigoted\_ prejudice against the

Jews."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The most \_critical\_ period of life is usually

between thirteen and seventeen."--\_Id.\_ "\_Generalissimo\_, the chief

commander of an army or military force."--\_Every Dict.\_ "\_Tranquilize\_, to

quiet, to make calm and peaceful."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "\_Pommelled\_, beaten,

bruised; having pommels, as a sword-hilt."--\_Webster et al. cor.\_ "From

what a height does a \_jeweller\_ look down upon his shoemaker!"--\_Red Book

cor.\_ "You will have a verbal account from my friend and fellow

\_traveller\_."--\_Id.\_ "I observe that you have written the word \_counselled\_

with one \_l\_ only."--\_Ib.\_ "They were offended at such as \_combated\_ these

notions."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "From \_libel\_, come \_libelled, libeller,

libelling, libellous\_; from \_grovel, grovelled, groveller, grovelling\_;

from \_gravel, gravelled\_, and \_gravelling\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Woolliness\_,

the state of being woolly."--\_Worcester's Dict.\_ "Yet he has spelled

chapelling, bordeller, \_medalist, metaline, metalist, metalize\_,

clavellated, etc, with \_ll\_, contrary to his rule."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Again,

he has spelled \_cancellation\_ and \_snivelly\_ with single \_l\_, and

cupellation, pannellation wittolly, with \_ll\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Oily\_, fatty,

greasy, containing oil, glib."--\_Walker cor.\_ "\_Medalist\_, one curious in

medals; \_Metalist\_, one skilled in metals."--\_Walker's Rhym. Dict.\_ "He is

\_benefited\_."--\_Webster\_. "They \_travelled\_ for pleasure."--\_Clark cor.\_

"Without you, what were man? A \_grovelling\_ herd,

In darkness, wretchedness, and want enchain'd."--\_Beattle cor.\_

RULE V.--FINAL CK.

"He hopes, therefore, to be pardoned by the \_critic\_."--\_Kirkham

corrected\_. "The leading object of every \_public\_ speaker should be, to

persuade."--\_Id.\_ "May not four feet be as \_poetic\_ as five; or fifteen

feet as \_poetic\_ as fifty?"--\_Id.\_ "Avoid all theatrical trick and

\_mimicry\_, and especially all \_scholastic stiffness\_."--\_Id.\_ "No one

thinks of becoming skilled in dancing, or in \_music\_, or in \_mathematics\_,

or \_in logic\_, without long and close application to the subject."--\_Id.\_

"Caspar's sense of feeling, and susceptibility of \_metallic\_ and \_magnetic\_

excitement, were also very extraordinary."--\_Id.\_ "Authorship has become a

mania, or, perhaps I should say, an \_epidemic\_."--\_Id.\_ "What can prevent

this \_republic\_ from soon raising a literary standard?"--\_Id.\_ "Courteous

reader, you may think me garrulous upon \_topics\_ quite foreign to the

subject before me."--\_Id.\_ "Of the \_Tonic, Subtonic\_, and \_Atonic\_

elements."--\_Id.\_ "The \_subtonic\_ elements are inferior to the \_tonics\_, in

all the \_emphatic\_ and elegant purposes of speech."--\_Id.\_ "The nine

\_atonics\_ and the three abrupt \_subtonics\_ cause an interruption to the

continuity of the \_syllabic\_ impulse." [526]--\_Id.\_ "On \_scientific\_

principles, conjunctions and prepositions are [\_not\_] one [and the same]

part of speech."--\_Id.\_ "That some inferior animals should be able to

\_mimick\_ human articulation, will not seem wonderful."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"When young, you led a life \_monastic\_,

And wore a vest \_ecclesiastic\_;

Now, in your age, you grow \_fantastic\_."--\_Denham's Poems\_, p. 235.

RULE VI.--RETAINING.

"\_Fearlessness\_; exemption from fear, intrepidity."--\_Johnson cor.\_

"\_Dreadlessness\_; \_fearlessness\_, intrepidity, undauntedness."--\_Id.\_

"\_Regardlessly\_, without heed; \_Regardlessness\_, heedlessness."--\_Id.\_

"\_Blamelessly\_, innocently; \_Blamelessness\_, innocence."--\_Id.\_ "That is

better than to be flattered into pride and \_carelessness\_."--\_Id.\_ "Good

fortunes began to breed a proud \_recklessness\_ in them."--\_Id.\_ "See

whether he lazily and \_listlessly\_ dreams away his time."--\_Id.\_ "It maybe,

the palate of the soul is indisposed by \_listlessness\_ or sorrow."--\_Id.\_

"\_Pitilessly\_, without mercy; \_Pitilessness\_, unmercifulness."--\_Id.\_ "What

say you to such as these? abominable, accordable, \_agreeable\_, etc."--

\_Tooke cor.\_ "\_Artlessly\_; naturally, sincerely, without craft."--\_Johnson

cor.\_ "A \_chillness\_, or shivering of the body, generally precedes a

fever."--See \_Webster\_. "\_Smallness\_; littleness, minuteness,

weakness."--\_Walker's Dict., et al.\_ "\_Galless, adj\_. Free from gall or

bitterness."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Tallness\_; height of stature, upright length

with comparative slenderness."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ "\_Willful\_; stubborn,

contumacious, perverse, inflexible."--See \_ib.\_ "He guided them by the

\_skillfulness\_ of his hands."--See \_ib.\_ "The earth is the Lord's, and the

\_fullness\_ thereof."--FRIENDS' BIBLE: \_Ps\_. xxiv, 1. "What is now, is but

an \_amassment\_ of imaginary conceptions."--\_Glanville cor.\_

"\_Embarrassment\_; perplexity, entanglement."--\_Walker\_. "The second is

slothfulness, whereby they are performed slackly and \_carelessly\_."--

\_Perkins cor.\_ "\_Installment\_; induction into office, part of a large sum

of money, to be paid at a particular time."--See \_Webster's Dict.\_

"\_Inthrallment\_; servitude, slavery, bondage."--\_Ib.\_

"I, who at some times spend, at others spare,

Divided between \_carelessness\_ and care."--\_Pope cor.\_

RULE VII.--RETAINING.

"\_Shall\_, on the contrary, in the first person, simply

\_foretells\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 41; \_Comly's\_, 38; \_Cooper's\_, 51;

\_Lennie's\_, 26. "There are a few compound irregular verbs, as \_befall,

bespeak\_, &c."--\_Ash cor.\_ "That we might frequently \_recall\_ it to our

memory."--\_Calvin cor.\_ "The angels exercise a constant solicitude that no

evil \_befall us\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Inthrall\_; to enslave, to shackle, to reduce to

servitude."--\_Johnson\_. "He makes resolutions, and \_fulfills\_ them by new

ones."--See \_Webster\_. "To \_enroll\_ my humble name upon the list of authors

on Elocution."--See \_Webster\_. "\_Forestall\_; to anticipate, to take up

beforehand."--\_Johnson\_. "\_Miscall\_; to call wrong, to name

improperly."--\_Webster\_. "\_Bethrall\_; to enslave, to reduce to

bondage."--\_Id.\_ "\_Befall\_; to happen to, to come to pass."--\_Walkers

Dict.\_ "\_Unroll\_; to open what is rolled or convolved."--\_Webster's Dict.\_

"\_Counterroll\_; to keep copies of accounts to prevent frauds."--See \_ib.\_

"As Sisyphus \_uprolls\_ a rock, which constantly overpowers him at the

summit."--\_G. Brown\_. "\_Unwell\_; not well, indisposed, not in good

health."--\_Webster\_. "\_Undersell\_; to defeat by selling for less, to sell

cheaper than an other."--\_Johnson\_. "\_Inwall\_; to enclose or fortify with a

wall."--\_Id.\_ "\_Twibill\_; an instrument with two bills, or with a point and

a blade; a pickaxe, a mattock, a halberd, a battleaxe."--\_Dict. cor.\_ "What

you \_miscall\_ their folly, is their care."--\_Dryden cor.\_ "My heart will

sigh when I \_miscall\_ it so."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "But if the arrangement

\_recalls\_ one set of ideas more readily than an other."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

Vol. i, p. 334.

"'Tis done; and since 'tis done, 'tis past \_recall\_

And since 'tis past \_recall\_, must be forgotten."--\_Dryden cor.\_

RULE VIII.--FINAL LL.

"The righteous is taken away from the \_evil\_ to come."--\_Isaiah\_, lvii, 1.

"\_Patrol\_; to go the rounds in a camp or garrison, to march about and

observe what passes."--See \_Joh. Dic.\_ "\_Marshal\_; the chief officer of

arms, one who regulates rank and order."--See \_ib.\_ "\_Weevil\_; a

destructive grub that gets among corn."--See \_ib.\_ "It much \_excels\_ all

other studies and arts."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "It is \_essential\_ to all

magnitudes, to be in one place."--\_Perkins cor.\_ "By nature I was thy

\_vassal\_, but Christ hath redeemed me."--\_Id.\_ "Some being in want, pray

for \_temporal\_ blessings."--\_Id.\_ "And this the Lord doth, either in

\_temporal\_ or \_in spiritual\_ benefits."--\_Id.\_ "He makes an \_idol\_ of them,

by setting his heart on them." "This \_trial\_ by desertion serveth for two

purposes."--\_Id.\_ "Moreover, this destruction is both \_perpetual\_ and

terrible."--\_Id.\_ "Giving to \_several\_ men several gifts, according to his

good pleasure." "\_Until\_; to some time, place, or degree, mentioned."--See

\_Dict.\_ "\_Annul\_; to make void, to nullify, to abrogate, to abolish."--See

\_Dict.\_ "Nitric acid combined with \_argil\_, forms the nitrate of

\_argil\_."--\_Gregory cor.\_

"Let modest Foster, if he will, \_excel\_

Ten metropolitans in preaching well."--\_Pope cor.\_

RULE IX.--FINAL E.

"Adjectives ending in \_able\_ signify capacity; as, \_comfortable, tenable,

improvable\_."--\_Priestly cor.\_ "Their mildness and hospitality are

\_ascribable\_ to a general administration of religious ordinances."--

\_Webster cor.\_ "Retrench as much as possible without \_obscuring\_ the

sense."--\_J. Brown cor.\_ "\_Changeable\_, subject to change; \_Unchangeable\_,

immutable."--\_Walker cor.\_ "\_Tamable\_, susceptive of taming; \_Untamable\_,

not to be tamed."--\_Id.\_ "\_Reconcilable, Unreconcilable, Reconcilableness\_;

Irreconcilable, Irreconcilably, Irreconcilableness."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "We

have thought it most \_advisable\_ to pay him some little attention."--

\_Merchant cor.\_ "\_Provable\_, that may be proved; Reprovable, \_blamable\_,

worthy of reprehension."--\_Walker cor.\_ "\_Movable\_ and Immovable, \_Movably\_

and Immovably, \_Movables\_ and Removal, \_Movableness\_ and Improvableness,

\_Unremovable\_ and Unimprovable, \_Unremovably\_ and Removable, \_Provable\_ and

Approvable, \_Irreprovable\_ and Reprovable, \_Unreprovable\_ and Improvable,

\_Unimprovableness\_ and Improvably."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "And with this cruelty

you are \_chargeable\_ in some measure yourself."--\_Collier cor.\_ "Mothers

would certainly resent it, as \_judging\_ it proceeded from a low opinion of

the genius of their sex."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "\_Tithable\_, subject to the

payment of tithes; \_Salable\_, vendible, fit for sale; \_Losable\_, possible

to be lost; \_Sizable\_, of reasonable bulk or size."--See \_Webster's Dict.\_

"When he began this custom, he was \_puting\_ and very tender."--\_Locke cor.\_

"The plate, coin, revenues, and \_movables\_,

Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd."--\_Shak. cor.\_

RULE X.--FINAL E.

"\_Diversely\_; in different ways, differently, variously."--See \_Walker's

Dict.\_ "The event thereof contains a \_wholesome\_ instruction."--\_Bacon

cor.\_ "Whence Scaliger \_falsely\_ concluded that Articles were

useless."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "The child that we have just seen is

\_wholesomely\_ fed."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Indeed, \_falsehood\_ and legerdemain

sink the character of a prince."--\_Collier cor.\_ "In earnest, at this rate

of \_management\_, thou usest thyself very \_coarsely\_."--\_Id.\_ "To give them

an \_arrangement\_ and a diversity, as agreeable as the nature of the subject

would admit."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Alger's Grammar is only a trifling

\_enlargement\_ of Murray's little \_Abridgement\_."--\_G. Brown\_. "You ask

whether you are to retain or \_to\_ omit the mute \_e\_ in the \_words,

judgement, abridgement, acknowledgement, lodgement, adjudgement\_, and

\_prejudgement\_."--\_Red Book cor.\_ "Fertileness, fruitfulness; \_fertilely\_,

fruitfully, abundantly."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "\_Chastely\_, purely, without

contamination; \_Chasteness\_, chastity, purity."--\_Id.\_ "\_Rhymester\_, n. One

who makes rhymes; a versifier; a mean poet."--\_Walker, Chalmers, Maunder,

Worcester\_. "It is therefore a heroical \_achievement\_ to disposess

[sic--KTH] this imaginary monarch."--\_Berkley cor.\_ "Whereby is not meant

the present time, as he \_imagines\_, but the time past."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_

"So far is this word from affecting the noun, in regard to its

\_definiteness\_, that its own character of \_definiteness\_ or

\_indefiniteness\_, depends upon the name to which it is prefixed."--\_Webster

cor.\_

"Satire, by \_wholesome\_ lessons, would reclaim,

And heal their vices to secure their fame "--\_Brightland cor.\_

RULE XI.--FINAL Y.

"Solon's the \_veriest\_ fool in all the play."--\_Dryden cor.\_ "Our author

prides himself upon his great \_sliness\_ and shrewdness."--\_Merchant cor.\_

"This tense, then, \_implies\_ also the signification of \_debeo\_."--\_R.

Johnson cor.\_ "That may be \_applied\_ to a subject, with respect to

something accidental."--\_Id.\_ "This latter author \_accompanies\_ his note

with a distinction."--\_Id.\_ "This rule is defective, and none of the

annotators have sufficiently \_supplied its deficiencies\_."--\_Id.\_ "Though

the \_fancied\_ supplement of Sanctius, Scioppius, Vossius, and Mariangelus,

may take place."--\_Ib.\_ "Yet, as to the commutableness of these two tenses,

which is \_denied\_ likewise, they [the foregoing examples] are \_all one\_ [;

i.e., \_exactly equivalent\_]"--\_Id.\_ "Both these tenses may represent a

futurity, \_implied\_ by the dependence of the clause."--\_Id.\_ "Cry, cries,

crying, cried, crier, decrial; Shy, \_shier, shiest, shily, shiness\_; Fly,

flies, flying, flier, high-flier; Sly, \_slier, sliest, slily, sliness\_;

Spy, spies, spying, spied, espial; Dry, drier, driest, \_drily,

driness\_."--\_Cobb, Webster, and Chalmers cor.\_ "I would sooner listen to

the thrumming of a \_dandizette\_ at her piano."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Send her

away; for she \_crieth\_ after us."--\_Matt.\_, v, 23. "IVIED, \_a\_. overgrown

with ivy."--\_Cobb's Dict.\_, and \_Maunders\_.

"Some \_drily\_ plain, without invention's aid,

Write dull receipts how poems may be made."--\_Pope cor.\_

RULE XII.--FINAL Y.

"The \_gayety\_ of youth should be tempered by the precepts of age."--\_Murray

cor.\_ "In the storm of 1703, two thousand stacks of \_chimneys\_ were blown

down in and about London."--\_Red Book cor.\_ "And the vexation was not

abated by the \_hackneyed\_ plea of haste."--\_Id.\_ "The fourth sin of our

\_days\_ is lukewarmness."--\_Perkins cor.\_ "God hates the workers of

iniquity, and \_destroys\_ them that speak lies."--\_Id.\_ "For, when he \_lays\_

his hand upon us, we may not fret."--\_Id.\_ "Care not for it; but if thou

\_mayst\_ be free, choose it rather."--\_Id.\_ "Alexander Severus saith, 'He

that \_buyeth\_, must sell; I will not suffer buyers and sellers of

offices.'"--\_Id.\_ "With these measures, fell in all \_moneyed\_ men."--See

\_Johnson's Dict.\_ "But rattling nonsense in full \_volleys\_

breaks."--\_Murray's Reader, q. Pope\_. "\_Valleys\_ are the intervals betwixt

mountains."--\_Woodward cor.\_ "The Hebrews had fifty-two \_journeys\_ or

marches."--\_Wood cor.\_ "It was not possible to manage or steer the

\_galleys\_ thus fastened together."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "\_Turkeys\_ were not

known to naturalists till after the discovery of America."--\_Gregory cor.\_

"I would not have given it for a wilderness of \_monkeys\_."--SHAK.: \_in

Johnson's Dict.\_ "Men worked at embroidery, especially in

\_abbeys\_."--\_Constable cor.\_ "By which all purchasers or mortgagees may be

secured of all \_moneys\_ they lay out."--\_Temple cor.\_ "He would fly to the

mines \_or\_ the \_galleys\_, for his recreation."--\_South cor.\_ "Here

\_pulleys\_ make the pond'rous oak ascend."--\_Gay cor.\_

------"You need my help, and you say,

Shylock, we would have \_moneys\_."--\_Shak. cor.\_

RULE XIII.--IZE AND ISE.

"Will any able writer \_authorize\_ other men to \_revise\_ his works?"--\_G.

B\_. "It can be made as strong and expressive as this \_Latinized\_

English."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Governed by the success or failure of an

\_enterprise\_."--\_Id.\_ "Who have \_patronized\_ the cause of justice against

powerful oppressors."--\_Id., et al\_. "Yet custom \_authorizes\_ this use of

it."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "They \_surprise\_ myself, \*\*\*\*; and I even think the

writers themselves will be \_surprised\_."--\_Id.\_ "Let the interest \_rise\_ to

any sum which can be obtained."--\_Webster cor.\_ "To \_determine\_ what

interest shall \_arise\_ on the use of money."--\_Id.\_ "To direct the popular

councils and check \_any rising\_ opposition,"--\_Id.\_ "Five were appointed to

the immediate \_exercise\_ of the office."--\_Id.\_ "No man ever offers himself

as a candidate by \_advertising\_."--\_Id.\_ "They are honest and economical,

but indolent, and destitute of \_enterprise\_."--\_Id.\_ "I would, however,

\_advise\_ you to be cautious."--\_Id.\_ "We are accountable for what we

\_patronize\_ in others."--\_Murray cor.\_ "After he was \_baptized\_, and was

solemnly admitted into the office."--\_Perkins cor.\_ "He will find all, or

most, of them, \_comprised\_ in the exercises."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "A quick

and ready habit of \_methodizing\_ and regulating their thoughts."--\_Id.\_ "To

\_tyrannize\_ over the time and patience of his readers."--\_Kirkham cor.\_

"Writers of dull books, however, if \_patronized\_ at all, are rewarded

beyond their deserts."--\_Id.\_ "A little reflection will show the reader the

reason for \_emphasizing\_ the words marked."--\_Id.\_ "The English Chronicle

contains an account of a \_surprising\_ cure."--\_Red Book cor.\_ "\_Dogmatize\_,

to assert positively; Dogmatizer, an \_assertor\_, a magisterial

teacher."--\_Chalmers cor.\_ "And their inflections might now have been

easily \_analyzed\_."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Authorize, \_disauthorize\_, and

unauthorized; Temporize, \_contemporize\_, and extemporize."--\_Walker cor.\_

"Legalize, \_equalize, methodize\_, sluggardize, \_womanize\_, humanize,

\_patronize\_, cantonize, \_gluttonize, epitomize\_, anatomize, \_phlebotomize,

sanctuarize\_, characterize, \_synonymize, recognize\_, detonize,

\_colonize\_."--\_Id. cor.\_

"This beauty sweetness always must \_comprise\_,

Which from the subject, well express'd, will rise."--\_Brightland cor.\_

RULE XIV.--COMPOUNDS.

"The glory of the Lord shall be thy \_rear-ward\_."--SCOTT, ALGER: \_Isa.\_,

lviii, 8. "A mere \_van-courier\_ to announce the coming of his

master."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "The \_party-coloured\_ shutter appeared to come close

up before him."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "When the day broke upon this \_handful\_ of

forlorn but dauntless spirits."--\_Id.\_ "If, upon a \_plumtree\_, peaches and

apricots are engrafted, \_nobody\_ will say they are the natural growth of

the \_plumtree\_.'--\_Berkley cor.\_ "The channel between Newfoundland and

Labrador is called the Straits of \_Belleisle\_."--\_Worcester cor.\_ "There

being nothing that more exposes to \_the headache\_:"--or, (perhaps more

accurately,) "\_headake\_."--\_Locke cor.\_ "And, by a sleep, to say we end the

\_heartache\_:"--or, "\_heartake\_."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "He that sleeps, feels not

the \_toothache\_:"--or, "\_toothake\_."--\_Id.\_ "That the shoe must fit him,

because it fitted his father and \_grandfather\_."--\_Phil. Museum cor.\_ "A

single word \_misspelled\_ [or \_misspelt\_] in a letter is sufficient to show

that you have received a defective education."--\_C. Bucke cor.\_ "Which

\_misstatement\_ the committee attributed to a failure of

memory."--\_Professors cor.\_ "Then he went through the \_Banqueting-House\_ to

the scaffold."--\_Smollet cor.\_ "For the purpose of maintaining a clergyman

and \_a schoolmaster\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "They however knew that the lands

were claimed by \_Pennsylvania\_."--\_Id.\_ "But if you ask a reason, they

immediately bid \_farewell\_ to argument."--\_Barnes cor.\_ "Whom resist,

\_steadfast\_ in the faith."--\_Alger's Bible\_. "And they continued

\_steadfastly\_ in the apostles' doctrine."--\_Id.\_ "Beware lest ye also fall

from your own \_steadfastness\_."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Galiot\_, or \_Galliot\_, a Dutch

vessel carrying a main-mast and a \_mizzen-mast\_."--\_Webster cor.\_

"Infinitive, to overflow; Preterit, overflowed; Participle,

\_overflowed\_."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "After they have \_misspent\_ so much precious

time."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "Some say, 'two \_handsful\_;" some, 'two

\_handfuls\_; and others, 'two \_handful\_.' The second expression is

right."--\_G. Brown\_. "\_Lapful\_, as much as the lap can contain."--\_Webster

cor.\_ "\_Dareful\_, full of defiance."--\_Walker cor.\_ "The road to the

\_blissful\_ regions is as open to the peasant as to the king."--\_Mur. cor.\_

"\_Misspell\_ is \_misspelled\_ [or \_misspelt\_] in every dictionary which I

have seen."--\_Barnes cor.\_ "\_Downfall\_; ruin, calamity, fall from rank or

state."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "The whole legislature \_likewise\_ acts \_as\_ a

court."--\_Webster cor.\_ "It were better a \_millstone\_ were hanged about his

neck."--\_Perkins cor.\_ "\_Plumtree\_, a tree that produces plums;

\_Hogplumtree\_, a tree."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Trissyllables\_ ending in \_re\_ or

\_le\_, accent the first syllable."--\_Murray cor.\_

"It happened on a summer's \_holyday\_,

That to the greenwood shade he took his way."--\_Dryden\_.

RULE XV.--USAGE.

"Nor are the \_moods\_ of the Greek tongue more uniform."--\_Murray cor.\_ "If

we \_analyze\_ a conjunctive \_preterit\_, the rule will not appear to

hold."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "No landholder would have been at that

\_expense\_."--\_Id.\_ "I went to see the child whilst they were putting on its

\_clothes\_."--\_Id.\_ "This \_style\_ is ostentatious, and \_does\_ not suit grave

writing."--\_Id.\_ "The king of Israel and \_Jehoshaphat\_ the king of Judah,

sat each on his throne."--\_1 Kings\_, xxii, 10; \_2 Chron.\_, xviii, 9.

"\_Lysias\_, speaking of his friends, promised to his father never to abandon

them."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Some, to avoid this \_error\_, run into \_its\_

opposite."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Hope, the balm of life \_soothes\_ us under

every misfortune."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 182. "Any judgement or decree

might be \_heard\_ and reversed by the legislature."--\_N. Webster cor.\_ "A

pathetic \_harangue will screen\_ from punishment any knave."--\_Id.\_ "For the

same \_reason\_ the \_women\_ would be improper judges."--\_Id.\_ "Every person

\_is\_ indulged in worshiping \_as\_ he \_pleases\_."--\_Id.\_ "Most or all

\_teachers\_ are excluded from genteel company."--\_Id.\_ "The \_Christian\_

religion, in its purity, \_is\_ the best institution on \_earth\_."--\_Id.\_

"\_Neither\_ clergymen nor human laws \_have\_ the \_least\_ authority over the

conscience."--\_Id.\_ "A \_guild\_ is a society, fraternity, or

corporation."--\_Barnes cor.\_ "Phillis was not able to \_untie\_ the knot, and

so she cut it."--\_Id.\_ "An \_acre\_ of land is the quantity of one hundred

and sixty perches."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ochre\_ is a fossil earth combined with the

\_oxyd\_ of some metal."--\_Id.\_ "\_Genii\_, when denoting \_aërial\_ spirits;

\_geniuses\_, when signifying persons of genius."--\_Murray cor.\_; also

\_Frost\_; also \_Nutting\_. "Acrisius, king of Argos, had a beautiful

daughter, whose name was \_Danäe\_."--\_Classic Tales cor.\_ "\_Phäeton\_ was the

son of Apollo and Clymene."--\_Id.\_--"But, after all, I may not have reached

the intended \_goal\_."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "'\_Pittacus\_ was offered a large

sum.' Better: '\_To Pittacus\_ was offered a large sum.'"--\_Kirkham cor.\_

"King \_Micipsa\_ charged his sons to respect the senate and people of

Rome."--\_Id.\_ "For example: '\_Galileo\_ greatly improved the

telescope.'"--\_Id.\_ "Cathmor's \_warriors\_ sleep in death."--\_Macpherson's

Ossian\_. "For parsing will enable you to detect and correct \_errors\_ in

composition."--\_Kirkham cor.\_

"O'er barren mountains, o'er the flow'ry plain,

Extends thy \_uncontrolled\_ and boundless reign."--\_Dryden cor.\_

PROMISCUOUS CORRECTIONS OF FALSE SPELLING.

LESSON I.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"A bad author deserves better usage than a bad \_critic\_."--\_Pope (or

Johnson) cor.\_ "Produce a single passage, \_superior\_ to the speech of

Logan, a Mingo chief, to Lord Dunmore, \_governor\_ of this

state."--\_Jefferson's Notes\_, p. 94. "We have none \_synonymous\_ to supply

its place."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "There is a probability that the effect will

be \_accelerated\_."--\_Id.\_ "Nay, a regard to sound has \_controlled\_ the

public choice."--\_Id.\_ "Though learnt [better, \_learned\_] from the

uninterrupted use of \_guttural\_ sounds."--\_Id.\_ "It is by carefully filing

off all roughness and \_all inequalities\_, that languages, like metals, must

be polished."--\_Id.\_ "That I have not \_misspent\_ my time in the service of

the community."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "The leaves of \_maize\_ are also called

blades."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Who boast that they know what is past, and can

\_foretell\_ what is to come."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "Its tasteless \_dullness\_ is

interrupted by nothing but its perplexities."--\_Abbott, right\_. "Sentences

constructed with the Johnsonian \_fullness\_ and swell."--\_Jamieson, right\_.

"The privilege of escaping from his prefatory \_dullness\_ and

prolixity."--\_Kirkham, right\_. "But, in poetry, this \_characteristic\_ of

\_dullness\_ attains its full growth."--\_Id. corrected\_. "The leading

\_characteristic\_ consists in an increase of the force and fullness."--\_Id

cor.\_ "The character of this opening \_fullness\_ and feebler vanish."--\_Id.

cor.\_ "Who, in the \_fullness\_ of \_unequalled\_ power, would not believe

himself the favourite of Heaven?"--\_Id. right\_. "They \_mar\_ one \_an\_ other,

and distract him."--\_Philol. Mus. cor.\_ "Let a deaf \_worshiper\_ of

antiquity and an English prosodist settle this."--\_Rush cor.\_ "This

\_Philippic\_ gave rise to my satirical reply in self-defence."--\_Merchant

cor.\_ "We here saw no \_innuendoes\_, no new sophistry, no

falsehoods."--\_Id.\_ "A witty and \_humorous\_ vein has often produced

enemies."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Cry \_hollo\_! to thy tongue, I \_pray thee\_:[527]

it \_curvets\_ unseasonably."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "I said, in my \_sliest\_ manner,

'Your health, sir.'"--\_Blackwood cor.\_ "And \_attorneys\_ also travel the

circuit in \_pursuit\_ of business."--\_Barnes cor.\_ "Some whole counties in

Virginia would hardly \_sell\_ for the \_value\_ of the \_debts due\_ from the

inhabitants."--\_Webster cor.\_ "They were called the Court of Assistants,

and \_exercised\_ all powers, \_legislative\_ and judicial."--\_Id.\_ "Arithmetic

is excellent for the \_gauging\_ of liquors."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 295.

"Most of the inflections may be \_analyzed\_ in a way somewhat

similar."--\_Murray cor.\_

"To epithets allots emphatic state,

\_While\_ principals, ungrac'd, like \_lackeys\_ wait."

--\_T. O. Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 326.

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Hence \_less\_ is a privative \_suffix\_, denoting destitution; as in

\_fatherless, faithless, penniless\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Bay\_; red, or

reddish, inclining to a \_chestnut colour\_."--\_Id.\_ "To \_mimick\_, to imitate

or ape for sport; a \_mimic\_, one who imitates or mimicks."--\_Id.\_

"Counterroll, a counterpart or copy of the rolls; \_Counterrollment\_, a

counter account."--\_Id.\_ "\_Millennium\_, [from \_mille\_ and \_annus\_,] the

thousand years during which Satan shall be bound."--See \_Johnson's Dict.\_

"\_Millennial\_, [like \_septennial, decennial\_, &c.,] pertaining to the

\_millennium\_, or to a thousand years."--See \_Worcester's Dict.\_

"\_Thralldom\_; slavery, bondage, a state of servitude."--\_Webster's Dict.\_

"Brier, a prickly bush; Briery, rough, prickly, full of briers;

\_Sweetbrier\_, a fragrant shrub."--See \_Ainsworth's Dict., Scott's, Gobb's\_,

and others. "\_Will\_, in the second and third persons, barely

\_foretells\_."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "And \_therefore\_ there is no word false,

but what is distinguished by Italics."--\_Id.\_ "What should be \_repeated\_,

is left to their discretion."--\_Id.\_ "Because they are abstracted or

\_separated\_ from material substances."--\_Id.\_ "All motion is in time, and

\_therefore, wherever\_ it exists, implies time as its \_concomitant\_."--

\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 95. "And illiterate grown persons are guilty of

\_blamable\_ spelling."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "They \_will\_ always be ignorant,

and of \_rough\_, uncivil manners."--\_Webster cor.\_ "This fact \_will\_ hardly

be \_believed\_ in the northern states."--\_Id.\_ "The province, however, \_was

harassed\_ with disputes."--\_Id.\_ "So little concern \_has\_ the legislature

for the interest of \_learning\_."--\_Id.\_ "The gentlemen \_will\_ not admit

that a \_schoolmaster\_ can be a gentleman."--\_Id.\_ "Such absurd

\_quid-pro-quoes\_ cannot be too strenuously avoided."--\_Churchill cor.\_

"When we say of a man, 'He looks \_slily\_;' we signify, that he takes a sly

glance or peep at something."--\_Id.\_ "\_Peep\_; to look through a crevice; to

look narrowly, closely, or \_slily\_"--\_Webster cor.\_ "Hence the confession

has become a \_hackneyed\_ proverb."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "Not to mention the more

ornamental parts of \_gilding\_, varnish, &c."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "After this

system of self-interest had been \_riveted\_."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "Prejudice

might have prevented the cordial approbation of a \_bigoted\_ Jew."--\_Dr.

Scott cor.\_

"All twinkling with the \_dewdrop\_ sheen,

The \_brier-rose\_ fell in streamers green."--\_Sir W. Scott cor.\_

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"The infinitive \_mood\_ has, commonly, the sign \_to\_ before it."--\_Harrison

cor.\_ "Thus, it is \_advisable\_ to write \_singeing\_, from the verb to

\_singe\_, by way of distinction from \_singing\_, the participle of the verb

to \_sing\_."--\_Id.\_ "Many verbs form both the \_preterit\_ tense and the

\_preterit\_ participle irregularly."--\_Id.\_ "Much must be left to every

one's taste and \_judgement\_."--\_Id.\_ "Verses of different lengths,

intermixed, form a \_Pindaric\_ poem."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "He'll \_surprise\_

you."--\_Frost cor.\_ "Unequalled archer! why was this concealed?"--

\_Knowles\_. "So \_gayly\_ curl the waves before each dashing prow."--\_Byron

cor.\_ "When is a \_diphthong\_ called a proper \_diphthong\_?"--\_Inf. S. Gram.

cor.\_ "How many \_Esses\_ would \_the word\_ then end with? Three; for it would

be \_goodness's\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Qu\_. What is a \_triphthong\_? \_Ans\_. A

\_triphthong\_ is a \_coalition\_ of three vowels \_in one syllable\_."--\_Bacon

cor.\_ "The verb, noun, or pronoun, is referred to the preceding terms taken

\_separately\_."--\_Murray\_. "The cubic foot of matter which occupies the

\_centre\_ of the globe."--\_Cardell cor.\_ "The wine imbibes \_oxygen\_, or the

acidifying principle, from the air."--\_Id.\_ "Charcoal, sulphur, and

\_nitre\_, make \_gunpowder\_."--\_Id.\_ "It would be readily understood, that

the thing so \_labelled\_ was a bottle of Madeira wine."--\_Id.\_ "They went

their ways, one to his farm, an other to his \_merchandise\_."--\_Matt.\_,

xxii, 5. "A \_diphthong\_ is the union of two vowels, \_both in one

syllable\_."--\_Russell cor.\_ "The professors of the \_Mohammedan\_ religion

are called Mussulmans."--\_Maltby cor.\_ "This \_shows\_ that \_let\_ is not a

\_mere\_ sign of the imperative mood, but a real verb."--\_Id.\_ "Those

\_preterits\_ and participles which are first mentioned in the list, seem to

be the most eligible."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 107; \_Fisk's\_, 81;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 103. "Monosyllables, for the most part, are compared by \_er\_

and \_est\_, and \_dissyllables\_, by \_more\_ and \_most\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p.

47. "This termination, added to a noun or \_an\_ adjective, changes it into a

verb: as, \_modern\_, to \_modernize\_; a \_symbol\_, to \_symbolize\_."--

\_Churchill cor.\_ "An \_Abridgement\_ of Murray's Grammar, with additions from

Webster, Ash, Tooke, and others."--\_Maltby's Gram.\_, p. 2. "For the sake of

occupying the room more \_advantageously\_, the subject of Orthography is

merely glanced at."--\_Nutting cor.\_ "So contended the accusers of

\_Galileo\_."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ Murray says, "They were \_travelling post\_

when \_he\_ met them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 69. "They \_fulfill\_ the

only purposes for which they were designed."--\_Peirce cor.\_--See \_Webster's

Dict.\_ "On the \_fulfillment\_ of the event."--\_Peirce, right\_. "\_Fullness\_

consists in expressing every idea."--\_Id.\_ "Consistently with \_fullness\_

and perspicuity."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "The word \_veriest\_ is a \_regular

adjective\_; as, 'He is the \_veriest\_ fool on earth.'"--\_Wright cor.\_ "The

sound will \_recall\_ the idea of the object."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "Formed for

great \_enterprises\_."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 113. "The most important rules

and definitions are printed in large type, \_Italicized\_."--\_Hart cor.\_

"HAMLETED, \_a.\_, accustomed to a hamlet, countrified."--\_Webster\_, and

\_Worcester\_. "Singular, \_spoonful, cupful, coachful, handful\_; plural,

\_spoonfuls, cupfuls, coachfuls, handfuls\_."--\_Worcester's Universal and

Critical Dictionary\_.

"Between superlatives and following names,

\_Of\_, by \_grammatic\_ right, a station claims."--\_Brightland cor.\_

THE KEY.--PART II.--ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.--PARTS OF SPEECH.

The first chapter of Etymology, as it exhibits only the distribution of

words into the ten Parts of Speech, contains no false grammar for

correction. And it may be here observed, that as mistakes concerning the

forms, classes, or modifications of words, are chiefly to be found in

\_sentences\_, rather than in any separate exhibition of the terms; the

quotations of this kind, with which I have illustrated the principles of

etymology, are many of them such as might perhaps with more propriety be

denominated \_false syntax\_. But, having examples enough at hand to show the

ignorance and carelessness of authors in every part of grammar, I have

thought it most advisable, so to distribute them as to leave no part

destitute of this most impressive kind of illustration. The examples

exhibited as \_false etymology\_, are as distinct from those which are called

\_false syntax\_, as the nature of the case will admit.

CHAPTER II.--ARTICLES.

CORRECTIONS RESPECTING A, AN, AND THE.

LESSON I.--ARTICLES ADAPTED.

"Honour is \_a\_ useful distinction in life."--\_Milnes cor.\_ "No writer,

therefore, ought to foment \_a\_ humour of innovation."--\_Jamieson cor.\_

"Conjunctions [generally] require a situation between the things of which

they form \_a\_ union."--\_Id.\_ "Nothing is more easy than to mistake \_a u\_

for an \_a\_."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "From making so ill \_a\_ use of our innocent

expressions."--\_Penn cor.\_ "To grant thee \_a\_ heavenly and incorruptible

crown of glory."--\_Sewel cor.\_ "It in no wise follows, that such \_a\_ one

was able to predict."--\_Id.\_ "With \_a\_ harmless patience, they have borne

most heavy oppressions."--\_Id.\_ "My attendance was to make me \_a\_ happier

man."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "On the wonderful nature of \_a\_ human mind."--\_Id.\_ "I

have got \_a\_ hussy of a maid, who is most craftily given to this."--\_Id.\_

"Argus is said to have had \_a\_ hundred eyes, some of which were always

awake."--\_Stories cor.\_ "Centiped, having \_a\_ hundred feet; centennial,

consisting of a hundred years."--\_Town cor.\_ "No good man, he thought,

could be \_a\_ heretic."--\_Gilpin cor.\_ "As, a Christian, an infidel, \_a\_

heathen."--\_Ash cor.\_ "Of two or more words, usually joined by \_a\_

hyphen."--\_Blair cor.\_ "We may consider the whole space of \_a\_ hundred

years as time present."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 138. "In guarding against

such \_a\_ use of meats and drinks."--\_Ash cor.\_ "Worship is \_a\_ homage due

from man to his Creator."--\_Monitor cor.\_ "Then \_a\_ eulogium on the

deceased was pronounced."--\_Grimshaw cor.\_ "But for Adam there was not

found \_a\_ help meet for him."--\_Bible cor.\_ "My days are consumed like

smoke, and my bones are burned as \_a\_ hearth."--\_Id.\_ "A foreigner and a

hired servant shall not eat thereof."--\_Id.\_ "The hill of God is as the

hill of Bashan; \_a\_ high hill, as the hill of Bashan."--\_Id.\_ "But I do

declare it to have been \_a\_ holy offering, and such \_a\_ one too as was to

be once for all."--\_Penn cor.\_ "A hope that does not make ashamed those

that have it."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Where there is not \_a\_ unity, we may

exercise true charity."--\_Id.\_ "Tell me, if in any of these such \_a\_ union

can be found?"--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_

"Such holy drops her tresses steeped,

Though 'twas \_a\_ hero's eye that weeped."--\_Sir W. Scott cor.\_

LESSON II.--ARTICLES INSERTED.

"This veil of flesh parts the visible and \_the\_ invisible

world."--\_Sherlock cor.\_ "The copulative and \_the\_ disjunctive conjunctions

operate differently on the verb."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Every combination of a

preposition and \_an\_ article with the noun."--\_Id.\_ "\_Either\_ signifies,

'the one or the other:' \_neither\_ imports, 'not either;' that is, 'not

\_the\_ one nor the other.'"--\_Id.\_ "A noun of multitude may have a pronoun

or \_a\_ verb agreeing with it, either of the singular number or \_of the\_

plural."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "\_The principal\_ copulative conjunctions are, \_and,

as, both, because, for, if, that, then, since\_."--\_Id.\_ "The two real

genders are the masculine and \_the\_ feminine."--\_Id.\_ "In which a mute and

\_a\_ liquid are represented by the same character, \_th\_."--\_Gardiner cor.\_

"They said, John \_the\_ Baptist hath sent us unto thee."--\_Bible cor.\_ "They

indeed remember the names of \_an\_ abundance of places."--\_Spect. cor.\_

"Which created a great dispute between the young and \_the\_ old

men."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Then shall be read the Apostles' or \_the\_ Nicene

Creed."--\_Com. Prayer cor.\_ "The rules concerning the perfect tenses and

\_the\_ supines of verbs are Lily's."--\_K. Henry's Gr. cor.\_ "It was read by

the high and the low, the learned and \_the\_ illiterate."--\_Dr. Johnson

cor.\_ "Most commonly, both the pronoun and \_the\_ verb are

understood."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "To signify the thick and \_the\_ slender

enunciation of tone."--\_Knight cor.\_ "The difference between a palatial and

\_a\_ guttural aspirate is very small."--\_Id.\_ "Leaving it to waver between

the figurative and \_the\_ literal sense."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "Whatever verb

will not admit of both an active and \_a\_ passive signification."--\_Alex.

Murray cor.\_ "\_The\_ is often set before adverbs in the comparative or \_the\_

superlative degree."--\_Id. and Kirkham cor.\_ "Lest any should fear the

effect of such a change, upon the present or \_the\_ succeeding age of

writers."--\_Fowle cor.\_ "In all these measures, the accents are to be

placed on \_the\_ even syllables; and every line is, in general, \_the\_ more

melodious, as this rule is \_the\_ more strictly observed."--\_L. Murray et

al. cor.\_ "How many numbers do nouns appear to have? Two: the singular and

\_the\_ plural."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "How many persons? Three; the first,

\_the\_ second, and \_the\_ third."--\_Id.\_ "How many cases? Three; the

nominative, \_the\_ possessive, and \_the\_ objective."--\_Id.\_

"Ah! what avails it me, the flocks to keep,

Who lost my heart while I preserv'd \_the\_ sheep:"--or, "\_my\_ sheep."

LESSON III.--ARTICLES OMITTED.

"The negroes are all \_descendants\_ of Africans."--\_Morse cor.\_ "\_Sybarite\_

was applied as a term of reproach to a man of dissolute manners."--\_Id.\_

"The original signification of \_knave\_ was \_boy\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The

meaning of these will be explained, for greater clearness and

precision."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "What sort of \_noun\_ is \_man\_? A noun

substantive, common."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Is \_what\_ ever used as three kinds

of \_pronoun\_?"\_--Kirkham's Question cor.\_ [Answer: "No; as a pronoun, it is

either relative or interrogative."--\_G. Brown\_.] "They delighted in \_having

done it\_, as well as in the doing of it."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "\_Both parts\_

of this rule are exemplified in the following sentences."--\_Murray cor.\_

"He has taught them to hope for \_an other and better\_ world."--\_Knapp cor.\_

"It was itself only preparatory to a future, \_better\_, and perfect

revelation."--\_Keith cor.\_ "\_Es\_ then makes \_an other and distinct\_

syllable."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "The eternal clamours of a \_selfish and

factious\_ people."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "To those whose taste in elocution is

\_but little\_ cultivated."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "They considered they had but a

\_sort of gourd\_ to rejoice in."--\_Bennet cor.\_ "Now there was \_but one such

bough\_, in a spacious and shady grove."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "Now the absurdity of

this latter supposition will go a great way \_towards making\_ a man

easy."--\_Collier cor.\_ "This is true of \_mathematics, with which taste\_ has

but little to do."--\_Todd cor.\_ "To stand prompter to a \_pausing yet ready\_

comprehension."--\_Rush cor.\_ "Such an obedience as the \_yoked and tortured\_

negro is compelled to yield to the whip of the overseer."--\_Chalmers cor.\_

"For the gratification of a \_momentary and unholy\_ desire."--\_Wayland cor.\_

"The body is slenderly put together; the mind, a rambling \_sort of

thing\_."--\_Collier cor.\_ "The only nominative to the verb, is

\_officer\_."--\_Murray cor.\_ "And though \_in general\_ it ought to be

admitted, &c."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Philosophical writing admits of a polished,

\_neat\_, and elegant style."--\_Id.\_ "But notwithstanding this defect,

Thomson is a strong \_and beautiful\_ describer."--\_Id.\_ "So should he be

sure to be ransomed, \_and many\_ poor men's lives \_should be\_

saved."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"Who felt the wrong, or feared it, \_took alarm\_,

Appealed to law, and Justice lent her arm."--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON IV.--ARTICLES CHANGED.

"To enable us to avoid too frequent \_a\_ repetition of the same

word."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "The former is commonly acquired in \_a\_ third part of

the time."--\_Burn cor.\_ "Sometimes \_an\_ adjective becomes a substantive;

and, \_like other substantives, it may have an\_ adjective \_relating\_ to it:

as, '\_The chief good\_.'"--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "An articulate sound is \_a\_

sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech."--\_Id. "A tense\_

is \_a\_ distinction of time: there are six tenses."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "In this

case, \_an\_ ellipsis of the last article would be improper."--\_L. Hurray

cor.\_ "Contrast \_always\_ has the effect to make each of the contrasted

objects appear in \_a\_ stronger light."--\_Id. et al\_. "These remarks may

serve to \_show\_ the great importance of \_a\_ proper use of the

\_articles\_."--\_Lowth et al. cor.\_ "'Archbishop Tillotson,' says \_the\_

author of \_a\_ history of England, 'died in this year.'"--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Pronouns are used in stead of substantives, to prevent too frequent \_a\_

repetition of them."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "THAT, as a relative, seems to be

introduced to \_prevent\_ too frequent \_a\_ repetition of WHO and

WHICH."--\_Id.\_ "A pronoun is a word used in stead of a noun, to \_prevent\_

too frequent \_a\_ repetition of it."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "THAT is often used

as a relative, to prevent too frequent \_a\_ repetition of WHO and

WHICH."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "His knees smote one against \_the\_

other."--\_Logan cor.\_ "They stand now on one foot, then on \_the\_

other."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "The Lord watch between thee and me, when we are

absent one from \_the\_ other."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Some have enumerated ten parts

of speech, making \_the\_ participle a distinct part."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Nemesis rides upon \_a\_ hart because \_the\_ hart is a most lively

creature."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "The transition of the voice from one vowel of the

diphthong to \_the\_ other."--\_Dr. Wilson cor.\_ "So difficult it is, to

separate these two things one from \_the\_ other."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Without \_a\_ material breach of any rule."--\_Id.\_ "The great source of

\_looseness\_ of style, in opposition to precision, is \_an\_ injudicious use

of \_what\_ are termed \_synonymous words\_."--\_Blair cor.\_; also \_Murray\_.

"Sometimes one article is improperly used for \_the\_ other."--\_Sanborn cor.\_

"Satire of sense, alas! can Sporus feel?

Who breaks a butterfly upon \_the\_ wheel?"--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON V.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"He hath no delight in the strength of \_a\_ horse."--\_Maturin cor.\_ "The

head of it would be \_a\_ universal monarch."--\_Butler cor.\_ "Here they

confound the material and \_the\_ formal object of faith."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"The Irish [Celtic] and \_the Scottish\_ Celtic are one language; the Welsh,

\_the\_ Cornish, and \_the\_ Armorican, are \_an\_ other."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "In

\_a\_ uniform and perspicuous manner."--\_Id.\_ "SCRIPTURE, \_n.\_ Appropriately,

and by way of distinction, the books of the Old and \_the\_ New Testament;

the Bible."--\_Webster cor.\_ "In two separate volumes, entitled, 'The Old

and New Testaments.'"--\_Wayland cor.\_ "The Scriptures of the Old and \_the\_

New Testament, contain a revelation from God."--\_Id.\_ "Q has \_always a\_ u

after it; which, in words of French origin, is not sounded."--\_Wilson cor.\_

"What should we say of such \_a\_ one? that he is regenerate? No."--\_Hopkins

cor.\_ "Some grammarians subdivide \_the\_ vowels into simple and

compound."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Emphasis has been \_divided\_ into the weaker

and \_the\_ stronger emphasis."--\_Id.\_ "Emphasis has also been divided into

\_the\_ superior and the inferior emphasis."--\_Id.\_ "Pronouns must agree with

their antecedents, or \_the\_ nouns which they represent, in gender, number,

and person."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "The adverb \_where\_ is often used improperly,

for \_a\_ relative pronoun and \_a\_ preposition": as, "Words \_where\_ [in

which] the \_h\_ is not silent."--\_Murray\_, p. 31. "The termination \_ish\_

imports diminution, or \_a\_ lessening \_of\_ the quality."--\_Merchant cor.\_

"In this train, all their verses proceed: one half of \_a\_ line always

answering to the other."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "To \_a\_ height of prosperity and

glory, unknown to any former age."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_Hwilc\_, who, which,

such as, such \_a\_ one, is declined as follows."--\_Gwilt cor.\_ "When a vowel

precedes \_the y, s\_ only is required to form \_the\_ plural; as, \_day,

days\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "He is asked what sort \_of word\_ each is; whether a

primitive, \_a\_ derivative, or \_a\_ compound."--\_British Gram. cor.\_ "It is

obvious, that neither the second, \_the\_ third, nor \_the\_ fourth chapter of

Matthew, is the first; consequently, there are not '\_four first\_

chapters.'"--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Some thought, which a writer wants \_the\_ art

to introduce in its proper place."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Groves and meadows

are \_the\_ most pleasing in the spring."--\_Id.\_ "The conflict between the

carnal and \_the\_ spiritual mind, is often long."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "A

Philosophical Inquiry into the Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and \_the\_

Beautiful"--\_Burke cor.\_

"Silence, my muse! make not these jewels cheap,

Exposing to the world too large \_a\_ heap."--\_Waller cor.\_

CHAPTER III.--NOUNS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE MODIFICATIONS OF NOUNS.

LESSON I.--NUMBERS.

"All the ablest of the Jewish \_rabbies\_ acknowledge it."--\_Wilson cor.\_

"Who has thoroughly imbibed the system of one or other of our Christian

\_rabbies\_."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "The seeming \_singularities\_ of reason soon

wear off."--\_Collier cor.\_ "The chiefs and \_arikies\_, or priests, have the

power of declaring a place or object taboo."--\_Balbi cor.\_ "Among the

various tribes of this family, are the Pottawatomies, the \_Sauks\_ and

Foxes, or \_Saukies\_ and \_Ottogamies\_."--\_Id.\_ "The Shawnees, Kickapoos,

Menom'onies, \_Miamies\_, and Delawares, are of the same region."--\_Id.\_ "The

Mohegans and \_Abenaquies\_ belonged also to this family."--\_Id.\_ "One tribe

of this family, the \_Winnebagoes\_, formerly resided near lake

Michigan."--\_Id.\_ "The other tribes are the Ioways, the Otoes, the

\_Missouries\_, the Quapaws."--\_Id.\_" The great Mexican family comprises the

Aztecs, the Toltecs, and the \_Tarascoes\_."--\_Id.\_" The Mulattoes are born

of negro and white parents; the \_Zamboes\_, of Indians and Negroes."--\_Id.\_

"To have a place among the Alexanders, the Cæsars, the \_Louises\_, or the

\_Charleses\_,--the scourges and butchers of their fellow-creatures."--Burgh

cor." Which was the notion of the Platonic philosophers and the Jewish

\_rabbies\_."--\_Id.\_ "That they should relate to the whole body of

\_virtuosoes\_."--\_Cobbeti cor.\_" What \_thanks\_ have ye? for sinners also

love those that love them."--\_Bible cor.\_" There are five ranks of

nobility; dukes, \_marquises\_, earls, viscounts, and barons."--\_Balbi cor.\_"

Acts which were so well known to the two \_Charleses\_."--\_Payne cor.\_

"\_Courts-martial\_ are held in all parts, for the trial of the

blacks."--\_Observer cor.\_ "It becomes a common noun, and may have \_the\_

plural number; as, the two \_Davids\_, the two \_Scipios\_, the two

\_Pompeys\_."--\_Staniford cor.\_ "The food of the rattlesnake is birds,

squirrels, \_hares\_, rats, and reptiles."--\_Balbi cor.\_ "And let \_fowls\_

multiply in the earth."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Then we reached the \_hillside\_,

where eight \_buffaloes\_ were grazing."--\_Martineau cor.\_ "CORSET, \_n. a

bodice\_ for a woman."--\_Worcester cor.\_ "As, the \_Bees\_, the \_Cees\_, the

\_Double-ues\_."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "Simplicity is the \_mean\_ between ostentation

and rusticity."--\_Pope cor.\_ "You have disguised yourselves like

\_tipstaffs\_."--\_Gil Bias cor.\_ "But who, that \_has\_ any taste, can endure

the incessant quick returns of the \_alsoes\_, and the \_likewises\_, and the

\_moreovers\_, and the \_howevers\_, and the \_notwithstandings?\_"--\_Campbell

cor.\_

"Sometimes, in mutual sly disguise,

Let \_ays\_ seem \_noes\_, and \_noes\_ seem \_ays\_."--\_Gay cor.\_

LESSON II.--CASES.

"For whose \_name's\_ sake, I have been made willing."--\_Penn cor.\_ "Be

governed by your conscience, and never ask any \_body's\_ leave to be

honest."--\_Collier cor.\_ "To overlook \_nobody's\_ merit or misbehaviour."--

\_Id.\_ "And Hector at last fights his way to the stern of \_Ajax's\_

ship."--\_Coleridge cor.\_ "Nothing is lazier, than to keep \_one's\_ eye upon

words without heeding their meaning."--\_Museum cor.\_ "Sir William \_Jones's\_

division of the day."--\_Id.\_ "I need only refer here to \_Voss's\_ excellent

account of it."--\_Id.\_ "The beginning of \_Stesichorus's\_ palinode has been

preserved."--\_Id.\_ "Though we have \_Tibullus's\_ elegies, there is not a

word in them about Glyc~era."--\_Id.\_ "That Horace was at \_Thaliarchus's\_

country-house."--\_Id.\_ "That \_Sisyphus's\_ foot-tub should have been still

in existence."--\_Id.\_ "How everything went on in Horace's closet, and

\_Mecenas's\_ antechamber."--\_Id.\_ "Who, for elegant \_brevity's\_ sake, put a

participle for a verb."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "The \_country's\_ liberty being

oppressed, we have no more to hope."--\_Id.\_ "A brief but true account of

this \_people's\_ principles."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "As, The \_Church's peace\_, or,

\_The peace\_ of the Church; Virgil's \_Æneid\_, or, \_The Æneid\_ of

Virgil."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "As, Virgil's Æneid, for, \_The\_ Æneid of

Virgil; \_The Church's peace\_, for, \_The peace\_ of the Church."--\_Buchanan

cor.\_ "Which, with Hubner's Compend, and \_Well's\_ Geographia Classica, will

be sufficient."--\_Burgh cor.\_ "Witness Homer's speaking horses, scolding

goddesses, and Jupiter \_enchanted\_ with \_Venus's\_ girdle."--\_Id.\_ "\_Dr.

Watts's\_ Logic may with success be read to them and commented on."--\_Id.\_

"Potter's Greek, and Kennet's Roman Antiquities, \_Strauchius's\_ and

\_Helvicus's\_ Chronology."--\_Id.\_ "SING. \_Alice's\_ friends, \_Felix's\_

property; PLUR. The Alices' friends, the Felixes' property."--\_Peirce cor.\_

"Such as \_Bacchus's\_ company--at \_Bacchus's\_ festivals."--\_Ainsworih cor.\_

"\_Burns's\_ inimitable \_Tam o' Shanter\_ turns entirely upon such a

circumstance."--\_Scott cor.\_ "Nominative, men; Genitive, [or Possessive,]

\_men's\_; Objective, men."--\_Cutler cor.\_ "\_Men's\_ happiness or misery is

\_mostly\_ of their own making."--\_Locke cor.\_ "That your \_son's clothes\_ be

never made strait, especially about the breast."--\_Id.\_ "\_Children's\_ minds

are narrow and weak."--\_Id.\_ "I would not have little children much

tormented about \_punctilios\_, or niceties of breeding."--\_Id.\_ "To fill his

head with suitable ideas."--\_Id.\_ "The \_Burgusdisciuses\_ and the Scheiblers

did not swarm in those days, as they do now."--\_Id.\_ "To see the various

ways of dressing--a \_calf's\_ head!"--\_Shenstone cor.\_

"He puts it on, and for \_decorum's\_ sake

Can wear it e'en as gracefully as she."--\_Cowper cor.\_

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Simon the \_wizard\_ was of this religion too"--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "MAMMODIES, n.

Coarse, plain, India muslins."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Go on from single persons

to families, that of the \_Pompeys\_ for instance."--\_Collier cor.\_ "By which

the ancients were not able to account for \_phenomena\_."--\_Bailey cor.\_

"After this I married a \_woman\_ who had lived at Crete, but a \_Jewess\_ by

birth."--\_Josephus cor.\_ "The very \_heathens\_ are inexcusable for not

\_worshiping\_ him."--\_Todd cor.\_ "Such poems as \_Camoens's\_ Lusiad,

Voltaire's Henrinde, &c."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "My learned correspondent

writes a word in defence of large \_scarfs\_."--\_Sped. cor.\_ "The forerunners

of an apoplexy are \_dullness, vertigoes\_, tremblings."--\_Arbuthnot cor.\_"

\_Vertigo\_, [in Latin,] changes the \_o\_ into \_~in=es\_, making the plural

\_vertig~in=es\_:" [not so, in English.]--\_Churchill cor.\_ "\_Noctambulo\_, [in

Latin,] changes the \_o\_ into \_=on=es\_, making the plural

\_noctambul=on=es\_:" [not so in English.]--\_Id.\_ "What shall we say of

\_noctambuloes?\_ It is the regular English plural."--\_G. Brown\_. "In the

curious fretwork of rocks and \_grottoes\_."--\_Blair cor.\_ "\_Wharf\_ makes the

plural \_wharfs\_, according to the best usage."--\_G. Brown\_. "A few \_cents'\_

worth of \_macaroni\_ supplies all their wants."--\_Balbi cor.\_ "C sounds

hard, like \_k\_, at the end of a word or \_syllable\_."--\_Blair cor.\_ "By

which the \_virtuosoes\_ try The magnitude of every lie."--\_Butler cor.\_

"\_Quartoes, octavoes\_, shape the lessening pyre."--\_Pope cor.\_ "Perching

within square royal \_roofs\_"--\_Sidney cor.\_ "\_Similes\_ should, even in

poetry, be used with moderation."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "\_Similes\_ should never

be taken from low or mean objects."--\_Id.\_ "It were certainly better to

say, '\_The House of Lords\_,' than, '\_The Lords' House\_.'"--\_Murray cor.\_

"Read your answers. \_Units\_' figure? 'Five.' \_Tens\_'? 'Six.' \_Hundreds\_'?

'Seven.'"--\_Abbott cor.\_ "Alexander conquered \_Darius's\_ army."--\_Kirkham

cor.\_ "Three \_days\_' time was requisite, to prepare matters."--\_Dr. Brown

cor.\_ "So we say, that \_Cicero's\_ style and \_Sallust's\_ were not one; nor

\_Cæsar's\_ and \_Livy's\_; nor \_Homer's\_ and \_Hesiod's\_; nor \_Herodotus's\_ and

\_Thucydides's\_; nor \_Euripides's\_ and \_Aristophanes's\_; nor \_Erasmus's\_ and

\_Budæus's\_."--\_Puttenham cor.\_ "LEX (i.e., \_legs\_, a \_law\_,) is no other

than our \_ancestors'\_ past participle \_loeg, laid down\_"--\_Tooke cor.\_

"Achaia's sons at Ilium slain for the \_Atridoe's\_ sake."--\_Cowper cor.\_

"The \_corpses\_ of her senate manure the fields of Thessaly."--\_Addison

cor.\_

"Poisoning, without regard of fame or fear;

And spotted \_corpses\_ load the frequent bier."--\_Dryden cor.\_

CHAPTER IV.--ADJECTIVES.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS OF COMPARISON, &c.

LESSON I.--DEGREES.

"I have the real excuse of the \_most honest\_ sort of bankrupts."--\_Cowley

corrected\_. "The \_most honourable\_ part of talk, is, to give the

occasion."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "To give him one of the \_most modest\_ of his own

proverbs."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Our language is now, certainly, \_more proper\_

and more natural, than it was formerly."--\_Burnet cor.\_ "Which will be of

the \_greatest\_ and \_most frequent\_ use to him in the world."--\_Locke cor.\_

"The same is notified in the \_most considerable\_ places in the

diocese."--\_Whitgift cor.\_ "But it was the \_most dreadful\_ sight that ever

I saw."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "Four of the \_oldest\_, soberest, and discreetest of

the brethren, chosen for the occasion, shall regulate it."--\_Locke cor.\_

"Nor can there be any clear understanding of any Roman author, especially

of \_more ancient\_ time, without this skill."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "Far the

\_most learned\_ of the Greeks."--\_Id.\_ "The \_more learned\_ thou art, the

humbler be thou."--\_Id.\_ "He is none of the best, or \_most honest\_."--\_Id.\_

"The \_most proper\_ methods of communicating it to others."--\_Burn cor.\_

"What heaven's great King hath \_mightiest\_ to send against us."--\_Milton

cor.\_ "Benedict is not the \_most unhopeful\_ husband that I

know."--\_Shakspeare cor.\_ "That he should immediately do all the meanest

and \_most trifling\_ things himself."--\_Ray cor.\_ "I shall be named among

the \_most renowned\_ of women."--\_Milton cor.\_ "Those have the \_most

inventive\_ heads for all purposes."--\_Ascham cor.\_ "The \_more wretched\_ are

the contemners of all helps."--\_B. Johnson cor.\_ "I will now deliver a few

of the \_most proper\_ and \_most natural\_ considerations that belong to this

piece."--\_Wotton cor.\_ "The \_most mortal\_ poisons practised by the \_West

Indians\_, have some mixture of the blood, fat, or flesh of man."--\_Bacon

cor.\_ "He so won upon him, that he rendered him one of the \_most faithful\_

and \_most affectionate\_ allies the Medes ever had."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "'You

see before you,' says he to him, 'the most devoted servant, and the \_most

faithful\_ ally, you ever had.'"--\_Id.\_ "I chose the \_most flourishing\_ tree

in all the park."--\_Cowley cor.\_ "Which he placed, I think, some centuries

\_earlier\_ than \_did\_ Julius Africanus afterwards."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "The

Tiber, the \_most noted\_ river of Italy."--\_Littleton cor.\_

"To \_farthest\_ shores th' ambrosial spirit flies."--\_Pope\_.

----"That what she wills to do or say,

Seems wisest, \_worthiest\_, discreetest, best."--\_Milton cor.\_

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"During the \_first three or four\_ years of its existence."--\_Taylor cor.\_

"To the first of these divisions, my \_last ten\_ lectures have been

devoted."--\_Adams cor.\_ "There are, in the twenty-four states, not \_fewer\_

than sixty thousand common schools."--\_J. O. Taylor cor.\_ "I know of

nothing which gives teachers \_more\_ trouble, \_than\_ this want of

firmness."--\_Id.\_ "I know of nothing \_else\_ that throws such darkness over

the line which separates right from wrong."--\_Id.\_ "None need this purity

and \_this\_ simplicity of language and thought, \_more than does the

instructor of a common school\_."--\_Id.\_ "I know of no \_other\_ periodical

that is so valuable to the teacher, as the Annals of Education."--\_Id.\_

"Are not these schools of the highest importance? Should not every

individual feel \_a deep\_ interest in their character and condition?"--\_Id.\_

"If instruction were made a \_liberal\_ profession, teachers would feel more

sympathy for \_one an other\_."--\_Id.\_ "Nothing is \_more interesting to\_

children, \_than\_ novelty, \_or\_ change."--\_Id.\_ "I know of no \_other\_ labour

which affords so much happiness as the teacher's."--\_Id.\_ "Their school

exercises are the most pleasant and agreeable \_duties\_, that they engage

in."--\_Id.\_ "I know of no exercise \_more\_ beneficial to the pupil \_than\_

that of drawing maps."--\_Id.\_ "I know of nothing in which our district

schools are \_more\_ defective, \_than\_ they are in the art of teaching

grammar."--\_Id.\_ "I know of \_no other branch of knowledge\_, so easily

acquired as history."--\_Id.\_ "I know of \_no other school exercise\_ for

which pupils usually have such an abhorrence, as \_for\_ composition."--\_Id.\_

"There is nothing \_belonging to\_ our fellow-men, which we should respect

\_more sacredly than\_ their good name."--\_Id.\_ "\_Surely\_, never any \_other

creature\_ was so unbred as that odious man."--\_Congreve cor.\_ "In the

dialogue between the mariner and the shade of the \_deceased\_."--\_Phil.

Museum cor.\_ "These master-works would still be less excellent and

\_finished\_."--\_Id.\_ "Every attempt to staylace the language of \_polished\_

conversation, renders our phraseology inelegant and clumsy."--\_Id.\_ "Here

are a few of the \_most unpleasant\_ words that ever blotted

paper."--\_Shakespeare cor.\_ "With the most easy \_and obliging\_

transitions."--\_Broome cor.\_ "Fear is, of all affections, the \_least apt\_

to admit any conference with reason."--\_Hooker cor.\_ "Most chymists think

glass a body \_less destructible\_ than gold itself."--\_Boyle cor.\_ "To part

with \_unhacked\_ edges, and bear back our barge undinted."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"Erasmus, who was an \_unbigoted\_ Roman Catholic, was transported with this

passage."--\_Addison cor.\_ "There are no \_fewer\_ than five words, with any

of which the sentence might have terminated."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "The \_ones\_

preach Christ of contention; but the \_others\_, of love." Or, "The \_one

party\_ preach," &c.--\_Bible cor.\_ "Hence we find less discontent and

\_fewer\_ heart-burnings, than where the subjects are unequally

burdened."--\_H. Home, Ld. Kames, cor.\_

"The serpent, \_subtlest\_ beast of all the field."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. ix, l. 86.

"Thee, Serpent, \_subtlest\_ beast of all the field,

I knew, but not with human voice indued."

--\_Id., P. L.\_, B. ix, l. 560.

"How much more grievous would our lives appear.

To reach th' \_eight-hundredth\_, than the eightieth year!"

--\_Denham cor.\_

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Brutus engaged with Aruns; and so fierce was the attack, that they pierced

\_each other\_ at the same time."--\_Lempriere cor.\_ "Her two brothers were,

one after \_the other\_, turned into stone."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Nouns are often

used as adjectives; as, A \_gold\_ ring, a \_silver\_ cup."--\_Lennie cor.\_

"Fire and water destroy \_each other\_"--\_Wanostrocht cor.\_ "Two negatives,

in English, destroy \_each other\_, or are equivalent to an

affirmative."--\_Lowth, Murray, et al. cor.\_ "Two negatives destroy \_each

other\_, and are generally equivalent to an affirmative."--\_Kirkham and

Felton cor.\_ "Two negatives destroy \_each other\_, and make an

affirmative."--\_Flint cor.\_ "Two negatives destroy \_each other\_, being

equivalent to an affirmative."--\_Frost cor.\_ "Two objects, resembling \_each

other\_, are presented to the imagination."--\_Parker cor.\_ "Mankind, in

order to hold converse with \_one an other\_, found it necessary to give

names to objects."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "\_Derivative\_ words are \_formed\_ from

\_their primitives\_ in various ways."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "There are many

\_different\_ ways of deriving words \_one from an other\_."--\_Murray cor.\_

"When several verbs \_have a joint construction\_ in a sentence, the

auxiliary is usually \_expressed\_ with the first \_only\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ "Two

or more verbs, having the same nominative case, and \_coming in immediate

succession\_, are also separated by \_the comma\_."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "Two

or more adverbs, \_coming in immediate succession\_, must be separated by

\_the comma\_."--\_Iidem\_. "If, however, the \_two\_ members are very closely

connected, the comma is \_unnecessary\_."--\_Iidem\_. "Gratitude, when exerted

towards \_others\_, naturally produces a very pleasing sensation in the mind

of a \_generous\_ man."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Several verbs in the infinitive

mood, \_coming in succession\_, and having a common dependence, are also

divided by commas."--\_Comly cor.\_ "The several words of which it consists,

have so near a relation \_one to an other\_."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "When two

or more verbs, or two or more adverbs,[528] \_occur in immediate

succession\_, and have a common dependence, they must be separated by \_the

comma\_."--\_Comly cor.\_ "\_One noun\_ frequently \_follows an other\_, both

meaning the same thing."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "And these two tenses may thus

answer \_each other\_."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "Or some other relation which two

objects bear to \_each other\_."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "That the heathens

tolerated \_one an other\_ is allowed."--\_A. Fuller cor.\_ "And yet these two

persons love \_each other\_ tenderly."--\_E. Reader cor.\_ "In the six

\_hundred\_ and first year."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Nor is this arguing of his, \_any

thing\_ but a \_reiterated\_ clamour."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "In \_several\_ of them

the inward life of Christianity is to be found."--\_Ib.\_ "Though Alvarez,

\_Despauter\_, and \_others, do not allow it\_ to be plural."--\_R. Johnson

cor.\_ "Even the most \_dissipated\_ and shameless blushed at the

sight."--\_Lempriere cor.\_ "We feel a \_higher\_ satisfaction in surveying the

life of animals, \_than\_ [\_in contemplating\_] that of vegetables."--

\_Jamieson cor.\_ "But this man is so \_full-fraught\_ with malice."--\_Barclay

cor.\_ "That I suggest some things concerning the \_most proper\_

means."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"So, hand in hand, they passed, the loveliest pair

That ever \_yet\_ in love's embraces met."--\_Milton cor.\_

"Aim at \_supremacy\_; without \_such height\_,

Will be for thee no sitting, or not long."--\_Id. cor.\_

CHAPTER V.--PRONOUNS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS AND USES OF PRONOUNS.

LESSON I.--RELATIVES.

"\_While\_ we attend to this pause, every appearance of \_singsong\_ must be

carefully avoided."--\_Murray cor.\_ "For thou shalt go to all \_to whom\_ I

shall send thee."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Ah! how happy would it have been for me,

had I spent in retirement these twenty-three years \_during which\_ I have

possessed my kingdom."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "In the same manner \_in which\_

relative pronouns and their antecedents are usually parsed."--\_Id.\_ "Parse

or \_explain\_ all the other nouns \_contained\_ in the examples, \_after the

very\_ manner \_of\_ the word \_which is parsed for you\_."--\_Id.\_ "The passive

verb will always \_have\_ the person and number that \_belong\_ to the verb

\_be\_, of which it is in part composed."--\_Id.\_ "You have been taught that a

verb must always \_agree in\_ person and number \_with\_ it subject or

nominative."--\_Id.\_ "A relative pronoun, also, must always \_agree in\_

person, \_in\_ number, and even \_in\_ gender, \_with\_ its antecedent."--\_Id.\_

"The \_answer\_ always \_agrees\_ in case \_with the pronoun\_ which asks the

question."--\_Id.\_ "\_One\_ sometimes represents an antecedent noun, in the

definite manner of a personal pronoun." [529]--\_Id.\_ "The mind, being

carried forward to the time \_at which the\_ event \_is to happen\_, easily

conceives it to be present." "SAVE and SAVING are [\_seldom to be\_] parsed

in the manner \_in which\_ EXCEPT and EXCEPTING are [commonly

explained]."--\_Id.\_ "Adverbs qualify \_verbs\_, or modify \_their\_ meaning,

\_as\_ adjectives \_qualify\_ nouns [and describe things.]"--\_Id.\_ "The third

person singular of verbs, \_terminates in s\_ or \_es, like\_ the plural number

of nouns."--\_Id.\_ "He saith further: that, 'The apostles did not baptize

anew such persons \_as\_ had been baptized with the baptism of

John.'"--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For we \_who\_ live,"--or, "For we \_that are

alive\_, are always delivered unto death for Jesus' sake."--\_Bible cor.\_

"For they \_who\_ believe in God, must be careful to maintain good

works."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Nor yet of those \_who\_ teach things \_that\_ they

ought not, for filthy lucre's sake."--\_Id.\_ "So as to hold such bound in

heaven \_as\_ they bind on earth, and such loosed in heaven \_as\_ they loose

on earth."--\_Id.\_ "Now, if it be an evil, to do any thing out of strife;

then such things \_as\_ are seen so to be done, are they not to be avoided

and forsaken?"--\_Id.\_ "All such \_as\_ do not satisfy themselves with the

superfices of religion."--\_Id.\_ "And he is the same in substance, \_that\_ he

was upon earth,--\_the same\_ in spirit, soul, and body."--\_Id.\_ "And those

that do not thus, are such, \_as\_ the Church of Rome can have no charity

\_for\_." Or: "And those that do not thus, are \_persons toward\_ whom the

Church of Rome can have no charity."--\_Id.\_ "Before his book, he \_places\_ a

great list of \_what\_ he accounts the blasphemous assertions of the

Quakers."--\_Id.\_ "And this is \_what\_ he should have proved."--\_Id.\_ "Three

of \_whom\_ were at that time actual students of philosophy in the

university."--\_Id.\_ "Therefore it is not lawful for any \_whomsoever\_ \* \* \*

to force the consciences of others."--\_Id.\_ "\_Why were\_ the former days

better than these?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "In the same manner \_in which\_"--or,

better, "\_Just as\_--the term \_my\_ depends on the name \_books\_."--\_Peirce

cor.\_ "\_Just as\_ the term HOUSE depends on the [preposition \_to\_,

understood after the \_adjective\_] NEAR."--\_Id.\_ "James died on the day \_on

which\_ Henry returned."--\_Id.\_

LESSON II.--DECLENSIONS.

"OTHER makes the plural OTHERS, when it is found without \_its\_

substantive."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "But \_his, hers, ours, yours\_, and

\_theirs\_, have evidently the form of the possessive case."--\_Lowth cor.\_

"To the Saxon possessive cases, \_hire, ure, eower, hira\_, (that is, \_hers,

ours, yours, theirs\_,) we have added the \_s\_, the characteristic of the

possessive case of nouns."--\_Id.\_ "Upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord,

both \_theirs\_ and \_ours\_."--\_Friends cor.\_ "In this place, \_His\_ is clearly

preferable either to \_Her\_ or \_to Its\_."--\_Harris cor.\_ "That roguish leer

of \_yours\_ makes a pretty woman's heart \_ache\_."--\_Addison cor.\_ "Lest by

any means this liberty of \_yours\_ become a stumbling-block."--\_Bible cor.\_

"First person: Sing. I, \_my or\_ mine, me; Plur. we, \_our or ours\_,

us."--\_Wilbur and Livingston cor.\_ "Second person: Sing, thou, \_thy or\_

thine, thee; Plur. ye or you, \_your or yours\_, you."--\_Iid.\_ "Third person:

Sing, she, \_her or hers\_, her; Plur. they, \_their or theirs\_,

them."--\_Iid.\_ "So shall ye serve strangers in a land that is not

\_yours\_."--ALGER, BRUCE, ET AL.; \_Jer.\_, v, 19. "Second person, Singular:

Nom. \_thou\_, Poss. \_thy\_ or \_thine\_, Obj. \_thee\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ "Second

person, Dual; Nom. Gyt, ye two; Gen. Incer, of \_you\_ two; Dat. Inc, incrum,

to \_you\_ two; Acc. Inc, \_you\_ two; Voc. Eala inc, O ye two; Abl. Inc,

incrum, from \_you\_ two."--\_Gwilt cor.\_ "Second person, Plural: Nom. Ge, ye;

Gen. Eower, of \_you\_; Dat. Eow, to \_you\_; Acc. Eow, \_you\_; Voc Eala ge, O

ye; Abl. Eow, from \_you\_."--\_Id.\_ "These words are, \_mine, thine, his,

hers, ours, yours, theirs\_, and \_whose\_."--\_Cardell cor.\_ "This house is

\_ours\_, and that is \_yours. Theirs\_ is very commodious."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

p. 55. "And they shall eat up \_thy\_ harvest, and thy bread; they shall eat

up thy flocks and \_thy\_ herds."--\_Bible cor.\_ "\_Whoever\_ and \_Whichever\_

are thus declined: Sing. Nom. whoever, Poss. \_whosever\_, Obj. whomever;

Plur. Nom. whoever, Poss. \_whosever\_, Obj. whomever. Sing. Nom. whichever,

Poss. (\_wanting\_,) Obj. whichever; Plur. Nom. whichever, Poss. (\_wanting\_,)

Obj. whichever."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "The compound personal pronouns are thus

declined: Sing. Nom. myself, Poss. (\_wanting\_,) Obj. myself; Plur. Nom.

ourselves, Poss. (\_wanting\_,) Obj. ourselves. Sing. Nom. thyself or

yourself, Poss. (\_wanting\_,) Obj. thyself, &c."--\_Perley cor.\_ "Every one

of us, each for \_himself\_, laboured to recover him."--\_Sidney cor.\_ "Unless

when ideas of their opposites manifestly suggest \_themselves\_."--\_Wright

cor.\_ "It not only exists in time, but is \_itself\_ time." "A position which

the action \_itself\_ will palpably \_confute\_."--\_Id.\_ "A difficulty

sometimes presents \_itself\_."--\_Id.\_ "They are sometimes explanations in

\_themselves\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ours, Yours, Theirs, Hers, Its\_."--\_Barrett cor.\_

"\_Theirs\_, the wild \_chase\_ of false felicities;

His, the composed possession of the true."

--\_Young, N. Th.\_, N. viii, l. 1100.

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"It is the boast of Americans, without distinction of parties, that their

government is the most free and perfect \_that\_ exists on the earth."--\_Dr.

Allen cor.\_ "Children \_that\_ are dutiful to their parents, enjoy great

prosperity."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "The scholar \_that\_ improves his time, sets an

example worthy of imitation."--\_Id.\_ "Nouns and pronouns \_that\_ signify the

same person, place, or thing, agree in case."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "An

interrogative sentence is one \_that\_ asks a question."--\_Id.\_ "In the use

of words and phrases \_that\_ in point of time relate to each other, \_the

order of time\_ should be \_duly regarded\_."--\_Id.\_ "The same observations

\_that show\_ the effect of the article \_upon\_ the participle, appear to be

applicable [also] to the pronoun and participle."--\_Murray cor.\_ "The

reason \_why\_ they have not the same use of them in reading, may be traced

to the very defective and erroneous method in which the art of reading is

taught."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ever since\_ reason began to exert her powers, thought,

during our waking hours, has been active in every breast, without a

moment's suspension or pause."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "In speaking of \_such as\_

greatly delight in the same."--\_Pope cor.\_ "Except \_him to whom\_ the king

shall hold out the golden sceptre, that he may live."--\_Bible cor.\_ "But

the same day \_on which\_ Lot went out of Sodom, it rained fire and brimstone

from heaven, and destroyed them all."--\_Bible cor.\_ "In the next place, I

will explain several \_constructions\_ of nouns and pronouns, \_that\_ have not

yet come under our notice."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Three natural distinctions of

time are all \_that\_ can exist."--\_Hall cor.\_ "We have exhibited such only

as are obviously distinct; and \_these\_ seem to be sufficient, and not more

than sufficient."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "\_The parenthesis\_ encloses a

\_phrase or clause that\_ may be omitted without materially injuring the

connexion of the other members."--\_Hall cor.\_ "Consonants are letters

\_that\_ cannot be sounded without the aid of a vowel."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Words

are not \_mere\_ sounds, but sounds \_that\_ convey a meaning to the

mind."--\_Id.\_ "Nature's postures are always easy; and, \_what\_ is more,

nothing but your own will can put you out of them."--\_Collier cor.\_

"Therefore ought we to examine our \_own selves\_, and prove our \_own

selves\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Certainly, it had been much more natural, to

have divided Active verbs into \_Immanent\_, or \_those whose\_ action is

terminated \_within itself\_, and \_Transient\_, or \_those whose\_ action is

terminated in something without \_itself\_."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "This is such

an advantage \_as\_ no other lexicon will afford."--\_Dr. Taylor cor.\_ "For

these reasons, such liberties are taken in the Hebrew tongue, with those

words \_which\_ are of the most general and frequent use."--\_Pike cor.\_

"\_While\_ we object to the \_laws which\_ the antiquarian in language would

impose on us, we must \_also\_ enter our protest against those \_authors who\_

are too fond of innovations."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

CHAPTER VI.--VERBS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS OF VERBS.

LESSON I.--PRETERITS.

"In speaking on a matter which \_touched\_ their hearts."--\_Phil. Museum

cor.\_ "Though Horace \_published\_ it some time after."--\_Id.\_ "The best

subjects with which the Greek models \_furnished\_ him."--\_Id.\_ "Since he

\_attached\_ no thought to it."--\_Id.\_ "By what slow steps the Greek alphabet

\_reached\_ its perfection."--\_Id.\_ "Because Goethe \_wished\_ to erect an

affectionate memorial."--\_Id.\_ "But the Saxon forms soon \_dropped\_

away."--\_Id.\_ "It speaks of all the towns that \_perished\_ in the age of

Philip."--\_Id.\_ "This \_enriched\_ the written language with new

words."--\_Id.\_ "He merely \_furnished\_ his friend with matter for

laughter."--\_Id.\_ "A cloud arose, and \_stopped\_ the light."--\_Swift cor.\_

"She \_slipped\_ spadillo in her breast."--\_Id.\_ "I \_guessed\_ the

hand."--\_Id.\_ "The tyrant \_stripped\_ me to the skin; My skin he \_flayed\_,

my hair he \_cropped\_; At head and foot my body \_lopped\_."--\_Id.\_ "I see the

greatest owls in you, That ever \_screeched\_ or ever flew."--\_Id.\_ "I \_sat\_

with delight, From morning till night."--\_Id.\_ "Dick nimbly \_skipped\_ the

gutter."--\_Id.\_ "In at the pantry door this morn I \_slipped\_."--\_Id.\_"

Nobody living ever \_touched\_ me, but you."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "\_Present\_, I

ship; \_Preterit\_, I shipped; \_Perf. Participle\_, shipped."--\_A. Murray

cor.\_ "Then the king arose, and \_tore\_ his garments."--\_Bible cor.\_ "When

he \_lifted\_ up his foot, he knew not where he should set it next."--\_Bunyan

cor.\_ "He \_lifted\_ up his spear against eight hundred, whom he slew at one

time."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Upon this chaos \_rode\_ the distressed ark."--\_Burnet

cor.\_ "On whose foolish honesty, my practices \_rode\_ easy."--\_Shakspeare

cor.\_ "That form of the first or primogenial Earth, which \_rose\_

immediately out of chaos."--\_Burnet cor.\_ "Sir, how \_came\_ it, you have

\_helped\_ to make this rescue?"--\_Shak. cor.\_ "He \_swore\_ he \_would\_ rather

lose all his father's images, than that table."--\_Peacham cor.\_ "When our

language \_dropped\_ its ancient terminations."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "When

themselves they \_vilified\_."--\_Milton cor.\_ "But I \_chose\_ rather to do

thus."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "When he \_pleaded\_ (or \_pled\_) against the

parsons."--\_Hist. cor.\_ "And he that saw it, \_bore\_ record." Or: "And he

that saw it, \_bare\_ record."--\_John\_, xix, 35. "An irregular verb has one

more variation; as, drive, drivest, [\_driveth\_,] drives, drove, \_drovest\_,

driving, driven."--\_Matt. Harrison cor.\_ "Beside that village, Hannibal

\_pitched\_ his camp."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "He \_fetched\_ it from

Tmolus."--\_Id.\_ "He \_supped\_ with his morning-gown on."--\_Id.\_ "There

\_stamped\_ her sacred name."--\_Barlow cor.\_

"\_Fix'd\_[530] on the view the great discoverer stood;

And thus \_address'd\_ the messenger of good."--\_Barlow cor.\_

LESSON II.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"Three freemen \_were on trial\_"--or, "\_were receiving their trial\_--at the

date of our last information."--\_Editor cor.\_ "While the house \_was

building\_, many of the tribe arrived."--\_Cox cor.\_ "But a foundation has

been laid in Zion, and the church \_is built\_--(or, \_continues to be

built\_--) upon it."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "And one fourth of the people are

\_receiving education\_."--\_E. I. Mag. cor.\_ "The present [\_tense\_,] or that

[\_form of the verb\_] which [\_expresses what\_] is now \_doing\_."--\_Beck cor.\_

"A new church, called the Pantheon, is \_about\_ being completed, in an

expensive style."--\_Thompson cor.\_ "When I last saw him, he \_had\_ grown

considerably."--\_Murray cor.\_ "I know what a rugged and dangerous path I

\_have\_ got into."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "You \_might\_ as \_well\_ preach ease to one

on the rack."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Thou hast heard me, and \_hast\_ become my

salvation."--\_Bible cor.\_ "While the Elementary Spelling-Book \_was

preparing\_ (or, \_was in progress of preparation\_) for the press."--\_Cobb

cor.\_ "Language \_has\_ become, in modern times, more correct."--\_Jamieson

cor.\_ "If the plan \_has\_ been executed in any measure answerable to the

author's wishes."--\_Robbins cor.\_ "The vial of wrath is still \_pouring\_ out

on the seat of the beast."--\_Christian Ex. cor.\_ "Christianity \_had\_ become

the generally-adopted and established religion of the whole Roman

Empire."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "Who wrote before the first century \_had\_

elapsed."--\_Id.\_ "The original and analogical form \_has\_ grown quite

obsolete."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Their love, and their hatred, and their envy,

\_have\_ perished."--\_Murray cor.\_ "The poems \_had\_ got abroad, and \_were\_ in

a great many hands."--\_Waller cor.\_ "It is more harmonious, as well as more

correct, to say, 'The bubble \_is ready to burst.\_'"--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "I

\_drove\_ my suitor from his mad humour of love."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Se viriliter

expedivit."--\_Cic.\_ "He \_has played\_ the man."--\_Walker cor.\_ "Wilt thou

kill me, as thou \_didst\_ the Egyptian yesterday?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "And we,

\_methought\_, [or \_thought I\_] looked up to him from our hill"--\_Cowley

cor.\_ "I fear thou \_dost\_ not think \_so\_ much of \_the\_ best things as thou

\_ought\_."--\_Memoir cor.\_ "When this work was commenced."--\_Wright cor.\_

"Exercises and \_a\_ Key to this work are \_about\_ being prepared."--\_Id.\_

"James is loved by John."--\_Id.\_ "Or that which is exhibited."--\_Id.\_ "He

was smitten."--\_Id.\_ "In the passive \_voice\_ we say, 'I am loved.'"--\_Id.\_

"Subjunctive Mood: If I \_be\_ smitten, If thou \_be\_ smitten, If he \_be\_

smitten."--\_Id.\_ "I \_shall\_ not be able to convince you how superficial the

reformation is."--\_Chalmers cor.\_ "I said to myself, I \_shall\_ be obliged

to expose the folly."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "When Clodius, had he meant to

return that day to Rome, must have arrived."--\_J. Q. Adams cor.\_ "That the

fact has been done, \_is doing\_, or will be done."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "Am I \_to

be\_ instructed?"--\_Wright cor.\_ "I \_choose\_ him."--\_Id.\_ "John, who

\_respected\_ his father, was obedient to his commands."--\_Barrett cor.\_

"The region \_echoes\_ to the clash of arms."--\_Beattie cor.\_

"And \_sitst\_ on high, and mak'st creation's top

Thy footstool; and \_beholdst\_ below thee--all."--\_Pollok cor.\_

"And see if thou \_canst\_ punish sin and let

Mankind go free. Thou \_failst\_--be not surprised."--\_Idem.\_

LESSON III--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"What follows, \_might better have been\_ wanting altogether."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "This member of the sentence \_might\_ much better have been omitted

altogether."--\_Id.\_ "One or \_the\_ other of them, therefore, \_might\_ better

have been omitted."--\_Id.\_ "The whole of this last member of the sentence

\_might\_ better have been dropped."--\_Id.\_ "In this case, they \_might\_ much

better be omitted."--\_Id.\_ "He \_might\_ better have said 'the

\_productions\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "The Greeks \_ascribed\_ the origin of poetry to

Orpheus, Linus, and Musæus."--\_Id.\_ "It \_was\_ noticed long ago, that all

these fictitious names have the same number of syllables."--\_Phil. Museum

cor.\_ "When I found that he had committed nothing worthy of death, I

\_determined\_ to send him."--\_Bible cor.\_ "I \_would\_ rather be a doorkeeper

in the house of my God."--\_Id.\_ "As for such, I wish the Lord \_would open\_

their eyes." Or, better: "\_May\_ the Lord \_open\_ (or, I \_pray\_ the Lord \_to\_

open) their eyes."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "It would \_have\_ made our \_passage\_ over

the river very difficult."--\_Walley cor.\_ "We should not \_have\_ been able

to \_carry\_ our great guns."--\_Id.\_ "Others would \_have\_ questioned our

prudence, if \_we\_ had."--\_Id.\_ "Beware thou \_be\_ not BECÆSARED; i.e.,

Beware that thou \_do\_ not dwindle--or, \_lest thou dwindle\_--into a mere

Cæsar."--\_Harris cor.\_ "Thou \_raisedst\_ (or, familiarly, thou \_raised\_) thy

voice to record the stratagems of needy heroes."--\_Arbuthnot cor.\_ "Life

\_hurries\_ off apace; thine is almost \_gone\_ already."--\_Collier cor.\_ "'How

unfortunate has this accident made me!' \_cries\_ such a one."--\_Id.\_ "The

muse that soft and sickly \_woos\_ the ear."--\_Pollok cor.\_ "A man \_might\_

better relate himself to a statue."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "I heard thee say but

now, thou \_liked\_ not that."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "In my whole course of wooing,

thou \_criedst\_, (or, familiarly, thou \_cried\_,) \_Indeed!\_"--\_Id.\_ "But our

ears \_have\_ grown familiar with '\_I have wrote\_, '\_I have drank\_,' &c.,

which are altogether as ungrammatical."--\_Lowth et al. cor.\_ "The court was

\_in session\_ before Sir Roger came"--\_Addison cor.\_ "She \_needs\_--(or, if

you please, \_need\_,--) be no more with the jaundice \_possessed\_"--\_Swift

cor.\_ "Besides, you found fault with our victuals one day \_when\_ you \_were\_

here."--\_Id.\_ "If spirit of other sort, So minded, \_hath\_ (or \_has\_)

o'erleaped these earthy bounds."--\_Milton cor.\_ "It \_would\_ have been more

rational to have \_forborne\_ this."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "A student is not master

of it till he \_has\_ seen all these."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "The said justice

shall \_summon\_ the party."--\_Brevard cor.\_ "Now what \_has\_ become of thy

former wit and humour?"--\_Spect. cor.\_ "Young stranger, whither \_wanderst\_

thou?"--\_Burns cor.\_ "SUBJ. \_Pres.\_ If I love, If thou \_love\_, If he love.

\_Imp.\_ If I loved, If thou \_loved\_, If he loved."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "SUBJ.

If I do not love, If thou \_do\_ not love, If he \_do\_ not love."--\_Id.\_ "If

he \_has\_ committed sins, they shall be forgiven him."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Subjunctive Mood of the verb \_to call\_, second person singular: If thou

\_call\_, (rarely, If thou \_do call\_,) If thou \_called\_."--\_Hiley cor.\_

"Subjunctive Mood of the verb \_to love\_, second person singular: If thou

love, (rarely, If thou do love,) If thou \_loved\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "I was;

thou wast; he, she, or it, was: We, you or ye, they, were."--\_White cor.\_

"I taught, thou \_taughtest\_, (familiarly, thou \_taught\_,) he taught."--

\_Coar cor.\_ "We say, '\_If it rain,' 'Suppose it rain?' 'Lest it rain,'

'Unless it rain.\_' This manner of speaking is called the SUBJUNCTIVE

MOOD."--\_Weld cor.\_ "He \_has\_ arrived at what is deemed the age of

manhood."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "He \_might\_ much better have let it

alone."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "He were better without it. Or: He \_would be better\_

without it."--\_Locke cor.\_ "\_Hadst\_ thou not been by. Or: \_If\_ thou \_hadst\_

not been by. Or, in the familiar style: \_Had\_ not thou been by,"--\_Shak.

cor.\_ "I learned geography. Thou \_learned arithmetic\_. He learned

grammar."--\_Fuller cor.\_ "Till the sound \_has\_ ceased."--\_Sheridan cor.\_

"Present, die; Preterit, died; Perf. Participle, \_died\_."--\_Six English

Grammars corrected\_.

"Thou \_bow'dst\_ thy glorious head to none, \_fear'dst\_ none." Or:--

"Thou \_bowed\_ thy glorious head to none, \_feared\_ none."

--\_Pollok cor.\_

"Thou \_lookst\_ upon thy boy as though thou \_guess'd\_ it."

--\_Knowles cor.\_

"As once thou \_slept\_, while she to life was formed."

--\_Milton cor.\_

"Who finds the partridge in the puttock's nest,

But may imagine how the bird was \_killed?\_"

--\_Shak. cor.\_

"Which might have well \_become\_ the best of men."

--\_Idem cor.\_

CHAPTER VII.--PARTICIPLES.

CORRECTIONS IN THE FORMS OF PARTICIPLES.

LESSON I.--IRREGULARS.

"Many of your readers have \_mistaken\_ that passage."--\_Steele cor.\_ "Had

not my dog of a steward \_run\_ away."--\_Addison cor.\_ "None should be

admitted, except he had \_broken\_ his collarbone thrice."--\_Id.\_ "We could

not know what was \_written\_ at twenty."--\_Waller cor.\_ "I have \_written\_,

thou hast \_written\_, he has \_written\_; we have \_written\_, you have

\_written\_, they have \_written\_."--\_Ash cor.\_ "As if God had \_spoken\_ his

last words there to his people."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "I had like to have \_come\_

in that ship myself."--\_Observer cor.\_ "Our ships and vessels being

\_driven\_ out of the harbour by a storm."--\_Hutchinson cor.\_ "He will

endeavour to write as the ancient author would have \_written\_, had he

\_written\_ in the same language."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "When his doctrines

grew too strong to be \_shaken\_ by his enemies."--\_Atterbury cor.\_ "The

immortal mind that hath \_forsaken\_ her mansion."--\_Milton cor.\_ "Grease

that's \_sweated\_ (or \_sweat\_) from the murderer's gibbet, throw into the

flame."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "The court also was \_chidden\_ (or \_chid\_) for

allowing such questions to be put."--\_Stone cor.\_ "He would have

\_spoken\_."--\_Milton cor.\_ "Words \_interwoven\_ (or \_interweaved\_) with sighs

found out their way."--\_Id.\_ "Those kings and potentates who have \_strived\_

(or \_striven\_.)"--\_Id.\_ "That even Silence was \_taken\_."--\_Id.\_ "And

envious Darkness, ere they could return, had \_stolen\_ them from

me."--\_Id.\_ "I have \_chosen\_ this perfect man."--\_Id.\_ "I \_shall scarcely\_

think you have \_swum\_ in a gondola."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "The fragrant brier was

\_woven\_ (or \_weaved\_) between."--\_Dryden cor.\_ "Then finish what you have

\_begun\_."--\_Id.\_ "But now the years a numerous train have \_run\_."--\_Pope

cor.\_ "Repeats your verses \_written\_ (or \_writ\_) on glasses."--\_Prior cor.\_

"Who by turns have \_risen\_."--\_Id.\_ "Which from great authors I have

taken."--\_Id.\_ "Even there he should have \_fallen\_."--\_Id.\_

"The sun has \_ris'n\_, and gone to bed.

Just as if Partridge were not dead."--\_Swift cor.\_

"And, though no marriage words are \_spoken\_,

They part not till the ring is \_broken\_."--\_Swift cor.\_

LESSON II.--REGULARS.

"When the word is \_stripped\_ of all the terminations."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_

"Forgive him, Tom; his head is \_cracked\_."--\_Swift cor.\_ "For 'tis the

sport, to have the engineer \_hoised\_ (or \_hoisted\_) with his own

petar."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "As great as they are, I was \_nursed\_ by their

mother."--\_Swift cor.\_ "If he should now be \_cried\_ down since his

change."--\_Id. "Dipped\_ over head and ears--in debt."--\_Id.\_ "We see the

nation's credit \_cracked\_."--\_Id.\_ "Because they find their pockets

\_picked\_."--\_Id.\_ "O what a pleasure \_mixed\_ with pain!"--\_Id.\_ "And only

with her brother \_linked\_."--\_Id.\_ "Because he ne'er a thought allowed,

That might not be \_confessed\_."--\_Id.\_ "My love to Sheelah is more firmly

\_fixed\_."--\_Id.\_ "The observations \_annexed\_ to them will be

intelligible."--\_Phil. Mus. cor.\_ "Those eyes are always \_fixed\_ on the

general principles."--\_Id.\_ "Laborious conjectures will be \_banished\_ from

our commentaries."--\_Id.\_ "Tiridates was dethroned, and Phraates was

\_reestablished\_, in his stead."--\_Id.\_ "A Roman who was \_attached\_ to

Augustus."--\_Id.\_ "Nor should I have spoken of it, unless Baxter had

\_talked\_ about two such."--\_Id.\_ "And the reformers of language have

generally \_rushed\_ on."--\_Id.\_ "Three centuries and a half had then

\_elapsed\_ since the date,"--\_Ib.\_ "Of such criteria, as has been \_remarked\_

already, there is an abundance."--\_Id.\_ "The English have \_surpassed\_ every

other nation in their services."--\_Id.\_ "The party \_addressed\_ is next in

dignity to the speaker."--\_Harris cor.\_ "To which we are many times

\_helped\_."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "But for him, I should have \_looked\_ well

enough to myself."--\_Id.\_ "Why are you \_vexed\_, Lady? why do

frown?"--\_Milton cor.\_ "Obtruding false rules \_pranked\_ in reason's

garb."--\_Id.\_ "But, like David \_equipped\_ in Saul's armour, it is

encumbered and oppressed."--\_Campbell cor.\_

"And when their merchants are blown up, and \_cracked\_,

Whole towns are cast away in storms, and \_wrecked\_."--\_Butler cor.\_

LESSON III.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"The lands are \_held\_ in free and common soccage."--\_Trumbull cor.\_ "A

stroke is \_drawn\_ under such words."--\_Cobbett's Gr.\_, 1st Ed. "It is

\_struck\_ even, with a strickle."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "Whilst I was

\_wandering\_, without any care, beyond my bounds."--\_Id.\_ "When one would do

something, unless \_hindered\_ by something present."--\_B. Johnson cor.\_ "It

is used potentially, but not so as to be \_rendered\_ by these signs."--\_Id.\_

"Now who would dote upon things \_hurried\_ down the stream thus

fast?"--\_Collier cor.\_ "Heaven hath timely \_tried\_ their growth."--\_Milton

cor.\_ "O! ye mistook, ye should have \_snatched\_ his wand."--\_Id.\_ "Of true

virgin here \_distressed\_."--\_Id.\_ "So that they have at last come to be

\_substituted\_ in the stead of it."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Though ye have \_lain\_

among the pots."--\_Bible cor.\_ "And, lo! in her mouth was an olive leaf

\_plucked\_ off."--\_Scott's Bible, and Alger's\_. "Brutus and Cassius \_Have

ridden\_, (or \_rode\_,) like madmen, through the gates of Rome."--\_Shak.

cor.\_ "He shall be \_spit upon\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "And are not the countries

so \_overflowed\_ still \_situated\_ between the tropics?"--\_Bentley\_. "Not

\_tricked\_ and \_frounced\_ as she was wont, But \_kerchiefed\_ in a comely

cloud."--\_Milton cor.\_ "To satisfy his rigour, \_Satisfied\_ never."--\_Id.\_

"With him there \_crucified\_."--\_Id.\_ "Th' earth cumbered, and the wing'd

air \_darked\_ with plumes."--\_Id.\_ "And now their way to Earth they had

\_descried\_."--\_Id.\_ "Not so thick swarmed once the soil \_Bedropped\_ with

blood of Gorgon."--\_Id.\_ "And in a troubled sea of passion

\_tossed\_."--\_Id.\_ "The cause, alas! is quickly \_guessed\_."--\_Swift cor.\_

"The kettle to the top was \_hoised\_, or \_hoisted\_."--\_Id.\_ "In chains thy

syllables are \_linked\_."--\_Id.\_ "Rather than thus be \_overtopped\_, Would

you not wish their laurels \_cropped\_."--\_Id.\_ "The HYPHEN, or CONJOINER, is

a little line \_drawn\_ to connect words, or parts of words."--\_Cobbett cor.\_

"In the other manners of dependence, this general rule is sometimes

\_broken\_."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "Some intransitive verbs may be rendered

transitive by means of a preposition \_prefixed\_ to them."--\_Grant cor.\_

"Whoever now should place the accent on the first syllable of \_Valerius\_,

would set every body \_a laughing\_."--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "Being mocked,

scourged, \_spit upon\_, and crucified."--\_Gurney cor.\_

"For rhyme in Greece or Rome was never known,

Till \_barb'rous hordes those states had overthrown\_."--\_Roscommon cor.\_

"In my own Thames may I be \_drowned\_,

If e'er I stoop beneath \_the crowned\_." Or thus:--

"In my own Thames may I be \_drown'd dead\_,

If e'er I stoop beneath a crown'd head."--\_Swift cor.\_

CHAPTER VIII.--ADVERBS.

CORRECTIONS RESPECTING THE FORMS OF ADVERBS.

"We can much \_more easily\_ form the conception of a fierce combat."--\_Blair

corrected\_. "When he was restored \_agreeably\_ to the treaty, he was a

perfect savage."--\_Webster cor.\_ "How I shall acquit myself \_suitably\_ to

the importance of the trial."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "Can any thing show your

Holiness how \_unworthily\_ you treat mankind?"--\_Spect. cor.\_ "In what

other, \_consistently\_ with reason and common sense, can you go about to

explain it to him?"--\_Lowth cor.\_ "\_Agreeably\_ to this rule, the short

vowel Sheva has two characters."--\_Wilson cor.\_ "We shall give a

\_remarkably\_ fine example of this figure."--See \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 156.

"All of which is most \_abominably\_ false."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "He heaped up

great riches, but passed his time \_miserably\_."--\_Murray cor.\_ "He is never

satisfied with expressing any thing clearly and \_simply\_."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "Attentive only to exhibit his ideas \_clearly\_ and \_exactly\_, he

appears dry."--\_Id.\_ "Such words as have the most liquids and vowels, glide

the \_most softly\_." Or: "Where liquids and vowels most abound, the

utterance is softest."--\_Id.\_ "The simplest points, such as are \_most

easily\_ apprehended."--\_Id.\_ "Too historical to be accounted a \_perfectly\_

regular epic poem."--\_Id.\_ "Putting after them the oblique case,

\_agreeably\_ to the French construction."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Where the train

proceeds with an \_extremely\_ slow pace."--\_Kames cor.\_ "So as \_scarcely\_ to

give an appearance of succession."--\_Id.\_ "That concord between sound and

sense, which is perceived in some expressions, \_independently\_ of artful

pronunciation."--\_Id.\_ "Cornaro had become very corpulent, \_previously\_ to

the adoption of his temperate habits."--\_Hitchcock cor.\_ "Bread, which is a

solid, and \_tolerably\_ hard, substance."--\_Day cor.\_ "To command every body

that was not dressed as \_finely\_ as himself."--\_Id.\_ "Many of them have

\_scarcely\_ outlived their authors."--\_J. Ward cor.\_ "Their labour, indeed,

did not penetrate very \_deeply\_."--\_Wilson cor.\_ "The people are

\_miserably\_ poor, and subsist on fish."--\_Hume cor.\_ "A scale, which I took

great pains, some years \_ago\_, to make."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "There is no truth

on earth \_better\_ established \_than\_ the truth of the Bible."--\_Taylor

cor.\_ "I know of no work \_more\_ wanted \_than\_ the one \_which\_ Mr. Taylor

has now furnished."--\_Dr. Nott cor.\_ "And therefore their requests are

\_unfrequent\_ and reasonable."--\_Taylor cor.\_ "Questions are \_more easily\_

proposed, than answered rightly."--\_Dillwyn cor.\_ "Often reflect on the

advantages you possess, and on the source \_from which\_ they are all

derived."--\_Murray cor.\_ "If there be no special rule which requires it to

be put \_further forward\_."--\_Milnes cor.\_ "The masculine and \_the\_ neuter

have the same dialect in all \_the\_ numbers, especially when they end

\_alike\_."--\_Id.\_

"And children are more busy in their play

Than those that \_wiseliest\_ pass their time away."--\_Butler cor.\_

CHAPTER IX.--CONJUNCTIONS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE USE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"A \_Verb\_ is so called from the Latin \_verbum\_, a word."--\_Bucke cor.\_

"References are often marked by letters \_or\_ figures."--\_Adam and Gould

cor.\_ (1.) "A Conjunction is a word which joins words \_or\_ sentences

together."--\_Lennie, Bullions and Brace, cor.\_ (2.) "A Conjunction is used

to connect words \_or\_ sentences together."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ (3.) "A

Conjunction is used to connect words \_or\_ sentences."--\_Maunder cor.\_ (4.)

"Conjunctions are words used to join words \_or\_ sentences."--\_Wilcox cor.\_

(5.) "A Conjunction is a word used to connect words \_or\_

sentences."--\_M'Culloch, Hart, and Day, cor.\_ (6.) "A Conjunction joins

words \_or\_ sentences together."--\_Macintosh and Hiley cor.\_ (7.) "The

Conjunction joins words \_or\_ sentences together."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ (8.)

"Conjunctions connect words \_or\_ sentences to each other."--\_Wright cor.\_

(9.) "Conjunctions connect words \_or\_ sentences."--\_Wells and Wilcox cor.\_

(10.) "The conjunction is a part of speech, used to connect words \_or\_

sentences."--\_Weld cor.\_ (11.) "A conjunction is a word used to connect

words \_or\_ sentences together."--\_Fowler cor.\_ (12.) "Connectives are

\_particles that\_ unite words \_or\_ sentences in construction."--\_Webster

cor.\_ "English Grammar is miserably taught in our district schools; the

teachers know \_little or nothing\_ about it."--\_J. O. Taylor cor.\_ "\_Lest\_,

instead of preventing \_diseases\_, you draw \_them\_ on."--\_Locke cor.\_ "The

definite article \_the\_ is frequently applied to adverbs in the comparative

\_or the\_ superlative degree."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "When nouns naturally

neuter are \_assumed to be\_ masculine \_or\_ feminine."--\_Murray cor.\_ "This

form of the perfect tense represents an action \_as\_ completely past,

\_though\_ often \_as done\_ at no great distance \_of time, or at a time\_ not

specified."--\_Id.\_ "The \_Copulative Conjunction\_ serves to connect \_words

or clauses, so as\_ to continue a sentence, by expressing an addition, a

supposition, a cause, \_or a consequence\_."--\_Id.\_ "The \_Disjunctive

Conjunction\_ serves, not only to continue a sentence \_by connecting its

parts\_, but also to express opposition of meaning, \_either real or

nominal\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_If\_ we open the volumes of our divines, philosophers,

historians, or artists, we shall find that they abound with all the terms

necessary to communicate \_the\_ observations and discoveries \_of their

authors.\_"--\_Id.\_ "When a disjunctive \_conjunction\_ occurs between a

singular noun or pronoun and a plural one, the verb is made to agree with

the plural noun \_or\_ pronoun."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "Pronouns must always

agree with their antecedents, \_or\_ the nouns for which they stand, in

gender and number."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Neuter verbs do not \_express action,

and consequently do not\_ govern nouns or pronouns."--\_Id.\_ "And the

auxiliary of the past imperfect \_as well as of the\_ present

\_tense\_."--\_Id.\_ "If this rule should not appear to apply to every example

\_that\_ has been produced, \_or\_ to others which might be cited."--\_Id.\_ "An

emphatical pause is made, after something of peculiar moment has been said,

on which we desire to fix the hearer's attention."--\_Murray and Hart cor.\_

"An imperfect[531] phrase contains no assertion, \_and\_ does not amount to a

proposition, or sentence."--\_Murray cor.\_ "The word was in the mouth of

every one, \_yet\_ its meaning may still be a secret."--\_Id.\_ "This word was

in the mouth of every one, \_and yet\_, as to its precise and definite idea,

this may still be a secret,"--\_Harris cor.\_ "It cannot be otherwise,

\_because\_ the French prosody differs from that of every other European

language."--\_Smollet cor.\_ "So gradually \_that it may be\_ engrafted on a

subtonic."--\_Rush cor.\_ "Where the Chelsea \_and\_ Malden bridges now are."

Or better: "Where the Chelsea \_or the\_ Malden \_bridge\_ now \_is\_."--\_Judge

Parker cor.\_ "Adverbs are words \_added\_ to verbs, \_to\_ participles, \_to\_

adjectives, \_or to\_ other adverbs."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "I could not have

told you who the hermit was, \_or\_ on what mountain he lived."--\_Bucke cor.\_

"AM \_and\_ BE (for they are the same \_verb\_) naturally, or in themselves,

signify \_being\_."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "Words are \_signs, either oral or

written\_, by which we express our thoughts, \_or\_ ideas."--\_Mrs. Bethune

cor.\_ "His fears will detect him, \_that\_ he shall not escape."--\_Comly

cor.\_ "\_Whose\_ is equally applicable to persons \_and to\_ things"--\_Webster

cor.\_ "One negative destroys an other, \_so that two are\_ equivalent to an

affirmative."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"No sooner does he peep into the world,

\_Than\_ he has done his do."--\_Hudibras cor.\_

CHAPTER X.--PREPOSITIONS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

"Nouns are often formed \_from\_ participles."--\_L. Murray corrected\_. "What

tenses are formed \_from\_ the perfect participle?"--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "Which

tense is formed \_from\_ the \_present\_, or root of the verb?"--\_Id.\_ "When a

noun or \_a\_ pronoun is placed before a participle, independently \_of\_ the

rest of the sentence."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 348. "If the addition

consists \_of\_ two or more words."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "The infinitive mood

is often made absolute, or used independently \_of\_ the rest of the

sentence."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, 80; \_Churchill's\_, 143; \_Bucke's\_, 96;

\_Merchant's\_, 92. "For the great satisfaction of the reader, we \_shall

present a variety\_ of false constructions."--\_Murray cor.\_ "For your

satisfaction, I \_shall present you a variety\_ of false constructions."--

\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "I shall here \_present [to] you a scale\_ of derivation."--

\_Bucke cor.\_ "These two manners of representation in respect \_to\_

number."--\_Lowth and Churchill cor.\_ "There are certain adjectives which

seem to be derived \_from verbs, without\_ any variation."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Or

disqualify us for receiving instruction or reproof \_from\_ others."--\_Murray

cor.\_ "For being more studious than any other pupil \_in\_ the school."--

\_Id.\_ "Misunderstanding the directions, we lost our way."--\_Id.\_ "These

people reduced the greater part of the island \_under\_ their own power."--

\_Id.\_ "The principal accent distinguishes one syllable \_of\_ a word from the

rest."--\_Id.\_ "Just numbers are in unison \_with\_ the human mind."--\_Id.\_

"We must accept of sound \_in stead\_ of sense."--\_Id.\_ "Also, \_in stead of

consultation\_, he uses \_consult\_."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "This ablative seems

to be governed \_by\_ a preposition understood."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "\_Lest\_ my

father \_hear of it\_, by some means or other."--\_Id.\_ "And, besides, my wife

would hear \_of it\_ by some means."--\_Id.\_ "For insisting \_on\_ a requisition

so odious to them."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "Based \_on\_ the great self-evident

truths of liberty and equality."--\_Manual cor.\_ "Very little knowledge of

their nature is acquired \_from\_ the spelling-book."--\_Murray cor.\_ "They do

not cut it off: except \_from\_ a few words; as, \_due, duly\_, &c."--\_Id.\_

"Whether passing \_at\_ such time, or then finished."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "It hath

disgusted hundreds \_with\_ that confession."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "But they have

egregiously fallen \_into\_ that inconveniency."--\_Id.\_ "For is not this, to

set nature \_at\_ work?"--\_Id.\_ "And, surely, that which should set all its

springs \_at\_ work, is God."--\_Atterbury cor.\_ "He could not end his

treatise without a panegyrie \_on\_ modern learning."--\_Temple cor.\_ "These

are entirely independent \_of\_ the modulation of the voice."--\_J. Walker

cor.\_ "It is dear \_at\_ a penny. It is cheap \_at\_ twenty pounds."--\_W.

Walker cor.\_ "It will be despatched, \_on\_ most occasions, without

resting."--\_Locke cor.\_ "\_Oh\_ the pain, the bliss of dying!"--\_Pope\_. "When

the objects or the facts are presented \_to him\_."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "I

will now present you a synopsis."--\_Id.\_ "The disjunctive conjunction

connects \_words or\_ sentences, \_and suggests an\_ opposition of meaning,

\_more or less direct\_."--\_Id.\_ "I shall now present \_to\_ you a few

lines."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Common names, \_or\_ substantives, are those which

stand for things \_assorted\_."--\_Id.\_ "Adjectives, in the English language,

\_are not varied by\_ genders, numbers, or cases; \_their only inflection is

for\_ the degrees of comparison."--\_Id.\_ "Participles are [little more than]

adjectives formed \_from\_ verbs."--\_Id.\_ "I do love to walk out \_on\_ a fine

\_summer\_ evening."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ellipsis\_, when applied to grammar, is the

elegant omission of one or more words \_of\_ a sentence."--\_Merchant cor.\_

"The \_preposition to\_ is generally \_required\_ before verbs in the

infinitive mood, but \_after\_ the following verbs it is properly omitted;

namely, \_bid, dare, feel, need, let, make, hear, see\_: as, 'He \_bid\_ me

\_do\_ it;' not, 'He \_bid\_ me \_to\_ do it.'"--\_Id.\_ "The infinitive sometimes

follows \_than, for the latter term of\_ a comparison; as, ['Murray should

have known \_better than to write\_, and Merchant, \_better than to copy\_, the

text here corrected, or the ambiguous example they appended to

it.']"--\_Id.\_ "Or, by prefixing the \_adverb more\_ or \_less, for\_ the

comparative, and \_most\_ or \_least, for\_ the superlative."--\_Id.\_ "A pronoun

is a word used \_in stead\_ of a noun."--\_Id.\_ "From monosyllables, the

comparative is regularly formed by adding \_r\_ or \_er\_."--\_Perley cor.\_ "He

has particularly named these, in distinction \_from\_ others."--\_Harris cor.\_

"To revive the decaying taste \_for ancient\_ literature."--\_Id.\_ "He found

the greatest difficulty \_in\_ writing."--\_Hume cor.\_

"And the tear, that is wiped with a little address,

May be followed perhaps \_by\_ a smile."--\_Cowper\_, i, 216.

CHAPTER XI.--INTERJECTIONS.

CORRECTIONS IN THE USE OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Of chance or change, \_O\_ let not man complain."--\_Beattie's Minstrel\_, B.

ii, l. 1. "O thou persecutor! \_O\_ ye hypocrites!"--\_Russell's Gram.\_, p.

92. "\_O\_ thou my voice inspire, Who \_touch'd\_ Isaiah's hallow'd lips with

fire!"--\_Pope's Messiah\_. "\_O happy we\_! surrounded by so many

blessings!"--\_Merchant cor.\_ "\_O thou who\_ art so unmindful of thy

duty!"--\_Id.\_ "If I am wrong, \_O\_ teach my heart To find that better

way."--\_Murray's Reader\_, p. 248. "Heus! evocate huc Davum."--\_Ter\_. "Ho!

call Davus out hither."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "It was represented by an analogy

(\_O\_ how inadequate!) which was borrowed from the \_ceremonies\_ of

paganism."--\_Murray cor.\_ "\_O\_ that Ishmael might live before

thee!"--\_Friends' Bible\_, and \_Scott's\_. "And he said unto him, \_O\_ let not

the Lord be angry, and I will speak."--\_Alger's Bible\_, and \_Scott's\_. "And

he said, \_O\_ let not the Lord be angry."--\_Alger; Gen.\_, xviii. 32. "\_O\_ my

Lord, let thy servant, I pray thee, speak a word."--\_Scott's Bible\_. "\_O\_

Virtue! how amiable thou art!"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 128. "\_Alas\_! I fear

for life."--See \_Ib.\_ "\_Ah\_ me! they little know How dearly I abide that

boast so vain!"--See \_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 87. "\_O\_ that I had digged myself

a cave!"--\_Fletcher cor.\_ "\_Oh\_, my good lord! thy comfort comes too

late."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "The vocative takes no article: it is distinguished

thus: \_O Pedro\_! O Peter! \_O Dios\_! O God!"--\_Bucke cor.\_ "\_Oho\_! But, the

relative is always the same."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "\_All-hail\_, ye happy

men!"--\_Jaudon cor.\_ "\_O\_ that I had wings like a dove!'--\_Scott's Bible\_.

"\_O glorious\_ hope! O \_bless'd\_ abode!"--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 304.

"\_Welcome\_ friends! how joyous is your presence!"--\_T. Smith cor.\_ "\_O\_

blissful days!--\_but, ah\_! how soon ye pass!"--\_Parker and Fox cor.\_

"\_O\_ golden days! \_O\_ bright unvalued hours!--

What bliss, did ye but know that bliss, were yours!"--\_Barbauld cor.\_

"\_Ah\_ me! what perils do environ

The man that meddles with cold iron!"--\_Hudibras cor.\_

THE KEY.--PART III.--SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.--SENTENCES.

The first chapter of Syntax, being appropriated to general views of this

part of grammar, to an exhibition of its leading doctrines, and to the

several forms of sentential analysis, with an application of its principal

rules in parsing, contains no false grammar for correction; and has, of

course, nothing to correspond to it, in this Key, except the title, which

is here inserted for form's sake.

CHAPTER II.--ARTICLES.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE I.

UNDER NOTE I.--AN OR A.

"I have seen \_a\_ horrible thing in the house of Israel."--\_Bible cor.\_

"There is \_a\_ harshness in the following sentences."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, p. 152. "Indeed, such \_a\_ one is not to be looked for."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "If each of you will be disposed to approve himself \_a\_ useful

citizen."--\_Id.\_ "Land with them had acquired almost \_a\_ European

value."--\_Webster cor.\_ "He endeavoured to find out \_a\_ wholesome

remedy."--\_Neef cor.\_ "At no time have we attended \_a\_ yearly meeting more

to our own satisfaction."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "Addison was not \_a humorist\_

in character."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Ah me! what \_a\_ one was he!"--\_Lily cor.\_ "He

was such \_a\_ one as I never saw before"--\_Id.\_ "No man can be a good

preacher, who is not \_a\_ useful one."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "\_A\_ usage which is

too frequent with Mr. Addison."--\_Id.\_ "Nobody joins the voice of a sheep

with the shape of \_a\_ horse."--\_Locke cor.\_ "\_A\_ universality seems to be

aimed at by the omission of the article."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Architecture

is \_a\_ useful as well as a fine art."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Because the same

individual conjunctions do not preserve \_a\_ uniform signification."--

\_Nutting cor.\_ "Such a work required the patience and assiduity of \_a\_

hermit."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "Resentment is \_a\_ union of sorrow with

malignity."--\_Id.\_ "His bravery, we know, was \_a\_ high courage of

blasphemy."--\_Pope cor.\_ "HYSSOP; \_an\_ herb of bitter taste."--\_Pike cor.\_

"On each enervate string they taught the note

To pant, or tremble through \_a eunuch's\_ throat."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--AN OR A WITH PLURALS.

"At a \_session\_ of the court, in March, it was moved," &c.--\_Hutchinson

cor.\_ "I shall relate my conversations, of which I kept memoranda."--\_D.

D'Ab. cor.\_ "I took \_an other\_ dictionary, and with a \_pair of\_ scissors

cut out, for instance, the word ABACUS."--\_A. B. Johnson cor.\_ "A person

very meet seemed he for the purpose, \_and about\_ forty-five years

old."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "And it came to pass, about eight days after these

sayings."--\_Bible cor.\_ "There were slain of them about three thousand

men."--\_1 Macc. cor.\_ "Until I had gained the top of these white mountains,

which seemed \_other\_ Alps of snow."--\_Addison cor.\_ "To make them

satisfactory amends for all the losses they had sustained."--\_Goldsmith

cor.\_ "As a \_first-fruit\_ of many that shall be gathered."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"It makes indeed a little \_amend\_, (or \_some amends\_,) by inciting us to

oblige people."--\_Sheffield cor.\_ "A large and lightsome \_back stairway\_

(or \_flight of backstairs\_) leads up to an entry above."--\_Id.\_ "Peace of

mind is an \_abundant recompense\_ for \_any\_ sacrifices of

interest."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "With such a spirit, and \_such\_

sentiments, were hostilities carried on."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "In the midst

of a thick \_wood\_, he had long lived a voluntary recluse."--\_G. B\_. "The

flats look almost like a young \_forest\_."--\_Chronicle cor.\_ "As we went on,

the country for a little \_way\_ improved, but scantily."--\_Freeman cor.\_

"Whereby the Jews were permitted to return into their own country, after \_a

captivity of seventy years\_ at Babylon."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "He did not go a

great \_way\_ into the country."--\_Gilbert cor.\_

"A large \_amend\_ by fortune's hand is made,

And the lost Punic blood is well repay'd."--\_Rowe cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--NOUNS CONNECTED.

"As where a landscape is conjoined with the music of birds, and \_the\_ odour

of flowers."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The last order resembles the second in the

mildness of its accent, and \_the\_ softness of its pause."--\_Id.\_ "Before

the use of the loadstone, or \_the\_ knowledge of the compass."--\_Dryden

cor.\_ "The perfect participle and \_the\_ imperfect tense ought not to be

confounded."--\_Murray cor.\_ "In proportion as the taste of a poet or \_an\_

orator becomes more refined."--\_Blair cor.\_ "A situation can never be more

intricate, \_so\_ long as there is an angel, \_a\_ devil, or \_a\_ musician, to

lend a helping hand."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Avoid rude sports: an eye is soon

lost, or \_a\_ bone broken."--\_Inst.\_, p. 262. "Not a word was uttered, nor

\_a\_ sign given."--\_Ib.\_ "I despise not the doer, but \_the\_ deed."--\_Ib.\_

"For the sake of an easier pronunciation and \_a\_ more agreeable

sound."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "The levity as well as \_the\_ loquacity of the Greeks

made them incapable of keeping up the true standard of history."--

\_Bolingbroke cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"It is proper that the vowels be a long and \_a\_ short one."--\_Murray cor.\_

"Whether the person mentioned was seen by the speaker a long or \_a\_ short

time before."--\_Id. et al\_. "There are three genders; \_the\_ masculine,

\_the\_ feminine, and \_the\_ neuter."--\_Adam cor.\_ "The numbers are two; \_the\_

singular and \_the\_ plural."--\_Id. et al\_. "The persons are three; \_the\_

first, \_the\_ second, and \_the\_ third."--\_Iidem\_. "Nouns and pronouns have

three cases; the nominative, \_the\_ possessive, and \_the\_ objective."--

\_Comly and Ing. cor.\_ "Verbs have five moods; namely, the infinitive, \_the\_

indicative, \_the\_ potential, \_the\_ subjunctive, and \_the\_ imperative."--

\_Bullions et al. cor.\_ "How many numbers have pronouns? Two, the singular

and \_the\_ plural."--\_Bradley cor.\_ "To distinguish between an interrogative

and \_an\_ exclamatory sentence."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "The first and \_the\_

last of which are \_compound\_ members."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "In the last lecture,

I treated of the concise and \_the\_ diffuse, the nervous and \_the\_ feeble

manner."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The passive and \_the\_ neuter verbs I shall reserve

for some future conversation."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "There are two voices; the

active and \_the\_ passive."--\_Adam et al. cor.\_ "WHOSE is rather the

poetical than \_the\_ regular genitive of WHICH."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "To feel

the force of a compound or \_a\_ derivative word."--\_Town cor.\_ "To preserve

the distinctive uses of the copulative and \_the\_ disjunctive

conjunctions."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "E has a long and \_a\_ short sound in

most languages."--\_Bicknell cor.\_ "When the figurative and \_the\_ literal

sense are mixed and jumbled together."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The Hebrew, with

which the Canaanitish and \_the\_ Phoenician stand in connexion."--\_Conant\_

and \_Fowler cor.\_ "The languages of Scandinavia proper, the Norwegian and

\_the\_ Swedish."--\_Fowler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"The path of truth is a plain and safe path."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Directions

for acquiring a just and happy elocution."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Its leading

object is, to adopt a correct and easy method."--\_Id.\_ "How can it choose

but wither in a long and sharp winter?"--\_Cowley cor.\_ "Into a dark and

distant unknown."--\_Dr. Chalmers cor.\_ "When the bold and strong enslaved

his fellow man."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "We now proceed to consider the things

most essential to an accurate and perfect sentence."--\_Murray cor.\_ "And

hence arises a second and very considerable source of the improvement of

taste."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Novelty produces in the mind a vivid and

agreeable emotion."--\_Id.\_ "The deepest and bitterest feeling still is

\_that of\_ the separation."--\_Dr. M'Rie cor.\_ "A great and good man looks

beyond time."--See \_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 263. "They made but a weak and

ineffectual resistance."--\_Ib.\_ "The light and worthless kernels will

float."--\_Ib.\_ "I rejoice that there is an other and better world."--\_Ib.\_

"For he is determined to revise his work, and present to the \_public an

other and better\_ edition."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "He hoped that this title would

secure \_to\_ him an ample and independent authority."--\_L. Murray cor. et

al\_. "There is, however, \_an other and more limited sense\_."--\_J. Q. Adams

cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--ARTICLES OR PLURALS.

"This distinction forms what are called the diffuse \_style\_ and the

concise."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Two different modes of speaking, distinguished

at first by the denominations of \_the Attic manner\_ and \_the

Asiatic\_."--\_Adams cor.\_ "But the great design of uniting the Spanish and

French monarchies under the former, was laid."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "In the

solemn and poetic styles, it [\_do\_ or \_did\_] is often rejected."--\_Allen

cor.\_ "They cannot be, at the same time, in \_both\_ the objective \_case\_ and

the nominative." Or: "They cannot be, at the same time, in \_both\_ the

objective and the nominative \_case\_." Or: "They cannot be, at the same

time, in the nominative \_case\_, and \_also in the\_ objective." Or: "They

cannot be, at the same time, in the nominative and objective

cases."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 148. Or, better: "They cannot be, at the

same time, in \_both\_ cases, the nominative and \_the\_ objective."--\_Murray

et al. cor.\_ "They are named the positive, comparative, and superlative

degrees."--\_Smart cor.\_ "Certain adverbs are capable of taking an

inflection; namely, that of the comparative and superlative

degrees."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "In the subjunctive mood, the present and

imperfect tenses often carry with them a future sense."--\_Murray et al.

cor.\_ "The imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first-future

\_tense\_, of this mood, are conjugated like the same tenses of the

indicative."--\_Kirkham bettered\_. "What rules apply in parsing personal

pronouns of the second and third \_persons\_?"--\_Id.\_ "Nouns are sometimes in

the nominative or \_the\_ objective case after the neuter verb \_be\_, or after

an active-intransitive or \_a\_ passive verb." "The verb varies its \_ending\_

in the singular, in order to agree with its nominative, in the first,

second, and third \_persons\_."--\_Id.\_ "They are identical in effect with the

radical and the vanishing \_stress\_."--\_Rush cor.\_ "In a sonnet, the first,

\_the\_ fourth, \_the\_ fifth, and \_the\_ eighth line, \_usually\_ rhyme to \_one

an\_ other: so do the second, third, sixth, and seventh \_lines\_; the ninth,

eleventh, and thirteenth \_lines\_; and the tenth, twelfth, and fourteenth

\_lines\_."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "The iron and golden ages are run; youth and

manhood are departed."--\_Wright cor.\_ "If, as you say, the iron and the

golden \_age\_ are past, the youth and the manhood of the world."--\_Id.\_ "An

Exposition of the Old and New \_Testaments\_."--\_Henry cor.\_ "The names and

order of the books of the Old and \_the\_ New Testament."--\_Bible cor.\_ "In

the second and third \_persons\_ of that tense."--\_Murray cor.\_ "And who

still unites in himself the human and the divine \_nature\_."--\_Gurney cor.\_

"Among whom arose the Italian, Spanish, French, and English

languages."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Whence arise these two \_numbers\_, the singular

and the plural."--\_Burn cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--CORRESPONDENT TERMS.

"Neither the definitions nor \_the\_ examples are entirely the same \_as\_

his."--\_Ward cor.\_ "Because it makes a discordance between the thought and

\_the\_ expression."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Between the adjective and \_the\_ following

substantive."--\_Id.\_ "Thus Athens became both the repository and \_the\_

nursery of learning."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "But the French pilfered from both

the Greek and \_the\_ Latin."--\_Id.\_ "He shows that Christ is both the power

and \_the\_ wisdom of God."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "That he might be Lord both of

the dead and \_of the\_ living."--\_Bible cor.\_ "This is neither the obvious

nor \_the\_ grammatical meaning of his words."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Sometimes both

the accusative and \_the\_ infinitive are understood."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_

"In some cases, we can use either the nominative or \_the\_ accusative,

promiscuously."--\_Iidem\_. "Both the former and \_the\_ latter substantive are

sometimes to be understood."--\_Iidem\_. "Many \_of\_ which have escaped both

the commentator and \_the\_ poet himself."--\_Pope cor.\_ "The verbs MUST and

OUGHT, have both a present and \_a\_ past signification."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"How shall we distinguish between the friends and \_the\_ enemies of the

government?"--\_Dr. Webster cor.\_ "Both the \_ecclesiastical\_ and \_the\_

secular powers concurred in those measures."--\_Dr. Campbell cor.\_ "As the

period has a beginning and \_an\_ end within itself, it implies an

\_inflection\_."--\_J. Q. Adams cor.\_ "Such as ought to subsist between a

principal and \_an\_ accessory."--\_Ld. Kames cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--CORRESPONDENCE PECULIAR.

"When both the upward and the downward \_slide\_ occur in \_the sound of one\_

syllable, they are called a CIRCUMFLEX, or WAVE."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The word

THAT is used both in the nominative and \_in the objective case\_."--\_Sanborn

cor.\_ "But \_in\_ all the other moods and tenses, both of the active and \_of

the\_ passive \_voice\_ [the verbs] are conjugated at large."--\_Murray cor.\_

"Some writers on grammar, admitting the second-future \_tense into\_ the

indicative mood, \_reject it from the\_ subjunctive."--\_Id.\_ "\_After\_ the

same conjunction, \_to use\_ both the indicative and the subjunctive \_mood\_

in the same sentence, and \_under\_ the same circumstances, seems to be a

great impropriety."--\_Id.\_ "The true distinction between the subjunctive

and the indicative \_mood\_ in this tense."--\_Id.\_ "I doubt of his capacity

to teach either the French or \_the\_ English \_language\_."--\_Chazotte cor.\_

"It is as necessary to make a distinction between the active-transitive and

the active-intransitive verb, as between the active and \_the\_

passive."--\_Nixon cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IX.--A SERIES OF TERMS.

"As comprehending the terms uttered by the artist, the mechanic, and \_the\_

husbandman."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "They may be divided into four classes; the

Humanists, \_the\_ Philanthropists, \_the Pestalozzians\_, and the

\_Productives\_."--\_Smith cor.\_ "Verbs have six tenses; the present, the

imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, the \_first-future\_, and the

\_second-future\_."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "Is it an irregular \_neuter\_ verb

[from \_be, was, being, been\_; found in] \_the\_ indicative mood, present

tense, third person, and singular number."--\_Murray cor.\_ "SHOULD GIVE is

an irregular \_active-transitive\_ verb [from \_give, gave, given, giving\_;

found] in the potential mood, imperfect tense, first person, and plural

number."--\_Id.\_ "US is a personal pronoun, \_of the\_ first person, plural

number, \_masculine gender\_, and objective case."--\_Id.\_ "THEM is a personal

pronoun, of the third person, plural number, \_masculine gender\_, and

objective case."--\_Id.\_ "It is surprising that the Jewish critics, with

all their skill in dots, points, and accents, never had the ingenuity to

invent a point of interrogation, \_a point\_ of admiration, or a

parenthesis."--\_Dr. Wilson cor.\_ "The fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth

\_verses\_." Or: "The fifth, \_the\_ sixth, \_the\_ seventh, and the eighth

verse."--\_O. B. Peirce cor\_. "Substitutes have three persons; the First,

\_the\_ Second, and the Third."--\_Id.\_ "JOHN'S is a proper noun, of the third

person, singular number, masculine gender, and possessive case: and \_is\_

governed by 'WIFE,' \_according to\_ Rule" [4th, \_which says\_, &c.]--\_Smith

cor\_. "Nouns, in the English language, have three cases; the nominative,

the possessive, and \_the\_ objective."--\_Bar. and Alex. cor.\_ "The potential

mood has four tenses; viz., the present, the imperfect, the perfect, and

\_the\_ pluperfect."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_

"Where Science, Law, and Liberty depend,

And own the patron, patriot, and friend."--\_Savage cor.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--SPECIES AND GENUS.

"\_The\_ pronoun is a part of speech[532] put for \_the\_ noun."--\_Paul's Ac.

cor.\_ "\_The\_ verb is a part of speech declined with mood and tense."--\_Id.\_

"\_The\_ participle is a part of speech derived \_from the\_ verb."--\_Id.\_

"\_The\_ adverb is a part of speech joined to verbs, [participles,

adjectives, or other adverbs,] to declare their signification."--\_Id.\_

"\_The\_ conjunction is a part of speech that \_joins words or\_ sentences

together."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_ preposition is a part of speech most commonly set

before other parts."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_ interjection is a part of speech which

\_betokens\_ a sudden \_emotion\_ or passion of the mind."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_

enigma, or riddle, is also a species of allegory."--\_Blair and Murray cor.\_

"We may take from the Scriptures a very fine example of \_the\_

allegory."--\_Iidem\_. "And thus have you exhibited a sort of sketch of

art."--\_Harris cor.\_ "We may 'imagine a subtle kind of reasoning,' as Mr.

Harris acutely observes."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "But, before entering on these,

I shall give one instance of \_metaphor, very beautiful\_, (or, one \_very

beautiful\_ instance of metaphor,) that I may show the figure to full

advantage."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Aristotle, in his Poetics, uses \_metaphor\_ in

this extended sense, for any figurative meaning imposed upon a word; as

\_the\_ whole put for \_a\_ part, or a part for \_the\_ whole; \_a\_ species for

the genus, or \_the\_ genus for a species."--\_Id.\_ "It shows what kind of

apple it is of which we are speaking."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Cleon was \_an

other\_ sort of man."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "To keep off his right wing, as a

kind of reserved body."--\_Id.\_ "This part of speech is called \_the\_

verb."--\_Mack cor.\_ "What sort of thing is it?"--\_Hiley cor.\_ "What sort of

charm do they possess?"--\_Bullions cor.\_

"Dear Welsted, mark, in dirty hole,

That painful animal, \_the\_ mole."--\_Dunciad cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XI.--ARTICLES NOT REQUISITE.

"Either thou or the boys were in fault."--\_Comly cor.\_ "It may, at first

view, appear to be too general."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "When the verb has

reference to future time."--\_Iidem\_. "No; they are the language of

imagination, rather than of passion."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The dislike of English

Grammar, which has so generally prevailed, can be attributed \_only\_ to the

intricacy of [our] syntax."--\_Russell cor.\_ "Is that ornament in good

taste?"--\_Kames cor.\_ "There are not many fountains in good taste." Or:

"Not many fountains are [ornamented] in good taste."--\_Id.\_ "And I

persecuted this way unto death."--\_Bible cor.\_ "The sense of feeling can,

indeed, give us a notion of extension."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 411. "The

distributive \_adjectives, each, every, either\_, agree with nouns, pronouns,

\_or\_ verbs, of the singular number only."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Expressing by one

word, what might, by a circumlocution, be resolved into two or more words

belonging to other parts of speech."--\_Blair cor.\_ "By certain muscles

which operate [in harmony, and] all at the same time."--\_Murray cor.\_ "It

is sufficient here to have observed thus much in general concerning

them."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Nothing disgusts us sooner than empty pomp of

language."--\_Murray cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XII.--TITLES AND NAMES.

"He is entitled to the appellation of \_gentleman\_."--\_G. Brown\_. "Cromwell

assumed the title of Protector"--\_Id.\_ "Her father is honoured with the

title of \_Earl\_."--\_Id.\_ "The chief magistrate is styled \_President\_."--

\_Id.\_ "The highest title in the state is that of \_Governor\_."--\_Id.\_ "That

boy is known by the name of \_Idler\_."--\_Murray cor.\_ "The one styled

\_Mufti\_, is the head of the ministers of law and religion."--\_Balbi cor.\_

"Ranging all that possessed them under one class, he called that whole

class \_tree\_."--\_Blair cor.\_ "For \_oak, pine\_, and \_ash\_, were names of

whole classes of objects."--\_Id.\_ "It is of little importance whether we

give to some particular mode of expression the name of \_trope\_, or of

\_figure\_."--\_Id.\_ "The collision of a vowel with itself is the most

ungracious of all combinations, and has been doomed to peculiar reprobation

under the name of \_hiatus\_."--\_Adams cor.\_ "We hesitate to determine,

whether \_Tyrant\_ alone is the nominative, or whether the nominative

includes the \_word Spy\_."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "Hence originated the customary

abbreviation of \_twelve months\_ into \_twelvemonth\_; of \_seven nights\_ into

\_sennight\_; of \_fourteen nights\_ into \_fortnight\_."--\_Webster cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XIII.--COMPARISONS AND ALTERNATIVES.

"He is a better writer than reader."--\_W. Allen\_. "He was an abler

mathematician than linguist."--\_Id.\_ "I should rather have an orange than

\_an\_ apple."--\_G. Brown\_. "He was no less able \_as\_ a negotiator, than

courageous \_as\_ a warrior."--\_Smollett cor.\_ "In an epic poem, we pardon

many negligences that would not be permitted in a sonnet or \_an\_

epigram."--\_Kames cor.\_ "That figure is a sphere, globe, or

ball."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 357.

UNDER NOTE XIV.--ANTECEDENTS TO WHO OR WHICH.

"\_The\_ carriages which were formerly in use, were very clumsy."--\_Key to

Inst\_. "The place is not mentioned by \_the\_ geographers who wrote at that

time."--\_Ib.\_ "Those questions which a person \_puts to\_ himself in

contemplation, ought to be terminated \_with\_ points of interrogation."--

\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "The work is designed for the use of \_those\_ persons who

may think it merits a place in their libraries."--\_Mur. cor.\_ "That \_those\_

who think confusedly, should express themselves obscurely, is not to be

wondered at."--\_Id.\_ "\_Those\_ grammarians who limit the number to two, or

three, do not reflect."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_ substantives which end in \_ian\_, are

those that signify profession." Or: "\_Those\_ substantives which end in

\_ian\_, are \_such as\_ signify profession."--\_Id.\_ "To these may be added

\_those\_ verbs which, among the poets, \_usually\_ govern the dative."--\_Adam

and Gould cor.\_ "\_The\_ consonants are \_those\_ letters which cannot be

sounded without the aid of a vowel."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "To employ the curiosity

of persons \_skilled\_ in grammar:"--"of \_those\_ who are skilled in

grammar:"--"of persons \_that\_ are skilled in grammar:"--"of \_such\_ persons

\_as\_ are skilled in grammar:" or--"of \_those\_ persons \_who\_ are skilled in

grammar."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "This rule refers only to \_those\_ nouns and

pronouns which have the same bearing, or relation."--\_Id.\_ "So that \_the\_

things which are seen, were not made of things \_that\_ do appear."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "Man is an imitative creature; he may utter \_again\_ the sounds which

he has heard."--\_Dr. Wilson cor.\_ "But \_those\_ men whose business is wholly

domestic, have little or no use for any language but their own."--\_Dr.

Webster cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XV.--PARTICIPIAL NOUNS.

"Great benefit may be reaped from \_the\_ reading of histories."--\_Sewel

cor.\_ "And some attempts were made towards \_the\_ writing of

history."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "It is \_an\_ invading of the priest's office,

for any other to offer it"--\_Leslie cor.\_ "And thus far of \_the\_ forming of

verbs."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "And without \_the\_ shedding of blood \_there\_ is

no remission."--\_Bible cor.\_ "For \_the\_ making of measures, we have the

best method here in England."--\_Printer's Gram. cor.\_ "This is really both

\_an\_ admitting and \_a\_ denying at once."--\_Butler cor.\_ "And hence the

origin of \_the\_ making of parliaments."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "Next thou

objectest, that \_the\_ having of saving light and grace presupposes

conversion. But that I deny: for, on the contrary, conversion \_presupposes

the\_ having \_of\_ light and grace."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "They cried down \_the\_

wearing of rings and other superfluities, as we do."--\_Id.\_ "Whose

adorning, let it not be that outward adorning, of \_the\_ plaiting \_of\_ the

hair, and of \_the\_ wearing of gold, or of \_the putting-on\_ of

apparel."--\_Bible cor.\_ "In \_the\_ spelling of derivative words, the

\_primitives\_ must be kept whole."--\_Brit. Gram. and Buchanan's cor.\_ "And

the princes offered for \_the\_ dedicating of the altar."--\_Numb. cor.\_

"Boasting is not only \_a\_ telling of lies, but also \_of\_ many unseemly

truths."--\_Sheffield cor.\_ "We freely confess that \_the\_ forbearing of

prayer in the wicked is sinful."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For \_the\_ revealing of a

secret, there is no remedy."--\_G. Brown\_. "He turned all his thoughts to

\_the\_ composing of laws for the good of the State."--\_Rollin cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XVI.--PARTICIPLES, NOT NOUNS.

"It is salvation to be kept from falling into a pit, as truly as to be

taken out of it after falling in."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For in receiving and

embracing the testimony of truth, they felt their souls eased."--\_Id.\_

"True regularity does not consist in having but a single rule, and forcing

every thing to conform to it."--\_Phil. Museum cor.\_ "To the man of the

world, this sound of glad tidings appears only an idle tale, and not worth

attending to."--\_Say cor.\_ "To be the deliverer of the captive Jews, by

ordering their temple to be rebuilt," &c.--\_Rollin cor.\_ "And for

preserving them from being defiled."--\_Discip. cor.\_ "A wise man will

\_forbear to show\_ any excellence in trifles."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Hirsutus had

no other reason for valuing a book."--\_Johnson, and Wright, cor.\_ "To being

heard with satisfaction, it is necessary that the speaker should deliver

himself with ease." Perhaps better: "\_To be\_ heard, &c." Or: "\_In order to

be\_ heard, &c."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "And, to the \_end of\_ being well heard and

clearly understood, a good and distinct articulation contributes more, than

\_can even the greatest\_ power of voice."--\_Id.\_

"\_Potential\_ purports, \_having power or will\_;

As, If you \_would\_ improve, you \_should\_ be still."--\_Tobitt cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XVII.--VARIOUS ERRORS.

"For the same reason, a neuter verb cannot become passive."--\_Lowth cor.\_

"\_A\_ period is \_a\_ whole sentence complete in itself."--\_Id.\_ "\_A\_ colon,

or member, is a chief constructive part, or \_the greatest\_ division, of a

sentence."--\_Id.\_ "\_A\_ semicolon, or half-member, is a \_smaller\_

constructive part, or \_a\_ subdivision, of a sentence or \_of\_ a

member."--\_Id.\_ "A sentence or \_a\_ member is again subdivided into commas,

or segments."--\_Id.\_ "The first error that I would mention is, too general

\_an\_ attention to the dead languages, with a neglect of our own

\_tongue\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "One third of the importations would supply the

demands of \_the\_ people."--\_Id.\_ "And especially in \_a\_ grave

\_style\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 178. "By too eager \_a\_ pursuit, he ran a

great risk of being disappointed."--\_Murray cor.\_ "\_The\_ letters are

divided into vowels and consonants."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "\_The\_ consonants

are divided into mutes and semivowels."--\_Iidem\_. "The first of these forms

is \_the\_ most agreeable to the English idiom."--\_Murray cor.\_ "If they

gain, it is \_at\_ too dear \_a\_ rate."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "A pronoun is a word

used \_in stead\_ of a noun, to prevent too frequent \_a\_ repetition of

it."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "This vulgar error might perhaps arise from too

partial \_a\_ fondness for the Latin."--\_Ash cor.\_ "The groans which too

heavy \_a\_ load extorts from her."--\_Hitchcock cor.\_ "The numbers of a verb

are, of course, \_the\_ singular and \_the\_ plural."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "To brook

no meanness, and to stoop to no dissimulation, are indications of a great

mind."--\_Murray cor.\_ "This mode of expression rather suits \_the\_ familiar

than \_the\_ grave style."--\_Id.\_ "This use of the word \_best\_ suits \_a\_

familiar and low style."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "According to the nature of the

composition, the one or \_the\_ other may be predominant."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Yet

the commonness of such sentences prevents in a great measure too early \_an\_

expectation of the end."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "A eulogy or a philippic may be

pronounced by an individual of one nation upon \_a\_ subject of \_an\_

other."--\_J. Q. Adams cor.\_ "A French sermon is, for \_the\_ most part, a

warm animated exhortation."--\_Blair cor.\_ "I do not envy those who think

slavery no very pitiable lot."--\_Channing cor.\_ "The auxiliary and \_the\_

principal united constitute a tense."--\_Murray cor.\_ "There are some verbs

which are defective with respect to \_the\_ persons."--\_Id.\_ "In youth,

habits of industry are \_the\_ most easily acquired."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_

apostrophe (') is used in place of a letter left out."--\_Bullions cor.\_

CHAPTER III.--CASES, OR NOUNS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE II; OF NOMINATIVES.

"The whole need not a physician, but \_they\_ that are sick."--\_Bunyan cor.\_

"He will in no wise cast out \_whosoever\_ cometh unto him." Better: "He will

in no wise cast out \_any that come\_ unto him."--\_Hall cor.\_ "He feared the

enemy might fall upon his men, \_who\_, he saw, were off their

guard."--\_Hutchinson cor.\_ "\_Whosoever\_ shall compel thee to go a mile, go

with him twain."--\_Matt.\_, v, 41. "The \_ideas\_ of the author have been

conversant with the faults of other writers."--\_Swift cor.\_ "You are a much

greater loser than \_I\_, by his death." Or: "\_Thou art\_ a much greater loser

by his death than \_I\_."--\_Id.\_ "Such \_peccadilloes\_ pass with him for pious

frauds."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "In whom I am nearly concerned, and \_who\_, I know,

would be very apt to justify my whole procedure."--\_Id.\_ "Do not think such

a man as \_I\_ contemptible for my garb."--\_Addison cor.\_ "His wealth and

\_he\_ bid adieu to each other."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "So that, 'He is greater

than \_I\_,' will be more grammatical than, 'He is greater than

\_me\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "The Jesuits had more interests at court than \_he\_."--\_Id.

and Smollett cor.\_ "Tell the Cardinal that I understand poetry better than

\_he\_."--\_Iid.\_ "An inhabitant of Crim Tartary was far more happy than

\_he\_."--\_Iid.\_ "My father and \_he\_ have been very intimate since."--\_Fair

Am. cor.\_ "Who was the agent, and \_who\_, the object struck or

kissed?"--\_Mrs. Bethune cor.\_ "To find the person \_who\_, he imagined, was

concealed there."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "He offered a great recompense to

\_whosoever\_ would help him." Better: "He offered a great recompense to \_any

one who\_ would help him."--\_Hume and Pr. cor.\_ "They would be under the

dominion, absolute and unlimited, of \_whosoever\_ (or \_any one who\_) might

exercise the right of judgement."--\_Haynes cor.\_ "They had promised to

accept \_whosoever\_ (or \_any one who\_) should be born in Wales."--\_Croker

cor.\_ "We sorrow not as \_they\_ that have no hope."--\_Maturin cor.\_ "If he

suffers, he suffers as \_they\_ that have no hope."--\_Id.\_ "We acknowledge

that he, and \_he\_ only, hath been our peacemaker."--\_Gratton cor.\_ "And

what can be better than \_he\_ that made it?"--\_Jenks cor.\_ "None of his

school-fellows is more beloved than \_he\_."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "Solomon, who was

wiser than \_they\_ all."--\_Watson cor.\_ "Those \_who\_ the Jews thought were

the last to be saved, first entered the kingdom of God."--\_Tract cor.\_ "A

stone is heavy, and the sand weighty; but a fool's wrath is heavier than

both."--\_Bible cor.\_ "A man of business, in good company, is hardly more

insupportable, than \_she whom\_ they call a notable woman."--\_Steele cor.\_

"The king of the Sarmatians, \_who\_ we may imagine was no small prince,

restored to him a hundred thousand Roman prisoners."--\_Life of Anton. cor.\_

"Such notions would be avowed at this time by none but rosicrucians, and

fanatics as mad as \_they\_."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 203. "Unless, as I

said, Messieurs, you are the masters, and not \_I\_."--\_Hall cor.\_ "We had

drawn up against peaceable travellers, who must have been as glad as \_we\_

to escape."--\_Burnes cor.\_ "Stimulated, in turn, by their approbation and

that of better judges than \_they\_, she turned to their literature with

redoubled energy."--\_Quarterly Rev. cor.\_ "I know not \_who\_ else are

expected."--\_Scott cor.\_ "He is great, but truth is greater than \_we\_ all."

Or: "He is great, but truth is greater than \_any of us\_."--\_H. Mann cor.\_.

"\_He\_ I accuse has entered." Or, by ellipsis of the antecedent, thus:

"\_Whom\_ I accuse has entered."--\_Fowler cor.; also Shakspeare.\_

"Scotland and \_thou\_ did each in other live."--\_Dryden cor.\_

"We are alone; here's none but \_thou\_ and I."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"\_I\_ rather \_would\_, my heart might feel your love,

Than my unpleas'd eye see your courtesy."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"Tell me, in sadness, \_who\_ is she you love?"--\_Shak. cor.\_

"Better leave undone, than by our deeds acquire

Too high a fame, when \_he\_ we serve's away."--\_Shak. cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE III; OF APPOSITION.

"Now, therefore, come thou, let us make a covenant, \_thee\_ and

\_me\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Now, therefore, come thou, we will make a covenant,

\_thou\_ and \_I\_."--\_Variation corrected\_. "The word came not to Esau, the

hunter, that stayed not at home; but to Jacob, the plain man, \_him\_ that

dwelt in tents."--\_Penn cor.\_ "Not to every man, but to the man of God,

(i.e.,) \_him\_ that is led by the spirit of God."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For,

admitting God to be a creditor, or \_him\_ to whom the debt should be paid,

and Christ \_him\_ that satisfies or pays it on behalf of man the debtor,

this question will arise, whether he paid that debt as God, or man, or

both?"--\_Penn cor.\_ "This Lord Jesus Christ, the heavenly Man, the

Emmanuel, God with us, we own and believe in: \_him\_ whom the high priests

raged against," &c.--\_Fox cor.\_ "Christ, and \_He\_ crucified, was the Alpha

and Omega of all his addresses, the fountain and foundation of his hope and

trust."--\_Exp. cor.\_ "Christ, and \_He\_ crucified, is the head, and the only

head, of the church."--\_Denison cor.\_ "But if Christ, and \_He\_ crucified,

\_is\_ the burden of the ministry, such disastrous results are all

avoided."--\_Id.\_ "He never let fall the least intimation, that himself, or

any other person \_whosoever\_, was the object of worship."--\_View cor.\_ "Let

the elders that rule well, be counted worthy of double honour, especially

\_them\_ who labour in the word and doctrine."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Our Shepherd,

\_he\_ who is styled King of saints, will assuredly give his saints the

victory."--\_Sermon cor.\_ "It may seem odd, to talk of \_us\_

subscribers."--\_Fowle cor.\_ "And they shall have none to bury them: \_they\_,

their wives, nor their sons, nor[533] their daughters; for I will pour

their wickedness upon them."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Yet I supposed it necessary to

send to you Epaphroditus, my brother, and companion in labour, and

fellow-soldier, but your messenger, and \_him\_ that ministered to my

wants."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Amidst the tumult of the routed train,

The sons of false Antimachus were slain;

\_Him\_ who for bribes his faithless counsels sold,

And voted Helen's stay for Paris' gold."--\_Pope cor.\_

"See the vile King his iron sceptre bear--

His only praise attends the pious heir;

\_Him\_ in whose soul the virtues all conspire,

The best good son, from the worst wicked sire."--\_Lowth cor.\_

"Then from thy lips poured forth a joyful song

To thy Redeemer!--yea, it poured along

In most melodious energy of praise,

To God, the Saviour, \_him\_ of ancient days."--\_Arm Chair cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE IV; OF POSSESSIVES.

UNDER NOTE I.--THE POSSESSIVE FORM.

"\_Man's\_ chief good is an upright mind."--\_Key to Inst\_. "The translator of

\_Mallet's\_ History \_has\_ the following note."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The act,

while it gave five \_years'\_ full pay to the officers, allowed but one

year's pay to the privates."--\_Id.\_ "For the study of English is preceded

by several \_years'\_ attention to Latin and Greek."--\_Id.\_ "The first, the

\_Court-Baron\_, is the \_freeholders'\_ or \_freemen's\_ court."--\_Coke cor.\_ "I

affirm that \_Vaugelas's\_ definition labours under an essential

defect."--\_Campbell cor.; and also Murray\_. "There is a chorus in

\_Aristophanes's\_ plays."--\_Blair cor.\_ "It denotes the same perception in

my mind as in \_theirs\_."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "This afterwards enabled him to

read \_Hickes's\_ Saxon Grammar."--\_Life of Dr. Mur. cor.\_ "I will not do it

for \_ten's\_ sake."--\_Ash cor.\_ Or: "I will not \_destroy\_ it for \_ten's\_

sake."--\_Gen.\_, xviii, 32. "I arose, and asked if those charming infants

were \_hers\_."--\_Werter cor.\_ "They divide their time between \_milliners\_'

shops and \_the\_ taverns."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "The \_angels\_' adoring of Adam

is also mentioned in the Talmud."--\_Sale cor.\_ "Quarrels arose from the

\_winners\_' insulting of those who lost."--\_Id.\_ "The vacancy occasioned by

Mr. \_Adams's\_ resignation."--\_Adv. to Adams's Rhet. cor.\_ "Read, for

instance, \_Junius's\_ address, commonly called his \_Letter to the

King\_."--\_Adams cor.\_ "A perpetual struggle against the tide of

\_Hortensius's\_ influence."--\_Id.\_ "Which, for \_distinction's\_ sake, I shall

put down severally."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "The fifth case is in a clause

signifying the matter of \_one's\_ fear."--\_Id.\_ "And they took counsel, and

bought with them the \_potter's\_ field."--\_Alger cor.\_ "Arise for thy

\_servants\_' help, and redeem them for thy mercy's sake."--\_Jenks cor.\_

"Shall not their cattle, their substance, and every beast of \_theirs\_, be

\_ours\_?"--COM. BIBLE: \_Gen.\_, xxxiv, 23. "\_Its\_ regular plural, \_bullaces\_,

is used by Bacon."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Mordecai walked every day before the

court of the \_women's\_ house."--\_Scott cor.\_ "Behold, they that wear soft

clothing, are in \_kings\_' houses."--\_Alger's Bible\_. "Then Jethro,

\_Moses's\_ father-in-law, took Zipporah, \_Moses's\_ wife, and her two sons;

and Jethro, \_Moses's\_ father-in-law, came, with his sons and his wife, unto

Moses."--\_Scott's Bible\_. "King \_James's\_ translators merely revised former

translations."--\_Frazee cor.\_ "May they be like corn on \_houses\_'

tops."--\_White cor.\_

"And for his Maker's \_image'\_ sake exempt."--\_Milton cor.\_

"By all the fame acquired in ten \_years'\_ war."--\_Rowe cor.\_

"Nor glad vile poets with true \_critics'\_ gore."--\_Pope cor.\_

"Man only of a softer mold is made,

Not for his \_fellows'\_ ruin, but their aid."--\_Dryden cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--POSSESSIVES CONNECTED.

"It was necessary to have both the \_physician's\_ and the surgeon's

advice."--\_L. Murray's False Syntax\_, Rule 10. "This \_outside\_

fashionableness of the \_tailor's\_ or \_the tirewoman's\_ making."--\_Locke

cor.\_ "Some pretending to be of Paul's party, others of \_Apollos's\_, others

of \_Cephas's\_, and others, (pretending yet higher,) to be of

Christ's."--\_Wood cor.\_ "Nor is it less certain, that \_Spenser and

Milton's\_ spelling agrees better with our pronunciation."--\_Phil. Museum

cor.\_ "Law's, \_Edwards's\_, and \_Watts's Survey\_ of the Divine

Dispensations." Or thus: "\_Law, Edwards\_, and \_Watts's\_, Surveys of the

Divine Dispensations."--\_Burgh cor.\_ "And who was Enoch's Saviour, and the

\_prophets'\_?"--\_Bayly cor.\_ "Without any impediment but his own, his

\_parents'\_, or his \_guardian's\_ will."--\_Journal corrected\_. "James

relieves neither the \_boy's\_ nor the girl's distress."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "John

regards neither the \_master's\_ nor the pupil's advantage."--\_Id.\_ "You

reward neither the \_man's\_ nor the woman's labours."--\_Id.\_ "She examines

neither \_James's\_ nor John's conduct."--\_Id.\_ "Thou pitiest neither the

\_servant's\_ nor the master's injuries."--\_Id.\_ "We promote \_England's\_ or

Ireland's happiness."--\_Id.\_ "Were \_Cain's\_ and Abel's occupation the

same?"--\_G. Brown\_. "Were \_Cain\_ and Abel's occupations the same?"--\_Id.\_

"What was \_Simon\_ and Andrew's employment?"--\_Id.\_ "Till he can read \_for\_

himself \_Sanctius's\_ Minerva with \_Scioppius's\_ and Perizonius's

Notes."--\_Locke cor.\_

"And \_love\_ and friendship's finely-pointed dart

Falls blunted from each indurated heart." Or:--

"And \_love's\_ and friendship's finely-pointed dart

\_Fall\_ blunted from each indurated heart."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--CHOICE OF FORMS.

"But some degree of trouble is the portion \_of all men\_."--\_L. Murray et

al. cor.\_ "With the names \_of his father and mother\_ upon the blank

leaf."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "The general, in the name \_of the army\_, published a

declaration."--\_Hume cor.\_ "The vote \_of the Commons\_."--\_Id.\_ "The \_House

of Lords\_."--\_Id.\_ "A collection of \_the faults of writers\_;"--or, "A

collection \_of literary faults\_."--\_Swift cor.\_ "After ten \_years of\_

wars."--\_Id.\_ "Professing his detestation of such practices as \_those of\_

his predecessors."--\_Pope cor.\_ "By that time I shall have ended my \_year

of\_ office."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "For the sake \_of Herodias\_, the wife of

\_his brother Philip\_."--\_Bible and Mur. cor.\_ "I endure all things for \_the

sake of the elect\_, that they may also obtain salvation."--\_Bibles cor.\_

"He was \_heir to the son of\_ Louis the Sixteenth."--\_W. Allen\_. "The throne

we honour is the \_people's choice\_."--\_Rolla\_. "An account of the

proceedings of \_Alexander's court\_."--\_Inst.\_ "An excellent tutor \_for the

child of a person of fashion\_!"--\_Gil Blas cor.\_ "It is curious enough,

that this sentence of the \_Bishop's\_ is, itself, ungrammatical."--\_Cobbett

cor.\_ "The troops broke into the palace \_of\_ the \_Emperor\_

Leopold."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "The meeting was called by desire \_of\_ Eldon the

\_Judge\_."--\_Id.\_ "The occupation \_of Peter, John\_, and \_Andrew\_, was that

of fishermen."--\_Murray's Key\_, R. 10. "The \_debility of\_ the venerable

president of the Royal \_Academy\_, has lately increased."--\_Maunder cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--NOUNS WITH POSSESSIVES PLURAL.

"God hath not given us our \_reason\_ to no purpose."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For

our \_sake\_, no doubt, this is written."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Are not health and

strength of body desirable for their own \_sake\_?"--\_Harris and Murray cor.\_

"Some sailors who were boiling their \_dinner\_ upon the shore."--\_Day cor.\_

"And they, in their \_turn\_, were subdued by others."--\_Pinnock cor.\_

"Industry on our \_part\_ is not superseded by God's grace."--\_Arrowsmith

cor.\_ "Their \_health\_ perhaps may be pretty well secured."--\_Locke cor.\_

"Though he was rich, yet for \_your sake\_ he became poor."--See \_2 Cor.\_,

viii, 9. "It were to be wished, his correctors had been as wise on their

\_part\_."--\_Harris cor.\_ "The Arabs are commended by the ancients for being

most exact to their \_word\_, and respctful to their kindred."--\_Sale cor.\_

"That is, as a reward of some exertion on our \_part\_."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "So

that it went ill with Moses for their \_sake\_."--\_Ps. cor.\_ "All liars shall

have their \_part\_ in the burning lake."--\_Watts cor.\_ "For our own \_sake\_

as well as for thine."--\_Pref. to Waller cor.\_ "By discovering their

\_ability\_ to detect and amend errors."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"This world I do renounce; and, in your \_sight\_,

Shake patiently my great affliction off."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"If your relenting \_anger\_ yield to treat,

Pompey and thou, in safety, here may meet."--\_Rowe cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--POSSESSIVES WITH PARTICIPLES.

"This will encourage him to proceed without acquiring the

prejudice."--\_Smith cor.\_ "And the notice which they give of an \_action as\_

being completed or not completed."--\_L. Mur. et al. cor.\_ "Some obstacle,

or impediment, that prevents \_it from\_ taking place."--\_Priestley and A.

Mur. cor.\_ "They have apostolical authority for so frequently urging the

seeking of the Spirit."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "Here then is a wide field for

\_reason to exert\_ its powers in relation to the objects of taste."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "Now this they derive altogether from their greater capacity of

imitation and description."--\_Id.\_ "This is one clear reason \_why they

paid\_ a greater attention to that construction."--\_Id.\_ "The dialogue part

had also a modulation of its own, which was capable of being set to

notes."--\_Id.\_ "\_Why are we so often\_ frigid and unpersuasive in public

discourse?"--\_Id.\_ "Which is only a preparation for leading his forces

directly upon us."--\_Id.\_ "The nonsense about \_which, as\_ relating to

things only, and having no declension, needs no refutation."--\_Fowle cor.\_

"Who, upon breaking it open, found nothing but the following

inscription."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "A prince will quickly have reason to repent

\_of\_ having exalted one person so high."--\_Id.\_ "Notwithstanding \_it is\_

the immediate subject of his discourse."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "With our

definition of \_it, as\_ being synonymous with \_time\_."--\_Booth cor.\_ "It

will considerably increase \_our danger of\_ being deceived."--\_Campbell

cor.\_ "His beauties can never be mentioned without suggesting his blemishes

also."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "No example has ever been adduced, of a \_man\_

conscientiously approving an action, because of its badness." Or:--"of a

\_man who\_ conscientiously \_approved\_ of an action because of its

badness."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "The last episode, of the \_angel\_ showing to Adam

the fate of his posterity, is happily imagined."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "And the

news came to my son, \_that he\_ and the bride \_were\_ in Dublin."--\_M.

Edgeworth cor.\_ "There is no room for the \_mind to exert\_ any great

effort."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "One would imagine, that these \_critics\_ never

so much as heard \_that Homer wrote\_ first."--\_Pope cor.\_ "Condemn the book,

for not being a geography;" or,--"\_because it is not\_ a

geography."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "There will be in many words a transition from

being the figurative to being the proper signs of certain

ideas."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "The doctrine \_that the Pope is\_ the only source

of ecclesiastical power."--\_Rel. World cor.\_ "This \_was\_ the more

expedient, \_because\_ the work \_was\_ designed for the benefit of private

learners."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "This was \_done, because\_ the \_Grammar, being

already in type, did not admit\_ of enlargement."--\_Id.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE V; OF OBJECTIVES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE OBJECTIVE FORM.

"\_Whom\_ should I meet the other day but my old friend!"--\_Spect. cor.\_ "Let

not him boast that puts on his armour, but \_him\_ that takes it

off."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Let none touch it, but \_them\_ who are clean."--\_Sale

cor.\_ "Let the sea roar, and the fullness thereof; the world, and \_them\_

that dwell therein."--\_Ps. cor.\_ "Pray be private, and careful \_whom\_ you

trust."--\_Mrs. Goffe cor.\_ "How shall the people know \_whom\_ to entrust

with their property and their liberties?"--\_J. O. Taylor cor.\_ "The

chaplain entreated my comrade and \_me\_ to dress as well as

possible."--\_World cor.\_ "And \_him\_ that cometh \_to\_ me, I will in no wise

cast out."--\_John\_, vi, 37. "\_Whom\_, during this preparation, they

constantly and solemnly invoke."--\_Hope of Is. cor.\_ "Whoever or whatever

owes us, is Debtor; \_and whomever\_ or whatever we owe, is

Creditor."--\_Marsh cor.\_ "Declaring the curricle was his, and he should

have \_in it whom\_ he chose."--\_A. Ross cor.\_ "The fact is, Burke is the

only one of all the host of brilliant contemporaries, \_whom\_ we can rank as

a first-rate orator."--\_Knickerb. cor.\_ "Thus you see, how naturally the

Fribbles and the Daffodils have produced the \_Messalinas\_ of our

time."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "They would find in the Roman list both the

\_Scipios\_."--\_Id.\_ "He found his wife's clothes on fire, and \_her\_ just

expiring."--\_Observer cor.\_ "To present \_you\_ holy, and \_unblamable\_, and

\_unreprovable\_ in his sight."--\_Colossians\_, i, 22. "Let the distributer do

his duty with simplicity; the superintendent, with diligence; \_him\_ who

performs offices of compassion, with cheerfulness."--\_Stuart cor.\_ "If the

crew rail at the master of the vessel, \_whom\_ will they mind?"--\_Collier

cor.\_ "He having none but them, they having none but him"--\_Drayton cor.\_

"Thee, Nature, partial Nature, I arraign;

Of thy caprice maternal I complain."--\_Burns cor.\_

"\_Nor weens he who it is, whose charms consume\_

\_His longing soul\_, but loves he knows not \_whom\_"--\_Addison cor.\_

UNDER NOTE I.--OF VERBS TRANSITIVE.

"When it gives that sense, and also connects \_sentences\_, it is a

conjunction."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Though thou wilt not acknowledge \_thyself

to--be guilty\_, thou canst not deny the fact \_stated\_."--\_Id.\_ "They

specify \_some object\_, like many other adjectives, and \_also\_ connect

sentences."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "A violation of this rule tends so much to

perplex \_the reader\_ and obscure \_the sense\_, that it is safer to err by

\_using\_ too many short sentences."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "A few exercises are

subjoined to each important definition, for him [the pupil] to \_practise\_

upon as he proceeds in committing \_the grammar to memory.\_"--\_Nutting cor.\_

"A verb signifying \_an action directly transitive\_, governs the

accusative."--\_Adam et al. cor.\_ "Or, any word \_that can be conjugated\_, is

a verb."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "In these two concluding sentences, the author,

hastening to \_a close\_, appears to write rather carelessly."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "He simply reasons on one side of the question, and then \_leaves

it.\_"--\_Id.\_" Praise to God teaches \_us\_ to be humble and lowly

ourselves."--\_Atterbury cor.\_ "This author has endeavoured to surpass \_his

rivals.\_"--\_R. W. Green cor.\_ "Idleness and \_pleasure fatigue a man as\_

soon \_as business.\_"--\_Webster cor.\_" And, in conjugating \_any verb\_,"--or,

"And in \_learning conjugations\_, you must pay particular attention to the

manner in which these signs are applied."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "He said Virginia

would have emancipated \_her slaves\_ long ago."--\_Lib. cor.\_ "And having a

readiness"--or, "And holding ourselves in readiness"--or," And being in

readiness--to revenge all disobedience."--\_Bible cor.\_ "However, in these

cases, custom generally determines \_what is right.\_"--\_Wright cor.\_ "In

proof, let the following cases \_be taken.\_"--\_Id.\_ "We must \_marvel\_ that

he should so speedily have forgotten his first principles."--\_Id.\_ "How

should we \_wonder\_ at the expression, 'This is a \_soft\_ question!' "--\_Id.\_

"And such as prefer \_this course\_, can parse it as a possessive

adjective."--\_Goodenow cor.\_ "To assign all the reasons that induced \_the

author\_ to deviate from other grammarians, would lead to a needless

prolixity."--\_Alexander cor.\_ "The Indicative Mood simply indicates or

declares \_a thing.\_"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 63.

UNDER NOTE II.--OF VERBS INTRANSITIVE.

"In his seventh chapter \_he expatiates\_ at great length."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"He \_quarrels with me for adducing\_ some \_ancient\_ testimonies agreeing

with what I say."--\_Id.\_ "Repenting of his design."--\_Hume cor.\_ "Henry

knew, that an excommunication could not fail \_to produce\_ the most

dangerous effects."--\_Id.\_ "The popular lords did not fail to enlarge on

the subject,"--\_Mrs. Macaulay cor.\_ "He is always master of his subject,

and seems to \_play\_ with it:" or,--"seems to \_sport himself\_ with

it."--\_Blair cor.\_ "But as soon as it \_amounts to real\_ disease, all his

secret infirmities \_show\_ themselves."--\_Id.\_ "No man repented of his

wickedness."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Go one way or other, either on the right hand,

or on the left,"--\_Id.\_ "He lies down by the \_river's edge.\_" Or: "He \_lays

himself\_ down \_on\_ the \_river's brink\_"--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "For some years

past, \_I have had an ardent wish\_ to retire to some of our American

plantations."--\_Cowley cor.\_ "I fear thou wilt shrink from the payment of

it."--\_Ware cor.\_ "\_We never retain\_ an idea, without acquiring some

combination."--\_Rippingham cor.\_

"Yet more; the stroke of death he must abide,

Then lies \_he\_ meekly down, fast by his brethren's side."

--\_Milton cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--OF VERBS MISAPPLIED.

"\_The\_ parliament \_confiscated the property of\_ all those who had borne

arms \_against\_ the king."--\_Hume cor.\_ "The practice of \_confiscating\_

ships \_that\_ had been wrecked"'--\_Id.\_ "The nearer his military successes

\_brought\_ him to the throne." Or: "The nearer, \_through\_ his military

successes, \_he approached\_ the throne."--\_Id.\_ "In the next example, \_'you'

represents 'ladies;'\_ therefore it is plural."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The first

\_'its' stands for 'vale;'\_ the second \_'its'\_ represents \_'stream'\_."--

\_Id.\_ "Pronouns do not always \_prevent\_ the repetition of nouns."--\_Id.\_

"Very is an adverb of \_degree\_; it \_relates\_ to the adjective

\_good\_"--\_Id.\_ "You will please to commit to \_memory\_ the following

paragraph."--\_Id.\_ "Even the Greek and Latin passive verbs \_form\_ some of

their tenses \_by means of auxiliaries.\_"--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "The deponent

verbs in Latin \_also employ auxiliaries\_ to \_form\_ several of their

tenses."--\_Id.\_ "I have no doubt he made as wise and true proverbs, as any

body has \_made\_ since."--\_Id.\_ "\_Monotonous delivery\_ assumes as many set

forms, as \_ever\_ Proteus \_did of fleeting\_ shapes."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "When

words in apposition \_are uttered\_ in quick succession."--\_Nixon cor.\_

"Where \_many\_ such sentences \_occur in succession.\_"--\_L. Mur. cor.\_

"Wisdom leads us to speak and \_do\_ what is most proper."--\_Blair and L.

Murray cor.\_

"\_Jul.\_ Art thou not Romeo, and a Montague?

\_Rom.\_ Neither, fair saint, if either thee \_displease.\_" Or:--

"Neither, fair saint, if either \_thou\_ dislike."--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF PASSIVE VERBS.

"\_To us\_, too, must be allowed the privilege of forming our own laws." Or:

"\_We\_ too must \_have\_ the privilege," &c.--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "For not only

\_is\_ the use of all the ancient poetic feet \_allowed\_ [to] us," &c.--\_Id.

et al. cor.\_ "By what code of morals \_is the right or privilege denied

me\_?"--\_Bartlett cor.\_ "To the children of Israel alone, \_has\_ the

possession of it been denied."--\_Keith cor.\_ "At York, all quarter \_was

refused\_ to fifteen hundred Jews."--\_Id.\_ "He would teach the French

language in three lessons, provided \_there were paid him\_ fifty-five

dollars in advance."--\_Prof. Chazotte cor.\_ "And when \_it\_ was demanded of

\_him by\_ the Pharisees, when the kingdom of God should come." Or: "And when

the \_Pharisees demanded\_ of him," &c.--\_Bible cor.\_ "A book \_has been

shown\_ me."--\_Dr. Campbell cor.\_ "To John Horne Tooke \_admission was

refused\_, only because he had been in holy orders."--\_W. Duane cor.\_ "Mr.

Horne Tooke having taken orders, admission to the bar was refused

\_him\_."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Its reference to place is \_disregarded\_."--\_Dr.

Bullions cor.\_ "What striking lesson \_is taught\_ by the tenor of this

history?"--\_Bush cor.\_ "No less \_a sum\_ than eighty thousand pounds had

been left \_him\_ by a friend."--\_Dr. Priestley cor.\_ "Where there are many

things to be done, \_there\_ must be allowed \_to each\_ its share of time and

labour."--\_Dr. Johnson cor.\_ "Presenting the subject in a far more

practical form, than \_has heretofore been given it\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "If

\_to\_ a being of entire impartiality should be shown the two

companies."--\_Dr. Scott cor.\_ "The command of the British army was offered

\_to him\_."--\_Grimshaw cor.\_ "\_To whom\_ a considerable sum had been

unexpectedly left."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "Whether such a privilege may be

granted \_to\_ a maid or a widow."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "Happily, \_to\_ all these

affected terms, the public suffrage \_has\_ been denied."--\_Campbell cor.\_

"Let the \_parsing table\_ next be \_shown him\_."--\_Nutting cor.\_ "\_Then\_ the

use of the \_analyzing table\_ may be \_explained to him\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_To\_

Pittacus \_there\_ was offered a great sum of money."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "More

time for study had been allowed \_him\_."--\_Id.\_ "If a little care were

\_bestowed on the walks\_ that lie between them."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 222.

"Suppose an office or a bribe \_be\_ offered \_me\_."--\_Pierpont cor.\_

"\_Is then\_ one chaste, one last embrace \_denied\_?

Shall I not lay me by his clay-cold side?"--\_Rowe cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--OF PASSIVE VERBS TRANSITIVE.

"The preposition TO is \_used\_ before nouns of place, when they follow verbs

\_or\_ participles of motion."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "They were \_not allowed

to enter\_ the house."--\_Mur. cor.\_ "Their separate signification has been

\_overlooked\_."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "But, whenever YE is \_used\_, it must be in the

nominative case, and \_not\_ in the objective."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "It is said,

that more persons than one \_receive\_ handsome salaries, to see \_that\_ acts

of parliament \_are\_ properly worded."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "The following

Rudiments of English Grammar have been \_used\_ in the University of

Pennsylvania."--\_Dr. Rogers cor.\_ "It never should be \_forgotten\_."--

\_Newman cor.\_ "A very curious fact \_has been noticed\_ by those expert

metaphysicians."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "The archbishop interfered that

Michelet's lectures might be \_stopped\_."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "The

disturbances in Gottengen have been entirely \_quelled\_."--\_Daily Adv. cor.\_

"Besides those \_which are noticed\_ in these exceptions."--\_Priestley cor.\_

"As one, two, or three auxiliary verbs are \_employed\_."--\_Id.\_ "The

arguments which have been \_used\_."--\_Addison cor.\_ "The circumstance is

properly \_noticed\_ by the author."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Patagonia has never been

taken \_into possession\_ by any European nation."--\_Cumming cor.\_ "He will

be \_censured\_ no more."--\_Walker cor.\_ "The thing was to be \_terminated\_

somehow."--\_Hunt cor.\_ "In 1798, the Papal Territory was \_seized\_ by the

French."--\_Pinnock cor.\_ "The idea has not for a moment \_escaped the

attention\_ of the Board."--\_C. S. Journal cor.\_ "I shall easily be excused

\_from\_ the labour of more transcription."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "If I may be

allowed \_to use\_ that expression."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "If without offence I

may \_make\_ the observation."--\_Id.\_ "There are other characters, which are

frequently \_used\_ in composition."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "Such unaccountable

infirmities might be \_overcome\_, in many cases, \_and\_ perhaps in

most."--\_Beattie cor.\_ "Which ought never to be \_employed\_, or \_resorted

to\_."--\_Id.\_ "That \_care\_ may be taken \_of the widows\_." Or: "That the

widows may be \_provided for\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Other cavils will yet be

\_noticed\_."--\_Pope cor.\_ "Which implies, that \_to\_ all Christians \_is\_

eternal salvation \_offered\_."--\_West cor.\_ "Yet even the dogs are allowed

\_to eat\_ the crumbs which fall from their master's table."--\_Campbell cor.\_

"For we say, the light within must be \_heeded\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "This

sound of \_a\_ is \_noticed\_ in Steele's Grammar."--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "One came

to \_receive\_ ten guineas for a pair of silver buckles."--\_M. Edgeworth

cor.\_ "Let therefore the application of the several questions in the table

be carefully \_shown\_ [to] \_him\_."--\_Nutting cor.\_ "After a few times, it is

no longer \_noticed\_ by the hearers."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "It will not admit of

the same excuse, nor \_receive\_ the same indulgence, \_from\_ people of any

discernment."--\_Id.\_ "Of inanimate things, property may be made." Or:

"Inanimate things may be made property;" i.e., "may \_become\_

property."--\_Beattie cor.\_

"And, when \_some rival bids a higher\_ price,

Will not be sluggish in the work, \_or\_ nice."--\_Butler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

"All the words \_employed\_ to denote spiritual \_or\_ intellectual things, are

in their origin \_metaphors\_."--\_Dr. Campbell cor.\_ "A reply to an argument

commonly \_brought forward\_ by unbelievers."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "It was once

the only form \_used\_ in the \_past\_ tenses."--\_Dr. Ash cor.\_ "Of the points

and other characters \_used\_ in writing."--\_Id.\_ "If THY be the personal

pronoun \_adopted\_."--\_Walker cor.\_ "The Conjunction is a word \_used\_ to

connect [words or] sentences."--\_Burn cor.\_ "The points \_which\_ answer

these purposes, are the four following."--\_Harrison cor.\_ "INCENSE

signifies \_perfume\_ exhaled by fire, and \_used\_ in religious

ceremonies."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "In most of his orations, there is too much

art; \_he carries it even to\_ ostentation."--\_Blair cor.\_ "To illustrate the

great truth, so often \_overlooked\_ in our times."--\_C. S. Journal cor.\_

"The principal figures \_calculated\_ to affect the heart, are Exclamation,

Confession, Deprecation, Commination, and Imprecation."--\_Formey cor.\_

"Disgusted at the odious artifices \_employed\_ by the judge."--\_Junius cor.\_

"\_All the\_ reasons \_for which there was allotted to us\_ a condition out of

which so much wickedness and misery would in fact arise."--\_Bp. Butler

cor.\_ "Some characteristical circumstance being generally invented or

\_seized upon\_."--\_Ld. Kames cor.\_

"And BY is likewise used with names that shew

The method or the means of \_what we do\_."--\_Ward cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--OF CONSTRUCTIONS AMBIGUOUS.

"Many adverbs admit of degrees of comparison, as \_do\_

adjectives."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "But the author who, by the number and

reputation of his works, \_did\_ more than any one \_else, to bring\_ our

language into its present state, \_was\_ Dryden."--\_Blair cor.\_ "In some

states, courts of admiralty have no juries, nor \_do\_ courts of chancery

\_employ any\_ at all."--\_Webster cor.\_ "I feel grateful to my

friend."--\_Murray cor.\_ "This requires a writer to have \_in his own mind\_ a

very clear apprehension of the object which he means to present to

us."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Sense has its own harmony, \_which naturally contributes

something to the harmony of\_ sound."--\_Id.\_ "The apostrophe denotes the

omission of an \_i\_, which was formerly inserted, and \_which gave to the

word an additional\_ syllable."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "There are few \_to whom\_ I

can refer with more advantage than \_to\_ Mr. Addison."--\_Blair cor.\_ "DEATH,

(in \_theology\_,) is a perpetual separation from God, a \_state of\_ eternal

torments."--\_Webster cor.\_ "That could inform the \_traveller\_ as well as

\_could\_ the old man himself!"--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--OF YE AND YOU IN SCRIPTURE.

"Ye daughters of Rabbah, gird \_you\_ with sackcloth."--SCOTT, FRIENDS, and

the COMPREHENSIVE BIBLE: \_Jer.\_, xlix, 3. "Wash \_you\_, make you

clean."--SCOTT, ALGER, FRIENDS, ET AL.: \_Isaiah\_, i, 16. "Strip \_you\_, and

make \_you\_ bare, and gird sackcloth upon your loins."--SCOTT, FRIENDS, ET

AL.: \_Isaiah\_, xxxii, 11. "\_Ye\_ are not ashamed that \_ye\_ make yourselves

strange to me."--SCOTT, BRUCE, and BLAYNEY: \_Job\_, xix, 3. "If \_ye\_ knew

the gift of God." Or: "If \_thou\_ knew the gift of God."--See \_John\_, iv,

10. "Depart from me, ye workers of iniquity; I know \_you\_ not."--\_Penington

cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE VI; OF SAME CASES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF PROPER IDENTITY.

"Who would not say, 'If it be \_I\_,' rather than, 'If it be

\_me\_?"--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Who is there? It is \_I\_."--\_Id.\_ "It is

\_he\_."--\_Id.\_ "Are these the houses you were speaking of? Yes; they are

\_the same\_."--\_Id.\_ "It is not \_I, that\_ you are in love with."--\_Addison

cor.\_ "It cannot be \_I\_."--\_Swift cor.\_ "To that which once was

\_thou\_."--\_Prior cor.\_ "There is but one man that she can have, and that

\_man\_ is \_myself\_."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "We enter, as it were, into his body,

and become in some measure \_he\_." Or, better:--"and become in some measure

\_identified\_ with him."--\_A. Smith and Priestley cor.\_ "Art thou proud

yet? Ay, that I am not \_thou\_."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "He knew not \_who\_ they

were."--\_Milnes cor.\_ "\_Whom\_ do you think me to be?"--\_Dr. Lowth's Gram.\_,

p. 17. "\_Who\_ do men say that I, the Son of man, am?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "But

\_who\_ say ye that I am?"--\_Id.\_ "\_Who\_ think ye that I am? I am not

he."--\_Id.\_ "No; I am in error; I perceive it is not the person \_that\_ I

supposed it was."--\_Winter in London cor.\_ "And while it is \_He that\_ I

serve, life is not without value."--\_Ware cor.\_ "Without ever dreaming it

was \_he\_."--\_Charles XII cor.\_ "Or he was not the illiterate personage

\_that\_ he affected to be."--\_Montgom. cor.\_ "Yet was he \_the man\_ who was

to be the greatest apostle of the Gentiles."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Sweet was the

thrilling ecstacy; I know not if 'twas love, or \_thou\_."--\_J. Hogg cor.\_

"Time was, when none would cry, that oaf was \_I\_."--\_Dryden cor.\_ "No

matter where the vanquished be, \_or who\_."--\_Rowe cor.\_ "No; I little

thought it had been \_he\_."--\_Gratton cor.\_ "That reverence, that godly

fear, \_which is ever due to\_ 'Him who can destroy both body and soul in

hell.'"--\_Maturin cor.\_ "It is \_we\_ that they seek to please, or rather to

astonish."--\_J. West cor.\_ "Let the same be \_her\_ that thou hast appointed

for thy servant Isaac."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Although I knew it to be

\_him\_."--\_Dickens cor.\_ "Dear gentle youth, is't none but \_thou\_?"--\_Dorset

cor.\_ "Who do they say it is?"--\_Fowler cor.\_

"These are her garb, not \_she\_; they but express

Her form, her semblance, her appropriate dress."--\_More cor.\_

UNDER NOTE I.--OF THE CASE DOUBTFUL.

"I had no knowledge of \_any connexion\_ between them."--\_Col. Stone cor.\_

"To promote iniquity in others, is nearly the same \_thing\_, as \_to be\_ the

actors of it ourselves." (That is, "\_For us\_ to promote iniquity in others,

is nearly the same \_thing\_ as \_for us\_ to be the actors of it

\_ourselves\_.")--\_Murray cor.\_ "It must arise from \_a delicate\_ feeling \_in\_

ourselves."--\_Blair and Murray cor.\_ "\_Because there has not\_ been

exercised a competent physical power for their enforcement."--\_Mass.

Legisl. cor.\_ "PUPILAGE, \_n.\_ The state of a \_pupil\_, or

scholar."--\_Dictionaries cor.\_ "Then the other \_part\_, being the

\_definition, would include\_ all verbs, of every description."--\_Peirce

cor.\_ "John's \_friendship for me\_ saved me from inconvenience."--\_Id.\_

"William's \_judgeship\_"--or, "William's \_appointment to the office of\_

judge,--changed his whole demeanour."--\_Id.\_ "William's \_practical

acquaintance with teaching\_, was the cause of the interest he felt."--\_Id.\_

"\_To be\_ but one among many, stifleth the chidings of conscience."--\_Tupper

cor.\_ "As for \_the opinion that it is\_ a close translation, I doubt not

that many have been led into that error by the shortness of it."--\_Pope

cor.\_ "All presumption \_that death is\_ the destruction of living beings,

must go upon \_the\_ supposition that they are compounded, and \_therefore\_

discerptible."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "This argues rather \_that they are\_

proper names."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "But may it not be retorted, that \_this

gratification itself\_, is that which excites our resentment?"--\_Campbell

cor.\_ "Under the common notion, \_that it is\_ a system of the whole poetical

art."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Whose \_want of\_ time, or \_whose\_ other circumstances,

forbid \_them to become\_ classical scholars."--\_Lit. Jour. cor.\_ "It would

\_prove him not to have been a mere\_ fictitious personage." Or: "It would

preclude the notion \_that he was merely a\_ fictitious personage."--\_Phil.

Mu. cor.\_ "For \_heresy\_, or under pretence \_that they are\_ heretics or

infidels."--\_Oath cor.\_ "We may here add Dr. Horne's sermon on \_Christ, as

being\_ the Object of religious adoration."--\_Rel. World cor.\_ "To say

nothing of Dr. \_Priestley, as being\_ a strenuous advocate," &c.--\_Id.\_

"\_Through the agency of Adam, as being\_ their public head." Or: "\_Because

Adam was\_ their public head."--\_Id.\_ "Objections against \_the existence of\_

any such moral plan as this."--\_Butler cor.\_ "A greater instance of a \_man\_

being a blockhead."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "We may insure or promote \_what will

make it\_ a happy state of existence to ourselves."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "\_Since

it often undergoes\_ the same kind of unnatural treatment."--\_Kirkham cor.\_

"Their \_apparent\_ foolishness"--"Their \_appearance of foolishness\_"--or,

"\_That they appear\_ foolishness,--is no presumption against this."--\_Butler

cor.\_ "But what arises from \_them\_ as being offences; i.e., from their

\_liability\_ to be perverted."--\_Id.\_ "And he \_went\_ into \_the\_ house \_of\_ a

certain man named Justus, one that \_worshiped\_ God."--\_Acts cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--OF FALSE IDENTIFICATION.

"But \_popular\_, he observes, is an ambiguous word."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The

infinitive mood, a \_phrase, or a sentence\_, is often \_made the subject of\_

a verb."--\_Murray cor.\_ "When any person, in speaking, introduces his name

\_after the pronoun I\_, it is \_of\_ the first person; as, 'I, James, of the

city of Boston.'"--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "The name of the person spoken to, is

\_of\_ the second person; as, 'James, come to me.'"--\_Id.\_ "The name of the

person or thing \_merely\_ spoken of, or about, is \_of\_ the third person; as,

'James has come.'"--\_Id.\_ "The passive verb \_has no object, because\_ its

subject or nominative always represents \_what is acted upon\_, and the

\_object\_ of a verb must needs be in the \_objective\_ case."--\_Id.\_ "When a

noun is in the nominative to an active verb, it \_denotes\_ the

actor."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "And \_the pronoun\_ THOU \_or\_ YE, \_standing for the

name of\_ the person \_or persons\_ commanded, is its nominative."--\_Ingersoll

cor.\_ "The first person is that \_which denotes the speaker\_."--\_Brown's

Institutes\_, p. 32. "The conjugation of a verb is \_a regular arrangement

of\_ its different variations or inflections throughout the moods and

tenses."--\_Wright cor.\_ "The first person is \_that which denotes\_ the

speaker \_or writer\_."--G. BROWN: for the correction of \_Parker and Fox,

Hiley\_, and \_Sanborn\_. "The second person is \_that which denotes the

hearer, or the person addressed\_."--\_Id.\_: for \_the same\_. "The third

person is \_that which denotes the person or thing merely\_ spoken

of."--\_Id.\_: for \_the same\_, "\_I\_ is \_of\_ the first person, singular; WE,

\_of\_ the first person, plural."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "THOU is \_of\_ the

second person, singular; YE or You, \_of\_ the second person,

plural."--\_Iid.\_ "HE, SHE, or IT, is \_of\_ the third person, singular; THEY,

\_of\_ the third person, plural."--\_Iid.\_ "The nominative case \_denotes\_ the

actor, \_and is the\_ subject of the verb."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "John is the

actor, therefore \_the noun\_ JOHN is in the nominative case."--\_Id.\_ "The

actor is always \_expressed\_ by the nominative case, \_unless the verb be

passive\_."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "The nominative case \_does not\_ always

\_denote an\_ agent or actor."--\_Mack cor.\_ "\_In mentioning\_ each name, tell

the part of speech."--\_John Flint cor.\_ "\_Of\_ what number is \_boy\_?

Why?"--\_Id.\_ "\_Of\_ what number is \_pens\_? Why?"--\_Id.\_ "The speaker is

\_denoted by\_ the first person; the person spoken to \_is denoted by\_ the

second person; and the person or thing spoken of is \_denoted by\_ the third

person."--\_Id.\_ "What nouns are \_of the\_ masculine gender? \_The names of\_

all males are \_of the\_ masculine gender."--\_Id.\_ "An interjection is a

\_word that is uttered merely to indicate some strong or\_ sudden emotion of

the mind."--\_G. Brown's Grammars\_.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE VII; OF OBJECTIVES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF THE OBJECTIVE IN FORM.

"But I do not remember \_whom\_ they were for."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "But if you

can't help it, \_whom\_ do you complain of?"--\_Collier cor.\_ "\_Whom\_ was it

from? and what was it about?"--\_M. Edgeworth cor.\_ "I have plenty of

victuals, and, between you and \_me\_, something in a corner."--\_Day cor.\_

"The upper one, \_whom\_ I am now about to speak of."--\_Leigh Hunt cor.\_ "And

to poor \_us, thy\_ enmity \_is\_ most capital."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Which, thou

dost confess, \_'twere\_ fit for thee to use, as \_them\_ to claim." That

is,--"as \_for them\_ to claim."--\_Id.\_ "To beg of thee, it is my more

dishonour, than \_thee\_ of them." That is,--"than \_for thee to beg\_ of

them."--\_Id.\_ "There are still a few, who, like \_thee\_ and \_me\_, drink

nothing but water."--\_Gil Bias cor.\_ "Thus, 'I \_shall\_ fall,'--'Thou

\_shalt\_ love thy neighbour,'--'He \_shall\_ be rewarded,'--express no

resolution on the part of \_me, thee\_, or \_him\_." Or better:--"on the part

of \_the persons signified by the nominatives, I, Thou, He\_."--\_Lennie and

Bullions cor.\_ "So saucy with the hand of \_her\_ here--what's her

name?"--\_Shak. cor.\_ "All debts are cleared between you and \_me\_."--\_Id.\_

"Her price is paid, and she is sold like \_thee\_."--HARRISON'S \_E. Lang.\_,

p. 172. "Search through all the most flourishing \_eras\_ of Greece."--\_Dr.

Brown cor.\_ "The family of the \_Rudolphs\_ has been long

distinguished."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "It will do well enough for you and

\_me\_."--\_Edgeworth cor.\_ "The public will soon discriminate between him who

is the sycophant, and \_him\_ who is the teacher."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "We are

still much at a loss \_to determine whom\_ civil power belongs to."--\_Locke

cor.\_ "What do you call it? and \_to whom\_ does it belong?"--\_Collier cor.\_

"He had received no lessons from the \_Socrateses\_, the \_Platoes\_, and the

\_Confuciuses\_ of the age."--\_Haller cor.\_ "I cannot tell \_whom\_ to compare

them to."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "I see there was some resemblance betwixt this

good man and \_me\_."--\_Id.\_ "They, by those means, have brought themselves

into the hands and house of I do not know \_whom\_."--\_Id.\_ "But at length

she said, there was a great deal of difference between Mr. Cotton and

\_us\_."--\_Hutch. Hist. cor.\_ "So you must ride on horseback after

\_us\_."--\_Mrs. Gilpin cor.\_ "A separation must soon take place between our

minister and \_me\_,"--\_Werter cor.\_ "When she exclaimed on Hastings, you,

and \_me\_."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "To \_whom\_? to thee? What art thou?"--\_Id.\_ "That

they should always bear the certain marks \_of him from whom\_ they

came."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_

"This life has joys for you and \_me\_,

And joys that riches ne'er could buy."--\_Burns cor.\_

UNDER THE NOTE.--OF TIME OR MEASURE.

"Such as almost every child, ten years old, knows."--\_Town cor.\_ "\_Four

months' schooling\_ will carry any industrious scholar, of ten or twelve

years \_of age\_, completely through this book."--\_Id.\_ "A boy of six years

\_of age\_ may be taught to speak as correctly, as Cicero did before the

Roman senate."--\_Webster cor.\_ "A lad about twelve years old, who was taken

captive by the Indians."--\_Id.\_ "Of nothing else \_than\_ that individual

white figure of five inches \_in length\_, which is before him."--\_Campbell

cor.\_ "Where lies the fault, that boys of eight or ten years \_of age\_ are

with great difficulty made to understand any of its principles?"--\_Guy

cor.\_ "Where language three centuries old is employed."--\_Booth cor.\_ "Let

a gallows be made, of fifty cubits \_in height\_." Or: "Let a gallows \_fifty

cubits high\_ be made."--\_Bible cor.\_ "I say to this child, nine years old,

'Bring me that hat.' He hastens, and brings it me."--\_Osborn cor.\_ "'He

laid a floor, twelve feet long, and nine feet wide:' that is, \_the floor

was\_ long \_to\_ the extent of twelve feet, and wide \_to the extent\_ of nine

feet."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "The Goulah people are a tribe of about fifty

thousand \_in strength\_." Or: "The Goulah people are a tribe about fifty

thousand strong."--\_Examiner cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE VIII; NOM. ABSOLUTE.

"\_He\_ having ended his discourse, the assembly dispersed."--\_Inst. of E.

G.\_, p. 190. "\_I\_ being young, they deceived me."--\_Ib.\_, p. 279. "\_They\_

refusing to comply, I withdrew."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Thou\_ being present, he would not

tell what he knew."--\_Ib.\_ "The child is lost; and \_I\_, whither shall I

go?"--\_Ib.\_ "\_O\_ happy \_we!\_ surrounded with so many blessings."--\_Ib.\_

"'\_Thou\_ too! Brutus, my son!' cried Cæsar, overcome."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Thou!\_

Maria! and so late! and who is thy companion?"--\_Mirror cor.\_ "How swiftly

our time passes away! and ah! \_we\_, how little concerned to improve

it!"--\_Greenleaf's False Syntax, Gram.\_, p. 47.

"There all thy gifts and graces we display,

\_Thou\_, only \_thou\_, directing all our way."--\_Pope, Dunciad\_.

CHAPTER IV.--ADJECTIVES.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE IX.

UNDER NOTE I.--OF AGREEMENT.

"I am not recommending \_this\_ kind of sufferings to your

liking."--\_Sherlock cor.\_ "I have not been to London \_these\_ five

years."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Verbs of this kind\_ are more expressive than

their radicals."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "Few of us would be less corrupted than

kings are, were we, like them, beset with flatterers, and poisoned with

\_those\_ vermin."--\_Kames cor.\_ "But it seems \_these\_ literati had been very

ill rewarded for their ingenious labours."--\_R. Random cor.\_ "If I had not

left off troubling myself about \_things of that kind\_."--\_Swift cor.\_ "For

\_things of this sort\_ are usually joined to the most noted

fortune."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "The nature of \_those\_ riches and \_that\_

long-suffering, is, to lead to repentance."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "I fancy \_it is

this\_ kind of gods, \_that\_ Horace mentions."--\_Addison cor.\_ "During

\_those\_ eight days, they are prohibited from touching the skin."--\_Hope of

Is. cor.\_ "Besides, he had \_but a small quantity of\_ provisions left for

his army."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Are you not ashamed to have no other thoughts

than \_those\_ of amassing wealth, and of acquiring glory, credit, and

dignities?"--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 115. "It \_distinguishes\_ still more

remarkably the feelings of the former from \_those\_ of the latter."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "And \_these\_ good tidings of the reign shall be published through all

the world."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "\_These\_ twenty years have I been with

thee."--\_Gen. cor.\_ "In \_this\_ kind of expressions, some words seem to be

understood."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "He thought \_this\_ kind of excesses

indicative of greatness."--\_Hunt cor.\_ "\_This\_ sort of fellows \_is\_ very

numerous." Or thus: "\_Fellows of this sort\_ are very numerous."--\_Spect.

cor.\_ "Whereas \_men of this sort\_ cannot give account of their faith." Or:

"Whereas \_these men\_ cannot give account of their faith."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"But the question is, whether \_those are\_ the words."--\_Id.\_ "So that

\_expressions of this sort\_ are not properly optative."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_

"Many things are not \_such as\_ they appear to be."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "So that

\_all\_ possible means are used."--\_Formey cor.\_

"We have strict statutes, and most biting laws,

Which for \_these\_ nineteen years we have let sleep."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"They could not speak, and so I left them both,

To bear \_these\_ tidings to the bloody king."--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--OF FIXED NUMBERS.

"Why, I think she cannot be above six \_feet\_ two inches high."--\_Spect.

cor.\_ "The world is pretty regular for about forty \_rods\_ east and ten

west."--\_Id.\_ "The standard being more than two \_feet\_ above it."--\_Bacon

cor.\_ "Supposing, among other things, \_that\_ he saw two suns, and two

\_Thebeses\_."--\_Id.\_ "On the right hand we go into a parlour \_thirty-three

feet\_ by \_thirty-nine\_."--\_Sheffield cor.\_ "Three \_pounds\_ of gold went to

one shield."--\_1 Kings cor.\_ "Such an assemblage of men as there appears to

have been at that \_session\_."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "And, truly, he \_has\_

saved me \_from\_ this \_labour\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Within \_these\_ three

\_miles\_ may you see it coming."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Most of the churches, not

all, had one \_ruling elder or more\_."--\_Hutch. cor.\_ "While a Minute

Philosopher, not six \_feet\_ high, attempts to dethrone the Monarch of the

universe."--\_Berkley cor.\_ "The wall is ten \_feet\_ high."--\_Harrison cor.\_

"The stalls must be ten \_feet\_ broad."--\_Walker cor.\_ "A close prisoner in

a room twenty \_feet\_ square, being at the north side of his chamber, is at

liberty to walk twenty \_feet\_ southward, not to walk twenty \_feet\_

northward."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Nor, after all this \_care\_ and industry, did

they think themselves qualified."--\_C. Orator cor.\_ "No \_fewer\_ than

thirteen \_Gypsies\_ were condemned at one Suffolk \_assize\_, and

executed."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The king was petitioned to appoint \_one person

or more\_."--\_Mrs. Macaulay cor.\_ "He carries weight! he rides a race! 'Tis

for a thousand \_pounds\_."--\_Cowper cor.\_ "They carry three \_tiers\_ of guns

at the head, and at the stern, \_two\_ tiers"--\_Joh. Dict. cor.\_ "The verses

consist of two \_sorts\_ of rhymes."--\_Formey cor.\_ "A present of forty

\_camel-loads\_ of the most precious things of Syria."--\_Wood's Dict. cor.\_

"A large grammar, that shall extend to every \_minutia\_"--\_S. Barrett cor.\_

"So many spots, like næves on Venus' soil,

One \_gem\_ set off with \_many a glitt'ring\_ foil."--\_Dryden cor.\_

"For, \_off the end, a double\_ handful

It had devour'd, it was so manful."--\_Butler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--OF RECIPROCALS.

"That \_shall\_ and \_will\_ might be substituted \_one for the

other\_."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "We use not \_shall\_ and \_will\_ promiscuously

\_the one for the other\_."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "But I wish to distinguish the

three high ones from \_one an\_ other also."--\_Fowle cor.\_ "Or on some other

relation which two objects bear to \_each other\_."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Yet the

two words lie so near to \_each other\_ in meaning, that, in the present

case, \_perhaps either\_ of them would have been sufficient."--\_Id.\_ "Both

orators use great liberties \_in their treatment of each other\_."--\_Id.\_

"That greater separation of the two sexes from \_each other\_."--\_Id.\_ "Most

of whom live remote from \_one an other\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Teachers like to

see their pupils polite to \_one an other\_"--\_Id.\_ "In a little time, he and

I must keep company with \_each other\_ only."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "Thoughts and

circumstances crowd upon \_one an other\_."--\_Kames cor.\_ "They cannot

\_perceive\_ how the ancient Greeks could understand \_one an other\_."--\_Lit.

Conv. cor.\_ "The poet, the patriot, and the prophet, vied with \_one an

other\_ in his breast."--\_Hazlitt cor.\_ "Athamas and Ino loved \_each

other\_."--\_C. Tales cor.\_ "Where two things are compared or contrasted \_one

with the other\_." Or: "Where two things, are compared or contrasted with

\_each other\_."--\_Blair and Mur. cor.\_ "In the classification of words,

almost all writers differ from \_one an other\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"I will not trouble thee, my child. Farewell;

We'll no more meet; \_we'll\_ no more see \_each other\_."--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF COMPARATIVES.

"\_Errors\_ in education should be less indulged than any \_others\_."--\_Locke

cor.\_ "This was less his case than any \_other\_ man's that ever

wrote."--\_Pref. to Waller cor.\_ "This trade enriched some \_other\_ people

more than it enriched them."--\_Mur. cor.\_ "The Chaldee alphabet, in which

the Old Testament has reached us, is more beautiful than any \_other\_

ancient character known."--\_Wilson cor.\_ "The Christian religion gives a

more lovely character of God, than any \_other\_ religion ever did."--\_Murray

cor.\_ "The temple of Cholula was deemed more holy than any \_other\_ in New

Spain."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "Cibber grants it to be a better poem of its kind

than \_any other that\_ ever was \_written\_"--\_Pope cor.\_ "Shakspeare is more

faithful to the true language of nature, than any \_other\_ writer."--\_Blair

cor.\_ "One son I had--one, more than all my \_other\_ sons, the strength of

Troy." Or: "One son I had--one, \_the most of all my sons\_, the strength of

Troy."--\_Cowper cor.\_ "Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his \_other\_

children, because he was the son of his old age."--\_Bible cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--OF SUPERLATIVES.

"Of \_all simpletons\_, he was the greatest"--\_Nutting cor.\_ "Of \_all

beings\_, man has certainly the greatest reason for gratitude."--\_Id.\_ "This

lady is \_prettier than any\_ of her sisters."--\_Peyton cor.\_ "The relation

which, of all \_the class\_, is by far the most fruitful of tropes, I have

not yet mentioned."--\_Blair cor.\_ "He studied Greek the most of \_all

noblemen\_."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "And indeed that was the qualification \_which

was\_ most wanted at that time."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Yet we deny that the

knowledge of him as outwardly crucified, is the best of all knowledge of

him."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Our ideas of numbers are, of all \_our conceptions\_,

the most accurate and distinct"--\_Duncan cor.\_ "This indeed is, of all

\_cases, the one in which\_ it \_is\_ least necessary to name the agent"--\_J.

Q. Adams cor.\_ "The period to which you have arrived, is perhaps the most

critical and important moment of your lives."--\_Id.\_ "Perry's royal octavo

is esteemed the best of \_all the pronouncing dictionaries\_ yet known."--\_D.

H. Barnes cor.\_ "This is the tenth persecution, and, of all the \_ten\_ the

most bloody."--\_Sammes cor.\_ "The English tongue is the most susceptible of

sublime imagery, of \_all the languages\_ in the world."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Of

\_all writers\_ whatever, Homer is universally allowed to have had the

greatest Invention."--\_Pope cor.\_ "In a version of this particular work,

which, \_more than\_ any other, seems to require a venerable, antique

cast."--\_Id.\_ "Because I think him the \_best-informed\_ naturalist \_that\_

has ever written."--\_Jefferson cor.\_ "Man is capable of being the most

social of \_all animals\_."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "It is, of all \_signs\_ (or

\_expressions\_) that which most moves us."--\_Id.\_ "Which, of all \_articles\_,

is the most necessary."--\_Id.\_

"Quoth he, 'This gambol thou advisest,

Is, of all \_projects\_, the unwisest.'"--\_S. Butler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF INCLUSIVE TERMS.

"Noah and his family \_were the only antediluvians\_ who \_survived\_ the

flood."--\_Webster cor.\_ "I think it superior to any \_other grammar\_ that we

have yet had."--\_Blair cor.\_ "We have had no \_other\_ grammarian who has

employed so much labour and \_judgement\_ upon our native language, as \_has\_

the author of these volumes."--\_British Critic cor.\_ "\_Those\_ persons feel

\_most for\_ the distresses of others, who have experienced distresses

themselves."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Never was any \_other\_ people so much

infatuated as the Jewish nation."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "No \_other\_ tongue is

so full of connective particles as the Greek."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Never \_was

sovereign\_ so much beloved by the people." Or: "\_Never was any other\_

sovereign so much beloved by \_his\_ people."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Nothing

\_else\_ ever affected her so much as this misconduct of her child."--\_Id. et

al. cor.\_ "Of all the figures of speech, \_no other\_ comes so near to

painting as \_does\_ metaphor."--\_Blair et al. cor.\_ "I know \_no other

writer\_ so happy in his metaphors as \_is\_ Mr. Addison."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Of

all the English authors, none is \_more\_ happy in his metaphors \_than\_

Addison."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "Perhaps no \_other\_ writer in the world was ever

so frugal of his words as Aristotle."--\_Blair and Jamieson cor.\_ "Never was

any \_other\_ writer so happy in that concise \_and\_ spirited style, as Mr.

Pope."--\_Blair cor.\_ "In the harmonious structure and disposition of \_his\_

periods, no \_other\_ writer whatever, ancient or modern, equals

Cicero."--\_Blair and Jamieson cor.\_ "Nothing \_else\_ delights me so much as

the works of nature."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "No person was ever \_more\_ perplexed

\_than\_ he has been to-day."--\_Id.\_ "In \_no other\_ case are writers so apt

to err, as in the position of the word \_only\_."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "For

nothing is \_more\_ tiresome \_than\_ perpetual uniformity."--\_Blair cor.\_

"\_Naught else sublimes the spirit, sets it free,

Like\_ sacred and soul-moving poesy."--\_Sheffield cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--EXTRA COMPARISONS.

"How much \_better are ye\_ than the fowls!"--\_Bible cor.\_ "Do not thou

hasten above the Most \_High\_."--\_Esdras cor.\_ "This word, PEER, is

principally used for the nobility of the realm."--\_Cowell cor.\_ "Because

the same is not only most \_generally\_ received, &c."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "This

is, I say, not the best and most \_important\_ evidence."--\_Id.\_ "Offer unto

God thanksgiving, and pay thy vows unto the Most \_High\_."--\_The Psalter

cor.\_ "The holy place of the tabernacle of the Most \_High\_."--\_Id.\_ "As

boys should be educated with temperance, so the first \_great\_ lesson that

should be taught them, is, to admire frugality."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "More

\_general\_ terms are put for such as are more restricted."--\_Rev. J. Brown

cor.\_ "This, \_this\_ was the unkindest cut of all."--\_Enfield's Speaker\_, p.

353. "To take the basest and most \_squalid\_ shape."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "I'll

forbear: \_I have\_ fallen out with my more \_heady\_ will."--\_Id.\_ "The power

of the Most \_High\_ guard thee from sin."--\_Percival cor.\_ "Which title had

been more \_true\_, if the dictionary had been in Latin and

\_Welsh\_."--\_Verstegan cor.\_ "The waters are frozen sooner and harder, than

further upward, within the inlands."--\_Id.\_ "At every descent, the worst

may become more \_depraved\_."--\_Mann cor.\_

"Or as a moat defensive to a house

Against the envy of less \_happy\_ lands."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"A dreadful quiet felt, and \_worse by\_ far

Than arms, a sullen interval of war."--\_Dryden cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--ADJECTIVES CONNECTED.

"It breaks forth in its \_highest, most energetic\_, and \_most impassioned\_

strain."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "He has fallen into the \_vilest and grossest\_ sort

of railing."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "To receive that \_higher and more general\_

instruction which the public affords."--\_J. O. Taylor cor.\_ "If the best

things have the \_best and most perfect\_ operations."--\_Hooker cor.\_ "It

became the plainest and most elegant, the \_richest\_ and most splendid, of

all languages."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "But the \_principal and most frequent\_ use of

pauses, is, to mark the divisions of the sense."--\_Blair cor.\_ "That every

thing belonging to ourselves is \_the best and the most perfect\_."--

\_Clarkson cor.\_ "And to instruct their pupils in the \_best and most

thorough\_ manner."--\_School Committee cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IX.--ADJECTIVES SUPERADDED.

"The Father is figured out as a \_venerable old\_ man."--\_Brownlee cor.\_

"There never was exhibited \_an other such\_ masterpiece of ghostly

assurance."--\_Id.\_ "After the \_first three\_ sentences, the question is

entirely lost."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "The \_last four\_ parts of speech are

commonly called particles."--\_Al. Murray cor.\_ "The \_last two\_ chapters

will not be found deficient in this respect."--\_Todd cor.\_ "Write upon your

slates a list of the \_first ten\_ nouns."--\_J. Abbott cor.\_ "We have a few

remains of \_two other\_ Greek poets in the pastoral style, Moschus and

Bion."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The \_first nine\_ chapters of the book of Proverbs are

highly poetical."--\_Id.\_ "For, of these five heads, only the \_first two\_

have any particular relation to the sublime."--\_Id.\_ "The resembling sounds

of the \_last two\_ syllables give a ludicrous air to the whole."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "The \_last three\_ are arbitrary."--\_Id.\_ "But in the \_sentence\_, 'She

hangs the curtains,' \_hangs\_ is an \_active-transitive\_ verb."--\_Comly cor.\_

"If our definition of a verb, and the arrangement of \_active-transitive,

active-intransitive\_, passive, and neuter verbs, are properly

understood."--\_Id.\_ "These \_last two lines\_ have an embarrassing

construction."--\_Rush cor.\_ "God was provoked to drown them all, but Noah

and \_seven other\_ persons."--\_Wood cor.\_ "The \_first six\_ books of the

Æneid are extremely beautiful."--\_Formey cor.\_ "\_Only\_ a few instances

\_more\_ can \_here\_ be given."--\_Murray cor.\_ "A few years \_more\_ will

obliterate every vestige of a subjunctive form."--\_Nutting cor.\_ "Some

define them to be verbs devoid of the \_first two\_ persons."--\_Crombie cor.\_

"In \_an other such\_ Essay-tract as this."--\_White cor.\_ "But we fear that

not \_an other such\_ man is to be found."--\_Edward Irving cor.\_ "\_O for an

other such\_ sleep, that I might see \_an other such\_ man!" Or, to preserve

poetic measure, say:--

"\_O for such\_ sleep \_again\_, that I might see

\_An other such\_ man, \_though but in a dream\_!"--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS.

"\_The\_ is an article, relating to the noun \_balm, agreeably\_ to Rule

11th."--\_Comly cor.\_ "\_Wise\_ is an adjective, relating to the noun \_man's,

agreeably\_ to Rule 11th."--\_Id.\_ "To whom I observed, that the beer was

\_extremely\_ good."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "He writes \_very elegantly\_." Or: "He

writes \_with remarkable elegance\_."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "John behaves

\_very civilly\_ (or, \_with true civility\_) to all men."--\_Id.\_ "All the

sorts of words hitherto considered, have each of them some meaning, even

when taken \_separately\_."--\_Beattie cor.\_ "He behaved himself \_conformably\_

to that blessed example."--\_Sprat cor.\_ "\_Marvellously\_ graceful."--

\_Clarendon cor.\_ "The Queen having changed her ministry, \_suitably\_ to her

wisdom."--\_Swift cor.\_ "The assertions of this author are \_more easily\_

detected."--\_Id.\_ "The characteristic of his sect allowed him to affirm no

\_more strongly\_ than that."--\_Bentley cor.\_ "If one author had spoken \_more

nobly\_ and \_loftily\_ than an other."--\_Id.\_ "Xenophon says \_expressly\_."--

\_Id.\_ "I can never think so very \_meanly\_ of him."--\_Id.\_ "To convince all

that are ungodly among them, of all their ungodly deeds, which they have

\_impiously\_ committed."--\_Bible cor.\_ "I think it very \_ably\_ written." Or:

"I think it written \_in a\_ very masterly \_manner\_."--\_Swift cor.\_ "The

whole design must refer to the golden age, which it represents \_in a\_

lively \_manner\_."--\_Addison cor.\_ "\_Agreeably\_ to this, we read of names

being blotted out of God's book."--\_Burder et al. cor.\_ "\_Agreeably\_ to the

law of nature, children are bound to support their indigent

parents."--\_Paley\_. "Words taken \_independently\_ of their meaning, are

parsed as nouns of the neuter gender."--\_Maltby cor.\_

"Conceit in weakest bodies \_strongliest\_ works."--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XI.--THEM FOR THOSE.

"Though he was not known by \_those\_ letters, or the name CHRIST."--\_Bayly

cor.\_ "In a gig, or some of \_those\_ things." Better: "In a gig, or \_some

such vehicle\_."--\_M. Edgeworth cor.\_ "When cross-examined by \_those\_

lawyers."--\_Same\_. "As the custom in \_those\_ cases is."--\_Same\_. "If you

\_had\_ listened to \_those\_ slanders."--\_Same\_. "The old people were telling

stories about \_those\_ fairies; but, to the best of my \_judgement\_, there is

nothing in \_them\_."--\_Same\_. "And is it not a pity that the Quakers have no

better authority to substantiate their principles, than the testimony of

\_those\_ old Pharisees?"--\_Hibbard cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XII.--THIS AND THAT.

"Hope is as strong an incentive to action, as fear: \_that\_ is the

anticipation of good, \_this\_ of evil."--\_Inst.\_, p. 265. "The poor want

some advantages which the rich enjoy; but we should not therefore account

\_these\_ happy, and \_those\_ miserable."--\_Inst.\_, p. 266.

"Ellen and Margaret, fearfully,

Sought comfort in each other's eye;

Then turned their ghastly look each one,

\_That\_ to her sire, \_this\_ to her son."--\_Scott cor.\_

"Six youthful sons, as many blooming maids,

In one sad day beheld the Stygian shades;

\_Those\_ by Apollo's silver bow were slain,

\_These\_ Cynthia's arrows stretch'd upon the plain."--\_Pope cor.\_

"Memory and forecast just returns engage,

\_That\_ pointing back to youth, \_this\_ on to age."--\_Pope, on Man\_.

UNDER NOTE XIII.--EITHER AND NEITHER.

"These make the three great subjects of discussion among mankind; \_namely\_,

truth, duty, and interest: but the arguments directed towards \_any\_ of them

are generically distinct."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "A thousand other deviations

may be made, and still \_any\_ of \_the accounts\_ may be correct in principle;

for \_all\_ these divisions, and their technical terms, are arbitrary."--\_R.

W. Green cor.\_ "Thus it appears, that our alphabet is deficient; as it has

but seven vowels to represent thirteen different sounds; and has no letter

to represent \_any\_ of five simple consonant sounds."--\_Churchill cor.\_

"Then \_none\_ of these five verbs can be neuter."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "And

the \_assertor\_[534] is in \_none\_ of the four already mentioned."--\_Id.\_ "As

it is not in any of these four."--\_Id.\_ "See whether or not the word comes

within the definition of \_any\_ of the other three simple cases."--\_Id.\_ "No

one of the ten was there."--\_Frazee cor.\_ "Here are ten oranges, take \_any

one\_ of them."--\_Id.\_ "There are three modes, by \_any\_ of which

recollection will generally be supplied; inclination, practice, and

association."--\_Rippingham cor.\_ "Words not reducible to \_any\_ of the three

preceding heads."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "Now a sentence may be analyzed in

reference to \_any\_ of these four classes."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE XIV.--WHOLE, LESS, MORE, AND MOST.

"Does not all proceed from the law, which regulates \_all the\_ departments

of the state?"--\_Blair cor.\_ "A messenger relates to Theseus \_all the\_

particulars."--\_Ld. Kames cor.\_ "There are no \_fewer\_ than twenty-\_nine\_

diphthongs in the English language."--\_Ash cor.\_ "The Redcross Knight runs

through \_all the\_ steps of the Christian life."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "There were

not \_fewer\_ than fifty or sixty persons present."--\_Mills and Merchant

cor.\_ "Greater experience, and \_a\_ more cultivated \_state of\_ society,

abate the warmth of imagination, and chasten the manner of

expression."--\_Blair and Murray cor.\_ "By which means, knowledge, \_rather\_

than oratory, \_has\_ become the principal requisite."--\_Blair cor.\_ "No

\_fewer\_ than seven illustrious cities disputed the right of having given

birth to the greatest of poets."--\_Lempriere cor.\_ "Temperance, \_rather\_

than medicines, is the proper means of curing many diseases."--\_Murray

cor.\_ "I do not suppose, that we Britons \_are more deficient\_ in genius

than our neighbours."--\_Id.\_ "In which, he \_says\_, he has found no \_fewer\_

than twelve untruths."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "The several places of rendezvous

were concerted, and \_all the\_ operations \_were\_ fixed."--\_Hume cor.\_ "In

these rigid opinions, \_all the\_ sectaries concurred."--\_Id.\_ "Out of whose

modifications have been made \_nearly all\_ complex modes."--\_Locke cor.\_

"The Chinese vary each of their words on no \_fewer\_ than five different

tones."--\_Blair cor.\_ "These people, though they possess \_brighter\_

qualities, are not so proud as he is, nor so vain as she."--\_Murray cor.\_

"It is certain, \_that\_ we believe \_our own judgements\_ more \_firmly\_, after

we have made a thorough inquiry into the \_things\_."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "As

well as the whole course and \_all the\_ reasons of the operation."--\_Id.\_

"Those rules and principles which are of \_the greatest\_ practical

advantage."--\_Newman cor.\_ "And \_all\_ curse shall be \_no more\_."--\_Rev.

cor.\_--(See \_the Greek\_.) "And death shall be \_no more\_."--\_Id.\_ "But, in

recompense, we have \_pleasanter\_ pictures of ancient manners."--\_Blair

cor.\_ "Our language has suffered \_a greater number of\_ injurious changes in

America, since the British army landed on our shores, than it had suffered

before, in the period of three centuries."--\_Webster cor. "All the\_

conveniences of life are derived from mutual aid and support in

society."--\_Ld. Kames cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XV.--PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVES.

"To such as think the nature of it deserving \_of\_ their attention."--\_Bp.

Butler cor.\_ "In all points, more deserving \_of\_ the approbation of their

readers."--\_Keepsake cor.\_ "But to give way to childish sensations, was

unbecoming \_to\_ our nature."--\_Lempriere cor.\_ "The following extracts are

deserving \_of\_ the serious perusal of all."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "No inquiry

into wisdom, however superficial, is undeserving \_of\_ attention."--\_Bulwer

cor.\_ "The opinions of illustrious men are deserving \_of\_ great

consideration."--\_Porter cor.\_ "And resolutely keep its laws. Uncaring

\_for\_ consequences." Or:--"\_Not heeding\_ consequences."--\_Burns cor.\_ "This

is an item that is deserving \_of\_ more attention."--\_Goodell cor.\_

"Leave then thy joys, unsuiting \_to\_ such age:"--Or,

"Leave then thy joys \_not suiting\_ such an age,

To a fresh comer, and resign the stage."--\_Dryden cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XVI.--FIGURE OF ADJECTIVES.

"The tall dark mountains and the \_deep-toned\_ seas."--\_Dana\_. "O! learn

from him To station \_quick-eyed\_ Prudence at the helm."--\_Frost cor.\_ "He

went in a \_one-horse\_ chaise."--\_David Blair cor.\_ "It ought to be, 'in a

\_one-horse\_ chaise.'"--\_Crombie cor.\_ "These are marked with the

\_above-mentioned\_ letters."--\_Folker cor.\_ "A \_many-headed\_

faction."--\_Ware cor.\_ "Lest there should be no authority in any popular

grammar, for the perhaps \_heaven-inspired\_ effort."--\_Fowle cor.

"Common-metre\_ stanzas consist of four iambic lines; one of eight, and the

next of six syllables. They were formerly written in two

\_fourteen-syllable\_ lines."--\_Goodenow cor. "Short-metre\_ stanzas consist

of four iambic lines; the third of eight, the rest of six

syllables."--\_Id.\_ "\_Particular-metre\_ stanzas consist of six iambic lines;

the third and sixth of six syllables, the rest of eight."--\_Id.

"Hallelujah-metre\_ stanzas consist of six iambic lines; the last two of

eight syllables, and the rest of six."--\_Id. "Long-metre\_ stanzas are

merely the union of four iambic lines, of ten syllables each."--\_Id.\_ "A

majesty more commanding than is to be found among the rest of the

\_Old-Testament\_ poets."--\_Blair cor.\_

"You, sulphurous and \_thought-executed\_ fires,

\_Vaunt-couriers\_ to \_oak-cleaving\_ thunderbolts,

Singe my white head! And thou, \_all-shaking\_ thunder,

Strike flat the thick rotundity o' th' world!"--\_Lear\_, Act iii, Sc. 2.

CHAPTER V.--PRONOUNS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE X AND ITS NOTES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--OF AGREEMENT.

"The subject is to be joined with \_its\_ predicate."--\_Wilkins cor.\_ "Every

one must judge of \_his\_ own feelings."--\_Byron cor.\_ "Every one in the

family should know \_his or her\_ duty."--\_Penn cor.\_ "To introduce its

possessor into that way in which \_he\_ should go."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "Do

not they say, \_that\_ every true believer has the Spirit of God in

\_him\_?"--\_Barclay cor.\_ "There is none in \_his\_ natural state righteous;

no, not one."--\_Wood cor.\_ "If ye were of the world, the world would love

\_its\_ own."--\_Bible cor.\_ "His form had not yet lost all \_its\_ original

brightness."--\_Milton cor.\_ "No one will answer as if I were \_his\_ friend

or companion."--\_Steele cor.\_ "But, in lowliness of mind, let each esteem

\_others\_ better than \_himself\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "And let none of you imagine

evil in \_his heart\_ against his neighbour."--\_Id.\_ "For every tree is known

by \_its\_ own fruit."--\_Id.\_ "But she fell to laughing, like one out of

\_his\_ right mind."--\_M. Edgeworth cor.\_ "Now these systems, so far from

having any tendency to make men better, have a manifest tendency to make

\_them\_ worse."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "And nobody else would make that city \_his\_

refuge any more."--\_Josephus cor.\_ "What is quantity, as it respects

syllables or words? It is \_the\_ time which \_a speaker occupies\_ in

pronouncing \_them\_."--\_Bradley cor.\_ "In such expressions, the adjective so

much resembles an adverb in its meaning, that \_it is\_ usually parsed as

such."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The tongue is like a racehorse; which runs the

faster, the less weight \_he\_ carries." Or thus: "The tongue is like a

racehorse; the less weight \_it\_ carries, the faster \_it\_ runs."--\_Addison,

Murray, et al. cor.\_ "As two thoughtless boys were trying to see which

could lift the greatest weight with \_his\_ jaws, one of them had several of

his firm-set teeth wrenched from their sockets."--\_Newspaper cor.\_ "Every

body nowadays publishes memoirs; every body has recollections which \_he

thinks\_ worthy of recording."--\_Duchess D'Ab. cor.\_ "Every body trembled,

for \_himself\_, or \_for his\_ friends."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_

"A steed comes at morning: no rider is there;

But \_his\_ bridle is red with the sign of despair."--\_Campbell cor.\_

UNDER NOTE I.--PRONOUNS WRONG--OR NEEDLESS.

"Charles loves to study; but John, alas! is very idle."--\_Merchant cor.\_

"Or what man is there of you, \_who\_, if his son ask bread, will give him a

stone?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "Who, in stead of going about doing good, are

perpetually intent upon doing mischief."--\_Tillotson cor.\_ "Whom ye

delivered up, and denied in the presence of Pontius Pilate."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Whom, when they had washed \_her\_, they laid in an upper chamber."--\_Id.\_

"Then Manasseh knew that the Lord was God."--\_Id.\_ "Whatever a man

conceives clearly, he may, if he will be at the trouble, put into distinct

propositions, and express clearly to others."--See \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 93.

"But the painter, being entirely confined to that part of time which he has

chosen, cannot exhibit various stages of the same action."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 195. "What he subjoins, is without any proof at all."--\_Barclay

cor.\_ "George \_Fox's\_ Testimony concerning Robert Barclay."--\_Title cor.\_

"According to the \_advice of the\_ author of the Postcript

[sic--KTH]."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "These things seem as ugly to the eye of their

meditations, as those Ethiopians \_that were\_ pictured \_on Nemesis's\_

pitcher."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "Moreover, there is always a twofold condition

propounded with \_the Sphynx's enigmas\_."--\_Id.\_ "Whoever believeth not

therein, shall perish."--\_Koran cor.\_ "When, at \_Sestius's\_ entreaty, I had

been at his house."--\_W. Walker cor.\_

"There high on \_Sipylus's\_ shaggy brow,

She stands, her own sad monument of wo."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--CHANGE OF NUMBER.

"So will I send upon you famine, and evil beasts, and they shall bereave

\_you\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Why do you plead so much for it? why do \_you\_ preach

it up?" Or: "Why do \_ye\_ plead so much for it? why do \_ye\_ preach it

up?"--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Since thou hast decreed that I shall bear man, \_thy\_

darling."--\_Edward's Gram. cor.\_ "You have my book, and I have \_yours\_;

i.e., \_your\_ book." Or thus: "\_Thou hast\_ my book, and I have \_thine\_;

i.e., \_thy\_ book."--\_Chandler cor.\_ "Neither art thou such a one as to be

ignorant of what \_thou\_ art."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Return, thou backsliding

Israel, saith the Lord, and I will not cause mine anger to fall upon

\_thee\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "The Almighty, unwilling to cut thee off in the

fullness of iniquity, has sent me to give \_thee\_ warning."--\_Ld. Kames cor.

"Wast\_ thou born only for pleasure? \_wast thou\_ never to do any

thing?"--\_Collier cor.\_ "Thou shalt be required to go to God, to die, and

\_to\_ give up \_thy\_ account."--\_Barnes cor.\_ "And canst thou expect to

behold the resplendent glow of the Creator? would not such a sight

annihilate \_thee\_?"--\_Milton cor.\_ "If the prophet had commanded thee to do

some great thing, \_wouldst thou\_ have refused?"--\_C. S. Journal cor.\_ "Art

thou a penitent? evince \_thy\_ sincerity, by bringing forth fruits meet for

repentance."--\_Vade-Mecum cor.\_ "I will call thee my dear son: I remember

all \_thy\_ tenderness."--\_C. Tales cor.\_ "So do thou, my son: open \_thy\_

ears, and \_thy\_ eyes."--\_Wright cor.\_ "I promise you, this was enough to

discourage \_you\_."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "Ere you remark an other's sin, Bid

\_your\_ own conscience look within."--\_Gay cor.\_ "Permit that I share in thy

wo, The privilege \_canst thou\_ refuse?"--\_Perfect cor.\_ "Ah! Strephon, how

\_canst thou\_ despise Her who, without thy pity, \_dies\_?"--\_Swift cor.\_

"Thy verses, friend, are Kidderminster stuff;

And I must own, \_thou'st\_ measured out enough."--\_Shenst. cor.\_

"This day, dear Bee, is thy nativity;

Had Fate a luckier one, she'd give it \_thee\_."--\_Swift cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--WHO AND WHICH.

"Exactly like so many puppets, \_which\_ are moved by wires."--\_Blair cor.\_

"They are my servants, \_whom\_ I brought forth[535] out of the land of

Egypt."--\_Leviticus\_, xxv, 55. "Behold, I and the children \_whom\_ God hath

given me."--See \_Isaiah\_, viii, 18. "And he sent Eliakim, \_who\_ was over

the household, and Shebna the scribe."--\_Isaiah\_, xxxvii, 2. "In a short

time the streets were cleared of the corpses \_which\_ filled

them."--\_M'Ilvaine cor.\_ "They are not of those \_who\_ teach things \_that\_

they ought not, for filthy lucre's sake."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "As a lion among

the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep;

\_which\_, if he go through, both treadeth down and teareth in

pieces."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Frequented by every fowl \_which\_ nature has taught

to dip the wing in water."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "He had two sons, one of \_whom\_

was adopted by the family of Maximus."--\_Lempriere cor.\_ "And the ants,

\_which\_ are collected by the smell, are burned \_with\_ fire."--\_The Friend

cor.\_ "They being the agents to \_whom\_ this thing was trusted."--\_Nixon

cor.\_ "A packhorse \_which\_ is driven constantly \_one way and the other\_, to

\_and from\_ market."--\_Locke cor.\_ "By instructing children, \_whose\_

affection will be increased."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "He had a comely young woman,

\_who\_ travelled with him."--\_Hutchinson cor.\_ "A butterfly, \_who\_ thought

himself an accomplished traveller, happened to light upon a

beehive."--\_Inst.\_, p. 267. "It is an enormous elephant of stone, \_which\_

disgorges from his uplifted trunk a vast but graceful shower."--\_Ware cor.\_

"He was met by a dolphin, \_which\_ sometimes swam before him, and sometimes

behind him."--\_Edward's Gram. cor.\_

"That Cæsar's horse, \_which\_, as fame goes,

Had corns upon his feet and toes,

Was not by half so tender-hoof'd,

Nor trod upon the ground so soft."--\_Butler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.

"He instructed and fed the crowds \_that\_ surrounded him."--\_Murray's Key\_.

"The court, \_which\_ gives currency to manners, ought to be exemplary." p.

187. "Nor does he describe classes of sinners \_that\_ do not exist."--\_Mag.

cor.\_ "Because the nations among \_which\_ they took their rise, were not

savage."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Among nations \_that\_ are in the first and rude

periods of society."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The martial spirit of those nations

among \_which\_ the feudal government prevailed."--\_Id.\_ "France, \_which\_ was

in alliance with Sweden."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 97. "That faction, in

England, \_which\_ most powerfully opposed his arbitrary pretensions."--\_Ib.\_

"We may say, 'the crowd \_which\_ was going up the street.'"--\_Cobbett's E.

Gram.\_, ¶ 204. "Such members of the Convention \_which\_ formed this Lyceum,

as have subscribed this Constitution."--\_N. Y. Lyceum cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--CONFUSION OF SENSES.

"\_The name\_ of the possessor shall take a particular form to show its

case."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Of which reasons, the principal one is, that no

noun, properly so called, implies \_the\_ presence \_of the thing

named\_."--\_Harris cor.\_ "\_Boston\_ is a proper noun, which distinguishes

\_the city of Boston\_ from other cities."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "\_The word\_

CONJUNCTION means union, or \_the act of\_ joining together. \_Conjunctions

are\_ used to join or \_connect\_ either words or sentences."--\_Id.\_ "The word

INTERJECTION means \_the act of throwing between. Interjections are\_

interspersed among other words, to express \_strong or sudden\_

emotion."--\_Id.\_ "\_Indeed\_ is composed of \_in\_ and \_deed. The words\_ may

better be written separately, as they formerly were."--\_Cardell cor.\_

"\_Alexander\_, on the contrary, is a particular name; and is \_employed\_ to

distinguish \_an individual only\_."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "As an indication that

nature itself had changed \_its\_ course." Or:--"that \_Nature herself\_ had

changed her course."--\_History cor.\_ "Of removing from the United States

and \_their\_ territories the free people of colour."--\_Jenifer cor.\_ "So

that \_gh\_ may be said not to have \_its\_ proper sound." Or thus: "So that

\_the letters, g\_ and \_h\_, may be said not to have their proper

\_sounds\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Are we to welcome the loathsome harlot, and

introduce \_her\_ to our children?"--\_Maturin cor.\_ "The first question is

this: 'Is reputable, national, and present use, \_which\_, for brevity's

sake, I shall hereafter simply denominate \_good use\_, always uniform, [i.

e., undivided, and unequivocal,] in \_its\_ decisions?"--\_Campbell cor.\_ "\_In

personifications\_, Time is always masculine, on account of \_his\_ mighty

efficacy; Virtue, feminine, \_by reason of her\_ beauty and

\_loveliness\_."--\_Murray, Blair, et al. cor.\_ "When you speak to a person or

thing, the \_noun or pronoun\_ is in the second person."--\_Bartlett cor.\_

"You now know the noun; for \_noun\_ means \_name\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_T\_. What do you

see? \_P\_. A book. \_T\_. Spell \_book\_."--\_R. W. Green cor.\_ "\_T\_. What do you

see now? \_P\_. Two books. \_T\_. Spell \_books\_."--\_Id.\_ "If the United States

lose \_their\_ rights as a nation."--\_Liberator cor.\_ "When a person or thing

is addressed or spoken to, the \_noun or pronoun\_ is in the second

person."--\_Frost cor.\_ "When a person or thing is \_merely\_ spoken of, the

\_noun or pronoun\_ is in the third person."--\_Id.\_ "The \_word\_ OX \_also,

taking\_ the same plural termination, \_makes\_ OXEN."--\_Bucke cor.\_

"Hail, happy States! \_yours\_ is the blissful seat

Where nature's gifts and art's improvements meet."--\_Everett cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--THE RELATIVE THAT.

(1.) "This is the most useful art \_that\_ men possess."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"The earliest accounts \_that\_ history gives us, concerning all nations,

bear testimony to these facts."--\_Blair et al. cor.\_ "Mr. Addison was the

first \_that\_ attempted a regular inquiry into the pleasures of

taste."--\_Blair cor.\_ "One of the first \_that\_ introduced it, was

Montesquieu."--\_Murray cor.\_ "Massillon is perhaps the most eloquent

\_sermonizer that\_ modern times have produced."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The greatest

barber \_that\_ ever lived, is our guiding star and prototype."--\_Hart cor.\_

(2.) "When prepositions are subjoined to nouns, they are generally the same

\_that\_ are subjoined to the verbs from which the nouns are

derived."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 200. Better thus: "\_The\_ prepositions

\_which\_ are subjoined to nouns, \_are\_ generally the same \_that\_,"

&c.--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The same proportions \_that\_ are agreeable in a

model, are not agreeable in a large building."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The same

ornaments \_that\_ we admire in a private apartment, are unseemly in a

temple."--\_Murray cor.\_ "The same \_that\_ John saw also in the

sun."--\_Milton cor.\_

(3.) "Who can ever be easy, \_that\_ is reproached with his own ill

conduct?"--\_T. à Kempis cor.\_ "Who is she \_that\_ comes clothed in a robe of

green?"--\_Inst.\_, p. 267. "Who \_that\_ has either sense or civility, does

not perceive the vileness of profanity?"--\_G. Brown\_.

(4.) "The second person denotes the person or thing \_that\_ is spoken

to."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The third person denotes the person or thing \_that\_

is spoken of."--\_Id.\_ "A passive verb denotes action received, or endured

by the person or thing \_that is signified by\_ its nominative."--\_Id.\_ "The

princes and states \_that\_ had neglected or favoured the growth of this

power."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "The nominative expresses the name of the

person or thing \_that\_ acts, or \_that\_ is the subject of

discourse."--\_Hiley cor.\_

(5.) "Authors \_that\_ deal in long sentences, are very apt to be

faulty."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Writers \_that\_ deal," &c.--\_Murray cor.\_ "The

neuter gender denotes objects \_that\_ are neither male nor

female."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "The neuter gender denotes things \_that\_ have no

sex."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Nouns \_that\_ denote objects neither male nor female,

are of the neuter gender."--\_Wells's Gram. of late\_, p. 55. Better thus:

"\_Those\_ nouns \_which\_ denote objects \_that are\_ neither male nor female,

are of the neuter gender."--\_Wells cor.\_ "Objects and ideas \_that\_ have

been long familiar, make too faint an impression to give an agreeable

exercise to our faculties."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Cases \_that\_ custom has left

dubious, are certainly within the grammarian's province."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Substantives \_that\_ end in \_ery\_, signify action or habit."--\_Id.\_ "After

all \_that\_ can be done to render the definitions and rules of grammar

accurate."--\_Id.\_ "Possibly, all \_that\_ I have said, is known and

taught."--\_A. B. Johnson cor.\_

(6.) "It is a strong and manly style \_that\_ should chiefly be

studied."--\_Blair cor.\_ "It is this [viz., \_precision] that\_ chiefly makes

a division appear neat and elegant."--\_Id.\_ "I hope it is not I \_that\_ he

is displeased with."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "When it is this alone \_that\_

renders the sentence obscure."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "This sort of full and

ample assertion, '\_It is this that\_,' is fit to be used when a proposition

of importance is laid down."--\_Blair cor.\_ "She is not the person \_that\_ I

understood it to have been."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Was it thou, or the wind,

\_that\_ shut the door?"--\_Inst.\_, p. 267. "It was not I \_that\_ shut

it."--\_Ib.\_

(7.) "He is not the person \_that he\_ seemed \_to be\_."--\_Murray and

Ingersoll cor.\_ "He is really the person \_that\_ he appeared to be."--\_Iid.\_

"She is not now the woman \_that\_ they represented her to have

been."--\_Iid.\_ "An \_only child\_ is one \_that\_ has neither brother nor

sister; a \_child alone\_ is one \_that\_ is left by itself, \_or

unaccompanied\_."--\_Blair, Jam., and Mur., cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--RELATIVE CLAUSES CONNECTED.

(1.) "A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of a thing; (i. e.,) of whatever

we conceive to subsist, or of \_whatever\_ we \_merely imagine\_."--\_Lowth

cor.\_ (2.) "A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any thing \_which\_

exists, or of which we have any notion."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ (3.) "A

Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing, that

exists, or \_that\_ we can have an idea \_of\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ (4.) "A noun is

the name of any thing \_which\_ exists, or of which we form an

idea."--\_Hallock cor.\_ (5.) "A Noun is the name of any person, place,

object, or thing, that exists, or \_that\_ we may conceive to exist."--\_D. C.

Allen cor.\_ (6.) "The name of every thing \_which\_ exists, or of which we

can form a notion, is a noun."--\_Fisk cor.\_ (7.) "An allegory is the

representation of some one thing by an other that resembles it, and \_that\_

is made to stand for it."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 150. (8.) "Had he exhibited

such sentences as contained ideas inapplicable to young minds, or \_such as\_

were of a trivial or injurious nature."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ (9.) "Man would

have others obey him, even his own kind; but he will not obey God, \_who\_ is

so much above him, and who made him."--\_Penn cor.\_ (10.) "But what we may

consider here, and \_what\_ few persons have \_noticed\_, is," &c.--\_Brightland

cor.\_ (11.) "The compiler has not inserted \_those\_ verbs \_which\_ are

irregular only in familiar writing or discourse, and which are improperly

terminated by \_t in stead\_ of \_ed\_."--\_Murray, Fisk, Hart, Ingersoll et

al., cor.\_ (12.) "The remaining parts of speech, which are called the

indeclinable parts, \_and which\_ admit of no variations, (or, \_being words

that\_ admit of no variations,) will not detain us long."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--THE RELATIVE AND PREPOSITION.

"In the temper of mind \_in which\_ he was then."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 102.

"To bring them into the condition \_in which\_ I am at present."--\_Add. cor.\_

"In the posture \_in which\_ I lay."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 102. "In the sense

\_in which\_ it is sometimes taken."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Tools and utensils are

said to be right, when they \_answer well\_ the uses \_for which\_ they were

made."--\_Collier cor.\_ "If, in the extreme danger \_in which\_ I now am," &c.

Or: "If, in \_my present\_ extreme danger," &c.--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 116.

"News was brought, that Dairus [sic--KTH] was but twenty miles from the

place \_in which\_ they then were."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Alexander, upon

hearing this news, continued four days \_where\_ he then was:" or--"\_in the

place in which\_ he then was."--\_Id.\_ "To read in the best manner \_in which

reading\_ is now taught."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "It may be expedient to give a

few directions as to the manner \_in which\_ it should be studied."--\_Hallock

cor.\_ "Participles are words derived from verbs, and convey an idea of the

acting of an agent, or the suffering of an object, with the time \_at which\_

it happens." [536]--\_A. Murray cor.\_

"Had I but serv'd my God with half the zeal

\_With which\_ I serv'd my king, he would not \_thus\_,

In age, have left me naked to \_my foes\_."--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IX.--ADVERBS FOR RELATIVES. "In compositions \_that are not

designed to be delivered in public\_."--\_Blair cor.\_ "They framed a

protestation \_in which\_ they repeated their claims."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 133; \_Murray's\_, 197. "Which have reference to \_inanimate\_ substances,

\_in which\_ sex \_has no\_ existence."--\_Harris cor.\_ "Which denote substances

\_in which\_ sex never had existence."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 26. "There is

no rule given \_by which\_ the truth may be found out."--\_W. Walker cor.\_

"The nature of the objects \_from which\_ they are taken."--\_Blair cor.\_

"That darkness of character, \_through which\_ we can see no heart:" [i. e.,

generous emotion.]--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The states \_with which\_ [or \_between

which\_] they negotiated."--\_Formey cor.\_ "Till the motives \_from which\_ men

act, be known."--\_Beattie cor.\_ "He assigns the principles \_from which\_

their power of pleasing flows."--\_Blair cor.\_ "But I went on, and so

finished this History, in that form \_in which\_ it now appears."--\_Sewel

cor.\_ "By prepositions we express the cause \_for which\_, the instrument by

which, \_and\_ the manner \_in which\_, a thing is done."--\_A. Murray cor.\_

"They are not such in the language \_from which\_ they are derived."--\_Town

cor.\_ "I find it very hard to persuade several, that their passions are

affected by words from \_which\_ they have no ideas."--\_Burke cor.\_ "The

known end, then, \_for which\_ we are placed in a state of so much

affliction, hazard, and difficulty, is our improvement in virtue and

piety."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_

"Yet such his acts as Greeks unborn shall tell,

And curse the \_strife in which\_ their fathers fell."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--REPEAT THE NOUN.

"Youth may be thoughtful, but \_thoughtfulness in the young\_ is not very

common."--\_Webster cor.\_ "A proper name is \_a name\_ given to one person or

thing."--\_Bartlett cor.\_ "A common name is \_a name\_ given to many things of

the same sort."--\_Id.\_ "This rule is often violated; some instances of \_its

violation\_ are annexed."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "This is altogether

careless writing. \_Such negligence respecting the pronouns\_, renders style

often obscure, and always inelegant."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Every inversion which

is not governed by this rule, will be disrelished by every \_person\_ of

taste."--\_Kames cor.\_ "A proper diphthong, is \_a diphthong\_ in which both

the vowels are sounded."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 18. "An improper

diphthong, is \_a diphthong\_ in which only one of the vowels is

sounded."--\_Ib.\_ "Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and \_the\_ descendants \_of Jacob\_,

are called Hebrews."--\_Wood cor.\_ "In our language, \_every word\_ of more

than one syllable, has one of \_its syllables\_ distinguished from the rest

in this manner."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Two consonants proper to begin a word,

must not be separated; as, fa-ble, sti-fle. But when \_two consonants\_ come

between two vowels, and are such as cannot begin a word, they must be

divided, as, ut-most, un-der."--\_Id.\_ "Shall the intellect alone feel no

pleasures in its energy, when we allow \_pleasures\_ to the grossest energies

of appetite and sense?"--\_Harris and Murray cor.\_ "No man has a propensity

to vice as such: on the contrary, a wicked deed disgusts \_every one\_, and

makes him abhor the author."--\_Ld. Kames cor.\_ "The same \_grammatical

properties\_ that belong to nouns, belong also to pronouns."--\_Greenleaf

cor.\_ "What is language? It is the means of communicating thoughts from one

\_person\_ to an other."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "A simple word is \_a word\_

which is not made up of \_other words\_."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "A compound

word is \_a word\_ which is made up of two or more words."--\_Iid\_. "When a

conjunction is to be supplied, \_the ellipsis\_ is called Asyndeton."--\_Adam

cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XI.--PLACE OF THE RELATIVE.

"It gives \_to words a meaning which\_ they would not have."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "There are in the English language many \_words, that\_ are sometimes

used as adjectives, and sometimes as adverbs."--\_Id.\_ "Which do not more

effectually show the varied intentions of the mind, than do the

\_auxiliaries which\_ are used to form the potential mood."--\_Id.\_ "These

\_accents, which\_ will be the subject of a following speculation, make

different impressions on the mind."--\_Ld. Kames cor.\_ "And others differed

very much from the words \_of the writers to whom\_ they were

ascribed."--\_John Ward cor.\_ "Where there is in the sense \_nothing which\_

requires the last sound to be elevated, an easy fall will be

proper."--\_Murray and Bullions cor.\_ "In the last clause there is an

ellipsis of the verb; \_and\_, when you supply \_it\_, you find it necessary to

use the adverb \_not, in lieu of no\_."--\_Campbell and Murray cor.\_ "\_Study\_

is \_of the\_ singular number, because \_the\_ nominative \_I, with which\_ it

agrees, \_is singular\_."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "John is the \_person who\_ is in

error, or thou art."--\_Wright cor.\_ "For he hath made him, who knew no sin,

to be sin for us."--\_Harrison's E. Lang.\_, p. 197.

"My friend, take that of \_me, who\_ have the power

To seal th' accuser's lips."--\_Shakspeare cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XII.--WHAT FOR THAT.

"I had no idea but \_that\_ the story was true."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 268.

"The postboy is not so weary but \_that\_ he can whistle."--\_Ib.\_ "He had no

intimation but \_that\_ the men were honest."--\_Ib.\_ "Neither Lady Haversham

nor Miss Mildmay will ever believe but \_that\_ I have been entirely to

blame."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "I am not satisfied but \_that\_ the integrity of

our friends is more essential to our welfare than their knowledge of the

world."--\_Id.\_ "Indeed, there is in poetry nothing so entertaining or

descriptive, but \_that an ingenious\_ didactic writer may introduce \_it\_ in

some part of his work."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Brasidas, being bit by a mouse he

had catched, let it slip out of his fingers: 'No creature,' says he, 'is so

contemptible but \_that it\_ may provide for its own safety, if it have

courage.'"--\_Ld. Kames cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XIII.--ADJECTIVES FOR ANTECEDENTS.

"In narration, Homer is, at all times, remarkably concise, \_and therefore\_

lively and agreeable."--\_Blair cor.\_ "It is usual to talk of a nervous, a

feeble, or a spirited style; which \_epithets\_ plainly \_indicate the\_

writer's manner of thinking."--\_Id.\_ "It is too violent an alteration, if

any alteration were necessary, \_whereas\_ none is."--\_Knight cor.\_ "Some men

are too ignorant to be humble; \_and\_ without \_humility\_ there can be no

docility."--\_Berkley cor.\_ "Judas declared him innocent; \_but innocent\_ he

could not be, had he in any respect deceived the disciples."--\_Porteus

cor.\_ "They supposed him to be innocent, \_but\_ he certainly was not

\_so\_."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "They accounted him honest, \_but\_ he certainly

was not \_so\_."--\_Felch cor.\_ "Be accurate in all you say or do; for

\_accuracy\_ is important in all the concerns of life."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p.

268. "Every law supposes the transgressor to be wicked; \_and\_ indeed he is

\_so\_, if the law is just."--\_Ib.\_ "To be pure in heart, pious, and

benevolent, (\_and\_ all may be \_so\_,) constitutes human happiness."--\_Murray

cor.\_ "To be dexterous in danger, is a virtue; but to court danger to show

\_our dexterity\_, is \_a\_ weakness."--\_Penn cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XIV.--SENTENCES FOR ANTECEDENTS.

"This seems not so allowable in prose; which \_fact\_ the following erroneous

examples will demonstrate."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The accent is laid upon the

last syllable of a word; which \_circumstance\_ is favourable to the

melody."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Every line consists of ten syllables, five short

and five long; from which \_rule\_ there are but two exceptions, both of them

rare."--\_Id.\_ "The soldiers refused obedience, \_as\_ has been

explained."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "Caesar overcame Pompey--\_a circumstance\_ which

was lamented."--\_Id.\_ "The crowd hailed William, \_agreeably to the

expectations of his friends\_."--\_Id.\_ "The tribunes resisted Scipio, \_who

knew their malevolence towards him\_."--\_Id.\_ "The censors reproved vice,

\_and were held in great honour\_."--\_Id.\_ "The generals neglected

discipline, which \_fact\_ has been proved."--\_Id.\_ "There would be two

nominatives to the verb \_was, and such a construction\_ is improper."--\_Adam

and Gould cor.\_ "His friend bore the abuse very patiently; \_whose

forbearance, however\_, served \_only\_ to increase his rudeness; it produced,

at length, contempt and insolence."--\_Murray and Emmons cor.\_ "Almost all

\_compound\_ sentences are more or less elliptical; \_and\_ some examples of

\_ellipsis\_ may be \_found\_, under \_nearly all\_ the different parts of

speech."--\_Murray, Guy, Smith, Ingersoll, Fisk, et al. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XV.--REPEAT THE PRONOUN.

"In things of Nature's workmanship, whether we regard their internal or

\_their\_ external structure, beauty and design are equally

conspicuous."--\_Kames cor.\_ "It puzzles the reader, by making him doubt

whether the word ought to be taken in its proper, or \_in its\_ figurative

sense."--\_Id.\_ "Neither my obligations to the muses, nor \_my\_ expectations

from them, are so great."--\_Cowley cor.\_ "The Fifth Annual Report of the

\_Antislavery\_ Society of Ferrisburgh and \_its\_ vicinity."--\_Title cor.\_

"Meaning taste in its figurative as well as \_its\_ proper sense."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "Every measure in which either your personal or \_your\_ political

character is concerned."--\_Junius cor.\_ "A jealous \_and\_ righteous God has

often punished such in themselves or \_in their\_ offspring."--\_Extracts

cor.\_ "Hence their civil and \_their\_ religious history are

inseparable."--\_Milman cor.\_ "Esau thus carelessly threw away both his

civil and \_his\_ religious inheritance."--\_Id.\_ "This intelligence excited

not only our hopes, but \_our\_ fears likewise."--\_Jaudon cor.\_ "In what way

our defect of principle, and \_our\_ ruling manners, have completed the ruin

of the national spirit of union."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "Considering her

descent, her connexion, and \_her\_ present intercourse."--\_Webster cor.\_

"His own and \_his\_ wife's wardrobe are packed up in a firkin."--\_Parker and

Fox cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XVI.--CHANGE THE ANTECEDENT.

"The \_sounds\_ of \_e\_ and \_o\_ long, in \_their\_ due degrees, will be

preserved, and clearly distinguished."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "If any \_persons\_

should be inclined to think," &c., "the author takes the liberty to suggest

to \_them\_," &c.--\_Id.\_ "And he walked in all the \_way\_ of Asa his father;

he turned not aside from \_it\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "If ye from your hearts

forgive not every one his \_brethren their\_ trespasses."--\_Id.\_ "\_None\_ ever

fancied \_they\_ were slighted by him, or had the courage to think

\_themselves\_ his \_betters\_."--\_Collier cor.\_ "And \_Rebecca\_ took \_some very

good clothes\_ of her eldest son \_Esau's\_, which \_were\_ with her in the

house, and put \_them\_ upon Jacob her younger son."--\_Gen. cor.\_ "Where all

the attention of \_men\_ is given to \_their\_ own indulgence."--\_Maturin cor.\_

"The idea of a \_father\_ is a notion superinduced to \_that of\_ the

substance, or man--let \_one's idea of\_ man be what \_it\_ will."--\_Locke

cor.\_ "Leaving \_all\_ to do as they \_list\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Each \_person\_

performed his part handsomely."--\_J. Flint cor.\_ "This block of marble

rests on two layers of \_stones\_, bound together with lead, which, however,

has not prevented the Arabs from forcing out several of \_them\_."--\_Parker

and Fox cor.\_

"Love gives to \_all our powers\_ a double power,

Above their functions and their offices." Or:--

"Love gives to every power a double power,

\_Exalts all\_ functions and \_all\_ offices."--\_Shak. cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XI; OF PRONOUNS.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE IDEA OF PLURALITY.

"The jury will be confined till \_they\_ agree on a verdict."--\_Brown's

Inst.\_, p. 145. "And mankind directed \_their\_ first cares towards the

needful."--\_Formey cor.\_ "It is difficult to deceive a free people

respecting \_their\_ true interest."--\_Life of Charles XII cor.\_ "All the

virtues of mankind are to be counted upon a few fingers, but \_their\_

follies and vices are innumerable."--\_Swift cor.\_ "Every sect saith, 'Give

\_us\_ liberty:' but give it \_them\_, and to \_their\_ power, \_and they\_ will

not yield it to any body else."--\_Cromwell cor.\_ "Behold, the people shall

rise up as a great lion, and lift up \_themselves\_ as a young lion."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "For all flesh had corrupted \_their\_ way upon the earth."--\_Id.\_

"There happened to the army a very strange accident, which put \_them\_ in

great consternation."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_

UNDER NOTE I.--THE IDEA OF UNITY.

"The meeting went on \_with its\_ business as a united body."--\_Foster cor.\_

"Every religious association has an undoubted right to adopt a creed for

\_itself\_."--\_Gould cor.\_ "It would therefore be extremely difficult to

raise an insurrection in that state against \_its\_ own government."--\_Dr.

Webster cor.\_ "The mode in which a lyceum can apply \_itself\_ in effecting a

reform in common schools."--\_N. Y. Lyc. cor.\_ "Hath a nation changed \_its\_

gods, which yet are no gods?"--\_Jer. cor.\_ "In the holy Scriptures, each of

the twelve tribes of Israel is often called by the name of the patriarch

from whom \_it\_ descended." Or better:--"from whom \_the tribe\_

descended."--\_Adams cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--UNIFORMITY OF NUMBER.

"A nation, by the reparation of \_the wrongs which it has done\_, achieves a

triumph more glorious than any field of blood can ever give."--\_Adams cor.\_

"The English nation, from \_whom\_ we descended, have been gaining their

liberties inch by inch."--\_Webster cor.\_ "If a Yearly Meeting should

undertake to alter \_its\_ fundamental doctrines, is there any power in the

society to prevent \_it from\_ doing so?"--\_Foster's Rep. cor.\_ "There

is[537] a generation that \_curse\_ their father, and \_do\_ not bless their

mother."--\_Bible cor.\_ "There is[537] a generation that are pure in their

own eyes, and yet \_are\_ not washed from their filthiness."--\_Id.\_ "He hath

not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither hath he seen perverseness in Israel:

the Lord \_their\_ God is with \_them\_, and the shout of a king is among

them."--\_Id.\_ "My people \_have\_ forgotten me, they have burnt incense to

vanity."--\_Id.\_ "When a quarterly meeting \_has\_ come to a \_judgement\_

respecting any difference, relative to any monthly meeting belonging to

\_it\_" &c.--\_Discip. cor.\_ "The number of such compositions is every day

increasing, and it \_appears\_ to be limited only by the pleasure or \_the

convenience\_ of \_writers\_."--\_Booth cor.\_ "The Church of Christ \_has\_ the

same power now as ever, and \_is\_ led by the same spirit into the same

practices."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "The army, whom \_their\_ chief had thus

abandoned, pursued meanwhile their miserable march." Or thus: "The army,

\_which its\_ chief had thus abandoned, pursued meanwhile \_its\_ miserable

march."--\_Lockhart cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XII; OF PRONOUNS.

ANTECEDENTS CONNECTED BY AND.

"Discontent and sorrow manifested \_themselves\_ in his

countenance."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 146. "Both conversation and public

speaking became more simple and plain, such as we now find \_them\_."--\_Blair

cor.\_ "Idleness and ignorance, \_if they\_ be suffered to proceed,

&c."--\_Johnson and Priestley cor.\_ "Avoid questions and strife: \_they show\_

a busy and contentious disposition."--\_Penn cor.\_ "To receive the gifts and

benefits of God with thanksgiving, and witness \_them\_ blessed and

sanctified to us by the word and prayer, is owned by us."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"Both minister and magistrate are compelled to choose between \_their\_ duty

and \_their\_ reputation."--\_Junius cor.\_ "All the sincerity, truth, and

faithfulness, or disposition of heart or conscience to approve \_them\_,

found among rational creatures, necessarily originate from God."--\_Rev. J.

Brown cor.\_ "Your levity and heedlessness, if \_they\_ continue, will prevent

all substantial improvement."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 269. "Poverty and

obscurity will oppress him only who esteems \_them\_ oppressive."--\_Ib.\_

"Good sense and refined policy are obvious to few, because \_they\_ cannot be

discovered but by a train of reflection."--\_Ib.\_ "Avoid haughtiness of

behaviour, and affectation of manners: \_they imply\_ a want of solid

merit."--\_Ib.\_ "If love and unity continue, \_they\_ will make you partakers

of one an other's joy."--\_Ib.\_ "Suffer not jealousy and distrust to enter:

\_they\_ will destroy, like a canker, every germ of friendship."--\_Ib.\_

"Hatred and animosity are inconsistent with Christian charity: guard,

therefore, against the slightest indulgence of \_them\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Every man

is entitled to liberty of conscience, and freedom of opinion, if he does

not pervert \_them\_ to the injury of others."--\_Ib.\_

"With the azure and vermilion

\_Which are\_ mix'd for my pavilion."--\_Byron cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XIII; OF PRONOUNS.

ANTECEDENTS CONNECTED BY OR OR NOR.

"Neither prelate nor priest can give \_his\_ [flock or] flocks any decisive

evidence that you are lawful pastors."--\_Brownlee cor.\_ "And is there a

heart of parent or of child, that does not beat and burn within \_him\_?"--

\_Maturin cor.\_ "This is just as if an eye or a foot should demand a

salary for \_its\_ service to the body."--\_Collier cor.\_ "If thy hand or thy

foot offend thee, cut \_it\_ off, and cast \_it\_ from thee."--\_Bible cor.\_

"The same might as well be said of Virgil, or any great author; whose

general character will infallibly raise many casual additions to \_his\_

reputation."--\_Pope cor.\_ "Either James or John,--one \_or the other\_,--will

come."--\_Smith cor.\_ "Even a rugged rock or \_a\_ barren heath, though in

\_itself\_ disagreeable, \_contributes\_, by contrast, to the beauty of the

whole."--\_Kames cor.\_ "That neither Count Rechteren nor Monsieur Mesnager

had behaved \_himself\_ right in this affair."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "If an

Aristotle, a Pythagoras, or a Galileo, \_suffers\_ for \_his\_ opinions, \_he is

a 'martyr.'\_"--\_Fuller cor.\_ "If an ox gore a man or a woman, that \_he or

she\_ die; then the ox \_shall surely\_ be stoned."--\_Exod. cor.\_ "She was

calling out to one or an other, at every step, that a Habit was ensnaring

\_him\_."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "Here is a task put upon children, \_which\_ neither

this author \_himself\_, nor any other, \_has\_ yet undergone."--\_R. Johnson

cor.\_ "Hence, if an adjective or \_a\_ participle be subjoined to the verb

when \_the construction is singular, it\_ will agree both in gender and \_in\_

number with the collective noun."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "And if you can

find a diphthong or a triphthong, be pleased to point \_that\_ out

too."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "And if you can find a trissyllable or a polysyllable,

point \_it\_ out."--\_Id.\_ "The false refuges in which the atheist or the

sceptic \_has\_ intrenched \_himself\_."--\_Chr. Spect. cor.\_ "While the man or

woman thus assisted by art, expects \_his\_ charms \_or hers\_ will be imputed

to nature alone."--\_Opie cor.\_ "When you press a watch, or pull a clock,

\_it answers\_ your question with precision; for \_it repeats\_ exactly the

hour of the day, and tells you neither more nor less than you desire to

know."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_

"Not the Mogul, or Czar of Muscovy,

Not Prester John, or Cham of Tartary,

\_Is\_ in \_his mansion\_ monarch more than I."--\_King cor.\_

CHAPTER VI.--VERBS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XIV AND ITS NOTES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--VERB AFTER THE NOMINATIVE.

"Before you left Sicily, you \_were reconciled\_ to Verres."--\_Duncan cor.\_

"Knowing that you \_were\_ my old master's good friend."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "When

the judge \_dares\_ not act, where is the loser's remedy?"--\_Webster cor.\_

"Which extends it no farther than the variation of the verb

\_extends\_."--\_Mur. cor.\_ "They presently dry without hurt, as myself \_have\_

often proved."--\_R. Williams cor.\_ "Whose goings-forth \_have\_ been from of

old, from everlasting."--\_Micah\_, v, 2. "You \_were\_ paid to fight against

Alexander, not to rail at him."--\_Porter cor.\_ "Where more than one part of

speech \_are\_ almost always concerned."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Nothing less than

murders, rapines, and conflagrations, \_employs\_ their thoughts." Or: "\_No

less things\_ than murders, rapines, and conflagrations, \_employ\_ their

thoughts."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "I wondered where you \_were\_, my dear."--\_Lloyd

cor.\_ "When thou most sweetly \_singst\_."--\_Drummond cor.\_ "Who \_dares\_, at

the present day, avow himself equal to the task?"--\_Gardiner cor.\_

"Every body \_is\_ very kind to her, and not discourteous to me."--\_Byron

cor.\_ "As to what thou \_sayst\_ respecting the diversity of opinions."--\_M.

B. cor.\_ "Thy nature, Immortality, who \_knows\_?"--\_Everest cor.\_ "The

natural distinction of sex in animals, gives rise to what, in grammar,

\_are\_ called genders."--\_Id.\_ "Some pains \_have\_ likewise been

taken."--\_Scott cor.\_ "And many a steed in his stables \_was\_

seen."--\_Penwarne cor.\_ "They \_were\_ forced to eat what never was esteemed

food."--\_Josephus cor.\_ "This that \_you\_ yourself \_have\_ spoken, I desire

that they may take their oaths upon."--\_Hutchinson cor.\_ "By men whose

experience best \_qualifies\_ them to judge."--\_Committee cor.\_ "He \_dares\_

venture to kill and destroy several other kinds of fish."--\_Walton cor.\_

"If a gudgeon meet a roach, He \_ne'er will\_ venture to approach." Or thus:

"If a gudgeon \_meets\_ a roach, He \_dares\_ not venture to approach."--\_Swift

cor.\_ "Which thou \_endeavourst\_ to establish to thyself."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"But they pray together much oftener than thou \_insinuat'st\_."--\_Id.\_ "Of

people of all denominations, over whom thou \_presidest\_."--\_N. Waln cor.\_

"I can produce ladies and gentlemen whose progress \_has\_ been

astonishing."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "Which of these two kinds of vice \_is the\_

more criminal?"--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "Every twenty-four hours \_afford\_ to us

the vicissitudes of day and night."--\_Smith's False Syntax, New Gram.\_, p.

103. Or thus: "Every \_period\_ of twenty-four hours \_affords\_ to us the

vicissitudes of day and night."--\_Smith cor.\_ "Every four years \_add\_ an

other day."--\_Smith's False Syntax, Gram.\_, p. 103. Better thus: "Every

\_fourth year adds\_ an other day."--\_Smith cor.\_ "Every error I could find,

\_Has\_ my busy muse employed."--\_Swift cor.\_ "A studious scholar \_deserves\_

the approbation of his teacher."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "Perfect submission to the

rules of a school \_indicates\_ good breeding."--\_Id.\_ "A comparison in which

more than two \_are\_ concerned."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 78. "By the

facilities which artificial language \_affords\_ them."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_

"Now thyself \_hast\_ lost both lop and top."--\_Spencer cor.\_ "Glad tidings

\_are\_ brought to the poor."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Upon which, all that is

pleasurable or affecting in elocution, chiefly \_depends.\_"--\_Sher. cor.\_

"No pains \_have\_ been spared to render this work complete."--\_Bullions

cor.\_ "The United States \_contain\_ more than a twentieth part of the land

of this globe."--\_Clinton cor.\_ "I am mindful that myself \_am\_

strong."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "Myself \_am\_ (not \_is\_) weak;"--"Thyself \_art\_ (not

\_is\_) weak."--\_Id.\_

"How pale each worshipful and reverend guest

Rises from clerical or city feast!"--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--VERB BEFORE THE NOMINATIVE.

"Where \_were\_ you born? In London."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "There \_are\_ frequent

occasions for commas."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "There necessarily \_follow\_ from

thence these plain and unquestionable consequences."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "And

to this impression \_contributes\_ the redoubled effort."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Or,

if he was, \_were\_ there no spiritual men then?"--\_Barclay cor.\_ "So, by

these two also, \_are\_ signified their contrary principles."--\_Id.\_ "In the

motions made with the hands, \_consists\_ the chief part of gesture in

speaking."--\_Blair cor.\_ "\_Dares\_ he assume the name of a popular

magistrate?"--\_Duncan cor.\_ "There \_were\_ no damages as in England, and so

Scott lost his wager."--\_Byron cor.\_ "In fact, there \_exist\_ such

resemblances."--\_Kames cor.\_ "To him \_give\_ all the prophets

witness."--\_Acts\_, x, 43. "That there \_were\_ so many witnesses and

actors."--\_Addison cor.\_ "How \_do\_ this man's definitions stand

affected?"--\_Collier cor.\_ "Whence \_come\_ all the powers and prerogatives

of rational beings?"--\_Id.\_ "Nor \_do\_ the scriptures cited by thee prove

thy intent."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Nor \_does\_ the scripture cited by thee prove

the contrary."--\_Id.\_ "Why then \_citest\_ thou a scripture which is so plain

and clear for it?"--\_Id.\_ "But what \_say\_ the Scriptures as to respect of

persons among Christians?"--\_Id.\_ "But in the mind of man, while in the

savage state, there \_seem\_ to be hardly any ideas but what enter by the

senses;"--\_Robertson cor.\_ "What sounds \_has\_ each of the

vowels?"--\_Griscom cor.\_ "Out of this \_have\_ grown up aristocracies,

monarchies, despotisms, tyrannies."--\_Brownson cor.\_ "And there \_were\_

taken up, of fragments that remained to them, twelve baskets."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "There \_seem\_ to be but two general classes."--\_Day cor.\_ "Hence

\_arise\_ the six forms of expressing time."--\_Id.\_ "There \_seem\_ to be no

other words required."--\_Chandler cor.\_ "If there \_are\_ two, the second

increment is the syllable next to the last."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Hence

\_arise\_ the following advantages."--\_Id.\_ "There are no data by which it

can be estimated."--\_Calhoun cor.\_ "To this class, \_belongs\_ the Chinese

language, in which we have nothing but naked \_primitives\_."--\_Fowler cor.\_

[[Fist] "Nothing but naked \_roots\_" is faulty; because no word is a \_root\_,

except some derivative spring from it."--G. B.] "There \_were\_ several other

grotesque figures that presented themselves."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "In these

\_consists\_ that sovereign good which ancient sages so much

extol."--\_Percival cor.\_ "Here \_come\_ those I have done good to against my

will."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Where there \_are\_ more than one auxiliary." Or:

"Where there \_are\_ more \_auxiliaries\_ than one."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_

"On me to cast those eyes where \_shines\_ nobility."

--\_Sidney cor.\_

"Here \_are\_ half-pence in plenty, for one you'll have twenty."

--\_Swift cor.\_

"Ah, Jockey, ill \_advisest\_ thou. I wis,

To think of songs at such a time as this."

--\_Churchill cor.\_

UNDER NOTE I.--THE RELATIVE AND VERB.

"Thou, who \_lovest\_ us, wilt protect us still."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "To use

that endearing language, 'Our Father, who \_art\_ in heaven.'"--\_Bates cor.\_

"Resembling the passions that \_produce\_ these actions."--\_Kames cor.\_

"Except \_dwarf, grief, hoof, muff\_, &c., which \_take s\_ to make the

plural."--\_Ash cor.\_ "As the cattle that \_go\_ before me, and the children,

be able to endure."--\_Gen. cor.\_ "Where is the man who \_dares\_ affirm that

such an action is mad?"--\_Dr. Pratt cor.\_ "The ninth book of Livy affords

one of the most beautiful exemplifications of historical painting, that

\_are\_ anywhere to be met with."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "In some studies, too,

that relate to taste and fine writing, which \_are\_ our object," &c.--\_Id.\_

"Of those affecting situations which \_make\_ man's heart feel for

man."--\_Id.\_ "We see very plainly, that it is neither Osmyn nor Jane Shore

that \_speaks\_."--\_Id.\_ "It should assume that briskness and ease which

\_are\_ suited to the freedom of dialogue."--\_Id.\_ "Yet they grant, that none

ought to be admitted into the ministry, but such as \_are\_ truly

pious."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "This letter is one of the best that \_have\_ been

written about Lord Byron."--\_Hunt cor.\_ "Thus, besides what \_were\_ sunk,

the Athenians took above two hundred ships."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "To have

made and declared such orders as \_were\_ necessary."--\_Hutchinson cor.\_ "The

idea of such a collection of men as \_makes\_ an army."--\_Locke cor.\_ "I'm

not the first that \_has\_ been wretched."--\_Southern cor.\_ "And the faint

sparks of it which \_are\_ in the angels, are concealed from our

view."--\_Calvin cor.\_ "The subjects are of such a nature, as \_allows\_ room

(or, as to \_allow\_ room) for much diversity of taste and sentiment."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "It is in order to propose examples of such perfection, as \_is\_

not to be found in the real examples of society."--\_Formey cor.\_ "I do not

believe that he would amuse himself with such fooleries as \_have\_ been

attributed to him."--\_Id.\_ "That shepherd, who first \_taught\_ the chosen

seed."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. i, l. 8. "With respect to the vehemence and

warmth which \_are\_ allowed in popular eloquence."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Ambition is one of those passions that \_are\_ never to be

satisfied."--\_Home cor.\_ "Thou wast he that \_led\_ out and \_brought\_ in

Israel."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Art thou the man of God, that \_came\_ from

Judah?"--\_Id.\_

"How beauty is excell'd by manly grace

And wisdom, which alone \_are\_ truly fair."--\_Milton cor.\_

"What art thou, speak, that on designs unknown,

While others sleep, thus \_roamst\_ the camp alone?"--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--NOMINATIVE WITH ADJUNCTS.

"The literal sense of the words \_is\_, that the action had been done."--\_Dr.

Murray cor.\_ "The rapidity of his movements \_was\_ beyond example."--\_Wells

cor.\_ "Murray's Grammar, together with his Exercises and Key, \_has\_ nearly

superseded every thing else of the kind."--\_Murray's Rec. cor.\_ "The

mechanism of clocks and watches \_was\_ totally unknown."--\_Hume cor.\_ "The

\_it\_, together with the verb \_to be, expresses a state\_ of

being."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "Hence it is, that the profuse variety of objects

in some natural landscapes, \_occasions neither\_ confusion nor

fatigue."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Such a clatter of sounds \_indicates\_ rage and

ferocity."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "One of the fields \_makes\_ threescore square

yards, and the other, only fifty-five."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "The happy effects

of this fable \_are\_ worth attending to."--\_Bailey cor.\_ "Yet the glorious

serenity of its parting rays, still \_lingers\_ with us."--\_Gould cor.\_

"Enough of its form and force \_is\_ retained to render them

uneasy."--\_Maturin cor.\_ "The works of nature, in this respect, \_are\_

extremely regular."--\_Pratt cor.\_ "No small addition of exotic and foreign

words and phrases, \_has\_ been made by commerce."--\_Bicknell cor.\_ "The

dialect of some nouns \_is noticed\_ in the notes."--\_Milnes cor.\_ "It has

been said, that a discovery of the full resources of the arts, \_affords\_

the means of debasement, or of perversion."--\_Rush cor.\_ "By which means,

the order of the words \_is\_ disturbed."--\_Holmes cor.\_ "The two-fold

influence of these and the others, \_requires\_ the \_verb\_ to be in the

plural form."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "And each of these \_affords\_

employment."--\_Percival cor.\_ "The pronunciation of the vowels \_is\_ best

explained under the rules relative to the consonants."--\_Coar cor.\_ "The

judicial power of these courts \_extends\_ to all cases in law and

equity."--\_Hall and Baker cor.\_ "One of you \_has\_ stolen my

money."--\_Humorist cor.\_ "Such redundancy of epithets, in stead of

pleasing, \_produces\_ satiety and disgust."--\_Kames cor.\_ "It has been

alleged, that a compliance with the rules of Rhetoric, \_tends\_ to cramp the

mind."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "Each of these \_is\_ presented to us in different

relations."--\_Hendrick cor.\_ "The past tense of these verbs, (\_should,

would, might, could\_,) \_is\_ very indefinite with respect to

time."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The power of the words which are said to govern

this mood, \_is\_ distinctly understood."--\_Chandler cor.\_

"And now, at length, the fated term of years

The world's desire \_hath\_ brought, and lo! the God appears."

--\_Lowth cor.\_

"Variety of numbers still \_belongs\_

To the soft melody of \_odes\_, or \_songs\_."

--\_Brightland cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--COMPOSITE OR CONVERTED SUBJECTS.

"Many are the works of human industry, which to begin and finish, \_is\_

hardly granted to the same man."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "To lay down rules for

these, \_is\_ as inefficacious."--\_Pratt cor.\_ "To profess regard and act

\_injuriously, discovers\_ a base mind."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "To magnify

to the height of wonder things great, new, and admirable, extremely

\_pleases\_ the mind of man."--\_Fisher cor.\_ "In this passage, '\_according

as\_' \_is\_ used in a manner which is very common."--\_Webster cor.\_ "A CAUSE

DE, \_is\_ called a preposition; A CAUSE QUE, a conjunction."--\_Webster cor.\_

"To these \_it is\_ given to speak in the name of the Lord."--\_The Friend

cor.\_ "While \_wheat\_ has no plural, \_oats has\_ seldom any

singular."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "He cannot assert that \_ll\_ (i.e., \_double Ell\_)

\_is\_ inserted in \_fullness\_ to denote the sound of \_u\_"--\_Cobb cor.\_ "\_Ch\_,

in Latin, \_has\_ the power of \_k\_."--\_Gould cor.\_ "\_Ti\_, before a vowel, and

unaccented, \_has\_ the sound of \_si\_ or \_ci\_."--\_Id.\_ "In words derived from

French, as \_chagrin, chicanery\_, and \_chaise, ch is sounded\_ like

\_sh\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "But, in the \_words schism, schismatic\_, &c., the \_ch

is\_ silent."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ph\_, at the beginning of words, \_is\_ always sounded

like \_f\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "\_Ph has\_ the sound of \_f\_ as in

\_philosophy\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Sh has\_ one sound only, as in

\_shall\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Th has\_ two sounds."--\_Id.\_ "\_Sc\_, before \_a, o, u, or

r, has\_ the sound of \_sk\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Aw has\_ the sound of \_a\_ in

\_hall\_."--\_Bolles cor.\_ "\_Ew sounds\_ like \_u\_"--\_Id.\_ "\_Ow\_, when both

\_vowels are\_ sounded, \_has\_ the \_power\_ of \_ou in thou\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ui\_,

when both \_vowels are\_ pronounced in one syllable, \_sounds\_ like \_wi short,

as\_ in \_languid\_."--\_Id.\_

"\_Ui\_ three \_other sounds at least expresses\_,

As \_who hears\_ GUILE, REBUILD, and BRUISE, \_confesses\_."

--\_Brightland cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--EACH, ONE, EITHER, AND NEITHER.

"When each of the letters which compose this word, \_has\_ been

learned."--\_Dr. Weeks cor.\_ "As neither of us \_denies\_ that both Homer and

Virgil have great beauties."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Yet neither of them \_is\_

remarkable for precision."--\_Id.\_ "How far each of the three great epic

poets \_has\_ distinguished \_himself\_."--\_Id.\_ "Each of these \_produces\_ a

separate, agreeable sensation."--\_Id.\_ "On the Lord's day, every one of us

Christians \_keeps\_ the sabbath."--\_Tr. of Iren. cor.\_ "And each of them

\_bears\_ the image of purity and holiness."--\_Hope of Is. cor.\_ "\_Was\_

either of these meetings ever acknowledged or recognized?"--\_Foster cor.\_

"Whilst neither of these letters \_exists\_ in the Eugubian

inscription."--\_Knight cor.\_ "And neither of them \_is\_ properly termed

indefinite."--\_Dr. Wilson cor.\_ "As likewise of the several subjects, which

have in effect \_their several verbs\_:" or,--"\_each of which has\_ in effect

\_its own verb\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Sometimes, when the word ends in \_s\_,

neither of the signs \_is\_ used."--\_A. Mur. cor.\_ "And as neither of these

manners \_offends\_ the ear."--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "Neither of these two tenses

\_is\_ confined to this signification only."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "But neither

of these circumstances \_is\_ intended here."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "So that all are

indebted to each, and each \_is\_ dependent upon all."--\_Bible Rep. cor.\_

"And yet neither of them \_expresses\_ any more action in this case, than

\_it\_ did in the other."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Each of these expressions

\_denotes\_ action."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "Neither of these moods \_seems\_ to be

defined by distinct boundaries."--\_Butler cor.\_ "Neither of these solutions

\_is\_ correct."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Neither \_bears\_ any sign of case at

all."--\_Fowler cor.\_

"Each in \_his\_ turn, like Banquo's monarchs, \_stalks.\_" Or:--

"\_All\_ in \_their\_ turn, like Banquo's monarchs, \_stalk\_."--\_Byron cor.\_

"And tell what each \_doth\_ by \_the\_ other lose."--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--VERB BETWEEN TWO NOMINATIVES.

"The quarrels of lovers \_are but\_ a renewal of love."--\_Adam et al. cor.\_

"Two dots, one placed above the other, \_are\_ called \_a Sheva."--Wilson

cor.\_ "A few centuries more or less \_are\_ a matter of small

consequence."--\_Id.\_ "Pictures were the first step towards the art of

writing; \_hieroglyphics were\_ the second step."--\_Parker cor.\_ "The

comeliness of youth \_is\_ modesty and frankness; of age, condescension and

dignity." Or, much better: "The \_great ornaments\_ of youth are,"

&c.--\_Murray cor.\_ "Merit and good works \_are\_ the end of man's

motion."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "Divers philosophers hold, that the lips \_are\_

parcel of the mind."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "The clothing of the natives \_was\_ the

skins of wild beasts." Or thus: "The \_clothes\_ of the natives \_were\_ skins

of wild beasts."--\_Hist. cor.\_ "Prepossessions in \_favour\_ of our \_native\_

town, \_are\_ not a matter of surprise."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Two shillings and

sixpence \_are\_ half a crown, but not a half crown."--\_Priestley and

Bicknell cor.\_ "Two vowels, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice,

and uniting in one sound, \_are\_ called a \_diphthong\_."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "Two

or more sentences united together \_are\_ called a Compound Sentence."--\_Day

cor.\_ "Two or more words rightly put together, but not completing an entire

proposition, \_are\_ called a Phrase."--\_Id.\_ "But the common number of times

\_is\_ five." Or, to state the matter truly: "But the common number of

\_tenses is six\_."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "Technical terms, injudiciously

introduced, \_are an other\_ source of darkness in composition."--\_Jamieson

cor.\_ "The United States \_are\_ the great middle division of North

America."--\_Morse cor.\_ "A great cause of the low state of industry, \_was\_

the restraints put upon it."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 199; \_Churchill's\_,

414. "Here two tall ships \_become\_ the victor's prey."--\_Rowe cor.\_ "The

expenses incident to an outfit \_are\_ surely no object."--\_The Friend cor.\_

"Perhaps their loves, or else their sheep,

\_Were\_ all that did their silly thoughts so busy keep."--\_Milt. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--CHANGE OF THE NOMINATIVE.

"Much \_care\_ has been taken, to explain all the kinds of words."--\_Inf. S.

Gr. cor.\_ "Not \_fewer\_ [years] than three years, are spent in attaining

this faculty." Or, perhaps better: "Not less than three \_years' time, is\_

spent in attaining this faculty." Or thus: "Not less \_time\_ than three

years, \_is\_ spent," &c.--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "Where this night are met in state

Many \_friends\_ to gratulate His wish'd presence."--\_Milton cor.\_ "Peace! my

darling, here's no danger, Here's no \_ox anear\_ thy bed."--\_Watts cor.\_

"But \_all\_ of these are mere conjectures, and some of them very unhappy

ones."--\_Coleridge cor.\_ "The old theorists' \_practice\_ of calling the

Interrogatives and Repliers ADVERBS, is only a part of their regular system

of naming words."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "Where \_several sentences\_ occur,

place them in the order \_of the facts\_."--\_Id.\_ "And that \_all the events\_

in conjunction make a regular chain of causes and effects."--\_Kames cor.

"In regard to their\_ origin, the Grecian and Roman republics, though

equally involved in the obscurities and uncertainties of fabulous events,

present one remarkable distinction."--\_Adams cor.\_ "In these respects,

\_man\_ is left by nature an unformed, unfinished creature."--\_Bp. Butler

cor.\_ "The \_Scriptures\_ are the oracles of God himself."--\_Hooker cor.\_

"And at our gates are all \_kinds\_ of pleasant fruits."--\_S. Song cor.\_ "The

\_preterits\_ of \_pluck, look\_, and \_toss\_, are, in speech, pronounced

\_pluckt, lookt, tosst\_."--\_Fowler corrected\_.

"Severe the doom that days \_prolonged impose\_,

To stand sad witness of unnumbered woes!"--\_Melmoth cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--FORMS ADAPTED TO DIFFERENT STYLES.

\_1. Forms adapted to the Common or Familiar Style.\_ "Was it thou[538] that

\_built\_ that house?"--\_Brown's Institutes\_, Key, p. 270. "That boy \_writes\_

very elegantly."--\_Ib. "Could\_ not thou write without blotting thy

book?"--\_Ib. "Dost\_ not thou think--or, \_Don't\_ thou think, it will rain

to-day?"--\_Ib. "Does\_ not--or, \_Don't\_ your cousin intend to visit

you?"--\_Ib.\_ "That boy \_has\_ torn my book."--\_Ib.\_ "Was it thou that

\_spread\_ the hay?"--\_Ib.\_ "Was it James, or thou, that \_let\_ him

in?"--\_Ib.\_ "He \_dares\_ not say a word."--\_Ib.\_ "Thou \_stood\_ in my way and

\_hindered\_ me."--\_Ib.\_

"Whom \_do\_ I \_see\_?--Whom \_dost\_ thou \_see\_ now?--Whom \_does\_ he

\_see\_?--Whom \_dost\_ thou \_love\_ most?--What \_art\_ thou \_doing\_

to-day?--What person \_dost\_ thou \_see\_ teaching that boy?--He \_has\_ two new

knives.--Which road \_dost\_ thou \_take\_?--What child is he

\_teaching\_?"--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "Thou, who \_mak'st\_ my shoes, \_sellst\_ many

more." Or thus: "\_You\_, who \_make\_ my shoes, \_sell\_ many more."--\_Id.\_

"The English language \_has\_ been much cultivated during the last two

hundred years. It \_has\_ been considerably polished and refined."--\_Lowth

cor.\_ "This \_style\_ is ostentatious, and \_does\_ not suit grave

writing."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "But custom \_has\_ now appropriated \_who\_ to

persons, and \_which\_ to things" [and brute animals].--\_Id.\_ "The indicative

mood \_shows\_ or \_declares something\_; as, \_Ego amo\_, I love; or else \_asks\_

a question; as, \_Amas tu\_? Dost thou love?"--\_Paul's Ac. cor.\_ "Though thou

\_cannot\_ do much for the cause, thou \_may\_ and \_should\_ do

something."--\_Murray cor.\_ "The support of so many of his relations, was a

heavy tax: but thou \_knowst\_ (or, \_you know\_) he paid it

cheerfully."--\_Id.\_ "It may, and often \_does\_, come short of

it."--\_Murray^s Gram.\_, p. 359.

"'Twas thou, who, while thou \_seem'd\_ to chide,

To give me all thy pittance \_tried\_."--\_Mitford cor.\_

2. \_Forms adapted to the Solemn or Biblical Style\_. "The Lord \_hath

prepared\_ his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom \_ruleth\_ over

all."--\_Psalms\_, ciii, 19. "Thou \_answeredst\_ them, O Lord our God; thou

\_wast\_ a God that forgave[539] them, though thou \_tookest\_ vengeance of

their inventions."--See \_Psalms\_, xcix, 8. "Then thou \_spakest\_ in vision

to thy Holy One, and \_saidst\_, I have laid help upon one that is

mighty."--\_Ib.\_, lxxxix, 19. "'So then, it is not of him that \_willeth\_,

nor of him that \_runneth\_, but of God that \_showeth\_ mercy;' who

\_dispenseth\_ his blessings, whether temporal or spiritual, as \_seemeth\_

good in his sight."--\_Christian Experience of St. Paul\_, p. 344; see

\_Rom.\_, ix, 16.

"Thou, the mean while, \_wast\_ blending with my thought;

Yea, with my life, and life's own secret joy."--\_Coleridge cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--EXPRESS THE NOMINATIVE.

"Who is here so base, that \_he\_ would be a bondman?"--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Who is

here so rude, \_he\_ would not be a \_Roman\_?"--\_Id.\_ "There is not a sparrow

\_which\_ falls to the ground without his notice." Or better: "\_Not a

sparrow\_ falls to the ground, without his notice."--\_Murray cor.\_ "In order

to adjust them \_in such a manner\_ as shall consist equally with the

perspicuity and the strength of the period."--\_Id. and Blair cor.\_ "But

sometimes there is a verb \_which\_ comes in." Better: "But sometimes there

is a verb \_introduced\_."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "Mr. Prince has a genius \_which\_

would prompt him to better things."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "It is this \_that\_

removes that impenetrable mist."--\_Harris cor.\_ "By the praise \_which\_ is

given him for his courage."--\_Locke cor.\_ "There is no man \_who\_ would be

more welcome here."--\_Steele cor.\_ "Between an antecedent and a consequent,

or what goes before, and \_what\_ immediately follows."--\_Blair cor.\_ "And as

connected with what goes before and \_what\_ follows."--\_Id.\_ "No man doth a

wrong for the wrong's sake."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "All the various miseries of

life, which people bring upon themselves by negligence \_or\_ folly, and

\_which\_ might have been avoided by proper care, are instances of

this."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Ancient philosophers have taught many things in

\_favour\_ of morality, so far at least as \_it respects\_ justice and goodness

towards our fellow-creatures."--\_Fuller cor.\_ "Indeed, if there be any

such, \_who\_ have been, or \_who\_ appear to be of us, as suppose there is not

a wise man among us all, nor an honest man, that is able to judge betwixt

his brethren; we shall not covet to meddle in their \_matters\_."--\_Barclay

cor.\_ "There were \_some\_ that drew back; there were \_some\_ that made

shipwreck of faith; yea, there were \_some\_ that brought in damnable

heresies."--\_Id.\_ "The nature of the cause rendered this plan altogether

proper; and, \_under\_ similar \_circumstances, the orator's method\_ is fit to

be imitated."--\_Blair cor.\_ "This is an idiom to which our language is

strongly inclined, and \_which\_ was formerly very prevalent."--\_Churchill

cor.\_ "His roots are wrapped about the heap, and \_he\_ seeth the place of

stones."--\_Bible cor.\_

"New York, Fifthmonth 3d, 1823.

Dear friend,

\_I\_ am sorry to hear of thy loss; but \_I\_ hope it may be retrieved. I

should be happy to render thee any assistance in my power. \_I\_ shall call

to see thee to-morrow morning. Accept assurances of my regard. A. B."

"New York, May 3d, P. M., 1823.

Dear sir,

\_I\_ have just received the kind note \_you\_ favoured me with this morning;

and \_I\_ cannot forbear to express my gratitude to you. On further

information, \_I\_ find \_I\_ have not lost so much as \_I\_ at first supposed;

and \_I\_ believe \_I\_ shall still be able to meet all my engagements. \_I\_

should, however, be happy to see you. Accept, dear sir, my most cordial

thanks. C. D."

See \_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 271.

"Will martial flames forever fire thy mind,

And \_wilt thou\_ never be to Heaven resign'd?"--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IX.--APPLICATION OF MOODS.

\_First Clause of the Note.--The Subjunctive Present\_.

"He will not be pardoned unless he \_repent\_."--\_Inst.\_, p. 191. "If thou

\_find\_ any kernelwort in this marshy meadow, bring it to me."--\_Neef cor.\_

"If thou \_leave\_ the room, do not forget to shut that drawer."--\_Id.\_ "If

thou \_grasp\_ it stoutly, thou wilt not be hurt:" or, (familiarly,)--"thou

\_will\_ not be hurt."--\_Id.\_ "On condition that he \_come\_, I will consent to

stay."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 208. "If he \_be\_ but discreet, he will

succeed."--\_Inst.\_, p. 280. "Take heed that thou \_speak\_ not to

Jacob."--\_Gen.\_, xxxi, 24. "If thou \_cast\_ me off, I shall be

miserable."--\_Inst.\_, p. 280. "Send them to me, if thou \_please\_."--\_Ib.\_

"Watch the door of thy lips, lest thou \_utter\_ folly."--\_Ib.\_ "Though a

liar \_speak\_ the truth, he will hardly be believed."--\_Bartlett cor.\_ "I

will go, unless I \_be\_ ill."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "If the word or words

understood \_be\_ supplied, the true construction will be apparent."--\_Id.\_

"Unless thou \_see\_ the propriety of the measure, we shall not desire thy

support."--\_Id.\_ "Unless thou \_make\_ a timely retreat, the danger will be

unavoidable."--\_Id.\_ "We may live happily, though our possessions \_be\_

small."--\_Id.\_ "If they \_be\_ carefully studied, they will enable the

student to parse all the exercises."--\_Id.\_ "If the accent \_be\_ fairly

preserved on the proper syllable, this drawling sound will never be

heard."--\_Id.\_ "One phrase may, in point of sense, be equivalent to an

other, though its grammatical nature \_be\_ essentially different."--\_Id.\_

"If any man \_obey\_ not our word by this epistle, note that man."--\_2

Thess.\_, iii, 14. "Thy skill will be the greater, if thou \_hit\_

it."--\_Putnam, Cobb, or Knowles, cor.\_ "We shall overtake him, though he

\_run\_."--\_Priestley et al. cor.\_ "We shall be disgusted, if he \_give\_ us

too much."--\_Blair cor.\_

"What is't to thee, if he \_neglect\_ thy urn,

Or without spices \_let\_ thy body burn?"--\_Dryden cor.\_

\_Second Clause of Note IX.--The Subjunctive Imperfect\_.[540]

"And so would I, if I \_were\_ he."--\_Inst.\_, p. 191. "If I \_were\_ a Greek, I

should resist Turkish despotism."--\_Cardell cor.\_ "If he \_were\_ to go, he

would attend to your business."--\_Id.\_ "If thou \_felt\_ as I do, we should

soon decide."--\_Inst.\_, p. 280. "Though thou \_shed\_ thy blood in the cause,

it would but prove thee sincerely a fool."--\_Ib.\_ "If thou \_loved\_ him,

there would be more evidence of it."--\_Ib.\_ "If thou \_convinced\_ him, he

would not act accordingly."--\_Murray cor.\_ "If there \_were\_ no liberty,

there would be no real crime."--\_Formey cor.\_ "If the house \_were\_ burnt

down, the case would be the same."--\_Foster cor.\_ "As if the mind \_were\_

not always in action, when it prefers any thing."--\_West cor.\_ "Suppose I

\_were\_ to say, 'Light is a body.'"--\_Harris cor.\_ "If either oxygen or

azote \_were\_ omitted, life would be destroyed."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "The verb

\_dare is\_ sometimes used as if it \_were\_ an auxiliary."--\_Priestley cor.\_

"A certain lady, whom I could name, if it \_were\_ necessary."--\_Spect. cor.\_

"If the \_e were\_ dropped, \_c\_ and \_g\_ would assume their hard

sounds."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "He would no more comprehend it, than if it

\_were\_ the speech of a Hottentot."--\_Neef cor.\_ "If thou \_knew\_ the gift of

God," &c.--\_Bible cor.\_ "I wish I \_were\_ at home."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_

"Fact alone does not constitute right: if it \_did\_, general warrants were

lawful."--\_Junius cor.\_ "Thou \_lookst\_ upon thy boy, as though thou

\_guessed\_ it."--\_Putnam, Cobb, or Knowles, cor.\_ "He fought as if he

\_contended\_ for life."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "He fought as if he \_were contending\_

for his life."--\_Id.\_

"The dewdrop glistens on thy leaf,

As if thou \_shed for me\_ a tear;

As if thou \_knew\_ my tale of grief,

\_Felt\_ all my sufferings severe."--\_Letham cor.\_

\_Last Clause of Note IX.--The Indicative Mood\_.

"If he \_knows\_ the way, he does not need a guide."--\_Inst.\_, p. 191. "And

if there \_is\_ no difference, one of them must be superfluous, and ought to

be rejected."--\_Murray cor.\_ "I cannot say that I admire this construction

though it \_is\_ much used."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "We are disappointed, if the

verb \_does\_ not immediately follow it."--\_Id.\_ "If it \_was\_ they, \_that\_

acted so ungratefully, they are doubly in fault."--\_Murray cor.\_ "If art

\_becomes\_ apparent, it disgusts the reader."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "Though

perspicuity \_is\_ more properly a rhetorical than a grammatical quality, I

thought it better to include it in this book."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Although

the efficient cause \_is\_ obscure, the final cause of those sensations lies

open."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Although the barrenness of language, or the want of

words, \_is\_ doubtless one cause of the invention of tropes."--\_Id.\_ "Though

it \_enforces\_ not its instructions, yet it furnishes a greater

variety."--\_Id.\_ "In other cases, though the idea \_is\_ one, the words

remain quite separate."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Though the form of our language

\_is\_ more simple, and has that peculiar beauty."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Human

works are of no significancy till they \_are\_ completed."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Our

disgust lessens gradually till it \_vanishes\_ altogether."--\_Id.\_ "And our

relish improves by use, till it \_arrives\_ at perfection."--\_Id.\_ "So long

as he \_keeps\_ himself in his own proper element."--\_Coke cor.\_ "Whether

this translation \_was\_ ever published or not, I am wholly ignorant."--\_Sale

cor.\_ "It is false to affirm, 'As it is day, it is light,' unless it

actually \_is\_ day."--\_Harris cor.\_ "But we may at midnight affirm, 'If it

\_is\_ day, it is light.'"--\_Id.\_ "If the Bible \_is\_ true, it is a volume of

unspeakable interest."--\_Dickinson cor.\_ "Though he \_was\_ a son, yet

learned he obedience by the things which he suffered."--\_Bible cor.\_ "If

David then \_calleth\_ (or \_calls\_) him Lord, how is he his son?"--\_Id.\_

"'Tis hard to say, if greater want of skill

\_Appears\_ in writing, or in judging, ill."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--FALSE SUBJUNCTIVES.

"If a man \_has built\_ a house, the house is his."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "If God

\_has required\_ them of him, as is the fact, he has time."--\_Id.\_ "Unless a

previous understanding to the contrary \_has been had\_ with the

principal."--\_Berrian cor.\_ "O! if thou \_hast hid\_ them in some flowery

cave."--\_Milton cor.\_ "O! if Jove's will \_has linked\_ that amorous power to

thy soft lay."--\_Id.\_ "SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: If thou love, If thou

loved."--\_Dr. Priestley, Dr. Murray, John Burn, David Blair, Harrison, and

others\_. "Till Religion, the pilot of the soul, \_hath\_ lent thee her

unfathomable coil."--\_Tupper cor.\_ "Whether nature or art \_contributes\_

most to form an orator, is a trifling inquiry."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Year after

year steals something from us, till the decaying fabric \_totters\_ of

itself, and \_at length crumbles\_ into dust."--\_Murray cor.\_ "If spiritual

pride \_has\_ not entirely vanquished humility."--\_West cor.\_ "Whether he

\_has\_ gored a son, or \_has\_ gored a daughter."--\_Bible cor.\_ "It is

doubtful whether the object introduced by way of simile, \_relates\_ to what

goes before or to what follows."--\_Kames cor.\_

"And bridle in thy headlong wave,

Till thou our summons answer'd \_hast\_." Or:--

"And bridle in thy headlong wave,

Till thou \_hast granted what we crave\_."--\_Milt. cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XV AND ITS NOTE.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE IDEA OF PLURALITY.

"The gentry \_are\_ punctilious in their etiquette."--\_G. B\_. "In France, the

peasantry \_go\_ barefoot, and the middle sort \_make\_ use of wooden

shoes."--\_Harvey cor.\_ "The people \_rejoice\_ in that which should cause

sorrow."--\_Murray varied\_. "My people \_are\_ foolish, they have not known

me."--\_Bible and Lowth cor.\_ "For the people \_speak\_, but \_do\_ not

write."--\_Phil. Mu. cor.\_ "So that all the people that \_were\_ in the camp,

trembled."--\_Bible cor.\_ "No company \_like\_ to confess that they are

ignorant."--\_Todd cor.\_ "Far the greater part of their captives \_were\_

anciently sacrificed."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "\_More than\_ one half of them

\_were\_ cut off before the return of spring."--\_Id.\_ "The other class,

termed Figures of Thought, \_suppose\_ the words to be used in their proper

and literal meaning."--\_Blair and Mur. cor.\_ "A multitude of words in their

dialect \_approach\_ to the Teutonic form, and therefore afford excellent

assistance."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "A great majority of our authors \_are\_

defective in manner."--\_J. Brown cor.\_ "The greater part of these

new-coined words \_have\_ been rejected."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "The greater part of

the words it contains, \_are\_ subject to certain modifications \_or\_

inflections."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "While all our youth \_prefer\_ her to the

rest."--\_Waller cor.\_ "Mankind \_are\_ appointed to live in a future

state."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "The greater part of human kind \_speak\_ and

\_act\_ wholly by imitation."--\_Rambler\_, No. 146. "The greatest part of

human gratifications \_approach\_ so nearly to vice."--\_Id.\_, No. 160.

"While still the busy world \_are\_ treading o'er

The paths they trod five thousand years before."--\_Young cor.\_

UNDER THE NOTE.--THE IDEA OF UNITY.

"In old English, this species of words \_was\_ numerous."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_

"And a series of exercises in false grammar \_is\_ introduced towards the

end."--\_Frost cor.\_ "And a jury, in conformity with the same idea, \_was\_

anciently called \_homagium\_, the homage, or manhood."--\_Webster cor.\_ "With

respect to the former, there \_is\_ indeed \_a\_ plenty of means."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "The number of school districts \_has\_ increased since the last

year."--\_Throop cor.\_ "The Yearly Meeting \_has\_ purchased with its funds

these publications."--\_Foster cor.\_ "\_Has\_ the legislature power to

prohibit assemblies?"--\_Sullivan cor.\_ "So that the whole number of the

streets \_was\_ fifty."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "The number of inhabitants \_was\_ not

more than four millions."--\_Smollett cor.\_ "The house of Commons \_was\_ of

small weight."--\_Hume cor.\_ "The assembly of the wicked \_hath\_ (or \_has\_)

inclosed me."--\_Psal. cor.\_ "Every kind of convenience and comfort \_is\_

provided."--\_C. S. Journal cor.\_ "Amidst the great decrease of the

inhabitants in Spain, the body of the clergy \_has\_ suffered no diminution;

but \_it\_ has rather been gradually increasing."--\_Payne cor.\_ "Small as the

number of inhabitants \_is\_, yet their poverty is extreme."--\_Id.\_ "The

number of the names \_was\_ about one hundred and twenty."--\_Ware and Acts

cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XVI AND ITS NOTES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF--THE VERB AFTER JOINT NOMINATIVES.

"So much ability and [so much] merit \_are\_ seldom found."--\_Mur. et al.

cor.\_ "The \_etymology and syntax\_ of the language \_are\_ thus spread before

the learner."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Dr. Johnson tells us, that, in English

poetry, the accent and the quantity of syllables \_are\_ the same

thing."--\_Adams cor.\_ "Their general scope and tendency, having never been

clearly apprehended, \_are\_ not remembered at all."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The

soil and sovereignty \_were\_ not purchased of the natives."--\_Knapp cor.\_

"The boldness, freedom, and variety, of our blank verse, \_are\_ infinitely

more favourable to \_sublimity of style\_, than [are the constraint and

uniformity of] rhyme."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The vivacity and sensibility of the

Greeks \_seem\_ to have been much greater than ours."--\_Id.\_ "For sometimes

the mood and tense \_are\_ signified by the verb, sometimes they are

signified of the verb by something else."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "The verb and

the noun making a complete sense, \_whereas\_ the participle and the noun

\_do\_ not."--\_Id.\_ "The growth and decay of passions and emotions, traced

through all their mazes, \_are\_ a subject too extensive for an undertaking

like the present."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The true meaning and etymology of some of

his words \_were\_ lost."--\_Knight cor.\_ "When the force and direction of

personal satire \_are\_ no longer understood."--\_Junius cor.\_ "The frame and

condition of man \_admit\_ of no other principle."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "Some

considerable time and care \_were\_ necessary."--\_Id.\_ "In consequence of

this idea, much ridicule and censure \_have\_ been thrown upon

Milton."--\_Blair cor.\_ "With rational beings, nature and reason \_are\_ the

same thing."--\_Collier cor.\_ "And the flax and the barley \_were\_

smitten."--\_Bible cor.\_ "The colon and semicolon \_divide\_ a period; this

with, and that without, a connective."--\_Ware cor.\_ "Consequently, wherever

space and time \_are\_ found, there God must also be."--\_Newton cor.\_ "As the

past tense and perfect participle of LOVE \_end\_ in ED, it is

regular."--\_Chandler cor.\_ "But the usual arrangement and nomenclature

\_prevent\_ this from being readily seen."--\_N. Butler cor.\_ "\_Do\_ and \_did\_

simply \_imply\_ opposition or emphasis."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "\_I\_ and \_an

other\_ make the plural WE; \_thou\_ and \_an other are equivalent to\_ YE; \_he,

she\_, or \_it\_, and \_an other\_, make THEY."--\_Id.\_ "\_I\_ and \_an other\_ or

\_others are\_ the same as WE, the first person plural; \_thou\_ and \_an other\_

or \_others are\_ the same as YE, the second person plural; \_he, she\_, or

\_it\_, and \_an other\_ or \_others, are\_ the same as THEY, the third person

plural."--\_Buchanan and Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "God and thou \_are\_ two, and thou

and thy neighbour are two."--\_Love Conquest cor.\_ "Just as AN and A \_have\_

arisen out of the numeral ONE."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "The tone and style of \_all\_

of them, particularly \_of\_ the first and the last, \_are\_ very

different."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Even as the roebuck and the hart \_are\_

eaten."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Then I may conclude that two and three \_do not make\_

five."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Which, at sundry times, thou and thy brethren

\_have\_ received from us."--\_Id.\_ "Two and two \_are\_ four, and one is five:"

i, e., "and \_one, added to four, is five\_."--\_Pope cor.\_ "Humility and

knowledge with poor apparel, \_excel\_ pride and ignorance under costly

array."--See \_Murray's Key\_, Rule 2d. "A page and a half \_have\_ been added

to the section on composition."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Accuracy and expertness

in this exercise \_are\_ an important acquisition."--\_Id.\_

"Woods and groves are of thy dressing,

Hill and dale \_proclaim\_ thy blessing." Or thus:--

"Hill and \_valley\_ boast thy blessing."--\_Milton cor.\_

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--THE VERB BEFORE JOINT NOMINATIVES.

"There \_are\_ a good and a bad, a right and a wrong, in taste, as in other

things."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Whence \_have\_ arisen much stiffness and

affectation."--\_Id.\_ "To this error, \_are\_ owing, in a great measure, that

intricacy and [that] harshness, in his figurative language, which I before

\_noticed\_."--\_Blair and Jamieson cor.\_ "Hence, in his Night Thoughts, there

\_prevail\_ an obscurity and \_a\_ hardness \_of\_ style."--\_Blair cor.\_ See

\_Jamieson's Rhet.\_, p. 167. "There \_are\_, however, in that work, much good

sense and excellent criticism."--\_Blair cor.\_ "There \_are\_ too much low wit

and scurrility in Plautus." Or: "There \_is, in Plautus\_, too much \_of\_ low

wit and scurrility."--\_Id.\_ "There \_are\_ too much reasoning and refinement,

too much pomp and studied beauty, in them." Or: "There \_is\_ too much \_of\_

reasoning and refinement, too much \_of\_ pomp and studied beauty, in

them."--\_Id.\_ "Hence \_arise\_ the structure and characteristic expression of

exclamation."--\_Rush cor.\_ "And such pilots \_are\_ he and his brethren,

according to their own confession."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Of whom \_are\_ Hymeneus

and Philetus; who concerning the truth have erred."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Of whom

\_are\_ Hymeneus and Alexander; whom I have delivered unto Satan."--\_Id.\_

"And so \_were\_ James and John, the sons of Zebedee."--\_Id.\_ "Out of the

same mouth, \_proceed\_ blessing and cursing."--\_Id.\_ "Out of the mouth of

the Most High, \_proceed\_ not evil and good."--\_Id.\_ "In which there \_are\_

most plainly a right and a wrong."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "In this sentence,

there \_are\_ both an actor and an object."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "In the

breastplate, \_were\_ placed the mysterious Urim and Thummim."--\_Milman cor.\_

"What \_are\_ the gender, number, and person, \_of the pronoun\_[541] in the

first \_example\_?"--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "There \_seem\_ to be a familiarity and

\_a\_ want of dignity in it."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "It has been often asked,

what \_are\_ Latin and Greek?"--\_Lit. Journal cor.\_ "For where \_do\_ beauty

and high wit, But in your constellation, meet?"--\_Sam. Butler cor.\_ "Thence

to the land where \_flow\_ Ganges and Indus."--\_Milton cor.\_ "On these

foundations, \_seem\_ to rest the midnight riot and dissipation of modern

assemblies."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "But what \_have\_ disease, deformity, and

filth, upon which the thoughts can be allured to dwell?"--\_Dr. Johnson

cor.\_ "How \_are\_ the gender and number of the relative known?"--\_Bullions

cor.\_

"High rides the sun, thick rolls the dust,

And feebler \_speed\_ the blow and thrust."--\_Scott cor.\_

UNDER NOTE I.--CHANGE THE CONNECTIVE.

"In every language, there prevails a certain structure, \_or\_ analogy of

parts, which is understood to give foundation to the most reputable

usage."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "There runs through his whole manner a stiffness,

\_an\_ affectation, which renders him [Shaftsbury] very unfit to be

considered a general model."--\_Id.\_ "But where declamation \_for\_

improvement in speech is the sole aim."--\_Id.\_ "For it is by these,

chiefly, that the train of thought, the course of reasoning, the whole

progress of the mind, in continued discourse of \_any kind\_, is laid

open."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "In all writing and discourse, the proper composition

\_or\_ structure of sentences is of the highest importance."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "Here the wishful \_and expectant\_ look of the beggar naturally leads

to a vivid conception of that which was the object of his

thoughts."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Who say, that the outward naming of Christ,

\_with the sign of\_ the cross, puts away devils."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "By which

an oath \_with a\_ penalty was to be imposed \_on\_ the members."--\_Junius

cor.\_ "Light, \_or\_ knowledge, in what manner soever afforded us, is equally

from God."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "For instance, sickness \_or\_ untimely death

is the consequence of intemperance."--\_Id.\_ "When grief \_or\_ blood

ill-tempered \_vexeth\_ him." Or: "When grief, \_with\_ blood ill-tempered,

\_vexes\_ him"--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Does continuity, \_or\_ connexion, create

sympathy and relation in the parts of the body?"--\_Collier cor.\_ "His

greatest concern, \_his\_ highest enjoyment, was, to be approved in the sight

of his Creator."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Know ye not that there is[542] a

prince, a great man, fallen this day in Israel?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "What is

vice, \_or\_ wickedness? No rarity, you may depend on it."--\_Collier cor.\_

"There is also the fear \_or\_ apprehension of it."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "The

apostrophe \_with s\_ (\_'s\_) is an abbreviation for \_is\_, the termination of

the old English genitive."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "\_Ti, ce\_, OR \_ci\_, when

followed by a vowel, usually has the sound of \_sh\_; as in \_partial, ocean,

special\_."--\_Weld cor.\_

"Bitter constraint \_of\_ sad occasion dear

Compels me to disturb your season due."--\_Milton cor.\_

"\_Debauch'ry, or\_ excess, though with less noise,

As great a portion of mankind destroys."--\_Waller cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--AFFIRMATION WITH NEGATION.

"Wisdom, and not wealth, \_procures\_ esteem."--\_Inst., Key\_, p. 272.

"Prudence, and not pomp, \_is\_ the basis of his fame."--\_Ib.\_ "Not fear, but

labour \_has\_ overcome him."--\_Ib.\_ "The decency, and not the abstinence,

\_makes\_ the difference."--\_Ib.\_ "Not her beauty, but her talents \_attract\_

attention."--\_Ib.\_ "It is her talents, and not her beauty, \_that attract\_

attention."--\_Ib.\_ "It is her beauty, and not her talents, \_that attracts\_

attention."--\_Ib.\_

"His belly, not his brains, this impulse \_gives\_:

He'll grow immortal; for he cannot live." Or thus:--

"His \_bowels\_, not his brains, this impulse give:

He'll grow immortal; for he cannot live."--\_Young cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--AS WELL AS, BUT, OR SAVE.

"Common sense, as well as piety, \_tells\_ us these are proper."--\_Fam. Com.

cor.\_ "For without it the critic, as well as the undertaker, ignorant of

any rule, \_has\_ nothing left but to abandon \_himself\_ to chance."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "And accordingly hatred, as well as love, \_is\_ extinguished by long

absence'."--\_Id.\_ "But at every turn the richest melody, as well as the

sublimest sentiments, \_is\_ conspicuous."--\_Id.\_ "But it, as well as the

lines immediately subsequent, \_defies\_ all translation."--\_Coleridge cor.\_

"But their religion, as well as their customs and manners, \_was\_ strangely

misrepresented."--\_Bolingbroke, on History\_, Paris Edition of 1808, p. 93.

"But his jealous policy, as well as the fatal antipathy of Fonseca, \_was\_

conspicuous."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "When their extent, as well as their value,

\_was\_ unknown."--\_Id.\_ "The etymology, as well as the syntax, of the more

difficult parts of speech, \_is\_ reserved for his attention at a later

period."--\_Parker and Fox cor.\_ "What I myself owe to him, no one but

myself \_knows\_."--\_Wright cor.\_ "None, but thou, O mighty prince! \_can\_

avert the blow."--\_Inst., Key\_, p. 272. "Nothing, but frivolous amusements,

\_pleases\_ the indolent."--\_Ib.\_

"Nought, save the gurglings of the rill, \_was\_ heard."--\_G. B.\_

"All songsters, save the hooting owl, \_were\_ mute."--\_G. B.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--EACH, EVERY, OR NO.

"Give every word, and every member, \_its\_ due weight and force."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 316. "And to one of these \_belongs\_ every noun, and

every third person of every verb."--\_Dr. Wilson cor.\_ "No law, no

restraint, no regulation, \_is\_ required to keep him \_within\_

bounds."--\_Lit. Journal cor.\_ "By that time, every window and every door in

the street \_was\_ full of heads."--\_Observer cor.\_ "Every system of

religion, and every school of philosophy, \_stands\_ back from this field,

and \_leaves\_ Jesus Christ alone, the solitary example." Or: "\_All systems\_

of religion, and \_all schools\_ of philosophy, \_stand\_ back from this

field, and \_leave\_ Jesus Christ alone, the solitary example."--\_Abbott

cor.\_ "Each day, and each hour, \_brings its\_ portion of duty."--\_Inst.,

Key\_, p. 272. "And every one that was in distress, and every one that was

in debt, and every one that was discontented, \_resorted\_ unto him."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "Every private Christian, \_every\_ member of the church, ought to read

and peruse the Scriptures, that \_he\_ may know \_his\_ faith and belief \_to

be\_ founded upon them."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "And every mountain and \_every\_

island was moved out of \_its place\_."--\_Bible cor.\_

"No bandit fierce, no tyrant mad with pride,

No cavern'd hermit \_rests\_ self-satisfied."--\_Pope\_.

UNDER NOTE V.--WITH, OR, &c., FOR AND.

"The \_sides\_, A, B, \_and\_ C, compose the triangle."--\_Tobitt, Felch\_, and

\_Ware cor.\_ "The stream, the rock, \_and\_ the tree, must each of them stand

forth, so as to make a figure in the imagination."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "While

this, with euphony, \_constitutes\_, finally, the whole."--\_O. B. Peirce

cor.\_ "The bag, with the guineas and dollars in it, \_was\_

stolen."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "Sobriety, with great industry and talent,

\_enables\_ a man to perform great deeds." Or: "Sobriety, industry, and

talent, \_enable\_ a man to perform great deeds."--\_Id.\_ "The \_it\_, together

with the verb, \_expresses a state\_ of being."--\_Id.\_ "Where Leonidas the

Spartan king, \_and\_ his chosen band, fighting for their country, were cut

off to the last man."--\_Kames cor.\_. "And Leah also, and \_her\_ children,

came near and bowed themselves."--\_Bible cor.\_ "The First \_and\_ the Second

will either of them, by \_itself\_, coalesce with the Third, but \_they do\_

not \_coalesce\_ with each other."--\_Harris cor.\_ "The whole must centre in

the query, whether Tragedy \_and\_ Comedy are hurtful and dangerous

representations."--\_Formey cor.\_ "\_Both\_ grief \_and\_ joy are infectious:

the emotions \_which\_ they raise in the spectator, resemble them

perfectly."--\_Kames cor.\_ "But, in all other words, the \_q and u\_ are both

sounded."--\_Ensell cor.\_ "\_Q and u\_ (which are always together) have the

sound of \_kw\_, as in \_queen\_; or \_of k only\_, as in \_opaque\_." Or, better:

"\_Q\_ has always the sound of \_k\_; and the \_u\_ which follows it, that of

\_w\_; except in French words, in which the \_u\_ is silent."--\_Goodenow cor.\_

"In this selection, the \_a and i\_ form distinct syllables."--\_Walker cor.\_

"And a considerable village, with gardens, fields, &c., \_extends\_ around on

each side of the square."--\_Lib. cor.\_ "Affection \_and\_ interest guide our

notions and behaviour in the affairs of life; imagination and passion

affect the sentiments that we entertain in matters of taste."--\_Jamieson

cor.\_ "She heard none of those intimations of her defects, which envy,

petulance, \_and\_ anger, produce among children."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "The King,

Lords, and Commons, constitute an excellent form of government."--\_Crombie

et al. cor.\_ "If we say, 'I am the man who commands you,' the relative

clause, with the antecedent \_man, forms\_ the predicate."--\_Crombie cor.\_

"The spacious firmament on high,

The blue ethereal \_vault\_ of sky,

And spangled heav'ns, a shining frame,

Their great Original proclaim."--\_Addison cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--ELLIPTICAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

"There \_are\_ a reputable and a disreputable practice." Or: "There is a

reputable, and \_there is\_ a disreputable practice."--\_Adams cor.\_ "This

\_man\_ and this \_were\_ born in her."--\_Milton cor.\_ "This \_man\_ and that

\_were\_ born in her."--\_Bible cor.\_ "This and that man \_were\_ born

there."--\_Hendrick cor.\_ "Thus \_le\_ in \_l~ego\_, and \_le\_ in \_l=egi\_, seem

to be sounded equally long."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "A distinct and an

accurate articulation \_form\_ the groundwork of good delivery." Or: "A

distinct and accurate articulation \_forms\_ the groundwork of good

delivery."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "How \_are\_ vocal and written language

understood?"--\_Sanders cor.\_ "The good, the wise, and the learned man, \_are

ornaments\_ to human society." Or: "The good, wise, and learned man is an

ornament to human society."--\_Bartlett cor.\_ "\_In\_ some points, the

expression of song and \_that of\_ speech \_are\_ identical."--\_Rush cor.\_ "To

every room, there \_were\_ an open and \_a\_ secret passage."--\_Johnson cor.\_

"There \_are\_ such \_things as a true\_ and \_a\_ false taste; and the latter

\_as\_ often directs fashion, \_as\_ the former."--\_Webster cor.\_ "There \_are\_

such \_things\_ as a prudent and an imprudent institution of life, with

regard to our health and our affairs."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "The lot of the

outcasts of Israel, and \_that of\_ the dispersed of Judah, however different

in one respect, have in an other corresponded with wonderful

exactness."--\_Hope of Israel cor.\_ "On these final syllables, the radical

and \_the\_ vanishing movement \_are\_ performed."--\_Rush cor.\_ "To be young or

old, \_and to be\_ good, just, or the contrary, are physical or moral

events."--\_Spurzheim cor., and Felch.\_ "The eloquence of George Whitfield

and \_that\_ of John Wesley \_were\_ very different \_in\_ character each from

the other."--\_Dr. Sharp cor.\_ "The affinity of \_m\_ for the series

\_beginning with b\_, and \_that\_ of \_n\_ for the series \_beginning with t\_,

give occasion for other euphonic changes."--\_Fowler cor.\_

"Pylades' soul, and mad Orestes', \_were\_

In these, if \_right the Greek philosopher\_." Or thus:--

"Pylades' and Orestes' soul \_did pass

To\_ these, if we believe Pythagoras." Or, without ellipsis:--

"Pylades and Orestes' \_souls\_ did pass

To these, if we believe Pythagoras."--\_Cowley corrected.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--DISTINCT SUBJECT PHRASES.

"To be moderate in our views, and to proceed temperately in the pursuit of

them, \_are\_ the best \_ways\_ to ensure success."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "To be of

any species, and to have a right to the name of that species, \_are both\_

one."--\_Locke cor.\_ "With whom, to will, and to do, \_are\_ the same."--\_Dr.

Jamieson cor.\_ "To profess, and to possess, \_are\_ very different

things."--\_Inst., Key\_, p. 272. "To do justly, to love mercy, and to walk

humbly with God, \_are\_ duties of universal obligation."--\_Ib.\_ "To be round

or square, to be solid or fluid, to be large or small, and to be moved

swiftly or slowly, \_are\_ all equally alien from the nature of

thought."--\_Dr. Johnson.\_ "The resolving of a sentence into its elements,

or parts of speech, and [\_a\_] stating [\_of\_] the accidents which belong to

these, \_are\_ called PARSING." Or, according to Note 1st above: "The

resolving of a sentence into its elements, or parts of speech, \_with\_ [a]

stating [of] the accidents which belong to these, \_is\_ called

PARSING."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "To spin and to weave, to knit and to sew,

\_were\_ once a girl's \_employments\_; but now, to dress, and \_to\_ catch a

beau, \_are\_ all she calls \_enjoyments\_."--\_Kimball cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XVII AND ITS NOTES.

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--NOMINATIVES CONNECTED BY OR.

"We do not know in what either reason or instinct \_consists\_."--\_Johnson

corrected.\_ "A noun or a pronoun joined with a participle, \_constitutes\_ a

nominative case absolute."--\_Bicknell cor.\_ "The relative will be of that

case which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before,

\_uses\_ to govern:" or,--"usually \_governs\_."--\_Adam, Gould, et al., cor.\_

"In the different modes of pronunciation, which habit or caprice \_gives\_

rise to."--\_Knight cor.\_ "By which he, or his deputy, \_was\_ authorized to

cut down any trees in Whittlebury forest."--\_Junius cor.\_ "Wherever objects

were named, in which sound, noise, or motion, \_was\_ concerned, the

imitation by words was abundantly obvious."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The pleasure

or pain resulting from a train of perceptions in different circumstances,

\_is\_ a beautiful contrivance of nature for valuable purposes."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "Because their foolish vanity, or their criminal ambition,

\_represents\_ the principles by which they are influenced, as absolutely

perfect."--\_D. Boileau cor.\_ "Hence naturally \_arises\_ indifference or

aversion between the parties."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "A penitent unbeliever, or

an impenitent believer, \_is a character nowhere\_ to be found."--\_Tract

cor.\_ "Copying whatever is peculiar in the talk of all those whose birth or

fortune \_entitles\_ them to imitation."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "Where love, hatred,

fear, or contempt, \_is\_ often of decisive influence."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "A

lucky anecdote, or an enlivening tale, \_relieves\_ the folio

page."--\_D'Israeli cor.\_ "For outward matter or event \_fashions\_ not the

character within." Or: (according to the antique style of this modern book

of proverbs:)--"\_fashioneth\_ not the character within."--\_Tupper cor.\_ "Yet

sometimes we have seen that wine, or chance, \_has\_ warmed cold

brains."--\_Dryden cor.\_ "Motion is a genus; flight, a species; this flight

or that flight \_is an individual\_."--\_Harris cor.\_ "When \_et, aut, vel,

sive\_, or \_nec, is repeated before\_ different members of the same

sentence."--\_Adam, Gould, and Grant, cor.\_ "Wisdom or folly \_governs\_

us."--\_Fisk cor.\_ "\_A\_ or \_an is\_ styled \_the\_ indefinite article"--\_Folker

cor.\_ "A rusty nail, or a crooked pin, \_shoots\_ up into \_a

prodigy\_."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "\_Is\_ either the subject or the predicate in the

second sentence modified?"--\_Prof. Fowler cor.\_

"Praise from a friend, or censure from a foe,

\_Is\_ lost on hearers that our merits know."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER THE RULE ITSELF.--NOMINATIVES CONNECTED BY NOR.

"Neither he nor she \_has\_ spoken to him."--\_Perrin cor.\_ "For want of a

process of events, neither knowledge nor elegance \_preserves\_ the reader

from weariness."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "Neither history nor tradition \_furnishes\_

such information."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "Neither the form nor \_the\_ power of

the liquids \_has\_ varied materially."--\_Knight cor.\_ "Where neither noise

nor motion \_is\_ concerned."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Neither Charles nor his brother

\_was\_ qualified to support such a system."--\_Junius cor.\_ "When, therefore,

neither the liveliness of representation, nor the warmth of passion

\_serves\_, as it were, to cover the trespass, it is not safe to leave the

beaten track."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "In many countries called Christian,

neither Christianity, nor its evidence, \_is\_ fairly laid before men."--\_Bp.

Butler cor.\_ "Neither the intellect nor the heart \_is\_ capable of being

driven."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "Throughout this hymn, neither Apollo nor Diana

\_is\_ in any way connected with the Sun or Moon."--\_Coleridge cor.\_ "Of

which, neither he, nor this grammar, \_takes\_ any notice."--\_R. Johnson

cor.\_ "Neither their solicitude nor their foresight \_extends\_ so

far."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "Neither Gomara, nor Oviedo, nor Herrera,

\_considers\_ Ojeda, or his companion Vespucci, as the first \_discoverer\_ of

the continent of America."--\_Id.\_ "Neither the general situation of our

colonies, nor that particular distress which forced the inhabitants of

Boston to take up arms, \_has\_ been thought worthy of a moment's

consideration."--\_Junius cor.\_

"Nor war nor wisdom \_yields\_ our Jews delight,

They will not study, and they dare not fight."--\_Crabbe cor.\_

"Nor time nor chance \_breeds\_ such confusions yet,

Nor are the mean so rais'd, nor sunk the great."--\_Rowe cor.\_

UNDER NOTE I.--NOMINATIVES THAT DISAGREE.

"The definite article, \_the\_, designates what particular thing or things

\_are\_ meant."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "Sometimes a word, or \_several\_ words,

necessary to complete the grammatical construction of a sentence, \_are\_ not

expressed, but \_are\_ omitted by ellipsis."--\_Burr cor.\_ "Ellipsis, (better,

\_Ellipses\_,) or abbreviations, \_are\_ the wheels of language."--\_Maunder

cor.\_ "The conditions or tenor of none of them \_appears\_ at this day." Or:

"The \_tenor or conditions\_ of none of them \_appear\_ at this day."--

\_Hutchinson cor.\_ "Neither men nor money \_was\_ wanting for the service."

Or: "Neither \_money nor men were\_ wanting for the service."--\_Id.\_ "Either

our own feelings, or the representation of those of others, \_requires\_

emphatic distinction \_to be frequent\_."--\_Dr. Barber cor.\_ "Either Atoms

and Chance, or Nature, \_is\_ uppermost: now I am for the latter part of the

disjunction."--\_Collier cor.\_ "Their riches or poverty \_is\_ generally

proportioned to their activity or indolence."--\_Cox cor.\_ "Concerning the

other part of him, neither \_he nor you\_ seem to have entertained an

idea."--\_Horne cor.\_ "Whose earnings or income \_is\_ so small."--\_Discip.

cor.\_ "Neither riches nor fame \_renders\_ a man happy."--\_Day cor.\_ "The

references to the pages always point to the first volume, unless the

Exercises or Key \_is\_ mentioned." Or, better:--"unless \_mention is made of\_

the Exercises or Key." Or: "unless the Exercises or Key \_be named\_."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--COMPLETE THE CONCORD.

"My lord, you wrong my father; \_neither is\_ he, nor \_am\_ I, capable of

harbouring a thought against your peace."--\_Walpole cor.\_ "There was no

division of acts; \_there were\_ no pauses, or \_intervals, in the

performance\_; but the stage was continually full; occupied either by the

actors, or \_by\_ the chorus."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Every word ending in \_b,

p\_, or \_f, is\_ of this order, as also \_are\_ many \_that end\_ in \_v\_."--\_Dr.

Murray cor.\_ "Proud as we are of human reason, nothing can be more absurd

than \_is\_ the general system of human life and human knowledge."--

\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "By which the body of sin and death is done away, and we

\_are\_ cleansed."--\_Barclay\_ cor. "And those were already converted, and

regeneration \_was\_ begun in them."--\_Id.\_ "For I am an old man, and my wife

\_is\_ well \_advanced\_ in years."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Who is my mother? or \_who

are\_ my brethren?"--See \_Matt.\_, xii, 48. "Lebanon is not sufficient to

burn, nor \_are\_ the beasts thereof sufficient for a burnt-offering."--

\_Bible cor.\_ "Information has been obtained, and some trials \_have been\_

made."--\_Martineau cor.\_ "It is as obvious, and its causes \_are\_ more

easily understood."--\_Webster cor.\_ "All languages furnish examples of this

kind, and the English \_contains\_ as many as any other."--\_Priestley cor.\_

"The winters are long, and the cold \_is\_ intense."--\_Morse cor.\_ "How have

I hated instruction, and \_how hath\_ my heart despised reproof!"--\_Prov.

cor.\_ "The vestals were abolished by Theodosius the Great, and the fire of

Vesta \_was\_ extinguished."--\_Lempriere cor.\_ "Riches beget pride; pride

\_begets\_ impatience."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Grammar is not reasoning, any more

than organization is thought, or letters \_are\_ sounds."--\_Enclytica cor.\_

"Words are implements, and grammar \_is\_ a machine."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--PLACE OF THE FIRST PERSON.

"\_Thou or I\_ must undertake the business."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_He and I\_

were there."--\_Ash cor.\_ "And we dreamed a dream in one night, \_he and

I\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "If my views remain the same as \_his and mine\_ were in

1833."--\_Goodell cor.\_ "\_My father and I\_ were riding out."--\_Inst., Key\_,

p. 273. "The premiums were given to \_George and me\_."--\_Ib.\_ "\_Jane and I\_

are invited."--\_Ib.\_ "They ought to invite \_my sister and me\_."--\_Ib.\_

"\_You and I\_ intend to go."--\_Guy cor.\_ "\_John and I\_ are going to

town."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "\_He and I are\_ sick."--\_James Brown cor.\_

"\_Thou and I\_ are well."--\_Id.\_ "\_He and I are\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Thou and I

are\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_He, and I write\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_They and I\_ are well."--\_Id.\_

"\_She, and thou, and I\_, were walking."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--DISTINCT SUBJECT PHRASES.

"To practise tale-bearing, or even to countenance it, \_is\_ great

injustice."--\_Inst., Key\_, p. 273. "To reveal secrets, or to betray one's

friends, \_is\_ contemptible perfidy."--\_Id.\_ "To write all substantives with

capital letters, or to exclude \_capitals\_ from adjectives derived from

proper names, may perhaps be thought \_an offence\_ too small for

animadversion; but the evil of innovation is always something."--\_Dr.

Barrow cor.\_ "To live in such families, or to have such servants, \_is a

blessing\_ from God."--\_Fam. Com. cor.\_ "How they portioned out the country,

what revolutions they experienced, \_or\_ what wars they maintained, \_is\_

utterly unknown." Or: "How they portioned out the country, what revolutions

they experienced, \_and\_ what wars they maintained, \_are things\_ utterly

unknown."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "To speak or to write perspicuously and

agreeably, \_is an attainment\_ of the utmost consequence to all who purpose,

either by speech or \_by\_ writing, to address the public."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--MAKE THE VERBS AGREE.

"Doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and \_go\_ into the mountains, and

\_seek\_ that which is gone astray?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "Did he not fear the Lord,

and \_beseech\_ the Lord, and \_did not\_ the Lord \_repent\_ of the evil which

he had pronounced?"--\_Id.\_ "And dost thou open thine eyes upon such \_a\_

one, and \_bring\_ me into judgement with thee?"--\_Id.\_ "If any man among you

\_seemeth\_ to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his

own heart, this man's religion is vain."--\_Id.\_ "If thou sell aught unto

thy neighbour, or \_buy\_ aught of thy neighbour's hand, ye shall not oppress

one an other."--\_Id.\_ "And if thy brother that dwelleth by thee, \_become\_

poor, and be sold to thee, thou shalt not compel him to serve as a

bond-servant."--\_Id.\_ "If thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there

\_remember\_ that thy brother hath aught against thee," &c.--\_Id.\_ "Anthea

was content to call a coach, and \_so to cross\_ the brook." Or:--"and \_in

that she crossed\_ the brook."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "It is either totally

suppressed, or \_manifested only\_ in its lowest and most imperfect

form."--\_Blair cor.\_ "But if any man \_is\_ a worshiper of God, and doeth his

will, him he heareth." Or: "If any man \_be\_ a worshiper of God, and \_do\_

his will, him \_will\_ he \_hear\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Whereby his righteousness

and obedience, death and sufferings without, become profitable unto us, and

\_are made\_ ours."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Who ought to have been here before thee,

and \_to have objected\_, if they had \_any thing\_ against me."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Yes! thy proud lords, unpitied land, shall see,

That man \_has\_ yet a soul, and \_dares\_ be free."--\_Campbell cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--USE SEPARATE NOMINATIVES.

"\_H\_ is only an aspiration, or breathing; and sometimes, at the beginning

of a word, \_it\_ is not sounded at all."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Man was made for

society, and \_he\_ ought to extend his good will to all men."--\_Id.\_ "There

is, and must be, a Supreme Being, of infinite goodness, power, and wisdom,

who created, and \_who\_ supports them."--\_Beattie cor.\_ "Were you not

affrighted, and \_did you not mistake\_ a spirit for a body?"--\_Bp. Watson

cor.\_ "The latter noun or pronoun is not governed by the conjunction \_than\_

or \_as\_, but \_it either\_ agrees with the verb, or is governed by the verb

or the preposition, expressed or understood."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "He had

mistaken his true \_interest\_, and \_he\_ found himself forsaken."--\_Murray

cor.\_ "The amputation was exceedingly well performed, and \_it\_ saved the

patient's life."--\_Id.\_ "The intentions of some of these philosophers, nay,

of many, might have been, and probably \_they\_ were, good."--\_Id.\_ "This may

be true, and yet \_it\_ will not justify the practice."--\_Webster cor.\_ "From

the practice of those who have had a liberal education, and \_who\_ are

therefore presumed to be best acquainted with men and things."--\_Campbell

cor.\_ "For those energies and bounties which created, and \_which\_ preserve,

the universe."--\_J. Q. Adams cor.\_ "I shall make it once for all, and \_I\_

hope it will be remembered."--\_Blair cor.\_ "This consequence is drawn too

abruptly. \_The argument\_ needed more explanation." Or: "This consequence is

drawn too abruptly, and \_without sufficient\_ explanation."--\_Id.\_ "They

must be used with more caution, and \_they\_ require more

preparation."--\_Id.\_ "The apostrophe denotes the omission of an \_i\_, which

was formerly inserted, and \_which\_ made an addition of a syllable to the

word."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The succession may be rendered more various or

more uniform, but, in one shape or an other, \_it\_ is unavoidable."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "It excites neither terror nor compassion; nor is \_it\_ agreeable in

any respect."--\_Id.\_

"Cheap vulgar arts, whose narrowness affords

No flight for thoughts,--\_they\_ poorly stick at words."--\_Denham cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--MIXTURE OF DIFFERENT STYLES.

"Let us read the living page, whose every character \_delights\_ and

instructs us."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "For if it \_is\_ in any degree obscure, it

puzzles, and \_does\_ not please."--\_Kames cor.\_ "When a speaker \_addresses\_

himself to the understanding, he proposes the instruction of his

hearers."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "As the wine which strengthens and \_refreshes\_

the heart."--\_H. Adams cor.\_ "This truth he \_wraps\_ in an allegory, and

feigns that one of the goddesses had taken up her abode with the

other."--\_Pope cor.\_ "God searcheth and \_understandeth\_ the heart." Or:

"God \_searches\_ and \_understands\_ the heart."--\_T. à. Kempis cor.\_ "The

grace of God, that \_bringeth\_ salvation, hath appeared to all

men."--\_Titus\_, ii, 11. "Which things also we speak, not in the words which

man's wisdom \_teacheth\_, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth."--\_1 Cor.\_, ii,

13. "But he \_has\_ an objection, which he \_urges\_, and by which he thinks to

overturn all."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "In that it gives them not that comfort and

joy which it \_gives to\_ them who love it."--\_Id.\_ "Thou here misunderstood

the place and \_misapplied\_ it." Or: "Thou here \_misunderstoodst\_ the place

and \_misappliedst\_ it."--\_Id.\_ Or: (as many of our grammarians will have

it:) "Thou here \_misunderstoodest\_ the place and \_misappliedst\_ it."--\_Id.\_

"Like the barren heath in the desert, which knoweth not when good

\_cometh\_."--See \_Jer.\_, xvii, 6. "It \_speaks\_ of the time past, \_and shows\_

that something was then doing, but not quite finished."--\_Devis cor.\_ "It

subsists in spite of them; it \_advances\_ unobserved."--\_Pascal cor.\_

"But where is he, the pilgrim of my song?--

Methinks he \_lingers\_ late and tarries long."--\_Byron cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--CONFUSION OF MOODS.

"If a man \_have\_ a hundred sheep, and one of them \_go\_ (or \_be gone\_)

astray," &c.--\_Matt.\_, xviii, 12. Or: "If a man \_has\_ a hundred sheep, and

one of them \_goes\_ (or \_is gone\_) astray," &c. Or: "If a man \_hath\_ a

hundred sheep, and one of them \_goeth\_ (or \_is gone\_) astray,"

&c.--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "As a speaker \_advances\_ in his discourse, and

\_increases\_ in energy and earnestness, a higher and a louder tone will

naturally steal upon him."--\_Id.\_ "If one man \_esteem one\_ day above an

other, and an other \_esteem\_ every day alike; let every man be fully

persuaded in his own mind."--\_Barclay cor.\_ See \_Rom.\_, xiv, 5. "If there

be but one body of legislators, it \_will be\_ no better than a tyranny; if

there \_be\_ only two, there will want a casting voice."--\_Addison cor.\_

"Should you come up this way, and I \_be\_ still here, you need not be

assured how glad I \_should\_ be to see you."--\_Byron cor.\_ "If he repent and

\_become\_ holy, let him enjoy God and heaven."--\_Brownson cor.\_ "If thy

fellow approach thee, naked and destitute, and thou \_say\_ unto him, 'Depart

in peace, be warmed and filled,' and yet \_thou give\_ him not those things

\_which\_ are needful to him, what benevolence is there in thy

conduct?"--\_Kirkham cor.\_

"Get on your nightgown, lest occasion \_call\_ us,

And \_show\_ us to be watchers."--\_Singer's Shakspeare\_.

"But if it \_climb\_, with your assisting \_hand\_,

The Trojan walls, and in the city \_stand\_."--\_Dryden cor.\_

----------------"Though Heaven's King

\_Ride\_ on thy wings, and thou with thy compeers,

Used to the yoke, \_draw\_ his triumphant wheels."--\_Milton cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IX.--IMPROPER ELLIPSES.

"Indeed we have seriously wondered that Murray should leave some things as

he has \_left them\_."--\_Reporter cor.\_ "Which they neither have \_done\_ nor

can do."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "The Lord hath \_revealed\_, and doth and will

reveal, his will to his people; and hath \_raised up\_, and doth raise up,

members of his body," &c.--\_Id.\_ "We see, then, that the Lord hath \_given\_,

and doth give, such."--\_Id.\_ "Towards those that have \_declared\_, or do

declare, themselves members."--\_Id.\_ "For which we can \_give\_, and have

given, our sufficient reasons."--\_Id.\_ "When we mention the several

properties of the different words in sentences, as we have \_mentioned\_

those of \_the word William's\_ above, what is the exercise called?"--\_R. C.

Smith cor.\_ "It is however to be doubted, whether this Greek idiom ever has

\_obtained\_, or \_ever\_ will obtain, extensively, in English."--\_Nutting

cor.\_ "Why did not the Greeks and Romans abound in auxiliary words as much

as we \_do\_?"--\_Murray cor.\_ "Who delivers his sentiments in earnest, as

they ought to be \_delivered\_ in order to move and persuade."--\_Kirkham

cor.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--DO, USED AS A SUBSTITUTE.

"And I would avoid it altogether, if it could be \_avoided\_." Or: "I would

avoid it altogether, if \_to avoid\_ it \_were practicable\_."--\_Kames cor.\_

"Such a sentiment from a man expiring of his wounds, is truly heroic; and

\_it\_ must elevate the mind to the greatest height \_to which it can be

raised\_ by a single expression."--\_Id.\_ "Successive images, \_thus\_ making

deeper and deeper impressions, must elevate \_the mind\_ more than any single

image can."--\_Id.\_ "Besides making a deeper impression than can be \_made\_

by cool reasoning."--\_Id.\_ "Yet a poet, by the force of genius alone, \_may\_

rise higher than a public speaker \_can\_." Or:--"than \_can\_ a public

speaker."--\_Blair cor.\_ "And the very same reason that has induced several

grammarians to go so far as they have \_gone\_, should have induced them to

go farther."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The pupil should commit the first section

\_to memory\_ perfectly, before he \_attempts\_ (or \_enters upon\_) the second

part of grammar."--\_Bradley cor.\_ "The Greek \_ch\_ was pronounced hard, as

we now \_pronounce it\_ in \_chord\_."--\_Booth cor.\_ "They pronounce the

syllables in a different manner from what they \_adopt\_ (or, in a \_manner

different\_ from \_that which\_ they \_are accustomed to use\_) at other

times."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "And give him the \_cool and formal\_ reception

that Simon had \_given\_."--\_Scott cor.\_ "I do not say, as some have

\_said\_."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "If he suppose the first, he \_may\_ the

last."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Who are now despising Christ in his inward

appearance, as the Jews of old \_despised\_ him in his outward

[advent]."--\_Id.\_ "That text of Revelations must not be understood as he

\_understands\_ it."--\_Id.\_ "Till the mode of parsing the noun is so familiar

to him that he can \_parse\_ it readily."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "Perhaps it is

running the same course \_that\_ Rome had \_run\_ before."--\_Middleton cor.\_

"It ought even on this ground to be avoided; \_and it\_ easily \_may be\_, by a

different construction."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "These two languages are now

pronounced in England as no other nation in Europe \_pronounces

them\_."--\_Creighton cor.\_ "Germany ran the same risk that Italy had

\_run\_."--\_Bolingbroke, Murray, et al., cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XI.--PRETERITS AND PARTICIPLES.

"The beggars themselves will be \_broken\_ in a trice."--\_Swift cor.\_ "The

hoop is \_hoisted\_ above his nose."--\_Id.\_ "And \_his\_ heart was \_lifted\_ up

in the ways of the Lord."--\_2 Chron.\_, xvii, 6. "Who sin so oft have

mourned, Yet to temptation \_run\_."--\_Burns cor.\_ "Who would not have let

them \_appear\_."--\_Steele cor.\_ "He would have had you \_seek\_ for ease at

the hands of Mr. Legality."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "From me his madding mind is

\_turned: He woos\_ the widow's daughter, of the glen."--\_Spenser cor.\_ "The

man has \_spoken\_, and \_he\_ still speaks."--\_Ash cor.\_ "For you have but

\_mistaken\_ me all this while."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "And will you \_rend\_ our

ancient love asunder?"--\_Id.\_ "Mr. Birney has \_pled\_ (or \_pleaded\_) the

inexpediency of passing such resolutions."--\_Liberator cor.\_ "Who have

\_worn\_ out their years in such most painful labours."--\_Littleton cor.\_

"And in the conclusion you were \_chosen\_ probationer."--\_Spectator cor.\_

"How she was lost, \_ta'en\_ captive, made a slave;

And how against him set that should her save."--\_Bunyan cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XII.--OF VERBS CONFOUNDED.

"But Moses preferred to \_while\_ away his time."--\_Parker cor.\_ "His face

shone with the rays of the sun."--\_John Allen cor.\_ "Whom they had \_set\_ at

defiance so lately."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "And when he \_had sat down\_, his

disciples came unto him."--\_Bible cor.\_ "When he \_had sat down\_ on the

judgement-seat." Or: "\_While\_ he \_was sitting\_ on the judgement-seat."--

\_Id.\_ "And, \_they having kindled\_ a fire in the midst of the hall and \_sat\_

down together, Peter sat down among them."--\_Id.\_ "So, after he had washed

their feet, and had taken his garments, and \_had sat\_ down again,[or,

literally,'\_sitting down again\_,'] he said \_to\_ them, \_Do\_ ye \_know\_ what I

have done to you?"--\_Id.\_ "Even as I also overcame, and \_sat\_ down with my

Father in his throne."--\_Id.\_ Or: (rather less literally:) "Even as I \_have

overcome\_, and \_am sitting\_ with my Father \_on\_ his throne."--\_Id.\_ "We

have such a high priest, who \_sitteth\_ on the right hand of the throne of

the Majesty in the heavens."--\_Id.\_ "And \_is now sitting\_ at the right hand

of the throne of God."--\_Id.\_ "He \_set\_ on foot a furious persecution."--

\_Payne cor.\_ "There \_lieth\_ (or \_lies\_) an obligation upon the saints to

help such."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "There let him \_lie\_."--\_Byron cor.\_ "Nothing

but moss, and shrubs, and \_stunted\_ trees, can grow upon it."--\_Morse cor.\_

"Who had \_laid\_ out considerable sums purely to distinguish themselves."--

\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Whereunto the righteous \_flee\_ and are safe."--\_Barclay

cor.\_ "He \_rose\_ from supper, and laid aside his garments."--\_Id.\_

"Whither--\_oh!\_ whither--shall I \_flee\_?"--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_Fleeing\_ from

an adopted murderer."--\_Id.\_ "To you I \_flee\_ for refuge."--\_Id.\_ "The sign

that should warn his disciples to \_flee\_ from \_the\_ approaching ruin."--

\_Keith cor.\_ "In one she \_sits\_ as a prototype for exact imitation."--\_Rush

cor.\_ "In which some only bleat, bark, mew, \_whinny\_, and bray, a little

better than others."--\_Id.\_ "Who represented to him the unreasonableness of

being \_affected\_ with such unmanly fears."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "Thou \_sawest\_

every action." Or, familiarly: "Thou \_saw\_ every action."--\_Guy cor.\_ "I

taught, thou \_taughtest\_, or \_taught\_, he or she taught."--\_Coar cor.\_

"Valerian was taken by Sapor and \_flayed\_ alive, A. D. 260."--\_Lempriere

cor.\_ "What a fine vehicle \_has\_ it now become, for all conceptions of the

mind!"--\_Blair cor.\_ "What \_has\_ become of so many productions?"--\_Volney

cor.\_ "What \_has\_ become of those ages of abundance and of life?"--\_Keith

cor.\_ "The Spartan admiral \_had\_ sailed to the Hellespont."--\_Goldsmith

cor.\_ "As soon as he \_landed\_, the multitude thronged about him."--\_Id.\_

"Cyrus \_had\_ arrived at Sardis."--\_Id.\_ "Whose year \_had\_ expired."--\_Id.\_

"It \_might\_ better have been, 'that faction which,'" Or; "'That faction

which,' \_would\_ have been better."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 157. "This people

\_has\_ become a great nation."--\_Murray and Ingersoll cor.\_ "And here we

\_enter\_ the region of ornament."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The ungraceful

parenthesis which follows, \_might\_ far better have been avoided." "Who

forced him under water, and there held him until \_he was drowned\_."--\_Hist.

cor.\_

"I \_would\_ much rather be myself the slave,

And wear the bonds, than fasten them on him."--\_Cowper cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XIII.--WORDS THAT EXPRESS TIME.

"I \_finished\_ my letter \_before\_ my brother arrived." Or: "I \_had finished\_

my letter \_when\_ my brother arrived."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "I \_wrote\_ before I

received his letter."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "From what \_was formerly\_

delivered."--\_Id.\_ "Arts \_were at length\_ introduced among them." Or: "Arts

\_have been of late\_ introduced among them."--\_Id.\_ [But the latter reading

suits not the Doctor's context.] "I am not of opinion that such rules \_can

be\_ of much use, unless persons \_see\_ them exemplified." Or:--"\_could be\_,"

and "\_saw\_."--\_Id.\_ "If we \_use\_ the noun itself, we \_say\_, (or \_must

say\_,) 'This composition is John's.'" Or: "If we \_used\_ the noun itself, we

\_should say\_," &c.--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "But if the assertion \_refer\_ to

something that \_was transient\_, or \_to something that is not\_ supposed to

be \_always the same\_, the past tense must be preferred:" [as,] "They told

him that Jesus of Nazareth \_was passing\_ by."--\_Luke and L. Murray cor.\_

"There is no particular intimation but that I \_have continued\_ to work,

even to the present moment."--\_R. W. Green cor.\_ "Generally, as \_has been\_

observed already, it is but hinted in a single word or phrase."--\_Campbell

cor.\_ "The wittiness of the passage \_has been\_ already illustrated."--\_Id.\_

"As was observed \_before\_."--\_Id.\_ Or: "As \_has been\_ observed

\_already\_"--\_Id.\_ "It \_has been\_ said already in general \_terms\_."--\_Id.\_

"As I hinted \_before\_."--\_Id.\_ Or: "As I \_have hinted already\_."--\_Id.\_

"What, I believe, was hinted once \_before\_."--\_Id.\_ "It is obvious, as

\_was\_ hinted formerly, that this is but an artificial and arbitrary

connexion."--\_Id.\_ "They \_did\_ anciently a great deal of hurt."--

\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "Then said Paul, I knew not, brethren, that he \_was\_ the

high priest."--See \_Acts\_, xxiii, 5; \_Webster cor.\_ "Most prepositions

originally \_denoted\_ the \_relations\_ of place; and \_from these\_ they \_were\_

transferred, to denote, by similitude, other relations."--\_Lowth and

Churchill cor.\_ "His gift was but a poor offering, \_in comparison with\_ his

\_great\_ estate."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "If he should succeed, and obtain his

end, he \_would\_ not be the happier for it." Or, better: "If he \_succeed\_,

and \_fully attain\_ his end, he will not be the happier for it."--\_Id.\_

"These are torrents that swell to-day, and \_that will\_ have spent

themselves by to-morrow."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Who have called that wheat \_on

one day\_, which they have called tares \_on the next\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "He

thought it \_was\_ one of his tenants."--\_Id.\_ "But if one went unto them

from the dead, they \_would\_ repent."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Neither \_would\_ they be

persuaded, though one rose from the dead."--\_Id.\_ "But it is while men

\_sleep\_, that the arch-enemy always \_sows\_ his tares."--\_The Friend cor.\_

"Crescens would not \_have failed\_ to \_expose\_ him."--\_Addison cor.\_

"Bent \_is\_ his bow, the Grecian hearts to wound;

Fierce as he \_moves\_, his silver shafts resound."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XIV.--VERBS OF COMMANDING, &C.

"Had I commanded you to \_do\_ this, you would have thought hard of it."--\_G.

B\_. "I found him better than I expected to \_find\_ him."--\_L Murray's

Gram.\_, i, 187. "There are several smaller faults which I at first intended

to \_enumerate\_."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Antithesis, therefore, may, on many

occasions, be employed to advantage, in order to strengthen the impression

which we intend that any object \_shall\_ make."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The girl

said, if her master would but have let her \_have\_ money, she might have

been well long ago."--\_Priestley et al. cor.\_ "Nor is there the least

ground to fear that we \_shall here\_ be cramped within too narrow

limits."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "The Romans, flushed with success, expected to

\_retake\_ it."--\_Hooke cor.\_ "I would not have let \_fall\_ an unseasonable

pleasantry in the venerable presence of Misery, to be entitled to all the

wit that ever Rabelais scattered."--\_Sterne cor.\_ "We expected that he

\_would arrive\_ last night."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 282. "Our friends intended

to \_meet\_ us."--\_Ib.\_ "We hoped to \_see\_ you."--\_Ib.\_ "He would not have

been allowed to \_enter\_."--\_Ib.\_

UNDER NOTE XV.--PERMANENT PROPOSITIONS.

"Cicero maintained, that whatsoever \_is\_ useful \_is\_ good."--\_G. B\_. "I

observed that love \_constitutes\_ the whole moral character of

God."--\_Dwight cor.\_ "Thinking that one \_gains\_ nothing by being a good

man."--\_Voltaire cor.\_ "I have already told you, that I \_am\_ a

gentleman."--\_Fontaine cor.\_ "If I should ask, whether ice and water \_are\_

two distinct species of things."--\_Locke cor.\_ "A stranger to the poem

would not easily discover that this \_is\_ verse."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, i,

260. "The doctor affirmed that fever always \_produces\_ thirst."--\_Brown's

Inst.\_, p. 282. "The ancients asserted, that virtue \_is\_ its own

reward."--\_Ib.\_ "They should not have repeated the error, of insisting that

the infinitive \_is\_ a mere noun."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "It was observed in Chap.

III, that the distinctive OR \_has\_ a double use."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Two

young gentlemen, who have made a discovery that there \_is\_ no

God."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 206.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XVIII; INFINITIVES.

INSTANCES DEMANDING THE PARTICLE TO.

"William, please \_to\_ hand me that pencil."--\_Smith cor.\_ "Please \_to\_

insert points so as to make sense."--\_P. Davis cor.\_ "I have known lords

\_to\_ abbreviate almost half of their words."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "We shall find

the practice perfectly \_to\_ accord with the theory."--\_Knight cor.\_ "But it

would tend to obscure, rather than \_to\_ elucidate, the subject."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "Please \_to\_ divide it for them, as it should be

\_divided\_"--\_J. Willetts cor.\_ "So as neither to embarrass nor \_to\_ weaken

the sentence."--\_Blair and Mur. cor.\_ "Carry her to his table, to view his

poor fare, and \_to\_ hear his heavenly discourse."--\_Same\_. "That we need

not be surprised to find this \_to\_ hold [i.e., to find \_the same to be

true\_, or to find \_it so\_] in eloquence."--\_Blair cor.\_ "Where he has no

occasion either to divide or \_to\_ explain" [\_the topic in debate\_.]--\_Id.\_

"And they will find their pupils \_to\_ improve by hasty and pleasant

steps."--\_Russell cor.\_ "The teacher, however, will please \_to\_ observe,"

&c.--\_Inf. S. Gr. cor.\_ "Please \_to\_ attend to a few rules in what is

called syntax."--\_Id.\_ "They may dispense with the laws, to favour their

friends, or \_to\_ secure their office."--\_Webster cor.\_ "To take back a

gift, or \_to\_ break a contract, is a wanton abuse."--\_Id.\_ "The legislature

\_has\_ nothing to do, but \_to\_ let it bear its own price."--\_Id.\_ "He is not

to form, but \_to\_ copy characters."--\_Rambler cor.\_ "I have known a woman

\_to\_ make use of a shoeing-horn."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "Finding this experiment

\_to\_ answer, in every respect, their wishes."--\_Day cor.\_ "In fine, let him

cause his arrangement \_to\_ conclude in the term of the question."--\_Barclay

cor.\_

"That he permitted not the winds of heaven

\_To visit her\_ too roughly."

[Omit "\_face\_," to keep the measure: or say,]

"That he \_did never let\_ the winds of heaven

\_Visit her face\_ too roughly."--\_Shak. cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE XIX.--OF INFINITIVES.

Instances after Bid, Dare, Feel, Hear, Let, Make, Need, See.

"I dare not proceed so hastily, lest I give offence."--See \_Murray's Key\_,

Rule xii. "Their character is formed, and made \_to\_ appear."--\_Butler cor.\_

"Let there be but matter and opportunity offered, and you shall see them

quickly revive again."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "It has been made \_to\_ appear, that

there is no presumption against a revelation."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_

"MANIFEST, v. t. To reveal; to make appear; to show plainly."--\_Webster

cor.\_ "Let him reign, like good Aurelius, or let him bleed like \_Seneca\_:"

[Socrates did not bleed, he was poisoned.]--\_Kirkham's transposition of

Pope cor.\_ "\_Sing\_ I could not; \_complain\_ I durst not."--\_Fothergill cor.\_

"If T. M. be not so frequently heard \_to\_ pray by them."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"How many of your own church members were never heard \_to\_ pray?"--\_Id.\_

"Yea, we are bidden \_to\_ pray one for an other."--\_Id.\_ "He was made \_to\_

believe that neither the king's death nor \_his\_ imprisonment would help

him."--\_Sheffield cor.\_ "I felt a chilling sensation creep over

me."--\_Inst.\_, p. 279. "I dare say he has not got home yet."--\_Ib.\_ "We

sometimes see bad men honoured."--\_Ib.\_ "I saw him move"--\_Felch cor.\_ "For

see thou, ah! see thou, a hostile world its \_terrors\_ raise."--\_Kirkham

cor.\_ "But that he make him rehearse so."--\_Lily cor.\_ "Let us

rise."--\_Fowle cor.\_

"Scripture, you know, exhorts us to it;

It bids us 'seek peace, and ensue it.'"--\_Swift cor.\_

"Who bade the mud from Dives' wheel

\_Bedash\_ the rags of Lazarus?

Come, brother, in that dust we'll kneel,

Confessing heaven that ruled it thus."--\_Christmas Book cor.\_

CHAPTER VII.--PARTICIPLES.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE XX.

UNDER NOTE I.--EXPUNGE OF.

"In forming his sentences, he was very exact."--\_L. Murray\_. "For not

believing which, I condemn them."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "To prohibit his hearers

from reading that book."--\_Id.\_ "You will please them exceedingly in crying

down ordinances."--\_Mitchell cor.\_ "The warwolf subsequently became an

engine for casting stones." Or:--"for \_the\_ casting of stones."--\_Cons.

Misc. cor.\_ "The art of dressing hides and working in leather was

practised."--\_Id.\_ "In the choice they had made of him for restoring

order."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "The Arabians exercised themselves by composing

orations and poems."--\_Sale cor.\_ "Behold, the widow-woman was there,

gathering sticks."--\_Bible cor.\_ "The priests were busied in offering

burnt-offerings."--\_Id.\_ "But Asahel would not turn aside from following

him."--\_Id.\_ "He left off building Ramah, and dwelt in Tirzah."--\_Id.\_

"Those who accuse us of denying it, belie us."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "And

breaking bread from house to house."--\_Acts\_, iv, 46. "Those that set about

repairing the walls."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "And secretly begetting

divisions."--\_Id.\_ "Whom he has made use of in gathering his

church."--\_Id.\_ "In defining and distinguishing the \_acceptations\_ and uses

of those particles."--\_W. Walker cor.\_

"In \_making this a crime\_, we overthrow

The laws of nations and of nature too."--\_Dryden cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--ARTICLES REQUIRE OF.

"The mixing \_of\_ them makes a miserable jumble of truth and

fiction."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The same objection lies against the employing \_of\_

statues."--\_Id.\_ "More efficacious than the venting \_of\_ opulence upon the

fine arts."--\_Id.\_ "It is the giving \_of\_ different names to the same

object."--\_Id.\_ "When we have in view the erecting \_of\_ a column."--\_Id.\_

"The straining \_of\_ an elevated subject beyond due bounds, is a vice not so

frequent."--\_Id.\_ "The cutting \_of\_ evergreens in the shape of animals, is

very ancient."--\_Id.\_ "The keeping \_of\_ juries without \_meat\_, drink, or

fire, can be accounted for only on the same idea."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The

writing \_of\_ the verbs at length on his slate, will be a very useful

exercise."--\_Beck cor.\_ "The avoiding \_of\_ them is not an object of any

moment."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "Comparison is the increasing or decreasing \_of\_

the signification of a word by degrees."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "Comparison is

the increasing or decreasing \_of\_ the quality by degrees."--\_Buchanan cor.\_

"The placing \_of\_ a circumstance before the word with which it is connected

is the easiest of all inversion."--\_Id.\_ "What is emphasis? It is the

emitting \_of\_ a stronger and fuller sound of voice," &c.--\_Bradley cor.\_

"Besides, the varying \_of\_ the terms will render the use of them more

familiar."--\_A. Mur. cor.\_ "And yet the confining \_of\_ themselves to this

true principle, has misled them."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "What is here commanded, is

merely the relieving \_of\_ his misery."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "The accumulating

\_of\_ too great a quantity of knowledge at random, overloads the mind \_in

stead\_ of adorning it."--\_Formey cor.\_ "For the compassing \_of\_ his

point."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "To the introducing \_of\_ such an inverted order of

things."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Which require only the doing \_of\_ an external

action."--\_Id.\_ "The imprisoning \_of\_ my body is to satisfy your

wills."--\_Fox cor.\_ "Who oppose the conferring \_of\_ such extensive command

on one person."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "Luxury contributed not a little to the

enervating \_of\_ their forces."--\_Sale cor.\_ "The keeping \_of\_ one day of

the week for a sabbath."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "The doing \_of\_ a thing is

contrary to the forbearing of it."--\_Id.\_ "The doubling \_of\_ the Sigma is,

however, sometimes regular."--\_Knight cor.\_ "The inserting \_of\_ the common

aspirate too, is improper."--\_Id.\_ "But in Spenser's time the pronouncing

\_of\_ the \_ed\_ [as a separate syllable,] seems already to have been

something of an archaism."--\_Phil. Mu. cor.\_ "And to the reconciling \_of\_

the effect of their verses on the eye."--\_Id.\_ "When it was not in their

power to hinder the taking \_of\_ the whole."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "He had

indeed given the orders himself for the shutting \_of\_ the gates."--\_Id.\_

"So his whole life was a doing \_of\_ the will of the Father."--\_Penington

cor.\_ "It signifies the suffering or receiving \_of\_ the action

expressed."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The pretended crime therefore was the

declaring \_of\_ himself to be the Son of God."--\_West cor.\_ "Parsing is the

resolving \_of\_ a sentence into its different parts of speech."--\_Beck cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--ADJECTIVES REQUIRE OF.

"There is \_no\_ expecting \_of\_ the admiration of beholders."--\_Baxter cor.\_

"There is no hiding \_of\_ you in the house."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "For the better

regulating \_of\_ government in the province of Massachusetts."--\_Brit. Parl.

cor.\_ "The precise marking \_of\_ the shadowy boundaries of a complex

government."--\_Adams cor.\_ "This state of discipline requires the voluntary

foregoing \_of\_ many things which we desire, and \_the\_ setting \_of\_

ourselves to what we have no inclination to."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "This

amounts to an active setting \_of\_ themselves against religion."--\_Id.\_

"Which engaged our ancient friends to the orderly establishing \_of\_ our

Christian discipline."--\_Friends cor.\_ "Some men are so unjust that there

is no securing \_of\_ our own property or life, but by opposing force to

force."--\_Rev. John Brown cor.\_ "An Act for the better securing \_of\_ the

Rights and Liberties of the Subject."--\_Geo. III cor.\_ "Miraculous curing

\_of\_ the sick is discontinued."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "It would have been no

transgressing \_of\_ the apostle's rule."--\_Id.\_ "As far as consistent with

the proper conducting \_of\_ the business of the House."--\_Elmore cor.\_

"Because he would have no quarrelling at the just condemning \_of\_ them at

that day." Or:--"at \_their just condemnation\_ at that day."--\_Bunyan cor.\_

"That transferring \_of\_ this natural manner will insure propriety."--\_Rush

cor.\_ "If a man were porter of hell-gate, he should have old [i.e.,

frequent] turning \_of\_ the key."--\_Singer's Shakspeare cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--POSSESSIVES REQUIRE OF.

"So very simple a thing as a man's wounding \_of\_ himself."--\_Dr. Blair

cor., and Murray\_. "Or with that man's avowing \_of\_ his

designs."--\_Blair, Mur., et al. cor.\_ "On his putting \_of\_ the

question."--\_Adams cor.\_ "The importance of teachers' requiring \_of\_ their

pupils to read each section many times over."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Politeness

is a kind of forgetting \_of\_ one's self, in order to be agreeable to

others."--\_Ramsay cor.\_ "Much, therefore, of the merit and the

agreeableness of epistolary writing, will depend on its introducing \_of\_ us

into some acquaintance with the writer."--\_Blair and Mack cor.\_ "Richard's

restoration to respectability depends on his paying \_of\_ his debts."--\_O.

B. Peirce cor.\_ "Their supplying \_of\_ ellipses where none ever existed;

their parsing \_of the\_ words of sentences already full and perfect, as

though depending on words understood."--\_Id.\_ "Her veiling \_of\_ herself,

and shedding \_of\_ tears, &c., her upbraiding \_of\_ Paris for his cowardice,"

&c.--\_Blair cor.\_ "A preposition may be made known by its admitting \_of\_ a

personal pronoun after it, in the objective case."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_

"But this forms no just objection to its denoting \_of\_ time."--\_L. Mur.

cor.\_ "Of men's violating or disregarding \_of\_ the relations \_in\_ which God

has \_here\_ placed them."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Success, indeed, no more

decides for the right, than a man's killing \_of\_ his antagonist in a

duel."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "His reminding \_of\_ them."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "This

mistake was corrected by his preceptor's causing \_of\_ him to plant some

beans."--\_Id.\_ "Their neglecting \_of\_ this was ruinous."--\_Frost cor.\_

"That he was serious, appears from his distinguishing \_of\_ the others as

'finite.'"--\_Felch cor.\_ "His hearers are not at all sensible of his doing

\_of\_ it." Or:--"\_that he does\_ it."--\_Sheridan cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--CHANGE THE EXPRESSION.

"An allegory is \_a fictitious story the meaning of which is figurative, not

literal\_; a double meaning, or dilogy, is the saying \_of\_ only one thing,

\_when we have\_ two in view."--\_Phil. Mu. cor.\_ "A verb may generally be

distinguished by \_the sense which it makes\_ with any of the personal

pronouns, or \_with\_ the word TO, before it."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "A noun

may in general be distinguished by \_the article which comes\_ before it, or

by \_the sense which it makes\_ of itself."--\_Merchant et al. cor.\_ "An

adjective may usually be known by \_the sense which it makes\_ with the word

\_thing\_; as, a \_good\_ thing, a \_bad\_ thing."--\_Iid.\_ "It is seen \_to be\_ in

the objective case, \_because it denotes\_ the object affected by the act of

leaving."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "It is seen \_to be\_ in the possessive case,

\_because it denotes\_ the possessor of something."--\_Id.\_ "The \_noun\_ MAN is

caused by the \_adjective\_ WHATEVER to \_seem like\_ a twofold \_nominative, as

if it denoted\_, of itself, one person as the subject of the two

remarks."--\_Id.\_ "WHEN, as used in the last line, is a connective, \_because

it joins\_ that line to the other part of the sentence."--\_Id.\_ "\_Because

they denote\_ reciprocation."--\_Id.\_ "To allow them \_to make\_ use of that

liberty;"--"To allow them \_to use\_ that liberty;"--or, "To allow them that

liberty."--\_Sale cor.\_ "The worst effect of it is, \_that it fixes\_ on your

mind a habit of indecision."--\_Todd cor.\_ "And you groan the more deeply,

as you reflect that \_you have not power to shake\_ it off."--\_Id.\_ "I know

of nothing that can justify the \_student in\_ having recourse to a Latin

translation of a Greek writer."--\_Coleridge cor.\_ "Humour is the \_conceit

of\_ making others act or talk absurdly."--\_Hazlitt cor.\_ "There are

remarkable instances \_in which they do not affect\_ each other."--\_Bp.

Butler cor.\_ "\_That Cæsar was left out\_ of the commission, was not from any

slight."--\_Life cor.\_ "Of the \_thankful reception\_ of this toleration, I

shall say no more," Or: "Of the \_propriety of\_ receiving this toleration

thankfully, I shall say no more."--\_Dryden cor.\_ "Henrietta was delighted

with Julia's \_skill in\_ working lace."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "And it is

\_because each of them represents\_ two different words, that the confusion

has arisen."--\_Booth cor.\_ "Æschylus died of a fracture of his skull,

caused by an eagle's \_dropping of\_ a tortoise on his head." Or:--"caused by

\_a tortoise which an eagle let fall\_ on his head."--\_Biog. Dict. cor.\_ "He

doubted \_whether they had\_ it."--\_Felch cor.\_ "\_To make\_ ourselves clearly

understood, is the chief end of speech."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "\_One cannot

discover\_ in their countenances any signs which are the natural

concomitants of the feelings of the heart."--\_Id.\_ "Nothing can be more

common or less proper, than to speak of a \_river as emptying

itself\_."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Our \_non-use of\_ the former expression, is

owing to this."--\_Bullions cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--DISPOSAL OF ADVERBS.

"To this generally succeeds the division, or the \_laying-down\_ of the

method of the discourse."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "To the \_pulling-down\_ of

strong holds."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Can a mere \_buckling-on of\_ a military weapon

infuse courage?"--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "\_Expensive\_ and \_luxurious\_ living

destroys health."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "By \_frugal\_ and \_temperate\_ living,

health is preserved." Or: "By living frugally and temperately, \_we preserve

our\_ health."--\_Id.\_ "By the \_doing-away\_ of the necessity."--\_The Friend

cor.\_ "He recommended to them, however, the \_immediate\_ calling of--(or,

\_immediately to call\_--) the whole community to the church."--\_Gregory

cor.\_ "The separation of large numbers in this manner, certainly

facilitates the \_right\_ reading \_of\_ them."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "From their

\_mere\_ admitting of a twofold grammatical construction."--\_Phil. Mu. cor.\_

"His \_grave\_ lecturing \_of\_ his friend about it."--\_Id.\_ "For the

\_blotting-out\_ of sin."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "From the \_not-using\_ of water."--

\_Barclay cor.\_ "By the gentle \_dropping-in\_ of a pebble."--\_Sheridan cor.\_

"To the \_carrying-on\_ of a great part of that general course of

nature."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Then the \_not-interposing\_ is so far from

being a ground of complaint."--\_Id.\_ "The bare omission, (or rather, the

\_not-employing\_,) of what is used."--\_Campbell and Jamieson cor.\_ "The

\_bringing-together\_ of incongruous adverbs is a very common fault."--

\_Churchill cor.\_ "This is a presumptive proof \_that it does\_ not \_proceed\_

from them."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "It represents him in a character to which

\_any injustice\_ is peculiarly unsuitable."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "They will aim

at something higher than \_a mere dealing-out\_ of harmonious sounds."--

\_Kirkham cor.\_ "This is intelligible and sufficient; and \_any further

account of the matter\_ seems beyond the reach of our faculties."--\_Bp.

Butler cor.\_ "Apostrophe is a \_turning-off\_ from the regular course of the

subject."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "Even Isabella was finally prevailed upon to

assent to the \_sending-out\_ of a commission to investigate his

conduct."--\_Life of Columbus cor.\_ "For the \_turning-away\_ of the simple

shall slay them."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Thick fingers always should command

Without \_extension\_ of the hand."--\_King cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--OF PARTICIPLES WITH ADJECTIVES.

"Is there any Scripture \_which\_ speaks of the \_light\_ as being

inward?"--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For I believe not \_positiveness\_ therein

essential to salvation."--\_Id.\_ "Our \_inability\_ to act \_a uniformly\_ right

part without some thought and care."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "\_On the\_

supposition \_that it is reconcilable\_ with the constitution of

nature."--\_Id.\_ "\_On the ground that it is\_ not discoverable by reason or

experience."--\_Id.\_ "\_On the ground that they are\_ unlike the known course

of nature."--\_Id.\_ "Our \_power\_ to discern reasons for them, gives a

positive credibility to the history of them."--\_Id.\_ "From its \_lack of

universality\_."--\_Id.\_ "That they may be turned into passive \_participles\_

in \_dus\_, is no decisive argument \_to prove them\_ passive."--\_Grant cor.\_

"With the implied idea \_that St. Paul was\_ then absent from the

Corinthians."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "\_Because it becomes\_ gradually weaker, until

it finally dies away into silence."--\_Id.\_ "Not without the author's \_full

knowledge\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Wit\_ out of season is one sort of folly."--\_Sheffield

cor.\_ "Its \_general susceptibility\_ of a much stronger evidence."--

\_Campbell cor.\_ "At least, \_that they are\_ such, rarely enhances our

opinion, either of their abilities or of their virtues."--\_Id.\_ "Which were

the ground of our \_unity\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "But they may be distinguished

from it by their \_intransitiveness\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "To distinguish the

higher degree of our persuasion of a thing's \_possibility\_."--\_Churchill

cor.\_

"\_That he was\_ idle, and dishonest too,

Was that which caused his utter overthrow."--\_Tobitt cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF COMPOUND VERBAL NOUNS.

"When it denotes \_subjection\_ to the exertion of an other."--\_Booth cor.\_

"In the passive sense, it signifies \_a subjection\_ to the influence of the

action."--\_Felch cor.\_ "\_To be\_ abandoned by our friends, is very

deplorable."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Without waiting \_to be\_ attacked by the

Macedonians."--\_Id.\_ "In progress of time, words were wanted to express

men's \_connexion\_ with certain conditions of fortune."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Our \_acquaintance\_ with pain and sorrow has a tendency to bring us to a

settled moderation."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "The chancellor's \_attachment\_ to

the king, secured \_to the monarch\_ his crown."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_

"The general's \_failure\_ in this enterprise occasioned his disgrace."--

\_Iid.\_ "John's \_long application to\_ writing had wearied him."--\_Iid.\_ "The

sentence \_may\_ be, 'John's \_long application\_ to writing has wearied

him.'"--\_Wright cor.\_ "Much depends on \_the observance of\_ this \_rule\_."--

\_L. Murray cor.\_ "He mentioned \_that a boy had been\_ corrected for his

faults."--\_Alger and Merchant cor.\_ "The boy's \_punishment\_ is shameful to

him."--\_Iid.\_ "The greater the difficulty of remembrance is, and the more

important the \_being-remembered\_ is to the attainment of the ultimate

end."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "If the parts in the composition of similar objects

were always in equal quantity, their \_being-compounded\_ (or their

\_compounding\_) would make no odds."--\_Id.\_ "Circumstances, not of such

importance as that the scope of the relation is affected by their

\_being-known\_"--or, "by the \_mention of them\_."--\_Id.\_ "A passive verb

expresses the receiving of an action, or \_represents its subject as\_ being

acted upon; as, 'John is beaten.'"--\_Frost cor.\_ "So our language has an

other great advantage; namely, \_that it is little\_ diversified by

genders."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "The \_slander concerning Peter\_ is no fault of

\_his\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ "Without \_faith in Christ\_, there is no

\_justification\_."--\_Penn cor.\_ "\_Habituation\_ to danger begets intrepidity;

i.e., lessens fear."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "It is not \_affection of any kind\_,

but \_action that\_ forms those habits."--\_Id.\_ "In order \_that we may be\_

satisfied of the truth of the apparent paradox."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "\_A trope

consists\_ in \_the employing of a word\_ to signify something that is

different from its original \_or usual\_ meaning."--\_Blair, Jamieson, Murray,

and Kirkham cor.\_; also \_Hiley\_. "The scriptural view of our \_salvation\_

from punishment."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "To submit and obey, is not a renouncing

\_of\_ the \_Spirit's leading\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--PARTICIPLES FOR INFINITIVES, &c.

"\_To teach\_ little children is a pleasant employment." Or: "\_The\_ teaching

\_of\_ little children," &c.--\_Bartlett cor.\_ "\_To deny\_ or \_compromise the\_

principles of truth, is virtually \_to deny\_ their divine

Author."--\_Reformer cor.\_ "A severe critic might point out some expressions

that would bear \_retrenching\_"--"\_retrenchment\_"--or, "\_to be

retrenched\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Never attempt \_to prolong\_ the pathetic

too much."--\_Id.\_ "I now recollect \_to have\_ mentioned--(or, \_that I\_

mentioned--) a report of that nature."--\_Whiting cor.\_ "Nor of the

necessity which there is, for their \_restraint\_--(or, for \_them to be\_

restrained--) in them."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "But, \_to do\_ what God commands

because he commands it, is obedience, though it proceeds from hope or

fear."--\_Id.\_ "Simply \_to close\_ the nostrils, does not so entirely prevent

resonance."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "Yet they absolutely refuse \_to do\_

so."--\_Harris cor.\_ "But Artaxerxes could not refuse \_to pardon\_

him."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "\_The\_ doing \_of\_ them in the best manner, is

signified by the \_names\_ of these arts."--\_Rush cor.\_ "\_To behave\_ well for

the time to come, may be insufficient."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "The compiler

proposed \_to publish\_ that part by itself."--\_Adam cor.\_ "To smile \_on\_

those \_whom\_ we should censure, is, \_to bring\_ guilt upon

ourselves."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "But it would be great injustice to that

illustrious orator, to bring his genius down to the same level."--\_Id.\_

"\_The doubt that\_ things go ill, often hurts more, than to be sure they

do."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "This is called \_the\_ straining \_of\_ a metaphor."--

\_Blair and Murray cor.\_ "This is what Aristotle calls \_the\_ giving \_of\_

manners to the poem."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The painter's \_entire confinement\_

to that part of time which he has chosen, deprives him of the power of

exhibiting various stages of the same action."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "It imports

\_the retrenchment of\_ all superfluities, and \_a\_ pruning \_of\_ the

expression."--\_Blair et al. cor.\_ "The necessity for \_us to be\_ thus

exempted is further apparent."--\_Jane West cor.\_ "Her situation in life

does not allow \_her to be\_ genteel in every thing."--\_Same\_. "Provided you

do not dislike \_to be\_ dirty when you are invisible."--\_Same\_. "There is

now an imperious necessity for her \_to be\_ acquainted with her title to

eternity."--\_Same\_. "\_Disregard to\_ the restraints of virtue, is misnamed

ingenuousness."--\_Same\_. "The legislature prohibits \_the\_ opening \_of shops

on\_ Sunday."--\_Same\_. "To attempt \_to prove\_ that any thing is right."--\_O.

B. Peirce cor.\_ "The comma directs \_us to make\_ a pause of a second in

duration, or less."--\_Id.\_ "The rule which directs \_us to put\_ other words

into the place of it, is wrong."--\_Id.\_ "They direct \_us to\_ call the

specifying adjectives, or adnames, adjective pronouns."--\_Id.\_ "William

dislikes \_to attend\_ court."--\_Frost cor.\_ "It may perhaps be worth while

\_to remark\_, that Milton makes a distinction."--\_Phil. Mu. cor.\_ "\_To

profess\_ regard and \_act injuriously, discovers\_ a base mind."--\_Murray et

al. cor.\_ "\_To profess\_ regard and \_act\_ indifferently, \_discovers\_ a base

mind."--\_Weld cor.\_ "You have proved beyond contradiction, that \_this

course of action\_ is the sure way to procure such an object."--\_Campbell

cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--PARTICIPLES AFTER BE, IS, &c.

"Irony is \_a figure in which the speaker sneeringly utters the direct

reverse of what he intends shall be understood\_."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 235.

[Correct by this the four false definitions of "Irony" cited from \_Murray,

Peirce, Fisher\_, and \_Sanborn\_.] "This is, in a great measure, \_a\_

delivering \_of\_ their own compositions."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "But purity is \_a

right use of\_ the words of the language."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "But the most

important object is \_the\_ settling \_of\_ the English quantity."--\_Walker

cor.\_ "When there is no affinity, the transition from one meaning to an

other is a very wide step \_taken\_."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "It will be \_a loss

of\_ time, to attempt further to illustrate it."--\_Id.\_ "This \_leaves\_ the

sentence too bare, and \_makes\_ it to be, if not nonsense, hardly

sense."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "This is \_a\_ requiring \_of\_ more labours from every

private member."--\_J. West cor.\_ "Is not this, \_to use\_ one measure for our

neighbours and \_an other\_ for ourselves?"--\_Same\_. "\_Do we\_ not \_charge\_

God foolishly, when we give these dark colourings to human

nature?"--\_Same\_. "This is not, \_to endure\_ the cross, as a disciple of

Jesus Christ; but, \_to snatch\_ at it, like a \_partisan\_ of Swift's

Jack."--\_Same\_. "What is spelling? It is \_the\_ combining \_of\_ letters to

form syllables and words."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "It is \_the\_ choosing \_of\_

such letters to compose words," &c.--\_Id.\_ "What is parsing? (1.) It is \_a\_

describing \_of\_ the nature, use, and powers of words."--\_Id.\_ (2.) "For

Parsing is \_a\_ describing \_of\_ the words of a sentence as they are

used."--\_Id.\_ (3.) "Parsing is only \_a\_ describing \_of\_ the nature and

relations of words as they are used."--\_Id.\_ (4.) "Parsing, let the pupil

understand and remember, is a \_statement of\_ facts concerning words; or \_a\_

describing \_of words\_ in their offices and relations as they are."--\_Id.\_

(5.) "Parsing is \_the\_ resolving and explaining \_of\_ words according to the

rules of grammar."--\_Id.\_ Better: "Parsing is \_the\_ resolving \_or\_

explaining \_of a sentence\_ according to the \_definitions and\_ rules of

grammar."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 28. (6.) "\_The\_ parsing \_of\_ a word,

remember, is \_an\_ enumerating and describing \_of\_ its various qualities,

and its grammatical relations to other words in the sentence."--\_Peirce

cor.\_ (7.) "For the parsing \_of\_ a word is \_an\_ enumerating and describing

\_of\_ its various properties, and [\_its\_] relations to [\_other words in\_]

the sentence."--\_Id.\_ (8.) "\_The\_ parsing \_of\_ a noun is \_an explanation\_

of \_its\_ person, number, gender, and case; and also of its grammatical

\_relation\_ in a sentence, with respect to \_some\_ other \_word or\_

words."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ (9.) "\_The\_ parsing \_of\_ any part of speech is

\_an explanation of\_ all its properties and relations."--\_Id.\_ (10.)"

Parsing is \_the\_ resolving \_of\_ a sentence into its elements."--\_Fowler

cor.\_ "The highway of the \_upright\_ is, \_to depart\_ from evil."--\_Prov.\_,

xvi, 17. "Besides, the first step towards exhibiting \_the\_ truth, should

be, \_to remove\_ the veil of error."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "Punctuation is

\_the\_ dividing \_of\_ sentences, and the words of sentences, by \_points for\_

pauses."--\_Id.\_ "\_An other\_ fault is \_the\_ using \_of\_ the imperfect \_tense\_

SHOOK \_in stead\_ of the participle SHAKEN."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Her

employment is \_the\_ drawing \_of\_ maps."--\_Alger cor.\_ "\_To go\_ to the play,

according to his notion, is, \_to lead\_ a sensual life, and \_to expose

one's\_ self to the strongest temptations. This is \_a\_ begging \_of\_ the

question, and \_therefore\_ requires no answer."--\_Formey cor.\_ "It is \_an\_

overvaluing \_of\_ ourselves, to reduce every thing to the narrow measure of

our capacities."--\_Comly's Key, in his Gram.\_, p. 188; \_Fisk's Gram.\_, p.

135. "What is vocal language? It is \_speech\_, or \_the\_ expressing of ideas

by the human voice."--\_C. W. Sanders cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IX.--VERBS OF PREVENTING.

"The annulling power of the constitution prevented that \_enactment from\_

becoming a law."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "Which prevents the \_manner from\_

being brief."--\_Id.\_ "This close prevents \_them from\_ bearing forward as

nominatives."--\_Rush cor.\_ "Because this prevents \_it from\_ growing

\_drowsy\_."--\_Formey cor.\_ "Yet this does not prevent \_him from\_ being

great."--\_Id.\_ "To prevent \_it from\_ being insipid."--\_Id.\_ "Or whose

interruptions did not prevent its \_continuance\_." Or thus: "Whose

interruptions did not prevent \_it from\_ being continued."--\_Id.\_ "This by

no means prevents \_them from\_ being also punishments."--\_Wayland cor.\_

"This hinders \_them\_ not \_from\_ being also, in the strictest sense,

punishments."--\_Id.\_ "The noise made by the rain and wind, prevented \_them

from\_ being heard."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "He endeavoured to prevent \_it from\_

taking effect."--\_Id.\_ "So sequestered as to prevent \_them from\_ being

explored."--\_Jane West cor.\_ "Who prevented her \_from\_ making a more

pleasant party."--\_Same\_. "To prevent \_us from\_ being tossed about by every

wind of doctrine."--\_Same\_. "After the infirmities of age prevented \_him

from\_ bearing his part of official duty."--\_R. Adam cor.\_ "To prevent

splendid trifles \_from\_ passing for matters of importance."--\_Kames cor.\_

"Which prevents \_him from\_ exerting himself to any good purpose."--\_Beattie

cor.\_ "The \_nonobservance\_ of this rule very frequently prevents \_us from\_

being punctual in the performance of our duties."--\_Todd cor.\_ "Nothing

will prevent \_him from\_ being a student, and possessing the means of

study."--\_Id.\_ "Does the present accident hinder \_you from\_ being honest

and brave?"--\_Collier cor.\_ "The \_e\_ is omitted to prevent two \_Ees from\_

coming together."--\_Fowle cor.\_ "A pronoun is used for, or in place of, a

noun,--to prevent \_a repetition of\_ the noun."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "Diversity

in the style relieves the ear, and prevents \_it from\_ being tired with the

frequent recurrence of the rhymes."--\_Campbell cor.\_; also \_Murray\_.

"Timidity and false shame prevent \_us from\_ opposing vicious

customs."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "To prevent \_them from\_ being moved by

such."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Some obstacle, or impediment, that prevents \_it

from\_ taking place."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Which prevents \_us from\_ making a

progress towards perfection."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "This method of

distinguishing words, must prevent any regular proportion of time \_from\_

being settled."--\_Id.\_ "That nothing but affectation can prevent \_it from\_

always taking place."--\_Id.\_ "This did not prevent \_John from\_ being

acknowledged and solemnly inaugurated Duke of Normandy." Or:

"\_Notwithstanding\_ this, \_John was\_ acknowledged and solemnly inaugurated

Duke of Normandy."--\_Henry, Webster, Sanborn, and Fowler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--THE LEADING WORD IN SENSE.

"This would \_make it impossible for a noun\_, or any other \_word\_, ever \_to

be\_ in the possessive case."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "A great part of our

pleasure arises from \_finding\_ the plan or story well conducted."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "And we have no reason to wonder \_that this was\_ the

case."--\_Id.\_ "She objected only, (as Cicero says,) to Oppianicus \_as\_

having two sons by his present wife."--\_Id.\_ "\_The subjugation of\_ the

Britons by the Saxons, was a necessary consequence of their \_calling of\_

these Saxons to their assistance."--\_Id.\_ "What he had there said

concerning the Saxons, \_that they expelled\_ the Britons, and \_changed\_ the

customs, the religion, and the language of the country, is a clear and a

good reason \_why\_ our present language \_is\_ Saxon, rather than

British."--\_Id.\_ "The only material difference between them, \_except that\_

the one \_is\_ short and the other \_more\_ prolonged, is, that a metaphor \_is

always explained\_ by the words that are connected with it."--\_Id. et Mur.

cor.\_ "The description of \_Death\_, advancing to meet Satan on his

arrival."--\_Rush cor.\_ "Is not the bare fact, \_that\_ God \_is\_ the witness

of it, sufficient ground for its credibility to rest upon?"--\_Chalmers

cor.\_ "As in the case of one \_who is\_ entering upon a new study."--\_Beattie

cor.\_ "The manner \_in which\_ these \_affect\_ the copula, is called the

imperative \_mood\_."--\_Wilkins cor.\_ "We are freed from the trouble,

\_because\_ our nouns \_have scarcely any\_ diversity of endings."--\_Buchanan

cor.\_ "The verb is rather indicative of the \_action as\_ being doing, or

done, than \_of\_ the time \_of the event\_; but indeed the ideas are

undistinguishable."--\_Booth cor.\_ "Nobody would doubt \_that\_ this \_is\_ a

sufficient proof."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Against the doctrine here maintained,

\_that\_ conscience as well as reason, \_is\_ a natural faculty."--\_Beattie

cor.\_ "It is one cause \_why\_ the Greek and English languages \_are\_ much

more easy to learn, than the Latin."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "I have not been able to

make out a solitary instance \_in which\_ such \_has been\_ the fact."--\_Lib.

cor.\_ "An \_angel\_, forming the appearance of a hand, and writing the king's

condemnation on the wall, checked their mirth, and filled them with

terror."--\_Wood cor.\_ "The \_prisoners, in attempting\_ to escape, aroused

the keepers."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "I doubt not, in the least, \_that\_ this

\_has\_ been one cause of the multiplication of divinities in the heathen

world."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "From the general rule he lays down, \_that the

verb is\_ the parent word of all language."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "He was accused of

being idle." Or: "He was accused of \_idleness\_."--\_Felch cor.\_ "Our meeting

is generally dissatisfied with him \_for\_ so removing." Or: "with \_the

circumstances of his removal\_."--\_Edmondson cor.\_ "The spectacle is too

rare, of \_men\_ deserving solid fame while not seeking it."--\_Bush cor.\_

"What further need was there \_that\_ an other priest \_should

rise\_?"--\_Heb.\_, vii, 11.

UNDER NOTE XI.--REFERENCE OF PARTICIPLES.

"Viewing them separately, \_we experience\_ different emotions." Or:

"\_Viewed\_ separately, \_they produce\_ different emotions."--\_Kames cor.\_

"But, \_this being left\_ doubtful, an other objection occurs."--\_Id.\_ "\_As

he proceeded\_ from one particular to an other, the subject grew under his

hand."--\_Id.\_ "But this is still an interruption, and a link of the chain

\_is\_ broken."--\_Id.\_ "After some \_days\_' hunting,--(or, After some days

\_spent in\_ hunting,)--Cyrus communicated his design to his

officers."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "But it is made, without the appearance of \_being

made\_ in form."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "These would have had a better effect,

\_had they been\_ disjoined, thus."--\_Blair and Murray cor.\_ "\_In\_ an

improper diphthong, but one of the vowels \_is\_ sounded."--\_Murray, Alger,

et al. cor.\_ "And \_I\_ being led to think of both together, my view is

rendered unsteady."--\_Blair, Mur., and Jam. cor.\_ "By often doing the same

thing, \_we make the action\_ habitual." Or: "\_What is\_ often \_done\_, becomes

habitual."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "They remain with us in our dark and solitary

hours, no less than when \_we are\_ surrounded with friends and cheerful

society."--\_Id.\_ "Besides \_showing\_ what is right, \_one may further

explain\_ the matter by pointing out what is wrong."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "The

former teaches the true pronunciation of words, \_and comprises\_ accent,

quantity, emphasis, \_pauses\_, and \_tones\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_A person

may reprove others\_ for their negligence, by saying, 'You have taken great

care indeed.'"--\_Id.\_ "The \_word\_ preceding and \_the word\_ following it,

are in apposition to each other."--\_Id.\_ "\_He\_ having finished his speech,

the assembly dispersed."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "Were the voice to fall at the

close of the last line, as many a reader is in the habit of \_allowing it to

do\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The misfortunes of his countrymen were but

negatively the effects of his wrath, \_which only deprived\_ them of his

assistance."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Taking them as nouns, \_we may explain\_ this

construction thus."--\_Grant cor.\_ "These have an active signification,

\_except\_ those which come from neuter verbs."--\_Id.\_ "From \_its evidence\_

not being universal." Or: "From the \_fact that its evidence is not\_

universal."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "And this faith will continually grow, \_as

we acquaint\_ ourselves with our own nature."--\_Channing cor.\_

"Monosyllables ending with any consonant but \_f, l\_, or \_s\_, never double

the final consonant, \_when it is preceded by a single vowel\_; except \_add,

ebb\_," &c.--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 23. Or: "\_Words\_ ending with any

consonant except \_f, l\_, or \_s\_, do not double the final letter.

Exceptions. Add, ebb, &c."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 3. (See my 2d Rule

for Spelling, of which this is a partial copy.) "The relation of \_Maria as\_

being the object of the action, is expressed by the change of the noun

\_Maria\_ to \_Mariam\_;" [i. e., in the \_Latin\_ language.]--\_Booth cor.\_ "In

analyzing a proposition, \_one must\_ first \_divide it\_ into its logical

subject and predicate."--\_Andrews and Stoddard cor.\_ "In analyzing a simple

sentence, \_one\_ should first \_resolve it\_ into its logical subject and

logical predicate."--\_Wells cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XII.--OF PARTICIPLES AND NOUNS.

"The \_instant discovery of\_ passions at their birth, is essential to our

well-being."--\_Kames cor.\_ "I am now to enter on \_a consideration of\_ the

sources of the pleasures of taste."--\_Blair cor.\_ "The varieties in \_the

use of\_ them are indeed many."--\_Murray cor.\_ "\_The\_ changing \_of\_ times

and seasons, \_the\_ removing and \_the setting-up\_ of kings, belong to

Providence alone."--\_Id.\_ "\_Adherence\_ to the partitions, seemed the cause

of France; \_acceptance of\_ the will, that of the house of

Bourbon."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "An other source of darkness in

\_composition\_, is the injudicious introduction of technical words and

phrases."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "These are the rules of grammar; by observing

which, you may avoid mistakes."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "By observing the

rules, you may avoid mistakes."--\_Alger cor.\_ "By observing these rules, he

succeeded."--\_Frost cor.\_ "\_The praise bestowed on him\_ was his

ruin."--\_Id.\_ "\_Deception\_ is not \_convincement\_."--\_Id.\_ "He never feared

\_the loss\_ of a friend."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_ making \_of\_ books is his

amusement."--\_Alger cor.\_ "We call it \_the\_ declining--(or, \_the

declension\_--) \_of\_ a noun."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "Washington, however,

pursued the same policy of neutrality, and opposed firmly \_the\_ taking \_of\_

any part in the wars of Europe."--\_Hall and Baker cor.\_ "The following is a

note of Interrogation, or \_of a\_ question: (?)."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "The

following is a note of Admiration, or \_of\_ wonder: (!)."--\_Id.\_ "\_The use

or omission of\_ the article A forms a nice distinction in the

sense."--\_Murray cor.\_ "\_The\_ placing \_of\_ the preposition before the word,

\_which\_ it governs, is more graceful."--\_Churchill cor.\_ (See \_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 96; \_Murray's\_, i, 200; \_Fisk's\_, 141; \_Smith's\_, 167.)

"Assistance is absolutely necessary to their recovery, and \_the\_ retrieving

\_of\_ their affairs."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Which termination, [\_ish\_,] when

added to adjectives, imports diminution, or \_a\_ lessening of the

quality."--\_Mur. and Kirkham cor.\_ "After what \_has been\_ said, will it be

thought \_an excess of refinement\_, to suggest that the different orders are

qualified for different purposes?"--\_Kames cor.\_ "Who has nothing to think

of, but \_the\_ killing \_of\_ time."--\_West cor.\_ "It requires no nicety of

ear, as in the distinguishing of tones, or \_the\_ measuring \_of\_

time."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "The \_possessive case\_ [is that form or state of a

noun or pronoun, which] denotes possession, or \_the relation of

property\_."--\_S. R. Hall cor.\_

UNDER NOTE XIII.--PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

"Garcilasso was master of the language \_spoken\_ by the Incas."--\_Robertson

cor.\_ "When an interesting story is \_broken\_ off in the middle."--\_Kames

cor.\_ "Speaking of Hannibal's elephants \_driven\_ back by the enemy."--\_Id.\_

"If Du Ryer had not \_written\_ for bread, he would have equalled

them."--\_Formey cor.\_ "Pope describes a rock \_broken\_ off from a mountain,

and hurling to the plain."--\_Kames cor.\_ "I have written, Thou hast

written, He hath or has written; &c."--\_Ash and Maltby cor.\_ "This was

\_spoken\_ by a pagan."--\_Webster cor.\_ "But I have \_chosen\_ to follow the

common arrangement."--\_Id.\_ "The language \_spoken\_ in Bengal."--\_Id.\_ "And

sound sleep thus \_broken\_ off with \_sudden\_ alarms, is apt enough to

discompose any one."--\_Locke cor.\_ "This is not only the case of those open

sinners before \_spoken\_ of."--\_Leslie cor.\_ "Some grammarians have written

a very perplexed and difficult doctrine on Punctuation."--\_Ensell cor.\_

"There hath a pity \_arisen\_ in me towards thee."--\_G. Fox Jun. cor.\_ "Abel

is the only man that has \_undergone\_ the awful change of death."--\_De

Genlis, Death of Adam\_.

"Meantime, on Afric's glowing sands,

\_Smit\_ with keen heat, the traveller stands."--\_Ode cor.\_

CHAPTER VIII.--ADVERBS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE XXI.

UNDER NOTE I.--THE PLACING OF ADVERBS.

"\_Not\_ all that is favoured by good use, is proper to be retained."--\_L.

Murray corrected.\_ "\_Not\_ everything favoured by good use, is on that

account worthy to be retained."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Most men dream, but \_not\_

all."--\_Beattie cor.\_ "By hasty composition, we shall \_certainly\_ acquire a

very bad style."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The comparisons are short, touching on

\_only\_ one point of resemblance."--\_Id.\_ "Having \_once\_ had some

considerable object set before us."--\_Id.\_ "The positive seems to be

\_improperly\_ called a degree." [543]--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "In some

phrases, the genitive \_only\_ is used."--\_Iid.\_ "This blunder is said to

have \_actually\_ occurred."--\_Smith cor.\_ "But \_not\_ every man is called

James, nor every woman, Mary."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Crotchets are employed for

\_nearly\_ the same purpose as the parenthesis."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "There is

a \_still\_ greater impropriety in a double comparative."--\_Priestley cor.\_

"We often have occasion to speak of time."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "The following

sentence cannot \_possibly\_ be understood."--\_Id.\_ "The words must

\_generally\_ be separated from the context."--\_Comly cor.\_ "Words ending in

\_ator, generally\_ have the accent on the penultimate."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "The

learned languages, with respect to voices, moods, and tenses, are, in

general, constructed \_differently\_ from the English tongue."--\_Id.\_

"Adverbs seem to have been \_originally\_ contrived to express compendiously,

in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more."--\_Id.\_ "But it

is so, \_only\_ when the expression can be converted into the regular form of

the possessive case."--\_Id.\_ "'Enter \_boldly\_,' says he, 'for here too

there are gods.'"--\_Harris cor.\_ "For none \_ever\_ work for so little a

pittance that some cannot be found to work for less."--\_Sedgwick cor.\_ "For

sinners also lend to sinners, to receive \_again\_ as much."--\_Bible cor.\_

Or, as Campbell has it in his version:--"\_that they may\_ receive as much

\_in return\_."--\_Luke\_, vi, 34. "They must be viewed in \_exactly\_ the same

light."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "If he \_speaks but\_ to display his abilities, he

is unworthy of attention."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--ADVERBS FOR ADJECTIVES.

"\_Upward\_ motion is commonly more agreeable than motion \_downward\_."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "There are but two \_possible\_ ways of justification before

God."--\_Cox cor.\_ "This construction sounds rather \_harsh\_."--\_Mur. and

Ing. cor.\_ "A clear conception, in the mind of the learner, of \_regular\_

and well-formed letters."--\_C. S. Jour. cor.\_ "He was a great hearer of \* \*

\* Attalus, Sotion, Papirius, Fabianus, of whom he makes \_frequent\_

mention."--\_L'Estrange cor.\_ "It is only the \_frequent\_ doing of a thing,

that makes it a custom."--\_Leslie cor.\_ "Because W. R. takes \_frequent\_

occasion to insinuate his jealousies of persons and things."--\_Barclay

cor.\_ "Yet \_frequent\_ touching will wear gold."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Uneducated

persons frequently use an \_adverb\_ when they ought to use an \_adjective\_:

as, 'The country looks \_beautifully\_;' in stead of \_beautiful\_." [544]--

\_Bucke cor.\_ "The adjective is put \_absolute\_, or without its

substantive."--\_Ash cor.\_ "A noun or \_a\_ pronoun in the second person, may

be put \_absolute\_ in the nominative case."--\_Harrison cor.\_ "A noun or \_a\_

pronoun, when put \_absolute\_ with a participle," &c.--\_Id. and Jaudon cor.\_

"A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands \_independent\_ of the

remaining part of the sentence."--\_Wilbur and Liv. cor.\_ "At my \_late\_

return into England, I met a book \_entitled\_, 'The Iron Age.'"--\_Cowley

cor.\_ "But he can discover no better foundation for any of them, than the

\_mere\_ practice of Homer and Virgil."--\_Kames cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--HERE FOR HITHER, &C.

"It is reported, that the \_governor\_ will come \_hither\_

to-morrow."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "It has been reported that the \_governor\_ will

come \_hither\_ to-morrow."--\_Id.\_ "To catch a prospect of that lovely land

\_whither\_ his steps are tending."--\_Maturin cor.\_ "Plautus makes one of his

characters ask \_an other, whither\_ he is going with that Vulcan shut up in

a horn; that is, with a \_lantern\_ in his hand."--\_Adams cor.\_ "When we left

Cambridge we intended to return \_thither\_ in a few days."--\_Anon. cor.\_

"Duncan comes \_hither\_ to-night."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 323. "They

talked of returning \_hither\_ last week."--See \_J. M. Putnam's Gram.\_, p.

129.

UNDER NOTE IV.--FROM HENCE, &C.

"Hence he concludes, that no inference can be drawn from the meaning of the

word, that a \_constitution\_ has a higher authority than a law or

statute,"--\_Webster cor.\_ "Whence we may likewise date the period of this

event."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Hence it becomes evident that LANGUAGE, taken in

the most comprehensive view, implies certain sounds, [or certain written

signs,] having certain meanings."--\_Harris cor.\_ "They returned to the city

whence they came out."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "Respecting ellipses, some

grammarians differ strangely in their ideas; and thence has arisen a very

whimsical diversity in their systems of grammar."--\_G. Brown\_. "What am I,

and whence? That is, What am I, and whence \_am I\_?"--\_Jaudon cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--THE ADVERB HOW.

"It is strange, \_that\_ a writer so accurate as Dean Swift, should have

stumbled on so improper an application of this particle."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Ye know, \_that\_ a good while ago God made choice among us," &c.--\_Bible

cor.\_ "Let us take care \_lest\_ we sin; i.e.,--\_that\_ we \_do not\_

sin."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "We see by these instances, \_that\_ prepositions may

be necessary, to connect \_such\_ words \_as\_ are not naturally connected \_by\_

their \_own\_ signification."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Know ye not your own selves,

\_that\_ Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?"--\_Bible cor.\_

"That thou \_mayst\_ know \_that\_ the earth is the Lord's."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--WHEN, WHILE, OR WHERE.

"ELLIPSIS is \_the omission of some word or\_ words \_which are necessary to

complete the construction, but not\_ requisite to complete the

sense."--\_Adam, Gould, and Fisk, cor.\_ "PLEONASM is \_the insertion of some

word or words\_ more than \_are\_ absolutely necessary \_either to complete the

construction, or\_ to express the sense."--\_Iid. cor.\_ "HYSTERON-PROTERON is

a \_figure in which\_ that is put in the former part of the sentence, which,

according to the sense, should be in the latter."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_

"HYSTERON-PROTERON is a rhetorical figure \_in which\_ that is said last,

which was done first."--\_Webster cor.\_ "A BARBARISM is a foreign or strange

word, \_an expression contrary to the pure idiom of the language\_."--\_Adam

and Gould cor.\_ "A SOLECISM is \_an impropriety in respect to\_ syntax, \_an

absurdity or incongruity in speech\_."--\_Iid. cor.\_ "An IDIOTISM is \_a\_

manner of expression peculiar to one language \_childishly transferred to an

other\_."--\_Iid. cor.\_ "TAUTOLOGY is \_a disagreeable repetition\_, either

\_of\_ the same words, or \_of\_ the same sense in different words."--\_Iid.

cor.\_ "BOMBAST, \_or\_ FUSTIAN, is \_an inflated or ambitious style, in which

high-sounding\_ words are used, \_with little or no\_ meaning, or upon a

trifling occasion."--\_Iid. cor.\_ "AMPHIBOLOGY is ambiguity of construction,

\_phraseology which\_ may be taken in two different senses."--\_Iid. cor.\_

"IRONY is \_a figure in which\_ one means the contrary of what is

said."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "PERIPHRASIS, \_or\_ CIRCUMLOCUTION, is \_the

use of\_ several words, to express what might be \_said\_ in fewer."--\_Iid.

cor.\_ "HYPERBOLE is \_a figure in which\_ a thing is magnified above the

truth."--\_Iid. cor.\_ "PERSONIFICATION is \_a figure which ascribes human\_

life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract

qualities."--\_Iid. cor.\_ "APOSTROPHE is a \_turning from the tenor of one's\_

discourse, \_into an animated address\_ to some person, present or absent,

living or dead, or \_to some object personified\_."--\_Iid. cor.\_ "A SIMILE is

\_a simple and express comparison; and is generally introduced by\_ LIKE, AS,

\_or\_ so."--\_G. B., Inst.\_, p. 233; Kirkham cor.; also Adam and Gould.

"ANTITHESIS is a placing of things in opposition, to heighten their effect

by contrast."--\_Inst.\_, p. 234; \_Adam and Gould corrected\_. "VISION, or

IMAGERY, \_is a figure in which what is present only to the mind, is

represented as actually before one's eyes, and present\_ to the

senses."--\_G. B.; Adam cor.\_ "EMPHASIS is a particular stress \_of voice\_

laid on some word in a sentence."--\_Gould's Adam's Gram.\_, p. 241.

"EPANORTHOSIS, or CORRECTION, is \_the recalling or correcting by the

speaker\_, of what he last said."--\_Ibid.\_ "PARALIPSIS, or OMISSION, is \_the

pretending\_ to omit or pass by, what one at the same time

declares."--\_Ibid.\_ "INCREMENTUM, or CLIMAX in sense, is the \_rising\_ of

one member above an other to the highest."--\_Ibid.\_ "METONYMY is \_a change

of names: as when\_ the cause is \_mentioned\_ for the effect, or the effect

for the cause; the container for the thing contained, or the sign for the

thing signified."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "\_The\_ Agreement \_of words\_ is \_their

similarity\_ in person, number, gender, case, \_mood, tense, or

form\_."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 104. "\_The\_ Government \_of words is that power

which one\_ word has \_over an other, to cause it to assume some particular

modification\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Fusion is \_the converting of\_ some solid substance

into a fluid by heat."--\_G. B\_. "A proper diphthong is \_a diphthong in

which\_ both the vowels are sounded together; as, \_oi\_ in \_voice, ou\_ in

\_house\_."--\_Fisher cor.\_ "An improper diphthong is \_a diphthong in which\_

the sound of but one of the two vowels is heard; as, \_eo\_ in

\_people\_."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--THE ADVERB NO FOR NOT.

"An adverb is \_added\_ to a verb to show how, or when, or where, or whether

or \_not\_, one is, does, or suffers."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "We must be immortal,

whether we will or \_not\_."--\_Maturin cor.\_ "He cares not whether the world

was made for Cæsar or \_not\_."--\_A. Q. Rev. cor.\_ "I do not know whether

they are out or \_not\_."--\_Byron cor.\_ "Whether it can be proved or \_not\_,

is not the thing."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Whether he makes use of the means

commanded by God, or \_not\_."--\_Id.\_ "Whether it pleases the world or \_not\_,

the care is taken."--\_L'Estrange cor.\_ "How comes this to be never heard

of, nor in the least questioned, whether the Law was undoubtedly of Moses's

writing or \_not\_?"--\_Tomline cor.\_ "Whether he be a sinner or \_not\_, I \_do

not know\_." Or, as the text is more literally translated by Campbell:

"Whether he be a sinner, I know not."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Can I make men live,

whether they will or \_not\_?"--\_Shak. cor.\_

"Can hearts not free, be \_tried\_ whether they serve

Willing or \_not\_, who will but what they must?"--\_Milton cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--OF DOUBLE NEGATIVES.

"We need not, nor do \_we\_, confine the purposes of God." Or: "We need not,

\_and\_ do not, confine," &c.--\_Bentley cor.\_ "I cannot by \_any\_ means allow

him that."--\_Id.\_ "We must try whether or \_not\_ we \_can\_ increase the

attention by the help of the senses."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "There is nothing

more admirable \_or\_ more useful."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "And what in time to come

he can never be said to have done, he can never be supposed to do."--\_R.

Johnson cor.\_ "No skill could obviate, no remedy dispel, the terrible

infection."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Prudery cannot be an indication \_either\_ of

sense \_or\_ of taste."--\_Spurzheim cor.\_ "But \_neither\_ that scripture, nor

\_any\_ other, speaks of imperfect faith."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "But \_neither\_

this scripture, nor \_any\_ other, proves that faith was or is always

accompanied with doubting."--\_Id.\_ "The light of Christ is not, \_and\_

cannot be, darkness."--\_Id.\_ "Doth not the Scripture, which cannot lie,

give \_some\_ of the saints this testimony?"--\_Id.\_ "Which do not continue,

\_and\_ are not binding."--\_Id.\_ "It not being perceived directly, \_any\_ more

than the air."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Let us be no Stoics, \_and\_ no stocks, I

pray."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Where there is no marked \_or\_ peculiar character in

the style."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "There can be no rules laid down, nor \_any\_

manner recommended."--\_Sheridan cor.\_

"\_Bates\_. 'He hath not told his thought to the king?'

\_K. Henry\_. 'No; \_and\_ it is not meet he should.'"

Or thus: "'No; nor \_is it\_ meet he should.'"--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IX.--EVER AND NEVER.

"The prayer of Christ is more than sufficient both to strengthen us, be we

\_everso\_ weak; and to overthrow all adversary power, be it \_everso\_

strong."--\_Hooker cor.\_ "He is like to have no share in it, or to be

\_never\_ the better for it." Or: "He is \_not likely\_ to have any share in

it, or to be \_ever\_ the better for it."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "In some parts of

Chili it seldom or \_never\_ rains."--\_Willetts cor.\_ "If Pompey shall but

\_everso\_ little seem to like it."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "Though \_everso\_ great

a posse of dogs and hunters pursue him."--\_Id.\_ "Though you be \_everso\_

excellent."--\_Id.\_ "If you do amiss \_everso\_ little."--\_Id.\_ "If we cast

our eyes \_everso\_ little down."--\_Id.\_ "A wise man scorneth nothing, be it

\_everso\_ small or homely."--\_M. F. Tupper cor.\_ "Because they have seldom

\_if\_ ever an opportunity of learning them at all."--\_Clarkson cor.\_ "We

seldom or \_never\_ see those forsaken who trust in God."--\_Atterbury cor.\_

"Where, playing with him at bo-peep,

He solved all problems, \_e'erso\_ deep."--\_S. Butler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE X.--OF THE FORM OF ADVERBS.

"One can \_scarcely\_ think that Pope was capable of epic or tragic poetry;

but, within a certain limited region, he has been outdone by no

poet."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "I who now read, have \_nearly\_ finished this

chapter."--\_Harris cor.\_ "And yet, to refine our taste with respect to

beauties of art or of nature, is \_scarcely\_ endeavoured in any seminary of

learning."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The numbers being confounded, and the possessives

\_wrongly\_ applied, the passage is neither English nor grammar."--\_Buchanan

cor.\_ "The letter G is \_wrongly\_ named \_Jee\_."--\_Creighton cor.\_ "\_Lastly\_,

remember that in science, as in morals, authority cannot make right what in

itself is wrong."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "They regulate our taste even where

we are \_scarcely\_ sensible of them."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Slow action, for

example, is imitated by words pronounced \_slowly\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Surely\_, if it

be to profit withal, it must be in order to save."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Which

is \_scarcely\_ possible at best."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "Our wealth being

\_nearly\_ finished."--\_Harris cor.\_

CHAPTER IX.--CONJUNCTIONS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE XXII.

UNDER NOTE I.--OF TWO TERMS WITH ONE.

"The first proposal was essentially different \_from\_ the second, and

inferior \_to it.\_"--\_Inst\_. "A neuter verb \_expresses\_ the state \_which\_ a

subject is in, without acting upon \_any other thing\_, or being acted upon

by an other."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "I answer, You \_may use\_ stories and

anecdotes, and ought to \_do\_ so."--\_Todd cor.\_ "ORACLE, \_n.\_ Any person

\_from whom\_, or place \_at which\_, certain decisions are

obtained."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Forms of government may, and \_occasionally

must, be\_ changed."--\_Lyttelton cor.\_ "I have \_been\_, and \_I still\_ pretend

to be, a tolerable judge."--\_Sped. cor.\_ "Are we not lazy in our duties, or

\_do we not\_ make a Christ of them?"--\_Baxter cor.\_ "They may not express

that idea which the author intends, but some other which only resembles

\_it\_, or is \_akin\_ to it."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "We may \_therefore read them\_,

we ought to read them, with a distinguishing eye."--\_Ib.\_ "Compare their

poverty with what they might \_possess\_, and ought to possess."--\_Sedgwick

cor.\_ "He is much better \_acquainted with grammar\_ than they are."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "He was more beloved \_than Cinthio\_, but [he was] not so much

admired."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, i, 222. "Will it be urged, that the four

gospels are as old \_as tradition, and even\_ older?"--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p.

207. "The court of chancery frequently mitigates and \_disarms\_ the common

law."--\_Spect. and Ware cor.\_ "Antony, coming along side of her ship,

entered it without seeing \_her\_, or being seen by her."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_

"\_Into\_ candid minds, truth \_enters as\_ a welcome \_guest\_."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "\_There are\_ many designs \_in which\_ we may succeed, \_to our ultimate

ruin\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_From\_ many pursuits \_in which\_ we embark with pleasure,

\_we are destined to\_ land sorrowfully."--\_Id.\_ "They \_gain\_ much \_more\_

than I, by this unexpected event."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--OF HETEROGENEOUS TERMS.

"Athens saw them entering her gates and \_filling\_ her

academies."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "\_Neither\_ have we forgot his past

\_achievements\_, nor \_do we\_ despair of his future success."--\_Duncan cor.\_

"Her monuments and temples had long been shattered, or \_had\_ crumbled into

dust."--\_Journal cor.\_ "Competition is excellent; \_it is\_ the vital

principle in all these things."--\_Id.\_ "Whether provision should, or

\_should\_ not, be made, \_in order\_ to meet this exigency."--\_Ib.\_. "That our

Saviour was divinely inspired, and \_that he was\_ endued with supernatural

powers, are positions that are here taken for granted."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "It

would be much more eligible, to contract or enlarge their extent by

explanatory notes and observations, than \_to sweep\_ away our ancient

landmarks and \_set\_ up others."--\_Id.\_ "It is certainly much better to

supply defects and abridge superfluities by occasional notes and

observations, than \_to disorganize\_ or \_greatly alter\_ a system which has

been so long established."--\_Id.\_ "To have only one tune, or measure, is

not much better than \_to have\_ none at all."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Facts too

well known and \_too\_ obvious to be insisted on."--\_Id.\_ "In proportion as

all these circumstances are happily chosen, and \_are\_ of a sublime

kind."--\_Id.\_ "If the description be too general, and \_be\_ divested of

circumstances."--\_Id.\_ "He gained nothing \_but commendation\_."--\_L. Mur.

cor.\_ "I cannot but think its application somewhat strained and

\_misplaced\_."--\_Vethake cor.\_ "Two negatives \_standing\_ in the same clause,

or referring to the same thing, destroy each other, and leave the sense

affirmative."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "Slates are \_thin plates of stone\_, and \_are

often\_ used to cover \_the\_ roofs of houses."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Every man of

taste, and \_of\_ an elevated mind, ought to feel almost the necessity of

apologizing for the power he possesses."--\_Translator of De Staël cor.\_

"They very seldom trouble themselves with \_inquiries\_, or \_make any\_ useful

observations of their own."--\_Locke cor.\_

"We've both the field and honour won;

\_Our foes\_ are profligate, and run."--\_S. Butler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--IMPORT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"THE is sometimes used before adverbs in the comparative \_or the\_

superlative degree."--\_Lennie, Bullions, and Brace cor.\_ "The definite

article THE is frequently applied to adverbs in the comparative \_or the\_

superlative degree."--\_Lowth. Murray, et al, cor.\_ "Conjunctions usually

connect verbs in the same mood \_and\_ tense." Or, more truly: "Verbs

connected by \_a conjunction, are\_ usually in the same mood \_and\_

tense."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "Conjunctions connect verbs in the same style, and

usually in the same mood, tense, \_and\_ form." Or better: "Verbs connected

by \_a conjunction\_, are usually \_of\_ the same mood, tense, \_and\_ form, \_as

well as\_ style."--\_Id.\_ "The ruins of Greece \_or\_ Rome are but the

monuments of her former greatness."--\_P. E. Day cor.\_ "It is not

improbably, \_that in many of these cases\_ the articles were used

originally."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "I cannot doubt that these objects are

really what they appear to be."--\_Kames cor.\_ "I question not \_that\_ my

reader will be as much pleased with it."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "It is ten to one

\_that\_ my friend Peter is among them."--\_Id.\_ "I doubt not \_that\_ such

objections as these will be made"--\_Locke cor.\_ "I doubt not \_that\_ it will

appear in the perusal of the following sheets."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "It is not

improbable, that in time these different constructions maybe appropriated

to different uses."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "But to forget \_and\_ to remember at

pleasure, are equally beyond the power of man."--\_Idler cor.\_ "The

nominative case follows the verb, in interrogative \_or\_ imperative

sentences."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "Can the fig-tree, my brethren, bear olive

berries? \_or\_ a vine, figs?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "Whose characters are too

profligate \_for\_ the managing of them \_to\_ be of any consequence."--\_Swift

cor.\_ "You, that are a step higher than a philosopher, a divine, yet have

too much grace and wit to be a bishop."--\_Pope cor.\_ "The terms \_rich and

poor\_ enter not into their language."--\_Robertson cor.\_ "This pause is but

seldom, \_if\_ ever, sufficiently dwelt upon." Or: "This pause is seldom \_or

never\_ sufficiently dwelt upon."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "There would be no

possibility of any such thing as human life \_or\_ human happiness."--\_Bp.

Butler cor.\_ "The multitude rebuked them, \_that\_ they should hold their

peace."--\_Bible cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--THE CONJUNCTION THAN.

"A metaphor is nothing \_else than\_ a short comparison." Or: "A metaphor is

nothing \_but\_ a short comparison."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "There being no

other dictator here \_than\_ use."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 364. "This

construction is no otherwise known in English, \_than\_ by supplying the

first or \_the\_ second person plural."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Cyaxares was no

sooner \_on\_ the throne, \_than\_ he was engaged in a terrible war."--\_Rollin

cor.\_ "Those classics contain little else \_than\_ histories of

murders."--\_Am. Mu. cor.\_ "Ye shall not worship any other \_than\_

God."--\_Sale cor.\_ "Their relation, therefore, is not otherwise to be

ascertained, \_than\_ by their place."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "For he no sooner

accosted her, \_than\_ he gained his point."--\_Burder cor.\_ "And all the

modern writers on this subject, have done little else \_than\_ translate

them."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "One who had no other aim \_than\_ to talk copiously

and plausibly."--\_Id.\_ "We can refer it to no other cause \_than\_ the

structure of the eye."--\_Id.\_ "No more is required \_than\_ singly an act of

vision."--\_Kames cor.\_ "We find no more in its composition, \_than\_ the

particulars now mentioned."--\_Id.\_ "\_He does not pretend\_ to say, that it

\_has\_ any other effect \_than\_ to raise surprise."--\_Id.\_ "No sooner was the

princess dead, \_than\_ he freed himself."--\_Dr. S. Johnson cor.\_ "OUGHT is

an imperfect verb, for it has no modification besides this

one."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The verb is palpably nothing else \_than\_ the

tie."--\_Neef cor.\_ "Does he mean that theism is capable of nothing else

\_than\_ of being opposed to polytheism or atheism?"--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Is it

meant that theism is capable of nothing else \_than of\_ being opposed to

polytheism or atheism?"--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "There is no other method of

teaching that of which any one is ignorant, \_than\_ by means of something

already known."--\_Ingersoll's Grammar, Titlepage: Dr. Johnson cor.\_ "O

fairest flower, no sooner blown \_than\_ blasted!"--\_Milton cor.\_

"Architecture and gardening cannot otherwise entertain the mind, than by

raising certain agreeable emotions or feelings."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Or, rather,

they are nothing else \_than\_ nouns."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_

"As if religion were intended

For nothing else than to be mended."--\_S. Butler cor.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--RELATIVES EXCLUDE CONJUNCTIONS.

"To prepare the Jews for the reception of a prophet mightier than \_himself,

a teacher\_ whose shoes he was not worthy to bear."--\_Anon, or Mur. cor.\_

"Has this word, which represents an action, an object after it, on which

\_the action\_ terminates?"--\_Osborne cor.\_ "The stores of literature lie

before him, from which he may collect for use many lessons of wisdom."--

\_Knapp cor.\_ "Many and various great advantages of this grammar \_over\_

others, might be enumerated."--\_Greenleaf cor.\_ "The custom which still

prevails, of writing in lines from left to right, is said to have been

introduced about the time of Solon, the Athenian legislator."--\_Jamieson

cor.\_ "The fundamental rule \_for\_ the construction of sentences, \_the rule\_

into which all others might be resolved, undoubtedly is, to communicate, in

the clearest and most natural order, the ideas which we mean to

\_express\_."--\_Blair and Jamieson cor.\_ "He left a son of a singular

character, who behaved so ill that he was put in prison."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"He discovered in the youth some disagreeable qualities which to him were

wholly unaccountable."--\_Id.\_ "An emphatical pause is made after something

\_of\_ peculiar moment has been said, on which we \_wish\_ to fix the hearer's

attention." Or: "An emphatical pause is made after something has been said

\_which is\_ of peculiar moment, \_and\_ on which we \_wish\_ to fix the hearer's

attention."--\_Blair and Murray cor.\_ "But we have duplicates of each,

agreeing in movement, though differing in measure, and \_making\_ different

impressions on the ear,"--\_Murray cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VI.--OF THE WORD THAT.

"It will greatly facilitate the labours of the teacher, \_and\_, at the same

time, it will relieve the pupil \_from\_ many difficulties."--\_Frost cor.\_

"\_While\_ the pupil is engaged in the exercises just mentioned, it will be

proper \_for him\_ to study the whole grammar in course."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"On the same ground \_on which\_ a participle and \_an\_ auxiliary are allowed

to form a tense."--\_Beattie and Murray cor.\_ "On the same ground \_on which\_

the voices, moods, and tenses, are admitted into the English tongue."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "The five examples last mentioned, are corrected on the same

principle that \_is applied to the errors\_ preceding \_them\_."--\_Murray and

Ingersoll cor.\_ "The brazen age began at the death of Trajan, and lasted

till Rome was taken by the Goths."--\_Gould cor.\_ "The introduction to the

duodecimo edition is retained in this volume, for the same reason \_for

which\_ the original introduction to the Grammar is retained in the first

volume."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The verb must also \_agree in person with its

subject or\_ nominative."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "The personal pronoun 'THEIR' is

plural for the same reason \_for which\_ 'WHO' is plural."--\_Id.\_ "The

Sabellians could not justly be called Patripassians, in the same sense \_in

which\_ the Noëtians were so called."--\_R. Adam cor.\_ "This is one reason

\_why\_ we pass over such smooth language without suspecting that it contains

little or no meaning."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The first place \_at which the

two\_ armies came \_within\_ sight of each other, was on the opposite banks of

the river Apsus."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "At the very time \_at which\_ the author

gave him the first book for his perusal."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Peter will sup

at the time \_at which\_ Paul will dine."--\_Fosdick cor.\_ "Peter will be

supping \_when\_ Paul will enter."--\_Id.\_ "These, \_while\_ they may serve as

models to those who may wish to imitate them, will give me an opportunity

to cast more light upon the principles of this book."--\_Id.\_

"Time was, like thee, they life \_possess'd\_,

And time shall be, \_when\_ thou shalt rest."--\_Parnell cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VII.--OF THE CORRESPONDENTS.

"Our manners should be \_neither\_ gross nor excessively refined."--\_Murray's

Key\_, ii, 165. "A neuter verb expresses neither action \_nor\_ passion, but

being, or a state of being."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "The old books are

neither English grammars, \_nor in any sense\_ grammars of the English

language."--\_Id.\_ "The author is apprehensive that his work is not yet \_so\_

accurate and \_so\_ much simplified as it may be."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The

writer could not treat some \_topics so\_ extensively as [it] was desirable

[to treat them]."--\_Id.\_ "Which would be a matter of such nicety, \_that\_ no

degree of human wisdom could regulate \_it\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "No

undertaking is so great or difficult, \_that\_ he cannot direct

\_it\_."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "It is a good which depends \_neither\_ on the will of

others, nor on the affluence of external fortune."--\_Harris cor.\_ "Not only

his estate, \_but\_ his reputation too, has suffered by his

misconduct."--\_Murray and Ingersoll cor.\_ "Neither do they extend \_so\_ far

as might be imagined at first view."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "There is no

language so poor, but \_that\_ it \_has\_ (or, \_as not to have\_) two or three

past tenses."--\_Id. "So\_ far as this system is founded in truth, language

appears to be not altogether arbitrary in its origin."--\_Id.\_ "I have not

\_such\_ command of these convulsions as is necessary." Or: "I have not

\_that\_ command of these convulsions \_which\_ is necessary."--\_Spect. cor.\_

"Conversation with such \_as\_ (or, \_those who\_) know no arts \_that\_ polish

life."--\_Id.\_ "And which cannot be \_either\_ very lively or very

forcible."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "To \_such a\_ degree as to give proper names to

rivers."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "In the utter overthrow of such \_as\_ hate to be

reformed."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "But still so much of it is retained, \_that it\_

greatly injures the uniformity of the whole."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Some of

them have gone to \_such a\_ height of extravagance, as to assert,"

&c.--\_Id.\_ "A teacher is confined, not more than a merchant, and probably

not \_so\_ much."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "It shall not be forgiven him, neither in

this world, \_nor\_ in the world to come." Or: "It shall not be forgiven him,

\_either\_ in this world, \_or\_ in the world to come."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Which

\_nobody\_ presumes, or is so sanguine \_as\_ to hope."--\_Swift cor.\_ "For the

torrent of the voice left neither time, \_nor\_ power in the organs, to shape

the words properly."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "That he may neither unnecessarily

waste his voice by throwing out too much, \_nor\_ diminish his power by using

too little."--\_Id.\_ "I have retained only such \_as\_ appear most agreeable

to the measures of analogy."--\_Littleton cor.\_ "He is a man both prudent

and industrious."--\_P. E. Day cor.\_ "Conjunctions connect either words or

sentences."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 169.

"Such silly girls \_as\_ love to chat and play,

Deserve no care; their time is thrown away."--\_Tobitt cor.\_

"Vice is a monster of so frightful mien,

\_That\_ to be hated \_she\_ but needs be seen."--\_Pope cor.\_

"Justice must punish the rebellious deed;

Yet punish so \_that\_ pity shall exceed."--\_Dryden cor.\_

UNDER NOTE VIII.--IMPROPER ELLIPSES.

"THAT, WHOSE, and AS, relate either to persons or \_to\_ things." Or

better:--"relate \_as well\_ to persons \_as to\_ things."--\_Sanborn cor.\_

"WHICH and WHAT, as adjectives, relate either to persons or \_to\_ things."

Or better:--"relate to persons \_as well as to\_ things."--\_Id.\_ "Whether of

a public or \_of a\_ private nature."--\_J. Q. Adams cor.\_ "Which are included

\_among both\_ the public and \_the\_ private wrongs."--\_Id.\_ "I might extract,

both from the Old and \_from the\_ New Testament, numberless examples of

induction."--\_Id.\_ "Many verbs are used both in an active and \_in a\_ neuter

signification." Or thus: "Many verbs are used \_in both\_ an active and \_a\_

neuter signification."--\_Lowth, Mur., et al., cor.\_ "Its influence is

likely to be considerable, both on the morals and \_on the\_ taste of a

nation."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The subject afforded a variety of scenes, both

of the awful and \_of the\_ tender kind."--\_Id.\_ "Restlessness of mind

disqualifies us both for the enjoyment of peace, and \_for\_ the performance

of our duty."--\_Mur. and Ing. cor. "Pronominal adjectives\_ are of a mixed

nature, participating the properties both of pronouns and \_of\_

adjectives."--\_Mur. et al. cor. "Pronominal adjectives\_ have the nature

both of the adjective and \_of\_ the pronoun."--\_Frost cor.\_ Or: "[Pronominal

adjectives] partake of the properties \_of both\_ adjectives \_and\_

pronouns."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 55. "Pronominal adjectives are a kind of

compound part of speech, partaking the nature both of pronouns and \_of\_

adjectives."--\_Nutting cor.\_ "Nouns are used either in the singular or \_in

the\_ plural number." Or perhaps better: "Nouns are used \_in either\_ the

singular or \_the\_ plural number."--\_David Blair cor.\_ "The question is not,

whether the nominative or \_the\_ accusative ought to follow the particles

THAN and AS; but, whether these particles are, in such particular cases, to

be regarded as conjunctions or \_as\_ prepositions"--\_Campbell cor.\_ "In

English, many verbs are used both as transitives and \_as\_

intransitives."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "He sendeth rain both on the just and \_on

the\_ unjust."--See \_Matt.\_, v, 45. "A foot consists either of two or \_of\_

three syllables."--\_David Blair cor.\_ "Because they participate the nature

both of adverbs and \_of\_ conjunctions."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Surely, Romans,

what I am now about to say, ought neither to be omitted, nor \_to\_ pass

without notice."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "Their language frequently amounts, not

only to bad sense, but \_to nonsense\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Hence arises the

necessity of a social state to man, both for the unfolding, and \_for the\_

exerting, of his nobler faculties."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "Whether the subject

be of the real or \_of the\_ feigned kind."--\_Dr. H. Blair cor.\_ "Not only

was liberty entirely extinguished, but arbitrary power \_was\_ felt in its

heaviest and most oppressive weight."--\_Id.\_ "This rule is \_also\_

applicable both to verbal Critics and \_to\_ Grammarians."--\_Hiley cor.\_

"Both the rules and \_the\_ exceptions of a language must have obtained the

sanction of good usage."--\_Id.\_

CHAPTER X.--PREPOSITIONS.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE NOTES TO RULE XXIII.

UNDER NOTE I.--CHOICE OF PREPOSITIONS.

"You have bestowed your favours \_upon\_ the most deserving persons."--\_Swift

corrected.\_ "But, to rise \_above\_ that, and overtop the crowd, is given to

few."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "This [also is a good] sentence [, and] gives

occasion \_for\_ no material remark."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 203. "Though

Cicero endeavours to give some reputation \_to\_ the elder Cato, and those

who were his \_contemporaries.\_" Or:--"to give some \_favourable account\_ of

the elder Cato," &c.--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The change that was produced \_in\_

eloquence, is beautifully described in the dialogue."--\_Id.\_ "Without

carefully attending to the variation which they make \_in\_ the idea."--\_Id.\_

"All \_on\_ a sudden, you are transported into a lofty palace."--\_Hazlitt

cor.\_ "Alike independent of one \_an other.\_" Or: "Alike independent \_one of

an other\_."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "You will not think of them as distinct

processes going on independently \_of\_ each other."--\_Channing cor.\_ "Though

we say to \_depend on, dependent on\_, and \_dependence on\_, we say,

\_independent of\_, and \_independently of.\_"--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Independently

\_of\_ the rest of the sentence."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 80; \_Buchanan's\_, 83;

\_Bullions's\_, 110; \_Churchill's\_, 348.[545] "Because they stand independent

\_of\_ the rest of the sentence."--\_Allen Fisk cor.\_ "When a substantive is

joined with a participle, in English, independently \_of\_ the rest of the

sentence."--\_Dr. Adam cor.\_ "CONJUNCTION comes \_from\_ the two Latin words

\_con\_, together, and \_jungo\_, to join."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "How different

\_from\_ this is the life of Fulvia!"--\_Addison cor.\_ "LOVED is a participle

or adjective, derived \_from\_ the word \_love\_."--\_Ash cor.\_ "But I would

inquire \_of\_ him, what an office is."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For the capacity is

brought \_into\_ action."--\_Id.\_ "In this period, language and taste arrive

\_at\_ purity."--\_Webster cor.\_ "And, should you not aspire \_to\_ (or \_after\_)

distinction in the \_republic\_ of letters."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Delivering you

up to the synagogues, and \_into\_ prisons."--\_Luke\_, xxi, 12. "\_He\_ that is

kept from falling \_into\_ a ditch, is as truly saved, as he that is taken

out of one."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "The best \_of\_ it is, they are but a sort of

French Hugonots."--\_Addison cor.\_ "These last ten examples are indeed of a

different nature \_from\_ the former."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "For the initiation

of students \_into\_ the principles of the English language."--\_Ann. Rev.

cor.\_ "Richelieu profited \_by\_ every circumstance which the conjuncture

afforded."--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "In the names of drugs and plants, the

mistake \_of\_ a word may endanger life."--\_Merchant's Key\_, p. 185. Or

better: "In \_naming\_ drugs \_or\_ plants, \_to mistake\_ a word, may endanger

life."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "In order to the carrying \_of\_ its several parts

into execution."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "His abhorrence \_of\_ the superstitious

figure."--\_Priestley.\_ "Thy prejudice \_against\_ my cause."--\_Id.\_ "Which is

found \_in\_ every species of liberty."--\_Hume cor.\_ "In a hilly region \_on\_

the north of Jericho."--\_Milman cor.\_ "Two or more singular nouns coupled

\_by\_ AND require a verb \_or\_ pronoun in the plural."--\_Lennie cor.\_

"Books should to one of these four ends conduce,

\_To\_ wisdom, piety, delight, or use."--\_Denham cor.\_

UNDER NOTE II.--TWO OBJECTS OR MORE.

"The Anglo-Saxons, however, soon quarrelled \_among\_ themselves for

precedence."--\_Const. Misc. cor.\_ "The distinctions \_among\_ the principal

parts of speech are founded in nature."--\_Webster cor.\_ "I think I now

understand the difference between the active verbs and those \_which are\_

passive \_or\_ neuter."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "Thus a figure including a space

\_within\_ three lines, is the real as well as nominal essence of a

triangle."--\_Locke cor.\_ "We must distinguish between an imperfect phrase

\_and\_ a simple sentence, \_and between a simple sentence\_ and a compound

sentence."--\_Lowth, Murray, et al., cor.\_ "The Jews are strictly forbidden

by their law to exercise usury \_towards one an\_ other."--\_Sale cor.\_ "All

the writers have distinguished themselves among \_themselves\_."--\_Addison

cor.\_ "This expression also better secures the systematic uniformity \_of\_

the three cases."--\_Nutting cor.\_ "When two or more \_infinitives\_ or

clauses \_are connected disjunctively as the subjects of an affirmation\_,

the verb must be singular."--\_Jaudon cor.\_ "Several nouns or pronouns

together in the same case, require a comma \_after\_ each; [except the last,

which must sometimes be followed by a greater point.]"--\_David Blair cor.\_

"The difference between \_one vowel and an other\_ is produced by opening the

mouth differently, and placing the tongue in a different manner for

each."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "Thus feet composed of syllables, being pronounced

with a sensible interval between \_one foot and an other\_, make a more

lively impression than can be made by a continued sound."--\_Kames cor.\_

"The superlative degree implies a comparison, \_sometimes\_ between \_two, but

generally among\_ three or more."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "They are used to mark

a distinction \_among\_ several objects."--\_Lévizac cor.\_

UNDER NOTE III.--OMISSION OF PREPOSITIONS.

"This would have been less worthy \_of\_ notice."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "But I

passed it, as a thing unworthy \_of\_ my notice."--\_Werter cor.\_ "Which, in

compliment to me, perhaps you may one day think worthy \_of\_ your

attention."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "To think this small present worthy \_of\_ an

introduction to the young ladies of your very elegant establishment."--

\_Id.\_ "There are but a few miles \_of\_ portage."--\_Jefferson cor.\_ "It is

worthy \_of\_ notice, that our mountains are not solitary."--\_Id.\_ "It is

\_about\_ one hundred feet \_in\_ diameter." [546]--\_Id.\_ "Entering a hill a

quarter or half \_of\_ a mile."--\_Id.\_ "And herself seems passing to \_an\_

awful dissolution, whose issue \_it\_ is not given \_to\_ human foresight to

scan."--\_Id.\_ "It was of a spheroidical form, \_about\_ forty feet \_in\_

diameter at the base, and had been \_about\_ twelve feet \_in\_

altitude."--\_Id.\_ "Before this, it was covered with trees of twelve inches

\_in\_ diameter; and, round the base, \_there\_ was an excavation of five feet

\_in\_ depth and \_five in\_ width."--\_Id.\_ "Then thou \_mayst\_ eat grapes \_to\_

thy fill, at thine own pleasure."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Then he brought me back

\_by\_ the way of the gate of the outward sanctuary."--\_Id.\_ "They will bless

God, that he has peopled one half \_of\_ the world with a race of

freemen."--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Of\_ what use can these words be, till their

meaning is known?"--\_Town cor.\_ "The tents of the Arabs now are black, or

\_of\_ a very dark colour."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "They may not be unworthy \_of\_

the attention of young men."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The pronoun THAT is

frequently applied to persons as well as \_to\_ things."--\_Merchant cor.\_

"And '\_who\_' is in the same case that '\_man\_' is \_in\_."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "He

saw a flaming stone, apparently about four feet \_in\_ diameter."--\_The

Friend cor.\_ "Pliny informs us, that this stone was \_of\_ the size of a

cart."--\_Id.\_ "Seneca was about twenty years of age in the fifth year of

Tiberius, when the Jews were expelled \_from\_ Rome."--\_L'Estrange cor.\_ "I

was prevented \_from\_ reading a letter which would have undeceived

me."--\_Hawkesworth cor.\_ "If the problem can be solved, we may be pardoned

\_for\_ the inaccuracy of its demonstration."--\_Booth cor.\_ "The army must of

necessity be the school, not of honour, but \_of\_ effeminacy."--\_Dr. Brown

cor.\_ "Afraid of the virtue of a nation in its opposing \_of\_ bad measures:"

or,--"in its \_opposition to\_ bad measures."--\_Id.\_ "The uniting \_of\_ them

in various ways, so as to form words, would be easy."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "I

might be excused \_from\_ taking any more notice of it."--\_Watson cor.\_

"Watch therefore; for ye know not \_at\_ what hour your Lord \_will\_

come."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Here, not even infants were spared \_from\_ the

sword."--\_M'Ilvaine cor.\_ "To prevent men \_from\_ turning aside to \_false\_

modes of worship."--\_John Allen cor.\_ "God expelled them \_from\_ the garden

of Eden."--\_Burder cor.\_ "Nor could he refrain \_from\_ expressing to the

senate the agonies of his mind."--\_Hume cor.\_ "Who now so strenuously

opposes the granting \_to\_ him \_of\_ any new powers."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "That

the laws of the censors have banished him \_from\_ the forum."--\_Id.\_ "We

read not that he was degraded \_from\_ his office \_in\_ any other

way."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "To all \_to\_ whom these presents shall come,

greeting."--\_Hutchinson cor.\_ "On the 1st \_of\_ August, 1834."--\_Brit. Parl.

cor.\_

"Whether you had not some time in your life

Err'd in this point \_on\_ which you censure him."--\_Shak. cor.\_

UNDER NOTE IV.--OF NEEDLESS PREPOSITIONS.

"And the apostles and elders came together to consider this

matter."--\_Barclay cor.\_; also \_Acts\_. "Adjectives, in our language, have

neither case, \_nor\_ gender, nor number; the only variation they have, is

comparison."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "'It is to you that I am indebted for this

privilege;' that is, 'To you am I indebted;' or, 'It is you to whom I am

indebted.'"--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "BOOKS is a \_common\_ noun, of the third person,

plural number, \_and\_ neuter gender."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "BROTHER'S is a

common \_noun\_, of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and

possessive case."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "VIRTUE'S is a common \_noun\_, of the

third person, singular number, [neuter gender,] and possessive

case."--\_Id.\_ "When the authorities on one side greatly preponderate, it is

vain to oppose the prevailing usage."--\_Campbell and Murray cor.\_ "A

captain of a troop of banditti, had a mind to be plundering

Rome."--\_Collier cor.\_ "And, notwithstanding its verbal power, we have

added the TO and other signs of exertion."--\_Booth cor.\_ "Some of these

situations are termed CASES, and are expressed by additions to the noun,

\_in stead of\_ separate words:" or,--"\_and not by\_ separate words."--\_Id.\_

"Is it such a fast that I have chosen, that a man should afflict his soul

for a day, and bow down his head like a bulrush?"--\_Bacon cor.\_ Compare

\_Isa.\_, lviii, 5. "And this first emotion comes at last to be awakened by

the accidental \_in stead of\_ the necessary antecedent."--\_Wayland cor.\_

"About the same time, the subjugation of the Moors was completed."--\_Balbi

cor.\_ "God divided between the light and the darkness."--\_Burder cor.\_

"Notwithstanding this, we are not against outward significations of

honour."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Whether these words and practices of Job's

friends, \_ought\_ to be our rule."--\_Id.\_ "Such verb cannot admit an

objective case after it."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "For which, God is now visibly

punishing these nations."--\_C. Leslie cor.\_ "In this respect, Tasso yields

to no poet, except Homer."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Notwithstanding the numerous

panegyrics on the ancient English liberty."--\_Hume cor.\_ "Their efforts

seemed to anticipate the spirit which became so general afterwards."--\_Id.\_

UNDER NOTE V.--THE PLACING OF THE WORDS.

"But how short \_of\_ its excellency are my expressions!"--\_Baxter cor.\_

"\_In\_ his style, there is a remarkable union \_of\_ harmony with ease."--\_Dr.

H. Blair cor.\_ "It disposes \_of\_ the light and shade \_in\_ the most

artificial manner, \_that\_ every thing \_may be viewed\_ to the best

advantage."--\_Id.\_ "\_For\_ brevity, Aristotle too holds an eminent rank

among didactic writers."--\_Id.\_ "In an introduction, correctness \_of\_

expression should be carefully studied."--\_Id.\_ "\_In\_ laying down a method,

\_one ought\_ above all things \_to study\_ precision."--\_Id.\_ "Which shall

make \_on\_ the mind the impression \_of\_ something that is one, whole, and

entire."--\_Id.\_ "At the same time, there are \_in\_ the Odyssey some defects

which must be acknowledged." Or: "At the same time, \_it\_ must be

acknowledged \_that\_ there are some defects in the Odyssey."--\_Id.\_ "\_In\_

the concluding books, however, there are beauties \_of\_ the tragic

kind."--\_Id.\_ "These forms of conversation multiplied \_by\_ degrees, and

grew troublesome."--\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, ii, 44. "When she has made her

own choice, she sends, \_for\_ form's sake, a congé-d'élire to her

friends."--\_Ib.\_, ii, 46. "Let us endeavour to establish to ourselves an

interest in him who holds \_in\_ his hand the reins of the whole

creation."--\_Spectator cor.\_; also \_Kames\_. "Next to this, the measure most

frequent \_in\_ English poetry, is that of eight syllables."--\_David Blair

cor.\_ "To introduce as great a variety \_of\_ cadences as possible."--

\_Jamieson cor.\_ "He addressed \_to\_ them several exhortations, suitable to

their circumstances."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Habits \_of\_ temperance and

self-denial must be acquired."--\_Id.\_ "In reducing \_to\_ practice the rules

prescribed."--\_Id.\_ "But these parts must be so closely bound together, as

to make \_upon\_ the mind the impression \_of\_ one object, not of

many."--\_Blair and Mur. cor.\_ "Errors \_with\_ respect to the use of \_shall\_

and \_will\_, are sometimes committed by the most distinguished

writers."--\_N. Butler cor.\_

CHAPTER XI.--PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

CORRECTIONS OF THE PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

LESSON I.--ANY PARTS OF SPEECH.

"Such \_a\_ one, I believe, yours will be proved to be."--\_Peet and Farnum

cor.\_ "Of the distinction between the imperfect and the perfect \_tense\_, it

may be observed," &c.--\_L. Ainsworth cor.\_ "The subject is certainly worthy

\_of\_ consideration."--\_Id.\_ "By this means, all ambiguity and controversy

\_on this point are avoided\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The perfect participle, in

English, has both an active and \_a\_ passive signification." Better: "The

perfect participle, in English, has \_sometimes\_ an active, and \_sometimes\_

a passive, signification."--\_Id.\_ "The old house \_has\_ at length fallen

down."--\_Id.\_ "The king, the lords, and \_the\_ commons, constitute the

English form of government."--\_Id.\_ "The verb in the singular agrees with

the person next \_to\_ it." Better: "The singular verb agrees \_in\_ person

with \_that nominative which is\_ next \_to\_ it."--\_Id.\_ "Jane found Seth's

gloves in \_James's\_ hat."--\_O. C. Felton cor.\_ "\_Charles's\_ task is too

great."--\_Id.\_ "The conjugation of a verb is the naming \_of\_ its several

\_moods\_, tenses, numbers, and persons, \_in regular order\_."--\_Id.\_ "The

\_long-remembered\_ beggar was his guest."--\_Id.\_ "Participles refer to nouns

\_or\_ pronouns."--\_Id.\_ "F has \_a\_ uniform sound, in every position, except

in OF." Better: "F has \_one unvaried\_ sound, in every position, except in

OF."--\_E. J. Hallock cor.\_ "There are three genders; the masculine, the

feminine, and \_the\_ neuter."--\_Id.\_ "When SO \_and\_ THAT occur together,

sometimes the particle SO is taken as an adverb."--\_Id.\_ "The definition of

the articles \_shows\_ that they modify [the import of] the words to which

they belong."--\_Id.\_ "The \_auxiliary\_, SHALL, WILL, or SHOULD, is

implied."--\_Id. "Single-rhymed\_ trochaic omits the final short

syllable."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 237. "\_Agreeably\_ to this, we read of names

being blotted out of God's book."--\_Burder, Hallock, and Webster, cor.\_

"The first person is \_that which denotes the speaker\_."--\_Inst.\_, p. 32.

"Accent is the laying \_of\_ a peculiar stress of the voice, on a certain

letter or syllable in a word."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 235; \_Felton's\_,

134. "\_Thomas's\_ horse was caught."--\_Felton cor.\_ "You \_were\_

loved."--\_Id.\_ "The nominative and \_the\_ objective end \_alike\_."--\_T. Smith

cor.\_ "The \_numbers\_ of pronouns, like those of substantives, are two; the

singular and the plural."--\_Id.\_ "\_I\_ is called the pronoun of the first

person, \_because it represents\_ the person speaking."--\_Frost cor.\_ "The

essential elements of the phrase \_are\_ an intransitive gerundive and an

adjective."--\_Hazen cor.\_ "\_Wealth\_ is no justification for such

impudence."--\_Id.\_ "\_That he was\_ a soldier in the revolution, is not

doubted."--\_Id.\_ "\_Fishing\_ is the chief employment of the

inhabitants."--\_Id.\_ "The chief employment of the inhabitants, is \_the\_

catching \_of\_ fish."--\_Id.\_ "The cold weather did not prevent the \_work

from\_ being finished at the time specified."--\_Id.\_ "The \_man's\_ former

viciousness caused \_him to be\_ suspected of this crime."--\_Id.\_ "But person

and number, applied to verbs, \_mean\_ certain terminations."--\_Barrett cor.\_

"Robert \_felled\_ a tree."--\_Id.\_ "Charles raised \_himself\_ up."--\_Id.\_ "It

might not be \_a\_ useless waste of time."--\_Id.\_ "Neither will you have that

implicit faith in the writings and works of others, which \_characterizes\_

the vulgar."--\_Id.\_ "\_I\_ is \_of\_ the first person, because it denotes the

speaker."--\_Ib.\_ "I would refer the student to \_Hedge's\_ or \_Watts's\_

Logic."--\_Id.\_ "Hedge's \_Watts's\_, Kirwin's, and Collard's Logic."--\_Parker

and Fox cor.\_ "Letters \_that\_ make a full and perfect sound of themselves,

are called vowels." Or: "\_The\_ letters \_which\_ make," &c.--\_Cutler cor.\_

"It has both a singular and \_a\_ plural construction."--\_Id.\_ "For he

\_beholds\_ (or \_beholdeth\_) thy beams no more."--\_Id. Carthon.\_ "To this

sentiment the Committee \_have\_ the candour to incline, as it will appear by

their \_summing-up\_."--\_Macpherson cor.\_ "This \_reduces\_ the point at issue

to a narrow compass."--\_Id.\_ "Since the English \_set\_ foot upon the

soil."--\_Exiles cor.\_ "The arrangement of its different parts \_is\_ easily

retained by the memory."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "The words employed are the most

appropriate \_that\_ could have been selected."--\_Id.\_ "To prevent it \_from\_

launching!"--\_Id.\_ "Webster has been followed in preference to others,

where \_he\_ differs from them." Or: "\_Webster's Grammar\_ has been followed

in preference to others, where \_it\_ differs from them."--\_Frazee cor.\_

"Exclamation and interrogation are often mistaken \_the\_ one \_for the\_

other."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "When all nature is hushed in sleep, and neither

love nor guilt \_keeps its\_ vigils."--\_Felton cor.\_ Or thus:--

"When all nature's hush'd asleep.

Nor love, nor guilt, \_doth\_ vigils keep."

LESSON II.--ANY PARTS OF SPEECH.

"A \_Versifier\_ and \_a\_ Poet are two different things."--\_Brightland cor.\_

"Those qualities will arise from the \_well-expressing\_ of the

subject."--\_Id.\_ "Therefore the explanation of NETWORK is \_not noticed\_

here."--\_Mason cor.\_ "When emphasis or pathos \_is\_ necessary to be

expressed."--\_Humphrey cor.\_ "Whether this mode of punctuation is correct,

\_or\_ whether it \_is\_ proper to close the sentence with the mark of

admiration, may be made a question."--\_Id.\_ "But not every writer in those

days \_was\_ thus correct."--\_Id.\_ "The sounds of A, in English orthoepy, are

no \_fewer\_ than four."--\_Id.\_ "Our present code of rules \_is\_ thought to be

generally correct." Or: "\_The rules in\_ our present code are thought to be

generally correct."--\_Id.\_ "To prevent \_it from\_ running into \_an

other\_"--\_Id.\_ "\_Shakspeare\_, perhaps, the greatest poetical genius \_that\_

England has produced."--\_Id.\_ "This I will illustrate by example; but,

\_before doing so\_, a few preliminary remarks may be necessary."--\_Id.\_ "All

such are entitled to two accents each, and some of \_them\_ to two accents

nearly equal."--\_Id.\_ "But some cases of the kind are so plain, that no one

\_needs\_ to exercise (or, need exercise) his \_judgement\_ therein."--\_Id.\_ "I

have \_forborne\_ to use the word."--\_Id.\_ "The propositions, 'He may study,'

'He might study,' 'He could study,' \_affirm\_ an ability or power to

study."--\_E. J. Hallock cor.\_ "The divisions of the tenses \_have\_

occasioned grammarians much trouble and perplexity."--\_Id.\_ "By adopting a

familiar, inductive method of presenting this subject, \_one may render it\_

highly attractive to young learners."--\_Wells cor.\_ "The definitions and

rules of different grammarians were carefully compared with \_one an\_

other:" or--"\_one\_ with \_an\_ other."--\_Id.\_ "So as not wholly to prevent

some \_sound from\_ issuing."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "Letters of the Alphabet, not

yet \_noticed\_."--\_Id.\_ "'IT \_is sad\_,' 'IT \_is strange\_,' &c., \_seem\_ to

express only that \_the thing\_ is sad, strange, &c."--\_Well-Wishers cor.\_

"The winning is easier than the preserving \_of\_ a conquest."--\_Same\_. "The

United States \_find themselves\_ the \_owners\_ of a vast region of country at

the west."--\_H. Mann cor.\_ "One or more letters placed before a word \_are\_

a prefix."--\_S. W. Clark cor.\_ "One or more letters added to a word, \_are\_

a Suffix."--\_Id.\_ "\_Two thirds\_ of my hair \_have\_ fallen off." Or: "My hair

has, two thirds of it, fallen off."--\_Id.\_ "'Suspecting' describes \_us,

the speakers\_, by expressing, incidentally, an act of \_ours\_."--\_Id.\_

"Daniel's predictions are now \_about\_ being fulfilled." Or thus: "Daniel's

predictions are now \_receiving their fulfillment\_"--\_Id.\_ "His

\_scholarship\_ entitles him to respect."--\_Id.\_ "I doubted \_whether he had\_

been a soldier."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_ taking \_of\_ a madman's sword to prevent \_him

from\_ doing mischief, cannot be regarded as \_a robbery\_."--\_Id.\_ "I thought

it to be him; but it was not \_he\_."--\_Id.\_ "It was not \_I\_ that you

saw."--\_Id.\_ "Not to know what happened before you \_were\_ born, is always

to be a boy."--\_Id.\_ "How long \_were\_ you going? Three days."--\_Id.\_ "The

qualifying adjective is placed next \_to\_ the noun."--\_Id.\_ "All went but

\_I\_."--\_Id.\_ "This is \_a\_ parsing \_of\_ their own language, and not \_of\_ the

author's."--\_Wells cor.\_ "\_Those\_ nouns which denote males, are of the

masculine gender." Or: "Nouns \_that\_ denote males, are of the masculine

gender."--\_Wells, late Ed.\_ "\_Those\_ nouns which denote females, are of the

feminine gender." Or: "Nouns \_that\_ denote females, are of the feminine

gender."--\_Wells, late Ed.\_ "When a comparison \_among\_ more than two

objects of the same class is expressed, the superlative degree is

employed."--\_Wells cor.\_ "Where \_d\_ or \_t goes\_ before, the additional

letter \_d\_ or \_t\_, in this contracted form, \_coalesces\_ into one letter

with the radical \_d\_ or \_t\_."--\_Dr. Johnson cor.\_ "Write words which will

show what kind of \_house\_ you live in--what kind of \_book\_ you hold in your

hand--what kind of \_day\_ it is."--\_Weld cor.\_ "One word or more \_are\_ often

joined to nouns or pronouns to modify their meaning."--\_Id.\_ "\_Good\_ is an

adjective; it explains the quality or character of every person \_to whom\_,

or thing to which, it is applied." Or:--"of every person or thing \_that\_ it

is applied to."--\_Id.\_ "A great public as well as private advantage arises

from every one's devoting \_of\_ himself to that occupation which he prefers,

and for which he is specially fitted."--\_Wayland, Wells, and Weld, cor.\_

"There was a chance \_for\_ him \_to recover\_ his senses." Or: "There was a

chance \_that he might recover\_ his senses."--\_Wells and Macaulay cor.\_

"This may be known by \_the absence of\_ any connecting word immediately

preceding it."--\_Weld cor.\_ "There are irregular expressions occasionally

to be met with, which usage, or custom, rather than analogy,

\_sanctions\_."--\_Id.\_ "He added an anecdote of \_Quin\_ relieving Thomson from

prison." Or: "He added an anecdote of \_Quin\_ as relieving Thomson from

prison." Or: "He added an anecdote of Quin's relieving \_of\_ Thomson from

prison." Or better: "He \_also told how Quin relieved\_ Thomson from

prison."--\_Id.\_ "The daily labour of her hands \_procures\_ for her all that

is necessary."--\_Id.\_ "\_That it is I, should\_ make no change in your

determination."--\_Hart cor.\_ "The classification of words into what \_are\_

called the Parts of Speech."--\_Weld cor.\_ "Such licenses may be explained

\_among\_ what \_are\_ usually termed Figures."--\_Id.\_

"Liberal, not lavish, is kind Nature's \_hand\_."--\_Beattie\_.

"They fall successive, and successive \_rise\_."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON III.--ANY PARTS OF SPEECH.

"A Figure of Etymology is \_an\_ intentional deviation \_from\_ the usual form

of a word."--\_See Brown's Institutes\_, p. 229. "A Figure of Syntax is \_an\_

intentional deviation \_from\_ the usual construction of a word."--\_See

Brown's Inst.\_, p. 230. "Synecdoche is \_the naming\_ of the whole of \_any

thing\_ for a part, or a part for the whole."--\_Weld cor.\_ "Apostrophe is a

\_turning-off\_[547] from the regular course of the subject, to address some

person or thing."--\_Id.\_ "Even young pupils will perform such exercises

with surprising interest and facility, and will unconsciously gain, in a

little time, more knowledge of the structure of \_language\_, than \_they\_ can

acquire by a drilling of several years in the usual routine of

parsing."--\_Id.\_ "A few \_rules\_ of construction are employed in this

\_part\_, to guide \_the pupil\_ in the exercise of parsing."--\_Id.\_ "The name

of \_any\_ person, object, or thing, \_that\_ can be thought of, or spoken of,

is a noun."--\_Id.\_ "A dot, resembling our period, is used between every

\_two words\_, as well as at the close of \_each verse\_."--\_W. Day cor.\_

"\_The\_ casting \_of\_ types in matrices was invented by Peter Schoeffer, in

1452."--\_Id.\_ "On perusing it, he said, that, so far [\_was it\_] \_from\_

showing the prisoner's guilt [that] it positively established his

innocence."--\_Id.\_ "By printing the nominative and verb in Italic letters,

\_we shall enable\_ the reader to distinguish them at a glance."--\_Id.\_ "It

is well, no doubt, to avoid unnecessary words."--\_Id.\_ "\_I\_ meeting a

friend the other day, he said to me, 'Where are you going?'"--\_Id.\_ "To

John, apples \_were\_ first denied; then \_they were\_ promised \_to him\_; then

\_they were\_ offered \_to him\_."--\_Lennie cor.\_ "Admission was denied

\_him\_."--\_Wells cor.\_ "A pardon \_was\_ offered \_to them\_."--\_L. Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 183. "A new \_potato\_ was this day shown me."--\_Darwin,

Webster, Frazee, and Weld, cor.\_ "\_Those\_ nouns or pronouns which denote

males, are of the masculine gender."--\_S. S. Greene, cor.\_ "There are three

degrees of comparison; the positive, \_the\_ comparative, and \_the\_

superlative."--\_Id.\_ "The first two refer to direction; the third \_refers\_

to locality."--\_Id.\_ "The following are some of the verbs which take a

direct and \_an\_ indirect object."--\_Id.\_ "I was not aware \_that he was\_ the

judge of the supreme court."--\_Id.\_ "An indirect question may refer to

\_any\_ of the five elements of a declarative sentence."--\_Id.\_ "I am not

sure that he will be present."--\_Id.\_ "We left \_New York\_ on

Tuesday."--\_Id.\_ "He left \_the city\_, as he told me, before the arrival of

the steamer."--\_Id.\_ "We told him that he must leave \_us\_;"--\_Id.\_ "We told

him to leave \_us\_."--\_Id.\_ "Because he was unable to persuade the

multitude, he left \_the place\_, in disgust."--\_Id.\_ "He left \_the company\_,

and took his brother with him."--\_Id.\_ "This stating, or declaring, or

denying \_of\_ any thing, is called the indicative \_mood\_, or manner of

speaking."--\_Weld cor.\_ "This took place at our friend Sir Joshua

\_Reynolds's\_."--\_Id.\_ "The manner \_in which\_ a young \_lady may employ\_

herself usefully in reading, will be the subject of \_an other\_

paper."--\_Id.\_ "Very little time is necessary for \_Johnson to conclude\_ a

treaty with the bookseller."--\_Id.\_ "My father is not now sick; but if he

\_were\_, your services would be welcome."--\_Chandler's Common School Gram.,

Ed. of 1847\_, p. 79. "\_Before\_ we begin to write or speak, we ought to fix

in our minds a clear conception of the end to be aimed at."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "Length of days \_is\_ in her right hand; and, in her left hand, \_are\_

riches and honour."--See \_Proverbs\_, iii, 16. "The active and \_the\_ passive

present express different ideas."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "An \_Improper

Diphthong\_, (\_sometimes called a\_ Digraph,) is a diphthong in which only

one of the vowels \_is\_ sounded."--\_Fowler cor.\_ (See G. Brown's

definition.) "The real origin of the words \_is\_ to be sought in the

Latin."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "What sort of alphabet the Gothic languages possess,

we know; what sort of alphabet they require, we can determine."--\_Id.\_ "The

Runic alphabet, whether borrowed or invented by the early Goths, is of

greater antiquity than either the oldest Teutonic or the Moeso-Gothic

\_alphabet\_."--\_Id.\_ "Common to the masculine and neuter genders."--\_Id.\_

"In the Anglo-Saxon, HIS was common to both the masculine and \_the\_ Neuter

\_Gender\_."--\_Id.\_ "When time, number, or dimension, \_is\_ specified, the

adjective follows the substantive."--\_Id.\_ "Nor pain, nor grief nor anxious

fear, \_Invades\_ thy bounds."--\_Id.\_ "To Brighton, the Pavilion lends a

\_lath-and-plaster\_ grace."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "From this consideration, \_I have

given to nouns\_ but one person, the THIRD."--\_D. C. Allen cor.\_

"For it seems to guard and cherish

E'en the wayward dreamer--\_me\_."--\_Anon. cor.\_

CHAPTER XII.--GENERAL REVIEW.

CORRECTIONS UNDER ALL THE PRECEDING RULES AND NOTES.

LESSON I.--ARTICLES.

"And they took stones, and made \_a\_ heap."--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Gen.\_, xxxi,

46. "And I do know many fools, that stand in better place."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"It is a strong antidote to the turbulence of passion, and \_the\_ violence

of pursuit."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The word NEWS may admit of either a singular or

\_a\_ plural application."--\_Wright cor.\_ "He has gained a fair and

honourable reputation."--\_Id.\_ "There are two general forms, called the

solemn and \_the\_ familiar style." Or:--"called the solemn and familiar

\_styles\_."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "Neither the article nor \_the\_ preposition can

be omitted."--\_Wright cor.\_ "A close union is also observable between the

subjunctive and \_the\_ potential \_mood\_."--\_Id.\_ "Should we render service

equally to a friend, \_a\_ neighbour, and an enemy?"--\_Id.\_ "Till \_a\_ habit

is obtained, of aspirating strongly."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "There is \_a\_

uniform, steady use of the same signs."--\_Id.\_ "A traveller remarks most

\_of the\_ objects \_which\_ he sees."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "What is the name of

the river on which London stands? \_Thames\_."--\_G. B.\_ "We sometimes find

the last line of a couplet or \_a\_ triplet stretched out to twelve

syllables."--\_Adam cor.\_ "\_The\_ nouns which follow active verbs, are not in

the nominative case."--\_David Blair cor.\_ "It is a solemn duty to speak

plainly of \_the\_ wrongs which good men perpetrate."--\_Channing cor.\_ "\_The\_

gathering of riches is a pleasant torment."--\_L. Cobb cor.\_ "It is worth

being quoted." Or better: "It is worth quoting."--\_Coleridge cor.\_ "COUNCIL

is a noun which admits of a singular and \_a\_ plural form."--\_Wright cor.\_

"To exhibit the connexion between the Old \_Testament\_ and the New."--\_Keith

cor.\_ "An apostrophe discovers the omission of a letter or \_of\_

letters."--\_Guy cor.\_ "He is immediately ordained, or rather acknowledged,

\_a\_ hero."--\_Pope cor.\_ "Which is the same in both the leading and \_the\_

following state."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "Pronouns, as will be seen hereafter,

have \_three\_ distinct \_cases; the\_ nominative, \_the\_ possessive, and \_the\_

objective."--\_D. Blair cor.\_ "A word of many syllables is called \_a\_

polysyllable."--\_Beck cor.\_ "Nouns have two numbers; \_the\_ singular and

\_the\_ plural."--\_Id.\_ "They have three genders; \_the\_ masculine, \_the\_

feminine, and \_the\_ neuter."--\_Id.\_ "They have three cases; \_the\_

nominative, \_the\_ possessive, and \_the\_ objective."--\_Id.\_ "Personal

pronouns have, like nouns, two numbers; \_the\_ singular and \_the\_

plural;--three genders; \_the\_ masculine, \_the\_ feminine, and \_the\_

neuter;--\_three\_ cases; \_the\_ nominative, \_the possessive\_, and \_the\_

objective."--\_Id.\_ "He must be wise enough to know the singular from \_the\_

plural"--\_Id.\_ "Though they may be able to meet every reproach which any

one of their fellows may prefer."--\_Chalmers cor.\_ "Yet for love's sake I

rather beseech thee, being such \_a\_ one as Paul the aged."--\_Bible cor.\_;

also \_Webster\_. "A people that jeoparded their lives unto death."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "By preventing too great \_an\_ accumulation of seed within too narrow

\_a\_ compass."--\_The Friend cor.\_ "Who fills up the middle space between the

animal and \_the\_ intellectual nature, the visible and \_the\_ invisible

world."--\_Addison cor.\_ "The Psalms abound with instances of \_the\_

harmonious arrangement of words."--\_Murray cor.\_ "On \_an\_ other table, were

\_a\_ ewer and \_a\_ vase, likewise of gold."--\_Mirror cor.\_ "TH is said to

have two sounds, \_a\_ sharp and \_a\_ flat."--\_Wilson cor.\_ "\_The\_ SECTION (§)

is \_sometimes\_ used in \_the\_ subdividing of a chapter into lesser

parts."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "Try it in a dog, or \_a\_ horse, or any other

creature."--\_Locke cor.\_ "But particularly in \_the\_ learning of languages,

there is \_the\_ least occasion \_to pose\_ children."--\_Id.\_ "\_Of\_ what kind

is \_the\_ noun RIVER, and why?"--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "Is WILLIAM'S a proper

or \_a\_ common noun?"--\_Id.\_ "What kind of article, then, shall we call

\_the\_?" Or better: "What then shall we call the article \_the\_?"--\_Id.\_

"Each burns alike, who can, or cannot write,

Or with a rival's, or \_a\_ eunuch's spite."--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON II.--NOUNS, OR CASES.

"And there \_are\_ stamped upon their imaginations \_ideas\_ that follow them

with terror and \_affright\_."--\_Locke cor.\_ "There's not a wretch that lives

on common charity, but's happier than \_I\_."--\_Ven. Pres. cor.\_ "But they

overwhelm \_every one who\_ is ignorant of them."--\_H. Mann cor.\_ "I have

received a letter from my cousin, \_her\_ that was here last week."--\_Inst.\_,

p. 129. "\_Gentlemen's\_ houses are seldom without variety of

company."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Because Fortune has laid them below the level of

others, at their \_masters\_' feet."--\_Id.\_ "We blamed neither \_John's\_ nor

Mary's delay."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "The book was written by order \_of Luther\_ the

\_reformer\_."--\_Id.\_ "I saw on the table of the saloon Blair's sermons, and

\_somebody's\_ else, (I forget \_whose\_,) and [\_about the room\_] a set of

noisy children."--\_Byron cor.\_ "Or saith he it altogether for our

\_sake\_?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "He was not aware \_that the Duke was\_ his

competitor."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "It is no condition of an adjective, that \_the

word\_ must be placed before a noun." Or: "It is no condition \_on which a

word becomes\_ an adjective, that it must be placed before a noun."--\_Id.,

and Fowle cor.\_ "Though their reason corrected the wrong \_ideas which\_ they

had taken in."--\_Locke cor.\_ "It was \_he that\_ taught me to hate

slavery."--\_Morris cor.\_ "It is \_he\_ and his kindred, who live upon the

labour of others."--\_Id.\_ "Payment of tribute is an acknowledgement of \_him

as\_ being King--(of \_him as\_ King--or, \_that he is\_ King--) to whom we

think it due."--\_C. Leslie cor.\_ "When we comprehend what \_is taught

us\_."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "The following words, and parts of words, must be

\_noticed\_."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Hence tears and commiseration are so often

\_employed\_."--\_Dr. H. Blair cor.\_ "JOHN-A-NOKES, \_n.\_ A fictitious name

\_used\_ in law proceedings."--\_A. Chalmers cor.\_ "The construction of \_words

denoting\_ matter, and \_the\_ part \_grasped\_."--\_B. F. Fisk cor.\_ "And such

other names as carry with them the \_idea\_ of \_something\_ terrible and

hurtful."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Every learner then would surely be glad to be

spared \_from\_ the trouble and fatigue."--\_Pike cor.\_ "\_It\_ is not the

owning of \_one's\_ dissent from \_an other\_, that I speak against."--\_Locke

cor.\_ "A man that cannot fence, will be more careful to keep out of bullies

and \_gamesters'\_ company, and will not be half so apt to stand upon

\_punctilios\_."--\_Id.\_ "From such persons it is, \_that\_ one may learn more

in one day, than in a \_year's\_ rambling from one inn to \_an other\_."--\_Id.\_

"A long syllable is generally considered to be twice \_as long as\_ a short

one."--\_D. Blair cor.\_ "I is of the first person, and \_the\_ singular

number. THOU is \_of the\_ second person singular. HE, SHE, or IT, is \_of

the\_ third person singular. WE is \_of the\_ first person plural. YE or YOU

is \_of the\_ second person plural. THEY is \_of the\_ third person

plural."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "This actor, doer, or producer of the action, is

\_denoted by some word in\_ the nominative \_case\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Nobody\_ can

think, \_that\_ a boy of three or seven years \_of age\_ should be argued with

as a grown man."--\_Locke cor.\_ "This was in \_the house of\_ one of the

Pharisees, not in Simon the leper's."--\_Hammond cor.\_ "Impossible! it can't

be \_I\_."--\_Swift cor.\_ "Whose grey top shall tremble, \_He\_

descending."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, xii, 227. "\_Of\_ what gender is \_woman\_, and

why?"--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "\_Of\_ what gender, then, is \_man\_, and

why?"--\_Id.\_ "Who is \_this I; whom\_ do you mean when you say \_I\_?"--\_R. W.

Green cor.\_ "It \_has\_ a pleasant air, but \_the soil\_ is barren."--\_Locke

cor.\_ "You may, in three \_days'\_ time, go from Galilee to Jerusalem."--\_W.

Whiston cor.\_ "And that which is left of the meat-offering, shall be

Aaron's and his \_sons'\_."--FRIENDS' BIBLE.

"For none in all the world, without a lie,

Can say \_of\_ this, '\_'T\_is mine,' but \_Bunyan\_, I."--\_Bunyan cor.\_

LESSON III.--ADJECTIVES.

"When he can be their remembrancer and advocate \_at all assizes\_ and

sessions."--\_Leslie cor.\_ "DOING denotes \_every\_ manner of action; as, to

dance, to play, to write, &c."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Seven \_feet\_

long,"--"eight \_feet\_ long,"--"fifty \_feet\_ long."--\_W. Walker cor.\_

"Nearly the whole of \_these\_ twenty-five millions of dollars is a dead loss

to the nation."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "Two negatives destroy \_each\_ other."--\_R.

W. Green cor.\_ "We are warned against excusing sin in ourselves, or in \_one

an\_ other."--\_Friend cor.\_ "The Russian empire is more extensive than any

\_other\_ government in the world."--\_Inst.\_, p. 265. "You will always have

the satisfaction to think it, of all \_your expenses\_, the money best laid

out."--\_Locke cor.\_ "There is no \_other\_ passion which all mankind so

naturally \_indulge\_, as pride."--\_Steele cor.\_ "O, throw away the \_viler\_

part of it."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "He showed us \_an easier\_ and \_more agreeable\_

way."--\_Inst.\_, p. 265. "And the \_last four\_ are to point out those further

improvements."--\_Jamieson and Campbell cor.\_ "Where he has not clear

\_ideas\_, distinct and different."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Oh, when shall we have \_an

other such\_ Rector of Laracor!"--\_Hazlitt cor.\_ "Speech must have been

absolutely necessary \_previously\_ to the formation of society." Or better

thus: "Speech must have been absolutely necessary to the formation of

society."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "Go and tell \_those\_ boys to be

still."--\_Inst.\_, p. 265. "Wrongs are engraved on marble; benefits, on

sand: \_those\_ are apt to be requited; \_these\_, forgot."--\_G. B.\_ "\_None\_ of

these several interpretations is the true one."--\_G. B.\_ "My friend

indulged himself in some freaks \_not befitting\_ the gravity of a

clergyman."--\_G. B.\_ "And their pardon is all that \_any\_ of their

impropriators will have to plead."--\_Leslie cor.\_ "But the time usually

chosen to send young men abroad, is, I think, of all \_periods\_, that \_at\_

which \_they are\_ least capable of reaping those advantages."--\_Locke cor.\_

"It is a mere figment of the human imagination, a rhapsody of the

\_transcendently\_ unintelligible."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "It contains a greater

assemblage of sublime ideas, of bold and daring figures, than is perhaps

\_anywhere else\_ to be met with."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The order in which the

\_last two\_ words are placed should have been reversed."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_;

also \_L. Murray\_. "In Demosthenes, eloquence \_shone\_ forth with higher

splendour, than perhaps in any \_other\_ that ever bore the name of

\_orator\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The circumstance of his \_poverty\_ (or, \_that

he is\_ poor) is decidedly favourable."--\_Todd cor.\_ "The temptations to

dissipation are greatly lessened by his \_poverty\_."--\_Id.\_ "For, with her

death, \_those\_ tidings came."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "The next objection is, that

\_authors of this sort\_ are poor."--\_Cleland cor.\_ "Presenting Emma, as Miss

Castlemain, to these \_acquaintances\_:" or,--"to these \_persons of her\_

acquaintance."--\_Opie cor.\_ "I doubt not \_that\_ it will please more

\_persons\_ than the opera:" or,--"that it will be \_more pleasing\_ than the

opera."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "The world knows only two; \_these are\_ Rome and

I."--\_Ben Jonson cor.\_ "I distinguish these two things from \_each\_

other."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "And, in this case, mankind reciprocally claim

and allow indulgence to \_one an\_ other."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "The \_last six\_

books are said not to have received the finishing hand of the

author."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The \_best-executed\_ part of the work, is the

first six books."--\_Id.\_

"To reason how can we be said to rise?

So \_hard the task for mortals to be\_ wise!"--\_Sheffield cor.\_

LESSON IV.--PRONOUNS.

"Once upon a time, a goose fed \_her\_ young by a \_pond's\_ side:" or--"by a

\_pondside\_."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ (See OBS. 33d on Rule 4th.) "If either \_has\_

a sufficient degree of merit to recommend \_it\_ to the attention of the

public."--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "Now W. \_Mitchell's\_ deceit is very

remarkable."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "My brother, I did not put the question to

thee, for that I doubted of the truth of \_thy\_ belief."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "I

had two elder brothers, one of \_whom\_ was a lieutenant-colonel."--\_De Foe

cor.\_ "Though James is here the object of the action, yet \_the word James\_

is in the nominative case."--\_Wright cor.\_ "Here John is the actor; and

\_the word John\_ is known to be \_in\_ the nominative, by its answering to the

question, '\_Who\_ struck Richard?'"--\_Id.\_ "One of the most distinguished

privileges \_that\_ Providence has conferred upon mankind, is the power of

communicating their thoughts to one \_an other\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "With

some of the most refined feelings \_that\_ belong to our frame."--\_Id.\_ "And

the same instructions \_that\_ assist others in composing \_works of

elegance\_, will assist them in judging of, and relishing, the beauties of

composition."--\_Id.\_ "To overthrow all \_that\_ had been yielded in favour of

the army."--\_Macaulay cor.\_ "Let your faith stand in the Lord God, who

changes not, \_who\_ created all, and \_who\_ gives the increase of

all."--\_Friends cor.\_ "For it is, in truth, the sentiment of passion which

lies under the figured expression, that gives it \_all its\_ merit."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "Verbs are words \_that\_ affirm the being, doing, or suffering

of a thing, together with the time \_at which\_ it happens."--\_A. Murray

cor.\_ "The \_bias\_ will always hang on that side \_on which\_ nature first

placed it."--\_Locke cor.\_ "They should be brought to do the things \_which\_

are fit for them."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_ various sources \_from which\_ the English

language is derived."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "This attention to the several

cases \_in which\_ it is proper to omit \_or\_ to redouble the copulative, is

of considerable importance."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Cicero, for instance,

speaking of the cases \_in which it\_ is lawful \_to kill an other in

self-defence\_, uses the following words."--\_Id.\_ "But there is no nation,

hardly \_are there\_ any \_persons\_, so phlegmatic as not to accompany their

words with some actions, \_or\_ gesticulations, \_whenever\_ they are much in

earnest."--\_Id.\_ "\_William's\_ is said to be governed by \_coat\_, because

\_coat\_ follows \_William's\_" Or better:--"because \_coat\_ is the name of the

thing possessed by William."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "In life, there are many

\_occasions on which\_ silence and simplicity are \_marks of\_ true

wisdom."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "In choosing umpires \_whose\_ avarice is

excited."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "The boroughs sent representatives, \_according to

law\_."--\_Id.\_ "No man believes but \_that\_ there is some order in the

universe."--\_G. B.\_ "The moon is orderly in her changes, \_and\_ she could

not be \_so\_ by accident."--\_Id.\_ "\_The riddles of the Sphynx\_ (or, The

\_Sphynx's\_ riddles) are generally \_of\_ two kinds."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "They must

generally find either their friends or \_their\_ enemies in power."--\_Dr.

Brown cor.\_ "For, of old, \_very many\_ took upon them to write what happened

in their own time."--\_Whiston cor.\_ "The Almighty cut off the family of Eli

the high priest, for \_their\_ transgressions."--\_The Friend\_, vii, 109. "The

convention then resolved \_itself\_ into a committee of the whole."--\_Inst.\_,

p. 269. "The severity with which \_persons of\_ this denomination \_were\_

treated, appeared rather to invite \_them to the colony\_, than to deter them

from flocking \_thither\_."--\_H. Adams cor.\_ "Many Christians abuse the

Scriptures and the traditions of the apostles, to uphold things quite

contrary to \_them\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Thus, a circle, a square, a triangle,

or a hexagon, \_pleases\_ the eye by \_its\_ regularity, \_and is a\_ beautiful

\_figure\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Elba is remarkable for being the place to

which Bonaparte was banished in 1814."--\_Olney's Geog\_. "The editor has the

reputation of being a good linguist and critic."--\_Rel. Herald\_. "It is a

pride \_which\_ should be cherished in them."--\_Locke cor.\_ "And to restore

\_to\_ us the \_hope\_ of fruits, to reward our pains in \_their\_

season."--\_Id.\_ "The comic representation of Death's victim relating \_his\_

own tale."--\_Wright cor.\_ "As for \_Scioppius's\_ Grammar, that wholly

\_concerns\_ the Latin tongue."--\_Wilkins cor.\_

"And chiefly \_Thou\_, O Spirit, \_that\_ dost prefer

Before all temples \_th'\_ upright heart and pure,

Instruct me, for Thou \_knowst\_."--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. i, l. 17.

LESSON V.--VERBS.

"And there \_were\_ in the same country shepherds abiding in the

field."--\_Friends' Bible\_; also \_Bruce's, and Alger's\_. "Whereof every one

\_bears\_ [or \_beareth\_] twins."--BIBLE COR.: \_Song\_, vi, 6. "He strikes out

of his nature one of the most divine principles that \_are\_ planted in

it."--\_Addison cor.\_ "GENII [i.e., the \_word\_ GENII] \_denotes aërial\_

spirits."--\_Wright cor.\_ "In proportion as the long and large prevalence of

such corruptions \_has\_ been obtained by force."--\_Halifax cor.\_ "Neither

of these \_is set before any\_ word of a general signification, or \_before a\_

proper name."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "Of which, a few of the opening lines

\_are\_ all I shall give."--\_Moore cor.\_ "The \_wealth\_ we had in England, was

the slow result of long industry and wisdom." Or: "The \_riches\_ we had in

England \_were\_," &c.--\_Davenant cor.\_ "The following expression appears to

be correct: 'Much \_public gratitude\_ is due.'" Or this: "'\_Great public\_

thanks \_are\_ due.'"--\_-Wright cor.\_ "He \_has\_ been enabled to correct many

mistakes."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Which road \_dost\_ thou take here?"--\_Ingersoll

cor.\_ "\_Dost\_ thou \_learn\_ thy lesson?"--\_Id.\_ "\_Did\_ they \_learn\_ their

pieces perfectly?"--\_Id.\_ "Thou \_learned\_ thy task well."--\_Id.\_ "There are

some \_who\_ can't relish the town, and others can't \_bear\_ with the

country."--\_Sir Wilful cor.\_ "If thou \_meet\_ them, thou must put on an

intrepid mien."--\_Neef cor.\_ "Struck with terror, as if Philip \_were\_

something more than human."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "If the personification of

the form of Satan \_were\_ admissible, \_the pronoun\_ should certainly have

been masculine."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "If only one \_follows\_, there seems to be

a defect in the sentence."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Sir, if thou \_hast\_ borne him

hence, tell me where thou hast laid him."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Blessed \_are\_ the

people that know the joyful sound."--\_Id.\_ "Every auditory \_takes\_ in good

part those marks of respect and awe \_with which a modest speaker commences

a public discourse\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Private causes were still pleaded

in the forum; but the public \_were\_ no longer interested, nor \_was\_ any

general attention drawn to what passed there."--\_Id.\_ "Nay, what evidence

can be brought to show, that the \_inflections\_ of the \_classic\_ tongues

were not originally formed out of obsolete auxiliary words?"--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "If the student \_observe\_ that the principal and the auxiliary \_form

but\_ one verb, he will have little or no difficulty in the proper

application of the present rule."--\_Id.\_ "For the sword of the enemy, and

fear, \_are\_ on every side."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Even the Stoics agree that

nature, \_or\_ certainty, is very hard to come at."--\_Collier cor.\_ "His

politeness, \_his\_ obliging behaviour, \_was\_ changed." Or thus: "His

\_polite\_ and obliging behaviour was changed."--\_Priestley and Hume cor.\_

"War and its honours \_were\_ their employment and ambition." Or thus: "War

\_was\_ their employment; its honours \_were their\_ ambition."--\_Goldsmith

cor.\_ "\_Do\_ A and AN mean the same thing?"--\_R. W. Green cor.\_ "When

\_several\_ words \_come\_ in between the discordant parts, the ear does not

detect the error."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "The sentence should be, 'When \_several\_

words \_come\_ in,' &c."--\_Wright cor.\_ "The nature of our language, the

accent and pronunciation of it, \_incline\_ us to contract even all our

regular verbs."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 104. Or thus: "The nature of

our language,--(\_that is\_, the accent and pronunciation of it,--) inclines

us to contract even all our regular verbs."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "The nature of

our language, together with the accent and pronunciation of it, \_inclines\_

us to contract even all our regular verbs."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "Prompt aid, and

not promises, \_is\_ what we ought to give."--\_G. B.\_ "The position of the

several organs, therefore, as well as their functions, \_is\_

ascertained."--\_Med. Mag. cor.\_ "Every private company, and almost every

public assembly, \_affords\_ opportunities of remarking the difference

between a just and graceful, and a faulty and unnatural

elocution."--\_Enfield cor.\_ "Such submission, together with the active

principle of obedience, \_makes\_ up \_in us\_ the temper \_or\_ character which

answers to his sovereignty."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "In happiness, as in other

things, there \_are\_ a false and a true, an imaginary and a real."--\_A.

Fuller cor.\_ "To confound things that differ, and to make a distinction

where there is no difference, \_are\_ equally unphilosophical."--\_G. Brown\_.

"I know a bank wheron \_doth\_ wild thyme \_blow\_,

Where oxlips and the nodding violet \_grow\_."--\_Shak. cor.\_

LESSON VI.--VERBS.

"Whose business or profession \_prevents\_ their attendance in the

morning."--\_Ogilby cor.\_ "And no church or officer \_has\_ power over \_an

other\_."--\_Lechford cor.\_ "While neither reason nor experience \_is\_

sufficiently matured to protect them."--\_Woodbridge cor.\_ "Among the Greeks

and Romans, \_almost\_ every syllable was known to have a fixed and

determined quantity." Or thus: "Among the Greeks and Romans, \_all

syllables\_, (or at least the far \_greater\_ number,) \_were\_ known to have

\_severally\_ a fixed and determined quantity."--\_Blair and Jamieson cor.\_

"Their vanity is awakened, and their passions \_are\_ exalted, by the

irritation which their self-love receives from contradiction."--\_Tr. of

Mad. De Staël cor.\_ "\_He and I were\_ neither of us any great

swimmer."--\_Anon\_. "Virtue, honour--nay, even self-interest, \_recommends\_

the measure."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ (See Obs. 5th on Rule 16th.) "A correct

plainness, \_an\_ elegant simplicity, is the proper character of an

introduction."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "In syntax, there is what grammarians call

concord or agreement, and \_there is\_ government."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_

"People find themselves able, without much study, to write and speak

English intelligibly, and thus \_are\_ led to think \_that\_ rules \_are\_ of no

utility."--\_Webster cor.\_ "But the writer must be one who has studied to

inform himself well, \_who\_ has pondered his subject with care, and who

addresses himself to our \_judgement\_, rather than to our

imagination."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "But practice \_has\_ determined it

otherwise; and has, in all the languages with which we are much acquainted,

supplied the place of an interrogative \_mood\_, either by particles of

interrogation, or by a peculiar order of the words in the

sentence."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "If the Lord \_hath\_ stirred thee up against me,

let him accept an offering."--\_Bible cor.\_ "But if the priest's daughter be

a widow, or divorced, and have no child, and \_she return\_ unto her father's

house, as in her youth, she shall eat of her father's meat."--\_Id.\_ "Since

we never have \_studied, and never\_ shall study, your sublime

productions."--\_Neef cor.\_ "Enabling us to form \_distincter\_ images of

objects, than can be \_formed\_, with the utmost attention, where these

particulars are not found."--\_Kames cor.\_ "I hope you will consider \_that\_

what is \_spoken\_ comes from my love."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "We \_shall\_ then

perceive how the designs of emphasis may be marred."--\_Rush cor.\_ "I knew

it was Crab, and \_went\_ to the fellow that whips the dogs."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"The youth \_was consuming\_ by a slow malady."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 64;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 45; \_Fisk\_, 82. "If all men thought, spoke, and wrote alike,

something resembling a perfect adjustment of these points \_might\_ be

accomplished."--\_Wright cor.\_ "If you will replace what has been, \_for a\_

long \_time\_ expunged from the language." Or: "If you will replace what

\_was\_ long \_ago\_ expunged from the language."--\_Campbell and Murray cor.\_

"As in all those faulty instances \_which\_ I have \_just\_ been giving."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "This mood \_is\_ also used \_improperly\_ in the following

places."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "He seems to have been well acquainted with his

own genius, and to \_have known\_ what it was that nature had bestowed upon

him."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "Of which I \_have\_ already \_given\_ one instance, the

worst indeed that occurred in the poem."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "It is strange

he never commanded you to \_do\_ it."--\_Anon\_. "History painters would have

found it difficult, to \_invent\_ such a species of beings."--\_Addison cor.\_

"Universal Grammar cannot be taught abstractedly; it must be \_explained\_

with referenc [sic--KTH] to some language already known."--\_Lowth cor.\_

"And we might imagine, that if verbs had been so contrived as simply to

express these, \_no other tenses would have been\_ needful."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "To a writer of such a genius as \_Dean Swift's\_, the plain style \_is\_

most admirably fitted."--\_Id.\_ "Please \_to\_ excuse my son's

absence."--\_Inst.\_, p. 279. "Bid the boys come in immediately."--\_Ib.\_

"Gives us the secrets of his pagan hell,

Where \_restless ghosts\_ in sad communion dwell."--\_Crabbe cor.\_

"Alas! nor faith nor valour now \_remains\_;

Sighs are but wind, and I must bear my \_chains\_."--\_Walpole cor.\_

LESSON VII.--PARTICIPLES.

"Of which the author considers himself, in compiling the present work, as

merely laying the foundation-stone."--\_David Blair cor.\_ "On the raising

\_of\_ such lively and distinct images as are here described."--\_Kames cor.\_

"They are necessary to the avoiding \_of\_ ambiguities."--\_Brightland cor.\_

"There is no neglecting \_of\_ it without falling into a dangerous error." Or

better: "\_None can neglect\_ it without falling," &c.--\_Burlamaqui cor.\_

"The contest resembles Don Quixote's fighting \_of\_ (or \_with\_)

windmills."--\_Webster cor.\_ "That these verbs associate with \_other\_ verbs

in all the tenses, is no proof \_that they have\_ no particular time of their

own."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "To justify \_myself in\_ not following the \_track\_

of the ancient rhetoricians."--\_Dr. H. Blair cor.\_ "The \_putting-together

of\_ letters, so as to make words, is called Spelling."--\_Inf. S. Gram.

cor.\_ "What is the \_putting-together of\_ vowels and consonants

called?"--\_Id.\_ "Nobody knows of their \_charitableness\_, but themselves."

Or: "Nobody knows \_that they are\_ charitable, but themselves."--\_Fuller

cor.\_ "Payment was at length made, but no reason \_was\_ assigned for so long

\_a postponement of it\_."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "Which will bear \_to be\_

brought into comparison with any composition of the kind."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "To render vice ridiculous, is \_to do\_ real service to the

world."--\_Id.\_ "It is \_a direct\_ copying from nature, a plain rehearsal of

what passed, or was supposed to pass, in conversation."--\_Id.\_ "Propriety

of pronunciation \_consists in\_ giving to every word that sound which the

most polite usage of the language appropriates to it."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 200; and again, p. 219. "To occupy the mind, and prevent \_us from\_

regretting the insipidity of \_a\_ uniform plain."--\_Kames cor.\_ "There are a

hundred ways \_in which\_ any thing \_may happen\_."--\_Steele cor.\_ "Tell me,

\_seignior, for\_ what cause (or \_why) Antonio sent\_ Claudio to Venice

yesterday."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "As \_you are\_ looking about for an outlet, some

rich prospect unexpectedly opens to view."--\_Kames cor.\_ "A hundred volumes

of modern novels may be read without \_communicating\_ a new idea." Or thus:

"\_A person may read\_ a hundred volumes of modern novels without acquiring a

new idea."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Poetry admits of greater latitude than prose,

with respect to \_the\_ coining, or at least \_the\_ new compounding, \_of\_

words."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "When laws were \_written\_ on brazen tablets, \_and

enforced\_ by the sword."--\_Pope cor.\_ "A pronoun, which saves the naming

\_of\_ a person or thing a second time, ought to be placed as near as

possible to the name of that person or thing."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The using

\_of\_ a preposition in this case, is not always a matter of choice."--\_Id.\_

"To save \_the\_ multiplying \_of\_ words, I would be understood to comprehend

both circumstances."--\_Id.\_ "Immoderate grief is mute: \_complaint\_ is \_a

struggle\_ for consolation."--\_Id.\_ "On the other hand, the accelerating or

\_the\_ retarding \_of\_ the natural course, excites a pain."--\_Id.\_ "Human

affairs require the distributing \_of\_ our attention."--\_Id.\_ "By neglecting

this circumstance, \_the author of\_ the following example \_has made it\_

defective in neatness."--\_Id.\_ "And therefore the suppressing \_of\_

copulatives must animate a description."--\_Id.\_ "If the \_omission of\_

copulatives \_gives\_ force and liveliness, a redundancy of them must render

the period languid."--\_Id.\_ "It skills not, \_to ask\_ my leave, said

Richard."--\_Scott cor.\_ "To redeem his credit, he proposed \_to be\_ sent

once more to Sparta."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Dumas relates \_that he gave\_ drink

to a dog."--\_Stone cor.\_ "Both are, in a like way, instruments of our

\_reception of\_ such ideas from external objects."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "In

order to your proper handling \_of\_ such a subject."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "For I

do not recollect \_it\_ preceded by an open vowel."--\_Knight cor.\_ "Such is

\_the setting up of\_ the form above the power of godliness."--\_Barclay cor.\_

"I remember \_that I was\_ walking once with my young acquaintance."--\_Hunt

cor.\_ "He did not like \_to pay\_ a debt."--\_Id.\_ "I do not remember \_to have

seen\_ Coleridge when I was a child."--\_Id.\_ "In consequence of the dry \_rot

discovered in it\_, the mansion has undergone a thorough repair."--\_Maunder

cor.\_ "I would not advise the following \_of\_ the German system \_in all its

parts\_."--\_Lieber cor.\_ "Would it not be \_to make\_ the students judges of

the professors?"--\_Id.\_ "Little time should intervene between \_the

proposing of them\_ and \_the deciding\_ upon \_them\_."--\_Verthake [sic--KTH]

cor.\_ "It would be nothing less than \_to find\_ fault with the

Creator."--\_Lit. Journal cor.\_ "\_That we were once friends\_, is a powerful

reason, both of prudence and \_of\_ conscience, to restrain us from ever

becoming enemies."--\_Secker cor.\_ "By using the word as a conjunction, \_we

prevent\_ the ambiguity."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"He forms his schemes the flood of vice to stem,

But \_faith in Jesus has no part in\_ them."--\_J Taylor cor.\_

LESSON VIII.--ADVERBS.

"Auxiliaries \_not only can\_ be inserted, but are really

understood."--\_Wright cor.\_ "He was \_afterwards\_ a hired scribbler in the

Daily Courant."--\_Pope's Annotator cor.\_ "In gardening, luckily, relative

beauty \_never need stand\_ (or, perhaps better, \_never needs to stand\_) in

opposition to intrinsic beauty."--\_Kames cor.\_ "I \_much\_ doubt the

propriety of the following examples."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "And [we see] how far

they have spread, in this part of the world, one of the worst languages

\_possible\_"--\_Locke cor.\_ "And, in this manner, \_merely to place\_ him on a

level with the beast of the forest."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "\_Whither\_, ah!

\_whither\_, has my darling fled."--\_Anon\_. "As for this fellow, we know not

whence he is."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Ye see then, that by works a man is

justified, and not by faith only."--\_Id.\_ "The \_Mixed\_ kind is \_that in

which\_ the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes

other characters speak."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "Interrogation is \_a

rhetorical figure in which\_ the writer or orator raises questions, and, \_if

he pleases\_, returns answers."--\_Fisher cor.\_ "Prevention is \_a figure in

which\_ an author starts an objection which he foresees may be made, and

gives an answer to it."--\_Id.\_ "Will you let me alone, or \_not\_?"--\_W.

Walker cor.\_ "Neither man nor woman \_can\_ resist an engaging exterior."--

\_Chesterfield cor.\_ "Though the cup be \_everso\_ clean."--\_Locke cor.\_

"Seldom, or \_never\_, did any one rise to eminence, by being a witty

lawyer." Or thus: "Seldom, \_if ever, has\_ any one \_risen\_ to eminence, by

being a witty lawyer."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The second rule which I give,

respects the choice of \_the\_ objects from \_which\_ metaphors, and other

figures, are to be drawn."--\_Id.\_ "In the figures which it uses, it sets

mirrors before us, \_in which\_ we may behold objects \_reflected\_ in their

likeness."--\_Id.\_ "Whose business \_it\_ is, to seek the true measures of

right and wrong, and not the arts \_by which he may\_ avoid doing the one,

and secure himself in doing the other."--\_Locke cor.\_ "The occasions \_on

which\_ you ought to personify things, and \_those on which\_ you ought not,

cannot be stated in any precise rule."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "They reflect that

they have been much diverted, but \_scarcely\_ can \_they\_ say about

what."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The eyebrows and shoulders should seldom or \_never\_

be remarked by any perceptible motion."--\_J. Q. Adams cor.\_ "And the left

hand or arm should seldom or never attempt any motion by itself."--\_Id.,

right\_. "\_Not\_ every speaker \_purposes\_ to please the imagination."--

\_Jamieson cor.\_ "And, like Gallio, they care for none of these things." Or:

"And, like Gallio, they care \_little\_ for \_any\_ of these things."--\_S.

cor.\_ "They may inadvertently be \_used\_ where \_their\_ meaning would be

obscure."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Nor \_can\_ a man make him laugh."--\_Shak. cor.\_

"The Athenians, in their present distress, \_scarcely\_ knew \_whither\_ to

turn."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "I do not remember where God \_ever\_ delivered his

oracles by the multitude."--\_Locke cor.\_ "The object of this government is

twofold, \_outward\_ and \_inward\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "In order \_rightly\_ to

understand what we read"--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "That a design had been formed,

to \_kidnap\_ or \_forcibly abduct\_ Morgan."--\_Col. Stone cor.\_ "But such

imposture can never \_long\_ maintain its ground."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "But

\_surely\_ it is \_as\_ possible to apply the principles of reason and good

sense to this art, as to any other that is cultivated among men."--\_Id.\_

"It would have been better for you, to have remained illiterate, and \_even\_

to have been hewers of wood."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Dissyllables that have two

vowels which are separated in the pronunciation, \_always\_ have the accent

on the \_first\_ syllable."--\_Id.\_ "And they all turned their backs, \_almost\_

without drawing a sword." Or: "And they all turned their backs, \_scarcely

venturing to draw\_ a sword."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The principle of duty

\_naturally\_ takes \_precedence\_ of every other."--\_Id. "Not\_ all that

glitters, is gold."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "Whether now, or \_everso\_ many myriads

of ages hence."--\_Edwards cor.\_

"England never did, nor \_ever\_ shall,

Lie at the proud foot of a conqueror."--\_Shak. cor.\_

LESSON IX.--CONJUNCTIONS.

"He readily comprehends the rules of syntax, their use in \_the constructing

of sentences\_, and \_their\_ applicability \_to\_ the examples before

him."--\_Greenleaf cor.\_ "The works of Æschylus have suffered more by time,

than \_those of\_ any \_other\_ ancient \_tragedian\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "There

is much more story, more bustle, and \_more\_ action, than on the French

theatre."--\_Id.\_ (See Obs. 8th on Rule 16th.) "Such an unremitted anxiety,

\_or such a\_ perpetual application, as engrosses \_all\_ our time and

thoughts, \_is\_ forbidden."--\_Jenyns cor.\_ "It seems to be nothing else

\_than\_ the simple form of the adjective."--\_Wright cor.\_ "But when I talk

of \_reasoning\_, I do not intend any other \_than\_ such as is suited to the

child's capacity."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Pronouns have no other use in language,

\_than\_ to represent nouns."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "The speculative relied no

farther on their own judgement, \_than\_ to choose a leader, whom they

implicitly followed."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Unaccommodated man is no more \_than\_

such a poor, bare, forked animal as thou art."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "A Parenthesis

is a \_suggestion which is\_ introduced into the body of a sentence

obliquely, \_and which\_ may be omitted without injuring the grammatical

construction."--\_Mur. et al. cor. "The\_ Caret (marked thus ^) is placed

where \_something that happened\_ to be left out, \_is to be put into\_ the

line."--\_Iid. "When\_ I visit them, they shall be cast down."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Neither our virtues \_nor our\_ vices are all our own."--\_Johnson and

Sanborn cor.\_ "I could not give him \_so early\_ an answer as he had

desired."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "He is not \_so\_ tall as his

brother."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "It is difficult to judge \_whether\_ Lord Byron is

serious or not."--\_Lady Blessington cor.\_ "Some nouns are of \_both\_ the

second and \_the\_ third declension."--\_Gould cor.\_ "He was discouraged

neither by danger \_nor by\_ misfortune."--\_Wells cor.\_ "This is consistent

neither with logic nor \_with\_ history."--\_Dial cor.\_ "Parts of sentences

are \_either\_ simple \_or\_ compound."--\_David Blair cor.\_ "English verse is

regulated rather by the number of syllables, than \_by\_ feet:" or,--"than by

the number of feet."--\_Id.\_ "I know not what more he can do, \_than\_ pray

for him."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Whilst they are learning, and \_are applying\_

themselves with attention, they are to be kept in good humour."--\_Id.\_ "A

man cannot have too much of it, nor \_have it\_ too perfectly."--\_Id.\_ "That

you may so run, as \_to\_ obtain; and so fight, as \_to\_ overcome." Or thus:

"That you may so run, \_that\_ you may obtain; and so fight, \_that\_ you may

overcome."--\_Penn cor.\_ "It is the \_artifice\_ of some, to contrive false

periods of business, \_that\_ they may seem men of despatch."--\_Bacon cor.\_

"'A tall man and a woman.' In this \_phrase\_, there is no ellipsis; the

adjective \_belongs only to the former noun\_; the quality \_respects\_ only

the man."--\_Ash cor.\_ "An abandonment of the policy is neither to be

expected \_nor to be\_ desired."--\_Jackson cor.\_ "Which can be acquired by no

other means \_than by\_ frequent exercise in speaking."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"The chief \_or\_ fundamental rules of syntax are common to the English \_and\_

the Latin tongue." Or:--"are \_applicable\_ to the English as well as \_to\_

the Latin tongue."--\_Id.\_ "Then I exclaim, \_either\_ that my antagonist is

void of all taste, or that his taste is corrupted in a miserable degree."

Or thus: "Then I exclaim, that my antagonist is \_either\_ void of all taste,

or \_has a taste that is miserably\_ corrupted."--\_Id.\_ "I cannot pity any

one who is under no distress \_either\_ of body \_or\_ of mind."--\_Kames cor.\_

"There was much genius in the world, before there were learning \_and\_ arts

to refine it."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Such a writer can have little else to do,

\_than\_ to \_new-model\_ the paradoxes of ancient scepticism."--\_Dr. Brown

cor.\_ "Our ideas of them being nothing else \_than collections\_ of the

ordinary qualities observed in them."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "A \_non-ens\_, or

negative, can give \_neither\_ pleasure nor pain."--\_Kames cor.\_ "So \_that\_

they shall not justle and embarrass one an other."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "He

firmly refused to make use of any other voice \_than\_ his own."--\_Murray's

Sequel\_, p. 113. "Your marching regiments, sir, will not make the guards

their example, either as soldiers or \_as\_ subjects."--\_Junius cor.\_

"Consequently they had neither meaning \_nor\_ beauty, to any but the natives

of each country."--\_Sheridan cor.\_

"The man of worth, \_who\_ has not left his peer,

Is in his narrow house forever darkly laid."--\_Burns cor.\_

LESSON X.--PREPOSITIONS.

"These may be carried on progressively \_beyond\_ any assignable

limits."--\_Kames cor.\_ "To crowd different subjects \_into\_ a single member

of a period, is still worse than to crowd them into one period."--\_Id.\_

"Nor do we rigidly insist \_on having\_ melodious prose."--\_Id.\_ "The

aversion we have \_to\_ those who differ from us."--\_Id.\_ "For we cannot bear

his shifting \_of\_ the scene \_at\_ every line."--\_Halifax cor.\_ "We shall

find that we come by it \_in\_ the same way."--\_Locke cor.\_ "\_Against\_ this

he has no better \_defence\_ than that."--\_Barnes cor.\_ "Searching the person

whom he suspects \_of\_ having stolen his casket."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Who, as

vacancies occur, are elected \_by\_ the whole Board."--\_Lit. Jour. cor.\_

"Almost the only field of ambition \_for\_ a German, is science."--\_Lieber

cor.\_ "The plan of education is very different \_from\_ the one pursued in

the sister country."--\_Coley cor.\_ "Some writers on grammar have contended,

that adjectives \_sometimes\_ relate to \_verbs\_, and modify \_their\_

action."--\_Wilcox cor.\_ "They are therefore of a mixed nature,

participating the properties both of pronouns and \_of\_ adjectives."--

\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "For there is no authority which can justify the inserting

\_of\_ the aspirate or \_the\_ doubling \_of\_ the vowel."--\_Knight cor.\_ "The

distinction and arrangement \_of\_ active, passive, and neuter verbs."--

\_Wright cor.\_ "And see thou a hostile world spread its delusive

snares."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "He may be precautioned, and be made \_to\_ see how

those \_join\_ in the contempt."--\_Locke cor.\_ "The contenting \_of\_

themselves in the \_present\_ want of what they wished for, is a \_virtue\_."--

\_Id.\_ "If the complaint be \_about\_ something really worthy \_of\_ your

notice."--\_Id.\_ "True fortitude I take to be the quiet possession of a

man's self, and an undisturbed doing \_of\_ his duty."--\_Id.\_ "For the custom

of tormenting and killing beasts, will, by degrees, harden their minds even

towards men."--\_Id.\_ "Children are whipped to it, and made \_to\_ spend many

hours of their precious time uneasily \_at\_ Latin."--\_Id. "On\_ this subject,

[the Harmony of Periods,] the ancient rhetoricians have entered into a very

minute and particular detail; more particular, indeed, than \_on\_ any other

\_head\_ that regards language."--See \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 122. "But the one

should not be omitted, \_and the other retained\_." Or: "But the one should

not be \_used without\_ the other."--\_Bullions cor. "From\_ some common forms

of speech, the relative pronoun is usually omitted."--\_Murray and Weld

cor.\_ "There are \_very many\_ causes which disqualify a witness \_for\_ being

received to testify in particular cases."--\_Adams cor.\_ "Aside \_from\_ all

regard to interest, we should expect that," &c.--\_Webster cor.\_ "My opinion

was given \_after\_ a rather cursory perusal of the book."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"And, [\_on\_] the next day, he was put on board \_of\_ his ship." Or thus:

"And, the next day, he was put \_aboard\_ his ship."--\_Id.\_ "Having the

command of no emotions, but what are raised by sight."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Did

these moral attributes exist in some other being \_besides\_ himself."

Or:--"in some other being \_than\_ himself."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "He did not

behave in that manner \_from\_ pride, or [\_from\_] contempt of the

tribunal."--\_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 113. "These prosecutions \_against\_

William seem to have been the most iniquitous measures pursued by the

court."--\_Murray and Priestley cor.\_ "To restore myself \_to\_ the good

graces of my fair critics."--\_Dryden cor.\_ "Objects denominated beautiful,

please not \_by\_ virtue of any one quality common to them all."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "This would have been less worthy \_of\_ notice, had not a writer or

two of high rank lately adopted it."--\_Churchill cor.\_

"A Grecian youth, \_of\_ talents rare,

Whom Plato's philosophic care," &c.--WHITEHEAD: E. R., p. 196.

LESSON XI.--PROMISCUOUS.

"To excel \_has\_ become a much less considerable object."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"My robe, and my integrity to \_Heav'n\_, are all I dare now call \_my\_

own."--\_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 347. "\_For\_ thou the garland \_wearst\_

successively."--\_Shak. cor.\_; also \_Enfield\_. "If \_then\_ thou \_art\_ a

\_Roman\_, take it forth."--\_Id.\_ "If thou \_prove\_ this to be real, thou must

be a smart lad indeed."--\_Neef cor.\_ "And \_an other\_ bridge of four hundred

\_feet\_ in length."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "METONYMY is \_the\_ putting \_of\_ one

name for \_an other\_, on account of the near relation \_which\_ there is

between them."--\_Fisher cor.\_ "ANTONOMASIA is \_the\_ putting \_of\_ an

appellative or common name for a proper name."--\_Id.\_ "\_That it is I,

should\_ make no difference in your determination."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The

first and second \_pages\_ are torn." Or. "The first and \_the\_ second \_page\_

are torn." Or: "The first \_page\_ and \_the\_ second are torn."--\_Id.\_ "John's

\_absence\_ from home occasioned the delay."--\_Id.\_ "His \_neglect of\_

opportunities for improvement, was the cause of his disgrace."--\_Id.\_ "He

will regret his \_neglect of his\_ opportunities \_for\_ improvement, when it

\_is\_ too late."--\_Id.\_ "His \_expertness at dancing\_ does not entitle him to

our regard."--\_Id.\_ "Cæsar went back to Rome, to take possession of the

public treasure, which his opponent, by a most unaccountable oversight, had

neglected \_to carry away\_ with him."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "And Cæsar took out

of the treasury, \_gold\_ to the amount of three thousand \_pounds'\_ weight,

besides an immense quantity of silver." [548]--\_Id.\_ "Rules and

definitions, which should always be \_as\_ clear and intelligible as

possible, are thus rendered obscure."--\_Greenleaf cor.\_ "So much both of

ability and \_of\_ merit is seldom found." Or thus: "So much \_of both\_

ability and merit is seldom found."[549]--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "If such maxims,

and such practices prevail, what \_has\_ become of decency and

virtue?"[550]--\_Murray's False Syntax\_, ii, 62. Or: "If such maxims and

practices prevail, what \_will\_ become of decency and virtue?"--\_Murray and

Bullions cor.\_ "Especially if the subject \_does not require\_ so much

pomp."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "However, the proper mixture of light and shade in

such compositions,--the exact adjustment of all the figurative

circumstances with the literal sense,--\_has\_ ever been \_found an affair\_ of

great nicety."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 151. "And adding to that hissing in our

language, which is so much \_noticed\_ by foreigners."--\_Addison, Coote, and

Murray, cor.\_ "\_To speak\_ impatiently to servants, or \_to do\_ any thing

that betrays unkindness, or ill-humour, is certainly criminal." Or better:

"Impatience, unkindness, or ill-humour, is certainly criminal."--\_Mur. et

al. cor.\_ "\_Here are\_ a \_fullness\_ and grandeur of expression, well suited

to the subject."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "I single \_out\_ Strada \_from\_ among the

moderns, because he had the foolish presumption to censure Tacitus."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "I single him out \_from\_ among the moderns, because,"

&c.--\_Bolingbroke cor.\_ "This \_rule is not\_ always observed, even by good

writers, \_so\_ strictly as it ought to be."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "But this

gravity and assurance, which \_are\_ beyond boyhood, being neither wisdom nor

knowledge, do never reach to manhood."--\_Pope cor.\_ "The regularity and

polish even of a turnpike-road, \_have\_ some influence upon the low people

in the neighbourhood."--\_Kames cor.\_ "They become fond of regularity and

neatness; \_and this improvement of their taste\_ is displayed, first upon

their yards and little enclosures, and next within doors."--\_Id.\_ "The

phrase, '\_it is impossible to exist\_,' gives us the idea, \_that it is\_

impossible for men, or any body, to exist."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "I'll give a

thousand \_pounds\_ to look upon him."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "The reader's knowledge,

as Dr. Campbell observes, may prevent \_him from\_ mistaking it."--\_Crombie

and Murray cor.\_ "When two words are set in contrast, or in opposition to

\_each\_ other, they are both emphatic."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The number of

\_the\_ persons--men, women, and children--who were lost in the sea, was very

great." Or thus: "The number of persons--men, women, and children--\_that\_

were lost in the sea, was very great."--\_Id.\_ "Nor is the resemblance

between the primary and \_the\_ resembling object pointed out."--\_Jamieson

cor.\_ "I think it the best book of the kind, \_that\_ I have met

with."--\_Mathews cor.\_

"Why should not we their ancient rites restore,

And be what Rome or Athens \_was\_ before?"--\_Roscommon cor.\_

LESSON XII.--TWO ERRORS.

"It is labour only \_that\_ gives relish to pleasure."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Groves are never \_more\_ agreeable \_than\_ in the opening of spring."--\_Id.\_

"His Philosophical Inquiry into the Origin of our Ideas \_of\_ the Sublime

and \_the\_ Beautiful, soon made him known to the literati."--See \_Blair's

Lect.\_, pp. 34 and 45. "An awful precipice or tower \_from which\_ we look

down on the objects which \_are\_ below."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "This passage,

though very poetical, is, however, harsh and obscure; \_and for\_ no other

cause \_than\_ this, that three distinct metaphors are crowded

together."--\_Id.\_ "I \_purpose to make\_ some observations."--\_Id.\_ "I shall

\_here\_ follow the same method \_that\_ I have all along pursued."--\_Id.\_

"Mankind \_at no other time\_ resemble \_one an\_ other so much as they do in

the beginnings of society."--\_Id.\_ "But no ear is sensible of the

termination of each foot, in \_the\_ reading \_of a\_ hexameter line."--\_Id.\_

"The first thing, says he, \_that\_ a writer \_either\_ of fables or of heroic

poems does, is, to choose some maxim or point of morality."--\_Id.\_ "The

fourth book has \_always\_ been most justly admired, and \_indeed it\_ abounds

with beauties of the highest kind."--\_Id.\_ "There is \_in\_ the poem no

attempt towards \_the\_ painting \_of\_ characters."--\_Id.\_ "But the artificial

contrasting of characters, and the \_constant\_ introducing \_of\_ them in

pairs and by opposites, \_give\_ too theatrical and affected an air to the

piece."--\_Id.\_ "Neither of them \_is\_ arbitrary \_or\_ local."--\_Kames cor.\_

"If \_the\_ crowding \_of\_ figures \_is\_ bad, it is still worse to graft one

figure upon \_an other\_."--\_Id.\_ "The \_crowding-together of\_ so many objects

lessens the pleasure."--\_Id.\_ "This therefore lies not in the \_putting-off

of\_ the hat, nor \_in the\_ making of compliments."--\_Locke cor.\_ "But the

Samaritan Vau may have been used, as the Jews \_used\_ the Chaldaic, both for

a vowel and \_for a\_ consonant."--\_Wilson cor.\_ "But if a solemn and \_a\_

familiar pronunciation really \_exist\_ in our language, is it not the

business of a grammarian to mark both?"--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "By making sounds

follow \_one an\_ other \_agreeably\_ to certain laws."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "If

there \_were\_ no drinking \_of\_ intoxicating draughts, there could be no

drunkards."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "Socrates knew his own defects, and if he was

proud of any thing, it was \_of\_ being thought to have none."--\_Goldsmith

cor.\_ "Lysander, having brought his army to Ephesus, erected an arsenal for

\_the\_ building of \_galleys\_."--\_Id.\_ "The use of these signs \_is\_ worthy

\_of\_ remark."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "He received me in the same manner \_in

which\_ I would \_receive\_ you." Or thus: "He received me \_as\_ I would

\_receive\_ you."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "Consisting of \_both\_ the direct and

\_the\_ collateral evidence."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "If any man or woman that

believeth \_hath\_ widows, let \_him\_ or \_her\_ relieve them, and let not the

church be charged."--\_Bible cor.\_ "For \_men's sake\_ are beasts bred."--\_W.

Walker cor.\_ "From three \_o'clock\_, there \_were\_ drinking and

gaming."--\_Id.\_ "Is this he that I am seeking, or \_not?\_"--\_Id.\_ "And for

the upholding \_of\_ every \_one's\_ own opinion, there is so much

ado."--\_Sewel cor.\_ "Some of them, however, will \_necessarily\_ be

\_noticed\_."--\_Sale cor.\_ "The boys conducted themselves \_very

indiscreetly\_."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "Their example, their influence, their

fortune,--every talent they possess,--\_dispenses\_ blessings on all

\_persons\_ around them."--\_Id. and Murray cor.\_ "The two \_Reynoldses\_

reciprocally converted \_each\_ other."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "The destroying \_of\_

the \_last two\_, Tacitus calls an attack upon virtue itself."--\_Goldsmith

cor.\_ "\_Moneys are\_ your suit."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "\_Ch\_ is commonly sounded

like \_tch\_, as in \_church\_; but in words derived from Greek, \_it\_ has the

sound of \_k\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "When one is obliged to make some utensil

\_serve for\_ purposes to which \_it was\_ not originally destined."--\_Campbell

cor.\_ "But that a \_baptism\_ with water is a \_washing-away\_ of sin, thou

canst not hence prove."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Being \_spoken\_ to \_but\_ one, it

infers no universal command."--\_Id.\_ "For if the \_laying-aside of\_

copulatives gives force and liveliness, a redundancy of them must render

the period languid."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "James used to compare him to a cat,

\_which\_ always \_falls\_ upon her legs."--\_Adam cor.\_

"From the low earth aspiring genius springs,

And sails triumphant \_borne\_ on \_eagle's\_ wings."--\_Lloyd cor.\_

LESSON XIII.--TWO ERRORS

"An ostentatious, a feeble, a harsh, or an obscure style, for instance,

\_is\_ always \_faulty\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Yet in this we find \_that\_ the

English pronounce \_quite agreeably\_ to rule." Or thus: "Yet in this we find

the English \_pronunciation\_ perfectly agreeable to rule." Or thus: "Yet in

this we find \_that\_ the English pronounce \_in a manner\_ perfectly agreeable

to rule."--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "But neither the perception of ideas, nor

knowledge of any sort, \_is a habit\_, though absolutely necessary to the

forming of \_habits\_."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "They were cast; and \_a\_ heavy

fine \_was\_ imposed upon them."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Without making this

reflection, he cannot enter into the spirit \_of the author, or\_ relish the

composition."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The scholar should be instructed \_in

relation\_ to \_the\_ finding \_of\_ his words." Or thus: "The scholar should be

\_told how\_ to \_find\_ his words."--\_Osborn cor.\_ "And therefore they could

neither have forged, \_nor have\_ reversified them."--\_Knight cor.\_ "A

dispensary is \_a\_ place \_at which\_ medicines are dispensed \_to the

poor\_."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "Both the connexion and \_the\_ number of words \_are\_

determined by general laws."--\_Neef cor.\_ "An Anapest has the \_first two\_

syllables unaccented, and the last \_one\_ accented; as, c~ontr~av=ene,

acquiésce."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "An explicative sentence is \_one in which\_ a

thing is said, \_in a direct manner\_, to be or not to be, to do or not to

do, to suffer or not to suffer."--\_Lowth and Mur. cor.\_ "BUT is a

conjunction \_whenever\_ it is neither an adverb nor \_a\_ preposition."

[551]--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "He wrote in the name \_of\_ King \_Ahasuerus\_, and

sealed \_the writing\_ with the king's ring."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Camm and Audland

\_had\_ departed \_from\_ the town before this time."--\_Sewel cor.\_ "\_Before

they will relinquish\_ the practice, they must be convinced."--\_Webster

cor.\_ "Which he had thrown up \_before he set\_ out."--\_Grimshaw cor.\_ "He

left \_to him\_ the value of \_a\_ hundred drachms in Persian money."--\_Spect

cor.\_ "All \_that\_ the mind can ever contemplate concerning them, must be

divided \_among\_ the three."--\_Cardell cor.\_ "Tom Puzzle is one of the most

eminent immethodical disputants, of \_all\_ that \_have\_ fallen under my

observation."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "When you have once got him to think himself

\_compensated\_ for his suffering, by the praise \_which\_ is given him for his

courage."--\_Locke cor.\_ "In all matters \_in which\_ simple reason, \_or\_ mere

speculation is concerned."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "And therefore he should be

spared \_from\_ the trouble of attending to anything else \_than\_ his

meaning."--\_Id.\_ "It is this kind of phraseology \_that\_ is distinguished by

the epithet \_idiomatical; a species that was\_ originally the spawn, partly

of ignorance, and partly of affectation."--\_Campbell and Murray cor.\_ "That

neither the inflection nor \_the letters\_ are such as could have been

employed by the ancient inhabitants of Latium."--\_Knight cor.\_ "In \_those\_

cases \_in which\_ the verb is intended to be applied to any one of the

terms."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "But \_these\_ people \_who\_ know not the law, are

accursed."--\_Bible cor.\_ "And the magnitude of the \_choruses has\_ weight

and sublimity."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "\_Dares\_ he deny \_that\_ there are some of

his fraternity guilty?"--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Giving an account of most, if not

all, \_of\_ the papers \_which\_ had passed betwixt them."--\_Id.\_ "In this

manner, \_as to both\_ parsing and correcting, \_should\_ all the rules of

syntax be treated, \_being taken up\_ regularly according to their

order."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_To\_ Ovando \_were\_ allowed a brilliant retinue

and a \_body-guard\_."--\_Sketch cor.\_ "\_Was\_ it I or he, \_that\_ you requested

to go?"--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Let \_thee\_ and \_me\_ go on."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "This I

nowhere affirmed; and \_I\_ do wholly deny \_it\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "But that I

deny; and \_it\_ remains for him to prove \_it\_."--\_Id.\_ "Our country sinks

beneath the yoke: \_She\_ weeps, \_she\_ bleeds, and each new day a gash Is

added to her wounds."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "Thou art the Lord who \_chose\_ Abraham

and \_brought\_ him forth out of Ur of the Chaldees."--\_Bible and Mur. cor.\_

"He is the exhaustless fountain, from which \_emanate\_ all these attributes

that \_exist\_ throughout this wide creation."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "I am he who

\_has\_ communed with the son of Neocles; I am he who \_has\_ entered the

gardens of pleasure."--\_Wright cor.\_

"Such \_were\_ in ancient times the tales received,

Such by our good forefathers \_were\_ believed."--\_Rowe cor.\_

LESSON XIV.--TWO ERRORS.

"The noun or pronoun that \_stands\_ before the active verb, \_usually

represents\_ the agent."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "Such \_seem\_ to \_have been\_ the

musings of our hero of the grammar-quill, when he penned the first part of

his grammar."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "Two dots, the one placed above the other

[:], \_are\_ called Sheva, and \_are used to represent\_ a very short

\_e\_."--\_Wilson cor.\_ "Great \_have\_ been, and \_are\_, the obscurity and

difficulty, in the nature and application of them" [: i.e.--of natural

remedies].--\_Butler cor.\_ "As two \_are\_ to four, so \_are\_ four to

eight."--\_Everest cor.\_ "The invention and use of arithmetic, \_reach\_ back

to a period so remote, as \_to be\_ beyond the knowledge of history."--

\_Robertson cor.\_ "What it presents as objects of contemplation or

enjoyment, \_fill\_ and \_satisfy\_ his mind."--\_Id.\_ "If he \_dares\_ not say

they are, as I know he \_dares\_ not, how must I then distinguish?"--\_Barclay

cor.\_ "He \_had\_ now grown so fond of solitude, that all company \_had\_

become uneasy to him."--\_Life of Cic. cor.\_ "Violence and spoil \_are\_ heard

in her; before me continually \_are\_ grief and wounds."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Bayle's Intelligence from the Republic of Letters, which \_makes\_ eleven

volumes in duodecimo, \_is\_ truly a model in this kind."--\_Formey cor.\_

"Pauses, to \_be rendered\_ pleasing and expressive, must not only be made in

the right place, but also \_be\_ accompanied with a proper tone of

voice."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_To oppose\_ the opinions and \_rectify\_ the

mistakes of others, is what truth and sincerity sometimes require of

us."--\_Locke cor.\_ "It is very probable, that this assembly was called, to

clear some doubt which the king had, \_whether it were lawful for the

Hollanders to throw\_ off the monarchy of Spain, and \_withdraw\_ entirely

their allegiance to that crown." Or:--"About the lawfulness of the

Hollanders' \_rejection of\_ the monarchy of Spain, and \_entire withdrawment

of\_ their allegiance to that crown."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_A\_ naming \_of\_ the

numbers and cases of a noun in their order, is called \_the\_ declining \_of\_

it, or \_its declension\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ "The embodying \_of\_ them is,

therefore, only \_a\_ collecting \_of\_ such component parts of words."--\_Town

cor.\_ "The one is the voice heard \_when Christ was\_ baptized; the other,

\_when he was\_ transfigured."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "\_An\_ understanding \_of\_ the

literal sense"--or, "\_To have understood\_ the literal sense, would not have

prevented \_them from\_ condemning the guiltless."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "As if

this were, \_to take\_ the execution of justice out of the hands of God, and

\_to give\_ it to nature."--\_Id.\_ "They will say, you must conceal this good

opinion of yourself; which yet is \_an\_ allowing \_of\_ the thing, though not

\_of\_ the showing \_of\_ it." Or:--"which yet is, \_to allow\_ the thing, though

not the showing \_of\_ it."--\_Sheffield cor.\_ "So as to signify not only the

doing \_of\_ an action, but the causing \_of\_ it to be done."--\_Pike cor.\_

"This, certainly, was both \_a\_ dividing \_of\_ the unity of God, and \_a\_

limiting \_of\_ his immensity."--\_Calvin cor.\_ "Tones being infinite in

number, and varying in almost every individual, the arranging \_of\_ them

under distinct heads, and \_the\_ reducing \_of\_ them to any fixed and

permanent rules, may be considered as the last refinement in

language."--\_Knight cor.\_ "The fierce anger of the Lord shall not return,

until he \_hath\_ done it, and until he \_hath\_ performed the intents of his

heart."--\_Bible cor.\_ "We seek for deeds \_more\_ illustrious and heroic, for

events more diversified and surprising."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "We distinguish

the genders, or the male and \_the\_ female sex, \_in\_ four different

ways."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Thus, \_ch\_ and \_g\_ are ever hard. It is therefore

proper to retain these sounds in \_those\_ Hebrew names which have not been

\_modernized\_, or changed by public use."--\_Dr. Wilson cor.\_ "\_A\_

Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any thing \_which is\_ conceived to

subsist, or of which we have any notion."--\_Murray and Lowth cor.\_ "\_A\_

Noun is the name of any thing \_which\_ exists, or of which we have, or can

form, an idea."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "A Noun is the name of any thing in

existence, or \_of any thing\_ of which we can form an idea."--\_Id.\_ "The

next thing to be \_attended to\_, is, to keep him exactly to \_the\_ speaking

of truth."--\_Locke cor.\_ "The material, \_the\_ vegetable, and \_the\_ animal

world, receive this influence according to their several

capacities."--\_Dial cor.\_ "And yet it is fairly defensible on the

principles of the schoolmen; if \_those things\_ can be called principles,

which \_consist\_ merely in words."--\_Campbell cor.\_

"Art thou so bare, and full of wretchedness,

And \_fearst\_ to die? Famine is in thy cheeks,

Need and oppression \_starve\_ in thy \_sunk\_ eyes."--\_Shak. cor.\_

LESSON XV.--THREE ERRORS.

"The silver age is reckoned to have commenced \_at\_ the death of Augustus,

and \_to have\_ continued \_till\_ the end of Trajan's reign."--\_Gould cor.\_

"Language \_has indeed\_ become, in modern times, more correct, and \_more

determinate\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "It is evident, that \_those\_ words are

\_the\_ most agreeable to the ear, which are composed of smooth and liquid

sounds, \_and in which\_ there is a proper intermixture of vowels and

consonants."--\_Id.\_ "It would have had no other effect, \_than\_ to add \_to\_

the sentence \_an unnecessary\_ word."--\_Id.\_ "But as rumours arose, \_that\_

the judges \_had\_ been corrupted by money in this cause, these gave

\_occasion\_ to much popular clamour, and \_threw\_ a heavy odium on

Cluentius."--\_Id.\_ "A Participle is derived \_from\_ a verb, and partakes of

the nature both of the verb and \_of an\_ adjective."--\_Ash and Devis cor.\_

"I \_shall\_ have learned my grammar before you \_will have learned

yours\_."--\_Wilbur and Livingston cor.\_ "There is no \_other\_ earthly object

capable of making \_so\_ various and \_so\_ forcible impressions upon the human

mind, as a complete speaker."--\_Perry cor.\_ "It was not the carrying \_of\_

the bag, \_that\_ made Judas a thief and \_a\_ hireling."--\_South cor.\_ "As the

reasonable soul and \_the\_ flesh \_are\_ one man, so God and man \_are\_ one

Christ."--\_Creed cor.\_ "And I will say to them \_who\_ were not my people,

\_Ye are\_ my people; and they shall say, Thou art \_our\_ God."--\_Bible cor.\_

"Where there is \_in the sense\_ nothing \_that\_ requires the last sound to be

elevated or \_suspended\_, an easy fall, sufficient to show that the sense is

finished, will be proper."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "Each party \_produce\_ words \_in

which\_ the letter \_a\_ is sounded in the manner \_for which\_ they

contend."--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "To countenance persons \_that\_ are guilty of

bad actions, is scarcely one remove from \_an actual commission of the same

crimes\_."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "'To countenance persons \_that\_ are guilty of bad

actions,' is a \_phrase or clause\_ which is \_made\_ the \_subject of\_ the verb

'is.'"--\_Id.\_ "What is called \_the\_ splitting of particles,--\_that is, the\_

separating \_of\_ a preposition from the noun which it governs, is always to

be avoided."--\_Dr. Blair et al. cor.\_ (See Obs. 15th on Rule 23d.) "There

is properly \_but\_ one pause, or rest, in the sentence; \_and this falls\_

betwixt the two members into which \_the sentence\_ is divided."--\_Iid.\_ "\_To

go\_ barefoot, does not at all help \_a man\_ on, \_in\_ the way to

heaven."--\_Steele cor.\_ "There is \_nobody who does not condemn\_ this in

others, though \_many\_ overlook it in themselves."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Be careful

not to use the same word \_in\_ the same sentence \_either\_ too frequently

\_or\_ in different senses."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Nothing could have made her

\_more\_ unhappy, \_than to have married\_ a man \_of\_ such principles."--\_Id.\_

"A warlike, various, and tragical age is \_the\_ best to write of, but \_the\_

worst to write in."--\_Cowley cor.\_ "When thou \_instancest Peter's\_

babtizing [sic--KTH] \_of\_ Cornelius."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "To introduce two or

more leading thoughts or \_topics\_, which have no natural \_affinity\_ or

\_mutual\_ dependence."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Animals, again, are fitted to one

\_an other\_, and to the elements \_or regions in which\_ they live, and to

which they are as appendices."--\_Id.\_ "This melody, \_however\_, or so

\_frequent\_ varying \_of\_ the sound of each word, is a proof of nothing, but

of the fine ear of that people."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "They can, each in \_its

turn\_, be \_used\_ upon occasion."--\_Duncan cor.\_ "In this reign, lived the

\_poets\_ Gower and Chaucer, who are the first authors \_that\_ can properly be

said to have written English."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "In translating expressions

\_of this\_ kind, consider the [phrase] '\_it is\_' as if it were \_they

are\_."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "The chin has an important office to perform; for,

\_by the degree of\_ its activity, we disclose \_either\_ a polite or \_a\_

vulgar pronunciation."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "For no other reason, \_than that he

was\_ found in bad company."--\_Webster cor.\_ "It is usual to compare them

\_after\_ the manner \_of polysyllables\_."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The infinitive

mood is \_recognized more easily\_ than any \_other\_, because the preposition

TO precedes it."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Prepositions, you recollect, connect words,

\_and so do\_ conjunctions: how, then, can you tell \_a conjunction\_ from \_a

preposition\_?" Or:--"how, then, can you \_distinguish\_ the \_former\_ from the

\_latter\_?"--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_

"No kind of work requires \_a nicer\_ touch,

And, \_this\_ well finish'd, \_none else\_ shines so much."

--\_Sheffield cor.\_

LESSON XVI.--THREE ERRORS.

"\_On\_ many occasions, it is the final pause alone, \_that\_ marks the

difference between prose and verse: \_this\_ will be evident from the

following arrangement of a few poetical lines."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "I shall

do all I can to persuade others to take \_for their cure\_ the same measures

\_that\_ I have \_taken for mine\_."--\_Guardian cor.\_; also \_Murray\_. "It is

the nature of extreme self-lovers, \_that\_ they will set \_a\_ house on fire,

\_as\_ it were, but to roast their eggs."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "Did ever man

struggle more earnestly in a cause \_in which\_ both his honour and \_his\_

life \_were\_ concerned?"--\_Duncan cor.\_ "So the rests, \_or\_ pauses, \_which

separate\_ sentences \_or\_ their parts, are marked by points."--\_Lowth cor.\_

"Yet the case and \_mood are\_ not influenced by them, but \_are\_ determined

by the nature of the sentence."--\_Id.\_ "\_Through inattention\_ to this rule,

many errors have been committed: \_several\_ of which \_are here\_ subjoined,

as a further caution and direction to the learner."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Though thou \_clothe\_ thyself with crimson, though thou \_deck\_ thee with

ornaments of gold, though thou \_polish\_ thy face with painting, in vain

shalt thou make thyself fair." [552]--\_Bible cor.\_ "But that the doing \_of\_

good to others, will make us happy, is not so evident; \_the\_ feeding \_of\_

the hungry, for example, or \_the\_ clothing \_of\_ the naked." Or: "But that,

\_to do\_ good to others, will make us happy, is not so evident; \_to feed\_

the hungry, for example, or \_to clothe\_ the naked."--\_Kames cor.\_ "There is

no other God \_than he\_, no other light \_than\_ his." Or: "There is no God

\_but he\_, no light \_but\_ his."--\_Penn cor.\_ "How little reason \_is there\_

to wonder, that a \_powerful\_ and accomplished orator should be one of the

characters that \_are\_ most rarely found."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Because they

express \_neither the\_ doing nor \_the\_ receiving \_of\_ an action."--\_Inf. S.

Gram. cor.\_ "To find the answers, will require an effort of mind; and, when

\_right answers are\_ given, \_they\_ will be the result of reflection, \_and

show\_ that the subject is understood."--\_Id.\_ "'The sun rises,' is \_an

expression\_ trite and common; but \_the same idea\_ becomes a magnificent

image, when expressed \_in the language of\_ Mr. Thomson."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"The declining \_of\_ a word is the giving \_of its\_ different endings." Or:

"\_To decline\_ a word, is \_to give\_ it different endings."--\_Ware cor.\_ "And

so much are they for \_allowing\_ every \_one to follow his\_ own

mind."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "More than one overture for peace \_were\_ made, but

Cleon prevented \_them from\_ taking effect."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Neither in

English, \_nor\_ in any other language, is this word, \_or\_ that which

corresponds to it in \_meaning\_, any more an article, than TWO, THREE, \_or\_

FOUR."--\_Webster cor.\_ "But the most irksome conversation of all that I

have met \_with in\_ the neighbourhood, has been \_with\_ two or three of your

travellers."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "Set down the \_first two\_ terms of \_the\_

supposition, \_one under the other\_, in the first place."--\_Smiley cor.\_ "It

is \_a\_ useful \_practice\_ too, to fix \_one's\_ eye on some of the most

distant persons in the assembly."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "He will generally

please \_his hearers\_ most, when \_to please them\_ is not his sole \_or his\_

chief aim."--\_Id.\_ "At length, the consuls return to the camp, and inform

\_the soldiers, that\_ they could \_obtain for them\_ no other terms \_than

those\_ of surrendering their arms and passing under the yoke."--\_Id.\_ "Nor

\_are\_ mankind so much to blame, in \_their\_ choice thus determining

\_them\_."--\_Swift cor.\_ "These forms are what \_are\_ called \_the Numbers\_."

Or: "These forms are called \_Numbers\_."--\_Fosdick cor.\_ "In \_those\_

languages which admit but two genders, all nouns are either masculine or

feminine, even though they designate beings \_that\_ are neither male \_nor\_

female."--\_Id.\_ "It is called \_Verb\_ or \_Word\_ by way of eminence, because

it is the most essential word in a sentence, \_and one\_ without which the

other parts of speech \_cannot\_ form \_any\_ complete sense."--\_Gould cor.\_

"The sentence will consist of two members, \_and these will\_ commonly \_be\_

separated from \_each\_ other by a comma."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "Loud and soft in

speaking \_are\_ like the \_fortè\_ and \_piano\_ in music; \_they\_ only \_refer\_

to the different degrees of force used in the same key: whereas high and

low imply a change of key."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "They are chiefly three: the

acquisition of knowledge; the assisting \_of\_ the memory to treasure up this

knowledge; \_and\_ the communicating \_of\_ it to others."--\_Id.\_

"\_This\_ kind of knaves I know, \_who\_ in this plainness

Harbour more craft, and \_hide\_ corrupter ends,

Than twenty silly ducking observants."--\_Shak. cor.\_

LESSON XVII.--MANY ERRORS.

"A man will be forgiven, even \_for\_ great errors, \_committed\_ in a foreign

language; but, in \_the use he makes of\_ his own, even the least slips are

justly \_pointed out\_ and ridiculed."--\_Amer. Chesterfield cor.\_ "LET

expresses \_not only\_ permission, but \_entreaty, exhortation, and

command\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_; also \_Murray, et al.\_ "That death which is our

leaving \_of\_ this world, is nothing else \_than the putting-off of\_ these

bodies."--\_Sherlock cor.\_ "They differ from the saints recorded \_in either\_

the Old \_or the\_ New \_Testament\_."--\_Newton cor.\_ "The nature of relation,

\_therefore\_, consists in the referring or comparing \_of\_ two things to

\_each\_ other; from which comparison, one or both \_come\_ to be

denominated."--\_Locke cor.\_ "It is not credible, that there \_is\_ any one

who will say, that \_through\_ the whole course of \_his life he\_ has kept

\_himself entirely\_ undefiled, \_without\_ the least spot or stain of

sin."--\_Witsius cor.\_ "If \_to act\_ conformably to the will of our

Creator,--if \_to promote\_ the welfare of mankind around us,--if \_to secure\_

our own happiness, \_is an object\_ of the highest moment; then are we loudly

called upon to cultivate and extend the great interests of religion and

virtue." Or: "If, to act conformably to the will of our Creator, to promote

the welfare of mankind around us, \_and\_ to secure our own happiness, \_are

objects\_ of the highest moment; then," &c.--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "The verb

being in the plural number, it is supposed, that \_the officer and his guard

are joint agents. But this\_ is not the case: the only nominative to the

verb is '\_officer\_.' In the expression, '\_with his guard\_,' the \_noun

'guard' is\_ in the objective case, \_being\_ governed by the preposition

\_with\_; and \_consequently it\_ cannot form the nominative, or any part of

it. The prominent subject \_for the agreement\_, the true nominative \_to\_ the

verb, \_or the term\_ to which the verb peculiarly refers, is the \_word

'officer.'\_"--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "This is \_an other\_ use, that, in my

opinion, contributes to make a man learned \_rather\_ than wise; and is

\_incapable\_ of pleasing \_either\_ the understanding or \_the\_

imagination."--\_Addison cor.\_ "The work is a dull performance; and is

\_incapable\_ of pleasing \_either\_ the understanding \_or\_ the

imagination."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "I would recommend the 'Elements of English

Grammar,' by Mr. Frost. \_The\_ plan \_of this little work is similar to that

of Mr. L. Murray's smallest Grammar\_; but, \_in order\_ to meet the

understanding of children, \_its\_ definitions and language \_are\_ simplified,

\_so\_ far as the nature of the subject will admit. It also embraces more

examples \_for\_ Parsing, than \_are\_ usual in elementary treatises."--\_S. R.

Hall cor.\_ "More rain falls in the first two summer months, than in the

first two \_months\_ of winter; but \_what falls\_, makes a much greater show

upon the earth, in \_winter\_ than in \_summer\_, because there is a much

slower evaporation."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "They often contribute also to

\_render\_ some persons prosperous, though wicked; and, \_what\_ is still

worse, to \_reward\_ some actions, though vicious; and \_punish\_ other

actions, though virtuous."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Hence, to such a man,

\_arise\_ naturally a secret satisfaction, \_a\_ sense of security, and \_an\_

implicit hope of somewhat further."--\_Id.\_ "So much for the third and last

cause of illusion, that was \_noticed above; which arises\_ from the abuse of

very general and abstract terms; \_and\_ which is the principal source of the

\_abundant\_ nonsense that \_has\_ been vented by metaphysicians, mystagogues,

and theologians."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "As to those animals \_which are\_ less

common, or \_which\_, on account of the places they inhabit, fall less under

our observation, as fishes and birds, or \_which\_ their diminutive size

removes still further from our observation, we generally, in English,

employ a single noun to designate both genders, \_the\_ masculine and \_the\_

feminine."--\_Fosdick cor.\_ "Adjectives may always be distinguished by their

\_relation to other words: they express\_ the quality, condition, \_or

number\_, of whatever \_things are\_ mentioned."--\_Emmons cor.\_ "\_An\_ adverb

\_is\_ a word added to a verb, \_a\_ participle, \_an\_ adjective, or \_an\_ other

adverb; \_and generally expresses time, place, degree, or

manner\_."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 29. "The \_joining-together of\_ two objects,

\_so\_ grand, and the representing \_of\_ them both, as subject at one moment

to the command of God, \_produce\_ a noble effect."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Twisted columns, for instance, are undoubtedly ornamental; but, as they

have an appearance of weakness, they displease \_the eye, whenever\_ they are

\_used\_ to support any \_massy\_ part of a building, \_or what\_ seems to

require a more substantial prop."--\_Id.\_ "\_In\_ a vast number of

inscriptions, some upon rocks, some upon stones of a defined shape, is

found an Alphabet different from the \_Greeks', the Latins'\_, and \_the

Hebrews'\_, and also unlike that of any modern nation."--\_W. C. Fowler cor.\_

LESSON XVIII.--MANY ERRORS.

"The empire of Blefuscu is an island situated on the northeast side of

Lilliput, from \_which\_ it is parted by a channel of \_only\_ 800 yards \_in

width\_."--\_Swift and Kames cor.\_ "The nominative case usually \_denotes\_ the

agent or doer; and \_any noun or pronoun which is\_ the subject of a \_finite\_

verb, \_is always in this case\_."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "There \_are, in\_ his

allegorical personages, an originality, \_a\_ richness, and \_a\_ variety,

which almost \_vie\_ with the splendours of the ancient mythology."--\_Hazlitt

cor.\_ "As neither the Jewish nor \_the\_ Christian revelation \_has\_ been

universal, and as \_each has\_ been afforded to a greater or \_a\_ less part of

the world at different times; so likewise, at different times, both

revelations have had different degrees of evidence."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_

"Thus we see, that, \_to kill\_ a man with a sword, \_and to kill one\_ with a

hatchet, are looked upon as no distinct species of action; but, if the

point of the sword first enter the body, \_the action\_ passes for a distinct

species, called \_stabbing\_."--\_Locke cor.\_ "If a soul sin, and commit a

trespass against the Lord, and lie unto his neighbour \_concerning\_ that

which was delivered him to keep, or \_deceive\_ his neighbour, or \_find\_ that

which was lost, and \_lie\_ concerning it, and \_swear\_ falsely; in any of all

these that a man doeth, sinning therein, then it shall be," &c.--\_Bible

cor.\_ "As, \_to do\_ and \_teach\_ the commandments of God, is the great proof

of virtue; so, \_to break\_ them, and \_to teach\_ others to break them, \_are\_

the great \_proofs\_ of vice."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "The latter simile, \_in\_

Pope's terrific maltreatment of \_it\_, is true \_neither\_ to \_the\_ mind \_nor

to the\_ eye."--\_Coleridge cor.\_ "And the two brothers were seen,

transported with rage and fury, like Eteocles and Polynices, \_each

endeavouring\_ to plunge \_his sword\_ into \_the other's heart\_, and to assure

\_himself\_ of the throne by the death of \_his\_ rival."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "Is

it not plain, therefore, that neither the castle, \_nor\_ the planet, nor the

cloud, which you \_here\_ see, \_is that\_ real \_one\_ which you suppose \_to\_

exist at a distance?"--\_Berkley cor.\_ "I have often wondered, how it comes

to pass, that every body should love \_himself\_ best, and yet value \_his

neighbours'\_ opinion about \_himself\_ more than \_his\_ own."--\_Collier cor.\_

"Virtue, ([Greek: Aretæ], \_Virtus\_,) as well as most of its species, \_when

sex is figuratively ascribed to it, is made\_ feminine, perhaps from \_its\_

beauty and amiable appearance."--\_Harris cor.\_ "Virtue, with most of its

species, is \_made\_ feminine \_when personified\_; and so is Vice, \_perhaps\_

for being Virtue's opposite."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_; also \_Buchanan\_. "From

this deduction, \_it\_ may \_easily\_ be seen, how it comes to pass, that

personification makes so great a figure in all compositions \_in which\_

imagination or passion \_has\_ any concern."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "An Article is

a word \_placed before a noun\_, to point \_it\_ out \_as such\_, and to show how

far \_its\_ signification extends."--\_Folker cor.\_ "All men have certain

natural, essential, and inherent rights;--among which are the \_rights of\_

enjoying and defending life and liberty; \_of\_ acquiring, possessing, and

protecting property; and, in a word, of seeking and obtaining

happiness."--\_Const. of N. H. cor.\_ "From \_those\_ grammarians who form

their ideas and make their decisions, respecting this part of English

grammar, \_from\_ the principles and construction of \_other\_ languages,--\_of

languages\_ which do not in these points \_accord with\_ our own, but \_which\_

differ considerably from it,--we may naturally expect grammatical schemes

that \_will be neither\_ perspicuous nor consistent, and \_that\_ will tend

\_rather\_ to perplex than \_to\_ inform the learner."--\_Murray and Hall cor.

"Indeed\_ there are but very few who know how to be idle and innocent, or

\_who\_ have a relish \_for\_ any pleasures that are not criminal; every

diversion \_which the majority\_ take, is at the expense of some one virtue

or \_other\_, and their very first step out of business is into vice or

folly."--\_Addison cor.\_

"Hail, holy Love! thou \_bliss\_ that \_sumst\_ all bliss!

\_Giv'st\_ and \_receiv'st\_ all bliss; fullest when most

Thou \_giv'st\_; spring-head of all felicity!"--\_Pollok cor.\_

CHAPTER XIII--GENERAL RULE.

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE GENERAL RULE.

LESSON I.--ARTICLES.

(1.) "\_The\_ article is a part of speech placed before nouns." Or thus:

"\_An\_ article is a \_word\_ placed before nouns."--\_Comly cor.\_ (2.) "\_The\_

article is a part of speech used to limit nouns."--\_Gilbert cor.\_ (3.) "An

article is a \_word\_ set before nouns to fix their vague

signification."--\_Ash cor.\_ (4.) "\_The\_ adjective is a part of speech used

to describe \_something named by a\_ noun."--\_Gilbert cor.\_ (5.) "A pronoun

is a \_word\_ used \_in stead\_ of a noun."--\_Id. and Weld cor.: Inst.\_, p. 45.

(6.) "\_The\_ pronoun is a part of speech which is often used \_in stead\_ of a

noun."--\_Brit. Gram. and Buchanan cor.\_ (7.) "A verb is a \_word\_ which

signifies \_to be, to do\_, or \_to be acted upon\_."--\_Merchant cor.\_ (8.)

"\_The\_ verb is a part of speech which signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

receive an action\_."--\_Comly cor.\_ (9.) "\_The\_ verb is \_the\_ part of speech

by which any thing is asserted."--\_Weld cor.\_ (10.) "\_The\_ verb is a part

of speech, which expresses action or existence in a direct

manner."--\_Gilbert cor.\_ (11.) "A participle is a \_word\_ derived from a

verb, and expresses action or existence in an indirect manner."--\_Id.\_

(12.) "\_The\_ participle is a part of speech derived from \_the\_ verb, and

denotes being, doing, or suffering, and implies time, as a verb

does."--\_Brit. Gram. and Buchanan cor.\_ (13.) "\_The\_ adverb is a part of

speech used to add \_some modification\_ to the meaning of verbs, adjectives,

and participles."--\_Gilbert cor.\_ (14.) "An adverb is an indeclinable

\_word\_ added to a verb, [\_a participle,] an\_ adjective, or \_an\_ other

adverb, to express some circumstance, \_accident\_, or manner of \_its\_

signification."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ (15.) "An adverb is a \_word added\_

to a verb, an adjective, a participle, \_or an\_ other adverb, to express the

circumstance of \_time, place, degree, or manner\_."--\_Dr. Ash cor.\_ (16.)

"An adverb is a \_word added\_ to a verb, \_an\_ adjective, \_a\_ participle,

\_or\_, sometimes, \_an\_ other adverb, to express some \_circumstance\_

respecting \_the sense\_."--\_Beck cor.\_ (17.) "\_The\_ adverb is a part of

speech, which is \_added\_ to \_verbs, adjectives, participles\_, or to other

\_adverbs\_, to express some modification or circumstance, quality or manner,

of their signification."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ (18.) "\_The\_ adverb is a part of

speech \_which we add\_ to \_the verb\_, (whence the name,) \_to the adjective

or participle likewise\_, and sometimes even to \_an other adverb\_."--\_Bucke

cor.\_ (19.) "A conjunction is a \_word\_ used to connect words \_or\_

sentences."--\_Gilbert and Weld cor.\_ (20.) "\_The\_ conjunction is a part of

speech that joins words or sentences together."--\_Ash cor.\_ (21.) "\_The\_

conjunction is that part of speech which \_connects\_ sentences, or parts of

sentences, or single words."--\_D. Blair cor.\_ (22.) "\_The\_ conjunction is a

part of speech that is used principally to connect sentences, so as, out of

two, three, or more sentences, to make one."--\_Bucke cor.\_ (23.) "\_The\_

conjunction is a part of speech that is used to connect \_words or\_

sentences \_together; but\_, chiefly, \_to join\_ simple sentences into \_such

as are\_ compound."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ (24.) "A conjunction is a \_word\_ which

joins \_words or\_ sentences together, and \_shows\_ the manner of their

\_dependence, as they stand in connexion\_."--\_Brit. Gram. et al. cor.\_ (25.)

"A preposition is a \_word\_ used to show the relation between other words,

\_and govern the subsequent term\_."--\_Gilbert cor.\_ (26.) "A preposition is

a \_governing word\_ which serves to connect \_other\_ words, and \_to\_ show the

relation between them."--\_Frost cor.\_ (27.) "A preposition is a \_governing

particle\_ used to connect words and show their relation."--\_Weld cor.\_

(28.) "\_The\_ preposition is that part of speech which shows the \_various

positions\_ of persons or things, \_and\_ the \_consequent relations\_ that

\_certain words bear\_ toward \_one an\_ other."--\_David Blair cor.\_ (29.)

"\_The\_ preposition is a part of speech, which, being added to \_certain\_

other parts of speech, serves to \_show\_ their state \_of\_ relation, or

\_their\_ reference to each other."--\_Brit. Gram. and Buchanan cor.\_ (30.)

"\_The\_ interjection is a part of speech used to express sudden passion or

\_strong\_ emotion."--\_Gilbert cor.\_ (31.) "An interjection is an

\_unconnected word\_ used in giving utterance to some sudden feeling or

\_strong\_ emotion."--\_Weld cor.\_ (32.) "\_The\_ interjection is that part of

speech which denotes any sudden affection or \_strong\_ emotion of the

mind."--\_David Blair cor.\_ (33.) "An interjection is \_an independent word

or sound\_ thrown into discourse, and denotes some sudden passion or

\_strong\_ emotion of the soul."--\_Brit. Gram. and Buchanan cor.\_

(34.) "\_The\_ scene might tempt some peaceful sage

To rear \_a lonely\_ hermitage."--\_Gent. of Aberdeen cor.\_

(35.) "Not all the storms that shake the pole,

Can e'er disturb thy halcyon soul,

And \_smooth unalter'd\_ brow."--\_Barbauld's Poems\_, p. 42.

LESSON II.--NOUNS.

"The \_throne\_ of every monarchy felt the shock."--\_Frelinghuysen cor.\_

"These principles ought to be deeply impressed upon the \_mind\_ of every

American."--\_Dr. N. Webster cor.\_ "The \_words\_ CHURCH and SHIRE are

radically the same."--\_Id.\_ "They may not, in their present form, be

readily accommodated to every circumstance belonging to the possessive

\_case\_ of nouns."--\_L. Murray cor. "Will\_, in the second and third

\_persons\_, only \_foretells\_."--\_Id.; Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 41. "Which seem to

form the true distinction between the subjunctive and the indicative

\_mood\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The very general approbation which this

performance of \_Walker's\_ has received from the public."--\_Id.\_ "Lest she

carry her improvements \_of this kind\_ too far." Or thus: "Lest she carry

her improvements \_in\_ this way too far."--\_Id. and Campbell cor.\_ "Charles

was extravagant, and by \_his prodigality\_ became poor and despicable."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "We should entertain no \_prejudice\_ against simple and rustic

persons."--\_Id.\_ "These are indeed the \_foundation\_ of all solid

merit."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "And his embellishment, by means of \_figures,

musical cadences\_, or other \_ornaments\_ of speech."--\_Id.\_ "If he is at no

pains to engage us by the employment of figures, musical arrangement, or

any other \_ornament of style\_."--\_Id.\_ "The most eminent of the sacred

poets, are, \_David, Isaiah\_, and the \_author\_ of the Book of Job."--\_Id.\_

"Nothing in any \_poem\_, is more beautifully described than the death of old

Priam."--\_Id.\_ "When two vowels meet together, and are \_joined in one

syllable\_, they are called \_a diphthong\_."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "How many

\_Esses\_ would \_goodness'\_ then end with? Three; as \_goodness's\_."--\_Id.

"Birds\_ is a noun; it is the \_common\_ name of \_feathered

animals\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Adam gave names to \_all\_ living \_creatures\_."

Or thus: "Adam gave \_a name\_ to every living creature."--\_Bicknell cor.\_

"The steps of a \_flight of stairs\_ ought to be accommodated to the human

figure." Or thus: "\_Stairs\_ ought to be accommodated to the \_ease of the

users\_."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Nor ought an emblem, more than a simile, to be

founded on \_a\_ low or familiar \_object\_."--\_Id.\_ "Whatever the Latin has

not from the Greek, it has from the \_Gothic\_."--\_Tooke cor.\_ "The \_mint\_,

and \_the office of the secretary of state\_, are neat buildings."--\_The

Friend cor.\_ "The scenes of dead and still \_existence\_ are apt to pall upon

us."--\_Blair cor.\_ "And Thomas Aquinas and Duns Scotus, the angelical

\_doctor\_ and the subtle, are the brightest stars in the scholastic

constellation."--\_Lit. Hist. cor.\_ "The English language has three methods

of distinguishing the \_sexes\_."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_; also \_R. C. Smith\_.

"In English, there are the three following methods of distinguishing \_the

sexes\_."--\_Jaudon cor.\_ "There are three ways of distinguishing the

\_sexes\_."--\_Lennie et al. cor.\_; also \_Merchant. "The sexes are\_

distinguished in three ways."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "Neither discourse in

general, nor poetry in particular, can be called altogether an imitative

\_art\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Do we for this the gods and conscience brave,

That one may rule and \_all\_ the rest \_enslave\_?"--\_Rowe cor.\_

LESSON III.--ADJECTIVES.

"There is a deal \_more\_ of heads, than \_of\_ either heart or

horns."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "For, of all villains, I think he has the \_most

improper name\_."--\_Bunyan cor.\_ "Of all the men that I met in my

pilgrimage, he, I think, bears the \_wrongest\_ name."--\_Id.\_ "I am

\_surprised\_ to see so much of the distribution, and \_so many of the\_

technical terms, of the Latin grammar, retained in the grammar of our

tongue."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Nor did the Duke of Burgundy bring him \_any\_

assistance."--\_Hume and Priestley cor.\_ "Else he will find it difficult to

make \_an\_ obstinate \_person\_ believe him."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "Are there

any adjectives which form the degrees of comparison \_in a manner\_ peculiar

to themselves?"--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "Yet \_all\_ the verbs are of the

indicative mood."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "The word \_candidate\_ is \_absolute\_, in the

\_nominative\_ case."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "An Iambus has the first syllable

unaccented, and the \_last\_ accented."--\_L. Murray, D. Blair, Jamieson,

Kirkham, Bullions, Guy, Merchant\_, and others. "A Dactyl has the first

syllable accented, and the \_last two [syllables\_] unaccented."--\_Murray et

al. cor.\_ "It is proper to begin with a capital the first word of every

book, chapter, letter, note, or[553] other piece of writing."--\_Jaudon's

Gram.\_, p. 195; \_John Flint's\_, 105. "Five and seven make twelve, and one

\_more\_ makes thirteen."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "I wish to cultivate a \_nearer\_

acquaintance with you."--\_Id.\_ "Let us consider the means \_which are

proper\_ to effect our purpose." Or thus: "Let us consider \_what\_ means

\_are\_ proper to effect our purpose."--\_Id.\_ "Yet they are of \_so\_ similar a

nature as readily to mix and blend."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The Latin is formed

on the same model, but \_is\_ more imperfect."--\_Id.\_ "I know very well how

\_great\_ pains have been taken." Or thus: "I know very well how much \_care

has\_ been taken."--\_Temple cor.\_ "The management of the breath requires a

\_great\_ deal of care."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Because the mind, during such a

momentary stupefaction, is, in a \_great\_ measure, if not totally,

insensible."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Motives of reason and interest \_alone\_ are not

sufficient."--\_Id.\_ "To render the composition distinct in its parts, and

on the whole \_impressive\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_A\_ and \_an\_ are named \_the Indefinite

article\_, because they denote \_indifferently any\_ one thing of a

kind."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "\_The\_ is named \_the Definite article\_, because it

points out some particular thing \_or things\_."--\_Id.\_ "So much depends upon

the proper construction of sentences, that, in \_any\_ sort of composition,

we cannot be too strict in our attention to it." Or:--"that, in \_every\_

sort of composition, we \_ought to be very\_ strict in our attention to it."

Or:--"that, in \_no\_ sort of composition, \_can we be\_ too strict," &c.--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "\_Every\_ sort of declamation and public speaking was carried on

by them." Or thus: "All \_sorts\_ of declamation and public speaking, \_were\_

carried on by them."--\_Id.\_ "The \_former\_ has, on many occasions, a

sublimity to which the latter never attains."--\_Id.\_ "When the words,

\_therefore, consequently, accordingly\_, and the like, are used in connexion

with conjunctions, they are adverbs."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Rude nations make

\_few\_ or no allusions to the productions of the arts."--\_Jamieson cor.\_

"While two of her maids knelt on \_each\_ side of her." Or, if there were

only two maids kneeling, and not four: "While two of her maids knelt \_one\_

on \_each\_ side of her."--\_Mirror cor.\_ "The personal pronouns \_of the third

person\_, differ from \_one an\_ other in meaning and use, as

follows."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "It was happy for the state, that Fabius

continued in the command with \_Minutius\_: the phlegm \_of the former\_ was a

check \_on\_ the vivacity \_of the latter\_."--\_L. Murray and others cor.\_: see

\_Maunders Gram.\_, p. 4. "If it be objected, that the words \_must\_ and

\_ought\_, in the preceding sentences, are \_both\_ in the present tense." Or

thus: "If it be objected, that \_in all\_ the preceding sentences the words

\_must\_ and \_ought\_ are in the present tense."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "But it

will be well, if you turn to them now and then." Or:--"if you turn to them

\_occasionally\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "That every part should have a dependence

on, and mutually contribute to support, \_every\_ other."--\_Rollin cor.\_ "The

phrase, '\_Good, my lord\_,' is not common, and \_is\_ low." Or:--"is

\_uncommon\_, and low."--\_Priestley cor.\_

"That brother should not war with brother,

And \_one\_ devour \_or vex an\_ other."--\_Cowper cor.\_

LESSON IV.--PRONOUNS.

"If I can contribute to \_our\_ country's glory." Or:--"to \_your glory\_ and

\_that of my country\_."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "As likewise of the several

subjects, which have in effect each \_its\_ verb."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "He is

likewise required to make examples \_for\_ himself." Or: "He \_himself\_ is

likewise required to make examples."--\_J. Flint cor.\_ "If the emphasis be

placed wrong, \_it will\_ pervert and confound the meaning wholly." Or: "If

the emphasis be placed wrong, the meaning \_will be perverted\_ and

\_confounded\_ wholly." Or: "If \_we place\_ the emphasis wrong, we pervert and

confound the meaning wholly."--\_L. Murray cor.\_; also \_Dr. Blair\_. "It was

this, that characterized the great men of antiquity; it is this, \_that\_

must distinguish the moderns who would tread in their steps."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "I am a great enemy to implicit faith, as well the Popish as \_the\_

Presbyterian; \_for\_, in that, \_the Papists and the Presbyterians\_ are

\_very\_ much alike."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Will he thence dare to say, the

apostle held \_an other\_ Christ than \_him\_ that died?"--\_Id.\_ "\_Why\_ need

you be anxious about this event?" Or: "What need \_have\_ you to be anxious

about this event?"--\_Collier cor.\_ "If a substantive can be placed after

the verb, \_the latter\_ is active."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "\_To see\_ bad men

honoured and prosperous in the world, is some discouragement to virtue."

Or: "\_It\_ is some discouragement to virtue, \_to see\_ bad men," &c.--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "It is a happiness to young persons, \_to be\_ preserved from

the snares of the world, as in a garden enclosed."--\_Id.\_ "\_At\_ the court

of Queen Elizabeth, \_where all\_ was prudence and economy."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"It is no wonder, if such a man did not shine at the court of Queen

Elizabeth, who was \_so remarkable\_ for \_her\_ prudence and

economy."--\_Priestley, Murray, et al cor.\_ "A defective verb is \_a verb\_

that wants some parts. \_The defective verbs\_ are chiefly the \_auxiliaries\_

and \_the\_ impersonal verbs."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Some writers have given \_to

the\_ moods a much greater extent than \_I\_ have assigned to them."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "The personal pronouns give \_such\_ information \_as\_ no other

words are capable of conveying."--\_M'Culloch cor.\_ "When the article \_a,

an\_, or \_the\_, precedes the participle, \_the latter\_ also becomes a

noun."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "To some of these, there is a preference to be

given, which custom and judgement must determine."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Many

writers affect to subjoin to any word the preposition with which it is

compounded, or \_that\_ of which it \_literally\_ implies the idea."--\_Id. and

Priestley cor.\_

"Say, dost thou know Vectidius? \_Whom\_, the wretch

Whose lands beyond the Sabines largely stretch?"--\_Dryden cor.\_

LESSON V.--VERBS.

"We \_should\_ naturally expect, that the word \_depend\_ would require \_from\_

after it."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 158. "A dish which they pretend \_is\_

made of emerald."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "For the very nature of a sentence

implies \_that\_ one proposition \_is\_ expressed."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

311. "Without a careful attention to the sense, we \_should\_ be naturally

led, by the rules of syntax, to refer it to the rising and setting of the

sun."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "For any rules that can be given, on this subject,

\_must be\_ very general."--\_Id.\_ "He \_would be\_ in the right, if eloquence

were what he conceives it to be."--\_Id.\_ "There I \_should\_ prefer a more

free and diffuse manner."--\_Id.\_ "Yet that they also \_resembled one an

other, and agreed\_ in certain qualities."--\_Id.\_ "But, since he must

restore her, he insists \_on having an other\_ in her place."--\_Id.\_ "But

these are far from being so frequent, or so common, as \_they have\_ been

supposed \_to be\_."--\_Id.\_ "We are not \_led\_ to assign a wrong place to the

pleasant or \_the\_ painful feelings."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Which are of greater

importance than \_they are\_ commonly thought."--\_Id.\_ "Since these qualities

are both coarse and common, \_let us\_ find out the mark of a man of

probity."--\_Collier cor.\_ "Cicero did what no man had ever done before him;

\_he drew\_ up a treatise of consolation for himself."--\_Biographer cor.\_

"Then there can \_remain\_ no other doubt of the truth."--\_Brightland cor.\_

"I have observed \_that\_ some satirists use the term." Or: "I have observed

some satirists \_to\_ use the term."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Such men are ready to

despond, or \_to become\_ enemies."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Common nouns \_are\_ names

common to many things."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "To make ourselves \_heard\_ by

one to whom we address ourselves."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "That, in reading

poetry, he may be the better able to judge of its correctness, and \_may\_

relish its beauties." Or:--"and \_to\_ relish its beauties."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "On the stretch to keep pace with the author, and \_comprehend his

meaning\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "For it might have been sold for more than

three hundred pence, and \_the money\_ have been given to the poor."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "He is a beam that \_has\_ departed, and \_has\_ left no streak of light

behind."--\_Ossian cor.\_ "No part of this incident ought to have been

represented, but \_the whole should have been\_ reserved for a

narrative."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The rulers and people debauching themselves, \_a

country is brought to ruin\_." Or: "\_When\_ the rulers and people \_debauch\_

themselves, \_they bring\_ ruin on a country."--\_Ware cor.\_ "When \_a title\_,

(as \_Doctor, Miss, Master\_, &c.,) is prefixed to a name, the \_latter only\_,

of the two words, is commonly \_varied to form the\_ plural; as, 'The \_Doctor

Nettletons\_,'--'The two \_Miss Hudsons\_.'"--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "Wherefore that

field \_has been\_ called, '\_The Field of Blood\_,' unto this day."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "To comprehend the situations of other countries, which perhaps \_it\_

may be necessary for him to explore."--\_Dr. Brown cor.\_ "We content

ourselves now with fewer conjunctive particles than our ancestors

\_used\_."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "And who will be chiefly liable to make mistakes

where others have \_erred\_ before them."--\_Id.\_ "The voice of nature \_and

that of\_ revelation \_unite\_." Or: "\_Revelation and\_ the voice of nature

\_unite\_." Or: "The voice of nature \_unites with revelation\_." Or: "The

voice of nature unites \_with that of\_ revelation."--\_Wayland cor.\_

"This adjective, you see, we can't admit;

But, changed to 'WORSE,' \_the word is\_ just and fit."--\_Tobitt cor.\_

LESSON VI.--PARTICIPLES.

"Its application is not arbitrary, \_or dependent\_ on the caprice of

readers."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "This is the more expedient, \_because the work

is\_ designed for the benefit of private learners."--\_Id.\_ "A man, he tells

us, ordered by his will, to have \_a statue erected\_ for him."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ "From some likeness too remote, and \_lying\_ too far out of the road

of ordinary thought."--\_Id.\_ "In the commercial world, money is a \_fluid,

running\_ from hand to hand."--\_Dr. Webster cor.\_ "He pays much attention to

\_the\_ learning and singing \_of\_ songs."--\_Id.\_ "I would not be understood

to consider \_the\_ singing \_of\_ songs as criminal."--\_Id.\_ "It is a \_case

decided by Cicero\_, the great master of writing."--\_Editor of Waller cor.\_

"Did they ever bear a testimony against \_the\_ writing \_of\_ books?"--

\_Bates's Rep. cor.\_ "Exclamations are sometimes \_mistaken\_ for

interrogations."--\_Hist. of Print, cor.\_ "Which cannot fail \_to prove\_ of

service."--\_Smith cor.\_ "Hewn into such figures as would make them

\_incorporate\_ easily and firmly."--\_Beat, or Mur. cor.\_ "\_After\_ the rule

and example, \_there\_ are practical inductive questions."--\_J. Flint cor.\_

"I think \_it\_ will be an advantage, \_that I have\_ collected \_my\_ examples

from modern writings."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "He was eager \_to recommend\_ it to

his fellow-citizens."--\_Id. and Hume cor.\_ "The good lady was careful \_to

serve\_ me \_with\_ every thing."--\_Id.\_ "No revelation would have been given,

had the light of nature been sufficient, in such a sense as to render one

\_superfluous\_ and useless."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Description, again, is \_a

representation which raises\_ in the mind the conception of an object, by

means of some arbitrary or instituted symbols."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Disappointing the expectation of the hearers, when they look for \_an

end\_." Or:--"for \_the termination of\_ our \_discourse\_."--\_Id.\_ "There is a

distinction, which, in the use of them, is \_worthy\_ of attention."--

\_Maunder cor.\_ "A model has been contrived, which is not very expensive,

and \_which\_ is easily managed."--\_Ed. Reporter cor.\_ "The conspiracy was

the more easily discovered, \_because the conspirators were\_ many."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "Nearly ten years \_had\_ that celebrated work \_been published\_,

before its importance was at all understood."--\_Id.\_ "\_That\_ the \_sceptre

is\_ ostensibly grasped by a female hand, does not reverse the general order

of government."--\_West cor.\_ "I have hesitated \_about\_ signing the

Declaration of Sentiments."--\_Lib. cor.\_ "The prolonging of men's lives

when the world needed to be peopled, and \_the subsequent\_ shortening \_of\_

them when that necessity \_had\_ ceased."--\_Rev. John Brown cor.\_ "Before the

performance commences, we \_see\_ displayed the insipid formalities of the

prelusive scene."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "It forbade the lending of money, or

\_the\_ sending \_of\_ goods, or \_the\_ embarking \_of\_ capital in anyway, in

transactions connected with that foreign traffic."--\_Brougham cor.\_ "Even

abstract ideas have sometimes the same important \_prerogative conferred\_

upon them."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "\_Ment\_, like other terminations, changes \_y\_

into \_i\_, when \_the y is preceded\_ by a consonant."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p.

25. "The term PROPER is from the French \_propre\_, own, or the Latin

\_proprius\_; and \_a Proper noun\_ is \_so called, because it\_ is peculiar to

the individual \_or family\_ bearing the name. The term COMMON is from the

Latin \_communis\_, pertaining equally to several or many; and \_a Common

noun\_ is \_so called, because it is common\_ to every individual comprised in

the class."--\_Fowler cor.\_

"Thus oft by mariners are \_showed\_ (Unless the men of Kent are liars)

Earl Godwin's castles \_overflowed\_, And palace-roofs, and steeple-

spires."--\_Swift cor.\_

LESSON VII.--ADVERBS.

"He spoke to every man and woman \_who was there\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Thought and language act and react upon each other."--\_Murray's Key\_, p.

264. "Thought and expression act \_and react\_ upon each other."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 356. "They have neither the leisure nor the means of

attaining any knowledge, except what lies within the contracted circle of

their several professions."--\_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 160. "Before they are

capable of understanding \_much\_, or indeed any thing, of \_most\_ other

branches of education."--\_Olney cor.\_ "There is \_no\_ more beauty in one of

them, than in \_an other\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Which appear to be

constructed according to \_no\_ certain rule."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The

vehement manner of speaking became \_less\_ universal."--Or better:--"\_less

general\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Not\_ all languages, however, agree in this mode of

expression." Or: "This mode of expression, however, \_is not common to all\_

languages."--\_Id.\_ "The great occasion of setting \_apart\_ this particular

day."--\_Atterbury cor.\_ "He is much more promising now, than \_he was\_

formerly."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "They are placed before a participle, \_without

dependence\_ on the rest of the sentence."--\_Id.\_ "This opinion \_does not

appear to have been\_ well considered." Or: "This opinion appears to \_have

been formed without due consideration\_."--\_Id.\_ "Precision in language

merits a full explication; and \_merits it\_ the more, because distinct ideas

are, perhaps, \_but rarely\_ formed \_concerning\_ it."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "In

the more sublime parts of poetry, he is \_less\_ distinguished." Or:--"he is

not so \_highly\_ distinguished."--\_Id.\_ "\_Whether\_ the author was altogether

happy in the choice of his subject, may be questioned."--\_Id.\_ "But, \_with

regard to this matter\_ also, there is a great error in the common

practice."--\_Webster cor.\_ "This order is the very order of the human mind,

which makes things we are sensible of, a means to come at those that are

not \_known\_." Or:--"which makes things \_that\_ are \_already known, its\_

means \_of finding out\_ those that are not so."--\_Foreman cor.\_ "Now, who is

not discouraged, and \_does not fear\_ want, when he has no money?"--\_C.

Leslie cor.\_ "Which the authors of this work consider of little or no

use."--\_Wilbur and Liv. cor.\_ "And here indeed the distinction between

these two classes begins to be \_obscure\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "But this is a

manner which deserves to be \_avoided\_." Or:--"which \_does not deserve\_ to

be imitated."--\_Id.\_ "And, in this department, a person effects \_very\_

little, \_whenever\_ he attempts too much."--\_Campbell and Murray cor.\_ "The

verb that signifies \_mere\_ being, is neuter."--\_Ash cor.\_ "I hope to tire

\_but little\_ those whom I shall not happen to please."--\_Rambler cor.\_ "Who

were utterly unable to pronounce some letters, and \_who pronounced\_ others

very indistinctly."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "The learner may point out the active,

passive, and neuter verbs in the following examples, and state the reasons

\_for thus distinguishing them\_." Or: "The learner may point out the active,

\_the\_ passive, and \_the\_ neuter verbs in the following examples, and state

the reasons \_for calling them so\_."--\_C. Adams cor.\_ "These words are

\_almost\_ always conjunctions."--\_Barrett cor.\_

"\_How glibly\_ nonsense trickles from his tongue!

How sweet the periods, neither said nor sung!"--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON VIII.--CONJUNCTIONS.

"Who, at least, either knew not, \_or did not love\_ to make, a distinction."

Or better thus: "Who, at least, either knew \_no distinction\_, or \_did not

like\_ to make \_any\_."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "It is childish in the last degree

\_to let\_ this become the ground of estranged affection."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"When the regular, \_and when\_ the irregular verb, is to be preferred

[sic--KTH], p. 107."--\_Id.\_ "The books were to have been sold this day."

Or:--"\_on\_ this day."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "Do, \_an\_ you will." Or: "Do, \_if\_

you will."--\_Shak. cor.\_ "If a man had a positive idea \_either\_ of infinite

duration or \_of infinite\_ space, he could add two infinites together." Or:

"If a man had a positive idea of \_what is\_ infinite, either \_in\_ duration

or \_in\_ space, he could," &c.--\_Murray's proof-text cor.\_ "None shall more

willingly agree \_to\_ and advance the same \_than\_ I."--\_Morton cor.\_ "That

it cannot \_but\_ be hurtful to continue it."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "A conjunction

joins words \_or\_ sentences."--\_Beck cor.\_ "The copulative conjunction

connects words \_or\_ sentences together, and continues the sense."--\_Frost

cor.\_ "The \_copulative\_ conjunction serves to connect [\_words or clauses\_,]

\_and\_ continue a sentence, by expressing an addition, a cause, or a

supposition."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "All construction is either true or

apparent; or, in other words, \_either literal or\_ figurative."--\_Buchanan

and Brit. Gram. cor.\_ "But the divine character is such \_as\_ none but a

divine hand could draw." Or: "But the divine character is such, \_that\_ none

but a divine hand could draw \_it\_."--\_A. Keith cor.\_ "Who is so mad, that,

on inspecting the heavens, \_he\_ is insensible of a God?"--\_Gibbons cor.\_

"It is now submitted to an enlightened public, with little \_further\_ desire

on the part of the \_author\_, than for its general utility."--\_Town cor.\_

"This will sufficiently explain \_why\_ so many provincials have grown old in

the capital without making any change in their original dialect."--

\_Sheridan cor.\_ "Of these, they had chiefly three in general use, which

were denominated ACCENTS, the term \_being\_ used in the plural

number."--\_Id.\_ "And this is one of the chief reasons \_why\_ dramatic

representations have ever held the first rank amongst the diversions of

mankind."--\_Id.\_ "Which is the chief reason \_why\_ public reading is in

general so disgusting."--\_Id.\_ "At the same time \_in which\_ they learn to

read." Or: "\_While\_ they learn to read."--\_Id.\_ "He is always to pronounce

his words with \_exactly\_ the same accent that he \_uses in

speaking\_."--\_Id.\_ "In order to know what \_an other\_ knows, and in the same

manner \_in which\_ he knows it."--\_Id.\_ "For the same reason \_for which\_ it

is, in a more limited state, assigned to the several tribes of

animals."--\_Id.\_ "Were there masters to teach this, in the same manner \_in

which\_ other arts are taught." Or: "Were there masters to teach this, \_as\_

other arts are taught."--\_Id.\_

"Whose own example strengthens all his laws;

\_Who\_ is himself that great sublime he draws."--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON IX.--PREPOSITIONS.

"The word \_so\_ has sometimes the same meaning \_as\_ ALSO, LIKEWISE, \_or\_ THE

SAME."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The verb \_use\_ relates not to 'pleasures of the

imagination;' but to the terms \_fancy\_ and \_imagination\_, which he was to

employ as synonymous."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "It never can view, clearly and

distinctly, \_more than\_ one object at a time."--\_Id.\_ "This figure

[Euphemism] is often the same \_as\_ the Periphrasis."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_

"All the \_intermediate\_ time \_between\_ youth and old age."--\_W. Walker

cor.\_ "When one thing is said to act \_upon an other\_, or do something to

\_it\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Such a composition has as much of meaning in it, as a

mummy has \_of\_ life." Or: "Such a composition has as much meaning in it, as

a mummy has life."--\_Lit. Conv. cor.\_ "That young men, from fourteen to

eighteen \_years of age\_, were not the best judges."--\_Id.\_ "This day is a

day of trouble, and of rebuke, and \_of\_ blasphemy."--\_Isaiah\_, xxxvii, 3.

"Blank verse has the same pauses and accents \_that occur in\_

rhyme."--\_Kames cor.\_ "In prosody, long syllables are distinguished by \_the

macron\_ (¯); and short ones by what is called \_the breve\_ (~)."--\_Bucke

cor.\_ "Sometimes both articles are left out, especially \_from\_

poetry."--\_Id.\_ "\_From\_ the following example, the pronoun and participle

are omitted." Or: "In the following example, the pronoun and participle are

\_not expressed\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ [But the example was faulty. Say.]

"Conscious of his weight and importance,"--or, "\_Being\_ conscious of his

own weight and importance, \_he did\_ not \_solicit\_ the aid of

others."--\_Id.\_ "He was an excellent person; \_even in his\_ early youth, a

mirror of \_the\_ ancient faith."--\_Id.\_ "The carrying \_of\_ its several parts

into execution."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "Concord is the agreement which one

word has \_with\_ an other, in gender, number, case, \_or\_ person."--\_L.

Murray's Gram.\_, p. 142. "It might perhaps have given me a greater taste

\_for\_ its antiquities."--\_Addison cor.\_ "To call \_on\_ a person, and to wait

\_on\_ him."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "The great difficulty they found in fixing

just sentiments."--\_Id. and Hume cor.\_ "Developing the \_differences of\_ the

three."--\_James Brown cor.\_ "When the singular ends in x, ch soft, sh, ss,

or s, we add \_es to form\_ the plural."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "We shall present

him a list or specimen of them." "It is very common to hear of the evils of

pernicious reading, how it enervates the mind, or how it depraves the

principles."--\_Dymond cor.\_ "In this example, the verb \_arises\_ is

understood before 'curiosity' and \_before\_ 'knowledge.'"--\_L. Murray et al.

cor.\_ "The connective is frequently omitted, \_when\_ several words \_have the

same construction\_."--\_Wilcox cor.\_ "He shall expel them from before you,

and drive them \_out from\_ your sight."--\_Bible cor.\_ "Who makes his sun

\_to\_ shine and his rain to descend, upon the just and the unjust." Or thus:

"Who makes his sun shine, and his rain descend, upon the just and the

unjust."--\_M'Ilvaine cor.\_

LESSON X.--MIXED EXAMPLES.

"This sentence violates \_an established rule\_ of grammar."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "The words \_thou\_ and \_shall\_ are again reduced to \_syllables of\_

short \_quantity\_."--\_Id.\_ "Have the \_greatest\_ men always been the most

popular? By no means."--\_Lieber cor.\_ "St. Paul positively stated, that 'He

\_that loveth an other, hath\_ fulfilled the law.'"--\_Rom.\_, xiii, 8. "More

\_organs\_ than one \_are\_ concerned in the utterance of almost every

consonant."--\_M'Culloch cor.\_ "If the reader will pardon \_me for\_

descending so low."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "To adjust them in \_such a manner\_ as

shall consist equally with the perspicuity and the grace of the period."

Or: "To adjust them so, \_that they\_ shall consist equally," &c.--\_Dr. Blair

and L. Mur. cor.\_ "This class exhibits a lamentable inefficiency, and \_a

great\_ want of simplicity."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "Whose style, \_in all its

course\_, flows like a limpid stream, \_through which\_ we see to the very

bottom."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_; also \_L. Murray\_. "We \_admit various

ellipses\_." Or thus: "An \_ellipsis\_, or \_omission\_, of some words, is

frequently admitted."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 116. "The ellipsis, of

\_articles may occur\_ thus."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Sometimes the \_article a\_ is

improperly applied to nouns of different numbers; as, 'A magnificent house

and gardens.'"--\_Id.\_ "In some very emphatical expressions, \_no\_ ellipsis

should be \_allowed\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ellipses\_ of the adjective \_may happen\_ in

the following manner."--\_Id.\_ "The following \_examples show that there may

be an\_ ellipsis of the pronoun."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ellipses\_ of the verb \_occur\_ in

the following instances."--\_Id.\_ "\_Ellipses\_ of the adverb \_may occur\_ in

the following manner."--\_Id.\_ "The following \_brief expressions are all of

them elliptical\_." [554]--\_Id.\_ "If no emphasis be placed on any words, not

only will discourse be rendered heavy and lifeless, but the meaning \_will\_

often \_be left\_ ambiguous."--\_Id.\_; also \_J. S. Hart and Dr. Blair cor.\_

"He regards his word, but thou dost not \_regard thine\_."--\_Bullions,

Murray, et al., cor.\_ "I have learned my task, but you have not \_learned

yours\_."--\_Iid.\_ "When the omission of a word would obscure the \_sense\_,

weaken \_the expression\_, or be attended with impropriety, \_no ellipsis\_

must be \_indulged\_."--\_Murray and Weld cor.\_ "And therefore the verb is

correctly put in the singular number, and refers to \_them all\_ separately

and individually considered."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_He was to me the most

intelligible\_ of all who spoke on the subject."--\_Id.\_ "I understood him

better than \_I did\_ any other who spoke on the \_subject\_."--\_Id.\_ "The

roughness found on the entrance into the paths of virtue and learning

\_decreases\_ as we advance." Or: "The \_roughnesses encountered in\_ the paths

of virtue and learning \_diminish\_ as we advance."--\_Id.\_ "\_There is\_

nothing \_which more\_ promotes knowledge, than \_do\_ steady application and

\_habitual\_ observation."--\_Id.\_ "Virtue confers \_on man the highest\_

dignity \_of which he is capable; it\_ should \_therefore\_ be \_the chief

object of\_ his desire."--\_Id. and Merchant cor.\_ "The supreme Author of our

being has so formed \_the human soul\_, that nothing but himself can be its

last, adequate, and proper happiness."--\_Addison and Blair cor.\_ "The

inhabitants of China laugh at the plantations of our Europeans: 'Because,'

\_say they\_, 'any one may place trees in equal rows and uniform

figures.'"--\_Iid.\_ "The divine laws are not \_to be reversed\_ by those of

men."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "In both of these examples, the relative \_which\_

and the verb \_was\_ are understood."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "The Greek and Latin

languages, though for many reasons they cannot be called dialects of one

\_and the same tongue\_, are nevertheless closely connected."--\_Dr. Murray

cor.\_ "To ascertain and settle \_whether\_ a white rose or a red breathes the

sweetest fragrance." Or thus: "To ascertain and settle which \_of the two\_

breathes the \_sweeter\_ fragrance, a white rose or a red \_one\_."--\_J. Q.

Adams cor.\_ "To which he can afford to devote \_but little\_ of his time and

labour."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"Avoid extremes; and shun the fault of such

\_As\_ still are pleased too little or too much."--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON XI.--OF BAD PHRASES.

"He \_might as well\_ leave his vessel to the direction of the

winds."--\_South cor.\_ "Without good-nature and gratitude, men \_might as

well\_ live in a wilderness as in society."--\_L'Estrange cor.\_ "And, for

this reason, such lines \_very seldom\_ occur together."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"His \_greatness\_ did not make him \_happy\_."--\_Crombie cor.\_ "Let that which

tends to \_cool\_ your love, be judged in all."--\_Crisp cor.\_ "It is \_worth\_

observing, that there is no passion in the mind of man so weak but it mates

and masters the fear of death."--\_Bacon cor.\_ "Accent dignifies the

syllable on which it is laid, and makes it more \_audible\_ than the

rest."--\_Sheridan and Murray cor.\_ "Before he proceeds to argue on \_either\_

side."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The \_general\_ change of manners, throughout

Europe."--\_Id.\_ "The sweetness and beauty of Virgil's numbers, \_through

all\_ his works."--\_Id.\_ "The French writers of sermons, study neatness and

elegance in \_the division of their discourses.\_"--\_Id.\_ "This \_seldom\_

fails to prove a refrigerant to passion."--\_Id.\_ "\_But\_ their fathers,

brothers, and uncles, cannot, as good relations and good citizens, \_excuse

themselves for\_ not standing forth to demand vengeance."--\_Murray's

Sequel\_, p. 114. "Alleging, that their \_decrial\_ of the church of Rome, was

a \_uniting\_ with the Turks."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "To which is added the

Catechism \_by the\_ Assembly of Divines."--\_N. E. Prim. cor.\_ "This

treachery was always present in \_the thoughts of both of them\_."--

\_Robertson cor.\_ "Thus far their words agree." Or: "Thus far \_the words of

both\_ agree."--\_W. Walker cor.\_ "Aparithmesis is \_an\_ enumeration \_of the\_

several parts of what, \_as a whole\_, might be expressed in few

words."--\_Gould cor.\_ "Aparithmesis, or Enumeration, is \_a figure in which\_

what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several

parts."--\_Dr. Adam cor.\_ "Which may sit from time to time, where you dwell,

or in the vicinity."--\_J. O. Taylor cor.\_ "Place together a \_large-sized

animal and a small one\_, of the same species." Or: "Place together a large

and a small animal of the same species."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The weight of the

swimming body is equal to that of the quantity of fluid displaced by

it."--\_Percival cor.\_ "The Subjunctive mood, in all its tenses, is similar

to the Optative."--\_Gwilt cor.\_ "No feeling of obligation remains, except

that of \_an obligation to\_ fidelity."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "Who asked him \_why\_

whole audiences should be moved to tears at the representation of some

story on the stage."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "\_Are you not ashamed\_ to affirm that

the best works of the Spirit of Christ in his saints are as filthy

rags?"--\_Barclay cor.\_ "A neuter verb becomes active, when followed by a

noun of \_kindred\_ signification."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "But he has judged better

in \_forbearing\_ to repeat the article \_the\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Many

objects please us, \_and are thought\_ highly beautiful, which have \_scarcely

any\_ variety at all."--\_Id.\_ "Yet they sometimes follow them."--\_Emmons

cor.\_ "For I know of nothing more \_important\_ in the whole subject, than

this doctrine of mood and tense."--\_R. Johnson cor.\_ "It is by no means

impossible for an \_error\_ to be \_avoided\_ or \_suppressed\_."--\_Philol.

Museum cor.\_ "These are things of the highest importance to \_children and

youth\_."--\_Murray cor.\_ "He \_ought to\_ have omitted the word \_many\_." Or:

"He \_might\_ better have omitted the word \_many\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Which

\_might\_ better have been separated." Or: "Which \_ought rather to\_ have been

separated."--\_Id.\_ "Figures and metaphors, therefore, should \_never\_ be

\_used\_ profusely."--\_Id. and Jam. cor.\_ "Metaphors, \_or\_ other figures,

should \_never\_ be \_used in\_ too \_great abundance\_."--\_Murray and Russell

cor.\_ "Something like this has been \_alleged against\_ Tacitus."--

\_Bolingbroke cor.\_

"O thou, whom all mankind in vain withstand,

\_Who with the blood of each\_ must one day stain thy hand!"

--\_Sheffield cor.\_

LESSON XII.--OF TWO ERRORS.

"Pronouns sometimes precede the \_terms\_ which they represent."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "Most prepositions originally \_denoted relations\_ of place."--\_Lowth

cor.\_ "WHICH is applied to \_brute\_ animals, and \_to\_ things without

life."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "What \_thing\_ do they describe, or \_of what do

they\_ tell the kind?"--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "Iron \_cannons\_, as well as

brass, \_are\_ now universally cast solid."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "We have

philosophers, \_more\_ eminent perhaps \_than those of\_ any \_other\_

nation."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "This is a question about words \_only\_, and

\_one\_ which common sense easily determines."--\_Id.\_ "The low pitch of the

voice, is \_that which\_ approaches to a whisper."--\_Id.\_ "Which, as to the

effect, is just the same \_as to use\_ no such distinctions at all."--\_Id.\_

"These two systems, therefore, \_really\_ differ from \_each\_ other \_but\_ very

little."--\_Id.\_ "It \_is\_ needless to give many instances, as \_examples\_

occur so often."--\_Id.\_ "There are many occasions \_on which\_ this is

neither requisite nor proper."--\_Id.\_ "Dramatic poetry divides itself into

two forms, comedy \_and\_ tragedy."--\_Id.\_ "No man ever rhymed \_with more

exactness\_ than he." [I.e., than Roscommon.]--\_Editor of Waller cor.\_ "The

Doctor did not reap from his poetical labours a \_profit\_ equal to \_that\_ of

his prose."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "We will follow that which we \_find\_ our

fathers \_practised\_." Or: "We will follow that which we \_find to have been\_

our \_fathers'\_ practice."--\_Sale cor.\_ "And I \_should\_ deeply regret \_that

I had\_ published them."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "Figures exhibit ideas \_with

more vividness and power\_, than could be \_given them\_ by plain

language."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The allegory is finely drawn, \_though\_ the

heads \_are\_ various."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "I should not have thought it worthy

\_of this\_ place." Or: "I should not have thought it worthy \_of being

placed\_ here."--\_Crombie cor.\_ "In this style, Tacitus excels all \_other\_

writers, ancient \_or\_ modern."--\_Kames cor.\_ "No \_other\_ author, ancient or

modern, possesses the art of dialogue \_so completely as\_ Shakspeare."--

\_Id.\_ "The names of \_all the things\_ we see, hear, smell, taste, \_or\_ feel,

are nouns."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor. "Of\_ what number are \_the expressions\_,

'these boys,' 'these pictures,' &c.?"--\_Id.\_ "This sentence \_has faults\_

somewhat \_like those\_ of the last."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Besides perspicuity,

he pursues propriety, purity, and precision, in his language; which

\_qualities form\_ one degree, and no inconsiderable one, of beauty."--\_Id.\_

"Many critical terms have unfortunately been employed in a sense too loose

and vague; none \_with less precision\_, than \_the word\_ sublime."--\_Id.\_

"Hence no word in the language is used \_with\_ a more vague signification,

than \_the word\_ beauty."--\_Id.\_ "But still, \_in speech\_, he made use of

general terms \_only\_."--\_Id.\_ "These give life, body, and colouring, to the

\_facts recited\_; and enable us to \_conceive of\_ them as present, and

passing before our eyes."--\_Id.\_ "Which carried an ideal chivalry to a

still more extravagant height, than \_the adventurous spirit of knighthood\_

had \_ever attained\_ in fact."--\_Id.\_ "We write much more supinely, and

\_with far less labour\_, than \_did\_ the ancients."--\_Id.\_ "This appears

indeed to form the characteristical difference between the ancient poets,

orators, and historians, \_and\_ the modern."--\_Id.\_ "To violate this rule,

as the English too often \_do, shows\_ great incorrectness."--\_Id.\_ "It is

impossible, by means of any \_training\_, to \_prevent them from\_ appearing

stiff and forced."--\_Id. "And it also gives to\_ the speaker the

disagreeable \_semblance\_ of one who endeavours to compel assent."--\_Id.\_

"And \_whenever\_ a light or ludicrous anecdote is proper to be recorded, it

is generally better to throw it into a note, than to \_run the\_ hazard \_of\_

becoming too familiar."--\_Id. "It is\_ the great business of this life, to

prepare and qualify \_ourselves\_ for the enjoyment of a better."--\_L. Murray

cor. "From\_ some dictionaries, accordingly, it was omitted; and in others

\_it is\_ stigmatized as a barbarism."--\_Crombie cor.\_ "You cannot see a

thing, or think of \_one, the name of which is not\_ a noun."--\_Mack cor.

"All\_ the fleet \_have\_ arrived, and \_are\_ moored in safety." Or better:

"The \_whole\_ fleet \_has\_ arrived, and \_is\_ moored in safety."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_

LESSON XIII.--OF TWO ERRORS.

"They have \_severally\_ their distinct and exactly-limited \_relations\_ to

gravity."--\_Hasler cor.\_ "But \_where the additional s\_ would give too much

of the hissing sound, the omission takes place even in prose."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "After \_o\_, it [the \_w\_] is sometimes not sounded at all; \_and\_

sometimes \_it is sounded\_ like a single \_u\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "It is

situation chiefly, \_that\_ decides the \_fortunes\_ and characters of

men."--\_Hume cor.\_; also \_Murray\_. "The vice of covetousness is \_that\_

[vice] \_which\_ enters \_more deeply\_ into the soul than any other."--\_Murray

et al. cor. "Of all vices\_, covetousness enters the \_most deeply\_ into the

soul."--\_Iid.\_ "\_Of all the vices\_, covetousness is \_that which\_ enters the

\_most deeply\_ into the soul."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "The vice of covetousness is

\_a fault which\_ enters \_more deeply\_ into the soul \_than\_ any

other."--\_Guardian cor.\_ "WOULD primarily denotes inclination of will; and

SHOULD, obligation: but \_they\_ vary their import, and are often used to

express simple \_events\_." Or:--"but \_both of them\_ vary their import," &c.

Or:--"but \_both\_ vary their import, and are used to express simple

\_events\_."--\_Lowth, Murray, et al. cor.\_; also \_Comly and Ingersoll\_;

likewise \_Abel Flint\_. "A double \_condition\_, in two correspondent clauses

of a sentence, is sometimes made \_by the word\_ HAD; as, '\_Had\_ he done

this, he \_had\_ escaped.'"--\_Murray and Ingersoll cor.\_ "The pleasures of

the understanding are preferable to those of the imagination, \_as well as

to those\_ of sense."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Claudian, in a fragment upon the

wars of the giants, has contrived to render this idea of their throwing

\_of\_ the mountains, which in itself \_has so much grandeur\_, burlesque and

ridiculous."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "To which not only no other writings are to

be preferred, but \_to which\_, even in divers respects, \_none are\_

comparable."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "To distinguish them in the understanding, and

treat of their several natures, in the same cool manner \_that\_ we \_use\_

with regard to other ideas."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "For it has nothing to do

with parsing, or \_the\_ analyzing \_of\_ language."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ Or: "For

it has nothing to do with \_the\_ parsing, or analyzing, \_of\_

language."--\_Id.\_ "Neither \_has\_ that language [the Latin] \_ever been\_ so

\_common\_ in Britain."--\_Swift cor.\_ "All that I \_purpose\_, is, \_to give\_

some openings into the pleasures of taste."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "But the

following sentences would have been better \_without it\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"But I think the following sentence \_would\_ be better \_without it\_." Or:

"But I think it \_should be expunged from\_ the following sentence."--

\_Priestley cor.\_ "They appear, in this case, like \_ugly\_ excrescences

jutting out from the body."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "And therefore the fable of

the Harpies, in the third book of the Æneid, and the allegory of Sin and

Death, in the second book of Paradise Lost, \_ought not to have been

inserted\_ in these celebrated poems."--\_Id.\_ "Ellipsis is an elegant

suppression, or \_omission\_, of \_some\_ word or words, \_belonging to\_ a

sentence."--\_Brit. Gram. and Buchanan cor.\_ "The article A or AN \_is not

very proper\_ in this construction."--\_D. Blair cor.\_ "Now suppose the

articles had not been \_dropped from\_ these passages."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "To

\_have given\_ a separate \_name\_ to every one of those trees, would have been

an endless and impracticable undertaking."--\_Blair cor.\_ "\_Ei\_, in general,

\_has\_ the same \_sound\_ as long and slender \_a\_." Or better: "\_Ei generally

has\_ the \_sound of\_ long \_or\_ slender \_a\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "When a

conjunction is used \_with apparent redundance, the insertion of it\_ is

called Polysyndeton."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "EACH, EVERY, EITHER, \_and\_

NEITHER, denote the persons or things \_that\_ make up a number, as taken

separately or distributively."--\_M'Culloch cor.\_ "The principal sentence

must be expressed by \_a verb\_ in the indicative, imperative, or potential

\_mood\_"--\_S. W. Clark cor.\_ "Hence he is diffuse, where he ought to \_be

urgent\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "All \_sorts\_ of subjects admit of \_explanatory\_

comparisons."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "The present or imperfect participle

denotes being, action, \_or passion\_, continued, \_and\_ not

perfected."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "What are verbs? Those words which \_chiefly\_

express what \_is said of things\_."--\_Fowle cor.\_

"Of all those arts in which the wise excel,

\_The very\_ masterpiece is \_writing-well\_."--\_Sheffield cor.\_

"Such was that muse whose rules and practice tell,

\_That art's\_ chief masterpiece is \_writing-well\_."--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON XIV.--OF THREE ERRORS.

"\_From\_ some words, the metaphorical sense has justled out the original

sense altogether; so that, in respect \_to the latter\_, they \_have\_ become

obsolete."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "\_Surely\_, never any \_other\_ mortal was so

overwhelmed with grief, as I am at this present \_moment\_."--\_Sheridan cor.\_

"All languages differ from \_one an\_ other in their \_modes\_ of

\_inflection\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "\_The noun\_ and \_the verb\_ are the only

indispensable parts of speech: the one, to express the subject spoken of;

and the other, the predicate, or what is affirmed of \_the

subject\_."--\_M'Culloch cor.\_ "The words \_Italicized in\_ the \_last three\_

examples, perform the office of substantives."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "A

sentence \_so constructed\_ is always \_a\_ mark of \_carelessness in the

writer\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Nothing is more hurtful to the grace or \_the\_

vivacity of a period, than superfluous \_and\_ dragging words at the

conclusion."--\_Id.\_ "When its substantive is not \_expressed with\_ it, but

\_is\_ referred to, \_being\_ understood."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Yet they \_always\_

have \_substantives\_ belonging to them, either \_expressed\_ or

understood."--\_Id.\_ "Because they define and limit the \_import\_ of the

common \_names\_, or general \_terms\_, to which they refer."--\_Id.\_ "Every new

object surprises \_them\_, terrifies \_them\_, and makes a strong impression on

their \_minds\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "His argument required \_a\_ more \_full

development\_, in order to be distinctly apprehended, and to \_have\_ its due

force."--\_Id.\_ "\_Those\_ participles which are derived from

\_active-transitive\_ verbs, will govern the objective case, as \_do\_ the

verbs from which they are derived."--\_Emmons cor.\_ "Where, \_in violation

of\_ the rule, the objective case \_whom\_ follows the verb, \_while\_ the

nominative \_I\_ precedes \_it\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_To use, after\_ the same

conjunction, both the indicative and the subjunctive \_mood\_, in the same

sentence, and \_under\_ the same circumstances, seems to be a great

impropriety."--\_Lowth, Murray, et al. cor.\_ "A nice discernment of \_the

import of words\_, and \_an\_ accurate attention to the best usage, are

necessary on these occasions."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The Greeks and Romans,

the former especially, were, in truth, much more musical than we \_are\_;

their genius was more turned to \_take\_ delight in the melody of

speech."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "\_In general, if\_ the sense admits it \_early\_,

the sooner \_a circumstance is introduced\_, the better; that the more

important and significant words may possess the last place, \_and be\_ quite

disencumbered."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_; also \_Blair and Jamieson\_. "Thus we

find it in \_both\_ the Greek and \_the\_ Latin \_tongue\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"\_Several\_ sentences, constructed in the same manner, and \_having\_ the same

number of members, should never be allowed to \_come in succession\_."--

\_Blair et al. cor.\_ "I proceed to lay down the rules to be observed in the

conduct of metaphors; and \_these, with little variation, will be applicable

to\_ tropes of every kind."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "By \_selecting\_ words \_with\_ a

proper \_regard to their sounds\_, we may \_often imitate\_ other sounds which

we mean to describe."--\_Dr. Blair and L. Mur. cor.\_ "The disguise can

\_scarcely\_ be so perfect \_as to deceive\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The sense

\_does not admit\_ of \_any\_ other pause, than \_one\_ after the second syllable

'sit;' \_this\_ therefore must be the only pause made in the reading."--\_Id.\_

"Not that I believe North America to \_have been first\_ peopled so \_lately\_

as \_in\_ the twelfth century, the period of Madoc's migration."--\_Webster

cor.\_ "Money and commodities \_will\_ always flow to that country \_in which\_

they are most wanted, and \_in which they will\_ command the most

profit."--\_Id.\_ "That it contains no visible marks of \_certain\_ articles

which are \_of\_ the \_utmost importance\_ to a just delivery."--\_Sheridan

cor.\_ "And \_Virtue\_, from \_her\_ beauty, we call a fair and favourite

maid."--\_Mack cor.\_ "The definite article may \_relate to\_ nouns \_of either\_

number."--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_

LESSON XV.--OF MANY ERRORS.

(1.) "Compound \_words are\_[, by L. Murray and others, improperly] included

\_among the derivatives\_."--\_L. Murray corrected.\_ (2.) "\_The\_ Apostrophe,

\_placed above the line\_, thus ', is used to abbreviate or shorten \_words.

But\_ its chief use is, to \_denote\_ the \_possessive\_ case of nouns."--\_Id.\_

(3.) "\_The\_ Hyphen, \_made\_ thus -, \_connects the parts of compound\_ words.

It is also used when a word is divided."--\_Id.\_ (4.) "The Acute Accent,

\_made\_ thus ´, \_denotes the syllable on which stress is laid, and sometimes

also, that the vowel is short\_: as, '\_Fáncy\_.' The Grave \_Accent, made\_

thus `, \_usually denotes, (when applied to English words,) that the stress

is laid where a vowel ends the syllable\_: as, '\_Fàvour\_.'"--\_Id.\_ (5.) "The

stress is laid on long \_vowels or\_ syllables, and on short \_ones\_,

indiscriminately. In order to distinguish the \_long or open vowels\_ from

the \_close or short ones\_, some writers of dictionaries have placed the

grave \_accent\_ on the former, and the acute on the latter."--\_Id.\_ (6.)

"\_The\_ Diæresis, thus \_made\_ ¨, \_is\_ placed over one of two \_contiguous\_

vowels, \_to show that they are not\_ a diphthong."--\_Id.\_ (7.) "\_The\_

Section, \_made\_ thus §, is \_sometimes used to mark the subdivisions\_ of a

discourse or chapter."--\_Id.\_ (8.) "\_The\_ Paragraph, \_made thus\_ ¶,

\_sometimes\_ denotes the beginning of a new subject, or \_of\_ a \_passage\_ not

connected with the \_text preceding\_. This character is \_now seldom\_ used

[\_for such a purpose\_], \_except\_ in the Old and New Testaments." Or

better:--"except in the \_Bible\_."--\_Id.\_ (9.) "\_The\_ Quotation \_Points,

written thus\_ " ", \_mark\_ the beginning \_and the end\_ of \_what\_ is quoted

or transcribed from \_some\_ speaker or author, in his own words. In type,

they are inverted commas at the beginning, \_apostrophes\_ at the

conclusion."--\_Id.\_ (10.) "\_The\_ Brace \_was formerly\_ used in poetry at the

end of a triplet, or \_where\_ three lines \_rhymed together in heroic verse;

it\_ also \_serves\_ to connect \_several terms\_ with one, \_when the one is

common to all\_, and \_thus\_ to prevent a repetition \_of the\_ common

term."--\_Id.\_ (11.) "\_Several\_ asterisks \_put together\_, generally denote

the omission of some \_letters belonging to\_ a word, or of some bold or

indelicate expression; \_but sometimes they imply a\_ defect in the

manuscript \_from which the text is copied\_."--\_Id.\_ (12.) "\_The\_ Ellipsis,

\_made thus\_ ----, \_or thus\_ \*\*\*\*, is used \_where\_ some letters \_of\_ a word,

or some words \_of\_ a verse, are omitted."--\_Id.\_ (13.) "\_The\_ Obelisk,

which is \_made\_ thus [Obelisk]; and \_the\_ Parallels, \_which are made\_ thus

||; \_and sometimes\_ the letters of the alphabet; and \_also the Arabic\_

figures; are used as references to \_notes in\_ the margin, or \_at the\_

bottom, of the page."--\_Id.\_ (14.) "\_The\_ note of interrogation should not

be employed, where it is only said \_that\_ a question has been asked, and

where the words are not used as a question; \_as\_, 'The Cyprians asked me

why I wept.'"--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ (15.) "\_The note\_ of interrogation is

improper after \_mere\_ expressions of admiration, or of \_any\_ other emotion,

\_though they may bear the form of\_ questions."--\_Iid.\_ (16.) "The

parenthesis incloses \_something which is thrown\_ into the body of a

sentence, \_in an under tone; and\_ which affects neither the sense, nor the

construction, \_of the main text\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_ (17.) "Simple members

connected by \_a relative not used restrictively, or by a conjunction that

implies comparison\_, are for the most part \_divided\_ by \_the\_

comma."--\_Id.\_ (18.) "Simple members, \_or\_ sentences, connected \_as terms

of comparison\_, are for the most part \_separated\_ by \_the\_ comma."--\_L.

Murray et al. cor.\_ (19.) "Simple sentences connected by \_a comparative

particle\_, are for the most part \_divided\_ by the comma."--\_Russell cor.\_

(20.) "Simple sentences \_or clauses\_ connected \_to form a comparison\_,

should generally be \_parted\_ by \_the\_ comma."--\_Merchant cor.\_ (21.) "The

simple members of sentences that express contrast or comparison, should

generally be divided by \_the\_ comma."--\_Jaudon cor.\_ (22.) "\_The\_ simple

members of \_a comparative sentence, when\_ they \_are\_ long, are separated by

a comma."--\_Cooper cor.\_ (23.) "Simple sentences connected \_to form a

comparison, or\_ phrases placed in opposition, or contrast, are \_usually\_

separated by \_the comma\_."--\_Hiley and Bullions cor.\_ (24.) "On \_whichever\_

word we lay the emphasis,--whether on the first, \_the\_ second, \_the\_ third,

or \_the\_ fourth,--\_every change of it\_ strikes out a different sense."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ (25.) "To \_say to\_ those who do not understand sea phrases,

'We tacked to the larboard, and stood off to sea,' would \_give them little

or no information\_."--\_Murray and Hiley cor.\_ (26.) "Of \_those\_

dissyllables which are \_sometimes\_ nouns and \_sometimes\_ verbs, \_it may be

observed, that\_ the verb \_is\_ commonly \_accented\_ on the latter \_syllable\_,

and the noun on the former."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ (27.) "And this gives \_to\_

our language \_an\_ advantage \_over\_ most others, in the poetical \_or\_

rhetorical style."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ (28.) "And this gives \_to\_ the

English \_language\_ an advantage \_over\_ most \_others\_, in the poetical and

\_the\_ rhetorical style."--\_Lowth cor.\_ (29.) "The second and \_the\_ third

scholar may read the same sentence; or as many \_may repeat the text\_, as

\_are\_ necessary to \_teach\_ it perfectly to the whole \_class\_."--\_Osborn

cor.\_

(30.) "Bliss is the \_same\_, in subject, \_or in\_ king,

In who obtain defence, or who defend."

--\_Pope's Essay on Man\_, IV, 58.

LESSON XVI.--OF MANY ERRORS.

"The Japanese, the Tonquinese, and the \_Coreans\_, speak languages

\_differing\_ from one \_an other\_, and from \_that of\_ the inhabitants of

China; \_while all\_ use the same written characters, and, by means \_of

them\_, correspond intelligibly with \_one an\_ other in writing, though

ignorant of the language spoken \_by their correspondents\_: a plain proof,

that the Chinese characters are like hieroglyphics, \_and essentially\_

independent of language."--\_Jamieson cor.\_; also \_Dr. Blair\_. "The curved

line, \_in stead\_ of \_remaining\_ round, is \_changed to a\_ square \_one\_, for

the reason \_before mentioned\_."--\_Knight cor.\_ "Every \_reader\_ should

content himself with the use of those tones only, that he is habituated to

in speech; and \_should\_ give \_to the words no\_ other emphasis, \_than\_ what

he would \_give\_ to the same words, in discourse. [Or, perhaps the author

meant:--and \_should\_ give \_to the emphatic words no\_ other \_intonation,

than\_ what he would \_give\_, &c.] Thus, whatever he utters, will be

\_delivered\_ with ease, and \_will\_ appear natural."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "\_A

stop\_, or \_pause, is\_ a total cessation of sound, during a perceptible,

and, in \_musical or poetical\_ compositions, a measurable space of time."--\_

Id.\_ "Pauses, or rests, in speaking \_or\_ reading, are total \_cessations\_ of

the voice, during perceptible, and, in many cases, measurable \_spaces\_ of

time."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "\_Those derivative\_ nouns which \_denote\_

small \_things\_ of the kind \_named by their primitives\_, are called

Diminutive Nouns: as, lambkin, hillock, satchel, gosling; from lamb, hill,

sack, goose."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "\_Why is it\_, that nonsense so often escapes

\_detection, its character not being perceived either\_ by the writer \_or\_ by

the reader?"--\_Campbell cor.\_ "An Interjection is a word used to express

sudden emotion. \_Interjections\_ are so called, because they are generally

thrown in between the parts of \_discourse, and have no\_ reference to the

structure of \_those\_ parts."--\_M'Culloch\_ cor. "\_The verb\_ OUGHT \_has no

other inflection than\_ OUGHTEST, \_and this is nearly obsolete\_."--

\_Macintosh cor.\_ "But the \_arrangement\_, government, \_and\_ agreement \_of

words\_, and \_also their\_ dependence upon \_others\_, are referred to our

reason."--\_Osborn cor.\_ "ME is a personal pronoun, \_of the\_ first person,

singular \_number\_, and \_objective\_ case."--\_Guy cor.\_ "The \_noun\_ SELF is

\_usually\_ added to a pronoun; as, herself, himself, &c. \_The compounds\_

thus \_formed are\_ called reciprocal \_pronouns\_."--\_ Id.\_ "One cannot \_but

think\_, that our author \_would have\_ done better, \_had he\_ begun the first

of these three sentences, with saying, '\_It\_ is novelty, \_that\_ bestows

charms on a monster.'"--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The idea which they present to

us, of \_nature\_ resembling art, of \_art\_ considered as an original, and

nature as a copy, seems not very distinct, \_or\_ well \_conceived\_, nor

indeed very material to our author's purpose."--\_Id.\_ "\_This faulty\_

construction of the sentence, \_evidently arose from haste and

carelessness\_."--\_Id.\_ "Adverbs serve to modify \_terms\_ of action or

quality, or to denote time, place, order, degree, \_or\_ some \_other

circumstance\_ which we have occasion to specify."--\_Id.\_ "We may naturally

expect, \_that\_ the more any nation is improved by science, and the more

perfect \_its\_ language becomes, \_the\_ more will \_that language\_ abound with

connective particles."--\_Id.\_ "Mr. Greenleaf's book is \_far better\_ adapted

\_to the capacity of\_ learners, \_than\_ any \_other\_ that has yet appeared, on

the subject."--\_Feltus and Onderdonk's false praise Englished\_.

"Punctuation is the art of marking, in writing \_or in print\_, the several

pauses, or rests, \_which separate\_ sentences, \_or\_ the parts of sentences;

\_so as to denote\_ their proper quantity or proportion, as \_it is exhibited\_

in a just and accurate \_delivery\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "A compound sentence must

\_generally\_ be resolved into simple ones, and \_these be\_ separated by \_the

comma\_." Or better: "A compound sentence \_is generally divided\_, by \_the

comma\_, into \_its\_ simple \_members\_."--\_Greenleaf and Fisk cor.\_ "Simple

sentences should \_in general\_ be separated from \_one an\_ other by \_the

comma\_, unless \_a greater point is required\_; as, 'Youth is passing away,

age is approaching, and death is near.'"--\_S. R. Hall cor.\_ "\_V\_ has

\_always\_ one uniform sound, \_which is that\_ of \_f flattened\_, as in

\_thieve\_ from \_thief: thus v\_ bears to \_f\_ the same relation \_that b\_ does

to \_p, d\_ to \_t\_, hard \_g\_ to \_k, or z\_ to \_s\_."--\_L. Murray and Fisk

cor.\_; also \_Walker\_; also \_Greenleaf\_. "The author is explaining the

\_difference\_ between sense and imagination, \_as\_ powers \_of\_ the human

mind."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ Or, if this was the critic's meaning: "The author

is endeavouring to explain a very abstract point, the distinction between

the powers of sense and \_those of\_ imagination, \_as two different faculties

of\_ the human mind."--\_ Id.\_; also \_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "HE--(\_from the\_

Anglo-Saxon HE--) is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular

number, masculine gender, \_and\_ nominative case. Decline HE."--\_Fowler

cor.\_

CORRECTIONS UNDER THE CRITICAL NOTES.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE I.--OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

"The passive voice denotes \_an action received\_." Or: "The passive voice

denotes \_the receiving of an action\_."--\_Maunder corrected\_. "Milton, in

some of his prose works, has \_many\_ very \_finely-turned\_ periods."--\_Dr.

Blair and Alex. Jam. cor.\_ "These will be found to be \_wholly\_, or chiefly,

of that class."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "All appearances of an author's

\_affecting of\_ harmony, are disagreeable."--\_Id. and Jam. cor.\_ "Some nouns

have a double increase; that is, \_they increase\_ by more syllables than

one: as \_iter, itin~eris\_."--\_Adam et al. cor.\_ "The powers of man are

enlarged by \_progressive\_ cultivation."--\_Gurney cor.\_ "It is always

important to begin well; to make a favourable impression at \_the first

setting out\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "For if one take a wrong method at \_his

first setting-out\_, it will lead him astray in all that follows."--\_ Id.\_

"His mind is full of his subject, and \_all\_ his words are expressive."--\_

Id.\_ "How exquisitely is \_all\_ this performed in Greek!"--\_Harris cor.\_

"How \_unworthy\_ is all this to satisfy the ambition of an immortal

soul!"--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "So as to exhibit the object in its \_full

grandeur\_, and \_its\_ most striking point of view."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "And

that the author know how to descend with propriety to the \_plain style\_, as

well as how to rise to the bold and figured."--\_ Id.\_ "The heart \_alone\_

can answer to the heart."--\_ Id.\_ "Upon \_the\_ first \_perception of it\_."

Or: "\_As it is\_ first perceived."--\_Harris cor.\_ "Call for Samson, that he

may make \_sport for us\_."--\_Bible cor.\_ "And he made \_sport before

them\_."--\_ Id.\_ "The term '\_to suffer\_,' in this definition, is used in a

technical sense; and means simply, \_to receive\_ an action, or \_to be\_ acted

upon."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The text \_only\_ is what is meant to be taught in

schools."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "The perfect participle denotes action or

\_existence\_ perfected or finished."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "From the intricacy and

confusion which are produced \_when they are\_ blended together."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "This very circumstance, \_that the word is\_ employed antithetically

renders it important in the sentence."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "It [the pronoun

that,] is applied \_both to\_ persons and \_to\_ things."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Concerning us, as being \_everywhere traduced\_."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Every

thing \_else\_ was buried in a profound silence."--\_Steele cor.\_ "They raise

\_fuller\_ conviction, than any reasonings produce."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "It

appears to me \_nothing but\_ a fanciful refinement." Or: "It appears to me

\_nothing\_ more than a fanciful refinement"--\_ Id.\_ "The regular \_and

thorough\_ resolution of a complete passage."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "The

infinitive is \_distinguished\_ by the word TO, \_which\_ immediately \_precedes

it\_."--\_Maunder cor.\_ "It will not be \_a gain of\_ much ground, to urge that

the basket, or vase, is understood to be the capital."--\_Kames cor.\_ "The

disgust one has to drink ink in reality, is not to the purpose, where \_the

drinking of it is merely figurative\_."--\_ Id.\_ "That we run not into the

extreme of pruning so very \_closely\_."--See \_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

318. "Being obliged to rest for a \_little while\_ on the preposition

itself." Or: "Being obliged to rest a \_while\_ on the preposition itself."

Or: "Being obliged to rest [for] a \_moment\_ on the preposition

\_alone\_."--\_Blair and Jam. cor.\_ "Our days on the earth are as a shadow,

and there is \_no\_ abiding."--\_Bible cor.\_ "There \_may be attempted\_ a more

particular expression of certain objects, by means of \_imitative\_

sounds."--\_Blair, Jam., and Mur. cor.\_ "The right disposition of the shade,

makes the light and colouring \_the more apparent\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "I

\_observe\_ that a diffuse style \_is apt to run into\_ long periods."--\_ Id.\_

"Their poor arguments, which they only \_picked up in the

highways\_."--\_Leslie cor.\_ "Which must be little \_else than\_ a transcribing

of their writings."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "That single impulse is a \_forcing-out\_

of almost all the breath." Or: "That single impulse \_forces\_ out almost all

the breath."--\_Hush cor.\_ "Picini compares modulation to the \_turning-off\_

from a road."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "So much has been written on and off almost

every subject."--\_Sophist cor.\_ "By \_the\_ reading \_of\_ books written by the

best authors, his mind became highly improved." Or: "By \_the study of the

most instructive\_ books, his mind became highly improved."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_

"For I never made \_a rich provision a\_ token of a spiritual

ministry."--\_Barclay cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE II.--OF DOUBTFUL REFERENCE.

"However disagreeable \_the task\_, we must resolutely perform our

duty."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The formation of \_all\_ English verbs, \_whether

they be\_ regular \_or\_ irregular, is derived from the Saxon

\_tongue\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "Time and chance have an influence on all things

human, and nothing \_do they affect\_ more remarkably than

language."--\_Campbell cor.\_ "Time and chance have an influence on all

things human, and on nothing \_a\_ more remarkable \_influence\_ than on

language."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "\_That\_ Archytases, \_who was\_ a virtuous man,

happened to perish once upon a time, is with him a sufficient ground."

&c.--\_Phil Mu. cor.\_ "He will be the better qualified to understand the

meaning of \_the\_ numerous words \_into\_ which they \_enter as\_ material

\_parts\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "We should continually have the goal in view,

\_that it may\_ direct us in the race."--\_ Id.\_ "But Addison's figures seem

to rise of their own accord from the subject and constantly \_to\_ embellish

it" Or:--"and \_they\_ constantly embellish it."--\_Blair and Jam. cor.\_ "So

far as \_they signify\_ persons, animals, and things that we can see, it is

very easy to distinguish nouns."--\_Cobbett cor.\_ "Dissyllables ending in

\_y\_ or mute \_e\_, or accented on the \_final\_ syllable, may \_sometimes\_ be

compared like monosyllables."--\_Frost cor.\_ "\_If\_ the \_foregoing\_

objection \_be admitted\_, it will not overrule the design."--\_Rush cor.\_

"These philosophical innovators forget, that objects, like men, \_are known\_

only by their actions."--\_Dr. Murray cor.\_ "The connexion between words and

ideas, is arbitrary and conventional; \_it has arisen mainly from\_ the

agreement of men among themselves."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "The connexion between

words and ideas, may in general be considered as arbitrary and

conventional, \_or as arising from\_ the agreement of men among

themselves."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "A man whose inclinations led him to be

corrupt, and \_who\_ had great abilities to manage and multiply and defend

his corruptions."--\_Swift cor.\_ "They have no more control over him than

\_have\_ any other men."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "\_All\_ his old words are true

English, and \_his\_ numbers \_are\_ exquisite."--\_Spect. cor.\_ "It has been

said, that \_not Jesuits only\_ can equivocate."--\_Mur. in Ex. and Key, cor.\_

"\_In Latin\_, the nominative of the first \_or\_ second person, is seldom

expressed."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "Some words \_have\_ the same \_form\_ in

both numbers."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "Some nouns \_have\_ the same \_form\_ in

both numbers."--\_Merchant et al. cor.\_ "Others \_have\_ the same \_form\_ in

both numbers; as, \_deer, sheep, swine\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ "The following list

denotes the \_consonant\_ sounds, \_of which there are\_ twenty-two." Or: "The

following list denotes the \_twenty-two simple\_ sounds of the

consonants."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ "And is the ignorance of these peasants a

reason for \_other persons\_ to remain ignorant; or \_does it\_ render the

subject \_the\_ less \_worthy of our\_ inquiry?"--\_Harris and Mur. cor.\_ "He is

one of the most correct, and perhaps \_he is\_ the best, of our prose

writers."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "The motions of a vortex and \_of\_ a whirlwind are

perfectly similar." Or: "The motion of a vortex and \_that of\_ a whirlwind

are perfectly similar."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "What I have been saying, throws

light upon one important verse in the Bible; which \_verse\_ I should like to

\_hear some one read\_."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "When there are any circumstances of

time, place, \_and the like, by\_ which the principal \_terms\_ of our sentence

\_must be limited or qualified\_."--\_Blair, Jam. and Mur. cor.\_

"Interjections are words \_that\_ express emotion, affection, or passion, and

\_that\_ imply suddenness." Or: "Interjections express emotion, affection, or

passion, and imply suddenness."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "But the genitive

\_expressing\_ the measure of things, is used in the plural number

\_only\_."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "The buildings of the institution have been

enlarged; \_and an\_ expense \_has been incurred\_, which, \_with\_ the increased

price of provisions, renders it necessary to advance the terms of

admission."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "These sentences are far less difficult than

complex \_ones\_."--\_S. S. Greene cor.\_

"Far from the madding crowd's ignoble strife

\_They\_ sober \_lived, nor ever wished\_ to stray."--\_Gray cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE III.--OF DEFINITIONS.

(1.) "A definition is a \_short and lucid\_ description of \_a thing, or

species, according to its nature and properties\_."--G. BROWN: \_Rev. David

Blair cor.\_ (2.) "Language, in general, signifies the expression of our

ideas by certain articulate sounds, \_or written words\_, which are used as

the signs of those ideas."--\_Dr. Hugh Blair cor.\_ (3.) "A word is \_one or

more syllables\_ used by common consent as the sign of an idea."--\_Bullions

cor.\_ (4.) "A word is \_one or more syllables\_ used as the \_sign of an idea,

or of some manner\_ of thought."--\_Hazen cor.\_ (5.) "Words are articulate

sounds, \_or their written signs\_, used to convey ideas."--\_Hiley cor.\_ (6.)

"A word is \_one or more syllables\_ used \_orally or in writing\_, to

represent some idea."--\_Hart cor.\_ (7.) "A word is \_one or more syllables\_

used as the sign of an idea."--\_S. W. Clark cor.\_ (8.) "A word is a letter

or a combination of letters, \_a sound or a combination of sounds\_, used as

the sign of an idea."--\_Wells cor.\_ (9.) "Words are articulate sounds, \_or

their written signs\_, by which ideas are communicated."--\_Wright cor.\_

(10.) "Words are certain articulate sounds, \_or their written

representatives\_, used by common consent as signs of our

ideas."--\_Bullions, Lowth, Murray, et al. cor.\_ (11.) "Words are sounds \_or

written symbols\_ used as signs of our ideas."--\_W. Allen cor.\_ (12.)

"Orthography \_literally\_ means \_correct writing\_"--\_Kirkham and Smith cor.\_

[The word \_orthography\_ stands for different things: as, 1. The art or

practice of writing words with their proper letters; 2. That part of

grammar which treats of letters, syllables, separate words, and spelling.]

(13.) "A vowel is a letter which \_forms a perfect\_ sound \_when uttered

alone\_."--\_Inst.\_, p. 16; \_Hazen, Lennie, and Brace, cor.\_ (14-18.)

"Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters."--G.

BROWN: \_Lowth and Churchill cor.\_; also \_Murray, Ing. et al.\_; also

\_Comly\_; also \_Bullions\_; also \_Kirkham and Sanborn\_. (19.) "A syllable is

\_one or more letters\_, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and

constituting a word, or part of a word."--\_Lowth, Mur., et al., cor.\_ (20.)

"A syllable is a \_letter or a combination of letters\_, uttered in one

complete sound."--\_Brit. Gram. and Buch. cor.\_ (21.) "A syllable is \_one or

more letters representing\_ a distinct sound, \_or what is\_ uttered by a

single impulse of the voice."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ (22.) "A syllable is so much

of a word as \_is\_ sounded at once, \_whether it\_ be the whole \_or a

part\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ (23.) "A syllable is \_so many letters\_ as \_are\_

sounded at once; \_and is either\_ a word, or a part of a word."--\_Picket

cor.\_ (24.) "A diphthong is \_a\_ union of two vowels \_in one syllable\_, as

in \_bear\_ and \_beat\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ Or: "A diphthong is \_the meeting\_ of

two vowels in one syllable."--\_Brit. Gram.\_, p. 15; \_Buchanan's\_, 3. (25.)

"A diphthong consists of two vowels \_put together in\_ one syllable; as \_ea\_

in \_beat, oi\_ in \_voice\_."--\_Guy cor.\_ (26.) "A triphthong consists of

three vowels \_put together in\_ one syllable; as, \_eau\_ in \_beauty\_."--\_Id.\_

(27.) "But \_a\_ triphthong is the union of three vowels \_in one

syllable\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ Or: "A triphthong is the meeting of three vowels

in one syllable."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 21; \_Buchanan's\_, 3. (28.) "What is

a noun? A noun is the \_name of something\_; as, a man, a boy."--\_Brit. Gram.

and Buchanan cor.\_ (29.) "An adjective is a word added to \_a noun or

pronoun\_, to describe \_the object named or referred to\_."--\_Maunder cor.\_

(30.) "An adjective is a word \_added\_ to a noun \_or pronoun\_, to describe

or define \_the object mentioned\_."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ (31.) "An adjective

is a word \_which, without assertion or time, serves\_ to describe or define

\_something\_; as, a \_good\_ man, \_every\_ boy."--\_Wilcox cor.\_ (32.) "\_An\_

adjective is \_a word\_ added to \_a\_ noun \_or pronoun, and generally

expresses a\_ quality."--\_Mur. and Lowth cor.\_ (33.) "An adjective expresses

the quality, \_not\_ of the noun \_or pronoun\_ to which it is applied, \_but of

the person or thing spoken of\_; and \_it\_ may generally be known by \_the\_

sense \_which it thus makes\_ in connexion with \_its noun\_; as, 'A \_good\_

man,' 'A \_genteel\_ woman.'"--\_Wright cor.\_ (34.) "An adverb is a word used

to modify the sense of \_a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an other

adverb\_."--\_Wilcox cor.\_ (35.) "An adverb is a word \_added\_ to a verb, \_a

participle\_, an adjective, or an other adverb, to modify \_the sense\_, or

denote some circumstance."--\_Bullions cor.\_ (36.) "A substantive, or noun,

is a name given to \_some\_ object which the senses can perceive, the

understanding comprehend, or the imagination entertain."--\_Wright cor.\_

(37-54.) "\_Genders are modifications that\_ distinguish \_objects\_ in regard

to sex."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 35: \_Bullions cor.\_: also \_Frost\_; also

\_Perley\_; also \_Cooper\_; also \_L. Murray et al\_.; also \_Alden et al\_.; also

\_Brit. Gram., with Buchanan\_; also \_Fowle\_; also \_Burn\_; also \_Webster\_;

also \_Coar\_; also \_Hall\_; also \_Wright\_; also \_Fisher\_; also \_W. Allen\_;

also \_Parker and Fox\_; also \_Weld\_; also \_Weld again\_. (55 and 56.) "\_A\_

case, \_in grammar\_, is the state or condition of a noun \_or pronoun\_, with

respect to \_some\_ other \_word\_ in \_the\_ sentence."--\_Bullions cor.\_; also

\_Kirkham\_. (57.) "\_Cases\_ are modifications that distinguish the relations

of nouns and pronouns to other words."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 36. (58.)

"Government is the power which one \_word\_ has over an other, \_to cause\_ it

to \_assume\_ some particular \_modification\_."--\_Sanborn et al. cor.\_ See

\_Inst.\_, p. 104. (59.) "A simple sentence is a sentence which contains only

one \_assertion, command, or question\_."--\_Sanborn et al. cor.\_ (60.)

"Declension means \_the\_ putting \_of\_ a noun \_or pronoun\_ through the

different cases \_and numbers\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ Or better: "The declension

of a \_word\_ is a regular arrangement of its numbers and cases."--See

\_Inst.\_, p. 37. (61.) "Zeugma is a \_figure in which\_ two or more \_words

refer\_ in common \_to an other\_ which \_literally agrees with\_ only one of

them."--\_B. F. Fish cor.\_ (62.) "An irregular verb is \_a verb that does not

form the preterit\_ and the perfect participle \_by assuming d\_ or \_ed\_; as,

smite, smote, smitten."--\_Inst.\_, p. 75. (63). "A personal \_pronoun is a

pronoun that shows, by its form, of what person it is\_."--\_Inst.\_, p. 46.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE IV.--OF COMPARISONS.

"\_Our language abounds\_ more in vowel and diphthong sounds, than most

\_other tongues\_." Or: "We abound more in vowel and \_diphthongal\_ sounds,

than most \_nations\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "A line thus accented has a more

spirited air, than \_one which takes\_ the accent on any other

syllable."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Homer \_introduces\_ his deities with no greater

ceremony, that [what] he uses towards mortals; and Virgil has still less

moderation \_than he\_."--\_Id.\_ "Which the more refined taste of later

writers, \_whose\_ genius \_was\_ far inferior to \_theirs\_, would have taught

them to avoid."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "\_As a poetical composition\_, however,

the Book of Job is not only equal to any other of the sacred writings, but

is superior to them all, except those of Isaiah alone."--\_Id.\_ "On the

whole, Paradise Lost is a poem \_which\_ abounds with beauties of every kind,

and \_which\_ justly entitles its author to \_be equalled in\_ fame \_with\_ any

poet."--\_Id.\_ "Most of the French writers compose in short sentences;

though their style, in general, is not concise; commonly less so than

\_that\_ of \_most\_ English writers, whose sentences are much longer."--\_Id.\_

"The principles of the Reformation were \_too deeply fixed\_ in the prince's

mind, to be easily eradicated."--\_Hume cor.\_ "Whether they do not create

jealousy and animosity, more than \_sufficient to counterbalance\_ the

benefit derived from them."--\_Leo Wolf cor.\_ "The Scotch have preserved the

ancient character of their music more entire, than \_have the inhabitants

of\_ any other country."--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "When the time or quantity of one

syllable exceeds \_that of\_ the rest, that syllable readily receives the

accent."--\_Rush cor.\_ "What then can be more obviously true, than that it

should be made as just as we can \_make it\_."--\_Dymond cor.\_ "It was not

likely that they would criminate themselves more than, they could \_not\_

avoid."--\_Clarkson cor.\_ "\_In\_ their understandings \_they\_ were the most

acute people \_that\_ have ever lived."--\_Knapp cor.\_ "The patentees have

printed it with neat types, and upon better paper than was \_used\_

formerly."--\_John Ward cor.\_ "In reality, its relative use is not exactly

like \_that of\_ any other word."--\_Felch cor.\_ "Thus, \_in stead\_ of \_having

to purchase\_ two books,--the Grammar and the Exercises,--the learner finds

both in one, for a price at \_most\_ not greater than \_that of\_ the

others."--\_Alb. Argus cor.\_ "\_They are\_ not improperly regarded as

pronouns, though they are less \_strictly\_ such than the others."--\_Bullions

cor.\_ "We have had, as will readily be believed, \_a much better\_

opportunity of becoming conversant with the case, than the generality of

our readers can be supposed to have had."--\_Brit. Friend cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE V.--OF FALSITIES.

"The long sound of \_i\_ is \_like a very quick union\_ of the sound of \_a\_, as

heard in \_bar\_, and that of \_e\_, as heard in \_be\_."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "The

omission of a word necessary to grammatical propriety, is \_of course an

impropriety, and not a true\_ ellipsis."--\_Priestley cor.\_ "\_Not\_ every

substantive, \_or noun\_, is \_necessarily\_ of the third person."--\_A. Murray

cor.\_ "A noun is in the third person, when the subject is \_merely\_ spoken

\_of\_; and in the second person, when the subject is spoken \_to\_; \_and\_ in

the first person, \_when it names the speaker as such\_."--\_Nutting cor.\_

"With us, no nouns are \_literally of the\_ masculine \_or the\_ feminine

gender, except the names of male and female creatures."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_

"\_The\_ apostrophe is a little mark, either \_denoting the possessive case of

nouns\_, or signifying that something is shortened: as, '\_William's\_

hat;'--'the \_learn'd\_,' for 'the \_learned\_.'"--\_Inf. S. Gram. cor.\_ "When a

word beginning with a vowel coupled with one beginning with a consonant,

the indefinite article must \_not\_ be repeated, \_if the two words be

adjectives belonging to one and the same noun\_; thus, 'Sir Matthew Hale was

\_a\_ noble and impartial judge;'--'Pope was \_an\_ elegant and nervous

writer.'"--\_Maunder cor.\_[555] "\_W\_ and \_y\_ are consonants, when they

\_precede a vowel heard in the same\_ syllable: in every other situation,

they are vowels."--\_L. Mur. et al. cor.\_ See \_Inst.\_, p. 16. "\_The\_ is \_not

varied\_ before adjectives and substantives, let them begin as they

will."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "\_A few English\_ prepositions, \_and many which we have

borrowed from other languages\_, are \_often\_ prefixed to words, in such a

manner as to coalesce with them, and to become \_parts of the compounds or

derivatives thus formed\_."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "\_H\_, at the beginning of

syllables not accented, is \_weaker\_, but \_not\_ entirely silent; as in

\_historian, widowhood\_."--\_Rev. D. Blair cor.\_ "\_Not every\_ word that will

make sense with \_to\_ before it, is a verb; for \_to\_ may govern nouns,

pronouns, or participles."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "\_Most\_ verbs do, in reality,

express actions; but they are \_not\_ intrinsically the mere names of

actions: \_these must of course be nouns\_."--\_Id.\_ "The nominative \_denotes\_

the actor or subject; and the verb, the action \_which is\_ performed \_or

received\_ by \_this actor or subject\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_But\_ if only one creature

or thing acts, \_more than\_ one action \_may\_, at the same instant, be done;

as, 'The girl not only \_holds\_ her pen badly, but \_scowls\_ and \_distorts\_

her features, while she \_writes\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "\_Nor is each of these verbs of

the singular number because it\_ denotes but one action which the girl

performs, \_but because the subject or nominative\_ is of the singular

number, \_and the words must agree\_."--\_Id.\_ "And when I say, '\_Two men

walk\_,' is it not equally apparent, that \_walk\_ is plural because it

\_agrees with men\_?"--\_Id.\_ "The subjunctive mood is formed by \_using the

simple verb in a suppositive sense, and without personal

inflection\_."--\_Beck cor.\_ "The possessive case \_of nouns, except in

instances of apposition or close connexion\_, should always be distinguished

by the apostrophe."--\_Frost cor.\_ "'At these proceedings \_of\_ the Commons:'

Here \_of\_ is \_a\_ sign of the \_objective\_ case; and '\_Commons\_' is of that

case, \_being\_ governed \_by this preposition\_."--\_A. Murray cor.\_ "Here let

it be observed again, that, strictly speaking, \_all finite\_ verbs have

numbers \_and\_ persons; \_and so\_ have \_nearly all\_ nouns \_and\_ pronouns,

\_even\_ when they refer to irrational creatures and inanimate

things."--\_Barrett cor.\_ "The noun denoting the person or \_persons\_

addressed or spoken to, is in the nominative case independent: \_except it

be put in apposition with a pronoun of the second person\_; as, 'Woe to \_you

lawyers\_;'--'\_You\_ political \_men\_ are constantly manoeuvring.'"--\_Frost

cor.\_ "Every noun, when \_used in a direct address and set off by a comma\_,

becomes of the second person, and is in the nominative case absolute; as,

'\_Paul\_, thou art beside thyself."--\_Jaudon cor.\_ "Does the conjunction

\_ever\_ join words together? \_Yes\_; the conjunction \_sometimes\_ joins

\_words\_ together, \_and sometimes\_ sentences, \_or certain parts of

sentences\_."--\_Brit. Gram. cor.\_; also \_Buchanan\_. "Every \_noun of the

possessive form\_ has a \_governing\_ noun, expressed or understood: as, \_St.

James's\_. Here \_Palace\_ is understood. \_But\_ one \_possessive may\_ govern an

other; as, '\_William's father's\_ house.'"--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Every adjective

(\_with the exceptions noted under Rule\_ 9th) belongs to a \_noun or pronoun\_

expressed or understood."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "\_Not\_ every adjective

qualifies a substantive, expressed or understood."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "\_Not\_

every adjective belongs to \_a\_ noun expressed or understood."--\_Ingersoll

cor.\_ "Adjectives belong to nouns \_or pronouns, and serve to\_ describe

\_things\_."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "\_English\_ adjectives, \_in general, have no

modifications in which they can\_ agree with the nouns \_to\_ which they

\_relate\_."--\_Allen Fisk cor.\_ "The adjective, \_if it denote unity or

plurality\_, must agree with its substantive in number."--\_Buchanan cor.\_

"\_Not\_ every adjective and participle, \_by a vast many\_, belongs to some

noun or pronoun, expressed or understood."--\_Frost cor.\_ "\_Not\_ every verb

of the infinitive mood, supposes a verb before it, expressed or

understood."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "\_Nor\_ has every adverb its verb, expressed

or understood; \_for some adverbs relate to participles, to adjectives, or

to other adverbs\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_A conjunction that connects one\_ sentence to

\_an other, is not\_ always placed betwixt the two propositions or sentences

which \_it unites\_."--\_Id.\_ "The words \_for all that\_, are by no means

'low;' but the putting of this phrase for \_yet\_ or \_still\_, is neither

necessary nor elegant."--\_L. Murray cor.\_; also \_Dr. Priestley\_. "The

reader or hearer then understands from AND, that \_the author adds one

proposition, number, or thing, to an other\_. Thus AND \_often, very often\_,

connects one thing with an other thing, \_or\_ one word with an other

word."--\_James Brown cor.\_ "'Six AND six \_are\_ twelve.' Here it is

affirmed, that \_the two sixes added together are\_ twelve."--\_Id.\_ "'John

AND his wife \_have\_ six children.' This is an instance \_in which\_ AND

\_connects two nominatives in a simple sentence\_. It is \_not\_ here affirmed

that John has six children, and that his wife has six \_other\_

children."--\_Id.\_ "That 'Nothing can be great which is not right,' is

itself a \_great falsity\_: there are great blunders, great evils, great

sins."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The highest degree of reverence should be paid to

\_the most exalted virtue or goodness\_."--\_Id.\_ "There is in \_all\_ minds

\_some\_ knowledge, \_or\_ understanding."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "Formerly,

the nominative and objective cases of our pronouns, were \_more generally

distinguished in practice\_, than they now are."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "As it

respects a choice of words and expressions, \_the just\_ rules of grammar

\_may\_ materially aid the learner."--\_S. S. Greene cor.\_ "\_The name of\_

whatever exists, or is conceived to exist, is a noun."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "As

\_not all\_ men are brave, \_brave\_ is itself \_distinctive\_."--\_Id.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE VI.--OF ABSURDITIES.

(1.) "And sometimes two unaccented syllables \_come together\_."--\_Dr. Blair

cor.\_ (2.) "What nouns frequently \_stand together\_?" Or: "What nouns \_are\_

frequently \_used one after an other\_?"--\_Sanborn cor.\_ (3.) "Words are

derived from \_other words\_ in various ways."--\_Idem et al. cor.\_ (4.) "\_The

name\_ PREPOSITION \_is\_ derived from the two Latin words \_præ\_ and \_pono\_,

which signify \_before\_ and \_place\_."--\_Mack cor.\_ (5.) "He was \_much\_

laughed at for such conduct."--\_Bullions cor.\_ (6.) "Every \_pronominal

adjective\_ belongs to some noun, expressed or understood."--\_Ingersoll

cor.\_ (7.) "If he [Addison] fails in any thing, it is in strength and

precision; \_the want of\_ which renders his manner not altogether a proper

model."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ (8.) "Indeed, if Horace \_is\_ deficient in any

thing \_his fault\_ is this, of not being sufficiently attentive to juncture,

\_or the\_ connexion of parts."--\_Id.\_ (9.) "The pupil is now supposed to be

acquainted with the \_ten parts\_ of speech, and their most usual

modifications."--\_Taylor cor.\_ (10.) "I could see, \_feel\_, taste, and smell

the rose."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ (11.) "The \_vowels iou are\_ sometimes pronounced

distinctly in two syllables; as in \_various, abstemious\_; but not in

\_bilious\_."--\_Murray and Walker cor.\_ (12.) "The diphthong \_aa\_ generally

sounds like \_a\_ short; as in \_Balaam, Canaan, Isaac\_; in \_Baäl\_ and \_Gaäl\_,

we make no diphthong."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ (13.) "Participles \_cannot be said

to be\_ 'governed by the article;' for \_any\_ participle, with \_an\_ article

before it, becomes a substantive, or an adjective used substantively: as,

\_the learning, the learned\_."--\_Id.\_ (14.) "\_From\_ words ending with \_y\_

preceded by a consonant, \_we\_ form the plurals of nouns, the persons of

verbs, \_agent\_ nouns, \_perfect\_ participles, comparatives, and

superlatives, by changing the \_y\_ into \_i\_, and adding \_es, ed, er, eth\_,

or \_est\_."--\_Walker, Murray, et al. cor.\_ (15.) "But \_y\_ preceded by a

vowel, \_remains unchanged\_, in the derivatives above named; as, \_boy,

boys\_."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ (16.) "But when \_the final y\_ is preceded

by a vowel, it \_remains unchanged before an\_ additional syllable; as, coy,

\_coyly\_."--\_Iid.\_ (17.) "But \_y\_ preceded by a vowel, \_remains unchanged\_,

in \_almost all\_ instances; as, coy, \_coyly\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ (18.)

"Sentences are of \_two kinds\_, simple and compound."--\_Wright cor.\_ (19.)

"The neuter pronoun \_it\_ may be employed to \_introduce a nominative\_ of any

person, number, or gender: as, '\_It\_ is \_he\_:'--'\_It\_ is \_she\_;'--'\_It is

they\_;'--'\_It\_ is the \_land\_.'"--\_Bucke cor.\_ (20 and 21.) "\_It is\_ and \_it

was\_, are \_always singular\_; but they \_may introduce words of\_ a plural

construction: as, '\_It was\_ the \_heretics that\_ first began to rail.'

SMOLLETT."--\_Merchant cor.\_; also \_Priestley et al.\_ (22.) "\_W\_ and \_y\_, as

consonants, have \_each of them\_ one sound."--\_Town cor.\_ (23.) "The \_word

as\_ is frequently a relative \_pronoun\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ (24.) "\_From a

series of\_ clauses, the conjunction may \_sometimes\_ be omitted with

propriety."--\_Merchant cor.\_ (25.) "If, however, the \_two\_ members are very

closely connected, the comma is unnecessary; as, 'Revelation tells us how

we may attain happiness.'"--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ (26-27.) "The mind has

difficulty in \_taking effectually\_, in quick succession, so many different

views of the same object."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_; also \_L. Mur\_. (28.)

"\_Pronominal adjectives\_ are a kind of \_definitives\_, which \_may either

accompany their\_ nouns, \_or represent them understood\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_

(29.) "\_When the nominative or antecedent is a collective noun\_ conveying

\_the idea of plurality, the\_ verb or pronoun \_must agree\_ with it in the

plural \_number\_."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ (30-34.) "A noun or \_a\_ pronoun in the

possessive case, is governed by the \_name of the thing possessed\_."--

\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 176; \_Greenleaf cor.\_; also \_Wilbur and Livingston\_;

also \_Goldsbury\_; also \_P. E. Day\_; also \_Kirkham, Frazee, and Miller\_.

(35.) "Here the boy is represented as acting: \_the word boy\_ is therefore

in the nominative case."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ (36.) "\_Do, be, have\_, and \_will\_,

are \_sometimes\_ auxiliaries, \_and sometimes\_ principal verbs."--\_Cooper

cor.\_ (37.) "\_Names\_ of \_males\_ are masculine. \_Names\_ of \_females\_ are

feminine."--\_Adam's Gram.\_, p. 10; \_Beck cor.\_ (38.) "'To-day's lesson is

longer than yesterday's.' Here \_to-day's\_ and \_yesterday's\_ are

substantives."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ (39.) "In this example, \_to-day's\_

and \_yesterday's\_ are nouns in the possessive case."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ (40.)

"An Indian in Britain would be much surprised to \_find by chance\_ an

elephant feeding at large in the open fields."--\_Kames cor.\_ (41.) "If we

were to contrive a new language, we might make any articulate sound the

sign of any idea: \_apart from previous usage\_, there would be no

impropriety in calling oxen \_men\_, or rational beings \_oxen\_."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ (42.) "All the parts of a sentence should \_form a consistent

whole\_."--\_Id et al. cor.\_

(43.) "Full through his neck the weighty falchion sped,

Along the pavement rolled the \_culprit's\_ head."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE VII.--OF SELF-CONTRADICTION.

(1.) "Though 'The king, \_with\_ the lords and commons,' \_must have a

singular rather than\_ a plural verb, the sentence would certainly stand

better thus: 'The king, the lords, \_and\_ the commons, \_form\_ an excellent

constitution.'"--\_Mur. and Ing. cor.\_ (2-3.) "\_L\_ has a soft liquid sound;

as in \_love, billow, quarrel\_. \_This letter\_ is sometimes silent; as in

\_half, task [sic for 'talk'--KTH], psalm\_."--\_Mur. and Fisk cor.\_; also

\_Kirkham\_. (4.) "The words \_means\_ and \_amends\_, though regularly derived

from the singulars \_mean\_ and \_amend\_, are \_not\_ now, \_even\_ by polite

writers, restricted to the plural number. Our most distinguished modern

authors \_often\_ say, 'by \_this means\_,' as well as, 'by \_these

means\_.'"--\_Wright cor.\_ (5.) "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues; an

enemy, his crimes."--\_Mur. cor.\_ (6.) "The auxiliary \_have, or any form of\_

the perfect tense, \_belongs not properly to\_ the subjunctive mood. \_We

suppose past facts by the indicative\_: as, If I \_have loved\_, If thou \_hast

loved\_, &c."--\_Merchant cor.\_ (7.) "There is also an impropriety in \_using\_

both the indicative and the subjunctive \_mood\_ with the same conjunction;

as, '\_If\_ a man \_have\_ a hundred sheep, and one of them \_is\_ gone astray,'

&c. [This is Merchant's perversion of the text. It should be, 'and one of

them \_go\_ astray:' or, '\_be gone\_ astray,' as in Matt., xviii. 12.]"--\_Id.\_

(8.) "The rising series of contrasts \_conveys transcendent\_ dignity and

energy to the conclusion."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ (9.) "A groan or a shriek is

instantly understood, as a language extorted by distress, a \_natural\_

language which conveys a meaning that \_words\_ are \_not adequate\_ to

express. A groan or \_a\_ shriek speaks to the ear with \_a\_ far more

thrilling effect than words: yet \_even this natural\_ language of distress

may be counterfeited by art."--\_Dr. Porter cor.\_ (10.) "\_If\_ these words

[\_book\_ and \_pen\_] cannot be put together in such a way as will constitute

plurality, then they cannot be '\_these words\_;' and then, also, \_one and

one\_ cannot be \_two\_."--\_James Brown cor.\_ (11.) "Nor can the real pen and

the real book be \_added or counted together\_ in words, in such a manner as

will \_not\_ constitute plurality in grammar."--\_Id.\_ (12.) "\_Our\_ is \_a

personal\_ pronoun, of the possessive \_case. Murray does not\_ decline

it."--\_Mur. cor.\_ (13.) "\_This\_ and \_that\_, and their plurals \_these\_ and

\_those\_, are \_often\_ opposed to each other in a sentence. When \_this\_ or

\_that\_ is used alone, i.e., \_without contrast, this\_ is \_applied\_ to \_what

is\_ present or near; \_that\_, to \_what is\_ absent or distant."--\_Buchanan

cor.\_ (14.) "Active and neuter verbs may be conjugated by adding their

\_imperfect\_ participle to the auxiliary verb \_be\_, through all its

variations."--"\_Be\_ is an auxiliary whenever it is placed before either the

perfect \_or the imperfect\_ participle of an other verb; but, in every other

situation, it is a principal verb."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ (15.) "A verb in the

imperative mood is \_almost\_ always of the second person."--"The verbs,

according to a \_foreign\_ idiom, or the poet's license, are used in the

imperative, agreeing with a nominative of the first or third

person."--\_Id.\_ (16.) "A personal \_pronoun, is a pronoun that shows, by its

form, of what\_ person \_it is\_."--"Pronouns of the first person do not

\_disagree\_ in person with the nouns they represent."--\_Id.\_ (17.) "Nouns

have three cases; \_the\_ nominative, \_the possessive\_, and \_the\_

objective."--"Personal pronouns have, like nouns, \_three\_ cases; \_the\_

nominative, \_the\_ possessive, and \_the\_ objective."--\_Beck cor.\_ (18.) "In

\_many\_ instances the preposition suffers \_a\_ change \_and\_ becomes an adverb

by its \_mere\_ application."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ (19.) "Some nouns are used

only in the plural; as, \_ashes, literati, minutiæ\_. Some nouns \_have\_ the

same \_form\_ in both numbers; as, \_sheep, deer, series, species\_. Among the

inferior parts of speech, there are some \_pairs\_ or \_couples\_."--\_Rev. D.

Blair cor.\_ (20.) "Concerning the pronominal adjectives, that may, \_or\_ may

not, represent \_their nouns\_."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ (21.) "The \_word a\_ is

in a few instances employed in the sense of a preposition; as, 'Simon Peter

\_saith unto them\_, I go \_a\_ fishing;' i. e., I go \_to\_ fishing."--\_Weld

cor.\_ (22.) "So, \_too\_, verbs \_that are commonly\_ transitive, are used

intransitively, when they have no object."--\_Bullions cor.\_

(23.) "When first young Maro, in his boundless mind,

A work t' outlast \_imperial\_ Rome design'd."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE VIII.--OF SENSELESS JUMBLING.

"\_There are two numbers\_, called the singular and \_the\_ plural, \_which\_

distinguish nouns as \_signifying either\_ one \_thing\_, or many of the same

kind."--\_Dr. H. Blair cor.\_ "Here James Monroe is addressed, he is spoken

to; \_the name\_ is \_therefore\_ a noun of the second person."--\_Mack cor.\_

"The number and \_person\_ of \_an English\_ verb can \_seldom\_ be ascertained

until its nominative is known."--\_Emmons cor.\_ "A noun of multitude, or \_a

singular noun\_ signifying many, may have \_a\_ verb \_or a\_ pronoun agreeing

with it in \_either\_ number; yet not without regard to the import of the

\_noun\_, as conveying \_the idea of\_ unity or plurality."--\_Lowth et al.

cor.\_ "To \_form\_ the present \_tense\_ and \_the\_ past imperfect of our

\_active\_ or neuter \_verbs\_, the auxiliary \_do, and its preterit did, are

sometimes\_ used: \_as\_, I \_do\_ now love; I \_did\_ then love."--\_Lowth cor.\_

"If these \_be\_ perfectly committed \_to memory, the learner\_ will be able to

take twenty lines for \_his second\_ lesson, and \_the task\_ may be increased

each day."--\_Osborn cor.\_ "\_Ch is\_ generally sounded in the same manner \_as

if it were tch\_: as in \_Charles, church, cheerfulness\_, and \_cheese\_. But,

\_in Latin or Greek\_ words, \_ch is\_ pronounced like \_k\_: as in \_Chaos,

character, chorus\_, and \_chimera\_. \_And\_, in \_words\_ derived from the

French, \_ch is\_ sounded like \_sh\_: as \_in Chagrin, chicanery\_, and

\_chaise\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Some \_nouns literally\_ neuter, are \_made\_

masculine or feminine by a figure of speech."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "In

the English language, words may be classified under ten general heads: the

\_sorts, or chief classes, of words\_, are usually termed the ten parts of

speech."--\_Nutting cor.\_ "'Mercy is the true badge of nobility.' \_Nobility\_

is a \_common\_ noun, \_of the\_ third person, singular number, \_neuter\_

gender, and objective case; and is governed by \_of\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "\_Gh

is\_ either silent, \_as in plough\_, or \_has\_ the sound of \_f\_, as in

\_laugh\_."--\_Town cor.\_ "Many \_nations\_ were destroyed, and as many

languages or dialects were lost and blotted out from the general

catalogue."--\_Chazotte cor.\_ "Some languages contain a greater number of

moods than others, and \_each\_ exhibits \_its own as\_ forms \_peculiar to

itself\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "A SIMILE is a simple and express comparison;

and is generally introduced by \_like, as\_, or \_so\_."--\_Id.\_ See \_Inst.\_, p.

233. "The word \_what\_ is sometimes improperly used for the conjunction

\_that\_."--\_Priestley, Murray, et al., cor.\_ "Brown makes \_no\_ ado \_in

condemning\_ the \_absurd\_ principles of preceding works, in relation to the

gender of pronouns."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "The nominative \_usually\_

precedes the verb, and \_denotes the agent of\_ the action."--\_Wm. Beck cor.\_

"Primitive \_words\_ are those which \_are not formed from other words\_ more

simple."--\_Wright cor.\_ "In monosyllables, the single vowel \_i\_ always

preserves its long sound before a single consonant with \_e\_ final; as \_in

thine, strive\_: except in \_give\_ and \_live\_, which are short; and in

\_shire\_, which has the sound of long \_e\_."--\_L. Murray, et al. cor.\_ "But

the person or thing \_that is merely\_ spoken of, being \_frequently\_ absent,

and \_perhaps\_ in many respects unknown \_to the hearer\_, it is \_thought

more\_ necessary, that \_the third person\_ should be marked by a distinction

of gender."--\_Lowth, Mur., et al., cor.\_ "\_Both vowels of every diphthong

were\_, doubtless, originally \_vocal\_. Though in many instances \_they are\_

not \_so\_ at present, \_the\_ combinations \_in which one only is heard\_, still

retain the name of diphthongs, \_being distinguished from others\_ by the

term \_improper\_."--\_L. Mur., et al. cor.\_ "\_Moods are different forms\_ of

the verb, \_each of which expresses\_ the being, action, or passion, \_in some

particular\_ manner."--\_Inst.\_, p. 33; \_A. Mur. cor.\_ "The word THAT is a

demonstrative \_adjective, whenever\_ it is followed by a \_noun\_ to which it

refers."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_

"The \_guilty soul by Jesus wash'd\_,

Is future glory's deathless heir."--\_Fairfield cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE IX.--OF WORDS NEEDLESS.

"A knowledge of grammar enables us to express ourselves better in

conversation and in writing."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "And hence we infer, that

there is no dictator here but use."--\_Jamieson cor.\_ "Whence little is

gained, except correct spelling and pronunciation."--\_Town cor.\_ "The man

who is faithfully attached to religion, may be relied on with

confidence."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "Shalt thou build me \_a\_ house to dwell in?"

Or: "Shalt thou build \_a\_ house for me to dwell in?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "The

house was deemed polluted which was entered by so abandoned a woman."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "The farther he searches, the firmer will be his

belief."--\_Keith cor.\_ "I deny not that religion consists in these

things."--\_Barclay cor.\_ "Except the king delighted in her, and she were

called by name."--\_Bible cor.\_ "The proper method of reading these lines,

is, to read them as the sense dictates."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "When any words

become obsolete, or are used \_only in\_ particular phrases, it is better to

dispense with their service entirely, and give up the phrases."--\_Campbell

and Mur cor.\_ "Those savage people seemed to have no element but war."--\_L.

Mur. cor.\_ "\_Man\_ is a common noun, of the third person, singular number,

masculine gender, and nominative case."--\_J. Flint cor.\_ "The orator, as

circumstances require, will employ them all."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "By

deferring repentence [sic--KTH], we accumulate our sorrows."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "There is no doubt that public speaking became early an engine of

government."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "The different \_meanings\_ of these two

words, may not at first occur."--\_Id.\_ "The sentiment is well expressed by

Plato, but much better by Solomon."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "They have had

a greater privilege than we."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "Every thing should be so

arranged, that what goes before, may give light and force to what

follows."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "So that his doctrines were embraced by great

numbers."--\_Hist. cor.\_ "They have taken \_an other\_ and shorter

cut."--\_South cor.\_ "The imperfect tense of a regular verb is formed from

the present by adding \_d\_ or \_ed\_; as, \_love, loved\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ "The

pronoun \_their\_ does not agree in number with the noun '\_man\_', for which

it stands."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "This mark [!] denotes wonder, surprise, joy,

grief, or sudden emotion."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "We all are accountable, each for

himself."--\_L. Mur. et al. cor.\_ "If he has commanded it, I must

obey."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "I now present him a form of the diatonic

scale."--\_Barber cor.\_ "One after an other, their favourite rivers have

been reluctantly abandoned." Or: "One after an other \_of\_ their favourite

rivers have \_they\_ reluctantly abandoned."--\_Hodgson cor.\_ "\_Particular\_

and \_peculiar\_ are words of different import."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Some

adverbs admit of comparison; as, \_soon, sooner, soonest\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_

"Having exposed himself too freely in different climates, he entirely lost

his health."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "The verb must agree with its nominative in

number and person."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "Write twenty short sentences

containing adjectives."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "This general tendency of the

language seems to have given occasion to a very great corruption."--

\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 113. "The second requisite of a perfect sentence is

\_unity\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "It is scarcely necessary to apologize for

omitting their names."--\_Id.\_ "The letters of the English alphabet are

twenty-six."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "He who employs antiquated or novel

phraseology, must do it with design; he cannot err from inadvertence, as he

may with respect to provincial or vulgar expressions."--\_Jamieson cor.\_

"The vocative case, in some grammars, is wholly omitted; why, if we must

have cases, I could never understand."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Active verbs are

conjugated with the auxiliary verb \_have\_; passive verbs, with the

auxiliary \_am\_ or \_be\_."--\_Id.\_ "What then may AND be called? A

conjunction."--\_Smith cor.\_ "Have they ascertained who gave the

information?"--\_Bullions cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE X.--OF IMPROPER OMISSIONS.

"All \_words signifying concrete\_ qualities of things, are called adnouns,

or adjectives."--\_Rev. D. Blair cor.\_ "The \_macron\_ [[=]] signifies \_a\_

long or accented syllable, and the breve [[~]] indicates a short or

unaccented syllable."--\_Id.\_ "Whose duty \_it\_ is, to help young

ministers."--\_Friends cor.\_ "The passage is closely connected with what

precedes and \_what\_ follows."--\_Phil. Mu. cor.\_ "The work is not completed,

but \_it\_ soon will be."--\_R. C. Smith cor.\_ "Of whom hast thou been afraid,

or \_whom hast thou\_ feared?"--\_Bible cor.\_ "There is a God who made, and

\_who\_ governs, the world."--\_Bp. Butler cor.\_ "It was this \_that\_ made them

so haughty."--\_Goldsmith cor.\_ "How far the whole charge affected him, \_it\_

is not easy to determine."--\_Id.\_ "They saw \_these wonders of nature\_, and

\_worshiped\_ the God that made them."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "The errors frequent in

the use of hyperboles, arise either from overstraining \_them\_, or \_from\_

introducing them on unsuitable occasions."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "The preposition

\_in\_ is set before \_the names of\_ countries, cities, and large towns; as,

'He lives \_in\_ France, \_in\_ London, or \_in\_ Birmingham.' But, before \_the

names of\_ villages, single houses, \_or foreign\_ cities, \_at\_ is used; as,

'He lives \_at\_ Hackney.'"--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "And, in such recollection,

the thing is not figured as in our view, nor \_is\_ any image

formed."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Intrinsic \_beauty\_ and relative beauty must be

handled separately."--\_Id.\_ "He should be on his guard not to do them

injustice by disguising \_them\_ or placing them in a false light."--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "In \_perusing\_ that work, we are frequently interrupted by \_the

author's\_ unnatural thoughts."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "To this point have tended

all the rules \_which\_ I have \_just\_ given."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "To \_this

point\_ have tended all the rules which have \_just\_ been given."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "Language, as written, or \_as\_ oral, is addressed to the eye, or to

the ear."--\_Journal cor.\_ "He will learn, Sir, that to accuse and \_to\_

prove are very different."--\_Walpole cor.\_ "They crowded around the door so

as to prevent others \_from\_ going out."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "\_A word denoting\_

one person or thing, is \_of the\_ singular number; \_a word denoting\_ more

than one person or thing: is \_of the\_ plural number."--\_J. Flint cor.\_

"Nouns, according to the sense or relation in which they are used, are in

the nominative, \_the\_ possessive, or \_the objective\_ case: thus, Nom. man.

Poss. man's, Obj. man."--\_Rev. D. Blair cor.\_ "Nouns or pronouns in the

possessive case are placed before the nouns which govern them, \_and\_ to

which they belong."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "A teacher is explaining the difference

between a noun and \_a\_ verb."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "And therefore the two ends,

or extremities, must directly answer to the north and \_the\_ south

pole."--\_Harris cor.\_ "WALKS or WALKETH, RIDES or RIDETH, \_and\_ STANDS or

STANDETH, are of the third person singular."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "I grew

immediately roguish and pleasant, to a \_high\_ degree, in the same

strain."--\_Swift cor.\_ "An \_Anapest\_ has the first \_two\_ syllables

unaccented, and the last \_one\_ accented."--\_Rev. D. Blair cor.\_; also

\_Kirkham et al\_.; also \_L. Mur. et al\_. "But hearing and vision differ not

more than words spoken and \_words\_ written." Or: "But hearing and vision

\_do not differ\_ more than \_spoken words\_ and written."--\_Wilson cor.\_ "They

are considered by some \_authors to be\_ prepositions."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "When

those powers have been deluded and \_have\_ gone astray."--\_Phil Mu. cor.\_

"They will understand this, and \_will\_ like it."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "They had

been expelled \_from\_ their native country Romagna."--\_Hunt cor.\_ "Future

time is expressed \_in\_ two different ways."--\_Adam and Gould cor.\_ "Such as

the borrowing \_of some noted event\_ from history."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Every

\_finite\_ verb must agree with its nominative in number and person."--\_Bucke

cor.\_ "We are struck, we know not how, with the symmetry of any \_handsome\_

thing we see."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Under this head, I shall consider every

thing \_that is\_ necessary to a good delivery."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "A good ear

is the gift of nature; it may be much improved, but \_it cannot be\_ acquired

by art."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "'\_Truth\_' \_is a common\_ noun, \_of the third

person\_, singular \_number\_, neuter \_gender\_, and nominative

\_case\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ by \_Brown's Form\_. "'\_Possess\_' \_is a regular\_

active-transitive verb, \_found in\_ the indicative mood, present \_tense\_,

third person, \_and\_ plural number."--\_Id.\_ "'\_Fear\_' is a \_common\_ noun,

\_of the third person\_, singular \_number\_, neuter \_gender\_, and nominative

\_case\_: and is the subject of \_is: according to the Rule which says, 'A

noun or a pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb, must be in the

nominative case.'\_ Because the meaning is--'\_fear is\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "'\_Is\_' is

an irregular \_neuter\_ verb, \_from be\_, was, \_being\_, been; \_found\_ in the

indicative \_mood\_, present \_tense\_, third person, \_and\_ singular \_number\_:

and agrees with its nominative \_fear\_; \_according to the\_ Rule \_which

says\_, '\_Every finite\_ verb \_must agree with its subject, or nominative, in

person and number\_' Because the meaning is--'\_fear is\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "\_Ae in

the word Gælic\_, has the sound of long \_a\_."--\_Wells cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XI.--OF LITERARY BLUNDERS.

"Repeat some adverbs that are composed of the \_prefix or preposition a\_ and

nouns."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Participles are so called, because \_they

participate or partake the properties of verbs and of adjectives or nouns\_.

The Latin word \_participium\_, which signifies \_a participle, is\_ derived

from \_participo\_, to partake."--\_Merchant cor.\_ "The possessive \_precedes\_

an other noun, and is known by the sign \_'s\_, or by this ', the apostrophe

only."--\_Beck cor.\_ "Reciprocal pronouns, \_or compound personal pronouns\_,

are formed by adding \_self\_ or \_selves\_ to the \_simple\_ possessives \_of the

first and second persons, and to the objectives of the third person\_; as,

\_myself, yourselves, himself, themselves\_."--\_Id.\_ "The word SELF, and its

plural SELVES, \_when used separately as names\_, must be considered as

nouns; \_but when joined to the simple pronouns, they are not nouns, but

parts of the compound personal pronouns\_."--\_Wright cor.\_ "The \_Spondee

'rolls round\_,' expresses beautifully the majesty of the sun in his

course."--\_Webster and Frazee cor.\_ "\_Active-transitive verbs\_ govern the

objective case; as, 'John \_learned\_ his \_lesson\_.'"--\_Frazee cor.\_ "Prosody

primarily signified \_accent\_, or \_the modulation of the voice\_; and, as the

name implies, related \_to poetry, or song\_."--\_Hendrick cor.\_ "On such a

principle of forming \_them\_, there would be as many \_moods\_ as verbs; and,

\_in stead\_ of four moods, we should have \_four thousand three hundred\_,

which is the number of verbs in the English language, according to

Lowth." [556]--\_Hallock cor.\_ "The phrases, 'To let \_out\_ blood,'--'To go

\_a\_ hunting,' are \_not\_ elliptical; for \_out\_ is needless, and \_a\_ is a

preposition, governing \_hunting\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "In Rhyme, the last

syllable of every \_line corresponds in\_ sound \_with that of some other line

or lines\_."--\_Id.\_ "The possessive case plural, \_where the nominative ends

in s\_, has the apostrophe \_only\_; as, '\_Eagles'\_ wings,'--'\_lions'\_

whelps,'--'\_bears'\_ claws.'"--\_Weld cor.\_ "'\_Horses-manes\_,' plural, should

be written \_possessively, 'horses' manes\_:'" [\_one "mane"\_ is never

possessed by many "\_horses\_."]--\_Id.\_ "W takes its \_usual\_ form from the

union of two \_Vees\_, V being the \_figure\_ of the Roman capital letter which

was anciently called \_U\_."--\_Fowler cor.\_ "In the sentence, 'I saw the lady

who sings,' what word \_is nominative to\_ SINGS?"--\_J. Flint cor.\_ "In the

sentence, 'This is the pen which John made,' what word \_expresses the

object of\_ MADE?"--\_Id.\_ "'That we fall into \_no\_ sin:' \_no\_ is a

definitive or pronominal \_adjective\_, not compared, and relates to

\_sin\_."--\_Rev. D. Blair cor.\_ "'That \_all\_ our doings may be ordered by thy

governance:' \_all\_ is a pronominal adjective, not compared, and relates to

\_doings\_."--\_Id.\_ "'Let him be made \_to\_ study.' \_Why is\_ the sign \_to\_

expressed before \_study\_? Because \_be made\_ is passive; and passive verbs

do not take the infinitive after them without the preposition

\_to\_."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "The following verbs have \_both the preterit tense

and the perfect participle like the present\_: viz., Cast, cut, cost, shut,

let, bid, shed, hurt, hit, put, &c."--\_Buchanan cor.\_ "The agreement which

\_any\_ word has with \_an other\_ in person, \_number\_, gender, \_or\_ case, is

called CONCORD; and \_the\_ power which one \_word\_ has over \_an other\_, in

respect to ruling its case, mood, or \_form\_, is called GOVERNMENT."--\_Bucke

cor.\_ "The word \_ticks\_ tells what the watch is \_doing\_."--\_Sanborn cor.\_

"\_The\_ Breve ([~]) marks a short vowel or syllable, and the \_Macron\_ ([=]),

a long \_one\_."--\_Bullions and Lennie cor.\_ "'Charles, you, by your

diligence, make easy work of the task given you by your preceptor.' The

first \_you\_ is in the \_nominative\_ case, being the subject of the verb

\_make\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "\_Uoy\_ in \_buoy\_ is a proper \_triphthong; eau\_ in

\_flambeau\_ is an improper \_triphthong\_."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "'While I of

things to come, As past rehearsing, sing.'--POLLOK. That is, 'While I sing

of things to come, \_as if I were rehearsing things that are\_

past.'"--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "A simple sentence \_usually\_ has in it but one

nominative, and \_but\_ one \_finite\_ verb."--\_Folker cor.\_ "An irregular verb

is \_a verb that does not form the preterit\_ and \_the\_ perfect participle

\_by assuming d or ed\_."--\_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 75. "But, when the antecedent

is used in a \_restricted\_ sense, a comma is \_sometimes\_ inserted before the

relative; as, 'There is no \_charm\_ in the female sex, \_which\_ can supply

the place of virtue.'"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 273. Or: "But, when the

antecedent is used in a \_restricted\_ sense, no comma is \_usually\_ inserted

before the relative; as, 'There is in the female sex no \_charm which\_ can

supply the place of virtue.'"--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Two capitals \_used\_ in this

way, denote \_different words\_; but \_one repeated, marks\_ the plural number:

as, L. D. \_Legis Doctor\_; LL. D. \_Legum Doctor\_."--\_Gould cor.\_ "Was any

person \_present besides\_ the mercer? Yes; his clerk."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"The word \_adjective\_ comes from the Latin \_adjectivum\_; and this, from

\_ad\_, to, and \_jacio\_, I cast."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Vision, or \_Imagery\_, is a

figure \_by which the speaker represents the objects of his imagination\_, as

actually before \_his\_ eyes, and \_present to his senses\_. Thus Cicero, in

his fourth oration against Cataline: 'I seem to myself to behold this city,

the ornament of the earth, and the capital of all nations, suddenly

involved in one conflagration. I see before me the slaughtered heaps of

citizens lying unburied in the midst of their ruined country. The furious

countenance of Ceth[=e]'gus rises to my view, while with savage joy he is

triumphing in your miseries.'"--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_; also \_L. Murray\_. "When

\_two or more\_ verbs follow the same nominative, \_an\_ auxiliary \_that is

common to them both or all\_, is \_usually expressed to\_ the first, and

understood to the rest: as, 'He \_has gone\_ and \_left\_ me;' that is, 'He

\_has gone\_ and \_has left\_ me.'"--\_Comly cor.\_ "When I use the word \_pillar

to denote a column that supports\_ an edifice, I employ it

literally."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "\_In poetry\_, the conjunction \_nor\_ is often used

for \_neither\_; as

'A stately superstructure, that \_nor\_ wind,

Nor wave, nor shock of falling years, could move.'--POLLOK."--\_Id.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XII--OF PERVERSIONS.

"In the beginning God created the \_heaven\_ and the earth."--\_Genesis\_, i,

1. "Canst thou by searching find out \_God\_?"--\_Job\_, xi, 7. "Great \_and

marvellous are thy works\_, Lord \_God Almighty\_; just and true are thy ways,

thou King of saints."--\_Rev.\_, xv. 3. "\_Not\_ every one that saith unto me,

Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven."--\_Matt.\_, vii, 21.

"Though he was rich, yet for \_your\_ sakes he became poor."--\_2 Cor.\_, viii,

9. "Whose foundation was \_overthrown\_ with a flood."--SCOTT'S BIBLE: \_Job\_,

xxii, 16. "Take my yoke upon \_you, and learn of me\_;" &c.--\_Matt.\_, xi, 29.

"I \_go\_ to prepare a place for you."--\_John\_, xiv, 2. "\_And you\_ hath he

quickened, who \_were\_ dead \_in\_ trespasses \_and sins\_."--\_Ephesians\_, ii,

1. "Go, flee thee away into the land of \_Judah\_."--\_Amos\_, vii, 12;

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 44. Or: "Go, flee away into the land of

\_Judah\_."--\_Hart cor.\_ "Hitherto shalt thou come, \_but\_ no

\_further\_."--\_Job\_, xxxviii, 11. "The day is thine, the night also is

thine."--\_Psal.\_, lxxiv, 16. "\_Tribulation\_ worketh patience; and patience,

experience; and experience, hope."--\_Romans\_, v, 4. "\_Then\_ shall the dust

return to \_the earth as it was\_; and the \_spirit shall return unto God\_ who

gave it."--\_Ecclesiastes\_, xii, 7. "\_At the last\_ it biteth like a serpent,

and stingeth like an adder. \_Thine eyes shall behold strange women\_, and

\_thine heart shall\_ utter perverse things: \_Yea\_, thou \_shalt\_ be \_as he

that\_ lieth down in the midst of the sea."--\_Prov.\_, xxiii, 32, 33, 34.

"The memory of the just \_is blessed\_; but the name of the wicked shall

rot."--\_Prov.\_, x, 7. "He that is slow \_to\_ anger, is better than the

mighty; \_and\_ he that ruleth his spirit, than he that taketh a

city."--\_Prov.\_, xvi, 32. "\_For whom the Lord loveth\_, he correcteth;

\_even\_ as \_a\_ father the son in whom he delighteth."--\_Prov.\_, iii, 12.

"The \_first-future\_ tense \_is that which expresses\_ what \_will\_ take place

hereafter."--\_Brown's Inst. of E. Gram.\_, p. 54. "Teach me to feel

another's woe, To hide \_the fault\_ I see."--\_Pope's Univ. Prayer\_. "Surely

thou art one of them; for thou art a \_Galilean\_."--\_Mark\_, xiv, 70. "Surely

thou also art one of them; for thy speech bewrayeth thee."--\_Matt.\_, xxvi,

73. "Strait is the gate, and narrow \_is\_ the way, \_which leadeth\_ unto

life."--\_Matt.\_, vii, 14. "Thou buildest the wall, that thou \_mayest\_ be

their king."--\_Nehemiah\_, vi, 6. "There is forgiveness with thee, that thou

\_mayest\_ be feared."--\_Psalms\_, cxxx, 4. "But yesterday, the word \_of

Cæsar\_ might Have stood against the world."--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p.

250. "The North-East spends \_his\_ rage."--\_Thomson's Seasons\_, p. 34.

"Tells how the drudging \_goblin\_ swet."--\_Milton's Allegro\_, l. 105. "And

to his faithful \_champion\_ hath in place \_Borne\_ witness

gloriously."--\_Milton's Sam. Agon.\_, l. 1752. "Then, if thou \_fall'st\_, O

Cromwell, Thou \_fall'st\_ a blessed martyr."--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p.

173. Better: "Then, if thou \_fall\_, O Cromwell! thou \_fallst\_ a blessed

martyr."--\_Shak. and Kirk. cor.\_ "I see the dagger-crest of Mar, I see the

\_Moray's\_ silver star, \_Wave\_ o'er the cloud of Saxon war, That up the lake

\_comes\_ winding far!"--\_Scott's Lady of the Lake\_, p. 162. "Each \_beast\_,

each insect, happy in its own."--\_Pope, on Man\_, Ep. i, l. 185. "\_And he

that is\_ learning to arrange \_his\_ sentences with accuracy and order, \_is\_

learning, at the same time, to think with accuracy and order."--\_Blair's

Lect.\_, p. 120. "We, then, as workers together with \_him\_, beseech you also

that ye receive not the grace of God in vain."--\_2 Cor.\_, vi, 1. "And on

the \_boundless\_ of thy goodness calls."--\_Young's Last Day\_, B. ii, l. 320.

"Knowledge dwells In heads replete with thoughts of other men; Wisdom, in

minds \_attentive\_ to their own."--\_Cowper's Task\_, B. vi, l. 90. "\_O\_! let

me listen to the \_words\_ of life!"--\_Thomson's Paraphrase on Matt\_. vi.

"Save that, from yonder ivy-mantled \_tower\_." &c.--\_Gray's Elegy\_, l. 9.

"\_Weighs\_ the \_men's\_ wits against the \_Lady's hair\_."--\_Pope's Rape of the

Lock\_, Canto v, l. 72. "\_Till\_ the publication of \_Dr\_. Lowth's \_small

Introduction\_, the grammatical study of our language formed no part of the

ordinary method of instruction."--\_Hiley's Preface\_, p. vi. "Let there be

no strife, \_I pray thee, between\_ me and thee."--\_Gen.\_, xiii, 8.

"What! canst thou not \_forbear\_ me half an hour?"--\_Shakspeare\_.

"Till then who knew the force of those dire \_arms\_?"--\_Milton\_.

"In words, as fashions, the \_same\_ rule will hold;

Alike fantastic, if too new or old:

Be not the first by whom the new \_are\_ tried

Nor yet the last to lay the old aside."--\_Pope, on Criticism\_, l. 333.

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XIII.--OF AWKWARDNESS.

"They slew Varus, \_whom\_ I mentioned before."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Maria

rejected Valerius, \_whom\_ she had rejected before." Or: "Maria rejected

Valerius \_a second time\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_In\_ the English \_language, nouns have\_

but two different terminations for cases."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 64.

"Socrates and Plato were \_the wisest men, and\_ the most eminent

philosophers \_in\_ Greece."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, Pref., p. viii. "Whether

more than one were concerned in the business, does not yet appear." Or:

"\_How many\_ were concerned in the business, does not yet appear."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "And that, consequently, the verb \_or\_ pronoun agreeing with

it, \_can never\_ with propriety be used in the plural number."--\_Id. et al.

cor.\_ "A second help may be, \_frequent\_ and \_free converse\_ with \_others\_

of your own sex who are like minded."--\_Wesley cor.\_ "Four of the

\_semivowels\_, namely, \_l, m, n\_, and \_r\_, are \_termed\_ LIQUIDS, \_on account

of the fluency of\_ their sounds."--See \_Brown's Inst.\_, p. 16. "Some

conjunctions \_are used in pairs\_, so that \_one\_ answers to \_an other, as

its regular\_ correspondent."--\_Lowth et al. cor.\_ "The mutes are those

consonants whose sounds cannot be protracted; the \_semivowels have

imperfect\_ sounds \_of their own\_, which can be continued at

pleasure."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "HE \_and\_ SHE \_are\_ sometimes used as

\_nouns\_, and, \_as such, are\_ regularly declined: as, 'The \_hes\_ in

birds.'--BACON. 'The \_shes\_ of Italy.'--SHAK."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "The

separation of a preposition from the word which it governs, is [censured by

some writers, as being improper."--\_C. Adams cor.\_ "The word WHOSE,

\_according to some critics, should\_ be restricted to persons; but good

writers \_still occasionally\_ use it \_with reference to\_

things."--\_Priestley et al. cor.\_ "New and surpassing wonders present

themselves to our \_view\_."--\_Sherlock cor.\_ "The degrees of comparison are

often \_inaccurately\_ applied and construed."--\_Alger's Murray\_. Or:

"\_Passages\_ are often found in which the degrees of comparison \_have not an

accurate construction\_."--\_Campbell cor.\_; also \_Murray et al\_. "The \_sign

of possession\_ is placed too \_far from the name\_, to \_form a construction

that is\_ either perspicuous or agreeable."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "\_The simple

tenses\_ are those which are formed \_by\_ the principal verb without an

auxiliary."--\_Id.\_ "The \_more intimate\_ men \_are\_, the more \_they affect

one another's happiness\_."--\_Id.\_ "This is the machine that he

\_invented\_."--\_Nixon cor.\_ "To give this sentence the interrogative form,

\_we must express it\_ thus." Or: "This sentence, \_to have\_ the interrogative

form, should be expressed thus."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "Never employ words

\_that are\_ susceptible of a sense different from \_that which\_ you intend

\_to convey\_."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "Sixty pages are occupied in explaining what,

according to the ordinary method, would not require more than ten or

twelve."--\_Id.\_ "The participle in \_ing\_ always expresses action,

suffering, or being, as continuing, \_or in progress\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"The \_first\_ participle of all active verbs, has \_usually\_ an active

signification; as, 'James is \_building\_ the house.' \_Often\_, however, it

\_takes\_ a passive \_meaning\_; as, '\_The house is building\_.'"--\_Id.\_

"\_Previously\_ to parsing this sentence, the young pupil may be \_taught to

analyze\_ it, by such questions as the following: viz."--\_Id.\_ "\_Since\_ that

period, however, attention has been paid to this important subject."--\_Id.

and Hiley cor.\_ "A definition of a word is \_a brief\_ explanation \_of\_ what

\_it means\_."--G. BROWN: \_Hiley cor.\_

UNDER CRITICAL NOTE XIV.--OF IGNORANCE.

"What is \_a verb\_? It is \_a word\_ which signifies \_to be, to act\_, or \_to

be acted upon\_." Or thus: "What is an \_assertor\_? Ans. 'One who affirms

positively; an affirmer, supporter, or vindicator.'--WEBSTER'S

DICT."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "Virgil wrote the \_Æneid\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Which,

to a supercilious or inconsiderate \_native of Japan\_, would seem very idle

and impertinent."--\_Locke cor.\_ "Will not a look of disdain cast upon you

throw you into a \_ferment\_?"--\_Say cor.\_ "Though only the conjunction \_if\_

is \_here set before\_ the verb, there are several others, (as \_that, though,

lest, unless, except\_,) which may be \_used with\_ the subjunctive

mood."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "When proper names have an article \_before\_ them,

they are used as common names."--\_Id. et al. cor.\_ "When a proper noun has

an article \_before\_ it, it is used as a common noun."--\_Merchant cor.\_

"Seeming to \_rob\_ the death-field of its terrors."--\_Id.\_ "For the same

reason, we might, without any \_detriment\_ to the language, dispense with

the terminations of our verbs in the singular."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "It

\_removes\_ all possibility of being misunderstood."--\_Abbott cor.\_

"Approximation to \_perfection\_ is all that we can expect."--\_Id.\_ "I have

often joined in singing with \_musicians\_ at Norwich."--\_Gardiner cor.\_

"When not standing in regular \_prosaic\_ order." Or:--"in \_the\_ regular

order \_of prose\_."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "\_Regardless\_ of the dogmas and

edicts of the philosophical umpire."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "Others begin to talk

before their mouths are open, \_prefixing\_ the mouth-closing M to most of

their words; as, '\_M-yes\_,' for '\_Yes\_.'"--\_Gardiner cor.\_ "That noted

close of his '\_esse videatur\_,' exposed him to censure among his

\_contemporaries\_."--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "A man's \_own is\_ what he \_has, or

possesses by right; the word own\_ being a past participle of \_the\_ verb \_to

owe\_, which formerly signified \_to have or possess\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "As

requires so; expressing a comparison of \_manner\_; as, '\_As\_ the one dieth,

\_so\_ dieth the other.'"--\_L. Mur. et al. cor.\_ "To obey our parents, is \_an

obvious\_ duty."--\_Parker and Fox cor.\_ "\_Almost\_ all the political papers

of the kingdom have touched upon these things."--\_H. C. Wright cor.\_ "I

shall take \_the liberty\_ to make a few observations on the

subject."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "His loss I have endeavoured to supply, \_so\_ far as

\_by\_ additional vigilance and industry \_I could\_."--\_Id.\_ "That they should

make vegetation so \_exuberant\_ as to anticipate every want."--\_Frazee cor.\_

"The \_guillemets\_, or \_quotation points\_, [""] denote that one or more

words are extracted from an other author."--\_P. E. Day cor.\_ "\_Nineveh, the

capital of\_ Assyria, \_was one\_ of the most noted cities of ancient

\_times\_."--\_Id.\_ "It may, however, be rendered definite by \_the mention of\_

some \_particular\_ time; as, yesterday, last week, &c."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"The last is called heroic measure, and is the same that is used by Milton,

Young, \_Thomson, Pollok\_. &c."--\_Id.\_ "\_Perennial\_ ones must be sought in

the delightful regions above."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "Intransitive verbs are

those which are \_inseparable\_ from the effect produced." Or better:

"Intransitive verbs are those which \_express action without governing an

object\_."--\_Cutler cor.\_ "\_The Feminine\_ gender belongs to women, and

animals of the female kind."--\_Id.\_ "\_Wo\_ unto you, scribes and

\_Pharisees\_, hypocrites!"--ALGER'S BIBLE: \_Luke\_, xi, 44. "A \_pyrrhic\_,

which has both its syllables short."--\_Day cor.\_ "What kind of \_jessamine\_?

A \_jessamine\_ in flower, or a flowery \_jessamine\_."--\_Barrett cor.\_

"LANGUAGE, \_a word\_ derived from LINGUA, the tongue, \_now signifies any

series of sounds or letters formed into words, and used for the expression

of thought\_."--\_Id.\_ See \_this Gram. of E. Grammars\_, p. 145. "Say

'\_none\_,' not '\_ne'er a one\_.'"--\_Staniford cor.\_ "'\_E'er a one\_,' [is

sometimes used for '\_any\_'] or '\_either\_.'"--\_Pond cor.\_

"Earth loses thy \_pattern\_ for ever and aye;

O sailor-boy! sailor-boy! peace to thy soul."

--\_Dymond\_.

"His brow was sad; his eye beneath

Flashed like a \_falchion\_ from its sheath."

--\_Longfellow's Ballads\_, p. 129.

[Fist] [The examples exhibited for exercises under Critical Notes 15th and

16th, being judged either incapable of correction, or unworthy of the

endeavour, are submitted to the criticism of the reader, without any

attempt to amend them, or to offer substitutes in this place.]

PROMISCUOUS CORRECTIONS OF FALSE SYNTAX.

LESSON I.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"\_Why is\_ our language less refined than that of Italy, Spain, or

France?"--\_L. Murray cor. "Why is\_ our language less refined than \_the

French\_?"--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "I believe your Lordship will agree with me, in

the reason why our language is less refined than \_that\_ of Italy, Spain, or

France."--\_Swift cor.\_ "Even in this short sentence, 'why our language is

less refined than \_those\_ of Italy, Spain, or France,' we may discern an

inaccuracy; the \_pronominal adjective 'those'\_ is made plural, when the

substantive to which it refers, or the thing for which it stands, 'the

\_language\_ of Italy, Spain, or France,' is singular."--\_Dr. H. Blair cor.\_

"The sentence \_would\_ have run much better in this way:--'why our language

is less refined than the Italian, \_the\_ Spanish, or \_the\_ French.'"--\_Id.\_

"But when arranged in an entire sentence, \_as\_ they must be to make a

complete sense, they show it still more evidently."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "This

is a more artificial and refined construction, than that in which the

common connective is simply \_used\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_I\_ shall present \_to\_ the

reader a list of \_certain\_ prepositions \_or prefixes\_, which are derived

from the Latin and Greek languages."--\_Id. "A relative sometimes

comprehends\_ the meaning of a \_personal\_ pronoun and a copulative

conjunction."--\_Id.\_ "Personal pronouns, being used to supply the \_places\_

of nouns, are not \_often\_ employed in the same \_clauses with\_ the \_nouns\_

which they represent."--\_Id. and Smith cor.\_ "There is very seldom any

occasion for a substitute where the principal word is present."--\_L. Mur.

cor.\_ "We hardly consider little children as persons, because \_the\_ term

\_person\_ gives us the idea of reason, \_or intelligence\_."--\_Priestley et

al. cor.\_ "The \_occasions\_ for exerting these \_two\_ qualities \_are\_

different."--\_Dr. Blair et al. cor.\_ "I'll tell you \_with whom\_ time ambles

withal, \_with whom\_ time trots withal, \_with whom\_ time gallops withal, and

\_with whom\_ he stands still withal. I pray thee, \_with whom\_ doth he trot

withal?"--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 122. "By greatness, I mean, \_not\_ the bulk

of any single object \_only\_ but the largeness of a whole view."--\_Addison

cor.\_ "The question may then be put, What \_more\_ does he than mean?"--\_Dr.

Blair cor.\_ "The question might be put, What more does he than

mean?"--\_Id.\_ "He is surprised to find himself \_at\_ so great a distance

from the object with which he \_set\_ out."--\_Id.\_; also \_Murray cor.\_ "Few

rules can be given which will hold \_good\_ in all cases."--\_Lowth and Mur.

cor.\_ "Versification is the arrangement of \_words into metrical lines\_,

according to the laws \_of verse\_."--\_Johnson cor.\_ "Versification is the

arrangement \_of words into rhythmical lines of some particular length, so

as to produce harmony by the regular alternation of syllables differing in

quantity\_."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "\_Amelia's\_ friend Charlotte, to whom

no one imputed blame, was too prompt in her own vindication."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_ "Mr. Pitt's joining \_of\_ the war party in 1793, the most striking and

the most fatal instance of this offence, is the one which at once presents

itself."--\_Brougham cor.\_ "To the framing \_of\_ such a sound constitution of

mind."--\_Lady cor.\_ "'I beseech you,' said St. Paul to his Ephesian

converts, 'that ye walk worthy of the vocation wherewith ye are called.'

"--See \_Eph.\_, iv, 1. "So as to prevent \_it from\_ being equal to

that."--\_Booth cor.\_ "When speaking of an \_action\_ as being performed." Or:

"When speaking of \_the performance of an action\_."--\_Id.\_ "And, in all

questions of \_actions\_ being so performed, \_est\_ is added \_for\_ the second

person."--\_Id.\_ "No account can be given of this, \_but\_ that custom has

blinded their eyes." Or: "No \_other\_ account can be given of this, \_than\_

that custom has blinded their eyes."--\_Dymond cor.\_

"Design, or chance, \_makes\_ others wive;

But nature did this match contrive."--\_Waller cor.\_

LESSON II.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"I suppose each of you \_thinks\_ it is \_his\_ own nail."--\_Abbott cor.\_ "They

are useless, \_because they are\_ apparently based upon this

supposition."--\_Id.\_ "The form, \_or\_ manner, in which this plan may be

adopted is various."--\_Id. "The\_ making \_of\_ intellectual effort, and \_the\_

acquiring \_of\_ knowledge, are always pleasant to the human mind."--\_Id.\_

"This will do more than the best lecture \_that\_ ever was delivered."--\_Id.

"The\_ doing \_of\_ easy things is generally dull work."--\_Id.\_ "Such \_are\_

the tone and manner of some teachers."--\_Id.\_ "Well, the fault is, \_that

some one was\_ disorderly at prayer time."--\_Id.\_ "Do you remember \_to have

spoken\_ on this subject in school?"--\_Id.\_ "The course above recommended,

is not \_the\_ trying \_of\_ lax and inefficient measures"--\_Id.\_ "Our

community \_agree\_ that there is a God."--\_Id.\_ "It prevents \_them from\_

being interested in what is said."--\_Id.\_ "We will also suppose that I call

an other boy to me, \_whom\_ I have reason to believe to be a sincere

Christian."--\_Id.\_ "Five \_minutes'\_ notice is given by the bell."--\_Id.\_

"The Annals of Education \_give\_ notice of it." Or: "The \_work entitled\_

'Annals of Education' \_gives\_ notice of it."--\_Id. "Teachers'\_ meetings

will be interesting and useful."--\_Id.\_ "She thought \_a\_ half hour's study

would conquer all the difficulties."--\_Id.\_ "The difference between an

honest and \_a\_ hypocritical confession."--\_Id.\_ "There is no point of

attainment \_at which\_ we must stop."--\_Id.\_ "Now six \_hours' service\_ is as

much as is expected of teachers."--\_Id.\_ "How \_many\_ are seven times

nine?"--\_Id.\_ "Then the reckoning proceeds till it \_comes\_ to ten

hundred."--\_Frost cor.\_ "Your success will depend on your own exertions;

see, then, that you \_be\_ diligent."--\_Id.\_ "Subjunctive Mood, Present

Tense: If I \_be\_ known, If thou \_be\_ known, If he \_be\_ known;" &c.--\_Id.\_

"If I be loved, If thou be loved, If he be loved;" &c.--\_Frost right.\_ "An

Interjection is a word used to express sudden emotion. \_Interjections\_ are

so called because they are generally thrown in between the parts of

\_discourse\_, without any reference to the structure of \_those\_

parts."--\_Frost cor.\_ "The \_Cardinal numbers\_ are those which \_simply tell

how many\_; as, one, two, three."--\_Id.\_ "More than one organ \_are\_

concerned in the utterance of almost every consonant." Or thus: "More

\_organs\_ than one \_are\_ concerned in the utterance of almost \_any\_

consonant."--\_Id.\_ "To extract from them all the terms \_which\_ we \_use\_ in

our divisions and subdivisions of the art."--\_Holmes cor.\_ "And there

\_were\_ written therein lamentations, and mourning, and woe."--\_Bible cor.\_

"If I were to be judged as to my behaviour, compared with that of

\_John\_."--\_Whiston's Jos. cor.\_ "The preposition \_to\_, signifying \_in order

to\_, was anciently preceded by \_for\_; as, 'What went ye out \_for to

see?\_'"--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 184. "This makes the proper perfect tense,

which in English is always expressed by the auxiliary verb \_have; as\_, 'I

have written.'"--\_Dr. Blair cor.\_ "Indeed, in the formation of character,

personal exertion is the first, the second, and the third

\_virtue\_."--\_Sanders cor.\_ "The reducing \_of\_ them to the condition of the

beasts that perish."--\_Dymond cor.\_ "Yet this affords no reason to deny

that the nature of the gift is the same, or that both are divine." Or: "Yet

this affords no reason to \_aver\_ that the nature of the gift is not the

same, or that both are not divine."--\_Id.\_ "If God \_has\_ made known his

will."--\_Id.\_ "If Christ \_has\_ prohibited them, nothing else can prove them

right."--\_Id.\_ "That the taking \_of\_ them is wrong, every man who simply

consults his own heart, will know."--\_Id.\_ "\_From these evils the world\_

would be spared, if one did not write."--\_Id.\_ "It is in a great degree our

own \_fault\_."--\_Id.\_ "It is worthy \_of\_ observation, that lesson-learning

is nearly excluded."--\_Id.\_ "Who spares the aggressor's life, even to the

endangering \_of\_ his own."--\_Id.\_ "Who advocates the taking \_of\_ the life

of an aggressor."--\_Id.\_ "And thence up to the intentionally and

\_voluntarily\_ fraudulent."--\_Id.\_ "And the contention was so \_sharp

between\_ them, that they departed asunder one from \_the\_ other."--SCOTT'S,

FRIENDS', ALGER'S, BRUCE'S BIBLE, AND OTHERS: \_Acts\_, xv, 39. "Here the man

is John, and John is the man; so the words are \_imagination\_ and \_fancy;

but THE imagination\_ and THE fancy are \_not words\_: they are intellectual

powers."--\_Rev. M. Harrison cor.\_ "The article, which is here so emphatic

in the Greek, is \_quite forgotten\_ in our translation."--\_Id.\_ "We have no

\_fewer\_ than \_twenty-four\_ pronouns."--\_Id.\_ "It will admit of a pronoun

joined to it."--\_Id.\_ "From intercourse and from conquest, all the

languages of Europe participate \_one\_ with \_an\_ other."--\_Id.\_ "It is not

always necessity, therefore, that has been the cause of our introducing

\_of\_ terms derived from the classical languages."--\_Id.\_ "The man of genius

stamps upon it any impression that pleases \_him\_." Or: "any impression that

he \_chooses\_."--\_Id.\_ "The proportion of names ending in SON

\_preponderates\_ greatly among the Dano-Saxon population of the

North."--\_Id.\_ "As a proof of the strong similarity between the English

\_language\_ and the Danish."--\_Id.\_ "A century from the time \_when\_ (or \_at

which\_) Hengist and Horsa landed on the Isle of Thanet."--\_Id.\_

"I saw the colours waving in the wind,

And \_them\_ within, to mischief how combin'd."--\_Bunyan cor.\_

LESSON III.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"A ship excepted: of \_which\_ we say, '\_She\_ sails well.'"--\_Jonson cor.\_

"Honesty is reckoned \_of\_ little worth."--\_Lily cor.\_ "Learn to esteem life

as \_you\_ ought."--\_Dodsley cor.\_ "As the soundest health is less perceived

than the lightest malady, so the highest joy toucheth us less \_sensibly\_

than the smallest sorrow."--\_Id.\_ "\_Youth\_ is no apology for

\_frivolousness\_."--\_Whiting cor.\_ "The porch was \_of\_ the same width as the

temple."--\_Milman cor.\_ "The other tribes contributed \_neither\_ to his rise

\_nor to his\_ downfall."--\_Id.\_ "His whole religion, \_with all its laws\_,

would have been shaken to its foundation."--\_Id.\_ "The English has most

commonly been neglected, and children \_have been\_ taught only \_in\_ the

Latin syntax."--\_J. Ward cor.\_ "They are not \_noticed\_ in the notes."--

\_Id.\_ "He walks in righteousness, doing what he would \_have others do to

him\_."--\_Fisher cor.\_ "They stand \_independent\_ of the rest of the

sentence."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "My uncle \_and\_ his son were in town

yesterday."--\_Lennie cor.\_ "She \_and\_ her sisters are well."--\_Id.\_ "His

purse, with its contents, \_was\_ abstracted from his pocket."--\_Id.\_ "The

great constitutional feature of this institution being, that directly

\_after\_ the acrimony of the last election is over, the acrimony of the next

begins."--\_Dickens cor.\_ "His disregarding \_of\_ his parents' advice has

brought him into disgrace."--\_Farnum cor.\_ "Can you tell me \_why\_ his

father \_made\_ that remark?"--\_Id.\_ "\_Why does\_ our teacher \_detain\_ us so

long?"--\_Id.\_ "I am certain \_that\_ the boy said so."--\_Id.\_ "WHICH means

any thing or things before named; and THAT may represent any person or

persons, thing or things, \_that\_ have been speaking, spoken to, or spoken

of."--\_Perley cor.\_ "A certain number of syllables \_occurring in a

particular order\_, form a foot. \_Poetic feet\_ are so called because it is

by their aid that the voice, as it were, steps along."--\_L. Murray et al.

cor.\_ "\_Questions asked by\_ a principal verb \_only\_--as, \_'Teach I?' 'Burns

he?'\_ &c.,--are \_archaisms\_, and now \_peculiar to the poets\_."--\_A. Murray

cor.\_ "Tell whether the 18th, \_the\_ 19th, \_the\_ 20th, \_the\_ 21st, \_the\_

22d, or \_the\_ 23d \_rule is\_ to be used, and repeat the rule."--\_Parker and

Fox cor.\_ "The resolution was adopted without much deliberation, \_and

consequently\_ caused great dissatisfaction." Or: "The resolution, \_which\_

caused great dissatisfaction, was adopted without much deliberation."--

\_Iid.\_ "The man is now much \_noticed\_ by the people thereabouts."--\_Webb's

Edward's Gram. cor.\_ "The sand prevents \_them from\_ sticking to one an

other."--\_Id.\_ "Defective verbs are those which are used only in some of

\_the\_ moods and tenses."--\_Greenleaf's Gram., p. 29; Ingersoll's, 121;

Smith's, 90; Merchant's, 64; Nutting's, 68; L. Murray, Guy, Russell, Bacon,

Frost, Alger, S. Putnam, Goldsbury, Felton, et al. cor.\_ "Defective verbs

are those which want some of \_the\_ moods \_or\_ tenses."--\_Lennie et al.

cor.\_ "Defective verbs want some of \_the\_ parts \_common to other

verbs\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "A Defective verb is one that wants some of \_the\_

parts \_common to verbs\_."--\_Id.\_ "To the irregular verbs \_may\_ be added the

defective; which are not only irregular, but also wanting in some

parts."--\_Lowth cor.\_ "To the irregular verbs \_may\_ be added the defective;

which are not only wanting in some parts, but are, when inflected,

irregular."--\_Churchill cor.\_ "When two or more nouns \_occur together\_ in

the possessive case."--\_Farnum cor.\_ "When several short sentences \_come

together\_"--\_Id.\_ "Words are divided into ten classes, called Parts of

Speech."--\_L. Ainsworth cor.\_ "A passive verb has its agent or doer always

in the objective case, governed by a preposition."--\_Id.\_ "I am surprised

at your \_inattention\_."--\_Id.\_ "SINGULAR: Thou lovest, \_not\_ You love.

\_You\_ has always a plural verb."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "How do you know that

love is \_of\_ the first person? Ans. Because \_we, the pronoun\_, is \_of\_ the

first \_person\_."--\_Id. and Lennie cor.\_ "The lowing herd \_winds\_ slowly

\_o'er\_ the lea."--\_Gray's Elegy\_, l. 2: \_Bullions cor.\_ "Iambic verses have

\_their\_ second, fourth, and other even syllables accented."--\_Bullions

cor.\_ "Contractions \_that\_ are not allowable in prose, are often made in

poetry."--\_Id.\_ "Yet to their general's voice they \_soon obey'd\_"--

\_Milton\_. "It never presents to his mind \_more than\_ one new subject at the

same time."--\_Felton cor.\_ "An \_abstract noun\_ is the name of some

particular quality considered apart from its substance."--\_Brown's Inst. of

E. Gram.\_, p. 32. "\_A noun is of\_ the first person when \_it denotes the

speaker\_."--\_Felton cor.\_ "Which of the two brothers \_is a graduate\_?"--

\_Hallock cor.\_ "I am a linen-draper bold, As all the world doth

know."--\_Cowper\_. "\_Oh\_ the \_pain\_, the \_bliss\_ of dying!"--\_Pope\_. "This

do; take \_to\_ you censers, \_thou\_, Korah, and all \_thy\_ company."--\_Bible

cor.\_ "There are \_three\_ participles; the \_imperfect, the perfect\_, and

\_the preperfect\_: as, reading, read, having read. Transitive verbs have an

\_active and passive\_ participle: that is, their form for the perfect is

sometimes active, and sometimes passive; as, \_read\_, or \_loved\_."--\_S. S.

Greene cor.\_

"O \_Heav'n\_, in my connubial hour decree

\_My spouse this man\_, or such a \_man\_ as he."--\_Pope cor.\_

LESSON IV.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"The past tenses (of Hiley's subjunctive mood) represent conditional past

\_facts\_ or \_events\_, of which the speaker is uncertain."--\_Hiley cor.\_

"Care also should be taken that they \_be\_ not introduced too

abundantly."--\_Id.\_ "Till they \_have\_ become familiar to the mind." Or:

"Till they \_become\_ familiar to the mind."--\_Id.\_ "When once a particular

arrangement and phraseology \_have\_ become familiar to the mind."--\_Id.\_ "I

have furnished the student with the plainest and most practical directions

\_that\_ I could devise."--\_Id.\_ "When you are conversant with the Rules of

Grammar, you will be qualified to commence the study of Style."--\_Id.\_ "\_C

before e, i, or y, always\_ has a soft sound, like \_s\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"\_G\_ before \_e, i, or y\_, is \_generally\_ soft; as in \_genius, ginger,

Egypt\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_C\_ before \_e, i, or y, always\_ sounds soft, like

\_s\_."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "\_G\_ is \_generally\_ soft before \_e, i, or y\_; as in

\_genius, ginger, Egypt\_."--\_Id.\_ "A perfect alphabet must always contain

\_just\_ as many letters as there are elementary sounds in the language: the

English alphabet, \_having fewer letters than sounds, and sometimes more

than one letter for the same sound\_, is both defective and

redundant."--\_Id.\_ "A common \_noun is a name\_, given to a whole class or

species, and \_is\_ applicable to every individual of that class."--\_Id.\_

"Thus an adjective has \_usually\_ a noun either expressed or

understood."--\_Id.\_ "Emphasis is \_extraordinary force used in the

enunciation of such words as we wish to make prominent in discourse\_." Or:

"Emphasis is \_a peculiar stress of voice, used in the utterance of words

specially significant\_."--\_Dr. H. Blair cor.\_; also \_L. Murray\_. "\_So\_

simple \_a\_ question as. 'Do you ride to town to-day?' is capable of \_as

many as\_ four different acceptations, \_the sense varying\_ as the emphasis

is differently placed."--\_Iid.\_ "Thus, \_bravely, for\_ 'in a brave manner.'

is derived from \_brave-like\_."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "In \_this\_ manner, \_several\_

different parts of speech are \_often\_ formed from \_one root\_ by means of

\_different affixes\_."--\_Id.\_ "Words derived from \_the same root\_, are

always more or less allied in signification."--\_Id.\_ "When a noun of

multitude conveys \_the idea of unity\_, the verb and pronoun should be

singular; but when it conveys \_the idea of plurality\_, the verb and pronoun

must be plural."--\_Id.\_ "They have spent their whole time to make the

sacred chronology agree with the profane."--\_Id.\_ "I have studied my

lesson, but you have not \_looked at yours\_."--\_Id.\_ "When words \_are

connected\_ in pairs, there is \_usually\_ a comma \_after\_ each pair."--

\_Hiley, Bullions, and Lennie, cor.\_ "When words \_are connected\_ in pairs,

the pairs should be marked by the comma."--\_Farnum cor.\_ "His \_book

entitled\_, 'Studies of Nature,' is deservedly a popular work."--\_Biog.

Dict. cor.\_

"Here \_rests\_ his head \_upon the lap of earth\_,

A youth to Fortune and to Fame unknown."--GRAY.

"'\_Youth\_,' here, is in the \_nominative case\_, (the verb '\_rests\_' being,

in this instance, \_transitive\_,) and is \_the subject of the sentence\_. The

meaning is, '\_A youth here rests his head\_,' &c."--\_Hart cor.\_ "The pronoun

\_I, as well as\_ the interjection \_O\_, should be written with a capital."

Or: "The pronoun \_I, and\_ the interjection \_O\_, should be written with

\_capitals\_"--\_Weld cor.\_ "The pronoun \_I\_ should \_always\_ be written with a

capital."--\_Id.\_ "He went from \_London\_ to York."--\_Id.\_ "An adverb is a

\_word added\_ to \_a verb, a participle, an adjective, or an\_ other \_adverb\_,

to modify \_its\_ meaning."--\_Id.\_ (See Lesson 1st under the General Rule.)

"SINGULAR signifies, '\_expressing only one;' denoting but\_ one person or

thing. PLURAL, (Latin \_pluralis\_, from \_plus\_, more,) signifies,

'\_expressing\_ more than one.'"--\_Weld cor.\_ "When the present ends in \_e,

d\_ only is added to form the imperfect \_tense\_ and \_the\_ perfect participle

of regular verbs."--\_Id.\_ "Synæresis is the contraction of two syllables

into one; as, \_seest\_ for \_seëst, drowned\_ for \_drown-ed\_."--\_Id.\_ (See

\_Brown's Inst\_. p. 230.) "Words ending in \_ee are often inflected by mere

consonants, and without\_ receiving an additional syllable beginning with

\_e\_: as, \_see, seest, sees; agree, agreed, agrees\_."--\_Weld cor.\_ "\_In\_

monosyllables, final \_f, l\_, or \_s\_, preceded by a single vowel, \_is\_

doubled; as in \_staff, mill, grass\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Before ing\_, words ending

\_in ie\_ drop the \_e\_, and \_change the i into y; as, die, dying\_."--\_Id.\_"

One number may be used for \_the\_ other--\_or, rather, the plural may be used

for the singular\_; as, \_we\_ for \_I, you\_ for \_thou\_."--\_S. S. Greene cor.\_

"STR~OB'ILE, \_n.\_ A pericarp made up of scales that lie \_one over an

other\_."--\_Worcester cor.\_

"Yet ever, from the clearest source, \_hath run\_

Some gross \_alloy\_, some tincture of the man."--\_Lowth cor.\_

LESSON V.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"The possessive case is \_usually\_ followed by \_a\_ noun, \_expressed or

understood\_, which is the name of the thing possessed."--\_Felton cor.\_

"Hadmer of Aggstein was as pious, devout, and praying a Christian, as \_was\_

Nelson, Washington, or Jefferson; or as \_is\_ Wellington, Tyler, Clay, or

Polk."--\_H. C. Wright cor.\_ "A word in the possessive case is not an

independent noun, and cannot stand by \_itself\_."--\_J. W. Wright cor.\_ "Mary

is not handsome, but she is good-natured; \_and good-nature\_ is better than

beauty."--\_St. Quentin cor.\_ "After the practice of joining \_all\_ words

together had ceased, \_a note\_ of distinction \_was placed\_ at the end of

every word."--\_L. Murray et al. cor.\_ "Neither Henry nor Charles

\_dissipates\_ his time."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "'He had taken from the \_Christians

above\_ thirty small castles.' KNOLLES:"--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 200;

\_Johnson's Quarto Dict., w. What.\_ "In \_what\_ character Butler was

admitted, is unknown." Or: "In \_whatever\_ character Butler was admitted,

\_that character\_ is unknown."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "How \_are\_ the agent of a

passive and the object of an active verb often left?"--\_Id.\_ "By SUBJECT,

is meant the word of \_whose object\_ something is declared." Or: "By

SUBJECT, is meant the word \_which has\_ something declared of \_the thing

signified\_."--\_Chandler cor.\_ "Care should also be taken that \_a

transitive\_ verb \_be\_ not used \_in stead\_ of a \_neuter or intransitive\_;

as, \_lay\_ for \_lie, raise\_ for \_rise, set\_ for \_sit\_, &c."--\_Id.\_ "On them

\_depends\_ the duration of our Constitution and our country."--\_Calhoun

cor.\_ "In the present sentence, neither the sense nor the measure

\_requires\_ WHAT."--\_Chandler cor.\_ "The Irish thought themselves oppressed

by the \_law\_ that forbid them to draw with their \_horses'

tails\_."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "\_So and willingly\_ are adverbs. \_So\_ is \_an\_

adverb of \_degree\_, and qualifies \_willingly. Willingly\_ is an adverb of

\_manner\_, and qualifies \_deceives\_."--\_Cutler cor.\_ "Epicurus, for

\_experiment's\_ sake, confined himself to a narrower diet than that of the

severest prisons."--\_Id.\_ "Derivative words are such as are \_formed from\_

other words \_by prefixes or suffixes\_; as, \_injustice, goodness,

falsehood\_."--\_Id.\_ "The distinction here insisted on is as old as

Aristotle, and should not be lost \_from\_ sight." Or: "and \_it\_ should

\_still\_ be \_kept in view\_."--\_Hart cor.\_ "The Tenses of the Subjunctive and

Potential Moods." Or: "The Tenses of the Subjunctive and \_the\_ Potential

Mood."--\_Id.\_ "A triphthong is a union of three vowels, uttered \_by a

single impulse of the voice\_; as, \_uoy\_ in \_buoy\_"--\_Pardon Davis cor.\_ "A

common \_noun is\_ the \_name\_ of a species or kind."--\_Id.\_ "The superlative

degree \_implies\_ a comparison \_either\_ between \_two\_ or \_among\_

more."--\_Id.\_ "An adverb is a word serving to give an additional idea \_to\_

a verb, \_a participle, an adjective\_, or \_an other\_ adverb."--\_Id.\_ "When

several nouns in the possessive case \_occur in succession\_, each showing

possession \_of things\_ of the same \_sort\_, it is \_generally\_ necessary to

add the sign of the possessive case to \_each of them\_: as, 'He sells

\_men's, women's\_, and children's shoes.'--'\_Dogs', cats'\_, and \_tigers'\_

feet are digitated.'"--\_Id.\_ "'A \_rail-road\_ is \_being made\_,' should be,

'A \_railroad\_ is \_making\_;' 'A \_school-house\_ is \_being built\_,' should be,

'A \_schoolhouse\_ is \_building\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "Auxiliaries \_are\_ of themselves

verbs; \_yet\_ they resemble, in their character and use, those terminational

or other inflections \_which\_, in other languages, \_serve\_ to express the

action in the \_mood\_, tense, \_person\_, and \_number\_ desired."--\_Id.\_

"Please \_to\_ hold my horse while I speak to my friend."--\_Id.\_ "If I say,

'Give me \_the\_ book,' I \_demand\_ some particular book."--\_Noble Butler

cor.\_ "\_Here\_ are five men."--\_Id.\_ "\_After\_ the active \_verb\_, the object

may be omitted; \_after\_ the passive, the name of the agent may be

omitted."--\_Id.\_ "The Progressive and Emphatic forms give, in each case, a

different shade of meaning to the verb."--\_Hart cor.\_ "THAT \_may be called\_

a Redditive Conjunction, when it answers to so \_or\_ SUCH."--\_Ward cor.\_ "He

attributes to negligence your \_want of success\_ in that business."--\_Smart

cor.\_ "\_Do\_ WILL and GO express but \_one\_ action?" Or: "\_Does\_ '\_will go\_'

express but \_one\_ action?"--\_Barrett cor.\_ "Language is the \_principal\_

vehicle of thought."--\_G. Brown's Inst., Pref.\_, p. iii. "\_Much\_ is applied

to things weighed or measured; \_many\_, to those that are numbered. \_Elder\_

and \_eldest\_ \_are applied\_ to persons only; \_older\_ and \_oldest\_, to

\_either\_ persons or things."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "If there are any old maids

still extant, while \_misogynists\_ are so rare, the fault must be

attributable to themselves."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ "The second method, used by

the Greeks, has never been the practice of any \_other people\_ of

Europe."--\_Sheridan cor.\_ "Neither consonant nor vowel \_is\_ to be dwelt

upon beyond \_its\_ common quantity, when \_it closes\_ a sentence." Or:

"Neither \_consonants\_ nor \_vowels\_ are to be dwelt upon beyond their common

quantity, when they close a sentence." Or, better thus: "Neither \_a\_

consonant nor \_a\_ vowel, when \_it closes\_ a sentence, \_is\_ to be

\_protracted\_ beyond \_its usual length\_."--\_Id.\_ "Irony is a mode of speech,

in which what is said, is the opposite of what is meant."--\_McElligott's

Manual\_, p. 103. "The \_person\_ speaking, \_and the person or persons\_ spoken

to, are supposed to be present."--\_Wells cor.\_; also \_Murray\_. "A \_Noun\_ is

\_a name\_, a word used to express the \_idea\_ of an object."--\_Wells cor.\_ "A

syllable is \_such\_ a word, or \_part\_ of a word, as is uttered by one

articulation."--\_Weld cor.\_

"Thus wond'rous fair; thyself how wond'rous then!

Unspeakable, who \_sitst\_ above these heavens."--\_Milton\_, B. v, l. 156.

"And feel thy \_sovran\_ vital lamp; but thou

\_Revisitst\_ not these eyes, that roll in vain."--\_Id.\_, iii, 22.

"Before all temples \_th'\_ upright \_heart\_ and pure."--\_Id.\_, i, 18.

"In forest wild, in thicket, \_brake\_, or den."--\_Id.\_, vii, 458.

"The rogue and fool by fits \_are\_ fair and wise;

And e'en the best, by fits, what they despise."--\_Pope cor.\_

THE KEY.--PART IV.--PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.--PUNCTUATION.

SECTION I.--THE COMMA.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"A short simple \_sentence\_ should \_rarely\_ be \_divided\_ by \_the\_

comma."--\_Felton cor.\_ "A regular and virtuous education is an inestimable

blessing."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "Such equivocal expressions mark an intention to

deceive."--\_Id.\_ "They are \_this\_ and \_that\_, with their plurals \_these\_

and \_those\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "A nominative and a verb sometimes make a

complete sentence; as, He sleeps."--\_Felton cor.\_ "TENSE expresses the

action \_as\_ connected with certain relations of time; MOOD represents it as

\_further\_ modified by circumstances of contingency, conditionality,

&c."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The word \_noun\_ means \_name\_."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_

"The present or active participle I explained then."--\_Id.\_ "Are some verbs

used both transitively and intransitively?"--\_Cooper cor.\_ "Blank verse is

verse without rhyme."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 235. "A distributive

adjective denotes each one of a number considered separately."--\_Hallock

cor.\_

"And may at last my weary age

Find out the peaceful hermitage."

--MILTON: \_Ward's Gr.\_, 158; \_Hiley's\_, 124.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING SIMPLE SENTENCES.

"A noun without an \_article\_ to limit it, is taken in its widest

sense."--\_Lennie\_, p. 6. "To maintain a steady course amid all the

adversities of life, marks a great mind."--\_Day cor.\_ "To love our Maker

supremely and our neighbour as ourselves, comprehends the whole moral

law."--\_Id.\_ "To be afraid to do wrong, is true courage."--\_Id.\_ "A great

fortune in the hands of a fool, is a great misfortune."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"That he should make such a remark, is indeed strange."--\_Farnum cor.\_ "To

walk in the fields and groves, is delightful."--\_Id.\_ "That he committed

the fault, is most certain."--\_Id.\_ "Names common to all things of the same

sort or class, are called \_Common nouns\_; as, \_man, woman,

day\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "That it is our duty to be pious, admits not of any

doubt."--\_Id.\_ "To endure misfortune with resignation, is the

characteristic of a great mind."--\_Id.\_ "The assisting of a friend in such

circumstances, was certainly a duty."--\_Id.\_ "That a life of virtue is the

safest, is certain."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "A collective noun denoting the idea

of unity, should be represented by a pronoun of the singular

number."--\_Id.\_

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"When the sun had arisen, the enemy retreated."--\_Day cor.\_ "If he \_become\_

rich, he may be less industrious."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The more I study

grammar, the better I like it."--\_Id.\_ "There is much truth in the old

adage, that fire is a better servant than master."--\_Id.\_ "The verb \_do\_,

when used as an auxiliary, gives force or emphasis to the expression."--\_P.

E. Day cor.\_ "Whatsoever is incumbent upon a man to do, it is surely

expedient to do well."--\_Adams cor.\_ "The soul, which our philosophy

divides into various capacities, is still one essence."--\_Channing cor.\_

"Put the following words in the plural, and give the rule for forming

it."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "We will do it, if you wish."--\_Id.\_ "He who does

well, will be rewarded."--\_Id.\_ "That which is always true, is expressed in

the present tense."--\_Id.\_ "An observation which is always true, must be

expressed in the present tense."--\_Id.\_ "That part of orthography which

treats of combining letters to form syllables and words, is called

SPELLING."--\_Day cor.\_ "A noun can never be of the first person, except it

is in apposition with a pronoun of that person."--\_Id.\_ "When two or more

singular nouns or pronouns refer to the same object, they require a

singular verb and pronoun."--\_Id.\_ "James has gone, but he will return in a

few days."--\_Id.\_ "A pronoun should have the same person, number, and

gender, as the noun for which it stands."--\_Id.\_ "Though he is out of

danger, he is still afraid."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "She is his inferior in

sense, but his equal in prudence."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, p. 6. "The man

who has no sense of religion, is little to be trusted."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"He who does the most good, has the most pleasure."--\_Id.\_ "They were not

in the most prosperous circumstances, when we last saw them."--\_Id.\_ "If

the day continue pleasant, I shall return."--\_Felton cor.\_ "The days that

are past, are gone forever."--\_Id.\_ "As many as are friendly to the cause,

will sustain it."--\_Id.\_ "Such as desire aid, will receive it."--\_Id.\_ "Who

gave you that book, which you prize so much?"--\_Bullions cor.\_ "He who made

it, now preserves and governs it."--\_Id.\_

"Shall he alone, whom rational we call,

Be pleas'd with nothing, if not \_blest\_ with all?"--\_Pope\_.

UNDER THE EXCEPTIONS CONCERNING SIMPLE MEMBERS.

"Newcastle is the town in which Akenside was born."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "The

remorse which issues in reformation, is true repentance."--\_Campbell cor.\_

"Men who are intemperate, are destructive members of community."--

\_Alexander cor.\_ "An active-transitive verb expresses an action which

extends to an object."--\_Felton cor.\_ "They to whom much is given, will

have much, to answer for."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The prospect which we have,

is charming."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "He is the person who informed me of the

matter."--\_Id.\_ "These are the trees that produce no fruit."--\_Id.\_ "This

is the book which treats of the subject."--\_Id.\_ "The proposal was such as

pleased me."--\_Id.\_ "Those that sow in tears, shall reap in joy."--\_Id.\_

"The pen with which I write, makes too large a mark."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_

"Modesty makes large amends for the pain it gives the persons who labour

under it, by the prejudice it affords every worthy person, in their

favour."--\_Id.\_ "Irony is a figure whereby we plainly intend something very

different from what our words express."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Catachresis is a

figure whereby an improper word is used in stead of a proper one."--\_Id.\_

"The man whom you met at the party, is a Frenchman."--\_Frost cor.\_

UNDER RULE III.--OF MORE THAN TWO WORDS.

"John, James, and Thomas, are here: that is, John, \_and\_ James, and Thomas,

are here."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other

adverbs."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 116. "To Nouns belong Person, Gender,

Number, and Case."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 9. "Wheat, corn, rye, and oats, are

extensively cultivated."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "In many, the definitions, rules,

and leading facts, are prolix, inaccurate, and confused."--\_Finch cor.\_

"Most people consider it mysterious, difficult, and useless."--\_Id.\_ "His

father, and mother, and uncle, reside at Rome."--\_Farnum cor.\_ "The

relative pronouns are \_who, which\_, and \_that\_."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p.

23. "\_That\_ is sometimes a demonstrative, sometimes a relative, and

sometimes a conjunction."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Our reputation, virtue, and

happiness, greatly depend on the choice of our companions."--\_Day cor.\_

"The spirit of true religion is social, kind, and cheerful."--\_Felton cor.\_

"\_Do, be, have\_, and \_will\_, are sometimes principal verbs."--\_Id.\_ "John,

and Thomas, and Peter, reside at Oxford."--\_Webster cor.\_ "The most

innocent pleasures are the most rational, the most delightful, and the most

durable."--\_Id.\_ "Love, joy, peace, and blessedness, are reserved for the

good."--\_Id.\_ "The husband, wife, and children, suffered extremely."--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "The husband, wife, and children, suffer extremely."--\_Sanborn

cor.\_ "He, you, and I, have our parts assigned us."--\_Id.\_

"He moaned, lamented, tugged, and tried,

Repented, promised, wept, and sighed."--\_Cowper\_.

UNDER RULE IV.--OF ONLY TWO WORDS.

"Disappointments derange and overcome vulgar minds."--\_L. Murray cor.\_ "The

hive of a city or kingdom, is in the best condition, when there is the

least noise or buzz in it."--\_Id.\_ "When a direct address is made, the noun

or pronoun is in the nominative case, independent."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "The

verbs \_love\_ and \_teach\_, make \_loved\_ and \_taught\_, in the imperfect and

participle."--\_Id.\_ "Neither poverty nor riches were injurious to

him."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 152. "Thou or I am in fault."--\_Id.\_, p.

152. "A verb is a word that expresses action or being."--\_P. E. Day cor.\_

"The Objective Case denotes the object of a verb or a preposition."--\_Id.\_

"Verbs of the second conjugation may be either transitive or

intransitive."--\_Id.\_ "Verbs of the fourth conjugation may be either

transitive or intransitive."--\_Id.\_ "If a verb does not form its past

indicative by adding \_d\_ or \_ed\_ to the indicative present, it is said to

be \_irregular\_."--\_Id.\_ "The young lady is studying rhetoric and

logic."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "He writes and speaks the language very

correctly."--\_Id.\_ "Man's happiness or misery is, in a great measure, put

into his own hands."--\_Mur. cor.\_ "This accident or characteristic of

nouns, is called their \_Gender\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"Grant that the powerful still the weak \_control\_;

Be \_man\_ the \_wit\_ and \_tyrant\_ of the whole."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER EXCEPTION I.--TWO WORDS WITH ADJUNCTS.

"Franklin is justly considered the ornament of the New World, and the pride

of modern philosophy."--\_Day cor.\_ "Levity, and attachment to worldly

pleasures, destroy the sense of gratitude to Him."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "In the

following Exercise, point out the adjectives, and the substantives which

they qualify."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "When a noun or pronoun is used to explain,

or give emphasis to, a preceding noun or pronoun."--\_Day cor.\_ "Superior

talents, and \_brilliancy\_ of intellect, do not always constitute a great

man."--\_Id.\_ "A word that makes sense after an article, or \_after\_ the

phrase \_speak of\_, is a noun."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "All feet used in poetry,

are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables, and four of

three."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "He would not do it himself, not let me do

it."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 64. "The old writers give examples of the

subjunctive \_mood\_, and give other \_moods\_ to explain what is meant by the

words in the subjunctive."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_

UNDER EXCEPTION II.--TWO TERMS CONTRASTED.

"We often commend, as well as censure, imprudently."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "It is

as truly a violation of the right of property, to take a little, as to take

much; to purloin a book or a penknife, as to steal money; to steal fruit,

as to steal a horse; to defraud the revenue, as to rob my neighbour; to

overcharge the public, as to overcharge my brother; to cheat the

post-office, as to cheat my friend."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "The classification of

verbs has been, and still is, a vexed question."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Names

applied only to individuals of a sort or class, and not common to all, are

called \_Proper nouns\_."--\_Id.\_ "A hero would desire to be loved, as well as

to be reverenced."--\_Day cor.\_ "Death, or some worse misfortune, now

divides them." Better: "Death, or some \_other\_ misfortune, \_soon\_ divides

them."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 151. "Alexander replied, 'The world will not

permit two suns, nor two sovereigns.'"--\_Goldsmith cor.\_

"From nature's chain, whatever link you strike,

Tenth, or \_ten-thousandth\_, breaks the chain alike."--\_Pope\_.

UNDER EXCEPTION III.--OF AN ALTERNATIVE OF WORDS.

"\_Metre\_, or \_Measure\_, is the number of poetical feet which a verse

contains."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "The \_Cæsura\_, or \_division\_, is the pause which

takes place in a verse, and which divides it into two parts."--\_Id.\_ "It is

six feet, or one fathom, deep."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "A \_Brace\_ is used in

poetry, at the end of a triplet, or three lines which rhyme

together."--\_Felton cor.\_ "There are four principal kinds of English verse,

or poetical feet."--\_Id.\_ "The period, or full stop, denotes the end of a

complete sentence."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "The scholar is to receive as many

\_jetons\_, or counters, as there are words in the sentence."--\_St. Quentin

cor.\_ "\_That\_ [thing], or \_the thing, which\_ purifies, fortifies also the

heart."--\_O. B. Peirce cor.\_ "\_That thing\_, or \_the thing\_, which would

induce a laxity in public or private morals, or indifference to guilt and

wretchedness, should be regarded as the deadly Sirocco."--\_Id.\_ "\_What\_ is,

elliptically, \_what thing\_, or \_that thing which\_."--\_Sanborn cor.\_

"\_Demonstrate\_ means \_show\_, or \_point out precisely\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_The\_ man,

or \_that\_ man, who endures to the end, shall be saved."--\_Hiley cor.\_

UNDER EXCEPTION IV.--OF A SECOND COMMA.

"That reason, passion, answer one great \_aim\_."--POPE: \_Bullions and Hiley

cor.\_ "Reason, virtue, answer one great aim."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 269;

\_Cooper's Murray\_, 182; \_Comly\_, 145; \_Ingersoll\_, 282; \_Sanborn\_, 268;

\_Kirkham\_, 212; \_et al.\_ "Every good gift, and every perfect gift, is from

above."--\_James\_, i, 17. "Every plant, and every tree, produces others

after its kind."--\_Day cor.\_ "James, and not John, was paid for his

services."--\_Id.\_ "The single dagger, or obelisk [Dagger], is the

second."--\_Id.\_ "It was I, not he, that did it."--\_St. Quentin cor.\_ "Each

aunt, each cousin, hath her speculation."--\_Byron.\_ "'I shall see you

\_when\_ you come,' is equivalent to, 'I shall see you \_then\_, or \_at that

time\_, when you come.'"--\_N. Butler cor.\_

"Let wealth, let honour, wait the wedded dame;

August her deed, and sacred be her fame."--\_Pope cor.\_

UNDER RULE V.--OF WORDS IN PAIRS.

"My hopes and fears, joys and sorrows, centre in you."--\_Greenleaf or

Sanborn cor.\_ "This mood implies possibility or liberty, will or

obligation."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "Substance is divided into \_body\_ and

\_spirit\_, into \_extended\_ and \_thinking\_."--\_Brightland cor.\_ "These

consonants, [\_d\_ and \_t\_,] like \_p\_ and \_b, f\_ and \_v, k\_ and hard \_g\_, and

\_s\_ and \_z\_, are letters of the same organ."--\_J. Walker cor.\_ "Neither fig

nor twist, pigtail nor Cavendish, \_has\_ passed my lips since; nor ever

shall again."--\_Cultivator cor.\_ "The words \_whoever\_ or \_whosoever,

whichever\_ or \_whichsoever\_, and \_whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_, are called

Compound Relative Pronouns."--\_Day cor.\_ "Adjectives signifying profit or

disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative."--\_Bullions cor.\_

UNDER RULE VI.--OF WORDS ABSOLUTE.

"Thy rod and thy staff, they comfort me."--\_Psalm\_ xxiii 4. "Depart, ye

wicked."--\_J. W. Wright cor.\_ "He saith unto his mother. Woman, behold thy

son!"--\_John\_, xix, 26. "Thou, God, seest me."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "John,

write me a letter. Henry, go home."--\_O. B. Peirce cor., twice\_. "Now, G.

Brown, let us reason together."--\_Id.\_ "\_Mr.\_ Smith, \_you\_ say, on page

11th, '\_The\_ objective case denotes the object'"--\_Id.\_ "Gentlemen, will

you always speak as you mean?"--\_Id.\_ "John, I sold my books to William,

for his brothers."--\_Id.\_ "Walter, and Seth, I will take my things, and

leave yours."--\_Id.\_ "Henry, Julia and Jane left their umbrella, and took

yours."--\_Id.\_ "John, harness the horses, and go to the mine for some

coal."--\_Id.\_ "William, run to the store, for a few pounds of tea."--\_Id.\_

"The king being dead, the parliament was dissolved."--\_Chandler cor.\_

"Cease, fond Nature, cease thy strife,

And let me languish into life."

--\_Pope, Brit. Poets\_, vi, 317.

"Forbear, great man, in arms renown'd, forbear."

--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 127.

"Eternal sunshine of the spotless mind!

Each prayer accepted, and each wish resign'd."

--\_Pope, Brit. Poets\_, vi, 335.

UNDER RULE VII.--OF WORDS IN APPOSITION.

"We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect

union, establish justice," &c.--\_Constit. of U. S.\_ "The Lord, the covenant

God of his people, requires it."--\_A. S. Mag. cor.\_ "He, as a patriot,

deserves praise."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "Thomson, the watchmaker and jeweller

from London, was of the party."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Every body knows that the

person here spoken of by the name of '\_the Conqueror\_,' is William, duke of

Normandy."--\_L. Mur. cor.\_ "The words \_myself, thyself, himself, herself,

itself\_, and their plurals, \_ourselves, yourselves\_, and \_themselves\_, are

called Compound Personal Pronouns."--\_Day cor.\_

"For who, to dumb forgetfulness a prey,

This pleasing, anxious being e'er resign'd,

Left the warm precincts of the cheerful day

Nor cast one longing, ling'ring look behind?"--GRAY: \_Mur. Seq.\_

UNDER THE EXCEPTIONS CONCERNING APPOSITION.

"Smith & \_Williams's\_ store; Nicholas the emperor's army."--\_Day cor.\_ "He

was named \_William the Conqueror.\_"--\_Id.\_ "John the Baptist was

beheaded."--\_Id.\_ "Alexander the coppersmith did me \_much evil\_."--\_2

Tim.\_, iv, 14. "A nominative in immediate apposition: as, 'The boy \_Henry\_

speaks.'"--\_Smart cor.\_ "A noun objective can be in apposition with some

other; as, 'I teach the boy \_Henry\_.'"--\_Id.\_

UNDER RULE VIII.--OF ADJECTIVES.

"But he found me, not singing at my work, ruddy with health, vivid with

cheerfulness; but pale," &c.--DR. JOHNSON: \_Murray's Sequel\_, p. 4. "I

looked up, and beheld an inclosure, beautiful as the gardens of paradise,

but of a small extent."--HAWKESWORTH: \_ib.\_, p. 20. "\_A\_ is an article,

indefinite, and belongs to '\_book\_.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The first expresses

the rapid movement of a troop of horse over the plain, eager for the

combat."--\_Id.\_ "He [, the Indian chieftain, King Philip,] was a patriot,

attached to his native soil; a prince, true to his subjects, and indignant

of their wrongs; a soldier, daring in battle, firm in adversity, patient of

fatigue, of hunger, of every variety of bodily suffering, and ready to

perish in the cause he had espoused."--\_W. Irving\_.

"For thee, who, mindful of th' unhonour'd dead,

Dost in these lines their artless tale relate."

--GRAY: \_Mur. Seq.\_, p. 258.

"Some mute inglorious Milton here may rest;

Some Cromwell, guiltless of his country's blood."

--GRAY: \_Enf. Sp.\_, p. 245.

"Idle after dinner [,] in his chair,

Sat a farmer, ruddy, fat, and fair."

--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 257.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING ADJECTIVES.

"When an attribute becomes a title, or is emphatically applied to a name,

it follows it: as, Charles the Great; Henry the First; Lewis the

Gross."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Feed me with food convenient for me."--\_Prov.\_,

xxx, 8. "The words and phrases necessary to exemplify every principle

progressively laid down, will be found strictly and exclusively adapted to

the illustration of the principles to which they are referred."--\_Ingersoll

cor.\_ "The Infinitive \_Mood\_ is that form of the verb which expresses

\_being or action\_ unlimited by person or number."--\_Day cor.\_ "A man

diligent in his business, prospers."--\_Frost cor.\_

"\_Oh\_ wretched state! oh bosom black as death!"

--SHAK.: \_Enfield\_, p. 368.

UNDER RULE IX.--OF FINITE VERBS.

"The Singular denotes \_one\_; the Plural, \_more\_ than one."--\_Bullions and

Lennie cor.\_ "The \_Comma\_ represents the shortest pause; the \_Semicolon\_, a

pause longer than the comma; the \_Colon\_, longer than the semicolon; and

the \_Period\_, longer than the colon."--\_Hiley cor.\_ "The Comma represents

the shortest pause; the Semicolon, a pause double that of the Comma; the

Colon, double that of the semicolon; and the Period, double that of the

colon."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 266. "WHO is applied only to persons;

WHICH, to animals and things; WHAT, to things only; and THAT, to persons,

animals, and things."--\_Day cor.\_ "\_A\_ or \_an\_ is used before the singular

number only; \_the\_, before either singular or plural."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"Homer was the greater genius; Virgil, the better artist."--\_Day cor.\_;

also \_Pope\_. "Words are formed of syllables; syllables, of letters."--\_St.

Quentin cor.\_ "The conjugation of an active verb is styled the ACTIVE

VOICE; and that of a passive verb, the PASSIVE VOICE."--\_Frost cor.\_; also

\_Smith: L. Murray's Gram.\_, p. 77. "The possessive is sometimes called the

\_genitive\_ case; and the objective, the \_accusative\_."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Benevolence is allied to few vices; selfishness, to fewer

virtues."--\_Kames cor.\_ "Orthography treats of Letters; Etymology, of

words; Syntax, of Sentences; and Prosody, of Versification."--\_Hart cor.\_

"Earth praises conquerors for shedding blood;

Heaven, those that love their foes, and do them good."--\_Waller\_.

UNDER RULE X.--OF INFINITIVES.

"His business is, to observe the agreement or disagreement of

words."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "It is a mark of distinction, to be made a member

of this society."--\_Farnum cor.\_ "To distinguish the conjugations, let the

pupil observe the following rules."--\_Day cor.\_ "He was now sent for, to

preach before the Parliament."--\_E. Williams cor.\_ "It is incumbent on the

young, to love and honour their parents."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "It is the

business of every man, to prepare for death."--\_Id.\_ "It argued the

sincerest candor, to make such an acknowledgement."--\_Id.\_ "The proper way

is, to complete the construction of the first member, and leave that of the

second \_elliptical\_."--\_Id.\_ "ENEMY is a name. It is a term of distinction,

given to a certain person, to show the character in which he is

represented."--\_Peirce cor.\_ "The object of this is, to preserve the soft

\_sounds\_ of \_c\_ and \_g\_."--\_Hart cor.\_ "The design of grammar is, to

facilitate the reading, writing, and speaking of a language."--\_Barrett

cor.\_ "Four kinds of type are used in the following pages, to indicate the

portions that are considered more or less elementary."--\_Hart cor.\_

UNDER RULE XI.--OF PARTICIPLES.

"The chancellor, being attached to the king, secured his crown."--\_Murray's

Grammar\_, p. 66. "The officer, having received his orders, proceeded to

execute them."--\_Day cor.\_ "Thus used, it is in the present

tense."--\_Bullions, E. Gr.\_, 2d Ed., p. 35. "The imperfect tense has three

distinct forms, corresponding to those of the present tense."--\_Bullions

cor.\_ "Every possessive case is governed by some noun, denoting the thing

possessed."--\_Id.\_ "The word \_that\_, used as a conjunction, is [generally]

preceded by a comma."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 114. "His narrative, being

composed upon \_so\_ good authority, deserves credit."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "The

hen, being in her nest, was killed and eaten there by the eagle."--\_Murray

cor.\_ "Pronouns, being used \_in stead\_ of nouns, are subject to the same

modifications."--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "When placed at the beginning of words,

they are consonants."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "Man, starting from his couch, shall

sleep no more."--\_Young.\_ "\_His\_ and \_her\_, followed by a noun, are

possessive pronouns; not followed by a noun, they are personal

pronouns."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"He, with viny crown advancing,

First to the lively pipe his hand address'd."--\_Collins\_.

UNDER THE EXCEPTION CONCERNING PARTICIPLES.

"But when they convey the idea of many acting individually, or separately,

they are of the plural number."--\_Day cor.\_ "Two or more singular

antecedents connected by \_and\_, [when they happen to introduce more than

one verb and more than one pronoun,] require verbs and pronouns of the

plural number."--\_Id.\_ "Words ending in \_y\_ preceded by a consonant change

\_y\_ into \_i\_, when a termination is added."--\_N. Butler cor.\_ "A noun used

without an article to limit it, is generally taken in its widest

sense."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_ "Two nouns meaning the same person or thing,

frequently come together."--\_Bucke cor.\_ "Each one must give an account to

God for the use, or abuse, of the talents committed to him."--\_Cooper cor.\_

"Two vowels united in one sound, form a diphthong."--\_Frost cor.\_ "Three

vowels united in one sound, form a triphthong."--\_Id.\_ "Any word joined to

an adverb, is a secondary adverb."--\_Barrett cor.\_ "The person spoken \_to\_,

is put in the \_Second\_ person; the person spoken \_of\_, in the \_Third\_

person."--\_Cutler cor.\_ "A man devoted to his business, prospers."--\_Frost

cor.\_

UNDER RULE XII.--OF ADVERBS.

"So, in indirect questions; as, 'Tell me \_when\_ he will come.'"--\_Butler

cor.\_ "Now, when the verb tells what one person or thing does to \_an other,

it\_ is transitive."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Agreeably to your request, I send

this letter."--\_Id.\_ "There seems, therefore, to be no good reason for

giving them a different classification."--\_Id.\_ "Again, the kingdom of

heaven is like unto a merchant-man seeking good pearls."--\_Scott's Bible,

Smith's, and Bruce's\_. "Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a net

that was cast into the sea."--\_Same.\_ "\_Cease\_, however, is used as a

transitive verb by our best writers."--\_Webster cor.\_ "Time admits of three

natural divisions; namely, Present, Past, and Future."--\_Day cor.\_ "There

are three kinds of comparison; namely, Regular, Irregular, and

Adverbial"--\_Id.\_ "There are five personal pronouns; namely, \_I, thou, he,

she\_, and \_it\_."--\_Id.\_ "Nouns have three cases: viz., the Nominative,

\_the\_ Possessive, and \_the\_ Objective."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Hence, in

studying Grammar, we have to study words."--\_Frazee cor.\_ "Participles,

like verbs, relate to nouns and pronouns."--\_Miller cor.\_ "The time of the

participle, like that of the infinitive, is estimated from the time of the

leading verb."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"The dumb shall sing, the lame his crutch forego,

And leap exulting, like the bounding roe."--\_Pope.\_

UNDER RULE XIII.--OF CONJUNCTIONS.

"But he said, Nay; lest, while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the

wheat with them."--\_Scott's Bible et al.\_ "Their intentions were good: but,

wanting prudence, they missed the mark at which they aimed."--\_L. Mur.

cor.\_ "The verb \_be\_ often separates the name from its attribute; as,

'\_War\_ is expensive.'"--\_Webster cor.\_ "\_Either\_ and \_or\_ denote an

alternative; as, 'I will take \_either\_ road at your pleasure.'"--\_Id.\_

"\_Either\_ is also a substitute for a name; as, '\_Either\_ of the roads is

good.'"--\_Id.\_ "But, alas! I fear the consequence."--\_Day cor.\_ "Or, if he

ask a fish, will he for a fish give him a serpent?"--\_Luke\_, xi, 11. "Or,

if he shall ask an egg, will he offer him a scorpion?"--ALGER'S BIBLE:

\_Luke, xi, 12\_. "The infinitive sometimes performs the office of a

nominative case; as, 'To enjoy is to obey.'--POPE."--\_Cutler cor.\_ "The

plural is commonly formed by adding \_s\_ to the singular; as, \_book\_,

books."--\_Bullions, P. Lessons\_, p. 16. "As, 'I \_were\_ to blame, if I did

it.'"--\_Smart cor.\_

"Or, if it be thy will and pleasure,

Direct my plough to find a treasure."

UNDER RULE XIV.--OF PREPOSITIONS.

"Pronouns agree with the nouns for which they stand, in gender, number, and

person."--\_Butler and Bullions cor.\_ "In the first two examples, the

antecedent is \_person\_, or something equivalent; in the last [\_one\_], it is

\_thing\_."--\_N. Butler cor.\_ "In what character he was admitted, is

unknown."--\_Id.\_ "To what place he was going, is not known."--\_Id.\_ "In the

preceding examples, \_John, Cæsar\_, and \_James\_, are the subjects."--\_Id.\_

"\_Yes\_ is generally used to denote assent, \_in answer\_ to a

question."--\_Id.\_ "\_That\_, in its origin, is the passive participle of the

Anglo-Saxon verb \_thean\_, [\_thegan, thicgan, thicgean\_, or \_thigan\_,] \_to

take\_."--\_Id.\_ "But, in all these sentences, \_as\_ and \_so\_ are

adverbs."--\_Id.\_ "After an interjection or \_an\_ exclamatory sentence, is

\_usually\_ placed the mark of exclamation."--\_D. Blair cor.\_ "Intransitive

verbs, from their nature, can have no distinction of voice."--\_Bullions

cor.\_ "To the inflection of verbs, belong Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers,

and Persons."--\_Id.\_ "\_As\_ and \_so\_, in the antecedent member of a

comparison, are properly Adverbs." Better: "\_As\_ OR \_so\_, in the antecedent

member of a comparison, \_is\_ properly \_an adverb\_."--\_Id.\_ "In the

following Exercise, point out the words in apposition."--\_Id.\_ "In the

following Exercise, point out the noun or pronoun denoting the

possessor."--\_Id.\_ "\_Its\_ is not found in the Bible, except by

misprint."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 49. "No one's interest is concerned,

except mine."--\_Hallock cor.\_ "In most of the modern languages, there are

four concords."--\_St. Quentin cor.\_ "In illustration of these remarks, let

us suppose a case."--\_Hart cor.\_ "On the right management of the emphasis,

depends the life of pronunciation."--\_J. S. Hart and L. Murray cor.\_ See

\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 330.

UNDER RULE XV.--OF INTERJECTIONS.

"Behold, he is in the desert."--\_Friend's Bible\_. "And Lot said unto them,

Oh, not so, my Lord."--\_Alger's Bible\_. "Oh, let me escape thither, (is it

not a little one?) and my soul shall live."--\_Friend's Bible, and Alger's\_.

"Behold, I come quickly."--\_Rev.\_, xxii, 7. "Lo, I am with you

always."--\_Day cor.\_ "And, lo, I am with you alway."--\_Alger's Bible: Day

cor.\_; also \_Scott and Bruce\_. "Ha, ha, ha; how laughable that

is!"--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Interjections of laughter; \_ha, ha, Ha\_."--\_Wright

cor.\_

UNDER RULE XVI.--OF WORDS REPEATED.

"Lend, lend your wings!" &c.--\_Pope.\_ "To bed, to bed, to bed. There is a

knocking at the gate. Come, come, come. What is done, cannot be undone. To

bed, to bed, to bed."--SHAKSPEARE: \_Burghs Speaker\_, p. 130. "I will roar,

that the duke shall cry, Encore, encore, let him roar, let him roar, once

more, once more."--\_Id., ib.\_, p. 136.

"Vital spark of heavenly flame!

Quit, oh quit this mortal frame!"--\_Pope\_.

"O the pleasing, pleasing anguish,

When we love, and when we languish."--\_Addison\_.

"Praise to God, immortal praise,

For the love that crowns our days!"--\_Barbauld\_.

UNDER RULE XVII.--OF DEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"Thus, of an infant, we say, '\_It\_ is a lovely creature.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_

"No being can state a falsehood in saying, '\_I am\_;' for no one can utter

\_this\_, if it is not true."--\_Cardell cor.\_ "I know they will cry out

against this, and say, 'Should he pay,' means, 'If he should pay.'"--\_O. B.

Peirce cor.\_ "For instance, when we say, '\_The house is building\_,' the

advocates of the new theory ask,--'building \_what?\_' We might ask in turn,

When you say, 'The field \_ploughs\_ well,'--ploughs \_what?\_ 'Wheat \_sells\_

well,'--sells \_what?\_ If \_usage\_ allows us to say, 'Wheat \_sells\_ at a

dollar,' in a sense that is not active; why may it not also allow us to

say, 'Wheat is \_selling\_ at a dollar' in a sense that is not

active?"--\_Hart cor.\_ "\_Man\_ is accountable,' equals, '\_Mankind\_ are

accountable.'"--\_Barrett cor.\_ "Thus, when we say, 'He may be reading,'

\_may\_ is the real verb; the other parts are verbs by name only."--\_Smart

cor.\_ "Thus we say, \_an apple, an hour\_, that two vowel sounds may not come

together."--\_Id.\_ "It would be as improper to say, \_an unit\_, as to say,

\_an youth\_; to say, \_an one\_, as to say, \_an wonder\_."--\_Id.\_ "When we say,

'He died for the truth,' \_for\_ is a preposition."--\_Id.\_ "We do not say, 'I

might go yesterday;' but, 'I might have gone yesterday.'"--\_Id.\_ "By

student, we understand, one who has by matriculation acquired the rights of

academical citizenship; but, by \_bursché\_, we understand, one who has

already spent a certain time at the university."--\_Howitt cor.\_

SECTION II.--THE SEMICOLON.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF COMPLEX MEMBERS.

"The buds spread into leaves, and the blossoms swell to fruit; but they

know not how they grow, nor who causes them to spring up from the bosom of

the earth."--\_Day cor.\_ "But he used his eloquence chiefly against Philip,

king of Macedon; and, in several orations, he stirred up the Athenians to

make war against him."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "For the sake of euphony, the \_n\_

is dropped before a consonant; and, because most words begin with a

consonant, this of course is its more common form."--\_Id.\_ "But if I say,

'Will \_a\_ man be able to carry this burden?' it is manifest the idea is

entirely changed; the reference is not to number, but to the species; and

the answer might be, 'No; but a horse will.'"--\_Id.\_ "In direct discourse,

a noun used by the speaker or writer to designate himself [in the special

relation of speaker or writer], is said to be of the \_first\_ person; used

to designate the person addressed, it is said to be of the \_second\_ person;

and, when used to designate a person or thing [merely] spoken of, it is

said to be of the \_third\_ person."--\_Id.\_ "Vice stings us, even in our

pleasures; but virtue consoles us, even in our pains."--\_Day cor.\_ "Vice is

infamous, though in a prince; and virtue, honourable, though in a

peasant."--\_Id.\_ "Every word that is the name of a person or thing, is a

\_noun\_; because, 'A noun is the name of any person, place, or

thing.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_

"This is the sword with which he did the deed;

And that, the shield by which he was defended."--\_Bucke cor.\_

UNDER RULE II.--OF SIMPLE MEMBERS. "A deathlike paleness was diffused over

his countenance; a chilling terror convulsed his frame; his voice burst out

at intervals into broken accents."--\_Jerningham cor.\_ "The Lacedemonians

never traded; they knew no luxury; they lived in houses built of rough

materials; they \_ate\_ at public tables; fed on black broth; and despised

every thing effeminate or luxurious."--\_Whelpley cor.\_ "Government is the

agent; society is the principal."--\_Wayland cor.\_ "The essentials of speech

were anciently supposed to be sufficiently designated by the \_Noun\_ and the

\_Verb\_; to which was subsequently added the \_Conjunction\_."--\_Bullions

cor.\_ "The first faint gleamings of thought in its mind, are but

reflections from the parents' own intellect; the first manifestations of

temperament, are from the contagious parental fountain; the first

aspirations of soul, are but the warmings and promptings of the parental

spirit."--\_Jocelyn cor.\_ "\_Older\_ and \_oldest\_ refer to maturity of age;

\_elder\_ and \_eldest\_, to priority of right by birth. \_Farther\_ and

\_farthest\_ denote place or distance; \_further\_ and \_furthest\_, quantity or

addition."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Let the divisions be \_natural\_; such as

obviously suggest themselves to the mind; \_such\_ as may aid your main

design; and \_such as may\_ be easily remembered."--\_Goldsbury cor.\_

"Gently make haste, of labour not afraid;

A hundred times consider what you've said."--\_Dryden cor.\_

UNDER RULE III.--OF APPOSITION, &C.

(1.) "Adjectives are divided [, in Frost's Practical Grammar,] into two

classes; adjectives denoting \_quality\_, and adjectives denoting

\_number\_."--\_Frost cor.\_ (2.) "There are [, according to some authors,] two

classes of adjectives; \_qualifying\_ adjectives, and \_limiting\_

adjectives."--\_N. Butler cor.\_ (3-5.) "There are three genders; the

\_masculine\_, the \_feminine\_, and the \_neuter\_."--\_Frost et al. cor.\_; also

\_L. Mur. et al\_.; also \_Hendrick: Inst.\_, p. 35. (6.) "The Singular denotes

\_one\_; the Plural, \_more\_ than one."--\_Hart cor.\_ (7.) "There are three

cases; viz., the Nominative, the Possessive, and the Objective."--\_Hendrick

cor.\_ (8.) "Nouns have three cases; the \_nominative\_, the \_possessive\_, and

the \_objective\_."--\_Kirkham cor.\_ (9.) "In English, nouns have three cases;

the \_nominative\_, the \_possessive\_, and the \_objective\_."--\_Smith cor.\_

(10.) "Grammar is divided into four parts; namely, Orthography, Etymology,

Syntax, Prosody."--\_Hazen\_. (11.) "It is divided into four parts; viz.,

Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, Prosody."--\_Mur. et al. cor.\_ (12.) "It is

divided into four parts; viz., Orthography. Etymology, Syntax,

Prosody."--\_Bucke cor.\_ (13.) "It is divided into four parts; namely,

Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody."--\_Lennie, Bullions, et al\_.

(14.) "It is divided into four parts; viz., Orthography, Etymology, Syntax,

and Prosody."--\_Hendrick cor.\_ (15.) "Grammar is divided into four parts;

viz., Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody."--\_Chandler cor.\_ (16.)

"It is divided into four parts; Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and

Prosody."--\_Cooper and Frost cor.\_ (17.) "English Grammar has been usually

divided into four parts; viz., Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and

Prosody."--\_Nutting cor.\_ (18.) "Temperance leads to happiness;

intemperance, to misery."--\_Hiley and Hart cor.\_ (19, 20.) "A friend

exaggerates a man's virtues; an enemy, his crimes."--\_Hiley cor.\_; also

\_Murray\_. (21.) "Many writers use a plural noun after the second of two

numeral adjectives; thus, 'The first and second \_pages\_ are

torn.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_ (22.) "Of these, [i. e., of \_Cases\_,] the Latin

has six; the Greek, five; the German, four; the Saxon, six; the French,

three; &c."--\_Id.\_

"In \_ing\_ it ends, when doing is expressed;

In \_d, t, n\_, when suffering's confessed."--\_Brightland cor.\_

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"In old books, \_i\_ is often used for \_j; v\_, for \_u; vv\_, for \_w\_; and \_ii\_

or \_ij\_, for \_y\_."--\_Hart cor.\_ "The forming of letters into words and

syllables, is also called \_Spelling\_."--\_Id.\_ "Labials are formed chiefly

by the \_lips\_; dentals, by the \_teeth\_; palatals, by the palate; gutturals,

by the \_throat\_; nasals, by the \_nose\_; and linguals, by the

\_tongue\_."--\_Id.\_ "The labials are \_p, b, f, v\_; the dentals, \_t, d, s, z\_;

the palatals, \_g\_ soft and \_j\_; the gutturals, \_k, q\_, and \_c\_ and \_g\_

hard; the nasals, \_m\_ and \_n\_; and the linguals, \_l\_ and \_r\_."--\_Id.\_

"Thus, '\_The\_ man, \_having finished\_ his letter, will carry it to the

\_post-office\_.'"--\_Id.\_ "Thus, in the sentence, '\_He\_ had a dagger

concealed under his cloak,' \_concealed\_ is passive, signifying \_being

concealed\_; but, in the former combination, it goes to make up a form the

force of which is active."--\_Id.\_ "Thus, in Latin, '\_He\_ had concealed the

dagger,' would be, '\_Pugionem abdiderat\_;' but, '\_He\_ had the dagger

concealed,' would be, '\_Pugionem abditum habebat\_."--\_Id.\_ "\_Here\_, for

instance, means, 'in this place;' \_now\_, 'at this time;' &c."--\_Id.\_ "Here

\_when\_ both declares the \_time\_ of the action, and so is an adverb; and

also \_connects\_ the two verbs, and so \_resembles\_ a conjunction."--\_Id.\_

"These words were all, no doubt, originally other parts of speech; viz.,

verbs, nouns, and adjectives."--\_Id.\_ "The principal parts of a sentence,

are the subject, the attribute, and the object; in other words, the

nominative, the verb, and the objective."--\_Id.\_ "Thus, the adjective is

connected with the noun; the adverb, with the verb or adjective; \_the

pronoun\_, with \_its antecedent\_; &c." "\_Between\_ refers to two; \_among\_, to

more than two."--\_Id.\_ "\_At\_ is used after a verb of rest; \_to\_, after a

verb of motion."--\_Id.\_ "Verbs are of three kinds; Active, Passive, and

Neuter."--\_L. Murray\_. [Active] "Verbs are divided into two classes;

Transitive and Intransitive."--\_Hendrick cor.\_ "The Parts of Speech, in the

English language, are nine; viz., \_the\_ Article, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun,

Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction."--\_Bullions cor.\_

See \_Lennie\_. "Of these, the Noun, Pronoun, and Verb, are declined; the

rest are indeclinable."--\_Bullions, Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 18. "The

first expression is called 'the \_Active\_ form;' the second, 'the \_Passive\_

form.'"--\_Weld cor.\_

"O, 'tis a godlike privilege to save;

And he that scorns it, is himself a slave."--\_Cowper cor.\_

SECTION III.--THE COLON.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

"\_Of\_ is a preposition: it expresses the relation between \_fear\_ and

\_Lord\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Wealth and poverty are both temptations to man:

\_that\_ tends to excite pride; \_this\_, discontentment."--\_Id. et al cor.\_

"Religion raises men above themselves; irreligion sinks them beneath the

brutes: \_this\_ binds them down to a poor pitiable speck of perishable

earth; \_that\_ opens for them a prospect to the skies."--\_Murray's Key\_,

8vo, p. 189. "Love not idleness: it destroys many."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_

"Children, obey your parents: 'Honour thy father and mother,' is the first

commandment with promise."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Thou art my \_hiding-place\_ and

my shield; I hope in thy \_word\_."--\_Psalm\_ cxix, 114. "The sun shall not

smite \_thee\_ by day, nor the moon by night. The Lord \_shall\_ preserve

\_thee\_ from \_all\_ evil: \_he shall preserve thy\_ soul."--\_Psalm\_ cxxi, 6.

"Here \_to\_ Greece is assigned the highest place in the class of objects

among which she is numbered--the nations of antiquity: she is one of

them."--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 114.

"From short (as usual) and disturb'd repose,

I wake: how happy they who wake no more!"--\_Young, N. T.\_, p. 3.

UNDER RULE II.--OF GREATER PAUSES.

"A taste \_of\_ a thing, implies actual enjoyment of it; but a tase

[sic--KTH] \_for\_ it, implies only capacity for enjoyment: as, 'When we have

had a true taste \_of\_ the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish \_for\_

those of vice.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The Indicative mood simply declares a

thing: as, 'He \_loves\_;' 'He \_is\_ loved:' or it asks a question; as,

'\_Lovest\_ thou me?'"--\_Id. and Lennie cor.\_; also \_Murray\_. "The Imperfect

(or Past) tense represents an action or event indefinitely as past; as,

'Cæsar \_came\_, and \_saw\_, and \_conquered\_:' or it represents the action

definitely as unfinished and continuing at a certain time now entirely

past; as, 'My father \_was coming\_ home when I met him.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_

"Some nouns have no plural; as, \_gold, silver, wisdom\_: others have no

singular: as, \_ashes, shears, tongs\_: others are alike in both numbers; as,

\_sheep, deer, means, news\_."--\_Day cor.\_ "The same verb may be transitive

in one sense, and intransitive in an other: thus, in the sentence, 'He

believes my story,' \_believes\_ is transitive; but, in this phrase, 'He

believes in God,' it is intransitive."--\_Butler cor.\_ "Let the divisions be

\_distinct\_: one part should not include \_an other\_, but each should have

its proper place, and be of importance in that place; and all the parts,

well fitted together and united, should present a \_perfect\_

whole."--\_Goldsbury cor.\_ "In the use of the transitive verb, there are

always \_three\_ things implied; the \_actor\_, the \_act\_, and the \_object\_

acted upon: in the use of the intransitive, there are only \_two\_; the

subject, or \_the thing\_ spoken of, and the \_state\_ or \_action\_ attributed

to it."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"Why labours reason? instinct were as well;

Instinct, far better: what can choose, can err."--\_Young\_, vii, 622.

UNDER RULE III.--OF INDEPENDENT QUOTATIONS.

"The sentence may run thus: 'He is related to the same person, and is

governed by him.'"--\_Hart cor.\_ "Always remember this ancient proverb:

'Know thyself.'"--\_Hallock cor.\_ "Consider this sentence: 'The boy runs

swiftly.'"--\_Frazee cor.\_ "The comparative is used thus: 'Greece was more

polished than any other nation of antiquity.' The same idea is expressed by

the superlative, when the word \_other\_ is left out: thus, 'Greece was the

most polished nation of antiquity.'"--\_Bullions and Lennie cor.\_ "Burke, in

his speech on the Carnatic war, makes the following allusion to the well

known fable of \_Cadmus\_ sowing dragon's teeth:--'Every day you are

fatigued and disgusted with this cant: 'The Carnatic is a country that will

soon recover, and become instantly as prosperous as ever.' They think they

are talking to innocents, who believe that by the sowing of dragon's teeth,

men may come up ready grown and ready made.'"--\_Hiley and Hart cor.\_

"For sects he car'd not: 'They are not of us,

Nor need we, brethren, their concerns discuss.'"--\_Crabbe cor.\_

"Habit, with him, was all the test of truth:

'It must be right; I've done it from my youth.'

Questions he answer'd in as brief a way:

'It must be wrong; it was of yesterday.'"--\_Id.\_

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"This would seem to say, 'I doubt nothing, save one thing; namely, that he

will \_fulfill\_ his promise:' whereas that is the very thing not

doubted."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The common use of language requires, that a

distinction be made between \_morals\_ and \_manners\_: the former depend upon

internal dispositions; the latter, \_upon\_ outward and visible

accomplishments."--\_Beattie cor.\_ "Though I detest war in each particular

fibre of my heart, yet I honour the heroes among our fathers, who fought

with bloody hand. Peacemakers in a savage way, they were faithful to their

light: the most inspired can be no more; and we, with greater light, do, it

may be, far less."--\_T. Parker cor.\_ "The article \_the\_, like \_a\_, must

have a substantive joined with it; whereas \_that\_, like \_one\_, may have it

understood: thus, speaking of books, I may select one, and say, 'Give me

that;' but not, 'Give me \_the\_;'--[so I may say,] 'Give me \_one\_;' but not,

'Give me \_a\_.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The Present tense has three distinct

forms: the \_simple\_; as, I read: the \_emphatic\_; as, I do read: and the

\_progressive\_; as, I am reading." Or thus: "The Present tense has three

distinct forms;--the \_simple\_; as, 'I read;'--the \_emphatic\_; as, 'I do

read;'--and the \_progressive\_; as, 'I am reading.'"--\_Id.\_ "The tenses in

English are usually reckoned six: the \_Present\_, the \_Imperfect\_, the

\_Perfect\_, the \_Pluperfect\_, the \_First-future\_, and the

\_Second-future\_."--\_Id.\_ "There are three participles; the Present or

Active, the Perfect or Passive, and the Compound Perfect: as, \_loving,

loved, having loved\_." Or, better: "There are three participles from each

verb; namely, the \_Imperfect\_, the \_Perfect\_, and the \_Preperfect\_; as,

\_turning, turned, having turned\_."--\_Murray et al. cor.\_ "The participles

are three; the Present, the Perfect, and the Compound Perfect: as, \_loving,

loved, having loved\_." Better: "The participles of each verb are three; the

\_Imperfect\_, the \_Perfect\_, and the \_Preperfect\_: as, \_turning, turned,

having turned\_."--\_Hart cor.\_ "\_Will\_ is conjugated regularly, when it is a

principal verb: as, present, I \_will\_; past, I \_willed\_; &c."--\_Frazee

cor.\_ "And both sounds of \_x\_ are compound: one is that of \_gz\_, and the

other, that of \_ks\_."--\_Id.\_ "The man is happy; he is benevolent; he is

useful."--\_L. Mur.\_, p. 28: \_Cooper cor.\_ "The pronoun stands \_in stead\_ of

the noun: as, 'The man is happy; \_he\_ is benevolent; \_he\_ is useful.'"--\_L.

Murray cor.\_ "A Pronoun is a word used \_in stead\_ of a noun, to \_prevent\_

too frequent \_a\_ repetition of it: as, 'The man is happy; \_he\_ is

benevolent; \_he\_ is useful.'"--\_Id.\_ "A Pronoun is a word used in the room

of a noun, or as a substitute for one or more words: as, 'The man is happy;

\_he\_ is benevolent; \_he\_ is useful.'"--\_Cooper cor.\_ "A common noun is the

name of a sort, kind, or class, of beings or things; as, \_Animal, tree,

insect, fish, fowl\_."--\_Id.\_ "Nouns have three persons; the \_first\_, the

\_second\_, and the \_third\_."--\_Id.\_

"\_So\_ saying, her rash hand in evil hour

Forth reaching to the fruit, she pluck'd, she \_eat\_:

Earth felt the wound; and \_Nature\_ from her seat,

Sighing through all her works, gave signs of \_woe\_,

That all was lost."--MILTON, P. L., Book ix, l. 780.

SECTION IV.--THE PERIOD.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF DISTINCT SENTENCES.

"The third person is the position of \_a word by which an object is merely\_

spoken of; as, 'Paul and Silas were imprisoned.'--'The earth

thirsts.'--'The sun shines.'"--\_Frazee cor.\_

"Two, and three, and four, make nine. If he were here, he would assist his

father and mother; for he is a dutiful son. They live together, and are

happy, because they enjoy each other's society. They went to Roxbury, and

tarried all night, and came back the next day."--\_Goldsbury cor.\_

"We often resolve, but seldom perform. She is wiser than her sister. Though

he is often advised, yet he does not reform. Reproof either softens or

hardens its object. He is as old as his classmates, but not so learned.

Neither prosperity, nor adversity, has improved him. Let him that standeth,

take heed lest he fall. He can acquire no virtue, unless he make some

sacrifices."--\_Id.\_

"Down from his neck, with blazing gems array'd,

Thy image, lovely Anna! hung portray'd;

Th' unconscious figure, smiling all serene,

Suspended in a golden chain was seen."--\_Falconer.\_

UNDER RULE II.--OF ALLIED SENTENCES.

"This life is a mere prelude to \_an other\_ which has no limits. \_It\_ is a

little portion of duration. As death leaves us, so the day of \_judgement\_

will find us."--\_Merchant cor.\_

"He went from Boston to New York.--He went (I say) from Boston; he went to

New York. In walking across the floor, he stumbled over a

chair."--\_Goldsbury corrected\_.

"I saw him on the spot, going along the road, looking towards the house.

During the heat of the day, he sat on the ground, under the shade of a

tree."--\_Goldsbury corrected\_.

"'George came home; I saw him yesterday.' \_Here\_ the word \_him\_ can extend

only to the individual George."--\_Barrett corrected\_.

"Commas are often used now, where parentheses were [adopted] formerly. I

cannot, however, esteem this an improvement."--\_Bucke's Classical

Grammar\_, p. 20.

"Thou, like a sleeping, faithless sentinel,

Didst let them pass unnotic'd, unimprov'd.

And know, for that thou \_slumberst\_ on the guard,

Thou shalt be made to answer at the bar

For every fugitive."--COTTON: \_Hallock and Enfield cor.\_

UNDER RULE III.--OF ABBREVIATIONS.

"The term \_pronoun\_ (Lat. \_pronomen\_) strictly means a word used \_for\_, or

\_in stead of\_, a noun."--\_Bullions corrected\_.

"The period is also used after abbreviations; as, A. D., P. S., G. W.

Johnson."--\_N. Butler cor.\_

"On this principle of classification, the later Greek grammarians divided

words into eight classes, or parts of speech: viz., the Article, Noun,

Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, and Conjunction."--

\_Bullions cor.\_

"'\_Metre [Melody]\_ is not confined to verse: there is a tune in all good

prose; and Shakspeare's was a sweet one.'--\_Epea Pter.\_, ii, 61. [\_First

American Ed.\_, ii, 50.] Mr. H. Tooke's idea was probably just, agreeing

with Aristotle's; but [, if so, it is] not accurately expressed."--

\_Churchill cor.\_

"Mr. J. H. Tooke was educated at Eton and at Cambridge, in which latter

college he took the degree of A. M. Being intended for the established

church of England, he entered into holy orders when young; and obtained the

living of Brentford, near London, which he held ten or twelve

years."--\_Tooke's Annotator cor.\_

"I, nor your plan, nor book condemn;

But why your name? and why A. M.?"--\_Lloyd cor.\_

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"If thou turn away thy foot from the sabbath," &c.--\_Isaiah\_, lviii, 13.

"He that hath eeris of hervnge, \_here he\_."--WICKLIFFE: \_Matt.\_, xi, 15.

"See General Rules for Spelling, iii, v, and vii."--\_N. Butler cor.\_ "False

witnesses did rise up."--\_Ps.\_, xxxv, 11.

"An \_explicative\_ sentence is used for explaining; an \_interrogative\_

sentence, for inquiring; an \_imperative\_ sentence, for commanding."--

\_Barrett cor.\_ "In October, corn is gathered in the field by men, who go

from hill to hill with baskets, into which they put the ears.--Susan

labours with her needle for a livelihood.--Notwithstanding his poverty, he

is a man of integrity."--\_Golds, cor.\_

"A word of one syllable is called a monosyllable; a word of two syllables,

a dissyllable; a word of three syllables, a trissyllable; a word of four or

more syllables, a polysyllable."--\_Frazee cor.\_

"If I say, '\_If it did not rain\_, I would take a walk;' I convey the idea

that it \_does\_ rain at the time of speaking. '\_If it rained\_,' or, '\_Did it

rain\_,' in [reference to] the present time, implies \_that\_ it does \_not\_

rain. '\_If it did not rain\_,' or, '\_Did it not rain\_,' in [reference to

the] present time, implies that it \_does\_ rain. Thus, in this peculiar

\_application\_, an affirmative sentence always implies a negation; and a

negative sentence, an affirmation."--\_Id.\_ "'\_If I were loved\_' and, '\_Were

I loved\_;' imply I am \_not\_ loved: '\_If I were not loved\_,' and, '\_Were I

not loved\_,' imply I \_am\_ loved. A negative sentence implies an

affirmation, and an affirmative sentence implies a negation, in these forms

of the subjunctive."--\_Id.\_

"What is Rule III?"--\_Hart cor.\_ "How is Rule III violated?"--\_Id.\_ "How do

you parse \_letter\_ in the sentence, 'James writes a letter?' Ans. \_Letter\_

is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, \_neuter\_ gender,

and objective case; and is governed by the verb \_writes\_, according to Rule

III, which says, 'A transitive verb governs the objective case.'"--\_Id.\_

"Creation sleeps. 'Tis as the gen'ral pulse

Of life stood still, and nature made a pause;

An awful pause! prophetic of her end.

And let her prophecy be soon fulfill'd:

Fate, drop the curtain; I can lose no more."--\_Young\_.

SECTION V.--THE DASH.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF ABRUPT PAUSES.

"And there is something in your very strange story, that resembles--Does

Mr. Bevil know your history particularly?"--\_Burgh's Speaker\_, p. 149.

"Sir,--Mr. Myrtle--Gentlemen--You are friends--I am but a

servant--But--"--\_Ib.\_, p. 118.

"An other man now would have given plump into this foolish story; but

I--No, no, your humble servant for that."--GARRICK, \_Neck or Nothing\_.

"Do not plunge thyself too far in anger, lest thou hasten thy trial; which

if--Lord have mercy on thee for a hen!"--SHAKSPEARE, \_All's Well\_.

"But ere they came,--O, let me say no more!

Gather the sequel by that went before."--IDEM, \_Com. of Errors\_.

UNDER RULE II.--OF EMPHATIC PAUSES.

"M,--Malvolio;--M,--why, that begins my name."--SINGER'S SHAK., \_Twelfth

Night\_.

"Thus, by the creative influence of the Eternal Spirit, were the heavens

and the earth finished in the space of six days--so admirably finished--an

unformed chaos changed into a system of perfect order and beauty--that the

adorable Architect himself pronounced it \_very good\_, and \_all the sons of

God shouted for joy\_."--\_Historical Reader\_, p. 10.

"If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop

remained in my country, I never would lay down my arms--never, never,

never."--\_Pitt's Speech\_.

"Madam, yourself are not exempt in this,--

Nor your son Dorset;--Buckingham, nor you."--SHAK.

UNDER RULE III.--OF FAULTY DASHES.

"'You shall go home directly, Le Fevre,' said my uncle Toby, 'to my house;

and we'll send for a doctor to see what's the matter; and we'll have an

apothecary; and the corporal shall be your nurse: and I'll be your servant,

Le Fevre.'"--\_Sterne cor.\_

"He continued: 'Inferior artists may be at a stand, because they want

materials.'"--\_Harris cor.\_ "Thus, then, continued he: 'The end, in other

arts, is ever distant and removed.'"--\_Id.\_

"The nouns must be coupled with \_and\_; and when a pronoun is used, it must

be plural, as in the example. When the nouns are \_disjoined\_, the pronoun

must be singular."--\_Lennie cor.\_

"\_Opinion\_ is a common noun, or substantive, of the third person, singular

number, neuter gender, and nominative case."--\_Wright cor.\_

"The mountain, thy pall and thy prison, may keep thee;

I shall see thee no more, but till death I will weep thee."

--\_See Felton's Gram.\_, p. 93.

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"If to accommodate man and beast, heaven and earth--if this be beyond me,

'tis not possible.--What consequence then follows? Or can there be any

other than this?--\_if\_ I seek an interest of my own, detached from that of

others, I seek an interest which is chimerical, and can never have

existence."--\_Harris\_.

"Again: I must have food and clothing. Without a proper genial warmth, I

instantly perish. Am I not related, in this view, to the very earth

itself?--\_to\_ the distant sun, from whose beams I derive vigour?"--\_Id.\_

"Nature instantly ebbed again; the film returned to its place; the pulse

fluttered--stopped--went on--throbbed--stopped again--moved--stopped.--

Shall I go on?--No."--\_Sterne cor.\_

"Write ten nouns of the masculine gender;--ten of the feminine;--ten of the

neuter; ten indefinite in gender."--\_Davis cor.\_

"The infinitive \_mood\_ has two tenses; the indicative, six; the potential,

\_four\_; the subjunctive, \_two\_; and the imperative, one."--\_Frazee cor.\_

"Now notice the following sentences: 'John runs.'--'Boys run.'--'Thou

runnest.'"--\_Id.\_

"The Pronoun sometimes stands for a name; sometimes for an adjective, a

sentence, \_or\_ a part of a sentence; and, sometimes, for a whole series of

propositions."--\_Peirce cor.\_

"The self-applauding bird, the peacock, see;

Mark what a sumptuous pharisee is he!"--\_Cowper cor.\_

SECTION VI.--THE EROTEME.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF QUESTIONS DIRECT.

"When will his ear delight in the sound of arms? When shall I, like Oscar,

travel in the light of my steel?"--\_Ossian\_, Vol. i, p. 357. "Will Henry

call on me, while he shall be journeying south?"--\_Peirce cor.\_

"An Interrogative Pronoun is one that is used in asking a question; as,

'\_Who\_ is he? and \_what\_ does he want?'"--\_P. E. Day cor.\_ "\_Who\_ is

generally used when we would inquire \_about\_ some unknown person or

persons; as, '\_Who\_ is that man?'"--\_Id.\_ "\_Your\_ fathers, where are they?

and the prophets, do they live forever?"--\_Zech.\_, i. 5.

"It is true, that some of our best writers have used \_than whom\_; but it is

also true that they have used \_other\_ phrases which we have rejected as

ungrammatical: then why not reject this too?--The sentences in the

exercises, with \_than who\_, are correct as they stand."--\_Lennie cor.\_

"When the perfect participle of an active-intransitive verb is annexed to

the neuter verb \_to be\_, what does the combination form?"--\_Hallock cor.\_

"Those adverbs which answer to the question \_where\_? \_whither\_? or

\_whence\_? are called adverbs of \_place\_."--\_Id.\_ "Canst thou by searching

find out God? canst thou find out the Almighty unto perfection? It is as

high as heaven; what canst thou do? deeper than hell; what canst thou

know?"--SCOTT, ALGER, BRUCE, AND OTHERS: \_Job\_, xi, 7 and 8.

"Where, where, for shelter shall the wicked fly,

When consternation turns the good man pale?"--\_Young\_.

UNDER RULE II.--OF QUESTIONS UNITED.

"Who knows what resources are in store, and what the power of God may do

for thee?"--STERNE: \_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 307.

"God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he

should repent: hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and

shall he not make it good?"--SCOTT'S BIBLE, ALGER'S, FRIENDS', BRUCE'S, AND

OTHERS: \_Numb.\_, xxiii, 19. "Hath the Lord said it, and shall he not do it?

hath he spoken it, and shall he not make it good?"--\_Lennie and Bullions

cor.\_

"Who calls the council, states the certain day,

Who forms the phalanx, and who points the way?"--\_Pope's Essay\_.

UNDER RULE III.--OF QUESTIONS INDIRECT.

"To be, or not to be;--that is the question."--\_Shak. et al. cor.\_ "If it

be asked, why a pause should any more be necessary to emphasis than to an

accent,--or why an emphasis alone will not sufficiently distinguish the

members of sentences from each other, without pauses, as accent does

words,--the answer is obvious: that we are preacquainted with the sound of

words, and cannot mistake them when distinctly pronounced, however rapidly;

but we are not preacquainted with the meaning of sentences, which must be

pointed out to us by the reader or speaker."--\_Sheridan cor.\_

"Cry, 'By your priesthood, tell me what you are.'"--\_Pope cor.\_

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"Who else can he be?"--\_Barrett cor.\_ "Where else can he go?"--\_Id.\_ "In

familiar language, \_here, there\_, and \_where\_, are used for \_hither,

thither\_, and \_whither\_."--\_N. Butler cor.\_ "Take, for instance, this

sentence: 'Indolence undermines the foundation of virtue.'"--\_Hart cor.\_

"Take, for instance, the sentence before quoted: 'Indolence undermines the

foundation of virtue.'"--\_Id.\_ "Under the same head, are considered such

sentences as these: '\_He\_ that \_hath ears to hear\_, let him hear.'--'\_Gad\_,

a troop shall overcome him.'"--\_Id.\_

"Tenses are certain modifications of the verb, which point out the

distinctions of time."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "Calm was the day, and the scene,

delightful."--\_Id.\_ See \_Murray's Exercises\_, p. 5. "The capital letters

used by the Romans to denote numbers, were C, I, L, V, X; which are

therefore called Numeral Letters. I denotes \_one\_; V, \_five\_; X, \_ten\_; L,

\_fifty\_; and C, \_a hundred\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "'I shall have written;'

viz., at or before some future time or event."--\_Id.\_ "In Latin words, the

liquids are \_l\_ and \_r\_ only; in Greek words, \_l, r, m\_, and \_n\_."--\_Id.\_

"Each legion was divided into ten cohorts; each cohort, into three

maniples; and each maniple, into two centuries."--\_Id.\_ "Of the Roman

literature previous to A. U. 514, scarcely a vestige remains."--\_Id.\_

"And that which He delights in, must be happy.

But when? or where? This world was made for Cæsar."--CATO.

"Look next on greatness. Say where greatness lies.

Where, but among the heroes and the wise?"--\_Pope\_.

SECTION VII--THE ECPHONEME.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF INTERJECTIONS, &c.

(1.) "O! that he were wise!"--\_Bullions cor.\_ (2.) "O! that his heart

\_were\_ tender!"--\_See Murray's Ex.\_ or \_Key\_, under Rule xix. (3 and 4.)

"Oh! what a sight is here!"--\_Bullions, E. Gram.\_, p. 71; (§37;) \_Pract.

Les.\_, p. 82; \_Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, p. 111. (5-9.) "O Virtue! how

amiable thou art!"--\_Farnum's Gram.\_, p. 12; \_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract.

Gram.\_, p. 111. (10.) "Oh! that I had been more diligent!"--\_Hart cor.\_;

and \_Hiley\_. (11.) "O! the humiliation to which vice reduces us!"--\_Farnum\_

and \_Mur. cor.\_ (12.) "O! that he were more prudent!"--\_Farnum cor.\_ (13

and 14.) "Ah me!"--\_Davis cor.\_

(15.) "Lately, alas! I knew a gentle boy," &c.--\_Dial cor.\_

(16 and 17.) "Wo is me, Alhama!"--\_Byron's Poems: Wells cor.\_

UNDER RULE II.--OF INVOCATIONS.

"Weep on the rocks of roaring winds, O maid of Inistore!"--\_Ossian\_. "Cease

a little while, O wind! stream, be thou silent a while! let my voice be

heard around. Let my wanderer hear me! Salgar! it is Colma who calls. Here

is the tree, and the rock. Salgar, my love! I am here. Why delayest thou

thy coming? Lo! the calm moon comes forth. The flood is bright in the

vale."--\_Id.\_, Vol. i, p. 369.

"Ah, stay not, stay not! guardless and alone:

Hector! my lov'd, my dearest, bravest son!"--\_Pope\_, II., xxii, 61.

UNDER RULE III.--OF EXCLAMATORY QUESTIONS.

"How much better is wisdom than gold!"--See \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 272.

"O Virtue! how amiable art thou!"--See \_Murray's Grammar\_, 2d Edition, p.

95. "At that hour, O how vain was all sublunary happiness!"--\_Brown's

Institutes\_, p. 117; see \_English Reader\_, p. 135. "Alas! how few and

transitory are the joys which this world affords to man!"--\_P. E. Day cor.\_

"Oh! how vain and transitory are all things here below!"--\_Id.\_

"And O! what change of state, what change of rank,

In that assembly everywhere was seen!"--\_Pollok cor.\_; also \_Day\_.

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"O \_Shame\_! where is thy blush?"--\_Shak.\_[557] "\_John\_, give me my

hat."--\_Barrett cor.\_ "What! is Moscow in flames?"--\_Id.\_ "\_O\_! what

happiness awaits the virtuous!"--\_Id.\_

"\_Ah, welladay\_! do what we can for him, said Trim, maintaining his

point,--the poor soul will die."--\_Sterne\_ or \_Enfield cor.\_; also

\_Kirkham\_.

"Will John return to-morrow?"--\_Barrett cor.\_ "Will not John return

to-morrow?"--\_Id.\_ "John, return to-morrow."--\_Id.\_ "Soldiers, stand

firm."--\_Id.\_ "If \_mea\_, which means \_my\_, is an adjective in Latin, why

may not \_my\_ be so called in English? and if my is an adjective, why not

\_Barrett's\_?"--\_Id.\_

"O Absalom, my son!"--See \_2 Sam.\_, xix, 4. "O star-eyed Science! whither

hast thou fled?"--\_Peirce cor.\_ "Why do you tolerate your own

inconsistency, by calling it the present tense?"--\_Id.\_ "Thus the

declarative mood [i.e., the indicative mood] may be used in asking a

question: as, '\_What\_ man \_is\_ frail?'"--\_Id.\_ "What connection has motive,

wish, or supposition, with the the term \_subjunctive\_?"--\_Id.\_ "A grand

reason, truly, for calling it a golden key!"--\_Id.\_ "What '\_suffering\_' the

man who can say this, must be enduring!"--\_Id.\_ "What is Brown's Rule in

relation to this matter?"--\_Id.\_ "Alas! how short is life!"--\_P. E. Day

cor.\_ "Thomas, study your book."--\_Id.\_ "Who can tell us who they

are?"--\_Sanborn cor.\_ "Lord, have mercy on my son; for he is lunatic, and

sorely vexed."--See \_Matt.\_, xvii, 15. "O ye wild groves! O where is now

your bloom?"--\_Felton cor.\_

"O who of man the story will unfold?"--\_Farnum cor.\_.

"Methought I heard Horatio say, To-morrow.

Go to--I will not hear of it--to-morrow!"--COTTON.

"How his eyes languish! how his thoughts adore

That painted coat which Joseph never wore!"

SECTION VIII.--THE CURVES.

CORRECTIONS UNDER RULE I.--OF PARENTHESES.

"\_Another\_ [, better written as a phrase, \_An other\_,] is composed of the

indefinite article \_an\_, (which etymologically means \_one\_,) and \_other\_;

and denotes \_one other\_."--\_Hallock cor.\_

"Each mood has its peculiar Tense, Tenses, or Times."--\_Bucke cor.\_

"In some very ancient languages, (as the Hebrew,) which have been employed

chiefly for expressing plain sentiments in the plainest manner, without

aiming at any elaborate length or harmony of periods, this pronoun [the

relative] occurs not so often."--\_L. Murray cor.\_

"Before I shall say those things, O Conscript Fathers! about the public

affairs, which are to be spoken at this time; I shall lay before you, in

few words, the motives of the journey and the return."--\_Brightland cor.\_

"Of well-chose words some take not care enough,

And think they should be, like the subject, rough."--\_Id.\_

"Then, having \_showed\_ his wounds, he'd sit him down."--\_Bullions cor.\_

UNDER RULE II.--OF INCLUDED POINTS.

"Then Jael smote the nail into his temples, and fastened it \_into\_ the

ground: (for he was fast asleep, and weary:) so he died."--SCOTT'S BIBLE:

\_Judges\_, iv, 21.

"Every thing in the Iliad has manners, (as Aristotle expresses it,) that

is, every thing is acted or spoken."--\_Pope cor.\_

"Those nouns that end in \_f\_, or \_fe\_. (except some few \_which\_ I shall

mention presently,) form plurals by changing those letters into \_ves\_: as,

thief, \_thieves\_: wife, \_wives\_."--\_Bucke cor.\_

"\_As\_ requires \_as\_; (expressing equality \_of degree\_;) \_thus\_, 'Mine is

\_as\_ good \_as\_ yours.' \_As\_ [requires] \_so\_; (expressing equality \_or

proportion\_;) \_thus\_, '\_As\_ the stars, \_so\_ shall thy seed be.' \_So\_

[requires] \_as\_; (with a negative expressing inequality;) \_as\_, 'He is \_not

so\_ wise \_as\_ his brother.' \_So\_ [requires] \_that\_; (expressing \_a\_

consequence:) \_as\_, 'I am \_so\_ weak \_that\_ I cannot walk.'"

[558]--\_Bullions cor.\_

"A captious question, sir, (and yours is one,)

Deserves an answer similar, or none."--\_Cowper cor.\_

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"Whatever words the verb TO BE serves to unite, referring to the same

thing, must be of the same case; (§61;) as, '\_Alexander\_ is a

\_student\_.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_ "When the objective is a relative \_or\_ [\_an\_]

interrogative, it comes before the verb that governs it: (§40, Rule 9:)

Murray's 6th rule is unnecessary."--\_Id.\_ "It is generally improper, except

in poetry, to omit the antecedent to a relative; and always, to omit a

relative, when of the nominative case."--\_Id.\_ "In every sentence, there

must be a verb and a nominative or subject, expressed or

understood."--\_Id.\_ "Nouns and pronouns, and especially words denoting

time, are often governed by prepositions understood; or are used to

restrict verbs or adjectives, without a governing word: (§50, Rem. 6 and

Rule:) as, 'He gave [to] me a full account of the affair.'"--\_Id.\_ "When

\_should\_ is used in stead of \_ought\_, to express \_present\_ duty, (§20, 4,)

it may be followed by the present; as, 'You \_should\_ study that you \_may\_

become learned.'"--\_Id.\_ "The indicative present is frequently used after

the words \_when, till, before, as soon as, after\_, to express the relative

time of a future action: (§24, I, 4;) as, 'When he \_comes\_, he will be

welcome.'"--\_Id.\_ "The relative is parsed, [\_according to Bullions\_,] by

stating its gender, number, case, and antecedent; (the gender and number

being always the same as those of the antecedent;) thus, 'The boy

who'--'\_Who\_ is a relative pronoun, masculine, singular, the nominative;

and refers to '\_boy\_' as its antecedent."--\_Id.\_

"'Now, now, I seize, I clasp \_thy\_ charms;

And now \_you\_ burst, ah cruel! from my arms.'--\_Pope\_.

"Here is an unnecessary change from the second person singular to the

second \_person\_ plural. \_The text\_ would have been better, thus:--

'Now, now, I seize, I clasp \_your\_ charms;

And now \_you\_ burst, ah cruel! from my arms.'"--\_John Burn cor.\_

See \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 35; \_Churchill's\_, 293.

SECTION IX.--ALL POINTS.

MIXED EXAMPLES CORRECTED.

"The principal stops are the following: the Comma [,], the Semicolon [;],

the Colon [:], the Period, or Full Stop [.], the Note of Interrogation [?],

the Note of Exclamation [!], the Parenthesis [()], and the Dash

[--]."--\_Bullions cor.\_ "The modern punctuation in Latin is the same as in

English. The \_chief\_ marks employed are the Comma [,], \_the\_ Semicolon [;],

\_the\_ Colon [:], \_the\_ Period [.], \_the Note of\_ Interrogation [?], \_the

Note of\_ Exclamation (!), \_the Parenthesis\_ [()], \_and the Dash\_

[--]."--\_Id.\_

"Plato reproving a young man for playing at some childish game, 'You chide

me,' says the youth, 'for a trifling fault.' 'Custom,' replied the

philosopher, 'is no trifle.' 'And,' adds \_Montaigne\_, 'he was in the right;

for our vices begin in infancy.'"--\_Home cor.\_

"A merchant at sea asked the skipper what death his father died. 'My

father,' says the skipper, 'my grandfather, and my great-grandfather, were

all drowned.' 'Well,' replies the merchant, 'and are not you afraid of

being drowned too?'"--\_Id.\_

"The use of inverted commas derives from France, where one Guillemet was

the author of them; [and,] as an acknowledgement for the improvement, his

countrymen call them after his name, GUILLEMETS."--\_Hist. cor.\_

"This, however, is seldom if ever done, unless the word following the

possessive begins with \_s\_; thus, we do not say, 'the \_prince\_' feather;'

but, 'the \_prince's\_ feather.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_ "And this phrase must

mean, '\_the feather of the prince\_;' but '\_prince's-feather\_,' written as

one word, [and with both apostrophe and hyphen,] is the name of a plant, a

species of amaranth."--\_G. Brown\_. "Boëthius soon had the satisfaction of

obtaining the highest honours his country could bestow."--\_Ingersoll cor.\_;

also \_L. Murray\_.

"When an example, a quotation, or a speech, is introduced, it is separated

from the rest of the sentence either by a \_comma\_ or \_by\_ a colon; as, 'The

Scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity, in these words:

\_God is love\_.'"--\_Hiley cor.\_ "Either the colon or \_the comma\_ may be

used, [according to the nature of the case,] when an example, a quotation,

or a speech, is introduced; as, 'Always remember this ancient maxim: \_Know

thyself\_.'--'The Scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity,

in these words: \_God is love\_.'"--\_Bullions cor.\_

"The first word of a quotation introduced after a colon, or \_of any

sentence quoted\_ in a direct form, must begin with a capital: as, '\_Always\_

remember this ancient maxim: \_Know\_ thyself.'--'Our great lawgiver says,

\_Take\_ up thy cross daily, and follow me.'"--\_Bullions and Lennie cor.\_;

also \_L. Murray\_; also \_Weld\_. See \_Luke\_, ix, 23.

"Tell me, in whose house do you live?"--\_N. Butler cor.\_ "He that acts

wisely, deserves praise."--\_Id.\_ "He who steals my purse, steals

trash."--\_Id.\_ "The antecedent is \_sometimes\_ omitted; as, 'Who steals my

purse, steals trash.'--[\_Shak.\_] That is, '\_He\_ who,' or, 'The \_person\_

who.'"--\_Id.\_ "Thus, 'Whoever steals my purse, steals trash;'--'Whoever

does no good, does harm.'"--\_Id.\_ "Thus, 'Whoever sins, will suffer.' This

means, that any one, without exception, who sins, will suffer."--\_Id.\_

"Letters form syllables; syllables, words; words, sentences; and sentences,

combined and connected, form discourse."--\_Cooper cor.\_ "A letter which

forms a perfect sound when uttered by itself, is called a vowel; as, \_a, e,

i\_."--\_Id.\_ "A proper noun is the name of an individual, [or of a

particular people or place]; as, John, Boston, Hudson, America."--\_Id.\_

"Many men have been capable of doing a wise thing; more, a cunning thing;

but very few, a generous thing."--\_Davis cor.\_ "In the place of an ellipsis

of the verb, a comma must be inserted."--\_Id.\_ "A common noun unlimited by

an article, is sometimes understood in its broadest acceptation: thus,

'\_Fishes\_ swim,' is understood to mean \_all\_ fishes; '\_Man\_ is mortal,'

\_all\_ men."--\_Id.\_

"Thus, those sounds formed principally by the throat, are called

\_gutturals\_; those formed principally by the palate, \_palatals\_; those

formed by the teeth, \_dentals\_; those by the lips, \_labials; and\_ those by

the nose, \_nasals\_."--\_Davis cor.\_

"Some adjectives are compared irregularly: as, \_Good, letter, best; Bad,

worse, worst; Little, less, least\_."--\_Felton cor.\_

"Under the fourth head of grammar, therefore, four topics will be

considered; viz., PUNCTUATION, ORTHOEPY [sic--KTH], FIGURES, and

VERSIFICATION."--\_Hart cor.\_

"Direct her onward to that peaceful shore,

Where peril, pain, and death, are felt no more!"--\_Falconer cor.\_

GOOD ENGLISH RIGHTLY POINTED.

LESSON I.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"Discoveries of such a character are sometimes made in grammar also; and

such, too, \_are\_ often their origin and their end."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"TRAVERSE, [literally to \_cross\_,] To deny what the opposite party has

alleged. To traverse an indictment, \_or the like\_, is to deny it."--\_Id.\_

"The \_Ordinal\_ numerals denote the \_order\_, or \_succession\_, in which any

number of persons or things \_are\_ mentioned; as, \_first, second, third\_,

fourth, &c."--\_Hiley cor.\_

"Nouns have three persons; \_the\_ First, \_the\_ Second, and \_the\_ Third. The

First person is \_that which denotes\_ the speaker: the Second is \_that which

denotes the person or thing\_ spoken to; the Third is \_that which denotes\_

the \_person or thing merely\_ spoken of."--\_Hart cor.\_

"Nouns have three cases; \_the\_ Nominative, \_the\_ Possessive, and \_the\_

Objective. The \_relations\_ indicated by the \_cases\_ of a noun, \_include\_

three \_distinct\_ ideas; viz., those of subject, object, and

ownership."--\_Id.\_

"In speaking of animals that are of inferior size, or whose sex is not

known or not regarded, \_we\_ often \_treat them\_ as without sex: thus, we say

of a cat, '\_It\_ is treacherous;' of an infant, '\_It\_ is beautiful;' of a

deer, '\_It\_ was killed.'"--\_Id.\_

"When THIS \_and\_ THAT, or THESE \_and\_ THOSE, refer to a preceding sentence;

THIS or THESE \_represents\_ the latter member or term, \_and\_ THAT or THOSE,

the former."--\_Churchill cor.\_; and \_Lowth\_.

"The rearing of them became his first care; their fruit, his first food;

and \_the\_ marking \_of\_ their kinds, his first knowledge."--\_N. Butler cor.\_

"After the period used with abbreviations, we should employ other points,

if the construction demands \_them\_; thus, after 'Esq.,' in the last

example, there should be, besides \_the\_ period, a comma."--\_Id.\_

"In the plural, the verb \_has\_ the same \_form\_ in all the persons; \_but

still\_ the principle in \_Rem.\_ 5, under Rule iii, that the first or second

person takes precedence, is applicable to verbs, \_in parsing\_."--\_Id.\_

"Rex and Tyrannus are of very different characters. The one rules his

people by laws to which they consent; the other, by his absolute will and

power: that \_government\_ is called freedom; this, tyranny."--\_L. Murray

cor.\_

"A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, \_that\_ can be known or

mentioned: as, George, London, America, goodness, charity."--See \_Brown's

Institutes\_, p. 31.

"Etymology treats of the classification of words, their various

modifications, and \_their derivation\_"--\_P. E. Day cor.\_

"To punctuate correctly, implies a thorough acquaintance with the meaning

of words and phrases, as well as \_with\_ all their corresponding

connexions."--\_W. Day cor.\_

"All objects \_that\_ belong to neither the male nor \_the\_ female kind, are

said to be of the neuter gender, \_except certain things

personified\_."--\_Weld cor twice\_.

"The Analysis of the Sounds in the English language, presented in the

preceding statements, \_is\_ sufficiently exact for the purpose in hand.

Those who wish to pursue \_the subject\_ further, can consult Dr. Rush's

admirable work, 'The Philosophy of the Human Voice.'"--\_Fowler cor.\_

"Nobody confounds the name of \_w\_ or \_y\_ with \_the\_ sound \_of the letter\_,

or \_with its\_ phonetic import."--\_Id.\_ [[Fist] This assertion is hardly

true. Strange as such a blunder is, it has actually occurred. See, in

Orthography, Obs. 5, on the Classes of the Letters, at p. 156.--G. B.]

"Order is Heav'n's first law; and, this \_confess'd\_,

Some are, and must be, greater than the rest."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON II--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"\_From\_ adjectives of one syllable, \_and some of two\_, the comparative is

formed by adding \_r\_ or \_er\_ to the positive; and the superlative, by

adding \_st\_ or \_est\_: as, \_sweet, sweeter, sweetest\_; \_able, abler,

ablest\_."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"\_From\_ monosyllables, \_or from dissyllables ending with a vowel or the

accent\_, the comparative is formed by adding \_er\_ or \_r\_ to the positive;

and the superlative, by adding \_est\_ or \_st\_: as, \_tall, taller, tallest\_;

\_wise, wiser, wisest\_; \_holy, holier, holiest\_; \_complete, completer,

completest\_."--\_Id.\_

"By this method, the confusion and unnecessary labour occasioned by

studying grammars, in these languages, constructed on different principles,

\_are\_ avoided; the study of one is rendered a profitable introduction to

the study of an other; and an opportunity is furnished to the \_inquiring\_

student, of comparing the languages in their grammatical structure, and

\_of\_ seeing at once wherein they agree, and wherein they differ."--\_Id.\_

"No larger portion should be assigned for each recitation, than the class

can easily master; and, till \_the previous lessons are well learned\_, a new

portion should not be given out."--\_Id.\_ "The acquisitions made in every

new lesson, should be \_riveted\_ and secured by repeated revisals."--\_Id.\_

"The personal pronouns may be parsed briefly, thus: '\_I\_ is a personal

pronoun, \_of\_ the first \_person\_, singular \_number\_, masculine \_gender\_,

(feminine, if the speaker is a female,) \_and\_ nominative \_case\_.' '\_His is\_

a personal pronoun, \_of\_ the third \_person\_, singular \_number\_, masculine

\_gender, and\_ possessive \_case\_.'"--\_Id.\_

"When the male and \_the\_ female are expressed by distinct terms, as,

\_shepherd, shepherdess\_, the masculine term has also a general meaning,

expressing both male and female; and is always to be used when the office,

occupation, \_or\_ profession, and not the sex, of the individual, is chiefly

to be expressed; the feminine term being used only when the discrimination

of sex is indispensably necessary. Thus, when it is said, 'The poets of

this country are distinguished \_for\_ correctness of taste,' the term

'poets' clearly includes both male and female writers of poetry."--\_Id.\_

"Nouns and pronouns connected by conjunctions, must be in the same

\_case\_"--\_Ingersoll cor.\_

"Verbs connected by \_and, or\_, or \_nor\_, must \_generally\_ be in the \_same

mood\_ and \_tense\_; and, when \_the tense has different forms\_, they must be

in the same form."--\_Id.\_

"This will habituate him to reflection; exercise his \_judgement\_ on the

meaning of the author; and, without any great effort on his part, impress

indelibly on his memory the rules which he is required to give. After the

exercises under \_any\_ rule have been gone through, \_agreeably to the

direction\_ in the note \_at the bottom of\_ page \_88th\_, they may be read

over again in a corrected state, the pupil making an emphasis on the

correction made; or they may be presented in writing, at the next

recitation."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"Man, but for that, no action could attend;

And, but for this, \_were active\_ to no end."--\_Pope\_.

LESSON III.--UNDER VARIOUS RULES.

"'Johnson, the bookseller and stationer' indicates that \_bookseller\_ and

\_stationer\_ are \_terms\_ belonging to the same person; 'the bookseller and

the stationer,' would indicate that they belong to different

persons."--\_Bullions cor.\_

"\_Past\_ is [commonly] an adjective; \_passed\_, the past tense or perfect

participle of the verb: and they ought not (as \_they\_ frequently \_are\_) to

be confounded with each other."--\_Id.\_

"Not only the nature of the thoughts and sentiments, but the very selection

\_or\_ arrangement of the words, gives English poetry a character which

separates it widely from common prose."--\_Id.\_

"Men of sound, discriminating, and philosophical minds--men prepared for

the work by long study, patient investigation, and extensive

acquirements--have laboured for ages to improve and perfect it; and nothing

is hazarded in asserting, that, should it be unwisely abandoned, it will be

long before an other, equal in beauty, stability, and usefulness, \_will\_ be

produced in its stead."--\_Id.\_, on the common "system of English Grammar."

"The article \_the\_, on the other hand, is used to restrict; and is

therefore termed \_Definite\_. Its proper office is, to call the attention to

a particular individual or class, or to any number of such; and

\_accordingly it\_ is used with nouns \_of\_ either number, singular or

plural."--\_Id.\_

"Hence, also, the infinitive mood, a participle \_with its adjuncts\_, a

member of a sentence, or a \_whole\_ proposition, forming the subject of

discourse, or the object of a verb or preposition, and being the name of an

act or circumstance, \_is\_, in construction, regarded as a \_noun\_; and \_is\_

usually called, 'a substantive phrase:' as, '\_To play\_, is

pleasant.'--'\_That he is an expert dancer\_, is no recommendation.'--'Let

your motto be, \_Honesty is the best policy\_.'"--\_Id.\_

"In accordance with his definition, Murray has divided verbs into three

classes: \_Active, Passive\_, and \_Neuter\_;--and \_included\_ in the first

class transitive verbs only; and, in the last, all verbs used

intransitively"--\_Id.\_

"Moreover, as the name of the speaker or \_that of\_ the person spoken to is

seldom expressed, (the \_pronoun\_ I being used \_for the former\_, and THOU

\_or\_ YOU \_for the latter\_,) a noun is very \_rarely\_ in the first person;

not often in the second; and \_hardly ever\_ in either, unless it \_is\_ a

proper noun, or a common noun \_denoting an object\_ personified."--\_Id.\_

"In using the \_parsing\_ exercises, it will save much time, (\_and this

saving\_ is \_all-important\_,) if the pupil be taught to say \_all things\_

belonging to the noun, in the fewest words possible; and to say them always

in the same order, \_after the example\_ above."--\_Id.\_

"In any phrase or sentence, the adjectives qualifying a noun may generally

be found by prefixing the phrase, 'What kind of,' to the noun, in the form

of a question; as, 'What kind of horse?' 'What kind of stone?' 'What kind

of way?' The word containing the answer to the question, is an

adjective."--\_Id.\_

"In the following exercise, let the pupil first point out the nouns, and

then the adjectives; and tell how he knows them to be \_such\_."--\_Id.\_

"In the following sentences, point out the improper \_ellipses\_; \_show\_ why

\_they are\_ improper; and correct \_them\_."--\_Id.\_

"SINGULAR. PLURAL.

1. I am smitten, 1. We are smitten,

2. Thou art smitten, 2. You are smitten,

3. He is smitten; 3. They are smitten."--\_Wright cor.\_

CHAPTER II.--UTTERANCE.

The second chapter of Prosody, treating of articulation, pronunciation,

elocution and the minor topics that come under Utterance, contains no

exercises demanding correction in this Key.

CHAPTER III.--FIGURES.

In the third chapter of Prosody, the several Figures of speech are

explained; and, as the illustrations embrace no errors for correction,

nothing here corresponds to the chapter, but the title.

CHAPTER IV.--VERSIFICATION.

FALSE PROSODY, OR ERRORS OF METRE, CORRECTED.

LESSON I.--RHYTHM RESTORED.

"Where thy true treasure? Gold says, 'Not in me.'"

--\_Young\_.

"Canst thou grow sad, thou \_say'st\_, as earth grows bright."

--\_Dana\_.

"It must be so;--Plato, thou \_reason'st\_ well"

--CATO: \_Enfield\_, p. 321.

"Slow rises \_worth\_ by poverty depressed."

--\_Wells's Gram., Late Ed.\_, p. 211.

"Rapt \_into\_ future times, the bard begun."

--POPE.--\_Ib.\_, p. 165.

"Is there not rain enough in the sweet heavens

To wash it white as snow? \_Whereto\_ serves mercy

But to confront the visage of offence?"

--\_Shak., Hamlet\_.

"Look! in this place ran \_Cassius\_' dagger through."

--\_Id., J. Cæsar\_.

"\_And\_ when they list, their lean and flashy songs

Grate on their scrannel pipes of wretched straw."

--\_Milton, Lycidas\_.

"Did not great Julius bleed for \_justice'\_ sake?"

--\_Dodd and Shak. cor.\_

"May I \_express thee' unblam'd? since\_ God is light"

--\_Milton\_, B. iii, l. 3.

"Or \_hear'st\_ thou rather pure ethereal stream?"

--\_Id.\_, B. iii, l. 7.

"Republics, kingdoms, empires, may decay;

\_Great\_ princes, heroes, sages, sink to nought."

--\_Peirce or La-Rue cor.\_

"Thou \_bringst\_, gay creature as thou art,

A solemn image to my heart."

--\_Hallock cor.\_

"Know \_then\_ thyself, presume not God to scan;

The proper study of mankind is Man."

--\_Pope, on Man\_, Ep. ii, l. 1.

"Raised on \_pilasters high\_ of \_burnished\_ gold."

--\_Dr. S. Butler cor.\_

"Love in \_Adalgise\_' breast has fixed his sting."

--\_Id.\_

"Thirty days \_each have\_ September,

April, June, and \_old\_ November;

\_Each\_ of the rest \_has\_ thirty-one,

Bating February alone,

Which has twenty-eight in fine,

Till leap-year gives it twenty-nine."

--\_Dean Colet cor.\_

LESSON II.--RHYTHM RESTORED.

"'Twas not the fame of what he once had been,

Or tales in \_records old\_ and annals seen."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"And Asia now and Afric are explored

For high-priced dainties and \_the\_ citron board."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"Who knows not how the trembling judge beheld

The peaceful court with \_arm~ed\_ legions fill'd?"

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"With thee the Scythian wilds we'll wander o'er,

With thee \_the\_ burning Libyan sands explore."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"Hasty and headlong, different paths they tread,

As \_impulse blind\_ and wild distraction lead."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"But Fate reserv'd \_him\_ to perform its doom,

And be the minister of wrath to Rome."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"Thus spoke the youth. When Cato thus \_express'd\_

The sacred counsels of his inmost breast."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"These were the \_rigid\_ manners of the man,

This \_was\_ the stubborn course in which they ran;

The golden mean unchanging to pursue,

Constant to keep the \_purpos'd\_ end in view."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"What greater grief can \_on\_ a Roman seize,

Than to be forced to live on terms like these!"

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"He views the naked town with joyful eyes,

While from his rage an \_arm~ed\_ people flies."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"For planks and beams, he ravages the wood,

And the tough \_oak\_ extends across the flood."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"A narrow pass the horn~ed mole divides.

Narrow as that where \_strong Euripus\_' tides

Beat on Euboean Chalcis' rocky sides."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"No force, no fears their hands \_unarm~ed\_ bear,"--or,

"No force, no fears their hands unarm'd \_now\_ bear,

But looks of peace and gentleness they wear."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"The ready warriors all aboard them ride,

And wait return of the retiring tide."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

"He saw those troops that long had faithful stood,

Friends to his cause, and enemies to good,

Grown weary of their chief, and \_satiate\_ with blood."

--\_Rowe cor.\_

END OF THE KEY.

APPENDIX I. TO PART FIRST, OR ORTHOGRAPHY. OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

In the first chapter of Part I, the powers of the letters, or the

elementary sounds of the English language, were duly enumerated and

explained; for these, as well as the letters themselves, are few, and may

be fully stated in few words: but, since we often express the same sound in

many different ways, and also, in some instances, give to the same letter

several different sounds,--or, it may be, no sound at all,--any adequate

account of the powers of the letters considered severally according to

usage,--that is, of the sound or sounds of each letter, with its mute

positions, as these occur in practice,--must, it was thought, descend to a

minuteness of detail not desirable in the first chapter of Orthography. For

this reason, the following particulars have been reserved to be given here

as an Appendix, pertaining to the First Part of this English Grammar.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--A proper discrimination of the different vowel sounds by the

epithets most commonly used for this purpose,--such as \_long\_ and \_short,

broad\_ and \_slender, open\_ and \_close\_, or \_open\_ and \_shut\_,--is made

difficult, if not impossible, by reason of the different, and sometimes

directly contradictory senses in which certain orthoepists [sic--KTH] have

employed such terms. Wells says, "Vowel sounds are called \_open\_ or

\_close\_, according to the \_relative size of the opening\_ through which the

voice passes in forming them. Thus, \_a\_ in \_father\_, and \_o\_ in \_nor\_, are

called \_open\_ sounds, because they are formed by a \_wide opening\_ of the

organs of speech; while \_e\_ in \_me\_, and \_u\_ in \_rule\_, are called \_close\_

sounds, because the organs are \_nearly closed\_ in uttering them."--\_School

Grammar\_, 1850, p. 32. Good use should fix the import of words. How does

the passage here cited comport with this hint of Pope?

"These equal syllables alone require,

\_Though oft the ear the open\_ vowels tire."

--\_Essay on Criticism\_, l. 344.

OBS. 2.--Walker, too, in his Principles, 64 and 65, on page 19th of his

Critical Pronouncing Dictionary, mentions a similar distinction of vowels,

"which arises from \_the different apertures\_ of the mouth in forming them;"

and says, "We accordingly find vowels denominated by the French, \_ouvert\_

and \_fermé\_; by the Italians, \_aperto\_ and \_chiuso\_; and by the English [,]

\_open\_ and \_shut\_. But whatever propriety there may be in the use of these

terms in other languages, it is certain they must be used with caution in

English for fear of confounding them with \_long\_ and \_short\_. Dr. Johnson

and other grammarians call the \_a\_ in \_father\_ the \_open a\_: which may,

indeed, distinguish it from the \_slender a\_ in \_paper\_; but not from the

\_broad a\_ in \_water\_, which is still more \_open\_. Each of these letters

[the seven vowels] has a \_short\_ sound, which may be called a \_shut\_ sound;

but the \_long\_ sounds cannot be so properly denominated \_open\_ as more or

less \_broad\_; that is, the \_a\_ in \_paper\_, the slender sound; the \_a\_ in

\_father\_, the broadish or middle sound; and the \_a\_ in \_water\_, the broad

sound. The same may be observed of the \_o\_. This letter has three long

sounds, heard in \_move, note, nor\_; which graduate from slender to

broadish, and broad [,] like [those three sounds of] the \_a\_. The \_i\_ also

in \_mine\_ may be called the broad \_i\_, and that in \_machine\_, the slender

\_i\_; though each of them is equally \_long\_; and though these vowels that

are \_long\_ [,] may be said to be more or less \_open\_ according to the

different apertures of the mouth in forming them, yet the \_short\_ vowels

cannot be said to be more or less \_shut\_; for as \_short\_ always implies

\_shut\_ (except in verse,) though \_long\_ does not always imply \_open\_, we

must be careful not to confound \_long\_ and \_open\_, and \_close\_ and \_shut\_,

when we speak of the quantity and quality of the vowels. The truth of it

is," continues he, "all vowels either terminate a syllable, or are united

with a consonant. In the first case, if the accent be on the syllable, the

vowel is \_long\_, though it may not be \_open\_: in the second case, where a

syllable is terminated by a consonant, except that consonant be \_r\_,

whether the accent be on the syllable or not, the vowel has its \_short\_

sound, which, compared with its long one, may be called \_shut\_: but [,] as

no vowel can be said to be \_shut\_ that is not joined to a consonant, \_all

vowels that end syllables\_ may be said to be \_open\_, whether the accent be

on them or not."--\_Crit. Pron. Dict.\_, New York, 1827, p. 19.

OBS. 3.--These suggestions of Walker's, though each in itself may seem

clear and plausible, are undoubtedly, in several respects, confused and

self-contradictory. \_Open\_ and \_shut\_ are here inconsistently referred

first to one principle of distinction, and then to another;--first, (as are

"\_open\_ and \_close\_" by Wells,) to "the \_relative size\_ of the opening," or

to "the \_different apertures\_ of the mouth;" and then, in the conclusion,

to the \_relative position\_ of the vowels with respect to other letters.

These principles improperly give to each of the contrasted epithets two

very different senses: as, with respect to aperture, \_wide\_ and \_narrow\_;

with respect to position, \_closed\_ and \_unclosed\_. Now, that \_open\_ may

mean \_unclosed\_, or \_close\_ be put \_for closed\_, is not to be questioned;

but that \_open\_ is a good word for \_wide\_, or that \_shut\_ (not to say

\_close\_) can well mean \_narrow\_, is an assumption hardly scholarlike.

According to Walker, "\_we must be careful\_ not to confound" \_open\_ with

\_long\_, or \_shut\_ with \_short\_, or \_close\_ with \_shut\_; and yet, if he

himself does not, in the very paragraph above quoted, confound them

all,--does not identify in sense, or fail to distinguish, the two words in

each of these pairs,--I know not who can need his "caution." If there are

vowel sounds which graduate through several degrees of openness or

broadness, it would seem most natural to express these by regularly

comparing the epithet preferred; as, \_open, opener, openest\_; or \_broad,

broader, broadest\_. And again, if "all vowels that end syllables may be

said to be open," then it is not true, that "the long sounds" of \_a\_ in

\_paper, father, water\_, cannot be so "denominated;" or that to "call the

\_a\_ in \_father\_ the \_open a\_, may, indeed, distinguish it from the slender

\_a\_ in \_paper\_." Nor, on this principle, can it be said that "the broad \_a\_

in \_water\_ is still \_more open\_;" for this a no more "ends a syllable" than

the others. If any vowel sound is to be called the \_open\_ sound because the

letter ends a syllable, or is not shut by a consonant, it is, undoubtedly,

the \_primal\_ and \_most usual\_ sound, as found in the letter when accented,

and not some other of rare occurrence.

OBS. 4.--Dr. Perley says, "It is greatly to be regretted that the different

sounds of a vowel should be called by the names \_long, short, slender\_, and

\_broad\_, which convey no idea of the nature of the sound, for \_mat\_ and

\_not\_ are as long in poetry as \_mate\_ and \_note\_. The first sound of a

vowel[,] as [that of \_a\_ in] \_fate\_[,] may be called \_open\_, because it is

the sound which the vowel generally has when it ends a syllable; the second

sound as [that of \_a\_ in] \_fat\_, may be called \_close\_, because it is the

sound which the vowel generally has when it is joined with a consonant

following in the same syllable, as \_fat-ten\_; when there are more than two

sounds of any vowel[,] they may be numbered onward; as 3 \_far\_, 4

\_fall\_."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 73.

OBS. 5.--Walker thought a long or short vowel sound essential to a long or

short quantity in any syllable. By this, if he was wrong in it, (as, in the

chapter on Versification, I have argued that he was,) he probably disturbed

more the proper distinction of quantities, than that of vowel sounds. As

regards \_long\_ and \_short\_, therefore, Perley's regret seems to have cause;

but, in making the same objection to "\_slender\_ and \_broad\_," he reasons

illogically. So far as his view is right, however, it coincides with the

following earlier suggestion: "The terms \_long\_ and \_short\_, which are

often used to denote certain vowel sounds; being also used, with a

different import, to distinguish the quantity of syllables, are frequently

misunderstood; for which reason, we have substituted for them the terms

\_open\_ and \_close\_;--the former, to denote the sound usually given to a

vowel when it \_forms\_ or \_ends\_ an accented syllable; as, \_ba, be, bi, bo,

bu, by\_;--the latter, to denote the sound which the vowel commonly takes

when closed by a consonant; as, \_ab, eb, ib, ob, ub\_"--\_Brown's

Institutes\_, p. 285.

I. OF THE LETTER A.

The vowel A has \_four\_ sounds properly its own; they are named by various

epithets: as,

1. The English, open, full, long, or slender \_a\_; as in \_aid, fame, favour,

efficacious\_.

2. The French, close, curt, short, or stopped \_a\_; as in \_bat, banner,

balance, carrying\_.

3. The Italian, broadish, grave, or middle \_a\_; as in \_far, father, aha,

comma, scoria, sofa\_.

4. The Dutch, German, Old-Saxon, or broad \_a\_; as in \_wall, haul, walk,

warm, water\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Concerning the number of sounds pertaining to the vowel \_a\_, or to

certain other particular letters, and consequently in regard to the whole

number of the sounds which constitute the oral elements of the English

language, our educational literati,--the grammarians, orthoepists

[sic--KTH], orthographers, elocutionists, phonographers, and

lexicographers,--are found to have entertained and inculcated a great

variety of opinions. In their different countings, the number of our

phonical elements varies from twenty-six to more than forty. Wells says

there are "\_about forty\_ elementary sounds."--\_School Gram.\_, §64. His

first edition was more positive, and stated them at "\_forty-one\_." See the

last and very erroneous passage which I have cited at the foot of page 162.

In Worcester's Universal and Critical Dictionary, there appear to be noted

several \_more\_ than \_forty-one\_, but I know not whether this author, or

Walker either, has anywhere told us how many of his marked sounds he

considered to be severally different from all others. Sheridan and Jones

admitted \_twenty-eight\_. Churchill acknowledges, as undisputed and

indisputable, only \_twenty-six\_; though he enumerates, "Of simple vowel

sounds, \_twelve\_, or \_perhaps thirteen\_" (New Grammar, p. 5,) and says,

"The consonant sounds in the English language, are \_nineteen\_, or \_rather

twenty\_."--P. 13.

OBS. 2.--Thus, while Pitman, Comstock, and others, are amusing themselves

with the folly of inventing new "Phonetic Alphabets," or of overturning all

orthography to furnish "a character for each of the 38 elementary sounds,"

more or fewer, one of the acutest observers among our grammarians can fix

on no number more definite or more considerable than \_thirty-one,

thirty-two\_, or \_thirty-three\_; and the finding of these he announces with

a "\_perhaps\_," and the admission that other writers object to as many as

\_five\_ of the questionable number. Churchill's vowel sounds, he says, "may

be found in the following words: 1. B\_a\_te, 2. B\_a\_t, 3. B\_a\_ll; 4. B\_e\_t,

5. B\_e\_; 6. B\_i\_t; 7. B\_o\_t, 8. B\_o\_ne, 9. B\_oo\_n; 10. B\_u\_t, 11. B\_u\_ll;

12. Lovel\_y\_; 13. \_W\_ool."--\_New Grammar\_, p. 5. To this he adds: "Many of

the writers on orthoepy [sic--KTH], however, consider the first and fourth

of the sounds above distinguished as actually the same, the former

differing from the latter only by being lengthened in the pronunciation.

They also reckon the seventh sound, to be the third shortened; the twelfth,

the fifth shortened; and the eleventh, the ninth shortened. Some consider

the fifth and sixth as differing only in length; and most esteem the

eleventh and thirteenth as identical."--\_Ib.\_

OBS. 3.--Now, it is plain, that these six identifications, or so many of

them as are admitted, must diminish by six, or by the less number allowed,

the thirteen vowel sounds enumerated by this author. By the best

authorities, \_W\_ initial, as in "\_W\_ool." is reckoned a \_consonant\_; and,

of course, its sound is supposed to differ in some degree from that of \_oo\_

in "B\_oo\_n," or that of \_u\_ in "B\_u\_ll,"--the ninth sound or the eleventh

in the foregoing series. By Walker, Murray, and other popular writers, the

sound of \_y\_ in "Lovel\_y\_" is accounted to be essentially the same as that

of \_e\_ in "B\_e\_." The twelfth and the thirteenth, then, of this list, being

removed, and three others added,--namely, the \_a\_ heard in \_far\_, the \_i\_

in \_fine\_, and the \_u\_ in \_fuse\_,--we shall have the \_fourteen vowel

sounds\_ which are enumerated by L. Murray and others, and adopted by the

author of the present work.

OBS. 4.--Wells says, "\_A\_ has \_six\_ sounds:--1. Long; as in \_late\_. 2.

Grave; as in \_father\_. 3. Broad; as in \_fall\_. 4. Short; as in \_man\_. 5.

The sound heard in \_care, hare\_. 6. Intermediate between \_a\_ in \_man\_ and

\_a\_ in \_father\_; as in \_grass, pass, branch\_."--\_School Grammar\_, 1850, p.

33. Besides these six, Worcester recognizes a seventh sound,--the "\_A

obscure\_; as in \_liar, rival\_"--\_Univ. and Crit. Dict.\_, p. ix. Such a

multiplication of the oral elements of our first vowel.--or, indeed, any

extension of them beyond four,--appears to me to be unadvisable; because it

not only makes our alphabet the more defective, but is unnecessary, and not

sustained by our best and most popular orthoepical [sic--KTH] authorities.

The sound of \_a\_ in \_liar\_, (and in \_rival\_ too, if made "\_obscure\_") is a

borrowed one, pertaining more properly to the letter \_u\_. In \_grass, pass\_,

and \_branch\_, properly uttered, the \_a\_ is essentially the same as in

\_man\_. In \_care\_ and \_hare\_, we have the first sound of \_a\_, made as

slender as the \_r\_ will admit.

OBS. 5.--Concerning his fifth sound of \_a\_, Wells cites authorities thus:

"Walker, Webster, Sheridan, Fulton and Knight, Kenrick, Jones, and Nares,

give \_a\_ in \_care\_ the \_long\_ sound of \_a\_, as in \_late\_. Page and Day give

it the \_short\_ sound of \_a\_, as in \_mat\_. See Page's Normal Chart, and

Day's Art of Elocution. Worcester and Perry make the sound of \_a\_ in \_care\_

a separate element; and this distinction is also recognized by Russell,

Mandeville, and Wright. See Russell's Lessons in Enunciation, Mandeville's

Elements of Reading and Oratory, and Wright's Orthography."--\_Wells's

School Grammar\_, p. 34. Now the opinion that \_a\_ in \_care\_ has its long,

primal sound, and is not properly "a separate element," is maintained also

by Murray, Hiley, Bullions, Scott, and Cobb; and is, undoubtedly, much more

prevalent than any other. It accords, too, with the scheme of Johnson. To

count this \_a\_ by itself, seems too much like a distinction without a

difference.

OBS. 6.--On his sixth sound of \_a\_, Wells remarks as follows: "Many persons

pronounce this \_a\_ incorrectly, giving it either the grave or the short

sound. Perry, Jones, Nares, Webster, and Day, give to \_a\_ in \_grass\_ the

grave sound, as in \_father\_; while Walker, Jamieson, and Russell, give it

the short sound, as in \_man\_. But good speakers generally pronounce \_a\_ in

\_grass, plant\_, etc., as a distinct element, intermediate between the grave

and the short sound."--\_School Gram.\_, p. 34. He also cites Worcester and

Smart to the same effect; and thinks, with the latter, "\_There can be no

harm\_ in avoiding the censure of both parties by \_shunning the extreme\_

that offends the taste of each."--\_Ib.\_, p. 35. But I say, that a needless

multiplication of questionable vowel powers difficult to be discriminated,

\_is\_ "harm," or a fault in teaching; and, where intelligent orthoepists

[sic--KTH] dispute whether words have "the \_grave\_ or the \_short\_ sound" of

\_a\_, how can others, who condemn both parties, acceptably split the

difference, and form "a distinct element" in the interval? Words are often

mispronounced, and the French or close \_a\_ may be mistaken for the Italian

or broadish \_a\_, and \_vice versa\_; but, between the two, there does not

appear to be room for an other distinguishable from both. Dr. Johnson says,

(inaccurately indeed,) "\_A\_ has \_three\_ sounds, the slender, [the] open,

and [the] broad. \_A\_ slender is found in \_most words\_, as \_face, mane\_. \_A\_

open is the \_a\_ of the Italian, or nearly resembles it; as \_father, rather,

congratulate, fancy, glass\_. \_A\_ broad resembles the \_a\_ of the German; as

\_all, wall, call\_. [fist] The \_short a\_ approaches to the \_a\_ open, as

\_grass\_."--\_Johnson's Grammar, in his Quarto Dictionary\_, p. 1. Thus the

same word, \_grass\_, that serves Johnson for an example of "the \_short a\_"

is used by Wells and Worcester to exemplify the "\_a intermediate\_;" while

of the Doctor's five instances of what he calls the "\_a open\_," three, if

not four, are evidently such as nearly all readers nowadays would call

close or short!

OBS. 7.--There are several grammarians who agree in ascribing to our first

vowel \_five\_ sounds, but who nevertheless oppose one an other in making up

the five. Thus, according to Hart, "A has five sounds of its own, as in

fate, fare, far, fall, fat,"--\_Hart's E. Gram.\_, p. 26. According to W.

Allen, "A has five sounds;--the long or slender, as in \_cane\_; the short or

open, as in \_can\_; the middle, as in \_arm\_; the broad, as in \_all\_; and the

\_broad contracted\_, as in \_want\_."--\_Allen's E. Gram.\_, p. 6. P. Davis has

the same sounds in a different order, thus: "a [as in] mane, mar, fall,

mat, what."--\_Davis's E. Gram.\_, p. xvi. Mennye says, "A has five sounds;

as, 1 fame, 2 fat, 3 false, 4 farm, 5 beggar."--\_Mennye's E. Gram.\_, p. 55.

Here the fifth sound is the seventh of Worcester,--the "\_A obscure\_."

DIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH A.

The only proper diphthong in which \_a\_ is put first, is the word \_ay\_,

meaning \_yes\_: in which \_a\_ has its \_middle\_ sound, as in \_ah\_, and \_y\_ is

like \_open e\_, or \_ee\_, uttered feebly--\_ah-ee\_. \_Aa\_, when pronounced as

an improper diphthong, and not as pertaining to two syllables, usually

takes the sound of \_close a\_; as in \_Balaam, Canaan, Isaac\_. In many words,

as in \_Baäl, Gaäl, Gaäsh\_, the diæresis occurs. In \_baa\_, the cry of a

sheep, we hear the Italian sound of \_a\_; and, since we hear it but once,

one \_a\_ or the other must be silent.

\_Æ\_, a Latin improper diphthong, common also in the Anglo-Saxon, generally

has, according to modern orthoëpists, the sound of \_open e\_ or \_ee\_; as in

\_Cæsar, ænigma, pæan\_;--sometimes that of \_close\_ or \_short e\_; as in

\_aphæresis, diæresis, et cætera\_. Some authors, judging the \_a\_ of this

diphthong to be needless, reject it, and write \_Cesar, enigma\_, &c.

\_Ai\_, an improper diphthong, generally has the sound of \_open\_ or \_long a\_;

as in \_sail, avail, vainly\_. In a final unaccented syllable, it sometimes

preserves the first sound of \_a\_; as in \_chilblain, mortmain\_: but oftener

takes the sound of \_close\_ or \_short i\_; as in \_certain, curtain, mountain,

villain\_. In \_said, saith, again\_, and \_against\_, it takes the sound of

\_close\_ or \_short e\_; and in the name \_Britain\_, that of \_close\_ or \_short

u\_.

\_Ao\_, an improper diphthong, occurs in the word \_gaol\_, now frequently

written as it is pronounced, \_jail\_; also in \_gaoler\_, which may be written

\_jailer\_; and in the compounds of \_gaol\_: and, again, it is found in the

adjective \_extraordinary\_, and its derivatives, in which, according to

nearly all orthoëpists, the \_a\_ is silent. The name \_Pharaoh\_, is

pronounced \_F=a'r=o\_.

\_Au\_, an improper diphthong, is generally sounded like \_broad a\_; as in

\_cause, caught, applause\_. Before \_n\_ and an other consonant, it usually

has the sound of \_grave\_ or \_middle a\_; as in \_aunt, flaunt, gaunt, launch,

laundry\_. So in \_laugh, laughter\_, and their derivatives. \_Gauge\_ and

\_gauger\_ are pronounced \_gage\_ and \_gager\_, and sometimes written so.

\_Aw\_, an improper diphthong, is always sounded like \_broad a\_; as in \_draw,

drawn, drawl\_.

\_Ay\_, an improper diphthong, like \_ai\_, has usually the sound of \_open\_ or

\_long a\_; as in \_day, pay, delay\_: in \_sayst\_ and \_says\_, it has the sound

of \_close\_ or \_short e\_.

TRIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH A.

\_Awe\_ is sounded \_au\_, like \_broad a\_. \_Aye\_, an adverb signifying

\_always\_, has the sound of \_open\_ or \_long a\_ only; being different, both

in sound and in spelling, from the adverb \_ay\_, yes, with which it is often

carelessly confounded. The distinction is maintained by Johnson, Walker,

Todd, Chalmers, Jones, Cobb, Maunder, Bolles, and others; but Webster and

Worcester give it up, and write "\_ay\_, or \_aye\_," each sounded \_ah-ee\_, for

the affirmation, and "\_aye\_," sounded \_=a\_, for the adverb of time:

Ainsworth on the contrary has \_ay\_ only, for either sense, and does not

note the pronunciation.

II. OF THE LETTER B.

The consonant \_B\_ has but one sound; as in \_boy, robber, cub\_. \_B\_ is

silent before \_t\_ or after \_m\_ in the same syllable; as in \_debt, debtor,

doubt, dumb, lamb, climb, tomb\_. It is heard in \_subtile\_, fine; but not in

\_subtle\_, cunning.

III. OF THE LETTER C.

The consonant \_C\_ has two sounds, neither of them peculiar to this letter;

the one \_hard\_, like that of \_k\_, and the other \_soft\_, or rather

\_hissing\_, like that of \_s\_. \_C\_ before \_a, o, u, l, r, t\_, or when it ends

a syllable, is generally hard, like \_k\_; as in \_can, come curb, clay, crab,

act, action, accent, flaccid\_. \_C\_ before \_e, i\_, or \_y\_, is always soft,

like \_s\_; as in \_cent, civil, decency, acid\_.

In a few words, \_c\_ takes the \_flat\_ sound of \_s\_, like that of \_z\_; as in

\_discern, suffice, sacrifice, sice\_. \_C\_ before \_ea, ia, ie, io\_, or \_eou\_,

when the accent precedes, sounds like \_sh\_; as in \_ocean, special, species,

gracious, cetaceous\_. \_C\_ is silent in \_czar, czarina, victuals, indict,

muscle, corpuscle\_, and the second syllable of \_Connecticut\_.

\_Ch\_ is generally sounded like \_tch\_, or \_tsh\_, which is the same to the

ear; as in \_church, chance, child\_. But in words derived from the learned

languages, it has the sound of \_k\_; as in \_character, scheme, catechise,

chorus, choir, chyle, patriarch, drachma, magna charta\_: except in \_chart,

charter, charity\_. \_Ch\_, in words derived from the French, takes the sound

of \_sh\_; as in \_chaise, machine\_. In Hebrew words or names, in general,

\_ch\_ sounds like \_k\_; as in \_Chebar, Sirach, Enoch\_: but in \_Rachel,

cherub\_, and \_cherubim\_, we have Anglicized the sound by uttering it as

\_tch\_. \_Loch\_, a Scottish word, sometimes also a medical term, is heard as

\_lok\_.

"\_Arch\_, before a vowel, is pronounced \_ark\_; as in \_archives, archangel,

archipelago\_: except in \_arched, archer, archery, archenemy\_. Before a

consonant it is pronounced \_artch\_; as in \_archbishop, archduke,

archfiend\_."--See \_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 10. \_Ch\_ is silent in \_schism,

yacht\_, and \_drachm\_. In \_schedule\_, some utter it as \_k\_; others, as \_sh\_;

and many make it mute: I like the first practice.

IV. OF THE LETTER D.

The general sound of the consonant \_D\_, is that which is heard in \_dog,

eddy, did\_. \_D\_, in the termination \_ed\_, preceded by a sharp consonant,

takes the sound of \_t\_, when the \_e\_ is suppressed or unheard: as in

\_faced, stuffed, cracked, tripped, passed\_; pronounced \_faste, stuft,

cract, tript, past. D\_ before \_ia, ie, io\_, or \_eou\_, when the accent

precedes, generally sounds like \_j\_; as in \_Indian, soldier, tedious,

hideous\_. So in \_verdure, arduous, education\_.

V. OF THE LETTER E.

The vowel \_E\_ has \_two\_ sounds properly its own,--and I incline to think,

\_three\_:--

1. The open, long, full, or primal \_e\_; as in \_me, mere, menial,

melodious\_.

2. The close, curt, short, or stopped \_e\_; as in \_men, merry, ebony,

strength\_.

3. The obscure or faint \_e\_; as in \_open, garden, shovel, able\_. This third

sound is scarcely perceptible, and barely sufficient to articulate the

consonant and form a syllable.

\_E final\_ is mute and belongs to the syllable formed by the preceding vowel

or diphthong; as in \_age, eve, ice, ore\_. Except--1. In the words, \_be, he,

me, we, she\_, in which it has the open sound; and the article \_the\_,

wherein it is open before a vowel, and obscure before a consonant. 2. In

Greek and Latin words, in which it has its open sound, and forms a distinct

syllable, or the basis of one; as in \_Penelope, Pasiphaë, Cyaneë,

Gargaphië, Arsinoë, apostrophe, catastrophe, simile, extempore, epitome\_.

3. In the terminations \_ere, gre, tre\_, in which it has the sound of

\_close\_ or \_curt u\_, heard before the \_r\_; as in \_acre, meagre, centre\_.

Mute \_e\_, after a single consonant, or after \_st\_ or \_th\_, generally

preserves the open or long sound of the preceding vowel; as in \_cane, here,

pine, cone, tune, thyme, baste, waste, lathe, clothe\_: except in syllables

unaccented; as in the last of \_genuine\_;--and in a few monosyllables; as

\_bade, are, were, gone, shone, one, done, give, live, shove, love\_.

DIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH E.

\_E\_ before an other vowel, in general, either forms with it an \_improper\_

diphthong, or else belongs to a separate syllable. We do not hear both

vowels in one syllable, except perhaps in \_eu\_ or \_ew\_.

\_Ea\_, an improper diphthong, mostly sounds like \_open\_ or \_long e\_; as in

\_ear, fear, tea\_; frequently like \_close\_ or \_curt e\_; as in \_head, health,

leather\_: sometimes, like \_open\_ or \_long a\_; as in \_steak, bear,

forswear\_: rarely, like \_middle a\_; as in \_heart, hearth, hearken. Ea\_ in

an unaccented syllable, sounds like \_close\_ or \_curt u\_; as \_in vengeance,

pageant\_.

\_Ee\_, an improper diphthong, mostly sounds like one \_open\_ or \_long e\_; as

in \_eel, sheep, tree, trustee, referee\_. The contractions \_e'er\_ and

\_ne'er\_, are pronounced \_air\_ and \_nair\_, and not like \_ear\_ and \_near.

E'en\_, however, preserves the sound of \_open e. Been\_ is most commonly

heard with the curt sound of \_i, bin\_.

\_Ei\_, an improper diphthong, mostly sounds like the \_primal\_ or \_long a\_;

as in \_reign, veil\_: frequently, like \_open\_ or \_long e\_; as in \_deceit,

either, neither, seize\_: sometimes, like \_open\_ or \_long i\_; as in \_height,

sleight, heigh-ho\_: often, in unaccented syllables, like \_close\_ or \_curt

i\_; as in \_foreign, forfeit, surfeit, sovereign\_: rarely, like \_close e\_;

as in \_heifer, nonpareil\_.

\_Eo\_, an improper diphthong, in \_people\_, sounds like \_open\_ or \_long e\_;

in \_leopard\_ and \_jeopard\_, like \_close\_ or \_curt e\_; in \_yeoman\_,

according to the best usage, like \_open\_ or \_long o\_; in \_George, Georgia,

georgic\_, like \_close o\_; in \_dungeon, puncheon, sturgeon\_, &c., like

\_close u\_. In \_feoff\_, and its derivatives, the \_close\_ or \_short\_ sound of

\_e\_ is most fashionable; but some prefer the long sound of \_e\_; and some

write the word "\_fief." Feod, feodal, feodary, feodatory\_, are now commonly

written as they are pronounced, \_feud, feudal, feudary, feudatory\_.

\_Eu\_ and \_ew\_ are sounded alike, and almost always with the diphthongal

sound of \_open\_ or \_long u\_; as in \_feud, deuce, jewel, dew, few, new\_.

These diphthongs, when initial, sound like \_yu\_. Nouns beginning with this

sound, require the article \_a\_, and not \_an\_, before them; as, \_A European,

a ewer\_. After \_r\_ or \_rh, eu\_ and \_ew\_ are commonly sounded like \_oo\_; as

in \_drew, grew, screw, rheumatism\_. In \_sew\_ and \_Shrewsbury, ew\_ sounds

like \_open o\_: Worcester, however, prefers the sound of \_oo\_ in the latter

word. \_Shew\_ and \_strew\_, having the same meaning as \_show\_ and \_strow\_,

are sometimes, by sameness of pronunciation, made to be the same words; and

sometimes distinguished as different words, by taking the sounds \_shu\_ and

\_stroo\_.

\_Ey\_, accented, has the sound of \_open\_ or \_long a\_; as in \_bey, prey,

survey\_: unaccented, it has the sound of \_open e\_; as in \_alley, valley,

money. Key\_ and \_ley\_ are pronounced \_kee, lee\_.

TRIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH E.

\_Eau\_, a French triphthong, sounds like \_open o\_; as in \_beau, flambeau,

portmanteau, bureau\_: except in \_beauty\_, and its compounds, in which it is

pronounced like \_open u\_, as if the word were written \_buty\_.

\_Eou\_ is a combination of vowels sometimes heard in one syllable,

especially after \_c\_ or \_g\_; as in \_crus-ta-ceous, gor-geous\_. Walker, in

his Rhyming Dictionary, gives one hundred and twenty words ending in

\_eous\_, in all of which he separates these vowels; as in \_ex-tra-ne-ous\_.

And why, in his Pronouncing Dictionary, he gave us several such anomalies

as \_fa-ba-ce-ous\_ in four syllables and \_her-ba-ceous\_ in three, it is not

easy to tell. The best rule is this: after \_c\_ or \_g\_, unite these vowels;

after the other consonants, separate them.

\_Ewe\_ is a triphthong having the sound of \_yu\_, and forming a word. The

vulgar pronunciation \_yoe\_ should be carefully avoided.

\_Eye\_ is an improper triphthong which also forms a word, and is pronounced

like \_open i\_, or the pronoun \_I\_.

VI. OF THE LETTER F.

The consonant \_F\_ has one unvaried sound, which is heard in \_fan, effort,

staff\_: except \_of\_, which, when simple, is pronounced \_ov\_.

VII. OF THE LETTER G.

The consonant \_G\_ has two sounds;--the one \_hard\_, guttural, and peculiar

to this letter; the other \_soft\_, like that of \_j. G\_ before \_a, o, u, l,

r\_, or at the end of a word, is hard; as in \_game, gone, gull, glory,

grace, log, bog\_; except in \_gaol. G\_ before \_e, i\_, or \_y\_, is soft; as in

\_gem, ginger, elegy\_. Except--1. In \_get, give, gewgaw, finger\_, and a few

other words. 2. When a syllable is added to a word ending in g: as, \_long,

longer; fog, foggy\_.

\_G\_ is silent before \_m\_ or \_n\_ in the same syllable; as in \_phlegm,

apothegm, gnaw, design. G\_, when silent, usually lengthens the preceding

vowel; as in \_resign, impregn, impugn\_.

\_Gh\_ at the beginning of a word has the sound of \_g hard\_; as in \_ghastly,

gherkin, Ghibelline, ghost, ghoul, ghyll\_: in other situations, it is

generally silent; as in \_high, mighty, plough, bough, though, through,

fight, night, bought. Gh final\_ sometimes sounds like \_f\_; as in \_laugh,

rough, tough\_; and sometimes, like \_g hard\_; as in \_burgh\_. In \_hough,

lough, shough\_, it sounds like \_k\_, or \_ck\_; thus, \_hock, lock, shock\_.

VIII. OF THE LETTER H.

The sound of the consonant \_H\_, (though articulate and audible when

properly uttered,) is little more than an aspirate breathing. It is heard

in \_hat, hit, hot, hut, adhere\_.

\_H\_ at the beginning of a word, is always sounded; except in \_heir, herb,

honest, honour, hospital, hostler, hour, humble, humour\_, with their

compounds and derivatives. \_H\_ after \_r\_, is always silent; as in

\_rhapsody, rhetoric, rheum, rhubarb. H final\_, immediately following a

vowel, is always silent; as in \_ah, Sarah, Nineveh, Shiloh\_.

IX. OF THE LETTER I.

The vowel \_I\_ has three sounds, each very common to it, and perhaps

properly its own:--

1. The open, long, full, or primal \_i\_; as in \_life, fine, final, time,

bind, child, sigh, pint, resign\_. This is a diphthongal sound, equivalent

to the sounds of \_middle a\_ and \_open e\_ quickly united.

2. The close, curt, short, or stopped \_i\_; as in \_ink, limit, disfigure,

mimicking\_.

3. The feeble, faint, or slender \_i\_, accentless; as in \_divest, doctrinal,

diversity\_.

This third sound is equivalent to that of \_open e\_, or \_ee\_ uttered feebly.

\_I\_ generally has this sound when it occurs at the end of an unaccented

syllable: except at the end of Latin words, or of ancient names, where it

is \_open\_ or \_long\_; as in \_literati, Nervii, Eli, Levi\_.

In some words, (principally from other modern languages,) \_i\_ has the full

sound of \_open e\_, under the accent; as in \_Porto Rico, machine, magazine,

antique, shire\_.

Accented \_i\_ followed by a vowel, has its open or primal sound; and the

vowels belong to separate syllables; as in \_pliant, diet, satiety, violet,

pious\_. Unaccented \_i\_ followed by a vowel, has its feeble sound; as in

\_expatiate, obedient, various, abstemious\_.

DIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH I.

\_I\_, in the situation last described, readily coalesces with the vowel

which follows, and is often sunk into the same syllable, forming a proper

diphthong: as in \_fustian, quotient, question\_. The terminations \_cion,

sion, and tion\_, are generally pronounced \_shun\_; and \_cious\_ and \_tious\_

are pronounced \_shus\_.

\_Ie\_ is commonly an improper diphthong. \_Ie\_ in \_die, hie, lie, pie, tie,

vie\_, and their derivatives, has the sound of \_open i. Ie\_ in words from

the French, (as \_cap-a-pie, ecurie, grenadier, siege, bier\_,) has the sound

of \_open e\_. So, generally, in the middle of English roots; as in \_chief,

grief, thief\_; but, in \_sieve\_, it has the sound of \_close\_ or \_short i\_.

In \_friend\_, and its derivatives or compounds, it takes the sound of \_close

e\_.

TRIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH I.

The triphthongs ieu and iew both sound like open or long u; as in lieu,

adieu, view.

The three vowels iou, in the termination ious, often fall into one

syllable, and form a triphthong. There are two hundred and forty-five words

of this ending; and more than two hundred deriva- tives from them. Walker

has several puzzling inconsistencies in their pronunciation; such as

fas-tid-i-ous and per-fid-ious, con-ta-gi-ous and sac-ri-le-gious. After c,

g, t, or x, these vowels should coalesce: as in gra-cious, re-li-gious,

vex-a-tious, ob-nox-ious, and about two hundred other words. After the

other consonants, let them form two syllables; (except when there is a syn-

seresis in poetry;) as in dw-bi-ou-s, o-di-ous, va-ri-ous, en-vi-ous.

X. OF THE LETTER J.

The consonant \_J\_, the tenth letter of the English alphabet, has invariably

the sound of \_soft g\_, like the \_g\_ in \_giant\_, which some say is

equivalent to the complex sound \_dzh\_; as, \_jade, jet, jilt, joy, justice,

jewel, prejudice\_.

XI. OF THE LETTER K.

The consonant \_K\_, not silent, has uniformly the sound of \_c\_ hard; and

occurs where \_c\_ would have its soft sound: as in \_keep, looking, kind,

smoky\_.

\_K\_ before \_n\_ is silent; as in \_knave, know, knuckle\_. In stead of

doubling \_c final\_, we write \_ck\_; as in \_lack, lock, luck, attack\_. In

English words, \_k\_ is never doubled, though two Kays may come together in

certain compounds; as in \_brickkiln, jackknife\_. Two Kays, belonging to

different syllables, also stand together in a few Scripture names; as in

\_Akkub, Bakbakkar, Bukki, Bukkiah, Habakkuk. Hakkoz, Ikkesh, Sukkiims\_. \_C\_

before \_k\_, though it does not always double the sound which \_c\_ or \_k\_ in

such a situation must represent, always shuts or shortens the preceding

vowel; as in \_rack, speck, freckle, cockle, wicked\_.

XII. OF THE LETTER L.

The consonant \_L\_, the plainest of the semivowels, has a soft, liquid

sound; as in \_line, lily, roll, follow. L\_ is sometimes silent; as in

\_Holmes, alms, almond, calm, chalk, walk, calf, half, could, would, should.

L\_, too, is frequently doubled where it is heard but once; as in \_hill,

full, travelled\_. So any letter that is written twice, and not twice

sounded, must there be once mute; as the last in \_baa, ebb, add, see,

staff, egg, all, inn, coo, err, less, buzz\_.

XIII. OF THE LETTER M.

The consonant \_M\_ is a semivowel and a liquid, capable of an audible,

humming sound through the nose, when the mouth is closed. It is heard in

\_map, murmur, mammon\_. In the old words, \_compt, accompt, comptroller\_,

(for \_count, account, controller\_,) the \_m\_ is sounded as \_n. M\_ before

\_n\_, at the beginning of a word, is silent; as in \_Mnason, Mnemosyne,

mnemonics\_.

XIV. OF THE LETTER N.

The consonant \_N\_, which is also a semivowel and a liquid, has two

sounds;--the first, the pure and natural sound of \_n\_; as in \_nun, banner,

cannon\_;--the second, the ringing sound of \_ng\_, heard before certain

gutturals; as in \_think, mangle, conquer, congress, singing, twinkling,

Cen'chreä\_. The latter sound should be carefully preserved in all words

ending in \_ing\_, and in such others as require it. The sounding of the

syllable \_ing\_ as if it were \_in\_, is a vulgarism in utterance; and the

writing of it so, is, as it would seem by the usage of Burns, a Scotticism.

\_N final\_ preceded by \_m\_, is silent; as in \_hymn, solemn, column, damn,

condemn, autumn\_. But this \_n\_ becomes audible in an additional syllable;

as in \_autumnal, condemnable, damning\_.

XV. OF THE LETTER O.

The vowel \_O\_ has \_three\_ different sounds, which are properly its own:--

1. The open, full, primal, or long \_o\_; as in \_no, note, opiate, opacity,

Roman\_.

2. The close, curt, short, or stopped \_o\_; as in \_not, nor, torrid, dollar,

fondle\_.

3. The slender or narrow \_o\_, like \_oo\_; as in \_prove, move, who, to, do,

tomb\_.

\_O\_, in many words, sounds like \_close\_ or \_curt u\_; as in \_love, shove,

son, come, nothing, dost, attorney, gallon, dragon, comfit, comfort,

coloration. One\_ is pronounced \_wun\_; and \_once, wunce\_. In the termination

\_on\_ immediately after the accent, \_o\_ is often sunk into a sound scarcely

perceptible, like that of \_obscure e\_; as in \_mason, person, lesson\_.

DIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH O.

\_Oa\_, an improper diphthong, has the sound of \_open\_ or \_long o\_; as in

\_boat, coal, roach, coast, coastwise\_: except in \_broad\_ and \_groat\_, which

have the sound of \_broad a\_.

\_Oe\_, an improper diphthong, when \_final\_, has the sound of \_open\_ or \_long

o\_: as in \_doe, foe, throe\_: except in \_canoe, shoe\_, pronounced \_canoo,

shoo\_. \_OE\_, a Latin diphthong, generally sounds like \_open e\_; as in

\_Antoeci, foetus\_: sometimes, like \_close\_ or \_curt e\_; as in \_foetid,

foeticide\_. But the English word \_f~etid\_ is often, and perhaps generally,

written without the \_o\_.

\_Oi\_ is generally a proper diphthong, uniting the sound of \_close o\_ or

\_broad a\_, and that of \_open e\_; as in \_boil, coil, soil, rejoice\_. But the

vowels, when they appear together, sometimes belong to separate syllables;

as in \_Stoic, Stoicism. Oi\_ unaccented, sometimes has the sound of \_close\_

or \_curt i\_; as in \_avoirdupois, connoisseur, tortoise\_.

\_Oo\_, an improper diphthong, generally has the slender sound of \_o\_; as in

\_coo, too, woo, fool, room\_. It has, in some words, a shorter or closer

sound, (like that of \_u\_ in \_bull\_,) as in \_foot, good, wood, stood,

wool\_;--that of \_close u\_ in \_blood\_ and \_flood\_;--and that of \_open o\_ in

\_door\_ and \_floor\_. Derivatives from any of these, sound as their

primitives.

\_Ou\_ is generally a proper diphthong, uniting the sound of \_close\_ or \_curt

o\_, and that of \_u\_ as heard in \_bull\_,--or \_u\_ sounded as \_oo\_; as in

\_bound, found, sound, ounce, thou. Ou\_ is also, in certain instances, an

improper diphthong; and, as such, it has \_six\_ different sounds:--(l.) That

of \_close\_ or \_curt u\_; as in \_rough, tough, young, flourish\_. (2.) That of

\_broad a\_; as in \_ought, bought, thought\_. (3.) That of \_open\_ or \_long o\_;

as in \_court, dough, four, though\_. (4.) That of \_close\_ or \_curt o\_; as in

\_cough, trough, lough, shough\_: which are, I believe, the only examples.

(5.) That of \_slender o\_, or \_oo\_; as in \_soup, you, through\_. (6.) That of

\_u\_ in \_bull\_, or of \_oo\_ shortened; only in \_would, could, should\_.

\_Ow\_ generally sounds like the proper diphthong \_ou\_,--or like a union of

\_short o\_ with \_oo\_; as in \_brown, dowry, now, shower\_: but it is often an

improper diphthong, having only the sound of \_open\_ or \_long o\_; as in

\_know, show, stow\_.

\_Oy\_ is a proper diphthong, equivalent in sound to \_oi\_; as in \_joy, toy,

oyster\_.

TRIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH O.

\_OEu\_ is a French triphthong, pronounced in English as \_oo\_, and occurring

in the word \_manoeuvre\_, with its several derivatives. \_Owe\_ is an improper

triphthong, and an English word, in which the \_o\_ only is heard, and heard

always with its long or open sound.

XVI. OF THE LETTER P.

The consonant \_P\_, when not written before \_h\_, has commonly one peculiar

sound; which is heard in \_pen, pine, sup, supper\_. The word \_cupboard\_ is

usually pronounced \_kubburd\_. \_P\_, written with an audible consonant, is

sometimes itself silent; as in \_psalm, psalter, pseudography, psychology,

ptarmigan, ptyalism, receipt, corps\_.

\_Ph\_ generally sounds like \_f\_; as in \_philosophy\_. In \_Stephen\_ and

\_nephew, ph\_ has the sound of \_v\_. The \_h\_ after \_p\_, is silent in

\_diphthong, triphthong, naphtha, ophthalmic\_; and both the \_p\_ and the \_h\_

are silent in \_apophthegm, phthisis, phthisical\_. From the last three

words, \_ph\_ is sometimes dropped.

XVII. OF THE LETTER Q.

The consonant \_Q\_, being never silent, never final, never doubled, and not

having a sound peculiar to itself, is invariably heard, in English, with

the power of \_k\_; and is always followed by the vowel \_u\_, which, in words

\_purely English\_, is sounded like the narrow \_o\_, or \_oo\_,--or, perhaps, is

squeezed into the consonantal sound of \_w\_;--as in \_queen, quaver, quiver,

quarter, request\_. In some words of \_French\_ origin, the \_u\_ after \_q\_ is

silent; as in \_coquet, liquor, burlesque, etiquette\_.

XVIII. OF THE LETTER R.

The consonant \_R\_, called also a semivowel and a liquid, has usually, at

the beginning of a word, or before a vowel, a rough or pretty strong sound;

as in \_roll, rose, roam, proudly, prorogue\_. "In other positions," it is

said by many to be "smooth" or "soft;" "as in \_hard, ford, word\_."--\_W.

Allen\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The letter \_R\_ turns the tip of the tongue up against or towards

the roof of the mouth, where the sound may be lengthened, roughened,

trilled, or quavered. Consequently, this element may, at the will of the

speaker, have more or less--little or nothing, or even very much--of that

peculiar roughness, jar, or whur, which is commonly said to constitute the

sound. The extremes should here be avoided. Some readers very improperly

omit the sound of \_r\_ from many words to which it pertains; pronouncing

\_or\_ as \_awe, nor\_ as \_knaw, for\_ as \_faugh\_, and \_war\_ as the first

syllable of \_water\_. On the other hand, "The excessive \_trilling\_ of the

\_r\_, as practised by some speakers, is a great fault."--\_D. P. Page\_.

OBS. 2.--Dr. Johnson, in his "Grammar of the English Tongue," says, "\_R\_

has the same \_rough snarling sound\_ as in other tongues."--P. 3. Again, in

his Quarto Dictionary, under this letter, he says, "\_R\_ is called the

\_canine letter\_, because it is uttered \_with some resemblance to the growl

or snarl of a cur\_: it has \_one constant sound\_ in English, such as it has

in other languages; as, \_red, rose, more, muriatick\_." Walker, however, who

has a greater reputation as an orthoepist [sic--KTH], teaches that, "There

is a distinction in the sound of this letter, which is," says he, "in my

opinion, \_of no small importance\_; and that is, the [distinction of] the

rough and [the] smooth \_r\_. Ben Jonson," continues he, "in his Grammar,

says, 'It is sounded firm in the beginning of words, and more liquid in the

middle and ends, as in \_rarer, riper\_; and so in the Latin.' The rough \_r\_

is formed by jarring the tip of the tongue against the roof of the mouth

near the fore teeth: the smooth \_r\_ is a vibration of the lower part of the

tongue, near the root, against the inward region of the palate, near the

entrance of the throat."--\_Walker's Principles\_, No. 419; \_Octavo Dict.\_,

p. 48.

OBS. 3.--Wells, with his characteristic indecision, forbears all

recognition of this difference, and all intimation of the quality of the

sound, whether smooth or rough; saying, in his own text, only this: "\_R\_

has the sound heard in \_rare\_."--\_School Grammar\_, p. 40. Then, referring

the student to sundry authorities, he adds in a footnote certain

"quotations," that are said to "present a general view of the different

opinions which exist among orthoepists respecting this letter." And so

admirably are these authorities or opinions balanced and offset, one class

against an other, that it is hard to tell which has the odds. First, though

it is not at all probable that Wells's utterance of "\_rare\_" exhibits twice

over the \_rough snarl\_ of Johnson's \_r\_, the "general view" seems intended

to confirm the indefinite teaching above, thus: "'\_R\_ has one constant

sound in English.'--\_Johnson\_. The same view is adopted by Webster, Perry,

Kendrick, Sheridan, Jones, Jameson, Knowles, and others."--\_School

Grammar\_, p. 40. In counterpoise of these, Wells next cites about as many

more--namely, Frazee, Page, Russell, Walker, Rush, Barber, Comstock, and

Smart,--as maintaining or admitting that \_r\_ has sometimes a rough sound,

and sometimes a smoother one.

XIX. OF THE LETTER S.

The consonant \_S\_ has a sharp, hissing, or hard sound; as in \_sad,

sister, thus\_: and a flat, buzzing, or soft sound, like that of \_z\_; as in

\_rose, dismal, bosom, husband. S\_, at the beginning of words, or after any

of the sharp consonants, is always sharp; as in \_see, steps, cliffs, sits,

stocks, smiths\_. \_S\_, after any of the flat mutes, or at the end of words

when not preceded by a sharp consonant, is generally flat; as in \_eyes,

trees, beds, bags, calves\_. But in the English termination \_ous\_, or in the

Latin \_us\_, it is sharp; as \_joyous, vigorous, hiatus\_.

\_Ss\_ is generally sharp; as in \_pass, kiss, harass, assuage, basset,

cassock, remissness\_. But the first two Esses in \_possess\_, or any of its

regular derivatives, as well as the two in \_dissolve\_, or its proximate

kin, sound like two Zees; and the soft or flat sound is commonly given to

each \_s\_ in \_hyssop, hussy, and hussar\_. In \_scissel, scissible\_, and

\_scissile\_, all the Esses hiss;--in \_scissors\_, the last three of the four

are flat, like \_z\_;--but in the middle of \_scissure\_ and \_scission\_ we hear

the sound of \_zh\_.

\_S\_, in the termination \_sion\_, takes the sound of \_sh\_, after a consonant;

as in \_aspersion, session, passion, mission, compulsion\_: and that of \_zh\_,

after a vowel; as in \_evasion, elision, confusion\_.

In the verb \_assure\_, and each of its derivatives, also in the nouns

\_pressure\_ and \_fissure\_, with their derivatives, we hear, according to

Walker, the sound of \_sh\_ for each \_s\_, or twice in each word; but,

according to the orthoëpy of Worcester, that sound is heard only in the

accented syllable of each word, and the vowel in each unaccented syllable

is \_obscure\_.

\_S\_ is silent or mute in the words, \_isle, island, aisle, demesne, corps\_,

and \_viscount\_.

XX. OF THE LETTER T.

The general sound of the consonant \_T\_, is heard in \_time, letter, set\_.

\_T\_, immediately after the accent, takes the sound of \_tch\_, before \_u\_,

and generally also before \_eou\_; as in \_nature, feature, virtue, righteous,

courteous\_: when \_s\_ or \_x\_ precedes, it takes this sound before \_ia\_ or

\_io\_; as in \_fustian, bastion, mixtion\_. But the general or most usual

sound of \_t\_ after the accent, when followed by \_i\_ and an other vowel, is

that of \_sh\_; as in \_creation, patient, cautious\_.

In English, \_t\_ is seldom, if ever, silent or powerless. In \_depot\_,

however, a word borrowed from the French, we do not sound it; and in

\_chestnut\_, which is a compound of our own, it is much oftener written than

heard. In \_often\_ and \_soften\_, some think it silent; but it seems rather

to take here the sound of \_f\_. In \_chasten, hasten, fasten, castle, nestle,

whistle, apostle, epistle, bustle\_, and similar words, with their sundry

derivatives, the \_t\_ is said by some to be mute; but here it seems to take

the sound of \_s\_; for, according to the best authorities, this sound is

beard twice in such words. \_Th\_, written in Greek by the character called

\_Theta\_, ([Greek: th] or O capital, [Greek: th] or [Greek: th] small,)

represents an elementary sound; or, rather, two distinct elementary sounds,

for which the Anglo-Saxons had different characters, supposed by Dr.

Bosworth to have been applied with accurate discrimination of "the \_hard\_

or \_sharp\_ sound of \_th\_," from "the \_soft\_ or \_flat\_ sound."--(See

\_Bosworth's Compendious Anglo-Saxon Dictionary\_, p. 268.) The English \_th\_

is either sharp, as in \_thing, ethical, thinketh\_; or flat, as in \_this,

whither, thither\_.

"\_Th initial\_ is sharp; as in \_thought\_: except in \_than, that, the, thee,

their, them, then, thence, there, these, they, thine, this, thither, those,

thou, thus, thy\_, and their compounds."--\_W. Allen's Grammar\_, p. 22.

\_Th final\_ is also sharp; as in \_south\_: except in \_beneath, booth, with\_,

and several verbs formerly with \_th\_ last, but now frequently (and more

properly) written with final \_e\_; as \_loathe, mouthe, seethe, soothe,

smoothe, clothe, wreathe, bequeathe, unclothe\_.

\_Th medial\_ is sharp, too, when preceded or followed by a consonant; as in

\_Arthur, ethnic, swarthy, athwart\_: except in \_brethren, burthen, farther,

farthing, murther, northern, worthy\_. But "\_th\_ between two vowels, is

generally flat in words purely English; as in \_gather, neither, whither\_:

and sharp in words from the learned languages; as in \_atheist, ether,

method\_"--See \_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 22.

"\_Th\_, in \_Thames, Thomas, thyme, asthma, phthisis\_, and their compounds,

is pronounced like \_t\_."--\_Ib.\_

XXI. OF THE LETTER U.

The vowel \_U\_ has three sounds which may be considered to be properly its

own:--

1. The open, long, full, primal, or diphthongal \_u\_; as in \_tube, cubic,

juvenile\_.

2. The close, curt, short, or stopped \_u\_; as in \_tub, butter, justice,

unhung\_.

3. The middle \_u\_, resembling a short or quick \_oo\_; as in \_pull, pulpit,

artful\_.

\_U\_ forming a syllable by itself or \_U\_ as naming itself is nearly

equivalent in sound to \_you\_, and requires the article \_a\_, and not \_an\_,

before it; as, \_a U, a union\_.

\_U\_ sometimes borrows the sound of some other vowel; for \_bury\_ is

pronounced \_berry\_, and \_busy\_ is pronounced \_bizzy\_. So in the

derivatives, \_burial, buried, busied, busily\_, and the like.

The long or diphthongal \_u\_, commonly sounded as \_yu\_, or as \_ew\_ in

\_ewer\_,--or any equivalent diphthong or digraph, as \_ue, ui, eu\_, or

\_ew\_.--when it follows \_r\_ or \_rh\_, assumes the sound of slender \_o\_ or

\_oo\_; as in \_rude, rhubarb, rue, rueful, rheum, fruit, truth, brewer\_.

DIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH U.

\_U\_, in the proper diphthongs, \_ua, ue, ui, uo, uy\_, has the sound of \_w\_

or of \_oo feeble\_; as in \_persuade, query, quell, quiet, languid, quote,

obloquy\_.

\_Ua\_, an improper diphthong, has the sound--1. Of \_middle a\_; as in \_guard,

guardian\_. 2. Of \_close a\_; as in \_guarantee, piquant\_. 3. Of \_obscure e\_;

as in \_victuals\_ and its compounds or kindred. 4. Of \_open u\_; as in

\_mantuamaker\_.

\_Ue\_, an improper diphthong, has the sound--1. Of \_open u\_; as in \_blue,

ensue, ague\_. 2. Of \_close e\_; as in \_guest, guesser\_. 3. Of \_close u\_; as

in \_leaguer\_. \_Ue final\_ is sometimes silent; as in \_league, antique\_.

\_Ui\_, an improper diphthong, has the sound--1. Of \_open i\_; as in \_guide,

guile\_. 2. Of \_close i\_; as in \_conduit, circuit\_. 3. Of \_open u\_; as in

\_juice, sluice, suit\_.

\_Uo\_ can scarcely be called an improper diphthong, except, perhaps, after

\_q\_ in \_liquor, liquorice, liquorish\_, where \_uor\_ is heard as \_ur\_.

\_Uy\_, an improper diphthong, has the sound--1. Of \_open y\_; as in \_buy,

buyer\_. 2. Of \_feeble y\_, or of \_ee feeble\_; as in \_plaguy, roguy\_.

TRIPHTHONGS BEGINNING WITH U.

\_Uai\_ is pronounced nearly, if not exactly, like \_way\_; as in \_guai-a-cum,

quail, quaint\_. \_Uaw\_ is sounded like \_wa\_ in \_water\_; as in \_squaw\_, a

female Indian. \_Uay\_ has the sound of \_way\_; as in \_Par-a-guay\_: except in

\_quay\_, which nearly all our orthoepists pronounce \_kee\_. \_Uea\_ and \_uee\_

are each sounded \_wee\_; as in \_queasy, queer, squeal, squeeze\_. \_Uoi\_ and

\_woy\_ are each sounded \_woi\_; as in \_quoit, buoy\_. Some say, that, as \_u\_,

in these combinations, sounds like \_w\_, it is a consonant; others allege,

that \_w\_ itself has only the sound of \_oo\_, and is therefore in all cases a

vowel. \_U\_ has, certainly, in these connexions, as much of the sound of

\_oo\_, as has \_w\_; and perhaps a little more.

XXII. OF THE LETTER V.

The consonant \_V\_ always has a sound like that of \_f flattened\_; as in

\_love, vulture, vivacious\_. In pure English, it is never silent, never

final, never doubled: but it is often doubled in the dialect of Craven; and

there, too, it is sometimes final.

XXIII. OF THE LETTER W.

\_W\_, when reckoned a \_consonant\_, (as it usually is when uttered with a

vowel that follows it,) has the sound heard at the beginning of \_wine, win,

woman, woody\_; being a sound less vocal than that of \_oo\_, and depending

more upon the lips.

\_W\_ before \_h\_, is usually pronounced as if it followed the \_h\_; as in

\_what, when, where, while\_: but, in \_who, whose, whom, whole, whoop\_, and

words formed from these, it is silent. Before \_r\_, in the same syllable, it

is also silent; as in \_wrath, wrench, wrong\_. So in a few other cases; as

in \_sword, answer, two\_.

\_W\_ is never used alone as a \_vowel\_; except in some Welsh or foreign

names, in which it is equivalent to \_oo\_; as in "\_Cwm Cothy\_," the name of

a mountain in Wales; "\_Wkra\_" the name of a small river in Poland.--See

\_Lockhart's Napoleon\_, Vol. ii, p. 15. In a diphthong, when heard, it has

the power of \_u\_ in \_bull\_, or nearly that of \_oo\_; as in \_new, now, brow,

frown\_. \_Aw\_ and \_ow\_ are frequently improper diphthongs, the \_w\_ being

silent, the \_a\_ broad, and the \_o\_ long; as in \_law, flaw,--tow, snow\_.

\_W\_, when sounded before vowels, being reckoned a \_consonant\_, we have no

diphthongs or triphthongs beginning with this letter.

XXIV. OF THE LETTER X.

The consonant "\_X\_ has a \_sharp\_ sound, like \_ks\_; as in \_ox\_: and a \_flat\_

one, like \_gz\_; as in \_example\_. \_X\_ is sharp, when it ends an accented

syllable; as in \_exercise, exit, excellence\_: or when it precedes an

accented syllable beginning with a consonant; as in \_expand, extreme,

expunge\_. \_X\_ unaccented is generally flat, when the next syllable begins

with a vowel; as in \_exist, exemption, exotic\_. \_X initial\_, in Greek

proper names, has the sound of \_z\_; as in \_Xanthus, Xantippe, Xenophon,

Xerxes\_"--See \_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 25.

XXV. OF THE LETTER Y.

\_Y\_, as a \_consonant\_, has the sound heard at the beginning of \_yarn,

young, youth\_; being rather less vocal than the feeble sound of \_i\_, or of

the vowel \_y\_, and serving merely to modify that of a succeeding vowel,

with which it is quickly united. \_Y\_, as a vowel, has the same sounds as

\_i\_:--

1. The open, long, full, or primal \_y\_; as in \_cry, crying, thyme, cycle\_.

2. The close, curt, short, or stopped \_y\_; as in \_system, symptom, cynic\_.

3. The feeble or faint \_y\_, accentless; (like \_open e feeble\_;) as in

\_cymar, cycloidal, mercy\_.

The vowels \_i\_ and \_y\_ have, in general, exactly the same sound under

similar circumstances, and, in forming derivatives, we often change one for

the other: as in \_city, cities; tie, tying; easy, easily\_.

\_Y\_, before a vowel heard in the same syllable, is reckoned a \_consonant\_;

we have, therefore, no diphthongs or triphthongs \_commencing\_ with this

letter.

XXVI. OF THE LETTER Z.

The consonant \_Z\_, the last letter of our alphabet, has usually a soft or

buzzing sound, the same as that of \_s flat\_; as in \_Zeno, zenith, breeze,

dizzy\_. Before \_u primal\_ or \_i feeble, z\_, as well as \_s flat\_, sometimes

takes the sound of \_zh\_, which, in the enumeration of consonantal sounds,

is reckoned a distinct element; as in \_azure, seizure, glazier; osier,

measure, pleasure\_.

END OF THE FIRST APPENDIX.

APPENDIX II.

TO PART SECOND, OR ETYMOLOGY.

OF THE DERIVATION OF WORDS.

Derivation, as a topic to be treated by the grammarian, is a species of

Etymology, which explains the various methods by which those derivative

words which are not formed by mere grammatical inflections, are deduced

from their primitives. Most of those words which are regarded as primitives

in English, may be traced to ulterior sources, and many of them are found

to be compounds or derivatives in the other languages from which they have

come to us. To show the composition, origin, and literal sense of these, is

also a part, and a highly useful part, of this general inquiry, or theme of

instruction.

This species of information, though insignificant in those whose studies

reach to nothing better,--to nothing valuable and available in life,--is

nevertheless essential to education and to science; because it is essential

to a right understanding of the import and just application of such words.

All reliable etymology, all authentic derivation of words, has ever been

highly valued by the wise. The learned James Harris has a remark as

follows: "How useful to ETHIC SCIENCE, and indeed to KNOWLEDGE in general,

a GRAMMATICAL DISQUISITION into the \_Etymology\_ and \_Meaning\_ of WORDS was

esteemed by the chief and ablest Philosophers, may be seen by consulting

\_Plato\_ in his \_Cratylus; Xenophon's Memorabilia\_, IV, 5, 6; \_Arrian.

Epict.\_ I, 17; II, 10; \_Marc. Anton\_. III, 11;" &c.--See \_Harris's Hermes\_,

p. 407.

A knowledge of the \_Saxon, Latin, Greek\_, and \_French\_ languages, will

throw much light on this subject, the derivation of our modern English; nor

is it a weak argument in favour of studying these, that our acquaintance

with them, whether deep or slight, tends to a better understanding of what

is borrowed, and what is vernacular, in our own tongue. But etymological

analysis may extensively teach the origin of English words, their

composition, and the import of their parts, without demanding of the

student the power of reading foreign or ancient languages, or of

discoursing at all on General Grammar. And, since many of the users of this

work may be but readers of our current English, to whom an unknown letter

or a foreign word is a particularly uncouth and repulsive thing, we shall

here forbear the use of Saxon characters, and, in our explanations, not go

beyond the precincts of our own language, except to show the origin and

primitive import of some of our definitive and connecting particles, and to

explain the prefixes and terminations which are frequently employed to form

English derivatives.

The rude and cursory languages of barbarous nations, to whom literature is

unknown, are among those transitory things which, by the hand of time, are

irrecoverably buried in oblivion. The fabric of the English language is

undoubtedly of \_Saxon\_ origin; but what was the particular form of the

language spoken by the \_Saxons\_, when about the year 450 they entered

Britain, cannot now be accurately known. It was probably a dialect of the

\_Gothic\_ or \_Teutonic\_. This \_Anglo-Saxon\_ dialect, being the nucleus,

received large accessions from other tongues of the north, from the \_Norman

French\_, and from the more polished languages of \_Rome\_ and \_Greece\_, to

form the modern \_English\_. The speech of our rude and warlike ancestors

thus gradually improved, as Christianity, civilization, and knowledge,

advanced the arts of life in Britain; and, as early as the tenth century,

it became a language capable of expressing all the sentiments of a

civilized people. From the time of \_Alfred\_, its progress may be traced by

means of writings which remain; but it can scarcely be called \_English\_, as

I have shown in the Introduction to this work, till about the thirteenth

century. And for two or three centuries later, it was so different from the

modern English, as to be scarcely intelligible at all to the mere English

reader; but, gradually improving by means upon which we need not here

dilate, it at length became what we now find it,--a language copious,

strong, refined, impressive, and capable, if properly used, of a great

degree of beauty and harmony.

SECTION I.--DERIVATION OF THE ARTICLES.

1. For the derivation of our article THE, which he calls "\_an adjective\_,"

Dr. Webster was satisfied with giving this hint: "Sax. \_the\_; Dutch,

\_de\_."--\_Amer. Dict.\_ According to Horne Tooke, this definite article of

ours, is the Saxon \_verb\_ "THE," imperative, from THEAN, to \_take\_; and is

nearly equivalent in meaning to \_that\_ or \_those\_, because our \_that\_ is

"the past participle of THEAN," and "means \_taken\_."--\_Diversions of

Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 49. But this is not very satisfactory. Examining

ancient works, we find the word, or something resembling it, or akin to it,

written in various forms, as \_se, see, ye, te, de, the, thá\_, and others

that cannot be shown by our modern letters; and, tracing it as one article,

or one and the same word, through what we suppose to be the oldest of these

forms, in stead of accounting the forms as signs of different roots, we

should sooner regard it as originating in the imperative of SEON, \_to see\_.

2. AN, our indefinite article, is the Saxon \_oen, ane, an\_, ONE; and, by

dropping \_n\_ before a consonant, becomes \_a\_. Gawin Douglas, an ancient

English writer, wrote \_ane\_, even before a consonant; as, "\_Ane\_

book,"--"\_Ane\_ lang spere,"--"\_Ane\_ volume."

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--The words of Tooke, concerning the derivation of \_That\_ and \_The\_,

as nearly as they can be given in our letters, are these: "THAT (in the

Anglo-Saxon Thæt, i.e. Thead, Theat) means \_taken, assumed\_; being merely

the past participle of the Anglo-Saxon verb Thean, Thegan, Thion, Thihan,

Thicgan, Thigian; sumere, assumere, accipere; to THE, to \_get\_, to \_take\_,

to \_assume\_.

'Ill mote he THE That caused me

To make myselfe a frere.'--\_Sir T. More's Workes, pag.\_ 4.

THE (our \_article\_, as it is called) is the imperative of the same verb

Thean: which may very well supply the place of the correspondent

Anglo-Saxon article Se, which is the imperative of Seon, videre: for it

answers the same purpose in discourse, to say.... \_see\_ man, or \_take\_

man."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 49.

OBS. 2.--Now, between \_Thæt\_ and \_Theat\_, there is a considerable

difference of form, for \_æ\_ and \_ea\_ are not the same diphthong; and, in

the identifying of so many infinitives, as forming but one verb, there is

room for error. Nor is it half so probable that these are truly one root,

as that our article \_The\_ is the same, in its origin, as the old

Anglo-Saxon \_Se\_. Dr. Bosworth, in his Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, gives no

such word as \_Thean\_ or \_Thegan\_, no such participle as \_Thead\_ or \_Theat\_,

which derivative is perhaps imaginary; but he has inserted together

"Thicgan, thicgean, thigan, \_to receive, or take\_;" and separately, "Theon,

\_to thrive, or flourish\_,"--"Thihan, \_to thrive\_,"--and "Thion, \_to

flourish\_;" as well as the preterit "Theat, \_howled\_," from "Theotan, \_to

howl\_." And is it not plain, that the old verb "THE," as used by More, is

from Theon, \_to thrive\_, rather than from Thicgan, \_to take\_? "Ill mote he

THE"--"Ill might he \_thrive\_," not, "Ill might he \_take\_."

OBS. 3.--Professor Hart says, "The word \_the\_ was originally \_thæt\_, or

\_that\_. In course of time [,] it became abbreviated, and the short form

acquired, in usage, a shade of meaning different from the original long

one. \_That\_ is demonstrative with emphasis; \_the\_ is demonstrative without

emphasis."--\_Hart's E. Grammar\_, p. 32. This derivation of \_The\_ is quite

improbable; because the shortening of a monosyllable of five letters by

striking out the third and the fifth, is no usual mode of abbreviation.

Bosworth's Dictionary explains THE as "An indeclinable article, often used

for all the cases of Se, seo, thæt, especially in adverbial expressions and

in corrupt Anglo-Saxon, as in the \_Chronicle\_ after the year 1138."

OBS. 4--Dr. Latham, in a section which is evidently neither accurate nor

self-consistent, teaches us--"that there exist in the present English two

powers of the word spelled \_t-h-e\_, or of the so-called definite article;"

then, out of sixteen Anglo-Saxon equivalents, he selects two for the roots

of this double-powered \_the\_; saying, "Hence the \_the\_ that has originated

out of the Anglo-Saxon \_thy\_ is one word; whilst the \_the\_ that has

originated out of the Anglo-Saxon \_the\_, [is] another. The latter is the

common article: the former the \_the\_ in expressions like \_all the more, all

the better--more by all that, better by all that\_, and the Latin phrases

\_eo majus, eo melius\_."--\_Latham's Hand-Book\_, p. 158. This double

derivation is liable to many objections. The Hand-Book afterwards says,

"That the, in expressions like \_all the more, all the better\_, &c., is \_no

article\_, has already been shown."--P. 196. But in fact, though \_the\_

before comparatives or superlatives be no article, Dr. Latham's etymologies

prove no such thing; neither does he anywhere tell us what it is. His

examples, too, with their interpretations, are all of them fictitious,

ambiguous, and otherwise bad. It is uncertain whether he meant his phrases

for counterparts to each other or not. If \_the\_ means "\_by that\_," or

\_thereby\_, it is an \_adverb\_; and so is its equivalent "\_eo\_" denominated

by the Latin grammarians. See OBS. 10, under Rule I.

SECTION II.--DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

In \_English\_, Nouns are derived from nouns, from adjectives, from verbs, or

from participles.

I. Nouns are derived from \_Nouns\_ in several different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_ship, dom, ric, wick, or, ate, hood\_, or \_head\_: as,

\_fellow, fellowship; king, kingdom; bishop, bishopric; bailiff\_, or \_baily,

bailiwick; senate, senator; tetrarch, tetrarchate; child, childhood; God,

Godhead\_. These generally denote dominion, office, or character.

2. By the adding of \_ian\_: as, \_music, musician; physic, physician;

theology, theologian; grammar, grammarian; college, collegian\_. These

generally denote profession.

3. By the adding of \_r, ry\_, or \_ery\_: as, \_grocer, grocery; cutler,

cutlery; slave, slavery; scene, scenery; fool, foolery\_. These sometimes

denote state or habit; sometimes, an artificer's wares or shop.

4. By the adding of \_age\_ or \_ade\_: as, \_patron, patronage; porter,

porterage; band, bandage; lemon, lemonade; baluster, balustrade; wharf,

wharfage; vassal, vassalage\_.

5. By the adding of \_kin, let, ling, ock, el, erel\_, or \_et\_: as, \_lamb,

lambkin; ring, ringlet; cross, crosslet; duck, duckling; hill, hillock;

run, runnel; cock, cockerel; pistol, pistolet; eagle, eaglet; circle,

circlet\_. All these denote little things, and are called diminutives.

6. By the addition of \_ist\_: as, \_psalm, psalmist; botany, botanist; dial,

dialist; journal, journalist.\_ These denote persons devoted to, or skilled

in, the subject expressed by the primitive.

7. By the prefixing of an adjective, or an other noun, so as to form a

compound word: as, \_foreman, broadsword, statesman, tradesman; bedside,

hillside, seaside; bear-berry, bear-fly, bear-garden; bear's-ear,

bear's-foot, goat's-beard\_.

8. By the adoption of a negative prefix to reverse the meaning: as, \_order,

disorder; pleasure, displeasure; consistency, inconsistency; capacity,

incapacity; observance, nonobservance; resistance, nonresistance; truth,

untruth; constraint, unconstraint\_.

9. By the use of the prefix \_counter\_, signifying \_against\_ or \_opposite\_:

as, \_attraction, counter-attraction; bond, counter-bond; current,

counter-current; movement, counter-movement\_.

10. By the addition of \_ess, ix, or ine\_, or the changing of masculines to

feminines so terminating: as, \_heir, heiress; prophet, prophetess; abbot,

abbess; governor, governess; testator, testatrix; hero, heroine\_.

II. Nouns are derived from \_Adjectives\_ in several different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_ness, ity, ship, dom\_, or \_hood\_: as, \_good, goodness;

real, reality; hard, hardship; wise, wisdom; free, freedom; false,

falsehood\_.

2. By the changing of \_t\_ into \_ce\_ or \_cy\_: as, \_radiant, radiance;

consequent, consequence; flagrant, flagrancy; current, currency;

discrepant, discrepance\_, or \_discrepancy\_.

3. By the changing of some of the letters, and the adding of \_t\_ or \_th\_:

as, \_long, length; broad, breadth; wide, width; high, height\_. The nouns

included under these three heads, generally denote abstract qualities, and

are called abstract nouns.

4. By the adding of \_ard\_: as, \_drunk, drunkard; dull, dullard\_. These

denote ill character.

5. By the adding of \_ist\_: as, \_sensual, sensualist; separate, separatist;

royal, royalist; fatal, fatalist\_. These denote persons devoted, addicted,

or attached, to something.

6. By the adding of \_a\_, the Latin ending of neuter plurals, to certain

proper adjectives in \_an\_: as, \_Miltonian, Miltoniana; Johnsonian,

Johnsoniana\_. These literally mean, \_Miltonian things, sayings\_, or

\_anecdotes\_, &c.; and are words somewhat fashionable with the journalists,

and are sometimes used for titles of books that refer to table-talk.

III. Nouns are derived from \_Verbs\_ in several different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_ment, ance, ence, ure\_, or \_age\_: as, \_punish,

punishment; abate, abatement; repent, repentance; condole, condolence;

forfeit, forfeiture; stow, stowage; equip, equipage; truck, truckage\_.

2. By a change of the termination of the verb, into \_se, ce, sion, tion,

ation\_, or \_ition\_: as, \_expand, expanse, expansion; pretend, pretence,

pretension; invent, invention; create, creation; omit, omission; provide,

provision; reform, reformation; oppose, opposition\_. These denote either

the act of doing, or the thing done.

3. By the adding of \_er\_ or \_or\_: as, \_hunt, hunter; write, writer;

collect, collector; assert, assertor; instruct, instructer\_, or

\_instructor\_. These generally denote the doer. To denote the person to whom

something is done, we sometimes form a derivative ending in \_ee\_: as,

\_promisee, mortgagee, appellee, consignee\_.

4. Nouns and Verbs are sometimes alike in orthography, but different in

pronunciation: as, a \_house\_, to \_house\_; a \_use\_, to \_use\_; a \_reb'el\_, to

\_rebel'\_; a \_rec'ord\_, to \_record'\_; a \_cem'ent\_, to \_cement'\_. Of such

pairs, it may often be difficult to say which word is the primitive.

5. In many instances, nouns and verbs are wholly alike as to form and

sound, and are distinguished by their sense and construction only: as,

\_love\_, to \_love; fear\_, to \_fear; sleep\_, to \_sleep\_;--to \_revise\_, a

\_revise\_; to \_rebuke\_, a \_rebuke\_. In these, we have but the same word used

differently.

IV. Nouns are often derived from \_Participles\_ in \_ing\_; as, a \_meeting\_,

the \_understanding, murmurings, disputings, sayings\_, and \_doings\_: and,

occasionally, one is formed from such a word and an adverb or a perfect

participle joined with it; as, "The \_turning-away\_,"--"His

\_goings-forth\_,"--"Your \_having-boasted\_ of it."

SECTION III.--DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

In \_English\_, Adjectives are derived from nouns, from adjectives, from

verbs, or from participles.

I. Adjectives are derived from \_Nouns\_ in several different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_ous, ious, eous, y, ey, ic, al, ical\_ or \_ine\_:

(sometimes with an omission or change of some of the final letters:) as,

\_danger, dangerous; glory, glorious; right, righteous; rock, rocky; clay,

clayey; poet, poetic\_, or \_poetical; nation, national; method, methodical;

vertex, vertical; clergy, clerical; adamant, adamantine\_. Adjectives thus

formed, generally apply the properties of their primitives, to the nouns to

which they relate.

2. By the adding of \_ful\_: as, \_fear, fearful; cheer, cheerful; grace,

graceful; shame, shameful; power, powerful\_. These come almost entirely

from personal qualities or feelings, and denote abundance.

3. By the adding of \_some\_: as, \_burden, burdensome; game, gamesome; toil,

toilsome\_. These denote plenty, but do not exaggerate.

4. By the adding of \_en\_: as, \_oak, oaken; silk, silken; wheat, wheaten;

oat, oaten; hemp, hempen\_. Here the derivative denotes the matter of which

something is made.

5. By the adding of \_ly\_ or \_ish\_: as, \_friend, friendly; gentleman,

gentlemanly; child, childish; prude, prudish\_. These denote resemblance.

The termination \_ly\_ signifies \_like\_.

6. By the adding of \_able\_ or \_ible\_: as, \_fashion, fashionable; access,

accessible\_. But these terminations are generally, and more properly, added

to verbs. See Obs. 17th, 18th, &c., on the Rules for Spelling.

7. By the adding of \_less\_: as, \_house, houseless; death, deathless; sleep,

sleepless; bottom, bottomless\_. These denote privation or exemption--the

absence of what is named by the primitive.

8. By the adding of \_ed\_: as, \_saint, sainted; bigot, bigoted; mast,

masted; wit, witted\_. These have a resemblance to participles, and some of

them are rarely used, except when joined with some other word to form a

compound adjective: as, \_three-sided, bare-footed, long-eared,

hundred-handed, flat-nosed, hard-hearted, marble-hearted, chicken-hearted\_.

9. Adjectives coming from proper names, take various terminations: as,

\_America, American; England, English; Dane, Danish; Portugal, Portuguese;

Plato, Platonic\_.

10. Nouns are often converted into adjectives, without change of

termination: as, \_paper\_ currency; a \_gold\_ chain; \_silver\_ knee-buckles.

II. Adjectives are derived from \_Adjectives\_ in several different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_ish\_ or \_some\_: as, \_white, whitish; green, greenish;

lone, lonesome; glad, gladsome\_. These denote quality with some diminution.

2. By the prefixing of \_dis, in\_, or \_un\_: as, \_honest, dishonest;

consistent, inconsistent; wise, unwise\_. These express a negation of the

quality denoted by their primitives.

3. By the adding of \_y\_ or \_ly\_: as, \_swarth, swarthy; good, goodly\_. Of

these there are but few; for almost all the derivatives of the latter form

are adverbs.

III. Adjectives are derived from \_Verbs\_ in several different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_able\_ or \_ible\_: (sometimes with a change of some of

the final letters:) as, \_perish, perishable; vary, variable; convert,

convertible; divide, divisible\_, or \_dividable\_. These, according to their

analogy, have usually a passive import, and denote susceptibility of

receiving action. 2. By the adding of \_ive\_ or \_ory\_: (sometimes with a

change of some of the final letters:) as, \_elect, elective; interrogate,

interrogative, interrogatory; defend, defensive; defame, defamatory;

explain, explanatory\_.

3. Words ending in \_ate\_, are mostly verbs; but some of them may be

employed as adjectives, in the same form, especially in poetry; as,

\_reprobate, complicate\_.

IV. Adjectives are derived from \_Participles\_, not by suffixes, but in

these ways:--

1. By the prefixing of \_un\_, meaning \_not\_; as, \_unyielding, unregarded,

unreserved, unendowed, unendeared, unendorsed, unencountered, unencumbered,

undisheartened, undishonoured\_. Of this sort there are very many.

2. By a combining of the participle with some word which does not belong to

the verb; as, \_way-faring, hollow-sounding, long-drawn, deep-laid,

dear-purchased, down-trodden\_. These, too, are numerous.

3. Participles often become adjectives without change of form. Such

adjectives are distinguished from participles by their construction alone:

as, "A \_lasting\_ ornament;"--"The \_starving\_ chymist;"--"Words of \_learned\_

length;"--"With \_counterfeited\_ glee."

SECTION IV.--DERIVATION OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. The \_English\_ Pronouns are all of \_Saxon\_ origin; but, in them, our

language differs very strikingly from that of the Anglo-Saxons. The

following table compares the simple personal forms:--

Eng. I, My or Me; We, Our or Us.

Mine, Ours,

Sax. Ic, Min, Me or We, Ure or Us.

Mec; User,

Eng. Thou, Thy or Thee; Ye, Your You.

Thine, or Yours,

Sax. Thu, Thin, The or Ge Eower, Eow or

Thec; Eowie.

Eng. He, His Him; They, Their or Them.

Theirs,

Sax. He, His or Him or Hi or Hira or Heom or

Hys, Hine; Hig, Heora, Hi.

Eng. She, Her or Her; They, Their or Them.

Hers, Theirs,

Sax. Heo, Hire or Hi; Hi or Hira or Heom or

Hyre, Hig, Heora, Hi.

Eng. It, Its, It; They, Their or Them.

Theirs,

Sax. Hit, His or Hit; Hi or Hira or Heom or

Hys, Hig, Heora, Hi.

Here, as in the personal pronouns of other languages, the plurals and

oblique cases do not all appear to be regular derivatives from the

nominative singular. Many of these pronouns, perhaps all, as well as a vast

number of other words of frequent use in our language, and in that from

which it chiefly comes, were very variously written by the Middle English,

Old English, Semi-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon authors. He who traces the history

of our language, will meet with them under all the following forms, (or

such as these would be with Saxon characters for the Saxon forms,) and

perhaps in more:--

1. I, J, Y, y, i, ay, ic, che, ich, Ic;--MY, mi, min, MINE, myne, myn;--ME,

mee, me, meh, mec, mech;--WE, wee, ve;--OUR or OURS, oure, ure, wer, urin,

uren, urne, user, usse, usser, usses, ussum;--Us, ous, vs, uss, usic,

usich, usig, usih, uz, huz.

2. THOU, thoue, thow, thowe, thu, tou, to, tu;--THY or THINE, thi, thyne,

thyn, thin;--THEE, the, theh, thec;--YE, yee, yhe, ze, zee, ge, ghe;--YOUR

or YOURS, youre, zour, hure, goure, yer, yower, yowyer, yorn, yourn, youre,

eower;--You, youe, yow, gou, zou, ou, iu, iuh, eow, iow, geow, eowih,

eowic, iowih.

3. HE, hee, hie, se;--His, hise, is, hys, ys, hyse, hus;--HIM, hine, hiene,

hion, hen, hyne, hym, im;--THEY, thay, thei, the, tha, thai, thii, yai, hi,

hie, heo, hig, hyg, hy;--THEIR or THEIRS, ther, theyr, theyrs, thair,

thare, theora, hare, here, her, hir, hire, hira, hiora, hiera, heora,

hyra;--THEM, thym, theym, thaym, thaim, thame, tham, em, hem, heom, hiom,

eom, hom, him, hi, hig.

4. SHE, shee, sche, scho, sho, shoe, scæ, seo, heo, hio, hiu, hoo,

hue;--HER, (possessive,) hur, hir, hire, hyr, hyre, hyra, hera;--HER,

(objective,) hire, hyre, hur, hir, hi. The plural forms of this feminine

pronoun are like those of the masculine \_He\_; but the "\_Well-Wishers to

Knowledge\_," in their small Grammar, (erroneously, as I suppose,) make

\_hira\_ masculine only, and \_heora\_ feminine only. See their \_Principles of

Grammar\_, p. 38.

5. IT, yt, itt, hit, hyt, hytt. The possessive \_Its\_ is a modern

derivative; \_His\_ or \_Hys\_ was formerly used in lieu of it. The plural

forms of this neuter pronoun, \_It\_, are like those of \_He\_ and \_She\_.

According to Horne Tooke, who declares \_hoet\_ to have been one of its

ancient forms, "this pronoun was merely the past participle of the verb

HAITAN, \_hætan\_, nominare," \_to name\_, and literally signifies "\_the

said\_;" (\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 46; \_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p.

57;) but Dr. Alexander Murray, exhibiting it in an other form, not adapted

to this opinion, makes it the neuter of a declinable adjective, or pronoun,

inflected from the masculine, thus: "He, heo hita, \_this\_"--\_Hist. of

Lang.\_, Vol. i, p. 315.

II. The relatives and interrogatives are derived from the same source, the

Anglo-Saxon tongue, and have passed through similar changes, or varieties

in orthography; but, the common relative pronoun of the Anglo-Saxons being

like their article \_the\_,--or, with the three genders, \_se, seo,

thæt\_,--and not like our \_who, which\_, and \_what\_, it is probable that the

interrogative use of these words was the primitive one. They have been

found in all the following forms:--

1. WHO, ho, hue, wha, hwa, hua, wua, qua, quha;--WHOSE, who's, whos, whois,

whoise, wheas, quhois, quhais, quhase, hwæs;--WHOM, whome, quham, quhum,

quhome, hwom, hwam, hwæm, hwæne, hwone.

2. WHICH, whiche, whyche, whilch, wych, quilch, quilk, quhilk, hwilc,

hwylc, hwelc, whilk, huilic, hvilc. For the Anglo-Saxon forms, Dr.

Bosworth's Dictionary gives "\_hwilc, hwylc\_, and \_hwelc\_;" but Professor

Fowler's E. Grammar makes them "\_huilic\_ and \_hvilc\_."--See p. 240.

\_Whilk\_, or \_quhilk\_, is a Scottish form.

3. WHAT, hwat, hwet, quhat, hwæt. This pronoun, whether relative or

interrogative, is regarded by Bosworth and others as a neuter derivative

from the masculine or femine [sic--KTH] \_hwa\_, who. It may have been thence

derived, but, in modern English, it is not always of the neuter gender. See

the last note on page 312.

4. THAT, Anglo-Saxon Thæt. Tooke's notion of the derivation of this word is

noticed above in the section on Articles. There is no certainty of its

truth; and our lexicographers make no allusion to it. W. Allen reaffirms

it. See his \_Gram.\_, p. 54.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--In the Well-Wishers' Grammar, (p. 39,) as also in L. Murray's and

some others, the pronoun \_Which\_ is very strangely and erroneously

represented as being always "of the \_neuter\_ gender." (See what is said of

this word in the Introduction, Chap. ix, ¶ 32.) Whereas it is the relative

most generally applied to \_brute animals\_, and, in our common version of

the Bible, its application to \_persons\_ is peculiarly frequent. Fowler

says, "In its origin it is a Compound."--\_E. Gram.\_, p. 240. Taking its

first Anglo-Saxon form to be "\_Huilic\_," he thinks it traceable to "\_hwa\_,

who," or its ablative "\_hwi\_," and "\_lie\_, like."--\_Ib.\_ If this is right,

the neuter sense is not its primitive import, or any part of it.

OBS. 2.--From its various uses, the word \_That\_ is called sometimes a

pronoun, sometimes an adjective, and sometimes a conjunction; but, in

respect to derivation, it is, doubtless, one and the same. As a relative

pronoun, it is of either number, and has no plural form different from the

singular; as, "Blessed is the \_man that\_ heareth me."--\_Prov.\_, viii, 34.

"Blessed are \_they that\_ mourn."--\_Matt.\_, v, 4. As an adjective, it is

said by Tooke to have been formerly "applied indifferently to plural nouns

and to singular; as, 'Into \_that\_ holy orders.'--\_Dr. Martin\_. 'At \_that\_

dayes.'--\_Id. 'That\_ euyll aungels the denilles.'--\_Sir Tho. More\_. 'This

pleasure undoubtedly farre excelleth all \_that\_ pleasures that in this life

maie be obteined.'--\_Id\_."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, pp. 47 and 48.

The introduction of the plural form \_those\_, must have rendered this usage

bad English.

SECTION V.--DERIVATION OF VERBS.

In English, Verbs are derived from nouns, from adjectives, or from verbs.

I. Verbs are derived from \_Nouns\_ in the following different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_ize, ise, en\_, or \_ate\_: as, \_author, authorize;

critic, criticise; length, lengthen; origin, originate\_. The termination

\_ize\_ is of Greek origin, and \_ise\_ is most probably of French: the former

is generally preferable in forming English derivatives; but both are

sometimes to be used, and they should be applied according to Rule 13th for

Spelling.

2. Some few verbs are derived from nouns by the changing of a sharp or hard

consonant to a flat or soft one, or by the adding of a mute \_e\_, to soften

a hard sound: as, \_advice, advise; price, prize; bath, bathe; cloth,

clothe; breath, breathe; wreath, wreathe; sheath, sheathe; grass, graze\_.

II. Verbs are derived from \_Adjectives\_ in the following different ways:--

1. By the adding of \_ize\_ or \_en\_: as \_legal, legalize; immortal,

immortalize; civil, civilize; human, humanize; familiar, familiarize;

particular, particularize; deaf, deafen; stiff, stiffen; rough, roughen;

deep, deepen; weak, weaken\_.

2. Many adjectives become verbs by being merely used and inflected as

verbs: as, \_warm\_, to \_warm\_, he \_warms; dry\_, to \_dry\_, he \_dries; dull\_,

to \_dull\_, he \_dulls; slack\_, to \_slack\_, he \_slacks; forward\_, to

\_forward\_, he \_forwards\_.

III. Verbs are derived from \_Verbs\_ in the following modes, or ways:--

1. By the prefixing of \_dis\_ or \_un\_ to reverse the meaning: as, \_please,

displease; qualify, disqualify; organize, disorganize; fasten, unfasten;

muzzle, unmuzzle; nerve, unnerve\_.

2. By the prefixing of \_a, be, for, fore, mis, over, out, under, up\_, or

\_with\_: as, \_rise, arise; sprinkle, besprinkle; bid, forbid; see, foresee;

take, mistake; look, overlook; run, outrun; go, undergo; hold, uphold;

draw, withdraw\_.

SECTION VI.--DERIVATION OF PARTICIPLES.

All \_English\_ Participles are derived from \_English\_ verbs, in the manner

explained in Chapter 7th, under the general head of Etymology; and when

foreign participles are introduced into our language, they are not

participles with us, but belong to some other class of words, or part of

speech.

SECTION VII.--DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

1. In \_English\_, many Adverbs are derived from adjectives by the addition

of \_ly\_: which is an abbreviation for \_like\_, and which, though the

addition of it to a noun forms an adjective, is the most distinctive as

well as the most common termination of our adverbs: as, \_candid, candidly;

sordid, sordidly; presumptuous, presumptuously\_. Most adverbs of manner are

thus formed.

2. Many adverbs are compounds formed from two or more English words; as,

\_herein, thereby, to-day, always, already, elsewhere, sometimes,

wherewithal\_. The formation and the meaning of these are, in general,

sufficiently obvious.

3. About seventy adverbs are formed by means of the prefix, or inseparable

preposition, \_a\_; as, \_Abreast, abroach, abroad, across, afar, afield, ago,

agog, aland, along, amiss, atilt\_.

4. \_Needs\_, as an adverb, is a contraction of \_need is; prithee\_, or

\_pr'ythee\_, of \_I pray thee; alone\_, of \_all one; only\_, of \_one-like;

anon\_, of the Saxon \_an on\_; i.e., \_in one\_ [instant]; \_never\_, of \_ne

ever\_; i.e., \_not\_ ever. Prof. Gibbs, in Fowler's Grammar, makes \_needs\_

"the Genitive case of the noun \_need\_."--P. 311.

5. \_Very\_ is from the French \_veray\_, or \_vrai\_, true; and this, probably,

from the Latin \_verus. Rather\_ appears to be the regular comparative of the

ancient \_rath\_, soon, quickly, willingly; which comes from the \_Anglo-Saxon

"Rathe\_, or \_Hrathe\_, of one's own accord."--\_Bosworth\_. But the parent

language had also "\_Hrathre\_, to a mind."--\_Id.\_ That is, to \_one's\_ mind,

or, perhaps, \_more willingly\_.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1.--Many of our most common adverbs are of Anglo-Saxon derivation,

being plainly traceable to certain very old forms, of the same import,

which the etymologist regards but as the same words differently spelled:

as, \_All\_, eall, eal, or æll; \_Almost\_, ealmæst, or ælmæst; \_Also\_, ealswa,

or ælswa; \_Else\_, elles; \_Elsewhere\_, elleshwær; \_Enough\_, genog, or genoh;

\_Even\_, euen, efen, or æfen; \_Ever\_, euer, æfer, or æfre; \_Downward\_,

duneweard; \_Forward\_, forweard, or foreweard; \_Homeward\_, hamweard;

\_Homewards\_, hamweardes; \_How\_, hu; \_Little\_, lytel; \_Less\_, læs; \_Least\_,

læst; \_No\_, na; \_Not\_, noht, or nocht; \_Out\_, ut, or ute; \_So\_, swa;

\_Still\_, stille, or stylle; \_Then\_, thenne; \_There\_, ther, thar, thær;

\_Thither\_, thider, or thyder; \_Thus\_, thuss, or thus; \_Together\_, togædere,

or togædre; \_Too\_, tó; \_When\_, hwenne, or hwænne; \_Where\_, hwær; \_Whither\_,

hwider, hwyder, or hwyther; \_Yea\_, ia, gea, or gee; \_Yes\_, gese, gise, or

gyse.

OBS. 2.--According to Horne Tooke, "\_Still\_ and \_Else\_ are the imperatives

\_Stell\_ and \_Ales\_ of their respective verbs \_Stellan\_, to put, and

\_Alesan\_, to dismiss."--\_Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 111. He afterwards repeats

the doctrine thus: "\_Still\_ is only the imperative \_Stell\_ or \_Steall\_, of

\_Stellan\_ or \_Steallian\_, ponere."--\_Ib.\_, p. 146. "This word \_Else\_,

formerly written \_alles, alys, alyse, elles, ellus, ellis, ells, els\_, and

now \_else\_; is, as I have said, no other than \_Ales\_ or \_Alys\_, the

imperative of \_Alesan\_ or \_Alysan\_, dimittere."--\_Ib.\_, p. 148. These

ulterior and remote etymologies are perhaps too conjectural.

SECTION VIII.--DERIVATION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

The \_English\_ Conjunctions are mostly of Anglo-Saxon origin. The best

etymological vocabularies of our language give us, for the most part, the

same words in Anglo-Saxon characters; but Horne Tooke, in his \_Diversions

of Purley\_, (a learned and curious work which the advanced student may

peruse with advantage,) traces, or professes to trace, these and many other

English particles, to \_Saxon verbs\_ or \_participles\_. The following

derivations, so far as they partake of such speculations, are offered

principally on his authority:--

1. ALTHOUGH, signifying \_admit, allow\_, is from \_all\_ and \_though\_; the

latter being supposed the imperative of Thafian or Thafigan, \_to allow, to

concede, to yield\_.

2. AN, an obsolete or antiquated conjunction, signifying \_if\_, or \_grant\_,

is the imperative of the Anglo-Saxon verb Anan or Unan, \_to grant, to

give\_.

3. AND, [Saxon, And,] \_add\_, is said by Tooke to come from "An-ad, the

imperative of Ananad, \_Dare congeriem\_."--\_D. of P.\_, Vol. i, p. 111. That

is, "\_To give the heap\_." The truth of this, if unapparent, I must leave

so.

4. AS, according to Dr. Johnson, is from the Teutonic \_als\_; but Tooke says

that \_als\_ itself is a contraction for \_all\_ and the original particle \_es\_

or \_as\_, meaning \_it, that\_, or \_which\_.

5. BECAUSE, from \_be\_ and \_cause\_, means \_by cause\_; the \_be\_ being written

for \_by\_.

6. BOTH, \_the two\_, is from the pronominal adjective \_both\_; which,

according to Dr. Alexander Murray, is a contraction of the Visigothic

\_Bagoth\_, signifying \_doubled\_. The Anglo-Saxons wrote for it \_butu, butwu,

buta\_, and \_batwa\_; i. e., \_ba\_, both, \_twa\_, two.

7. BUT,--(in Saxon, \_bute, butan, buton\_, or \_butun\_--) meaning \_except,

yet, now, only, else than, that not\_, or \_on the contrary\_,--is referred by

Tooke and some others, to two roots,--each of them but a conjectural etymon

for it. "BUT, implying \_addition\_," say they, "is from Bot, the imperative

of Botan, \_to boot, to add\_; BUT, denoting \_exception\_, is from Be-utan,

the imperative of Beon-utan, \_to be out\_."--See \_D. of P.\_, Vol. i, pp. 111

and 155.

8. EITHER, \_one of the two\_, like the pronominal adjective EITHER, is from

the Anglo-Saxon Æther, or Egther, a word of the same uses, and the same

import.

9. EKE, \_also\_, (now nearly obsolete,) is from "Eac, the imperative of

Eacan, \_to add\_."

10. EVEN, whether a noun, an adjective, an adverb, or a conjunction,

appears to come from the same source, the Anglo-Saxon word Efen or Æfen.

11. EXCEPT, which, when used as a conjunction, means \_unless\_, is the

imperative, or (according to Dr. Johnson) an ancient perfect participle, of

the verb \_to except\_.

12. FOR, \_because\_, is from the Saxon preposition \_For\_; which, to express

this meaning, our ancestors combined with something else, reducing to one

word some such phrase as, \_For that, For this, For this that\_; as, "Fortha,

Fortham, Forthan, Forthamthe, Forthan the."--See \_Bosworth's Dict.\_

13. IF, \_give, grant, allow\_, is from "Gif, the imperative of the

Anglo-Saxon Gifan, \_to give\_."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 111.

14. LEST, \_that not, dismissed\_, is from "Lesed, the perfect participle of

Lesan, \_to dismiss\_."

15. NEITHER, \_not either\_, is a union and contraction of \_ne either\_: our

old writers frequently used \_ne\_ for \_not\_; the Anglo-Saxons likewise

repeated it, using \_ne--ne\_, in lieu of our corresponsives \_neither--nor\_;

and our modern lexicographers still note the word, in some of these senses.

16. NOR, \_not other, not else\_, is supposed to be a union and contraction

of \_ne or\_.

17. NOTWITHSTANDING, \_not hindering\_, is an English compound of obvious

formation.

18. OR, an alternative conjunction, seems to be a word of no great

antiquity. It is supposed to be a contraction of \_other\_, which Johnson and

his followers give, in Saxon characters, either as its source, or as its

equivalent.

19. PROVIDED, the perfect participle of the verb \_provide\_, becomes

occasionally a disjunctive conjunction, by being used alone or with the

particle \_that\_, to introduce a condition, a saving clause, a proviso.

20. SAVE, anciently used with some frequency as a conjunction, in the sense

of \_but\_, or except is from the imperative of the English verb \_save\_, and

is still occasionally turned to such a use by the poets.

21. SEEING, sometimes made a copulative conjunction, is the imperfect

participle of the verb \_see\_. Used at the head of a clause, and without

reference to an agent, it assumes a conjunctive nature.

22. SINCE is conjectured by Tooke to be "the participle of Seon, \_to see\_,"

and to mean "\_seeing, seeing that, seen that\_, or \_seen as\_."--\_Diversions

of P.\_, Vol. i, pp. 111 and 220. But Johnson and others say, it has been

formed "by contraction from \_sithence\_, or \_sith thence\_, from \_sithe\_,

Sax."--\_Joh. Dict.\_

23. THAN, which introduces the latter term of a comparison, is from the

Gothic \_than\_, or the Anglo-Saxon \_thanne\_, which was used for the same

purpose. 24. THAT, when called a conjunction, is said by Tooke to be

etymologically the same as the adjective or pronoun THAT, the derivation of

which is twice spoken of above; but, in Todd's Johnson's Dictionary, as

abridged by Chalmers, THAT, the \_conjunction\_, is referred to "\_thatei\_,

Gothic;" THAT, the \_pronoun\_, to "\_that, thata\_, Gothic; \_thæt\_, Saxon;

\_dat\_, Dutch."

25. THEN, used as a conjunction, is doubtless the same word as the

Anglo-Saxon \_Thenne\_, taken as an illative, or word of inference.

26. "THOUGH, \_allow\_, is [from] the imperative Thaf, or Thafig, of the verb

Thafian or Thafigan, \_to allow\_."--\_Tooke's Diversions\_, Vol. i, pp. 111

and 150.

27. "UNLESS, \_except, dismiss\_, is [from] Onles, the imperative of Onlesan,

\_to dismiss\_."--\_Ib.\_

28. WHETHER, a corresponsive conjunction, which introduces the first term

of an alternative, is from the Anglo-Saxon \_hwæther\_, which was used for

the same purpose.

29. YET, \_nevertheless\_, is from "Get, the imperative of Getan, \_to

get\_."--\_Tooke\_.

SECTION IX.--DERIVATION OF PREPOSITIONS.

The following are the principal \_English\_ Prepositions, explained in the

order of the list:--

1. ABOARD, meaning \_on board of\_, is from the prefix or preposition \_a\_ and

the noun \_board\_, which here means "\_the deck\_ of a ship" or vessel.

\_Abord\_, in French, is \_approach, arrival\_, or a \_landing\_.

2. ABOUT, [Sax. Abútan, or Abúton,] meaning \_around, at circuit\_, or

\_doing\_, is from the prefix \_a\_, meaning \_at\_, and the noun \_bout\_, meaning

a \_turn\_, a \_circuit\_, or a \_trial\_. In French, \_bout\_ means end; and

\_about, end\_, or \_but-end\_.

3. ABOVE, [Sax. Abufan, Abufon, A-be-ufan.] meaning \_over\_, or, literally,

\_at-by-over\_, or \_at-by-top\_, is from the Saxon or Old English \_a, be\_, and

\_ufa\_, or \_ufan\_, said to mean "\_high, upwards\_, or \_the top\_."

4. ACROSS, \_at cross, athwart, traverse\_, is from the prefix \_a\_ and the

word \_cross\_.

5. AFTER, [Sax. Æfter, or Æftan,] meaning \_behind, subsequent to\_, is, in

form, the comparative of \_aft\_, a word common to seamen, and it may have

been thence derived.

6. AGAINST, \_opposite to\_, is probably from the Anglo-Saxon, Ongean, or

Ongegen, each of which forms means \_again\_ or \_against\_. As prefixes, \_on\_

and \_a\_ are often equivalent.

7. ALONG, [i.e., \_at-long\_,] meaning \_lengthwise of, near to\_, is formed

from \_a\_ and \_long\_.

8. AMID, [i. e., \_at mid\_ or \_middle\_,] is from \_a\_ and \_mid\_; and AMIDST

[, i.e., \_at midst\_,] is from \_a\_ and \_midst\_, contracted from \_middest\_,

the superlative of \_mid\_.

9. AMONG, \_mixed with\_, is probably an abbreviation of \_amongst\_; and

AMONGST, according to Tooke, is from \_a\_ and \_mongst\_, or the older

"Ge-meneged," Saxon for "\_mixed, mingled\_."

10. AROUND, \_about, encircling\_, is from \_a\_ and \_round\_, a circle, or

circuit.

11. AT, \_gone to\_, is supposed by some to come from the Latin \_ad\_; but Dr.

Murray says, "We have in Teutonic AT for AGT, touching or touched, joined,

\_at\_."--\_Hist. of Lang.\_, i, 349.

12. ATHWART, \_across\_, is from \_a\_ and \_thwart\_, cross; and this from the

Saxon Thweor.

13. BATING, a preposition for \_except\_, is the imperfect participle of

\_bate\_, to abate.

14. BEFORE, [i.e., \_by-fore\_,] in front of, is from the prefix \_be\_ and the

adjective \_fore\_.

15. BEHIND, [i.e., \_by-hind\_,] in rear of, is from the prefix \_be\_ and the

adjective \_hind\_.

16. BELOW, [i.e., \_by-low\_,] meaning \_under\_, or \_beneath\_, is from \_be\_

and the adjective \_low\_.

17. BENEATH [, Sax. or Old Eng. Beneoth,] is from \_be\_ and \_neath\_, or Sax.

Neothe, \_low\_.

18. BESIDE [, i.e., \_by-side\_,] is probably from \_be\_ and the noun or

adjective \_side\_.

19. BESIDES [, i.e., \_by-sides\_,] is probably from \_be\_ and the plural noun

\_sides\_.

20. BETWEEN, [Sax. Betweonan, or Betwynan,] literally, \_by-twain\_, seems to

have been formed from \_be\_, by, and \_twain\_, two--or the Saxon Twegen,

which also means \_two, twain\_.

21. BETWIXT, meaning \_between\_, [Sax. Betweox, Betwux, Betwyx, Betwyxt,

&c.,] is from \_be\_, by, and \_twyx\_, originally a "Gothic" word signifying

"\_two\_, or \_twain\_."--See \_Tooke\_, Vol. i, p. 329.

22. BEYOND, \_past\_, [Sax. Begeond,] is from the prefix \_be\_, by, and

\_yond\_, [Sax. Geond,] \_past, far\_.

23. BY [, Sax. Be, Bi, or Big,] is affirmed by Tooke to be "the imperative

Byth, of the Anglo-Saxon verb Beon, \_to be\_."--\_Diversions of P.\_, Vol. i,

p. 326. This seems to be rather questionable.

24. CONCERNING, the preposition, is from the first participle of the verb

\_concern\_.

25. DOWN, the preposition, is from the Anglo-Saxon Dune, down.

26. DURING, prep. of time, is from the first participle of an old verb

\_dure\_, to last, formerly in use; as, "While the world may

\_dure\_."--\_Chaucer's Knight's Tale\_.

27. ERE, \_before\_, prep. of time, is from the Anglo-Saxon Ær, a word of

like sort.

28. EXCEPT, \_bating\_, is from the imperative, or (according to Dr. Johnson)

the ancient perfect participle of the verb \_to except\_; and EXCEPTING, when

a preposition, is from the first participle of the same verb.

29. FOR, \_because of\_, is the Anglo-Saxon preposition For, a word of like

import, and supposed by Tooke to have come from a Gothic noun signifying

\_cause\_, or \_sake\_.

30. FROM, in Saxon, \_Fram\_, is probably derived from the old adjective

Frum, \_original\_.

31. IN, or the Saxon In, is the same as the Latin \_in\_: the Greek is

[Greek: en]; and the French, \_en\_.

32. INTO, like the Saxon Into, noting entrance, is a compound of \_in\_ and

\_to\_.

33. MID and MIDST, as English prepositions, are poetical forms used for

\_Amid\_ and \_Amidst\_.

34. NOTWITHSTANDING, \_not hindering\_, is from the adverb \_not\_, and the

participle \_withstanding\_, which, by itself, means \_hindering\_, or

\_preventing\_. 35. OF is from the Saxon Of, or Af; which is supposed by

Tooke to come from a noun signifying \_offspring\_.

36. OFF, opposed to \_on\_, Dr. Johnson derives from the "Dutch \_af\_."

37. ON, a word very often used in Anglo-Saxon, is traced by some

etymologists to the Gothic \_ana\_, the German \_an\_, the Dutch \_aan\_; but no

such derivation fixes its meaning.

38. OUT, [Sax. Ut, Ute, or Utan,] when made a preposition, is probably from

the adverb or adjective \_Out\_, or the earlier \_Ut\_; and OUT-OF, [Sax.

Ut-of,] opposed to \_Into\_, is but the adverb \_Out\_ and the preposition

\_Of\_--usually written separately, but better joined, in some instances.

39. OVER, \_above\_, is from the Anglo-Saxon Ofer, \_over\_; and this,

probably, from Ufa, \_above, high\_, or from the comparative, Ufera,

\_higher\_.

40. OVERTHWART, meaning \_across\_, is a compound of \_over\_ and \_thwart\_,

cross.

41. PAST, \_beyond, gone by\_, is a contraction from the perfect participle

\_passed\_.

42. PENDING, \_during\_ or \_hanging\_, has a participial form, but is either

an adjective or a preposition: we do not use \_pend\_ alone as a verb, though

we have it in \_depend\_.

43. RESPECTING, \_concerning\_, is from the first participle of the verb

\_respect\_.

44. ROUND, a preposition for \_about\_ or \_around\_, is from the noun or

adjective \_round\_.

45. SINCE is most probably a contraction of the old word \_Sithence\_; but is

conjectured by Tooke to have been formed from the phrase, "\_Seen as\_."

46. THROUGH [, Sax. Thurh, or Thurch,] seems related to \_Thorough\_, Sax.

Thuruh; and this again to Thuru, or Duru, a \_Door\_.

47. THROUGHOUT, \_quite through\_, is an obvious compond of \_through\_ and

\_out\_.

48. TILL, [Sax. Til or Tille,] \_to, until\_, is from the Saxon Til or Till,

\_an end, a station\_.

49. TO, whether a preposition or an adverb, is from the Anglo-Saxon

particle To.

50. TOUCHING, \_with regard to\_, is from the first participle of the verb

\_touch\_.

51. TOWARD or TOWARDS, written by the Anglo-Saxons \_Toweard\_ or

\_Toweardes\_, is a compound of \_To\_ and \_Ward\_ or \_Weard\_, a guard, a

look-out; "Used in composition to express \_situation\_ or

\_direction\_."--\_Bosworth\_.

52. UNDER, [Gothic, Undar; Dutch, Onder,] \_beneath, below\_, is a common

Anglo-Saxon word, and very frequent prefix, affirmed by Tooke to be

"nothing but \_on-neder\_," a Dutch compound = \_on lower\_.--See \_Diversions

of Purley\_, Vol. i, p. 331.

53. UNDERNEATH is a compound of \_under\_ and \_neath\_, low; whence \_nether\_,

lower.

54. UNTIL is a compound from \_on\_ or \_un\_, and till, or \_til\_, the end.

55. UNTO, now somewhat antiquated, is formed, not very analogically, from

\_un\_ and \_to\_.

56. UP is from the Anglo-Saxon adjective, "Up or Upp, \_high, lofty\_."

57. UPON, which appears literally to mean \_high on\_, is from two words \_up\_

and \_on\_.

58. WITH comes to us from the Anglo-Saxon With, a word of like sort and

import; which Tooke says is an imperative verb, sometimes from "Withan, \_to

join\_," and sometimes from "Wyrthan, \_to be\_."--See his \_Diversions\_, Vol.

i, p. 262.

59. WITHIN [, i.e., \_by-in\_,] is from \_with\_ and \_in\_: Sax. Withinnan,

Binnan, or Binnon.

60. WITHOUT [, i.e., \_by-out\_,] is from \_with\_ and \_out\_: Sax. Withútan,

-úten, -úton; Bútan, Búton, Bútun.

OBSERVATION.

In regard to some of our minor or simpler prepositions, as of sundry other

particles, to go beyond the forms and constructions which present or former

usage has at some period given them as particles, and to ascertain their

actual origin in something ulterior, if such they had, is no very easy

matter; nor can there be either satisfaction or profit in studying what one

suspects to be mere guesswork. "How do you account for IN, OUT, ON, OFF,

and AT?" says the friend of Tooke, in an etymological dialogue at Purley.

The substance of his answer is, "The explanation and etymology of these

words require a degree of knowledge in all the \_antient\_ northern

languages, and a skill in the application of that knowledge, which I am

very far from assuming; and though I am almost persuaded by some of my own

conjectures concerning them, I am not willing, by an apparently forced and

far-fetched derivation, to justify your imputation of etymological

legerdemain."--\_Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 370.

SECTION X.--DERIVATION OF INTERJECTIONS.

Those significant and constructive words which are occasionally used as

Interjections, (such as \_Good! Strange! Indeed\_!,) do not require an

explanation here; and those mere sounds which are in no wise expressive of

thought, scarcely admit of definition or derivation. The Interjection HEY

is probably a corruption of the adjective \_High\_;--ALAS is from the French

\_Hélas\_:--ALACK is probably a corruption of \_Alas\_;--WELAWAY or WELLAWAY,

(which is now corrupted into WELLADAY,) is said by some to be from the

Anglo-Saxon \_Wá-lá-wá\_, i.e., \_Wo-lo-wo\_;--"FIE," says Tooke, "is the

imperative of the Gothic and Anglo-Saxon verb \_Fian\_, to hate;"--\_Heyday\_

is probably from \_high day\_;--AVAUNT, perhaps from the French \_avant\_,

before;--LO, from \_look\_;--BEGONE, from \_be\_ and \_gone\_;--WELCOME, from

\_well\_ and \_come\_;--FAREWELL, from \_fare\_ and \_well\_.

SECTION XI--EXPLANATION OF THE PREFIXES.

In the formation of English words, certain particles are often employed as

prefixes; which, as they generally have some peculiar import, may be

separately explained. A few of them are of Anglo-Saxon origin, or

character; and the greater part of these are still employed as separate

words in our language. The rest are Latin, Greek, or French prepositions.

The \_roots\_ to which they are prefixed, are not always proper English

words. Those which are such, are called SEPARABLE RADICALS; those which are

not such, INSEPARABLE RADICALS.

CLASS I--THE ENGLISH OR ANGLO-SAXON PREFIXES.

1. A, as an English prefix, signifies \_on, in, at\_, or \_to\_: as in

\_a-board, a-shore, a-foot, a-bed, a-soak, a-tilt, a-slant, a-far, a-field\_;

which are equal to the phrases, \_on board, on shore, on foot, in bed, in

soak, at tilt, at slant, to a distance, to the fields\_. The French \_à\_, to,

is probably the same particle. This prefix is sometimes redundant, adding

little or nothing to the meaning; as in \_awake, arise, amend\_.

2. BE, as a prefix, signifies \_upon, over, by, to, at\_, or \_for\_: as in

\_be-spatter, be-cloud, be-times, be-tide, be-howl, be-speak\_. It is

sometimes redundant, or merely intensive; as in \_be-gird, be-deck,

be-loved, be-dazzle, be-moisten, be-praise, be-quote\_.

3. COUNTER, an English prefix, allied to the French \_Contre\_, and the Latin

\_Contra\_, means \_against\_, or \_opposite\_; as in \_counter-poise,

counter-evidence, counter-natural\_.

4. FOR, as a prefix, unlike the common preposition \_For\_, seems generally

to signify \_from\_: it is found in the irregular verbs \_for-bear, for-bid,

for-get, for-give, for-sake, for-swear\_; and in \_for-bathe, for-do,

for-pass, for-pine, for-say, for-think, for-waste\_, which last are now

disused, the \_for\_ in several being merely intensive.

5. FORE, prefixed to a verb, signifies \_before\_; as in \_fore-know,

fore-tell\_: prefixed to a noun, it is usually an adjective, and signifies

anterior; as in \_fore-side, fore-part\_.

6. HALF, signifying \_one of two equal parts\_, is much used in composition;

and, often, merely to denote imperfection: as, \_half-sighted\_, seeing

imperfectly.

7. MIS signifies \_wrong\_ or \_ill\_; as in \_mis-cite, mis-print, mis-spell,

mis-chance, mis-hap\_.

8. OVER denotes superiority or excess; as in \_over-power, over-strain,

over-large\_.

9. OUT, prefixed to a verb, generally denotes excess; as in \_out-do,

out-leap, out-poise\_: prefixed to a noun, it is an adjective, and signifies

\_exterior\_; as in \_out-side, out-parish\_.

10. SELF generally signifies one's own person, or belonging to one's own

person; but, in \_self-same\_, it means \_very\_. We have many words beginning

with \_Self\_, but most of them seem to be compounds rather than derivatives;

as, \_self-love, self-abasement, self-abuse, self-affairs, self-willed,

self-accusing\_.

11. UN denotes negation or contrariety; as in \_un-kind, un-load, un-truth,

un-coif\_.

12. UNDER denotes inferiority; as in \_under-value, under-clerk,

under-growth\_.

13. UP denotes motion upwards; as in \_up-lift\_: sometimes subversion; as in

\_up-set\_.

14. WITH, as a prefix, unlike the common preposition \_With\_, signifies

\_against, from\_, or \_back\_; as in \_with-stand, with-hold, with-draw,

with-stander, with-holdment, with-drawal\_.

CLASS II.--THE LATIN PREFIXES.

The primitives or radicals to which these are prefixed, are not many of

them employed separately in English. The final letter of the prefix \_Ad,

Con, Ex, In, Ob\_, or \_Sub\_, is often changed before certain consonants; not

capriciously, but with uniformity, to adapt or assimilate it to the sound

which follows.

1. A, AB, or ABS, means From, or Away: as, \_a-vert\_, to turn from, or away;

\_ab-duce\_, to lead from; \_ab-duction\_, a carrying-away; \_ab-stract\_, to

draw from, or away.

2. AD,--forming \_ac, af, al, an, ap, as, at\_,--means To, or At: as,

\_ad-vert\_, to turn to; \_ac-cord\_, to yield to; \_af-flux\_, a flowing-to;

\_al-ly\_, to bind to; \_an-nex\_, to link to; \_ap-ply\_, to put to; \_as-sume\_,

to take to; \_at-test\_, to witness to; \_ad-mire\_, to wonder at.

3. ANTE means Fore, or Before: as, \_ante-past\_, a fore-taste;

\_ante-cedent\_, foregoing, or going before; \_ante-mundane\_, before the

world; \_ante-date\_, to date before.

4. CIRCUM means Round, Around, or About: as \_circum-volve\_, to roll round;

\_circum-scribe\_, to write round; \_circum-vent\_, to come round;

\_circum-spect\_, looking about one's self.

5. CON,--which forms \_com, co, col, cor\_,--means Together: as, \_con-tract\_,

to draw together; \_compel\_, to drive together; \_co-erce\_, to force

together; \_col-lect\_, to gather together; \_cor-rade\_, to rub or scrape

together; \_con-junction\_, a joining-together.

6. CONTRA, or CONTRO, means Against, or Counter: as, \_contra-dict\_, to

speak against; \_contra-vene\_, to come against; \_contra-mure\_, countermure;

\_contro-vert\_, to turn against.

7. DE means Of, From, or Down: as, \_de-note\_, to be a sign of; \_de-tract\_,

to draw from; \_de-pend\_, to hang down; \_de-press\_, to press down;

\_de-crease\_, to grow down, to grow less.

8. DIS, or DI, means Away, or Apart: as, \_dis-pel\_, to drive away;

\_dis-sect\_, to cut apart; \_di-vert\_, to turn away.

9. E, or Ex,--making also \_ec, ef\_,--means Out: as, \_e-ject\_, to cast out;

\_e-lect\_, to choose out; \_ex-clude\_, to shut out; \_ex-cite\_, to summon out;

\_ec-stacy\_, a raising out; \_ef-face\_, to blot out.

10. EXTRA means Beyond, or Out of: as, \_extra-vagant\_, syllabled

\_ex-trav'a-gant\_, roving be-yond; \_extra-vasate, ex-trav'a-sate\_, to flow

out of the vessels; \_extra-territorial\_, being out of the territory.

11. IN,--which makes also \_il, im, ir\_,--means In, Into, or Upon: as,

\_in-spire\_, to breathe in; \_il-lude\_, to draw in by deceit; \_im-mure\_, to

wall in; \_ir-ruption\_, a rushing in; \_in-spect\_, to look into; \_in-scribe\_,

to write upon; \_in-sult\_, to jump upon. These syllables, prefixed, to

English nouns or adjectives, generally reverse their meaning; as in

\_in-justice, il-legality, im-partiality, ir-religion, ir-rational,

in-secure, in-sane\_.

12. INTER means Between, or In between: as, \_inter-sperse\_, to scatter in

between; \_inter-jection\_, something thrown in between; \_inter-jacent\_,

lying between; \_inter-communication\_, communication between.

13. INTRO means In, Inwards, or Within: as, \_intro-duce\_, to lead in;

\_intro-vert\_, to turn inwards; \_intro-spect\_, to look within;

\_intro-mission\_, a sending-in.

14. OB,--which makes also \_oc, of, op\_,--means Against: as, \_ob-trude\_, to

thrust against; \_oc-cur\_, to run against; \_of-fer\_, to bring against;

\_op-pose\_, to place against; \_ob-ject\_, to cast against.

15. PER means Through or By: as, \_per-vade\_, to go through; \_per-chance\_,

by chance; \_per-cent\_, by the hundred; \_per-plex\_, to tangle through, or to

entangle thoroughly.

16. POST means After: as, \_post-pone\_, to place after; \_post-date\_, to date

after.

17. PRÆ, or PRE, means Before: as, \_pre-sume\_, to take before;

\_pre-position\_, a placing-before, or thing placed before; \_præ-cognita\_,

things known before.

18. PRO means For, Forth, or Forwards: as, \_pro-vide\_, to take care for;

\_pro-duce\_, to bring forth; \_pro-trude\_, to thrust forwards; \_pro-ceed\_, to

go forward; \_pro-noun\_, for a noun.

19. PRETER means By, Past, or Beyond: as, \_preter-it\_, bygone, or gone by;

\_preter-imperfect\_, past imperfect; \_preter-natural\_, beyond what is

natural; \_preter-mit\_, to put by, to omit.

20. RE means Again or Back: as, \_re-view\_, to view again; \_re-pel\_, to

drive back.

21. RETRO means Backwards, Backward, or Back: as, \_retro-active\_, acting

backwards; \_retro-grade\_, going backward; \_retro-cede\_, to cede back again.

22. SE means Aside or Apart: as, \_se-duce\_, to lead aside; \_se-cede\_, to go

apart.

23. SEMI means Half: as, \_semi-colon\_, half a colon; \_semi-circle\_, half a

circle.

24. SUB,--which makes \_suf, sug, sup, sur\_, and \_sus\_,--means Under, and

sometimes Up: as, \_sub-scribe\_, to write under; \_suf-fossion\_, an

undermining; \_sug-gest\_, to convey under; \_sup-ply\_, to put under;

\_sur-reption\_, a creeping-under; \_sus-tain\_, to hold up; \_sub-ject\_, cast

under.

25. SUBTER means Beneath: as, \_subter-fluous\_, flowing beneath.

26. SUPER means Over or Above: as, \_super-fluous\_, flowing over;

\_super-natant\_, swimming above; \_super-lative\_, carried over, or carrying

over; \_super-vise\_, to overlook, to oversee.

27. TRANS,--whence TRAN and TRA,--means Beyond, Over, To another state or

place: as, \_trans-gress\_, to pass beyond or over; \_trans-cend\_, to climb

over; \_trans-mit\_ to send to an other place; \_trans-form\_, to change to an

other shape; \_tra-montane\_, from beyond the mountains; i.e.,

\_Trans-Alpine\_, as opposed to \_Cis-Alpine\_.

CLASS III.--THE GREEK PREFIXES.

1. A and AN, in Greek derivatives, denote privation: as, \_a-nomalous\_,

wanting rules; \_an-ony-mous\_, wanting name; \_an-archy\_, want of government;

\_a-cephalous\_, headless.

2. AMPHI means Two, Both, or Double: as, \_amphi-bious\_, living in two

elements; \_amphi-brach\_, both [sides] short; \_amphi-theatre\_, a double

theatre.

3. ANTI means Against: as, \_anti-slavery\_, against slavery; \_anti-acid\_,

against acidity; \_anti-febrile\_, against fever; \_anti-thesis\_, a

placing-against.

4. APO, APH,--From: as, \_apo-strophe\_, a turning-from; \_aph-aeresis\_, a

taking from.

5. DIA,--Through: as, \_dia-gonal\_, through the corners; \_dia-meter\_,

measure through.

6. EPI, EPH,--Upon: as, \_epi-demic\_, upon the people; \_eph-emera\_, upon a

day.

7. HEMI means Half: as, \_hemi-sphere\_, half a sphere; \_hemi-stich\_, half a

verse.

8. HYPER means Over: as, \_hyper-critical\_, over-critical; \_hyper-meter\_,

over measure. 9. HYPO means Under: as, \_hypo-stasis\_, substance, or that

which stands under; \_hypo-thesis\_, supposition, or a placing-under;

\_hypo-phyllous\_, under the leaf.

10. META means Beyond, Over, To an other state or place: as,

\_meta-morphose\_, to change to an other shape; \_meta-physics\_, mental

science, as beyond or over physics.

11. PARA means Against: as, \_para-dox\_, something contrary to common

opinion.

12. PERI means Around: as, \_peri-phery\_, the circumference, or measure

round.

13. SYN,--whence \_Sym, Syl\_,--means Together: as, \_syn-tax\_, a

putting-together; \_sym-pathy\_, a suffering-together; \_syl-lable\_, what we

take together; \_syn-thesis\_ a placing-together.

CLASS IV.--THE FRENCH PREFIXES.

1. A is a preposition of very frequent use in French, and generally means

\_To\_. I have suggested above that it is probably the same as the

Anglo-Saxon prefix \_a\_. It is found in a few English compounds or

derivatives that are of French, and not of Saxon origin: as, \_a-dieu\_, to

God; i.e., I commend you to God; \_a-larm\_, from \_alarme\_, i e., \_à l'arme\_,

to arms.

2. DE means Of or From: as in \_de-mure\_, of manners; \_de-liver\_, to ease

from or of.

3. DEMI means Half: as, \_demi-man\_, half a man; \_demi-god\_, half a god;

\_demi-devil\_, half a devil; \_demi-deify\_, to half deify; \_demi-sized\_, half

sized; \_demi-quaver\_, half a quaver. 4. EN,--which sometimes becomes

em,--means In, Into, or Upon: as, \_en-chain\_, to hold in chains;

\_em-brace\_, to clasp in the arms; \_en-tomb\_, to put into a tomb; \_em-boss\_,

to stud upon. Many words are yet wavering between the French and the Latin

orthography of this prefix: as, \_embody\_, or \_imbody; ensurance\_, or

\_insurance; ensnare\_, or \_insnare; enquire\_, or \_inquire\_.

5. SUR, as a French prefix, means Upon, Over, or After: as, \_sur-name\_, a

name upon a name; \_sur-vey\_, to look over; \_sur-mount\_, to mount over or

upon; \_sur-render\_, to deliver over to others; \_sur-feit\_, to overdo in

eating; \_sur-vive\_, to live after, to over-live, to outlive.

END OF THE SECOND APPENDIX

APPENDIX III TO PART THIRD, OR SYNTAX.

OF THE QUALITIES OF STYLE.

Style, as a topic connected with syntax, is the particular manner in which

a person expresses his conceptions by means of language. It is different

from mere words, different from mere grammar, in any limited sense, and is

not to be regulated altogether by rules of construction. It always has some

relation to the author's peculiar manner of thinking; involves, to some

extent, and shows his literary, if not his moral, character; is, in

general, that sort of expression which his thoughts most readily assume;

and, sometimes, partakes not only of what is characteristic of the man, of

his profession, sect, clan, or province, but even of national peculiarity,

or some marked feature of the age. The words which an author employs, may

be proper in themselves, and so constructed as to violate no rule of

syntax, and yet his style may have great faults.

In reviews and critical essays, the general characters of style are usually

designated by such epithets as these;--concise, diffuse,--neat,

negligent,--terse, bungling,--nervous, weak,--forcible, feeble,--vehement,

languid,--simple, affected,--easy, stiff,--pure, barbarous,--perspicuous,

obscure,--elegant, uncouth,--florid, plain,--flowery, artless,--fluent,

dry,--piquant, dull,--stately, flippant,--majestic, mean,--pompous,

modest,--ancient, modern. A considerable diversity of style, may be found

in compositions all equally excellent in their kind. And, indeed, different

subjects, as well as the different endowments by which genius is

distinguished, require this diversity. But, in forming his style, the

learner should remember, that a negligent, feeble, affected, stiff,

uncouth, barbarous, or obscure style is always faulty; and that

perspicuity, ease, simplicity, strength, neatness, and purity, are

qualities always to be aimed at.

In order to acquire a good style, the frequent practice of composing and

writing something, is indispensably necessary. Without exercise and

diligent attention, rules or precepts for the attainment of this object,

will be of no avail. When the learner has acquired such a knowledge of

grammar, as to be in some degree qualified for the undertaking, he should

devote a stated portion of his time to composition. This exercise will

bring the powers of his mind into requisition, in a way that is well

calculated to strengthen them. And if he has opportunity for reading, he

may, by a diligent perusal of the best authors, acquire both language and

taste as well as sentiment;--and these three are the essential

qualifications of a good writer.

In regard to the qualities which constitute a good style, we can here offer

nothing more than a few brief hints. With respect to words and phrases,

particular attention should be paid to three things--\_purity, propriety\_,

and \_precision\_; and, with respect to sentences, to three

others,--\_perspicuity, unity\_, and \_strength\_. Under each of these six

heads, we shall arrange, in the form of short precepts, a few of the most

important directions for the forming of a good style.

SECTION I.--OF PURITY.

Purity of style consists in the use of such words and phrases only, as

belong to the language which we write or speak. Its opposites are the

faults aimed at in the following precepts.

PRECEPT I.--Avoid the unnecessary use of foreign words or idioms: such as

the French words \_fraicheur, hauteur, delicatesse, politesse,

noblesse\_;--the expression, "He \_repented himself\_;"--or, "It \_serves\_ to

an excellent purpose."

PRECEPT II.--Avoid obsolete or antiquated words, except there be some

special reason for their use: that is, such words as \_acception,

addressful, administrate, affamish, affrontiveness, belikely, blusterous,

clergical, cruciate, rutilate, timidous\_.

PRECEPT III.--Avoid strange or unauthorized words: such as, \_flutteration,

inspectator, judgematical, incumberment, connexity, electerized,

martyrized, reunition, marvelize, limpitude, affectated, adorement,

absquatulate\_. Of this sort is O. B. Peirce's "\_assimilarity\_," used on

page 19th of his \_English Grammar\_; and still worse is Jocelyn's

"\_irradicable\_," for \_uneradicable\_, used on page 5th of his \_Prize Essay

on Education\_.

PRECEPT IV.--Avoid bombast, or affectation of fine writing. It is

ridiculous, however serious the subject. The following is an example:

"Personifications, however rich the depictions, and unconstrained their

latitude; analogies, however imposing the objects of parallel, and the

media of comparison; can never expose the consequences of sin to the extent

of fact, or the range of demonstration."--\_Anonymous\_.

SECTION II.--OF PROPRIETY.

Propriety of language consists in the selection and right construction of

such words as the best usage has appropriated to those ideas which we

intend to express by them. Impropriety embraces all those forms of error,

which, for the purpose of illustration, exercise, and special criticism,

have been so methodically and so copiously posted up under the various

heads, rules, and notes, of this extensive Grammar. A few suggestions,

however, are here to be set down in the form of precepts.

PRECEPT I.--Avoid low and provincial expressions: such as, "Now, \_says I\_,

boys;"--"\_Thinks I to myself;"--"To get into a scrape\_;"--"Stay here

\_while\_ I come back;"--"\_By jinkers;"--"By the living jingoes\_."

PRECEPT II.--In writing prose, avoid words and phrases that are merely

poetical: such as, \_morn, eve, plaint, corse, weal, drear, amid, oft,

steepy;--"what time\_ the winds arise."

PRECEPT III.--Avoid technical terms: except where they are necessary in

treating of a particular art or science. In technology, they are proper.

PRECEPT IV.--Avoid the recurrence of a word in different senses, or such a

repetition of words as denotes paucity of language: as, "His own \_reason\_

might have suggested better \_reasons\_."--"Gregory \_favoured\_ the

undertaking, for no other reason than this; that the manager, in

countenance, \_favoured\_ his friend."--"I \_want\_ to go and see what he

\_wants\_."

PRECEPT V.--Supply words that are wanting: thus, instead of saying, "This

action increased his former services," say, "This action increased \_the

merit of\_ his former services."--"How many [\_kinds of\_] substantives are

there? Two; proper and common."--See \_E. Devis's Gram.\_, p. 14. "These

changes should not be left to be settled by chance or by caprice, but

[\_should be determined\_] by the judicious application of the principles of

Orthography."--See \_Fowlers E. Gram.\_, 1850, p. 170.

PRECEPT VI.--Avoid equivocal or ambiguous expressions: as, "His \_memory\_

shall be lost on the earth."--"I long since learned to like nothing but

what you \_do\_."

PRECEPT VII.--Avoid unintelligible, inconsistent, or inappropriate

expressions: such as, "I have observed that the superiority among these

coffee-house politicians proceeds from \_an opinion\_ of gallantry and

fashion."--"These words do not convey even an \_opaque\_ idea of the author's

meaning."

PRECEPT VIII.--Observe the natural order of things or events, and do not

\_put the cart before the horse\_: as, "The scribes \_taught and studied\_ the

Law of Moses."--"They can neither \_return to nor leave\_ their houses."--"He

tumbled, \_head over heels\_, into the water."--"'Pat, how did you carry that

quarter of beef?' 'Why, I thrust \_it through a stick\_, and threw \_my

shoulder over it\_.'"

SECTION III.--OF PRECISION.

Precision consists in avoiding all superfluous words, and adapting the

expression exactly to the thought, so as to say, with no deficiency or

surplus of terms, whatever is intended by the author. Its opposites are

noticed in the following precepts.

PRECEPT I.--Avoid a useless tautology, either of expression or of

sentiment; as, "When will you return \_again\_?"--"We returned \_back\_ home

\_again\_."--"On entering \_into\_ the room, I saw \_and discovered\_ he had

fallen \_down\_ on the floor and could not \_rise\_ up."--"They have a \_mutual\_

dislike to each other."--"Whenever I go, he \_always\_ meets me

there."--"Where is he \_at? In\_ there."--"His faithfulness \_and fidelity\_

should be rewarded."

PRECEPT II.--Repeat words as often as an exact exhibition of your meaning

requires them; for repetition may be elegant, if it be not useless. The

following example does not appear faulty: "Moral \_precepts\_ are \_precepts\_

the reasons of which we see; positive \_precepts\_ are \_precepts\_ the reasons

of which we do not see."--\_Butler's Analogy\_, p. 165.

PRECEPT III.--Observe the exact meaning of words accounted synonymous, and

employ those which are the most suitable; as, "A diligent scholar may

\_acquire\_ knowledge, \_gain\_ celebrity, \_obtain\_ rewards, \_win\_ prizes, and

\_get\_ high honour, though he \_earn\_ no money." These six verbs have nearly

the same meaning, and yet no two of them can here be correctly

interchanged.

PRECEPT IV.--Observe the proper form of each word, and do not confound such

as resemble each other. "Professor J. W. Gibbs, of Yale College," in

treating of the "Peculiarities of the Cockney Dialect," says, "The Londoner

sometimes confounds two different forms; as \_contagious\_ for \_contiguous;

eminent\_ for \_imminent; humorous\_ for \_humorsome; ingeniously\_ for

\_ingenuously; luxurious\_ for \_luxuriant; scrupulosity\_ for \_scruple;

successfully\_ for \_successively\_."--See \_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, p. 87; and

Pref., p. vi.

PRECEPT V.--Think clearly, and avoid absurd or incompatible expressions.

Example of error: "To pursue \_those\_ remarks, would, \_probably\_, be of no

further \_service\_ to the learner than \_that of burdening his memory\_ with a

catalogue of dry and \_uninteresting\_ peculiarities; \_which may gratify

curiosity\_, without affording information adequate to the trouble of the

perusal."--\_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 122.

PRECEPT VI.--Avoid words that are useless; and, especially, a

multiplication of them into sentences, members, or clauses, that may well

be spared. Example: "If one could \_really\_ be a spectator of what is

passing in the world \_around us\_ without taking part in the events, \_or

sharing in the passions and actual performance on the stage; if we could

set ourselves down, as it were, in a private box of the world's great

theatre, and quietly look on at the piece that is playing, no more moved

than is absolutely implied by sympathy with our fellow-creatures, what a

curious, what an amusing\_, what an interesting spectacle would life

present."--G. P. R. JAMES: "\_The Forger\_," commencement of Chap. xxxi. This

sentence contains \_eighty-seven\_ words, "of which \_sixty-one\_ are entirely

unnecessary to the expression of the author's idea, if idea it can be

called."--\_Holden's Review\_.

OBSERVATION.

Verbosity, as well as tautology, is not so directly opposite to precision,

as to conciseness, or brevity. From the manner in which lawyers usually

multiply terms in order to express their facts \_precisely\_, it would seem

that, with them, precision consists rather in the use of \_many\_ words than

of \_few\_. But the ordinary style of legal instruments no popular writer can

imitate without becoming ridiculous. A terse or concise style is very apt

to be elliptical: and, in some particular instances, must be so; but, at

the same time, the full expression, perhaps, may have more \_precision\_,

though it be less agreeable. For example: "A word of one syllable, is

called a monosyllable; a word of two syllables, \_is called\_ a dissyllable:

a word of three syllables, \_is called\_ a trisyllable: a word of four or

more syllables, \_is called\_ a polysyllable."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p.

19. Better, perhaps, thus: "A word of one syllable is called a

\_monosyllable\_; a word of two syllables, a \_dissyllable\_; a word of three

syllables, a \_trissyllable\_; and a word of four or more syllables, a

\_polysyllable\_."--\_Brown's Institutes\_, p. 17.

SECTION IV.--OF PERSPICUITY.

Perspicuity consists in freedom from obscurity or ambiguity. It is a

quality so essential to every kind of writing, that for the want of it no

merit of other name can compensate. "Without this, the richest ornaments of

style, only glimmer through the dark, and puzzle in stead of pleasing the

reader."--\_Dr. Blair\_. Perspicuity, being the most important property of

language, and an exemption from the most embarrassing defects, seems even

to rise to a degree of positive beauty. We are naturally pleased with a

style that frees us from all suspense in regard to the meaning; that

carries us through the subject without embarrassment or confusion; and that

always flows like a limpid stream, through which we can "see to the very

bottom." Many of the errors which have heretofore been pointed out to the

reader, are offences against perspicuity. Only three or four hints will

here be added.

PRECEPT I.--Place adjectives, relative pronouns, participles, adverbs, and

explanatory phrases near enough to the words to which they relate, and in a

position which will make their reference clear. The following sentences are

deficient in perspicuity: "Reverence is the veneration paid to superior

sanctity, \_intermixed\_ with a certain degree of awe."--\_Unknown\_. "The

Romans understood liberty, \_at least\_, as well as we."--See \_Murray's

Gram.\_, p. 307. "Taste was never \_made to cater\_ for vanity."--\_J. Q.

Adams's Rhet.\_, Vol. i, p. 119.

PRECEPT II.--In prose, avoid a poetic collocation of words. For example:

"Guard your weak side from being known. If it be attacked, the best way is,

to join in the attack."--KAMES: \_Art of Thinking\_, p. 75. This maxim of

prudence might be expressed more poetically, but with some loss of

perspicuity, thus: "Your weak side guard from being known. Attacked in

this, the assailants join."

PRECEPT III.--Avoid faulty ellipses, and repeat all words necessary to

preserve the sense. The following sentences require the words which are

inserted in crotchets: "Restlessness of mind disqualifies us, both for the

enjoyment of peace, and [\_for\_] the performance of our duty."--\_Murray's

Key\_, 8vo, p. 166. "Double Comparatives and [\_Double\_] Superlatives should

be avoided."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 1850, p. 489.

PRECEPT IV.--Avoid the pedantic and sense-dimming style of charlatans and

new theorists, which often demands either a translation or a tedious study,

to make it at all intelligible to the ordinary reader. For example: "RULE

XL Part 3. An intransitive or receptive \_asserter\_ in the unlimited mode,

depending on a word in the possessive case, may have, after it, a word in

the subjective case, denoting the same thing: And, when it acts the part of

an assertive name, depending on a relative, it may have after it a word in

the subjective case. EXAMPLES:--John's being my \_friend\_, saved me from

inconvenience. Seth Hamilton was unhappy in being a \_slave\_ to party

prejudice."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, 1839, p. 201. The meaning of this

\_third part of a Rule\_ of syntax, is, in proper English, as follows: "A

participle not transitive, with the possessive case before it, may have

after it a nominative denoting the same thing; and also, when a preposition

governs the participle, a nominative may follow, in agreement with one

which precedes." In doctrine, the former clause of the sentence is

erroneous: it serves only to propagate false syntax by rule. See the former

example, and a note of mine, referring to it, on page 531 of this work.

SECTION V.--OF UNITY.

Unity consists in avoiding needless pauses, and keeping one object

predominant throughout a sentence or paragraph. Every sentence, whether its

parts be few or many, requires strict unity. The chief faults, opposite to

this quality of style, are suggested in the following precepts. PRECEPT

I.--Avoid brokenness, hitching, or the unnecessary separation of parts that

naturally come together. Examples: "I was, soon after my arrival, taken out

of my Indian habit."--\_Addison, Tattler\_, No. 249. Better: "Soon after my

arrival, \_I\_ was taken out of my Indian habit."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p.

326. "Who can, either in opposition, or in the ministry, act alone?"--\_Ib.\_

Better: "Who can act alone, either in opposition, or in the

ministry?"--\_Ib.\_ "I, like others, have, in my youth, trifled with my

health, and old age now prematurely assails me."--\_Ib.\_, p. 327. Better:

"Like others, I have trifled with my health, and old age now prematurely

assails me."

PRECEPT II.--Treat different topics in separate paragraphs, and distinct

sentiments in separate sentences. Error: "The two volumes are, indeed,

intimately \_connected, and constitute\_ one uniform system of English

Grammar."--\_Murray's Preface\_, p. iv. Better thus: "The two volumes are,

indeed, intimately connected. \_They\_ constitute one uniform system of

English \_grammar\_."

PRECEPT III.--In the progress of a sentence, do not desert the principal

subjects in favour of adjuncts, or change the scene unnecessarily. Example:

"After we came to anchor, they put me on shore, where I was welcomed by all

my friends, who received me with the greatest kindness, which was not then

expected." Better: "The vessel having come to anchor, I was put on shore;

where I was unexpectedly welcomed by all my friends, and received with the

greatest kindness."--See \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 107.

PRECEPT IV.--Do not introduce parentheses, except when a lively remark may

be thrown in without diverting the mind too long from the principal

subject. Example: "But (saith he) since I take upon me to teach the whole

world, (it is strange, it should be so natural for this man to write

untruths, since I direct my \_Theses\_ only to the Christian world; but if it

may render me odious, such \_Peccadillo's\_ pass with him, it seems, but for

\_Piæ Fraudes\_:) I intended never to write of those things, concerning which

we do not differ from others."--\_R. Barclay's Works\_, Vol. iii. p. 279. The

parts of this sentence are so put together, that, as a whole, it is

scarcely intelligible.

SECTION VI.--OF STRENGTH.

Strength consists in giving to the several words and members of a sentence,

such an arrangement as shall bring out the sense to the best advantage, and

present every idea in its due importance. Perhaps it is essential to this

quality of style, that there be animation, spirit, and \_vigour of thought\_,

in all that is uttered. A few hints concerning the Strength of sentences,

will here be given in the form of precepts.

PRECEPT I.--Avoid verbosity; a concise style is the most favourable to

strength. Examples: "No human happiness is so pure as not to contain \_any\_

alloy."--\_Murray's Key\_, 8vo, p. 270. Better: "No human happiness is

\_unalloyed\_." "He was so much skilled in the exercise of the oar, that few

could equal him."--\_Ib.\_, p. 271. Better: "He was so \_skillful at\_ the oar,

that few could \_match\_ him." Or thus: "At the oar, he was \_rarely

equalled\_." "The reason why they [the pronouns] are considered separately

is, because there is something particular in their inflections."--

\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 81. Better: "The pronouns are considered

separately, because there is something peculiar in their inflections."

PRECEPT II.--Place the most important words in the situation in which they

will make the strongest impression. Inversion of terms sometimes increases

the strength and vivacity of an expression: as, "All these things will I

give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me."--\_Matt.\_, iv, 9.

"Righteous art thou, O Lord, and upright are thy judgements."--\_Psalms\_,

cxix, 137. "Precious in the sight of the Lord is the death of his

saints."--\_Ps.\_, cxvi, 15.

PRECEPT III.--Have regard also to the relative position of clauses, or

members; for a weaker assertion should not follow a stronger; and, when the

sentence consists of two members, the longer should be the concluding one.

Example: "We flatter ourselves with the belief that we have forsaken our

passions, when they have forsaken us." Better: "When our passions have

forsaken us, we flatter ourselves with the belief that we have forsaken

them."--See \_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 117; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 323.

PRECEPT IV.--When things are to be compared or contrasted, their

resemblance or opposition will be rendered more striking, if a pretty near

resemblance in the language and construction of the two members, be

preserved. Example: "The wise man is happy, when he gains his own

approbation; the fool, when he recommends himself to the applause of those

about him." Better: "The wise man is happy, when he gains his own

approbation; the fool, when he gains the applause of others."--See

\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 324.

PRECEPT V.--Remember that it is, in general, ungraceful to end a sentence

with an adverb, a preposition, or any inconsiderable word or phrase, which

may either be omitted or be introduced earlier. "For instance, it is a

great deal better to say, 'Avarice is a crime of which wise men are often

guilty,' than to say, 'Avarice is a crime which wise men are often guilty

of.'"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 117; \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 323.

END OF THE THIRD APPENDIX.

APPENDIX IV.

TO PART FOURTH, OR PROSODY.

OF POETIC DICTION.

Poetry, as defined by Dr. Blair, "is the language of passion, or of

enlivened imagination, formed, most commonly, into regular

numbers."--\_Rhet.\_, p. 377. The style of poetry differs, in many respects,

from that which is commonly adopted in prose. Poetic diction abounds in

bold figures of speech, and unusual collocations of words. A great part of

the figures, which have been treated of in one of the chapters of Prosody,

are purely poetical. The primary aim of a poet, is, to please and to move;

and, therefore, it is to the imagination, and the passions, that he speaks.

He may also, and he should, have it in his view, to instruct and to reform;

but it is indirectly, and by pleasing and moving, that such a writer

accomplishes this end. The exterior and most obvious distinction of poetry,

is versification: yet there are some forms of verse so loose and familiar,

as to be hardly distinguishable from prose; and there is also a species of

prose, so measured in its cadences, and so much raised in its tone, as to

approach very nearly to poetic numbers.

This double approximation of some poetry to prose, and of some prose to

poetry, not only makes it a matter of acknowledged difficulty to

distinguish, by satisfactory definitions, the two species of composition,

but, in many instances, embarrasses with like difficulty the attempt to

show, by statements and examples, what usages or licenses, found in English

works, are proper to be regarded as peculiarities of poetic diction. It is

purposed here, to enumerate sundry deviations from the common style of

prose; and perhaps all of them, or nearly all, may be justly considered as

pertaining only to poetry.

POETICAL PECULIARITIES.

The following are among the chief peculiarities in which the poets indulge,

and are indulged:--

I. They not unfrequently omit the ARTICLES, for the sake of brevity or

metre; as,

"What dreadful pleasure! there to stand sublime,

Like \_shipwreck'd mariner\_ on \_desert\_ coast!"

--\_Beattie's Minstrel\_, p. 12.

"\_Sky lour'd\_, and, muttering thunder, some sad drops

Wept at \_completing\_ of the mortal sin."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. ix, l. 1002.

II. They sometimes abbreviate common NOUNS, after a manner of their own:

as, \_amaze\_, for \_amazement\_; \_acclaim\_, for \_acclamation\_; \_consult\_, for

\_consultation\_; \_corse\_, for \_corpse\_; \_eve\_ or \_even\_, for \_evening\_;

\_fount\_, for \_fountain\_; \_helm\_, for \_helmet\_; \_lament\_, for \_lamentation\_;

\_morn\_, for \_morning\_; \_plaint\_, for \_complaint\_; \_targe\_, for \_target\_;

\_weal\_, for \_wealth\_.

III. By \_enallage\_, they use verbal forms substantively, or put verbs for

nouns; perhaps for brevity, as above: thus,

1. "Instant, without \_disturb\_, they took alarm."

--\_P. Lost: Joh. Dict., w. Aware.\_

2. "The gracious Judge, without \_revile\_ reply'd."

--\_P. Lost, B. x, l. 118.\_

3. "If they were known, as the \_suspect\_ is great."

--\_Shakspeare.\_

4. "Mark, and perform it: seest thou? for the \_fail\_

Of any point in't shall be death."

--\_Shakspeare.\_

IV. They employ several nouns that are not used in prose, or are used but

rarely; as, \_benison, boon, emprise, fane, guerdon, guise, ire, ken, lore,

meed, sire, steed, welkin, yore\_.

V. They introduce the noun \_self\_ after an other noun of the possessive

case; as,

1. "Affliction's semblance bends not o'er thy tomb,

Affliction's \_self\_ deplores thy youthful doom."--\_Byron.\_

2. "Thoughtless of beauty, she was beauty's \_self.\_"--\_Thomson.\_

VI. They place before the verb nouns, or other words, that usually come

after it; and, after it, those that usually come before it: as,

1. "No jealousy \_their dawn of love\_ o'ercast,

Nor \_blasted\_ were \_their wedded days\_ with strife."

--\_Beattie.\_

2. "No \_hive\_ hast \_thou\_ of hoarded sweets."

--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_

3. "Thy chain \_a wretched weight\_ shall prove."

--\_Langhorne.\_

4. "Follows the loosen'd aggravated \_roar.\_"

--\_Thomson.\_

5. "That \_purple\_ grows \_the primrose pale.\_"

--\_Langhorne.\_

VII. They more frequently place ADJECTIVES after their nouns, than do prose

writers; as,

1. "Or where the gorgeous East, with richest hand,

Show'rs on her kings \_barbaric\_, pearl and gold."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. ii, l. 2.

2. "Come, nymph \_demure\_, with mantle \_blue\_."

--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 189.

3. "This truth \_sublime\_ his simple sire had taught."

--\_Beattie's Minstrel\_, p. 14.

VIII. They ascribe qualities to things to which they do not literally

belong; as,

1. "The ploughman homeward plods his \_weary way\_."

--\_Gray's Elegy\_, l. 3.

2. "Or \_drowsy tinklings\_ lull the distant folds."

--\_Ibidem\_, l. 8.

3. "Imbitter'd more and more from \_peevish day\_ to day."

--\_Thomson\_.

4. "All thin and naked, to the \_numb\_ cold \_night\_."

--\_Shakspeare\_.

IX. They use concrete terms to express abstract qualities; (i. e.,

adjectives for nouns;) as,

1. "Earth's meanest son, all trembling, prostrate falls,

And on the \_boundless\_ of thy goodness calls."

--\_Young\_.

2. "Meanwhile, whate'er of \_beautiful\_ or \_new\_,

\_Sublime\_ or \_dreadful\_, in earth, sea, or sky,

By chance or search, was offer'd to his view,

He scann'd with curious and romantic eye."

--\_Beattie\_.

3. "Won from the void and formless \_infinite\_."

--\_Milton\_.

4. "To thy large heart give utterance due; thy heart

Contains of \_good, wise, just\_, the perfect shape."

--\_Id., P. R.\_, B. iii, l. 10.

X. They often substitute quality for manner; (i. e., adjectives for

adverbs;) as,

1. ----"The stately-sailing swan

Gives out his snowy plumage to the gale,

And, arching \_proud\_ his neck, with oary feet,

Bears forward \_fierce\_, and guards his osier isle."

--\_Thomson\_.

2. "Thither \_continual\_ pilgrims crowded still."

--\_Id., Cos. of Ind.\_, i, 8.

3. "Level at beauty, and at wit;

The fairest mark is \_easiest\_ hit."

--\_Butler's Hudibras\_.

XI. They form new compound epithets, oftener than do prose writers; as,

1. "In \_world-rejoicing\_ state, it moves sublime."

--\_Thomson\_.

2. "The \_dewy-skirted\_ clouds imbibe the sun."

--\_Idem\_.

3. "By brooks and groves in \_hollow-whispering\_ gales."

--\_Idem\_.

4. "The violet of \_sky-woven\_ vest."

--\_Langhorne\_.

5. "A league from Epidamnum had we sail'd,

Before the \_always-wind-obeying\_ deep

Gave any tragic instance of our harm."

--\_Shakspeare\_.

6. "'\_Blue-eyed, strange-voiced, sharp-beaked, ill-omened\_ fowl,

What art thou?' 'What I ought to be, an owl.'"

--\_Day's Punctuation\_, p. 139.

XII. They connect the comparative degree to the positive, before a verb;

as,

1. "\_Near and more near\_ the billows rise."

--\_Merrick\_.

2. "\_Wide and wider\_ spreads the vale."

--\_Dyer's Grongar Hill\_.

3. "\_Wide and more wide\_, the overflowings of the mind

Take every creature in, of every kind."

--\_Pope\_.

4. "\_Thick and more thick\_ the black blockade extends,

A hundred head of Aristotle's friends."

--\_Id., Dunciad\_.

XIII. They form many adjectives in \_y\_, which are not common in prose; as,

The \_dimply\_ flood,--\_dusky\_ veil,--a \_gleamy\_ ray,--\_heapy\_

harvests,--\_moony\_ shield,--\_paly\_ circlet,--\_sheety\_ lake,--\_stilly\_

lake,--\_spiry\_ temples,--\_steely\_ casque,--\_steepy\_ hill,--\_towery\_

height,--\_vasty\_ deep,--\_writhy\_ snake.

XIV. They employ adjectives of an abbreviated form: as, \_dread\_, for

\_dreadful\_; \_drear\_, for \_dreary\_; \_ebon\_, for \_ebony\_; \_hoar\_, for

\_hoary\_; \_lone\_, for \_lonely\_; \_scant\_, for \_scanty\_; \_slope\_, for

\_sloping\_: \_submiss\_, for \_submissive\_; \_vermil\_, for \_vermilion\_; \_yon\_,

for \_yonder\_.

XV. They employ several adjectives that are not used in prose, or are used

but seldom; as, \_azure, blithe, boon, dank, darkling, darksome, doughty,

dun, fell, rife, rapt, rueful, sear, sylvan, twain, wan.\_

XVI. They employ the personal PRONOUNS, and introduce their nouns

afterwards; as,

1. "\_It\_ curl'd not Tweed alone, that \_breeze\_."

--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

2. "What may \_it\_ be, the heavy \_sound\_

That moans old Branksome's turrets round?"

--\_Idem, Lay\_, p. 21.

3. "Is it the lightning's quivering glance,

That on the thicket streams;

Or do \_they\_ flash on spear and lance,

The sun's retiring \_beams\_"

--\_Idem, L. of L.\_, vi, 15.

XVII. They use the forms of the second person singular oftener than do

others; as,

1. "Yet I had rather, if I were to chuse,

\_Thy\_ service in some graver subject use,

Such as may make \_thee\_ search thy coffers round,

Before \_thou clothe\_ my fancy in fit sound."

--\_Milton's Works\_, p. 133.

2. "But \_thou\_, of temples old, or altars new,

\_Standest\_ alone--with nothing like to thee."

--\_Byron, Pilg.\_, iv, 154.

3. "Thou seest not all; but piecemeal thou must break,

To separate contemplation, the great whole."

--\_Id., ib.\_, iv, 157.

4. "Thou rightly deemst, fair youth, began the bard;

The form then sawst was Virtue ever fair."

--\_Pollok, C. of T.\_, p. 16.

XVIII. They sometimes omit relatives that are nominatives; (see Obs. 22, at

p. 555;) as,

"For is there aught in sleep can charm the wise?"

--\_Thomson\_.

XIX. They omit the antecedent, or introduce it after the relative; as,

1. "\_Who\_ never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys,

\_Who\_ never toils or watches, never sleeps."

--\_Armstrong\_.

2. "\_Who\_ dares think one thing and an other tell,

My soul detests \_him\_ as the gates of hell."

--\_Pope's Homer\_.

XX. They remove relatives, or other connectives, into the body of their

clauses; as,

1. "Parts the fine locks, her graceful head \_that\_ deck."

--\_Darwin\_.

2. "Not half so dreadful rises to the sight

Orion's dog, the year \_when\_ autumn weighs."

--\_Pope, Iliad\_, B. xxii, l. 37.

XXI. They make intransitive VERBS transitive, changing their class; as,

1. ----"A while he stands,

\_Gazing\_ the inverted landscape, half afraid

To \_meditate\_ the blue profound below."

--\_Thomson\_.

2. "Still in harmonious intercourse, they \_liv'd\_

The rural day, and \_talk'd\_ the flowing heart."

--\_Idem\_.

3. ----"I saw and heard, for we sometimes

Who \_dwell\_ this wild, constrain'd by want, come forth."

--\_Milton, P. R.\_, B. i, l. 330.

XXII. They make transitive verbs intransitive, giving them no regimen; as,

1. "The soldiers should have \_toss'd\_ me on their pikes,

Before I would have \_granted\_ to that act."

--\_Shakspeare\_.

2. "This minstrel-god, well-pleased, amid the quire

Stood proud to \_hymn\_, and tune his youthful lyre."

--\_Pope\_.

XXIII. They give to the imperative mood the first and the third person; as,

1. "\_Turn we\_ a moment fancy's rapid flight."

--\_Thomson\_.

2. "\_Be\_ man's peculiar \_work\_ his sole delight."

--\_Beattie\_.

3. "And what is reason? Be \_she\_ thus \_defin'd\_:

Reason is upright stature in the soul."

--\_Young\_.

XXIV. They employ \_can, could\_, and \_would\_, as principal verbs transitive;

as,

1. "\_What\_ for ourselves we \_can\_, is always ours."

--\_Anon\_.

2. "Who does the best his circumstance allows,

Does well, acts nobly; angels \_could\_ no \_more\_."

--\_Young\_.

3. "What \_would\_ this man? Now upward will he soar,

And, little less than angel, would be more."

--\_Pope\_.

XXV. They place the infinitive before the word on which it depends; as,

1. "When first thy sire \_to send\_ on earth

Virtue, his darling child, \_design'd\_"

--\_Gray\_.

2. "As oft as I, \_to kiss\_ the flood, \_decline\_;

So oft his lips ascend, to close with mine."

--\_Sandys\_.

3. "Besides, Minerva, \_to secure\_ her care,

\_Diffus'd\_ around a veil of thicken'd air."

--\_Pope\_.

XXVI. They place the auxiliary verb after its principal, by hyperbaton; as,

1. "No longer \_heed\_ the sunbeam bright

That plays on Carron's breast he \_can\_"

--\_Langhorne\_.

2. "\_Follow\_ I \_must\_, I cannot go before."

--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p. 147.

3. "The man who suffers, loudly may complain;

And \_rage\_ he \_may\_, but he shall rage in vain."

--\_Pope\_.

XXVII. Before verbs, they sometimes arbitrarily employ or omit prefixes:

\_as, bide\_, or \_abide\_; \_dim\_, or \_bedim\_; \_gird\_, or \_begird\_; \_lure\_, or

\_allure\_; \_move\_, or \_emove\_; \_reave\_, or \_bereave\_; \_vails\_, or \_avails\_;

\_vanish\_, or \_evanish\_; \_wail\_, or \_bewail\_; \_weep\_, or \_beweep\_; \_wilder\_,

or \_bewilder\_:--

1. "All knees to thee shall bow, of them that \_bide\_

In heav'n, or earth, or under earth in hell."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, B. iii, l. 321.

2. "Of a horse, \_ware\_ the heels; of a bull-dog, the jaws;

Of a bear, the embrace; of a lion, the paws."

--\_Churchills Cram.\_, p. 215.

XXVIII. Some few verbs they abbreviate: as \_list\_, for \_listen\_; \_ope\_, for

\_open\_; \_hark\_, for \_hearken\_; \_dark\_, for \_darken\_; \_threat\_, for

\_threaten\_; \_sharp\_, for \_sharpen\_.

XXIX. They employ several verbs that are not used in prose, or are used but

rarely; as, \_appal, astound, brook, cower, doff, ken, wend, ween, trow\_.

XXX. They sometimes imitate a Greek construction of the infinitive; as,

1. "Who would not sing for Lycidas? he knew

Himself \_to sing\_, and \_build\_ the lofty rhyme."

--\_Milton\_.

2. "For not, \_to have been dipp'd\_ in Lethè lake,

Could save the son of Thetis \_from to die\_."

--\_Spenser\_.

XXXI. They employ the PARTICIPLES more frequently than prose writers, and

in a construction somewhat peculiar; often intensive by accumulation: as,

1. "He came, and, standing in the midst, explain'd

The peace \_rejected\_, but the truce \_obtain'd\_."

--\_Pope\_.

2. "As a poor miserable captive thrall

Comes to the place where he before had sat

Among the prime in splendor, now \_depos'd,

Ejected, emptied, gaz'd, unpitied, shunn'd\_,

A spectacle of ruin or of scorn."

--\_Milton, P. R.\_, B. i, l. 411.

3. "Though from our birth the faculty divine

Is \_chain'd\_ and \_tortured--cabin'd, cribb'd, confined\_."

--\_Byron, Pilg.\_, C. iv, St. 127.

XXXII. In turning participles to adjectives, they sometimes ascribe

actions, or active properties, to things to which they do not literally

belong; as,

"The green leaf quivering in the gale,

The \_warbling hill\_, the \_lowing vale\_."

--MALLET: \_Union Poems\_, p. 26.

XXXIII. They employ several ADVERBS that are not used in prose, or are used

but seldom; as, \_oft, haply, inly, blithely, cheerily, deftly, felly,

rifely, starkly\_.

XXXIV. They give to adverbs a peculiar location in respect to other words;

as,

1. "Peeping from \_forth\_ their alleys green."

--\_Collins\_.

2. "Erect the standard \_there\_ of ancient Night"

--\_Milton\_.

3. "The silence \_often\_ of pure innocence

Persuades, when speaking fails."

--\_Shakspeare\_.

4. "Where Universal Love \_not\_ smiles around."

--\_Thomson\_.

5. "Robs me of that which \_not\_ enriches him."

--\_Shakspeare\_.

XXXV. They sometimes omit the introductory adverb \_there\_: as,

"\_Was\_ nought around but images of rest."

--\_Thomson\_.

XXXVI. They briefly compare actions by a kind of compound adverbs, ending

in \_like\_; as,

"Who bid the stork, \_Columbus-like\_, explore

Heavens not his own, and worlds unknown before?"

--\_Pope\_.

XXXVII. They employ the CONJUNCTIONS, \_or--or\_, and \_nor--nor\_, as

correspondents; as,

1. "\_Or\_ by the lazy Scheldt \_or\_ wandering Po."

--\_Goldsmith\_.

2. "Wealth heap'd on wealth, \_nor\_ truth, \_nor\_ safety buys."

--\_Johnson\_.

3. "Who by repentance is not satisfied,

Is \_nor\_ of heaven, \_nor\_ earth; for these are pleas'd."

--\_Shakspeare\_.

4. "Toss it, \_or\_ to the fowls, \_or\_ to the flames."

--\_Young, N. T.\_, p. 157.

5. "\_Nor\_ shall the pow'rs of hell, \_nor\_ wastes of time,

\_Or\_ vanquish, \_or\_ destroy."

--\_Gibbon's Elegy on Davies\_.

XXXVIII. They oftener place PREPOSITIONS and their adjuncts, before the

words on which they depend, than do prose writers; as,

"\_Against\_ your fame \_with\_ fondness hate \_combines\_;

The rival batters, and the lover mines."

--\_Dr. Johnson\_.

XXXIX. They sometimes place a long or dissyllabic preposition after its

object; as,

1. "When beauty, \_Eden's bowers within\_,

First stretched the arm to deeds of sin,

When passion burn'd and prudence slept,

The pitying angels bent and wept."

--\_James Hogg\_.

2. "The Muses fair, \_these peaceful shades among\_,

With skillful fingers sweep the trembling strings."

--\_Lloyd\_.

3. "Where Echo walks \_steep hills among\_,

List'ning to the shepherd's song."

--\_J. Warton, U. Poems\_, p. 33.

XL. They have occasionally employed certain prepositions for which,

perhaps, it would not be easy to cite prosaic authority; as, \_adown, aloft,

aloof, anear, aneath, askant, aslant, aslope, atween, atwixt, besouth,

traverse, thorough, sans\_. (See Obs. 10th, and others, at p. 441.)

XLI. They oftener employ INTERJECTIONS than do prose writers; as,

"\_O\_ let me gaze!--Of gazing there's no end.

\_O\_ let me think!--Thought too is wilder'd here."

--\_Young\_.

XLII. They oftener employ ANTIQUATED WORDS and modes of expression; as,

1. "\_Withouten\_ that, would come \_an\_ heavier bale."

--\_Thomson\_.

2. "He was, \_to weet\_, a little roguish page,

\_Save\_ sleep and play, who minded nought at all."

--\_Id.\_

3. "Not one \_eftsoons\_ in view was to be found."

--\_Id.\_

4. "To number up the thousands dwelling here,

\_An\_ useless were, and eke \_an\_ endless task."

--\_Id.\_

5. "Of clerks good plenty here you \_mote espy\_."

--\_Id.\_

6. "But these I \_passen\_ by with nameless numbers \_moe\_."

--\_Id.\_

THE END OF APPENDIX FOURTH

INDEX TO THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

[Asterism] \_In the following Index, the\_ page \_of the Grammar is directly

referred to\_: Obs. \_or\_ N. \_before a numeral, stands for\_ Observation \_or\_

Observations, \_or for\_ Note \_or\_ Notes \_of the text\_: R. \_after a

reference, stands for\_ RULE. \_The small letter\_ n., \_with an asterisk or

other mark affixed to it, relates to a\_ footnote \_with such mark in the

Grammar. Occasionally\_, t., m., \_or\_ b., \_or\_ u., \_or\_ l., \_accompanies a

reference, to indicate the\_ top, middle, \_or\_ bottom, \_or the\_ upper \_or

the\_ lower half, \_of the page referred to. Few abbreviations are employed

beyond those of the ordinary grammatical terms. The Index is not intended

to supersede the use of the\_ Table of Contents, \_which stands after the

Preface. It is occupied wholly with the matter of the\_ Grammar \_proper;

hence there are in it no references to the\_ Introduction Historical and

Critical, \_which precedes the didactic portion of the work. In the Table

before-mentioned must be sought the general division of English grammar,

and matters pertaining to praxis, to examination, and to the writing of

exercises\_.

A.

A, lett., names itself

--its plur.

--sounds properly its own

--numb. of sounds pertaining to, orthoëpists differ concerning

--diphthongs beginning with,

--triphth. do.

--its true sound to be carefully preserved at end of words,

\_A\_, as prep, or prefix

--before part, in \_ing\_.

\_A\_ and \_an\_, in Gr. derivatives.

\_A\_ or \_an\_, art., see \_An, A\_

\_Abbreviations\_, frequent in writt. lang.

--rule of punct. for.

C, M, D, &c., as numerals, see \_Letters\_.

Needless abbreviations, to be avoided

\_Able, ible\_, class of adjectives in, numerous in Eng.; difficulty with

resp. to the prop. form and signif. of; to what \_able\_ most properly

belongs

--application of \_able\_ to nouns, its propriety doubtf.

--\_Able\_ or \_ible\_, prop. application of, how far determined from Lat.

etymol.

--\_Able\_ and \_ible\_, words of the same meaning in, how formed from

different roots,

\_About\_, with infin., as substitute for Lat. fut. part, in \_rus\_

--\_About\_, with \_of\_ preced., ("OF ABOUT \_one hundred feet\_")

--\_About\_, derivat. of, from Sax.

\_Abrupt\_ transitions in the Bible

\_Absolute\_, when, and in what \_case\_, a noun or a pron. is put

--\_Absol.\_, case, defect of the common rule for

--in how many ways the nom. case is put

--nom. case put, with part., to what often equivalent; what part.

frequently understood after nouns put

--case, its existence denied by what authors

--words put, punct. of,

\_Abstract numbers\_, synt. of the phraseology used in speaking of, ("\_Twice

two\_ IS \_four\_," or "\_Twice two\_ ARE \_four\_")

\_Absurd\_ or incompatible expressions, to be avoided

\_Absurdities\_ of expression, Crit. N. concerning

\_Acatalectic\_, when a line is said to be

\_Accent\_ and quantity, critical observations on

\_Accent\_, difficulty with respect to the import of the word

--various definitions of, cited

--\_Accent\_, confounded by some with \_emphasis\_

--defined, as commonly understood

--chief or primary and secondary

--\_Accent\_, by what regulated

--compared with emphasis

--as affected by do.

--is distinct from quantity

--as understood by DR. JOH.

--SHERID. teachings concerning; mostly adopted by MURR.

--what lett. of a word receives the mark of

--stress on a monosyl. more properly \_emphasis\_ than

--\_Accents\_, more than one on a word

--DR. ADAM'S view of

\_Accentuation\_, modern, of Gr. and Lat. words, by what regulated;

SANCTIUS'S rule for, new vers. of

\_According to, as to\_, resolved. \_Accordingly\_, whether may be said for the

questionable \_according\_

\_Accusative\_ before infin., in Lat. and Gr., of what reckoned the subject

--whether the construc. can in general be imitated in Eng.

--who adopt the Lat. doctrine of

--what our nearest approach to the Lat. construc. of

\_Active\_, in reference to verbs, in what sense may be used

\_Active-transitive verb\_, defined

--\_Act.-trans. verbs\_ gov. obj. case

--place of agent and object in respect to

--\_Act.-trans. verb\_, or part., has some noun or pron. for its object

--with two words in appos. ("\_Proclaim\_ THEE KING,")

--with do., neither in appos. nor connected by conjunc., ("\_I paid\_ HIM

\_the\_ MONEY,")

--with redund. \_me, thee, you\_

--should not be used without an object

--should not assume a governm. incompatible with its signif.

\_Active-intransitive verb\_, defined

--\_Act.-intrans. verb\_, with prep. and its object, put in the pass.

form

--in pass. form with neut. signif. ("\_I\_ AM COME,")

--should not be used transitively

\_Addison\_, undeservedly criticised by BLAIR, for his frequent use of

\_that\_, as a relative

\_Addition, enumeration\_, of numbers, by what \_number\_ of the verb to be

expressed

\_Address\_, ordinary fashion of, in Eng., the plur. numb.

--has introduced the anomal. compound \_yourself\_

--\_Address\_, direct, nom. absol. by

--terms of, \_your Majesty, your Highness\_, &c., in what construc. used

--general usage of, in Fr.; in Span., Portug., or Germ.

ADJECTIVES, Etymol. of

--Classes of, named and defined

--Modifications of

--Comparison of, reg.; by adverbs; irreg.

--\_Adjectives\_ in \_able\_ and \_ible\_, (see \_Able, Ible\_.)

--\_Adjectives\_, number of, in Eng.

--how have been otherwise called

--how distinguished from nouns

--other parts of speech may become

--MURR., on nouns assuming the nature of

--whether nouns plur. can assume the character of

--\_Adjectives\_ that cannot be compared

--that are compared by means of adverbs

--(See \_Comparison, Comparative Deg.\_, and \_Superlative Deg.\_)

--\_Adjectives\_ requiring the article \_the\_

--denoting place or situation, comparison of

--become adverbs

--use of, for adv., improper

--with prep., ellipt., equivalent to adv.

--poet., for nouns

--do., for adverbs

--\_Adjectives\_, Synt. of

--do., in what consists

--to what relate

--substituted ellipt. for their abstr. nouns

--relate to nouns or pronouns understood

--used with def. art., ellipt., as nouns

--two or more before a noun, order of

--two, joined by hyphens

--denoting unity or plurality, how agree with their nouns

--connected, position of

--differing in numb., connected without repetition of noun ("ONE \_or

more letters\_,")

--\_much, little\_, &c., preceded by \_too, how\_, &c., taken substantively

--\_Adjectives\_, punct. of

--derivation of, from nouns, from adjectives, &c.

--poet. peculiarities in respect to

--\_Adjective\_, taken abstractly with infin. or part.

--following a finite verb, without a noun

--do. an infin. or a part.

--position of, in Eng.

--when may either precede or follow its noun

--Whether \_adj.\_ or adv. is required, how determined

--\_Adjective\_, one superadded to an other, without conjunc., position

of

--when the figure of, affects the sense, what to be done

--should not be represented by a pronoun

--ellipsis of, shown

\_Adjectives, common\_, probable numb. of, in Eng.

--enumeration of, according to their endings

\_Adjectives, compound\_, analogies of their formation, traced

--nouns derived from, generally disapproved

\_Adjectives, numeral\_, kinds of, named

--Cardinal numb. and its corresponding \_numeral\_, what denote

--Construction and figure of the \_numerals\_

\_Adjectives, participial\_, what words to be referred to the class of

--cannot be construed to govern obj. case

\_Adjectives, pronominal\_, list of

--which, sometimes used adverbially

--which, sometimes used partitively, appar. as nouns

--without nouns expressed, how parsed

--distribution of, by CHURCH See \_Other\_, &c.

\_Adjectives, proper\_, peculiarities of, considered

--rule for initial capital in

\_Adjuncts\_ of nominative in the agreement of a verb

\_Admitting, allowing\_, &c., appar. independent, to what may relate

ADVERBS, Etymol. of

--\_Adverb\_, defined

--\_Adverbs\_, serve to abbreviate expression

--other classes of words sometimes take the nature of

--appar. take the nat. of other parts of speech

--how distinguished from adjectives

--Classes of, named and defined

--proper classification of, by what indicated

--of time, place, and manner, with what connected; of degree, do.

--\_conjunctive\_ (see \_Conjunctive Adverb\_:)

--Modifications of

--number of, in Eng.

--Whether \_adverb\_ or adjective required, how determined

--\_Adverbs\_, Synt. of

--in what do. consists

--to what relate

--\_Adverb\_ before a prep. ("CONSIDERABLY \_beyond\_,")

--\_Adverbs\_, whether sometimes qualify nouns

--of participles which become nouns, how managed

--\_above, then\_, &c., as relating directly to a noun, how parsed

--\_Adverbs\_, of degree, to what adjectives not applicable

--direct use of, for pronouns, inelegant

--position of

--needless use of, for adjectives

--\_hither\_, &c., for \_here\_, &c., with verb of motion

--\_hence\_, &c., with \_from\_ prefixed

--\_when\_, &c., not to follow \_is\_ in a definition ("\_Concord is\_ WHEN,"

&c.,)

--\_ever\_ and \_never\_, to be carefully distinguished

--in \_ly\_, when preferable to other forms

--\_Adverb\_, appar. made object of a prep. ("\_At\_ ONCE,")

--emphatic, with verb of self-motion suppressed ("\_I'll\_ HENCE,")

--\_Adverb\_ HOW, misuse of ("\_He said\_ HOW," &c.,)

--NO, not to be used in reference to a verb or a part.

--\_Adverbial\_ form or character, words of, how parsed

--\_Adverbs\_, punct. of

--\_Adverb\_, ellips. of, shown

--\_Adverbs\_, derivation of,

--many common Eng., of Anglo-Sax. origin

--poet. peculiarities in the use of

--peculiar use of those of two syllables in \_ly\_, by MILT. and his

contemporaries

--\_Adverbial phrase\_, a needless and improper designation in analysis

\_Affectation\_ of fine writing, PREC. against

\_Ago\_ and \_since\_, difference between

AGREEMENT, of words, defined

--with what synonymous

--\_Agreement\_, how many of the parts of speech in Eng., incapable of;

none necessary between words unrelated

--as differing from relation

--of words in the same construc., not easy to determine

--rules of, as applied to articles, impertinent

--\_Agreements\_, syntactical, in Eng., specified

--\_Agreement\_, general principles of

--figurative, of pronouns with antecedents

\_Ah\_, sometimes departs from usage

\_Alexandrine verse\_, description of

\_Alias\_, for the equivocal \_or\_, use of, in judicial proceedings

\_All\_, when may be reckoned a noun

\_Allegory\_, defined

--\_Allegory\_ includes most parables of Script., and some fables

\_Alphabet\_, Eng., names and plur. numb. of the letters

--Hebrew, names and characters of, given,

--Greek, do.

--Latin, names of the letters of, scarcely known even to the learned;

account of its letters

--A \_perfect alphabet\_ in Eng., what it would effect

--Letters of the \_alphabet\_, when and how used in the sciences

\_Alphabetic writing\_, its advantage over the syllabic

\_Ambiguous, construc.\_, with respect to the \_class\_ of a word

--do., with resp. to the \_case\_ of a word

--\_expressions\_, PREC. against

\_Amen\_, use and import of

\_Among\_ and \_amongst, amid\_ and \_amidst\_, different in sense and construc.

from \_between\_ and \_betwixt\_

--incompatible with the distributive \_one an other\_

--derivation of, from Sax.

\_Amphibrach\_, defined

\_Amphimac, amphimacer\_, or \_Cretic\_, defined.

\_An\_, conjunc., obsolete for \_if\_ ("\_Nay\_, AN \_thou 'lt mouthe\_," &c.,

SHAK.,)

--derivation of, from Sax.

\_An, a\_, art., one and the same

--preferable form before a particular sound

--\_A\_ or \_an\_ before \_genus\_

--how commonly limits the sense

--belongs to sing. numb. only

--with adjective of numb.

--its effect upon proper and common nouns

--is without agreem.

--Whether \_an\_ is from \_a\_ or \_a\_ from \_an\_

--\_An, a\_, origin of

--of proportion

--with numerals

--by what definitives superseded

--implies unity; sometimes precedes collective noun conveying the idea

of plurality

--present usage of, how differs from that of ancient writers

--use of, before \_humble\_, and its compounds and derivatives

--erroneous use of, as relating to a plural

--not to be used for \_the\_, to denote emphat. a whole kind

\_Analysis\_, "to analyze a sentence," what

--\_Analysis\_ of sentences shown in five different methods; which method

BROWN calls "the best and most thorough"

--\_Analysis\_, notices of the different methods of

--importance of, in teaching grammar; the truest method of, \_parsing\_

\_Anapest\_, defined

\_Anapestic verse\_, treated

--what syll. of, has stress; first foot of, how may be varied

--what variation of, produces composite verse

--whether a surplus syll. in, may compensate for a deficient one

--what number of syllables in the longest measure of

--\_Anapestic verse\_ shown in its four measures

--\_Anapestic\_, measures, why few

--\_poetry\_, pieces in general short

--(instance of a long piece, L. HUNT'S "Feast of the Poets,")

\_And\_, discriminated from \_or\_

--when preferable to \_with, or\_, or \_nor\_

--whether emphatic of word or phrase following it ("\_Part pays\_, AND

\_justly\_;" &c., POPE,)

--derivation of, from Sax.

\_Anglo-Saxon\_ dialect, and accessions thereto, as forming the modern Eng.

lang.

\_An other\_, see \_Other\_

\_Antecedent\_, proper sense of the term

--sometimes placed after its pronoun

--sometimes doubly restricted

--of pron., applied figuratively

--sing., with the adj. \_many\_, and a plur. pron.

--suppressed

--\_Antecedents\_ of different persons, numbers, and genders,

disjunctively connected, how represented

--joint, agreem. of pron. in ellipt. construct. of

\_Antibacchy\_, or \_hypobacchy\_, defined

\_Antiquated\_ words and modes of expression, more frequent in poetry than in

prose

\_Antithesis\_, defined

\_Aorist\_, or indefinite, may be applied to imperf. tense pot. and subjunc.

\_Aphæresis\_, defined

\_Apocope\_, defined

\_Apophasis\_, or \_paralipsis\_, explained

\_Apostrophe\_, mark, what denotes; for what sometimes used

--at what period introduced into the poss. case \_Apostrophe\_, figure,

defined

\_Apposition\_, Synt.

--agreement between words in

--\_Apposition\_, what, and from whom received this name

--different from \_same cases\_ put after verbs and participles not

trans.; false teachings of MURR. \_et al\_. hereon

--the rule for, to \_which\_ apposed term applied; whether words in,

should be parsed separately

--common rule and definition of, wherein faulty

--which word of, the \_explanatory\_ term; \_when\_ explan. word placed

\_first\_

--in what case of, either word may be taken as the explan. term,

--why two possessive words cannot be in

--two or more nouns in, where sign of possession put

--whether compat. with, to supply relative and verb between the apposed

words

--\_Apposition\_, appar., of noun without poss. sign, \_with\_ pron.

possess. ("YOUR \_success as an\_ INSTRUCTER,")

--noun or pron. emphat. repeated ("\_Cisterns, broken\_ CISTERNS," &c.,)

--appar., of a noun to a sentence

--of words differing in numb. ("\_Go\_ YE \_every\_ MAN,")

--of proper nouns with appellatives ("\_The river\_ THAMES,")

--act. verb followed by two words in

--whether requires any other agreem. than that of cases

--words in, punct. of

--of a common with a prop. name, use of capital lett.

\_Archaism\_, what

\_Aristotle\_, division of the Greek letters

--what neoterics wiser than; how considers the compounding or

non-compounding of terms

\_Arithmetical\_ numbers, relation of the terms in

ARRANGEMENT of words, term defined

--\_Arrang\_. of words, of what importance in synt.; whether it affects

the method of parsing words

ARTICLES, Etymol. of

--\_Article\_, defined

--\_Article\_, common noun without; Eng. nouns without, taken

indefinitely partitive

--words of mere \_being\_, used without

--\_Articles\_, how often inserted

--needless, to be omitted

--Classes of, named and defined

--Modificat. (\_an\_ short, to \_a\_, the only,)

--\_Articles\_, the frequent use of; freq. misapplication of

--to be distinguished from adjectives, and from each other

--appar. used for adverbs

--\_Article\_, Eng., its demonstrative character

--do., compared with the Gr. def. art.; no rule for \_agreement of\_,

appropriate in Eng.

--use of, before names of rivers

--\_Articles\_, Synt. of

--to what RELATE

--\_Article\_, with \_the poss. and its governing noun\_, only \_one\_, used

--one noun admits of one, only; before an adj., relates to a noun

understood

--why not repeated, as in Fr., before every noun of a series; why the

omission of, cannot constitute a proper ellips.

--position of, with respect to its noun; ditto, with respect to an adj.

and noun

--relative position of, and adj., not a matter of indifference

--excluded by certain pronom. adjectives; what ones precede it; its

position in respect to an adj. of quality, limited by \_too, so, as\_,

or \_how\_

--position of, when an adj. is preceded by another adv. than \_too, so,

as\_, or \_how\_

--do., when an adj. follows its noun

--whether the insertion or the omission of, can greatly affect the

import of a sentence

--\_Article\_, repetition of, with nouns connected

--do. with adjectives connected, and, oppos.

--added to each of two or more nouns sing., or a plural put ("THE

\_nominative and\_ THE \_objective\_ CASE," or "THE \_nominative and

objective\_ CASES,")

--use of, in special correspondence of phrases

--do., in correspondence peculiar

--do., in a series of terms

--erroneous use of, before the \_species\_, for THE; do., when the

\_species\_ is said to be of the \_genus\_ ("A JAY \_is a sort of\_ A

BIRD,")

--not used before names of the virtues, vices, &c., before limited

terms, and before nouns of definite signif.

--do. before titles or names mentioned merely as such

--do. before a part. not taken as a noun

--insertion or omission of, with respect to a comparison or an

alternation made with two nouns

--required in the construc. which converts a part. into a verbal noun

--\_Articles\_, what the false synt. of, includes

--Ellips. of \_article\_, shown

--\_Articles\_, derivation of

--frequently omitted by the poets See also \_Definite Article\_, and \_An,

A\_

\_Articulate\_ or \_elementary sound\_, nature of

\_Articulation\_, as defined by COMST.; do. by BOLLES

--\_Articulation\_, how differs from pronunciation

--the principles of, what they constitute

--a good one, what, in the view of COMST.; do., in what consists,

according to SHERID.; do. importance of; do., how delivers words

\_As\_, as subject or object of a verb, \_its\_ CLASS

--with a clause or sentence as anteced., do. \_As\_, as \_relative\_,

WEBST. absurd explanation of; CHAND. do.; BULL. denial

--to what construc. limited

--peculiarities with respect to position

--declined

--derivation of, from Teuton., DR. JOH.

--\_As follow, as follows\_, &c., construction of; MURR., himself

perplexed by TOOKE and CAMPB., delivers dubious instructions

concerning

--Opinion of NIX. and CROMB. concerning. \_As\_, as a conjunc., uniting

words in appos.

--between adj. or part. and its noun ("\_Actions\_ AS \_such\_")

--with ellips. of latter term of comparison ("\_For such\_ AS HE")

--\_As\_ and \_than\_, character and import of

--words connected by, generally put in the same case

--\_As

--as; as

--so; so\_ (preceded by a negative,)

--\_as; so

--as\_ (with an infin. following;) correspondents

\_Asking\_ and \_exclaiming\_, simple and appropriate \_names\_ for \_the marks

of\_, desirable

\_Aspirates\_, see \_Semivowels\_

\_Asterisk\_, use of. \_Asterism\_, do.

\_Ate\_, particular words ending in, peculiarities of

\_Auxiliary\_, defined

--\_Auxiliary\_, form of a verb, when preferable to the simp.

--verbs, are mostly defective

--do., are needful in the conjug. of English verbs

--do., inflection of, shown

--\_Auxiliaries\_ used as expletives

--\_Auxiliary\_, poet. placed after verb

\_Averse, aversion\_, whether to be construed with \_from\_ or \_to\_

\_Avoiding\_, verbs of, with part. in stead of infin.

\_Awkwardness, literary\_, Crit. N. censuring

\_Ay, I\_, assentive adv.

--\_Ay\_, sometimes improp. written for \_ah\_

B.

B, its name and plur. number

--its sound

--in what situations silent

\_Bacchy\_, described

BE, how varied

--CONJUGATED, affirmat.

--Use of the form \_be\_ for the pres. indic.

--\_Be\_, ellips. of the infin. often needlessly supposed by ALLEN \_et

al.\_

--whether it should be inserted after the verb \_make\_

--\_Is\_, contracted, giving its nom. the same form as that of the poss.

case ("\_A\_ WIT'S \_a feather\_," &c., POPE)

\_Become\_, &c., whether they demand the auxiliary \_am\_ or \_have\_

\_Besides\_, prep., in what cases proper to be used after \_else\_ or \_other\_,

in lieu of \_than\_

\_Between\_, cannot refer to more than two things

--\_Between\_ or \_betwixt\_, how differs in use from \_among\_ or \_amongst\_

--\_Between, betwixt\_, derivation of, from Sax.

\_Bible, the Holy\_, application of the name

--what is shown by Italics in the text of

--quotations in, how indicated

--abrupt transitions in

--its general accuracy of lang.

--in the lang. of, \_ye\_ and \_you\_, in what constructions not found

\_Bid\_, as commanding, or as promising, its construction with the infin.

\_Blair, Dr.\_, unjustly censures Addison's frequent use of \_that\_, as a

relative

\_Blank verse\_, as distinguished from rhyme

\_Blunders\_, as readily copied, as originated, by makers of school-books

--\_literary\_, Crit. N. concerning

\_Bombast\_, as opposed to purity, PREC. against \_Books\_, mentioned by name,

rule for capitals

\_Both\_, as conjunc., corresponding to \_and\_

--as adj.

--derivation of, acc. to DR. MURR.

\_Brace\_, its purpose

\_Breve\_, or \_stenotone\_, for what used

\_Brevity\_ of expression, sought in the ordinary business of life

\_Brokenness\_, or \_hitching\_, as a fault of style, PREC. censuring

\_But, save, as well as\_, construc. of two nouns connected by

--\_But\_, how has acquired the signif. of \_only\_

--in ambiguous construc. ("\_There cannot be\_ BUT \_one\_," &c., KAMES)

--as used for \_that\_, contrary to its import

--derivation of, from Sax.

--\_But\_ and \_save\_, whether they ever govern the obj. case as

prepositions

--\_Cannot but\_, construc. and signif. of

--\_Not but\_, to what equivalent, and the class of \_but\_

C.

C, name and plur. numb. of

--sounds of

--where silent

--with cedilla placed under (ç)

--written for a number

--\_Ch\_, sounds of

--\_Arch\_, sound of, before a vowel, and before a conson.

--\_Ck\_, final, for double \_c\_

\_Cadence\_, explained

--faulty, precept against, by RIPP.

--MURR. direction concerning

\_Cadmus\_, carried the Phoenician alphabet into Greece

\_Cæsura\_, signif. and application of

--\_Cæsural\_ or \_divisional pause\_; \_demi-cæsuras\_, or \_minor rests\_;

(see \_Pauses\_)

\_Can\_, verb, varied

--derivation and signif. of

--\_Can not\_ and \_cannot\_, with what distinction used

--\_Cannot\_, with a verb of \_avoiding\_, or with BUT

--\_Can, could, would\_, as principal verbs, by poet. use

\_Capital letters, capitals\_, for what used; how marked for the printer, in

manuscript

--what things are exhibited wholly in,

--Rules for the use of,

--use of, in comp. prop, names,

--needless,

--lavish use of, its effect,

--discrepancies with respect to, abound in books.

\_Cardinal numeral\_, distinguished from its corresponding ordinal,

--should \_follow\_ the ordinal, in a specification of a part of a

series, ("\_The first\_ TWO,").

\_Caret\_, in what used, and for what purpose.

\_Cases\_, in grammar, what,

--named and defined,

--nom. and obj., alike in form, how distinguished,

--on what founded, and to what parts of speech belong.

--(See \_Nominative Case\_, &c.)

--\_Cases\_, whether infinitives, participles, &c., can take the nature

of,

--what is the proper number of, to be assigned to Eng. nouns,

--what authorities for the true doctrine of three,

--discordant doctrine of sundry grammarians concerning the numb, of,

--WEBST. and MURR. opposite instructions concerning do.

--\_Cases\_, whether personal pronouns have two, only,

--rules for the construc. of,

--whether a noun may be in two, at once,

--whether Eng. verbs govern two,

--whether in Eng., as in Lat., when a verb governs two, the pass.

retains the latter case.

--\_Cases, same\_, (see \_Same Cases\_.)

--\_Cases\_, what kinds of words take different, after them.

--\_Case\_ of noun or pron. after part. governed by prep., whether

undetermined; err. of SANB. and BULL. hereon expos.; GREE. false

teaching, do.,

--\_doubtful\_, after participles, in what kind of examples found; canon

concerning do.

\_Case\_, technical term with printers, ("Letters of the \_lower case\_.")

\_Catachresis\_, how commonly explained, and what sort of fig.

\_Catalectic\_, when a measure is said to be.

\_Cedilla\_, from whom borrowed, and how applied.

\_Change\_, of numb. in the second pers., ineleg.,

--of the connective of two nominatives appar. requiring a plur. verb,

canon concerning.

--\_Changing\_ the scene, or deserting the principal subj., in a sent.,

PREC. against.

\_Chaucer's\_ imperfect measures, DRYDEN'S remarks on.

\_Cherokee\_ alphabet, some account of.

\_Cherubim\_ and \_seraphim\_, Heb. plurals, sometimes mistaken for singulars.

\_Chief terms\_, or \_principal parts\_, of a verb, necessary to be first

ascertained.

--\_Chief words\_ may be distinguished by capitals.

\_Circumflex\_, inflection, (see \_Inflection\_,)

--mark, use of.

\_Classes\_ under the parts of speech, what meant by.

\_Classification\_ of words, explanations to assist beginners in making,

--DR. WILSON'S observations on.

\_Clause\_, see \_Member\_.

\_Climax\_, defined.

\_Cognomination\_, relation of the article, in instances of, ("\_Alexander the

Great\_").

\_Collective noun\_, defined.

--\_Collective nouns\_, forms of, sing. and plur.; how understood,

--gend. of, how determined,

--by what relative represented.

--\_Collec. noun\_, represented by plur. pron.,

--in what two ways may be taken, and with what accord of pron.; the

plur. construc. of, under what fig. of synt. ranked by the old

grammarians,

--whether with a sing. definitive, admits a plur. verb or pronoun.

--\_Collec. nouns\_ generally admit of plur. form.

--\_Collect. noun\_, represented by sing. pron. neut.,

--uniformity of numb. to be preserved in words constructed with,

--agreem. of verb with,

--how determined whether it conveys the idea of plurality or not,

--strictures on the rules of ADAM, LOWTH, \_et. al.\_, concerning,

--NIX. notion of the construc. of verb and.

--\_Coll. nouns\_, partitive of plur., construc. of,

--as expressing collections of persons, or coll. of things, which most

often taken plurally,

--when not plur. in form, whether it admits of plur. adj. before it.

\_Colon\_, from what takes its name,

--for what used,

--in what year adopted in England,

--its utility maintained against some objectors,

--Rules for the use of,

--used by some between numb. of chap. and that of verse, in quotations

from the Bible.

\_Comma\_, from what takes its name,

--what denotes,

--less common in Germ. than in Eng.,

--its ancient form,

--Rules for the use of,

--use of, in a series of words.

\_Commanding, desiring, expecting\_, &c., verbs of, to what actions or

events, refer.

\_Commandments\_, the ten, how expressed as to \_forms\_ of verb,

--by what points divided in books,

--example of, versified in iamb. hexameter, by DR. WATTS.

\_Common gender\_, unnecessary and improper term in Eng. gram.

\_Common noun\_, defined,

--when admits of no art.,

--with def. art. sometimes becomes proper,

--by personif. often do.

--\_Common nouns\_ include the classes, \_collective, abstract\_, and

\_verbal\_.

--\_Common nouns\_, their nature and numerical distribution, as

distinguished from proper.

\_Comparative degree\_, defined.

--\_Compar. degree\_, why BROWN presents a new definit. of, in place of

his former one,

--true nature of

--whether always required in a comparison of two objects

--with what construc. proper in exclusive comparisons, canon of BROWN

--\_Comparatives\_, certain, not construed with the conjunc. \_than\_

--double, how to be considered and treated

--\_Comparative\_ terminations, to what adjectives not to be applied

--\_Compar. degree\_ in Gr. and in Lat., construc. of

--poet. connected to the positive

\_Comparison\_, defined

--\_Comparison, degrees of\_, named and defined

--what adjectives admit not of

--CHURCH. on the different, (and BROWN on CHURCH.)

--character of BROWN'S definitions of; do. of those of MURR. \_et al.\_,

exhibited

--MURR. definitions of, criticised

--relative nature of

--\_Comparison\_, regular

--to what adjectives applicable

--when preferable to the comparison by adverbs

--\_Comparison\_, HARR. on the degrees of; the positive a \_degree\_

--(in oppos. to HARR. \_et al.\_)

--\_Comparison of equality\_, what; sometimes involves solec.,

("\_Nothing\_ SO \_uncertain\_ AS,")

--\_Comparison of equality and of ineq.\_, canon on

--\_Comparison\_, adaptation of the terms of, to the deg. to be expressed

--belongs chiefly to comm. adjectives

--\_Comparis.\_, irregular

--\_Comparis.\_, whether to be mentioned in parsing adverbs

--inclusive, and exclusive

--\_Comparisons, extra\_, their impropriety

--Crit. N. on, See also \_Comparative Degree\_, and \_Superlative Degree\_.

\_Comparison\_ or \_contrast\_ of things, the resemblance or opposition how

rendered more striking

\_Complex prepositions\_, how may be formed

\_Composite orders\_ of verse, what uniformity of construc. they require

--\_Composite verse\_

--description of; why requires rhythm

--kinds of, unlimited; which preferable

--liable to doubtful scansion

\_Composition\_, the frequent practice of, necessary, in order to acquire a

good style, \_Composition\_ of language, two kinds of

\_Compound\_ or \_progressive form\_ of verb, how made

--exemplified in the verb READ, conjugated, what verbs do not admit of;

what it implies

--verbs of, having a pass. signif.

\_Compound word\_, defined, \_Compounds\_, permanent, consolidated; temporary,

formed by hyphen

--\_Comp. words\_, not to be needlessly broken

--two or more, not to be split

--when to be written with hyphen; when without it

--\_Compounding of words\_, unsettled usage respecting; manner of, in

Lat. and Gr.; arbitrary practice of, in Eng., its effect

--does not necessarily preclude their separate use

--propriety of, sometimes difficult to decide

--\_Compounds\_, orthog. of

--\_Compounding\_ the words of a reg. phrase, its impropriety

--\_Compound adjectives\_, see \_Adjectives, Compound\_.

\_Concord\_, (see \_Agreement\_.)

--\_Concords\_ and \_governments\_, examples of false ones from the

grammarians

--in Lat., diversely enumerated by the Lat. grammarians

\_Concrete \_terms for abstract qualities, poet. use of

\_Confusion\_ of senses, in use of pron., to be avoided

\_Conjugation\_ of a verb, defined

--what some teachers choose to understand by

--Conjugating a verb, four ways of, named

--\_Conjugation\_ of an Eng. verb, what the simplest form of

--\_Conjug.\_ of verbs, shown in five Examples

--(See also \_Compound\_ or \_Progressive\_, &c.)

--\_Conjugat.\_ negative, how made, interrogative, do.

--interrog. and negative, do.

CONJUNCTIONS, Etymol. of

--\_Conjunction\_, defined

--\_Conjunctions\_, how differ from other connectives

--nature and office of; R. F. MOTT quot.

--nature of the connexions made by

--how many in common use

--how parsed

--as "connecting the same moods, &c.," strictures on the doctrine of

MURR. \_et al.\_, concerning

--\_Conjunctions\_, classes of, named and defined

--(See \_Copulative Conjunction, Disjunc. Conj.\_, and \_Corresp.

Conjunc.)

--Conjunctions\_, List of

--appar. used as adverbs

--peculiar phrases having the force of

--importance of, as copulative or as disjunctive, to be carefully

observed

--\_Conjunctions\_, Synt. of

--do., in what consists, (MURR. \_et al.\_ teaching erron.)

--what connect

--declinable words connected by, why in the same case

--power and position of those that connect sentences or clauses

--absurd and contradictory notions concerning the office of, by LENN.,

BULL., \_et al.\_

--two or three coming together, how parsed

--\_Conjunction\_, followed by a phrase, and not a whole member

--connecting two terms to one

--do. two terms the same in kind or quality

--\_Conjunctions\_, to be used with due regard to import and idiom

--punct. of

--ellips. of, shown

--derivation of

--are mostly of Anglo-Sax. origin

--H. TOOKE'S derivations of, given

--poet. usage of \_or

--or\_, and \_nor

--nor\_

\_Conjunctive adverbs\_, what office perform; what classes of words embrace

--often relate equally to two verbs in different clauses

--list of

--\_whence, whither\_, &c., sometimes partake of the nature of pronouns

\_Connected terms\_, two, limited by a third, what both must be

--should be the same in kind or quality. \_Connected\_ adjectives, how

should be placed. \_Connective\_ words, or connectives, kinds of, named

--do., how may be distinguished

\_Consonants\_, divisions and subdivisions of

--properties of, as \_sharp, flat, labial\_, &c.

\_Construing\_, whether differs from parsing

\_Continuance\_ of action, see \_Compound\_ or \_Progressive\_

\_Contractions\_, in the orthog. and the pronunciation of words

--ocular, in printing poetry, not important

\_Correlatives\_, combinations of, ("\_Father's son\_,") how to be regarded

\_Corresponding\_, or \_corresponsive conjunctions\_, in what manner used

--named and exemplified in their several pairs

--nature of the terms standing in the relat. of

--the former of two, how parsed

--CHURCH. canon on the use of

--\_Or\_

--\_or\_, and \_nor\_

--\_nor\_, by poet. usage \_Crotchets\_, or \_brackets\_, how used

--confused and inaccurate teaching of WEBST. \_et al.\_, concerning

\_Cum\_ with an ablative, Lat., ("\_Dux\_ CUM \_aliquibus\_," &c.,) the construc.

imitated in Eng.

--canon on do.

\_Curves\_, or \_marks of parenthesis\_

--have been in use for centuries

--the use of, not to be discarded

--confused teaching of WEBST. \_et al.\_, respecting do.

--what used to distinguish

--clause enclosed by, how to be uttered; pause of do.

--Rules for the application of

\_Customary\_ actions require to be expressed by indic. pres.

D.

D, name and plur. numb.

--sounds of

--written for a number

\_Dactyl\_, defined

\_Dactylic verse\_

--stress, on what syll. laid; what rhyme it generally forms

--is not very common; seldom pure and regular

--shown in its eight measures

--has been but little noticed by prosodists and grammarians

--misconceived and misrepresented Rev. D. BLAIR

\_Dare\_, construc. with infin. foll.

--Use of the form DARE for the third pers. sing.

\_Dash\_, the mark, explanation of

--LOWTH \_et al.\_ make no mention of

--Rules for the application of

--\_Dash\_, needless, how to be treated

--between quotation and name of the author

--applied to side-title

--used to signify omission

\_Dates\_, ordinarily abbreviated; how best written

--objectives in, without their prepositions

\_Dative case\_, faulty relic, in Eng., of old Sax., ("\_It ascends\_ ME

\_into\_," &c., SHAK.)

\_Days\_ of the week, names of, to be reckoned prop. names, and written with

capital

\_Deaf and dumb\_

--The \_deaf and dumb\_, to whom the letters represent no sounds, learn

to read and write; what inferred herefrom

\_Defective verb\_, what verb so called

--which tenses of, wanting

--\_Defective verbs\_, whether they should be reckoned a distinct class

--\_may, can, must\_, and \_shall\_, not to be referred to the class of

--\_will, beware\_, &c., construc. and import of explained

--\_Defec. verbs\_, List of

\_Definite article\_, defined

--\_Definite art.\_, its demonstrative character

--used before names of rivers

--do. by way of eminence

--no rule of agreem. for, in Eng.

--prefixed as an adv., to comparatives and superlatives

--repeated before every term in a series of adjectives used ellipt. as

nouns

--used for a poss. pron., ("\_Full in\_ THE \_face\_")

--position with respect to its noun

--required before antecedent to a restricted relative. See also \_The\_

\_Definition\_, defined

--A \_perfect definition\_, what

--\_Definitions\_, needful qualities of certain, in gram.

--bad, peculiar vice of

--Crit. N. on

\_Definitives\_, what, in Eng., and how to be classed

--example to show what is meant by

--\_Definitive\_ word required before antecedent to restricted relative

\_Degrees of comparison\_, see \_Comparison\_

\_Deity\_, names of, use of capitals in

--in all languages, masc.; direct names of, do.. The sing. numb,

universally employed in reference to the Supreme Being

\_Demonstratives\_, from the class, pronominal adjectives

\_Derivation\_, as a topic of gram., what explains

--importance of

--a knowledge of what languages will throw light on the subject of Eng.

\_Desiring\_, verbs of; see \_Commanding\_

\_Desisting\_, verbs of; with part., in stead of infin.

\_Despauter\_, (Despauterius Joannes,) grammarian, when died

--his Lat. Gram.

--his remark on the origin of using plur. pron. of second pers. for

sing.

--gives the rule that the \_verb governs the nominative before it\_

\_Diæresis\_, or \_dialysis\_, mark, place and use of

--explained

\_Diesis\_, or \_double dagger\_, for what purpose used. \_Dimeter\_, line,

\_iambic\_, examples of

--\_trochaic\_, do.

--\_anapæstic\_, do.

--\_dactylic\_, do.

\_Diphthong\_, defined

--\_Diphthongs\_, distinction of

--enumeration and specification of the Eng.

\_Discourse\_, or \_narration\_, its nature and requirements

\_Disjunctive conjunction\_, defined

--\_Disjunctives\_, List of

--\_Disjunctive\_ OR, see \_Or\_

\_Distance\_, see \_Time\_, &c.

\_Distribution\_, of words into classes, a matter of some difficulty;

explanations concerning, for learners

--of verbs in Lat., grammarians have disputed respecting

\_Distributives\_, of the class \_pronominal adjectives\_

--\_Distributive\_ term sing. in apposit. with a plur.

\_Division, literary\_, see \_Literary Division\_

\_Do\_, verb, how varied:

--particular uses of

--in what manner may be substituted for an other term

\_Double comparatives\_ and \_double superlatives\_, how may be regarded;

canon; (LATH. and CHILD)

\_Double negatives\_, see \_Negation\_, and \_Negatives\_

\_Doubling\_ of the final consonant before additional syll.; not doubling,

before do.

--\_Double\_ letter retained

--\_Doubling\_, certain letters incline to; others, do not

\_Doubtful case\_ after a part., in what kind of examples found; the

construc. to be avoided

\_Drink\_, verb, grammarians greatly at variance respecting the pret. and the

perf. part. of

\_Dual\_ number, found in Gr. and in Arab., what denotes

\_Duplication\_, see \_Doubling\_

\_Du Vivier, G.\_, his \_Grammaire des Grammaires\_, and his \_Traité des

Participes\_, a copious treatment of the Fr. participle

E.

E, (as A, O, I, and U,) self-naming:

--how spoken and written

--its plur.

--sounds properly its own

--final, mute, and to what belongs; exceptions

--effect on preced. vowel, of \_e\_ mute after a sing. conson., or after

\_st\_, or \_th\_

--diphthongs beginning with

--triphthongs do.

\_Each\_, pronom. adj., always of the third pers. sing.; its agreements.

\_Each other\_, see \_Other\_

\_Ecphoneme\_, or note of exclamation

--occasional introduction into the classics

--diversely called by MURR. \_et al.\_

--for what used, and of what a sign

--Rules for the application of

\_Ecphonesis\_, defined

\_Either\_ and \_neither\_, pronom. adjectives, relate to two only

--M. HARR. on the illegit. use of

--their numb. and pers.; what agreements they require, when they are

the leading words in their clauses

--derivation of, from the Sax.

\_Either

--or, neither

--nor\_, corresponsives:

--transposed, with repeated disjunction or negat.

\_Elegiac stanza\_, description of

\_Elementary sound\_, or \_elements of speech\_, defined. See \_Sounds\_

\_Ellipsis\_, figure defined

--either not defined by grammarians in general, or absurdly defined

--frequent in comp. sentences

--to be supplied in parsing

--\_supposed\_, may change the construc. without affecting the sense

--the principle of, as explaining several questionable but customary

expressions, ("\_Fair and softly\_ GOES \_far\_")

--MURR. on "THE \_ellipsis\_"

--\_Ellipsis supplied\_, EXAMPLES of

--Needless \_ellipses\_, the supposition of, to be avoided

--\_Ellipses\_, faulty, as opposed to perspicuity, PREC. against.

\_Ellipsis\_, or \_suppression\_, mark of, how figured, and what used to

denote

\_Elliptical\_ construction of nouns, ("\_A horse, a horse\_," &c., SHAK.)

\_Elocution\_, defined

\_Else, other\_, &c., with \_than\_, in exclusive comparisons

--\_Else\_ or \_other\_, sometimes construed with \_besides\_

--\_Else\_, derivation of

\_Emphasis\_, defined:

--comparative view of accent and

--as connected with quantity, MURR.

--as affecting accent

--what the guide to a right.

--\_Emphatic\_ words, not to be multiplied

\_Enallage\_, defined

--signif. of the Gr. word

--special application of the term

--with what other terms synonymous

--the most common forms of, in Eng.

--examples of, how differ from solecisms

--too much latitude was given to the fig. by Despauter, and by others

\_Enallixis\_, see \_Enallage\_

\_Ending\_ of a sentence with an adv., a prep., or any inconsid. word or

phrase, PREC. concerning

\_English Grammar\_, see \_Grammar\_

\_English language\_, some account of its origin

--its character

--its simplicity and facility asserted by LOWTH

--its chief defect, according to DR. JOH.

\_Enumeration\_ of numbers, see \_Addition\_

\_Epicene nouns\_, see \_Generic Names\_ \_Epithets\_, new compound, poets

frequently form

\_Equivalence\_, the argument of, has often led into errors

\_Equivocal\_, or \_ambiguous construc.\_ of cases, to be avoided

--of rel. pron., by misplacement

--of prep. with converted part., how amended

--of the word \_but\_, ("\_There cannot be\_ BUT \_one\_," &c.)

--of words, leaving the classification doubtful, Crit. N. concerning

--\_Equiv.\_, or \_ambig\_. expressions, as opposed to propriety, PREC.

against

\_Eroteme\_, its form in Greek

--derivation; fitness of the name

--diversely called by MURR. \_et al\_.

--its use

--Rules for do.

--its value as a sign of pause

--retained by a quoted question

\_Erotesis\_, explained

\_Errors, incorrigible\_, Crit. N. concerning

ETYMOLOGY

--\_Etymol.\_, of what treats

--when and how should be taught

--\_figures of\_, term defined; the principal do., named and defined

--\_Etymology\_ and meaning of words, HARRIS on the usefulness of

disquisitions into

\_Ever\_, contrac., \_e'er\_; so in comp. rel. pronouns

--\_Ever a one\_, contrac. by the comm. people into \_e'er a one\_

--\_Ever\_ and \_never\_, opposite to each other in sense, yet freq.

confounded and misapplied; canon on the employment of

--\_Ever so\_, (prop., \_everso\_,) signif. of

--\_Ever so wisely\_, its propriety determined, against the false

phraseology \_never so wisely\_

--\_Ever\_, derivation of, from Sax.

\_Example\_, as used in teaching, meaning of

--\_Examples\_, use of capitals in

\_Exception\_, noun, and \_except\_, verb, whether more properly followed by

\_from\_ or by \_to\_

\_Exclamation\_, note of, (see \_Ecphoneme\_)

--\_Exclamation\_, nom. absolute by

--the \_case\_ of nouns used in

\_Exclusive\_ and \_inclusive terms\_ of a comparison

\_Exercise\_, in grammar, what

\_Expecting\_, &c., verbs of, see \_Commanding\_

\_Extended\_ compositions, gradation of the parts in

F.

F, its name and plur. numb.

--final in monosyllables, to be doubled

--formation of the plur. of nouns in, and in \_ff\_

--its sound

\_Fable\_, how may be defined

--What the term denotes in the Scriptures

\_Fall short of, make bold with\_, &c., how the adjective in such phrases is

to be explained in parsing

\_False identification\_, (under synt. of SAME CASES,) Note exposing the

error of

\_Falsities\_ in sentences, Crit. N. directed against

\_Feel\_, its construc. with the infin.

\_Few\_ and \_many\_, form and construc. of. \_Fewer\_, see \_Little\_

FIGURES, treated

--\_Figure\_, in gram., what

--\_Figures\_, distinctive names of some; frequent occurrence of those of

rhetoric

--\_Figure of words\_, signif. of the term

--\_Figure of words\_, Rules for

--suggestions additional to do.

--unsettled and variable usage in that which relates to

--\_Figure of orthog.\_, what; what the principal \_figures of\_ do.

--\_Figure of etymol.\_, what

--\_Figures of etymol.\_, the principal, named and defined

--\_Figure of synt.\_, what

--\_Figures of synt.\_, the principal, named and defined

--\_Figure of rhet.\_, what

--\_Figures of rhet.\_, why certain are called \_tropes\_

--on what mostly founded

--the principal, named and defined

--affect the agreem. of pronouns with their antecedents

--\_Figures\_, how many BROWN deems it needful to define and illustrate

--\_Figures\_, definitions of sundry, in the lang. of authors,

\_corrected\_, KEY. \_Figures\_, Arabic, in what cases \_pointed\_ by some

\_Final f, l\_, or \_s\_, in spelling; other finals than, in do.

--\_ck\_ or \_c\_, use of

--\_ll\_, to what confined

--\_e\_ of a primitive, when omitted; when retained

--\_y\_ of a prim. word before a terminat., how managed

--\_ise\_ or \_ize\_, which termination to be taken

--\_Finals\_, what letters may assume the position of; what may not, and

why

\_Finite\_ verbs, \_agreem. of, with subjects\_, a principle of Univ. Gram.

--Rules concerning

--\_Fin. verb\_ understood, punct. of \_First words\_, initial capital to

--faulty practice of grammarians with respect to

\_Foot, poetic\_, see \_Poetic Feet\_

\_Foreign\_ words or idioms, unnecessary use of, in opposition to purity

\_For\_, with \_all\_, as equivalent to \_although\_

--\_For as much as\_, &c., having the nature of conjunctions

--\_For that\_

--\_For\_, with perf. part., ("FOR \_lost\_")

--with \_ever\_

--before TO \_and infin.\_

--as introducing its object before an infin.. \_For\_, conj., \_because\_,

from Sax.; anc. expressed \_for that\_

\_Forever\_, or \_for ever\_, its class

\_Former\_ and \_latter\_, nature and applic. of \_Forms of letters\_, in type or

character

--\_Forms\_ OF VERBS, a knowledge of THE TRUE, nothing more important in

gram. than \_Forsooth\_, signif. and use of

\_Friends\_, the Society of; their employment, in familiar discourse, of the

sing. pron. of the second pers.

--generally neglect to compound their numeral names of the months and

days

--their misemployment of \_thee\_ for \_thou\_

--their manner of speaking, different from the solemn style

--examples of their manner of forming the verb with the pron. \_thou\_;

their simplificat. of the verb

\_From\_, derivation of, from Sax.

--\_From forth, from out\_, construc. of, explained

--\_Off from\_, examp. of the use of

\_Full\_, in permanent compounds, how written; in temporary do., do.

--compounds in, (\_spoonful, handful\_, &c.,) how pluralized

\_Future, contingency\_, how best expressed

\_Future tense\_, FIRST, how formed, and what expresses

--SECOND, do., do., and how varied

\_Futurity\_, often denoted by the infin., ("\_The world\_ TO COME")

G.

G, its name and plur.

--its sounds

--when silent

--\_Gh\_, sounds of, and silence

\_Gardiner, W.\_, his new analysis of the Eng. alphab., noticed

\_Genders\_, term defined

--\_Genders\_, the diff., named and defined

--on what founded, and to what belong

--\_Gender\_, inconsistent views of, as given by many of the grammarians;

WELLS and MURR. criticised

--confounded with \_sex\_ by some writers; others otherwise confuse the

matter

--\_Common gender\_, of the old grammarians, the term objectionable with

respect to Eng.

--\_Gender\_, how in many instances determined

--figuratively ascribed, how indicated

--denoted by \_he\_ and \_she\_ prefixed to nouns

--denied by MURR. \_et al\_. to pronouns of the first and second persons

--of pron., the \_preference\_ of, when joint antecedents are of

different genders

\_General\_ truths and customary actions, to be expressed by the indic. pres.

\_Generic\_ names, sense and construc. of

"\_Genitives, double\_," discovered by our grammarians, the true explanation

of all such

\_Gentile names\_, nature and construc. of

\_German language\_, form of its type

--use of the comma less freq. in, than in Eng.

\_Gerund\_, Lat., explanation of

--what form of an Eng. participle corresponds to

--"Gerund in English," how becomes "a substantive," according to DR.

ADAM \_et al.\_, \_Gerundives\_, what

\_Giving, paying, procuring\_, &c., verbs of, with ellips. of \_to\_ or \_for\_

before the objective of the person

GOVERNMENT, of words, defined

--to what parts of speech has respect

--the rules of, whether to be applied to the governing or the governed

words

--do., how many in the best Lat. grammars; usual faults in the

distribution of these

--\_Governments\_ in Eng. synt. how many

--false, examples of, cited from grammarians

\_Grecism\_, literal, in Eng., ("\_Before Abraham was\_, I AM") comp.

GRAMMAR, defined

--An English Grammar, what professes to be

--ENGLISH GRAMMAR, what in itself; what knowledge implies

--when worthy to be named a science

--\_Grammar\_, how to be taught, and its principles how made known

--the true principles of, in whose possession

--\_a rule of\_, what

--\_Grammar\_, how divided; its parts, of what severally treat

--what it requires

--rightly learned, what ability it confers

--what many vain pretenders to, have shown by their works

--on questions of, the practice of authors should have more weight than

the dogmatism of grammarians. \_Grammars of different languages\_, how

far must needs differ; strictures on those of PROF. BULL., \_A grammar

designed for English\_, the chief end of. \_Grammatical doctrine\_, the

truth of, in what consists

\_Granting, supposing\_, &c., see \_Admitting\_

\_Grave accent\_, as opposed to \_acute\_

--as preserving the vocality of \_e\_

\_Greek\_ alphabet, characters of, shown and named

\_Guillemets\_, or \_quotation points\_, what words they distinguish

--how applied to a quotation within a quotation

--not used in our common Bibles; the defect in what measure relieved

H.

H, its name and plur. numb.

--its sound

--in what words silent

--in what positions do.

--\_an\_ used formerly before all words beginning with

\_Hand\_, or \_index\_, use of

\_Handwriting\_, script letters in

\_Harmonical pauses\_, see \_Pauses\_

\_Have\_, verb, how varied

--derivation of; with perf. part., import of the tense

--\_Had\_, with \_better, rather\_, &c., before the infin.

\_He\_ and \_she\_, sometimes used as nouns

--as prefixed to nouns to denote gend.

--whether to be connected by a hyphen to the nouns to which prefixed

\_Hear\_, with objective, and an infin. without \_to\_

--with infin. alone, perhaps ellipt, ("\_I\_ HAVE HEARD TELL")

--\_Heard\_, verb, why irregular

--its pronunc.

\_Hebrew\_ letters, some account of; names, characters, and significations of

--whether they are, or are not, all consonants, long a subject of

dispute

--The

\_Hebrew\_ names for the months, were prop. nouns

--\_Hebrew\_, what pointing adopted in

\_Hence, thence, whence\_, with \_from\_ prefixed. "\_I'll\_ HENCE," see

\_Adverbs\_

\_Heptameter\_ line, \_iambic\_, examples of

--\_trochaic\_, do

--\_dactylic\_, do.

\_Here, there, where\_, force of, when compounded with prepositions

--with verb of motion, perh. allowable for \_hither, thither, whither\_.

\_Hereof, thereof, whereof\_, placed after nouns, what to be called.

\_Herein, therein\_, &c., their class and nature

\_Heroic verse\_, see \_Pentameter\_

\_Heterogeneous terms\_, in general, two such not to be connected by a

conjunc.

\_Hexameter\_ line, \_iambic\_, examples of

--\_trochaic\_, do

--\_dactylic\_, do.

\_Hissing\_ sounds, concurrence of, in forming the poss. case, how avoided

\_Hold\_, noun, after \_lay, take\_, &c., whether preferably construed with

\_of, on\_, or \_upon\_

\_Hoping\_, &c., verbs of, see \_Commanding\_

\_How\_, after nouns of manner, its nature

--not to be used before \_that\_, or in stead of it

--derivation of, from Anglo-Sax.

\_Hyperbaton\_, explained

--its frequency in poetry; how should be used

--is diff. from synchysis

\_Hyperbole\_, defined

--\_Hyperboles\_, by what commonly expressed

\_Hypermeter\_, meaning of, in scansion

\_Hyphen\_, its uses

--present use in compound names

--Rules for the insertion of, in compounds

--signif. of the name

--\_Hyphen\_, abuse of

--CHURCH, on the use of, in comp. words

--in the \_figure\_ of an adj., with a change of the synt. and sense

--necessary with a verbal noun and an adjunct

--do. with comp. participles, converted

\_Hypobacchy\_, or \_antibacchy\_, defined

I.

I, lett., self-naming; its plur.

--its usual sounds

--diphthongs beginning with; triphth. do., \_I\_, pron. with cap. lett.,

\_I\_, as written for a number. \_I\_, adv., see \_Ay\_

\_Iambic verse\_, treated

--\_Iamb. verse\_, stress where laid in; effect of a short syll. added to

a line of

--shown in its eight measures

--is seldom pure through a long succession of lines

--some of its diversifications shown. See also \_Dimeter, Trimeter\_, &c.

\_Iambus\_, or \_iamb\_, defined

\_Idea of unity\_, and of \_plurality\_, how formed

\_Identity of words\_, the principle of, considered

--\_Identity, proper\_, RULE for, ("Same Cases.") \_Identification\_,

false, N. concerning

\_Idioms\_ or peculiarities of expression, when to be approved or valued

\_If\_, the Biblical use of, to express an emphat. negation

--its derivation from Sax.

\_Ignorance, literary\_, Crit. N. concerning

\_Imagery\_, or \_Vision\_, explained

\_Imperative mood\_, defined

--\_Imperat. mood\_, why so called; in what manner applied

--its one tense, and the import of do

--its inflection shown in the verb LOVE, conjugated

--what nominatives only it takes

--use of, in the Gr. lang.; do., in Lat., Ital., Fr., and Span

--may have all the persons and numbers

--poet.

\_Imperfect tense\_, defined

--\_Imperf. tense\_, the \_form\_, how far applicable to the Eng. tense so

called

--in its simple form is the \_preterit\_

--in the pot. and subj. moods, an aorist

--of the indic. and the subj., how distinguished

--of the sub., to express a mere supposition, with indef. time

\_Imperfect participle\_, or \_first part.\_, defined

--its form

--The \_first part.\_, has been variously called

--why rightly termed \_imperfect participle\_

--for what forms of the Lat. gram., stands

--is applicable to time pres., past, or fut.; is not always active,

even when derived from an act. verb

--may be turned to a multiplicity of uses

--appar. put absolute, (\_Admitting,

--Allowing\_, &c.)

--distinguished, with respect to governm., from a particip. noun

--as equivalent to infin. mood; heads of regular equivalence

--how compares with the Lat. gerund

--its nature and construc.

\_Impersonal verbs\_, so called, their peculiarity of use

--called \_monopersonal\_ by some

\_Impropriety\_ of language, what embraces

\_In\_ and \_into\_, difference between; nature of the relation expressed by

each; derivation of, from Sax.

\_Inclusive\_ and \_exclusive\_ terms of a comparison

\_Incorrigible errors\_, Crit. N. concerning

\_Indefinite article\_, see \_An, A\_ \_Indefinite pronouns\_, of the class

\_pronom. adjectives\_

\_Independent\_, see \_Absolute\_

\_Index\_, or \_hand\_, use of

\_Indicative mood\_, defined

--\_Indic. mood\_, why so called; its nature and use

--use of its pres. tense

--do. of its form of the pluperf. in lieu of the pot. pluperf.

--wherein differs characteristically from the subj.; the two moods

continually confounded by writers

--\_Indic. mood\_, format, and inflec. of its tenses shown in the verb

LOVE, conjug.

--employed to express a conditional circumstance assumed as a fact

\_Inelegance\_ of language, see \_Awkwardness\_.

\_Infinitive mood\_, defined

--\_Infin. mood\_, so called in oppos. to the other moods

--usually distinguished by the prep. \_to\_ before it

--its \_pres.\_, the ROOT, or radical verb; what \_time\_ it expresses

--archaic form in \_en\_

--its two tenses shown in the verb LOVE, conjug.

--Synt. of

--\_Infin. mood\_, by what governed; (see \_To\_:)

--true construc. of, explained by the 18th Rule of the Synt.

--why simple of solution in Eng.; whether ever governed by a prep, in

Fr., Span., or Ital.

--whimsical account of, given by NIX.

--how expressed in the Anglo-Sax. of the 11th century

--why may not, as some grammarians teach, be | considered a noun

--DR. WILS. on the charac. and import of

--to what other terms may be connected

--what in its nature, and for what things chiefly may stand

--taken abstractly, as subject of finite verb

--Loose \_infinitives\_, improp. in precise language

--\_Infin. mood\_, position of

--misplacement of, to be avoided

--distinction of voice in, often disregarded, ("\_You are to\_ BLAME;")

hypercrit. teachings of SANB. and BLAIR hereon

--\_Infin.\_, after \_bid, dare\_, &c., without TO

--whether used with TO after \_have, help\_, and \_find\_

--\_Infin.\_, BY WHAT \_governed\_, often imposs. to say, according to the

instructions of MURR.

--\_Infinitives\_ connected, governed by one preposition

--\_Infinitive\_, ellipsis of, after \_to\_, whether to be approved

--sometimes doubtful whether transitive or intransitive

--in pause, or in remote dependence, punct. of

--poet. placing of

--Greek construc. of, in poetic use

\_Inflections\_, defined

--rising and falling, explained; do., as applied to questions

--\_notation\_ of, in writing and printing

--the rising more numerous than the falling; predominance of the rising

in oral lang.; the falling, for what used, COMST.

--what kind of rules for, have been given by writers

--the rising and the falling, to be used with prop. discrimination;

what should determine the direction of

--\_Inflection\_, what constitutes the \_circumflex\_

\_Innovation\_ extravagant, into the system of synt. or gram., a particular

instance of, noticed

\_Inscriptions\_ appear best in full capitals

\_Instead\_, what reckoned, and how best written

\_Intending\_, &c., verbs of, see \_Commanding\_.

\_Intensive\_ nature of comparatives and superlatives, A. MURR.

\_Interrogative pronouns\_, defined

--what they severally demand

--their use and construc.

--in what differ from relatives

--are always of the third pers.

--declined

--their place in a sentence

--their construc. of cases, to what similar

\_Interrogative\_ sentences, agreem. of verbs in

INTERJECTIONS, Etymol. of

--\_Interjection\_, defined

--derivation and signif. of the term; LOWTH'S error in describing the

\_interjections\_

--\_Interjections\_, numb. of, in common use

--List of

--\_Interjections\_, the frequent use of, an indication of

thoughtlessness; expressiveness of some \_interjections\_ in earnest

utterance, &c.

--should be discriminatively used

--chief characteristics of; referred to the class of \_adverbs\_ by the

Gr. grammarians

--significant words uttered as, ("\_Out! out!\_")

--appar. taken substantively

--Synt. of

--absolute construc. of

--have no construc. with cases, as in Lat. and Gr.

--appar., sometimes connected to other words by a prep., or by \_that\_

--place of

--punct. of

--ellips. of, shown

--derivation of

--frequency of, in poet. lang.

\_Inversion\_ of terms, sometimes of advantage, in respect to strength and

vivacity of expression.

\_Irony\_, figure explained

\_Is being\_, with a perf. part., or the subject of the UNCO-PASSIVE \_form of

verbs\_, canvassed

\_Ise\_ or \_ize\_, which of these terminations to be taken in forming

derivatives under Deriv. of Verbs

\_Ish\_, termination, whether it may be accounted a degree of comparison

\_It\_. its chief use

--declined

--to what creatures may be applied

--put for the distance, ("\_How far do you call\_ IT?" &c., PRIESTL.,)

--without definite reference to an anteced.

--as explet., and referring to something expressed afterwards; faulty

omission of, before verb, in such construc.

--had formerly no variation of cases

--its poss. form ITS, for \_of it\_, of recent origin, and not found in

the text of the common Bible

--wrongly excluded by some from the list of pers. pronouns:

--its derivation from Sax., traced

\_Italic letters, Italics\_, some account of

--for what purpose used

--how denoted in preparing manuscripts

J.

J, its name and plur. numb.

--why never doubled

--why never ends a word in Eng.

--impropriety of dividing on the letter, in syllabication

--sounds of,

\_Johnson, Dr. S.\_, his authority in Eng. orthography

\_Joint nominatives\_, agreem. of verb with

--whether words connected by \_with\_ can be used as. \_Joint

antecedents\_, agreem. of pron. with

--of different persons, agreem. of verb or pron. with, in ellipt.

construc.

\_Jumbling\_ together of the active voice and the passive, the manner of some

--\_Jumbling\_, senseless, Crit. N. censuring

K.

K, its name and plur.

--in general, not needed in words derived from the learned languages

--its sounds

--when silent

--Two Kays standing together

\_Kind, sort\_, with \_these\_ or \_those\_ improp. preceding

L.

L, its name and plur. numb.

--of the class \_liquids\_

--final, monosyllables ending in

--final double, to what words peculiar

--its sound; in what words silent

--where doubled

--written for a number

\_Labial\_ letters, how articulated

\_Language\_, the primitive sense of the term, what embraced; signif. of do.,

as now used

--in opposition to some grammarians, BROWN confines the term to speech

and writing

--loose explanations of the word by certain slack thinkers; WEBST.

notion of

--SHERID. idea of; KIRKH. wild and contradictory teachings concerning

--\_Language\_, PROPRIETY of, in what consists; IMPROPRIETY of, what

embraces

--PRECISION of, in what consists; Precepts concerning its opposites

--\_Language\_, Eng., (see \_English Language\_)

--\_Languages\_, uniform SERIES OF GRAMMARS for teaching the Eng., Lat.,

and Gr., that of DR. BULL., noticed

\_Lay, pay\_, and \_say\_, how written in the pret. and the perf. part.

\_Leading principles\_ in the construc. of sentences, in what embraced in the

Grammar

\_Least parts\_ of language, as written, as spoken, &c., what constituents so

called

\_Legal\_ phraseology, in contrast with that of common life

\_Less\_, improper use of, for \_fewer\_, ("\_No\_ LESS \_than three

dictionaries\_," DR. WEBST.)

\_Lest\_, use of, for THAT, without due regard to its import, ("\_I feared\_

LEST," &c.)

--derivation of, from Sax.

\_Let\_, verb, its construc, with an infin. following

LETTERS, in the Eng. alphabet, numb. of, and numb. of sounds which they

represent

--a knowledge of, in what consists

--infinite variety in, yet the letters always THE SAME

--different sorts of types, or styles of, used in Eng.

--names of, in Eng.; do., sing, and plur.

--Classes of, named and defined

--\_powers\_ of

--the JUST POWERS of, (see \_Power\_)

--Forms of, and their distinctions, in the Eng. lang.

--different sorts of, to be kept distinct

--slanting strokes of the Roman, described

--\_Italic\_, chief use of

--\_capital\_, employment of

--\_small\_, do.

--\_Letters\_, history of

--the names of, are words of a peculiar kind

--the names and powers of, not always identical

--general neglect of learning to write the names of, in Eng.

--importance of learning to write do.

--erron. teaching with respect to certain names of

--\_Letters\_ of the Heb. alphabet given, with their names, and the

significations of do.

--of the Gr. alphabet, with their names

--of the Lat. alphab., their names nearly lost

--of do., as now printed

--\_Letters\_, the twenty-six, possible combinations and mutations of

--of the alphab., \_read by their names\_, how taken

--do., written \_for numbers\_, what their nature; omission of \_period\_

after such letters

--DAY'S account of do.

--\_Letters\_, the SOUNDS of, treated

--\_Letters\_, the small, period of their adoption

--used for references

--\_Letter\_, definition of

--\_Letter\_, the sound of, called its POWER; yet its \_power\_ not

necessarily identified with its \_sound\_

--A \_letter\_, in what consists \_Like, near, nigh\_, appar.,

prepositions; why \_not placed\_ by BROWN with the prep. \_Lily, W.\_,

grammarian, his arrangement of Lat. syntax

\_Lines, poetic\_, technical denominations of

\_Liquids\_, what letters so called

\_Literary division\_ of a work, common order of, downwards, and throughout;

but all literary works not thus divided. \_Literary blunders\_, Crit. N.

concerning

--\_awkwardness\_, do.

--\_ignorance\_, do.

--\_silliness\_, do.

\_Little, lesser, less\_, different uses and import of

--\_Little, much\_, &c., preceded by \_not, too\_, or other such adv., how

taken

--\_Less\_, improp. used as an adj. of number; does not signify \_fewer\_;

not to be used in the sense of do.

--\_Less, least\_, adv., to be parsed separately, in the comparison of

adjectives and adverbs

LOVE, verb active-trans., CONJUGATED \_affirmatively\_

--BE LOVED, pass., do.

--LOVE, conjug. negatively

--do., interrogatively

--do., interrogatively and negatively

\_Low\_ and provincial expressions, use of, as opp. to purity, PREC. against

\_Ly\_, most common terminal of Eng. adverbs; added to nouns to form

adjectives

(I,) u; 1055, b; 1053, L:

--when adverbs ending in, are preferable to those of other forms.

M.

M, its name and plur. numb.,

--of the class \_liquids\_,

--its sounds,

--when silent,

--as written for a number.

\_Macron\_, or \_macrotone\_, mark, its use.

\_Make\_, verb, whether \_to\_ should be suppressed, and \_be\_, inserted, after,

("MAKE \_yourself\_ BE \_heard\_," BLAIR,)

--its construc. with infin. following.

\_Man\_ and \_woman\_, comp. nouns in, (\_man-servant, woman-servant\_, &c.,) how

pluralized.

\_Many a\_, with noun sing. represented by a plur. pronoun.

\_Marks\_, or \_points\_, used in literary composition, the principal;

occasional. See \_Punctuation\_.

\_May\_, verb, how varied,

--derivation and uses of.

\_Mean, means\_, use and construc. of.

\_Measure\_, &c., see \_Time. Measure, poetical\_, see \_Verse\_.

\_Melody\_ or beauty of a sentence, words necessary to, rarely to be omitted.

\_Member\_, or \_clause\_, defined.

--\_Memb\_. and \_clause\_, generally used as synonymous, are discriminated

by some,

--\_Clause\_ and \_phrase\_, confounded by some,

--\_Members\_, simple, of a sent., punct. of,

--complex, do., do.,

--\_Members\_ of a sentence, arrangem. of, as affecting STRENGTH.

\_Metaphor\_, defined,

--what commonly understood to be,

--agreem. of pron. with antecedent in cases of.

\_Methinks\_, explanation of; the lexicographers on the word.

\_Metonymy\_, defined,

--\_Meton.\_, on what founded,

--agreem. of pron. with its antecedent, in cases of.

\_Metres\_, more found in actual use, than those acknowledged in the ordinary

schemes of prosody. \_Metre\_, see \_Verse\_.

\_Milton\_, MURR. proposed amendment of the "unintelligible" language of a

certain passage of, criticised,

--double solec. in a pass, of, noticed,

--his poem, \_L'Allegro\_, what its versificat.; what the management of

the orders of its verse,

--do., \_Il Penseroso\_, what its extent and construction.

\_Miss\_ or \_Misses, Mr\_. or \_Messrs.\_, what the proper applicat. of, when

\_name and title\_ are to be used together, in a plur. sense.

\_Mistaken, to be\_, irregularity of the verb; its import as applied to

persons, and as applied to things.

\_Mimesis\_, explained; droll examples of.

\_Minus, plus, versus, viâ\_, Lat., use of, in Eng., in partic.

constructions.

\_Mixing\_ of synt. with etymol., the manner of INGERS., KIRKH., \_et al.\_,

censured. \_Mixture\_ of the \_forms\_ of style, inelegance of.

\_Modifications\_, defined,

--sense of the term as employed by BROWN.

\_Moloss\_, defined.

\_Monometer\_, scarcely constitutes a line, yet is sometimes so placed.

--\_Monometer\_ line, \_iambic\_, examples of,

--\_trochaic\_, do.,

--\_anapestic\_, do.,

--\_dactylic\_, an examp. of.

\_Monopersonal\_ verbs, see \_Impersonal Verbs\_.

\_Monotone\_, what, and how produced in elocution.

\_Months and days\_, names of, appar. proper names, and require capitals,

--how best expressed in literary compositions.

\_Moods\_ of a verb, term defined,

--the five, named and defined,

--\_Mood\_, or MODE, the name. See \_Infinitive Mood, Indic. Mood\_, &c.

\_More\_ and \_most\_, in ambiguous construction, ("\_Some people\_ MORE \_than

them\_," MURR.,)

--how parsed in comparisons of adjectives and adverbs.

\_Moses\_, in what characters, is supposed to have written.

\_Most\_, for \_almost\_, by vulgarism.

\_Motion\_, verbs of, with \_hither\_, &c., in stead of \_here\_.

\_Much, little, all\_, &c., as nouns,

--preceded by \_not, too\_, or other such adv.,

--\_This much\_, in stead of \_thus much\_, DR. BLAIR.

\_Mulkey, W.\_, strictures on his system of orthoëpy.

\_Multiplication\_, subject of the verb in, see \_Abstract Numbers\_.

\_Multiplicative\_ numerals, as running on in a series; how written above

decuple or tenfold.

\_Multitude\_, noun of, see \_Collective Noun\_.

\_Mute\_ or \_silent\_, epithet applied to what letters.

--\_Mutes\_, what so reckoned; of these, which imperfect.

--Where a letter must be \_once mute\_.

\_My\_ and \_mine, thy\_ and \_thine\_, as duplicate forms of the poss. case, use

of.

N.

N, its name and plur. numb.,

--of the class \_liquids\_,

--its sounds,

--in what position silent.

\_Name and title\_, see \_Proper Names\_.

\_Naming\_ the letters of the alphab., importance of.

\_Narration\_, see \_Discourse\_.

\_Nasals\_, what consonants so called.

\_Near\_ and \_nigh\_, see \_Like\_.

\_Need\_, as an uninflected third pers. sing. of the verb,

--has perh. become an \_auxiliary\_ of the pot. mood,

--to what tenses must be understood to belong, if to be recognized as

an auxil. of the pot. mood,

--that good writers sometimes inflect the verb, and sometimes do not,

and that they sometimes use \_to\_ after it, and sometimes do not, how

may be accounted for

--three \_authorized\_ forms of expression, with respect to the verb.

\_Needs\_, as an adv., its composition

\_Needless\_, mixing of characters in printing, bad effect of

--capitals; effect of

--articles, to be omitted

--ellipses, the supposition of, a common error among grammarians

--use of participles for nouns, or nouns for participles

--words, ineleg.

--possessive or art. before a part., how corrected

--periods, or other points, after certain numeral expressions

--abbreviations, offend against taste

--dashes inserted, how to be treated

\_Negation\_, expressed in the early Eng. by multiplied negatives; such

manner of expression now obsolete and improper

--Effect on a \_negation\_, of two negatives in the same clause

\_Negatives\_, the comm. rule of the grammars, that "two negatives, in Eng.,

destroy each other, or &c.," whether a correct one

\_Neither\_, see \_Either\_

\_Neuter verb\_, defined

--\_Neuter verbs\_, the \_active-trans\_. verbs are so called in most

grammars and dictionaries; the absurdity of this

--extent of this class of verbs; their existence in any lang. denied by

some grammarians

--Neut. verb BE, conjugated

--\_Neuter verbs\_, made from active-transitives, (\_am come, is gone\_,

&c.;) these called by some, "neuter passives"

--of passive form, (\_am grown, are flown\_, &c.,) as errors of

conjugat., or of synt.

--do., how may be distinguished from pass. verbs

--do., DR. PRIESTL. mistaken notions concerning their nature and

propriety

--\_Neut. verbs\_, and their participles, take the same case after as

before them

--\_Neuter verb\_ between two nominatives, its agreem.

\_Nevertheless\_, its composition and class

\_No\_ or \_none\_, pronom. adj. \_No\_, as negative adj., "remarkable ambiguity

in the use of," noticed by PRIESTL., ("\_No laws are better than the

English\_;") how the ambiguity may be avoided

--as a simple negation, its construc.

--as an adv. of deg., relating only to comparatives, ("NO \_more\_,"

--"NO \_better\_")

--set before a noun, is an adj., corresponding to Lat. \_nullus\_

--In the phrases, \_no longer, no more, no where\_, DR. JOH. appar.

suggests wrongly the class; its true class according to its several

relations

--\_No\_, or an other independent negative, \_repeated\_, its effect

--\_No\_, adv., not to be used with reference to a verb or part.

--derivation of, from Anglo-Sax.

\_Nominative case\_, defined

--\_Nom. case\_, how distinguished from the objective in nouns

--as subj. of a finite verb

--different ways of using

--\_Nominative\_ and verb, usual position of, and when varied

--\_Nom. case\_ and \_object.\_, at the same time, noun placed in the

relation of

--\_Nom\_. following a verb or part, with what must accord in signif. See

also \_Subject\_, &c.

\_Nominative sentences\_, examples of what MURR. erron. so terms; the prop.

construc. shown

\_Nor\_, see \_Or\_.

\_Not\_, its place in negative questions

--how spoken in grave discourse, and how ordinarily

--vulg. contractions of, with certain verbs

--used with other negatives

--do. with \_nor\_ (in stead of \_or\_) following, whether correctly, or

not

--derivation of, from Anglo-Sax. \_Not but\_, how resolved. \_Not only,

not merely\_, to what are correspondents

\_Notwithstanding\_, import and construc. of; misunderstood by DR. WEBST.

--formation and signif. of

NOUNS, Etymol. of

--\_Noun\_, defined

--\_Nouns\_, Classes of, named and defined

--Modifications of, named

--Persons of, named and defined; (see \_Persons\_)

--Numbers of, do.; (see \_Plural Number\_)

--Genders of, do.; (see \_Genders\_)

--Cases of, do.; (see \_Cases\_)

--Declension of

--\_Nouns\_, number of, in Eng.

--the sense of, how made indefinitely partitive

--examples of words commonly belonging to other classes, used as

--\_collective, abstract\_, and \_verbal\_ or \_participial\_, included among

common nouns; (see \_Collective Noun\_, and \_Particip. Noun\_)

--proper, (see \_Proper Names\_)

--\_Nouns\_, Synt. of

--\_Noun\_, why may not be put in the relation of two cases at once

--taken figuratively sing. for literally plur.

--required to be repeated, or inserted, in stead of a pronoun

--ellips. of, shown

--\_Nouns\_ of \_time, measure, distance\_, &c., (see \_Time\_)

--\_Nouns\_, derivation of, from nouns, adjectives, verbs, or participles

--poet. peculiarities of

\_Numbers\_, the distinction of, to what belongs, and how applied. (See

\_Plural Number\_.) \_Numbers\_, cardinal, ordinal, &c., (see \_Cardinal

Numbers\_, &c.)

--\_Numbers\_, abstract, expressions of multiplication in, ("\_Twice one\_

IS \_two\_,"

--"\_Twice two\_ ARE \_four\_," &c.,) seven different opinions of

grammarians respecting, examined by BROWN; who determines the prop.

forms of expression

--\_Numbers\_, expressed by letters, how to be considered; whether to be

marked by the period

--combined arithmetical, one adjective relating to an other

\_Numerals, numeral adjectives\_, see \_Adjectives, Numeral\_. \_Numerical

figures\_ used for references

O.

O, lett., as A, E, I, and U, self-naming

--its plural

--formation of the plur. of nouns in

--sounds properly its own

--where sounded as short \_u\_

--do. as obscure \_e\_

--diphthongs beginning with

--triphth. do. \_O\_, interj., with cap. lett.

--what emotion indicates

--differs from \_oh\_

--as denoting earnestness, before nouns or pronouns put absol. by

direct address; is no positive index of the vocative

--\_O\_, &c., MURR., erron. doctrine concerning, to what teaching it has

given rise

--\_O\_, &c., with a case following, Lat. construc. of, examined

--\_O\_, not unfreq. confounded with \_oh\_, even by grammarians.

\_Obelisk\_, or \_dagger\_, as mark of reference.

\_Objective case\_, defined

--\_Obj. case\_, how distinguished from the \_nom.\_ in nouns

--before the infin. mood, how taken in Eng.

--as governed by active-trans. verb or part.

--"Active verbs govern the \_obj. case\_," MURR., defect of this brief

assertion; its uselessness as a RULE for "the syntax of verbs."

--\_Obj. case\_, of how many constructions susceptible

--whether infinitives, participles, &c., can be in

--two nouns in, after a verb, how parsed,

--Whether any verb in Eng. governs \_two objectives\_ not coupled

--\_Obj. case\_ as governed by passive verbs, erron. allowed by some

--what verbs not to be employed without

--\_Obj. case\_ as governed by prep.

--"Prepositions gov. the \_obj. case\_," why the brief assertion is

exceptionable, as the sole RULE, in parsing prep.

\_Obsolete\_ or antiquated words, use of, as opposed to purity, PREC. against

--\_Things obsolete\_ in Eng., DR. LATHAM'S attempts to revive.

\_Ocean\_, figurative representation of, as uttering his voice in tones of

varied quantity.

\_Octometer\_ line, may be reduced to tetrameter

--iambic, examples of

--\_trochaic\_, do

--dactylic, example of

--\_Octometer\_, trochaic, rhyme and termination of; its pauses, and how

may be divided; the most common form of.

\_Of\_ and \_on\_ or \_upon\_, difference between.

\_Old English\_, characters of its alphabet, shown

--occasional use of do.

\_Omissions\_ of words that are needful to the sense, Crit. N. against.

\_Omitting\_, verbs of, with part. in stead of infin.

\_One\_, employment of, as a noun or as a substitute for a noun; how classed

by some grammarians

--may be preceded by the articles, or by adjectives

--like Fr. \_on\_ or \_l'on\_, used indef. for any person; in this sense

preferable to a \_pers.\_ pron. applied indefinitely

--CHURCH., citation ridiculing the too frequent use of, for pers. pron.

--as pronom. adj., requires verb and pron. in the third pers. sing. to

agree with it. \_One an other\_, see \_Other. One\_, or \_a unit\_, whether

it is a \_number\_.

\_Only\_, derivation of; class and meaning of, in its several different

relations

--strictures on the instructions of grammarians respecting the

classification and placing of

--ambiguous use of, (as also of \_but\_,)

--use of, for \_but\_, or \_except that\_, not approved of by BROWN

--\_Not only, not merely

--but\_, &c., correspondents.

\_Onomatopoeia\_ described and exemplified (extr. from SWIFT.)

\_Or\_, as expressing an alternation of terms, (Lat., \_sive\_.)

--in Eng., is frequently equivocal; the ambiguity how avoided

--\_Or\_, perh. contracted from \_other\_

--\_Or\_ and \_nor\_ discriminated

--\_Or, nor\_, grammarians dispute which of these words should be adopted

after an other negative than \_neither\_ or \_nor\_; MURR., following

PRIESTL., teaches that either word may be used with equal propriety;

BURN'S doctrine; BROWN, after revising CHURCH., attempts to settle

the question,

--\_Or ever\_, ("OR EVER \_the earth was\_,") the term explained.

\_Or\_ or \_our\_, terminat., number of Eng. words in; how many of these may be

written with \_our\_; BROWN'S practice and views in respect to this matter.

\_Oral\_ spelling, the advantage of, to learners.

\_Order\_ of things or events, the natural, PREC. directing the observance

of, in the use of lang.

\_Orders of verse\_, see \_Verse\_.

\_Ordinal\_ numeral, (see \_Numerals.\_)

--\_Ordinal\_ adjectives may qualify card. numbers; cannot properly be

\_qualified by\_ do.

\_Orthoëpy\_, see \_Pronunciation\_.

ORTHOGRAPHY

--\_Orthography\_, of what treats

--difficulties attending it in Eng.

--DR. JOHNSON'S improvements in

--DR. WEBSTER'S do., in a different direction

--ignorance of, with respect to any word used, what betokens in the

user (See also \_Spelling.\_) \_Orthography\_, figures of, MIMESIS and

ARCHAISM

--its substantive or pronominal character; (with \_one.\_) how classed by

some; may be preceded by the articles

--requires \_than\_ before the latter term of an exclusive comparison;

yet sometimes perhaps better takes the prep. \_besides. Each other one

an other\_, import and just application of,

--misapplication of, frequent in books,

--DR. WEBST. erron. explanation of \_other\_, as "a correlative to

\_each\_,"

--\_One\_ and \_other\_, frequently used as terms relative and partitive,

appar. demanding a plur. form,

--\_An other\_, in stead of \_another\_. \_Somehow\_ or \_other, somewhere\_ or

\_other\_, how \_other\_ is to be disposed of.

\_Ought\_, principal verb, and not auxiliary, as called by MURR. \_et al.\_,

--originally part of the verb \_to\_ OWE; now used as defec. verb,

--its tense, as limited by the infin. which follows.

\_Ourself\_, anomalous form peculiar to the regal style,

--peculiar construc. of.

\_Own\_, its origin and import; its class and construc.,

--strangely called a \_noun\_ by DR. JOH.

P.

P, its name and plur. numb.,

--its sound,

--when silent,

--\_Ph\_, its sounds.

\_Pairs\_, words in, punct. of.

\_Palatals\_, what consonants so called.

\_Parables\_, in the Scriptures, see \_Allegory\_.

\_Paragoge\_, explained.

\_Paragraph\_ mark, for what used.

\_Paralipsis\_, or \_apophasis\_, explained.

\_Parallels\_, as marks of reference.

\_Parenthesis\_, signif. and twofold application of the term,

--\_Parenthesis\_, marks of, (see \_Curves\_.)

--What clause to be inclosed within the curves as a PARENTHESIS, and

what should be its punct.,

--\_Parentheses\_, the introduction of, as affecting unity.

\_Parsing\_, defined.

--\_Parsing\_, its relation to grammar,

--what must be considered in,

--the distinction between etymological and syntactical, to be

maintained, against KIRKH. \_et al.\_,

--character of the forms of etymological adopted by BROWN,

--what implied in the right performance of,

--whether different from analysis,

--what to be supplied in.

--\_Parsing\_, of a prep., how performed,

--of a phrase, implies its separation,

--the RULES OF GOVERNM., how to be applied in,

--of words, is not varied by mere transposition.

--\_Parsing\_, etymological and syntactical, in what order to be taken,

--the SENSE, why necessary to be observed in; what required of the

pupil in syntactical,

--syntactical, EXAMPLE of.

--\_Parsing\_ or CORRECTING, which exercise perh. the more useful.

\_Participial adjectives\_, see \_Adjectives, Participial\_.

\_Participial\_ or \_verbal noun\_, defined,

--how distinguished from the participle.

--\_Participial noun\_ and participle, the distinction between, ill

preserved by MURR. and his amenders.

--\_Participial noun\_, distinc. of VOICE in, sometimes disregarded,

("\_The day of my\_ BURYING,")

--\_with\_ INFIN. \_following\_, strictures on MURR., LENN., and BULL.,

with respect to examples of.

PARTICIPLES, Etymol. of.

--\_Participle\_, defined.

--\_Participles\_, whether they ought to be called verbs,

--appropriate \_naming\_ of the kinds of,

--often become adjectives,

--become adjectives by composition with something not belonging to the

verb,

--number of, simp. and comp.,

--imply \_time\_, but do not divide it,

--retain the \_essential\_ meaning of their verbs, but differ from them

in the \_formal\_,

--in Eng., from what derived,

--H. TOOKE'S view of the time of; with whom BROWN differs.

--\_Participles\_, Classes of, named and defined,

--(See \_Imperfect Participle\_ and \_Perfect Part\_.)

--\_Participles\_, grammarians differ in their opinion with respect to

the time and voice of,

--how have been called and treated by some,

--explanation of the different,

--how distinguished from particip. nouns,

--elegantly taken as plur. nouns, ("\_All his\_ REDEEMED,")

--appar. used for adverbs,

--some become prepositions.

--\_Participle\_ and ADJUNCTS, as forming "one name," and as such,

\_governing the poss.\_, whence the doctrine; PRIESTL. criticised;

MURR. \_et al\_. adopt PRIESTL. doctrine, which they badly sustain;

teachers of do. disagree among themselves,

--governm. of possessives by, how BROWN generally disposes of; how

determines with respect to such governm.

--\_Participles\_, Synt. of,

--regular synt. of, twofold; nature of the two constructions; OTHER

\_less regular\_ constructions; which two constructions of all, are

legitimate uses of the participle; which constructions are of doubtf.

propriety.

--\_Participles\_, to what RELATE, or in what state GOVERNED.

--\_Participle\_, as relating to a phrase or sentence,

--taken abstractly,

--irregularly used in Eng. as substitute for infin. mood,

--in irreg. and mixed construc.

--\_Participle\_, transitive, what case governs,

--nom. absol. with, to what equivalent,

--each requires its appropriate FORM,

--questionable uses of, admitted by MURR. \_et al\_.; why BROWN is

disposed to condemn these irregularities.

--\_Participle\_ and particip. noun, distinction between, with respect to

governm.

--\_Participle\_ in \_ing\_, multiplied uses of, lawful and forced,

illustrated,

--equivalence of do. to infin. mood, instances of,

--every mixed construc. of, how regarded by BROWN,

--the "double nature" of, CROMB. on; his views, how accord with those

of MURR. \_et al.\_, HILEY'S treatment of; BROWN'S strictures on do.

--\_Participles\_, place of:

--active, governm. of.

--\_Participle\_, trans., converted to a noun:

--converted, \_when\_ the expression should be changed:

--followed by an adj., its conversion into a noun appar. improper:

--comp. converted, how managed:

--not to be used for infin., or other more appropriate term:

--use of, for a nominative after \_be, is, was\_, &c., faulty:

--following a verb of \_preventing\_, how to be managed.

--\_Participles\_, converted, disposal of their adverbs:

--must be construed with a regard to the leading word in sense:

--should have a clear reference to their subjects:

--needless use of, for nouns, to be avoided:

--punct. of:

--derivation of:

--poet. peculiarities in the use of.

\_Parts of speech\_, meaning of the term:

--\_Parts of speech\_, named and defined:

--what explanations may aid learners to distinguish the different:

--why needful that learners be early taught to make for themselves the

prop. distribution of:

--WILS. on the distribution of:

--the preferable \_number\_ with respect to; the office of, specifically

stated.

--The \_parts of speech\_, passage exemplifying all.

--Examples of a partic. \_part of speech\_ accumulated in a sentence.

--Etymol. and Synt. of the different \_parts of speech\_, see \_Article,

Noun, Adjective\_, &c.

\_Passions\_ of the mind, by what tones to be expressed.

\_Passive verb\_, defined.

--\_Pass. verbs\_ contrasted with active-trans, verbs, in respect to the

object or the agent of the action; their compos, and construc.:

--their FORM in Eng.

--\_Pass. verb\_ BE LOVED, conjug. affirmatively.

--\_Pass. verbs\_, how distinguished from neuters of the same form:

--having active forms nearly equivalent to them, (\_is rejoiced,

rejoices\_; \_am resolved, know\_, &c.,):

--erroneously allowed by some to govern the obj. case in Eng.; CROMB.

in this category, cited, canon, pseudo-canons.

--\_Pass. verb\_, what should always take for its subj. or nom.:

--takes the same case after as before it, when both words refer to the

same thing:

--between two nominatives, with which should be made to agree,

("\_Words\_ ARE wind,"). See \_Unco-Passive\_, &c.

\_Passive\_ form of an active-intrans. verb followed by a prep. and its

objective, ("\_He\_ WAS LAUGHED AT,"). \_Passive\_ sense of the act. form of

the verb, ("\_The books continue\_ SELLING,").

\_Past for future\_, see \_Prophecy\_.

\_Pauses\_, term defined.

--\_Pauses\_, kinds of, named and explained:

--the distinctive, duration of:

--after what manner should be formed:

--forced, unintentional, their effect:

--emphatic or rhetorical, applicat. and office of:

--harmonic, kinds of; these, essential to verse.

--\_Pauses\_, abrupt, punct.:

--emphatic, do.

\_Pedantic\_ and sense-dimming style of charlatans &c., as offending against

purity.

\_Pentameter\_ line, \_iambic\_, examples of:

--is the regular Eng. HEROIC; its quality and adaptation:

--embraces the \_elegiac stanza\_:

--\_trochaic\_, example of, said by MURR. \_et al\_. to be very uncommon;

was unknown to DR. JOH. and other old prosodists:

--the two examples of. in sundry grammars, whence came; a couplet of

these scanned absurdly by HIL.; HART mistakes the metre of do.:

--\_dactylic\_, example of, ("\_Salutation to America\_,").

\_Perfect\_, adj., whether admits of comparison; why its comparis. by adverbs

not wholly inadmissible.

\_Perfect definition\_, what.

\_Perfect participle\_, or \_second part.\_, defined:

--its form:

--how has been variously called:

--its character and name as distinguished from the imperf. part:

--why sometimes called the \_passive part\_.; why this name liable to

objection:

--how may be distinguished from the preterit of the same form:

--should not be made to govern an objective term. ("\_The characters\_

MADE USE OF," MURR.,):

--not to be used for the pret., nor confounded with the pres.:

--what care necessary in the employment of; when to be distinguished

from the preterits of their verbs.

\_Perfect tense\_, defined.

--\_Perf. tense\_ of indic., as referring to time relatively fut.

\_Period\_, or \_full stop\_, its pause.

--\_Period\_, or \_circuit\_, nature of.

--\_Period\_, probably the oldest of the points; how first used:

--how used in Hebrew:

--what used to mark:

--Rules for the use of:

--not required when short sentences are rehearsed as examples:

--whether to be applied to letters written for numbers:

--with other points set after it:

--whether proper after Arabic figures used as ordinals.

--\_Period of abbreviation\_, whether always supersedes other points.

\_Permanent\_ propositions, to be expressed in the pres. tense.

\_Permitting\_, &c., verbs of, see \_Commanding\_.

\_Personal pronoun\_, defined.

--\_Personal pronouns\_, simple, numb, and specificat. of:

--declension of:

--often used in a reciprocal sense, ("\_Wash\_ YOU," &c.,).

--(See also \_It\_.)

--\_Personal pronouns\_, compound, numb. and specificat. of. 298:

--explanat. and declension of:

--CHURCH. account of:

--of the first and second persons, placed before nouns to distinguish

their persons.

\_Personification\_, defined,

--MURR. definition of, blamed,

--what constitutes the purest kind of,

--change of the gend. of inanimate objects by,

--whether it always changes the gender of anteced. term,

--agreem. of pronouns with their antecedents in cases of,

--Rule for capitals in do.,

--comp.,

--\_Personifications\_, CHURCH, on the determination of gender in,

--\_Personified\_ objects, names of, put in the second pers., and why,

--how pronouns agree with,

\_Persons\_, term defined,

--\_Persons\_, named and defined,

--the distinction of, on what founded,

--\_Persons, numbers\_, &c., character of BROWN'S definitions of,

--\_Persons\_, in gram., nature of; absurd teachings of some

grammar-makers concerning,

--distinctions of, in written lang.,

--\_Person\_ and \_number\_ of a verb, what,

--\_Persons\_, second and third, of a verb, distinctive formations of,

--do., in Lat., shown,

--\_Person\_, nouns of the second, in Eng., in how many ways can be

employed,

--the \_third\_, put with the pron. \_I\_, by vulgarism, ("THINKS I \_to

myself\_,")

--the first, place of,

--\_Persons\_, whether the imperat. mood may have three,

--connected antecedents of different, agreem. of pron. with,

--connected nominatives of different, agreem. of verb with,

\_Perspicuity\_, as a quality of style, in what consists,

--is essential in composition; BLAIR quoted,

--the excellence of,

--Precepts aiming at offences against,

\_Perversions of Eng. grammar\_, the design, in part, of BROWN'S code of

synt, is to make intelligent judges of,

--\_Perversions, literary\_, Crit. N. concerning,

\_Phonetics, phonography, phonotopy\_, BROWN'S estimate of; DR. JOH. cited,

--account of,

--TRENCH'S views of,

--\_Phonographic system\_ of stenography, its practical value;

\_phonotopy\_, to what may be advantageously applied,

\_Phrase\_, defined,

--\_Phrase\_ made the subject of a verb, how to be taken,

--\_Phrases\_, distinct, conjunctively connected, agreem. of verb with,

--distinct, disjunctively connected, do.,

--unconnected, do.,

--BAD \_phrases\_, examples of, from authors,

--do., corrected,

--\_Phrases\_ or \_clauses\_, ellips. of, shown,

--\_Adverbial phrase\_, (so termed by some,) see \_Adverb\_.

\_Place\_ or \_position\_ of the different parts of speech, see \_Article, Noun,

Adjective\_, &c.

\_Pleonasm\_, defined,

--\_Pleonasm\_, when allowable with respect to a pron.,

--in what instances impressive and elegant; when, the vice of ill

writing,

--occurs sundry times in the Bible,

\_Pluperfect tense\_, defined,

--\_Pluperf. tense\_, what implies when used conditionally; what, in the

negative form of supposition,

--how formed in the indic. mood; do. in the potential,

--indic. form of, put by enall. for pluperf. of the pot.,

--PLUPERFECT, signif. of the term; several innovators (as BULL., BUTL.,

\_et al.\_) have been fain to discard it,

\_Plural number\_, of nouns, how formed,

--of most nouns in Eng., is simple and regular,

--of nouns ending in a vowel preceded by a vowel,

--of do. in \_y\_ preceded by a consonant,

--of do. in \_o\_ preceded by a consonant,

--construc. of, when several persons of the \_same name\_ are spoken of

("\_The Stuarts\_,")

--of prop. names, its formation,

--of nouns in \_i, o, u\_, or \_y\_, preceded by a consonant,

--when \_name\_ and \_title\_ are to be used together, ("\_The Miss

Bells\_,")

--of nouns in \_f\_,

--of nouns not formed in \_s\_ or \_es\_,

--of compounds,

--of certain compound terms, ("\_Ave-Maries\_," &c.,)

--wanting to some nouns,

--of nouns of multitude,

--\_Plural\_, nouns made so by nature or art,

--of foreign nouns, 253,

--improperly formed by adding apostrophic \_s\_,

--of mere characters, how denoted,

\_Plurality\_, the idea of; see \_Unity\_, &c.

\_Poetic feet\_, treated,

--(See \_Iambus, Trochee\_, &c.)

--\_Poetic foot\_, of what consists,

--\_Poet. feet\_, number to be recognized in Eng.,

--principal Eng., named and defined,

--kinds of, which form ORDERS OF VERSE,

--what combinations of, severally form \_dimeter, trimeter\_, &c.,

--(See \_Dimeter, Trimeter\_, &c.)

--\_Poetic\_ collocation of words, in prose, as offending against

perspicuity, PREC. respecting,

--\_Poetic diction\_, treated,

--in what abounds,

--\_Poetical Peculiarities\_,

\_Poetry\_, as defined by BLAIR,

--character of its style,

--aim and end of,

--exterior distinction of,

--why difficult, by a definition, to be distinguished from prose,

--inept directions of some grammatists respecting the parsing of,

--\_Poetry\_, every line in, should begin with a capital,

\_Points\_, or \_stops\_, the principal, named, and their forms shown,

--the purpose of,

--length of pauses denoted by,

--often variously used in different editions of the same work,

--origin of, See \_Punctuation\_.

\_Points\_ of the compass, adjectives for; modes of varying them,

\_Possession\_, relation of, see \_Property\_.

\_Possessive case\_, defined,

--\_Poss. case\_, how formed

--disputes of the earlier grammarians respecting,

--CARD. \_et al.\_ attempt to revive exploded error concerning,

--form of,

--origin of, in Eng.,

--odd notions of some grammarians concerning the regular formation of

--exceptions or irregularities in the formation of

--\_Poss. case\_, PEI. on, criticised

--ASH and PRIESTL. on the plur.

--use of the two forms of, in pers. pronouns

--\_of the simp. pers. pronouns\_, grammarians differ with respect to;

should not be considered mere adjectives

--are pronom. adjectives, according to DR. LOWTH and his followers,

--whose doctrine BROWN canvasses, also, WEBSTER'S, WILSON'S, MURRAY'S

--\_Poss. case\_, its equivalence to \_of\_ and the objective, not a

\_sameness of case\_, (in oppos. to Nix.)

--of pronouns, not to be written with apostrophe

--of nouns in appos., application of the possessive sign to

--by what \_governed\_

--whether the rule for, has true exceptions

--appos. of one with an other, ("\_For\_ DAVID \_my\_ SERVANT'S \_sake\_,")

the construc. examined

--appar. in abstract construc., ("\_All\_ MINE \_are\_ THINE,")

--as governed by a part, the construc. examined; COROL.

--why the governm. of, should be limited to nouns only

--whether before a real part., denotes the possession of something

--\_Possessive sign\_, omission oL not a true ellips.

--always implies a governing word,

--how taken by compounds

--liable to be added to adjunct of the former noun

--whether it can be rightly added to separate adjectives, ("\_The\_

GUILTY'S \_prayer\_,")

--\_which\_ noun of connected possessives takes

--Poss. case, place and order of

--generally equivalent to prep. \_of\_ and \_the objective\_,

--governed by something not expressed, ("St. Paul's,")

--\_Possessives, connected\_, how to be taken,

--Poss. \_singular\_, with \_s\_ omitted, ("For CONSCIENCE' \_sake\_")

--\_Poss. case\_ of nouns sing, in \_ss\_, false teaching of KIRKH. \_et

al.\_, respecting the formation of

--MURR. rule for the construc. of, why objectionable,

--compounds embracing, lack uniformity in writing,

--peculiarity of, with respect to correlatives, ("Father's son,")

--\_Possessive\_ relation between a portion of time and its correlative

action, ("THREE YEARS' \_hard work\_" or, "\_Three years\_ OF HARD

WORK,")

--\_Poss. case\_, appropriate form of, to be observed,

--plural, with a noun in forced agreem., ("For OUR PARTS,") ib., N. iv:

--needless use of, before a participle, ("In THEIR \_pronouncing the

Greek\_,")

--\_Possessive pronouns, my, thy, his\_, &c., how often should be

inserted, or repeated

\_Potential mood\_, defined

--\_Potential mood\_, why so called; by what \_signs\_ distinguished,

--may, like the indic., be used in asking questions; why by some

included in the subj.

--in what tenses used; nature of the imperf. tense

--formation and inflection of its tenses, shown in the verb LOVE,

conjugated,

\_Power\_ of a letter, the \_powers\_ of the letters, what meant by, when

spoken of,

--The \_power\_ of a letter is not its sound, as MURR. et al incorrectly

teach

--The \_simple powers\_ of the letters, many irreconcileable doctrines

have been advanced thereon; GARDINER'S notions concerning, stated in

brief,

--RUSH'S explanations of, his pretentious scheme of the alphab. how

estimated by BROWN

--The \_just powers\_ of the letters, what, and how are to be learned,

--\_Powers\_ of the letters, variable; how become so; WALK, cited

\_Praxis\_, defined; lit. signif. of the word, as from the Gr.

\_Precision\_, as a quality of style, in what consists,

--Precepts aiming at offences against

--conciseness, or brevity, as opposed to

\_Prefixes\_, their management in syllabication, R.:

--Explanation of

--import and character of the particles used as, in Eng.; the \_roots\_

to which prefixed, not always proper Eng. words

--\_Prefixes\_, ENG. or ANGLO-SAX.,

--\_Prefixes\_, poet, usage with respect to,

\_Preperfect participle\_, defined

--\_Preperf. part.\_, its form

--its nature and name,

PREPOSITIONS, Etymol. of

--\_Preposition\_ defined

--importance of a right use, and a right explan. of

--HARR. explanation of, as cited by LOWTH, stricture on HARR.

--its simplicity among the parts of speech; how should be explained in

parsing,

--no sufficient RULE for the synt. of, in most of the Eng. grammars,

\_Prepositions\_ and their objects, as preceding the words on which

they depend, ("\_Of man's first disobedience, &c., Sing\_" MILC.,)

--\_Prepositions\_, what it is, to find the terms of relations of;

disput. text cited in illustration

--the special \_adaptation\_ of; example of misuse by MURR., remarked on

--HARR., on the purpose for which almost all \_prepositions\_ were orig.

formed, and on the nature of their relations; his views controverted

by BROWN,

--Prepositions and their governed objects, the true determination of;

examples of joint objects, and of joint antecedents, wrong views of

MURR. and his followers concerning this matter.

--\_Prepositions\_, two connected, for what different purposes used

--two coming together, ("FROM AMONG the \_just\_,")

--\_Prepositions complex\_, what their character, and how may be

resolved; are occasionally compounded by the hyphen

--\_Prepositions\_, how might be divided into classes; the inutility in

parsing of the division into "\_separable\_ and \_inseparable\_;"

HALL'S absurd idea of a divis., noticed

--whether "two in immediate succession require a noun to be understood

between them," (NUTT.)

--words commonly reckoned, (\_in, on, of\_, &c.,) used after infinitives

or participles, in adverbial construc., ("\_Houses to eat and drink\_

IN")

--\_Prepositions\_, List of

--grammarians differ considerably in their tables of; do. concerning

the characteristics of; what BROWN supposes, in oppos. to the

assertion that "Every \_prep\_. requires an obj. case after it"

--LENN. and BULL. on "\_prepositions becoming adverbs\_," criticised

--MURR. on "\_prepositions\_ appearing to be adverbs," criticised

--\_Preposition\_, whether it can be justly said to take a sent. for its

object

--\_Prepositions\_, words in the list of, sometimes used as other parts

of speech

--extension of the list of

--examples of the less usual, \_a\_, and others beginning with \_a\_

--do. of unusual ones beginning with \_b, c\_, or \_d\_

--\_unusual\_, quotations illustrating further the list of

--\_Preposition\_, RULE of synt. for the \_word governed by\_

--\_Prepositions\_, in Eng., govern no other case than the obj.; most,

may take the imperf. part. for their obj.

--The brief assertion, that "\_Prepositions\_ govern the obj. case,"

wherein is exceptionable as the sole rule for both terms

--\_Prepositions\_, ellipt. construc. of, with adjectives, (\_in vain, in

secret\_, &c.)

--sometimes appar. govern adverbs

--\_Preposition\_, appar. governing a perf. part., ("\_To give it up\_ FOR

LOST")

--\_Prepositions\_, Synt. of

--do., in what consists

--what RELATIONS, show; (see \_To\_ and \_For\_)

--the parsing of; why tolerable writers are liable to err most in their

use of

--\_Preposition\_, the true terms of the relat. of, how may be discovered

--when beginning or ending a sent. or clause, what the construc.

--the terms of relation of, what may be; both usually expressed

--position of, with respect to the governed word

--\_Prepositions\_, several, dependent on one anteced. term, ("\_A

declaration\_ FOR \_virtue and\_ AGAINST \_vice\_," BUTL.)

--two coming together between the same terms of relat.; do. in the same

construc.; erron. remark of PRIESTL., MURR., \_et al.\_, concerning the

latter

--\_Preposition\_, the separating of, from its noun, false doctrine of

LOWTH, MURR., \_et al.\_, concerning

--\_Prepositions\_, prop, choice of

--do., with respect to the allowable uses of

--as adapted in meaning to \_two\_ objects, or to \_more\_

--\_Preposition\_, ellips. or omiss. of, where ineleg.

--insertion of, when do.

--\_Prep. and its object\_, position of, in respect to other words

--do., punc. of

--\_Prep.\_, ellips. of, shown

--\_Prepositions\_, derivation of

--poet. usage with respect to

\_Present tense\_, defined

--\_Pres. tense\_, described

--of the indic., used to express general truths

--deceased authors spoken of in, and why

--for the past, by Grecism; in animated narrative, for do., by enall.

--of the indic. and the subj., when preceded by \_as soon as\_, &c., to

what \_time\_, refers

--of the infin., what time is expressed by; expedients used to express

\_fut\_. time by

--of the INFINITIVE, the ROOT, or RADICAL VERB

--of the subj., its use, and how considered by some

--\_Pres. tense\_, sometimes improp. with the conjunc. \_that\_, ("\_Others

said\_, THAT \_it is Elias\_")

\_Preter, preterimperfect\_, &c., disused terms for \_past, imperfect\_, &c.

--\_Preter\_, prefix, its meaning

\_Preterit\_, defined

--\_Preterit\_, described

--its form and variations

--present tendency to a reg. orthog. of, to be encouraged

--groundless rule of some, for forming second pers. of, when the pres.

and the pret. are alike

--not to be used in forming the comp. tenses of a verb

\_Preventing\_, verbs of, with part., in stead of infin.

--what construc. is proper for

\_Primitive word\_, defined

--\_Primitive words\_ regarded as such in Eng., may generally be traced

to ulterior sources

\_Principal parts\_, of a verb, (see \_Chief Terms\_)

--of a sent., how many, and what

\_Priscian\_, ancient grammarian, delivers the names of most of the Lat.

letters

\_Progressive\_ form of a verb, see \_Compound\_ &c.

\_Pronominal adjectives\_, see \_Adjectives, Pronominal\_

PRONOUNS, Etymol. of

--\_Pronoun\_, definition of

--\_Pronouns\_ in Eng., number of, and their variations

--nature of the representation by; are put substantively, relatively,

or adjectively; difference in these three modes of substitution

--Classes of, named, and defined; (see \_Personal Pronoun, Relative

Pron.\_, and \_Interrogative Pron\_.)

--\_Pronouns, compound\_, constructional peculiarities of

--\_Pronouns\_, faultiness and discordance of most Eng. grammars, with

respect to the classification and treatment of; specification of

different modes of distribution by diff. authors

--Modifications of, named; these properties how distinguished in the

personal pronouns; do. how ascertained in the relat. and interrog.

pronouns

--Declension of; simp. personals declined; comp. personals do.; comp.

relatives do.

--appar. used for adverbs

--\_Pronouns\_, Synt. of

--\_Pronoun\_, agreem. of, with its anteced.

--do., with anteced. indefinite

--plur., put by enall. for the sing., agreem. of

--sometimes disagreeing with the anteced. in one sense, because taking

it in an other

--what the main point with respect to; what application of the rule of

agreem., in parsing

--\_Pronouns\_, agreem. of, with their antecedents, as affected by the

figures of rhetoric

--place of

--\_Pronoun\_, as representing a phrase or sentence

--under what circumstances can agree with either of two antecedents

--the parsing of, commonly requiring the application of two rules

--with suppressed anteced.

--needless introduction of, ("PALLAS, HER \_glass\_," BACON)

--with change of numb. in the second pers., or promisc. use of \_ye\_ and

\_you\_

--must present the same idea as the anteced., and never confound the

name with the thing signified

--employment of \_the same\_, with respect to connected relative clauses

--in what instances the \_noun\_ must be repeated, or inserted in stead

of

--should never be used to represent an adj., ("\_Be\_ ATTENTIVE;

\_without\_ WHICH," &c.)

--change of \_anteced.\_ to accord with

--agreem. with collective nouns

--do. with joint antecedents

--do. with connected antecedents in apposition

--do. with connected antecedents emphat. distinguished

--do. with connected antecedents preceded by \_each, every\_, or \_no\_

--do. with connected antecedents of different persons

--agreeing with implied nominatives

--agreem. with disjunct antecedents

--what agreem. with disjunct. antecedents of different persons,

numbers, and genders

--do. with antecedents taken affirmatively and negatively

--do. with two antecedents connected by \_as well as\_, &c.

--ellips. of, shown

--punct. of, without pause

--\_Pronouns\_, derivation of, from Sax.

--poet. peculiarities of

\_Pronunciation\_, importance of an early habit of distinct

--how best taught to children

--\_Pronunc.\_, as distinguished from elocution, what; how differs from

articulation

--\_Pronunc.\_ of the Eng. lang., what knowledge requires; its

difficulties; whether we have any system of, worthy to be accounted a

STANDARD

\_Proof-texts\_, not to be perverted in the quotation, Crit. N.

--not \_quoted\_, but \_invented\_, by some, in their false illustrations

of gram.

\_Proper names\_ begin with capitals

--\_Comm.\_ and \_proper name\_ associated, how written

--\_Prop. names\_, derivatives from, do.

--(\_Names\_ of Deity, see \_Deity\_.)

--\_Prop. names\_, application of rule concerning; distinc. between do.

and common appellatives

--of places, comparative difficulty of writing them

--modern compound, sparing use of hyphen in

--\_Prop. names\_, what their relative importance in lang.

--structure and signif. of; how should be written

--of plur. form, preceded by def. art.

--\_Prop. name\_, with def. art., acquires the import of a comm.

--\_Proper\_, from a comm. noun personified

--\_Prop. names\_ of individuals, strictly used as such, have no plur.;

\_prop. name\_, how made plur., and how then considered

--when they form a plur., how form it

--of persons, generally designate their sex

--\_Prop. name\_, in appos. with an appellative

--represented by \_which\_, ("\_Herod\_

--WHICH \_is\_," &c.)

--\_Prop. name\_ and \_title\_, when taken together in a plur. sense, in

what form to be written

\_Property\_, the relation of, how may be otherwise expressed than by the

poss. case

\_Prophecy\_, the past tenses substituted for the fut., in the lang. of

\_Propositions\_, permanent, in what tense should be expressed

\_Propriety\_, as a quality of style, in what consists

--its oppos., impropriety, what embraces

--Precepts aiming at offences against

\_Prose\_ and verse, in the composition of lang., how differ

PROSODY

--\_Prosody\_, of what subjects treats

--etymol. and signif. of the word

--\_Prosody\_, meagrely and immethodically treated in the works of many

grammarians

--undetermined usage as to what things belong to; how treated by some

of the old prosodists; account of SMETIUS'S treatise of; do.

GENUENSIS'S

\_Prosthesis\_, explained

\_Proverbs\_, their elliptical character

\_Provincial\_ expressions, use of, as opposed to purity

PUNCTUATION, arranged under the head of Prosody

--\_Punct.\_, what

--principal marks of, named and shown; what they severally denote

--RULES \_of\_: for Comma; for Semicolon; for Colon; for Period; for

Dash; for Eroteme; for Ecphoneme; for Curves

--description of the \_other marks\_ of

--(See \_Comma, Semicolon\_, &c.)

--\_Punct.\_, the present system of, in Eng., common to many languages

--why often found diverse, in diff. editions and diff. versions of the

same work

--duty of writers in respect to, and of publishers in reproducing

ancient books

--some account of the orig. and prog. of

--"improvement" in, which is no improvement

--confused and discordant explanations, by some, of certain of the

marks of

\_Purity\_, as a quality of style, in what consists

--Precepts aiming at offences against

\_Pyrrhic\_, defined

Q.

Q, its name and plur. numb.

--has no sound peculiar to itself; its power

--is always followed by \_u\_

\_Quakers\_, or Friends, their style of address, see \_Friends\_

\_Qualities\_ of style, treated

--See \_Style\_ \_Quantity\_, or \_time\_ in pronunciation, explained

--as defined by the lexicographers

--its effect in the prolation of sounds

--WALKER'S views of, unsatisfac. to BROWN

--as regulated by emphasis, MURR.

--\_Quant\_. of a syll., how commonly explained

--by what marks may be indicated

--\_Quantities poetic\_, how denominated, and how proportioned

--What \_quantity\_ coincides with accent or emphasis

--\_Quantity\_, on what depends

--where variable, and where fixed, in Eng.

--Crit. observations on accent and \_quantity\_

--\_Quantity\_, its distinction from \_accent\_

--Accent and \_quantity\_, differing views of authors relative to

--\_Quantity\_, impropriety of affirming it to be the same as accent

--DR. JOH. identification of accent with; such, also, that of others;

(not so HARRIS;) NOEHD. rightly defines; so FISK, (in Eschenb. Man.

Class. Lit.,) \_et al\_.

--our grammarians seem not to have understood the distinc. of long and

short, e. g., FISHER; so SHERID., WALK., MURR., \_et al\_.

--CHAND. absurd and confused scheme of, noticed

--suggestion of WEBST. on, approved

\_Questions\_, can be asked only in the indic. or the pot. mood

--direct, to be marked by the eroteme

--united, how to be marked

--indirect, do.

--a series of, how may be united and marked

--exclamatory, how to be marked

--\_Question, mentioned\_ in due form, how marked

--declaratively put, how uttered and marked

--in \_Spanish\_, doubly marked, ("¿Quien llama?";) in Greek, how

\_Quite\_, with art. and adj., construc. how differs according to position of

art.

\_Quotation\_, direct, first word of, written with capital

--\_Quotations\_ of proof-texts, &c., should be literally given

--dependent, separated from \_say\_, &c., by comma

--indep., preceded by colon

--\_Quotat. within a quotat.\_, how usually marked

\_Quoth\_ and \_quod\_, signif. and use of, in ludicrous lang. or in the old

writers

R.

R, name and plur. numb.

--of the class liquids

--sound of; do., how can be varied in utterance

--what faults to be avoided in do.

--DR. JOH. account of; WALK. do.

\_Radicals\_, separable and inseparable, what are so called in Eng.

derivation

\_Rath\_, adv., used only in the compar. deg.

--\_Rather\_, with the exclusive term of comparis. introduced by \_than\_

--derivation of

\_Reading, to read\_, in gram., what the signif. of

--READ, verb, CONJUGATED \_affirmatively\_ in Comp. Form

\_Reciprocal terms, reciprocals\_, what pronom. adjectives may be so termed

--\_Reciprocals\_, EACH OTHER, ONE AN OTHER, their nature and import

--misapplicat. of, frequent in books; WEBST. errs in the signif. and

applicat. of \_other\_. See also \_Other\_

\_Reciprocal\_ or reflected verbs, constructions in imitation of the French

\_Recurrence\_ of a word in different senses, a fault opposed to propriety

\_Redundant verb\_, defined

--\_Redund. verbs\_, why made a separate class

--treated

--List of

\_Reference\_, marks of, ASTERISK, OBELISK, &c., shown; in what \_order\_ are

introduced

--what other signs of, may be used. \_Reference, doubtful\_, Crit. N.

concerning

\_Reformers\_ of the Eng. alphabet and orthog., some account of

\_Rejoice, resolve, incline\_, &c., import of, in the pass. form

\_Relations\_ of things, their infinitude and diversity; the nature of

RELATION

--\_Relation of words\_, what

--is diff. from agreem., but may coincide with it

--\_Relation\_ according to \_the sense\_, an important principle in Eng.

synt.; what \_rules\_ of relation commonly found in the grammars

--Simple \_relation\_, what parts of speech have no other syntact.

property than; what simp. \_relations\_ there are in Eng.

--\_Relation\_, with respect to a prep., \_anteced. term\_, what may be;

\_subseq.\_, do.

--\_Relation\_, do., \_terms\_ of, to be named in parsing a prep.; how the

terms may be ascertained by a learner

--\_terms of\_, to a prep., may be transposed; are very various; both

usually expressed

\_Relative pronouns\_, defined

--\_Relative pronouns\_, and their \_compounds\_, named; declined

--chief constructional peculiarities of

--two faulty special rules given by the grammarians, for construc. of,

noticed

--construc. of, with respect to CASE

--ellips. of, in famil. lang., ("\_The man I trust\_;") do., poet.

--\_Relative\_ and prep. governing it, when should not be omitted

--\_Relative pron.\_, place of

--clauses, connected, employment of, with \_same\_ pron. in each

--\_Rel. pronouns\_, exclude conjunctions

--derivat. of, from Sax.

--poet, peculiarities with respect to. See also \_Who, Which\_, &c.

\_Repetition\_, of a noun or pronoun, what construc. it produces

--of words, emphatic, punct.

--of words, through paucity of lang.; against propriety

--of do., as demanded by precision

--\_Repetitions\_, see \_Pleonasm\_

\_Restrictive\_ and \_resumptive\_ senses of the rel. pronouns, distinc.

between, expl.

--\_Restrictive, relation\_, most approp. expressed by the pron. THAT

--admits not a comma before the relative

--adj., admits not a comma before it

--part., do.

\_Rhetoric, figure of\_, defined

--Figures of \_rhetoric\_, see \_Figures\_

\_Rhetorical pauses\_, see \_Pauses\_

\_Rhode Island\_, the name how acquired; peculiarity of its application

\_Rhyme\_, defined

--\_Rhyming\_ syllables, their nature and quality

\_Rhythm\_, of verse, defined

--Fancifully explained by E. A. POE, (who without intelligence derives

the term from [Greek: hurithmos])

--sense and signif. of the word

\_Roman letters\_, some account of

\_Rules\_, of RELATION, what, commonly found in grammars

--of SYNT., those common in grammars ill adapted to their purpose;

examples of such

--of do., exposition of the faulty charac. of those in Eng. grammars

--\_Rules of grammar\_, advantage of, in the written language

\_Rush, Dr. J.\_, his new doctrine of the vowels and consonants, in oppos. to

the old, how estimated by BROWN

--his doctrine of a duplicity of the vocal elements, perstringed

--his strange division of the vowels "into two parts," and conversion

of most of them into diphthongs; his enumeration and specification of

the alphabetic elements

S.

S, its name and plur. numb.

--final, in monosyllables, spell.

--of the poss. case, occas. dropping of; the elis. how to be regarded,

and when to be allowed

--its sounds

--in what words silent

--\_Ss\_, sound of

\_S\_ or \_es\_, verbal termin., DR. LOWTH'S account of

\_Sans\_, from Fr., signif., and where read

\_Sabaoth\_, see \_Deity\_

\_Same cases\_, construc. of

--do., on what founded

--what position of the words, admitted by the construc.

--\_Same case\_, after \_what verbs\_, except those which are pass., taken

--\_Same cases\_, notice of the faulty rules given by LOWTH, MURR., \_et

al.\_, for the construc. of

\_Sameness\_ of signif., what should be that of the nom. following a verb or

part.

--\_Sameness\_ of words, see \_Identity\_

\_Sapphic\_, verse, described

--\_stanza\_, composition of; examp. from HOR.

--\_Sapphic verse\_, difficulty of; Eng. Sapphics few; scansion of; "The

Widow," of SOUTHEY, scanned

--\_Eng. Sapphic\_, DR. WATTS'S ode, (in part.) "The Day of Judgement,"

"\_attempted in\_"

--HUMPH. on, cited

--\_Sapphics\_, burlesque, examples of

\_Save, saving\_, as denoting exception, class and construc. of

--\_Save\_, derivation of

\_Saxon\_, alphabet, some account of

--lang., its form about the year 450; do. subsequently

\_Scanning\_, or \_scansion\_, explained

--Why, in \_scanning\_, the principal feet are to be preferred to the

secondary

--The poetry of the earliest Eng. poets, not easy of \_scansion\_

\_Script letters\_, the alphabet exhibited in

--the \_forms\_ of, their adaptation to the pen

\_Scripture names\_, many discrepancies in, found in different editions of

the Bible. \_Scriptures\_, see \_Bible\_

\_Section\_, mark, uses of

SEE, verb, irreg., act., CONJUGATED affirmatively

--takes infin. without prep. TO

--its construc. with infin. without \_to\_

\_Seeing\_ and \_provided\_, as connectives, their class

\_Seldom\_, adv., its comparison; use of, as an adj.

\_Self\_, in the format, of the comp. pers. pronouns

--CHURCH. explan. of

--signif. and use of

--as an Eng. prefix

--after a noun poss., in poet. diction

\_Self-contradiction\_, Crit. N. respecting

\_Self-naming letters\_

\_Semicolon\_, point

--for what purpose used

--from what takes its name

--\_when\_ adopted in England

--is useful and necessary, though discarded by some late grammarians

--Rules for the use of

\_Semivowel\_, defined

--\_Semivowels\_ named; nature of \_w\_ and \_y\_; sound of certain, as

aspirates

\_Sense\_ and construc. to be considered, in joining together or writing

separately words otherw. liable to be misunderstood

--\_Sense\_ or meaning, necessary to be observed in parsing

\_Senseless jumbling\_, Crit. N. concerning

\_Sentence\_, defined

--\_Sentence\_, its parts, principal and subordinate

--\_Sentences\_, the two kinds of, named and defined

--whether a tripartite distribut. of is expedient

--\_Simple sent.\_, false notions amongst grammarians of what constitutes

one; \_the parsing of words\_ not affected thereby

--\_Sentences\_, simp. and comp., DR. WILS. explanation of

--component parts of, what these are

--whether all, can be divided into clauses

--in what FIVE WAYS, can be analyzed

--\_Sentences\_, simp., punct.

of,

--distinct, do.,

--allied, do.,

--short, rehearsed in close succession, how pointed.

\_Series\_, of terms, proper use of the \_articles\_ in,

--of words, how to be commaed.

\_Set\_ and \_sit\_, signif. and employment of.

\_Sex\_, to what persons ascribed; why a young child may be spoken of without

distinc. of,

--whether animals may be represented as of no,

--inanimate objects fig. represented as having.

--\_Sexes\_, distinction of, by \_words\_, in diff. ways,

--denoted by \_terminat\_. of words,

--designated by \_proper names\_.

\_Shall\_, verb, how varied,

--original signif. of,

--explet. use of.

--\_Shall\_ and \_will\_, discriminative application of, in the fut. indic.

\_Sheridan, T.\_, actor and orthoëpist, his literary reputation; the worth of

his writings.

\_Side\_, noun, peculiarities of usage in regard to.

\_Silent\_, or \_mute\_, when a letter is said to be.

\_Silliness, literary\_, Crit. N. concerning.

\_Simile\_, explained.

\_Since\_, improp. use of, for \_ago\_,

--derivation of, from Anglo-Sax.

\_Sit\_ and \_set\_, use and signif. of.

\_So\_, as expressing the sense of a preced. word or phrase,

--derivation of, from Sax.

--\_So

--as, as

--so\_, correspondents.

\_Soever\_ or \_soe'er\_, whether a word or only a part of an other word; how

explained by WEBST.

\_Solemn style\_, as distinguished from the familiar,

--should not be displaced from the paradigms in a grammar,

--is not adapted to familiar discourse,

--pres. and pret. terminations of, what, and how uttered,

--examp. of, second pers. sing., negat., throughout the verb LOVE,

conjugated.

\_Some\_, classed,

--vulg. used for \_somewhat\_, or \_in some degree\_, ("SOME \_longer\_,"

SANB.). \_Somehow\_ or \_other, somewhere\_ or \_other\_, what the

construc. \_Somewhere, nowhere, anywhere\_, &c., their class, and how

should be written.

\_Sort\_, see \_Kind\_.

\_Sound\_, of a letter, commonly called its \_power\_,

--\_elementary\_, of the voice, defined.

--\_Sounds\_, simp. or primary, numb. in Eng.,

--elementary, what meant by; are few in numb.; their \_combinations\_ may

be innumerable.

--\_Vowel\_ sounds, or vocal elements, how produced, and where heard;

what those in Eng., and how may be modified in the format. of

syllables; do., how may be written, and how uttered.

--\_Consonant sounds\_, simp., in Eng., how many, and what; by what

letters marked; in what words heard.

--\_Sounds\_, long and short, SIGNS used to denote them.

--\_Sounds\_, a knowledge of, how acquired,

--importance of being early taught to pronounce those of one's native

lang.

--Passage exemplifying \_all the letters\_, and \_all the\_ SOUNDS, in Eng.

--\_Sounds of the Letters\_, treated.

\_Speak, to speak\_, what is meant by.

\_Speaker\_, why often speaks of himself in the third pers.,

--represents himself and others by \_we\_,

--in Eng., should mention himself last.

--The \_elegant speaker\_, by what distinguished.

\_Species\_ and \_figure\_ of words, what so called,

--unsettled usage of the lang. with regard to what relates to the

latter. \_Species\_ and \_genus\_ of things, how admits limitation by the

article.

SPELLING, defined.

--\_Spelling\_, how to be acquired,

--cause of the difficulty of its acquisition,

--Rules for,

--\_usage\_, as a law of,

--uniformity and consistency in, how only can be attained.

--The \_right spelling\_ of a word, what, PHILOLOG. Mus.

--\_Oral spelling\_, how should be conducted.

--Charac. of BROWN'S rules for \_spelling\_.

\_Spondee\_, defined.

\_St\_, unsyllab. suffix, whether, wherever found, is a modem contrac. of the

syllable \_est\_.

\_Standards\_ of English \_orthog.\_, the books proposed as such, abound in

errors and inconsistencies.

--Whether we have a system of Eng. ORTHOEPY worthy to be accounted a

STANDARD.

\_Stanza\_, defined.

--\_Stanzas\_, uniformity of, in the same poem,

--varieties of,

--\_Elegiac stanza\_, described.

--\_Stanzas, lyric\_, examples of,

--"A GOOD NAME," ("two beautiful little \_stanzas\_," BROWN).

\_Star\_, or \_asterisk\_, use of.

--\_Three stars\_, or \_asterism\_,

\_Stenotone\_, or \_breve\_, for what used.

\_Stops\_, in printing or writing, see \_Points\_.

\_Strength\_, as a quality of style, in what consists,

--essentials of,

--Precepts aiming at offences against.

\_Strew\_, whether, or not, an other mode of spelling \_strow\_; whether to be

distinguished in utterance from do.; whether reg. or irreg.

STYLE, qualities of, treated.

--\_Style\_, as connected with synt., what,

--differs from mere words and mere grammar; not regulated entirely by

rules of construc.,

--what relation has to the author himself, and what shows,

--general characters of, by what epithets designated.

--What must be remembered by the learner, in forming his \_style\_; a

good \_style\_ how acquired.

--\_Style, solemn, familiar\_, &c., as used in gram., what meant by.

--(See \_Solemn Style\_.)

\_Subaudition\_, meaning of the term. \_Subdisjunctive\_ particle, of the

Latins, expressed in Eng. by \_or\_ of alternat.

\_Subject\_ of a finite verb, what, and how may be known,

--must be the NOM. CASE,

--what besides a noun or pronoun may be.

--\_Subject phrases\_, joint, what agreements require.

--\_Subject\_ and \_predicate\_, in analysis. See also \_Nominative Case\_.

\_Subjunctive mood\_, defined.

--\_Subj. mood\_, why so called; what denotes,

--differing views of grammarians in regard to the numb. and form of its

tenses.

--The true \_subj. mood\_ rejected by some late grammarians; strictures

on WELLS.

--WELD'S erroneous teaching respecting the \_subj.\_, noticed,

--CHAND. do., do.

--Chief characteristical diff. between the indic. and the \_subj. mood\_.

--\_Subj. mood\_ described,

--its two tenses do., and their forms shown, in the verb LOVE,

conjugated,

--whether ever put after a rel. pronoun,

--proper limits of,

--how properly employed.

--\_False subj\_.

--\_Subj. mood\_, not necessarily governed by \_if, lest\_, &c.

\_Such\_, corresponding to \_that\_, with infin. foll.,

--with rel. \_as\_ following, in stead of \_who\_ or \_which\_.

\_Sui generis\_, what thing is thus designated.

\_Superlative degree\_, defined,

--BROWN'S definit. of, and of the other degrees, \_new\_; the faulty

charac. of those of MURR., shown,

--the true nature of; how may be used; to what is applicable; the

explanations of, by the copyists of MURR., criticised,

--whether not applicable to \_two\_ objects,

--\_when employed\_, what construc. of the latter term should follow.

--\_Double superlatives\_, to be avoided.

--\_Superl. termination\_, contractions of.

\_Supplied\_, in parsing, what must be. See also \_Ellipsis\_.

\_Suppression\_, mark of, see \_Ellipsis\_.

\_Syllabic\_ writing, far inferior to the alphabetic, BLAIR.

\_Syllabication\_, Rules of,

--the doctrine of, why attended with difficulty,

--object of; WALK. on; strictures on MULK. rules of,

--which of the four purposes of, is preferable in spelling-books and

dictionaries,

--DR. LOWTH on,

--nature of BROWN'S six Rules of; advantage of a system of, founded on

the pronunciat.,

--LATH. and FOWL. fictitious dilemmas in.

--\_Syllabication\_, erroneous, samples of, from MURR., WEBST., \_et al\_.

SYLLABLES, treated.

--\_Syllable\_ defined.

--\_Syllable\_, cannot be formed without a vowel,

--cannot be broken.

--\_Syllables\_, numb. of, in a word,

--words denominated from their numb. of,

--the ear chiefly directs in the division of words into.

--(See \_Syllabication\_.)

--\_Syllable\_, its quantity in poetry,

--do., on what depends.

\_Syllepsis\_, explained,

--literal signif. of the term; extended applicat. of do. by the

grammarians and rhetoricians; BROWN, by his definition, gives it a

more restricted applicat.; disapproves of WEBST. explanat. of the

term,

--what definition or what applicat. of the term is the most approp.,

has become doubtful.

\_Synæresis\_, explained.

\_Synchysis\_, what was so termed by some of the ancients; is different from

\_hyperbaton\_; its import in gram.; its literal signif.

\_Syncope\_, explained.

\_Synecdoche\_, (comprehension,) explained.

--\_Synecd.\_, agreem. of pron. with anteced., in cases of.

\_Synonymous\_, words so accounted, PREC. concerning the use of.

\_Syntactical parsing\_, see \_Parsing\_.

SYNTAX.

--\_Synt.\_, of what treats,

--the \_relation\_ of words, the most important principle of; defects of

the grammars in treating of do.,

--false exhibitions of grammarians with respect to the scope and parts

of,

--character of the rules of, found in most grammars,

--divided by some grammarians into \_concord\_ and \_governm.\_, and yet

treated by them without regard to such division,

--common fault of grammarians, noticed, of joining together diff. parts

of speech in the same rule of,

--do., of making the rules of, double or triple in their form,

--whether the principles of etymol. affect those of.

--All \_synt.\_, on what founded.

--Why BROWN deemed it needful to add to his code of \_synt\_. a GENERAL

RULE and CRITICAL NOTES. Figures of \_syntax\_.

T.

T, name and plur. numb. of,

--substitution of, for \_ed\_, how far allowable,

--sounds of,

--is seldom silent; in what words not sounded. \_Th\_, ([Greek: Th],

[Greek: alt-th], or [Greek: alt2-th], Gr.,) what represents; how was

represented in Anglo-Sax., and to what sounds applied; the two sounds

of. \_To a Tee\_, the colloq. phrase, explained.

\_Tautology\_ of expression or of sentiment, a fault opposed to precision.

\_Teacher\_, what should be his aim with respect to gram.

\_Technical\_ terms, unnec. use of, as opposed to propriety. \_Technically\_,

words and signs taken, how to be construed.

\_Tenses\_, term defined.

--\_Tenses\_, the difierent, named and defined,

--whether the names of, are approp., or whether they should be changed,

--whether all express time with equal precision,

--who reckon only \_three\_, and who \_two\_; who still differently and

variously name their tenses,

--\_Tenses\_, past and present, occurring together. See \_Present Tense\_,

\_Imperf. Tense\_, &c.

\_Terminating\_ a sentence with a prep. or other small particle

\_Terminations\_, of words, separated in syllabicat.

--of verbs, numb. of different, in each tense

--of the Eng. verb; DR. A. MURR. account of

--tendency of the lang. to lay aside the least agreeable

--usage of famil. discourse in respect to those of second pers. sing.

--verbal or particip., how are found written in old books

--the only reg. ones added to Eng. verbs; utterance of \_ed\_ and \_edst\_

--\_ed\_, participial, and \_n\_, verbal, WALK. on the contrac. of

--\_Termination t\_, for \_ed\_, forced and irreg.

\_Terms\_ of relation, see \_Relation\_. \_Tetrameter\_ line, \_iambic\_, examples

of

--a favorite with many Eng. writers; BUTL. Hudib., GAY'S Fab., and most

of SCOTT'S poems, writt. in couplets of this meas.

--admits the doub. rhyme adapted to familiar and burlesque style

--\_trochaic\_, examples of

--character of do.

--EVERETT'S fanciful notions about do.

--\_anapestic\_, examples of

--L. HUNT'S "Feast of the Poets," an extended examp. of do.

--\_dactylic\_, examples of

\_Than, as\_, with ellips. in latter term of comparison

--character and import of

--declinable words connected by, put in same case

--\_Than\_ WHOM, as Gr. genitive governed by comparat., MILT.

--what grammarians have \_inferred\_ from the phrase

--MURR. expedient to dispose of do.

--CHURCH. makes the rel. in do. "the obj. case absol.,"

--BROWN determines with respect to the construc.

--\_Than\_, as demanded after \_else, other\_, &c., and Eng. comparatives

--derivation of, from Goth. or Anglo-Sax.

\_That\_, its class determined

--its various uses

--as REL. PRONOUN, to what applied

--as used in anomalous construc.,

--its peculiarity of construc. as a relative

--its especial use as the restrictive relative

--the frequent employment of, by Addison, wrongly criticised by BLAIR

--as a relative, in what cases more appropriate than \_who\_ or \_which\_

--\_That\_, ellipt., repeating the import of the preceding words, ("\_And\_

THAT,"

--[Greek: kai tauta],)

--\_That\_, in the phrases \_in that\_, &c., how to be reckoned

--\_That\_, as introducing a dependent clause, how to be ranked

--as introducing a sent. made the subj. or obj. of a finite verb

--its power at the head of a sent. or clause

--its derivation

\_The\_, before the species, what may denote

--how commonly limits the sense

--applied to nouns of either numb.

--before what \_adjectives\_, required

--distinctive use of ("\_The Psalmist\_")

--as relating to comparatives and superlatives

--used for poss. pron.

--repetition of, how avoided

--derivation of, from Sax.

--pronunc. of \_e\_ in. See also \_Definite Article\_.

\_Them\_, in vulg. use as an adj., for \_those\_

\_Thence\_, &c., with \_from\_ prefixed, whether allowable

\_There\_, introductory and idiomatic, notions of grammarians concerning; its

posit. and use; is a regular \_adv. of place\_, and not "without

signification,"

--derivation of, from Anglo-Sax.

--poet. omission of

\_They\_, put indefinitely for \_men\_ or \_people\_

\_This\_ and \_that\_, as explained by CHURCH.

--placed before conjoint singulars, ("THIS POWER AND WILL \_do\_," &c.,)

--in contrasted terms

\_Three stars\_, or asterism, use of

\_Time\_, the order and fitness of, to be observed in constructions

expressing it

--nouns of, with adv. WHEN, as a special relative, following \_Time,

measure\_, or \_weight\_, part made possessive of the whole, ("\_An\_

HOUR'S \_time\_")

--noun of, not poss., immediately before an other, ("\_A\_ POUND

WEIGHT,") \_Time, place\_, &c., the obj. case in expressions of, taken

after the fashion of an adv. \_Time, measure, distance\_, or \_value\_,

nouns of, their peculiarity of construc.; the parsing of \_Time\_, obj.

noun of, qualifying a subsequent adj., ("A \_child\_ OF \_ten years\_

OLD,") \_Four times, five times\_, &c., how to be reckoned. TIMES,

before an other noun, \_by way of\_ MULTIPLICATION, the nature and

construc. of, discussed; decision. \_Times\_, in what construc. may be

called the objective of \_repetition\_, or of \_time repeated\_. \_Time\_

in pronunciation, or \_quantity\_

\_Titles\_, of books, are printed in capitals

--of office, &c., begin with do.

--merely mentioned as such, are without art.

--\_Name and\_ TITLE, (see \_Proper Names\_.) \_Side-titles\_, use of \_dash\_

in application to

\_Tmesis\_, explained

\_To\_, as governing infin. mood

--do., variously explained by grammarians

--is a sign of inf., but not a part of it

--what BROWN claims for his RULE respecting the \_infin. as gov. by the

prep.\_ TO, &c.; he shows that the doctrine originated not with

himself

--TO \_and the verb\_, what FISHER (anno 1800) taught respecting; what,

LOWTH, and what, absurdly, MURR., his copyist

--\_To\_, as governing infin., traced from the Sax. to the Eng. of

WICKL.,

--\_To\_, before infin., evasive teachings of the later grammarians

concerning its class and construc.

--do., how considered by most Eng. grammarians

--do., how proved to be a prep.

--do., preceded by \_for\_, anc.

--after \_what verbs\_, omitted,

--whether to be \_repeated\_ before infinitives in the same construe.

--sometimes required, and sometimes excluded, after \_than\_ or \_as\_

--whether it may be \_separated\_ from its verb by an adv.; is placed

more elegantly AFTER \_an adv.\_, ("PROPERLY TO \_respect\_,")

--in what cases has no prop, antec. term of relat.

--\_To\_ suppressed and \_be\_ inserted after MAKE, whether correctly

--\_To\_, prep, or adv., from Anglo-Sax.

--\_To\_, as prefix to noun, (\_to-day, to-night, to-morrow\_,).

\_Tones\_ of the voice, what; why deserving of j particular attention

--what denominated by SHERID.; what should be their character

--BLAIR'S remark on; HIL. do.

--\_Tones\_ of the passions, WALK, observation on.

\_Topics\_, different, to be treated in separate paragraphs, PREC. of

\_Unity\_.

\_Transposition\_, of the terms of relat., when a preposition begins or ends

a sentence or clause

--\_rhetorical\_, of words, or \_hyperbaton\_.

\_Tribrach\_, defined.

\_Trimeter\_ line, \_iambic\_, the measure seldom used alone; examples of,

--and do., with diversifications

--\_trochaic\_, examples of

--\_anapestic\_, examples of

--alternated with the tetram., examp., "The Rose," of COWP.; the same

scanned

--\_dactylic\_, examples of. \_Triphthong\_, defined

--\_proper\_, do., the only, in Eng.

--\_improp.\_, do.; and the improp. \_triphthongs\_ named.

\_Trochaic verse\_, treated

--\_Troch. verse\_, the stress in

--nature of the single-rhymed; error of MURR. \_et al\_. concerning the

last syll. in

--how may be changed to coincide with other measures; how is affected

by retrenchment

--confounded with \_iambic\_ by several gramm. and prosodists

--Strictures on CHURCH., who doubts the existence of the \_troch\_. ord.

of verse

--\_Troch. verse\_ shown in its eight measures

--\_Trochaics\_, Eng., the TETRAMETER the most common meas. of

--DR. CAMPB. on

--"\_Trochaic\_ of One foot," account of.

\_Trochee\_, or \_choree\_, defined.

\_Tropes\_, what figures of rhetoric are so called; signif. of the term.

\_Trow\_, its signif., and where occurs; in what person and tenses read.

\_Truisms\_ and senseless remarks, how to be dealt with in gram.

\_Tutoyant\_, to what extent prevalent among the French. See \_Youyouing\_, &c.

\_Type\_ or character, two forms of the letters in every kind of.

U.

U, lett., which (as A, E, I, or O) names itself

--its plur. numb.

--sounds properly its own

--as self-naming, to what equivalent; requires art. \_a\_, and not \_an\_,

before it

--pronounced with borrowed sound

--long or diphthongal sound, as \_yu\_; sound of slender \_o\_ or \_oo\_,

after \_r\_ or \_rh\_.

\_Unamendable\_ imperfections sometimes found in ancient writings, remarks in

relation to.

\_Unauthorized\_ words, use of, as opposed to purity, PREC. concerning.

\_Unbecoming\_, adj., from participle compounded, error of using transitively

words of this form; such error how corrected.

\_Uncertain\_, the part of speech left, see \_Equivocal\_, &c.

\_Unco-passive\_ voice, or form, of the verb, ("\_Is being built\_,") the use

of. conflicts with the older and better usage of the lang.

--the subject of, discussed by BROWN

--the true principle with respect to, stated.

\_Underlining\_ words, in preparing manuscripts, to denote Italics &c.

\_Understood\_, words said, in technical phrase, to be, what such, (Lat.,

\_subaudita\_)

\_Ungrammatical\_ language by which grammar itself is professedly taught,

sample from MURR.; from PINNEO; \_et al. e diversis\_, Gram. of E. Gram.,

\_passim\_.

\_Unity\_, as a quality of style, in what consists

--required by every sentence

--Precepts aiming at offences against. \_Unity\_, THE IDEA OF, how

generally \_determined\_, in respect to a collect. noun, whether it

conveys such idea or not.

\_Usage\_, as a law of orthography for particular words

--\_Usage\_, as it has been, and as it is, the advantage of an exhibition

of, by the grammarian.

\_Useless\_ words, employment of, as opposed to precision.

UTTERANCE, treated

--\_Utterance\_, what, and what includes.

V.

V, name and plur. of:

--written for a number:

--sound of,

Value, &c., nouns of, see Time.

Verbal or participial noun, (see Participial, &c.)

--Verbal forms used substantively, by poet pecul.

VERBS, Etymol. of;

--Verb, defined:

--why so called:

--a perf. definition of, why difficult to form;

--CHIEF TERMS, or PRINCIP. PARTS, of an Eng. verb, named and defined.

--Verbs. Classes of, with respect to their FORM, named and defined:

--do., with respect to their signif., do.

--(See Active-Transitive Verb, &c.) \_Verbs\_, whole numb, of, in Eng.;

the regular, far the most numerous; account of the others

--how divided with respect to signif. in most grammars and

dictionaries; BROWN'S division

--divided by certain grammarians into act., pass., and neut.

--MURR, on the distribution of

--NIX. on do.

--\_Verbs\_, in Lat., grammarians of old differed respecting the

distribut. of

--different methods of distribut. of, by several other authors, noticed

--\_Verbs\_, most act., may be used either as trans. or as intrans.

--some may be used either in an act. or a neut. sense

--act. form of, used in a pass. sense; so also PART. in \_ing\_, ("\_The

books continue\_ SELLING")

--\_Verbs\_, Modifications of, named

--Moods of, named and defined; (see \_Infinitive Mood, Indic. Mood\_,

&c.)

--Tenses of, named and defined; (see \_Present Tense, Imperf. Tense\_,

&c.)

--Persons and numbers of, what

--Conjugations of

--how principally conjugated

--(See \_Conjugation\_)

--\_Verbs\_, Irreg., List of

--simp. irreg., numb. of; whence derived

--Redundant, List of

--Defective, do.

--\_Verbs irreg\_. and \_redund.\_, of what character all former lists of,

have been

--\_Verbs\_, of asking and teaching, construc. of

--whether any, in Eng., can govern two cases

--suppressed in exclamat. &c.

--\_Verbs\_, Synt. of

--\_Verbs\_ requiring a regimen, should not be used without an object

--\_Verb\_, AGREEM. \_of, with its subject\_

--do., inferred

--do., by sylleps., in plur., title of a book

--do., in imperat. mood

--\_Verb\_ of the third pers. sing. with a plur. noun of the neut. gend.,

the use of, a strange custom of the Greeks; such use not existent in

Eng.

--\_Verb\_, AGREEM. of, with infin. phrase or sentence as subject

--do., with infin. subject limited, ("FOR MEN TO SEARCH \_their own

glory\_, IS," &c.)

--do., with a nom. in interrog. sentences

--do., with a rel., according to the true anteced. of the pron.;

(examp. of error from DR. BLAIR)

--do., with a nom. limited by adjuncts

--do., with composite or converted subjects

--do., with \_each, every, one\_, &c., as leading words

--do., by change of nominative

--\_Verb\_, the \_form of\_, to be adapted to the style

--when requires a separate nom. expressed

--\_Verb\_, AGREEM. of, with a nom. noun collective

--do., with joint nominatives

--do., with two connected nominatives in appos.

--do., with two conn. nominatives emphatically distinguished

--do., with two conn. nominatives preceded by \_each, every\_, or \_no\_

--do., with nearest of connected nominatives, and understood to the

rest; whether the usage is proper in Eng.

--do., with connected nominatives of different persons

--do., with connected subjects, one taken affirmat. and the other

negat.

--do., with two subjects connected by \_as well as, but\_, or \_save\_

--do., with connected subjects preceded by \_each, every\_, or \_no\_

--do., in ellipt. construc. of joint nominatives

--do., with distinct subject phrases connected by \_and\_

--do., with disjunct. nominatives

--do., with disagreeing nominatives connected disjunctively

--do., when connected nominatives require different forms of the verb

--do., with distinct phrases disjunct, connected

--\_Verbs\_, connected by \_and, or\_, or \_nor\_, how must agree

--discordant, how managed with respect to agreem.

--\_Verb\_, mixture of the diff. styles of, ineleg.

--diff. moods of, not to be used under the same circumstances

--when two connected terms require diff. forms of, what insertion is

necessary

--\_Verbs\_ of \_commanding, desiring, expecting\_, &c., to what actions or

events refer

--of \_desisting, omitting\_, &c., with a part. following, rather than an

infin.

--of \_preventing\_, what should be made to govern

--\_Verb\_, finite, punc. of

--ellips. of, shown

--derivation of, from nouns, adjectives, and verbs

--poet. peculiarities in the use of

\_Verbosity\_, as affecting strength

\_Verse\_, in oppos. to prose, what

--\_Blank verse\_, as distinguished from rhyme

--\_Verse\_, general sense of the term; its derivation and literal

signif.; the visible form of \_verse\_

--\_Verse\_, as defined by JOH., WALK., \_et al\_.; do. by WEBST.

--\_Verse\_, Eng., the difficulty of treating the subject of, and from

what this arises

--A \_verse\_, or line of poetry, of what consists

--\_Verse\_, or poetic measure, the kinds, or orders of, named; (see

\_Iambic Verse, Trochaic Verse\_, &c.)

--\_Verse\_, the proper reading of

VERSIFICATION, treated

--\_Versification\_, defined

--\_Versification\_, POE'S (E. A.) notions concerning; his censure of

BROWN'S former definition of; his rejection of the idea of versif.

from the principle of rhythm; his unfortunate derivat. of \_rhythm\_

from [Greek: hurithmos,] and vain attempts to explain the term: the

farrago summarily disposed of by BROWN

--EVERETT'S "System of Eng. Versification," account of, and strictures

on

\_Vision\_, or \_imagery\_, explained

\_Vocative case\_ of Lat. and Gr. gram., not known in Eng.

\_Voice\_, ACTIVE, and PASSIVE, whether necessary terms in Eng. gram.

\_Vowel\_, defined

--\_Vowels\_ named

--\_W\_ and \_Y\_, when vowels; comp.

--\_Vowel sounds\_, or vocal elements, the different, how produced

--what are those in Eng.

--how each may be variously expressed by letters; notation of

--\_Vowels\_, two coming together, where may be parted in syllabication.

W.

W, its name and plur. numb.

--simpler term than \_Double-u\_ perhaps desirable; DR. WEBST. on the

lett.

--W, when a vowel

--with vowel foll., sound of

--before \_h\_, how pronounced

--in Eng. never used alone as a vowel

--no diphthongs or triphth. in Eng., beginning with.

\_Wages\_, noun, plur. by formation; its construe, with a verb.

\_Walker, J.\_, estimate of his Critical Pronouncing Dictionary

--in his lexicography how far followed DR. JOH.

\_Was\_, contrary to usage preferred by some to \_were\_, in the imperf. sing,

of the subj.

\_We\_, plur., as representing the speaker and others; how sometimes used in

stead of the sing.; sometimes preferred by monarchs to \_I\_.

\_Webster, Dr. N.\_, describes language as comprehending the voice of brutes

--never named the Eng. letters rightly

--his orthography as a \_standard\_; do. compared with that of DR. JOH.

--the result to himself of his various attempts to reform our orthog.;

the value of his \_definitions\_.

\_Weight, measure\_, &c., see \_Time\_.

\_Wert\_, as used in lieu of \_wast\_

--its mood not easy to determine; authorities for a various use of.

\_What\_, its class and nature

--to what usually applied; its twofold relat. explained

--its numb.; example of solec. in the use of

--as a mere adj., or as a pron. indef.

--its use both as an adj. and as a relative at the same time; do. for

\_who\_ or \_which\_, ludic. and vulg.

--declined

--how to be disposed of in etymolog. parsing; how to be parsed

syntactically

--how becomes an interj.

--used appar. for an adv.; uttered exclamatorily before an adj., to be

taken as an adj., ("WHAT PARTIAL \_judges are our\_," &c.,)

--followed by \_that\_, by way of pleonasm, ("WHAT \_I tell you in

darkness\_, THAT," &c.,)

--with \_but\_ preceding, ("\_To find a friend\_, BUT WHAT" &c.,)

--vulg. use of, for \_that\_

--derivation of, from Sax., shown.

\_Whatever\_ or \_whatsoever\_, its peculiarities of construe., the same as

those of \_what\_; its use in simp, relation

--its construc. as a double relative; whether it may be supposed

ellipt.

--its declension.

\_When, where\_, or \_while\_, in what instance not fit to follow the verb \_is\_

--\_When, where, whither\_, as partaking of the nature of a pron.;

construc, of do., with antecedent nouns of time, &c., how far

allowable

--derivation of, from Anglo-Sax.

\_Whether\_, as an interrog. pron.; as a disjunc. conjunc.

--conjunc. corresponsive to \_or\_

--as do., its derivation from Sax.

\_Which\_, relative

--its former use; to what objects now confined

--its use after a personal term taken by meton. for a thing; do., as

still applicable to persons

--is of all the genders, (in oppos. to MURR., WEBST., \_et. al.\_,)

--is less approp. than \_who\_, in all personifications

--its construc. when taken in its discrim. sense,

--how differs from the rel. \_that\_

--BLAIR'S incorrect remarks respecting

--\_Which\_, as rel. or interrog., declined

--\_Which\_, sometimes takes \_whose\_ for its poss.,

--represents a prop. name taken merely as a name, ("\_Herod\_

--WHICH \_is but\_," &c.,)

--do. nouns of mult, expressing persons, when such are strictly of the

neut. gend., ("The COMMITTEES WHICH" &c.,)

--in what cases is less approp. than \_that\_

--does not fitly represent an indicative assertion, ('"Be ATTENTIVE,

\_without\_ WHICH," &c.,)

--its Sax. derivation shown

--\_The which\_, obsol.,

--\_Which\_, interrog., what demands,

--to what objects applied

--now used for the obsol. \_whether\_.

\_Whichever, whichsoever\_, signif. and construc. of

--declension of.

\_Who\_, relative

--to what usually applied

--has superseded \_which\_, formerly applied to persons, ("\_Our Father\_

WHO \_art\_" &c.,)

--to be preferred to \_which\_, in all personifications

--how differs from the rel. \_that\_

--\_Who\_, as rel. or interrog., declined,

--\_Whose\_, use of, for the defec. poss., \_of which\_

--\_Than whom\_, (see \_Than.\_)

--\_Who\_, interrog., what demands

--may be the anteced. of the rel. \_that\_

--\_Who\_, derivation of, from Sax.

\_Whoever\_, and \_whoso\_ or \_whosoever\_, signif. and construc. of

--declens. of

--\_Whoso\_ and \_whatso\_, antiq., import and use of,

\_Whole\_, improp. use of, for \_all\_. ("\_Almost the\_ WHOLE \_inhabitants\_,"

HUME.,).

\_Why\_, after nouns of cause, (see \_When\_, &c.)

--\_Why, wherefore, therefore\_, their class.

\_Will\_, verb, how varied

--use of, as a principal verb.

\_Wis\_, verb, pret. \_wist\_, signif. and use of

--\_Had I wist\_,

\_With\_, for \_and\_, (see \_Cum\_:)

--added to adv. of direc., with emphat. imperat. ("\_Up\_ WITH \_it\_").

\_Withal\_ its class and construc. \_Without\_, obsol. use of, for

\_unless\_ or \_except\_. \_Withouten\_, paragog. and poet. form.

\_Withinside of\_ \_Won't\_, whence formed; its pronunc.

\_Worcester, Dr. J. E.\_, his Universal and Critical Dictionary WORDS,

treated.

--\_Word\_, defined.

--\_Words\_ distinguished, and the divisions of, defined.

--(See \_Compound Word\_.)

--\_Words\_, Rules for the figure of;

--simp., \_when\_ compounding is to be avoided

--when to be joined, or to be written separately

--\_Words\_, the nature of, explained

--the consid. of, as comm., and as prop.,

--brevity sought in the comm. use of

--the identity of, in what consists

--unsettled and variable usage with respect to the figure of

--\_Words\_ that may constitute diff. parts of speech, their construc.

not to be left doubtf.

--the reference of, to other words, do.

--senselessly jumbled, charac. of

--entirely needless, how to be disposed of

--unintelligently misapplied, what indicates,

--\_Words\_, PUNCT. \_of\_: in pairs; alternated; put absol.; in appos.;

repeated

--\_Words\_, derivation of, treated

--most of those regarded as primitives in Eng., may be traced to

ulterior sources

--the study of, its importance

--how the knowledge of, may be promoted with respect to Eng.

--\_Words\_, the use of, as affecting Purity

--do., as affect. Propriety

--do., as affect. Precision

--do., as affect. Perspicuity

--do., as affect. Strength

\_Worshiper\_, whether properly written with a single or a double \_p\_

\_Worth\_, its class and construc.

\_Worthy\_, admits not ellips. of prep, \_of\_ before obj. following

\_Writing, to write\_, what meant by

X.

X, its name and plur. num.

--format. of the plur. of nouns in

--why never doubled

--written for a number

--its sounds

Y.

Y, its name and plur. numb.;

--borrowed first by the Romans from the Greeks, by whom called Ypsilon

--in Eng. is either a vowel or a conson.

--classed with the semivowels

--final, changed or unchanged before terminations

--do., when, by former practice, retained in verbs ending in \_y\_,

before conson. terminations

--sounds of

--in poet. format. of adjectives

\_Ye\_, nom. plur., solemn style

--its use as the obj. case

--as a mere explet. in burlesque

--its use in the lang. of tragedy

--used for \_thee\_

--in the Eng. Bible not found in the obj. case

--\_Ye\_ and \_you\_, promisc. use of, in the same case and the same style,

ineleg.

\_Yes, yea\_, in a simp. affirmation, construc. and class of

--derivation of, from Anglo-Sax.

\_You\_, use of, for thou

--\_You\_, with \_was\_, ("YOU WAS BUILDING,") approved by DR. WEBST. \_et

al.\_, as the better form for the sing. numb.

--\_You\_, and VERB PLUR., in reference to \_one person\_, how to be

treated in parsing. \_Your\_, facet. in conversation, and how uttered

("\_Dwells, like\_ YOUR \_miser\_, sir," &c., SHAK.,) \_Yourself\_, its

pecul. of construc.

\_Your Majesty, your Highness\_, &c., see \_Address\_.

\_Youyouing\_ and \_theethouing\_, history of

Z.

Z, its name and plur.

--has been called by several names; WALK., on the name

--peculiarity of its ordinary \_form\_

--its sounds described

\_Zeugma\_, (i.e., JUGATIO, \_vel\_ CONNEXIO, \_Sanct.\_,) the various forms of,

were named and noticed, but not censured, by the ancient grammarians

--constructions of \_adjectives\_, referred to the figure, ("ONE \_or a\_

FEW \_judges\_,"); do. of verbs, ("\_But\_ HE NOR I FEEL \_more\_," YOUNG,)

THE END OF THE INDEX,

AND OF THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

FOOTNOTES:

[1] Ben Jonson's notion of grammar, and of its parts, was as follows:

"Grammar is the art of true and well-speaking a language: the writing is

but an accident.

The Parts of Grammar are

Etymology \ which is / the true notation of words,

Syntaxe / \ the right ordering of them.

A word is a part of speech or note, whereby a thing is known or called; and

consisteth of one or more letters. A letter is an indivisible part of a

syllable, whose prosody, or right sounding, is perceived by the power; the

orthography, or right writing, by the form. Prosody, and Orthography, are

not parts of grammar, but diffused, like blood and spirits, through the

whole."--\_Jonson's Grammar\_, Book I.

[2] Horne Tooke eagerly seized upon a part of this absurdity, to prove that

Dr. Lowth, from whom Murray derived the idea, was utterly unprepared for

what he undertook in the character of a grammarian: "Dr. Lowth, when he

undertook to write his \_Introduction\_, with the best intention in the

world, most assuredly sinned against his better judgment. For he begins

most judiciously, thus--'Universal grammar explains the principles which

are common to \_all\_ languages. The grammar of any particular language,

\_applies\_ those common principles to that particular language.' And yet,

with \_this clear truth\_ before his eyes, he boldly proceeds to give a

\_particular\_ grammar; without being himself possessed of one single

principle of universal grammar."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. 1, p. 224.

If Dr. Lowth discredited his better judgement in attempting to write an

English grammar, perhaps Murray, and his weaker copyists, have little

honoured theirs, in supposing they were adequate to such a work. But I do

not admit, that either Lowth or Murray "\_begins most judiciously\_," in

speaking of Universal and Particular grammar in the manner above cited. The

authors who have started with this fundamental blunder, are strangely

numerous. It is found in some of the most dissimilar systems that can be

named. Even Oliver B. Peirce, who has a much lower opinion of Murray's

ability in grammar than Tooke had of Lowth's, adopts this false notion with

all implicitness, though he decks it in language more objectionable, and

scorns to acknowledge whence he got it. See his \_Gram.\_, p. 16. De Suey, in

his Principles of General Grammar, says, "All rules of Syntax relate to two

things, \_Agreement and Government\_."--\_Foxdick's Tr.\_, p. 108. And again:

"None of these rules properly belong to General Grammar, as each language

follows, in regard to the rules of Agreement and Government, a course

peculiar to itself."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 109." "It is with Construction [i.e.,

Arrangement] as with Syntax. It follows no general rule common to all

languages."--\_Ibid.\_ According to these positions, which I do not admit to

be strictly true, General or Universal Grammar has no principles of

\_Syntax\_ at all, whatever else it may have which Particular Grammar can

assume and apply.

[3] This verb "\_do\_" is wrong, because "\_to be contemned\_" is passive.

[4] "A very good judge has left us his opinion and determination in this

matter; that he 'would take for his rule in speaking, not what might happen

to be the faulty caprice of the multitude, but the consent and agreement of

learned men.'"--\_Creighton's Dict.\_, p. 21. The "good judge" here spoken

of, is Quintilian; whose words on the point are these: "Necessarium est

judicium, constituendumque imprimis, id ipsum quid sit, quod

\_consuetudinem\_ vocemus. \* \* \* In loquendo, non, si quid vitiose multis

insederit, pro regula sermonis, amplendum est. \* \* \* Ergo consuetudinem

sermonis, vocabo \_consensum eruditorum\_ sicut vivendi, consenum

honorum."--\_De Inst. Orat.\_, Lib. i. Cap. 6, p. 57.

[5] "The opinion of plenty is amongst the causes of want; and the great

quantity of books maketh a show rather of superfluity than lack; which

surcharge, nevertheless, is not to be removed by making no more books, but

by making more good books, which, as the serpent of Moses, might devour the

serpents of the enchanters."--\_Bacon\_. In point of style, his lordship is

here deficient; and he has also mixed and marred the figure which he uses.

But the idea is a good one.

[6] Not, "\_Oldham\_, in Hampshire," as the Universal Biographical Dictionary

has it; for \_Oldham\_ is in \_Lancashire\_, and the name of Lily's birthplace

has sometimes been spelled "\_Odiam\_."

[7] There are other Latin grammars now in use in England; but what one is

most popular, or whether any regard is still paid to the ancient edict or

not, I cannot say. Dr. Adam, in his preface, dated 1793, speaking of Lily,

says: "His Grammar was appointed, by an act \_which is still in force\_, to

be taught in the established schools of England." I have somehow gained the

impression, that the act is now totally disregarded.--\_G. Brown\_.

[8] For this there is an obvious reason, or apology, in what his biographer

states, as "the humble origin of his Grammar;" and it is such a reason as

will go to confirm what I allege. This famous compilation was produced at

the request of \_two or three young teachers\_, who had charge of a \_small

female school\_ in the neighbourhood of the author's residence: and nothing

could have been more unexpected to their friend and instructor, than that

he, in consequence of this service, should become known the world over, as

\_Murray the Grammarian\_. "In preparing the work, and consenting to the

publicaton, he had no expectation that it would be read, except by the

school for which it was designed, and two or three other schools conducted

by persons who were also his friends."--\_Life of L Murray\_, p. 250.

[9] Grammatici namque auctoritas per se nulla est; quom ex sola

doctissimorum oraturum, historicorum, poetarum, et aliorum ideonorum

scriptorum observatione, constet ortam esse veram grammaticam. \_Multa

dicenda forent, si grammatistarum ineptias refellere vellem\_: sed nulla est

gloria præterire asellos."--DESPAUTERII \_Præf. Art. Versif.\_, fol. iii,

1517.

[10] The Latin word for \_participle\_ is \_participium\_, which makes

\_participio\_ in the dative or the ablative case; but the Latin word for

\_partake\_ is \_participo\_, and not "\_participio\_."--G. BROWN.

[11] This sentence is manifestly bad English: either the singular verb

"\_appears\_" should be made plural, or the plural noun "\_investigations\_"

should be made singular.--G. BROWN.

[12] "What! a book have \_no merit\_, and yet be called for at the rate of

\_sixty thousand copies a year\_! What a slander is this upon the public

taste! What an insult to the understanding and discrimination of the good

people of these United States! According to this reasoning, all the

inhabitants of our land must be fools, except one man, and that man is

GOOLD BROWN!"--KIRKHAM, \_in the Knickerbocker\_, Oct. 1837, p. 361.

Well may the honest critic expect to be called a slanderer of "the public

taste," and an insulter of the nation's "understanding," if both the merit

of this vaunted book and the wisdom of its purchasers are to be measured

and proved by the author's profits, or the publisher's account of sales!

But, possibly, between the intrinsic merit and the market value of some

books there may be a difference. Lord Byron, it is said, received from

Murray his bookseller, nearly ten dollars a line for the Fourth Canto of

Childe Harold, or about as much for every two lines as Milton obtained for

the whole of Paradise Lost. Is this the true ratio of the merit of these

authors, or of the wisdom of the different ages in which they lived?

[13] Kirkham's real opinion of Murray cannot be known from this passage

only. How able is that writer who is chargeable with the \_greatest want\_ of

taste and discernment? "In regard to the application of the final pause in

reading blank verse, \_nothing can betray a greater want of rhetorical taste

and philosophical acumen\_, than the directions of Mr. Murray."--\_Kirkham's

Elocution\_, p. 145. Kirkham is indeed no judge either of the merits, or of

the demerits, of Murray's writings; nor is it probable that this criticism

originated with himself. But, since it appears in his name, let him have

the credit of it, and of representing the compiler whom he calls "\_that

able writer\_" and "\_that eminent philologist\_," as an untasteful dunce, and

a teacher of \_nonsense\_: "To say that, unless we 'make every \_line\_

sensible to the ear,' we mar the melody, and suppress the numbers of the

poet, is \_all nonsense\_."--\_Ibid.\_ See Murray's Grammar, on "Poetical

Pauses;" 8vo, p. 260; 12mo, 210.

[14] "Now, in these instances, I should be fair game, were it not for the

\_trifling\_ difference, that I happen to present the doctrines and notions

of \_other writers\_, and NOT my own, as stated by my learned

censor."--KIRKHAM, \_in the Knickerbocker\_, Oct. 1837, p. 360. If the

instructions above cited are not his own, there is not, within the lids of

either book, a penny's worth that is. His fruitful copy-rights are void in

law: the "learned censor's" pledge shall guaranty this issue.--G. B. 1838.

[15] I am sorry to observe that the gentleman, Phrenologist, as he

professes to be, has so little \_reverence\_ in his crown. He could not read

the foregoing suggestion without scoffing at it. Biblical truth is not

powerless, though the scornful may refuse its correction.--G. B. 1838.

[16] Every schoolboy is familiar with the following lines, and rightly

understands the words "\_evil\_" and "\_good\_" to be \_nouns\_, and not

\_adjectives\_.

"The \_evil\_ that men do, lives after them;

The \_good\_ is oft interred with their bones."--SHAKSPEARE.

\_Julius Cæsar, Act 3: Antony's Funeral Oration over Cæsar's Body.\_

Kirkham has vehemently censured me for \_omitting the brackets\_ in which he

encloses the words that be supposes to be \_understood\_ in this couplet. But

he forgets two important circumstances: \_First\_, that I was quoting, not

the bard, but the grammatist; \_Second\_, that a writer uses brackets, to

distinguish \_his own\_ amendments of what he quotes, and not those of an

other man. Hence the marks which he has used, would have been \_improper\_

for me. Their insertion does not make his reading of the passage \_good

English\_, and, consequently, does not avert the point of my criticism.

The foregoing Review of Kirkham's Grammar, was published as an extract

from my manuscript, by the editors of the Knickerbocker, in their number

for June, 1837. Four months afterwards, with friendships changed, they

gave, him the "justice" of appearing in their pages, in a long and virulent

article against me and my works, representing me, "with emphatic force," as

"\_a knave, a liar, and a pedant\_." The \_enmity\_ of that effusion I forgave;

because I bore him no personal ill-will, and was not selfish enough to

quarrel for my own sake. Its \_imbecility\_ clearly proved, that in this

critique there is nothing \_with which he could justly find fault\_.

Perceiving that no point of this argument could be broken, he \_changed the

ground\_, and satisfied himself with despising, upbraiding, and vilifying

the writer. Of what \_use\_ this was, others may judge.

This extraordinary grammarian survived the publication of my criticism

about ten years, and, it is charitably hoped, died happily; while I have

had, for a period somewhat longer, all the benefits which his earnest

"\_castigation\_" was fit to confer. It is not perceived, that what was

written before these events, should now be altered or suppressed by reason

of them. With his pretended "defence," I shall now concern myself no

further than simply to deny one remarkable assertion contained in it; which

is this--that I, Goold Brown, "at the funeral of Aaron Ely," in 1830,

"praised, and \_highly\_ praised, this self-same Grammar, and declared it to

be 'A GOOD WORK!'"--KIRKHAM, \_in the Knickerbocker\_, Oct., 1837, p. 362. I

treated him always courteously, and, on this solemn occasion, walked with

him without disputing on grammar; but, if this statement of his has any

reasonable foundation, I know not what it is.--G. B. in 1850.

[17] See \_Notes to Pope's Dunciad\_, Book II, verse 140.

[18] A modern namesake of the Doctor's, the \_Rev. David Blair\_, has the

following conception of the \_utility\_ of these speculations: "To enable

children to comprehend the \_abstract idea\_ that all the words in a language

consist but of \_nine kinds\_, it will be found useful to explain how \_savage

tribes\_ WHO \_having no language\_, would first invent one, beginning with

interjections and nouns, and proceeding from one part of speech to another,

as their introduction might successively be called for by necessity or

luxury."--\_Blair's Pract. Gram., Pref.\_, p. vii.

[19] "Interjections, I \_shewed\_, or passionate exclamations, were the

\_first elements\_ of speech. Men laboured to communicate their feelings to

one another, by those expressive cries and gestures which nature taught

them."--\_Dr. Hugh Blair's Lectures\_, p. 57.

[20] "It is certain that the verb was invented before the noun, in all the

languages of which a tolerable account has been procured, either in ancient

or modern times."--\_Dr. Alex. Murray's History of European Languages\_, Vol.

I, p. 326.

[21] The Greek of this passage, together with a translation not very

different from the foregoing, is given as a marginal note, in \_Harris's

Hermes\_, Book III, Chap. 3d.

[22] The Bible does not say positively that there was no diversity of

languages \_before the flood\_; but, since the life-time of Adam extended

fifty-six years into that of Lamech, the father of Noah, and two hundred

and forty-three into that of Methuselah, the father of Lamech, with both of

whom Noah was contemporary nearly six hundred years, it is scarcely

possible that there should have occurred any such diversity, either in

Noah's day or before, except from some extraordinary cause. Lord Bacon

regarded the multiplication of languages at Babel as a general evil, which

had had no parallel but in the curse pronounced after Adam's transgression.

When "the language of all the earth" was "confounded," Noah was yet alive,

and he is computed to have lived 162 years afterwards; but whether in his

day, or at how early a period, "grammar" was thought of, as a remedy for

this evil, does not appear. Bacon says, "Concerning speech and words, the

consideration of them hath produced the science of grammar. For man still

striveth to redintegrate himself in those benedictions, of which, by his

fault, he hath been deprived; and as he hath striven against the first

general curse by the invention of all other arts, so hath he striven to

come forth from \_the second general curse, which was the confusion of

tongues, by the art of grammar\_; whereof the use in a mother tongue is

small, in a foreign tongue more, but most in such foreign tongues as have

ceased to be vulgar tongues, and are turned only to learned tongues."--See

\_English Journal of Education\_, Vol. viii, p. 444.

[23] It should be, "\_to all living creatures\_;" for each creature had,

probably, but one name.--G. Brown.

[24] Some recent German authors of note suppose language to have sprung up

among men \_of itself\_, like spontaneous combustion in oiled cotton; and

seem to think, that people of strong feelings and acute minds must

necessarily or naturally utter their conceptions by words--and even by

words both spoken and written. Frederick Von Schlegel, admitting "the

\_spontaneous origin\_ of language generally," and referring speech to its

"\_original source\_--a deep feeling, and a clear discriminating

intelligence," adds: "The oldest system of writing \_developed itself\_ at

the same time, and in the same manner, as the spoken language; not wearing

at first the symbolic form, which it subsequently assumed in compliance

with the necessities of a less civilized people, but composed of certain

signs, which, in accordance with the simplest elements of language,

actually conveyed the sentiments of the race of men then

existing."--\_Millington's Translation of Schlegel's Æsthetic Works\_, p.

455.

[25] "Modern Europe owes a principal share of its enlightened and moral

state to the restoration of learning: the advantages which have accrued to

history, religion, the philosophy of the mind, and the progress of society;

the benefits which have resulted from the models of Greek and Roman

taste--in short, all that a knowledge of the progress and attainments of

man in past ages can bestow on the present, has reached it through the

medium of philology."--\_Dr. Murray's History of European Languages\_, Vol.

II, p. 335.

[26] "The idea of God is a development from within, and a matter of faith,

not an induction from without, and a matter of proof. When Christianity has

developed its correlative principles within us, then we find evidences of

its truth everywhere; nature is full of them: but we cannot find them

before, simply because we have no eye to find them with."--H. N. HUDSON:

\_Democratic Review, May\_, 1845.

[27] So far as mind, soul, or spirit, is a subject of natural science,

(under whatever name,) it may of course be known naturally. To say to what

extent theology may be considered a natural science, or how much knowledge

of any kind may have been opened to men otherwise than by words, is not now

in point. Dr. Campbell says, "Under the general term [\_physiology\_] I also

comprehend \_natural theology\_ and \_psychology\_, which, in my opinion, have

been most unnaturally disjoined by philosophers. Spirit, which here

comprises only the Supreme Being and the human soul, is surely as much

included under the notion of natural object as a body is, and is knowable

to the philosopher purely in the same way, by observation and

experience."--\_Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, p. 66. It is quite unnecessary for

the teacher of languages to lead his pupils into any speculations on this

subject. It is equally foreign to the history of grammar and to the

philosophy of rhetoric.

[28] "Except ye utter by the tongue words easy to be understood, how shall

it be known what is spoken? for ye shall speak into the air. There are, it

may be, so many kinds of voices in the world, and none of them is without

signification. Therefore, if I know not the meaning of the voice, I shall

be unto him that speaketh, a barbarian; and he that speaketh, shall be a

barbarian unto me."--\_1 Cor.\_, xiv. 9, 10, 11. "It is impossible that our

knowledge of words should outstrip our knowledge of things. It may, and

often doth, come short of it. Words may be remembered as sounds, but [they]

cannot be understood as signs, whilst we remain unacquainted with the

things signified."--\_Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, p. 160. "Words can

excite only ideas already acquired, and if no previous ideas have been

formed, they are mere unmeaning sounds."--\_Spurzheim on Education\_, p. 200.

[29] Sheridan the elecutionist makes this distinction: "All that passes in

the mind of man, may be reduced to two classes, which I call ideas and

emotions. By ideas, I mean all thoughts which rise, and pass in succession

in the mind. By emotions, all exertions of the mind in arranging,

combining, and separating its ideas; as well as the effects produced on all

the mind itself by those ideas; from the more violent agitation of the

passions, to the calmer feelings produced by the operation of the intellect

and the fancy. In short, thought is the object of the one; internal

feeling, of the other. That which serves to express the former, I call the

language of ideas; and the latter, the language of emotions. Words are the

signs of the one: tones, of the other. Without the use of these two sorts

of language, it is impossible to communicate through the ear, all that

passes in the mind of man."--\_Sheridan's Art of Reading; Blair's Lectures\_,

p. 333.

[30] "Language is \_the great instrument\_, by which all the faculties of the

mind are brought forward, moulded, polished, and exerted."--\_Sheridan's

Elocution\_, p. xiv.

[31] It should be, "\_These are\_."--G. B.

[32] It should be, "\_They fitly represent\_."--G. B.

[33] This is badly expressed; for, according to his own deduction, \_each

part\_ has but \_one sign\_. It should be, "We express \_the several parts by

as many several signs\_."--G. Brown.

[34] It would be better English to say, "the \_instruments\_ and \_the\_

signs."--G. Brown.

[35] "Good speakers do not pronounce above three syllables in a second of

time; and generally only two and a half, taking in the necessary

pauses."--\_Steele's Melody of Speech\_.

[36] The same idea is also conveyed in the following sentence from Dr.

Campbell: "Whatever regards the analysis of the operations of the mind,

\_which is quicker than lightning in all her energies\_, must in a great

measure be abstruse and dark."--\_Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, p. 289. Yet this

philosopher has given it as his opinion, "that we really \_think by signs\_

as well as speak by them."--\_Ib.\_, p. 284. To reconcile these two positions

with each other, we must suppose that thinking by signs, or words, is a

process infinitely more rapid than speech.

[37] That generalization or abstraction which gives to similar things a

common name, is certainly no laborious exercise of intellect; nor does any

mind find difficulty in applying such a name to an individual by means of

the article. The general sense and the particular are alike easy to the

understanding, and I know not whether it is worth while to inquire which is

first in order. Dr. Alexander Murray says, "It must be attentively

remembered, that all terms run from a general to a particular sense. The

work of abstraction, the ascent from individual feelings to classes of

these, was finished before terms were invented. Man was silent till he had

formed some ideas to communicate; and association of his perceptions soon

led him to think and reason in ordinary matters."--\_Hist. of European

Languages\_, Vol. I, p. 94. And, in a note upon this passage, he adds: "This

is to be understood of primitive or radical terms. By the assertion that

man was silent till he had formed ideas to communicate, is not meant, that

any of our species were originally destitute of the natural expressions of

feeling or thought. All that it implies, is, that man had been subjected,

during an uncertain period of time, to the impressions made on his senses

by the material world, before he began to express the natural varieties of

these by articulated sounds. \* \* \* \* \* \* Though the abstraction which

formed such classes, might be greatly aided or supported by the signs; yet

it were absurd to suppose that the sign was invented, till the sense

demanded it."--\_Ib.\_, p. 399.

[38] Dr. Alexander Murray too, In accounting for the frequent abbreviation

of words, seems to suggest the possibility of giving them the celerity of

thought: "Contraction is a change which results from a propensity to make

the signs \_as rapid as the thoughts\_ which they express. Harsh combinations

soon suffer contraction. Very long words preserve only the principal, that

is, the accented part. If a nation accents its words on the last syllable,

the preceding ones will often be short, and liable to contraction. If it

follow a contrary practice, the terminations are apt to decay."--History of

European Languages, Vol. I, p. 172.

[39] "We cannot form a distinct idea of any moral or intellectual quality,

unless we find some trace of it in ourselves."--\_Beattie's Moral Science,

Part Second, Natural Theology\_, Chap. II, No. 424.

[40] "Aristotle tells us that the world is a copy or transcript of those

ideas which are in the mind of the first Being, and that those ideas which

are in the mind of man, are a transcript of the world. To this we may add,

that words are the transcripts of those ideas which are in the mind of man,

and that writing or printing \_are\_ [is] the transcript of

words."--\_Addison, Spect.\_, No. 166.

[41] Bolingbroke on Retirement and Study, Letters on History, p. 364.

[42] See this passage in "The Economy of Human Life," p. 105--a work

feigned to be a compend of Chinese maxims, but now generally understood to

have been written or compiled by \_Robert Dodsley\_, an eminent and ingenious

bookseller in London.

[43] "Those philosophers whose ideas of \_being\_ and \_knowledge\_ are derived

from body and sensation, have a short method to explain the nature of

\_Truth\_.--It is a \_factitious\_ thing, made by every man for himself; which

comes and goes, just as it is remembered and forgot; which in the order of

things makes its appearance \_the last\_ of all, being not only subsequent to

sensible objects, but even to our sensations of them! According to this

hypothesis, there are many truths, which have been, and are no longer;

others, that will be, and have not been yet; and multitudes, that possibly

may never exist at all. But there are other reasoners, who must surely have

had very different notions; those, I mean, who represent Truth not as \_the

last\_, but as \_the first\_ of beings; who call it \_immutable, eternal,

omnipresent\_; attributes that all indicate something more than

human."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 403.

[44] Of the best method of teaching grammar, I shall discourse in an other

chapter. That methods radically different must lend to different results,

is no more than every intelligent person will suppose. The formation of

just methods of instruction, or true systems of science, is work for those

minds which are capable of the most accurate and comprehensive views of the

things to be taught. He that is capable of "originating and producing"

truth, or true "ideas," if any but the Divine Being is so, has surely no

need to be trained into such truth by any factitious scheme of education.

In all that he thus originates, he is himself a \_Novum Organon\_ of

knowledge, and capable of teaching others, especially those officious men

who would help him with their second-hand authorship, and their paltry

catechisms of common-places. I allude here to the fundamental principle of

what in some books is called "\_The Productive System of Instruction\_," and

to those schemes of grammar which are professedly founded on it. We are

told that, "The \_leading principle\_ of this system, is that which its name

indicates--that the child should be regarded not as a mere recipient of the

ideas of others, but as an agent \_capable of collecting, and originating,

and producing\_ most of the ideas which are necessary for its education,

when presented with the objects or the facts from which they may be

derived."--\_Smith's New Gram., Pref., p. 5: Amer. Journal of Education, New

Series\_, Vol. I, No. 6, Art. 1. It ought to be enough for any teacher, or

for any writer, if he finds his readers or his pupils ready \_recipients\_ of

the ideas which he aims to convey. What more they know, they can never owe

to him, unless they learn it from him against his will; and what they

happen to lack, of understanding or believing him, may very possibly be

more his fault than theirs.

[45] Lindley Murray, anonymously copying somebody, I know not whom, says:

"Words derive their meaning from the consent and practice of those who use

them. \_There is no necessary connexion between words and ideas\_. The

association between the sign and the thing signified, is purely

arbitrary."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, Vol. i, p. 139. The second assertion here

made, is very far from being literally true. However arbitrary may be the

use or application of words, their connexion with ideas is so necessary,

that they cannot be words without it. Signification, as I shall hereafter

prove, is a part of the very essence of a word, the most important element

of its nature. And Murray himself says, "The understanding and language

have a strict connexion."--\_Ib.\_, Vol. i, p. 356. In this, he changes

without amendment the words of Blair: "Logic and rhetoric have here, as in

many other cases, a strict connexion."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 120.

[46] "The language which is, at present, spoken throughout Great Britain,

is neither the ancient primitive speech of the island, nor derived from it;

but is altogether of foreign origin. The language of the first inhabitants

of our island, beyond doubt, was the Celtic, or Gælic, common to them with

Gaul; from which country, it appears, by many circumstances, that Great

Britain was peopled. This Celtic tongue, which is said to be very

expressive and copious, and is, probably, one of the most ancient languages

in the world, obtained once in most of the western regions of Europe. It

was the language of Gaul, of Great Britain, of Ireland, and very probably,

of Spain also; till, in the course of those revolutions which by means of

the conquests, first, of the Romans, and afterwards, of the northern

nations, changed the government, speech, and, in a manner, the whole face

of Europe, \_this tongue was gradually obliterated\_; and now subsists only

in the mountains of Wales, in the Highlands of Scotland, and among the wild

Irish. For the Irish, the Welsh, and the Erse, are no other than different

dialects of the same tongue, the ancient Celtic."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_,

Lect. IX, p. 85.

[47] With some writers, the \_Celtic\_ language is \_the Welsh\_; as may be

seen by the following extract: "By this he requires an Impossibility, since

much the greater Part of Mankind can by no means spare 10 or 11 Years of

their Lives in learning those dead Languages, to arrive at a perfect

Knowledge of their own. But by this Gentleman's way of Arguing, we ought

not only to be Masters of \_Latin\_ and \_Greek\_, but of \_Spanish, Italian,

High- Dutch, Low-Dutch, French\_, the \_Old Saxon, Welsh, Runic, Gothic\_, and

\_Islandic\_; since much the greater number of Words of common and general

Use are derived from \_those Tongues\_. Nay, by the same way of Reasoning we

may prove, that the \_Romans\_ and \_Greeks\_ did not understand their own

Tongues, because they were not acquainted with \_the Welsh, or ancient

Celtic\_, there being above 620 radical \_Greek\_ Words derived from \_the

Celtic\_, and of the Latin a much greater Number."--\_Preface to Brightland's

Grammar\_, p. 5.

[48] The author of this specimen, through a solemn and sublime poem in ten

books, \_generally\_ simplified the preterit verb of the second person

singular, by omitting the termination \_st\_ or \_est\_, whenever his measure

did not require the additional syllable. But his tuneless editors have, in

many instances, taken the rude liberty both to spoil his versification, and

to publish under his name what he did not write. They have given him \_bad

prosody\_, or unutterable \_harshness of phraseology\_, for the sake of what

they conceived to be \_grammar\_. So \_Kirkham\_, in copying the foregoing

passage, alters it as he will; and alters it \_differently\_, when he happens

to write some part of it twice: as,

"That morning, thou, that \_slumberedst\_ not before,

Nor \_slept\_, great Ocean! \_laidst\_ thy waves at rest,

And \_hushed\_ thy mighty minstrelsy."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 203.

Again:

"That morning, thou, that \_slumberedst\_ not before,

Nor \_sleptst\_, great Ocean, \_laidst\_ thy waves at rest,

And \_hush'dst\_ thy mighty minstrelsy."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 44.

[49] \_Camenes\_, the \_Muses\_, whom Horace called \_Camænæ\_. The former is an

English plural from the latter, or from the Latin word \_camena\_, a muse or

song. These lines are copied from Dr. Johnson's History of the English

Language; their \_orthography\_ is, in some respects, \_too modern\_ for the

age to which they are assigned.

[50] The Saxon characters being known nowadays to but very few readers, I

have thought proper to substitute for them, in the latter specimens of this

chapter, the Roman; and, as the old use of colons and periods for the

smallest pauses, is liable to mislead a common observer, the punctuation

too has here been modernized.

[51] Essay on Language, by William S. Cardell, New York, 1825, p. 2. This

writer was a great admirer of Horne Tooke, from whom he borrowed many of

his notions of grammar, but not this extravagance. Speaking of the words

\_right\_ and \_just\_, the latter says, "They are applicable only to \_man; to

whom alone language belongs\_, and of whose sensations only words are the

representatives."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 9.

[52] CARDELL: \_Both Grammars\_, p. 4.

[53] "\_Quoties dicimus, toties de nobis judicatur\_."--Cicero. "As often as

we speak, so often are we judged."

[54] "Nor had he far to seek for the source of our impropriety in the use

of words, when he should reflect that the study of our own language, has

never been made a part of the education of our youth. Consequently, the use

of words is got wholly by chance, according to the company that we keep, or

the books that we read." SHERIDAN'S ELOCUTION, \_Introd.\_, p. viii, dated

"July 10, 1762," 2d Amer. Ed.

[55] "To Write and Speak correctly, gives a Grace, and gains a favourable

Attention to what one has to say: And since 'tis \_English\_, that an English

Gentleman will have constant use of, that is the Language he should chiefly

Cultivate, and wherein most care should be taken to polish and perfect his

Stile. To speak or write better \_Latin\_ than \_English\_, may make a Man be

talk'd of, but he would find it more to his purpose to Express himself well

in his own Tongue, that he uses every moment, than to have the vain

Commendation of others for a very insignificant quality. This I find

universally neglected, and no care taken any where to improve Young Men in

their own Language, that they may thoroughly understand and be Masters of

it. If any one among us have a facility or purity more than ordinary in his

Mother Tongue, it is owing to Chance, or his Genius, or any thing, rather

than to his Education or any care of his Teacher. To Mind what \_English\_

his Pupil speaks or writes is below the Dignity of one bred up amongst

\_Greek\_ and \_Latin\_, though he have but little of them himself. These are

the learned Languages fit only for learned Men to meddle with and teach:

\_English\_ is the Language of the illiterate Vulgar."--\_Locke, on

Education\_, p. 339; \_Fourth Ed., London\_, 1699.

[56] A late author, in apologizing for his choice in publishing a grammar

without forms of praxis, (that is, without any provision for a stated

application of its principles by the learner,) describes the whole business

of \_Parsing\_ as a "dry and uninteresting recapitulation of the disposal of

a few parts of speech, and their \_often times told\_ positions and

influence;" urges "the \_unimportance\_ of parsing, \_generally\_;" and

represents it to be only "a finical and ostentatious parade of practical

pedantry."--\_Wright's Philosophical Gram.\_, pp. 224 and 226. It would be no

great mistake to imagine, that \_this gentleman's system\_ of grammar,

applied in any way to practice, could not fail to come under this

unflattering description; but, to entertain this notion of parsing in

general, is as great an error, as that which some writers have adopted on

the other hand, of making this exercise their sole process of inculcation,

and supposing it may profitably supersede both the usual arrangement of the

principles of grammar and the practice of explaining them by definitions.

It is asserted in Parkhurst's "English Grammar for Beginners, on the

Inductive Method of Instruction," that, "to teach the child a definition at

the outset, is beginning at the \_wrong end\_;" that, "with respect to all

that goes under the name of etymology in grammar, it is learned chiefly by

practice in parsing, and scarcely at all by the aid of definitions."--

\_Preface\_, pp. 5 and 6.

[57] Hesitation in speech may arise from very different causes. If we do

not consider this, our efforts to remove it may make it worse. In most

instances, however, it may be overcome by proper treatment, "Stammering,"

says a late author, "is occasioned by an \_over-effort to articulate\_; for

when the mind of the speaker is so occupied with his subject as not to

allow him to reflect upon his defect, he will talk without difficulty. All

stammerers can sing, owing to the continuous sound, and the slight manner

in which the consonants are touched in singing; so a drunken man can run,

though he cannot walk or stand still."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p.

30.

"To think rightly, is of knowledge; to speak fluently, is of nature;

To read with profit, is of care; but to write aptly, is of practice."

\_Book of Thoughts\_, p. 140.

[58] "There is nothing more becoming [to] a \_Gentleman\_, or more useful in

all the occurrences of life, than to be able, on any occasion, to speak

well, and to the purpose."--\_Locke, on Education\_, §171. "But yet, I think

I may ask my reader, whether he doth not know a great many, who live upon

their estates, and so, with the name, should have the qualities of

Gentlemen, who cannot so much as tell a story as they should; much less

speak clearly and persuasively in any business. This I think not to be so

much their fault, as the fault of their education.--They have been taught

\_Rhetoric\_, but yet never taught how to express themselves handsomely with

their tongues or pens in the language they are always to use; as if the

names of the figures that embellish the discourses of those who understood

the art of speaking, were the very art and skill of speaking well. \_This,

as all other things of practice, is to be learned, not by a few, or a great

many rules given; but by\_ EXERCISE \_and\_ APPLICATION \_according to\_ GOOD

RULES, \_or rather\_ PATTERNS, \_till habits are got, and a facility of doing

it well\_."--\_Ib.\_, §189. The forms of parsing and correcting which the

following work supplies, are "\_patterns\_," for the performance of these

practical "\_exercises\_;" and \_such patterns\_ as ought to be implicitly

followed, by every one who means to be a ready and correct speaker on these

subjects.

[59] The principal claimants of "the Inductive Method" of Grammar, are

Richard W. Green, Roswell C. Smith, John L. Parkhurst, Dyor H. Sanborn,

Bradford Frazee, and, Solomon Barrett, Jr.; a set of writers, differing

indeed in their qualifications, but in general not a little deficient in

what constitutes an accurate grammarian.

[60] William C. Woodbridge edited the Journal, and probably wrote the

article, from which the author of "English Grammar on the Productive

System" took his "\_Preface\_."

[61] Many other grammars, later than Murray's, have been published, some in

England, some in America, and some in both countries; and among these there

are, I think, a few in which a little improvement has been made, in the

methods prescribed for the exercises of parsing and correcting. In most,

however, \_nothing of the kind has been attempted\_. And, of the formularies

which have been given, the best that I have seen, are still miserably

defective, and worthy of all the censure that is expressed in the paragraph

above; while others, that appear in works not entirely destitute of merit,

are absolutely \_much worse\_ than Murray's, and worthy to condemn to a

speedy oblivion the books in which they are printed. In lieu of forms of

expression, clear, orderly, accurate, and full; such as a young parser

might profitably imitate; such as an experienced one would be sure to

approve; what have we? A chaos of half-formed sentences, for the ignorant

pupil to flounder in; an infinite abyss of blunders, which a world of

criticism could not fully expose! See, for example, the seven pages of

parsing, in the neat little book entitled, "A Practical Grammar of the

English Language, by the Rev. David Blair: Seventh Edition: London, 1815:"

pp. 49 to 57. I cannot consent to quote more than one short paragraph of

the miserable jumble which these pages contain. Yet the author is evidently

a man of learning, and capable of writing well on some subjects, if not on

this. "Bless the Lord, O my soul!" Form: "\_Bless\_, a verb, (repeat 97);

active (repeat 99); active voice (102); \_infinitive mood\_ (107); \_third

person, soul being the nominative\_ (118); present tense (111); conjugate

the verb after the pattern (129); its object is Lord (99)."--\_Blair's

Gram.\_, p. 50. Of the paragraphs referred to, I must take some notice:

"107. The \_imperative\_ mood commands or orders or intreats."--\_Ib.\_, p. 19.

"118. The \_second person\_ is always the pronoun \_thou\_ or \_you\_ in the

singular, and \_ye\_ or \_you\_ in the plural."--\_Ib.\_, p. 21. "111. The

\_imperative\_ mood has no distinction of tense: and the \_infinitive\_ has no

distinction of persons."--\_Ib.\_, p. 20. Now the author should have said:

"\_Bless\_ is a redundant active-transitive verb, from \_bless, blessed\_ or

\_blest, blessing, blessed\_ or \_blest\_; found in the \_imperative\_ mood,

present tense, \_second\_ person, and singular number:" and, if he meant to

parse the word \_syntactically\_, he should have added: "and agrees with its

nominative \_thou\_ understood; according to the rule which says, 'Every

finite verb must agree with its subject or nominative, in person and

number.' Because the meaning is--\_Bless thou\_ the Lord." This is the whole

story. But, in the form above, several things are false; many,

superfluous; some, deficient; several, misplaced; nothing, right. Not much

better are the models furnished by \_Kirkham, Smith, Lennie, Bullions\_, and

other late authors.

[62] Of Dr. Bullions's forms of parsing, as exhibited in his English

Grammar, which is a modification of Lennie's Grammar, it is difficult to

say, whether they are most remarkable for their deficiencies, their

redundancies, or their contrariety to other teachings of the same author or

authors. Both Lennie and Bullions adopt the rule, that, "An \_ellipsis\_ is

\_not allowable\_ when it would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be

attended with an impropriety."--\_L.\_, p. 91; \_B.\_, p. 130. And the latter

strengthens this doctrine with several additional observations, the first

of which reads thus: "In general, \_no word should be omitted\_ that is

necessary to the \_full and correct construction\_, or even \_harmony\_ of a

sentence."--\_Bullions, E. Gr.\_, 130. Now the parsing above alluded to, has

been thought particularly commendable for its \_brevity\_--a quality

certainly desirable, so far as it consists with the end of parsing, or with

the more needful properties of a good style, clearness, accuracy, ease, and

elegance. But, if the foregoing rule and observation are true, the models

furnished by these writers are not commendably brief, but miserably

defective. Their brevity is, in fact, such as renders them all \_bad

English\_; and not only so, it makes them obviously inadequate to their

purpose, as bringing into use but a part of the principles which the

learner had studied. It consists only in the omission of what ought to have

been inserted. For example, this short line, "\_I lean upon the Lord\_," is

parsed by both of these gentlemen thus: "\_I, the first personal\_ pronoun,

masculine, or feminine, singular, \_the\_ nominative--\_lean\_, a verb,

\_neuter\_, first person singular, present, indicative--\_upon\_, a

preposition--\_the\_, an article, the definite--\_Lord\_, a noun, masculine,

singular, the objective, (governed by \_upon\_.)"--\_Lennie's Principles of

English Gram.\_, p. 51; \_Bullions's\_, 74. This is a little sample of their

etymological parsing, in which exercise they generally omit not only all

the definitions or "reasons" of the various terms applied, but also all the

following particulars: first, the verb \_is\_, and certain \_definitives\_ and

\_connectives\_, which are "necessary to the full and correct construction"

of their sentences; secondly, the distinction of nouns as \_proper\_ or

\_common\_; thirdly, the \_person\_ of nouns, \_first, second\_, or \_third\_;

fourthly, the words, \_number, gender\_, and \_case\_, which are necessary to

the sense and construction of certain words used; fifthly, the distinction

of adjectives as belonging to \_different classes\_; sixthly, the division of

verbs as being \_regular\_ or \_irregular, redundant\_ or \_defective\_;

seventhly, sometimes, (Lennie excepted,) the division of verbs as \_active,

passive\_, or \_neuter\_; eighthly, the words \_mood\_ and \_tense\_, which

Bullions, on page 131, pronounces "quite unnecessary," and inserts in his

own formule on page 132; ninthly, the distinction of adverbs as expressing

\_time, place, degree\_, or \_manner\_; tenthly, the distinction of

conjunctions as \_copulative\_ or disjunctive; lastly, the distinction of

interjections as indicating \_different emotions\_. All these things does

their completest specimen of etymological parsing lack, while it is grossly

encumbered with parentheses of syntax, which "\_must be omitted\_ till the

pupil get the \_rules\_ of syntax."--Lennie, p. 51. It is also vitiated with

several absurdities, contradictions, and improper changes of expression:

as, "\_His, the third personal pronoun\_;" (B., p. 23;)--"\_me, the first

personal pronoun\_;" (\_Id.\_, 74;)--"\_A\_, The indefinite article;" (\_Id.\_,

73;)--"\_a\_, an article, the indefinite;" (\_Id.\_, 74;)--"When the \_verb is

passive\_, parse thus: '\_A verb active\_, in the passive voice, \_regular,

irregular\_,' &c."--\_Bullions\_, p. 131. In stead of teaching sufficiently,

as elements of etymological parsing, the definitions which belong to this

exercise, and then dismissing them for the principles of syntax, Dr.

Bullions encumbers his method of syntactical parsing with such a series of

etymological questions and answers as cannot but make it one of the

slowest, longest, and most tiresome ever invented. He thinks that the

pupil, after parsing any word syntactically, "\_should be requested to

assign a reason for every thing contained in his statement!\_"--\_Principles

of E. Grammar\_, p. 131. And the teacher is to ask questions as numerous as

the reasons! Such is the parsing of a text-book which has been pronounced

"superior to any other, for use in our common schools"--"a \_complete\_

grammar of the language, and \_available for every purpose\_ for which Mr.

Brown's can possibly be used."--\_Ralph K. Finch's Report\_, p, 12.

[63] There are many other critics, besides Murray and Alger, who seem not

to have observed the import of \_after\_ and \_before\_ in connexion with the

tenses. Dr. Bullions, on page 139th of his English Grammar, copied the

foregoing example from Lennie, who took it from Murray. Even Richard Hiley,

and William Harvey Wells, grammarians of more than ordinary tact, have been

obviously misled by the false criticism above cited. One of Hiley's Rules

of Syntax, with its illustration, stands thus: "In \_the use of the

different tenses\_, we must particularly \_observe to use that tense\_ which

clearly and properly conveys the sense intended; thus, instead of saying,

'After I \_visited\_ Europe, I returned to America;' we should say, 'After I

\_had visited\_ Europe, I returned to America."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 90. Upon

this he thought it needful to comment thus: "'After I \_visited\_ Europe, I

returned to America;' \_this sentence is incorrect\_; \_visited\_ ought to be

\_had visited\_, because the action \_implied\_ by the verb \_visited\_ WAS

COMPLETED \_before\_ the other past action \_returned\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 91. See

nearly the same thing in \_Wells's School Grammar, 1st Edition\_, p. 151; but

his later editions are wisely altered. Since "\_visited\_ and \_was

completed\_" are of the same tense, the argument from the latter, if it

proves any thing, proves the former to be \_right\_, and the proposed change

needless, or perhaps worse than needless. "I \_visited\_ Europe \_before\_ I

\_returned\_ to America," or, "I \_visited\_ Europe, \_and afterwards returned\_

to America," is good English, and not to be improved by any change of

tense; yet here too we see the \_visiting\_ "\_was completed before\_" the

return, or HAD BEEN COMPLETED \_at the time\_ of the return. I say, "The

Pluperfect Tense is that which expresses what \_had taken\_ place \_at\_ some

past time mentioned: as, 'I \_had seen\_ him, \_when\_ I met you.'" Murray

says, "The Pluperfect Tense represents a \_thing\_ not only as past, but also

as prior to some \_other point of time\_ specified in the sentence: as, I

\_had finished\_ my letter \_before\_ he arrived." Hiley says, "The

\_Past-Perfect\_ expresses an action or event which \_was past before\_ some

\_other past action or event\_ mentioned in the sentence, \_and to which\_ it

refers; as, I \_had finished\_ my lessons \_before\_ he came." With this, Wells

appears to concur, his example being similar. It seems to me, that these

last two definitions, and their example too, are bad; because by the help

of \_before\_ or \_after\_, "\_the past before the past\_" \_may\_ be clearly

expressed by the \_simple past tense\_: as, "I \_finished\_ my letter \_before\_

he \_arrived\_."--"I \_finished\_ my lessons \_before\_ he \_came\_." "He \_arrived\_

soon \_after\_ I \_finished\_ the letter."--"Soon \_after\_ it \_was completed\_,

he \_came in\_."

[64] Samuel Kirkham, whose grammar is briefly described in the third

chapter of this introduction, boldly lays the blame of all his philological

faults, upon our noble \_language itself\_; and even conceives, that a

well-written and faultless grammar cannot be a good one, because it will

not accord with that reasonless jumble which he takes every existing

language to be! How diligently he laboured to perfect his work, and with

what zeal for truth and accuracy, may be guessed from the following

citation: "The truth is, after all \_which\_ can be done to render the

definitions and rules of grammar comprehensive and accurate, they will

still be found, when critically examined by men of learning and science,

\_more\_ or \_less\_ exceptionable. \_These exceptions and imperfections\_ are

the unavoidable consequence of the \_imperfections of the language\_.

Language as well as every thing else \_of human invention\_, will always be

\_imperfect\_. Consequently, a perfect system of grammatical principles,

\_would not suit it\_. A perfect grammar will not be produced, until some

perfect being writes it for a perfect language; and a perfect language will

not be constructed, until \_some super-human agency\_ is employed in its

production. All grammatical principles and systems which are not \_perfect\_

are \_exceptionable\_."--\_Kirkham's Grammar\_, p. 66. The unplausible

sophistry of these strange remarks, and the palliation they afford to the

multitudinous defects of the book which contains them, may be left, without

further comment, to the judgement of the reader.

[65] The phrase \_complex ideas\_, or \_compound ideas\_, has been used for the

notions which we have of things consisting of different parts, or having

various properties, so as to embrace some sort of plurality: thus our ideas

of \_all bodies\_ and \_classes of things\_ are said to be complex or compound.

\_Simple ideas\_ are those in which the mind discovers no parts or plurality:

such are the ideas of \_heat, cold, blueness, redness, pleasure, pain,

volition\_, &c. But some writers have contended, that the \_composition of

ideas\_ is a fiction; and that all the complexity, in any case, consists

only in the use of a \_general term\_ in lieu of many particular ones. Locke

is on one side of this debate, Horne Tooke, on the other.

[66] Dilworth appears to have had a true \_idea\_ of the thing, but he does

not express it as a definition; "Q. Is \_an\_ Unit of one, a Number? A. \_An\_

Unit is a number, \_because it may properly answer the question how

many!\_"--\_Schoolmaster's Assistant\_, p. 2. A number in arithmetic, and a

number in grammar, are totally different things. The \_plural\_ number, as

\_men\_ or \_horses\_, does not tell \_how many\_; nor does the word \_singular\_

mean \_one\_, as the author of a recent grammar says it does. The \_plural\_

number is \_one\_ number, but it is not \_the singular\_. "The \_Productive

System\_" teaches thus: "What does the word \_singular\_ mean? It means

\_one\_."--Smith's New Gram., p. 7.

[67] It is truly astonishing that so great a majority of our grammarians

could have been so blindly misled, as they have been, in this matter; and

the more so, because a very good definition of a Letter was both published

and republished, about the time at which Lowth's first appeared: viz.,

"What is a letter? A Letter is the Sign, Mark, or Character of a simple or

uncompounded Sound. Are Letters Sounds? No. Letters are only the Signs or

Symbols of Sounds, not the Sounds themselves."--\_The British Grammar\_, p.

3. See the very same words on the second page of \_Buchanan's "English

Syntax\_," a work which was published as early as 1767.

[68] In Murray's octavo Grammar, this word is \_the\_ in the first chapter,

and \_their\_ in the second; in the duodecimo, it is \_their\_ in both places.

[69] "The \_definitions\_ and the \_rules\_ throughout the Grammar, are

expressed with neatness and perspicuity. They are as short and

comprehensive as the nature of the subject would admit: and they are well

adapted both to the understanding and the memory of young persons."--\_Life

of L. Murray\_, p. 245. "It may truly be said that the language in every

part of the work, is simple, correct, and perspicuous."--\_Ib.\_, p. 246.

[70] For this definition, see \_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 40; \_Duodecimo\_,

41; \_Smaller Gram.\_, 18; \_Alger's\_, 18; \_Bacon's\_, 15; \_Frost's\_, 8,

\_Ingersoll's\_, 17; \_A Teacher's\_, 8; \_Maltby's\_, 14; \_T. H. Miller's\_, 20;

\_Pond's\_, 18; \_S. Putnam's\_, 15; \_Russell's\_, 11; \_Merchant's Murray\_, 25;

and \_Worcester's Univ. and Crit. Dictionary\_. Many other grammarians have

attempted to define number; with what success a few examples will show:

(1.) "Number is the distinction of one from many."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p.

40; \_Merchant's School Gram.\_, 28; \_Greenleaf's\_, 22; \_Nutting's\_, 17;

\_Picket's\_, 19; \_D. Adams's\_, 31. (2.) "Number is the distinction of one

from more."--\_Fisher's Gram.\_, 51; \_Alden's\_, 7. (3.) "Number is the

distinction of one from several or many."--\_Coar's Gram.\_, p. 24. (4.)

"Number is the distinction of one from more than one."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_,

p. 24; \_J. Flint's\_, 27; \_Wells's, 52\_. (5.) "Number is the distinction of

one from more than one, or many."--\_Grant's Latin Gram.\_, p. 7. (6.) "What

is number? Number is the Distinction of one, from two, or many."--\_British

Gram.\_, p. 89; \_Buchanan's\_, 16. (7.) "You inquire, 'What is number?'

Merely this: \_the distinction\_ of one from two, or many. Greek substantives

have \_three\_ numbers."--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 38. All these authors

say, that, in English, "there are \_two numbers\_, the singular and the

plural." According to their explanations, then, we have \_two "distinctions

of one from two, several, more, or many;"\_ and the Greeks, by adding a dual

number, have \_three\_! Which, then, of the two or three modifications or

forms, do they mean, when they say, "Number is \_the distinction\_" &c.? Or,

if none of them, \_what else\_ is meant? All these definitions had their

origin in an old Latin one, which, although it is somewhat better, makes

doubtful logic in its application: "NUMERUS est, unius et multorum

distinctio. Numeri \_igitur\_ sunt \_duo\_; Singularis et Pluralis."--

\_Ruddiman's Gram.\_, p. 21. This means: (8.) "Number is a distinction of one

and many. The numbers \_therefore\_ are \_two\_; the Singular and the Plural."

But we have yet other examples: as, (9.) "Number is the distinction of

\_objects\_, as one or more."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 39. "The \_distinction\_

of \_objects\_ as \_one\_," is very much like "\_the consideration\_ of \_an

object\_ as \_more than one\_." (10.) "Number distinguishes \_objects\_ as \_one\_

or more."--\_Cooper's Murray\_, p. 21; \_Practical Gram.\_, p. 18. That is,

number makes the plural to be either plural or singular for distinction's

sake! (11.) "Number is the distinction of \_nouns\_ with regard to the

\_objects\_ signified, \_as one\_ or more."--\_Fisk's Murray\_, p. 19. Here, too,

number has "regard" to the same confusion: while, by a gross error, its

"distinction" is confined to "\_nouns\_" only! (12.) "Number is \_that

property\_ of a \_noun\_ by which it expresses \_one\_ or \_more\_ than

one."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 12; \_Analyt. Gram.\_, 25. Here again number

is improperly limited to "\_a noun\_;" and is said to be one sign of two, or

either of two, incompatible ideas! (13.) "Number shows \_how many\_ are

meant, whether one or more."--\_Smith's new Gram.\_, p. 45. This is not a

\_definition\_, but a false assertion, in which Smith again confounds

arithmetic with grammar! \_Wheat\_ and \_oats\_ are of different numbers; but

neither of these numbers "means \_a sum that may be counted\_," or really

"shows \_how many\_ are meant." So of "\_Man\_ in general, \_Horses\_ in general,

&c."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 77. (14.) "Number is \_the difference\_ in a

\_noun or pronoun\_, to denote either a single thing or more than

one."--\_Davenport's Gram.\_, p. 14. This excludes the numbers of a \_verb\_,

and makes the singular and the plural to be essentially one thing. (15.)

"Number is a modification of nouns and verbs, &c. according as the thing

spoken of is represented, as, \_one\_ or \_more\_, with regard to

number."--\_Burn's Gram.\_, p. 32. This also has many faults, which I leave

to the discernment of the reader. (16.) "What is number? Number \_shows the

distinction\_ of one from many."--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 6. This is no answer

to the question asked; besides, it is obviously worse than the first form,

which has "\_is\_," for "\_shows\_." (17.) "What is Number? It is \_the\_

representation of \_objects\_ with respect to singleness, or plurality."

--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 34. If there are two numbers, they are neither

of them properly described in this definition, or in any of the preceding

ones. There is a gross misconception, in taking each or either of them to

be an alternate representation of two incompatible ideas. And this sort of

error is far from being confined to the present subject; it runs through a

vast number of the various definitions contained in our grammars. (18.)

"\_Number\_ is \_the inflection\_ of a \_noun\_, to indicate \_one object or more

than one\_. Or, \_Number\_ is \_the expression\_ of unity or of more than

unity."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 14. How hard this author laboured to \_think

what number is\_, and could not! (19.) "Number is the distinction of \_unity

and plurality\_."--\_Hart's E. Gram.\_, p. 40, Why say, "\_distinction\_;" the

numbers, or \_distinctions\_, being two? (20.) "Number is \_the capacity of

nouns\_ to represent either one or more than one object."--\_Barrett's

Revised Gram.\_, p. 40. (21.) "Number is \_a property\_ of \_the noun which\_

denotes \_one\_ or \_more\_ than one."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 55. (22.)

"Number is \_a property\_ of the \_noun or pronoun\_ [,] \_by which it\_ denotes

\_one, or more\_ than one."--\_Weld's Gram., Abridged Ed.\_, p. 49. (23.)

"Number is \_the property\_ that distinguishes \_one from more\_ than

one."--\_Weld's Gram., Improved Ed.\_, p. 60. This, of course, excludes the

plural. (24.) "Number is \_a modification of nouns\_ to denote whether one

object is meant, or more than one."--\_Butler's Gram.\_, p. 19. (25.) "Number

is \_that modification\_ of the \_Noun\_ which distinguishes one from more than

one."--\_Spencer's Gram.\_, p. 26. Now, it is plain, that not one of these

twenty-five definitions comports with the idea that the singular is one

number and the plural an other! Not one of them exhibits any tolerable

approach to accuracy, either of thought or of expression! Many of the

grammarians have not attempted any definition of \_number\_, or of \_the

numbers\_, though they speak of both the singular and the plural, and

perhaps sometimes apply the term \_number\_ to \_the distinction\_ which is \_in

each\_: for it is the property of the singular number, to distinguish unity

from plurality: and of the plural, to distinguish plurality from unity.

Among the authors who are thus silent, are Lily, Colet, Brightland, Harris,

Lowth, Ash, Priestly, Bicknell, Adam, Gould, Harrison, Comly, Jaudon,

Webster, Webber, Churchill, Staniford, Lennie, Dalton, Blair, Cobbett,

Cobb, A. Flint, Felch, Guy, Hall, and S. W. Clark. Adam and Gould, however,

in explaining the properties of \_verbs\_, say: "\_Number\_ marks \_how many\_ we

suppose to be, to act, or to suffer."--\_A.\_, 80; \_G.\_, 78.

[71] These are the parts of speech in some late grammars; as, Barrett's, of

1854, Butler's, Covell's, Day's, Frazee's, Fowle's New, Spear's, Weld's,

Wells's, and the Well-wishers'. In Frost's Practical Grammar, the words of

the language are said to be "divided into \_eight\_ classes," and the names

are given thus: "\_Noun, Article, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition,

Conjunction, and Interjection\_."--P. 29. But the author afterwards treats

of the \_Adjective\_, between the \_Article\_ and the \_Pronoun\_, just as if he

had forgotten to name it, and could not count nine with accuracy! In

Perley's Grammar, the parts of speech are a different eight: namely,

"\_Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions,

Interjections\_, and \_Particles\_!"--P. 8. S. W. Clark has Priestley's

classes, but calls Interjections "Exclamations."

[72] Felton, who is confessedly a modifier of Murray, claims as a merit,

"\_the rejection of several useless parts of speech\_" yet acknowledges

"\_nine\_," and treats of \_ten\_; "viz., \_Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles,

Prepositions, Adjectives\_, [Articles,] \_Adverbs, Conjunctions,

Exclamations\_."--\_O. C. Felton's Gram.\_ p. 5, and p. 9.

[73] Quintilian is at fault here; for, in some of his writings, if not

generally, Aristotle recognized \_four\_ parts of speech; namely, verbs,

nouns, conjunctions, and articles. See \_Aristot. de Poetica\_, Cap. xx.

[74] "As there are ten different characters or figures in arithmetic to

represent all possible quantities, there are also ten kinds of words or

parts of speech to represent all possible sentences: viz.: article, noun,

adjective, pronoun, verb, participle, adverb, preposition, conjunction,

interjection."--\_Chauvier's Punctuation\_, p. 104.

[75] \_The Friend\_, 1829, Vol. ii, p. 117.

[76] \_The Friend\_, Vol. ii, p. 105.

[77] See the Preface to my Compendious English Grammar in the American

editions of \_the Treasury of Knowledge\_, Vol. i, p. 8.

[78] Some say that Brightland himself was the writer of this grammar; but

to suppose him the sole author, hardly comports with its dedication to the

Queen, by her "most Obedient and Dutiful \_Subjects\_, the \_Authors\_;" or

with the manner in which these are spoken of, in the following lines, by

the laureate:

"Then say what Thanks, what Praises must attend

\_The Gen'rous Wits\_, who thus could condescend!

Skill, that to Art's sublimest Orb can reach,

Employ'd its humble Elements to Teach!

Yet worthily Esteem'd, because we know

To raise \_Their\_ Country's Fame \_they\_ stoop'd so low."--TATE.

[79] Dr. Campbell, in his Philosophy of Rhetoric, page 158th, makes a

difficulty respecting the meaning of this passage: cites it as an instance

of the misapplication of the term \_grammar\_; and supposes the writer's

notion of the thing to have been, "of grammar in the abstract, \_an\_

universal archetype by which the particular grammars of all different

tongues ought to be regulated." And adds, "If this was his meaning, I

cannot say whether he is in the right or in the wrong, in this accusation.

I acknowledge myself to be entirely ignorant of this ideal grammar." It

would be more fair to suppose that Dr. Swift meant by "\_grammar\_" the rules

and principles according to which the English language ought to be spoken

and written; and, (as I shall hereafter show,) it is no great hyperbole to

affirm, that every part of the code--nay, well-nigh every one of these

rules and principles--is, in many instances, violated, if not by what may

be called \_the language itself\_, at least by those speakers and writers who

are under the strongest obligations to know and observe its true use.

[80] The phrase "\_of any\_" is here erroneous. These words ought to have

been omitted; or the author should have said--"the least valuable of \_all\_

his productions."

[81] This word \_latter\_ should have been \_last\_; for \_three\_ works are here

spoken of.

[82] With this opinion concurred the learned James White, author of a

Grammatical Essay on the English Verb, an octavo volume of more than three

hundred pages, published in London in 1761. This author says, "Our Essays

towards forming an English Grammar, have not been very many: from the reign

of Queen Elizabeth, to that of Queen Ann, there are but Two that the author

of the Present knows of: one in English by the renown'd Ben Jonson, and one

in Latin by the learn'd Dr. Wallis. In the reign of Queen Ann indeed, there

seems to have arisen a noble Spirit of ingenious Emulation in this Literary

way: and to this we owe the treatises compos'd at that period for the use

of schools, by Brightland, Greenwood, and Maittaire. But, since that time,

nothing hath appear'd, that hath come to this Essayist's knowledge,

deserving \_to be taken any notice of\_ as tending to illustrate our Language

by ascertaining the Grammar of it; except Anselm Bayly's Introduction to

Languages, Johnson's Grammar prefix'd to the Abridgement of his Dictionary,

and the late Dr. Ward's Essays upon the English Language.--These are all

the Treatises he hath met with, relative to this subject; all which he hath

perus'd \_very\_ attentively, and made the best use of them in his power. But

notwithstanding all these aids, something still remains to be done, at

least it so appears to him, \_preparatory to attempting with success the

Grammar of our Language\_. All our efforts of this kind seem to have been

render'd ineffectual hitherto, chiefly by the prevaliency of two false

notions: one of which is, that our Verbs have no Moods; and the other, that

our Language hath no Syntax."--\_White's English Verb\_, p. viii.

[83] A similar doctrine, however, is taught by no less an author than "the

Rev. Alexander Crombie, LL. D.," who says, in the first paragraph of his

introduction, "LANGUAGE consists of intelligible signs, and is the medium,

by which \_the mind\_ communicates \_its thoughts\_. It is either articulate,

or inarticulate; artificial, or natural. The former is peculiar to man; the

latter is \_common to all animals\_. By inarticulate language, we mean those

instinctive cries, by which the several tribes of inferior creatures are

enabled to express their sensations and desires. By articulate language is

understood a system of expression, composed of simple \_sounds\_, differently

modified by the organs of speech, and variously combined."--\_Treatise on

the Etymology and Syntax of the English Language\_, p. 1. See the same

doctrine also in \_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 141. The language which "is \_common to

all animals\_," can be no other than that in which Æsop's wolves and

weasels, goats and grasshoppers, talked--a language quite too unreal for

\_grammar\_. On the other hand, that which is composed of \_sounds\_ only, and

not of letters, includes but a mere fraction of the science.

[84] The pronoun \_whom\_ is not properly applicable to beasts, unless they

are \_personified\_: the relative \_which\_ would therefore, perhaps, have been

preferable here, though \_whom\_ has a better sound.--G. B.

[85] "The great difference between men and brutes, in the utterance of

sound by the mouth, consists in the power of \_articulation\_ in man, and the

entire want of it in brutes."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 8.

[86] Strictly speaking, an \_articulate sound\_ is not a simple element of

speech, but rather a complex one, whether syllable or word; for

\_articulate\_ literally means \_jointed\_. But our grammarians in general,

have applied the term to the sound of a letter, a syllable, or a word,

indiscriminately: for which reason, it seems not very suitable to be used

alone in describing any of the three. Sheridan says, "The essence of a

syllable consists in \_articulation only\_, for every \_articulate sound\_ of

course forms a syllable."--\_Lectures on Elocution\_, p. 62. If he is right

in this, not many of our letters--or, perhaps more properly, none of

them--can singly represent articulate sounds. The looseness of this term

induces me to add or prefer an other. "The Rev. W. Allen," who comes as

near as any of our grammarians, to the true definition of a \_letter\_, says:

1. "The sounds used in language are called \_articulate sounds\_." 2. "A

letter is a character used in printing or writing, to represent an

\_articulate\_ sound."--\_Allen's Elements of E. Gram.\_, p. 2. Dr. Adam says:

1. "A letter is the mark of \_a sound\_, or of \_an articulation of\_ sound."

2. "A vowel is properly called a \_simple sound\_; and the sounds formed by

the concourse of vowels and consonants, \_articulate sounds\_."--\_Latin and

English Gram.\_, pp. 1 and 2.

[87] Of this sort of blunder, the following false definition is an

instance: "A \_Vowel\_ is a letter, \_the name of which\_ makes a full open

sound."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 5; \_Brace's\_, 7; \_Hazen's\_, 10. All this is

just as true of a consonant as of a vowel. The comma too, used in this

sentence, defeats even the sense which the writers intended. It is surely

no description either of a vowel or of a consonant, to say, that it is a

letter, and that the name of a letter makes a full open sound. Again, a

late grammarian teaches, that the names of all the letters are nothing but

\_Roman capitals\_, and then seems to inquire which of \_these names\_ are

\_vowels\_, thus: "\_Q\_. How many letters are in the alphabet? \_A\_.

Twenty-six. \_Q\_. What are their names? \_A\_. A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J,

K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z. \_Q\_. Which of \_these\_ are

called \_Vowels\_?"--\_Fowle's Common School Gram., Part First\_, p. 7. If my

worthy friend Fowle had known or considered \_what are the names\_ of the

letters in English, he might have made a better beginning to his grammar

than this.

[88] By the colloquial phrase, "to a Tee" we mean, "to a \_nicety\_, to a

\_tittle\_, a \_jot\_, an \_iota\_. Had the British poet Cawthorn, himself a

noted schoolmaster, known how to write the name of "T," he would probably

have preferred it in the following couplet:

"And swore by Varro's shade that he

Conceived the medal to a T."--\_British Poets\_, Vol. VII, p. 65.

Here the name would certainly be much fitter than the letter, because the

text does not in reality speak of the letter. With the names of the Greek

letters, the author was better acquainted; the same poem exhibits two of

them, where the characters themselves are spoken of:

"My eye can trace divinely true,

In this dark curve a little Mu;

And here, you see, there \_seems\_ to lie

The ruins of a Doric Xi."--\_Ibidem\_.

The critical reader will see that "\_seems\_" should be \_seem\_, to agree with

its nominative "\_ruins\_."

[89] Lily, reckoning without the H, J, or V, speaks of the Latin letters as

"\_twenty-two\_;" but \_says nothing\_ concerning their names. Ruddiman, Adam,

Grant, Gould, and others, who include the H, J, and V, rightly state the

number to be "\_twenty-five\_;" but, concerning their names, are likewise

\_entirely silent\_. Andrews and Stoddard, not admitting the K, teach thus:

"The letters of the Latin language are \_twenty-four\_. They \_have the same

names\_ as the corresponding characters in English."--\_Andrews and

Stoddard's Latin Gram.\_, p. 1. A later author speaks thus: "The Latin

Alphabet consists of \_twenty-five\_ letters, \_the same in name\_ and form as

the English, but without the \_w\_."--\_Bullions's Latin Gram.\_, p. 1. It

would probably be nearer to the truth, to say, "The Latin Alphabet, \_like

the French\_, has no W; it consists of twenty-five letters, which are \_the

same in name\_ and form \_as the French\_." Will it be pretended that the

French names and the English do not differ?

[90] The Scotch \_Iz\_ and the Craven \_Izzet\_, if still in use anywhere, are

names strictly local, not properly English, nor likely to spread. "IZZET,

the letter Z. This is probably the corruption of \_izzard\_, the old and

common name for the letter, though I know not, says \_Nares\_, on what

authority."--\_Glossary of Craven, w. Izzet.\_ "\_Z z, zed\_, more commonly

called \_izzard\_ or \_uzzard\_, that is, \_s hard\_."--\_Dr. Johnson's Gram.\_, p.

1.

"And how she sooth'd me when with study sad

I labour'd on to reach the final Zad."--\_Crabbe's Borough\_, p. 228.

[91] William Bolles, in his new Dictionary, says of the letter Z: "Its

sound is uniformly that of a \_hard\_ S." The \_name\_, however, he pronounces

as I do; though he writes it not \_Zee\_ but zé; giving not the \_orthography\_

of the name, as he should have done, but a mere index of its pronunciation.

Walker proves by citations from Professor Ward and Dr. Wallis, that these

authors considered the \_sharp\_ or \_hissing\_ sound of \_s\_ the "\_hard\_"

sound; and the \_flat\_ sound, like that of \_z\_, its "\_soft\_" sound. See his

\_Dictionary\_, 8vo, p. 53.

[92] Dr. Webster died in 1843. Most of this work was written while he was

yet in vigour.

[93] This old definition \_John L. Parkhurst\_ disputes:--says it "is

\_ambiguous\_;"--questions whether it means, "that the \_name\_ of such a

letter, or the \_simple sound\_," requires a vowel! "If the latter," says he,

"\_the assertion is false.\_ The simple sounds, represented by the

consonants, can be uttered separately, distinctly, and perfectly. It can be

done with the \_utmost ease\_, even by a little child."--\_Parkhurst's

Inductive Gram. for Beginners\_, p. 164. He must be one of these modern

philosophers who delight to \_make mouths\_ of these voiceless elements, to

show how much may be done without sound from the larynx.

[94] This test of what is, or is not, a vowel sound or a consonant sound,

is often appealed to, and is generally admitted to be a just one. Errors in

the application of \_an\_ or \_a\_ are not unfrequent, but they do not affect

the argument. It cannot be denied, that it is proper to use \_a\_, and not

proper to use \_an\_, before the initial sound of \_w\_ or \_y\_ with a vowel

following. And this rule holds good, whether the sound be expressed by

these particular letters, or by others; as in the phrases, "\_a wonder, a

one, a yew, a use, a ewer, a humour, a yielding temper\_." But I have heard

it contended, that these are vowel sounds, notwithstanding they require

\_a\_; and that the \_w\_ and \_y\_ are always vowels, because even a vowel sound

(it was said) requires \_a\_ and not \_an\_, whenever an other vowel sound

immediately follows it. Of this notion, the following examples are a

sufficient refutation: \_an aëronaut, an aërial tour, an oeiliad, an

eyewink, an eyas, an iambus, an oäsis, an o'ersight, an oil, an oyster, an

owl, an ounce\_. The initial sound of \_yielding\_ requires \_a\_, and not \_an\_;

but those who call the \_y\_ a vowel, say, it is equivalent to the unaccented

long \_e\_. This does not seem to me to be exactly true; because the latter

sound requires \_an\_, and not \_a\_; as, "Athens, as well as Thebes, had \_an

Eëtion\_."

[95] Dr. Rush, in his Philosophy of the Human Voice, has exhibited some

acuteness of observation, and has written with commendable originality. But

his accuracy is certainly not greater than his confidence. On page 57th, he

says, "The \_m, n\_, and \_ng\_, are \_purely nasal\_;" on page 401st, "Some of

the tonic elements, and one of the subtonics, are made \_by the assistance

of the lips\_; they are \_o\_-we, \_oo\_-ze, \_ou\_-r, and \_m\_." Of the intrinsic

value of his work, I am not prepared or inclined to offer any opinion; I

criticise him only so far as he strikes at grammatical principles long

established, and worthy still to be maintained.

[96] Dr. Comstock, by ¸enumerating as elementary the sound of the diphthong

\_ou\_, as in \_our\_, and the complex power of \_wh\_, as in \_what\_, (which

sounds ought not to be so reckoned,) makes the whole number of vocal

elements in English to be "\_thirty-eight\_." See \_Comstock's Elocution\_, p.

19.

[97] This word is commonly heard in two syllables, \_yune'yun\_; but if

Walker is right in making it three, \_yu'ne-un\_, the sound of \_y\_ consonant

is heard in it but once. Worcester's notation is "\_y=un'yun\_." The long

sound of \_u\_ is \_yu\_; hence Walker calls the letter, when thus sounded, a

"semi-consonant diphthong."

[98] Children ought to be accustomed to speak loud, and to pronounce all

possible sounds and articulations, even those of such foreign languages as

they will be obliged to learn; for almost every language has its particular

sounds which we pronounce with difficulty, if we have not been early

accustomed to them. Accordingly, nations who have the greatest number of

sounds in their speech, learn the most easily to pronounce foreign

languages, since they know their articulations by having met with similar

sounds in their own language."--\_Spurzheim, on Education\_, p. 159.

[99] If it be admitted that the two semivowels \_l\_ and \_n\_ have vocality

enough of their own to form a very feeble syllable, it will prove only that

there are these exceptions to an important general rule. If the name of

\_Haydn\_ rhymes with \_maiden\_, it makes one exception to the rule of

writing; but it is no part of the English language. The obscure sound of

which I speak, is sometimes improperly confounded with that of short \_u\_;

thus a recent writer, who professes great skill in respect to such matters,

says, "One of the most common sounds in our language is that of the vowel

\_u\_, as in the word \_urn\_, or as the diphthong \_ea\_ in the word \_earth\_,

for which we have no character. Writers have made various efforts to

express it, as in \_earth, berth, mirth, worth, turf\_, in which all the

vowels are indiscriminately used in turn. [Fist] \_This defect has led\_ to

the absurd method of placing the vowel after the consonants, instead of

between them, when a word \_terminates with this sound\_; as in the

following, \_Bible, pure, centre, circle\_, instead of \_Bibel, puer, center,

cirkel\_."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p. 498. "It would be a great step

towards perfection to spell our words as they are pronounced!"--\_Ibid.\_, p.

499. How often do the reformers of language multiply the irregularities of

which they complain!

[100] "The number of simple sounds in our tongue is twenty-eight, 9 Vowels

and 19 Consonants. \_H\_ is no letter, but merely a mark of

aspiration."--\_Jones's Prosodial Gram. before his Dict.\_, p. 14.

"The number of simple vowel and consonant sounds in our tongue is

twenty-eight, and one pure aspiration \_h\_, making in all

twenty-nine."--\_Bolles's Octavo Dict.\_, Introd., p. 9.

"The number of \_letters\_ in the English language is twenty-six; but the

number of \_elements\_ is thirty-eight."--\_Comstock's Elocution\_, p. 18.

"There are thirty-eight elements in the English alphabet, and to represent

those elements by appropriate characters, we should have thirty-eight

letters. There is, then, a deficiency in our alphabet of twelve

letters--and he who shall supply this imperfection, will be one of the

greatest benefactors of the human race."--\_Ib.\_, p. 19. "Our alphabet is

both redundant and defective. \_C, q\_, and \_z\_, are respectively represented

by \_k\_ or \_s, k\_, and \_ks\_, or \_gz\_; and the remaining twenty-three letters

are employed to represent \_forty-one\_ elementary sounds."--\_Wells's School

Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 36.

"The simple sounds were in no wise to be reckoned of any certain number: by

the first men they were determined to no more than ten, as spine suppose;

as others, fifteen or twenty; it is however certain that mankind in general

never exceed \_twenty\_ simple sounds; and of these only five are reckoned

strictly such."--\_Bicknell's Grammar\_, Part ii, p. 4.

[101] "When these sounds are openly pronounced, they produce the familiar

assent \_ay\_: which, by the old English dramatic writers, was often

expressed by \_I\_."--\_Walker\_. We still hear it so among the vulgar; as,

"\_I, I\_, sir, presently!" for "\_Ay, ay\_, sir, presently!" Shakspeare wrote,

"To sleepe, perchance to dreame; \_I\_, there's the rub."

--\_Bucke's Classical Gram.\_, p. 143.

[102] Walker pronounces \_yew\_ and \_you\_ precisely alike, "\_yoo\_;" but,

certainly, \_ew\_ is not commonly equivalent to \_oo\_, though some make it so:

thus Gardiner, in his scheme of the vowels, says, "\_ew\_ equals \_oo\_, as in

\_new, noo\_."--\_Music of Nature\_, p. 483. \_Noo\_ for \_new\_, is a \_vulgarism\_,

to my ear.--G. BROWN.

[103] "As harmony is an inherent property of sound, the ear should he first

called to the attention of \_simple sounds\_; though, in reality, all are

composed \_of three\_, so nicely blended as to \_appear\_ but as

one."--\_Gardiner's Music of Nature\_, p. 8. "Every sound is a mixture of

three tones; as much as a ray of light is composed of three prismatic

colours."--\_Ib.\_, p. 387.

[104] The titulary name of the sacred volume is "The Holy Bible." The word

\_Scripture\_ or \_Scriptures\_ is a \_common\_ name for the writings contained

in this inestimable volume, and, in the book itself, is seldom

distinguished by a capital; but, in other works, it seems proper in general

to write it so, by way of eminence.

[105] "Benedictus es Domine Deus Israel patris nostri ab eterno in

eternum."--\_Vulgate\_. "O Eternel! Dieu d'Israël, notre père, tu es béni de

tout temps et à toujours."--\_Common French Bible\_. "[Greek: Eulogætos ei

Kyrie ho theos Israel ho patær hæmon apo tou aionos kai heos tou

aionos.]"--\_Septuagint.\_

[106] Where the word "\_See\_" accompanies the reference, the reader may

generally understand that the citation, whether right or wrong in regard to

grammar, is not in all respects \_exactly\_ as it will be found in the place

referred to. Cases of this kind, however, will occur but seldom; and it is

hoped the reasons for admitting a few, will be sufficiently obvious.

Brevity is indispensable; and some rules are so generally known and

observed, that one might search long for half a dozen examples of their

undesigned violation. Wherever an error is made intentionally in the

Exercises, the true reading and reference are to be expected in the Key.

[107] "Et irritaverunt ascendentes in mare, Mare rubrum."--\_Latin Vulgate,

folio, Psal.\_ cv, 7. This, I think, should have been "Mare Rubrum," with

two capitals.--G. BROWN.

[108] The printers, from the manner in which they place their types before

them, call the small letters "\_lower-case letters\_," or "\_letters of the

lower case\_."

[109] I imagine that "\_plagues\_" should here be \_plague\_, in the singular

number, and not plural. "Ero more ius, o mors; morsus tuus ero,

inferne."--\_Vulgate\_. "[Greek: Pou hæ dikæ sou, thanate; pou to kentron

sou, aidæ;]"--\_Septuagint, ibid.\_

[110] It is hoped that not many persons will be so much puzzled as are Dr.

Latham and Professor Fowler, about the application of this rule. In their

recent works on The English Language, these gentlemen say, "In certain

words of more than one syllable, \_it is difficult to say\_ to which syllable

the intervening Consonant belongs. For instance, \_does\_ the \_v\_ in \_river\_

and the \_v\_ in \_fever\_ belong to the first or to the second syllable? Are

the words to be divided thus, \_ri-ver, fe-ver\_? or thus, \_riv-er\_,

\_fev-er\_?"--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 1850, §85; \_Latham's Hand-Book\_, p. 95.

Now I suppose it plain, that, by the rule given above, \_fever\_ is to be

divided in the former way, and \_river\_ in the latter; thus, \_fe-ver\_,

\_riv-er\_. But this paragraph of Latham's or Fowler's is written, not to

disembarrass the learner, but just as if it were a grammarian's business to

confound his readers with fictitious dilemmas--and those expressed

ungrammatically! Of the two Vees, so illogically associated in one

question, and so solecistically spoken of by the singular verb "\_does\_,"

one belongs to the former syllable, and the other, to the latter; nor do I

discover that "it is difficult to say" this, or to be well assured that it

is right. What an admirable passage for one great linguist to \_steal\_ from

an other!

[111] "The usual rules for dividing [words into] syllables, are not only

\_arbitrary\_ but false and absurd. They contradict the very definition of a

syllable given by the authors themselves. \* \* \* \* A syllable in

pronunciation is an \_indivisible\_ thing; and strange as it may appear, what

is \_indivisible\_ in utterance is \_divided\_ in writing: when the very

purpose of dividing words into syllables in writing, is to lead the learner

to a just pronunciation."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 156;

\_Philosophical Gram.\_, 221.

[112] This word, like \_distich\_ and \_monostich\_, is from the Greek

\_stichos\_, a verse; and is improperly spelled by Walker with a final \_k\_.

It should be \_hemistich\_, with the accent on the first syllable. See

\_Webster, Scott, Perry, Worcester\_, and others.

[113] According to Aristotle, the compounding of terms, or the writing of

them as separate words, must needs be a matter of great importance to the

sense. For he will have the parts of a compound noun, or of a compound

verb, to be, like other syllables, destitute of any distinct signification

in themselves, whatever may be their meaning when written separately. See

his definitions of the parts of speech, in his \_Poetics\_, Chapter 20th of

the Greek; or Goulston's Version in Latin, Chapter 12th.

[114] Whether \_worshipper\_ should follow this principle, or not, is

questionable. If Dr. Webster is right in making \_worship\_ a \_compound\_ of

\_worth\_ and \_ship\_, he furnishes a reason against his own practice of using

a single \_p\_ in \_worshiper, worshiped\_, and \_worshiping\_. The Saxon word

appears to have been \_weorthscype\_. But words ending in \_ship\_ are

\_derivatives\_, rather than compounds; and therefore they seem to belong to

the rule, rather than to the exception: as, "So we \_fellowshiped\_

him."--\_Herald of Freedom: Liberator\_, Vol. ix, p. 68.

[115] When \_ee\_ comes before \_e\_, or may be supposed to do so, or when \_ll\_

comes before \_l\_, one of the letters is dropped that \_three\_ of the same

kind may not meet: as, \_free, freer, freest, freeth, freed\_; \_skill,

skilless\_; \_full, fully\_; \_droll, drolly\_. And, as \_burgess-ship\_,

\_hostess-ship\_, and \_mistress-ship\_ are derivatives, and not compounds, I

think they ought to follow the same principle, and be written \_burgesship,

hostesship, mistresship\_. The proper form of \_gall-less\_ is perhaps more

doubtful. It ought not to be gallless, as Dr. Webster has it; and galless,

the analogical form, is yet, so far as I know without authority. But is it

not preferable to the hyphened form, with three Ells, which has authority?

"GALL-LESS, a. Without gall or bitterness. \_Cleaveland\_."--\_Chalmers,

Bolles, Worcester\_.

"Ah! mild and \_gall-less\_ dove,

Which dost the pure and candid dwellings love,

Canst thou in Albion still delight?"--\_Cowley's Odes\_.

Worcester's Dictionary has also the questionable word \_bellless\_. \_Treen\_,

for \_trees\_, or for an adjective meaning \_a tree's\_, or \_made of a tree\_,

is exhibited in several of our dictionaries, and pronounced as a

monosyllable: but Dr. Beattie, in his Poems, p. 84, has made it a

dissyllable, with three like letters divided by a hyphen, thus:--

"Plucking from \_tree-en\_ bough her simple food."

[116] \_Handiwork, handicraft\_, and \_handicraftsman\_, appear to have been

corruptly written for \_handwork, handcraft\_, and \_handcraftsman\_. They were

formerly in good use, and consequently obtained a place in our vocabulary,

from which no lexicographer, so far as I know, has yet thought fit to

discard them; but, being irregular, they are manifestly becoming obsolete,

or at least showing a tendency to throw off these questionable forms.

\_Handcraft\_ and \_handcraftsman\_ are now exhibited in some dictionaries, and

\_handiwork\_ seems likely to be resolved into \_handy\_ and \_work\_, from which

Johnson supposes it to have been formed. See \_Psalm\_ xix, 1. The text is

varied thus: "And the firmament \_sheweth\_ his \_handiwork\_."--\_Johnson's

Dict.\_. "And the firmament \_sheweth\_ his \_handy-work\_."--\_Scott's Bible\_;

\_Bruce's Bible\_; \_Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 83. "And the firmament \_showeth\_

his \_handy work\_."--\_Alger's Bible\_; \_Friends' Bible\_; \_Harrison's Gram.\_,

p. 103.

[117] Here a word, formed from its root by means of the termination \_ize\_,

afterwards assumes a prefix, to make a secondary derivative: thus, \_organ\_,

\_organize, disorganize\_. In such a case, the latter derivative must of

course be like the former; and I assume that the essential or primary

formation of both from the word \_organ\_ is by the termination \_ize\_; but it

is easy to see that \_disguise, demise, surmise\_, and the like, are

essentially or primarily formed by means of the prefixes, \_dis, de\_, and

\_sur\_. As to \_advertise, exercise, detonize\_, and \_recognize\_, which I have

noted among the exceptions, it is not easy to discover by which method we

ought to suppose them to have been formed; but with respect to nearly all

others, the distinction is very plain; and though there may be no \_natural

reason\_ for founding upon it such a rule as the foregoing, the voice of

general custom is as clear in this as in most other points or principles of

orthography, and, surely, some rule in this case is greatly needed.

[118] \_Criticise\_, with \_s\_, is the orthography of Johnson, Walker,

Webster, Jones, Scott, Bolles, Chalmers, Cobb, and others; and so did

Worcester spell it in his Comprehensive Dictionary of 1831, but, in his

Universal and Critical Dictionary of 1846, he wrote it with \_z\_, as did

Bailey in his folio, about a hundred years ago. Here the \_z\_ conforms to

the foregoing rule, and the \_s\_ does not.

[119] Like this, the compound \_brim-full\_ ought to be written with a hyphen

and accented on the last syllable; but all our lexicographers have

corrupted it into \_brim'ful\_, and, contrary to the authorities they quote,

accented it on the first. Their noun \_brim'fulness\_, with a like accent, is

also a corruption; and the text of Shakspeare, which they quote for it, is

nonsense, unless \_brim\_, be there made a separate adjective:--

"With ample and \_brimfulness\_ of his force."--\_Johnson's Dict.\_ \_et al\_.

"With \_ample\_ and \_brim fullness\_ of his force," would be better.

[120] According to Littleton, the \_coraliticus lapis\_ was a kind of

Phrygian marble, "called \_Coralius\_ or by an other name \_Sangarius\_." But

this substance seems to be different from all that are described by

Webster, under the names of "\_coralline\_," "\_corallinite\_," and

"\_corallite\_." See \_Webster's Octavo Dict.\_

[121] The Greek word for \_argil\_ is [Greek: argilos], or [Greek: argillos],

(from [Greek: argos], white,) meaning pure white earth; and is as often

spelled with one Lamda as with two.

[122] Dr. Webster, with apparent propriety, writes \_caviling\_ and

\_cavilous\_ with one \_l\_, like \_dialing\_ and \_perilous\_; but he has in

general no more uniformity than Johnson, in respect to the doubling of \_l\_

final. He also, in some instances, accents similar words variously: as,

\_cor'alliform\_, upon the first syllable, \_metal'liform\_, upon the second;

\_cav'ilous\_ and \_pap'illous\_, upon the first, \_argil'lous\_, upon the

second; \_ax'illar\_, upon the first, \_medul'lar\_, upon the second. See

\_Webster's Octavo Dict.\_

[123] Perry wrote \_crystaline, crystalize, crystalization, metaline,

metalist, metalurgist\_, and \_metalurgy\_; and these forms, as well as

\_crystalography, metalic, metalography\_, and \_metaliferous\_, are noticed

and preferred by the authors of the \_Red Book\_, on pp. 288 and 302.

[124] "But if a diphthong precedes, or the accent is on the preceding

syllable, the consonant remains single: as, to toil, toiling; to offer, an

offering."--\_Murray's Octavo Gram.\_, p. 24; \_Walker's Rhym. Dict.\_,

Introd., p. ix.

[125] Johnson, Walker, and Webster, all spell this word \_sep'ilible\_; which

is obviously wrong; as is Johnson's derivation of it from \_sepio\_, to hedge

in. \_Sepio\_ would make, not this word, but \_sepibilis\_ and \_sepible\_,

hedgeable.

[126] If the variable word \_control, controul\_, or \_controll\_, is from

\_con\_ and \_troul\_ or \_troll\_, it should be spelled with \_ll\_, by Rule 7th,

and retain the \_ll\_ by Rule 6th. Dr. Webster has it so, but he gives

\_control\_ also.

[127] \_Ache\_, and its plural, \_aches\_, appear to have been formerly

pronounced like the name of the eighth letter, with its plural, \_Aitch\_,

and \_Aitches\_; for the old poets made "\_aches\_" two syllables. But Johnson

says of \_ache\_, a pain, it is "now \_generally\_ written \_ake\_, and in the

plural \_akes\_, of one syllable."--See his \_Quarto Dict.\_ So Walker: "It is

now \_almost universally\_ written \_ake\_ and \_akes\_."--See \_Walker's

Principles\_, No. 355. So Webster: "\_Ake\_, less properly written

\_ache\_."--See his \_Octavo Dict.\_ But Worcester seems rather to prefer

\_ache\_.--G. B.

[128] This book has, probably, more \_recommenders\_ than any other of the

sort. I have not patience to count them accurately, but it would seem that

\_more than a thousand\_ of the great and learned have certified to the

world, that they never before had seen so good a spelling-book! With

personal knowledge of more than fifty of the signers, G. B. refused to add

his poor name, being ashamed of the mischievous facility with which very

respectable men had loaned their signatures.

[129] \_Scrat\_, for \_scratch.\_ The word is now obsolete, and may be altered

by taking \_ch\_ in the correction.

[130] "\_Hairbrained, adj.\_ This should rather be written \_harebrained\_;

unconstant, unsettled, wild as a \_hare.\_"--\_Johnson's Dict.\_ Webster writes

it \_harebrained\_, as from \_hare\_ and \_brain\_. Worcester, too, prefers this

form.

[131] "The whole number of verbs in the English language, regular and

irregular, simple and compounded, taken together, is about 4,300. See, in

Dr. Ward's Essays on the English language, the catalogue of English verbs.

The whole number of irregular verbs, the defective included, is about

176."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, Philad., 1799, p. 59. Lindley Murray copied the

first and the last of these three sentences, but made the latter number

"about 177."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 109; \_Duodecimo\_, p. 88. In the latter

work, he has this note: "The whole number of \_words\_, in the English

language, is about thirty-five thousand."--\_Ib.\_ Churchill says, "The whole

number of verbs in the English language, according to Dr. Ward, is about

4,300. The irregulars, including the auxilaries [sic--KTH], scarcely exceed

200."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 113. An other late author has the following

enumeration: "There are in the English language about twenty thousand five

hundred nouns, forty pronouns, \_eight thousand verbs\_, nine thousand two

hundred adnouns, two thousand six hundred adverbs, sixty-nine prepositions,

nineteen conjunctions, and sixty-eight interjections; in all, above forty

thousand words."--\_Rev. David Blair's Gram.\_, p. 10. William Ward, M. A.,

in an old grammar \_undated\_, which speaks of Dr. Lowth's as one with which

the public had "\_very lately\_ been favoured," says: "There are \_four

Thousand and about Five Hundred Verbs\_ in the English [language]."--\_Ward's

Practical Gram.\_, p. 52.

[132] These definitions are numbered here, because each of them is the

first of a series now begun. In class rehearsals, the pupils may be

required to give the definitions in turn; and, to prevent any from losing

the place, it is important that the numbers be mentioned. When all have

become sufficiently familiar with the \_definitions\_, the exercise may be

performed \_without them.\_ They are to be read or repeated till faults

disappear--or till the teacher is satisfied with the performance. He may

then save time, by commanding his class to proceed more briefly; making

such distinctions as are required in the praxis, but ceasing to explain the

terms employed; that is, \_omitting all the definitions, for brevity's

sake.\_ This remark is applicable likewise to all the subsequent praxes of

etymological parsing.]

[133] The \_modifications\_ which belong to the different parts of speech

consist chiefly of the \_inflections\_ or \_changes\_ to which certain words

are subject. But I use the term sometimes in a rather broader sense, as

including not only \_variations\_ of words, but, in certain instances, their

\_original forms\_, and also such of their \_relations\_ as serve to indicate

peculiar properties. This is no questionable license in the use of the

term; for when the position of a word \_modifies\_ its meaning, or changes

its person or case, this effect is clearly a grammatical \_modification\_,

though there be no absolute \_inflection\_. Lord Kames observes, "\_That

quality\_, which distinguishes one genus, one species, or even one

individual, from an other, is termed a \_modification\_: thus the same

particular that is termed a \_property\_ or \_quality\_, when considered as

belonging to an individual, or a class of individuals, is termed a

\_modification\_, when considered as distinguishing the individual or the

class from an other."--\_Elements of Criticism\_, Vol. ii, p. 392.

[134] Wells, having put the articles into the class of adjectives, produces

authority as follows: "'The words \_a\_ or \_an\_, and \_the\_, are reckoned by

\_some\_ grammarians a separate part of speech; but, as they in all respects

come under the definition of the adjective, it is unnecessary, as well as

\_improper\_, to rank them as a class by themselves.'--Cannon." To this he

adds, "The articles are also ranked with adjectives by Priestley, E.

Oliver, Bell, Elphinston, M'Culloch, D'Orsey, Lindsay, Joel, Greenwood.

Smetham, Dalton, King, Hort, Buchanan, Crane, J. Russell, Frazee, Cutler,

Perley, Swett, Day. Goodenow, Willard, Robbins, Felton, Snyder, Butler, S.

Barrett, Badgley, Howe, Whiting, Davenport, Fowle, Weld, and

others."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, p. 69. In this way, he may have made it

seem to many, that, after thorough investigation, he had decided the point

discreetly, and with preponderance of authority. For it is claimed as a

"peculiar merit" of this grammar, that, "Every point of practical

importance is \_thoroughly investigated\_, and reference is carefully made to

the \_researches\_ of preceding writers, in all cases which admit of being

determined by \_weight of authority\_."--WILLIAM RUSSELL, \_on the cover\_.

But, in this instance, as in sundry others, wherein he opposes the more

common doctrine, and cites concurrent authors, both he and all his

authorities are demonstrably to the wrong. For how can they be right, while

reason, usage, and the prevailing opinion, are still against them? If we

have forty grammars which reject, the articles as a part of speech, we have

more than twice as many which recognize them as such; among which are those

of the following authors: viz., Adam, D. Adams, Ainsworth, Alden, Alger, W.

Allen, Ash, Bacon, Barnard, Beattie, Beck, Bicknell, Bingham, Blair, J. H.

Brown, Bucke, Bullions, Burn, Burr, Chandler, Churchill, Coar, Cobbett,

Cobbin, Comly, Cooper, Davis, Dearborn, Ensell, Everett, Farnum, Fisk, A.

Flint, Folker, Fowler, Frost, R. G. Greene, Greenleaf, Guy, Hall, Hallock,

Hart, Harrison, Matt. Harrison, Hazen, Hendrick, Hiley, Hull, Ingersoll,

Jaudon, Johnson, Kirkham, Latham, Lennie, A. Lewis, Lowth, Maltby, Maunder,

Mennye, Merchant, T. H. Miller, Murray, Nixon, Nutting, Parker and Fox,

John Peirce, Picket, Pond, S. Putnam, Russell, Sanborn, Sanders, R. C.

Smith, Rev. T. Smith, Spencer, Tower, Tucker, Walker, Webber, Wilcox,

Wilson, Woodworth, J. E. Worcester, S. Worcester, Wright. The articles

characterize our language more than some of the other parts of speech, and

are worthy of distinction for many reasons, one of which is the very great

\_frequency\_ of their use.

[135] In Murray's Abridgement, and in his "Second Edition," 12mo, the

connective in this place is "\_or\_;" and so is it given by most of his

amenders; as in \_Alger's Murray\_, p. 68; \_Alden's\_, 89; \_Bacon's\_, 48;

\_Cooper's\_, 111; \_A. Flint's\_, 65; \_Maltby's\_, 60; \_Miller's\_, 67; \_S.

Putnam's\_, 74; \_Russell's\_, 52; \_T. Smith's\_, 61. All these, and many more,

repeat both of these ill-devised rules.

[136] When this was written, Dr. Webster was living.

[137] In French, the preposition \_à, (to,)\_ is always carefully

distinguished from the verb \_a, (has,)\_ by means of the grave accent, which

is placed over the former for that purpose. And in general also the Latin

word \_à, (from,)\_ is marked in the same way. But, with us, no appropriate

sign has hitherto been adopted to distinguish the preposition \_a\_ from the

article \_a\_; though the Saxon \_a, (to,)\_ is given by Johnson with an acute,

even where no other \_a\_ is found. Hence, in their ignorance, thousands of

vulgar readers, and among them the authors of sundry grammars, have

constantly mistaken this preposition for an article. Examples: "Some

adverbs are composed of \_the article a\_ prefixed to nouns; as \_a\_-side,

\_a\_-thirst, \_a\_-sleep, \_a\_-shore, \_a\_-ground, &c."--\_Comly's Gram.\_, p67.

"Repeat some [adverbs] that are composed of \_the article a\_ and

nouns."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 89. "To go a fishing;" "To go a hunting;"

i.e. "to go \_on\_ a fishing \_voyage\_ or \_business\_;" "to go \_on\_ a hunting

\_party\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 221; \_Fisk's\_, 147; \_Ingersoll's\_, 157;

\_Smith's\_, 184; \_Bullions's\_, 129; \_Merchant's\_, 101; \_Weld's\_, 192, \_and

others.\_ That this interpretation is false and absurd, may be seen at once

by any body who can read Latin; for, \_a hunting, a fishing\_, &c., are

expressed by the supine in \_um\_: as, "\_Venatum ire\_."--Virg. Æn. I.e., "To

go \_a\_ hunting." "\_Abeo piscatum\_."--Beza. I.e. "I go \_a\_

fishing."--\_John\_, xxi, 3. Every school-boy ought to know better than to

call this \_a\_ an article. \_A fishing\_ is equivalent to the infinitive \_to

fish\_. For the Greek of the foregoing text is [Greek: Hupágo hálieúein,]

which is rendered by Montanus, "\_Vado piscari\_;" i.e., "\_I go to fish\_."

One author ignorantly says, "The \_article a\_ seems to have \_no particular

meaning\_, and is \_hardly proper\_ in such expressions as these. 'He went

\_a-hunting\_,' She lies \_a-bed\_ all day.'"--\_Wilcox's Gram.\_, p. 59. No

marvel that he could not find the meaning of an \_article\_ in this \_a!\_ With

doltish and double inconsistency, Weld first calls this "The \_article a\_

employed \_in the sense\_ of a \_preposition\_," (\_E. Gram.\_, p. 177,) and

afterwards adopts Murray's interpretation as above cited! Some, too, have

an absurd practice of joining this preposition to the participle; generally

with the hyphen, but sometimes without: thus, "A-GOING, In motion; as, to

set a mill \_agoing\_."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ The doctor does not tell us what

part of speech \_agoing\_ is; but, certainly, "to set the mill \_to\_ going,"

expresses just the same meaning, and is about as often heard. In the

burial-service of the Common Prayer Book, we read, "They are even as

\_asleep\_;" but, in the ninetieth Psalm, from which this is taken, we find

the text thus: "They are as \_a sleep\_;" that is, as a dream that is fled.

Now these are very different readings, and cannot both he right.

[138] Here the lexicographer forgets his false etymology of \_a\_ before the

participle, and writes the words \_separately\_, as the generality of authors

always have done. \_A\_ was used as a preposition long before the article \_a\_

appeared in the language; and I doubt whether there is any truth at all in

the common notions of its origin. Webster says, "In the words \_abed,

ashore\_, &c., and before \_the\_ participles \_acoming, agoing, ashooting\_,

[he should have said, 'and \_before participles\_; as, \_a coming, a going, a

shooting\_,'] \_a\_ has been supposed a contraction of \_on\_ or \_at\_. It may be

so \_in some cases\_; but with the participles, it \_is sometimes\_ a

contraction of the Saxon prefix \_ge, and sometimes\_ perhaps of the Celtic

\_ag\_."--\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 175. See \_Philos. Gram.\_, p. 244. What

admirable learning is this! \_A\_, forsooth, is a \_contraction\_ of \_ge!\_ And

this is the doctor's reason for \_joining\_ it to the participle!

[139] The following construction may he considered an \_archaism\_, or a form

of expression that is now obsolete: "You have bestowed \_a\_ many \_of\_

kindnesses upon me."--\_Walker's English Particles\_, p. 278.

[140] "If \_I\_ or \_we\_ is set before a name, it [the name] is of the first

person: as, \_I, N-- N--, declare; we, N-- and M-- do promise\_."--\_Ward's

Gram.\_, p. 83. "Nouns which relate to the person or persons \_speaking\_, are

said to be of the \_first\_ person; as, I, \_William\_, speak to

you."--\_Fowle's Common School Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 22. The first person of

nouns is admitted by Ainsworth, R. W. Bailey, Barnard, Brightland, J. H.

Brown, Bullions, Butler, Cardell, Chandler, S. W. Clark, Cooper, Day,

Emmons, Farnum, Felton, Fisk, John Flint, Fowle, Frazee, Gilbert,

Goldsbury, R. G. Greene, S. S. Greene, Hall, Hallock, Hamlin, Hart,

Hendrick, Hiley, Perley, Picket, Pinneo, Russell, Sanborn, Sanders, Smart,

R. C. Smith, Spear, Weld, Wells, Wilcox, and others. It is denied, either

expressly or virtually, by Alger, Bacon, Comly, Davis, Dilworth, Greenleaf,

Guy, Hazen, Ingersoll, Jaudon, Kirkham, Latham, L. Murray, Maltby,

Merchant, Miller, Nutting, Parkhurst, S. Putnam, Rev. T. Smith, and others.

Among the grammarians who do not appear to have noticed the persons of

nouns at all, are Alden, W. Allen, D. C. Allen, Ash, Bicknell, Bingham,

Blair, Buchanan, Bucke, Burn, Burr, Churchill, Coar, Cobb, Dalton,

Dearborn, Abel Flint, R. W. Green, Harrison, Johnson, Lennie, Lowth,

Mennye, Mulligan, Priestley, Staniford, Ware, Webber, and Webster.

[141] Prof. S. S. Greene most absurdly and erroneously teaches, that, "When

the speaker wishes to represent himself, \_he cannot use his name\_, but

\_must\_ use some other word, as, \_I\_; [and] when he wishes to represent the

hearer, he \_must\_ use \_thou\_ or \_you\_."--\_Greene's Elements of E. Gram.\_,

1853, p. xxxiv. The examples given above sufficiently show the falsity of

all this.

[142] In \_shoe\_ and \_shoes, canoe\_ and \_canoes\_, the \_o\_ is sounded

slenderly, like \_oo\_; but in \_doe\_ or \_does, foe\_ or \_foes\_, and the rest

of the fourteen nouns above, whether singular or plural, it retains the

full sound of its own name, \_O\_. Whether the plural of \_two\_ should be

"\_twoes\_" as Churchill writes it, or "\_twos\_," which is more common, is

questionable. According to Dr. Ash and the Spectator, the plural of \_who\_,

taken substantively, is "\_whos\_."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 131.

[143] There are some singular compounds of the plural word \_pence\_, which

form their own plurals regularly; as, \_sixpence, sixpences\_. "If you do not

all show like gilt \_twopences\_ to me."--SHAKSPEARE. "The \_sweepstakes\_ of

which are to be composed of the disputed difference in the value of two

doubtful \_sixpences.\_"--GOODELL'S LECT.: \_Liberator\_. Vol. ix, p. 145.

[144] In the third canto of Lord Byron's Prophecy of Dante, this noun is

used in the singular number:--

"And ocean written o'er would not afford

Space for the \_annal\_, yet it shall go forth."

[145] "They never yet had separated for their daylight beds, without a

climax to their \_orgy\_, something like the present scene."--\_The Crock of

Gold\_, p. 13. "And straps never called upon to diminish that long

whity-brown interval between shoe and \_trowser\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 24. "And he

gave them \_victual\_ in abundance."--\_2 Chron.\_, xi, 23. "Store of

\_victual\_."--\_Ib.\_, verse 11.

[146] The noun \_physic\_ properly signifies medicine, or the science of

medicine: in which sense, it seems to have no plural. But Crombie and the

others cite one or two instances in which \_physic\_ and \_metaphysic\_ are

used, not very accurately, in the sense of the singular of \_physics\_ and

\_metaphysics\_. Several grammarians also quote some examples in which

\_physics, metaphysics, politics, optics\_, and other similar names of

sciences are used with verbs or pronouns of the singular number; but Dr.

Crombie justly says the plural construction of such words, "is more common,

and more agreeable to analogy."--\_On Etym. and Syntax\_, p. 27.

[147] "Benjamin Franklin, following the occupation of a compositor in a

printing-office, at a limited weekly \_wage\_," &c.--\_Chambers' Edinburgh

Journal\_, No. 232. "WAGE, Wages, hire. The singular number is still

frequently used, though \_Dr. Johnson\_ thought it obsolete."--\_Glossary of

Craven\_. 1828.

[148] Our lexicographers generally treat the word \_firearms\_ as a close

compound that has no singular. But some write it with a hyphen, as

\_fire-arms\_. In fact the singular is sometimes used, but the way of writing

it is unsettled. Dr. Johnson, in his Dictionary, defines a \_carbine\_ as, "a

small sort of \_fire arm\_;" Webster has it, "a short gun, or \_fire arm\_;"

Worcester, "a small \_fire-arm\_;" Cobb, "a sort of small \_firearms\_."

Webster uses "\_fire-arm\_," in defining "\_stock\_."

[149] "But, soon afterwards, he made a glorious \_amend\_ for his fault, at

the battle of Platæa."--\_Hist. Reader\_, p. 48.

[150] "There not \_a dreg\_ of guilt defiles."--\_Watts's Lyrics\_, p. 27.

[151] In Young's Night Thoughts, (N. vii, l. 475.) \_lee\_, the singular of

\_lees\_, is found; Churchill says, (Gram., p. 211,) "Prior has used \_lee\_,

as the singular of \_lees\_;" Webster and Bolles have also both forms in

their dictionaries:--

"Refine, exalt, throw down their poisonous \_lee\_,

And make them sparkle in the bowl of bliss."--\_Young\_.

[152] "The 'Procrustean bed' has been a myth heretofore; it promises soon

to be \_a shamble\_ and a slaughterhouse in reality."--\_St. Louis Democrat\_,

1855.

[153] J. W. Wright remarks, "Some nouns admit of no plural distinctions:

as, \_wine, wood\_, beer, \_sugar, tea, timber, fruit, meat\_, goodness,

happiness, and perhaps all nouns ending in \_ness\_."--\_Philos. Gram.\_, p.

139. If this learned author had been brought up in the \_woods\_, and had

never read of Murray's "richer \_wines\_," or heard of Solomon's "dainty

\_meats\_,"--never chaffered in the market about \_sugars\_ and \_teas\_, or read

in Isaiah that "all our \_righteousnesses\_ are as filthy rags," or avowed,

like Timothy, "a good profession before many \_witnesses\_,"--he might still

have hewed the \_timbers\_ of some rude cabin, and partaken of the wild

\_fruits\_ which nature affords. If these nine plurals are right, his

assertion is nine times wrong, or misapplied by himself seven times in the

ten.

[154] "I will not suppose it possible for my dear James to fall into either

the company or the language of those persons who talk, and even write,

about \_barleys, wheats, clovers, flours, grasses\_, and \_malts\_."--

\_Cobbett's E. Gram.\_, p. 29.

[155] "It is a general rule, that all names of things measured or weighed,

have no plural; for in \_them\_ not number, but quantity, is regarded: as,

\_wool, wine, oil\_. When we speak, however, of different kinds, we use the

plural: as, the coarser \_wools\_, the richer \_wines\_, the finer

\_oils\_."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 41.

[156] So \_pains\_ is the regular plural of \_pain\_, and, by Johnson, Webster,

and other lexicographers, is recognized only as plural; but Worcester

inserts it among his stock words, with a comment, thus: "Pains, \_n.\_ Labor;

work; toil; care; trouble. [Fist] According to the best usage, the word

\_pains\_, though of plural form, is used in these senses as singular, and is

joined with a singular verb; as, 'The pains they had taken \_was\_ very

great.' \_Clarendon\_. 'No pains \_is\_ taken.' \_Pope\_. 'Great pains \_is\_

taken.' \_Priestley\_. '\_Much\_ pains.' \_Bolingbroke\_."--\_Univ. and Crit.

Dict.\_ The multiplication of anomalies of this kind is so undesirable, that

nothing short of a very clear decision of Custom, against the use of the

regular concord, can well justify the exception. Many such examples may be

cited, but are they not examples of false syntax? I incline to think "the

best usage" would still make all these verbs plural. Dr. Johnson cites the

first example thus: "The \_pains\_ they had taken \_were\_ very great.

\_Clarendon\_."--\_Quarto Dict., w. Pain\_. And the following recent example is

unquestionably right: "\_Pains have\_ been taken to collect the information

required."--\_President Fillmore's Message\_, 1852.

[157] "And the \_fish\_ that \_is\_ in the river shall die."--\_Exod.\_, vii, 18.

"And the \_fish\_ that \_was\_ in the river died."--\_Ib.\_, 21. Here the

construction is altogether in the singular, and yet the meaning seems to be

plural. This construction appears to be more objectionable, than the use of

the word \_fish\_ with a plural verb. The French Bible here corresponds with

ours: but the Latin Vulgate, and the Greek Septuagint, have both the noun

and the verb in the plural: as, "The \_fishes\_ that \_are\_ in the

river,"--"The \_fishes\_ that \_were\_," &c. In our Bible, \_fowl\_, as well

\_fish\_, is sometimes plural; and yet both words, in some passages, have the

plural form: as, "And \_fowl\_ that may fly," &c.--\_Gen.\_, i, 20. "I will

consume the \_fowls\_ of the heaven, and the \_fishes\_ of the sea."--\_Zeph.\_,

i, 3.

[158] Some authors, when they give to \_mere words\_ the construction of

plural nouns, are in the habit of writing them in the form of possessives

singular; as, "They have of late, 'tis true, reformed, in some measure, the

gouty joints and darning work of \_whereunto's, whereby's, thereof's,

therewith's\_, and the rest of this kind."--\_Shaftesbury\_. "Here," says Dr.

Crombie, "the genitive singular is \_improperly\_ used for the objective case

plural. It should be, \_whereuntos, wherebys, thereofs, therewiths\_."--

\_Treatise on Etym. and Synt.\_, p. 338. According to our rules, these words

should rather be, \_whereuntoes, wherebies\_, \_thereofs, therewiths\_. "Any

word, when used as the name of itself, becomes a noun."--\_Goodenow's

Gram.\_, p. 26. But some grammarians say, "The plural of words, considered

as words merely, is formed by the apostrophe and \_s\_; as, 'Who, that has

any taste, can endure the incessant, quick returns of the \_also's\_, and the

\_likewise's\_, and the \_moreover's\_, and the \_however's\_, and the

\_notwithstanding's\_?'--CAMPBELL."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, p. 54. Practice

is not altogether in favour of this principle, and perhaps it would be

better to decide with Crombie that such a use of the apostrophe is

improper.

[159] "The Supreme Being (\_God, [Greek: Theos], Deus, Dieu\_, &c.) is, in

all languages, masculine; in as much as the masculine sex is the superior

and more excellent; and as He is the Creator of all, the Father of gods and

men."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, p. 54. This remark applies to all the direct

names of the Deity, but the abstract idea of \_Deity itself\_, [Greek: To

Theion], \_Numen, Godhead\_, or \_Divinity\_, is not masculine, but neuter. On

this point, some notions have been published for grammar, that are too

heterodox to be cited or criticised here. See \_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p.

208.

[160] That is, we give them sex, if we mean to represent them \_as\_ persons.

In the following example, a character commonly esteemed feminine is

represented as neuter, because the author would seem to doubt both the sex

and the personality: "I don't know what a \_witch\_ is, or what \_it\_ was

then."--\_N. P. Rogers's Writings\_, p. 154.

[161] There is the same reason for doubling the \_t\_ in \_cittess\_, as for

doubling the \_d\_ in \_goddess\_. See Rule 3d for Spelling. Yet Johnson, Todd,

Webster, Bolles, Worcester, and others, spell it \_citess\_, with one \_t\_.

"Cits and \_citesses\_ raise a joyful strain."--DRYDEN: \_Joh. Dict.\_

[162] "But in the \_English\_ we have \_no Genders\_, as has been seen in the

foregoing Notes. The same may be said of \_Cases\_."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_,

Seventh Edition, Lond., 1746, p. 85.

[163] The Rev. David Blair so palpably contradicts himself in respect to

this matter, that I know not which he favours most, two cases or three. In

his main text, he adopts no objective, but says: "According to the \_sense\_

or \_relation\_ in which nouns are used, they are in the NOMINATIVE or [the]

POSSESSIVE CASE, thus, \_nom.\_ man; \_poss.\_ man's." To this he adds the

following marginal note: "In the English language, the distinction of the

objective case is observable only in the pronouns. \_Cases\_ being nothing

but \_inflections\_, where inflections do not exist, there can be no

grammatical distinction of cases, for the terms \_inflection\_ and \_case\_ are

\_perfectly synonymous\_ and \_convertible\_. As the English noun has \_only one

change\_ of termination, \_so no other case\_ is here adopted. The \_objective\_

case is noticed in the \_pronouns\_; and \_in parsing nouns\_ it is easy to

distinguish \_subjects\_ from \_objects\_. A noun which \_governs the verb\_ may

be described as in the \_nominative\_ case, and one governed by the verb, or

following a preposition, as in the \_objective\_ case."--\_Blair's Practical

Gram., Seventh Edition\_, London, 1815, p. 11. The terms \_inflection\_ and

\_case\_ are not practically synonymous, and never were so in the grammars of

the language from which they are derived. The man who rejects the objective

case of English nouns, because it has not a form peculiar to itself alone,

must reject the accusative and the vocative of all neuter nouns in Latin,

for the same reason; and the ablative, too, must in general be discarded on

the same principle. In some other parts of his book, Blair speaks of the

objective case of nouns as familiarly as do other authors!

[164] This author says, "We choose to use the term \_subjective\_ rather than

\_nominative\_, because it is shorter, and because it conveys its meaning by

its sound, whereas the latter word means, indeed, little or nothing in

itself."--\_Text-Book\_, p. 88. This appears to me a foolish innovation, too

much in the spirit of Oliver B. Peirce, who also adopts it. The person who

knows not the meaning of the word \_nominative\_, will not be very likely to

find out what is meant by \_subjective\_; especially as some learned

grammarians, even such men as Dr. Crombie and Professor Bullions, often

erroneously call the word which is governed by the verb its \_subject\_.

Besides, if we say \_subjective\_ and \_objective\_, in stead of \_nominative\_

and \_objective\_, we shall inevitably change the accent of both, and give

them a pronunciation hitherto unknown to the words.--G. BROWN.

[165] The authorities cited by Felch, for his doctrine of "\_possessive

adnouns\_," amount to nothing. They are ostensibly two. The first is a

remark of Dr. Adam's: "'\_John's book\_ was formerly written \_Johnis book\_.

Some have thought the \_'s\_ a contraction of \_his\_, but improperly. Others

have imagined, with more justness, that, by the addition of the \_'s\_, the

substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.'--\_Adam's Latin and

English Grammar\_, p. 7."--\_Felch's Comp. Gram.\_, p. 26. Here Dr. Adam by no

means concurs with what these "\_others have imagined\_;" for, in the very

same place, he declares the possessive case of nouns to be their \_only\_

case. The second is a dogmatical and inconsistent remark of some anonymous

writer in some part of the "\_American Journal of Education\_," a work

respectable indeed, but, on the subject of grammar, too often fantastical

and heterodox. Felch thinks it not improper, to use the possessive case

before participles; in which situation, it denotes, not the owner of

something, but the agent, subject, or recipient, of the action, being, or

change. And what a jumble does he make, where he attempts to resolve this

ungrammatical construction!--telling us, in almost the same breath, that,

"The agent of a \_nounal\_ verb [i. e. participle] is never expressed," but

that, "Sometimes it [the \_nounal\_ or \_gerundial\_ verb] is \_qualified\_, in

its \_nounal capacity\_, by a possessive \_adnoun\_ indicative \_of its agent\_

as a verb; as, there is \_nothing like one's\_ BEING useful he doubted

\_their\_ HAVING it:" and then concluding, "\_Hence it appears\_, that the

\_present participle\_ may be used \_as agent or object\_, and yet retain its

character as a verb."--\_Felch's Comprehensive Gram.\_, p. 81. Alas for the

schools, if the wise men of the East receive for grammar such utter

confusion, and palpable self-contradiction, as this!

[166] A critic's accuracy is sometimes liable to be brought into doubt, by

subsequent alterations of the texts which, he quotes. Many an error cited

in this volume of criticism, may possibly not be found in some future

edition of the book referred to; as several of those which were pointed out

by Lowth, have disappeared from the places named for them. Churchill also

cites this line as above; (\_New Gram.\_, p. 214;) but, in my edition of the

Odyssey, by Pope, the reading is this: "By \_lov'd Telemachus's\_ blooming

years!"--Book xi, L 84.

[167] \_Corpse\_ forms the plural regularly, \_corpses\_; as in \_2 Kings\_, xix,

35: "In the morning, behold, they were all dead \_corpses\_."

[168] Murray says, "An \_adjective\_ put without a substantive, with the

definite article before it, \_becomes a substantive in sense and meaning\_,

and is \_written as a substantive\_: as, 'Providence rewards \_the good\_, and

punishes \_the bad\_.'" If I understand this, it is very erroneous, and

plainly contrary to the fact. I suppose the author to speak of \_good

persons\_ and \_bad persons\_; and, if he does, is there not an ellipsis in

his language? How can it be said, that \_good\_ and \_bad\_ are here

substantives, since they have a plural meaning and refuse the plural form?

A word "\_written as a substantive\_," unquestionably \_is\_ a substantive; but

neither of these is here entitled to that name. Yet Smith, and other

satellites of Murray, endorse his doctrine; and say, that \_good\_ and \_bad\_

in this example, and all adjectives similarly circumstanced, "may be

considered \_nouns\_ in parsing."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 52. "An adjective

with the definite article before it, becomes a \_noun\_, (of the third

person, plural number,) and \_must be parsed\_ as such."--\_R. G. Greene's

Grammatical Text-Book\_, p. 55.

[169] Here the word \_English\_ appears to be used substantively, not by

reason of the article, but rather because \_it has no article\_; for, when

the definite article is used before such a word taken in the singular

number, it seems to show that the noun \_language\_ is understood. And it is

remarkable, that before the names or epithets by which we distinguish the

languages, this article may, in many instances, be either used or not used,

repeated or not repeated, without any apparent impropriety: as, "This is

the case with \_the\_ Hebrew, French, Italian, and Spanish."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, i, p. 38. Better, perhaps: "This is the case with \_the\_ Hebrew,

\_the\_ French, \_the\_ Italian, and \_the\_ Spanish." But we may say: "This is

the case with Hebrew, French, Italian, and Spanish." In the first of these

forms, there appears to be an ellipsis of the plural noun \_languages\_, at

the end of the sentence; in the second, an ellipsis of the singular noun

\_language\_, after each of the national epithets; in the last, no ellipsis,

but rather a substantive use of the words in question.

[170] The Doctor may, for aught I know, have taken his notion of this

"\_noun\_," from the language "of Dugald Dalgetty, boasting of his '5000

\_Irishes\_' in the prison of Argyle." See \_Letter of Wendell Phillips, in

the Liberator\_, Vol. xi, p. 211.

[171] Lindley Murray, or some ignorant printer of his octavo Grammar, has

omitted this \_s\_; and thereby spoiled the prosody, if not the sense, of the

line:

"Of Sericana, where \_Chinese\_ drive," &c.

--\_Fourth American Ed.\_, p. 345.

If there was a design to correct the error of Milton's word, something

should have been inserted. The common phrase, "\_the Chinese\_," would give

the sense, and the right number of syllables, but not the right accent. It

would be sufficiently analogous with our mode of forming the words,

\_Englishmen, Frenchmen, Scotchmen, Dutchmen\_, and \_Irishmen\_, and perhaps

not unpoetical, to say:

"Of Sericana, where \_Chinese-men\_ drive,

With sails and wind, their cany \_wagons\_ light."

[172] The last six words are perhaps more frequently pronouns; and some

writers will have well-nigh all the rest to be pronouns also. "In like

manner, in \_the\_ English, there have been \_rescued\_ from the adjectives,

and classed with the pronouns, any, aught, each, every, many, none, one,

other, some, such, that, those, this, these; and by other writers, all,

another, both, either, few, first, last, neither, and several."--\_Wilson's

Essay on Gram.\_, p. 106. Had the author said \_wrested\_, in stead of

"\_rescued\_," he would have taught a much better doctrine. These words are

what Dr. Lowth correctly called "\_Pronominal Adjectives\_."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 24. This class of adjectives includes most of the words which

Murray, Lennie, Bullions, Kirkham, and others, so absurdly denominate

"\_Adjective Pronouns\_." Their "Distributive Adjective Pronouns, \_each,

every, either, neither\_;" their "Demonstrative Adjective Pronouns, \_this,

that, these, those\_;" and their "Indefinite Adjective Pronouns, \_some,

other, any, one, all, such\_, &c.," are every one of them here; for they all

are \_Adjectives\_, and not \_Pronouns\_. And it is obvious, that the

corresponding words in Latin, Greek, or French, are adjectives likewise,

and are, for the most part, so called; so that, from General Grammar, or

"the usages of other languages," arises an argument for ranking them as

adjectives, rather than as pronouns. But the learned Dr. Bullions, after

improperly assuming that every adjective must "express \_the quality of a

noun\_," and thence arguing that no such definitives can rightly be called

\_adjectives\_, most absurdly suggests, that "\_other languages\_," or "\_the

usages of\_ other languages," generally assign to these \_English words\_ the

place of \_substitutes\_! But so remarkable for self-contradiction, as well

as other errors, is this gentleman's short note upon the classification of

these words, that I shall present the whole of it for the reader's

consideration.

"NOTE. The distributives, demonstratives, and indefinites, cannot strictly

be called \_pronouns\_; since they never stand \_instead\_ of nouns, but always

\_agree\_ with \_a noun\_ expressed or understood: \_Neither can they be

properly\_ called \_adjectives\_, since they never express \_the quality of a

noun\_. They are here classed \_with pronouns\_, in accordance with \_the

usages of other languages\_, which \_generally assign them this place\_. All

these, together with the \_possessives\_, in parsing, may \_with sufficient

propriety\_ be termed \_adjectives\_, being \_uniformly regarded as such\_ in

syntax."--\_Bullions's Principles of English Gram.\_, p. 27. (See also his

\_Appendix\_ III, E. Gram., p. 199.)

What a sample of grammatical instruction is here! The pronominal adjectives

"cannot properly \_be called adjectives\_," but "they may with sufficient

propriety be \_termed adjectives\_!" And so may "\_the possessives\_," or \_the

personal pronouns in the possessive case\_! "Here," i.e., in \_Etymology\_,

they are all "\_classed with pronouns\_;" but, "in \_Syntax\_," they are

"uniformly \_regarded as adjectives\_!" Precious MODEL for the "Series of

Grammars, English, Latin, and Greek, all on THE SAME PLAN!"

[173] \_Some\_, for \_somewhat\_, or \_in some degree\_, appears to me a

vulgarism; as, "This pause is generally \_some\_ longer than that of a

period."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 271. The word \_what\_ seems to have been

used adverbially in several different senses; in none of which is it much

to be commended: as, "Though I forbear, \_what\_ am I eased?"--\_Job\_, xvi, 6.

"\_What\_ advantageth it me?"--\_1 Cor.\_, xv, 32. Here \_what\_, means \_in what

degree? how much?\_ or \_wherein?\_ "For \_what\_ knowest thou, O wife, whether

thou shalt save thy husband?"--\_1 Cor.\_, vii, 16. Here \_how\_ would have

been better. "The enemy, having his country wasted, \_what\_ by himself and

\_what\_ by the soldiers, findeth succour in no place."--\_Spenser\_. Here

\_what\_ means \_partly\_;--"wasted \_partly\_ by himself and \_partly\_ by the

soldiers." This use of \_what\_ was formerly very common, but is now, I

think, obsolete. \_What\_ before an adjective seems sometimes to denote with

admiration the degree of the quality; and is called, by some, an adverb;

as, "\_What partial\_ judges are our love and hate!"--\_Dryden\_. But here I

take \_what\_ to be an \_adjective\_; as when we say, \_such\_ partial judges,

\_some\_ partial judges, &c. "\_What\_ need I be forward with Death, that calls

not on me?"--\_Shakspeare\_. Here \_what\_ seems to be improperly put in place

of \_why\_.

[174] Dr. Blair, in his Lectures on Rhetoric and Belles-Lettres, often uses

the phrase "\_this much\_;" but it is, I think, more common to say "\_thus

much\_," even when the term is used substantively.

[175] There seems to be no good reason for joining \_an\_ and \_other\_: on the

contrary, the phrase \_an other\_ is always as properly two words, as the

phrase \_the other\_, and more so. The latter, being long ago vulgarly

contracted into \_t'other\_, probably gave rise to the apparent contraction

\_another\_; which many people nowadays are ignorant enough to divide wrong,

and mispronounce. See \_"a-no-ther"\_ in \_Murray's Spelling-Book\_, p. 71; and

\_"a-noth-er"\_ in \_Emerson's\_, p. 76. \_An\_ here excludes any other article;

and both analogy and consistency require that the words be separated. Their

union, like that of the words \_the\_ and \_other\_, has led sometimes to an

improper repetition of the article: as, "\_Another\_ such \_a\_ man," for, "An

other such man."--"Bind my hair up. An 'twas yesterday? No, nor \_the

t'other\_ day."--BEN JONSON: \_in Joh. Dict.\_ "He can not tell when he should

take \_the tone\_, and when \_the tother\_."--SIR T. MOORE: Tooke's D. P., Vol.

15, p. 448. That is--"when he should take \_the one\_ and when \_the other\_."

Besides, the word \_other\_ is declined, like a noun, and has the plural

\_others\_; but the compounding of \_another\_ constrains our grammarians to

say, that this word "has no plural." All these difficulties will be removed

by writing \_an other\_ as two words. The printers chiefly rule this matter.

To them, therefore, I refer it; with directions, not to unite these words

for me, except where it has been done in the manuscript, for the sake of

exactness in quotation.--G. BROWN.

[176] This is a misapplication of the word \_between\_, which cannot have

reference to more than two things or parties: the term should have been

\_among\_.--G. BROWN.

[177] I suppose that, in a comparison of \_two\_, any of the degrees may be

accurately employed. The common usage is, to construe the positive with

\_as\_, the comparative with \_than\_, and the superlative with \_of\_. But here

custom allows us also to use the comparative with \_of\_, after the manner of

the superlative; as, "This is \_the better of\_ the two." It was but an odd

whim of some old pedant, to find in this a reason for declaring it

ungrammatical to say "This is \_the best of\_ the two." In one grammar, I

find the former construction \_condemned\_, and the latter approved, thus:

"This is the better book of the two. Not correct, because the comparative

state of the adjective, (\_better\_,) can not correspond with the

preposition, \_of\_. The definite article, \_the\_, is likewise improperly

applied to the comparative state; the sentence should stand thus, This is

the \_best\_ book of the two."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, Ed. of 1821, p. 130; Ed.

of 1847, p. 151.

[178] This example appears to have been borrowed from Campbell; who,

however, teaches a different doctrine from Murray, and clearly sustains my

position; "Both degrees are in such cases used \_indiscriminately\_. We say

\_rightly\_, either 'This is the weaker of the two,' or--'the weakest of the

two.'"--\_Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, p. 202. How positively do some other men

contradict this! "In comparing \_two\_ persons or things, by means of an

adjective, care must be taken, that the superlative state be not employed:

We properly say, 'John is the \_taller\_ of the two;' but we \_should not

say\_, 'John is the \_tallest\_ of the two.' The reason is plain: we compare

but \_two\_ persons, and must \_therefore\_ use the comparative

state."--\_Wright's Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 143. Rev. Matt. Harrison, too,

insists on it, that the superlative must "have reference to more than two,"

and censures \_Dr. Johnson\_ for not observing the rule. See \_Harrison's

English Language\_, p. 255.

[179] L. Murray copied this passage literally, (though anonymously,) as far

as the colon; and of course his book teaches us to account "\_the

termination ish\_, in some sort, \_a degree of comparison\_."--\_Octavo Gram.\_,

p. 47. But what is more absurd, than to think of accounting this, or any

other suffix, "\_a degree of comparison?\_" The inaccuracy of the language is

a sufficient proof of the haste with which Johnson adopted this notion, and

of the blindness with which he has been followed. The passage is now found

in most of our English grammars. Sanborn expresses the doctrine thus:

"Adjectives terminating with \_ish\_, denote a degree of comparison less than

the positive; as, \_saltish, whitish, blackish\_."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p.

87. But who does not know, that most adjectives of this ending are derived

from \_nouns\_, and are compared only by adverbs, as \_childish, foolish\_, and

so forth? Wilcox says, "Words ending in \_ish\_, generally express a slight

degree; as, \_reddish, bookish\_."--\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 17. But who will

suppose that \_foolish\_ denotes but a slight degree of folly, or \_bookish\_

but a slight fondness for books? And, with such an interpretation, what

must be the meaning of \_more bookish\_ or \_most foolish\_?

[180] "'A rodde shall come \_furth\_ of the stocke of Jesse.' \_Primer, Hen.

VIII\_."--\_Craven Glossary\_.

[181] \_Midst\_ is a contraction of the regular superlative \_middest\_, used

by Spenser, but now obsolete. \_Midst\_, also, seems to be obsolete as an

adjective, though still frequently used as a noun; as, "In the

\_midst\_."--\_Webster\_. It is often a poetic contraction for the preposition

\_amidst\_. In some cases it appears to be an adverb. In the following

example it is equivalent to \_middlemost\_, and therefore an adjective:

"Still greatest he \_the midst\_, Now dragon grown."--\_Paradise Lost\_, B. x,

l. 528.

[182] What I here say, accords with the teaching of all our lexicographers

and grammarians, except one dauntless critic, who has taken particular

pains to put me, and some three or four others, on the defensive. This

gentleman not only supposes \_less\_ and \_fewer, least\_ and \_fewest\_, to be

sometimes equivalent in meaning, but actually exhibits them as being also

etymologically of the same stock. \_Less\_ and \_least\_, however, he refers to

three different positives, and \_more\_ and \_most\_, to four. And since, in

once instance, he traces \_less\_ and \_more, least\_ and \_most\_, to the same

primitive word, it follows of course, if he is right, that \_more\_ is there

equivalent to \_less\_ and \_most\_ is equivalent to \_least\_! The following is

a copy of this remarkable "DECLENSION ON INDEFINITE SPECIFYING ADNAMES,"

and just one half of the table is wrong: "\_Some, more, most; Some, less,

least\_; Little, less, least; Few, fewer \_or less\_, fewest \_or least;

Several, more, most\_; Much, more, most; Many, more most."--\_Oliver B

Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 144.

[183] Murray himself had the same false notion concerning six of these

adjectives, and perhaps all the rest; for his indefinite \_andsoforths\_ may

embrace just what the reader pleases to imagine. Let the following

paragraph be compared with the observations and proofs which I shall offer:

"Adjectives that have in themselves a superlative signification, do not

properly admit of the superlative or [the] comparative form superadded:

such as, 'Chief, extreme, perfect, right, universal, supreme,' &c.; which

are sometimes improperly written, 'Chiefest, extremest, perfectest,

rightest, most universal, most supreme,' &c. The following expressions are

therefore improper. 'He sometimes claims admission to the \_chiefest\_

offices;' 'The quarrel became \_so universal\_ and national;' 'A method of

attaining the \_rightest\_ and greatest happiness.' The phrases, so perfect,

so right, so extreme, so universal, &c., are incorrect; because they imply

that one thing is less perfect, less extreme, &c. than another, which is

not possible."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, Vol. i, p. 167. For himself, a man

may do as he pleases about comparing these adjectives; but whoever corrects

others, on such principles as the foregoing, will have work enough on his

hands. But the writer who seems to exceed all others, in error on this

point, is \_Joseph W. Wright\_. In his "Philosophical Grammar," p. 51st, this

author gives a list of seventy-two adjectives, which, he says, "admit of

\_no variation of state\_;" i. e., are not compared. Among them are \_round,

flat, wet, dry, clear, pure, odd, free, plain, fair, chaste, blind\_, and

more than forty others, which are compared about as often as any words in

the language. Dr. Blair is hypercritically censured by him, for saying

"\_most excellent\_," "\_more false\_," "the \_chastest\_ kind," "\_more perfect\_"

"\_fuller, more full, fullest, most full, truest\_ and \_most true\_;" Murray,

for using "\_quite wrong\_;" and Cobbett, for the phrase, "\_perfect

correctness\_." "Correctness," says the critic, "does not admit of \_degrees

of perfection\_."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 143 and 151. But what does such a thinker know

about correctness? If this excellent quality cannot be \_perfect\_, surely

nothing can. The words which Dr. Bullions thinks it "improper to compare,"

because he judges them to have "an absolute or superlative signification,"

are "\_true, perfect, universal, chief, extreme, supreme\_, &c."--no body

knows how many. See \_Principles of E. Gram.\_, p. 19 and p. 115.

[184] The regular comparison of this word, (\_like, liker, likest\_,) seems

to be obsolete, or nearly so. It is seldom met with, except in old books:

yet we say, \_more like\_, or \_most like, less like\_, or \_least like\_. "To

say the flock with whom he is, is \_likest\_ to Christ."--\_Barclay's Works\_,

Vol. i, p. 180. "Of Godlike pow'r? for \_likest\_ Gods they

seem'd."--\_Milton, P. L.\_ B. vi, l. 301.

[185] This example, and several others that follow it, are no ordinary

solecisms; they are downright Irish bulls, making actions or relations

reciprocal, where reciprocity is \_utterly\_ unimaginable. Two words can no

more be "\_derived from each other\_," than two living creatures can have

received their existence from each other. So, two things can never

"\_succeed each other\_," except they alternate or move in a circle; and a

greater number in train can "\_follow one an other\_" only in some imperfect

sense, not at all reciprocal. In some instances, therefore, the best form

of correction will be, to reject the reciprocal terms altogether--G. BROWN.

[186] This doctrine of punctuation, if not absolutely false in itself, is

here very badly taught. When \_only two words\_, of any sort, occur in the

same construction, they seldom require the comma; and never can they need

\_more than one\_, whereas these grammarians, by their plural word

"\_commas\_," suggest a constant demand for two or more.--G. BROWN.

[187] Some grammarians exclude the word \_it\_ from the list of personal

pronouns, because it does not convey the idea of that personality which

consists in \_individual intelligence\_. On the other hand, they will have

\_who\_ to be a personal pronoun, because it is literally applied to \_persons

only\_, or intelligent beings. But I judge them to be wrong in respect to

both; and, had they given \_definitions\_ of their several classes of

pronouns, they might perhaps have found out that the word \_it\_ is always

personal, in a grammatical sense, and \_who\_, either relative or

interrogative.

[188] "\_Whoso\_ and \_whatso\_ are found in old authors, but are now out of

use."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 76. These antiquated words are equivalent in

import to \_whosoever\_ and \_whatsoever\_. The former, \_whoso\_, being used

many times in the Bible, and occasionally also by the poets, as by Cowper,

Whittier, and others, can hardly be said to be obsolete; though Wells, like

Churchill, pronounced it so, in his first edition.

[189] "'The man is prudent which speaks little.' This sentence is

incorrect, because \_which\_ is a pronoun of the neuter gender."--\_Murray's

Exercises\_, p. 18. "\_Which\_ is also a relative, but it is of [the] neuter

gender. It is also interrogative."--\_Webster's Improved Gram.\_, p. 26. For

oversights like these, I cannot account. The relative \_which\_ is of all the

genders, as every body ought to know, who has ever heard of the \_horse

which\_ Alexander rode, of the \_ass which\_ spoke to Balaam, or of any of the

\_animals\_ and \_things\_ which Noah had with him in the ark.

[190] The word \_which\_ also, when taken in its \_discriminative\_ sense (i.e.

to distinguish some persons or things from others) may have a construction

of this sort; and, by ellipsis of the noun after it, it may likewise bear a

resemblance to the double relative \_what\_: as, "I shall now give you two

passages; and request you to point out \_which\_ words are mono-syllables,

\_which\_ dis-syllables, \_which\_ tris-syllables, and \_which\_

poly-syllables."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 16. Here, indeed, the word \_what\_

might be substituted for \_which\_; because that also has a discriminative

sense. Either would be right; but the author might have presented the same

words and thoughts rather more accurately, thus: "I shall now give you two

passages; and request you to point out which words are monosyllables;

which, dissyllables; which, trissyllables; and which, polysyllables."

[191] The relative \_what\_, being equivalent to \_that which\_, sometimes has

the demonstrative word \_that\_ set after it, by way of pleonasm; as, "\_What\_

I tell you in darkness, \_that\_ speak ye in light, and \_what\_ ye hear in the

ear, \_that\_ preach ye upon the house-tops."--\_Matt.\_, x, 27. In \_Covell's

Digest\_, this text is presented as "\_false syntax\_," under the new and

needless rule, "Double relatives always supply two cases."--\_Digest of E.

Gram.\_, p. 143. In my opinion, to strike out the word \_that\_, would greatly

weaken the expression: and so thought our translators; for no equivalent

term is used in the original.

[192] As for Butler's method of parsing these words by \_always recognizing

a noun as being\_ "UNDERSTOOD" \_before them\_,--a method by which, according

to his publishers notice, "The ordinary unphilosophical explanation of this

class of words is discarded, and a simple, intelligible, common-sense view

of the matter now \_for the first time\_ substituted,"--I know not what

novelty there is in it, that is not also just so much \_error\_. "Compare,"

says he, "these two sentences: 'I saw \_whom\_ I wanted to see;' 'I saw what

I wanted to see. If \_what\_ in the latter is equivalent to \_that which\_ or

\_the thing which, whom\_, in the former is equivalent to \_him whom\_, or \_the

person whom\_."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 51. The former example being

simply elliptical of the antecedent, he judges the latter to be so too; and

infers, "that \_what\_ is nothing more than a relative pronoun, and includes

nothing else."--\_Ib.\_ This conclusion is not well drawn, because the two

examples are \_not analogous\_; and whoever thus finds "that \_what\_ is

nothing more than a relative," ought also to find it is something less,--a

mere adjective. "I saw \_the person whom\_ I wanted to see," is a sentence

that \_can scarcely spare\_ the antecedent and retain the sense; "I saw

\_what\_ I wanted to see," is one which \_cannot receive\_ an antecedent,

without changing both the sense and the construction. One may say, "I saw

what \_things\_ I wanted to see;" but this, in stead of giving \_what\_ an

\_antecedent\_, makes it an \_adjective\_, while it \_retains the force of a

relative\_. Or he \_may insert\_ a noun before \_what\_, agreeably to the

solution of Butler; as, "I saw \_the things\_, what I wanted to see:" or, if

he please, both before and after; as, "I saw \_the things\_, what \_things\_ I

wanted to see." But still, in either case, \_what\_ is no "simple relative;"

for it here seems equivalent to the phrase, \_so many as\_. Or, again, he may

omit the comma, and say, "I saw \_the thing\_ what I wanted to see;" but

this, if it be not a vulgarism, will only mean, "I saw \_the thing to be\_

what I wanted to see." So that this method of parsing the pronoun what, is

manifestly no improvement, but rather a perversion and misinterpretation.

But, for further proof of his position, Butler adduces instances of what he

calls "\_the relative\_ THAT \_with the antecedent omitted\_. A few examples of

this," he says, "will help us to ascertain the nature of \_what\_. 'We speak

\_that\_ we do know,' \_Bible\_. [\_John\_, iii, 11.] 'I am \_that\_ I am.'

\_Bible\_. [\_Exod.\_, iii, 14.] 'Eschewe \_that\_ wicked is.' \_Gower\_. 'Is it

possible he should know what he is, and be \_that\_ he is?' Shakespeare.

'Gather the sequel by \_that\_ went before.' \_Id.\_ In these examples,"

continues he, "\_that\_ is a relative; and is \_exactly synonymous\_ with

\_what\_. No one would contend that \_that\_ stands for itself and its

antecedent at the same time. The antecedent is omitted, \_because it is

indefinite\_, OR EASILY SUPPLIED."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 52;

\_Bullions's Analytical and Practical Gram.\_, p. 233. Converted at his

wisest age, by these false arguments, so as to renounce and gainsay the

doctrine taught almost universally, and hitherto spread industriously by

himself, in the words of Lennie, that, "\_What\_ is a compound relative,

including both the relative and the antecedent," Dr. Bullions now most

absurdly urges, that, "The truth is, \_what\_ is a \_simple\_ relative, having,

wherever used, \_like all other relatives\_, BUT ONE CASE; but \* \* \* that it

always refers to a \_general antecedent, omitted\_, BUT EASILY SUPPLIED \_by

the mind\_," though "\_not\_ UNDERSTOOD, \_in the ordinary sense\_ of that

expression."--\_Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_ of 1849, p. 51. Accordingly,

though he differs from Butler about this matter of "\_the ordinary sense\_,"

he cites the foregoing suggestions of this author, with the following

compliment: "These remarks appear to me \_just\_, and \_conclusive on this

point\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 233. But there must, I think, be many to whon they will

appear far otherwise. These elliptical uses of \_that\_ are all of them bad

or questionable English; because, the ellipsis being such as may be

supplied in two or three different ways, the true construction is doubtful,

the true meaning not exactly determined by the words. It is quite as easy

and natural to take "\_that\_" to be here a demonstrative term, having the

relative \_which\_ understood after it, as to suppose it "a relative," with

an antecedent to be supplied before it. Since there would not be the same

uncertainty, if \_what\_ were in these cases substituted for \_that\_, it is

evident that the terms are \_not\_ "\_exactly synonymous\_;" but, even if they

were so, exact synonymy would not evince a sameness of construction.

[193] See this erroneous doctrine in Kirkham's Grammar, p. 112; in Wells's,

p. 74; in Sanborn's, p. 71, p. 96, and p. 177; in Cooper's, p. 38; in O. B.

Peirce's, p. 70. These writers show a great fondness for this complex mode

of parsing. But, in fact, no pronoun, not even the word \_what\_, has any

double construction of cases from a real or absolute necessity; but merely

because, the noun being suppressed, yet having a representative, we choose

rather to understand and parse its representative doubly, than to supply

the ellipsis. No pronoun includes "both the antecedent and the relative,"

by virtue of its own \_composition\_, or of its own derivation, as a word. No

pronoun can properly be called "\_compound\_" merely because it has a double

construction, and is equivalent to two other words. These positions, if

true, as I am sure they are, will refute sundry assertions that are

contained in the above-named grammars.

[194] Here the demonstrative word \_that\_, as well as the phrase \_that

matter\_, which I form to explain its construction, unquestionably refers

back to Judas's confession, that he had sinned; but still, as the word has

not the connecting power of a relative pronoun, its true character is

\_that\_ of an adjective, and not \_that\_ of a pronoun. This pronominal

adjective is very often mixed with some such ellipsis, and \_that\_ to repeat

the import of various kinds of words and phrases: as, "God shall help her,

and \_that\_ right early."--\_Psal.\_, xlvi, 5. "Nay, ye do wrong, and defraud,

and \_that\_ your brethren."--l Cor., vi, 8. "I'll know your business, \_that\_

I will."--\_Shakespeare.\_

[195] Dr. Bullions has undertaken to prove, "That the word AS should not be

considered a relative in any circumstances." The force of his five great

arguments to this end, the reader may well conceive of, when he has

compared the following one with what is shown in the 22d and 23d

observations above: "3. As \_can never be used as a substitute for another

relative pronoun, nor another relative pronoun as a substitute for it\_. If,

then, it is a relative pronoun, it is, to say the least, a very

unaccommodating one."--\_Bullions's Analytical and Practical Gram. of\_ 1849,

p. 233.

[196] The latter part of this awkward and complex rule was copied from

Lowth's Grammar, p. 101. Dr. Ash's rule is, "\_Pronouns\_ must \_always agree\_

with the \_nouns\_ for which they \_stand\_, or to which they \_refer\_, in

\_Number, person\_, and \_gender\_."--\_Grammatical Institutes\_, p. 54. I quote

this \_exactly as it stands\_ in the book: the Italics are his, not mine.

Roswell C. Smith appears to be ignorant of the change which Murray made in

his fifth rule: for he still publishes as Murray's a principle of concord

which the latter rejected as early as 1806: "RULE V. Corresponding with

Murray's Grammar, RULE V. \_Pronouns must agree with the nouns for which

they stand, in gender, number\_, AND PERSON."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 130.

So \_Allen Fisk\_, in his "Murray's English Grammar Simplified," p. 111;

\_Aaron M. Merchant\_, in his "\_Abridgment\_ of Murray's English Grammar,

Revised, \_Enlarged\_ and Improved," p. 79; and the \_Rev. J. G. Cooper\_, in

his "Abridgment of Murray's English Grammar," p. 113; where, from the

titles, every reader would expect to find the latest doctrines of Murray,

and not what he had so long ago renounced or changed.

[197] L. Murray's Gram., 8vo, p. 51; 12mo, 51; 18mo, 22; D. Adams's, 37;

Alger's, 21; Bacon's, 19; Fisk's, 20; Kirkham's, 17; Merchant's Murray, 35;

Merchant's American Gram., 40; F. H. Miller's Gram., 26; Pond's, 28; S.

Putnam's, 22; Russell's, 16; Rev. T. Smith's, 22.

[198] Dr. Crombie, and some others, represent I and thou, with their

inflections, as being "masculine and feminine." Lennie, M'Culloch, and

others, represent them as being "masculine or feminine." But, if either of

them can have an antecedent that is \_neuter\_, neither of these views is

strictly correct. (See Obs. 5th, above.) Mackintosh says, "We use \_our,

your, their\_, in speaking of a thing or things belonging to plural nouns of

any gender."--\_Essay on English Gram.\_, p. 149. So William Barnes says,

"\_I, thou, we, ye\_ or \_you\_, and \_they\_, are of \_all\_ genders,"--

\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 196.

[199] "It is perfectly plain, then, that \_my\_ and \_mine\_ are but different

forms of the same word, as are \_a\_ and \_an\_. \_Mine\_, for the sake of

euphony, or from custom, stands for the possessive case without a noun; but

must be changed for \_my\_ when the noun is expressed: and \_my\_, for a

similar reason, stands before a noun, but must be changed for \_mine\_ when

the noun is dropped. \* \* \* \_Mine\_ and \_my, thine\_ and \_thy\_, will,

therefore, be considered in this book, as different forms of the possessive

case from \_I\_ and \_Thou\_. And the same rule will be extended to \_her\_ and

\_hers, our\_ and \_ours, your\_ and \_yours, their\_ and \_theirs\_."--\_Barnard's

Analytic Grammar\_, p. 142.

[200] It has long been fashionable, in the ordinary intercourse of the

world, to substitute the plural form of this pronoun for the singular

through all the cases. Thus, by the figure ENALLAGE, "\_you are\_," for

instance, is commonly put for "\_thou art\_." See Observations 20th and 21st,

below; also Figures of Syntax, in Part IV.

[201] The original nominative was \_ye\_, which is still the only nominative

of the solemn style; and the original objective was \_you\_, which is still

the only objective that our grammarians in general acknowledge. But,

whether grammatical or not, \_ye\_ is now very often used, in a familiar way,

for the objective case. (See Observations 22d and 23d, upon the declensions

of pronouns.) T. Dilworth gave both cases alike: "\_Nom\_. Ye \_or\_ you;"

"\_Acc.\_ [or \_Obj.\_] Ye \_or\_ you."--His \_New Guide\_, p. 98. Latham gives

these forms: "\_Nom.\_ ye \_or\_ you; \_Obj.\_ you or ye."--\_Elementary Gram.\_,

p. 90. Dr. Campbell says, "I am inclined to prefer that use which makes

\_ye\_ invariably the nominative plural of the personal pronoun \_thou\_, and

\_you\_ the accusative, when applied to an actual plurality."--\_Philosophy of

Rhetoric\_, p. 174. Professor Fowler touches the case, rather blindly, thus:

"Instead of the true nominative YE, we use, with few exceptions, \_the

objective case\_; as, 'YOU \_speak\_;' 'YOU \_two are speaking\_.' In this we

\_substitute\_ one case \_for\_ another."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850,

§478. No other grammarian, however, discards \_you\_ as a nominative of

"actual plurality;" and the present casual practice of putting \_ye\_ in the

objective, has prevailed to some extent for at least two centuries: as,

"Your change approaches, when all these delights

Will vanish and deliver \_ye\_ to woe."

--\_Milton\_, P. L., B. iv, l. 367.

[202] Dr. Young has, in one instance, and with very doubtful propriety,

converted this pronoun into the \_second person\_, by addressing himself

thus:--

"O \_thou, myself I\_ abroad our counsels roam

And, like ill husbands, take no care at home."

--\_Love of Fame\_, Sat. II, l. 271.

[203] The fashion of using the plural number for the singular, or \_you\_ for

\_thou\_, has also substituted \_yourself\_ for \_thyself\_, in common discourse.

In poetry, in prayer, in Scripture, and in the familiar language of the

Friends, the original compound is still retained; but the poets use either

term, according to the gravity or the lightness of their style. But

\_yourself\_, like the regal compound \_ourself\_, though apparently of the

singular number, and always applied to one person only, is, in its very

nature, an anomalous and ungrammatical word; for it can neither mean more

than one, nor agree with a pronoun or a verb that is singular. Swift indeed

wrote: "Conversation is but carving; carve for all, \_yourself is

starving\_." But he wrote erroneously, and his meaning is doubtful: probably

he meant, "To carve for all, is, \_to starve yourself\_." The compound

personals, when they are nominatives before the verb, are commonly

associated with the simple; as, "I \_myself\_ also \_am\_ a man."--\_Acts\_, x,

16. "That \_thou thyself art\_ a guide."--\_Rom.\_, ii, 19. "If it stand, as

\_you yourself\_ still \_do\_"--\_Shakspeare\_. "That \_you yourself\_ are much

condemned."--\_Id.\_ And, if the simple pronoun be omitted, the compound

still requires the same form of the verb; as, "Which way I fly is Hell;

\_myself am\_ Hell."--\_Milton\_. The following example is different: "I love

mankind; and in a monarchy myself \_is\_ all that I \_can\_ love."--\_Life of

Schiller, Follen's Pref.\_, p. x. Dr. Follen objects to the British version,

"Myself \_were\_ all that I \_could\_ love;" and, if his own is good English,

the verb \_is\_ agrees with \_all\_, and not with \_myself\_. \_Is\_ is of the

third person: hence, "\_myself is\_" or, "\_yourself is\_," cannot be good

syntax; nor does any one say, "\_yourself art\_," or, "\_ourself am\_," but

rather, "\_yourself are\_:" as, "Captain, \_yourself are\_ the

fittest."--\_Dryden\_. But to call this a "\_concord\_," is to turn a third

part of the language upsidedown; because, by analogy, it confounds, to such

extent at least, the plural number with the singular through all our verbs;

that is, if \_ourself\_ and \_yourself\_ are singulars, and not rather plurals

put for singulars by a figure of syntax. But the words are, in some few

instances, written separately; and then both the meaning and the

construction are different; as, "Your \_self\_ is sacred, profane \_it\_

not."--\_The Dial\_, Vol. i, p. 86. Perhaps the word \_myself\_ above ought

rather to have been two words; thus, "And, in a monarchy, \_my self is all\_

that I can love." The two words here differ in person and case, perhaps

also in gender; and, in the preceding instance, they differ in person,

number, gender, and case. But the compound always follows the person,

number, and gender of its first part, and only the case of its last. The

notion of some grammarians, (to wit, of Wells, and the sixty-eight others

whom he cites for it,) that \_you\_ and \_your\_ are actually made singular by

usage, is demonstrably untrue. Do \_we, our\_, and \_us\_, become actually

singular, as often as a king or a critic applies them to himself? No: for

nothing can be worse syntax than, \_we am, we was\_, or \_you was\_, though

some contend for this last construction.

[204] \_Whose\_ is sometimes used as the possessive case of \_which\_; as, "A

religion \_whose\_ origin is divine."--\_Blair\_. See Observations 4th and 5th,

on the Classes of Pronouns.

[205] After \_but\_, as in the following sentence, the double relative \_what\_

is sometimes applied to persons; and it is here equivalent \_to the friend

who\_:--

"Lorenzo, pride repress; nor hope to find

A friend, but \_what\_ has found a friend in thee."--\_Young\_.

[206] Of all these compounds. L. Murray very improperly says, "They are

\_seldom used\_, in modern style."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 54; also \_Fisk's\_, p.

65. None of them are yet obsolete, though the shorter forms seem to be now

generally preferred. The following suggestion of Cobbett's is erroneous;

because it implies that the shorter forms are innovations and faults; and

because the author carelessly speaks of them as \_one thing only\_: "We

\_sometimes\_ omit the \_so\_, and say, \_whoever, whomever, whatever\_, and even

\_whosever\_. \_It is\_ a mere \_abbreviation\_. The \_so\_ is understood: and, it

is best not to omit to write it."--\_Eng. Gram.\_, ¶ 209. R. C. Smith

dismisses the compound relatives with three lines; and these he closes with

the following notion: "\_They are not often used!\_"--\_New Gram.\_, p. 61.

[207] Sanborn, with strange ignorance of the history of those words,

teaches thus: "\_Mine\_ and \_thine\_ appear to have been formed from \_my\_ and

\_thy\_ by changing \_y\_ into \_i\_ and adding \_n\_, and then subjoining \_e\_ to

retain the long sound of the vowel."--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 92. This false

notion, as we learn from his guillemets and a remark in his preface, he

borrowed from "Parkhurst's Systematic Introduction." Dr. Lowth says, "The

Saxon \_Ic\_ hath the possessive case \_Min; Thu\_, possessive \_Thin; He\_,

possessive \_His\_: From which our possessive cases of the same pronouns are

taken \_without alteration\_."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 23.

[208] Latham, with a singularity quite remarkable, reverses this doctrine

in respect to the two classes, and says, "\_My, thy, our, your, her\_, and

\_their\_ signify possession, because they are possessive cases. \* \* \* \_Mine,

thine, ours, yours, hers, theirs\_, signify possession for a different

reason. They partake of the nature of \_adjectives\_, and in all the allied

languages are declined as such."--\_Latham's Elementary E. Gram.\_, p. 94.

Weld, like Wells, with a few more whose doctrine will be criticised

by-and-by, adopting here an other odd opinion, takes the former class only

for forms of the possessive case; the latter he disposes of thus: "\_Ours,

yours, theirs, hers\_, and generally \_mine\_ and \_thine\_, are POSSESSIVE

PRONOUNS, used in either the \_nominative or objective\_ case,"--\_Weld's

Gram., Improved Ed.\_, p. 68. Not only denying the possessives with ellipsis

to be instances of the possessive case, but stupidly mistaking at once two

dissimilar things for a third which is totally unlike to either,--i. e.,

assuming together for \_substitution\_ both an \_ellipsis\_ of one word and an

\_equivalence\_ to two--(as some others more learned have very strangely

done--) he supposes all this class of pronouns to have forsaken every

property of their legitimate roots,--their person, their number, their

gender, their case,--and to have assumed other properties, such as belong

to "the thing possessed!" In the example, "\_Your\_ house is on the plain,

\_ours\_ is on the hill," he supposes \_ours\_ to be of the third person,

singular number, neuter gender, and nominative case; and not, as it plainly

is, of the first person, plural number, masculine gender, and possessive

case. Such parsing should condemn forever any book that teaches it.

[209] This word should have been \_numerals\_, for two or three reasons. The

author speaks of the \_numeral adjectives\_; and to say "the \_numbers\_ must

agree in \_number\_ with their substantives," is tautological--G. Brown.

[210] Cardell assails the common doctrine of the grammarians on this point,

with similar assertions, and still more earnestness. See his \_Essay on

Language\_, p. 80. The notion that "these \_pretended possessives\_ [are]

uniformly used as \_nominatives\_ or \_objectives\_"--though demonstrably

absurd, and confessedly repugnant to what is "\_usually considered\_" to be

their true explanation--was adopted by Jaudon, in 1812; and has recently

found several new advocates; among whom are Davis, Felch, Goodenow, Hazen,

Smart, Weld, and Wells. There is, however, much diversity, as well as much

inaccuracy, in their several expositions of the matter. Smart inserts in

his declensions, as the only forms of the possessive case, the words of

which he afterwards speaks thus: "The following \_possessive cases\_ of the

personal pronouns, (See page vii,) \_must be called\_ PERSONAL PRONOUNS

POSSESSIVE: \_mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs\_. For these words

are always used \_substantively\_, so as to include the meaning of some noun

in the third person singular or plural, in the nominative or the objective

ease. Thus, if \_we are speaking\_ of books, and say [,] '\_Mine\_ are here,'

\_mine\_ means \_my books\_, [Fist] and it must be deemed a personal pronoun

\_possessive\_ in the \_third\_ person \_plural\_, and \_nominative\_ to the verb

\_are\_."--\_Smart's Accidence\_, p. xxii. If to say, these "\_possessive cases\_

must be called a \_class\_ of \_pronouns\_, used \_substantively\_, and deemed

\_nominatives\_ or \_objectives\_," is not absurd, then nothing can be. Nor is

any thing in grammar more certain, than that the pronoun "\_mine\_" can only

be used by the speaker or writer, to denote himself or herself as the owner

of something. It is therefore of the \_first\_ person, \_singular\_ number,

\_masculine\_ (or feminine) gender, and \_possessive case\_; being governed by

the name of the thing or things possessed. This name is, of course, always

\_known\_; and, if known and not expressed, it is "understood." For sometimes

a word is repeated to the mind, and clearly understood, where "it cannot

properly be" expressed; as, "And he came and sought \_fruit\_ thereon, and

found \_none\_."--\_Luke\_, xiii, 6. Wells opposes this doctrine, citing a

passage from Webster, as above, and also imitating his argument. This

author acknowledges three classes of pronouns--"personal, relative, and

interrogative;" and then, excluding these words from their true place among

personals of the possessive case, absurdly makes them a \_supernumerary

class of possessive nominatives\_ or \_objectives\_! "\_Mine, thine, his\_,

\_ours, yours\_, and \_theirs\_, are POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, used in construction

either as \_nominatives\_ or \_objectives\_; as, 'Your pleasures are past,

\_mine\_ are to come.' Here the word \_mine\_, which is used as a substitute

for \_my pleasures\_, is \_the subject\_ of the verb \_are\_."--\_Wells's School

Gram.\_, p. 71; 113 Ed., p. 78. Now the question to find the subject of the

verb \_are\_, is, "My \_what\_ are to come?" Ans. "\_pleasures\_." But the author

proceeds to argue in a note thus: "\_Mine, thine\_, etc. are often parsed as

pronouns in the possessive case, \_and governed by nouns understood.\_ Thus,

in the sentence, 'This book is mine,' the \_word mine\_ is said to \_possess

book\_. That the word \_book\_ is \_not here understood\_, is obvious from the

fact, that, when it is supplied, the phrase becomes not '\_mine\_ book,' but

'\_my\_ book,' the pronoun being changed from \_mine\_ to \_my\_; so that we are

made, by this practice, to parse \_mine\_ as \_possessing a word\_ understood,

before which it cannot properly be used. The word \_mine\_ is here evidently

employed as a substitute for the two words, \_my\_ and \_book\_."--\_Wells,

ibid.\_ This note appears to me to be, in many respects, faulty. In the

first place, its whole design was, to disprove what is true. For, bating

the mere difference of \_person\_, the author's example above is equal to

this: "Your pleasures are past, \_W. H. Wells's\_ are to come." The ellipsis

of "\_pleasures\_", is evident in both. But \_ellipsis\_ is not \_substitution\_;

no, nor is \_equivalence. Mine\_, when it suggests an ellipsis of the

governing noun, is \_equivalent\_ to \_my and that noun\_; but certainly, not

"\_a substitute for the two words\_." It is a substitute, or pronoun, for the

\_name of the speaker or writer\_; and so is \_my\_; both forms representing,

and always agreeing with, that name or person only. No possessive agrees

with what governs it; but every pronoun ought to agree with that for which

it stands. Secondly, if the note above cited does not aver, in its first

sentence, that the pronouns in question \_are "governed by nouns

understood\_," it comes much nearer to saying this, than a writer should who

meant to deny it. In the third place, the example, "This book is mine," is

not a good one for its purpose. The word "\_mine\_" may be regularly parsed

as a possessive, without supposing any ellipsis; for "\_book\_," the name of

the thing possessed, is given, and in obvious connexion with it. And

further, the matter affirmed is \_ownership\_, requiring \_different cases\_;

and not the \_identity\_ of something under different names, which must be

put in the \_same case\_. In the fourth place, to mistake regimen for

possession, and thence speak of \_one word "as possessing" an other\_, a mode

of expression occurring twice in the foregoing note, is not only

unscholarlike, but positively absurd. But, possibly, the author may have

meant by it, to ridicule the choice phraseology of the following Rule: "A

noun or pronoun in the possessive case, is governed by \_the noun it

possesses\_."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 181; \_Frazee's\_, 1844, p. 25.

[211] In respect to the \_numbers\_, the following text is an uncouth

exception: "Pass \_ye\_ away, \_thou\_ inhabitant of Saphir."--\_Micah\_, i, 11.

The singular and the plural are here strangely confounded. Perhaps the

reading should be, "Pass \_thou\_ away, \_O\_ inhabitant of Saphir." Nor is the

Bible free from \_abrupt transitions\_ from one number to the other, or from

one person to an other, which are neither agreeable nor strictly

grammatical; as, "Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, \_ye which

[who]\_ are spiritual, restore such \_an [a]\_ one in the spirit of meekness;

considering \_thyself\_, lest \_thou\_ also be tempted."--\_Gal.\_, vi, 1. "\_Ye\_

that put far away the evil day, and cause the seat of violence to come

near; that lie upon beds of ivory, and stretch \_themselves\_ upon \_their\_

couches," &c--\_Amos\_, vi, 9.

[212] "The solemn style is used, chiefly, in the Bible and in prayer. The

Society of Friends \_retain it in common parlance\_. It consists in using

\_thou\_ in the singular number, and \_ye\_ in the plural, instead of using

\_you\_ in both numbers as in the familiar style. \* \* \* The third person

singular [of verbs] ends with \_th\_ or \_eth\_, which affects only the present

indicative, and \_hath\_ of the perfect. The second person, singular, ends

with \_st, est\_, or \_t\_ only."--\_Sanborn's Gram.\_, p. 58. "In [the] solemn

and poetic styles, \_mine, thine\_, and \_thy\_, are used; and THIS \_is the

style adopted by the Friends' society\_. In common discourse it appears very

stiff and affected."--\_Bartlett's C. S. Man'l\_, Part II, p. 72.

[213] "And of the History of his being \_tost\_ in a Blanket, \_he saith\_,

'Here, Scriblerus, \_thou lessest\_ in what \_thou assertest\_ concerning the

blanket: it was not a blanket, but a rug.--Curlliad, p. 25."--\_Notes to

Pope's Dunciad\_, B. ii, verse 3. A vulgar idea solemnly expressed, is

ludicrous. Uttered in familiar terms, it is simply vulgar: as, "\_You lie\_,

Scriblerus, in what \_you say\_ about the blanket."

[214] "Notwithstanding these verbal mistakes, the Bible, for the size of

it, is the most accurate grammatical composition that we have in the

English language. The authority of several eminent grammarians might be

adduced in support of this assertion, but it may be sufficient to mention

only that of Dr. Lowth, who says, 'The present translation of the Bible, is

\_the best standard\_ of the English language.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p.

166. I revere the Bible vastly too much to be pleased with an imitation of

its peculiar style, in any man's ordinary speech or writing.--G. BROWN.

[215] "\_Ye\_, except in the solemn style, is \_obsolete\_; but it is used in

the language of tragedy, to express contempt: as, 'When \_ye\_ shall know

what Margaret knows, \_ye\_ may not be so thankful.' Franklin."--\_W. Allen's

Gram.\_, p. 57. "The second person plural had \_formerly\_ YE \_both in the

nominative and the objective.\_ This form is \_now obsolete in the

objective\_, and nearly obsolete in the nominative."--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 55.

[216] So has Milton:--

"To waste it all myself, and leave \_ye\_ none!

So disinherited how would \_you\_ bless me!"--\_Par. Lost\_, B. x, l. 820.

[217] "The word \_what\_ is a \_compound of two specifying adjectives\_, each,

of course, referring to a noun, expressed or understood. It is equivalent

to \_the which\_; \_that which\_; \_which that\_; or \_that that\_; used also in

the plural. At different periods, and in different authors, it appears in

the varying forms, \_tha qua, qua tha, qu'tha, quthat, quhat\_, \_hwat\_, and

\_what\_. This word is found in other forms; but it is needless to multiply

them."--\_Cardell's Essay on Language\_, p. 86.

[218] This author's distribution of the pronouns, of which I have taken

some notice in Obs. 10th above, is remarkable for its inconsistencies and

absurdities. First he avers, "Pronouns are \_generally\_ divided into three

kinds, the \_Personal\_, the \_Adjective\_, and the \_Relative\_ pronouns. \_They

are all known by the lists.\_"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 96. These short

sentences are far from being accurate, clear, or true. He should have made

the several kinds known, by a good definition of each. But this was work to

which he did not find himself adequate. And if we look to his \_lists\_ for

the particular words of each kind, we shall get little satisfaction. Of the

\_Personal\_ pronouns, he says, "There are \_five\_ of them; \_I, thou, he\_,

\_she, it\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 97. These are \_simple\_ words, and in their

declension they are properly multiplied to forty. (See \_Ib.\_, p. 99.) Next

he seems to double the number, thus: "When \_self\_ is added to the personal

pronouns, as himself, myself, itself, themselves, &c. \_they\_ are called

\_Compound Personal Pronouns\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 99. Then he asserts that \_mine\_,

\_thine, his, hers, ours, yours\_, and \_theirs\_, are compounds of \_ne\_ or \_s\_

with \_mi, thi, hi\_, &c.: that their application invariably "gives them a

compound character:" and that, "They may, therefore, be properly

denominated \_Compound Personal Pronouns\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 101. Next he comes to

his \_Adjective\_ pronouns; and, after proving that he has grossly misplaced

and misnamed every one of them, he gives his lists of the three kinds of

these. His \_Relative\_ pronouns are \_who, which\_, and \_that\_. "\_What\_ is

generally a \_compound\_ relative."--\_Ib.\_, p. 111. The compounds of \_who,

which, and\_ \_what\_, with \_ever\_ or \_soever\_, he calls "compound \_pronouns\_,

but not compound relatives."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 110 and 112. Lastly he discovers,

that, "Truth and simplicity" have been shamefully neglected in this his

third section of pronouns; that, "Of the words called '\_relatives\_,' \_who\_

only is a pronoun, and this is strictly \_personal\_;" that, "It ought to be

classed with the personal pronouns;" and that, "\_Which, that\_, and \_what\_,

are always adjectives. They \_never stand for\_, but always \_belong to\_

nouns, either expressed or implied."--\_Ib.\_, p. 114. What admirable

teachings are these!

[219] "It is now proper to give some \_examples of the manner\_ in which the

learners should be exercised, in order to improve their knowledge, and to

render it familiar to them. This is called \_parsing\_. The nature of the

subject, as well as the adaptation of it to learners, requires \_that it

should be divided\_ into two parts: viz. parsing, as it respects etymology

alone; and parsing, as it respects both etymology and syntax."--\_Murray's

Gram., Octavo\_, Vol. 1, p. 225. How very little real respect for the

opinions of Murray, has been entertained by these self-seeking magnifiers

and modifiers of his work!

What Murray calls "\_Syntactical Parsing\_" is sometimes called

"\_Construing\_," especially by those who will have \_Parsing\_ to be nothing

more than an etymological exercise. A late author says, "The practice of

\_Construing\_ differs from that of parsing, in the extension of its objects.

Parsing merely indicates the parts of speech and their accidents, but

construing searches for and points out their syntactical relations."--\_D.

Blair's Gram.\_, p. 49.

Here the distinction which Murray judged to be necessary, is still more

strongly marked and insisted on. And though I see no utility in restricting

the word \_Parsing\_ to a mere description of the parts of speech with their

accidents, and no impropriety in calling the latter branch of the exercise

"\_Syntactical Parsing\_;" I cannot but think there is such a necessity for

the division, as forms a very grave argument against those tangled schemes

of grammar which do not admit of it. Blair is grossly inconsistent with

himself. For, after drawing his distinction between Parsing and Construing,

as above, he takes no further notice of the latter; but, having filled up

seven pages with his most wretched mode of "PARSING," adds, in an emphatic

note: "\_The Teacher should direct the Pupil to\_ CONSTRUE, IN THE SAME

MANNER, \_any passage from\_ MY CLASS-BOOK, \_or other Work, at the rate of

three or four lines per day\_."--\_D. Blair's Gram.\_, p. 56.

[220] This is a comment upon the following quotation from Milton, where

\_Hers\_ for \_His\_ would be a gross barbarism:--

"Should intermitted vengeance arm again

\_His\_ red right hand to plague us."--\_Par. Lost\_, B. ii, l. 174.

[221] The Imperfect Participle, \_when simple\_, or when taken as one of the

four principal terms constituting the verb or springing from it, ends

\_always\_ in \_ing\_. But, in a subsequent chapter, I include under this name

the first participle of the passive verb; and this, in our language, is

always a compound, and the latter term of it does not end in \_ing\_: as, "In

all languages, indeed, examples are to be found of adjectives \_being

compared\_ whose signification admits neither intension nor

remission."--CROMBIE, \_on Etym. and Syntax\_, p. 106. According to most of

our writers on English grammar, the Present or Imperfect Participle Passive

is \_always\_ a compound of \_being\_ and the form of the perfect participle:

as, \_being loved, being seen\_. But some represent it to have \_two\_ forms,

one of which is always simple; as, "PERFECT PASSIVE, obeyed \_or\_ being

obeyed."--\_Sanborn's Analytical Gram.\_, p. 55. "Loved \_or\_ being

loved."--\_Parkhurst's Grammar for Beginners\_, p. 11; \_Greene's Analysis\_,

p. 225. "Loved, or, \_being\_ loved."--\_Clark's Practical Gram.\_, p. 83. I

here concur with the majority, who in no instance take the participle in

\_ed\_ or \_en\_, alone, for the Present or Imperfect.

[222] In the following example, "\_he\_" and "\_she\_" are converted into

verbs; as "\_thou\_" sometimes is, in the writings of Shakspeare, and others:

"Is it not an impulse of selfishness or of a depraved nature to \_he\_ and

\_she\_ inanimate objects?"--\_Cutler's English Gram.\_, p. 16. Dr. Bullions,

who has heretofore published several of the worst definitions of the verb

anywhere extant, has now perhaps one of the best: "A VERB is a word used to

express the \_act, being\_, or \_state\_ of its subject. "--\_Analyt. & Pract.

Gram.\_, p. 59. Yet it is not very obvious, that "\_he\_" and "\_she\_" are here

verbs under this definition. Dr. Mandeville, perceiving that "the usual

definitions of the verb are extremely defective," not long ago helped the

schools to the following: "A verb is a word which describes \_the state or

condition\_ of a \_noun or pronoun\_ in relation to \_time\_,"--\_Course of

Reading\_, p. 24. Now it is plain, that under this definition too, Cutler's

infinitives, "to \_he\_ and \_she\_" cannot be verbs; and, in my opinion, very

small is the number of words that can be. No verb "describes the state or

condition of a \_noun or pronoun\_," except in some form of \_parsing\_; nor,

even in this sort of exercise, do I find any verb "which describes the

state or condition" of such a word "\_in relation to time\_." Hence, I can

make of this definition nothing but nonsense. Against my definition of a

verb, this author urges, that it "excludes neuter verbs, expresses \_no

relation\_ to subject or time, and uses terms in a vague or contradictory

sense."--\_Ib.\_, p. 25. The first and the last of these three allegations do

not appear to be well founded; and the second, if infinitives are verbs,

indicates an excellence rather than a fault. The definition assumes that

the mind as well as the body may "\_act\_" or "\_be acted upon\_." For this

cause, Dr. Mandeville, who cannot conceive that "\_to be loved\_" is in any

wise "\_to be acted upon\_," pronounces it "fatally defective!" His argument

is a little web of sophistry, not worth unweaving here. One of the best

scholars cited in the reverend Doctor's book says, "Of mental powers we

have \_no conception\_, but as certain capacities of \_intellectual action\_."

And again, he asks, "Who can be conscious of \_judgment, memory\_, and

\_reflection\_, and doubt that man was made \_to act\_!"--EVERETT: \_Course of

Reading\_, p. 320.

[223] Dr. Johnson says, "English verbs are active, as \_I love\_; or neuter,

as \_I languish\_. The neuters are formed like the actives. The passive voice

is formed by joining the participle preterit to the substantive verb, as \_I

am loved\_." He also observes, "Most verbs signifying \_action\_ may likewise

signify \_condition\_ or \_habit\_, and become \_neuters\_; as, \_I love\_, I am in

love; \_I strike\_, I am now striking."--\_Gram. with his Quarto Dict.\_, p. 7.

[224] The doctrine here referred to, appears in both works in the very same

words: to wit, "English Verbs are either Active, Passive, or Neuter. There

are two sorts of Active Verbs, viz. \_active-transitive\_ and

\_active-intransitive\_ Verbs."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 153; \_Buchanan's\_, 56.

Buchanan was in this case the copyist.

[225] "The distinction between verbs absolutely neuter, as \_to sleep\_, and

verbs active intransitive, as \_to walk\_, though \_founded\_ in NATURE \_and\_

TRUTH, is of little use in grammar. Indeed it would rather perplex than

assist the learner; for the difference between verbs active and [verbs]

neuter, as transitive and intransitive, is easy and obvious; but the

difference between verbs absolutely neuter and [those which are]

intransitively active is not always clear. But however these latter may

differ in nature, the construction of them both is the same; and grammar is

not so much concerned with their \_real\_, as with their \_grammatical\_

properties."--\_Lowth's Gram\_; p. 30. But are not "TRUTH, NATURE, and

REALITY," worthy to be preferred to any instructions that contradict them?

If they are, the good doctor and his worthy copyist have here made an ill

choice. It is not only for the sake of these properties, that I retain a

distinction which these grammarians, and others above named, reject; but

for the sake of avoiding the untruth, confusion, and absurdity, into which

one must fall by calling all active-intransitive verbs \_neuter\_. The

distinction of active verbs, as being either transitive or intransitive, is

also necessarily retained. But the suggestion, that this distinction is

more "\_easy and obvious\_" than the other, is altogether an error. The

really neuter verbs, being very few, occasion little or no difficulty. But

very many active verbs, perhaps a large majority, are sometimes used

intransitively; and of those which our lexicographers record as being

always transitive, not a few are occasionally found without any object,

either expressed or clearly suggested: as, "He \_convinces\_, but he does not

\_elevate nor animate\_,"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 242. "The child \_imitates\_,

and \_commits\_ to memory; whilst the riper age \_digests\_, and thinks

independently."--\_Dr. Lieber, Lit. Conv.\_, p. 313. Of examples like these,

three different views maybe taken; and it is \_very questionable\_ which is

the right one: \_First\_, that these verbs are here \_intransitive\_, though

they are not commonly so; \_Second\_, that they are \_transitive\_, and have

objects understood; \_Third\_, that they are used \_improperly\_, because no

determinate objects are given them. If we assume the second opinion or the

last, the full or the correct expressions may be these: "He convinces \_the

judgement\_, but he does not elevate \_the imagination\_, or animate \_the

feelings\_."--"The child imitates \_others\_, and commits \_words\_ to memory;

whilst the riper age digests \_facts or truths\_, and thinks independently."

These verbs are here transitive, but are they so above? Those grammarians

who, supposing no other distinction important, make of verbs but two

classes, transitive and intransitive, are still as much at variance, and as

much at fault, as others, (and often more so,) when they come to draw the

line of this distinction. To "\_require\_" an objective, to "\_govern\_" an

objective, to "\_admit\_" an objective, and to "\_have\_" an objective, are

criterions considerably different. Then it is questionable, whether

infinitives, participles, or sentences, must or can have the effect of

objectives. One author says, "If a verb has any objective case \_expressed\_,

it is transitive: if it has none, it is intransitive. \_Verbs which\_ appear

transitive in their nature, may frequently be used intransitively."--

\_Chandler's Old Gram.\_, p. 32; his \_Common School Gram.\_, p. 48. An other

says, "A transitive verb \_asserts\_ action which does or can, terminate on

some object."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 29. An other avers, "There are two

classes of verbs \_perfectly distinct\_ from each other, viz: Those which

\_do\_, and those which \_do not\_, govern an objective case." And his

definition is, "A \_Transitive Verb\_ is one which \_requires\_ an \_objective

case\_ after it."--\_Hart's E. Gram.\_, p. 63. Both Frazee and Hart reckon the

\_passive\_ verb \_transitive!\_ And the latter teaches, that, "\_Transitive\_

verbs in English, are sometimes used \_without an objective case\_; as, The

apple \_tastes\_ sweet!"--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p, 73.

[226] In the hands of some gentlemen, "the Principles of Latin Grammar,"

and "the Principles of English Grammar,"--are equally pliable, or

changeable; and, what is very remarkable, a comparison of different

editions will show, that the fundamental doctrines of a whole "Series of

Grammars, English, Latin, and Greek," may so change in a single lustrum, as

to rest upon authorities altogether different. Dr. Bullions's grammars, a

few years ago, like those of his great oracles, Adam, Murray, and Lennie,

divided verbs into "three kinds, \_Active, Passive\_, and \_Neuter\_." Now they

divide them into two only, "\_Transitive\_ and \_Intransitive\_;" and absurdly

aver, that "\_Verbs in the passive form are really transitive as in the

active form\_."--\_Prin. of E. Gram.\_, 1843, p. 200. Now, as if no verb could

be plural, and no transitive act could be future, conditional, in progress,

or left undone, they define thus: "A \_Transitive\_ verb expresses an \_act

done\_ by one person or thing to another."--\_Ib.\_, p. 29; \_Analyt. and

Pract. Gram.\_, 60; \_Latin Gram.\_, 77. Now, the division which so lately as

1842 was pronounced by the Doctor to be "more useful than any other," and

advantageously accordant with "most dictionaries of the English language,"

(see his \_Fourth Edition\_, p. 30,) is wholly rejected from this notable

"\_Series\_." Now, the "\_vexed question\_" about "the classification of

verbs," which, at some revision still later, drew from this author whole

pages of weak arguments for his faulty \_changes\_, is complacently supposed

to have been \_well settled\_ in his favour! Of this matter, now, in 1849, he

speaks thus: "The division of verbs into transitive and intransitive has

been so generally adopted and approved by the best grammarians, that any

discussion of the subject is now unnecessary."--\_Bullions's Analyt. and

Pract. Gram.\_, p. 59.

[227] This late writer seems to have published his doctrine on this point

as a \_novelty\_; and several teachers ignorantly received and admired it as

such: I have briefly shown, in the Introduction to this work, how easily

they were deceived. "By this, that Question may be resolv'd, whether every

Verb not Passive governs always an Accusative, at least understood: '\_Tis

the Opinion of some very able\_ GRAMMARIANS, but for \_our\_ Parts \_we\_ don't

think it."--\_Grammar published by John Brightland\_, 7th Ed., London, 1746,

p. 115.

[228] Upon this point, Richard Johnson cites and criticises Lily's system

thus: "'A Verb Neuter endeth in \_o\_ or \_m\_, and cannot take \_r\_ to make

\_him\_ a Passive; as, \_Curro\_, I run; \_Sum\_, I am.'--\_Grammar, Eng\_. p. 13.

This Definition, is founded upon the Notion abovementioned, viz. That none

but Transitives are Verbs Active, which is contrary to the reason of

Things, and the common sense of Mankind. And what can shock a Child more,

of any Ingenuity, than to be told, That \_Ambuto\_ and \_Curro\_ are Verbs

Neuter; that is, to speak according to the common Apprehensions of Mankind,

that they signifie neither to do, nor suffer."--\_Johnson's Grammatical

Commentaries\_, 8vo, London, 1706, p. 273.

[229] Murray says, "\_Mood\_ or \_Mode\_ is a particular form of the verb,

showing the manner in which the being, action, or passion is

represented."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 63. By many grammarians, the term \_Mode\_

is preferred to \_Mood\_; but the latter is, for this use, the more

distinctive, and by far the more common word. In some treatises on grammar,

as well as in books of logic, certain \_parts of speech\_, as \_adjectives\_

and \_adverbs\_, are called \_Modes\_, because they qualify or modify other

terms. E.g., "Thus all the parts of speech are reducible to four; viz.,

\_Names, Verbs, Modes, Connectives\_."--\_Enclytica, or Universal Gram.\_, p.

8. "\_Modes\_ are naturally divided, by their attribution to names or verbs,

into \_adnames\_ and \_adverbs\_."--\_Ibid.\_, p. 24. After making this

application of the name \_modes\_, was it not improper for the learned author

to call the moods also "\_modes\_?"

[230] "We have, in English, no genuine subjunctive mood, except the

preterimperfect, if I \_were\_, if thou \_wert\_, &c. of the verb \_to be\_. [See

Notes and Observations on the Third Example of Conjugation, in this

chapter.] The phrase termed \_the subjunctive mood\_, is elliptical; \_shall,

may\_, &c. being understood: as, 'Though hand (shall) join in hand, the

wicked shall not be unpunished.' 'If it (may) be possible, live peaceably

with all.' Scriptures."--\_Rev. W. Allen's Gram.\_, p. 61. Such expressions

as, "If thou \_do love\_, If he \_do love\_," appear to disprove this doctrine.

[See Notes and Remarks on the Subjunctive of the First Example conjugated

below.]

[231] "Mr. Murray has changed his opinion, as often as Laban changed

Jacob's wages. In the edition we print from, we find \_shall\_ and \_will\_

used in each person of the \_first\_ and \_second\_ future tenses of the

subjunctive, but he now states that in the second future tense, \_shalt,

shall\_, should be used instead of \_wilt, will\_. Perhaps this is \_the only

improvement\_ he has made in his Grammar since 1796."--\_Rev. T. Smith's

Edition of Lindley Murray's English Grammar\_, p. 67.

[232] Notwithstanding this expression, Murray did not teach, as do many

modern grammarians, that \_inflected\_ forms of the present tense, such as,

"If he \_thinks\_ so," "Unless he \_deceives\_ me," "If thou \_lov'st\_ me," are

of the subjunctive mood; though, when he rejected his changeless forms of

the other tenses of this mood, he \_improperly\_ put as many indicatives in

their places. With him, and his numerous followers, the ending determines

the mood in one tense, while the conjunction controls it in the other five!

In his syntax, he argues, "that in cases wherein contingency and futurity

do not occur, it is not proper to turn the verb from its signification of

present time, \_nor to vary\_ [he means, \_or to forbear to change\_] its form

or termination. [Fist] \_The verb would then be in the indicative mood,

whatever conjunctions might attend it\_."--\_L. Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 208:

12mo, p. 167.

[233] Some grammarians--(among whom are Lowth, Dalton, Cobbett, and

Cardell--) recognize only three tenses, or "\_times\_," of English verbs;

namely, \_the present, the past\_, and \_the future\_. A few, like Latham and

Child, denying all the compound tenses to be tenses, acknowledge only the

first two, \_the present\_ and \_the past\_; and these they will have to

consist only of the simple or radical verb and the simple preterit. Some

others, who acknowledge six tenses, such as are above described, have

endeavoured of late to \_change the names\_ of a majority of them; though

with too little agreement among themselves, as may be seen by the following

citations: (1.) "We have six tenses; three, the \_Present, Past\_, and

\_Future\_, to represent time in a general way; and three, the \_Present

Perfect, Past Perfect\_, and \_Future Perfect\_, to represent the precise time

of \_finishing\_ the action."--\_Perley's Gram.\_, 1834, p. 25. (2.) "There are

six tenses; the \_present\_, the \_past\_, the \_present-perfect\_, the

\_past-perfect\_, the \_future\_, and the \_future-perfect\_."--\_Hiley's Gram.\_,

1840, p. 28. (3.) "There are six tenses; the \_Present\_ and \_Present

Perfect\_, the \_Past\_ and \_Past Perfect\_, and the \_Future\_ and \_Future

Perfect\_."--\_Farnum's Gram.\_, 1842, p. 34. (4.) "The names of the tenses

will then be, \_Present, Present Perfect; Past, Past Perfect; Future, Future

Perfect\_. They are \_usually\_ named as follows: \_Present, Perfect,

Imperfect, Pluperfect, Future, Second Future\_."--\_N. Butler's Gram\_, 1845,

p. 69. (5.) "We have six tenses;--the \_present\_, the \_past\_, the \_future\_,

the \_present perfect\_, the \_past perfect\_, and the \_future

perfect\_."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1846. p. 82. (6.) "The tenses in

English are six--the \_Present\_, the \_Present-perfect\_, the \_Past\_, the

\_Past-perfect\_, the \_Future\_, and the \_Future-perfect\_."--\_Bullions's

Gram.\_, 1849. p. 71. (7.) "Verbs have \_Six Tenses\_, called the \_Present\_,

the \_Perfect-Present\_, the \_Past\_, the \_Perfect-Past\_, the \_Future\_, and

the \_Perfect-Future\_."--\_Spencer's Gram.\_, 1852, p. 53. (8.) "There are six

tenses: the \_present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect\_, and

\_future perfect\_."--\_Covell's Gram.\_, 1853, p. 62. (9.) "The tenses

are--the \_present\_, the \_present perfect\_; the \_past\_, the \_past perfect\_;

the \_future\_, the \_future perfect\_."--\_S. S. Greene's Gram.\_, 1853, p. 65.

(10.) "There are six tenses; \_one present\_, and \_but one, three past\_, and

\_two future\_." They are named thus: "\_The Present, the First Past, the

Second Past, the Third Past, the First Future, the Second Future\_."--"For

the sake of symmetry, to call \_two\_ of them \_present\_, and \_two\_ only past,

while \_one\_ only is \_present\_, and \_three\_ are \_past\_ tenses, is to

sacrifice truth to beauty."--\_Pinneo's Gram.\_, 1853, pp. 69 and 70. "The

old names, \_imperfect, perfect\_, and \_pluperfect\_," which, in 1845, Butler

justly admitted to be the \_usual\_ names of the three past tenses. Dr.

Pinneo, who dates his copy-right from 1850, most unwarrantably declares to

be "\_now generally discarded\_!"--\_Analytical Gram.\_, p. 76; \_Same Revised\_,

p. 81. These terms, still predominant in use, he strangely supposes to have

been suddenly superseded by others which are no better, if so good:

imagining that the scheme which Perley or Hiley introduced, of "\_two

present, two past\_, and \_two future\_ tenses,"--a scheme which, he says,

"has no foundation in truth, and is therefore to be rejected,"--had

prepared the way for the above-cited innovation of his own, which merely

presents the old ideas under new terms, or terms partly new, and wholly

unlikely to prevail. William Ward, one of the ablest of our old

grammarians, rejecting in 1765 the two terms \_imperfect\_ and \_perfect\_,

adopted others which resemble Pinneo's; but few, if any, have since named

the tenses as he did, thus: "\_The Present, the First Preterite, the Second

Preterite, the Pluperfect, the First Future, the Second Future\_."--\_Ward's

Gram.\_, p. 47.

[234] "The infinitive mood, as '\_to shine\_,' may be called the name of the

verb; it carries \_neither time nor affirmation\_; but simply expresses that

attribute, action, or state of things, which is to be the subject of the

other moods and tenses."--\_Blair's Lectures\_, p. 81. By the word

"\_subject\_" the Doctor does not here mean the \_nominative to\_ the other

moods and tenses, but the \_material of\_ them, or that which is formed into

them.

[235] Some grammarians absurdly deny that persons and numbers are

properties of verbs at all: not indeed because our verbs have so few

inflections, or because these authors wish to discard the little

distinction that remains; but because they have some fanciful conception,

that these properties cannot pertain to a verb. Yet, when they come to

their syntax, they all forget, that if a verb has no person and number, it

cannot agree with a nominative in these respects. Thus KIRKHAM: "\_Person\_,

strictly speaking, is a quality that belongs \_not to verbs\_, but to nouns

and pronouns. We say, however, that the verb \_must agree\_ with its

nominative in \_person\_, as well as in number."--\_Gram. in Familiar Lect.\_,

p. 46. So J. W. WRIGHT: "In truth, number and person \_are not properties of

verbs\_. Mr. Murray grants that, 'in philosophical strictness, both number

and person might (say, \_may\_) be excluded from every verb, as they are, in

fact, the properties of substantives, not a part of the essence of the

verb.'"--\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 68. This author's rule of syntax for

verbs, makes them agree with their nominatives, not in person and number,

but in \_termination\_, or else in \_nobody knows what\_: "A verb \_must vary

its terminations\_, so as to agree with the nominative to which it is

connected."--\_Ib.\_, p. 168. But Murray's rule is, "A verb must agree with

its nominative case in \_number and person\_:" and this doctrine is directly

repugnant to that interpretation of his words above, by which these

gentlemen have so egregiously misled themselves and others. Undoubtedly,

both the numbers and the persons of all English verbs might be abolished,

and the language would still be intelligible. But while any such

distinctions remain, and the verb is actually modified to form them, they

belong as properly to this part of speech as they can to any other. De Sacy

says, "The distinction of number \_occurs\_ in the verb;" and then adds, "yet

this distinction does not properly \_belong to\_ the verb, as it signifies

nothing which can be numbered."--\_Fosdick's Version\_, p. 64. This deceptive

reason is only a new form of the blunder which I have once exposed, of

confounding the numbers in grammar with numbers in arithmetic. J. M.

Putnam, after repeating what is above cited from Murray, adds: "The terms

\_number\_ and \_person\_, as applied to the verb are \_figurative\_. The

properties which belong to one thing, for convenience' sake are ascribed to

another."--\_Gram.\_, p. 49. Kirkham imagines, if ten men \_build\_ a house, or

\_navigate\_ a ship round the world, they perform just "\_ten actions\_," and

no more. "Common sense teaches you," says he, "that \_there must be as many

actions as there are actors\_; and that the verb when it has no form or

ending to show it, is as strictly plural, as when it has. So, in the

phrase, '\_We walk\_,' the verb \_walk\_ is [of the] first person, because it

expresses the \_actions\_ performed by the \_speakers\_. The verb, then, when

correctly written, always agrees, \_in sense\_, with its nominative in number

and person."--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 47. It seems to me, that these authors

do not very well know what persons or numbers, in grammar, are.

[236] John Despauter, whose ample Grammar of the Latin language appeared in

its third edition in 1517, represents this practice as a corruption

originating in false pride, and maintained by the wickedness of hungry

flatterers. On the twentieth leaf of his Syntax, he says, "Videntur hodie

Christiani superbiores, quam olim ethnici imperatores, qui dii haberi

voluerunt; nam hi nunquam inviti audierunt pronomina \_tu, tibi, tuus\_. Quæ

si hodie alicui monachorum antistiti, aut decano, aut pontifici dicantur

aut scribantur, videbitur ita loquens aut scribens blasphemasse, et

anathemate dignus: nec tamen Abbas, aut pontifex, tam ægrè feret, quam

Malchi, aut famelici gnathones, his assistentes, et vociferantes, \_Sic

loqueris, aut scribis, pontifici?\_ Quintilianus et Donatus dicunt

barbarismum, aut soloecismum esse, siquis uni dicat. \_Salvete.\_" The

learned Erasmus also ridiculed this practice, calling those who adopted it,

"\_voscitatores\_," or \_youyouers\_.

[237] "By a \_perversion of language\_ the pronoun \_you\_ is almost invariably

used for the second person singular, as well as plural; always, however,

retaining the plural verb; as, 'My friend, \_you write\_ a good hand.' \_Thou\_

is confined to a solemn style, or [to] poetical compositions."--\_Chandler's

Grammar\_, Edition of 1821, p. 41; Ed. of 1847, p. 66.

[238] In regard to the inflection of our verbs, William B. Fowle, who is

something of an antiquarian in grammar, and who professes now to be

"conservative" of the popular system, makes a threefold distinction of

style, thus: "English verbs have three \_Styles\_[,] or \_Modes\_,[;] called

[the] \_Familiar\_, [the] \_Solemn\_[,] and [the] \_Ancient\_. The \_familiar

style\_, or mode, is that used in common conversation; as, you \_see\_, he

\_fears\_. The \_solemn style\_, or mode, is that used in the Bible, and in

prayer; as, Thou \_seest\_, he \_feareth\_. The \_ancient style\_, or mode, now

little used, \_allows no change\_ in the second and third person,

[\_persons\_,] singular, of the verb, and generally follows the word \_if\_,

\_though, lest\_, or \_whether\_; as, if thou \_see\_; though he \_fear\_; lest he

\_be\_ angry; whether he \_go\_ or \_stay\_."--\_Fowle's Common School Grammar\_,

Part Second, p. 44. Among his subsequent examples of the \_Solemn style\_, he

gives the following: "Thou \_lovest\_, Thou \_lovedst\_, Thou \_art\_, Thou

\_wast\_, Thou \_hast\_, Thou \_hadst\_, Thou \_doest\_ or \_dost\_, Thou \_didst\_."

And, as corresponding examples of the \_Ancient style\_, he has these forms:

"Thou \_love\_, Thou \_loved\_, Thou \_or you be\_, Thou \_wert\_, Thou \_have\_,

Thou \_had\_, Thou \_do\_, Thou \_did\_."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 44-50. This distinction and

this arrangement do not appear to me to be altogether warranted by facts.

The necessary distinction of \_moods\_, this author rejects; confounding the

\_Subjunctive\_ with the \_Indicative\_, in order to furnish out this useless

and fanciful contrast of his \_Solemn\_ and \_Ancient styles\_.

[239] In that monstrous jumble and perversion of Murray's doctrines,

entitled, "English Grammar on the Productive System, by Roswell C. Smith,"

\_you\_ is everywhere preferred to \_thou\_, and the verbs are conjugated

\_without the latter pronoun\_. At the close of his paradigms, however, the

author inserts a few lines respecting "\_these obsolete conjugations\_," with

the pronoun \_thou\_; for a further account of which, he refers the learner,

\_with a sneer\_, to the common grammars in the schools. See the work, p. 79.

He must needs be a remarkable grammarian, with whom Scripture, poetry, and

prayer, are all "\_obsolete\_!" Again: "\_Thou\_ in the singular \_is obsolete\_,

except among the Society of Friends; and \_ye\_ is an \_obsolete\_

plural!"--\_Guy's School Gram.\_, p. 25. In an other late grammar,

professedly "constructed upon the \_basis of Murray's\_, by the \_Rev. Charles

Adams\_, A. M., Principal of Newbury Seminary," the second person singular

is everywhere superseded by the plural; the former being silently dropped

from all his twenty pages of conjugations, without so much as a hint, or a

saving clause, respecting it; and the latter, which is put in its stead, is

falsely called \_singular\_. By his pupils, all forms of the verb that agree

only with \_thou\_, will of course be conceived to be either obsolete or

barbarous, and consequently ungrammatical. Whether or not the reverend

gentleman makes any account of the Bible or of prayer, does not appear; he

cites some poetry, in which there are examples that cannot be reconciled

with his "System of English Grammar." Parkhurst, in his late "Grammar for

Beginners," tells us that, "Such words as are used in the Bible, and not

used in common books, are called \_obsolete!\_"--P. 146. Among these, he

reckons all the distinctive forms of the second person singular, and all

the "peculiarities" which "constitute what is commonly called the \_Solemn

Style\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 148. Yet, with no great consistency, he adds: "This

style \_is always used\_ in prayer, and \_is frequently used\_ in

poetry."--\_Ibid.\_ Joab Brace, Jnr., may be supposed to have the same notion

of what is obsolete: for he too has perverted all Lennie's examples of the

verb, as Smith and Adams did Murray's.

[240] Coar gives \_durst\_ in the "Indicative mood," thus: "I durst, \_thou

durst\_, he durst;" &c.--\_Coar's E. Gram.\_, p. 115. But when he comes to

\_wist\_, he does not know what the second person singular should be, and so

he leaves it out: "I wist, ------, he wist; we wist, ye wist, they

wist."--\_Coar's E. Gram.\_, p. 116.

[241] Dr. Latham, who, oftener perhaps than any other modern writer,

corrupts the grammar of our language by efforts to revive in it things

really and deservedly obsolete, most strangely avers that "The words \_thou\_

and \_thee\_ are, except in the mouths of Quakers, obsolete. The plural

forms, \_ye\_ and \_you\_, have replaced them."--\_Hand-Book\_, p. 284. Ignoring

also any current or "vital" process of forming English verbs in the second

person singular, he gravely tells us that the old form, as "\_callest\_"

(which is still the true form for the solemn style,) "is becoming

obsolete."--\_Ib.\_, p. 210. "In phrases like \_you are speaking\_, &c.," says

he rightlier, "even when applied to a single individual, \_the idea is

really plural\_; in other words, the courtesy consists in treating \_one\_

person as \_more than one\_, and addressing him as such, rather than in using

a plural form in a singular sense. It is certain that, grammatically

considered, \_you=thou\_ is a plural, since the verb with which it agrees is

plural."--\_Ib.\_, p. 163. If these things be so, the English Language owes

much to the scrupulous conservatism of the Quakers; for, had their courtesy

consented to the grammar of the fashionables, the singular number would now

have had but two persons!

[242] For the substitution of \_you\_ for \_thou\_, our grammarians assign

various causes. That which is most commonly given in modern books, is

certainly not the original one, because it concerns no other language than

ours: "In order \_to avoid the unpleasant formality\_ which accompanies the

use of \_thou\_ with a correspondent verb, its plural \_you\_, is usually

adopted to familiar conversation; as, Charles, \_will you\_ walk? instead

of--\_wilt thou\_ walk? \_You read\_ too fast, instead of--\_thou readest\_ too

fast."--\_Jaudon's Gram.\_, p. 33.

[243] This position, as may be seen above, I do not suppose it competent

for any critic to maintain. The use of \_you\_ for \_thou\_ is no more

"contrary to grammar," than the use of \_we\_ for \_I\_; which, it seems, is

grammatical enough for all editors, compilers, and crowned heads, if not

for others. But both are \_figures of syntax\_; and, as such, they stand upon

the same footing. Their only contrariety to grammar consists in this, that

the words are not the \_literal representatives\_ of the number for which

they are put. But in what a posture does the grammarian place himself, who

condemns, as \_bad English\_, that phraseology which he constantly and

purposely uses? The author of the following remark, as well as all who have

praised his work, ought immediately to adopt the style of the Friends, or

Quakers: "The word \_thou\_, in grammatical construction, is preferable to

\_you\_, in the second person singular: however, custom has familiarized the

latter, and consequently made it more general, though BAD GRAMMAR. To say,

'\_You are a man\_.' is NOT GRAMMATICAL LANGUAGE; the word \_you\_ having

reference to \_a plural noun only\_. It should be, '\_Thou art a

man\_.'"--\_Wright's Philosoph. Gram.\_, p. 55. This author, like Lindley

Murray and many others, continually calls \_himself\_ WE; and it is probable,

that neither he, nor any one of his sixty reverend commenders, \_dares

address\_ any man otherwise than by the above-mentioned "BAD GRAMMAR!"

[244] "We are always given to cut our words short; and, \_with very few

exceptions\_, you find people writing \_lov'd, mov'd, walk'd\_; instead of

\_loved, moved, walked.\_ They wish to make the \_pen\_ correspond with the

\_tongue.\_ From \_lov'd, mov'd, walk'd\_, it is very easy to slide into \_lovt,

movt, walkt.\_ And this has been the case with regard to \_curst, dealt,

dwelt, leapt, helpt\_, and many others in the last inserted list. It is just

as proper to say \_jumpt\_, as it is to say \_leapt\_; and just as proper to

say \_walkt\_ as either; and thus we might go on till the orthography of the

whole language were changed. When the love of contraction came to operate

on such verbs as \_to burst\_ and \_to light\_, it found such a clump of

consonants already at the end of the words, that, it could add none. It

could not enable the organs even of English speech to pronounce \_burstedst,

lightedst.\_ It, therefore, made really short work of it, and dropping the

last syllable altogether, wrote, \_burst, light\_, [rather, \_lit\_] in the

past time and passive participle."--\_Cobbett's English Gram.\_, ¶ 169. How

could the man who saw all this, insist on adding \_st\_ for the second

person, where not even the \_d\_ of the past tense could he articulated? Am I

to be called an innovator, because I do not like in conversation such \_new\_

and \_unauthorized\_ words as \_littest, leaptest, curstest\_; or a corrupter

of the language, because I do not admire in poetry such unutterable

monstrosities as, \_light'dst, leap'dst, curs'dst\_? The novelism, with the

corruption too, is wholly theirs who stickle for these awkward forms.

[245] "You \_were\_, not you \_was\_, for you \_was\_ seems to be as

ungrammatical, as you \_hast\_ would be. For the pronoun you being

confessedly plural, its correspondent verb ought to be plural."--\_John

Burn's Gram.\_, 10th Ed., P. 72.

[246] Among grammarians, as well as among other writers, there is some

diversity of usage concerning the personal inflections of verbs; while

nearly all, nowadays, remove the chief occasion for any such diversity, by

denying with a fashionable bigotry the possibility of any grammatical use

of the pronoun \_thou\_ in a familiar style. To illustrate this, I will cite

Cooper and Wells--two modern authors who earnestly agree to account \_you\_

and its verb literally singular, and \_thou\_ altogether erroneous, in common

discourse: except that \_Wells\_ allows the phrase, "\_If thou art\_," for

"\_Common style\_."--\_School Gram.\_, p. 100.

1. Cooper, improperly referring \_all\_ inflection of the verb to the grave

or solemn style, says: "In the colloquial or familiar style, we observe \_no

change\_. The same is the case in the plural number." He then proceeds thus:

"In the second person of the present of the indicative, in the \_solemn

style\_, the verb takes \_st\_ or \_est\_; and in the third person \_th\_ or

\_eth\_, as: \_thou hast, thou lovest, thou teachest; he hath, he loveth, he

goeth\_. In the colloquial or \_familiar style\_, the verb \_does not vary\_ in

the second person; and in the third person, it ends in \_s\_ or \_es\_, as: \_he

loves, he teaches, he does\_. The indefinite, [i. e. the preterit,] in the

second person singular of the indicative, in the \_grave style\_, ends in

\_est\_, as: \_thou taughtest, thou wentest\_. [Fist] But, \_in those verbs,

where\_ the sound of \_st\_ will unite with the last syllable of the verb, the

vowel is omitted, as: \_thou lovedst, thou heardst, thou didst\_."--\_Cooper's

Murray\_, p. 60; \_Plain and Practical Gram.\_, p. 59. This, the reader will

see, is somewhat contradictory; for the colloquial style varies the verb by

"\_s\_ or \_es\_," and \_taught'st may\_ be uttered without the \_e\_. As for

"\_lovedst\_," I deny that any vowel "\_is omitted\_" from it; but possibly one

\_may\_ be, as \_lov'dst\_.

2. Wells's account of the same thing is this: "In the simple form of the

present and past indicative, the second person singular of the \_solemn

style\_ ends regularly in \_st\_ or \_est\_, as, thou \_seest\_, thou \_hearest\_,

thou \_sawest, thou heardest\_; and the third person singular of the present,

in \_s\_ or \_es\_, as, he \_hears\_, he \_wishes\_, and also in \_th\_ or \_eth\_, as,

he \_saith\_, he \_loveth\_. In the simple form of the present indicative, the

third person singular of the \_common\_ or \_familiar style\_, ends in \_s\_ or

\_es\_; as, he \_sleeps\_; he \_rises\_. The first person singular of the \_solemn

style\_, and the first and second persons singular of the \_common style\_,

have \_the same form\_ as the three persons plural."--\_Wells's School

Grammar\_, 1st Ed. p. 83; 3d Ed. p. 86. This, too, is both defective and

inconsistent. It does not tell when to add \_est\_, and when, \_st\_ only. It

does not show what the \_regular preterit\_, as \_freed\_ or \_loved\_, should

make with \_thou\_: whether \_freedest\_ and \_lovedest\_, by assuming the

syllable \_est; fre-edst\_ and \_lov-edst\_, by increasing syllabically from

assuming \_st\_ only; or \_freedst\_ and \_lov'dst\_, or \_lovedst\_, still to be

uttered as monosyllables. It absurdly makes "\_s\_ or \_es\_" a sign of two

opposite styles. (See OBS. 9th, above.) And it does not except "\_I am, I

was, If I am, If I was, If thou art, I am loved\_," and so forth, from

requiring "the same form, [\_are\_ or \_were\_,] as the three persons plural."

This author prefers "\_heardest\_;" the other, "\_heardst\_," which I think

better warranted:

"And \_heardst\_ thou why he drew his blade?

\_Heardst\_ thou that shameful word and blow

Brought Roderick's vengeance on his foe?"--\_Scott\_, L. L., C. v, st. 6.

[247] Better, as Wickliffe has it, "the day \_in which\_;" though, after

nouns of time, the relative \_that\_ is often used, like the Latin ablative

\_quo\_ or \_quâ\_, as being equivalent to \_in which\_ or \_on which\_.

[248] It is not a little strange, that some men, who \_never have seen or

heard\_ such words as their own rules would produce for the second person

singular of many hundreds of our most common verbs, will nevertheless

pertinaciously insist, that it is wrong to countenance in this matter any

departure from the style of King James's Bible. One of the very rashest and

wildest of modern innovators,--a critic who, but for the sake of those who

still speak in this person and number, would gladly consign the pronoun

\_thou\_, and all its attendant verbal forms, to utter oblivion,--thus treats

this subject and me: "The Quakers, or Friends, however, use \_thou\_, and its

attendant form of the \_asserter\_, in conversation. FOR THEIR BENEFIT,

\_thou\_ is given, in this work, in all the varieties of inflection; (in some

of which it could not properly be used in an address to the Deity;) for

THEY ERR MOST EGREGIOUSLY in the use of \_thou\_, with the form of the

\_asserter\_ which follows \_he\_ or \_they\_, and are countenanced in their

errors by G. Brown, who, instead of 'disburdening \_the language\_ of 144,000

useless \_distinctions, increases\_ their number just 144,000."--\_Oliver B.

Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 85 Among people of sense, converts are made by

teaching, and reasoning, and proving; but this man's disciples must yield

to the balderdash of a \_false speller, false quoter\_, and \_false assertor!\_

This author says, that "\_dropt\_" is the past tense of "\_drop\_;" (p. 118;)

let him prove, for example, that \_droptest\_ is not a clumsy \_innovation\_,

and that \_droppedst\_ is not a formal archaism, and then tell of the

egregious error of adopting neither of these forms in common conversation.

The following, with its many common contractions, is the language of POPE;

and I ask this, or any other opponent of my doctrine, TO SHOW HOW SUCH

VERBS ARE RIGHTLY FORMED, either for poetry or for conversation, \_in the

second person singular\_.

"It \_fled\_, I \_follow'd\_; now in hope, now pain;

It \_stopt\_, I \_stopt\_; it \_mov'd\_, I \_mov'd\_ again.

At last it \_fix't\_,'twas on what plant it \_pleas'd\_,

And where it \_fix'd\_, the beauteous bird I \_seiz'd\_."

--\_Dunciad\_, B. IV, l. 427.

[249] The Rev. W. Allen, in his English Grammar, p. 132, says: "\_Yth\_ and

\_eth\_ (from the Saxon lað [sic--KTH]) were formerly, \_plural terminations\_;

as, 'Manners \_makyth\_ man.' William of Wykeham's motto. 'After long

advisement, they \_taketh\_ upon them to try the matter.' Stapleton's

Translation of Bede. 'Doctrine and discourse \_maketh\_ nature less

importune.' Bacon." The use of \_eth\_ as a plural termination of verbs, was

evidently earlier than the use of \_en\_ for the same purpose. Even the

latter is utterly obsolete, and the former can scarcely have been

\_English\_. The Anglo-Saxon verb \_lufian\_, or \_lufigean\_, to love, appears

to have been inflected with the several pronouns thus: Ic lufige, Thu

lufast, He lufath, We lufiath, Ge lufiath, Hi lufiath. The form in Old

English was this: I love, Thou lovest, He loveth, We loven, Ye loven, They

loven. Dr. Priestley remarks, (though in my opinion unadvisedly,) that,

"Nouns of a plural form, but of a singular signification, require a

singular construction; as, mathematicks \_is\_ a useful study. This

observation will likewise," says he, "\_in some measure\_, vindicate the

grammatical propriety of the famous saying of William of Wykeham, Manners

\_maketh\_ man."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 189. I know not what \_half-way\_

vindication there can be, for any such construction. \_Manners\_ and

\_mathematics\_ are not nouns of the singular number, and therefore both \_is\_

and \_maketh\_ are wrong. I judge it better English to say, "Mathematics

\_are\_ a useful study."--"Manners \_make\_ the man." But perhaps both ideas

may be still better expressed by a change of the nominative, thus: "The

\_study\_ of mathematics \_is\_ useful."--"\_Behaviour makes\_ the man."

[250] What the state of our literature would have been, had no author

attempted any thing on English grammar, must of course be a matter of mere

conjecture, and not of any positive "conviction." It is my opinion, that,

with all their faults, most of the books and essays in which this subject

has been handled, have been in some degree \_beneficial\_, and a few of them

highly so; and that, without their influence, our language must have been

much more chaotic and indeterminable than it now is. But a late writer

says, and, with respect to \_some\_ of our verbal terminations, says wisely:

"It is my \_sincere conviction\_ that fewer irregularities would have crept

into the language had no grammars existed, than have been authorized by

grammarians; for it should be understood that the first of our grammarians,

finding that good writers differed upon many points, instead of

endeavouring to reconcile these discrepancies, absolutely perpetuated them

by \_citing opposite usages, and giving high authorities for both\_. To this

we owe all the irregularity which exists in the personal terminations of

verbs, some of the best early writers using them \_promiscuously\_, some

using them \_uniformly\_, and others making \_no use\_ of them; and really

\_they are of no use\_ but to puzzle children and foreigners, perplex poets,

and furnish an awkward dialect to that exemplary sect of Christians, who in

every thing else study simplicity."--\_Fowle's True E. Gram.\_, Part II, p.

26. Wells, a still later writer, gives this unsafe rule: "\_When the past

tense is a monosyllable not ending in a single vowel\_, the second person

singular of the solemn style is generally formed by the addition of \_est\_;

as \_heardest, fleddest, tookest\_. \_Hadst, wast, saidst, and didst\_, are

exceptions."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 106; 3d Ed., p. 110;

113th Ed., p. 115. Now the termination \_d\_ or \_ed\_ commonly adds no

syllable; so that the regular past tense of any monosyllabic verb is, with

a few exceptions, a monosyllable still; as, \_freed, feed, loved, feared,

planned, turned\_: and how would these sound with \_est\_ added, which Lowth,

Hiley, Churchill, and some others erroneously claim as having pertained to

such preterits anciently? Again, if \_heard\_ is a contraction of \_heared\_,

and \_fled\_, of \_fleed\_, as seems probable; then are \_heardst\_ and

\_fledtst\_, which are sometimes used, more regular than \_heardest,

fleddest\_: so of many other preterits.

[251] Chaucer appears not to have inflected this word in the second person:

"Also ryght as \_thou were\_ ensample of moche folde errour, righte so thou

must be ensample of manifold correction."--\_Testament of Love\_. "Rennin and

crie as \_thou were\_ wode."--\_House of Fame\_. So others: "I wolde \_thou

were\_ cold or hoot."--WICKLIFFE'S VERSION OF THE APOCALYPSE. "I wolde \_thou

were\_ cold or hote."--VERSION OF EDWARD VI: \_Tooke\_, Vol. ii, p. 270. See

Rev., iii, 15: "I would thou \_wert\_ cold or hot."--COMMON VERSION.

[252] See evidence of the \_antiquity\_ of this practice, in the examples

under the twenty-third observation above. According to Churchill, it has

had some local continuance even to the present time. For, in a remark upon

Lowth's contractions, \_lov'th, turn'th\_, this author says, "These are

\_still in use in some country places\_, the third person singular of verbs

in general being formed by the addition of the sound \_th\_ simply, not

making an additional syllable."--\_Churchill's Gram.\_, p. 255 So the \_eth\_

in the following example adds no syllable:--

"Death \_goeth\_ about the field, rejoicing mickle

To see a sword that so surpass'd his sickle."

\_Harrington's Ariosto\_, B. xiii:

see \_Singer's Shak.\_, Vol. ii, p. 296.

[253] The second person singular of the simple verb \_do\_, is now usually

written \_dost\_, and read \_dust\_; being permanently contracted in

orthography, as well as in pronunciation. And perhaps the compounds may

follow; as, Thou \_undost, outdost, misdost, overdost\_, &c. But exceptions

to exceptions are puzzling, even when they conform to the general rule. The

Bible has \_dost\_ and \_doth\_ for auxilliaries, and \_doest\_ and \_doeth\_ for

principal verbs.

[254] N. Butler avers, "The only regular terminations added to verbs are

\_est, s, ed, edst\_, and \_ing\_."--\_Butler's Practical Gram.\_, p. 81. But he

adds, in a marginal note, this information: "The third person singular of

the present formerly ended in \_eth\_. This termination is still sometimes

used in the solemn style. Contractions sometimes take place; as, \_sayst\_

for \_sayest\_."--\_Ibid.\_ This statement not only imposes a vast deal of

\_needless irregularity\_ upon the few inflections admitted by the English

verb, but is, so far as it disagrees with mine, a causeless innovation. The

terminations rejected, or here regarded as \_irregular\_, are \_d, st\_, \_es,

th\_, and \_eth\_; while \_edst\_, which is plainly a combination of \_ed\_ and

\_st\_,--the past ending of the verb with the personal inflection,--is

assumed to be one single and regular termination which I had overlooked! It

has long been an almost universal doctrine of our grammarians, that regular

verbs form their preterits and perfect participles by adding \_d\_ to final

\_e\_, and \_ed\_ to any other radical ending. Such is the teaching of Blair,

Brightland, Bullions, Churchill, Coar, Comly, Cooper, Fowle, Frazee,

Ingersoll, Kirkham, Lennie, Murray, Weld, Wells, Sanborn, and others, a

great multitude. But this author alleges, that, "\_Loved\_ is not formed by

adding \_d\_ to \_love\_, but by adding \_ed\_, and dropping \_e\_ from

\_love\_."--\_Butler's Answer to Brown\_. Any one is at liberty to think this,

if he will. But I see not the use of playing thus with \_mute Ees\_, adding

one to drop an other, and often pretending to drop two under one

apostrophe, as in \_lov'd, lov'st\_! To suppose that the second person of the

regular preterit, as \_lovedst\_, is not formed by adding \_st\_ to the first

person, is contrary to the analogy of other verbs, and is something worse

than an idle whim. And why should the formation of the third person be

called \_irregular\_ when it requires \_es\_, as in \_flies, denies\_, \_goes,

vetoes, wishes, preaches\_, and so forth? In forming \_flies\_ from \_fly\_,

Butler changes "\_y\_ into \_ie\_," on page 20th, adding \_s\_ only; and, on page

11th, "into \_i\_" only, adding \_es\_. Uniformity would be better.

[255] Cooper says, "The termination \_eth\_ is \_commonly\_ contracted into

\_th\_, to prevent the addition of a syllable to the verb, as: \_doeth\_,

\_doth\_."--\_Plain and Practical Gram.\_, p. 59. This, with reference to

modern usage, is plainly erroneous. For, when \_s\_ or \_es\_ was substituted

for \_th\_ or \_eth\_, and the familiar use of the latter ceased, this mode of

inflecting the verb without increasing its syllables, ceased also, or at

least became unusual. It appears that the inflecting of verbs with \_th\_

without a vowel, as well as with \_st\_ without a vowel, was more common in

very ancient times than subsequently. Our grammarians of the last century

seem to have been more willing to \_encumber\_ the language with syllabic

endings, than to \_simplify\_ it by avoiding them. See Observations, 21st,

22d, and 23d, above.

[256] These are what William Ward, in his Practical Grammar, written about

1765, denominated "the CAPITAL FORMS, or ROOTS, of the English Verb." Their

number too is the same. "And these Roots," says he, "are considered as

\_Four\_ in each verb; although in many verbs two of them are alike, and in

some few three are alike."--P. 50. Few modern grammarians have been careful

to display these Chief Terms, or Principal Parts, properly. Many say

nothing about them. Some speak of \_three\_, and name them faultily. Thus

Wells: "The three \_principal parts\_ of a verb are the \_present tense\_, the

\_past tense\_, and the \_perfect participle\_."--\_School Gram.\_, 113th Ed., p.

92. Now a whole "\_tense\_" is something more than one verbal form, and

Wells's "perfect participle" includes the auxiliary "\_having\_." Hence, in

stead of \_write, wrote, writing, written\_, (the true principal parts of a

certain verb,) one might take, under Wells's description, either of these

threes, both entirely false: \_am writing, did write\_, and \_having written\_;

or, \_do write, wrotest\_, and \_having written\_. But \_writing\_, being the

root of the "Progressive Form of the Verb," is far more worthy to be here

counted a chief term, than \_wrote\_, the preterit, which occurs only in one

tense, and never receives an auxiliary. So of other verbs. This sort of

treatment of the Principal Parts, is a very grave defect in sundry schemes

of grammar.

[257] A grammarian should know better, than to exhibit, \_as a paradigm\_ for

school-boys, such English as the following: "I do have, Thou dost have, He

does have: We do have, You do have, They do have."--\_Everest's Gram.\_, p.

106. "I did have, Thou didst have, He did have: We did have, You did have,

They did have."--\_Ib.\_, p. 107. I know not whether any one has yet thought

of conjugating the verb \_be\_ after this fashion; but the attempt to

introduce, "\_am being, is being\_," &c., is an innovation much worse.

[258] Hiley borrows from Webster the remark, that, "\_Need\_, when

intransitive, is formed \_like an auxiliary\_, and is followed by a verb,

without the prefix \_to\_; as, 'He \_need go\_ no farther.'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_,

p. 90; \_Webster's Imp. Gram.\_, p. 127; \_Philos. Gram.\_, p. 178. But he

forbears to class it with the auxiliaries, and even contradicts himself, by

a subsequent remark taken from Dr. Campbell, that, for the sake of

"ANALOGY, '\_he needs\_,' \_he dares\_,' are preferable to '\_he need\_,' '\_he

dare\_,'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 145; \_Campbell's Rhet.\_, p. 175

[259] This grammarian here uses \_need\_ for the third person singular,

designedly, and makes a remark for the justification of the practice; but

he neither calls the word an auxiliary, nor cites any other than anonymous

examples, which are, perhaps, of his own invention.

[260] "The substantive form, or, as it is commonly termed, \_infinitive

mood\_, contains at the same time the essence of verbal meaning, and the

literal ROOT on which all inflections of the verb are to be grafted. This

character being common to the infinitive in all languages, it [this mood]

ought to precede the [other] moods of verbs, instead of being made to

follow them, as is absurdly practised in almost all grammatical

systems."--\_Enclytica\_, p. 14.

[261] By this, I mean, that the verb in all the persons, both singular and

plural, is \_the same in form\_. But Lindley Murray, when he speaks of \_not

varying\_ or \_not changing\_ the termination of the verb, most absurdly means

by it, that the verb \_is inflected\_, just as it is in the indicative or the

potential mood; and when he speaks of \_changes\_ or \_variations\_ of

termination, he means, that the verb \_remains the same\_ as in the first

person singular! For example: "The second person singular of the imperfect

tense in the subjunctive mood, is also \_very frequently varied in its

termination\_: as, 'If thou \_loved\_ him truly, thou wouldst obey

him.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 209. "The auxiliaries of the potential

mood, when applied to the subjunctive, \_do not change\_ the termination of

the second person singular; as, 'If thou \_mayst\_ or \_canst\_ go.'"--\_Ib.\_,

p. 210. "Some authors think, that the termination of these auxiliaries

\_should be varied\_: as, I advise thee, that thou \_may\_ beware."--\_Ib.\_, p.

210. "When the circumstances of contingency and futurity concur, it is

proper \_to vary\_ the terminations of the second and third persons

singular."--\_Ib.\_, 210. "It may be considered as a rule, that \_the changes\_

of termination \_are necessary\_, when these two circumstances

concur."--\_Ib.\_, p. 207. "It may be considered as a rule, that \_no changes\_

of termination \_are necessary\_, when these two circumstances

concur."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 264. Now Murray and Ingersoll here \_mean\_

precisely the same thing! Whose fault is that? If Murray's, he has

committed many such. But, in this matter, he is contradicted not only by

Ingersoll, but, on one occasion, by himself. For he declares it to be an

opinion in which he concurs. "That the definition and nature of the

subjunctive mood, have \_no reference\_ to change of termination."--\_Murray's

Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 211. And yet, amidst his strange blunders, he seems to have

ascribed the \_meaning\_ which a verb has in this mood, \_to the inflections\_

which it receives \_in the indicative\_: saying. "That part of the verb which

grammarians call the present tense of the subjunctive mood, has a future

signification. \_This\_ is effected by \_varying the terminations\_ of the

second and third persons singular of \_the indicative\_!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 207. But

the absurdity which he really means to teach, is, that the subjunctive mood

\_is derived from the indicative\_,--the primitive or radical verb, \_from

it's derivatives or branches\_!

[262] \_Wert\_ is sometimes used in lieu of \_wast\_; and, in such instances,

both by authority and by analogy, it appears to belong here, if anywhere.

See OBS. 2d and 3d, below.

[263] Some grammarians, regardless of the general usage of authors, prefer

\_was\_ to \_were\_ in the singular number of this tense of the subjunctive

mood. In the following remark, the tense is named "\_present\_" and this

preference is urged with some critical extravagance: "\_Was\_, though the

past tense of the indicative mood, expresses the \_present\_ of the

hypothetical; as, 'I wish that I \_was\_ well.' \_The use of this hypothetical

form\_ of the subjunctive mood, \_has given rise to\_ a form of expression

\_wholly unwarranted by the rules of grammar\_. When the verb \_was\_ is to be

used in the \_present tense singular\_, in this form of the subjunctive mood,

the ear is often pained with a \_plural were\_, as, '\_Were I\_ your

master'--'\_Were he\_ compelled to do it,' &c. This has become so common that

some of the best grammars of the language furnish authority for the

barbarism, and even in the second person supply \_wert\_, as a convenient

accompaniment. If such a conjugation is admitted, we may expect to see

Shakspeare's '\_thou beest\_' in full use."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, Ed. of 1821,

p. 55. In "\_Chandler's Common School Grammar\_," of 1847, the language of

this paragraph is somewhat softened, but the substance is still retained.

See the latter work, p. 80.

[264] "If I were, If \_thou were\_. If he were."--\_Harrison's Gram.\_, p. 31.

"If, or though, I were loved. If, or though, \_thou were\_, or \_wert\_ loved.

If, or though, he were loved."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part i, p. 69. "If,

though, &c. I were burned, \_thou were\_ burned or you were burned, he were

burned."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 53. "Though \_thou were\_. Some say, 'though

thou \_wert\_.'"--\_Mackintosh's Gram.\_, p. 178. "If or though I were. If or

though \_thou were\_. If or though he were."--\_St. Quentin's General Gram.\_,

p. 86. "If I was, Thou wast, or You was or were, He was. Or thus: If I

were, Thou wert, or you was or were, He were."--\_Webster's Philosophical

Gram.\_, p. 95; \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 64. "PRESENT TENSE. Before, &c. I \_be\_;

thou \_beest\_, or you \_be\_; he, she, or it, \_be\_: We, you or ye, they, \_be\_.

PAST TENSE. Before, &c. I \_were\_; thou \_wert\_, or you \_were\_; he, she, or

it, \_were\_; We, you or ye, they, \_were\_."--WHITE, \_on the English Verb\_, p.

52.

[265] The text in Acts, xxii, 20th, "I also \_was standing\_ by, and

\_consenting\_ unto his death," ought rather to be, "I also \_stood\_ by, and

\_consented\_ to his death;" but the present reading is, thus far, a literal

version from the Greek, though the verb "\_kept\_," that follows, is not.

Montanus renders it literally: "Et ipse \_eram astans, et consentiens\_

interemptioni ejus, et \_custodiens\_ vestimenta interficientium illum." Beza

makes it better Latin thus: "Ego quoque \_adstabam\_, et una \_assentiebar\_

cædi ipsius, et \_custodiebam\_ pallia eorum qui interimebant eum." Other

examples of a questionable or improper use of the progressive form may

occasionally be found in good authors; as, "A promising boy of six years of

age, \_was missing\_ by his parents."--\_Whittier, Stranger in Lowell\_, p.

100. \_Missing, wanting\_, and \_willing\_, after the verb to be, are commonly

reckoned participial \_adjectives\_; but here "\_was missing\_" is made a

passive verb, equivalent to \_was missed\_, which, perhaps, would better

express the meaning. \_To miss\_, to perceive the absence of, is such an act

of the mind, as seems unsuited to the compound form, \_to be missing\_; and,

if we cannot say, "The mother \_was missing\_ her son," I think we ought not

to use the same form passively, as above.

[266] Some grammarians, contrary to the common opinion, suppose the verbs

here spoken of, to have, not a \_passive\_, but a \_neuter\_ signification.

Thus, Joseph Guy, Jun., of London: "Active verbs often take a \_neuter\_

sense; as, A house is building; here, is \_building\_ is used in a \_neuter\_

signification, because it has no object after it. By this rule are

explained such sentences as, Application is wanting; The grammar is

printing; The lottery is drawing; It is flying, &c."--\_Guy's English

Gram.\_, p. 21. "\_Neuter\_," here, as in many other places, is meant to

include the \_active-intransitives\_. "\_Is flying\_" is of this class; and

"\_is wanting\_," corresponding to the Latin \_caret\_, appears to be neuter;

hut the rest seem rather to be passives. Tried, however, by the usual

criterion,--the naming of the "\_agent\_" which, it is said, "a verb passive

necessarily implies,"--what may at first seem progressive passives, may not

always be found such. "\_Most\_ verbs signifying \_action\_" says Dr. Johnson,

"may likewise signify \_condition\_, or \_habit\_, and become \_neuters\_, [i. e.

\_active-intransitives\_;] as \_I love\_, I am in love; \_I strike\_, I am now

striking."--\_Gram. before Quarto Dict.\_, p. 7. So \_sell, form, make\_, and

many others, usually transitive, have sometimes an active-intransitive

sense which nearly approaches the passive, and of which \_are selling, is

forming, are making\_, and the like, may be only equivalent expressions. For

example: "It is cold, and ice \_forms\_ rapidly--is \_forming\_ rapidly--or \_is

formed\_ rapidly."--Here, with little difference of meaning, is the

appearance of both voices, the Active and the Passive; while "\_is

forming\_," which some will have for an example of "the \_Middle\_ voice," may

be referred to either. If the following passive construction is right, \_is

wanting\_ or \_are wanting\_ may be a verb of three or four different sorts:

"Reflections that may drive away despair, \_cannot be wanting by him\_, who

considers," &c.--\_Johnson's Rambler\_, No. 129: \_Wright's Gram.\_, p. 196.

[267] Dr. Bullions, in his grammar of 1849, says, "Nobody would think of

saying, 'He is being loved'--'This result is being desired.'"--\_Analyt. and

Pract. Gram.\_, p. 237. But, according to J. W. Wright, whose superiority in

grammar has sixty-two titled vouchers, this unheard-of barbarism is, for

the present passive, precisely and solely what one \_ought\_ to say! Nor is

it, in fact, any more barbarous, or more foreign from usage, than the

spurious example which the Doctor himself takes for a model in the active

voice: "I \_am loving\_. Thou \_art loving\_, &c; I \_have been loving\_, Thou

\_hast been loving\_, &c."--\_A. and P. Gr.\_, p. 92. So: "James \_is loving\_

me."--\_Ib.\_, p 235.

[268] "The predicate in the form, '\_The house is being built\_,' would be,

according to our view, 'BEING BEING \_built\_,' which is manifestly an absurd

tautology."--\_Mulligan's Gram.\_, 1852, p. 151.

[269] "Suppose a criminal to be \_enduring\_ the operation of binding:--Shall

we say, with Mr. Murray,--'The criminal is binding?' If so, HE MUST BE

BINDING SOMETHING,--a circumstance, in effect, quite opposed to the fact

presented. Shall we then say, as he does, in the \_present tense\_

conjugation of his passive verb,--'The criminal is bound?' If so, the

\_action\_ of binding, which the criminal is suffering, will be represented

as completed, --a position which the \_action its self\_ will palpably deny."

See \_Wright's Phil. Gram.\_, p. 102. It is folly for a man to puzzle himself

or others thus, with \_fictitious examples\_, imagined on purpose to make

\_good usage seem wrong\_. There is bad grammar enough, for all useful

purposes, in the actual writings of valued authors; but who can show, by

any proofs, that the English language, as heretofore written, is so

miserably inadequate to our wants, that we need use the strange neologism,

"The criminal \_is being bound\_," or any thing similar?

[270] It is a very strange event in the history of English grammar, that

such a controversy as this should have arisen; but a stranger one still,

that, after all that has been said, more argument is needed. Some men, who

hope to be valued as scholars, yet stickle for an odd phrase, which critics

have denounced as follows: "But the history of the language scarcely

affords a parallel to the innovation, at once unphilosophical and

hypercritical, pedantic and illiterate, which has lately appeared in the

excruciating refinement '\_is being\_' and its unmerciful variations. We

hope, and indeed believe, that it has not received the sanction of any

grammar adopted in our popular education, as it certainly never will of any

writer of just pretensions to scholarship."--\_The True Sun\_. N. Y., April

16, 1846.

[271] Education is a work of continuance, yet completed, like many others,

as fast as it goes on. It is not, like the act of loving or hating, so

complete at the first moment as not to admit the progressive form of the

verb; for one may say of a lad, "I \_am educating\_ him for the law;" and

possibly, "He \_is educating\_ for the law;" though not so well as, "He \_is

to be educated\_ for the law." But, to suppose that "\_is educated\_" or "\_are

educated\_" implies unnecessarily a \_cessation of the educating\_ is a

mistake. That conception is right, only when \_educated\_ is taken

adjectively. The phrase, "those who \_are educated\_ in our seminaries,"

hardly includes such as \_have been educated\_ there in times past: much less

does it apply to these exclusively, as some seem to think. "\_Being\_," as

inserted by Southey, is therefore quite \_needless\_: so it is \_often\_, in

this new phraseology, the best correction being its mere omission.

[272] Worcester has also this citation: "The Eclectic Review remarks, 'That

a need of this phrase, or an equivalent one, is felt, is sufficiently

proved by the extent to which it is used by educated persons and

respectable writers.'"--\_Gram. before Dict.\_, p. xlvi. Sundry phrases,

equivalent in sense to this new voice, have long been in use, and are, of

course, still needed; something from among them being always, by every

accurate writer, still preferred. But this awkward innovation, use it who

will, can no more be justified by a plea of "\_need\_," than can every other

hackneyed solecism extant. Even the Archbishop, if quoted right by

Worcester, has descended to "uncouth English," without either necessity or

propriety, having thereby only misexpounded a very common Greek word--a

"perfect or pluperfect" participle, which means "\_beaten, struck\_, or

\_having been beaten\_"--G. Brown.

[273] Wells has also the following citations, which most probably accord

with his own opinions, though the first is rather extravagant: "The

propriety of these \_imperfect passive tenses\_ has been \_doubted by almost

all\_ our grammarians; though I believe but few of them have written many

pages without condescending to make use of them. Dr. Beattie says, 'One of

the greatest defects of the English tongue, with regard to the verb, seems

to be the want of an \_imperfect passive participle\_.' And yet he uses the

\_imperfect participle\_ in a \_passive sense\_ as often as most

writers."--\_Pickbourn's Dissertation on the English Verb\_.

"Several other expressions of this sort now and then occur, such as the

new-fangled and most uncouth solecism, 'is being done,' for the good old

English idiomatic expression, 'is doing,'--an absurd periphrasis, driving

out a pointed and pithy turn of the English language."--\_N. A. Review\_. See

\_Wells's Grammar\_, 1850, p. 161.

The term, "\_imperfect passive tenses\_," seems not a very accurate one;

because the present, the perfect, &c., are included. Pickbourn applies it

to any passive tenses formed from the simple "imperfect participle;" but

the phrase, "\_passive verbs in the progressive form\_," would better express

the meaning. The term, "\_compound passive participle\_," which Wells applies

above to "\_being built\_," "\_being printed\_," and the like, is also both

unusual and inaccurate. Most readers would sooner understand by it the

form, \_having been built, having been printed\_, &c. This author's mode of

naming participles is always either very awkward or not distinctive. His

scheme makes it necessary to add here, for each of these forms, a third

epithet, referring to his main distinction of "\_imperfect\_ and \_perfect\_;"

as, "the compound \_imperfect\_ participle passive," and "the compound

\_perfect\_ participle passive." What is "\_being builded\_" or "\_being

printed\_," but "an \_imperfect passive participle\_?" Was this, or something

else, the desideratum of Beattie?

[274] \_Borne\_ usually signifies \_carried\_; \_born\_ signifies \_brought

forth\_. J. K. Worcester, the lexicographer, speaks of these two participles

thus: "[Fist] The participle \_born\_ is used in the passive form, and

\_borne\_ in the active form, [with reference to birth]; as, 'He was \_born\_

blind,' \_John\_ ix.; 'The barren hath \_borne\_ seven,' I \_Sam\_. ii. This

distinction between \_born\_ and \_borne\_, though not recognized by grammars,

is in accordance with common usage, at least in this country. In many

editions of the Bible it is recognized; and in many it is not. It seems to

have been more commonly recognized in American, than in English,

editions."--\_Worcester's Universal and Critical Dict., w. Bear\_. In five,

out of seven good American editions of the Bible among my books, the latter

text is, "The barren hath \_born\_ seven;" in two, it is as above, "hath

\_borne\_." In Johnson's Quarto Dictionary, the perfect participle of \_bear\_

is given erroneously, "\_bore\_, or \_born\_;" and that of \_forbear\_, which

should be \_forborne\_, is found, both in his columns and in his preface,

"\_forborn\_."

[275] According to Murray, Lennie, Bullions, and some others, to use

\_begun\_ for \_began\_ or \_run\_ for \_ran\_, is improper; but Webster gives

\_run\_ as well as \_ran\_ for the preterit, and \_begun\_ may be used in like

manner, on the authority of Dryden, Pope, and Parnell.

[276] "And they shall pass through it, hardly \_bestead\_, and

hungry."--\_Isaiah\_, viii, 21.

[277] "\_Brake\_ [for the preterit of \_Break\_] seems now obsolescent."--\_Dr.

Crombie, Etymol. and Syntax\_, p. 193. Some recent grammarians, however,

retain it; among whom are Bullions and M'Culloch. Wells retains it, but

marks it as, "\_Obsolete\_;" as he does also the preterits \_bare, clave,

drove, gat, slang, spake, span, spat, sware, tare, writ\_; and the

participles \_hoven, loaden, rid\_ from \_ride, spitten, stricken, and writ\_.

In this he is not altogether consistent. Forms really obsolete belong not

to any modern list of irregular verbs; and even such as are archaic and

obsolescent, it is sometimes better to omit. If "\_loaden\_," for example, is

now out of use, why should "\_load, unload\_, and \_overload\_," be placed, as

they are by this author, among "irregular verbs;" while \_freight\_ and

\_distract\_, in spite of \_fraught\_ and \_distraught\_, are reckoned regular?

"\_Rid\_," for \_rode\_ or \_ridden\_, though admitted by Worcester, appears to

me a low vulgarism.

[278] \_Cleave\_, to split, is most commonly, if not always, irregular, as

above; \_cleave\_, to stick, or adhere, is usually considered regular, but

\_clave\_ was formerly used in the preterit, and \_clove\_ still may be: as,

"The men of Judah \_clave\_ unto their king."--\_Samuel\_. "The tongue of the

public prosecutor \_clove\_ to the roof of his mouth."--\_Boston Atlas\_, 1855.

[279] Respecting the preterit and the perfect participle of this verb,

\_drink\_, our grammarians are greatly at variance. Dr. Johnson says,

"preter. \_drank\_ or \_drunk\_; part. pass, \_drunk\_ or \_drunken\_." Dr.

Webster: "pret. and pp. \_drank\_. Old pret. and pp. \_drunk\_; pp. \_drunken\_."

Lowth: "pret. \_drank\_; part, \_drunk\_ or \_drunken\_." So Stamford. Webber,

and others. Murray has it: "Imperf. \_drank\_, Perf. Part, \_drunk\_." So

Comly, Lennie, Bullions, Blair, Butler. Frost, Felton, Goldsbury, and many

others. Churchill cites the text, "Serve me till I have eaten and

\_drunken\_;" and observes, "\_Drunken\_ is now used only as an adjective. The

impropriety of using the preterimperfect [\_drank\_] for the participle of

this verb is very common."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 261. Sanborn gives both forms

for the participle, preferring \_drank\_ to \_drunk\_. Kirkham prefers \_drunk\_

to \_drank\_; but contradicts himself in a note, by unconsciously making

\_drunk\_ an adjective: "The men were \_drunk\_; i. e. inebriated. The toasts

were \_drank\_."--\_Gram.\_, p. 140. Cardell, in his Grammar, gives, "\_drink,

drank, drunk\_;" but in his story of Jack Halyard, on page 59, he wrote,

"had \_drinked\_:" and this, according to Fowle's True English Grammar, is

not incorrect. The preponderance of authority is yet in favour of saying,

"had \_drunk\_;" but \_drank\_ seems to be a word of greater delicacy, and

perhaps it is sufficiently authorized. A hundred late writers may be quoted

for it, and some that were popular in the days of Johnson. "In the choice

of what is fit to be eaten and \_drank\_."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, Vol.

1, p. 51. "Which I had no sooner \_drank\_."--\_Addison, Tattler\_, No. 131.

"Thy brother's blood the thirsty earth hath drank,

Broach'd with the steely point of Clifford's lance."--\_Shakspeare\_.

[280] "\_Holden\_ is not in general use; and is chiefly employed by

attorneys."--\_Crombie, on Etymology and Synt.\_, p. 190. Wells marks this

word as, "Obsolescent."--\_School Gram.\_, p. 103. L. Murray rejected it; but

Lowth gave it alone, as a participle, and \_held\_ only as a preterit.

[281] "I have been found guilty of killing cats I never

\_hurted\_."--\_Roderick Random\_, Vol. i, p. 8.

[282] "They \_keeped\_ aloof as they passed her bye."--\_J. Hogg, Pilgrims of

the Sun\_, p. 19.

[283] \_Lie\_, to be at rest, is irregular, as above; but \_lie\_, to utter

falsehood, is regular, as follows: \_lie, lied, lying, lied\_.

"Thus said, at least, my mountain guide,

Though deep, perchance, the villain \_lied\_."

--\_Scott's Lady of the Lake\_.

[284] Perhaps there is authority sufficient to place the verb \_rend\_ among

those which are redundant.

"Where'er its cloudy veil was \_rended\_."

--\_Whittier's Moll Pitcher\_.

"Mortal, my message is for thee; thy chain to earth is \_rended\_;

I bear thee to eternity; prepare! thy course is ended."

--\_The Amulet\_.

"Come as the winds come, when forests are \_rended\_."

--\_Sir W. Scott\_.

"The hunger pangs her sons which rended."

--NEW QUARTERLY REVIEW: \_Examiner\_, No. 119.

[285] We find now and then an instance in which \_gainsay\_ is made regular:

as, "It can neither be \_rivalled\_ nor \_gainsayed\_."--\_Chapman's Sermons to

Presbyterians\_, p. 36. Perhaps it would be as well to follow Webster here,

in writing \_rivaled\_ with one \_l\_: and the analogy of the simple verb

\_say\_, in forming this compound irregularly, \_gainsaid\_. Usage warrants the

latter, however, better than the former.

[286] "Shoe, \_shoed\_ or shod, shoeing, \_shoed\_ or shod."--\_Old Gram., by W.

Ward\_, p. 64; and \_Fowle's True English Gram.\_, p. 46.

[287] "A. Murray has rejected \_sung\_ as the \_Preterite\_, and L. Murray has

rejected \_sang\_. Each \_Preterite\_, however, rests on good authority. The

same observation may be made, respecting \_sank\_ and \_sunk\_. Respecting the

\_preterites\_ which have \_a\_ or \_u\_, as \_slang\_, or \_slung, sank\_, or

\_sunk\_, it would be better were the former only to be used, as the

\_Preterite\_ and Participle would thus be discriminated."--\_Dr. Crombie, on

Etymology and Syntax\_, p. 199. The \_preterits\_ which this critic thus

prefers, are \_rang, sang, stung, sprang, swang, sank, shrank, slank, stank,

swam\_, and \_span\_ for \_spun\_. In respect to them all, I think he makes an

ill choice. According to his own showing, \_fling, string\_, and \_sting\_,

always make the preterit and the participle alike; and this is the obvious

tendency of the language, in all these words. I reject \_slang\_ and \_span\_,

as derivatives from \_sling\_ and \_spin\_; because, in such a sense, they are

obsolete, and the words have other uses. Lindley Murray, \_in his early

editions\_, rejected \_sang, sank, slang, swang, shrank, slank, stank\_, and

\_span\_; and, at the same time, preferred \_rang, sprang\_, and \_swam\_, to

\_rung, sprung\_, and \_swum\_. In his later copies, he gave the preference to

the \_u\_, in all these words; but restored \_sang\_ and \_sank\_, which Crombie

names above, still omitting the other six, which did not happen to be

mentioned to him.

[288] \_Sate\_ for the preterit of \_sit\_, and \_sitten\_ for the perfect

participle, are, in my opinion, obsolete, or no longer in good use. Yet

several recent grammarians prefer \_sitten\_ to \_sat\_; among whom are

Crombie, Lennie, Bullions, and M'Culloch. Dr. Crombie says, "\_Sitten\_,

though formerly in use, is now obsolescent. Laudable attempts, however,

have been made to restore it."--\_On Etymol. and Syntax\_, p. 199. Lennie

says, "Many authors, both here and in America, use \_sate\_ as the Past time

of \_sit\_; but this is improper, for it is apt to be confounded with \_sate\_

to glut. \_Sitten\_ and \_spitten\_ are preferable [to \_sat\_ and \_spit\_,]

though obsolescent."--\_Principles of E. Gram.\_, p. 45. Bullions says,

"\_Sitten\_ and \_spitten\_ are nearly obsolete, though preferable to \_sat\_ and

\_spit\_."--\_Principles of E. Gram.\_, p. 64. M'Culloch gives these verbs in

the following form: "Sit, sat, sitten \_or\_ sat. Spit, spit \_or\_ spat, spit

\_or\_ spitten."--\_Manual of E. Gram.\_, p. 65.

[289] "He will find the political hobby which he has \_bestrided\_ no child's

nag."--\_The Vanguard, a Newspaper\_.

"Through the pressed nostril, spectacle-\_bestrid\_."--\_Cowper\_.

"A lank haired hunter \_strided\_."--\_Whittier's Sabbath Scene\_.

[290] In the age of Pope, \_writ\_ was frequently used both for the

participle and for the preterit of this verb. It is now either obsolete or

peculiar to the poets. In prose it seems vulgar: as, "He \_writ\_ it, at

least, published it, in 1670."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. i, p. 77.

"He, who, supreme in judgement, as in wit,

Might boldly censure, as he boldly \_writ\_."--\_Pope, Ess. on Crit.\_

Dr. Crombie remarked, more than thirty years ago, that, "\_Wrote\_ as the

Participle [of \_Write\_,] is generally disused, and likewise

\_writ\_."--\_Treatise on Etym. and Synt.\_, p. 202.

[291] A word is not necessarily \_ungrammatical\_ by reason of having a rival

form that is more common. The regular words, \_beseeched, blowed, bursted,

digged, freezed, bereaved, hanged, meaned, sawed, showed, stringed,

weeped\_, I admit for good English, though we find them all condemned by

some critics.

[292] "And the man in whom the evil spirit was, \_leapt\_ on them."--FRIENDS'

BIBLE: \_Acts\_, xix, 16. In Scott's Bible, and several others, the word is

"\_leaped\_." Walker says, "The past time of this verb is \_generally\_ heard

with the diphthong short; and if so, it ought to be spelled \_leapt\_,

rhyming with \_kept\_."--\_Walker's Pron. Dict., w. Leap\_. Worcester, who

improperly pronounces \_leaped\_ in two ways, "l~ept or l=ept," \_misquotes\_

Walker, as saying, "it ought to be spelled \_lept\_."--\_Universal and

Critical Dict., w. Leap\_. In the solemn style, \_leaped\_ is, of course, two

syllables. As for \_leapedst\_ or \_leaptest\_, I know not that either can be

found.

[293] \_Acquit\_ is almost always formed regularly, thus: \_acquit, acquitted,

acquitting, acquitted.\_ But, like \_quit\_, it is sometimes found in an

irregular form also; which, if it be allowable, will make it redundant: as,

"To be \_acquit\_ from my continual smart."--SPENCER: \_Johnson's Dict.\_ "The

writer holds himself \_acquit\_ of all charges in this regard."--\_Judd, on

the Revolutionary War\_, p. 5. "I am glad I am so \_acquit\_ of this

tinder-box."--SHAK.

[294]

"Not know my voice! O, time's extremity!

Hast thou so crack'd and \_splitted\_ my poor tongue?"

--SHAK.: \_Com. of Er.\_

[295] \_Whet\_ is made redundant in Webster's American Dictionary, as well as

in Wells's Grammar; but I can hardly affirm that the irregular form of it

is well authorized.

[296] In S. W. Clark's Practical Grammar, first published in 1847--a work

of high pretensions, and prepared expressly "for the education of

Teachers"--\_sixty-three\_ out of the foregoing ninety-five Redundant Verbs,

are treated as having no regular or no irregular forms. (1.) The following

twenty-nine are \_omitted\_ by this author, as if they were \_always regular\_;

belay, bet, betide, blend, bless, curse, dive, dress, geld, lean, leap,

learn, mulet, pass, pen, plead, prove, rap, reave, roast, seethe, smell,

spoil, stave, stay, wake, wed, whet, wont. (2.) The following thirty-four

are \_given\_ by him as being \_always irregular\_; abide, bend, beseech, blow,

burst, catch, chide, creep, deal, freeze, grind, hang, knit, lade, lay,

mean, pay, shake, sleep, slide, speed, spell, spill, split, string, strive,

sweat, sweep, thrive, throw, weave, weep, wet, wind. Thirty-two of the

ninety-five are made redundant by him, though not so called in his book.

In Wells's School Grammar, "the 113th Thousand," dated 1850, the

deficiencies of the foregoing kinds, if I am right, are about fifty. This

author's "List of Irregular Verbs" has forty-four Redundants, to which he

assigns a regular form as well as an irregular. He is here about as much

nearer right than Clark, as this number surpasses thirty-two, and comes

towards ninety-five. The words about which they differ, are--\_pen, seethe\_,

and \_whet\_, of the former number; and \_catch, deal, hang, knit, spell,

spill, sweat\_, and \_thrive\_, of the latter.

[297] In the following example, there is a different phraseology, which

seems not so well suited to the sense: "But we \_must be aware\_ of

imagining, that we render style strong and expressive, by a constant and

multiplied use of epithets"--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 287. Here, in stead of

"\_be aware\_," the author should have said, "\_beware\_," or "\_be ware\_;" that

is, be \_wary\_, or \_cautious\_; for \_aware\_ means \_apprised\_, or \_informed\_,

a sense very different from the other.

[298] Dr. Crombie contends that \_must\_ and \_ought\_ are used only in the

present tense. (See his \_Treatise\_, p. 204.) In this he is wrong,

especially with regard to the latter word. Lennie, and his copyist

Bullions, adopt the same notion; but Murray, and many others, suppose them

to "have both a present and [a] past signification."

[299] Dr. Crombie says, "This Verb, as an auxiliary, is \_inflexible\_; thus

we say, 'he \_will\_ go;' and 'he \_wills to\_ go.'"--\_Treatise on Etym. and

Syntax\_, p. 203. He should have confined his remarks to the \_familiar

style\_, in which all the auxiliaries, except \_do, be\_, and \_have\_, are

inflexible. For, in the solemn style, we do not say, "Thou \_will\_ go," but,

"Thou \_wilt\_ go."

[300] "HAD-I-WIST. A proverbial expression, \_Oh\_ that I had known.

\_Gower\_."--\_Chalmers's Dict.\_, also \_Webster's\_. In this phrase, which is

here needlessly compounded, and not very properly explained, we see \_wist\_

used as a perfect participle. But the word is obsolete. "\_Had I wist\_," is

therefore an obsolete phrase, meaning. If I had known, or, "\_O\_ that I had

known."

[301] That is, passive verbs, as well as others, have three participles for

each; so that, from one active-transitive root, there come \_six\_

participles--three active, and three passive. Those numerous grammarians

who, like Lindley Murray, make passive verbs a distinct class, for the most

part, very properly state the participles of a \_verb\_ to be "\_three\_;" but,

to represent the two voices as modifications of one species of verbs, and

then say, "The Participles are \_three\_," as many recent writers do, is

manifestly absurd: because \_two threes should be six\_. Thus, for example,

Dr. Bullions: "In English [,] the \_transitive\_ verb has always \_two

voices\_, the Active and [the] Passive."--\_Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 33. "The

Participles are \_three\_, [:] the Present, the \_Perfect\_, and the \_Compound

Perfect\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 57. Again: "\_Transitive\_ verbs have two voices,

called the \_Active\_ and the \_Passive\_."--\_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract.

Gram.\_, p. 66. "Verbs have \_three\_ participles--the \_present\_, the \_past\_,

and the \_perfect\_; as, \_loving, loved, having loved\_, in the active voice:

AND \_being loved, loved, having been loved\_, in the passive."--\_Ib.\_, p.

76. Now either not all these are the participles of \_one\_ verb, or that

verb has \_more than three\_. Take your choice. Redundant verbs usually have

\_duplicate forms\_ of all the participles except the Imperfect Active; as,

\_lighting, lighted\_ or \_lit, having lighted\_ or \_having lit\_; so again,

\_being lighted\_ or \_being lit, lighted\_ or \_lit, having been lighted\_ or

\_having been lit\_.

[302] The diversity in the \_application\_ of these names, and in the number

or nature of the participles recognized in different grammars, is quite as

remarkable as that of the names themselves. To prepare a general synopsis

of this discordant teaching, no man will probably think it worth his while.

The following are a few examples of it:

1. "How many Participles, are there; There are two, the Active Participle

which ends in (ing), as burning, and the Passive Participle which ends in

(ed) as, burned."--\_The British Grammar\_, p. 140. In this book, the

participles of \_Be\_ are named thus: "ACTIVE. Being. PASSIVE. Been, having

been."--\_Ib.\_, p. 138.

2. "How many \_Sorts\_ of Participles are there? \_A\_. Two; the Active

Participle, that ends always in \_ing\_; as, \_loving\_, and the Passive

Participle, that ends always in \_ed, t\_, or \_n\_; as, \_loved, taught,

slain\_."--\_Fisher's Practical New Gram.\_, p. 75.

3. "ACTIVE VOICE. \_Participles\_. Present, calling. Past, having called.

Future, being about to call. PASSIVE VOICE. Present, being called. Past,

having been called. Future, being about to be called."--\_Ward's Practical

Gram.\_, pp. 55 and 59.

4. ACT. "Present, loving; Perfect, loved; Past, having loved."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 39. The participles \_passive\_ are not given by Lowth; but, by

inference from his rule for forming "the passive verb," they must be these:

"Present, being loved; Perfect, loved, or been loved; Past, having been

loved." See \_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 44.

5. "ACT. V. \_Present\_, Loving. \_Past\_, Loved. \_Perfect\_, Having loved. PAS.

V. \_Pres\_. Being loved. \_Past\_, Loved. \_Perf\_. Having been

loved."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, pp. 25 and 33; \_Greene's Analysis\_, p. 225;

\_Bullions's Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, pp. 87 and 95. This is Bullions's

\_revised\_ scheme, and much worse than his former one copied from Murray.

6. ACT. "\_Present.\_ Loving. \_Perfect.\_ Loved. \_Compound Perfect\_, Having

loved." PAS. "\_Present.\_ Being loved. \_Perfect or Passive.\_ Loved.

\_Compound Perfect.\_ Having been loved."--\_L. Murray's late editions\_, pp.

98 and 99; \_Hart's Gram.\_, pp. 85 and 88; \_Bullions's Principles of E.

Gram.\_, pp. 47 and 55. No form or name of the first participle passive was

adopted by Murray in his early editions.

7. ACT. "Present. Pursuing. Perfect. Pursued. Compound perfect. Having

pursued." PAS. "\_Present and Perfect\_. Pursued, or being pursued. \_Compound

Perfect\_. Having been pursued."--\_Rev. W. Allen's Gram.\_, pp. 88 and 93.

Here the first two passive forms, and their names too, are thrown together;

the former as equivalents, the latter as coalescents.

8. "TRANSITIVE. \_Pres.\_ Loving, \_Perf.\_ Having loved. PASSIVE. \_Pres.\_

Loved or Being loved, \_Perf.\_ Having been loved."--\_Parkhurst's Gram. for

Beginners\_, p. 110. Here the second active form is wanting; and the second

passive is confounded with the first.

9. ACT. "\_Imperfect\_, Loving [;] \_Perfect\_, Having loved [.]" PAS.

"\_Imperfect\_, Being loved [;] \_Perfect\_, Loved, Having been

loved."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, pp. 99 and 101. Here, too, the second

active is not given; the third is called by the name of the second; and the

second passive is confounded with the \_third\_, as if they were but forms of

the same thing.

10. ACT. "\_Imperfect\_, (\_Present\_,) Loving. \_Perfect\_. Having loved.

\_Auxiliary Perfect\_, Loved." PAS. "\_Imperfect\_, (\_Present\_,) Being loved.

\_Perfect\_, Having been loved. \_Passive\_, Loved."--\_N. Butler's Pract.

Gram.\_, pp. 84 and 91. Here the common order of most of the participles is

very improperly disturbed, and as many are misnamed.

11. ACT. "Present, Loving [;] Perfect, Loved [;] Comp. Perf. Having loved

[.]" PAS. "Present, Being loved [;] Perfect, Loved, or been loved [;]

Compound Perfect, Having been loved."--\_Frazee's Improved Gram.\_, 63 and

73. Here the second participle passive has two forms, one of which, "\_been

loved\_," is not commonly recognized, except as part of some passive verb or

preperfect participle.

12. ACT. V. "\_Imperfect\_, Seeing. \_Perfect\_, Seen. \_Compound\_, Having

seen." PAS. V. "\_Preterimperfect\_, Being seen. \_Preterperfect\_, Having been

seen."--\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 102. Here the chief and radical passive

participle is lacking, and neither of the compounds is well named.

13. ACT. "\_Present\_, Loving, [;] \_Past\_, Loved, [;] \_Com. Past\_, Having

loved." PAS. "\_Present\_, Being loved. [;] \_Past\_, Loved. [;] \_Com. Past.\_

[,] Having been loved."--\_Felton's Analyt. and Pract. Gram.\_, of 1843, pp.

37 and 50.

14. ACT. "Present. [,] Loving. [;] Perfect. [,] Loved. [;] Compound

Perfect. [,] Having loved." PAS. "Perfect or Passive. Loved. Compound

Perfect. Having been loved."--\_Bicknell's Gram. Lond.\_, 1790, Part I, pp.

66 and 70; \_L. Murray's\_ 2d \_Edition, York\_, 1796, pp. 72 and 77. Here

"\_Being loved\_," is not noticed.

15. "\_Participles. Active Voice. Present.\_ Loving. \_Past\_. Loved, or having

loved. \_Participles. Passive Voice. Present.\_ Being loved. \_Past\_. Having

been loved."--\_John Burn's Practical Gram.\_, p. 70. Here the chief Passive

term, "Loved," is omitted, and two of the active forms are confounded.

16. "\_Present\_, loving, \_Past\_, loved, \_Compound\_, having loved."--\_S. W.

Clark's Practical Gram.\_, of 1848, p. 71. "ACT. VOICE.--\_Present\_ ...

Loving [;] \_Compound\_ [,] Having loved...... \_Having been loving\_."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 81. "PAS. VOICE.--\_Present\_..... Loved, or, being loved [;]

\_Compound\_..... Having been loved."--\_Ib.\_, p. 83. "The Compound Participle

consists of \_the\_ Participle of a principal verb, added to the word

\_having\_, or \_being\_, or to the two words \_having been\_. Examples--Having

loved--\_being loved\_--having been loved."--\_Ib.\_, p. 71. Here the second

extract is \_deficient\_, as may be seen by comparing it with the first; and

the fourth is \_grossly erroneous\_, as is shown by the third. The

participles, too, are misnamed throughout.

The reader may observe that the \_punctuation\_ of the foregoing examples is

very discrepant. I have, in brackets, suggested some corrections, but have

not attempted a general adjustment of it.

[303] "The \_most unexceptionable\_ distinction which grammarians make

between the participles, is, that the one points to the continuation of the

action, passion, or state denoted by the verb; and the other, to the

completion of it. Thus, the present participle signifies \_imperfect\_

action, or action begun and not ended: as, 'I am \_writing\_ a letter.' The

past participle signifies action \_perfected\_, or finished: as, 'I have

\_written\_ a letter.'--'The letter is written.'"--\_Murray's Grammar\_, 8vo,

p. 65. "The first [participle] expresses a \_continuation\_; the other, a

\_completion\_."--\_W. Allen's Grammar\_, 12mo, London, 1813. "The idea which

this participle [e.g. '\_tearing\_'] really expresses, is simply that of the

\_continuance\_ of an action in an \_incomplete\_ or \_unfinished\_ state. The

action may belong to time \_present\_, to time \_past\_, or to time \_future\_.

The participle which denotes the \_completion\_ of an action, as \_torn\_, is

called the \_perfect\_ participle; because it represents the action as

\_perfect\_ or \_finished\_."--\_Barnard's Analytic Gram.\_, p. 51. Emmons

stealthily copies from my Institutes as many as ten lines in defence of the

term '\_Imperfect\_' and yet, in his conjugations, he calls the participle in

\_ing\_, "\_Present\_." This seems inconsistent. See his "\_Grammatical

Instructer\_," p. 61.

[304] "The ancient termination (from the Anglo-Saxon) was \_and\_; as, 'His

\_schynand\_ sword.' Douglas. And sometimes \_ende\_; as, 'She, between the

deth and life, \_Swounende\_ lay full ofte.' Gower."--\_W. Allen's Gram.\_, p.

88. "The present Participle, in Saxon, was formed by \_ande, ende\_, or

\_onde\_; and, by cutting off the final \_e\_, it acquired a Substantive

signification, and extended the idea to the agent: as, \_alysende\_, freeing,

and \_alysend\_, a redeemer; \_freonde\_, loving or friendly, and \_freond\_, a

lover or a friend."--\_Booth's Introd. to Dict.\_, p. 75.

[305] William B. Fowle, a modern disciple of Tooke, treats the subject of

grammatical time rather more strangely than his master. Thus: "How many

times or tenses have verbs? \_Two\_, [the] present and [the] \_past\_," To this

he immediately adds in a note: "We \_do not believe\_ in a \_past\_ any more

than a future tense of verbs."--\_The True English Gram.\_, p. 30. So,

between these two authors, our verbs will retain no tenses at all. Indeed,

by his two tenses, Fowle only meant to recognize the two simple forms of an

English verb. For he says, in an other place, "We repeat our conviction

that no verb in itself expresses time of any sort."--\_Ib.\_, p. 69,

[306] "STONE'-BLIND," "STONE'-COLD," and "STONE'-DEAD," are given in

Worcester's Dictionary, as compound \_adjectives\_; and this is perhaps their

best classification; but, if I mistake not, they are usually accented quite

as strongly on the latter syllable, as on the former, being spoken rather

as two emphatic words. A similar example from Sigourney, "I saw an infant

\_marble cold\_," is given by Frazee under this Note: "Adjectives sometimes

belong to other adjectives; as, '\_red hot\_ iron.'"--\_Improved Gram.\_, p.

141. But Webster himself, from whom this doctrine and the example are

borrowed, (see his Rule XIX,) makes "RED'-HOT" but one word in his

Dictionary; and Worcester gives it as one word, in a less proper form, even

without a hyphen, "RED'HOT."

[307] "OF ENALLAGE.--The construction which may be reduced to this figure

in English, chiefly appears when one part of speech, is used with the power

and effect of another."--\_Ward's English Gram.\_, p. 150.

[308] \_Forsooth\_ is \_literally\_ a word of affirmation or assent, meaning

\_for truth\_, but it is now almost always used \_ironically\_: as, "In these

gentlemen whom the world \_forsooth\_ calls wise and solid, there is

generally either a moroseness that persecutes, or a dullness that tires

you."--\_Home's Art of Thinking\_, p. 24.

[309] In most instances, however, the words \_hereof, thereof\_, and

\_whereof\_, are placed after \_nouns\_, and have nothing to do with any

\_verb\_. They are therefore not properly \_adverbs\_, though all our

grammarians and lexicographers call them so. Nor are they \_adjectives\_;

because they are not used adjectively, but rather in the sense of a pronoun

governed by \_of\_; or, what is nearly the same thing, in the sense of the

possessive or genitive case. Example: "And the fame \_hereof\_ went

abroad."--\_Matt.\_, ix, 26. That is, "the fame \_of this miracle\_;" which

last is a better expression, the other being obsolete, or worthy to be so,

on account of its irregularity.

[310] \_Seldom\_ is sometimes compared in this manner, though not frequently;

as, "This kind of verse occurs the \_seldomest\_, but has a happy effect in

diversifying the melody."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 385. In former days, this

word, as well as its correlative \_often\_, was sometimes used \_adjectively\_;

as, "Thine \_often\_ infirmities."--\_1 Tim.\_, v, 23. "I hope God's Book hath

not been my \_seldomest\_ lectures."--\_Queen Elizabeth\_, 1585. John Walker

has regularly compared the adverb \_forward\_: in describing the latter L, he

speaks of the tip of the tongue as being "brought a little \_forwarder\_ to

the teeth."--\_Pron. Dict., Principles\_, No. 55.

[311] A few instances of the \_regular inflection\_ of adverbs ending in

\_ly\_, may be met with in \_modern\_ compositions, as in the following

comparisons: "As melodies will sometimes ring \_sweetlier\_ in the

echo."--\_The Dial\_, Vol. i, p. 6. "I remember no poet whose writings would

\_safelier\_ stand the test."--\_Coleridge's Biog. Lit.\_, Vol. ii, p. 53.

[312] De Sacy, in his Principles of General Grammar, calls the relative

pronouns "\_Conjunctive Adjectives\_." See \_Fosdick's Translation\_, p. 57. He

also says, "The words \_who, which\_, etc. are not the only words which

connect the function of a Conjunction with another design. There are

Conjunctive \_Nouns\_ and \_Adverbs\_, as well as Adjectives; and a

characteristic of these words is, that we can substitute for them another

form of expression in which shall be found the words \_who, which\_, etc.

Thus, \_when, where, what, how, as\_, and many others, are Conjunctive words:

[as,] 'I shall finish \_when\_ I please;' that is, 'I shall finish \_at the

time at which\_ I please.'--'I know not \_where\_ I am;' i.e. 'I know not \_the

place in which\_ I am.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 58. In respect to the conjunctive

\_adverbs\_, this is well enough, so far as it goes; but the word \_who\_

appears to me to be a pronoun, and not an adjective; and of his

"\_Conjunctive Nouns\_," he ought to have given us some examples, if he knew

of any.

[313] "Now the Definition of a CONJUNCTION is as follows--\_a Part of

Speech, void of Signification itself, but so formed as to help

Signification by making\_ TWO \_or more significant Sentences to be\_ ONE

\_significant Sentence\_."--\_Harris's Hermes\_, 6th Edition, London, p. 238.

[314] Whether these, or any other conjunctions that come together, ought to

ho parsed together, is doubtful. I am not in favour of taking any words

together, that can well be parsed separately. Goodenow, who defines a

phrase to be "the union of two or more words having the \_nature and

construcion [sic--KTH] of a single word\_," finds an immense number of these

unions, which he cannot, or does not, analyze. As examples of "a

\_conjunctional phrase\_," he gives "\_as if\_ and "\_as though\_."--\_Gram.\_, p.

25. But when he comes to speak of \_ellipsis\_, he says: "After the

conjunctions \_than, as, but\_, &c., some words are generally understood;

as, 'We have more than [\_that is which\_] will suffice;' 'He acted \_as\_ [\_he

would act\_] \_if\_ he were mad.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 41. This doctrine is plainly

repugnant to the other.

[315] Of the construction noticed in this observation, the Rev. Matt.

Harrison cites a good example; pronounces it elliptical; and scarcely

forbears to condemn it as bad English: "\_In\_ the following sentence, the

relative pronoun is three times omitted:--'Is there a God to swear \_by\_,

and is there none to believe \_in\_, none to trust \_to\_?'--\_Letters and

Essays, Anonymous\_. \_By, in\_, and \_to\_, as prepositions, stand alone,

\_denuded of the relatives\_ to which they apply. The sentence presents no

attractions worthy of imitation. It exhibits a license carried to the

extreme point of endurance."--\_Harrison's English Language\_, p. 196.

[316] "An ellipsis of \_from\_ after the adverb \_off\_ has caused the latter

word sometimes to be inserted \_incorrectly\_ among the prepositions. Ex.

'off (from) his horse.'"--\_Hart's Gram.\_, p. 96. \_Off\_ and \_on\_ are

opposites; and, in a sentence like the following, I see no more need of

inserting "\_from\_" after the former, than \_to\_ after the latter: "Thou

shalt not come down \_off\_ that bed \_on\_ which thou art gone up."--2

\_Kings\_, i, 16.

[317] "\_Who consequently\_ reduced the \_greatest\_ part of the island TO

their own power."--\_Swift, on the English Tongue\_. "We can say, that \_one

nation reduces another\_ TO \_subjection\_. But when \_dominion\_ or \_power\_ is

used, we always, \_as\_ [so] far as I know, say, \_reduce\_ UNDER \_their

power\_" [or \_dominion\_]--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 229.

[318] "\_O foy\_, don't misapprehend me; I don't say so."--DOUBLE DEALER:

\_Kames, El. of Crit.\_, i, 305.

[319] According to Walker and Webster, \_la\_ is pronounced \_law\_; and, if

they are right in this, the latter is only a false mode of spelling. But I

set down both, because both are found in books, and because I incline to

think the former is from the French \_la\_, which is pronounced \_lah\_.

Johnson and Webster make \_la\_ and \_lo\_ synonymous; deriving \_lo\_ from the

Saxon \_la\_, and \_la\_ either from \_lo\_ or from the French \_la\_. "\_Law\_, how

you joke, cousin."--\_Columbian Orator\_, p. 178. "\_Law\_ me! the very ghosts

are come now!"--\_Ibid.\_ "\_Law\_, sister Betty! I am glad to see

you!"--\_Ibid.\_

"\_La\_ you! If you speak ill of the devil,

How he takes it at heart!"--SHAKESPEARE: \_Joh. Dict., w. La.\_

[320] The interjection of interrogating, being placed independently, either

after a question, or after something which it converts into a question, is

usually marked with its own separate eroteme; as, "But this is even so:

eh?"--\_Newspaper\_. "Is't not drown'd i' the last rain? Ha?"--\_Shakespeare\_.

"Does Bridget paint still, Pompey? Ha?"--\_Id.\_ "Suits my complexion--\_hey\_,

gal? so I think."--\_Yankee Schoolmaster\_. Sometimes we see it divided only

by a comma, from the preceding question; as, "What dost thou think of this

doctrine, Friend Gurth, ha?"--SCOTT'S IVANHOE: \_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §29.

[321] Though \_oh\_ and \_ah\_ are most commonly used as signs of these

depressing passions, it must be confessed that they are sometimes employed

by reputable writers, as marks of cheerfulness or exultation; as, "\_Ah\_,

pleasant proof," &c.--\_Cowper's Task\_, p. 179. "Merrily \_oh!\_ merrily

\_oh!\_"--\_Moore's Tyrolese Song\_. "Cheerily \_oh!\_ cheerily \_oh!\_"--\_Ib.\_ But

even if this usage be supposed to be right, there is still some difference

between these words and the interjection \_O\_: if there were not, we might

dispense with the latter, and substitute one of the former; but this would

certainly change the import of many an invocation.

[322] This position is denied by some grammarians. One recent author says,

"The \_object\_ cannot properly be called one of the principal parts of a

sentence; as it belongs only to some sentences, and then is dependent on

the verb, which it modifies or explains."--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_, p. 87. This

is consistent enough with the notion, that, "An infinitive, with or without

a substantive, may be \_the object of a transitive verb\_; as, 'I wish \_to

ride\_;' 'I wish \_you to ride\_.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 37. Or, with the \_contrary\_

notion, that, "An infinitive may be \_the object of a\_ \_preposition\_,

expressed or understood; as, 'I wish \_for you to ride\_.'"--\_Ibid.\_ But if

the object governed by the verb, is always a mere qualifying adjunct, a

mere "explanation of the attribute," (\_Ib.\_, p. 28,) how differs it from an

adverb? "Adverbs are words \_added to verbs\_, and sometimes to other words,

to \_qualify\_ their meaning."--\_Ib.\_, p. 23. And if infinitives and other

mere \_adjuncts\_ may be the objects which make verbs transitive, how shall a

transitive verb be known? The fact is, that the \_true\_ object of the

transitive verb \_is one of the principal\_ \_parts\_ of the sentence, and that

the infinitive mood cannot properly be reckoned such an object.

[323] Some writers distinguish sentences as being of \_three\_ kinds,

\_simple\_, and \_complex\_, and \_compound\_; but, in this work, care has not in

general been taken to discriminate between complex sentences and compound.

A late author states the difference thus: "A sentence containing but one

proposition is \_simple\_; a sentence containing two propositions, one of

which modifies the other, is \_complex\_; a sentence containing two

propositions which in no way modify each other, is \_compound\_."--\_Greene's

Analysis\_, p. 3. The term \_compound\_, as applied to sentences, is not

\_usually\_ so restricted. An other, using the same terms for a very

different division, explains them thus: "A \_Simple Sentence\_ contains but

one subject and one attribute; as, 'The \_sun shines\_.' A \_Complex Sentence\_

contains two or more subjects of the same attribute, or two or more

attributes of the same subject; as, 'The \_sun\_ and the \_stars\_ shine.' 'The

sun \_rises\_ and \_sets\_.' 'The \_sun\_ and the \_stars rise\_ and \_set\_.' A

\_Compound Sentence\_ is composed of two or more simple or complex sentences

united; as, 'The \_sun shines\_, and the \_stars twinkle\_.' 'The \_sun rises\_

and \_sets\_, as the \_earth revolves\_.'"--\_Pinneo's English Teacher\_, p. 10;

\_Analytical Gram.\_, pp. 128, 142, and 146. This notion of a \_complex

sentence\_ is not more common than Greene's; nor is it yet apparent, that

the usual division of sentences into two kinds ought to give place to any

tripartite distribution.

[324] The terms \_clause\_ and \_member\_, in grammar, appear to have been

generally used as words synonymous; but some authors have thought it

convenient to discriminate them, as having different senses. Hiley says,

"Those parts of a sentence which are separated by commas, are called

\_clauses\_; and those separated by semicolons, are called

\_members\_."--\_Hiley' s Gram.\_, p. 66. W. Allen too confines the former term

to simple members: "A compound sentence is formed by uniting two or more

simple sentences; as, Man is mortal, and life is uncertain. Each of these

simple sentences is called a \_clause\_. When the \_members\_ of a compound

sentence are complex, they are \_subdivided\_ into \_clauses\_; as, Virtue

leads to honor, and insures true happiness; but vice degrades the

understanding, and is succeeded by infamy."--\_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 128. By

some authors, the terms \_clause\_ and \_phrase\_ are often carelessly

confounded, each being applied with no sort of regard to its proper import.

Thus, where L. Murray and his copyists expound their text about "the

pupil's composing frequently," even the minor phrase, "\_composing

frequently\_," is absurdly called a \_clause\_; "an entire \_clause\_ of a

sentence."--See \_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 179; \_Alger's\_, 61; \_Fisk's\_, 108;

\_Ingersoll's\_, 180; \_Merchant's\_, 84; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 152; \_Weld's\_, 2d

Ed., 150. The term \_sentence\_ also is sometimes grossly misapplied. Thus,

by R. C. Smith, the phrases "\_James and William\_," "\_Thomas and John\_," and

others similar, are called "sentences."--\_Smith's New Gram.\_, pp. 9 and 10.

So Weld absurdly writes as follows; "A \_whole sentence\_ is frequently the

object of a preposition; as, 'The crime of being a young man.' \_Being a

young man\_, is the object of the preposition \_of\_."--\_Weld's E. Gram.\_, 2d

Edition, p. 42. The phrase, "\_being a young man\_," here depends upon

"\_of\_;" but this preposition governs nothing but the participle "\_being\_."

The construction of the word "\_man\_" is explained below, in Obs. 7th on

Rule 6th, of Same Cases.

[325] In the very nature of things, all \_agreement\_ consists in

concurrence, correspondence, conformity, similarity, sameness, equality;

but \_government\_ is direction, control, regulation, restrain, influence,

authoritative requisition, with the implication of inequality. That these

properties ought to be so far distinguished in grammar, as never to be

supposed to co-exist in the same terms and under the same circumstances,

must be manifest to every reasoner. Some grammarians who seem to have been

not always unaware of this, have nevertheless egregiously forgotten it at

times. Thus Nutting, in the following remark, expresses a true doctrine,

though he has written it with no great accuracy: "A word \_in parsing\_ never

governs the same word \_which\_ it qualifies, or with which it

agrees."--\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 108. Yet, in his syntax, in which he

pretends to separate agreement from government, he frames his first rule

under the better head thus: "The nominative case \_governs\_ a verb."--\_Ib.\_

p. 96. Lindsey Murray recognizes no such government as this; but seems to

suppose his rule for the agreement of a verb with its nominative to be

sufficient for both verb and nominative. He appears, however, not to have

known that a word does not agree syntactically with another that governs

it; for, in his Exercises, he has given us, apparently from his own pen,

the following \_untrue\_, but otherwise not very objectionable sentence: "On

these occasions, the pronoun is governed by, \_an consequently agrees with\_,

the preceding word."--\_Exercises\_, 8vo, ii, 74. This he corrects thus: On

these occasions, the pronoun is governed by the preceding word, \_and

consequently agrees with it\_."--\_Key\_, 8vo, ii, 204. The amendments most

needed he overlooks; for the thought is not just, and the two verbs which

are here connected with one and the same nominative, are different in form.

See the same example, with the same variation of it, in \_Smith's New

Gram.\_, p. 167; and, without the change, in \_Ingersoll's\_, p. 233; \_and

Fisk's\_, 141.

[326] It has been the notion of some grammarians, that \_the verb governs

the nominative before it\_. This is an old rule, which seems to have been

very much forgotten by modern authors; though doubtless it is as true, and

as worthy to be perpetuated, as that which supposes the nominative to

govern the verb: "Omne verbum personale finiti modi regit ante se expresse

vel subaudite ejusdem numeri et personæ nominativum vel aliquid pro

nominativo: ut, \_ego scribo, tu legis, ille auscultat\_."--DESPAUTERII SYNT.

fol. xvi. This Despauter was a laborious author, who, within fifty years

after the introduction of printing, complains that he found his task heavy,

on account of the immense number of books and opinions which he had to

consult: "Necdum tamen huic operi ultimam manum aliter imposui, quam

Apelles olim picturis: siquidem aptius exire, quum in multis tum in hac

arte est difficillimum, \_propter librorum legendorum immensitatem\_, et

opinionum innumeram diversitatem."--\_Ibid., Epist. Apologetica\_, A. D.

1513. But if, for this reason, the task was heavy \_then\_, what is it \_now\_!

[327] Nutting's rule certainly implies that \_articles\_ may relate to

\_pronouns\_, though he gives no example, nor can he give any that is now

good English; but he may, if he pleases, quote some other modern

grammatists, who teach the same false doctrine: as, "RULE II. \_The article

refers to its noun\_ (OR PRONOUN) \_to limit its signification\_."--R. G.

Greene's Grammatical Text-Book, p. 18. Greene's two grammars are used

extensively in the state of Maine, but they appear to be little known

anywhere else. This author professes to inculcate "the principles

established by Lindley Murray." If veracity, on this point, is worth any

thing, it is a pity that in both books there are so many points which, like

the foregoing parenthesis, belie this profession. He followed here

Ingersoll's RULE IV, which is this: "\_The article refers to a noun\_ OR

PRONOUN, \_expressed or understood, to limit its signification\_."--

\_Conversations on E. Gram.\_, p. 185.

[328] It is truly a matter of surprise to find under what \_titles\_ or

\_heads\_, many of the rules of syntax have been set, by some of the best

scholars that have ever written on grammar. In this respect, the Latin and

Greek grammarians are particularly censurable; but it better suits my

purpose to give an example or two from one of the ablest of the English.

Thus that elegant scholar the Rev. W. Allen: "SYNTAX OF NOUNS. 325. A verb

agrees with its nominative case in number and person."--\_Elements of E.

Gram.\_, p. 131. This is in no wise the syntax of \_Nouns\_, but rather that

of \_the Verb\_. Again: "SYNTAX OF VERBS. 405. Active Verbs govern the

accusative case; as, I love \_him\_. We saw \_them\_. God rules the

\_world\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 161. This is not properly the syntax of \_Verbs\_, but

rather that of \_Nouns\_ or \_Pronouns\_ in the accusative or objective case.

Any one who has but the least sense of order, must see the propriety of

referring the rule to that sort of words to which it is applied in parsing,

and not some other. Verbs are never parsed or construed by the latter of

these rules nor nouns by the former.

[329] What "the Series of Grammars, English, Latin, and Greek, ON THE SAME

PLAN," will ultimately be,--how many treatises for each or any of the

languages it will probably contain,--what uniformity will be found in the

distribution of their several sorts and sizes,--or what \_sameness\_ they

will have, except that which is bestowed by the binders,--cannot yet be

stated with any certainty. It appears now, in 1850, that the scheme has

thus far resulted in the production of \_three remarkably different

grammars\_, for the English part of the series, and two more, a Latin

grammar and a Greek, which resemble each other, or any of these, as little.

In these works, abound changes and discrepances, sometimes indicating a

great \_unsettlement\_ of "principles" or "plan," and often exciting our

wonder at the extraordinary \_variety\_ of teaching, which has been claimed

to be, "as nearly in the same words as the as the \_genius of the languages\_

would permit!" In what \_should\_ have been uniform, and easily \_might\_ have

been so, these grammars are rather remarkably diverse! Uniformity in the

order, number, or phraseology of the Rules of Syntax, even for our own

language, seems scarcely yet to have entered this "SAME PLAN" at all! The

"onward progress of English grammar," or, rather, of the author's studies

therein, has already, within "fifteen years," greatly varied, from the

\_first model\_ of the "\_Series\_," his own idea of a good grammar; and,

though such changes bar consistency, a future progress, real or imaginary,

may likewise, with as good reason, vary it yet as much more. In the preface

to the work of 1840, it is said: "This, though \_not essentially different\_

from the former, is yet in some respects a new work. It has been almost

\_entirely rewritten\_." And again: "The Syntax is \_much fuller\_ than in the

former work; and though \_the rules are not different\_, they are arranged in

a \_different order\_." So it is proved, that the model needed remodelling;

and that the Syntax, especially, was defective, in matter as well as in

order. The suggestions, that "\_the rules are not different\_," and the

works, \_"not essentially" so\_, will sound best to those who shall never

compare them. The old code has thirty-four chief, and twenty-two "special

rules;" the new has twenty chief, thirty-six "special," and one "general

rule." Among all these, we shall scarcely find \_exact sameness\_ preserved

in so many as half a dozen instances. Of the old thirty-four, \_fourteen

only\_ were judged worthy to remain as principal rules; and two of these

have no claim at all to such rank, one of them being quite useless. Of the

\_twenty\_ now made chief, five are new to "the Series of Grammars," and

three of these exceedingly resemble as many of mine; five are slightly

altered, and five greatly, from their predecessors among the old: one is

the first half of an old rule; one is an old subordinate rule, altered and

elevated; and \_three are as they were before\_, their numbers and relative

positions excepted!

[330] "The grammatical predicate is a verb."--\_Butler's Pract. Gram.\_,

1845, p. 135, "\_The grammatical predicate\_ is a finite verb."--\_Wells's

School Gram.\_, 1850, p. 185. "The grammatical predicate is either a verb

alone, or the copula \_sum\_ [some part of the verb \_be\_] with a noun or

adjective."--\_Andrews and Stoddard's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 163. "The \_predicate\_

consists of two parts,--the verb, or \_copula\_, and that which is asserted

by it, called the \_attribute\_; as 'Snow \_is white\_.'"--\_Greene's Analysis\_.

p. 15. "The \_grammatical\_ predicate consists of the \_attribute\_ and

\_copula\_ not modified by other word."--\_Bullions, Analyt, and Pract.

Gram.\_, P. 129. "The \_logical\_ predicate is the grammatical, with all the

words or phrases that modify it." \_Ib.\_ p. 130. "The \_Grammatical

predicate\_ is the word or words containing the simple affirmation, made

respecting the subject."--\_Bullions, Latin Gram.\_, p. 269. "Every

proposition necessarily consists of these three parts: [the \_subject\_, the

\_predicate\_, and the \_copula\_;] but then it is not alike needful, that they

be all severally expressed in words; because the copula \_is often included\_

in the term of the predicate; as when we say, \_he sits\_, which imports the

same as, \_he is sitting\_."--\_Duncan's Logic\_, p 105. In respect to this

Third Method of Analysis. It is questionable, whether a noun or an

adjective which follows the verb and forms part of the assertion, is to be

included in "the grammatical predicate" or not. Wells says, No: "It would

destroy at once all distinction between the grammatical and the logical

predicate."--\_School Gram.\_, p. 185. An other question is, whether the

\_copula\_ (\_is, was\_ or the like,) which the \_logicians\_ discriminate,

should be included as part of the \_logical\_ predicate, when it occurs as a

distinct word. The prevalent practice of the \_grammatical\_ analyzers is, so

to include it,--a practice which in itself is not very "logical." The

distinction of subjects and predicates as "\_grammatical\_ and \_logical\_," is

but a recent one. In some grammars, the partition used in logic is copied

without change, except perhaps of \_words\_: as "There are, in sentences, a

\_subject\_, a \_predicate\_ and a \_copula\_." JOS. R. CHANDLER, \_Gram. of\_

1821, p. 105; \_Gram. of\_ 1847, p. 116. The logicians, however, and those

who copy them, may have been hitherto at fault in recognizing and

specifying their "\_copula\_." Mulligan forcibly argues that the verb of

\_being\_ is no more entitled to this name than is every other verb. (See his

\_Exposition\_," §46.) If he is right in this, the "\_copula\_" of the

logicians (an in my opinion, his own also) is a mere figment of the brain,

there being nothing that answers to the definition of the thing or to the

true use of the word.

[331] I cite this example from Wells, for the purpose of explaining it

without the several errors which that gentleman's \_"Model"\_ incidentally

inculcates. He suggests that \_and\_ connects, not the two relative

\_clauses\_, as such, but the two verbs \_can give\_ and \_can take\_; and that

the connexion between \_away\_ and \_is\_ must be traced through the former,

and its object \_which.\_ These positions, I think, are wrong. He also uses

here, as elsewhere, the expressions, \_"which relates it"\_ and, \_"which is

related by,"\_ each in a very unusual, and perhaps an unauthorized, sense.

His formule reads thus: "\_Away\_ modifies \_can take\_; \_can take\_ is

CONNECTED with \_can give\_ by \_and\_; WHICH is governed by CAN GIVE, and

relates to \_security\_; \_security\_ is the object of \_finding\_, \_which\_ is

RELATED BY \_of\_ to \_conviction\_; \_conviction\_ is the object of with,

\_which\_ RELATES IT to \_can look\_; \_to\_ expresses the relation between

\_whom\_ and \_can look\_, and \_whom\_ relates to \_Being\_, which is the subject

of \_is."\_ --\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 113th Ed., p. 192. Neither this nor the

subsequent method has been often called \_"analysis;"\_ for, in grammar, each

user of this term has commonly applied it to some one method only,--the

method preferred by himself.

[332] The possessive phrase here should be, "\_Andrews and Stoddard's\_," as

Wells and others write it. The adding of the apostrophe to the former name

is wrong, even by the better half of Butler's own absurd and

self-contradictory Rule: to wit, "When two or more nouns in the possessive

case are connected by \_and\_, the possessive termination \_should be added to

each of them\_; as, 'These are \_John's and Eliza's\_ books.' But, if objects

are possessed in common by two or more, and the nouns are closely connected

without any intervening words, the possessive termination is \_added to the

last noun only\_; as, 'These are \_John and Eliza's\_ books.'"--\_Butler's\_

\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 163. The sign twice used implies two governing nouns:

"John's and Eliza's books." = "John's books and Eliza's;" "Andrews' and

Stoddard's Latin Grammar," = "Andrews' (or Andrews's) Latin Grammar and

Stoddard's"

[333] In Mulligan's recent "Exposition of the Grammatical Structure of the

English Language,"--the work of an able hand,--this kind of "Analysis,"

being most improperly pronounced "\_the chief business of the grammarian\_,"

is swelled by copious explanation under minute heads, to a volume

containing more than three times as much matter as Greene's; but, since

school-boys have little relish for long arguments, and prolixity had here

already reached to satiety and disgust, it is very doubtful whether the

practical utility of this "Improved Method of Teaching Grammar," will be

greater in proportion to this increase of bulk.--G. B., 1853.

[334] "I will not take upon me to say, whether we have any Grammar that

sufficiently instructs us by rule and example; but I am sure we have none,

that in the manner here attempted, teaches us what is right, by showing

what is wrong; though this perhaps may prove \_the more useful and effectual

method\_ of Instruction."--\_Lowth's Gram., Pref.\_, p. viii.

[335] With the possessive case and its governing noun, we use but \_one

article\_; and sometimes it seems questionable, to which of the two that

article properly relates: as, "This is one of \_the\_ Hebrews'

children."--\_Exodus\_, ii, 6. The sentence is plainly equivalent to the

following, which has two articles: "This is one of \_the\_ children of \_the\_

Hebrews." Not because the one article is equivalent to the two, or because

it relates to both of the nouns; but because the possessive relation itself

makes one of the nouns sufficiently definite. Now, if we change the latter

construction back into the former, it is the noun \_children\_ that drops its

article; it is therefore the other to which the remaining article relates.

But we sometimes find examples in which the same analogy does not hold.

Thus, "\_a summer's day\_" means, "\_a day of summer\_;" and we should hardly

pronounce it equivalent to "\_the day of a summer\_." So the questionable

phrase, "\_a three days' journey\_," means, "\_a journey of three days\_;" and,

whether the construction be right or wrong, the article \_a\_ cannot be said

to relate to the plural noun. Possibly such a phrase as, "\_the three years'

war\_," might mean, "\_the war of three years\_;" so that the article must

relate to the latter noun. But in general it is the latter noun that is

rendered definite by the possessive relation: thus the phrase, "\_man's

works\_" is equivalent to "\_the works\_ of man," not to "\_works of the man\_;"

so, "\_the man's works\_," is equivalent, not to "the works of man," but to

"the works of \_the\_ man."

[336] Horne Tooke says, "The \_use\_ of A after the word MANY is a corruption

for \_of\_; and has \_no connection\_ whatever with the \_article\_ A, i. e.

\_one\_."--\_Diversions of Purley\_, Vol. ii, p. 324. With this conjecture of

the learned etymologist, I do not concur: it is hardly worth while to state

here, what may he urged pro and con.

[337] "Nothing can be more certain than that [in Greek syntax] all words

used for the purpose of definition, either stand between the article and

the noun, or have their own article prefixed. Yet it may sometimes happen

that an apposition [with an article] is parenthetically inserted instead of

being affixed."--J. W. DONALDSON: \_Journal of Philology\_, No. 2, p. 223.

[338] \_Churchill\_ rashly condemns this construction, and still more rashly

proposes to make the noun singular without repeating the article. See his

\_New Gram.\_, p. 311. But he sometimes happily forgets his own doctrine; as,

"In fact, \_the second and fourth lines\_ here stamp the character of the

measure."--\_Ib.\_, p. 391. O. B. Peirce says, "'Joram's \_second\_ and \_third

daughters\_,' must mean, if it means any thing, his \_second daughters\_ and

\_third daughters\_; and, 'the \_first\_ and \_second verses\_.' if it means any

thing, must represent the \_first verses\_ and the \_second verses\_."--

\_Peirce's English Gram.\_, p. 263. According to my notion, this

interpretation is as false and hypercritical, as is the rule by which the

author professes to show what is right. He might have been better employed

in explaining some of his own phraseology, such as, "the \_indefinite-past

and present\_ of the \_declarative mode\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 100. The critic who

writes such stuff as this, may well be a misinterpreter of good common

English. It is plain, that the two examples which he thus distorts, are

neither obscure nor inelegant. But, in an alternative of single things, the

article \_must be repeated\_, and a plural noun is improper; as, "But they do

not receive \_the\_ Nicene \_or the\_ Athanasian \_creeds\_."--\_Adam's Religious

World\_, Vol. ii, p. 105. Say, "\_creed\_." So in an enumeration; as, "There

are three participles: \_the\_ present, \_the\_ perfect, and \_the\_ compound

perfect \_participles\_"--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 42. Expunge this last word,

"\_participles\_." Sometimes a sentence is wrong, not as being in itself a

solecism, but as being unadapted to the author's thought. Example: "Other

tendencies will be noticed in the Etymological and Syntactical

part."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, N. Y., 1850, p. 75. This implies, what appears

not to be true, that the author meant to treat Etymology and Syntax

\_together\_ in a single part of his work. Had he put an \_s\_ to the noun

"part," he might have been understood in either of two other ways, but not

in this. To make sure of his meaning, therefore, he should have said--"in

the Etymological \_Part\_ and \_the\_ Syntactical."

[339] Oliver B. Peirce, in his new theory of grammar, not only adopts

Ingersoll's error, but adds others to it. He supposes no ellipsis, and

declares it grossly improper ever to insert the pronoun. According to him,

the following text is wrong: "My son, \_despise not thou\_ the chastening of

the Lord."--\_Heb.\_, xii, 5. See \_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 255. Of this

gentleman's book I shall say the less, because its faults are so many and

so obvious. Yet this is "\_The Grammar of the English Language\_," and claims

to be the only work which is worthy to be called an English Grammar. "The

first and only Grammar of the English Language!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 10. In

punctuation, it is a very \_chaos\_, as one might guess from the following

Rule: "A \_word\_ of the \_second person\_, and in the \_subjective\_ case, \_must

have\_ a \_semicolon\_ after it; as, John; hear me."--\_Id.\_, p. 282. Behold

his practice! "John, beware."--P. 84. "Children, study."--P. 80. "Henry;

study."--P. 249. "Pupil: parse."--P. 211; and many other places. "Be thou,

or do thou be writing? Be ye or you, or do ye or you be writing?"--P. 110.

According to his Rule, this tense requires six semicolons; but the author

points it with two commas and two notes of interrogation!

[340] In Butler's Practical Grammar, first published in 1845, this doctrine

is taught as a \_novelty\_. His publishers, in their circular letter, speak

of it as one of "the \_peculiar advantages\_ of this grammar over preceding

works," and as an important matter, "\_heretofore altogether omitted by

grammarians\_!" Wells cites Butler in support of his false principle: "A

verb in the infinitive is \_often\_ preceded by a noun or pronoun in the

objective, which has \_no direct dependence\_ on any other word.

Examples:--'Columbus ordered a strong \_fortress\_ of wood and plaster \_to be

erected\_.'--\_Irving\_. 'Its favors here should make \_us tremble\_.'--

\_Young\_." See \_Wells's School Gram.\_, p. 147.

[341] "Sometimes indeed \_the verb hath two regimens\_, and then \_the

preposition is necessary\_ to one of them; as, 'I address myself \_to\_ my

judges.'"--\_Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric\_, p. 178. Here the verb

\_address\_ governs the pronoun \_myself\_, and is also the antecedent to the

preposition \_to\_; and the construction would be similar, if the preposition

governed the infinitive or a participle: as, "I prepared myself \_to\_ swim;"

or, "I prepared myself \_for\_ swimming." But, in any of these cases, it is

not very accurate to say, "\_the verb has two regimens\_;" for the latter

term is properly the regimen of the \_preposition\_. Cardell, by robbing the

prepositions, and supposing ellipses, found \_two regimens for every verb\_.

W. Allen, on the contrary, (from whom Nixon gathered his doctrine above,)

by giving the "accusative" to the infinitive, makes a multitude of our

active-transitive verbs "\_neuter\_." See \_Allen's Gram.\_, p. 166. But Nixon

absurdly calls the verb "active-transitive," \_because it governs the

infinitive\_; i. e. as he supposes--and, except when \_to\_ is not used,

\_erroneously\_ supposes.

[342] A certain \_new theorist\_, who very innocently fogs himself and his

credulous readers with a deal of impertinent pedantry, after denouncing my

doctrine that \_to\_ before the infinitive is a \_preposition\_, appeals to me

thus: "Let me ask you, G. B.--is not the infinitive in Latin \_the same\_ as

in \_the English?\_ Thus, I desire \_to teach Latin\_--Ego Cupio \_docere\_. I

saw Abel \_come\_--Ego videbam Abelem \_venire\_. The same principle is

recognized by the Greek grammars and those of most of the modern

languages."--\_O. B. Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 358. Of this gentleman I know

nothing but from what appears in his book--a work of immeasurable and

ill-founded vanity--a whimsical, dogmatical, blundering performance. This

short sample of his Latin, (\_with six puerile errors in seven words\_,) is

proof positive that he knows nothing of that language, whatever may be his

attainments in Greek, or the other tongues of which he tells. To his

question I answer emphatically, NO. In Latin, "One verb governs an other in

the infinitive; as, \_Cupio discere\_, I desire \_to\_ learn."--\_Adam's Gram.\_,

p. 181. This government never admits the intervention of a preposition. "I

saw Abel come," has no preposition; but the Latin of it is, "\_Vidi Abelem

venientem\_," and not what is given above; or, according to St. Jerome and

others, who wrote, "\_Abel\_," without declension, we ought rather to say,

"\_Vidi Abel venientem\_." If they are right, "\_Ego videbam Abelem venire\_,"

is every word of it wrong!

[343] Priestley cites these examples as \_authorities\_, not as \_false

syntax\_. The errors which I thus quote at secondhand from other

grammarians, and mark with double references, are in general such as the

first quoters have allowed, and made themselves responsible for; but this

is not the case in every instance. Such credit has sometimes, though

rarely, been given, where the expression was disapproved.--G. BROWN.

[344] Lindley Murray thought it not impracticable to put two or more nouns

in apposition and add the possessive sign to each; nor did he imagine there

would often be any positive impropriety in so doing. His words, on this

point, are these: "On the other hand, the application of the \_genitive\_

sign to both or all of the nouns in apposition, would be \_generally\_ harsh

and displeasing, and \_perhaps in some cases incorrect\_: as, 'The Emperor's

Leopold's; King George's; Charles's the Second's; The parcel was left at

Smith's, the bookseller's and stationer's."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 177.

Whether he imagined \_any of these\_ to be "\_incorrect\_" or not, does not

appear! Under the next rule, I shall give a short note which will show them

\_all\_ to be so. The author, however, after presenting these uncouth

fictions, which show nothing but his own deficiency in grammar, has done

the world the favour not to pronounce them very \_convenient\_ phrases; for

he continues the paragraph as follows: "The rules which \_we\_ have

endeavoured to elucidate, will prevent the \_inconveniences\_ of both these

modes of expression; and they appear to be \_simple, perspicuous\_, and

\_consistent\_ with the idiom of the language.'--\_Ib.\_ This undeserved praise

of his own rules, he might as well have left to some other hand. They have

had the fortune, however, to please sundry critics, and to become the prey

of many thieves; but are certainly very deficient in the three qualities

here named; and, taken together with their illustrations, they form little

else than a tissue of errors, partly his own, and partly copied from Lowth

and Priestley.

Dr. Latham, too, and Prof. Child, whose erroneous teaching on this point is

still more marvellous, not only inculcate the idea that possessives in form

may be in apposition, but seem to suppose that two possessive endings are

essential to the relation. Forgetting all such English as we have in the

phrases, "\_John the Baptist's head\_,"--"\_For Jacob my servant's

sake\_,"--"\_Julius Cæsar's Commentaries\_,"--they invent sham expressions,

too awkward ever to have come to their knowledge from any actual use,--such

as, "\_John's the farmer's wife\_,"--"\_Oliver's the spy's evidence\_,"--and

then end their section with the general truth, "For words to be in

apposition with each other, they must be in the same case."--\_Elementary

Grammar, Revised Edition\_, p. 152. What sort of scholarship is that in

which \_fictitious examples\_ mislead even their inventors?

[345] In Professor Fowler's recent and copious work, "The English Language

in its Elements and Forms," our present \_Reciprocals\_ are called, not

\_Pronominal Adjectives\_, but "\_Pronouns\_," and are spoken of, in the first

instance, thus: "§248. A RECIPROCAL PRONOUN is \_one\_ that implies the

mutual action of different agents. EACH OTHER, and ONE ANOTHER, are our

reciprocal forms, \_which are treated exactly as if they were compound

pronouns\_, taking for their genitives, \_each other's, one another's\_. \_Each

other\_ is properly used of \_two\_, and \_one another\_ of \_more\_." The

definition here given takes for granted what is at least disputable, that

"\_each other\_," or "\_one another\_," is not a phrase, but is merely "\_one

pronoun\_." But, to none of his three important positions here taken, does

the author himself at all adhere. In §451, at Note 3, he teaches thus:

"'They love each other.' Here \_each\_ is in the nominative case in

apposition with \_they\_, and \_other\_ is in the objective case. 'They helped

one another.' Here \_one\_ is in apposition with \_they\_, and \_another\_ is in

the objective case." Now, by this mode of parsing, the reciprocal terms

"are treated," not as "compound pronouns," but as phrases consisting of

distinct or separable words: and, as being separate or separable words,

whether they be Adjectives or Pronouns, they conform not to his definition

above. Out of the sundry instances in which, according to his own showing,

he has misapplied one or the other of these phrases, I cite the following:

(1.) "The \_two\_ ideas of Science and Art differ from \_one another\_ as the

understanding differs from the will."--\_Fowler's Gram.\_, 1850, §180.

Say,--"from \_each\_ other;" or,--"\_one\_ from \_the\_ other." (2.) "THOU, THY,

THEE, are etymologically related to \_each\_ other."--\_Ib.\_, §216. Say,--"to

\_one an\_ other;" because there are "\_more\_" than "\_two\_." (3.) "Till within

some centuries, the Germans, like the French and the English, addressed

\_each\_ other in familiar conversation by the Second Person

Singular."--\_Ib.\_, §221. Say,--"addressed \_one an\_ other." (4.) "Two

sentences are, on the other hand, connected in the way of co-ordination [,]

when they are not thus dependent one upon \_an\_other."--\_Ib.\_, §332.

Say,--"upon \_each\_ other;" or,--"one upon \_the\_ other;" because there are

but two. (5.) "These two rivers are at a great distance from one

\_an\_other."--\_Ib.\_, §617. Say,--"from \_each\_ other;" or,--"\_one from the\_

other." (6.) "The trees [in the \_Forest of Bombast\_] are close, spreading,

and twined into \_each other\_."--\_Ib.\_, §617. Say,--"into \_one an\_ other."

[346] For this quotation, Dr. Campbell gives, in his margin, the following

reference: "Introduction, &c., Sentences, Note on the 6th Phrase." But in

my edition of Dr. Lowth's Introduction to English Grammar, (a Philadelphia

edition of 1799,) I \_do not\_ find the passage. Perhaps it has been omitted

in consequence of Campbell's criticism, of which I here cite but a

part.--G. BROWN.

[347] By some grammarians it is presumed to be consistent with the nature

of \_participles\_ to govern the possessive case; and Hiley, if he is to be

understood \_literally\_, assumes it as an "\_established principle\_," that

they \_all\_ do so! "\_Participles govern\_ nouns and pronouns in the

possessive case, and at the same time, if derived from transitive verbs,

\_require\_ the noun or pronoun following to be in the objective case,

\_without the intervention of the preposition of\_; as 'Much depends on

\_William's observing the rule\_, and error will be the consequence of \_his

neglecting it\_;' or, 'Much \_will\_ depend on the \_rule's being observed by

William\_, and error will be the consequence of \_its being

neglected\_.'"--\_Hiley's Gram.\_, p. 94. These sentences, without doubt, are

\_nearly\_ equivalent to each other in meaning. To make them exactly so,

"\_depends\_" or "\_will depend\_" must be changed in tense, and "\_its being

neglected\_" must be "\_its being neglected by him\_." But who that has looked

at the facts in the case, or informed himself on the points here in

dispute, will maintain that either the awkward phraseology of the latter

example, or the mixed and questionable construction of the former, or the

extensive rule under which they are here presented, is among "the

established principles and best usages of the English language?"--\_Ib.\_, p.

1.

[348] What, in Weld's "Abridged Edition," is improperly called a

"participial \_noun\_," was, in his "original work," still more erroneously

termed "a participial \_clause\_." This gentleman, who has lately amended his

general rule for possessives by wrongfully copying or imitating mine, has

also as widely varied his conception of the \_participial\_--"\_object

possessed\_;" but, in my judgement, a change still greater might not be

amiss. "The possessive is often governed by a participial clause; as, much

will depend on the \_pupil's\_ composing frequently. \_Pupil's\_ is governed by

the \_clause\_, '\_composing frequently\_.' NOTE.--The sign ('s) should be

annexed to the word governed by the \_participial clause\_ following

it."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, 2d \_Edition\_, p. 150. Again: "The possessive is often

governed by a participial \_noun\_; as, Much will depend on the \_pupil's\_

composing frequently. \_Pupil's\_ is governed by the participial \_noun

composing\_. NOTE.--The sign ('s) should be annexed to the word governed by

the participial \_noun\_ following it."--\_Weld's Gram., Abridged\_, p. 117.

Choosing the possessive case, where, both by analogy and by authority, the

objective would be quite as grammatical, if not more so; destroying, as far

as possible, all syntactical distinction between the participle and the

participial noun, by confounding them purposely, even in name; this author,

like Wells, whom he too often imitates, takes no notice of the question

here discussed, and seems quite unconscious that participles partly made

nouns can \_produce\_ false syntax. To the foregoing instructions, he

subjoins the following comment, as a marginal note: "\_The participle used

as a noun\_, still \_retains its verbal properties\_, and may govern the

objective case, or be modified by an adverb or adjunct, like the verb from

which it is derived."--\_Ibid.\_ When one part of speech is said to be \_used

as an other\_, the learner may be greatly puzzled to understand \_to which

class\_ the given word belongs. If "\_the participle used as a noun\_, still

retains its verbal properties," it is, manifestly, not a noun, but a

participle still; not a participial noun, but a \_nounal participle\_,

whether the thing be allowable or not. Hence the teachings just cited are

inconsistent. Wells says, "\_Participles\_ are often used \_in the sense of

nouns\_; as, 'There was again the \_smacking\_ of whips, the \_clattering\_ of

hoofs, and the \_glittering\_ of harness.'--IRVING."--\_School Gram.\_, p.

154. This is not well stated; because these are participial \_nouns\_, and

not "\_participles\_." What Wells calls "participial nouns," differ from

these, and are \_all\_ spurious, \_all\_ mongrels, \_all\_ participles rather

than nouns. In regard to possessives before participles, no instructions

appear to be more defective than those of this gentleman. His sole rule

supposes the pupil always to know when and why the possessive is \_proper\_,

and only instructs him \_not to form it without the sign!\_ It is this: "When

a noun or a pronoun, preceding a \_participle used as a noun\_, is \_properly\_

in the possessive case, the sign of possession should not be

omitted."--\_School Gram.\_, p. 121. All the examples put under this rule,

are inappropriate: each will mislead the learner. Those which are called

"\_Correct\_," are, I think erroneous; and those which are called "\_False

Syntax\_," the adding of the possessive sign will not amend.

[349] It is remarkable, that Lindley Murray, with all his care in revising

his work, did not see the \_inconsistency\_ of his instructions in relation

to phrases of this kind. First he copies Lowth's doctrine, literally and

anonymously, from the Doctor's 17th page, thus: "When the thing to which

\_another is said to belong\_, is expressed by a circumlocution, or by \_many

terms\_, the sign of the possessive case \_is commonly added to the last\_

term: as, 'The \_king of Great Britain's\_ dominions.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, p. 45. Afterwards he condemns this: "The word in the genitive case is

frequently PLACED IMPROPERLY: as, 'This fact appears from \_Dr. Pearson of

Birmingham's\_ experiments.' \_It\_ should be, 'from the experiments of \_Dr.

Pearson\_ of Birmingham.' "--\_Ib.\_, p. 175. And again he makes it necessary:

"A phrase in which the words are so connected and dependent, as to admit of

no pause before the conclusion, \_necessarily requires\_ the genitive sign

\_at or near\_ the end \_of the phrase\_: as, 'Whose prerogative is it? It is

the \_king of Great Britain's\_;' 'That is the \_duke of Bridgewater's\_

canal;' " &c.--\_Ib.\_, p. 276. Is there not contradiction in these

instructions?

[350] A late grammarian tells us: "\_In\_ nouns ending in \_es\_ and \_ss\_, the

other \_s\_ is not added; as, \_Charles'\_ hat, \_Goodness'\_ sake."--\_Wilcox's

Gram.\_, p. 11. He should rather have said, "\_To\_ nouns ending in \_es\_ or

\_ss\_, the other \_s\_ is not added." But his doctrine is worse than his

syntax; and, what is remarkable, he himself forgets it in the course of a

few minutes, thus: "Decline \_Charles\_. Nom. \_Charles\_, Poss. \_Charles's\_,

Obj. \_Charles\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 12. See the like doctrine in Mulligan's recent

work on the "\_Structure of Language\_," p. 182.

[351] VAUGELAS was a noted French critic, who died in 1650. In Murray's

Grammar, the name is more than once mistaken. On page 359th, of the edition

above cited, it is printed "\_Vangelas\_"--G. BROWN.

[352] Nixon parses \_boy\_, as being "in the possessive case, governed by

distress understood;" and \_girl's\_, as being "coupled by \_nor\_ to \_boy\_,"

according to the Rule, "Conjunctions connect the same cases." Thus one word

is written wrong; the other, parsed wrong: and so of \_all\_ his examples

above.--G. BROWN.

[353] Wells, whose Grammar, in its first edition, divides verbs into

"\_transitive, intransitive\_, and \_passive\_;" but whose late edition

absurdly make all passives transitive; says, in his third edition, "A

\_transitive verb\_ is a verb that \_has some noun or pronoun\_ for its

object;" (p. 78;) adopts, in his syntax, the old dogma, "Transitive verbs

govern the objective case;" (3d Ed., p. 154;) and to this rule subjoins a

series of remarks, so singularly fit to puzzle or mislead the learner, and

withal so successful in winning the approbation of committees and teachers,

that it may be worth while to notice most of them here.

"REM. 1.--A sentence or phrase \_often supplies the place\_ of a noun or

pronoun in the objective case; as, 'You see \_how few of these men have

returned.'"--Wells' s School Gram.\_, "Third Thousand," p. 154; late Ed.

§215. According to this, must we not suppose verbs to be often transitive,

when \_not made so\_ by the author's \_definition\_? And if \_"see"\_ is here

transitive, would not other forms, such as \_are told, have been told\_, or

\_are aware\_, be just as much so, if put in its place?

"REM. 2.--An \_intransitive\_ verb may be used to \_govern an objective\_, when

the verb and the noun depending upon it are of kindred signification; as,

'\_To live\_ a blameless \_life;'--'To run\_ a \_race.'"--Ib.\_ Here verbs are

absurdly called "\_intransitive\_," when, both in fact and by the foregoing

definition, they are clearly transitive; or, at least, are, by many

teachers, supposed to be so.

"REM. 3.--Idiomatic expressions sometimes occur in which \_intransitive\_

verbs are followed by \_objectives depending upon them\_; as, 'To \_look\_ the

\_subject\_ fully in the face.'--\_Channing\_. 'They \_laughed him\_ to

scorn.'--\_Matt\_. 9:24. 'And \_talked\_ the \_night\_ away.'--\_Goldsmith\_."--

\_Ib.\_ Here again, verbs evidently \_made transitive by the construction\_,

are, with strange inconsistency, called "\_intransitive\_." By these three

remarks together, the distinction between transitives and intransitives

must needs be extensively \_obscured\_ in the mind of the learner.

"REM. 4.--Transitive verbs of \_asking, giving, teaching\_, and \_some

others\_, are often employed to govern two objectives; as, '\_Ask him\_ his

\_opinion\_;'--'This experience \_taught me\_ a valuable \_lesson\_.'--'\_Spare

me\_ yet this bitter \_cup.'--Hemans\_. 'I thrice \_presented him\_ a kingly

\_crown\_.'--\_Shakspeare\_."--\_Ib.\_ This rule not only jumbles together

several different constructions, such as would require different cases in

Latin or Greek, but is evidently repugnant to \_the sense\_ of many of the

passages to which it is meant to be applied. Wells thinks, the practice of

supplying a preposition, "is, in many cases, arbitrary, and does violence

to an important and well established \_idiom\_ of the language."--\_Ib.\_ But

how can any idiom be violated by a mode of parsing, which merely expounds

its \_true meaning\_? If the dative case has the meaning of \_to\_, and the

ablative has the meaning of \_from\_, how can they be expounded, in English,

but by suggesting the \_particle\_, where it is omitted? For example: "Spare

me yet [\_from\_] this bitter cup."--"Spare [\_to\_] me yet this joyous cup."

This author says, "\_The rule\_ for the government of two objectives by a

verb, without the aid of a preposition, is adopted by Webster, Murray,

Alexander, Frazee, Nutting, Perley, Goldsbury, J. M. Putnam, Hamlin,

Flower, Crane, Brace, and many others."--\_Ib.\_ Yet, if I mistake not, the

weight of authority is vastly against it. \_Such a rule as this\_, is not

extensively approved; and even some of the names here given, are improperly

cited. Lindley Murray's remark, "Some of our verbs appear to govern two

words in the objective case," is applied only to \_words in apposition\_, and

wrong even there; Perley's rule is only of "\_Some\_ verbs of \_asking\_ and

\_teaching\_;" and Nutting's note, "It \_sometimes happens\_ that one

transitive verb governs two objective cases," is so very loose, that one

can neither deny it, nor tell how much it means.

"REM. 5.--Verbs of \_asking, giving, teaching\_, and \_some others\_, are often

employed in the passive voice \_to govern\_ a noun or pronoun; as, 'He \_was

asked\_ his \_opinion.'--Johnson\_. 'He \_had been refused shelter\_.'--

\_Irving\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 155, §215. Passive \_governing\_ is not far from

absurdity. Here, by way of illustration, we have examples of \_two sorts\_;

the one elliptical, the other solecistical. The former text appears to

mean, "He was asked \_for\_, his opinion;"--or, "He was asked \_to give\_ his

opinion: the latter should have been, "\_Shelter had been refused\_

him;"--i.e., "\_to\_ him." Of the seven instances cited by the author, five

at least are of the latter kind, and therefore to be condemned; and it is

to be observed, that when they are \_corrected\_, and the right word is made

nominative, the passive government, by Wells's own showing, becomes nothing

but the ellipsis of a preposition. Having just given a \_rule\_, by which all

his various examples are assumed to be regular and right, he very

inconsistently adds this not: "\_This form\_ of expression is \_anomalous\_,

and \_might\_, in many cases, be improved. Thus, \_instead\_ of saying, 'He was

offered a seat on the council,' it would be preferable to say 'A seat in

the council was offered [to] him.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 155, Sec. 215. By admitting

here the ellipsis of the preposition \_to\_, he evidently refutes the

doctrine of his own text, so far as it relates to \_passive government\_,

and, by implication, the doctrine of his fourth remark also. For the

ellipsis of \_to\_, before "\_him\_," is just as evident in the active

expression, "I thrice \_presented him\_ a kingly crown," as in the passive,

"A kingly crown \_was thrice presented him\_." It is absurd to deny it in

either. Having offset \_himself\_, Wells as ingeniously balances his

\_authorities, pro and con\_; but, the \_elliptical\_ examples being

\_allowable\_, he should not have said that I and others "\_condemn this usage

altogether\_."

"REM. 6.--The passive voice of a verb is sometimes used in connection with

a \_preposition\_, forming a \_compound passive verb\_; as 'He \_was listened

to\_.'--'Nor is this \_to be scoffed at\_.'--'This is a tendency \_to be

guarded against\_.'--'A bitter persecution \_was carried on\_.'--\_Hallam\_."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 155, Sec. 215. The words here called "\_prepositions\_," are

\_adverbs\_. Prepositions they cannot be; because they have no subsequent

term. Nor is it either necessary or proper, to call them parts of the verb:

"\_was carried on\_," is no more a "compound verb," than "\_was carried off\_,"

or "\_was carried forward\_," and the like.

"REM. 7.--Idiomatic expressions sometimes occur in which a noun in the

objective is preceded by a passive verb, and followed by \_a preposition

used adverbially\_. EXAMPLES: 'Vocal and instrumental music \_were made use

of\_.'--\_Addison\_. 'The third, fourth, and fifth, \_were taken possession of\_

at half past eight."--\_Southey\_. 'The Pinta \_was soon lost sight of\_ in the

darkness of the night.'--\_Irving\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 155, Sec. 215. As it is by

the manner of their use, that we distinguish prepositions and adverbs, it

seems no more proper to speak of "\_a preposition used adverbially\_," than

of "\_an adverb used prepositionally\_." But even if the former phrase is

right and the thing conceivable, here is no instance of it; for "\_of\_" here

modifies no verb, adjective, or adverb. The construction is an unparsable

synchysis, a vile snarl, which no grammarian should hesitate to condemn.

These examples may each be corrected in several ways: 1. Say--"\_were

used;"--"were taken into possession\_;"--"\_was soon lost from sight\_." 2.

Say--"\_They\_ made use of music, \_both\_ vocal and instrumental."--"Of the

third, \_the\_ fourth, and \_the\_ fifth, \_they took\_ possession at half past

eight."--"Of the Pinta \_they\_ soon list sight," &c. 3. Say--"Use \_was also\_

made of \_both\_ vocal and instrumental music."--"Possession of the third,

\_the\_ fourth, and \_the\_ fifth, \_was\_ taken at half past eight."--"The Pinta

soon \_disappeared\_ in the darkness of the night." Here again, Wells puzzles

his pupil, with a note which half justifies and half condemns the awkward

usage in question. See \_School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 147; 3d Ed., 156; late

Ed., Sec. 215.

"REM. 8.--There are \_some\_ verbs which may be used either transitively or

intransitively; as, 'He \_will return\_ in a week,' 'He \_will return\_ the

book.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 147; 156; &c. According to Dr. Johnson, this is true of

"\_most\_ verbs," and Lindley Murray asserts it of "\_many\_." There are, I

think, but \_few\_ which may \_not\_, in some phraseology or other, be used

both ways. Hence the rule, "Transitive verbs govern the objective case,"

or, as Wells now has it, "Transitive verbs, in the active voice, govern the

objective case," (Sec. 215,) rests only upon a distinction which \_itself

creates\_, between transitives and intransitives; and therefore it amounts

to little.

[354] To these examples, Webster adds \_two others\_, of a \_different sort\_,

with a comment, thus: "'Ask \_him\_ his \_opinion\_?' 'You have asked \_me\_ the

\_news\_.' Will it be said that the latter phrases are elliptical, for 'ask

\_of\_ him his opinion?' I apprehend this to be a mistake. According to the

true idea of the government of a transitive verb, \_him\_ must be the

\_object\_ in the phrase under consideration, as much as in this, 'Ask \_him\_

for a guinea;' or in this, 'ask him to go.'"--\_Ibid, ut supra\_; \_Frazee's

Gram.\_, p. 152; \_Fowler's\_, p. 480. If, for the reason here stated, it is a

"mistake" to supply \_of\_ in the foregoing instances, it does not follow

that they are not elliptical. On the contrary, if they are analogous to,

"Ask him \_for\_ a guinea;" or, "Ask him \_to go\_;" it is manifest that the

construction must be this: "Ask him [\_for\_] his opinion;" or, "Ask him [\_to

tell\_] his opinion." So that the question resolves itself into this: What

is the best way of \_supplying the ellipsis\_, when two objectives thus occur

after ask?--G. BROWN.

[355] These examples Murray borrowed from Webster, who published them, with

\_references\_, under his 34th Rule. With too little faith in the corrective

power of grammar, the Doctor remarks upon the constructions as follows:

"This idiom is outrageously anomalous, but perhaps incorrigible."--

\_Webster's Philos. Gram.\_, p. 180; \_Imp. G.\_, 128.

[356] This seems to be a reasonable principle of syntax, and yet I find it

contradicted, or a principle opposite to it set up, by some modern teachers

of note, who venture to justify all those abnormal phrases which I here

condemn as errors. Thus Fowler: "Note 5. When a Verb with its Accusative

case, \_is equivalent to a single verb\_, it may take this accusative after

it in the passive voice; as, 'This \_has been put an end to\_.'"--\_Fowler's

English Language\_, 8vo, §552. Now what is this, but an effort to teach bad

English by rule?--and by such a rule, too, as is vastly more general than

even the great class of terms which it was designed to include? And yet

this rule, broad as it is, does not apply at all to the example given! For

"\_put an end\_," without the important word "\_to\_," is not equivalent to

\_stop\_ or \_terminate\_. Nor is the example right. One ought rather to say,

"This has been \_ended\_;" or, "This has been \_stopped\_." See the marginal

Note to Obs. 5th, above.

[357] Some, however, have conceived the putting of the same case after the

verb as before it, to be \_government\_; as, "Neuter verbs occasionally

\_govern\_ either the nominative or [the] objective case, after

them."--\_Alexander's Gram.\_, p. 54. "The verb \_to be, always governs\_ a

Nominative, unless it be of the Infinitive Mood."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p.

94. This latter assertion is, in fact, monstrously untrue, and also

solecistical.

[358] Not unfrequently the conjunction \_as\_ intervenes between these "same

cases," as it may also between words in apposition; as, "He then is \_as\_

the head, and we \_as\_ the members; he the vine, and we the

branches."--\_Barclay's Works\_, Vol. ii, p. 189.

[359] "'Whose house is that?' This sentence, before it is parsed, \_should

be transposed\_; thus, 'Whose is that house?' The same observation applies

to every sentence of a similar construction."--\_Chandler's old Gram.\_, p.

93. This instruction is worse than nonsense; for it teaches the pupil to

parse every word in the sentence \_wrong\_! The author proceeds to explain

\_Whose\_, as "qualifying \_house\_, understood;" \_is\_, as agreeing "with its

nominative, \_house\_;" \_that\_, as "qualifying \_house\_;" and \_house\_, as

"nominative case to the verb, \_is\_." Nothing of this is \_true\_ of the

original question. For, in that, \_Whose\_ is governed by \_house; house\_ is

nominative after \_is; is\_ agrees with \_house\_ understood; and \_that\_

relates to \_house\_ understood. The meaning is, "Whose house is that house?"

or, in the order of a declarative sentence, "That house is whose house?"

[360] 1: In Latin, the accusative case is used after such a verb, because

an other word in the same case is understood before it; as, "Facere quæ

libet, ID est [\_hominem\_] esse \_regem\_."--SALLUST. "To do what he pleases,

THAT is [for a \_man\_] to be a \_king\_." If Professor Bullions had understood

Latin, or Greek, or English, as well as his commenders imagine, he might

have discovered what construction of cases we have in the following

instances: "It is an honour [for a \_man\_] to be the \_author\_ of such a

work."--\_Bullions's Eng. Gram.\_, p. 82. "To be \_surety\_ for a stranger [,]

is dangerous."--\_Ib.\_ "Not to know what happened before you were born, is

to be always a \_child\_."--\_Ib.\_ "Nescire quid acciderit antequam natus es,

est semper esse \_puerum\_."--\_Ib.\_ "[Greek: Esti tion aischron ...topon, hon

hæmen pote kurioi phainesthai proiemenous]." "It is a shame to be seen

giving up countries of which we were once masters."--DEMOSTHENES: \_ib.\_

What support these examples give to this grammarian's new notion of "\_the

objective indefinite\_" or to his still later seizure of Greene's doctrine

of "\_the predicate-nominative\_" the learned reader may judge. All the Latin

and Greek grammarians suppose an \_ellipsis\_, in such instances; but some

moderns are careless enough of that, and of the analogy of General Grammar

in this case, to have seconded the Doctor in his absurdity. See \_Farnum's

Practical Gram.\_, p. 23; and \_S. W. Clark's\_, p. 149.

2. Professor Hart has an indecisive remark on this construction, as

follows: "Sometimes a verb in the infinitive mood has a noun after it

without any other noun before it; as, 'To be a good \_man\_, is not so easy a

thing as many people imagine.' Here '\_man\_' may be parsed as used

\_indefinitely\_ after the verb \_to be\_. It is not easy to say in what \_case\_

the noun is in such sentences. The analogy of the Latin would seem to

indicate the \_objective\_.--Thus, 'Not to know what happened in past years,

is to be always a \_child\_,' Latin, 'semper esse puerum.' \_In like manner\_,

in English, we may say, '\_Its\_ being \_me, need\_ make no change in your

determination.'"--\_Hart's English Gram.\_, p. 127.

3. These learned authors thus differ about what certainly admits of no

other solution than that which is given in the Observation above. To parse

the nouns in question, "\_as used indefinitely\_," without case, and to call

them "\_objectives indefinite\_," without agreement or government, are two

methods equally repugnant to reason. The last suggestion of Hart's is also

a false argument for a true position. The phrases, "\_Its being me\_," and

"\_To be a good man\_," are far from being constructed "\_in like manner\_."

The former is manifestly bad English; because \_its\_ and \_me\_ are not in the

\_same case\_. But S. S. Greene would say, "\_Its being I\_, is right." For in

a similar instance, he has this conclusion: "Hence, in \_abridging\_ the

following proposition, 'I was not aware \_that it was he\_,' we should say

'\_of its being he\_,' not '\_his\_' nor '\_him\_.'"--\_Greene's Analysis\_, 1st

Ed., p. 171. When \_being\_ becomes a noun, no case after it appears to be

very proper; but this author, thus "\_abridging\_" \_four syllables into

five\_, produces an anomalous construction which it would be much better to

avoid.

[361] Parkhurst and Sanborn, by what they call "A NEW RULE," attempt to

determine the doubtful or unknown case which this note censures, and to

justify the construction as being well-authorized and hardly avoidable.

Their rule is this: "A noun following a neuter or [a] passive participial

noun, is in the \_nominative independent\_. A noun or pronoun in the

\_possessive\_ case, always precedes the participial noun, either \_expressed\_

or \_understood\_, signifying the same thing as the noun does that follows

it." To this new and exceptionable' dogma, Sanborn adds: "This form of

expression is one of the most common idioms of the language, and \_in

general composition\_ cannot be well avoided. In confirmation of the

statement made, various authorities are subjoined. Two grammarians only, to

our knowledge, have remarked OH this phraseology: 'Participles are

sometimes preceded by a possessive case and followed by a nominative; as,

There is no doubt of \_his\_ being a great \_statesman\_.' B. GREENLEAF. 'We

sometimes find a participle that takes the same case after as before it,

converted into a verbal noun, and the latter word retained unchanged in

connexion with it; as, I have some recollection of his \_father's\_ being a

\_judge\_.' GOOLD BROWN."--\_Sanborn's Analytical Gram.\_, p. 189. On what

principle the words \_statesman\_ and \_judge\_ can be affirmed to be in the

nominative case, I see not; and certainly they are not nominatives

"\_independent\_" because the word \_being\_, after which they stand, is not

itself independent. It is true, the phraseology is common enough to be good

English: but I dislike it; and if this citation from me, was meant for a

confirmation of the reasonless dogmatism preceding, it is not made with

fairness, because my \_opinion\_ of the construction is omitted by the

quoter. See \_Institutes of English Gram.\_, p. 162. In an other late

grammar,--a shameful work, because it is in great measure a tissue of petty

larcenies from my Institutes, with alterations for the worse,--I find the

following absurd "Note," or Rule: "An infinitive or participle is often

followed by a substantive \_explanatory\_ of an \_indefinite\_ person or thing.

The substantive is then in the \_objective\_ case, and may be called the

\_objective after the infinitive\_, or \_participle\_; [as,] It is an honor to

be the \_author\_ of such a work. His being a great \_man\_, did not make him a

happy man. By being an obedient \_child\_, you will secure the approbation of

your parents."--\_Farnum's Practical Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 25. The first of

these examples is elliptical; (see Obs. 12th above, and the Marginal Note;)

the second is bad English,--or, at' any rate, directly repugnant to the

rule for same cases; and the third parsed wrong by the rule: "\_child\_" is

in the nominative case. See Obs. 7th above.

[362] When the preceding case is not "\_the verb's nominative\_" this phrase

must of course be omitted; and when the word which is to be corrected, does

not literally follow the verb, it may be proper to say, "\_constructively

follows\_," in lieu of the phrase, "\_comes after\_."

[363] The author of this example supposes \_friend\_ to be in the nominative

case, though \_John's\_ is in the possessive, and both words denote the same

person. But this is not only contrary to the general rule for the same

cases, but contrary to his own application of one of his rules. Example:

"\_Maria's\_ duty, as a \_teacher\_, is, to instruct her pupils." Here, he

says, "\_Teacher\_ is in the \_possessive\_ case, from its relation to the name

\_Maria\_, denoting the same object."--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 211. This

explanation, indeed, is scarcely intelligible, on account of its

grammatical inaccuracy. He means, however, that, "\_Teacher\_ is in the

possessive case, from its relation to the name \_Maria's\_, the two words

denoting the same object." No word can be possessive "from its relation to

the name \_Maria\_," except by standing immediately before it, in the usual

manner of possessives; as, "\_Sterne's Maria\_."

[364] Dr. Webster, who was ever ready to justify almost any usage for which

he could find half a dozen respectable authorities, absurdly supposes, that

\_who\_ may sometimes be rightly preferred to \_whom\_, as the object of a

preposition. His remark is this: "In the use of \_who\_ as an interrogative,

there is an \_apparent deviation\_ from regular construction--it being used

\_without distinction of case\_; as, '\_Who\_ do you speak \_to?\_' '\_Who\_ is she

married \_to?\_' '\_Who\_ is this reserved \_for?\_' '\_Who\_ was it made \_by?\_'

This \_idiom\_ is not merely colloquial: it is found in the writings of our

best authors."--\_Webster's Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 194; his \_Improved

Gram.\_, p. 136. "In this phrase, '\_Who\_ do you speak \_to?\_' there is a

\_deviation\_ from regular construction; but the practice of thus using

\_who\_, in certain familiar phrases, seems to be \_established\_ by the best

authors."--\_Webster's Rudiments of E. Gram.\_, p. 72. Almost any other

solecism may be quite as well justified as this. The present work shows, in

fact, a great mass of authorities for many of the incongruities which it

ventures to rebuke.

[365] Grammarians differ much as to the proper mode of parsing such nouns.

Wells says, "This is \_the case independent by ellipsis\_."--\_School Gram.\_,

p. 123. But the idea of \_such\_ a case is a flat absurdity. Ellipsis occurs

only where something, not uttered, is implied; and where a \_preposition\_ is

thus wanting, the noun is, of course, its \_object\_; and therefore \_not

independent\_. Webster, with too much contempt for the opinion of "Lowth,

followed by the \_whole tribe of writers\_ on this subject," declares it "a

palpable error," to suppose "prepositions to be understood before these

expressions;" and, by two new rules, his 22d and 28th, teaches, that,

"Names of measure or dimension, followed by an adjective," and "Names of

certain portions of time and space, and especially words denoting

continuance of time or progression, are used \_without a governing

word\_."--\_Philos. Gram.\_, pp. 165 and 172; \_Imp. Gram.\_, 116 and 122;

\_Rudiments\_, 65 and 67. But this is no account at all of the

\_construction\_, or of the \_case\_ of the noun. As the nominative, or the

case which we may use independently, is never a subject of government, the

phrase, "\_without a governing word\_," implies that the case is \_objective\_;

and how can this case be known, except by the discovery of some "governing

word," of which it is the \_object?\_ We find, however, many such rules as

the following: "Nouns of time, distance, and degree, are put in the

objective case without a preposition."--\_Nutting's Gram.\_, p. 100. "Nouns

which denote time, quantity, measure, distance, value, or direction are

often put in the objective case without a preposition."--\_Weld's Gram.\_, p.

153; "Abridged Ed.," 118. "Numes signifying duration, extension, quantity,

quality, and valuation, are in the objective case without a governing

word."--\_Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 154. \_Bullions\_, too, has a similar rule. To

estimate these rules aright, one should observe how often the nouns in

question are found \_with\_ a governing word. Weld, of late, contradicts

himself by \_admitting the ellipsis\_; and then, inconsistently with his

admission, most absurdly \_denies the frequent use\_ of the preposition with

nouns of \_time, quantity\_, &c. "Before words of this description, the

\_ellipsis of a preposition is obvious\_. But it is \_seldom proper to use\_

the preposition before such words."--\_Weld's "Abridged Edition,"\_ p. 118.

[366] Professor Fowler absurdly says, "\_Nigh, near, next, like\_, when

followed by the objective case, \_may be regarded either\_ as Prepositions or

as Adjectives, \_to\_ being understood."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850,

§458, Note 7. Now, "\_to\_ being understood," it is plain that no one of

these words can be accounted a preposition, but by supposing the

preposition to be complex, and to be partly suppressed. This can be nothing

better than an idle whim; and, since the classification of words as parts

of speech, is always positive and exclusive, to refer any particular word

indecisively to "\_either\_" of two classes, is certainly no better

\_teaching\_, than to say, "I do not know of which sort it is; call it what

you please!" With decision prompt enough, but with too little regard to

analogy or consistency, Latham and Child say, "The adjective \_like governs

a case\_, and it is the only adjective that does so."--\_Elementary Gram.\_,

p. 155. In teaching thus, they seem to ignore these facts: that \_near\_,

\_nigh\_, or \_opposite\_, might just as well be said to be an adjective

governing a case; and that the use of \_to\_ or \_unto\_ after \_like\_ has been

common enough to prove the ellipsis. The Bible has many examples; as, "Who

is \_like to\_ thee in Israel?"--\_1 Samuel\_, xxvi, 15. "Hew thee two tables

of stone \_like unto\_ the first."--\_Exodus\_, xxxiv, 1; and \_Deut.\_, x, 1.

But their great inconsistency here is, that they call the case after like

"\_a dative\_"--a case unknown to their etymology! See \_Gram. of E. Gram.\_,

p. 259. In grammar, a \_solitary\_ exception or instance can scarcely be a

\_true one\_.

[367] The following examples may illustrate these points: "These verbs, and

all others \_like to\_ them, were \_like\_ TIMAO."--\_Dr. Murray's Hist. of

Europ. Lang.\_, Vol. ii, p. 128. "The old German, and even the modern

German, are much \_liker to\_ the Visigothic than they are to the dialect of

the Edda."--\_Ib.\_, i, 330. "Proximus finem, \_nighest\_ the end."--\_Ib.\_, ii,

150. "Let us now come \_nearer to\_ our own language."--\_Dr. Blair's Rhet.\_,

p. 85. "This looks \_very like\_ a paradox."--BEATTIE: \_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol.

i, p. 113. "He was \_near\_ [to] falling."--\_Ib.\_, p. 116. Murray, who puts

\_near\_ into his list of prepositions, gives this example to show how

"\_prepositions become adverbs!\_" "There was none ever before \_like unto\_

it."--\_Stone, on Masonry\_, p. 5.

"And earthly power doth then show \_likest\_ God's,

When mercy seasons justice."--\_Beauties of Shakspeare\_, p. 45.

[368] Wright's notion of this construction is positively absurd and

self-contradictory. In the sentence, "My cane is worth a shilling," he

takes the word \_worth\_ to be a noun "in \_apposition\_ to the word

\_shilling\_." And to prove it so, he puts the sentence successively into

these four forms: "My cane is \_worth\_ or \_value\_ for a shilling;"--"The

\_worth\_ or \_value\_ of my cane is a shilling;"--"My cane is a \_shilling's

worth\_;"--"My cane is \_the worth of\_ a shilling."--\_Philosophical Gram.\_,

p. 150. In all these transmutations, \_worth\_ is unquestionably a noun; but,

in none of them, is it in apposition with the word \_shilling\_; and he is

quite mistaken in supposing that they "indispensably prove the word in

question to be a \_noun\_." There are other authors, who, with equal

confidence, and equal absurdity, call \_worth\_ a \_verb\_. For example: "A

noun, which signifies the price, is put in the objective case, without a

preposition; as, 'my book is \_worth\_ twenty shillings.' \_Is worth\_ is a

\_neuter verb\_, and answers to the \_latin\_ [sic--KTH] verb

\_valet\_."--\_Barrett's Gram.\_, p. 138. I do not deny that the phrase "\_is

worth\_" is a just version of the verb \_valet\_; but this equivalence in

import, is no proof at all that \_worth\_ is a verb. \_Prodest\_ is a Latin

verb, which signifies "\_is profitable to\_;" but who will thence infer, that

\_profitable to\_ is a verb?

[369] In J. R. Chandler's English Grammar, as published in 1821, the word

\_worth\_ appears in the list of prepositions: but the revised list, in his

edition of 1847, does not contain it. In both books, however, it is

expressly parsed as a preposition; and, in expounding the sentence, "The

book is worth a dollar," the author makes this remark: "\_Worth\_ has been

called an adjective by some, and a noun by others: \_worth\_, however, in

this sentence expresses a relation by value, and is so far a preposition;

and no ellipsis, which may be formed, would change the nature of the word,

without giving the sentence a different meaning."--\_Chandler's Gram.\_, Old

Ed., p. 155; New Ed., p. 181.

[370] Cowper here purposely makes Mrs. Gilpin use bad English; but this is

no reason why a school-boy may not be taught to correct it. Dr. Priestley

supposed that the word \_we\_, in the example, "\_To poor we\_, thine enmity,"

&c., was also used by Shakespeare, "in a droll humorous way."--\_Gram.\_, p.

103. He surely did not know the connexion of the text. It is in "Volumnia's

\_pathetic\_ speech" to her victorious son. See \_Coriolanus\_, Act V, Sc. 3.

[371] Dr. Enfield misunderstood this passage; and, in copying it into his

Speaker, (a very popular school-book,) he has perverted the text, by

changing \_we\_ to \_us\_: as if the meaning were, "Making us fools of nature."

But it is plain, that all "fool's of nature!" must be fools of nature's own

making, and not persons temporarily frighted out of their wits by a ghost;

nor does the meaning of the last two lines comport with any objective

construction of this pronoun. See \_Enfield's Speaker\_, p. 864.

[372] In Clark's Practical Grammar, of 1848, is found this NOTE: "The Noun

should correspond in number with the Adjectives. EXAMPLES--A two feet

ruler. A ten feet pole."--P. 165. These examples are wrong: the doctrine is

misapplied in both. With this author, \_a\_, as well as \_two\_ or \_ten\_, is an

\_adjective\_ of number; and, since these differ in number, what sort of

concord or construction do the four words in each of these phrases make?

When a numeral and a noun are united to form a \_compound adjective\_, we

commonly, if not always, use the latter in its primitive or singular form:

as, "A \_twopenny\_ toy,"--"a \_twofold\_ error,"--"\_three-coat\_ plastering,"

say, "a \_twofoot\_ rule,"--"a \_tenfoot\_ pole;" which phrases are right;

while Clark's are not only unusual, but unanalogical, ungrammatical.

[373] Certain adjectives that differ in number, are sometimes connected

disjunctively by \_or\_ or \_than\_, while the noun literally agrees with that

which immediately precedes it, and with the other merely by implication or

supplement, under the figure which is called \_zeugma\_: as, "Two or more

nouns joined together by \_one\_ or \_more\_ copulative conjunctions."--

\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 75; \_L. Murray's\_, 2d Ed., p. 106. "He speaks not to

\_one\_ or a \_few\_ judges, but to a large assembly."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p.

280. "\_More\_ than \_one\_ object at a time."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 301.

See Obs. 10th on Rule 17th.

[374] Double comparatives and double superlatives, such as, "The \_more

serener\_ spirit,"--"The \_most straitest\_ sect,"--are noticed by Latham and

Child, in their syntax, as expressions which "we occasionally find, even in

good writers," and are truly stated to be "\_pleonastic\_;" but, forbearing

to censure them as errors, these critics seem rather to justify them as

pleonasms allowable. Their indecisive remarks are at fault, not only

because they are indecisive, but because they are both liable and likely to

mislead the learner.--See their \_Elementary Grammar\_, p. 155.

[375] The learned William B. Fowle strangely imagines all pronouns to be

\_adjectives\_, belonging to nouns expressed or understood after them; as,

"We kings require \_them\_ (subjects) to obey \_us\_ (kings)."--\_The True

English Gram.\_, p. 21. "\_They\_ grammarians, [i. e.] \_those\_ grammarians.

\_They\_ is an other spelling of \_the\_, and of course means \_this, that,

these, those\_, as the case may be."--\_Ibid.\_ According to him, then, "\_them

grammarians\_," for "\_those grammarians\_," is perfectly good English; and so

is "\_they grammarians\_," though the vulgar do not take care to \_vary this

adjective\_, "as \_the case\_ may be." His notion of subjoining a noun to

every pronoun, is a fit counterpart to that of some other grammarians, who

imagine an ellipsis of a pronoun after almost every noun. Thus: "The

personal \_Relatives\_, for the most part, \_are suppressed\_ when the Noun is

expressed: as, Man (he) is the Lord of this lower world. Woman (she) is the

fairest Part of the Creation. The Palace (it) stands on a Hill. Men and

Women (they) are rational Creatures."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 234;

\_Buchanan's\_, 131. It would have been worth a great deal to some men, to

have known \_what an Ellipsis is\_; and the man who shall yet make such

knowledge common, ought to be forever honoured in the schools.

[376] "An illegitimate and ungrammatical use of these words, \_either\_ and

\_neither\_, has lately been creeping into the language, in the application

of these terms to a plurality of objects: as, '\_Twenty\_ ruffians broke into

the house, but \_neither\_ of them could be recognized.' 'Here are \_fifty\_

pens, you will find that \_either\_ of them will do.'"--MATT. HARRISON, \_on

the English Language\_, p. 199. "\_Either\_ and \_neither\_, applied to any

number more than \_one\_ of \_two\_ objects, is a mere solecism, and one of

late introduction."--\_Ib.\_, p. 200. Say, "\_Either\_ OR \_neither\_," &c.--G.

B.

[377] Dr. Priestley censures this construction, on the ground, that the

word \_whole\_ is an "\_attribute of unity\_," and therefore improperly added

to a plural noun. But, in fact, this adjective is not \_necessarily\_

singular, nor is \_all\_ necessarily plural. Yet there is a difference

between the words: \_whole\_ is equivalent to \_all\_ only when the noun is

singular; for then only do \_entireness\_ and \_totality\_ coincide. A man may

say, "\_the whole thing\_," when he means, "\_all the thing\_;" but he must not

call \_all things, whole things\_. In the following example, \_all\_ is put for

\_whole\_, and taken substantively; but the expression is a quaint one,

because the article and preposition seem needless: "Which doth encompass

and embrace the \_all\_ of things."--\_The Dial\_, Vol. i, p. 59.

[378] This is not a mere repetition of the last example cited under Note

14th above; but it is Murray's interpretation of the text there quoted.

Both forms are faulty, but not in the same way.--G. BROWN.

[379] Some authors erroneously say, "A \_personal\_ pronoun does not always

agree in person with its antecedent; as, 'John said, \_I\_ will do

it.'"--\_Goodenow's Gram.\_ "When I say, 'Go, and say to those children, you

must come in,' you perceive that the noun children is of the \_third\_

person, but the pronoun you is of the \_second\_; yet \_you\_ stands for

\_children\_,"--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 54. Here are different speakers, with

separate speeches; and these critics are manifestly deceived by the

circumstance. It is not to be supposed, that the nouns represented by one

speaker's pronouns, are to be found or sought in what an other speaker

utters. The pronoun \_I\_ does not here stand for the noun \_John\_ which is of

the third person; it is John's own word, representing himself as the

speaker. The meaning is, \_"I myself, John, of the first person, will do

it."\_ Nor does \_you\_ stand for \_children\_ as spoken \_of\_ by Ingersoll; but

for \_children\_ of the \_second person\_, uttered or implied in the address of

his messenger: as, "\_Children\_, you must come in."

[380] The propriety of this construction is questionable. See Obs. 2d on

Rule 14th.

[381] Among the authors who have committed this great fault, are, Alden, W.

Allen, D. C. Allen, C. Adams, the author of the British Grammar, Buchanan,

Cooper, Cutler, Davis, Dilworth, Felton, Fisher, Fowler, Frazee, Goldsbury,

Hallock, Hull, M'Culloch, Morley, Pinneo, J. Putnam, Russell, Sanborn, R.

C. Smith, Spencer, Weld, Wells, Webster, and White. "\_You is plural\_,

whether it refer to only one individual, or to more."--\_Dr. Crombie, on

Etym. and Synt.\_, p. 240. "The word \_you\_, even when applied to one person,

is plural, and should never he connected with a singular

verb."--\_Alexander's Gram.\_, p. 53; \_Emmons's\_, 26. "\_You\_ is of the Plural

Number, even though used as the Name of a single Person."--\_W. Ward's

Gram.\_, p. 88. "Altho' the Second Person Singular in both Times be marked

with \_thou\_, to distinguish it from the Plural, yet we, out of

Complaisance, though we speak but to one particular Person, use \_the Plural

you\_, and never thou, but when we address ourselves to Almighty God, or

when we speak in an emphatical Manner, or make a distinct and particular

Application to a Person."--\_British Gram.\_, p. 126; \_Buchanan's\_, 37. "But

\_you\_, tho' applied to a single Person, requires a \_Plural Verb\_, the same

as ye; as, \_you love\_, not \_you lovest\_ or \_loves\_; you \_were\_, not \_you

was\_ or \_wast\_."--\_Buchanan's Gram.\_, p. 37.

[382] "Mr. Murray's 6th Rule is unnecessary."--\_Lennie's English Gram.\_, p.

81; \_Bullions's\_, p. 90. The two rules of which I speak, constitute

Murray's Rule VI; Alger's and Bacon's Rule VI; Merchant's Rule IX;

Ingersoll's Rule XII; Kirkham's Rules XV and XVI; Jaudon's XXI and XXII;

Crombie's X and XI; Nixon's Obs. 86th and 87th: and are found in Lowth's

Gram., p. 100; Churchill's, 136; Adam's, 203; W. Allen's, 156; Blair's, 75;

and many other books.

[383] This rule, in all its parts, is to be applied chiefly, if not solely,

to such relative clauses as are taken in the \_restrictive\_ sense; for, in

the \_resumptive\_ sense of the relative, \_who\_ or \_which\_ may be more proper

than \_that\_: as, "Abraham solemnly adjures his \_most faithful\_ servant,

\_whom\_ he despatches to Charran on this matrimonial mission for his son, to

discharge his mission with all fidelity."--\_Milman's Jews\_, i, 21. See

Etymology, Chap. 5th, Obs. 23d, 24th, &c., on the Classes of Pronouns.

[384] Murray imagined this sentence to be bad English. He very strangely

mistook the pronoun \_he\_ for the object of the preposition \_with\_; and

accordingly condemned the text, under the rule, "Prepositions govern the

objective case." So of the following: "It is not I he is engaged

with."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, R. 17. Better: "It is not I \_that\_ he is

engaged with." Here is no violation of the foregoing rule, or of any other;

and both sentences, with even Murray's form of the latter, are quite as

good as his proposed substitutes: "It was not \_with him\_, that they were so

angry."--\_Murray's Key\_, p. 51. "It is not \_with me\_ he is engaged."--\_Ib.\_

In these fancied corrections, the phrases \_with him\_ and \_with me\_ have a

very awkward and questionable position: it seems doubtful, whether they

depend on \_was\_ and \_is\_, or on \_angry\_ and \_engaged\_.

[385] In their speculations on the \_personal pronouns\_, grammarians

sometimes contrive, by a sort of abstraction, to reduce all the persons to

the \_third\_; that is, the author or speaker puts \_I\_, not for himself in

particular, but for any one who utters the word, and \_thou\_, not for his

particular hearer or reader, but for any one who is addressed; and,

conceiving of these as persons merely spoken of by himself, he puts the

verb in the third person, and not in the first or second: as, "\_I is\_ the

speaker, \_thou\_ [\_is\_] the hearer, and \_he, she\_, or \_it\_, is the person or

thing spoken of. All denote \_qualities of existence\_, but such qualities as

make different impressions on the mind. \_I is\_ the being of \_consciousness,

thou\_ [\_is\_ the being] of \_perception\_, and \_he\_ of \_memory\_."--\_Booth's

Introd.\_, p. 44. This is such syntax as I should not choose to imitate; nor

is it very proper to say, that the three persons in grammar "denote

\_qualities\_ of existence." But, supposing the phraseology to be correct, it

is no \_real\_ exception to the foregoing rule of concord; for \_I\_ and \_thou\_

are here made to be pronouns of the \_third\_ person. So in the following

example, which I take to be bad English: "I, or the person who speaks, \_is\_

the first person; you, \_is\_ the second; he, she, or it, is the third person

singular."--\_Bartlett's Manual\_, Part ii, p. 70. Again, in the following;

which is perhaps a little better: "The person '\_I\_' \_is spoken of\_ as acted

upon."--\_Bullions, Prin. of E. Gram.\_, 2d Edition, p. 29. But there is a

manifest absurdity in saying, with this learned "Professor of Languages,"

that the pronouns of the different persons \_are\_ those persons: as, "\_I is

the first person\_, and denotes the speaker. \_Thou is the second\_, and

denotes the person spoken to."--\_Ib.\_, p. 22.

[386] (1.) Concerning the verb \_need\_, Dr. Webster has the following note:

"In the use of this verb there is another irregularity, which is peculiar,

the verb being \_without a nominative\_, expressed or implied. 'Whereof here

\_needs\_ no account.'--\_Milt., P. L.\_, 4. 235. There is no evidence of the

fact, and there \_needs\_ none. This is an established use of

\_need\_."--\_Philos. Gram.\_, p. 178; \_Improved Gram.\_, 127; \_Greenleaf's

Gram. Simp.\_, p. 38; \_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, p. 537. "Established use?" To be

sure, it is "an established use;" but the learned Doctor's comment is a

most unconscionable blunder,--a pedantic violation of a sure principle of

Universal Grammar,--a perversion worthy only of the veriest ignoramus. Yet

Greenleaf profitably publishes it, with other plagiarisms, for "Grammar

Simplified!" Now the verb "\_needs\_," like the Latin \_eget\_, signifying \_is

necessary\_, is here not active, but neuter; and has the nominative set

\_after it\_, as any verb must, when the adverb \_there\_ or \_here\_ is before

it. The verbs \_lack\_ and \_want\_ may have the same construction, and can

have no other, when the word \_there\_, and not a nominative, precedes them;

as, "Peradventure \_there shall lack five\_ of the fifty righteous."--\_Gen.\_,

xviii, 28. There is therefore neither "\_irregularity\_," nor any thing

"\_peculiar\_," in thus placing the verb and its nominative.

(2.) Yet have we other grammarians, who, with astonishing facility, have

allowed themselves to be misled, and whose books are now misleading the

schools, in regard to this very simple matter. Thus Wells: "The

\_transitive\_ verbs \_need\_ and \_want\_, are sometimes employed in a general

sense, \_without a nominative\_, expressed or implied. Examples:--'There

\_needed\_ a new dispensation.'--\_Caleb Cushing\_. 'There \_needs\_ no better

picture.'--\_Irving\_. 'There \_wanted\_ not patrons to stand up.'--\_Sparks\_.

'Nor did there \_want\_ Cornice, or frieze.'--\_Milton\_."--\_Wells's School

Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 141: 113th Ed., p. 154. In my edition of Milton, the

text is, "Nor did \_they want\_ Cornice or frieze."--\_P. L.\_, B. i, l. 715,

716. This reading makes \_want\_ a "transitive" verb, but the other makes it

neuter, with the nominative following it. Again, thus Weld: "\_A verb in the

imperative mode\_, and the \_transitive\_ verbs \_need, want\_, and \_require\_,

sometimes appear to be used indefinitely, \_without a nominative\_; as, \_let\_

there be light; There \_required\_ haste in the business; There \_needs\_ no

argument for proving, &c. There \_wanted\_ not men who would, &c. The last

expressions have an \_active form with a passive sense\_, and should perhaps

rather be considered \_elliptical\_ than \_wanting a nominative\_; as, \_haste

is required, no argument is needed\_, &c."--\_Weld's English Grammar

Illustrated\_, p. 143. Is there anywhere, in print, viler pedantry than

this? The only elliptical example, "\_Let\_ there be light,"--a kind of

sentence from which the nominative is \_usually suppressed\_,--is here

absurdly represented as being full, yet without a subject for its verb;

while other examples, which are full, and in which the nominative \_must

follow\_ the verb, because the adverb "\_there\_" precedes, are first denied

to have nominatives, and then most bunglingly tortured with false ellipses,

to prove that they have them!

(3.) The idea of a command \_wherein no person or thing is commanded\_, seems

to have originated with Webster, by whom it has been taught, since 1807, as

follows: "In some cases, the imperative verb is used without a definite

nominative."--\_Philos. Gram.\_, p. 141; \_Imp. Gram.\_, 86; \_Rudiments\_, 69.

See the same words in \_Frazee's Gram.\_, p. 133. Wells has something

similar: "A verb in the imperative is sometimes used \_absolutely\_, having

no direct reference to any particular subject expressed or implied; as,

'And God said, \_Let\_ there be light.'"--\_School Gram.\_, p. 141. But, when

this command was uttered to the dark waves of primeval chaos, it must have

meant, "\_Do ye let light be there.\_" What else could it mean? There may

frequently be difficulty in determining what or who is addressed by the

imperative \_let\_, but there seems to be more in affirming that it has no

subject. Nutting, puzzled with this word, makes the following dubious and

unsatisfactory suggestion: "Perhaps it may be, in many cases, equivalent to

\_may\_; or it may be termed itself an \_imperative mode impersonal\_; that is,

containing a command or an entreaty addressed to no particular

person."--\_Nutting's Practical Gram.\_, p. 47.

(4.) These several errors, about the "Imperative used Absolutely," with "no

subject addressed," as in "\_Let there be light\_," and the Indicative "verbs

NEED and WANT, employed without a nominative, either expressed or implied,"

are again carefully reiterated by the learned Professor Fowler, in his

great text-book of philology "in its Elements and Forms,"--called, rather

extravagantly, an "English Grammar." See, in his edition of 1850, §597,

Note 3 and Note 7; also §520, Note 2. Wells's authorities for "Imperatives

Absolute," are, "Frazee, Allen and Cornwell, Nutting, Lynde, and Chapin;"

and, with reference to "NEED and WANT," he says, "See Webster, Perley, and

Ingersoll."--\_School Gram.\_, 1850, §209.

(5.) But, in obvious absurdity most strangely overlooked by the writer, all

these blunderers are outdone by a later one, who says: "\_Need\_ and \_dare\_

are sometimes used in \_a general sense without a nominative\_: as, 'There

\_needed\_ no prophet to tell us that;' 'There \_wanted\_ no advocates to

secure the voice of the people.' It is better, however, to supply \_it\_, as

a nominative, than admit an \_anomala\_. Sometimes, when intransitive, they

have the \_plural form\_ with a singular \_noun\_: as, 'He need not fear;' 'He

dare not hurt you.'"--\_Rev. H. W. Bailey's E. Gram.\_, 1854, p. 128. The

last example--"\_He dare\_"--is bad English: \_dare\_ should be \_dares\_. "He

\_need\_ not \_fear\_," if admitted to be right, is of the potential mood; in

which no verb is inflected in the third person. "\_He\_," too, is not a

"\_noun\_;" nor can it ever rightly have a "\_plural\_" verb. "To supply \_it\_,

as a nominative," where the verb is declared to be "\_without a

nominative\_," and to make "\_wanted\_" an example of "\_dare\_" are blunders

precisely worthy of an author who knows not how to spell \_anomaly!\_

[387] This interpretation, and others like it, are given not only by

\_Murray\_, but by many other grammarians, one of whom at least was earlier

than he. See \_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part i, p. 123; \_Ingersoll's\_, 153;

\_Guy's\_, 91; \_Alger's\_, 73; \_Merchant's\_, 100; \_Picket's\_, 211; \_Fisk's\_,

146; \_D. Adams's\_, 81; \_R. C. Smith's\_, 182.

[388] The same may be said of Dr. Webster's "\_nominative sentences\_;" three

fourths of which are nothing but \_phrases\_ that include a nominative with

which the following verb agrees. And who does not know, that to call the

adjuncts of any thing "an \_essential part\_ of it," is a flat absurdity? An

\_adjunct\_ is "something added to another, but \_not essentially a part\_ of

it."--\_Webster's Dict.\_ But, says the Doctor, "Attributes and other words

often make an \_essential part\_ of the nominative; [as,] '\_Our\_ IDEAS \_of

eternity\_ CAN BE nothing but an infinite succession of moments of

duration.'--LOCKE. 'A \_wise\_ SON MAKETH a glad father; but a \_foolish\_ SON

IS the heaviness of his mother.' Abstract the name from its attribute, and

the proposition cannot always be true. 'HE \_that gathereth in summer\_ is a

wise son.' Take away the description, '\_that gathereth in summer\_,' and the

affirmation ceases to be true, or becomes inapplicable. These sentences or

clauses thus \_constituting\_ the subject of an affirmation, may be termed

\_nominative sentences\_."--\_Improved Gram.\_, p. 95. This teaching reminds me

of the Doctor's own exclamation: "What strange work has been made with

Grammar!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 94; \_Philos. Gram.\_, 138. In Nesbit's English Parsing,

a book designed mainly for "a Key to Murray's Exercises in Parsing," the

following example is thus expounded: "The smooth stream, the serene

atmosphere, [and] the mild zephyr, are the proper emblems of a gentle

temper, and a peaceful life."--\_Murray's Exercises\_, p. 8. "\_The smooth

stream, the serene atmosphere, the mild zephyr\_, is part of a sentence,

\_which\_ is the \_nominative case\_ to the verb '\_are\_.' \_Are\_ is an irregular

verb neuter, in the indicative mood, the present tense, the third person

plural, and \_agrees with the aforementioned part of a sentence\_, as its

nominative case."--\_Introduction to English Parsing\_, p. 137. On this

principle of \_analysis\_, all the rules that speak of the nominatives or

antecedents connected by conjunctions, may be dispensed with, as useless;

and the doctrine, that a verb which has a phrase or sentence for its

subject, must be \_singular\_, is palpably contradicted, and supposed

erroneous!

[389] "No Relative can become a Nominative to a Verb."--\_Joseph W. Wright's

Philosophical Grammar\_, p. 162. "A \_personal\_ pronoun becomes a nominative,

though a \_relative\_ does not."--\_Ib.\_, p. 152. This teacher is criticised

by the other as follows: "Wright says that 'Personal pronouns may be in the

nominative case,' and that 'relative pronouns \_can not be\_. Yet he declines

his relatives thus: 'Nominative case, \_who\_; possessive, \_whose\_;

objective, \_whom!"--Oliver B. Peirce's Grammar\_, p. 331. This latter author

here sees the palpable inconsistency of the former, and accordingly treats

\_who, which, what, whatever\_, &c., as relative pronouns of the nominative

case--or, as he calls them, "connective substitutes in the subjective

form;" but when \_what\_ or \_whatever\_ precedes its noun, or when \_as\_ is

preferred to \_who\_ or \_which\_, he refers both verbs to the noun itself, and

adopts the very principle by which Cobbet and Wright erroneously parse the

verbs which belong to the relatives, \_who, which\_, and \_that\_: as,

"Whatever man will adhere to strict principles of honesty, will find his

reward in himself."--\_Peirce's Gram.\_, p. 55. Here Peirce considers

\_whatever\_ to be a mere adjective, and \_man\_ the subject of \_will adhere\_

and \_will find\_. "Such persons as write grammar, should themselves be

grammarians."--\_Ib.\_, p. 330. Here he declares \_as\_ to be no pronoun, but

"a modifying connective," i.e., conjunction; and supposes \_persons\_ to be

the direct subject of \_write\_ as well as of \_should be\_: as if a

conjunction could connect a verb and its nominative!

[390] Dr. Latham, conceiving that, of words in apposition, the first must

always be the leading one and control the verb, gives to his example an

other form thus: "\_Your master, I, commands you\_ (not \_command\_)."--\_Ib.\_

But this I take to be bad English. It is the opinion of many grammarians,

perhaps of most, that nouns, which are ordinarily of the third person, \_may

be changed in person\_, by being set in apposition with a pronoun of the

first or second. But even if terms so used do not \_assimilate\_ in person,

the first cannot be subjected to the third, as above. It must have the

preference, and ought to have the first place. The following study-bred

example of the Doctor's, is also awkward and ungrammatical: "\_I, your

master, who commands you to make haste, am in a hurry\_."--\_Hand-Book\_, p.

334.

[391] Professor Fowler says, "\_One\_ when contrasted with \_other\_, sometimes

represents \_plural nouns\_; as, 'The reason why the \_one\_ are ordinarily

taken for real qualities, and the \_other\_ for bare powers, seems to

be.'--LOCKE.", \_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, 1850, p. 242. This doctrine is, I

think, erroneous; and the example, too, is defective. For, if \_one\_ may be

\_plural\_, we have no distinctive definition or notion of either number.

"\_One\_" and "\_other\_" are not here to be regarded as the leading words in

their clauses; they are mere adjectives, each referring to the collective

noun \_class\_ or \_species\_, understood, which should have been expressed

after the former. See Etym., Obs. 19, p. 276.

[392] Dr. Priestley says, "It is a rule, I believe, in all grammars, that

when a verb comes between two nouns, either of which may be understood as

the subject of the affirmation, that it may agree with either of them; but

some regard must be had to that which is more naturally the subject of it,

as also to that which stands next to the verb; for if no regard be paid to

these circumstances, the construction will be harsh: [as,] \_Minced pies

was\_ regarded as a profane and superstitious viand by the sectaries.

\_Hume's Hist.\_ A great \_cause\_ of the low state of industry \_were\_ the

restraints put upon it. \_Ib.\_ By this term was understood, such \_persons\_

as invented, or drew up rules for themselves and the world."--\_English

Gram. with Notes\_, p. 189. The Doctor evidently supposed all these examples

to be \_bad English\_, or at least \_harsh in their construction\_. And the

first two unquestionably are so; while the last, whether right or wrong,

has nothing at all to do with his rule: it has but one nominative, and that

appears to be part of a definition, and not the true subject of the verb.

Nor, indeed, is the first any more relevant; because Hume's "\_viand\_"

cannot possibly be taken "as \_the subject\_ of the affirmation." Lindley

Murray, who literally copies Priestley's note, (all but the first line and

the last,) rejects these two examples, substituting for the former, "His

meat \_was\_ locusts and wild honey," and for the latter, "The wages of sin

\_is\_ death." He very evidently supposes all three of his examples to be

\_good English\_. In this, according to Churchill, he is at fault in two

instances out of the three; and still more so, in regard to the note, or

rule, itself. In stead of being "a rule in all grammars," it is (so far as

I know) found only in these authors, and such as have implicitly copied it

from Murray. Among these last, are Alger, Ingersoll, R. C. Smith, Fisk, and

Merchant. Churchill, who cites it only as Murray's, and yet expends two

pages of criticism upon it, very justly says: "To make that the nominative

case, [or subject of the affirmation,] which happens to stand nearest to

the verb, appears to me to be on a par with the blunder pointed out in note

204th;" [that is, of making the verb agree with an objective case which

happens to stand nearer to it, than its subject, or nominative.]--

\_Churchill's New Gram.\_, p. 313.

[393] "If the excellence of Dryden's works was \_lessened\_ by his indigence,

their number was increased."--\_Dr. Johnson\_. This is an example of the

proper and necessary use of the indicative mood after an \_if\_, the matter

of the condition being regarded as a fact. But Dr. Webster, who prefers the

indicative \_too often\_, has the following note upon it: "If Johnson had

followed the common grammars, or even his own, which is prefixed to his

Dictionary, he would have written \_were\_--'If the excellence of Dryden's

works \_were\_ lessened'--Fortunately this great man, led by usage rather

than by books, wrote \_correct English, instead of grammar\_."--

\_Philosophical Gram.\_, p. 238. Now this is as absurd, as it is

characteristic of the grammar from which it is taken. Each form is right

sometimes, and neither can be used for the other, without error.

[394] Taking this allegation in one sense, the reader may see that Kirkham

was not altogether wrong here; and that, had he condemned the \_solecisms\_

adopted by himself and others, about "\_unity of idea\_" and "\_plurality of

idea\_," in stead of condemning the \_things intended to be spoken of\_, he

might have made a discovery which would have set him wholly right. See a

footnote on page 738, under the head of \_Absurdities\_.

[395] In his \_English Reader\_, (Part II, Chap. 5th, Sec. 7th,) Murray has

this line in its proper form, as it here stands in the words of Thomson;

but, in his \_Grammar\_, he corrupted it, first in his \_Exercises\_, and then

still more in his \_Key\_. Among his examples of "\_False Syntax\_" it stands

thus:

"What black despair, what horror, \_fills\_ his \_mind\_!"

--\_Exercises\_, Rule 2.

So the error is propagated in the name of \_Learning\_, and this verse goes

from grammar to grammar, as one that must have a "\_plural\_" verb. See

\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 242; \_Smith's New Gram.\_, p. 127; \_Fisk's Gram.\_,

p. 120; \_Weld's E. Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 189; Imp. Ed., p. 196.

[396] S. W. Clark, by reckoning "\_as\_" a "\_preposition\_," perverts the

construction of sentences like this, and inserts a wrong case after the

conjunction. See \_Clark's Practical Grammar\_, pp. 92 and 178; also \_this

Syntax\_, Obs. 6 and Obs. 18, on Conjunctions.

[397] Murray gives us the following text for false grammar, under the head

of \_Strength\_: "And Elias with Moses appeared to them."--\_Exercises\_, 8vo,

p. 135. This he corrects thus: "And \_there appeared to them\_ Elias with

Moses."--\_Key\_, 8vo, p. 266. He omits the comma after \_Elias\_, which some

copies of the Bible contain, and others do not. Whether he supposed the

verb \_appeared\_ to be singular or plural, I cannot tell; and he did not

extend his quotation to the pronoun \_they\_, which immediately follows, and

in which alone the incongruity lies.

[398] This order of the persons, is \_not universally\_ maintained in those

languages. The words of Mary to her son, "Thy \_father and I\_ have sought

thee sorrowing," seem very properly to give the precedence to her husband;

and this is their arrangement in St. Luke's Greek, and in the Latin

versions, as well as in others.

[399] The hackneyed example, "\_I and Cicero are well,"--"Ego et Cicero

valemus\_"--which makes such a figure in the grammars, both Latin and

English, and yet is ascribed to Cicero himself, deserves a word of

explanation. Cicero the orator, having with him his young son Marcus Cicero

at Athens, while his beloved daughter Tullia was with her mother in Italy,

thus wrote to his wife, Terentia: "\_Si tu, et Tullia, lux nostra, valetix;

ego, et suavissimus Cicero, valemus\_."--EPIST. AD FAM. Lib. xiv, Ep. v.

That is, "If thou, and Tullia, our joy, are well; I, and the sweet lad

Cicero, are likewise well." This literal translation is good English, and

not to be amended by inversion; for a father is not expected to give

precedence to his child. But, when I was a boy, the text and version of Dr.

Adam puzzled me not a little; because I could not conceive how \_Cicero\_

could ever have said, "\_I and Cicero are well\_." The garbled citation is

now much oftener read than the original. See it in \_Crombie's Treatise\_, p.

243; \_McCulloch's Gram.\_, p. 158; and others.

[400] Two singulars connected by \_and\_, when they form a part of such a

disjunction, are still equivalent to a plural; and are to be treated as

such, in the syntax of the verb. Hence the following construction appears

to be inaccurate: "A single consonant or \_a mute and a liquid\_ before an

accented vowel, \_is\_ joined to that vowel"--\_Dr. Bullions, Lat. Gram.\_ p.

xi.

[401] Murray the schoolmaster has it, "\_used\_ to govern."--\_English Gram.\_,

p. 64. He puts the verb in a \_wrong tense\_. Dr. Bullions has it, "\_usually

governs\_."--\_Lat. Gram.\_, p. 202. This is right.--G. B.

[402] The two verbs \_to sit\_ and \_to set\_ are in general quite different in

their meaning; but the passive verb \_to be set\_ sometimes comes pretty near

to the sense of the former, which is for the most part neuter. Hence, we

not only find the Latin word \_sedeo, to sit\_, used in the sense of \_being

set\_, as, "Ingens coena \_sedet\_," "A huge supper \_is set\_," \_Juv.\_, 2, 119;

but, in the seven texts above, our translators have used \_is set, was set,

&c.\_, with reference to the personal posture of \_sitting\_. This, in the

opinion of Dr. Lowth and some others, is erroneous. "\_Set\_," says the

Doctor, "can be no part of the verb \_to sit\_. If it belong to the verb \_to

set\_, the translation in these passages is wrong. For \_to set\_, signifies

\_to place\_, but without any designation of the \_posture\_ of the person

placed; which is a circumstance of importance, expressed by the

original."--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 53; \_Churchill's\_, 265. These gentlemen

cite three of these seven examples, and refer to the other four; but they

do not tell us how they would amend any of them--except that they prefer

\_sitten\_ to \_sat\_, vainly endeavouring to restore an old participle which

is certainly obsolete. If any critic dislike my version of the last two

texts, because I use the present tense for what in the Greek is the first

aorist; let him notice that this has been done in both by our translators,

and in one by those of the Vulgate. In the preceding example, too, the same

aorist is rendered, "\_am set\_," and by Beza, "\_sedeo\_;" though Montanus and

the Vulgate render it literally by "\_sedi\_," as I do by \_sat\_. See \_Key to

False Syntax\_, Rule XVII, Note xii.

[403] Nutting, I suppose, did not imagine the Greek article, [Greek: to],

\_the\_, and the English or Saxon verb \_do\_, to be equivalent or kindred

words. But there is no knowing what terms conjectural etymology may not

contrive to identify, or at least to approximate and ally. The ingenious

David Booth, if he does not actually identify \_do\_, with [Greek: to],

\_the\_, has discovered synonymes [sic--KTH] and cognates that are altogether

as unapparent to common observers: as, "\_It\_ and \_the\_," says he, "when

Gender is not attended to, are \_synonymous\_. Each is expressive of Being in

general, and when used Verbally, signifies to \_bring forth\_, or to \_add\_ to

what we already see. \_The, it, and, add, at, to\_, and \_do\_, are \_kindred

words\_. They mark that an \_addition\_ is made to some collected mass of

existence. \_To\_, which literally signifies \_add\_, (like \_at\_ and the Latin

\_ad\_,) is merely a different pronunciation of \_do\_. It expresses the

\_junction\_ of an other thing, or circumstance, as appears more evidently

from its varied orthography of \_too\_."--\_Introd. to Analyt. Dict.\_, p. 45.

Horne Tooke, it seems, could not persuade this author into his notion of

the derivation and meaning of \_the, it, to\_, or \_do\_. But Lindley Murray,

and his followers, have been more tractable. They were ready to be led

without looking. "To," say they, "comes from \_Saxon and Gothic\_ words,

which signify action, effect, termination, to act, &c."--\_Murray's Gram.\_,

8vo, p. 183; \_Fisk's\_, 92. What an admirable explanation is this! and how

prettily the great Compiler says on the next leaf: "Etymology, when it is

guided by \_judgment\_, and [when] \_proper limits\_ are set to it, certainly

merits great attention!"--\_Ib.\_, p. 135. According to his own express rules

for interpreting "a substantive \_without any article to limit it\_" and the

"relative pronoun \_with a comma before it\_," he must have meant, that "\_to\_

comes from Saxon and Gothic words" \_of every sort\_, and that \_the words of

these two languages\_ "signify action, effect, termination, to act, &c." The

latter assertion is true enough: but, concerning the former, a man of sense

may demur. Nor do I see how it is possible not to despise \_such\_ etymology,

be the interpretation of the words what it may. For, if \_to\_ means \_action\_

or \_to act\_, then our little infinitive phrase, \_to be\_, must mean, \_action

be\_, or \_to act be\_; and what is this, but nonsense?

[404] So, from the following language of three modern authors, one cannot

but infer, that they would parse the verb \_as governed by the preposition\_;

but I do not perceive that they anywhere expressly say so:

(1.) "The Infinitive is the form of the supplemental verb that always has,

or admits, the \_preposition\_ TO before it; as, to \_move\_. Its general

character is to represent the action in \_prospect\_, or \_to do\_; or in

\_retrospect\_, as \_to have done\_. As a verb, it signifies \_to do\_ the

action; and as \_object of the preposition\_ TO, it stands in the place of a

noun for \_the doing\_ of it. The infinitive verb and its prefix \_to\_ are

used much like a preposition and its noun object."--\_Felch's Comprehensive

Gram.\_, p. 62.

(2.) "The action or other signification of a verb may be expressed in its

widest and most general sense, without any limitation by a person or agent,

but \_merely as the end or purpose\_ of some other action, state of being,

quality, or thing; it is, from this want of limitation, said to be in the

\_Infinitive mode\_; and is expressed by the verb with the \_preposition\_ TO

before it, to denote \_this relation of end or purpose\_; as, 'He came \_to

see\_ me;' 'The man is not fit \_die\_;' 'It was not right for him \_to do\_

thus.'"--\_Dr. S. Webber's English Gram.\_, p. 35.

(3.) "RULE 3. A verb in the Infinitive Mode, is \_the object\_ of the

preposition TO, expressed or understood."--\_S. W. Clark's Practical Gram.\_,

p. 127.

[405] Rufus Nutting, A. M., a grammarian of some skill, supposes that in

all such sentences there was "\_anciently\_" an ellipsis, not of the phrase

"\_in order to\_," but of the preposition \_for\_. He says, "Considering this

mode as merely a \_verbal noun\_, it might be observed, that the infinitive,

when it expresses the \_object\_, is governed by a \_transitive\_ verb; and,

when it expresses the \_final cause\_, is governed by an \_intransitive\_ verb,

OR ANCIENTLY, BY A PREPOSITION UNDERSTOOD. Of the former kind--'he learns

\_to read\_.' Of the latter--'he reads \_to learn\_,' i. e. '\_for\_ to

learn.'"--\_Practical Gram.\_, p. 101. If \_for\_ was anciently understood in

examples of this sort, it is understood now, and to a still greater extent;

because we do not now insert the word \_for\_, as our ancestors sometimes

did; and an ellipsis can no otherwise grow obsolete, than by a continual

use of what was once occasionally omitted.

[406] (1.) "La préposition, est un mot indéclinable, placé devant les noms,

les pronoms, et les \_verbes\_, qu'elle \_régit\_."--"The preposition is an

indeclinable word placed before the nouns, pronouns, and \_verbs\_ which it

\_governs\_."--\_Perrin's Grammar\_, p. 152.

(2.) "Every verb placed immediately after \_an other verb\_, or after \_a

preposition\_, ought to be put in the \_infinitive\_; because it is then \_the

regimen\_ of the verb or preposition which precedes."--See \_La Grammaire des

Grammaires, par Girault Du Vivier\_, p. 774.

(3.) The American translator of the Elements of General Grammar, by the

Baron De Sacy, is naturally led, in giving a version of his author's method

of analysis, to parse the English infinitive mood essentially as I do;

calling the word \_to\_ a preposition, and the exponent, or sign, of a

\_relation\_ between the verb which follows it, and some other word which is

antecedent to it. Thus, in the phrase, "\_commanding\_ them \_to use\_ his

power," he says, that "'\_to\_' [is the] Exponent of a relation whose

Antecedent is '\_commanding\_,' and [whose] Consequent [is]

'\_use\_.'"--\_Fosdick's De Sacy\_, p. 131. In short, he expounds the word \_to\_

in this relation, just as he does when it stands before the objective case.

For example, in the phrase, "\_belonging to him alone: 'to\_,' Exponent of a

relation of which the Antecedent is '\_belonging\_,' and the Consequent,

'\_him alone.'"--Ib.\_, p. 126. My solution, in either case, differs from

this in scarcely any thing else than the \_choice of words\_ to express it.

(4.) It appears that, in sundry dialects of the north of Europe, the

preposition \_at\_ has been preferred for the governing of the infinitive:

"The use of \_at\_ for \_to\_, as the sign of the infinitive mode, is Norse,

not Saxon. It is the regular prefix in Icelandic, Danish, Swedish, and

Feroic. It is also found in the northern dialects of the Old English, and

in the particular dialect of Westmoreland at the present day."--\_Fowler, on

the English Language\_, 8vo, 1850, p. 46.

[407] Here is a literal version, in which two infinitives are governed by

the preposition \_between\_; and though such a construction is uncommon, I

know not why it should be thought less accurate in the one language than in

the other. In some exceptive phrases, also, it seems not improper to put

the infinitive after some other preposition than \_to\_; as, "What can she do

\_besides sing\_?"--"What has she done, \_except rock\_ herself?" But such

expressions, if allowable, are too unfrequent to be noticed in any general

Rule of syntax. In the following example, the word \_of\_ pretty evidently

governs the infinitive: "Intemperance characterizes our discussions, that

is calculated to embitter in stead \_of conciliate\_."--CINCINNATI HERALD:

\_Liberator\_, No. 986.

[408] This doctrine has been lately revived in English by William B. Fowle,

who quotes Dr. Rees, Beauzée, Harris, Tracy, and Crombie, as his

authorities for it. He is right in supposing the English infinitive to be

generally governed by the preposition \_to\_, but wrong in calling it a

\_noun\_, or "the \_name\_ of the verb," except this phrase be used in the

sense in which every verb may be the name of itself. It is an error too, to

suppose with Beauzée, "that the infinitive never in any language \_refers to

a subject\_ or nominative;" or, as Harris has it, that infinitives "\_have no

reference at all to persons or substances\_." See \_Fowle's True English

Gram.\_, Part ii, pp. 74 and 75. For though the infinitive verb never

\_agrees\_ with a subject or nominative, like a finite verb, it most commonly

has a very obvious \_reference\_ to something which is \_the subject\_ of the

being, action, or passion, which it expresses; and this reference is one of

the chief points of difference between the infinitive and a noun. S. S.

Greene, in a recent grammar, absurdly parses infinitives "\_as nouns\_," and

by the common rules for nouns, though he begins with calling them \_verbs\_.

Thus: "\_Our honor is to be maintained. To be maintained\_, is a \_regular

passive\_ VERB, infinitive mode, present tense, and is \_used as a\_ NOUN \_in

the relation of predicate\_; according to Rule II. A \_noun or pronoun\_ used

with the copula to form the \_predicate\_, must be in the \_nominative\_

case."--\_Greene's Gram.\_, 1848. p. 93. (See the Rule, ib. p. 29.) This

author admits, "The '\_to\_' seems, like the preposition, to perform the

office of a \_connective\_:" but then he ingeniously imagines, "The

infinitive \_differs from the preposition and its object\_, in that the

'\_to\_' is \_the only preposition\_ used with the verb." And so he concludes,

"The \_two\_ [or more] \_parts\_ of the infinitive are taken together, and,

\_thus\_ combined, may \_become a\_ NOUN \_in any relation\_."--\_Ib.\_, 1st

Edition, p. 87. S. S. Greene will also have the infinitive to make the verb

before it \_transitive\_; for he says, "The only form [of phrase] used as the

\_direct object of a transitive verb\_ is the \_infinitive\_; as, 'We intend

(What?) \_to leave\_ [town] to-day:' 'They tried (What?) \_to conceal\_ their

fears.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 99. One might as well find transitive verbs in these

equivalents: "\_It is our purpose to leave\_ town to-day."--"They

\_endeavoured to conceal\_ their fears." Or in this:--"They \_blustered\_ to

conceal their fears."

[409] It is remarkable that the ingenious J. E. Worcester could discern

nothing of the import of this particle before a verb. He expounds it, with

very little consistency, thus: "Tò, \_or\_ To, \_ad\_. A particle employed as

the usual sign or prefix of the infinitive mood of the verb; and it might,

in such use, be deemed \_a syllable of the verb\_. It is used \_merely as a

sign of the infinitive\_, without having any distinct or separate meaning:

as, 'He loves \_to\_ read.'"--\_Univ. and Crit. Dict.\_ Now is it not plain,

that the action expressed by "\_read\_" is "that \_towards\_ which" the

affection signified by "\_loves\_" is directed? It is only because we can use

no other word in lieu of this \_to\_, that its meaning is not readily seen.

For calling it "a syllable of the verb," there is, I think, no reason or

analogy whatever. There is absurdity in calling it even "a \_part\_ of the

verb."

[410] As there is no point of grammar on which our philologists are more at

\_variance\_, so there seems to be none on which they are more at \_fault\_,

than in their treatment of the infinitive mood, with its usual sign, or

governing particle, \_to\_. For the information of the reader, I would gladly

cite every explanation not consonant with my own, and show wherein it is

objectionable; but so numerous are the forms of error under this head, that

such as cannot be classed together, or are not likely to be repeated, must

in general be left to run their course, exempt from any criticism of mine.

Of these various forms of error, however, I may here add an example or two.

(1.) "What is the meaning of the word \_to?\_ Ans. \_To\_ means \_act\_.

NOTE.--As our verbs and nouns \_are spelled in the same manner\_, it was

formerly \_thought best\_ to prefix the \_word\_ TO, to words \_when used as

verbs\_. For there is no difference between the NOUN, \_love\_; and the VERB,

\_to love\_; but what is shown by the \_prefix\_ TO, which signifies \_act\_; i.

e. to \_act\_ love."--\_R. W. Greene's Inductive Exercises in English

Grammar\_, N. Y., 1829, p. 52. Now all this, positive as the words are, is

not only fanciful, but false, utterly false. \_To\_ no more "means \_act\_,"

than \_from\_ "means \_act\_." And if it did, it could not be a sign of the

infinitive, or of a verb at all; for, "\_act love\_," is imperative, and

makes the word "\_love\_" a \_noun\_; and so, "\_to act love\_," (where "\_love\_"

is also a noun,) must mean "\_act act love\_," which is tautological

nonsense. Our nouns and verbs are not, \_in general\_, spelled alike; nor are

the latter, \_in general\_, preceded by \_to\_; nor could a particle which may

govern \_either\_, have been \_specifically intended\_, at first, to mark their

difference. By some, as we have seen, it is argued from the very sign, that

the infinitive is always essentially a noun.

(2.) "The \_infinitive mode\_ is the \_root\_ or \_simple form\_ of the verb,

used to express an action or state \_indefinitely\_; as, \_to hear, to speak\_.

It is generally distinguished by the sign \_to\_. When the particle \_to\_ is

employed in \_forming\_ the infinitive, it is to be regarded as \_a part of

the verb\_. In \_every other case\_ it is a \_preposition\_."--\_Wells's School

Grammar\_, 1st Ed., p. 80. "A \_Preposition\_ is a word which is used to

express the relation of a \_noun\_ or \_pronoun\_ depending upon it, to some

other word in the sentence."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 46 and 108. "The passive form of a

verb is sometimes used in connection with a \_preposition\_, forming a

\_compound passive verb\_. Examples:--'He \_was listened to\_ without a

murmur.'--A. H. EVERETT. 'Nor is this enterprise \_to be scoffed

at\_.'--CHANNING."--\_Ib.\_, p. 146. "A verb in the infinitive \_usually

relates\_ to some noun or pronoun. Thus, in the sentence, 'He desires to

improve,' the verb \_to improve\_ relates to the pronoun \_he\_ while it is

governed by \_desires\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 150. "'The \_agent\_ to a verb in the

infinitive mode must be in the \_objective\_ case.'--NUTTING."--\_Ib.\_, p.

148. These citations from Wells, the last of which he quotes approvingly,

by way of authority, are in many respects self-contradictory, and in nearly

all respects untrue. How can the infinitive be only "the \_root\_ or \_simple

form\_ of the verb," and yet consist "generally" of two distinct words, and

often of three, four, or five; as, "\_to hear\_,"--"\_to have heard\_,"--"\_to

be listened to\_,"--"\_to have been listened to\_?" How can \_to\_ be a

"\_preposition\_" in the phrase, "\_He was listened to\_," and not so at all in

"\_to be listened to\_?" How does the infinitive "express an action or state

\_indefinitely\_," if it "\_usually relates to some noun or pronoun\_?" Why

\_must\_ its \_agent\_ "be in the \_objective\_ case," if "\_to improve\_ relates

to the pronoun \_he\_?" Is \_to "in every other case a preposition\_," and not

such before a verb or a participle? Must every preposition govern some

"\_noun or pronoun\_?" And yet are there some prepositions which govern

nothing, precede nothing? "The door banged \_to\_ behind him."--BLACKWELL:

\_Prose Edda\_, §2. What is \_to\_ here?

(3.) "The \_preposition\_ TO \_before\_ a verb is the sign of the

Infinitive."--\_Weld's E. Gram.\_, 2d Ed., p. 74. "The preposition is \_a part

of speech\_ used to connect words, and show their relation."--\_Ib.\_, p. 42.

"The perfect infinitive is formed of the perfect participle and the

auxiliary HAVE \_preceded\_ by the \_preposition\_ TO."--\_Ib.\_, p. 96. "The

infinitive mode \_follows\_ a \_verb, noun\_, or \_adjective\_."--\_Ib.\_, pp. 75

and 166. "A verb in the Infinitive \_may follow\_: 1. \_Verbs\_ or

\_participles\_; 2. \_Nouns\_ or \_pronouns\_; 3. \_Adjectives\_; 4. \_As\_ or

\_than\_; 5. \_Adverbs\_; 6. \_Prepositions\_; 7. The \_Infinitive\_ is often used

\_independently\_; 8. The Infinitive mode is often used in the office of a

\_verbal noun\_, as the \_nominative case\_ to the verb, and as the \_objective

case\_ after \_verbs\_ and \_prepositions\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 167. These last two

counts are absurdly included among what "the Infinitive \_may follow\_;" and

is it not rather queer, that this mood should be found to "\_follow\_" every

thing else, and \_not\_ "the preposition TO," which comes "\_before\_" it, and

by which it is "\_preceded\_?" This author adopts also the following absurd

and needless rule: "The Infinitive mode has an objective case before it

\_when\_ [the word] THAT \_is omitted\_: as, I believe \_the sun\_ to be the

centre of the solar system; I know \_him\_ to be a man of veracity."--\_Ib.\_,

p. 167; \_Abridged Ed.\_, 124. (See Obs. 10th on Rule 2d, above.) "\_Sun\_" is

here governed by "\_believe\_;" and "\_him\_," by "\_know\_;" and "\_be\_," in both

instances, by "the preposition TO:" for this particle is not only "the

\_sign\_ of the Infinitive," but its \_governing word\_, answering well to the

definition of a preposition above cited from Weld.

[411] "The infinitive is sometimes governed by a preposition; as, 'The

shipmen were \_about to flee\_.'"--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 149;

3d Ed., p. 158. Wells has altered this, and for "\_preposition\_" put

"\_adverb\_."--Ed. of 1850, p. 163.

[412] Some grammatists, being predetermined that no preposition shall

control the infinitive, avoid the conclusion by absurdly calling FOR, a

\_conjunction\_; ABOUT, an \_adverb\_; and TO--no matter what--but generally,

\_nothing\_. Thus: "The \_conjunction\_ FOR, is inelegantly used before verbs

in the infinitive mood; as, 'He came \_for\_ to study Latin.'"--\_Greenleaf's

Gram.\_, p. 38. "The infinitive mood is sometimes \_governed\_ by

\_conjunctions\_ or \_adverbs\_; as, 'An object so high \_as to be\_ invisible;'

'The army is \_about to march\_.'"--\_Kirkham's Gram.\_, p. 188. This is a note

to that extra rule which Kirkham proposes for our use, "\_if we reject the

idea of government\_, as applied to the verb in this mood!"--\_Ib.\_

[413] After the word "\_fare\_," Murray put a semicolon, which shows that he

misunderstood the mood of the verb "\_hear\_." It is not always necessary to

repeat the particle \_to\_, when two or more infinitives are connected; and

this fact is an other good argument against calling the preposition \_to\_ "a

part of the verb." But in this example, and some others here exhibited, the

repetition is requisite.--G. B.

[414] "The Infinitive Mood is not confined to a trunk or nominative, and is

always preceded by \_to\_, expressed or implied."--\_S. Barrett's Gram.\_,

1854, p. 43.

[415] Lindley Murray, and several of his pretended improvers, say, "The

infinitive sometimes \_follows\_ the word AS: thus, 'An object so high \_as to

be\_ invisible.' The infinitive occasionally \_follows\_ THAN \_after\_ a

comparison; as, 'He desired \_nothing more than to know\_ his own

imperfections.'"--\_Murray's Gram.\_, 8vo, p. 184; \_Fisk's\_, 125; \_Alger's\_,

63; \_Merchant's\_, 92. See this second example in \_Weld's Gram.\_, p. 167;

\_Abridg.\_, 124. Merchant, not relishing the latter example, changes it

thus: "I wish \_nothing more, than to know\_ his fate." He puts a comma after

\_more\_, and probably means, "I wish nothing \_else\_ than to know his fate."

So does Fisk, in the other version: and probably means, "He desired nothing

\_else\_ than to know his own imperfections." But Murray, Alger, and Weld,

accord in punctuation, and their meaning seems rather to be, "He desired

nothing \_more heartily\_ than [\_he desired\_] to know his own imperfections."

And so is this or a similar text interpreted by both Ingersoll and Weld,

who suppose this infinitive to be "\_governed by another verb, understood\_:

as, 'He desired nothing \_more than to see\_ his friends;' that is, 'than he

\_desired\_ to see,' &c."--\_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, p. 244; \_Weld's Abridged\_,

124. But obvious as is the \_ambiguity\_ of this fictitious example, in all

its forms, not one of these five critics perceived the fault at all. Again,

in their remark above cited, Ingersoll, Fisk, and Merchant, put a comma

before the preposition "\_after\_," and thus make the phrase, "\_after a

comparison\_," describe the place \_of the infinitive\_. But Murray and Alger

probably meant that this phrase should denote the place of the conjunction

"\_than\_." The great "Compiler" seems to me to have misused the phrase "\_a

comparison\_," for, "\_an adjective or adverb of the comparative degree\_;"

and the rest, I suppose, have blindly copied him, without thinking or

knowing what he ought to have said, or meant to say. Either this, or a

worse error, is here apparent. Five learned grammarians severally represent

either "\_than\_" or "\_the infinitive\_," as being AFTER "a \_comparison\_;" of

which one is the copula, and the other but the beginning of the latter

term! Palpable as is the \_absurdity\_, no one of the five perceives it! And,

besides, no one of them says any thing about the \_government\_ of this

infinitive, except Ingersoll, and he supplies a \_verb\_. "\_Than\_ and \_as\_,"

says Greenleaf, "sometimes \_appear to govern\_ the infinitive mood; as,

'Nothing makes a man suspect \_much more, than\_ to know little;' 'An object

so high \_as\_ to be invisible."--\_Gram. Simp.\_, p. 38. Here is an other

fictitious and ambiguous example, in which the phrase, "\_to know little\_,"

is the subject of \_makes\_ understood. Nixon supposes the infinitive phrase

after \_as\_ to be always the subject of a finite verb \_understood\_ after it;

as, "An object so high as to be invisible \_is\_ or, \_implies\_." See \_English

Parser\_, p. 100.

[416] Dr. Crombie, after copying the substance of Campbell's second Canon,

that, "In doubtful cases \_analogy\_ should be regarded," remarks: "For the

same reason, '\_it needs\_' and '\_he dares\_,' are better than '\_he need\_' and

'\_he dare.\_'"--\_On Etym. and Synt.\_, p. 326. Dr. Campbell's language is

somewhat stronger: "In the verbs \_to dare\_ and \_to need\_, many say, in the

third person present singular, \_dare\_ and \_need\_, as 'he \_need\_ not go: he

\_dare\_ not do it.' Others say, \_dares\_ and \_needs\_. As the first usage is

\_exceedingly irregular\_, hardly any thing less than uniform practice could

authorize it."--\_Philosophy of Rhet.\_, p. 175. \_Dare\_ for \_dares\_ I suppose

to be wrong; but if \_need\_ is an auxiliary of the potential mood, to use it

without inflection, is neither "irregular," nor at all inconsistent with

the foregoing canon. But the former critic notices these verbs a second

time, thus: "'He \_dare\_ not,' 'he \_need\_ not,' may be justly pronounced

\_solecisms\_, for 'he \_dares\_,' 'he \_needs\_.'"--\_Crombie, on Etym. and

Synt.\_, p. 378. He also says, "The verbs \_bid, dare, need, make, see, hear,

feel, let\_, are \_not\_ followed by the sign of the infinitive."--\_Ib.\_, p.

277. And yet he writes thus: "These are truths, of which, I am persuaded,

the author, to whom I allude, \_needs\_ not \_to\_ be reminded."--\_Ib.\_, p.

123. So Dr. Bullions declares against \_need\_ in the singular, by putting

down the following example as bad English: "He \_need\_ not be in so much

haste."--\_Bullions's E. Gram.\_, p. 134. Yet he himself writes thus: "A name

more appropriate than the term \_neuter, need\_ not be desired."--\_Ib.\_, p.

196. A school-boy may see the inconsistency of this.

[417] Some modern grammarians will have it, that a participle governed by a

preposition is a "\_participial noun\_;" and yet, when they come to parse an

adverb or an objective following, their "\_noun\_" becomes a "\_participle\_"

again, and \_not\_ a "\_noun\_." To allow words thus to \_dodge\_ from one class

to an other, is not only unphilosophical, but ridiculously absurd. Among

those who thus treat this construction of the participle, the chief, I

think, are Butler, Hurt, Weld, Wells, and S. S. Greene.

[418] Dr. Blair, to whom Murray ought to have acknowledged himself indebted

for this sentence, introduced \_a noun\_, to which, in his work, this

infinitive and these participles refer: thus, "It is disagreeable \_for the

mind\_ to be \_left pausing\_ on a word which does not, by itself, produce any

idea."--\_Blair's Rhetoric\_, p. 118. See Obs. 10th and 11th on Rule 14th.

[419] The perfect contrast between \_from\_ and \_to\_, when the former governs

the participle and the latter the infinitive, is an other proof that this

\_to\_ is the common preposition \_to\_. For example, "These are the four

spirits of the heavens, which go forth \_from standing\_ before the Lord of

all the earth."--\_Zech.\_, vi, 5. Now if this were rendered "which go forth

\_to stand\_," &c., it is plain that these prepositions would express quite

opposite relations. Yet, probably from some obscurity in the original, the

Greek version has been made to mean, "going forth \_to stand\_;" and the

Latin, "which go forth, \_that they may stand\_;" while the French text

conveys nearly the same sense as ours,--"which go forth \_from the place

where they stood.\_"

[420] \_Cannot\_, with a verb of \_avoiding\_, or with the negative \_but\_, is

equivalent to \_must\_. Such examples may therefore be varied thus: "I

\_cannot but mention\_:" i.e., "I \_must\_ mention."--"I \_cannot help

exhorting\_ him to assume courage."--\_Knox\_. That is, "I \_cannot but exhort\_

him."

[421] See the same thing in \_Kirkham's Gram.\_ p. 189; in \_Ingersoll's\_, p.

200; in \_Smith's New Grammar\_, p. 162; and in other modifications and

mutilations of Murray's work. Kirkham, in an other place, adopts the

doctrine, that, "\_Participles\_ frequently govern nouns \_and\_ pronouns in

the possessive case; as, 'In case of his \_majesty's dying\_ without issue,

&c.; Upon \_God's having ended\_ all his works, &c.; I remember \_its being

reckoned\_ a great exploit; At my \_coming\_ in he said, &c."--\_Kirkham's

Gram.\_, p. 181. None of these examples are written according to my notion

of elegance, or of accuracy. Better: "In case his \_Majesty die\_ without

issue."--"\_God\_ having ended all his works."--"I remember \_it was\_ reckoned

a great exploit."--"At my \_entrance\_, he said," &c.

[422] We have seen that Priestley's doctrine, as well as Lowth's, is, that

when a participle is taken \_substantively\_, "it ought not to govern another

word;" and, for the same reason, it ought not to have an \_adverb\_ relating

to it. But many of our modern grammarians disregard these principles, and

do not restrict their "\_participial nouns\_" to the construction of nouns,

in either of these respects. For example: Because one may say, "\_To read

superficially\_, is useless," Barnard supposes it right to say, "\_Reading

superficially\_ is useless." "But the \_participle\_," says he, "will also

take the adjective; as, '\_Superficial reading\_ is useless.'"--\_Analytic

Gram.\_, p. 212. In my opinion, this last construction ought to be

preferred; and the second, which is both irregular and unnecessary,

rejected. Again, this author says: "We have laid it down as a rule, that

the possessive case belongs, like an adjective, to a \_noun\_. What shall be

said of the following? 'Since the days of Samson, there has been no

instance of \_a man's\_ accomplishing a task so stupendous.' The \_entire

clause\_ following \_man's\_, is taken as a noun. 'Of a man's \_success\_ in a

task so stupendous.' would present no difficulty. A part of a sentence, or

even a single participle, \_thus often\_ stands \_for a noun\_. 'My going will

depend on my father's giving his consent,' or 'on my father's consenting.'

A participle \_thus used\_ as a noun, may be called a PARTICIPIAL

NOUN."--\_Ib.\_, p. 131. I dislike this doctrine also. In the first example,

\_man\_ may well be made the leading word in sense; and, as such, it must be

in the objective case; thus: "There has been no instance of a \_man

accomplishing\_ a task so stupendous." It is also proper to say. "\_My going\_

will depend on my \_father's consenting\_," or, "on my \_father's consent\_."

But an action possessed by the agent, ought not to be transitive. If,

therefore, you make this the leading idea, insert \_of\_: thus, "There has

been no instance of a \_man's accomplishing of\_ a task so stupendous." "My

going will depend on my \_father's giving of\_ his consent."--"My \_brother's

acquiring [of\_] the French language will be a useful preparation for his

travels."--\_Barnard's Gram.\_, p. 227. If participial nouns retain the power

of participles, why is it wrong to say, "A superficial reading books is

useless?" Again, Barnard approves of the question, "What do you think of my

\_horse's running to-day\_?" and adds, "Between this form of expression and

the following, 'What do you think of my \_horse running\_ to-day?' it is

sometimes said, that we should make a distinction; because the former

implies that the horse had actually run, and the latter, that it is in

contemplation to have him do so. \_The difference of meaning certainly

exists\_; but it would seem more judicious to treat \_the latter\_ as an

improper mode of speaking. What can be more uncouth than to say, 'What do

you think of \_me\_ going to Niagara?' We should say \_my\_ going,

notwithstanding the ambiguity. We ought, \_therefore\_, to introduce

something explanatory; as, 'What do you think \_of the propriety\_ of my

going to Niagara?"--\_Analytic Gram.\_, p. 227. The propriety of a past

action is as proper a subject of remark as that of a future one; the

explanatory phrase here introduced has therefore nothing to do with

Priestley's distinction, or with the alleged ambiguity. Nor does the

uncouthness of an objective pronoun with the leading word in sense

improperly taken as an adjunct, prove that a participle may properly take

to itself a possessive adjunct, and still retain the active nature of a

participle.

[423] The following is an example, but it is not very intelligible, nor

would it be at all amended, if the pronoun were put in the possessive case:

"I sympathize with my sable brethren, when I hear of \_them being spared\_

even one lash of the cart-whip."--REV. DR. THOMPSON: \_Garrison, on

Colonization\_, p. 80. And this is an other, in which the possessive pronoun

would not be better: "But, if the slaves wish, to return to slavery, let

them do so; not an abolitionist will turn out to stop \_them going\_

back."--\_Antislavery Reporter\_, Vol. IV, p. 223. Yet it might be more

accurate to say--"to stop them \_from\_ going back." In the following example

from the pen of Priestley, the objective is correctly used with \_as\_, where

some would be apt to adopt the possessive: "It gives us an idea of \_him\_,

as being the only person to whom it can be applied."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 151. Is not this better English than to say, "of \_his\_ being the only

person?" The following is from the pen of a good scholar: "This made me

remember the discourse we had together, at my house, about \_me drawing\_

constitutions, not as proposals, but as if fixed to the hand."--WILLIAM

PENN: \_Letter to Algernon Sidney\_, Oct. 13th, 1681. Here, if \_me\_ is

objectionable, \_my\_ without \_of\_ would be no less so. It might be better

grammar to say, "about \_my drawing of\_ constitutions."

[424] Sometimes the passive form is adopted, when there is no real need of

it, and when perhaps the active would be better, because it is simpler; as,

"Those portions of the grammar are worth the trouble of \_being committed\_

to memory."--\_Dr. Barrow's Essays\_, p. 109. Better, perhaps:--"worth the

trouble of \_committing\_ to memory:" or,--"worth the trouble \_committing

them\_ to memory." Again: "What is worth being uttered at all, is worth

\_being spoken\_ in a proper manner."--\_Kirkham's Elocution\_, p. 68. Better,

perhaps: "What is worth \_uttering\_ at all, is worth \_uttering\_ in a proper

manner."--G. Brown.

[425] "RULE.--When the participle expresses something of which the noun

following is the DOER, it should have the article and preposition; as, 'It

was said in \_the hearing of\_ the witness.' When it expresses something of

which the noun following is \_not the doer\_, but the OBJECT, both should be

omitted; as, 'The court spent some time in \_hearing\_ the

witness.'"--BULLIONS, \_Prin. of E. Gram.\_, p. 108; \_Analyt. and Pract.

Gram.\_, 181.

[426] This doctrine is far from being true. See Obs. 12th, in this series,

above.--G. B.

[427] "Dr. Webster considers the use of \_then\_ and \_above\_ as ADNOUNS, [i.

e., adjectives,] to be 'well authorized and very convenient;' as, the

\_then\_ ministry; the \_above\_ remarks."--\_Felch's Comp. Gram.\_, p. 108. Dr.

Webster's remark is in the following words: "\_Then\_ and \_above\_ are often

used as ATTRIBUTES: [i. e., adjectives; as,] the \_then\_ ministry; the

\_above\_ remarks; nor would I prescribe this use. It is well authorized and

very convenient."--\_Philos. Gram.\_, p. 245; \_Improved Gram.\_, p. 176. Of

this use of \_then\_, Dr. Crombie has expressed a very different opinion:

"Here \_then\_," says he, "the adverb equivalent to \_at that time\_, is

solecistically employed as an adjective, agreeing with \_ministry\_. This

error seems to gain ground; it should therefore be vigilantly opposed, and

carefully avoided."--\_On Etym. and Synt.\_, p. 405.

[428] W. Allen supposes, "An adverb sometimes qualifies a whole sentence:

as, \_Unfortunately\_ for the lovers of antiquity, \_no remains of Grecian

paintings have been preserved\_."--\_Elements of Eng. Gram.\_, p. 173. But

this example may be resolved thus: "\_It happens\_ unfortunately for the

lovers of antiquity, \_that\_ no remains of Grecian paintings have been

preserved."

[429] This assertion of Churchill's is very far from the truth. I am

confident that the latter construction occurs, even among reputable

authors, ten times as often as the former can be found in any English

books.--G. BROWN.

[430] Should not the Doctor have said, "\_are\_ there \_more\_," since "\_more

than one\_" must needs be plural? See Obs. 10th on Rule 17th.

[431] This degree of truth is impossible, and therefore not justly

supposable. We have also a late American grammarian who gives a similar

interpretation: "'\_Though never so justly deserving of it\_.' Comber.

\_Never\_ is here an emphatic adverb; as if it were said, so justly \_as was

never\_. Though well authorized, it is disapproved by most grammarians of

the present day; and the word \_ever\_ is used instead of \_never\_."--\_Felch's

Comp. Gram.\_, p. 107. The text here cited is not necessarily bad English as

it stands; but, if the commenter has not mistaken its meaning, as well as

its construction, it ought certainly to be, "Though \_everso justly\_

deserving of it."--"\_So justly as was never\_," is a positive degree that is

not imaginable; and what is this but an absurdity?

[432] Since this remark was written, I have read an other grammar, (that of

the "\_Rev. Charles Adams\_,") in which the author sets down among "the more

frequent \_improprieties\_ committed, in conversation, '\_Ary one\_' for

\_either\_, and '\_nary one\_' for \_neither\_."--\_Adams's System of Gram.\_, p.

116. Eli Gilbert too betrays the same ignorance. Among his "\_Improper

Pronunciations\_" he puts down "\_Nary\_" and "\_Ary\_" and for "\_Corrections\_"

of them, gives "\_neither\_" and "\_either\_."--\_Gilbert's Catechetical Gram.\_,

p. 128. But these latter terms, \_either\_ and \_neither\_, are applicable only

to \_one of two\_ things, and cannot be used where \_many\_ are spoken of; as,

"Stealing her soul with \_many\_ vows of faith,

And \_ne'er\_ a true one."--\_Shakspeare\_.

What sense would there be in expounding this to mean, "And \_neither\_ a true

one?" So some men both write and interpret their mother tongue erroneously

through ignorance. But these authors \_condemn\_ the errors which they here

falsely suppose to be common. What is yet more strange, no less a critic

than Prof. William C. Fowler, has lately exhibited, \_without

disapprobation\_, one of these literary blunders, with sundry localisms,

(often descending to slang,) which, he says, are mentioned by "Mr.

Bartlett, in his valuable dictionary [\_Dictionary] of Americanisms\_." The

brief example, which may doubtless be understood to speak for both phrases

and both authors, is this: "ARY = either."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, 8vo, N.

Y., 1850, p. 92.

[433] The conjunction \_that\_, at the head of a sentence or clause, enables

us to assume the whole preposition as one \_thing\_; as, "All arguments

whatever are directed to prove one or other of these \_three things: that\_

something is true; \_that\_ it is morally right or fit; or \_that\_ it is

profitable and good."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 318. Here each \_that\_ may be

parsed as connecting its own clause to the first clause in the sentence;

or, to the word \_things\_ with which the three clauses are in a sort of

apposition. If we conceive it to have no such connecting power, we must

make this too an exception.

[434] "Note. Then \_and\_ than are \_distinct Particles\_, but use hath made

the using of \_then\_ for \_than\_ after a Comparative Degree at least

\_passable\_. See \_Butler's\_ Eng. Gram. Index."--\_Walker's Eng. Particles\_,

Tenth Ed., 1691, p. 333.

[435] "When the relative \_who\_ follows the preposition \_than\_, it must be

used as in the \_accusative\_ case."--\_Bucke's Gram.\_, p. 93. Dr. Priestley

seems to have imagined the word \_than\_ to be \_always a preposition\_; for he

contends against the common doctrine and practice respecting the case after

it: "It is, likewise, said, that the nominative case ought to follow the

\_preposition than\_; because the verb \_to be\_ is understood after it; As,

\_You are taller than he\_, and not \_taller than him\_; because at full

length, it would be, \_You are taller than he is\_; but since it is allowed,

that the oblique case should follow \_prepositions\_; and since the

comparative degree of an adjective, and the particle \_than\_ have,

certainly, between them, the force \_of a preposition\_, expressing the

relation of one word to another, \_they ought to require the oblique case\_

of the pronoun following."--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 105. If \_than\_ were a

preposition, this reasoning would certainly be right; but the Doctor begs

the question, by assuming that it \_is\_ a preposition. William Ward, an

other noted grammarian of the same age, supposes that, "ME \_sapientior es\_,

may be translated, \_Thou art wiser\_ THAN ME." He also, in the same place,

avers, that, "The best English Writers have considered \_than\_ as a Sign of

an oblique Case; as, 'She suffers more THAN ME.' Swift, i.e. more than I

suffer.

'Thou art a Girl as much brighter THAN HER,

As he was a Poet sublimer THAN ME.' Prior.

i.e. Thou art a Girl as much brighter \_than she was\_, as he was a Poet

sublimer \_than I am\_."--\_Ward's Practical Gram.\_, p. 112. These examples of

the objective case after \_than\_, were justly regarded by Lowth as \_bad

English\_. The construction, however, has a modern advocate in S. W. Clark,

who will have the conjunctions \_as, but, save, saving\_, and \_than\_, as well

as the adjectives \_like, unlike, near, next, nigh\_, and \_opposite\_, to be

\_prepositions\_. "After a \_Comparative\_ the \_Preposition than\_ is commonly

used. Example--Grammar is more interesting \_than\_ all my other

studies."--\_Clark's Practical Gram.\_, p. 178. "\_As, like, than\_, &c.,

indicate a relation of \_comparison\_. Example 'Thou hast been \_wiser\_ all

the while \_than me\_.' \_Southey's Letters.\_"--\_Ib.\_, p. 96. Here correct

usage undoubtedly requires \_I\_, and not \_me\_. Such at least is my opinion.

[436] In respect to the \_case\_, the phrase \_than who\_ is similar to \_than

he, than they\_, &c., as has been observed by many grammarians; but, since

\_than\_ is a conjunction, and \_who\_ or \_whom\_ is a relative, it is doubtful

whether it can be strictly proper to set two such connectives together, be

the case of the latter which it may. See Note 5th, in the present chapter,

below.

[437] After \_else\_ or \_other\_, the preposition \_besides\_ is sometimes used;

and, when it recalls an idea previously suggested, it appears to be as good

as \_than\_, or better: as, "\_Other\_ words, \_besides\_ the preceding, may

begin with capitals."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i. p. 285. Or perhaps this

preposition may be proper, whenever \_else\_ or \_other\_ denotes what is

\_additional\_ to the object of contrast, and not exclusive of it; as, "When

we speak of any \_other\_ quantity \_besides\_ bare numbers."--\_Tooke's

Diversions\_, Vol. i, p. 215. "Because he had no \_other\_ father \_besides\_

God."--\_Milton, on Christianity\_, p. 109. Though we sometimes express an

addition by \_more than\_, the following example appears to me to be \_bad

English\_, and its interpretation still worse: "'The secret was communicated

to \_more men than him\_.' That is, (when the ellipsis is duly supplied,)

'The secret was communicated to more \_persons\_ than \_to\_ him.'"--Murray's

Key, 12mo, p. 61; his \_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 215; \_Ingersoll's Gram.\_, 252. Say

rather,--"to \_other\_ men \_besides\_ him." Nor, again, does the following

construction appear to be right: "Now \_shew\_ me \_another\_ Popish rhymester

\_but he\_."--DENNIS: \_Notes to the Dunciad\_, B. ii, l. 268. Say rather, "Now

\_show\_ me \_an other\_ popish rhymester \_besides him\_." Or thus: "Now show me

\_any\_ popish rhymester \_except\_ him." This too is questionable: "Now pain

must here be intended to signify something \_else besides\_

warning."--\_Wayland's Moral Science\_, p. 121. If "warning" was here

intended to be included with "something else," the expression is right; if

not, \_besides\_ should be \_than\_. Again: "There is seldom any \_other\_

cardinal in Poland \_but him\_."--\_Life of Charles XII\_. Here "\_but him\_"

should be either "\_besides him\_," or "\_than he\_;" for \_but\_ never rightly

governs the objective case, nor is it proper after \_other\_. "Many \_more\_

examples, \_besides\_ the foregoing, might have been adduced."--\_Nesbit's

English Parsing\_, p. xv. Here, in fact, no comparison is expressed; and

therefore it is questionable, whether the word "\_more\_" is allowably used.

Like \_else\_ and \_other\_, when construed with \_besides\_, it signifies

\_additional\_; and, as this idea is implied in \_besides\_, any one of these

adjectives going before is really pleonastic. In the sense above noticed,

the word \_beside\_ is sometimes written in stead of besides, though not very

often; as, "There are \_other\_ things which pass in the mind of man,

\_beside\_ ideas."--\_Sheridan's Elocution\_, p. 136.

[438] A few of the examples under this head might be corrected equally well

by some preceding note of a more specific character; for a general note

against the improper omission of prepositions, of course includes those

principles of grammar by which any particular prepositions are to be

inserted. So the examples of error which were given in the tenth chapter of

Etymology, might nearly all of them have been placed under the first note

in this tenth chapter of Syntax. But it was thought best to illustrate

every part of this volume, by some examples of false grammar, out of the

infinite number and variety with which our literature abounds.

[439] "The Rev. \_Joab Goldsmith Cooper\_, A. M.," was the author of two

English grammars, as well as of what he called "A New and Improved Latin

Grammar," with "An Edition of the Works of Virgil, &c.," all published in

Philadelphia. His first grammar, dated 1828, is entitled, "\_An Abridgment

of Murray's English Grammar, and Exercises\_." But it is no more an

abridgement of Murray's work, than of mine; he having chosen to steal from

the text of my Institutes, or supply matter of his own, about as often as

to copy Murray. His second is the Latin Grammar. His third, which is

entitled, "\_A Plain and Practical English Grammar\_," and dated 1831, is a

book very different from the first, but equally inaccurate and worthless.

In this book, the syntax of interjections stands thus: "RULE 21. The

interjections \_O, oh\_ and \_ah\_ are followed by \_the objective case\_ of a

noun or pronoun, as: 'O me! ah me! oh me!' In the second person, they are

\_a mark\_ or \_sign\_ of an address, made to a person or thing, as: O thou

persecutor! Oh, ye hypocrites! O virtue, how amiable thou art!"--Page 157.

The inaccuracy of all this can scarcely be exceeded.

[440] "\_Oh\_ is used to express the emotion of \_pain, sorrow\_, or

\_surprise\_. \_O\_ is used to express \_wishing, exclamation\_, or a direct

\_address\_ to a person."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, 12th Ed., p. 110. Of this

distinction our grammarians in general seem to have no conception; and, in

fact, it is so often disregarded by other authors, that the propriety of it

may be disputed. Since \_O\_ and \_oh\_ are pronounced alike, or very nearly

so, if there is no difference in their application, they are only different

modes of writing the same word, and one or the other of them is useless. If

there is a real difference, as I suppose there is, it ought to be better

observed; and \_O me!\_ and \_oh ye!\_ which I believe are found only in

grammars, should be regarded as bad English. Both \_O\_ and \_oh\_, as well as

\_ah\_, were used in Latin by Terence, who was reckoned an elegant writer;

and his manner of applying them favours this distinction: and so do our own

dictionaries, though Johnson and Walker do not draw it clearly, for \_oh\_ is

as much an "\_exclamation\_" as \_O\_. In the works of Virgil, Ovid, and

Horace, we find \_O\_ or \_o\_ used frequently, but nowhere \_oh\_. Yet this is

no evidence of their sameness, or of the uselessness of the latter; but

rather of their difference, and of the impropriety of confounding them. \_O,

oh, ho\_, and \_ah\_, are French words as well as English. Boyer, in his

Quarto Dictionary, confounds them all; translating "O!" only by "\_Oh!\_"

"OH! \_ou\_ HO!" by "\_Ho! Oh!\_" and "AH!" by "\_Oh! alas! well-a-day! ough! A!

ah! hah! ho!\_" He would have done better to have made each one explain

itself; and especially, not to have set down "\_ough!\_" and "\_A!\_" as

English words which correspond to the French \_ah!\_

[441] This silence is sufficiently accounted for by \_Murray's\_; of whose

work, most of the authors who have any such rule, are either piddling

modifiers or servile copyists. And Murray's silence on these matters, is in

part attributable to the fact, that when he wrote his remark, his system of

grammar denied that nouns have any first person, or any objective case. Of

course he supposed that all nouns that were uttered after interjections,

whether they were of the second person or of the third, were in the

nominative case; for he gave to nouns \_two\_ cases only, the nominative and

the possessive. And when he afterwards admitted the objective case of

nouns, he did not alter his remark, but left all his pupils ignorant of the

case of any noun that is used in exclamation or invocation. In his doctrine

of two cases, he followed Dr. Ash: from whom also he copied the rule which

I am criticising: "The \_Interjections, O, Oh\_, and \_Ah\_, require the

\_accusative\_ case of a pronoun in the \_first\_ Person: as, O \_me\_, Oh \_me\_,

Ah \_me\_: But the \_Nominative\_ in the \_second\_: as, O \_thou\_, O

\_ye\_."--\_Ash's Gram.\_, p. 60. Or perhaps he had Bicknell's book, which was

later: "The \_interjections O, oh\_, and \_ah\_, require the accusative case of

a pronoun in the \_first\_ person after them; as, \_O, me! Oh, me! Ah, me!\_

But the nominative case in the \_second\_ person; as, \_O, thou that rulest!

O, ye rulers of this land!\_"--\_The Grammatical Wreath\_, Part I, p. 105.

[442] See \_2 Sam.\_, xix, 4; also xviii, 33. Peirce has many times

\_misquoted\_ this text, or some part of it; and, what is remarkable, he

nowhere agrees either with himself or with the Bible! "O! Absalom! my

son!"--\_Gram.\_, p. 283. "O Absalom! my son, my son! would \_to\_ God I had

died for thee."--\_Ib.\_, p. 304. Pinneo also misquotes and perverts a part

of it, thus: "Oh, Absalom! my son"--\_Primary Gram.\_, Revised Ed., p. 57.

[443] Of this example, Professor Bullions says, "This will be allowed to be

\_a correct English sentence\_, complete in itself, and requiring nothing to

be supplied. The phrase, '\_being an expert dancer\_,' is the subject of the

verb '\_does entitle\_;' but the word '\_dancer\_' in that phrase is neither

the subject of any verb, nor is governed by any word in the

sentence."--\_Eng. Gram.\_, p. 52. It is because this word cannot have any

regular construction after the participle when the possessive case

precedes, that I deny his first proposition, and declare the sentence \_not\_

"to be correct English." But the Professor at length reasons himself into

the notion, that this indeterminate "\_predicate\_," as he erroneously calls

it, "is properly in the \_objective case\_, and in parsing, may correctly be

called the \_objective indefinite\_;" of which case, he says, "The following

are also examples: '\_He\_ had the honour of being a \_director\_ for life.'

'By being a \_diligent student, he\_ soon acquired eminence in his

profession.'"--\_Ib.\_, p. 83. But "\_director\_" and "\_student\_" are here

manifestly in the \_nominative\_ case: each agreeing with the pronoun \_he\_,

which denotes the same person. In the latter sentence, there is a very

obvious transposition of the first five words.

[444] Faulty as this example is, Dr. Blair says of it: "Nothing can be more

elegant, or more finely turned, than this sentence. It is neat, \_clear\_,

and musical. We could hardly \_alter one word\_, or disarrange one member,

without \_spoiling\_ it. Few sentences are to be found, more finished, or

more happy."--\_Lecture\_ XX, p. 201. See the \_six\_ corrections suggested in

my Key, and judge whether or not they \_spoil\_ the sentence.--G. B.

[445] This Note, as well as all the others, will by-and-by be amply

illustrated by citations from authors of sufficient repute to give it some

value as a grammatical principle: but one cannot hope such language as is,

in reality, incorrigibly bad, will always appear so to the generality of

readers. Tastes, habits, principles, judgements, differ; and, where

confidence is gained, many utterances are well received, that are neither

well considered nor well understood. When a professed critic utters what is

incorrect beyond amendment, the fault is the more noteworthy, as his

professions are louder, or his standing is more eminent. In a recent

preface, deliberately composed for a very comprehensive work on "English

Grammar," and designed to allure both young and old to "a thorough and

extensive acquaintance with their mother tongue,"--in the studied preface

of a learned writer, who has aimed "to furnish not only a text-book for the

higher institutions, but also a reference-book for \_teachers\_, which may

give breadth and exactness to their views,"--I find a paragraph of which

the following is a part: "Unless men, at least occasionally, bestow their

attention upon the science and the laws of the language, they are in some

danger, amid the excitements of professional life, of losing the delicacy

of their taste and giving sanction to vulgarisms, or to what is worse. On

this point, listen to the recent declarations of two leading men in the

Senate of the United States, both of whom understand the use of the English

language in its power: 'In truth, I must say that, in my opinion, the

vernacular tongue of the country has become greatly vitiated, depraved, and

corrupted by the style of our Congressional debates.' And the other, in

courteous response remarked, 'There \_is\_ such a \_thing\_ as \_an\_ English and

\_a\_ parliamentary \_vocabulary\_, and I have never heard \_a worse\_, when

circumstances called it out, on this side [\_of\_] Billingsgate!'"--\_Fowler's

E. Gram.\_, 8vo. 1850, Pref., p. iv.

Now of these "two leading men," the former was Daniel Webster, who, in a

senatorial speech, in the spring of 1850, made such a remark concerning the

style of oratory used in Congress. But who replied, or what idea the

"courteous response," as here given, can be said to convey, I do not know.

The language seems to me both unintelligible and solecistical; and,

therefore, but a fair sample of the \_Incorrigible\_. Some intelligent

persons, whom I have asked to interpret it, think, as Webster had accused

our Congress of corrupting the English language, the respondent meant to

accuse the British Parliament of doing the same thing in a greater

degree,--of descending yet lower into the vileness of slang. But this is

hardly a probable conjecture. Webster might be right in acknowledging a

very depraving abuse of the tongue in the two Houses of Congress; but could

it be "courteous," or proper, for the answerer to jump the Atlantic, and

pounce upon the English Lords and Commons, as a set of worse corrupters?

The gentleman begins with saying, "There \_is\_ such \_a thing\_"--as if he

meant to describe some \_one\_ thing; and proceeds with saying, "as \_an\_

English \_and a\_ parliamentary vocabulary," in which phrase, by repeating

the article, he speaks of \_two "things"--two vocabularies\_; then goes on,

"and I have never heard \_a worse\_!" A worse \_what\_? Does he mean "\_a worse

vocabulary\_?" If so, what sense has "\_vocabulary\_?" And, again, "a worse"

\_than\_ what? Where and what is this "\_thing\_" which is so bad that the

leading Senator has "never heard a worse?" Is it some "\_vocabulary\_" both

"English and parliamentary?" If so, whose? If not, what else is it? Lest

the wisdom of this oraculous "declaration" be lost to the public through

the defects of its syntax,--and lest more than one rhetorical critic seem

hereby "in some danger" of "giving sanction to" \_nonsense\_,--it may be well

for Professor Fowler, in his next edition, to present some elucidation of

this short but remarkable passage, which he values so highly!

An other example, in several respects still more remarkable,--a shorter

one, into which an equally successful professor of grammar has condensed a

much greater number and variety of faults,--is seen in the following

citation: "The verb is so called, because it means \_word\_; and as there can

be no sentence without it, it is called, emphatically, \_the

word\_."--\_Pinneo's Analytical Gram.\_, p. 14. This sentence, in which,

perhaps, most readers will discover no error, has in fact faults of so many

different kinds, that a critic must pause to determine under which of more

than half a dozen different heads of false syntax it might most fitly be

presented for correction or criticism. (1.) It might be set down under my

Note 5th to Rule 10th; for, in one or two instances out of the three, if

not in all, the pronoun "\_it\_" gives not the same idea as its antecedent.

The faults coming under this head might be obviated by three changes, made

thus: "The verb is so called, because \_verb\_ means \_word\_; and, as there

can be no sentence without \_a verb, this part of speech\_ is called,

emphatically, \_the word\_." Cobbett wisely says, "Never put an \_it\_ upon

paper without thinking well of what you are about."--\_E. Gram.\_, ¶ 196. But

(2.) the erroneous text, and this partial correction of it too, might be

put under my Critical Note 5th, among \_Falsities\_; for, in either form,

each member affirms what is manifestly untrue. The term "\_word\_" has many

meanings; but no usage ever makes it, "\_emphatically\_" or otherwise, a name

for one of the classes called "parts of speech;" nor is there nowadays any

current usage in which "\_verb\_ means \_word\_." (3.) This text might be put

under Critical Note 6th, among \_Absurdities\_; for whoever will read it, as

in fairness he should, taking the pronoun "\_it\_" in the exact sense of its

antecedent "\_the verb\_," will see that the import of each part is

absurd--the whole, a two-fold absurdity. (4.) It might be put under

Critical Note 7th, among \_Self-Contradictions\_; for, to teach at once that

"\_the verb\_ is \_so\_ called," and "is called, emphatically,"

\_otherwise\_,--namely, "\_the word\_,"--is, to contradict one's self. (5.) It

might be set down under Critical Note 9th, among examples of \_Words

Needless\_; for the author's question is, "Why is the verb so called?" and

this may be much better answered in fewer words, thus: "THE VERB is so

called, because in French it is called \_le verbe\_ and in Latin, \_verbum\_,

which means \_word\_." (6.) It might be put under Critical Note 10th, as an

example of \_Improper Omissions\_; for it may be greatly bettered by the

addition of some words, thus: "The verb is so called, because [in French]

it [is called \_le verbe\_, and in Latin, \_verbum\_, which] means \_word\_: as

there can be no sentence without \_a verb, this\_ [most important part of

speech] is called, emphatically, [\_the verb\_,--q.d.,] \_the word\_." (7.) It

might be put under Critical Note 11th, among \_Literary Blunders\_; for there

is at least one blunder in each of its members. (8.) It might be set down

under Critical Note 13th, as an example of \_Awkwardness\_; for it is but

clumsy work, to teach \_grammar\_ after this sort. (9.) It might be given

under Critical Note 16th, as a sample of the \_Incorrigible\_; for it is

scarcely possible to eliminate all its defects and retain its essentials.

These instances may suffice to show, that even gross errors of grammar may

lurk where they are least to be expected, in the didactic phraseology of

professed masters of style or oratory, and may abound where common readers

or the generality of hearers will discover nothing amiss.

[446] As a mere assertion, this example is here sufficiently corrected;

but, as a \_definition\_, (for which the author probably intended it,) it is

deficient; and consequently, in that sense, is still inaccurate. I would

also observe that most of the subsequent examples under the present head,

contain other errors than that for which they are here introduced; and, of

some of them, the faults are, in my opinion, very many: for example, the

several definitions of an \_adverb\_, cited below. Lindley Murray's

definition of this part of speech is not inserted among these, because I

had elsewhere criticised that. So too of his faulty definition of a

\_conjunction\_. See the \_Introduction\_, Chap. X. paragraphs 26 and 28. See

also \_Corrections in the Key\_, under Note 10th to Rule 1st.

[447] In his explanation of \_Ellipsis\_, Lindley Murray continually calls it

"\_the\_ ellipsis," and speaks of it as something that is "\_used\_,"--"\_made

use of\_,"--"\_applied\_,"--"\_contained in\_" the examples; which expressions,

referring, as they there do, to the mere \_absence\_ of something, appear to

me solecistical. The notion too, which this author and others have

entertained of the figure itself, is in many respects erroneous; and nearly

all their examples for its illustration are either questionable as to such

an application, or obviously inappropriate. The absence of what is

\_needless\_ or \_unsuggested\_, is \_no ellipsis\_, though some grave men have

not discerned this obvious fact. The nine solecisms here quoted concerning

"\_the ellipsis\_," are all found in many other grammars. See \_Fisk's E.

Gram.\_, p. 144; \_Guy's\_, 91; \_Ingersoll's\_, 153; \_J. M. Putnam's\_, 137; \_R.

C. Smith's\_, 180; \_Weld's\_, 190.

[448] Some of these examples do, \_in fact\_, contain \_more\_ than two errors;

for mistakes in \_punctuation\_, or in the use of \_capitals\_, are not here

reckoned. This remark may also he applicable to some of the other lessons.

The reader may likewise perceive, that where two, three, or more

improprieties occur in one sentence, some one or more of them may happen to

be such, as he can, if he choose, correct by some rule or note belonging to

a previous chapter. Great labour has been bestowed on the selection and

arrangement of these syntactical exercises; but to give to so great a

variety of literary faults, a distribution perfectly distinct, and

perfectly adapted to all the heads assumed in this digest, is a work not

only of great labour, but of great difficulty. I have come as near to these

two points of perfection in the arrangement, as I well could.--G. BROWN.

[449] In Murray's sixth chapter of Punctuation, from which this example,

and eleven others that follow it, are taken, there is scarcely a single

sentence that does not contain \_many errors\_; and yet the whole is

literally copied in \_Ingersoll's Grammar\_, p. 293; in \_Fisk's\_, p. 159; in

\_Abel Flint's\_, 116; and probably in some others. I have not always been

careful to subjoin the great number of references which might be given for

blunders selected from this hackneyed literature of the schools. For

corrections, or improvements, see the Key.

[450] This example, or L. Murray's miserable modification of it, traced

through the grammars of Alden, Alger, Bullions, Comly, Cooper, Flint,

Hiley, Ingersoll, Jaudon, Merchant, Russell, Smith, and others, will be

found to have a dozen different forms--all of them no less faulty than the

original--all of them obscure, untrue, inconsistent, and almost

incorrigible. It is plain, that "\_a\_ comma," or \_one\_ comma, cannot divide

more than \_two\_ "simple members;" and these, surely, cannot be connected by

more than \_one relative\_, or by more than \_one\_ "comparative;" if it be

allowable to call \_than, as\_, or \_so\_, by this questionable name. Of the

multitude of errors into which these pretended critics have so blindly

fallen, I shall have space and time to point out only a \_very small part\_:

this text, too justly, may be taken as a pretty fair sample of their

scholarship!

[451] The "\_idea\_" which is here spoken of, Dr. Blair discovers in a

passage of Addison's Spectator. It is, in fact, as here "\_brought out\_" by

the critic, a bald and downright absurdity. Dr. Campbell has criticised,

under the name of \_marvellous nonsense\_, a different display of the same

"\_idea\_," cited from De Piles's Principles of Painting. The passage ends

thus: "In this sense it may be asserted, that in Rubens' pieces, Art is

above Nature, and Nature only a copy of that great master's works." Of this

the critic says: "When the expression is \_stript\_ of the \_absurd meaning\_,

there remains nothing but balderdash."--\_Philosophy of Rhet.\_, p, 278.

[452] All his rules for the comma, Fisk appears to have taken unjustly from

Greenleaf. It is a \_double shame\_, for a grammarian to \_steal\_ what is so

\_badly written\_!--G. BROWN.

[453] Bad definitions may have other faults than to include or exclude what

they should not, but this is their great and peculiar vice. For example:

"\_Person\_ is \_that property\_ of \_nouns\_ and \_pronouns\_ which distinguishes

the speaker, the person or thing addressed, and the person or thing spoken

of."--\_Wells's School Gram.\_, 1st Ed., p. 51; 113th Ed., p. 57. See nearly

the same words, in \_Weld's English Gram.\_, p. 67; and in his \_Abridgement\_,

p. 49. The three persons of \_verbs\_ are all improperly excluded from this

definition; which absurdly takes "\_person\_" to be \_one property that has

all the effect of all the persons\_; so that each person, in its turn, since

each cannot have all this effect, is seen to be excluded also: that is, it

is not such a property as is described! Again: "An \_intransitive verb\_ is a

verb which \_does not have\_ a noun or pronoun for its object."--\_Wells\_, 1st

Ed., p. 76. According to Dr. Johnson, "\_does not have\_," is not a scholarly

phrase; but the adoption of a puerile expression is a trifling fault,

compared with that of including here all passive verbs, and some

transitives, which the author meant to exclude; to say nothing of the

inconsistency of excluding here the two classes of verbs which he absurdly

calls "intransitive," though he finds them "followed by objectives

depending upon them!"--\_Id.\_, p. 145. Weld imitates these errors too, on

pp. 70 and 153.

[454] S. R. Hall thinks it necessary to recognize "\_four distinctions\_" of

"\_the distinction\_ occasioned by sex." In general, the other authors here

quoted, suppose that we have only "\_three distinctions\_" of "\_the

distinction\_ of sex." And, as no philosopher has yet discovered more than

two sexes, some have thence stoutly argued, that it is absurd to speak of

more than two genders. Lily makes it out, that in Latin there are \_seven\_:

yet, with no great consistency, he will have \_a gender\_ to be \_a\_ or \_the\_

distinction of \_sex\_. "GENUS est sexus discretio. Et sunt genera numero

septem."--\_Lilii Gram.\_, p. 10. That is, "GENDER is the distinction of

\_sex\_. And \_the genders\_ are \_seven\_ in number." Ruddiman says, "GENUS est,

discrimen \_nominis\_ secundum sexum, vel \_ejus\_ in structurâ grammaticâ

imitatio. Genera nominum sunt \_tria\_."--\_Ruddimanni Gram.\_, p. 4. That is,

"GENDER is the diversity of the \_noun\_ according to sex, or [it is] the

imitation \_of it\_ in grammatical structure. The genders of nouns are

\_three\_." These old definitions are no better than the newer ones cited

above. All of them are miserable failures, full of faults and absurdities.

Both the nature and the cause of their defects are in some degree explained

near the close of the tenth chapter of my Introduction. Their most

prominent errors are these: 1. They all assume, that \_gender\_, taken as one

thing, is in fact two, three, or more, \_genders\_, 2. Nearly all of them

seem to say or imply, that \_words\_ differ from one an other \_in sex\_, like

animals. 3. Many of them expressly confine \_gender\_, or \_the genders\_, to

\_nouns\_ only. 4. Many of them confessedly \_exclude the neuter gender\_,

though their authors afterwards admit this gender. 5. That of Dr. Webster

supposes, that words differing in gender never have the same

"\_termination\_." The absurdity of this may be shown by a multitude of

examples: as, \_man\_ and \_woman, male\_ and \_female, father\_ and \_mother,

brother\_ and \_sister\_. This is better, but still not free from some other

faults which I have mentioned. For the correction of all this great batch

of errors, I shall simply substitute in the Key one short definition, which

appears to me to be exempt from each of these inaccuracies.

[455] Walker states this differently, and even repeats his remark, thus:

"But \_y\_ preceded by a vowel is \_never\_ changed: as coy, coyly, gay,

gayly."--\_Walker's Rhyming Dict.\_, p.x. "Y preceded by a vowel is \_never\_

changed, as boy, boys, I cloy, he cloys, etc."--\_Ib.\_, p viii. Walker's

twelve "Orthographical Aphorisms," which Murray and others republish as

their "Rules for Spelling," and which in stead of amending they merely

corrupt, happened through some carelessness to contain \_two\_ which should

have been condensed into \_one\_. For "words ending with y preceded by a

consonant," he has not only the absurd rule or assertion above recited, but

an other which is better, with an exception or remark under each,

respecting "\_y\_ preceded by a vowel." The grammarians follow him in his

errors, and add to their number: hence the repetition, or similarity, in

the absurdities here quoted. By the term "\_verbal nouns\_," Walker meant

nouns denoting agents, as \_carrier\_ from carry; but Kirkham understood him

to mean "\_participial nouns\_," as \_the carrying\_. Or rather, he so mistook

"that able philologist" Murray; for he probably knew nothing of Walker in

the matter; and accordingly changed the word "\_verbal\_" to "\_participial\_;"

thus teaching, through all his hundred editions, except a few of the first,

that participial nouns from verbs ending in \_y\_ preceded by a consonant,

are formed by merely "changing the \_y\_ into \_i\_." But he seems to have

known, that this is not the way to form the participle; though he did not

know, that "\_coyless\_" is not a proper English word.

[456] The \_idea of plurality\_ is not "\_plurality of idea\_," any more than

the \_idea of wickedness\_, or the \_idea of absurdity\_, is absurdity or

wickedness of idea; yet, behold, how our grammarians copy the blunder,

which Lowth (perhaps) first fell into, of putting the one phrase for the

other! Even Professor Fowler, (as well as Murray, Kirkham, and others,)

talks of having regard "\_to unity or plurality of idea\_!"--\_Fowler's E.

Gram.\_, 8vo. 1850, §513,--G. BROWN.

[457] In the Doctor's "New Edition, Revised and Corrected," the text stands

thus: "The \_Present participle\_ of THE ACTIVE VOICE has an active

signification; as, James is \_building\_ the house. \_In many of these\_,

however, \_it\_ has," &c. Here the first sentence is but an idle truism; and

the phrase, "\_In many of these\_," for lack of an antecedent to \_these\_, is

utter nonsense. What is in "the active voice," ought of course to be

\_active\_ in "signification;" but, in this author's present scheme of the

verb, we find "the active voice," in direct violation of his own definition

of it, ascribed not only to verbs and participles either neuter or

intransitive, but also, as it would seem by this passage, to "many" that

are \_passive!\_--G. BROWN.

[458] One objection to these passage is, that they are \_examples\_ of the

very construction which they describe as a \_fault\_. The first and second

sentences ought to have been separated only by a semicolon. This would have

made them \_"members"\_ of one and the same sentence. Can it be supported

that one \_"thought"\_ is sufficient for two periods, or for what one chooses

to point as such, but not for two members of the same period?--G. BROWN.

[459] (1.) "\_Accent\_ is the \_tone\_ with which one speaks. For, in speaking,

the voice of every man is sometimes \_more grave\_ in the sound, and at other

times \_more acute\_ or shrill."--\_Beattie's Moral Science\_, p. 25. "\_Accent\_

is \_the tone\_ of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced."--\_Dr.

Adam's Latin and English Gram.\_, p. 266.

(2.) "\_Accent\_ in a peculiar \_stress\_ of the voice on some syllable in a

word to distinguish it from the others."--\_Gould's Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p.

243.

(3.) "The \_tone\_ by which one syllable is distinguished from another is the

\_accent\_; which is a greater \_stress and elevation\_ of voice on that

particular syllable."--\_Bicknell's Eng. Gram.\_, Part II, p. 111.

(4.) "\_Quantity\_ is the Length or Shortness of Syllables; and the

Proportion, generally speaking, betwixt a long and [a] short Syllable, is

two to one; as in \_Music\_, two \_Quavers\_ to one \_Crotchet\_.--\_Accent\_ is

the \_rising\_ and \_falling\_ of the Voice, above or under its usual Tone, but

an Art of which we have little Use, and know less, in the \_English\_ Tongue;

nor are we like to improve our Knowledge in this Particular, unless the Art

of \_Delivery\_ or \_Utterance\_ were a little more study'd."--\_Brightland's

Gram.\_, p. 156.

(5.) "ACCENT, s. m. (\_inflexion\_ de la voix.) Accent, \_tone\_,

pronunciation."--\_Nouveau Dictionnaire Universel\_, 4to, Tome Premier, sous

le mot \_Accent\_.

"ACCENT, \_subst.\_ (\_tone\_ or \_inflection\_ of the voice.) Accent, \_ton\_ ou

\_inflexion\_ de voix."--\_Same Work, Garner's New Universal Dictionary\_, 4to,

under the word \_Accent\_.

(6.) "The word \_accent\_ is derived from the Latin language and signifies

\_the tone of the voice\_."--\_Parker and Fox's English Gram.\_, Part III, p.

32.

(7.) "The unity of the word consists in the \_tone or accent\_, which binds

together the two parts of the composition."--\_Fowler's E. Gram.\_, §360.

(8.) "The accent of the ancients is the opprobrium of modern criticism.

Nothing can show more evidently the fallibility of the human faculties,

than the \_total ignorance\_ we are in at present of the nature of the Latin

and Greek accent."--\_Walker's Principles\_, No. 486; Dict., p. 53.

(9.) "It is not surprising, that the accent and quantity of the ancients

should be so obscure and mysterious, when two such learned men of our own

nation as Mr. Foster and Dr. Gaily, differ about the very existence of

quantity in our own language."--\_Walker's Observations on Accent\_, &c.;

Key, p. 311.

(10.) "What these accents are has puzzled the learned so much that they

seem neither to understand each other nor themselves."--\_Walker's Octavo

Dict., w. Barytone\_.

(11.) "The ancients designated the \_pitch\_ of vocal sounds by the term

\_accent\_; making three kinds of accents, the acute (é), the grave (è), and

the circumflex (ê), which signified severally the rise, the fall, and the

turn of the voice, or union of acute and grave on the same

syllable."--\_Sargent's Standard Speaker\_, p. 18.

[460] "Interrogatio, Græcè \_Erotema\_, Accentum quoque transfert; ut, Ter.

\_Siccine ais Parmenó?\_ Voss. Susenbr."--\_Prat's Latin Grammar\_, 8vo, Part

II, p. 190.

[461] In regard to the admission of a comma before the verb, by the

foregoing exception, neither the practice of authors nor the doctrine of

punctuators is entirely uniform; but, where a considerable pause is, and

must be, made in the reading, I judge it not only allowable, but necessary,

to mark it in writing. In W. Day's "Punctuation Reduced to a System," a

work of no inconsiderable merit, this principle is disallowed; and even

when the adjunct of the nominative is a \_relative clause\_, which, by Rule

2d below and its first exception, requires a comma after it but none before

it, this author excludes both, putting no comma before the principal verb.

The following is an example: "But it frequently happens, that punctuation

is not made a prominent exercise in schools; and the brief \_manner\_ in

which the subject is there dismissed \_has proved\_ insufficient to impress

upon the minds of youth a due sense of its importance."--\_Day's

Punctuation\_, p. 32. A pupil of mine would here have put a comma after the

word \_dismissed\_. So, in the following examples, after \_sake\_, and after

\_dispenses\_: "The \_vanity\_ that would accept power for its own sake \_is\_

the pettiest of human passions."--\_Ib.\_, p. 75. "The generous \_delight\_ of

beholding the happiness he dispenses \_is\_ the highest enjoyment of

man."--\_Ib.\_, p, 100.

[462] When several nominatives are connected, some authors and printers put

the comma only where the conjunction is omitted. W. Day separates them all,

one from an other; but after the last, when this is singular before a

plural verb, he inserts no point. Example: "Imagination is one of the

principal ingredients which enter into the complex idea of genius; but

\_judgment, memory, understanding, enthusiasm\_, and \_sensibility\_ are also

included."--\_Day's Punctuation\_, p. 52. If the points are to be put where

the pauses naturally occur, here should be a comma after \_sensibility\_;

and, if I mistake not, it would be more consonant with current usage to set

one there. John Wilson, however, in a later work, which is for the most

part a very good one, prefers the doctrine of Day, as in the following

instance: "\_Reputation, virtue\_, and \_happiness\_ depend greatly on the

choice of companions."--\_Wilson's Treatise on Punctuation\_, p. 30.

[463] Some printers, and likewise some authors, suppose a series of words

to require the comma, only where the conjunction is suppressed. This is

certainly a great error. It gives us such punctuation as comports neither

with the \_sense\_ of three or more words in the same construction, nor with

the \_pauses\_ which they require in reading. "John, James and Thomas are

here," is a sentence which plainly tells John that James and Thomas are

here; and which, if read according to this pointing, cannot possibly have

any other meaning. Yet this is the way in which the rules of \_Cooper,

Felton, Frost, Webster\_, and perhaps others, teach us to point it, when we

mean to tell somebody else that all three are here! In his pretended

"Abridgment of Murray's English Grammar," (a work abounding in small thefts

from Brown's Institutes,) Cooper has the following example: "John, James or

Joseph intends to accompany me."--Page 120. Here, John being addressed, the

punctuation is right; but, to make this noun a nominative to the verb, a

comma must be put after \_each of the others\_. In Cooper's "Plain and

Practical Grammar," the passage is found in this form: "John, James, or

Joseph intends to accompany us."--Page 132. This pointing is doubly wrong;

because it is adapted to neither sense. If the three nouns have the same

construction, the principal pause will be immediately before the verb; and

surely a comma is as much required by that pause, as by the second. See the

Note on Rule 3d, above.

[464] In punctuation, the grammar here cited is unaccountably defective.

This is the more strange, because many of its errors are mere perversions

of what was accurately pointed by an other hand. On the page above referred

to, Dr. Bullions, in copying from Lennie's syntactical exercises \_a dozen

consecutive lines\_, has omitted \_nine needful commas\_, which Lennie had

been careful to insert!

[465] Needless abbreviations, like most that occur in this example, are in

\_bad taste\_, and \_ought to be avoided\_. The great faultiness of this text

as a model for learners, compels me to vary the words considerably in

suggesting the correction. See the \_Key\_.--G. B.

[466] "To be, or not to be?--that's the question."--\_Hallock's Gram.\_, p.

220. "To be, or not to be, that is the question."--\_Singer's Shak.\_, ii.

488. "To be, or not to be; that is the Question."--\_Ward's Gram.\_, p 160.

"To be, or not to be, that is the Question."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, p 209.

"To be, or not to be?"--\_Mandeville's Course of Reading\_, p. 141. "To be or

not to be! That is the question."--\_Pinneo's Gram.\_, p. 176. "To \_be\_--or

\_not\_ to be--\_that\_ is the question--"--\_Burgh's Speaker\_, p. 179.

[467] In the works of some of our older poets, the apostrophe is sometimes

irregularly inserted, and perhaps needlessly, to mark a prosodial

synsæresis, or synalepha, where no letter is cut off or left out; as,

"Retire, or taste thy \_folly'\_, and learn by proof,

Hell-born, not to contend with \_spir'its\_ of Heaven."

--\_Milton, P. L.\_, ii, 686.

In the following example, it seems to denote nothing more than the open or

long sound of the preceding vowel \_e\_:

"That sleep and feeding may prorogue his honour,

Even till a \_lethe'd\_ dulness."

--\_Singer's Shakspeare\_, Vol. ii, p. 280.

[468] The breve is properly a mark of \_short quantity\_, only when it is set

over an unaccented syllable or an unemphatic monosyllable, as it often is

in the scanning of verses. In the examples above, it marks the close or

short power of the \_vowels\_; but, \_under the accent\_, even this power may

become part of a \_long syllable\_; as it does in the word \_rav´en\_, where

the syllable \_rav\_, having twice the length of that which follows, must be

reckoned \_long\_. In poetry, \_r=av-en\_ and \_r=a-ven\_ are both \_trochees\_,

the former syllable in each being long, and the latter short.

[469] 1. The signs of long and short sounds, and especially of the former,

have been singularly slow in acquiring \_appropriate names\_--or any

appellatives suited to their nature, or such as could obtain the sanction

of general use. The name \_breve\_, from the French \_brève\_, (which latter

word came, doubtless, originally from the neuter of the Latin adjective

\_brevis\_, short,) is now pretty generally applied to the one; and the Greek

term \_macron\_, long, (also originally a neuter adjective,) is perhaps as

common as any name for the other. But these are not quite so well adapted

to each other, and to the things named, as are the substitutes added above.

2. These signs are explained in our grammars under various names, and often

very unfit ones, to say the least; and, in many instances, their use is, in

some way, awkwardly stated, without any attempt to name them, or more than

one, if either. The Rev. T. Smith names them "Long (=), and Short

(~)."--\_Smith's Murray\_, p. 72. Churchill calls them "The \_long\_ = and the

\_short\_ ~."--\_New Gram.\_, p. 170. Gould calls them "a horizontal line" and

"a curved line."--\_Gould's Adam's Gram.\_, p. 3. Coar says, "Quantity is

distinguished by the characters of - long, and ~ short."--\_Eng. Gram.\_, p.

197. But, in speaking of the \_signs\_, he calls them, "\_A long syllable\_ =,"

and "\_A short syllable\_ ~."--\_Gram.\_, pp. 222 and 228. S. S. Greene calls

them "the \_long sound\_," and "the \_breve\_ or \_short sound\_."--\_Gram.\_, p.

257. W. Allen says, "The \_long-syllable mark\_, (=) and the \_breve\_, or

\_short-syllable mark\_, (~) denote the quantity of \_words\_ poetically

employed."--\_Gram.\_, p. 215. Some call them "the \_Long Accent\_," and "the

\_Short Accent\_;" as does \_Guy's Gram.\_, p. 95. This naming seems to

confound accent with quantity. By some, the \_Macron\_ is improperly called

"a \_Dash\_;" as by \_Lennie\_, p. 137; by \_Bullions\_, p. 157; by \_Hiley\_, p.

123; by \_Butler\_, p. 215. Some call it "a \_small dash\_;" as does \_Well's\_,

p. 183; so \_Hiley\_, p. 117. By some it is absurdly named "\_Hyphen\_;" as by

\_Buchanan\_, p. 162; by \_Alden\_, p. 165; by \_Chandler\_, 183; by \_Parker and

Fox\_, iii, 36; by \_Jaudon\_, 193. Sanborn calls it "the \_hyphen\_, or

\_macron\_."--\_Analyt. Gr.\_, p. 279. Many, who name it not, introduce it to

their readers by a "\_this\_ =," or "\_thus\_ ~;" as do \_Alger, Blair, Dr.

Adam, Comly, Cooper, Ingersoll, L. Murray, Sanders, Wright\_, and others!

[470] "As soon as language proceeds, from mere \_articulation\_, to

coherency, and connection, \_accent\_ becomes the guide of the voice. It is

founded upon an obscure perception of symmetry, and proportion, between the

different sounds that are uttered."--\_Noehden's Grammar of the German

Language\_, p. 66.

[471] According to Johnson, Walker, Webster, Worcester, and perhaps all

other lexicographers, \_Quantity\_, in grammar, is--"The measure of \_time\_ in

pronouncing a \_syllable\_." And, to this main idea, are conformed, so far as

I know, all the different definitions ever given of it by grammarians and

critics, except that which appeared in Asa Humphrey's English Prosody,

published in 1847. In this work--the most elaborate and the most

comprehensive, though not the most accurate or consistent treatise we have

on the subject--\_Time\_ and \_Quantity\_ are explained separately, as being

"\_two distinct things\_;" and the latter is supposed not to have regard to

\_duration\_, but solely to the \_amount\_ of sound given to each syllable.

This is not only a fanciful distinction, but a radical innovation--and one

which, in any view, has little to recommend it. The author's explanations

of both \_time\_ and \_quantity\_--of their characteristics, differences, and

subdivisions--of their relations to each other, to poetic numbers, to

emphasis and cadence, or to accent and non-accent--as well as his

derivation and history of "these technical terms, \_time\_ and

\_quantity\_"--are hardly just or clear enough to be satisfactory. According

to his theory, "Poetic numbers are composed of \_long\_ and \_short\_ syllables

alternately;" (page 5;) but the difference or proportion between the times

of these classes of syllables he holds to be \_indeterminable\_, "because

their lengths are various." He began with destroying the proper distinction

of quantity, or time, as being \_either long or short\_, by the useless

recognition of an indefinite number of "\_intermediate lengths\_;" saying of

our syllables at large, "some are LONG, some SHORT, and some are of

INTERMEDIATE LENGTHS; as, \_mat, not, con\_, &c. are short sounds; \_mate,

note, cone\_, and \_grave\_ are long. Some of our diphthongal sounds are

LONGER STILL; as, \_voice, noise, sound, bound\_, &c. OTHERS are seen to be

of INTERMEDIATE \_lengths\_."--\_Humphrey's Prosody\_, p. 4.

On a scheme like this, it must evidently be impossible to determine, with

any certainty, either what syllables are \_long\_ and what \_short\_, or what

is the difference or ratio between \_any two\_ of the innumerable "lengths"

of that time, or quantity, which is \_long, short, variously intermediate\_,

or \_longer still\_, and again \_variously intermediate\_! No marvel then that

the ingenious author scans some lines in a manner peculiar to himself.

[472] It was the doctrine of Sheridan, and perhaps of our old

lexicographers in general, that no English word can have more than one

\_full accent\_; but, in some modern dictionaries, as Bolles's, and

Worcester's, many words are marked as if they had two; and a few are given

by Bolles's as having three. Sheridan erroneously affirmed, that "\_every

word\_ has an accent," even "all monosyllables, the particles alone

excepted."--\_Lecture on Elocution\_, pp. 61 and 71. And again, yet more

erroneously: "The \_essence\_ of English words consisting in accent, as that

of syllables in articulation; we know that there are \_as many syllables as

we hear articulate sounds\_, and \_as many words as we hear accents\_."--

\_Ib.\_, p. 70. Yet he had said before, in the same lecture: "The longer

polysyllables, have frequently \_two accents\_, but one is so much stronger

than the other, as to shew that it is but one word; and the inferior accent

is always less forcible, than any accent that is the single one in a

word."--\_Ib.\_, p. 31. Wells defines accent as if it might lie on \_many\_

syllables of a word; but, in his examples, he places it on no more than

one: "\_Accent\_ is \_the stress\_ which is laid on \_one or more syllables\_ of

a word, in pronunciation; as, re\_ver\_berate, under\_take\_."--\_Wells's School

Gram.\_, p. 185. According to this loose definition, he might as well have

accented at least one other syllable in each of these examples; for there

seems, certainly, to be some little stress on \_ate\_ and \_un\_. For sundry

other definitions of accent, see Chap. IV, Section 2d, of \_Versification\_;

and the marginal note referring to Obs. 1st on \_Prosody\_.

[473] According to Dr. Rush, Emphasis is--"a stress of voice on one or more

words of a sentence, distinguishing them by intensity or peculiarity of

meaning."--\_Philosophy of the Voice\_, p. 282. Again, he defines thus:

"Accent is the fixed but inexpressive distinction of syllables \_by quantity

and stress\_: alike both in place and nature, whether the words are

pronounced singly from the columns of a vocabulary, or connectedly in the

series of discourse. \_Emphasis\_ may be defined to be the \_expressive\_ but

occasional distinction of a syllable, and consequently of the whole word,

by one or more of the specific modes of \_time, quality, force\_, or

\_pitch\_."--\_Ibid.\_

[474] 1. This doctrine, though true in its main intent, and especially

applicable to the poetic quantity of \_monosyllables\_, (the class of words

most frequently used in English poetry,) is, perhaps, rather too strongly

stated by Murray; because it agrees not with other statements of his,

concerning the power of \_accent\_ over quantity; and because the effect of

accent, as a "regulator of quantity," \_may\_, on the whole, be as great as

that of emphasis. Sheridan contradicts himself yet more pointedly on this

subject; and his discrepancies may have been the efficients of Murray's.

"The \_quantity\_ of our syllables is perpetually varying with the sense, and

is \_for the most part regulated by\_ EMPHASIS."--\_Sheridan's Rhetorical

Gram.\_, p. 65. Again: "It is by the ACCENT \_chiefly\_ that the \_quantity\_ of

our syllables is regulated."--\_Sheridan's Lectures on Elocution\_, p. 57.

See Chap. IV, Sec. 2d, Obs. 1; and marginal note on Obs. 8.

2. Some writers erroneously confound \_emphasis\_ with \_accent\_; especially

those who make accent, and not quantity, the foundation of verse. Contrary

to common usage, and to his own definition of accent, Wells takes it upon

him to say, "The term \_accent\_ is also applied, in poetry, to the stress

laid on monosyllabic words; as,

'Content is \_wealth, the riches of the mind.'--Dryden\_."

--\_Wells's School Grammar\_, p. 185.

It does not appear that stress laid on monosyllables is any more fitly

termed accent, when it occurs in the reading of poetry, than when in the

utterance of prose. Churchill, who makes no such distinction, thinks accent

essential alike to emphasis and to the quantity of a long vowel, and yet,

as regards monosyllables, dependent on them both! His words are these:

"Monosyllables are sometimes accented, sometimes not. This depends chiefly

on \_their\_ being \_more or less emphatic\_; and on the vowel \_sound\_ being

\_long or short\_. We cannot give \_emphasis\_ to any word, or it's [\_its\_]

proper duration to a \_long vowel\_, without \_accenting\_ it."--\_Churchill's

New Gram.\_, p. 182.

[475] Not only are these inflections denoted occasionally by the accentual

marks, but they are sometimes expressly \_identified with accents\_, being

called by that name. This practice, however, is plainly objectionable. It

confounds things known to be different,--mere stress with elevation or

depression,--and may lead to the supposition, that to accent a syllable, is

to inflect the voice upon it. Such indeed has been the guess of many

concerning the nature of Greek and Latin accents, but of the English

accent, the common idea is, that it is only a greater force distinguishing

some one syllable of a word from the rest. Walker, however, in the strange

account he gives in his Key, of "what we mean by \_the accent and quantity\_

of our own language," charges this current opinion with error, dissenting

from Sheridan and Nares, who held it; and, having asserted, that, "in

speaking, the voice is continually \_sliding\_ upwards or downwards,"

proceeds to contradict himself thus: "As high and low, loud and soft,

forcible and feeble, are comparative terms, words of one syllable

pronounced alone, and without relation to other words or syllables, \_cannot

be said to have any\_ ACCENT. The only distinction to which such words are

liable, is an \_elevation or depression\_ of voice, when we compare the

beginning with the end of the word or syllable. Thus a monosyllable,

considered singly, rises from a lower to a higher tone in the question \_Nó?

which\_ may therefore be called \_the acute\_ ACCENT: and falls from a higher

to a lower tone upon the same word in the answer \_Nò, which\_ may therefore

be called \_the grave\_ [ACCENT]."--\_Walker's Key\_, p. 316. Thus he tells of

different accents on "\_a monosyllable\_," which, by his own showing, "cannot

be said to have any accent"! and others read and copy the text with as

little suspicion of its inconsistency! See \_Worcester's Universal and

Critical Dictionary\_, p. 934.

[476] In Humphrey's English Prosody, \_cadence\_ is taken for the reverse of

\_accent\_, and is obviously identified or confounded with \_short quantity\_,

or what the author inclines to call "\_small\_ quantity." He defines it as

follows: "Cadence is the reverse or counterpart \_to\_ accent; a falling or

depression of voice on syllables unaccented: \_and by which\_ the sound is

shortened and depressed."--P. 3. This is not exactly what is generally

understood by the word \_cadence\_. Lord Kames also contrasts \_cadence\_ with

\_accent\_; but, by the latter term, he seems to have meant something

different from our ordinary accent. "Sometimes to humour the sense," says

he, "and sometimes the melody, a particular syllable is sounded \_in a

higher tone\_; and this is termed \_accenting a syllable\_, or gracing it with

an accent. Opposed to the accent, is the \_cadence\_, which I have not

mentioned as one of the requisites of verse, because it is entirely

regulated by the sense, and hath no peculiar relation to verse."--\_Elements

of Criticism\_, Vol. ii, p. 78.

[477] The Latin term, (made plural to agree with \_verba, words\_,) is

\_subaudita, underheard\_--the perfect participle of \_subaudio\_, to

\_underhear\_. Hence the noun, \_subauditio, subaudition\_, the recognition of

ellipses.

[478] "Thus, in the Proverbs of all Languages, many Words are usually left

to be supplied from the trite obvious Nature of what they express; as, \_out

of Sight out of Mind; the more the merrier\_, &c."--\_W. Ward's Pract.

Gram.\_, p. 147.

[479] Lindley Murray and some others say, "As \_the ellipsis occurs in

almost every sentence in the English language\_, numerous examples of it

might be given."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, p. 220; \_Weld's\_, 292; \_Fisk's\_, 147.

They could, without doubt, have exhibited many true specimens of Ellipsis;

but most of those which they have given, are only fanciful and false ones;

and their notion of the frequency of the figure, is monstrously

hyperbolical.

[480] Who besides Webster has called syllepsis "\_substitution\_," I do not

know. \_Substitution\_ and \_conception\_ are terms of quite different import,

and many authors have explained syllepsis by the latter word. Dr. Webster

gives to "SUBSTITUTION" two meanings, thus: "1. The act of putting one

person or thing in the \_place\_ of another to \_supply\_ [his or] \_its\_

place.--2. In \_grammar\_, syllepsis, or the use of one word for

another."--\_American Dict.\_, 8vo. This explanation seems to me inaccurate;

because it confounds both substitution and syllepsis with \_enallage\_. It

has signs of carelessness throughout; the former sentence being both

tautological and ungrammatical.--G. B.

[481] Between Tropes and Figures, some writers attempt a full distinction;

but this, if practicable, is of little use. According to Holmes, "TROPES

affect only single \_Words\_; but FIGURES, whole \_Sentences\_."--\_Rhetoric\_,

B. i, p. 28. "The CHIEF TROPES in Language," says this author, "are seven;

a \_Metaphor\_, an \_Allegory\_, a \_Metonymy\_, a \_Synecdoche\_, an \_Irony\_, an

\_Hyperbole\_, and a \_Catachresis\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 30. The term \_Figure\_ or

\_Figures\_ is more comprehensive than \_Trope\_ or \_Tropes\_; I have therefore

not thought it expedient to make much use of the latter, in either the

singular or the plural form. Holmes's seven tropes are all of them defined

in the main text of this section, except \_Catachresis\_, which is commonly

explained to be "an \_abuse\_ of a trope." According to this sense, it seems

in general to differ but little from impropriety. At best, a Catachresis is

a forced expression, though sometimes, perhaps, to be indulged where there

is great excitement. It is a sort of figure by which a word is used in a

sense different from, yet connected with, or analogous to, its own; as,

"And pity, like a naked new-born babe,

Striding the blast, as heaven's cherubim

\_Hors'd\_ upon the sightless \_couriers\_ of the air,

Shall blow the horrid deed in every eye,

That tears shall drown the wind."--\_Shak., Macbeth\_, Act i, Sc. 7.

[482] Holmes, in his Art of Rhetoric, writes this word "\_Paraleipsis\_"

retaining the Greek orthography. So does Fowler in his recent "English

Grammar," §646. Webster, Adam, and some others, write it "\_Paralepsis\_." I

write it as above on the authority of Littleton, Ainsworth, and some

others; and this is according to the analogy of the kindred word

\_ellipsis\_, which we never write either \_ellepsis\_, or, as the Greek,

\_elleipsis\_.

[483] To this principle there seems to be now and then an exception, as

when a weak dissyllable begins a foot in an anapestic line, as in the

following examples:--

"I think--let me see--yes, it is, I declare,

As long \_ago now\_ as that Buckingham there."--\_Leigh Hunt\_.

"And Thomson, though best in his indolent fits,

Either slept himself weary, or blasted his wits."--\_Id.\_

Here, if we reckon the feet in question to be anapests, we have

dissyllables with both parts short. But some, accenting "\_ago\_" on the

latter syllable, and "\_Either\_" on the former, will call "\_ago now\_" a

bacchy, and "\_Either slept\_" an amphimac: because \_they make them such\_ by

their manner of reading.--G. B.

[484] "Edgar A. Poe, the author, died at Baltimore on Sunday" [the

7th].--\_Daily Evening Traveller\_, Boston Oct. 9, 1849. This was eight or

ten months after the writing of these observations.--G. B.

[485] "Versification is the art of arranging words into lines of

correspondent length, so as to produce harmony by the regular alternation

of syllables differing in quantity"--\_Brown's Institutes of E. Gram.\_, p.

235.

[486] This appears to be an error; for, according to Dilworth, and other

arithmeticians, "\_a unit is a number\_;" and so is it expounded by Johnson,

Walker, Webster, and Worcester. See, in the \_Introduction\_, a note at the

foot of p. 117. Mulligan, however, contends still, that \_one is no number\_;

and that, "to talk of the \_singular number\_ is absurd--a contradiction in

terms;"--because, "in common discourse," a "\_number\_" is "always a

\_plurality\_, except"--when it is "\_number one\_!"--See \_Grammatical

Structure of the E. Language\_, §33. Some prosodists have taught the

absurdity, that two feet are necessary to constitute \_a metre\_, and have

accordingly applied the terms, \_monometer, dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter,

pentameter\_, and \_hexameter\_,--or so many of them as they \_could so

misapply\_,--in a sense very different from the usual acceptation. The

proper principle is, that, "One foot constitutes a metre."--\_Dr. P.

Wilson's Greek Prosody\_, p. 53. And verses are to be denominated

\_Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter\_, &c., according to "THE NUMBER OF

FEET."--See \_ib.\_ p. 6. But Worcester's Universal and Critical Dictionary

has the following not very consistent explanations: "MONOMETER, \_n.\_ One

metre. \_Beck\_. DIMETER, \_n.\_ A poetic measure of \_four feet\_; a \_series of

two\_ meters. \_Beck\_. TRIMETER, \_a\_. Consisting of three poetical

\_measures\_, forming an \_iambic\_ of \_six feet\_. \_Tyrwhitt\_. TETRAMETER, \_n.\_

A Latin or Greek verse consisting of \_four feet\_; a series of four metres.

TETRAMETER, \_a\_. Having \_four\_ metrical \_feet\_. \_Tyrwhitt\_. PENTAMETER,

\_n.\_ A Greek or Latin verse of \_five feet\_; a series of five metres.

PENTAMETER, \_a\_. Having \_five\_ metrical \_feet\_. \_Warton\_. HEXAMETER, \_n.\_ A

verse or line of poetry, having \_six feet\_, either dactyls or spondees; the

heroic, and most important, verse among the Greeks and Romans;--a

rhythmical series of six metres. HEXAMETER, \_a\_. Having \_six\_ metrical

\_feet\_. \_Dr. Warton\_." According to these definitions, Dimeter has as many

feet as Tetrameter; and Trimeter has as many as Hexameter!

[487] It is common, at any rate, for prosodists to speak of "the \_movement\_

of the voice," as do Sheridan, Murray, Humphrey, and Everett; but Kames, in

treating of the Beauty of Language from Resemblance, says "There is \_no

resemblance\_ of sound to motion, nor of sound to sentiment."--\_Elements of

Criticism\_, Vol. ii, p. 63. This usage, however, is admitted by the critic,

had cited to show how, "causes that have no resemblance may produce

resembling effects."--\_Ib.\_ 64. "By a number of syllables in succession, an

emotion is sometimes raised extremely similar to that raised by successive

motion: which may be evident even to those who are defective in taste, from

the following fact, that the term \_movement\_ in all languages is equally

applied to both."--\_Ib.\_ ii. 66.

[488] "From what has been said of accent and quantity in our own language,

we may conclude them to be essentially distinct \_and perfectly separable\_:

nor is it to be doubted that they were \_equally separable\_ in the learned

languages."--\_Walkers's Observations on Gr. and Lat. Accent and Quantity\_,

§20; Key, p. 326. In the speculative essay here cited, Walker meant by

\_accent\_ the rising or the falling \_inflection\_,--an upward or a downward

\_slide\_ of the voice: and by \_quantity\_, nothing but the open or close

sound of some vowel; as of "the \_a\_ in \_scatter\_" and in "\_skater\_," the

initial syllables of which words be supposed to differ in quantity as much

as any two syllables can!--\_Ib.\_, §24; Key, p. 331. With these views \_of

the things\_, it is perhaps the less to be wondered at, that Walker, who

appears to have been a candid and courteous writer, charges "that excellent

scholar Mr. Forster--with a \_total ignorance\_ of the accent and quantity of

his own language," (\_Ib., Note on §8\_; Key, p. 317;) and, in regard to

accent, ancient or modern, elsewhere confesses his own ignorance, and that

of every body else, to be \_as\_ "\_total\_." See marginal note on Obs. 4th

below.

[489] (1.) "We shall now take a view of sounds when united into

\_syllables\_. Here a beautiful variation of \_quantity\_ presents itself as

the next object of our attention. The knowledge of \_long\_ and \_short\_

syllables, is the most excellent and most neglected quality in the whole

art of pronunciation.

The disputes of our modern writers on this subject, have arisen chiefly

from an absurd notion that has long prevailed; viz. that there is no

difference between the \_accent\_ and the \_quantity\_, in the English

language; that the accented syllables are always \_long\_, and the unaccented

always \_short\_.

An absurdity so glaring, does not need refutation. Pronounce any one line

from Milton, and the ear will determine whether or not the accent and

quantity always coincide. Very seldom they do."--HERRIES: \_Bicknell's

Gram.\_, Part ii, p. 108.

(2.) "Some of our Moderns (especially Mr. \_Bishe\_, in his \_Art of Poetry\_)

and lately Mr. \_Mattaire\_, in what he calls, \_The English Grammar\_,

erroneously use \_Accent\_ for \_Quantity\_, one signifying the Length or

Shortness of a Syllable, the other the raising or falling of the Voice in

\_Discourse\_."--\_Brightland's Gram.\_, London, 1746, p. 156.

(3.) "Tempus cum accentu a nonnullis malè confunditur; quasi idem sit acui

et produci. Cum brevis autem syllaba acuitur, elevatur quidem vox in eà

proferendà, sed tempus non augetur. Sic in voce \_hominibus\_ acuitur \_mi\_;

at \_ni\_ quæ sequitur, æquam in efferendo moram postulat."--\_Lily's Gram.\_,

p. 125. Version: "By some persons, \_time\_ is improperly confounded with

\_accent\_; as if to acute and to lengthen were the same. But when a short

syllable is acuted, the voice indeed is raised in pronouncing it, but the

time is not increased. Thus, in the word \_hominibus, mi\_ as the acute

accent; but \_ni\_, which follows, demands equal slowness in the

pronunciation." To English ears, this can hardly seem a correct

representation; for, in pronouncing \_hominibus\_, it is not \_mi\_, but \_min\_,

that we accent; and this syllable is manifestly as much longer than the

rest, as it is louder.

[490] (1.) "Syllables, with respect to their \_quantity\_, are either \_long,

short\_, or \_common\_."--\_Gould's Adam's Lat. Gram.\_, p. 243. "Some syllables

are \_common\_; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short."--\_Adam's Lat.

and Eng. Gram.\_, p. 252. \_Common\_ is here put for \_variable\_, or \_not

permanently settled in respect to quantity\_: in this sense, from which no

third species ought to be inferred, our language is, perhaps, more

extensively "\_common\_" than any other.

(2.) "Most of our Monosyllables either take this Stress or not, according

as they are more or less emphatical; and therefore English Words of one

Syllable may be considered as \_common\_; i.e. either as long or short in

certain Situations. These Situations are chiefly determined by the Pause,

or Cesure, of the Verse, and this Pause by the Sense. And as the English

abounds in Monosyllables, there is probably no Language in which the

Quantity of Syllables is more regulated by the Sense than in English."--\_W.

Ward's Gram.\_, Ed. of 1765, p. 156.

(3.) Bicknell's theory of quantity, for which he refers to Herries, is

this: "The English \_quantity\_ is divided into \_long, short\_, and \_common\_.

The longest species of syllables are those that end in a vowel, and are

under the accent; as, \_mo\_ in har\_mo\_nious, \_sole\_ in con\_sole\_, &c. When a

monosyllable, which is unemphatic, ends in a vowel, it is always short; but

when the emphasis is placed upon it, it is always long. \_Short\_ syllables

are such as end in any of the six mutes; as cu\_t\_, sto\_p\_, ra\_p\_i\_d\_,

ru\_g\_ge\_d\_, lo\_ck\_. In \_all such syllables\_ the sound cannot be lengthened:

they are necessarily and invariably \_short\_. If another consonant

intervenes between the vowel and mute, as re\_nd\_, so\_ft\_, fla\_sk\_, the

syllable is rendered \_somewhat longer\_. The other species of syllables

called \_common\_, are such as terminate in a half-vowel or aspirate. For

instance, in the words ru\_n\_, swi\_m\_, cru\_sh\_, pu\_rl\_, the concluding sound

can be continued or shortened, as we please. This scheme of quantity," it

is added, "is founded on fact and experience."--\_Bicknell's Gram.\_, Part

ii, p. 109. But is it not a \_fact\_, that such words as \_cuttest, stopping,

rapid, rugged\_, are \_trochees\_, in verse? and is not \_unlock\_ an \_iambus\_?

And what becomes of syllables that end with vowels or liquids and are not

accented?

[491] I do not say the mere absence of stress is \_never\_ called \_accent\_;

for it is, plainly, the doctrine of some authors that the English accent

differs not at all in its nature from the accent of the ancient Greeks or

Romans, which was distinguished as being of three sorts, \_acute, grave,

inflex\_; that "the stronger breathing, or higher sound," which

distinguishes one syllable of a word from or above the rest, is \_the acute

accent\_ only; that "the softer breathing, or lower sound," which belongs to

an \_unacuted\_ (or \_unaccented\_) syllable, is \_the grave accent\_; and that a

combination of these two sounds, or "breathings," upon one syllable,

constitutes the \_inflex or circumflex accent\_. Such, I think, is the

teaching of Rev. William Barnes; who further says, "English verse is

constructed upon sundry orders of \_acute and grave accents\_ and matchings

of rhymes, while the poetic language of the Romans and Greeks is formed

upon rules of the sundry clusterings of \_long and short

syllables\_."--\_Philological Grammar\_, p. 263. This scheme is not wholly

consistent, because the author explains accent or accents as being

applicable only to "words of two or more syllables;" and it is plain, that

the accent which includes the three sorts above, must needs be "some other

thing than what we call accent," if this includes only the acute.

[492] Sheridan used the same comparison, "To illustrate the difference

between the accent of the ancients and that of \_ours\_" [our tongue]. Our

accent he supposed, with Nares and others, to have "no reference to

\_inflections\_ of the voice."--See \_Art of Reading\_, p. 75; \_Lectures on

Elocution\_, p. 56; \_Walker's Key\_, p. 313.

[493] (1.) It may in some measure account for these remarkable omissions,

to observe that Walker, in his lexicography, followed Johnson in almost

every thing but pronunciation. On this latter subject, his own authority is

perhaps as great as that of any single author. And here I am led to

introduce a remark or two touching \_the accent and quantity\_ with which he

was chiefly concerned; though the suggestions may have no immediate

connexion with the error of confounding these properties.

(2.) Walker, in his theory, regarded the \_inflections\_ of the voice as

pertaining to \_accent\_, and as affording a satisfactory solution of the

difficulties in which this subject has been involved; but, as an English

orthoëpist, he treats of accent in no other sense, than as \_stress laid on

a particular syllable of a word\_--a sense implying contrast, and

necessarily dividing all syllables into accented and unaccented, except

monosyllables. Having acknowledged our "\_total ignorance\_ of the nature of

the Latin and Greek accent," he adds: "The accent of the English language,

which is constantly sounding in our ears, and every moment open to

investigation, seems \_as much a mystery\_ as that accent which is removed

almost two thousand years from our view. Obscurity, perplexity, and

confusion, run through every treatise on the subject, and nothing could be

so hopeless as an attempt to explain it, did not a circumstance present

itself, which at once accounts for the confusion, and affords a clew to

lead us out of it. Not one writer on accent has given such a definition of

the voice as acquaints us with its essential properties. \* \* \* But let us

once divide the voice into its rising and falling inflections, the

obscurity vanishes, and accent becomes as intelligible as any other part of

language. \* \* \* On the present occasion it will be sufficient to observe,

that \_the stress we call accent\_ is as well understood as is necessary for

the pronunciation of single words, which is the object of this

treatise."--\_Walker's Dict.\_, p. 53, \_Princip.\_ 486, 487, 488.

(3.) Afterwards, on introducing \_quantity\_, as an orthoëpical topic, he has

the following remark: "In treating this part of pronunciation, it will not

be necessary to enter into the nature of \_that quantity which constitutes

poetry\_; the quantity here considered will be that which relates to words

taken singly; and this is \_nothing more than the length or shortness of the

vowels\_, either as they stand alone, or as they are differently combined

with the vowels or consonants." \_Ib.\_, p. 62, \_Princip.\_ 529. Here is

suggested a distinction which has not been so well observed by grammarians

and prosodists, or even by Walker himself, as it ought to have been. So

long as the practice continues of denominating certain mere \_vowel sounds\_

the \_long\_ and the \_short\_, it will be very necessary to notice that these

are not the same as the \_syllabic quantities\_, long and short, which

constitute English verse.

[494] (1.) In the Latin and Greek languages, this is not commonly supposed

to be the case; but, on the contrary, the quantity of syllables is

professedly adjusted by its own rules independently of what we call accent;

and, in our English pronunciation of these languages, the accentuation of

all long words is regulated by the quantity of the last syllable but one.

Walker, in the introduction to his Key, speaks of "The English

pronunciation of Greek and Latin [as] injurious to quantity." And no one

can deny, that we often accent what are called short syllables, and perhaps

oftener leave unaccented such as are called long; but, after all, were the

quantity of Latin and Greek syllables always judged of by their actual

time, and not with reference to the vowel sounds called long and short,

these our violations of the old quantities would be found much fewer than

some suppose they are.

(2.) Dr. Adam's view of the accents, acute and grave, appears to be

peculiar; and of a nature which may perhaps come nearer to an actual

identity with the quantities, long and short, than any other. He says,

"1. The \_acute\_ or \_sharp\_ accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is

thus marked [´]; \_prófero, prófer\_. [The English word is written, not thus,

but with two Effs, \_proffer\_.--G. B.]

"2. The \_grave\_ or \_base\_ accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its

natural tone; and is thus marked [`]; as, doctè. [Fist] \_This accent

properly belongs to all syllables which have no other\_.

"The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in

dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent

only is used. The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless

for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, \_aliquò, continuò, doctè,

unà\_, &c."--\_Adam's Latin and English Grammar\_, p. 266.

(3.) As stress naturally lengthens the syllables on which it falls, if we

suppose the grave accent to be the opposite of this, and to belong to all

syllables which have no peculiar stress,--are not enforced, not acuted, not

circumflected, not emphasized; then shall we truly have an accent with

which our short quantity may fairly coincide. But I have said, "the mere

absence of stress, which produces short quantity, we do not call \_accent\_;"

and it may be observed, that the learned improver of Dr. Adam's Grammar, B.

A. Gould, has totally rejected all that his predecessor taught concerning

\_accent\_, and has given an entirely different definition of the thing. See

marginal notes on page 771, above. Dr. Johnson also cites from \_Holder\_ a

very different explanation of it, as follows: "\_Accent\_, as in the Greek

names and usage, seems to have regarded the tune of the voice; the acute

accent, raising the voice in some certain syllables, to a higher, (\_i.e.\_

more acute) pitch or tone; and the grave, depressing it lower; [Fist] \_and

both having some emphasis\_, i.e. \_more vigorous pronunciation\_.

HOLDER."--\_Johnson's Quarto Dict., w. Accent\_.

[495] (1.) "Amongst them [the ancients,] we know that accents were marked

by certain \_inflexions\_ [inflections] of the voice like musical notes; and

the grammarians to this day, with great formality inform their pupils, that

the acute accent, is the raising [of] the voice on a certain syllable; the

grave, a depression of it; and the circumflex, a raising and depression

both, in one and the same syllable. \_This jargon they constantly preserve\_,

though they have no sort of ideas annexed to these words; for if they are

asked to shew how this is to be done, they cannot tell, and their practice

always belies their precept."--\_Sheridan's Lectures on Eloc.\_, p. 54.

(2.) "It is by the accent chiefly that the quantity of our syllables is

regulated; but not according to the \_mistaken rule\_ laid down by \_all who

have written\_ on the subject, that the accent \_always makes the syllable

long\_; than which \_there cannot be any thing more false\_."--\_Ib.\_, p. 57.

(3.) "And here I cannot help taking notice of a circumstance, which shews

in the strongest light, the \_amazing deficiency\_ of those, who have

hitherto employed their labours on that subject, [accent, or

pronunciation,] \_in point of knowledge\_ of the true genius and constitution

of our tongue. Several of the compilers of dictionaries, vocabularies, and

spelling books, have undertaken to mark the accents of our words; but so

\_little acquainted\_ were they with the nature of our accent, that they

thought it necessary only to mark \_the syllable\_ on which the stress is to

be laid, without marking the \_particular letter\_ of the syllable to which

the accent belongs."--\_Ib.\_, p. 59.

(4.) "The mind thus taking a bias under the prejudice of false rules, never

arrives at a knowledge of the true nature of \_quantity\_; and accordingly we

find that \_all attempts hitherto\_ to settle the prosody of our language,

have been vain and fruitless."--\_Sheridan's Rhetorical Gram.\_, p. 52.

[496] In the following extract, this matter is stated somewhat differently:

"The \_quantity\_ depends upon the seat of the accent, whether it be on the

vowel or [on the] consonant; if on the vowel, the syllable is necessarily

long: as it makes the vowel long; if on the consonant, \_it may be either

long or short\_, according to the nature of the consonant, or \_the time

taken up\_ in dwelling upon it."--\_Sheridan's Lectures on Eloc.\_, p. 57.

This last clause shows the "distinction" to be a very weak one.--G. BROWN.

[497] "If the consonant be in its nature a short one, the syllable is

necessarily short. If it be a long one, that is, one whose sound is capable

of being lengthened, it \_may be long or short\_ at the will of the speaker.

By a short consonant I mean one whose sound cannot be continued after a

vowel, such as c or k p t, as ac, ap, at--whilst that of long consonants

\_can\_, as, el em en er ev, &c."--\_Sheridan's Lectures on Elocution\_, p. 58.

Sheridan here forgets that "\_bor'row\_" is one of his examples of short

quantity.

Murray admits that "accent on a \_semi-vowel\_" may make the syllable long;

and his semivowels are these: "\_f, l, m, n, r, v, s, z, x\_, and \_c\_ and \_g\_

soft." See his \_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 240 and p. 8.

[498] On account of the different uses made of the breve, the macron, and

the accents, one grammarian has proposed a new mode of marking poetic

quantities. Something of the kind might be useful; but there seems to be a

reversal of order in this scheme, the macrotone being here made light, and

the stenotone dark and heavy. "Long and short syllables have \_sometimes\_

been designated by the same marks \_which\_ are used for accent, tones, and

the quality of the vowels; but it will be better[,] to prevent confusion[,]

to use different marks. This mark º may represent a long syllable, and this

· a short syllable; as,

· · ° · · ° · · ° · °

'At the close of the day when the hamlet is still.'"

--\_Perley's Gram.\_, p. 73.

[no · over 'let', sic--KTH]

[499] \_Dr. Adam's Gram.\_, p. 267; \_B. A. Gould's\_, 257. The Latin word

\_cæsura\_ signifies "\_a cutting\_, or \_division\_." This name is sometimes

Anglicized, and written "\_Cesure\_." See \_Brightland's Gram.\_, p. 161; or

\_Worcester's Dict., w. Cesure\_.

[500] "As to the long quantity arising from the succession of two

consonants, which the ancients are uniform in asserting, if it did not mean

that the preceding vowel was to lengthen its sound, \_as we should do\_ by

pronouncing the \_a\_ in \_scatter\_ as we do in \_skater\_, (one who skates,) \_I

have no conception of what it meant\_; for if it meant that only the \_time

of the syllable\_ was prolonged, the vowel retaining the same sound, I must

confess as ut er [sic--KTH] an inability of \_comprehending this source\_ of

quantity in the Greek and Latin as in English."--\_Walker on Gr. and L.

Accent\_, §24; Key, p. 331. This distinguished author seems unwilling to

admit, that the consonants occupy time in their utterance, or that other

vowel sounds than those which \_name\_ the vowels, can be protracted and

become long; but these are \_truths\_, nevertheless; and, since every letter

adds \_something\_ to the syllable in which it is uttered, it is by

consequence a "\_source of quantity\_," whether the syllable be long or

short.

[501] Murray has here a marginal note, as follows: "Movement and measure

are thus distinguished. \_Movement\_ expresses the progressive order of

sounds, whether from strong to weak, from long to short, or vice versa.

\_Measure\_ signifies the proportion of time, both in sounds \_and

pauses\_."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 259. This distinction is neither usual nor

accurate; though Humphrey adopts it, with slight variations. Without some

species of \_measure\_,--Iambic, Trochaic, Anapestic, Dactylic, or some

other,--there can be no regular \_movement\_, no "progressive \_order\_ of

sounds." Measure is therefore too essential to movement to be in contrast

with it. And the movement "from \_strong\_ to \_weak\_, from \_long\_ to

\_short\_," is but one and the same, a \_trochaic\_ movement; its reverse, the

movement, "\_vice versa\_," from \_weak\_ to \_strong\_, or from \_short\_ to

\_long\_, is, of course, that of \_iambic\_ measure. But Murray's doctrine is,

that \_strong\_ and \_long, weak\_ and \_short\_, may be separated; that \_strong\_

may be \_short\_, and \_weak\_ be \_long\_; so that the movement from \_weak\_ to

\_strong\_ may be from \_long\_ to \_short\_, and \_vice versa\_: as if a trochaic

movement might arise from iambic measure, and an iambic movement from

trochaic feet! This absurdity comes of attempting to regulate the

\_movement\_ of verse by accent, and not by quantity, while it is admitted

that quantity, and not accent, forms the \_measure\_, which "signifies \_the

proportion of time\_." The idea that \_pauses belong to measure\_, is an other

radical error of the foregoing note. There are more pauses in poetry than

in prose, but none of them are properly "\_parts\_" of either. Humphrey says

truly, "\_Feet\_ are the \_constituent parts\_ of verse."--\_English Prosody\_,

p. 8. But L. Murray says, "\_Feet and pauses\_ are the constituent parts of

verse."--\_Octavo Gram.\_, p. 252. Here Sheridan gave bias. Intending to

treat of verse, and "the pauses peculiarly belonging to it," the

"\_Cæsural\_" pause and the "\_Final\_," the rhetorician had \_improperly\_ said,

"The constituent \_parts\_ of verse are, feet, and pauses."--\_Sheridan's

Rhetorical Gram.\_, p. 64.

[502] "But as many Ways as Quantities may be varied by Composition and

Transposition, so many different Feet have the \_Greek\_ Poets contriv'd, and

that under distinct Names, from two to six Syllables, to the Number of 124.

But it is the Opinion of some Learned Men in this Way, that Poetic Numbers

may be sufficiently explain'd by those of two or three Syllables, into

which the rest are to be resolv'd."--\_Brightland's Grammar\_, 7th Ed., p.

161.

[503] "THE BELLS OF ST. PETERSBURGH."

"Those ev'ning bells, those ev'ning bells,

\_How\_ many a tale their music tells!"--\_Moore's Melodies\_, p. 263.

This couplet, like all the rest of the piece from which it is taken, is

iambic verse, and to be divided into feet thus:--

"Those ev' | -ning bells, | those ev' | -ning bells,

How man | -y a tale | their mu | -sic tells!"

[504] Lord Kames, too, speaking of "English Heroic verse," says: "Every

line consists of ten syllables, \_five short and five long\_; from which

[rule] there are but two exceptions, both of them rare."--\_Elements of

Criticism\_, Vol. ii, p. 89.

[505] "The Latin is a far more \_stately\_ tongue than our own. It is

essentially \_spondaic\_; the English is as essentially \_dactylic\_. The

\_long\_ syllable is the spirit of the Roman (and Greek) verse; the \_short\_

syllable is the essence of ours."--\_Poe's Notes upon English Verse;

Pioneer\_, Vol. i, p. 110. "We must search for \_spondaic words\_, which, in

English, are rare indeed."--\_Ib.\_, p. 111.

[506] "There is a rule, in Latin prosody, that a vowel \_before two

consonants\_ is long. We moderns have not only no such rule, but profess

inability to comprehend its \_rationale\_."--\_Poe's Notes: Pioneer\_, p. 112.

[507] The opponents of capital punishment will hardly take this for a fair

version of the sixth commandment.--G. B.

[508] These versicles, except the two which are Italicized, are \_not

iambic\_. The others are partly trochaic; and, according to many of our

prosodists, wholly so; but it is questionable whether they are not as

properly amphimacric, or Cretic.

[509] See exercises in Punctuation, on page 786, of this work.--G. B.

[510] The Seventieth Psalm is the same as the last five verses of the

Fortieth, except a few unimportant differences of words or points.

[511] It is obvious, that these two lines may easily be reduced to an

agreeable stanza, by simply dividing each after the fourth foot--G. B.

[512] In Sanborn's Analytical Grammar, on page 279th, this couplet is

ascribed to "\_Pope\_;" but I have sought in vain for this quotation, or any

example of similar verse, in the works of that poet. The lines, one or both

of them, appear, \_without reference\_, in \_L. Murray's Grammar, Second

Edition\_, 1796, p. 176, and in subsequent editions; in \_W. Allen's\_, p.

225; \_Bullions's\_, 178; \_N. Butler's\_, 192; \_Chandler's New\_, 196;

\_Clark's\_, 201; \_Churchill's\_, 187; \_Cooper's Practical\_, 185; \_Davis's\_,

137; \_Farnum's\_, 106; \_Felton's\_, 142; \_Frazee's\_, 184; \_Frost's\_, 164; \_S.

S. Greene's\_, 250; \_Hallock's\_, 244; \_Hart's\_, 187; \_Hiley's\_, 127;

\_Humphrey's Prosody\_, 17; \_Parker and Fox's Gram.\_, Part iii, p. 60;

\_Weld's\_, 211; \_Ditto Abridged\_, 138; \_Wells's\_, 200; \_Fowler's\_, 658; and

doubtless in many other such books.

[513] "Owen succeeded his father Griffin in the principality of North

Wales, A. D. 1120. This battle was fought near forty years afterwards.

North Wales is called, in the fourth line, '\_Gwyneth\_;' and 'Lochlin,' in

the fourteenth, is Denmark."--\_Gray\_. Some say "Lochlin," in the Annals of

Ulster, means Norway.--G. B.

[514] "The red dragon is the device of Cadwallader, which all his

descendants bore on their banners."--\_Gray\_.

[515] This passage, or some part of it, is given as a trochaic example, in

many different systems of prosody. Everett ascribes it entire to "\_John

Chalkhill\_;" and Nutting, more than twenty years before, had attached the

name of "\_Chalkhill\_" to a part of it. But the six lines "of three

syllables," Dr. Johnson, in his Grammar, credits to "\_Walton's Angler\_;"

and Bicknell, too, ascribes the same to "\_Walton\_." The readings also have

become various. Johnson, Bicknell, Burn, Churchill, and Nutting, have

"\_Here\_" for "\_Where\_" in the fifth line above; and Bicknell and Burn have

"\_Stop\_" in the eighth line, where the rest read "\_Stops\_." Nutting has,

for the ninth line, "\_Others'\_ joys," and not, "\_Other\_ joys," as have the

rest.--G. B.

[516] OBS.--Of this, and of every other example which requires no

amendment, let the learner simply say, after reading the passage, "This

sentence is correct as it stands."--G. BROWN.

[517] OBSERVATION.--In the Bible, the word LORD, whenever it stands for the

Hebrew name JEHOVAH, not only commences with a full capital, but has small

or half capitals for the other letters; and I have thought proper to print

both words in that manner here. In correcting the last example, I follow

Dr. Scott's Bible, except in the word "\_God\_," which he writes with a small

\_g\_. Several other copies have "\_first\_" and "\_last\_" with small initials,

which I think not so correct; and some distinguish the word "\_hosts\_" with

a capital, which seems to be needless. The sentence here has eleven

capitals: in the Latin Vulgate, it has but six, and one of them is for the

last word, "\_Deus\_," God.--G. B.

[518] OBS.--This construction I dislike. Without hyphens, it is improper;

and with them it is not to be commended. See Syntax, Obs 24th on Rule

IV.--G. B.

[519] On the page here referred to, the author of the Gazetteer has written

"\_Charles city\_," &c. Analogy requires that the words be compounded,

because they constitute three names which are applied to \_counties\_, and

not to \_cities\_.

[520] OBS.--The following words, \_as names of towns\_, come under Rule 6th,

and are commonly found correctly compounded in the books of Scotch

geography and statistics; "Strathaven, Stonehaven, Strathdon, Glenluce,

Greenlaw, Coldstream, Lochwinnoch, Lochcarron, Loehmaber, Prestonpans,

Prestonkirk, Peterhead, Queensferry, Newmills," and many more like them.

[521] Section OBS.--This name, in both the Vulgate and the Septuagint, is

\_Pharao Nechao\_, with two capitals and no hyphen. Walker gives the two

words separately in his Key, and spells the latter \_Necho\_, and not

\_Nechoh\_. See the same orthography in \_Jer.\_, xlvi, 2. In our common

Bibles, many such names are needlessly, if not improperly, compounded;

sometimes with one capital, and sometimes with two. The proper manner of

writing Scripture names, is too little regarded even by good men and

biblical critics.

[522] "[Marcus] Terentius Varro, vir Romanorum eruditissimus."--QUINTILIAN.

Lib. x, Cap. 1, p. 577.

[523] NOTE.--By this amendment, we remove a multitude of errors, but the

passage is still very faulty. What Murray here calls "\_phrases\_," are

properly \_sentences\_; and, in his second clause, he deserts the terms of

the first to bring in "\_my\_," "\_our\_," and also "\_&c.\_," which seem to be

out of place there.--G. BROWN.

[524] \_An other\_ is a phrase of two words, which ought to be written

separately. The transferring of the n to the latter word, is a gross

vulgarism. Separate the words, and it will be avoided.

[525] \_Mys-ter-y\_, according to Scott and Cobb; \_mys-te-ry\_, according to

Walker and Worcester.

[526] Kirkham borrowed this doctrine of "Tonics, Subtonics, and Atonies,"

from Rush: and dressed it up in his own worse bombast. See Obs. 13 and 14,

on the Powers of the Letters.--GB.

[527] There is, in most English dictionaries, a contracted form of this

phrase, written \_prithee\_, or \_I prithee\_; but Dr. Johnson censures it as

"a familiar \_corruption\_, which some writers have \_injudiciously\_ used;"

and, as the abbreviation amounted to nothing but the slurring of one vowel

sound into an other, it has now, I think, very deservedly become

obsolete.--G. BROWN.

[528] This is the doctrine of Murray, and his hundred copyists; but it is

by no means generally true. It is true of adverbs, only when they are

connected by conjunctions; and seldom applies to \_two\_ words, unless the

conjunction which may be said to connect them, be suppressed and

understood.--G. BROWN.

[529] Example: "Imperfect articulation comes not so much from bad \_organs\_,

as from the abuse of good ones."--\_Porter's Analysis\_. Here \_ones\_

represents \_organs\_, and prevents unpleasant repetition.--G. BROWN.

[530] From the force of habit, or to prevent the possibility of a false

pronunciation, these ocular contractions are still sometimes carefully made

in printing poetry; but they are not very important, and some modern

authors, or their printers, disregard them altogether. In correcting short

poetical examples, I shall in general take no particular pains to

distinguish them from prose. All needful contractions however will be

preserved, and sometimes also a capital letter, to show where the author

commenced a line.

[531] The word "\_imperfect\_" is not really necessary here; for the

declaration is true of \_any phrase\_, as this name is commonly applied.--G.

BROWN.

[532] A \_part of speech\_ is a \_sort of words\_, and not \_one word only\_. We

cannot say, that every pronoun, or every verb, is \_a part of speech\_,

because the parts of speech are \_only ten\_. But every pronoun, verb, or

other word, is \_a word\_; and, if we will refer to this genus, there is no

difficulty in defining all the parts of speech in the singular, with \_an\_

or \_a\_: as, "A \_pronoun\_ is \_a word\_ put for \_a noun\_." Murray and others

say, "\_An Adverb\_ is \_a part of speech\_," &c., "A \_Conjunction\_ is \_a part

of speech\_," &c., which is the same as to say, "\_One adverb\_ is \_a sort of

words\_," &c. This is a palpable absurdity.--G. BROWN.

[533] The propriety of this conjunction, "\_nor\_," is somewhat questionable:

the reading in both the Vulgate and the Septuagint is--"\_they, and\_ their

wives, \_and\_ their sons, \_and\_ their daughters."

[534] All our lexicographers, and all accurate authors, spell this word

with an \_o\_; but the gentleman who has furnished us with the last set of

\_new terms\_ for the science of grammar, writes it with an \_e\_, and applies

it to the \_verb\_ and the \_participle\_. With him, every verb or participle

is an "\_asserter\_;" except when he forgets his creed, as he did in writing

the preceding example about certain "\_verbs\_." As he changes the names of

all the parts of speech, and denounces the entire technology of grammar,

perhaps his innovation would have been sufficiently broad, had he for THE

VERB, the most important class of all, adopted some name which he knew how

to spell.--G. B.

[535] It would be better to omit the word "\_forth\_," or else to say--"whom

I \_brought forth from\_ the land of Egypt." The phrase, "\_forth out of\_," is

neither a very common nor a very terse one.--G. BROWN.

[536] This \_doctrine\_, that participles divide and specify time, I have

elsewhere shown to be erroneous.--G. BROWN.

[537] Perhaps it would be as well or better, in correcting these two

examples, to say, "There \_are\_ a generation." But the article \_a\_, as well

as the literal form of the noun, is a sign of unity; and a complete

uniformity of numbers is not here practicable.

[538] Though the pronoun \_thou\_ is not much used in \_common discourse\_, it

is as proper for the grammarian to consider and show, what form of the verb

belongs to it \_when it is so used\_, as it is for him to determine what form

is adapted to any other pronoun, when a difference of style affects the

question.

[539] "\_Forgavest\_," as the reading is in our common Bible, appears to be

wrong; because the relative \_that\_ and its antecedent \_God\_ are of the

third person, and not of the second.

[540] All the corrections under this head are directly contrary to the

teaching of William S. Cardell. Oliver B. Peirce, and perhaps some other

such writers on grammar; and some of them are contrary also to Murray's

late editions. But I am confident that these authors teach erroneously;

that their use of indicative forms for mere suppositions that are contrary

to the facts, is positively ungrammatical; and that the potential imperfect

is less elegant, in such instances, than the simple subjunctive, which they

reject or distort.

[541] This is what Smith must have \_meant\_ by the inaccurate phrase,

"\_those\_ in the first." For his first example is, "He went to school;"

which contains only the \_one\_ pronoun "He."--See \_Smith's New Gram.\_, p.

19.

[542] According to modern usage, \_has\_ would here be better than

\_is\_,--though \_is fallen\_ is still allowable.--G. BROWN.

[543] From this opinion, I dissent. See Obs. 1st on the Degrees of

Comparison, and Obs. 4th on Regular Comparison, in the Etymology of this

work, at pp. 279 and 285.--G. BROWN.

[544] "The country \_looks beautiful\_;'" that is, \_appears\_ beautiful--\_is\_

beautiful. This is right, and therefore the use which Bucke makes of it,

may be fairly reversed. But the example was ill chosen; and I incline to

think, it may also be right to say, "The country \_looks beautifully\_;" for

the \_quality\_ expressed by \_beautiful\_, is nothing else than the \_manner\_

in which the thing \_shows\_ to the eye. See Obs. 11th on Rule 9th.--G.

BROWN.

[545] Many examples and authorities may be cited in favour of these

corrections; as, "He acted independently \_of\_ foreign assistance."--

\_Murray's Key, Gram.\_, Vol. ii, p. 222. "Independently \_of\_ any necessary

relation."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, Vol. i. p. 275. "Independently \_of\_ this

peculiar mode of construction."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 473. "Independent \_of\_

the will of the people."--\_Webster's Essays\_, p. 13. "Independent one \_of\_

an other."--\_Barclay's Works\_, i, 84. "The infinitive is often independent

\_of\_ the rest of the sentence."--\_Lennie's Gram.\_, p. 85. "Some sentences

are independent \_of\_ each other."--\_Murray's Gram.\_, i, 277. "As if it were

independent \_of\_ it"--\_Priestley's Gram.\_, p. 186. "Independent of

appearance and show."--\_Blair's Rhet.\_, p. 13.

[546] The preposition \_of\_ which Jefferson uses before \_about\_, appears to

me to be useless. It does not govern the noun \_diameter\_, and is therefore

no substitute for the \_in\_ which I suppose to be wanting; and, as the

preposition \_about\_ seems to be sufficient between \_is\_ and \_feet\_, I omit

the \_of\_. So in other instances below.--G. BROWN.

[547] Murray, Jamieson, and others, have this definition with the article

"a," and the comma, but without the hyphen: "APOSTROPHE is \_a turning off\_

from the regular course," &c. See errors under Note 4th to Rule 20th.

[548] This sentence may be written correctly in a dozen different ways,

with precisely the same meaning, and very nearly the same words. I have

here made the noun \_gold\_ the object of the verb \_took\_, which in the

original appears to govern the noun \_treasure\_, or \_money\_, understood. The

noun \_amount\_ might as well be made its object, by a suppression of the

preposition \_to\_. And again, for "\_pounds' weight\_," we may say, "\_pounds

in\_ weight." The words will also admit of many other positions.--G. BROWN.

[549] See a different reading of this example, cited as the first item of

false syntax under Rule 16th above, and there corrected differently. The

words "\_both of\_," which make the difference, were probably added by L.

Murray in some of his \_revisals\_; and yet it does not appear that this

popular critic ever got the sentence \_right\_.--G. BROWN.

[550] "If such maxims, and such practices prevail, what \_has become\_ of

national liberty?"--\_Hume's History\_. Vol. vi, p. 254; \_Priestley's Gram.\_,

p. 128.

[551] According to my notion, \_but\_ is never a preposition; but there are

some who think otherwise.--G. BROWN.

[552] "Cùm vestieris te coccino, cùm ornata fueris monili aureo, et

\_pinxeris stibio oculos tuos\_, frustra componêris."--\_Vulgate\_. "[Greek:

Eàn peribálæ[i] kókkinon, kaì kosm'æsæ[i] kósmw[i] chrys~w[i]· eàn

egchrísæ[i] stíbi toùs ophthalmoús sou eìs mátaion wraïsmós

sou.]"--\_Septuagint\_. "Quoique tu te revêtes de pourpre, que tu te pares

d'ornemens d'or, et \_que tu te peignes les yeux avec du fard\_, tu

t'embellis en vain."--\_French Bible\_.

[553] The word "\_any\_" is here omitted, not merely because it is

\_unnecessary\_, but because "\_every any other piece\_,"--with which a score

of our grammarians have pleased themselves,--is not good English. The

impropriety might perhaps be avoided, though less elegantly, by \_repeating

the preposition\_, and saying,--"or \_of\_ any other piece of writing."--G.

BROWN.

[554] This correction, as well as the others which relate to what Murray

says of the several forms of ellipsis, doubtless conveys the sense which he

intended to express; but, as an assertion, it is by no means true of all

the examples which he subjoins, neither indeed are the rest. But that is a

fault of his which I cannot correct.--G. BROWN.

[555] The article \_may\_ be repeated in examples like these, without

producing \_impropriety\_; but then it will alter the construction of the

adjectives, and render the expression more formal and emphatic, by

suggesting a repetition of the noun.--G. BROWN.

[556] "The whole number of verbs in the English language, regular and

irregular, simple and compounded, taken together, is about 4300."--\_Lowth's

Gram.\_, p. 59; \_Murray's\_, 12mo, p. 98; 8vo, p. 109; \_et al.\_

[557] In Singer's Shakspeare, Vol. ii, p. 495, this sentence is expressed

and pointed thus: "O, shame! where is thy blush?"--\_Hamlet\_, Act III, Sc.

4. This is as if the speaker meant, "O! it is a shame! where is thy blush?"

Such is not the sense above; for there "\_Shame\_" is the person addressed.

[558] If, in each of these sentences, the colon were substituted for the

latter semicolon, the curves might well be spared. Lowth has a similar

passage, which (bating a needful variation of guillemets) he pointed thus:

"\_as\_ ----, \_as\_; expressing a comparison of equality; '\_as\_ white \_as\_

snow:' \_as\_ ----, \_so\_; expressing a comparison sometimes of equality;

'\_as\_ the stars, \_so\_ shall thy seed be;' that is, equal in number: but"

&c.--\_Lowth's Gram.\_, p. 109. Murray, who broke this passage into

paragraphs, retained at first these semicolons, but afterwards changed them

\_all\_ to colons. Of later grammarians, some retain the former colon in each

sentence; some, the latter; and some, neither. Hiley points thus: "\_As\_

requires \_as\_, expressing equality; as, 'He is \_as\_ good \_as\_

she.'"--\_Hiley's E. Gram.\_, p. 107.

End of Project Gutenberg's The Grammar of English Grammars, by Goold Brown

\*\*\* END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS \*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\* This file should be named 11615-8.txt or 11615-8.zip \*\*\*\*\*

This and all associated files of various formats will be found in:

http://www.gutenberg.net/1/1/6/1/11615/

Produced by Karl Hagen and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team

Updated editions will replace the previous one--the old editions

will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no

one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation

(and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without

permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules,

set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to

copying and distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works to

protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG-tm concept and trademark. Project

Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you

charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you

do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the

rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose

such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and

research. They may be modified and printed and given away--you may do

practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is

subject to the trademark license, especially commercial

redistribution.

\*\*\* START: FULL LICENSE \*\*\*

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting the free

distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work

(or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project

Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project

Gutenberg-tm License (available with this file or online at

http://gutenberg.net/license).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to

and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property

(trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all

the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy

all copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in your possession.

If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the

terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or

entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be

used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who

agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few

things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works

even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See

paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement

and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation"

or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the

collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an

individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are

located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from

copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative

works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg

are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project

Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by

freely sharing Project Gutenberg-tm works in compliance with the terms of

this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg-tm name associated with

the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by

keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project

Gutenberg-tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern

what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in

a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check

the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement

before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or

creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project

Gutenberg-tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning

the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United

States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate

access to, the full Project Gutenberg-tm License must appear prominently

whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg-tm work (any work on which the

phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project

Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed,

copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with

almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or

re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included

with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.net

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is derived

from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is

posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied

and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees

or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work

with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the

work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1

through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the

Project Gutenberg-tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or

1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is posted

with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution

must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional

terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked

to the Project Gutenberg-tm License for all works posted with the

permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this

work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg-tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this

electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without

prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with

active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project

Gutenberg-tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary,

compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any

word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or

distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg-tm work in a format other than

"Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version

posted on the official Project Gutenberg-tm web site (www.gutenberg.net),

you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a

copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon

request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other

form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying,

performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg-tm works

unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing

access to or distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works provided

that

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from

the use of Project Gutenberg-tm works calculated using the method

you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is

owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, but he

has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the

Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments

must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you

prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax

returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and

sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the

address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to

the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies

you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he

does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License. You must require such a user to return or

destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium

and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of

Project Gutenberg-tm works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any

money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the

electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days

of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free

distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set

forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from

both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael

Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark. Contact the

Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable

effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread

public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg-tm

collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain

"Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or

corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual

property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a

computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by

your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right

of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project

Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project

Gutenberg-tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all

liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal

fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT

LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE

PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH F3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE

TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE

LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR

INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH

DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a

defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can

receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a

written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you

received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with

your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with

the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a

refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity

providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to

receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy

is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further

opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth

in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER

WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO

WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTIBILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied

warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages.

If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the

law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be

interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by

the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any

provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the

trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone

providing copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in accordance

with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production,

promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works,

harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees,

that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do

or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg-tm

work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any

Project Gutenberg-tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg-tm

Project Gutenberg-tm is synonymous with the free distribution of

electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers

including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists

because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from

people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the

assistance they need, is critical to reaching Project Gutenberg-tm's

goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg-tm collection will

remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project

Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure

and permanent future for Project Gutenberg-tm and future generations.

To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4

and the Foundation web page at http://www.pglaf.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive

Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit

501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the

state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal

Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification

number is 64-6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at

http://pglaf.org/fundraising. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg

Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent

permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S.

Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered

throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at

809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887, email

business@pglaf.org. Email contact links and up to date contact

information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official

page at http://pglaf.org

For additional contact information:

Dr. Gregory B. Newby

Chief Executive and Director

gbnewby@pglaf.org

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg

Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg-tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide

spread public support and donations to carry out its mission of

increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be

freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest

array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations

($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt

status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating

charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United

States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a

considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up

with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations

where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To

SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any

particular state visit http://pglaf.org

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we

have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition

against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who

approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make

any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from

outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation

methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other

ways including including checks, online payments and credit card

donations. To donate, please visit: http://pglaf.org/donate

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works.

Professor Michael S. Hart is the originator of the Project Gutenberg-tm

concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared

with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project

Gutenberg-tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks are often created from several printed

editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S.

unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily

keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Each eBook is in a subdirectory of the same number as the eBook's

eBook number, often in several formats including plain vanilla ASCII,

compressed (zipped), HTML and others.

Corrected EDITIONS of our eBooks replace the old file and take over

the old filename and etext number. The replaced older file is renamed.

VERSIONS based on separate sources are treated as new eBooks receiving

new filenames and etext numbers.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

http://www.gutenberg.net

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg-tm,

including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary

Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to

subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.

EBooks posted prior to November 2003, with eBook numbers BELOW #10000,

are filed in directories based on their release date. If you want to

download any of these eBooks directly, rather than using the regular

search system you may utilize the following addresses and just

download by the etext year. For example:

http://www.gutenberg.net/etext06

(Or /etext 05, 04, 03, 02, 01, 00, 99,

98, 97, 96, 95, 94, 93, 92, 92, 91 or 90)

EBooks posted since November 2003, with etext numbers OVER #10000, are

filed in a different way. The year of a release date is no longer part

of the directory path. The path is based on the etext number (which is

identical to the filename). The path to the file is made up of single

digits corresponding to all but the last digit in the filename. For

example an eBook of filename 10234 would be found at:

http://www.gutenberg.net/1/0/2/3/10234

or filename 24689 would be found at:

http://www.gutenberg.net/2/4/6/8/24689

An alternative method of locating eBooks:

http://www.gutenberg.net/GUTINDEX.ALL